

The Book of the Discipline

I.B. Horner

Sacred Books of the Buddhists
VOLUMES X, XI, XIII, XIV, XX, XV

THE BOOK OF THE DISCIPLINE

VINAYAPIṬAKAṀ

Translated by

I.B. HORNER, M.A.

FELLOW AND ASSOCIATE OF NEWNHAM COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

Supplementary translation by

BHIKKHU BRAHMALI

Originally published by

PALI TEXT SOCIETY

This edition prepared by

BHIKKHU SUJATO for SUTTACENTRAL

Published in 2014 by SuttaCentral.

ISBN: 978-1-921842-16-0

Originally published by the Pali Text Society in the following years:

- Vol. 1: 1938
- Vol. 2: 1940
- Vol. 3: 1942
- Vol. 4: 1951
- Vol. 5: 1950
- Vol. 6: 1966

© PALI TEXT SOCIETY, BHIKKHU BRAHMALI

CREATIVE COMMONS ATTRIBUTION-NONCOMMERCIAL 3.0

You are free to:

- **Share**—copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
- **Adapt**—remix, transform, and build upon the material.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following terms:

- **Attribution**—You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.
- **NonCommercial**—You may not use the material for commercial purposes.
- **No additional restrictions**—You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

<http://suttacentral.net>

Main Contents

I	The Analysis of the Monks' Rules (<i>Bhikkhuvibhaṅga</i>)	1
II	The Analysis of Nuns' Rules (<i>Bhikkhunīvibhaṅga</i>)	987
III	Khandhaka	1255
IV	Parivāra	2247

Volume I

The Analysis of the Monks'
Rules (*Bhikkhuvibhaṅga*)

Contents of Volume

Translator's Introduction	2
Editorial Note	49
Preface to the SuttaCentral Edition	51
Abbreviations	54
The translation of the <i>Pārājika</i> rules	57
Variant numbering for <i>bhikkhunī</i> rules	59
Semantic tags	60
Monks' Expulsion (<i>Pārājika</i>) 1	63
The origin of the Vinaya	63
Origin story	78
First sub-story	78
First preliminary ruling	90
Second sub-story	90
Second preliminary ruling	91
Third sub-story	92
Final ruling	93
Definitions	93
Permutations	98
Permutations part 1	98
Summary	98
Exposition part 1	98
Exposition part 2	99

Permutations part 2	101
Non-offence clause	101
Case rulings	102
Case details	102
Monks' Expulsion (Pārājika) 2	114
Origin story	114
First sub-story	114
Preliminary ruling	120
Second sub-story	121
Final ruling	122
Definitions	122
Permutations	124
Permutations part 1	124
Summary	124
Exposition	124
Permutations part 2	136
Permutations part 3	137
Non-offence clause	139
Case rulings	140
Case details	141
Monks' Expulsion (Pārājika) 3	161
Origin story	161
First sub-story	161
Preliminary ruling	167
Second sub-story	167
Final ruling	168
Definitions	169
Permutations	171
Summary	171
Exposition	171
Non-offence clause	178
Case rulings	178
Case details	179

Monks' Expulsion (<i>Pārājika</i>) 4	192
Origin story	192
First sub-story	192
Preliminary ruling	197
Second sub-story	197
Final ruling	198
Definitions	198
Permutations	200
Summary	200
Definitions	200
Exposition	201
Non-offence clause	211
Case rulings	211
Case details, part 1	212
Case details, part 2	219
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 1	229
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 2	235
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 3	249
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 4	256
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 5	262
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 6	278
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 7	296
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 8	300
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 9	315
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 10	322
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 11	329

Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 12	333
Monks' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 13	337
Monks' Undetermined (<i>Aniyata</i>) 1	351
Monks' Undetermined (<i>Aniyata</i>) 2	357
Translator's Introduction	362
The <i>Nissaggiya</i> Group	364
The <i>Pācittiya</i> Group (Nos. 1–60)	379
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 1	404
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 2	414
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 3	425
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 4	430
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 5	435
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 6	440
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 7	447
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 8	450
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 9	454
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 10	457
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 11	465
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 12	468
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 13	470
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 14	472

Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 15	476
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 16	482
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 17	485
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 18	489
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 19	496
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 20	499
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 21	503
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 22	507
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 23	514
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 24	521
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 25	525
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 26	528
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 27	531
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 28	536
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 29	541
Monks' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 30	545
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 1	549
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 2	555
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 3	568
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 4	572
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 5	575

Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 6	579
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 7	584
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 8	589
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 9	599
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 10	603
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 11	606
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 12	610
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 13	614
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 14	617
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 15	622
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 16	625
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 17	628
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 18	632
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 19	635
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 20	639
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 21	641
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 22	649
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 23	652
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 24	655
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 25	657
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 26	660

Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 27	663
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 28	667
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 29	670
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 30	674
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 31	676
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 32	679
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 33	687
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 34	692
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 35	697
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 36	702
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 37	705
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 38	708
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 39	710
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 40	713
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 41	716
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 42	719
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 43	722
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 44	725
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 45	727
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 46	729
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 47	734

Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 48	739
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 49	742
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 50	744
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 51	747
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 52	752
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 53	754
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 54	756
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 55	758
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 56	760
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 57	763
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 58	768
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 59	772
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 60	775
Translator's Introduction	778
The Monks' Pācittiya Group (Bu-Pc.61–Bu-Pc.92)	778
The Sekhiyas	797
Nuns' Pātimokkha Rules	799
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 61	825
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 62	827
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 63	829
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 64	831
Monks' Expiation (Pācittiya) 65	834

Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 66	839
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 67	842
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 68	845
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 69	851
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 70	855
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 71	859
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 72	862
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 73	865
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 74	868
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 75	870
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 76	872
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 77	874
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 78	876
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 79	879
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 80	882
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 81	885
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 82	888
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 83	891
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 84	898
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 85	903
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 86	908

Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 87	911
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 88	913
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 89	915
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 90	918
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 91	920
Monks' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 92	921
Monks' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 1	924
Monks' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 2	927
Monks' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 3	930
Monks' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 4	935
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 1	939
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 2	940
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 3 & 4	941
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 5 & 6	941
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 7 & 8	942
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 9 & 10	943
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 11 & 12	943
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 13 & 14	944
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 15 & 16	945
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 17 & 18	945
Monks' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 19 & 20	946

Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 21 & 22	946
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 23 & 24	947
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 25	948
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 26	948
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 27	949
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 28	949
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 29	950
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 30	951
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 31	951
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 32	952
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 33	952
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 34	953
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 35	954
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 36	954
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 37	955
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 38	957
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 39	957
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 40	958
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 41	959
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 42	959
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 43	960

Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 44	960
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 45	961
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 46	961
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 47	962
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 48	962
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 49	963
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 50	963
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 51	964
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 52	965
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 53	965
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 54	966
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 55	966
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 56	967
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 57	968
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 58	970
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 59	970
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 60	971
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 61	971
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 62	972
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 63	972
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 64	973

Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 65	974
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 66	974
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 67	975
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 68	976
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 69	976
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 70	979
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 71	979
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 72	980
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 73	980
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 74	981
Monks' Training (Sekhiya) 75	981
Monks' Deciding of Legal Questions (Adhikaraṇasamatha)	984
Monks' Conclusion	986

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

BD.1.v

The present translation of the Vinaya-Piṭaka is based upon Hermann Oldenberg's extremely careful edition of the Pali text of the Vinaya-Piṭaka, published in five volumes in the years 1879–1883. In the Introduction to Volume I of his edition, Oldenberg wrote (p.x) that he had been compelled to relinquish his original intention of adding a complete translation to the text. But in the years 1881, 1882, 1885 T.W. RHYS DAVIDS and OLDENBERG collaborated in the production of a partial translation, called *Vinaya Texts*, published in the *Sacred Books of the East Series* (Volumes XIII, XVII, XX) in three volumes.

The detailed handling, exposition and analysis of many important, interesting, difficult and obscure points make of *Vinaya Texts* a work of remarkable scholarship. In addition, the erudition of one who had had opportunities of investigating contemporary monasticism in Ceylon has been bestowed upon it. Indeed, Rhys Davids' and Oldenberg's translation can admit of supplement in only two respects, while in all others I am aware that my attempt at a critical translation compares but unfavourably with theirs.

In the first place, what is now needed, both for its own sake and in order to bring the Vinaya into line with, at least, the Sutta-Piṭaka, is a complete, as against a partial translation into English. This is one of the two respects in which *Vinaya Texts* can be supplemented. Secondly, our knowledge of various aspects of Buddhism has doubtless increased during the fifty-two years which separate the appearance of Volume III of *Vinaya Texts* and the appearance of Volume I of *The Book of the Discipline*. During this time the Pali Text Society has been founded, and has published all the Pali Canonical

BD.1.vi “books,” practically all the Commentaries and other post-Canonical “books”, together with a considerable number of translations, not to mention a Dictionary. This mass of material, not available to the original translators of the Vinaya, has made possible a comparison of passages, phrases and words occurring in scattered parts of the Canon, so that now a more definite and perhaps less tentative interpretation of the significance of some of them, as they appear in the Vinaya, can be presented. This is the second way in which *Vinaya Texts* can be supplemented. It is only by discovering what words and phrases signify in passages other than those with which one is at the moment concerned, that the general, and even the exceptional, meaning of those same words and phrases can be more or less accurately gauged. I have considered it desirable, in the light of the knowledge made accessible during the last fifty years by the issues of the Pali Text Society and certain books on Early Buddhism, to revise and remould some of the renderings in *Vinaya Texts*. Even so, one cannot fail to be impressed by the vision of the original translators, whose interpretations, sometimes no more than leaps in the dark, have often proved successful and unimpeachable.

There is reason to suspect that some words and phrases are peculiar to the Vinaya, or have a special connotation in it, but there can be no certainty upon this point, until the Concordance, which is being compiled under the auspices of Mrs. Rhys Davids, is brought to completion.

Since the study of Early Buddhism is admittedly still in its infancy, many of the rich and variegated treasures of its storehouse as yet await investigation. Hence, I am fully aware that *The Book of the Discipline* is nothing more than an interim translation, needed for the reasons given above, but in no way claiming to be final and definitive.

BD.1.vii The word *vinaya* has come to be paired, as it were (although since precisely when we do not know), with the word *dhamma*. This is a word whose long history needs a detailed study, such as we have in W. GEIGER'S *Dhamma*, 1920, while *vinaya* is considerably easier of definition. Whatever the exact meaning or meanings of *dhamma* may have been at one stage in the history of Early Buddhism or at another, or at one part of the Sayings or at another, it is a fair enough description to say that *dhamma* concerned the

inner life of Gotama's followers, their conscience, their mental training and outlook and, later, stood for the body of teaching that they were to believe and follow; and that *vinaya* was the discipline governing and regulating the outward life of the monks and nuns who had entered the monastic Orders, the foundation of which is attributed to Gotama. *Dhamma* may indeed be said to be all that *vinaya* is not.¹ Two Piṭakas are devoted to *dhamma*: the Sutta-Piṭaka and the (later) Abhidhamma-Piṭaka; one, the Vinaya-Piṭaka, as its name implies, to *vinaya*.²

I have called the present translation *The Book of the Discipline*, rather than *The Basket (Piṭaka) of the Discipline*, on the analogy of *The Book (Nikāya) of the Kindred Sayings* and *The Book of the Gradual Sayings*. What was originally an oral tradition of Sayings became, at some time, committed to palm-leaf manuscripts. Later still, these were "edited" to form the material of printed books. Today the early Sayings survive nowhere but in books.

Oldenberg began his edition of the text of the Vinaya-Piṭaka with the section known as the Mahāvagga. This, together with the Cūlavagga to which he proceeded, constitutes the Khandhakas. He placed the Suttavibhaṅga after these, and ended with the admittedly later Parivāra. But properly speaking, the Pali Vinaya begins with the Suttavibhaṅga. The Vinaya of the Sarvāstivādin school "follows the same general arrangement,"³ as do apparently the Chinese Vinaya of the Mahīsāsaka school and the Dulva, or Tibetan Vinaya of the Mūlasarvāstivādins.⁴ Be this as it may, the Pali Vinaya is the only one with which we can concern ourselves here. Comparisons with the Vinaya of other schools must be left to one side, as must comparisons with the rules and discipline of pre-Sakyan sects and contemporary sects, including the Jain Orders of monks and nuns.⁵

BD.1.viii

According to Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, the oldest portion of the

¹ OLDENBERG, *Vinaya Texts* i.xiii. ² For chronology of the Pali Canon, see B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature*, Chapter 1. ³ E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.267; but see DUTT, *Early History of the Spread of Buddhism*, p.283f. ⁴ OLDENBERG, *Vinaya Texts* i.xlivff.

⁵ See JACOBI, *Jaina Sūtras*, i.xixff. (Sacred Books of the East XXII).

Vinaya is the Pātimokkha, or list of 227 rules,¹ or courses of training to be observed. As this seems to be indisputably the case, it is only fitting that the Suttavibhaṅga should precede the Khandhakas. For the Suttavibhaṅga is that portion of the Vinaya which contains the Pātimokkha.

In their *Vinaya Texts*, Rhys Davids and Oldenberg open with the Pātimokkha. Buddhaghosa in his Commentary, the Samantapāsādikā (denoted as Vin-a in the footnotes to my translation),² begins with the Suttavibhaṅga *in extenso*. I therefore follow the same plan, and mention it chiefly to indicate that my Volume I does not correspond to Oldenberg's Volume I, but approximately to the first two-thirds of his Volume III. Considerations of length alone prevented me from including all his Volume III in my Volume I of *The Book of the Discipline*. On the other hand, this present volume corresponds to the opening portion of Volume I of *Vinaya Texts*. The chief difference between the presentation of the Suttavibhaṅga in *Vinaya Texts* and *The Book of the Discipline* is that, in the former the Suttavibhaṅga is cut down to comprise nothing more than the Pātimokkha rules themselves, all auxiliary material being omitted, while the latter, when finished, will contain, with very few exceptions,³ an unabridged translation of the entire Suttavibhaṅga.

BD.1.ix

The Vinaya, the Discipline, especially that portion of it called Suttavibhaṅga, appoints and decrees a definite standard of outward morality, comprised in courses of training laid down for the proper behaviour of monks and nuns. On the surface the Suttavibhaṅga is not much more than an attempt to restrain unsuitable behaviour; but in reality it also arrives, though in many cases by a long process of exclusion, at the kind of positive conduct to be pursued by the monk who wishes his life to be externally blameless, so far as his relations with his fellow monks, with the Order as a whole, and with the laity are concerned.

This limitation of the Suttavibhaṅga to an outward and objective field is amply indicated by the striking absence from it, of any passage stating that

¹ See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.92, and B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature*, i.20f., for notes on variant numbers of the rules. Also WINTERNITZ, *History of Indian Literature*, ii.23, n.5, for numbers of rules recognised by various schools. ² i.e., Vinaya-aṭṭhakathā, Commentary on the Vinaya. ³ See below, [BD.1.xxxvii](#).

the observance of the courses of training “made known for monks by the lord” will conduce to the realisation of desirable subjective states. The gulf between this and the pre-eminently subjective attitude of the Sutta-Piṭaka is immense. Never once is it said, in the Suttavibhaṅga, that the courses of training should be followed so as to lead, for example, to the rejection of passion, of hatred, of confusion, to the destruction of the *āsavas* (cankers), to making the Way (one, fourfold, eightfold) become, to the mastery of *dhamma*, to the attainment of perfection. Always the recurrent formula of the Suttavibhaṅga declares that breaches of a course of training are “not fitting, not suitable, not worthy of a recluse, not to be done,” and so on, and that such lapses are not “for the benefit of non-believers nor for increase in the number of believers.” Thus a standard of conduct is imposed from outside, and for external, impersonal reasons, instead of insistence being laid, as in the Nikāya teaching, on the great subjective states attainable through a man’s own efforts of will.

BD.1.x

The word Suttavibhaṅga means analysis or classification (*vibhaṅga*) of a *sutta*, a term here applied to each rule or course of training included in the Pātimokkha. The literal meaning of *sutta* (*sūtra*) is of course string or thread, and as such also appears in the Vinaya. But its meaning of rule or clause or article is apparently peculiar to this composition, and is, according to Dr. E.J. THOMAS,¹ earlier than its meaning of separate discourse. That the word *sutta*, in the Vinaya, probably does bear the meaning of rule, as was suggested in *Vinaya Texts*,² is indicated by various passages. For example, at **Vin.1.65–68**, a monk is not to receive the *upasampadā* ordination if he does not know the two Pātimokkhas³ rule by rule (*suttato*); at **Vin.2.68**, it is said: “This thing is in a rule (*suttāgata*) and comes up for recitation every half-month.”⁴ The thing (*dhamma*) here referred to is not in a Sutta, or Sutta-Piṭaka discourse, but does occur, as part of a course of training, in the Vinaya. Further, the Vinaya Commentary mentions, calling it a *sutta*,⁵ the statement allowing an *ārāma* (park) to monks. The one reference that I have come across to the compound Suttavibhaṅga in the Vinaya text⁶ (apart from its use as the title of the section bearing its name) is in association

¹ *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.268, n.2. ² Volume i.xxviii.f. ³ The one for the monks and the one for the nuns. ⁴ See below, **BD.1.xi**. ⁵ Vin-a.81. ⁶ **Vin.2.97**.

with *sutta*. Both these terms appear here to refer as clearly to Vinaya and not to Sutta-Piṭaka material, as do the others cited above.

As the Suttavibhaṅga has come down to us,¹ it is divided into two sections: *Pārājika* and *Pācittiya*. Between them, these two sections comprise 227 rules divided into the eight groups of the four *Pārājikas*, the thirteen *Saṅghādisesas*, the two *Aniyatas*, the thirty *Nissaggiya Pācittiyas*, the ninety-two *Pācittiyas*, the four *Pāṭidesaniyas*, the seventy-five *Sekhiyas*, and the *Adhikaraṇasamatha* rules.² Only the first three groups are contained in Volume I of *The Book of the Discipline*. There is a corresponding *Bhikkhunī-vibhaṅga*, sometimes referred to as the *Bhikkhunī-vinaya*, or Discipline for Nuns, with its set of Pātimokkha rules. This will appear in a later volume of this translation.

The Suttavibhaṅga material is usually arranged in a series of four groups:

1. a story leading up to a rule;
2. a Pātimokkha rule, which always states the penalty incurred for breaking it;
3. the Old Commentary, the *Padabhājanīya*, on each rule, defining it word by word;
4. more stories telling of deviations from the rule, and showing either that they were not so grave as to entail the maximum penalty, or that they were reasonable enough to warrant, in certain circumstances, a modification or a relaxation of the existing rule, or that they were not such as to be rendered permissible by any extenuating circumstances.

Items (3) and (4) are sometimes reversed in position, and (4) is now and again absent altogether.

The Pātimokkha rules are the core of the Suttavibhaṅga. This list of rules, or list of courses of training, was recited twice a month on the *uposatha* (observance, Sabbath, or avowal) days, held on the nights of the new and the full moon.³ In Vedic times, the *upavasatha* was a fast day kept for the preparation of and the performance of the Soma sacrifice. According

¹ For date of compilation of the Suttavibhaṅga see *Vinaya Texts*, i.xxii. ² Cf. B.C. LAW, *History Of Pali Literature*, i.46f. ³ *Vin.1.104*.

to the Pali tradition, *paribbājakas*, or wanderers belonging to other sects, also held sacred two, if not three, days in each month for the recitation of their *Dhamma*.¹ It was in imitation of this popular custom that the Sakyan *bhikkhus* assembled on these same three days. Later, apparently, these were reduced to two,² and were devoted to the recitation of the Pātimokkha rules.

BD.1.xii

This recitation served the double purpose of keeping the rules fresh in the minds of the monks and nuns, and of giving each member of the monastic community the opportunity, while the rules were being repeated or recited,³ to avow any offences that he or she had committed. After the avowal came the due punishment. In the Suttavibhaṅga, the monk is usually shown as avowing his offence to Gotama, or to one of the monks, or to a group of monks, directly [when] he had committed it, and not as waiting to avow it before the full congregation (*saṅgha*) of monks. He was thus “pure” for the *uposatha* ceremony, and could take his place at the meeting.

Oldenberg sees in the term Pātimokkha, freedom “from sins there named,”⁴ that is, in the list of rules called Pātimokkha. This is part of what amounted in Oldenberg to an obsession with “the doctrine regarding release from suffering, which forms so central an idea in the ancient Buddhist faith.”⁵ But the monks were not asked, as Oldenberg states, whether they were “free from the sins there named.” The word for “free” or “freed” would have been *vimutta*. What they were asked was whether they were *parisuddha*, quite pure, pure in the matter of having kept the rules, therefore outwardly pure. I think that if Oldenberg had looked upon the Pātimokkha as a list of rules or courses of training, as I have called them above, and not as a “list of those offences which deserved punishment or some kind of expiation,”⁶ he would not have been so much dominated by the idea of freedom from “sins.” Moreover, “sin” is not even a Sakyan conception.

This is leading us up to the derivation of the word *pāti-* (*pāṭi-*) *mokkha*. Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, following Childers, refer it to *pāṭi* (Sanskrit, *prati*) + *muc*, and see in it “disburdening, getting free.”⁷ Buddhaghosa, too, at Visuddhimagga 16, derives it from *muc*, in the sense of being free from the punishments of *niraya* (hell) and other painful rebirths. But it was

BD.1.xiii

¹ Vin.1.101. ² Vin.1.104. ³ Not “read out,” as Oldenberg says, *Vinaya Texts* i.xv. ⁴ *Vinaya Texts* i.xv. ⁵ *Vinaya Texts* i.xiv. ⁶ *Vinaya Texts* i.xv. ⁷ *Vinaya Texts*, i.xxviiif.

not the getting free that was of such importance as the being bound. This came first. Preceding the notion, if indeed it ever existed at the time when the Vinaya was compiled, that the monk should be free of sin or of the punishment for sin, came the assumption that the rules, as binding, should be followed and obeyed, and that a monk should be “bound by the restraint of the Pātimokkha” (*Pātimokkhasaṃvarasaṃvuta*).

S. DUTT is of the opinion that Pātimokkha means “bond.” He regards it as an external bond of union devised to convert the *Sect* of the *Sakya-puttiya samaṇas* into an *Order*.¹ RHYS DAVIDS and STEDE in the *Pali-English Dictionary* say that it has the “sense of binding, obligatory, obligation,” and that the Sanskrit adaptation of the Pali should be *pratimokṣya*, “that which should be made binding,” and not *prātimokṣa*. *Prātimokṣya*, according to these lexicographers, is the same as the Pali Pātimokkha, “binding, obligatory,” from *patimuñcati*, to fasten, to bind.²

Dr. E.J. THOMAS, on the other hand, says that Pātimokkha is “in Sanskrit *prātimokṣa*. In form it is an adjective formed from *patimokkha*, binding, from *pati-muc-* ‘to fasten or bind on (as armour),’ and thus should mean ‘that which binds, obligatory,’”³ thus agreeing with the definition given in the *Pali-English Dictionary*, but not with the derivation.

The word is defined in the Mahāvagga of the Vinaya as the “face, head of all good states,”⁴ but as WINTERNITZ pointed out this derivation “is quite impossible.”⁵ Winternitz himself was inclined to explain Pātimokkha as “that which is to be redeemed,”⁶ but unfortunately he did not support this statement, except by saying he thought that the correct translation of *saṃgaram Pātimokkham* of Ja.5.25 should be “a promise to be redeemed.”

BD.1.xiv

Nearly all these authorities agree that the term is borrowed from other sects, and dates from pre-Buddhist days.

The question of the composition of the Pātimokkha rules is one which, while being of the greatest interest, is not very likely to grow out of the speculative stage. This question has two sides to it: that of *when* and that of *how* the rules came to be formulated. I can only point out the existence

¹ *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.89f. ² Cf. *Vin.3.249*, *patimuñcati*, to bind on or tie on a head-pad. ³ *History of Buddhist Thought*, 15, n.1. ⁴ *Vin.1.103*. ⁵ *History of Indian Literature*, ii.22, n.2. ⁶ *History of Indian Literature*, ii.22, n.2.

of these problems, not attempting to solve them. The solution of the one would to a large extent elucidate the other.

The rules were either drawn up in their entirety in Gotama's lifetime; or they were drawn up in their entirety after his *parinibbāna* (utter waning); or some were drawn up during his lifetime and others afterwards. The last assumption is that most generally favoured by scholars, who adduce "additions and modifications," repetitions and inconsistencies, existing among the collection of rules.¹ Again, if it were held that the rules were codified into their present shape after Gotama's *parinibbāna*, this would not at all necessarily mean that they were not known and enforced during his ministry. The question of how they were composed likewise suggests three alternatives: either that some actual event led up to the framing of each rule; or that they were all formulated in readiness to meet events, but before these had occurred; or that some had an historical source, while others owe their existence to precautionary imagination.

It is conceivable that not one of the Pātimokkha rules was framed until someone, lay-followers or the more dependable monks and nuns, had seen, heard or suspected a mode of behaviour which seemed to them unfitting in a member of one of Gotama's Orders. Each rule is therefore very possibly the direct result of some actual event, and was not made with merely hypothetical cases of wrong-doing in mind. On detecting, even on suspecting that conduct unfitting in a recluse, unworthy of a monk had been perpetrated, the action was reported, as it is almost invariably stated, to Gotama, either by the errant monk himself or by those vigilant in the interests of the Order. The Suttavibhaṅga shows that if the action were found to be blameworthy, a course of training was set forth, a penalty was attached, and it henceforth became manifest that a breach of each rule of right conduct would incur a like penalty.

BD.1.xv

Prevention of unsuitable behaviour in monks and nuns seems to have rested on two bases. In the first place the presumption that a certain line of conduct had been forbidden by Gotama, apparently appealed to the purer-minded and more zealous monks. Secondly, the penalty, fixed commensurably with the breach of the rule, will doubtless have exercised a

¹ E.g. E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.14.

deterrent influence over the behaviour of some of those monks who were not susceptible to the dictates of loftier motives.

Although the framing of each major rule is without exception attributed to Gotama, it has never been suggested that at the inception of the Orders he thought over all the possible cases of wrong-doing and depravity of which the monks might be capable, and propounded a ready-made body of rules to meet every conceivable contingency. It is, however, more likely that the majority of the rules grew up gradually, as need arose, and are the outcome of historical developments that went on within the Order. At the same time it would not have been impossible for the Sakyans to have borrowed at all events the outline of a compendium of rules from other sects. We cannot tell with any degree of accuracy the historical Order in which the rules were formulated. All that can be said is, that there is no need to imagine that offences were perpetrated and rules promulgated in the order in which they now appear in the Suttavibhaṅga.

BD.1.xvi

Again, it is to my mind questionable whether all the offences, grave and petty, all the adroit evasions and twistings, all the cases of illness which prevented a rule from being carried out to the letter, all the multifarious detail of communal life, were reported to Gotama, who then pronounced his verdict, and either framed a new rule or altered an existing one.

The rules are doubtless ascribed to him so as to give them weight, but of what proportion he was in fact the author we can never know. We can merely judge that, as some of his disciples were competent to preach *dhamma*, so some would also have been competent to meet a case of wrong-doing by admonishment and rebuke, and by decreeing an appropriate penalty as a safeguard for the future. Indeed, in the Suttavibhaṅga, although by far the greater number of rules is said to have been enunciated by Gotama, many a sub-rule at least (as in [Bu-Ss.9](#), [Bu-Ss.10](#), [Bu-Ss.11](#)) is laid down without reference to the Founder. Although he remains the central figure in the Vinaya, any absence of reference to him is an indication either that some transgressions occurred and were legislated for after his *parinibbāna* (utter waning), or that, even while he was still alive, it was not thought necessary to trouble him with the entire mass of items, some of them very trivial, that was bound to arise in the organisation of “unenclosed” Orders of monks

and nuns. This was the more complicated both because the members of the Orders were, and were recognised to be, at varying stages of spiritual development, and because their behaviour was not viewed solely as it affected internal policy, but also as it affected the laity.

For the believing laity, though naturally not to the forefront in the Vinaya, are in a remarkable way never absent, never far distant. They perpetually enter into the life of the Order as supporters, critics, donors, intensely interested; and themselves affected by Sakya, it seems that they were deeply anxious for its success. Thus the Vinaya does not merely lay down sets of rules whose province was confined to an internal conventional life. For this was led in such a way as to allow and even to encourage a certain degree of intercommunication with the lay supporters and followers, no less than with those lay people who were not adherents of the faith. What was important, was that the monks should neither abuse their dependence on the former, nor alienate the latter, but should so regulate their lives as to give no cause for complaint. With these aims in view, conduct that was not thought seemly for them to indulge in had to be carefully defined; and it became drafted in rule and precept.

BD.1.xvii

Indian monasticism differs from Western in the important respect that the former stood in no need of fighting battles against temporal powers. The world in which Gotama's Orders grew up was fully in favour of experiments in religious devotion. Such struggles as there were, were not between monks and the armies of hostile kings, not between monks and the active scorn of the world, but struggles, no less heroic in intention perhaps, to strengthen the monks against themselves and their human weaknesses, to endow them with goodness and virtue as the living witnesses to man's desire for perfection, to fortify them for victory in the contest between the spirit and the flesh, between right and wrong—undying ideals to which many an ordinary layman ardently clung, but to which he could not himself aspire.

In the Vinaya literature that has come down to us, Gotama is nowhere shown as legislating for his lay-followers, as Mahāvīra did for his. Yet, even in the absence of a Vinaya for laymen, it is apparent that an attitude of toleration and common-sense admitted much that was permissible to the

worldly section of the community that was not considered to be fitting in monks. Had no difference been insisted upon, one of the most potent reasons for the existence and for the popularity of monks would have been rendered invalid. For one of the points of entering Gotama's Order was to learn control of body, mind and speech. This, it was thought, was essential to spiritual progress, and was extremely hard to attain, unless the shackles of the household life had been laid aside. Then man, as monk, could more readily attain perfection and its fruit (*arahattaphala*), the goal of brahmacariya, the good, divine, holy or Brahma-life. *Arahatta*, as the goal, was at some time in the early history of the Order substituted for that other goal: an approach to Brahma, that Highest, an approach which India, in the sixth century B.C., held that each and every man was potentially capable of making. Because religion was understood in those days, men who, according to popular estimate, showed that they were on the Way to the Highest, were this regarded as Brahma or *arahatta*, were revered and not despised.

BD.1.xviii

Yet, as in any others, the Vinaya shows that there were in Gotama's Orders indolent, lax, greedy monks and nuns, those who were lovers of luxury, seekers after pleasure, makers of discord. We should, however, be greatly mistaken if we insisted upon regarding the Order as riddled by scandal, by abuses and by minor forms of wrong-doing. There is no doubt that these existed; but there is no justification, simply because they happen to be recorded, for exaggerating their frequency, or for minimising the probity and spiritual devotion of many men who, in Gotama's days, were monks. Records of these are to be found in the Nikāyas, in the Thera-therī-gāthā; and, too much overlooked, there are in the Vinaya, the virtuous, moderate monks who, vexed and ashamed, complain of the misdemeanours of their fellows.

As historians, we must be grateful to these inevitable backsliders, for theirs is this legacy of the Pātimokkha rules. Had the Order contained merely upright, scrupulous monks and nuns—those who were steadfastly set on the goal of the Brahma-life, and those who had, in the circumstances, to voice their annoyance with the wrong-doers—in all likelihood the Vinaya, the Discipline, the Pātimokkha rules would not have come into being, and

much of the early history of the Order would now be known to us solely through the indirect and fragmentary way of the Sutta-Piṭaka.

If monks behaved in a way that was censurable in monks, this does not necessarily mean that their conduct was wrong in itself. Various activities were not only permissible for lay-people, but were fully accepted to be such as could be unquestionably pursued by them. Marriage, negotiating for parties to a marriage, trading, the owning of possessions, are cases in point. Nor could we maintain that, before a particular course of training had been made known, the conduct of a monk was necessarily reprehensible if it resembled that which was legitimate for the laity. For all monks came into the Order from the laity. Therefore if it did not at once strike them that in certain respects their behaviour should change when their vocation changed, it is only natural that in the meantime they should have indulged in pursuits for which, as laity, they had attracted no adverse criticism.

BD.1.xix

I think it very likely that some of the courses of training for monks that are included in this volume were formulated as a result of this bringing over of lay-life into the religious life; for a difference between the two had to be made, and then maintained. Others most certainly were formulated as the result of behaviour which, whether evinced by a layman or a monk, would have been regarded as equally blameworthy; others, again, to prevent the monks from being an intolerable burden on the laity; while still others were formulated so as to preserve the harmony and well-being of the Order.

Now and again, monks, contemplating a certain action which they knew to be forbidden or which they knew to be wrong, are recorded to think: "There will be no blame for me." Was this because they had done similar things while still "in the world" without incurring censure, and so thought that they would be immune from blame after they had gone forth? Or did they think that there was some reason why they personally would incur no offence for their deed? If so, spiritual pride had still to be humbled in them.

The Pātimokkha rules of the Pali Vinaya fall into eight sections, classified according to the gravity of the offence committed. Of these eight sections, only three are covered by the present volume. These are, first, the four *Pārājika* rules, framed to govern those offences, the most serious of all,

BD.1.xx

which involve “defeat,” and whose penalty is expulsion from the Order; and secondly, the thirteen *Saṅghādisesa* rules, framed for the type of offence which is so grave as to necessitate a formal meeting of the Saṅgha, or whole community of monks present in the district or in the *vihāra* where the offence was committed. The penalties incurred for a *Saṅghādisesa* offence are chiefly that of being sent back by the monks to the beginning of the probationary period, together with that of undergoing the *mānatta* discipline. The terms *pārājika*, *saṅghādisesa* and *mānatta* are shortly discussed on [BD.1.xxvif.](#), [BD.1.xxixff.](#), [BD.1.38](#), [BD.1.195f.](#) below.

Thirdly, included in this volume, are the two *Aniyata* rules, designed to meet offences whose nature is so “undetermined” that only individual circumstances can decide whether it is such as to involve defeat, or a formal meeting of the Order, thereby being linked with the two preceding sections of rules; or whether it is such as to require expiation (*pācittiya*). Because of this further possibility, the *Aniyata* rules are linked with the next group but one, the *Pācittiya* rules.

The first three *Pārājika* rules are levelled against the breach of a code of morality generally recognised and active among all civilised communities: against un-chastity, against the taking of what was not given, and against the depriving of life.

Evidently the aim of the strictures on unchastity, with which [Bu-Pj.1](#) is concerned, was partly to bring the monks into line with members of other preceding and contemporary sects whose members, having renounced the household state, had to be celibate. This notion already had history behind it by the time the Sakyan Order of monks came into being. It was a notion based as much on common-sense, as on the conviction that restraint and self-taming were indispensable factors in the winning of the fruit of a monk’s life.

BD.1.xxi

It is perhaps not necessary to believe that each or any of the many and curious forms of unchastity, mentioned in [Bu-Pj.1](#), ever was actually perpetrated by a monk. Such comprehensive treatment as is found is not needed either to support or to elucidate the meaning of the general rule. This was clear enough. It is possible, of course, that some of the delinquencies did occur, while others did not, but we do not know. In any case, it is also possible

that at the time of the final recension, each rule was minutely scrutinised and analysed, and all the deviations from it, of which the recensionists had heard or which they could imagine, were formulated and added in some kind of order. For then there would be in the future no doubt of the class of offence (E.g. *Pārājika*, *thullaccaya* or *dukkāṭa*) to which any wrong behaviour that had been or should be committed, belonged, or of what was the statutory penalty for that offence. The smooth and detailed handling of some parts of the other *Pārājika* rules and of some of the *Saṅghādisesa* rules, likewise suggests that these are the outcome, not of events, so much as of lengthy and anxious deliberations. The recensionists had a responsible task. They were legislating for the future, and they would, I think, have been determined to define in as minute a way as possible the offence already stated in a general way in each major rule.

Stealing is ranked as a *Pārājika* (**Bu-Pj.2**), or the gravest kind of offence, not merely because civilisation agrees that, for various reasons, it is wrong to take something not given. It was particularly reprehensible for a Sakyan monk to steal, since at the time of his entry into the Order he morally renounced his claim to all personal and private possessions, and should henceforth have regarded anything he used as communal property, lent to him for his needs. In addition, it may be urged that if monks were restrained from stealing, any tendencies they may have had towards greed and gluttony, towards finery and luxury, towards carelessness in the use of their requisites, would have been reduced and perhaps eradicated, thus allowing a greater margin for the exercise of unfettered spiritual endeavour.

BD.1.xxii

There is a point in **Bu-Pj.2** to which I should like to draw attention. The rules concerned with taking what was not given show that stealing something of or above a definite, though small, value, namely, five *māsakas*,¹ is a more blameworthy offence than stealing something worth less than five *māsakas*. Five *māsakas* apparently constitute the lowest commercial value that an object can have, and anything less is presumably commercially valueless and therefore negligible. But all tendency towards acquisition had to be suppressed in the monks, all inclination to regard objects in the light of possible possessions to be checked. And further, it had to be remembered

¹ Below, **BD.1.85**.

that monks might not know the exact value of some particular object.¹

In **Bu-Pj.2**, the value in *māsakas* of the object stolen becomes the standard of moral transgression, and hence the criterion of the gravity of the offence committed: to steal something of more than five *māsakas* entails defeat; to steal something of the value of from one to four *māsakas* is said to be a grave offence;² while to steal something worth less than one *māsaka* is called an offence of wrong-doing.³ Thus the gravity of the offence of stealing is shown to be to some extent dependent upon the value of the object stolen. At **Vin.1.96**, on the other hand, it is said to be an offence entailing defeat to steal even a blade of grass. These inconsistencies doubtless suggest that these rules were drawn up at different times.⁴

BD.1.xxiii

No doubt the depriving of life ranked as a *Pārājika* offence (**Bu-Pj.3**) partly because it is the very opposite of *ahimsā*, non-violence, non-injury, which was an idea prevalent in India before the advent of Sakya. Again, the teaching on rebirth and the allied teaching on *karma*, both pre-Sakyan notions, would hold that the murderer, in consequence of his deed, obstructs his progress through the worlds, until he has worked off the fruit of his action. The problems of Freewill and Predetermination find no place in Indian philosophy. Man's will is *assumed* to be free. Hence the murderer might have chosen otherwise: the deed of murdering was not pre-ordained. To incite a person to death was considered as bad as murdering him. For if praise of "the beauty of death" inspired him to die at will, if he cut himself off before he had done his time here, the fruits of past deeds, both good and ill, would still remain to be worked off by him.

It may seem strange to a European living in the twentieth century that the offences of unchastity, stealing and murder receive the same legal punishment. But different ages have different values. In England, hanging was the penalty for sheep-stealing up to modern times. And the *Pātimokkha* rules relate to more than two thousand years ago, some of them being rooted in an even more remote antiquity. Besides, we must remember that they were for monks, and not only for Sakyan monks. The Jains had precepts cor-

¹ Below, **BD.1.114**. ² *Thullaccayā*, a technical term. ³ *Dukkaṭa*, another technical term.

⁴ See *Vinaya Texts*, i.xxv, for plausible argument for the introduction of the new terms *thullaccaya* and *dukkaṭa* into the final recension of the Vinaya.

responding to these first three *Pārājika* rules, as did the common precursors of Jain and Sakyan, the *sañyāsins* or brahmin ascetics and recluses.¹

Those who had gone forth into homelessness were to withstand all temptation and ambition offered by life “in the world,” they were to be beyond the reach of its quarrels, loves and hatreds. For, if they continued to behave as those who had not gone forth, their supporters would fall away, the non-believers would think but little of them, and the believers would not increase in number.

The injunctions against unchastity, the taking of what was not given, and against the depriving of life, besides corresponding to the brahmin and Jain precepts, also correspond to the first three Buddhist *sīlas*, moral “habits,” or precepts of ethical behaviour. These, however, run in reverse order from the *Pārājikas*, and begin with the precept of refraining from onslaught on creatures. Next comes refraining from taking what was not given, and thirdly the precept of refraining from unchastity (here called *abrahmacariya*, as it is in the Jain *sūtras*). The fourth *Pārājika*, alone of the *Pārājikas*, does not find any corresponding matter among the *sīlas*. If the relation of the *Pārājikas* to the *sīlas* were worked out, some cogent reason for these discrepancies might emerge.

BD.1.xxiv

At present I can only suggest that the fourth *Pārājika*, of which I have shortly spoken elsewhere,² is concerned more with a monk's spiritual state than with his outward behaviour.³ In this it differs from the *sīlas*, and more interesting still, from the other Pātimokkha rules. These are, with the striking exception of the fourth *Pārājika*, concerned with the here and now, with the regulation of certain aspects of community life, with matters affecting the Order, with the arrangement of various mundane affairs, with questions of conduct concerning the opposite sex and the lay followers, with questions of property.

The curious fourth *Pārājika*, concerned with the offence of “claiming a state or quality of further-men” (*uttarimanussadhamma*), seems to have been fashioned in some different mould, and to belong to some contrasting

¹ See JACOBI, *Jaina Sūtras*, i.xxiii (Sacred Books of the East XXII). ² *Early Buddhist Theory of Man Perfected*, p.11ff. ³ The fifth Jain precept, to renounce all interest in worldly things, calling nothing one's own (*aparigraha*), seems to be on a rather different basis from the other Jain precepts.

realm of values. It is by no means a mere condemnation of boasting or lying in general, for it is the particular nature of the boast or the lie which makes the offence one of the gravest that a monk can commit: the boast of having reached some stage in spiritual development, only attainable after a long training in the fixed and stable resolve to become more perfect, and to make the potential in him assume actuality. The seriousness of the offence of unfoundedly claiming a state of further-men is further emphasised by the statement at *Pārājika* 4 that, if a deliberate lie is uttered in connection with such a claim, then that lie constitutes an offence entailing defeat. Yet, in the *Suttavibhaṅga*, it is far more common to find that deliberate lying ranks as an offence requiring expiation (*pācittiya*), which is not nearly so grave as one “involving defeat.”

BD.1.xxv

I have suggested elsewhere that the claiming of a state, or states, of further-men, to which the claimant was not entitled, could have only appeared as a most heinous offence to people by whom a teaching on becoming, on becoming more perfect, of going further, was held in much esteem. Perhaps the greatest of Mrs. Rhys Davids’ many contributions to the interpretation of Early Buddhism, is that this idea of becoming was of living power and force to Gotoma’s early followers. If so, one may conclude, tentatively, that the fourth *Pārājika* belongs to an ancient Sakyan stratum, and that in this, other-worldly (*lokuttara*) matters were held to be as important as, if not more so than, worldly (*loka*) matters. For I think it possible that the *Pārājikas* are arranged in an ascending scale of gravity, in which the offence held to be the worst morally, though not legally, is placed last. Be this as it may, if spiritual progress and development had not been valued by the Sakyans, to whom this precept appears to be peculiar, the offence of untruly claiming the attainment of this or that advanced spiritual state could not have ranked as a *Pārājika* offence.

It should be remarked that talk on conditions of further-men, though not absent from the *Sutta-Piṭaka*, is at no place accentuated in it. There is, for example, a *Saṃyutta* passage, which is the exact parallel of a long *Vinaya* passage, with the noteworthy exception that in the former there is no reference to *Moggallāna* as one held by other monks to be claiming a state of further-men, an imputed claim which seems to be the pivot of

BD.1.xxvi

the Vinaya passage.¹ I have chosen to translate *pārājika* by “defeat” chiefly, I admit, because Rhys Davids and Oldenberg rendered it in this way. They follow Buddhaghosa, who, to quote E.J. THOMAS,² “interprets *pārājika* as ‘suffering defeat,’ and the Mūlasarvāstivādins appear to do the same (Mahāvvyutpatti 278, 279).” The editors of *Vinaya Texts* refer “the word to the passive of *ji* (to defeat) with *parā* prefixed.”³ B.C. LAW also considers these four rules are concerned with “acts which bring about defeat.”⁴ Although it may be grammatically incorrect to refer *pārājika* to *parā-ji*,⁵ to my mind no more convincing derivation has so far been put forward. BURNOUF’s idea⁶ (adopted by CHILDERS⁷ and others) is that *pārājika* is derived from *parā + aj*, meaning a crime which involves the expulsion or exclusion of the guilty party. *parā + aj* may be a better source, grammatically speaking, for *pārājika* than is *parā + ji*. Yet, that the sense intended is “defeat,” seems to me rather less doubtful than that it is expulsion, and *aj*, though a Vedic root, meaning “to drive away,” is unknown as a root in Pali.

It might be argued that because in each promulgation of the *Pārājika* rules the words *pārājiko hoti* is followed by the word *asaṃvāso*, “not in communion,” this is because the two are complementary, *asaṃvāso* filling out the sense intended by *pārājika*. Such an argument would naturally increase the tendency to regard *pārājika* as a word standing for expulsion or exclusion, probably of a permanent nature.⁸ But may it not be that *pārājika* and *asaṃvāso* represent not complementary, but disparate ideas, the not being in communion introducing a new notion, and one connected with and dependent upon not expulsion, but defeat?

If a monk were found to be unworthy to be in communion, unfitted to take his part in the communal acts and jurisdiction, then he would have to be expelled. But equally, he would have to cease to be in communion (which would entail expulsion, either temporary or permanent), if he found that he was defeated in his endeavour “to achieve the end for which he entered the Order.”⁹

¹ SN.ii.254-262 = Vin.3.104ff. See below, BD.1.180ff. ² *History Of Buddhist Thought*, p.16, n.2.
³ *Vinaya Texts*, i.3 n. ⁴ *History of Pali Literature*, i.47, i.50. ⁵ E.g. KERN, *Manual of Indian Buddhism*, 85. ⁶ *Introduction à l’ Histoire du Bouddhisme indien*, 2nd edition, 268. ⁷ *Pali Dictionary* ⁸ E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, 16; KERN, *Manual of Indian Buddhism*, 85. ⁹ B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature*, i.47, n.1; also cf. p.50.

It is beyond all doubt that the punishment for breach of the *Pārājika* rules indeed involves expulsion. But it seems unnecessary to take the etymologically obscure *pārājika* itself to mean expulsion, when this notion is covered by the word *asaṁvāso*, with which, as I have said, *pārājika* is always coupled in the formulation of the *Pārājika* rules. In addition, it may be remarked that the Suttavibhaṅga has the verb *nāseti* (causative of *nassati*), meaning "to be expelled."¹

In such a very controversial case, I have preferred to follow the commentator. It appears very probable that many of these words: *Pātimokkha*, *Pārājika* itself, *Saṅghādisesa*, were adopted from pre-Buddhist sects, and thus had some tradition behind them. Now, it may well be that the commentator explained the word *pārājika* according to a meaning that for it and for him had become traditional. In which case, such an explanation will as truly enshrine something of the history of that word as later and inconclusive attempts at grammatical analysis. Moreover, the reference, in the third formulation of *Pārājika* 1, to not disavowing the training and not declaring weakness, together with the subsequent detailed analysis of these phrases (below, **BD.1.42ff.**), to my mind lends weight to the suggestion that a monk becomes one who is defeated (*pārājiko hoti*)² through his own inability or "weakness" to lead the Brahma-life.

BD.1.xxviii

Like the *Pārājika* rules, the *Saṅghādisesas* begin (in **Bu-Ss.2–Bu-Ss.1** is in a category apart) with four rules connected with a monk's conduct towards women. Then come two rules (**Bu-Ss.6, Bu-Ss.7**) in which injunctions for building a hut and a *vihāra* on sites approved by other monks, are set forth. The point of these rules appears to be to prevent monks from begging building materials too greedily from the laity, and to prevent them from building anywhere where animal life would be endangered or destroyed. The force of the injunction that the hut or the *vihāra* must have an open space round it, is difficult to interpret, and the Old Commentary gives no practical help. It probably means that no monk should live in a secret place. The laity, who had contributed to the building of the hut or *vihāra*, would

¹ E.g. **Vin.3.33, Vin.3.40 = BD.1.50, BD.1.62** below. ² On *hoti = bhavati* to become, see Mrs. RHYS DAVIDS, *To Become or Not to Become*, p.18ff.

very likely wish to have seen that the monk was behaving in a way worthy of their gift, and hence his conduct and habits must be open to unhindered inspection.

Bu-Ss.8 and **Bu-Ss.9** comprise rules against the defamation of one monk by another. Then come two against the making of a schism in the Order, while **Bu-Ss.12** is concerned with the offence that a monk incurs if he is difficult to speak to. All such transgressions, leading to disharmony in the Order, would have made it hard for the Order to maintain itself and to progress. And if there had been repeated quarrels, discord and stubbornness, the Order would have become discredited among its lay supporters.

The twelfth *Saṅghādisesa* should be compared with the Anumāna Sutta.¹ The Old Commentary's definition of *dubbacajātika*, "difficult to speak to" (**Vin.3.178** = **BD.1.311** below), is word for word the same as the Anumāna's description of the monk whom his fellows consider unfit to be taught or, instructed.² Buddhaghosa states³ that the Ancients (*porāṇā*) called this Sutta the Bhikkhu-Pātimokkha. This leads us to wonder if the twelfth *Saṅghādisesa* indeed represents some specially ancient fragment of the Pātimokkha, and whether, while the rules were being shaped, refusal to take the training with deference and respect appeared amongst the earliest offences that a monk could commit.

BD.1.xxix

The last and thirteenth *Saṅghādisesa* rule is against bringing families into disrepute. This, again, would make the Order unpopular among the lay followers. It must be remembered that it was considered highly important to propitiate these, to court their admiration, to keep their allegiance, to do nothing to annoy them. For without their active interest and support the Order could not have endured. It is true that, had it been disbanded, the Sakyaputtīyas, as individuals, would not have come to starvation. For the "holy man," be he *samaṇa*, *sādhu*, *saṅgyāsin* or *fakir*, in India always has had his physical needs fulfilled. And some Sakyaputtīyas doubtless could have reverted to a household life; while others might have gone to dwell in the forests, there to subsist on fruits and roots (*phalamūla*), and to dress in bark and antelopes' hides, as did some of their brahmin precursors

¹ MN15. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.742, says that this Sutta is one of the five spoken for the disciples of the four groups (i.e., monks and nuns, male and female lay-followers). ² MN.i.95, line 12ff. ³ MN-a.ii.67.

and contemporaries. But, in fact, the Order became a powerful magnet, attracting men and women from many and various families, classes, trades and occupations, from the ranks of the Jains and Wanderers (*paribbājaka*). Historically, the success of the Early Buddhist experiment in monasticism must be in great part attributed to the wisdom of constantly considering the susceptibilities and criticisms of the laity.

BD.1.xxx Like the meaning of *pārājika*, the meaning of *saṅghādisesa* is controversial. Again B.C. LAW¹ and I follow *Vinaya Texts* in rendering *saṅghādisesa* as offences (or rules or matters) which require a formal meeting of the Order.

Now, one part of the penalty imposed for a breach of any one of the thirteen *Saṅghādisesa* rules, namely, a return to the beginning of the probationary period, has apparently led KERN, for example, to describe the *Saṅghādisesas* as offences “involving suspension and a temporary exclusion”²—from the Order or from taking part in its legal procedure is not made clear, though the latter must be meant. The other part of the penalty, namely, the necessity of undergoing the *mānatta* discipline, has apparently led E.J. THOMAS,³ for example, to describe these offences as those which involve “a period of penance and reinstatement by the Assembly.” BURNOURF suggests⁴ that *saṅghādisesa* means “that which should be declared to the Saṅgha from the beginning to the end.” He further states that the Chinese syllables, *pho chi cha*, the equivalents of *ādisesa*, are “probably altered.” This may be because the Pali had already been altered from some more definite phrase containing less ambiguity and obscurity. CHILDERS suggests⁵ that this class of offence is so called because as much in the beginning (*ādi*) as in the end (*sesa*) a Saṅgha is required to administer the stages of penalty and ultimately rehabilitation.

Neither of the descriptions—suspension or penance—is contained etymologically in the word *saṅghādisesa*. That both were penalties incurred by this type of offence is indubitable. But by derivation, the compound *saṅghādisesa* could not possibly mean either suspension, *mānatta* discipline or reinstatement. Comparison with the Sanskrit brings us no nearer to an

¹ *History of Pali Literature* 47, 50. ² *Manual of Indian Buddhism*, p.85. ³ *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.17. ⁴ *Introduction à l'History du Bouddhisme indien*, 2nd edition, p.269. ⁵ *Pali Dictionary*.

elucidation. For as KERN remarks,¹ “Neither a Sanskrit *Saṅghāvaśesa* nor *Saṅghātiśesa*, i.e. remnant of the Saṅgha, renders a satisfactory meaning.”

BD.1.xxxi

In the circumstances it is best to allow that we are in the realm of ancient technicalities, whose exact significance the passage of time has dimmed. In a translation, we can, however, pay due regard to the only member of the compound *saṅghādisesa* which is neither grammatically obscure nor controversial. This is *saṅgha*, meaning for Sakya the Order, or any part of the whole Order resident within a certain boundary, district or *vihāra*. That the offence could not be settled without the intervention of the Order is a point for which there is the support of the Old Commentary. This states clearly that “it is the Order which places (the wrong-doer) on probation, it sends (him) back to the beginning, it inflicts the *mānatta*, it rehabilitates.”² Moreover, as noted by Childers, Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, this type of punishment had to be enforced, could only be enforced, by formal resolutions (*saṅghakamma*) carried at meetings of the Order.

It is just possible that *kamma*, most usually work, which the Old Commentary states is a synonym for this class of offence, has also a specialised sense of “proceedings, ceremony performed by a lawfully constituted Saṅgha of monks.” Such proceedings were formal in character, with motions and resolutions, and rules for their validity. Thus, if *kamma* were indeed a synonym for this class of offence, and if it means acts of a formal nature, then what *saṅghādisesa* means is a type of offence whose punishment must be meted out by some formal administration on the part of the Order.

It may well be that the penalty for every class of offence could be imposed, or came at some time to be regarded as effective, only as the result of the jurisdiction of the Order met together in solemn conclave. This, however, would not prove that the word *saṅghādisesa* does not contain some special reference to the Order as that instrument which, in this type of offence, administers the penalty. It is more than possible that some of the other rules were known and named before the codification of the Pātimokkha, but that the penalty for breaking them could be imposed by one or more individuals. Otherwise it could hardly have been necessary for the Old Commentary expressly to state that it is the Order, and not one man or many persons,

BD.1.xxxii

¹ *Manual of Indian Buddhism*, p.85, n.9. ² See below, [BD.1.196](#).

which imposes the *Saṅghādisesa* penalties.¹

As S. DUTT shrewdly observes,² “It is significant that only one of the group of offences (*Saṅghādisesa*) is mentioned as coming within the disciplinary jurisdiction of the Saṅgha, and it is in the case of this group only that certain penalties to be imposed upon the *bhikkhu*, even against his will ... viz. *Parivāsa* and *Mānatta*, are laid down. In the case of the other offences it is nowhere stated or suggested in the *Pātimokkha* itself that the Saṅgha should have jurisdiction over them, and no mode of exercising such jurisdiction is defined, as in the case of the *Saṅghādisesas*.”

It is not impossible that originally the various Saṅghas, which were really sub-divisions of the whole Saṅgha, exercised their jurisdiction over each individual member only in the case of the *Saṅghādisesa* offences, only coming later to exercise such jurisdiction in the case of all classes of offence. If this is so, we do well, I think, to underline the formalities which the *Saṅghādisesa* offences entailed, and were very likely alone in so doing at first. For by this means some early feature of the Order’s history may be kept in mind.

The two *Aniyatas*, or undetermined matters, evince a remarkable amount of trust put in a woman lay-follower. Doubtless Visākhā was one of the most generous patrons of the Order, a great supporter of the faith, to whom the Order had full reason to be grateful. Here she is shown expostulating with Udāyin for what seemed to her unsuitable behaviour in a monk. The interesting thing is that both the *Aniyata* rules, generalised as are all the *Pātimokkha* courses of training from a particular case, allow a monk “to be dealt with” according to what a trustworthy woman lay-follower should say. Thus Visākhā, herself eminently trustworthy and single-minded in her efforts to improve conditions in the Order, is instrumental in bringing to all reliable women lay-followers the responsibility of procuring investigation into a monk’s conduct, if she has seen him sitting secluded with a woman. These two *Aniyata* rules indicate the respect and deference that was, at that time, paid to women. They were not scornfully brushed aside as idle gossips and frivolous chatter-boxes, but their words were taken seriously.

¹ See below, [BD.1.196](#). ² *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.105.

It may be pointed out here that the Vinaya shows, that if monks went astray, this was not always due to the baneful influence of women. For now and again monks took the initiative, and begged and cajoled laywomen and even nuns. Sometimes they got what they wanted, at others the women stood firm. When they asked lewd questions, women are shown as being innocent of their meaning.¹ It is also apparent from the two *Aniyatas* that women of the world might do certain things with impunity, but that those same things, if done by Sakyan recluses, were blameworthy. Their life was to be organised on a different basis, as *Pārājika* 1 shows, from that of the laity, and a recognition of this, and attempts to preserve the difference, are visible in many parts of Vinaya III.

The Old Commentary, or Padabhājanīya, is now incorporated in the Suttavibhaṅga, and forms an integral part of it. Since it explains each Pātimokkha rule word by word, so that we get from it the meaning which the words possessed at all events at the time when the Old Commentary was compiled, this ancient exegesis, often of very great interest, is a most valuable critical apparatus. The purpose of the Old Commentary was evidently to make each rule absolutely clear, so that no misconception could arise through lack of lucid definition. Words not contained in the rule, but appearing in the stories, are not commented upon.

BD.1.xxxiv

Rhys Davids and Oldenberg think that when the rules had been formulated and each word interpreted, some explanation was wanted as to how the rules originated. Thus, they hold, stories were invented to introduce each rule. Personally I do not think it necessary to take quite such a hard-and-fast view. For it seems to me possible that in some cases the story may be true, or may have had some historical foundation, so that the rule came to be made on account of the self-same events which, later, were recorded. In other cases, the story may quite possibly be an invention, the original reason for framing the rule and the name of the first wrong-doer involved having long been forgotten. It would now be very difficult to judge which stories may be more or less true and which may be purely fictitious.

¹ [BD.1.219](#) below.

The point of the series of short stories or incidents, which usually follow the Old Commentary's exegesis, is to show what exceptions could be made to a rule, what exemptions were permissible, what lesser and sometimes what graver offences were incurred, and what was an offence from which there could be no exemption since it tallied in all its main respects with that which had led to the framing of the rule. These stories are not invariably ascribed to any particular person, as are those introducing the rule. They not seldom attach the behaviour which needs consideration to "a certain monk."

These stories reveal the existence of different grades of penalty for different types of offence against the main rules. Not merely are there five great classes of offences—*Pārājika*, *Sanhādisesa*, *Nissaggiya Pācittiya*, *Pācittiya* and *Pāṭidesaniya*—there are also *thullaccaya* (grave) offences, and *dukkaṭa* offences (those of wrong-doing). These are of constant recurrence in the stories, or "Notes giving the exceptions to, and extensions of, the Rule in the Pātimokkha."¹ Of rarer appearance are offences of wrong speech. One or other of these offences is said to be incurred if behaviour has approximated to that which a particular Pātimokkha rule has been designed to restrain, but which is, so far as can be judged, not so grave in nature as a breach of the rule itself, because of certain differences in its execution, or because of certain extenuating circumstances.

BD.1.xxxv

Sometimes the stories are grouped together to form a set. Although, where this occurs, each story may show no more than a minute variation from the others, they are all set out at length. Putting the gist of the stories into general terms, each one would then read something as follows: If this is done, but not that, though the other thing is done, such and such an offence is incurred. If this is done and that, but not the other thing, such and such an offence is incurred. If this is not done, but that is done, and the other thing is (is not) done, such and such an offence is incurred. And so on through permutation and combination of deeds done or not done, until the final case is achieved where no offence is incurred.

These groups of stories are apt to be tedious to Western readers. I have therefore put them, when they occur, into a smaller type, as also other

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.xix.

passages concerned with small shades of differences. Doubtless such meticulous detail was useful in defining exactly what was lawful and what was not lawful for monks to do, and in preventing the evasions which from time to time they seemed ready to attempt. As history, these stories are as interesting in evincing an Oriental love and management of detail as in revealing items of topical value in regard to manners and customs. The manner and time of their formulation are as problematical as those of the major rules.

At the end of each *Pārājika*, *Saṅghādisesa* and *Aniyata* Rule, general circumstances are stated where the breach of the rule is riot to be counted as an offence. The most comprehensive of these is when a monk is mad, in pain or a beginner. Others have a more specialised import. Thus, for example, there is said to be no offence if a monk had some course of behaviour forced upon him, but did not consent to it (as in *Bu-Pj.1*); if he did something accidentally, not intending to do it (as in *Bu-Pj.3*); if he did something unsuitable, being under a misapprehension (as in *Bu-Pj.2*).

BD.1.xxxvi

The occasions when it is stated that no offence is incurred are all remarkable for their humane and lenient tone, for their reasonableness and common-sense. Thus there is no offence if something not given is taken for the sake of food (*Bu-Pj.2.7.38*), or is only taken for the time being (*Bu-Pj.2.7.40*), it being assumed, apparently, that there was the intention of returning it. Again, two occasions are recorded¹ where a monk died, in the one case through being tickled,² and in the other through being trod upon.³ Yet no murderous act was done, or the verdict would have been different, and not that “there is no offence involving defeat.” It seems probable that the monks who died were nervy, delicate or infirm, and received a shock or heart-attack resulting in their death, but had they been in normal health they would have come to no harm.

¹ *Vin.3.84* (= *BD.1.145*, *BD.1.146* below). ² *aṅgulipatodaka*. *Pali-English Dictionary* has “nudging with the fingers,” *Critical Pali Dictionary* “tickling with the fingers.” *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.113 has in the text “nudging one another with the fingers,” but *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.113, n.3, in referring to the above Vinaya passage (= *Vin.4.110*) says: “It must there mean ‘tickling.’” *GS.iv.225* (*AN.iv.343*) has “poking one another with the fingers.” ³ Or *ottharati* may mean to spread out, to stretch out.

It must be admitted that several early literatures have a coarse side. That the translations of Pali canonical works have so far been not in the least offensive, is mainly, or it may be said only, because the Sutta-Piṭaka and the Abhidhamma-Piṭaka deal chiefly with spiritual matters. The Vinaya, on the other hand, being concerned with behaviour, is forced occasionally to go into some aspects of life irrelevant to the subject-matter of the other two Piṭakas. Such expositions are, however, almost entirely confined to *Pārājika* 1 and *Saṅghādisesa* 1.

BD.1.xxxvii

With regard to this preservation of crude passages in the Vinaya, three points must be insisted upon. In the first place they were neither spoken nor written down for a general public, but were intended only for the devotees of celibacy. Secondly, the motive which led to their being uttered or written down was not a desire to shock, but the need to prevent unchastity. Thirdly, the pattern on which the compilers of the Suttavibhaṅga worked was one of almost unbelievable detail, for in their efforts to be lucid, case after case of possible or actual deviation from the general rule was investigated, penalised and perpetuated. Hence it cannot justly be said that the tendency to be detailed is greater or more insistent in one *Pārājika*, or in one *Saṅghādisesa*, than in others. Such lack of restraint as is found may be embarrassing to us, but it must be remembered that early peoples are not so much afraid of plain speech as we are. No stigma of indecency or obscenity should therefore be attached to such Vinaya passages as seem unnecessarily outspoken to us. For they were neither deliberately indecent nor deliberately obscene. The matters to which they refer had to be legislated for as much as had matters of theft and murder, of choosing sites for huts and *vihāras*.

Nevertheless the differences in the outlook of an early society and a modern one may easily be forgotten or disregarded. I have therefore omitted some of the cruder Suttavibhaṅga passages, and have given abbreviated versions of others, while incorporating them in their unabridged state in Pali in an Appendix, and marking them by an asterisk in the text. Even in omitting or expurgating such passages, I yet think that they are interesting historically, scientifically and psychologically, even psycho-analytically, and that they might be of value to anyone making a detailed comparison of

Eastern and Western Monachism.

Of the various forms of address recorded in **Vin.3.1-194** (to which this volume of translation corresponds), the most frequent are *bhagavā*, *bhante*, *bho*, *āyasmā*, *āvuso*, *ayya*, *bhagini*. I will do no more now than briefly indicate them, leaving a fuller investigation to the Introduction to the final volume, when all the Vinaya data for modes of address will be before us.

BD.1.xxxviii

Only Gotama is recorded to be addressed as *bhagavā*. This, therefore, is a very honourable term, which I have rendered by “lord.”

Bhante, one of several vocative forms of *bhavant*, is of very frequent occurrence. When Gotama is addressed as *bhante*, I have used the rendering “lord.” In order to preserve this appellation for him alone, when the named and unnamed monks who are his disciples are addressed as *bhante*, I have used the rendering “honoured sir.”

Bho (plural *bhonto*), another vocative form of *bhavant*, appears to be a more familiar form of address than is *bhante*, and is used as between equals, or from a superior to an inferior. It is of fairly frequent occurrence, sometimes being followed by another vocative, such as a proper name. I have translated *bho* as “good sir.”

Āyasmā is not a form of address. It is an honorific designation, and is the most usual way in which monks and *theras* are referred to in the narrative, followed by their proper name. I have translated it as “the venerable.” Nuns are never designated by this term, nor are lay-people.

Āvuso may be said to be the habitual mode of address used between monks. The only other word that they appear to use in speaking to one another is *bhante*.¹ They are also recorded to address laymen as *āvuso*, and this practice is sometimes reversed, although the laity seem more usually to have said *bhante* in speaking to the monks, sometimes combined with

BD.1.xxxix

¹ FRANKE in *Journal of the Pali Text Society*, 1908, holds that the Cullavagga Council reports were invented exercises to show ways of address. His argument is based on the decree of DN.ii.154, ascribed to the dying Gotama, after which seniors were to address juniors as *āvuso*, while juniors were to address seniors as *bhante*. The terms *āvuso* and *bhante* were also in use among the Jains, cf. *Āyāramgasutta* (PTS edition), e.g. p.106.

ayya. I have translated *āvuso* as “your reverence” and “reverend sir.” Since *āvuso* is masculine in form, it was never used in addressing nuns.

Ayya and *ayyo* (nominative plural used as a vocative) are frequently used in speaking of a person and in addressing him, both directly and obliquely. It appears to be more flexible than the other terms noted above, both with regard to those who use it and with regard to those to whom it is applied. I have translated it as “master” if followed by a proper name, and as “the master” if this is not the case. It is not infrequently combined with *bhante*. *Ayya* was an epithet in use among the laity, as well as between the laity and the monks. But in the part of the Vinaya translated in this volume it does not happen that a lay-person is addressed as *ayya* by a monk, or that any monk is so addressed by a fellow-monk.

Although monks did not address their fellows in the Brahma-life as *ayya*, nuns use *ayye* (feminine, “lady, noble lady”) in speaking to one another. Laywomen also use this form of address in speaking to nuns and to other laywomen. Monks, however, never appear to address either nuns or laywomen as *ayye*.

Bhagini, “sister,” is the most usual way in which monks are recorded to address both laywomen and nuns. Yet nuns do not, as far as is recorded, address one another as *bhagini*. Unluckily, in this portion of the Vinaya there are no records of intercommunication between nuns and laywomen, so we get here no indication of how they addressed one another.

From these short notes it will have emerged that the words *bhikkhu* and *bhikkhuni* do not occur as forms of address used between the two sections of the religious community, any more than that lay-people address monks and nuns with these terms. On the other hand, Gotama is sometimes recorded to address a monk as *bhikkhu*, and also to refer to individual monks in this fashion. And there is a certain story ([Vin.3.131](#) = [BD.1.220](#) below) in which a female wanderer addresses a monk as *bhikkhu*. In the narrative, monks are ordinarily spoken of as *bhikkhu*, unless the personal name of the monk concerned has been recorded. If it has, it is usually preceded by *āyasmā*, and never, I think, by *bhikkhu*. On the other hand, the narrative, if referring to a nun, consistently calls her *bhikkhunī*, and this description precedes her proper name, if this has been recorded. In this part of the Suttavibhaṅga

there are no records showing Gotama speaking with nuns, so we have no means of knowing how he usually addressed them. When speaking of them, he is, however, recorded to have used the word *bhikkhunī*.

The translation of the term *bhikkhu* presents many difficulties. I have selected the term “monk” and have rejected “mendicant, almsman, brother, friar,” not necessarily because “monk” is the most literal, but, for reasons which I will state shortly, it appears to me the best and most suitable rendering.

Although neither “monk,” nor the terms rejected, are precise equivalents for *bhikkhu*, I could not find sufficient grounds for leaving *bhikkhu* untranslated, as though it were untranslatable. Further, I became more and more convinced that where an English word is possible, where it coincides to some extent with the significance of the Pali, although the known facts of history preclude full identity of meaning, it is more desirable to use it than to leave the word untranslated. Untranslated words are balking to the English reader, and it is for the English reader that this series is primarily designed. But before giving the reasons which determined my choice of “monk” as the nearest equivalent for *bhikkhu*, a few words must be said about each of the terms that has not been selected.

“Mendicant,” literally “a beggar for alms,” from *mendicare*, to beg, *mendicus*, “a beggar,” is also doubtless etymologically correct¹ as a translation of *bhikkhu*. Yet, I think, it lays too much emphasis on one aspect only of the *bhikkhu*'s life, and ignores the other connotations of *bhikkhu* adduced by the Old Commentary,² as well as his functions of meditation and preaching. Moreover, in English it has no feminine, unless one falls back on the cumbersome “woman (or female) mendicant” as one is forced to say “woman (or female) slave” (*dāsī*) and “woman (or female) recluse” (*samaṇī*), a practice to be avoided as far as possible.

Professor B.M. BARUA speaks of the *bhikṣus* as “Buddhist mendicants, monks or recluses,”³ a sentence which well shows the hesitation which all

¹ *Introduction à l' Histoire du Bouddhisme indien*, 2nd edition, p.245, where he says that the sense of the word *bhikkhu* means exactly “one who lives by alms.” ² *Vin.3.24*. ³ *Maskarī as an Epithet of Gośāla*, *Indian History Quarterly*, iii.2, p.253.

translators must feel in trying to translate the term *bhikkhu*. An objection here would be, though it is a fault into which we all fall, that “Buddhist” is an anachronism, since “Buddhist” and “Buddhism” are terms of a much later invention. “Sakyan mendicant” would be possible; and it is true that here, as in all the other translations for *bhikkhu* that are being considered, the word “Sakyan” is wanted in all cases where it is necessary to distinguish the monastic followers of Gotama from those adherents of other sects who were also known as *bhikṣu*. But I doubt if the Pali Canon demands the drawing of such a distinction, for in it, I believe, the term *bhikkhu* denotes exclusively the Sakyan *bhikkhu*. Moreover, if it came to the feminine, the phrase “Sakyan female mendicant” would be unwieldy, and it seems a pity to use three words where two should suffice.

“Almsman” has “almswoman” for its feminine, and is further doubtless etymologically correct. For *bhikṣa* and *bhikṣuḥ* (Sanskrit) are the noun and participle derived from the desiderative base of *bhaj*, to beg, to beg for alms. But again, like “mendicant,” it lays too strong a stress on one aspect only of what the words *bhikkhu* and *bhikkhunī* came to stand for. For the Sakyan *bhikkhu* came to be much more than one dependent on others for the necessities of life. This is one of the reasons why I have not adopted LORD CHALMERS’ rendering of “almsman”¹ here, as I have elsewhere.² Again, “almsman” may not inevitably mean one who asks for or who lives on alms, for it may also be used to mean a giver of alms. In addition, “almsman” would have a cumbrous translation in German and some other European languages. Hence I think that, as a possible rendering, it should be rejected.

“Brother” is, as a translation of *bhikkhu*, historically incorrect. It is the term by which *bhikkhu* is rendered in the Cambridge translation of the Jātakas, and the English title of the PTS translation of the Theragāthā reads “Psalms of the Brethren.” *Thera* is merely a *bhikkhu* of long standing. In spite of the recommendation for “brother” derived from its use in these works, the advance in Pali studies since the date of their publication shows that *bhikkhu* does not mean what “brother” means. It might be argued that the term “brother” draws attention to the *bhikkhu*’s relation to his fellow-members of the religious community, and that such a relation was

BD.1.xlii

¹ *Further Dialogues of the Buddha.* ² *Women under Primitive Buddhism.*

explicitly recognised, in so far as *bhikkhus* addressed the *bhikkhunīs* not as *bhikkhuni* but as *bhagini*, “sister.”

Yet against this argument we must set the fact that neither Order looked to anyone or to any kind of being as their “father” or their “mother.” Nor were the *vihāras* ruled over by anyone corresponding to an abbot, father or bishop. Power of authority was not vested in an individual, but in the Pāti-mokkha courses of training and the Order (*Saṅgha*) of monks. All that can be said is, that the *bhikkhus* were “brethren” to the extent that, apart from the three grades of *theras* (Elders), those of middle standing, and novices, no hierarchy existed among them, but terms of more or less equality.

There is, besides, another argument, to my mind so insuperable as to extinguish the claims of “brother” as in any way a suitable term by which to render *bhikkhu*. For *bhātar*, the accepted word for “brother,” and one in current terminology, was never apparently regarded as synonymous with *bhikkhu*, and indeed never seems to have been connected with members of the Order. These are never recorded to address one another or laymen as *bhāta*. Nor do the lay-people so address them. Had “brother” been wanted, had it been able to fulfil some purpose in the monastic life, surely *bhātar* would have been used, for it was to hand. As it is, the word seems to have been restricted in its use to the relationship of blood-brothers,¹ and even among the laity *bhāta* was not used in address, but *tāta* (dear).

BD.1.xliii

With this absence of *bhātar* as a term used in the religious life, it is curious that monks used its opposite, *bhaginī*. But it should be noted that they addressed laywomen as well as nuns as *bhagini*. Hence the word *bhaginī* is clearly precluded from containing any unique reference to *bhikkhunīs*. Thus the two terms, *bhaginī* and *bhikkhunī* cannot be said to be precisely equivalent in meaning. The latter is applicable to women to whom the former is not applicable. Yet the implication remains, if words mean anything, that monks regarded women as “sisters,” while they did not regard men as “brothers.” There must be some historical reason for this. I venture to suggest that the celibacy to which the monk was consecrated was answerable for his looking upon women as *bhaginī*. But I am not prepared to say that this is the whole story, although I believe that it may be the root of the

¹ E.g. at Thig.408, Ja.1.308.

matter.¹

“Friar,” although it has the English feminine “friaress,” does not appear to me such an acceptable rendering for *bhikkhu* as is “monk.” It is true that friars are much more than mendicants or almsmen, as a *bhikkhu* is, or came to be, much more than one who merely begs for alms. When, in the West, mendicancy became symbolic under St. Francis, the friars were to beg, as other poor men. The Sakyan *bhikkhu*, too, had to beg. Yet the growing belief that merit was to be acquired by giving in many cases inspired the laity to give before they had been begged. Hence begging did not take, such a high place in the duties of Gotama’s Order as it did in the West after St. Francis’ death; and I doubt if, in India, it was ever symbolic.

BD.1.xliv

On the other hand, “friar,” being derived from *la*, is open to the same general objections as is “brother.” Moreover, the Western friar, a later development than the monk, and with the monastic tradition behind him, never aimed at saving himself. He was a brother to the whole world, and went about talking to people at the wayside, to birds and animals; while the prime concern of *bhikkhus*, however much they may have preached, was with the attainment of their own perfection.

Having now considered various arguments for and against mendicant, almsman, brother, friar as translations of *bhikkhu*, I will put forward the reasons which led me to choose “monk” for this term, and “nun” for *bhikkhunī*. It may be that only a profound study of Western Monachism could fully justify or condemn this choice, but from a superficial study it would appear that the similarities between a “monk” and a *bhikkhu* outweigh their differences. These similarities and differences must be judged by the historical associations of the two words. Etymologically they are not connected. Yet in the East and in the West there were these movements, comparable in a general way, though varying in detail, towards ordering and organising religious life in a fashion that necessitated its devotees renouncing their former modes of life and their former worldly pre-occupations.

The two words, monk and *bhikkhu*, are the outcome of certain and definite historical tendencies. Because these did not follow the same course of development in East and West, the two words, although comparable in

¹ Cf. SN.iv.110, where, however, there is also mention of the “mother-mind” and “daughter-mind.”

meaning, are not synonymous. For each is the expression of a particular phase of that development. If this is borne in mind, if we remember that we are dealing with historical variations of a common tendency, it will seem to us less remarkable that Western terminology offers no equivalent with which the term *bhikkhu* can be made exactly to fit, and more remarkable that a study in comparisons is as possible as it is.

BD.1.xlv

The Western monk, coming into Europe from the East, has, like the Buddhist *bhikkhu*, a long and complicated history, and monks of one century and Order differ considerably from monks of another century and Order. The word monk (*monachus*) is derived from *monos*, meaning "alone." For originally monks abandoned the worldly life for the sake of that solitude in which, by meditation and contemplation, they could attempt to save their souls. Communion with God would enable their souls to be entered by God. Later the outward forms of monkdom changed, and monks came to live a communal life in convents, observing the Rule of the Order which they had entered, and taking the vows of poverty, chastity and obedience. It was the monk's great work to go out into the world so as to save men and to bring men to God. A separate development, a still further change displaced the monk's earlier ideal of finding his own salvation while leading the life of a hermit or anchorite in the desert. Moreover, as monasticism developed, century by century, the early communal poverty gave way to communal plenty. Monasteries became land-owners, monks became cultivators of the soil, makers of various kinds of produce, copyists of manuscripts, store-houses of learning, although by none of these activities was individual property or gain supposed to result.

Now the Buddhist *bhikkhu* did not live alone, but in communities; and there is nothing in the derivation of *bhikkhu* comparable to *monos*. *Bhikkhu*, *bhikṣu* is from the desiderative base of *bhaj*, to beg, to beg alms. On the other hand, he did go into seclusion for meditation during the "day-sojourn" (*divāvihāra*, cf. *siesta*), and sometimes for longer periods he retreated to lonely spots far from the haunts of men. And possibly in his earlier history, as *bhikṣu*, he was one who lived alone, only gradually coming to live in a community, as the monk came later to lead a cenobitic life. Part of the moral duty of the Buddhist *bhikkhu* was, if he had talent that way, to go forth and

BD.1.xlvi

give *Dhamma* for the sake of *devas* and mankind. In this he resembles certain Orders of Western Monachism which had as their mission the salvation of the world. The early Friars, too, did wayside teaching and preaching, but later this was regulated by authority and made orthodox. Monks, in Gotama's Order, were certainly not segregated, and the Vinaya reveals all manner of inter-communication between the religious and the lay sections of society.

In order to give *dhamma*, the *bhikkhu* had to tour the countryside for nine months in each year. This would also prevent him from being a constant drain on the resources of the laity at any one place. But he was forbidden to travel during the three months of the rains. In this there was nothing similar to the Benedictine "vow of stability," by which a monk undertook to remain permanently at one house. This vow was imposed because wandering ascetics had become a nuisance, whereas Buddhist monks had to stay in one fixed abode for the rains, lest in journeying during this season they should harm the young crops or destroy animal life. A motive such as the latter was far from the thoughts of Western monks, one of whose many activities was to tend the crops and dig the soil. Their view of life did not include a close kinship existing between men and animals, and even the Friars, who spoke to the animals as their "brothers," did not suggest that a man might be undergoing rebirth as an animal (*tiracchāna-gata*).

It may also be supposed that the nine months of touring was made obligatory on a Buddhist monk in order to keep him healthy. The heaviest manual work he did was the washing, bleaching and beating of his robes, and now and again repairs to buildings. This was not because the entrants into the Order were weak, decrepit or sick. It was because the nature of the beliefs which they held made work on the land impossible for them. In the West, agriculture and all forms of manual labour were regarded as essentials in the main work. They served the further purpose of helping the conquest of the spirit in its perpetual battle with the flesh, and of sharpening and toughening the monks against the vice of *acedia*. The Eastern *bhikkhu* who, on account of the climate, might have been more prone to this was, I think it reasonable to hold, fortified against sloth and indolence by the discomforts of journeying on foot (for the use of vehicles was not allowed), no less than

by preaching and by spiritual exercises.

The Buddhist *bhikkhu* has to renounce his worldly possessions before he is ordained, and after his ordination he should own no private property, but should regard his bowl and robe and other requisites as being the communal property of the Order, lent to him for his use. He should lead a life of chastity. He should be obedient to the Pātimokkha courses of training. In these particulars his case closely resembles that of an European monk. But, and here is a great difference between the Western monk and the *bhikkhu*, as understood in the sixth century B.C. in India: there were no vows for a Sakyan *bhikkhu* to take. He did not make any vows, did not bind himself by vows. If he attempted right behaviour, this was because his spiritual training had led to the taming of the self. But where this was of no avail, penalties were inflicted and the discipline was tightened, sometimes in ways which left no loop-holes for laxity.

If there were no initial vows, far less were there any "final vows," making a return to life "in the world" extremely difficult, if not impossible. For even after the second ordination ceremony, the *upasampadā*; a *bhikkhu* was able, if he wished, to "leave the Order," *vibbhamati*, as is the Vinaya word, and to "turn back to the low life of the layman," *hīnāyavattati*, as is the Piṭakan expression. What was binding on the *bhikkhu* was the one rule, the Pātimokkha, under which he lived, the one training and the one work, as the definition of "in communion" at the end of each *Pārājika* rule shows, If he was not at one with these, he was defeated and expelled from the Order.

BD.1.xlviii

A *bhikkhu* goes for alms, he begs, silently, for alms; he is entirely dependent on the laity for food, robes, lodgings and medicine. In the great centuries of Western Monachism monks, far from being beggars for alms, were the donors of abundant charity. *Bhikkhus* received alms, they did not give them. If a *bhikkhu* received no *kaṭhina* cloth at the time of its distribution, he wore rags taken from the dust-heap. Moreover, a mark of the *bhikkhu* is that he is one who wears the patchwork cloth (*bhinnapaṭadhara*). For even gifts of robe-material had to be made up, not whole, but in pieces, symbolical of a beggar's rags. The "yellow robes" of a *bhikkhu* are comparable to the Western "habit," the frock and cowl.

In looking for points of contact between "monks" and *bhikkhus*, their

relation to the lay-followers might be adduced. In, for instance, a Cistercian abbey the brethren were divided into the monks (*monachi*) and the lay-brothers (*conversi*). The Buddhist Order had its lay-followers. But there, I think, the similarity between the Buddhists and the Cistercians ends. For the Buddhist lay-followers of the faith, in supporting the religious exponents and answering their call of poverty, did not regard them as the means of transmitting their gifts of charity to other needy laity. These gifts were made to and for the *bhikkhus*, and there the matter ended. Nor were the lay-followers organised as were the *conversi*. They did not live in the *vihāras* and they had no cloistral duties to perform. These were executed by those *bhikkhus* who had been duly appointed to various offices, such as that of food-distributor, assigner of lodgings, robe-distributor, silver-remover, and so forth, offices comparable to those of almoner, kitchener, cellarer of the Western convent, and which in Cistercian abbeys were performed by the *conversi*. The *vihāras* did not receive laity as guests; they only received monks from other districts. In Western monasteries the entertainment of lay-visitors was a very important matter.

BD.1.xlix

The wide scope of meaning compressed into the word *bhikkhu* is doubtless an indication that the word was of gradual growth, its significance increasing as the object which it connoted acquired more and more aspects and characteristics. I think the plain historic fact is that originally *bhikkhus* were no more than “men of the scrap-bowl.” To this was added, for their greater merit, the meaning of men who, besides living on begged meats, had broken away from this or that undesirable state, and had assumed various distinguishing marks.

In spite of the differences between *bhikkhu* and monk, the affinities between them seem to me marked enough to warrant translating *bhikkhu* as “monk.” I have also chosen “monk” for various other reasons. In the first place, in the translations of Pali literature which have already appeared, no less than in several books on Early Buddhism, monk is a rendering that has been commonly adopted for *bhikkhu*. This word, therefore, has some tradition behind it, and hence will not arrest the reader’s attention with a sense of unfamiliarity. Secondly, in deciding upon the nearest English equivalent for *bhikkhu*, I had to take into account the fact that an easy

feminine form would be required. “Nun” is a very convenient translation for *bhikkhunī*, and has, moreover, equivalents in other European languages. This is not a negligible point when comparing translations. Another reason for the choice of “monk” was that, in the period of Indian history under review, this word necessitates, in the last resort, the drawing of a distinction merely between the Sakyan monk and the Jain monk. Each of the other possible terms—almsman, mendicant, friar¹—might be applicable to the disciples of other sects; but these could hardly be termed “monks.”

BD.1.1

The tremendous growth in the meanings and associations of both “monk” and *bhikkhu* clearly shows that in some cases it is impossible for the history of words to be contained in their etymology. I mention this tendency for words to grow and change, a tendency not of course peculiar to these two terms, simply to remind the reader that etymology is not an infallible guide to the developed meaning of terms. By the time the objects that such terms denote have passed through several phases, their historical meaning their significance in and for history, may have come to be more than their etymological meaning indicates, different from it, even the very reverse of it. The most that etymology can do in such cases is to point to the meanings that the words once, very likely originally, possessed. This is of undoubted importance. But to translate them according to that meaning, and without a due regard for the known facts of their evolution, would be grossly to neglect the significance that they came to acquire as a result of their historical development.

In rendering *samaṇa* by “recluse” I am adopting what has come to be a fairly usual translation. I am aware that it is a far from happy one. It has no feminine form in English; its connotation of being segregated and living in isolation is misleading. For the Sakyan *samaṇas* were not segregated, in the sense of being confined within the *vihāra* precincts and forbidden to mix with the laity. They were restricted from following worldly occupations, for it was held that these should be given up when a man or woman went forth from the household state. But the Sakyan *samaṇas* were in no

¹ “Brother” is hardly possible, as I have tried to show above.

way anchorites or hermits. Nor do I think “ascetic”¹ a particularly suitable rendering. For nowhere is asceticism, as understood in the West, made of importance in Pali literature. The chief asceticism which it recognises is a taming, a training (*damatha*, from the root *dam*), the restraint of evil deeds, thoughts and words. Thus, although “ascetic” may, etymologically, be more correct than “recluse,” unless the Sakyan meaning of asceticism be thoroughly understood, and its Western connotations of bodily mortifications and austerities be dispelled, “recluse” comes nearer to the Pali than does “ascetic.” For there were times when the *samaṇas* went into seclusion for meditation. There are, besides, other words in Pali, such as *tāpasa*, literally burning, which more definitely connote an ascetic.

BD.1.ii

MRS. RHYS DAVIDS says that “monk” is our nearest word² to *samaṇa*, although she also puts forward another word, namely “retreater,”³ which perhaps is the best in the sense of preserving the history buried in the word *samaṇa*, *śramaṇa*. Doubtless “monk” could have been used for *samaṇa*, had this word not been selected as the most appropriate for *bhikkhu*. For from internal evidence, not only of the Suttavibhaṅga but of other parts of the Canon and the Commentaries,⁴ it would appear that the Sakyan *samaṇa* was to all intents and purposes regarded as much the same as the Sakyan *bhikkhu*. The difference came to be more in the name than in the object, and may even have depended more on the person who used the term than on the person of whom it was used. This, in its turn, may depend on some earlier aspects of the history of the two terms.

The word *samaṇa* is not used as a direct form of address in the portion of the Suttavibhaṅga here translated. The brahmin of Verañjā, before he became a lay-follower, does not address Gotama as *samaṇa*, although in speaking to him he uses this word of him (*Vin.3.2* = *BD.1.2* below); and Gotama, in this same conversation, is recorded to apply the term to himself. The schismatics also refer to Gotama in this way (*Vin.3.171*, *Vin.3.172* = *BD.1.296ff.*

BD.1.iii

¹ E.g. E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, 72, 82, 89. ² *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.185; and cf. her *Outlines of Buddhism*, p.62, p.65. ³ *Buddhism*, Home Univeristy Library, new edition, p.198. ⁴ Canonical references very frequent. For commentaries see, e.g. AN-a.iii.156 (Siamese edition), *bhikkhū kaṇhādhimuttikā ti samaṇā nām’ete*; and MN-a.ii.4, where *samaṇas* are explained as those on the four ways to arahantship, thus being identified with *bhikkhus*.

below), but not in his presence. Monks are not recorded to address one another in this way, nor do the nuns employ the feminine *samaṇi* (vocative) when speaking to one another, nor the nominative *samaṇi* in speaking of one another. The laity, on the other hand, are sometimes recorded to speak of a particular monk by his personal name, coupled with the appellation *samaṇa*, such as *samaṇa* Udāyī (Vin.3.120 = BD.1.200 below). They also refer, so it is said, to monks as *samanā*, whether they admired them (Vin.3.119 = BD.1.200 below) or were vexed with them (Vin.3.120 = BD.1.200 below).

The curious thing is that the negative forms, *asamaṇo*, *asamaṇī*, occur quite often as terms of reproach, and meaning “not a true recluse.” On different occasions lay-people and monks are recorded to have reprimanded a monk for his bad behaviour by saying *asamaṇo 'si tvam*, “you are not a (true) recluse.” A nun is recorded to have rebuked another nun in the single phrase *asamaṇī 'si tvam*. This was evidently such a serious reproach as to send the person rebuked to Gotama to receive his verdict on the offence committed or imputed, as the case may have been. If the action performed by the monk or nun in question is found by him to be blameworthy, one of the words of censure put into his mouth is always *assāmaṇaka*, “not worthy of a recluse, not belonging to a recluse” (e.g. Vin.3.24 = BD.1.43 below).

A common designation of the monastic followers of Gotama was *samaṇā Sakyaputtiyā*, recluses (literally sons of the) Sakyans, or Sakyan recluses. This was also used of them by the laity (e.g. Vin.3.43, Vin.3.136, Vin.3.172 = BD.1.67, BD.1.234, BD.1.299 below), including those occasions where the monks had given them cause for complaint (Vin.3.44, Vin.3.73, Vin.3.119 = BD.1.70, BD.1.125, BD.1.200 below). In each definition that it gives of *pārājika*, the Old Commentary invariably states that the errant *bhikkhu* is become one who is not a *samaṇa*, not a *Sakyaputtiya*. These two words, *asamaṇa* and *asakya-puttiya*, are sometimes used together in other passages as terms of abuse (Vin.3.164f. = BD.1.283 below). It may also be noted that, as the monastic disciples of Gotama were called *samaṇā Sakyaputtiyā*, so the followers of Mahāvīra were called, even in the Pali canon,¹ *samaṇā Nigaṇṭhā*, or to be exact, *nigaṇṭhā nāma samaṇajātikā*, a kind of recluse called *nigaṇṭhas* (Jains).

BD.1.iii

¹ AN.i.206

If the Sakyān *samaṇa* came to correspond with the Sakyān *bhikkhu* on the one side, on the other he came to correspond with *brāhmaṇa*, brahmin, in the meaning of this term as it grew into Sakya, and also into Jainism.¹ For the fact that *samaṇa* often appears in combination with *brāhmaṇa* in Pali canonical literature does not there, I think, necessarily imply any opposition between the two, any more than it does in Jaina literature.² According to Professor B.M. BARUA,³ there were various sects or groups or schools of *Śramaṇa* who broke away from the “later form of Brahmanic religion, superstition and mysticism.” So far there was opposition. But by the time that the Sakyaputtiyas were known as *samaṇas*, the term *brāhmaṇa* was also being incorporated into Sakyān usage, and was there receiving a new meaning.

While brahmins as a class remained, brahmins by birth and occupation, brahmins forming sects of ascetics, living by various rules, the word *brāhmaṇa* was developing for Sakya the meaning of the best, the highest person, not because of birth and lineage, but because of spiritual endeavour and attainment. To this, *samaṇa* in public opinion was evidently equivalent. Had not the two words come to have some identity of meaning, not exactly the same things would have been said of them both, as is the case in a formula occurring now and again in this part of the Suttavibhaṅga (e.g. [Vin.3.44](#), [Vin.3.120](#) = [BD.1.70](#), [BD.1.200](#) below). On the other hand, the words *samaṇa* and *brāhmaṇa* occur in two other sentences at [Vin.3.44](#), once separated by the disjunctive *vā* (or), once forming a compound. It is possible that some divergence between the two is intended here, as perhaps referring to members of different sects; in which case the two words would not be substitutes or synonyms for one another.⁴

BD.1.liv

I have left *brāhmaṇa* in its anglicised form of brahmin. The time is per-

¹ *Jaina Sūtras*, ii.138 (edited by JACOBI, Sacred Books of the East XLV): “He who has no worldly attachment after entering the Order, who does not repent of having become a monk ... him we call a *brāhmaṇa*.” Again at p.422: “The *samaṇas* or *brāhmaṇas* who say thus ... do not speak as *samaṇas* or *Nigranthas*.” ² Cf. *Jaina Sūtras*, ii.140, and last note. ³ *Pre-Buddhist Indian Philosophy*, p.242. See also p.237ff. ⁴ On *samaṇas* see B.M. BARUA, *Pre-Buddhist Indian Philosophy*, p.242, and RATILAL MEHTA, *Asceticism in Pre-Buddhist Days*, Indian Culture, iii.4.

haps not yet ripe to draw an infallible distinction between brahmins as members of a sect opposed to Sakya, and brahmins as men, as monks, who had attained, or who had failed to attain, some of the ethical attributes and mental development inculcated by Sakya. A verse in the Dhammapada clearly identifies the three, for it ends: *so brāhmaṇo so samaṇo sa bhikkhu* (Dhp.142). To differentiate between the Sakyan and non-Sakyan uses of *brāhmaṇa*, as this word occurs in the Pali canon, would be to emphasise the new meaning which, under Sakya, accrued to *brāhmaṇa*, as a word adopted from earlier times.

For there is no doubt that the three terms—*bhikkhu*, *brāhmaṇa* and *samaṇa*—were, in their Sanskrit forms of *bhikṣu brāhmaṇa*, *śramaṇa*, already in the terminology of pre-Sakyan days.¹ Each word will therefore have some pre-Sakyan history, even though this is, in many respects, still obscure. *Brāhmaṇa* is of course a term of enormously long and complicated history, of indisputable antiquity. Professor B.M. BARUA says² that “*śramaṇas* became known, perhaps from the practice of begging, as *bhikṣus* (mendicants).” And referring to a passage in the Aṅguttara Commentary, he further points out that “by the *bhikṣus* must have been meant the members of the fourth Brahmanic order, that is, the Brahmanist ascetics in the fourth stage of efforts and fruitions who are designated *bhikṣu*, *yati* or *parivrājaka* in the Dharma-Sūtras and the Dharma-Sāstras.”³ It is worth while to mention that, according to Jacob’s Concordance, in the early Upāniṣads, *śramaṇa* appears but once,⁴ *brāhmaṇa* many times, and *bhikṣu* not at all. *Śramaṇa* occurs, however, in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.

BD.1.lv

If *bhikkhu* were equivalent in fact to *samaṇa*, and if this were, on some occasions at least, equivalent to the Sakyan usage of *brāhmaṇa*, ‘it is not difficult to see why the life of monks continued to be called *brahmacariya* under Sakya.’⁵ But as the most suitable translation of *brahma* has still to be decided upon, when it occurs in the compounds *brahmacariya* and *brahmacārin*, I have left it untranslated.⁶ The difficulty is to determine what

¹ Cf. interesting Jaina tradition that Mahāvīra’s parents were followers of the *śramaṇas*, Sacred Books of the East xxii.194. ² *History of Pre-Buddhist Philosophy*, p.240. ³ *Maskarī as an Epithet of Gośāla*, Indian History Quarterly, iii.2, p.254. ⁴ *Bṛhadāranyaka* 4,3,22.

⁵ See *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.212–215. The word *brahmacārin* occurs once in the Ṛg Veda in the (later) Maṇḍala, Ṛg Veda 10.109. ⁶ *Vin.3.164* = *BD.1.282* below.

was meant by the “best life.” Whether at one time *brahma*, as part of the compound *brahmacariya*, may not have possessed the deep and essential meaning of the All, the All-Real, the Highest that it possessed in the Upaniṣadic teaching is as yet a matter of controversy. I find it hard to believe that Sakya arose either in ignorance of this teaching or uninfluenced by it. And even if, as seems highly probable, *brahmacariya* and *brahmacārin* are words taken over by Sakya (and Jainism) from pre-Sakyan sects, it has still to be established that for these *brahma* did not contain some profound philosophical or religious significance.

BD.1.lvi

Besides *brahmacariya* and *brahmacārin*, I have left untranslated two other words of great importance. These are *dhamma* and *tathāgata*.

Dhamma is a word whose meaning appears to vary in varying contexts. It may mean something like what we should call “conscience,” that which should be done, in one passage; the externalised body of doctrine, in another; fashion, act (*etena dhammena*, Vin.3.133 = BD.1.225 below), in a third. Mrs. Rhys Davids has written at some length on the meaning of *dhamma* in her later works, to which I now refer the reader.

ANESAKI, in his essay on *Tathāgata*,¹ closely connects the notion of *tathāgata* with that of *Dhamma*, but he comes no nearer to a conclusive translation of *tathāgata* than do others. For the very ambiguity of its derivation precludes any definitive meaning. This being the case, and because Anesaki has virtually shown that no empirical investigations of the uses of the term can bring us near to a meaning fixed once and for all, we must regard *tathāgata* as a term best left untranslated. I give here four ways in which it might be rendered:

1. The one thus-gone, or thus-going (*tathā-gata*), since *gata* may be taken as a present as well as a past participle;
2. The one thus-come, or thus-coming (*tathā-āgata*);
3. The truth-finder, used by Lord Chalmers in *Further Dialogues of the Buddha*, as the result of empirical considerations;

¹ *Katam Karaniyam*, Tokyo, 1934, p.24off.

4. The Way-farer, a rendering suggested by MRS. RHYS DAVIDS,¹ and used by F.L. WOODWARD in *Gradual Sayings*, V.²

In Pali literature the term is not applied exclusively to Gotama himself.

If the meaning of words is liable to vary in different contexts, it is wiser and less misleading not to translate those words until there has been some further advance in Pali criticism and interpretation.

Deva, *devatā* and *yakkha* are other words that I have not translated. This is partly because the nature of these beings has not yet been fully investigated or established; and partly because the little we do know of them leads us to suppose that they represent kinds of beings for whom in English there are no acceptable equivalents. For example, in canonical Pali, *devas* are no longer “gods,” as they were in the Vedic age; nor are they “angels.”³ Mrs. Rhys Davids has suggested that they were “brave and pious gentlemen who have passed as ‘*devas*’ to the next world only to come back one day as men.”⁴ There is no doubt that these three classes of being are regarded as having a close contact with the world of men. The word *deva* is often coupled with *manussa*, men, people (e.g. [Vin.3.1](#)). The earth-*devas* are recorded to have heard of Sudinna’s lapse, and to have communicated it to the other groups of *devas* ([Vin.3.18](#) = [BD.1.33](#) below). It is told how a *devatā* (feminine) belonging to Māra’s retinue came and encouraged Migalaṇḍika for having deprived the monks of life ([Vin.3.69](#) = [BD.1.118](#) below).

BD.1.lvii

Neither do *yakkhas* seem far removed from the human sphere. Words like “fairies, sprites or goblins” do not accord at all well with the Indian way of thinking. There are the predatory *yakkhas* (or *yakkhas* in the form of beasts of prey) who killed some monks, and there is the story of the exorcist monk who deprived a *yakkha* of life ([Vin.3.84](#) = [BD.1.146](#) below). A monk is recorded to have had sexual intercourse with a *yakkhinī* ([Vin.3.37](#) = [BD.1.56](#) below), although the Old Commentary does not include this type of being among *mātugāma*, women-kind (e.g. [Vin.3.121](#) = [BD.1.202](#) below). It defines *mātugāma* as *manussitthi*, human women, and carefully and deliberately excludes *yakkhīs*, *petas*, and female animals.

¹ *Sakya*, pp.67–68, p.381; *Manual of Buddhism*, p.116. ² See *GS.v.xiii*; *Verses of Uplift*, Sacred Books of the Buddhists viii., p.81, n.2. ³ A. COOMARASWAMY, *A New Approach to the Vedas*, p.6off. ⁴ *Manual of Buddhism*, p.92.

BD.1.lviii Where the word *peta*, and the feminine *petī*, occur I have used the translation suggested by MRS. RHYS DAVIDS¹ of “departed one”. It appears that *petas*, departed ones, those who have gone on, gone before, were regarded as still endowed with life, and able to speak to men. There is the story of the body, inhabited by the *peta* (Vin.3.58 = BD.1.97 below), which rose up in the cemetery, by what the Commentary calls “the *peta*’s own power,” and pursued a monk, asking him not to remove his outer cloak from him. It is also curious that it was thought possible for a monk to commit an offence with *petas*, and that although an offence committed with *petas*, *yakkhinīs* and *nāgīs* (female serpents?) is as grave in nature as one committed with a human woman, these beings are excluded from the Old Commentary’s definition of “woman-kind.” It almost looks as if a *peta* means one who is quite recently dead, and whose mind and spirit still have power over the body, being not yet entirely dissociated from it.

I think that what emerges most clearly from the Vinaya references to *devas*, *devatās*, *yakkhas* and *petas*, is that there is a non-human world (cf. *amanussagāma* at Vin.3.46 = BD.1.74 below) whose various denizens penetrate the human world and participate in the affairs of men, as their counterparts are thought to do in India, Burma and Ceylon at the present day.

Where names of weights, measures and mediums of exchange occur, I have left them untranslated, and have given notes. All attempts to correlate English words to these would be wholly misleading, and would conjure up a set of wrong ideas.

BD.1.lix Amongst the store of incidental knowledge that this part of the Vinaya brings to light, it should be noted that the word *nibbāna* occurs only twice, each time in the same stereotyped formula (Vin.3.20, Vin.3.111 = BD.1.35, BD.1.194 below). I have translated it as “waning.” Nothing more can be safely deduced from its virtual absence than the concentration of this portion of the Suttavibhaṅga on outward morality, on forms of behaviour to be regulated and guided by an external standard rather than by an appeal to the inner conscience, the inner morality which, in the India of the sixth century B.C., was held to be immanent in man.

Besides this piece of negative information, a good many positive details,

¹ *Indian Religion and Survival*, p.35; and cf. p.59.

mostly concerning contemporary manners and customs, are brought to light in this part of the Suttavibhaṅga. There is, for example, mention of the punishments that a king could mete out to a thief, while there emerges the very fact that a king meted them out (Vin.3.46=BD.1.72, BD.1.73 below); mention of some of the kinds of ornaments used (Vin.3.48, Vin.3.180=BD.1.75f., BD.1.314 below); some of the kinds of games played (Vin.3.180=BD.1.316 below); the sort of foodstuffs in common consumption; various kinds of animals, birds, insects, plants and flowers (Vin.3.48, Vin.3.49, Vin.3.52, Vin.3.58=BD.1.79, BD.1.80, BD.1.87, BD.1.98 below); there is mention of the existence of customs, frontiers and customs' houses (Vin.3.52, Vin.3.62=BD.1.86, BD.1.104 below); smuggling, kidnapping of children, the kind of treatment given by monks to their ill comrades; there is evidence for the belief that trees may be inhabited by conscious beings; and there is the indication that Indians, then as now, appear to have no difficulty in dying at will. I have nothing to add to Rhys Davids' and Oldenberg's remarks on the knowledge and use of writing¹ at the time of the compilation of the Vinaya.

The following authorities, including the late Professor E.J. Rapson, kindly helped me on the difficult point of finding a translation for the term *bhikkhu*; their letters were most interesting, while showing a considerable diversity of opinion. I have much pleasure in tendering my thanks to all their writers: to Professor J. Przyluski, Mrs. Rhys Davids, Professor Otto Schrader, Professor Helmer Smith and Professor F.W. Thomas. Above all, I should like to express my gratitude to my friend, Miss A.M. Cooke, for her illuminating conversations on the Western monk. It remains for me to thank, especially and most sincerely, Mrs. Rhys Davids for entrusting the translation of the Vinaya to me, for her many rewarding suggestions, and for the help that she has generously bestowed upon the preparation of this volume.

BD.1.lx

(Note by Sujato: The following notes on the text do not apply to this Sutta-Central edition.)

An asterisk in the text denotes that the word or passage beside which it appears is given in full in Pali in the Appendix.

¹ *Vinaya Texts*, i.xxiiiff.

The page numbers, given in square brackets in the text, and corresponding to Oldenberg's page numbers of his edition of the *Vinayapiṭaka*, are placed, not at the beginning of the pages to which the translation corresponds, but at the end. This has been done in order to introduce a certain consistency, for all Vinaya numbering—of section, sub-section and paragraph—is placed at the end.

I.B. HORNER

Manchester, 1938.

EDITORIAL NOTE

BD.1.lxi

At the translator's request I say here a few words. Words of valediction for a work which is a genuine labour of love. Result though it be of strenuous, unfaltering research, the translation of an ancient thesaurus of monastic legality, as is the Pali Vinaya Piṭaka, is not of the class we call "best seller." Labour and printing costs have been alike undertaken by my friend and colleague, the translator. And I am not a little proud to think that a book which my husband helped, in his early efforts, to bring in part before European readers, should now receive my blessing in its first complete form after this interval of over half a century.

It may interest some to learn, as to that translation in part, how the two translators divided the work. For living in different countries, each translating in his leisure moments, there seems to have been (more's the pity!) very little if any collaboration. No correspondence survives revealing that any took place. On the fly-leaf of Volume I of *Vinaya Texts, Sacred Books of the East XIII*, there stands in Rhys Davids' handwriting the following:

"Of the work I have translated the

- Pātimokkha i.1-90.
- Mahāvagga v and vi.22; ii.1-ii.81. 8opp.
vi.32-vii.3. 43pp.
viii.12-32. 49pp.

- Cullavagga i–iii 120pp.
iv.1–12 (the whole volume). 440pp.
Total: 800pp. out of 1230pp.

The rest, as is well known, was the work of that fastidiously careful scholar, Hermann Oldenberg.”

As she has stated in her Introduction, Isaline Horner begins her translation at the beginning, as Oldenberg did not, in his edition of the Pali text, published shortly before the birth of the Pali Text Society. The Sacred Books of the East translation was a large selection, not the complete work.

BD.1.lxii

In the Vinaya, taking it by and large, we have the records of a great effort, put forth by the culture of North India during the sixth to the third century B.C., to “get rich quickly” in things, not of worldly experience, but of man’s spiritual fortune. The idea, in monasticism, was that the man, in striving to become a *More* than his worldly fellows, could best do so by making his life here a *Less*. By cutting out a great part of what our poets have called “life in the whole,” it was judged he would, by living a simplified remainder, progress much faster. Progress, that is, towards that waning out of repeated spans of life as he knew it here, or heard of it in the next world or worlds.

This is surely to misunderstand life as we find it. An enemy army is not conquered by its being attacked in one section only. The monk admitted that he bore his enemy about with him in body and mind. And to shelter body and mind from opportunities of efforts towards a Better, such as life in its fullness alone could afford, was no sound method of seeking to grow. Man is but a less if he shirk much of life. Not along such lines does the Hand draw him which *au fond de l’idéal fait signe*. (Being in the depths of the evidence is ideal.)

It is doubtless true that the withdrawn life is not only good at times, but may, there or then, be necessary for the student. But I do not find this need expressing itself in Buddhist monastic literature as a motive for leaving the world. I may be wrong, and shall welcome correction. For the history of monasticism, especially of monasticism in what was perhaps its cradle,

has yet to be written. And a complete translation of the Vinaya Piṭaka will bring such a work nearer the day when it can be written.

C.A.F. RHYS DAVIDS

PREFACE TO THE SUTTA CENTRAL EDITION

The Vinaya is one of humanity's most extraordinary texts. Always reasonable, often surprising, and full of outrageous and entertaining stories, it offers a vision of an ideal community that is as relevant—and as challenging—as it has ever been. The Vinaya is thoroughly anarchist: no hierarchy, no power vested in individuals, consensus decision making, and property held in common. It is this that has allowed the Sangha the flexibility to adapt Vinaya practice in response to changing times and places. The Vinaya dispenses with power in favour of principle. It works because the monastic community wants to do the right thing, and are willing to work together with sincerity. Originating in a culture where torture and capital punishment were considered normal, the Vinaya envisages no punishment worse than expulsion from the community, while most “offences” may be settled with a simple confession to another monastic.

The treatment of women in the Vinaya is somewhat complex and controversial. However it must be borne in mind that the overriding purpose of the nuns' Vinaya is so that women can set up and run independent spiritual communities, teaching and training themselves. And, as several Vinaya rules show, nuns were fully involved in building monasteries, teaching the lay community, and all other aspects of monastic life. There is no power of command by monks over nuns, and nowhere are the monks allowed to make Vinaya rulings for the nuns. The nuns were a self-governing community, fully autonomous except for a few occasions when they participated jointly in formal acts of the Sangha together with monks. But even on such occasions, the monks were not in control: the Vinaya is in control and the monks must act in accord with Vinaya.

In this and many other matters we see in the Vinaya a constant compromise and adjustment, as the ideals of the Dhamma run up against the

realities of our profane world. The Vinaya does not shy away from the sordid, even the evil. A large proportion of the text documents the wicked behaviour of monastics. Yet it is essentially optimistic. It assumes that people will, by and large, tell the truth and try to do the right thing; and that, with the significant exception of the *Pārājika* rules, everyone deserves a second chance.

The voice of the Buddha runs like a thread of light through the entire Vinaya, informing every decision, and present on almost every occasion. Yet much of the Vinaya as we have it today originated later; I would put the main period of composition of the Vinayas at perhaps 100–200 years after the Buddha. We are fortunate to have many different recensions of Vinaya texts, a few of which are referred to by Horner in her introduction. Comparative studies of the Vinaya, while still inadequate, have come a long way since her time. One of the overwhelming findings of these studies is that, while the Pātimokkha texts of the different versions are almost identical, the background stories, detailed analyses, and case studies vary considerably. Together with the very strong evidence of massive editorial input in the text, for example in the artificial repetitions of nearly identical events, it is clear that the Vinaya texts as they stand constitute a complex, highly sophisticated literature that evolved and developed over a considerable period of time. While it is not possible to say with certainty exactly what originated with the Buddha, we will not stray too far from the truth if we assume that the rules, and some of the other material such as certain *Saṅghakammas*, originate from the Buddha himself, while most of the other material is the product of later generations. This later material is not a fixed recitation as the Pātimokkha was, but neither is it entirely invented; rather, it draws freely and creatively from earlier traditions.

In 2013, as work for SuttaCentral was gathering pace, we heard the good news that on 10 May the Pali Text Society had released a number of texts under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 3.0 licence. This release included the six volumes of the classic Vinaya translation by I.B. HORNER, *The Book of the Discipline*. Crucially, the terms of the release permit derivative works, which meant that the way was open to create a high quality digital edition of this classic of 20th century Buddhist scholarship.

We immediately undertook to create a natively digital edition of this translation, which remains the only complete translation of the Vinaya into English. In doing so, we aimed to honor the work of I.B. Horner and the Pali Text Society, and to promote a greater awareness and understanding of the Vinaya for those who are not able to access the printed edition.

The process of creating this edition was this. First the text was scanned, ocr-ed, converted into a Word document, and proofread. This initial process was done by Ven Jaganatha assisted by Ven Nibbidā. They then handed the project to me, and I engaged an IT firm, Hi-Tech Outsourcing Services, to convert the Word document into a detailed, clean, and semantic HTML/XML file, as well as doing another round of proofreading. This demanding project was handled with skill and good cheer by Jatin Patel and his team at Hi-Tech. Finally I went over the files, doing final touches like headings, ensuring that references were consistent, creating internal links, and further proofing. Ultimately the text is marked up in HTML5, closely related to the markup used on SuttaCentral, but with a few special features.

With one important exception—the *Pārājika* rules, which I will discuss below—no substantive changes have been made to the text. Tempting though it has been to correct some long-standing mistakes (nuns do not carry weapons!), I have endeavoured to recreate in digital form the work of I.B. Horner.

However, I have not been so conservative when it comes to the structure and referencing systems used in the text. Our goal has been to create an edition that is compatible with SuttaCentral, and many details have been standardized accordingly. In particular, the text incorporates a truly staggering quantity of references in the footnotes. Normally for SuttaCentral's texts we exclude footnotes and similar material: we are presenting the ancient texts, not modern opinions. However, in this case I felt that the value of the notes was such that it would be a shame for them to be omitted from a digital edition. It is precisely the interconnectedness that marks the Vinaya as a sophisticated system, and nowhere have the relations between various parts of the text been delineated in as much detail as in Horner's notes. We thus decided to include the notes in a separate digital edition, while the text on SuttaCentral will, as usual, be presented without notes.

This meant a great deal of time and work to sort out the references. The work includes nearly 12,000 internal cross-references, as well as over 7,000 external references. The internal references required a great deal of work to standardize. To start with, there is the problem that the entire text runs three distinct referencing systems in parallel:

1. The “volume and page” of the PTS Pali edition;
2. The “volume and page” of the English translation;
3. The “chapter and section” numbers, which are the same for both editions.

It is a shame that the editors of the Pali editions did not uniformly insist on a detailed “chapter and section” system, as we are now in the unfortunate situation where the academic standard is to reference the volume and page of the increasingly outdated PTS Pali paper editions.

The situation is more complex than that, however. For the original text placed the reference numbers at the end of the section they refer to, following the Pali tradition. Such an arrangement does not sit easily with the logic underlying modern documents, which are codified in systems such as HTML, and for this edition we have relocated all references to the beginning of the relevant section

In addition, Horner often used highly abbreviated forms of reference, making it difficult to tell exactly what level of section or subsection is being referred to. We have tried to eliminate this problem by spelling all references out in full. Once the references had been made (so far as possible) entirely explicit and consistent, it was a (relatively) simple matter to turn them into hyperlinks. Thus all of the internal cross references should, in theory, link to the correct place in the text.

ABBREVIATIONS

The abbreviations follow the system we use on SuttaCentral. While we do not arbitrarily violate accepted scholarly custom, the constraints of our environment force us to do some things differently. For SuttaCentral, each abbreviation must be:

- Unique across the entire corpus;
- Case insensitive;
- Without special characters such as diacriticals;
- Usually two, hopefully no more than three, characters long.

While it may take some getting used to, the system is quite powerful. “Bi-Pj.1” is “Bhikkhunī Pārājika 1”, “Kd.3.2.1” is “section 2, subsection 1 of the third Khandhaka”, and so on. I have also written in full all of the rarely-used abbreviations, including almost all abbreviations for things outside the Pali canon. Here is a list of abbreviations as used in this book.

Table 1: List of Abbreviations

BD	The Book of the Discipline
Vin	Pali edition of the Vinayapiṭaka of the Pali Text Society
MS	Paragraph number of the Mahāsaṅgīti edition of the Pali
Bu	Bhikkhu
Bi	Bhikkhunī
Pj	Pārājika
Ss	Saṅghādisesa
Ay	Aniyata
NP	Nissaggiya Pācittiya
Pc	Pācittiya
Pd	Pāṭidesaniya
Sk	Sekhiya
As	Adhikaraṇasamatha
Kd	Khandhaka
Prv	Pārivāra
DN	Dīgha Nikāya
MN	Majjhima Nikāya
SN	Saṃyutta Nikāya
AN	Aṅguttara Nikāya
KN	Khuddaka Nikāya
Kp	Khuddakapātha
Dhp	Dhammapada
Ud	Udāna

It	Itivuttaka
Snp	Sutta Nipāta
Vv	Vimānavatthu
Pv	Petavatthu
Thag	Theragāthā
Thig	Therīgāthā
Tha-ap	Thera-apadāna
Thi-ap	Therī-apadāna
Ja	Jātaka
Mnd	Mahāniddeśa
Cnd	Cūḷaniddeśa
Pt	Paṭisambhidhāmagga
Ne	Netti
Mi	Milindapañha
Ds	Dhammasaṅgaṇī
Vb	Vibhaṅga
Pp	Puggalapaññatti
Kv	Kathāvatthu
-a	-Aṭṭhakathā (Commentary)
-t	-Ṭīkā (Subcommentary)
Vism	Visuddhimagga
GS	Gradual Sayings (PTS translation of the Aṅguttara)
KS	Kindred Sayings (PTS translation of the Saṃyutta)

Note that in most references the “volume” is in Roman numerals. The exceptions are the main references, Vin and ƁD, where the automated linking of cross-references would be made more difficult using roman numerals, and they are therefore in ordinary numerals. Thus Vin.2.34 means “Volume 2, page 34 of the PTS Pali edition of the Vinayapiṭaka”, while DN.i.45 means “Volume 1, page 45 of the PTS Pali edition of the Dīgha Nikāya”. Where such texts appear without roman numerals, they indicate a *sutta* number; thus MN 34 means “the thirty-fourth discourse of the Majjhima Nikāya”.

Apart from these, I have tried to eliminate as many as possible of the abbreviations used by Horner. Perhaps in a printed edition it saves space to

abbreviate “translated” as “transld.”; but it serves no purpose in a digital edition. Such abbreviations and other technical, linguistic, and non-standard expressions, which are peppered liberally throughout the text, serve only to obfuscate, making an already difficult text even harder, especially for those not academically trained.

THE TRANSLATION OF THE *PĀRĀJĪKA* RULES

The single exception to the principle of preserving Horner’s translation lies in the *Pārājika* rules. Here we present a substantially revised translation by Ven. Brahmali. The reason for presenting this material here is, on my part, a little embarrassing: I lost the originals.

What happened was this. When preparing the text, in discussions with Ven. Brahmali, we agreed that this would be a wonderful chance to correct and improve the many long-standing problems with Horner’s translation. Yet we also wanted to honor her work by presenting it as is. So we decided to produce a faithful digital edition of her translation, and meanwhile, Ven. Brahmali undertook a substantive revision. Ven. Brahmali is a Pali scholar of some twenty years, was a major assistant to Bhikkhu Bodhi in the translations of the Saṃyutta and Aṅguttara Nikāyas, and has been teaching and practising the Vinaya for many years in a Sangha community; I cannot think of anyone better qualified to do this work. Yet it is, of course, a difficult and long process, and he has many other duties calling his attention, so we agreed to release the Horner translation first, and allow the revision to proceed at its own pace.

However, after handing the HTML files of the four *Pārājikas* to Ven. Brahmali, I neglected to keep copies, while he, making the unwarranted assumption that I was competent, proceeded to overwrite the files I gave him. Of course, we still had the original Word document, but it would be a long and dreary process to begin the markup process from scratch. In addition, as it happens, the first *Pārājika* is the place where Horner’s translation is the most deficient, due to her Edwardian sense of propriety. So I decided to include Brahmali’s translation of the four *Pārājikas*.

This creates some issues. First is that of consistency: Brahmali uses some different renderings of Vinaya terms. Hopefully this will not prove too confusing, and will be made up for by his more accurate and articulate translation. More problematic, his translation dispenses with the complex notes and cross-references of Horner's edition, since there is no need to duplicate this work. However, it would be a shame to omit the notes from these important rules. So I have made the choice, admittedly imperfect, to include Horner's notes with Brahmali's translation. This occasionally results in incongruity, repetition, or omission; I hope the reader can forgive such infelicities under the circumstances. It should be borne in mind that this will not be the final version of Ven. Brahmali's translation. While it is complete and careful as far as it goes, when translating the remainder of the Vinaya it is to be expected that he will want to make some corrections and modifications to this section.

Other formatting changes have been made. I have introduced a fuller and more informative set of headings. The structure in a few cases has been adapted. The Khandhakas are now treated as such, rather than the artificial division of "Mahāvagga" and "Cullavagga", which exist only as conveniences for the manuscript editions, and which have no counterparts in other Vinayas.

Two of Horner's chapters in the Parivāra have been divided: her Chapter IV has become Prv.4 and Prv.5, and her Chapter VII has become Prv.8 and Prv.9. The numbering of other Chapters has been adjusted accordingly, and I have made minor changes to some of the wording so that the text remains comprehensible. This numbering is used in the Mahāsaṅgīti Pali edition used on SuttaCentral, and Horner's extensive discussions of the problems with her numbering (see [BD.6.xiii](#)), which she based on Oldenberg's Pali text, make it clear that the Mahāsaṅgīti numbering is preferable. Here is a list of the changed numbering for the Parivāra chapters.

Many of the verses have been reformatted; in such cases I have merely tried to present Horner's wording in a clear manner, and have not tried to match the verses line by line with the Pali. In one or two cases—notably the lengthy passage at [Kd.1.15.6](#)—text mistakenly treated as prose has been formatted as verse (without changing the text).

Table 2: Changes in numbering for Parivāra Chapters

Horner	SuttaCentral
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4 and 5
5	6
6	7
7	8 and 9
8	10
9	11
10	12
11	13
12	14
13	15
14	16
15	17
16	18
17	19
18	20
19	21

In some cases, such as the Ekuttara of the Parivāra, I have treated the text as a list for clarity.

VARIANT NUMBERING FOR *BHIKKHUNĪ* RULES

One area of difficulty is the numbering of the *bhikkhunī* rules. The nuns incorporate many of the monks' rules, but these are not marked in the Pali text in any way; we only know the full list of nuns' rules from the commentaries and the independent *Nuns' Pātimokkha* texts. In most cases this does not affect the numbering. The *Sekhiyas* and *Adhikaraṇasamathas* are identical for monks and nuns. The *Pātidēsaniyas* are, on the other hand, completely different so there is no overlap. With the *Pācittiyas* and the *Nissaggiya Pācittiyas*, the nuns' rules are listed at the start, and the monks' rules added after, so they do not affect the numbering. However, in the

case of the *Pārājikas* and *Saṅghādisesas* the numbering of the nuns' rules is affected by the inclusion of the relevant monks' rules. The numbering in Horner's text, following the indications at the end of each rule, ignored the monks' rules and simply listed the nuns' rules in sequence as found in the Pali. However, this will not work when incorporated as a combined edition on SuttaCentral, where each number must be unique. I have therefore changed the numbering of the relevant rules for nuns as follows.

Table 3: Changes in numbering of bhikkhunī rules

Horner	SuttaCentral
Bi-Pj.1	Bi-Pj.5
Bi-Pj.2	Bi-Pj.6
Bi-Pj.3	Bi-Pj.7
Bi-Pj.4	Bi-Pj.8
Bi-Ss.7	Bi-Ss.10
Bi-Ss.8	Bi-Ss.11
Bi-Ss.9	Bi-Ss.12
Bi-Ss.10	Bi-Ss.13

SEMANTIC TAGS

One of the features of our text is that it incorporates semantic markup. (Of course this only applies to the HTML version.) This is especially beneficial in the Vinaya, which has such a detailed and technical structure. Thus rules are marked “rule”, terms defined as “term”, definitions as “gloss”, and so on. Some of this semantic markup is visible in the text, but not all. You can see, for example, that rules are bold, definitions are green, mnemonic verses are grey-on-grey, and so on. I tried to maintain a balance between readability and clarity of structure. Thus there is much semantic information that is hidden, but which can be exposed by a simple change to the CSS; it may also be used for delimiting searches and the like. Note that the addition of semantic tags is not complete. Here is a list of the semantic tags that we use.

Table 4: Semantic markup

bhikkhuni	Matter concerning nuns.
kamma	Formal acts of the Sangha and other codified statements spoken in the midst of the Sangha.
jataka	Jātaka type material.
sutta	Sutta type material.
rule	Any class of rule.
subrule	A rule subsumed under another rule.
allowance	An allowance by the Buddha.
uddana	Mnemonic summary, usually in verse form.
term	Word or phrase to be defined.
gloss	Definition of such a word or phrase.
author	Author, editor, or translator of a secondary source.
essay	Title of an article in a journal, etc. Note that we do not use “article” for this to avoid conflicting with the HTML5 <code>article</code> tag.
book	Title of a book.
journal	Title of an academic journal. These are usually spelled out in full.
add	Material added to the text by the translator. Usually consists of instructions for expanding abbreviated text.
gatha	Verse.
namo	Words of homage.

Much more can, and should, be done in this area, such as clearly marking all background stories, and so on. We hope to produce a more fully marked up edition in the future, but this will wait for further revisions of the translation by Ven. Brahmali.

In such a massive and complex text, I can hardly hope to have eliminated all mistakes. Despite the great help given by the many hands who have worked on this edition, I am all too conscious that much more should be done. Yet other duties call, and I cannot delay this publication indefinitely. Of course, one of the advantages of a digital edition is that it allows for progressive enhancement and correction. If you notice any mistakes, I

would be grateful if you would point them out to me.

Since the text is in a simple and clear HTML5, it will be easily adapted to other formats. If you make any substantive adaptations, or would like to see a different format, please let me know. We have so far decided to produce the text as HTML, and the ebook formats EPUB, and MOBI, in addition to a PDF version produced with L^AT_EX. My own experience with the various ebook formats is that they are erratic and unstable, and display quite differently on each device. This is particularly the case for a complex document such as this. We have, nevertheless, done our best to produce standards compliant and clean files, and they work well on the systems we have used for testing.¹

BHIKKHU SUJATO

Sydney, March 2014.

¹ One bug I am aware of: in the ebook reader Calibre, the popup footnotes will not work properly in the default “paged mode”; choose the “flow mode” and all should be well. (Incidentally, I have not had good results using Calibre to convert this file into other formats, as it dirties the code and breaks the footnotes.)

MONKS' EXPULSION (PĀRĀJIKA) 1

Homage to the Master, the Arahant, the truly Awakened One

THE ORIGIN OF THE VINAYA

BD.1.1
Bu-Pj.1.1.1
Vin.3.1

At one time the¹ Buddha, the Master, was staying at Verañjā² near Naḷeru's Nimba tree³ with a great Sangha of five hundred monks. Now a brahmin⁴ of Verañjā was told:

"Sir⁵, the recluse⁶ Gotama, the Sakyan,⁷ having gone forth from the Sakyan clan, is staying at Verañjā near Naleru's Nimba tree with a great Sangha of five hundred monks. That Master Gotama has acquired a good reputaton,⁸ thus:

BD.1.2

'He is indeed a Master, an *arahant*, fully awakened, accomplished in true knowledge and conduct, fortunate, knower of the worlds, unrivalled trainer of tamable people, teacher of gods and humans, the Awakened One, the Master. Having realised with his own direct knowledge this world with its gods, its lords of death and its supreme beings, this population with its recluses and brahmins, its gods and humans, he makes it known to others.

¹ From here to end of Bu-Pj.1.1.1 cf. AN.iv.173. ² Quoted at DN-a.i.12. Vin-a.108 merely says that Verañjā was the name of a town. It is mentioned again at AN.iv.172, AN.iv.197. At AN.ii.57 it is said that Gotama was "journeying along the high-road between Madhurā and Verañjā." For Madhurā on the Jumna see *Buddhist India*, p.36; C.H.I.i.316. MN 4 says that Gotama addressed some brahmins and householders from Verañjā at Sāvattī. ³ Vin-a.108 says that here the *yakkha* is called Naḷeru, that *pucimanda* is the *nimba*-tree (Azadirachta Indica), and that *mūlaṃ* is *samīpaṃ*. Cf. Pucimandajātaka, Ja.iii.33. ⁴ Vin-a.111, *mātāpitūhi katanāmasena panāyam Udayo ti vuccati*. ⁵ See Introduction, BD.1.xxxviii. ⁶ See Introduction, BD.1.lff. ⁷ BRAHMALĪ: *Sakyaputta*, literally son of the Sakyan(s), but a Pali idiom meaning simply "a Sakyan." ⁸ cf. DN.i.87.

He teaches a *Dhamma* that is good in the beginning, good in the middle and good in the end, with the right meaning and phrasing; he reveals a perfectly complete and pure spiritual life.' Good indeed it is to see such *arahants*."¹

Bu-Pj.1.1.2

Then the brahmin of Verañjā approached the Master, exchanged friendly greetings with him and sat down to one side.² He then said this to the Master:

Vin.3.2

"I have heard, good³ Gotama, that the recluse Gotama does not pay homage to brahmins who are worn, old, burdened with years, advanced in life, come to the last stage;⁴ nor that he stands up for them or offers them a seat. This is indeed so, for the good⁵ Gotama does not pay homage to brahmins who are worn, old, burdened with years, advanced in life, come to the last stage; nor does he stand up for them or offer them a seat. This, good Gotama, is not proper."⁶

"Brahmin, in the world with its gods, its lords of death and its supreme beings, in this population with its recluses and brahmins, its gods and humans, I do not see one to whom I should pay homage, for whom I should rise up or to whom I should offer a seat. For if the Tathāgata should pay homage to anyone, rise up for him or offer him a seat, his head might even split asunder."⁷

BD.1.3

"The revered⁸ Gotama lacks taste."⁹

Bu-Pj.1.1.3

"There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, 'the recluse Gotama lacks taste.' For tastes for forms, sounds, scents, flavours,

¹ All this is stock. ² BRAHMALI: The following is found in almost identical terms at AN 8.11.

³ *Bho*. This is the vocative, singular and plural, of *bhavant*. See Introduction, BD.1.xxxviii.

⁴ Also stock; cf., e.g., MN.i.82, Snp.p.50, Snp.p.92; Vin.2.188. ⁵ *Bhavañ*. ⁶ *Na sampaññañ eva*. Vin-a.130 *tañ abhivādanādinañ akaraññañ ayuitañ eva*. Similar passages are at AN.i.67 (AN-a: *na yuttañ eva*, *na anucchavikañ eva*). Translator at GS.i.63 says "the idea here is 'not the perfect gentleman' or 'bad form.'" See also AN.iii.223; AN.iv.173. ⁷ *muddhāpi tassa vipateyya*. Buddhaghosa explains at Vin-a.131: "the head of that man (*tassa puggalassa*) having been cut off from the neck, may it fall to the ground." Same phrase occurs at DN.i.143; DN.iii.19; Dh.p.72.

Cf. Ja.v.33, *muddhāpi tassa vipphateyya sattadhā* with variant readings: *vipa-*, *vipha-* and *phaleyyuñ*. Cf. Ja.v.493, *muddhāpi me sattadhā phaleyya* ("perhaps the best reading" — *Pali-English Dictionary*), and *ibid.*, *muddhāpi tassa vipateyya sattadhā*. ⁸ *Bhavañ*. ⁹ *Arasarūpa*. Vin-a.131 takes this to mean lack of good manners. Gotama is said not to show complete taste, which consists in paying reverence, making salutation, getting up from the seat and making a respectful greeting. cf. Taittirīya Upaniṣad ii.7.

and tangible objects—these have been destroyed by the Tathāgata, cut off at the root, made like a palm-stump, so utterly done away with that they are incapable of future arising. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama lacks taste.’ But that is not what you meant.”

“The revered Gotama is without enjoyment.”¹

BD.1.4

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is without enjoyment.’ For enjoyments of forms, sounds, scents, flavours, and tangible objects—these have been destroyed by the Tathāgata, cut off at the root, made like a palm-stump, so utterly done away with that they are incapable of future arising. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is without enjoyment.’ But that is not what you meant.”

“The revered Gotama professes the doctrine of non-action.”²

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama professes the doctrine of non-action.’ For I teach the non-doing of misconduct by body, speech and mind. I teach the non-doing of manifold bad unwholesome actions. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama professes the doctrine of non-action.’ But that is not what you meant.”

“The revered Gotama professes the doctrine of annihilation.”³

Vin.3.3

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama professes the doctrine of annihilation.’ For I speak of the annihilation of sense desire, anger and confusion;⁴ I speak of the annihilation of manifold bad unwholesome qualities. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama professes the doctrine of annihilation.’ But that is not what you meant.”

“The revered Gotama is one who detests.”⁵

¹ *Nibbhoga*, or “property,” as at GS.iv.118. Vin-a.134 says that greeting the aged is *sāmaggi-paribhoga*. ² For this passage to end of Bu-Pj.1.1.3 cf. Vin.1.234–236 and AN.iv.180ff., in both of which Gotama is represented as speaking with the General Siha. The theory of non-action is usually attributed to Pūraṇa Kassapa, as at DN.i.52f. The theory of *kiriya-vādin* and *akiriya-vādin* is also stated at AN.i.62. ³ *Ucchedavāda*, or cutting off. cf. DN.i.34. Rhys Davids refers to Kaṭha Upaniṣad i.20, where the doubt as to whether, after a man is dead, he exists or not, is also voiced by Naciketas. Cf. also MN.ii.228. ⁴ cf. SN.iv.252, definition of *nibbāna*. ⁵ *Jegucchī*, one who loathes, or feels abhorrence. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.237, n.2, and cf. MN.i.77, MN.i.78.

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is one who detests.’ For I detest misconduct by body, speech and mind, and the acquisition¹ of manifold bad unwholesome qualities. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is one who detests.’ But that is not what you meant.”

BD.1.5

“The revered Gotama is a disciplinarian.”²

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is a disciplinarian.’ For I teach the *Dhamma* for the disciplining of sense desire, anger and confusion; I teach the *Dhamma* for the disciplining of manifold bad unwholesome qualities. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is a disciplinarian.’ But that is not what you meant.”

“The revered Gotama is one who practises austerities.”³

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is one who practises austerities.’ For I say that bad unwholesome qualities—misconduct by body, speech and mind—are to be burned up.⁴ He who has destroyed the bad unwholesome qualities that are to be burned up, who has cut them off at the root, made them like a palm-stump, done away with them so utterly that they are incapable of future arising—him I call one who practises austerities. The Tathāgata has destroyed the bad unwholesome qualities that are to be burned up, has cut them off at the root, made them like a palm tree, done away with them so utterly that they are incapable of future arising. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is one who practises austerities.’ But that is not what you meant.”

BD.1.6

¹ *Samāpatti*. ² *Venayika*. Vin-a.135 says that the brahmin did not see the lord paying reverence and so forth, and said that he restrained these acts with regard to the “highest in the world,” therefore he thought him one to be restrained, one to be suppressed. At MN.i.140 Gotama is represented as telling the monks that he is charged with being *venayika*. It here seems to mean annihilator, for it is combined with: “he preaches the disintegration, the destruction and annihilation of existing creatures.” But as translator (GS.iv.119, n.4) remarks, we have *natthika* and *ucchedavāda* for nihilist and annihilator. See *loc. cit.* for valuable remarks, and AN.v.190. ³ *Tapassī*, connected with *tapas*, literally burnt up. It can also mean “one who has his senses under control.” ⁴ *tapaniyā*; cf. AN.i.49 and “should be mortified” at GS.iv.120.

“The revered Gotama is withdrawn.”¹²

“There is indeed, brahmin, a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is withdrawn.’ He whose future conception in a womb, whose rebirth in a future life, is destroyed and cut off at the root, made like a palm-stump, so utterly done away with that it is incapable of future arising—him I call one who is withdrawn. The Tathāgata’s future conception in a womb, his rebirth in a future life, is destroyed and cut off at the root, made like a palm-stump, so utterly done away with that he is incapable of future arising. This is a way in which one could truly say of me, ‘the recluse Gotama is withdrawn.’ But that is not what you meant.”

Bu-Pj.1.1.4

“Brahmin, suppose there was a hen³ with eight or ten or twelve eggs, which she had properly covered, properly warmed and properly incubated. Is the first chick that hatches safely—having pierced through the egg-shell with the point of the claw on its foot, or with its beak—to be called the eldest or the youngest?”

“He is to be called the eldest, good Gotama, for he is the eldest of those.”

“Even so, brahmin, in this generation without understanding, being like an egg, covered over, I alone⁴ in the world have split the eggshell of ignorance and reached the unsurpassed full awakening. I, brahmin, am the world’s eldest⁵ and best.⁶ Brahmin,⁷ I was firmly energetic and had clarity of mindfulness; my body was tranquil and my mind unified. Fully secluded from the five senses, secluded from unwholesome mental qualities, I entered and remained in the first *jhāna*, which consists of rapture and happiness born of seclusion, accompanied by movement of the mind. Through the stilling of the movement of the mind, I entered and remained in the second *jhāna*, which has internal confidence and unification of mind⁸ and consists of rapture and happiness born of *samādhi*. Through the fading away

Vin.3.4

BD.1.7

Bu-Pj.1.1.5

¹ BRAHMALI: The Pali puns on the word *apagabbha*, which has the double meaning of “timid” and “not going to a womb”, i.e. not being reborn. “Withdrawn” is an attempt at capturing this. ² *apagabbha*. Vin-a.136, the brahmin says that Gotama is either destined to be reborn again in a mother’s womb or not to arise in a deva-world. ³ cf. MN.i.104. ⁴ *eko=eko adutiyo*, Vin-a.139. ⁵ Vin-a.140, on account of being the first-born among *ariyas*. In Vin-a.165 *ariyas* are defined as Buddhas, paccekabuddhas, and the disciples of Buddhas. ⁶ cf. DN.ii.15, *aggo, jettho, settḥo*. ⁷ This passage to end of Bu-Pj.1.1.8 below = MN.i.21, but the Majjhima omits the simile of the chick. ⁸ *ekodibhāva*.

of rapture, I remained even-minded, mindful and clearly comprehending, experiencing happiness directly, and I entered and remained in the third *jhāna* of which the noble one declare, 'he is even-minded, mindful, and abides in happiness.' Through the abandoning of happiness and suffering and the earlier ending of joy and displeasure,¹ I entered and remained in the fourth *jhāna*, which has neither suffering nor happiness and consists of purity of mindfulness and even-mindedness.²

Then with the mind collected, clarified, purified, flawless, void of taints, grown soft and pliable, steady and imperturbable,³ I directed it⁴ to the knowledge of the memory of former lives. I recollected many past lives, that is to say, one birth,⁵ two births, three births, four births, five births, ten births, twenty births, thirty births, forty births, fifty births, a hundred births, a thousand births, a hundred thousand births, and many eons of world dissolution, many eons of world evolution,⁶ and many eons of both dissolution and evolution: "There I had such a name, such a family, such appearance,⁷ such food, such experience of happiness and suffering, and such a life-span. Passing away from there I was reborn elsewhere, and there I had such a name ... and such a life-span. Passing away from there I was reborn here. Thus I recollected many past lives with their characteristics and particulars." This was the first knowledge attained by me in the first watch of that night;⁸ ignorance was dispelled, understanding arose, darkness was dispelled, light arose, as it is for one who remains heedful, ardent and energetic.⁹ This, brahmin, was my first successful breaking forth like a

Bu-Pj.1.1.6

BD.1.8

BD.1.9

¹ Explained by the Commentary to mean bodily ease and bodily discomfort. ² cf. AN.i.53; SN.v.318. ³ Vin.3.4; MN.i.22, read *āṇañjappatte* with variant readings; AN.ii.211; DN.i.76; MN.i.182 all read *āṇejjappatte*. This passage to end of Bu-Pj.1.1.8 below = MN.i.22 = MN.i.182-183, except that these omit the simile of the chick. ⁴ cf. AN.ii.211; DN.i.76ff. ⁵ cf. SN.ii.122. ⁶ I follow Lord Chalmers', translation at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.15, for, although it is not perfect, it gives the idea that the process is eternally repeated. KS.ii.86 reads "æon of involution ... of evolution"; GS.iv.121, "rolling on and rolling back"; GS.ii.145, "rolling up and rolling back." The brahmanic idea is that as Viṣṇu sleeps on the giant cobra, he dreams the world; this is its out-rolling, its coming to be. When he awakes the world falls into nothingness, it is withdrawn, until the god sleeps and dreams again. ⁷ Vin-a.160, *evaṃvaṇṇo ti odāto vā sāmo vā*. ⁸ See *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.15, n.1 for this night being occupied with the "chain of causation," as at Vin.1.1. ⁹ *pahitatta*; see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.295.

chick's from the eggshell.

Bu-Pj.1.1.7

Then with the mind collected, clarified, purified, flawless, void of taints, grown soft and pliable, steady and imperturbable, I directed it to the knowledge of the arising and passing away of beings. With the purified divine eye surpassing that of humans, I saw beings passing away and getting reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, gone to good destinations¹ and bad destinations,² and I understood how beings fare according to their kamma: 'These beings³ who engaged in misconduct by body, speech and mind, who abused the noble ones, held wrong view and acted accordingly,⁴ at the breaking up of the body after death, have arisen in the plane of misery, a bad destination, the abyss, hell. But these beings who engaged in good conduct of body, speech and mind, who did not abuse the noble ones, held right view and acted accordingly, at the breaking up of the body after death, have arisen in a good destination, a heaven world. Thus with the purified divine eye surpassing that of humans, I saw beings passing away and getting reborn, inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, gone to good destinations and bad destinations, and I understood how beings fare according to their kamma.⁵ This was the second knowledge attained by me in the middle watch of that night. Ignorance was dispelled, understanding arose, darkness was dispelled, light arose, as it is for one who remains heedful, ardent and energetic. This, brahmin, was my second successful breaking forth, like a chick's from the eggshell.

Vin.3.5

Bu-Pj.1.1.8

BD.1.10

Then⁶ with the mind collected, clarified, purified, flawless, void of taints, grown soft and pliable, steady and imperturbable, I directed it to the knowledge of the ending of the corruptions. I knew according to reality: This is suffering, this is the arising of suffering, this is the ending of suffering, this is the course leading to the ending of suffering. I knew according to reality: These are the corruptions, this is the arising of the corruptions, this is the ending of the corruptions, this is the course leading to the ending of

¹ Vin-a.164, *sugate ti sugatigate ... duggate ti duggatigate*, literally gone to a good bourn, etc.; or, in a good bourn, etc. ² Vin-a.164, *sugate ti sugatigate ... duggate ti duggatigate*, literally gone to a good bourn, etc.; or, in a good bourn, etc. ³ *Bhonto*. ⁴ *kammasamādāna*, translated at GS.iii.295, "action's moulding," and at GS.iv.122, "men who have acquired this karma." ⁵ This passage = SN.ii.122f. ⁶ For this passage cf. AN.ii.211; MN.i.23; MN.iii.36.

the corruptions. When I knew and saw this, my mind was freed from the corruption of sense desire, my mind was freed from the corruption of existence, my mind was freed from the corruption of false views, my mind was freed from the corruption of ignorance.¹ When it was freed, I knew,² “It is freed,” and I understood that birth is ended, the spiritual life has been lived, the job has been done, there is no further state of existence.³ This was the third knowledge attained by me in the third watch of that night. Ignorance was dispelled, understanding arose, darkness was dispelled, light arose, as it is for one who remains heedful, ardent and energetic.⁴ This, brahmin, was my third successful breaking forth, like a chick’s from the eggshell.”

Vin.3.6
Bu-Pj.1.1.9

When this had been said, the brahmin of Verañjā said to the Master:

“Good Gotama is the eldest; good Gotama is the best. Wonderful, good Gotama, wonderful. As one might set upright what had been overturned, or reveal what had been hidden, or show the way to one who was lost, or bring a lamp into the darkness so that those with eyes might see forms—even so has the good Gotama made the *Dhamma* clear in many ways. To good⁵ Gotama I go for refuge, and to the *Dhamma* and to the Sangha of monks. May the good Gotama accept me as a lay follower who from today has gone for refuge for life.⁶ May the good Gotama consent to spend the rains at Verañjā together with the Sangha of monks.” The Master consented by silence. Then the brahmin of Verañjā, understanding that the Master had consented, rose from his seat, paid homage to him and departed, keeping his right side towards him.

BD.1.11

Bu-Pj.1.2.1

¹ These are the four *āsavā*. At MN.i.23 and AN.ii.211, AN.iv.179 only three *āsavas* are mentioned. ² Cf. GS.ii.225, n.2; GS.iv.123. ³ One of the formulæ of arahantship. ⁴ To here from Bu-Pj.1.1.5 above = MN.i.21 (and of MN.i.182-183). ⁵ Here *bhagavantam*; at AN.iv.179 *bhavantam*. ⁶ Vin.1.236; MN.i.24, MN.i.488f., etc., for this stock passage. To here, from beginning of this *Pārājika*, cf. AN.iv.173.

BD.1.12

At that time Verañjā¹ was short of food² and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw. It was not easy to keep oneself going³ by collecting alms. Just then some horse-dealers from Uttarāpathaka⁴ entered the rains residence at Verañjā with five hundred horses. In the horse-pen⁵ they prepared *pattha* measure after *pattha* measure of steamed grain⁶ for

¹ Burlingame, *Buddhist Legends*, ii.193, says that Jātaka no. 183 is derived from this Vinaya story; and that the Commentary on Dhp.83 is derived from this Jātaka; cf. Dhp-a.ii.153ff.

² Cf. below Bu-Pj.1.5.5; Bu-Pj.4.1.1.

The meaning of these four stock-phrases is doubtful: (1) Short of almsfood = *dubbhikkhā*; may also mean: (suffering from) famine. Vin-a.174, *dullabhikkhā*, almsfood (was) hard to get. (2) Difficult to obtain = *dvīhitikā*; may also mean: crops were bad. See article in *Pali-English Dictionary*. (3) Suffering from famine = *setatthikā*; may also mean: i) (strewn with) white bones, ii) mildew. So translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.326 Vin.2.256), where this word used in simile = AN.iv.279, translated GS.iv.185 (see GS.iv.185 n.2), “white-as-bones” (disease). (4) Food tickets were issued = *salākāvuttā*; may also mean: people subsisted on blades of grass. Vin-a.175 gives both meanings. GS.i.142 = AN.i.160: grown to mere stubs. At AN.i.24 Kuṇḍadhāna is called “chief among those who are the first to receive a food ticket” (GS.i.18). AN-a.i.260f. apparently refers to a food ticket. Cf. Vin-a.174f., AN-a.ii.257, SN-a.iii.106. Also GS.i.142, KS.iv.228 (= AN.i.160, SN.iv.323) and their notes. ³ *yāpetum*. Cf. description of Vesāli in opposite terms at Vin.1.238. ⁴ Probably meaning Northern India, see B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.48. At Ja.ii.287 five hundred horse-dealers from Uttarāpatha are mentioned. Also a certain dealer had five hundred horses. ⁵ *Āssamaṇḍalika*. Vin-a.176 says: “Not being able to journey during the four rainy months in this district, they built outside the city in a place not submerged by water, sleeping quarters (*vāsāgara*) for themselves and stables (*mandira*) for the horses, encircled by a fence.” ⁶ *Patthapaṭṭhamūlaka* = Dhp-a.ii.154, where n.4 gives Fausböll’s reading, *pattan thūlakam*. In my copy of Fausböll’s edition of the Dhammapada, which was formerly Trenckner’s, Trenckner has altered this reading to *pattham mūlakam*. Vin-a.176 reads °*pulakam* with variant reading *mūlakam*. *Pattha* is a measure of a certain capacity. See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.18. At Vin-a.176 it is said: *pattho nāma nālimattam*. *Nālimattam* would seem to mean as much as a tube or hollow stalk holds; translated at GS.ii.210 “root-fibres.” Snp-a.476 says *cattāro patthā ālhakam*, an *ālhaka* being another measure; thus one *pattha* = ¼ *ālhaka*. At Dhp-a.ii.70; Pv-a.283 and Ja.i.419 *pattha* is used of *ajalaṇḍika*, put down a bad monk’s throat.

Buddhaghosa says, Vin-a.176, that a *pattha* measure of *pulaka* was prepared for each monk, the horse-dealers saying, “What if we were now to take a *pattha* measure from the morning meal of each horse and give it to each monk. Thus they will not suffer and the horses will be kept going.” Buddhaghosa says, *pulakam nāma nitthusan katvā ussedetvā gahitayavataṇḍulā vuccanti*, which would seem to mean: “having done away with the husk and having steamed it—*pulaka* is the name of barley and rice husked and taken after steaming” = steamed—i.e., rice ready for boiling.

Ussedeti is not given in *Pali-English Dictionary*, but *sedeti* is given as causative of *sijjati*, to heat, to steam.

the monks. The monks, having dressed in the morning, took their bowls and robes and entered Verañjā for alms. Being unable to obtain anything, they went to the horse-pen. Having brought the *pattha* measures of steamed grain back to the monastery, they pounded them and ate them. Venerable Ānanda, having crushed a *pattha* measure of the steamed grain on a stone, took it to the Master, and the Master ate it.

Now the Master had heard the sound of the mortar. Tathāgatas sometimes ask knowing,¹ and knowing sometimes do not ask; they ask knowing the right time to ask, and they ask knowing the right time when not to ask. Tathāgatas ask when it is beneficial,² not when it is unbeneficial; in regard to what is unbeneficial, the Tathāgatas have destroyed the bridge.³⁴ The Buddhas, the Masters, question the monks for two reasons: “We shall teach the *Dhamma* or lay down a training rule for the disciples.”

BD.1.13

Then the Master addressed Venerable Ānanda: “Ānanda, what is this sound of a mortar?”

Then Venerable Ānanda informed the Master.

Vin.3.7

“Good, good, Ānanda, you who are superior people⁵ have conquered⁶ (the problems of famine);⁷ later generations⁸ will despise even rice and meat.”

Bu-Pj.1.2.2

Then Venerable Mahāmoggallāna⁹ approached the Master, paid homage to him and sat down to one side. He then said to him:

¹ = Vin.1.158 = Vin.3.88–89 below. ² *Attha*, in Sakya the positive goal. The translators of Vin.1.158 at *Vinaya Texts*, i.327 translate *atthasamhita* as “full of sense,” thus taking *attha* (quite unnecessarily) in its later, debased and narrowed meaning. The negative word *anatta* appears at Vin.1.10 in the First Utterance, the positive form being there absent. See GS.iv., GS.vii. and GS.xix. ³ BRAHMALI: This seems to mean that Tathāgatas are unable to do what is unbeneficial due to their achievement of awakening, cf. Vin-a.i.180,7. ⁴ *Setughāta*. Vin-a.180 says *setu vuccati maggo*. Thus if we follow Buddhaghosa in this interpretation of *setughāta*, the rendering “the bridge is pulled down for the Tathāgatas” of *Vinaya Texts* i.327 must be given up. Cf. AN.i.220, where it seems to mean the breaking down of new actions; and cf. AN.i.260; AN.ii.145; Ds.299ff. ⁵ *Sappurisa*. On prefix *sa-* see Mrs. Rhys Davids, Introduction to GS.i.ixf. ⁶ *Vijitam*, also meaning conquered, subdued. Vin-a.180 says *dubbhikkham vijitam lobho vijito icchācāro vijito*. ⁷ BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.i.180,24. ⁸ *Pacchimā janatā*. Vin-a.181 says *anāgate*; also that they will be sitting in the *vihāra*, getting food easily, but feeling nothing but contempt for it as being not to their liking. Cf. below, BD.1.66. ⁹ Generally paired with Sāriputta. At AN.i.23 he is called chief among the disciples who have psychic power. Cf. Vin.1.39; Thag.382ff.

BD.1.14 “At present, Master, Verañjā is short of food and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw. It is not easy to keep oneself going by collecting alms. Master, the under-surface of this great earth is abounding with food,¹ and its taste is just like pure honey.² It would be good, Master, if I inverted the earth,³ so that the monks might enjoy the nutritive essence of the water-plants.”

“But what will you do with those creatures, Moggallāna, who are supported by the earth?”

“Master, I will make one of my hands broad, like the great earth, and I will make those creatures who are supported by the earth go there. Then with the other hand I will invert the earth.”

“Enough, Moggallāna, please do not invert the earth, or beings may become deranged.”⁴

“It would be good, Master, if the whole Sangha of monks could go to Uttarakuru⁵ for alms.”

“Enough, Moggallāna, do not pursue this idea.”

Bu-Pj.1.3.1

Now while Venerable Sāriputta⁶ was in seclusion, he thought this: “For which Buddhas, for which Masters, did the spiritual life not last long? For which Buddhas, for which Masters, did the spiritual life last long?”

Then, in the evening, Venerable Sāriputta came out of seclusion and approached the Master. He paid homage to him, sat down to one side and said this: “Just now, Master, as I was in seclusion, I thought this: ‘For which Buddhas ... last long?’”

“Sāriputta, the spiritual life established by Master Vipassī,⁷ Master Sikhī and Master Vesabhū did not last long. But the spiritual life established by Master Kakusandha,⁸ Master Konāgamana and Master Kassapa did last

¹ BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.i.182,9. ² For this simile cf. DN.iii.87. ³ Vin-a.182 explains: so as to turn up the lowest level to the top. ⁴ Vipallāsa, from vi+pari+as, literally to throw round against. ⁵ B.C. LAW in his *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.17, p.53, says that Uttarakuru “is alluded to in Pāli literature as a mythical region.” ⁶ Usually paired with Moggallāna. See *Psalm of the Brethren*, p.340. At AN.i.23 he is called chief among the disciples “of great wisdom.” ⁷ Some of the 24 Buddhas. For Sikhī see SN.i.155ff., and for all three Ja.i.4ff.; DN.ii.2ff. ⁸ The last three Buddhas before the present supreme Buddha. Cf. Ja.i.43; Dh-p-a.i.84, Dh-p-a.iii.236; DN.ii.2ff.

long.”

“And what, Master, is the reason why the spiritual life established by Master Vipassī, Master Sikhī and Master Vesabhū did not last long?”

“Sāriputta, Master Vipassī, Master Sikhī and Master Vessabhū were disinclined to teach the *Dhamma* in detail to their disciples. They had few discourses¹ in prose and in prose and verse, few expositions, verses, inspired utterances,² quotations, birth stories, amazing accounts and analyses^{3,4}; and training rules were not laid down and a Pātimokkha was not recited. After the disappearance of those Buddhas, those Masters, after the disappearance⁵ of the disciples enlightened under those Buddhas,⁶ those who were the last disciples—of various names, clans,⁷ and social strata,⁸ who had gone forth from various families—caused that spiritual life rapidly to disappear. It is just like various flowers, lying on a flat piece of wood⁹ without being tied together by a thread, are scattered about, whirled about and destroyed by the wind. Why is that? Because they are not held together by a thread. Even so, at the disappearance of those Buddhas, those Masters, at the disappearance of the disciples enlightened under those Buddhas, those who were the last disciples—of various names, clans and social strata, who had gone forth from various families—caused that spiritual life rapidly to disappear. Instead those Masters were untiring in exhorting their disciples, after reading their minds with their own.¹⁰

Formerly, Sāriputta, while staying in a certain frightening jungle thicket,

¹ See *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.93, n.1 on meaning of “Suttas”; not explained in Vinaya Commentary on above passage. Also on these names see E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.277ff., and J. PRZYLUKSI, *Le Concile de Rājagṛha*, p.342ff. At DN-a.i.23f., Vin-a.28, AN-a.iii.5f., Atthasālinī 26, these nine *aṅgas* of the Canon are listed and described. ² *Udāna*. On this name see *Sacred Books of the Buddhists*, Vol. XIII, p.vf. ³ BRAHMALI: *Vedalla*. ⁴ On derivation of *vedalla*, see J. PRZYLUKSI, *Le Concile de Rājagṛha*, p.344; E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.278, n.1. ⁵ Vin-a.187, “after the disappearance of the *khandhas*, after the *parinibbāna*.” ⁶ Vin-a.187, *anubuddhā = sammukhasāvakā*. At Thag.679 = Thag.1246 = SN.i.193 *buddhānubuddho yo thero Koṇḍañño*, translated, “who next to our great Waked One was awake.” SN-a.i.282 says: “The Teacher was first enlightened in the four truths, afterwards the *thera*.” Thus an interesting variation is apparent in the interpretation of *buddhānubuddho* as given by SN-a. and Vin-a. ⁷ Vin-a.187, such as “protected by Buddha, protected by *dhamma*.” ⁸ Vin-a.187, such as *khattiya, brāhmaṇa*. ⁹ *phalaka*, a board, a plank. Perhaps a tray here, such as flower-vendors carry. ¹⁰ Cf. DN.i.79; MN.i.445; SN.ii.233.

Master Vessabhū, the *arahant*, the fully Awakened One, exhorted and admonished a Sangha of a thousand monks, reading their minds with his own, saying: ‘Think like this,¹ not like this;² pay attention like this,³ not like this;⁴ forsake this;⁵ having attained this,⁶ abide in it.’ Then, when those thousand monks had been exhorted and admonished by Master Vessabhū, the *arahant*, the fully Awakened One, their minds were freed from the corruptions without grasping.⁷ But if anyone not devoid of desire should enter that frightening jungle- thicket, usually their hair would stand on end. This is the reason why the spiritual life established by Master Vipassī, Master Sikhī and Master Vesabhū did not last long.”

BD.1.17

Bu-Pj.1.3.3

“But what, Master, is the reason why the spiritual life established by Master Kakusandha, Master Konāgamana and Master Kassapa lasted long?”

Vin.3.9

“Sāriputta, Master Kakusandha, Master Konāgamana and Master Kassapa were diligent in teaching the *Dhamma* in detail to their disciples. They had many discourses in prose and in prose and in verse, many expositions, verses, inspired utterances, quotations, birth stories, amazing accounts and analyses; and training rules for their disciples were laid down and a Pātimokkha was recited. At the disappearance of those Buddhas, those Masters, at the disappearance of the disciples who were enlightened under those Buddhas, those who were the last disciples—of various names, clans and social strata, who had gone forth from various families—established that spiritual life for a long time. It is just like various flowers, lying on a piece of wood but being well tied together by a thread, are not scattered about, whirled about or destroyed by the wind. Why is that? Because they are well tied together by the thread. Even so, at the disappearance of those Buddhas, those Masters, at the disappearance of the disciples who were enlightened under those Buddhas, those who were the last disciples—of various names, clans and social strata, who had gone forth from various families—established that spiritual life for a long time. This is the reason why the spiritual life established by Master Kakusandha, Master Konāgamana and Master

¹ Vin-a.188, i.e. to the three *vitakkā*: viz., renunciation, benevolence and non-injury. ² Vin-a.188, to their opposites: viz., sensual pleasures, malevolence and injury. ³ Vin-a.188, i.e. to impermanence, sorrow and non-self. ⁴ Vin-a.188, i.e. to their opposites. ⁵ Vin-a.188, i.e. what is wrong. ⁶ Vin-a.188, i.e. what is right. ⁷ *Anupādāya*.

Kassapa lasted long.”

Then Venerable Sāriputta got up from his seat, put his robe over one shoulder, put the palms of his hands together and said to the Master:

“This is the right time, Master,¹ to lay down training rules and recite a Pātimokkha, so that this spiritual life may persist and last for a long time.”

“Hold on, Sāriputta, the Tathāgata will know the right time for that. The teacher does not lay down training rules for his disciples and recite a Pātimokkha until the causes of corruption appear in the Sangha.² And they do not appear until the Sangha has attained long standing,³ great size⁴⁵⁶ or great learning.⁷ But when this happens, then the Teacher lays down training rules for his disciples and recites a Pātimokkha in order to ward off those causes of corruptions. Sāriputta, the Sangha of monks is devoid of immorality,⁸ devoid of danger, stainless, purified, established in the essence.⁹ The most backward¹⁰ of these five hundred monks is a stream-enterer, not liable to be reborn in any state of misery, assured, bound for awakening.¹¹

Bu-Pj.1.3.4

BD.1.18

BD.1.19

Vin.3.10

Then the Master addressed Venerable Ānanda: “Ānanda, it is the custom for Tathāgatas not to tour the country without having taken leave of those

BD.1.20
Bu-Pj.1.4

¹ *Sugata*. ² Vin-a.191, things belonging to the here and now and to the next world, the bonds of murder, bad conscience and the reproaching of others, and a variety of ill and woe. For this passage, cf. MN.i.445. ³ Vin-a.194 quotes **Kd.1.31**. ⁴ Vin-a.194 quotes **Bu-Pc.5**; cf. MN-a.iii.156. ⁵ *lābhaggamahatta*. Vin-a.194 *lābhassa aggamahattarū yo lābhassa aggo uttamo mahantabhāvo taṃ patthot itī attho*. For list of “gains” see AN.i.38. At MN.i.445 we find *lābhaggam*, translated *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.317 as “wealth.” ⁶ Vin-a.195 quotes **Bu-Pc.41**; cf. MN-a.iii.156. ⁷ Vin-a.195 quotes **Bu-Pc.68**; cf. MN-a.iii.157. ⁸ *nirabbuda*. *Lokasmiṃ abbuda*, translated at ks.i.61 “a hell on earth,” and SN-a.i.100 says that “thieves are those who cause ruin in the world.” At Vin-a.195 *nirabbudo* = *niccoro*, free from thieves. It explains that here thieves mean those who are immoral, not being true *samaṇas*; but pretending to be, they steal the requisites of others. Therefore *nirabbuda* (free from ruin) means free from thieves, free from immorality. *Nirabbuda* recurs below, **Vin.3.18**. ⁹ Buddhaghosa says, Vin-a.195, that this consists of virtue, contemplation, wisdom, freedom, and knowledge and insight into freedom. ¹⁰ *pacchimaka*. At AN.ii.80 and DN.ii.155 Gotama is made to use this sentence in addressing Ānanda. The Commentary on AN.ii.80 and at DN-a.ii.593 say that by *pacchimaka*, Ānanda is meant. Our the Commentary (Vin-a.195) naturally does not refer to him. ¹¹ A usual formula for stream-entrants.

who invited them to spend the rains. Let us go to the brahmin of Verañjā and take leave.”

“Yes, Master.”

Then the Master dressed, took his bowl and robe and, with Venerable Ānanda as his attendant,¹ went to the dwelling of the brahmin of Verañjā and sat down on the prepared seat. Then the brahmin of Verañjā approached the Master, paid homage to him and sat down to one side. The Master then said to the brahmin of Verañjā:

Vin.3.11

“Brahmin, having stayed for the rainy season according to your invitation, we are taking leave of you. We wish to depart for a tour of the country.”

“It is true, good Gotama, that you have stayed for the rainy season according to my invitation, but a gift has not been given. That is not good, nor is it because we did not want to give. It happened because household life is busy and there is much to do. May the good Gotama consent to a meal tomorrow together with the Sangha of monks.”

The Master consented by keeping silence. Then the Master, having taught, roused, gladdened and delighted the brahmin of Verañjā with a talk on the *Dhamma*, rose from his seat and went away. Then, when the night was over, the brahmin of Verañjā prepared various kinds of delicious food² in his own home, and then informed the Master:

“It is time, good Gotama, the meal is ready.”

Then the Master, having dressed in the morning, took his bowl and robe and, together with the Sangha of monks, he went to the dwelling of the brahmin of Verañjā and sat down on the prepared seat. Then, with his own hands, the brahmin of Verañjā served various kinds of delicious food to the Sangha of monks with the Buddha at its head. When they were satisfied and the Master had eaten and finished his meal, he gave the Master a set of three robes and a pair of robes to each monk.³ The Master instructed, roused, gladdened and delighted the brahmin of Verañjā with talk on the *Dhamma*, and then rose from his seat and departed.

BD.1.21

The Master, having remained at Verañjā for as long as he liked, went

¹ *Pacchāsamaṇa*, the junior monk who walks behind the senior on his rounds. Ānanda accompanies Gotama again at [Vin.4.78](#). ² Defined at [Vin.4.92](#). ³ *dussayuga*, cf. [Vin.1.278](#) and *Vinaya Texts* ii.190, n.; MN.i.215 = SN.v.71.

to Payāgapatiṭṭhāna via Soreyya,¹ Saṅkassa² and Kaṇṇakujja.³ There he crossed the river Ganges and proceeded to Benares. Having remained at Benares for as long as he liked, he set out for Vesālī on tour. Wandering on tour by stages, he arrived at Vesālī.⁴ There he stayed in the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof.

The chapter on Verañjā is finished

ORIGIN STORY

FIRST SUB-STORY

At that time not far from Vesālī was a village called Kalandaka. There lived Sudinna, the son of a prominent merchant.⁵ Now Sudinna the Kalandaka⁶ went to Vesālī on some business together with many friends. At that time the Master was seated, surrounded by a great assembly of people, teaching the *Dhamma*. When Sudinna saw this he thought:⁷ “Perhaps I should listen to the *Dhamma*?”⁸ Then Sudinna approached the assembly and sat down to one side.

Bu-Pj.1.5.1

BD.1.22

Vin.3.12

As he was sitting there, Sudinna thought: “So far as I understand the *Dhamma* taught by the Master, it is no easy matter for one who lives in a house to lead the spiritual life that is utterly perfect and pure as a polished conch shell. Perhaps I should cut off my hair and beard, put on the yellow robes and go forth from home into homelessness?”

When the crowd had been taught, roused, gladdened and delighted by the Master with talk on the *Dhamma*, they rose from their seats, paid

¹ A town near Takkasilā; mentioned also in connection with these other two towns at [Vin.2.299](#). ² A town, said by Fausböll to be the locus of Dh.p.181. At its gate Sāriputta interpreted a problem, on which Jātaka 134 is based. See Ja.i.473. ³ The modern Allahabad.

⁴ Capital of the Vajji country. See B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.12f. ⁵ Vin-a.202 says that as other people there were called Kalanda(ka), Sudinna was also called “son of the great merchant” (*setṭhiputta*)—to distinguish him. ⁶ Referred to at [Vin.2.286](#) as “the first *pārājika*, promulgated at Vesālī on account of Sudinna with regard to sexual intercourse.” Referred to at Mi.170. ⁷ Vin-a.202, “because having in former births been very meritorious, he was incited, a clansman’s son, bound to become” (*bhabbakulaputta*). ⁸ This same story is told in practically the same words about Raṭṭhapāla at MN.ii.55ff.

homage to the Master, circumambulated him with their right side towards him and departed. When the crowd had departed, Sudinna approached the Master, paid homage to him and sat down to one side. He then said to the Master:

“Master, so far as I understand the *Dhamma* taught by the Master, it is not an easy matter for one who lives in a house to lead the spiritual life that is utterly perfect and pure as a polished conch shell. Master, I wish to cut off my hair and beard, put on the yellow robes and go forth from home into homelessness. May the Master let me go forth.”

BD.1.23

“But, Sudinna, do you have your parents’ permission?”

“No, Master.”

“Sudinna, Tathāgatas do not ordain a child without the parents’ permission.”

“I will do whatever is necessary, Master, to get my parents’ permission.”

Bu-Pj.1.5.2

Then Sudinna, having finished his business in Vesālī, returned to Kalandaka. There he approached his parents and said:

“Mother and father, in so far as I understand the *Dhamma* taught by the Master, it is no easy matter for one who lives in a house to lead the spiritual life that is utterly perfect and pure as a polished conch shell. I wish to cut off my hair and beard, put on the yellow robes and go forth from home into homelessness. Give me your permission to go forth.”

Vin.3.13

His parents replied:

“But, Sudinna, you are our only child, dear and beloved, you live in comfort and are well cared for. Sudinna, you have no experience of suffering. Even if you died, we would not willingly be without you. How can we, while you are still living, permit you to go forth from home into homelessness?”

A second time Sudinna said to his parents: “Mother and father ...” “... into homelessness?” A third time Sudinna said to his parents: “Mother and father ...” “... into homelessness?”

Thinking, “My parents do not permit me to go forth,” he lay down on the bare ground and said: “I will either die right here or go forth.” And he stopped eating and did not eat at the next seven meals.¹

BD.1.24

Then his parents said: “Dear Sudinna, you are our only child, dear and

¹ This passage omitted at MN.ii.57, see MN.ii.57, n.7.

beloved, you live in comfort and are well cared for; you have no experience of suffering. Even if you died, we would not willingly be without you. How can we, while you are still living, permit you to go forth? Get up, Sudinna, eat, drink and amuse yourself. Find delight¹ in sensual pleasures and in doing meritorious actions.² We do not allow you to go forth.” When they had said this, Sudinna was silent.

A second time and a third time the parents of Sudinna said: “... We do not permit you to go forth.” A third time Sudinna was silent.

Then the friends of Sudinna approached him and said: “Sudinna, you are your parents' only child, dear and beloved. You live in comfort and are well cared for; you have no experience of suffering. Even if you died, your parents would not willingly be without you. How can they, while you are still living, allow you to go forth? Get up, Sudinna, eat, drink and amuse yourself. Find delight in sensual pleasures and in doing meritorious actions. Your parents will not allow you to go forth.”

When they had said this, Sudinna was silent. A second and a third time the friends of Sudinna said: “Sudinna, you are ...” and a third time Sudinna was silent.

Then the friends of Sudinna approached his parents and said: “Mother and father, Sudinna says that he will either die right there on the bare ground or go forth. If you do not allow Sudinna to go forth, he will die there. But if you allow him to go forth, you will see him again afterwards. And if he does not enjoy the going forth, what alternative³ will he have but to come back here? Allow Sudinna to go forth.”

“We allow him,” they said.

Then the friends of Sudinna approached him and said: “Get up, Sudinna, your parents allow you to go forth from home into homelessness.”

Then Sudinna thought: “They say that my parents will allow me to go forth from home into homelessness.” And he rose, joyful, delighted and elated, stroking his limbs with his hands. Then Sudinna, having spent a few days regaining his strength, approached the Master, paid homage to

¹ *Abhiramassu* or “indulge in love”; but from the context I think not here. Cf. below, **BD.1.114**.

² Vin-a.205, “giving gifts, cleansing the way to a good bourn, doing good actions.” ³ *gati*, literally going or bourn.

Bu-Pj.1.5.3

Vin.3.14

BD.1.25

Bu-Pj.1.5.4

him and sat down at one side. He then said to the Master:

“I am permitted by my parents, Master, to go forth from home into homelessness. May the Master allow me to go forth.”

Vin.3.15

BD.1.26

Then Sudinna received the going forth in the presence of the Master, and he received the full ordination. And not long afterwards Venerable Sudinna practised these kinds of ascetic practises:¹ living in the wilderness, going on alms-round, wearing rags, going on continuous alms-round; and he dwelt depending on a certain village of the Vajjians.

Bu-Pj.1.5.5

At that time the Vajjians² were short of food³ and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw, and it was not easy to keep oneself going by collecting alms. Now Venerable Sudinna thought to himself: “At present the Vajjians are short of food and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw, and it is not easy to keep oneself going by collecting alms. But I have many relations in Vesālī who are rich, have great wealth and property, much gold and silver,⁴ many resources and requisites, much wealth in grain.⁵ Perhaps I should live in dependence on my relatives? Because of me my relations will be able to make offerings and make merit, the monks will obtain requisites and I will not go short of almsfood.”

Then Venerable Sudinna, having put his lodging in order, took his bowl and robe and set out for Vesālī, where he arrived by travelling in stages. There the Venerable Sudinna stayed in the hall with the peaked roof in the Great Wood. The relations of Venerable Sudinna heard that he had arrived in Vesālī and they brought him sixty offerings of barley as a gift of food.⁶ Then Venerable Sudinna, having given these sixty offerings of barley to the monks, dressed in the morning, took his bowl and robe and entered the village of Kalandaka for alms. As he was going about Kalandaka on a continuous alms-tour, he came to his own father’s house.

BD.1.27

Bu-Pj.1.5.6

At that time the female slave of Venerable Sudinna’s relations wanted

¹ Vin-a.206, *dhutagaṇe* = *kilesaniddhunanake gaṇe*. ² Tribes belonging to one of the sixteen stock *mahājanapadas* (AN.i.213, AN.iv.252, AN.iv.256, AN.iv.260). See E.J. THOMAS, *The Life of Buddha*, p.13, and, on the Vajjis or Vajjians, T.W. RHYS DAVIDS, *Buddhist India*, p.25. ³ Cf. above Bu-Pj.1.2.1, and below, Bu-Pj.4.1.1. ⁴ *jātarūpa-rajata*. See below, BD.1.28, n.1. ⁵ For this stock phrase cf. AN.ii.86; SN.i.17. On prosperity of Vesālī, cf. Vin.1.268. ⁶ Vin-a.207 explains that each offering would feed ten monks, therefore sixty would feed six hundred.

to throw away the previous evening's porridge. But Venerable Sudinna said to her:

"If that is to be thrown away, sister, put it here in my bowl."

As the slave-girl of Venerable Sudinna's relations was putting the previous evening's porridge into his bowl, she recognised his hands, feet and voice.¹ She then went to his mother and said:

"Please know,² madam, that the young master Sudinna is back."

"If you speak the truth, I will make you a freed woman."

Just then Venerable Sudinna was eating the previous evening's porridge at the base of a certain wall.³ The Venerable Sudinna's father, coming from work, saw him there. He approached him and said:

"But, Sudinna, isn't there ... and you are eating old porridge! Isn't there your own home to go to?"

"We went to your house, householder. That's where we received this porridge."

Then Venerable Sudinna's father took him by the arm and said: "Come, Sudinna, let's go to the house."

Then Venerable Sudinna went to his own father's house and sat down on a prepared seat. And his father said to him: "Eat, dear Sudinna."

"There is no need, householder, I have finished eating for today."

"Then please come back for the meal tomorrow."

Venerable Sudinna consented by keeping silent. He then rose from his seat and departed.

Then Venerable Sudinna's mother had the ground smeared with fresh

Vin.3.16

BD.1.28

¹ Vin-a.208 explains that Sudinna had been a monk for eight years, so although the slave did not know him at once, she recognized the character of his hands, feet and voice. ² *yagghe*.

³ *aññataran kuḍḍamūlaṃ nissāya*. *Pali-English Dictionary* calls *kuḍḍamūla*, "a sort of root." But Vin-a.209 says it means "that in this district there are rooms in the houses of the large householders where there are seats prepared, and where those going for alms sit down and eat the gruel offered to them." cf. MN.i.62, where *kuḍḍaṃ* with variant reading *kuḍḍamūlaṃ*. MN-a.iii.297= Vin-a.210. Lord Chalmers translates "under the hedge." May mean "leaning against a wall."

BD.1.29

cow-dung, had two heaps made, one of gold coins¹ and the other of gold.

¹ *ekaṃ hiraññaṃ ekaṃ suvaṇṇaṃ*. At MN.ii.63 the reading is *hiraññasuvaṇṇaṃ* (*puñjaṃ*), translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.32, “of gold and bullion,” and then again “treasure.” RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.5, gives other and earlier translations for both these passages. There is no doubt that two heaps are meant, cf. MN-a.iii.299, and that therefore the two words *hirañña* and *suvaṇṇa* are intended to represent a difference in the materials of which the heaps were composed. Cf. below, [Vin.3.48](#), [Vin.3.216](#), *hiraññaṃ vā suvaṇṇaṃ vā*. I think that there is little doubt that *suvaṇṇa* is the worked or refined gold, but it does not appear to follow in the least that *hirañña* is therefore the unworked, unrefined gold. For at AN.i.253 *jātarūpa* is clearly the unworked (sterling) gold; the process of working this is described, and when finished some gold ornament is the result. (At [Vin.3.238](#) *jātarūpa* is called *satthuvaṇṇa*, the colour of the Teacher.) I therefore cannot subscribe to the translation of *hiraññasuvaṇṇa* at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.94 (=MN.ii.166) as “wrought and unwrought gold.” *Jātarūpa* is gold in its unwrought state, therefore, *hirañña* will almost certainly have some other meaning, with a greater or lesser shade of difference. At [BD.1.79](#) the Commentary leads one to suppose that *hirañña* is an ornament; cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, *Sanskrit-English Dictionary* under *hiraṇya*, where one of the meanings given is “a golden ornament (*Ved.*)” But I think that *hirañña* most probably means “gold coins.” N.B.—use of the plural at [Vin.3.219](#). According to Boehtlingk (*Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*) it meant “Gold, später auch Geld,” and this is the interpretation put upon it in some commentarial passages, and I think also at SN.i.89 where *hirañña* is balanced by *rūpiya*, silver (= *rajata*, see [Vin.3.238](#), [Vin.3.240](#), except that at [Vin.3.240](#) *rūpiya* is also called *satthuvaṇṇa*, which at [Vin.3.238](#) is reserved for *jātarūpa*). Vin-a.210 on the above passage says that “here *hirañña* should be called *kaḥāpaṇa*.” And at Snp-a.323, on Snp.307, and Snp-a.513 on Snp.769 *hirañña* is explained as *kaḥāpaṇasamkhāta*, while at Snp-a.315 on Snp.285 it is said that *na hirañña* means that “there was not even quarter of a *māsaka*,” (on *māsaka*, see below, [BD.1.72](#)). In none of these Sutta Nipāta passages is *hirañña* combined with *suvaṇṇa*, which is interesting and curious. Although the Commentator shows a tendency to call *hirañña* *kaḥāpaṇa*, this does not get us much further. For we do not exactly know what a *kaḥāpaṇa* was at any given time. At [Vin.3.238](#), [Vin.3.240](#) it appears in the definitions of *rajata* and *rūpiya*, but at the time of the Vinaya its value may have been different from that which it had at Buddhaghosa’s time. All we can say is that the *kaḥāpaṇa* was the medium of exchange in Pali literature, and because the Commentators sometimes explain *hirañña* by *kaḥāpaṇa*, then the nearest we can get to a translation at present is “gold coins.” This seems a more likely translation than “gold leaf” (which so far as I know has never been suggested). *Hirañña* is undoubtedly connected with *hari*, meaning “yellow, yellowish, green, greenish,” and I find that in the *Encyclopædia Britannica* it is said of gold that “while in very thin leaves it transmits a greenish light.” Before the days when it was fashionable to plaster stupas and images of the Buddha with gold-leaf, it is not, however, very likely that this substance would have been used in any large quantities. Rich people would have been more apt to have “heaps of gold coins.” Although more Pali literature is available to us than was to Rhys Davids, we must still say with him (*Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, [BD.1.5](#)) that “to decide these points we must have more texts before us.”

The heaps were so large that a man standing on one side could not see a man standing on the other. Hiding these heaps with screens and preparing a seat between them surrounded by a curtain, she addressed Venerable Sudinna's former wife:

"Daughter-in-law, adorn yourself in the way that our son Sudinna found you especially attractive."

BD.1.30

"Yes, madam," she responded.

Bu-Pj.1.5.7

Then, in the morning, Venerable Sudinna dressed, took his bowl and robe and went to his father's house, where he sat down on the prepared seat. His father approached him, uncovered the heaps and said:

"This dowry, dear Sudinna, the fortune from your mother, is yours. Another is the fortune from your father and another from your ancestors.¹ It is possible, Sudinna, to return to the low life, enjoy wealth and make merit. Come, Sudinna, please do so."

Vin.3.17

"I am not able to do so, father, I cannot. I am enjoying² the spiritual life."

A second and a third time Venerable Sudinna's father repeated his request. Venerable Sudinna replied:

"If you would not get offended, householder, we could tell you what to do."

"Speak, Sudinna."

"Well then, householder, make some large bags of hemp-cloth, fill them with the coins and the gold, take them away in carts and dump them in the middle of the Ganges. And why? Because you would avoid the danger, fear,³ terror, and (trouble with) protection that they will cause you."

BD.1.31

When he had said this, his father became displeased and thought, "How could our son Sudinna speak like this."

Then he addressed Venerable Sudinna's former wife: "Well now, daughter-in-law, as you were dear and beloved by him, perhaps our son Sudinna will listen to you."

Then the former wife of Venerable Sudinna took hold of his feet and said: "What are these nymphs like, my lord's son, for whose sake you lead

¹ It is curious that here there seem to be *three* heaps, whereas just above it is said that two were made. ² *abhirato*, to be translated in this context as above. But see below, [BD.1.114](#).

³ *Chambhitatta*, see below, [BD.1.119](#), n.3.

the spiritual life?”

“I do not lead the spiritual life, sister, for the sake of nymphs.”

Then the former wife of Venerable Sudinna thought:

Bu-Pj.1.5.8

“From today my lord’s son calls me ‘sister’” and she fainted on the spot.

Then Venerable Sudinna said to his father: “If, householder, there is food to be given, give it, but do not annoy me.”

“Eat, Sudinna,” he said.

Then, with their own hands, Venerable Sudinna’s mother and father served and satisfied him with various kinds of delicious food.

Then, when Venerable Sudinna had finished his meal, his mother said to him:

BD.1.32

“This family, dear Sudinna, is rich, has great wealth and property, much gold and silver, many resources and requisites, much wealth in grain. It is possible, dear Sudinna, to return to the low life, enjoy wealth and make merit. Come, Sudinna, please do so.”

Vin.3.18

“Mother, I am not able to do so, I cannot. I am enjoying¹ the spiritual life.”

A second time ... a third time Venerable Sudinna’s mother said: “This family, Sudinna, is rich ... much wealth in grain. For this reason, dear Sudinna, beget offspring; do not let the Licchavis² take over our heirless property.”

“It is possible for me to do this,³ mother.”

“Where are you staying at present?”

Bu-Pj.1.5.9

“In the Great Wood,” he said. Then Venerable Sudinna rose from his seat and departed.

Then the mother of Venerable Sudinna addressed his former wife: “Daughter-in-law, as soon as you menstruate, please tell me.”

“Very well, madam,” she replied. Not long afterwards Venerable Sudinna’s former wife menstruated, and she reported it to Venerable Sudinna’s mother.

¹ *abhirato*, here I think meaning simply as translated above. But see below, **BD.1.114**. ² Their capital was at Vesālī. ³ Vin-a.212 says that he said this thinking that if he had issue his relations would no longer bother him about looking after the property, and so he would be able to follow the *dhamma* of recluses at ease.

“Daughter-in-law, adorn yourself in the way that our son Sudinna found you especially attractive.”

“Very well, madam,” she replied.

BD.1.33

Then Venerable Sudinna’s mother, together with his former wife, approached Venerable Sudinna in the Great Wood. There she said to him:

“This family, dear Sudinna, is rich, has great wealth and property, much gold and silver, many resources and requisites, much wealth in grain. For this reason, Sudinna, beget offspring; do not let the Licchavis take over our heirless property.”

“It is possible for me to do this, mother,” he said. He then took his former wife by the arm, plunged into the Great Wood and—there being no training rule and he seeing no danger—had sexual intercourse with his former wife three times. As a result she conceived.

The earth-gods cried out: “Good sirs, the Sangha of monks has been healthy¹ and free from danger. But Sudinna the Kalandaka has produced a tumour, has produced danger.”

The gods belonging to the heaven of the four great kings hearing the cry of the earth-gods in turn cried out ... the Tāvātimsa gods ... the Yāma gods ... the Tusita gods ... the gods who delight in creation ... the gods who control the creation of others ... the gods belonging to the retinue of the supreme beings in turn cried out:

Vin.3.19

“Good sirs, the Sangha of monks has been healthy and free from danger. But Sudinna the Kalandaka has produced a tumour, has produced danger.” Thus in that moment, in that instance, the report spread as far as the Brahmā-world.²

Then the pregnancy of Venerable Sudinna’s wife developed and she eventually gave birth to a son. Now the friends of Venerable Sudinna called this boy Bījaka³; they called Venerable Sudinna’s former wife Bījaka’s mother; they called Venerable Sudinna Bījaka’s father. After some time they both⁴ went forth from home into homelessness, and they realised *arahantship*.

BD.1.34

Bu-Pj.1.5.10

But Venerable Sudinna was anxious and remorseful, and he thought: “Indeed, it’s a loss for me, it’s no gain; indeed, it’s badly gained by me, not

¹ *nirabbuda*, cf. above, BD.1.19, n.4. ² Vin-a.215, *brahmalokā = akaniṭṭhabrahmalokā*, i.e. the worlds of the Elder Brahmā-devas. ³ BRAHMALI: Literally, “Seed.” ⁴ *Ibid.*—i.e., Bījaka and his mother.

well-gained: having gone forth in such a well-proclaimed *Dhamma* and training, I was not able for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life.” And because of his anxiety and remorse, he became thin, haggard and pale, his veins protruding all over his limbs; he became sad, of sluggish mind, miserable, depressed, remorseful, weighed down with grief.¹

Then the monks who were Venerable Sudinna’s friends said to him: “Formerly, friend Sudinna, you were handsome, your features rounded, your face a good colour, your skin clear. But now you are thin, haggard and pale, your veins protruding all over your limbs; and you are sad, of sluggish mind, miserable, depressed, remorseful, weighed down with grief. Could it be, friend Sudinna, that you lead the spiritual life dissatisfied?”²

“I do not, friends, lead the spiritual life dissatisfied. I have done an bad deed. I have had sexual intercourse with my former wife. That is why I am anxious ... I was not able for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life.”

“Friend Sudinna, no wonder you are anxious,³ no wonder you feel remorse, in that, having gone forth in such a well-proclaimed *Dhamma* and training, you were not able for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life. Is not, friend, the *Dhamma* taught by the Master in various ways for the sake of dispassion, not for the sake of passion; for the sake of freedom from bondage, not for the sake of bondage; for the sake of non-grasping, not for the sake of grasping? When the *Dhamma* is taught by the Master for the sake of dispassion, how can you be intent upon passion? When the *Dhamma* is taught by the Master for the sake of freedom from bondage, how can you be intent upon bondage? When the *Dhamma* is taught by the Master for the sake of non-grasping, how can you be intent upon grasping? Friend, has not the *Dhamma* been taught in many ways by the Master for the waning of passion, for the subduing of intoxication, for the restraint of desire, for the abolition of clinging, for the annihilation of the round of existence,⁴ for the destruction of craving, for fading away, for

¹ Stock. ² *anabhirato*, Vin-a.217, “fretting, longing to be a householder ... but I find no delight (*anabhirato*) in making become the conditions of higher righteousness.” See below, BD.1.114, notes. ³ = Vin.2.250. ⁴ Vin-a.218, *tebhūmakavaṭṭaṃ ucchijjati* (i.e. the *kāma*, *rūpa* and *arūpa* becoming).

BD.1.35

Vin.3.20

cessation, for extinguishment?¹ Has not the abandoning of sense pleasures been declared in many ways by the Master, the full understanding of the perception of sense pleasures, the abolishing of thirst for sense pleasures, the elimination of thoughts of sense pleasures, the stilling of the fever of sense pleasures? It will not, friend, give rise to confidence in those without it, nor increase the confidence of those who have it, but it will hinder confidence in those without it and it will cause some with confidence to change their minds.”

Having rebuked Venerable Sudinna in various way, those monks told this matter to the Master. And in this connection the Master convened the Sangha of monks and questioned Venerable Sudinna:

“Is it true, Sudinna, that you had sexual intercourse with your former wife?”

“It is true, Master.”

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked him: “Foolish man, it is not suitable it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is unworthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How could you go forth in such a well-proclaimed *Dhamma* and training and not be able for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life? Have I not taught the *Dhamma* in many ways for the sake of dispassion ... When the *Dhamma* has been taught by me for the sake of dispassion, how can you be intent upon passion? ... Have I not in many ways declared the abandoning of sense pleasures ... the stilling of the fever of sense pleasures? It would be better, foolish man, for your male organ to enter the mouth of a terrible and poisonous snake than to enter a woman. It would be better for your male organ to enter the mouth of a black snake than to enter a woman. It would be better for your male organ to enter a charcoal pit, burning, ablaze, afire, than to enter a woman. Why is that? Because for that reason you might die or experience deadly suffering, but you would not on that account, at the breaking up of the body after death, be reborn in the plane of misery, a bad destination, the abyss, hell. But for this reason, at the breaking up of the body after death, you might be reborn in the plane of misery, a bad destination, the abyss, hell.”²

¹ Cf. AN.ii.34, and various passages in SN.v. ² Cf. below, BD.1.155.

Bu-Pj.1.5.11

BD.1.36

Vin.3.21

BD.1.37 Foolish man, you have practised what is contrary to the true *Dhamma*,¹ the common practice, the low practice,² the coarse practice, that which ends with a wash,³ that which is done in private, that which is done wherever there are couples. You are the forerunner, the first performer of many unwholesome things. It will not give rise to confidence in those without it, nor increase the confidence of those who have it, but it will hinder confidence in those without it and it will cause some with confidence to change their minds.”

Then the Master, having rebuked Venerable Sudinna in various ways, spoke in dispraise of being difficult to support and maintain, in dispraise of great desires, lack of contentment, socialising⁴ and laziness, but he spoke in praise in various ways of being easy to support and maintain, of desiring little, contentment, self-effacement,⁵ ascetic practices, serenity, decrease of defilements,⁶ and of the putting forth of energy.⁷ Having given a *Dhamma* talk on what was right and seemly, he addressed the monks:

BD.1.38 “On account of this,⁸ monks, I will lay down a training rule for the monks for the following ten reasons: for the well-being of the Sangha, for the comfort of the Sangha, for the restraint of recalcitrant people, for the ease of well-behaved monks, for the restraint of corruptions that pertain to the present life and for warding off corruptions that pertain to future lives, to give rise to confidence in those without it and to increase the confidence

¹ *asaddkamma*. Vin-a.221, “You would follow untrue *Dhamma* of inferior people.” On prefix *sa-* see Mrs. RHYS DAVIDS, introduction to GS.i.ix.f. ² Vin-a.221, “outcastes (*vasala*) rain down evil *dhamma*; the *dhamma* of the outcaste, low men is outcaste, or it is a *dhamma* pouring out the *kilesas*.” *Vasala* at Snp.116ff. translated by LORD CHALMERS, *Suttanipāta*, Harvard Oriental Series 37, as “wastrel.” ³ *Odakantika*—i.e., following the sexual act. Vin-a.221 explains: *udakakiccaṃ antikam avasānam assā ti*, the water-libation (the cleansing, the washing) is at an end, finished for him. The word *udakakicca* occurs at DN.ii.15, but DN-a is silent. ⁴ *Saṅganika*=*kilesasaṅganika*, Vin-a.222. ⁵ *Sallekhana*=*niddhunana*, Vin-a.222. ⁶ *Apacaya*=*sabbakilesāpacayabhūta*, Vin-a.222. ⁷ = Vin.1.45 = Vin.2.2 = Vin.3.171 = Vin.4.213, where this standing *dhamma*-talk is given. These are doubtless the subjects to be filled in where the text in so many places baldly states that Gotama “gave *dhamma*-talk.” All my renderings differ from those given at *Vinaya Texts* i.153, *Vinaya Texts* ii.331; *Vinaya Texts* iii.252. Cf. MN.i.13. The Commentary on Vin.3.171 is silent. ⁸ I.e., Sudinna’s offence, Vin-a.223.

of those who have it, for the continuation of the true Dhamma¹ and for supporting the training.² And, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

FIRST PRELIMINARY RULING

If a monk has sexual intercourse, he is expelled³ and not in communion.”

Thus the Master laid down this training rule for the monks

The section on Sudinna is finished

SECOND SUB-STORY

At one time a certain monk in the Great Wood near Vesālī won over a female monkey with food and had sexual intercourse with her. Then, in the morning, he dressed, took his bowl and robe and entered Vesālī for alms. Now at that time a number of monks who were engaged in touring the lodgings came to this monk's dwelling. The female monkey, seeing those monks coming, went up to them and shook her buttocks in front of them, wagged her tail, presented her buttocks and made a gesture. Then the monks thought: “Undoubtedly this monk is having sexual intercourse with this monkey,” and they hid to one side. Then, when that monk had gone for alms in Vesālī and had returned with his almsfood, he ate one part himself and gave the

Vin.3.22
BD.1.39

¹ Vin-a.225 says that *saddhamma* is threefold: (1) the Tipiṭaka, all the utterances of the Buddha (cf. Kp-a.191ff.); (2) the thirteen scrupulous ways of life, the fourteen duties, virtue, contemplation, insight; (3) the four *ariyan* Ways and the four fruits of *samaṇaship* and *nibbāna*. ² Vin-a.226 says that Vinaya or discipline is fourfold: discipline by restraint, by rejection, by calm, by making known. ³ On derivation of *pārājika*, see *Vinaya Texts* i.3, n.2. Editor takes it as “involving or suffering defeat,” either specifically as defeat in the struggle with Māra; or more probably defeat in the struggle against evil generally, defeat in the effort to accomplish the supreme goal of arahantship. Vin-a.259 gives *pārājiko ti parājito, parājayam āpanno*, defeated, fallen on defeat. “In this meaning *pārājika* exists for those people for whom there is an offence (*āpatti*) against the training. Whoever transgresses against the course of training, it defeats him (*parājeti*), therefore it is called a defeat. Whoever commits an offence, that defeats him, therefore that is called a defeat. The man, inasmuch as defeated, fallen on defeat, is thereby called a defeated one.” We thus get a neuter, feminine and masculine reference for *pārājika*. Childers says, “meriting expulsion.”

rest to the female monkey. Having eaten the food, the monkey presented her buttocks to the monk. He then had sexual intercourse with her.

Then those monks said to that monk: “Friend, hasn’t a training rule been laid down by the Master? Why then do you have sexual intercourse with a monkey?”

“It is true, friends, that a training rule has been laid down by the Master, but it refers to human women, not to animals.”

“But, friend, that is just the same. It is not suitable, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it ought not to be done. How could you go forth in this well-proclaimed *Dhamma* and training and not be able for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life? Has not the *Dhamma* been taught in various ways by the Master for the sake of dispassion and not for the sake of passion¹ ... for the stilling of the fever of sense pleasures? Friend, it will not give rise to confidence in those without it ... and it will cause some with confidence to change their minds.”

Having rebuked that monk in various ways, they told this matter to the Master. The Master then had the Sangha of monks convened, and questioned that monk:

“Is it true, monk, that you had sexual intercourse with a monkey?”

“It is true, Master.”

BD.1.40 Then the Master rebuked him, saying: (= Bu-Pj.1.5.11 above. *Instead of* of a woman, *read of a monkey*) ... “... Foolish man, it will not give rise to confidence in those without it ... And so, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

SECOND PRELIMINARY RULING

“If a monk has sexual intercourse, even with an animal,² he is expelled and not in communion.”

Thus the Master laid down this training rule for the monks.

The story of the female monkey is finished

¹ Cf. above, Bu-Pj.5.10. ² Cf. Vin.1.96.

THIRD SUB-STORY

At that time a number of Vajjian monks from Vesālī ate, slept and bathed as much as they liked. Doing so and not paying proper attention, they had sexual intercourse, without first renouncing the training¹ and disclosing their weakness. After some time they were affected by loss of relatives, by loss of property and by illness. They then approached Venerable Ānanda and said:

“Bhante Ānanda, we do not blame the Buddha, the *Dhamma* or the Sangha; we only blame ourselves. We were unfortunate, we had little merit: having gone forth in such a well-proclaimed *Dhamma* and training, we were unable for life to practice the perfectly complete and pure spiritual life. If, bhante Ānanda, we were now to obtain the going forth and the full ordination in the presence of the Master, we would have clarity about wholesome qualities and be devoted day after day to developing the aids to awakening.² Bhante Ānanda, please inform the Master of this matter.”

“Yes, friends,” he replied. He then went to the Master and informed him of this matter.

“It is impossible, Ānanda, it cannot happen,³ that the Tathāgata should abolish a training rule that entails expulsion because of the Vajjians.”

The Master then gave a *Dhamma* talk and addressed the monks: “Monks, if a monk, without first renouncing the training and disclosing his weakness, has sexual intercourse, he may not receive the full ordination. But,

¹ *sikkhamā apaccakkhāya*, not having denied the teaching, not having said: “I renounce (formally) my submission to the discipline,” i.e. “I am no longer a monk.” Cf. *Vinaya Texts* i.275, n.2, where editor thinks this is a formal renunciation of the Order as opposed to the Vinaya’s term *vibbhamati*, “he returns to the house.” Cf. *AN*.iv.372, where among the nine Impossibles (*abhabba*) is that the monk who is an arahant should disavow the Buddha, *dhamma* or Order. At *SN*.ii.231 a monk, assailed by passion, disavows the training and *hīnāyāvattati*, the Sutta word for returning to the low life of the layman, and cf. *SN*.ii.271.

Paccakkhāti is *paṭi+akkhāti=ā+khyā*, and not *paṭi+akkh*. The root *akkh* is purely theoretical and would certainly not explain the *ā* of *paccakkhāti*, *paccakkhāya*.² The term *bodhipakkhiyadhamma*, or as it is here *bodhipakkhika*^o, is not usually considered to belong to the earlier literature. The later literature and Commentaries reckon these states as thirty-seven. On their arrangement see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.395, and *KS*.v.vi. ³ Following Woodward’s translation at *GS*.i.25 and see *GS*.i.25 n.6. *Vin*-a.229 elucidates *anavakāso* by *kāraṇapaṭikkhepavacanaṃ*.

monks, if someone has sexual intercourse after first renouncing the training and disclosing his weakness, he may receive the full ordination.

“And so, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

FINAL RULING

BD.1.42 “If a monk, having entered upon the monks’ training and way of life, without first renouncing the training and disclosing his weakness, has sexual intercourse, even with an animal, he is expelled and not in communion.”

DEFINITIONS

Bu-Pj.1.8.1

Vin.3.24

A means: whoever, of such a kind, of such activity, of such social standing, of such name, of such family, of such conduct, of such behaviour, of such association,¹ who is an elder,² one who is new or one of middle standing:—this is called a **monk**.

Monk means: he is a monk because he lives on alms; a monk because he has gone over to living on alms; a monk because he is one who wears the patchwork cloth; a monk by convention; a monk on account of his acknowledgement; a “come, monk” monk; a monk because he was ordained by going to the three refuges; a good monk; a monk of substance; a trainee monk; a monk beyond training; a monk who is ordained by a complete Sangha through a procedure³ of one motion and three announcements,⁴ which is unchallengeable and fit to stand. The monk who is ordained by a complete Sangha through a procedure of one motion and three announcements, which is unchallengeable and fit to stand,⁵ this sort of **monk** is meant in this case.

BD.1.43

Training means: the three trainings are—training in the higher morality, training in the higher mind, training in the higher wisdom. The training

¹ For definition of *gocara* see Vb.247. ² Vin-a.239, *thera* is one who has completed ten years; *nava*, a novice, is one of four years standing; and *majjhima* is one of more than five years standing. ³ So Vin-a.243. ⁴ *ñatticatuttha*. ⁵ Cf. list of eighteen explanations of monk at Vb.245–246.

in the higher morality is the training meant in this case.

Way of life means: whatever training rule is laid down by the Master: this is called *way of life*. One trains in this, and thereby one is called **possessed of the mode of life**.

Bu-Pj.1.8.2

Without first renouncing the training and disclosing his weakness means:

There is, monks, a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced; and there is, monks, a disclosure of weakness together with the training being renounced.

“And how, monks, is there a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced? Here, monks, a monk who is discontent, dissatisfied, desirous of abandoning the state of a recluse, disgusted, troubled and repelled¹ by monkhood, longing to be a householder, longing to be a lay-follower, longing to be a monastery attendant, longing to be a novice, longing to belong to another sect, longing to be a disciple of another sect, longing not to be a recluse, longing not to be a son of the Sakyan—he says and declares: ‘Perhaps I should renounce the Buddha?’ In this was, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: ‘Perhaps I should renounce the *Dhamma*?’ ... the Sangha ... the training ... the discipline ... the Pātimokkha ... the recital ... my preceptor ... my teacher ... being a disciple ... being a pupil ... our common preceptor ... our common teacher ... he says and declares: ‘Perhaps I should renounce my fellow monks?’ ... he says and declares: ‘Perhaps I should be a householder?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should be a lay-follower?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should be a monastery attendant?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should be a novice?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should be an adherent of another sect?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should be a disciple of another sect?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should not be a recluse?’ ... ‘Perhaps I should not be a son of the Sakyan?’ In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

Vin.3.25

BD.1.44

“Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: ‘But if I renounced the Buddha’ ... he says

¹ For these three words, cf. DN.i.213, where Gotama is made to use them in reference to the exercise of supernatural powers.

and declares: 'But if I were not a son of the Sakyan' ... he says and declares: 'Perhaps I should renounce the Buddha?' ... he says and declares: 'Perhaps I should not be a son of the Sakyan?' ... he says and declares: 'Well then, I should renounce the Buddha' ... he says and declares: 'Well then, I should not be a son of the Sakyan' ... he says and declares: 'I think I should renounce the Buddha' ... he says and declares: 'I think I should not be a son of the Sakyan.' In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'I remember my mother' ... 'I remember my father' ... 'I remember my brother' ... 'I remember my sister' ... 'I remember my son' ... 'I remember my daughter' ... 'I remember my wife' ... 'I remember my relations' ... 'I remember my friends' ... 'I remember my village' ... 'I remember my town' ... 'I remember my fields' ... 'I remember my land' ... 'I remember my gold coins' ... 'I remember my gold' ... 'I remember my profession' ... he says and declares: 'I remember my former laughter, chatter and amusement.' In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

Vin.3.26

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'I have a mother, she ought to be supported by me' ... 'I have a father, he ought to be supported by me' ... 'I have a brother ... 'I have a sister ... 'I have a son ... 'I have a daughter ... 'I have a wife ... 'I have relations ... he says and declares: 'I have friends, they ought to be supported by me.' In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

BD.1.45

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'I have a mother, she will support me' ... 'I have a father, he will support me' ... (as above) ... 'I have friends, they will support me' ... 'I have a village, I will live by means of it' ... 'I have a town, I will live by means of it' ... fields ... land ... gold coins ... gold ... he says and declares: 'I have a profession, I will live by means of it.' In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'This is difficult to do' ... 'this is not easy to do'

... 'this is difficult' ... 'this is not easy' ... 'I cannot endure' ... 'I am unable' ... 'I do not enjoy myself' ... 'I take no delight.'¹ In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness without the training being renounced.

Bu-Pj.1.8.3

"And how, monks, is there a disclosure of weakness together with the training being renounced? Here, monks, a monk who is discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, says and declares: 'I renounce the Buddha.' In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness together with the training being renounced.

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'I renounce the Dhamma' ... 'I renounce the Sangha' ... the training ... the discipline ... the Pātimokkha ... the recital ... my preceptor ... my teacher ... being a disciple ... being a pupil ... our common preceptor ... our common teacher ... he says and declares: 'I renounce my fellow monks' ... he says and declares: 'Consider me a householder' ... 'Consider me a lay-follower' ... a monastery attendant ... a novice ... an adherent of another sect ... a disciple of another sect ... not a recluse ... 'Consider me not a son of the Sakyan.' In this way too, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness together with the training being renounced.

Vin.3.27

BD.1.46

"Then further, discontent, dissatisfied ... longing not to be a son of the Sakyan, he says and declares: 'I have no need of the Buddha' ... 'I have no need of my fellow monks.' In this way too, monks ...

"Then further ... he says and declares: 'No more of the Buddha for me' ... 'No more of my fellow monks for me.' In this way too, monks ...

"Then further ... he says and declares: 'The Buddha is no of use to me' ... 'My fellow monks are of no use to me.' In this way too, monks ...

"Then further ... he says and declares: 'I am well freed from the Buddha.' ... 'I am well freed from my fellow monks.' In this way too, monks ... being renounced.

"Or whatever other synonyms there are for the Buddha, for the *Dhamma*, for the Sangha, for the training ... for one's fellow monks, for householders ... or for not being a son of the Sakyan; he speaks and declares by way of these indications, by way of these marks, by way of these signs. In this way, monks, there is a disclosure of weakness together with the training being

¹ See BD.1.114, n.1.

renounced.

Bu-Pj.1.8.4

“And how, monks, is the training not renounced? Here, monks, if one renounces the training by way of these indications, by way of these marks, by way of these signs, but one is insane, then the training is not renounced. If one renounces the training in the presence of one who is insane, the training is not renounced. If one who is deranged renounces the training ... if one renounces the training in the presence of one who is deranged ... if one is overwhelmed by pain ... if one renounces the training in the presence of one who is overwhelmed by pain ... if one renounces the training in the presence of gods¹ ... if one renounces the training in the presence of an animal, the training is not renounced. If an Indian² renounces the training in the presence of a foreigner³ and he does not understand, the training is not renounced. If a foreigner renounces the training in the presence of an Indian ... if an Indian renounces the training in the presence of an Indian ... if a foreigner renounces the training in the presence of a foreigner and he does not understand, the training is not renounced. If he renounces the training as a joke ... he renounces the training by speaking too fast ... if he announces what he does not wish to announce ... if he does not announce what he wishes to announce ... if he announces to one who does not understand ... if he does not announce to one who understands ... or if he does not make a full announcement, the training is not renounced. In this way, monks, the training is not renounced.”

BD.1.47

Vin.3.28

Bu-Pj.1.8.5

Sexual intercourse means: what is contrary to the true *Dhamma*, the common practice, the low practice, the coarse practice, that which ends with a wash, that which is done in private, that which is done wherever there are couples: this is called **sexual intercourse**.

Has means: organ with organ, genital with genital, even to the depth of a sesame seed, this is called **has**.

Even with an animal means: even having sexual intercourse with a

¹ Vin-a.255, from the earth *devatās* to the *devatās* of the Akaniṭṭha realm. ² Vin-a.255, *ariyaka* means the proper mode of speech, the language of Magadha. Note the form *ariyaka*.

³ *milakkhuka*. Cf. *Mlecchas*, now a term for all non-caste people. Here perhaps the aboriginal inhabitants of India. Vin-a.255 says, *nāma yo koci anariyako Andha-Damiḷādi*, the people of Andha (i.e. the Telugus) and the Tamils, cf. Vb-a.387, Vb-a.388.

female animal,¹ he is not a recluse, not a son of the Sakyan; how much less so with a woman: therefore it is called **even with an animal**.

BD.1.48

He is expelled means: as a man with his head cut off is incapable² of living by (re-establishing) that bodily connection, so is a monk who has had sexual intercourse not a recluse, not a son of the Sakyan³: therefore it is said that **he is expelled**.

Not in communion means: **communion**⁴ means: a common official action, the same recital, the same training—this is called **communion**. He does not take part in this—he is therefore called **not in communion**.

PERMUTATIONS

PERMUTATIONS PART 1

SUMMARY

Three kinds of female: a human female, a non-human female, a female animal. Three kinds of hermaphrodite: a human hermaphrodite, a non-human hermaphrodite, an animal hermaphrodite. Three kinds of *paṇḍaka*⁵: a human *paṇḍaka*, a non-human *paṇḍaka*, an animal *paṇḍaka*. Three kinds of male: a human male, a non-human male, an animal male.⁶

Bu-Pj.1.9.1

EXPOSITION PART 1

There is an offence entailing expulsion if he has sexual intercourse with a human female through three orifices, the anus, the vagina or the mouth ... with a non-human female ... with a female animal ... with a human hermaphrodite ... with a non-human hermaphrodite ... with an animal hermaphrodite through three orifices, the anus, the vagina or the mouth. There is an offence entailing expulsion if he has sexual intercourse with

¹ *Tiracchānagatitthi*, literally a woman gone to the animals. Cf. below, [BD.1.212](#). ² *Abhabba*. ³ Cf. [Vin.1.96](#). ⁴ *Samvāsa*, literally living with, co-residence. It often refers to the household life, as at [AN.ii.57](#), [AN.ii.187](#); [AN.iii.164](#); [AN.iv.174](#); [Snp.283](#), [Snp.290](#); but in *Vinaya* it is a term of importance in religion. ⁵ **BRAHMALI**: The exact meaning of *paṇḍaka* is disputed. ⁶ **BRAHMALI**: Contrary to the PTS edition, the *Mahāsaṅgīti* takes this as a separate paragraph.

a human *paṇḍaka* through two orifices, the anus or the mouth ... with a non-human *paṇḍaka* ... with an animal *paṇḍaka* ... with a human male ... with a non-human male ... with a male animal though two orifices, the anus or the mouth.

EXPOSITION PART 2

Voluntary sexual intercourse

Bu-Pj.1.9.2

Vin.3.29

BD.1.49

For a monk who, having the intention of association, lets his penis enter a human female through the anus ... through the vagina ... through the mouth, there is an offence entailing expulsion. For a monk who ... lets his male organ enter a non-human female ... a female animal ... a human hermaphrodite ... a non-human hermaphrodite ... an animal hermaphrodite through the anus ... through the vagina ... through the mouth, there is an offence entailing expulsion. For a monk who, having the intention of association, lets his penis enter a human *paṇḍaka* ... a non-human *paṇḍaka* ... an animal *paṇḍaka* ... a human male ... a non-human male ... a male animal through the anus ... through the mouth, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Forced sexual intercourse

Bu-Pj.1.9.3

Opponents who are monks, having brought a human female into a monk's presence, insert his penis into her anus, her vagina or her mouth. If he agrees to the entry, if he agrees to having entered, if he agrees to remaining, if he agrees to the taking out,¹ there is an offence entailing expulsion. Opponents who are monks ... if he does not agree to the entry, but agrees to having entered, to remaining, to the taking out, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Opponents who are monks ... if he does not agree to the entry nor to having entered, but to remaining and to the taking out ... entailing expulsion. Opponents who are monks ... if he does not agree to the entry nor to having entered nor to remaining, but to the taking out ... entailing expulsion. Opponents who are monks ... if he does not agree to the entry nor to having entered nor to remaining nor to the taking out, there is no offence.

¹ BRAHMALĪ: This does not mean that he consents to the ending of the act, but that he consents to the intercourse at this stage.

Opponents who are monks, having brought a human female who is awake ... asleep ... intoxicated ... mad ... drunk ... dead but undecomposed ... dead and mostly undecomposed ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. Having brought one who is dead and mostly decomposed into the monk's presence, they insert his penis into the anus ... the vagina ... the mouth. If he agrees to the entry, to having entered, to remaining, to the taking out, there is a serious offence ... if he does not agree, there is no offence.

Vin.3.30

(All this is repeated for a non-human female and a female animal; a human, a non-human and an animal hermaphrodite; a human, a non-human and an animal *paṇḍaka*; a human male, a non-human male and a male animal; except that for the three categories of *paṇḍakas* and the three categories of males only two orifices apply, the anus and the mouth.)

Bu-Pj.1.9.4

Opponents who are monks, having brought a human female into a monk's presence, insert his penis into her anus ... her vagina ... her mouth, the female being covered, the monk uncovered ... the female uncovered, the monk covered ... the female covered, the monk covered ... the female uncovered, the monk uncovered. If he agrees to the entry, to having entered, to remaining, to the taking out, there is an offence entailing expulsion. ... If not, there is no offence. Opponents who are monks ... a human female who is awake ... asleep ... dead but mostly undecomposed ... entailing expulsion. Having brought one who is dead, but mostly decomposed into a monk's presence, they insert his penis into the anus ... the vagina ... the mouth, the female being covered, the monk uncovered ... both being uncovered. If he agrees to the entry ... to the taking out, there is a serious offence. ... If not, there is no offence.

Vin.3.31

BD.1.50

(All this is repeated for a non-human female and a female animal; a human, a non-human and an animal hermaphrodite; a human, a non-human and an animal *paṇḍaka*; a human male, a non-human male and a male animal; except that for the three categories of *paṇḍakas* and the three categories of males only two orifices apply, the anus and the mouth.)

Vin.3.32

Bu-Pj.1.9.5

([Vin.3.32-33](#), §§ 5, 6 are repetitions of §§ 3, 4 but reading “opponents who are monks, having brought a monk into the presence of a human female) ...”

Vin.3.33

Bu-Pj.1.9.7

As the sections on “opponents who are monks” have been explained

in detailed, so should the following categories be explained: opponents who are kings, opponents who are thieves, opponents who are scoundrels, “lotus-scent” opponents.¹

PERMUTATIONS PART 2

He enters an orifice through an orifice,² there is an offence entailing expulsion. He enters a non-orifice through an orifice ... entailing expulsion. He enters an orifice through a non-orifice ... entailing expulsion. He enters a non-orifice through a non-orifice, there is a serious offence.

BD.1.51 A monk molests a sleeping monk: if he wakes up and consents, both should be expelled; if he wakes up but does not consent, the molester should be expelled. A monk molests a sleeping novice: if he wakes up and consents, both should be expelled;³ if he wakes up but does not consent, the molester should be expelled. A novice molests a sleeping monk: if he wakes up and consents, both should be expelled; if he wakes up but does not consent, the molester should be expelled. A novice molests a sleeping novice: if he wakes up and consents, both should be expelled; if he wakes up but does not consent, the molester should be expelled.

NON-OFFENCE CLAUSE

Bu-Pj.1.9.8

There is no offence: for one who does not know, for one who does not consent, for one who is insane, for one who is deranged, for one who is overwhelmed by pain, for the first offender.

¹ *Uppalagandha*, perhaps a soubriquet of some brigands. Vin-a.268 says they needed human hearts: except monks, men rare. Monks should not be murdered, so the brigands led them astray by bringing women to them. Cf. It-a.ii.57. ² BRAHMALI: The Pali word here translated “orifice” is *magga*, and it refers either to the anus or the genitals. The meaning of non-orifice, *amagga*, is not clear, but it could refer either to the mouth or to the situation described below in section Bu-Pj.1.10.9. However, since the final offence in this series of permutations is a *thullaccaya*, a serious offence, the latter possibility seems more likely. ³ *nāsetabbo*. I follow the rendering of *Vinaya Texts* i.215, which seems to suit the context better than the “to atone” of the *Pali-English Dictionary*. *Nāseti* is the causative of *nassati*, to disappear, to come to an end. Cf. below, BD.1.62, BD.1.280.

The section on covering is finished

CASE RULINGS

MNEMONIC LIST

The female monkey, and the Vajjians,
 householder and a naked one, adherents of other sects,
 The girl, and Uppalavaṇṇā, then two about characteristics,
 Mother, daughter, and sister, and wife, supple, long,
 Two sores, and a picture, and a wooden doll,
 Five with Sundara, five about charnel grounds, bones,
 A female dragon and a female spirit, and a female ghost,
 a *paṇḍaka*, impaired, he touched, /
 The sleeping *arahant* in Bhaddiya, four about others in Sāvattī,
 Three in Vesālī, garlands,¹ the one from Bharukaccha in his dream,
 Supabbā, Saddhā, a nun, a probationary nun, and a novice nun,
 A prostitute, a *paṇḍaka*, a householder, one another,
 one who had gone forth when old, a deer.

Vin.3.34

BD.1.52

CASE DETAILS

At one time a certain monk had sexual intercourse with a female monkey. He became anxious, thinking: “The Master has laid down a training rule. Perhaps I have committed an offence entailing expulsion.”² They informed the Master ... “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.1

At one time a number of Vajjian monks from Vesālī had sexual intercourse, without first renouncing the training and disclosing their weakness. They became anxious, thinking: “The Master has laid down a training rule. Perhaps we have committed an offence entailing expulsion.” They informed the Master ... “You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.2

¹ This is printed as *Mallā*. But the section [Bu-Pj.1.10.21](#) below to which this heading refers has nothing to do with the Mallians, but it does have to do with garlands, *mālā*. I have therefore rendered it thus above. Oldenberg suggests the emendation at [Vin.3.269](#), *mālā*; but *mallā* may be correct (= *malyā*). ² Here and following: *pārājikaṃ āpattiṃ āpanno*, instead of the more usual *āpatti pārājikassa*.

Bu-Pj.1.10.3

At one time a certain monk, thinking he would avoid an offence, had sexual intercourse while looking like a layman. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk, thinking he would avoid an offence, had sexual intercourse while naked. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

BD.1.53 At one time a certain monk, thinking he would avoid an offence, had sexual intercourse while dressed in a *kusa*-grass garment¹ ... while dressed in a bark garment² ... while dressed in a garment of wood shavings ... while dressed in a hair blanket³ ... while dressed in a horse-hair blanket ... while dressed in a garment of owls’ wing ... while dressed in a garment of antelope hide⁴ ... He became anxious ... entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.4

Now at one time a certain monk who was an alms-goer saw a little girl lying on a bench. Being lustful, he inserted his thumb into her vagina. She died. He became anxious ...” ... Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence entailing suspension.”⁵

Vin.3.35

Bu-Pj.1.10.5

Now at one time a certain brahmin youth was in love with the nun

¹ At AN.i.240 = AN.i.295 = AN.ii.206 = Vin.1.305 = DN.i.167 these various sorts of garments are given. At Vin.1.305 monks, including the one who was *nagga* are also given in this order.

² Cf. DN.i.166–167 for these words. At Ja.i.356 we get *purisaṃ phalakaṃ katvā*, translated “making this man my stalking-horse,” which editor suggests, *Vinaya Texts* ii.246, “may he a figure of speech founded on the use of this word and mean ‘making him his covering.’”

³ As Ajita Kesakambalin, see DN.i.55. ⁴ Vin-a.272, “with the hair and hooves.” ⁵ See below, BD.1.195, n.1.

Uppalavaṇṇā.¹ Then, when the nun Uppalavaṇṇā had entered the village for alms, he entered her hut and hid himself. The nun Uppalavaṇṇā, after her meal, when she had returned from almsround, washed her feet, entered her hut and sat down on the bed. Then that brahmin youth took hold of the nun Uppalavaṇṇā and raped her. The nun Uppalavaṇṇā informed the nuns. The nuns informed the monks,² who in turn informed the Master. “There is no offence, monks, for one who does not consent.”

BD.1.54

Now at one time the characteristics of a woman³ appeared on a certain monk. They informed the Master. He said: “Monks, I allow that very discipleship, that very ordination,⁴ those years as a monk, to be transferred to the nuns. Those offences that the monks have in common with the nuns are to be dealt with in the presence of the nuns. For those offences that the monks do not have in common with the nuns, there is no offence.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.6

¹ Thig. verse 224ff., Thig-a.190; Dhp-a.ii.48ff. and AN-a.i.355–356 all relate how she had power in the sphere of light (cf. Dabba, in Bu-Ss.8 below), and say that she was born at Sāvathī in the family of a great merchant. Dhp-a.ii.49 tells much the same story as that given above, her assaulter there being a young kinsman, and it says that she went into the Dark Wood, because at that time forest-dwelling for nuns had not been forbidden. In Bu-NP₅ she is also said to have entered the Dark Wood. There is no doubt, I think, that the Uppalavaṇṇā of Vin.3.35 above and of Dhp-a are one and the same. That the Uppalavaṇṇā of the Therīgāthā is the same is less likely. For though some of the thoughts there attributed to her might be construed to be the outcome of her adventures, the main episode of her life as represented in the Therīgāthā is that of being her mother's co-wife. Nothing is said of this surely very unusual situation in either Dhp-a or AN-a. Vin-a gives no story. It may be that Dhp-a and AN-a have welded the story of the two Uppalavaṇṇās into one story. Such a welding of two stories into one has a parallel in the story of Kisāgotamī, *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.109, with which cf. the story of Paṭācārā, *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.70. At AN.i.24 Uppalavaṇṇā is called chief of the disciples who are nuns having psychic potencies; and at AN.i.88 she and Khamā are taken as the standard and measure by which to estimate the disciples who are nuns. See HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.168f. ² In no passage are the nuns recorded to tell the matter to the lord direct, but always through the medium of the monks. An exception to this is in the case of his aunt Mahāpajāpatī. ³ *Itthiliṅga*. ⁴ *Tarī yeva upajjhaṃ tarī eva upasampadaṃ*, explained at Vin-a.273 as *pubbe gahītaupajjhaṃ eva pubbe kataupsampadaṃ eva ca anujānāmi*, which seems to mean: I allow the teacher who was taken before, the *upasampadā* that was conferred before ...

At one time the characteristics of a man appeared on a certain nun. They informed the Master. He said: “Monks, I allow that very discipleship, that very ordination, those years as a nun, to be transferred to the monks. Those offences that the nuns have in common with the monks are to be dealt with in the presence of the monks. For those offences that the nuns do not have in common with the monks, there is no offence.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.7
BD.1.55

At one time a certain monk, thinking he would avoid an offence, had sexual intercourse with his mother ... his daughter ... his sister. He became anxious ... He informed the Master. “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk had sexual intercourse with his former wife. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.8

At one time a certain monk had a supple back.¹ Tormented by discontent, he took his penis into his own mouth. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk had a long penis. Tormented by discontent,² he inserted his penis into his own anus. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

Vin.3.36

Bu-Pj.1.10.9

At one time a certain monk saw a dead body, and on the body was a sore next to the genitals. Thinking he would avoid an offence, he inserted his penis in the genital and it came out through the sore. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk saw a dead body, and on the body was a sore next to the genitals. Thinking he would avoid an offence, he inserted his

¹ Vin-a.177, he had formerly been a dancer. ² See below, [BD.1.114, n.1](#).

penis in the sore and it came out through the genitals. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain lustful monk contacted the genitals of a picture¹ with his penis. He became anxious ... “... Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion; there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.10

At one time a certain lustful monk contacted the genitals of a wooden doll² with his penis. He became anxious ... “... bad conduct.”

At one time a monk called Sundara, who had gone forth from Rājagaha, was walking along a carriage-road. A certain woman said: “Wait a moment, honoured sir, I will pay homage to you.” As she was paying homage she held up his lower robe and took his penis into her mouth. He became anxious ... “... Monk, did you consent?”

Bu-Pj.1.10.11
BD.1.56

“I did not consent, Master.”³

“There is no offence, monk, for one who does not consent.”

Now at one time a certain woman, seeing a monk, said: “Come, honoured sir, have sexual intercourse.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.12

“Enough, sister, it is not allowable.”

“Come, honoured sir, I will make the effort, not you. In this way there will be no offence for you.” The monk acted accordingly. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain woman, seeing a monk, said: “Come, honoured sir, have sexual intercourse.”

“Enough, sister, it is not allowable.”

“Come, honoured sir, you make the effort, not I. In this way there will be no offence for you.” The monk acted accordingly. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

¹ *Lepacitta*. Vin-a.278 says *cittakammarūpa*. ² *Dārudhitalikā*. Vin-a.278 says *kaṭṭharūpa*.

³ Vin-a.278 says he was a non-returner, therefore he did not agree.

At one time a certain woman, seeing a monk, said: "Come, honoured sir ... " "... it is not allowable."

"Come, honoured sir, rub inside but discharge outside ... rub outside but discharge inside. Thus there will be no offence for you." The monk acted accordingly. He became anxious ... "... entailing expulsion."

Bu-Pj.1.10.13

Now at one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and saw an undecomposed body. He had sexual intercourse with it. He became anxious ... "... entailing expulsion."

BD.1.57

Vin.3.37

At one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and saw a mostly undecomposed body ... "... entailing expulsion."

At one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and saw a mostly decomposed body ... "... Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion; there is a serious offence."

At one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and saw a decapitated head. He inserted his penis into the wide open mouth, touching it with the penis. He became anxious ... "... You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

At one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and saw a decapitated head. He inserted his penis into the wide open mouth, without touching it with the penis. He became anxious ... "Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion; there is an offence of bad conduct."

At one time a certain monk was in love with a certain woman. She died and her bones were thrown away and scattered in the charnel-ground. Then the monk went to the charnel ground, collected the bones and brought his

penis into the (area of the) genitals. He became anxious ... “... Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion; there is an offence of bad conduct.”

At one time a certain monk had sexual intercourse with a female dragon¹ ... with a female spirit² ... with a female ghost³ ... with a *paṇḍaka*. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.14

BD.1.58

At one time a certain monk's faculties were impaired.⁴ Thinking he would avoid an offence because he felt neither pleasure nor pain, he had sexual intercourse. They informed the Master. “Monks, whether that foolish man felt anything or did not feel anything,⁵ there is an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.15

At one time a certain monk, intending to have sexual intercourse with a woman, felt remorse at the mere touch ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence entailing suspension.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.16

At one time a certain monk was lying down in the Jātiyā Grove at Bhaddiya,⁶ having gone there to spend the day. And he had an erection because of wind. A certain woman saw him and sat down on his penis; and having taken her pleasure, she departed. The monks, seeing the moisture,⁷ informed the Master. “Monks, an erection occurs for five reasons: because of lust, because of excrement, because of urine, because of wind, because of being bitten by caterpillars. It is impossible, monks, it cannot be, that

Bu-Pj.1.10.17

Vin.3.38

¹ Vin-a.279 says “whether it is a young female *nāgā* (*nāgamāṇavikā*, cf. Ja.iii.275 and Dhpa.iii.232, translated at *Buddhist Legends*, iii.57, as ‘dragon-maiden’) or a *kinnari*” (birds [?] living in the heart of mountains); cf. Thig-a.255. ² Vin-a.279, “the female *yakkhas* are all *devatās*.” ³ Vin-a.279, “the *nijjhāmatanḥika petas* and so on are not to be approached, but there are *petas* who live in mansions; the demerit of these matures during the dark half of the month, but in the light half they experience bliss like *devatās*.” The *nijjhāmatanḥika petas* are consumed by thirst. At Mi.294 it is said that they do not derive benefit from offerings made by their living relatives. Cf. Mi.303, Mi.357. ⁴ *upahatindriya*. ⁵ *vedayi vā ... na vā vedayi*. ⁶ The capital of the Aṅga kingdom. Here lived Meṇḍaka, famed for his psychic potency, Vin.1.24off. The town is mentioned also at Vin.1.189, Vin.1.190: AN.iii.36. ⁷ *kilinna*.

that monk had an erection because of lust. That monk is an *arahant*. There is no offence for that monk.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.18

At one time a certain monk was lying down in the Dark Wood at Sāvattḥī, having gone there to spend the day. A certain woman cowherd saw him and sat down on his penis. The monk consented to the entry, to having entered, to remaining and to the taking out. He became anxious ... “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

BD.1.59

At one time a certain monk was lying down in the Dark Wood at Sāvattḥī ... A certain woman goatherd saw him ... A certain woman gathering fire-wood saw him ... A certain woman gathering cow-dung saw him and down on his penis ... “... entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.19

Now at one time a certain monk was lying down in the Great Wood at Vesālī, having gone there to spend the day. A certain woman saw him and sat down on his penis; and having taken her pleasure, she stood laughing nearby. The monk woke up and said: “Have you done this?”

“Yes, I did it.” He became anxious ...

“Monk, did you consent?”

“I didn’t even know, Master.”

“Monk, there is no offence for one who doesn’t know.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.20

At one time a certain monk, having gone to the Great Wood at Vesālī to spend the day, was lying down and resting his head against a tree. A certain woman saw him and sat down on his penis. The monk got up hastily. He became anxious ...

“Monk, did you consent?”

“I did not consent, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not consent.”

At one time a certain monk, having gone to the Great Wood at Vesālī to spend the day, was lying down and resting his head against a tree. A certain

woman saw him and sat down on his penis. The monk kicked her off.¹ He became anxious ...

“Monk, did you consent?”

“I did not consent, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not consent.”

At one time a certain monk had gone to spend the day in the hall with the peaked roof in the Great Wood at Vesālī. He opened the door and lay down. And he had an erection because of wind. Now at that time a number of women, bringing scents and garlands, came to the monastery to look at the monastic dwellings. Then those women saw that monk and they sat down on his penis. Having taken their pleasure, they said, “what a bull of a man,”² and they placed their scents and garlands and departed. The monks, seeing the moisture, informed the Master. “Monks, an erection occurs for five reasons: ... (as in [Bu-Pj.1.10.17](#)) ... There is no offence for that monk. I advise you, monks, when you are in seclusion during the day, to close the door.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.21

BD.1.60

Vin.3.39

At one time a certain monk of Bharukaccha³ dreamt that he had sexual intercourse with his former wife. He thought he was no longer a monk and

Bu-Pj.1.10.22

¹ *akkamitvā pavaṭṭesi*. Vin-a.280 says that the monk, rising suddenly and giving a kick (*akkamitvā*), knocked her over in such a way that she rolled on the ground. The same expression recurs below, [BD.1.138](#), in connection with a mortar. The Commentary on this passage, Vin-a.475 gives *akkamitvā* in explanation of *ottharivā*, which seems to mean “sitting on.” *Critical Pali Dictionary* says that *akkamati* is “to make a kick at one,” and in that connection cites the above passage. *Pali-English Dictionary*, evidently following the Commentary, gives “to rise” for this passage. ² *purisusabha*. ³ *Bhārukacchako bhikkhu*. Bharukaccha was a town, see Ja.iii.188; and *Psalms of the Bretheren*, p.194, *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.103; here Vaḍḍha and his mother were said to have been born. PROFESSOR E. MÜLLER, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1888, p.63, says that Bharukacchaka is a monk; but he is mentioned nowhere but here. At Mi.331 the inhabitants of the town are called Bhārukacchakā. *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.103, n.1, calls it “a seaport on the north-west seaboard, the Bharoch of today.”

BD.1.61 that he would have to disrobe.¹ While on his way to Bharukaccha, he saw the Venerable Upāli² and informed him of what had happened. Venerable Upāli said: “There is no offence, friend, since it was in a dream.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.23

At one time in Rājagaha there was a female lay-follower called Supabbā³ who had mistaken⁴ faith. She held the view that any woman who gives sexual intercourse gives the highest gift. Seeing a monk, she said: “Come, bhante, have sexual intercourse.”

“Enough, sister, it is not allowable.”

“Come, bhante, rub between the thighs, thus there will be no offence for you ... Come, bhante, rub against the navel ... the stomach ... the waist ... the throat ... the ear ... the coil of hair ... the spaces between the fingers ... Come, bhante, having made an effort with my hand, I will make you discharge, thus there will be no offence for you.” The monk acted accordingly. He became anxious. “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence entailing suspension.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.24

At one time in Sāvattihī there was a female lay-disciple called Saddhā who had mistaken faith. She held the view that any woman who gives sexual intercourse gives the highest gift. Seeing a monk, she said: “Come, bhante, have sexual intercourse.”

“Enough, sister, it is not allowable.”

“Come, bhante, rub between the thighs ... Come, bhante, having made an effort with my hand, I will make you discharge, thus there will be no

¹ *Vibbhamissāmi*. *Pali-English Dictionary*, referring to the above passage, says “co-habiting.” But see below, **BD.1.114**, for an exact repetition of this phrase, where it is probably to be taken in its sense of “to leave the Order.” The question is, does the text of the above passage justify the Dictionary’s rendering? It is as easy to believe that the monk was merely returning to his former home as that he was declaring his intention of returning to his former wife. On the other hand, on **BD.1.62** below, *vibbhama* possibly means “cohabit.” At **BD.1.323** below, *vibbh°* probably means “left the Order.” Doubtless this meaning carried the other with it. See also **BD.1.114** and **n.3**. ² At **AN.i.25** he is called “chief among those who know the disciplinary rules by heart,” quoted by Vin-a.283. Verses at Thag.249, see *Psalms of the Brethren* 168. Cf. *Vinaya Texts* ii.276, n.1; MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.217. ³ Mentioned, I think, nowhere but here. ⁴ **BRAHMALI**: Reading *mudhā* with the *Mahāsaṅgīti*, as against *Buddha* in the *PTS* edition.

offence for you.” The monk acted accordingly. He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence entailing suspension.”

At one time in Vesālī some Licchavi youths took hold of a monk and made him commit misconduct with a nun. Both agreed: both should be expelled.¹ Neither agreed: no offence for either.

Bu-Pj.1.10.25

BD.1.62
Vin.3.40

At one time in Vesālī some Licchavi youths took hold of a monk and made him commit misconduct with a probationary nun ... with a novice nun. Both agreed: both should be expelled. Neither agreed: no offence for either.

At one time in Vesālī some Licchavi youths took hold of a monk and made him commit misconduct with a prostitute² ... with a *paṇḍaka* ... with a woman householder. The monk agreed: he should be expelled. The monk did not agree: there is no offence for him.

At one time in Vesālī some Licchavi youths took hold of some monks and made them commit misconduct with one another. Both agreed: both should be expelled. Neither agreed: no offence for either.

At one time a certain monk who had gone forth in his old age went to see his former wife. She said, “Come, bhante, leave the Sangha,”³ and she took hold of him. The monk, stepping backwards, fell down on his back.⁴ She, having pulled up his robe,⁵ sat down on his penis. He became anxious ... They informed the Master. He said:
“Monk, did you consent?”

Bu-Pj.1.10.26

¹ *nāsetabbo*. Cf. above, [BD.1.50](#). ² *vesī*, or low-caste woman. ³ *vibbhama*, see above [BD.1.60](#), [n.3](#). ⁴ Vin-a.284, says that he stepped back to free himself from her grasp, but fell down as he was weak through old age. But he was a non-returner, one who had cut off passion and sense-desires, therefore he did not consent. ⁵ *Ubbhujitvā*. Cf. [Vin.2.222](#).

“I did not consent, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not consent.”

Bu-Pj.1.10.27

At one time a certain monk dwelt in the jungle. A young deer went to his place of urination, drank the urine and took his penis in its mouth. The monk consented. He became anxious ... He informed the Master. He said: “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

BD.1.63

*The first offence entailing expulsion is finished.*¹

¹ *samattarī*, instead of the more usual *niṭṭharī*.

MONKS' EXPULSION (PĀRĀJIKA) 2

ORIGIN STORY

FIRST SUB-STORY

At one time the Buddha, the Master, was staying at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture's Peak. Now at that time a number of monks who were friends made grass huts on the slope of Mount Isigili¹ and entered the rains there. Among them was Venerable Dhaniya, the potter's son. Then, after three months, when the rains (residence) was over, the monks demolished their grass huts, put away the grass and wood and departed to wander around the country. But Venerable Dhaniya spent the rains there, and the winter and the summer. Then, while Venerable Dhaniya was in the village collecting alms, women gathering grass and firewood demolished the grass hut and took away the grass and sticks. A second time Venerable Dhaniya collected grass and sticks and made a grass hut. A second time, while Venerable Dhaniya was in the village collecting alms, women gathering grass and firewood demolished the grass hut and took away the grass and sticks. And the same thing happened a third time. Then Venerable Dhaniya thought: "Three times this has happened. But I am well-trained and experienced in my own craft, the potter's craft. Perhaps I should knead mud myself and make a hut consisting of nothing but clay?" Then Venerable Dhaniya did just that. He then collected grass, wood and cow-dung and baked his hut. It was a beautiful, lovely and charming little hut, and it was red just like a

Bu·Pj.2.1.1
BD.1.64
Vin.3.41

BD.1.65

Vin.3.42

¹ One of the group of hills above Rājagaha, whence the other crests could be seen (MN.iii.68ff.); a resort of the Order, Vin.2.76; where Godhika committed suicide, SN.i.120; cf. DN.ii.116.

Bu-Pj.2.1.2 scarlet rain-mite.¹ And (when hit) it sounded just like the sound of a bell.

Then the Master, descending from Mount Vulture's Peak with a number of monks, saw the hut. He then addressed the monks:

“Monks, what is this beautiful, lovely and charming thing, which is red like a scarlet rain-mite?” The monks then informed the Master. The Buddha, the Master, was critical, saying:

“It is not suitable, monks, for that foolish man, it is not fit, it is not becoming, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. For how could that foolish man make a hut out of nothing but clay? Certainly this foolish man can have no consideration, compassion and mercy for living beings.² Go, monks, and demolish this hut. Do not let future generations

BD.1.66

¹ Indagopaka, literally Indra's cowherds. Commentary makes no remark. But cf. Thag.13 and *Psalms of the Brethren* 18, n., where it is said that “according to the (Thag.) Commentary these are coral-red insects, alluded to in connection with recent rain, but said by some to be a red grass.” Note also here Sir Charles Eliot's remark that the Russians call lady-birds, “God's little cows.” Dhaniya's hut might have been of a round kraal-like shape, suggesting a beetle's back. Monier Williams' Sanskrit-English Dictionary gives under *indragopaka*, “the insect cochineal of various kinds”; and St. Petersburg Dictionary gives “Coccinelle.” The coccineds are, however, lady-birds. ² *na hi nāma tassa moghapurisassa pāṇesu anuddayā anukampā aviheṣā bhavissati*. This must refer to the small creatures in the mud which would be destroyed when the mud was baked.

take up the destruction of living beings.¹ **And, monks, a hut consisting of nothing but clay should not be made. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.**"²

"Yes, bhante," the monks replied, and they went to that hut and demolished it. Then Venerable Dhaniya said to those monks:

BD.1.67

"Why, friends, are you demolishing my hut?"

"Friend, the Master has asked us to."

"Demolish it, friends, if the Lord of the Dhamma³ has said so."

Bu-Pj.2.1.3

Then Venerable Dhaniya thought: "Three times, while I was in the village collecting alms, women gathering grass and firewood demolished my hut

¹ *mā pacchimā janatā pānesu pātavyalaṃ āpajji*. Vin-a.288 paraphrases *pacchimā janatā* by *janasamūho*, concourse or multitude of people. At Vin.2.128 we find *pacchimaṃ janatam tathāgato anukampati*, translated at *Vinaya Texts*, iii.128, "The *tathāgata* has mercy even on the meanest thing." And at MN.ii.93, *pacchimaṃ janatam tathāgato apaloketi*, translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.47, "The Truth-Finder is looking towards those that shall follow hereafter." MN-a gives no help. *Pacchimaṃ janatam* at AN.i.61 is translated at GS.i.55 as "future generations," with note that "Commentary takes it to mean 'his disciples who come after.'" At AN.iii.108=AN.iii.251 we get *pacchimā janatā diṭṭhānugatim āpajjati* (*āpajjissati*, 108), translation, GS.iii.86, GS.iii.184, "and the folk who come after fall (will fall) into the way of wrong views." At SN.ii.203 we find *pacchimaṃ ca janatam anukampamāno appevanāma pacchimā janatā diṭṭhānugatim āpajjeyyurū*, translation, KS.ii.136, "and being filled with compassion for them who will come after us. For surely these may fall into error." SN-a makes no comment. Because of this array of translations of *pacchimā janatā* as "those who come after," I am reluctant to think that here it means "lowest or most backward persons"—in this case represented by Dhaniya. It was meant, I think, that it was a bad example if he should destroy creatures, for then those who might use the hut after him might destroy them. Cf. *pacchimaka bhikkhu*, above, BD.1.19; DN.ii.155; AN.ii.80. *Pātavyatā* is paraphrased at Vin-a.288 as *pātabyabhāva*, and it is said that in the time of a Buddha the monks did bring "downfall to creatures, thinking that there was no fault in depriving them of life, falling into the way of wrong views (*diṭṭhanugatim āpajjamānā*, cf. AN.iii.108=AN.iii.251) about this; so now it is said: 'Let not the lowest people think thus of the ruin (*pātabbe*, with variant readings *pātabyate*, *pātabye*) and crushing (*ghaṃsitabbe*) of creatures.'" At MN.i.305=AN.i.266 we find *kāmesu pātavyatam āpajjati* (*byatam āpajjanti*, MN.i.), translated *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.219, "they give way to indulgence in pleasures of sense," and GS.i.244, "comes to be intoxicated with his lusts." Mr. Woodward says, GS.i.244, n.2, that AN-a appears to derive *pātavyata* from √*piv*, intoxication, as does Ud-a.351, Ud-a.365, as he points out. So also does MN-a.ii.371. But such a derivation is not hinted at at Vin-a.288, nor would it fit the case. ² Vin-a.289, "There was no offence for Dhaniya, because it was a first offence." ³ *dhammasāmi*, cf. SN.iv.94; AN.v.226.

and took away the grass and sticks. And now my hut made of nothing but clay has been demolished at the Master's request. Now the overseer of the wood-yard is a friend of mine. Perhaps I should ask him for wood and make a hut out of it?"

Then Venerable Dhaniya approached the overseer of the wood-yard and said this: "Three times, friend, while I was in the village collecting alms, women gathering grass and firewood ... has been demolished at the Master's request. Give me some wood, friend, I want to make a wooden hut."

Vin.3.43

"There is no such wood, bhante, that I could give you. This wood is held by the king, and it is meant for the repair of the town and put aside in case of emergency. Only if the king gives it, may you take it."

"Friend, it has been given by the king."

BD.1.68

Then the overseer of the wood-yard thought: "These recluses, sons of the Sakyan, are followers of *dhamma*, of just conduct, committed to the spiritual life, speakers of truth, virtuous, of good conduct. Even the king has faith in these. He would not¹ say something is given if it were not." Then the overseer of the wood-yard said to Venerable Dhaniya: "You may take it, bhante." Then Venerable Dhaniya had that wood broken up into pieces, removed it by means of carts and made a wooden hut.

Bu-Pj.2.1.4

Now the brahmin Vassakāra,² the chief minister of Magadha, while he was inspecting the works in Rājagaha, went to the overseer of the wood-yard and said to him: "What is going on: where is the wood held by the king that is meant for the repair of the town and put aside in case of emergency?"

"Sir,³ that wood was given by the king to master Dhaniya."

Then the brahmin Vassakāra was upset: "How could the king give away the wood, which is meant for the repair of the town and put aside in case of emergency, to Dhaniya, the potter's son?"

Then the brahmin Vassakāra went to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha and said to him: "Is it true, sire, that the wood held by the king, meant for the repair of the town and put aside in case of emergency, were given by the king to Dhaniya, the potter's son?"

¹ *na arahati*. ² At Vin.1.225 = DN.ii.86 = Ud.87 he and Sunidha, another chief minister, were building a fortified town at Pāṭaligāma against the Vajjians. At DN.ii.72 Ajātasattu, then King of Magadha, sent Vassakāra to tell Gotama that he (Ajāta^o) was going to fight the Vajjins.

³ *Sāmi*.

“Who said that?”

“The overseer of the wood-yard, sire.”

“Well then, brahmin, send for the overseer of the wood-yard.” Then Vassakāra had the overseer of the wood-yard bound and taken by force.

Venerable Dhaniya saw the overseer of the wood-yard being bound and taken by force and said to him: “Friend, why is this happening to you?”

BD.1.69

“Because of the business with that wood, bhante.”

“Go, friend, and I too will come.”

“Please come before I am done for, bhante.”

Bu-Pj.2.1.5

Then Venerable Dhaniya went to the dwelling of King Bimbisāra and sat down on the appointed seat. Then King Bimbisāra approached Venerable Dhaniya, paid homage to him and sat down to one side. King Bimbisāra then said this to him:

Vin.3.44

“Is it true, bhante, that the wood held by the king, meant for the repair of the town and put aside in case of emergency, have been given by me to the master?”

“Yes, great king.”

“We kings are very busy—having given, we may not remember. Please remind me, bhante.”

“Do you remember, great king, when you were first anointed, speaking these words: ‘Let the recluses and brahmins enjoy gifts of grass, sticks and water’?”

“I remember, bhante. There are recluses and brahmins who have a sense of shame, are scrupulous and desirous of training. They have a sense of conscience even in regard to small matters. What was uttered by me was meant¹ for these, and it concerned what is ownerless in the wilderness.² Yet you, bhante, imagine you can take wood not given to you by means of this trick? But how could one like me flog, imprison or banish a recluse or a

BD.1.70

¹ *Tesaṃ mayā sandhāya bhāsitaṃ. Sandhāya* of text altered to *saddhāya* at Vin.5.260. Vin-a.295 reads *sandh°*. ² Vin-a.295 says: “that grass, wood, and water not owned in the jungle, this is the meaning intended by me.”

brahmin living in my kingdom? Go, you are free because of your status,¹² but do not do such a thing again.”

Bu-Pj.2.1.6

People criticised and denounced him: “These recluses, the sons of the Sakyan, are shameless, immoral, liars. They claim to be followers of *dhamma*, of just conduct, committed to the spiritual life, speakers of truth, virtuous, of good conduct. But there is no recluseship or brahminhood among these—it is lost to them. Where is recluseship and brahminhood among them? They have departed from it. They even deceive the king; what then other people?”

Monks heard the criticism of those people. Those monks who had few desires and a sense of shame, who were contented, scrupulous, and desirous of training, criticised and denounced Venerable Dhaniya: “How could he take wood belonging to the king that had not been given to him?” Then these monks informed the Master. And in this connection the Master convened the Sangha of monks and questioned Venerable Dhaniya:

“Is it true, Dhaniya, that you have taken wood belonging to the king that was not given to you?”

“It is true, Master.”

BD.1.71

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked him: “Foolish man, it is not suitable, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How could you take wood belonging to the king that has not been given to you? This will not give rise to confidence in those without it,³ nor increase the confidence of those who have it, but it will hinder confidence in those without it and it will cause some with confidence to change their minds.”

Vin.3.45

¹ BRAHMALI: “*Loma*, “literally “hair,” but here seems to be used idiomatically to refer to status or social position. ² *Lomena*. Vin-a.295 says that *loma* is the characteristic mark of *pabbajjā*. It is like the case of some evil-minded people, who wanting to eat flesh, take a goat with a fine coat. A clever man comes along and thinks that the goat’s coat is valuable, so giving the other people two goats, he himself takes the valuable one. Thus this goat is freed on account of its coat or hair (*lomena*). Similarly, although the man who has done the deed (referred to in the text) is worthy of flogging or binding, yet because he bears the mark of an *arahan* (*arahaddhaja*) he is scatheless. Therefore, on account of his hair (*lomena*, i.e., the down on the limbs) which is the sign of his having gone forth, he is freed, like the valuable goat. ³ AN.i.98. At Gs.i.84 *appasannānam* is translated “to believers” in error. It is, of course, “to non-believers or unbelievers.”

Now at that time a certain former chief minister of justice who had gone forth among the monks was sitting near the Master. The Master said to him: “For what amount of theft, monk, does King Bimbisāra flog, imprison or banish a thief?”

“For a *pāda*,¹ Master, for the worth of a *pāda*², or for more than a *pāda*.”

Now at that time in Rājagaha a *pāda* was worth five *māsakas*.³ Then the Master, having rebuked Venerable Dhaniya in several ways for being difficult to support ... “... And, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

BD.1.72

PRELIMINARY RULING

“If a monk takes by way of theft what has not been given to him—the sort of theft for which kings, having caught a thief, would flog, imprison or banish

¹ For *pāda* see RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.2f., where he says “there is nothing to prove that it meant a coin at all; it may have been a weight ... recognised as a basis of calculation or a medium of exchange.” Vin-a.297 says, “then in Rājagaha a *kaḥāpaṇa* was (worth) twenty *māsakas*, therefore a *pāda* was (worth) five *māsakas*, and a *pāda*, because of this property, is to be called a quarter of a *kaḥāpaṇa* throughout the countryside.” At Vin.3.238, Vin.3.240, *kaḥāpaṇa* appears in definition of *rajata* (silver), *rūpiya* (silver), respectively, but I think that it need not necessarily mean silver literally, as the copper, wood and lac *māsakas* also appear in these definitions of *rajata* and *rūpiya*. See BD.1.72, n. for *māsaka*. At Vv-a.11=Dhp-a.iii.108 we get a descending line, *kaḥāpaṇa*, *aḍḍhapāda*, *māsaka*, then *kākaṇikā*. For this last see RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.10. Owing to the uncertainty as to the exact nature of the coins *kaḥāpaṇa*, *māsaka*, *pāda*, if indeed they were coins at all, I think it better to leave them untranslated. All we can say is that the *kaḥāpaṇa* was the unit of exchange in Pali literature, and that the others were mediums of exchange of lesser value than the *kaḥāpaṇa*. To translate *kaḥāpaṇa* by “penny” and so on as does BURLINGAME, *Buddhist Legends*, ii.333f. brings us no nearer to the sense of the Pali. ² *pādārahaṃ*. Here we have what is possibly an early use of *arahaṃ*, when it simply meant “worth” or “value,” and not even so much as a “worthy person,” far less a saint or man perfected. ³ *māsaka* from *māsa*, a bean of the phaseolus, see below, BD.1.83, n. Enough has been said to show that usually twenty *māsakas* were reckoned to make a *kaḥāpaṇa*. As mentioned in foregoing note the copper, wood and lac *māsakas* are included in a definition of *rajata* and *rūpiya*. See also Vin-a.689–Vin-a.690, which speaks of *māsakas* made of skin, bone, fruits or seeds of trees, and says that some *māsakas* have figures stamped upon them. This passage goes on to say that, together with silver and gold, the gold *māsaka* and the silver *māsaka* are four things to be given up (by monks) See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.8, p.14. Cf. SN.i.79.

him, saying, ‘You are a robber, you are foolish, you have gone astray, you are a thief’ — he too is expelled and not in communion.”

Thus the Master laid down this training rule for the monks

SECOND SUB-STORY

Bu-Pj.2.2

At one time the group of six monks went to the dyers’ spread (of dyed cloth)¹, carried off the dyers’ goods, took it to the monastery and divided it out. Other monks said:

“Friends, you have great merit, for many robes have accrued to you.”

“How is there merit for us, friends? Just now we went to the dyers’ spread (of dyed cloth) and carried off the dyers’ goods.”

“Friends, hasn’t a training rule been laid down by the Master? Why then do you carry off the dyers’ goods?”

“It is true, friends, that a training rule has been laid down by the Master, but it concerns the village, not the wilderness.”

BD.1.73

“But, friends, that is just the same. It is not suitable, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How could you carry off the dyers’s goods? It will not give rise to confidence in those without it, nor increase the confidence of those who have it, but it will hinder confidence in those without it and it will cause some with confidence to change their minds.”

Vin.3.46

Then those monks, having rebuked the group of six monks in various ways, informed the Master. And in this connection the Master convened the Sangha and questioned the group of six monks:

“Is it true, monks, that you went the dyers’ spread (of dyed cloth) and carried off the dyers’ goods?”

“It is true, Master.”

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked them: “it is not suitable, foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How could you go to the dyers’ spread (of dyed cloth) and carry off the dyers’ goods? It will not give rise to confidence in those without it ... to change their minds.” Then the Master, rebuking

¹ BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.2.298,16.

the group of six monks in various ways, spoke in dispraise of being difficult to support ... but he spoke in praise ... of the putting forth of energy. Having given a *Dhamma* talk on what was right and seemly, he addressed the monks ... “... And so, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

FINAL RULING

“If a monk takes by way of theft from a village or from the wilderness what has not been given to him—the sort of theft for which kings, having caught a thief, would flog, imprison or banish him, saying, ‘You are a robber, you are foolish, you have gone astray, you are a thief’—he too is expelled and not in communion.”

DEFINITIONS

A means: whoever, of such kind ...

Bu-Pj.2.3

Monk means: ... this sort of **monk** is meant in this case.

Village means: a village of one hut, a village of two huts, a village of three huts, a village of four huts, an inhabited village, an uninhabited village,¹ a fenced-in village, a village which is not fenced in, a disorganised village, and even a caravan that is camping for more than four months is called a **village**. **The precincts of the village** means: of a fenced-in village, the outward stone-throw of a man of average height standing at the threshold (of the village gate); of a village not fenced in, the outward stone-throw of a man of average height standing within the precincts of a house.²

BD.1.74

Wilderness means: leaving aside the village and the precincts of the village, what remains is called the wilderness.³

¹ *samanusso pi gāmo amanusso pi gāmo*, or “a village that is inhabited or a village that is uninhabited.” See BD.1.147, n.2 below. ² See Vism.71f., which goes into the question of fixing the village precincts at greater length. It adduces Vinaya evidence: a stone thrown by young men in a display or strength fixes the boundary. The standard throw decides this. The Visuddhimagga goes on to say that the Suttanta scholars say that the boundary is the fall of a stone thrown to drive away a crow. ³ Quoted at Snp-a.83; and at Vism.73. Here Vibhaṅga definition is also collected: “it is jungle when one goes out by the gate pillars,” Vb.251. Suttanta views as to relation of jungle and village are also given at Vism.73.

What has not been given means: what has not been given, nor let go of, nor thrown away; what is guarded, protected, regarded as “mine”, what belongs to others—this is called **what has not been given**.

By way of theft means: intending to steal, intending to carry off.

If (he) takes means: if (he) takes, if (he) takes away, if (he) carries off, if (he) interrupts the mode of movement, if (he) removes from its base, if (he) does not fulfill an obligation.¹

The sort of theft means: a *pāda*, the worth of a *pāda*, or more than a *pāda*.

Vin.3.47

Kings means: kings of the earth, local kings, governors of islands,² governors of border areas, judges, chief ministers, or whoever metes out physical punishment—these are called **kings**.

BD.1.75

A thief means: one who takes by way of theft anything having the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* that has not been given—he is called **a thief**.

Would flog means: they would flog with the hand, the foot, a whip, a cane, a rod, or by maiming.

Would imprison means: they would imprison by constriction with a rope, by constriction with fetters, by constriction with chains, by constriction to a house, by constriction to a town, by constriction to a village, by constriction to a small town, by being guarded.

Would banish means: they would banish from the village, small town, town, province or rural district.

You are a robber, you are foolish, you have gone astray, you are a thief means: this is censure.³

He too means: this is said with reference to the preceding offence entailing expulsion.

Is expelled means: just as a fallen, withered leaf could not⁴ become green again, so a monk who takes by way of theft a *pāda*, the worth of a

¹ *saṃketa*, see below Bu-Pj.2.4.30. ² BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.2.309,6. ³ BRAHMALI: Because of the way I have translated the rule I have had to leave out the next two definitions, neither of which relate to anything in my translation. Both definitions are found in the Pali and in I.B. Horner’s translation. However, since both of these definitions are verbatim repetitions of definitions already given under this rule (see the definitions of “The sort of theft” and “Should take” above), there is no loss of information. ⁴ *Abhabba*.

pāda or more than a *pāda*, which had not been given to him, is not a recluse, not a son of the Sakyan¹—he is therefore called one who **is expelled**.

Not in communion means: **communion** means: a common official action, the same recital, the same training—this is called **communion**. He does not take part in this—he is therefore called **not in communion**.

PERMUTATIONS

PERMUTATIONS PART 1

SUMMARY

Being in the earth, being on firm ground, being in the air, being above ground, being in water, being in a boat, being in a vehicle, carried as a burden, being in a park, being in a monastic dwelling, being in a field, being on a plot of land, being in a village, being in the wilderness, water, tooth-wood, forest tree, goods being carried, deposit, customs station, a living being, footless, two-footed, four-footed, many-footed, a spy, a keeper of entrusted property, a mutually agreed theft, an arranged action, the making of a sign.

Bu-Pj.2.4.1
BD.1.76

EXPOSITION

Being in the earth means: the goods are put down into the earth, buried, covered. If, intending to steal, he thinks, “I will take the goods that are in the earth,” and he seeks for a companion,² or he seeks for a hoe or a

Bu-Pj.2.4.2

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.96](#), where it is said that a monk who has received the *upasampadā* ordination should abstain from taking what is not given him and from theft, even of a blade of grass.

² *dutiya*, a second one, a mate or helper, a friend, associate or accomplice.

BD.1.77
Vin.3.48

basket, or he goes (to the goods),¹ there is an offence of bad conduct.² If he breaks a piece of wood or a slender tree³ growing there, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he digs up the soil or removes it or lifts it up, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches the container,⁴ there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver,⁵ there is a serious offence. If he moves it from its base,⁶ there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Putting his own vessel into (the container)⁷, if he touches something

¹ There are two curious points in this passage: (1) he seeks for a hoe or a basket, not for both; (2) the construction *pariyesati gacchati*, the use of two indicatives together being uncommon. It is more usual to find an indicative following a gerund. Does this sentence mean that having been unable to find a willing friend he goes and seeks for the implements himself? Or that seeking a hoe or a basket he goes himself to do the theft? In the following paragraphs the reading is simpler: *dutiyaṃ vā pariyesati gacchati vā*, he seeks for a friend or he goes away (or goes himself). Vin-a.310f. says that realising that the treasure is too heavy for one person alone, he goes and wakes a sleeping friend (*sahāya*), who may bring his own hoe. But if he has not one, the intending thief goes to another monk and says: “Give me a hoe, I want it for something,” and he gives some excuse—a *pācittiya* offence. If he finds that the hoe has no handle, he goes away for this purpose, and cuts down and shapes a piece of dry wood. There is a *dukkāṭa* offence in all these undertakings, except in lying, which is a *pācittiya*, and in cutting reeds for a basket—also a *pācittiya*. We thus get two possible interpretations for *gacchati*: (1) that the intending thief goes away to another monk; (2) that he goes away to make a handle for the hoe. But in commenting on *gacchati vā*, Vin-a.311 says, “he goes to the place where the treasure is, the friend sought, the hoe (sought), the basket (sought).” This seems to convey the idea that he goes himself. I have therefore translated it in this way. Vin-a.312 mentions the names of eight *dukkāṭa* offences which are interesting. There are *pubbapayogadukkāṭa*, *sahapayogadukkāṭa*, *anāmāsadukkāṭa*, *durūpaciṇṇadukkāṭa*, *vinayadukkāṭa*, *ñāṭadukkāṭa*, *ñāttidukkāṭa*, *paṭissavadukkāṭa*, which seem to mean respectively: the offence of a previous action, of a present action, of touching something forbidden (so *Critical Pali Dictionary*), the offence of handling something wrongfully, an offence concerning discipline, an offence concerning relations, an offence concerning a resolution, concerning obedience. ² *Dukkāṭa*, explained at Vin-a.313 as *duṭṭhu kata*, badly, wrongly done; and transgressing being done is called *dukkāṭa*. This is not one of the worst transgressions. ³ *Latā*, a slender creeper. ⁴ BRAHMALI: *Kumbhī*, literally, “pot”, but here it functions as a container. ⁵ *Phandāpeti*, cf. MN.i.404 *phandato phandāpayato*, translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.291, “who sets folk quaking or causes another to do so.” The meaning probably is that he takes hold of the article so that it throbs, trembles or shakes—a worse offence than merely laying hold of it, but not so bad as removing it. ⁶ *Ṭhānā cāveti*. Cf. Snp.442 *mā maṃ ṭhānā acāvayī*, translated H.O.S. Vol. 37, “May he never beat me back,” and Sacred Books of the East, Volume X, “that he may not drive me away from my place.” ⁷ BRAHMALI: Vin-a.2.316,15.

worth five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence.¹ If he makes it enter his own vessel² or takes it with his fist,^{3,4} there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If, intending to steal, he touches goods held together by a string,⁵ or a bracelet,⁶ a necklace,⁷ an ornamental girdle,⁸ a robe, or a turban, there is an offence of bad conduct.

BD.1.78

If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If, grasping it at the top,⁹ he pulls it, there is a serious offence. If while stroking it, he lifts it,¹⁰ there is a serious offence. If he removes the goods even as much as a hair's breadth over the rim of the container, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If, intending to steal, he drinks, in one undertaking,¹¹ ghee, oil, honey or molasses¹² to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there

¹ *Thullaccaya*, an offence whose nature is grave, Vin-a.314. ² *Attano bhājanagataṃ vā karoti*. Cf. below, BD.1.85. *Bhājanagataṃ* explained at Vin-a.316 to mean *bhājane yeva hoti*, as *kumbhigataṃ* is *kumbhiyaṃ*, feminine locative. ³ BRAHMALI: So that contact is broken with the other goods in the container; Vin-a.2.316,28. ⁴ *Muṭṭhiṃ chindati*, i.e., of *kahāpanas*. Vin-a.316; which also says, *evam muṭṭhiṃ karonto muṭṭhiṃ chindati nāma*, making a fist so is called detaching a handful so that no *kahāpaṇas* come out between the fingers. ⁵ *Suttārūlham*. Vin-a.316, "putting on chains means, tying on chains, made of chains." Cf. Vin.2.106 where the group of six monks wore similar things. ⁶ *Pāmaṅga*, at *Vinaya Texts* iii.69, "ear-drops." Vin-a.316, "made of gold, made of silver, made of chains, strings of pearls and so on." Otherwise Buddhaghosa of no help here. Cf. Vin-a.534. ⁷ BRAHMALI: The next item occurring in I.B. Horner's translation is "an ornamental string hanging from the ear," but since this is not found in the *Mahāsaṅgīti*, I have left it out. Her note on this is: "*Kaṇṇasuttaka* at Vin.1.286 seems to mean a clothes-line; but cf. Vin.2.143." ⁸ *Kaṭṭisuttaka*. Not enumerated at Vin.2.136 where other special kinds of girdles are mentioned. The monks were forbidden to wear any of these things, Vin.2.107. The use of *kaṭṭisuttaka*, meaning a hip-string, is forbidden to the nuns at Vin.2.271. ⁹ *koṭiyam gahetvā = ākāsaṭṭham akaronto*, Vin-a.317. ¹⁰ *ghaṃsanto niharati*, which according to Vin-a.317 means that when a big pot is brim-full, drawing it out and levelling a chain (*pāmaṅga*) across the mouth of the big pot, if he draws the chain further than the mouth, so that he drags off whatever goods rise higher than the level of the top of the pot, there is a *pārājika* offence. But if, in pulling the chain, he does not pull over any goods, as he does not pull the chain beyond the rim, there is a *thullaccaya* offence. See above, BD.1.77 n., on *pāmaṅga*. ¹¹ *payoga*, an elastic term, meaning action, business, undertaking; cf. Vin.3.50 below, where it seems to mean occasion, occurrence, happening. ¹² These, with fresh butter, *navanīta*, constitute the five kinds of medicine, cf. below, Vin.3.251.

is an offence entailing expulsion. In this case, if he destroys it, throws it away, burns it or renders it useless, there is an offence of bad conduct.

Bu-Pj.2.4.3

Being on firm ground¹ means: the goods are put down on the firm ground. If, intending to steal and thinking, “I will steal the goods which are on the firm ground,” he either searches for a companion, or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves them from their base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.79

Bu-Pj.2.4.4

Being in the air means: the goods are in the air.² A peacock, a francolin partridge,³ a partridge, a quail,⁴ a robe,⁵ a turban or different varieties of gold—^{6,7} that falls to the ground when cut. If, intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods in the air,” and he either searches for a companion or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he cuts off their course of movement,⁸ there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves them from their base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.5

¹ *thalatṭharī*. *Thala* is solid ground, firm ground, as opposed to water; dry ground—i.e., high, raised or sloping as opposed to low ground; or a plateau as opposed to a low-lying place. Vin-a.322 explains by *bhūmitale vā pāsādapabbatalādīsu vā*. ² *ākāśagataṃ, gataṃ* being an elastic termination of some fixed significance. ³ *kapiñjara*, possibly with this meaning, cf. Kv.268 (*kapiñjala*) and Ja.vi.538. ⁴ *vaṭṭako*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says a “cart,” *vaṭṭakā* being “quail.” ⁵ Blown by the force of the wind and extended on the ground, Vin-a.324. ⁶ BRAHMALĪ: This renders *hiraññaṃ vā suvaṇṇaṃ vā*. These are two different words for gold, the exact distinction between them being unclear. ⁷ *hiraññaṃ vā suvaṇṇaṃ vā*. While people are putting on, e.g. a necklace or while a goldsmith is making a *salākā*, if it falls from the fastener, and the thief makes off with it, Vin-a.324. But for these two words, *hirañña* and *suvaṇṇa*, cf. above BD.1.28, n. ⁸ BRAHMALĪ: Presumably this refers to something moving through the air, perhaps especially birds.

Being above ground¹ means: the goods are found above ground.² On a bed, on a bench, on a bamboo pole for hanging robes from,³ on a cord for hanging robes from, on a peg in the wall,⁴ on an elephant tusk peg,⁵ in a tree, or even if just fastened to a bowl stand.⁶ If, intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods that are found above ground,” and he either searches for a companion or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves them from their base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.80

Being in the water means: the goods are deposited in the water. If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods in the water,” and he either searches for a companion or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. He either dives into the water or emerges from it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches the goods, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves them from their base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.6
Vin.3.49

If intending to steal, he touches either a blue, red, or white lotus which is growing there,⁷ or the sprout of a lotus, or a fish or a turtle to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves them from their base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.7

¹ *Vehāsaṭṭham*. There is usually little difference between *vehāsa* and *ākāsa*, which is part of the word explained in the preceding paragraph. Both usually mean “air” or “atmosphere.” But it is clear in this context that some greater difference is intended. In this paragraph, beginning “Being above ground,” the goods are shown to come into contact with something standing on or supported by the earth, and are not, as “in the air,” freed, like a bird, from the earth’s support. *Vehāsaṭṭham*, with *bhūmigataṃ*, occurs at DN.i.115, and is translated at *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.i47 “above the ground,” which I follow, and at *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.94, “housed in treasury chambers.” DN-a.i.284 = MN-a.iii.420 says “completing terraces and turrets (*pāsādaniyyūhādāyo*) and putting (it there) is called ‘above the ground.’”

² *vehāsaṭṭham*. ³ *cīvaravaṃsa*. This and the next, *cīvararajju*, are often found together in Vinaya; cf. Vin.1.47 and Vin.1.286 where these things were prescribed for the monks. ⁴ *bhittikhīla*. Vin-a.327, something knocked against the wall, driven straight in, or something that was there originally. ⁵ *nāgadanta*. Vin-a.327 says that this is curved. ⁶ Vin-a.328: this may be a support on a tree or on a fence or on a stick. ⁷ *tatthajātaka*, literally born there.

BD.1.81 A **boat** means: that by which one crosses.¹ **Being in a boat** means: the goods are deposited in a boat. If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods which are deposited in the boat,” and he either searches for a companion or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the boat” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he loosens the moorings, there is an offence of bad conduct. If, having loosened the moorings, he touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he makes it move up or down, or across the water even for as much as a hair’s breadth, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.8

A **vehicle**² means: a litter, a two-wheeled carriage, a cart, a chariot.³ **Being in a vehicle** means: the goods are deposited in a vehicle. If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods deposited in the vehicle” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the vehicle” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches it ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.9

BD.1.82 A **burden** means: a burden carried on the head, a burden carried on the back, a burden carried on the hip, one hanging down. If intending to steal, he touches the burden on the head, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he lowers it to the back, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If intending to steal, he touches the burden on the back, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he lowers it to the hip, there is an

¹ Vin-a.332, here meaning even a washerman’s tub or a sheaf of bamboos. ² *yāna*, a way, the act of going, so a vehicle. Earlier, in the Brāhmaṇas and Upaniṣads, it had meant a way, rather than the means of going, as *devayāna*, *pitṛyāna*, the way to the devas, the way to the ancestors. DASGUPTA, *History of Indian Philosophy* i.125 sees the word as “career”. This rendering was adopted by E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.178, in referring to later (Mahāyāna) teaching. The above definition clearly rules out “career” for this passage.

³ Cf. Vin.4.339 where two more are added: *sivikā pāṭāṅkī*, palanquin and sedan-chair.

offence entailing expulsion. If intending to steal, he touches the burden on the hip, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he causes it to quiver, there is a serious offence. If he takes it with his hands, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If intending to steal a burden in the hand, he deposits it on the ground, there is an offence entailing expulsion. Intending to steal, he takes it from the ground, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.10

A park means: a park with flowers, an orchard. **¹ Being in a park** means: the goods are deposited in the park in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods in the park ” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Vin.3.50

If intending to steal, he touches a root growing there, ² or a piece of bark, ³ a leaf, a flower, ⁴ or a fruit to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he claims the park, ⁵ there is an offence of bad conduct. If he evokes doubt in the owner as to his ownership ⁶, there is a serious offence. If the owner thinks, “I won't get it back,” and he gives up the effort of reclaiming it, ^{7,8} there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he resorts to the law ⁹ and defeats the owner, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he resorts to the law ¹⁰ but is defeated, ¹¹ there is a serious offence.

BD.1.83

Bu-Pj.2.4.11

Being in a monastic dwelling ¹² means: the goods are deposited in a monastic dwelling in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If, intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods in the monastic dwelling” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct.

¹ BRAHMALI: The word *ārāma*, “park”, also includes monasteries. ² *tatthajātaka*, cf. BD.1.80, n.5; Vin-a.337f., applies this adjective only to *mūla*. ³ Bark was used for medicine or dye; to harm a tree with valuable bark was a *pārājika*, Vin-a.338. ⁴ Such as jasmine and lotus. ⁵ Vin-a.338, i.e. belonging to someone else, saying, ‘It is mine’; in this attempt to take what is not given, there is a *dukkaṭa*. ⁶ BRAHMALI: Vin-a.2.338,16. ⁷ BRAHMALI: Vin-a.2.338,21. ⁸ *dhuraṃ nikkhipati*, or “throws off his responsibility.” ⁹ *dhammaṃ caranto*. Vin-a.ii.339: *bhikkhusanghe vā rājakule vā vinichayaṃ karonto*; but the judges having descended to false witnesses pervert justice and conquer the keeper. ¹⁰ Here Vin-a.339 says, “but if proceeding with the investigation by means of Vinaya and *Dhamma* and the master's teaching, he accomplishes his own defeat ... he falls into a *thullaccaya*.” ¹¹ *parajjati*. ¹² Note that this paragraph and Bu-Pj.2.4.14 below do not begin by saying: “a *vihāra* means:”, “a village means:”, as do the others here.

If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he claims the monastic dwelling ... but is defeated, there is a serious offence.

Bu-Pj.2.4.12

A field means: where grain or vegetables grow.¹ **Being in a field** means: the goods are deposited in a field in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If, intending to steal, he thinks, “I will steal the goods deposited in the field” ... or goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.84

If, intending to steal, he touches the grain or the vegetables which grow there to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he claims the field ... but is defeated, there is a serious offence.

If he shifts a post, a cord, a fence, or a boundary, there is an offence of bad conduct. When one action of the shifting remains, there is a serious offence. When the last action of the shifting is completed, there is an offence

¹ There are seven sorts of grain (*pubbaṇṇa*) and seven kinds of pulses or cereals (*aparaṇṇa*). Cnd.314 distinguishes these two sorts of grain: *pubbaṇṇa* (natural) and *aparaṇṇa* (prepared). To the first, here called *dhañña*, belong *sāli* and *vīhi* (rice-sorts), *yava* (barley), *godhūma* (wheat), *kaṅga* (millet), *varaka* (beans), *kudrūsaka*. At *Dialogues of the Buddha* iii.70 n.1 translator says *kudrūsaka* is a “kind of rye.” At DN.iii.71 it is said that as now *sāli* and curry (*maṃsodana*) are the highest kinds of food, so when man’s life-span is reduced to ten years, *kudrūsaka* will become the highest food. At Vin.4.264 these kinds of grain are catalogued under *āmaka-dhañña*, “raw” grain, corn in its natural, unprepared state. At DN.i.5 = AN.ii.209 it is said that Gotama is one who abstains from accepting this *āmakadhañña*. Mnd.248, in defining *khetta* gives a rather different series of seven grains; *sāli*, *vīhi*, *mugga* (kidney-bean), *māsa* (a bean, *Phaseolus indica* or *radiata*), *yava*, *godhūma*, *tila* (sesame plant). Mi.106 again varies slightly: *sāli*, *vīhi*, *yava*, *taṇḍula* (rice-grain), *tila*, *mugga*, *māsa*. AN.iv.108 = AN.iv.112 includes *tila*, *mugga*, *māsa* under *aparaṇṇa*. A list of provisions for a journey at Vin.1.244 includes *taṇḍula*, *mugga*, *māsa*. Ja.v.106 says that *hareṇukā ti aparāṇṇajā ti*.

entailing expulsion.¹

A plot of land means: the plot of land of a park or a monastery, the plot of land of a monastic dwelling. **Being on a plot of land** means: the goods are deposited on a plot of land in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If, intending to steal, he thinks, "I will steal the goods on the plot of land" ... or he goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.13

If he claims the plot of land ... but is defeated, there is a serious offence.

If he shifts a post, a cord, a fence, or a boundary, there is an offence of bad conduct. When one action of the shifting remains, there is a serious offence. When the last action of the shifting is completed, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Being in a village means: the goods are deposited in a village in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If, intending to steal, he thinks, "I will steal the goods the village" ... or he goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.14

BD.1.85

The wilderness means: any wilderness which is owned by people.² **Being in the wilderness** means: the goods are deposited in the wilderness in four places: in the earth, on the firm ground, in the air, above the ground. If, intending to steal, he thinks, "I will steal the goods in the wilderness" ... or he goes himself, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.15

Vin.3.51

If, intending to steal, he touches a piece of wood belonging there, or a creeper or grass, to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ...

¹ *Ekam payogaṃ anāgate, āpatti thullaccayassa; tasmin payoge āgate, āpatti pārājikassa.* Note the use of accusative and locative. Vin-a.341 says, "desiring to make a field for himself using the enclosure of another person's field, he digs in the wood. Each time he uses a piece, there is a *dukkaṭa* offence (*payoge payoge dukkaṭaṃ*); when one piece is still to come, there is a *thullaccaya* offence (*ekasmiṃ anāgate thullaccayaṃ*); when that piece has come, there is a *pārājika* (*tasmiṃ āgate pārājikaṃ*)." Commentary goes on to say that if by these means one is able to enclose a field for himself, then there is a *dukkaṭa* with the first *payoga*, and finally (*avasāne*) there is one of two things: a *thullaccaya* according to one, a *pārājika* according to the other. ² BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.2.342,4.

there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.16

Water means: in a vessel, in a pond, or in a reservoir. If, intending to steal, he touches it ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. Putting his own vessel into (the container holding the water), if he touches water to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, intending to steal it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he puts it into his own bowl,¹ there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he breaks the embankment, there is an offence of bad conduct. Having broken the embankment, if he empties water to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he empties water to the value of more than one *māsaka* but less than five *māsakas*, there is a serious offence. If he empties water to the value of a *māsaka* or less than a *māsaka*, there is an offence of bad conduct.

Bu-Pj.2.4.17

Tooth-wood means: either cut or uncut. If, intending to steal, he touches what has a value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes it quiver, there is a serious offence. If he moves it from its base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.86

Bu-Pj.2.4.18

Forest tree², “the oldest tree, but here (*idha*) all are taken for the use of people.” means: Whatever tree is owned by people. If, intending to steal, he fells it, for each blow there is an offence of bad conduct. When one blow remains (before the tree is felled), there is a serious offence. When that last blow is completed, there is an offence entailing expulsion.³

Bu-Pj.2.4.19

Goods being carried⁴ means: the goods of another are being carried. If, intending to steal, he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he thinks, “together with the carrier I will carry off the goods,” and he makes the carrier move one foot, there is a serious offence. If he makes him move the second foot, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he thinks, “I will seize the fallen goods,” and he makes them fall, there is an offence of bad conduct. If, intending to steal, he touches the fallen goods to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.20

¹ *attano bhājanagatam karoti*, cf. above, BD.1.77. ² Vin-a.347 ³ Cf. above, Bu-Pj.2.4.12, Bu-Pj.2.4.14. ⁴ *haraṇaka*, from √hr, to bring, convey, carry, fetch.

Deposit means: goods deposited with oneself. If one is told, “give me the goods,” and one says, “I am not getting them,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he evokes doubt in the mind of the owner (as to whether he will get them back), there is a serious offence. If the owner thinks, “he won’t give them to me,” and he gives up the effort of getting them back, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Vin.3.52

If he resorts to the law and defeats the owner, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he resorts to the law but is defeated, there is a serious offence.¹

Bu-Pj.2.4.21

Customs station means: it is established by a king in a mountain-pass, at a ford in a river or at the gate of a village, so that tax shall be received from a person entering there. If, intending to steal, and having entered there, he touches goods that have a (tax)² value to the king of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he makes them quiver, there is a serious offence. If he goes beyond the customs station with one foot, there is a serious offence. If he goes beyond the customs station with his second foot, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.87

If, standing within the customs station, he makes the goods fall outside the customs station, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

If he avoids the customs station, there is an offence of bad conduct.

Bu-Pj.2.4.22

Creature means: a human being.³ If, intending to steal, he touches him ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he thinks, “I will take him away on foot,” and he makes him move the first foot, there is a serious offence. If he makes him move the second foot, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.23

Footless means: snakes and fish. If, intending to steal, he touches what has the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.24

Two-footed⁴ means: humans and birds. If, intending to steal, he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he thinks, “I will take them away on foot,” and he makes them move the first foot, there is a se-

¹ Cf. above, Bu-Pj.2.4.10. ² BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.2.358,29. ³ BRAHMALI: According to the commentary, this refers to slaves; see Vin-a.2.361,11. ⁴ Vin-a.363 says there are three kinds of creatures born with wings: those with wings of down (*loma*), such as peacocks and partridges; those with wings of skin, such as bats; those with wings of bone, such as bees.

rious offence. If he makes them move the second foot, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.25

Four-footed means: elephants, horses, camels,¹ cattle, asses, domesticated animals.² If, intending to steal, he touches them ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he thinks, “I will take them away on foot,” and he makes them move the first foot, there is a serious offence. If he makes them move the second foot, there is a serious offence. If he makes them move the third foot, there is a serious offence. If he makes them move the fourth foot, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.88

Bu-Pj.2.4.26

Many-footed means: scorpions, centipedes, caterpillars³. If, intending to steal, he touches what has the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* ... there is an offence entailing expulsion. If he thinks, “I will take them away on foot,” and he makes them move, there is a serious offence for each leg that moves. When the last leg moves, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.27

A spy means: having spied out goods⁴, if he describes them⁵ and says, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he takes those goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.⁶

Bu-Pj.2.4.28

Vin.3.53

A keeper of entrusted property means: guarding goods that have been brought to him to the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas*, and intending to steal, he touches them⁷ ... there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.2.4.29

A mutually agreed theft means: if many have agreed together⁸ but

¹ *oṭṭha*, “camel” in Classical Sanskrit. This word appears in another list of animals at Mi.32, there translated “camels.” MORRIS, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1887, p.150, for *oṭṭhiviyādhi* suggests “female elephant,” a rendering followed by FRANCIS and NEIL in translating Ja.iii.385. Here the *oṭṭhiviyādhi* is made to speak of feats done by her in battle with words which, however, ring equally true if they came from a camel. *Oṭṭha* can hardly mean “elephant” here, since the ordinary word *hatthi* is included in the list. MONIER WILLIAMS, *Sanskrit Dictionary*, Oxford, 1872, has *sa* ... a buffalo; a bull with a hump; a camel; a cart, a waggon; ... (ī), f. a she-camel; an earthen vessel in the shape of a camel.” ² BRAHMALĪ: *Pasuka*. According to the commentary, this last term includes all four-footed animals; see Vin-a.2.363,23. ³ BRAHMALĪ: *Uccāliṅgapāṇakā*. The exact meaning is uncertain. ⁴ “examining them and considering them.” Vin-a.365. ⁵ I.e., to another as goods put carelessly or unguarded in other houses or *vihāras*. ⁶ *ubhinnaṃ pārājikassa*, for he both incites others and assists in the theft himself. ⁷ “He puts them into a sack or a well.” Vin-a.366.

⁸ *samvidahitvā*, also below, Bu-Pj.2.7.34.

only one steals the goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for all of them.

An arranged action¹ means: if one makes an arrangement for before the meal or for after the meal, for the night or for the day, saying, “take those goods according to this agreement,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he takes those goods according to that agreement, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If he takes those goods before or after the time of the agreement, there is no offence for the instigator, but an offence entailing expulsion for the thief.

Bu-Pj.2.4.30

BD.1.89

The making of a sign means: he makes a sign. If he says, “when I wink, raise my eyebrow, or raise my head, at that sign steal the goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, at that sign, he steals the goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If he steals the goods before or after the sign, there is no offence for the instigator, but an offence entailing expulsion for the thief.

Bu-Pj.2.4.31

PERMUTATIONS PART 2

If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he steals them, thinking they are the ones he has been asked to steal, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” but he steals something else, thinking they are the ones he has been asked to steal, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the thief. If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” and he steals them, thinking they are something else than what he has been asked to steal, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” but he steals something else than what he has been asked to steal, thinking it is something else, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the thief.²

Bu-Pj.2.5.1

If a monk tells a monk, “tell such and such to tell such and such to steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. In informing

Bu-Pj.2.5.2

¹ *saṅketakamma*. ² BRAHMALI: The ellipses points found in I.B. Horner's translation and in the PTS original used by her have been filled in in accordance with the Mahāsaṅgīti.

the next person, there is an offence of bad conduct. If the (potential) thief agrees, there is a serious offence for the instigator. If he steals these goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for all of them.¹² If a monk tells a monk, “tell such and such to tell such and such to steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he tells someone else than the one he was told to tell, there is an offence of bad conduct. If the (potential) thief agrees, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he steals these goods, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the conveyor of the message and the thief.

BD.1.90

Bu-Pj.2.5.3

Vin.3.54

If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. Having gone, he returns, saying, “I am not able to steal those goods,” and if he tells him again, “when you are able, then steal those goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If he steals the goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

Bu-Pj.2.5.4

If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, having told him, he regrets it, but does not say³ to him, “do not steal,” and he then steals those goods, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, having told him, he regrets it and says, “do not steal,” but the other says, “I have been told by you,” and he then steals those goods, then there is no offence for the instigator, but an offence entailing expulsion for the thief.

If a monk tells a monk, “steal such and such goods,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, having told him, he regrets it and says to him, “do not steal,” and he says, “very well,”⁴ and desists, there is no offence for either.

PERMUTATIONS PART 3

Bu-Pj.2.6.1

For one who steals there is an offence entailing expulsion when five factors are fulfilled: it is the possession of another; one perceives it as such; it is a valuable possession worth at least five *māsakas*; one has the intention to

¹ BRAHMALI: That is, altogether four people. ² Vin-a.369, *sabbesaṃ catunnam pi janānaṃ pārājikaṃ*. ³ *na sāveti*, causative of *suṇāti*, to hear. ⁴ *suṭṭhu*.

steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is a serious offence / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

For one who steals there is a serious offence when five factors are fulfilled: it is the possession of another; one perceives it as such; it is an ordinary possession worth more than one *māsaka* but less than five *māsakas*; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is a serious offence.

BD.1.91

For one who steals there is an offence of bad conduct when five factors are fulfilled: it is the property of another; one perceives it as such; it is an ordinary possession worth one *māsaka* or less; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence of bad conduct.

Bu-Pj.2.6.2

For one who steals there is an offence entailing expulsion when six factors are fulfilled: one does not perceive it as one's own; one does not take it on trust;¹ one does not borrow it; it is a valuable possession worth at least five *māsakas*; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is a serious offence / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

For one who steals there is a serious offence when six factors are fulfilled: one does not perceive it as one's own; one does not take it on trust; one does not borrow it; it is an ordinary possession worth more than one *māsaka* but less than five *māsakas*; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is a serious offence.

Vin.3.55

For one who steals there is an offence of bad conduct when six factors are fulfilled: one does not perceive it as one's own; one does not take it on trust; one does not borrow it; it is an ordinary possession worth one *māsaka* or less; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence

¹ BRAHMALI: This means he has a prior agreement with the owner whereby he has permission to take his possessions or certain of his possessions.

of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence of bad conduct.

Bu-Pj.2.6.3

For one who steals there is an offence of bad conduct when five factors are fulfilled: it is not the possession of another; but one perceives it as the possession of another; it is a valuable possession worth at least five *māsakas*; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence of bad conduct.

BD.1.92

For one who steals there is an offence of bad conduct when five factors are fulfilled: it is not the possession of another; but one perceives it as the possession of another; it is an ordinary possession worth more than one *māsaka* but less than five *māsakas*; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence of bad conduct.

For one who steals there is an offence of bad conduct when five factors are fulfilled: it is not the possession of another; but one perceives it as the possession of another; it is an ordinary possession worth one *māsaka* or less; one has the intention to steal; if one touches it, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it quiver, there is an offence of bad conduct / if one makes it move from its base, there is an offence of bad conduct.

NON-OFFENCE CLAUSE

Bu-Pj.2.6.4

There is no offence if one perceives it as one's own; if one takes it on trust; if one borrows it;¹ if it is the property of a ghost² or an animal; if one per-

¹ I.e., with intention to give it back; Vin-a.372, *paṭidassāmi paṭikarissāmi*; cf. Vin.3.66 = Vin.2.174, where the lord is represented as allowing monks to take away temporarily. ² *petapariggahe = pittivisaye*, Vin-a.372, the realm or world of the departed. MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Indian Religion and Survival* (London, 1934), p.35, says *peta*, "a word which, meaning literally 'gone before,' is held to be a corruption of the older term *pitṛ-*, or fathers' world." Vin-a.372 says, "having done his time in the world of the departed where he had arisen and being reborn in that existence, all the devas of the retinue of the Four Firmament Devas go to destruction as departed ones: for these there is no guilt in that realm."

ceives it as discarded;¹ if one is insane; if one's mind is unhinged; if one is overwhelmed by pain; if one is the first offender.²

BD.1.93

The first section on stealing is finished

CASE RULINGS

MNEMONIC LIST

Five are told with dyers, and four with blankets,
 Five indeed with darkness, and five with carrying, /
 Five with speech, another two with wind,
 Fresh, the dropping of a *kusa*-grass ticket,³
 in the sauna⁴ is the tenth, /
 Five are told with animal kills, and five without grounds,
 Shortage of food, and boiled rice and meat, pasteries, cakes, sweetmeats, /
 With requisites, bag, cushion, bolster, a bamboo robe-rack, on not coming out,
 And taking food on trust, another two on perceiving as one's own, /
 Seven on not regarding as taking, and seven where they did take,
 Seven where they took from the Sangha, and another two with flowers, /
 Three on taking messages,⁵ three on taking jewels past,
 And pigs, deer, fish, and setting a vehicle in motion, /
 Two on a piece of flesh, two on wood, discarded, two on water,
 Step by step, by arrangement, it did not amount (to five *māsakas*), /
 Four handfuls at Sāvattihī, two on scraps of meat, two about grass,
 Seven on dividing the belongings of the Sangha, and seven on non-owners, /
 Wood, water, clay, two on grass,
 seven on taking by theft the belongings of the Sangha,
 One should not take away what has an owner,
 one may borrow what has an owner, /
 Campā and in Rājagaha, and Ajjuka at Vesālī,
 And Benares, and Kosambī, and Sāgalā with Dalhika.

Vin.3.56

BD.1.94

CASE DETAILS

Bu-Pj.2.7.1

At one time the group of six monks went to the dyers' spread (of dyed cloth) and carried off the dyers' goods. They became anxious and thought, "The Master has laid down a training rule. Could it be that we have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion?"¹ ... They informed the Master ... "You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.2

At one time a certain monk, having gone to the dyers' spread (of dyed cloth) and seeing a valuable garment, had the intention to steal it. On account of this he became anxious ... "There is no offence, monk, for the arising of a thought."

At one time a certain monk ... saw a valuable garment and, intending to steal it, he touched it. On account of this he became anxious ... "Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct."

At one time a certain monk ... saw a valuable garment and, intending to steal it, he made it quiver. On this account he became anxious ... "... but there is a serious offence."

At one time a certain monk ... saw a valuable garment and, intending to steal it, he moved it from its base. On account of this he became anxious ... "You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.3

BD.1.95

At one time a certain monk who was an almsgoer saw a valuable blanket² and had the intention to steal it ... intending to steal it, he touched it ...

¹ Vin-a.373. If he knows that these rags have no owner (*assāmika*) there is no offence in taking them; but if they have an owner, he should give them to him, having had them fetched. ² Buddhaghosa says (Vin-a.373) that Dhaniya was the beginner, and there was no offence for him. ³ A blade (or blades) of the *kusa* grass cast to give the proper distribution of robes. Vin-a.378. ⁴ Text here reads *jantagghena*, but at Vin.3.58, where the story is given we get *jantāghare*. ⁵ *vuttavādino*. ¹ Cf. Bu-Pj.1.10.1. ² *uttarattharaṇa*.

intending to steal it, he made it quiver ... intending to steal it, he moved it from its base. On account of this he became anxious ... “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk, seeing some goods during the day, took note of them, thinking, “I will steal them at night,” and he stole them, thinking they were the ones he had seen. ... but he stole something else, thinking they were the ones he had seen. ... and he stole them, thinking they were something else.¹ ... but he stole something else, thinking it was something else. On account of this he became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.4

At one time a certain monk, seeing some goods during the day, took note of them, thinking, “I will steal them at night,” but he stole his own goods, thinking they were something else. On account of this he became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Vin.3.57

At one time a certain monk carrying the goods of another on his head touched the burden intending to steal it ... intending to steal it, he made it quiver ... intending to steal it, he lowered it onto his shoulder ... intending to steal it, he touched the burden on the shoulder ... intending to steal it, he made it quiver ... intending to steal it, he lowered it onto his hip ... intending to steal it, he touched the burden on the hip ... intending to steal it, he made it quiver ... intending to steal it, he took hold of it with his hands ... intending to steal the burden in his hands, he deposited it on the ground ... intending to steal it, he took it from the ground. On account of this he became anxious ... “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.5

At one time a certain monk, having spread out his robe in the open air, entered his dwelling. A second monk, thinking, “let not this robe be lost,” put it aside. Having come out of his dwelling, the first monk² asked the

Bu-Pj.2.7.6

BD.1.96

¹ Which he had originally thought of stealing. ² The first monk.

monks, “Friends, who has taken my robe?” The second monk¹ said, “I have taken it.” The first monk seized him and said, “You are no longer a recluse.” The second monk became anxious. He informed the Master. The Master said, “what was your intention?”

“Master, it was just a way of speaking.”

“There is no offence, monk, since it was just a way of speaking.”²

At one time a certain monk, putting down his robe on a bench ... putting down his sitting cloth on a bench ... putting his bowl under a bench, entered his dwelling. A second monk, thinking, “let not this bowl be lost,” put it aside. Having come out, the first monk asked the monks, “Friends, who has taken my bowl?” The second monk said, “I have taken it.” The first monk seized him ... “There is no offence, monk, since it was just a way of speaking.”

At one time a certain nun, having spread out her robe on a fence, entered her dwelling. A second nun, thinking, “let not this robe be lost,” put it aside. Having come out, the first nun³ asked the nuns, “Ladies,⁴ who has taken my robe?” The second nun⁵ said, “I have taken it.” The first nun seized her and said, “You are no longer a recluse.” On account of this the second nun became anxious. She informed the nuns. The nuns informed the monks. The monks informed the Master ... “There is no offence, monks, since it was just a way of speaking.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.7
Vin.3.58

At that time a certain monk, seeing a robe blown up during a whirlwind, took hold of it, thinking, “I will give it to the owners.” The owners reprimanded the monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” On account of this he became anxious ... “What was your intention, monk?”

BD.1.97

“I did not intend to steal it, Master.”

“Monk, there is no offence for one who does not intend to steal.”

¹ The second monk. ² *āpatti* here followed by locative instead of genitive. ³ The first nun. ⁴ *ayye*. ⁵ The second nun.

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal it, took hold of a turban blown up during a whirlwind, thinking, “lest the owners see it.” The owners reprimanded the monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk went to a charnel ground and took the rags from a fresh corpse.¹ But the ghost² was still dwelling in that body.³ Then the ghost said to the monk, “Bhante, do not take my robe.” The monk took no notice and went away. Then the body got up⁴ and followed closely behind that monk. The monk entered his dwelling and closed the door, and the body fell down at that very place.⁵ He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But a monk should not take rags from a fresh corpse.⁶ If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.8

At one time, when robes belonging to the Sangha were being distributed, a certain monk, disregarding his *kusa*-grass ticket⁷ and intending to steal, took a robe. He became anxious ... “... entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.9

At one time when Venerable Ānanda was in a sauna,⁸ thinking that the inner robe of another monk was his own, he put it on. That monk said, “Why, friend Ānanda, did you put on my inner robe?”

Bu-Pj.2.7.10

“Friend, I thought it was my own.”

BD.1.98

They informed the Master. He said: “There is no offence, monks, for one who perceives it as his own.”

At one time a number of monks, descending from Mount Vulture's Peak and seeing the remains of a lion's kill, had it cooked and ate it. They became

Bu-Pj.2.7.11

¹ BRAHMALI: Defined by commentary as still warm; see Vin-a.2.374,29. ² *peta*. See above, BD.1.92, n. ³ “On account of its longing for a cloak,” Vin-a.374—i.e probably naked and needing a cloak. ⁴ Through the *peta*'s own power, Vin-a.374. ⁵ At the closed door the *peta*, being devoid of desire for the cloak, left the body, and went according to its deed, Vin-a.374. ⁶ Still warm. Vin-a.374,29. ⁷ BRAHMALI: *Kusa*-grass was apparently used as robe tickets. ⁸ *jantāghara*.

anxious ... “Monks, there is no offence when it is the remains of a lion’s kill.”¹

At one time a number of monks, descending from Mount Vulture’s Peak and seeing the remains of a tiger’s kill ... seeing the remains of a panther’s kill ... seeing the remains of a hyena’s kill ... seeing the remains of a wolf’s kill, had it cooked ... “Monks, there is no offence when it is the property of an animal.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.12
Vin.3.59

At one time, when rice belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, a certain monk said without grounds,² “give me a portion for another,” and he took it away. He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence entailing confession³ for deliberately lying.”⁴

BD.1.99

At one time, when food belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, a certain monk ... when cakes belonging to the Sangha were being distributed, a certain monk ... when sugar-cane belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, a certain monk ... when certain fruits belonging to the Sangha were being distributed, a certain monk said without grounds, “give me a portion for another,” and he took it away. He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is offence entailing confession for deliberately lying.”⁵

Bu-Pj.2.7.13

At one time a certain monk, entering a rice kitchen⁶ during a shortage of food and intending to steal, stole a bowlful of rice. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

¹ This shows that vegetarianism was not (at this time) enjoined; cf. below, [BD.1.297](#), [BD.1.298](#).

² *amūlaka*. ³ *Pācittiya*, discussed in forthcoming volume. ⁴ He must therefore have eaten it himself, the “for another” being only an excuse. ⁵ He must therefore have eaten it himself, the “for another” being only an excuse. ⁶ *odaniyaghara*.

At one time a certain monk, entering a slaughterhouse during a shortage of food and intending to steal, stole a bowlful of meat. ... "... expulsion."¹

At one time a certain monk, entering a bakery during a shortage of food and intending to steal, stole a bowlful of baked cakes ... intending to steal, stole a bowlful of cakes ... intending to steal, stole a bowlful of sweet-meats. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

At one time a certain monk, seeing a requisite during the day, took note of it, thinking, "I will steal it at night." He took it, thinking it was the one he had seen ... He took something else, thinking it was the one he had seen ... He took it, thinking it was something else than what he had seen ... He took something else, thinking it was something else than what he had seen. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.14

At one time a certain monk, seeing a requisite during the day, took note of it, thinking, "I will steal it at night." He took his own requisite, thinking it was something else. He became anxious ... "Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct."

At one time a certain monk, seeing a bag on a bench and thinking, "if I take it from here I shall be expelled," took it by moving the bench. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.15

BD.1.100

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, stole a cushion belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.16

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, stole a robe from a bamboo robe-rack.² He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.17

Vin.3.60

¹ Again the fault is not in eating meat, it is in stealing. ² Here *cīvaravaṁsa* is not in conjunction with *cīvararajju*, the cord or rope for hanging the robes on.

Bu-Pj.2.7.18

At one time a certain monk stole a robe in a dwelling, thinking, “if I come out from here I shall be expelled,” and he did not come out from that dwelling. They informed the Master. He said, “Monks, whether that foolish man comes out or not, there is an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.19

At one time two monks were friends. One of them went into the village for alms. The second monk, when food belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, took his friend’s portion. Taking it on trust, he ate it. Finding this out, the first monk¹ reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ...

“Monk, what was your intention?”

“I took it on trust, Master.”

“There is no offence, monk, for one who takes on trust.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.20

At one time a number of monks were making robes. When food belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, having taken their shares,² they put them down.³ A certain monk, thinking that it was his own, ate another monk’s portion.⁴ He, finding this out, reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “... Monk, what was your intention?”

“I thought it was my own, Master.”

“There is no offence, monk, for one who perceives it as his own.”

At one time a number of monks were making robes. When food belonging to the Sangha was being distributed, having brought a certain monk’s share with the bowl of another monk, it was put down. The monk who was the owner of the bowl ate the food, thinking it was his own. Finding this out, the owner of the food reprimanded him ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who perceives it as his own.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.21

¹ The first monk. ² *paṭivisa*. ³ *Upanikkhittā honti*. *Upanikkhitta* is the participle of the perfect passive of *upanikkhipati*. ⁴ *paṭivisa*.

At one time mango thieves cut down some mangoes, collected them in a bundle and left. The owners pursued them. The thieves, seeing the owners, dropped the bundle and ran away. Some monks, perceiving them as discarded, had them offered¹ and ate them. The owners reprimanded these monks, saying, "You are no longer recluses." They became anxious and informed the Master.

"Monks, what was your intention?"

"Master, we perceived them as discarded."

"Monks, there is no offence for one who perceives them as discarded."

At one time rose-apple thieves ... bread-fruit thieves ... jack-fruit thieves ... palm-fruit thieves ... sugar-cane thieves ... thieves of *timbarūka* fruit cut some of them down, collected them in a bundle and left. The owners ...

Vin.3.61

"There is no offence, monks, for one who perceives them as discarded."

At one time mango thieves cut down some mangoes ... left. Some monks, intending to steal them and thinking, "lest the owners see them," ate them. The owners reprimanded the monks, saying, "You are no longer recluses." They became anxious ... "You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.22

BD.1.102

At one time rose-apple thieves ... thieves of *timbarūka* fruit ... left. Some monks, intending to steal them and thinking, "lest the owners see them," ate them. The owners ... "You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, took a mango belonging to the Sangha ... a rose-apple ... a bread-fruit ... a jack-fruit ... a palm-fruit ... a sugar-cane ... intending to steal, took a *timbarūka* fruit belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.23

¹ BRAHMALI: Offered in the sense that a non-monk gave them the fruit, not in the sense that the owners actually gave it away. This was presumably to avoid falling into *pācittiya* 40 for eating food that has not been properly given.

Bu-Pj.2.7.24

At one time a certain monk went to a flower-garden and, intending to steal, took a flower worth five *māsakas* that had already been plucked. He became anxious. ... “... expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk went to a flower-garden and, intending to steal, picked a flower worth five *māsakas* and took it away. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.25

BD.1.103

At one time, as he was going to the village, a certain monk said to another monk, “Friend, I can take a message¹² to the family that supports you.” He went there and brought back a robe that he used it himself. The other monk, finding out about this, reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, you should not say, ‘I can take a message.’ If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

At one time a certain monk was going to the village. Another monk said to him, “Friend, please take a message to the family that supports me.” He went there and brought back a pair of robes. He used one himself and gave the other to the other monk. The other monk, finding out about this, reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, you should not say, ‘please take a message.’ If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

¹ BRAHMALI: *Vutto vajjemi*, literally “I, spoken to (by you), could say.” It is not clear exactly what this means and it is possible that it simply refers to the conveying of greetings. ² *Vutto vajjemi ti*. Vin-a.382 says that this means, “being spoken to by you, I speak on your behalf.” Hence the one who takes the message of greeting will be treated at the house in the same way as is the regular diner there. Thus *vutto vadeti* means: to greet somebody on the part of somebody. The offence would seem to lie in the substitution of one monk for another. Vin-a.382 implies that it is allowed for one monk to take greetings from another if he is going to ask for something definite.

At one time, as he was going to the village, a certain monk said to another monk, “Friend, I can take a message to the family that supports you.” He replied, “please do so.” He went there and brought back an *ālḥaka* measure¹ of ghee, a *tulā* measure² of sugar and a *dona* measure of husked rice, which he ate by himself. The other monk, finding out about this, reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, you should not say, ‘I can take a message;’ nor should you say, ‘please take a message.’ If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Vin.3.62

BD.1.104

At one time a certain man, carrying a valuable jewel, was going along a main road together with a certain monk. Then the man, seeing a customs station, put the jewel into the monk’s bag without his knowing it. Having gone past the customs station, he retrieved it. The monk was remorseful ... “Monk, what was your intention?”

Bu-Pj.2.7.26

¹ See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.18–p.20. Vin-a.702 gives a discussion on the *ālḥaka*, from which it appears that it was a very variable measure: “‘takes half an *ālḥaka* of grue’ means: takes the gruel made from two *nāḷis* of uncooked rice according to the Magadha *nāḷi*. In the Andha Commentary a Magadha *nāḷi* is said to be thirteen and a half *palas* (a weight). The *nāḷi* in use in the Island of Ceylon is larger than the Tamil *nāḷi*. The small Magadha *nāḷi* is the right measure. In the Great Commentary it is said that one Sinhalese *nāḷi* is equal to one and a half of this Magadha *nāḷi*.” At Snp-a.476 it is said that four *patthas* make an *ālḥaka*, reckoning by the Kosala *patthas*, and that four *ālḥaka* make a *dona*. See *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.18, and cf. above, **BD.1.12**, on *pattha*. This word *ālḥaka* is the same as that which occurs in the name of one of the games, *pattāḥhaka*, **Vin.3.180**, DN.i.6, MN.i.166. The various Commentaries always explain as *paṇṇanāḷika*, a *nāḷika* measure of leaves. *Nāḷika* = *nāḷi*. At AN.ii.55 = AN.ii.337 *ālḥaka* is used in connection with the “ocean.” It is therefore a liquid as well as a dry measure. It is translated as “gallon” at GS.ii.64, and as “pailful” at GS.iii.237. At **Vin.1.240** it occurs in the compound *ālḥakathālikā*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.122, “pint pots.” At AN.iii.369 it occurs again in this same compound; translated at GS.iii.262, “as big as pipkins,” with commentarial exegesis, n.6, *taṇḍulāḥhakkassa bhattapacana-thālikā*, which seems to mean “a small bowl for cooking food to the extent of an *ālḥaka* of unboiled rice.” Same compound *ālḥakathālikā* occurs at Dhpa.iii.370, with variant reading *bhattathālikā*, as though the bowl of an *ālḥaka*’s capacity were being identified with a bowl of food. ² *Tulā* is some kind of measure. At SN.ii.236 = AN.i.88 Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā are called the *tulā pamāṇa* (measure) of the disciples who are nuns. *Tulā* at AN-a.ii.157 simply seems to mean standard or weight. The *Abhidhānappadīpikā* § 481 (a late work), says that a *tulā* is a hundred *palas*.

“I did not know, Master.”

“There is no offence, monk, for who does not know.”

At one time a certain man, taking a valuable jewel ... seeing a customs station, he pretended to be ill and gave his own bag to the monk. When the man had passed the customs station, he said to the monk, “Give me my bag, bhante, I am not ill.”

“Why then, friend, did you say so?”

Then the man informed the monk. He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for who does not know.”

BD.1.105

At one time a certain monk was going along a main road together with a caravan. A certain man won that monk over with a gift.¹ Seeing a customs station, he gave the monk a valuable jewel, saying, “Bhante, please take this jewel past the customs.” So the monk took the jewel past the customs station. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.27

At one time a certain monk out of compassion released a pig trapped in a snare. He became anxious ...

“What was your intention, monk?”

“I was motivated by compassion, Master.”²

“There is no offence for one who is motivated by compassion.”

At one time a certain monk released a pig trapped in a snare, intending to steal it, thinking, “lest the owners see it.” He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk out of compassion released a deer trapped in a snare ... released a deer trapped in a snare, intending to steal it, thinking, “lest the owners see it.” ... out of compassion released fish trapped in

Vin.3.63

¹ *āmisena upalāpetvā*, literally cajoling with a reward. ² Literally, “I am one who has a sense of compassion.”

a fish-net ... released fish trapped in a fish-net, intending to steal them, thinking, "lest the owners see them." He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

At one time a certain monk, seeing some goods in a vehicle, thought, "If I take these from here I will be expelled." So he took them by setting the vehicle in motion. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.28

At one time a certain monk, thinking, "I will give it to the owners," seized a piece of flesh taken up by a hawk. The owners reprimanded that monk, saying, "You are no longer a recluse." He became anxious ... "There is no offence, monk, for one who does not intend to steal."

Bu-Pj.2.7.29

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal and thinking, "lest the owners see it," seized a piece of flesh taken up by a hawk. The owners reprimanded the monk, saying, "You are no longer a recluse." He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

BD.1.106

At one time some men who had put a raft together placed it on the river Aciravatī.¹ When the bindings were destroyed, they went away, the sticks being spread all over. Some monks, perceiving them as discarded, got them out of the water. The owners reprimanded those monks, saying, "You are no longer recluses." They became anxious ... "Monks, there is no offence for one who perceives them as discarded."

Bu-Pj.2.7.30

At one time some men who had put a raft together placed it on the river Aciravatī. When the bindings were destroyed, they went away, the sticks being spread all over. Some monks, intending to steal and thinking, "lest the owners see it," got them out of the water. The owners reprimanded the monks, saying, "You are no longer recluses." They became anxious ... "You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

¹ B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.36: "Aciravatī is the river Rapti in Oudh, on which the town of Sāvattihī was situated."

Bu-Pj.2.7.31

At one time a certain cowherd, hanging his robe on a tree, went to relieve himself. A certain monk, thinking it was discarded, took it. Then the cowherd reprimanded that monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who thinks it is discarded.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.32

At one time, as a certain monk was crossing a river, a robe that had escaped from the hands of dyers, stuck to his foot. The monk took hold of it, thinking, “I will give it to the owners.” The owners reprimanded that monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who does not intend to steal.”

BD.1.107

At one time, as a certain monk was crossing a river, a robe that had escaped from the hands of dyers stuck to his foot . The monk took hold of it, intending to steal and thinking, “lest the owners see it.” The owners reprimanded the monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Vin.3.64

Bu-Pj.2.7.33

At one time a certain monk, seeing a pot of ghee, ate it little by little. He became anxious ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.34

At one time a number of monks, having made an arrangement,¹ went away, thinking, “we will steal these goods.” One of them stole the goods. The others said, “We are not expelled; the one who took it is expelled.” They informed the Master. He said, “You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time a number of monks, having made an arrangement and having stolen some goods, shared them out. When it was being shared out, none of them received a share that amounted to five *māsakas*. They said,

¹ *saṃvidahitvā*, also above, Bu-Pj.2.4.29, where the rule is laid down.

“We are not expelled.” They informed the Master. He said, “You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time, when Sāvattthī was short of food, a certain monk, intending to steal, took a handful of rice belonging to a shopkeeper. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.35

At one time, when Sāvattthī was short of food, a certain monk, intending to steal, took a handful of kidney-beans ... a handful of beans ... a handful of sesamum belonging to a shopkeeper. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

At one time thieves in the Dark Wood near Sāvattthī, having killed a cow, eaten some flesh and put the remainder aside, went away. Some monks, perceiving it as discarded, had it offered and ate it. The thieves reprimanded those monks, saying, “You are no longer recluses.” They became anxious ... “There is no offence, monks, for one who perceives it as discarded.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.36
BD.1.108

At one time thieves in the Dark Wood near Sāvattthī, having killed a pig ... “... for one who perceives it as discarded.”

At one time a certain monk went to a meadow and, intending to steal, took some cut grass worth five *māsakas*. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.37

At one time a certain monk went to a meadow and, intending to steal, cut grass worth five *māsakas* and took it away. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

At one time some visiting monks divided up the mangoes belonging to the Sangha and ate them. The resident¹ monks reprimanded those monks,

Bu-Pj.2.7.38
Vin.3.65

¹ *Āvāsika*.

saying, “You are no longer recluses.” They became anxious. They informed the Master.

“What was your intention, monks?”

“We thought they was meant for eating, Master.”

“There is no offence, monks, for one who thinks it is meant for eating.”

At one time some visiting monks divided up the rose-apples belonging to the Sangha ... the bread-fruit belonging to the Sangha ... the jack-fruit ... the palm fruits ... the sugar-cane ... the *timbarūsaka* fruits belonging to the Sangha and ate them. The resident monks ... “There is no offence, monks, for one who thinks it is meant for eating.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.39

BD.1.109

At one time the keepers of a mango-grove gave a mango to some monks. The monks, thinking, “They¹ have the authority to guard, but not to give,” had scruples and did not accept it. They informed the Master. He said, “There is no offence, monks, when it is a gift from a guardian.”

At one time keepers of a rose-apple grove ... a *timbarūsaka* grove gave *timbarūsaka* fruit to some monks. The monks, thinking, “they have the authority to guard ...” ... “There is no offence, monks, when it is a gift from a guardian.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.40

At one time a certain monk, having borrowed a piece of wood belonging to the Sangha, used it to shore up the wall of his own dwelling. The monks reprimanded that monk, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” He became anxious and informed the Master. He said, “monk, what was your intention?”

“I was borrowing it, Master.”

“There is no offence, monk, when one is borrowing.”²

Bu-Pj.2.7.41

¹ *Issara*. ² Cf. below, **BD.1.110**.

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, took water belonging to the Sangha ... clay belonging to the Sangha ... intending to steal, took a pile of *tiṇa*-grass belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, set fire to a pile of *tiṇa*-grass belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct."¹

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, took a bed belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.2.7.42

At one time a certain monk, intending to steal, took a bench belonging to the Sangha ... took a cushion ... a pillow ... a door ... a window² ... intending to steal, took a rafter³ belonging to the Sangha. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

BD.1.110

At one time the furnishings and requisites for a dwelling⁴ belonging to a certain lay follower⁵ were used elsewhere by some monks. That lay-follower became vexed, annoyed and angry, and said, "how can those venerables use elsewhere requisites belonging somewhere else?" They informed the Master. "Monks, one should not use elsewhere requisites belonging somewhere else. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct."

Bu-Pj.2.7.43

Vin.3.66

At one time some monks, having scruples about taking requisites⁶ to the *uposatha* hall or to a meeting place, sat down on the ground. Their limbs

Bu-Pj.2.7.44

¹ BRAHMALI: Because it was not moved from its base, says the Commentary; see Vin-a.2.389,25. ² *ālokasandhi*, cf. Vin.1.48; Vin.2.209=Vin.2.218. ³ *gopanāsi*, cf. AN.i.261; MN.i.80. ⁴ *Vihāraparibhoga*. See Vin.2.174. ⁵ Thus he could not give them to senior monks coming in, Vin-a.391. ⁶ Vin-a.390, a couch or chair.

and robes were covered with dust. They informed the Master.¹ “Monks, I allow you to borrow.”²

Bu-Pj.2.7.45

At one time at Campā³ a nun who was a pupil of the nun Thullanandā went to the family who supported the nun Thullanandā and said, “The lady⁴ wants to drink⁵ rice-gruel containing the three pungent ingredients.”⁶ When it was ready, she took it away and enjoyed it herself. When the nun Thullanandā found out about this, she reprimanded her, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.” She became anxious. She then informed the nuns, who in turn informed the monks, who then informed the Master. “Monks, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but in a deliberate lie there is an offence entailing confession.”

At one time in Rājagaha a nun who was a pupil of the nun Thullanandā went to the family who supported the nun Thullanandā and said, “The lady⁷ wants to eat a honey-ball.”⁸ When it was ready, she took it away and enjoyed it herself. When the nun Thullanandā found out about this, she ... “Monks,

¹ Part of the story seems to be omitted. ² = Vin.2.174. See also above, BD.1.109. *Tāvalālika*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.217 as “for a certain time only”; and at *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.195 = *Buddhist Suttas*, second edition, p.241 (translation of Ja.i.393), as “only for a time ... as temporary” (word occurring twice). At *Vinaya Texts* ii.154, n.7, editor says *tāvakālika* means “only for a time, temporary, on loan,” and translates it by “on loan” at *Vinaya Texts* ii.347 (= Vin.2.174). At Ja.i.121 the word is used of a cart taken on hire. Cf. Vin.4.286, when it is not considered an offence to give recluses robes temporarily. ³ The ancient capital of Aṅga. ⁴ *Ayyā*. ⁵ *Pātuṃ*, infinitive of *pivati*, balanced by *khādituṃ* in the next story. ⁶ *Tekaṭulayāgu*. Vin-a.391 says “made with either *tila* (sesamum), *taṇḍula* (rice-grain), *mugga* (kidney-beans), or *tila*, *taṇḍula*, and *māsa* (a bean), or *tila*, *taṇḍula* and *kulaththa* (a kind of vetch), or any one prepared grain with *tila* and *taṇḍula*, making three (ingredients).” Cf. above, BD.1.83, n.4. The word *tekaṭulayāgu* also occurs at Vin.1.210, where Gotama is said to make this gruel of *tila*, *taṇḍula* and *mugga*. Editor at *Vinaya Texts* ii.68, n.2, says *kaṭu* means pungent, and that these three substances are explained to be ginger and two kinds of pepper. Apparently the gruel could be made of three kinds of grain and flavoured with three spices. But Vin-a.391 says: “It is said that they make this (gruel) mixing these three (prepared grains) in milk and four parts of water and adding ghee, honey and molasses.” ⁷ *Ayyā*. ⁸ *Madhugoḷaka*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives only one reference to *goḷaka* at Thig-a.255; and under *kilā-goḷaka* to Vism.256 (cf. Khp-a.53). Vin-a.391 defines *madhugoḷaka* as *atirasapūva*, which seems to mean a “very tasty cake.”

there is no offence entailing expulsion, but in a deliberate lie there is an offence entailing confession.”

At one time in Vesāli the householder who was the supporter of Venerable Ajjuka had two children living with him, a son and a nephew. That householder said to Venerable Ajjuka, “Bhante, please point out this location¹ to the one of these two boys who has faith and confidence.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.46

At that time the householder's nephew had faith and confidence, and so Venerable Ajjuka pointed out that location to him. He then established a household with that wealth and made a gift. Then the householder's son said to Venerable Ānanda:

BD.1.112

“Bhante Ānanda, who is the father's heir, the son or the nephew?”

“The son, friend, is the father's heir.”

“Bhante, this master Ajjuka has pointed out our wealth to our cohabitant.”

“Friend, Venerable Ajjuka is no longer a recluse.” Then Venerable Ajjuka said to Venerable Ānanda:

“Friend Ānanda, please investigate.” At that time Venerable Upāli² was siding with Venerable Ajjuka. Then Venerable Upāli said to Venerable Ānanda:

Vin.3.67

“Friend Ānanda, when one is asked by the owner to point out a location to so-and-so, and one does so, what offence has one committed?”

“Bhante, one has not committed any offence, not even one of bad conduct.”

“Friend, Venerable Ajjuka was asked by the owner to point out a location to so-and-so, and he did so. Friend, there is no offence for Venerable Ajjuka.”

Now at that time in Benares the family that supported Venerable Pilin-

Bu-Pj.2.7.47

¹ *Okāsa*. ² See above, [BD.1.60, n.4](#).

davaccha¹ was oppressed by thieves, and two children were kidnapped. Venerable Pilindavaccha having bought these children back by his psychic power placed them in a large house. People saw those children and said:

BD.1.113

“This is the majesty of the psychic power of master Pilindavaccha,” and they placed confidence in Venerable Pilindavaccha. The monks became vexed, annoyed and angry, and said, “How can this Venerable Pilindavaccha bring back children who have been kidnapped by thieves?” They informed the Master. He said: “Monks, there is no offence in the area of psychic powers for one who possesses them.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.48

At one time the two monks Paṇḍaka and Kapila² were friends. One lived in a village and one at Kosambī. Then, while the first monk was going from the village to Kosambī, as he was crossing a river, a lump of fat that had escaped from the hands of pork-butchers stuck to his foot. He took hold of it, thinking, “I will give it to the owners.” The owners reprimanded him, saying, “You are no longer a recluse.”

Then a woman cowherd who had seen him crossing said, “come, bhante, have sexual intercourse.” Thinking, “I am no longer a recluse,” he had sexual intercourse with her.

When he arrived in Kosambī, he informed the monks and they informed the Master. He said, “Monks, there is no offence entailing expulsion for stealing,³ but there is an offence entailing expulsion for having sexual intercourse.”

Bu-Pj.2.7.49

Now at that time at Sāgalā,⁴ a monk who was the disciple of Venerable

¹ *Vin.1.206ff.* = *Vin.3.248ff.* recounts the feats he did by his mystic potency in Rājagaha when Bimbisāra was King of Magadha. At *AN.i.24* he is called “chief among the disciples who are dear and delightful to the devas.” At *Ud.28* objections are raised to his “foul talk.” I think he is probably the same as the Pilinda-Vaccha of Theragāthā; see *Psalm of the Bretheren ix* and *Psalm of the Bretheren p.14, n.4*; *Psalm of the Bretheren p.15, n.2*. We learn from Commentary on Theragāthā that Pilinda was his name, Vaccha the name of his clan (*cf. Vana-Vaccha, Psalm of the Bretheren xiii*), and that he was waited on by a deva and acquired the *Gandhāra* charm. For this, see *DN.i.213*; *Ja.iv.498*. ² Mentioned, I think, nowhere but here. Naturally not the Kapila to whom *MN-a.i.91* refers as the depraved monk (*cf. Vin.3.107*), reborn with his *sañghāṭi*-robe flaming. ³ For he did not intend to steal it. ⁴ See *Mi.p.1*, for description of a city of this name. A Sāgalā, capital of the kingdom of the Maddas, is mentioned at *Ja.iv.230*; *Ja.v.283*, *Ja.v.285*, *Ja.v.289f.*; *Ja.vi.471*.

Daḷhika, being tormented by discontent,¹ took a turban² from a shopkeeper. He then said to Venerable Daḷhika, “Bhante, I am no longer a recluse, I will leave the Sangha.”³

BD.1.114

“But what have you done, friend?” He told him. Having had the turban brought, Venerable Daḷhika valued it, and it was not worth five *māsakas*. “Friend, there is no offence entailing expulsion,” and he gave a talk on the *Dhamma*. That monk was delighted.⁴

The second offence entailing expulsion is finished

¹ *Anabhiratiyā pīḷito*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.77, n.3, says, “this *anabhirati* is constantly referred to, and always as the result of falling in love, or in connection with sexual desire.” I think it is then not so much the “distaste (for meditation),” as stated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.77, as the actual disease of unsatisfied sexual needs. We have, however, now had the words *abhirata* and *anabhirata* several times, and not always in such a connection. Thus at [BD.1.24](#), [BD.1.25](#), the verb clearly means no more than to enjoy the ordinary and varied delights of the household life, such as music and nautch girls dancing; as at [BD.1.32](#) it simply means to be delighted with the Brahma-life. But at [BD.1.34](#) it might be thought that, by implication, *anabhirata* means dissatisfied, longing for sexual intercourse. At [BD.1.43](#) it might only mean a vague fretting, or it might have a more definite and specialised sense. ² *Veṭhana*, possibly a wrap or a cloak, as at [Ja.vi.12](#), taken as a disguise. A wrap to put over the “yellow robes” would have been a better disguise than a turban, but could a wrap possibly have been worth less than five *māsakas*? A turban, on the other hand, would have hidden the shaven head, but that is all. Perhaps it was meant symbolically. ³ *Vibbhamissāmi*. On those occasions when *anabhirati* is in connection with sexual desire, it would look as if *vibbhamissāmi* should then be translated, “I will co-habit,” and not as “I will leave the Order.” But except for the occurrence *anabhirati* in the above story, I see doubtful justification for such a rendering of *vibbhamissāmi* here. For the point of the story is that the monk has taken something worth less than five *māsakas*, which does not rank as a theft. However, we must remember that in the preceding story the offence is shown to be that of sexual intercourse, and not that of taking what was not given. Something of the same sort may have been here originally, but left out by a redactor. ⁴ *abhirami*, aorist of *abhiramati*. I cannot help thinking that this word in this rather curious ending of the second *Pārājika* is meant to balance the *an-abhirati* with which this story began. *Abhiramati* and *abhirati* both derive from *abhi + ram*. It is most rare to find it said that a monk, when told that there is for him no offence, “was delighted,” and I more than ever believe that there are omissions in the text as we have it. I do not believe that the monk “was delighted” that he had committed no offence. I believe that in his appropriated *veṭhana*, he enjoyed himself (a meaning of *abhiramati*), or even fell in love (another meaning, cf. [Sn.p.718](#), [Sn.p.1085](#)), which would balance the *anabhirati* of the opening sentence. I think, in fact, that this story was meant to end up in exactly the same way as the preceding one. But as the material for this is wanting, I have left the phrase as “was delighted.”

MONKS' EXPULSION (PĀRĀJIKĀ) 3

ORIGIN STORY

FIRST SUB-STORY

Bu-Pj.3.1.1
BD.1.116
Vin.3.68

At one time the Buddha, the Master, was staying at Vesāli in the hall with the peaked roof in the Great Wood. At that time the Master talked in many ways to the monks on the subject of unattractiveness,¹ he spoke in praise of unattractiveness, he spoke in praise of developing (the perception of) unattractiveness,² he spoke thus and thus³ he spoke in many ways in praise of the attainment of unattractiveness.⁴ Then the Master addressed the monks:

“Monks, I wish to go into solitary retreat for half a month. No one is to approach me except the one who brings me almsfood.”⁵

“Yes, Master,” the monks replied, and accordingly no one approached the Master except the one to take him almsfood.

Then the monks thought, “The Master has talked in many ways on the subject of unattractiveness,” and they dwelt intent upon the practice of developing (the perception of) unattractiveness in its many different aspects. As a consequence they became troubled by their own bodies,⁶ ashamed of

¹ Vin-a.393f. Cf. *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.63, n.2. ² *asubhabhāvanā*, Vin-a.394 says, *avatassa cittassa bhāvanā vadḍhanā phātikammaṃ*, and goes on to say that the monk intent upon the impure attains the first musing, and then making insight to grow, he reaches the highest goal (*uttamattha*), arahantship. ³ *ādissa ādissa*, explained at Vin-a.394: *evam pi ittham pīti punappuna vavatthānaṃ katvā*. ⁴ BRAHMALI: According to the commentary, Vin-a.ii.396,18, this refers to the state where the mind no longer inclines towards sexuality. ⁵ As at SN.v.320, where the subject of *asubha*, the impure or “the unlovely,” also occurs, but with some omissions and variations. ⁶ *sakena kāyena*, translated at KS.v.284 “as to this body.”

them, loathing them. Just as a young woman or man, fond of adornments¹ and with head washed,² would be ashamed, humiliated and disgusted if the carcass of a snake, a dog or a man were hung around their neck, just so those monks were troubled by their own bodies, ashamed of them and loathed them. They took their own lives,³ took the lives of one another, and they approached Migalaṇḍika,⁴ a sham recluse,⁵ the recluse lookalike, and said, "Friend, please kill us. This bowl and robe will be yours." Then Migalaṇḍika, hired⁶ for a bowl and robe, killed a number of monks.

BD.1.117

BD.1.118

He then took his blood-stained knife to the river Vaggumudā,⁷ and while he was washing it he became anxious and remorseful: "Indeed, it's a loss for me, it's no gain; indeed, it's badly gained by me, not well-gained. I have made much demerit because I have killed monks who were virtuous and of good conduct."

Vin.3.69

¹ = DN.i.80 = Vin.2.255 = MN.ii.19; this simile omitted at SN.v.320. ² Vin-a.399, "washed, together with the head." ³ *attanāpi attānaṃ jīvitā voropenti*. Vin-a.399 says, "like that man, having no desire for the carcass, the monks being desirous of quitting (*pariccajati*) their own bodies, taking the knife *attanā pi... voropenti*." This is probably a way of saying that they committed suicide, cf. SN.v.320, *satthahāraṃ pariyesanti ... satthaṃ āharanti*. Or the phrase might possibly mean that "the self deprives the Self of life" — i.e., there may be some notion lingering on from the Upaniṣad philosophy that this kind of slaying affects the Ātman, the All-Real, the Self. Some other *attā* couples of sayings occur in the Aṅguttara Nikāya — e.g., at AN.i.57, AN.i.149; AN.iv.405; AN.v.182, and at SN.ii.68, and seem to have this implication. ⁴ Vin-a.399 calls him Migaladdhika, with variant reading as in the text. He is not mentioned at SN.v.320, nor as far as I know at any other passage. ⁵ Vin-a.399, *samaṇakuttaka = samaṇavesadhāraka*, one who wears a recluse's dress. "Having shaved his head and put on one yellow robe and another over his shoulder, depending on the *vihāra*, he lived on a substance of broken-meats." ⁶ *bhaṭa*, Commentary is silent. If *bhaṭa* means soldier, cf. Sacred Books of the East translation of Mi.234, Mi.240, the sense would be that he hit about him with a knife, and perhaps stifled the monks with his robe. But *bhaṭa* can also mean "hireling, servant." There seems to be no verb in Pali of which it is the past participle. It is connected with the Epic and Classical Sanskrit *bhaṭa*, which is connected with *bhṛta*. MONIER WILLIAMS, *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*, gives for this: "hired, kept in pay, paid; possessed of, endowed with, having earned, acquired, gained ..." ⁷ Vin-a.399 says, "a river considered by people to be lovely (*vaggu-matā, mata from maññati*), renowned for merit. He went there saying, 'There I will wash away this evil.'"

Then a certain god¹ of Māra's retinue, walking across the water,² said to Migalaṇḍika, "Well done, superior man;³ it is a gain for you, it is well-gained. You have made much merit, because you bring those across who have not yet crossed."⁴

BD.1.119

Then Migalaṇḍika thought, "So it seems it is a gain for me, that it is well-gained by me, and that I have made much merit by bringing those across who have not yet crossed." He then went from dwelling to dwelling, from dormitory to dormitory,⁵ and said, "Who has not yet crossed? Whom do I bring across?" And those monks⁶ who were not free from desire became

¹ Vin-a.400 says, "not a well-known earth-*devatā*, a holder of false views, on the side of Māra, taking Māra's part." ² *abhijjamāne udake gantvā*. Vin-a.400 says, "coming as though walking on the earth's surface." This power of walking on the water is one of the forms of *iddhi*, see DN.i.78. *Bhijjamāna* is present participle of *bhijjati*, passive of *bhindati + a*, not being broken, or divided, therefore firm, unruffled, undivided, unbroken, undisturbed. But the reading at DN.i.78 = AN.i.170 is *udake pi abhijjamāno gacchati*, he goes on the water without breaking it (*Dialogues of the Buddha* i.88 and cf. AN.i.255), but this loses the passive aspect of the verb. At DN.i.212 we get *udake abhijjamānaṃ gacchantāṃ*. However at MN.i.34 = MN.i.494 the reading is (as at Vin.3 above) *udake pi abhijjamāne*, translated *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.24, "on the water's unbroken surface." Thus, there is a good deal of variation in the reading of *abhijj*°. See Ps.2.208 which reads °*māne*, and says that as ordinary people walk on the earth, so the psychic person (*iddhimā*) walks on the unbroken water, having first reflected on it. Vism.396, in explaining how by will-power such a person transforms the water to earth, quotes this Paṭisambhidāmagga passage. ³ *sappurisa*. On prefix *sa-* see GS.i.ix. ⁴ *atiṇṇe tāresi*, Vin-a.401, "You free them from *saṃsāra* ... those who are not dead are not freed from *saṃsāra*, those who are dead are freed." *Tarati*, to cross, was frequently used in connection with *ogha*, the flood, *mahogha*, the great flood. The flood was later broken up into four floods, which became identified with the four *āsavas*. But the commentarial exegesis, as above, which is not rare, shows the view that to be across was to be across nothing more nor less than *saṃsāra*, the round of death and rebirth. This is what, in the monkish outlook of the commentator, it was highly desirable to stop. Cf. Snp.571, *tiṇṇo tāres' imaṃ pajam*. ⁵ = Vin.1.216 = Vin.1.247. On *pariveṇa*, cell, see *Vinaya Texts* iii.109, n.3, where editor says that it is here doubtless a cell used as a cooling room, after the steam bath. But at *Vinaya Texts* iii.203 editor takes *pariveṇa* to mean "a number of buildings," in n.1 saying that "here it evidently included several *vihāras*." ⁶ *Tasmiṃ samaye*.

fearful and terrified,¹ with their hair standing on end, but not so those who were free from desire. Then Migalaṇḍika killed a monk, on a single day he killed two monks, on a single day ... three ... four ... five ... ten ... twenty ... thirty ... forty ... fifty ... on a single day he killed sixty monks.

Bu-Pj.3.1.2

At the end of that half-month, the Master arose from seclusion and addressed Venerable Ānanda: “Ānanda, why is the Sangha of monks so diminished?”

BD.1.120

“It is because the Master talked to the monks in many ways on the subject of unattractiveness—he spoke in praise of unattractiveness, in praise of developing (the perception of) unattractiveness, and in many ways in praise of the attainment of unattractiveness. And, Master, those monks thought, ‘The Master has talked in many ways on the subject of unattractiveness,’ and so they dwelt intent upon the practice of developing (the perception of) unattractiveness in its many different aspects. As a consequence they became troubled by their own bodies, ashamed of them, loathing them. Just as a young woman or man, fond of adornments and with head washed, would be ashamed, humiliated and disgusted if the carcass of a snake, a dog or a man were hung around their neck, just so these monks were troubled by their own bodies, ashamed of them, loathing them. They then took their own lives, took the lives of each other, and they approached Migalaṇḍika, the recluse lookalike, and said, ‘Friend, please kill us. This bowl and robe will be yours.’ Then, Master, hired for a bowl and robe, Migalaṇḍika killed a monk ... on a single day he killed sixty monks. Master, please give another instruction² for the Sangha of monks to be established in final knowledge.”³

Vin.3.70

¹ *Chambhitatta*. Cf. DN.i.49. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that here DN-a.i.50 wrongly explains it by *sakala-sarīra-calanam*. Vin-a.401 reads, “beginning with the flesh of the heart, the body trembled (*sarīracalanam*)”; it speaks of those being devoid of passion as being *khīṇāsava*. It also gives *thambhitatta* as a synonym of *chambhitatta*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that this meaning of *thambhitatta* as fluctuation, unsteadiness, is late, and is caused by misinterpretation of *chambhitatta*. ² *Pariyāya*. Vin-a.402 explains it by *kammaṭṭhāna*, basis for meditation. ³ *Aññā*. See *Psalms of the Brethren*, Introduction, p.xxxiii, and MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.225, where she says “*aññā*—i.e., the having-come-to-know ... had taken the place of the older Sakyan term for the *summum bonum*: *attha* the thing needed, the thing sought;” and MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.264, “coming-to-know or learning ... as what might be rendered as gnosis or saving knowledge.”

“Well then, Ānanda, call together in the assembly-hall all the monks that dwell near Vesālī.”

BD.1.121

“Yes, Master,” he said. And when he had done so, he approached the Master and said, “Master, the Sangha of monks is assembled. Master, please do what you think¹ is appropriate.”

Then the Master went to the assembly-hall, sat down on the prepared seat, and said:

Bu-Pj.3.1.3

“Monks,² the *samādhi* by mindfulness of breathing, when developed and cultivated,³ is peaceful and sublime,⁴ an exalted state of happiness, and it stops and settles bad, unwholesome qualities on the spot,⁵ whenever they arise. Just as a big storm, when it arises out of season⁶ in the last month of the hot weather,⁷ stops and settles the dust and dirt in the atmosphere—even so the *samādhi* by mindfulness of breathing, when developed and cultivated, is peaceful and sublime, an exalted state of happiness, and it stops and settles bad, unwholesome qualities on the spot, whenever they arise. And how is the *samādhi* by mindfulness of breathing developed and cultivated in this way?

BD.1.122

As to that, monks, a monk sits down in the wilderness, at the foot of a tree, or in an empty hut; he crosses his legs, straightens his body, and establishes mindfulness in front of him.⁸ Simply mindful, he breathes in;⁹ simply mindful, he breathes out. When he breathes in long, he knows it; and when he breathes out long, he knows that. When he breathes in short, he knows it; and when he breathes out short, he knows that. While breathing in, he trains¹⁰ in having the full experience (of the breath); while breathing out, he trains in having the full experience (of the breath). While breathing in, he trains in calming the activity of the body¹¹; while breathing out, he

Vin.3.71

¹ *Maññasi*. At. SN.v.321, *maññati*. ² From here to end of Bu-Pj.3.1.3 below = SN.v.321f. exactly.

³ Cf. MN.i.421. ⁴ *Asecanaka*. Vin-a.403f. says, *nāssa secananti* (adulterating, mixing, sprinkling), *anāsittako* (unsprinkled) *abbokiṇṇo pāṭekko āveṇiko*. Cf. Thig. verse 55. ⁵ *Ṭhānaso*. Vin-a.404 *khaṇen’eva*. ⁶ Vin-a.404 says: having arisen, the whole sky is covered, and for the whole half-month of the bright moon in this *āsāḷha* month there are clouds shedding rain. ⁷ Called *āsāḷhamāsa* at Vin-a.404. ⁸ *parimukhaṃ*. Or, “round the face.” ⁹ Cf. DN.ii.291 = MN.i.56 for this passage, also MN.iii.82, MN.iii.89, and Ps.i.177, quoted Vism.272.

¹⁰ *Sikkhati*, Vin-a.411, *ghaṭati vāyamati*, and goes on to say he trains himself in the three trainings: the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher wisdom. ¹¹ BRAHMALI: That is, the breath.

trains in calming the activity of the body. While breathing in, he trains in experiencing rapture; while breathing out, he trains in experiencing rapture. While breathing in, he trains in experiencing happiness; while breathing out, he trains in experiencing happiness. While breathing in, he trains in experiencing the activity of the mind; while breathing out, he trains in experiencing the activity of the mind. While breathing in, he trains in calming the activity of the mind; while breathing out, he trains in calming the activity of the mind. While breathing in, he trains in experiencing the mind; while breathing out, he trains in experiencing the mind. While breathing in, he trains in gladdening the mind; while breathing out, he trains in gladdening the mind. While breathing in, he trains in unifying the mind; while breathing out, he trains in unifying the mind. While breathing in, he trains in freeing the mind; while breathing out, he trains in freeing the mind. While breathing in, he trains in contemplating impermanence; while breathing out, he trains in contemplating impermanence. While breathing in, he trains in contemplating fading away; while breathing out, he trains in contemplating fading away. While breathing in, he trains in contemplating cessation; while breathing out, he trains in contemplating cessation. While breathing in, he trains in contemplating relinquishment; while breathing out, he trains in contemplating relinquishment.

Monks, when the *samādhi* by mindfulness of breathing is developed and cultivated in this way, it is peaceful and sublime, an exalted state of happiness, and it stops and settles bad, unwholesome qualities on the spot, whenever they arise.”

And in this connection the Master convened the Sangha of monks and questioned the monks:

“Monks, is it true that some monks have taken their own lives, have killed one another, and have said to Migalaṇḍika, ‘Friend, please kill us. This bowl and robe will be yours?’”

“It is true, Master.”

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked them: “Monks, it is not suitable for these monks, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How could those monks take their own lives ... and say ... ‘... This bowl and robe will be yours’? It will not

give rise to confidence in those without it ... And, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

PRELIMINARY RULING

If a monk intentionally kills a human being or searches for someone to kill him, he too is expelled and not in communion.”

Thus the Master laid down this training rule for the monks

SECOND SUB-STORY

Bu-Pj.3.2

At one time a certain lay-follower was ill. His wife was beautiful and pleasant, and the group of six monks had fallen in love with her. Then those monks said to each other: “Friends, if this lay-follower lives, we won’t get this woman. Come, let us praise the beauty of death to him.” So they went to that lay follower and said:

Vin.3.72

“Friend, you have done what is good¹ and wholesome; you have made a shelter from fear.² You have not done anything bad; you have not been greedy and immoral. What need have you of this wretched, difficult life? Death is better for you than life. When you have passed away, at the breaking up of the body after death, you will be reborn in a happy destination, in a heaven world.³ There⁴ you will amuse yourself and enjoy the five types of heavenly sensual pleasures.”⁵

BD.1.124

Then that lay-follower thought, “The Masters have spoken the truth, for I have done what is good and avoided what is bad, and after death I will be reborn in a happy destination.”

¹ Cf. AN.ii.174, AN.ii.175; It.p.25. ² *katabhīruttāṇa*, Vin-a.436 says that he has gained protection against the dread beings have at the time of dying, possibly by means of a charm (*parittā*) as is suggested by the Commentary on AN.ii.174. ³ J. PRZYLUŚKI, *Le Concile de Rājagrha*, p.368, where he says that in the oldest (Buddhist) period *svarga* (Pali, *sagga*) and *brahmaloka* are synonymous terms. This seems here borne out by next sentence in text. It has been suggested, and confuted by J. PRZYLUŚKI, *Le Concile de Rājagrha*, p.371, that Asoka spoke only of *svarga*, and not of *nirvāna*, because he addressed the laity, and not monks.

⁴ I.e., in a deva-world, Vin-a.436. ⁵ Cf. AN.v.273.

He ate various types of detrimental food, he drank detrimental drinks,¹ and because of this he became seriously ill² and died.

His wife criticised and denounced them: “These recluses, the sons of the Sakyan,³ are shameless, immoral, liars. They claim to be followers of *dhamma*, of just conduct, committed to the spiritual life, speakers of truth, virtuous, of good conduct. But there is no recluseship or brahminhood among these—it is lost to them. Where is recluseship and brahminhood among them? They have departed from it. They praised the beauty of death to my husband. Because of them my husband has died.”

BD.1.125

And other people criticised and denounced them: “These recluses ... Because of them that lay-follower has died.

Monks heard the criticism of those people. Those monks who had few desires and a sense of shame, who were contented, scrupulous, and desirous of training, criticised and denounced the group of six monks: “How could they praise the beauty of death to that lay-follower?” Then those monks informed the Master ...

Vin.3.73

“Is it true, monks, that you praised the beauty of death to that lay-follower?”

“It is true, Master.”

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked them: “Foolish men, it is not suitable, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How could you praise the beauty of death to that lay-follower? This will not give rise to confidence in those without it ... And so, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

FINAL RULING

“If a monk intentionally kills a human being or searches for someone to kill him⁴ or praises death or incites someone to die, saying, ‘Good man, what use to you is this wretched, difficult life? Death is better for you

BD.1.126

¹ Cf. Vin.1.44 for these four items. ² *Kharo ābādho uppajji* = DN.ii.127. ³ As below, BD.1.200, BD.1.223. ⁴ *satthahāarakam vāssa pariyeseyya*. For lack of any better interpretation, explanation of Vin-a.441 is followed here. Cf. SN.iv. 62; MN.iii.269.

than life.’ If, thinking¹ and intending² thus, he praises death in various ways or incites someone to die, he too is expelled and not in communion.”

DEFINITIONS

Bu-Pj.3.3

A means: whoever, of such kind ...

Monk means: ... this sort of **monk** is meant in this case.

Intentionally means: knowing, perceiving, having intended,³ having come to a conclusion, he transgresses.

Human being⁴ means: from the mind’s first arising,⁵ from the time of consciousness becoming first manifest in a mother’s womb, until the time of death—in between these; this is called a **human being**.

If (he) kills means: he cuts off the faculty of life,⁶ brings it to an end, interrupts its duration.

Or searches for someone to kill him means: a knife, a dagger, an arrow, a cudgel, a stone, a sword, poison or a rope.⁷

BD.1.127

Or praises death means: he shows the danger in living, and speaks in praise of death.

Or incites someone to die means: he says, “take a sword, or eat poison, or die by hanging yourself with a rope.”

Good man, means: this is a form of address.

¹ *iticcittamano*, so the mind and thought; Vin-a.442 says, “so the mind, (or heart, *citta*), so the thought; ‘death is better for you than life’ here means: the mind set on death, thought set on death, wherefore thought is called the illustration of mind. From this meaning the two are as if one, therefore, no division is to be seen; as the mind so the thought, as the thought so the mind.” This last phrase = BD.1.127 below, the old the Commentary on this passage. ² *cittasamkappa*, intention of mind. On *samkappa*, as a term of “awareness, thought, reflection, purpose,” see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.55ff., p.273ff. ³ = Vin.4.290, and = Vin.3.112 in explanation of *sañcetanika*. At Vin.2.91 it is said that whatever transgression is committed like this, is called a legal question whether an offence be wrong. ⁴ *Manussaviggaha*. ⁵ Vin-a.437 paraphrases by *paṭhamam paṭisandhicittam*, the mind being first reinstated. ⁶ Cf. Vb.123. ⁷ *Satthahāraka* as we have seen is literally “sword-carrier,” so that this definition probably implies “carrying a knife ... carrying a rope.” Cf. below, BD.1.133, where these items are grouped together under “a trap.”

What use to you is this wretched, difficult life means: **wretched life** means: the life of the poor is wretched compared to the life of the rich; the life of the impoverished is wretched compared to the life of the wealthy; the life of humans is wretched compared to the life of gods. **Difficult life**¹ means: for one whose hands are cut off, for one whose feet are cut off, for one whose hands and feet are cut off, for one whose ears are cut off, for one whose nose is cut off, for one whose ears and nose are cut off. Because of this sort of wretchedness and because of this sort of difficult life, one says, “death is better for you than life.”

Vin.3.74

Thinking means: mind and thought are equivalent.

Intending means: perceiving death, intending death, aiming at death.

In various ways means: in manifold manners.

If he praises death means: he shows the danger in living and speaks in praise of death, saying, “When you have passed away, at the breaking up of the body after death, you will be reborn in a happy destination, in a heaven world. There you will amuse yourself and enjoy the five types of heavenly sensual pleasures.”

If he incites someone to die means: he says, “Take a sword, or eat poison, or die by hanging yourself with a rope; or fall into a lake, into a pit, or off a cliff.”²

He too means: this is said with reference to the preceding offences entailing expulsion.³

Is expelled means: just as an ordinary stone which has been broken in half cannot be put together again,⁴ so a monk who has intentionally killed a human being is not a recluse, not a son of the Sakyan⁵—he is therefore called one who **is expelled**.

BD.1.128

Not in communion means: **communion** means: a common official action, the same recital, the same training—this is called **communion**. He does not take part in this—he is therefore called **not in communion**.

¹ *duggivita*. ² Vin-a.443, *papātā ti pabbatantare vā thalantare*. ³ Vin-a.443 says, “like the blameworthy man who has fallen into defeat, having committed sexual intercourse, and having taken what was not given.” ⁴ This is the only *Pārājika* where, in the simile, the word *abhabba* does not occur. ⁵ Cf. Vin.1.97, where it is said that a monk who has received the *upasampadā* ordination should not deprive any living being (*pāṇa*) of life, even down to an ant or a worm.

PERMUTATIONS

SUMMARY

Bu-Pj.3.4.1

Oneself, having resolved,¹ by a messenger, by a series of messengers, by a messenger who does not follow instructions,² by a messenger gone and returned again.

Not in private, but perceiving it as private; in private, but perceiving it as not private; not in private, and perceiving it as not private; in private, and perceiving it as private.

He praises by means of the body; he praises by means of speech; he praises by means of both the body and speech; he praises by means of a messenger; he praises by means of a writing.³

A pit, a piece of furniture,⁴ placing near, medicine, arranging a sight, arranging a sound, arranging a smell, arranging a taste, arranging a touch, arranging *dhamma*, announcement, instruction, making an arranged action,⁵ making a sign.

EXPOSITION

Bu-Pj.3.4.2

BD.1.129

Oneself means: one oneself kills by means of the body or by means of something attached to the body or by means of something released.

Having resolved means: having resolved, he tells someone: hit thus, strike thus, kill thus.

Vin.3.75

By a messenger

If a monk tells a second monk, “Kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the second monk kills that person,⁶ thinking he is the one he was told to kill, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

¹ *Adhiṭṭhāya*. *Adhiṭṭhāti* or *adhiṭṭhahati*, *adhiṭṭhāti*, *adhiṭṭheti* is a word of wide meaning. *Critical Pali Dictionary* includes above passage under “to determine, resolve, wish.” Vin-a.445 explains *adhiṭṭhahitvā* by *samīpe ṭhatvā*. On the “volitional force” of *adhiṭṭhāna* consult MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.112. *Adhiṭṭhita* used in connection with robes at Vin.3.196. ² BRAHMALI: See Vin-a.2.449,28. ³ *Lekhāya*. *Lekhā* means literally a scratching, therefore a writing. See below, BD.1.131, n.1. ⁴ *Apassena*. ⁵ *Samketakamma*. See above, BD.1.88. ⁶ *Tam*.

If a monk tells a second monk, “kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the second monk kills someone else, thinking he is the one he was told to kill, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the murderer.

If a monk tells a second monk ... If the second monk kills that person, thinking it is someone else than the one he was told to kill, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

If a monk tells a second monk ... If the second monk kills someone else, thinking it is someone else than the one he was told to kill, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the murderer.

By a series of messengers

If a monk tells a second monk, “tell so-and-so to tell so-and-so to kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. In informing the next person, there is an offence of bad conduct. If the (potential) murderer accepts, there is a serious offence for the instigator. If he kills that person, there is an offence entailing expulsion for all of them.

By a messenger who does not follow instructions

If a monk tells a second monk, “tell so-and-so to tell so-and-so to kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the second monk tells someone else than the one he was told to tell, there is an offence of bad conduct. If the (potential) murderer accepts, there is an offence of bad conduct. If he kills that person, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the conveyor of the message and for the murderer.

By a messenger gone and returned again

If a monk tells a second monk, “kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. He goes, but returns, saying, “I was not able to kill him.” If the first monk tells him again, “when you are able, then kill him,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the second monk kills that person, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

If a monk tells a second monk, “kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. He then becomes remorseful, but does not say, “do not kill

him.” If the second monk then kills that person, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both.

If a monk tells a second monk, “kill so-and-so,” there is an offence of bad conduct. He then becomes remorseful and says, “do not kill him.” If the second monk replies, “I have been told by you to do so,” and then kills that person, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the murderer.

If a monk tells a second monk ... He then becomes remorseful and says, “do not kill him.” If the second monk replies, “very well,” and desists, there is no offence for either.

Bu-Pj.3.4.3

Not in private, but perceiving it as private, he says aloud, “if only so-and-so were killed,” there is an offence of bad conduct. **In private, but perceiving it as not private**, he says aloud, “if only so-and-so were killed,” there is an offence of bad conduct. **Not in private, and perceiving it as not private**, he says aloud, “if only so-and-so were killed,” there is an offence of bad conduct. **In private, and perceiving it as private**, he says aloud, “if only so-and-so were killed,” there is an offence of bad conduct.

Vin.3.76

Bu-Pj.3.4.4

He praises by means of the body means: in making a gesture with the body,¹ which effectively says, “Whoever dies thus,² receives wealth, fame or goes to heaven,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, because of that praise, the target person thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence.³ If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.131

He praises by means of speech means: in saying, “whoever dies thus ...” ... If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

He praises by means of the body and speech means: in making a gesture with the body and saying, “whoever dies thus ...” ... If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

He praises by means of a messenger means: in giving instructions to a messenger, saying, “whoever dies thus, receives wealth, fame or goes to heaven,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, having heard the messenger’s

¹ *Kāyena vikāraṃ karoti* (*dasseti*, Vin-a.452, with variant reading *karoti*), literally he makes an (expressive) gesture. ² According to Vin-a.452, by taking a sword or by drinking poison, as at BD.1.127 above. ³ BRAHMALI: That is, the pain that arises as he tries to kill himself.

instruction, the target person thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

He praises by means of a writing means: in writing:¹ “Whoever dies thus, receives wealth, fame or goes to heaven,” there is an offence of bad conduct for each character.² If, having seen the writing, the target person thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.132

Bu-Pj.3.4.5

A pit means: in digging a pit for people, thinking, “falling into it someone will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If a person falls into it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If, when he has fallen, he experiences pain, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

In digging a non-specific pit, thinking, “whatever falls in will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If a person falls into it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If, when he has fallen, he experiences pain, there is a serious

¹ *lekham chindati*, Vin-a.452, “he cuts syllables (*akkharāni*) on a leaf or a book (*potthake*, cf. Sanskrit *pustaka*). Cf. Ja.ii.90, *akkharāni chinditvā*, here on a *kaṇḍa*, a stalk or cane. *Lekham chindati* could not therefore here mean “destroys the letter” as *Pali-English Dictionary* says. Cf. *rūpaṇi chindati* at Vin-a.690 in connection with cutting a figure on the wooden *māsaka*. *Lekhā* therefore does not necessarily mean writing as we have it today. At Vin.4.7 *lekhā* is one of the three “high crafts” (or occupations, *sippa*). At Vin.1.77 = Vin.4.128 Upāli’s parents decide against letting him learn *lekhā* on the grounds that his fingers will become painful. At Vin.4.305 it is said to be no offence for a nun to learn writing (*lekham pariyāpuṇāti*). *Lekha* is the writing, the letter; *lekhā* the line, the tracing (cf. Ja.6. 56). Vin-a.867 explains by *akkharāni likhantassa*. Cf. Vin-a.739 *lekhā ti akkharalekhā*, letters: syllables or letters; see next note for *akkhara*.

At Vin.2.110 the context seems to demand another meaning for *lekhā*: it is to be something that can be separated from the bowl; this can be given away, whereas *lekhañ ca me paribhogam bhavissati*, “so that the chips shall remain my property” (*Vinaya Texts* iii.78), or “the chips will come to be for my personal use,” or “the chips will be of use to me.” (*Paribhoga* is that which one uses, of use, rather than property.) At this passage *lekham* (which has faulty variant reading *likham*; cf. *likhāpaṇṇa* for *lekhā*° at Pv-a.20) is almost certainly to be taken in its meaning of “chips, shavings.”

At AN.i.283 = Pp.32 three kinds of individuals are described: *pāsāṇalekhūpama*, *pathavilekhūpama*, *udakalekhūpama*. Here *lekhā* is translated at Gs.i.262 by “carving.” Neither Commentary remarks on *lekhā*. ² *akkharakkharāya*, or “for the syllables and syllables” so “for each syllable.” *Critical Pali Dictionary* says that *akkhara* is opposed to *pada*, word. *Akkhara* seems to be connected with *akṣara* of the Upaniṣads, the Imperishable—perhaps because the letters when engraved could faintly emulate the Imperishable (Veda).

offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. If a spirit, ghost or animal in human form¹ falls into it, there is an offence of bad conduct.² If, when it has fallen, it experiences pain, there is an offence of bad conduct. If it dies, there is a serious offence. If an animal falls into it, there is an offence of bad conduct. If, when it has fallen, it experiences pain, there is an offence of bad conduct. If it dies, there is an offence entailing confession.³

BD.1.133

Bu-Pj.3.4.6

A piece of furniture means: if he places a dagger in a piece of furniture, smears the furniture with poison or makes it weak, or if he places it near a lake, a pit or a cliff, thinking, “falling down, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person experiences pain on account of the dagger or the poison or the fall, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Vin.3.77

Bu-Pj.3.4.7

Placing near means: if he places a knife, a dagger, an arrow, a club, a stone, a sword, poison or a rope⁴ near him, thinking, “using this he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person thinks, “using that, I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.3.4.8

Medicine means: if he gives ghee, butter, oil, honey or molasses,⁵ thinking, “having tasted this, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person tastes it and experiences pain, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.3.4.9

¹ *Tiracchānagatamanussaviggaha*, literally a man taking up the form of one going as an animal. This is obviously meant to be something different from *tiracchānagata*, going as an animal, just below. The former probably refers to an animal who has the power to put on human form in this life; for this is a belief which existed at that time. Cf. the rule which forbids an animal in human form to be ordained, [Vin.1.86](#), [Vin.1.87](#). The latter, going as an animal, or just an animal, is a fairly forceful expression in connection with the belief in rebirth, meaning that someone is going as an animal in this rebirth. ² Vin-a.455 says, “It was dug for a man, (therefore) he is not guilty of the death of *yakkhas* and so forth who fall into it.” In the Vinaya, *yakkhas* constantly appear as the denizens of some sphere or other, not far removed from the realm of mankind. The same is true of the *petas*, or departed ones.

³ BRAHMALI: That is, a *pācittiya* offence, according to [Bu-Pc.61](#). ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.1.126](#), where these items are grouped together under “should look about so as to be his knife-bringer.”

⁵ These are the five kinds of medicine, cf. [Vin.3.251](#).

Arranging a sight¹ means: in arranging a dreadful and terrifying sight, thinking, “seeing this and becoming terrified, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person sees it and becomes terrified, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In arranging a lovely sight, thinking, “seeing this and then not being able to obtain it, he will wither and die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person sees it and then withers because of not obtaining it, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.134

Arranging a sound means: in arranging a dreadful and terrifying sound, thinking, “hearing this and becoming terrified, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person hears it and becomes terrified, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In arranging a lovely and heart-stirring² sound, thinking, “hearing this and then not being able to obtain it, he will wither and die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person hears it and then withers because of not obtaining it, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Arranging a smell means: in arranging a disgusting and repulsive smell, thinking, “smelling this, he will die from disgust and aversion,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person smells it and experiences suffering because of disgust and aversion, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In arranging a lovely smell, thinking, “smelling this and then not being able to obtain it, he will wither and die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person smells it and then withers because of not obtaining it, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Arranging a taste means: in arranging a disgusting and repulsive taste, thinking, “tasting this, he will die from disgust and aversion,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person tastes it and experiences suffering because of disgust and aversion, there is a serious offence. If he

¹ It is curious that the five senses are all equally powerful here, and that the last three are not grouped together under *muta*, sensed, felt, thought or imagined, as sometimes occurs in the older literature, e.g. Vin.4.2. It is also curious that these five senses have the power to cause death. Was it really believed that people died because of a bad smell or loud noise?

² *Hadayaṅgama*, cf. DN.i.4.

dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In arranging a lovely taste, thinking, “tasting this and then not being able to obtain it, he will wither and die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person tastes it and then withers because of not obtaining it, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

BD.1.135

Vin.3.78

Arranging a touch means: in arranging a painful and harsh physical contact, thinking, “touched by this, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person makes contact with it and experiences pain, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In arranging a pleasant and soft physical contact, thinking, “touched by this and then not being able to obtain it, he will wither and die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the target person is touched by it and then withers because of not obtaining it, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Arranging dhamma means: in talking about hell¹ to one destined to go to hell, thinking, “hearing this and becoming terrified, he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person hears it and becomes terrified, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion. In talking about heaven to someone of good behaviour,² thinking, “hearing this and being intent on it,³ he will die,” there is an offence of bad conduct. When the target person hears it, becomes intent on it and thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Bu-Pj.3.4.10

Announcement means: if, being asked, he says, “die in this way;⁴ he who dies like this receives wealth, fame or goes to heaven,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, because of that announcement, the target person thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

Instruction means: if, without being asked, he says, “die in this way; he who dies like this receives wealth, fame or goes to heaven,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, because of that instruction, the target thinks, “I shall die,” and he does what is painful, there is a serious offence. If he dies, there is an offence entailing expulsion.

¹ Niraya. ² Adhimutta. Cf. below, BD.1.148. ³ Kalyāṇakamma. ⁴ Evaṃ marassu.

An arranged action means: if he makes an arrangement for before the meal or for after the meal, for the night or for the day, telling another person, “kill that person according to this arrangement,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If the other person kills that person according to that arrangement, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If he kills him before or after the arranged time, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the murderer. BD.1.136

Making a sign means: he makes a sign. If he says to another person, “when I wink, raise my eyebrow, or raise my head, at that sign kill that person,” there is an offence of bad conduct. If, at that sign, the other person kills that person, there is an offence entailing expulsion for both. If he kills him before or after the sign, there is no offence for the instigator, but there is an offence entailing expulsion for the murderer.

NON-OFFENCE CLAUSE

There is no offence if it was unintentional, for one not knowing, for one not aiming at death, for one who is insane, for the first offender. Bu-Pj.3.4.11

The first section on expulsion in relation to human beings is finished

CASE RULINGS

MNEMONIC LIST

Praising, sitting down, with pestle, and with mortar;
gone forth when old,¹ a falling out,² first,³ experimental poison, /
and three with making sites, another three with bricks, Vin.3.79

¹ *vuḍḍhapabbajitā* usually “those long gone forth, old monks.” ² OLDENBERG, Vin.3.271f. gives variant readings *vuḍḍhapabbajitā ca bhisanno*, *‘jitā sinno*, and “*‘jjitassa* ncorrected to *‘jjitābhisanno* and he says, “I do not know how to correct *bhisanno* or *sinno*.” The final *ā* of *‘jjitā* may possibly belong to *bhisanno*, then = *abhisanno*, meaning “full of, overflowing with” (old monks, Bu-Pj.3.5.4), or a “falling out” (of meat, Bu-Pj.3.5.5). *Sinna* as past participle of *sijjati* usually means “wet with perspiration, boiled,” but it cannot mean that here. The word does not appear again in the stories below. Possibly one group has been omitted. ³ Text reads *aggam̐*. Oldenberg proposed an emendation to *laggam̐*, doubtless thinking of *vilagga* in Bu-Pj.3.5.5, but *aggam̐* refers to *agga* (-*kārika*) of Bu-Pj.3.5.6. BD.1.137

An adze, and a rafter, a platform, descent, fell off,/
 Sweating, and nose treatment,
 massage, and by bathing, and by smearing,
 Making get up, making lie down,¹ death through food and drink,/
 Child by a lover, and co-wives, he killed the mother, the child, both,
 He killed neither,² crushing, heating, barren, fertile,/
 Tickling, in restraining, a spirit, and sent to a predatory spirit,
 Thinking it was him he gave a blow,³ talk on heaven, and on hell,/
 Three trees at Ālavī, three others with forest about fires,
 Do not keep in misery, not as you, buttermilk, and salty medicine./

CASE DETAILS

Bu-Pj.3.5.1

At one time time a certain monk was ill. Out of compassion the monks praised the beauty of death to him. He died. They became anxious and said, “Could it be that we have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion?” They informed the Master. He said: “You, monks, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.2

At one time a certain monk who was an almsgoer sat down on a bench,⁴ crushing a boy who was concealed by a rag. The boy died, and the monk became anxious. ... “Monks, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But a monk should not sit down on a seat without checking it. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

BD.1.138

¹ Text, *maraṇaṃ*. ² *ubho na miyyare*. Cf. *na miyyare* at Snp.575. ³ *pahari*. ⁴ *Ottharivā*; this word occurs again below in the next paragraph and also at [BD.1.146](#) below. Vin-a.475 on this latter passage explains by *akkamitvā*, and goes on to say that a monk having fallen down was dragged along by some others, and one having got on to his stomach sat there. But cf. [BD.1.59, n.1](#), above for *akkamitvā*, meaning “kicking, making a kick at.” At Mi.121 *ottharati* is used in connection with the waves of the sea: they “flow” (so translated Sacred Books of the East xxxi.182), meaning they flow again over the spot whence they had rolled back. It there has the sense of covering over or covering up. *Pali-English Dictionary* under *ottharati* says, “see also *avattharati* “for both of which it gives much the same meanings. I think it possible that *ottharati* (as here and in next paragraph below, and again below at [BD.1.146](#)) and *avattharati* as at next note below, have the sense of dealing roughly with someone, even by mistake. *Avatthāsi* occurs, again, [BD.1.140](#), where it also seems as if it means “hit” (with locative). Both words certainly seem to include the sense of *hard*, sitting hard enough or hitting hard enough to cause death.

At one time a certain monk was preparing a seat in a refectory among the houses. When he took hold of a pestle high up, a second pestle fell down hitting¹ a certain boy who then died. He became anxious ... “What was your intention?”

Bu-Pj.3.5.3

“I did not intend it, Master.”

“There is no offence, monk, when it is unintentional.”

At one time a certain monk was preparing a seat in a refectory among the houses. He stepped² on the requisites belonging to a mortar,³ which fell and hit⁴ a certain boy, who then died. He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, when it is unintentional.”

At one time a father and son had gone forth among the monks. When the time was announced⁵ the son said to his father, “Go, bhante, the Sangha is waiting for you,” and seizing him by the back, he pushed him away. Falling down, he died. He became anxious. ... “What was your intention?”

Bu-Pj.3.5.4

BD.1.139

“I did not mean to cause his death, Master.”

Vin.3.80

“There is no offence, monk, for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time a father and son had gone forth among the monks. When the time was announced⁶ the son said to his father, “Go, bhante, the Sangha is waiting for you,” and meaning to cause his death he seized him by the back and pushed him away. Falling down, he died. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

¹ *avatthāsi*. ² *akkamitvā pavaṭṭesi*. *Akkamitvā* here seems to be in its meaning of “to tread on.” We get the same expression in [Vin.3.38](#), above, [BD.1.59](#), where it seems to mean “rising, he knocked her over,” and I should like to add hard, rising hard or suddenly. See above, [BD.1.137, n.4](#). ³ *bhaṇḍikā*. This is a comprehensive word meaning a heap of goods, a collection. At Ja.iii.41 it is variant reading for *gaṇḍikā*, which as “executioner’s block” could not make sense here. “Mortar-requisites” would include the pestle. ⁴ *ottharivā* see above, [BD.1.137, n.4](#). ⁵ *kāle ārocite*. ⁶ *kāle ārocite*.

At one time a father and son had gone forth among the monks. When the time was announced the son said to his father, “Go, bhante, the Sangha is waiting for you,” and meaning to cause his death he seized him by the back and pushed him away. Falling down, he did not die. He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.5

At one time while a certain monk was eating some meat¹ got stuck in his throat. A certain monk hit him on the neck. The meat came out together with blood, and the monk died. He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who does not mean to cause death.”

At one time while a certain monk was eating some meat got stuck in his throat. A certain monk, meaning to cause his death, hit him on the neck. The meat came out together with blood, and the monk died. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

BD.1.140

At one time while a certain monk was eating some meat got stuck in his throat. A certain monk, meaning to cause his death, hit him on the neck. The meat came out together with blood, but the monk did not die. He became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.6

At one time a certain monk who was an almsgoer received poisoned almsfood. He brought it back and gave the first portion to the monks. They died. He became anxious ... “What was your intention, monk?”

“I did not know, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not know.”

At one time a certain monk gave poison to a certain monk, with the purpose of investigating it. That monk died. He became anxious ... “What was your intention, monk?”

¹ *maṃsa*; again showing that the monks were not vegetarians. Cf. above, BD.1.98.

“My purpose was to investigate it, Master.”

“There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were preparing a site for a dwelling. A certain monk who was below lifted up a stone. The stone, being badly held by a second monk who was above, fell on¹ the head of the monk who was below, and he died. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, when it is unintentional.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.7

Vin.3.81

At one time the monks of Ālavī were preparing a site for a dwelling. A certain monk who was below lifted up a stone. A second monk who was above, aiming to kill the one who was below, dropped the stone on his head. He died ... he did not die. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were erecting a wall² for a dwelling. A certain monk who was below lifted up a burnt brick. The brick, being badly held by a second monk who was above, fell on the head of the monk who was below. He died. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, when it is unintentional.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.8

BD.1.141

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were erecting a wall for a dwelling. A certain monk who was below lifted up a burnt brick. A second monk who was above, intending to cause the death of the monk who was below, dropped the burnt brick on his head. He died ... he did not die. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were doing building work. A certain monk who was below lifted up an adze. The adze, being badly held by a

Bu-Pj.3.5.9

¹ *avatthāsi*, cf. above, [BD.1.137, n.4.](#) ² *Kuḍḍa*. At [Vin.4.266](#) three kinds of walls are mentioned: *iṭṭhakā*° (of tiles or bricks, as here), *silā*° (of stones), *dāru*° (of wood).

second monk who was above, fell on the head of the monk who was below. He died. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, when it is unintentional.”

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were doing building work ... lifted up an adze. A second monk who was above, meaning to cause the death of the monk who was below, dropped the adze on his head. He died ... he did not die ... The second monk became anxious ... ” ... serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.10

At one time the monks of Āḷavī were doing building work. A certain monk who was below lifted up a rafter. The rafter, being badly held by a monk who was above ... (*three cases as above*) ... “... serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.11

At one time the monks of Āḷavī, doing building work, were putting together a platform.¹ A certain monk said to a second monk, “Friend, put it together by standing here.” Putting it together by standing there, he fell down and died. The first monk became anxious ... “What was your intention, monk?”

BD.1.142
Vin.3.82

“I did not mean to cause his death, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time the monks of Āḷavī, doing building work, were putting together a platform. A certain monk, meaning to cause his death, said to second monk, “Friend, put it together by standing here.” Putting it together by standing there, he fell down and died ... fell down and did not die. The first monk became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.12

At one time a certain monk, having made a roof for a dwelling, was coming down. A second monk said to that monk, “Friend, come down here.”

¹ *Aṭṭaka*. Vin-a.466 calls it *vehāsamañca*, literally a bed above the ground, probably a platform or scaffold up a tree, such as hunters use. It is the diminutive of *aṭṭa*, a watch-tower, Vin.3.200.

Coming down at that place, he fell down and died. The second monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time a certain monk, having made a roof for a dwelling, was coming down. A second monk, meaning to cause his death, said to him, “Friend, come down here.” Coming down at that place, he fell down and died ... fell down and did not die ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk who was tormented by discontent climbed Mount Vulture's Peak, fell down the cliff and hit a certain basket-maker. He died, and the monk became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, one should not jump off. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.13

At one time the group of six monks, having climbed Mount Vulture's Peak, threw down a stone for fun. Hitting a certain cowherd, it killed him.¹ They became anxious. ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, you should not throw down stones for fun. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

BD.1.143

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks made him sweat by heating him. He died. They became anxious. ... “There is no offence, monks, for one who is not aiming at death.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.14

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks, meaning to cause his death, made him sweat by heating him. He died ... he did not die. They became anxious. ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk had a headache.² The monks gave him medi-

Bu-Pj.3.5.15

Vin.3.83

¹ *māresuñ*. We should say “it” (the stone), but the Pali regards the men as the agents of the cowherd's death.

cal treatment through the nose.¹ He died. They became anxious. ... “There is no offence, monks, for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time a certain monk had a headache. The monks, meaning to cause his death, gave him medical treatment through the nose. He died ... did not die. They became anxious. ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.16

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks massaged him. He died ... (three cases as above) ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks bathed him. He died ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

BD.1.144

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks anointed him with oil. He died ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks made him get up.² He died ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks made him lie down. He died ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks gave him food ... they gave him drink. He died ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.17

² *sīsābhitāpa*, literally “heat in the head,” cf. [Vin.1.204](#), where Pilindavaccha is mentioned as suffering this ailment. ¹ *natthuṃ adamsu = natthukamma* as at [Vin.1.204](#). DN-a.i.98, explained *telaṃ yojetvā n° karaṇaṃ*. At DN.i.12 this treatment is included among the low arts by which some *samaṇas* and brahmins earn a wrong livelihood, but at [Vin.1.204](#) it is allowed by Gotama, with details of how best to apply the drug to be taken through the nose. Cf. Dhp-a.i.12. ² Or, “raised him” (to a sitting position).

At one time a certain woman whose husband was living away from home became pregnant by a lover. She said to a monk who was supported by her family, "Master, please find a method of abortion." "All right, sister," he said, and he gave her a method of abortion. The child died. He became anxious. ... "You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

At one time a certain man had two wives, one who was barren and one who was fertile. The barren one said to a monk who was supported by her family, "If she should bring forth a child, bhante, she will become mistress of the whole household. Master, please find a method of abortion for her." "All right, sister," he said, and he gave her a method of abortion. The child died, but the mother did not die. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.3.5.18

At one time a certain man had two wives ... he gave her a method of abortion. The mother died, but the child did not die. He became anxious ... "There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence."

Vin.3.84

At one time a certain man had two wives ... he gave her a method of abortion. Both died ... neither died. He became anxious ... "There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence."

BD.1.145

At one time a certain woman who was pregnant said to a monk who was supported by her family, "Master, please find me a method of abortion." "Well then crush¹ it, sister," he said. She crushed it and caused an abortion. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.3.5.19

At one time a certain woman who was pregnant ... "Well then heat yourself, sister," he said. She heated herself and caused an abortion. He became anxious ... "... expulsion."

Bu-Pj.3.5.20

¹ *maddassu*, crush, bruise. Cf. Ja.iii.121.

At one time a certain barren woman said to a monk who was supported by her family, “Master, please find me some medicine to help me become pregnant.” “All right, sister,” he said, and gave her some medicine. She died. He became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.21

At one time a certain fertile woman said to a monk who was supported by her family, “Master, please find me some medicine to help me not get pregnant.” “All right, sister,” he said ... “... but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.22

BD.1.146

At one time the group of six monks made one of the group of seventeen monks¹ laugh by tickling him with their fingers. Being unable to breathe, he died. They became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.23

At one time the group of seventeen monks, while doing some work,² covered³ one of the monks of the group of six. He died. They became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.24

At one time a certain monk who was an exorcist⁴ killed a spirit. He became anxious. ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”⁵

Bu-Pj.3.5.25

¹ Cf. **Vin.4.110**, where this story also appears; tickling with the fingers is there said to be a *pācittiya* offence. The seventeen monks are also mentioned at **Vin.4.41**. At **Vin.1.77** = **Vin.4.128**, the boy Upāli is said to have seventeen friends. See Introduction, p.xxxvi, n.2. ² *kammaṃ karissāma*, possibly idiomatic, “we will do (for him)”, “we will have some fun.” ³ *otthar-itvā* = *akkamitvā*, **Vin-a.475**. See above, **BD.1.137**. ⁴ *bhūtavejjaka*; *bhūtavijjā* mentioned at **DN.i.9** as a “low art.” *Bhūtavidyā* (translated by R.E. Hume as “Demonology”) also occurs at **Chāndogya Upaniṣad 7.2.1** = **Chāndogya Upaniṣad 7.7.1**. ⁵ The monk learned in exorcism, in freeing a person possessed by a *yakkha* may cut off a clay doll’s head; then the *yakkha* dies, killed by him. But he may kill not only the *yakkha* but Sakka, king of the Devas; therefore it is a grave offence. **Vin-a.475**. At **SN.i.206** some Sakka is called a *yakkha*. **KS.i.263**, n.3 says, “there is no tradition, revealed in the Commentary that Sakka, ruler of the Thirty[-three] Gods, is meant.” He was a (*eko*) *yakkha* belonging to Māra’s faction, **SN-a.i.302**.

At one time a certain monk sent a certain monk to a dwelling inhabited by predatory spirits.¹ The spirits killed him. He became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time a certain monk, meaning to cause his death, sent a certain monk to a dwelling inhabited by predatory spirits. The spirits killed him ... the spirits did not kill him. “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

BD.1.147

At one time a certain monk sent a certain monk to a wilderness inhabited by beasts of prey² ... to a wilderness inhabited by robbers. The beasts of prey ... the robbers ... killed him. He became anxious ... (*three cases each time as above*) ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.26

Vin.3.85

At one time a certain monk, thinking he was that person, killed that person ... thinking he was that person, killed someone else ... thinking he was someone else, killed that person ... thinking he was someone else, killed someone else. He became anxious ... “... expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.27

At one time a certain monk was possessed by a spirit.³ Another monk gave him a blow.⁴ He died. The other monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who is not aiming at death.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.28

¹ *vālayakkha*. Vin-a.475, “In this *vihāra* a predatory (*vāla*), fierce *yakkha* dwelt; it was his *vihāra*.” At AN.iii.256 *vālayakkhas* are said to be one of the five dangers of Madhurā. See GS.iii.188, n.3. Mr. E.M. Hare translates *vālayakkhā* as “bestial *yakkhas*.” Cf. *yakkha* eating men and cattle at DN.ii.346. Term may mean “*yakkha* in form of a beast of prey.” ² Vin-a.476: “In all of these wilds there are beasts of prey and snakes ... in all of those there are robbers.” Five kinds of wilds (*kantāra*) mentioned at Ja.i.99, SN-a.i.324; four kinds at Cnd.630.

³ *amanussena*: *amanussa* is a *yakkha*, a spirit, a ghost. At Vin.1.277 it is said that Kāka, a slave, was born *amanussena*. Word occurs at DN.i.116, SN.i.91, and also above, BD.1.74. Vin-a.298 says, they are either *yakkhas* or men who, having departed, desire to return. ⁴ Vin-a.476 “saying, ‘I will drive the *yakkha* away,’ he gives him (i.e., the monk) a blow. One should not give a person possessed by a *yakkha* a blow, but should bind a palm-leaf or protecting thread on his arm or leg.”

At one time a certain monk was possessed by a spirit. Another monk, meaning to cause his death, gave him a blow. He died ... he did not die. The other monk became anxious ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.29
BD.1.148

At one time a certain monk gave a talk about heaven to a man of good behaviour. He became keen on it¹ and died. The monk became anxious ... “There is no offence, monk, for one who is not aiming at death.”

At one time a certain monk, meaning to cause his death, gave a talk about heaven to a man of good behaviour. He became keen on it and died ... he became keen on it, but did not die ... “There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk gave a talk about hell to a man destined to go to hell. Being terrified, he died ... (*the same three cases*) ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.30

At one time the monks of Āḷavī, while doing building work, felled a tree. A certain monk said to another monk, “Friend, fell it standing here.” While he was felling it standing there, the tree fell on him and killed him ... (*three cases*) ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.31

Vin.3.86

At one time the group of six monks set fire to a forest. Some people were burnt and died ... (*three cases*) ... “... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.3.5.32

At one time a certain monk went to the place of execution and said to the executioner: “Friend, do not keep him in misery.² Kill him with a single blow.” “All right, bhante,” he said, and he killed him with a single

¹ *adhimutto*. *Critical Pali Dictionary*, referring to this passage says, “impressed with the idea.” Cf. above, BD.1.135. ² *mā yimaṃ kilamesi*.

blow. He became anxious. "You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

At one time a certain monk went to the place of execution and said to the executioner: "Friend, do not keep him in misery. Kill him with a single blow." "I will not do as you ask," he said, and deprived him of life. He became anxious ... "Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct."¹

BD.1.149

At one time a certain man whose hands and feet had been cut off was in his relatives' house surrounded by his relations. A certain monk said to those people, "Friends, do you desire his death?"

"Indeed, bhante, we do desire it."

"Then you should make him drink buttermilk."²

They made him drink buttermilk and he died. The monk became anxious ... "You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion."

Bu-Pj.3.5.33

At one time a certain man whose hands and feet had been cut off was in his family's house, surrounded by his relations. A certain nun said to those people, "Friends, do you desire his death?"

"Indeed, honoured lady, we do desire it."

"Then you should make him drink salty medicine."³

¹ Apparently not a grave offence because the executioner was not influenced by the monk's words. The monk only transgressed in uttering the words, attempting to hasten the man's death. ² *takka*. Vin-a.478, "buttermilk of a cow, a buffalo, a goat, hot, cold, flavoured or unflavoured." At Vin.1.244 it is included in the five products of the cow (*pañca gorasā*).

³ *loṇasuvīraka*. Vin-a.478, "a medicine made of all tastes." Buddhaghosa gives a long description of the things mixed together to form it: various kinds of myrobalan (astringent and intoxicant), all the seven grains and pulses, gruel, the fruit of the plantain, and all fruits, the jungle creeper, sprouts of various trees, fish and meat, honey and molasses, rock-salt, alkaline and bitter medicines. Then, letting it mature for two or three years, it is the colour of the juice of the rose-apple and is good for various diseases (mentioned here, cf. also AN.v.110), but further than that (*ca uttarāṃ*) if decaying, it is no longer a medicine. At Vin.1.210 it is called *sovīraka*: here the lord allows the use of it to one who is sick, and to one who is not sick the use of it mixed with water as a medicine.

BD.1.150 They made him drink salty medicine and he died. She became anxious. She then informed the nuns, who in turn informed the monks, who then informed the Master. He said, “Monks, that nun has fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

The third offence entailing expulsion is finished

MONKS' EXPULSION (PĀRĀJIKĀ) 4

ORIGIN STORY

FIRST SUB-STORY

At one time¹ the Buddha, the Master, was staying near Vesālī in the hall with the peaked roof in the Great Wood. At that time a number of monks who were friends had entered the rains on the banks of the river Vaggumudā.² Just then Vajjī was short of food³ and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw, and it was not easy to keep oneself going by collecting alms. Then those monks thought this:

BD.1.151
Bu-Pj.4.1.1
Vin.3.87

“At present Vajjī is short of food and stricken by hunger, with crops blighted and turned to straw, and it is not easy to keep oneself going by collecting alms. By what means might we, united and in harmony, have a comfortable rains and get almsfood without problems?”

Some said, “Well, friends, we could undertake work for the householders, and they will give something in return. In this way, being united and in harmony, we will spend the rains in comfort and have no problems getting almsfood.”

Some said, “Friends, there is no need to undertake work for the householders. Let us instead act as messengers for them,⁴ and they will give

BD.1.152

¹ From here to towards the end of Bu-Pj.4.1.2 below, cf. Vin.4.23-25, where it is a *pācittiya* for a monk to tell of his knowledge of conditions belonging to the further-men, even if he possessed this knowledge. If he does not possess it, it is a *pārājika* offence to speak of it, as here at Bu-Pj.4. ² Mentioned at Ud.25; it is also here said that some monks spent *vassa* on its banks. ³ Cf. above, Bu-Pj.1.2.1; Bu-Pj.5.5. ⁴ *dūteyyaṃ harāma*.

something in return. In this way, being united and in harmony, we will spend the rains in comfort and have no problems getting almsfood.”

Some said, “Friends, there is no need to undertake work for the householders, nor to act as messengers for them. Let us instead praise one another’s super-human achievements¹ to the householders: ‘Such a monk obtains the first *jhāna*, such a monk the second *jhāna*, such a monk the third, such a monk the fourth; such a monk is stream-enterer, such a monk a once-returner, such a non-returner, such an *arahant*; such a monk has the three true knowledges,² and such the six direct knowledges.’³ Then they will give to us. In this way, being united and in harmony, we will spend the rains in comfort and have no problems getting almsfood. Indeed, friends, this is the better way, that we praise one another’s super-human achievements to the householders.”

Vin.3.88

Then those monks praised one another’s super-human achievements to the householders: “Such a monk obtains the first *jhāna* ... such a monk has the six direct knowledges.” And those people thought: “It is a gain for us, it is well-gained, that such monks have come to us for the rains. Such monks as these, who are virtuous and of good character, have never before entered the rains with us.” Then they gave such food and drink to those monks that they did not even eat and drink themselves, or give to their parents, to their wives and children, to their slaves, servants and workers, to their friends and companions, or to their relatives. In this way those monks were handsome, with rounded features, bright faces and clear skin.⁴

BD.1.153

Bu-Pj.4.1.2

Now it was the custom⁵ for monks who had finished keeping the rains to go and see the Master. So when the rains was finished and the three

¹ *uttarimanussadhamma*, on this term, see **BD1, Introduction, xxivf.** ² *tevijjo*—i.e., he has knowledge of his own previous rebirths, of the arising and passing away of beings, and of the destruction of the cankers. It is a term handed down from the Upaniṣads, where it meant knowledge of the three Vedas. ³ *chalābhiñño*—i.e., psychic power, clairaudience, knowledge of the thoughts of other beings, knowledge of previous rebirths, clairvoyance, and knowledge of destruction of the cankers. Cf. AN.iii.15; DN.i.77ff.; and see GS.iii Introduction viii for these being originally five. ⁴ A stock phrase. ⁵ For the beginning of this paragraph cf. **Vin.1.158.**

months had elapsed, those monks put their lodging in order,¹ took their bowls and robes and departed for Vesālī. Walking by stages, they arrived at Vesālī and went to the hall with the peaked roof in the Great Wood. There they approached the Master, paid homage to him and sat down to one side.

At that time the monks who had spent the rains in that region were thin, haggard² and pale,³ their veins protruding all over their limbs.⁴ But the monks from the banks of the Vaggumudā were handsome, with rounded features, bright faces and clear skin. It is the custom for Buddhas, for Masters, to exchange friendly greetings with incoming monks.⁵ And so the Master said to them:

“I hope you are keeping well,⁶ monks, I hope you are comfortable; I hope you spent the rains at ease, in concord and harmony, without dispute, and that you had no trouble getting almsfood?”

“We are keeping well, Master,⁷ we are comfortable; we spent the rains at ease, in concord and harmony, without dispute, and we had no trouble getting almsfood.”

Tathāgatas sometimes ask knowing, and knowing sometimes do not ask ... Buddhas, Masters, question the monks for two reasons, thinking, “we shall teach the *Dhamma* or lay down a training rule for the disciples.”⁸ Then the Master said to those monks:

“In what way, monks, did you spend the rains at ease, without having any trouble getting almsfood?” Then those monks informed the Master.

¹ *senāsanāṃ saṃsāmetvā*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.326, “set their places of rest in order.” I closely follow Chalmers’ “packed away their bedding” at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.104, because I prefer “away” rather than “up” which suggests the possibility of their taking their bedding with them when *vassa* was over. “Places of rest” is, I think, misleading: much teaching of the laity went on during *vassa*, which could therefore only be regarded as a time of leisure in so far as there was no travelling from vihara to vihara.

² This is all stock-phrase. *Dubbaṅga*: CHALMERS, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.65 translates “ill-looking,” while at *Vinaya Texts* i.186 it is translated “discoloured.” ³ *uppaṇḍuppaṇḍukajāta*, CHALMERS, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.65, “jaundiced,” and *Vinaya Texts* i.186, “(... his complexion has become) more and more yellow.” ⁴ *dhamanisanthatagatta*, CHALMERS, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.65, “their veins standing out like whipcord.” ⁵ = *Vin.1.59* = *Vin.1.212* = *Vin.1.253*. ⁶ = *Vin.1.59* = *Vin.1.212* = *Vin.1.253*. *Kacci khamaniyam*, cf. *Vin.1.204*, *Vin.1.205*, where *na kkhamaṇiyo hoti* is used of a disease which had not become better. ⁷ *Bhagavā*. ⁸ = *Vin.1.158* = *Vin.3.6*.

“But had you really obtained those super-human achievements?”¹

“No, Master.”

The Buddha, the Master, rebuked them:

BD.1.155 “It is unsuitable, foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is not fitting for a recluse, it is unallowable, it is not to be done. How could you for the sake of your stomachs praise one another’s super-human achievements to householders? It would be better for your bellies to be cut open with a sharp butcher’s knife than for you to praise one another’s super-human achievements to householders. Why is that? For *that* reason, foolish men, you may incur death or death-like suffering, but not on that account would you at the breaking up of the body after death be reborn in the plane of misery, a bad destination, the abyss, hell.² But for *this* reason you might. This is not for the benefit of non-believers ...” and having thus rebuked them and given a talk on the *Dhamma*, he addressed the monks:

Bu-Pj.4.1.3 “Monks, there are these five great gangsters to be found in the world.³ What five? A⁴ certain great gangster thinks like this: ‘When indeed will I, with a following of a hundred or a thousand men, wander among villages, towns and the seats of kings, killing and making others kill, destroying and making others destroy, tormenting and making others torment;’ and after some time he does just that. Just so, monks, a certain bad monk thinks like this: ‘When indeed will I, with a following of a hundred or a thousand people, go on tour among villages, towns and the seats of kings, being honoured, BD.1.156 respected, revered and worshipped by both householders and those gone forth, and obtain robes, almsfood, lodgings and medicines;’ and after some time he does just that. This is the first great gangster found existing in the Vin.3.90 world.

Again, a certain bad monk learns the *Dhamma* and training proclaimed by the Tathāgata and takes it as his own. This is the second great gangster found existing in the world.

Again, a certain bad monk groundlessly accuses someone who lives the

¹ *Kacci pana vo bhūtan ti.* ² Cf. above, BD.1.36. ³ Cf AN.i.153; AN.iii.128. ⁴ *idhā ti imasmim̐ sattaloke*, Vin-a.482.

spiritual life in purity of not being celibate.¹ This is the third great gangster found existing in the world.

Again, a certain bad monk takes valuable goods and requisites belonging to the Sangha—a monastery, the land of a monastery, a dwelling, the land for a dwelling, a bed, a bench, a cushion, a pillow, a brass vessel, a brass jar, a brass pot, a brass receptacle, an adze, a hatchet, an axe, a spade, a chisel, a creeper, bamboo, *muñja*-grass, *babbaja*-grass, *tiṇa*-grass, clay, wooden articles, earthenware articles²—and uses these to win over and create a following among householders. This is the fourth great gangster found existing in the world.

BD.1.157

But in this world with its gods, its lords of death and its supreme beings, among this population with its recluses and brahmins, its gods and humans, this the greatest gangster: he who untruthfully³ and groundlessly⁴ boasts about a super-human achievement. Why is that? Monks, you have eaten the country's almsfood by theft.”

Whoever should declare himself to be other than he truly is,
Has eaten this by theft, like a cheater who has deceived,

Many⁵ yellow-necks of bad qualities, uncontrolled and
Wicked, by their wicked deeds, in hell they are reborn.

Better to eat an iron ball heated like a blazing fire,

¹ Vin-a.484 says, *suddhañ ca brahmacāriṇ* is a monk whose cankers are destroyed. *Parisuddham brahmacariyaṃ carantan* means lead the best (highest) life free from the *kilesas* ... *Amūlakena abrahmacariyena anuddhamseti*, means he censures and blames this man for a *pārājika* offence. ² At Vin.2.170 all these items are grouped into five categories of things which are not transferable by the Order or by a group or by an individual. At Vin.2.122 a brass pot is one of the three kinds of water-vessels allowed. At Vin.2.143 all kinds of brassware are allowed to the Order except weapons, all kinds of wooden articles except divans (Vin.1.192), long-armed chairs (Vin.1.192), bowls (Vin.2.112) and shoes (Vin.1.188); all kinds of earthenware except *katakas* (foot scrubbers, see *Vinaya Texts* iii.130, n.3), and large earthen vessels to be used as huts to live in. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.156 for these references, This last item is the only one not mentioned in previous rules. At Vin.3.211 injunctions are given to monks setting out on a journey as to what to do with their wooden and earthenware articles. At Vin.1.190 it is a *dukkata* offence for monks to make foot coverings of *tiṇa*-, *muñja*- or *babbaja*-grass. ³ *Asanta*. ⁴ *Abhūta*. ⁵ From here to end of verses = Dh.307, Dh.308 = It.43 = It.90 (last three lines only at It.90). I follow Mrs. Rhys Davids, translated at *Sacred Books of the Buddhists* vii.

Than for the immoral and uncontrolled to eat the country's alms.

Then the Master, having rebuked the monks from the banks of the Yaggumudā in various ways for being difficult to maintain, difficult to support ... “... And, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

PRELIMINARY RULING

BD.1.158 If a monk falsely claims for himself a super-human achievement, knowledge and vision¹ worthy of the noble ones, saying: “this I know, this I see”, but after some time—whether examined or not, but having committed the offence² and desiring purification—should say, ‘friends, not knowing I said that I know, not seeing that I see; what I said was empty and false,’ he too is expelled and not in communion.”
Vin.3.91

Thus the Master laid down this training rule for the monks

SECOND SUB-STORY

Bu-Pj.4.2.1 At one time a number of monks, thinking they had seen what they had not, attained what they had not, achieved what they had not, realised what they had not, declared final knowledge³ based on overestimation.⁴ After some time their minds inclined⁵ to sense desire, anger and confusion. They became anxious, thinking, “The Master has laid down a training rule; yet we ... declared final knowledge based on overestimation. Could it be that we have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion? They informed Venerable Ānanda, who informed the Master. He said: “Ānanda, these monks declared final knowledge based on overestimation, thinking they had seen what they

BD.1.159

¹ *Alamariyañanadassana*. Vin-a.489 says that the highest *ariyan* purity is knowledge and insight. *Alaṃ* is explained *pariyattaṃ*, sufficient, enough, so that *alaṃ* means “intent on enough *ariyan* knowledge and insight for the destruction of the *kilesas*.” ² *Apanna*, cf. below, Old Commentary explanation, BD.1.160, and Vin-a.492, “because he has fallen (*āpanno*) into defeat, therefore, putting monkdom to one side, he cannot become one to arrive at musing and so forth”—musing, etc., being given in explanation of states of further-men, see below, BD.1.159. ³ *Añña*. Cf. above, BD.1.120, n.2. ⁴ *Adhimāna*, pride, arrogance. ⁵ *Namati*, in translation; *cittaṃ* is the subject. Cf. SN.i.137

had not ... but this is negligible.¹

And so, monks, this training rule should be recited thus:

FINAL RULING

If a monk falsely claims for himself a super-human achievement, knowledge and insight worthy of the noble ones, saying: “This I know, this I see,” but after some time—whether examined or not, but having committed the offence and desiring purification—should say, ‘friends, not knowing I said that I know, not seeing that I see; what I said was empty and false,’ except if it is through overestimation, he too is expelled and not in communion.”

DEFINITIONS

A means: whoever, of such kind ...

Monk means: ... this sort of **monk** is meant in this case.

Falsely means: although a certain wholesome quality is non-existent, not factual, not to be found in himself, and he does not see it or know it, he says, “I have this wholesome quality.”

A super-human achievement means: *jhāna*, emancipation, *samādhi*, attainment, knowledge and insight, development of the path,² realisation of the fruits, abandoning the defilements, a mind without hindrances, delighting in solitude.

For himself means: either he presents these good qualities as in himself, or he presents himself as among these good qualities.

Knowledge means: the three true knowledges.

Insight means: knowledge and insight are equivalent.³

Bu-Pj.4.3.1

Vin.3.92

¹ *Tañ ca kho etaṃ abbohārikan ti*. Same phrase occurs again below, **BD.1.196**. Because Vin-a.488 says that the phrase means that “it does not belong to the business and is not a form of offence”, I take the *ti* after *abboharika* to mean that the phrase was uttered by Gotama and not by the monks. The word seems to mean “not to the point, irrelevant.” See *Points of Controversy*, p.361, n.4. ² *Maggabhāvanā*, or making the (four) ways (to arahanship) become. But see Old Commentary’s definition, below, **BD.1.161**. ³ Repeated at Vin-a.489.

If (he) claims means: if he proclaims to a woman or a man, to a householder or one gone forth.

BD.1.160

This I know, this I see means: “I know these qualities, I see these qualities; these qualities are in me, and I conform to these qualities.”

After some time means: the moment, the second, the instant when the claim is completed.

Examined means: he is examined in regard to what he has acknowledged: “What was attained by you, how was it attained by you, when was it attained by you, where was it attained by you? Which defilements have you destroyed? Which qualities did you gain?”

Not means: nothing being said.

Having committed the offence means: having bad desires, being habitually desirous, claiming a non-existent, non-factual super-human achievement, he has committed an offence entailing expulsion.

Desiring purification means: he desires to be a householder, a lay follower, a monastery attendant or a *sāmaṇera*.¹

Friends, not knowing I said that I know, not seeing that I see means: “I do not know these qualities, I do not see these qualities; these qualities are not found in me, and I do not conform to these qualities.”

What I said was empty and false, means: what I said was empty, what I said was false, what I said was untruthful,² I said it without knowing.

Except if it is through overestimation means: setting aside overestimation of oneself.

He too means: this is said with reference to the preceding offences entailing expulsion.

BD.1.161

Is expelled means: just as a palm tree with the crown cut off is incapable³ of further growth, just so a monk with bad desires, who is habitually desirous, having claimed a non-existent, non-factual super-human achievement, is not a recluse, not a son of the Sakyan⁴—he is therefore called one

¹ Vin-a.492 says, “Inasmuch as being a house-man, a lay-follower, a park-keeper, or a probationer he is able (*bhabba*) to set going the way to heaven through giving, the refuges, morality and the restraints, or the way to freedom through musing and freedom, therefore the state of a householder and so on is called pure; therefore desiring this purity, he is said to be one desiring purity.” ² *Abhūta* ³ *abhabba*. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.97, where it is also said that the monk is not even to say that he delights in solitude.

who **is expelled**.

Not in communion means: **communion** means: a common official action, the same recital, the same training—this is called **communion**. He does not take part in this—he is therefore called **not in communion**.

PERMUTATIONS

SUMMARY

A super-human achievement¹ means: *jhāna*, emancipation, *samādhi*, attainment, knowledge and insight, development of the path, realisation of the fruits, abandoning the defilements, a mind without hindrances, delighting in solitude.

Bu-Pj.4.4.1

DEFINITIONS

Jhāna means: the first *jhāna*, the second *jhāna*, the third *jhāna*, the fourth *jhāna*.

Emancipation means: emptiness emancipation, signless emancipation, desireless emancipation.²

Vin.3.93

Samādhi means: emptiness *samādhi*, signless *samādhi*, desireless *samādhi*.

Attainment means: emptiness attainment, signless attainment, desireless attainment.

Knowledge and insight means: the three higher knowledges.

Development of the path means: the four focuses of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic potency, the five faculties, the

BD.1.162

¹ This definition=that given above, **BD.1.159**. From here to end of **Bu-Pj.4.4.1** below = **Vin.4.25-26**. ² Vin-a.493 says that void means void of passion, hatred and confusion. "Signless" and "in which there is no hankering" are also explained with reference to these three. At Ps.ii.35 the long homily begins: "Monks, there are these three kinds of freedom: that of the void, that of the signless, that in which there is no hankering." Cf. SN.iv.295 (where *appañihīta* is translated "aimless") Cf. Vism.658, Atthasālinī 223, where in the translation *appañihīta* is rendered "unhankered" and "undesired" respectively. At Mi.333, Mi.337 the translation is given as "the freedom (or concentration) in which no low aspirations remain." In translation of Ds.351, Ds.507ff. *appañihīta* is rendered "unaimed at."

five powers, the seven factors of awakening, the noble eightfold path.¹

Realisation of the fruits means: realisation of the fruit of stream-entry, realisation of the fruit of once-returning, realisation of the fruit of non-returning, realisation of the fruit of *arahantship*.

Abandoning the defilements means: the abandoning of sense desire, the abandoning of anger, the abandoning of confusion.²

A mind without hindrances means: the mind without sense desire, the mind without anger, the mind without confusion.

Delight in solitude means: Because of the first *jhāna* there is delight in solitude, because of the second *jhāna* ... because of the third *jhāna* ... because of the fourth *jhāna* there is delight in solitude.

EXPOSITION

First *jhāna*

Bu-Pj.4.4.2

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied, he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied.³

BD.1.163

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when four conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied, he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied; in misrepresenting his view (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when five conditions are fulfilled: before he

¹ This is the usual order in which these thirty-seven things helpful to enlightenment, as they are called in the Commentaries, appear. But another order is sometimes given. See Mrs. Rhys Davids, *Sakya* 395 and ks.V., vi. ff. ² Cf. SN.iv.251, where the definition of *nibbāna* is *ragakkhaya, dosakkhaya, mohakkhaya* (instead of *pahāna*, as above) = SN.iv.252 in definition of *arahatta*. Vin-a.494 says, “passion and hatred are destroyed by the third Way, confusion by the fourth Way.” ³ Here are three tenses of the verb *bhaṇati*: *bhaṇissamī, bhaṇāmi, bhaṇitamī*. Cf. Vin.4.2ff. to end of Bu-Pj.4.4.2 below. Cf. MN.i.414 where Gotama speaks to Rahula on “conscious lying.” This Rahulovada is famous as being alluded to in an Asoka Edict; see HULTZSCH, *Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*, vol.i, 1925, p.172, p.173.

has lied ... in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when six conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied ... in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied ... in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true); in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).¹

Bu-Pj.4.4.3

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I am attaining the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I have attained the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I obtain the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I master the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

Vin.3.94

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I have realised the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled

¹ These four psychological modalities are added to the three tenses of the verb *bhaṇati*. They are *diṭṭhi*, *khanti*, *ruci*, *bhāva*, which I have translated as opinion, approval, pleasure, intention, respectively. They are, as it were, added on to the three modes of the verb, thus making seven constituents. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.400 points out a contradiction in the Parivara (Vin.5.136), which attributes eight *aṅga* (literally limbs, thus constituents) to a lie, for it adds (*vinidhaya*-) *saññam*, knowledge, to the above seven. These expressions also occur at Vin.2.295; Vin.4.2ff. Cf. also Vb.245 where these with *ādāya*, a casually taken-up belief (cf. Vin.1.70), instead of *bhāva* are given in definition of *idha*, here, now. And cf. Mnd.64f. where *laddhi*, a religious belief, view, especially an heretical view, is substituted for *bhāva*. Three of these terms occur below at BD.1.305.

... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

As the first jhāna has been expounded in detail, so all (below) should be expanded

Other individual attainments

Bu-Pj.4.4.4

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the second *jhāna* ... the third *jhāna* ... the fourth *jhāna* ... I am attaining ... I have attained ... I obtain ... I master ... I have realised the fourth *jhāna*,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

BD.1.164

Bu-Pj.4.4.5

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the emptiness emancipation ... the signless emancipation ... the desireless emancipation¹ ... I am attaining ... I have attained ... I obtain ... I master ... I have realised the desireless emancipation,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the emptiness *samādhi* ... the signless *samādhi* ... the desireless *samādhi* ... I am attaining ... I have attained ... I obtain ... I master ... I have realised the desireless *samādhi*,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled

...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the emptiness attainment² ... the signless attainment ... the desireless attainment ... I am attaining ... I have attained ... I obtain ... I master ... I have realised the desireless attainment,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the three true knowledges ... I have realised the three true knowledges,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the four focuses of mindfulness ... the four right efforts ... the four bases of psychic potency ... I have realised the four bases of psychic potency,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the five faculties ... the five powers ... I have realised the five powers,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

¹ See above, [BD.1.161](#). ² Cf. [Vin.4.26ff.](#)

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the seven factors of awakening ... I have realised the seven factors of awakening," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the noble eightfold path ... I have realised the noble eightfold path," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the fruit of stream-entry ... the fruit of once-returning ... the fruit of non-returning ... *arahantship* ... I have realised *arahantship*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

BD.1.165

Vin.3.95

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I have given up sense desire, I have renounced sense desire, I have let go of sense desire, I have abandoned sense desire, I have relinquished sense desire, I have forsaken sense desire, I have thrown aside sense desire ... I have given up anger, I have renounced anger, I have let go of anger, I have abandoned anger, I have relinquished anger, I have forsaken anger, I have thrown aside anger ... I have given up confusion, I have renounced confusion, I have let go of confusion, I have abandoned confusion, I have relinquished confusion, I have forsaken confusion, I have thrown aside confusion," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "my mind is free from the hindrance of sense desire," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "my mind is free from the hindrance of anger ... confusion," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied; in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true); in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

The simple (permutations series) is finished

Combinations of two attainments

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “I attained the first *jhāna* and the second *jhāna* ... the first *jhāna* and the third *jhāna* ... the first *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* ... the first *jhāna* and the emptiness emancipation ... the first *jhāna* and the signless emancipation ... the first *jhāna* and the desireless emancipation ... the first *jhāna* and the emptiness *samādhi* ... the first *jhāna* and the signless *samādhi* ... the first *jhāna* and the desireless *samādhi* ... the first *jhāna* and the emptiness attainment ... the first *jhāna* and the signless attainment ... the first *jhāna* and the desireless attainment ... the first *jhāna* and the three true knowledges ... the first *jhāna* and the four focuses of mindfulness ... the first *jhāna* and the four right efforts ... the first *jhāna* and the four bases of psychic potency ... the first *jhāna* and the five faculties ... the first *jhāna* and the five powers ... the first *jhāna* and the seven factors of awakening ... the first *jhāna* and the noble eightfold path ... the first *jhāna* and the fruit of stream-entry ... the first *jhāna* and the fruit of once-returning ... the first *jhāna* and the fruit of non-returning ... the first *jhāna* and *arahantship* ... the first *jhāna* and I have given up sense desire, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside ... the first *jhāna* and I have given up anger, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside ... the first *jhāna* and I have given up confusion, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside ... the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of sense desire ... the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of anger ... the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion ... I am attaining the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion ... I have attained the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion ... I obtain the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion ... I master the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion ... I have realised the first *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied, he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied; in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true); in

Vin.3.96

BD.1.166

misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

The permutation of one part is finished

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the second *jhāna* and the third *jhāna* ... the second *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* ... the second *jhāna* and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ...

Bu-Pj.4.4.7

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the second *jhāna* and the first *jhāna* ... I have realised the second *jhāna* and the first *jhāna*," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ...

The contracted permutation is finished

Thus each item is to be dealt with in the same way as the contracted permutation. In brief:

Bu-Pj.4.4.8

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion and I attained the first *jhāna* ... the second *jhāna* ... the third *jhāna* ... the fourth *jhāna* ... the emptiness emancipation ... my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion and it is free from the hindrance of anger," there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ...

Vin.3.97

That which is based on one item is finished

The (sections) based on two items, three items, four items, five items, six items, seven items, eight items, nine items and ten items is to be given in detail in the same way as the (section) based on one item. This is the section based on all items:

Bu-Pj.4.4.9

Combination of all attainments

For one who deliberately lies, saying, "I attained the first *jhāna* and the second *jhāna* and the third *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* and the emptiness emancipation and the signless emancipation and the desireless emancipation and the emptiness *samādhi* and the signless *samādhi* and the desireless

BD.1.167

samādhi and the emptiness attainment and the signless attainment and the desireless attainment and the three true knowledges and the four focuses of mindfulness and the four right efforts and the four bases of psychic potency and the five faculties and the five powers and the seven factors of awakening and the noble eightfold path and the fruit of stream entry and the fruit of once-returning and the fruit of non-returning and *arahantship* ... I am attaining ... I have attained ... and I have given up sense desire, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside; and I have given up anger, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside; and I have given up confusion, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside; and my mind is free from the hindrance of sense desire; and my mind is free from the hindrance of anger; and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion,” there is an offence entailing expulsion when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied, he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied; in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true); in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

Section based on all items is finished

Meaning to say one thing, but saying something else

Bu-Pj.4.5.1

For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” while actually saying,¹ “I attained the second *jhāna*,” when the listener understands there is an offence entailing expulsion when there are three characteristics; when the listener does not understand there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” while actually saying, “I attained the third *jhāna* ... the fourth *jhāna*” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say,

BD.1.168

¹ *vattukama*, cf. Vism.522 = Vb-a.130. Oldenberg says, Vin.3.272, “the MSS. constantly read *vatthukāmo*, *vatthuvisārakassa*” (below). “I have no doubt that I was right in correcting *vattuk*°, *vattuv*°.” This is borne out by Vin-a.500f.

“I attained the first *jhāna*,” while actually saying, “my mind is free of the hindrance of confusion” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

The permutation of one part based on one expanded item is finished

For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the second *jhāna*,” while actually saying, “I attained the third *jhāna* ... the first *jhāna*” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ...

Bu-Pj.4.5.2
Vin.3.98

The contracted permutation based on one expanded item; the root in brief

For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “My mind is free of the hindrance of confusion,” while actually saying, “I attained the first *jhāna*” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “My mind is free of the hindrance of confusion” ... while actually saying, “My mind is free of the hindrance of anger” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ...

Bu-Pj.4.5.3

The (section) based on one expanded item is finished

The (sections) based on two items, three items ... ten items are to be done just so. This is the (section) based on all items:

Bu-Pj.4.5.4
BD.1.169

For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the first *jhāna* ... and my mind is free of the hindrance of anger,” while actually saying, “My mind is free of the hindrance of confusion,” when the listener understands there is an offence entailing expulsion when there are three characteristics; when the listener does not understand there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the second *jhāna* and the third *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* and the emptiness emancipation ... and *arahantship* and I have given up sense desire, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside; and I have given

up anger ... and I have given up confusion ... and my mind is free from the hindrance of sense desire ... of anger ... of confusion,” while actually saying, “I attained the first *jhāna*,” when the listener understands there is an offence entailing expulsion when there are three characteristics; when the listener does not understand there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “I attained the third *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* ... and my mind is free from the hindrance of confusion and I attained the first *jhāna*,” while actually saying, “I attained the second *jhāna*” ... there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, meaning to say, “My mind is free from the hindrance of confusion and I attained the first *jhāna* and the second *jhāna* and the third *jhāna* and the fourth *jhāna* ... and my mind is free from the hindrance of sense desire,” while actually saying, “My mind is free from the hindrance of anger,” when the listener understands there is an offence entailing expulsion when there are three characteristics; when the listener does not understand there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled ...

The section based on all expanded items is finished. The expanded permutation is finished

Gross hinting

Bu-Pj.4.6.1
BD.1.170
Vin.3.99

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “he who lived in your dwelling attained the first *jhāna* ... is attaining ... has attained ... obtains the first *jhāna* ... masters the first *jhāna* ... has realised the first *jhāna*,” when the listener understands there is a serious offence when three conditions are fulfilled; when the listener does not understand there is an offence of bad conduct when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true) ... For one who deliberately lies, saying, “he who lived in your dwelling attained the second *jhāna* ... the third *jhāna* ... the fourth *jhāna* ... the emptiness emancipation ... *arahantship* ... is attaining *arahantship* ... has realised *arahantship*” ... bad conduct when three conditions are fulfilled

... For one who deliberately lies, saying, “he who lived in your dwelling, that monk has given up sense desire ... has given up anger ... has given up confusion, renounced it, let it go, abandoned it, relinquished it, forsaken it, thrown it aside; that monk has a mind free from sense desire ... free from anger ... free from confusion” ... bad conduct when three conditions are fulfilled ... For one who deliberately lies, saying, “he who lives in your dwelling attained the first *jhāna* in an empty dwelling ... the second *jhāna* ... the third *jhāna* ... the fourth *jhāna* ... is attaining ... has attained ... obtains the fourth *jhāna* in an empty dwelling ... masters ... has realised the fourth *jhāna* in an empty dwelling” ... bad conduct when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied ... in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

The remainder should be expanded in the same way

For one who deliberately lies, saying, “he who made use of your dwelling ... who made use of your robes ... who made use of your almsfood ... who made use of your lodgings ... who made use of your medicinal requisites for the sick ... who has made use of your dwelling ... who has made use of your robes ... who has made use of your almsfood ... who has made use of your lodgings ... who has made use of your medicinal requisites for the sick ... because of whom you gave a dwelling ... because of whom you gave robes ... because of whom you gave almsfood ... because of whom you gave lodgings ... because of whom you gave medicinal requisites for the sick ... he attained the fourth *jhāna* in an empty dwelling ... he has realised the fourth *jhāna* in an empty dwelling,” when the listener understands there is a serious offence; when the listener does not understand there is an offence of bad conduct when three conditions are fulfilled ... when seven conditions are fulfilled: before he has lied, he knows he is going to lie; while lying, he knows he is lying; after he has lied, he knows he has lied; in misrepresenting his view (of what is true); in misrepresenting his belief (of what is true); in misrepresenting his acceptance (of what is true); in misrepresenting his sentiment (of what is true).

Bu-Pj.4.6.2

BD.1.171

Vin.3.100

The abbreviated fifteen are finished

NON-OFFENCE CLAUSE

Bu-Pj.4.7.1

There is no offence (if one makes the claim) because of overestimation; for one not intending to make a claim; for one who is insane; for one who is deranged; for one who is overwhelmed by pain; for the first offender.¹

CASE RULINGS

MNEMONIC LIST

Bu-Pj.4.8.1

Because of overestimation, in the wilderness, alms, a preceptor,² behaviour,
Fetters, qualities in private, a dwelling, attended on, /

Not difficult, energy, and then of death, fear friend, remorse,³ right,

BD.1.172

By energy, by being intent on exertion,⁴ then on feeling, two on enduring, /

Five stories on a brahmin, three on declaring final knowledge,

House, rejected sense-pleasures, then delight, set out, /

Bones and lump are both⁵ cattle-butchers,

the morsel is a poultry butcher, the sheep-butcher is flayed,

The pig-butcher has swords, a deer-hunter knives,

the torturer arrows, the horse trainer needles, /

The slanderer is sewn,

the corrupt magistrate has testicles that are a burden,

An adulterer is submerged in a pit,

the eater of dung was a wicked brahmin, /

The flayed woman was an adulteress,

¹ Vin-a.502 says that the monks from the banks of the Vaggumuda were beginners, therefore there was no offence for them. ² *Upajjhā*, a short form of *upajjhāya*, found in Vin.1.94; Vin.3.35; at Vin.4.326 *upajjhā* is feminine. ³ *Vippaṭṭisārī*: “strongly remembering something against (oneself), so generally ‘remorse,’” thus GS.iii.125, n.2 (on AN.iii.165=Pp.64). Cf. Vin.2.249=AN.iii.197 for the refrain: “there’s no need for remorse in thee,” which is the result of being exhorted on five scores on which no remorse ought to be set up. See GS.iii.145. The word is also sometimes translated “regret, repentance.” Although I have translated *kukkucam* hoti as “was remorseful” and although *kukkucca* and *vippaṭṭisārī* are often found together, I keep “remorseful” also for *vippaṭṭisārī*, for “regret” seems not forceful enough, and “repentance” is now by Westerners associated with “repenting of a sin”—an idea foreign to Buddhism. *Vippaṭṭisārī* comes near to “bad conscience,” which is also remembering something against oneself. Words for conscience are sadly lacking in Pali, but this may be an attempt to express the idea of it, emerging in the sixth century B.C. ⁴ These two on feeling, if that means physical pain, seem to be included in the next, “on giving in.” Or, and this is more likely and was suggested by Oldenberg, Vin.3.272, “two stories appear to be wanting”, i.e. those corresponding to *ārādhānāya* and *vedanāya*. ⁵ *Ubho*.

the ugly woman was a fortune-teller,
 The sweltering woman scattered coals on a co-wife,
 the beheaded one was an executioner, /
 A monk, a nun, a probationary nun,
 a novice monk, a novice nun,
 These having gone forth in the training of Kassapa
 did bad deeds just then,¹ /
 The Tapodā in Rājagaha, a fight,
 and on the plunging of elephants,
 The monk Sobhita, *arahant*, can recall five hundred eons.

CASE DETAILS, PART I

At one time a certain monk declared final knowledge² because of overestimation. He became anxious, thinking, “The Master has laid down a training rule. Could it be that I have committed an offence entailing expulsion?” He informed the Master ...

BD.1.173

“There is no offence, monk, when it is due to overestimation.”

At one time a certain monk lived in the wilderness because he wanted³ people to esteem him.⁴ People esteemed him. He became anxious ...

Bu-Pj.4.8.2

Vin.3.101

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, one should not live in the wilderness because of a wish.⁵ If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

At one time a certain monk was going for alms because he wanted people to esteem him. People esteemed him. He became anxious ...

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, one should not go for alms because of a wish. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

¹ *Tavade*. ² *Añña*. ³ *Paṇidhāya*, gerund of *paṇidahati*. Vin-a.502, *patthanam katvā*, making a wish, cf. Ja.i.68. For *paṇidhāya*, cf. AN.iii.249=AN.iv.461, translated in *Gradual Sayings* as “set on gaining.” SN-a.i.99 on SN.i.42 explains *paṇidhāya* by *ṭhapetvā*, establishing.

⁴ Vin-a.502, “May people esteem me living in the jungle as being at the stage of arahanship, or of a learner, then I will become revered by the world, venerated, respected, worshipped.

⁵ *Vatthabbam*, from \sqrt{vas} , to live, to dwell.

Bu-Pj.4.8.3

At one time a certain monk said to another monk, “Friend, those who are pupils of our preceptor are all *arahants*.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master.

“What was your intention, monk?”

“I wanted to make a claim, Master.”

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

BD.1.174

At one time a certain monk said to another monk, “Friend, those who are the students of our preceptor are all of great psychic potency, of great power.” He became anxious ...

“... but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.4

At one time a certain monk walked up and down because he wanted people to esteem him ... stood because he wanted people to esteem him ... sat because he wanted people to esteem him ... laid down because he wanted people to esteem him. People esteemed him. He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion. But, monks, one should not walk up and down ... stand ... sit ... lie down because of a wish. If one does, there is an offence of bad conduct.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.5

At one time a certain monk claimed a super-human achievement to another monk: “Friend, I have abandoned the fetters.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

“You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.6

At one time a certain monk claimed a super-human achievement in private.¹ Another monk, knowing the mind of that monk, rebuked him:

¹ According to Vin-a.503 he said, “I am an *arahan*,” but as he did this not (really) believing it in his mind (*na manasā cintitaṃ*), it was a *dukkata* offence.

“Don't speak like that, friend, you haven't got it.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

At one time a certain monk claimed a super-human achievement in private. A god rebuked him: “Bhante,¹ don't speak like that, you haven't got it.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

Vin.3.102

BD.1.175

“Monk, there is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is an offence of bad conduct.”

At one time a certain monk said to a certain lay-follower: “Friend, whatever monk lives in your dwelling is an *arahant*.” Now *he* lived in that dwelling.² He became anxious ...

Bu-Pj.4.8.7

“What was your intention, monk?”

“I wanted to make a claim, Master.”

“There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk said to a certain lay-follower: “Friend, the one you attend on with the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings and medicines for the sick, he is an *arahant*.” Now he was the one who was attended on with those requisites. He became anxious ...

“... but there is a serious offence.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him: “Venerable Sir, do you have any super-human achievement?”

Bu-Pj.4.8.8

“Friends, it is not difficult to attain.”

He became anxious and thought, “Those who are true disciples of the Master may speak thus, but I am not such a disciple.³ Could it be that I have committed an offence entailing expulsion?” He informed the Master.

¹ Note the way a fellow-monk uses *āvuso* in addressing a monk, while a non-monk, lay people, and, as here, a *devatā*, use *bhante*, honoured sir. ² I.e., the lay-follower's. ³ =below, [BD.1.180](#).

“What was your intention, monk?”

BD.1.176

“I did not intend to make a claim, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”¹

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him: “Venerable Sir, do you have any super-human achievement?”

“Friends, it is not difficult to declare final knowledge.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master.

“What was your intention, monk?”

“I did not intend to make a claim, Master.”²

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.9

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him: “Venerable Sir, do you have any super-human achievement?”

“Friends, an achievement is to be reached by one who is energetic.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him, “Friend, do not be afraid.”

“Friends, I am not afraid of death.” He became anxious ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

Vin.3.103

BD.1.177

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him: “Friend, do not be afraid.”

“Friends, one who is remorseful³ might be afraid.” He became anxious ...

¹ *Anullapanādhippāyassa*. Vin-a.502 says, *kohaññe icchācāre aṭṭatvā*, not wanting to have his needs filled by hypocrisy (or deceit). *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives, “not intending to show off, to impose,” under *anulla*°. ² Vin-a.503, “it is not difficult for a virtuous man, who has set insight going to declare profound knowledge, he is competent to attain arahanship.” But this monk did not reckon himself in this category. ³ *Vippaṭṭisārī*, cf. above, **BD.1.171, n.3**. Vin-a.504, “let the monk in whom remorse arises be afraid, but I am not remorseful, the moral precepts are completely pure, why then should I be afraid of death?”

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him: “Venerable Sir, do you have any super-human achievement?”

“Friends, an achievement is to be reached by one who is rightly intent.”¹ He became anxious ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill ...

“Friends, an achievement is to be reached by one who is energetic.”² He became anxious ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill ...

“Friends, an achievement is to be reached by one who is intent on exertion.”³ He became anxious ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill. The monks said to him:

“We hope, friend, that you are bearing up, we hope that you are comfortable?”

“Friends, it is not possible for just anyone to endure this.” He became anxious ... He informed the Master ...

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time a certain monk was ill ...

“Friends, it is not possible for an ordinary person to endure this.”⁴ He became anxious ...

¹ *Sammā payuttana*. ² As above, **BD.1.176**. ³ *Yuttayoga*. This word also occurs at Ja.i.65 and is translated “devout” (*Buddhist Birth Stories*, second edition, p.178). *Yuñjati* (of which *yutta* is past participle) occurs at Ja.iv.131, Ja.v.369, with *ghaṭati vāyamati*, all meaning to strive, to endeavour. *Yoga* (*yogya*) has sense of “fit for.” ⁴ Vin-a.504, surrounding him.

“Monk, what was your intention?”

“I intended to make a claim, Master.”

“There is no offence entailing expulsion, but there is a serious offence.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.11

At one time a certain brahmin invited the monks: “Let the good sirs, the *arahants*, come.”¹

They became anxious and said: “But we are not *arahants*, and yet this brahmin addresses us as if we were. What should we do?” They informed the Master.

“Monks, there is no offence in regard to what is spoken in faith.”

BD.1.179

At one time a certain brahmin invited the monks: “Let the good sirs, the *arahants*, be seated ... Let the good sirs, the *arahants*, eat ... Let the good sirs, the *arahants*, be satisfied ... Let the good sirs, the *arahants*, go” ...

They became anxious and said ...

“Monks, there is no offence in regard to what is spoken in faith.”²

Bu-Pj.4.8.12

At one time a certain monk claimed a super-human achievement to another monk: “Friend, I have abandoned the corruptions.” He became anxious ...

“You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

¹ *āyantū*, from *ā* + *√i* and meaning *āgacchantū*. Vin-a.504, “Whoever said this would also have said: ‘Prepare seats for all the *arahans*, give water for washing the feet, let the *arahans* wash their feet.’” ² *Pasādabhaññe*. Apart from the meaning of this very rare word, it is noteworthy that it is in the locative, instead of, as is usually the case after *āpatti* and *anāpatti*, in the genitive. Vin-a.504 says, “The meaning being: instigated (*samussāhitassa*) through his own power of faith, being one who goes by faith.” Cf. for *bhaññā* (for which *Pali-English Dictionary* refers to *bhā*) Ja.v.317, Ja.v.318. The former of these passages reads *bhaññā* with variant reading *haññā*, *bhuññā*, and the latter explains by saying *bhā tiratanass’ etaṃ nāmaṃ*. But I think that here *bhaññā* derives from *√bhāṣ*, to speak, and not from *√bhās*, to shine. At AN.ii.31; SN.iii.72; MN.iii.78 we find *Ukkalā vassa-bhaññā*. KS.iii.63 translates *vassa-bhaññā* as “preachers in retreat” — i.e., during *vassa*, the rains. But SN-a.ii.279 says *vasso ca Bhañño ca*, and evidently means that these are names of people in certain districts, like *Ukkala-janapada-vāsino*; while MN-a.iv.136 declares this to be the case: *Vasso ca Bhañño cā ti dve janā*. Cf. *Points of Controversy* 95, n.2. I do not, however, think that the *pasāda-bhaññe* of Vinaya above can refer to the *Bhañña* people.

At one time a certain monk ... “Friend, I have these qualities.” He became anxious ...

Vin.3.104

“You, monk, have committed an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time a certain monk ... “Friend, I conform to these qualities.” He became anxious ...

“You, monk, have committed an offence entailing expulsion.”

At one time the relations of a certain monk said to him: “Come, bhante, live in a house.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.13

“Friends, one like me is incapable of living in a house.” He became anxious ...

“There is no offence, monk, for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time the relations of a certain monk said to him: “Come, bhante, enjoy the pleasures of the senses.”

“Friends, the pleasures of the senses have been rejected by me.”¹ He became anxious ...

BD.1.180

“There is no offence, monk, for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

At one time the relations of a certain monk said to him: “Come, bhante, enjoy yourself.”²

“Friends, I am enjoying myself with the highest enjoyment.”³

He became anxious, thinking: “Those who are true disciple of the Master may speak thus, but I am not such a disciple.⁴ Could it be that I have committed an offence entailing expulsion?” He informed the Master.

¹ Vin-a.505, *āvaṭṭa ti āvāritā nivāritā paṭikkhittā ti attho*. Had they in truth been rejected he would have been an arahant. Before they attained this supreme state, monks were not indifferent to the beauties of nature, as for example some of the Theragāthā show. ² On *abhirati* and *abhiramati* see above, [BD.1.114](#). ³ Vin-a.505, “the monk says, ‘Because there is no lack of exposition and questionings on the teaching, and because I enjoy this state of things, I say I am enjoying myself with the highest enjoyment.’” ⁴ =above, [BD.1.175](#).

“Monk, what was your intention?”

“I did not intend to make a claim, Master.”

“There is no offence for one who does not intend to make a claim.”

Bu-Pj.4.8.14

At one time a number of monks entered the rains in a certain monastery, making this agreement: “Whoever sets out from this monastery first, we will know as an *arahant*.”

A certain monk thought, “let them know me as an *arahant*,” and he set out first from that monastery. He became anxious. He informed the Master

...

“You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing expulsion.”

CASE DETAILS, PART 2

Bu-Pj.4.9.1

At one time¹ the Buddha, the Master, was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels’ feeding place. Now at that time Venerable Lakkhaṇa² and Venerable Mahāmoggallāna were staying on Mount Vulture’s Peak. Then, in the morning, Venerable Mahāmoggallāna dressed, took his bowl and robe, approached Venerable Lakkhaṇa and said: “Friend Lakkhaṇa, let us enter Rājagaha for alms.”

“Yes, friend,” Venerable Lakkhaṇa replied.

Vin.3.105

Then, as he was descending from Mount Vulture’s Peak, Venerable Mahāmoggallāna smiled at a certain place. Venerable Lakkhaṇa said to him: “Friend, why are you smiling?”

“This is not the right time, friend, for this question. Ask me in the presence of the Master.”

Bu-Pj.4.9.2

¹ SN.ii.254–262 from here to end of Bu-Pj.4.9.3 below. ² Vin-a.506 = SN-a.ii.216, “He from among a thousand Jaṭilas (matted hair ascetics) received the ‘Come, monk’ for *upasampadā* ordination. He attained arahanship at the end of the Discourse on Burning. He should be called one great disciple (*eko mahā-sāvako*). Inasmuch as he is endowed with this mark and is possessed of a Brahma-like existence, he is called Lakkhaṇa. Mahā-Moggallāna, the second great disciple, attained arahanship on the seventh day after he had gone forth into homelessness.” This mention of Moggallāna as second to Lakkhaṇa is curious, for in the Suttas he is only ever linked with Sāriputta. See Vin.1.33ff. for the story of the conversion of the Jaṭilas.

Then, after their meal and after returning from alms-round, Venerable Lakkhaṇa and Venerable Mahāmoggallāna approached the Master and sat down to one side. Venerable Lakkhaṇa then said to Venerable Mahāmoggallāna:

“Just now, as the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna was descending from Mount Vulture’s Peak, he smiled at a certain place. Why, friend, did you smile?”

“As I was coming down from Mount Vulture’s Peak, I saw a skeleton flying through the air,¹ and vultures, crows and hawks² were in close pursuit, striking it³ between the ribs,⁴ while it uttered cries of distress. Then, friend, I thought how amazing and astounding it is that such a being should exist, such a spirit, such a state of existence.”⁵

BD.1.182

The monks criticized and denounced him: “Venerable Mahāmoggallāna is claiming a super-human achievement.”⁶

Then the Master addressed the monks:

Monks, there are disciples who possess vision and knowledge,⁷ such that they can see, know and witness such a thing. Previously I too have seen that being, but I didn’t speak about it. If I had, others would not have believed me and that would have been for their harm and suffering for long time. That being, monks, was a cattle butcher⁸ in this very Rājagaha. As

BD.1.183

¹ *Vehāsagata*, or going above ground, cf. above, BD.1.79, n.7. ² Vin-a.507 calls these *yakkha* vultures, *yakkha* crows and *yakkha* hawks, probably meaning that these birds eat flesh. Cf. the predatory *yakkhas*, above, BD.1.146. ³ *Vitudenti*. Vin-a.507 reads *vituddhenti ti vinivijjhivā gacchanti vitudenti ti* (variant reading *vitudenti ti*) *vā pāṭho*. SN.ii.255 reads *vitacchenti vibhajenti*, as in the cases below, with variant reading *vitudenti* for *vitacchenti* and omitting *vibhajenti*. ⁴ *Pāsuḷa*, with variant reading *pāsula*; SN.ii.255 reads *phāsula*. ⁵ *Attabhāvapaṭilābha*. ⁶ Omitted at SN.ii.255. ⁷ *Cakkhubhūta*, *bhūta* being past participle of *bhavati*. At AN.v.226 the *tathāgata* is called *cakkhubhūto nāṇabhūto* (as above) and *dhamma-bhūto brahmabhūto*, translated at GS.v.157 “he has become the eye, he has become knowledge,” etc. Vin-a.508 says, *cakkhubhūtaṃ jataṃ uppannaṃ tesā ti cakkhubhūtā, bhūta-cakkhukā uppannacakkhukā. Cakkhuṃ uppadevva viharanti dutiyapade pi es’ eva nayo*. AN-a on AN.v.226) (Siamese edition) says, *cakkhubhūto ti cakkhu viya bhūto nibbatto. Nāṇabhūto ti nāṇasabhāvo*. (AN-a also explains *bhūta* in *dhamma°* and *brahma°* by *sabhāva*.) ⁸ Vin-a.508, “at the time of his passing from the Pit (*naraka*) his outward appearance was a mass of bones ... he has arisen as a departed one (*peta*) who is a skeleton.” Of his deeds, *tassa kamma* explained *Tassa nānācetanāhi āyūhi tassa aparāpariyakamma*.

a result of his deeds he was tormented¹ in hell for many years, for many hundreds of years, for many thousands of years, for many hundreds of thousands of years. And now, because of the remaining result of his actions, he is experiencing such a state of existence. Moggallāna spoke truly. There is no offence for Moggallāna.”²

Bu-Pj.4.9.3

“As I was coming down from Mount Vulture’s Peak, I saw a lump of flesh flying through the air, and vultures, crows and hawks were in close pursuit, tearing at it and pulling it to pieces, while it uttered cries of distress.” ...

Vin.3.106

“Monks, that being was a cattle-butcher in this very Rājagaha. ...”

BD.1.184

“As I was coming down from Mount Vulture’s Peak, I saw a morsel of flesh flying through the air, and vultures, crows and hawks were in close pursuit, tearing at it and pulling it to pieces,³ while it uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was a poultry butcher⁴ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down from Mount Vulture’s Peak, I saw a flayed man flying through the air, and vultures, crows and hawks were in close pursuit,

¹ *paccivā*, passive of *pacati*. *Paccati* is literally to be boiled or cooked, *Pali-English Dictionary* saying, “Nearly always applied to the torture of boiling in *niraya*, where it is meant literally.” But I think that the idea (found in the active) of ripening and maturing for the next rebirth is also intended. The context brings out this point. One was not condemned to eternal damnation. Vin-a.508 also emphasises this by saying that through what remained of the result of his deeds after his reinstatement (*paṭisandhi*) in *naraka*, he took on reinstatement again—among the *petas*. I have translated *paccivā* literally, since for lack of an English word to express the idea of being boiled to a ripeness which entails a change, it seems to me preferable to “has been punished” (KS.ii.170), as this conveys the idea still less of the past deeds maturing until the individual is ready for a new rebirth. ² Omitted at SN.ii.256.

³ Cf. MN.i.364, where the simile is possibly taken from this Vinaya passage. MN.i.364 reads, *vitaccheyyūṃ virajeyyūṃ*, translated *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.261, “to tear and rend it.” *Virajenti* is a variant reading for *vibhajenti* at both Vin.3.105 above and SN.ii.256, and it would not seem unintelligible in these contexts. ⁴ Vin-a.509, “at the time of his passing from the Pit (*naraka*) his outward appearance was a piece of flesh, therefore he arose as a departed one who is a piece of flesh.”

tearing at him and pulling him to pieces, while he uttered cries of distress.”

...

“Monks, that being was a sheep-butcher¹ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down from Mount Vulture’s Peak, I saw a man who had body hairs of swords flying through the air. Again and again those sword went in and out of his body, while he uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was a butcher of pigs² in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man with body hairs of knives flying through the air. Again and again those knives went in and out of his body, while he uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was a deer-hunter³ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man with body hairs of arrows flying through the air. Again and again those arrows ...

“Monks, that being was a torturer⁴ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

As I was coming down ... I saw a man with body hair of needles flying through the air. Again and again those needles ...

“Monks, that being was a horse trainer⁵ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

BD.1.185

¹ *orabbhika*, Vin-a.509, *elake vidhitvā*, having skinned them during his life, afterwards his appearance was that of a skinless ram’s body, and therefore he has arisen as a departed one who is flayed (*nicchavipeto*). ² He killed the pigs with swords, thus his outward appearance is the state of having drawn swords, thus he has arisen as a departed one who has swords for hair. ³ His outward appearance is a state of being struck with knives, because he killed the deer with knives. ⁴ *Kāraṇika*, but judge at ks.ii.171, which has note “cruel to criminals.” According to the Commentaries “a man causing death, shooting with arrows,” *kaṇḍena vijjhita*. Hence possibly the confusion, *Pali-English Dictionary*, referring only to SN.ii.257, and saying, “*usu*°, however, used simply in the sense of making: arrow-maker, fletcher.” ⁵ *sārathi*. SN.ii.257 reads, *sūcako* here as in the next example. Translator at ks.ii.172 suggests *sūto* for *sūcako*. Both words, according to *Pali-English Dictionary*, mean charioteer or coachman, but Vin-a.509 and SN-a.ii.220 (under *sūto*, with note that title in text *sūci-sārathi*) speak of horse-tamer, cow-tamer.

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man with body hairs of needles flying through the air. Those needles pierced his head and came out through his mouth, entered his mouth and came out through his breast, entered his breast and came out through his stomach, entered his stomach and came out through his thighs, entered his thighs and came out through his calves, entered his calves and came out through his feet, while he uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was a slanderer in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man who had testicles like pots¹ flying through the air. When he walked, he had to lift his testicles on to his shoulder, when he sat down he sat on top of his testicles. Vultures, crows and hawks were in close pursuit, tearing at him and pulling him to pieces, while he uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was a corrupt magistrate in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man, head and all, submerged in a dung-pit ...”

BD.1.186

“Monks, that being was an adulterer in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a man, head and all, submerged in a dung-pit and eating dung with both hands ...”

Vin.3.107

“Monks, that being was a wicked brahmin in this very Rājagaha. At the time of Kassapa, the fully Awakened One, he invited the Sangha of monks to a meal. He filled a trough with dung, announced the time and said: ‘Sirs, eat as much as you like and take the rest away with you.’ ...”

¹ *kumbhaṇḍa*. Note word-play on *aṇḍa*. Vin-a.510 = SN-a.ii.220 says, *kumbhamattā mahāghaṭappamāṇā aṇḍā ahesuṃ*, while Ja.iii.147 defines as *kumbhamattarahassaṅgā mahodarā yakkhā*. Our Commentaries say that as he had made others suffer by his secret wrong-doing, so now he suffers in his secret organs. At DN-a.i.73 a *kumbhaṇḍa* is placed on the back of a horse as a sign of instability. *Kumbhaṇḍī* at Vism.183, in connection with *latā*, creeper, translated “pumpkin.” This is evidently the secondary meaning of the word.

“As I was coming down ... I saw a flayed woman flying through the air. Vultures ... were pulling her to pieces, while she uttered cries of distress ...”

“Monks, this woman was an adulteress¹ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a foul-smelling and ugly woman flying through the air. Vultures ... were pulling her to pieces ...”

“Monks, that woman was a fortune-teller² in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a woman who was roasting, sweltering and sooty³ flying through the air ... while she uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, this woman was the chief queen of the King of Kālinga. Being the jealous sort, she threw out her rival⁴ and scattered a brazier of burning coals over her. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw the headless trunk of a body flying through the air. Its eyes and mouth were on its chest. Vultures ... were pulling it to pieces while it uttered cries of distress.” ...

“Monks, that being was an executioner called Hārīka⁵ in this very Rājagaha. ...”

“As I was coming down ... I saw a monk flying through the air. His outer robe was ablaze and burning,⁶ his bowl was ablaze and burning, his waistband was ablaze and burning, his body was ablaze and burning, and he was uttering cries of distress.” ...

¹ Inasmuch as she got her pleasures with other men, not with her own husband, she is reborn flayed so as to undergo a painful contact, being deprived of pleasant touch. Vin-a.510.

² Vin-a.511, deceiving the people by taking gifts of flowers and perfumes from them, saying, “now there will be increase for you.” ³ *upakkam okiliniṃ okiriniṃ*. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.511

says, “she fell on to a heap of coals ... therefore, she is shrivelled by the agonising fires, *okilini*, and her body inflamed, drop upon drop oozing from her body, *okiriṇi*, and surrounded by charcoal; from below the charcoal was on both sides of her, like the red flowers of the *kiṃsuka* tree; the charcoal fell from the air on her.” ⁴ She was a dancer who had pleased the King by massaging him.

⁵ Vin-a.512, for a long time he had beheaded thieves at the king's command. Therefore he was reborn headless. ⁶ Quoted at MN-a.i.91, and said to refer to the monk Kapila. Vin-a mentions no names.

“Monks, during the time of the Buddha Kassapa’s dispensation, that monk was a bad monk.”¹

“As I was coming down ... I saw a nun ... I saw a probationary nun ... a novice monk ... a novice nun² flying through the air. Her outer robe was ablaze and burning, her bowl was ablaze and burning, her waistband was ablaze and burning, her body was ablaze and burning, and she was uttering cries of distress. Then, friend, I thought how amazing and astounding it is that such a being should exist, such a spirit, such a state of existence.”

The monks criticised and denounced him: “Venerable Moggallāna is claiming a super-human achievement.”³

Then the Master addressed the monks:

BD.1.188
Vin.3.108

“Monks, there are disciples who possess vision and knowledge such that they can see, know and witness such a thing. Previously, monks, I too have seen this novice nun, but I did not speak about it. If I had, others would not have believed me and that would have been for their harm and suffering for long time. During the time of Buddha Kassapa’s dispensation, that novice nun was a bad novice nun. As a result of her deeds, she was tormented in hell for many years, for many hundreds of years, for many thousands of years, for many hundreds of thousands of years. And now, because of the remaining result of her actions, she is experiencing such a state of existence. Moggallāna spoke truly. There is no offence for Moggallāna.”

Bu-Pj.4.9.4

Then Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed the monks:

“Friends, this stream the Tapodā flows from a lake with beautiful water—cool, sweat and pure—with lovely and charming fords, with an abundance of fishes and turtles, and with blooming lotuses the size of wheels. And yet the Tapodā is hot.”

The monks criticised and denounced him: “How can the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna say, ‘Friends, this stream the Tapodā flows from a lake of

¹ He went about enjoying himself to his heart’s content, therefore he was boiled in hell for an interval between Buddhas, and then arising in a *peta*-world he arose with an existence like a monk. ² Feminine in Table of Contents, above, [BD.1.172](#). ³ Omitted at [SN.ii.261](#).

beautiful water ... And yet this Tapodā is hot.' Venerable Mahāmoggallāna is claiming a super-human achievement." And they informed the Master.

"Monks, the Tapodā flows from a lake of beautiful water ... with blooming lotuses the size of wheels. But the Tapodā runs between the two great hells,¹ that is why it is hot. Moggallāna spoke truly. There is no offence for Moggallāna."

BD.1.189

At one time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha was defeated in battle with the Licchavis. Then the king collected his armies and beat the Licchavis. Delight about the battle spread about: "The Licchavis were defeated by the king!"

Bu-Pj.4.9.5

Then the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed the monks: "Friends, the king was defeated by the Licchavis."

The monks criticised and denounced him: "How can Venerable Moggallāna say, 'Friends, the king was defeated by the Licchavis,' when delight about the battle is spreading about thus: 'The Licchavis were defeated by the king!' The Venerable Mahāmoggallāna is claiming a super-human achievement." They informed the Master.

"Monks, first the king was defeated by the Licchavis and then, after he had collected his army, the king beat the Licchavis. Moggallāna spoke truly. There is no offence for Moggallāna."

Vin.3.109

Then the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed the monks: "Friends, after attaining an imperturbable *samādhi* on the banks of the river Sappinikā,² I heard the noise of elephants plunging in, emerging and trumpeting."³

Bu-Pj.4.9.6

¹ *Tapoda* means "boiling waters." Vin-a.512, says, "they say that the town of Rajagaha is near the world of the departed, and this Tapoda comes there between the two great red pits of the hells." Cf. below, BD.1.274, n.6. At AN.v.196 Ānanda and the wanderer Kokanuda went to this river to bathe their limbs. ² Mentioned also at SN.i.153; AN.ii.29, AN.ii 176, Sappinī; at AN.i.185, Sappinikā; cf. also *Vinaya Texts* i.254, n.2. Usually translated the "Snake River." The wanderers had a park on its banks. It was near Rājagaha. ³ Vin-a.513, "plunging down into the deep water, and bathing and drinking there, and taking up water with their trunks, they mingle together and cross over."

BD.1.190 The monks criticised and denounced him: “How can Venerable Mahā-moggallāna say such a thing. He is claiming a super-human achievement.” They informed the Master.

“Monks, there is such a *samādhi*, but it is not wholly purified.¹ Moggallāna spoke truly. There is no offence for Moggallāna.”

Bu-Pj.4.9.7

Then the Venerable Sobhita² addressed the monks: “Friends, I can recall five hundred eons.”

The monks criticised and denounced him: “How can Venerable Sobhita say, ‘I can recall five hundred eons’? He is claiming a super-human achievement.” They informed the Master.

“Monks, Sobhita has this ability, and that was just one birth. Sobhita spoke truly. There is no offence for Sobhita.”

The fourth offence entailing expulsion is finished

BD.1.191 Venerables, the four rules entailing expulsion have been recited. If a monk commits any one of them, he is no longer in communion with the monks. As before,³ so after, he is expelled and not in communion. In regard to this I ask the Venerable ones: are you pure in this? A second time I ask: are you pure in this? A third time I ask: are you pure in this? The Venerable ones are pure in this and therefore silent. I will remember it thus.

¹ *parisuddha*. Vin-a.513f. “They say that the *thera* attained arahanship on the seventh day after he went forth, and had mastery in the eight attainments, but not having purified himself well in the obstructions to contemplation ... and rising up from musing and hearing the sound of the elephants, he heard it between the attainments. Of this he was aware.”

² AN.i.25 says, that he is the chief of the monks remembering his former rebirths. In his verses, Thag.165, Thag.166, he twice repeats that he remembered five hundred *kalpas* in a single night. At Atthasālinī 32 he is said to be the third in the line of *theras* who conveyed the Abhidhamma up to the time of the Third Council. ³ *Vinaya Texts* i.5, n.2, says that the phrase *yathā pure tathā pacchā* “probably means that the monk is irrevocably defeated. He must remain for ever in the condition (of permanent exclusion from the Order) into which he has brought himself.” Vin-a.516 says, “as in his time as a householder, at the time when he was not (yet) ordained, and as after when he has fallen into defeat, he is not in communion; there is not for him communion with the monks at the *Upasatha* (observance-day), the *pavaraṇā* (ceremony at the end of the rains), under the rule of the Pātimokkha, or at the legal acts of the Order.”

Sexual intercourse, stealing, person, super,
 the four offences entailing expulsion,
 the foundation is cut¹ without a doubt.

Vin.3.110

The chapter on offences entailing expulsion is finished

¹ *Chejjavatthu*. See *chejja* (\sqrt{ched}) above, **BD.1.75**, meaning maiming.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 1

BD.1.192
Bu-Ss.1.1.1

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. Now at that time the venerable Seyyasaka¹ led the Brahma-life, dissatisfied.² Because of this he was thin, wretched, his colour bad, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body.³ The venerable Udāyin saw the venerable Seyyasaka thin, wretched, his colour bad, yellowish, his veins showing all over his body. Seeing him thus, he said to the venerable Seyyasaka: "Reverend Seyyasaka, why are you thin, wretched ... the veins showing all over your body? Perhaps it is that you, reverend Seyyasaka, lead the Brahma-life, dissatisfied?"

"It is so, your reverence," he said.

"Now then, you, reverend Seyyasaka, eat as much as you like, sleep as much as you like, bath⁴ as much as you like: eating as much as you like, sleeping as much as you like, bathing as much as you like, if dissatisfaction arises in you and passion assails⁵ your heart, then emit semen using your hand."⁶

BD.1.193

¹ At *Vin.2.7ff.* he is represented as being tiresome in various ways. ² *anabhirato* see above, *BD.1.114*, for discussion on this term. *Vin-a.517* says on this term, *vikkhittacitto kāmarāgapariḷāhena pariḍayhamāno na pana gīhibhāvam patthayamāno*, upset in his mind, burning with a fever of passion and sense-desires, but not wanting the household state.

³ Stock-phrase. ⁴ *Vin-a.517*, anointing the body with clay, rubbing on *chunam*. ⁵ A stock-phrase, *rāgo cittaṃ anuddhamseti*, as at *MN.i.26*; *SN.i.186*; *AN.ii.126*. *Vin-a.518* says, *kāmarāgo cittaṃ dhamseti padhamseti vikkhipati c'eva milāpeti ca*. *MN-a.1.142* explains *anuddhamsesati* by *hiṃsissati adhibhavissati*. ⁶ *Vin-a.518*, "Thus will your mind become one-pointed. The teacher is said to have taught this." At *Vin-a.517* it is said that Seyyasaka's teacher is Lāludāyin, "an unsteady monk." This *thera* Lāludāyin is mentioned at *Dhp-a.2.123* as having the reputation of saying the wrong thing; at *Ja.1.123* as coming into conflict with Dabba the Mallian over food-tickets; and at *Ja.2.164* as being extremely nervous and unable to talk.

“But, your reverence, are you sure that it is suitable to act like this?”

“Yes, your reverence, I do this.”

Then the venerable Seyyasaka ate as much as he liked, slept as much as he liked, bathed as much as he liked; but having eaten as much as he liked, slept as much as he liked, bathed as much as he liked, dissatisfaction arose, and passion assailed his heart, so he emitted semen using his hand. Then in a short time the venerable Seyyasaka was nice-looking with rounded features, of a bright complexion and a clear skin. So the monks who were the friends of the venerable Seyyasaka spoke thus to the venerable Seyyasaka:

“Formerly, reverend Seyyasaka, you were thin, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, with the veins showing all over your body. But now, at present, you are nice-looking with rounded features, of a bright complexion and a clear skin. Why now, do you take medicine,¹ reverend Seyyasaka?”

Vin.3.111

“I do not take medicine, your reverences, but I am eating as much as I like, I am sleeping as much as I like, I am bathing as much as I like; then eating as much as I like, sleeping as much as I like, bathing as much as I like, if dissatisfaction arises in me and passion assails the heart, I emit semen using my hand.”

“But do you, reverend Seyyasaka, eat the gifts of faith² with the very same hand as that which you use to emit semen?”

Bu-Ss.1.1.2

“Yes, your reverences,” he said.

Those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed and angry, saying:

“How can the venerable Seyyasaka emit semen in this way?”

BD.1.194

Then these monks, having rebuked the venerable Seyyasaka in various ways, told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the order of monks convened, asked the venerable Seyyasaka:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Seyyasaka, using your hand, emit semen?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

¹ *bhesajjaṃ karosi.* ² *saddhā-deyya*, Vin-a. is silent, but Dhp-a.1.81 explains as *kammaṅ ca phalaṅ ca idhalokaṅ ca paralokaṅ ca saddahitvā dinnāni.*

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “It is not fit, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not right, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, emit semen using your hand? Foolish man, have I not uttered *dhamma* in many ways for the stilling of passion,¹ and not for the sake of passion, taught *dhamma* for the sake of being devoid of the fetters, and not for the sake of being bound, taught *dhamma* for the sake of being without grasping,² and not for the sake of grasping? How can you, foolish man, while *dhamma* is taught by me for the sake of passionlessness, strive after passion? How can you, while *dhamma* is taught for the sake of being devoid of the fetters, strive after being bound? How can you, while *dhamma* is taught for the sake of being without grasping, strive after grasping? Foolish man, have I not taught *dhamma* in various ways for the stilling of passion, taught *dhamma* for the subduing of conceit, for the restraint of thirst, for the elimination of attachment, for the cutting through the round of becomings, for the destruction of craving, for passionlessness, for stopping, for waning? Foolish man, have I not declared in various ways the destruction of the pleasures of the senses, declared the full understanding of ideas of the pleasures of the senses, declared the restraint of the thirst for pleasures of the senses, declared the elimination of thoughts of pleasures of the senses, declared the allaying of the fever of pleasures of the senses? Foolish man, it is not for the benefit of unbelievers, nor for increase in the number of believers, but it is, foolish man, to the detriment of unbelievers as well as of believers, and it causes wavering in some.”

BD.1.195

Then the lord having rebuked the venerable Seyyasaka in various ways on account of his difficulty in maintaining his state ... said:

Vin.3.112

“... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

¹ = above, **BD.1.35**, except that in this second passage the lord is represented as speaking. Cf. AN.ii.34. ² *Anupādāna, sa-upādāna.*

Intentional emission of semen is a matter entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”¹

Thus this course of training for monks was made known to the lord.

Now at that time, monks, having eaten abundant food, went to sleep, thoughtless and careless. While they were sleeping, thoughtless and careless, one of them emitted semen as the result of a dream. These were remorseful and said²: “The course of training made known by the lord says that intentional emission of semen is a matter requiring a formal meeting of the Order; and because of a dream one of us (did this). Now is this intention permitted? What now if we have fallen into an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order?” They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Monks, this was the intention, but it does not apply.³ monks, this course of training should be set forth:

Intentional emission of semen except during a dream is an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order.”

Intentional means: a transgression committed knowingly, consciously, deliberately.⁴

Semen means: there are* ten kinds of semen ...

Emission means: the removal from the place is called emission.

Except during a dream means: setting the dream aside.

¹ *Saṅghādisesa*. Cf. AN.ii.242. Vin-a.522 says, *saṅgho ādimhi c’ eva sese ca icchitabbo assā ti saṅghādiseso*. This explanation was noted by CHILDERS: an offence to be dealt with by a *saṅghakamma* in the beginning, *ādi* and in the remaining cases, *sesa*. See below, Old Commentary’s explanation which makes clear the first stage, the placing on probation; the second stage of sending back to the beginning of the probation; the third stage, the *mānatta* discipline; and the last stage, the rehabilitation. This type of offence is next in gravity after the *Pārājikas*. Because it cannot be settled by many people or by one man (Old Commentary) it therefore has to be settled by the Order, which presumably has to be convened for the purpose, as the above incident shows. Editor at *Vinaya Texts* i.7, n.1, notes that, “these thirteen offences give rise to the various *saṅghakammas* ... which are explained in detail in the third Khandhaka of the *Cūlavagga*.” ² These first sentences recur at [Vin.1.294](#). Cf. [Kv.164](#) where the matter of this story formed the controverted point of one of the early debates on arahans. ³ =above, [BD.1.159](#), and see n.1. ⁴ =above, [BD.1.126](#), and see n.3.

Offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order means: the Order places him on probation¹ on account of the offence, it sends him back to the beginning,² it inflicts the *mānatta* discipline,³ it rehabilitates⁴; it is not many people, it is not one man; therefore it is called an offence which in the earlier as well as the later stages (requires) a formal meeting of the Order. A synonym for this class of offence is a work;⁵ therefore, again, it is called (an offence which in the earlier as well as the later stages requires) a formal meeting of the Order.⁶

BD.1.197

Bu-Ss.1.3.1

(The whole of **Bu-Ss.1.3**, Vin.3.112–Vin.3.115, because of the outspokenness and crudeness which it contains, and which seems to be inseparable from early literatures, appears unsuitable for incorporation in a translation designed principally for Western readers.)

He aims at it, makes the effort, it is emitted—an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. He aims at it, makes the effort, it is not emitted—a grave offence. He aims at it, does not make the effort, it is emitted—not an offence. He aims at it, does not make the effort, it is not emitted—not an offence. He does not aim at it, he makes the effort, it is emitted—not an offence. He does not aim at it, does not make the effort, it is emitted—not an

¹ *parivāsaṃ deti*. Cf. **Vin.2.7**. Rules for monks placed on probation are given at **Vin.2.31ff**. At **Vin.2.40** Udāyin was placed on probation for one day, since he had concealed this first *Saṅghādisesa* for one day. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.384, n.1, for the four principal kinds of probation, and for Seyyasaka's conduct. At **Vin.1.69** it is said that a person who was formerly an adherent of another sect and who asks for ordination should be put on probation for four months, and the measures to be taken for the proper carrying out of this step are stated. Valid and invalid proceedings are given at **Vin.1.320ff**. ² I.e., of his probationary term. Cf. **Vin.2.7**. At **Vin.2.34** rules for those thrown back to the beginning are given: they are the same as for those placed on probation. ³ This appears to be much like being placed on probation, cf. **Vin.2.35**. At **Vin.2.45** Udāyin underwent *mānatta* for six days. For the correct carrying out of this discipline see below, **BD.1.328**. ⁴ The way in which a monk should ask for rehabilitation is given at **Vin.2.39** and cf. below, **BD.1.328**. ⁵ *kamma*, possibly meaning *saṅghakamma*: an act or ceremony, for the infliction of the penalty, to be performed by an assembly of monks met together in solemn conclave. Probably *kamma* has here an ancient technical meaning. ⁶ Cf. **Vin.4.225**, the first *Bhikkhuni-saṅghādisesa*. Here "inflicts *mānatta*" is apparently substituted for "places on probation," which is not mentioned.

offence. He does not aim at it, does not make the effort, it is not emitted—not an offence.

There is no offence if he was dreaming, if there was no intentional emission, if he was mad, unhinged, in pain, a beginner.

MNEMONIC LIST

A dream, excrement and urine, reflection,
 and about hot water,
 Medicine, itching, the way, the bladder,
 a hot room for bathing-purposes, making an effort,
 And a novice, and asleep, the thigh,
 he pressed with the fists,
 In the air, firmness, he meditated on,
 an aperture, he hit with a stick, /
 In the stream, muddy water,
 running, a twist of flowers, a lotus,
 Sand, mud, water, lying down, and with the thumbs.

Bu-Ss.1.4.1

BD.1.198

At one time while a certain monk was dreaming he emitted semen. He was remorseful and said: “What now if I have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order?” That monk told this matter to the lord. He said: “There is no offence for the monk because he was dreaming.”

(The reasons for not including the remainder of **BD.1.5** in this translation are the same as those for not including **BD.1.3** above.)

Bu-Ss.1.5

Told is the First Offence entailing a formal Meeting of the Order

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 2

BD.1.199
Bu-Ss.2.1.1

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. At that time the venerable Udāyin lived in the jungle. The dwelling¹ of the venerable one was lovely, good to look upon, beautiful, the inner chamber in the middle was entirely surrounded by the house; the couch and chair, the bolster and pillow were well designed, the water used for drinking and that used for washing were well placed; the cell² was well swept. Many people came to look at the dwelling of the venerable Udāyin, and a certain brahmin together with his wife approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached the venerable Udāyin, he said: "We want to see the dwelling of the good Udāyin."

"Do look at it, brahmin," he said, and taking the key, unfastening the bolt, and opening the door,³ he entered the dwelling. The brahmin entered after the venerable Udāyin, and the brahmin lady entered behind the brahmin. Then the venerable Udāyin, opening some windows and closing others, going round about the inner room, and coming up from behind, rubbed up against⁴ the brahmin lady limb by limb. Then the brahmin, having exchanged greetings with the venerable Udāyin, went away. Then the brah-

BD.1.200

¹ *Vihāra*. ² *pariveṇa*, see above, [BD.1.119, n.1](#). ³ *Kavāṭaṃ paṇāmetvā*. Cf. [Vin.1.87](#); [Vin.2.114](#), [Vin.2.207](#) and *Vinaya Texts* iii.88, where in note 1 the translator (rightly) insists that *paṇāmeti* is "to open" and not "to shut." Our passage above is further evidence that this is so. But *Pali-English Dictionary* says "*kavāṭaṃ paṇāmeti*, to shut the door." Possibly it means "to make the door lean," i.e. when open against the wall, when closed against the post. ⁴ *parāmasi*, see below, [BD.1.203](#), and [n.6](#). This "rubbing up against" was not, I think, an act of deliberate familiarity or meant offensively. In the tiny cell-room Udāyin just rubbed up against the visitors, as we might rub up against people in a crowd—in a bus or train or queue.

min, who was pleased, burst out with a cry of pleasure:¹ “Superb are these recluses, sons of the Sakyans; who dwell in such a jungle, superb is the revered Udāyin who dwells in such a jungle.”

Having spoken thus, the brahmin lady said to the brahmin:

“What is there superb about him? Even as you rubbed up against me limb by limb, so did this recluse Udāyin rub up against me limb by limb.”

Then the brahmin became annoyed, vexed, angry and said:

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans,² are shameless, of low morality, liars. And they pretend to be walking by *dhamma*, walking by right, leading the Brahma-life, speaking truth, virtuous, of good conduct. Among these there is no recluseship, among these there is no brahmanhood. Perished is recluseship among these, perished is brahmanhood among these. Where is recluseship among these? Where is brahmanhood among these? Fallen from recluseship are these, fallen from brahmanhood are these. How can this recluse Udāyin rub up against my wife limb by limb? It is not possible to go to the park or dwelling with wives of respectable families, with daughters of respectable families, with girls of respectable families,³ with daughters-in-law⁴ of respectable families, with women-slaves of respectable families. If wives of respectable families, daughters of respectable families, girls of respectable families, daughters-in-law of respectable families, women-slaves of respectable families should go to a park or dwelling, the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, may assault them.”

Vin.3.120

BD.1.201

Bu-Ss.2.1.2

The monks heard this brahmin as he was grumbling, murmuring, and becoming angry. Those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed,

¹ *attamano attamanavācaṃ nicchāresi* = MN.i.32 and MN.i.509 (*nicchāreyya*). Vin-a is silent. MN-a.1.151 says: *attamano ti sakamano tuṭṭhamano; pītisomanassehi va gahitamano. Attamanavācaṃ nicchāresi ti attamanatāya vācaṃ, attamanabhāvassa vā yuttavācaṃ nicchāresi. Udārayi, pabyāhari ti vuttaṃ hoti.* ² As above, **BD.1.125**, and below, **BD.1.223**. ³ These two are probably meant to be opposed. Buddhaghosa calls *kuladhītā*, *purisantaraṃ gatā*, and *kulakumāriyo, anivittā* (unsettled). ⁴ *Kulasuṇhā*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives *suṇhā* under *sunīṣa*. At *Vinaya Texts* ii.348 it is translated “sisters-in-law.” CHILDERS gives daughter-in-law. Vin-a.532 says, “brought from another family for the young men of respectable families, they are *vadhuyo*,” which is daughters-in-law. And indeed a daughter-in-law held a more important position in the social system than did a sister-in-law.

angry and said: “How can the reverend Udāyin come into bodily contact with women-kind?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, for this reason, causing the Order of monks to be convened, asked the reverend Udāyin:

“Is it true as they say, Udāyin, that you came into bodily contact with a woman?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

Then the enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“It is not right, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not fit in a recluse, it is not proper, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, come into bodily contact with a woman? Foolish man, is not *dhamma* uttered by me in various ways for the sake of stilling passion, and not for the sake of passion ... declared the allaying of the flames of the pleasures of the senses? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, affected by desire,¹ with perverted² heart, should come into³ physical contact with a woman, holding her hand, or holding a braid of her hair, or rubbing against any one or other of her limbs: this is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.**”

BD.1.202

Bu-Ss.2.2.1

Whatever means: he who ...

Monk means: ... this is how monk is to be understood in this sense.

Vin.3.121

Affected by desire means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.⁴

¹ *Otiṇṇa*, as passive: possessed by. See Old Commentary’s explanation below in **Bu-Ss.2.2.1**. The translators in *Vinaya Texts* i.7, n.2 say, “our word ‘degraded’ has often a very similar connotation.” They render *otiṇṇa* by “degraded”. Cf. below, **BD.1.215**. ² *Vipariṇatena*, literally changed. Cf. below, **BD.1.215**. ³ *Samāpajjeyya* = *saṃ + āpajjati*, Sanskrit. *āpadyate* = *ā + pad*, to get into, to come into, to meet with. *Sam + ā* (as here) very often pleonastic. Although *samāpajjati* does not, in the above context, necessarily imply deliberate action, coming into physical contact with a woman was nevertheless regarded as an offence of a serious nature, because the desires possibly resulting from such a contact had to be suppressed. For in a growing vogue of monasticism the majority of members were perhaps young and middle-aged men. Cf. below, **BD.1.338**. ⁴ = below, **BD.1.215**.

Perverted means: the perverted heart is impassioned, the perverted heart is corrupt, the perverted heart is erring. And in this meaning it is to be understood that the perverted heart is impassioned.¹

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal,² even a girl born on this very day, all the more an older one.³

Together with means: together.

Should come into physical contact means: it is called a transgression.⁴

The hand means: going up from the tip of the nail as far as the elbow.

Braid of hair means: nothing but hair,⁵ or mixed with threads,⁶ or mixed with garlands,⁷ or mixed with gold coins,⁸ or mixed with gold,⁹ or mixed with pearls, or mixed with jewels.¹⁰

A limb means: setting to one side a hand and a braid of hair, what remains is called a limb.

BD.1.203

¹ =below, BD.1.215. ² =below, BD.1.215. ³ *Mahattarī*. This is comparative of *mahant*. The Sanskrit form is *mahattarā*, but Pali has -ī, after *therī*. Same definition occurs below, BD.1.332. ⁴ *Ajjhācāra*, cf. *ajjhācarati* (*adhy-ā + √car*) to practise (something bad). Used in Vinaya in the sense of a fault, a transgression; then in an erotical sense as above, and cf. below, BD.1.216. It could not there be used in sense of contact, for the speech, not the body, was at fault. Vin-a.533 says, “whatever is called physical contact (cf. Vin-a.547, “offensive speech”) according to that meaning it is a transgression.” Cf. also Vin-a.213, “she, because of his transgression, became pregnant.” Vin-a.19 says, “he disciplines body and speech through the restraint of transgressions of body and speech.” At Vin.1.63 we get *adhisile silavipanno hoti ajjhācāre ācāravipanno hoti atidiṭṭhiyā diṭṭhivipaṇṇo hoti*. Here *ajjhācāre* (indeclinable) means according to *Critical Pali Dictionary*, “in matter of conduct” as *adhisile* means not “in the higher morality,” but “as to a matter of morality.” *Vinaya Texts* i.184, n.1, points out that there Buddhaghosa says that *adhisile* “is said with regard to offences against the Defeat and Formal Meeting rules, while *ajjhācāre* consists in offences against the minor rules of the Pātimokkha.” But below, BD.1.211, “to come into physical contact,” which above is called a transgression, is there (below) called a Formal Meeting offence. ⁵ I.e., unmixed with threads, Vin-a.533. ⁶ I.e., the hair mixed with threads of five colours. ⁷ I.e., with jasmine flowers, and so on. ⁸ On *hirañña* and *suvaṇṇa* see above, BD.1.28. Here Vin-a.534 says that *hiraññamissa* means mixed with garlands and *kahāpaṇas*; and *suvaṇṇamissa* means mixed with golden *cīraka* and with *pāmaṅga*. Here *suvaṇṇacīraka* probably means gold threads or bands or fillets (cf. Ja.5.197 where *suvaṇṇacīraka* seems to mean gold brocade). On *pāmaṅga*, cf. above, BD.1.77. ⁹ See previous note. ¹⁰ With jewels strung on threads.

Bu-Ss.2.2.2

Rubbing, rubbing up against, rubbing downwards, rubbing upwards,¹ bending down, raising up, drawing to, pushing back, holding back hard, taking hard hold of, the grasp, the touch.

BD.1.204

Rubbing is called merely rubbed. **Rubbing up against** is called moving from here and there. **Rubbing downwards** is called bringing down low. **Rubbing upwards** is called raising up high. **Bending down** is called lowering. **Bending up** is called raising up high. **Drawing to** is called pulling. **Pushing back** is called sending back. **Holding back hard**² is called holding back having taken hold of a limb. **Taking hard hold of** is called taking hold together with someone. **Grasp** is called merely taken. **Touch** means merely contact.

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... therefore it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.2.3.1

If there is a woman, and thinking her to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated, and rubs the woman's body with his body, rubs up against it, rubs it downwards, rubs it upwards, bends it down, raises it up, draws it to, pushes it back, holds it back hard, takes hold of it hard, grasps it, touches it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there is a woman, and being doubtful, if the monk is infatuated, and rubs the woman's body with his body, rubs up against it ... touches it, there is a grave offence.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be an eunuch, if the monk is infatuated ... grave offence.

¹ These four words: *āmasanā*, *parāmasanā*, *omasanā*, *ummasanā* are all connected with *masati* from $\sqrt{mr\dot{s}}$, to touch. I have tried to give the force of the prefixes with *masati* by suitable prepositions. *Ā* has the force of "at," therefore *ā-masati*, to stroke at, touch at, although *ā* in itself denotes touch (contact) or a personal (close) relation with the object—so *Pali-English Dictionary*. Cf. below, **BD.1.211**. *Parā* means "over." Note the difference of *o=ava* and *ut* in the third and fourth words. There are similar prefixes in some of the following words, meaning "down" and "up." *Parāmasati* at **Vin.2.216** is translated by "wipes" (at *Vinaya Texts* iii.291)—i.e., wipes over, rubs over (the spoon and the dish). Cf. *parāmasati*, above, **BD.1.199**. ² *abhiniggaṇhanā*, while merely "holding back" is *niggaṇhanā*. Also cf. next, *abhinippīlanā* and *nippīlanā*.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a man ... thinking it to be an animal, if the monk is infatuated ... grave offence.

If there is an eunuch, and thinking it to be an eunuch, if the monk is infatuated, and rubs the eunuch's body ... touches it ... grave offence.

Vin.3.122

If there is an eunuch, and being doubtful ... thinking it to be a man ... thinking it to be an animal ... thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated, and rubs the eunuch's body ... touches it, there is an offence of wrong-doing

If there is a man, and thinking it to be a man ... doubtful ... thinking it to be an animal ... thinking it to be a woman ... thinking it to be an eunuch, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the man's body ... touches it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.1.205

If there is an animal, and thinking it to be an animal ... doubtful ... thinking it to be a woman ... thinking it to be an eunuch ... thinking it to be a man, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the animal's body ... touches it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Beginning with one

If there are two women, and thinking the two women to be women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the women's bodies ... touches them, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.2.3.2

If there are two women, and being doubtful whether they are two women ... thinking them to be men ... to be eunuchs ... to be animals, if the monk is infatuated and rubs with his body the bodies of the two women ... touches them, there are two grave offences.

If there are two eunuchs, and thinking the eunuchs to be two eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated and rubs their bodies ... touches them, there are two grave offences.

If there are two eunuchs, and being doubtful of their being eunuchs ... thinking them to be men ... to be animals ... to be women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the bodies of the eunuchs ... touches them, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are two men, and thinking the two men to be men, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the two men with his body ... touches them, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are two men, and being doubtful of their being men ... thinking them to be animals ... to be women ... to be eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the two men with his body ... touches them, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are two animals, and thinking the two animals to be animals ... doubtful ... thinking them to be women ... to be eunuchs ... to be men, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the two animals with his body, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.2.3.3

Vin.3.123

BD.1.206

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and thinking both to be women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs with his body ... touches them, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and being doubtful, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and thinking both to be eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated ... there are two grave offences.

If there are a woman and an eunuch and thinking both to be men, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and thinking both to be animals, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are a woman and a man, and thinking both to be women, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are a woman and a man, and being doubtful of both ... thinking them to be eunuchs ... to be men ... to be animals, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are a woman and an animal, and thinking both to be women, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and being doubtful of both ... thinking them to be eunuchs ... to be men ... to be animals, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are an eunuch and a man, and thinking both to be eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are an eunuch and a man, and being doubtful of both ... thinking them to be men ... to be animals ... to be women, if the monk is infatuated ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

BD.1.207

If there are an eunuch and an animal, and thinking both are eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there are an eunuch and an animal, and being doubtful of both ... thinking them to be men ... to be animals ... to be women, if the monk is infatuated ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a man and an animal, and being doubtful of both ... thinking them to be animals ... to be women ... to be eunuchs, if the monk is infatuated ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Beginning with two

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs with his body the woman's article of dress (worn on the body¹) touches it, there is a grave offence.²

Bu-Ss.2.3.4

If there are two women, and thinking the two women to be women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs with his body an article of dress belonging to the two women ... touches it, there are two grave offences.

Vin.3.124

¹ *Kāyapaṭibaddha* or ornaments, e.g. rings, Vin-a.536, clothes and flowers, Vin-a.537. Whoso takes several women, encircling them in things to be worn, commits various offences. Cf. below, [BD.1.218](#). ² Cf. [Vin.4.214](#).

If there are a woman and an eunuch, thinking that both are women if the monk is infatuated and rubs an article of dress of both with his body ... touches them, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there is a woman, thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs his body with the woman's article of dress ... touches it, there is a grave offence.

If there are two women ... there are two grave offences.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there is a woman, thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs (his) article of dress with the woman's article of dress ... touches it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

BD.1.208

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it is a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the woman's body with something that may be thrown (aside), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women, and thinking that the two women are women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the bodies of the two women with something that may be thrown² (aside), there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and thinking both are women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the body of each with something that may be thrown (aside), there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs the woman's article of dress with something that may be thrown (aside), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women, and thinking that the two women are women, if the monk is infatuated and rubs an article of dress belonging to the two women with something that may be thrown (aside), there are two offences of wrong-doing.

¹ Cf. *Vin.4.214*. ² *nissaggiya*, cf. *BD.1.129*. *Vin-a.540*, flowers and fruits; cf. *Vin.4.214*.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and rubs something he has thrown (aside) with something of the woman's which may be thrown (aside), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Told is the Monk Repetition

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs the body of the monk with her body, rubs against it, rubs it down wards, rubs it upwards, bends it down, raises it up, draws it to her, pushes it back, holds it back hard, takes hard hold of it, grasps it, touches it; if desiring cohabitation, he exerts his body and recognises the contact, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.2.3.5

BD.1.209

If there are two women, and thinking them to be women, if the monk is infatuated and the women rub ... and recognises the contact, there is an offence entailing two formal meetings of the Order.

Vin.3.125

If there are a woman and an eunuch, and thinking both to be women, if the monk is infatuated and if both rub ... and recognises the contact, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs with her body the monk's article of clothing ... there is a grave offence.

If there are two women ... there are two grave offences.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs the monk's body with, her article of dress ... there is a grave offence.

If there are two women ... there are two grave offences.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs the monk's article of dress with her article of dress ... there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs the monk's body with something that may be thrown (aside), if desiring cohabitation, he exerts his body and recognises the contact, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.1.210

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs the monk's article of dress with something that may be thrown (aside) ... and recognises the contact, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong- doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, and thinking it to be a woman, if the monk is infatuated and the woman rubs with something that may be thrown (aside) something of the monk's that may be thrown (aside), if desiring cohabitation, he exerts his body but does not recognise the contact, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.2.3.6

If desiring cohabitation, he makes bodily exertion and recognises contact, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If desiring cohabitation, he makes bodily exertion but does not recognise contact,

there is an offence of wrong-doing. If desiring cohabitation, he does not make bodily exertion but recognises contact, there is no offence. If desiring cohabitation, he does not make bodily exertion nor recognises contact, there is no offence.

If desiring emission he exerts his body and recognises contact, there is no offence. If desiring emission, he exerts the body but does not recognise contact, there is no offence. If desiring emission, he does not exert the body but recognises contact, there is no offence. If desiring emission, he does not exert the body and does not recognise contact, there is no offence.

Vin.3.126

There is no offence if it is not on purpose, not intentional, not knowing, not agreeing, if he is mad, unhinged, in pain, a beginner.¹

Bu-Ss.2.3.7
BD.1.211

MNEMONIC LIST

Mother, daughter, and sister, wife, and female *yakkha*, eunuch,
Asleep, dead, an animal, about a wooden doll, /
Pressing up to, a bridge, a road, a tree, and a boat, and a cord,
A stick, he disclosed the bowl,² in salutation,
he exerted himself but did not touch.

Bu-Ss.2.4.1

Now at that time a certain monk stroked³ a mother⁴ for the sake of a mother's affection ... a daughter for the sake of a daughter's affection ... a sister for the sake of a sister's affection. He was remorseful, and said: "What now if I have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order?" He told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Monk, this is not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, it is an offence of wrong-doing."

Now at one time a certain monk came into physical contact with his former wife. He was remorseful ...

Bu-Ss.2.4.2

¹ Vin-a.541 says that *thera* Udāyin was the first offender, therefore there was no offence for him. ² Cf. *kavāṭaṃ paṇāmeti*. See BD.1.199, n.3, above, and BD.1.213, below. ³ *Āmasi*, see above, BD.1.199, n.4, and BD.1.203 n.6. *Āmasi* is the word there translated by "to rub," but there it seems to call for "to stroke." ⁴ Vin-a.541 says "he strokes the mother's body, saying, 'she is my mother.'" In text *āmasi* (he stroked) is not followed by the accusative as is usually the case.

“You, monk, have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.2.4.3

Now at that time a certain monk came into physical contact with a female *yakkha* ... with a eunuch. He was remorseful ... “Monk, it is not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, it is a grave offence.”

BD.1.212

Bu-Ss.2.4.4

Now at one time a certain monk came into physical contact with a sleeping woman. He was remorseful ... “Monk, you have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

At one time a certain monk came into physical contact with a dead woman. He was remorseful. “Monk, it is not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, it is a grave offence.”

Now at one time a certain monk came into physical contact with a female animal¹ ... “Monk, it is not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, it is an offence of wrong-doing.”,

Now at one time a certain monk came into physical contact with a wooden doll ... “an offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.2.4.5

Now at one time many women, pressing up to² a certain monk, led him about arm-in-arm. He was remorseful ... “Did you consent, monk?” he said. “I did not consent, lord,” he said.

Vin.3.127

“It is not an offence, monk, as you did not consent,” he said.

Bu-Ss.2.4.6

Now at one time a certain monk, being infatuated, shook the bridge³ upon which a woman had ascended. He was remorseful ... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.2.4.7

Now at one time a certain monk seeing a woman whom he met on the way, was infatuated, and gave her a blow on the shoulder. He was remorseful ... “... formal meeting of the Order.”

¹ *tiracchānagatitthi*, see above, BD.1.47, n.4. ² *sampīletvā*, pressing, pinching, or worrying.

³ Vin-a.546, whether it is a bridge for one passenger, or for waggons, if he succeeds in shaking it or not, it is a *dukkāṭa*.

Now at one time a certain monk, being infatuated, shook the tree up which a woman had climbed ... the boat in which a woman had embarked. He was remorseful ... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.2.4.8
BD.1.213

Now at one time a certain monk, being infatuated, pulled a cord¹ of which a woman held (the other end). He was remorseful ... “... grave offence,” he said.

Bu-Ss.2.4.9

Now at one time a certain monk, being infatuated, pulled a stick of which a woman held (the other end). He was remorseful ... “... grave offence,” he said.

Now at one time a certain monk, being infatuated, greeted² a woman with his bowl. He was remorseful ... “... grave offence,” he said.

Bu-Ss.2.4.10

Now at one time a certain monk, infatuated by a woman who made reverence, raised his foot. He was remorseful ... “... formal meeting of the Order,” he said.

Bu-Ss.2.4.11

Now at one time a certain monk, saying: “I will take a woman,” exerted himself but did not touch one. He was remorseful ... “... offence of wrong-doing,” he said.

Told is the Second Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

¹ *rajjuṃ āviñji*. ² *pattana paṇāmesi*. In “Table of Contents,” [BD.1.211](#), above, this appears as *pattaṃ paṇāmesi*, which at [Vin.2.216](#) is “uncovered (or disclosed) the bowl.” The translation of this passage at *Vinaya Texts* iii.290 is not accurate; but it means “he presents the bowl with his right hand.” In the above passage it is so curious that *patta* is in the instrumental, as against the more natural accusative that I am inclined to suspect that *añjalim* should have been inserted—then meaning, “he raised his hands together with his bowl in respectful salutation of the woman.” Thus this “greeting with the hands” would be balanced just below by “greeting with the feet.” Commentary is silent. I think that there must be some confusion between *pattaṃ paṇāmeti* and *añjalim paṇāmeti*. Cf. on *kavāṭaṃ paṇāmeti*, above, [BD.1.199](#), [n.3](#).

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 3

BD.1.214
Bu-Ss.3.1.1

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. At that time the venerable Udāyin lived in the jungle. The venerable one's dwelling was lovely, good to look upon, beautiful. At that time many women came to the park¹ in order to see the dwelling. Then those women approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached him, they said to the venerable Udāyin:

“Honoured sir, we want to see the master's dwelling.”

Vin.3.128

Then the venerable Udāyin, showing these women his dwelling and pointing out² the privies to them, spoke in praise, spoke in blame and begged and implored and asked and questioned and described and exhorted and abused. Those women who had little fear of blame,³ who were sly and who had no shame mocked at the venerable Udāyin, called out to him, laughed at him, made fun of him.⁴ But those women who had shame, upon departing complained to the monks, saying:

“Honoured sirs, this is not suitable, it is not fitting, we should not wish this spoken about even by our husbands, to say nothing of master Udāyin.”⁵

Bu-Ss.3.1.2

Then those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed and angry and said:

BD.1.215

“How can the venerable Udāyin offend women with lewd words?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion and in this connection had the company of monks convened and questioned the venerable Udāyin, saying:

¹ OLDENBERG, *Vin.3.274*, suggests *araññāraṇaṃ agamaṃsu*. ² *ādissa = apadisitvā*, *Vin-a.546*.

³ *chinnikā = chinnaottappā*, *Vin-a.546*. ⁴ *uppaṇḍentī ti paṇḍako ayaṃ nāyaṃ puriso ti*. ⁵ *Kirī pan' ayyena Udāyina*

“Is it true as is said, Udāyin, that you offended women with lewd words?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“It is not suitable, foolish man, it is not proper, it is not becoming, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is out of place, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, offend women with lewd words? Foolish man, is not *dhamma* uttered in various ways by me for the sake of passionlessness, not for the sake of passion ... proclaimed for the allaying of the flames of pleasures of the senses? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... and thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, affected by desire¹, with perverted heart,² should offend a woman with lewd words concerned with unchastity, as, for example, a youth to a young woman, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.**”

Whatever means: he who ...

Bu-Ss.3.2.1

Monk means: ... this is how monk is to be understood in this meaning.

Affected by desire means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.³

Perverted means: the perverted heart is impassioned, the perverted heart is corrupt, the perverted heart is erring. And in this meaning it is understood that the perverted heart is impassioned.⁴

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal⁵; she is intelligent, competent to know good and bad speech, what is lewd and what is not lewd.⁶

BD.1.216

Lewd speech means: speech connected with privies and with unchastity.

Should offend⁷ means: it is called a transgression.⁸

As, for example, a youth to a young woman means: a lad to a young girl, a boy of tender age to a girl of tender age, a male enjoying sense-pleasures to a female enjoying sense-pleasures.

Vin.3.129

¹ See above, BD.1.201, n.1. ² See above, BD.1.201, n.2. ³ Cf. above, BD.1.202. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.1.202. ⁵ Cf. above, BD.1.202. ⁶ =below, BD.1.337 ⁷ *obhāseyyā ti avabhāseyya ... asaddhamvacanaṃ vadeyya.* ⁸ Cf. above, BD.1.202, in explanation of *kāyasaṃsagga*.

Concerned with unchastity means: connected with unchaste things.¹

A formal meeting of the Order means: ... because of this it is called a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.3.3.1

Pointing out the two privies he speaks in praise, and he speaks in blame, and he begs, and he implores, and he asks, and he questions, and he describes, and he exhorts, and he abuses.

He speaks in praise means: he extols, he praises, he commends ...

He speaks in blame means: he curses, he reviles, he finds fault with ...

He begs means: he says, “give to me, you are worthy to give to me.”

He implores means: he says, “When will your mother be reconciled?² When will your father be reconciled? When will your *devatās* be reconciled? When will there be a good opportunity, a good time, a good moment? When shall I have sexual intercourse with you?”

He asks means: he says, “How do you give to your husband? How do you give to a paramour?”

BD.1.217

He questions means: he says, “They say that as you give to your husband so you give to your paramour.”

He describes means: having asked, he says: “Give thus, giving thus you will become dear and beloved to your husband.”

He exhorts means: not having asked, he says: “Give thus, giving thus you will become dear and beloved to your husband.”

He abuses means: he says, “You are without sexual characteristics, you are defective in sex, you are bloodless, your blood is stagnant, you are always dressed, you are dripping, you are a deformed woman,³ you are a female eunuch, you are a man-like woman, your sexuality is indistinct, you are a hermaphrodite.⁴

Bu-Ss.3.3.2

¹ It is difficult to render into English the slight difference of meaning in the Pali: *methunupasañhitāhi ti methunadhammapaṭisañyuttāhi*. Cf. below, **BD.1.226**. ² Vin-a.548, “on the reconciliation of your mother I will indulge in sexual intercourse.” ³ *sikharāṇī*—i.e., probably with certain defects of the pudendum. ⁴ For these abnormalities, cf. same list at **Vin.2.271**.

If it is a woman, if he is infatuated thinking her to be a woman, and if the monk, pointing out the two privies to a woman, speaks in praise, speaks in blame ... abuses, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are two women, if he is infatuated thinking them to be women, and if the monk pointing out the two privies to the two women ... it is an offence entailing two formal meetings of the Order.

If it is a woman and an eunuch, if he is infatuated thinking them both to be women, and if the monk pointing out the two privies to both ... there is an offence of wrong-doing with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there is a woman, if he is infatuated thinking her to be a woman, and if the monk leaving out (talk on) the two privies to the woman, pointing out (any part) from below the collar bone to above the knee,¹ speaks in praise, and speaks in blame ... and abuses, there is a grave offence.

Bu-Ss.3.3.3

If there are two women ... there are two grave offences.

Vin.3.130
BD.1.218

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there is an offence of wrong-doing together with a grave offence.

If there is a woman, if he is infatuated thinking her to be a woman, and if the monk, pointing out (any part) from below the collar bone to above the knee to the woman, speaks in praise, speaks in blame ... abuses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.3.3.4

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If there is a woman, if he is infatuated thinking her to be a woman, if the monk, pointing out an article of clothing² to the woman, speaks in praise ... there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.3.3.5

If there are two women ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

¹ Cf. Vin.4.213. ² *Kāyapaṭibaddha*, Vin-a.549 says, "a garment or a flower or an ornament," so here not necessarily article of dress. Cf. above, BD.1.207.

If there are a woman and an eunuch ... there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.3.3.6

There is no offence if he is aiming at (explaining) the meaning,¹ if he is aiming at (explaining) *dhamma*,² if he is aiming at (explaining) the teaching, if he is mad, if he is a beginner.³

MNEMONIC LIST

Bu-Ss.3.4.1

Red, thick and short, matted, shaggy and long, sown,
I hope the way is at an end, faith, about a gift, about work.

BD.1.219

At one time a certain woman was wearing a newly dyed blanket. A certain monk, being infatuated, said to this woman: “Sister, is that red thing yours⁴?” She did not understand and said:

“Yes, master, it is a newly dyed blanket.”

He was remorseful and said; “What now if I have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order?” He told this matter to the lord, who said:

“Monk, it is not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, it is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.2

At one time a certain woman was wearing a rough blanket ... said:

“Sister, is that thick, short hair⁵ yours?” She did not understand and said:

“Yes, master, it is a rough blanket ”... “ ... offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.3

¹ *atthapurekkhāra dhammapurekkhāra*. *Attha* and *dhamma* taken together are sometimes rendered “the letter and the spirit” as at AN.i.69; cf. “not-*dhamma* and not-aim” at GS.5.155. Vin-a.549 says of *attha*°, “telling the meaning of the words or reciting the commentary,” and of *dhamma*°, “teaching or reciting the text (*pāḷi*).” ² See previous note. ³ Vin-a.549 again says, Udāyin was the beginner. ⁴ *lohita* is both “blood” and “red.” ⁵ Vin-a.550, *kakkasaloman ti rassalomaṃ bahulomaṃ*.

At one time a certain woman was wearing a newly woven¹ blanket ... and said:

“Sister, is that your matted hair²?” She did not understand and said:

“Yes, master, it is a newly woven blanket.” He was remorseful ... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.4

At one time a certain woman was wearing a rough blanket ... and said:

“Sister, is that stiff³ hair yours?” ...

“Yes, master, it is a rough blanket”... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.5

At one time a certain woman was wearing a mantle ... and said:

“Sister, is that long hair yours?”... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.1.220

Vin.3.131

At one time a certain woman came along having had a field sown.⁴ A certain monk being infatuated said to this woman:

“Well, sister, has there been some sowing⁵?” She, not understanding, said:

“Yes, master, only I have not closed⁶ the furrow.”

He was remorseful ... “Monk, there is no offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.6

At one time a certain monk seeing a female wanderer⁷ on the road, and being infatuated, said to this female wanderer:

Bu-Ss.3.4.7

¹ *āvuta* seems to be derived from *āvayati* = *ā* + *vā*, to weave, a root which has been merged in *ā* + *vṛ* (*āvarati*), to string on, to fix on. *Āvuta* as “woven” is not given in the *Pali-English Dictionary* ² Vin-a.550, *ākiṇṇaloman ti jaṭitalomaṇi*. ³ Vin-a.550, *kharaloman ti thaddhalomaṇi*.

⁴ Note here the play of the three conjugations: (1) double causative, *vapāpetvā*, having had the sowing done, or having superintended it, (2) simple causative, *vāpitaṇi*, (3) radical verb *paṭi* + *vuttaṇi* = Sanskrit *praty-upta*, as noted by OLDENBERG, *Vin.3.274*, and by GEIGER, *Pali Grammar* p.72, *Pali Grammar* p.147, and not *prati-vac*, as given in *Pali-English Dictionary* *Vapāpeti*, *vutta* and *vāpita* are given under *vapati*, to sow. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.550, who naturally attaches the word to *vap*, to sow, has two explanations; one for *udakavappa*, another for *thūlavappa*. ⁵ See previous note. ⁶ See previous note. ⁷ *paribbājikā*. At *Vin.4.92* it is a *pācittiya* for a monk to give food to one, at *Vin.4.285* for a nun to give a robe to one.

“I hope, sister, that there is a way at the end?”¹

She, not understanding, said:

“Yes, monk,² you will follow it.” He was remorseful ... “... grave offence.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.8

At one time a certain monk, being infatuated, said to a certain woman:
“You are faithful, sister, but you do not give to us what you give to your husband.”

BD.1.221

“What is that, sir?” she said.

“Sexual intercourse,” he said. He was remorseful ... “... an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.9

At one time a certain monk, infatuated, said to a certain woman:

“You are faithful, sister, for you do not give us the highest gift.”

“What is the highest gift, sir?” she said.

“Sexual intercourse,” he said. He was remorseful ... “... an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.3.4.10

At one time a certain woman was doing some work. A certain monk, infatuated, said to this woman:

“Stand, sister, I will work” ... “sit, sister, I will work ... lie down, sister, I will work.” She, not understanding ... “... an offence of wrong-doing.”

Told is the Third Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

¹ Under *samsidati* the *Pali-English Dictionary*, referring to this passage, takes it to mean that the way (*maggā*) is at an end. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.550 has another explanation; indeed, without him we could not understand these puns. ² Note that the female wanderer addresses the monk as *bhikkhu*, while laywomen say *ayya*, master, or *bhante*, honoured sir.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 4

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. At that time the venerable Udāyin was dependent on families, and approached many families. Now at that time there was a certain woman who was a widow, beautiful, good to look upon, lovely. Then the venerable Udāyin, rising early and taking his robe and bowl, came up to this woman's dwelling and having come up he sat down on the appointed seat. Then this woman approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached she greeted the venerable Udāyin and sat down to one side. As she was sitting to one side the venerable Udāyin rejoiced, pleased, gladdened, delighted this woman with talk on *dhamma*. Then this woman having been ... delighted with talk on *dhamma* by the venerable Udāyin, said to the venerable Udāyin:

BD.1.222
Bu-Ss.4.1.1

Vin.3.132

“Do say, honoured sir, what (will be) of use¹; we are able to give to the master, that is to say, the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings and medicine for the sick.”

“It is not hard, sister, for us to come by those things, that is to say, the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicine for the sick. Give² what is hard for us to come by.”

“What is that, honoured sir?”

“Sexual intercourse,” he said.

“(Will it be) of use,³ honoured sir,” she said.

“(It will be) of use, sister.”

“Come, honoured sir,” she said, and entering into an inner room, taking off her cloak, she lay back on the couch. Then the venerable Udāyin

BD.1.223

¹ *Yena attho*. Cf. Vin.3.210 for the same expression. ² *Dehi*. The use of the imperative in such a connection is a very grave thing. ³ *Attho*, to balance *yena attho* above (?).

approached this woman, and having approached her he said:

“Who could touch this evil-smelling wretch¹?” and he departed spitting.²

Then this woman became annoyed, vexed, angry and said:

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans³ are shameless, of low morality, liars. And they pretend to be those walking by *dhamma*, walking by right, leading the Brahma-life, speaking truth, virtuous, of good conduct. Among these there is no recluseship, among these there is no brahmanhood. Perished is recluseship among these, perished is brahmanhood among these. Where is recluseship among these? Where is brahmanhood among these? Fallen from recluseship are these, fallen from brahmanhood are these. How can this recluse Udāyin, having himself begged me for sexual intercourse, say: ‘Who could touch this evil-smelling wretch’ and depart spitting? What is bad in me? What is evil-smelling in me? In what am I inferior to whom?”⁴

Other women became annoyed, vexed, angry and said: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are shameless ... How can this recluse Udāyin, having himself begged this (woman) for sexual intercourse, say: ‘Who could touch this evil-smelling wretch?’ and depart spitting? What is bad in her? What is evil-smelling in her? In what is she inferior to whom?”

Bu-Ss.4.1.2

The monks heard these women who were annoyed, vexed and angry.

BD.1.224

Those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed, angry and said:

¹ It is curious that *vasala* is in the masculine or neuter, but it obviously refers to the woman. Buddhaghosa sees it as a masculine here, Vin-a.551. ² *Niṭṭhuhitvā ti kheḷaṃ pātetvā*, Vin-a.551; cf. Pv-a.80, *kheḷan ti nuṭṭhubhanam*. Cf. Vin.1.271 where the *setṭhi*'s wife spat out (*nuṭṭhuhitvā*) ghee into a spittoon. Cf. also Ja.1.459. Forms of this verb are *niṭṭhubhati*, *nuṭṭhubhati* and *niṭṭhuhati*. ³ As above, BD.1.125, BD.1.200. ⁴ *Kassāham kena hāyāmi*. Vin-a.551, “with regard to treasure, jewelry or beauty, to what other women am I inferior? Who is better than I am?”

“How can this venerable Udāyin speak in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self¹ in the presence of women-folk?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord for this reason, on this occasion, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Udāyin, saying:

Vin.3.133

“Is it true as is said that you, Udāyin, spoke in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self in the presence of women-folk?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him saying:

“It is not right, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is out of place, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, speak in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self in the presence of women-folk? Foolish man, is not *dhamma* preached by me in various ways for the stilling of passion ... the allaying of the flames of sense-pleasures declared? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, affected by desire,² with perverted heart,³ should speak in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self in the presence of women-folk, saying: ‘Sister, this is the highest kind of ministrations: that a woman⁴ should minister to one like me, virtuous, of good conduct, leading the Brahma-life, in this fashion⁵— meaning with what is connected with sexual intercourse—that is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

BD.1.225

Bu-Ss.4.2.1

¹ *Attahāmapāricariyāya*, Vin-a.551 says, *methunadhammasamkhā-tena kāmēna pāricariyā kāmāpāricariyā, attano atthāya kāmāpāri-cariyā attakāmapāricariyā*. This passage is quoted at Vv-a.11, where *atta° cariyāya* is called *gāmadhamme*—i.e., low states, those belonging to the village. Note that the term *attakāma* could be used also with religious significance: see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Buddhism* (Home University Library), second edition, p.81, and cf. GS.2.21, “he to whom the self is dear,” and KS.i.102, “the soul-lover.” See also *attakāmarūpa* at Vin.1.350 = MN.i.205 = MN.iii.155. MN-a.2.236 and Old Commentary below give two quite different interpretations of *attakāma*, the one giving the higher and the other the lower meaning. ² Cf. above, BD.1.201, BD.1.215. ³ Cf. above, BD.1.201, BD.1.215. ⁴ *Yā*, whoever, feminine. ⁵ *Etena dhammena*. It might also mean “according to this *dhamma*” (teaching), but that it does not here is apparent from the Old Commentary’s exegesis below.

Whatever means: ... (see **Bu-Ss.3.2...** competent to know) ... what is lewd and what is not lewd.

In the presence of women-folk means: in the neighbourhood of women-folk, near women-folk.

Sense-pleasures for self means: sense-pleasures for self,¹ for the sake of self, desiring for self, ministering to self.

This highest means: this highest, this best, this foremost, this utmost, this most excellent.

She² means: a noble woman,³ a brahmin woman, a merchant-class woman, a low-caste woman.⁴

One like me means: a noble man, a brahmin, a merchant-class man, a low-caste man.

Virtuous means: refraining from onslaught on creatures, refraining from taking what is not given, refraining from lying.⁵

Leading the Brahma-life means: refraining from sexual intercourse.⁶

Of good conduct means: he is of good conduct in respect of this virtue and in respect of this Brahma-life.

BD.1.226

In this fashion means: with regard to sexual intercourse.

Should minister to means: should give pleasure to.

Connected with unchastity means: connected with unchastity.⁷

A formal meeting of the Order means: ... because of this it is called a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.134

Bu-Ss.4.3.1

If there is a woman, if he is infatuated thinking her to be a woman, and if the monk speaks in praise, in the woman's presence, of ministering to

¹ *Attakāman ti attano kāmam.* ² *Yā*, translated above "a woman." ³ Vin-a.552, "if it is said, 'I am a noble man, you are a noble woman, a noble woman is worthy to give to a noble man, because they are of the same caste,' it is not a *saṅghādisesa* offence. But if you say, 'I am a noble man ... you are worthy to give me sexual intercourse,' because you are speaking of things connected with unchastity, there is a *saṅghādisesa* offence." ⁴ Showing that the four castes were by now recognised. ⁵ Corresponding to the first three *Pārājika* offences, with the addition of refraining from lying. Deliberate lying has appeared as a *pācittiya* offence and as a *pārājika* offence. ⁶ Corresponding to the first three *Pārājika* offences, with the addition of refraining from lying. Deliberate lying has appeared as a *pācittiya* offence and as a *pārājika* offence. ⁷ Cf. above, **BD.1.216**.

sense-pleasures for self, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are two women, if ... thinking they are two women ... there are two offences ... a formal meeting of the Order.

If there are a woman and an eunuch, if ... thinking them both to be women ... there is an offence of wrong-doing with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

There is no offence if he speaks, saying: “Support¹ (us) with the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicine for the sick,” if he is mad, if he is a beginner.²

Bu-Ss.4.3.2

MNEMONIC LIST

How can a barren woman?

(How) can I get a son, and be dear?

How can I be charming?

What may I give? With what shall I support (you)?

How can I go to a good bourn?

Bu-Ss.4.4.1

At one time a certain barren woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family: “How could I, honoured sir, bear (a child)?”

“For this, sister, give the highest gift.”

“What is the highest gift, honoured sir?” she said.

“Sexual intercourse,” he said.

He was remorseful ... “... a formal meeting of the Order.”

BD.1.227

At one time a certain fertile woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family: “How could I, honoured sir, get a son?”

“For this, sister, give the highest gift ... “... a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.4.4.2

At one time a certain woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family: “How could I, honoured sir, be dear to (my) husband?” ... “How could I, honoured sir, be charming?”

Bu-Ss.4.4.3

¹ *upaṭṭhaha*, imperative of *upaṭṭhahati*, from *upa* + *√sthā*. ² Vin-a.552 again says that Udāyin was the beginner, and therefore there was no offence for him.

“For this, sister, give the highest gift ”... “... a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.4.4.4

At one time a certain woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family:

“What, honoured sir, may I give to the master?”

“The highest gift, sister,” he said.

“What is the highest gift, honoured sir?”

“Sexual intercourse,” he said. He was remorseful ... “... of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.4.4.5

At one time a certain woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family:

“With what can I, honoured sir, support the master?”

“With the highest gift, sister,” he said.

“What is the highest gift, honoured sir?” she said ... “... formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.4.4.6

BD.1.228

At one time a certain woman said to a monk dependent on (her) family:

“How can I go to a good bourn, honoured sir?”

“For this, sister, give the highest gift.”

“What is the highest gift, honoured sir?” she said ... “... formal meeting of the Order.”

Told is the fourth offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 5

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. At that time the venerable Udāyin was dependent on families at Sāvattthī, and he approached many families. When he saw a youth not (yet) a husband, or a young girl without a husband, he spoke in praise of the girl in the presence of the youth's parents, saying: "The young girl of that family is beautiful, good to look upon, lovely, she is learned, accomplished, wise, clever, energetic. This young girl is suitable for that youth."

BD.1.229
Bu-Ss.5.1.1

These said: "They do not know us, honoured sir, nor who we are, nor to whom we belong. If, honoured sir, the master will induce them to give, we might convey this girl to this youth."

He spoke in praise of the youth in the presence of the girl's parents, saying: "The youth of that family is beautiful, good to look upon, lovely, he is learned, accomplished, wise, clever, energetic. That young girl is suitable for this youth."

They said: "They do not know us, honoured sir, nor who we are, nor to whom we belong, nor in what, as it were, is the girl's property.¹ But if, honoured sir, the master would beg, we might give this girl to that youth."

By this means he brought about the leading² of the bridegroom (to the bride's home), he brought about the leading away³ (from the bride's home), he caused marriages⁴ to take place.

BD.1.230

¹ Or, taking *vatthum* as wrong reading for *vattum*: "we should be ashamed (*kismiṃ viya*, cf. Vin-a.552) to speak thus for the girl('s sake)." ² *āvāha*, Vin-a.552, "The bringing of the youth from another family to the girl." ³ *vivāha*, Vin-a.553, "The sending out of the girl herself to another family." ⁴ *vāreyāni*, text; Vin-a.553, *vāreyyan*, with variant reading *vāreyyāni*. Vin-a.553, "begging: give your girl to our boy, or settling the day, lunar mansion, astronomic law."

Bu-Ss.5.1.2

Now at that time the daughter of a certain woman who was formerly a courtesan was beautiful, good to look upon, lovely. Some disciples of Naked Ascetics coming from a distant village, said to the courtesan: “Lady, give this girl to our boy!”

She said: “Masters, I do not know you, nor who these are, nor to whom he belongs; and I will not give my only daughter to go to a distant village.”

Some people said to these disciples of Naked Ascetics: “Masters, why did you come?”¹

“Now we, masters, begged that courtesan for her daughter for our son; and she said, ‘But, masters, I do not know you, nor who these are, nor to whom he belongs, and I will not give my only daughter to go to a distant village.’”

“Master, why did you beg the courtesan for her daughter? Certainly master Udāyin should be told, master Udāyin will induce her to give (her daughter).”

Vin.3.136 Then these disciples of Naked Ascetics approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached him, they said to the venerable Udāyin: “Now, honoured sir, we begged that courtesan ... ‘distant village.’ It would be good, honoured sir, if the master could induce this courtesan to give her daughter to our boy.”

Then the venerable Udāyin approached that courtesan, and having approached, he said to that courtesan: “Why did you not give your daughter to these (people)?”

BD.1.231 “But, master, I do not know them, nor who they are, nor to whom he belongs, and I will not give my only daughter to go to a distant village.”

“Give her to them, I know them.”

“If, honoured sir, the master knows them, I will give (her),” she said. Then this courtesan gave her daughter to these disciples of Naked Ascetics.

Bu-Ss.5.1.3

Then these disciples of Naked Ascetics, taking the young girl, for a month made use of her according to her lot as a daughter-in-law²; then

¹ *kissa tumhe āgat’ attha?* Here *attha* is second plural of *atthi*, from √*as*. ² I.e., Vin-a.553, they enjoyed what she cooked, and the meals she served.

afterwards they made use of her according to her lot as a female slave.¹ Then this young girl dispatched a messenger to her mother, saying: "I am wretched, I am miserable, I get no happiness. For a month they made use of me according to my lot as a daughter-in-law, now after that they are making use of me according to my lot as a female slave. Let my mother come for me, let her take me away."

Then the courtesan came up to the disciples of Naked Ascetics, and having come up, she said to these disciples of Naked Ascetics, "Masters, do not make use of this young girl according to her lot as a female slave, make use of this young girl according to her lot as a daughter-in-law."

They said: "We do not want anything to do with you,² we want to have to do (only) with a recluse. You go away, we do not know you."

Then this courtesan, being reproached by these followers of the Naked Ascetics, returned again to Sāvattthī. A second time this young girl dispatched a messenger to her mother, saying: "I am wretched ... take me away." Then the courtesan approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached him, she said to the venerable Udāyin:

"Honoured sir, it is said that the young girl is wretched, miserable, she gets no happiness. For a month they made use of her according to her lot as a daughter-in-law, and now after that they are making use of her according to her lot as a female slave. Honoured sir, do say: 'Masters, do not make use of this young girl according to her lot as a female slave, make use of this young girl according to her lot as a daughter-in-law.'"

BD.1.232

Then the venerable Udāyin approached these disciples of the Naked Ascetics, and having approached them, he said to these disciples of the Naked Ascetics:

"Masters, do not make use of this young girl according to her lot as a female slave, make use of this young girl according to her lot as a daughter-in-law."

They said: "We do not want anything to do with you; we want to have to

¹ I.e., working in the fields, throwing out sweepings, fetching water, etc. ² *Āhārūpahāro*. Vin-a.553 says, "taking and offering, getting and giving, nothing is taken or offered by us, buying and selling with you is not our custom."

Vin.3.137 do (only) with the courtesan. A recluse should be without occupation,¹ the recluse will become a model recluse.² You go away, we do not know you.”

Then the venerable Udāyin having been reproached by these disciples of Naked Ascetics, returned again to Sāvattihī. For a third time the young girl dispatched a messenger to her mother, saying: “I am wretched, take me away.” For a second time the courtesan approached the venerable Udāyin ... “... Do say: ‘Masters ... as a daughter-in-law.’”

He said: “When I went before, I was reproached by these disciples of the Naked Ascetics. Go yourself. I will not go.”

Bu-Ss.5.1.4

BD.1.233

Then the courtesan became annoyed, vexed, angry and said: “May this master Udāyin be wretched, may this master Udāyin be miserable, may this master Udāyin not find happiness, even as my girl is wretched, miserable, and finds no happiness because of her evil mother-in-law, because of her evil father-in-law, because of her evil husband.” And then the young girl became annoyed, vexed, angry, saying: “May this master Udāyin be wretched, may this master Udāyin be miserable, may this master Udāyin not find happiness, even as I am wretched, miserable and find no happiness because of my evil mother-in-law, because of my evil father-in-law, because of my evil husband.”

Even other women, unhappy with their mothers-in-law, unhappy with their fathers-in-law, unhappy with their husbands, denounced³ him, thus: “May ... be wretched ... even as we are wretched, miserable, and find no happiness because of our evil mothers-in-law, because of our evil fathers-in-law, because of our evil husbands.”

But those women who were happy with their mothers-in-law, with their fathers-in-law, and with their husbands, these prayed to⁴ him thus:

¹ *Avyāvaṭa*, a rare word. Cf. Ja.3.65 and its variant readings *ajhāvata*, *abyāvata*; Ja.6.188; DN.ii.141. At Cnd.72 *appossukha* = *abyāvata anapekkha*. ² *Samaṇena bhavitabbam*, *avyāvateṇa samaṇo assa sumano*. The word *sumano* has variant readings *sumaṇo*, *susamaṇo*; Vin-areads *sussamaṇo*. This explanation seems to show what is rare: that OLDENBERG’s text is faulty. No doubt the text could be emended: *samaṇena bhavitabbam avyāvateṇa (avyāvateṇo) samaṇo assa sussamaṇo*, but the elliptical construction is perhaps intentional, and shows a popular style, which does not, however, sound very well. ³ *oyācati* and *āyācati*. For *āyācati*. Cf. DN.i.240.

⁴ *oyācati* and *āyācati*. For *āyācati*. Cf. DN.i.240.

“May this master Udāyin be happy, may this master Udāyin be blest¹, may this master Udāyin prosper,² even as we are happy, blest and do prosper because of our good mothers-in-law, because of our good fathers-in-law, because of our good husbands.”

The monks heard some women denouncing, some women praying. Then those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed, angry and said: “How can the venerable Udāyin act as a go-between?”³ Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, for this reason, having had the company of monks convened, questioned the venerable Udāyin, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, Udāyin, that you acted as a go-between?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

Then the enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “How could you, foolish man, act as a go-between? That is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should act as a go-between for a woman with a man in mind or for a man with a woman in mind, whether as a wife or as a mistress, that is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

At one time many men of abandoned life⁴ who were amusing themselves in a pleasure grove, sent a messenger to a harlot to say, “Come, we will enjoy ourselves in the pleasure grove.”

She said: “Masters, I do not know you, nor who you are, nor to whom you belong; and I have many goods, I am well-to-do, and I will not go outside the city.”⁵ Then the messenger told this matter to the men of abandoned life. A certain man said to these men of abandoned life:

¹ *sajjito*, Vin-a.553 says, “endowed with all means of livelihood, beautifully adorned.”

² *sukhamedho*. ³ *sañcarittañ samāpajjati*. For note on *samāpajjati* see BD.1.201, n.3. ⁴ Vin-a.533 calls them “abandoned with women,” *itthīdhutta*, not necessarily leading the wild life of gambling or the wild life of drink—the other two of the three kinds of abandoned life.

⁵ *bahinagarañ ca gantabbarañ nāharañ gamissāmi*.

“Masters, why do you beg this harlot? Surely master Udāyin should be told. Master Udāyin will procure (her for you).”

When he had spoken thus, a certain lay-follower said to that man: “Do not speak like that, master; it is not right for recluses, sons of the Sakyans, to act like that. Master Udāyin will not do it.”

When he had spoken thus, they said, “Will he do it, or won’t he do it?” and they made a bet. Then these men of abandoned life approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached him they said to the venerable Udāyin:

BD.1.235

“Now we, honoured sir, amusing ourselves in the pleasure grove, sent a messenger to some harlot, saying, ‘Come, we will enjoy ourselves in the pleasure grove’ She said: ‘Masters, I do not know you, nor who you are, nor to whom you belong; and I have many goods, I am well-to-do, and I will not go outside the city.’ It would be good, honoured sir, if the master would procure this harlot (for us).”

Then the venerable Udāyin went up to this harlot, and having come up he said to this harlot: “Why do you not go among these (men)?”

“Master, I do not know them ... I will not go outside the city.”

“Go among them,” he said, “I know them.”

“If, honoured sir, the master knows them, I will go.”

Then these men of abandoned life, taking this harlot, went to the pleasure grove.

Bu-Ss.5.2.2

Then that lay-follower became annoyed, vexed, angry, saying: “How can master Udāyin act as a go-between for a temporary wife?”¹ The monks heard that lay-follower who was annoyed, vexed, angry. Those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed, angry, saying: “How can the venerable Udāyin act as a go-between for a temporary wife?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

Vin.3.139

“Is it true, as they say, Udāyin, that you acted as a go-between for a temporary wife?”

¹ Cf. Buddhaghosa, who says at Vin-a.553–554 that *taṃkhaṇo* here means “for a short time”; thus *taṃkhaṇikā* may mean “a temporary wife” as in this *Saṅghādisesa* rule. See below [BD.1.236](#), for explanation of the Old Commentary.

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “How can you, foolish man, act as a go-between for a temporary wife? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should act as a go-between for a woman with a man in mind, or for a man with a woman in mind whether as a wife or as a mistress or even as a temporary wife, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

BD.1.236

Whatever means: he who ...

Bu-Ss.5.3.1

Monk means: ... thus monk is to be understood in this meaning.

Should act as a go-between means: either sent by a woman he goes into a man's presence, or sent by a man he goes into a woman's presence.

For a woman with a man in mind means: he tells to a woman the mind of a man.

For a man with a woman in mind means: he tells to a man the mind of a woman.

As a wife¹ means: You will become a wife.

As a mistress means: You will become a mistress.

Even as a temporary wife² means: You will become a wife for the moment.

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... because of that it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Ten (kinds of) women: protected by the mother, protected by the father, protected by the parents, protected by the brother, protected by the sister,

Bu-Ss.5.4.1

¹ Vin-a.554, “Speaking to a woman with a man in mind he speaks of being a wife. Speaking to a man with a woman in mind, he speaks of being a mistress. Further, speaking to a woman with a man in mind he speaks of wifeness, of the sure state of being a wife, of the low livelihood of a mistress, but saying this, he also says, ‘they say you will become a wife.’ In speaking to a man with a woman in mind he says, ‘You will become a lord, a husband, you will become an adulterer.’” ² *Tamkhaṇikā* and *muhuttikā* are practically synonymous.

protected by the relations, protected by the lineage, protected by *dhamma*, with protection, protected by a stick.¹

BD.1.237

Ten (kinds of) wives: one bought with money, one kept for passion, a kept woman, one who receives clothes, one who provides water, one who takes off the pad (for the burden she carries on the head), the slave and wife, the servant and wife,² the flag-brought,³ the wife for the moment.

Bu-Ss.5.4.2

Protected by the mother means: the mother protects,⁴ guards,⁵ wields supremacy,⁶ has her under control.⁷

Protected by the father means: the father ... has her under control.

Protected by the parents means: the parents ... have her under control.

Protected by the brother means: the brother ... has her under control.

Protected by the sister means: the sister ... has her under control.

Protected by the relations means: the relations ... have her under control.

Protected by the lineage means: her own clans-people ... have her under control.

Protected by dhamma⁸ means: those regarding *dhamma* ... have her under control.

With protection means: she is appropriated in the womb saying: "She is mine," even if she is betrothed.

¹ MN.i.286 = MN.iii.46, gives the first five on this list, then *sassāmikā*, *saparidaṇḍā antamaso mālāguḷaparikkhittā*. AN.v.264 gives the first five, then *dhammarakkhitā* (with variant readings to insert *gotta-rakkhitā*), *sassāmikā*, etc., as at MN.i.286; MN.iii.46. Vv-a.72 follows the Vinaya reading. Cf. GS.5.177, n.2. ² For explanation see below, BD.1.238. ³ For explanation see below, BD.1.238. ⁴ Vin-a.555, "the mother lets her go nowhere." ⁵ Vin-a.555, "she puts her in a place so (well) guarded that other people cannot see (her)." ⁶ Vin-a.555, "restrains her from living in lodgings of her own choice, and overrules her." ⁷ Vin-a.555, "Saying 'do this, do not do that.'" Cf. MN.i.214, where the expression *cittam vasam vatteti*, "has his heart under control," or, as at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.155, "is master of his heart." ⁸ Vin-a.555, "neither lineage nor *dhamma* protects her, but she is protected by her own clans-people and by those regarding *dhamma* who, on account of one teacher, have gone forth belonging to one company." It is not the abstract but the concrete which protects her; people and not ideas, in fact, her co-religionists (*sahadhammikā*). This is an interesting heading as being a recognised kind together with nine others.

Protected by the stick means: the stick is put by some people, and whoever goes to such-and-such a woman says: "What a stick."¹

BD.1.238

Vin.3.140

Bought with money means: having bought (her) with money, he makes her stay.

Bu-Ss.5.4.3

Kept for passion², "kept for passion, means, he lives of his own free will for passion. Inasmuch as she is not only passionate, but a wife she is accepted by the man." means: the dear one makes the dear one stay.³

A kept woman means: giving her wealth, he makes her stay.⁴

One who receives clothes means: giving a garment, he makes her stay.⁵

One who provides water means: having handled a bowl of water, he makes her stay.⁶

One who takes off the pad (for burdens she carries on the head) means: taking down the pad he makes her stay.⁷

A slave means: she is a slave and a wife.

A servant means: she is a servant and wife.⁸

Flag-brought means: a woman taken in a raid.⁹

A temporary wife means: a wife for a moment.

A man sends a monk saying: "Go, honoured sir, to such a one protected by the mother, and explain: 'He says become the wife of such a one bought for money.'" If he accepts, examines and brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.5.4.4

BD.1.239

¹ *etako daṇḍo.* ² Vin-a.555 ³ *piyo piyaṃ vāseti.* ⁴ Vin-a.555, "A country-woman comes to be a wife, having received the household implements." ⁵ Vin-a.555, "receiving as much as a garment or cloak, a vagabond woman rises to be a wife." ⁶ Vin-a.555, plunging their two hands into one pot of water, he says: "Joined like this water, so let them not be divided." ⁷ Vin-a.555, "Someone who is a gatherer of firewood and so on, and taking the pad off her head, he keeps her in the house." In India the women put a coiled pad of cotton or some material or grass on their head, and then balance their burdens: brass vessels, long bunches of firewood, big round baskets and so on, on the pad. ⁸ Vin-a.555, "She works in the house for wages. Somebody lives a household life with her—not satisfied with his own wife." ⁹ Vin-a.556, "Having gone with the army erecting the flag, plundering another district, she is brought back. If anyone makes her his wife, she is called flag-brought."

A man ... protected by the father, explain: ... protected by a stick, explain ... a formal meeting of the Order.

The steps in the composition

A man sends a monk saying: “Go, sir, to such and such a one protected by the mother, protected by the father and say: ‘He says, become the wife of so-and-so bought with money.’” If he accepts ... formal meeting of the Order.

A man ... protected by the mother and protected by the parents ... protected by the mother and protected by a stick ... formal meeting of the Order.

A portion of the series

A man ... “protected by the father and protected by the parents ... protected by the father and protected by the mother” ... formal meeting of the Order.

Told is the beginning of the contracted series

A man ... “protected by a stick and protected by the mother ... protected by a stick and with protection ...” ... formal meeting of the Order.

Told is that beginning with one

That beginning with two and that beginning with three up to that beginning with nine should be done in the same way. This is that beginning with ten:

A man sends a monk saying: “Go, sir, to such a one protected by the mother and protected by the father ... and protected by a stick, and explain: ‘He says, become ...’” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Told is the series about women bought with money

A man sends a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, to such a one protected by the mother, and explain: ‘He says, become the wife kept for passion of such a man ... the kept woman ... the temporary wife.’” If he accepts ... a formal meeting of the Order.

A man sends a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, to such a woman protected by the mother and protected by the father ... and protected by a stick, and explain: ‘... a temporary wife.’” If he accepts ... formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.240
Vin.3.141

Told is the series on the woman who is a temporary wife

A man sends a monk saying: “Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so protected by the mother: ‘He says, become the wife bought by money of such and such a man,’” If he accepts, examines her, brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.5.4.6

A man ... ‘the wife kept for passion’ ... ‘the kept woman’ ... ‘the temporary wife’ ... formal meeting of the Order.

The steps of composition

This is that beginning with ten:

A man sends a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so protected by a stick: ‘He says, become the wife of so-and-so, bought by money, and kept for passion and ... and the temporary wife’” ... formal meeting of the Order.

A man sends a monk saying: “Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so protected by the mother: ‘It is said, become the wife bought by money of so-and-so.’” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.5.4.7

A man ... “to so-and-so protected by the mother and protected by the father, explain: ‘It is said, become the wives and so-and-so, bought by money and kept for passion, and ...’” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

A man ... “to so-and-so protected by the mother and protected by the father and protected by the parents, and explain: ‘He says, become the

wives of so-and-so, bought with money, and kept for passion, and the kept woman and ...” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Increase from both (ends) is to be made thus:

A man sends a monk saying: “Go, honoured sir, to so-and-so protected by the mother and protected by the father and ... and protected by a stick and explain: ‘He says, become the wives of so-and-so, bought by money, and kept for passion ... and temporary wives.’” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Told is the increase from both (ends)

Bu-Ss.5.4.8

BD.1.241

The mother of a man sent a monk ... the father of a man sent a monk ... the parents of a man sent a monk ... the brother of a man sent a monk ... the sister of a man sent a monk ... the relations of a man sent a monk ... the clansmen of a man sent a monk ... the co-religionists of a man sent a monk.

Vin.3.142

Bu-Ss.5.4.9

The mother of (a girl) protected by the mother sent a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so: ‘Let her be the wife, bought by money, of so-and-so ...’” ... formal meeting of the Order.

The mother of (a girl) protected by the mother sent a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir ... be the wife kept for passion ... the temporary wife ...” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

The steps in the composition

This is that beginning with ten:

The mother of (a girl) protected by the mother sent a monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so: ‘Let her be the wife of so-and-so bought by money and the wife kept for passion and ... and the temporary wife ...’” ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.5.4.10

The father of (a girl) protected by the father sent a monk ... the parents of (a girl) protected by the parents sent a monk ... the brother of (a girl)

protected by the brother sent a monk ... the sister of (a girl) protected by the sister sent a monk ... the relations of (a girl) protected by the relations sent a monk ... the co-religionists of (a girl) protected by *dhamma* sent a monk ... one who was appropriated with protection sent a monk ... one who has put a stick, for protection with a stick, sent a monk, saying: "Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so: 'Be the wife of so-and-so bought with money ... be the wife of so-and-so bought with money and the wife kept for passion ... and the temporary wife.'" ... a formal meeting of the Order.

One protected by the mother sent a monk, saying: "Go, honoured sir, explain to so-and-so: 'I am the wife bought by money for so-and-so ...'" ... a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.5.4.11

One protected by the mother ... 'the wife kept for passion ... the temporary wife' ... formal meeting of the Order.

The steps of composition

If one protected by a stick sends a monk, saying: "Go, sir, explain to so-and-so: 'I am the wife for so-and-so, bought with money ... another wife kept for passion and and the temporary wife.'" If he accepts, examines, and brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.242

Told is the whole abbreviated series

If he accepts, examines, brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If he accepts, examines, but does not bring back, it is a grave offence. If he accepts, but does not examine and does not bring back, it is an offence of wrong-doing. If he does not accept, but examines and brings back, it is a grave offence. If he does not accept, but examines, yet does not bring back, it is an offence of wrong-doing. If he does not accept, and does not examine, but brings back, it is an offence of wrong-doing. If he does not accept, does not examine and does not bring back, it is not an offence.

Bu-Ss.5.4.12

Vin.3.143

If a man enjoins many monks, saying: “Go, honoured sirs, examine such and such a woman,” and if they all accept, all examine and all bring back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order for them all.

If a man ... “... examine such and such a woman,” and if they all accept, all examine, but if one makes them bring back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order for them all.

If a man ... “... examine such and such a woman,” if all accept, if one makes them examine her and if all bring back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order for them all.

If a man ... “... examine such and such woman,” if all accept, but if one makes them examine, and if one makes them bring back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order for them all.

Bu-Ss.5.4.14

A man enjoins a monk: “Go, honoured sir, examine such and such a woman.” If he accepts, examines her and brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.243

A man enjoins a monk: “Go, honoured sir, examine such and such a woman.” If he accepts, examines her but makes a novice bring back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

A man enjoins a monk: “... such and such a woman.” If he accepts, makes a novice examine, but himself brings back, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

A man enjoins a monk: “... such and such a woman.” If he accepts, makes a novice examine her, and the novice having examined, brings back alone,¹ there is a grave offence for both.²

Bu-Ss.5.4.15

Going, he procures, coming back he deceives with words—it is a grave offence. Going he deceives with words, coming back he procures—it is a grave offence. Going he procures, coming back he procures—it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

¹ *bahiddhā*, not telling his teacher, the monk. ² Vin-a.559, “A grave offence for both means: the accepting, and making over the examining is a grave offence with two parts for the teacher. The accepting and the bringing back is a grave offence with two parts for the novice.”

There is no offence if it is for the Order,¹ or for a shrine,² or if he is ill;³ if he is going on business, if he is mad, if he is a beginner.

Bu-Ss.5.4.16

MNEMONIC LIST

Asleep, and dead, gone out,
unsexed woman, a female eunuch,
She was reconciled after having quarrelled,
and did go-between for a eunuch.

Bu-Ss.5.5.1

At one time a certain man enjoined a certain monk: “Go, honoured sir, examine such and such a woman.” As he was going, he asked some people: “Where is so-and-so?”

BD.1.244

Vin.3.144

“She is asleep, honoured sir,” they said. He was remorseful, and said: “What now if I have fallen into an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order.” He told this matter to the lord. He said: “Monk, this is not an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order; it is an offence of wrong-doing.”

At one time a certain man enjoined a certain monk, saying: “Go, honoured sir, examine such and such a woman.” As he was going he asked some people: “Where is so-and-so?” “She is dead, honoured sir,” they said ... “She has gone out, honoured sir,” they said ... “That is an unsexed woman, honoured sir.” ... “That is a female eunuch,⁴ honoured sir,” they said. He was remorseful ... “offence of wrong-doing.”

Bu-Ss.5.5.2

¹ Vin-a.599f., “It is not an offence if any hall for reciting the Pātimokkha belonging to the Order is left unfinished, and a lay-follower sends a monk to a female lay-follower in order to get food as wages for the workers, or if a female lay-follower goes to a lay-follower on business connected with the Order. It is the same for building a shrine.” ² I do not think a *cetiya* is necessarily a “tumulus, sepulchral monument, cairn,” as the *Pali-English Dictionary* defines it. The *cetiya*s at, e.g., the Caves of Ellora and Ajanta are certainly neither tumuli nor cairns, nor do they contain relics. Erected probably after the life-time of the Buddha, they were used as places for meditation, (*√cet*, to think), or for listening to discourses. See below, [BD.1.266](#). ³ “If he goes for the sake of medicine for an invalid, sent by a lay-follower into the presence of a female lay-follower, or sent by a female lay-follower into the presence of a male lay-follower.” ⁴ *Itthipaṇḍakā*, may be name of a deformity. Cf. above, [BD.1.217](#); and [Vin.2.271](#) (*°paṇḍikā*).

Bu-Ss.5.5.3

At one time a certain woman, having quarrelled with her husband, went to her mother's house. A monk, dependent on (her) family, effected a reconciliation. He was remorseful ...

“Monk, is she not one to be told ‘enough?’”¹

“She is not one to be told ‘enough,’ lord.”

“It is not an offence, monk, as she is not one to be told ‘enough’.”

Bu-Ss.5.5.4
BD.1.245

At one time a certain monk acted as a go-between for a eunuch. He was remorseful. “What now if I have fallen into an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order?” He told this matter to the lord.

“Monk, it is not an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order; it is a grave offence.”

Told is the Fifth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

¹ *alamvacanīyā*, a woman who has to be addressed with *alam* (enough), perhaps the husband's way of divorcing, and the wife returns to her parental home. That this woman did not return to the parental home, *nālamvacanīyā*, means, according to Buddhaghosa, Vin-a.561, “she was not abandoned (by her husband). For any woman who is abandoned according to the customs of diverse districts and thus ceases to be a wife, is called *alamvacanīyā*. But this woman was not one to be told ‘enough’ (perhaps = divorce) on account of some quarrel, so that here the lord said there was no offence.”

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 6

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. At that time the monks of Āḷavī,¹ begging in company,² were having huts built with no benefactor,³ for their own advantage, and not according to measure⁴; but these were not finished. They lived intent on begging, intent on hinting⁵: “Give a man, give a servant, give an ox, give a wagon, give a knife, give a hatchet, give an axe, give a spade, give a chisel, give a creeper, give bamboo, give muñja-grass, give coarse grass, give *tiṇa*-grass, give clay.” People were oppressed with the begging, oppressed with the hinting, and when they saw the monks they were perturbed, then alarmed, then they ran away, then they went by a different route,⁶ turned in another direction⁷ and closed the door; and when they saw cows they ran away, imagining them to be monks.

BD.1.246
Bu-Ss.6.1.1

Vin.3.145
BD.1.247

¹ Vin-a.561, “boys born in the kingdom of Āḷavī were called Āḷavakā, and at the time of their going forth they were known as Āḷavakā.” These monks often gave trouble over new buildings, cf. above, BD.1.148, and Vin.2.172. ² OLDENBERG says, Vin.3.274, “probably we ought to read constantly *saṃyācīkāya kuṭīyo*.” Vin-a.566 takes *saṃyācīkāya* to mean begging themselves. See below, BD.1.254. ³ *Assāmikāyo ti anissariyo*, Vin-a.561, which goes on to say, “having them built without a donor,” or benefactor, *dāyaka*. ⁴ *Appamāṇīkāyo*. Vin-a.561, “with this amount they will be completed,” they said. So they were not limited in size, their measure increased, their measure was great. ⁵ See Vin.3.227 ⁶ Vin-a.565, “having come to a road, then leaving it and turning back, they went taking the left side or the right.” ⁷ *Aññena mukhaṃ karoti*: to direct the face towards another (quarter).

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great¹ arose from spending the rains in Rājagaha, and set out for Āḷavī. In due course he arrived at Āḷavī. There the venerable Kassapa the Great stayed in the chief shrine at Āḷavī.² Then the venerable Kassapa the Great rising early, and taking his bowl and robes, entered Āḷavī for alms. People seeing the venerable Kassapa the Great were perturbed, then alarmed, then they ran away, then they went by a different route, turned in another direction and closed the door. Then the venerable Kassapa the Great, having walked Āḷavī for alms, after having eaten and finished his meal, addressed the monks saying:

“Formerly, your reverences, Āḷavī had good alms-food, alms were easily obtained, it was easy to keep oneself going by gleanings or by favour. But now this Āḷavī is short of alms-food, alms are difficult to obtain, nor is it easy to keep oneself going by gleanings or by favour. What is the reason, what the cause that now this Āḷavī is short of alms-food, that alms are difficult to obtain, that it is not easy to keep oneself going by gleanings or by favour?”

BD.1.248

Then these monks told this matter to the venerable Kassapa the Great.

Bu-Ss.6.1.2

Then the lord having dwelt at Rājagaha for as long as he thought fit, set out on a tour for Āḷavī. Making the tour, in due course he arrived at Āḷavī. There at Āḷavī the lord dwelt in the chief shrine at Āḷavī. Then the venerable Kassapa the Great approached the lord, and having approached

¹ *Mahā*. The rendering “Great” is perhaps a little misleading, for one would not think him eminent enough to be so called. The epithet was clearly given so as to distinguish him from other Kassapas. Conceivably it means that he had been in the Order longer than they had. We cannot say the “Elder” as *thera* is an elder; but Kassapa Senior might be possible. Further, I think it doubtful whether it is right to render *Mahā* as “Great” in any of the cases where it occurs as an epithet of disciples. For example, Sāriputta was never called Mahā-Sāriputta, as Moggallāna was referred to, very frequently, as Mahā-Moggallāna; and yet as far as “greatness” goes, there is little or nothing to choose between them. ² *Aggāḷave cetiye*, mentioned at [Vin.2.172](#); [SN.i.185](#); [Snp.p.59](#); [Dhp-a.3.170](#). Buddhaghosa at [Snp-a.344](#) = [SN-a.i.268](#) explains *aggāḷave cetiye* as *Āḷaviyaṃ aggacetiye*, and says that it was transformed into a *vihāra*. At [ks.i.234](#), it is taken to be “the chief temple” at Āḷavī; in *Buddhist Suttas*, p.56 (second edition), it is called “the temple at Aggāḷava”; while translator at *Vinaya Texts* iii.212 appears to regard it as a proper name. MR. E.M. HARE in [GS.4.147](#) translates, “at Aggāḷava, near the shrine there,” and gives no notes. It was probably a pre-Buddhist shrine. See above, [BD.1.243](#), [n.4](#), and below, [BD.1.266](#), [n.5](#). Also see B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, Appendix, p.74ff.

him, he greeted the lord and sat down to one side. Sitting to one side the venerable Kassapa the Great told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on that occasion, for that reason, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks of Ālavī, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, begging in company, were having huts built, with no benefactor, for your own advantage, not according to measure, and that these were not completed? They say that you dwelt intent on begging, intent on hinting: ‘Give a man ...’ ... seeing cows they ran away, taking them for monks.”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, begging in company, have huts built? ... ‘Give a man ... give clay.’ It is not foolish men, for the benefit of unbelievers,” ... having rebuked them and given *dhamma*-talk, he addressed the monks:

“Formerly,¹ monks, two brothers (who were) holy men² lived close by the river Ganges. Then, monks, Maṇikaṅṭha,³ the *nāga*-king,⁴ emerging from the river Ganges, came up to the younger holy man, and having come up and encircled the younger holy man seven times with his coils, he stood spreading his great hood above his head.⁵ Then, monks, the younger holy man, through fear of this snake, became thin, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, his veins showing all over his body. Monks, the elder holy man saw that the younger holy man was thin, wretched, of bad colour, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body. Seeing this, he said to the younger holy man: ‘Why are you, good sir, thin ... all over your body?’

¹ Cf. Ja.2.283, Maṇikaṅṭhajātaka, for this story. ² *Isi*, holy man or anchorite. *Isi* has not the great force of ṛṣi of the brahminical tradition, meaning a seer or inspired singer to whom the Vedas were spoken or revealed. There are interesting variations in the details of this story as described in Vinaya and Jātaka. ³ Vin-a.565, “the *nāga*-king went with a very valuable jewel able to grant all desires, adorning his throat, therefore he is called ‘jewel-throated.’” Cf. Hindu mythology, where the cow granting all desires and the jewel granting all desires were brought out from the sea at the Churning of the Ocean. ⁴ Or serpent-king ⁵ I.e., according to Vin-a.565, above the younger holy man’s head. He was practising *mettā-vihāra*, and the *nāga*-king shaded him with his hood.

“Now, the *nāga*-king, Maṇikaṇṭha, came out of the river Ganges for me, and came up to me, and having come up and having encircled me seven times with his coils, he stood spreading his great hood above my head. I, good sir, through fear of the snake, became thin ... all over my body.’

“But, good sir, do you not want this snake to return?’

“Good sir, I do not want this snake to return.’

“Do you, good sir, see anything of this snake?’

“I see, good sir, the jewelled ornament on his throat.’

“Then, good sir, you beg this snake for the jewel, saying: ‘Good sir, give me the jewel; I want the jewel.’”

“Then, monks, Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, emerging from the river Ganges, came up to the younger holy man and having come up he stood to one side. Monks, as he was standing to one side, the younger holy man said to Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king: ‘Good sir, give the jewel to me, I want the jewel.’ Then Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, said: ‘A monk begs for the jewel, a monk wants the jewel,’ and he hurried away.

“A second time, monks, did Maṇikaṇṭha emerging ... come up to the younger holy man. Then, monks, the younger holy man saw Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, coming from afar, and seeing Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga* king, he said: ‘Good sir, give me the jewel, I want the jewel.’ Then, monks, Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, said: ‘A monk begs for the jewel, a monk wants the jewel.’ And then he turned away again.

“A third time, monks, Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, came up from the river Ganges. Then, monks, the younger holy man saw Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, emerging from the river Ganges, and seeing him, he said to Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king: ‘Good sir, give me the jewel, I want the jewel.’ Then, monks, Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, addressed these verses to the younger holy man:

“My food and drink is produced abundantly,
 Excellently, by reason of this jewel,
 I do not give it to you, you are one who asks too much,
 And not for you will I come to a hermitage.

“Like a lad, his hand on a tempered sword,¹
 You frighten² (me) begging for this stone,³
 I do not give it to you, you are one who asks too much
 And not for you will I come to a hermitage.’

“Then, monks, Maṇikaṇṭha, the *nāga*-king, said: ‘A monk begs for the jewel, a monk wants the jewel,’ and he went away; then he was gone, and did not come back again. Then, monks, the younger holy man, not seeing that beautiful snake, became increasingly thin, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body. The elder holy man, seeing that the younger holy man had become increasingly thin ... the veins showing all over his body, said to the younger holy man:

BD.1.251

“‘Why are you, good sir, increasingly thin ... the veins showing all over your body?’

“‘It is because I, good sir, do not see the beautiful snake that I become increasingly thin ... the veins showing all over my body.’

“Then, monks, the elder holy man addressed these verses to the younger holy man:

“‘Do not beg him who is dear for what you covet,
 It is odious to ask for too much,
 The snake, begged by a brahmin for a jewel,
 Disappeared, and was not seen (again).’⁴

“Monks, begging from these animals and living creatures will become hated, begging by hinting (will become) hated, how much more then (will be begging) from men?

¹ *sakkharadhotipāṇi*. Ja.2.285 explained “your hand is on a sword polished on the oil-(whetting) stone.” Vin-a.566 says: *sakkharā vuccati kāḷasilā* (a dark stone) ... *sakkharadhotapāṇi, pāsāṇe dhotanisita-khaggahattho ti attho*, which seems to mean “in the hand the sword whetted and cleaned on a stone.” “As a man with a hand on a sword frightens, do you frighten begging me for the stone.” Ibid., Rouse translates this line at Ja.2.198: “Like lads who wait with tempered sword in hand” (lads, *susū* being there in the plural). ² *tāsesi*, causitive of *tasati*, to tremble, shake, to have fears. ³ Reading with Jātaka, *tāsesi’ imam̐ selam̐ yācamāno*, and not with Vinaya, *tāsesi maṁ* ... Jātaka Commentary says (Ja.2.285): “asking for this jewel, you frighten me like a young man who would unsheathe his gold-hilted sword and say: ‘I cut off your head.’” Vin-a.566 reads, *evam̐ tāsesi maṁ selam̐ yācamāno, maṇim̐ yācanto ti attho*. ⁴ =Ja.2.285.

Bu-Ss.6.1.4

“Once upon a time, monks, a certain monk lived in a certain thicket on a slope of the Himālayas. Monks, not far from the thicket was an extensive, low-lying marshy ground. Then, monks, a great flock of birds, going daily to feed in this marshy ground, entered the thicket at night to roost. Then, monks, that monk, worried by the noise of the flocking birds, came up to me, and having come up and greeted me, he sat down to one side. Sitting to one side, I said, monks, to that monk: ‘I hope, monk, you are getting on well, I hope, monk, you are keeping going, having accomplished your journey with but little fatigue. But where do you come from, monk?’

Vin.3.148

BD.1.252

“‘I am getting along fairly well, lord,¹ I am keeping going, lord,² and, lord,³ have accomplished my journey with but little fatigue. There is, lord,⁴ on the slopes of the Himālayas a large thicket, and, lord, not far from this thicket there is an extensive, low-lying marshy ground. Now, lord, a great flock of birds going daily to feed at that marshy ground goes into that thicket at night to roost. That is why I come, lord,⁵ for I am worried by the noise of that flock of birds.’

“I said: ‘Monk, do you want this flock of birds not to return?’

“‘I want, lord,⁶ this flock of birds not to return.’

“I said: ‘Then you, monk, going there, and penetrating this thicket three times in the first watch of the night must utter this sound: ‘Listen to me, good sirs, whatever birds have come to roost in this thicket, I want a feather. Good sirs, give me one feather ‘at a time.’ Three times in the middle watch ... three times in the last watch ... at a time.’ Then, monks, this monk having gone there, and having penetrated the thicket, uttered this sound three times ... in the middle watch of the night ... in the last watch of the night ... ‘at a time.’ Then, monks, that flock of birds said: ‘The monk begs for a feather, the monk wants a feather,’ and they departed from that thicket, and after they were gone, they did not come back again. Begging, monks, from these animals and living creatures will become hateful, hinting (will become) hateful, how much more then from men?’

Bu-Ss.6.1.5

¹ Bhagavā. ² Bhagavā. ³ Bhante. ⁴ Bhante. ⁵ Bhagavā. ⁶ Bhante.

“Once upon a time, monks, the father of Raṭṭhapāla, the noble youth, addressed these verses to Raṭṭhapāla, the noble youth:

“‘Tho’ I do not know them, Raṭṭhāpāla, the many-folk,
These, meeting me, beg—why do you not beg of me?’

‘The beggar is not liked, the not-giver to beggar is not liked,¹
Therefore I do not beg of you, do not be angry with me.’²

“Monks, if Raṭṭhapāla, the noble youth, can speak thus to his own father, how much more then can (any) person to (any other) person?

BD.1.253

“Monks, it is difficult for householders to collect possessions, and difficult to protect their stores; how can you, foolish men, dwell intent on begging, intent on asking by hinting (for something) from among these possessions which are difficult to collect, and from among these stores which are difficult to protect, saying: ‘Give a man, give a servant, give an ox, give a wagon, give a knife, give a hatchet, give an axe, give a spade, give a chisel, give a creeper, give bamboo, give *muñja*-grass, give coarse grass, give *tiṇa*-grass, give clay.’ This is not, foolish men, for the benefit of unbelievers ... and, monks, thus this course of training should be set forth:

Bu-Ss.6.1.6

Vin.3.149

“A monk begging in company³ for having a hut built, which has no benefactor, for his own advantage, should make it according to measure. This is the measure: in length, twelve spans of a span of the accepted length⁴; in width seven spans inside. Monks should be brought for marking out the site. A site not involving destruction,⁵ and with an open space round it,⁶ should be marked out by these monks. If that

¹ For not giving is not liked, Vin-a.566. ² =Ja.3.352, Ja.3.353, except first line. ³ Vin-a.566, “*saññācīkā* means, having themselves inaugurated is called ‘begging,’ therefore *saññācīkāya* is called begging themselves,” cf. Vin-a.561 and below, Old Commentary, *sayam yācivā*.

⁴ *Sugata-vidatthiyā*, see *Vinaya Texts* i.8, n.2, for a discussion of this phrase. Vin-a.567, “a man of medium height is three spans, a builder’s cubit (*hattha*, the hand used as a measure) is one and a half cubits.” ⁵ *Anārambha*—i.e., to living creatures, see below, Old Commentary, **BD.1.257**.

⁶ *Saparikkamana*—i.e., accessible, good for rambling in. See below, Old Commentary, “possible for a cart drawn by a yoke of oxen to go round it.” I follow translation as at *Vinaya Texts* i.8.

monk should build a hut, begging himself for a site which involves destruction and which has not an open space round it, or if he should not bring the monks for marking out a site, or if he should exceed the measure, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.6.2.1
BD.1.254

Begging in company means: oneself begging for a man, for a servant, for an ox, for a wagon, for a knife, for a hatchet, for an axe, for a spade, for a chisel ... for *tīṇa*-grass, for clay.

A hut means: it is smeared inside or it is smeared outside, or it is smeared inside and outside.¹

For having ... built means: building or causing to be built.

Without a benefactor means: there is not anyone who is the owner, either a woman or a man or a householder or one who has gone forth.

For his own advantage means: for the good of himself.²

Should make it according to measure. This is the measure: in length, twelve spans of a span of the accepted length means: for the outside measure. **In width, seven inside** means: for the inside measure.

Bu-Ss.6.2.2

Monks should be brought for marking out a site means: that a monk building a hut, having cleared a site for a hut, approaching the Order, arranging his robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, squatting down on his heels, and saluting with his palms outstretched, should speak thus to them³: ‘Honoured sirs, I, begging in company, for my own advantage, am desirous of building a hut, it has no benefactor; honoured sirs, I beg the Order for inspection of the site for a hut.’ A second time it should be begged for, a third time it should be begged for. If the whole Order⁴ is able to inspect a site for a hut, it should be inspected by the whole Order. But if the whole Order is not able to inspect a site for a hut, then those monks who are experienced and competent to know what involves destruction, what does not involve destruction, what has an open space round it, what does not have an open space round it—begging these, they

Vin.3.150

BD.1.255

¹ =below, **BD.1.267**, in definition of *vihāra*. ² Cf. below, **BD.1.268** ³ Vin-a.569, “the Order should be spoken to thus by him.” ⁴ I.e., all the community of a district or of a *vihāra*.

should depute (them).

And thus, monks, should they depute (them): the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Such and such a monk, begging in company, for his own advantage, desirous of building a hut which has no benefactor, begs the Order for inspection of the site for a hut. If it is the right time for the Order,¹ the Order should depute such and such monks to inspect a site for a hut for that monk. This is the motion. Let the Order listen to me, honoured sirs. Such and such a monk ... site for a hut. The Order depute such and such monks to inspect a site for a hut for such and such a monk. If it seems good to the venerable ones to depute the inspection of a site for a hut to such and such monks for that monk, be silent; if it does not seem good, then you should speak. Such and such monks are deputed by the Order to inspect a site for a hut for such and such a monk. It seems good to the Order, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand.'

These monks (thus) deputed, going there, a site for a hut should be inspected, it should be known whether it involves destruction, whether it does not involve destruction, whether it has an open space round it, whether it does not have an open space round it. If it involves destruction and has not an open space round it, it should be said: Do not build here. If it does not involve destruction and has an open space round it, the Order should be told that it does not involve destruction and that it has an open space round it. The monk building the hut, going up to the Order, arranging his robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, squatting down on his heels, and saluting with his palms outstretched, should speak thus: 'I, honoured sirs, begging in company, am desirous of building a hut; it has no benefactor, it is for my own advantage. Honoured sirs, I beg the Order to mark out the site for a hut.' A second time it should be begged for, a third time it should be begged for. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Such and such a monk, begging in company, is desirous of building a hut, it has no benefactor, it is for his own advantage. He begs the Order to mark out a site for a hut. If it is the right time for the Order, the Order

BD.1.256

¹ Vin-a.569, "for this inspection."

should mark out a site for a hut for such and such a monk. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Such and such a monk ... site for a hut. The Order marks out a site for a hut for such and such a monk. If the marking out of the site for a hut for such and such a monk seems good to the venerable ones, be silent; if it does not seem good, then speak. The site for a hut for such and such a monk is marked out by the Order. It seems good to the Order, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand.'

Vin.3.151

Bu-Ss.6.2.3

Involving destruction means: if it is the abode of ants or if it is the abode of termites or if it is the abode of rats or if it is the abode of snakes or if it is the abode of scorpions or if it is the abode of centipedes or if it is the abode of elephants or if it is the abode of horses or if it is the abode of lions or if it is the abode of tigers or if it is the abode of leopards or if it is the abode of bears or if it is the abode of hyenas¹ or if it is the abode of any other animals or living creatures, or if it is connected with² grain or if it is connected with vegetables, or if it is connected with the slaughtering-place³ or if it is connected with the execution-block or if it is connected with a cemetery or if it is connected with a pleasure-grove or if it is connected with the king's property or if it is connected with elephant-stables or if it is connected with horses' stables or if it is connected with a prison or if it is connected with a tavern⁴ or if it is connected with a slaughter-house or if it is connected with a carriage road or if it is connected with a cross-road or if it is connected with a public rest-house or if it is connected with a meeting-place:⁵ this means **involving destruction**.

BD.1.257

Not with an open space round it means: It is not possible to go round it even with a yoked wagon, to go round it everywhere with a ladder.⁶ This means **not with an open space round it**.

Not involving destruction means: if it is not the abode of ants nor is it the abode of termites ... it is not connected with a meeting-place. This

¹ Cf. above, [BD.1.98](#); [AN.iii.101](#); [Ja.5.416](#). At [Vin.1.219–220](#) it is a *dukkaṭa* to eat the flesh of some of these animals. ² *Nissita* throughout. ³ For thieves, [Vin-a.570](#). ⁴ At [Vin.4.267](#) nuns are forbidden to keep both such places. ⁵ Text reads, *saṃsaraṇa*; [Vin-a.570](#) reads *sañcaraṇa*. ⁶ [Vin-a.570](#), "a ladder having been put up by those approving of the hut, it is not possible to go round it with a ladder (to lean a ladder on every point of it).

means **not involving destruction**.

With an open space round it means: it is possible to go round it even with a yoked wagon, to go round it everywhere with a ladder. This means **with an open space round it**.

Begging in company means: oneself begging saying: Give a man ... give clay.

Bu-Ss.6.2.4

A hut means: it is smeared inside or it is smeared outside or it is smeared inside and outside.

Should build means: he builds or he causes to be built.

If he should not bring the monks for marking out a site, or if he should exceed the measure means: not having caused the site for a hut to be marked out by a vote following upon the motion, he builds or causes to be built, exceeding the length or width by as much as even a hair's breadth, in each operation there is an offence of wrong-doing. If one lump¹ is (still) to come there is a grave offence, but when that lump has come there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.²

BD.1.258

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... because of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.152

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.6.3.1

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, not involving destruction, having an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

¹ Of plaster, Vin-a.571. ² Cf. below, BD.1.268.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, involving destruction, having an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, not involving destruction, having an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.2
BD.1.259

If a monk builds a hut, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, exceeding the measure, not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, exceeding the measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If a monk builds a hut to (the right) measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut to (the right) measure, involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.3

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there are two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, with an open space round it, there are two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there are two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.1.260

If a monk builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there are two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.153

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there are two offences of wrong-doing.

Bu-Ss.6.3.4

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a monk builds a hut, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

A monk commands: "Build a hut for me." If they build a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing ... If they build a hut for

Bu-Ss.6.3.5

him, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.6

A monk having commanded: "Build a hut for me," went away. But he did not command: "Let the site be marked out, and let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it." They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing ... the site having been marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is no offence.

BD.1.261

Bu-Ss.6.3.7

A monk having commanded: "Build a hut for me," went away. But he did not command: "Let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it." They built a hut for him, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing ... to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.8

A monk having commanded: "Build a hut for me," went away. But he did not command: "Let the site be marked out, and let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it." They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there are two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order together with two offences of wrong-doing ... the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.9

A monk having commanded: "Build a hut for me," went away. And he commanded: "Let the site be marked out, and let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it." They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space

round it. He heard and said: “They say that a hut was built for me, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it.” This monk should go himself or a messenger should be sent, saying:

“Let the site be marked out, and let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it.” If he should not go himself or send a messenger, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.1.262

Vin.3.154

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” ... they built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, with an open space round it. He heard ... or a messenger should be sent saying: “Let the site be marked out, and let it not involve destruction.” If he should not go himself nor send a messenger, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

A monk having commanded: ... “Let the site be marked out, and with an open space round it ... Let the site be marked out ... Let it not involve destruction, and let there be an open space round it ... Let it not involve destruction ... Let there be an open space round it” ... there is an offence of wrong-doing ... They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. And he commanded: “Let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it.” They built a hut for him, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it. He heard and said: “They say that a hut was built for me, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it.” This monk should go himself or a messenger should be sent, saying: “Let it be to (the right) measure, and, not involving destruction, and with an open space round it ... Let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction ... Let it be to (the right) measure, and with an open space round it ... Let it be to (the right) measure ... Let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it ... Let it not involve destruction ... Let it have an open space round it” ... there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.10

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. He commanded: “Let the site be marked out, and let it be to (the right) measure, and let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it.” They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the (right) measure involving destruction, not with an open space round it. He heard ... no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.12

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. He commanded: “Let the site be marked out, and let it not involve destruction, and let there be an open space round it.” They built the hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there are three offences of wrong-doing for the builders ... involving destruction, with an open space round it: there are two offences of wrong-doing for the builders ... not involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there are two offences of wrong-doing for the builders ... not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is an offence of wrong-doing for the builders ... the site having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there are two offences of wrong-doing for the builders ... involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is an offence of wrong-doing for the builders ... not involving destruction, not with an open space round it: there is an offence of wrong-doing for the builders ... not involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is no offence.

Vin.3.155

Bu-Ss.6.3.13

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me” went away. He commanded: “Let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it” ... A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. He commanded: “Let the site be marked out, and let it be to (the right) measure, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it” ... there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.6.3.14
BD.1.264

A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. They built a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it. If he comes back (and finds that it is) imperfectly executed, the hut should be given by this monk to another, or being destroyed should be rebuilt. If he does not give it to another, or destroying it have it rebuilt, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... A monk having commanded: “Build a hut for me,” went away. They built a hut for him, the site having been marked out, to (the right) measure, not involving destruction, with an open space round it: there is no offence.

If he finishes¹ by himself what was imperfectly executed by himself, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If others finish what was imperfectly executed by himself, there is an offence ... of the Order. If he finishes by himself what was imperfectly executed by others, there is an offence ... of the Order. If others finish what was imperfectly executed by others, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.6.3.15

There is no offence if it is (built) in a mountain-cave² as a hut,³ as a hut of *tiṇa*-grass,⁴ for the good of another⁵ except it be as a house, there is no offence in any of these circumstances,⁶ nor if he is out of his mind or a

Bu-Ss.6.3.16

BD.1.265

¹ Cf. Vin.3.225, Vin.3.229. ² *leṇa*. Vin.1.206 = Vin.3.248, translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.61, “cave dwelling-place.” At Vin.2.146 it is given as the generic term for five kinds of abode.

³ *guhā* Vin-a.573, “a hut of bricks or in a rock or of wood or of earth.” *Guhā* is mentioned at Vin.1.58 = Vin.1.96, with the four other abodes of Vin.2.146, as an allowance extra to that of dwelling at the foot of a tree. At Vin.1.107 the Order is allowed to fix upon an *Uposatha* Hall in any one of these five dwelling-places, and at Vin.1.239 the Order is allowed to keep the stores in any one of them. Cf. Vin.1.284. ⁴ “= a seven-storied palace if (only) the covering is of leaves or of *tiṇa*-grass”, Vin-a.573. A seven-storied (*sattabhūmaka*) hut is, I suppose, conceivable, but seems hardly possible. ⁵ “If it is built for the benefit of a preceptor or teacher or for the Order,” Vin-a.574. ⁶ Vin-a.574, “except it be as a house (dwelling or home, *agāra*) for himself, he has it built, saying: ‘It will become another half for the recitation of the Pātimokkha, or a hot room for bathing purposes, or a dining-room, or a warmed refectory’; in all these circumstances there is no offence. But if he says that it will become these things and that ‘I will dwell in it’ there is an offence.”

beginner.¹

*Told is the Sixth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that of
building a hut²*

¹ For these exemptions cf. [Vin.4.48](#); Vin-a.574 indicates that the monks of Āḷavī were beginners. ² Probably *niṭṭhitam* is omitted here by mistake.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 7

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's Park.¹ At that time a householder, the supporter² of the venerable Channa,³ said to the venerable Channa:

BD.1.266
Bu-Ss.7.1.1

“Do find out a site for a *vihāra*,⁴ honoured sir. I will have a *vihāra* built for the master.”

Then the venerable Channa, clearing a site for the *vihāra*, had a tree cut down that was used as a shrine,⁵ revered by village, revered by little town, revered by town, revered by the country-side, revered by the kingdom. People became vexed, annoyed, angry, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have a tree cut down that is used as a shrine revered by village ... revered by the kingdom? The recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are depriving a one-facultied thing⁶ of life.” The monks heard these people who were vexed, annoyed, angry. Those who were modest monks became vexed, annoyed, angry and said:

Vin.3.156

“How can the venerable Channa have a tree cut down that was used as a shrine, revered by village ... revered by the kingdom?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.1.267

¹ Vin-a.574, “it was made, they say, by Ghosita, the great merchant.” ² Vin-a.574, “at the time of the bodhisatta Channa was his supporter.” ³ Cf. Vin.2.21ff.; at Vin.2.88, he took the side of the nuns in a quarrel with the monks; at Vin.2.290 the *brahmadāṇḍa* penalty was laid on him, but he attained arahanship (DN.ii.154). Cf. also Vin.4.35f., Vin.4.47, Vin.4.113, Vin.4.141 and below, BD.1.309. ⁴ Vin-a.574, “not a whole *vihāra*, but one dwelling-place.” *Vihāra* originally was probably rather more than “cell,” and “cell” would most likely have been called *pariveṇa*, a monk's cell, cf. *Vinaya Texts* iii.109, and above, BD.1.119. ⁵ Vin-a.575 explains *cetiya* by *cittikata*. This is from *citti-karoti*, to honour, to esteem. Vin-a.575 further says that “a *cetiya* is for the sake of honouring: the term is used of those worthy of worship of sacred places. *Cetiya* means the honoured (or revered or selected) tree, it is a tree used (as a place) for honouring.” See above, BD.1.243, n.4, and BD.1.247, n.2. ⁶ With body-sensibility—i.e., sense of touch.

“Is it true, as is said, Channa, that you had a tree cut down that was used as a shrine, revered by village ... revered by the kingdom?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, have a tree cut down that was used as a shrine, revered by village ... revered by the kingdom? For, foolish man, in a tree are people having consciousness as living beings. This is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“If there is a monk building a large¹ *vihāra* for his own advantage, having a benefactor, monks should be brought for marking out a site. A site should be marked out by these monks, not involving destruction, with an open space round it. If a monk should build a large *vihāra* on a site involving destruction, not with an open space round it, or if he should not bring monks to mark out a site, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.7.2.1

Large means: it is called a *vihāra* having a benefactor.²

Vihāra means: it is smeared inside or it is smeared outside or it is smeared inside and outside.³

BD.1.268

Building means: building or causing to be built.

Having a benefactor means: a certain person is the benefactor: a woman or a man or a householder or one who has gone forth.⁴

For his own advantage means: for his own good.⁵

Monks should be brought for marking out a site means: that monk building a *vihāra*, clearing the site for a *vihāra* ... (see Bu-Ss.6.2.2) ... should say: ‘I, honoured sirs, am desirous of building a large *vihāra*, having a bene-

¹ *Mahallaka*, here not in the usual sense of “full of years,” but = *mahantabhāvo ... pamāṇmahantāya mahallakarū ... atthadassanattharū mahallako nāma*, Vin-a.575. But see Old Commentary’s definition below. Cf. Vin.2.166, where a *vihāra* is also called *mahallaka*. ² Because then it can be made to the size of the approved measure, apparently meaning not smaller than this. ³ Cf. above, BD.1.254, where hut, *kuṭī*, is defined in these same terms. *Ullittālitta*, which I have rendered “smeared inside and outside,” also occurs at AN.i.101 = MN.iii.61, in the simile of the (wise and foolish) non-inflammable and inflammable house with gabled roofs. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.1.254. ⁵ Cf. above, BD.1.254.

factor, for my own advantage; honoured sirs, I beg the Order to inspect the site for a *vihāra* ... this is called having an open space round it.

Large means: it is called a *vihāra* having a benefactor.

Vihāra means: it is smeared inside or it is smeared outside or it is smeared inside and outside.

Should build means: he builds or he causes to be built.

If he should not bring monks to mark out the site means: not having caused the site for a *vihāra* to be marked out by a vote following directly upon the motion, he builds or causes to be built, in each operation there is an offence of wrong-doing. If one lump (of plaster) is (still) to come, there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.¹

Vin.3.157

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... on account of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If a monk builds a *vihāra*, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it ... (see **Bu-Ss.6.3.1**. *The sections which contain “exceeding the measure” and “to (the right) measure” are not repeated here*) ... the site having been marked out, involving no destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.7.3.1

A monk commanded: “Build a *vihāra* for me.” They built a *vihāra* for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it ... the site not having been marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

BD.1.269

Bu-Ss.7.3.2

A monk having commanded: “Build a *vihāra* for me,” went away. And he did not command: “Let there be marking out of the site, and let it not involve destruction, and let it have an open space round it.” They built a *vihāra* for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it ... the site having been marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.7.3.3

A monk having commanded: “Build a *vihāra* for me,” went away. And he commanded: “Let there be marking out of the site, and not involving destruction, and with an open space round it.” They built the *vihāra* for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it. He heard and said: “They say that a *vihāra* was built for me, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it.” If this monk should go himself ... there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.7.3.5

A monk having commanded: “Build a *vihāra* for me,” went away. And he commanded: “Let there be marking out of the site, and let it not involve destruction, and let there be an open space round it.” They built a *vihāra* for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it. For the builders there are three offences of wrong-doing ... the site marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.7.3.6

BD.1.270

A monk having commanded: “Build a *vihāra* for me,” went away. They built a *vihāra* for him, the site not having been marked out, involving destruction, not with an open space round it. If he comes back there (and finds that it is) imperfectly executed ... the site having been marked out, not involving destruction, with an open space round it, there is no offence.

Bu-Ss.7.3.7

If he finishes by himself what was imperfectly executed by himself ... (= Bu-Ss.6.3.15–Bu-Ss.6.3.16) ... if he is a beginner.

Told is the Seventh Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that of building a vihāra

¹ Cf. above, BD.1.258.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 8

At one time¹ the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. At that time perfection had been attained by the venerable Dabba,² the Mallian,³ seven years after his birth. All that there is to be attained by a disciple had been fully attained by him⁴; for him there was nothing further to be done,⁵ no increase⁶ to (be added to) that which had been done. Then the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, as he was meditating alone and in solitude, thought: "Perfection was realised by me seven years after my birth. Whatever there is to be attained by a disciple, all this has been fully attained by me; for me there is nothing further to be done, no increase (to be added) to that which has been done. What now if I should render a service to the Order?" Then the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, thought: "What now if I should assign lodgings to the Order, and should distribute the meals?"

BD.1.271
Bu-Ss.8.1.1

BD.1.272

Bu-Ss.8.1.2

¹ From here to BD.1.9 below = Vin.2.74-79; translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.4-18. ² Vin-a.576, "he realised arahanship in the tonsure hall" — i.e., as his curls were being cut off. Cf. Thag.5, and *Psalms of the Brethren*, p.10; at AN.i.24 he is called "chief among those who assign quarters." ³ The son of the *rāja* or chief of the Mallians. ⁴ Vin-a.576, "the threefold wisdom, the four branches of logical analysis, the six super-knowings, the nine other-worldly matters." ⁵ Vin-a.576. "It is said that by him there is nothing further to be done in the four true things, the four Ways, owing to the commission of the sixteenfold thing that ought to be done." ⁶ *paṭicaya*. This is translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.4 as "nothing left that he ought to gather up as the fruit of his past labour." But this, I think, is reading more into these words than is justified. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.576 says, "there is no increasing (*vaḍḍhana*) of what ought to be done," such as cleansing (a cleaned bowl). I think that this is the right interpretation. Cf. Vin.1.183, Vin.1.185; AN.iii.376; AN.iv.355 for phrase *katassa vā paṭicayaṃ*. *Pati°* as at Vin.3.158 above is unusual.

Then the venerable, Dabba, the Mallian, rising up from his meditation at evening time, approached the lord, and having approached him and greeted him, he sat down to one side. As he was sitting to one side, the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, said to the lord: “Now, lord, as I was meditating alone and in solitude, I thought: ‘... What now if I were to render a service to the Order?’ I thought of this, lord: ‘What now if I were to assign lodgings to the Order? What if I should distribute the meals?’”

“It is good, it is good, Dabba; then, you, Dabba, assign the lodgings to the Order and distribute the meals.”

“Very well, lord,” the reverend Dabba, the Mallian, answered the lord.

Bu-Ss.8.1.3

Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given *dhamma*-talk, addressed the monks: “Monks, let the Order consent that Dabba, the Mallian, should assign the lodgings, and should distribute the meals. Monks, this should be authorised thus: Dabba should first be asked and having been asked, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. If it is the right time for the Order, let the Order consent that the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, should assign the lodgings and distribute the meals. That is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. The Order agrees that the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, should assign the lodgings and distribute the meals. If it pleases the venerable ones and there is permission that the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, should assign lodgings and distribute the meals, then be silent; if it does not seem good, then you should speak. It is agreed by the Order that the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, should assign the lodgings and distribute the meals. It is agreed ... Thus do I understand.’”¹

Vin.3.159

BD.1.273

Bu-Ss.8.1.4

Then the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, being so chosen, assigned one lodging in the same place for those monks who belonged to the same company. For those monks who knew the Suttantas he assigned a lodging in the same place, saying: “These will be able to chant over² the Suttantas to one

¹ Cf. Vin.2.176, where it is said that “at that time there was no one who allotted lodgings for the Order,” and Vin.2.175, where it is said that “at that time there was no one who distributed meals for the Order.” ² N.B. *not* to read: writing was apparently very little used at this date.

another.” For those monks versed in the Vinaya rules, he assigned a lodging in the same place, saying: “They will decide upon the Vinaya with one another.” For those monks teaching *dhamma* he assigned a lodging in the same place, saying: “They will discuss *dhamma* with one another.” For those monks who were musers he assigned a lodging in the same place, saying: “They will not disturb one another.” For those monks who lived indulging in low talk¹ and who were athletic he assigned a lodging in the same place, saying: “These reverend ones will live² according to their pleasure.” For those monks who came in late at night³ he, having attained the condition of heat,⁴ assigned a lodging by this light.⁵ So much so, that the monks came in late at night on purpose, (and) they thought: “We will see the wonder of the psychic potency of the venerable Dabba, the Mallian.” And having approached the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, they spoke thus: “Reverend Dabba, assign a lodging to us.”

BD.1.274

The venerable Dabba, the Mallian, spoke thus to them: “Where do your reverences desire it? Where shall I assign it?”

Then these (monks) would quote a distant place on purpose, saying: “Reverend Dabba, assign us a lodging on the Vulture’s Peak⁶; your reverence, assign us a lodging on the Robber’s Cliff; your reverence, assign us a lodging on the slopes of Isigili Hill⁷ on the Black Rock; your reverence, assign us a lodging on the slopes of Vebhāra⁸ at Sattapaṇṇi Cave; your reverence,

¹ *tiracchānakathikā*, literally talkers about animals, so: talkers on low or childish subjects.

² *acchissanti ti viharissanti*, Vin-a.579. ³ *vikāle* ⁴ *tejodhātuṃ samāpajjitvā*. At Ud.92 Dabba is credited with this same power, which he exerted at the time of his utter waning out. This power is also ascribed to Gotama at Vin.1.25; and to Uppalavaṇṇā at Thig-a.190. See *Minor Anthologies of the Pali Canon*, ii. Sacred Books of the Buddhists viii., p.11, n.1, where MR. WOODWARD considers that this “power over the fire-element is probably the basis of *śakti* (*suttee*) in India.” I think, however, that *suttee* is connected with *satī*, the good, virtuous wife; while *śakti* is literally ability, willpower, influence. Cf. SN.i.144 and KS.i.182, n.2; also AN.i.176; AN.ii.165; DN.iii.27, DN.iii.228, DN.iii.247. ⁵ Vin-a.579, “having entered upon the fourth jhāna by meditation on fire, arising from that his fingers were glowing as a result of knowledge in the six super-knowings”: the power of *iddhi*, or psychic potency, was one of the six *abhīññā*.

⁶ A mountain near Rājagaha. These place-names also occur at DN.ii.116.

⁷ *Isigilipassa*. Here at the Black Rock, Godhika took his own life, SN.i.120, and Vakkali, SN.iii.123. From here the other peaks round Rājagaha could be seen, MN.iii.68. ⁸ One of the mountains near Rājagaha. See *Psalms of the Brethren* p.45, notes, and illustrations facing p.364.

assign us a lodging in Sītā's Wood¹ on the slopes of the Snake Pool; your reverence, assign us a lodging at the Gomata Glen; your reverence, assign us a lodging at the Tinduka Glen; your reverence, assign us a lodging at the Tapodā Glen²; your reverence, assign us a lodging at the Tapodā Park³; your reverence, assign us a lodging at Jivaka's Mango Grove;⁴ your reverence, assign us a lodging in the deer-park at Maddakucchi."⁵

Vin.3.160
BD.1.275

The venerable Dabba, the Mallian, having attained the condition of heat for these (monks) went in front of each with his finger glowing; and they by the light of the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, went behind him. The venerable Dabba, the Mallian, assigned a lodging to them and said: "This is the couch, this the bed, this the bolster, this the pillow, this a privy, that a privy, this the drinking water, that the water for washing, this the staff, this is (the form of) the Order's agreement, this is the time it should be entered upon, this the time it should be departed from." Then the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, having assigned a lodging to these (men), went back again to the Bamboo Grove.⁶

Bu-Ss.8.1.5

Now at that time the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka⁷ were newly ordained and of little merit; they obtained whatever inferior lodgings belonged to the Order and inferior meals. At that time the people in Kājagaha wished to give the Elder monks alms-food

¹ Vin.1.182. ² The river Tapodā (hot waters) ran beneath the Vebhāra Hill. See above, BD.1.188, and n.1. Samiddhi was tempted by a *devatā* as he was bathing in the Tapodā, SN.i.8ff., which is very similar to the Samiddhi Jātaka, Ja.2.56. ³ See previous note. ⁴ A garden at Rājagaha belonging to the physician Jivaka Komārabhacca. Mentioned at MN.i.368 (cf. MN-a.3.45). The Sāmaññaphala Suttanta was spoken here, DN.i.47; this is referred to at Vin.2.287. ⁵ At Vin.1.105 the Bhagavan appeared to Mahākappina here and exhorted him to observe the *Uposatha*. At both SN.i.27 and SN.i.110 it is said that in this garden Gotama's foot was hurt by a splinter. ⁶ Vin-a.579, "talking to them with talk about the country, he did not sit down, but returned to his own dwelling." ⁷ Vin-a.579, "the chief men of the sixfold group." At Vin-a.614 (on Vin.3.179) it is said that Assaji and Punabbasuka are the foremost in this group, and at MN-a.3.186, they are called "among these six, two teachers of the crowd."

having a specially good seasoning,¹ and ghee and oil and dainties.² But to the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka they gave ordinary food, unseasoned porridge of broken rice³ accompanied by sour gruel. These, after they had eaten and had returned from their meal, asked the Elder monks: “What did you get, your reverences, at the refectory? What did you?”

BD.1.276

Some Elders spoke thus: “There was ghee for us, your reverences, there was oil for us, there were dainties for us.”

But the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka spoke thus: “Your reverences, there was nothing for us, (only) ordinary food, unseasoned porridge of broken rice accompanied by sour gruel.”

At that time a householder who had nice food gave to the Order in continuous food supply a meal for four monks. He, together with his wife and children, attended and served in the refectory. One offered boiled rice, another offered curry, another offered oil, another offered dainties. Now at that time a meal given by the householder who had nice food was apportioned for the following day to the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka. Then the householder who had nice food went to the park on some business and approached the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, and having approached the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, and greeted him, he sat down to one side. As he was sitting to one side, the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, rejoiced ... gladdened with *dhamma*-talk the householder who had nice food. Then when the householder who had nice food had been rejoiced ... gladdened with *dhamma*-talk by the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, he said to the venerable Dabba, the Mallian: “For whom, honoured sir, is the meal apportioned for tomorrow in our house?”

Bu-Ss.8.1.6

Vin.3.161

¹ *abhisamkhārika piṇḍapāta*. *Abhi*° means what specially belongs to the *saṃkhāras*, merit-accumulating. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests tentatively “specially prepared.” The parallel passage at [Vin.2.77](#) omits *piṇḍapāta*. The reading there is probably defective, and has led translators of *Vinaya Texts* iii.9, to render *abhi*° as a “wishing-gift.” See *Vinaya Texts* iii.9 n.3.

² *uttaribhaṅga*; also at [Vin.4.259](#); Ja.1.349. Ghee, oil and *uttari*° are mentioned together at [Vin.2.214](#). ³ *kaṇḍajakaṃ* = *sakuṇḍakabhattam*, a meal with husk-powder cake. Cf. Ja.5.383.

“Householder, the food apportioned in your house for tomorrow is for the monks who are the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka.”

BD.1.277

Then the householder who had nice food was sorry and said: “How can these depraved monks¹ enjoy themselves in our house?” And going to his house, he gave orders to a female slave, saying: “Having prepared for those who come to eat tomorrow a seat in the store-room,² serve them with porridge of broken rice accompanied by sour gruel.”

“Very well, master,” the female slave answered the householder who had nice food.

Bu-Ss.8.1.7

Then the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka said to one another: “Yesterday, your reverences, a meal was allotted to us by the householder who has nice food. Tomorrow the householder who has nice food, attending with his wife and children, will serve us. Some will offer boiled rice, some will offer curry, some will offer oil, some will offer dainties.” These, because of their happiness, did not sleep that night as much as they had expected.

Then the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, rising up early and setting out taking their bowls and robes, approached the dwelling of the householder who had nice food. The female slave saw the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka coming from afar; and seeing them and making ready a seat in the store-room, she said to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “Sit here, honoured sirs.”

Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka thought: “But undoubtedly the food will not be ready,³ since we are made to sit in the store-room.”

BD.1.278

¹ This acquiescence in “*pāpabhikkhū*” is curious. It reminds one of the lax monks, not uncommon in Burma at the present day, who do not keep the Vinaya precepts. There are said to be good and earnest monks who do keep them, but who are not seen about much for the very reason that they lead the good life, as intended. ² *koṭṭhaka*, a store-room for various things. At [Vin.2.153](#) a *koṭṭhaka* is allowed to the monks. It was usually built over the gateway. Here [Vin-a.580](#), says it was outside the gateway of the *vihāra* in the Bamboo Grove. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.109 for meanings and references. ³ *siddha*. This is past participle of (1) *sijjati*, to boil, to cook; (2) *sijhati*, to be accomplished, (see *Pali-English Dictionary*).

Then the female slave came up with the porridge of broken rice accompanied by sour gruel and said: “Eat, honoured sirs.”

“But, sister, we are those who enjoy a continuous supply of food.”

“I know that the masters enjoy a continuous supply of food. But yesterday I was ordered by the householder: ‘Having prepared a seat in the store-room for those who come for a meal today, serve them with porridge of broken rice accompanied by sour gruel.’ Eat, honoured sirs,” she said.

Then the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka said: “Yesterday, your reverences, the householder who has nice things to eat went to Dabba, the Mallian,¹ in the park; doubtless Dabba, the Mallian, set the householder at variance with us.” These (monks) on account of their lamentations did not eat as much as was expected.

Then the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, after they had eaten and had returned from their meal, going to the park and putting aside their bowls, sat down outside the store-room of the park,² squatting against their outer cloaks,³ silent, abashed, their shoulders bent,⁴ their heads lowered, brooding, speechless.⁵

Vin.3.162

Then the nun Mettiyā⁶ approached the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, and having approached them she said to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “I salute you, masters.” When she had spoken thus the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond. A second time ... A third time the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond.

Bu-Ss.8.1.8
BD.1.279

“Do I offend against the masters? Why do the masters not respond to me?” she said.

¹ Note that the monks now drop the epithet “venerable” or “reverend” in speaking of Dabba. ² Vin-a.580, “outside the door of the store-room of the *vihāra* of the Bamboo Grove.” ³ *sanghāṭi-pallatthikāya*, a curious expression. *Palla*° also means “lolling,” cf. Vin.4.129. ⁴ *pattakkhandhā*. *Khandha* here, I think, in one of its crude meanings, of back or shoulder, and not as suggested at *Vinaya Texts* iii.13, n.1, “faculties.” See ks.i.155, n.5. Vin-a.580 = MN-a.2.104 explains *pattakkhandhā* as *patitakkhandhā*. ⁵ All this is stock. Cf. AN.iii.57; SN.i.124 = MN.i.258. ⁶ The following narrative down to Bu-Ss.8.1.9 = Vin.2.78-79 and is almost exactly the same as that recorded at Vin.2.124-127, except that here the monks send Vaddha to the lord to say that Dabba has assaulted Vaddha’s wife.

“It is because you neglect us, sister, when we are got into difficulties by Dabba, the Mallian.”

“What can I do, masters?” she said.

“If you would like, sister, this very day you could make the lord expel Dabba, the Mallian.”

“What can I do, masters? How am I able to do that?” she said.

“Come, sister, go up to the lord, and having gone up, say to the lord: ‘Now, lord, it is not suitable, it is not becoming that this quarter which should be without fear, secure, without danger is the very quarter which is full of fear, insecure, and full of danger. Where there was a calm, now there is a gale. It seems the very water is blazing. I have been assaulted by master¹ Dabba, the Mallian.’”

“Very well, masters,” the nun Mettiyā answered the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, and she approached the lord. Having approached and greeted the lord, she stood to one side. As she was standing to one side, the nun Mettiyā spoke thus to the lord: “Now, lord, it is not suitable ... by master Dabba, the Mallian.”

Bu-Ss.8.1.9
BD.1.280

Now the lord on this occasion and in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the venerable Dabba, the Mallian:

“Dabba, do you remember doing as the nun Mettiyā says?”

“Lord, the lord knows with regard to me,” he said. A second time ... a third time the lord said to the venerable Dabba, the Mallian ... “with regard to me.”

“Dabba, the Dabbas² do not give evasive answers like that. If what was done was done by you, say so; if it was not done by you, say it was not.”

“Lord, since I was born, I cannot call to mind³ ever indulging in sexual intercourse even in a dream; much less so when I was awake.”

¹ *ayyena*, instrumentive, therefore not “lord” (vocative) as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.14. *Ayya* was a usual way in which the laity and nuns addressed the monks, but I do not think that anyone ever addressed the lord thus. ² They are wise, *Vin-a.581*. ³ *abhijānāmi*.

Then the lord addressed the monks, saying: “Because of this, expel the nun Mettiyā,¹ and take these monks to task.”

Vin.3.163

Having spoken thus, the lord rising up from his seat entered the *vihāra*. Then these monks expelled the nun Mettiyā. Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka said to those monks:

“Your reverences, do not expel the nun Mettiyā; she has not committed any sin; she was urged on by us, because we were angry, displeased and wanted him out of the way.”

“But are not your reverences defaming the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, with an unfounded charge involving defeat?”

“It is so, your reverences,” they said.

Then those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed and angry, and said: “How can the monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defame the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, with an unfounded charge involving defeat?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.1.281

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that you defamed Dabba, the Mallian, with an unfounded charge involving defeat?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

Then the enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, defame Dabba, the Mallian, with an unfounded charge involving defeat? It is not, foolish men, for the benefit of unbelievers... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, malignant, malicious and ill-tempered, should defame a monk with an unfounded charge involving defeat, thinking: ‘Thus perhaps may I drive him away from this Brahma-life,’ then, if afterwards he, being pressed or not being pressed, the legal question turning out to be unfounded, if the monk confesses² his malice, it is an offence

¹ This is, I think, clear evidence of monkish gloss. In every case of supposed wrong-doing the lord has always asked the supposed wrongdoer “Is it true?” and has never condemned anyone without first hearing what he has to say. It is so noteworthy as to be suspicious: where a woman is involved she is given no chance to exculpate herself to the lord. See HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.266. ² *patiṭṭhāti* with more general meaning of “to stand fast.” But here, judging by the Old Commentary, see below at end of Bu-Ss.8.1.2, it must mean “confess” with the sense that his words were standing on or founded in malice. The verb, however, in such meanings is followed by the locative. But *paṭi* governs the accusative.

entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.8.2.1

Whatever means: who ...

Monk¹ means: ... in this meaning **monk** is to be understood.

Monk means: another monk.

Malignant, malicious means: angry, displeased, dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.²

Ill-tempered means: with this anger, with this hatred, and with this displeasure, and with this dissatisfaction he is angry.

BD.1.282

Unfounded means: unseen,³ unheard, unsuspected.

Involving defeat means: of one of the four (headings involving defeat).

Should defame means: should reprove or should cause to reprove.⁴

Vin.3.164

Thus perhaps may I drive him away from this Brahma-life means: I may drive (him) away from monkdom, I may drive (him) away from recluse-dhamma,⁵ I may drive (him) away from the aggregates of morality, I may drive (him) away from the advantage of religious austerity.⁶

Afterwards means: in the moment in which he is defamed that moment, that minute, that second has passed.

Being pressed means: he is defamed in that matter in which he is pressed.

Not being pressed means: not being spoken to by anyone.

A legal question⁷ means: there are four legal questions: legal questions arising out of disputes legal questions arising out of censure, legal questions arising out of transgressions, legal questions arising out of obligations.

If the monk confesses his malice means: empty words have been spoken by me, a lie has been spoken by me, untruth has been spoken by me, it has been spoken by me not knowing.

¹ Accusative. ² Cf. [Vin.4.236](#), [Vin.4.238](#); DN.iii.238, MN.i.101. ³ Vin-a.585, not seen by self or others, nor by the bodily eye, nor by clairvoyance. ⁴ Vin-a.587, “should reprove means he reproves him himself with the words ‘you have fallen into defeat’ ... should cause to reprove means ... he enjoins another monk and this one reproves him with his (i.e. the enjoiner’s) words.” ⁵ *samaṇa-dhamma*, explained at AN.iii.371: therefore not “the ascetic’s path” as at. Ja.1.31. ⁶ *tapogūṇa*. ⁷ *adhikaraṇa*. = [Vin.4.126](#) = [Vin.4.238](#). Cf. [Vin.2.88ff.](#), where the nature of these questions is explained, and [Vin.2.99ff.](#), which explains the ways of settling these questions. At MN.ii.247ff. Gotama is represented as explaining all this to Ānanda.

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means ... on account of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unseen by him committing¹ an offence involving defeat,² but if he reprimands him saying: “Seen by me, you are one who has committed³ a matter involving defeat, you are not a (true) recluse, you are not a (true) son of the Sakyans, there is no (holding) the observance-day (ceremony),⁴ or the ceremony held at the end of the rains,⁵ or the ceremony performed by a chapter of monks⁶ with you,” —for each speech⁷ there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.⁸

Bu-Ss.8.3.1
BD.1.283

He is unheard by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: “Heard by me, you are ...” —for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unsuspected by him of committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: “Suspected by me, you are ...” —for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unseen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: “Seen and heard by me, you are one who has committed an offence involving defeat ...” —for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.3.2

He is unseen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: “Seen and suspected by me ... Seen, heard and suspected by me ...” —for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unheard by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: “Heard and suspected by me ... Heard and seen

BD.1.284

¹ *ajjhāpajjanta*, present participle. ² *Pārājika dhamma*. ³ *Ajjhāpanna*, past participle.

⁴ *Uposatha*, a chapter of monks meeting on the fifteenth day of each half-month to expound *dhamma*, [Vin.1.102](#). E.M. HARE, [GS.4.140](#), [GS.4.170](#), gives “observance-day” for *uposatha*.

⁵ *Pavāraṇā*, when the monks invite one another to tell of anything seen, heard or suspected to be wrong, [Vin.1.160](#) and *cf.* [Vin.2.32](#). ⁶ *Saṅghakamma*, the monks being assembled together in solemn conclave. *Cf.* [Vin.1.123](#), [Vin.1.143](#). ⁷ *Vācāya vācāya*. ⁸ *Cf.* below,

[BD.1.292](#).

by me ... Heard, seen and suspected by me ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unsuspected by him of committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: "Suspected and seen by me ... Suspected and heard by me ... Suspected, seen and heard by me ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.165

Bu-Ss.8.3.3

He is seen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: "Heard by me ... Suspected by me ... Heard and suspected by me, you are one who has committed an offence involving defeat ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is heard by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: "Suspected by me ... Seen by me ... Suspected and seen by me ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is suspected by him of committing an offence involving defeat, but if he reprimands him saying: "Seen by me ... Heard by me ... Seen and heard by me ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.3.4

He is seen by him committing an offence involving defeat; but he is in doubt as to the sight, he does not trust the sight, does not remember the sight, is confused as to the sight. He is in doubt as to what he has heard ... is confused as to what he heard. He is in doubt as to the suspicion ... he is confused as to what he suspected; yet he reprimands him saying: "Suspected and seen by me ... Suspected and heard by me ... Suspected and seen and heard by me ..."—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.3.5

BD.1.285

He is unseen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he causes him to be reprimanded saying: "You are seen, you are one who has

committed an offence involving defeat ...”—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

He is unheard ... He is unsuspected ...

He is unseen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he causes him to be reprimanded saying: “You are seen and heard ... You are seen and suspected ... You are seen and heard and suspected ...”—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.3.6

He is seen by him committing an offence involving defeat, but if he causes him to be reprimanded saying: “You are heard ... You are suspected ... You are heard and suspected ...”

Bu-Ss.8.3.7

He is heard by him ... He is suspected by him ...

He is seen by him committing an offence involving defeat; he is in doubt as to the sight ... he is confused as to what he suspected, yet he causes him to be reprimanded saying: “You are suspected and seen ...” ... he is confused as to what he suspected, yet he causes him to be reprimanded saying: “You are suspected and heard ...” ... he is confused as to what he suspected, yet he causes him to be reprimanded saying: “You are suspected and seen and heard ... involving defeat ...”—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.3.8

Vin.3.166

There is a view of what is pure in what is impure, a view of what is impure in what is pure, there is a view of what is impure in what is impure, a view of what is pure in what is pure.

Bu-Ss.8.4.1

If a man is impure, committing a certain offence involving defeat, even though there exist a view of purity, if he speaks desiring his expulsion, but without having gained his leave,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence requiring a formal-meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.8.4.2
BD.1.286

¹ See [Vin.1.114](#), where it is said that no monk who has not given leave may be reprovved for an offence.

If a man is impure ... if he speaks desiring his expulsion, but having gained his leave, it is an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order.

If a man is impure ... not having gained his leave, he spoke intending abuse, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with one of insulting speech.

If a man is impure ... having gained his leave, he spoke intending abuse, it is an offence of insulting speech.

Bu-Ss.8.4.3

If a man is pure, not committing a certain offence involving defeat, even though there exist a view of impurity, if he speaks desiring his expulsion, but without having gained his leave, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If a man is pure ... having gained his leave, he speaks intending his expulsion, there is no offence.

If it is a pure man ... without having gained his leave, he speaks intending abuse, it is an offence of wrong-doing with one of insulting speech.

If it is a pure man ... having gained his leave, he speaks intending abuse, it is an offence of insulting speech.

Bu-Ss.8.4.4

If a man is impure, committing a certain offence involving defeat, even though there exist a view as to impurity, he speaks wishing his expulsion, but not having gained his leave, there is an offence of wrong-doing ... it is not an offence ... it is an offence of wrong-doing with one of insulting speech ... it is an offence of insulting speech.

Bu-Ss.8.4.5

BD.1.287

If a man is pure, not committing an offence leading to defeat, even though there exist a view as to purity ... there is an offence of wrong-doing with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... it is an offence requiring a formal meeting of the Order ... it is an offence of wrong-doing with one of insulting speech ... it is an offence of insulting speech.

Bu-Ss.8.4.6

There is no offence if there is a view as to what is impure in what is pure, if there is a view as to what is impure in what is impure, if he is mad, if he is a beginner.

*Told is the Eighth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that
concerned with what is unfounded*

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 9

BD.1.288
Bu-Ss.9.1.1

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. At that time as the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummaja were descending from the slope of the Vulture's Peak, they saw a he-goat copulating with a nanny-goat; seeing them they said: "Look here, your reverences, let us call this he-goat Dabba, the Mallian, and this nanny-goat Mettiyā, the nun; thus we will express it: 'Formerly, your reverences, we spoke to Dabba, the Mallian, about what was heard, but now we have ourselves seen him sinning with the nun Mettiyā.'" These gave that he-goat the name of Dabba, the Mallian, and called that nanny-goat Mettiyā, the nun.

Vin.3.167

These told the monks: "Formerly, your reverences, we spoke to Dabba, the Mallian, about what was heard, but now we ourselves have seen him sinning with Mettiyā, the nun."

The monks said: "Your reverences, do not speak like that; the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, would not do that."

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. The lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the venerable Dabba, the Mallian:

"Do you remember,¹ Dabba, to have done as these monks say?"

"Lord, the lord knows with regard to me," he said.

A second time, the lord ... a third time the lord said to the venerable Dabba, the Mallian ... "knows with regard to me," he said.

BD.1.289

"Do not, Dabba, ..." "... how much more when I was awake." he said.

Then the lord addressed the monks: "Because of this, monks, you should put questions to these monks." Having spoken thus, the lord rising up from his seat, entered the *vihāra*.

¹ Cf. above, **BD.1.280**.

Then these monks put questions¹ to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka. These, being questioned by the monks, told this matter to the monks.

Bu-Ss.9.1.2

“Did you not defame the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, your reverences, with a charge of falling into defeat, taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else?”

“It is so, your reverences,” they said.

Then those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed and angry, and said: “How can the monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defame the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, with ... to something else?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said: “Is it true as is said, that you, monks, defamed Dabba, the Mallian, with ... to something else?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, defame Dabba, the Mallian, with ... to something else? Foolish men, it is not for the benefit of unbelievers ... And thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, malignant, malicious and ill-tempered, should defame a monk with a charge involving defeat, taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else, saying: ‘Thus perhaps may I drive him away from this Brahma-life’; then, if afterwards, he, being pressed or not being pressed, the legal question turning out to belong to something different, if the monk confesses his malice and (confesses) having taken up some point as a pretext: it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Vin.3.168

BD.1.290

Whatever means: ... (= Bu-Ss.8.2) ... is angry.

Bu-Ss.9.2.1

¹ Vin-a.598, “Where did you see Dabba with Mettiyā? ... at what time? ... where were you going then? ... Who knows you were at that time in the Bamboo Grove? ...”

Bu-Ss.9.2.2

In a legal question really belonging to something else means: either it is an offence of a different kind or it is a legal question of a different kind.

How is a legal question connected with a different kind of legal question? The legal question arising out of disputes may belong to something different: to a legal question arising out of censure, to a legal question arising out of transgressions, to a legal question arising out of obligations. A legal question arising out of censure ... a legal question arising out of transgressions ... a legal question arising out of obligations may belong to something different: to a legal question arising out of disputes to a legal question arising out of transgressions, to a legal question arising out of obligations. Thus a legal question may belong to a different legal question.

How is a legal question connected with a legal question? A question arising out of disputes is connected with a question arising out of disputes. A question arising out of censure is connected with a question arising out of censure. A question arising out of transgression may be connected with a question arising out of transgression, or it may be connected with something else. How is a question arising out of transgression connected with something other than a question arising out of transgression? An offence involving defeat through sexual intercourse may belong to something else: to an offence involving defeat through taking something that was not given, to an offence involving defeat through taking up human form, to an offence involving defeat through claiming states of further-men. An offence involving defeat through taking something that was not given ... an offence involving defeat through taking up human form ... an offence involving defeat through claiming states of further-men may belong to something else: to an offence involving defeat through sexual intercourse, to an offence involving defeat through taking something that was not given, to an offence involving defeat through taking up human form. Thus a question arising out of transgression may belong to something other than a question arising out of transgression. And how can a question arising out of transgression belong to a question arising out of transgression? An offence involving defeat through sexual intercourse may belong to an offence involving defeat through sexual intercourse ... an offence involving defeat through claiming states of further-men may belong to an offence involving defeat

through claiming states of further-men. Thus does a question arising out of transgression belong to a question arising out of transgression. A question arising out of obligations may belong to a question arising out of obligations. Thus may a legal question belong to a legal question.

Taking up some point as a pretext.¹ A **pretext** means that there are ten pretexts: the pretext of birth, the pretext of name, the pretext of family, the pretext of characteristic, the pretext of offence, the pretext of a bowl, the pretext of a robe, the pretext of a teacher, the pretext of a preceptor, the precept of lodgings.

Bu-Ss.9.2.3

Vin.3.169

The pretext of birth means: A noble is seen committing² a matter involving defeat; seeing another noble³ he reprimands him, saying: "A noble is seen by me; you are one who has committed⁴ a matter involving defeat, you are not a (true) recluse, you are not a (true) son of the Sakyans; there is no (holding) the observance-day (ceremony) with you, or the ceremony at the termination of the rains, or the ceremony performed by a chapter of monks"—for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.⁵

BD.1.292

A brahmin is seen ... a merchant is seen ... a low-caste man is seen ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of name means: one who is a Buddharakkhita is seen ... one who is a Dhammarakkhita is seen ... one who is a Saṅgharakkhita is seen committing a matter involving defeat; seeing another Saṅgharakkhita ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of family means: a Gotama is seen ... a Moggallāna is seen ... a Kaccāna is seen ... a Vāsiṭṭha is seen committing an offence involving defeat; seeing another Vāsiṭṭha ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of characteristic means: a tall man is seen ... a short man is seen ... a dark man is seen ... a fair man is seen committing an offence

¹ *Lesā*. ² *Ajjhāpajjanta*. ³ Vin-a.601, who was a monk, he seizes the pretext of his *khattiya* birth. ⁴ *Ajjhāpanna*. ⁵ Cf. above, **BD.1.283**.

involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of an offence means: one is seen committing a slight offence, and if he reprimands him for a matter involving defeat, saying: “You are not a (true) recluse ...” ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of a bowl means: one carrying a copper bowl is seen ... one carrying a bowl of hide¹ is seen ... one carrying a cracked bowl² is seen committing a matter involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.293

The pretext of a robe means: one wearing robes taken from the dust-heap is seen ... one wearing householders’ robes is seen committing a matter involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of a teacher means: the pupil of such and such a one is seen committing a matter involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of a preceptor means: the novice of such and such a one is seen committing a matter involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

The pretext of lodgings means: a dweller in such and such lodgings is seen committing a matter involving defeat ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.170

Bu-Ss.9.2.4

With a charge involving defeat means: one of the four ... (= Bu-Ss.8.2) ... a question arising out of obligations.

Taking up some point as a pretext means: taking up a certain pretext among these pretexts.

If the monk confesses his malice means: ... (= Bu-Ss.8.2) ... because of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.9.3.1

¹ Vin-a.602, *sāṭakapatta*, “like the copper bowl it is well-turned, of beautiful hide, glossy, of black colour (literally bee-coloured), it is called a clay bowl.” ² Vin-a.602, “it was an ordinary clay bowl.”

A monk is seen committing an offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order; in the offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order there is a wrong view as to an offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order. If he reprimands him for a matter involving defeat, saying: "You are not a (true) recluse ... nor a ceremony performed by a chapter of monks," thus it is connected with a different kind of offence and a pretext is taken up: for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

A monk is seen committing an offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order; in the offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order there is the wrong view that it is a grave offence ... there is the wrong view that it is an offence requiring expiation ... there is the wrong view that it is an offence which ought to be confessed ... there is the wrong view that it is an offence of wrong-doing ... there is the wrong view that it is an offence of evil speech. If he reprimands him ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.294

A monk is seen committing a grave offence ... an offence requiring expiation ... an offence which ought to be confessed ... an offence of wrong-doing ... an offence of evil speech; in the evil speech there is a wrong view of evil speech. If he reprimands him ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

A monk is seen committing an offence of evil speech; there is the wrong view that in the offence of evil speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order; there is the wrong view that in the evil speech there is a grave offence, an offence requiring expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed, an offence of wrong-doing. If he reprimands him ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Beginning severally, the series, with this exception, should be put together

A monk is seen committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order; in the offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order there is a wrong view as to an offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order. If he causes him to be reprimanded for an offence involving defeat, saying:

Bu-Ss.9.3.2

“You are not a (true) recluse ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.1.295

A monk is seen committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order; in the offence which entails a formal meeting of the Order there is a wrong view that it is a grave offence ... a wrong view that it is an offence of evil speech ... a monk is seen committing an offence of evil speech ... there is a wrong view that it is an offence of wrong-doing. If he causes him to be reprimanded ... for each speech there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.9.3.3

There is no offence if, thinking what is true,¹ he reprimands him or causes him to be reprimanded, if he is out of his mind, if he is a beginner.

Told² is the Ninth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

¹ *Tathāsaññi*, cf. *tathāgata*, the “truth-finder.” ² *Samatta*, instead of the more usual *niṭṭhita*.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 10

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. And then Devadatta¹ came up to Kokālika,² and to Kaṭamorakatissaka, and to the son of the lady Khaṇḍā, and to Samuddadatta, and having come up he said to Kokālika, Kaṭamorakatissaka, and the son of the lady Khaṇḍā, and to Samuddadatta: “Now we, your reverences, will make a schism in the Order of the recluse Gotama, a breaking of the concord.”³

BD.1.296
Bu-Ss.10.1.1

When he had spoken thus Kokālika said to Devadatta: “Your reverence, the recluse Gotama has great psychic power, and great might. How can we make a schism in the Order of the recluse Gotama, a breaking of the concord?”

“Now we, your reverence, having approached the recluse Gotama, will beg for five items: ‘Lord, the lord in many ways speaks in praise of desiring little, of being contented, of expunging (evil), of being punctilious, of what is gracious, of decrease (of the obstructions), of putting forth energy.’⁴ Lord, these five items are conducive in many ways to desiring little, to contentment, to expunging (evil), to being punctilious, to what is gracious, to decrease (of the obstruction), to putting forth energy.

BD.1.297

1. It were good, lord, if the monks for as long as life lasted, should be forest-dwellers; whoever should betake himself to the neighbourhood

¹ This story is given almost word for word at [Vin.2.196ff.](#) ² These schismatics appear again in [Bu-Ss.11.](#) Mentioned at [Vin.4.66](#), [Vin.4.335](#). At SN.i.149 = AN.v.170 = Snp.p.123, Kokālika tried to defame the two chief disciples. ³ *Vinaya Texts* iii.251, “let us stir up a division in the samaṇa Gotama’s saṅgha and in the body of his adherents,” with note that “in *cakka-bhedam* the first word no doubt connotes ‘kingship, lordship’ as in *dhamma-cakka*, *cakkavatti*, etc.” But it can also mean breaking a wheel, and symbolically *cakkabheda* has special meaning of “breaking up the peace, sowing discord.” ⁴ = [Vin.1.45](#) = [Vin.2.2](#) = [Vin.3.21](#) = [Vin.4.213](#).

- of a village, sin¹ would besmirch² him.
2. For as long as life lasts let them be beggars for alms;³ whoever should accept an invitation, sin would besmirch him.
 3. For as long as life lasts let them be wearers of robes taken from the dust-heap; whoever should accept a robe given by a householder, sin would besmirch him.⁴
 4. For as long as life lasts let them live at the foot of a tree;⁵ whoever should go under cover, sin would besmirch him.
 5. For as long as life lasts let them not eat fish and flesh;⁶ whoever should eat fish and flesh, sin would besmirch him.”

“The recluse Gotama will not allow these things. Then we will win over the people by means of these five items.”

“It is possible, your reverence, with these five items, to make a schism in the Order of the recluse Gotama, a breaking of the concord. For, your reverence, people esteem austerity.”⁷

Bu-Ss.10.1.2

Then Devadatta together with his friends went up to the lord, and having gone up and greeted the lord, he sat down to one side. As he was sitting to one side, Devadatta said to the lord: “Lord, the lord in many ways speaks in praise of desiring little ... who should eat fish or flesh, sin would besmirch him.”

BD.1.298

“Enough, Devadatta,” he said. “Whoever wishes, let him be a forest-dweller; whoever wishes, let him dwell in the neighbourhood of a village; whoever wishes, let him be a beggar for alms; whoever wishes, let him accept an invitation; whoever wishes, let him wear rags taken from the dust-heap; whoever wishes, let him accept a householder’s robes. For eight

Vin.3.172

¹ *vajja*. ² *phuseyya* from *phusati* to touch, not from *phusati* to sprinkle. Vin-a.603, “let hatred touch that monk, let the lord deal with him for the offence.” ³ Those who only eat the alms received in the begging-bowl. ⁴ At [Vin.1.280](#) it is laid down that the monks may wear either the *paṃsukula* robes or accept lay robes, as they please. ⁵ At [Vin.1.152](#) monks are forbidden to spend *vassa* out in the open. ⁶ At [Vin.1.238](#) and below, [BD.1.298](#), it is laid down that fish and meat are pure for the monks if they do not see, hear or suspect that it has been killed for them. Cf. [BD.1.98](#), [BD.1.99](#) above, where there seems to be no offence in eating meat. ⁷ *lūkhappasanna*, cf. [AN.ii.71](#), where this is one of the four types of persons who estimate by and esteem outward form. Each type is explained at Pp.53.

months, Devadatta, lodging at the foot of a tree is permitted by me.¹ Fish and flesh are pure in respect of three points: if they are not seen, heard or suspected (to have been killed for him²).”

Then Devadatta thinking: “The lord does not allow these five items,” was joyful and exultant.³ He rose from his seat, and having greeted the lord, and paid homage to him keeping him on his right side, he departed together with his friends. Then Devadatta, entering Rājagaha, taught the people by means of the five items: “We, your reverences, having approached the recluse Gotama, begged for five items: ‘Lord, the lord in various ways speaks in praise of desiring little ... whoever should eat fish and flesh, sin would besmirch him.’ The recluse Gotama does not allow these. But we live in conformity with these five items.”

BD.1.299

Then those who were men of no faith, not virtuous, and of poor enlightenment, said: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are punctilious⁴ and practise the expunging of evil; but the recluse Gotama is luxurious and strives after abundance.”

Bu-Ss.10.1.3

Then those who were faithful, virtuous, clever, enlightened people became vexed, annoyed, angry and said: “How can this Devadatta go forward with a schism in the Order of the lord, with a breaking of the concord?”

Then the monks heard these people who were vexed, annoyed, angry. Those who were modest monks were ... angry, and said: “How can this

¹ I.e., not in the four months of the rains. ² Vin-a.604, “not seen means, having killed deer and fish for the benefit of the monks, their being caught was not seen; not heard means, having killed ... of the monks, the taking (of them) was not heard”; not suspected means, if the monks see men going from a village to the jungle with nets and snares in their hands; and if on the next day they receive fish and flesh with their alms in the village they suspect: “Was not this done for the benefit of the monks?” They ask the men, who deny it, and say it was done for their own benefit. Or the monks may hear it said that men are going out to the jungle with nets and snares, or they may neither see the hunters nor hear it said they that have gone out, but simply receive fish and flesh in their begging-bowls. The same doubts assail them, and they ask if the killing took place for their benefit. But if it was not done expressly for the monks’ benefit, inasmuch as there is no doubt as to this, everything is quite in order. ³ Vin-a.606, says he was joyful and exultant because he now thought he could cause a schism. ⁴ Vin-a.607, they are *dhuta* because they are endowed with the *paṭipadā* which shakes off the *kilesas*; they are *sallekhavutti* because their course of life (*vutti*) reduces the *kilesas*.

Devadatta go forward with a schism, with a breaking of the concord?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

He said: “Is it true, as is said, Devadatta, that you went forward with a schism in the Order, with a breaking of the concord?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “How can you, foolish man, go forward with a schism in the Order, with a breaking of the concord? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should go forward with a schism of the Order which is harmonious, or should persist in taking up some legal question leading to a dissension: that monk should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Do not, venerable one, go forward with a schism of the Order which is harmonious, or persist in taking up some legal question leading to a dissension. Let the venerable one be associated with the Order; for the Order is harmonious, on friendly terms, not quarrelsome, it dwells comfortably under a single rule.’**¹ And if that monk, after he has been spoken to thus by the monks, should persist, that monk should be admonished up to three times by the monks together concerning his giving up such a course. Should he give it up after being admonished up to three times, this is good. Should he not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

BD.1.300

Vin.3.173

Bu-Ss.10.2.1

Whatever means: he who ...

Monk means: ... in this meaning is monk to be understood.

Harmonious means: an Order belonging to the same community² is established within the same boundary.³

¹ I.e., not Gotama’s authority, but that of the Pātimokkha rules. This word, *ekuddesa*, occurs in the *Pārājikas* in definition of *saṃvāsa*, communion. ² Vin-a.607. There is no separation as to mind. ³ Vin-a.607. There is no separation as to body. Belonging to the same community means that there are none living together holding various heretical views or various religious proceedings; that there is no mental separation from those of the same mind. Within the same boundary means there is no bodily separation from those in bodily concord. For these expressions see also [Vin.1.321](#).

Should go forward with a schism means: saying, “How should these folk be separated, how should they be separated, how should they be at variance?” seeking a faction, he gets a group together.

A legal question leading to a dissension means: the eighteen ways of causing a division.¹

Taking up means: taking.

Leading to means: kindling.

Should persist means: should not give up.

That monk means: that schismatic monk.

By the monks means: by other monks, whoever see, whoever hear; these should say: “Do not, venerable one, go forward with a schism of the Order which is harmonious, nor persist in taking up a legal question leading to a dissension. Let the venerable one be associated with the Order. The Order, harmonious, on friendly terms, not quarrelsome, dwells comfortably under a single rule.” A second time they should say ... A third time they should say ... If he gives it up, this is good. If he does not give it up, it is an offence of wrong-doing. If having heard, they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That monk, having been pulled to the middle of the Order, they are to say: “Do not, venerable one, go forward with a schism of the Order, which is harmonious, nor persist in taking up a legal question leading to a dissension. Let the venerable one be associated with the Order. The Order, harmonious ... comfortably under a single rule.” A second time they should say ... A third time they should say ... If he gives it up, that is good. If he does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

That monk should be admonished. Thus, monks, should he be admonished: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk, so and so, proceeds with a schism of the Order which is harmonious. He does not give up this course. If it is the right time for the Order, let the Order admonish this monk, so and so, so that he may give up his course. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This monk, so and so ... does not give up his course. The Order together admonishes the monk, so and so, that he

¹ These are given at [Vin.2.204](#) and are the same as the eighteen things by which you may conclude that a monk is a speaker of what is not *dhamma*, [Vin.1.354](#). The first ten are also given at [AN.i.19](#).

BD.1.302 may give up his course. If it seems good to the venerable ones, together admonishing this monk, so and so, that he should give up his course, be silent; if it does not seem good, then you should speak. A second time I speak this matter ... A third time I speak this matter ... then you should speak. It has been said by the Order that the monk, so and so, should give up his course. It seems good to the Order ... Thus do I understand.”

According to the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; according to the two resolutions¹ there are grave offences;² according to the end of a resolution there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If he is committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the offence of wrong-doing according to the motion and the grave offences according to the two resolutions, subside.³

An offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... because of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bu-Ss.10.3.1

Thinking a legally valid act⁴ to be a legally valid act, he does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Being in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, he does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Thinking an act which is not legally valid to be an act which is legally valid, he does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Thinking an act which is legally valid to be an act which is not legally valid, is an offence of wrong-doing. Being in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, is an offence of wrong-doing. Not thinking an act which is legally valid to be an act which is not legally valid, is an offence of wrong-doing.⁵

Bu-Ss.10.3.2

BD.1.303

There is no offence if he has not been admonished, if he gives it up, if he is mad, out of his mind, in pain, a beginner.⁶

¹ *kammavācā*, resolution; *ñatti*, motion, cf. [Vin.1.317](#) and *Vinaya Texts* i.169, n.2; *Vinaya Texts* ii.265, n.2. ² Vin-a.609. He to whom these three offences do not seem good, should speak. ³ =below, [BD.1.307](#), [BD.1.313](#) ⁴ Vin-a.609, “a legally valid act, an act which has been repeated together.” An unlawful act is explained at [Vin.1.317f](#). It is connected with *ñatti* and *kammavācā*. ⁵ =below, [BD.1.307](#), [BD.1.313](#). ⁶ =below, [BD.1.308](#), [BD.1.313](#).

*Told is the Tenth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that of a
schism in the Order*

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 11

BD.1.304
Bu-Ss.11.1.1

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. At that time Devadatta proceeded to a schism in the Order, a breaking of the concord. The monks spoke thus: "Devadatta is not one who speaks *dhamma*, Devadatta is not one who speaks Vinaya.¹ How can this Devadatta proceed with a schism in the Order, with a breaking of the concord?" Having spoken thus, Kokālika, Kaṭamorakatissa, and the son of the lady Khaṇḍā and Samuddadatta² said to these monks:

Vin.3.175

"Do not speak thus, venerable ones; Devadatta is one who speaks *dhamma*, Devadatta is one who speaks vinaya, and Devadatta having adopted³ our desire and objective, gives expression to them; he knows that what he says for us⁴ seems also good to us."

Then those who were modest monks were ... angry, and said: "How can these monks become those throwing in their lot with⁵ and taking part in⁶ Devadatta's proceeding for a schism in the Order?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

"Is it true as they say, monks, that (these) monks are those who are throwing in their lot with and taking part in Devadatta's proceeding for a schism in the Order?"

BD.1.305

"It is true, lord", they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can these foolish men become those to throw in their lot with, to take part in

¹ At DN.iii.135 these words occur in a kind of definition of "Tathāgata." ² The same monks as in Bu-Ss.10, above. ³ *ādāya*, literally having taken. ⁴ *jānāti no bhāsati*, Vin-a.611, he knows our desires, and so on. ⁵ *anuvattaka*, Vin-a.611, "those following him by taking up (his) opinions, pleasures, approvals." ⁶ *vaggavādaka*. "They speak words not on the side of unanimity," Vin-a.611.

Devadatta's proceeding for a schism in the Order? It is not, monks, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“If a monk has monks: one or two or three, who throw in their lot with him or take his part, and if these should speak thus: ‘Do not, venerable ones, say anything against this monk; this monk is one who speaks *dhamma*, this monk is one who speaks Vinaya; and this monk, adopting our desire and objective, gives expression to them; he knows that what he says for us seems also good to us.’ These monks should be spoken to thus by monks: ‘Do not, venerable ones, speak thus. This monk is not one who speaks *dhamma*, this monk is not one who speaks Vinaya. Please do not let a schism in the Order seem good to the venerable ones; let the venerable ones be at one with the Order, for the Order being harmonious and on friendly terms, not quarrelsome, dwells comfortably under one rule.’ If these monks having been spoken to by the monks should persist, then these monks should be admonished up to three times by these monks in a body, for giving up their course. If these, having been admonished up to three times, should give it up, that is good; if they should not give it up, that is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

If a monk means: if a schismatic monk.

Has monks means: has other monks.

Throw in their lot with means: he is one having that view, that allegiance, that objective; and these are those having that view, that allegiance, that objective.¹

Take his part means: these are standing for his sort, his faction.

One or two or three means: there are one or two or three.

If these should speak thus means: “Do not, venerable ones, speak against this monk. This monk is one who speaks *dhamma*, and this monk is one who speaks Vinaya, and this monk is one who having adopted our desire and allegiance, gives expression to them. He knows that what he says for us seems also good to us.”

¹ Cf. above, BD.1.163, and DN.i.187; MN.i.487.

These monks means: these monks who throw in their lot with.

By monks means: by other monks who see, and who hear. These should say: “Do not, venerable ones, speak thus. This monk is not one who speaks *dhamma*, and this monk is not one who speaks Vinaya. Please do not let a schism in the Order seem good to the venerable ones. Let the venerable ones be at one with the Order; for the Order being harmonious and on friendly terms, not quarrelsome, dwells comfortably under one rule.” A second time they should say ... A third time they should say ... if they give it up, that is good; if they do not give it up, it is an offence of wrong-doing.

These monks, having pulled them into the middle of the Order, should say: “Do not, venerable ones, speak thus. He is not ... under one rule.” A second time they should say ... a third time they should say ... if they give up their course it is good; if they do not give it up there is an offence of wrong-doing.

These monks should be admonished means: Thus, monks, they should be admonished ... the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: “Let the Order hear me, honoured sirs. Such and such monks, having thrown in their lot with such and such a monk, are taking his side in a proceeding for making a schism in the Order. These do not give up this course. If it is the right time for the Order, let the Order as a body admonish such and such monks about giving up this course. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me: such and such monks ... not give up the course. The Order as a body admonishes such and such monks about giving up this course. If it seems good to the venerable ones to admonish such and such monks for giving up this course, you should be silent; if it does not seem good to you, you should speak. A second time I proclaim this matter. A third time I proclaim this matter ... you should speak. Let the Order as a body admonish such and such monks for giving up this course. It seems good to the Order ... Thus do I understand.”

BD.1.307

According to the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; according to two resolutions there are grave offences; at the end of the resolution there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If they are committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the offence of wrong-doing according to the motion and the grave offences according

to the two resolutions, subside.¹

Two or three should be admonished together; further than that² they should not be admonished.

An offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... because of that it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.177

Thinking a legally valid act to be a legally valid act, they do not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Being in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, they do not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Thinking an act which is not legally valid to be an act which is legally valid, they do not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Thinking an act which is legally valid to be an act which is not a legally valid act, is an offence of wrong-doing. Being in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, is an offence of wrong-doing. Not thinking an act which is legally valid to be an act which is not legally valid, is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bu-Ss.11.3.1

It is not an offence if they have not been admonished, if they give it up, if they are mad, out of their minds, in pain, beginners.⁴

Bu-Ss.11.3.2
BD.1.308

Told is the Eleventh Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that of siding in with a schism

¹ =above, BD.1.302; below, BD.1.313, BD.1.327. ² *taduttari*. ³ =above, BD.1.302; below, BD.1.313, BD.1.327. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.1.303; below, BD.1.313, BD.1.327.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 12

BD.1.309
Bu-Ss.12.1.1

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's park. At that time the venerable Channa¹ indulged in bad habits. The monks said: "Reverend Channa, do not do that, it is not suitable."²

He said: "What do you, your reverences, think should be said to me? It is I who should tell you.³ The enlightened one is for us, *dhamma* is for us, *dhamma* is realised for us by a master.⁴ Just as a great wind blowing would raise up grass, sticks, ferns and rubbish together; or just as a mountain-born⁵ river would raise up various water plants⁶ together, so you, having gone forth from various names, from various clans, from various lineages, from various families, are raised up together. What do you, your reverences, think should be said to me? It is I who should tell you. The enlightened one is for us, *dhamma* is for us, *dhamma* is realised for us by a master."

BD.1.310

Then those who were modest monks were ... angry, and said: "How can the venerable Channa, himself being spoken to by the monks in accordance with *dhamma*, reckon himself as one not to be spoken to?"

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as they say, Channa, that you, yourself being spoken to by

¹ = Vin.4.141. ² Also in Bu-Ss.7. ³ Vin-a.612, "I am worthy to say to you: 'Do this, do not do that. For when, as our enlightened one, mounting Kanthaka (his horse), left the household life with me, I went forth into homelessness.'" ⁴ Vin-a.612, "The fourfold true things having been penetrated for us by a master (*ayyapatta*), *dhamma* is for us. But thinking that the Order was hostile to him, he did not say, 'The Order is for us.'" ⁵ *pabbateyya*, Vin-a.612, "Its source is on a mountain." ⁶ *saṅkha-sevāla-paṇaka*: *saṅkha*, a water-plant, probably unidentified; *sevāla* = *Blyxa octandra* moss; *paṇaka* or *paṇṇaka* a name of a water-plant, most likely a fern (so *Pali-English Dictionary*). Vin-a.612, "*saṅkha* is called the leaf and the moss, with a long root; *sevāla* is dark *sevāla* (moss); the rest are water-plants, sesame plants and seeds; and everything that is to be styled a water-plant."

the monks in accordance with *dhamma*, reckon yourself as one not to be spoken to?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, yourself being spoken to by the monks in accordance with *dhamma*, reckon yourself as one not to be spoken to? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... Thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

Vin.3.178

If a monk is one who is difficult to speak to,¹ and if himself being spoken to by the monks according to *dhamma*² concerning the courses of training included in the exposition,³ he reckons himself as one not to be spoken to, saying: ‘Do not say anything to me, venerable ones, either good or bad, and I will not say anything to the venerable ones, either good or bad; refrain, venerable ones, from speaking to me (then) that monk should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Do not, venerable one, reckon yourself as one not to be spoken to; let the venerable one reckon himself as one to be spoken to; let the venerable one speak to the monks in accordance with *dhamma*,⁴ and then the monks will speak to the venerable one in accordance with *dhamma*. Thus is the multitude increased for the lord, that is to say by speaking with one another, by assisting one another.⁵ And if that monk when he has been spoken to by the monks should persist as before, then that monk should be admonished up to three times by the monks together for giving up his course. And if after being admonished up to three times by the monks together,

BD.1.311

¹ *Dubbacajātika*. Vin-a.612, says that *dubbaca* means that it is impossible to speak to him. Editors *Vinaya Texts* i.12 get nearer to this in their *note* than in their translation, which reads: “refuses to listen to what is said to him.” I follow translation at GS.2.151 (of AN.ii.147) and at KS.ii.137 (of SN.ii.206). But at GS.3.133 (AN.iii.178) the reading is, “they are speakers of ill,” and at GS.5.104 (AN.v.152), “of foul speech.” But Channa, above, has given no indication that his speech was evil. CHALMERS, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.69 (MN.i.95), has “unruly,” but MN-a.2.66 explains: so *dukkhena vattabbo hoti*, with which cf. SN-a.ii.173, *dukkham vattabbā*. ² *Sahadhammikam*, here adverbial. Vin-a.613, “according to the courses of training made known by the enlightened one.” For similar use, see Vin.1.60; Vin.4.141. ³ I.e., in the Pātimokkha, see below, Old Commentary. ⁴ *Saha dhammena*. ⁵ *Aññamañña-vuṭṭhāpanena*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.12, “by mutual help.” *Vuṭṭhāpeti* is also to ordain, to rehabilitate, cf. Vin.4.226, Vin.4.317, where *vuṭṭhāpeti* = *upasampādeti* in Old Commentary.

he gives up his course, that is good; if he does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

Bu-Ss.12.2.1

If a monk is one who is difficult to speak to means: he is difficult to speak to, endowed with qualities which make him difficult to speak to,¹ intractable,² incapable of being instructed.³

In the courses of training included in the exposition means: in the courses of training included in the Pātimokkha.

By the monks means: by other monks.

According to dhamma means: that course of training made known by the lord, this is called according to *dhamma*.

BD.1.312

Himself being spoken to he reckons himself as one not to be spoken to, saying : “Do not, venerable ones, say anything to me, either good or bad, and I will not say anything to the venerable ones, either good or bad; refrain, venerable ones, from speaking to me ” — (then) that monk means: that monk who is difficult to speak to.

Vin.3.179

By the monks means: by other monks, these see, these hear. He should be spoken to by these, saying: “Venerable one, do not reckon yourself as one not to be spoken to, let the venerable one reckon himself as one to be spoken to, let the venerable one speak to the monks in accordance with *dhamma*, and then the monks will speak to the venerable one in accordance with *dhamma*. Thus is the multitude increased for the lord, that is to say by speaking to one another, by assisting one another.” A second time he should be spoken to ... A third time he should be spoken to ... If he gives it up, that is good; but if he does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having heard, they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That monk, having been pulled into the middle of the assembly, should be told:

¹ Vin-a.612, “endowed with these conditions, they make a man difficult to talk to.” There are nineteen such conditions enumerated here; sixteen at MN-a.2.66. ² *Akkhama*, Vin-a.613, “he does not submit to, does not endure the exhortation.” ³ *Appadakkhiṇaggāhī anusāsaniṃ*, literally a left-handed (i.e., unskilled, clumsy) taker of the teaching. They do not take the teaching with deference, but disrespectfully (cf. Vin-a.613 and MN-a.2.66), possibly also referring to the fact that they do not (depart) keeping the right side towards the teacher, which is *padakkhiṇaṃ karoti*. This whole phrase is stock, occurring at, e.g., SN.ii.201; AN.ii.147; AN.iii.178; AN.v.152; MN.i.95.

“Do not, venerable one, reckon yourself as one not to be spoken to ... by ordaining one another.” A second time he should be told ... A third time he should be told ... If he gives it up, that is good; if he does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That monk should be admonished. And thus, monks, should he be admonished. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk: “Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This monk, so and so, being remonstrated with by the monks in accordance with *dhamma*, reckons himself as one not to be spoken to: he does not give up this course. If it is the right time for the Order, let the Order admonish this monk so that he may give up this course. That is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This monk, so and so ... Thus do I understand.”

According to the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; according to the two resolutions there are grave offences; at the end of a resolution there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If he is committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the offence of wrong-doing according to the motion and the grave offences according to the two resolutions, subside.¹

BD.1.313

An offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... on account of this it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Thinking a legally valid act to be a legally valid act, he does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Being in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... Not thinking an act that is legally valid to be an act that is not legally valid is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Bu-Ss.12.3.1

There is no offence if he has not been admonished, if he gives it up, if he is mad, if he is a beginner.³

Bu-Ss.12.3.2

Told is the Twelfth Offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order: that concerning one to whom it is difficult to speak

¹ = above, BD.1.302, BD.1.307; below, BD.1.327. ² Cf. above, BD.1.302, BD.1.307; below, BD.1.327.

³ Cf. above, BD.1.303, BD.1.308; below, BD.1.327.

MONKS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 13

BD.1.314
Bu-Ss.13.1.1

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. Now at that time,¹ unscrupulous, depraved monks who were the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu² were in residence³ at Kiṭṭāgiri.⁴ They indulged in the following kinds of bad habits: they planted and caused to be planted small flowering trees; they watered them and caused them to be watered; they plucked them and caused them to be plucked; they tied them up into (garlands) and caused them to be tied up; they made and caused to be made garlands having a stalk on one side⁵; they made and caused to be made garlands having a stalk on both sides⁶; they made and caused to be made a branching flower-stalk⁷; they made and caused to be made a wreath⁸; they made and caused to be made a garland worn round the forehead⁹; they made and

Vin.3.180

BD.1.315

¹ This whole passage = *Vin.2.10ff.* ² Vin-a.614, "they were the foremost of the sixfold group of monks"—the bad group, often giving trouble. 'They say, 'alms in the countryside are now abundant, now short. Let us not live in one place but in three places.' So they chose Kāsi of the kingdom of Kosala, Aṅga of the kingdom of Magadha, and Kiṭṭāgiri. They did things not to be done and neglected the courses of training which had been set forth. So they are called 'unscrupulous, evil monks.'" At Vin-a.579 (on *Vin.3.160*) it is said that Mettiya and Bhummajaka are the leaders of the sixfold group. ³ *āvāsika*. Vin-a.613, *āvāso ti vihāro*. "Avāsikā are those to whom this āvāsa belongs, for they have the care of the new buildings and the repairs to the old: these are the residents. Those who only stay in a *vihāra* are called inmates (*nevāsika*), but these were residents (*āvāsikā*)." MN-a.3.187 defines *āvāsikā* as *nibandhavāsino*, "continual dwellers." ⁴ Vin-a.613, "that was the name of the countryside," while MN-a.3.186 says, "that was the name of the township." ⁵ *ekatovanṇṭīkamāla*. Vin-a.617, "a garland made with the stalks on one side of the flowers." ⁶ *ubhatovantikamāla*. Vin-a.617, "a garland made with the stalks of the flowers on both sides." ⁷ *manjarika*. Vin-a.617, "an arrangement of flowers." ⁸ *vidhutika*. Vin-a.617, "It is done by piercing the flowers of the Yitex negundo tree (*sinduvara*) with a needle or small stick." ⁹ *vaṭṭamsaka*. The commentary is of no use here. Sometimes as at Vv.38 an ear-ornament = *kaṇṇikā*, Vv-a.174. But here next item, *āveḷa* = *kaṇṇikā* Vin-a.617.

caused to be made an ear-ornament; they made and caused to be made a breast-plate.¹ These (monks) take or send garlands having a stalk on one side to wives of reputable families, to daughters of reputable families, to girls of reputable families, to daughters-in-law of reputable families, to female slaves of reputable families. They take or send garlands having a stalk on both sides; they take or send a branching flower-stalk; they take or send a wreath; they take or send a garland worn round the forehead; they take or send an ear-ornament; they take or send a breast-plate. These eat from one dish together with wives of reputable families, with daughters of reputable families, with girls of reputable families, with daughters-in-law of reputable families, with female slaves of reputable families. They drink from one beaker; they sit down on one seat; they share² one couch; they share one mat³; they share one coverlet; they share one mat and coverlet. They eat at the wrong time; they drink intoxicants; they wear garlands, (use) perfumes and cosmetics; they dance and sing and play musical instruments, and they sport. They dance when she dances,⁴ they sing when she dances, they play musical instruments when she dances, they sport when she dances; they dance when she sings ... they dance when she plays musical instruments ... they dance when she sports ... they sport when she sports.

They play⁵ on a chequered board for gambling⁶; they play on a draught-board⁷; they play with imagining such boards in the air⁸; they play a game

Bu-Ss.13.1.2
BD.1.316

¹ *uracchada*. Vin-a.617, “floral garlands like a *hāra* to be put on the breast.” ² Vin-a.620, “they lie down on.” ³ *attharaṇa*, literally strewing, spreading (neutral). Hence probably a mat or rug, or even something spread over them, some cover. ⁴ Vin-a.620, “when a nautch-girl dances, they go dancing in front of her or behind her.” ⁵ For these games cf. DN.i.6ff., and see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.11ff. for discussions on the terms. ⁶ *aṭṭhapada*. Vin-a.620, “they play at dice on the chequered board,” having eight squares on each side. ⁷ *dasapada*—i.e., a board with ten squares on each side. The commentary on this passage to “deformities,” below = DN-a.1.85f.. ⁸ Vin-a.620, “as they play on the dice or draught board, so they play in space.”

of keeping stepping on to diagrams¹; they play with spillikans²; they play at dice; they play tip-cat³; they play brush-hand⁴; they play with a ball⁵; they play at blowing through toy-pipes made of leaves⁶; they play with a toy plough⁷; they play at turning somersaults⁸; they play with a toy windmill⁹; they play with a toy measures of leaves¹⁰; they play with a toy cart¹¹; they play with a toy bow¹²; they play a game of guessing at letters¹³; they play a mind-reading game¹⁴; they play a game of mimicking deformities¹⁵; they train themselves in elephant lore¹⁶; they train themselves in horse lore¹⁷; they train themselves in cart lore; they train themselves in archery; they train themselves in swordsmanship; then they run in front of an elephant,

BD.1.317

¹ *parihārapatha*. Vin-a.62=DN-a.1.85, “having drawn a circle with various lines on the ground, there they play avoiding the line to be avoided.” ² *santikāya kīḷanti*. Vin-a.621, “putting together chessmen and little stones into heaps, they move them away and put (new ones) with the nails without letting them tremble; but if one trembles there is defeat.” ³ *ghaṭikena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “they move about hitting a short stick with a long stick.” ⁴ *salākahatthena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621=moistening the brush-hand in crimson lac or in floury water, and beating it on the ground or on a wall, he says, “‘What shall it be?’ and they play showing the form required”—elephants and horses. ⁵ *akkhena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, *gulena*, with a ball. *Critical Pali Dictionary* says *akkha* is a die. ⁶ *paṅgacīrena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “they play blowing that leafy pipe.” ⁷ *vaṅkakena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “they play with the plaything, the small plough of village boys.” Variant readings *caṅgakena*, *vaṅgakena*. ⁸ *mokkhacikāya kīḷanti*, derivation extremely obscure, see article *Pali-English Dictionary* and *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1885, p.49. Vin-a.621 says “it is called a game of rolling about (*samparivattaka*)” (cf. Ja.2.142). “Holding a stick in the air, and putting the head on the ground, they play turning about by being upside down.” At *Vin.1.275* the son of a great merchant disabled himself by playing this way. See also *Vinaya Texts* ii.184, n. ⁹ *ciṅgulakena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “a wheel that is made of the leaves of palm-trees and so on; the wheel reels round at a breath of wind—they play with this.” On *ciṅgulaka* see *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1885, p.50. ¹⁰ *pattāḷhakena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, *pattāḷhakam vuccati paṅṅanālikā*, and it also says, “they play measuring the leafy pipe with this sand and so on.” On the measures, *ālḥaka* and *nālikā*, see above, *BD.1.103*. ¹¹ *rathakena*, Vin-a.621, with a little cart. ¹² *dhanukena kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “with a little bow.” These last six and “tip-cat” are given as examples of childish games at MN.i.266=AN.v.203=Mi.230. ¹³ *akkharikāya kīḷanti*, Vin-a.621, “they play the game of recognising syllables in the air or on their backs.” ¹⁴ *manesikāya*, Vin-a.621, “they play the game of knowing the mind and thoughts.” ¹⁵ *yathāvajjena kīḷanti*. This means the blind, the lame, the deformed and so on: imitating that which is a deformity, they play the game of exhibiting it. ¹⁶ Vin-a.621, “they learn the learning which is to be learnt for the (craft and care) of elephants” and horses. ¹⁷ Vin-a.621, “they learn the learning which is to be learnt for the (craft and care) of elephants” and horses.

they run in front of a horse and they run in front of a chariot; now they run backwards, now they run forwards,¹ and they whistle,² and they snap their fingers,³ and they wrestle,⁴ and they fight with fists, and having spread out their upper robes as a stage,⁵ they say to a dancing girl: “Dance here, sister,” and they applaud,⁶ and indulge in various bad habits.

BD.1.318

At one time a certain monk, rising up from spending the rains among the people of Kāsi, and going to Sāvattḥī for the sake of seeing the lord, arrived at Kiṭāgiri. Then this monk getting up early and taking his bowl and robe entered Kiṭāgiri for alms-food. He was pleasing whether he was approaching or departing, whether he was looking before or looking behind, whether he was drawing in or stretching out (his arm),⁷ his eyes were cast down, he was possessed of pleasant behaviour.⁸

Bu-Ss.13.1.3

Vin.3.181

People seeing this monk, spoke thus:

“Who can this be like an idiot of idiots, like a fool of fools, like a very supercilious person?⁹ Who will go up to him and give him alms? Our masters, the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu are polite,¹⁰ genial, pleasant

¹ *dhāvanti pi ādhāvanti*, Vin-a.621, *dhāvanti pi tiparammukhā gacchantā dhāvanti. Ādhāvanti pi ti yattakaṃ dhāvanti tattakaṃ eva abhimukhā puna āgacchantā ādhāvanti.* ² *usseḥenti*. So far this word appears only to come here and at the parallel passage, Vin.2.10. The translators at *Vinaya Texts* ii.349, n.1, “are quite uncertain how to render this word.” I admit I do not agree with their rendering, “they used to exhibit signs of anger,” as I think that all these activities were entered upon in a friendly spirit. See *Pali-English Dictionary* under *seḷeti*; also MORRIS, *Journal of the Pali Text Society*, 1885, p.54, who is inclined to think *usseḥeti* is connected with *seleti*, and signifies “to shout out.” Snp-a.485 (on Snp.682) explains *seḷenti* as *mukhena usselanasaddaṃ muñcanti*. ³ Here, and at Vin.2.10, *appoḥenti*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives only *appoḥeti*, with meaning of “to snap the fingers or clap the hands.” But at Mi.13, Mi.20 *appoḥe*° is given as a variant reading, also *appoḥe*°. ⁴ Vin-a.622, “they make a wrestling contest.” ⁵ *raṅgamajjha*; cf. SN.iv.306, Ja.4.495. ⁶ *nalāṭikam denti*, which *Pali-English Dictionary* says, “gives a frown.” Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.622 says, “they say, ‘Very good, sister,’ and placing their fingers on their own foreheads they then place them on her forehead.” ⁷ From “he was pleasing” is more or less stock, cf., e.g., MN.iii.35, MN.iii.90; DN.i.70; AN.ii.104, AN.ii.106, AN.ii.210. ⁸ *iriyāpatha* can mean “good behaviour” besides the postures, of which there are four. ⁹ *bhākuṭikaṇhākuṭiko*. Vin-a.622, “having frowned when he cast down his eyes, they say that he goes about like an angry man with his mouth clenched.” These last two words are in Pali *kuṭitamukha*, for which there are variant readings *saṅkuṭi*°, *saṅkuci*°. ¹⁰ *saṅha* = *nipuṇa*. “They greet a lay woman and are not like a fool of fools,” so Vin-a.622.

of speech, beaming with smiles, saying: ‘Come, you are welcome.’ They are not supercilious, they are easily accessible, they are the first to speak.¹ Therefore alms should be given to these.”

A certain lay follower saw that monk wandering in Kiṭāgiri for alms; seeing that monk he approached him, and having approached and greeted him, he said:

BD.1.319 “Honoured sir, are alms obtainable?”

“Alms are not obtainable, your reverence,” he said.

Bu-Ss.13.1.4 “Come, honoured sir, we will go to my house.”

Then the lay follower having taken this monk to his house and made him eat, said:

“Where, honoured sir, will the master go?”

“I will go to Sāvattḥī, your reverence, to see the lord,” he said.

“Then, honoured sir, in my name salute the lord’s feet with your head and say: ‘Lord, the residence at Kiṭāgiri has been corrupted. At Kiṭāgiri are residing unscrupulous, depraved monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu. These indulge in the following bad habits ... they indulge in a variety of bad habits. Lord, those men who formerly had faith and were virtuous now have no faith and are not virtuous. Those who formerly were chañṇels for gifts² to the Order are now cut off; they neglect the well-behaved monks, and the depraved monks stay on. It were good, lord, if the lord would send monks to Kiṭāgiri, so that this residence in Kiṭāgiri may be settled.’”³

Bu-Ss.13.1.5

“Very well, your reverence,” and that monk having answered and rising up from his seat, departed for Sāvattḥī. In due course he approached Sāvattḥī, the Jeta Grove and Anāthapindika’s park and the lord; and having approached and greeted the lord, he sat down to one side. It is usual for enlightened ones, for lords, to exchange greetings with in-coming monks. So the lord said to this monk:

¹ Cf. DN.i.116 for some of these words. ² *dānapatha*. ³ *sañṭhaheyya*; or, may be put in order, may continue, may be established.

“I hope, monk, that it is going well with you, I hope that you are keeping going, I hope that you have accomplished your journey with but little fatigue. And where do you come from, monk?”

“Things go well, lord, I am keeping going, lord, and I, lord, accomplished my journey with but little fatigue. Now, I, lord, having spent the rains among the people of Kāsī, and coming to Sāvattḥī for the sake of seeing the lord, arrived at Kitāgiri. Then I, lord, rising up early, and taking my bowl and robe, entered Kitāgiri for alms-food. Then, lord, a certain lay follower saw me as I was wandering in Kitāgiri for alms-food, and seeing me he approached, and having approached and greeted me, he said: ‘Are alms obtainable, honoured sir?’ ‘No, your reverence, alms are not obtainable,’ I said. ‘Come, honoured sir, we will go to my house,’ he said. Then, lord, that lay follower, taking me to his house and feeding me, said: ‘Where, honoured sir, will the master go?’ I said: ‘Your reverence, I will go to Sāvattḥī for the sake of seeing the lord.’ Then he said ... ‘may be settled.’ Therefore, lord, do I come.”

Vin.3.182

BD.1.320

Then the lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the monks:

“Monks, is it true as is said, that the monks who are followers of As-saji and Punabbasu, residing in Kitāgiri, are unscrupulous and depraved and indulge in the following bad habits: they plant small flowering trees ... indulge in a variety of bad habits ... and those men, monks ... and the depraved monks stay on?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men indulge in this kind of bad habit, how can they plant small flowering trees or cause them to be planted? How can they water them or cause them to be watered? How can they pluck them or cause them to be plucked? How can they tie up garlands or cause them to be tied up? How can they make or cause to be made ... How can they take or send ... How can they eat ... How can they drink ... sit ... stand ... eat ... drink ... run ... dance and sing and play musical instruments and sport ... play ... train themselves ... run ... run round facing ... how can they

Bu-Ss.13.1.6

BD.1.321

whistle and snap their fingers and wrestle and fight with fists, and having spread out their upper robes as a stage, say to a nautch girl: ‘Dance here, sister,’ and applaud and indulge in a variety of bad habits? It is not, monks, for the benefit of unbelievers ...” and having rebuked them and given them talk on *dhamma*, he addressed Sāriputta and Moggallāna:

“You go, Sāriputta¹ and Moggallāna; and having gone to Kitāgiri make an act of banishment² from Kiṭāgiri against those monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu; these are fellow monks of yours.”³

Vin.3.183

They said: “Lord, how can we make an act of banishment from Kitāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu? These monks are violent and rough.”

“Then, Sāriputta and Moggallāna, go together with many monks.”

“Very well, lord,” Sāriputta and Moggallāna answered the lord.

Bu-Ss.13.1.7

“And this, monks, is how it should be done. First, the monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu should be reprovved; having been reprovved they should be reminded; having been reminded they should be accused of the offence; having been accused of the offence, the Order should be informed through an experienced, competent monk: ‘Let the Order listen to me, honoured sirs. These monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu are those who bring a family into disrepute, they are of evil conduct; their evil conduct is seen and also heard, and respectable families corrupted by them are seen and also heard. If it seems the right time for the Order, let the Order make an act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, so that the monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu may not be in Kiṭāgiri. This is the motion. Let the Order listen to me, honoured sirs. These monks who are ... seen and also heard. The Order issues an act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu so that the

BD.1.322

¹ *Sāriputtā*. Use of *karotha* and later *karoma* clearly indicates that both the chief disciples are meant. Cf. [Vin.1.351](#) for similar use of *Anuruddhā*. ² *pabbājaniyakamma*. This is directed against those who bring families into disrepute. ³ *saddhivihārino*. At [Vin.2.171](#) the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu refused to prepare lodgings for Sāriputta and Moggallāna saying that they were men of evil desires. This Assaji is not the same as he who converted Sāriputta and Moggallāna to the teaching of the lord.

monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu may not be in Kiṭāgiri. If it seems good to the venerable ones to make an act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu so that the monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu may not be in Kiṭāgiri, then be silent; if it does not seem good (to you) then you should speak. A second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time do I speak forth this matter: Let the Order listen to me ... should speak. By the Order there has been made an act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu so that the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu may not be in Kiṭāgiri. If it seems good to the Order, then be silent; so do I understand.”

Then¹ Sāriputta and Moggallāna, at the head of a company of monks, having gone to Kiṭāgiri made an act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, so that the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu might not be in Kiṭāgiri. The act of banishment having been made by the Order, these did not conduct them selves properly,² nor did they become subdued,³ nor did they mend

Bu-Ss.13.1.8

BD.1.323

¹ Vin.2.13 here has some matter not given at Vin.3.183. But the story continues in Vin.2.14 as above. ² Vin-a.625, “they did not do well in the eighteen duties.” ³ “Through not following a suitable course they are not subdued,” Vin-a.625, and taking the variant reading *paṇṇalomā*, *pannalomā* instead of *pana na loma*, as given in the printed edition of the Vin-a. *Pali-English Dictionary* says, *lomaṃ pāṭeti* means to let the hair drop, as a sign of modesty or subduedness. By this must be meant some analogy with an animal (such as a dog or cat) who, having raised the fur (*loma*), lets it fall back as a sign of good temper restored. Hence this phrase is almost certainly meant to be taken metaphorically. In Commentary, on Vin.2.5 (see Vin.2.309), where this same expression occurs, Buddhaghosa explains *lomaṃ pāṭenti* by *paṇṇalomā honti*, which means those whose down is flat, not standing up in excitement, and whose minds are therefore subdued. Cf. “he takes up the wrong course,” MN-a.3.153 on MN.i.442.

their ways,¹ they did not ask the monks for forgiveness,² they cursed them,³ they reviled them,⁴ they offended by following a wrong course through desire, by following a wrong course through hatred, by following a wrong course through stupidity, by following a wrong course through fear⁵; and they went away, and they left the Order.⁶

Those who were modest monks became angry ... and annoyed, and said: “How can the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, banished by the Order, not conduct themselves properly, not become subdued, not mend their ways? Why do they not ask for forgiveness from the monks? Why do they curse and revile them? Why do they, following a wrong course through desire, hatred, stupidity and fear, go away and leave the Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord.⁷

BD.1.324
Vin.3.184

He asked: “Is it true as is said, monks, that the monks who are the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, having been banished by the Order, do not conduct themselves properly ... leave the Order?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying ... “And thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

If a monk lives depending on a certain village or little town, and is one who brings a family into disrepute and is of depraved conduct,

¹ *Na netthāraṃ vattanti.* Vin-a.625, “they did not follow the way of the overcoming of self.” Commentary on Vin.2.5, given at Vin.2.309, is fuller: *netthāraṃ vattanti ti nittharantānaṃ etan ti netthāraṃ yena sakkā nissāraṇā nittharituṃ taṃ aṭṭhārasavidhaṃ sammāvattaṃ vattanti ti attho.* Same phrase occurs at MN.i.442, translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.316 “fails to atone,” but this rendering is, I think, too Christian in tone to fit. MN-a.3.153 on MN.i.442 says: *na nitthāraṃ vattati ti nitthāraṇakavattam hi na vattati āpattivuṭṭhānatthaṃ turitaturito chandajāto na hoti.*, variant reading *nitthāra*, as at MN.i.442. ² Vin-a.625, “we have done badly, we will not do so again, forgive us.’ They did not ask for forgiveness.”

³ Vin-a.625, “They swore at those who did the commission of the order with the ten expressions of cursing.” These are given at Dh-p-a.1.211. ⁴ Dh-p-a.1.211-212, “They made dread appear in these.” ⁵ These are the four so-called *agatis*. At DN.iii.133=AN.iv.370, they occur among the nine “Impossibles” (*abhabbaṭṭhāna*) for a monk who is *khīṇāsava*. The *agati*-formula is stock; cf., e.g., Vin.1.283; Vin.2.167, Vin.2.176, Vin.2.177; Vin.3.238, Vin.3.246; DN.iii.182, DN.iii.228; AN.i.72; AN.ii.18; AN.iii.274. ⁶ *vibbhamanti.* Vin-a.625 says, *ekacce gihi honti.* Cf. BD.1.60, n.3. ⁷ Here at Vin.3.184, the next normal step is omitted: “Then the lord on that occasion, in that connection, having convened the Order of monks, asked the monks.” This is given at parallel passage, Vin.2.14.

and if his evil conduct is seen and heard, and families corrupted by him are seen and also heard, let that monk be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘The venerable one is one who brings families into disrepute, and is of depraved conduct. The venerable one’s depraved doings are seen and heard, and families corrupted by the venerable one are seen and also heard. Let the venerable one depart from this residence; you have lived here long enough.’ And if this monk having been spoken to thus by the monks should say to these monks: ‘The monks are followers of desire and the monks are followers of hatred and the monks are followers of stupidity and the monks are followers of fear; they banish some for such an offence, they do not banish others’ — this monk should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Venerable one, do not speak thus. The monks are not followers of desire and the monks are not followers of hatred and the monks are not followers of stupidity and the monks are not followers of fear. The venerable one is one who brings families into disrepute and is of depraved conduct. The depraved doings of the venerable one are seen and heard, and families corrupted by the venerable one are seen and also heard. Let the venerable one depart from this residence; the venerable one has dwelt in this residence long enough.’ If this monk, when spoken to thus by the monks, should persist as before, that monk should be admonished up to three times by the monks for giving up his course. If after being admonished up to three times, he gives up that course, it is good. If he does not give it up, it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.”

BD.1.325

A monk (is dependent on) a certain village or a little town means: a village and a little town and a city, and thus a village and a little town.

Bu-Ss.13.2.1

Lives depending on means: there they are dependent for the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings and medicine for the sick.

A family means: there are four kinds of families: a noble family, a brahmin family, a merchant family, a low-caste family.¹

Vin.3.185

¹ = Vin.4.272.

One who brings a family into disrepute means: he brings families into disrepute by means of a flower¹ or a fruit² or with chunam or clay or with a toothpick or with bamboo or with medical treatment³ or with going messages on foot.⁴

BD.1.326

Of depraved conduct means: he plants or causes to be planted a little flowering tree; he waters it and causes it to be watered; he plucks it and causes it to be plucked; he ties up garlands and causes them to be tied up.

Are seen and also heard means: those who are face to face with them see; those who are absent hear.

Families corrupted by him means: formerly they had faith, now thanks to him they are without faith; having been virtuous, now they are without virtue.

Are seen and also heard means: those who are face to face with them see; those who are absent hear.

That monk means: that monk who brings a family into disrepute.

By the monks means: by other monks; these see, these hear; it should be said by these: 'The venerable one is one who brings families into disrepute and is of depraved conduct; the venerable one's depraved conduct ... has lived here long enough.' And if the monk being spoken to thus by the monks should say: '... they do not banish others'.

This monk means: this monk against whom proceedings have been taken.

By the monks means: by other monks; these see, these hear; it should be said by these: 'Do not, venerable one, speak thus ... the venerable one has lived here long enough.' A second time should they say ... A third time should they say ... if he gives up the course that is good; if he does not give it up it is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having heard, they do not speak,

¹ Vin-a.626, a monk must not steal a flower from lay followers in order to make a gift or to offer in worship at a *cetiya*, or to give to people to use in worship; and it is not right to urge people to use flowers in worship. ² Vin-a.626, a fruit means his own property, which he can give to his parents and relations; but he must not give his own property or that of others to win favour with families, but to sick men or to lords who have arrived, or to those whose earnings are destroyed. ³ Vin-a.628, "here it is the art of medical treatment as explained in the Commentary on the Third *Pārājika*." ⁴ Vin-a.626, "taking up a householder's order—this should not be done; taking it up and going is a *dukkaṭa* offence for each step."

there is an offence of wrong-doing. That monk having been drawn into the middle of the Order, should be told: 'Do not, venerable one, speak thus ... you have lived here long enough.' A second time he should be told ... A third time he should be told ... if he gives up his course it is good, but if he does not give it up there is an offence of wrong-doing.

That monk should be admonished. The Order should be informed through an experienced, competent monk: 'Let the Order listen to me, honoured sirs. This monk, so and so banished by an act of the order, makes the monks fall into wrong courses by following desire, by following hatred, by following confusion, by following fear; and he does not give up his course. If it seems the right time to the Order, let the Order admonish this monk for the sake of giving up his course. This is the motion. Let the Order listen to me ... Thus do I understand.'

BD.1.327

According to the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing ... grave offences subside.

An offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: the Order places him on probation on account of his offence, it sends him back to the beginning, it inflicts the *mānatta* discipline, it rehabilitates; it is not many people, it is not one man, therefore it is called an offence which in the earlier as well as in the later stages requires a formal meeting of the Order. A synonym for this class of offence is a work; therefore, again, it is called an offence which in the earlier as well as in the later stages entails a formal meeting of the Order.¹

Vin.3.186

Thinking a legally valid act to be a legally valid act, he does not give it up—there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Being in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... Not thinking an act which is legally valid to be an act which is not legally valid, is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Bu-Ss.13.3.1

It is not an offence if he is not admonished, if he gives it up, if he is mad, if he is a beginner.

Bu-Ss.13.3.2

¹ Cf. above, BD.1.196. ² Cf. BD.1.302, BD.1.307, BD.1.313.

Told is the Thirteenth Offence entailing a Formal meeting of the Order: that of bringing families into disrepute

BD.1.328

The thirteen matters which require a formal meeting of the Order have been set down, venerable ones—nine which become offences at once,¹ and four which are not completed until the third admonition.²

If a monk offends against one or other of these, for as many days as he knowingly conceals his offence,³ for so many days should probation be spent by this monk, even against his will.⁴ When this monk has spent his probation, a further six days are to be allowed for the monk's *mānatta* discipline. If, when the monk has performed the *mānatta* discipline, the company of monks numbers twenty, that monk may be rehabilitated.⁵ But if the Order of monks should rehabilitate that monk when numbering less than twenty even by one, that monk is not rehabilitated and these monks are blameworthy. This is the proper course there. Now I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are pure in this matter?⁶ A second time I ask: I hope that you are pure in this matter? A third time I ask: I hope that you are pure in this matter? The venerable ones are pure in this matter, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand.⁷

Told are the thirteen

THE SUMMARY OF THIS IS

Emission and bodily contact;
lewd talk and one's own pleasure,
Acting as a go-between; and a hut, and a *vihāra*;
without foundation,

BD.1.329

And some point, and a schism, even siding in with,
Difficult to speak to, and bringing a family into disrepute—
these are the thirteen offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.3.187

¹ *paṭhamāpattikā*. ² *yāvataṭṭiyakā*: name of the last four *Saṅghādisesas*, where before punishment can be inflicted, the monks must have been admonished so as to give up their wrong courses, even up to the third time. ³ Vin-a.629, "for as many days as he knowingly conceals his offence, saying: 'I have fallen into such and such an offence,' and does not tell his co-religionists." ⁴ Vin-a.629, taking up probation (*parivāsa*) it may be spent unwillingly, not under his power. ⁵ *Abbheti*, to rehabilitate after suspension for breach of rules. ⁶ I.e., of being at least a group of twenty. ⁷ For this passage cf. [Vin.4.242](#).

Told are the thirteen sections

MONKS' UNDETERMINED (ANĪYATA) 1

BD.1.330
Bu-Ay.1.1.1

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattḥī in Anātha-piṇḍika's park in the Jeta Grove. At that time the venerable Udāyin was dependent on families in Sāvattḥī and approached many families. Now at that time the young girl of a family who was supporting the venerable Udāyin had been given (in marriage) to a boy of a certain family. Then the venerable Udāyin, getting up early and taking his bowl and robe; approached that family, and having approached them he asked the people:

“Where is (the girl) called so and so?” They said:

“Honoured sir, she was given to a boy of a certain family.” Now this family supported the venerable Udāyin. Then the venerable Udāyin approached this family, and having approached them he asked the people:

“Where is (the girl) called so and so?” They said:

“Master, she is sitting in the inner room.”

Then the venerable Udāyin approached this girl, and having approached her, he sat down together with that girl, a man and a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat,¹ conversing at the right time, speaking *dhamma* at the right time.²

Now at that time Visākhā, Migāra's mother, had many children and many grandchildren.³ The children were healthy and the grandchildren were healthy and she was considered to be auspicious.⁴ People used to regale

BD.1.331

¹ Old Commentary, see below, **BD.1.333**, and Vin-a.631 explain that this means a seat where “it is possible to indulge in sexual intercourse.” ² Vin-a.631, “talking for a time when anyone comes and goes in their presence, then he says: ‘You should perform a seeming observance-day, you should give food to be distributed by ticket.’” ³ Vin-a.631, “they say that she had ten sons and ten daughters ... and that her sons and her daughters each had twenty children, so that in addition to her own, she had four hundred children.”

⁴ *Abhimaṅgalasammata*.

Visākhā first at sacrifices, festivals¹ and feasts.² So Visākhā, being invited, went to that family. Visākhā saw the venerable Udāyin sitting together with that girl, a man and a woman,³ in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat. Seeing this, she said to the venerable Udāyin:

“This is not proper, honoured sir, it is not suitable that the master should sit together with women-folk, a man and a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat. Although, honoured sir, the master has no desire for that thing,⁴ unbelieving people are difficult to convince.”⁵

Vin.3.188

But the venerable Udāyin took no heed after he had been spoken to thus by Visākhā. Then Visākhā, when she had departed, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks became annoyed, vexed, angry and said:

“How can the venerable Udāyin sit together with womenfolk, a man and a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat?” And these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, Udāyin, that you sat together with womenfolk, a man and a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “How can you, foolish man, sit together with womenfolk, a man with a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat? It is not, foolish man, for the benefit of unbelievers ... And thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should sit down together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat, and if a trustworthy⁶ woman lay-follower seeing him should speak concerning a certain one of three matters: either one involving defeat,⁷ or one entailing a formal meeting of the Order,⁸ or one involving expiation,⁹ and the monk himself acknowledging that he was sitting down, should be dealt with according to a certain one of three matters: as to whether it is

BD.1.332

¹ Vin-a.631, “The blessings of leading the bride to one’s own home and away from her own home”—i.e., wedding feasts. ² Feasts at the beginning and at the end of the rains. ³ *Eko ekāya*. ⁴ *Tena dhammena*. ⁵ I.e., that he and the woman were on purely platonic terms.

⁶ Vin-a.632, “one who has attained the fruit of stream-entry.” ⁷ The First Defeat. ⁸ The second Formal Meeting. ⁹ Bu-Pc.44, Bu-Pc.45.

one involving defeat, or as to whether it is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or as to whether it is one involving expiation. Or that monk should be dealt with according to what that trustworthy woman lay-follower should say. This is an undetermined matter.”¹

Bu-Ay.1.2.1

Whatever means: he who ...

Monk means: this is how monk is to be understood in this sense.

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal, even a girl born on this very day, much more an older one.²

Together with means: together.³

A man with a woman⁴ means: there is a monk and also a woman.

A secret place means: secret from the eye, secret from the ear. Secret from the eye means: if covering the eye or raising the eyebrow or raising the head he is unable to see. Secret from the ear means: he is unable to hear ordinary speech.

A secluded seat means: it is secluded by a wall built of wattle and daub, or by a door or by a screen or by a screen wall or by a tree or by a pillar or by a sack or it is concealed by anything whatever.⁵

Vin.3.189

BD.1.333

Convenient means: it is possible to indulge in sexual intercourse.

Should sit down means: when the woman is sitting the monk is sitting or lying close to her; when the monk is sitting the woman is sitting or lying close to him; both are sitting, or both are lying.

Trustworthy means: (a woman who) has attained the fruit,⁶ one who possesses complete understanding,⁷ one who has learned the teaching.

Female lay-follower means: one going to the enlightened one for refuge, one going to *dhamma* for refuge, one going to the Order for refuge.

Seeing means: seeing.⁸

Bu-Ay.1.2.2

Should speak concerning a certain one of three matters: either one involving defeat, or one entailing a formal meeting of the Order,

¹ It depends upon circumstances. ² =above, BD.1.202. ³ =above, BD.1.202. ⁴ Literally one (masculine) with one (feminine). ⁵ Cf. Bu-Ay.2.2.1 and Vin.4.269. ⁶ Of stream-attainment, Vin-a.632. ⁷ Vin-a.632, “one who has penetrated the four truths.” ⁸ *disvā ti passitvā*.

or one involving expiation, and the monk himself acknowledging that he was sitting down, should be dealt with according to a certain one of three matters: as to whether it is one involving defeat, or as to whether it is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or as to whether it is one involving expiation. Or that monk should be dealt with according to what that trustworthy woman lay-follower should say.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting and indulging in sexual intercourse with a woman,” and if he acknowledges this, he should be dealt with for an offence.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting and indulging in sexual intercourse with a woman,” and if he should say this: “It is true that I was sitting but I was not indulging in sexual intercourse,” he should be dealt with for sitting down.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting and indulging in sexual intercourse with a woman,” and if he should say this: “I was not sitting but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down.

BD.1.334

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting and indulging in sexual intercourse with a woman,” and if he should say this: “I was not sitting but I was standing,” he is not to be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me lying down and indulging in sexual intercourse with a woman,” if he acknowledges this, he should be dealt with for an offence.

If she should say this: “The master was seen ... with a woman,” and he should say this: “It is true that I was lying down but I was not indulging in sexual intercourse,” he should be dealt with for lying down.

If she should say this: “The master ... with a woman,” and if he should say this: “I was not lying down but I was sitting,” he should be dealt with for sitting down.

If she should say this: “The master ... with a woman,” and he should say this: “I was not lying down but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

Vin.3.190

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting together with a woman and indulging in physical contact,” and if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for an offence ... “It is true that I was sitting, but I did

not indulge in physical contact,” he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not sitting, but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not sitting but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me lying down together with a woman and indulging in physical contact,” and if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for an offence ... “It is true that I was lying down, but I did not indulge in physical contact,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not lying down but I was sitting down” ... “I was not lying down, I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place on a secluded seat suitable (for sexual intercourse),” and if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not sitting down, but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not sitting down, I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me lying down ... on a secluded seat suitable (for sexual intercourse),” and if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not lying down, I was sitting down,” he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not lying down, I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

Undetermined means: not determined as to whether it involves defeat, or formal meeting of the Order, or expiation.

BD.1.335

Bu-Ay.1.3.1

He acknowledges going,¹ he acknowledges sitting down, he acknowledges an offence,² he should be dealt with for an offence.³ He acknowledges going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, but he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He acknowledges going, he acknowledges sitting down, but he does not acknowledge an offence, he should be dealt with for sitting down. He acknowledges going, he does not acknowledge sitting down and he does not acknowledge an offence, he should not be dealt with. He does not acknowledge going, but he acknowl-

¹ Vin-a.633, “saying: ‘I am going to a secret place for the sake of sitting down.’” ² Vin-a.633, “a certain offence among the three” — i.e., either a *pārājika* or a *saṅghādisesa* or a *pācittiya*.

³ Vin-a.633, *āpattiyā kārelabbo*, “he should be dealt with according to which of the three he acknowledges.”

edges sitting down and he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He does not acknowledge going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, but he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He does not acknowledge going, but he acknowledges sitting down, though he does not acknowledge an offence, he should be dealt with for sitting down. He does not acknowledge going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, he does not acknowledge an offence, he should not be dealt with.

Vin.3.191

Told is the First Undetermined Offence

MONKS' UNDETERMINED (ANİYATA) 2

BD.1.336
Bu-Ay.2.1.1

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's park. At that time the venerable Udāyin said: "It has been forbidden by the lord to sit together with womenfolk, a man and a woman, in a secret place on a secluded, convenient seat," but he sat together with that young girl, the one with the other, in a secret place, conversing at the right time, talking *dhamma* at the right time. A second time did Visākhā, Migāra's mother, being invited, come to that family. Visākhā saw the venerable Udāyin sitting together with that girl, the one with the other, in a secret place, and seeing them she said to the venerable Udāyin:

"This, honoured sir, is not right, it is not suitable for the master to sit together with womenfolk, a man and a woman, in a secret place. Although, honoured sir, the master has no desire for that thing, unbelieving people are difficult to convince."

But the venerable Udāyin took no heed after he had been spoken to thus by Visākhā. Then Visākhā, when she had departed, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... (= Bu-Ay.1.1; *the words on a secluded, convenient seat are omitted here*) ... "And thus, monks, this course of training should be set forth:

"And furthermore, if there is not a seat which is secluded and convenient, but sufficiently so¹ for speaking to a woman with lewd words,² then whatever monk should sit down on such a seat together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place, and a trustworthy woman lay-follower seeing him should speak concerning a certain one of two matters: either one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or one involving expiation, and the monk himself acknowledging that he

BD.1.337

¹ *Alaṃ*. ² Cf. Bu-Ss.3.

was sitting down, should be dealt with according to a certain one of two matters: as to whether it is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or as to whether it is one involving expiation. Or that monk should be dealt with according to what that trustworthy woman lay-follower should say. This again is an undetermined matter.”

Vin.3.192

And furthermore, if there is not a seat which is secluded means: it is not secluded by a wall built of wattle and daub or by a door or by a screen or by a screen wall or by a tree or by a pillar or by a sack, or it is not secluded by anything whatever.¹

Bu-Ay.2.2.1

Not convenient means: it is not possible to indulge in sexual intercourse.²

But sufficiently so for speaking to a woman with lewd words means: it is possible to speak to a woman with lewd words.

Whatever means: he who.

Monk means: ... this is the sense in which monk is to be understood.

On such a seat means: on a seat like that.

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal,³ one who is learned and competent to know good and bad speech, and what is lewd and what is not lewd.⁴

Together with means: together.⁵

Should sit down means: when the woman is sitting ...⁶

Seeing means: seeing.⁷

Should speak concerning a certain one of two matters:

Bu-Ay.2.2.2

BD.1.338

Either one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or one involving expiation, and the monk himself acknowledging that he was sitting down, should be dealt with according to a certain one of two matters: as to whether it is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order, or as to whether it is one involving expiation. Or that monk should be dealt with according to what that trustworthy woman lay-follower should say.

¹ Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1 and Vin.4.269. ² Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1. ³ Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1. ⁴ = above, BD.1.215.

⁵ Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1. ⁶ Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1. ⁷ Cf. Bu-Ay.1.2.1.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me when he was sitting down and coming into¹ physical contact with a woman,” if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for an offence.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me ... physical contact,” and if he should say: “It is true that I was sitting, but I did not come into physical contact,” he should be dealt with for sitting ... “I was not sitting, but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not sitting, but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me lying down, and coming into physical contact with a woman,” if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for an offence ... “It is true that I was lying down, but I did not come into physical contact,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not lying down, but I was sitting down,” he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not lying down, but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

Vin.3.193

If she should say this: “The master was heard by me when he was sitting down and speaking lewd words to a woman,” if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for an offence.

If she should say this: “The master ... to a woman,” and if he should say: “It is true that I was sitting down but I did not speak lewd words to a woman,” he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not sitting down but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not sitting down but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

BD.1.339

If she should say this. “The master was heard as he was lying down and speaking lewd words to a woman” ... “but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me sitting together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place,” and if he acknowledges this he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not sitting down, but I was lying down,” he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not sitting down, but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

If she should say this: “The master was seen by me lying down together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place,” and if he acknowl-

¹ *Samāpajjanto*. On *samāpajjati*, see above, [BD.1.201, n.3](#).

edges this, he should be dealt with for lying down ... “I was not lying down, but I was sitting down,” he should be dealt with for sitting down ... “I was not sitting down, but I was standing,” he should not be dealt with.

This again means: it is called so with reference to the former.

Undetermined means: not determined as to whether it involves a formal meeting of the Order, or expiation.

He acknowledges going, he acknowledges sitting down, he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He acknowledges going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He acknowledges going, he acknowledges sitting down, he does not acknowledge an offence, he should be dealt with for sitting down. He acknowledges going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, he does not acknowledge an offence, he should not be dealt with. He does not acknowledge going, he acknowledges sitting down, he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He does not acknowledge going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, but he acknowledges an offence, he should be dealt with for an offence. He does not acknowledge going, he acknowledges sitting, he does not acknowledge an offence, he should be dealt with for sitting down. He does not acknowledge going, he does not acknowledge sitting down, he does not acknowledge an offence, he should not be dealt with.¹

Bu-Ay.2.3.1

Told is the First Undetermined Offence

Set forth, venerable ones, are the two undetermined matters. In this connection I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are pure in this matter? A second time I ask: I hope that you are pure in this matter? A third time I ask: I hope that you are pure in this matter? The venerable ones are pure in this matter, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand.

BD.1.340

ITS SUMMARY

Convenient and so and likewise, but not thus,

¹ Cf. above, Bu-Ay.1.3.

such undetermined matters are well pointed out
by the best of Buddhas.

Told is the Undetermined

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

This volume of the *Book of the Discipline* covers OLDENBERG's edition of the *Vinayapiṭaka*, vol.3, p.195, to vol.4, p.124, and thus comprises the thirty *Nissaggiya* rules and sixty of the ninety-two *Pācittiya* rules laid down for monks.

BD.2.v

The actual rules, *sikkhāpada*, of the Pali Pātimokkha are accessible to English readers in RHYS DAVIDS and OLDENBERG's translation,¹ and translations even earlier.² They have also all been set out in full by B.C. LAW,³ while E.J. THOMAS⁴ has given some in their entirety and has summarised others, classifying these, under their appropriate sections, where affinities are visible. This is the first translation into English of these *sikkhāpadas* complete with their attendant material.

It has been truly and helpfully observed by the editors of *Vinaya Texts*⁵ that "inside each class (of offence) the sequence of the clauses⁶ follows no invariable rule. Sometimes offences of a related character are placed together in groups, but sometimes those which would naturally come together are found scattered in quite different parts of the same class." In addition, as Oldenberg has pointed out,⁷ "it not infrequently happens that a rule refers to the one immediately preceding it."

A considerable amount of work having been done on the Pātimokkha, it will be better in this Introduction not to enlarge upon rules, grouping of rules or sporadic appearance of rules, but to confine myself mainly to

BD.2.vi

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.1ff., Sacred Books of the East XIII. ² DICKSON, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society 1876; GÖGERLY, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society 1862; R. SPENCE HARDY, *Eastern Monachism*, 1850, in various chapters. ³ *A History of Pali Literature* i.50ff., based on *Vinaya Texts* i.1ff. ⁴ *A History of Buddhist Thought*, 16ff. ⁵ *Vinaya Texts* i.xiv. ⁶ I.e., rule, ordinance, *sutta*, *dhamma*, clause or article. ⁷ *Vin.1.xvii*.

various findings arising from a study of the auxiliary material—stories, Old Commentary and *anāpatti* (no offence) clauses—surrounding each rule.

Some of these Pātimokkha rules, when read in conjunction with their attendant material, testify that, although the legal decree and the penalty for its infringement may be the culminating point, there was also a softening influence at work. For the not altogether infrequent *anujānāmi* (“I allow”) allowances, always put into the mouth of Gotama, tend to counteract any too great stringency, inexpediency or lack of clarity on the side of which the *sikkhāpada*, as first framed, may have erred.

Doubtless the *sikkhāpadas*, if isolated from their surrounding matter and viewed either as extracts from this or as the foundations on which it was later reared,¹ may be said to amount to not much more than a series of prohibitions. But on those occasions when an *anujānāmi* is present in the auxiliary material, then *anujānāmi* and *sikkhāpada*, allowance and rule, taken in association as they are intended to be, produce a balance, a middle way between the two extremes of uncompromising legal ordinance and unchecked laxity of behaviour. On such occasions the *anujānāmi* pulls against the rule, and appears as an event potent in its effect on the character of the rule, no less than on the history of its formulation.

The *Nissaggiyas* and *Pācittiyas* are arranged on the same general plan that the *Suttavibhaṅga* follows throughout. This comprises a story leading up to the formulation of a rule, *sikkhāpada*, which is laid down together with the penalty for breaking it. In some cases there follow one or more other stories showing that it was advisable to remodel the rule, and at whose conclusion the amended version of the rule is given. Next comes the Old Commentary or *Padabhājanīya*, defining the words of the rule; then cases where the penalty for breaking the rule or some lighter (never heavier) penalty is incurred; and finally, a list of cases which entail no offence against the rule.

BD.2.vii

¹ BD.1.xivf.

THE NISSAGGIYA GROUP

Each of the thirty *Nissaggiya* rules for monks has, as the penalty for breaking it, expiation of the offence, *Pācittiya*, involving forfeiture, *Nissaggiya*. This penalty is stated in the words *Nissaggiyam Pācittiyam*, “(an offence) involving forfeiture, to be expiated.” The forfeiture enjoined is that in respect of which the offence had been committed, for example a robe or bowl or rug. These rules are concerned both with behaviour as such and with the wrongful acquisition or unsuitable usage of things.

The form of expiation enjoined by the Old Commentary is confession¹ of the offence of wrongful acquisition. From internal evidence, *Pācittiya* is a (minor) offence to be confessed, *āpatti desetabbā*, a statement common to all the *Nissaggiyas*. But etymologically the word *Pācittiya* has nothing to do with confession. I have therefore kept to the more literal translation,² and have rendered it “offence of expiation” throughout, and the two words *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* as “offence of expiation involving forfeiture.” According to the Old Commentary, “having forfeited (the article), the offence should be confessed.” Thus the act of forfeiture should precede the expiation or confession. I will say something more below about the method in which forfeiture should be made.³

In history, the place at which an event is said to have taken place is often of some importance. It is well known that Gotama spent the greater part of his teaching life at Sāvattthi and his last years at Vesālī. It is worth recalling, for the evidence contributed, that Sāvattthi, with an overwhelming majority, is given as the locus of twenty-two *Nissaggiyas*, Rājagaha of three, Vesālī and Kapilavatthu each of two, Ālavī of one.

BD.2.viii

As many as sixteen *Nissaggiya* rules for monks are concerned with robes, and fall into two groups, **Bu-NP.1–Bu-NP.10**, **Bu-NP.24–Bu-NP.29**; five with rugs (*santhata*), **Bu-NP.11–Bu-NP.15**; two with sheep’s wool, **Bu-NP.16**, **Bu-NP.17**; three with gold and silver and bartering, **Bu-NP.18–Bu-NP.20**; two with bowls, **Bu-NP.21**, **Bu-NP.22**; one with medicine, **Bu-NP.23**; and the last one, **Bu-NP.30**, is against a monk appropriating for his own use benefits intended for the Order. There are, moreover, a few cross-sections.

¹ Cf. S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.104ff. ² See below, **BD.2.3**, **n.4**. ³ Below, **BD.2.xii**.

For example, in the matter of exchange of robes (Bu-NP.5), in the matter of washing, dyeing and beating robes (Bu-NP.4, and in the matter of washing, dyeing and beating sheep's wool (Bu-NP.17), the correct behaviour for a monk to observe towards a nun also comes under legislation; and in two of the rules connected with making rugs, sheep's wool is also the subject of legal attention.

Oddly, there is no *Nissaggiya* concerned with either lodgings or bedding, *senāsana*, or with almsfood, *piṇḍapāta*, which with robes and medicine are regarded as a monk's four indispensable requisites. There are offences regarding these which had to be confessed, and which occur in the *Pācittiya* section of the *Pātimokkha*, but evidently there are no types of offences where lodgings and almsfood had to be forfeited, in addition to their wrongful acquisition or usage being confessed.

About half the rules were formulated because the monks acquired something by means considered un-becoming, tiresome or inconvenient: they asked for too much, they pressed potential donors, for example as to the quality of the robe-material they particularly desired. The remaining half were formulated because monks did various things or used various articles in ways thought unsuitable: they had an unnecessary amount of robes or bowls, they laid aside their robes for too long, they made nuns wash their robes or their sheep's wool for them, and they carried sheep's wool so far that the laity made fun of them.

BD.2.ix

The formulation of the majority, namely of sixteen *Nissaggiya* rules, resulted, so it is recorded, from criticisms made of a monk or monks by the laity; eight from criticisms made by modest monks, three from those made by nuns, two from those made by Ānanda, and one from those made by a wanderer. With the exception of Ānanda, who complained for the sake of the Order, and not because he himself had been specially inconvenienced, these various classes of critics put forward their complaints because they personally had been in some way adversely affected by the monks' behaviour. Thus there is a parallelism between the sources of criticism and the sections of society annoyed. Once Gotama is recorded to have heard of troublesome behaviour direct from Mahāpajāpatī while he was talking to her (Bu-NP.17), and once he came upon signs of it himself (Bu-

NP.17). Four times a new rule is framed in place of one already existing, for occasions afterwards arose which showed that its scrupulous observance resulted in unfair situations.

It will be seen that the number of *Nissaggiya* rules formulated according to this reckoning is thirty-six. This means that six times the rule as originally framed had to be altered: four times, as mentioned above, in accordance with circumstances that had not been foreseen when it was first set forth (Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.14, Bu-NP.21), and twice when close adherence to the rule as first drafted is shown to result in occurrences so unsuitable as to provoke complaints and criticism (Bu-NP.5, Bu-NP.6).

These *Nissaggiyas* where the rule had to be altered, although never more than once, thus contain two stories, one leading up to the first, and the other to the second version of the rule. The second version must be taken to annul the validity of the first. This however had to remain in the text for the sake of historical interest, and as to some extent explanatory of the force and wisdom of the second version. Had it been omitted, the incidents showing its shortcomings and its need for revision could not have been used as testimony that such shortcomings were remediable and such revision necessary and reasonable.

BD.2.x

In these six *Nissaggiyas* where a rule is formulated twice, the first version is always followed by the phrase, "And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord." There is no instance of this phrase occurring either after the second formulation of the rule, or in any of the remaining twenty-four *Nissaggiyas* where the rule is framed once only.

Yet in the text of the *Vinaya* is every rule, whether it had to be revised or not, and every amended rule, ascribed to Gotama. The formula so very definitely attributing "to the lord" only those rules that had to be altered is to my mind somewhat inexplicable. It is not peculiar to the *Nissaggiyas*, but occurs throughout the *Vibhaṅga*. It is possible that the occurrence of this phrase points to some comparatively old stratum in the *Suttavibhaṅga*, where only those rules, so pointedly said to have been laid down "by the lord," were genuinely prescribed by him; but that then there came a case, perhaps before, perhaps after his death, which made it clear that a revision and a more exact delimitation of the rule already formulated was wanted

in the interests of reason, decency or justice.

Such revision may then in fact have been made, not by the founder, but by one of his followers or by the *saṃgha*. Or a decision may have been taken at the final recension of the “texts” to attribute all rules to the lord, so as to invest them with his authority. Even so, the mystery remains why this phrase, “And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord,” was appended only to those rules which, as the history of the Order shows, had to be altered, and not to those whose original version has been able to stand and operate down the centuries.

It is something more than coincidence, and looks like adherence to some thought-out pattern, that in the six *Nissaggiyas* where a rule is twice formulated there should occur, after its first formulation, this phrase ascribing its setting forth “to the lord,” and before its second formulation an *anujānāmi*, an “allowance.” In each case the *anujānāmi* occurs in the talk which, before the rule was revised, is reputed to have been given by Gotama to monks. Its effect is not to tighten but to mitigate the force and application of the rule as first drawn up. An *anujānāmi* however also occurs in five of the remaining twenty-four *Nissaggiyas* (*Bu-NP.3*, *Bu-NP.15*, *Bu-NP.22*, *Bu-NP.28*, *Bu-NP.29*), not immediately before, but some way before the rule, here of course formulated only once.

In the *Nissaggiya* group of rules, there occurs the formulation of four *dukkāṭa* offences, those of wrong-doing. Each of these is ascribed to Gotama. Many others appear in the material placed after the Old Commentary, but it is not said of these that he was the author.

Most rare it is to find, as in *Bu-NP.1* and *Bu-NP.21*, which have several other points in common, a short story leading up to the drafting of an offence of wrong-doing placed *after* the *anāpatti* (no offence) clauses.¹ As would be expected, the story and the offence are pertinent to the matter in hand.

In *Bu-NP.6* the *anujānāmi*, which is unusually long, ends, exceptionally for the *Nissaggiya* section, in the formulation of a *dukkāṭa* offence. It immediately precedes the second drafting of the rule.

In *Bu-NP.22*, which because of some peculiarities that it contains I shall

¹ Similarly at *Bi-NP.1*.

discuss more fully below, the first story introduces, not a *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* offence, but one of wrong-doing.

The occurrence of *dukkāṭa* offences in **Bu-NP.6** and **Bu-NP.22** before the final formulation of the rule, no less than their ascription to the lord, should correct the impression given at *Vinaya Texts* i.xxv that the term *dukkāṭa* “occurs only in ... the latest portion of the Piṭaka,” that is in “the Notes giving the exceptions to, and the extensions of the Rule in the Pātimokkha” (*Vinaya Texts* i.xix), which are always placed after the Old Commentary.

BD.2.xii

As a general rule, the *Padabhājanīya* states that forfeiture and confession were to be made to an Order, that is to any part of the whole Order, five monks or more,¹ living within one boundary, *sīmā*, or within one residence, *āvāsa*; or to a group, *gaṇa*² of monks, that is to a group of from two to four monks; or to an individual monk. When the article had been forfeited and the offence confessed, the offence was to be acknowledged, in the first two instances, by “an experienced, competent monk”; in the third by the monk to whom the forfeiture and confession had been made. The forfeited article was then to be given back to the monk who, having acquired it wrongfully, had forfeited it.

The value of the *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* type of penalty was, I think, in the eyes of the framer or framers of the Pātimokkha rules, its deterrent effect on the commission of further similar offences, and its redemptive power for each particular offender. It was apparently held that an offence whose penalty was of this nature was annulled by confessing it and having it acknowledged, combined with this hardly more than symbolic act of forfeiting the article wrongfully acquired. This involved some formality, but evidently the offence was not considered bad enough to warrant the offender's permanent loss of the goods he had obtained improperly.

Thus it is only true that “rules were required to prevent his (*i.e.*, a monk's) acquiring a store of property,”³ on the assumption that these rules were deterrent and preventive and not retributive and revengeful. More important is it perhaps to realise that, behind this statutory limiting of

¹ Sizes of a *saṅgha*, order, are given at **Vin.1.319**. ² In the Old Commentary, the phrase *sambahulā bhikkhū* also occurs, and appears often to be a synonym for *gaṇa*. See below, **BD.2.7**, **BD.2.8**. ³ E.J. THOMAS *A History of Buddhist Thought*, p.19.

possessions, there was the conviction that greed, craving, thirst, *taṇhā*, themselves undesirable, produced further undesirable states of mind.

It is true that any great emphasis on the monastic ideal, any clear expression of it, is lacking in the Vinaya, and is to be found almost exclusively in the Suttapiṭaka.

BD.2.xiii

The rules were probably, like the Rule of St. Benedict, to help the beginners, the backsliders, in their struggle towards “the lofty heights of virtue” and wisdom. Yet there is one notable occasion, in **Bu-NP.17**, when we are reminded of the end, the ideal, the thing sought, to which the Vinaya rules must be held to constitute a means of realisation. This is when the lord is shown as asking Mahāpajāpatī whether the nuns are “zealous, ardent, with a self that is striving,” a triad of words belonging to Sutta material. To which she answers that while monks make them wash their sheep’s wool for them, it is impossible for nuns to attend to “the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher wisdom,” also a Sutta triad.

Conquest in this age-old struggle on the part of certain women to escape the ties of domesticity so as to seek the “further shore” is happily expressed in verses ascribed to Sumaṅgala’s mother:¹

“O woman well set free! how free am I,
How thoroughly free from kitchen drudgery!
Me stained and squalid ’mong my cooking-pots,
My brutal husband ranked as even less
Than the sunshades he sits and weaves away.”

Yet although references to the need for ideals and their value, and for man’s inner spiritual and mental training and the means of attaining these, may be, practically absent from the Vinaya, there is no doubt that its legal and somewhat austere character is based on a high and mature standard of morality, justice and common sense.

There are three exceptions to the *Nissaggiyas*’ customary insistence on the return of the forfeited article to the monk who had come by it unlawfully, and had forfeited it, only to be given it back again. And there are three exceptions to their usual instruction that forfeiture and confession are to be made to an Order or to a group or to an individual monk. The same three

BD.2.xiv

¹ Thig.23.

Nissaggiyas, **Bu-NP.18**, **Bu-NP.19**, **Bu-NP.22** share both these irregularities.

Bu-NP.18 and **Bu-NP.19** are both concerned with gold and silver, called *jātarūparajata*¹ in the one case, and *rūpiya* in the other. The Old Commentary on these *Nissaggiyas* requires a monk who has picked up gold and silver (**Bu-NP.18**), or who has entered into various transactions in which they are used (**Bu-NP.19**), to make forfeiture in the midst of the Order, *saṅghama-jjhe*. It does not give the usual alternatives of forfeiting to a group or an individual. That these commodities may not be forfeited to either of these parties is precluded by the rule of **Bu-NP.18** itself, for this lays it down as an offence for a monk to have gold and silver in his possession. The *saṅgha* is more impersonal, and is, when need arises, a body of monks in their official character, with the functions of discharging legal and juridical business and of carrying out formal acts.

But although the *saṅgha* may receive the forfeited gold and silver, it may neither retain them nor return them to the monk who forfeited them. It must either hand them over to some lay person, asking him to bring medicines in exchange, or, failing this, the Order must appoint from among its number a “silver-remover,” *rūpiyachaddaka*, whose office it is to dispose of whatever mediums of exchange *rūpiya* and *jātarūparajata* denote.

Of the various objects with which the rules of the *Nissaggiyas* are concerned, gold and silver are the only ones which a monk might in no circumstances have in his possession. Clearly he had access to them, for his association with the laity was but little restricted.

Similarly **Bu-NP.22**, besides precluding forfeiture and confession to either a group or an individual, also debar the return of the forfeited article, here a bowl, to the monk who forfeited it. But he is to be given another bowl in its place. This is unique in the *Nissaggiyas*. It is also unique to find given in the rule itself the method of forfeiture. This is otherwise invariably and solely, found in the Old Commentary. Here the method of forfeiture enjoined in the rule appears again, though in more detailed form, in the Old Commentary.

The *sikkhāpada* of **Bu-NP.22**, after stating that a monk who, getting another new bowl in exchange for a bowl mended in less than five places,

¹ On these terms see below, **BD.2.100, n.2**.

incurs an offence, proceeds to say: “That bowl must be forfeited by that (offending) monk to a *bhikkhuparisā* (company, assembly, congregation of monks). And whatever is the last bowl (*pattapariyanta*) belonging to that company of monks, it should be given to that monk, with the words, ‘Monk, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks.’”

It is interesting to find that the new bowl got in exchange for the mended bowl is subject to forfeiture only to the Order. This suggests that bowls were regarded at some time as more especially communal property than were robes,¹ or the other objects in regard to which a monk might commit an offence involving forfeiture. Yet in **Bu-NP.21**, an extra bowl, if it had been used for more than ten days, might be forfeited either to an Order or to a group or to an individual. Nevertheless the injunction which occurs at the end of the *sikkhāpada* of **Bu-NP.22** reveals a closer concern for communal ownership and property than do the other *Nissaggiya sikkhāpadas*. In these others, although the Order, or a section of it, may receive the forfeited article, it also, with the exception of **Bu-NP.18** and **Bu-NP.19**, returns it, the community as a whole assuming no further responsibility.

At the end of **Bu-NP.21**, it is said that failure to give back a bowl that had been forfeited entails a *dukkāṭa* offence.² Yet in **Bu-NP.22** it appears that a bowl on being forfeited becomes an extra bowl for a company of monks and is absorbed into their stock of bowls. The result of an Order’s obtaining an additional bowl in this way is that all its members are liable to profit. For their bowls, on the accretion of this extra one, may all be shuffled round. But this is not to be done haphazard. The rule has given concise directions for the right procedure, and these are followed and expanded at some length by the Old Commentary.

There is a still further way in which **Bu-NP.22** is unique among the *Nissaggiyas*. It contains three stories instead of, as is normal, one, or, as in six cases, two. This means that a chain of three connected circumstances have arisen, each of which demands jurisdiction. The curious thing is, that

¹ On a monk’s death, his robes did not necessarily return to the Order. He could bequeath them to the monk who had nursed him or to a pupil. Moreover, robe-material might be presented to individual monks, if the laity so wished. See **Bu-NP.8**, **Bu-NP.9**, **Bu-NP.10**. ² Cf. end of **Bu-NP.1**, where same offence incurred by failure to give back a robe.

the first, story does not end with the formulation of a *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* offence, but with that of an offence of wrong-doing. This is to the effect that a monk must not ask for a bowl. But monks observed this precept too scrupulously. Lay people complained that, by receiving almsfood into their hands, they resembled members of other sects. So Gotama, it is said, made an “allowance” moderating the *dukkata* rule, and permitting monks to ask for a bowl when theirs were broken or destroyed. But because the six monks abused this privilege, the *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* rule was formulated.

I have dwelt on [Bu-NP.22](#) at some length, for I think that, even as there are some grounds for holding that [Bu-Ss.12](#) may represent some specially ancient fragment of the *Pātimokkha*,¹ so likewise may this *Nissaggiya*.

In the first place, the term *bhikkhuparisā*, because it merely indicates an assembly, a company of monks, may belong to those earlier days before Gotama's followers were fully organised into a *saṅgha*, bound by the same observances and obligations, the same rules and (formal) acts, and living in the same communion.

It is possible that, in such a context, *bhikkhu* did not mean all that at some time it came to mean. Secondly, the mention of this “company of monks” as the recipient body of a forfeited bowl may point to a time when communal ownership was more actual than nominal. Thirdly, the need for stating, in the *Nissaggiya Pācittiya* rule itself, that the article wrongfully acquired must be forfeited, suggests that this-rule antedates the other *Nissaggiyas*, and belongs to a time when forfeiture was new as a penalty, and when therefore the method of carrying it out had to be plainly stated. Fourthly, one might suppose that the first story in this *Nissaggiya* purports to be recounting unsuitable behaviour in an early follower of Gotama. For the early followers, it may be presumed, entering from a more urgent sense of religion, committed less serious offences than the later, and hence incurred lighter penalties.

The appointment of two officials is mentioned in the *Nissaggiyas*, that of silver-remover ([Bu-NP.18](#)) and that of assigner of bowls ([Bu-NP.22](#)). The duty of both is to deal with the results of offences, and not with the distribution of articles, such as robes and lodgings, lawfully acquired. Ap-

¹ See [BD.1.xxviiiif](#).

pointments of officials were not of one officer for the whole *saṅgha*, but of an officer for any of those lesser sections of it which, dwelling within one boundary or residence, were, to the not negligible confusion of later historians, also called *saṅgha*. Even so, we do not know whether each of these *saṅghas* always appointed every possible official, ready to function—and a not inconsiderable number are named throughout the Vinaya—or if only those were appointed when occasion demanded their service. Nor do we know whether an official, once appointed, held his post permanently or temporarily.

I think it fairly safe to presume the latter. Monks travelled a great deal on the one hand, and on the other had to spend the three or four months of the rains in one residence with other monks. Had two permanent office-bearers met, and a case within their orbit arisen, a ruling would have been necessary as to which one, such as the senior or the one first arrived, was to deal with the situation. But there is no record of any such event.

BD.2.xviii

It seems more likely, and the internal evidence, such as it is, points this way, that the authorised procedure for appointing the officials was prescribed as the need for this or that official was felt. Thus a similar appointment could be correctly made if and when future need arose. But if there was, for example, no occasion for a silver-remover or an assigner of bowls, which could only be because no monk had acquired gold and silver or a new bowl in exchange for one mended in less than five places, then there was no obligation to appoint a monk to fill either of these offices.

The procedure for the appointment of the officials is in each case much the same; and they have to be “agreed upon” by the entire Order affected. This well illustrates the democratic nature of the monastic institution. Two other “agreements of the monks,” *bhikkhusammuti*, are described in the *Nissaggiyas* (Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.14), and again the responsibility for making the required agreement is shown to be vested in the whole organism, and not in any one of its members.

Some English translations of Pali words and phrases appear to have become almost traditional by now, and hence attract little critical attention. Such a phrase is “*pattacīvaraṃ ādāya*,” “taking the bowl and robe.” It is the occurrence of this phrase in Bu-NP.5, together with the mention of various

sorts of robes, that has raised the question of *which* robe it is that is here referred to in the phrase.

Dialogues of the Buddha ii.162, n.1, describes the three usual robes of a monk as the inner one worn in the residence, the upper robe put on before a monk left the monastery and went out to a village, and the outer cloak carried, and put on near the outskirts of the village. If this is a correct interpretation—and it is the one generally accepted—the phrase *pubbaṅhasamayam nivāsetvā* would appear to mean, “having dressed in the morning in the upper robe.” This implies that the monk will already have put on his inner robe to wear in the residence, if indeed he had not slept in it, but later put on his upper robe with a view to going on his almsround. Again, the phrase *pattacīvaram ādāya*, which as a rule immediately follows this other one, would in effect mean, “taking the outer cloak and the bowl.” I think it possible however that if the *cīvara* of this phrase did at some time come to refer exclusively to the *saṅghāṭi*, the outer cloak, it may not always have done so. For it is hard to see the sense that such an interpretation could make in **Bu-NP.5**, as I hope to show. On the other hand, the occurrence of the phrase here may be due to some later editorial addition to the story.

BD.2.xix

The nun Uppalavaṇṇā is elsewhere in the *Vinaya*¹ the focus of an alteration in the rules on jungle-dwelling for nuns. Here too another episode in her life, as this is recorded in **Bu-NP.5**, is the centre round which turn some intricate questions with regard to robes.

According to this *Nissaggiya*, Uppalavaṇṇā, in the stereotyped phrase, “having dressed in the morning and taking her bowl and robe,” *pubbaṅhasamayam nivāsetvā pattacīvaram ādāya*, had gone to Sāvattihī for almsfood. She had then used her upper robe, *uttarāsaṅga*, to tie up some meat. She next gave her inner robe, *antaravāsaka*, to the monk Udāyin, although protesting that it was her last, her fifth robe, *idaṃ ca me antimam pañcimam cīvaram*. And finally it is said that on her return to the nunnery, the nuns receiving from her her bowl and robe, *pattacīvaram paṭiganhaṅṅiyo*, asked her where her inner robe was.

The question is, which of the five robes allowable to a nun did she set out “taking,” and which did the nuns “receive” from her when she came

¹ *Vin.3.35ff.* = *BD.1.53ff.*

back to the nunnery?

The five robes of a nun, mentioned also at [Vin.4.218](#), [Vin.4.282](#), are named at [Vin.2.272](#) as the three usual robes worn also by monks, with the addition of the vest or bodice, *saṃkacchika*, and the bathing-cloth, and it is said that these should be pointed out to women wishing to receive the *upasampadā*. At [Vin.4.345](#) it is laid down as an offence of expiation for a nun to enter a village without her bodice, that is without having this on under her inner robe. Buddhaghosa at [Vin-a.663](#) assumes that Uppalavaṇṇā had on her bodice, for he says, “dressed in (*nivattha*) her bodice, and showing only the palms of her hands ... she went away,” that is from Udāyin. We know that she had had her upper robe, and suspect that it was accounted for by the phrase, “having dressed in the morning.” Likewise, on account of the phrase, “taking her bowl and robe,” she should have had her outer cloak with her. But had she in fact had this, surely she would have put it on. Yet in the narrative of her meeting with Udāyin, there is no suggestion that she was either carrying it or wearing it.

Either therefore “having dressed in the morning” refers to putting on the *inner* robe, and “taking the bowl and robe” to the *upper* robe, and not to the *saṅghāṭi*, the outer cloak; or this latter phrase is some later interpolation.

Now at [Vin.1.298](#) it is a *dukkata* offence to enter a village wearing only the inner and the upper robes, that is without the outer cloak. This rule, be it noticed, was made in reference to monks, and I do not think that it applies to nuns.¹ For at [Vin.4.281](#) it is a *Pācittiya* offence for nuns, having laid aside the *cīvara*, here certainly the outer cloak, to go into the country for more than five days with only the inner and the upper robes. Therefore if, at the time to which [Bu-NP.5](#) purports to refer, a nun did *not* have to go into a village on her morning almsround taking her outer cloak, Uppalavaṇṇā may have “taken” merely her upper robe. She would then have returned to the nunnery dressed only in her bodice, as Buddhaghosa seems to imply.

¹ It is too facily said by some writers that the Vinaya for nuns is a mere copy of that for monks—e.g., H. KERN, *A Manual of Indian Buddhism*, p.86; though it is probable that the Pātimokkha of the nuns was “modelled on” that of the monks; Cf. E.J. THOMAS, *A History of Indian Thought*, 15, n.1; M. WINTERNITZ, *A History of Indian Literature* ii.24, speaking of it as “a similar code compiled later for the nuns”; MISS D. BHAGVAT, *Early Buddhist Jurisprudence*, p.18, as a “mere imitation of the former”—i.e., the Bhikkhu-Pātimokkha.

With the growing disparagement of nakedness in monks and nuns,¹ the robe the nuns “received” from her would hardly have been her bodice. Besides, this “receiving” of a bowl and robe from an incoming monk or nun came to be but a recognised, standardised act. It would thus appear possible that the discrepancy which exists may be attributable to a later interpolation of the phrase which denotes this act of respect done to a monk or nun on coming back to the residence.

If we allow that the phrase *pattacīvaraṃ ādāya*, of the beginning of the story, betrays neither the marks of interpolation nor of accredited meaning, but signifies taking the *upper* robe, then we are almost forced to see the phrase *pattacīvaraṃ paṭigaṇhantiyo*, towards the conclusion of the story, as some additional matter. For if the course of the story is carefully followed, it is impossible to identify these two *cīvara* the one with the other.

Thus an explanation of the discrepancy between whatever robes it was that these phrases are intended to signify is that this *Nissaggiya* has suffered some careless “editorial” gloss or glosses. The point itself may be small and of no particular importance. But every instance of perceptible “curling and combing”² of the texts must make us the more alive to the possibility of their patchwork nature, their composite “authorship,” to their gradual alterations and additions, and probably to their losses too.

Having taken an instance of the translation of a frequent phrase, whose latent reference has been perhaps too little questioned, and hence too easily regarded as uniformly specific, I turn now to a word, *santhata*, and the verb, *santharati* (= *saṃ + str*), of which it is the past participle. In this case it is owing to the comparative infrequency of these two words that their latent reference has been too little questioned on the one hand, but on the other not fully perceived to be specific.

In **Bu-NP.11–Bu-NP.15**, *santhata* occurs as a neuter noun,³ meaning a

¹ Cf. **Vin.1.292**, **Vin.1.293**, **Vin.1.305**; **Vin.4.278**; and below, **BD.2.45**, **BD.2.134**. ² A phrase I borrow from MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, “*Poems by Monks and Nuns*”, *Review of Religion*, January, 1940, p.129. ³ See e.g. **DN.ii.160**, **Snp.401**, **Snp.668**; also the stock-phrase, *dhamaṇi-santhata-gatta*, having the limbs strewn with veins. As a noun, *santhata* occurs only once elsewhere, **Vv.63,5**.

rug or mat.¹ Because there are other words for rug, mat, carpet, ground-covering, sheet and so on, the problem before us is to find the differentiating feature peculiar to the kind of rug called *santhata*, the particular characteristic in virtue of which it was so named. For neither the Old Commentary nor Buddhaghosa describes the finished article; they concentrate instead on the process of making it. The result of the process is what in the text of the introductory stories and the *sikkhāpadas* is called a *santhata*.

The Old Commentary is very terse, but, by exclusion, informative: *santhata* means, what comes to be made having spread, not woven, *santharivā kataṃ hoti avāyimaṃ*. Thus *santharivā* in this definition needs some word to be supplied as its object, such as one representing the material used in making the article by this process known as *santharati*. Buddhaghosa, at Vin-a.684, describes the technique of what the Old Commentary, in defining *santhata*, calls *santharivā*, by saying, “it is made having spread (*santharivā*) silk² filaments (*aṃsu*) one upon the other on a level piece of ground, having poured boiled rice (or corn) and so on over the silk filaments.”

This then is the kind of process meant by *santhata*, and it is the only one described. It seems that the basic material of which the article was being made was spread out in layers, in strata all running the same way, and not cross-wise so as to be woven, and that it was then somehow welded together by pouring boiling rice over it. The result of this operation was a *santhata*, a thing made by this process.

Childers defines the cognate noun, *santhāra*, as “layer, stratum”; and there are passages in the Vinaya and the Suttas³ where *santharati*, used largely in connection with preparing a council-hall, must mean to spread or to strew most probably in layers, by a spreading method, of layering. This, at all events, is the view held by the commentator⁴ who describes the arrangement of covering the ground with cow-dung, scents, coloured,

¹ *Pali-English Dictionary*, B.C. LAW, *A History of Pali Literature* i.53, “rug or mat”; E.J. THOMAS, *A History of Buddhist Thought*, p.19, “rug.” *Vinaya Texts* i.24 translates “rug or mat” and “rug”; HUBER, *Journal Asiatique*, 1913, p.497, “couverture”; VIDYABHUSANA, *So-sor-thar-pa*, p.20, “mat.” ² “Silk” is not essential to the argument. This part of the Commentary is referring to *Bu-NP.11*, where monks thought of making *santhata* mixed with silk. In *Bu-NP.12–Bu-NP.14* they were made of wool. ³ *Vin.1.227*; *DN.ii.84*, *DN.iii.208*; *Ud.8.6*; *MN.i.354*. ⁴ *MN-a.iii.18*; *Ud-a.409*.

mats, fleecy rugs, and skins of various animals, all one above (*upari*) the other. It is unfortunate that the commentator, in thus defining *santharivā*, more than once uses the word itself. In spite of this, the description is of inestimable help in arriving at a fuller understanding of what *santharati* implies.

If my hypothesis is correct, the cognate verb *attharati* (= *ā + str*) would denote the simpler act of spreading, covering, laying out, but not in layers, and as it were once only or one thing only, such as cloth (*Vin.1.254ff.*) or a bridge (*Ja.i.199*). It would then follow that *santharati*, when used with reference to spreading a couch or chair or mattress or stool,¹ must mean not simply the act of putting out the couch or chair unurnished, but converting it into something fit to sit on or lie on. This could be done by spreading on it or under it different coverings, in layers: the sheet, *pacuttharaṇa*, the ground-covering, *bhummattharaṇa*, for example. These coverings would in no way be held together as though woven, but would be spread one on top of the other.

For the translation of *santhata* in *Bu-NP.11-Bu-NP.15* I have chosen “rug” in preference to “mat,” because it seems desirable to convey the impression that a *santhata* was something that could both be sat on and also worn wrapped round the body. The Old Commentary on *Bu-NP.15* defines *purāṇa-santhata*, an old, used or soiled *santhata*, in exactly the same terms as it uses to define *purāṇa-cīvara*, an old, used or soiled robe. Of both it says that they mean, “dressed in it once, put on once,” using for this the words *nivāseti* and *pārupati*, which usually refer to the complete dressing in the monk’s three robes. Buddhaghosa defines these words, “dressed in” and “put on,” as “sat on” and “lain on” (*Vin-a.687*). Yet on the very same page he speaks of a *santhata* “counting as a fourth robe.”

BD.2.xxiv

But for Buddhaghosa apparently these two definitions are not impossible of reconciliation. For in his exegesis on *Bu-NP.4* he says (*Vin-a.660*) that a robe is called “old” (i.e., dressed in it once, put on once) if a monk lies on it, using it as a pillow. Thus a robe, meant to be worn, could also on occasion be used to lie on.

As the Vinaya itself provides no evidence as to what exactly *santhata*

¹ See below, *BD.2.238f.*

means, whether it is a rug or a mat, although it describes the process by which it is made, I have followed the commentator in regarding the article as something that could either be sat on or worn. “Rug” rather more accurately than “mat” seems to cover these two usages which, by the time of Buddhaghosa at any rate, appear to have grown into the meaning of *santhata*.

The *nisīdana-santhata* of **Bu-NP.15** is not a species of *santhata*, but of *nisīdana*, and is a piece of cloth to sit upon (*nisīdana*) made with the addition of part of an old *santhata*. A *nisīdana* was so called if it had a border.¹ But the reason why a border came to be allowed, together with its correct measurements, is given at **Vin.4.17of.**, and has nothing to do with the need to add part of a *santhata* to a *nisīdana*.

THE PĀCITTIYA GROUP (Nos. 1–60)

BD.2.xxv

A curious feature of the *Pācittiyas* is that the Old Commentary on these rules nowhere explains what is meant by *Pācittiya*, the offence which gives its name to this whole section. It is from the phrase *āpatti desetabbā*, occurring in the *Vibhaṅga* on each *Nissaggiya*, that we infer that *Pācittiya* is an offence to be confessed; and even as forfeiture and confession are to be made to an Order or to a group or to an individual, so we may conclude that the same holds good when the offence is one whose penalty is merely that of expiation, of confession unaccompanied by forfeiture.

By and large each *Pācittiya* is composed on the same general lines as the other classes of rules in the Sutta *Vibhaṅga*: introductory story, rule, sometimes another story, even more than one, with the amended version or versions of the rule, Old Commentary, other exegetical material, and a list of no offences against the rule. There are, as in the *Nissaggiyas*, irregularities and variations from this customary pattern. These cannot be analysed until the translation of the ninety-two *Pācittiyas* is complete, and even then it will be doubtful whether they will throw any light on “the comparative age of any different parts of the Pātimokkha.”²

¹ **Vin.3.232, Vin.4.123, Vin.4.171.** ² *Vinaya Texts* i.xiv.

One thing however we can do now, and it is not altogether unimportant. We can correct the misapprehension into which the editors of *Vinaya Texts* fell, and which I,¹ among others,² have hitherto followed too uncritically. For it is not quite the case that the Old Commentary is a “word for word commentary upon”³ each of these rules, although undoubtedly it is nearly so. Setting aside the occasions where words are defined by themselves, but nevertheless defined, there yet remain a few distinct but notable lapses and omissions, some words of a rule not being commented upon at all. There is no attempt in the Old Commentary to explain “water (that) contains life” (Bu-Pc.20), “monk arrived first” (Bu-Pc.16), or “in destruction of” (vegetable growth) (Bu-Pc.11), although in the last case the paragraph following the Old Commentary’s definition of “vegetable growth” leads us to suppose that “destruction” means cutting, breaking and cooking.

BD.2.xxvi

Sāvathī, again with a large majority, is said to be the locus of thirty-nine of these sixty *Pācittiya*s, Rājagaha of six, Kosambī of five, Vesālī and Āḷavī each of four, Kapilavatthu of two and Suṃsumāragiri of one. The total of sixty-one is accounted for by the fact that, in Bu-Pc.5, the first version of the rule is reputed to have been formulated when Gotama was at Āḷavī, and the second when he had moved on from there to Kosambī.

The critics, as a result of whose complaints *Pācittiya* rules for monks were made or revised, are thirty-five times shown to have been the “modest monks,” fifteen times “people,” *manussa*, to which must be added the criticism of a lay-woman (Bu-Pc.7, both stories), of a man (Bu-Pc.45), of a poor workman (Bu-Pc.33), of Mahānāma Sakka (Bu-Pc.47), and of hirelings of the king (Bu-Pc.58). Four times the nuns complain, once the *titthiyas*, once a brahmin, once *upāsakā*, lay-followers.

These last, also, upon one occasion (Bu-Pc.41) are recorded to have told Gotama how monks might avoid bringing discredit on themselves from members of other sects; he laid down a rule in accordance with their representations. Once King Pasenadi thought of a device by which Gotama might know that monks had been behaving indecorously (Bu-Pc.53). Five times, it appears, Gotama discovered by direct observation or by questioning that

¹ BD.1.xxxiii. ² S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, 91; M. WINTERNITZ, *A History of Indian Literature*, ii.24. ³ *Vinaya Texts* i.xv.

legislation was required. By a too fastidious adherence to a rule, it is on several occasions demonstrated to be unsatisfactory, and is revised.

BD.2.xxvii

Thus the total number of rules appearing in these *Pācittiyas* is greater than sixty. It is not uniformly the case, as in the *Nissaggiya* section, that when a rule is amended, it is amended once only. At least three of these sixty *Pācittiyas* provide evidence of a long struggle to get the rule right. In **Bu-Pc.32** the rule on a group-meal, *gaṇabhajana*, revised seven times, results finally in seven legalised exceptions being allowed to the offence, as it otherwise remains, of eating in a group. To the ruling on *paramparabhajana* (**Bu-Pc.33**), eating meals out of the turns in which they have been offered, four exceptions are sanctioned. Thirdly, six exceptions are made to the rule that a monk should not bathe at intervals of less than half a month (**Bu-Pc.57**).

A consideration of the reasons leading to the exceptions made to these, as to several other rules, reveals something of the care and vigilance needed for the smooth running of the Buddhist cenobium, impinging as it did on various elements and aspects of the society of the day. The laity were, on the one hand, not to be drained of their resources, on the other, not to be refused when they offered food, as this might result in wounding their spirit of generosity, in dashing their hope of merit, and in the loss to monks of the robe-material which the laity, at the right time of year, gave to members of the Orders with meals. Nor were the laity to be kept waiting. At least I think that that, as much as the discourtesy of refusing the offer, made to monks who were travelling, to “eat just here,” and which looks as if the lay-people were willing to provide the meal, is at the root of two exceptions, made at **Bu-Pc.33.5** and **Bu-Pc.33.6**. For there are various times in *Nissaggiya* and *Pācittiya* when lay-people are recorded to be annoyed with monks for keeping them waiting.

BD.2.xxviii

At **Bu-Pc.33.4** it is obvious that the assigning to another monk of a meal that is expected later is a device for overcoming the rudeness, otherwise involved, of refusing food that is actually being offered. Nor, so it emerges, is it polite to refuse an invitation given to a meal by a wanderer, a *paribbājaka-samāpanna*. A naked ascetic, *ājīvaka*, had, as is stated, on Bimbisāra’s advice, asked the monks to a meal with him, but they had refused (**Bu-Pc.32.8**).

Incidentally this story reveals the necessity for keeping the friendship of the kings, on whom the success of the Order largely depended. They did much to set the fashion in faith. I have mentioned Pasenadi's device for letting the lord know, but without himself speaking to him, that he had seen monks, *arahans* at that, sporting in the water. *Mallikā*, his queen, was of the opinion either that there was no rule against this, or that these monks did not know about it. Apparently her first surmise was right. The third mention of a king in these sixty *Pācittiya*s is again of Bimbisāra. Because monks, by bathing until after dark, kept him waiting his turn, for it appears that he did not wish to disturb them, a rule, severe compared with its cause, was formulated forbidding monks to bathe at intervals of less than half a month (*Bu-Pc.57*). But this proved deleterious to robes and lodgings. For in the hot weather, the fever weather, at a time of wind and rain, when making repairs or going on a journey, monks lay down to rest with their limbs damp from rain or sweat. And the restriction on bathing was uncomfortable for those who were ill. This is a rule whose various adjustments are the direct outcome of a tropical climate.

I think that the growing needs of the monks, as expressed for example in the exceptions to *Bu-Pc.57*, and also in the acquisition of more and more accessories, recounted principally in the *Mahāvagga*, does not necessarily indicate soft-living and greed on their part, but a desire to keep what they had properly and cleanly, to use it as efficiently as possible, and to keep themselves in a good state of health, for this was regarded as an essential basis for leading the higher life. Four great, perpetual and destructive enemies against which man has to fight in India are the heat of the sun, the damp of the rains, the strength of the winds blowing up dust and dirt, and the persistent ravages of insects. When the Vinaya has been exhaustively studied, I believe it may as often as not be found that the desire and its sanction to acquire various objects in order to preserve others, or to lessen by making exceptions the constraint of some rules, will prove to be attributable to one or other of these forces of nature.

Illness, though not gone into in detail, is however kept in mind by the constant allusion to provisions made for the comfort of ill monks. Such provisions are usually contained in a *sikkhāpada*, or an *anujānāmi*, or both.

The permission to bathe more often than once a fortnight is a case in point. Again, a monk, if ill, is allowed to eat more than one meal in succession at a public rest-house (Bu-Pc.31), to kindle a fire for warming himself (Bu-Pc.56), and a nun who is ill may receive exhortation from a monk in the nunnery instead of going to the monk's quarters (Bu-Pc.23).

Of these sixty *Pācittiya* rules for monks, fifteen are devoted to rules for eating, Bu-Pc.29, Bu-Pc.31–Bu-Pc.43, Bu-Pc.46. None occur in Bu-Pc.61–Bu-Pc.92. Since therefore all the *Pācittiya* ordinances falling under this head are contained in this volume, it is possible to allude to various points arising from them here; I have already drawn attention to some. Rules concerned with the exhortation of nuns are arranged exclusively in Bu-Pc.21–Bu-Pc.24, but as I have discussed these elsewhere,¹ I shall not do so again now. Rules regarding the army and, to all intents and purposes, robes come only within this volume. Other rules cannot be so profitably discussed until the *Pācittiya* translation is completed.

In these rules, which cannot always be fully understood unless read in conjunction alike with their introductory stories, the Old Commentary and the *anāpatti* clauses, much diverse and interesting material comes to light. It would be a long and delicate business to investigate all the ramifications, and to connect these with those other parts of the Vinaya to which they sometimes seem to refer. Merely to take two random examples from Bu-Pc.47. For understanding the definition of “time of giving robes” (= Bu-Pc.32), acquaintance with, for example, Kd.7 is necessary. Again the fact that there is “no offence” if a monk is going to the nuns' quarters presupposes at least a knowledge of the *Pācittiyas* concerned with the exhortation of nuns.

The rules on eating are important for monks, for taking nothing but food given in alms involved a three-fold maintenance of a correct attitude: towards the laity, towards members of other sects, and towards fellow monks. The same applies to robes, where also a monk's behaviour towards a nun has to be taken into account. It might indeed be said that a monk's attitude towards eating and robes epitomises his whole attitude towards the society of the day.

¹ *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.126ff.

The *Pācittiyas* on meals and eating would provide material for an extensive essay. I have already referred to the group-meal and the out-of-turn meal,¹ that is to two ways in which, leaving aside the exceptions, a meal might not be eaten. Here I shall do no more than note down some of the more outstanding words for various kinds of meals, that is for classes of food named. Notes will be found appended to these words where they appear in the text.

1. The five kinds of meals, *pañca bhojanāni*, given in the Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.35** as rice-gruel, food made with flour, barley, fish, meat, and mentioned in the *anāpatti* clauses of **Bu-Pc.29**, **Bu-Pc.31–Bu-Pc.33**, are used in the Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.35** to define “soft food,” *bhojaniya*.
2. “Solid food” is defined by exclusion. In **Bu-Pc.35** it is everything except the five soft foods and food that may be eaten during a watch of the night, during seven days and during life. These last three categories seem to refer solely to medicines. In **Bu-Pc.41** solid food is everything but the five soft foods and water for cleansing the teeth.
3. Five other classes of food are given in the *anāpatti* clauses of **Bu-Pc.32**, **Bu-Pc.33**, dependent on how and when given: the regular supply of food, that allowed by ticket, that given on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon, on an observance day, and on the day after this.
4. Comparing the Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.35** and **Bu-Pc.42**, it appears that *yāgu*, conjei, ranks neither as a solid food nor as a soft food.
5. In **Bu-Pc.39** the five standard medicines, and meat and fish (two of the soft foods) with milk and curds are called “sumptuous foods,” *pañītabhojanāni*.
6. Solid food or soft food that is not left over, *anatiritta*, and solid or soft food that is left over, *atiritta*, are mentioned in **Bu-Pc.35**.

BD.2.xxxi

There is nothing very special to say about the *Pācittiya* rules for robes. These receive a large share of legislation in the *Nissaggiyas*, and are given comparatively scant attention in the *Pācittiyas*. Their rules constitute two small groups: **Bu-Pc.25**, **Bu-Pc.26**, **Bu-Pc.58–Bu-Pc.60**; again, but not in this

¹ Above, **BD.2.xxvii**.

volume, **Bu-Pc.79** and **Bu-Pc.92**.

A monk incurs an offence of expiation if he gives a robe to a nun who is not a relation, except in exchange (**Bu-Pc.25** and *cf.* **Bu-NP.5**). This rule was the outcome of generosity on a monk's part, not of greed. The first draft had to be revised because nuns were affronted that monks would not even exchange robes with them. Again, an offence is incurred:

1. if a monk sews a robe for a nun who is not a relation (**Bu-Pc.26**)—the result of Udāyin's obscene design on a nun's robe;
2. if he does not use one of the three prescribed modes of disfiguring a new robe, apparently so as to be able to recognise it (**Bu-Pc.58**, and whose *anāpatti* clauses should be read in conjunction with **Vin.1.254**, **Vin.1.255**);
3. if he uses a robe after having assigned it to a member of any of the five classes of his co-religionists (**Bu-Pc.59**), for clearly these must be able to rely on an assignment; and
4. if he hides a robe or a bowl or various other specified requisites belonging to another monk (**Bu-Pc.60**).

BD.2.xxxii

Bu-Pc.81 should be compared with **Bu-Pc.59**. **Bu-Pc.92** declares it an offence for a monk to have a robe made, up to the measure of a Sugata's robe, or larger. It will be noticed that **Bu-Pc.25** and **Bu-Pc.59** provide evidence that a monk had power to dispose of a robe in his possession, either by exchange or assignment, a point which wars against the view that the Order was the owner of the robes, even after they had been allotted or assigned to individual monks.

A set of three *Pācittiya* rules (**Bu-Pc.48–Bu-Pc.50**) came to be laid down for the conduct to be observed by monks in regard to an army. There is no blinking of facts, no pretence of ignoring the existence of armies as part of the structure of worldly life, either here or in various Sutta passages. Moreover, from the many military similes used to describe a man's (*puggala*, as at **AN.iii.91ff.**) or a monk's (as at **AN.i.184**, **AN.ii.116**, **AN.ii.170**, **AN.ii.202**) successful mental purification and victorious spiritual battles, it is clear that fighting by kings, chieftains and soldiers, though never frankly condoned as in the *Gītā*, was yet on the whole not roundly censured. Two Sutta

passages should however be specially remarked, the one in the *Saṃyutta*,¹ depicting the utter futility of war, for it settles nothing, does not stop the deed from rolling on; the other in the *Dhammapada*,² violently contrasting the use of force with the exercise of *dhamma*. *Dhamma*—conscience, duty, the moral “ought,” the disciplinary rules, the body of teaching, and it has meant all of these—is arrayed against brute force. There is no doubt as to which is found the more fitting and the more admirable.

Even had not the intentional taking of life ranked as a *Pārājika* offence, there was yet the moral *sīla*, or principle, binding a monk to refrain from on-slaught on creatures, and binding the laity too, but only on the fortnightly *uposatha* days. Thus, clearly, fighting by monks was condemned, and Buddhist monks could not become soldiers. In this respect they differ widely from the Western monk of the Middle Ages, who saw nothing incongruous in taking up arms.

BD.2.xxxiii

Further, as these *Pācittiyas* show, a monk's dealings with an army were, though not forbidden outright, reduced to the minimum. For, contrary to the view sometimes put forward that Gotama and his followers were breakers of homes, it is apparent here as elsewhere in the canon that his relations were by no means inaccessible to a man once he had turned monk.

In *Bu-Pc.48*, a monk is allowed to go and see an army fighting, if there is sufficient reason. This exception is a generalisation from the particular instance of a monk's wish to visit a sick relation who was in the army. But, having gone to the army, a monk is not to stay there for more than three nights (*Bu-Pc.49*), nor while there to witness manoeuvres: sham fights, troops in array, the massing of the army, reviews (*Bu-Pc.50*). This is a group where the later “rule refers to the one immediately preceding it.”³

In all of these manoeuvres the four “wings” of an army might participate: the elephants each requiring twelve men, the horses each with three men, the chariots each with four men, the infantry with (bows and) arrows.

In the *Jātakas* there is not infrequent reference to this fourfold composition of an army. But that it should be set down in considerable detail in the Old Commentary may be ascribed to the determination that, given lucid explanations, the monks should be in no doubt as to what was an army or

¹ SN.i.85. ² Dhp.256, Dhp.257. ³ Vin.1.xvii.

part of one.

In each of these three monastic rules connected with an army, it is recorded that the laity, apparently a little stung by jealousy, complain of the monks' conduct. They realise that it is because of their own poor acquirement (*alābha dulladdham* of good deeds) in the past that, in the present, they are brought into contact with fighting forces. The implication seems to be that for a monk this should not be necessary or inevitable: being a monk he should be beyond the desire to witness fighting, real or sham, both because his *karma* in this respect should be worn away, and for fear lest he should engender a new bad *karma* for the future. In general terms it may be said that there is no offence if a monk sees an army or a conflict through no fault of his own, and not having gone of set purpose to see either the one or the other.

BD.xxxiv

In their Introduction to *Vinaya Texts*¹ Rhys Davids and Oldenberg have drawn attention to a curious irregularity in the method of framing some of the *Pācittiya* rules. In referring to the *Pācittiyas* and the apparent "effort to arrange the offences in groups (*vagga*) of ten," they raise the question of the three cases in which "we find regulations formulated with the utmost brevity (the offences being merely expressed by a locative case dependent upon *Pācittiyam*) at the commencement of such a *vagga*." And they go on to say, "It seems to us, at least in the present state of our knowledge, quite impossible to draw any conclusions from such peculiarities as to the comparative age of any different parts of the *Pātimokkha*." Now since all the *Pācittiyas* referred to fall within this volume, I will attempt to discuss them, but without necessarily, since "the present state of our knowledge" is still defective, trying to arrive at any conclusion.²

They are **Bu-Pc.1–Bu-Pc.3**, **Bu-Pc.11–Bu-Pc.13**, **Bu-Pc.51–Bu-Pc.54**. Any attempt to trace a cause for the peculiar way in which the rule in each of these *Pācittiyas* is framed must depend to some extent upon the nature of the material found within these same *Pācittiyas*. Nothing as yet can be suggested as to why they stand at the beginning of their respective

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.xiv. ² There are also the seven concluding *Pācittiyas*, **Bu-Pc.86–Bu-Pc.92**, where the offence of expiation involves, not *Nissaggiya*, forfeiture, but some other penalty in respect of an article made of the wrong material or to the wrong measure.

vaggas. I would only point out, first, that in the *Bhikkhunī-Vibhaṅga* there is one *Pācittiya*, **Bu-Pc.4**, which is of this same brief type, but it does not head a *vagga*; and secondly, that the *Bhikkhu-Pācittiyas* **Bu-Pc.72**, **Bu-Pc.73**, although not of the brief type yet conform to it to the extent that, after some introductory material included in the rule and leading up to the formulation of the offence, the offence itself is expressed by a locative case dependent on *Pācittiyam*. These two rules do not head their division, and its first rule is framed in the normal manner.

BD.2.xxxv

Leaving *Pācittiyas* **Bu-Pc.72**, **Bu-Pc.73** and *Bhikkhunī-Pācittiya* **Bi-Pc.4** to one side, I will now summarise such outstanding features as are evinced by the three groups of rules which are “formulated with the utmost brevity,” together with their attendant material.

1. In **Bu-Pc.1**, **Bu-Pc.2**, **Bu-Pc.3** (repeating **Bu-Pc.2**), **Bu-Pc.11**, **Bu-Pc.54**, not only is the key-word or words (sometimes there are two) of the rule defined, but also the words used in such a definition are themselves defined. The definition of these words I believe not to belong to the original Old Commentary, but to a revised version of it. This is not however a point peculiar to these five *Pācittiyas*; for **Bu-Pj.4** and **Bu-Pc.10** also define the words used in the definition of the words of the rule. To my mind such supplementary definitions portray a synthesis of thought, based on knowledge, which is far from primitive or tentative. Again, the very material of the rule of **Bu-Pc.11**, that it is an offence to destroy vegetable growth, may be compared with that of **Bu-Pc.10** and **Bu-Pc.20**, where it is an offence to dig the soil or to sprinkle water containing life. The sole purpose of all these three *Pācittiyas* is to preserve from harm creatures that are one-facultied. In this respect then **Bu-Pc.11** is not unique or peculiar. It may in addition be suitably compared with **Bu-Pc.10**, as much for the similarity of guiding principle as for the defining of words used in definition. The words used to define the definitions of the key-word of **Bu-Pc.2** and **Bu-Pc.3** do not seem wholly contrived for monastic purposes. Why should “crafts,” for example, be classified as “high and low” and then catalogued?

It was impossible for monks to follow any of the crafts mentioned.

BD.2.xxxvi

Such painstaking analysis of all the ten ways in which “insulting speech” and “slander” might be made seems to point to later days when classification and analysis had come to be in vogue.

2. I suppose that in the introductory story of **Bu-Pc.2**, the group of six monks when they jeered at the well-behaved monks about five out of ten things—birth, name, clan, work, craft—must have had in mind the social position and the occupation held by these while they were still “in the world.” For all such considerations should count as nothing once a man had become a monk. The offence was summarised as one of “insulting speech,” and not as one of probing into matters whose importance to monks should be infinitesimal. Nor can one say of Gotama’s Order that, as time went on, such considerations came to be of account, or that the richer and better-born entrants came to hold the more influential positions. This has never been the case. The influence of the members has always depended on their mental and spiritual attainments alone, or on some gift of character. This backward view, if such it is meant to be, into a monk’s past is unique in the *Pācittiya*s. But yet I cannot see that it affords any data for the comparative age of this *Pācittiya*.
3. **Bu-Pc.2** has a reference to *lekhā*. If this is writing, which, partly owing to the paucity of references alike to it and to writing-materials, is assumed to be an art of later discovery, then a clue is at once established for a comparatively late date of this *Pācittiya*, or at any rate of a portion of it; or to writing being less a “later discovery” than is hitherto assumed.
4. **Bu-Pc.1** contains a long and sophisticated analysis of the way in which an offence of expiation is incurred by the three and the seven ways of telling a conscious lie. This may be compared with the beginning of a similar analysis in **Bu-Pj.4**¹ of the incurment of an offence involving defeat by the three and the seven ways of telling a conscious lie. The passage in **Bu-Pj.4** as it goes on is paralleled by a passage in **Bu-Pc.8**. In both **Bu-Pj.4** on the one hand and **Bu-Pc.1** and **Bu-Pc.8** on the other, this analysis with its very different style and terminology consorts

BD.2.xxxvii

¹ *Vin.3.93ff.* = *BD.1.162ff.*

- strangely with the more archaic language and the more direct modes of thought that we usually associate with the Vinaya.
5. **Bu-Pc.2** and **Bu-Pc.51** contain material belonging to Jātaka stories—but so does **Bu-Pc.5**.
 6. As already noted, there is the failure of the Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.11** to explain one of the two key-words of the rule: “in destruction of,” *pātabyatāya*.
 7. **Bu-Pc.12**, with its mention in the introductory story of Channa, who, having indulged in bad habits, *anācāraṃ ācaritvā*, was being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, to my mind brings the whole question of monastic disciplinary regulation a step later in time. For it points to a period when formal proceedings had been constituted, when faults were examined, not merely expiated by confession, and when there was an apparatus for dealing with, among many other transgressions, questions of failure in habit or conduct, *ācāravipatti*. These are set out in detail in **Kd.14**. This *Pācittiya*, in striking contrast to **Bu-Ss.12**, where again the same fault is imputed to Channa, seems to have been compiled in full cognisance of these later legal proceedings.
 8. **Bu-Pc.13** appears to be recording an event later in time than that recorded in **Bu-Ss.8**. In this latter, Dabba the Mallian is appointed, so it is said, to the double office of assigning lodgings and distributing meals. Between this and the compilation of the *Pācittiya* some time must have elapsed, since in the *Pācittiya* he is being accused of acting out of favouritism. The Old Commentary mentions a number of offices tenable by members of the Order, showing that it knew of the creation of these. It does not mention all. So far we know little of the chronology of these offices, but it is unlikely that they were formed during the earliest days of the Sakyan venture.
 9. Now, in **Bu-Pj.3**, the gist of the offence lies in intentionally depriving a person of life. The case is cited, in the stories given *after* the formulation of the rule, of one monk tickling another, who laughed so much that he died. It is here not said openly that this constitutes an offence, merely that it is not one involving defeat, because his

death was not caused intentionally. Either some need to clarify the nature of this offence must have grown up, for in **Bu-Pc.52** the same story is recounted and entails an offence of expiation; or the nature of the offence was decided contemporaneously with the *Pārājika* story, but, being *Pācittiya*, was reserved for the *Pācittiya* group of rules and offences. If this is the case here, it is otherwise with **Bu-Pj.2**. For this now and again states that an offence of deliberate lying may not be such as to constitute an offence of defeat, although it may be one involving expiation (**Vin.3.59**, **Vin.3.66**).

10. **Bu-Pc.53** seems to offer little data as to its comparative age. It is unusual, however, in that no verbal reports of unsuitable behaviour are recorded to reach the lord. The framing of the rule is made to depend upon Pasenadi's belief that his "device" will arouse the required suspicions in Gotama's mind.
11. The rule framed in **Bu-Pc.54**, that "in disrespect there is an offence of expiation," is not unique. Three times a similar *Pācittiya* offence is laid down at **Vin.1.176**, in connection with the elaborate arrangements made there for holding the Pavarana ceremony. Such *Pācittiyas* are therefore part and parcel of large-scale administration and regulation, such as could only be undertaken when the Order was comparatively advanced in age and stability. But who can say whether the rule at **Bu-Pc.54** is based on these other *anādariye pācittiyas*, or they on it, or whether they are independent? All one can say is that it is not at all necessary to suppose that the bad habits that again Channa is recorded to have indulged in had anything to do with preparations for the Pavāraṇā.

BD.2.xxxix

For a long list of "bad habits," quite unconnected with this, is given at **Bu-Ss.13**.

If the evidence of the *Pācittiyas* which are briefly stated and stand at the head of three only out of the eight divisions of which the *Pācittiya* section is composed, appears to be on the side of their comparative lateness, it must be not forgotten that the remaining *Pācittiyas* have never been subjected to any kind of critical examination. When this has been undertaken, it may be found that some of them also, although their rules are framed in the

more normal manner, show similar or different signs of comparatively late construction. What I have done here is no more than to indicate possible lines which historical inquiry into the comparative age of different parts of the Vinaya might follow.

In discussing these “brief” *Pācittiyas*, I have had occasion to mention the overlapping of *Pārājika* and *Pācittiya* material. I have cited *Bu-Pj.4* and *Bu-Pc.8*, and these are also seen to work in with one another in a still further fashion. In the former it is an offence involving defeat for a monk, out of undue estimate for himself, to boast that he has attained some state of “further-men,” when this is not a fact, *abhūta*. In the latter it is an offence of expiation for a monk to speak of attaining such a state to anyone not ordained, even though it be a fact, *bhūta*. In both cases the introductory story is identical up to this point, although *Bu-Pj.4*, before the final draft of the rule, adds material not appearing in *Bu-Pc.8*. This same long story with the two endings may in fact be the record of no more than one event, some monks averring that they had told a lie, others maintaining that they had told the truth. If so, *Bu-Pj.4* and *Bu-Pc.8* would belong to precisely the same date, suggesting that the two cases were legislated for simultaneously, although the two findings were relegated to different but appropriate parts of the *Pātimokkha*.

Judging by the great length of *Bu-Pj.4*, and the number of cases adduced and legislated for, the topic was one that was at some time of immense importance.¹ It is not therefore surprising that it figures also in the *Pācittiya* section. It suggests, as does the substance of no other rules at all, the spiritual value attached to a man becoming something more and greater than he was before.

BD.2.xl

There are still further occasions when the contents of this volume refer to different portions of the Vinaya or are referred to by it. Under the latter heading come also certain allusions which are generally wrapped up in the phrase, *yathādhammo kāretabbo*, he should be dealt with according to the rule—that is, according to some *Nissaggiya* or *Pācittiya* rule. This indicates that such a rule had been formulated before that portion of the Vinaya referring to it had been compiled. I have drawn attention, in the notes, to

¹ *BD.1.xxivf.*

any references that I have found in the contents of this volume to or from other parts of the Vinaya.

Another *Pācittiya* which betrays the marks of some later accretion is **Bu-Pc.29**. In it there is a list of eleven persons who, for a householder, were elders, *therā*, and whom he invited to a meal. It is an interesting list. It contains the names of nine out of the ten to twelve men whom Mrs. Rhys Davids considers were at the beginning of his ministry “clustering about the Leader in the Vinaya.”¹ Two therefore look like intruders into this early company: Upāli, “the Vinaya expert”²—but expert only on the assumption that by his day the discipline had had time to grow into some coherent form; and Rahula, the founder’s son. He was probably not among his father’s followers from the very beginning of his teaching, and was never a particularly satisfactory monk, although several earnest discourses were addressed to him.³

BD.2.xli

Members of Other Sects—This volume contains some interesting details about the *titthiyas*, especially, as is natural, regarding ways in which their life and that of the Sakyā followers might overlap.

1. In **Bu-NP.22**, people, jumping from the particular to the general, complained that the recluses, sons of the Sakyāns, went about for alms-food to be put into their hands, like members of other sects.
2. In **Bu-NP.6**, monks coming “naked as they were” to Sāvattihī were mistaken by their co-religionists for *ājīvaka*, Naked Ascetics.⁴
3. In **Bu-Pc.1**, Hatthaka, a monk, having been outwitted in an argument by members of other sects, *titthiyas*, resorted to unworthy methods in order to confound them. The *titthiyas* complained, and not in vain, for the modest monks heard them and asked Hatthaka if there was truth in what they had been saying. He seems to have been very cross, saying that somehow the *titthiyas* should be worsted. But the modest monks were not impressed by this declaration, and told the incident to the lord. The result was what is now the first *Pācittiya* rule. This story merely confirms what is well known: that monks and *titthiyas*

¹ *Sakya*, p.127. For further information on these early followers see *Gotama the Man*, Ch.6, and *Sakya*, Ch.7. ² *Sakya*, p.352. ³ MN 61, MN 62, MN 147. ⁴ Literally, “Men of the Livelihood”, *Buddhist India*, p.143.

debated together, and that, whatever individual monks might do or think, the considered opinion of the *saṅgha* was that *titthiyas* should not be treated contemptuously.

4. **Bu-Pc.32.8** supplies various items of interest. To begin with there is the *ājīvaka* who wanted to provide “a meal for all heretics,” *sabbapasaṅḍika-bhatta*. This shows that he thought of those who were not of his sect, although they were following a life of religion, as “heretics”; at the same time he wished to honour them by entertaining them. In accordance with this view, or so it seems, the *ājīvaka* was advised by King Bimbisāra, a relation of his, first of all to invite Gotama and his monks. He sent a messenger to the monks, but they refused the invitation, for at that time a group-meal of this nature had not been allowed. The naked ascetic then approached Gotama, whom he greeted in an amicable and friendly way, and argued that one who is gone forth, *pabbajita*, is fit or worthy, *arahati*, to accept the alms of another who is gone forth. Gotama then, as recorded, accepted, and allowed the monks to eat a group-meal at the meal-time of recluses, *samaṇa-bhatta-samaya*. Here, as not infrequently, the terms of the rule are wider than the terms used in the story leading up to its formulation. *Samaṇa* was a word of very general application, covering *ājīvaka*, as well as members of all other diverse and “heretical” sects. In the Old Commentary, *samaṇa* is defined as *paribbājaka-samāpanna*, literally one who has attained to being a wanderer. *Paribbājaka*¹ was, like *samaṇa*, a word of tremendous range, although it did not, for members of Gotama’s Order themselves, include “monk” or “nun.” For,
 5. In **Bu-Pc.41** (= **Vin.4.285**, and cf. **Vin.4.224**), wanderer and female wanderer are, taking their definitions in conjunction, explained as, “setting aside monk and novice, nun, female probationer and female novice, whoever (else) has attained to being a (male or female) wanderer.” It is only regrettable that the definition contains the word to be defined. In this portion of the Old Commentary too, Naked Ascetic,

BD.2.xiii

¹ The account of *paribbājaka* at *Buddhist India*, p.141, has not been superseded.

here and also in the rule, called *acelaka*,¹ although he figured in the story as an *ājīvaka*, is defined as “whoever, naked, has attained to being a wanderer.” This definition should be compared with that of *samaṇa* in **Bu-Pc.32**.

BD.2.xliii

6. **Bu-Pc.41** further tells that a monk gave almsfood, at a distribution of food, to an *ājīvaka*. All that the *ājīvaka* seems to have done by way of thanks was to tell his fellow sectarians that the food was obtained by him from a *muṇḍagahapatika* belonging to Gotama, the recluse, *samaṇa*. This curious term, possibly unique to this context, is clearly one of contempt. It means literally “little shaven householder” and would seem to imply that the *ājīvakas* despised the monks for their less austere way of living, and were not above having a sly dig at their more indulgent tendencies.

People who heard what the *ājīvaka* had said are recorded to advise the lord not to let monks, whom they call *ayya*, masters, give with their own hands to *titthiyas*, since these want to bring discredit on the Buddha, the *dhamma* and the Order.

Three points emerge from this episode with the lay-people. First, that *ājīvakas* did not live, any more than did monks, either in seclusion from the “world” or from members of other sects, including Gotama’s. Secondly, that the lay-people appear to have come to the conclusion that their representations to the lord must include more than the one sect of the *ājīvakas*, and they therefore say *titthiyas*, a term of broader application. Thirdly, that the odd intrusion of the later “triad of Buddhism” may suggest that this passage belongs to a comparatively late date, but that then, with the increasing popularity of Gotama’s Order, relations between Sakyan monks and followers of other sects were

¹ He who is without a cloth, *cela*. JACOBI, *Jaina Sūtras*, ii.xxx-xxxI, says that “the Buddhists denote by *Acelaka* the followers of Makkhali Gosāla and his two predecessors, Kisa Samkicca and Nanda Vaccha, and have preserved an account of their religious practices in the MN 36.” Jacobi draws attention to the identity of the rules for the *acelakas* and the Jains. Gosāla’s views are set forth at DN.i.53. *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.71, n.1, calls his followers *ājīvaka*. B.M. BARUA, *The Ājīvakas*, Pt.1, p.13, summarises the position thus: “Both the Jaina and Buddhist records agree in speaking of Gosāla as a leader of the Ājivaka sect... They also agree in calling the Ājīvakas naked ascetics (*acelakas*).”

becoming somewhat strained.

This *Pācittiya*, rich in its references to members of other sects, contains yet one more. Gotama is reputed to tell Ānanda to give what surplus there is of the Order's solid food to "those who eat scraps," broken meats, or remains of food, *vighāsāda*. Ānanda, always showing a touching regard for women, chose as the recipients some female wanderers, *paribbājikā*. Here then is contributory evidence that wanderers were eaters of scraps, of food not otherwise wanted, and that they did not object to receiving this from Gotama's religious followers.

7. In **Bu-NP.20** a wanderer, *paribbājaka*, is recorded to barter his costly cloth for Upananda's outer cloak, but when he wanted to exchange the articles again Upananda refused. The wanderer complained, basing his argument on the life of the world: because householders give out of compassion to another householder, should not one who has gone forth, *pabbajita*, give to one who has gone forth? The resemblance to the *ājivaka*'s reasoning in **Bu-Pc.32.8** cited above is quite remarkable. Upananda is rebuked both by other monks and by Gotama for bartering with a wanderer. The wanderer's park or monastery, *ārāma*, is mentioned.¹

BD.2.xliv

Sakyaputta—In this volume there are two monks who have appended to their name the epithet Sakyaputta. These are Upananda Sakyaputta, to whom there are frequent references—e.g., **Bu-NP.6**, **Bu-NP.8–Bu-NP.10**, **Bu-NP.18**, **Bu-NP.20**, **Bu-NP.25**, **Bu-NP.27**, **Bu-Pc.9**, **Bu-Pc.42–Bu-Pc.46**, **Bu-Pc.59**, and Hatthaka Sakyaputta, **Bu-Pc.1**. This epithet, which I have translated as "son of the Sakyans," was presumably given to distinguish these men from others bearing the same name. Neither Upananda nor Hatthaka was an ornament to the Order, and thus the epithet will not have been conferred in recognition of any special ability on his part. It indicated primarily that they were Sakyans, born into the Sakyan clan or tribe, *gotta*. But it did more than this. It implied, not only that the men so described were of Sakyan descent and themselves Sakyans, but that they were also members of the religious sect known by its contemporaries as the Sakyaputta sect, its adherents being called *sakyaputtiyas*.

¹ See *Buddhist India*, p.142.

For Sakyans who were not monks are called, when there was need to differentiate them from others of the same name, not Sakyaputta, but Sakka. A good example is Mahānāma Sakka (Bu-Pc.47 and, e.g., AN.i.26, AN.i.276), a brother of Anuruddha and cousin of Gotama. There does not seem to have been any other notable Anuruddha contemporary with this brother of Mahānāma's, and so there was no occasion to append Sakka to his name. There were however other Mahānāmas,¹ hence the suffix Sakka for the one of Sakyan descent.

BD.2.xlv

I hold it essential to translate the *putta* in Sakyaputta. Yet in saying that a Sakyan who had become a follower of Gotama's was called Sakyaputta if his own name was not sufficiently distinctive, I do not in the least wish to suggest anything mystical or comparable to the Hindu "twice born." No more is meant than the recording of the case of a Sakyan who had become a follower of the Sakyaputta sect, or, after the Order had been fully constituted, a monk in Gotama's Order. In this way, the force of *putta* in *Sakyaputta* is double-edged. It indicates at one and the same time a man's birth as Sakyan and his calling as religious. Moreover, the fact is emphasised that the sectarian or monastic body which he has entered is one founded by his kinsman, a member of his own clan, Gotama Sakyaputta, as he is called by members of other sects,² and by Assaji, recently become a follower.³

In its beginnings, the sect founded by Gotama, and which afterwards turned into an "Order,"⁴ was largely entered and maintained by his relations. I therefore think it advisable, in order to keep before the mind the Sakyan and not merely Gotamic influences on the origin of the monastic institution, to translate the Sakya part of the compound *Sakyaputta* as "of the Sakyans," using the plural. The same will apply to *Sakyaputtiyo*, "sons of the Sakyans," a name frequently given to Gotama's followers, whether they were of the Sakyan clan or not. By their calling, and not on account of their birth, these had become "sons" of the Sakyan leader, Sakyamuni,⁵

BD.2.xlvi

¹ See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* ² E.g., Vin.3.1. ³ Vin.1.41. Assaji is recorded to refer to Gotama as *mahāsamaṇo Sakyaputto Sakyakulā pabbajito*, the great recluse, the son of the Sakyans, gone forth from a Sakyan family. ⁴ See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, Ch.3. ⁵ E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.1, n.1, "Śākyamuni, 'the sage of the Śākyas'"; *A History of Buddhist Thought*, p.150, "Śākyamuni, 'the recluse of the Śākyas'"; S. RADHAKRISHNAN, *Indian Philosophy*, i.351, "Śākyamuni, the sage of the Śākyas."

and of his Sakyān co-workers and co-founders.¹ There is a commentarial support for taking the *Sakya* of the compound as a plural. For Vin-a.735 defines *Sakyaputta* as *sakyānaṃ putto*, “son of the Sakyāns,” *sakyānaṃ* being a genitive plural.

It is perhaps not always necessary, although I hold it to be correct, to insert “son,” *putta*, in translations of various compounds, such as *devaputta* (e.g., AN.i.278, Hatthaka *devaputta*) and Mallaputta (e.g., Dabba Mallaputta, Vin.3.158, Vin.4.37), it being sufficient to read merely a, or the, *deva*, and a, or the, Mallian.

But when a person can only be distinguished from others bearing the same name by calling him “so and so, the son of so and so,” as Upasena Vaṅgantaputta,² then the *putta* part of the name must be translated. For he was not Upasena Vanganta, but Upasena, Vanganta’s son. The great exception to this is Sāriputta, where, for English translators and readers, *putta* seems to have become an integral part of his name, since it is never translated as “the son of (Rūpa-)Sārī.”

As *putta* sometimes forms part of a name, so also does *mātā*, *pitā*, *dhītā*, mother, father, daughter. For example, there are Sigalamātā, Nakulamātā, Visākhā Migāramātā, Nakulapita, Suppavasa Koliyadhītā. Now Nakulamātā and Nakulapita have, in the Pali canon, no other names. They must therefore be translated as “Nakula’s mother” and “Nakula’s father.” I think it as necessary to translate *putta* where it means a “son” in a life of religion, as it is to translate *mātā*, *pitā*, *dhītā* and again *putta* where no such reference is intended.

There are further the terms *ayya* and *ayyaputta*; these cannot mean exactly the same thing. The former is “master” and the latter “little master,” something like our “son of the house,” the young gentleman. Again there is *seṭṭhi* and *seṭṭhiputta*. The former is variously translated as banker, merchant, great merchant, treasurer. A difference in standing is, I hold, intended by *seṭṭhiputta* (see Bu-NP.6), and should be shown in translations. A *seṭṭhiputta* is a young merchant, literally a son of a merchant, but he is not yet the head of the firm, for his description as *putta* means that his

BD.2.xlvii

¹ MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Gotama the Man*, p.89ff.; *Sakya*, p.115ff.; and cf. *Unknown Co-founders of Buddhism*, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, 1927, p.193ff. ² See below, BD.2.83.

father is still alive. It would not be actually wrong to translate *seṭṭhiputta* as “merchant,” since he is one by occupation, but the full significance implicit in *putta* can only be brought out by regarding the word as pithy, not as pleonastic. In the same way I think that the intended implication of *putta*, when the poor workman addresses Kirapatika, in **Bu-Pc.33**, as *ayyaputta*, is that this employer, although paying the wages, was not the head of his business because his father was still living.

Dhammī kathā and **dhamma**—I have translated *dhammī kathā* often as “reasoned talk,” sometimes as “talk on *dhamma*.” In so doing, I have been guided mainly by the context. I hold that in the phrase, “then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given *dhammī kathā*, addressed the monks, saying,” the lord is not supposed to have given them talk on *dhamma*, on material now found chiefly in the Suttas. I think it more probable that he was engaged in explaining to the monks such circumstances as had arisen since the first framing of a rule, and telling them why he thought its alteration justifiable. He would thus have been reasoning out the situation with them, marshalling the arguments bearing on the case.

Similarly, Gotama is sometimes shown, for example in **Bu-NP-3** and **Bu-Pc.58**, as questioning monks or hearing reports about their conduct. Then, it is said, “having given *dhammī kathā*,” he framed a rule so that, given certain circumstances, they need not behave in that particular way again. In this connection **Bu-Pc.58** is interesting, for it asserts that the *dhammī kathā* given was “on what is befitting, on what is suitable.” These words, (*an-*)*anulomika* and (*an-*)*anucchavika*, do not properly belong to Sutta but to Vinaya material. When they occur in the Suttas,¹ it seems uniformly the case that they are used in connection with the discipline of monks or other *samaṇas*.

On the other hand, when it is said, for example in **Bu-Pc.6**, that Anuruddha roused and delighted the woman *dhammiyā kathāya*, it would be a mistake to think that he was explaining to her the need for making or altering a rule. The context in no way suggests this; it suggests that he had given her an inspiring talk in virtue of which she became a lay-adherent.

Again, to take from among many other instances of it, the phrase as it

¹ E.g., AN.i.106, AN.ii.27, AN.iii.116; MN.i.477; It.103; Snp.385.

stands in **Bu-Pc.21**. From the context it may be inferred that Gotama gave the nuns some lofty discourse to recompense their disappointment for “the merely inferior talk on *dhamma*,” *parittañ ñeva dhammiṃ katharṃ katvā*, given them by the group of six monks in place of the exhortation.¹

Lest it be thought that in the *Nissaggiyas* and these *Pācittiyas* the phrase *dhammī kathā* supplants *dhamma*, it will be wise to draw attention to some of the passages where this great word occurs. In **Bu-Pc.4**, the group of six monks are found making lay-followers speak *dhamma* line by line. This was made an offence. The Old Commentary on this *Pācittiya*, as well as that on **Bu-Pc.7**, by its choice of words for defining *dhamma*, makes it clear that *dhamma* as the teaching, as discourses, as great sayings, as connected with the goal, *attha*, was being considered; and neither *dhamma* as *dhammī kathā*, reasoned talk germane to the matter in hand, nor *dhamma* as *pāḷi*, the text, as it is explained in Buddhaghosa's commentary.² **Bu-Pc.7** traces the evolution of the circumstances in which it became permissible for a monk to teach *dhamma*, *dhammarṃ deseti*, to women. **Bu-Pc.5** confines itself to mentioning that lay-followers listened to *dhamma* spoken by, *bhāsita*, monks who were elders. This would be in accordance with part of the definition given by the Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.4** and **Bu-Pc.7**, that *dhamma* is what is spoken by disciples.

BD.2.xlvix

Dhamma, for the reason stated in the Introduction to **BD.1**, I have left untranslated.³

Ārāma; vihāra—I have usually translated *ārāma*, not as “park,” but as “monastery”; and *vihāra* as “dwelling-place.”⁴ The Vinaya depicts monastic life at a fairly advanced stage, and it is reasonable to assume that the many words connected with the monks' lodgings had attained definite meanings reflecting the habits and customs induced by their way of living.

Ārāmas were doubtless originally places for enjoyment, parks. Many were handed over by rich benefactors to the Order as it grew and its increasing numbers called for larger and more fixed settlements. *Ārāmas* thus

¹ Cf. MN.iii.270, where Mahāpajāpatī is shown asking Gotama for exhortation, for instruction, for *dhammikathā*, “talk on *dhamma*,” for the nuns. ² For Buddhaghosa's interpretations of the words used in defining *dhamma*, see Vin-a.742, and below, **BD.2.191**. ³ **BD.1.lvi**.

⁴ For notes on these terms, see below, **BD.2.2**, **BD.2.46**.

became monasteries, places made use of by monks, and intended solely for this purpose.

Vihāras too, as the monks increased in number, changed their character. The word had at some time stood for something much like an isolated *pariveṇa*, or cell, but it came to imply a row of cells, or individual dwelling-places, connected by a verandah, *pamukha*.¹

It is curious and disappointing that the definition of *vihāra* in *Bu-Pc.19* and at *Vin.3.156* is so unenlightening. Neither is the word explained where other comparable terms are briefly defined in *Bu-Pj.2*.²

BD.2.1 H. KERN³ has to my mind given an acceptable, though short, account of *ārāma*, *vihāra*, *pariveṇa* and *kuṭī* (hut); and S. DUTT has a learned and illuminating chapter⁴ on the development, interrelation and use of these quarters for monks, together with the function and character of such other words denoting habitations for monks as *sīmā*, boundary, limit; *āvāsa*, residence, settlement, colony; and *senāsana*, lodgings, bedding, “seats.” S. Dutt shows, in this chapter, that as “the communal life of the Bhikkhus came to gravitate more and more towards a coenobium,” largely “brought about by the institutions of Vassa,” the rains-retreat, so there developed the means and the rules for communal, as against eremitical, dwelling.

Ekamantaṃ—The literal meaning of this is “at one side.” The word constantly occurs in the phrases, “he, or she, stood, or sat down at one side.” This implies respect accorded to a superior. In order to bring out this aspect of *ekamantaṃ*, of the respectful attitude adopted by laity towards monks, by monks to senior monks or to wiser monks, I have translated the word as “at a respectful distance.” In so doing, I am following the Commentaries. These enumerate six wrong ways of sitting, *nisajjadosa*,⁵ such as would bring discomfort and inconvenience to a person worthy of consideration and honour. The only reason why I prefer my translation to the more literal one is that it better emphasises a particular point in the manners of the day; and also when we hear of lay-people sitting down or standing by monks “at a respectful distance,” one more piece of evidence, however small, testifying to the esteem in which monks were held by the laity, is forced to contribute

¹ Cf. *Bu-Pc.17.2.1*. ² See *BD.1.83*. ³ *A Manual of Indian Buddhism*, p.8off. ⁴ *Early Buddhist Monachism*, Ch.5. ⁵ See below, *BD.2.42, n.5*.

its weight.

Abbhantara—This is a linear measure, mentioned below on **BD.2.20**, **BD.2.22**, and which I have left untranslated for fear lest an English rendering should give a false impression.¹

Buddhaghosa's Commentary² remarks that "here one *abbhantara* is twenty-eight hands (*hattha*)"; the *Critical Pali Dictionary* says no more than that it is "a certain measure of length." The *Vibhaṅga* Commentary does not include *abbhantara* among its graded linear measurements at all.³ In Moggallāna's scheme of measures of length,⁴ although given at the very end of the scheme and looking like an afterthought, we find that twenty-eight *ratana*s equal one *abbhantara*. RHYS DAVIDS,⁵ following this scheme, describes *ratana* as "(cubit, forearm) = *hattha* = *kukku*," and says that *hattha* "is the usual word."⁶ The *Saṃyutta* Commentary explains *kukku* by *hattha*.⁷ As it is very likely that these measurements varied with time and locality, in trying to establish the length of a *Vinaya abbhantara* it will be best to consider the *hattha*, twenty-eight of which were held to compose an *abbhantara*, according to *Vinaya* interpretations.

We find *hattha* defined in the Old Commentary⁸ as "from the elbow as far as the tip of the nail," which means that *hattha*, taken as a measure of length, would comprise the hand together with the forearm.⁹ Even so, there is yet some vagueness, for the tips of the nails are not all the same distance from the elbow. We are thus left with not an exact measurement. Rhys Davids however suggested that "to the end of the little finger only is meant,"¹⁰ apparently on the grounds that because the span, *vidatthi*, is the basis of computation for the *ratana*, two *vidatthi* making one *ratana*, and because *vidatthi* is "the name for the ordinary span to the end of the fourth or little finger" from the end of the thumb, therefore the *hattha*, which is equivalent to the *ratana* measure, would be from the elbow as far as the nail of the little finger. This provides a straight line for measurement, and the distance is about fifteen inches. One *abbhantara*, if taken as equal to twenty-eight *hatthas*, would therefore correspond to roughly thirty-five

¹ See **BD.1.lviii**. ² *Vin*-a.654. ³ *Vb*-a.343. ⁴ *Abhidhānappadīpikā* 194-197. ⁵ *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.15. ⁶ *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.15, n.2. ⁷ *SN*-a.iii.300. ⁸ **Vin.3.121**, **Vin.4.221**. ⁹ *Cf.* *Vin*-a.533. ¹⁰ *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.15, p.17.

feet. The “staff” in **Bu-Sk.58** (**Vin.4.200**), that had to measure “four hands,” would be about five feet in length.

In conclusion, I very gratefully acknowledge my debt to Mrs. Rhys Davids for her unflagging interest in the preparation of this volume, and for kindly reading the proofs. Two revered *theras* of Colombo, the Venerable Rambukwella Siddhartha and the Venerable S.P. Vajirañāṇa, have given me much valuable assistance with monastic practice and Vinaya terminology.

To these in particular, and also to other friends and acquaintances in Ceylon, too numerous to mention, I would tender my warm thanks in recognition of conversations that were as instructive as they were stimulating. I am also indebted to the editor for his kind permission to reprint in this Introduction, part of an article published in 1939 in the Vesak Number of the *Ceylon Daily News*.

I. B. HORNER

Manchester, 1940.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 1

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Vesālī in the Gotamaka shrine.¹ At that time three robes were allowed to monks by the lord.² The group³ of six monks, thinking: “Three robes are allowed by the

Bu-NP.1.1.1

Vin.3.195

BD.2.1

BD.2.2

¹ *Gotamaka-cetiya*, one of the *cetiya*s or shrines of Vesālī, to the south (DN.iii.9). Mentioned, with the other shrines of Vesālī, as being pleasant (DN.ii.102–DN.ii.103, DN.ii.118; AN.iv.309, SN.v.159; Ud.62). AN-a.2.373 ascribes the Gotamaka-cetiya to a *yakkha* named Gotamaka. For further references to these shrines see Ud-a.322–323; *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.220ff.; KS.v.230, KS.v.231; MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Gotama the Man*, 193; E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha as Legend and History*, 137; B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.46, and Appendix; and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ² The three robes, *ticivara*, consisted of the inner robe or cloth, *antaravāsaka*, the upper robe or cloth, *uttarāsāṅga*, the outer cloak, *saṅghāṭi*. Permission to wear a double, *diguṇa*, outer cloak, a single, *ekacciya*, upper robe, and a single inner robe is given at Vin.1.289, also at the Gotamaka shrine. At *Vinaya Texts* ii.212, n.2, the three robes are described in detail, although there the *saṅghāṭi* is wrongly called the “waist cloth”.

The *antaravāsaka* is put on at the waist, and hangs down to just above the ankles, being tied with the *kāyabandhana*, a strip of cloth made into a belt or girdle (allowed at Vin.2.136). The method of putting on the *antaravāsaka* is different from that adopted by laymen, Vin.2.137. Monks take the two ends together, fold them across together in front and then fold them back again; then the garment is held in position by the belt. The *uttarāsāṅga* is the upper robe worn when a monk is in a residence. It covers him from neck to ankle, leaving one shoulder bare; it should not be worn in the same way as laymen wear their upper cloth, Vin.2.137. The *saṅghāṭi* is put on over this when the monk goes out. It may be exactly the same size as the *uttarāsāṅga*, but it consists of double cloth, since to make it two robes are woven together. It is a good protection against cold, and monks may wrap themselves in it to sleep. All these three robes are made in the patchwork fashion. Only the bathing-cloth is plain. ³ To end of Bu-NP.1.1 below, cf. Vin.1.289, where the sixfold group is again recorded as offending in this way. There a reference to this *Nissaggiya* rule is implied, for it is said that monks should not wear an extra robe, and whoever does so should be dealt with *yathādhammo*, according to the rule.

lord,” entered a village in one set of robes, remained in the monastery¹ in another set of three robes, went down to bathe in another set of three robes. Those who were modest monks looked down upon,² criticised,³ spread it about,⁴ saying: “How can the group of six monks wear an extra robe?”⁵ Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that you wear an extra robe?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

BD.2.3

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, wear an extra robe? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased⁶ ... And thus, monks, this rule of training⁷ should be set forth:

¹ *ārāma*, a park, a place where one enjoys oneself, *ā+ramati*. Cf. definition of *ārama* at [Vin.3.49](#) as *pupphārāma phalārāma*, flower-park, fruit-park (orchard). In Pali, however, the word has come to be used largely in connection with a residence for monks, hence a monastery. ² *ujjhāyanti* Explained at [Vin-a.296](#) as *avajjhāyanti avajānantā taṃ jhāyanti olokenti, lāmakato vā cintenti ti attho*, they censured, despising, they were angry, (and) looked down upon him, or the meaning is they thought (of him) as inferior. Cf. [Vin-a.770](#) (*ujjhāpeti*) and [SN-a.i.349](#). *Ujjhāyati* therefore seems to mean to think poorly of, to look down upon, to belittle someone, rather than to be irritated, angry, or to grumble. Cf. [Bu-Pc.13](#), [Vin.4.38](#). ³ *khīyanti*. Explained at [Vin-a.296](#) as *tassa avaṇṇaṃ, kathenti pakāsentī*, they speak blame (dispraise) of him, they show him up. Cf. [SN-a.i.349](#). Hence to speak badly of someone, to criticise. Cf. [Bu-Pc.13](#), [Vin.4.38](#), [Bu-Pc.79](#), [Vin.4.152](#), [Bu-Pc.81](#), [Vin.4.154](#). ⁴ *vipācentī*. Explained at [Vin-a.296](#) as *vitthārikaṃ karonti sabbattha pattharanti*, they make wide-spread, they spread everywhere. Hence to speak disparagingly, to spread ill-fame. Cf. [SN-a.i.349](#). These three words occur frequently in Vinaya, but only once I think otherwise in the Canon, at [SN.i.232](#). ⁵ *atirekacīvara*. ⁶ *appasannānaṃ pasādāya*. *Pasāda*, *prasāda* (Sanskrit) is “pleasing.” Cf. *buddhe pasannā* of [SN.i.34](#), pleased with the Buddha, and therefore become his followers, i.e. converted. Thus “pleasing” has the sense of “converting.” ⁷ *sikkhāpada*. *Pada* is a sentence, rule, regulation, ordinance, which indicates a training. Here *pada* is rule; *sikkhā* is training, Hence a rule of, or for, training.

Whatever monk should wear an extra robe, there is an offence¹ of expiation² involving forfeiture.”³

BD.2.4

Thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down⁴ by the lord.

At that time⁵ an extra robe accrued to⁶ the venerable Ānanda; and the venerable Ānanda was desirous of giving that robe to the venerable Sāriputta, but the venerable Sāriputta was staying at Sāketa. Then it occurred to the venerable Ānanda: “A rule of training laid down by the lord is that an extra robe should not be worn. And this extra robe has accrued to me, and I am desirous of giving this robe to the venerable Sāriputta, but the venerable Sāriputta is staying at Sāketa. Now what line of conduct should

Bu-NP.1.2.1

Vin.3.196

¹ Although no word for “offence” occurs in these rules, the terms themselves—e.g. *pācittiya*, *dukkāṭa*—imply “offence.” ² *pācittiya*. E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.18, n.3, says that “this translation depends on the derivation of *pācittiya* from Sanskrit *prāyaścittika*, but this is not the term used in the Sanskrit versions of the Pātimokkha, which have *pātayantika* and *pāyantika*.” *Vinaya Texts* i.32 and GEIGER, *Pali Literatur und Sprache* § 27, incline to etymology *prāyaścittika*. Geiger points out that Sylvain Lévi derives it from *prāk-citta*, which +ika is the derivation to which the *Pali-English Dictionary* inclines. *Pācittiya* as *prāyaścittika* means literally “in repentance, in compensation, in expiation.” Expiation is not, however, enjoined in these rules, but confession. Thus in reality *pācittiya* means a (minor) offence to be confessed. But since the term *pācittiya* has etymologically nothing to do with confession, I have kept to the more literal rendering, of “expiation.” B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature*, i.46ff., speaks of *Pācittiya* offences as those “for which some expiation was laid down ... requiring repentance ... requiring confession and absolution.”

At [Vin.1.254](#) five things are allowed to the monks after the ceremonial making of the *kaṭhina* cloth, one being to have as many robes as are wanted. This appears to be a relaxation of the above rule. ³ *nissaggiya*. The thing to be forfeited or given up was that in respect of which the offence had been committed.

The name of this class of offence, *Nissaggiya Pācittiya*, means that, besides confessing the offence, there is an object wrongfully acquired which has to be forfeited. In the next class of offence, *Pācittiya*, there is no such object which needs to be forfeited. To mark the distinction between these two classes of offence (*Nissaggiya Pācittiya*, and *Pācittiya*), as also their connection, in translating *nissaggiya pācittiya* I have put *nissaggiya*, “involving forfeiture,” in the secondary position, although in the Pali it stands before *pācittiya*. ⁴ *paññatta*. The primary sense, “made known,” is now lost. The word is now used in its secondary sense of established, given, passed, laid down. ⁵ = [Vin.1.289](#). Also cf. below, [Bu-NP.21](#), where the same story is told in the same words about an extra bowl. ⁶ *uppannam hoti*, literally there came to be arisen to, produced for, or born to. Cf. below, [BD.2.24](#), [BD.2.90](#), [BD.2.99](#), [BD.2.114](#).

be followed by me?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

“But, Ānanda, how long before Sāriputta will come (here)?”

“Lord, on the ninth or tenth day,” he said.

Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk,¹ addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow you to wear an extra robe for at most ten days. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“When the robe-material is settled,² when a monk’s³ *kaṭhina*⁴ (privi-

BD.2.5

¹ *dhammī kathā*. In this and similar contexts this does not mean talk on *dhamma*, on the doctrine as expounded in the Suttas, so much as any good, reasonable talk relevant to the matter in hand. Thus here the lord, it may be supposed, would have reasoned with the monks and have explained to them the causes and conditions leading him to modify the rule as originally laid down. Cf. Vin-a.637. ² *niṭṭhita*, established, closed, settled, finished, ready to wear, or “done for.” For this last see *Vinaya Texts* i.19 in note. That *niṭṭhita* has the two meanings of “made” and “done for” is borne out by the Old Commentary. HUBER, J.Bu-As, 1913, Nov–Dec, p.490, has “*si un bhikṣu a les trois robes au complet,*” and doubtless the meaning here is that the robes have been distributed and each monk has his set of three robes made up and ready to wear. ³ *bhikkhunā*, instrumental used for genitive. ⁴ The *kaṭhina* cloth is the cotton cloth supplied annually, after the rains, by the laity to the monks for making robes. *Kaṭhina* refers to a specially ceremonial cloth, for it is made with special ceremony at the end of the rains. The *kaṭhina* cloth should be brought at dawn, offered to the Order, cut by the monks, sewn and dyed. All this must be done on the same day. Then it is taken to a *sīmā*, boundary, and with formulae is offered by the Order to one monk. Ways in which *kaṭhina* comes to be made, *atthata*, and not made, *anattata*, are given at [Vin.1.254f.](#) The *kaṭhina* cloth brings certain privileges, which, however, last only four months. It loses its quality automatically at the end of the season, as well as in other ways. A monk can wear *kaṭhina* cloth for any length of days as long as the *kaṭhina* quality is there. If it is not *kaṭhina* cloth, he can wear an extra robe for only ten days. On *atthata* cf. also below, [BD.2.26, n.3.](#)

leges)¹ have been removed,² an extra robe may be worn for at most ten days. For him who exceeds that (period), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

When the robe-material is settled means: the robe-material is made up³ for a monk, or lost⁴ or destroyed⁵ or burnt, or an expectation of robe-

Bu-NP.1.3.1
BD.2.6

¹ Five things were allowable to monks when the *kaṭhina* cloth had been (formally) made, *atthata*, [Vin.1.254](#). ² *ubbhata-smiṃ kaṭhine*; sometimes *ubbhāra-* or *uddhāra-*. On these phrases see *Vinaya Texts* i.18, note, for a most interesting—though tentative—account of the usages connected with the robes. Also *Vinaya Texts* ii.148, n.157, HUBER, J. Bu-As, 1913, Nov, renders “*et qu’il ait pris le kaṭhina*”; GOGERLY, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1862, p.431, “and the *kaṭhina* (or cloth for the purpose) has been consecrated”; DICKSON, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1876, p.105, “when the *kaṭhina* period has expired”; RHYS DAVIDS, *Vinaya Texts* i.18, “when the *kaṭhina* has been taken up by the bhikkhu”; *Vinaya Texts* ii.157, “suspension of the *kaṭhina* privileges” (for *kaṭhinubbhāra*); B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature* 1.52, “after the performance of the *kaṭhina* ceremony.”

For the eight grounds for removing the five *kaṭhina* “privileges”—i.e., the five things that are allowable after the *kaṭhina* cloth is made—see [Vin.1.255ff.](#) According to Old Commentary, see below, they may also be removed before the time by the Order. The ceremony of making and distributing the *kaṭhina* cloth (see above, [BD.2.5, n.1](#)) took place after the rains, [Vin.1.254](#), and it was seen to that each monk had three robes. These, though worn by him, were the property of the Order. He might not need three new ones every season. However, it might happen that, through dampness or other causes, his three robes were not ready to wear, or he might be going to another residence (see the *palibodha* and *apalibodha* at [Vin.1.265](#)), and then he might take (temporarily) an extra robe. Thus for this period the rule as to the three robes was relaxed, and an extra robe might be worn, but not for more than ten days. When the *kaṭhina* privileges had been removed for one or other of the eight grounds for removing them, then the monk must assign his extra robe. At [Vin.1.289](#) monks are “allowed” to assign, *vikappeti*, an extra robe. Cf. [Vin.1.254](#) for the allowance to have as many robes as desired when the *kaṭhina* cloth has been made, and before the privileges, of which this is one, are removed. ³ *kata*; cf. *katacīvara* at [Vin.1.256](#), a robe that is made up, finished, ready to wear, opposed to *cīvara*, robe-material, probably meaning not ready to wear, and *vippakatacīvara*, a robe or robe-material that is imperfectly executed, thus not ready to wear. [Vin-a.638](#) says that *kata* means that it is finished by means of a needle. ⁴ [Vin-a.638](#), “carried off by thieves.” On removal of *kaṭhina* privileges owing to loss of the robe-material, see [Vin.1.255ff.](#) ⁵ [Vin-a.638](#), “destroyed by white ants.”

material is disappointed.¹

When the *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed means: they come to be removed because of a certain one of eight grounds,² or they come to be removed before the time by the Order.

For at most ten days means: it may be worn for ten days at the maximum.

BD.2.7

An extra robe means: one that is not allotted,³ not assigned.⁴

¹ *cīvarāsā upacchinnā*. On a monk going away with the expectation of a robe and the removal of his *kaṭhina* privileges on various grounds, see [Vin.1.259ff.](#) Vin-a.638 says that “longing for a robe arises and is cut off. These are impediments to getting robes settled.” The last four cases mean that a monk’s responsibility for a robe is gone. ² Given at [Vin.1.255](#), also at Vin-a.638. See above, [BD.2.5, n.3](#), and *Vinaya Texts* ii.157 for a discussion of the validity of these grounds or reasons, *mātikā*, for removal. They are as follows: the ground depending on (the monk) having gone away, on (his robe being) settled, on his having resolved (not to have it finished), on (his robe) being lost, on his having heard (that the privileges are removed in a certain residence), on the lapse of an expectation (that a special gift of a robe would be made to him), on his having gone beyond the boundary (of the community to which the *kaṭhina* cloth was given), on the general removal (of the *kaṭhina* privileges of the whole Order). Removal means that the quality of *kaṭhina* will disappear (see above, [BD.2.5, n.1](#)). ³ *anadhīṭṭhita*. This means a robe used by a certain monk himself, rather than one not yet designated for a particular monk, and thus still at the disposal of the Order, not disposed of, not allotted. See [Vin-a.642ff.](#) Cf. *niṭṭhita* in connection with robes, translated above as “settled.” Also see note on *adhīṭṭhāna*, [BD.1.128](#). *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives *adhīṭṭhita* as “determined” for a similar Vinaya passage. ⁴ *avikappita*, possibly meaning kept and given to another monk. At [Vin.1.289](#) monks are allowed to assign an extra robe; then presumably it ceases to be “extra.” On the allowance to allot, not to assign (*adhīṭṭhātum na vikappetum*) various articles, see [Vin.1.296f.](#)

Robe-material means: any one robe-material of the six (kinds of) robe-materials¹ (including) the least one fit for assignment.²

For him who exceeds that period there is an offence involving forfeiture means: it is to be forfeited on the eleventh day at sunrise; it should be forfeited to the Order,³ or to a group⁴ or to an individual. And thus, monks, it should be forfeited: That monk, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak⁵ thus: 'Honoured sirs, this robe is to be forfeited by me, the ten days having elapsed. I forfeit it to the Order.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed.⁶ The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk; the robe forfeited⁷ should be given back⁸ (with the words): 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This robe of the monk so and so, which had to be forfeited, is forfeited (by him) to the Order. If it

Bu-NP.1.3.2

BD.2.8

¹ At Vin.1.281 six kinds of robes were permitted to the monks: made of linen, cotton, silk, wool, coarse hemp, canvas. At Vin.1.58, Vin.1.96 these six are called benefits extra to rag-robes. Cf. below, BD.2.40, BD.2.48, and Vin.4.60. ² *vikappanupagapacchima*. *Pali-English Dictionary* explains *vikappanupaga* as "according to option," under *upaga*. But *vikappana* is a technical term meaning the assignment of robes. The meaning of *pacchima*, according to the Commentary, is "the least"—i.e., the smallest in measurement according to the assignment or apportioning of the robes. For Vin-a.639 says, "having pointed out the kinds of robes, i.e., the six kinds, as in note above), now, in order to point out the measure, he says *vikap° pacchimam*. Its measure is two spans in length, one span in width. Thus the text says, 'Monks, the least robe that I allow you to assign is one that is eight finger-breadths in length and four finger-breadths wide according to the finger-breadth of the accepted standard'" (*sugataṅgula*, cf. Vin.4.168). The 'text' quoted by Buddhaghosa is Vin.1.297. Cf. below, BD.2.40, BD.2.48, BD.2.140. ³ *saṅgha*, five or more monks; see Vin.1.319. ⁴ *gaṇa*; two to four monks. ⁵ passive construction, literally "the Order should be spoken to." ⁶ *āpatti desetabbā*. Vin-a.640, having greeted the Order (as above) the monk says, 'I, reverend sirs, having fallen into such and such an offence, that I confess.' If there is one robe it constitutes one offence of expiation involving forfeiture; if there are two (robes) there are two (such offences); if there are many (robes) there is a multiplicity (of such offences). He should forfeit his robe or robes saying, 'Here is a robe (are robes) to be forfeited for transgressing the ten days. I forfeit it (them) to the Order.' The same procedure is required if forfeiting them to a group or to one monk. The offending monk then says that he sees his offence, and is exhorted to restrain himself in the future. ⁷ *nissatṭha-cīvara*, *nissatṭha* being past participle of *nissajjati*. ⁸ *dātabbām*.

seems right¹ to the Order, the Order should give back this robe to the monk so and so.’

Vin.3.197 That monk, approaching two or three² monks, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder ... joined palms, should speak thus: ‘Honoured sirs, this robe is to be forfeited by me, the ten days having elapsed. I forfeit it to the venerable ones.’ Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk; the robe forfeited should be given back (with the words): ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. This robe of the monk so and so, which had to be forfeited, is forfeited (by him) to the venerable ones. If it seems right to the venerable ones, let the venerable ones give back this robe to the monk so and so.’

BD.2.9

That monk, approaching one monk, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘Your reverence,³ this robe is to be forfeited by me, the ten days having elapsed. I forfeit it to the venerable one.’ Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by this monk; the robe forfeited should be given back (with the words): ‘I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

Bu-NP.1.4.1

If he⁴ thinks⁵ that ten days have elapsed when they have done so, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether ten days have elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he does not think that ten days have elapsed when they have done so, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one⁶ is allotted⁷ when it is not allotted, there is an offence of expiation involving

¹ *pattakalla* = *pattakāla*, having attained the (right) time. ² *sambahulā bhikkhū* in Vinaya almost always means a *gaṇa*—i.e., two to four monks. In the Suttapīṭaka the expression means “many monks.” Yet at Vin.2.15 *sambahulā therā bhikkhū* apparently include eleven *theras*, and at Vin.1.300 *sambahulā therā* include five elders; thus in these two passages *sambahulā* should be translated by “several, a number of.” ³ *āvuso*; in preceding cases *bhante*. ⁴ i.e. a monk. ⁵ *saññī*, or “is aware.” It has been suggested to me that the first two cases (excluding that of “is in doubt”) are more definite in meaning than the later ones, and that therefore these first two might be translated by “is aware” and “is not aware,” and the others by “thinks” and “does not think.” But the Pali word is the same throughout. ⁶ i.e. an extra robe. ⁷ This and the next six cases = below, Vin.3.251 (without the “assigned” clause), Vin.3.262.

forfeiture. If he thinks that one is assigned when it is not assigned, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is bestowed when it is not bestowed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is lost when it is not lost, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is destroyed when it is not destroyed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is burnt when it is not burnt, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is stolen when it is not stolen, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the robe which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹ If he thinks that the ten days have elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether the ten days have not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the ten days have not elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is no offence.

BD.2.10

There is no offence if, within ten days, it is allotted,² assigned, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt,³ if they tear it from him,⁴ if they take it on trust⁵; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁶

Then⁷ the group of six monks did not give back a robe that had been forfeited. They told this matter to the lord. He said: "Monks, a robe that has

Bu-NP.1.5.1

¹ *dukkata*, also to be confessed. ² *adhittḥeti*, according to *Critical Pali Dictionary* to employ, adopt, keep for oneself. ³ These clauses indicate that the monk has lost responsibility for the robe. ⁴ *acchinditvā gaṇhanti*. This phrase appears to be a substitute for *vilumpati*, to steal, which as *avilutte viluttasaññi* occurs immediately after "burnt" in the preceding paragraph. ⁵ *vissāsaṃ gaṇhanti*. At [Vin.1.296](#) things are allowed to be taken on trust from a monk endowed with five qualities: he must be an acquaintance and a friend, alive, he must have spoken about the thing taken, and must know that he will be pleased with the monk for taking it. Cf. also [Vin.1.308](#) for various cases where a robe taken on trust is said to be rightly taken or wrongly taken. ⁶ Cf. [Bu-NP.2](#), [Bu-NP.3](#), [Bu-NP.28](#); and cf. [Bu-NP.1](#), where for "burnt" we get "broken" (of a bowl). ⁷ *tena kho pana samayena*, very likely equivalent here to *atha*, then, for in this and similar contexts it does not mean so much "at one time," as at the more definite "then"—i.e., at a time (shortly) after the rule had been laid down, but marking a continuation of the story which led up to and included the formulation of the rule.

BD.2.11
Vin.3.198

been forfeited is not not to be given back.¹ Whosoever should not give it back, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

¹ *na nisatṭhacīvaraṃ na dātabbāṃ*; cf. below, [BD.2.117](#), and [Vin.4.245](#), where the same thing (using the double negative) is said of a bowl.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 2

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time monks, entrusting robes to the hands of (other) monks, set out on a tour of the country with (only) an inner and an upper robe¹; these robes, deposited for a long time, became soiled²; the monks dried them in the sun. The venerable Ānanda, as he was engaged in touring the lodgings, saw these monks drying these robes in the sun. Seeing these monks he came up to them, and having come up he said to these monks:

BD.2.12
Bu-NP.2.1.1

“Your reverences, whose are these robes that are soiled?” Then these monks told this matter to the venerable Ānanda. The venerable Ānanda looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the monks, entrusting robes to the hands of (other) monks, set out on a tour of the country with (only) an inner and an upper robe?”³ Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks, entrusting robes to the hands of (other) monks, set out on a tour of the country with (only) an inner and an upper robe?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

BD.2.13

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

¹ That is with the *antaravāsaka*, the inner robe, and the *uttarāsaṅga*, the upper robe or garment. The two together are called *santaruttara*—i.e., *sa-antar'-uttara*, the inner one with the upper one. They did not wear the outer cloak, Vin-a.652. For notes on the three robes see above, [BD.2.1](#), [n.2](#). This rule is in opposition to the previous one, where monks wore more than the prescribed number of robes; here they wear less than the right number. See also [Bi-Pc.24](#). ² Vin-a.651, “having black and white circles on the places which had been touched by the perspiration.” ³ At [Vin.1.298](#) Ānanda himself, though through thoughtlessness, entered a village without his outer cloak.

“How, monks, can these foolish men, having entrusted robes to the hands of (other) monks, set out on a tour of the country with (only) an inner and an upper robe? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“When the robe-material is settled, when a monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed, if this monk should be away, separated from his three robes,¹ even for one night, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”²

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-NP.2.2.1

At that time a certain monk became ill in Kosambī. Relations sent a messenger to this monk, saying: “Let the revered sir³ come, we will nurse (him).” The monks said: “Go, your reverence, relations will nurse you.” He said:

BD.2.14

“Your reverences, a rule of training laid down by the lord is that one should not be away, separated from the three robes; but I am ill, I am not able to set out taking the three robes. I will not go.”

Vin.3.199

They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

¹ *tičivarena vippavaseyya*. Cf. [Vin.2.123](#), where it is a *dukkāṭa*, offence for a monk to be separated from his *nisīdana*, piece of cloth for sitting on, for four months. ² At [Vin.1.254](#) the five privileges allowable to monks after the ceremonial making of the *kaṭhina*-cloth, *atthatakaṭhina*, include one called *asamādānacāra*, translated, at *Vinaya Texts* ii.151, in accordance with Buddhaghosa’s explanation, as “going for alms without wearing the usual set of three robes,” a relaxation of the above rule. At [Vin.1.298](#) it is a *dukkāṭa* offence for a monk to enter a village wearing (only) his inner and upper robes. But because Ānanda thoughtlessly did so on one occasion, the lord is reputed to have put forward five reasons for laying aside the outer cloak, five (identical) reasons for laying aside the upper and inner robes, and five (partly identical and partly different) reasons for laying aside the cloth for the rains. It is not said which reason covered Ānanda’s lapse. When monks are staying in lodgings in the jungles they are allowed to lay aside one of the three robes in a house; but then it came about that if they are away from that robe for more than six nights, there is an offence; see [Bu-NP.29](#). ³ *bhaddanto*, an honorific title. Cf. below, [BD.2.80](#), where an ill monk is allowed to travel without a rug, *santhata*, if he has the agreement of the Order as to the rug.

“I allow you, monks, to give a monk who is ill the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes.¹ And thus, monks, should it be given: That monk who is ill, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus: ‘I, honoured sirs, am ill, I am not able to set out taking the three robes. Thus I, honoured sirs, request the Order for the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes.’ A second time it should be requested, a third time it should be requested. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk so and so is ill, he is not able to set out taking the three robes. He requests the Order for the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give this monk so and so the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me ... the three robes. The Order gives the monk so and so the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes. If the giving to the monk so and so of the agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes, is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, they should speak. Agreement (to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes, is given by the Order to the monk so and so, and it is pleasing to the venerable ones; therefore they are silent, so do I understand this.’ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.15

“When the robe-material is settled, when a monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed, if this monk should be away, separated from the three robes, even for one night, except on the agreement of the monks,²

¹ *tiṭṭhāna avippāvasasammutiṃ*. This means that by convention, by agreement among other monks, the one who is ill is regarded as not separated from his three robes, although in fact he is separated from them and goes away without them. On account of this agreement, *sammuti*, the separation, being regarded as no separation, does not count as an offence. Cf. also *sammuti* at, e.g., Bu-NP.14; Vin.1.283f. The government is by democracy, for the monks agree among themselves. At Vin.1.298 the illness of a monk is one of the reasons “allowed” for his laying aside his outer cloak. See Vin.1.109f. for agreement to, and removal of, *tiṭṭhāna avippāvāsa* in connection with *sīmā*, boundary. ² Cf. rule in Bu-NP.29.

there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bu-NP.2.3.1

When the robe-material is settled means: the robe-material is made up for a monk, or lost or destroyed or burnt, or an expectation of robe-material is disappointed.¹

When the *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed means: they come to be removed because of a certain one of eight grounds, or they come to be removed before the time by the Order.²

If this monk should be away, separated from the three robes, even for one night means: without the outer cloak, or without the upper robe, or without the inner robe.

Except on the agreement of the monks means: setting aside the agreement of the monks.

There is an offence involving forfeiture means: it is to be forfeited at sunrise; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited ... ‘Honoured sirs, these three robes were away, separated from me for a night, without the agreement of the monks (and) are to be forfeited. I forfeit them to the Order ...’ ‘... should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

Vin.3.200

BD.2.16

Bu-NP.2.3.2

A village having one precinct,³ various precincts, a dwelling having one precinct, various precincts; a stable⁴ having one precinct, various precincts; a watch-tower⁵ having one precinct, various precincts; a quad-

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.1.3.1. ² Cf. Bu-NP.1.3.1 ³ *ekupacāra*; cf. Vin.3.46, *gāmupacāra*. ⁴ *uddosita*; Vin-a.654 explained, *yānādīnaṃ bhaṇḍānaṃ sālā*, a room for such implements as waggons, etc. ⁵ *aṭṭa*; Vin-a.654 explained, “it is made with bricks for warding off hostile kings, and thick walls, and is four or five storeys high.” Cf. Vb-a.366.

rangular building¹ having one precinct, various precincts; a long house² having one precinct, various precincts; a mansion³ having one precinct, various precincts; a boat having one precinct, various precincts; a caravan having one precinct, various precincts; a field having one precinct, various precincts; a threshing-floor⁴ having one precinct, various precincts; a monastery⁵ having one precinct, various precincts; a dwelling-place⁶ having one precinct, various precincts; the foot of a tree having one precinct,

BD.2.17

¹ *māla* (or *māla*). Cf. [Vin.1.140](#); DN.i.2; Snp.p.104. Snp-a.447 calls *maṇḍalamālaṃ*, a *mandapam*, or pavilion. At Vibhaṅga 251 this and the preceding building (*aṭṭa*) and the following one (*pāsāda*) are included in the definition of *senāsana*, lodgings. Vin-a.654 says that *māla* is *ekakūṭasaṅgahīto caturassapāsādo*, a quadrangular building comprised under one roof. Vb-a.366 quotes this definition, while saying that *māla* is like an eating-hall, a pavilion. This and the next two, *pāsāda* and *hammiya*, occur, as *māla*, *pāsāya*, *hammiya* at *Āyaramgasutta* 2.7.1, and are translated by JACOBI in *Jaina Sūtras* 1.105 as loft, platform, roof. See his note on *māla*, *loc. cit.* But from the Commentary, it seems that *māla* and *pāsāda* are two different styles of houses, the one square, the other long, while *hammiya* is a larger type of house.

² *pāsādo ti dīghapāsādo*, Vin-a.654. *Pāsāda* has also been defined as the big buildings of kings; cf. below, [BD.2.130](#), the *pāsāda* of King Bimbisāra. If a *pāsāda* type of building is built by other people, then it is called a *hammiya*. ³ *hammiya*. See above, [n.4](#). Vin-a.654 calls it *muṇḍacchadanapāsādo*, a “long house” under a bare roof. This appears to be a house with what we should nowadays call a “sun-roof”—i.e., all the rooms have ceilings, so that they are covered in; but over the whole or part of the uppermost rooms, although there are ceilings, there is no further outside roofing. This means that one can walk on the upper side of the ceiling with no roof over one. *Vinaya Texts* i.173, n.1, says that *pāsāda* “is a long storeyed mansion (or, the whole of an upper storey). *Hammiya* is a *Pāsāda*, which has an upper chamber placed on the topmost storey.”

At [Vin.2.154](#) five kinds of roof (*chadana*) are given: of tiles (or bricks), stones, plaster, *tiṇa*-grass, palm-leaves. At [Vin.2.146](#) *hammiya* is given with *vihāra*, *aḍḍhayoga*, *pāsāda* and *guhā* as the five *leṇāni*, abodes, allowed to monks, while at [Vin.1.58](#), [Vin.1.96](#) these are called “extra allowances,” to dwelling at the foot of a tree; [Vin.1.239](#) names these five abodes as *paccantima vihārakappiya-bhumi*, “outside building as a *kappiyabhūmi*” (*Vinaya Texts* ii.119) where the country people may keep and cook their stores; and at [Vin.1.284](#) the Order is allowed to agree upon any one of these that it desires as a storeroom for robe-material. At [Vin.2.152](#) *hammiya* occurs as one of the three inner chambers, *gabbha*, allowed to monks. *Hammiya-gabbha* is translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.173 as “chambers on an upper storey,” with quote from the Commentary in n.5: *hammiya-gabbho ti ākāsatale kuṭāgāragabbho muṇḍacchadanagabbho vā*. *Vinaya Texts* i.173, n.1, quotes Buddhaghosa’s definition on [Vin.1.58](#): *hammiyan ti upariākāsatale paṭiṭṭhitakūṭāgāro pāsādo yeva*. ⁴ *karāṇa*; here, in *dhaññakarāṇa*, seems to mean preparing the doing. Vin-a.654 explains by *khala*, corn ready for threshing, or the threshing-floor. ⁵ Vin-a.654, “a flower-park or an orchard.” ⁶ *vihāra*.

various precincts; an open space having one precinct, various precincts.

Bu-NP.2.3.3

A village having one precinct means: a village comes to be for one family¹ and is enclosed²: laying aside the robe within the village, he should remain³ within the village. It is not enclosed⁴: he should remain in the same house⁵ as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.⁶

BD.2.18

A village comes to be for various families,⁷ and is enclosed: he should remain in the same house as that in which the robe was laid aside—either in the hall or at the entrance⁸—or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. Or if, going to the hall, laying aside the robe within a reach of the hand, either he should remain in the hall or at the entrance, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. The robe being laid aside in the hall, he should either remain in the hall or at the entrance, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. It is not enclosed: he should remain in the same house as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.4

A dwelling comes to be for one family, and is enclosed; there are various rooms, various inner rooms⁹: laying aside the robe within the dwelling, he should remain within the dwelling. It is not enclosed: he should remain in

¹ Vin-a.652, “it is the village of one ruler or headman.” ² Vin-a.652, “it is enclosed by a wall or by a fence or by a ditch.” ³ *vatthabbaṃ*. In this meaning cf. [Vin.2.8](#). Vin-a.652, “he ought to wait in a place of his own choosing within the village until the sun rises.” ⁴ Vin-a.652, “it is shown by this that there are various precincts to this same village.” ⁵ Vin-a.652, “the definition of a house is that, it is the dwelling of one family, etc.” ⁶ *hatthapāsa*. Vin-a.652 says that the robe should not be moved for more than two and a half linear measures—i.e., *ratana*. Cf. Vb-a.343, *dve vidatthiyo ratanaṃ*. A *vidatthi* is a span of twelve fingers’ breadth. Cf. also [Vin.3.149](#). Vin-a.652 proceeds, “having gone beyond this measure, if the monk by psychic potency waits in the air until the sun rises, there is an offence involving forfeiture.” *Hatthapāsa*, a reach of the hand, arm’s length, is a technical term, always used in the Vinaya to denote a distance of two and a half cubits around oneself. ⁷ Vin-a.652, “it is a village belonging to various rulers and headmen, like Vesālī and Kusināra, etc.” ⁸ *dvāramūle* = *nagaradvārassa samīpe*, Vin-a.652. ⁹ There is not much difference between *gabbha*, “room,” and *ovāraka*, “inner room,” but the latter is usually a bedroom, sleeping-apartment.

the same room as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

A dwelling comes to be for various families, it is enclosed and there are various rooms, various inner rooms: he should remain in the same room as that in which the robe was laid aside, or at the main entrance,¹ or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. It is not enclosed: he should remain in the same room as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

BD.2.19

A stable comes to be for one family, and is enclosed; there are various rooms, various inner rooms: laying aside the robe within the stable, he should remain within the stable. It is not enclosed: ... (See NP:2.3.4) ... A stable comes to be for various families ... It is not enclosed ... or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.5

Vin.3.201

A watch tower comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe within the watch-tower, he should remain within the watch-tower. A watch-tower comes to be for various families; there are various rooms, various inner rooms; he should remain in the same inner room as that in which the robe was laid aside or at the main entrance, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.6

A quadrangular building comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe within the quadrangular building (See NP:2.3.6) ... A quadrangular building comes to be for various families ... from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.7

A long house comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe within the long house. ... A long house comes to be for various families ... from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.8

¹ Vin-a.654, *dvāramūle* = *gharadvāramūle*.

Bu-NP.2.3.9

A mansion comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe within the mansion. ... A mansion comes to be for various families ... from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.10
BD.2.20

A boat comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe within the boat. ... A boat comes to be for various families; there are various rooms, various inner rooms¹; he should remain in the same inner room as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.11

A caravan comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe in the caravan, seven *abbhantaras*² should not be removed before or behind, an *abbhantara* should not be removed from the side. A caravan comes to be for various families: laying aside a robe in the caravan, it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.12

A field comes to be for one family, and is enclosed: laying aside the robe within the field, he should remain within the field. It is not enclosed: it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.³ A field comes to be for various families, and is enclosed. Laying aside the robe within the field, he should either remain at the main entrance, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.⁴ It is not enclosed: it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.13

A threshing-floor comes to be for one family, and is enclosed: laying aside the robe on the threshing-floor, he should remain on the threshing-floor. It is not enclosed: it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. A threshing-floor comes to be for various families, and is enclosed: laying

¹ Cf. the "ocean-going ship" of AN.iv.127=SN.iii.155, and the one at Ja.5.75 which took five hundred passengers. Thus the Indians at the time of the compilation of these works were not apparently ignorant of quite large-scale shipbuilding. ² *abbhantara* also at Vin.1.111. Vin-a.654 says, "here one *abbhantara* is twenty-eight hands." See BD.2, Introduction, p.50.

³ Vin-a.654, "of the field." ⁴ Variant readings at Vin.3.276 suggest some difficulty, even as though there were some omission.

aside the robe on the threshing-floor, he should either remain at the gate, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

BD.2.21

A monastery comes to be for one family, and is enclosed.¹ ... (See NP:2.3.13) ... It is not enclosed. ... A monastery comes to be for various families: ... It is not enclosed; it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.14

Vin.3.202

A dwelling-place comes to be for one family, and is enclosed: laying aside the robe within the dwelling-place, he should remain within the dwelling-place. It is not enclosed: he should remain in the same dwelling-place as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. A dwelling-place comes to be for various families, and is enclosed: he should remain in the same dwelling-place as that in which the robe was laid aside for at the main entrance, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand. It is not enclosed: he should remain in the same dwelling-place as that in which the robe was laid aside, or it should not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.15

A foot of a tree comes to be for one family: laying aside the robe in the shade, if he spreads it entirely in the shade at the time of mid-day, he must remain in the shade.² A foot of a tree comes to be for various families; it must not be removed from the reach of the hand.

Bu-NP.2.3.16

An open space having one precinct means: in a jungle where there are no villages,³ the same precinct is seven *abbhantaras* all round⁴; beyond

Bu-NP.2.3.17

BD.2.22

¹ At Vin.2.154 monks were allowed to enclose their *ārāmas* (monasteries) with bamboo fences, thorn fences and ditches. ² The area is that to which the mid-day shadow spreads. People used to live at the foot of trees. *Mūla*, foot, is literally root. ³ Cf. definition of "jungle" at Vin.3.46, Vin.3.51.

that there are different precincts.¹

Bu-NP.2.3.18

If he thinks that he is away, separated when he is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether he is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that he is not away, separated, when he is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is taken away² when it is not taken away ... If he thinks that it is bestowed when it is not bestowed ... If he thinks that it is lost when it is not lost ... If he thinks that it is destroyed

BD.2.23

⁴ = Vin.1.111. Vin-a.655 says, “standing in the middle there are seven *abbhantaras* extending to all quarters; sitting in the middle he guards the robe put down on the boundary of the eastern or western quarter. But if at the time of sunrise he goes as much as a hair’s breadth to the eastern quarter, the robe is to be forfeited in the western quarter. But at the time of *uposatha*, beginning with the monks sitting at the outer circle of the congregation, the boundary of the seven *abbhantaras* should be removed, so that the boundary increases to the size to which the Order increases.” ¹ Thus, in order to be in the same precinct as the robe, he has to be within seven *abbhantaras* of it. ² Meaning doubtful. *Paccuddhaṭṭa* seems = *paṭi + uddhaṭṭa* or *uddhaṭṭa*, from *uddharati*. Cf. above, BD.2.5, BD.2.15, *ubbhata* *smiṃ kaṭṭhine*, and BD.2.6, n.5. Cf. below, NP:2.3.20 *anto aruṇe paccuddharati*; also BD.2.159; and Vin.4.121f., *apaccuddhāraka* (said of a robe).

If, in this clause, the noun that governs *paccuddhaṭṭa* had been mentioned, the meaning of the verb would have been clearer. I think that it means “taken away” on the analogy of *ubbhata*, and that “robe” is the understood subject; see Vin-a.657. Thus *paccuddhaṭṭa* comes into line with the other past participles, *vissajjita*, *naṭṭha*, etc., whose subject here, as often elsewhere, is to be taken as “robe.” A robe that is taken away means, as do these other verbs (see also “no offence” paragraph), that a monk is no longer responsible for it. Secondly, there is the suggestion that *a-paccu-ddhaṭṭa* means “not (formally) given”; see *Critical Pali Dictionary*. In this context, the noun to be supplied could also be “the agreement,” for *paccu-ddharati* does not appear to be a verb used for giving or distributing robes to monks; and in this case the monk had his robe and was asking permission to be away from it. But if we were to read “the agreement is taken away,” we should still have to explain *paccuddharati* in the “no offence” paragraph, and the point would then arise, could monks, or did they, rescind an agreement once they had given it? Thirdly, the *kaṭṭhina* privileges might be the subject of *paccuddhaṭṭa*, *paccuddharati*, for their removal has been mentioned as a condition in the rule: it is an offence to be absent from the robes if the privileges are removed. Hence there could only be “no offence” if they are not removed, whereas the reverse is stated to be the case. Moreover, *ubbhata*, not *paccuddhaṭṭa*, is the normal way of speaking of the *kaṭṭhina* privileges that are removed.

when it is not destroyed ... If he thinks that it is burnt when it is not burnt ... If he thinks that it is stolen when it is not stolen, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the robe which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is away, separated, when he is not away, separated, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not away, separated, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not away, separated, when he is not away, separated, there is no offence.

There is no offence if before sunrise¹ it is taken away, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt; if they tear it from him; if they take it on trust²; if there is the agreement of the monks,³ if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁴

Bu-NP.2.3.19

¹ *anto aruṇe* = *anto-aruṇagga*, "the time before sunset," so *Critical Pali Dictionary*. ² Cf. Bu-NP.1.3.21 ("broken" = Vin.4.245), Bu-NP.1.3.27, Bu-NP.1.3.29. ³ All these clauses show that in some way the monk's responsibility for the robe had gone. ⁴ Cf. below, BD.2.159.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (*NISSAGGIYA*) 3

Bu-NP.3.1.1
BD.2.24

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time a robe¹ accrued to² a certain monk not at the right time.³ The robe, as they made it, did not suffice for him. Then that monk, pulling out that robe, smoothed it again and again.⁴ The lord, as he was engaged in touring the lodgings, saw this monk pulling out this robe and smoothing it again and again, and seeing him he approached this monk, and having approached he said to this monk:

Vin.3.203

“Why, monk, do you, pulling out this robe, smooth it again and again?”

“Lord, this robe which accrued to me not at the right time, as they made it does not suffice for me, therefore do I, pulling out this robe, smooth it again and again.”

“But, monk, is there for you an expectation of a robe?”⁵

“There is, lord,” he said.

Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow you, having accepted a robe not at the right time, to lay it aside in the expectation of a robe.”⁶

Bu-NP.3.1.2
BD.2.25

¹ *cīvara* means both the made-up robe and the robe-material or robe-cloth. ² *uppannaṃ hoti*. Cf. above, [BD.2.4, n.3](#); below, [BD.2.90](#), [BD.2.99](#). ³ *akalacīvara*. Also at [Vin.4.245](#), [Vin.4.246](#), [Vin.4.284](#), [Vin.4.287](#). ⁴ Vin-a.658, “thinking, if one gets rid of the creases, it will be big (enough for me), sprinkling it with water, treading upon it with his feet, pulling it out with his hands and taking it up, he rubbed it across his back ... but dried by the sun, it (i.e., the robe-material) became as small as before, so he did this again.” ⁵ *cīvarapaccāsā*. Cf. *cīvarāsā* at [Vin.1.259ff.](#), and *bhattapaccāsā* at [Vin.4.77](#). ⁶ Cf. [Bu-NP.2](#), where monks are not allowed to wear extra robes.

Then monks said: "It is allowed by the lord, if a robe has been accepted not at the right time, to lay it aside in the expectation of a robe." These, accepting robes not at the right time, laid them aside for more than a month. These robes, tied up in bundles, remained on a bamboo for hanging up robes.¹ Then the venerable Ānanda, as he was engaged in touring the lodgings, saw these robes tied up in bundles that remained on the bamboo for hanging up robes. Seeing them, he addressed the monks thus:

"Your reverences, whose are these robes, tied up in bundles, that remain on the bamboo for hanging up robes?"

"Your reverence, they are our robes, given not at the right time, that are laid aside in the expectation of robes."

"But for how long, your reverences, have these robes been laid aside?"

"For more than a month, your reverence," they said. Then the venerable Ānanda looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"How can these monks, having accepted robe-material not at the right time, lay it aside for more than a month?"

Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks having accepted robe-material not at the right time, laid it aside for more than a month?" "It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can these foolish men, having accepted robe-material not at the right time, lay it aside for more than a month? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus also, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When the robe-material is settled, when a monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) have been removed, if robe-material should accrue to the monk not at the right time, it may be accepted by that monk if he so wish. Having accepted it, it should be made up quickly. But if it is not sufficient for him, that robe-material may be laid aside by that monk for a month at most, should he have any expectation that the deficiency may be supplied.² If he should lay it aside for longer than that, even with

BD.2.26

¹ *cīvaravaṃsa*, with *cīvararājju* allowed at [Vin.1.286](#), [Vin.2.121](#). Cf. below, [BD.2.152](#). ² Literally "for the completion of," *pāripūriyā*.

the expectation (of the deficiency being supplied), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Vin.3.204

Bu-NP.3.2.1

When the robe-material is settled means: ... (See Bu-NP.2.3) ... or they are removed before the time by the Order.

If robe-material (should accrue) not at the right time means: some that has accrued during the eleven months¹ when the *kāṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made²; some that has accrued during the seven months when the *kāṭhina* cloth is (formally) made, even a gift (of material) offered³ at the right time; this means robe-material (accruing) not at the right time.

BD.2.27

Should accrue means: should accrue from the Order or from a group or from a relation or from a friend, or as rag-ropes, or by means of his own property.⁴

If he so wish means: himself desiring, it may be accepted.

Having accepted it, it should be made up quickly means: it should be made up within ten days.

But if it is not sufficient for him means: if it is not enough to be worn.

That robe-material may be laid aside by that monk for a month at most⁵ means: it may be laid aside for a month at the maximum.⁶

That the deficiency may be supplied means: for the sake of supplying the deficiency.

¹ Vin-a.658, “setting aside one last month of the rainy season (*kattika*), there remain eleven months.” ² *atthata*, from *attharati*, literally “to spread out.” Not however, to be taken literally here, but as the ceremony of making the robes at the end of the rains. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.148 note for very interesting remarks on distributing the robes, and above, BD.2.5, n.1.

These curious expressions, “during the eleven, during the seven months,” mean, I think, that, in the case of the eleven, the *kāṭhina* cloth is only distributed in the month following the termination of the rains; therefore there would be eleven months when it is not made. In the case of the seven months, it is probably meant that no making of robes takes place during the rains, but that in unusual circumstances robe-material might be given to a monk during the remaining seven months of the year. Vin-a.658 says that the four months of the rainy season (*kattika*) are in the winter; thus setting aside five months (i.e., these, with the one remaining over after “eleven months”), there remain seven. Cf. Vin-a.729. Cf. above, BD.2.5, n.3; below, BD.2.154, n.3. ³ *ādissa*; Vin-a.658, *uddisitvā*. ⁴ Cf. below, BD.2.91.

⁵ *pārāmaṇṇi ... paramatā*. ⁶ *pārāmaṇṇi ... paramatā*.

Any expectation means: there is expectation from the Order or from a group or from a relation or from a friend, or as to rag-ropes, or by means of his own property.¹

If he should lay it aside for longer than that, even with the expectation (of the deficiency being supplied) means: if a robe that was expected accrues on the very day that the first robe² accrues, he should have it made up within ten days. ... If a robe that was expected accrues two days ... three days ... four days ... five days ... six days ... seven days ... eight days ... nine days ... ten days after the first robe accrues, he should have it made up within ten days. If a robe that was expected accrues eleven days ... twelve days ... thirteen days ... fourteen days ... fifteen days ... sixteen days ... seventeen days ... eighteen days ... nineteen days ... twenty days after the first robe accrues, he should have it made up within ten days ... twenty-one days after the first robe accrues, he should have it made up within nine days ... twenty-two ... twenty-three ... twenty-four ... twenty-five ... twenty-six days after the first robe accrues, he should have it made up within four days. If a robe that was expected accrues twenty-seven ... twenty-eight ... twenty-nine days ... he should have it made up within one day. If a robe that was expected accrues thirty days after the first robe accrues, on that same day it should be allotted, assigned, bestowed. But should it not be allotted or assigned or bestowed, it is to be forfeited on the thirty-first day at sunrise; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ... ‘This robe, honoured sirs, (given) not at the right time, is to be forfeited by me, the month having elapsed. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘The Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

Bu-NP.3.2.2

BD.2.28

Vin.3.205

Bu-NP.3.2.3

¹ Vin-a.658, “on a certain day the Order or a group will receive robes, and there will be a robe for me; ... a robe has been ordered for me by my relations, by a friend; when these come they will give the robes. ... I will get a robe from the dust-heap, ... by my own property, meaning cotton threads, etc.” This last must mean that if he has the means of sewing the robes together, he may do so. Cf. below, **BD.2.91**. ² *mūlacīvara*, as opposed to *paccāsā-cīvara*, the robe that was expected (Vin-a.659).

If the robe that was expected accrues but is different from the first robe that has accrued, and there are some nights over,¹ it should not be caused to be made up unwillingly.² If he thinks that a month has elapsed when it has elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether a month has elapsed ... If he does not think that a month has elapsed when it has elapsed ... If he thinks that one is allotted when it is not allotted ... If he thinks that one is assigned when it is not assigned ... If he thinks that one is bestowed when it is not bestowed ...
 BD.2.29 If he thinks that one is lost when it is not lost ... If he thinks that one is destroyed when it is not destroyed ... If he thinks that one is burnt when it is not burnt ... If he thinks that one is stolen when it is not stolen, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the robe which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a month has elapsed when it has not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether a month has not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a month has not elapsed when it has not elapsed, there is no offence.

Bu-NP.3.2.4

There is no offence if within a month it is allotted, assigned, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt, if they tear it from him, if they take it on trust; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

¹ I.e., the month not being finished (Vin-a.659). ² *akāma*. Vin-a.659, “if the first robe is soft and the robe that was expected is coarse and it is impossible to mix them, and there are nights, though not a month, remaining, the robe should not be caused to be made up unwillingly. But taking another robe that was expected, this should be made up after an interval, and the robe that was expected should be assigned as a cloth used for water-strainers.” ³ Cf. Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.28, Bu-NP.29; and Bu-NP.21 = Vin.4.245 (“broken” instead of “burnt”).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 4

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ the former wife of the venerable Udāyin had gone forth among the nuns. She frequently came to the venerable Udāyin, and the venerable Udāyin frequently went to this nun. Now at that time the venerable Udāyin used to participate in a meal with this nun. Then the venerable Udāyin, dressing in the morning,² taking his bowl and robe, approached this nun, and having approached and disclosed his private parts in front of this nun, he sat down on a seat. And further, the nun having disclosed her private parts in front of the venerable Udāyin, sat down on a seat. Then the venerable Udāyin, impassioned, looked at and thought about³ this nun's private parts and emitted semen. Then the venerable Udāyin said to this nun:

Bu-NP.4.1.1
BD.2.30

“Go, sister, fetch water, I will wash the inner robe.”

“Give⁴ it (to me), master, I will wash it myself,” and she took hold of one part with her mouth and placed one part on her private parts. Because of this she conceived a child. The nuns spoke thus:

Vin.3.206

“This nun is one who does not lead the Brahma-life, (because) she is pregnant.”

(She, sayin,) “Ladies,⁵ I am not one who does not lead the Brahma-life,” told this matter to the nuns.

BD.2.31

The nuns looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can master Udāyin get a soiled robe⁶ washed by a nun?” Then these

¹ Opening phrases are the same as those of Bu-Pc.30. ² *pubbaṅha* and *aparaṅha* are the morning and the afternoon. Cf. Kp-a.105. ³ *upanijhāyati* has sense of “to look at (eagerly)” and “to reflect on.” ⁴ *āharati* has sense of “to give” here. ⁵ *ayye*. ⁶ *purāṇa-cīvara*, literally “old robe.”

nuns told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Udāyin get a soiled robe washed by a nun?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, got a soiled robe washed by a nun?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

“Was she a relation of yours, Udāyin, or not a relation?”

“She was not a relation, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man,¹ one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is pleasant or what is unpleasant for a woman who is not a relation. Thus you, foolish man, will get a soiled robe washed by a nun who is not a relation. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should get a soiled robe washed or dyed² or beaten³ by a nun who is not a relation, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”⁴

Bu-NP.4.2.1

Whatever means: he who ...

(A nun) who is not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother’s side or on the father’s side back through seven generations.⁵

BD.2.32

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.⁶

¹ Oldenberg’s edition has *moghapuriso*; but see Sinhalese edition, and also below, **BD.2.39**, **BD.2.44**, where the vocative, *moghapurisa*, occurs in similar contexts. ² Six kinds of dyes allowed at **Vin.1.286**. ³ At **Vin.1.286** monks are allowed to beat, *ākoṭeti*, with the hands robe-material that has become harsh. ⁴ Cf. **Bu-NP.17** for both “rule” and Old Commentary. ⁵ Cf. below, **Bu-NP.6.3.1**. This definition = **Vin.3.212**, **Vin.3.214**, **Vin.3.216**, **Vin.3.219**, **Vin.3.235**; **Vin.4.60**, **Vin.4.61**. ⁶ = below, **BD.2.40**, **BD.2.96**, and *passim*. Vin-a.660, “she is ordained by a motion of the Order of nuns where the resolution is put three times and followed by the decision (as the fourth item, *ñatticatuttha*), then she is ordained in the same way by the Order of monks. Therefore she is ordained by eight Vinaya acts.”

A soiled robe means: dressed in¹ it once, put on² once.

Wash means: he gives an order³—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If washed, it is to be forfeited.

Dye means: he gives an order—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If dyed, it is to be forfeited.

Beat means: he gives an order—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If once having given a blow with the palm (of the hand) or a blow with a club, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, this soiled robe which I had washed by a nun who is not a relation, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'"

Vin.3.207

Bu-NP.4.2.2

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her dye (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.⁴ If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her beat (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her dye, makes her

BD.2.33

¹ *nivāttha*, past participle of *nivāseti*. It refers to the *antaravāsaka*, the inner or under robe that hangs down from the waist, and to the *uttarāsaṅga*, upper robe; also to the cloths for the rains (Bu-NP.24), to garments worn by members of other sects (Vin.1.305f.), to garments called *akkanāla* and *potthaka* (Vin.1.306f.), to nuns' vests (Vin-a.663), to a laywoman's outer cloak, *sāṭaka*, Vin.4.18. ² *pāruta*, past participle of *pārupati*. It refers to the *saṅghāṭi*, outer cloak; also to a (costly) *paṭa*, or cloth (below, BD.2.109), and to *vihāracīvara*, and other things that a monk may put on, *pārupitum*, to cover the body if the robes are stolen or lost (Bu-NP.6). Thus, for a monk, both *nivāseti* and *pārupati* are required to indicate the putting on or dressing in the complete set of three robes. Cf. Vin.4.281f., where the two words occur in connection with the five kinds of robes a nun should wear. See below, BD.2.88, where "old rug," *purāṇasanthata*, is defined as is "soiled robe," *purāṇa-cīvara*, above. ³ Vin-a.660, "the nun who was ordered prepares an oven, collects sticks, makes a fire, fetches water, until, having washed it, she holds it up: there is an offence of wrong-doing in each action for the monk." ⁴ *nissaggiyena āpatti dukkaṭassa*; probably *pācittiya* omitted merely for the sake of brevity.

beat (his) soiled robe, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her beat (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her wash (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her beat, makes her wash (his) soiled robe, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her beat (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her beat, makes her wash (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her beat, makes her dye (his) soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her beat, makes her wash, makes her dye (his) soiled robe, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

BD.2.34

If he is in doubt as to whether she is not a relation ... If he thinks that a woman is a relation when she is not a relation ... If he makes her wash another's soiled robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes her

wash a sheet (used as) a piece of cloth for sitting on,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes a woman who has been ordained by one (Order only) wash it,² there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is a relation when she is a relation, there is no offence.

There is no offence when a female relation is washing it if a woman assistant who is not a relation is (helping); if she washes it unasked³; if he makes her wash an unused one; if he makes her wash another requisite,⁴ except the robe; if it is (washed) by a female probationer, by a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁵

Bu-NP.4.2.3

BD.2.35

¹ A compound word in Pali, *nisidana-paccattharaṇa*. *Nisidana* is a piece of cloth for sitting on; *paccattharaṇa* is the bed-clothes, really a piece of cloth for covering a bed or chair, thus a sheet. Cf. below, [BD.2.46, n.3](#). At [Vin.1.295](#) a *nisidana* was found to be too small to protect the whole lodging; to meet this difficulty the lord is reputed to have allowed a *paccattharaṇa*, made as large as one wishes. It looks therefore as if *nisidana-paccattharaṇa* is either a sheet that is a piece of cloth to sit upon, although larger than a mere “piece of cloth to sit upon,” the mere *nisidana*; or that it is a sheet used as, or instead of, a piece of cloth for sitting on. Cf. *nisidana-santhata*, in [Bu-NP.15](#), and both in Introduction. ² [Vin-a.662](#), “causing it to be washed by one who was ordained (only) in the presence of the nuns is an offence of wrong-doing, and it is the same for one who has been ordained (only) in the presence of the monks; five hundred Sakyan women were ordained in the presence of the monks.”

³ [Vin-a.662](#), “if she has come for the Exposition and the Exhortation, seeing the soiled robe and taking it from the place where it was put, she says: ‘Give it, master, I will wash it,’ and when it is brought she washes it and moreover dyes it and beats it—this is called ‘she washes it unasked’ (*avuttā*). If she hears a monk ordering a youth or a novice to wash the robe, she says: ‘Bring it, master, I will wash it,’ and she washes it, or taking it for a time, having washed it and dyed it, she then gives it back—this is called ‘she washes it unasked.’”

⁴ [Vin-a.662](#), “a sandal, bowl, shoulder-strap, girdle, couch, chair, straw mat.” ⁵ Cf. below, [BD.2.97f](#).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (*NISSAGGIYA*) 5

Bu-NP.5.1.1
BD.2.36

Vin.3.208

BD.2.37

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. At that time the nun Uppalavaṇṇā¹ was staying at Sāvattihī. Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, dressing in the morning and taking her bowl and robe, entered Sāvattihī for alms-food. Having wandered about Sāvattihī for alms-food, returning from her alms-gathering after her meal,² she approached the Blind Men's Grove³ for the mid-day rest; having plunged into the Blind Men's Grove she sat down at the foot of a tree for the mid-day rest. Now at that time some thieves, having done their deeds,⁴ having killed a cow⁵ and taken the flesh, entered the Blind Men's Grove. Then the robber-chief saw the nun Uppalavaṇṇā as she was sitting at the foot of the tree for the mid-day rest, and seeing her, it occurred to him: "If my sons and brothers see this nun they will trouble her," and he went by a different way.⁶

Then that robber-chief, taking the best meats of the cooked meat, ty-

¹ Vin.3.35 tells the story of the rape of Uppalavaṇṇā by a brahmin youth; see BD.1.53, n.5.

² *pacchābhatta*; *bhatta* usually means cooked rice. As this is the main thing put into the bowl, it has come to mean the whole meal. ³ Malalasekera, *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* 1.111, says, "Blind,' usually, but wrongly, translated 'Dark'." He gives the story accounting for the name of this Grove, an episode that must have taken place before the rape of Uppalavaṇṇā, as it is said (Dhp-a.2.49, Dhp-a.2.52) that after that time nuns were not to stay in this Grove. Vin-a.662 also says that Uppalavaṇṇā entered the Blind Men's Grove, because the rule of training had not then been laid down. Those who translate *andhavana* as "Dark Grove" think of it, rightly or wrongly, as a Grove where, because it is so dark, it is impossible to see anything. ⁴ *kata-kammā*—i.e., committed thefts. Said of *māṇava* (Commentary: *cora*, thief) at AN.iii.102, and of *cora* at Vism.180, Ja.3.34. ⁵ The cow was probably not so sacred then as now, and the cattle-thief common in those days. ⁶ Vin-a.662, "It is said that formerly the robber-chief knew the *therī*, therefore seeing her as he went in front of the robbers, he said: 'Do not go there, all come here,' and taking them he went by another way."

ing (them up) in a leaf-packet, and hanging it up on a tree near the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, said: “Whatever recluse or brahmin sees it, it is given (to him), let him take it,”¹ and having spoken thus, he departed. Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, arising from contemplation,² heard these words of that robber-chief as he was speaking.³ Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, taking that meat, went to the nunnery. Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, having prepared⁴ that meat at the end of that night, tying it up into a bundle with her upper robe,⁵ rising in the air,⁶ reappeared in the Bamboo Grove.

Now at that time the lord was visiting the village for alms-food, and the venerable Udāyin came to be the one left behind as guardian of the dwelling. Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached, she said to the venerable Udāyin:

“Where, honoured sir, is the lord?”

He said, “Sister, the lord has entered the village for alms-food.”

“Give this meat to the lord, honoured sir,” she said.

“You, sister, have pleased the lord with this meat; if you were to give me your inner robe, likewise would I become pleased with the inner robe.”⁷

“But we women, honoured sir, get things with difficulty. This is my last, (my) fifth robe.⁸ I shall not give it to you,” she said.

¹ By these words the meat was made *kappiya*, allowable, and became a gift that might be taken. ² On *samādhi* as a term in Hindu philosophy, see RADHAKRISHNAN, *Eastern Religions and Western Thought*, 49–52. It is there rendered as “unification,” “identification,” “ecstatic consciousness.” It is possible that the “sense of immediate contact with ultimate reality, of the unification of the different sides of our nature,” was not absent from the Early Buddhist conception of *samādhi*. ³ Vin-a.663, “It is said that the *therī* arose from contemplation at the appointed time: he spoke (the words reported above) at that very moment, and she heard and thought, “There is no other *samaṇa* or brahmin here but me.” ⁴ *sampādetvā*, possibly “roasted.” ⁵ = Vin.4.162. ⁶ On *vehāmsa* as “above the ground” see BD.1.179, n.6. ⁷ Vin-a.663, Udāyin is filled with lust and greed. ⁸ Vin-a.663, she did not speak from greed, for “in those who have destroyed the cankers there is no greed”; but there was no robe left over of the five that were to be worn by nuns. These five, as *pañca cīvāraṇi*, are referred to at Vin.4.281f. At Vin.2.272 it is said that the three usual robes, the vest, *saṅkacchika*, and the bathing-cloth, should be pointed out to women who wish to receive the *upasampadā* ordination. Nuns were also allowed indoors robes or cloths, *āvasathacīvara* (Vin.2.217), but apparently such things were handed from nun to nun as need arose (Vin.4.303).

“It is as if, sister, a man giving an elephant should caparison¹ its girth,² yet even so do you, sister, (though) giving meat to the lord, not give³ me your inner robe.”⁴

Then the nun Uppalavaṇṇā, being pressed by the venerable Udāyin, giving him her inner robe, went to the nunnery. The nuns, taking the nun Uppalavaṇṇā’s bowl and robe, said to the nun Uppalavaṇṇā:

“Lady, where is your inner robe?”

Vin.3.209

The nun Uppalavaṇṇā told this matter to the nuns. The nuns looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

BD.2.39

“How can the venerable Udāyin accept a robe from a nun? Women come by things with difficulty.” And then these nuns told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Udāyin accept a robe from a nun?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, accepted a robe from a nun?”

“It is true, lord.”

“Is she a relation of yours, Udāyin, or not a relation?”

“She is not a relation, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right⁵ or what is wrong for a woman who is not a relation.⁶ Thus you, foolish man, will accept a robe from the hand of a nun who is not a relation. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

¹ *sajjeyya*. *Sajjeti* is to send out, to prepare, equip, fit up, decorate, deck out, and came to mean to give. ² *kaccha*, here accusative plural. It is the girth or middle of an animal. If a present of an elephant is being made, a decorated cloth to be tied round his middle should also be given. ³ *sajjeyya*. *Sajjeti* is to send out, to prepare, equip, fit up, decorate, deck out, and came to mean to give. ⁴ Here there is a parallelism between *kaccha*, an accessory of the elephant, and *antaravāsaka*, the inner robe, which Udāyin thought might accompany the gift of meat. The meat had been wrapped up in the nun’s upper robe, and it is to be presumed that she was in consequence going about in her inner robe; see [BD.2.xviii](#). ⁵ *santa*, meaning “right” or “existent.” ⁶ Cf. below, [BD.2.44](#), and [Vin.4.59](#). Also above, [BD.2.31](#), where, however, we get *pāsādika* and *apāsādika*, pleasant and unpleasant, instead of *santa* and *asanta*, right and wrong.

“Whatever monk should accept a robe from the hand of a nun who is not a relation, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Then scrupulous monks did not accept exchange of robes¹ with nuns. The nuns ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-NP.5.2.1

“How can the masters not accept exchange of robes with us?”

Monks heard these nuns who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow you to accept exchange among these five (classes of people)²: a monk, a nun, a female probationer, a male novice, a female novice. I allow you, monks, to accept exchange among these five (classes of people). And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.40

“Whatever monk should accept a robe from the hand of a nun who is not a relation, except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”³

Whatever means: ... (See [Bu-NP.4.2.1](#)) ...

Bu-NP.5.3.1

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.⁴

Vin.3.210

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.⁵

Except in exchange means: without an exchange.

He accepts: in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; it should be forfeited on acquisition; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this robe, accepted from the hand of a nun who is not a relation, is to be

¹ *pārivattakacivara*. Cf. *parivatteti* barter, [BD.2.55](#), below. ² Vin-a.663, “among these five (kinds of) co-religionists having the same faith, the same morality, the same views.” ³ At [Vin.4.60](#) it is a *pācittiya* to give (*dātuṃ*) a robe to a nun who is not related, except in exchange. ⁴ = above, [BD.2.32](#), below, [BD.2.96](#), and [Vin.4.52](#), [Vin.4.55](#), [Vin.4.57](#), [Vin.4.60](#), *passim*. ⁵ = above, [BD.2.7](#), and see there n.4; see also below, [BD.2.48](#), [BD.2.140](#).

forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

Bu-NP.5.3.2

If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation, (and) accepts a robe, except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether the woman is not a relation, (and) accepts a robe, except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation invoking forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is a relation when she is not a relation, (and) accepts a robe, except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he accepts a robe, except in exchange, from the hand of a woman ordained by one (Order only),¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether a woman is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a woman is a relation when she is a relation, there is no offence.

BD.2.41

Bu-NP.5.3.3

There is no offence if she is a relation; if there is an exchange; if there is a large thing for a small thing, or a small thing for a large thing²; if a monk takes it on trust³; if he takes it for the time being; if he takes another requisite, except the robe; if she is a female probationer, a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Vin-a.664, “taking from the hand of a woman ordained in the presence of nuns (only), is an offence of wrong-doing; but from one ordained in the presence of monks (only), is an offence of expiation.” ² Vin-a.664, “if bartering a precious sandal, a robe, shoulder-strap, waist-band, for a robe of little value, he accepts that robe, there is no offence.” ³ At [Vin.4.60](#) it is the nun who may take on trust, the monk giving.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 6

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans,¹ came to be skilled² in giving *dhamma*-talk.³ Now at that time a certain son of a (great) merchant⁴ approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached and greeted the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, he sat down at a respectful distance.⁵ As he was sitting at a respectful distance, the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, gladdened ... and delighted that son of a (great) merchant with *dhamma*-talk. And then the son of the

Bu-NP.6.1.1
BD.2.42

BD.2.43

¹ He had a novice, Kaṇḍaka, who behaved badly, [Vin.1.79](#), [Vin.1.85](#). At [Vin.1.153](#), having promised Pasenadi to spend the rains with him, he went to another place; and at [Vin.1.300](#), having spent the rains at one place, he accepted a share of robes at others. At [Vin.2.165](#), coming late to a meal, he made a monk get up and give him his place. At [Vin.2.168](#) he took two lodgings, and is also called a “maker of strife, quarrelsome.” He is mentioned in [Bu-NP.8](#), [Bu-NP.9](#), [Bu-NP.10](#), [Bu-NP.18](#), [Bu-NP.20](#), [Bu-NP.25](#), [Bu-NP.27](#), and in various *Pācittiya*s.

² *paṭṭho*, probably for *paddho*. [Vin-a.665](#) says, *paṭṭho ti cheko samattho paṭibalo*. ³ *dhammī kathā*. Here, more a talk on religious or philosophical matters than the “reasoned talk” given by the lord before modifying one of the rules. See above, [BD.2.4](#), [BD.2.14](#). ⁴ *setṭhiputta*.

Setṭhi is a banker and a trader combined, hence a merchant, head of a guild. He is primarily a merchant, and a banker only because a merchant, and because there were no banks in those days. *Setṭhi-putta* indicates that the father was still alive, so that his son, the *setṭhiputta*, is not yet head of the firm, but will be on the death of his father. He would then become a *setṭhi*. ⁵ *ekamantaṃ nisīdi*, literally sat down to one side, or end. In sitting down in the presence of an honoured person, care should be taken not to sit down in any of the six wrong ways, or *nisajjadosa*. These are *atidūra*, *accādsanna*, *uparivāta*, *unnatappadesa*, *atisammukha*, *atipacchā*, too far, too near, to windward, on a higher seat, too much in front, too much behind; see [Vin-a.129](#) = [MN-a.1.110](#); [Ud-a.53](#) (abbreviated); [SN-a.i.16](#) for similar six wrong ways of standing; and *cf.* [SN-a.ii.86](#) for a different set of six *nisajjadosa*. To consider all these difficulties, and to sit down so as to cause no discomfort to the honoured person, is *ekamantaṃ nisīdi*.

(great) merchant, having been gladdened ... and delighted by the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, with *dhamma*-talk, said to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

Vin.3.211 “Honoured sir, do let me know what will be of use.¹ We are able to give to the master, that is to say of the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings and medicine for the sick.”²

“If you, sir, are desirous of giving something to me, give (me) one cloth from these,”³ he said.

“Wait, honoured sir, until I go to the house; having gone to the house I will send either one cloth from these or something better than these.”

A second time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to the son of the (great) merchant ... A third time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to the son of the (great) merchant: “If you, sir, are desirous of giving something to me, give (me) one cloth from these.”

BD.2.44 “Now, honoured sir, for us who are sons of respectable families, it is awkward⁴ to go out with (only) one piece of cloth. Wait, honoured sir, until I go to the house; having gone to the house I will send either one cloth from these or something better than these.”

“What is the good, sir, of your offering without desire to give, because even after you have offered you do not give?”

Then that son of the (great) merchant, being pressed by the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, giving one cloth, went away.

Bu-NP.6.1.2

People, seeing the son of a (great) merchant, spoke thus:

¹ *yena attho*. Cf. BD.1.222 for same expression. ² Genitive or dative plural used here instead of accusative plural, which usually goes with *dātuṃ*, to give. ³ *ito*. This refers to the two pieces of cloth that a man would ordinarily wear, as is done today in India, except in the Punjab: the *dhoti* and the *chaddar*, the one put on at the waist, and the other to cover the top part of the body. The son of the merchant, in this story, presumably had on no more than the customary two pieces of cloth, so that if he gave one away, he would have to go partially naked. So he said, “Wait.” ⁴ *kismiṃ viya = kiṃ viya*, it is what? it is like what? There is no English expression to render this exactly, but in most Indian languages there is something of the sort. The origin of the expression is obscure. Cf. “it is awkward to go empty-handed,” *kismiṃ viya rittahattham gantum*, below, BD.2.321, and n.4.

“Why do you, master, come with (only) one cloth?” Then this son of a (great) merchant told this matter to these people. The people looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have great desires, they are not contented; among them it is not easy to make reasonable requests.¹ How can they take a cloth when a reasonable request was made by the son of a (great) merchant?”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, ask the son of a (great) merchant for a robe?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, asked the son of the (great) merchant for a robe?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

“Is he a relation of yours, Upananda, or not a relation?”

“He is not a relation, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for one who is not a relation.² Thus you, foolish man, will ask a son of a (great) merchant for a robe. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.45

“Whatever monk should ask a man or a woman householder who is not a relation (of his) for a robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time several monks³ were going along the high-road from

Bu-NP.6.2.1

Vin.3.212

¹ *dhammanimantana*, a request such as could reasonably be made by a pious man to a good monk, a request made to religious people in a suitable way. Here the monk presumed on the request made him by the merchant's son. ² Cf. above, **BD.2.39**. ³ *sambahulā*, bhikkhū, or “two or three” or “many monks”; see above, **BD.2.8, n.6**.

Sāketa to Sāvattthī. Midway on the road, thieves issuing forth, plundered these monks.¹ Then these monks said:

“It is forbidden by the lord to ask a man or woman householder who is not a relation for a robe.” And being scrupulous, they did not ask, (but) going naked as they were to Sāvattthī, they saluted the monks respectfully. The monks said:

“Your reverences, these Naked Ascetics² are very good because they respectfully salute these monks.”³

They said: “Your reverences, we are not Naked Ascetics, we are monks.”

The monks said to the venerable Upāli: “If so,⁴ reverend Upāli, question these.”⁵

Then the venerable Upāli, having questioned these monks,⁶ said to the monks: “These are monks, your reverences; give them robes.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can monks come naked? Should they not come covered up with grass or leaves?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, one whose robe is stolen or one whose robe is destroyed, to ask a man or woman householder who is not a relation (of his) for a robe. If there is for the Order at the first residence⁷ which he approaches either

¹ Vin-a.665, “they stole their bowls and robes.” ² *ājīvakā*. ³ Or, “these Naked Ascetics who respectfully salute these monks are very good.” ⁴ *iṅgha*. ⁵ Vin-a.665, “ask them for the sake of knowing their status as monks.” ⁶ Vin-a.665, “he asked them about the *pabbajjā* and the *upasampadā* ordinations, and about bowls and robes.” ⁷ *āvāsa*. Cf. **BD.1.314, n.3**. *Āvāsa* appears to be largely a monastic term, *nivesana* being a layman’s dwelling. I think that the arrangement was as follows: *ārāma* was a whole monastery, consisting of the grounds and the buildings; *āvāsa* was the “colony” or place in which the monks lived. In general, the larger *āvāsa* may be said to have contained, besides such “rooms” as the *uposatha* hall, the refectory, the warming-room and so on, a number of *vihāras*. These were the separate rooms or dwelling-places, each given over to one monk, or if he had a *saddhivihārin* to two, to live in and use as his quarters, while staying at that particular *ārāma*.

The so-called “temples,” the *ārāmas*, of Ceylon today contain five buildings on the “temple” or monastery site: the *thūpa*, the shrine-room, the hall of residence for monks (containing separate rooms for each monk), the teaching-hall (school) and the preaching hall. Several cells or rooms, *pariveṇa* or *vihāra*, suitable for not more than one monk to sleep in, lead off some of the large caves at Ellora and Ajanta.

a robe in the dwelling-place¹ or a bed-cover² or a ground-covering³ or a mattress-cover,⁴ (I allow) him to take it to put on, if he says, 'Getting (a robe), I will replace⁵ it.' But if there is not for the Order either a robe in the dwelling-place or a bed-cover or a ground-covering or a mattress-cover, then he should come covered up with grass or leaves; but he should not come naked. Who should so come, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁶ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.47

“Whatever monk should ask a man or woman householder who is not a relation (of his) for a robe, except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. This is the right time in this case: if a monk becomes one whose robe is stolen or whose robe is destroyed; in this case this is the right time.”

Bu-NP.6.3.1

¹ *vihāracīvara*. As far as I know the word occurs only here. Vin-a.666 says, “people having had a residence erected, thinking, ‘Let the four requisites belonging to us be of use (to the monks),’ making ready sets of three robes and depositing them in the residence that they have erected—this is what is called a *vihāracīvara*.” It thus seems to be a robe put by in case of need in a residence, and more specifically in the *vihāra*, or dwelling-place portion of it—i.e., not in the refectory or any of the other rooms used together by the community.

² *uttarattharaṇa*. This is a cover for a bed or chair, used out of respect for the person who uses the bed or chair, so as to prevent his clothes from being soiled. Vin-a.666 says that it is called a sheet for spreading on or over a couch, *uttarattharaṇan ti mañcakassa upari attharaṇakam paccattharaṇam vuccati*. At Vin-a.776 *uttarattharaṇa* is called a sheet that may be spread over couches and chairs, *uttarattharaṇan ti nāma mañcapīṭhānam upari attharittabbakam paccattharaṇan*. On *paccattharaṇa* see above, [BD.2.34, n.1](#).

³ *bhummattharaṇa*. Vin-a.666, “when the earth is prepared, they cover it for the sake of preserving its texture with carpets; spreading out a straw mat above this they walk up and down” At Vin-a.776 *bhummattharaṇa* is called a mat for sitting or lying on, *kaṭusāraka*, that may be spread on the ground. Cf. below, [BD.2.73](#).

⁴ *bhisicchavi*. Vin-a.666, “the outer skin (*chavi*) of a mattress for a couch or a mattress for a chair.” *Bhisi*, a mattress, may mean a door-rug, something thick for wiping the feet, or a cushion. In fact, anything like a mattress afterwards came to be called *bhisi*. At [Vin.4.40](#) (=below, [BD.2.240](#)) five materials are given of which a *bhisi* might lawfully be made. See also *Vinaya Texts* ii.210, n.

⁵ *odahissāmi*. Vin-a.667 explains by *puna ṭhapessāmi*, “I will deposit again.”

⁶ Cf. [Vin.1.305](#): whatever monk adopts nakedness, the adoption of members of other sects, there is a grave offence; Visākhā’s strictures on nakedness for monks and nuns, [Vin.1.292](#), [Vin.1.293](#); and [Bu-NP.24](#) below. At the root of the desire that monks should be clothed was the need, lay and monastic, to differentiate between *bhikkhus* and *titthiyas*, or those of them who were Naked Ascetics.

Whatever means: he who ...

Monk means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother's side or on the father's side back through seven generations.¹

A householder means: he who lives in a house.²

A woman householder means: she who lives in a house.³

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.⁴

Except at the right time means: setting the right time to one side.

One whose robe is stolen means: a monk's robe becomes stolen⁵ by kings or by thieves or by rogues, or it becomes stolen by anyone whatsoever.

One whose robe is destroyed means: a monk's robe becomes burnt by fire, or it becomes carried away by water,⁶ or it becomes eaten by rats and white ants, or it becomes worn by use.

Vin.3.213
BD.2.48

Bu-NP.6.3.2

If he asks, except at the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; it is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'This robe, honoured sirs, asked for by me from a householder who is not a relation, except at the right time, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'

Bu-NP.6.3.3

If he thinks that a man (or woman) is not a relation when he is not a relation, (and) asks for a robe except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether a man is not a relation (and) asks for a robe except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a man is a relation when he is not a relation, (and) asks for a robe except at the right time, there is an

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.31](#); below, [BD.2.55](#). ² Cf. below, [BD.2.55](#). *Ajjhāvasati* is, according to *Critical Pali Dictionary*, "to dwell in (as an owner)." ³ Cf. below, [BD.2.55](#). *Ajjhāvasati* is, according to *Critical Pali Dictionary*, "to dwell in (as an owner)." ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.2.7](#) and [n.4](#); [BD.2.40](#), and below, [BD.2.140](#). ⁵ Here presumably with the sense of "taken forcibly." ⁶ *udakena vulham*; cf. [Vin.1.32](#). Sinhalese edition has *vūlham*, which I understand to be the correct form.

offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a man is not a relation when he is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether a man is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a man is a relation when he is a relation, there is no offence.

BD.2.49

There is no offence if it is at the right time; if they belong to relations; if they are invited¹; if it is for another; if it is by means of his own property²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-NP.6.3.4

¹ Vin-a.667 seems to take *ñātakānaṃ pavāritānaṃ* together—i.e., without the comma of the text. Commentary says “if they are for relations who are invited”; and later *pavāritānaṃ* is taken up again, “whoever having invited, but who owing to foolishness or forgetfulness, does not give, should be asked ... If he says, ‘I invite you to my house,’ going to his house you should sit down for as long as desirable, or lie down, but take nothing. If he says, ‘I invite you to whatever is in my house,’ you should ask for what is allowable there.” Cf. below, [BD.1.52](#), [BD.1.57](#). ² Vin-a.667, “if he asks for a robe by means of utensils allowable to monks (*kappiyabhaṇḍa*), if it is by an allowable procedure (*kappiyavohārena*).” Cf. above, [BD.2.27](#), [n.3](#).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 7

Bu-NP.7.1.1
BD.2.50

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time the group of six monks having come up to monks whose robes had been stolen, said: "Your reverences, one whose robe has been stolen or one whose robe has been destroyed is allowed by the lord to ask for a robe from a man or woman householder who is not a relation¹; your reverences, ask (them) for a robe."

They said: "No, we don't want² (one), your reverences, a robe has been obtained by us."

"We are asking for the venerable ones," they said.

"Do ask (them), your reverences."

Then the group of six monks, having approached householders, said:

"Sirs, monks are coming whose robes have been stolen; give them robes," (and) they asked for many robes. At that time a certain man who was sitting in a village assembly hall³ said to another man:

Vin.3.214

"Master,⁴ monks are coming whose robes have been stolen; I gave them a robe."

Then he said: "I also gave (to them)."

Then another man said: "I also gave (to them)."

These men ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation,⁵ ask for many robes? Will the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, deal in the cloth trade⁶ or will they set up a shop⁷?"

BD.2.51

The monks heard these men who ... spread it about.

¹ Bu-NP.6. ² *alam*. ³ *sabhāyaṃ nisinno*. ⁴ *ayyo*, not *ayye*, indicates affection and familiarity along with respect. ⁵ They do not care for moderation, do not think of it, or have forgotten it. ⁶ This is simply a rebuke. ⁷ Cf. below, BD.2.113, and Vin.2.291.

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the group of six monks, not knowing moderation, ask for many robes?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, not knowing moderation, asked for many robes?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, not knowing moderation, ask for many robes? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"If a man or a woman householder who is not a relation, asking (a monk), should invite¹ him (to take material for) many robes, then at most (material for) an inner and an upper robe² should be accepted as robe-material by that monk; if he should accept more than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Him means: the monk whose robe has been stolen.

A man who is not a relation means: ... (See [Bu-NP.6.3.1](#)) ... she who lives in a house.

(For) many robes³ means: (for) abundant robes.⁴

Asking, should invite means: he says, "Take just as much as you want."

At most (material for) an inner and an upper robe should be accepted as robe-material by that monk means: if the three (robes) come to be destroyed, two may be accepted; if two are destroyed, one may be accepted; if one is destroyed nothing may be accepted.

¹ *abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya*. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.440 for note on this phrase. It is there found that *abhihaṭṭhum* (in spite of the spelling with -ṭṭh-) is a gerund from *abhi-har*, like Prakrit *abhihaṭṭum*. This is confirmed by Vin-a.668, MN-a.2.264 (on MN.i.222) = AN-a. (on AN.v.350) = SN-a.iii.54 (on SN.iv.190) which explain *abhihaṭṭhum* by *abhiharitvā*. The phrase *abhihaṭṭhum pavāreti* is followed by the instrumental, the sense of *pavāreti* being to "present with, to supply with, to invite with." Here "to invite" seems the best translation, as the choice of the amount is made to rest with the monk. Also Vin-a.668 says that the term means "to make to like," as well as *nimanteti*, to request, or invite. *Critical Pali Dictionary* suggests that *abhiharati + pavāreti* means to bring out and offer (food, etc.). ² *santaruttara*; see above, [BD.2.12, n.1](#). ³ *bahūhi ... bahukehi*. ⁴ *bahūhi ... bahukehi*.

If he should accept more than that means: if he asks for more than that there is an offence of wrong-dong in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, having gone up to a householder who is not a relation, this robe material asked for by me more than that (which I should ask for), is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

Vin.3.215

Bu-NP.7.2.2

If he thinks that a man is not a relation when is he not a relation (and asks for robe-material more than that (which he should ask for), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not a relation ... (See **Bu-NP.6.2**) ... is no offence.

Bu-NP.7.2.3

There is no offence if, saying: ‘I will take the remainder,’ taking it he goes away; if they give the remainder, saying: ‘Let it be only for you’; if they do not give because (a robe was) stolen¹; if they do not give because (a robe was) destroyed; if they belong to relations²; if they are invited; if it is by means of his own property³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Vin-a.669, “they give on account of his being learned and so on” (and not because he was robbed). ² Cf. above, **BD.2.49**. ³ Cf. above, **BD.2.27**, **BD.2.49**.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 8

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time¹ a certain man said to his wife: "I will present² master Upananda³ with a robe." A certain monk who was going for alms heard the words of this man as he was speaking. Then this monk approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached he said to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

Bu-NP.8.1.1
BD.2.53

"You, reverend Upananda, are of great merit⁴; on a certain occasion a certain man said to his wife: 'I will present master Upananda with a robe.'"

"Your reverence, he is my supporter," he said.

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, approached this man, and having approached he said to this man:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, sir, desire to present me with a robe?"

"Did I not also think, master: I will present master Upananda with a robe?"

"If you, sir, desire to present me with a robe, present me with a robe like this. What shall I do with one presented that I cannot make use of?"

Then that man ... spread it about, saying: "These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have great desires, they are not contented. It is not easy to present them with a robe. How can master Upananda, before being invited by me, approaching me, put forward a consideration⁵ with regard to a robe?"

BD.2.54

Monks heard that man who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the venerable Upananda, the

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.9 ² *acchādeti* has sense of to give so as to clothe or cover. ³ See also Bu-NP.6.

⁴ Same thing said to Upananda at Vin.1.300, and Vin.3.217, Vin.3.257 (BD.2.58, BD.2.145, below). ⁵ *vikappaṃ āpajjissati*. Cf. below, BD.2.145, where again Upananda is greedy about robes.

son of the Sakyans, before being invited, approaching a householder, put forward a consideration with regard to a robe?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

Vin.3.216

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, before being invited, approaching a householder, put forward a consideration with regard to a robe?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

“Is he a relation of yours, Upananda, or not a relation?”

“He is not a relation, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation¹ does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for one who is not a relation.² Thus you, foolish man, before being invited, approaching a householder who is not a relation, will put forward a consideration with regard to a robe. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In case a robe-fund³ comes to be laid by for a monk by a man or a woman householder who is not a relation (of his), thinking: ‘I will present the monk so and so with a robe, having got the robe in exchange for this robe-fund’—then if that monk, out of desire for something fine, approaching before being invited, should put forward a consideration with regard to a robe, saying: ‘Indeed it would be well; do let the venerable one,⁴ having got a robe like this or like that in exchange for this robe-fund, present it to me,’ there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

BD.2.55

Bu-NP.8.2.1

For a monk⁵ means: for the good of a monk, making a monk an object, being desirous of presenting to a monk.

A man who is not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother’s side or on the father’s side back through seven generations.⁶

¹ Cf. below, [BD.2.147](#). ² Cf. above, [BD.2.39](#), [BD.2.44](#), and below, [BD.2.59](#), [BD.2.147](#). ³ *cīvaracetāpana*. A robe-fund consisted of things for barter. This passage is complicated by the various meanings, brought out by the Old Commentary, (see below), which appear to be attached to the cognate forms, °*cetāpana*, °*cetāpanena*, and °*cetāpetvā*. Vin-a.670, *cīvaracetāpanan ti cīvaramūlaṃ*. ⁴ *āyasmā*, perhaps here “gentleman”—or “lady”; certainly it is an honorific title. Cf. below, [BD.2.148](#). ⁵ Cf. this portion of the Old Commentary, with that on [Bu-NP.8](#) and [Bu-NP.27](#). ⁶ See above, [BD.2.31](#), [BD.2.47](#).

A householder means: he who lives in a house.¹

A woman householder means: she who lives in a house.

Robe-fund means: gold or a gold coin² or a pearl or a jewel or a coral or a ploughshare³ or a (piece of) cloth⁴ or thread or cotton.

For this robe-fund means: for what is present.⁵

Having got in exchange means: having bartered.⁶

I will present means: I will give.

Then if that monk means: that monk for whom the robe-fund comes to be laid by.

Before being invited means: before it was said (to him): 'What kind of robe do you want, honoured sir? What kind of robe shall I get in exchange for you?'

Approaching means: going to the house, approaching (him) anywhere.

Should put forward a consideration with regard to a robe means: 'Let it be long or wide or rough⁷ or soft.'

For this robe-fund means: for what is present.

Like this or like that means: long or wide or rough or soft.

Having got in exchange means: having bartered.

Present (it) means: give (it).

Out of desire for something fine means: wanting what is good, wanting what is costly.

If according to what he says, he gets in exchange one that is long or wide or rough or soft, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, before I was invited (to take) this robe, approaching a householder who was not a relation, I put forward a consideration with regard to a robe; it is

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.47](#). ² For one on *hirañña*, unwrought gold, and *suvaṇṇa*, wrought gold, see [BD.1.28](#). ³ *phāla*. At [Sn.i.169](#), [Snp.p.13](#) and [Snp.77](#), this means "plough-share." Cf. [Vin.1.225](#). ⁴ *paṭaka* seems connected with *paṭa*. ⁵ *paccupaṭṭhita*, present, ready, at hand. ⁶ *parivatteti*; also means to turn over, to deal with, to change. Cf. *pārivattakācivara*, exchange of robes, at [BD.2.39](#), above. At [Vin.2.174](#) monks are allowed to barter valuable woollen garments and valuable cotton garments, or cloths, *kambala* and *dussa*, for increasing (the accessories of lodgings). ⁷ *appitaṃ*, of a close weave, solid. But, as opposed to "soft," it must here mean harsh or rough. [Vin-a.727](#) explains it by *ghana*, solid, compact, massive. Cf. below, [BD.2.145](#).

to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'

Bu-NP.8.2.2

If he thinks that a man is not a relation when he is not a relation, (and) before being invited, approaching a householder, puts forward a consideration regarding a robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether the man is not a relation, (and) before being invited, approaching a householder, puts forward a consideration with regard to a robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a man is a relation when he is not a relation, (and) before being invited, approaching a householder, puts forward a consideration with regard to a robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a man is not a relation when he is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether a man is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a man is a relation when he is a relation, there is no offence.

BD.2.57

Bu-NP.8.2.3

There is no offence if they belong to relations,¹ if they are invited; if it is for another; if it is by means of his own property; if he gets something of small value in exchange while he desires to get something costly in exchange; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. [BD.2.49](#), [BD.2.52](#).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 9

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time¹ a certain man said to another man: "I will present master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, with a robe." Then he² said: "I also will present master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, with a robe." A certain monk who was going for alms heard this conversation of these men. Then this monk approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached, he said to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

Bu-NP.9.1.1
BD.2.58

"You, reverend Upananda, are of great merit; on a certain occasion a certain man said to another man: 'I will present master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, with a robe.' Then he said: 'I also will present master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans with a robe.'" "Your reverence, these (men) are my supporters.' Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, approached these men, and having approached, he said to these men:

Vin.3.218

"Is it true, as is said, that you, sirs, desire to present me with robes?"

"Did we not think, master: 'We will present master Upananda with robes?'"

"If you, sirs, desire to present me with robes, present me with a robe like this. What shall I do with ones presented that I cannot make use of?"

Then these men ... spread it about, saying:

"These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have great desires, they are not contented. It is not easy to present them with robes. How can master Upananda, before being invited by us, approaching, put forward a consideration with regard to a robe?"

BD.2.59

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.8 ² The other man.

Monks heard these men who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, before being invited, approaching householders, put forward a consideration with regard to a robe?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, before being invited, approaching householders, put forward a consideration with regard to a robe?” “It is true, lord,” he said.

“Are they relations of yours, Upananda, or not relations?”

“They are not relations, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for those who are not relations.¹ Thus you, foolish man, before being invited, approaching householders who are not relations, will put forward a consideration with regard to a robe. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In case various robe-funds come to be laid by for a monk by two men householders or by (two) women householders who are not relations (of his), thinking: ‘We will present the monk so and so with robes, having got various robes in exchange for the various robe-funds.’ Then if that monk, out of desire for something fine, approaching before being invited, should put forward a consideration with regard to a robe, saying: ‘Indeed it would be well; do let the venerable ones, having got a robe like this or like that in exchange for the various robe-funds, present it to me, the two together with one,’² there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Vin.3.219

Bu-NP.9.2.1
BD.2.60

For a monk³ means: ... (See [Bu-NP.8.2.2](#)) ... being desirous of presenting to a monk.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.39](#), [BD.2.44](#), [BD.2.59](#). ² *Ubho’va santā, ekenā ti*. The Commentary says nothing, but see Old Commentary below. It means that the two men should combine and put their funds together so that there should be two funds which could then be exchanged for one (good) cloth or robe, and the two men present the monk with one robe. ³ Cf. this portion of the Old Commentary, with that on previous *Nissaggiya*.

By two¹ means: by two.²

Men who are not relations means: ... back through seven generations.³

Men householders mean: they who live in a house.

Women householders mean: they who live in a house.

Robe-funds mean: gold or gold coins or pearls or jewels or corals or ploughshares or cloths or threads or cottons.⁴

For these various robe-funds means: for these (things) that are present.

Having got in exchange means: having bartered.

We will present means: we will give.

Then if that monk means: that monk for whom the robe-funds have come to be laid by.

Before being invited means: ... '... what kind of robe shall we get in exchange for you?'

Approaching ... should put forward a consideration with regard to a robe means: 'Let it be long ...'

For these various robe-funds means: for these (things) that are present.

Like this ... present (it) means: give (it).

The two together with one means: two people for one (robe).⁵

Out of desire for something fine means: wanting what is good, wanting what is costly.

If, according to what he says, they get in exchange one that is long or wide or rough or soft, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action ... (See **Bu-NP.8.2.1-Bu-NP.8.2.3**; *instead of* a householder who is not a relation, ... a householder *read* householders who are not relations ... householders) ... if he gets something of small value in exchange while they desire to get something costly in exchange; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.61

¹ *ubhinnarā*, (more properly 'both') ... *dvinnarā*. ² *ubhinnarā*, (more properly 'both') ... *dvinnarā*. ³ Cf. above, **BD.2.39**, **BD.2.44**, **BD.2.54**. ⁴ Cf. above, **BD.2.55**, where these items are given in the singular, since only one robe-fund is being defined. ⁵ *dve pi janā ekena*, two people with one (fine robe instead of with two more ordinary ones).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 10

Bu-NP.10.1.1
BD.2.62

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a chief minister,¹ the supporter of the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, sent a robe-fund² by a messenger to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, saying: "Having got a robe in exchange for this robe-fund, present master Upananda with a robe."

Then that messenger approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached, he said to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans: "Honoured sir, this robe-fund was brought for the venerable one; let the venerable one accept this robe-fund."

Vin.3.220

When he had spoken thus, the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to that messenger: "Sir, we do not accept a robe-fund; but we accept a robe if it is at the right time and if it is allowable."³

When he had spoken thus, that messenger said to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans: "But is there someone who is the venerable one's attendant⁴?"

At that time a certain lay-follower went to the monastery on some business or other. Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to that messenger: "Sir, this lay-follower is the monks' attendant."

BD.2.63

Then that messenger, informing⁵ that lay-follower, approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached, he said

¹ *mahāmatta* is at [BD.1.74](#) included in definition of "kings." ² See [Bu-NP.8](#) and [Bu-NP.9](#).

³ *kappiya*—i.e., something that is made allowable for the monks to take because it has been given, and so made legally acceptable. See [Vin.1.206](#). ⁴ *veyyāvaccakara*, usually a lay-attendant in little better position than a servant. [Vin-a.672](#) explains by *kiccakaro kappiyakārako*, one who makes something legally allowable (to the monks by offering it to them). ⁵ *saññāpetvā = jānāpetvā*, [Vin-a.672](#).

to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

“Honoured sir, the person whom the venerable one has pointed out as an attendant has been instructed¹ by me; let the venerable one approach (him) at the right time (and) he will present you with a robe.”

Then the chief minister sent a messenger to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, to say: “Let the master make use of this robe; we want this robe made use of by the master.”

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, did not say anything to that lay-follower. A second time the chief minister sent a messenger to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, to say: “Let the master make use of ... by the master. “A second time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, did not say anything to that lay-follower. A third time the chief minister sent a messenger to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, to say: “Let the master make use of ... by the master.”

Now at that time there came to be a meeting-day for the townspeople,² and an agreement was made by the townspeople that: Whoever comes the last pays fifty.³ Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, approached that lay-follower, and having approached, he said to that lay-follower:

“Sir, I want the robe.”

“Honoured sir, wait this day⁴ (only). Today there comes to be a meeting-

Bu-NP.10.1.2

BD.2.64

¹ *saññatto* = *āṇatto*, Vin-a.672. ² *negamassa samayo hoti*. *Negama* also occurs at Vin.1.268. The word comes from *nigama*, which is from *nadī-gāma*. Originally things were sent by water rather than by land, so that villages on rivers (*nadī-gāma*) would become the centres of trade. In India all important cities are on a river. Thus *nadī-gāma* is an important place, a town even, which may or may not be the seat of a king (*rājadhāni*). If a *gāma*, village, becomes very big, it is called *nagara*, town. If not so big, then it is a *pura*. This is usually a fortified town. Villages and towns run in this order: *gāma*, village; *nigama*, a river-side and hence important village or little town; *pura*, a fortified town, in which kings may live; *nagara*, a town (this may contain a fortified portion, but may spread outside it); *rājadhāni*, seat of a king. ³ *paññāsam bandho*. Buddhaghosa is doubtful of the reading; there is also the variant reading *baddho*, which is synonymous with *jito* or *jīno* below. Vin-a.672 says “the fine (or punishment, *daṇḍa*) is fifty *kahāpaṇas*.” ⁴ *ajjuṇho*. Vin-a.672 explains by *ajja ekaṃ divasaṃ*. It is therefore more likely to mean “(only) this day (the rest of the present day-and-night)” as given in the *Critical Pali Dictionary*, than “this moonlight night” of the *Pali-English Dictionary*

day for the townspeople, and an agreement was made by the townspeople that: Whoever comes last pays fifty.”

“Sir, give me the robe this very day,”¹ he said, and he took hold of his waistband.² Then that lay-follower, being pressed by the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having got a robe in exchange for the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, went the last. People said to this lay-follower: “Why do you, master, come the last? You have lost fifty.”³ Then that lay-follower told this matter to those people. The people ... spread it about, saying:

Vin.3.221

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have great desires, they are not contented; amongst them it is not easy to render a service. How can they, being told by a lay-follower: ‘Honoured sir, wait this day (only),’ not wait?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, being told by a lay-follower: ‘Honoured sir, wait this day (only),’ not wait?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.65

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, being told by a lay-follower: ‘Honoured sir, wait this day (only),’ did not wait?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, being told by a lay-follower: ‘Honoured sir, wait this day (only),’ not wait? Foolish man, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Bu-NP.10.1.3

¹ *ajj’eva*. ² *ovaṭṭikāya pārāmasi*. *Ovaṭṭikā* can also mean a bracelet and a patch. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.153, n.3; MORRIS, *Journal of the Pali Text Society*, 1887, p.156. *Pārāmasi*, translated at **BD.1.203** as “rubs up against” is here explained by Vin-a.672 as *gaṇhi*, took hold. ³ *paññāsariṃ jīno ’si*. OLDENBERG, *Vinaya Texts* iii.277 says, “Probably we ought to read *jīno ’si*.” Vin-a.672 has the reading *jīto ’si*. *Jīyati*, one of whose meanings is “to lose,” is in Pali both the passive of √*ji* and the present middle of √*jya*, (*ji*), therefore it can have *jīta* or *jīna* as past participles.

“In case a king or one in the service of a king¹ or a brahmin or a householder should send a robe-fund for a monk by a messenger, saying: ‘Having got a robe in exchange for this robe-fund, present the monk so and so with a robe’; then if this messenger, approaching that monk, should say: ‘Honoured sir, this robe-fund was brought for the venerable one; let the venerable one accept this robe-fund,’ then the messenger should be spoken to thus by this monk: ‘Sir, we do not accept a robe-fund, but we accept a robe if it is at the right time and if it is allowable.’ If this messenger should say to the monk: ‘But is there someone who is the venerable one’s attendant?’, then, monks,² an attendant should be pointed out by the monk in need of a robe—either one who is engaged in the monastery³ or a lay-follower—saying: ‘This is the monks’ attendant.’ If this messenger, instructing this attendant, approaching that monk, should speak thus: ‘Honoured sir, I have instructed the person whom the venerable one pointed out as an attendant; let the venerable one approach at the right time, (and) he will present you with a robe’; then, monks, if that monk is in need of a robe, approaching that attendant, he should state⁴ and remind him two or three times, saying: ‘Sir, I am in need of a robe.’ If while stating and reminding two or three times, he succeeds in obtaining⁵ that robe, that is good. If he does not succeed in obtaining it, he should stand silently⁶ for it four times, five times, six times at the utmost. If he succeeds in obtaining that robe, standing silently for it, four times, five times, six times at the utmost, that

BD.2.66

Vin.3.222

¹ *rājabhogga*. *Pali-English Dictionary* seems to see in this the meaning of “Of royal power, entitled to the throne, as a designation of class.” It says, under article for *bhogga*, and quoting this passage, that *rājabhogga* “takes the place of the usual *khattiya*.” I think, however, that the reference is back to the chief minister, who has already appeared in this episode. Cf. also below, Old Commentary, **BD.2.67**. ² *Vinaya Texts* i.23, n.1, “this word of address is most noteworthy ... It must be meant as an address by the Buddha himself to the brethren.” Cf. also **Bu-Pc.71**, where *bhikkhave* again occurs in the *sikkhāpada*, rule. ³ *ārāmika*, one who is employed in petty or menial works in a monastery, an attendant in a monastery. Nowadays such a man receives food there. ⁴ *codetabbo*, here to request or state, but “state” is chosen for the translation, since monks were not allowed to make a request. ⁵ *abhinipphādeti*. ⁶ The silent mode of asking came to be the only one allowed to the monks. But here they are permitted to express their wants in words before they begin their silent standing.

is good. If he, exerting himself¹ further than that, succeeds in obtaining that robe, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he does not succeed in obtaining it, he should either go himself to where the robe-fund was brought from for him,² or a messenger should be sent to say: ‘That robe-fund which you, sirs, sent for a monk, is not of any use to that monk.³ Let the gentlemen make use of their own,⁴ let your own things be not lost.’⁵ This is the proper course in this case.”

Bu-NP.10.2.1

For a monk means: for the good of a monk, making a monk his object, being desirous of presenting to a monk.

A king means: he who rules a kingdom.

BD.2.67

One in the king’s service means: whoever is in the king’s pay.⁶

A brahmin means: a brahmin by birth.

A householder means: excepting the king and he who is in the king’s service and the brahmin, he who remains is called a householder.⁷

A robe-fund means: gold or a gold coin or a pearl or a jewel.⁸

For this robe-fund means: for what is present.

Having got in exchange means: having bartered.

Present means: give.

If that messenger, approaching that monk, should say : ‘Honoured sir, this robe-fund was brought for the venerable one, let the venerable one accept this robe-fund,’ then this messenger should be spoken to thus by this monk: ... ‘... is the monks’ attendant.’ He should not say: ‘Give it to him,’ or ‘He will deposit it,’ or ‘He will barter it,’ or ‘He will get it in exchange.’

If this messenger, instructing this attendant, approaching that monk, should speak thus: ‘Honoured sir, I have instructed the person whom the venerable one pointed out as an attendant; let the venerable one approach at the right time (and) he will present you with a robe’; then, monks, if

¹ *vāyamamāna*. ² According to Vin-a.674 if a monk neither goes himself nor sends a messenger, he falls into an offence of wrong-doing for breaking a custom (*vattabheda*).

³ *na taṃ tassa bhikkhuno kiñci atthaṃ anubhoti*. ⁴ *yuñjant’ āyasmanto sakaṃ*, or “let the gentlemen have the benefit of their own things.” ⁵ *mā vo sakaṃ vinas(s)ā ti*. ⁶ *rañño bhattavetanāhāro*, living on a salary and food from a king. ⁷ Cf. earlier definitions of a

“householder” as “he who lives in a house,” above, [BD.1.47](#), [BD.1.55](#), [BD.1.60](#). ⁸ Cf. earlier and longer definitions of “robe-fund” at [BD.2.55](#), [BD.2.60](#).

that monk is in need of a robe, approaching that attendant, he should state and remind him two or three times, saying: 'Sir, I am in need of a robe.' He should not say: 'Give me a robe,' 'Fetch me a robe,' 'Barter a robe for me,' 'Get a robe in exchange for me.' A second time he should say ... A third time he should say ...

If ... he succeeds in obtaining (that robe), that is good. If he does not succeed in obtaining it, going there, he should stand silently for it; he should not sit down on a seat, he should not accept food, he should not teach dhamma¹; being asked, 'Why did you come?' he should say: 'You know it, sir.' If he either sits down on a seat or accepts food or teaches *dhamma*, he loses an opportunity.² A second time he may stand. A third time he may stand. Having stated four times, he may stand four times. Having stated five times, he may stand twice. Having stated six times, he may not stand.³

BD.2.68

Vin.3.223

Bu-NP.10.2.2

¹ *na dhammo bhāsitaḥ*. Vin-a.673 says that if asked to recite a piece of the text (or a blessing, at the beginning of a ceremony) or a grace (at the end of a meal), he should not say anything.

² *ṭhānaṃ bhaṅgati*—i.e., to go and stand. Vin-a.673 *ṭhānaṃ = āgata-kāraṇaṃ*—i.e., the reason or occasion for which he came (namely, to acquire a robe). ³ The method of reckoning the stating and standing is complicated. In the first place it is curious that here the monk seems able to state up to six times, while above, BD.2.66, it was said that he may state up to two or three times. According to Vin-a.674 there are three statings and three standings, and an increase in the one means a decrease in the other so far as asking for it four times goes. Here it means (so the Commentary) that if there is a decrease of one stating there is an increase of two standings. Therefore a double standing is shown to be the sign (*lakkaṇa*) of one stating. So, by this reckoning, stating up to three times, there may be standing up to six times. Stating twice, there may be standing up to eight times. (This must be because there might have been one more stating, three statings allowing six standings, but because there are here only two statings, two more standings may be added, making eight.) Stating once, there may be standing up to ten times. (Here there might have been two more statings = eight standings. This, with the one more stating that was legal and its two standings, makes altogether ten standings.) Inasmuch as stating up to six times there should be no standing, so standing up to twelve times there should be no stating. Therefore if he states but does not stand, six statings are required. If he stands but does not state, twelve standings are required. If he stands and asks, for each stating two standings should be omitted. This is Buddhaghosa's contribution to the subject. It seems that if a monk stands and speaks, saying that he wants a robe, he must lose two "standings"—i.e., two opportunities to stand for a robe.

BD.2.69

If he, exerting himself further than that, succeeds in obtaining that robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition; it should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this robe obtained by me, by stating more than three times, by standing more than six times, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the monk so and so.’

If he does not succeed in obtaining it, he should either go himself to where the robe-fund was brought from for him, or a messenger should be sent to say: ‘That robe-fund which you, sirs, sent for a monk, is not of any use to that monk. Let the gentlemen make use of their own, let your own things be not lost.’

This is the proper course¹ in this case means: this is the appropriate course² in this case.

Bu-NP.10.2.3

If he succeeds in obtaining it by stating more than three times, by standing more than six times, thinking that they are more, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he succeeds in obtaining it by stating more than three times, by standing more than six times, but is in doubt (as to the number of times), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he succeeds in obtaining it by stating more than three times, by standing more than six times, thinking them to be less, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If, stating less than three times, standing less than six times, he thinks them to be more, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If stating less than three times, standing less than six times, he is in doubt (as to the number), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, stating less than three times, standing less than six times, he thinks them to be less, there is no offence.

Bu-NP.10.2.4

¹ “Proper course” is *sāmīci*, etiquette, courtesy; “appropriate course” is *anudhammatā*, custom; used with regard to the monks. *Dhamma* here means good social manners and customs. *Anudhammatā* is a synonym for *sāmīci*. ² See previous note.

There is no offence in stating three times, in standing six times; in stating less than three times, in standing less than six times; if himself not stating, he gives; if stating, the owners give; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.70

The First Division: that on Kaṭhina-cloth¹

THIS IS ITS KEY²

Ten (nights), one night, and a month,
and washing, acceptance,
Three about those who are not relations, of two,
and by means of a messenger.

Vin.3.224

¹ *kaṭhinavagga*. Cf. the *Kaṭhinakkhandhaka*, Vin.1.253-265. ² *uddāna*, something like a mnemonic verse, an abbreviation, in which only a leading word of each rule is given, and simply to help the memory of the monk who is reciting the rules. All the teaching was oral.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 11

Bu-NP.11.1.1
BD.2.71

... at Āḷavī in the chief shrine at Āḷavī.¹ At that time the group of six monks, approaching silk-makers,² said: "Sirs, hatch³ many silk-worms, and give them to us, for we want to make a rug⁴ mixed with silk." These looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, approaching us, speak thus: 'Sirs, hatch ... mixed with silk'? It is a loss for us, it is ill-gotten for us that we, for the sake of livelihood, for the sake of wife and children, are bringing (these) many small creatures into destruction."

Monks heard these men who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks, approaching silk-makers, say: 'Sirs, hatch ... a rug mixed with silk'?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, approaching silk-makers, spoke thus: 'Sirs, hatch ... a rug mixed with silk'?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, approaching silk-makers, speak thus: 'Sirs, hatch ... a rug mixed with silk'? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monks should cause a rug to be made mixed with silk, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

¹ Cf. [BD.1.247](#). ² *kosiyakāraka*, those preparing the raw silk, raising silk-worms (*kosakāraka*), rather than silk-weavers. ³ *pacatha*, literally boil or cook. ⁴ *santhata*, something that is spread: a rug, mat or a sheet. See [BD.1.247](#).

Whatever means: he who ...

Monk means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

A rug means: it is made "having spread," not woven.¹

Should cause to be made means: if he makes it or causes it to be made mixing it with one silken filament,² there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ... 'Honoured sirs, this rug, which I had made mixed with silk, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this rug to the venerable one.'

If what was incompletely executed by himself, he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If what was incompletely executed by others, he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, acquiring what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

There is no offence if he makes a canopy⁴ or a ground-covering⁵ or a screen-wall⁶ or a mattress⁷ or a squatting mat⁸; if he is mad, if he is the first

¹ I.e., having spread out the material, or by the spreading method; see [BD.2, Introduction, p.xxii](#). ² *amsu* is really the technical name of those small particles of which a thread is composed, not the thread itself. ³ =below, [Vin.3.227](#), [Vin.3.229](#), [Vin.3.233](#), and [Vin.4.167](#), [Vin.4.171](#). ⁴ Nowadays a canopy would be used for putting over shrines. ⁵ Cf. [BD.2.46](#), above. ⁶ Such as a wall made up of cloth. Word occurs at [Vin.3.189](#), [Vin.4.269](#), [Ja.2.88](#). ⁷ *bhisi*; see above, [BD.2.47](#). ⁸ *bimbohana*, such as monks in Ceylon use nowadays in the hall where the *uposatha* is held and the *upasampadā* conferred. They are usually padded. These items recur below at [BD.2.78](#), [BD.2.82](#), [BD.2.89](#), and [Vin.4.171](#), [Vin.4.279](#).

wrong-doer.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 12

... at Vesāli in the Great Grove in the Hall of the Peaked Roof. At that time the group of six monks had a rug¹ made of pure black sheep's² wool. People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place, seeing them ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, had a rug made of pure black sheep's wool?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How can you, foolish men, have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should cause a rug to be made of pure black sheep's wool, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

¹ *santhata*, see above, **BD.2.71, n.4.** ² *eḷaka*, a ram, a wild goat, according to *Pali-English Dictionary* and CHILDERS. *Eḍaka* (Sanskrit) is a kind of sheep, a ram, a wild goat, according to MONIER-WILLIAMS. *Aja* is certainly a goat. The compound *aj-eḷaka* sometimes occurs, as at DN.i.5, seeming to mean the goats and the sheep. In India, the goat and the sheep closely resemble one another: the tails of the former stick up, those of the latter hang down; but the colour and texture of their hair, or wool (*loma*), are similar.

Black means: there are two (kinds of) black: black by nature or dyed black.

Vin.3.226 **A rug** means: it is made “having spread,” not woven.

Should cause to be made means: if he makes it or causes it to be made, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited ... to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ... ‘... this rug which I, honoured sirs, had made of pure black sheep’s wool ...’ ... if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.11.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 13

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time the group of six monks said: "It is forbidden by the lord to have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool."¹ And these, taking only a little white for the seam,² all the same³ had a rug made of pure black sheep's wool. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-NP.13.1.1
BD.2.76

"How can this group of six monks, taking only a little white for the seam, all the same have a rug made of pure black sheep's wool?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, taking only a little white for the seam, all the same had a rug made of pure black sheep's wool?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, taking ... pure black sheep's wool? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When a new rug is being made for a monk, two portions of pure black sheep's wool may be taken, the third of white, the fourth of reddish brown colours.⁴ If a monk should cause a new rug to be made not

BD.2.77

¹ Bu-NP.12 ² *anta*. Vin-a.684, "applying (or bringing) white to it, making as it were a border at the edge (*anta*) of the sheet." ³ *tath' eva*, or "as before." ⁴ *gocariyānan ti kapilavaṇṇānam*, Vin-a.684, which seems to indicate "the colour of oxen," although *cariya* does not mean *vaṇṇa*, colour. *Vinaya Texts* i.25, n.2, says, "This is deliberately chosen as an ugly mixture, which would lessen the commercial value of the rug." It might also be a preventive of unsuitable pride in a fine article. But I think that this rule should be regarded as a continuation of the previous one (Bu-NP.12), expanding it, and giving the detail necessary for carrying it out properly. The monks had nothing to do with the "commercial value" of things, but it was important that they should not behave like those leading the household life.

taking two portions of pure black sheep's wool, the third of white, the fourth of reddish brown colours, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Bu-NP.13.2.1

New means: it is so called with reference to the making.

A rug means: it is made "having spread," not woven.¹

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.

Two portions of pure black sheep's wool may be taken means: being brought, two *tulā* weights² may be taken.

The third of white means: a *tulā* weight of white.

The fourth of reddish brown colours means: a *tulā* weight of reddish brown colours.

Vin.3.227

If a monk ... not taking two portions of pure black sheep's wool, the third of white, the fourth of reddish brown colours means: if he makes or causes a new rug to be made not taking a *tulā*, weight of white, a *tulā*, weight of reddish brown colours, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; it should be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, this rug which I caused to be made not taking a *tulā* weight of white, a *tulā* weight of reddish brown colours, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let them give back ... I will give back this rug to the venerable one.'

If what was incompletely executed by himself, he has finished by himself ... (See [Bu-NP.11.2.2](#)) ... he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.2.78

There is no offence if he makes it taking a *tulā* weight of white, a *tulā* weight of reddish brown colours; if he makes it taking more of white, more of reddish brown colours; if he makes it taking only of white, only of reddish brown colours; if he makes a canopy or a ground-covering or a screen-wall or a mattress or a squatting-mat³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ See above, [BD.2.72](#), [note](#), and [BD.2.75](#). ² *tulā*, literally balance, a measure of weight.

³ Cf. above, [BD.2.73](#), and notes.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 14

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time monks had a rug made every year. They were intent on begging, intent on hinting,¹ saying: "Give sheep's wool, we want sheep's wool." People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have a rug made every year? How can they be intent on begging, intent on hinting, saying: 'Give sheep's wool, we want sheep's wool'? For, (although) our children soil and wet them² and they are eaten by rats, our rugs once made last for five or six years. But these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have a rug made every year; they are intent on begging, intent on hinting, saying: 'Give sheep's wool, we want sheep's wool.'"

BD.2.79
Bu-NP.14.1.1

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can monks have a rug made every year? How can they be intent on begging, intent on hinting, saying: '... we want sheep's wool'?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

Vin.3.228

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, have a rug made every year, that you are intent on begging, intent on hinting, saying: '... we want sheep's wool'?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can these foolish men have a rug made every year? How can they be intent on begging, intent on hinting ... '... we want sheep's wool'? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"A new rug which a monk has had made should be used for six years.

BD.2.80

¹ = BD.1.246. ² Cf. Vin.4.129.

If, within the six years, whether he has got rid of or has not got rid of that (former) rug, he should have a new rug made, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-NP.14.2.1

Now at that time a certain monk became ill in Kosambī. Relations sent a messenger to this monk, saying: “Let the revered sir¹ come, we will nurse (him).” Monks spoke thus: “Go, your reverence, relations will nurse you.” He said:

“Your reverences, a rule of training laid down by the lord is that a new rug which a monk has had made should be used for six years; but I am ill, I am not able to set out taking a rug, and without a rug there comes to be no comfort for me. I will not go.”

They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to give a monk who is ill the agreement as to a rug.² And thus, monks, should it be given: That monk who is ill, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus: ‘I, honoured sirs, am ill; I am not able to set out taking a rug. Thus I, honoured sirs, request the Order for the agreement as to a rug.’ A second time it should be requested, a third time it should be requested. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk so and so is ill. He is not able to set out making a rug. He requests the Order for the agreement as to a rug. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give this monk so and so the agreement as to a rug. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk ... requests the Order for the agreement as to a rug. The Order gives to the monk so and so the agreement

BD.2.81

Vin.3.229

¹ *bhaddanto*. Cf. above, [BD.2.13ff.](#), where an ill monk is allowed to travel without his three robes, if he has the formal agreement of the Order to be regarded as not away, separated from them. ² *santhata-sammuti*. Vin-a.685 says that he may have a new rug made at the place to which he goes (thereby not waiting for the six years to elapse). Cf. [Bu-NP.2](#).

as to a rug. If the giving to the monk so and so of the agreement as to a rug is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; if it does not seem right, they should speak. Agreement as to a rug is given by the Order to the monk so and so; it is pleasing ... So do I understand this.' And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“A new rug which a monk has had made should last for six years. If, within the six years, whether he has got rid of or has not got rid of that (former) rug, he should have a new rug made, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bu-NP.14.3.1

New means: ... not woven.

Has had made means: making or causing to be made.

Should be used for six years means: it should be used for six years at the minimum.

If within six years means: in less than six years.

Getting rid of ... that (former) rug means: giving it to others.

Not getting rid of means: not giving it to anyone.

Except on the agreement of the monks means: setting aside the agreement of the monks, if he makes or causes another new rug to be made, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to the Order, or to a group, or to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, this rug, which I had made for me less than six years ago without the agreement of the monks, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this rug to the venerable one.'

BD.2.82

If what was incompletely executed by himself, he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture ... if he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.¹

There is no offence if he makes one after six years; if he makes one after more than six years; if he makes it or causes it to be made for another; if, acquiring what was made for another, he makes use of it; if he makes a

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.72](#).

canopy or a ground-covering or a screen-wall or a mattress or a squatting-mat¹; if there is the agreement of the monks; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.3.230

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.73](#).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 15

Bu-NP.15.1.1
BD.2.83

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Then the lord addressed the monks, saying: "Monks, I want to go into solitary retreat for three months. I am not to be approached by anyone except the one who brings the alms-food."¹

"Very well, lord," these monks answered the lord, and accordingly no one here went up to the lord except the one who brought the alms-food. Now at that time an agreement was made by the Order at Sāvattḥī, saying: "Your reverences, the lord wishes to go into solitary retreat for three months. The lord should not be approached by anyone except the one who brings the alms-food. Whoever approaches the lord should be made to confess² an offence of expiation."

Then the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta,³ approached the lord together with his followers, and having approached and greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for enlightened ones, for lords, to exchange friendly greetings with in-coming monks. The lord said to the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta, as he was sitting at a respectful distance:

¹ At SN.v.325 the lord dwelt in solitude for three months; at Vin.3.68, SN.v.12, SN.v.320 for two weeks. ² *desāpetabbo*. ³ Referred to at Vin.1.59, Ja.2.449 for ordaining his *saddhi-vihārika* only a year after his own ordination. At AN.i.24 he is called chief among those who are altogether charming (*samanta-pāsādika*, which is also the title of the Vinaya Commentary). Both these points are referred to at *Psalms of the Bretheren* 261f. He was younger brother to Sāriputta, and had three sisters, Cālā, Upacālā, Sisupacālā, their mother being Rūpasārī, and his father Vaṅganta; cf. Dh-p-a.2.84, where Sāriputta's father is also said to be Vaṅganta; and *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.96, where the three sisters are said to be junior to Sāriputta. See also Thag.576, Tha-ap.62 for his verses; Ud.46, where he says that he is of great psychic power and majesty; and see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*.

BD.2.84 “Upasena, I hope things go well with you, I hope you are keeping going, I hope you have come here with but little fatigue on the journey?”

“Lord, things go well with us, lord, we keep ourselves going, we have come here with but little fatigue on the journey, lord.”

Now at that time the monk who was the fellow-resident of the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta, was sitting not far from the lord. Then the lord said to this monk: “Monk, are rag-robles pleasing to you?”

“Rag-robles are not pleasing to me, lord,” he said.

“Then how is it, monk, that you are one who wears rag-robles?”

“Lord, my preceptor is one who wears rag-robles, therefore am I also one who wears rag-robles.” Then the lord said to the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta:

“And is this crowd¹ agreeable to you, Upasena? How is it that you lead² the crowd, Upasena?”

He said: “Lord, I say to whoever asks me for the *upasampadā* ordination: ‘Your reverence, I am a jungle-dweller, an almsman,³ one who wears rag-robles.⁴ If you also will become a jungle-dweller, an almsman, one who wears rag-robles, then will I confer the *upasampadā* ordination upon you.’ If he promises me, I confer the *upasampadā* ordination, but if he does not promise me I do not confer the *upasampadā* ordination. I say to whoever asks me for help⁵: ‘Your reverence, I am a jungle-dweller, an almsman, one who wears rag-robles. If you also will become a jungle-dweller, an almsman, one who wears rag-robles, then I will give you help.’ If he promises me, I give help; but if he does not promise me, I do not give help. Thus do I, lord, lead the crowd.”

BD.2.85
Bu-NP.15.1.2

“Good, Upasena, good; it is good, Upasena, that you lead the crowd. But do you know, Upasena, of the Order’s agreement at Sāvattthī?”

“Lord, I do not know the Order’s agreement at Sāvattthī.”

“At Sāvattthī, Upasena, an agreement was made by the Order: ‘Your reverences, the lord wishes to go into solitary retreat for three months. The

¹ *parisā*. ² *vinesi*. ³ *piṇḍapātika*. This I think is a word that may be correctly rendered by “almsman,” “beggar for alms.” See BD.1, Introduction, p.xii, and Vism.66. ⁴ These three *aṅga* (practices) are explained in detail at Vism.59ff. Sometimes combined with *tecīvara*, a wearer of the three robes, as e.g. at Vin.1.253, MN.i.214. ⁵ *nissaga*.

lord should not be approached by anyone except the one who brings the alms-food. Whoever approaches the lord should be made to confess an offence of expiation.”

“Lord, the Order at Sāvattthī will be well known for its own agreement; we will not lay down what is not (yet) laid down, nor will we abolish what has been laid down, but we will dwell in conformity with and according to the rules of training which have been laid down.”

“That is very good, Upasena; what is not (yet) laid down should not be laid down, nor should what is laid down be abolished, but one should dwell in conformity with and according to the rules of training which have been laid down. Upasena, I allow those monks who are jungle-dwellers, who are almsmen, who wear rag-robles to come up for the sake of seeing me, if they wish to.”

At that time several monks¹ who came to be standing outside the gateway,² said: “We will make the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta, confess to an offence of expiation.” Then the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta, rising up from his seat with his followers, greeting the lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then those monks said to the venerable Upasena, the son of Vaṅganta: “Do you, reverend Upasena, know of the Order’s agreement at Sāvattthī?”

“But, your reverences, the lord said to me: ‘But do you know of the Order’s agreement at Sāvattthī? ... according to the rules of training which have been laid down.’ Your reverences, it is allowed by the lord, who said: ‘Those monks who are jungle-dwellers, who are almsmen, who wear rag-robles may come up for the sake of seeing me, if they wish to.’”

BD.2.86

Then these monks said: “What the venerable Upasena says is true; what has not yet been laid down should not be laid down, nor should what has been laid down be abolished, but one should dwell in conformity with and according to the rules of training that have been laid down.”

Then monks heard: “They say it was allowed by the lord, saying: “Those monks who are jungle-dwellers, who are almsmen, who wear rag-robles

Bu-NP.15.1.3

¹ *sambahulā bhikkhū*, see above, BD.2.8, n.6. ² *dvārakoṭṭhaka*, or the (store-)room over or by the gate.

may come up for the sake of seeing me, if they wish to.’” These, longing for a sight of the lord, discarding their rugs,¹ took upon themselves the practice of jungle-dwellers, the practice of those who are almsmen, the practice of those who wear rag-robos.² Then the lord as he was engaged in touring the lodgings together with several monks,³ saw here and there discarded rugs, and seeing them, he addressed the monks, saying:

“How is it, monks, that there are these discarded rugs here and there?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“On account of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training for monks based on ten grounds: for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order ...⁴ ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“When, (with the addition of part of) a rug, (a piece of) cloth to sit

¹ See above, [BD.2.71, n.4](#). It is on this passage that [Vin-a.687](#) says “their *santhata* (rugs) counting as a fourth robe.” Reference to a fourth robe, *catutthaka cīvara*, is made at [Vism.65](#), to be worn principally apparently for the purpose of washing and dyeing the three usual robes, and as either an inner or an outer robe. ² These three *aṅgas* appear as *dhūtaguṇa* (together with that of *sapadānacārika*, continuous alms-begging) at [Vin.3.15](#) (= [BD.1.26](#)), and together with others at [Vism.59ff](#). Cf. also [Vin.1.253](#), [Vin.2.299](#) (with *tecīvarika*) and [Vin.2.32](#). At [AN.iii.391](#) the three ways of living given above occur with *gāmantavihārī*, one who dwells in village-outskirts, *nemantanika*, the guest, and *gaha-paticīvaradhara*, the wearer of robes given by a householder. If any one of these does not behave suitably he is *ten’aṅgena gārayho*, blameworthy as to that attribute (which he has taken on himself) — *aṅga* being a technical term covering these various modes of scrupulous living. ³ See above, [BD.2.8, n.6](#). ⁴ = [Vin.3.21 \(BD.1.37f.\)](#); [AN.i.98](#), [AN.i.100](#); [AN.v.70](#).

upon¹ is being made for a monk, (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span² must be taken from all round an old rug in order to disfigure³ it. If a monk should have made (with the addition of part of) a rug, a new (piece of) cloth to sit upon without taking (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

A (piece of) cloth to sit upon means: it is so called if it has a border.⁴

A rug means: it is made “having spread,” not woven.⁵

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.

Bu-NP.15.2.1

BD.2.88

¹ “Rug” and “piece of cloth to sit upon” are *nisīdana-santhata*; translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.25 as “a rug to sit upon,” and at *Vinaya Texts* i.26 as “seat-rug,” as though only one article were meant, which was probably the case, although two were involved in the making. The Old Commentary defines *nisīdana* and *santhata* separately below; also *santhata* has occurred alone in Bu-NP.11–Bu-NP.14. At Vin.4.123 *nisīdana* appears among other requisites, while at Vin.4.170–Vin.4.171 directions are given as to the size a *nisīdana* is to be made; at Vin.1.295 a *nisīdana* is allowed as a protection for body, robes and lodgings; at Vin.1.297 it is one of the things allowed to be allotted but not assigned. At Vin.2.123 the six monks were separated from their *nisīdana* for four months, which led to a prohibition. It thus seems to be the thing sat upon and not the occasion of sitting upon something. HUBER, J.BU-As. 1913, p.37 (= 497) translates *nisīdanasamstara* as “tapis,” while for *santhata*, alone, he has “couverture.” SATIS CHANDRA VIDYABHUSANA, *So-sor-thar-pa*, p.21, has “piece of carpet made into a seat,” while for the Tibetan equivalent for *santhata* alone, he gives “mat.” On *santhata*, see BD.2, Introduction, p.xxii, and cf. *nisīdana-paccattharaṇa*, above, BD.2.34, and Vin.1.295. ² *sugatavidatthī*, see BD.1.253. ³ *dubbaṇṇakaraṇāya*, occurring also below, BD.2.407, in Bu-Pc.58. ⁴ *sadasaṃ vuccati*. Cf. Vin iv.123, Vin iv.171. *Sadasa* = *sa* + *dasā*. At Vin.2.301–307 we get the opposite (adjective), *adasaka*, again qualifying *nisīdana*, and where an unbordered, *adasaka*, *nisīdana* is not allowed (even if it is of the right size). At Vin.4.170, Vin.4.171 the right size is prescribed for the *nisīdana*, a border is allowed, and it is said that this border should be a span; if these measurements are exceeded the *nisīdana* should be cut down (to the proper size) on acquisition. At the Council of Vesālī, Vin.2.294ff., it is said that a piece of cloth to sit upon that has no border is not allowable, because a monk who had one of this nature would incur the *pācittiya* offence involving cutting down (i.e., Bu-Pc.89), Vin.2.307. All the ten matters, *vatthu*, whose allowability is being questioned at the Council are explained, see Vin.2.300f., except this one and the one concerning gold and silver (Bu-NP.18). ⁵ Cf. above, BD.2.72, BD.2.75, BD.2.77.

Old rug means: dressed in it once, put on once.¹ (A piece) the breadth of the accepted span must be taken from all round in order to disfigure it means: cutting a circle or square so that it may become firm,² it should be “spread” in one quarter or it should be “spread” having been unravelled.

If a monk ... without taking (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug means: if without having taken (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug, he makes or has made, (with the addition of part of) a rug, a new (piece of) cloth to sit upon, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; it should be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this (piece of) cloth to sit upon having been made (with the addition of part of) a rug, (but) without having taken (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back to the venerable one.’

BD.2.89

If what was incompletely executed by himself he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture ... (See **Bu-NP.11.2.2**) ... if he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if he makes it having taken (a piece) the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug; if, failing to get it, he makes it having taken a smaller (piece)³; if, failing to get it, he makes it not having taken (any portion)⁴; if acquiring what was made for another, he makes use of it; if he makes a canopy or a ground-covering or a screen-wall or a mattress or a squatting-mat⁵; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.3.233

¹ = definition of soiled, or old, robe, above, **BD.2.32**. Thus the words used are those which usually refer to the putting on of the set of three robes: *nivattha* and *pāruta*. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.687, in explaining their meaning in the above passage, defines them as *nisinna* and *nipanna* respectively, sat on and lain on. See **BD.2, Introduction, p.xxiv**. ² *thirabhāvāya*. ³ *alabhanto thokataraṃ ādiyivā karoti*. Buddhaghosa is silent. ⁴ *alabhanto anādiyivā karoti*. ⁵ Cf. above, **BD.2.73, BD.2.75, BD.2.78, BD.2.82**; and **Vin.4.171ff**.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 16

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time as a certain monk was in the country of the Kosalas¹ going to Sāvattḥī, (some) sheep's wool² accrued³ (to him) on the way. Then that monk went along tying up that sheep's wool into a bundle with his upper robe.⁴ People, seeing this monk, made fun of him, saying: "For how much have you bought (it), honoured sir, how great will the profit become?"

Bu-NP.16.1.1
BD.2.90

This monk, being made fun of by these people, became ashamed.⁵ Then that monk, going to Sāvattḥī, threw down⁶ the sheep's wool even as he was standing.⁷ Monks said to this monk: "Why do you, your reverence, throw down this sheep's wool even as you are standing?"

"Because I, your reverences, was made fun of by (some) people on account of this sheep's wool."

"But from how far have you, your reverence, conveyed this sheep's wool?"

"For more than three *yojanas*,⁸ your reverences," he said. Then those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this monk convey sheep's wool for more than three *yojanas*?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.91

¹ Sāvattḥī was the capital of the Kosala country. ² *eḷakalomāni*. ³ *uppajjimsu; uppajjati* is usually "arises, is produced, is born"; cf. above, BD.2.4, BD.2.24, below, BD.2.99, BD.2.153.

⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.37. ⁵ *maṅku*, literally staggered or shocked. See AN.v.5. ⁶ *āsumbhi*.

⁷ *ṭhitako* 'va. Vin-a.687 says, "as men bringing a large burden of wood from the jungle, being weary, let it drop (*pāṭenti*) even as they are standing (*ṭhitakā* 'va), so he let it drop."

⁸ See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.16, for "Tabulated Statement of Passages on the length of the *Yojana*." His tentative conclusion is that in fifth-century Pali literature the *yojana* means between seven and eight miles. CHILDERS reckoned twelve miles to a *yojana*. See also E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha as Legend and History*, 1927, p.17. An ascending scale of measures of length is given at Vb-a.343.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, conveyed sheep’s wool for more than three *yojanas*?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, convey sheep’s wool for more than three *yojanas*? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Sheep’s wool may accrue to a monk as he is going along a road. It may be accepted by that monk, if he likes; but having accepted it, it should be conveyed in his (own) hands for three *yojanas* at the utmost, if there are no carriers. If he should convey it further than that, even if there are no carriers, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Vin.3.234

Bu-NP.16.2.1

To a monk as he is going along a road means: as he is going on a roadway.¹

Sheep’s wool may accrue means: it may accrue from the Order or from a group or from a relation or from a friend or as rag-robles or by means of his own property.²

If he likes means: if he wishes.

It may be accepted ... but having accepted it, it should be conveyed in his (own) hands for three *yojanas* at the utmost means: it should be conveyed in his (own) hands for three *yojanas* at the maximum.

If there are no carriers means: if there is no one who is a carrier, neither a woman nor a man, nor a householder nor one who has gone forth.

If he should convey it further than that, even if there are no carriers means: if he makes the first foot go beyond three *yojanas*, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes the second foot go beyond, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If standing within three *yojanas* he lets it drop beyond the three *yojanas*, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he makes it go beyond three *yojanas*, placing it in a vehicle or a bundle of another (person) without (his) knowing it, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited ... to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this sheep’s wool, made by me to go beyond three

BD.2.92

¹ *pantha*. ² Cf. above, **BD.2.27**.

yojanas, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this sheep's wool to the venerable one.'

If he makes it go beyond more than three *yojanas* thinking them to be more, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If, being in doubt, he makes it go beyond more than three *yojanas*, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he makes it go beyond more than three *yojanas* thinking them to be less, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is less than three *yojanas* when it is more, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is less than three *yojanas*, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is less than three *yojanas* when it is less, there is no offence.

There is no offence if he conveys it for three *yojanas*; if he conveys it for less than three *yojanas*; if he conveys it for three *yojanas* and conveys it back; if desiring a habitation, going three *yojanas*, he conveys it beyond that¹; if he conveys something stolen that he has got back²; if he conveys something destroyed that he has got back; if he makes another convey goods tied up in a bundle³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.93

¹ Vin-a.688 says, "going where he is unable to receive the recitation and interrogation (of the Pātimokkha) or necessities and so on, he goes elsewhere beyond that. Elsewhere beyond that means, there is no offence in so conveying it for a hundred *yojanas*." ² Vin-a.688, "thieves stealing it (from him), knowing its uselessness give it back." This means that thieves took his sheep's wool when he had done perhaps two and a half *yojanas*; he retraces his steps and they return him the wool as it is of no value for them; he goes a *yojana* in order to reach his *vihāra*. Thus he would have done three and a half *yojanas*, but the part of the journey due to the robbing incident does not count. ³ *katabhanṇḍa*; cf. below, BD.2.98. Vin-a.689 says "goods tied up (*kataṃ bhaṇḍam*) in a blanket, fleecy cover, sheet and so on, anything even if it is tied up only with a thread."

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 17

Bu-NP.17.1.1
BD.2.94
Vin.3.235

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery.¹ At that time the group of six monks had sheep's wool washed and dyed and combed by nuns. The nuns, through washing, dyeing, combing the sheep's wool, neglected² the exposition, the interrogation, the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher insight.³ Then Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid approached the lord, and having approached, greeting the lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the lord spoke thus to Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid:

“Gotami, I hope that the nuns are zealous, ardent, (with) a self that is striving?”⁴

BD.2.95

¹ Besides the Nigrodhārāma at Kapilavatthu, there was another at Rājagaha, mentioned, e.g., at DN.ii.116. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* says that the one at Kapilavathu was given to the Order by a Sakyan named Nigrodha. If the evidence for this were stronger, it would have been translated “Nigrodha’s monastery.” ² Cf. Vin.1.190, where these same five items are again connected with *riñcati*, to neglect. ³ *adhisīla, adhicitta, adhipañña*, given at DN.iii.219 as the “three trainings.” The descriptions given at AN.i.235 and of *adhicittam-anuyutta* at AN.i.254ff. to my mind make it quite clear that *adhi-* points to the higher states of morality, thought and insight, and therefore should not be translated, as would also be possible, by “as to” morality, etc. E.M. HARE, at GS.3.310, translates “further virtue, further thought, further insight.” Moreover the exposition and the interrogation were not “as to” morality, thought and insight. The exposition (*uddesa*) was the recital of the Pātimokkha rules, and the interrogation (*paripuccha*) was the asking of all present at the fortnightly recitals if they had seen, heard or suspected any offence. ⁴ *pahitatta*. I take this translation from MRS. RHYS DAVIDS’s *The Birth of Indian Psychology and its Development in Buddhism*, p.347, “the self bedriven”; p.350, “the man who is *pahittatto*, he who has the self that has striven.” The commentarial exegesis is usually, if not always, *pesitatta*, the self expunged, an exegesis in line with the editors’ desire for cessation and waning of the individual self. They were wrongly, though possibly deliberately, deriving *pahitatta* from *pahīṇati*, to send, instead of from *padahati*, to strive.

“Whence, lord, is there zeal in the nuns? The masters, the group of six monks, have sheep’s wool washed and dyed and combed by nuns. The nuns ... neglect the exposition, the interrogation, the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher insight.”

Then the lord ... gladdened Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid with *dhamma*-talk. Then Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid ... gladdened by the lord with *dhamma*-talk, greeting the lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the lord, in this connection, on this occasion, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the group of six monks:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, had sheep’s wool washed and dyed and combed by nuns?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

“Were they relations of yours, monks, or not relations?”

“They were not relations, lord,” they said.

“Foolish men, those who are not relations do not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is pleasant or what is unpleasant to those who are not relations. Thus you, foolish men, will have sheep’s wool washed and dyed and combed by nuns who are not relations? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should have sheep’s wool washed or dyed or combed by a nun who is not a relation, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”¹

Whatever² means: he who ...

Monk means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

(A nun) who is not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother’s side or on the father’s side back through seven generations.

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Wash means: he gives an order—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If washed, it is to be forfeited.³

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.4, which is referred to under the name of *purāṇa-cīvarasikkhāpada* at Vin-a.689.

² From here to end of this *Nissaggiya*, cf. Bu-NP.4.2.2. ³ In the plural, since animals’ hair or wool, *lomāni*, is thought of as a plural in Pali.

Dye means: he gives an order—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If dyed, it is to be forfeited.

Comb means: he gives an order—there is an offence of wrong-doing. If combed it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited ... to an individual. Vin.3.236 And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this sheep’s wool, caused by me to be washed by a nun who is not a relation, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this sheep’s wool to the venerable one.’

If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash sheep’s wool, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her dye sheep’s wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her comb sheep’s wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her wash, makes her dye, makes her comb sheep’s wool, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

BD.2.97 If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye sheep’s wool, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her comb sheep’s wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her wash sheep’s wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her dye, makes her comb, makes her wash sheep’s wool, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her comb sheep’s wool, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her comb, makes her wash sheep’s wool, there is an

offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her comb, makes her dye sheep's wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is not a relation and makes her comb, makes her wash, makes her dye sheep's wool, there are two offences of wrong-doing together with an offence involving forfeiture.

If he is in doubt as to whether a woman is not a relation ... If he thinks that a woman is a relation when she is not a relation ... If he makes her wash another's sheep's wool, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes a woman who has been ordained by one (Order only) wash it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a woman is not a relation when she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether a woman is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a woman is a relation when she is a relation, there is no offence.

There is no offence if a female relation is washing it when a woman assistant who is not a relation is (helping); if she washes it unasked; if he makes her wash unused goods tied up in a bundle¹; if it is (washed) by a female probationer, by a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.²

BD.2.98

¹ Cf. above, BD.2.93, on *katabhaṇḍa*. ² Cf. above, BD.2.34.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 18

Bu-NP.18.1.1

BD.2.99

Vin.3.237

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time the venerable Upananda,¹ the son of the Sakyans, was dependent as a regular diner on a certain family in Rājagaha. When solid food or soft food came to² that family, a portion from that was set aside for the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. Now at that time meat came one evening to that family, a portion from that was set aside for the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. A young boy belonging to that family, getting up in the night towards morning, cried: "Give me meat." Then the man spoke thus to his wife:

"Give the boy the master's portion, having got another (portion) in exchange, we will give that to the master."

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, dressing in the morning and taking his bowl and robe, approached the family, and having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. Then that man approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans; having approached, having greeted the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting at a respectful distance, that man spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

"Yesterday evening, honoured sir, (some) meat came, a portion from that was set aside for the master. This young boy, honoured sir, got up in the night towards morning and cried: 'Give me meat,' and the master's portion

BD.2.100

¹ See above, [BD.2.42](#), below, [BD.2.109](#). ² *uppajjati*, cf. above, [BD.2.4](#), [BD.2.24](#), [BD.2.90](#), below, [BD.2.153](#).

was given to the boy. What could you get with a *kahāpaṇa*,¹ honoured sir?"

"(The use of) *kahāpaṇas* is given up by me, sir," he said.

"Yes, honoured sir, it is given up."

"Nevertheless give me a *kahāpaṇa*, sir," he said. Then that man having given the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, a *kahāpaṇa*, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

¹ The monetary unit in Pali literature. It is one of the items in the Old Commentary's definition of *rajata*, silver, below, and of *rūpiya*, perhaps gold and silver, or perhaps another word for silver, in the next *Nissaggiya*. Since the word *rūpiya* is used in this story, presumably the *kahāpaṇa* of *rūpiya* is meant above. See next notes. Vin-a.689 says that the *kahāpaṇa* is *suvaṇṇamayo vā rūpiyamayo vā pākātiko vā*, made of gold or made of silver (or gold and silver), or the ordinary one. This last was probably usually made of copper. Vin-a.297 says that in Rājagaha a *kahāpaṇa* was (worth) twenty *māsakas* (beans), therefore a *pāda* was worth five *māsakas*, and in all districts a *pāda* was a quarter of a *kahāpaṇa*. This passage opposes the old black *kahāpaṇa* (*porāṇa nilakāhapaṇa*) to others, presumably more modern ones, such as those of Rudradamaka, which, according to the Ṭikā, were worth a third of the *nilakahāpaṇa*. In one of the Commentaries Buddhaghosa calls the *kahāpaṇa* four-sided, thus not circular.

On *kahāpaṇa* see RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.3, p.13; *Buddhist India*, p.100; **BD.1.29**, **BD.1.71**, **n.2**; and on *pāda*, *māsaka*, see **BD.1.71**, **n.2**; **BD.1.72**, **n.1**. The late Professor E.J. Rapson kindly told me that coins were certainly known at the time of the Commentaries, but it is doubtful whether they were known at the date of the text. Cf. A.A. MACDONELL, *India's Past*, p.262f.; RAPSON, *Ancient India*, pp.13–14, pp.151–152, p.173; *Cambridge History of India* i.61, i.217. Here we have to bear in mind a distinction between the text (*sikkhāpada*), the Old Commentary (*Padabhājanīya*), and the *Commentary* (Buddhaghosa). The two former may have sustained several redactions.

“As we accept gold and silver,¹ so do these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, accept gold and silver.”

BD.2.101

Monks heard that man who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, accept gold and silver?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, accepted gold and silver?”

¹ *rūpiya*, silver, or gold and silver. In the “rule” *rūpiya* disappears and is supplanted by the compound, *jātarūparajata*. It is not unusual for a “rule” to be more precise in its reference than the story that led up to it, so that here, had only “silver” been intended in the story, it would not have been surprising to find the rule improving on the story, and alluding to “gold and silver.” But both the Old Commentary, and the Commentary appear to equate *rūpiya* with *jātarūparajata*, as though at all events at their date the two meant the same thing.

Jātarūpa is a word for gold, perhaps meaning literally a form, *rūpa*, (stamped) on what is good and sound. The Old Commentary below defines it as *satthuvaṇṇa*, the colour of the teacher (cf. DN.ii.17, DN.iii.143); Vin-a.689 as *suvaṇṇassa nāma*, and says that it is like the colour of the *tathāgata* (cf. DN-a.1.78, *suvaṇṇa*). Thus *jātarūpa* seems to be called *suvaṇṇa* on account of its lovely colour.

Rajata is defined in the Old Commentary, below (also at DN-a.78) as “*kahāpaṇa*, the *māsaka* of copper, of wood, of lac, used in business”; at Vin-a.689 as “mother-of-pearl, precious stone, coral, silver (*rajata*), gold (*jātārūpa*).

Rūpiya is defined in the Old Commentary, on the next *Nissaggiya* as “the colour of the teacher, the *kahāpaṇa*, the *māsaka* of copper, of wood, of lac, used in business.” This definition therefore combines those of *jātarūpa* and of *rajata* under the one heading, as though *rūpiya* were a generic term for these two precious metals. Cf. Vin-a.696, where *jātarūparajata* seems identified with *rūpiya*, and where also Buddhaghosa defines *rūpiyasamvohāraṃ* as *jātarūparajataparivattanaṃ*, the *rūpiya* used in business in exchange of gold and silver.

I have, in view of these definitions, translated both *rūpiya* and *jātarūparajata* (of the “rule”) as “gold and silver.” Whether all or any of these were simply pieces of metal, or coins as we know them, stamped and engraved with a figure or form, *rūpa*, as in Buddhaghosa’s days seems at least to have been the case with some of the *māsakas* (see below, [BD.2.102, notes 9 and 10](#)), we cannot, for the time to which the text and Old Commentary, purport to refer, determine with any certainty. *Rūpiya* certainly signifies a medium of exchange, but yet it would be a mistake to translate it by “money.” See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.7, where he seems to reject the idea that *rūpiya* means money. The bowls that were *rūpiyamaya*, used by the group of six monks, could not have been “made of money.” On the other hand, they also had bowls that were *sovaṇṇamaya*, made of gold, gold of the kind that is *suvaṇṇa*. It therefore looks as if in this passage *rūpiya* does not stand for silver as well as for gold, nor for “silver” as a medium of exchange. Again, taking AN.i.253 to show how far from fixed were the meanings attached to these names for precious metals, *jātārūpa* clearly represents unworked, sterling gold that a goldsmith can work into ornaments.

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, accept gold and silver?

BD.2.102

It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...
And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should take gold and silver,¹ or should get another to take it (for him), or should consent to its being kept in deposit² (for him), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.**”

Vin.3.238

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-NP.18.2.1

Gold³ means: it is called the colour of the teacher.⁴

Silver⁵ means: the *kahāpaṇa*,⁶ the *masaka*⁷ of copper,⁸ the *māsaka* of wood,⁹ the *māsaka* of lac,¹⁰ used in business.¹¹

BD.2.103

¹ *jātarūparajata*. Cf. next note above. At Vin.1.245 the lord is recorded to say, “I do not say, monks, that in any way may gold and silver be consented to, may be looked about for.” The Cūlavagga, in the account of the Council of Vesālī, Vin.2.294ff., includes the acceptance of gold and silver (*jātarūparajata*) by monks as the last of the ten matters questioned, but ruled not to be permissible. At DN.i.5 an ordinary man might say of Gotama that he is one who refrains from accepting *jātarūparajata*. ² *upanikkhattaṃ vā sādiyeyya*. See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.7, and *Vinaya Texts* i.26, n.4. ³ *jātarūpa*. ⁴ *satthuvaṇṇa*. ⁵ *rajata*. ⁶ See BD.1.28, n.1; BD.1.71, n.2; and above, BD.2.100, n.1. ⁷ See BD.1.71, n.2, and BD.1.72. ⁸ *lohamāsaka*. Vin-a.689 says that it is a *māsaka* (bean) made up of copper and bronze (*tamba*), etc. ⁹ *dārumāsaka*. Vin-a.689 says that this is a *māsaka* made up of strong, durable wood, or of a piece of bamboo, or even of palm leaves, cutting a figure or engraving into it (*rūpaṃ chinditvā*). ¹⁰ *jatumāsaka*. Vin-a.690 says that this is a *māsaka* made with lac or with resin, on to which a figure has been embossed or introduced (literally caused to be raised up *samuṭṭhāpetvā*).

It is interesting to note the present-day usage in force in some parts of Tibet: J. HANBURY-TRACY, *Black River of Tibet*, p.73, “a collection of shells, short lengths of polished wood with curious markings, bean-pods and round discs. These were the tallies used in tax-collecting.” And BD.2.74, “in some parts of Tibet lumps of silver, in the shape of ponies’ hooves, are used for money.” ¹¹ *ye vohāraṃ gacchanti*. Vin-a.690 says that in all districts where there is business every kind is included, even if made of bone, of hide, of fruit, of seeds of trees, or whether a figure has been raised up on it or not. This passage goes on to say that the things which involve forfeiture are silver, gold, a gold *māsaka*, a silver *māsaka*; the things that involve an offence of wrong-doing are pearls and other gems, the seven sorts of grain, slaves, fields, flower-parks and orchards; the things that are allowable include thread, a plough-share, cloth, cotton, cooked pulses, and oil, ghee, butter, honey, molasses as medicine.

Should take means: if he himself takes, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Should get another to take it (for him) means: if he causes another to take it, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Should consent to its being kept in deposit means: if he says: ‘Let this come to be for the master,’ or consents to its being kept in deposit, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited in the midst of the Order. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: That monk, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus: ‘I, honoured sirs, accepted gold and silver,¹ this is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.’² Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk. If an attendant of a monastery or a lay-follower comes there, he should be told: ‘Sir, find out about this.’ If he says: ‘What could be got with this?’ he should not be told: ‘Bring this or that’; oil or ghee or honey or molasses may be mentioned as allowable. If he brings what is allowable, having got it in exchange for this, it may be made use of by all except the one who accepted the gold and silver. If he can undertake to do this in this way,³ it is well. But if he cannot undertake to do it, he should be told: ‘Sir, remove this.’⁴ If he removes it, it is well. But if he does not remove it, a monk endowed with five qualities⁵ should be agreed upon as silver-remover⁶: one who would not follow a wrong course through desire, one who would not follow

BD.2.104

¹ *rūpiya*. ² Vin-a.691 points out that as *rupiya* is not legally allowed (*akappiya*), neither a group nor an individual may possess it, but only the Order. Therefore it can only be forfeited to the Order. ³ *evaṃ ce taṃ labhetha*—i.e., to procure what is allowable. This comprises the four medicines (oil, ghee, etc.) mentioned above. Note that the fifth medicine, butter, is absent here. ⁴ *imaṃ chaḍḍehi*. If he cannot go and exchange the *rūpiya* for something allowable, the *rūpiya* should be removed, since it is not allowable. ⁵ *Pañcaḥ aṅgehi samannāgato*. Here the qualities are as follows in the text. Another group of qualities are detailed at AN.i.162 = SN.i.99; these are the constituents of morality, of concentration, of wisdom, of freedom, of freedom by knowledge and insight that are possessed by the adept (*asekha*)—i.e., the arahān. Cf. below, BD.2.122. ⁶ *rūpiya-chaḍḍaka*. I think that to translate this term as “bullion-remover,” as at *Vinaya Texts* i.26, n.4, gives a false notion of the extent of any largesse that a monk might have received. Cf. Thag.620 *pupphacchaddaka*, a scavenger of flowers, and Vin.4.6, where this is given as one of the low types of work.

a wrong course through hatred, one who would not follow a wrong course through stupidity, one who would not follow a wrong course through fear,¹ and one who would know what is removed and what is not removed. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First, the monk is to be requested. Having been requested, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon the monk so and so as silver-remover. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order agrees upon the monk so and so as silver-remover. If it is pleasing to the venerable ones to agree upon the monk so and so as silver-remover, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, they should speak. The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as silver-remover, and it is right ... Thus do I understand this.' It is to be removed by the monk agreed upon making no sign.² If, making a sign, he lets it drop, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he thinks that it is gold and silver when it is gold and silver, (and) accepts gold and silver, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether it is gold and silver, (and) accepts gold and silver, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is not gold and silver when it is gold and silver, (and) accepts gold and silver, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not gold and silver, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, there is no offence.

Vin.3.239
BD.2.105

There is no offence if, taking³ it or causing (another, to take it within a monastery or within a house,⁴ he lays it aside, thinking, 'It will be for him

¹ These are the four *agatis*, see [BD.1.323, n.7](#). ² The silver-remover must avoid drawing attention to the place where he throws down the *rūpiya*. ³ *uggahetvā*. ⁴ *ajjha-āvasatha*. At [Vin.4.69ff.](#) *āvasatha* is a "public rest-house." But cf. *ajjhāvasati*, to inhabit, to dwell in a house, above, [BD.2.47, n.5](#).

who will take it'¹; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *yassa bhavissati so harissati*. Probably a monk, whether accepting *rūpiya* from a lay-person visiting a monastery, or from a lay person whose house he is visiting, should lay it aside at once, so that either the owner may take it again, or someone else may pick it up. Cf. *Vin.4.162ff.* in reference to a jewel—not given to a monk but picked up by a monk. At all events, in laying it aside, the monk's responsibility ceases, and he cannot be accused of committing an offence. To be allowed to accept *rūpiya* at all must be attributed to the courtesy that the monks must display towards the laity: by accepting gifts they confer a boon upon the donors. In view of the *anāpatti* (no offence) clause, the *sikkhāpada* (rule) clause even more strongly suggests not that a monk must not take or cause *rūpiya* to be taken at all, but that he must not take it or cause it to be taken for him with a view to keeping and using it or putting it by in deposit.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (*NISSAGGIYA*) 19

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks engaged in¹ various transactions in which gold and silver was used.² People ... spread it about saying:

Bu-NP.19.1.1
BD.2.106

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, engaged in various transactions in which gold and silver is used?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should engage in various transactions in which gold and silver is used, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-NP.19.2.1
BD.2.107

¹ *samāpajjati*, or “came into,” see [BD.1.201, n.3](#). ² *rūpiya-saṁvohāra*, which Vin-a.696 explains as *jātarūparajata-panvattana*, (involving) the exchange of gold and silver. On *rūpiya*, *jātarūpa* and *rajata*, see above, [BD.2.100, n.2](#).

Various means: shaped¹ and unshaped and (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped.

Shaped means: intended (as an ornament) for the head, intended (as an ornament) for the neck, intended (as an ornament) for the hand, intended (as an ornament) for the foot, intended (as an ornament) for the hips.

Unshaped means: it is called shaped in a mass.²

(Partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped means: both of these.

Vin.3.240

Gold and silver³ means: what is the colour of the teacher,⁴ the *kahāpaṇa*, the *māsaka* of copper, the *māsaka* of wood, the *māsaka* of lac, used in business.⁵

Should engage in means: if he gets shaped in exchange for shaped, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets unshaped in exchange for shaped, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped in exchange for shaped, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets shaped in exchange for unshaped ... If he gets unshaped in exchange for unshaped ... If he gets (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped in exchange for unshaped ... If he gets shaped in exchange for (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped ... If he gets unshaped in exchange for (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped ... If he gets (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped in exchange for (partly) shaped, (partly) unshaped, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. It is to be forfeited in the midst of the Order. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: That monk, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus: 'I, honoured sirs, engaged in various transactions in which gold and silver are used; this is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk. If an attendant of a monastery or a lay-follower comes there ... (See **Bu-NP.18.2**; *instead of*: except by the one

BD.2.108

¹ *kata*. This means made up into some definite object, an earring or another ornament, for instance, as opposed to *akata*, unshaped—i.e., still a *ghana*, a (shapeless) mass. ² *ghanakata*.

³ *rūpiya*. ⁴ *satthuvaṇṇa*, see above, **BD.2.100, n.2**. ⁵ This definition of *rūpiya* covers those of *jātarūpa* and *rajata* at **Vin.3.238**, thus giving the impression that *rūpiya* is a generic term for *jātarūpa* and *rajata*. See above, **BD.2.100, n.2**.

who accepted gold and silver ... and accepts gold and silver *read*: except by the one who got gold and silver in exchange ... and gets gold and silver in exchange) ... If he thinks that it is gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, (and) gets gold and silver in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not gold and silver, (and) gets gold and silver in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is not gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, (and) gets gold and silver in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not gold and silver, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not gold and silver when it is not gold and silver, there is no offence.

There is no offence if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

¹ This is the only *anāpatti* paragraph in the thirty *Nissaggiyas* where nothing more than these two invariable exemptions are given.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 20

BD.2.109
Bu-NP.20.1.1

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at the time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, came to be skilled¹ in robe-making. He, making an outer cloak of cloth rags,² making it well-dyed, well-worked, clothed himself in it. Then a certain wandering student,³ having clothed himself in a costly cloth,⁴ approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, he said:

Vin.3.241

“Your reverence, this outer cloak of yours is beautiful, give it to me for (this) cloth.”

“Find out about it,⁵ your reverence,” he said.

“Yes, your reverence, I know (about it).”

“Very well, then, your reverence,” he said and gave (it to him).

Then that wandering student, clothing himself in that outer cloak, went to the wandering students' monastery.⁶ The wandering students spoke thus to this wandering student: “This outer cloak of yours is beautiful, your reverence. Where did you get it?”

BD.2.110

¹ *paṭṭho*, to be read throughout as *paddha*, also said of Upananda at [Vin.3.210](#), of Udāyin at [Vin.4.60](#). See [Vin-a.665](#). ² *paṭa-pilotikā*, cf. [SN.ii.219](#). ³ *paribbājaka*, a wanderer, wandering student, wandering teacher. See RHYSDAVIDS, *Buddhist India*, pp.141ff.; B.M. BARUA, *Pre-Buddhist Indian Philosophy*, p.192, and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁴ *paṭa*, or cloak or garment. ⁵ *jānāhi*. I think that the point of this injunction must be that when the wandering student wished to exchange the garments again (see just below), Upananda refused to do so because he was not going to be “taken in,” and get back the outer cloak which he had managed to barter with the student. For, according to Buddhaghosa ([Vin-a.699](#)), his outer cloak was *dubbala* (worn). ⁶ Special places were given for the accommodation of the wanderers, where they could meet with one another and enter into discussions during their travels. Also, like the Sakyaputtis, they did not go on tour during the three months of the rains.

"It was in exchange for my cloth, your reverences."

"But, your reverence, this outer cloak will do¹ for you for some time (only). That cloth was better for you."

Then that wandering student, thinking: "What the wandering students said is true. This outer cloak will do for me for some time (only). That cloth was better for me," approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached he spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans: "Your reverence, here is your outer cloak, give the cloth to me."

"But, your reverence, did I not say to you, 'Find out about it'? I will not give it," he said.

Then that wandering student ... spread it about, saying: "Even householders give back to a householder if he regrets²; but why will one who has gone forth not give back to one who has gone forth?"

Monks heard that wandering student who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, engage in bartering³ together with a wandering student?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, engaged in bartering together with a wandering student?"

"It is true, lord," he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, engage in bartering together with a wandering student? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should engage in various kinds of bartering, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."⁴

BD.2.111

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-NP.20.2.1

¹ *bhavissati*. ² *vippaṭṭisāri*. Here it means if he regrets what he has bartered and wants it back again. ³ *kayavikkaya*, or "buying and selling." *Cetāpeti*, to get in exchange, and *parivatteti*, to exchange or barter (cf. above, BD.2.60, BD.2.67, where the one is defined by the other), also imply a bartering. Here there was no buying and selling, only an exchange of articles. ⁴ At DN.i.5 it is said that an ordinary man might say of Gotama, in speaking praise of him, that he refrains from *kayavikkaya*, bartering.

Various means: the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicine for the sick, and even a lump of chunam and a toothpick and unwoven thread.¹

Should engage in ... bartering means: if he transgresses,² saying: 'Give this for that, take this for that, barter this for that, get this in exchange for that,³ there is an offence of wrong-doing. Inasmuch as it is bartered—one's own goods gone to the hands of another, another's goods gone to one's own hands—it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited ... to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'I, honoured sirs, engaged in various kinds of bartering; this is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back (these goods) to the venerable one.'

Vin.3.242

If he thinks that it is bartering when it is bartering, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.⁴ If he is in doubt as to whether it is bartering, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is not bartering when it is bartering, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is bartering when it is not bartering, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not bartering, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not bartering when it is not bartering, there is no offence.

BD.2.112

There is no offence if he asks the value, points it out to one who makes it legally allowable,⁵ saying: 'This is ours, and we want this and that'; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Second Division: that on Silk

THIS IS ITS KEY

Two portions on silk and pure, for six years, a rug,

¹ =below, **BD.2.161**=**Vin.4.154** in definition of *lābho*. The last three items occur again below, **BD.2.149**. ² *ajjhācarati*; cf. **BD.1.202, n.3**. ³ Cf. below, **BD.2.135**. ⁴ There must, I think, be a clause omitted: 'and engages in bartering.' Otherwise there is no sense in the offence.

⁵ A *kappiyakāraka* makes a thing allowable by giving it. Vin-a.701, "saying, 'my utensils are valuable, give your bowl to another.'"

And two on (sheep's) wool, on taking, both the various kinds.¹

¹ I.e., *rūpiyaśaṁvohāra* (Bu-NP.19), and *kayavikkaya* (Bu-NP.20). In the former there was not bartering, but payment in some kind of medium of exchange; in the latter there was exchange and barter, giving and taking.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 21

Bu-NP.21.1.1
BD.2.113

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks made a hoard of many bowls.¹ People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place² and seeing (this hoard), looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, make a hoard of many bowls? Will these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, do a trade in bowls or will they set up an earthenware shop?³” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks keep an extra bowl?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, keep an extra bowl?”

“It is true, lord.” The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

Vin.3.243

“How can you, foolish men, keep an extra bowl? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should keep an extra bowl, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-NP.21.2.1
BD.2.114

¹ Cf. Vin.4.243. ² *vihāra*. The laity visited the special *vihāras* which they themselves supported. This form of interest in the Order's well-being must have given an added reason for visiting *vihāras*, like our own way of visiting some charitable or other institution in which we are interested. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.50.

Now at that time¹ an extra bowl had accrued to² the venerable Ānanda, and the venerable Ānanda became desirous of giving this bowl to the venerable Sāriputta; but the venerable Sāriputta was staying at Sāketa. Then it occurred to the venerable Ānanda: “A rule of training laid down by the lord is that an extra bowl should not be kept. And this extra bowl has accrued to me, and I am desirous of giving this bowl to the venerable Sāriputta, but the venerable Sāriputta is staying at Sāketa. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

“But, how long, Ānanda, before Sāriputta will come (here)?”

“On the ninth or tenth day, lord,” he said.

Then the lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to keep an extra bowl for at most ten days. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“An extra bowl may be kept for at most ten days. For him who exceeds that (period), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”³

For at most ten days means: it may be kept for ten days at the maximum.⁴

An extra bowl means: one that is not allotted, not assigned.⁵

A bowl⁶ means: there are two kinds of bowls: an iron bowl, a clay bowl.⁷ There are three sizes⁸ for a bowl: a large bowl, a medium-sized bowl, a

Bu-NP.21.3.1

BD.2.115

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.1, where the same story is told in the same words about keeping an extra robe. See above, BD.2.4. ² *uppanno hoti*. ³ At Vin.4.243 the rule is that a hoard of bowls should not be made. There the group of six nuns, as here the group of six monks, are recorded to have made a hoard. There seems some discrepancy between a hoard and an extra bowl. The rule in this Bu-NP.21 may have been altered from “a hoard” to “an extra bowl” to balance that against wearing an extra robe, Bu-NP.1. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.6. ⁵ = definition of “extra robe” at BD.2.7 above, and of *sannicayam kareyya* at Vin.4.244. ⁶ This definition of *patta* = Vin.4.123, Vin.4.243. ⁷ At Vin.2.112 these two kinds of bowls are “allowed” (*anujānāmi*). Whoever uses a wooden bowl, a golden or a silver one or one of eight other kinds mentioned there, commits a *dukkaṭa* offence. ⁸ *vaṇṇā ti pamāṇāni*, Vin-a.702.

small¹ bowl. A large bowl means that it takes half an *ālḥaka* measure² of boiled rice, a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice, a suitable curry.³ A medium-sized bowl means that it takes a *nāḷika* measure of boiled rice, a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice, a suitable curry. A small bowl means that it takes a *pattha* measure of boiled rice, a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice, a suitable curry. (A bowl) greater than that⁴ is not a bowl, (a bowl) smaller (than that) is not a bowl.

For him who exceeds (that period), there is an offence involving forfeiture means: it is to be forfeited on the eleventh day at sunrise. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: That monk, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should speak thus: ‘Honoured sirs, this bowl is to be forfeited by me, the ten days having elapsed. I forfeit it to the Order.’ Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk; the bowl forfeited should be given (back with the words): ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This bowl of the monk so and so, which had to be forfeited, is forfeited (by him) to the Order. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should give back this bowl to the monk so and so.’

That monk, approaching two or three monks ... (See **Bu-NP.1.3–Bu-NP.1.4**) ... ‘... I will give back this bowl to the venerable one.’ ...

... If he thinks that one is destroyed when it is not destroyed, there is an

¹ *omaka*, inferior, insignificant. RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.19, calls these “high, middle and low bowls.” ² For these measures, *ālḥaka*, *nāḷika* and *pattha*, see RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, pp.18–20, and **BD.1.12, n.2; BD.1.103, n.1.** ³ *tadupiya vyañjana*. On *tadupiya* see TRENCKNER, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1908, p.131ff., Commentary on Mi.9. He says it is “perhaps properly a Vinaya word.” But it occurs, as he mentions, at SN.iii.146, *tadupiyañca sūpeyyaṃ*, translated KS.iii.124 “broth for seasoning thereto.” At MN.ii.54 we get the same phrase, translated *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 2.28 “with curry-stuffs to match.” MN-a.3.287 explains it as *tadanurūpa-telaphāṇitadīni*, while Vin-a.703 says: *tassa odanassa anurūpaṃ maccha-maṃsa-saka-phala-kaḷirādi byañjanaṃ*, curry of fish, meat, vegetables, fruits, bamboo-tips suitable to this boiled rice. At Ja.2.160 there is the expression *na ca pañña tadupikā*, which is explained to mean, ‘But your wisdom does not match (*tadupikā*), does not correspond to (*anucchavikā*) your body’ (which was large). ⁴ *tato ukkaṭṭho apatto, omako apatto*. On *apattaka*, see below, **BD.2.123**.

offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is broken¹ when it is not broken, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is stolen when it is not stolen, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the bowl which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the ten days have elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether the ten days have not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the ten days have not elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is no offence.

There is no offence if within ten days it is allotted, assigned, bestowed, lost, destroyed, broken, if they tear it from him, if they take it on trust; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.²

Then the group of six monks did not give back a bowl that had been forfeited. They told this matter to the lord. He said: "Monks, a bowl that has been forfeited is not not to be given back. Whosoever should not give it back, there is an offence of wrong-doing."³

Bu-NP.21.4.1

BD.2.117

¹ In Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.28 we get "burnt," of a robe. ² Cf. Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.28 ("burnt"), and Vin.4.245 ("broken"). ³ See Bu-NP.1, where a similar story is told of a robe that had been forfeited; and Vin.4.245, again a bowl.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 22

Bu-NP.22.1.1
BD.2.118

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery.¹ Now at that time monks were invited by a certain potter who said: "If these masters need a bowl, I (can supply them) with a bowl."² Now at that time monks, not knowing moderation, asked for many bowls. They asked for large bowls for those who had small bowls, they asked for small bowls for those who had large bowls. Then that potter, making many bowls for the monks, could not make other goods for sale,³ and he could not keep himself going and his wife and children suffered. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation, ask for many bowls? This (man), making many bowls for these (monks), is not able to make other goods for sale, and he cannot keep himself going and his wife and children suffer."

Vin.3.245

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can these monks, not knowing moderation, ask for many bowls? Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Monks, is it true, as is said, that monks, not knowing moderation, asked for many bowls?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can these foolish men, not knowing moderation, ask for many bowls? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." And having rebuked them and given reasoned talk, he addressed the

BD.2.119

¹ See above, [BD.2.94](#). ² *yesam ayyānaṃ pattaṇa attho ahaṃ pattaṇā ti*. For rest of this par. cf. [Bu-Pc.86](#). ³ *vikkāyikaṃ*, or "for giving away"—i.e., in exchange or barter; see above, [BD.2.110](#). Cf. [Ja.1.201](#).

monks, saying:

“Monks, a bowl is not to be asked for. Whoever should ask (for one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”¹

Now at that time a certain monk's bowl became broken.² Then it occurred to that monk: “Asking for a bowl is forbidden by the lord,” and being scrupulous; he did not ask (for one); he went about for alms-food (to be put) into his hands.³ People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, go about for alms-food (to be put) into their hands, like followers of other sects?”⁴ Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, when a bowl is destroyed or when a bowl is broken, to ask for a bowl.”

Bu-NP.22.1.2

Now at that time the group of six monks said: “It is allowed by the lord to ask for a bowl when a bowl is destroyed or when a bowl is broken”; and these, because (their bowls) were a little broken and a little chipped⁵ and a little scratched,⁶ asked for many bowls. Then that potter, making many bowls, as before,⁷ for the monks, was not able to make other goods for sale, and he did not keep himself going and his wife and children suffered. As before, people ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons

Bu-NP.22.1.3

BD.2.120

¹ Note that Gotama is not here laying down a *nissaggiya pācittiya*, but a *dukkāṭa*, rule. Because of it a monk, following the injunction scrupulously, arouses the criticism of the laity, and an “allowance,” an *anujānāmi*, is given (in Bu-NP.22.1.2). Then the group of six monks transgress the allowance; this leads to the formulation of the *nissaggiya pācittiya* (in Bu-NP.22.1.3).

² Examples of ways in which bowls got broken given at Vin.2.113f. ³ *hatthesu piṇḍaya carati*. See Vin.1.90, where this expression occurs again, and again people complain that those ordained as monks are like *titthiyas*. Cf. also Vin.2.114, *tumbakaṭāhe piṇḍaya caranti*, they went for alms-food (to be put) into a gourd; and Vin.2.115, *ghaṭikaṭāhe*, into a water-pot (or skull). ⁴ This wish to differentiate between *Sakyaputtiyas* and *titthiyas* shows the interest taken by lay people in the former, according to the texts, and a certain desire that their behaviour should be suitable. Monks were not to ape householders on the one hand—e.g., above, BD.2.74, BD.2.106; now and at Vin.1.90, Vin.2.114, Vin.2.115, they are not to look like *titthiyas*. ⁵ *appamattakena khaṇḍena*. ⁶ *vilikhitamattena*. ⁷ *tath'eva*, “in that very way,” thus “as before.”

of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation, ask for many bowls? This (man) making many bowls for these (monks), is not able to make other goods for sale, and he does not keep himself going and his wife and children suffer.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, when their bowls are a little broken and a little chipped and a little scratched, ask for many bowls?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

Vin.3.246

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, when your bowls were a little broken ... asked for many bowls?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, when your bowls are a little broken ... ask for many bowls? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not yet pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should get another new bowl in exchange for a bowl mended¹ in less than five places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. That bowl is to be forfeited by that monk to the company of monks, and whatever is the last bowl² belonging to that company of monks, that should be given to this monk with the words: ‘Monk, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks.’³ That is the proper course in this case.**”

BD.2.121

Bu-NP.22.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

A bowl mended in less than five places means: it is not mended, or it is mended in one (place), or it is mended in two (places), or it is mended in three (places), or it is mended in four (places). A bowl with no room for mends means: its rim is not two finger-lengths⁴ (in breadth). A bowl with

¹ *bandhanena*, from *bandhati*, to tie together, to unite; and not from *bhīdati*, to break, as appears to have been thought at *Vinaya Texts* i.27. *Critical Pali Dictionary* says, “without bands, esp. not riveted (said of alms-bowls).” ² *pattapariyanta*. Vin-a.708 says, “the bowl that remains at the end (*pariyante*) after this handing over.” ³ *bhedanāya*, √*bhid*. Cf. phrase *kāyassa bheda*, on the breaking up of the body. ⁴ *dvaṅgulā*, as at Vin.2.294, Thig.60. Vin-a.708, commenting upon *dvaṅgulā rāji na hoti*, says that there is not a rim measuring two finger-lengths below the upper circumference. Cf. Vb-a.343, *sattadhaññāmāsappamāṇaṃ ekaṃ angulaṃ*.

room for mends means: its rim is two finger-lengths (in breadth).

New bowl means: it is so called with reference to the asking for (it).¹

Should get in exchange means: he asks for (it). There is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited in the midst of the Order. All should come together taking each the bowl in his keeping.² An inferior bowl should not be in his keeping if he hopes, 'I shall receive a costly bowl.' If an inferior bowl is in his keeping, and he hopes, 'I shall receive a costly bowl,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited. That monk, approaching the Order, arranging his upper robe over one shoulder, honouring the feet of the senior monks, sitting down on his haunches, saluting with joined palms, should say: 'Honoured sirs, this bowl, got in exchange by me for a bowl mended in less than five places, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent monk. A monk endowed with five qualities should be agreed upon as assigner of bowls³: one who would not follow a wrong course through desire, one who would not follow a wrong course through hatred, one who would not follow a wrong course through stupidity, one who would not follow a wrong course through fear,⁴ and one who would know what is taken and what is not taken. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon. First, the monk is to

BD.2.122

Vin.3.247

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.77](#), for definition of "new *santhata*." ² *adhiṭṭhita-patta*. *Adhiṭṭhita*, from *adhiṭṭhati* (or *adhiṭṭhahati* or *adhiṭṭheti*). This variety of spelling is paralleled by variety of meaning. *Critical Pali Dictionary*, referring to the above passage, says that *adhiṭṭhitapatta* is "the obligatory alms-bowl." *Adhiṭṭhita*, besides meaning "allotted," as hitherto rendered, also means "taken in use, taken in possession." "Allotted bowl" would not be right here, since the "assigner of bowls" is yet to be agreed upon or appointed, which occurs just below. And he is appointed precisely to remedy any tendency of monks to carry an inferior bowl to the meeting of the Order, as though it were his usual one, hoping to get a costly one in its place. ³ *pattagāhāpaka*, agent noun from causative *gāhāpeti* = to make to take, but here "to invite to take," to say: "be so good as to receive," "to make the bowl pass from one monk to another." Cf. [Vin.2.177](#), where it is said that there was no *pattagāhāpaka* at that time; and [AN.iii.275](#), where many of the officials of the Order are mentioned, and are recommended not to be appointed if they follow the four *agatis*, and cannot make a proper discrimination in their province. ⁴ On the *agatis* see [BD.1.323, n.7](#), and cf. above, [BD.2.104](#). Also cf. [Vin.1.283](#) for "receiver of robes" and [Vin.2.167](#) for "assigner of lodgings," and above, [BD.2.104](#), for "silver-remover."

be requested. Having been requested, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon the monk so and so as assigner of bowls. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order agrees upon the monk so and so as assigner of bowls. If it is pleasing to the venerable ones to agree upon the monk so and so as assigner of bowls, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, they should speak. The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as assigner of bowls, and it is right ... So do I understand.’ The monk agreed upon should make the bowl pass. He should say to an elder¹: ‘Honoured sir, let the elder take the bowl.’² If the elder takes it, the elder’s bowl should be passed to a second.³ He should not take it out of regard⁴ for him.⁵ For whoever should not take it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. It should not be made to pass to one who has what is not a bowl.⁶ In this way the bowl should be made to pass down to the youngest member of the Order.⁷

BD.2.123

Whatever is the last bowl belonging to that company of monks, that should be given to this monk⁸ with the words⁹: ‘Monk, this is a bowl for you; it should be kept until it breaks’ means: This bowl should not be laid aside by that monk in what is not the right place¹⁰; it should not be used for improper purposes¹¹; it should not be given away¹² with the

BD.2.124

¹ Vin-a.708, “pointing out what is commendable in the bowl, he should say, ‘This bowl is of the right measure, it is nice and it is suitable for an elder. Take it.’” ² I.e., the new bowl just put at the disposal of the Order. ³ To a second elder, according to age. ⁴ *anuddayatāya*, explained as *anukampāya* (pity, compassion) at Vin-a.708. But for whoever is contented and says, ‘What good is another bowl to me?’ and does not take it, there is no offence. ⁵ I.e., the elder. ⁶ *apattaka*. See Bu-NP.21.3, above, BD.2.115, on *apatta*. At Vin.1.90 it is said that one who is *apattako* is not to be ordained. *Apattaka* means either one who uses what is not a bowl—e.g., gourds and water-pots—or one who has not a bowl—e.g., a *titthiya* who uses his hands to receive alms-food (Vin.2.114, Vin.2.115). Cf. *acivaraka* at Vin.1.90, which seems to mean one who has not a robe and who therefore went naked. At Vin.1.93 monks are to be asked at the ordination ceremony whether they are complete as to bowl and robes. ⁷ Everyone receives another bowl, so that the former bowl of the youngest member of the community remains free. ⁸ I.e., the one who had to forfeit his bowl. ⁹ Doubtless spoken by the “assigner of bowls.” ¹⁰ *adese*, on a bench or couch or peg to hang a sunshade on. It is to be laid aside on a stand or stool, Vin-a.709. *Dukkaṭa* offences for putting bowls away in various wrong ways and places are given at Vin.2.113f. ¹¹ I.e., for cooking, colouring or boiling rice-gruel. ¹² *na vissajjetabbu ti aññassa na dātabbo*, Vin-a.709.

words: 'How can this bowl be lost or destroyed or broken?' If it is laid aside in the wrong place or used for improper purposes or given away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

This is the proper course in this case means: this is the appropriate course in this case.

If he gets an unmended bowl in exchange for an unmended bowl, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets a bowl that is mended in one place ... in two places ... in three places ... in four places in exchange for an unmended bowl, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets an unmended bowl ... a bowl that is mended in one place ... in two places ... in three places ... in four places in exchange for a bowl that is mended in one place, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets an unmended bowl ... a bowl that is mended in one place ... in two places ... in three places ... in four places in exchange for a bowl that is mended in two places ... in three places ... in four places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Bu-NP.22.2.2

If he gets a bowl with no room for mends in exchange for an unmended bowl, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he gets a bowl that has room for one mend in exchange for an unmended bowl ... If he gets a bowl that has room for four mends in exchange for a bowl that is mended in four places, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Vin.3.248

If he gets an unmended bowl in exchange for a bowl that has no room for mends, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture ... If he gets a bowl mended in four places in exchange for a bowl that has room for four mends, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

If he gets a bowl with no room for mends in exchange for a bowl that has no room for mends ... If he gets a bowl that has room for four mends in exchange for a bowl that has room for four mends, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

BD.2.125

There is no offence if the bowl is destroyed, if the bowl is broken, if they belong to relations, if they are invited, if it is for another, if it is by means

of his own property; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.49](#), [BD.2.52](#), [BD.2.57](#).

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 23

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery.¹ Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha,² desiring to make a cave,³ had a (mountain) slope cleared near Rājagaha. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the venerable Pilindavaccha, and having approached and greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the venerable Pilindavaccha:

“What, honoured sir, is the elder having made?”

“Sire, desiring to make a cave, I am having a (mountain) slope cleared,” he said.

“Honoured sir, does the master require an attendant for the monastery?”

“Sire, an attendant for a monastery is not prescribed by the lord.”

“Well, honoured sir, asking the lord, you must tell him of me.”

“Very well, Sire,” the venerable Pilindavaccha answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha.

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha taught, roused and gladdened King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with *dhamma*-talk. And when King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha had been taught, roused and gladdened with *dhamma*-talk by the venerable Pilindavaccha, rising up from his seat, greeting the venerable Pilindavaccha, he departed, keeping his right side towards him.

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha sent a messenger to the lord, to say: “Lord, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha desires to present an attendant for a monastery. Now, lord, what line of conduct is to be followed?”

Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given rea-

¹ = Vin.1.206-209. ² Cf. BD.1.112. ³ *leṇa*.

soned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, I allow an attendant for a monastery.”

Vin.3.249

Then a second time did King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approach the venerable Pilindavaccha, and having approached and greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the venerable Pilindavaccha:

“Honoured sir, has the lord prescribed an attendant for a monastery?”

“Yes, Sire,” he said.

“Well, honoured sir, I will give the master an attendant for the monastery.”

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, promising the venerable Pilindavaccha an attendant for the monastery, forgetting (but) remembering after a time, addressed a chief minister who was concerned with all the affairs,¹ saying: “My good man,² has that attendant for the monastery whom I promised, been given to the master?”

“Your Majesty,³ an attendant for the monastery has not been given to the master.”

“My good man, how long is it since it was considered?”

“Then that chief minister, counting up the days, spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “It is five hundred days,⁴ your Majesty.”

“Well then, give five hundred attendants for the monastery to the master.”

“Very well, your Majesty,” and the chief minister, replying thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, made over to the venerable Pilindavaccha five hundred attendants for the monastery, and a distinct village established itself. They even called it “The Village of the Monastery Attendants,”⁵ and they called it Pilinda Village.⁶

BD.2.128

Bu-NP.23.1.2

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha came to be dependent (for alms) on the families in this village. Then the venerable Pilindavaccha, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Pilinda Village for alms-food. Now at that time there came to be a festival in this village;

¹ *sabbatthaka mahāmatta*. ² *bhaṇe*. ³ *deva*. ⁴ “five hundred,” of course, only means “many, several.” ⁵ *Ārāmikagamaka*. ⁶ *Pilindagāmaka*.

young girls¹ wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, were celebrating it. Then the venerable Pilindavaccha, as he was going about in Pilinda Village on continuous alms-begging, came up to the dwelling of a certain attendant of the monastery, and having come up he sat down on the appointed seat. Now at that time, the daughter of the monastery attendant's wife, seeing other little girls wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, cried and said: "Give me a garland, give me an ornament."

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha said to that monastery attendant's wife: "Why is this little girl crying?"

"Honoured sir, this little girl is crying because, having seen other little girls wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, she says: 'Give me a garland, give me an ornament.' Whence is there a garland for us who are poor, whence is there an ornament?"

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha, taking a roll of grass,² said to that monastery attendant's wife: "Now set³ this roll of grass on this little girl's head." Then that monastery attendant's wife, taking that roll of grass, set it on the little girl's head; it became a golden chaplet,⁴ beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there was no golden chaplet like it in the women's quarters of the king. People said to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

BD.2.129

Vin.3.250

"Your Majesty, in the house of a certain monastery attendant there is a golden chaplet, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there is no golden chaplet like it in the women's quarters of your Majesty. As he is poor, where (could he have got it) from? Undoubtedly it was taken by theft."

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha had that monastery attendant's family imprisoned. A second time did the venerable Pilindavaccha, dressing

¹ *dārikā*, with variant reading *dārakā*. Oldenberg at Vin.3.278, referring to this passage and to the one immediately following, says, 'I think we ought to read *dārakā*, *dārake*.' See also his notes at Vin.3.382. I think, however, that it is not necessary to take the reading *dārakā*. The point probably is that the daughter of the monastery attendant's wife was jealous of "other little girls," rather than of the children in general. ² *tiṇaṇḍupakan ti tiṇacumbaṭakaṃ*, Vin-a.709. This is the circular roll or coil of grass (or cloth) which Indians put on the head when they are carrying baskets, water-vessels, etc., on the head. One type of wife, Vin.3.139, is called *obhatacumbaṭa*, one from whom the pad (for the burdens she carries on her head) is taken. At Ja.1.208 we get the word *cumbaṭakalaha*, a quarrel about a head-pad. ³ *paṭimuñca*. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.709 says *paṭimuñcī ti ṭhapesi*. ⁴ *suvaṇṇamālā*; Vin-a.709 says a chaplet of golden lotuses.

in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, enter Pilinda Village for alms-food. As he was going about in Pilinda Village on continuous alms-begging, he came up to that monastery attendant's dwelling, and having come up, he asked the neighbours: "Where has this monastery attendant's family gone?"

"Honoured sir, they have been imprisoned by the king on account of that golden chaplet," they said.

Bu-NP.23.1.3

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha went up to the residence of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, and having gone up he sat down on the appointed seat. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the venerable Pilindavaccha, and having approached and greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Pilindavaccha said to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: "How is it, Sire, that the monastery attendant's family is imprisoned?"

BD.2.130

"Honoured sir, in that monastery attendant's house there was a golden chaplet, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there is no golden chaplet like it in our women's quarters. Where (could he have got it) from, as he is poor? Undoubtedly it was taken by theft."

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha exercised volitional force,¹ and said: "The palace² of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha is golden," and it became made all of gold.³ He said: "Now, Sire, from where have you got so much gold?"

Saying, "I understand, honoured sir, this is the master's majesty of psychic potency," he set free the monastery attendant's family. People, delighted, full of satisfaction because they heard that a state of further-men, a wonder of psychic potency had been shown by master Pilindavaccha to the king and his retinue, presented the five kinds of medicine to the venerable Pilindavaccha, that is to say ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses. Now the venerable Pilindavaccha was customarily a receiver,⁴ so when he received

¹ *adhimucci* = *adhiṭṭhāsi*, Vin-a.709. *Critical Pali Dictionary*, under both *adhimuccati* and *adhiṭṭhati* gives "to make a (magical) act of volition." Literally hyper-released, hyper-persisted. Cf. *BD.1.128, n.3*. ² *pāsāda*, see above, *BD.2.16, n.5*. ³ Mentioned at Kv.6o8. ⁴ *lābhin*. He usually got plenty of alms-food, etc., and so did not need the extra amount.

the five kinds of medicine he gave them away among his company. And his company came to live in abundance; whatever they received, filling pots and pitchers, they put them away, and filling water-strainers and bags, they hung them up¹ in the windows. These (pots, etc.) were leaking,² and the dwelling-places became beset and overrun³ by rats. People seeing (this) as they were engaged in touring the dwelling-places, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are storing up goods indoors,⁴ like King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha." Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can monks strive after abundance such as this?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.131
Vin.3.251

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks strive after abundance such as this?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"Monks, how can these foolish men strive after abundance such as this? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:⁵

"Those medicines which may be partaken of⁶ by ill monks, that is to say, ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses: accepting these, they may be used as a store for at most seven days. For him who exceeds that (period), there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."⁷

Bu-NP.23.2.1

¹ *laggeti*, or perhaps "packed." Cf. **Vin.2.152**, where monks *thavikāyo laggenti*, hung up or packed up their bags at the foot of beds and chairs. ² *olīnavilīnāni tiṭṭhanti*, were sticking and melting, hence they let through their contents, and hence there came to be rats. The Colombo and Siamese editions of Vin-a read *heṭṭhā ca abhato-passtsu ca gaḷitāni*, leaking through the bottom and the sides. ³ *okiṇṇavikiṇṇā*. ⁴ *antokoṭṭhāgarikā*. At Ja.3.364, *mahicchā ime samaṇā anto*. ⁵ At **Vin.1.209** instead of this paragraph read, "having rebuked them and given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:" ⁶ *paṭisāyaniyāni ti paṭisāyitabāni paribhūjītabbāni ti attho*, Vin-a.710. ⁷ **Vin.1.209**, "exceeding that (time) is a matter to be dealt with according to the rule." From beginning of **Bu-NP.23** to here = **Vin.1.206-209**. Cf. **Bu-Pc.38** for rule against eating food that has been stored. The Gandharajātaka (Ja.3.363) was told in reference to this rule.

Beginning with the above rule, the order of the *Nissaggiyas* which follow is different in the Pali, Sanskrit and Chinese texts. See *Le Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivāddins*, ed. FINOT, J.Bu-As, Nov-Dec, 1913, p.39 (= 499).

Those medicines which are partaken of by ill monks means: **ghee**¹ is called ghee from cows or ghee from she-goats or ghee from buffaloes; ghee from those whose meat is suitable. **Fresh butter** means: fresh butter from just these. **Oil** means: sesamum oil, oil of mustard seeds, oil containing honey,² oil of the castor-oil plant, oil from tallow.³ **Honey** means: honey of bees.⁴ **Molasses** means: what is produced from sugar-cane.

BD.2.132

Accepting these, they may be used as a store for at most seven days means: they may be used for seven days at the maximum.

For him who exceeds that (period) there is an offence involving forfeiture means: it is to be forfeited on the eighth day at sunrise. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, seven days having elapsed, this medicine of mine is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... May I give back this medicine to the venerable one?'

If he thinks that seven days have elapsed when they have elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether the seven days have elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that the seven days have elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is allotted⁵ when it is not allotted, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is bestowed when it is not bestowed ... If he thinks that it is lost when it is not lost ... If he thinks that it is destroyed when it is not destroyed ... If he thinks that it is burnt when it is not burnt, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is stolen when it is not stolen, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Vin.3.252

BD.2.133

Acquiring something that has been forfeited,⁶ it must not be made

¹ = Vin.4.88, to "sugar-cane," below. ² *madhukatela*, or "of the honey-tree," *madhuka* being the tree *Bassia latifolia*. *Madhukapuppharasa*, not allowed at Vin.1.246; translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.133 "liquorice-juice." ³ *vasā*. At Vin-a.714 five kinds of *vasā* are given: that from bears, fish, alligators, pigs, donkeys. ⁴ *makkhikāmadhu*. The bee is called *madhumakkhikā*. ⁵ This and the next five cases = Vin.3.197, Vin.3.262, except that *avikappita*, assigned, does not occur above. For *adhiṭṭhita* see above, BD.2.7, n.1. ⁶ *nissatṭha*, cf. above, BD.2.8.

use of for bodily enjoyment,¹ it must not be consumed, it may be done into² a lamp or black colour,³ it may be made use of by another monk for bodily enjoyment, it must not be consumed (by him). If he thinks that the seven days have not elapsed when they have elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether the seven days have not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the seven days have not elapsed when they have not elapsed, there is no offence.

There is no offence if within seven days it is allotted, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt; if they tear it from them; if they take it on trust; if it is sacrificed, renounced, given up⁴ to one who is not ordained; if one devoid of longing,⁵ giving (and) acquiring, makes use of it; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Such as anointing the limbs. ² *upanetabbam*, from *upa* + *√ni*, to bring to. ³ *kālavaṇṇe*. Exact significance unknown, but with *padīpa* (lamp) is another use for oil, since Vin-a.718 uses the verb *makkheti*. ⁴ At Vin.3.96 and MN.i.37 *catto vanto mutto pahīno*. Vin-a.719, “if the medicine is sacrificed, renounced, given up for the sake of one’s mind, the mind is sacrificed, renounced, given up, then the man is called devoid of longing as to his mind; it means, thus being devoid of longing, giving to a *sāmaṇera* (novice).” ⁵ *anapekkha*.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 24

Bu-NP.24.1.1
BD.2.134

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a cloth for the rains¹ came to be allowed to monks by the lord.² The group of six monks, saying: "A cloth for the rains is allowed by the lord," looked about beforehand for robe-material as cloths for the rains, (and) making them beforehand, they put them on, (but going) naked because the cloths for the rains were old, they let their bodies get wet with the rain. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks look about beforehand for robe-material as cloths for the rains, (and) making them beforehand put them on, (but) because the cloths for the rains are old, (going) naked,³ let their bodies get wet with the rain?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.135

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, looking about beforehand for robe-material as cloths for the rains, (and) making them beforehand put

¹ *vassikasāṭīkā*. These are cloth garments used instead of the robes, for these had been found to become wet and heavy during the rains, [Vin.1.253](#). At [Vin.2.177](#) we get *sāṭīya-* (= *sāṭīka-*) *gāhāpaka*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.223 "receiver of under-garments." But *gāhāpaka* is "assigner," see above, [BD.2.122](#), n.1. *Udakaśāṭīka* occurs at e.g. [Vin.1.294](#), [Vin.4.278-279](#), meaning bathing-cloths (for nuns). This was not a cloth that was put on on top of or under the robes, but was worn instead of them. In the same way the *vassikasāṭīkā* were worn by monks to save the robes and the discomfort of wearing wet robes. At [Vin.4.172](#) the group of six monks had their *vassikasāṭīkā* made to an unsuitable measure. The right measure was therefore prescribed, and was to be in length six spans of the accepted length, in breadth two and a half spans. As editor of *Vinaya Texts* ii.225, note (q.v.) observes: "this is just enough to go round the loins from the waist half down to the knee." At [Vin.4.173](#) *vassikasāṭīkā* are defined as "for the four months of the rains," while at [Vin.1.297](#) it is allowed to allot cloths for the rains during the four months of the rains, after that time to assign them. ² [Vin.1.294](#); the giving of *vassikasāṭīkā* was one of the eight boons conferred upon *Visākhā*. ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.45](#), where monks complained of monks going naked.

them on, (but) because the cloths for the rains were old, (going) naked, you let your bodies get wet with the rain?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, looking about before-hand for robe-material as cloths for the rains, (and) making them beforehand put them on, (but) because the cloths for the rains were old, (going) naked, let your bodies get wet with the rain? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"If he thinks, 'A month of the hot weather remains,' robe-material as a cloth for the rains should be looked about for by that monk. If he thinks, 'Half a month of the hot weather remains,' making it, it should be put on. If he thinks, 'More than a month of the hot weather remains,' and should look about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains; if he thinks, 'More than half a month of the hot weather remains,' and making it, should put it on, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Vin.3.253

If he thinks, 'A month of the hot weather remains,' robe-material as a cloth for the rains should be looked about for by that monk means: having approached those people who formerly gave robe material as cloths for the rains, he may speak to them thus: 'It is the time for robe-material as cloths for the rains, it is the season for robe-material as cloths for the rains, and other people are giving robe-material as cloths for the rains.' He should not say, 'Give me robe-material as a cloth for the rains, bring me robe-material as a cloth for the rains, barter¹ robe-material for me as a cloth for the rains, get in exchange robe-material for me as a cloth for the rains.'

Bu-NP.24.2.1

BD.2.136

If he thinks, 'Half a month of the hot weather remains,' making it, it should be put on means: making it in the half month of the hot weather remaining, it should be put on.

If he thinks, 'More than a month of the hot weather remains' means: if he looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains while over a month

¹ *parivattetha*. Cf. above, [BD.2.60](#), [BD.2.67](#), [BD.2.111](#).

of the hot weather remains,¹ there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

If he thinks, 'More than half a month of the hot weather remains,' making it he puts it on while more than half a month of the hot weather remains, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, this robe-material as a cloth for the rains was looked about for by me while more than a month of the hot weather remained; making it, it was put on² while more than half a month of the hot weather remained; it is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this cloth for the rains to the venerable one.'

If he thinks that more than a month of the hot weather remains when there is more, and looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether more than a month of the hot weather remains, and looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that less than a month of the hot weather remains when there is more, and looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that more than half a month of the hot weather remains when there is more, (and) making it, puts it on, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether more than half a month of the hot weather remains, (and) making it, puts it on, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that less than half a month of the hot weather remains when there is more, (and) making it, puts it on, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If (going) naked, although there is a cloth for the rains, he lets his body get wet with the rain, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³ If he thinks that more than a month of the hot weather remains when there is less, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether less than a month of the hot weather remains, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that less than a month of the hot weather remains when there is less, there is

BD.2.137

¹ *atirekamāse sese gimhāne*. ² *paridahita* here replaces a past participle of *nivāseti*, otherwise used in this story. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.45, n.3.

no offence. If he thinks that more than half a month of the hot weather remains when there is less, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether less than half a month of the hot weather remains, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that less than half a month of the hot weather remains when there is less, there is no offence.

Vin.3.254

There is no offence if, thinking, 'A month of the hot weather remains,' he looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains; if, thinking, 'Half a month of the hot weather remains,' making it, he puts it on; if, thinking, 'Less than a month of the hot weather remains,' he looks about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains; if, thinking, 'Less than half a month of the hot weather remains,' making it, he puts it on; if the cloth for the rains that has been looked for is worn out during the rains¹; if the cloth for the rains that has been put on is worn out during the rains; washing them, they should be laid aside, they should be put on (again) at the right season. (There is no offence) if the robe-material is stolen,² if the robe-material is destroyed,³ if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.138

¹ *vassam ukkaḍḍhiyyati*. Vin-a.721 gives *khepetvā khepeti* perhaps meaning "to cause to waste." *Ukkaḍḍhiyyati* is perhaps "worn out," cf. *karṣita*, from √*kṛṣ*, one of whose meanings is given as "worn out" in Monier-Williams' *Dictionary*. *Avakarṣati* (*ava-kṛṣ*) can also mean "to take off." *Kshāpayati* given by Monier-Williams as "to destroy, ruin, make an end of, finish." ² *acchinnacīvarassā ti etaṃ vassikasāṭṭhikam sandhāya vuttam*, Vin-a.723. It might be stolen by thieves when the monks were bathing. ³ *naṭṭhacīvara*, see above, **BD.2.47**, **BD.2.48**.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 25

Bu-NP.25.1.1
BD.2.139

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans,¹ said to the monk who shared his brother's cell: "Come, your reverence, we will set out on a tour of the country."

"I will not go, honoured sir," he said, "my robe is worn thin."²

"Come, your reverence, I will give you a robe," he said and he gave him a robe. Then that monk heard: "It is said that the lord will set out on a tour of the country." Then it occurred to that monk: "I will not set out on a tour of the country with the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans; I will set out on a tour of the country with the lord."

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to that monk: "Come now, your reverence, we will set out on a tour of the country."

"I will not set out on a tour of the country with you, honoured sir, I will set out on a tour of the country with the lord."

"But that robe, your reverence, which I gave you, that will set out on a tour of the country with me," he said, and angry and displeased,³ he tore it away.⁴ Then that monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, himself having given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased, tear it away?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.140

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, yourself having given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased, tore it away?"

¹ See above, Bu-NP.6, Bu-NP.18, Bu-NP.20. ² *dubbala*. ³ *kupito anattamano*, said of Devadatta at Vin.2.189. ⁴ Vin-a.723, by force, *balakkārena aggahesi*.

"It is true, lord," he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, yourself having given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased, tear it away? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Vin.3.255

"Whatever monk, himself having given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased, should tear it away or should cause it to be torn away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."¹

Bu-NP.25.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

To a monk means: to another monk.

Himself means: himself² having given.

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.³

Angry, displeased means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.⁴

Should tear it away means: if he tears it away himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

Should cause it to be torn away means: if he commands another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If having commanded once, he then tears many away,⁵ it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, having myself given this robe to a monk, it was torn away by me; it is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'

BD.2.141

Having given a robe to one who is ordained thinking that he is ordained, if angry and displeased, he tears it away or causes it to be torn away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether one is ordained, (then if) angry and displeased he tears it away or causes it

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.81. ² *sāmaṃ* explained by *sayam*. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.7, BD.2.40, BD.2.48. ⁴ Cf. BD.1.281; Vin.4.236; MN.i.101. ⁵ Vin-a.723, "if he commands, 'take robe-material,' there is an offence of wrong-doing; if, having commanded, he says, 'take many,' there is an offence of expiation. If he says, 'take the outer cloak, the inner and the upper robes,' for each speech there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he says, 'take everything given by me,' for one speech made there are many offences."

to be torn away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Having given a robe to one who is ordained thinking that he is not ordained, if angry and displeased, he tears it away or causes it to be torn away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Having given another requisite, if angry and displeased, he tears it away or causes it to be torn away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Having given a robe or another requisite to one who is not ordained, (then if) angry and displeased, he tears it away or causes it to be torn away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

There is no offence if he gives it or takes (from him) in a friendly manner²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.3.256

¹ Here text is surely corrupt, for instead of *āpatti dukkaṭassa* it should read *anāpatti*. Oldenberg gives no variant reading. ² *vissasanto*, putting his trust in him. Text reads *vissāsanto*; Sinhalese edition *vissasanto*, which is rather more correct, being from *viśvasiti*.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (*NISSAGGIYA*) 26

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. At that time the group of six monks, at the time of robe-making, asked for much yarn,¹ so that when the robe-material was made much yarn came to be over. Then it occurred to the group of six monks: "Now then, your reverences, let us, asking for more yarn, have robe-material woven by weavers." Then the group of six monks, asking for more yarn, had robe-material woven by weavers, but when the robe-material was woven much yarn came to be over. A second time did the group of six monks, asking for more yarn, have robe-material woven by weavers, but when the robe-material was woven much yarn came to be over. A third time did the group of six monks, asking for more yarn, have robe-material woven by weavers. People ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-NP.26.1.1
BD.2.142

"How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, themselves asking for yarn, have robe-material woven by weavers?"

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks, themselves asking for yarn, have robe-material woven by weavers?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, yourselves asking for yarn, had robe-material woven by weavers?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, yourselves asking for yarn, have robe-material

BD.2.143

¹ *sutta*, yarn or thread.

woven by weavers? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, himself asking for yarn, should have robe-material woven by weavers, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bu-NP.26.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Himself means: himself asking.

Yarn means: the six (kinds of) yarn¹: linen, cotton, silk, wool,² coarse hempen cloth,³ canvas.⁴

By weavers⁵ means: if he has it woven by weavers⁶ there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition; it should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, this robe caused by me to be woven by weavers, having myself asked for the yarn, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.’

BD.2.144

Vin.3.257

If he thinks that it was caused to be woven when it was caused to be woven, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt

¹ These are the six kinds of thread for making the six kinds of robe-materials that are allowable to monks. These latter are given in this order at e.g. [Vin.1.58](#) = [Vin.1.96](#), and especially see [Vin.1.281](#), where they are allowed. The six kinds of robe-materials or robes are referred to at e.g. [Vin.3.210](#), [Vin.3.213](#). ² Vin-a.724, yarn of sheep’s wool. ³ The wearing of *sāṇa* was one of the practices adopted by wanderers belonging to other sects, DN.i.166, DN.iii.41, AN.i.240, MN.i.78, Pp.55. The commentaries explain *sāṇa* by using the word itself, as either *sāṇavākasutta* (Vin-a.724, yarn of the bark of *sāṇa*), *sāṇa-vācaceḷāni* (DN-a.356 = AN-a.2.354, garments of ...), *sāṇavāka-mayaṃ* (SN-a.i.159, made of ...). *Sāṇa* was probably a plant, see next note below. At SN.ii.202 Kassapa insisted on wearing, and at SN.ii.222 accepted from the lord his own, *sāṇāni paṃsukūḷāni*, coarse hempen rag-ropes.

⁴ *bhaṅga*. Vin-a.724, Vin-a.1119 give two meanings: (1) thread made of bark, (2) thread mixed with these five other threads. See JOGES CHANDRA RAY, IHQ. xv.2, 1939, p.197, “the inner bark of the plant yields a strong fibre, fit for strings and ropes, and a coarse cloth, canvas, is woven.” In identifying Bhaṅgā with Soma, the relation of *bhaṅga* to *sāṇa* is also brought out, for, according to the lexicographers quoted by Chandra Ray, they also are identical; and the commentarial explanations, that *sāṇāni* are said to be of bark, are illuminated. I am indebted to this article for the suggestion that “canvas” is a possible translation of *bhaṅga*.

⁵ *tantavāya*. ⁶ *pesakāra*. Cf. [Vin.4.7](#). Monier-Williams: “*peśaskārī*, *f.*, Ved. a woman who weaves artistically or embroiders.”

as to whether it was caused to be woven, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it was not caused to be woven when it was caused to be woven, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it was caused to be woven when it was not caused to be woven, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it was not caused to be woven, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it was not caused to be woven when it was not caused to be woven, there is no offence.

It is no offence to sew a robe¹ to a binding,² to a belt,³ to a shoulder-strap,⁴ to a bag for carrying the bowl in,⁵ to a water-strainer⁶; if it belongs to relations; if they are invited; if it is for another; if it is by means of his own property⁷; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Vin-a.727 says that there is no offence in asking for thread (or yarn) to sew a robe. ² *Āyoga*. At Vin.2.135 the use of *āyoga* is allowed to monks. The word is translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.141 as “handicraft.” But I think that because the monks ask how an *āyoga* should be made (omitted at *Vinaya Texts* iii.141), and are allowed the apparatus belonging to a loom, *āyoga* should be rendered “bandage” or “binding” in that passage. Cf. Vv.33 (p.30), where *āyogapaṭṭa* (preceded by *aṃsavaṭṭaka* and that by *kāyabandhana*) means “strip, bandage.” ³ *kāyabandhana*. At Vin.2.136 belts or waist-bands were allowed to monks. ⁴ *aṃsabandhaka*. At Vin.1.204, Vin.2.114 shoulder-straps are allowed to monks. ⁵ *pattatthavikā*; allowed at Vin.2.114. ⁶ Allowed at Vin.2.118. These five articles are mentioned together again as not giving rise to an offence at Vin.4.170. ⁷ Cf. above, BD.2.27, BD.2.49, BD.2.52, BD.2.57, BD.2.125.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 27

Bu-NP.27.1.1
BD.2.145

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time a certain man, going off on a journey,¹ said to his wife:

“Weighing² yarn, give it to a certain weaver; getting him to weave robe-material, take care of it; when I come back I will present³ master Upananda⁴ with robe-material.”

A certain monk, as he was going for alms, heard this man as he was speaking thus. Then this monk approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached he spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

“You, reverend Upananda, are of great merit,⁵ for at a certain place a certain man, going off on a journey, said to his wife: ‘Weighing yarn ... I will present master Upananda with robe-material.’”

“Sir, he is my supporter,” he said. For this very weaver was the supporter of the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, approached this weaver, and having approached he spoke thus to the weaver:

“Sir, this robe-material is being specially woven for me; make it long and wide and rough,⁶ make it evenly woven⁷ and well woven⁸ and well scraped⁹

BD.2.146

¹ *pavāsam gacchanto*. ² *dhārayitva ti tuletva*, Vin-a.727. *Tuleti* is to weigh. ³ *acchādeti*, see above, BD.2.53, n.2. ⁴ Cf. Bu-NP.6, Bu-NP.18, Bu-NP.20, Bu-NP.25. ⁵ Same thing said to Upananda at Vin.1.300 and Vin.3.215, Vin.3.217 (BD.2.53, BD.2.58, above). ⁶ Here “soft,” the opposite of “rough,” is omitted. Cf. above, BD.2.56. ⁷ *suvīta*. Vin-a.727, *sabbaṭṭhānesu samam katvā*, making it level (or even) everywhere. ⁸ *suppavāyita*. Vin-a.727, *sabbaṭṭhānesu samam katvā tante pasāritaṃ*, making it level everywhere, it is stretched on a loom. Really *suppavāyita* is a synonym for *suvīta*. ⁹ *suvillekhita*. Vin-a.727 says *lekhaniyā suṭṭhu vilikhitaṃ*. Perhaps it means that the yarn is well scraped so as to remove any rough bits, but the meaning of *lekhani* is doubtful.

and well combed.”¹

“Honoured sir, having weighed this yarn, they gave it to me, saying, ‘Weave robe-material with this yarn.’ Honoured sir, I am not able to make it long or wide or rough, but I am able, honoured sir, to make it evenly woven and well woven and well scraped and well combed.”

Vin.3.258

“You, if you please, sir, make it long and wide and rough; there will not come to be a shortage² of this yarn.”

Then that weaver, as soon as the yarn had been brought,³ setting it up on the loom, went up to that woman, and having gone up he said to that woman: “The master wants yarn.”

“Were not you, master, told by me: ‘Weave robe-material with that yarn?’”

“It is true that I, lady, was told by you: ‘Weave robe-material with this yarn’; but master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, said to me: ‘You, if you please, sir, make it long and wide and rough; there will not come to be a shortage of this yarn.’”

Then that woman gave a second time⁴ just as much yarn as she had given at first. Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, heard it said that “The man is come back from his journey.” Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, approached that man’s dwelling and having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. Then that man approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached and greeted the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that man said to his wife: “Is that robe-material woven?”

BD.2.147

“Yes, master, that robe-material is woven.”

“Bring it, I will present master Upananda with robe-material.” Then that woman bringing that robe-material and giving it to her husband, told him this matter. Then that man, giving that robe-material to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

¹ *suvitacchita*. Vin-a.727 says, *kocchena suṭṭhu vitacchitaṃ suviniddhotan ti attho*. Pali-English Dictionary gives “well-carded” for *suvitacchita*. *Koccha* is a comb. ² *paṭibaddhan ti vekallaṃ*. Vin-a.727-728, perhaps “a refusal, a holding back, an obstruction with regard to.”

³ *yathābhatāṃ suttāṃ*. See meanings of *yathābhatāṃ* in Pali-English Dictionary. ⁴ *pacchā*, afterwards.

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have great desires, they are not contented; it is not easy to present them with robe-material. How can master Upananda, before being invited by me, going up to a householder’s weavers, put forward a consideration with regard to robe-material?”¹

Monks heard that man who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, before being invited, going up to a householder’s weavers, put forward a consideration with regard to robe-material?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, before being invited, going up to a householder’s weavers, put forward a consideration with regard to robe-material?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

“Is he a relation of yours, Upananda, or not a relation?”

“He is not a relation, lord.”

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for one who is not a relation. Thus will you, foolish man, before being invited, going up to a householder’s weavers, put forward a consideration with regard to robe-material. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“A man or a woman householder who is not a relation may cause robe-material to be woven by weavers for a monk. Then if that monk, before being invited, going up to the weavers, should put forward a consideration with regard to the robe-material, saying: ‘Now sirs, this robe-material is being specially woven for me. Make it long and wide and rough, and make it evenly woven and well woven and well scraped and well combed. If you do so we could give the venerable ones² something or other in addition.’³ And if the monk, speaking thus, should give something or other in addition, even as little as the contents of a begging-bowl,⁴ there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.53**. ² *āyasmantānaṃ*. Polite, perhaps here cajoling, form of address. Cf. above, **BD.2.54**. ³ *Anupadaññeyyāma*. ⁴ *piṇḍapātamattaṃ*; *piṇḍapāta* is the alms-food, but enough was usually received for the daily meal to fill a begging-bowl. See Old Commentary, below.

Bu-NP.27.2.1

For a monk¹ means: for the good of a monk, making a monk an object, being desirous of presenting to a monk.

A man who is not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother's side or on the father's side back through seven generations.

A householder means: he who lives in a house.

A woman householder means: she who lives in a house.

By weavers means: by weavers.²

Robe-material means: any one robe-material of the six (kinds of) robe-material including the least one fit for assignment.³

BD.2.149

May cause to be woven means: causes to be woven.

If that monk means: the particular monk for whom the robe-material is being woven.

Before being invited means: before it was said (to him): 'What kind of robe-material do you want, honoured sir? What kind of robe-material shall I have woven for you?'

Going up to the weavers means: going to the house, approaching (them) anywhere.

Should put forward a consideration with regard to the robe-material means: he says: 'Now sirs, this robe-material is being specially woven for me. Make it long and wide and rough, and make it evenly woven and well woven and well scraped and well combed. If you do so we could give the venerable ones something or other in addition.'

And if the monk, speaking thus, should give something or other in addition, even as little as the contents of a begging-bowl means: the contents of a begging-bowl are called conje and rice⁴ and solid food and a lump of chunam⁵ and a tooth-pick and unwoven thread, and he even speaks *dhamma*.⁶

Vin.3.260

¹ For the remainder of this Nissaggiya cf. Bu-NP.8.2. ² *tantavāyehi ti pesakārehi*, cf. above, BD.2.143. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.40, BD.2.48, BD.2.140. ⁴ *bhatta*; cf. Vin.4.129. More usually *bhojaniya* is combined with, the next, *khādaniya*. ⁵ This and the next two occur together at Vin.3.241, Vin.3.266; Vin.4.154. ⁶ Vin-a.728, "he gives *dhamma*-talk"—i.e., perhaps a blessing, good words—for as the text shows, a monk can give things of the mind (*dhamma-dāna*, the best of gifts, AN.i.91) besides material things.

If according to what he says, he makes it long or wide or rough, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, before I was invited (to take) this robe-material, approaching the weavers of a householder who is not a relation, I put forward a consideration with regard to the robe-material; it is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'

BD.2.150

If, before being invited, going up to the weavers of a householder, thinking that he is not a relation when he is not a relation, he puts forward a consideration with regard to robe-material, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If, being in doubt as to whether he is not a relation, before being invited, going up to the weavers of a householder, he puts forward a consideration with regard to robe-material, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If, before being invited, going up to the weavers of a householder, thinking that he is a relation when he is not a relation, he puts forward a consideration with regard to robe-material, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that he is not a relation when he is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is a relation when he is a relation, there is no offence.

There is no offence if it belongs to relations; if they are invited; if it is for another; if it is by means of his own property; if desirous of having costly (robe-material) woven he has (robe-material) costing little woven; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 28

Bu-NP.28.1.1
BD.2.151

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain chief minister, going on a journey, sent a messenger to the monks, saying: "Let the revered sirs come, I will give a rains-residence (gift)."¹ The monks, thinking: "A rains-residence (gift) at the end of the rains is allowed by the lord,"² being scrupulous, did not go.³ The chief minister ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the revered ones not come⁴ when a messenger was sent by me? Well, I am going with the army, life is uncertain, death is uncertain."⁵

Monks heard that chief minister who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

¹ *vassāvāsika*. BURLINGAME, *Buddhist Legends*, i.228, renders, "food of the season of the rains"; BURLINGAME, *Buddhist Legends*, ii.8, "lodging during the season of the rains," but neither of these can be meant here, since the rule is concerned with robes. It means rather something connected with the rains-(*vassa*-)residence (*āvāsa*), which may be food, clothing or lodgings, as the story demands. *Vassāvāsa* occurs at [Vin.1.153](#). ² Cf. [Vin.1.153ff.](#) ³ It seems that the minister must have been offering his gift during the rains—i.e., at a time when the monks must travel as little as possible—and not at the end of the rains. Otherwise the scrupulous monks could have gone, and no complaints would have been raised. ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.2.64](#), where Upananda did not wait when bidden by a layman to do so. ⁵ *dujjanam jīvitam dujjanam, maraṇam*.

“I allow you, monks, having accepted a special robe,¹ to lay it aside.”

Bu-NP.28.1.2

BD.2.152

Vin.3.261

Now at that time monks said: “It is allowed by the lord, accepting a special robe, to lay it aside.” These accepting special robes, let the robe-season² pass. These robes tied up in bundles, remained on a bamboo for hanging up robes.³ Then the venerable Ānanda, as he was engaged in touring the lodgings, saw these robes tied up in bundles, that remained on the bamboo for hanging up robes; seeing them he said to the monks:

“Your reverences, whose are these robes, tied up in bundles, that remain on the bamboo for hanging up robes?”

“Your reverence, they are our special robes,” they said.

“But for how long, your reverences, have these robes been laid aside?”

Then these monks told the venerable Ānanda when they had been laid aside. The venerable Ānanda ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks, having accepted a special robe, let the robe-season pass?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.153

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks, having accepted a special robe, let the robe-season pass?”

¹ *acceka-cīvara*, explained at Vin-a.729 as *accāyika-cīvara*. Cf. Vin.4.166, *accāyike karaṇīye*, “if there is something urgent (special) to be done” See *Vinaya Texts* i.29, n.3, where it is said “‘special robe’ is no doubt an inadequate rendering; but we have chosen it in reference to the special circumstances in which the donation is made, and in default of a better translation.” *Critical Pali Dictionary* says of *acceka-cīvara* that it is “a robe presented to a priest [sic] not at the usual time,” and of *accāyika* (Sanskrit *ātyayika*) that it is “not suffering delay, urgent, pressing.” An “exceptional” or “emergency” robe might be a suitable translation, if it is remembered that it is the donor who is in an emergency, who is pressed for time, and who because of some exceptional or unusual circumstances, wants to make his gift without delay, and so gain the “merit” for his act of giving. Here the chief minister wanted to make his gift before he went into the army and faced the uncertainties of life and death. See Old Commentary, below and Vin-a.729 which correlate *acceka-cīvara* with *vassāvāsika*, as though a robe given to meet some emergency implies a robe given at an unusual time—i.e., here during the rains. The robe therefore is “special,” both in regard to the reason for giving it, and in regard to the time at which it was given. ² *cīvarakālasamaya*, see Old Commentary, below. This robe-season is the usual time for accepting, distributing and settling robe-material. Cf. also Bu-NP.1 and *Vinaya Texts* i.18, n. The word occurs again at Vin.4.286. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.25.

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

How, monks, can these foolish men, having accepted a special robe, let the robe-season pass? Monks, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“If a special robe should accrue¹ to a monk ten days before the full moon of the (first) Kattika, three months (of the rains having passed),² it may be accepted by that monk if he thinks of it (as something) special³; having accepted it, it should be laid aside until the robe-season. But if he should lay it aside for longer than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Ten days before means: ten days before the ceremony held at the end of the rains.⁴

Bu-NP.28.2.1

The full moon of Kattika, three months (of the rains having passed) means: the ceremony held at the end of the rains is called Kattika.

A special robe means: one is desirous of going with the army, or one comes to be going on a journey, or one comes to be ill, or a woman becomes pregnant, or faith comes to be arisen in one who was without faith, or pleasing comes to be arisen for one who was not pleased.⁵ If such a one should send a messenger to the monks saying: ‘Let the revered sirs come, I will give a rains-residence (gift),’ this means a special robe.

BD.2.154

¹ *uppajjeyya*, literally should arise, should be produced for. See above, [BD.2.4](#), [BD.2.24](#), [BD.2.90](#), [BD.2.99](#), [BD.2.114](#). ² *kattikatemāsipuṇṇamā*. *Kattika* (Sanskrit *kārttika*) is the month is the month October–November, when the full moon (*puṇṇamā*) is near the Pleiades. This month is the last of the five months of the rains. The full moon of Assayuja is called *kattikatemāsini*; the full moon of Kattika (the last month of the rains) is called *kattikatemāsini*. Thus there were two full moons in Kattika. *Kattikatemāsipuṇṇamā* might be translated: “The full moon of Kattika, three months (of the rains having passed”); or even “three months of the year having passed,” if the year were reckoned to begin at the first month of the rains, *Āsāḷha*). Cf. [Bu-NP.29](#) below, [BD.2.157](#), for *kattikacātumāsini*. ³ *accekaṃ maññamānena*.

⁴ *pavāraṇā*, held to inquire whether any fault can be laid to the charge of any monk or nun in respect of what has been seen, heard, or suspected. Cf. [Vin.1.160](#), [Vin.2.32](#); [BD.1.283](#), [BD.1.292](#); and HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, pp.133ff. ⁵ *appasannassa vā pasādo uppanno hoti*. Cf. above, [BD.2.3](#), [n.1](#), on the recurring expression: *n’ etaṃ bhikkhave appasannānaṃ vā pasādāya*, “it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased.”

It may be accepted by that monk if he thinks of it (as something) special; having accepted it, it should be laid aside until the robe-season means: making a sign,¹ it must be laid aside; this is a special robe.

The robe-season means: if the *kaṭhina* cloth has not been (formally) made then the last month of the rains; if it has been (formally) made, it is five months.²

Vin.3.262

If he should lay it aside for longer than that means: if the *kaṭhina* cloth has not been (formally) made, and he lets the last day of the rains pass, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If the *kaṭhina* cloth has been (formally) made and he lets the day for removing the *kaṭhina* (privileges)³ pass, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited ... to an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Honoured sirs, letting pass the robe-season, this special robe of mine is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... ‘... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this special robe to the venerable one.’

BD.2.155

If he thinks that it is a special robe when it is a special robe, and lets the robe-season pass, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a special robe and lets the robe season pass, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is not a special robe when it is a special robe and lets the robe-season pass, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is allotted when it is not allotted,⁴ there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that one is assigned when it is not assigned ... If he thinks that one is bestowed when it is not bestowed ... If he thinks that one is lost when it is not lost ... If he thinks that one is destroyed when it is not destroyed ... If he thinks that one is burnt when it is not burnt ... If he thinks that one is stolen when it is not stolen and lets the robe-season pass, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the robe which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a special robe when it is not a special robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it

¹ *saññanam katvā*. Vin-a.729, *kiñci nimittam katvā*, “making some mark,” presumably on the robe. ² = Vin.4.286f. Cf. BD.2.5, n.1, BD.2.26, n.3 above on *atthata*, formally made.

³ *kaṭhinuddhāradivasa*, cf. above, p.5, n.3. ⁴ This and the next six cases = Vin.3.197, Vin.3.251, see above.

is not a special robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a special robe when it is not a special robe, there is no offence.

There is no offence if, within the season, it is allotted, assigned, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt, if they tear it (from him), if they take it on trust; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.21, Bu-NP.9.

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 29

Bu-NP.29.1.1
BD.2.156

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time monks who had finished keeping the rains were staying in lodgings in the jungles. Thieves (of the kind who attack monks in the month) of Kattika¹ attacked them, saying: "The monks have received possessions."² They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: "I allow you, monks, when staying in lodgings in the jungles, to lay aside one of the three robes inside a house."³

Bu-NP.29.1.2

Vin.3.263

Now at that time monks thought: "It is allowed by the lord when staying in lodgings in the jungles to lay aside one of the three robes inside a house." These, laying aside one of the three robes inside a house, were away for more than six nights. These robes were lost and destroyed and burnt and eaten by rats. The monks became badly dressed, wearing shabby robes. (Other) monks spoke thus:

"How is it that you, your reverences, are badly dressed, wearing shabby robes?" Then these monks told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can these monks, laying aside one of the three robes inside a house, be away for more than six nights?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.2.157

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks laying aside one of the three

¹ *kattikacorakā*. Vin-a.730, *kattikamāse corā*—i.e., after the distribution of the robes.

² *laddhalābhā*. ³ So as to be guarded, Vin-a.730. Cf. Bu-NP.2 above, and notes, where an ill monk may be away without his set of three robes for more than a night, if he has the agreement of the monks.

robes inside a house were away for more than six nights?"

"It is true, lord," they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can these foolish men, laying aside one of the three robes inside a house, be away for more than six nights? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Having spent the rains up to the full moon of Kattika,¹ in case a monk who is staying in such lodgings as those jungle lodgings which are held to be dangerous and frightening, so desires, he may lay aside one of his three robes inside a house; and should there be any reason for that monk to be away, separated from that robe, that monk may be away, separated from that robe for at most six nights. Should he be away, separated (from it) for longer than that, except on the agreement of the monks,² there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Having spent the rains means: when they have finished (keeping) the rains.

The full moon of Kattika means: it is called the (night of) Kattika-cātumāsini.³

Those jungle lodgings means: the last lodging called "jungle" is five hundred *dhanu* measures⁴ (away from the village).⁵

Dangerous⁶ means: if, in a monastery, in the precincts of a monastery, a place where thieves are halting is seen, a place where they are resting⁷ is

¹ *Kattikapuṇṇamā*, see Old Commentary, below. This is the next full moon to that meant in the last *Nissaggiya*—i.e., it is the last full moon of Kattika (and of the rains); see Vin-a.658, Vin-a.730 and above, **BD.2.153, n.2.** ² Probably the same kind of agreement as in **Bu-NP.2**—i.e., the agreement to be regarded as *not* away, separated from the robe, although in fact the monk was away from it. ³ See above, **BD.2.153, n.2.** *Vinaya Texts* i.324 says: "the epithet *cātumāsini* refers to the Vedic Cāturmāsya festival, which falls upon that day" (i.e., the full moon day in the month of Kattika). This day, or night, "is called *Komudī* (from *kumuda*, a white water-lily), because that flower is supposed to bloom then," *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.66, note. ⁴ *dhanus* is a measure of length; according to Monier-Williams it is equivalent to four *hastas*, or ½₀₀₀ *gavyūti*. ⁵ So Vin-a.731. ⁶ Cf. below, **BD.2.290**, and **MN-a.2.109.** ⁷ *ṭhitokāsa*.

seen, a place where they are sitting down is seen, a place where they are lying down is seen.

Frightening¹ means: if, in a monastery, in the precincts of a monastery, people injured by thieves are seen, (people) plundered are seen, (people) beaten down are seen.

In case a monk is staying in such lodgings means: a monk staying in lodgings like these.

Vin.3.264

Desires means: wanting.

One of his three robes means: the outer cloak or the upper robe or the inner robe.²

May lay aside inside a house means: he may lay it aside in the neighbourhood in a food-village.³

And should there be any reason for that monk to be away, separated from that robe means: should there be a reason, should there be (something) to be done.⁴

That monk may be away, separated from that robe for at most six nights means: he may be away, separated (from it) for six nights at the maximum.

Except on the agreement of the monks means: setting aside the agreement of the monks.

Should he be away, separated (from it) for longer than that means: it is to be forfeited at sunrise on the seventh day. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, having been away, separated from this robe of mine, for more than six nights, except on the agreement of the monks, it is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this robe to the venerable one.'

BD.2.159

If he thinks that it is more when it is more than six nights, (and) is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether it is more than six nights, and is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks,

¹ Cf. below, **BD.2.290**, and **MN-a.2.109**. ² See above, **BD.2.1, n.2**. ³ *gocara-gāma*, Vin-a.731 says: "in the neighbourhood of his jungle lodging." Cf. **Pv-a.12.42**. It is a village where food is given to monks; *gocara* meaning pasturage or grazing. ⁴ *karaṇīya*.

there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it is less when it is more than six nights, (and) is away, separated, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that (the robe) is taken away when it is not taken away¹ ... If he thinks that it is bestowed when it is not bestowed ... If he thinks that it is lost when it is not lost ... If he thinks that it is destroyed when it is not destroyed ... If he thinks that it is burnt when it is not burnt ... If he thinks that it is stolen when it is not stolen, (and) is away except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Not forfeiting the robe which had to be forfeited, if he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is more, when it is less than six nights, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is less than six nights, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is less when it is less than six nights, there is no offence.

There is no offence if he is away, separated for six nights; if he is away, separated for less than six nights; if, being away, separated for six nights, entering the village-boundary and staying (there) he departs again; if, within six nights, the (robe) is taken away, bestowed, lost, destroyed, burnt, if they tear it from him, if they take it on trust; if there is the agreement of the monks; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.²

Vin.3.265

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.22, n.3.](#) ² Cf. above, [BD.2.23.](#)

MONKS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 30

Bu-NP.30.1.1
BD.2.160

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery.¹ Now at that time at Sāvattḥī robes and food were prepared for² the Order by a certain guild,³ saying: "Having offered them food,⁴ we will present them with robe-material." Then the group of six monks approached that guild, and having approached they said to that guild: "Sirs, give these robes to us."

"Honoured sirs, we will not give; alms-food with robes are got ready by us every year for the Order."

"Sirs, many are the Order's benefactors, many are the Order's devotees.⁵ We are here, depending on you, looking to you, but if you will not give to us, then who is there⁶ who will give to us? Sirs, give these robes to us."

Then that guild, being pressed by the group of six monks, giving the group of six monks as much robe-material as was prepared, served the Order with a meal. Those monks who knew that robe-material and a meal were prepared for the Order, and did not know that (it) was given to the group of six monks, spoke thus:

"Sirs, dedicate⁷ robe-material to the Order."

BD.2.161

¹ = Bu-Pc.82, Vin.4.155, except that there the offence is procuring something for another person, and not, as here, for oneself. Cf. Bu-Pc.81. ² *paṭiyattam*. ³ *pūja*, or group. ⁴ *bhojetvā*. ⁵ *bhattā*, with variant reading *kattā* (see Vin.3.279), and Sinhalese edition *bhaddā*. Vin-a.732 reads *bhadrā*, taking it = *bhadrāni* = *lābhamukhāni* (with variant readings *bhaddā*, *bhattā* ... *bhattāni*). It therefore looks more as if a "devotee" were meant than a "meal," especially in conjunction with *dāyakā*, benefactors. ⁶ *ko carahi*. ⁷ *oṇojethā ti detha*, Vin-a.732; cf. Vin.1.39, AN.iv.210, Mi.236, where *oṇojeti* seems to imply a rite of cleansing by water (*udakam oṇojetvā*) and also a ceremonial giving, implied by the presence of *bhīṅkāra*, a ceremonial vessel used in donations.

“Honoured sirs, there is none; the masters, the group of six monks, appropriated¹ to themselves as much robe-material as was prepared.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six monks knowingly² appropriate to themselves an apportioned³ benefit belonging to the Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly appropriated to yourselves an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowingly appropriate to yourselves an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly appropriate to himself an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-NP.30.2.1

He knows⁴ means: either he knows by himself or others tell him or (someone) tells (him).

Vin.3.266

Belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to (it).⁵

A benefit means: the requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicine for the sick, and even a lump of chunam and a toothpick and unwoven thread.⁶

BD.2.162

Apportioned means: it has been expressly said,⁷ “we will give, we will make.”

¹ *pariṇāmesuṃ*, causative of *pariṇamati*. ² *jānaṃ*. ³ *pariṇata*. This is derived from the same root as *pariṇāmeti*; its indicative is *pariṇamati*. Vin-a.733 says *ninna poṇa pabbhāra*, bending to, leading to, sloping to. ⁴ *jānāti*, indicative, instead of the *jānaṃ*, participle, of the Rule. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.43. ⁶ Cf. above, BD.2.111, BD.2.149, and Vin.4.154. ⁷ *vācā bhinnā hoti*; cf. *vācaṃ bhindeyya* at Vin.1.157, “uttering a word,” Vinaya Texts i.326.

If he appropriates to himself, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; it is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to ... an individual. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Honoured sirs, this apportioned benefit belonging to the Order, knowingly appropriated by me to myself, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order.' ... '... the Order should give back ... let the venerable ones give back ... I will give back this benefit to the venerable one.'

If he thinks that it was apportioned when it was apportioned (and) appropriates it to himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he is in doubt as to whether it was apportioned (and) appropriates it to himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he thinks that it was not apportioned when it was apportioned (and) appropriates it to himself, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If he appropriates what was apportioned to the Order for another (part of the) Order¹ or for a shrine, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he appropriates what was apportioned to a shrine for another shrine or for an Order or for an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he appropriates what was apportioned to an individual for another individual or for an Order or for a shrine, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it was apportioned when it was not apportioned, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it was not apportioned, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it was not apportioned when it was not apportioned, there is no offence.

BD.2.163

There is no offence if he himself being asked, 'Where do we give?' says, 'Give wherever your gift would be used² or could be mended³ or should be for a long time or when for you the mind is peaceful'⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The third Division: that on Bowls

¹ Vin-a.733, for the Order in one *vihāra*. *Saṅgha* means, not the whole Order, but five or more monks (see above, BD.2.7, n.5) staying in various districts and *vihāras*. ² *paribhogam labheyya*, literally might receive use. ³ *paṭisaṃkhāram labheyya*. ⁴ *tumhākaṃ cittaṃ pasīdati*.

THIS IS ITS KEY

Two on bowls, and on medicine,
 for the rains, the fifth on a gift,
 Oneself, causing to be woven, a special robe,
 dangerous, and for the Order.

Venerable ones, recited are the thirty rules for offences of expiation involving forfeiture. Concerning them, I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The venerable ones are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent, thus do I understand this.

*Told are the Offences of Expiation involving Forfeiture*¹

Vin.3.267

¹ Here ends Oldenberg's *Vinayapiṭaka*, vol.iii.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 1

Bu-Pc.1.1.1
Vin.4.1
BD.2.164

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time Hatthaka,¹ the son of the Sakyans,² came to be overthrown in debate.³ He, talking with followers of sects holding other views, having denied, acknowledged, having acknowledged, denied, he shelved the question by (asking) another,⁴ he told a conscious lie,⁵ having made a rendezvous,⁶ he deceived with words.⁷ The followers of sects holding other views looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

BD.2.165

“How can this Hatthaka, the son of the Sakyans, talking together with us, having denied, acknowledge, having acknowledged, deny, shelve the question by (asking) another, tell a conscious lie, having made a rendezvous, deceive with words?”

Monks heard these followers of sects holding other views who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Then these monks approached

¹ Probably not the Hatthaka of Āḷavi, see AN.i.26, AN.i.88, AN.i.136, also AN.i.278 (*devaputta*), AN.iv.218. But probably the same as the Hatthaka concerning whom DhP.264 (*na muṇḍakena samaṇo*) was uttered. For DhP-a.3.390, which, though longer, is very similar to Vin-a.736, says that whenever Hatthaka was defeated in argument he would make another appointment with his opponents, then precede them to the appointed place and say: “The followers of other sects are so frightened of me that they dare not meet me; this is like a defeat on their part.” This fits in well with Vinaya story told above. ² Vin-a.735, *Sakyānaṃ putto ti Sakyaputto*. ³ *vādakkhitto*. ⁴ *aññaṃ aññaṃ paṭicarati*. Vin-a.735 says, *aññaṇa kāraṇena aññaṃ kāraṇaṃ paṭicarati paṭicchādeti ajjhottharati*, he answered one question by another, hid it, covered it up. Cf. DN.i.94, AN.i.187, AN.i.198, MN.i.250, Vin.4.35. “To meet one question with an answer of quite different contents” (*Critical Pali Dictionary*), but at Vin.4.35 Channa meets questions by putting other questions. ⁵ *sampajānamusā bhāsati*. ⁶ *saṃketarū katvā*. Cf. Vin.3.53, Vin.3.78. ⁷ *visaṃvādeti*. Forestalling his opponents at the rendezvous, he said that they were defeated.

Hatthaka, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached, they spoke thus to Hatthaka, the son of the Sakyans:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, reverend Hatthaka, talking together with followers of sects holding other views, having denied, acknowledged ... deceived with words?”

“Your reverences, these followers of sects holding other views should be vanquished in some way; victory should not be given to them thus.”

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this Hatthaka, the son of the Sakyans, talking together with followers of sects holding other views, having denied, acknowledged, deny, shelve the question by (asking) another, tell a conscious lie, having made a rendezvous, deceive with words?”

Vin.4.2

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned Hatthaka, the son of the Sakyans:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Hatthaka, talking together with followers of sects holding other views, having denied, acknowledged ... deceived with words?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, talking together with followers of sects holding other views, having denied, acknowledge ... having made a rendezvous, deceive with words? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.166

“In telling a conscious lie,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”²

Bu-Pc.1.2.1

¹ *sampajānamusāvāde*. Cf. Vin.3.59, Vin.3.66, Vin.3.93f., where this rule has been anticipated; and see BD.1.xxv, Bu-Pj.4 for offences involving defeat for telling a conscious lie. Here Kankhā-vitarāṇī, *Simon Hewavitarne Bequest*, p.83, says that all conscious lying is a *pācittiya*. It, however (p.82), draws attention to the fact that the conscious lie of claiming a state of further-men is a *pārājika* (4); that falsely to accuse someone of a *pārājika* is a *saṅghādisesa* (8); that unfoundedly to accuse someone of a *saṅghādisesa* is a *pācittiya* (76); that falsely to accuse someone of a failure in morality is a *dukkāṭa* (Bu-Pc.76, Vin.4.148). ² *pācittiya*. See above, BD.2.3, n.4.

Telling a conscious lie means: the words, the utterance, the speech, the talk, the language, the intimation, the un-ariyan statements¹ of one intent upon deceiving with words, saying: “I have seen what I have not seen, heard what I have not heard, sensed² what I have not sensed, cognised what I have not cognised.”³ I have not seen what I have seen, not heard what I have heard, not sensed what I have sensed, not cognised what I have cognised.”

BD.2.167

Not seen means: not seen by the eye. **Not heard** means: not heard by the ear. **Not sensed** means: not smelt by the nose, not tasted by the tongue, not felt⁴ by the body. **Not cognised** means: not cognised by the mind.

Seen means: seen by the eye. **Heard** means: heard by the ear. **Sensed** means: smelt by the nose, tasted by the tongue, felt by the body. **Cognised** means: cognised by the mind.

Bu-Pc.1.2.2

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie⁵ that, “In three ways I have seen what I have not seen”: before he has lied he knows, “I am going to lie”; while lying he knows, “I am lying”; having lied he knows, “I lied.”

¹ *anariya-vohārā*. The above eight are enumerated at Vin.5.125, DN.iii.232, AN.ii.246, Vb.376.

² *amutaṃ mutaṃ me. Mutaṃ* translated at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.127 “felt,” *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.223 “thought of,” *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.3 and GS.2.251 “sensed,” Sacred Books of the East X, 2nd edition, p.198 “thought.” GEIGER, *Pali Literature*, gives “gedacht.” The Old Commentary’s definition of *muta* shows that the sense-functions of nose, tongue and body had been differentiated by the time that it was compiled. Hence I have translated *muta* by “sensed” and not by “thought,” although etymologically “thought” may be more correct. Possibly *muta*, as a term covering these three sense-functions, dates from a time prior to their differentiation. That *muta* does not include the sense-functions of the eye and ear suggests that these were recognised earlier than the others, their specific terminology emerging earlier. Cf. Vin-a.736; and *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.221, n.1, for *muta* pointing to an older tradition of a time when the five senses had not been co-ordinated.

³ *diṭṭha-suta-muta-viññāta*, combined at DN.iii.232, MN.ii.231, MN.iii.29, Snp.1086, Snp.1122, Ds.961, It.121. At eight Sutta-nipāta passages *d°*, *s°*, *m°* are combined, sometimes with other items, but not with *v°*. The first three may therefore belong to some old tradition, originally threefold, *viññāta* being added later with the rise of interest in mind, *manas*, of which *viññāta* is here a function. See SN.i.270=Thag.1216, where *d°*, *s°*, *m°* are combined with *paṭigha*; and cf. SN-a.i.270. See also *Psalm of the Bretheren* 398, n.9, KS.i.237, n.1; and *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.221, n.1, for Upaniṣad references. ⁴ *phuṭṭham*. ⁵ From here to end of Bu-Pc.1.2.6 cf. BD.1.162-171.

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In four ways I have seen what I have not seen": before he has lied he knows, "I am going to lie"; while lying he knows, "I am lying"; having lied he knows, "I lied," misrepresenting his opinion.

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In five ways ... I lied," misrepresenting his opinion, misrepresenting his approval.

Vin.4.3

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In six ways ... I lied," misrepresenting his opinion, misrepresenting his approval, misrepresenting his pleasure.

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In seven ways ... I lied," misrepresenting his opinion, misrepresenting his approval, misrepresenting his pleasure, misrepresenting his intention.

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In three ways I have heard what I have not heard" ... "... sensed what I have not sensed" ... "... cognised what I have not cognised": before he has lied he knows, "I am going to lie"; while lying he knows, "I am lying"; having lied he knows, "I lied."

BD.2.168

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In four ways ... in five ways ... in six ways ... in seven ways ..." misrepresenting his intention.

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In three ways I have seen and heard what I have not seen" ... "for telling the conscious lie that, "In three ways I have seen and sensed what I have not seen" ... "... I have seen and cognised what I have not seen" ... "... I have seen and heard and sensed what I have not seen" ... "... I have seen and heard and cognised what I have not seen" ... "... I have seen and heard and sensed and cognised what I have not seen."

Bu-Pc.1.2.3

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In three ways I have heard and sensed what I have not heard" ... "... I have heard and cognised what I have not heard" ... "... I have heard and seen what I have not heard" ... "... I have heard and sensed and cognised and seen what I have not heard."

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways I have sensed and cognised what I have not sensed” ... “... I have sensed and cognised and heard and seen what I have not sensed.”

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways I have cognised and seen what I have not cognised” ... “... In three ways I have cognised and seen and heard and sensed what I have not cognised.”

Bu-Pc.1.2.4

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways I have seen what I have not seen ... heard what I have not heard ... sensed what I have not sensed ... cognised what I have not cognised.”

Bu-Pc.1.2.5

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways I have seen what I have heard ... I have seen what I have sensed ... I have seen what I have cognised.”

BD.2.169

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways I have seen what I have heard and what I have sensed ... I have seen what I have heard and what I have cognised ... I have seen what I have heard and what I have sensed and what I have cognised” ... “... I have cognised what I have seen and what I have heard and what I have sensed.”

Vin.4.4

Bu-Pc.1.2.6

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, “In three ways he is in doubt as to what he has seen: he does not trust what he has seen, he does not remember what he has seen, he becomes confused as to what he has seen.¹ He is in doubt as to what he has heard: he does not trust what he has heard, he does not remember what he has heard, he becomes confused as to what he has heard. He is in doubt as to what he has sensed ... He is in doubt as to what he has cognised ... he becomes confused as to what he has cognised, saying: ‘It was cognised and seen by me’; he becomes confused as to what he has cognised, saying: ‘It was cognised and heard by me’; he becomes confused as to what he has cognised, saying: ‘It was cognised and sensed by me’; he becomes confused as to what he has

¹ Cf. [BD.1.284](#).

cognised, saying: 'It was cognised and seen and heard by me'; he becomes confused as to what he has cognised, saying: 'It was cognised and seen and sensed by me'; he becomes confused as to what he has cognised, saying: 'It was cognised and seen and heard and sensed by me.'

There is an offence of expiation for telling the conscious lie that, "In four ways ... in five ways ... in six ways ... in seven ways he is confused as to what he has cognised, saying: 'It was cognised and seen and heard and sensed by me.'" (These are the seven ways): before he has lied he knows, "I am going to lie"; while he is lying he knows, "I am lying"; having lied he knows, "I lied," misrepresenting his opinion, misrepresenting his approval, misrepresenting his pleasure, misrepresenting his intention

BD.2.170

There is no offence if he speaks in jest,¹ if he speaks in fun. **He speaks in jest** means he speaks in haste²; **he speaks in fun** means, saying: 'I will speak of this,' he speaks of that³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.1.2.7

The First

¹ *davā*. ² *sahasā*; Vin-a.737, without considering or reflecting. ³ As saying *cīvaram* for *cīram*, Vin-a.737. It is very unusual, if not unique, for commentarial exegesis to occur in the "no offence" paragraph.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 2

Bu-Pc.2.1.1
BD.2.171

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time, the group of six monks, quarrelling with well behaved monks, insulted the well behaved monks; they jeered at them, they scoffed at them about birth and name and clan and work and craft and disease and distinguishing mark and passion¹ and attainment² and low mode of address.³ Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.5

“How can this group of six monks, quarrelling with well behaved monks, insult the well behaved monks? How can they jeer at them, scoff at them about birth ... low mode of address?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, quarrelling with well behaved monks, insulted the well behaved monks, jeered at them ... about low mode of address?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

BD.2.172

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, quarrelling with well behaved monks, insult the well behaved monks, jeer at them, scoff at them about ... low mode of address? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having

¹ *kilesa*. ² *āpatti*. ³ *akkosa*. *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives “abuse, scolding, reviling,” and *Pali-English Dictionary* “shouting at, abuse, insult, reproach, reviling.” But from the distinction drawn by the Old Commentary, below, **BD.2.177**, between *hīna* and *ukkaṭṭha akkosa*, these words must mean the ways in which you accost or address a person, either with insult or with respect. That the word *akkosa* came to mean “cursing” is evident from the compound *akkosavattu*, (the ten) ways of cursing, referred to at Ja.1.191, which is founded on this Vinaya story. These ways are also referred to at Vin-a.625; Snp-a.364, Snp-a.467; and Dhp-a.1.212 = Snp-a.342, where ten curses are enumerated. These vary somewhat from those given below in the Old Commentary.

rebuked them and given *dhamma*-talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Formerly, monks, at Takkasilā,¹ Nandivīsāla was the name of an ox belonging to a certain brahmin. Then, monks, Nandivīsāla, the ox, spoke thus to the brahmin: ‘Brahmin, you go, bet a thousand² with the great merchant,³ saying: “My ox will draw a hundred carts tied together.”’ Then, monks, that brahmin made a bet of a thousand with the great merchant, saying: ‘My ox will draw a hundred carts tied together.’ Then, monks, that brahmin having tied together a hundred carts, having yoked Nandivīsāla, the ox, spoke thus: ‘Go, hornless one,⁴ let the hornless one pull them along.’⁵ Then, monks, Nandivīsāla, the ox, stood just where he was. Then, monks, that brahmin, having suffered the loss⁶ of a thousand, was overcome by grief.⁷ Then, monks, Nandivīsāla, the ox, spoke thus to the brahmin: ‘Why are you, brahmin, overcome by grief?’

‘Because I, good sir,⁸ suffered the loss of a thousand through you.’

‘But why do you, brahmin, bring me, who am not hornless, into disgrace with words of deceit?’⁹ Brahmin, you go, bet two thousand with the great merchant, saying: “My ox will draw a hundred carts tied together,” but do not bring me, who am not hornless, into disgrace with words of deceit.’

Then, monks, that brahmin bet two thousand with the great merchant, saying: ‘My ox will draw a hundred carts tied together.’ Then, monks, that brahmin having tied together a hundred carts, having yoked Nandivīsāla, the ox, spoke thus: ‘Go, good creature,¹⁰ let the good creature pull them along.’ Then, monks, Nandivīsāla, the ox, drew the hundred carts tied together.

Speak only words of kindness,¹¹
never words unkind.

¹ Modern Taxila. Story given again, with slight variations, at Ja.1.191. ² “Pieces,” probably *kahāpaṇas* to be understood. ³ *seṭṭhi*, see above, BD.2.42, n.4. ⁴ *kūṭa*, not horned, therefore harmless. Jātaka Translation has “rascal.” Such maimed beasts had not a good reputation for work, Vism.268, Vism.269. *Kūṭa* also means false, deceitful. ⁵ *vahassu*. ⁶ *parājita*, with instrumental ⁷ *pajjhāyi*. ⁸ *bho*. ⁹ *kūṭavāda*, or “words about being hornless.” ¹⁰ *bhadra*. ¹¹ *manāpa*. Ja.1.193 reads *manuñña* throughout. This seems to be a later word, see *Pali-English Dictionary* references.

For him who spoke him fair, he moved
A heavy load, and brought him wealth, for love.

Vin.4.6

At that time, monks, jeering and scoffing were not liked by me, so how-
ever could jeering and scoffing become liked now? It is not, monks, for
pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of
training should be set forth:

“In insulting speech¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.2.2.1

Insulting speech means: he insults in ten ways: about birth and name
and clan and work and craft and disease find distinguishing mark and
passion and attainment and mode of address.

Birth means: there are two kinds of birth: low birth and high birth. **Low
birth** means: birth as (a member of) a despised class,² birth as a bamboo-
plaiter,³ birth as a hunter,⁴ birth as a cartwright,⁵ birth as a refuse- scav-

BD.2.174

¹ *omasavāde*. ² *caṇḍāla*. These five kinds of birth occur again at e.g. MN.ii.152, MN.ii.183, MN.iii.169, SN.i.93, AN.i.107, AN.ii.85, Pp.51. ³ Or basket-weaver, *veṇa*. Vin-a.738 says *veṇajātī ti tacchakajātī veṇukārajātī* (with variant reading *veḷu*^o), birth as a *veṇa* means birth as a carpenter, birth as a bamboo-worker. At Ja.5.306, *veṇī* is explained by *tacchikā*, a female carpenter. SN-a.i.162 = AN-a.2.175 paraphrase *vena* by *vilivakāra*, a worker in bamboo, basket-maker. *The Questions of King Milinda* 2.211 (Sacred Books of the East) has “savages,” and see *loc. cit.*, n.2. ⁴ *nesāda*. Vin-a.738 = SN-a.i.162 = AN-a.2.175 = Pu-a.227 explain by *migaluddaka*, a hunter or trapper. *The Questions of King Milinda*, 2.211 has “wild men of the woods,” with note that Sinhalese simply says “Weddahs, the well-known, interesting wild men of Ceylon.” ⁵ *rathakāra*, or carriage builder, chariot maker. Vin-a.738 = SN-a.i.162 = AN-a.2.175 = Pu-a.227 = Ja.4.174 explain by *cammakāra*, usually a leather-worker. *Cammakāra* occurs below, BD.2.176, among the low crafts, while *rathakāra* is among the low kinds of birth; but there seems to be no correspondence between the kinds of low birth and the kinds of low craft, such as would enable one to say that a man of such-and-such a birth follows such-and-such a trade or craft. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.100, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.102, which distinguishes those who are low by birth and those who follow low occupations, and which draws the inference that there “was no hard-and-fast line, determined by birth, for those who gained their living by these trades.” Mi.331, in a long list of people, gives both *rathakāra* and *cammakāra*, as though these represented two different types of occupation. I therefore think that at all events at some time these two words had two distinct meanings.

enger¹—this means low birth. **High birth** means: birth as a noble, birth as a brahmin—this means high birth.

Name means: there are two (kinds of) name: low name and high name. **Low name** means: Avakaṇṇaka,² Javakaṇṇaka, Dhaniṭṭhaka, Saviṭṭhaka, Kulavaḍḍhaka, or what is disdained,³ disregarded,⁴ scorned,⁵ treated with contempt,⁶ despised⁷ in these districts—this means low name. **High name** means: connected with the enlightened one,⁸ connected with *dhamma*, connected with the Order, or what is not disdained, not disregarded, not scorned, not treated with contempt, what is esteemed in these districts—this means high name.

Clan⁹ means: there are two (kinds of) clan: low clan and high clan. **Low clan** means: a Kosiya clan,¹⁰ a Bharadvāja clan,¹¹ or what is disdained, disregarded, scorned, treated with contempt, despised in these districts—this means low clan. **High clan** means: a Gotama¹² clan, a Moggallāna clan, a Kaccāyana clan,¹³ a Vāsiṭṭha clan,¹⁴ or what is not disdained ... what is esteemed in these districts—this means high clan.

BD.2.175

Work means: there are two (kinds of) work: low work and high work.

¹ *pukkusa*. Vin-a.738 = SN-a.i.162 = AN-a.2.175 paraphrase as *pupphacchaḍḍaka*, literally a scavenger of flowers, see below, BD.2.175. On Pukkusa as a proper name see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 2.141, n., and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* Sometimes, as at AN.i.162, AN.iii.214, we get *caṇḍāla-pukkusa*. For note on the insertion of the three other kinds of birth (*veṇakāra*, *nesāda*, *rathakāra*) between *caṇḍāla* and *pukkusa* see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.100. Here also the *hereditary* nature of these, as occupations, is discussed. It is clear that none of the five is included under *sūdra*, the lowest of the four *vaṇṇa* (colour, caste) or *kula* (family), from which the caste-system probably derived. ² These five are, according to Vin-a.738, the names of slaves. *Kulavaḍḍhaka* look as though they were of caste on one side only, *kula + aḍḍhaka*, thus not of good family; or that they were low caste people trying to become higher caste people, *kula + vaḍḍhaka*. ³ *oññāta*. ⁴ *avaññāta*. ⁵ *hilita*. ⁶ *paribhūta*. ⁷ *acittikata*. ⁸ *buddha-dhamma-saṅgha-paṭisaṃyutta*, not *Buddharakkhita*, etc., as at BD.2.179 below and Vin.3.169. ⁹ *gotta*. ¹⁰ A brahmin clan; see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ¹¹ Another brahmin clan; see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ¹² Cf. DN.ii.3. These four clan or family names occur at Vin.3.169. ¹³ See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ¹⁴ See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*.

Low work means: work of a store-room (keeper),¹ work of a flower-scavenger,² or what is disdained ... despised in these districts—this means low work.

High work means: agriculture,³ trade,⁴ cattle-keeping,⁵ or what is not disdained ... what is esteemed in these districts⁶—this means high work.

Craft⁷ means: there are two (kinds of) craft: low craft and high craft.

Low craft means: the craft of the basket-maker,⁸ the potter's craft, the weaver's craft, the leather-worker's⁹ craft, the barber's craft, or what is disdained ... despised in these districts—this means low craft. **High craft**

BD.2.176

Vin.4.7

¹ *koṭṭhakakamma*. Vin-a.739 paraphrases as *tacchakakamma*, carpenter's work. At Ja.5.306 *veṇī*, female bamboo-worker, is explained by *tacchikā*. *Koṭṭhaka* is usually the store-room itself. ² *pupphacchaḍḍakakamma*, the work of the person whose duty it was to remove dead flowers which had been offered at shrines but not removed by the devotees themselves. It was a low hereditary trade to which, e.g., Sunīta belonged, see *Psalms of the Brethren*, p.271 and verse 620, where he says that he was born in a low family (*nīca kula*). ³ *kasi*. This and the two following occur at MN.i.85, Mi.178. *Kasikamma* translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.60 "being an estate-agent." ⁴ *vāṇijjā*, translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.60 "purveyor," and explained at MN-a.2.56 as trade on water and trade on land. ⁵ *Gorakkhā*, translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.60 "herd-manager." MN-a.2.56 explains it as "minding cows for self or others, there is work and livelihood by bartering (*vikkaya*, or selling) the five products of the cow," while MN-a.3.435=Snp-a.466 explains it by *khettarakkha kasikamma*, minding the fields, agriculture, and says that *go* is a name for *paṭhavi*, the earth. I see, however, no reason for adopting this interpretation here. These three types of work are mentioned at Pv.1.5. ⁶ These examples of despised and esteemed work are not monks' but lay-people's work. This looks like a fragment of original Sakya "left in" from a time when the Founder had the lay-people in mind as well as monks and nuns. ⁷ *sippa*, craft or occupation. Eight are mentioned at MN.i.85; another list is at Ud.31-Ud.32. At DN.i.51 all the crafts, except the leather-worker's, termed "low" by Vinaya above, are enumerated under ordinary (*puthu*) crafts. Here also are included those who follow the crafts of "calculation" and "counting on the fingers" (*gaṇaka*, *muddika*, see below, notes 4 and 5, termed "high crafts" above. ⁸ *naḷakāra*, worker in reeds or rushes. ⁹ *cammakāra*, see above, BD.2.173, n.7.

means: reckoning on the fingers,¹ calculation,² writing,³ what is not disdained ... what is esteemed in these districts—this means high craft.

BD.2.177

All **diseases** are low, except that diabetes⁴ is a high (kind of) disease.

¹ *muddā*. Occurs, e.g., at DN.i.11 (with *ganaṇā*, among the wrong means of livelihood); MN.i.85 (with *ganaṇā*, among the *sippāni*); Ud.31 (with *ganaṇā* and, Ud.32, *lekhā*), Mi.3, Mi.59 (with *ganaṇā* and *lekhā* as *sippāni*), Mi.78, Mi.79 (with *ganaṇā*), Mi.178 (with *lekhā*). The exact meaning of *muddā* is uncertain. It has been translated at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.21 “counting on the fingers”; *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.60 “clerk of the signet”; *Minor Anthologies* 2. (Sacred Books of the Buddhists viii.) 38 “craft of signs manual”; *The Questions of King Milinda* 1.6 “conveyancing.” Vin-a.739 = DN-a.95 explain by *hatthamuddaganaṇā*, which seems doubtful since in the texts referred to above *muddā* and *ganaṇā* are two separate things. The explanation given at MN-a.2.56 is the more probable: *aṅguli-pabbesu saññaṃ ṭhapetvā hatthamuddā*, establishing recognition at the finger-joints, there is *muddā* (reckoning, computing) by (using) the hands. See on *muddā*, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.21, n.4, and where it is explained as “arithmetic, using the joints or knuckles of the fingers as an aid to memory.” Mi.79 says that memory arises from *muddā*, as when “he knows from his training in *lipi* (? writing) that this syllable is to follow that syllable.” On *muddā*, see also *Minor Anthologies* 2.38, n.2, as a method of private bargaining in which the dealer and the merchant clasp each other’s hands, the merchant then making various recognised signs: “holding the joints of the dealer’s fingers, a certain number of fingers, or tapping on his palm.” See also *The Questions of King Milinda* 1.91, n.1. Cf. *Mudrā* as hand-gesture. ² *ganaṇā*. Word occurs, e.g., at DN.i.11, MN.i.85, Ud.31, Vin.1.77 = Vin.4.128, Mi.59, Mi.78; see previous note. According to *Critical Pali Dictionary* *ganaṇā* means “the counting (of numbers) in unbroken series,” in contradistinction to the last, as noticed by RHYS DAVIDS, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.22, n.1. Vin-a.739 = DN-a.1.95 = MN-a.2.56 = Ud-a.205 explain by *acchiddaka* (variant readings *acchinnaka*-, *acchindaka*-) *ganaṇā*. At Vin.1.77 = Vin.4.128 both *ganaṇā* and *lekhā* are considered unsuitable occupations for the boy Upāli to study. At DN.i.11 and Ud.31–Ud.32 *muddā* and *ganaṇā* are followed by *saṅkhānā*, reckoning, with *lekhā* coming next to this. See *Sacred Books of the Buddhists* 8.38 and notes, and *The Questions of King Milinda* 1.91, n.2. ³ *lekhā*. Word occurs at Ud.32, Mi.59, Mi.178; see above, BD.2.176, n.4. Also at Vin.1.77 = Vin.4.128 (see previous note). At Vin.3.76 we find: “He praises by means of writing (*lekhāya*) means: if he cuts a writing there is a *dukkata* offence for each syllable (*akkharakkharāya*),” while at Vin.4.305 there is no offence for a nun to learn what is written. Vin-a.739 explains by *akkharatekhā*, writing, tracing, scratching or engraving syllables, as on a piece of metal, wood, a leaf or clay; see Vin-a.452. Some such process was probably known in India before writing as we understand it. Ud-a.205 says that the craft of writing (*lekhā-sippa*) is “the craft of writing (*likhana*) syllables in various ways, or the knowledge of writing (*likhā*).” See BD.1.131, n.1. These *sippāni*, like the *kammāni* above, BD.2.175, were not intended to be followed by monks, and the distinction between “high” and “low” is probably mainly for the laity, although it gives the monks a guide as to the social standing of the laity. ⁴ *madhumeha*. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests diabetes, and it is so translated at GS.5.75.

Distinguishing mark¹ means: there are two (kinds of) distinguishing mark: low distinguishing mark and high distinguishing mark. **Low distinguishing mark** means: (being) very tall, very short, very dark, very fair—this means low distinguishing mark. **High distinguishing mark** means: not (being) very tall, very short, very dark, very fair—this means high distinguishing mark.

All **passions**² are low.

All **attainments**³ are low, except that stream-attainment and higher attainment⁴ are high.

BD.2.178

Mode of address⁵ means: there are two modes of address: low mode of address and high mode of address. **Low mode of address** means: he says, “You are a camel, you are a ram, you are an ox, you are an ass, you are an animal, you are (destined) for a state of woe,⁶ a good bourn is not for you, but a bad bourn is to be expected for you,” or by adding *ya* or *bha* (to the end of his name),⁷ or by calling him male and female⁸—this means low mode of address. **High mode of address** means: he says, “You are learned, you are experienced, you are wise, you are clever, you are a speaker of *dhamma*,⁹ a bad bourn is not for you, but a good bourn is to be expected for you”—this means high mode of address.

Bu-Pc.2.2.2

If one who is ordained, desiring to jeer at, desiring to scoff at, desiring to shame¹⁰ one who is ordained speaks of a low thing—(a member of) a despised class, a bamboo-plaiter, a hunter, a cartwright, a refuse-scavenger, with low words and says: “You are (a member of a) despised class, you

¹ *liṅga*, or characteristic. Cf. [Vin.3.169](#). ² *kilesa*. ³ At [Vin.2.93](#) *sota-* and *sam-āpatti* are called *āpattis* not subject to legal question. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.44, n. The play on the words *āpatti*, *sot-āpatti*, *sam-āpatti* cannot well be reproduced in English if we regard *āpatti* in its more secondary sense of “fault, transgression, offence,” as seems to be the usual meaning in *Vinaya*, and as the translators of [DN.iii.212](#), [AN.i.84](#), [AN.i.94](#), [Ds.1329](#) take it. When *āpatti* is combined with *sota-* and *sam-* it has the more primary meaning of acquiring, obtaining, entering into a relationship with. On *āpatti* as an offence, see *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.321. ⁴ *sam-āpatti*. For note on the *samāpattis* see *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.321, n. ⁵ See above, [BD.2.171](#), n.3. ⁶ *nerayika*. ⁷ *yakārena vā bhakārena vā*—i.e., as a diminutive and therefore as a disparaging ending. ⁸ *kāṭakoṭacikā*.

⁹ Inclusion here is characteristic of the respect in which the *dhamma-kaṭhika* was held.

¹⁰ *maṅkuṃ kattukāmo*. Cf. [SN.v.74](#), [Dhp.249](#), [Vin.2.118](#), and [HARDY, A.v.](#), p.v.

are a bamboo-plaiter, you are a hunter, you are a cartwright, you are a refuse-scavenger,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring to jeer at ... desiring to shame one who is ordained speaks of a high thing—a noble, a brahmin, with low words and says: “You are (a member of) a despised class ... you are a refuse-scavenger,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring to jeer at ... desiring to shame one who is ordained speaks of a low thing—(a member of) a despised class ... a refuse-scavenger, with high words and says: “You are a noble, you are a brahmin,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.179

If one who is ordained, desiring to jeer at ... desiring to shame one who is ordained speaks of a high thing—a noble, a brahmin, with high words and says: “You are a noble, you are a brahmin,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.8

If one who is ordained, desiring to jeer at ... desiring to shame one who is ordained speaks of a low thing—an Avakaṇṇaka, a Javakaṇṇaka, a Dhaniṭṭhaka, a Saviṭṭhaka, a Kulavaḍḍhaka, with low words, for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who is ordained speaks of a high thing—a Buddharakkhita, a Dhammarakkhita, a Saṅgharakkhita¹ with low words and says: “You are an Avakaṇṇaka ... you are a Kulavaḍḍhaka,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who is ordained speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—a Kosiya, a Bhāradvāja with low words ... speaks of a high thing—a Gotama, a Moggallāna, a Kaccāyana, a Vāsiṭṭha with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—a store-room keeper, a flower-scavenger with low words ... speaks of a high

¹ Cf. BD.1.292, and above, BD.2.174, which reads *buddha- dhamma- saṅgha- paṭisaṃyutta*.

BD.2.180 thing—a cultivator,¹ a trader,² a cattle-keeper³ with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—a basket-maker, a potter, a weaver, a leather-worker, a barber with low words ... if he speaks of a high thing—a reckoner,⁴ an arithmetician,⁵ a scribe⁶ with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—one afflicted with leprosy, with boils, with eczema, with consumption, with epilepsy⁷ with low words ... if he speaks of a high thing—one afflicted with diabetes with low words ... if he speaks of a low thing with high words ... if he speaks of a high thing with high words ... there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.9 If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—(being) very tall, very short, very dark, very fair, with low words—speaks of a high thing—not (being) very tall, not very short, not very dark, not very fair with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... of expiation.

BD.2.181 If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing ... of one obsessed⁸ by passion, of one obsessed by hatred, of one obsessed by confusion with low words ... speaks of a high thing—of one without passion, of one without hatred, of one without confusion with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... of expiation.

¹ *kassaka*, or husbandman, ploughman; not as above, **BD.2.175**, agriculture or ploughing, *kasi*. ² *vāṇija*; not *vāṇijā*, trading, trade, as above, **BD.2.175**. ³ Presumably this, in the accusative *gorakkham*, is in the nominative *gorakkha* here, and not *gorakkhā* as above, **BD.2.175**.

⁴ *muddika*, so translated at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.68. At DN.i.51 *muddika* is included under ordinary (*puthu*) crafts. Word occurs at SN.iv.376, translated KS.iv.267 “ready-reckoner.” SN-a.iii.113 defines as one who is good at computing by reckoning on the fingers. Above, **BD.2.176**, we had *muddā*. ⁵ *gaṇaka*, or computer, accountant; also an ordinary craft at DN.i.51. Word also occurs at SN.iv.376, translated KS.iv.267 “accountant.” SN-a.iii.113 says it means one who is good at computing in unbroken series. Above, **BD.2.176**, we had *gaṇanā*.

⁶ *lekhaka*, clerk or scribe, not mentioned at DN.i.51. But see Mi.42. ⁷ These are all included in list of diseases at **Vin.2.271**, AN.v.110, Mnd.17, Mnd.47, Cnd.304. ⁸ *pariyuṭṭhita*.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing with low words—of being guilty of an offence of defeat,¹ of being guilty of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, of being guilty of a grave offence, of being guilty of an offence of expiation, of being guilty of an offence which ought to be confessed, of being guilty of an offence of wrong-doing, of being guilty of an offence of wrong speech ... speaks of a high thing—a stream-attainer with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words ... there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—a camel, a ram, an ox, an ass, an animal, one (destined) for a state of woe, and says, “You are a camel ... you are (destined) for a state of woe, a good bourn is not for you but a bad bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a high thing—a learned person, an experienced, wise, clever person, one who is a speaker of *dhamma* with low words, and says, “You are a camel ... but a bad bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a low thing—a camel ... one (destined) for a state of woe with high words, and says, “You are learned, you are experienced, you are wise, you are clever, you are a speaker of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for you but a good bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks of a high thing—a learned person ... and says, “... but a good bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.182

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who is ordained, speaks thus, saying: “There are here some (members of) despised classes, bamboo-plaiters, hunters, cartwrights, refuse-scavengers,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.2.2.3

¹ Cf. Vin.3.164.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks thus, saying: “There are here some nobles and brahmins,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.10

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame ... speaks thus, saying: “There are here some Avakaṇṇakas, Javakaṇṇakas, Dhaniṭṭhakas, Saviṭṭhakas, Kulavaḍḍhakas ... Buddharakkhitas, Dhammarakkhitas, Saṅgharakkhitas ... Kosiyas, Bhāradvājas ... Gotamas, Moggallānas, Kaccānas, Vāsiṭṭhas ... store-room (keepers),¹ flower-scavengers ... cultivators, traders, cattle-keepers ... basket-makers, potters, weavers, leather-workers, barbers ... reckoners, arithmeticians, scribes ... those afflicted by leprosy, by boils, by eczema, by consumption, by epilepsy ... those afflicted by diabetes ... (those who are) very tall, very short, very dark, very fair ... (those who are) not very tall, not very short, not very dark, not very fair ... (those who are) obsessed by passion, obsessed by hatred, obsessed by confusion ... (those who are) without passion, without hatred, without confusion ... (those who are) guilty of an offence involving defeat ... guilty of an offence of wrong speech ... (those who are) stream-attainers ... camels, rams, oxen, asses, animals, (those destined) for a state of woe, a good bourn is not for these, but a bad bourn is to be expected for these ... learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for these, but a good bourn is to be expected for these,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.2.2.4
BD.2.183

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who has been ordained, speaks thus, saying: “What now if these are (members of) a despised class, bamboo-plaiters, hunters, cartwrights, refuse-scavengers?” ... saying: “What now if these are learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*?”, for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.2.2.5

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who has been ordained, speaks thus, saying: “We are not (members of) a despised class, bamboo-plaiters, hunters, cartwrights, refuse-scavengers” ... saying, “We are not

¹ *koṭṭhakā*; cf. above, BD.2.175, where we had *koṭṭhakakamma*.

learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for us, but a good bourn is to be expected for us," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who is not ordained,¹ speaks of a low thing with low words, of a high thing with low words, of a low thing with high words, of a high thing with high words, of a learned person, of an experienced, wise, clever person, of a speaker of *dhamma*, saying: "You are learned, you are experienced, you are wise, you are clever, you are a speaker of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for you but a good bourn is to be expected for you," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.2.2.6

If one who is ordained, desiring ... to shame one who is not ordained, speaks thus: "There are here some members of low castes ..., we are not learned people, experienced, wise, clever people, not speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for us, but a good bourn is to be expected for us," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.11

If one who is ordained, not desiring to jeer at, not desiring to scoff at, not desiring to shame one who is ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks of a low thing—of a (member of a) despised class, a bamboo-plaiter, a hunter, a cartwright, a refuse-scavenger with low words, and says: "You are (a member of) a despised class ... you are a refuse-scavenger," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

Bu-Pc.2.2.7

BD.2.184

If one who is ordained, desiring not ... to shame one who is ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks of a high thing—a noble, a brahmin with low words, and says: "You are (a member of) a despised class ... you are a refuse-scavenger" ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words—of a noble, a brahmin, and says: "You are a noble, you are a brahmin," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

If one who is ordained, not desiring ... to shame one who is ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks of a low thing with low words ...

¹ *Kankhā-vitaraṇi*, BD.2.83, says that here it is meant that nuns also are "not ordained."

speaks of a high thing with low words ... speaks of a low thing with high words ... speaks of a high thing with high words—of a learned person ...” ... but a good bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

If one who is ordained, not desiring ... to shame one who is ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks thus: “There are here some (members of a) despised class ... we are not learned people, experienced, wise, clever people, we are not speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for us, but a good bourn is to be expected for us,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

Bu-Pc.2.2.8

If one who is ordained, not desiring ... to shame one who is not ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks of a low thing with low words ... of a high thing with low words ... of a low thing with high words ... of a high thing with high words—of a learned person ... “... but a good bourn is to be expected for you,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

BD.2.185

If one who is ordained, not desiring ... to shame one who is not ordained, (but having) a fondness for joking, speaks thus: “There are here some (members of a) despised class ... we are not learned people, experienced, wise, clever people, we are not speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for us, but a good bourn is to be expected for us,” for each sentence there is an offence of wrong speech.

Bu-Pc.2.2.9

There is no offence if he is aiming at (explaining) the goal, if he is aiming at (explaining) *dhamma*, if he is aiming at (explaining) the teaching,¹ if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The second

¹ = Vin.3.130 (BD.1.218) = Vin.4.277. Vin-a.740 “praising the goal.”

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 3

BD.2.186
Bu-Pc.3.1.1

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks brought slander¹ against monks for quarrelling, for disputing, for engaging in contention²; hearing of this they were proclaimed for that and this dissension; hearing of that they were proclaimed³ for this and that dissension, so that quarrels that had not arisen arose, and also quarrels that had arisen rolled on for becoming more, for expansion. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks bring slander against monks for quarrelling, (so that) hearing of this ... they were proclaimed ... for expansion.”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, brought slander against monks for quarrelling, (so that) hearing of this ... they were proclaimed ... for expansion?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, bring slander against monks for quarrelling, (so that) hearing of this ... they were proclaimed ... for expansion. It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increase in those who are pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In slander by monks,⁴ there is an offence of expiation.”

¹ *pesuññam upasaṃharanti*. ² These three words are defined at [Vin.4.150](#) as “engaging in legal questions,” so it may be supposed that the “quarrels,” etc., were of a doctrinal rather than of a personal nature. ³ *akkhāyanti*. ⁴ *bhikkhupesuññe*.

Bu-Pc.2.187

Slander means: slander comes to be in two ways: making dear¹ or desiring dissension.

One brings slander in ten ways: on account of birth² and on account of name and on account of clan and on account of work and on account of craft and on account of disease and on account of distinguishing mark and on account of passion and on account of attainment and on account of mode of address.

Birth means³: there are two (kinds of) birth: low birth and high birth. **Low birth** means: birth as (a member of) a despised class, birth as a bamboo-plaiter, birth as a hunter, birth as a cartwright, birth as a refuse-scavenger—this means low birth. **High birth** means: birth as a noble, birth as a brahmin—this means high birth ... **Mode of address** means: there are two modes of address: low mode of address and high mode of address. **Low mode of address** means: he says, “You are a camel ...” ... by calling him male and female—this means low mode of address. **High mode of address** means: he says, “You are learned ... a good bourn is to be expected for you”—this means high mode of address.

Vin.4.13

Bu-Pc.3.2.2

One who is ordained, hearing of one who is ordained, brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: “So and so calls him ‘a (member of a) despised class,⁴ a bamboo-plaiter, a hunter, a cartwright, a refuse-scavenger,’” for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

One who is ordained, hearing of one who is ordained, brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: “So and so calls him ‘a noble, a brahmin’” ... “So and so calls him ‘an Avakaṇṇaka, a Javakaṇṇaka, a Dhaniṭṭhaka, a Savitṭhaka, a Kulavaḍḍhaka’” ... saying: “So and so calls him ‘a camel, a ram, an ox, an ass, an animal, one (destined) for a state of woe, a good bourn is not for him, but a bad bourn is to be expected for him,’” ... saying: “So and so calls him ‘learned, experienced, wise, clever, a speaker of *dhamma*,

BD.2.188

¹ *piyakamyassa*. Vin-a.740, “he says, ‘Thus will I become dear to him,’ desiring to be dear himself.” ² Cf. above, BD.2.171; here ablative is used throughout. ³ For the rest of this *pācittiya*, cf. Bu-Pc.2. ⁴ For this passage, cf. above, BD.2.178f.

a bad bourn is not for him, but a good bourn is to be expected for him," for each sentence there is an offence of expiation.

One who is ordained, hearing of one who is ordained, brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: "So and so says that 'there are here some (members of a) despised class, bamboo-plaiters, hunters, cart-wrights, refuse-scavengers,' he does not say anything else, he says just this," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

One who is ordained ... brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: "So and so says that 'there are here some nobles, brahmins,' he does not say anything else, he says just this" ... "So and so says that, 'There are here some learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*, there is no bad bourn for these, but a good bourn is to be expected for these,' he does not say anything else, he just says this," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

One who is ordained ... brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: "So and so says, 'What now if these are (members of a) despised class, bamboo-plaiters, hunters, cartwrights, refuse-scavengers?' he does not say anything else, he says just this" ... "So and so says, 'What now if these are learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*?' He does not say anything else, he says just this," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

One who is ordained ... brings a slander against the one who is ordained, saying: "So and so says, 'We are (members of a) despised class'" ... So and so says, 'We are not learned, experienced, wise, clever people, speakers of *dhamma*, a bad bourn is not for us, but a good bourn is to be expected for us,' he does not say anything else, he says just this," for each sentence there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.2.189
Vin.4.14

Bu-Pc.3.2.3

If one who is ordained, hearing of one who is ordained, brings a slander against the one who is ordained, for each sentence there is an offence of expiation. If one who is ordained, hearing of one who is ordained, brings a slander against one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If one who is ordained, hearing of one who is not ordained, brings a slander against one who is ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If one who

is ordained, hearing of one who is not ordained, brings a slander against the one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.3.2.4

There is no offence if he is not making dear, if he is not desiring dissension, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 4

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time, the group of six monks made lay-followers speak *dhamma* line by line¹; the lay-followers were disrespectful, not deferential towards the monks, they did not live in harmony.² Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.4.1.1
BD.2.190

“How can this group of six monks make lay-followers speak *dhamma* line by line? The lay-followers are disrespectful ... they do not live in harmony.”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, made lay-followers speak *dhamma* line by line, (and that) lay-followers ... in harmony?”

“It is true, lord.” The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, make lay-followers speak *dhamma* line by line, (so that) lay-followers ... in harmony? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increase in those who are pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should make one who is not ordained speak *dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of expiation.”

Not ordained means: setting aside monk and nun, the rest are called not ordained.

Bu-Pc.4.2.1
BD.2.191

Vin.4.15

¹ *padaso*. Vin-a.741, *padam* = *koṭṭhāsam*. Commentary also calls *pada* a fourth part of a verse (*gāthāpada*), the others being *anupada*, *anvakkhara*, *anuvyañjana*. Cf. MN-a.1.2, where is given the number of *padas* and *akkharas* of which Majjhima is said to consist; see W.A. DE SILVA, *Catalogue of Palm Leaf Manuscripts*, i.xx., who also says, “eight letters (*akkhara*) are a *Pada*, four *Pada*, a *Gāthā*.” ² Cf. AN.iii.14.

A line, the next line, every syllable, the next phrase. **A line**¹ means: starting together they end together.² **The next line**³ means: starting singly they end together.⁴ **Every syllable**⁵ means: saying “form is impermanent” (*rūpaṃ aniccaṃ*) he drops *rū*.⁶ **The next phrase**⁷ means: while saying “form is impermanent,” he⁸ utters the sound, “feelings are impermanent.” Whatever is line and whatever is next line and whatever is every syllable and whatever is next phrase, all this means **dhamma line by line**.

Dhamma means: spoken by the enlightened one,⁹ spoken by disciples,¹⁰ spoken to holy men,¹¹ spoken by *devatās*,¹² connected with the goal,¹³ connected with *dhamma*.¹⁴

BD.2.192

¹ *pada*, see above, [BD.2.190, n.1](#). ² *ekato paṭṭhapetvā ekato osāpenti*. Vin-a.741 says that beginning every line together with a novice, so it is ended together. ³ *anupada*. Vin-a.741 says *dutiya-pada*. Vin-a.’s assumption is that a *thera* and a novice are reciting a verse, Dh-p.1 being cited. ⁴ *pātekkam paṭṭhapetvā ekato osāpenti*. A *thera* says the first line alone and a novice says the second line together with him, Vin-a.741. ⁵ *anvakkhara*. On *akkhara* see [BD.1.132, n.1](#). Vin-a.741 says, *anvakkharan ti ekekam akkharam*. ⁶ *run ti opātetī*, he drops *run*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “sound-particle” for *run*. Cf. Ja.1.418, *sā run ti saddam akāsi*. Variant readings of text are *rupam, rūpaṃ*; of Vin-a., *rū*. The Sinhalese version of Vinaya reads, *rūpan ti osāpetī*, he ends at *rūpaṃ*; he thus drops (*opātetī*) *aniccam*, which is not the same as dropping a single syllable out of one word, and which seems to be the offence. ⁷ *anubyājāna*. The offence here is for a *thera* and a novice to say “form” and “feelings” simultaneously, instead of the latter waiting to begin his line until the former has finished his. ⁸ The novice, see Vin-a.741–742. ⁹ Vin-a.742 says, “the whole Vinaya-piṭaka, Abhidhammapiṭaka, Dhammapada, Cariyapiṭaka, Udāna, Itivuttaka, Jātaka, Suttanipāta, Vimānavatthu, Petavatthu, the Brahmajālā and other Suttas.” ¹⁰ Vin-a.742 says, “spoken by disciples belonging to the fourfold congregation: the Anaṅgaṇa, Sammāditṭhi, Anumāna, Cūḷavedalla, Mahāvedalla Suttas and others,” all Majjhima Suttas. MN-a.2.67 records that the ancients call the Anumāna the BhikkhuPātimokkha. ¹¹ *Isibhāsita*. Vin-a.742 says, “spoken to wanderers outside (the Sakyaputtiya Orders): the whole of the Paribbājakavagga,” in the Majjhima. ¹² Vin-a.742 says, “spoken by (or with) *devas*: the Devatāsaṃyutta, Devaputtasaṃyutta, Mārasaṃyutta, Brahasaṃyutta, Sakkasaṃyutta,” of the Saṃyuttanikāya. ¹³ *atthupasaṃhito ti atthakathānissito*; so Vin-a.742, meaning apparently what is connected with the Commentary—a far cry from *attha* as originally the goal, the aim, the thing sought. ¹⁴ *dharmupasaṃhito ti pāḷinissito*; so Vin-a.742, thus identifying *dhamma* with the text. This definition of *dhamma* occurs again below, [BD.2.206](#). Again not the earlier meaning of *dhamma*.

Should make speak¹ means: he makes (him) speak by line, for every line there is an offence of expiation. He makes (him) speak by syllable, for every syllable there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained (and) makes him speak *dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained (and) makes him speak *dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained (and) makes him speak *dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.4.2.2

There is no offence in making (him) recite it together,² in studying it together,³ if while speaking he drops a phrase⁴ usually familiar,⁵ if he drops it while expounding,⁶ if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.193

BD.2.193

The Fourth

¹ Below, **BD.2.206**, where same explanation is given for *deseyya*, should teach. According to Vin-a.742–Vin-a.743 it is an offence to speak line by line any matter included at the three Councils; also various suttas, named, but not so included; and various other compilations, enumerated, and called *abuddhavacana*. ² Vin-a.743, if taking an exposition with an unordained person, he speaks it with him. ³ With one who is not ordained, so Vin-a.743. ⁴ Text, *gandha*; Vin-a.743 *gantha* with variant reading *gaṇṭha*. ⁵ Vin-a.743 says that “if the half-line of a verse does not come (to him), but the rest comes, this is called *yebhuyyena paṇṇagantho*.” ⁶ I.e., a sutta, so Vin-a.744.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 5

Bu-Pc.5.1.1
BD.2.194

... at Āḷavī in the chief shrine at Āḷavī.¹ Now at that time lay-followers came to the monastery for the sake of hearing *dhamma*. When *dhamma* had been spoken, the monks who were elders went to their own dwelling-place,² (but) the monks who were novices lay down in a sleeping-place³ just there in the attendance hall⁴ together with the lay-followers, careless, thoughtless, naked, mumbling,⁵ snoring.⁶ The lay-followers⁷ looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the revered sirs lie down in a sleeping-place careless, thoughtless, naked, mumbling, snoring?”

Vin.4.16

Monks heard these lay-followers who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks lie down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks lay down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained?”

BD.2.195

“It is true, lord,” they said.

¹ See BD.1.247, for Āḷavī; and Ja.1.160, for this story. ² *yathāvihāra*. ³ *seyyarī kappeti*. It is clear from Old Commentary below that *seyyā* is to be taken as a separate word; hence I have added “in a sleeping-place.” There is the verb *nipajjati*, to lie down, but not necessarily in a recognised sleeping-place. ⁴ *upaṭṭhānasālā*. Monks and laymen can stay here for a night. The *upaṭṭhānasālā* means a hall where help and support is given, food and so on, by the *dāyakas* or benefactors, for the monks who come from outside. It is like the *dānasālā*, of the present day in Ceylon. ⁵ *vikūjamānā*, which Vin-a.744 paraphrases as *vippalapamānā*. ⁶ *kācacchamānā*, which Vin-a.744 says is like making the noise of a crow, in the nose, emitting senseless noises. Also at AN.iii.299. ⁷ I.e., the first-mentioned ones, Vin-a.744.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men lie down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should lie down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Then the lord,¹ having stayed at Ālavī for as long as he found suitable, set out on tour for Kosambī. Going along on tour, he arrived in due course at Kosambī. The lord stayed there at Kosambī in the Badarikā monastery.² Monks spoke thus to the venerable Rāhula:

Bu-Pc.5.2.1

“Reverend Rāhula, a rule of training laid down by the lord says that there should be no lying down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained. Reverend Rāhula, find a sleeping-place.”³

Then the venerable Rāhula, not obtaining a sleeping-place, lay down in a privy. Then the lord, getting up in the night towards morning, approached this privy, and having approached, he coughed and the venerable Rāhula also coughed.

“Who is here?” he said.

“It is I, lord, Rahula,” he said.

“Why are you sitting there, Rahula?”

Then the venerable Rahula told this matter to the lord. Then the lord in this connection, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk,⁴ addressed the monks, saying:

BD.2.196

¹ Again, cf. Ja.1.160–Ja.1.161, where this story is given in greater detail. The sudden appearance of Rāhula in the Vinaya version gives the appearance of material left out. ² One of the four establishments for the Order at Kosambī. ³ According to Ja.1.161, before this rule was laid down, the monks had always welcomed Rāhula as though the place were his own. But from the day that it was laid down they would not give him a resting-place, for fear of transgressing. ⁴ At Ja.1.161, Sāriputta is reprimanded by the lord, because if he did not know about Rāhula, what would he know about other youths? But in the Vinaya version Rāhula, judging by the prefix *āyasmā* to his name, is considered as ordained. It was not therefore that ordained monks should not lie down with him, but that he should not lie down with unordained persons.

“I allow you, monks, to lie down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained for two or three nights. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should lie down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained for more than two or three nights, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.5.3.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not ordained means: setting aside monk, the rest are called not ordained.¹

Vin.4.17

More than two or three nights means: exceeding two or three nights.

With means: together with.

Sleeping-place² means: if it is fully covered,³ if it is fully closed round, if it is partially covered, if it is partially closed round.

Should lie down in a sleeping-place means: if at sunset on the fourth day a monk lies down⁴ while one who is not ordained is lying down, there is an offence of expiation. If one who is not ordained lies down while a monk is lying down,⁵ there is an offence of expiation. Or if both lie down, there is an offence of expiation. If getting up, they lie down again, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.5.3.2

BD.2.197

If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained (and) lies down in a sleeping-place for more than two or three nights, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained (and) lies down in a sleeping-place for more than two or three nights, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained (and) lies down in a sleeping-place for more than two or three nights, there is an offence of expiation. If it is half covered, half closed round, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.191](#), where we get “setting aside monk and nun.” ² *seyyā*. In the rule only the phrase *seyyarāṃ kappeyya* occurs; this is explained next. Another definition of *seyyā*, occurs below, [BD.2.244](#). ³ I.e., by a roof. ⁴ *nipajjati*. ⁵ *Monks' nipanne*, variant readings given at [Vin.4.355](#).

to whether one is ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, there is no offence.

There is no offence if he stays for two or three nights; if he stays for less than two or three nights; if having stayed for two nights, departing before dawn on the third night, he stays again¹; if it is fully covered (but not fully closed round; if it is fully closed round (but) not fully covered; if it is partially uncovered, partially not closed round; if the monk sits down while one who is not ordained is lying down; if one who is not ordained sits down while the monk is lying down; or if both sit down; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.5.3.3

The Fifth

¹ Cf. below, [BD.2.378](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 6

Bu-Pc.6.1.1
BD.2.198

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Anuruddha, going to Sāvattthī through the country of Kosala, in the evening arrived at a certain village. Now at that time a rest-house¹ in that village had been made ready by a certain woman. Then the venerable Anuruddha approached that woman,² and having approached he spoke thus to that woman:

"Sister, if it does not inconvenience you, we would stay for one night in the rest-house." "Do stay, honoured sir," she said. But other travellers came up to that woman, and having come up, they spoke thus to that woman:

Vin.4.18

"Lady, if it does not inconvenience you, we would stay for one night in the rest-house."

"But this master, the recluse, arrived first. If he allows it, do stay," she said.

Then these travellers approached the venerable Anuruddha, and having approached, they spoke thus to the venerable Anuruddha:

"If it does not inconvenience you, honoured sir, we would stay for one night in the rest-house."

"Do stay, sirs," he said.

Then that woman, on account of his appearance, fell in love with the venerable Anuruddha. Then that woman approached the venerable Anuruddha, and having approached, she spoke thus to the venerable Anuruddha:

BD.2.199

"Honoured sir, the master will not be comfortable, crowded with these people. Honoured sir, it would be good if I were to prepare a couch within

¹ *āvasathāgāraṇ ti āgantukānaṃ vasaṇāgāraṇ*, a dwelling-house for those coming in, Vin-a.750. Cf. *āvasatha-piṇḍa*, below, BD.2.303. ² Vin-a.750 says that he had heard of this resting-place from other people.

for the master.”

The venerable Anuruddha consented by becoming silent.

Then that woman, having prepared a couch within for the venerable Anuruddha, having decked herself up in ornaments,¹ smelling of perfumes, approached the venerable Anuruddha, and having approached she spoke thus to the venerable Anuruddha:

“Honoured sir, the master is beautiful, good to look upon, charming; I also am beautiful, good to look upon, charming. It were good, honoured sir, if I were to become the master’s wife.”

When she had spoken thus, the venerable Anuruddha was silent. A second time ... A third time that woman spoke thus to the venerable Anuruddha:

“Honoured sir, the master is beautiful, good to look upon, charming; I also am beautiful, good to look upon, charming. Pray, honoured sir, let the master take me as well as all the wealth.”

A third time the venerable Anuruddha became silent. Then that woman, having slipped off² her outer cloak, walked up and down before the venerable Anuruddha, then she stood, then she sat down, then she lay down. Then the venerable Anuruddha, keeping control over (his) faculties,³ neither so much as looked at that woman nor addressed her. Then that woman said:

“Indeed it is wonderful, good sir, indeed it is marvellous, good sir, many men send for me with a hundred⁴ or a thousand,⁵ but this recluse, being himself begged by me does not desire to take me as well as all the wealth,” and dressing in her outer cloak, saluting the feet of the venerable Anuruddha with her head, she spoke thus to the venerable Anuruddha:

“Honoured sir, a transgression has overcome⁶ me, in that I acted thus, foolish, misguided,⁷ wrong that I was. Honoured sir, let the master acknowledge for me the transgression as a transgression for the sake of restraint in the future.”

¹ Cf. Vin.4.161. ² *nikkhipitvā*, *ni + khipati*, to put down or off. ³ *okkhipitvā*, *ava + khipati*, to cast or throw down; figuratively usually applied to the eyes, and thence to the other senses; thus meaning to control, to have under control. Cf. AN.iv.254, where Anuruddha again *indriyāni okkhipi*. ⁴ *kahāpaṇas* presumably. ⁵ *kahāpaṇas* presumably. ⁶ Following passage = DN.i.85. Cf. also MN.i.438. ⁷ *mūḷha*, or erring, infatuated, blind.

“Truly, sister, a transgression overcame you in that you acted thus, foolish, misguided, wrong that you were. But if you, sister, seeing the transgression as a transgression, confess¹ according to the rule, we acknowledge it for you; for, sister, in the discipline of the noble, this is growth²: whoever, seeing a transgression as a transgression, confesses according to the rule, and³ attains restraint in the future.”

Vin.4.19

Then that woman, at the end of that night, having with her own hands satisfied and served the venerable Anuruddha with abundant food, both solid and soft, greeting the venerable Anuruddha when he had eaten and removed his hand from the bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Anuruddha gladdened, roused, pleased, delighted that woman with talk on *dhamma*. Then that woman, gladdened, roused, pleased, delighted by the venerable Anuruddha with talk on *dhamma*, said to the venerable Anuruddha:

“Excellent, honoured sir, it is excellent, honoured sir; even as one, honoured sir, would set upright what is overturned, or would uncover what is hidden, or would point out the way to one who is astray, or would bring out an oil lamp into the darkness, so that those with eyes could see forms—even so has *dhamma* been explained in many a figure by master Anuruddha. Honoured sir, I myself go to the lord as refuge, to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks; let the master receive me as a lay-follower from this day forth, so long as life lasts, as one gone for refuge.”⁴

BD.2.201

Then the venerable Anuruddha, having gone to Sāvattihī, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Anuruddha lie down in a sleeping-place with a woman?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Anuruddha, lay down in a sleeping-place with a woman?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

¹ *paṭīkarosi*. Above, **BD.2.8**, the word translated “confess” was *deseti*. ² *Vuddhi h’esā ariyassa vinaye*. ³ *ca* omitted at DN.i.85. ⁴ A stock formula—e.g., DN.i.85; AN.i.56.

“How can you, Anuruddha, lie down in a sleeping-place with a woman¹? Anuruddha, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth :

“Whatever monk should lie down in a sleeping-place with a woman, there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case. Bu-Pc.6.2.1

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal, even a little girl born this very day, all the more an older one.²

With means: together.³

Sleeping-place means: if it is fully covered, if it is fully closed round, if it is partially covered, if it is partially closed round.⁴ Vin.4.20

Should lie down in a sleeping-place means: if at sunset a monk lies down when a woman is lying down, there is an offence of expiation. If a woman lies down when a monk is lying down, there is an offence of expiation. Or if both lie down there is an offence of expiation. If getting up, they lie down again, there is an offence of expiation.⁵ BD.2.202

If he thinks that it is a woman⁶ when it is a woman (and) lies down in a sleeping-place with (her), there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a woman (and) lies down in a sleeping-place with (her), there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is a woman (and) lies down in a sleeping-place with (her), there is an offence of expiation. If it is half covered, half closed round, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he lies down in a sleeping-place with a female *yakkha* or with a female departed one or with a eunuch or with a female animal, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁷ If he thinks that it is a woman when it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether

¹ This seems unfair, as Anuruddha is shown not to have lain down with the woman. He was a cousin to Gotama, and one of his most eminent disciples. At AN.i.23 he is called chief of those of deva-like sight, a gift he highly prized; see MN.i.213. ² Cf. BD.1.202, BD.1.332.

³ *sahā ti ekato*. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.196. ⁵ Cf. above, BD.2.196; Vin.4.138. ⁶ Cf. below, BD.2.206, BD.2.358. ⁷ Cf. below, BD.2.207, BD.2.358. Bu-Pc.6.2.2

it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is not a woman, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.6.2.3

There is no offence if it is fully covered (but) not fully closed round, if it is fully closed round (but) not fully covered, if it is partially uncovered, partially not closed round, if the monk sits down while the woman is lying down, if the woman sits down while the monk is lying down, or if both sit down; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

The Sixth

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.197](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 7

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Udāyin frequented families, and he approached many families. Then the venerable Udāyin, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, went up to a certain family. Now at that time the house-wife¹ was sitting at the entrance-door,² and the daughter-in-law of the house³ was sitting at the door of the living-room.⁴ Then the venerable Udāyin went up to the house-wife, and having gone up he gave *dhamma* privately⁵ to the house-wife. Then the daughter-in-law of the house thought thus:

Bu-Pc.7.1.1
BD.2.203

“What now, is this recluse the mother-in-law's lover, or is he speaking offensively?”

Then the venerable Udāyin, having given *dhamma* privately to the house-wife, approached the daughter-in-law of the house, and having approached he gave *dhamma* privately to the daughter-in-law of the house. Then the house-wife thought:

“What now, is this recluse the lover of the daughter-in-law of the house, or is he speaking offensively?”

Vin.4.21

Then the venerable Udāyin, having given *dhamma* privately to the daughter-in-law of the house, departed. Then the house-wife said to the daughter-in-law of the house:

“Well now, what did this recluse say to you?”

“Lady, he taught *dhamma* to me⁶; but what did he say to the lady?”

“He also taught *dhamma* to me,⁷” she said.

BD.2.204

¹ *gharaṇī* = *gharasāminī*, Vin-a.750 = Pv-a.174. Cf. *kulagharāṇī* at SN.i.201; *gharaṇī* at Vin.1.271, Pv.3.1.9. ² *nivesanadvāre ti nivesanassa mahādvāre*, Vin-a.750. ³ *gharasuṇhā*.

⁴ *āvasathadvāre ti ovarakadvāre*, Vin-a.750. ⁵ *upakaṇṇake*, literally into the ear. ⁶ *me* the first time, *mayhaṃ* the second. ⁷ *me* the first time, *mayhaṃ* the second.

These (women) looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:
 “How can master Udāyin teach *dhamma* privately? Should not *dhamma* be given clearly¹ and openly?”

Monks heard these women who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Udāyin teach *dhamma* to women?”²

Then these monks told this matter to the lord ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, taught *dhamma* to women?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, teach *dhamma* to women? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should teach *dhamma* to women, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.7.2.1

Now -at that time female lay-followers, seeing monks, spoke thus:

“Please, masters, teach *dhamma*.”

“Sisters, it is not allowable to teach *dhamma* to women.”

“Please, masters, teach *dhamma* in five or six sentences,³ it is possible to learn *dhamma* in a few (sentences).”

BD.2.205

“Sisters, it is not allowable to teach *dhamma* to women,” and being scrupulous, they did not teach. The female lay-followers looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these masters, being asked by us, not teach *dhamma*?”

¹ *vissattkena*, which *Pali-English Dictionary*, quoting *Vin.2.99* (*vissatthena*), calls “in confidence.” *Vin-a.750* says, *vissatthenā ti suniggatena saddena*. ² Note how the emphasis is shifted from “privately” to “to women”; probably such a shifting bears the mark of a later editorial hand, when women no longer occupied the comparatively high place that was theirs under early Buddhism. ³ *vācā*, or word, saying, speech.

Monks heard these female lay-followers who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow you to teach *dhamma* to women in five or six sentences. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should teach *dhamma* to women in more than five or six sentences, there is an offence of expiation.”

Vin.4.22

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time the group of six monks thought: “It is allowed by the lord to teach *dhamma* to women in five or six sentences”; and these, making an unlearned man¹ sit down near by, taught *dhamma* to women in more than five or six sentences. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.7.3.1

“How can the group of six monks, making an unlearned man sit down near by, teach *dhamma* to women in more than five or six sentences?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... to women?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men ... to women? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.206

“Whatever monk should teach *dhamma* to women in more than five or six sentences, except a learned man² (be present), there is offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.7.4.1

¹ *aviññum purisaviggahaṃ*. ² *viññunā purisaviggahena*. Vin-a.750 says, “not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal.”

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal, one who is learned, competent to know good speech and bad speech, what is lewd and what is not lewd.¹

In more than five or six sentences means: exceeding five or six sentences.

Dhamma means: spoken by the enlightened one, spoken by disciples, spoken to holy men, spoken by *devatās*, connected with the goal, connected with *dhamma*.²

Should teach means: if he teaches by line, for every line there is an offence of expiation. If he teaches by syllable, for every syllable there is an offence of expiation.³

Except a learned man (be present) means: setting aside a learned man.

A learned man means: one who is competent to know good speech and bad speech, what is lewd and what is not lewd.

Bu-Pc.7.4.2

If he thinks that it is a woman⁴ when it is a woman (and) teaches *dhamma* in more than five or six sentences, except a learned man (be present), there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a woman (and) ... except a learned man (be present), there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is a woman ... except a learned man (be present), there is an offence of expiation. If he teaches *dhamma* in more than five or six sentences to a female *yakkha* or to a female departed one or to a eunuch or to an animal in woman's form, except a learned man (be present), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a woman when it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is not a woman, there is no offence.

BD.2.207

Vin.4.23

Bu-Pc.7.4.3

There is no offence if a learned man (be present); if he teaches *dhamma* in five or six sentences; if he teaches *dhamma* in less than five or six sentences;

¹ = BD.1.215, BD.1.337. ² = above, BD.2.192. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.192, where there is the same explanation for *vāceyya* as here for *deseyya*. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.202, below, BD.2.358.

if he teaches having risen, having sat down again; if the woman having risen sits down again, and he teaches at that (moment)¹; if he is teaching a different woman; if she asks a question; if (she) having asked a question, he speaks; if talking for the good of another, a woman hears²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ *tasmim deseti*; Vin-a.751, *tasmim khaṇe deseti*. ² Cf. BD.2.272, BD.2.275.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 8

Bu-Pc.8.1.1
BD.2.208

... at Vesālī in the pavilion of the Gabled Hall in the Great Grove. Now at that time¹ many monks who were friends and companions went for the rains to the banks of the river Vaggumudā. At that time Vajji was short of alms-food, which was difficult to obtain; it was suffering from a famine, and food-tickets were being issued. Nor was it easy to keep oneself going by gleaning or by favour. Then these monks said to one another:

“At present Vajjī is short of alms-food ... Nor is it easy to keep oneself going by gleaning or by favour. What now if we, by some strategem, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, should spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of alms-food?”

Some spoke thus: “Look, your reverences, we could superintend the business of householders, thus they will think to give to us; thus we, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, will spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of alms-food.”

Some spoke thus: “Enough, your reverences, of super-intending the business of householders. Look, your reverences, we will execute householders' commissions, thus they will think to give to us; thus we, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, will spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of alms-food.”

Some spoke thus: “Enough, your reverences, of super-intending the business of householders and of executing householders' commissions. Look, your reverences, we will speak praise to householders concerning this or that condition of further-men, saying: ‘Such a monk is possessed of the

BD.2.209

¹ Cf. Bu-Pj.4, where it is an offence involving defeat unfoundedly to claim a condition of further-men (*uttarimanussa-dhamma*). See BD.1.151ff. for notes.

first musing, such a monk is possessed of the second musing, such a monk is possessed of the third musing, such a monk is possessed of the fourth musing, such a monk is a stream-attainer, such a monk is a once-returner, such a monk is a non-returner, such a monk is man perfected, such a monk is a three-fold wisdom man, such a monk is a sixfold super-knowledge man.' Thus these (householders) will think to give to us; thus we, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, will spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of alms-food. It is better, your reverences, to speak praise to householders concerning this or that condition of further-men."

Vin.4.24

Then these monks spoke praise to householders concerning this or that condition of further-men, saying, "Such a monk is possessed of the first musing ... such a monk is a sixfold super-knowledge man." Then these (men) thought: "Surely we have gained, surely there is a profit for us that such monks have come to us for the rains. Surely such monks as these monks, virtuous and of good character, never came to us for the rains before." Accordingly these did not on their own account eat meals—they gave not to parents, they gave not to wife and children, they gave not to slave or servant, they gave not to friend or colleague, they gave not to blood-relations, as they gave to the monks. Accordingly these did not on their own account take savoury solid foods or drinks—they gave not to parents, they gave not to wife and children, they gave not to slave or servant, they gave not to friend or colleague, they gave not to blood-relations, as they gave to the monks. Thus these monks became handsome, of rounded features, their complexions bright, their skins clear.

Now it was the custom for monks who had finished keeping the rains to go and see the lord. Then these monks who had finished keeping the rains, the three months having elapsed, packing away their bedding taking their bowls and robes, went up to Vesālī. In the course of time they came up to Vesālī, the Great Grove, the pavilion of the Gabled Hall, and to the lord, and having approached the lord, they greeted him and sat down at a respectful distance. At that time the monks who had spent the rains in those regions had become lean, wretched, of a bad colour, having become very yellow, their veins standing out all over their bodies; but the monks from

Bu-Pc.8.1.2

BD.2.210

the banks of the Vaggumudā had become handsome, of rounded features, their complexions bright, their skins clear. Now it was the custom for enlightened ones, for lords, to exchange friendly greetings with in-coming monks. So the lord said to the monks from the banks of the Vaggumudā:

Vin.4.25

“I hope, monks, that things went well with you, I hope that you had enough to support life, I hope that, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, you spent a comfortable rainy season and did not go short of alms-food?”

“Things did go well with us, lord, we had enough to support life, lord, and all together we, lord, being on friendly terms and harmonious, spent a comfortable rainy season and did not go short of alms-food.”

Tathāgatas knowing (sometimes) ask; knowing (sometimes) do not ask; they ask, knowing the right time (to ask), and they ask, knowing the right time (when not to ask). Tathāgatas ask about what belongs to the goal, not about what does not belong to the goal; the breaking of the bridge of the Tathāgatas is among what does not belong to the goal. Enlightened ones, lords, question monks concerning two matters, either: “Shall we teach *dhamma*?” or, “Shall we make known a rule of training for disciples?”

Then the lord spoke thus to the monks from the banks of the Vaggumudā:

“In what way did you, monks, all together, being on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of alms-food?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord.

BD.2.211

“Indeed, monks, I wonder if that is a fact?”

“It is a fact,¹ lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, monks, for the sake of your stomachs, speak praise to householders concerning this or that condition of further-men? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should speak of a condition of further-men to one who is not ordained—if it is a fact,² there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.8.2.1

¹ At Vin.3.89 (BD.1.154), the answer is, “It is not a fact,” or it is a falsehood (*abhūta*). ² If it is not a fact, then there is a *Pārājika* offence (Bu-Pj.4).

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not ordained means: setting aside monk and nun, the rest are called not ordained.

Condition of further-men¹ means: musing, freedom, concentration, attainment, knowledge and insight, making the Way to become, realisation of the fruits, destruction of the corruptions, delight in solitude for the mind devoid of the hindrances.

Musing means: the first musing, the second musing, the third musing, the fourth musing.

Freedom means: void freedom, signless freedom, freedom in which there is no hankering.

Concentration means: void concentration, signless concentration, concentration in which there is no hankering.

Attainment means: void attainment, signless attainment, attainment in which there is no hankering.

Knowledge and insight² means: the three knowledges.

Vin.4.26

Making the Way to become means: the four presences of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic potencies, the five faculties, the five powers, the seven parts of enlightenment, the noble eightfold Way.

BD.2.212

Realisation of the fruits means: realisation of the fruit of stream-attainment, realisation of the fruit of once-returning, realisation of the fruit of no-return, realisation of the fruit of perfection.

Destruction of the corruptions means: the destruction of passion, the destruction of hatred, the destruction of confusion.

For the mind devoid of the hindrances means: the mind devoid of the hindrance of passion, the mind devoid of the hindrance of hatred, the mind devoid of the hindrance of confusion.

Delight in solitude means: during the first musing there is delight in solitude, during the second musing ... during the third musing ... during the fourth musing there is delight in solitude.

Bu-Pc.8.2.2

¹ From here to end of this *Pācittiya*, cf. Vin.3.92-100 (BD.1.161-171). ² At Vin.3.93, simply *nāṇa*, knowledge.

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I am attaining the first musing.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I attained the first musing.” ... “I am possessed of the first musing ... I am master of the first musing ... The first musing is realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: “I will attain the second ... third ... fourth musing. I am attaining the second ... third ... fourth musing. I attained the second ... third ... fourth musing. I am possessed of the ... fourth musing. I am master of the ... fourth musing. The ... fourth musing is realised by me.”

BD.2.213

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: “I will attain ... I am attaining ... I attained the void freedom, the signless freedom, the freedom in which there is no hankering, the void concentration, the signless concentration, the concentration in which there is no hankering, I am possessed of ... I am master of the concentration in which there is no hankering, the concentration in which there is no hankering is realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: “I will attain ... I am attaining ... I attained the void attainment, the signless attainment, the attainment in which there is no hankering, I am possessed of ... I am master of the attainment in which there is no hankering, the attainment in which there is no hankering is realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: “I will attain the three knowledges ... I am possessed of the three knowledges ...”

Vin.4.27

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: “I will attain ... I am possessed of the four presences of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic potencies ...”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to

one who is not ordained: "I will attain the five faculties, the five powers ... I am possessed of ... I am master of the five powers, the five powers are realised by me."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the seven parts of enlightenment ... I am possessed of the seven parts of enlightenment ..."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the noble eightfold Way ... I am possessed of the noble eightfold Way ..."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the fruit of stream-attainment, the fruit of once-returning, the fruit of no-return, perfection ... I am possessed of perfection ..."

BD.2.214

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "Passion is given up by me, hatred is given up by me, confusion is given up by me ... renounced ... sacrificed ... destroyed ... forsaken ... thrown aside ... rejected."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "My mind is devoid of the hindrance of passion ... of hatred ... my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained: "In solitude I will attain the first musing ... the second musing ... the third ... the fourth musing ... in solitude I am possessed of the fourth musing ..."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the first musing and the second musing ... the second musing is realised by me."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the first musing and the third musing ... the first musing and the fourth musing are attained by me."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the first musing and the void freedom and the signless freedom and the freedom in which there is no

Bu-Pc.8.2.3

hankering and the void concentration and the signless concentration and the concentration in which there is no hankering ... is realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the void attainment and the signless attainment and the attainment in which there is no hankering ... is realised by me.”

BD.2.215 **Should speak of** means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the three knowledges ... is realised by me.”

Vin.4.28 **Should speak of** means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the four presences of mindfulness and the four right efforts and the four bases of psychic potencies ... realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the five faculties and the five powers ... realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the seven parts of enlightenment, and the noble eightfold Way, and the fruit of stream-attainment, and the fruit of once-returning, and the fruit of no-return, and perfection ... realised by me.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing ... I attained ... and passion is given up by me, and hatred is given up by me, and confusion is given up by me, and ... rejected.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing ... I am attaining ... realised by me ... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of passion ... of the hindrance of hatred ... of the hindrance of confusion.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will enter upon the second musing and the third musing, and the second musing and the fourth musing ... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion.”

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to

one who is not ordained, "I will attain the second musing and the first musing ... attained by me."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "My mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion and I will attain the first musing and the second musing and the third musing and the fourth musing ... realised by me ..."

BD.2.216

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "My mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of hatred ..."

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain ... I am attaining ... I attained the first musing and the second musing and the third musing and the fourth musing and the void freedom and the signless freedom and the freedom in which there is no hankering and the void concentration and the signless concentration and the concentration in which there is no hankering and the void attainment and the signless attainment and the attainment in which there is no hankering and the three knowledges and the four presences of mindfulness and the four right efforts and the four bases of psychic potencies and the five faculties and the five powers and the seven parts of enlightenment and the noble eightfold Way and the fruit of stream-attainment and the fruit of once-returning and the fruit of no-return and perfection and passion is given up by me ... and hatred is given up by me ... and confusion is given up by me, renounced, sacrificed, destroyed, forsaken, thrown aside, rejected, and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of passion and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of hatred and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion."

Vin.4.29

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the first musing," and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, "I will attain the second musing"; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.8.2.4

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, "I will attain the first musing," and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, "I will attain the third musing ... the

BD.2.217

fourth musing ... the void freedom ... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion”; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the second musing,” and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, “... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion” ... for saying, for acknowledging ... “I will attain the first musing ...”; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “My mind is devoid of the hindrance of hatred,” and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, “I will attain the first musing” ... for saying, for acknowledging ... “... My mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion”; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the first musing and the second musing and the third musing and the fourth musing ... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of hatred,” and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, “My mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion”; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Should speak of means: there is an offence of expiation for saying to one who is not ordained, “I will attain the second musing and the third musing ... and my mind is devoid of the hindrance of confusion,” and for acknowledging it, if he is desirous of saying, “I will attain the first musing”; but if he does not acknowledge it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.8.2.5

There is an offence of wrong-doing for saying to one who is not ordained, “The monk who lives in this dwelling-place will attain ... is attaining ... attained the first musing, this monk is possessed of, master of the first musing, the first musing is realised by this monk.”

BD.2.218

There is an offence of wrong-doing for saying to one who is not ordained, “The monk who lives in this dwelling-place will attain ... is attaining ... attained the second musing, the third musing, the fourth musing, the void

freedom ... perfection ... Passion is given up by this monk ... hatred is given up ... confusion is given up by this monk, renounced ... rejected. This monk's mind is devoid of the hindrance of passion ... of hatred ... is devoid of the hindrance of confusion.”

Vin.4.30

There is an offence of wrong-doing for saying to one who is not ordained, “The monk who lives in this dwelling-place will attain ... is attaining ... attained the first musing in solitude ... the second musing ... the third musing ... the fourth musing in solitude ... This monk is possessed of the fourth musing in solitude, is master of ... The fourth musing is realised by this monk in solitude.”

There is an offence of wrong-doing for saying to one who is not ordained, “The monk who uses your dwelling-place, who uses your robes, who uses your alms-food, who uses your lodgings, who uses your medicines for the sick ... by whom your dwelling-place was used, by whom your robes were used, by whom your alms-food was used, by whom your lodgings were used, by whom your medicine for the sick were used ... to whom, thanks to you, he gave a dwelling-place, he gave robes, he gave alms-food, he gave lodgings, he gave medicines for the sick, that monk attained the fourth musing in solitude ... the fourth musing was realised by that monk in solitude.”

Bu-Pc.8.2.6

There is no offence if he speaks of what is a fact¹ to one who is ordained; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Eighth

¹ *bhūta*.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 9

Bu-Pc.9.1.1
BD.2.219

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, came to be making a quarrel with the group of six monks. He, having fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen,¹ begged the Order for probation on account of this offence. The Order granted him probation on account of this offence. At that time a certain guild at Sāvattthī had food for the Order. He, being under probation, sat down in the refectory at the end of a seat. The group of six monks said to these lay-followers:

Vin.4.31

“Your reverences, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, an esteemed dependent of yours, is eating the gift of faith with the very same hand as that which he used to emit semen. He, falling into the offence of intentional emission, begged the Order for probation on account of that offence. The Order granted him probation on account of that offence, so that being under probation, he is sitting at the end of a seat.”

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks speak of a very bad offence² of a monk to one who is not ordained?”

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, spoke of a very bad offence of a monk to one who is not ordained?”

BD.2.220

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

¹ Bu-Ss.1, Vin.3.112 = BD.1.196. Cf. also Bu-Pc.64. ² *duṭṭhullā āpatti*. Old Commentary shows that *duṭṭhulla* means here something more general than “lewd” (Vin.3.128, Vin.3.191-192; BD.1.215, BD.1.336-337). *Vinaya Texts* i.33 has “grave offence,” but I am keeping this as a technical term for *thullaccaya*. Cf. Kv.163.

“How can you, foolish men, speak of a monk’s very bad offence to one who is not ordained? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should speak of a monk’s very bad offence to one who is not ordained, except on the agreement of the monks,¹ there is an offence of expiation.**”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Of a monk’s means: of another monk’s.

Very bad offence means: both the four involving defeat and the thirteen involving a formal meeting of the Order.²

Not ordained means: setting aside monk and nun, the rest are called not ordained.³

Should speak of means: should speak of to a woman or to a man or to one who leads the household life⁴ or to one who has gone forth.

Except on the agreement of the monks means: setting aside the agreement of the monks.

There is agreement of the monks limited to offences,⁵ not limited to families; there is agreement of the monks limited to families, not limited to offences; there is agreement of the monks limited to offences and limited to families; there is agreement of the monks neither limited to offences nor limited to families.

Limited to offences means: if he says: “he should be spoken to concerning just those offences,”⁶ offences come to be taken up.⁷

Limited to families means: if he says: “he should be spoken to among just those families,” families come to be taken up.

Limited to offences and limited to families means: if he says: “he should be spoken to concerning just those offences among just those families,” offences come to be taken up and families come to be taken up.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.15](#), [BD.2.157](#). ² = [Vin.4.128](#). ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.191](#), [BD.2.211](#). ⁴ *gahaṭṭha*.

⁵ *āpattipariyantā*. Cf. [Vin.2.58](#), *āpattipariyantam na jānāti, rattipariyantam na jānāti*; translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.416 “he was not aware of the degree of the offences and was not aware of the duration of the times.” Cf. below, [BD.2.371](#), *bhesajjapariyantā* and *rattipariyantā*.

⁶ *ettakāhi āpattihi*. ⁷ *āpattiyo pariggahitāyo*.

Neither limited to offences nor limited to families means: there come to be offences that are not taken up and there come to be families that are not taken up.

In “limited to offences,” if setting aside those offences which come to be offences that are not taken up, he speaks about other offences, there is an offence of expiation. In “limited to families,” if setting aside those families which come to be families that are not taken up, he speaks among other families, there is an offence of expiation. In “limited to offences and limited to families,” if setting aside those offences which come to be offences that are taken up, and if setting aside those families which come to be families that are taken up, he speaks about other offences among other families, there is an offence of expiation. In “neither limited to offences nor limited to families,” there is no offence.

Vin.4.32

If he thinks that it is a very bad offence when it is a very bad offence (and) tells one who is not ordained, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a very bad offence (and) tells one who is not ordained, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a very bad offence when it is a very bad offence (and) tells one who is not ordained, except on the agreement of the monks, there is an offence of expiation. If he tells of an offence that is not very bad, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he tells one who is not ordained of a transgression¹ which is very bad or which is not very bad, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a very bad offence when it is not a very bad offence, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a very bad offence, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is

BD.2.222

¹ *ajjhācāra*. Examples are given at Vin.3.121 (coming into physical contact with a woman), Vin.3.128 (offending a woman by lewd speech); see BD.1.202, n.3. At *Vinaya Texts* i.184 *ajjhācāra* is taken to be transgression in conduct, consisting in offences against the minor rules of the Pātimokkha. Vin.1.172 is cited in support of this, for here failures in good behaviour, *ācāravipatti*, are said to be grave offences, those of expiation, those of confession, those of wrong-doing and those of wrong speech. This is what Vin-a.754 must be referring to when it says that “beginning with five rules, a transgression is called very bad; the rest are not very bad.”

not a very bad offence when it is not a very bad offence there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

There is no offence if he speaks of an example but not of an offence; if he speaks of an offence but not of an example²; if there is the agreement of the monks; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.9.2.3

The Ninth

¹ This should surely read *anāpatti*. ² According to Vin-a.754 if he names some transgression done by someone, there is no offence; likewise if he merely mentions an offence into which a monk has fallen, beginning with a *Pārājika* and going down to one of wrong speech, there is no offence. But if he names the type of offence and gives an example of it, such as saying, 'This (monk) has fallen into an offence involving a formal meeting of the Order, for having emitted impurely,' there is an offence for bringing forward (*ghaṭetvā*) the offence together with an example of it. The word translated as "example" is *vatthu*, matter, substance.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 10

Bu-Pc.10.1.1
BD.2.223

... at Āḷavī in the chief shrine at Āḷavī. Now at that time the monks of Āḷavī, making repairs, dug the ground and had it dug. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, dig the ground and have it dug? These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are harming life that is one-facultied.”¹

Monks heard these people who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks of Āḷavī dig the ground and have it dug?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, dug the ground and had it dug?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, dig the ground and have it dug? For, foolish men, people having consciousness as living beings are in the ground. It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should dig the ground or have it dug, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.10.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Ground means: there are two (kinds of) ground: natural ground and artificial ground.² **Natural ground** means: pure soil, pure clay, (with) few stones, (with) few pebbles, (with) few potsherds, (with) little gravel,³ (with)

BD.2.224

¹ Cf. Vin.3.156 = BD.1.266f. ² *jātā ca pathavī ajātā ca pathavī.*

little sand, almost all soil, almost all clay. Natural ground is also called not burnt.¹ And whatever heap of soil or heap of clay is (left) damp² for more than four months, this too is called natural ground. **Artificial ground** means: pure stone, pure pebbles, pure potsherds, pure gravel, pure sand, little soil, little clay, almost all stones, almost all pebbles, almost all potsherds, almost all gravel, almost all sand. Artificial ground is also called burnt. And whatever heap of soil or heap of clay is (left) damp for less than four months, this too is called artificial ground.

Should dig means: if he himself digs, there is an offence of expiation.

Should have (it) dug means: if he commands another, there is an offence of expiation. Commanding once, if he then digs many times, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is ground when it is ground (and) digs it or has it dug or breaks it or has it broken or burns it or has it burnt,³ there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is ground (and) digs it ... or has it burnt, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not ground when it is ground (and) digs it ... or has it burnt, there is no offence. If he thinks that it is ground when it is not ground, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not ground, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not ground when it is not ground, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.10.2.2

There is no offence if he speaks, saying: "Find⁴ this, give this, convey this, this is wanted, make this allowable"; if it was unintentional,⁵ if (he was) not thinking, if he did not know, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁶

Bu-Pc.10.2.3

BD.2.225

The Tenth

³ *marumbā*, or perhaps coarse sand. At Vin.2.121 monks are allowed to spread *marumbā*, in a damp or swampy cell. Cf. Vin.2.142, Vin.2.153; also Mi.197. ¹ By the potter. ² *ovaṭṭha*; Vin-a.756 *ovaṭṭa* with variant readings *ovuṭṭa*, *ovuṭṭha*, *ovaṭṭha*. ³ Even by making a fire for cooking a bowl, Vin-a.758. ⁴ *jāna*; Vin-a.758 reads *jānāhi*, and indicates that these four activities refer to holes dug for stakes, to heavy clay, clay for chaff (*thusamattikā*) and soil. ⁵ = Below, BD.2.229, BD.2.262, and Vin.4.125, Vin.4.185, and cf. Vin.3.78 (BD.1.136). ⁶ Cf. below, end of Bu-Pc.11.

THIS IS ITS KEY

Lying, insulting speech, slander, lines, then two on lying down,
Except a learned man (be present), facts, very bad offence, digging.

The First Division

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 11

... at Āḷavī in the chief shrine at Āḷavī. Now at that time the monks of Āḷavī, making repairs, were cutting down trees and having them cut down; and a certain monk of Āḷavī cut down a tree, and the *devatā* living in that tree said to this monk:

Bu-Pc.11.1.1
BD.2.226

“Do not, honoured sir, desiring to make an abode for yourself, cut down my abode.”

This monk, taking no notice, cut it down, and in doing so, struck the arm of that *devatā*'s son. Then it occurred to that *devatā*:

“What now if I, just here, should deprive this monk of life?” Then it occurred to that *devatā*:

“But this would not be suiting in me, that I were, just here, to deprive this monk of life. What now if I were to tell this matter to the lord?”

Then this *devatā* approached the lord, and having approached she told this matter to the lord.

“Very good, *devatā*, it is good that you, *devatā*, did not deprive this monk of life. If today you, *devatā*, had deprived this monk of life, you, *devatā*, would also have produced much demerit. You go, *devatā*; in a certain place there is a solitary tree, go you into it.”

People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, cut down trees and have them cut down? These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are harming life that is one-facultied.”¹ Monks heard these people who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

BD.2.227

¹ As in Bu-Pc.10.

“How can these monks of Ālavī cut down trees and have them cut down?”

...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, cut down trees and had them cut down?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, cut down trees and have them cut down? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“For destruction of vegetable growth¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.11.2.1

Vegetable growth means: there are five kinds of propagation: (what is) propagated from roots, propagated from stems,² propagated from joints, propagated from cuttings,³ and fifthly (what is) propagated from seeds.⁴

Vin.4.35

Propagated from roots⁵ means: turmeric, ginger, orris root, white orris root, garlic,⁶ black hellebore, khus- khus,⁷ nut-grass,⁸ or whatever

BD.2.228

¹ *bhūtagāma*; translation taken from MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *To Become or Not to Become*, p.118. Vin-a.761 says *gāmo ti rāsi*, and that standing green grass and trees is a synonym for *bhūtagāma*. *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.6 has “growing plants” for this word. This rule is referred to at Dh-p-a.3.302; Snp-a.3. At Mi.266 the destruction of *bhūtagāma* is said to be no sin in the eyes of the world, but a sin in the teaching of the Jina (an epithet for both Gotama and the Jain, Mahāvīra). Cf. MN.i.180 = MN.iii.34. ² *khandhabija*. ³ *aggabija*. *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.6: “propagated from buddings,” with note that “it may mean ‘graftings’ if the art of grafting was then known in the Ganges valley.” But the plants mentioned could not be propagated by buddings, which, moreover, does not seem to be a recognised botanical term. These plants are propagated by cuttings. ⁴ For this list, cf. DN.i.5, DN.iii.44, DN.iii.47 (= *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.40, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.42, “things grown from tubers, or shoots, or berries, or joints, or fifthly from seeds”), SN.iii.54 (= KS.iii.46, “root-seed, trunk-seed, seed from shoots, seed from joints, grain-seed, making five in all”); cf. DN-a.77, SN-a.ii.272. ⁵ Cf. DN-a.81 to end of Bu-Pc.11.1.1 below. ⁶ *ativisā*, or dried ginger; an antidote to poison.

others are born from a root, arise from a root; this means propagated from roots.

Propagated from stems means: the fig-tree,¹ the banyan-tree, (a kind of) fig-tree,² (another kind of) fig-tree,³ the Indian cedar wood,⁴ the wood-apple,⁵ or whatever others are born from a stem, arise from a stem; this means propagated from stems.

Propagated from joints means: sugar-cane, bamboo, reeds or whatever others are born from a knot, arise from a knot⁶; this means propagated from joints.

Propagated from cuttings means: basil,⁷ camel-grass,⁸ a kind of an-

BD.2.229

⁷ *usīra*, probably *Andropogon muricatum*. Cf. below, BD.2.240, where one of the four kinds of stools or settees (*koccha*) is made of *usīra*. At Vin.2.130 one of the three kinds of fans allowed is made of *usīra*. In some parts of the East the roots are woven into sweet-smelling mats and baskets and are used in making perfume. ⁸ *bhaddamuttaka*, probably *Cyperus rotundus*. Has underground edible tubers. See Vin.1.201, where these roots (or tubers) are allowed medicinally for flavouring foods which otherwise would be too unpalatable, for ill monks to take. Decoction of these roots used today in Ceylon as medicine for fever and stomach complaints. ¹ This list is the same as that at SN.v.96. ² *pilakkha*, probably *Ficus infectoria*. "Wave-leafed," as at KS.v.80, is not a sufficient differentiation and is not the botanical name of any of the vast family of figs. ³ *udumbara*, probably *Ficus glomerata*; of bunched habit. ⁴ Or Toon tree, *kacchaka*. Cedar suggested at KS.v.80. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives *Cedrela Toona*; *Path of Purity* ii.210 (= *Vism.*183), "black fig." ⁵ *kaṭṭhana*. Variant readings are *kaṭṭhaka*, *kaṭṭhana*, *kaṭṭhana*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that it is the tree *Thespesia populneoides*, as does CHILDERS under *kaṭṭhana*. KS.v.80 and *Path of Purity* ii.210, both reading *kaṭṭhaka*, render by "wood-apple." The Dictionaries, placing "wood-apple" under *kaṭṭha*, *kaṭṭha*, call it *Feronia elephantum*. There is, however, no family connection between *Thespesia populneoides* and *Feronia elephantum*. The former has a hard, dry, inedible fruit; the latter an edible fruit with a hard woody shell filled with a soft pulp, also used for medicinal purposes. Neither is a fig-tree (as tentatively suggested at KS.v.80), but *Feronia* is more like a fig, and would be meant if we were certain that the context was suggesting a tree with an edible fruit. ⁶ *pabba*, joint, knot or section. Word hitherto translated as "joint" is *phalu*. ⁷ *ajjuka*. *Pali-English Dictionary* and *Critical Pali Dictionary* give *Ocimum gratissimum*. Probably the ordinary basil, *Ocimum basilicum*, is meant, as *O. gratissimum* is sometimes used as a synonym for this. ⁸ *phanijjaka*=*bhūtanaka*, Ja.6.536. CHILDERS calls it the plant *samīraṇa*, which, according to MONIER-WILLIAMS, is the plant *maruvaka*. (I cannot discover what is meant by this.) *Pali-English Dictionary* calls *bhūtanaka*, *Andropogon schoenanthus*. Camel-grass yields aromatic oil, mostly used for medicinal purposes.

dropogon,¹ or whatever others are born from a cutting, arise from a cutting; this means propagated from cuttings.

Propagated from seeds means: grain, pulses,² or whatever others are born from a seed, arise from a seed; this means propagated from seeds.

Bu-Pc.11.2.2

If he thinks that it is a seed when it is a seed (and) cuts it or has it cut or breaks it or has it broken or cooks it or has it cooked, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a seed (and) cuts it ... or has it cooked, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a seed when it is a seed (and) cuts it ... or has it cooked, there is no offence. If he thinks that it is a seed when it is not a seed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a seed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a seed when it is not a seed, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.11.2.3

There is no offence if he speaks, saying: “Find this, give this, convey this, this is wanted, make this allowable”; if it was unintentional, if (he was) not thinking, if he did not know; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

The First

¹ *hirivela*, occurring also at Ja.6.537. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests as above. MONIER-WILLIAMS gives *hrivela*, a kind of perfume = *hrivera*, a kind of drug and perfume (= *bāla*, *bālaka*). Under *bāla* he gives “a kind of perfume or fragrant grass, *Andropogon schoenanthus*.” CHILDERS also gives *hiriveram*, a perfume, *Andropogon schoenanthus*. ² Cf. [BD.1.83, n.3](#). ³ Cf. above, end of [Bu-Pc.10](#); also below, [BD.2.262](#), and [Vin.4.125](#). Vin-a.766 says that the clauses “Find this,” etc., refer to medicines made from roots, to roots and leaves, to trees or creepers, to flowers and fruits, and to trees or creepers or fruits respectively. Vin-a.767 refers to an *anujānāmi* at [Vin.2.109](#), in which monks are allowed to eat fruit that has become allowable to recluses in five ways.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 12

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Channa, having indulged in bad habits,¹ being examined for an offence² in the midst of the Order, shelved the question(s) by (asking) others,³ saying, "Who has committed? What has he committed? On what ground has he committed? How has he committed? What do you say? Why do you say (it)?" Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.12.1.1
BD.2.230

"How can the venerable Channa, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, shelve the question(s) by (asking) others, saying: 'Who has committed ... Why do you say (it)?' ... "It is true, lord," he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order ... saying, '... Why do you say (it)?' ... It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." and having rebuked him and given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.4.36

"Well then, monks, let the Order bring a charge of evasion⁴ against the monk, Channa. And thus, monks, should he be charged: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk, Channa, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, shelved the question(s) by (asking) others. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should bring a charge of evasion against

BD.2.231

¹ As at [BD.1.309](#). Cf. Channa at [Vin.2.292](#), DN.ii.154. ² At [Vin.2.88](#), when monks charge a monk with failure in conduct, *ācāravipatti*, there is a legal question arising out of censure.

³ *aññen' aññaṃ paṭicarati*; cf. above, [BD.2.164](#). ⁴ *aññavādakaṃ ropetu*. *Aññavādaka* is the person who prevaricates, who evades the issue by talking about something else, "who prefers to talk about something else, shuffling and evading the thing in question" (*Critical Pali Dictionary*). Verbal evasion only is meant, see Old Commentary.

the monk, Channa. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk, Channa ... by (asking) others. The Order brings a charge of evasion against the monk, Channa. If the bringing of a charge of evasion against the monk, Channa, seems right to the venerable ones, let them be silent; if it does not seem right, they should speak. A charge of evasion is brought by the Order against the monk, Channa, and it is right ... So do I understand.”

Then the lord having rebuked the venerable Channa in many a figure for his difficulty in maintaining himself ... “... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In evasion,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.12.2.1

Now at that time the venerable Channa, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, thinking, “Shelving the question(s) by (asking) others, I will fall into an offence,” (so) having become silent, he vexed² the Order. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Channa, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, having become silent, vex the Order?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Chaiina, being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, having become silent, vexed the Order?”

“It is true, lord,” he said.

BD.2.232

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man ... vex the Order? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked him and given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, let the Order bring a charge of vexing³ against the monk, Channa. And thus, monks ... (as above in Bu-Pc.12.1.1; *instead of evasion read vexing; instead of shelving the question(s) by (asking) others read having become silent, he vexes the Order*) ... should this rule of training be set forth:

¹ aññavādake. ² tuñhibhūto saṅghaṃ viheseti. Vin-a.770 says that vihesaka, vexing, is a name for becoming silent. ³ vihesakaṃ ropetu.

“In evasion, in vexing, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Vin.4.37

Evasion means: being examined in the midst of the Order on an example² or for an offence, not wishing to speak of it, not wishing to bring it forward,³ he shelves the questions by (asking) others, saying: ‘Who has committed? What has he committed? On what ground has he committed? How has he committed? What do you say? Why do you say (it)?’ — this means evasion.

Bu-Pc.12.3.1

Vexing means: being examined in the midst of the Order on an example or for an offence, not wishing to speak of it, not wishing to bring it forward, having become silent, he vexes the Order—this means vexing.

If he is not being charged with evasion (but) is being examined in the midst of the Order on an example or for an offence, (and) not wishing to speak of it, not wishing to bring it forward, he shelves the question(s) by (asking) others, saying: ‘Who has committed? ... Why do you say (it)?’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is not being charged with vexing (but) is being examined ... not wishing to speak of it, not wishing to bring it forward, having become silent, he vexes the Order, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is being charged with evasion (and) is being examined ... he shelves the question(s) by (asking) others, saying: ‘... Why do you say (it)?’, there is an offence of expiation. If he is being charged with vexing (and) is being examined ... having become silent, he vexes the Order, there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.233

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, in evasion, in vexing, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, in evasion, in vexing, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act⁴ when it is a legally valid act, in evasion, in vexing, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally

Bu-Pc.12.3.2

¹ *aññavādake vihesake pācittiyāṃ*. Vin-a.770 says that in the two-fold matter there is a twofold pācittiya. ² *vatthusmiṃ*; cf. *vatthu + āpatti* above, BD.2.222. ³ *na ugghāṭetukāma*.

⁴ *adhammakamma*, explained at Vin.1.317.

valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.¹

Bu-Pc.12.3.3

There is no offence if, not knowing, he asks; if, being ill, he does not speak; if, thinking: 'Quarrel or dispute or strife or contention will come to be for the Order,' he does not speak; if, thinking: 'There will come to be schism in the Order or dissension in the Order,'² he does not speak; if, thinking: 'He will carry out an (official) act'³ according to what is not the rule,⁴ or by an incomplete congregation,⁵ or against one who is not suitable for an (official) act,⁶ he does not speak; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.234

The Second

¹ Cf. [BD.1.302](#), [BD.1.307](#), [BD.1.313](#), [BD.1.327](#); below, [BD.2.237](#). ² Cf. [Vin.4.128](#), [Vin.4.153](#), [Vin.4.217](#). *Samghabheda* and *samgharāji* discussed at [Vin.2.303](#); referred to at [Vb-a.428](#).

³ Six kinds of kamma, official acts, given at [Vin.1.317](#). ⁴ *adhammena*. Cf. [Vin.1.115](#), where it is allowed to protest against an (official) act that is being conducted according to what is not the rule. ⁵ *vaggena*, by a section only of the Order, not all the members being present. Cf. [Vin.1.108](#), [Vin.1.111](#); also below, [BD.2.269](#), and [Vin.4.126](#). ⁶ *na kammārahā*. Cf. [Vin.4.126](#), [Vin.4.152](#), [Vin.4.153](#); [Vin.5.221](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 13

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, assigned lodgings to the Order and distributed meals.¹ Now at that time monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka were newly ordained as well as of little merit; they obtained whatever inferior lodgings belonged to the Order and inferior meals.² These made monks look down upon³ the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, saying:

Bu-Pc.13.1.1
BD.2.235

Vin.4.38

“Dabba, the Mallian, assigns lodgings through favouritism⁴ and distributes meals through favouritism.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka make monks look down upon the venerable Dabba, the Mallian?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, made monks look down upon Dabba, the Mallian?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them saying:

“How can you, foolish men, make monks look down upon Dabba, the Mallian? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In making (someone) look down upon,⁵ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

¹ Cf. Vin.3.158 (=BD.1.272ff.) and Vin.4.154. ² Cf. Vin.3.160=BD.1.275. ³ *ujjhāpentī*. Vin-a.770 says *avajānāpentī avaññāya olokāpentī lāmakato vā cintāpentī ti attho*; cf. above, BD.2.2, n.3, on *ujjhāyanti*. ⁴ *chandāya*=*pakkhapātena*, Vin-a.771. ⁵ *ujjhāpanake*; in full probably meaning “in making a monk look down upon another monk,” see Old Commentary, below.

Bu-Pc.13.2.1
BD.2.236

Now at that time monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhumma-
jaka thought: “Making (someone) look down upon is forbidden by the lord,
(but) this much shall the monks hear,” and in the neighbourhood of monks,
they criticised¹ the venerable Dabba, the Mallian, saying:

“Dabba, the Mallian, assigns lodgings through favouritism and distributes
meals through favouritism.”

Those who were modest monks ... (as in Bu-Pc.13.2.1 instead of “make
monks look down upon” read “criticise”) ... “... And thus, monks, this rule
of training should be set forth:

**“In making (someone) look down upon, in criticising,² there is an
offence of expiation.”**

Bu-Pc.13.3.1

Making (someone) look down upon means: if he makes (someone)
look down upon or if he criticises one who is ordained, desiring to bring
blame, desiring to bring discredit, desiring to bring shame³ to one who
is ordained (and) agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings or as
distributor of meals or as apportioner of conjei or as apportioner of fruit
or as apportioner of solid foods or as disposer of trifles,⁴ there is an offence
of expiation.

Bu-Pc.13.3.2

BD.2.237

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, in
making (someone) look down upon, in criticising, there is an offence of

¹ *khiyanti*. *Khiyati* (Sanskrit *kṣiyate*) is explained in the Dictionaries to mean “to be ex-
hausted, to waste away, to become dejected, to fall away from” (*Pali-English Dictionary*);
“*geht zu Ende*” (GEIGER, *Pali Literature*, p.115); “to wane, to decrease, to be diminished, to
waste away, perish” (MONIER-WILLIAMS). But Vin-a.296, Vin-a.771 gives *pakāśenti*, to show
up, illustrate, explain, make known, give information about (*Pali-English Dictionary*). Cf.
above, BD.2.2, n.4. ² *khiyanake*—i.e., the action of a person. *Pali-English Dictionary* calls this
“a falling-away offence (legal term denoting the falling away from a consent once given),”
as in Bu-Pc.79, Bu-Pc.81 (*khiyadhamma*); also see Vin.2.94, Vin.2.100, AN.iii.269, AN.iv.374.
³ *mañku*, literally staggering, so shock, confusion, shame; see AN.v.v. This trio also occurs
below, BD.2.280. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.155. At Vin.2.176f. the qualifications that a monk appointed
“distributor,” etc., should possess, are given. The items that the last, *appamattakavissajjaka*,
is to dispose of, are enumerated at Vin.2.177. Cf. also AN.iii.275.

expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, in making (someone) look down upon, in criticising, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, in making (someone) look down upon, in criticising, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes (someone) look down upon or if he criticises one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes (someone) look down upon or if he criticises one who is ordained or one who is not ordained, desiring to bring blame, desiring to bring discredit, desiring to bring shame to one who is ordained (but) not agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings ... as disposer of trifles there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes (someone) look down upon or if he criticises one who is ordained or one who is not ordained, desiring to blame, desiring to bring discredit, desiring to bring shame to one who is not ordained, (but) agreed upon or not agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings ... or as disposer of trifles, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.¹

Vin.4.39

There is no offence if he makes (someone) look down upon or if he criticises one acting by nature from desire, from hatred, from stupidity, from fear²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

Bu-Pc.13.3.3

The Third

¹ Cf. [BD.1.302](#), [BD.1.307](#), [BD.1.313](#), [BD.1.327](#); above, [BD.2.233](#), and [Vin.4.155](#). ² These are the four *agatis*. Only a monk not endowed with them can be appointed a distributor of the various items mentioned here and in other parts of Vinaya. See [Vin.2.176f.](#); also cf. the “silver-remover,” above, [BD.2.104](#), the assigner of bowls, above, [BD.2.122](#), and [Vin.3.183](#), [Vin.3.185](#); see [BD.1.323](#), n.7, for further references. ³ Cf. [Vin.4.155](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 14

Bu-Pc.14.1.1
BD.2.238

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time, monks preparing lodgings¹ in winter-time in the open air, drying their bodies in the sun, when the time was announced,² setting forth neither removed³ them nor had them removed, (but) set forth without having asked (for permission).⁴ The lodgings became damp.⁵ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can monks, preparing lodgings in the open air, setting forth, neither remove them nor have them removed, (but) set forth without having asked (for permission, so that) the lodgings are (left) damp?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks preparing lodgings in the open air ... (left) damp? ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, spreading⁶ or having spread in the open air a couch

BD.2.239

¹ A definition of *senāsana* given at Vb.251 is a catalogue of things to sit and lie on, various types of buildings, caves, etc. It does not include *seyyā*, obviously thought of as a *senāsana*, below, **BD.2.244**. Vb-a.365 merely says that if he sleeps and sits there, it is a “lodging.”

² Vin-a.770 says, “for the gruel meal.” ³ *uddharati*. Same word as *ubbhata* (+ *kaṭhina*) of Bu-NP.1-Bu-NP.3 ⁴ *anāpucchā*. Cf. *āpucchā* and *anā*° at **Vin.4.100**, **Vin.4.101**, **Vin.4.165**, **Vin.4.166**. Cf. also **Vin.2.211**, where monks set out without asking permission as to the lodgings. It is there said, and cf. Old Commentary, below, that a monk, or, failing him, a probationer, or, failing him, a monastery-attendant should be asked for permission; this is in order that such a person may take care of the lodgings during the monks' absence.

⁵ *ovaṭṭham hoti*. Vin-a.770 says that what remained became damp owing to the snow and rain. *Ovaṭṭha* occurs above, **BD.2.224**, in connection with heaps of clay and soil. ⁶ *santhar-itvā*. Cf. above, **BD.2.72**, **n.1**, but not used in that sense here.

or a chair or a mattress or a stool¹ belonging to the Order, setting forth, should neither remove it nor have it removed, or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks, staying in the open air, were bringing back² lodgings early in the morning. Now the lord saw these monks bringing back lodgings early in the morning, and seeing them, in this connection, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, for the eight months (of the time) not appointed for keeping the rains³ to put aside lodgings in a hut⁴ or at the foot of a tree, wherever crows or vultures do not leave droppings.”⁵

Bu-Pc.14.1.2

Vin.4.40

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.14.2.1

Belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.⁶

BD.2.240

¹ *koccha*. See Old Commentary, below. *Vinaya Texts* i.34, n., says, “it is apparently therefore of wicker work.” Called at *Vinaya Texts* iii.165 (= [Vin.2.149](#)) “a cane-bottomed chair.” Allowed at [Vin.2.149](#). ² *atiharanti*, or removing from one place to another. ³ *avassika-saṃkete*. At [Vin.1.298](#) *vassika-saṃkete* is one of the five occasions when a monk may lay aside his outer cloak. *Saṃketa* at *BD.1* was rendered “rendezvous”—i.e., an appointment, an appointed time. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.234, note, on this word. At [Vin.1.107](#) it is an offence of wrong-doing to recite the Pātimokkha in cell after cell without making a rendezvous or appointment (*asaṃketena*), since incoming monks did not know where the *uposatha* was to be held. *Vin-a.772* says that the four months of the cold and the four months of the hot seasons are the eight months not thus appointed (*evaṃ apaññatte*) as months of the rains. ⁴ *maṇḍape*. *Vin-a.772* says, “a *maṇḍapa* (shed or hut) of *sākhā* (branches), or a *maṇḍapa* of *padara* (boards, planks of wood; or this might be a *maṇḍapa* in a crevice).” ⁵ N.B.—This is not a *sikkhāpada*, rule, but an *anujānāmi*, “allowance.” ⁶ Cf. above, [BD.2.161](#).

Couch means:¹ there are four (kinds of) couch: a long one,² one with slats,³ one with curved legs,⁴ one with removable legs.⁵

Chair means: there are four (kinds of) chair: a long one, one with slats, one with curved legs, one with removable legs.⁶

Mattress means: there are five (kinds of) mattress: a mattress (made) of wool, a mattress (made) of cotton-cloth, a mattress (made) of bark, a mattress (made) of tina-grass, a mattress (made) of leaves.⁷

Stool means: made of bark or made of khus-khus⁸ or made of *muñja*-grass or made of reeds⁹; it is bound, having tucked them in.¹⁰

Spreading means: himself spreading.

Having spread¹¹ means: making another spread. If he makes one who is not ordained spread (it), it is an impediment¹² for him.¹³ If he makes one who is ordained spread it, there is an impediment for the one who spreads (it).¹⁴

BD.2.241

¹ This definition of *mañca* occurs at [Vin.4.168](#), [Vin.4.169](#); [Vb-a.365](#). These four kinds of couches and four kinds of chairs are allowed at [Vin.2.149](#). ² *masāraka*. [Vin-a.773](#) says, “it is made by boring a hole into the feet of the couch, and putting a knotted end through there.” ³ *bundikābaddha*. [Vin-a.773](#) says, “it is made by holding the bedstead together, having burnt the feet of the couch with knotted ends.” ⁴ *kuḷīrapādaka*, or carved. [Vin-a.773](#), “made with feet like the feet of horses, rams, etc. Whatever has curved feet (*vaṅkapādako*, literally curved as to the feet) is called *kuḷīrapādaka*” (literally a crab-footer). ⁵ *āhaccapādaka*. [Vin-a.774](#) says that “it is made by piercing the leg (*aṅge*). Then having pierced the knotted end, putting a knot through there, and giving a pin (or peg, *añim*) above, the couch that is made should be called an *āhaccapādaka*.” This probably means that the pin can be removed at pleasure, when the couch would collapse. At [Vin.4.46](#) it is defined as *aṅge vijjhivā ṭhito hoti*, standing, having pierced the leg—i.e., having put the pin through. *Āhacca-pādaka* means literally a “take-away footer”—i.e., one whose feet can be taken away. ⁶ = [Vin.4.168](#), [Vin.4.169](#), [Vb-a.365](#). ⁷ Same definition given at [Vb-a.365](#). These five kinds of *bhisi* are allowed at [Vin.2.150](#). Cf. above, [BD.2.47](#), [n.1](#), on *bhisi*. ⁸ *usira*, one of the plants “propagated from roots,” cf. above, [BD.2.228](#). ⁹ *babbaja*, or bulrushes. Shoes made of this and of *muñja*-grass were not to be worn, [Vin.1.190](#). ¹⁰ *anto samveṭhetvā baddham hoti*. [Vin-a.774](#) says that it is bound in the middle and spread out above and below. The middle, being made of the hides of lions and tigers, gives the *senāsana* the appearance of being made of gold. ¹¹ Causative. ¹² *palibodha*, or obstacle, obstruction. Cf. *Vinaya Texts* ii.157, n.2. ¹³ [Vin-a.774](#), for the one who causes it to be spread out. ¹⁴ *santhāraka*, at [Vin.2.113](#), [Vin.2.116](#), [Vin.2.148](#), meaning a (*tiṇa*-grass) mat. Here it must refer to the person spreading out the things.

Setting forth, should neither remove it means: should not himself remove it.

Nor have it removed means: should not make another remove it.

Or should go away without asking (for permission) means: not asking a monk or a novice or a monastery attendant (for permission),¹ if he goes further than the outward stone-throw of a man of average height,² there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it belongs to the Order³ when it belongs to the Order, spreading it or having it spread in the open, setting forth should neither remove it nor have it removed, or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to the Order ... there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to the Order, spreading it or ... in the open air ... without having asked (for permission), there is an offence of expiation. If it is a carpet⁴ or a bed-cover⁵ or a ground-covering⁶ or a straw-mat⁷ or an animal's skin⁸ or a mat for the feet⁹ or a wooden chair,¹⁰ spreading it or having it spread in the open air, setting forth should neither remove it nor have it removed, or should go away without having asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-

Bu-Pc.14.2.2

BD.2.242

¹ Cf. Vin.2.211. ² Cf. BD.1.74=Vin.3.46. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.15, Bu-Pc.16. ⁴ *cimilikā*. At Vin.2.150 monks are allowed to use *cola*, cotton-cloth, as a *cilimikā*. Editor, *Vinaya Texts* iii.167, n.2, says, *cilimika* may be a "rug ... It is probably the same word as, or connected with, *cimilikā*." See same note for Buddhaghosa's definition of this word. Here he says, Vin-a.775, when the earth is prepared with plaster it is made for preserving its texture, spreading it below, they spread out a *kaṭasāraka* (a mat for sitting on or lying on) above. ⁵ *uttaratharaṇa*, see above, BD.2.46, n.3. ⁶ *bhummattharaṇa*, see above, BD.2.46, n.4. ⁷ *taṭṭikā*. Vin-a.776 says, "made of palm-leaves or of bark." Cf. Ja.1.141, Vism.97. ⁸ *cammakhaṇḍa*. At Vin.2.122 this was allowed as a water vessel (*vāraka*). Above it means a skin used as a mat, as at Mi.366 and Vism.99 (translated *Path of Purity*, p.115, "piece of leather"). ⁹ *pādapuñchanī*. At Vin.2.174 monks are allowed to use a bear-skin, a piece of drapery (*cakkali*), and a little piece of cloth as a *pādapuñchanī*. This, according to *Vinaya Texts* iii.218, is a mat to wipe the feet on, not to sit upon. Vin-a.776 says that it is made of rope and rags for wiping the feet on. ¹⁰ *Phalaka-piṭṭha*, a chair (made) of a board, plank or slips of wood. Also called at Vin-a.776 *dārumayapīṭṭha*, a chair made of wood.

doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to an individual (but) to another individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing; if it belongs to the individual himself, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.14.2.3

There is no offence if, having removed it, he goes away; if, having caused it to be removed, he goes away; if, having asked (for permission), he goes away; if, drying himself in the sun, he goes away¹; if it comes to be taken possession of by something²; if there are accidents³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fourth

¹ *otāpento gacchati*. Vin-a.776 says there is no offence if, drying himself in the heat of the sun, he thinks, 'Coming back I will remove it.' ² *kenaci palibuddham hoti*. Vin-a.776 says that if a senior monk, turning (the owner) out (*uṭṭhāpetvā*), takes it, if a *yakkha* or a departed one, coming along, sits on it, or if some *ṛṣi*, coming along, takes it, or if lions and tigers stand on it, the lodging becomes taken possession of. ³ *āpadāsu*—i.e., Vin-a.777 says there is no offence if there are accidents (*antarāya*) to those leading the brahma-life for their life-time. Cf. Bu-Pc.15, Bu-Pc.16

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 15

Bu-Pc.15.1.1
BD.2.243

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of seventeen monks were companions. Staying, they just stayed together, setting forth, they just set forth together. These, spreading¹ a sleeping-place in a certain dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, neither removed it nor had it removed, (but) set forth without having asked (for permission). The lodging became eaten by white ants. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of seventeen monks, spreading a sleeping-place in a dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, neither remove it nor have it removed, (but) set forth without having asked (for permission, so that) the lodging is eaten by white ants?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord ... He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of seventeen monks ... belonging to the Order, setting forth neither removed it ... eaten by white ants?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men ... eaten by white ants? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, spreading a sleeping-place or having it spread in a dwelling belonging to the Order, setting forth, should neither remove it nor have it removed, or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation.”

¹ *santharivā*, see Introduction, **BD.2.xxii**.

Bu-BD.15.244

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.¹

Sleeping-place² means: a mattress,³ a carpet,⁴ a bed-cover, a ground-covering, a straw mat, an animal's skin,⁵ a piece of cloth for sitting on,⁶ a sheet,⁷ a grass-mat,⁸ a leaf mat.

Spreading means: himself spreading.⁹

Having spread means: making another spread.¹⁰

Setting forth, should neither remove it means: should not himself remove it.¹¹

Nor have it removed means: should not make another remove it.¹²

Vin.4.42

Or should go away without asking (for permission) means: not asking a monk or a novice or a monastery-attendant (for permission), if he goes further than the fence of a fenced-in monastery, there is an offence of expiation; if he goes further than the precincts¹³ of a monastery not fenced-in, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.15.2.2

If he thinks that it belongs to the Order¹⁴ when it belongs to the Order, spreading a sleeping-place or having it spread, setting forth should neither remove it nor have it removed, or should go away without asking (for permission) there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to the Order ... without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to the Order, spreading a sleeping-place ... or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation. If, spreading a sleeping-place or having it spread in the precincts of a dwelling-place¹⁵ or in an

BD.2.245

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.161](#), [BD.2.239](#). ² Another definition of *seyyā* given above, [BD.2.196](#). ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.471](#). ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#), for this and the next four words. ⁵ Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#), for this and the next four words. ⁶ *nisidana*. Defined at [Vin.3.232](#), [Vin.4.123](#), [Vin.4.171](#). ⁷ *paccattharaṇa*. Buddhaghosa at [Vin-a.777](#) calls it *pāvāro kojavo*, a cloak (mantle?), a rug or cover with long hair. ⁸ *tiṇa-santhāra*. [Vin-a.777](#) says a mat of any grasses whatsoever; the same for a leaf-mat. ⁹ Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#). ¹⁰ Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#). ¹¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#). ¹² Cf. above, [BD.2.241](#). ¹³ *upacāra*. ¹⁴ Cf. [Bu-Pc.14](#), [Bu-Pc.16](#). ¹⁵ [Vin-a.778](#) says that this means a cell, *pariveṇa*.

assembly-room¹ or in a hut² or at the foot of a tree,³ setting forth should neither remove it ... or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If, spreading a couch or a chair or having it spread in a monastery or in the precincts of a monastery or in an assembly-room⁴ or in a hut⁵ or at the foot of a tree, setting forth should neither remove it ... or should go away without asking (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁶ If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to an individual (but) to another individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing; if it belongs to the individual himself, there is no offence.

There is no offence if, having removed it, he goes away; if, having caused it to be removed, he goes away; if, having asked (for permission), he goes away; if it comes to be taken possession of by something; if going with the expectation,⁷ standing there, he asks (for permission); if he becomes taken possession of by something⁸; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁹

Bu-Pc.15.2.3

BD.2.246

The Fifth

¹ *upaṭṭhānasālā*. Cf. above, **BD.2.194, n.4**. Vin-a.778 calls this *pariveṇabhojanasālā*, a refectory and cells. ² *maṇḍapa*. Cf. above, **BD.2.239, n.4**. Vin-a.778 says *pariveṇa-maṇḍapo*. ³ Vin-a.778 says *pariveṇarukkhamūla*. ⁴ Vin-a. 778 here merely says *bhojanasālā*, refectory. ⁵ Vin-a.778 here says that it is *maṇḍapa*, whether covered or not, for the assembly of many people. ⁶ Apparently not a *pācittiya* as there is not so much danger of the things being eaten by white ants if spread in these places, Vin-a.778. ⁷ *sāpekkho*. ⁸ Vin-a.780, by full rivers, robber chiefs, and is unable to return. ⁹ Cf. **Bu-Pc.14.2.3**.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 16

Bu-Pc.16.1.1
BD.2.247

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks took possession of the best sleeping-places.¹ The monks who were elders turned them away. Then it occurred to the group of six monks:

“What now if we, by some stratagem, should spend the rainy season² in this very place?” Then the group of six monks, encroaching upon³ (the space intended for) monks who were elders, lay down in the sleeping-places, saying:

“He for whom it becomes too crowded may depart.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six monks lie down in sleeping-places, encroaching upon (the space intended for) monks who are elders?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. ...

Vin.4.43

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, lay down in sleeping-places ... for monks who are elders?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, lie down in sleeping-places, encroaching upon (the space intended for) monks, who are elders? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule

BD.2.248

¹ *varaseyyāyo palibuddhanti* = Vin.2.166. For *palibuddha*, cf. above, BD.2.242, BD.2.245f. ² Cf above, BD.2.208. ³ *anupakhajja* = *anpavisitva* according to Old Commentary, and Vin-a.780. Word occurs again in Bu-Pc.43 and at Vin.2.213. Editor, *Vinaya Texts* iii.285, n.3, says that sense intended in these three passages is the same, while it is different at Vin.2.88, there explained by Buddhaghosa as *antopavisati*. At Vin.1.47 the monk who shares the cell of his preceptor is not to sit down so as to encroach upon the elders (*na there bhikkhū anupakhajja nisīditabbam*).

of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should lie down in a sleeping-place in a dwelling belonging to the Order, knowing that he is encroaching upon (the space intended for) a monk arrived first, saying, ‘He for whom it becomes too crowded may depart,’ doing it for just this object, not for another,¹ there is an offence of expiation.**”

Whatever means: ...

Bu-Pc.16.2.1

A dwelling belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.²

He knows³ means: he knows, thinking, ‘He is an old man’⁴; he knows, thinking, ‘He is an ill man’; he knows, thinking, ‘It was given to the Order.’

Encroaching upon means: forcing a way into.⁵

Should lie down in a sleeping-place means: if entering or departing he spreads a sleeping-place or has one spread in the precincts of a couch or a chair, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he sits down on it or lies down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Doing it for just this object, not for another means: there comes to be no other object whatever for which to lie down, encroaching, in a sleeping-place.

Bu-Pc.16.2.2

If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to the Order, (and) encroaching, lies down, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to the Order, (and) encroaching, lies down, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to the Order, (and) encroaching, lies down, there is an offence of expiation. If entering or departing, setting aside the precincts of a couch or chair, he spreads a sleeping - place or causes one to be spread, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he sits down on it or lies down on it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he spreads a sleeping-place or causes one to be spread in the precincts of a dwelling-place or in an assembly-room

BD.2.249

¹ Cf. below, [BD.2.352](#), and [Vin.4.149](#), [Vin.4.150](#). ² Cf. [Vin.3.266](#), and above, [BD.2.244](#). ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.161](#). ⁴ *vuḍḍho*; therefore he should not be made to get up, [Vin-a.780](#). ⁵ *anupavitvā*, or entering into = [Vin.4.95](#). Cf. [Vin-a.780](#).

or in a hut or at the foot of a tree or in the open air,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he sits down on it or lies down on it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to an individual (but) to another individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing; if it belongs to the individual himself, there is no offence.²

Bu-Pc.16.2.3

There is no offence if an ill man enters, if one pressed by cold or by heat enters, if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Sixth

¹ Cf. above, BD.2.241. ² Cf. Bu-Pc.14, Bu-Pc.15.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 17

... at Sāvattthī¹ in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. At that time the group of seventeen monks were repairing a large dwelling-place in the neighbourhood,² thinking: "We will spend the rains here."

Bu-Pc.17.1.1
BD.2.250

The group of six monks saw the group of seventeen monks as they were repairing the dwelling-place, and seeing them, they said:

"Your reverences, this group of seventeen monks are repairing a dwelling-place. Come, we will turn them away."

Some spoke thus: "Wait, your reverences, until they have repaired it; when it is repaired, we will turn them away."

Then the group of six monks said to the group of seventeen monks: "Go away,³ your reverences, the dwelling-place belongs to⁴ us."

"Your reverences, should not this have been explained before, and we would have repaired another?"

"Your reverences, does not the dwelling-place belong to the Order?"

"Yes, your reverences, the dwelling-place belongs to the Order."

"Go away, your reverences, the dwelling-place belongs to us."

"Your reverences, the dwelling-place is big⁵; you stay, and we too will stay."

BD.2.251

"Go away, your reverences, the dwelling-place belongs to us," and angry, displeased, taking them by the throat they threw them out. These being thrown out, wept. Monks said (to them):

"Why do you, your reverences, weep?"

¹ This story also forms the introductory story to [Kd.16.11](#)=[Vin.2.166](#). ² *paccantima*, adjoining, bordering, next to. ³ *uṭṭheta*, or get up. ⁴ *pāpuṇāti*. ⁵ *mahallaka*, said of a *vihāra* at [Vin.3.156](#) (= [BD.1.267](#)). A big building containing several rooms to accommodate a number of people (Ṭikā); implies a permanent building.

“Your reverences, this group of six monks, angry, displeased threw us out of a dwelling-place belonging to the Order.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks, angry, displeased, throw out monks from a dwelling-place belonging to the Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that you, angry and displeased ... to the Order?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, angry ... belonging to the Order? Foolish men, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, angry, displeased, should throw out a monk or cause him to be thrown out from a dwelling-place belonging to the Order, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.17.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Vin.4.45

Monk¹ means: another monk.

Angry, displeased² means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.

A dwelling-place belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.³

Should throw out means: if, taking (him) in the room⁴ he throws him out on to the verandah,⁵ there is an offence of expiation. If, taking him on the verandah, he throws him outside,⁶ there is an offence of expiation. If, with one effort⁷ he makes him pass through many doors, there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.252

Should cause him to be thrown out means: if he commands another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. When once commanded, if he makes him pass through many doors, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.17.2.2

¹ Accusative. ² Cf. BD.1.281=Vin.3.163. ³ Cf. Vin.3.266, Vin.4.41, Vin.4.43. ⁴ *gabbhe*.

⁵ *pamukhaṇi*, house-front. ⁶ I.e., out of the compound. ⁷ *payoga*, or action, thrust.

If he thinks that it belongs to the Order¹ when it belongs to the Order, (and) angry, displeased, throws him out or causes him to be thrown out, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to the Order, (and) angry ... causes him to be thrown out, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to the Order, (and) angry ... to be thrown out, there is an offence of expiation. If he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he throws (a monk) out or causes (him) to be thrown out from the precincts of a dwelling-place or from an assembly-room or from a hut or from the foot of a tree or from the open air, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he throws out or causes one who is not ordained to be thrown out from a dwelling-place or from the precincts of a dwelling-place ... or from the open air, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is doubtful as to whether it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to an individual, (but) to another individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing; if it belongs to the individual himself, there is no offence.

BD.2.253

There is no offence if he throws out or causes one who is not scrupulous to be thrown out, if he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out; if he throws out or causes to be thrown out one who is mad, if he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out; if he throws out or causes to be thrown out one who makes strife, one who makes quarrels, one who makes contention, one who makes brawls, one who makes disputes in the Order,² if he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out; if he throws out or causes to be thrown out a novice or one who shares a cell or one who is

Bu-Pc.17.2.3

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.14–Bu-Pc.16. ² These same words said of the nun Caṇḍakālī at Vin.4.230. See also Vin.1.328; and AN.iii.252, where five dangers to be expected for such a monk are enumerated.

not proceeding fitly,¹ if he throws out or causes his requisites to be thrown out; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ *na sammāvattanta.*

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 18

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time two monks (were) in a lofty cell with an upper part,¹ in a dwelling-place belonging to the Order; one lived below, one above. The monk above sat down suddenly on a couch with removable feet.² The foot of the couch, falling off,³ hit⁴ the lower monk on the head, (and) this monk uttered a cry of distress. Monks, running up, said to this monk:

Bu-Pc.18.1.1
BD.2.254
Vin.4.46

“Why do you, your reverence, utter a cry of distress?”

Then that monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can a monk, in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling-place belonging to the Order, sit down suddenly on a couch with removable feet?”

Then these monks told this matter to the lord...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling-place belonging to the Order, sat down suddenly on a couch with removable feet?” ...

BD.2.255

“... It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, in a lofty cell with an upper part, in a dwelling-

¹ *upari-vehāsa-kuṭī*. Meaning is obscure. For *vehāsa* as “above ground,” see [BD.1.79](#). *Vehāsa-kuṭī* seems to be a lofty cell, as Old Commentary, says it is one which will not knock the head of a man of medium height. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “air-hut, airy room.” Probably means the cell was so high that there was room for an “upper berth” (see [DICKSON](#), *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1876, 128, n.1), not a single-roomed cell. [Vin-a.782](#) says *uparivehāsakuṭī* is a two or three storeyed cell without a roof (*acchannatala*). ² *āhaccapādaka*, see above, [BD.2.240](#), in definition of “couch” and “chair.” *Āhaccapādaka mañca* allowed at [Vin.2.149](#). ³ *nippaṭṭivā* = *nipatitvā*, *nikkhamitvā*, [Vin-a.782](#). ⁴ *avatthāsi*. Cf. [BD.1.138](#), [BD.1.140](#) = [Vin.3.79](#), [Vin.3.81](#).

place belonging to the Order, should sit down¹ or lie down on a couch or chair with removable feet, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.18.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Dwelling-place belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.²

Lofty cell means: it does not touch the head³ of a man of medium height.

Couch with removable feet means: having perforated⁴ the legs, it stands.

Chair with removable feet means: having perforated the legs, it stands.

Should sit down on means: if he sits down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Should lie down on means: if he lies down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.18.2.2

If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to the Order, (and) sits down on or lies down on a couch or a chair with removable feet in a lofty cell with an upper part, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to the Order ... If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to the Order ... with an upper part, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it belongs to the Order when it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it belongs to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it belongs to an individual when it belongs to an individual (but) to another individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing; if it belongs to the individual himself, there is no offence.

BD.2.256

¹ Note that *sahasā*, suddenly, hastily, is omitted in the Rule; it is put in at *Vinaya Texts* i.34. Cf. this for translation of *uparivehāsakuṭi*; also GÖGERLY'S version, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1862, p.443, and DICKSON'S, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1876, p.111. The latter also puts *sahasā* ("hurriedly") into the Rule, and it would seem more logical to do so; for if no couch or chair with removable legs were to be sat or lain on in an upper storey, there was little point in allowing these objects there at all. ² Cf. above, [BD.2.161](#), [BD.2.239](#), [BD.2.244](#), [BD.2.248](#), [BD.2.251](#). ³ *asīsaghaṭṭā*. Vin-a.782, none of the lower beams or rafters touch (or knock) the head of a man of medium (middle or average, *majjhima*) measure. ⁴ cf. above, [BD.2.240](#), and Vin-a.774.

There is no offence if he is in a cell that is not lofty¹; if he is in one that touches the head; if the one below comes to be not in use; if there comes to be an accumulation of boards²; if a pin is provided³; if standing on it he takes down from or hangs up on⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Eighth

¹ *avehāsakuṭṭiya*. Vin-a.782, made among *sāl*-leaves on the ground, for it is not possible to hurt another person there. ² *padara-sañcitam hoti*. Vin-a.783 (the cell) of which the upper-most floor (*tala*) is spread over thickly with sticks and planks. ³ *paṭāṇi dinnā hoti*. This means the pin or peg which must be inserted in a couch or chair whose feet are removable in order that the foot will not fall off when the chair is sat upon; Vin-a.783, and cf. Vin-a.774. ⁴ Vin-a.783, "standing on a couch or chair whose feet are removable, he says, 'take down a robe or anything hung up on a peg (*nāgadanta*)' or hangs up another, there is no offence for him."

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 19

Bu-Pc.19.1.1
BD.2.257

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time a chief minister, the venerable Channa's supporter, was having a dwelling-place built for the venerable Channa.¹ Then the venerable Channa again and again had the finished dwelling-place roofed, again and again had it plastered. The overloaded dwelling-place fell down. Then the venerable Channa, collecting grass and sticks, despoiled the cornfield of a certain brahmin. Then that brahmin looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"How can the revered ones despoil our cornfields?" Monks heard this brahmin who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the venerable Channa again and again have a finished dwelling-place roofed, again and again have it plastered (so that) the overloaded dwelling-place falls down?" Then these monks told this matter to the lord...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Channa, again and again had a finished dwelling-place roofed ... so that the overloaded dwelling-place fell down?"

"It is true, lord," he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, again and again have a finished dwelling-place roofed, again and again have it plastered, (so that) the overloaded dwelling-place falls down? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When a large dwelling-place is being built for a monk, an enclosure²

BD.2.258

¹ Cf. **BD.1.266**, where a householder was building a dwelling-place for him. ² *pariyāya*. Vin-a.784 says *pariyāyam vuccati parikkhepo*. *Parikkhepo* is closing round, surrounding, enclosure. *Pariyāya* can also mean method.

of two or three roofings may be determined upon for placing the door-bolts, for making the window-holes¹ as far as the door-way,² in establishing it where there are no crops.³ If, though established where there are no crops, he should determine upon (something) more than that, there is an offence of expiation."⁴

Large means: it is so called if it is a dwelling-place having a benefactor.⁵

Dwelling-place means: it comes to be smeared inside or smeared outside or smeared inside and outside.

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.⁶

As far as the door-way⁷ means: a reach of the hand from all round the door-posts and lintel.⁸

For placing the door-bolts means: for placing the door-way.

For making the window-holes means: for making windows⁹: whitewash,¹⁰ black colouring, the use of red chalk,¹¹ wreath-work,¹² creeper-

Bu-Pc.19.2.1

BD.2.259

¹ *ālokasandhi*, small holes for light and air. ² *dvārakosa*. *Dvāra* is "the aperture and not that by which the aperture could be closed." This is called *kavāṭa*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.160, n.3. *Kosa* is a cavity or enclosure containing something. ³ *appaharita*, "little or no grass" (*Critical Pali Dictionary*), but Old Commentary points to "crops." ⁴ My translation of this rule differs considerably from that given at *Vinaya Texts* i.35, where editor says, "This rule ... is somewhat obscure, owing to our want of information as to the mode in which such dwellings should be put up." *Vinaya Texts* i.35 has "rectified" for *adhiṭṭhātābbarā*, which I have translated as "determined upon." For the point of this rule is that when the *vihāra* is built and everything is *ṭhito*, fixed, established, a monk must not ask the *dāyaka*, benefactor, donor, to change the positions of doors and windows or make any additions or rectifications. If he does so, he incurs a *pācittiya* offence. ⁵ Cf. *Vin.3.156* (= *BD.1.267*, *BD.1.268*). ⁶ Cf. *Vin.3.226*, *Vin.3.232*. ⁷ *Vin-a.783* says that here *dvārakosa* means a space (*okāsa*) the measure of the door's breadth from all round the door-posts and lintel; it quotes other authorities giving different measures. Apparently doors and windows must not be made nearer than this distance to the doorway. ⁸ *piṭṭhasamgāṭa*. Allowed at *Vin.2.120*, *Vin.1.148*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.105, n.2. ⁹ *vātapāna*. Three kinds allowed at *Vin.2.148*, but not the kinds given above. *Vin-a.784* takes it as *vātapānakavāṭa*, shutters, which perhaps makes more sense here. ¹⁰ All these items are allowed, in other connections, at *Vin.2.121*, also at *Vin.2.117* with two more not occurring above. Cf. *Vin.2.172*. "Whitewash" is *setavaṇṇa*, or plaster; "black colouring" is *kāḷavaṇṇa*, or blacking. ¹¹ *gerukaparikamma*, red colouring. These three colourings are allowed to be used in *vihāras* at *Vin.2.150*. ¹² These four kinds of design are allowed in another connection at *Vin.2.152*.

Vin.4.48 work, sword-fish design,¹ cupboards.²

An enclosure of two or three roofings should be determined upon, in establishing it where there are no crops means: **crops** mean: grain and pulses.³ If it is established where there are crops (and) he determines upon (some alteration), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is roofing with a way, having determined upon two ways, commanding a third way, he may depart.⁴ If he is roofing with an enclosure, having determined upon two enclosures, commanding a third enclosure, he may depart.

If, though established where there are no crops, he should determine upon (something) more than that⁵ means: if he is roofing with tiles, for every tile there is an offence of expiation. If he is roofing with stones, for every stone there is an offence of expiation. If he is roofing with plaster, for every lump there is an offence of expiation. If he is roofing with grass, for every wisp there is an offence of expiation. If he is roofing with leaves, for every leaf there is an offence of expiation.⁶

Bu-Pc.19.2.2

If he thinks that it is more when it is more than two or three enclosures (and) determines upon,⁷ there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is more than two or three enclosures (and) determines upon, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is less when it is more than two or three enclosures (and) determines upon, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is more when it is less than two or three enclosures, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is less than two or three enclosures, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is less when it is less than two or three enclosures, there is no offence.

¹ *makaradantaka*. The meaning is not at all clear, but “a design in painting or carving” (*Pali-English Dictionary*). ² *pañcapaṭṭhika*. For lack of better translation, I follow *Vinaya Texts* iii.97, q.v. n.3. But the meaning is very doubtful. ³ See **BD.1.83, n.4**. ⁴ Vin-a.785, having had it roofed in two ways, *magga*, but because it was badly done he may have it roofed again in a third way—doubtless he may choose three of the five ways mentioned immediately below. ⁵ Vin-a.785 says, “upon a fourth way or enclosure over and above the three ways and enclosures.” ⁶ These five kinds of roofing are allowed at **Vin.2.154**. It is meant here that once the building is finished he must not add one tile or stone and so forth.

⁷ Presumably more roofings or enclosures.

There is no offence if there are two or three enclosures; if there are less than two or three enclosures; if it is in a cave, if it is in a hut, if it is in a *tiṇa*-grass hut; if it is for another; if it is by means of his own property¹; except it be as a house there is no offence in any other circumstances; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.²

The Ninth

¹ I was told in Ceylon that this means that a monk gives something—rice, paddy, fruit—to a family, which then uses it in preparing a meal for him. ² Cf. *Vin.3.155*, and *BD.1.264*, notes.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 20

Bu-Pc.20.1.1
BD.2.261

... at Āḷavī in the chief shrine at Āḷavī. Now at that time the monks of Āḷavī, doing repairs, knowing that the water contained life, sprinkled grass and clay and had them sprinkled. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the monks of Āḷavī, knowing that the water contained life ... and have them sprinkled?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowing that the water contained life ... and had them sprinkled?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowing that the water contained life ... and have them sprinkled? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, knowing that the water contains life, should sprinkle grass or clay or should have them sprinkled, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.20.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

He knows¹ means: either he knows by himself or others tell him.

Should sprinkle means: if he himself sprinkles, there is an offence of expiation.

Should have sprinkled means: if he commands another, there is an offence of expiation. When once commanded, if he sprinkles many times, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Cf. [BD.2.161](#), [BD.2.297](#).

BD-Pc.20.2.2

If he thinks that it contains life when it contains life, (and) sprinkles grass or clay or has them sprinkled, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it contains life ... has them sprinkled, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it does not contain life when it contains life ... has them sprinkled, there is no offence.¹ If he thinks that it contains life when it does not contain life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it does not contain life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it does not contain life when it does not contain life, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.20.2.3

There is no offence if it was unintentional, if he was not thinking, if he did not know²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Tenth

THIS IS ITS KEY

Vegetable-growth, by another,
making (someone) look down upon,
these two on setting forth,
First, throwing out, removable (feet),
and on doors, containing life.

The Second Division: that on Vegetable-growth

¹ Oldenberg says, Vin.4.358, that in his manuscript called "C." this case is left out. ² Cf. above, BD.2.225, BD.2.229, and Vin.4.125.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 21

Bu-Pc.21.1.1
BD.2.263

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time monks who were elders, exhorting nuns, came to receive¹ requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicines for the sick.² Then it occurred to the group of six monks:

“Your reverences, at present monks who are elders, exhorting nuns, come to receive requisites ... for the sick. Come, your reverences, let us too exhort nuns.”

Then the group of six monks, approaching nuns, spoke thus:

Vin.4.50

“Now, approach us, sisters, then we will exhort (you).”

Then those nuns approached the group of six monks, and having approached and greeted the group of six monks, they sat down at a respectful distance. Then the group of six monks, giving the nuns merely inferior talk on *dhamma*, spending the day in worldly talk,³ dismissed them, saying: “Go, sisters.”

Then these nuns approached the lord, and having approached and greeted the lord, they stood at a respectful distance. As they were standing at a respectful distance, the lord spoke thus to these nuns:

“I hope, nuns, that the exhortation was effective?”⁴

“Lord, how could the exhortation be effective? The masters, the group of six monks, giving merely inferior talk ... dismissed us, saying, ‘Go, sisters.’”

Then the lord gladdened, roused, pleased, delighted these nuns with talk on *dhamma*. Then these nuns, gladdened ... delighted by the lord with talk on *dhamma*, greeting the lord, departed, keeping their right sides towards

BD.2.264

¹ *lābhino honti*, literally came to be receivers of. ² =BD.2.279. ³ *tiracchānakathā*. Various species of this, talk of kings, robbers, and so on, given at Vin.4.164; DN.i.7, DN.i.179; MN.i.513; SN.v.419; AN.v.128, etc. ⁴ *iddha*. Cf. Vin.4.313.

him. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the group of six monks, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, giving nuns merely inferior talk ... ‘Go, sisters’?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, giving nuns merely inferior talk on *dhamma* ... dismiss them, saying: ‘Go, sisters’? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, and given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow (you) to agree upon¹ an exhorter of nuns. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon. First, a monk should be requested, and having been requested, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order agree upon the monk so and so as exhorter of nuns. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order agrees Upon the monk so and so as exhorter of nuns. If it pleases the venerable ones, let the monk so and so be agreed upon as exhorter of nuns ... they should speak. And a second time I tell this matter ... And a third time I tell this matter. Let the Order listen to me ... they should speak. The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as exhorter of nuns, and it is right ... Thus do I understand this.’”

Then the lord, having rebuked the group of six monks in many a figure for their weakness ... “... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Vin.4.51

“Whatever monk, not agreed upon, should exhort nuns, there is an offence of expiation.”

BD.2.265

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks who were elders, (and who had been) agreed upon, exhorting nuns, came to receive, as before,² requisites of robes, alms-

Bu-Pc.21.2.1

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.14](#), [BD.2.81](#), [BD.2.157](#) for other “agreements,” *sammuti*. ² *tath’eva*.

food, lodgings, medicines for the sick. Then it occurred to the group of six monks:

“Your reverences, at present, the monks who are elders, (and who have been) agreed upon, exhorting nuns, are receiving, as before, requisites ... for the sick. Come, your reverences, let us, going outside the boundary,¹ agreeing upon one another as exhorter of nuns, exhort the nuns.”

Then the group of six monks, going outside the boundary, agreeing upon one another as exhorter of nuns, approaching the nuns, said:

“Now we, sisters, are agreed upon, so approach us and we will exhort (you).”

Then these nuns ... (etc., as above [Bu-Pc.21.1.1](#)) ... having rebuked them, and given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with eight qualities as exhorter of nuns: one who is virtuous,² who lives restrained by the restraint of the Pātimokkha,³ who is possessed of good behaviour and lawful resort,⁴ who sees danger in the slightest faults,⁵ who undertaking, trains himself in the rules of training,⁶ who has become very learned, who knows the learning by heart,⁷ who is a store of learning.⁸ Those things which, lovely at the beginning, lovely at the middle, lovely at the ending, declare with the spirit, with the letter⁹ the Brahma-life completely fulfilled, wholly purified—such things¹⁰ come to be much learned by him, learnt by heart,¹¹ repeated out loud, carefully pondered over, well penetrated by vision¹²; both the Pātimokkhas come to be properly handed down¹³ to him in detail,

BD.2.266

¹ Of their particular *āvāsa*, doubtless with the idea of setting up as a *saṅgha* on their own and carrying out their own formal acts. ² = [Vin.2.95](#) to “linguistic form” below; and = [AN.ii.22](#) ...to “vision” below. ³ Cf. [DN.i.63](#) = [AN.ii.14](#) = [AN.iv.140](#) = [MN.i.33](#) = [It.118](#) = [Vism.1.15](#) = [Vb.244](#).

⁴ References as in n.4 above. Translation of *ācāragocarasaṃpanna* as at *Path of Purity* 1.20. [Vin-a.788](#) says families possessed of faith are *gocara*, “lawful resort.” ⁵ Cf. [DN.i.63](#) = [AN.ii.14](#) = [AN.iv.140](#) = [MN.i.33](#) = [It.118](#) = [Vism.1.15](#) = [Vb.244](#). ⁶ Cf. [DN.i.63](#) = [AN.ii.14](#) = [AN.iv.140](#) = [MN.i.33](#) = [It.118](#) = [Vism.1.15](#) = [Vb.244](#). ⁷ *suta-dhara*, literally “a bearer of the heard,” all teaching being at that time oral. ⁸ *suta-sannicaya*. ⁹ See *Vinaya Texts* iii.50, n.2. ¹⁰ *dhammā*. ¹¹ *dhatā*. At [Vin.2.95](#), [Vin-a.788](#) *dhatā*. ¹² *diṭṭhiyā* = *paññāya*, [Vin-a.788](#). ¹³ *svāgatāni* = *suṭṭhu āgatāni*, [Vin-a.790](#). See also [AN.iv.140](#), [GS.4.95](#), translated: “properly handed down,” and *Vinaya Texts* iii.51, “completely handed down.” Passage also occurs [Vin.1.65](#), where it is the fifth of the five necessary qualities in a monk who is to ordain a nun. At [Vin.1.68](#) a sixth quality is added. See also [Vin.2.249](#).

well sectioned, well regulated, well investigated rule by rule,¹ as to the linguistic form.² He comes to be of charming speech, of charming delivery³; as a rule he becomes dear to nuns, liked (by them), he becomes competent to exhort nuns, he does not come to be one who, on going forth for the sake of the lord, on being clad in the yellow robes, has previously committed (some offence) against an important rule⁴; he comes to be one of twenty years' standing⁵ or of more than twenty years' standing. Monks, I allow you to agree upon a monk endowed with these eight qualities⁶ as exhorter of nuns.”

BD.2.267

Vin.4.52

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not agreed upon means: not agreed upon by an (official) act at which the motion is put three times and then followed by the decision.⁷

Nuns means: ordained by both Orders.⁸

Should exhort means: if he exhorts concerning the eight important rules, there is an offence of expiation. If he exhorts concerning another rule,⁹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he exhorts one who has been ordained by one (Order only), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

When that monk has been agreed upon, sweeping the cell, providing drinking water and water for washing, making ready a seat, taking a col-

Bu-Pc.21.3.1

¹ *suttaso or suddato*. See *Vinaya Texts* i.xxix, **BD.1.x**, for *sutta* in such contexts meaning “rule,” or “clause,” rather than “discourse.” Translated as “rule” at *Vinaya Texts* iii.317. ² *anubyañ-janaso*. Vin-a.790 explains: *akkharapadapāripūriyā*, as to the completion of line and syllable. ³ Vin-a.790, *madhurassara*, sweet-toned, sweet-voiced. Cf. AN.ii.97, AN.iii.114. ⁴ *garudhamma*, esteemed or principal rule. *Vinaya Texts* iii.322 translates *garudhammā* as “chief rules,” GS.4.183 as “cardinal rules.” Given in detail below and also at **Vin.2.255**; AN.iv.276. See also *Vinaya Texts* i.35, n.2. These “important rules” were recited to Mahāpajāpati when Gotama told her that women might become nuns, and they were to count as her ordination. Vin-a.790 says that in his time as a householder, he (i.e., the monk agreed upon) had not committed unchastity with nuns, female novices or probationers. ⁵ Vin-a.791, since his *up-asampadā* ordination. ⁶ The eight qualities are summarised at Vin-a.791. ⁷ *ñatticatuttha kamma*. Cf. below, **BD.2.275**. ⁸ Cf. above, **BD.2.32**. ⁹ *aññena dhammena*.

league,¹ they should sit down.² The nuns going there, greeting that monk, should sit down at a respectful distance. They should be asked by that monk: ‘Sisters, are you all come?’³ If they say: ‘Master, we are all come,’ he says: ‘Sisters, are the eight important rules⁴ being kept up?’ If they say: ‘Master, they are being kept up,’ he, saying: ‘This, sisters, is the exhortation,’ should deliver it. If they say: ‘Master, they are not being kept up,’⁵ he should expound them⁶:

BD.2.268

A nun who has been ordained (even) for a century⁷ must greet respectfully, rise up from her seat, salute with joined palms, do proper homage to a monk ordained but that day. This rule is to be honoured, respected, revered, venerated, never to be transgressed during her life.

A nun must not spend the rains in a residence where there is no monk.⁸ This rule is to be honoured ... her life.

Every half month a nun should desire⁹ two things from the Order of monks: the asking (as to the date) of the Observance day,¹⁰ and the coming for the exhortation.¹¹ This rule is to be honoured ... her life.

After the rains, a nun must keep the ceremony held at the end of the

¹ *dutiya*. Vin-a.792 says this means that a *dutiya* should be wanted for setting him free from offence in teaching *dhamma*; cf. above, BD.2.206, where in teaching *dhamma* to women a learned man should also be present. ² *nisīditabbari*. Vin-a.792, “they should all sit down at the place of arrival, not at the outskirts of or in the middle of the *vihāra*, not at the door of the *uposatha*-hall or of the refectory.” ³ *samagga* ‘*ttha bhaginiyo*. *Samagga* also means “in unity, harmonious,” but Vin-a.792 explains by *sabbā āgaman’ attha*, ‘are you all come?’ ⁴ *garudhamma*, see above, BD.2.266. ⁵ *Vattanti* = *āgacchanti*, Vin-a.792. ⁶ *osāretabbā*, but Vin-a.792 reads *osāretabbo*. ⁷ See HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.120, where the eight *garudhammā*, their infringements and remodelling are set out in some detail. These eight principal rules occur again at Vin.2.255. ⁸ *abhikkhuke āvāse*. GS.4.183, “where there is no resident monk.” Vin-a.792 says, “if the monks giving exhortation do not live within half a *yojana* of the nunnery (or nuns’ quarters), this means a residence without monks (*ayaṃ abhikkhuko āvāso nāma*).” For then she could not go for the exhortation. This rule is the same as the 56th *Bhikkhunī Pācittiya*, Vin.4.313. ⁹ *paccāsiṃsitabbā*, expect or ask for. Vin-a.794 gives *icchitabbā*, desire. ¹⁰ I.e., whether it is to be held on the fourteenth or fifteenth day of the month, see *Vinaya Texts* iii.323, n.2, and Vin-a.794. ¹¹ *ovādupasaṃkamana*. Nuns should ask for this. Cf. Vin.4.315 and Vin-a.795. The vicissitudes which led to a monk going to the nuns, instead of the nuns to a monk, are set out at Vin-a.794f., quoting Vin.2.263ff. This rule is the same as the 59th *Bhikkhunī Pācittiya*, Vin.4.315. The 58th *Bhikkhunī Pācittiya* is that it is an offence for a nun not to go for exhortation.

rains¹ before both Orders, in respect of three matters: what was seen, what was heard, what was suspected. This rule is to be honoured ... her life.

BD.2.269

A nun, offending against an important rule, must undergo the *mānatta* discipline² for half a month³ before both Orders.⁴ This rule ... her life.

When, as a novice, she has trained in the six rules⁵ for two years, she should seek ordination from both Orders.⁶ This rule ... her life.

A monk is not to be reviled⁷ or abused in any way⁸ by a nun.⁹ This rule ... her life.

From today, admonition¹⁰ of monks by nuns is forbidden, admonition of nuns by monks is not forbidden. This rule is to be honoured, respected, revered, venerated, never to be transgressed during her life.

If, saying, 'Master, we are all come,' he speaks another rule, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, saying, 'Master, we are not all come,'¹¹ he speaks the eight important rules, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, not delivering¹² the exhortation, he speaks another rule, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.53

Bu-Pc.21.3.2

If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act¹³ when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, being in

BD.2.270

¹ *pavāretabbañ*. At this ceremony, the *pavāraṇā*, monks and nuns were mutually invited to avow offences seen, heard, or suspected. GS.4.183 translates "Invitation Festival." See GS.4.183, n.3. Failure of a nun to keep this rule is a *pācittiya* for her, **Vin.4.314** (= **Bi-Pc.57**). Nuns' shortcomings with regard to the *pavāraṇā* are told at **Vin.2.275**, together with the means of carrying it out properly. Cf. **Vin.1.159** ² See **BD.1.195-196**. ³ *pakkhamānatta*. ⁴ Eventually only nuns were allowed to carry out a formal act (*kamma*) against nuns, **Vin.2.260**, though not here specifically the *mānatta*. ⁵ I.e., for novices. Referred to, **Bi-Pc.63-Bi-Pc.67**. ⁶ Cf. **Vin.2.257**, **Vin.2.271**. ⁷ *akkositabbo*. Cf. *akkosa*, "mode of address," at **BD.2.171** above. ⁸ *kenaci pariyāyena*. ⁹ = **Bi-Pc.52**. ¹⁰ *vacanapatha*. Ed. *Vinaya Texts* iii.324 says, "the reference is, no doubt, to the various kinds of official admonitions given in detail in chapter 20 below" = **Vin.2.276**. Vin-a.800 says she should not exhort or instruct a monk; while Commentary on AN.iv.277 says that *vacanapatha* is *ovādanusāsanadhammakathā*, talk on *dhamma* and instruction and exhortation. ¹¹ *vagga*. See *Vinaya Texts* i.36, n.2 (from **BD.2.35**), where it is said that "*vagga* is *vyagra*, the opposite of *samagga*." ¹² *aniyyādetvā* is according to Vin-a.800 *avatvā*. ¹³ The (legal) act is here the formal act (*kamma*) appointing the exhorter, Vin-a.800.

doubt as to whether the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of expiation.

If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is not all come ... If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether the Order of nuns is not all come ... thinking that they are all come ... there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is not all come ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether it is not all come ... (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is all come ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether it is not all come ... (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of expiation.

If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is all come ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether it is not all come ... (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is all come ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether it is not all come ... (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.271

If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is not all come ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether it is not all come ... (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come ... being in doubt ... thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come ... being in doubt ... thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is not all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is all come ... is in doubt ... thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is all come when the Order of nuns is all come ... there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) exhorts, thinking that it is not all come when the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing ... (and) exhorts, being in doubt as to whether the Order of nuns is all come, there is an offence of wrong-doing ... thinking that the Order of nuns is all come when it is all come, there is no offence.

There is no offence (in) giving an exposition,¹ giving an interrogation²; if he expounds being called upon: 'Expound, master'³ if she asks a question⁴; if, having, asked a question, he speaks; if, talking for the good of another, nuns hear; if it is to a female probationer, if it is to a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁵

Bu-Pc.21.3.3

BD.2.272

The First

¹ Cf. Vin.1.75, Vin.2.219. Vin-a.808, "reciting the text of the eight important rules."

² *paripucchā*. Cf. below, BD.2.275, BD.2.278, BD.2.395, and Vin.1.70, Vin.2.219. Vin-a.800, "speaking an explanation on the text of the important rules." ³ Vin-a.800, the important rules.

⁴ Vin-a.801, "if a nun asks a question about the eight important rules or about the *khandhas*, whatever the monk says to that is no offence for him." ⁵ Cf. BD.2.207, BD.2.275.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 22

Bu-Pc.22.1.1
BD.2.273

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time monks who were elders exhorted the nuns in turn.¹ Now at that time it came to be the turn of the venerable Cūḷapanthaka² to exhort the nuns. The nuns said:

“Now today the exhortation will not be effective,³ for now master Cūḷapanthaka will speak the same stanza⁴ again and again.”

Then these nuns approached the venerable Cūḷapanthaka, and having approached and greeted the venerable Cūḷapanthaka, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Cūḷapanthaka spoke thus to these nuns:

“Sisters, are you all come?”⁵

“Master, we are all come.”

“Sisters, are the eight important rules being kept up?”⁶

“They are being kept up, master.”

“Sisters, this is the exhortation,” (and) delivering (it) he spoke this stanza again and again:

“For the sage, high-minded, zealous,

¹ *pariyāyena*. ² At AN.i.23 called chief among monks skilled in creating forms by mind-power and mental “evolution.” His verses are at Thag.557–Thag.566. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* for details of his life. ³ *Iddha*, cf. above, BD.2.263. ⁴ *Udāna*. ⁵ Cf. above, BD.2.267. ⁶ Cf. above, BD.2.267.

trained in paths of wisdom,¹
 For such, tranquil, ever mindful,²
 sorrows come not to be.”³

The nuns spoke thus: “Is it not as we said? The exhortation will not now become effective today, for now master Cūḷapanthaka will speak the same stanza again and again.”

BD.2.274

The venerable Cūḷapanthaka heard this conversation of those nuns. Then the venerable Cūḷapanthaka, rising up above the ground,⁴ paced up and down in the air, in the sky, then he stood, then he sat down, then he lay down in a sleeping-place, then he was obscured, then blazed forth, then he disappeared; he spoke this same stanza and another long utterance of the enlightened one. The nuns spoke thus:

“Indeed it is wonderful, good-sir, indeed it is marvellous, good sir, indeed never before has an exhortation come to be so effective as this one of master Cūḷapanthaka.”

Then the venerable Cūḷapanthaka, exhorting these nuns until the dark of the night, dismissed them, saying: “Go, sisters.” Then these nuns, staying outside the town because the town-gate was closed, entered the town in the morning.⁵ People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“These nuns are not leading the Brahma-life; having remained together with monks in the monastery, now they are entering the town.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.55

“How can the venerable Cūḷapanthaka exhort nuns after sunset?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Cūḷapanthaka, exhorted nuns after sunset?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

¹ *monapatha*. Cf. Snp.580. Snp-a.435 explains as *ñāṇapatha*. Vin-a.801 says *mona* is *ñāṇa*, and *monapathesu sikkhato* means he is trained in three trainings, or in the paths of what is called the knowledge of arahanship, of wisdom (*monassa*), of the thirty-seven things belonging to enlightenment. Such a *muni* is one who has the cankers destroyed. On *mona* being silence, and *muni* a measurer and man of worth, see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS'S translation of Dh.p.268–Dhp.269 in *Sacred Books of the Buddhists* 7.91. Last line of Dh.p.269 quoted at Vin-a.801. Cf. Ud-a.255. ² *Sadā satimato* = SN.i.81. ³ = Ud.43 = Thag.68. ⁴ *vehāsa*, cf. BD.1.79. ⁵ Cf. below, BD.2.401.

BD.2.275 “How can you, Cūḷapanthaka¹ ... after sunset? Cūḷapanthaka, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**If a monk, even though agreed upon, should exhort nuns after sunset, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.22.2.1

Agreed upon means: agreed upon by an (official) act at which the motion is put three times and then followed by the decision.²

After sunset means: after the sun has gone down.

Nuns means: ordained by both Orders.

Should exhort means: if he exhorts concerning the eight important rules or concerning another rule, there is an offence of expiation.³

Bu-Pc.22.2.2

If he thinks that (the sun) has set when it has set (and) exhorts, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it has set (and) exhorts, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it has not set when it has set (and) exhorts, there is an offence of expiation. If he exhorts one who has been ordained by one (Order only), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it has set when it has not set, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it has not set, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it has not set when it has not set, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.22.2.3

There is no offence (in) giving an exposition, giving an interrogation; if he expounds being called upon: ‘Expound, master if she asks a question; if, having asked a question, he speaks; if, talking for the good of another, nuns hear; if it is to a female probationer, if it is to a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.’⁴

The Second

¹ Note Gotama calls him by his name here, and not *moghapurisa*, “foolish man.” ² Cf. above, BD.2.267. ³ Cf. above, *ibid.* ⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.207, BD.2.272.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 23

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery.¹ Now at that time the group of six monks, approaching the nuns' quarters, exhorted the group of six nuns. Nuns spoke thus to the group of six nuns: "Come, ladies, we will go for exhortation."

Bu-Pc.23.1.1
BD.2.276

"Well, ladies, we would go for the sake of exhortation, (but) the group of the six masters exhort us in this very place."²

Vin.4.56

Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of the six monks, approaching nuns' quarters, exhort nuns?"

Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks ... exhort nuns?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... exhorted nuns?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men ... exhort nuns? Foolish men, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk, approaching nuns' quarters, should exhort nuns, there is an offence of expiation."³

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.23.2.1
BD.2.277

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.94**. ² *Idh'eva*, literally "right here," as the Americans say. ³ Cf. **Vin.2.259**, where the laity complain that the monks go to nuns' quarters to recite the Pātimokkha.

Now at that time Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid became ill. Monks who were elders approached Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid, and having approached they spoke thus to Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid:

“Gotami, we hope things are going well with you, we hope you are keeping going.”

“Masters, things are not going well with me, I am not keeping going. Please, masters, give *dhamma*.”

“Sister, it is not allowable, approaching nuns’ quarters, to give *dhamma* to a nun,” they said, and being scrupulous they did not give it. Then the lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid, and having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. As he was sitting down, the lord spoke thus to Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid:

“Gotami, I hope things are going well with you, I hope you are keeping going.”

“Formerly, lord, monks who were elders, coming to me, gave *dhamma*: because of this comfort came to be for me.¹ But now they say it is forbidden by the lord, and being scrupulous they do not give it; because of this comfort does not come to be for me.”

Then the lord having ... delighted Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid with talk on *dhamma*, rising up from his seat, departed. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given *dhamma*-talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, approaching nuns’ quarters, to exhort a nun who is ill. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, approaching nuns’ quarters, should exhort the nuns except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. This is a right time in this case: if a nun comes to be ill; this, in this case, is a right time.”

Bu-Pc.23.3.1

BD.2.278

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Nuns’ quarters means: where nuns stay even for one night.

Approaching means: going there.

¹ Cf. below, [BD.2.342](#), [BD.2.399](#).

Nuns means: ordained by both Orders.

Should exhort means: if he exhorts concerning the eight important rules, there is an offence of expiation.

Except at a right time means: setting aside a right time.

An ill nun means: if she is unable to go for exhortation or for communion.¹

If he thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained, (and) approaching the nuns' quarters, exhorts her—except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he exhorts (her) concerning a different rule, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he exhorts one who is ordained by one (Order only), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.23.3.2

There is no offence if it is at a right time, (in) giving an exposition, giving an interrogation (as **Bu-Pc.22.2.3**) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.23.3.3

The Third

¹ *saṁvāsa*. For definition of this, see Old Commentary's exegesis on *asaṁvāsa* in each *Pārājika* (BD.1).

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 24

Bu-Pc.24.1.1
BD.2.279

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time monks who were elders, exhorting nuns, came to receive requisites of robes, alms-food, lodgings, medicines for the sick.¹ The group of six monks spoke thus:

“The monks who are elders are not doing a service² in exhorting nuns; the monks who are elders are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain.”

Vin.4.58

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks speak thus: ‘The monks who are elders ... for the sake of gain?’” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, spoke thus: ‘The monks who are elders ... for the sake of gain?’”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, speak thus: ‘The monks who are elders ... for the sake of gain’? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing, those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should speak thus: ‘The monks who are elders are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain,’ there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.24.2.1
BD.2.280

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

For the sake of gain means: for the sake of robes, for the sake of alms-food, for the sake of lodgings, for the sake of the requisite of medicines

¹ = BD.2.263. ² *na bahukatā*. Vin-a.804 says *na katabahumānā na dhammabahumānaṃ katvā*, “not revering, not doing reverence to *dhamma*,” apparently not rendering a service.

for the sick, for the sake of honour, for the sake of respect, for the sake of reverence, for the sake of homage, for the sake of veneration.

Should speak thus means: if desiring to bring blame,¹ desiring to bring discredit, desiring to bring shame² to one who is ordained (and) agreed upon by the Order as exhorter of nuns, he speaks thus, saying: 'He is exhorting for the sake of robes ... for the sake of veneration,' there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, (and) speaks thus, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, (and) speaks thus, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, (and) speaks thus, there is an offence of expiation. If, desiring to bring blame, desiring to bring discredit, desiring to bring shame to one who is ordained (but) not agreed upon by the Order as exhorter of nuns, he speaks thus, saying: 'He is exhorting for the sake of robes ... for the sake of veneration,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, desiring to bring blame ... to bring shame to one not ordained,³ agreed upon or not agreed upon by the Order as exhorter of nuns, he speaks thus, saying, 'He is exhorting ... for the sake of veneration,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.24.2.2

There is no offence if he usually speaks exhorting for the sake of robes ... for the sake of veneration; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.24.2.3
BD.2.281

The Fourth

¹ *avaṇṇam kattukāmo*. Cf. above, [BD.2.236](#). ² *maṅkuṇṇ kattukāmo*. See above, [BD.2.178](#) and [n.5](#). ³ Such as a learned probationer, [Vin-a.804](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 25

Bu-Pc.25.1.1
BD.2.282

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a monk was walking for alms in Sāvattḥī along a certain road. And a nun was walking for alms along that road. Then that monk spoke thus to that nun: "Go, sister, in such and such a place alms-food is being given." And she spoke thus: "Go, master, in such and such a place alms-food is being given."

These had become friends through constantly seeing (one another). Now at that time robe-material was being distributed to the Order. Then that nun, going for exhortation, approached that monk, and having approached and greeted that monk, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, that monk spoke thus to that nun:

"Sister, this is my share of the robe-material, you may accept it."

"Yes, master, my robe is worn thin." Then that monk gave that nun the robe-material. Then that monk became one whose robe was worn thin. Monks spoke thus to this monk.

"Your reverence, make up your robe-material now." Then that monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can a monk give robe-material to a nun?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, gave robe-material to a nun?"

"It is true, lord."

"Is she a relation of yours, monk, or not a relation?"

"She is not a relation, lord," he said.

"Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for a nun who is

BD.2.283

not a relation.¹ How can you, foolish man, give robe-material to a nun who is not a relation? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should give robe-material to a nun who is not a relation, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Then scrupulous monks did not give robe-material in exchange to nuns.² The nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the masters not give robe-material to us in exchange?”

Monks heard these nuns who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow you to give in exchange to five (classes of people): to a monk, a nun, a female probationer, a male novice, a female novice. I allow you, monks, to give in exchange to these five (classes of people). And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should give robe-material to a nun who is not a relation, except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation.**”³

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother's side or the father's side back through seven generations.⁴

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Robe-material means: any one robe-material of the six (kinds of) robe-materials, (including) the least one fit for assignment.⁵

Except in exchange means: setting aside (the fact that) he gives in exchange, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.39](#), [BD.2.44](#). ² Cf. above, [BD.2.39](#), where scrupulous monks did not accept robes in exchange. ³ Cf. Bu-NP.5, where it is an offence for a monk to receive a robe from a nun who is not related, except in exchange. ⁴ See above, [BD.2.31](#). ⁵ See above, [BD.2.7](#).

Bu-Pc.25.2.1

Vin.4.60

Bu-Pc.25.3.1

BD.2.284

Bu-Pc.25.3.2

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation, (and) gives robe-material (to her), except in exchange, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether she is a relation ... If he thinks that she is a relation when she is not a relation ... there is an offence of expiation. If he gives robe-material to one ordained by one (Order only), except in exchange, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is a relation when she is a relation, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.25.3.3

There is no offence if she is a relation; if there is an exchange; if there is a large thing for a small thing, or a small thing for a large thing; if a nun takes it on trust; if she takes it for the time being; if he gives another requisite, except robe-material; if she is a female probationer, a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

The Fifth

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.41](#), and below, [BD.2.287](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 26

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Udāyin¹ became skilled² in making robes. A certain nun³ approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached she spoke thus to the venerable Udāyin:

Bu-Pc.26.1.1
BD.2.285
Vin.4.61

“Honoured sir, it were good if the master sewed a robe for me.”

Then the venerable Udāyin, having sewed a robe for this nun, having made it well dyed, well worked, having raised⁴ up a bold design⁵ in the middle, having folded it up,⁶ laid it aside. Then that nun approached the venerable Udāyin, and having approached she spoke thus to the venerable Udāyin:

“Where, honoured sir, is that robe?”

“Come, sister, having taken this robe as it was folded up, having laid it aside, when the Order of nuns comes for exhortation, then, having put on this robe, come at the back of the Order of nuns.”

BD.2.286

Then that nun, having taken this robe as it was folded up, when the Order of nuns came for exhortation, then, having put on this robe, she

¹ Vin-a.804 calls him Lāḷudāyi. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ² *paṭṭha*. Above, [BD.2.109](#), same thing said of Upananda. Cf. also above, [BD.2.42](#). ³ Vin-a.804 says she was his former wife. ⁴ *vuṭṭhāpetvā*, variant reading *samuṭṭhāpetvā*. ⁵ *paṭibhānacitta*. Vin-a.804 says *paṭibhānacittan ti attano paṭibhaṇena, katacittam, so kira cīvaram rajitvā tassa majjhe nānāvaṇṇehi vipakatamethunam itthipurisarūpaṃ akāsi*, which seems to mean a design (or painting, *citta*) made by his own wit (or ingenuity, intelligence). They say that he, dyeing the robe-material, made in the middle, with various colours, the form of a woman and a man in interrupted intercourse (so *Pali-English Dictionary* for *vipakatamethuna*). Cf. [Vin.2.151](#), where the group of six monks had “imaginative drawings (*paṭibhānacitta*) painted on their *vihāras*, figures of men and figures of women” (*Vinaya Texts* iii.172, q.v., n.3). *Paṭibhānacitta* occurs again as being in a *cittāgāra*, picture-gallery, at [Vin.4.298](#). ⁶ *saṃharitvā*. Cf. [Vin.1.46](#); [Vin.2.117](#), [Vin.2.150](#).

came at the back of the Order of nuns. People ... spread it about, saying:

“How little these nuns fear blame, they are sly, they have no shame,¹ inasmuch as they raise up a bold design on a robe.”

Nuns spoke thus: “Whose work is this?”

“Master Udāyin’s,” she said.

“A thing like this should not adorn these who have little fear of blame, who are sly, who have no shame. Is it not master Udāyin’s?” they said.

Then the nuns told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Udāyin sew a robe for a nun?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, sewed a robe for a nun?”

“It is true, lord.”

“Is she a relation of yours, Udāyin, or not a relation?”

“She is not a relation, lord,” he said.

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is pleasing or what is displeasing for a woman who is not a relation. How can you, foolish man, sew a robe for a nun who is not a relation? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should sew or should cause a robe to be sewn for a nun who is not a relation, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.26.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

BD.2.287

Not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother’s side or on the father’s side back through seven generations.²

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.³

Vin.4.62

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes.⁴

Should sew means: if he himself sews, in each insertion of the awl⁵ there is an offence of expiation.

¹ = Vin.3.128 = BD.1.214. ² Cf. above, BD.2.31, BD.2.47. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.32, BD.2.40. ⁴ Cf. below, BD.2.407. Vin-a.804 and Vin-a.863 say this means that which he is able to put on, to dress in, using the verbs *nivāsetuṃ* and *pārupituṃ*, which refer to the inner robe and to the upper robe and outer cloak; see above, BD.2.32, n.2, n.3. Vin-a.863 expressly says that the robe which is the least one fit for assignment is not meant (at Vin.4.120); presumably it is not meant here either. ⁵ *ārāpathe*.

Should cause to be sewn means: if he commands another, there is an offence of expiation. When once commanded, if he sews much, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation, (and) sews or causes a robe to be sewn, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether she is not a relation ... If he thinks that she is a relation when she is not a relation ... there is an offence of expiation. If he sews or causes a robe to be sewn for one ordained by one (Order only), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is a relation there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is a relation when she is a relation, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.26.2.2

There is no offence if she is a relation; if he sews or causes another requisite to be sewn, except a robe; if she is a female probationer, a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bu-Pc.26.2.3

The Sixth

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.284](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 27

Bu-Pc.27.1.1
BD.2.288

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having arranged together with nuns, were going along the same high-road.¹ People ... spread it about, saying:

“Just as we tour with our wives, so do these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, tour together with nuns.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks, having arranged together with nuns, go along the same high-road?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... the same high-road?”

“It is true, lord.” The enlightened one, the lord rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men ... same high-road? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of trailing should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a nun, should go along the same high-road, even among villages,² there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.27.2.1
Vin.4.63
BD.2.289

Now³ at that time several⁴ monks and nuns came to be going along the high-road from Sāketa to Sāvattthī. Then these nuns spoke thus to these monks:

“We will go along with the masters.”

¹ Cf. Vin.4.131, Vin.4.133. ² *gāmantaram*. ³ Cf. below, BD.2.292. ⁴ *sambahulā*, usually in Vinaya “two or three,” a *gaṇa*.

“Sisters, it is not allowable, having arranged together with a nun, to go along the same high-road. Either you go first, or we will go (first).”

“Honoured sirs, the masters are the highest men,¹ so let the masters go first.”

Then as those nuns were going last thieves robbed them on the way and assaulted them. Then these nuns, having arrived at Sāvattḥī, told this matter to the nuns. The nuns ... to the monks. The monks ... to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to go along the same high-road, having arranged together with a nun, if it is on a road agreed upon as dangerous, frightening,² (where) one must go with a weapon.³ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a nun, should go along the same high-road, even among villages, except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case this is the right time: if a road becomes agreed upon as dangerous, frightening, (where) one must go with a weapon. This is the right time in this case.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.27.2.3

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Together with means: together.

BD.2.290

Having arranged⁴ means: if one arranges, saying, ‘We are going, sister, we are going, master, we are going, master, we are going, sister, we are going either today or tomorrow⁵ or the next day,⁶ there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ *aggapurisa*, or foremost, chief among men. ² Cf. above, **BD.2.158**, for these two words; and cf. *MN.i.134*. ³ *sathagamaniya*. I follow rendering of *Vinaya Texts* i.37: “when the road is so insecure and dangerous that travellers on it have to carry arms,” and not the “caravan-road” of *Pali-English Dictionary*. For Old Commentary’s definition would, in conjunction with this phrase, make nonsense if “caravan-road” were meant. *Sattha* may be, more specifically, “knife,” cf. **Bu-Pj.3** ⁴ Cf. below, **BD.2.293**, and **Vin.4.131**. ⁵ *hiyyo*, usually “yesterday.” Cf. *Hindustani kāl*, meaning both “yesterday” and “tomorrow.” ⁶ *pare*, or it can mean “in the future.”

Even among villages means: in a village close enough for a cock (to walk),¹ among every (such) village,² there is an offence of expiation. For every half *yojana*³ in what is not a village, in a jungle,⁴ there is an offence of expiation.⁵

Except at the right time means: setting aside the right time.⁶

A road where one must go with a weapon means: it comes to be impossible to go without a weapon.

Dangerous⁷ means: if, on this road, a place where thieves are halting is seen, a place where they are eating is seen, a place where they are resting is seen, a place where they are sitting down is seen, a place where they are lying down is seen.

Frightening⁸ means: if on this road people injured by thieves are seen, (people) plundered are seen, (people) beaten down are seen.

Vin.4.64

Having gone to a frightening (place), having seen that it is not frightening, they should be dismissed, with the words, 'Go, sisters.'

Bu-Pc.27.3.2

BD.2.291

If he thinks that it was arranged when it was arranged, (and) goes along the same high-road even among villages, except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it was arranged ... If he thinks that it was not arranged when it was arranged ... there is an offence of expiation. If a monk arranges (and) a nun does not arrange, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it was arranged when it was not arranged, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it was not arranged, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it was not arranged when it was not arranged, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.27.3.3

¹ *kukkuṭasampāte gāme*. Vin-a.806 says, "setting out from a village a cock goes on foot to another village." Cf. *kukkuṭasampātika* at AN.i.159, and GS.1.142, and n.2; DN.iii.75, and *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.72 and n.2. The whole phrase seems to mean it is an offence to walk to a village that is so close that a cock could walk to it. ² *gāmantare gāmantare*. ³ See RHYS DAVIDS, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.16. ⁴ See definition of "jungle" at BD.1.74, BD.1.85. ⁵ Cf. below, BD.2.294, and Vin.4.131. ⁶ To here from "together with" above, cf. below, BD.2.293, and Vin.4.131. ⁷ Cf. above, BD.2.158, and MN-a.2.109. ⁸ Cf. above, BD.2.158, and MN-a.2.109.

There is no offence if it is at the right time; if he goes not having arranged; if the nun arranges (and) the monk does not arrange; if they go without (making) a rendezvous¹; if there are dangers²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

The Seventh

¹ *visaṃketena*. Vin-a.807, "If they say: we will go before the meal, and they go after the meal; if they say: we will come today, and they go on the morrow, thus as it is not at the time of the rendezvous (*kālavisaṃkete*) there is no offence." Cf. *asaṃketena* above, **BD.2.239, n.3**. ² Vin-a.807, "when there is dissension in the kingdom and the country people mount their carts and drive away"; a stock phrase, cf. AN.i.178, AN.iii.66, AN.iii.104. ³ Cf. below, **BD.2.294**, and **Vin.4.132, Vin.4.133**.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 28

Bu-Pc.28.1.1
BD.2.292

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having arranged together with (some) nuns, embarked in one boat. People ... spread it about, saying:

“Just as we amuse ourselves in a boat with our wives, so do these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having arranged together with nuns, amuse themselves in a boat.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks, having arranged together with nuns, embark in one boat?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having arranged together with nuns, embarked in one boat?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men ... embark in one boat? It is not, foolish men ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a nun, should embark in one boat, going either upstream or downstream, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.65

Bu-Pc.28.2.1

Now¹ at that time several monks and nuns were going along the high-road from Sāketa to Sāvattthī. On the way there was a river to be crossed. Then these nuns spoke thus to these monks:

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.288**.

“We will cross over together with the masters.”

BD.2.293

“Sisters, it is not allowable, having arranged together with a nun, to embark in one boat. Either you cross over first, or we will cross over (first).”

“Honoured sirs, the masters are the highest men, so let the masters cross over first.”

Then as those nuns were crossing over last thieves robbed them and assaulted them. Then these nuns, having arrived at Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. The nuns ... to the monks. The monks ... to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to embark in one boat, having arranged together with a nun, if it is for crossing over to the other bank. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a nun, should embark in one boat, going either upstream or downstream, except for crossing over to the other bank, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.28.3.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Together with means: together.

Having arranged¹ means: if one arranges, saying, ‘We are embarking, sister, we are embarking, master, we are embarking, master, we are embarking, sister, we are embarking either today or tomorrow or the next day,’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If the monk embarks when the nun has embarked, there is an offence of expiation. If the nun embarks when the monk has embarked, there is an offence of expiation. Or if both embark there is an offence of expiation.

Going upstream² means: upstream.³

BD.2.294

Going downstream⁴ means: downstream.⁵

Except for crossing over to the other bank means: setting aside for crossing over to the other bank.

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.290**. ² *uddhaṅgāmini*. Vin-a.808, “going against the stream of the river.”

³ *ujjavanikāya*. Instrumental feminine, used as adjective. Cf. **Vin.2.290**. ⁴ *adhogāmini*.

⁵ *ojavanikāya*.

In a village close enough for a cock (to walk), among every (such) village, there is an offence of expiation. For every half *yojana* in what is not a village, in a jungle, there is an offence of expiation.¹

Bu-Pc.28.3.2

If he thinks that it was arranged when it was arranged (and) embarks in the same boat, going either upstream or downstream, except for crossing over to the other bank, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it was arranged ... (see [Bu-Pc.27.3.2](#)) ... no offence.

Vin.4.66

Bu-Pc.28.3.3

There is no offence if it is for crossing over to the other bank²; if they embark not having arranged; if the nun arranges (and) the monk does not arrange; if they embark without (making) a rendezvous; if there are dangers; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

The Eighth

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.290](#), and [Vin.4.131](#). ² Vin-a.809 says, 'here it is not only the river, for there is no offence for one who goes from the port of a great ford to Tāmalitti or Suvaṇṇabhūmi.' Tāmalitti was a sea-port (the modern Tamluk), formerly on the estuary of the Ganges, and the port from where Asoka sent the branch of the Bodhi-tree to Ceylon.

Suvaṇṇabhūmi is the modern Cambodia (*Pali-English Dictionary*); or more probably Lower Burma (Pegu and Moulmein districts), according to B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.70, the Pagan and Moulmein districts, according to *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*; mentioned at Mnd.155, Sāsanavaṃsa 10, where it is said that it stands near the great sea. ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.291](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 29

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā¹ came to frequent a certain family as a regular diner. And monks who were elders came to be invited by that householder. Then the nun Thullanandā, dressing in the morning, taking her bowl and robe, approached that family, and having approached, she said to that householder:

“Householder, why is this abundant solid food and soft food prepared?”

“Lady, elders are invited by me.”

“But who are the elders for you, householder?”

“Master Sāriputta,² master Moggallāna the Great,³ master Kaccāna the Great,⁴ master Koṭṭhita the Great,⁵ master Kappina the Great,⁶ master Cunda the Great,⁷ master Anuruddha,⁸ master Revata,⁹ master Upāli,¹⁰ master Ānanda,¹¹ master Rāhula.^{12”}

Bu-Pc.29.1.1
BD.2.295

BD.2.296

¹ Cf. **BD.1.110**; **Vin.4.211**, **Vin.4.332ff.**; SN.ii.219, SN.ii.222. ² Chief of the disciples of great wisdom, AN.i.23. See Thag.340. For reference to all these, see *Psalms of the Brethren*; GS.1.16–GS.1.20; and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ³ Chief of the disciples of psychic potencies, AN.i.23. See Thag.382. ⁴ Chief of the disciples who are expounders in full of brief sayings, AN.i.23. See Thag.238. ⁵ Chief of the disciples who are masters of logical analysis, AN.i.24. See Thag.6. ⁶ Chief of the disciples who are exhorters of monks, AN.i.25. See Thag.254. ⁷ Not specially distinguished in AN.i. See Thag.118. ⁸ Chief of the disciples who are of deva-sight, AN.i.23. See Thag.325. ⁹ Revata Khadiravaniya, “the acacia wood-lander”; at AN.i.24 is called “chief of the jungle-dwellers,” while Kaṅkhā-revata is there called chief of musers. Vin-a. does not say which one is meant. See Thag.45, Thag.279, Thag.7. ¹⁰ Chief of those versed in Vinaya, AN.i.25. See Thag.168. Also **BD.1**, Index. ¹¹ Chief of those of wide learning, of those who are mindful, of those of good behaviour, of those who are resolute, of personal attendants, AN.i.24f. See Thag.349. ¹² Chief of those desirous of training, AN.i.24. See Thag.183, Gotama's only son.

“But why did you, householder, invite fellows¹ posing as² great heroes³?”

“But who are the great heroes for you, sister?”

“Master Devadatta, master Kokālika, master Kaṭamorakatissaka, master the son of the lady Khaṇḍā, master Samuddadatta.”⁴

Now this chance talk⁵ of the nun Thullanandā was interrupted⁶ when these monks who were elders entered. She said:

“Householder, is it true that the great heroes are invited by you?”⁷

“You, lady, called (them) now ‘fellows,’ now ‘great heroes,’” he said, and he turned her out of the house and put an end to regular dining. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can Devadatta eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun?”⁸

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Devadatta, ate alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.67

BD.2.297

Bu-Pc.29.2.1

Now at that time a certain monk who had gone forth from Kajagaha arrived at a family of (his) relations. People, saying: “At last the revered sir⁹

¹ *cetaka*. Under *ceṭaka*, *Pali-English Dictionary*, referring to this passage, gives “servant, slave, (bad) fellow,” while for *cetaka* it gives “decoy-bird.” Commentary of no help. ² *tiṭṭhamāna*.

³ *Mahānāga*, *nāga* also meaning snake or elephant. ⁴ The schismatics of **Bu-Ss.10**, **Bu-Ss.11**, see **BD.1**. ⁵ *antarākathā*. Cf. *Ud.11*. ⁶ *vippakatā*, interrupted, broken off, left unfinished, but *Vin-a.808* reads *vippakathā* ‘*ti kayiramānā hoti* (*variant reading honti*).

⁷ *Vin-a.808*, “looking round as the elders came in, she spoke thus, knowing that they had heard her.” ⁸ *bhikkhunīparipācīta*; *Vin-a.809*, “procuring it, making it be taken by explaining its qualities.” ⁹ *bhaddanto*.

is come," duly made ready a meal. A nun who frequented that family spoke thus to these people:

"Sirs, give a meal to the master."

Then that monk, thinking: "It is forbidden by the lord to eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun," being scrupulous, did not accept it; he was not able to walk for alms, he became famished.¹ Then that monk, having gone to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, to eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun, if there is a prior arrangement with the householder.² And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should eat alms-food knowing that it was procured through (the intervention of) a nun, unless there is a prior arrangement with the householder, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.29.3.1

He knows means: either he knows by himself, or others tell him, or she herself tells him.³

BD.2.298

A nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Procures means: previously not desirous of giving, not desirous of treating him, if she says: "The master is a repeater, the master is very learned, the master is versed in the Suttantas, the master is an expert in Vinaya, the master is a speaker of *dhamma*, give to the master, treat the master": this means procures.

Alms-food means: any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals.⁴

Unless there is a prior arrangement with the householder means: setting aside the arrangement with the householder.

¹ *chinnabhatta*. ² *pubbe gihisamārambhe*, a prior undertaking on the part of the householder. Vin-a.809 says *samārambha* is a synonym for *paṭiyādita*, given, arranged, prepared.

³ Cf. above, [BD.2.161](#), [BD.2.261](#); below, [BD.2.333](#). ⁴ Cf. below, [BD.2.305](#). These five kinds of meals are enumerated below, [BD.2.330](#).

An arrangement with the householder means: they are relations or they are invited¹ or they are ordinarily prepared (for the monk).²

If he says: "I will eat," and accepts (a meal), unless there is a prior arrangement with the householder, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For each mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.68

Bu-Pc.29.3.2

If he thinks that it is procured when it is procured (and) eats it, unless there is a prior arrangement with the householder, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt³ as to whether it is procured (and) eats ... with the householder, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not procured⁴ when it is procured (and) eats ... with the householder, there is no offence. If he eats what is procured through (the intervention of) one ordained by one (Order only), unless there is a prior arrangement with the householder, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is procured when it is not procured, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not procured, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not procured when it is not procured, there is no offence.

BD.2.299

Bu-Pc.29.3.3

There is no offence if there is a prior arrangement with the householder; if a female probationer procures it, if a female novice procures it; setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, there is no offence in (eating) any others⁵; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Ninth

¹ *pavārita*. ² *paṇḍita*. Vin-a.809, they (i.e., meals) are usually prepared (*paṇḍita*) for that very monk, with the words, 'we will give to the elder.' ³ Oldenberg at Vin.4.359 says that in these two cases the manuscript called "C." has *āpatti pācittiyassa*, an offence of expiation. ⁴ Oldenberg at Vin.4.359 says that in these two cases the MS. called C. has *āpatti pācittiyassa*, an offence of expiation. ⁵ I.e., in eating rice-gruel, cakes, and fruits prepared for a nun, Vin-a.809. Cf. below, BD.2.305, BD.2.314, BD.2.320.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 30

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the former wife of the venerable Udāyin¹ had gone forth among the nuns. She frequently came to the venerable Udāyin, and the venerable Udāyin frequently went to this nun. Now at one time the venerable Udāyin was sitting down in a private place together with this nun, the one with the other.² Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.30.1.1
BD.2.300

“How can the venerable Udāyin sit down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, sat down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, sit down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should sit down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other, there is an offence of expiation.”³

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.30.2.1

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Together with means: together.

BD.2.301

¹ Mentioned in [Bu-Ss.2-Bu-Ss.5](#), to which Vin-a.809 refers, always in connection with women. In both *Aniyatas*, he is discovered sitting in private with a lay woman. Opening phrases of this *pācittiya* = [Bu-NP.4](#). ² *eko ekāya*. ³ Cf. [Bu-Pc.44](#), [Bu-Pc.45](#).

Vin.4.69 **The one with the other** means: there is a monk and also a nun.

A private place means: private from the eye, private from the ear. Private from the eye means: if covering the eye, or raising the eyebrow, or raising the head, he is unable to see. Private from the ear means: it is impossible to hear ordinary talk¹ (from him and the woman).

Should sit down means: if a nun is sitting and a monk comes to be sitting or lying down close (to her), there is an offence of expiation; if a monk is sitting and a nun comes to be sitting or lying down close (to him), there is an offence of expiation. Or if both are sitting or if both are lying down, there is an offence of expiation.²

Bu-Pc.30.2.2

If he thinks that it is a private place when it is a private place (and) sits down, the one with the other, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a private place ... If he thinks that it is not a private place when it is a private place ... is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a private place when it is not a private place, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a private place, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a private place when it is not a private place, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.30.2.3

There is no offence if some learned friend comes to be (present); if he stands, does not sit; if he is not desirous of a private place; if he sits down thinking about something else³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁴

The Tenth

BD.2.302 **THIS IS ITS KEY**

Not agreed upon, the setting sun,
quarters, gain, because of a gift, he sews,
A high-road, a boat, should eat, the
one with the other: these ten.

The Third Division: that on Exhortation

¹ Cf. BD.1.332, and below, BD.2.358, BD.2.361. ² Cf. below, BD.2.358, BD.2.361. ³ aññāvihita.

⁴ Cf. below, BD.2.358, and Vin.4.269.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 31

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time, not far from Sāvattḥī, alms-food came to be prepared in a public rest-house¹ by some guild. The group of six monks, dressing in the morning, taking their bowls and robes, entering Sāvattḥī for alms-food, (but) not obtaining alms-food, went to the public rest-house. People, saying: "At last the revered ones are come," duly waited upon them. Then the group of six monks also on the second day ... also on the third day, dressing in the morning ... going to the public rest-house, ate (a meal). Then it occurred to the group of six monks:

Bu-Pc.31.1.1
BD.2.303

"What difference do we make?² Having gone to the monastery, then tomorrow³ it will be right to return just here."⁴ Staying on and on⁵ just there, they ate alms-food at the public rest-house. Followers of other sects went away. People ... spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.70

"How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, staying on and on, eat alms-food at the public rest-house? The alms-food at the public rest-house is not prepared merely⁶ for them, the alms-food at the public rest-house is prepared simply for everybody."

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks, staying on and on, eat alms-food at a public rest-house?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... rest-house?"

BD.2.304

"It is true, lord."

¹ *āvasathapiṇḍa*. See *Vinaya Texts* i.37, n.3, for information and references. Cf. *āvasathāgāra*, above, **BD.2.198**. ² *kiṃ mayam karissāma*. ³ *hiyyo*. Vin-a.810 reads *bhīyyo pi ti sve pi*.

⁴ *idh'eva āgantabbarā bhavissati*. ⁵ *anuvāsitvā anuvāsitvā*. ⁶ *eva*.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men ... rest-house? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“One meal at a public rest-house may be eaten. If he should eat more than that, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.31.2.1

Now at that time the venerable Sāriputta, going to Sāvattthī through the Kosalan country, approached a certain public rest-house. People saying: “At last the elder is come,” duly waited upon (him). Then when the venerable Sāriputta had eaten, a painful affliction arose, he was not able to leave that public rest-house. Then on the second day these people spoke thus to the venerable Sāriputta: “Eat, honoured sir.” Then the venerable Sāriputta, thinking: “It is not allowed by the lord, staying on and on, to eat alms-food at a public rest-house,” and being scrupulous, he did not accept; he became famished. Then the venerable Sāriputta, having gone to Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord in this connection, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, staying on and on, to eat alms-food at a public rest-house. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“One meal in a public rest-house may be eaten by a monk who is not ill. If he should eat more than that, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.31.3.1

Not ill means: he is able to leave that public rest-house. **Ill** means: he is not able to leave that public rest-house.

Vin.4.71

BD.2.305

Meal in a public rest-house means: any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals¹; as much as is wanted² is prepared, not specially for him,³ in a hall or in a hut⁴ or at the foot of a tree or in the open air.

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.298**; below, **BD.2.330**. ² *yāvadattho*. Vin-a.810, “such a lot of food not being allotted.” ³ *anodissa*. Vin-a.810, “prepared for all.” ⁴ *maṇḍapa*.

By a monk who is not ill means: (a meal) may be eaten once (only). If he accepts more than that, thinking: "I will eat," there is an offence of wrong-doing; for each mouthful, there is an offence of expiation.¹

If he thinks that he is not ill when he is not ill, (and) eats more than a meal at a public rest-house, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ill ... If he thinks that he is ill when he is not ill ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that he is not ill when he is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ill when he is ill, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.31.3.2

There is no offence if he is ill; if he eats once when he is not ill; if he eats going out or coming in; if the proprietors, having invited him, offer him food, if it is specially² prepared (for him); if what is prepared is not as much as is wanted³; setting aside the five (kinds of) meals there is no offence in (eating) any others⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.31.3.3

The First

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.298](#). ² *odissa*, thus disproving *Pali-English Dictionary's* "only in negative".

³ Vin-a.811, "and he takes very little." ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.2.299](#); below, [BD.2.314](#), [BD.2.320](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 32

Bu-Pc.32.1.1
BD.2.306

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time¹ Devadatta, gain and honour lost,² ate with his friends, having asked and asked³ among households. People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, eat, having asked and asked among households? Who is not fond of well-cooked things? Who does not like sweet things?”⁴

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can Devadatta eat with his friends, having asked and asked among households?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Devadatta, ate with your friends, having asked and asked among households?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, eat with your friends, having asked and asked among households? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.307

¹ Cf. [Vin.2.196](#). *Vinaya Texts* iii.250, n.2, referring to this *pācittiya*, says that it is “a rule the previous existence of which is implied in the decision given here”—i.e., that (not more than) three monks shall eat a group meal at people's houses. Whoever does so shall be dealt with *yathādhamma*, according to the rule—this means [Bu-Pc.32](#). ² *pahīnalābhasakkāra*. Even Ajātasattu turned against him, when Devadatta, attempting to murder the Buddha, had a fierce elephant let loose on the road by which Gotama was to travel. See [Vin-a.811](#). Whole story told [Vin.2.184ff.](#) ³ *viññāpetvā viññāpetvā*. ⁴ =below, [BD.2.341](#).

In a group-meal,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.72

Now at that time people invited ill monks to a meal. The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill to eat a group-meal. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Bu-Pc.32.2.1

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time people, at the time of giving robes, having prepared a meal with the robes, invited monks, saying: “Having offered food, we will clothe (you) with robes.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” Little robe-material accrued (to them).² They told this matter to the lord. He said:

Bu-Pc.32.3.1

“I allow you, monks, at a time of giving robes, to eat a group-meal.³ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.308

¹ *gaṇabhojane*, group- or party-meal. Two to four monks constitute a *gaṇa*, group. See Old Commentary, below, and Vin-a.812. *Vinaya Texts* i.38, *Vinaya Texts* ii.151, “in a body”—i.e., a meal taken in a body, a group, instead of singly. At [Vin.2.196](#) one of the three reasons why monks may not eat in a body is *kulānuddayā*, compassion for households. Unrestricted, obviously they might become too heavy a burden. But at [Vin.1.254](#) a group-meal is allowable after the making of the *kaṭhina* cloth. *Gaṇabhojana*, *paraṃparabhojana* ([Bu-Pc.33](#)) and (*an*)*atirittabhojana* ([Bu-Pc.35](#)) form the subject of a controverted point at Kv.552. At Vism.67 one of the advantages of being a *piṇḍapātika*, almsman, living more or less on scraps, is said to be that such a monk will not fall into the offences, contained in this section of the Vinaya, of eating a group-meal or an out-of-turn meal. ² *uppajjati*. Vin-a.811 says, “Not taking the meal they did not give robes, therefore little accrued.” Cf. below, [BD.2.318](#), [BD.2.364](#). Here *Vinaya Texts* i.38, n.4, says this exception was “simply to guard against the stock of robes falling short.” Cf. *Vinaya Texts* ii.150, n.1. ³ Cf. [Vin.1.254](#).

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.32.4.1

Now at that time people, at the (time of) making robes,¹ invited monks to a meal. The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at a time of making robes, to eat a group-meal. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes, a time of making robes; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.32.5.1

Vin.4.73

Now at one time monks were going on a journey together with (some) men. Then these monks said to these men:

“Sirs, wait a moment, we will go for alms-food.” These said:

BD.2.309

“Honoured sirs, eat just here.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept (food), saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at a time of going on a journey, to eat a group-meal. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes, a time of making robes, a time of going on a journey; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.32.6.1

¹ *cīvarakārake*. Here *samaya* is omitted; it is inserted in the “allowance” and in the “rule,” *cīvarakārasamaya*, below.

Now at that time monks were going in a boat together with (some) men. Then these monks said to these men:

“Sirs, take us to the bank for a moment, we will go for alms-food.” These said:

“Honoured sirs, eat just here.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept (food), saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” ...

“I allow you, monks, at a time of being embarked in a boat, to eat a group-meal. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes, a time of making robes, a time of going on a journey, a time of being embarked in a boat; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time, monks having spent the rains in (various) districts,¹ came to Rājagaha to see the lord. People, having seen the monks from various parts of the country,² invited them to a meal. The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent.

“I allow you, monks, to eat a group-meal when there is a great scarcity.³ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness ... a time of embarking in a boat, when there is a great scarcity; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at one time a blood-relation of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha had gone forth among the Naked Ascetics. Then that Naked Ascetic

¹ *Disā*. ² *nānāverajjake*, or various provinces, different kingdoms. Cf. AN.iii.263.

³ *mahāsamaye*. See Old Commentary below, and Vin-a.813. Four Monks may not beg, but when a great scarcity comes, this rule is waived, otherwise it might be impossible for all to get a meal. *Samaya* also means both time and concourse; for the latter, cf. Mahāsamayasuttanta of DN.

approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, and having approached, he spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

“I, sire, wish to make a meal for all heretics.”¹

“If, you, honoured sir, would first entertain the Order of monks with the enlightened one at their head, you might do this.”

Then that Naked Ascetic sent a messenger to the monks, saying:

“Let the monks consent to (take) a meal with me on the morrow.”

The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, saying: “A group-meal is forbidden by the lord.” Then that Naked Ascetic approached the lord, and having approached he exchanged friendly greetings with the lord, and having exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, that Naked Ascetic spoke thus to the lord:

BD.2.311

“The revered Gotama is gone forth; I, too, am gone forth. One who has gone forth is worthy to accept the alms-food of one who has gone forth. Let the revered Gotama consent to (take) a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.”

The lord consented by becoming silent. Then that Naked Ascetic, having obtained the lord’s consent, departed. Then the lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to eat a group-meal at a meal-time of recluses.² And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“In a group-meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case, a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes, a time of making robes, a time of going on a journey, a time of being embarked in a boat, when there is a great scarcity, a meal-time of recluses; this is a right time in this case.”

Bu-Pc.32.9.1

Group-meal means: when four monks eat, invited to any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals, this is called a group-meal.

Except at a right time means: setting a right time to one side.

¹ *sabbapāsaṇḍikabhatta*. ² *Samaṇabhattachasamaya*. *Samaṇa* is a member of a permanent body, either belonging to Gotama’s Order, *saddhammika*, or to another ascetic-body, *aññatitthiya*.

Time of illness means: even when the feet become split¹; this means that at a time of illness (a group-meal) may be eaten.

Time of giving robes means: the last month of the rainy season when the *kaṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made, the five months when the *kaṭhina* cloth is (formally) made²; this means that at the time of giving robes (a group-meal) may be eaten.

BD.2.312

Time of making robes means: when the robes are being made; this means that at the time of making robes (a group-meal) may be eaten.

Vin.4.75

Time of going on a journey means: if he thinks: "I will go for half a *yojana*," (a group-meal) may be eaten, it may be eaten by him going out, it may be eaten by him coming in.³

Time of being embarked in a boat means: if he thinks: "I will embark in a boat," (a group-meal) may be eaten, it may be eaten by him embarking, it may be eaten by him disembarking.

A great scarcity means: when two or three monks, walking for alms-food, keep themselves going, (but) when a fourth has come they do not keep themselves going; this means that when there is a great scarcity (a group-meal) may be eaten.

Meal-time of recluses means: whoever makes a meal, being one who has attained (to the stage of) a wanderer,⁴ this means that at the meal-time of recluses (a group-meal) may be eaten.

If, except at the right time, he accepts (food), thinking, "I will eat," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a group-meal when it is a group-meal, (and) eats, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a group-meal ... If he thinks that it is not a group-meal when it is a group-meal ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a group-meal when it is not a group-meal, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.32.9.2

¹ *pādāpi phālītā honti*, so that a monk cannot go to a village for alms, Vin-a.812. Not an uncommon complaint among people who usually go barefoot. ² =below, BD.2.366. Cf. above, BD.2.5, BD.2.26, for *atthata kaṭhina*. ³ Cf. below, BD.2.405. ⁴ *paribbājakasamāpanna*. Vin-a.813 says this is a certain one among co-religionists and members of other sects. For definition of *paribbājaka*, see Vin.4.92, Vin.4.285.

BD.2.313 If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a group-meal, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a group-meal when it is not a group-meal, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.32.9.3

BD.2.314

There is no offence if it is at a right time; if two or three eat together¹; if having walked one by one for alms, they eat having assembled together; if it is the regular supply of food; if it is food (allowed by) ticket²; if it is (food given) on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon,³ if it is (given) on an Observance day,⁴ if it is (given) on the day after an Observance day⁵; setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, there is no offence in (eating) any other⁶; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Vin-a.814 distinguishes five groups of four persons: (1) those not invited, where one of those invited does not come, but someone else arrives and receives food: no offence; (2) those going for alms, where one does not accept the invitation but receives his share as he is going to the village: no offence; (3) those not ordained, when monks are invited with a probationer: no offence; (4) those sending out their bowls, where one going away sends out his bowl: no offence; (5) those who are ill, where monks are invited with one who is ill: no offence for the ill one. ² *salākabhadda*. At times when alms-food was short, food-tickets were issued (*salākāvutta*) by a monk in charge of the meals—a kind of steward. See, e.g., BD.1.11, BD.1.26, BD.1.151. This and the next three terms occur at Vin.1.58, Vin.1.96; Vin.2.175. At Vin.1.58–Vin.1.96 these four kinds of meals, together with those derived from three other sources, are called “extra allowances,” while at Vism.66 it is said that the almsman, *piṇḍapātika* (one who follows an ascetic practice), should not accept fourteen kinds of meals, including food given by ticket and the next three kinds, as above. At Vin.2.175, at a time when Rājagaha was short of alms-food, Gotama allows the monks to obtain food in each of these (seven) ways. This and the next (as *pakkhikabhadda*) occur also at Ja.2.209f. ³ *pakkhikaṃ*. Cf. Vism.66, translated at *Path of Purity* i.75, “on the day of the waxing or waning of the month”; this emphasises the lunar control of such givings rather better than does the “each fortnight” of *Vinaya Texts* i.173, or the “during a fortnight” of *Vinaya Texts* iii.220. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.220, n.6, and *Pali-English Dictionary*. A fortnight, however, was one half of the lunar month: the light, moonlit half, or the dark, moonless half. *Pakkhikaṃ* means food given any day once a fortnight, while the next two expressions each refer to a particular day in the fortnight. ⁴ *uposathikaṃ*, the last day of each fortnight—i.e., either the full moon day or the dark moon day. *Upasathika* is a fasting day for the lay people, but monks recite the Pātimokkha then, therefore it is a day to be observed or kept. Months are calculated from *uposathika*. As it is the last day of each fortnight, the day after it is the beginning of a month. ⁵ *pāṭipadikaṃ*. *Path of Purity* i.75 has “on the first day of the moonlit fortnight”—i.e., at the beginning of a month, full moon to new moon or new moon to full moon. ⁶ Cf. above, BD.2.299, BD.2.305.

The Second

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 33

Bu-Pc.33.1.1
BD.2.315

... at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the hall of the Gabled Roof. Now at that time in Vesālī a succession of meals of sumptuous foods came to be arranged.¹ Then it occurred to a certain poor workman: “This² will not be inferior, in that these people duly prepare a meal. What now if I were to prepare a meal?” Then that poor workman approached Kirapatika,³ and having approached, he said to Kirapatika:

Vin.4.76

“I, master,⁴ want to prepare a meal for the Order of monks with the enlightened one at the head. Give me a wage.”

Now Kirapatika had faith and was virtuous. Then Kirapatika gave more than a wage⁵ to this poor work-man. Then the poor workman went up to the lord, and having gone up, having greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the poor workman spoke thus to the lord:

“Lord, may the lord, together with the Order of monks, consent to a meal with me tomorrow.”

“But, sir, do find out, the Order of monks is large.”

BD.2.316

“Lord, let the Order of monks be large. Many are the jujube fruits⁶ prepared by me, the things to be drunk⁷ will be perfect on account of the juice

¹ *Vesāliyaṃ paṇītānaṃ bhattānaṃ bhattapaṭipāṭi adhiṭṭhitā hoti. Cf. Vin.1.248, Kusinārāyam ... hoti, translated Vinaya Texts ii.138, “a succession had been fixed, in which the inhabitants of Kusināra should each in succession provide food for the Saṅgha.”* ² Vin-a.816, this teaching or this gift to the Order. ³ A clansman (*kulaputta*) named Kira, evidently influential (*patika*), giving out work and paying wages monthly, by the season, by the year, Vin-a.817. Mentioned nowhere but here, I believe. ⁴ *ayyaputta*. ⁵ *abbhatireka vetana*. ⁶ *badara*. ⁷ *peyya*.

of the jujube fruits.”¹

The lord consented by becoming silent. Then that poor workman, having obtained the lord's consent, having risen up from the seat, having greeted the lord, departed, keeping his right side towards him. Monks heard it said:

“The Order of monks, with the enlightened one at the head, is invited for tomorrow by a poor workman. The things to be drunk will be perfect on account of the juice of jujube fruits.” These ate, walking for alms that morning. People heard it said: “The Order of monks, with the enlightened one at the head, is invited by, the poor workman.” These conveyed much solid food and soft food for the poor workman. Then that poor workman, at the end of that night, having had sumptuous solid food and soft food prepared, had the time announced to the lord, saying: “Lord, it is time, the meal is ready.” Then the lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the poor workman's dwelling, and having approached he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then that poor workman served the monks in a refectory. The monks spoke thus:

“Sir, give a little, give a little, sir.” He said: “Do not you, honoured sirs, accept so very little saying, ‘This is a poor workman.’ Much solid food and soft food was prepared for me. Honoured sirs, accept as much as you please.”

“Sir, it is not for this reason that we accept so very little, but we ate, having walked for alms this morning; that is why we are accepting so very little.”

BD.2.317

Then that poor workman looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the revered sirs, invited by me, eat elsewhere?² Yet am I not competent³ to give as much as they please?”

Monks heard this poor workman who ... spread it about. Those who

Vin.4.77

¹ *badaramissa*. Vin-a.817 explains by *badarasālavena*. According to *Pali-English Dictionary*, *badaramissa* is “mixture or addition of the juice of the jujube fruits,” while it says that *sālava* is “perhaps a kind of salad.” At Atthasālinī 320 *lapila*, cf. *lambila*, bitter or astringent, is defined as *badarasālava-kapiṭṭhasālavadi*, the s° of the jujube, the s° of the wood-apple is astringent. ² Cf. Vin.3.66, where monks accepted lodgings elsewhere, thus annoying their would-be host, who also refers to them as *bhaddantā*. ³ *na cāhaṃ paṭibalo*. OLDENBERG, Vin.4.359, says: “The ‘na’ appears not to be correct.” It is only correct if the sentence is interrogative, *na ca* = but not.

were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks, invited somewhere, eat elsewhere?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monks, invited somewhere, ate elsewhere?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men ... eat elsewhere? It is not, monks ...

And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

In an out-of-turn meal,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.33.2.1
BD.2.318

Now at that time a certain monk became ill. A monk, taking alms-food, went up to that monk, and having gone up he spoke thus to that monk: “Eat, your reverence.”

“Very well, your reverence, but there is for me the expectation of a meal.”

Alms-food was conveyed to that monk in the evening. That monk did not eat as much as expected. They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, to eat an out-of-turn meal. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

¹ *paramparabhojane*. *Vinaya Texts* i.38, “there is *pācittiya* in taking food in turn,” with note (*q.v.*) to say, “that is, in picking and choosing with regard to food, or in regard to different invitations. The Bhikkhus were to eat straight on whatever was given, and to accept invitations in the order in which they were received.” *Pali-English Dictionary* gives phrase as “taking food in succession,” successive feeding. GÖGERLY, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1862, p.445, gets the gist of the notion without literal accuracy: “If a priest eat his ordinary meal when under an invitation to dine, except on allowed occasions, it is *Pachit-tiyan*.” Also DICKSON, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 1876, p.112: “A sin is committed when a priest takes food in any other order than that in which it is offered to him.” HUBER, *J. BU-As.*, Nov-Dec, 1913, does not attempt a translation. *Path of Purity* 1.76 calls it “a meal subsequent to the acceptance of a previous one.” This kind of meal should not be accepted by the *piṇḍapātika*, almsman; see above, **BD.2.307, n.1.**

In an out-of-turn meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case, a right time is a time of illness; this is a right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

At that time people, at the time of giving robes, having had a meal prepared together with the robes, invited monks, saying: “Having offered food, we will present (you) with robes.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, saying: “It is forbidden by the lord to eat an out-of-turn meal.” ... (See [Bu-Pc.32.3](#), [Bu-Pc.32.4](#)) ... “... should be set forth:

Bu-Pc.33.3.1

“In an out-of-turn meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is a time of illness, a time of giving robes, a time of making robes; this is a right time in this case.”¹

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Then the lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, with the venerable Ānanda as his attendant,² came up to a certain household, and having come up he sat down on the appointed seat. Then these people gave a meal to the lord and to the venerable Ānanda. The venerable Ānanda, being scrupulous, did not accept (it).

Bu-Pc.33.4.1

Vin.4.78

BD.2.319

“Take it, Ānanda,” he said.

“Very well, lord, (but) there is for me the expectation of a meal.”

“Well now, Ānanda, having assigned it (to another), take (this food).”

Then the, lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, having assigned (food to another), to eat an out-of-turn meal. And thus, monks, should it be assigned: ‘I will give the meal that I am expecting to so and so.’”³

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.308](#); below, [BD.2.365](#). ² Cf. [BD.1.20, n.1](#). ³ Either to one who is present, or if he sees no one, then he should assign it to one person among the five kinds of his co-religionists. Vin-a.817.

Bu-Pc.33.5.1

An out-of-turn meal means: invited to any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals, having set this to one side, if he eats any one other meal of the five (kinds of) meals, this means an out-of-turn meal.

Except at a right time means: setting aside a right time.

Time of illness means: sitting in one seat he is not able to eat as much as he pleases: this means that at a time of illness (an out-of-turn meal) may be eaten.

Time of giving robes means: ... **Time of making robes** means: ... (see Bu-Pc.32).

If, except at a right time, he accepts (food), saying: “I will eat ...” (see Bu-Pc.32.9.1) ... If he thinks that it is not an out-of-turn meal when it is not an out-of-turn meal there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.33.5.2

BD.2.320

There is no offence if it is at a right time; if he eats, having assigned (a meal); if he eats two or three invitations together¹; if he eats the invitations in succession²; if invited by a whole village he eats anywhere in that village; if invited by a whole guild he eats anywhere in that guild; if being invited, he speaks saying: “I will take alms-food”³; if it is the regular supply of food; if it is food (allowed by) ticket; if it is (food given) on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon; if it is (given) on an Observance day; if it is (given) on the day after an Observance day; setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, there is no offence in (eating) any other; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁴

The Third

¹ Vin-a.817, two or three families invite him, and he puts the food into one bowl, eats it in one place. ² *nimantanapaṭipāṭiya bhujjati*. This must mean in the order in which they are given. ³ Vin-a.819, “I do not require your meal.” ⁴ Cf. Bu-Pc.32.9.3.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 34

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a woman lay-follower, the mother of Kāṇā,¹ had faith and was virtuous. Kāṇā² came to be given³ to a certain man in a village. Then Kāṇā went to her mother's house on some business or other. Then Kāṇā's husband sent a messenger to Kāṇā, saying: "Let Kāṇā come back, I desire Kāṇā's return." Then the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā's mother, saying: "It is awkward to go empty-handed,"⁴ cooked a cake.⁵ When the cake was cooked, a certain monk walking for alms came up to the dwelling of the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā's mother. Then the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā's mother, gave the cake to that monk. He, having gone away, told another, and she gave him a cake. He, having gone away, told another, and she gave him a cake.⁶ As soon as a cake was ready it disappeared.⁷ A second time did Kāṇā's husband send a

Bu-Pc.34.1.1
BD.2.321
Vin.4.79

BD.2.322

¹ Kāṇāmata. The Babbu-Jātaka was told on account of Kāṇāmata. The Introduction to this Jātaka (Ja.1.477) differs somewhat from the above account, and also says that Kāṇāmata was a stream-attainer (as does Vin-a.819) and a disciple of the noble ones. Different version again at Dh-p-a.2. 149ff. (on Dh-p.82). Kāṇāmata and Kāṇā mentioned only in this Jātaka, *pācittiya* 34 and *Dh-p-a.* ² She was so beautiful that when people saw her they became blind (Kāṇā) through passion, blinded (*andha*) with passion, so she was called Kāṇā because she caused blindness in others, Vin-a.819. ³ I.e., in marriage. ⁴ *kismiṃ viya rittahatthaṃ gantuṃ*. Cf. Ja.1.477, *kathaṃ tuccha-hatthā va gamissasi*; and see above, **BD.2.43**, "it is awkward to go out with (only) one piece of cloth," *kismiṃ viya ekasāṭakaṃ gantuṃ*, with n.4. Vin-a.819 explains by *kīdisaṃ viya, lajjanakaṃ viya hoti*, it is like that, it is like causing shame. ⁵ *pūva*. *Vinaya Texts* i.39, "sweetmeats," which it was "the custom to send as presents from one house to another" (*Vinaya Texts* i.39, n.1). ⁶ Possibly a fourth monk came and was given a cake, although the sentence is omitted. In the next paragraph four monks went to the caravan for alms, and in the Babbu-Jātaka four cats make the mouse give them food. Kāṇāmātā is said to have been the mouse, and the four monks the cats.

messenger to Kāṇā, saying: “Let Kāṇā, come back, I desire Kāṇā’s return.” A second time did the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, saying: “It is awkward to go empty-handed” ... it disappeared. A third time did Kāṇā’s husband send a messenger to Kāṇā, saying: “Let Kāṇā, come back, I desire Kāṇā’s return. If Kāṇā does not come back, I will take¹ another wife.” A third time did the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, saying: “It is awkward to go empty-handed” ... it disappeared. Then Kāṇā’s husband procured another wife. Kāṇā heard: “It is said that another wife is taken by this man.” She stood weeping. Then the lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, came up to the dwelling of that woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, and having come up he sat down on the appointed seat. Then the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, approached the lord, and having approached and greeted the lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, the lord spoke thus to the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother:

“Why does this Kāṇā weep?”

Then the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, having ... gladdened the woman lay-follower, Kāṇā’s mother, with talk on *dhamma*, rising up from his seat, departed.

Bu-Pc.34.1.2

Now at that time a certain caravan was desirous of going from Rājagaha to the south.² A certain monk, walking for alms-food, entered that caravan for alms-food. A certain lay-follower had barley-meal³ given to that monk. He, having gone away, told another, and he had barley-meal given to him. He, having gone away, told another, and he had barley-meal given to him.

BD.2.323

¹ Vin-a.819: As she was a disciple of the noble ones, when she saw monks she was unable not to give, thus as soon as she gave everything disappeared. ¹ *āneti*, lead back. ² *paṭi-y-āloka*. Same phrase occurs at [Vin.4.131](#); Vin-a.868 supports above rendering. ³ *sattu*. In the rule this seems to be replaced by *mantha*. See also Old Commentary, below, [BD.2.324](#). At [Vin.2.116](#) monks are allowed to fill needle-cases with *sattu* [*sic*] to prevent the needles from becoming blunt. At [Ds.646](#) *sattu* appears in a list of foods, while at [Ja.3.343](#) a wife prepares a bag of baked and unbaked *sattu* (*variant reading satthu*) for her husband. Vin-a.820: whatever is kneaded (or baked) *sattu*, unkneaded (or unbaked) *sattu*, sesamum seed and rice-grain, all here are called *mantha*. Vin-a.823 defines *sattu* as *sālivīhiyavehi katasattu*—i.e., *sattu* made with rices and barley, see below, [BD.2.330](#).

He, having gone away, told another, and he had barley-meal given to him. As soon as provisions for the journey were ready, they disappeared. Then that lay-follower said to these people:

Vin.4.80

“Masters, wait until tomorrow. As soon as provisions for the journey are ready, they are given to the masters. I will prepare provisions for the journey.”

Saying: “Master, we are unable to wait, the caravan is setting out,” they went away. Then as that lay-follower, having prepared provisions for the journey, was going along last, thieves robbed (him). People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation, accept (provisions)? This (man) having given to them, going along last, was robbed by thieves.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord in this connection, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Because of this, monks, I will make known a rule of training for monks, founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order ... for following the rules of restraint.¹ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“If a monk, going up to a family, (who) asking, should invite² him (to take) cakes or barley-gruel,³ two or three bowlfuls may be accepted by a monk desiring them. Should he accept more than that, there is an offence of expiation. Having accepted two or three bowlfuls, having taken them back⁴ from there, they must be shared together with the monks. This is the proper course in this case.”

BD.2.324

If a monk, going up to a family means: a family means: there are four (kinds of) family: noble family, brahmin family, merchant family, low-class family.⁵

Bu-Pc.34.2.1

Going up to means: going there.

¹ Cf. BD.1.37, and above, BD.2.87. ² *abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya*. See above, BD.2.51, n.1. ³ *mantha*. Combined with *madhupiṇḍika*, honey-ball, at Vin.1.4. See above, BD.2.322, n.4. ⁴ I.e., to the monastery. ⁵ = Vin.3.184; Vin.4.177, Vin.4.272.

A cake means: whatever is prepared as a present.¹

Barley-gruel means: whatever is prepared as provisions for a journey.

Asking, should invite means: they say, 'take just as much as you want.'

Desiring means: wanting.

Two or three² bowlfuls may be accepted means: two or three³ bowlfuls may be accepted.

Should he accept more than that means: if he accepts more than that, there is an offence of expiation.

Having accepted two or three bowlfuls, while taking them back from there, seeing a monk, he should be told: 'Two or three bowlfuls were accepted by me in such and such a place, so do not accept (anything) there.' If, seeing (him), he does not tell (him), there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴ If, although told, he accepts, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.81

BD.2.325

Having taken them back from there, they must be shared together with the monks means: returning, having taken them back,⁵ they must be shared.

This is the proper course in this case means: this is the appropriate course⁶ in this case.

Bu-Pc.34.2.2

If he thinks that there are more when there are more than two or three bowlfuls, (and) accepts, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether there are more than ... If he thinks that there are less when there are more than two or three bowlfuls, (and) accepts, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that there are more when there are less than two

¹ *pahiṇaka*. Vin-a.819 explains by *paṇṇākara*, a donation, present, gift. ² *dvitti ... dve tayo*.

³ *dvitti ... dve tayo*. ⁴ There was a case in Colombo not long ago where monks visited for alms-food the hut of some very humble people, who that very day had managed to collect for themselves a rather less scanty meal than usual. The monks did not tell others that they had called here; and it happened that others followed them, so the people had to give away all the food they had. The matter was looked into by the Order and the monks' attention drawn to this *Pācittiya*. ⁵ *paṭikkamaṇaṃ niharitvā*. Vin-a.820 says that if two or three bowlfuls are taken, putting one aside for himself, one or two respectively should be given to the Order. Cf. *paṭikkamaṇasālā* at Snp-a.53. Vin-a.820 says, *āsanasālaṃ gacchantena ca chaḍḍitasālā na gantabbaṃ yattha hi bhikkhusaṃgho nisīdati tattha gantabbaṃ*—that is, the monk must go there where the Order is sitting down, to a hall with seats. ⁶ *anudhammatā*;

cf. above, BD.2.69.

or three bowlfuls, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether there are less than two or three bowlfuls, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that there are less when there are less than two or three bowlfuls, there is no offence.

There is no offence if he accepts two or three bowlfuls; if he accepts less than two or three bowlfuls; if they give what is prepared neither as a present nor as provisions for a journey; if they give the remainder of what is prepared either as a present or as provisions for a journey; if they give because the journey is given up¹; if they belong to relations; if they are invited; if they are for the good of another; if it is by means of his own property; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.34.2.3

The Fourth

¹ *gamane paṭippassaddhe*. Vin-a.820 says, "seeing an accident on the road, or not wanting (to travel), they say, 'We will not set forth, we will not go,'" thus the journey is *paṭippassaddhe*, *upacchinne*, broken off, interrupted.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 35

Bu-Pc.35.1.1
BD.2.326

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time, a certain brahmin, having invited the monks, gave them a meal. The monks, having eaten,¹ being satisfied,² went to relations and families, and some ate, some went out taking the alms-bowl. Then that brahmin spoke thus to the neighbours³:

“Masters, the monks were satisfied⁴ by me; come and I will satisfy you.”
These said:

“How will you, master, satisfy us? For those invited by you came to our houses, some ate, others went out taking the alms-bowl.”

Then that brahmin looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the revered sirs, having eaten in our house, eat elsewhere?⁵
Yet am I not competent to give as much as they please?”⁶ Monks heard that brahmin who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

BD.2.327

“How can these monks, having eaten, being satisfied, eat elsewhere?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... ate elsewhere?”

¹ *bhuttāvin*. ² *pavāritā*. *Pavāreti* in conjunction with *bhuttāvin* seems in Vinaya to mean “to offer, to invite,” also “to satisfy,” as in *Pali-English Dictionary Vinaya Texts* i.39, [Vin.2.74](#), [Vin.2.76](#), [Vin.2.118](#) use “to offer” or “invite.” Vin-a.821 says that the brahmin told the monks to take as much as they wanted, but they asked for only a little. Lower down there is another verb, *santappati*, meaning to satisfy, just as *nimanteti* means “to invite.” Doubtless the notion of offering implied satisfying, and here “refusing” on the part of the monk. Vin-a.821 says, “the offer made, the refusal made,” which probably means, as *Vinaya Texts* i.39 suggests, that the monk, though he has finished his meal, is still invited to continue eating—but refuses to do so. Cf. *abhihaṭṭhum pavāreyya* at [BD.2.51](#) above. At [Mi.266](#) one of the offences into which an arahān may fall is said to be that of thinking food was not offered when it was offered. ³ *paṭivissake*. Cf. [MN.i.126](#). ⁴ *santappitā*. ⁵ Cf. [BD.1.110](#), and above, [BD.2.317](#).

⁶ Cf. above, [BD.2.317](#).

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“Monks, how can these foolish men, having eaten, being satisfied, eat elsewhere? Monks, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Vin.4.82

“Whatever monk, having eaten, being satisfied, should eat or partake of solid food or soft food,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks brought back sumptuous alms-food for ill monks.² The ill monks did not eat as much as expected, (and) the monks threw these away.³ The lord heard a loud noise, a great noise, a noise (like) the cawing of crows,⁴ and hearing this he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

Bu-Pc.35.2.1

“What, Ānanda, is this loud noise, this great noise, this noise (like) the cawing of crows?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord.

“But, Ānanda, monks should eat what is left over by ill (monks).⁵”

“They would not eat it, lord.”

Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.2.328

“I allow you, monks, to eat what is left over⁶ both by one who is ill and by one who is not ill. And, monks, (what is left over) should be made left over,⁷ saying, ‘All this is enough.’⁸ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

¹ The two terms for eating, *khādeyya* and *bhuñjeyya*, correspond to the two classes of food, *khādaniya*, solid food, and *bhojaniya*, soft food. *Vinaya Texts* i.39, n.5, gives some account of what these comprise, and see Old Commentary below. ² At *Vin.1.293* the monk who tends the sick, *Monks' gilānupaṭṭāko*, is the one who brings back food for him. ³ *chaḍḍenti*, or rejected them, *tāni*. ⁴ = *Vin.1.239*. The last of these three noises is *kākoravasadda*. ⁵ *gilānātiritta*. ⁶ *atiritta*. Cf. *Mi.266*, where one of the offences into which an arahān may fall is said to be that of thinking food is left over when it is not left over. ⁷ *atirittam katabbam*. ⁸ *alam etam sabbam*, spoken by the ill monk. If he is too ill to speak, he makes a sign.

“Whatever monk, having eaten, being satisfied, should eat or partake of solid food or soft food that is not left over,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.35.3.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Having eaten means: any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals,² and even (as little as) becomes eaten with a blade of grass.³

BD.2.329

Being satisfied means: eating is to be seen,⁴ a meal is to be seen, standing within a reach of the hand,⁵ he asks⁶ (him), a refusal is to be seen.⁷

What is not left over⁸ means: it becomes made not allowable⁹; it becomes made not formally accepted¹⁰; it becomes made not delivered¹¹; it becomes made not within a reach of the hand¹²; it becomes made by one

¹ *anativitta*. Exceptions are made to this rule at [Vin.1.213](#), [Vin.1.214](#), [Vin.1.215](#) in times of scarcity. But at [Vin.1.238](#), the time of scarcity having passed, the exception does not stand, and the monk is to be dealt with according to rule—i.e., to this [Bu-Pc.35](#). Referred to also at [Vism.69](#). In the account of the Council of Vesālī ([Kd.12](#)) it is affirmed that *gāmantarakappa*—i.e. (as explained at [Vin.2.300](#)), going amidst villages, having eaten, being satisfied—it is not allowable to eat food that is left over because ([Vin.2.306](#)) it violates a *pācittiya* rule. It is also affirmed that *amathitakappa*—i.e. (as explained at [Vin.2.301](#)), having eaten, being satisfied—it is not allowable to drink milk that is left over, because it violates a *pācittiya* rule ([Vin.2.307](#)). ² Those mentioned below, [BD.2.330](#). ³ Cf. below, [BD.2.100](#).

⁴ *asanam paññāyati*. *Vinaya Texts* i.39, n.2, reads *āsanam*, and translates tentatively, “a seat for him is there.” *Vin-a.821* says, “a meal left unfinished means ‘he is satisfied’ ... it is to be seen (*dissati*).” ⁵ *hatthapāse ʾhito*. *Vin-a.821*, “if, taking enough of the meal offered, the donor comes to be in a place distant two and a half cubits (from him)”; cf. above, [BD.2.200](#), [n.1](#).

⁶ *abhiharati*—i.e., the donor or benefactor, *dāyaka*, offers him food with a gesture. *Buddhaghosa* at *Vin-a.821*, *Vin-a.825* takes “standing within a reach of the hand” and “he asks (him)” as separate items, while at *Vin-a.822* he says that in five ways is an offer or invitation, *pavāraṇā*, to be seen (or is apparent, visible), and then he enumerates the five occurring in this paragraph. ⁷ *paṭikkhepo paññāyati*. The monk refuses what was offered by a gesture or by voice. This is called “being satisfied” according to the fifth of the ways given at *Vin-a.822*. See preceding note, and also [BD.2.326](#), [n.2](#). ⁸ *anativitta*—i.e., if the following means have not been carried out. ⁹ *akappiyakataṃ hoti*. *Kata* in this and the following phrases is comparable in meaning to the *atirittam katabbam* above. ¹⁰ *appaṭig-gahitakataṃ hoti*—i.e., by the monk (*Vin-a.829*). ¹¹ *anuccāritakataṃ hoti*. *Vin-a.829* says *kappiyam kārāpetum āgatenā bhikkhunā isakam pi anukkhittam vā anapanāmitam vā kataṃ*.

¹² *Vin-a.829*, to make it allowable is done by standing beyond the reach of the hand of one coming in.

who has not eaten¹; it becomes made by one who has eaten, has been satisfied (and) has risen from his seat; it does not come to be said, 'All this is enough'; it does not come to be left over by one who is ill: this means what is not left over.²

What is left over means: it becomes made allowable; it becomes made formally accepted; it becomes made being delivered; it becomes made within a reach of the hand; it becomes made by one who has eaten; it becomes made by one who has eaten, has been satisfied (and) has not risen from his seat; it comes to be said, 'All this is enough'; it comes to be left over by one who is ill: this means what is left over.

BD.2.330

Vin.4.83

Solid food means: setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, and food (that may be eaten) during a watch of the night,³ during seven days,⁴ during life,⁵ the rest means solid food.

Soft food means: the five (kinds of) meals: cooked rice,⁶ food made

¹ *abhuttāvinā katarā hoti*. Vin-a.829 says that whoever saying, 'This is enough,' makes it left over, it is made (allowable) by one who has not eaten (though) a sufficient meal was offered. ² Vin-a.829 says, by the seven Vinaya acts that which is left over is not made allowable, rather than that not left over by an ill monk; but both should be called 'not left over.' ³ *yāmakālika*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives "of a restricted time ... (literally) only for one watch of the night." *Vinaya Texts* ii.144 render, "till the first watch of the night," but had "first" been specially meant surely *paṭhamayāma* would have been used. Vin-a.839 (on *Bu-Pc.38*) says this term means "until the last watch of the night." *Vinaya Texts* ii.144 also states that *yāmakālika* "refers to certain medicines; see Mahāvagga VI.1.5." (*Kd.6.1.5*) These five standard medicines apparently could be eaten at night, since they did not count as ordinary forms of nutriment (*na ca oḷāriko āhāro paññādyati*), *Vin.1.199*. The relations of *yāmakālika* and the next two: *sattāhakālika*, *yāvajīvika*, are discussed at *Vin.1.251* with the addition of *yāvākdlika*, temporary (shorter than *yāmakālika*). ⁴ *sattāhakālika*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.144 states that "this also refers to certain medicines; see the 23rd *Nissaggiya*." These medicines are the same as those referred to at *Kd.6.1.5*=*Kd.6.1.2* (*Vin.1.199*). ⁵ *yāvajīvika*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.144, n.4, says, "what this refers to is unknown to us." I think it may refer to the different kinds of roots and other things allowed as medicines, and which could be stored up for life, *yāvajīvam*, *Vin.1.201*. Vin-a.833, quoting this Vinaya passage (*Vin.1.201*), says that these roots are called in the text *yāvajīvikam*. They apparently did not deteriorate with keeping, and so could be kept during a life-time. ⁶ *odana*. Vin-a.822 says *odana* is *sālī* (rice), *vīhi* (paddy, rice), *yava* (corn, barley), *godhūma* (wheat), *kaṅgu* (millet), *varaka* (a bean), *kudrūsaka* (perhaps rye, see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3. 70, n.1) —i.e., the seven kinds of grain, *dhañña*. At *Vin.4.264* these seven appear in definition of *āmakadhañña*, grain in its raw, uncooked state. Cf. DN-a.78, *BD.1.83*, n.4. Vin-a.822 defines all these grains.

with flour,¹ barley-meal,² fish, meat. If he accepts, thinking, ‘I will eat, I will partake of,’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.35.3.2
BD.2.331

If he thinks that it is not left over when it is not left over (and) eats or partakes of solid food or soft food, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not left over ... If he thinks that it is left over when it is not left over ... an offence of expiation. If he accepts for the sake of nutriment (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not left over when it is left over, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is left over, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is left over when it is left over, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.35.3.3

There is no offence³ if, having caused it to be made left over, he eats; if, having caused it to be made left over, he accepts it, thinking: “I will eat”; if he goes away, conveying it for the sake of another; if he eats the remainder of an ill (monk’s meal); if, when there is a reason,⁴ he makes use of (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth

¹ *kummāsa*. Vin-a.823 says that it is *yavehi katakummāso*, a junket made with barley; see *yava* in previous note. ² *sattu*, see above, [BD.2.322, n.4.](#) ³ Cf. [Bu-Pc.36](#) below, [BD.2.334.](#)

⁴ *sati paccaye*. Vin-a.831 says that if he is thirsty and makes use of the food to be eaten during the periods mentioned above, for the sake of slaking his thirst, or if he has a pain that could be eased, and uses these foods for that purpose, there is no offence.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 36

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time two monks were travelling to Sāvattḥī along a high-road in the Kosalan districts. One monk indulged in bad habits; the second monk said to this monk: "Your reverence, do not do that, it is not allowable." He grumbled at him.¹ Then these monks arrived at Sāvattḥī. Now at that time food for the Order was (prepared) by a certain guild² in Sāvattḥī. The second monk, having eaten, came to be satisfied. The monk who grumbled,³ having gone to his relations, taking alms-food, approached that monk, and having approached he said to that monk:

Bu-Pc.36.1.1
BD.2.332

"Do eat, your reverence."

"No need, I am full, your reverence."

"Your reverence, the alms-food is delicious, do eat."

Then this monk, being pressed by that monk, ate that alms-food. The monk who grumbled said to that monk:

Vin.4.84

Your reverence, you think that I should be advised (by you), when you, having eaten, being satisfied, eat soft food that is not left over?"

"Your reverence, should it not be spoken about?"

"Your reverence, should it not be inquired into?"

Then that monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can a monk, asking a monk who has eaten, who is satisfied, invite him (to take) soft food that is not left over?"

BD.2.333

¹ To here = Vin.2.118, but where the story proceeds to a tragic ending. ² Cf. above, BD.2.160.

³ *upanandha bhikkhu*, explained by *janita-upanāha*, produced a grudge, ill-will, Vin-a.831.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, asking a monk ... soft food that is not left over?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, asking a monk who has eaten, who is satisfied, invite him (to take) soft food that is not left over? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, asking¹ a monk who has eaten, who is satisfied, should invite him (to take) solid food or soft food that is not left over, saying: ‘Now, monk, eat or partake of,’² knowing,³ desiring to find fault with,⁴ in the eating there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.36.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Monk means: another monk.

Having eaten means: ... (see Bu-Pc.35.3) ... this means *what is not left over*.

Solid food means: ... (see Bu-Pc.35.3) ... meat.

Asking, should invite⁵ means: he says, “Take just as much as you want.

He knows⁶ means: either he knows by himself, or others tell him, or he⁷ tells him.

Desiring to find fault with means: if he asks (him), saying: ‘I will reprove him for this, I will remind him, I will blame him, I will make him think back, I will shame⁸ him,’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, at his bidding, he accepts, saying: ‘I will eat, I will partake of,’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. At the end of the meal there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.334

Bu-Pc.36.2.2

If he thinks that he was satisfied when he was satisfied (and), asking him, invites him (to take) solid food or soft food that is not left over, there

¹ Above, BD.2.51, BD.2.323. ² Above, BD.2.327. ³ I.e., knowing by means of one of the three ways of knowing (see Old Commentary) that that monk is satisfied. ⁴ *āsādanāpekkho*. Vin-a.831, desiring to arouse insult, rebuke, shame. ⁵ Above, BD.2.51, BD.2.324. ⁶ Above, BD.2.161, BD.2.297. ⁷ I.e., that monk. ⁸ *maṅkum karoti*, cf. above, BD.2.178.

is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he was satisfied ... offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he was not satisfied when he was satisfied ... is no offence.¹ If he asks him (to take) for the sake of nourishment (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, at his bidding, he accepts, saying: 'I will eat, I will partake of,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he was satisfied when he was not satisfied, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he was not satisfied, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he was not satisfied when he was not satisfied, there is no offence.

Vin.4.85

There is no offence² if, having caused it to be made left over, he gives it; if, having caused it to be made left over, he gives it, saying, "Eat"; if he gives it, saying: "Go away, conveying it for the sake of another"; if he gives the remainder of an ill (monk's meal); if, when there is a reason, he gives (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, saying, "Make use of it"; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.36.2.3

The Sixth

¹ Variant reading *āpatti dukkaṭassa*, see Vin.4.360. ² Cf. Bu-Pc.35, above, BD.2.331.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 37

Bu-Pc.37.1.1
BD.2.335

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time, in Rājagaha there came to be a festival on a mountain-top.¹ The group of seventeen monks went to see the festival on the mountain-top. People, seeing the group of seventeen monks, having bathed, having anointed themselves, having offered (them) (food), gave solid food. The group of seventeen monks, taking the solid food, having gone to the monastery, said to the group of six monks:

“Take, your reverences, eat solid food.”

“Where did your reverences obtain solid food?” they said.

The group of seventeen monks told this matter to the group of six monks.

“Then do you, your reverences, eat a meal at the wrong time?”²

“Yes, your reverences.”

The group of six monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of seventeen monks eat a meal at the wrong time?”

BD.2.336

Then this group of six monks told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

¹ *giraggasamajja*. See on *samajja* interesting n.4 at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.7, also *Vinaya Texts* iii.71. At [Vin.2.107–108](#) the group of six monks went to see such a festival, at which there was singing, dancing, music: made a *dukkaṭa* offence. At [Vin.4.267](#), when the group of six monks went, the offence incurred is a *pācittiya*. Word occurs again at [Vin.2.150](#). In *Vinaya* the festival seems always to have been held on a mountain near Rājagaha. Cf. [Ja.3.538](#), where it is mentioned as being held all over Jambudīpa. *Vin-a.831* says that *samajja* (festival) is a high place on a mountain or a high festival on a mountain. Also that it was announced seven days beforehand, and held on level ground in the shadow of a mountain slope outside a city. See also *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. *Samajja* mentioned alone at [Ja.1.394](#), [Ja.3.541](#).

² *vikāle*. Cf. [Bu-Pc.85](#).

“How can the group of seventeen monks eat a meal at the wrong time?”
These monks told this matter to the lord.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, ate a meal at the wrong time?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, eat a meal at the wrong time? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should eat or partake of solid food¹ or soft food at the wrong time,² there is an offence of expiation.**”

Vin.4.86

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.37.2.1

The wrong time means: after noon has passed until sunrise.³

BD.2.337

Solid food means: ... **Soft food** means: ... meat. If he accepts it, thinking: “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is the wrong time when it is the wrong time (and) eats or partakes of solid food or soft food, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is the wrong time ... If he thinks that it is the right time when it is the wrong time ... offence of expiation. If he

Bu-Pc.37.2.2

¹ Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.832ff. enumerates various kinds of solid food under the following categories: roots, tubers, roots of lotuses, top sprouts, leaves, flowers, stones of fruits, eatables made from flour (*piṭṭhakhā-daniya*, cf. Vin.1.248, Vin.1.249, where this was allowed to monks), resins. ² *vikāle*, see Old Commentary, just below. At Vin.1.200 the five medicines are allowed to be used at the right time and at the wrong time. Also at Vin.1.200 regulations are laid down for receiving, cooking, mixing fat at the right time and at the wrong time. At Mi.266 it is said that a meal at the wrong time is not a sin in the eyes of the world, but in the Jina’s teaching. The account of the Council of Vesālī (Vin.2.294ff.) affirms that the *dvaṅgula-kappa* (i.e., when the shadow has turned by two finger-breadths, Vin.2.300) is not allowable, because it violates the *vikalābhajana pācittiya*—i.e., eating at the wrong time.

See the vivid description attributed to Udāyin, at MN.i.448f., of his feelings at the successive injunctions for monks to give up day and evening meals, and his ultimate conviction of the lord’s wisdom in stopping alms-giving in the dark of the night. Cf. also MN.i.124, MN.i.473; and MN.i.437, where Bhaddāli confessed that he had not been able to keep to the regimen of one meal a day. ³ Cf. Vin.4.166.

accepts for the sake of nourishment (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is the wrong time when it is the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is the right time when it is the right time, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.37.2.3

There is no offence¹ if, when there is a reason, he makes use of (food) to be eaten during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.331](#), [BD.2.334](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 38

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa,¹ the preceptor of the venerable Ānanda, was staying in the jungle. He, having walked for alms-food, having conveyed boiled rice² to the monastery, having had it dried, laid it aside; when he came to need it for food, then moistening it with water, he ate it; after a long time he entered the village for alms-food. Monks spoke thus to the venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa: "How is it that you, your reverence, after a long time enter the village for alms-food?" Then the venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa told this matter to the monks. They said:

"But do you, your reverence, eat a meal that was stored³?"

"Yes, your reverences." Those who were modest monks ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Belaṭṭhasīsa, ate a meal that was stored?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, Belaṭṭhasīsa, eat a meal that was stored? It is not, Belaṭṭhasīsa, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should eat or partake of solid food or soft food that

Bu-Pc.38.1.1
BD.2.338

Vin.4.87
BD.2.339

¹ Vin-a.838 says he was the prominent great *thera* of the thousand *jaṭilas*, or matted hair ascetics. His verses given at Thag.16. In Commentary, on this (see *Psalm of the Brethren*, p.21) it is said that with these ascetics he was tamed by Gotama, and attained arahanship after the Utterance on Burning (Vin.1.35). He suffered from eczema, Vin.1.202, Vin.1.295.

² *sukkhakūra*; Vin-a.838 calls it *asūpabyañjana odana*, boiled rice without the curry and sauce. ³ *sannidhikāraka bhojana*.

was stored,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.38.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Stored means: accepted today, it becomes eaten the next day.

Solid food means: ... **soft food** means: ... meat. If he accepts it, saying, “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.38.2.2

If he thinks that it is stored when it is stored (and) eats or partakes of solid food or soft food, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is stored ... If he thinks that it is not stored when it is stored ... expiation. If he accepts for the sake of nutriment food (to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is stored when it is not stored, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not stored, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not stored when it is not stored, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.38.2.3

There is no offence if, having stored² (food) for the time being,³ he eats it in that time; if, having stored (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, he eats it in a watch of the night⁴; if, having stored (food) to be eaten during seven days, he eats it in seven days; if, when there is a reason, he uses (food to be eaten) during life⁵; if he is mad; if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.340

The Eighth

¹ Cf. rules against storing up medicines for more than seven days at [Vin.1.209](#), [Vin.3.251](#). It is said that an arahān cannot become one to use for sensual pleasure what is stored up, DN.iii.235 = MN.i.523 = AN.iv.370. Cf. also *sannidhikāra* at DN.i.6.

In the Cūlavagga account of the Council of Vesālī, [Vin.2.294ff.](#), it is called not allowable to carry about salt in a horn, so as to put salt on to what is not salted ([Vin.2.300](#)), as by so doing the “*sannidhikāra* *kabhajana pācittiya*” would be infringed ([Vin.2.306](#)). ² *nidahitvā*, or hoarding. ³ *yāvakālika*. Vin-a.839, it may be eaten until noon. Cf. above, [BD.2.330](#), [n.1](#).

⁴ Vin-a.839, it may be eaten until the last watch of the night. ⁵ Cf. [Vin.1.251](#) on relations of right and wrong times for eating these foods.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 39

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having asked for sumptuous foods¹ for themselves,² ate them. People ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.39.1.1
BD.2.341

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having asked for sumptuous foods for themselves, eat them? Who is not fond of well-cooked things? Who does not like sweet things?”³ Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks, having asked for ... eat them?” ...

Vin.4.88

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having asked for ... ate them?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, having asked for ... eat them? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

Whatever are sumptuous foods, that is to say, ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses,⁴ fish, meat, milk, curds—whatever monk, having asked for sumptuous foods such as these for himself, should eat them, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks became ill. Monks, enquiring after the ill ones, spoke thus to the ill monks:

Bu-Pc.39.2.1

BD.2.342

¹ *paṇītabhojanāni ti uttamabhojanam*, Vin-a.840. ² *attano atthāya*. ³ = Vin.2.196 = Vin.4.71.

⁴ The five standard medicines.

“We hope that your reverences are better, we hope that you are keeping going.”

“Formerly, your reverences, we, having asked for sumptuous foods for ourselves, ate them. Therefore there came to be comfort for us. But now it is forbidden by the lord, and being scrupulous, we do not ask, therefore there comes to be no comfort for us.”¹

They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion,² having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, to eat them. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever are sumptuous foods, that is to say, ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses, fish, meat, milk, curds—whatever monk who is not ill, having asked for sumptuous foods such as these for himself, should eat them, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.39.3.1

Whatever are sumptuous foods³: **ghee**⁴ is called ghee from cows or ghee from she-goats or ghee from buffaloes, ghee from those whose meat is allowable.⁵ **Fresh butter** means fresh butter from just these. **Oil** means sesamum oil, oil of mustard seeds, oil containing honey, oil of the castor-oil plant, oil from tallow. **Honey** means honey of bees. **Molasses** means what is produced from sugar-cane. **Fish** means it is called one that lives in water. **Meat** means the meat of those whose meat is allowable. **Milk** means milk of cows or milk of she-goats or milk of buffaloes, milk of those whose meat is allowable. **Curds** means curds from just these.

Vin.4.89
BD.2.343

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Sumptuous foods such as these means: sumptuous foods like these.

Not ill means: for whom there comes to be comfort without sumptuous foods. **Ill** means: for whom there does not come to be comfort without

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.277](#); below, [BD.2.399](#), [BD.2.402](#). ² *etasmim pakaraṇe*, “in this connection,” omitted here. ³ Vin-a.840 says that besides these (nine)—i.e., ghee and so on—sumptuous foods are also those prepared from the seven kinds of grain. Cf. *Vinaya Texts* ii.133, n.3.

⁴ From here to “sugar-cane” = [Vin.3.251](#). See above, [BD.2.131](#). ⁵ Various kinds of meat which, if eaten, give rise to *dukkaṭa* offences are given at [Vin.1.218f](#).

sumptuous foods. **Not ill, asks for himself**, for every request,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he accepts (alms) thinking, "I will eat on acquisition," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that he is not ill when he is not ill, (and) having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, eats them, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as-to whether he is not ill ... If he thinks that he is ill when he is not ill ... expiation. If he thinks that he is not ill when he is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ill when he is ill, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.39.3.2

There is no offence if he is ill; if having become ill, having asked, one who is not ill eats (the alms); if he eats the remainder of an ill (monk's meal);² if they belong to relations; if they are invited; if it is for the good of another; if it is by means of his own property; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.39.3.3

The Ninth

¹ *payoge payoge*; each time he asks there is an offence. ² Cf. above, **BD.2.331**.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 40

Bu-Pc.40.1.1
BD.2.344

... at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Hall of the Gabled Pillars. Now at that time a certain monk, wearing robes made entirely of rags, was staying in a cemetery. He did not want to accept gifts¹ from people. And himself taking (food) put down for the departed masters² in a cemetery and at the foot of a tree and on a threshold,³ he ate it. People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this monk, himself taking (food) put down for our departed masters, eat it? This monk is strong,⁴ he is fat,⁵ for certain he eats meat (belonging to) people.”⁶

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can a monk convey to his mouth⁷ nutriment not given?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, conveyed to your mouth nutriment not given?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, convey to your mouth nutriment not given?

It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.345
Vin.4.90

¹ *diyyamāna*. ² *ayyavosāṭitakāni*. Vin-a.842 says *ayyā* are the ancestors who have done their time (here), and *vosāṭitakāni* are the solid and soft foods put down in cemeteries and so on for these by their relations. ³ *ummāre*; cf. Vin.4.100, Vin.4.160. ⁴ *thero* = *thīro ghanabaddho*, Vin-a.842. ⁵ *vadhara* = *thūla*, Vin-a.842, reading *vaṭhara*. ⁶ Meat is a “soft food,” cf above, BD.2.330, and *bhuñjati* is the verb technically associated with it. Here we get *manussamaṃsaṃ khādati*. At Vin.1.218 *manussamaṃsa* is combined with *paribhuñjati*, and certainly means human flesh. ⁷ *mukhadvādra*, the door of the face.

“Whatever monk should convey to his mouth nutriment not given, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks were scrupulous in regard to water for cleansing the teeth.¹ They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, yourselves having taken water for cleansing the teeth, to partake of it. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should convey to his mouth nutriment not given, except water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not given means: it is called not accepted.²

Given means: if in giving by means of the body or by means of something attached to the body³ or by means of something that may be cast,⁴ standing within a reach of the hand, if he accepts by means of the body or by means of something attached to the body,⁵ this is called given.

Nutriment means: setting aside water for cleansing the teeth, whatever is fit to eat, this is called **nutriment**.

Except water for cleansing the teeth means: setting aside water for cleansing the teeth.

If he takes it, thinking: ‘I will eat, I will partake of,’ there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is not accepted when it is not accepted (and) conveys to his mouth nutriment that is not given, except water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not accepted ... If he thinks that it is accepted when it is not accepted ... offence

¹ *udakadantapoṇa*, also a tooth-cleaner. *Vinaya Texts* i.40 takes this compound as “water and a tooth-cleaner.” ² Vin-a.843 points out that in Bu-Pj.2, ‘not given’ means not appropriated from others. ³ E.g., a spoon, Vin-a.843. ⁴ Cf. BD.1.208. ⁵ E.g., a bowl, Vin-a.843.

of expiation. If he thinks that it is not accepted when it is accepted, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is accepted, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is accepted when it is accepted, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.40.3.3

There is no offence in regard to water for cleansing the teeth; if himself, having taken the four foul things,¹ he makes use of them when there is a reason (and if) there is no one to make them allowable²; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Tenth

THIS IS ITS KEY

A meal, a joint (meal), an out-of-turn (meal),³
a cake, and two on having eaten, being satisfied,
At the wrong time, storing, milk,
with water for cleansing the teeth—these ten.

Vin.4.91

The Fourth Division: that on Food

¹ *cattāri mahāvīkatāni*. These are given at [Vin.1.206](#) as remedies for a monk who was bitten by a snake. Further said that these things might be accepted *sati kappiyakārake* (if there is anyone there who, by offering a thing, makes that thing *kappiya*, allowable), but if there is no one there to offer and hence to make allowable, then a monk may take these things himself. ² Again, cf. [Vin.1.206](#), where it is said, *anujānāmi bhikkhave sati kappiyakārake paṭiggahāpetuṃ asati kappiyakārake sāmaṃ gahetvā paribhuñjitun ti*, I allow, monks, (these things) to be accepted if there is anyone there to make them allowable; if there is no one there to make them allowable, (I allow a monk) himself taking them, to make use of them. ³ *paraṃ* here.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 41

... at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Hall of the Gabled Pillars. Now at that time there came to be abundant¹ solid food for the Order. Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. He said:

Bu-Pc.41.1.1
BD.2.347

“Well, Ānanda, give the cakes² to those who eat scraps of food.”³

“Very well, lord,” and the venerable Ānanda, having answered the lord, having made those who eat scraps of food sit down one after the other,⁴ giving a cake to each, gave two cakes to a certain female wanderer, thinking that they were one. Neighbouring female wanderers spoke thus to this female wanderer:

“This recluse is your lover.”

“This recluse is not my lover; he gave two cakes, thinking that they were one.”

A second time ... A third time did the venerable Ānanda, giving a cake to each one, give two cakes, thinking that they were one, to this female wanderer. Neighbouring female wanderers spoke thus to this female wanderer:

...

“This recluse is not my lover; he gave two cakes, thinking that they were one.”

Saying, “The lover is not a lover,” they quarrelled.

Then a certain Naked Ascetic went to a distribution of food. A certain monk, mixing cooked rice with a quantity of ghee, gave a large alms-meal

Bu-Pc.41.1.2

¹ *ussanna*. At Vin.1.285 said of robes; at Bu-Pc.47 of medicines. ² *pūvaṃ*, or “sweetmeats,” see above, BD.2.321. ³ *vighāsādda*, not Sakyan monks who should not eat what is left over, see above, BD.2.328. Word occurs at Ja.1.348, Ja.2.96, Ja.3.191. ⁴ *paṭipāṭiyā*, successively, in order.

BD.2.348 to that Naked Ascetic. Then the Naked Ascetic, taking that alms-meal, went away. A certain Naked Ascetic said to that Naked Ascetic:

“Where, your reverence, was an alms-meal obtained by you?”

“It was obtained, your reverence, at a distribution of food (made) by a shaven householder¹ of that recluse Gotama.”

Lay followers heard this talk of those Naked Ascetics. Then these lay followers approached the lord, and having approached, having greeted the lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these lay followers spoke thus to the lord:

“Lord, these adherents of other sects desire blame for the enlightened one, they desire blame for *dhamma*, they desire blame for the Order. It were well, lord, that the masters did not give to the adherents of other sects with their (own) hand(s).”

Then the lord gladdened ... delighted these lay followers with *dhamma*-talk. Then these lay followers, having been gladdened ... delighted by the lord with *dhamma*-talk, rising from (their) seats, having greeted the lord, departed, keeping their right sides towards him. Then the lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.4.92 “On account of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training for monks, founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order ... for establishing what is *dhamma* indeed, for following the rules of restraint.² And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should give with his own hand solid food or soft food to a naked ascetic³ or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.41.2.1
BD.2.349

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Naked ascetic⁴ means: whoever being naked has reached (the stage of) a wanderer.⁵

¹ *munḍagakapatika*, clearly a term of disparagement. It may be in apposition to “that recluse Gotama.” ² = Vin.3.21 (BD.1.37f.). ³ Here *acelaka*, previously *ājīvaka*. See BD.2, Introduction, p.xiii, n.2. ⁴ Here *acelaka*, previously *ājīvaka*. See Introduction, BD.2.xiii, n.2.

⁵ *paribbājakasamāpanna*. This definition = Vin.4.285.

Wanderer means: setting aside monk and novice, whoever has reached (the stage of) a wanderer.¹

Female wanderer means: setting aside nun and female probationer and female novice, whoever has reached (the stage of) a female wanderer.²

Solid food means: setting aside the five (kinds of) meals (and) water for cleansing the teeth, what remains is called solid food.

Soft food means: the five (kinds of) meals: cooked rice, food made with flour, barley-meal, fish, meat.³

Should give means: if he gives by means of the body or by means of something attached to the body or by means of something that may be cast, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that he is an adherent of another sect when he is an adherent of another sect, (and) gives with his (own) hand solid food or soft food, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is an adherent of another sect ... If he thinks that he is not an adherent of another sect when he is an adherent of another sect ... of expiation. If he gives water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is an adherent of another sect when he is not an adherent of another sect, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not an adherent of another sect, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not an adherent of another sect when he is not an adherent of another sect, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.41.2.2

There is no offence if he gets someone to give,⁴ (but) does not (himself) give; if he gives depositing (it) near⁵; if he gives ointment for external (use)⁶; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁷

Bu-Pc.41.2.3
BD.2.350

The First

¹ = Vin.4.285. ² Vin.4.285 ³ = Vin.4.83. ⁴ *dāpeti*—e.g., one who is not ordained—Vin-a.855. ⁵ I.e., not giving “with his own hand,” but putting food on the ground or in his bowl, and inviting the recipient to take from there. ⁶ *bāhīrālepaṃ*; offences are incurred by giving a member of another sect things to eat or drink, even water for washing the teeth. *Ālepa* occurs at Vin.1.274. ⁷ = Vin.4.303.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 42

Bu-Pc.42.1.1
BD.2.351

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, spoke thus to a monk, who shared (his) brother's cell:

Vin.4.93

“Come, your reverence, we will enter the village for alms-food.” Without having had (alms-food) given to him, he dismissed him, saying: “Go away, your reverence. Neither talking nor sitting down with you comes to be a comfort for me; either talking or sitting down alone comes to be a comfort for me.”

Then that monk, when the meal-time was near, was not able to walk for alms, and returning he did not achieve participation in the meal; he became famished.¹ Then that monk, having gone to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, saying to a monk, ‘Come, your reverence, we will go into the village for alms-food,’ without having had (alms-food) given to him, dismiss him ...?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, saying to a monk, ‘Come ...’ dismiss him? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.352

“Whatever monk, saying to a monk, ‘Come, your reverence, we will go into a village or little town² for alms-food,’ either causing to be given or not causing to be given (alms-food) to him, should dismiss him, saying, ‘Go away, your reverence, neither talking nor sitting down with you comes to be a comfort for me; either talking or sitting down alone comes to be a comfort for me’—if doing it for just this object, not for

¹ Cf. Vin.4.70, Vin.4.175. ² *nigama*; cf. above, BD.2.63, n.2.

another,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Monk means: another monk.

Come, your reverence, to a village or little town means: a village and a little town and a town, a village as well as little town.

Causing to be given (alms-food) to him means: causing conje or solid food or soft food to be given.

Not causing to be given means: not causing anything to be given.

Should dismiss means: if desiring to laugh, desiring to sport together with a woman, if desiring to sit down in private, if desiring to indulge in bad habits, he speaks thus: 'Go away, your reverence, neither talking ... sitting down alone comes to be a comfort for me,' (and) dismisses² him, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Dismissing him from sight³ or from hearing is an offence of wrong-doing. When he is dismissed, there is an offence of expiation.

If doing it for just this object, not for another means: there comes to be no other object whatever (for which) to dismiss him.

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained, (and) dismisses him, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained, (and) dismisses him, there is an offence of expiation. If he finds fault with another,⁴ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he dismisses one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he finds fault with another,⁵ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁶

¹ = above, BD.2.248; Vin.4.149, Vin.4.150. ² uyyojeti. ³ dassanūpacāraṃ (literally the precincts of sight) vijahantassa; cf. below, BD.2.376. ⁴ kalisāsanāṃ āropeti. ⁵ kalisāsanāṃ āropeti. ⁶ Most probably error for “no offence.”

There is no offence if he dismisses him, saying: ‘Together we will not both keep going’¹; if, seeing costly goods, he dismisses him, saying, ‘It will produce a state of greed’²; if, seeing a woman, he dismisses him, saying, ‘She will produce dissatisfaction’; if he dismisses him, saying, ‘Take back conjei or solid food or soft food for one who is ill, or for one who is left behind,³ or for a guardian of the dwelling-place’; if, not desiring to indulge in bad habits, he dismisses him if it ought to be done; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Second

¹ *yāpeti*, or “We will not both go together.” ² *lobhadhamma*. ³ *ohiyyaka*, as e.g. on guard at a *vihāra* (though this notion is covered by next word); cf. [Vin.3.208](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 43

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, going to a friend's house, sat down¹ in a sleeping-room² together with his wife. Then that man approached the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, and having approached, having greeted the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that man spoke thus to his wife:

“Give alms-food to the master.”

Then that woman gave alms-food to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. Then that man spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

“You may go, honoured sir, inasmuch as alms-food has been given to the master.”

Then that woman, observing, “This man is obsessed,”³ spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

“Sit down, honoured sir, do not go away.”

A second time that man ... A third time that man spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

“You may go, honoured sir, inasmuch as alms-food has been given to the master.”

A third time did that woman say to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans:

¹ *nisaḷḷaṃ kappeti*. ² *sayanighara*; a definition is given at [Vin.4.160](#). Cf. [Vin.1.140](#).
³ *pariyuṭṭhita*. Cf. [Vin.4.229](#). Also DN.ii.104; MN.i.433; [Vin.2.289](#) (where with *citta*). Vin-a.856 says *rāgapariyuṭṭhito methunādhippayo*, obsessed (or possessed) by passion, desiring intercourse.

“Sit down, honoured sir, do not go away.” Then that man, going out, made monks look down upon¹ (Upananda), saying:

“Honoured sirs, this master Upananda is sitting in the sleeping-room together with my wife; he, being dismissed by me, does not wish to go. We are very busy, there is much to be done.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, intruding upon² a family with food,³ sit down?” ...

Vin.4.95

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, intruding upon ... sat down?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: “How can you, foolish man, intruding ... sit down? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, intruding upon a family with food, should sit down, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.43.2.1
BD.2.356

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Family with food means: there is a woman and also a man, and both the woman and the man are not gone out, both are not without passion.

Intruding means: forcing a way into.⁴

Should sit down means: if he sits down in a large house, having left (the space of) a reach of the hand⁵ from door-posts and lintel,⁶ there is an

¹ *ujjhāpeti*. Cf. above, **BD.2.235**. ² *anupakhajja*. Cf. above, **BD.2.247**, and note. ³ *sabhojane kule*. *Vinaya Texts* i.41, “into a house where a meal is going on.” Editor, *Vinaya Texts* i.41, n.3, remarks that the Vin-a, doubtless to justify the Old Commentary’s definition (see below) with its “suggested implication,” makes *sabhojanam* equal to *saha ubhohi janehi*(!); or, in the alternative, to *sabhogam*, since the wife is the *bhoga* (property) “of a man still given to passion, and the husband the *bhoga* of a wife ...; it is just possible we should translate, ‘a household still given to pleasure’ (cf.), or ‘fond of good food’ (Mi.76).” HUBER, J.Bu-As., Nov, “dans une maison ou on ‘mange.’” *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests very tentatively “sharing food (?)” *Sabhojana* at Snp.102 means “with food.” At **Vin.2.216** (=Kd.18.5.2), a monk who has entered a dwelling for food should cover up his bowl with his robe when he has received the alms, and turn away. ⁴ =above, **BD.2.248**. ⁵ =**Vin.4.269**. ⁶ *piṭṭhasamghāta*. Cf. above, **BD.2.258**, and **Vin.2.120**, and *Vinaya Texts* iii.105, n.2.

offence of expiation; if he sits down in a small house, having gone beyond the beam,¹ there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a sleeping-room when it is a sleeping-room (and), intruding upon a family with food, sits down, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a sleeping-room ... If he thinks that it is not a sleeping-room when it is a sleeping-room ... an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a sleeping-room when it is not a sleeping-room, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a sleeping-room, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a sleeping-room when it is not a sleeping-room, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.43.2.2

There is no offence if he sits down in a large house, not having left (the space of) a reach of the hand from door-posts and lintel; if he sits down in a small house, not having gone beyond the beam; if there comes to be a second monk; if both have gone out²; if both are with-out passion; if it is not in a sleeping-room; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.43.2.3

The Third

¹ *piṭṭhivaṃsa*. Vin-a.856 says that if such a sleeping-room is among four large rooms, then *piṭṭhivaṃsaṃ atikkamitvā* means going beyond the middle (of the house), *iminā majjhātikka-maṃ dasseti*. The word *piṭṭhivaṃsa* occurs at Dhp-a.1.52 (translated, *Buddhist Legends* 1.174, as “the central rafter of the hut”) and at MN-a.3.167. ² = Vin.4.161.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 44

Bu-Pc.44.1.1
BD.2.357

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having gone to the house of a friend, sat down in a private place on a secluded seat together with his wife. Then that man looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.96

“How can master Upananda sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with my wife?”

Monks heard that man who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, sat down ... with a woman?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, sit down ... with a woman? Foolish man, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should sit down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman, there is an offence of expiation.**”¹

Bu-Pc.44.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

BD.2.358

Woman² means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female

¹ Cf. the *aniyatas*, BD.1.330ff.; also Bu-Pc.30 (where monks are forbidden to sit down in private with a nun), and Bu-Pc.45. ² From here to end Bu-Pc.44.2.2, cf. BD.1.332.

departed one, not a female animal, even a girl born this very day, much more an older one.

Together with means: together.

A private place means: private from the eye, private from the ear. Private from the eye means: if covering the eye, or raising the eyebrow, or raising the head, he is unable to see. Private from the ear means: it is impossible to hear ordinary talk.¹

A secluded seat means: it is secluded by a wall built of wattle and daub or by a door or by a screen or by a screen-wall or by a tree or by a pillar or by a sack or by anything whatever.

Should sit down means: if a woman is sitting and a monk comes to be sitting or lying down close (to her), there is an offence of expiation; if a monk is sitting and a woman comes to be sitting or lying down close (to him), there is an offence of expiation. Or if both are sitting or if both are lying down, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a woman² when it is a woman (and) sits down in a private place on a secluded seat, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a woman ... If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is a woman ... offence of expiation. If he sits down in a private place on a secluded seat with a female *yakkha* or with a female departed one or with a eunuch or with an animal in woman's form, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a woman when it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is not a woman, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.44.2.2

Vin.4.97

There is no offence if some learned friend comes to be (present); if he stands, does not sit; if he is not desirous of a private place; if he sits down thinking about something else; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

Bu-Pc.44.2.3

BD.2.359

The Fourth

¹ Cf. above, BD.2.301. ² Cf. above, BD.2.202, BD.2.206. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.301, and Vin.4.269.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 45

Bu-Pc.45.1.1
BD.2.360

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having gone to the house of a friend, sat down in a private place together with his wife, the one with the other. Then that man ... spread it about, saying:

“How can master Upananda sit down in a private place together with a woman, the one with the other?”

Monks heard this man who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, sit down in a private place together with a woman, the one with the other?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, sat down ... the one with the other?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, sit down ... the one with the other? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should sit down in a private place together with a woman, the one with the other, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bu-Pc.45.2.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal, one who is learned, competent to know good speech and bad speech, what is lewd and what is not lewd.²

BD.2.361

¹ Cf. the *anīyatas*, BD.1.330ff., and Bu-Pc.30, Bu-Pc.44, above. ² =BD.1.215f., BD.1.337.

Together with means: together.¹

The one with, the other means: there is a monk and also a woman.²

A private place means: ... private from the eye ... ordinary talk.³

Bu-Pc.45.3.1

Should sit down means: ... (see Bu-Pc.44.2.1. *Instead of* in a private place on a secluded seat *read* in a private place, the one with the other) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth

Vin.4.98

¹ = BD.1.332, BD.1.337; and above, BD.2.301, BD.2.358. ² = BD.1.332. ³ = BD.1.332, and above, BD.2.301, BD.2.358.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 46

Bu-Pc.46.1.1
BD.2.362

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time the family who supported the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, invited the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, to a meal, and they invited other monks to the meal. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, used to visit¹ families before the meal. Then these monks said to these people:

“Sirs, give the meal.”

“Wait, honoured sirs, until master Upananda comes.” A second time these monks ... A third time these monks said to these people:

“Sirs, give the meal before the right time passes.”² A third time they said:

“Honoured sirs, we made the meal on account of master Upananda. Wait, honoured sirs, until master Upananda comes.”

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having visited families before the meal, returned during the day. The monks did not eat as much as expected. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, being invited, and being (provided) with a meal, call upon³ families before the meal?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, being invited, and being (provided) with a meal, called upon families before the meal?”

BD.2.363

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

¹ *payirupāsati*, or wait upon. Cf. *Vin.4.157*, most likely meaning there “to pay homage to”; and for whole of this passage cf. *Vin.1.213f.* ² By *Bu-Pc.37* monks were not allowed to eat at the wrong time—i.e., after mid-day. ³ *cārittaṃ āpajjati*.

“How can you, foolish man, being invited ... before the meal? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, being invited, and being (provided) with a meal, should call upon families before the meal, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time the family who supported the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, sent solid food for the Order, saying:

“Pointing it out as for master Upananda, it should be given to the Order.”
Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, had entered the village for alms-food. Then these people, having gone to the monastery, asked the monks: “Where, honoured sirs, is master Upananda?”

“Sirs, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, has entered the village for alms-food.”

“Honoured sirs, pointing out this solid food as for master Upananda, it should be given to the Order.”

They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, having accepted it, put it aside until Upananda comes back.”

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, thinking, “It is forbidden by the lord to call upon families before a meal,” having visited families after a meal, returned during the day.¹ The solid food was left over.² Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, call on families after a meal?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, called on families after a meal?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

¹ I.e., for the later part of it, after the meal-time. To here from beginning of this par. cf. [Vin.1.213f.](#), but this passage continues differently, ending in an exception to [Bu-Pc.35.](#) ² *khādaniyam ussādiyittha.* Cf. *ussādiyimsu* at [Vin.2.167](#), and *Vinaya Texts* iii.202, n.4.

“How can you, foolish man, call on families after a meal? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, being invited, and being (provided) with a meal, should call upon families before a meal or after a meal, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.46.3.1

Now at that time scrupulous monks,¹ at the time of giving robes, did not visit families; little robe-material accrued. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at the time of giving robes, to visit families. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, being invited, and being (provided) with a meal, should call upon families before a meal or after a meal, except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case this is the right time: the time of giving robes; this is the right time in this case.”² And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.46.4.1

Now at that time monks³ were making robes and they came to be in need of needles and thread and scissors. The monks, being scrupulous, did not visit families. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at the time of making robes, to visit families. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, being invited and being (provided) with a meal, should call upon families before a meal or after a meal, except at the right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case this is the right time: the time of giving robes, the time of making robes; this is the right time in this case.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.307](#), [BD.2.318](#). ² At [Vin.1.254](#) one of the five things allowed to monks after the *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made is going to houses of people who have not invited them.

³ Cf. above, [BD.2.308](#), [BD.2.318](#).

Bu-Pc.46.5.1

Now at that time monks became ill and came to be in need of medicines. The monks, being scrupulous, did not visit families...

“I allow you, monks, to visit families, having asked (for permission) if a monk be there.¹ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, being invited and being (provided) with a meal, not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, should call upon families before a meal or after a meal, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case a right time is the time of giving robes, the time of making robes²; this is the right time in this case.**”

Bu-Pc.46.6.1

BD.2.366

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Invited means: invited to any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals.³

With a meal means: that to which he is invited with a meal.

If a monk be there means: he is able to enter having asked (for permission).

If a monk be not there means: he is unable to enter having asked (for permission).

Before the meal means: invited to it, he is one who has not eaten it.

After the meal means: invited to it, even (as much as) becomes eaten with a blade of grass.⁴

A family means: there are four (kinds of) families: a noble family, a brahmin family, a merchant family, a low-caste family.⁵

Should call on families means: there is an offence of wrong-doing for entering the precincts of the house of another. If he makes the first foot

¹ *santaṃ bhikkhuṃ, āpucchā*. Cf. Vin.4.165, where, in Bu-Pc.75, *āpucchā* and *anāpucchā* occur first without the phrase *santaṃ bhikkhuṃ* and then with it. *Vinaya Texts* i.42 has “without having previously spoken about it to a Bhikkhu, if there is one there,” and *Vinaya Texts* i.53 has “without having informed a Bhikkhu if one is present.” Cf. also *anāpucchā* in Bu-Pc.14, Vin.4.39, translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.34, “without saying anything to anybody.” ² Time of illness seems to be overlooked here. Cf. above, BD.2.308, BD.2.318. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.51, BD.2.324, BD.2.333. The five are given at BD.2.330. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.2.328. ⁵ Cf. BD.1.325; Vin.4.80, Vin.4.272.

cross the threshold,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes the second foot cross, there is an offence of expiation.²

Except at a right time means: setting aside a right time.

Time of giving robes means: the last month of the rainy, season when the *kaṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made, the five months when the *kaṭhina* cloth is (formally) made.³

Time of making robes means: when the robes are being made.

Bu-Pc.46.6.2

If he thinks that he is invited when he is invited (and), except at the right time, calls on families before the meal or after the meal, not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is invited ... If he thinks that he is not invited when he is invited ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that he is invited when he is not invited, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not invited, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not invited when he is not invited, there is no offence.

BD.2.367

Vin.4.101

Bu-Pc.46.6.3

There is no offence, if at the right time, he enters having asked (for permission) if a monk be there; if he enters not having asked (for permission) if a monk be not there; if the way is through the house of another; if the way is through the precincts of a house; if he is going into a village⁴; if he is going to the nuns' quarters; if he is going to a sleeping-place of adherents of other sects⁵; if he is going on his way back⁶; if he is going to a house for food⁷; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁸

The Sixth

¹ *ummāra*. At Vin.4.160 *indakhīla* is defined as the threshold (*ummādra*) of the sleeping-room, ² = Vin.4.160. ³ Cf. above, BD.2.311; Vin.4.286. ⁴ Vin-a.857 says that if his dwelling-place is inside a village and he is going to it. ⁵ *titthiyaseyyā*. Commentary does not explain. ⁶ *paṭikkamaṇaṃ gacchati*. ⁷ *bhattiyaghara*. Vin-a.857 says, "the house where he is invited or the house of the donors of ticket-food and so on." ⁸ Cf. Vin.4.166.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 47

... among the Sakyans in Kapilavatthu at the Banyan monastery. Now at that time Mahānāma the Sakyan¹ had abundant medicine. Then Mahānāma the Sakyan approached the lord, and having approached, having greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Mahānāma the Sakyan spoke thus to the lord:

Bu-Pc.47.1.1
BD.2.368

“I want, lord, to invite the Order (to accept) medicine for four months.”

“Very good, Mahānāma; well then, you, Mahānāma, invite the Order (to accept) medicine for four months.”

The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to accept² an invitation (to accept) a requisite for four months.”

Then monks asked Mahānāma the Sakyan for a little medicine, (although) Mahānāma the Sakyan had abundant medicine as before.³ A second time did Mahānāma the Sakyan approach the lord ... spoke thus to the lord:

Bu-Pc.47.1.2

“I want, lord, to invite the Order (to accept) medicine for an additional four months.”

“Very good, Mahānāma; well then, you, Mahānāma, invite the Order (to accept) medicine for an additional four months.”

BD.2.369

¹ Mahānāma Sakka, a cousin of Gotama, and belonging to a Sakyan family of Kapilavatthu. He had not entered the Order, or he would have been called Sakyaputtiya, literally son of the Sakyan(s), a distinction which should therefore be preserved in translations. Referred to at AN.i.26 as an *upāsaka*, chief of those who give choice things. Cf. AN-a.1.393. ² *sāditum*, to consent to, to permit. ³ *tath'eva*.

The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to accept a renewed invitation.”¹

Bu-Pc.47.1.3

Then monks asked Mahānāma the Sakyan for just² a little medicine, (although) Mahānāma the Sakyan had abundant medicine as before. A third time did Mahānāma the Sakyan approach the lord ... spoke thus to the lord:

Vin.4.102

“I want, lord, to invite the Order (to accept) medicine for life.”³

“Very good, Mahānāma; well then, you, Mahānāma, invite the Order (to accept) medicine for life.”

The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to accept a permanent invitation.”⁴

Bu-Pc.47.1.4

Now at that time the group of six monks had become improperly dressed, improperly clothed, not decently attired.⁵ Mahānāma the Sakyan became a speaker⁶:

“Why are you, honoured sirs, improperly dressed, improperly clothed, not decently attired? On going forth, should not one become properly dressed, properly clothed, decently attired?”

BD.2.370

The group of six monks grumbled at Mahānāma the Sakyan. Then it occurred to the group of six monks: “Now, in what way could we bring shame⁷ to Mahānāma the Sakyan?” Then it occurred to the group of six

¹ *punapavāraṇā*, or a further, additional offer or invitation. Cf. AN-a.1.393, where, after a year, the teacher does not consent to Mahānāma’s giving for any further period. ² *yeva*. ³ One of the boons conferred on Visākhā was that she might give medicines for the sick for life, Vin.1.292ff. ⁴ *niccavāraṇā*. ⁵ *dunnivatthā duppārūtā anākappasampannā*. Cf. Vin.1.44, where monks went for alms like this, and Vin.2.212, where they went to the refectory like this, and spread out their outer cloaks (*saṅghāṭi*). See *Vinaya Texts* i.152, *Vinaya Texts* iii.285 for slightly different translations, and see above, BD.2.32, n.3, n.4, on *nivattha* and *pāruta*. Rules for going properly clad and with decent deportment into houses for alms are given at Vin.2.213, Vin.2.215, and Bu-Sk.31–Bu-Sk.55=Vin.4.191ff. The word *ākappasampanna* occurs at AN.iii.78, “it is hard to find one gone forth when old who is *ākappā*°.” ⁶ *vattā hoti*. Cf. *vattar* at AN.i.32, AN.v.79; DN.i.139. ⁷ *maṅkuṃ kareyyāma*. Cf. above, BD.2.178.

monks: "The Order is invited by Mahānāma the Sakyan (to accept) medicine. Come, your reverences, let us ask Mahānāma the Sakyan for ghee." Then the group of six monks approached Mahānāma the Sakyan, and having approached they spoke thus to Mahānāma the Sakyan:

"Sir, we want a *doṇa*¹ measure of ghee."

"Honoured sirs, wait this day (only)²; people are going to the cattle-pen to get ghee; you may fetch it in the morning."

A second time ... A third time did the group of six monks speak thus: ... " ... in the morning."

"Do you, sir, not give what you invited (us to accept) because you do not desire to give what you invited (us to accept)?"

Then Mahānāma the Sakyan looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"How can these revered sirs, being told: 'Wait this day (only), honoured sirs,' not wait?"

Monks heard Mahānāma the Sakyan as he ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this group of six monks being told by Mahānāma the Sakyan, 'Wait this day (only), honoured sirs,' not wait?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, being told ... did not wait?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, being told by Mahānāma the Sakyan ... not wait? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When a monk is not ill, an invitation (to accept) a requisite³ for four months may be accepted, unless there be a renewed invitation, unless there be a permanent invitation. If one should accept for longer than that, there is an offence of expiation."

BD.2.371

Vin.4.103

Bu-Pc.47.2.1

When a monk is not ill, an invitation (to accept) a requisite for four months may be accepted means: an invitation (to accept) a requisite

¹ See BD.1.104, n.2. ² Cf. Vin.3.22of. = above, BD.2.64. ³ Or requisites.

may be accepted by one who is ill.¹

And a **renewed invitation** may be accepted means: if he thinks, ‘When I become ill, then I will ask.’

And a **permanent invitation** may be accepted means: if he thinks, ‘When I become ill, then I will ask.’

If **one should accept for longer than that** means: there is an invitation limited to medicines, not limited to nights²; there is an invitation limited to nights, not limited to medicines; there is an invitation limited to medicines and limited to nights; there is an invitation neither limited to medicines nor limited to nights.

Limited to medicines means: if he says, “I invite (them to accept) just these medicines,” medicines come to be taken up.

Limited to nights means: if he says, “I invite (them to accept) on just these nights,” nights come to be taken up.

Limited to medicines and limited to nights means: if he says, “I invite (them to accept) just these medicines on just these nights,” medicines come to be taken up and nights come to be taken up.

BD.2.372

Neither limited to medicines nor limited to nights means: there come to be medicines that are not taken up and there come to be nights that are not taken up.

In “limited to medicines,” if, setting aside those medicines which he came to be invited (to accept), he asks for other medicines, there is an offence of expiation. In “limited to nights,” if, setting aside those nights for which he came to be invited (to accept), he asks for other nights, there is an offence of expiation. In “limited to medicines and limited to nights,” if setting aside those medicines which he came to be invited (to accept), if setting aside those nights for which he came to be invited (to accept), he asks for other medicines for other nights, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Vin-a.857 says, if at that time he is not ill, it (i.e., the invitation) should not be rejected; if he becomes ill, he says, ‘I will ask.’ ² *bhesajjapariyantā na rattipariyantā*. Cf. above, **BD.2.220**, *āpattipariyantā na kulapariyantā*. Cf. also **Vin.2.59**, *āpattipariyantā ca rattipariyantā ca*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.416 translates for the latter, “the duration of the times,” while *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “limitation of the probationary period.” Here the limitation to nights (the Indian way of saying “days”) seems to refer to the length of time or to particular nights for which the invitation would hold good.

In “neither limited to medicines nor limited to nights” there is no offence.

If he asks for medicine that is not to be used as medicine,¹ there is an offence of expiation. If he asks for one medicine that may be used as a different medicine,² there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is for longer than that when it is for longer than that (and) asks for medicine, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is for longer than that ... If he thinks that it is not for longer than that -when it is for longer than that ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is for longer than that when it is not for longer than that, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not for longer than that, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not for longer than that when it is not for longer than that, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.47.2.2

There is no offence if he asks for those medicines which he came to be invited (to accept); if he asks for those nights for which he came to be invited (to accept); if he asks, explaining, ‘Of those medicines which we were invited by you (to accept) we need this and that medicine’; if he asks, explaining, ‘Those nights for which we were invited by you have passed and we need medicine’; if they belong to relations; if they are invited; if it is for the sake of another; if it is by means of his own property; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.47.2.3

BD.2.373

Vin.4.104

The Seventh

¹ Vin-a.858 says that if he can keep himself going on mixed food, it is not called “used as medicine.” ² Vin-a.858 says that if offered ghee he asks for oil, if offered an *āḷhaka* measure (he asks for) a *doṇa* measure.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 48

Bu-Pc.48.1.1
BD.2.374

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time King Pasenadi of Kosala came to march out against an army.¹ The group of six monks went to see the army fighting.² Then King Pasenadi of Kosala saw the group of six monks coming from afar; on seeing them, sending for them, he spoke thus:

“Why do you, honoured sirs, come here?”

“Sire, we want to see³ your Majesty.”

“What, honoured sirs, is the good of seeing me since it is the battle you delight in?⁴ Should not the lord be seen?”

People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, come to see an army fighting? For us it is not profitable and for us it is ill-gotten; such as we come with the army for the sake of livelihood, on account of child and wife.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks go to see an army fighting?”

They told this matter to the lord...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, went to see an army fighting?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, go to see an army fighting? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this

¹ *senāya abbhuyyāto hoti. Vin-a.858, abbhuyyāto ti abhiuyyāto, parasenarū abhimukho gamis-sāmī ti nagarato niggato ti attho,* the meaning is gone out from the town, thinking, ‘I will go forth towards the opposing army.’” *Abbhuyyāta* occurs at [Vin.1.342](#); [MN.ii.124](#). ² *uyyutta*, striving. ³ *daṭṭhukāma. Cf. Snp.685.* ⁴ *yuddhābhinandinā. Cf. Vin.1.73.*

rule of training should be set forth:

Whatever monk should go to see an army fighting, there is an offence of expiation.”

BD.2.375

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.105

Now at that time the uncle of a certain monk became ill in the army. He sent a messenger to that monk, saying: “I am indeed ill in the army, let the revered sir come. I want the revered sir to come.”

Bu-Pc.48.2.1

Then it occurred to that monk: “A rule of training laid down by the lord says: ‘There should be no going to see the army fighting,’ but my uncle is ill in the army. What line of conduct should be followed by me?” He told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to go to an army when there is sufficient reason for it.¹ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk should go to see an army fighting, unless there is sufficient reason for it, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.48.3.1

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Army fighting means: having gone out from the village, it comes to be camped or marched forth.² **Army** means elephants, horses, chariots, infantry.³ An elephant (has) twelve men,⁴ a horse (has) three men,⁵ a chariot (has) four men,⁶ the infantry (has) four men, hands on arrows.⁷

BD.2.376

If he goes to see, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where he sees, there is an offence of expiation. If, having dismissed from sight,⁸ he sees again, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ *tathārūpapaccayā*. Cf. below, BD.2.399. ² *payātā*. ³ Cf. Ja.4.494. These four divisions of an army are fairly frequently alluded to in the Jātakas; see Index, under “Army,” to Cambridge translation. ⁴ Vin-a.838, four are mounted, two look after each foot. ⁵ Vin-a.858, one is mounted, two look after the feet. ⁶ Vin-a.858, one is the charioteer, one the warrior, two look after the linch-pins. ⁷ *sarahatthā*, meaning presumably that each unit of infantry consists of archers. ⁸ *dassanūpacāraṃ vijahitvā*. Cf. above, BD.2.352. Vin-a.858 says, “if at a distance or down in a hollow he does not see, thinking, ‘Standing here, it is impossible to see,’ going to another place, there is a *pācittiya* in every act of seeing.”

Unless there is sufficient reason for it means: setting aside a sufficient reason for it.

Bu-Pc.48.3.2

If he thinks that there is fighting when there is fighting, (and) goes to see, unless there is sufficient reason for it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether there is fighting ... If he thinks that there is not fighting when there is fighting ... offence of expiation. If he goes to see one or other,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where he sees, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If having dismissed from sight, he sees again, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that there is fighting when there is not fighting,² there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether there is not fighting, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that there is not fighting when there is not fighting, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.48.3.3

There is no offence if, standing in the monastery, he sees; if it comes to a place where a monk is resting or to a place where he is sitting down or to a place where he is lying down³; if he, going along the opposite road, sees it; if there is a sufficient reason for it; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Eighth

¹ *ekamekarīṃ*. Vin-a.858, one or another of the four divisions of the army, elephants and so on. ² Vin-a.858 says that one man mounted on an elephant and a man at one foot of an elephant means “not fighting”; also a king going to a pleasance or to a river is “not fighting.” ³ Cf. above, [BD.2.158](#), [BD.2.290](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 49

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having gone to the army as there was business, stayed with the army more than three nights. People ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.49.1.1
BD.2.377

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, stay with the army? For us it is not profitable and for us it is ill-gotten; such as we stop¹ with the army for the sake of livelihood, on account of child and wife.”

Monks heard these people ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks stay with the army for more than three nights?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, stayed with the army for more than three nights?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, stay with the army for more than three nights? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“If there is for a monk some reason for going to an army, that monk may stay with the army for two nights, three nights. Should he stay longer than that, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.49.2.1

¹ *paṭivasāma*, balancing the monks' staying in the army; also against “come,” *āgacchāma* of previous *pācittiya*, and which balances the monks' going to see the army.

If there is for a monk some reason for going to an army means: if there is a reason, if there is business.

BD.2.378

That monk may stay with the army for two nights, three nights means: he may stay two (or) three nights.

Should he stay longer than that means: if he stays with the army until sunset on the fourth day, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.49.2.2

If he thinks that it is more when it more than three nights, (and) stays with the army, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is more than three nights ... If he thinks that it is less when it is more than three nights ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is more when it is less than three nights, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is less than three nights, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is less when it is less than three nights, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.49.2.3

There is no offence if he stays for two (or) three nights; if he stays for less than two (or) three nights; if having stayed for two nights, having departed on the third night before dawn, he stays again¹; if he stays (because he is) ill; if he stays because there is something to be done for one who is ill or if the army becomes invested by the opposing army²; if he comes to be taken possession of by something³; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.107

The Ninth

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.197**. ² *senā vā paṭisenāya ruddhā hoti*. Vin-a.859 says, “inasmuch as its approach (or road, *sañcāra*) is cut off, so it becomes invested.” Cf. *nagaraṃ rundhati* at Ja.1.409; Ja.3.159; Ja.4.230. ³ If he is invested by an enemy or by a chief, Vin-a.859.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 50

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, staying with the army for two (or) three nights, went to a sham-fight and to the troops in array and to the massing of the army and to see a review.¹ Then a certain monk of the group of six, having gone to a sham-fight, became pierced by an arrow. People made fun of that monk, saying:

“Honoured sir, we hope it was a good battle. How many targets were obtained by you?”²

That monk, being made fun of by these people, became ashamed. People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, come to see a sham-fight? For us it is not profitable, and for us it is ill-gotten; such as we come to a sham-fight for the sake of livelihood, on account of child and wife.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks go to see a sham-fight?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, went to see a sham-fight?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, go to see a sham-fight? It is not, foolish men,

¹ *uyyodidka balagga senābyūha anīkadassana*. All occur at DN.i.6; the first at AN.v.47. Vin-a.859 explained the second term as “they know which is chief for strength,” and also says (=DN-a.85), it is the place for counting the strength (or forces)—i.e., roll-calls as at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.9. As to *vyūha*, Ja.2.406 mentions three types: *paduma*- (lotus), *cakka*- (wheel), *sakaṭa*- (waggon). ² *kati te lakkhāni laddhāni*. “Target” is *lakkha*, which also means a mark, or a high numeral, cf. *lak* (also spelt *lac*, *lack*, in modern times always implying rupees).

for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“If a monk, staying with the army for two nights, three nights, should go to a sham-fight or to the troops in array or to the massing of the army or to see a review, then is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.50.2.1

If a monk, staying with the army for two nights, three nights means: staying for two (or) three nights.

Sham-fight means: where a conflict¹ is seen.

Troops in array means: so many elephants, so many horses, so many chariots, so many infantry.

Massing of the army means: let elephants be on this side, let horses be on this side, let chariots be on this side, let foot-soldiers² be on this side.

Vin.4.108

A review means: a review of elephants, a review of horses, a review of chariots, a review of infantry. The least elephant review (has) three elephants, the least horse review (has) three horses, the least chariot review (has) three chariots, the least infantry review (has) four men as infantry, hands on arrows.

If he goes to see, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where he sees, there is an offence of expiation. If, having dismissed from sight, he sees again, there is an offence of expiation. If he goes to see one or other, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where he sees, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having dismissed from sight, he sees again, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bu-Pc.50.2.2

There is no offence if, standing in the monastery, he sees; if a conflict is seen, having come to a place where a monk is resting or to a place where he is sitting down or to a place where he is lying down; if he, going along the opposite road, sees (it); if, going as there is something to be done, he sees (it); if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.381

The Tenth

¹ *sampahāra*. ² *pattikā* here. ³ Cf. above, **BD.2.376**.

THIS IS ITS KEY

Cakes, talking, three on Upananda,
and also (the family who) supported (him),
Mahānāma, Pasenadi,
the army, pierced, these ten.

The Fifth Division: that on the Naked Ascetic

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 51

Bu-Pc.51.1.1
BD.2.382

... touring for alms in the Cetiya country,¹ set out for Bhaddavatikā.² Cowherds, goatherds, yeomen farmers, travellers saw the lord coming from afar, and seeing him they spoke thus to the lord: “Do not, lord, let the lord go to Ambatittha³; lord, in Ambatittha a serpent⁴ lives in a matted-haired ascetic’s hermitage; he has psychic potency, he is a terribly venomous snake; do not let him hurt the lord.”⁵ When they had spoken thus, the lord became silent. And a second time ... And a third time cowherds, goatherds, yeomen farmers, travellers spoke thus to the lord:

“Do not, lord, let the lord go to Ambatittha; ... do not let him hurt the lord.” And a third time the lord became silent. Then the lord, touring for alms, in the course of time arrived at Bhaddavatikā. The lord stayed there at Bhaddavatika. Then the venerable Sāgata⁶ approached the hermitage of the matted-hair ascetic of Ambatittha, and having approached, having entered the fire-room,⁷ having made ready the grass mat,⁸ he sat down cross-legged, the back erect, having caused mindfulness to be present in front of him. Then that serpent, seeing that the venerable Sāgata had entered, bad at heart,⁹ blew forth smoke. And the venerable Sāgata blew forth smoke. Then

Vin.4.109

BD.2.383

¹ *Cetiyesu. Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* 1.911 says that “the people of Ceti seem to have had two distinct settlements,” and thinks that the one referred to here is probably the later colony, lying to the east of the earlier one. ² A market-town near Kosambī. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* 2.351. ³ A village. ⁴ *nāga*. ⁵ For this passage cf. *Vin.1.24f.* and *Ja.1.360*. The *Surāpāna-jātaka* is founded on this story. ⁶ No verses in the *Theragāthā* are ascribed to him. But at *AN.i.25* he is called chief of those good at the heat-condition. See *AN-a.1.324ff.* At *Vin.1.179* he is called the lord’s attendant at that time, and performed some feats of psychic potency. ⁷ Cf. *MN.i.501. Agyāgāra* called at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.353 “fire-hut,” at *GS.5.162 (=AN.v.234)* “fire-house.” *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* article on “Ambatittha” speaks of a “fire-place.” ⁸ *tiṇasanthāraka*. ⁹ *dummano*.

that serpent, not conquering anger, blazed up, and the venerable Sāgata, having attained to the condition of heat,¹ blazed up. Then the venerable Sāgata, having mastered by heat that serpent's heat, approached Bhaddavatika. Then the lord, having stayed at Bhaddavatikā for as long as he found suitable, departed on an alms-tour to Kosambī. Lay-followers of Kosambī heard:

“They say that master Sāgata came into conflict with the serpent of Ambatittha.”

Then the lord, touring for alms, in the course of time arrived at Kosambī.

Then the lay-followers of Kosambī, having met the lord, approached the venerable Sāgata; having approached, having greeted the venerable Sāgata, they stood at a respectful distance. As they were standing at a respectful distance, the lay-followers of Kosambī spoke thus to the venerable Sāgata:

“Honoured sir, what is hard for the masters to obtain, and liked (by them)? What may we give?”

When they had spoken thus, the group of six monks spoke thus to the lay-followers of Kosambī:

“There is, your reverences, a spirituous liquor called white spirits²; it is hard for the monks to obtain, and liked (by them). Give that.”

Then the lay-followers of Kosambī having given the spirituous liquor, white spirits, in house after house, seeing that the venerable Sāgata had entered for alms-food, spoke thus to the venerable Sāgata:

“Honoured sir, let master Sāgata drink the spirituous liquor, white spirits; honoured sir, let master Sāgata drink the spirituous liquor, white spirits.”

Then the venerable Sāgata, having drunk the spirituous liquor, white spirits, in house after house, as he was departing from the town fell down at the town-gate. Then the lord, departing from the town with a great company of monks, saw the venerable Sāgata fallen down at the town-gate; seeing him, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ *tejodhātu*; cf. **BD.1.273**, where Dabba attained this same condition. ² *kāpotikā nāma pasannā*. Called in the *Surāpānajātaka*, Ja.1.360, *kāpotikā surā*, *pasannā kāpotikā* and *kāpotikā pāsanna*, translated in Cambridge edition, *Jātaka vol.i*, p.207, as “white spirits, clear white spirit.” Vin-a.859 says *kāpotikā* is a shining red colour like pigeons' feet; and *pasannā* is a synonym for *surāmaṇḍa*, the finest fermented liquor.

“Monks, take up Sāgata.”

“Yes, lord,” and these monks having answered the lord, having led the venerable Sāgata to the monastery, made him lie down with his head towards the lord. Then the venerable Sāgata, having turned round, went to sleep¹ with his feet towards the lord. Then the lord addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, formerly was not Sāgata respectful, deferential towards the Tathāgata?”

Vin.4.110

“Yes, lord.”

“But monks, is Sāgata respectful, deferential towards the Tathāgata now?”

“No, lord.”

“Monks, did not Sāgata come into conflict with the serpent of Ambatittha?”

“Yes, lord.”

“But, monks, is Sāgata able to come into conflict with the serpent of Ambatittha now?”

“No, lord.”

“But, monks, could he become unconscious, having drunk that which may be drunk?”

“No, lord.”

“Monks, it is not fitting for Sāgata, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can Sāgata drink strong drink?² It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.2.385

¹ *seyyam kappesi*, or “lay down in a sleeping-place.” ² *majja*. At Vin.1.205 *majja* was allowed to be put into oil in cases of illness. The six monks put in too much and became drunk. They were to be dealt with according to the rule (i.e., this *pācittiya*). And the amount of *majja* allowed for the oil was such that neither its colour, smell nor taste was perceptible. At DN.iii.62, DN.iii.63 it is said that *majja* should not be drunk—one of the five *silas*. Cf. also Snp.398–Snp.400.

“In drinking fermented liquor¹ and spirits² there is an offence of expiation.”

Fermented liquor means: if it is fermented liquor from flour, fermented liquor from cakes, fermented liquor from cooked rice, if it is worked-up yeast,³ if it is mixed with ingredients.⁴

Bu-Pc.51.2.1

Spirits means: if it is an extract from flowers,⁵ an extract from fruits, an extract from honey,⁶ an extract from sugar,⁷ if it is mixed with ingredients.⁸

Should drink means: if he drinks even (as much as) with a blade of grass, there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is strong drink when it is strong drink, (and) drinks it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is strong drink ... If he thinks that it is not strong drink when it is strong drink, (and) drinks it, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is strong drink when it is not strong drink, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not strong drink, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not strong drink when it is not strong drink, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.51.2.2

BD.2.386

There is no offence if he drinks that which is not strong drink though it comes to be the colour of strong drink, the smell of strong drink, the taste of strong drink; if it is in a concoction of broth, in a concoction of meat, in a concoction of oil, in molasses and emblic myrobalam⁹; if he drinks

Bu-Pc.51.2.3

¹ *surā*. ² *meraya*. At the Council of Vesālī, [Vin.2.294](#), it was affirmed that it was not allowable to drink *jalogi*, unfermented toddy; to do so would be to infringe the “*surāmerayapāne pācittiya*” ([Vin.2.307](#)). MN.i.238 states that the *acelaka*, naked ascetic, leaders do not drink *surā* or *meraya*. ³ *kiṇṇapakkhitta*. ⁴ *sambhārasaṃyuttā*. At DN-a.944, Vv-a.73, Kp-a.26, Vb-a.381 these are given as the fivefold *surā*. ⁵ *pupphāsava*. Referred to at Ja.4.117 as a *meraya*. ⁶ *madhvāsava*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says, “wine from the flower of *Bassia latifolia*.” ⁷ *gulāsava*. ⁸ = DN-a.944 = Vv-a.73 = Kp-a.26. At Vb-a.381 these are called five *āsavā* or extracts. ⁹ *āmalaka*, *Phyllanthus erablica* (*Pali-English Dictionary*). One of the fruits allowed as medicine, [Vin.1.201](#). Mentioned again as a medicine at [Vin.1.278](#).

a distilled liquor¹ that is not strong drink; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The First

¹ *ariṭṭha*, “a kind of liquor” (*Critical Pali Dictionary*).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 52

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks made one of the group of seventeen monks laugh by tickling him with the fingers. This monk, faint and unable to get his breath, died.¹ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the group of six monks make a monk laugh by tickling him with the fingers?" ...

Bu-Pc.52.1.1
BD.2.387

Vin.4.111

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks ... with the fingers?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men ... with the fingers? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"In tickling with the fingers there is an offence of expiation."

Tickling with the fingers means: if one who is ordained desiring to make laugh one who is ordained, rubs² the body with the body, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.52.2.1

BD.2.388

¹ = Vin.3.84 (BD.1.146f.). Though occurring in the *pārājika* section, this offence is there said to be one not involving defeat; but as is sometimes the case, it is not said what kind of offence it is. This suggests that Vin.3.84 was formulated earlier than Bu-Pc.52. See BD.1 Introduction, p.xxxvi, for suggestion why the offence of causing death by this treatment is not a *pārājika*; also for some translations of *aṅgulipatodaka*. So-sor-thar-pa, p.63, translated S.C. VIDYABHUSANA, 1915, p.30, gives, "pokes a person with the finger"; *Le Prātimokṣa-sūtra des Sarvāstivādīns*, translated HUBER, J. Bu-As., Nov, Bu-Pc.63 "chatouille quelqu'un avec le doigt." Buddhaghosa, Vin-a.860, defines as *aṅgulīhi upakacchādighaṭṭanaṃ vuccati*, "It is called striking (or touching, *ghattana*) the arm-pits (loins, legs, *upakacchd*), and so on, with the fingers." ² *āmasati*, see BD.1.203, n.6.

Bu-Pc.52.2.2

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained, (and) makes him laugh by tickling with the fingers, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... an offence of expiation. If he rubs something attached to the body¹ with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he rubs the body with something attached to the body ... wrong-doing. If he rubs something attached to the body with something attached to the body ... wrong-doing. If he rubs the body with something that may be cast,² there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he rubs something attached to the body with something that may be cast ... wrong-doing. If he rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he rubs the body of one who is not ordained³ with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he rubs something attached to the body with the body ... the body with something attached to the body ... something attached to the body with something attached to the body ... the body with something that may be cast ... something attached to the body with something that may be cast ... something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴

Bu-Pc.52.2.3

BD.2.389

There is no offence if, not desiring laughter, he rubs (him) if there is something to be done⁵; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Second

¹ *kāyapaṭibaddha*. Cf. *BD.1.204ff.* = *Vin.3.120ff.* ² *nissaggiya*. Cf. *BD.1.204ff.* = *Vin.3.120ff.*

³ *anupassampannaṃ kāyena kāyaṃ āmasati*. *Vin.-a.860* says that he may touch a nun for amusement, instead of one not ordained. ⁴ This surely is an error for *anāpatti*, no offence.

⁵ *sati karaṇīye* = above, *BD.2.381*. Cf. *sati paccaye* at *Vin.4.83*, *Vin.4.85ff.*

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 53

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of seventeen monks were sporting in the water of the river Aciravatī. Now at that time King Pasenadi, the Kosalan, came to be on the upper storey of the palace¹ together with Queen Mallikā. King Pasenadi, the Kosalan, saw the group of seventeen monks sporting in the water of the river Aciravati; seeing them he spoke thus to Queen Mallikā:

Bu-Pc.53.1.1
BD.2.390

Vin.4.112

“Mallikā, these who are sporting in the water are men perfected.”²

“Undoubtedly, sire, a rule of training has not been laid down by the lord, or these monks are not conversant³ (with it).”

Then it occurred to King Pasenadi, the Kosalan:

“Is there not some device by which I would not speak to the lord but (yet) the lord would know that these monks sported in the water?”

Then King Pasenadi, the Kosalan, having had the group of seventeen monks summoned, gave them a large sugar-ball,⁴ saying:

“Honoured sirs, give this sugar-ball to the lord.”

The group of seventeen monks, taking that sugar-ball, approached the lord, and having approached they spoke thus to the lord:

“Lord, King Pasenadi, the Kosalan, gives this sugar-ball to the lord.”

“But, monks, where did the King see you?”

BD.2.391

“Sporting in the water of the river Aciravatī, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, sport in the water? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of

¹ *uparipāsāḍavaragalo hoti*; cf. Vin.4.158, and on *pāsāḍa*, cf. above, BD.2.16, n.5. ² *arahanto*.

³ *a-ppakata-ññū*. *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives, “not knowing what is appointed ... ignorant of the main point.” Cf. Vin.4.143. ⁴ *guḷapiṇḍa*.

training should be set forth:

“In playing¹ in the water, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.53.2.1

Playing in the water means: if desiring, laughter he immerses (the part) above the ankle in the water, or draws it out or swims,² there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.53.2.2

If he thinks that it is playing when it is playing in the water, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is playing in the water ... If he thinks that it is not playing when it is playing in the water, there is an offence of expiation. If he sports in the water with (the part) below the ankle, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he sports with a boat,³ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he strikes the water with the hand or with the foot or with a stick⁴ or with a sherd, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he sports with water in a bowl,⁵ or with sour rice-gruel or with milk or with butter-milk or with dye-stuff or with urine or with mud, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is playing when it is not playing in the water, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not playing in the water, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not playing when it is not playing in the water, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.53.2.3

BD.2.392

Vin.4.113

There is no offence if, not desiring laughter, plunging into the water if there is something to be done, he immerses or draws out or swims; if going to the other side,⁶ he immerses or draws out or swims; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third

¹ *hāsadhama*, or, a thing of laughter. Vin-a.861 *udakakīlikā vuccati*. ² *palavati*, Vin-a.861 *tarati*, crosses, using either his hands or feet. See Dhp.334, Thag.399. ³ *nāvāya*; hauling it up on a bank or propelling it with rudder and oars, Vin-a.861. ⁴ Cf. AN.i.124=Pp.30, Pp.36. ⁵ *bhājanagata*, cf. BD.1.77, BD.1.85, and notes. ⁶ *pāraṃ*.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 54

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Channa indulged in bad habits.¹ The monks said:

Bu-Pc.54.1.1
BD.2.393

“Reverend Channa, do not do that, it is not allowable.” He did the same (things) out of disrespect.² Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Channa do a disrespectful thing?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Channa, did a disrespectful thing?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, do a disrespectful thing? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**In disrespect there is an offence of expiation.**”³

Disrespect means: there are two (kinds of) disrespect: disrespect for a man and disrespect for *dhamma*. **Disrespect for a man** means: if being spoken to by one who is ordained concerning what is laid down, thinking, ‘This one is suspended⁴ or disparaged⁵ or blameworthy,⁶ his bidding will not come to be done,’ he does a disrespectful thing, there is an offence of

Bu-Pc.54.2.1

BD.2.394

¹ Cf. [BD.1.309](#); [Vin.4.35](#), [Vin.4.141](#). ² *anādariyaṃ paṭicca karoti yeva*. Cf. [Vin.4.185](#), [Vin.4.349](#). At [Vin.2.220](#) the group of six monks behaved disrespectfully (*anādariyaṃ paṭicca*) to the *theras*. At Pp.20 = Ds.1325 = Vb.359 *anādariyaṃ* is one of the terms used to define *dovacassatā*, contumacy. Cf. [AN.v.146](#), where the word occurs with *dovacassatā* and *pāpamittatā*. ³ At [Vin.1.176](#) there are three cases of *anādariyaṃ pācittiyaṃ* connected with ill monks and the Pavāraṇā ceremony. ⁴ *ukkhittaka*. Cf. [Vin.1.97](#), [Vin.1.121](#); [Vin.2.61](#), [Vin.2.173](#), [Vin.2.213](#); [Vin.4.137](#). ⁵ *vamblīta*. ⁶ *garahita*. Cf. [Dhp.30](#), [SnP.313](#).

expiation. **Disrespect for dhamma** means: if being spoken to by one who is ordained concerning what is laid down, (saying), ‘How may this be lost or destroyed or disappear? or, he does not wish to learn this,’¹ he does a disrespectful thing, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.54.2.2

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained (and) does a disrespectful thing, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If being spoken to by one who is ordained concerning what is not laid down,² thinking, ‘This does not conduce to expunging (evil)³ nor to punctiliousness nor to graciousness nor to decreasing (the obstructions) nor to putting forth energy,’⁴ he does a disrespectful thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If being spoken to by one who is not ordained concerning what is laid down or concerning what is not laid down, thinking, ‘This does not conduce to expunging (evil) ... nor to putting forth energy,’ he does a disrespectful thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁵

Vin.4.114

Bu-Pc.54.2.3

BD.2.395

There is no offence if he speaks, saying: ‘Thus the version⁶ of our teachers is an interrogation’⁷; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fourth

¹ I.e., according to Vin-a.861, “what is laid down.” ² Vin-a.861, what has not been handed down in the Suttas or Abhidhamma. ³ *sallekhā*. ⁴ See BD.1.37 (and notes), BD.1.296.

⁵ Doubtless should read *anāpatti*, no offence. ⁶ *uggaha*. See Vism.96, Vism.99, translated, PTS edition, ‘Version’ and ‘text.’ Vin-a.861 says, ‘in this matter the version of the teacher as to respect should not be adopted, but the version of the teacher that has come down as custom should be adopted.’ ⁷ *paripucchā*. Perhaps ‘questionable.’ Cf. above, BD.2.271, BD.2.275, BD.2.278.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 55

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks frightened¹ the group of seventeen monks. These, being frightened, cried out. Monks spoke thus:

Bu-Pc.55.1.1
BD.2.396

“Why do you, your reverences, cry out?”

“Your reverences, this group of six monks frightened us.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six monks frighten a monk?” ... (see Bu-Pc.52.1) ...
“... should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should frighten a monk, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.55.2.1

Whatever means: is monk to be understood in this case.

Monk means: another monk.

Should frighten means: if one who is ordained, desirous of frightening one who is ordained, arranges a form or a sound or a smell or a taste or a touch,² whether he is afraid or whether he is not afraid, there is an offence of expiation. If he points out the wilds of thieves, or the wilds of beasts of prey, or the wilds of goblins,³ whether he is afraid or whether he is not afraid, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ *bhimsāpentī*. ² Cf. BD.1.133f. (= Vin.3.77f.). Vin-a.862 says, “offering a form and so on is to be explained according to the meaning in *manussaviggaha*,” human form—i.e., in Commentary, on Bu-Pj.3. ³ *pisācakantāra*. At Ja.1.99 five kinds of *kantāra* are given, the first two as above and three others; each is defined. Four kinds at Cnd.630.

Bu-Pc.55.2.2

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained (and) frightens (him), there is an offence of expiation.

BD.2.397

If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained (and) frightens (him), there is an offence of expiation. If he is desirous of frightening one who is not ordained (and) arranges a form ... a touch, whether he is afraid or whether he is not afraid, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he points out the wilds of thieves ... or whether he is not afraid, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

Vin.4.115

Bu-Pc.55.2.3

There is no offence if, not desirous of frightening, he arranges a form or a sound or a smell or a taste or a touch, or points out the wilds of thieves or the wilds of beasts of prey or the wilds of goblins; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth

¹ Doubtless should read, as in Bu-Pc.54, *anāpatti*, no offence.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 56

... was staying in the Bhagga country at Crocodile Hill¹ in Bhesakala grove² in the deer-park. Now at that time monks, kindling in the winter time a fire of large hollow logs, warmed themselves.³ And in that hollow a dark poisonous snake⁴ was scorched by the fire; issuing forth, he pursued the monks. The monks ran about here and there.⁵ Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks, kindling a fire, warm themselves?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, kindling a fire, warmed yourselves?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men, kindling a fire, warm themselves? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, desirous of warming himself, should kindle or should cause a fire to be kindled, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

¹ Suṃsumāragiri. Vin-a.862 says it is the name of a town. It was probably the capital. Here were formulated two other Vinaya rules: Vin.2.127, Vin.4.198; cf. Vin.5.145. Anumāna Sutta, MN.i.95, Māratajjaniya Sutta, MN.i.332, Bodhirājakumāra Sutta, MN.ii.91, uttered here. ² Called after the *yakkhini* who presided there, SN-a.ii.249. ³ *visibbesuṃ*, from *visibbeti* = *visiveti*, to thaw, to warm oneself; another *visibbeti* means to sew. Cf. *visibbesuṃ* at Vin.1.31-32, where the Jaṭilas “warmed themselves” at vessels of burning fire after emerging from the cold river. Cf. *visivetvā* at Mi.47; and *visivetuṃ* twice, at Ja.2.68 with variant readings, one being *visibbituṃ*. ⁴ *kaṇhasappa*. Cf. Vin.3.20. ⁵ *tahaṃ tahaṃ*. Cf. Ja.1.384.

Bu-Pc.56.1.2

Now at that time monks became ill. Monks, inquiring after the ill ones, spoke thus to the ill monks: “We hope that your reverences are better, we hope that you are keeping going.”

“Formerly, your reverences, we, kindling a fire, used to warm ourselves; thus there came to be comfort for us. But now it is forbidden by the lord, (and) being scrupulous, we do not warm ourselves; thus there comes to be no comfort for us.”¹

They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, kindling or causing a fire to be kindled, to warm yourselves. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, not being ill, desirous of warming himself, should kindle or should cause a fire to be kindled, there is an offence of expiation.”

Vin.4.116

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.56.2.1

Now at that time monks, being scrupulous, did not light a lamp in the fire-room² or in the bath-room.³ They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to kindle or to cause a fire to be kindled when there is a sufficient reason for it.⁴ And thus ... should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, not being ill, desirous of warming himself, should kindle or should cause a fire to be kindled, unless there is sufficient reason for it, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.56.3.1

BD.2.400

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Not being ill means: he for whom there comes to be comfort without a fire.

Ill means: he for whom there does not come to be comfort without a fire.

Desirous of warming himself means: wishing to heat himself.⁵

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.277](#), [BD.2.342](#), below, [BD.2.402](#). ² *jotika*, according to Vin-a.862, a fire for the purpose of sweating: *pattapacanasedakammādisu jotikaraṇe*. ³ See *Vinaya Texts* i.157, n.2; *Vinaya Texts* iii.103. ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.2.375](#). ⁵ *tappitukāma*.

A fire¹ means: what is called a fire.²

Should kindle means: if he himself kindles, there is an offence of expiation.

Should cause to be kindled means: if he commands another, there is an offence of expiation. When once commanded, if he kindles much, there is an offence of expiation.

Unless there is a sufficient reason for it means: setting aside a sufficient reason for it.³

If he thinks that he is not ill when he is not ill, (and) desirous of warming himself, kindles or causes a fire to be kindled, unless there is a sufficient reason for it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ill ... If he thinks that he is ill when he is not ill ... offence of expiation. If he picks up a fallen fire-brand,⁴ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ill when he is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ill when he is ill, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.56.3.2

There is no offence if he is ill; if he warms himself at one made by another; if he warms himself over raked-out embers⁵; if at a lamp, in a fire-room, in a bath-room; if there is a sufficient reason for it; if there are dangers⁶; if he is mad; if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.56.3.3

The Sixth

¹ *joti*. ² *aggi*. ³ Vin-a.862 says, "setting aside lamps and so on, there is no offence in kindling (a fire) when there is another suitable reason for it." ⁴ *paṭilātaṃ ukkhipati*. Vin-a.862 says *ḍayhamānaṃ alāṭaṃ patitaṃ* (variant reading *patati taṃ*) *ukkhipati*, if he picks up a glowing fire-brand that has fallen. ⁵ *vitacchitaṅgāra*. ⁶ Vin-a.862—i.e., from nasty beasts of prey and beings other than human.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 57

Bu-Pc.57.1.1
BD.2.401

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time monks used to bathe in the Tapodā.¹ Now at that time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, thinking: "I will bathe (my) head," having gone to the Tapodā, waited for (them) at a respectful distance, thinking: "(I will wait) as long as the masters bathe." The monks bathed until the dark of the night. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, bathing (his) head at the wrong time, staying outside the town because the town gate was closed, when it was early morning² approached the lord, anointed,³ perfumed⁴; having approached, having greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the lord spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

Vin.4.117

"Why do you, sire, come in the early morning, anointed, perfumed?"

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha told this matter to the lord. Then the lord roused ... delighted King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with *dhamma*-talk. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having been roused ... delighted by the lord with *dhamma*-talk, rising from his seat, greeting the lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks, though having seen the king, not knowing moderation, bathed?"

BD.2.402

"It is true, lord."

¹ A lake, and also a river; literally the hot waters. The lake was cool, but the river flowing from it was hot; see Vin.3.108 (BD.1.188), quoted at DN-a.1.35, Ud-a.110. ² Cf. above, BD.2.274.

³ *asambhinnena*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that this at the above passage is the "name of a kind of ointment." ⁴ *vilepanena*.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men, though having seen the king, not knowing moderation, bathe? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.57.2.1

Now at that time monks, being scrupulous, did not bathe in the hot weather, in the fever weather; they lay down¹ with limbs covered with sweat; robes and lodgings got soiled. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, in the hot weather, in the fever weather, to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. This is a right time in this case: thinking, ‘a month and a half of the summer remains,’ (and) ‘the first month of the rains’—these are the two and a half months when there is hot weather, when there is fever weather. In this case this is a right time.”

Vin.4.118

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.57.3.1

Now at that time monks became ill. Monks, inquiring after the ill ones, spoke thus to the ill monks: “We hope that your reverences are better, we hope that you are keeping going.”

Formerly, your reverences, we used to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month; thus there came to be comfort for us. But now it is forbidden

BD.2.403

¹ *sayanti*, or, went to sleep.

by the lord, (and) being scrupulous, we do not bathe; thus there comes to be no comfort for us.”¹

They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. This is a right time in this case ... when there is fever weather, at a time of illness. In this case this is a right time.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.57.4.1

Now at that time monks making repairs, being scrupulous, did not bathe; they lay down with limbs covered with sweat; robes and lodgings got soiled. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at a time of work,² to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation ...”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.57.5.1

Now at that time monks, having gone on a journey, being scrupulous, did not bathe; they lay down with limbs covered with sweat ... They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at a time of going on a journey, to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. This is a right time in this case: ...”

BD.2.404

¹ Cf. above, [BD.2.277](#), [BD.2.342](#), [BD.2.399](#). ² Or, of building, *kammasamaya*; see the Old Commentary’s definition below.

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time several monks, making robes in the open air, became assailed¹ by a dusty wind, and the god was raining little by little.² The monks, being scrupulous, did not bathe; they lay down with damp limbs; robes and lodgings got soiled. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, at a time of wind and rain,³ to bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should bathe (at intervals of) less than half a month, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. In this case this is a right time: thinking, ‘a month and a half of the summer remains,’ (and) ‘the first month of the rains’ — these are the two and a half months when there is hot weather, when there is fever weather; at a time of illness, at a time of work, at a time of going on a journey, at a time of wind and rain. This is a right time in this case.”

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

Less than half a month⁴ means: less than half a month.⁵

Should bathe means: if he bathes with chunam or with clay,⁶ in each action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when the bathing is completed there is an offence of expiation.

Except at a right time means: setting a right time to one side.

Hot weather means: a month and a half of the summer remains. **Fever weather** means: the first month of the rains. Thinking, ‘these are the two and a half months when there is hot weather, when there is fever weather,’ there may be bathing.

¹ *okiṇṇā*. ² *devo ca thokaṃ thokaṃ phusāyati*. Cf. SN.i.184, Ud.5, *devo ekaṃ ekaṃ phusāyati*.

³ *vātavuṭṭhi*. Cf. AN.iii.378; Snp-a.34. ⁴ *oren’ addhamāsaṃ*. ⁵ *ūnakaddhamāsaṃ*. ⁶ Cf. Vin.1.202, where monks with affections of the skin are allowed to use *cuṇṇa*, chunam, while those who are in health are permitted *mattikā*, clay. Cf. also Vin.1.47=52, and see notes at Vinaya Texts i.157; Vin.2.120, Vin.2.220, Vin.2.224.

Time of illness means: if there comes to be no comfort for one without bathing; thinking, 'it is a time of illness,' there may be bathing.

Time of work means: even a cell comes to be cleaned; thinking, 'it is a time of work,' there may be bathing.

Time of going on a journey means: saying, 'we will go half a *yojana*,' there may be bathing; there may be bathing when going, there may be bathing when gone.¹

Time of wind and rain means: if monks become assailed by a dusty wind, if two or three drops of rain come to be fallen on the body, thinking, 'it is a time of wind and rain,' there may be bathing.

Bu-Pc.57.7.2

If he thinks that it is less when it is less than half a month, (and) bathes, except at a right time, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is less than half a month ... If he thinks that it is more when it is less than half a month ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is less when it is more than half a month, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is more than half a month, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is more when it is more than half a month, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.57.7.3

There is no offence if it is at a right time; if he bathes at (intervals of) the half-month; if he bathes (at intervals of) more than half a month; if he bathes going to the further bank²; if he is in nothing but bordering districts³; if there are accidents⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ Cf. above, **BD.2.312**. ² *pāraṃ gacchanto nhāyati*. Cf. above, **BD.2.392**. ³ *sabbapaccantimesu janapadesu*. Buddhaghosa gives no explanation. ⁴ Such as being pursued by bees, Vin-a.863.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 58

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time many monks and wanderers were going along the high-road from Sāketa to Sāvattthī. On the way, thieves, having issued forth, robbed them. At Sāvattthī hirelings of the king,¹ having issued forth, having seized these thieves with the goods, sent a messenger to the monks, saying:

“Let the revered sirs come; let each, recognising his own robe, take it.”²

The monks did not recognise them. They³ looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the revered sirs not recognise their own robes?”⁴

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, having given reasoned talk on what is befitting, on what is suitable, addressed the monks, saying:

“On account of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training for monks based on ten grounds: for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order ... for establishing what is verily *dhamma*, for following discipline.⁵ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“When a monk obtains a new robe, any one mode of disfigurement⁶

Bu-Pc.58.1.1
BD.2.406

BD.2.407

¹ *rājabhāṭa*, persons ill royal service. At Vin.1.74 it is a *dukkaṭa* to confer the *pabbajā* on these. Cf. Vin.1.88. ² *sakaṃ sakaṃ cīvaraṃ sañjānitvā gaṇhantu*. ³ I.e., the hirelings. ⁴ *attano attano cīvaraṃ na sañjānissanti*. ⁵ = Vin.3.21 (BD.1.37f.) = BD.3.232 (above, BD.2.87) = AN.i.98, AN.i.100 (GS.1.84, GS.1.85) = AN.v.70 (GS.5.50).

of the three modes of disfigurement must be taken¹: either dark green or mud(-colour) or black.²” If a monk should make use of a new robe without taking³ any one mode of disfigurement of the three modes of disfigurement, there is an offence of expiation.⁴”

Bu-Pc.58.2.1

New means: it is called so if not made allowable.⁵

Robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes.⁶

Any one mode of disfigurement of the three modes of disfigurement must be taken means: even (as little as) with a blade of grass must be taken.

BD.2.408

Dark green⁷ means: there are two (kinds of) dark green: the dark green of bronze,⁸ the dark green of foliage.⁹

⁶ *dubbaṇṇakaraṇaṃ*. Vin-a.863 says *dubbaṇṇakaraṇaṃ ādātabban ti etaṃ kappabindurū sandhāya vuttaṃ*. Pali-English Dictionary calls *kappabindu* a “small black dot or smudge imprinted on a new robe to make it lawful” (*kappa*). HUBER, J. BU-As., 1913, has (*pācittiya* 59): “*si un bhikṣu reçoit un vêtement neuf, il doit employer une des trois manières pour en détruire la belle couleur.*” At Vin.1.255 the *kaṭhina*-cloth is called “made (*atthata*) if it is made allowable (*kappakata*).” SN.v.217, *dubbaṇṇakaraṇī jare* = KS.v.192, “age that makes the colour fade.”
¹ *ādātabbāṃ*, from *ādiyati*, to take up, take to oneself. Cf. Vin-a.684, *ādātabbā ti gahetabbā*. Vinaya Texts i.45, “he must choose.” Cf. Vin.1.50, *na ekacco pacchāsamaṇo ādātabbo* = Vinaya Texts i.163, “let him not take anyone else with him as his companion.”
² Vinaya Texts i.45, “either (making part of it) dark blue, or (marking part of it with) mud, or (making part of it) black.
³ *anādā*.
⁴ The robe must be disfigured so as to be identifiable by the monk to whom it belongs. Cf. Bu-NP.15, where portions of an old rug have to be added to a new rug “so as to disfigure it,” although not for purposes of identification.
⁵ *akatakappa*. The robe is made allowable by having a smudge made upon it, Vin-a.863. At Vin.1.215 fruit that is *akatakappa* is allowed to be eaten, even when there is no one there to make it allowable (*kappiyakāraka*, cf. Vin.1.211) for the monks by offering it to them. Cf. *akappakata* occurring below at BD.2.3.
⁶ Cf. above, BD.2.40, BD.2.48. Here Vin-a.863 says, whatever he is able to put on, to dress in (using *nivāsetuṃ* and *pārupituṃ*, the verbs referring to the inner robe, and to the upper robe and outer cloak, cf. BD.2.32, n.2, n.3); the “least robe fit for assignment” is not meant. Cf. above, BD.2.287.
⁷ *nila*, often translated as blue, dark blue. But Old Commentary lends support for green here. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 1924, p.49, n.
⁸ *kaṃsaṇīla*; *kaṃsa* is bronze, or sometimes metal. Vin-a.863 explains by *cammakāraṇīla*, the *nila* of a leather-worker, and says that according to Mahāpaccariya it is called *ayomala* (variant reading *ayomaya*) and *lohamala*, an iron-(or metal-) stain, a copper-(brass-or bronze-) stain.
⁹ *palāsaṇīla*, explained at Vin-a.863. *yo koci nilavaṇṇo paṇṇaraso*, whatever is a heap of leaves is *nila* colour. At Vv-a.197, Pv-a.158, *harita*, usually translated as “green,” is explained by *nila*.

Mud(-colour)¹ means: it is called water.²

Black³ means: anything that is of black.⁴

If a monk ... without taking any one mode of disfigurement of the three modes of disfigurement means: if a monk makes use of a new robe without having taken⁵ any one mode of disfigurement of the three modes of disfigurement, even (as little as) with a blade of grass, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.121

If he makes use of it, thinking that he has not taken⁶ when he has not taken, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he has not taken ... If he makes use of it, thinking that he has taken when he has not taken, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that he has not taken when he has taken, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he has taken, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he has taken when he has taken, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.58.2.2

There is no offence if, having taken, he makes use of it; if what is allowable becomes destroyed⁷; if what made the appearance allowable becomes worn away⁸; if what was not made allowable⁹ becomes sewn together¹⁰ with

Bu-Pc.58.2.3
BD.2.409

¹ *kaddama*. ² *odaka*. At Vin.2.262 monks and nuns sprinkled one another with *kaddamodaka*, muddy water (*kaddama-udaka*). ³ *kālasāma*. Both *kāla* and *sāma* can mean black, dark. At MN.1.246 the words mean, according to *Pali-English Dictionary*, black, brown, respectively; so translated at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.176. But *Pali-English Dictionary* also says (article for *kāla*) that “*kāla-sāma* at Vin.4.120 is to be taken as dark-grey,” while under article for *sāma* it says, “*Vin.4.120* (*kālasāma* dark blue [?]).” Some words for colours may, in the Canon, have denoted more than one colour, or nothing very definite and fixed; or we may not yet know exactly to what colour some of the words for colours refer. ⁴ *kālasāmaka*, or blackish, darkish. ⁵ *anādiyitvā*. ⁶ *anādinna*, presumably referring to a “disfigurement.” ⁷ *kappo nattho hoti*, perhaps if the smudge (*bindu*) disappears in some way. ⁸ *kappakatokāso jñño hoti*. ⁹ *akappakataṃ*. Again cf. Vin-a.863 and above, BD.2.407. ¹⁰ *saṃsibbitaṃ hoti*. Cf. Vism.1, Mi.102, Mi.148.

what was made allowable¹; if there is a patch²; if there is a braiding³; if there is a binding⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.2.410

The Eighth

¹ *kappakatena*, as *Critical Pali Dictionary* says, by *kappabindu*. [Vin.4.286](#), *samañacīvarañ nāma kappakatam vuccati*, a recluse's robe is called what is made allowable. At [Vin.1.254](#), [Vin.1.255](#), the expressions occur, *na akappakatena atthataṃ hoti kaṭṭhinaṃ; kappakatena atthataṃ hoti kaṭṭhinam*, translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.155, *Vinaya Texts* ii.156, "when the ceremony has (has not) fallen through," [BD.2.155, n.2](#), saying, "*akappakatenā ti anādinna-kappa-bindhunā* (Buddhaghosa), which we do not understand. Perhaps we should read *bindunā*." See [Vin-a.1111](#) for this definition, and where reading is *bindunā*. The sense is that the *kaṭṭhina*-cloth is not properly made if it is not made allowable—i.e., through not taking a disfiguring smudge by which the owner can identify it. ² *aggaḷa*. [Vin-a.863](#), "putting these *aggaḷa*, and so on, on to a robe after it is made allowable is not a device for making it allowable (*kappakaraṇakicca*)."
Aggaḷa, patch, strip of cloth, was used for strengthening robes. See [Vin.1.290](#), where a monk's inner robe was torn and he inserted a "strip of cloth" and was commended by the lord. Buddhaghosa says (see [Vin-a.1128](#)), *aggaḷam acchādeyyam* (text, *acchupeyyam*) *ti chinnaṭṭhāne pilotika-khaṇḍam laggāpeyyam* (variant reading *ṭhapeyyam*): "(what now) if I should stick bits of cloth (or rags) into the torn places?" [Vin-a.1129](#) gives, *suttalūkham kātun ti sutten'eva aggaḷam kātun ti attho*, "to darn roughly with thread means to darn a patch with thread." ³ *anuvāta*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.154, n.1, *anuvāta-karaṇa-mattenā ti piṭṭhi-anuvāta-āropana-mattena*, from which it appears that the *anuvāta* was put along the back of the robe. *Anuvāta* used in explained of *kusi* at [Vin.1.287](#), see *Vinaya Texts* ii.208, n.5. [Vin-a.684](#) uses the word in explaining the rule for disfiguring a rug. *Critical Pali Dictionary* calls *anuvāta* "probably a collar or facing (on a monk's cowl)." ⁴ *paribhaṇḍa*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.154, n.2, *paribhaṇḍa-karaṇa-mattenā ti kucchi-anuvāta-āropana-mattena*, put inside. Buddhaghosa on [Vin.1.297](#) again explains *anuvāta* and *paribhaṇḍa* "by the words themselves," see *Vinaya Texts* ii.231, n.2. The two words occur again at [Vin.1.254](#) as things to be used in making a *kaṭṭhina*-cloth robe, and at [Vin.2.116](#) as things to be put on to the edge (*anto*) of the *kaṭṭhina* when it is worn thin; at [Vin.2.177](#) they are among the "trifles" for which a disposer is to be appointed. On *paribhaṇḍa* as some kind of flooring, see [Vin.2.113](#), [Vin.2.172](#); *Vinaya Texts* iii.85, n.3; [Vin.3.213, n.6](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 59

Bu-Pc.59.1.1
BD.2.411

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, himself having assigned a robe¹ to a monk who shared his brother's cell,² made use of it, (the robe) not having been taken away.³ Then that monk told this matter to the monks, saying:

“Your reverences, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, himself having assigned a robe to me, makes use of it, (the robe) not having been taken away.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, himself having assigned a robe to a monk, make use of it, (the robe) not having been taken away?”

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, yourself having assigned ... not having been taken away?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, yourself having assigned ... not having been taken away? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, himself having assigned a robe to a monk or to a nun or to a female probationer or to a male novice or to a female novice, should make use of it, (the robe) not having been taken away, there is an offence of expiation.”⁴

¹ At [Vin.1.297](#) monks were allowed to allot robes, but not to assign them. ² Cf. above, [BD.2.139](#). ³ *apaccuddhāraka*. Cf. above, [BD.2.22, n.3](#). ⁴ Cf. [Bu-Pc.81](#).

Bu-BD.59.41.2

Vin.4.122

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

To a monk means: to another monk.

A nun means: one ordained by both Orders.¹

A female probationer means: one training in the six rules² for two years.

A male novice means: one conforming to the ten rules of training.³

A female novice means: one conforming to the ten rules of training.⁴

Himself⁵ means: himself⁶ having assigned.

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes, (including) the least one fit for assignment.⁷

Assignment means: there are two (kinds of) assignment, assignment in the presence and assignment in the absence. Assignment in the presence means that he says, 'I assign this robe to you or to so and so.' Assignment in the absence means that he says, 'I will give-this robe to you for the sake of assigning (it).'⁸ He should say, 'Who is your friend or intimate acquaintance?' 'So and so, and so and so,' he says. He should say, 'I will give to them; make use of what is due to them or give it away or do as you like (with it).'

(The robe) not having been taken away means: either if it is not given to him, or if not putting his trust in him, he makes use of it, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.59.2.2

BD.2.413

If he thinks that (the robe) is not taken away when it is not taken away, (and) makes use of it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether (the robe) is not taken away ... If he thinks that (the robe) is taken away when it is not taken away, (and) makes use of it, there is an offence of expiation. If he allots⁹ it or gives it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that (the robe) is not taken away when it is taken away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether (the robe) is

¹ = above, [BD.2.32](#), [BD.2.40](#). ² *chasu dhammesu sikkhitasikkhā*. Cf. [Vin.4.343](#). These rules are the five *sīlas* and one against eating at the wrong time. For this last cf. [Bu-Pc.37](#).

³ *dasasikkhāpadika*. ⁴ *dasasikkhāpadikā*. Cf. [Vin.4.343](#). ⁵ *sāmaṃ ... sayaṃ*. ⁶ *sāmaṃ ... sayaṃ*. ⁷ Cf. above, [BD.2.40](#), [BD.2.48](#), [BD.2.140](#). ⁸ Or, as at *Vinaya Texts* i.45, n.3, 'I give this robe to you for you to appoint (to someone else).'

⁹ *adhittḥeti*, see above, [BD.2.7](#), [n.1](#).

taken away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that (the robe) is taken away when it is taken away, there is no offence.

There is no offence either if he gives it, or if putting his trust in him, he makes use of it; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.59.2.3

The Ninth

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 60

Bu-Pc.60.1.1
BD.2.414

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of seventeen monks did not store their requisites. The group of six monks hid a bowl and a robe belonging to the group of seventeen monks. The group of seventeen monks spoke thus to the group of six monks:

"Your reverences, give back the bowl and the robe to us."

Vin.4.123

The group of six monks laughed; these cried out. Monks spoke thus:

"Why do you, your reverences, cry out?"

"Your reverences, this group of six monks are hiding a bowl and a robe belonging to us."

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks hide a bowl and a robe belonging to monks?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, are hiding a bowl and a robe belonging to monks?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, hide a bowl and a robe belonging to monks? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should hide or should cause to hide a monk's bowl or robe or (piece of cloth) to sit upon¹ or needle-case or girdle, even in fun, there is an offence of expiation."

Bu-Pc.60.2.1
BD.2.415

Whatever means: ... is monk to be understood in this case.

¹ *nisīdana*. Cf. Vin.1.295 and above, BD.2.34, BD.2.87, BD.2.414

A monk's means: another monk's.

Bowl means: there are two (kinds of) bowls, an iron bowl and a clay bowl.¹

Robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes, (including) the least one fit for assignment.²

(Piece of cloth) to sit upon means: it is so called if it has a border.³

Needle-case⁴ means: it is with a needle or it is without a needle.

Girdle means: there are two (kinds of) girdles, those made of strips of cloth⁵ and those ...⁶

Should hide means: if he himself hides, there is an offence of expiation.

Or should come to hide means: if he commands another, there is an offence of expiation. When once commanded, if he hides much, there is an offence of expiation.

Even in fun means: desiring amusement.

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained, (and) hides or causes (someone) to hide a bowl ... or a girdle, even in fun, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If he hides or causes (someone) to hide another requisite, even in fun, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he hides or causes (someone) to hide the bowl or robe or another requisite of one who is not ordained, even in fun, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁷ If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁸

Bu-Pc.60.2.2

BD.2.416

¹ = above, [BD.2.115](#) (where see n.2), and [Vin.4.243](#). Cf. also the three bowls mentioned at [Vin.3.169](#) = [BD.1.292](#), *lohapatta*, *sāṭakapatta*, *sumbhakapatta*. ² Cf. above, [BD.2.40](#), [BD.2.48](#).

³ *sadasa*. Cf. above, [BD.2.87](#), and [Vin.4.171](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.1.301ff.](#), and [Bu-Pc.86](#). ⁵ *paṭṭika*. I follow translation at *Vinaya Texts* iii.143. ⁶ *sūkarantaka*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.143, n.5, "we do not venture to translate the term." See Buddhaghosa's explanation at [Vin.2.319](#). Both these kinds of girdles are allowed at [Vin.2.136](#). ⁷ Indicating that members of other sects were not to be inconvenienced. ⁸ Another of these errors, noted before—should surely read *anāpatti*, no offence.

Bu-Pc.60.2.3

There is no offence if he is not desiring fun; if he puts in order what is badly arranged¹; if he puts it in order, thinking, 'I will give it back, having given *dhamma*-talk'; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Tenth

THIS IS ITS KEY

Fermented liquor, the finger, and water,²
and disrespect, frightening,
Fire, bathing, disfigurement,
himself (the robe) not having been taken away,
and about hiding.

The Sixth Division: that on drinking fermented liquor

¹ *dunnikkhitta*, wrongly put down or set down. ² *toya*.

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

BD.3.v

This volume of the *Book of the Discipline* concludes the translation of the Suttavibhaṅga of the Vinaya and covers vol.4 of Oldenberg's edition of the *Vinayapiṭakam*, p.124 to the end. It thus includes the last thirty-two *Pācittiyas* for monks, **Bu-Pc.61–Bu-Pc.92**, the four *Pāṭidesaniyas* or offences which ought to be confessed, the seventy-five *Sekhiyas* or rules for training or of etiquette, and the seven *Adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā* or ways for settling legal questions. This ends the Mahāvibhaṅga portion of the Suttavibhaṅga, that portion devoted to the Pātimokkha rules of restraint and training for monks. The nuns' portion, the Bhikkhunivibhaṅga, follows immediately, the rules being classified on the same lines as those for monks: *Pārājika*, *Saṅghādisesa*, *Nissaggiya*, *Pācittiya*, *Pāṭidesaniya*, *Sekhiya*, *Adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā*. There is, however, no *Aniyata*, or undetermined class of offence, for nuns.

THE MONKS' PĀCITTIYA GROUP (BU-PC.61–BU-PC.92)

Sāvattī is given as the locus or provenance of twenty-eight of these thirty-two rules, Rājagaha of two, Kosambī and Kapilavatthu of one each. It is not uninformative to look at these four rules in which the lord is recorded to have been elsewhere than in Sāvattī. **Bu-Pc.65**, whose locus is given as Rājagaha, recounts the choice of young Upāli's parents of a monk's career for him, apparently mainly on the grounds that recluses are pleasant in their conduct and live in a certain amount of ease. The episode occurs again in the *Mahāvagga* (**Vin.1.77**), but there, because at the end it is stated that he who ordains a person who is under twenty years of age "must be

dealt with according to the rule,” the existence of this *Pācittiya* is evidently presupposed.

BD.3.vi

Both accounts assert that Upāli and his young friends were in Rājagaha and also show the lord to have been here too.¹ Thus there would appear to be some tradition associating the boy Upāli with this place.

Bu-Pc.81 has as its central figure Dabba the Mallian. In **Bu-Ss.8** he is appointed distributor of lodgings and meals to the Order. In **Bu-Pc.13** he is accused of showing favouritism in the discharge of his duties. These three contexts all lay the scene in Rājagaha, as does **Bu-Ss.9**, where this same monk is falsely charged with seducing Mettiyā. Although he was not born at Rājagaha, there is a consistent propensity to regard this as the scene of many of his activities.

Similarly, Channa is a monk traditionally connected with Kosambī. In **Bu-Ss.12**, **Bu-Pc.54**, and again in **Bu-Pc.71**, we hear of him indulging in bad habits, always when the lord is said to be at Kosambī. Also while he was here, Channa is reputed to have cut down a tree at a shrine (**Bu-Ss.12**) and to have damaged a brahmin’s barley field when building a dwelling-place given him by his supporter (**Bu-Pc.19**).

The introductory story of **Bu-Pc.86** is developed on exactly the same lines as the first story in **Bu-NP.22**, the only differences being that (1) the *Nissaggiya* story ends in the formulation of a *dukkaṭa* offence, and the *Pācittiya* in the formulation of a *sikkhāpada*, a rule; and (2) the people who offer to supply the monks’ needs are potters in the *Nissaggiya* and ivory-workers in the *Pācittiya*. In both these stories the lord is said to have been residing at Kapilavatthu, his birthplace. I have already put forward various reasons to support my view that **Bu-NP.22** represents some specially ancient fragment of the *Pātimokkha*.² Now the form in which **Bu-Pc.86** exists would appear to support this probability. It looks like a mere copy of **Bu-NP.22**, and in narrating its story may be said to utilise material already at hand. For it cannot well be earlier than the *Nissaggiya*, since the articles in respect of which the offence was committed were needle-cases, whereas in the *Nissaggiya* they were bowls, requisites doubtless allowed to monks before they felt

BD.3.vii

¹ All the incidents in **Vin.1.35–Vin.1.80** are imputed to a time when the lord was making a long stay in Rājagaha. ² **BD.2, Introduction, p.xivff.**

the lack of needle-cases. These latter were not essential in the daily round, merely an adjunct to it, a means of preserving the needles, themselves one of the eight necessities, and through them other necessities: robes, belts, shoulder-straps and so on. In taking over an older setting, older because the articles with which it deals were earlier accretions to the monks' property, the story of **Bu-Pc.50** imitates the one it copies so closely as to create the impression that it was borrowing this older setting because there existed no special story which could be used to introduce the formulation of its own rule.

Some of the twenty-eight rules whose provenance is given as Sāvaththī, for example **Bu-Pc.63**, **Bu-Pc.69**, **Bu-Pc.73**, **Bu-Pc.79**, **Bu-Pc.80**, by dealing with the internal polity of a *saṅgha*, are portraying an organisation no longer in its infancy. For they presuppose a time when the *saṅgha* had been in existence long enough to have developed a working constitution of a certain complexity. They speak of such technical institutes as "formal acts" and their carrying out (**Bu-Pc.63**, **Bu-Pc.79**, **Bu-Pc.80**), of the giving of *chanda*, or an absentee member's consent by proxy to a fellow monk to attend a business meeting of the Order on his behalf (**Bu-Pc.79**, **Bu-Pc.80**), and of "legal questions" together with a ban on reopening these once they had been settled "according to rule" (**Bu-Pc.63**). Thus, as **Bu-Pc.63** shows, the attempt to safeguard the validity and finality of legal questions that had already been settled implies work still going forward in regard to legal questions, although perhaps the procedure which was gradually adopted was brought to its conclusion in this *Pācittiya*. Two *Pācittiyas*, **Bu-Pc.79** and **Bu-Pc.81** (locus: Rājagaha), also seek to prevent a monk from making criticisms, *khīyadhammaṃ āpajjati*, after he has taken part in some constitutional proceedings. He must abide by the decisions that were taken then and in his presence, just as by **Bu-Pc.63** he must abide by whatever verdict had been given on a legal question.

Other *Pācittiyas* in this volume also show signs of being relatively late. **Bu-Pc.70** refers to the material of **Bu-Pc.5**, and **Bu-Pc.77** to that of **Bu-Pc.65**, hence both must be later than the *Pācittiyas* to which they refer. **Bu-Pc.73** speaks of "a rule being handed down in a clause, contained in a clause," *dhmmo suttāgato suttāpariyāpanno*, and due to be recited at every half-

monthly recitation of the Pātimokkha rules, as though the rule referred to were to this extent fixed and stable. The *sikkhāpada* of this *Pācittiya* has a late ring about it, the language and thought depicting a time that had progressed some way beyond the archaic.

In my Introduction to *Book of the Discipline* vol.2 I took up the question¹ raised by Oldenberg and Rhys Davids of the comparative age of those *Pācittiyas* noticed by them as “formulated with the utmost brevity.” After an examination of these *Pācittiyas* I came to the tentative conclusion that they may mark some relatively *late* stage in the growth of the disciplinary code. I remarked that **Bu-Pc.72** and **Bu-Pc.73** “conform to” this brief type. Now the internal evidence of these two *Pācittiyas* suggests references to times when constitutionally the *saṅgha* was fairly well developed. Therefore such evidence may be regarded as contributing to the validity of the hypothesis that the *Pācittiyas* which are briefly stated, as well as those which conform to this type, belong to a comparatively late date.

But yet I think it unsafe to attempt any correlation of rules which seem to be late with Gotama’s protracted residence at Sāvattthī towards the end of his life. For other rules which bear the stamp of earlier formulation are said to have been set forth when the lord was here, while still others which might appear to emanate from later days were promulgated when he is said to have been elsewhere.

BD.3.ix

This same feature, the great preponderance of sayings and discourses said to have been delivered at Sāvattthī by the lord, is to be found in the *Samyutta*.² In this Collection, the phrase *Sāvattthī nidānaṃ* sometimes occurs as well as a “condensed opening formula”;³ and it is this that has led to the suggestion of *nidāna* here referring “to the *source* of the deposited and transmitted record ... and not to the original scene of the original utterance.”⁴ Although the word *nidāna* does not occur in such a connection in the *Vinaya*, future historians will have to bear in mind the possibility of names of places, Sāvattthī as well as the others, referring to the centres where “repeaters” met when the canon was being established, instead of to the scene where the discourse was reputed to have been given or the

¹ **BD.2, Introduction, p.xxxiv.** ² **KS.3, Introduction, p.xff., KS.4, Introduction, p.xivf.**

³ **KS.3, Introduction, p.xi.** ⁴ **KS.4, Introduction, p.xv.**

rule laid down. Against this, however, we have to set the small villages, the hill-tops and mountain-sides spoken of throughout the Suttas as the places where the lord or his disciples were staying, but which were too small or remote ever to have reached eminence as centres of learning, repeating or codifying.

We may now consider various peculiarities manifest in some of the *Pācittiya*s already referred to as well as in others. **Bu-Pc.72**, for example, contains at least three further points which require some analysis. In the first place, in speaking of “mastering discipline under Upāli,” discipline, Vinaya, is incidentally shown to have acquired complexity and magnitude sufficient to attract expert study. Thus to understand it properly, in detail and in its various aspects and ramifications, the help of some competent person, such as Upāli, the great expert on discipline, was needed. According to the Vinaya tradition, this monk played a leading part at the first Council. There are also records showing him to have been with Gotama since relatively early days of his ministry.¹ This will mean, in the first place, that Upāli will have had good opportunity to study the rules as they came into being and grew into a body; but that, in the second, had this body not attained an appreciable size, it could not have formed a worthy subject for any disciple’s study and mastery. Therefore the desire of the monks in **Bu-Pc.72** to learn discipline under Upāli (because the lord, as they are recorded to say, in praising discipline praises Upāli again and again), may be ascribed to some indefinite time subsequent to the establishment of this monk’s reputation as the most eminent exponent of this branch of study

BD.3.x

Again, **Bu-Pc.72** in referring to “the lesser and minor rules of training,” *khuddānukkhudakāni sikkhāpadāni*, does so in a way suggestive of some attempt at classification already made for these.² This was a matter, as **Vin.2.287** asserts, on which those elders who attended the first Council were themselves at variance. The Old Commentary on **Bu-Pc.72** is silent on the subject. It is very possible, as B.C. LAW points out,³ and in fact it is almost certain, that the rules themselves had existed in a classified form since the earliest times. It would therefore be fallacious to find in any mention of “the

¹ See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.216f. ² See below, **BD.3.41, n.1.** ³ *History of Pali Literature*, i.19.

lesser and minor rules of discipline” a pointer to some particular epoch of early Buddhist monastic history. At the same time, such a reference cannot belong to a time *before* there were sufficient rules and sufficient types of rules to merit classification.

Besides the term *khuddānukkhudakāni sikkhāpadāni*, **Bu-Pc.72** also contains the term *abhidhamma*. So, too, does Nuns’ **Bi-Pc.95**. The meaning of this term is debatable, since the term must have gone through several fluctuations before coming to stand as the title of the third Piṭaka. Thus the particular meaning ascribed to it in any one context must depend largely on the sense, linguistic style and terminology of that whole context, which should therefore be considered on its own merits. I think that, not counting parallel passages, the word *abhidhamma* does not appear more than ten times in the first two Piṭakas, three of these being in the Vinaya.¹ I will here confine myself to the two occasions when the word occurs in **Vin.4**. These are at **Vin.4.144** and **Vin.4.344**.

BD.3.xi

Now Oldenberg² and Max Müller,³ by basing their arguments on the Vinaya accounts, have established that the Abhidhamma as a Piṭaka was not known by the time of the first Council. Thus the term *abhidhamma* when found in the Vinayapiṭaka and the Suttapiṭaka should not be taken to refer to the third Piṭaka, at least not to it in its finished closed form, unless the term can be regarded on such occasions as a later interpolation. Rather it should be taken as referring to some material or method in existence prior to the compilation of this Piṭaka, and out of which it was gradually elaborated and eventually formed.

The importance of the term cannot be appreciated unless the meaning be understood. This will to a large extent depend upon the meaning or meanings attributed to the great word *dhamma*. Since an investigation of this has been undertaken by others,⁴ let us see *dhamma* as “doctrine,” as what had been and as what was being taught to disciples both by the lord and by his fellow workers, as religious views, precepts, sayings, which before

¹ **Vin.1.64**=**Vin.1.68**, **Vin.4.144**, **Vin.1.344**. References in the admittedly later Parivāra—e.g., **Vin.5.2**, **Vin.5.86**—are not counted among the “ten times” that *abhidhamma* appears.

² **Vin.1, Introduction, p.xff.** ³ *Dhammapada* (Sacred Books of the East X), 1st edition 1881, 2nd edition 1898, 1924, Introduction, p.xlff. ⁴ MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, in several recent books, and W. GEIGER, *Pali Dhamma*, 1920.

being codified into an external body of doctrine were as yet appealing direct to the conscience, *dhamma*, in man, and to the deity, *ātman* and *dhamma*, which in the sixth century B.C. in India was held to be immanent in him.

Abhi- prefixed to a noun has in general an intensive meaning of higher, super, additional; and it can also mean “concerning,” “pertaining to.” Thus for the compound *abhidhamma*, we get some such phrase as “the higher doctrine,” “further, extra doctrine” or “what pertains to the doctrine”. It is possible that the cleavage between these two is not very great.

BD.3.xii

At both [Vin.4.144](#) and [Vin.4.344](#), *abhidhamma* is associated with Vinaya and also with *suttanta*, the words which gave the titles to the first and second Piṭakas. But in the former passage these three terms are also associated with *gāthā*, metric verses, songs, poems. This quartet is as unique in Pali canonical literature as is the perfect, unadulterated triad of *vinaya suttanta abhidhamma* at [Vin.4.344](#). Yet the very presence of the word *gāthā*, is enough to preclude the term *abhidhamma* from standing for the literary exegesis of that name, for no reference to the third Piṭaka as such would have combined a reference to part of the material, verses, which one of the Piṭakas finally came to include. Moreover, with verses being made since very early days, there is no reason to suppose the reference to the word *gāthā* in Monks' [Bu-Pc.72](#) to stand for any completed collection or collections of verses, as Oldenberg suggests.¹

As already mentioned, Monks' [Bu-Pc.72](#) purports to refer to the time when Upāli was alive. But since he could not long have survived the first Council, in the Vinaya accounts of which there is no mention of the *Abhidhamma*, this as a Piṭaka could not well have been compiled and completed, until after his death. There is thus no justification for seeing here in *abhidhamma* the title of the third Piṭaka, in spite of its proximity to words which were used as the titles of the two earlier Piṭakas.

Although we can say fairly confidently what *abhidhamma* does *not* mean here, it is by no means so easy to assess what it does mean. A monk may say to another, “Master *suttantas* or verses (*gāthā*) or *abhidhamma* and afterwards you will master discipline.” To make this the chief aim is only suitable in a disciplinary compilation. It may be objected that, since for the

¹ [Vin.1, Introduction, p.xii, n.2.](#)

BD.3.xiii purpose of mastering Vinaya, mastery of the *suttantas* is put forward as an alternative to mastery of *abhidhamma*, there might be some redundancy; for the *suttantas* are the repositories of *dhamma*. But if *abhidhamma* be taken to intensify the meaning of *dhamma*, or to refer to some method of teaching or learning it—by catechism, by analysis of terms, or by an almost lexicographical arrangement of synonyms—this difficulty would to a large extent fall away. Any one of these would imply something “extra” to *dhamma*, not in the sense of the addition of any fresh material, so much as of the contrivance of a new and systematised method of presenting some of the obscurer and more fundamental terms and concepts which it comprises.

If this be conceded, there would result for the monk who wants to master Vinaya a choice of two approaches to *dhamma*, which considering its immense importance to Gotama and his early followers is not out of proportion. Either, since the Vinaya itself contains no broad principles of ethics, he would study *dhamma* as handed down in the Suttas or as spoken in his hearing, in order to convince himself of the moral ground and the ideal which inspire the discipline and command adherence to its mass of particular rules. Or he would take the more austere way of approaching Vinaya through *abhidhamma*, an intellectual exercise perhaps, devoid of all extraneous matter, in which the meaning of *dhamma* terms and concepts is to be grasped through their grouping, through their classified relations of identity and dependence and so on, instead of through the more picturesque, personal and oratorical methods, often made intelligible by homely parable and simile, which is the Suttanta way of presenting *dhamma*.

BD.3.xiv As in the mastery of *dhamma*, so in the mastery of *gāthā*, the disciple anxious to master Vinaya would find in them an inspiration to urge him, as the song-makers themselves had found elsewhere their own inspiration, to lead, to fulfil and to exult in *brahmacariya*, the godly life or faring. The *gāthā*, provide as it were a human approach, often a record of human experience, their value as spurs to mastering Vinaya lying in their appeal to the more emotional type of disciple, to the one who wants some personal example to emulate; whereas the mastery of *abhidhamma* would provide a field to attract the more intellectual type, while mastery of *suttantas* would stir the normally virtuous man of average mental equipment to act unremittingly

in thought, word and deed from the dictates of an awakened conscience.

The *abhidhamma* passage in Nuns' **Bi-Pc.95** is stated by Oldenberg to be "the only passage in the Vinaya which really presupposes the existence of an Abhidhamma Piṭaka,"¹ and in which "we can unhesitatingly assume" these "words" to be an interpolation. Which exact "words" he means is not quite clear, since he only italicises *abhidhamma*. But probably he means no more than *abhidhamma vā* (or). A nun, according to this *Pācittiya*, having obtained a monk's permission to ask him about *suttanta*, commits an offence of expiation if she asks him instead about Vinaya or *abhidhamma*; and it is the same with the two variations on this theme.

Although I think that Oldenberg is very likely indeed to be right, and there is no internal evidence to suggest that he is wrong, or indeed to suggest anything helpful at all, I cannot feel myself so entirely convinced as he appears to be that the Abhidhamma Piṭaka was in existence by the time of the formulation of this passage. The main reason why I think he may be right is that this triad, appearing once only in the canon, supplies the names of what at some time came to be constituted as the three Piṭakas. Where, as in other contexts, *abhidhamma* is associated with only one but not with both of the words Vinaya and *suttanta*, then it is far less likely to have this reference.

On the other hand, although it is true that in the Nuns' *Pācittiya* group, **Bi-Pc.95** is the last but one of the rules there formulated, we should not be too much swayed by this consideration. For the position of a rule in the class in which it is placed affords no sure guide to its comparative date. For example, in the Monks' *Pācittiya* group, some of the rules towards the end have a much earlier aspect than some of those which precede them and which presume certain constitutional developments such as are capable of having arisen only when the Order had reached some degree of long-standing. In a word, since the rules cannot with certitude be said to survive in the order in which they were formulated, they can thus yield no reliable evidence for the historical sequence of their promulgation.

BD.3.xv

Another interesting *Pācittiya* among the thirty-two for monks contained in this volume is **Bu-Pc.68**. The chief person concerned is the "monk

¹ Vin.1, Introduction, p.xii, n.2.

called Ariṭṭha.” He is not referred to as “the venerable Ariṭṭha,” *āyasmā Ariṭṭho*, in accordance with the usual narrative practice of the Vinaya. This indicates an atmosphere of disapproval surrounding him; and indeed he is a monk said to have held “pernicious views.” The whole Ariṭṭha episode occurs again at **Vin.2.25–Vin.2.26**, with the difference that here at the end, instead of a rule being set forth, the Order is enjoined to carry out an act of suspension against Ariṭṭha. The episode is also given at MN.i.130–132. There is a comparable incident at SN.iii.109, where to Yamaka, sometimes referred to as “monk,” sometimes as “the venerable,” is attributed a different set of “pernicious views,” and where monks, unable to dissuade him from these themselves, asked Sāriputta to go to him “out of compassion for him.”

Other *Pācittiya*s which contain material found in the Suttas are **Bu-Pc.83**, where the passage on the ten dangers of entering a king’s harem has its parallel at AN.v.81ff.; and **Bu-Pc.85**, whose stock enumeration of the various kinds of “low,”¹ “worldly,”² “childish”³ or intellectually inferior talk, *tiracchānakathā*, occurs at several places in the Suttas.

BD.3.xvi

In the Ariṭṭha *Pācittiya* there is a noteworthy absence of the stereotyped phrase that “the modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about,” and that having thus complained they told the lord. Here “several monks” tried, so it is recorded, to dissuade Ariṭṭha from his pernicious views by repeating to him the ten similes of the sense-pleasures. It was only when they failed in their object that they told the lord. In accordance with his usual practice, as given in the Vinaya, the lord then asked the offender, here Ariṭṭha, if what the monks said was true. But Ariṭṭha, instead of giving a meek affirmative answer, defended his views, or rather reiterated them, so that the lord is reputed to have upbraided him in exactly the same terms as those used by the “several monks.” It is true that some passages in this *Pācittiya*, such as that including the similes of the sense-pleasures, portray a literary skill and a knowledge of other Piṭakan contexts as only a relatively late “editing” could achieve. Yet the unusual development of the story, its omission of stereotyped phrases, may possibly indicate its derivation from some early source, in which was retained a tradition of an actual sequence

¹ *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.13; *Further Dialogues* i.362 (“low and beastly”). ² *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.245; *Vinaya Texts* ii.20. ³ *Dialogues of the Buddha* iii.33; *KS.v.355*.

of events strong enough to prevent the narrative, on the three occasions when it appears, from falling into the standardised and monotonously recurring *Vibhaṅga* mould.

The *sikkhāpada* of this *Pācittiya*, **Bu-Pc.68**, is not so much in accord with *Pācittiya* formulation as with wording found in the type of *Saṅghādisesa sikkhāpada*, where the offender is to be admonished by his fellows up to the third time so as to give up his course. A Nuns' *Pācittiya*, **Bi-Pc.36**, also incorporates into its *sikkhāpada* the kind of material more usually associated with *Saṅghādisesa* formulation. Such anomalies probably do not arise through pure chance or pure carelessness, for in fact the early "editors" left little to chance, and were not nearly so careless as is sometimes thought. So that we have to attempt to account for the existence of these peculiarities in other ways. And it may be that the offences to which they refer and which now stand in the *Pācittiya* groups, were at one time counted as *Saṅghādisesa* offences¹; or that these offences only arose after the *Saṅghādisesa* group had been closed, and it was thus not possible to include them in it; or that, because the *sikkhāpadas* decree that the admonition was to be made by "monks" and "nuns" respectively, tacitly meaning a *saṅgha*—i.e., five or more monks or nuns—and do not give the alternatives of its being made by a "group" or by "one person," these *Pācittiyas* automatically assume a *Saṅghādisesa* complexion.

BD.3.xvii

Bu-Pc.76 recalls **Bu-Ss.8**, although in another way. For where in the latter there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order for defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of having committed an offence involving defeat, in **Bu-Pc.76** it is an offence of expiation to defame a monk with an unfounded charge of having committed an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

We have also seen that in its story **Bu-Pc.86** closely follows **Bu-NP.22**. Likewise **Bu-Pc.82** recalls **Bu-NP.30**. In the former the offence is to appropriate for another person, *puggala*, benefits given to the Order, while in the latter it is to appropriate for oneself any such benefits. A great point in monastic life was communal ownership. The community should not be deprived for any individual, whoever he might be, of anything to which

¹ See **BD.i.xxxiff**.

it had a rightful claim. But naturally, in the *Pācittiya*, the offending monk cannot as part of his penalty forfeit the article wrongfully appropriated by him, for presumably he had handed it over to another monk. I think it just as much this practical consideration as the fact that, of two evils, it is less bad to appropriate for another than for oneself, which was instrumental in determining the classification and hence the seriousness of these two comparable offences. To my mind the work of the early “editors” was so careful and rationally based that latter-day strictures such as S. Dutt’s, that “there is no reason why rule 82 of *Pācittiya* should be placed under that category while rule 30 of the *Nissaggiyas* (comes) under another category,”¹ must often with a fuller understanding of Vinaya outlook fall to the ground.

BD.3.xviii

The last of the Monks’ *Pācittiyas*, *Bu-Pc.92*, is noticeable for containing the word *sugata*, often translated “well-farer.” As an epithet it is usually assigned to Gotama, but occasionally also to his disciples.² Its appearance in the *Vibhaṅgas* is very rare.³ This *Pācittiya* also suggests the growth of a legend already springing up round the Founder, for in it it seems as though his robe, called *sugata-cīvara*, was of a special size, rather larger than that permitted to the disciples.

The use of *sugata* in such a compound is all the more remarkable, for the context itself rules out the meaning of “standard” or “accepted,” which is what *sugata* appears to mean in the compounds *sugataṅgula* (*Vin.1.297*, *Vin.4.168*), standard finger-breadth, and *sugatavidatthi*, standard span, a word which occurs at *Vin.3.149* and also in the rule of *Bu-Pc.92* itself, in explanation of the correct measurement of a *sugatacīvara*. The Founder, who reckoned himself a man amongst men, had at one time, as other records show, been content with robe-material picked piecemeal from the rag-heap. Moreover, it is recorded that “he exchanged robes with Mahā-Kassapa. Of the two sets of robes brought by Pukkusa, one was given to Ānanda, and one was reserved for the Buddha himself; and no one can read the account in the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta without feeling that both are supposed to be of the same size.”⁴ It is also recorded that the brahmin Piṅgiyānin, having been presented with five hundred robes by the Licchavis, handed these on

¹ *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.97. ² AN.i.217ff.; SN.iv.252f. ³ *Vin.3.1*, *Vin.3.9* ⁴ *Vinaya Texts* i.54, n.3.

to the lord.¹

Although the narrative part of this *Pācittiya* appears to refer to the lifetime of the Founder, it is not easy to believe in view of these records that before his death, by which time moreover, as the *Mahāparinibbāna-suttanta* shows, he was lonely and deserted, his disciples would have signified their admiration of him by ascribing to him a physical superiority. And for the purpose of this *Pācittiya* there was no need to do this. For had the Vinaya compilers wished to say that a robe in excess of a proper measure was not to be worn by monks, they could have found other means to do so more in line with their usual ways of expressing themselves.

BD.3.xix

On the other hand, if it were not giving utterance to some growing legend in which physical size was looked upon as a fitting accompaniment to mental strength, **Bu-Pc.92** may possibly be looking back to the theory of the thirty-two marks of the Great Man,² which as Rhys Davids says is pre-Buddhist.³ But in this, the noble proportions by which the Great Man was marked were deemed to be perfect rather than specially large. This *Pācittiya* therefore remains something of a mystery and something of a misfit, while showing some unmistakable signs of late "editing."

The last seven *Pācittiyas* form a group in which the penalty of expiation is combined with some other form of penalty. As in the class of offences of expiation involving forfeiture, *Nissaggiyaṃ Pācittiyaṃ*, we have here "offences of expiation involving cutting down," *chedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ* (**Bu-Pc.87, Bu-Pc.89–Bu-Pc.92**, and also Nuns' **Bi-Pc.22**); "involving breaking up," *bhedanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ* (**Bu-Pc.86**); "involving tearing off," *uddālanakaṃ pācittiyaṃ* (**Bu-Pc.88**).

These *Pācittiyas* are concerned with prescribing the right measurements, and to a lesser degree the right materials, for some of the articles allowable to monks and used by them. They therefore do not belong to the earliest days of the Order's history, but to a time subsequent to the "allowance" of those articles for whose proper measurement and so on they prescribe. I cannot agree with S. DUTT that "rules **Bu-Pc.86–Bu-Pc.92** (except one) hang together,"⁴ in view of the fact that rules **Bu-Pc.86–Bu-Pc.92**

¹ AN.iii.239. ² DN.ii.16; MN.i.136, MN.i.137. ³ *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.110, n.2. ⁴ *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.97.

BD.3.xx form a special class entailing an extra penalty, and into which rules **Bu-Pc.83** and **Bu-Pc.24** no more fit than does rule **Bu-Pc.85**, the one to which he takes exception.

It may be noted that the Old Commentary does not define *sūcighara* in **Bu-Pc.86**, although it does so in **Bu-Pc.60**. This omission cannot be definitely ascribed to any feeling that the word did not need to be explained again. For the Old Commentary on several occasions defines the same words—for example, “robe,” “householder,” “he knows,” “nun,” in exactly the same terms; or, guided by circumstances, it defines the same words—for example, “sleeping-place” and, again, “householder,” in different terms. Its omissions must be due either to carelessness or to some studied purpose or presupposition to which we have not as yet the clue. In *Book of the Discipline* vol.2, I have drawn attention to some of these commentarial omissions.¹ In this volume the Old Commentary fails to define *udāka*, water, in **Bu-Pc.62**; *nihata*, settled, in **Bu-Pc.63**; *puggala*, person, individual, in **Bu-Pc.65**; *ekad-dhānamagga*, the same high-road, in **Bu-Pc.66**, **Bu-Pc.67**; *chandaṃ datvā*, having given leave of absence, in **Bu-Pc.79**; and *chandaṃ datvā* and also *vattamānāya*, being engaged in, in **Bu-Pc.80**. Neither does the Old Commentary attempt any explanation of words contained in some *sikkhāpadas* but said to have been spoken by the offending monks, as for example in **Bu-Pc.68**, **Bu-Pc.70**, **Bu-Pc.72**, **Bu-Pc.73**, **Bu-Pc.77**, **Bu-Pc.78**. But the reason for this is understandable: these sentences are clear enough for all ordinary purposes, nor are they attributed to the lord. They therefore do not merit the meticulous care and attention usually bestowed on words said to have been used by him in formulating the rules, and which the Old Commentary generally aims at rendering as lucid as possible by synonyms or by some more reasoned form of interpretation.

BD.3.xxi Because these thirty-two *Pācittiyas* deal with the corporate as well as with the individual behaviour of monks, it is not surprising to find in them no more than three records of lay people’s complaints of monks’ behaviour; while on the other hand “modest monks” are recorded to have complained as many as twenty-four times, monks who were elders once (**Bu-Pc.92**) and “several monks” twice (**Bu-Pc.68**, **Bu-Pc.70**). Yet on many occasions, as the

¹ **BD.2**, Introduction, p.xxvf.

narratives show, this large conventual source of criticism might, if taken by itself, give a somewhat misleading notion of the amount of association between the monks and lay people which these same *Pācittiyas* portray. That such association was easy and unrestricted needs no labouring at this stage in Pali studies. Examples of it may be found in [Bu-Pc.66](#), [Bu-Pc.67](#), [Bu-Pc.83–Bu-Pc.86](#), [Bu-Pc.88](#).

In addition, twice Gotama is reputed to formulate a rule as the result of some piece of direct evidence observed by him and not because someone had grumbled. Thus, in [Bu-Pc.87](#), it is recorded how the lord, having come to Upananda's abode, himself takes exception to this disciple's body which evidently was too high. Again, the lord is recorded, in [Bu-Pc.65](#), to hear the noise made by boys who had been ordained before they were twenty years old, and himself to raise objections to ordaining a person, *puggala*, into the Order before he was of an age to stand the physical hardships of monastic life.

It is a little curious that this is put as high as twenty, but it was doubtless to allow an entrant to develop sufficient stamina to render improbable his return to the "low life of a layman," for any such withdrawal from the Order was a blur on its reputation. In other connections, notably in the *Jātaka*, the "age of discretion" is said to be reached when a boy becomes sixteen. Nuns' [Bi-Pc.74](#) makes it an offence for a nun to ordain a girl, a maiden, *kumāribhūta*, which the Old Commentary explains by *sāmaṇerī*, a novice, who was less than twenty. This therefore seems a kind of recognised age at which or over which to receive the *upasampadā* ordination. For *pabbajjā*, going forth into the Order, although not into full membership, clearly is not meant. Monks' [Bu-Pc.65](#) uses the word *upasampādeti*, and Nuns' [Bi-Pc.61–Bu-Pc.83](#) *vuṭṭhāpeti*, which the Old Commentary consistently explains by *upasampādeti* as though these two words mean the same thing.

BD.3.xxii

In Monks' [Bu-Pc.65](#) the boy Upāli and his young friends are recorded to have obtained the consent of their parents to "go forth." It was necessary for a boy, *putta*, to obtain this sanction¹ for a measure which the Vinaya states must not be accorded a youth, *dāraka*, if he were less than fifteen years of age.² The mistake of the monks, in [Bu-Pc.65](#), seems to have been

¹ [Vin.1.83](#). ² [Vin.1.79](#).

to let these youths go forth and simultaneously to confer the *upasampadā* on them, *pabbājesurū upasampādesurū*, while they were still under twenty years old. It was the latter step which was here made to entail an offence of expiation, not for the ordinand but for the ordaining monks; elsewhere it is stated that a monk incurs an offence of wrong-doing if he allows a youth under fifteen to go forth.¹ It would therefore seem as if the six boys of whom the *Theragāthā* and its Commentary speak as each one having gone forth, with his parent's consent, at the age of seven,² must antedate the Vinaya ruling, unless some other hypothesis to explain this discrepancy be found. It is tenable to suppose that in the early days of the Order a person might be admitted to its ranks by being ordained at the same time as he was allowed to go forth. The splitting of this early double process into two parts—allowing to go forth and ordination, as well as the minimum age clauses governing the legality of carrying out either process—was doubtless a later introduction into the growing monastic machinery.

In the *sikkhāpadas* of Monks' *Bu-Pc.65* and Nuns' *Bi-Pc.71–Bi-Pc.73*, the two words *puggala* and *kumāribhūtā*, respectively used to designate the kind of person not to be ordained if he or she were not yet twenty, are striking enough to arrest attention. *Puggala* is most unfortunately not noticed by the Old Commentary on Monks' *Bu-Pc.65*. But I suspect it here to have a monastic intention, as it has when it occurs as the third member of the triad *saṅgha, gaṇa, puggala*, Order, group, individual (monk). Another form of this triad is *saṅgha, sambahulā bhikkhū, eka bhikkhu*, where *eka bhikkhu* balances *puggala* and *sambahulā bhikkhū* balances *gaṇa*. The feminine equivalent of this triad supplies additional evidence for the merging of *puggala* and *bhikkhu*. For those parts of the legislative apparatus affecting nuns provide no exact counterpart to *puggala*, since the one word, *ekabhikkhunī*, one nun, does duty in the nuns' triad for the two words, *puggala* and *eka bhikkhu*, of the monks' triads. Moreover, *Nissaggiya* regulations for forfeiture make it clear that the use of these two words, *puggala* and *eka bhikkhu*, is derived more from some convention than from any desire to discriminate between the meaning, status or functions of the subject denoted by either.

Although the term *puggala* thus to some extent acquired the technical

¹ *Vin.1.79.* ² *Psalms of the Brethren 37f., 60f., 73, 220, 231f., 233f.*

sense of “monk” in monastic terminology, it continued to be in vogue among the laity and also to be widely used by monks in talking of them. In addition lay life had the words *purisa*, man, male, and *kumāra*, boy. Monks also made use of these words, but perhaps more for the purpose of addressing or referring to men and boys (or girls, *kumāriyo*), still “in the world”¹ than for addressing or referring to members of the Order. *Purisa* and *kumāraka* are defined respectively at [Vin.4.334](#) as having attained and as not having attained to twenty years of age. But at [Vin.4.269](#), [Vin.4.316](#) *purisa* is defined as “a human man (or male person *manussapurisa*), not a *yakkha*, not a *peta*, not an animal.”

If a *purisa* or *kumāra* went forth he was no longer distinguished by these appellations, which savoured of the world; he became known as a *bhikkhu*, a monk, and as such might be further differentiated, for example as an elder, a teacher, a preceptor, a pupil, a novice, or a *puggala*. Regarded as *puggala* in its technical sense of individual (monk), a monk called *puggala* for any special purpose or reason would have certain rights and duties in the monastic structure, even before he received the *upasampadā*, ordination. After this had been conferred on him, and he had entered on to the different rights and duties of a full member of the Order, he yet remained liable to be designated as either *bhikkhu* or *puggala*.

BD.3.xxiv

With the absence from the monks’ terminology of the word *kumāra* as a description applicable to a monk while under twenty,² and therefore before he was ripe for full ordination, it is odd to find *kumāribhūtā*, a feminine form, of *kumāra*, applied to maidens under twenty, but who, because they are represented as having the *upasampadā* conferred on them, must already have gone forth and so be in some way members of the Order: probably, novices, *sāmaṇerī*, as the Old Commentary states, or probationers.

That the admissibility of using *puggala*, monkish man, instead of *bhikkhu*, monk, was not unknown to the Āṅguttara compilers, is apparent from AN.iii.269, where their fellows in the godly life, *sabrahmacārī*, might engage in criticism, a Vinaya expression,³ if they “lived in communion,” also a

¹ Cf. AN.i.136f., where Hatthaka of Ālavī is addressed by the lord as *kumāra*; and AN.iii.37 where the lord addresses girls newly joining their husbands’ families as *kumāriyo*. ² Cf. definition of *kumāra* at [Vin.4.334](#). ³ See [Vin.4.152](#), [Vin.4.154](#), [Vin.4.331](#).

Vinaya expression, with such men *puggalehi*, as are cemetery-like. Here the word *puggala*, from its association with *sabrahmācarī*, is at once marked as having a monastic reference. Similarly at AN.iii.270 the dangers of becoming devoted to one person, *puggala*, show that person to be conceived of as a monk. And at AN.i.33 the word *puggala* turns out to be used of Makkhali Gosāla, the leader of a rival sect, but still a recluse who has renounced the world, not a householder.

BD.3.xxv

Conversely both the Devadūta Sutta and Vagga¹ show Yama, the lord of death, addressing *ekacco*, “a certain one,” as *purisa* in a context which clearly indicates *ekacco* to be not a monk but a person in the world. Again, AN.iii.171–172, in speaking of a “good man,” a donor, meaning a man “in the world,” calls him *sap-purisa*; and examples could be multiplied.

Now to suggest that the Vinaya and sometimes other parts of the canon use *puggala* to designate a man who is a monk, is not to say that the term, as applying to male persons in general, vanished from either the monastic or the lay vocabularies. The Aṅguttara alone provides plenty of evidence to the contrary, with its mantra occurring thirteen times: “There are in the world three sorts of) men,” and thirty-six times “four (sorts of) men,”² *puggala*. Nor can it be said that the use of *purisa* as referring either to man as *homo* or as “man in he world” (as against in the houseless state), entailed to complete lapse from the monks’ vocabulary as a term applying to monks. At the same time it may be marked that when so used there is a tendency for it to appear in a compound with another word affixed to it.

For example, *mahā-purisa* occurs as an honorific title ascribed to Gotama, the great recluse; and a monk endowed with certain factors³ or engaged on certain high mental work⁴ is called *uttama-purisa*, the highest man. At Vin.4.63, Vin.4.65 nuns are recorded to address monks obliquely as *agga-purisa*, the chief, topmost men. Yet although people, human kind, are often denoted by the term *manussa*, it is not unreasonable to see *purisa* in these two Vinaya passages as equivalent to *homo sapiens*, man and woman. For the nuns, I think, were not saying that the monks were the chief of all males, but only of the present company; and that consisted of monks and nuns.

¹ MN 130 and AN.i.138. ² See GS.ii, Introduction, p.xi. ³ AN.v.16; SN.iii.61. ⁴ SN.ii.278.

There is also the interesting compound *purisa-puggala*, “male person,”¹ which in various Vinaya passages seems to be useful when reference is intended at one and the same time to men of the world and men of the cloister. In Nuns' *Pārājika* *Bi-Pj.5*, *Bi-Pj.8* and *Bi-Ss.5*, *purisapuggala* is defined in the same way as is *purisa* in their *Bi-Pc.11*, *Bi-Pc.12* and *Bi-Pc.60*. The first word in this definition is *manussapurisa*, a human male. This will embrace monks and non-monks. For however much nuns may be shown on these six occasions to have behaved unsuitably with men in the world, called *purisapuggala* and *purisa*, the legislation on such behaviour was extended to cover the conduct of nuns towards monks in similar circumstances. I think it highly probable that in Nuns' *Bi-Pj.5*, *Bi-Pj.8* and *Bi-Ss.5*, the monkish *puggala* was added to the worldly *purisa*, and that in *Bi-Pc.11*, *Bi-Pc.12*, and *Bi-Pc.60* the worldly *purisa* was defined as *manussapurisa*, human male, so as to leave the nuns no grounds for arguing that these rules did not apply to their behaviour equally with monks as with men leading the household life. Thus the word *purisapuggala* was used to place beyond all doubt the need for nuns to refrain from acting undesirably either with men in the world or with monks and recluses. But when this word was not used, the same sense was achieved by the Old Commentary's definition of *purisa* as *manussa-purisa*. For both this and *purisapuggala* express the male of the human species under the double aspect of householder and monk.

BD.3.xxvi

The same line of argument could doubtless be applied to the eight *purisapuggala* mentioned at *AN.iii.212*. Here the Order is not called the Order of monks, *bhikkusamgha*, but the Order of disciples, *sāvaka-samgha*, which at once enlarges the scope of *samgha* to include lay as well as monastic disciples. For by the eight *purisapuggala* are meant those on the four ways and those who have attained the fruits of the ways, achievements, as many records testify, not confined to monks alone, but won too by lay disciples. Very likely the force of *purisapuggala* is here to include potentially both male lay disciples and monks; but to exclude women, both female lay disciples and nuns, not necessarily through a desire to depreciate them, for many are recorded to have gained the ways and the fruits, but merely because

BD.3.xxvii

¹ So translated, *GS.iii.156*, and see also *GS.iii.274 n.* See *MRS. RHYS DAVIDS*, “Vanished Sakyan Window,” *Wayfarer's Words*, ii.622, for further references.

the sight of the “white-frocked householder,” Anāthapiṇḍika, inspired the lord to address Sāriputta with his mind focussed on men.

My conclusion, however tentative it may be, is that for Vinaya interpretation, the question of whether man became “lessened in worth as man, as *homo*, by the word *puggala*, male, being used for *purisa*, the older form”¹ is beside the point, for with Vinaya we are in the region of technicalities. Whatever the intrinsic meaning of these two words, whatever their age, their worth, both were needed in the monastic scheme and idiom, the one, *puggala*, acquiring a special and technical meaning equivalent to “monk”; and the other, *purisa*, being used both as a term of honour among monks and also as carrying particular reference to men who were not monks.

THE *SEKHIYAS*

The rules for training, *sekhiyā dhammā*, numbering seventy-five, are the same for monks and nuns. Several interesting points arise. In the first place, the provenance for all except **Bu-Sk.51**, **Bu-Sk.55**, **Bu-Sk.56** is given as Sāvattthī. Secondly, the principal actors in the stories leading up to each “training to be observed” are invariably said to be the group of six monks, and then in the Nuns’ *Sekhiyas*, the group of six nuns. Thirdly, an offence of wrong-doing is incurred by any monk or nun who, out of disrespect, *yo(yā)anādariyaṃ paṭicca*, flies in the face of the training promulgated. These two items: “out of disrespect” and offence of wrong-doing, are common to all the trainings to be observed. Fourthly, the trainings fall into three groups:

1. **Bu-Sk.1–Bu-Sk.56** are concerned with such etiquette and decent, polite behaviour as is to be shown by a monk or nun when visiting houses for almsfood;
2. **Bu-Sk.57–Bu-Sk.72** are concerned with a regard to be accorded *dhamma*, for they rule that it should not be taught to people who, because of this circumstance or that, would be shutting the door to both a respectful giving and a respectful hearing of *dhamma*,

¹ GS.ii, Introduction, p.xi; Cf. GS.iii.247, n.

3. **Bu-Sk.73–Bu-Sk.75** are concerned with unsuitable ways of obeying the calls of nature and of spitting.

These matters would no doubt have lost some of their first importance once Buddhism became triumphantly established, although their force as a guide to good manners has been in no way diminished by the passage of time. But when in its infancy early Buddhism was groping its way, seeking to attract adherents in a very critical world which had a big choice of teachings and opinions before it, when it was in fact competing with other sects, it was necessary for it to do all in its power to make itself acceptable and to arrange its external features in such a way as not to jeopardise any chances of a fair hearing for its message.

According to the early Buddhist way of thinking, no attempt should be made to kindle faith in this message unless people showed they were ready to listen in humility to what would be taught. A very interesting example occurs in the *Saṃyutta*.¹ A monk, Udayin,² is shown refusing to speak *dhamma* to a brahmin lady so long as she sat down on a high seat,³ put on her sandals,⁴ and muffled up (veiled) her head.⁵ We here get a monk scrupulously keeping three of the “rules for training.” He is shown as willing to speak *dhamma* to a woman, but not until she learns of the respect due to it, and which her pupil eventually tells her about. And when at last he is portrayed as teaching *dhamma* to this woman, even then, in compliance with **Bu-Pc.7**, he does not use more than six sentences⁶: arahants point out pleasure-pain when there is eye, when there is tongue, when there is mind, but do not point it out when there is not eye, tongue or mind. No doubt Udayin regarded the brahmin lady's pupil as the “learned man” whose presence was required by the rule of **Bu-Pc.7** when a monk was teaching *dhamma* to a woman.⁷

BD.3.xxix

A striking parallel to the *Sekhiya* rules for training in manners is to be found in Clement of Alexandria's *Paedagogus (Instructor)*.⁸ Clement was apparently beset by the same kind of preoccupations and faced by the same kind of bad manners as were those who drew up the *Sekhiyas*. His own

¹ SN.iv.121ff. ² There were three of this name, see KS.iv.77, n.2. ³ Bu-Sk.69. ⁴ Bu-Sk.61, Bu-Sk.62. ⁵ Bu-Sk.67. ⁶ SN.iv.123. ⁷ BD.ii.206. ⁸ Translated in *Ante-Nicene Christian Library*, vol.iv; CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA, vol.i., Edinburgh, 1871.

code of polite, civilised behaviour which he vigorously hoped his fellow Christians would adopt has been put in a nutshell by T.R. GLOVER,¹ whom I cannot do better than quote. He says: "Clement of Alexandria has much to say to Christians about the minutiae of manners; they must not scratch themselves or spit in public; they should not guffaw, nor twitch, nor crack their fingers, nor fidget; they must not eat or drink in uncouth styles. Very trifling? No, not at all trifling; for these little things annoy the people to whom you have to appeal, to whom Christ has sent you with a message which it is important for them to hear." Thus India in the sixth and fifth centuries before Christ, and Egypt in the second century after, had the acumen to perceive the value of decorum and good manners in facilitating the growth of friendly interest, even faith, in the new religious ventures experienced by each of these two richly endowed countries.

NUNS' PĀTIMOKKHA RULES

The whole of the Bhikkhunivibhaṅga, the framework together with the statement of the Pātimokkha rules for nuns, falls within this volume. The rules themselves, the *sikkhāpada*, although in isolation from their framework, have been translated by B.C. LAW in two of his works.² The list of rules which he gives, telescoping here and there those which have the same tendency, is as useful as a swift guide to the discipline for nuns as is Rhys Davids's and Oldenberg's corresponding treatment of the discipline for monks.³ Waldschmidt has made a comparison of the Pali text of the nuns' rules with the Sanskrit, Chinese and Tibetan texts obtaining among various of the schools.⁴ This study naturally necessitated a translation of each rule (into German), although a complete translation of the whole of the nuns' *Vibhaṅga*, that is of the introductory stories, the Old Commentarial material as well as of the rules themselves, would have been beside the point for

BD.3.xxx

¹ *The Disciple*, Cambridge, 1941, p.33. ² *Women in Buddhist Literature*, p.8off., and *History of Pali Literature*, i.72ff., which corrects the omission of a "not" in the former, in item (10).

³ *Sacred Books of the East XIII*. ⁴ E. WALDSCHMIDT, *Bruchstücke des Bhikṣuṇī-Prātimokṣa der Sarvāstivādins*, *Kleinere Sanskrit-Texte*, Heft iii, Leipzig, 1926.

his purpose. Such a translation occurs, I believe, for the first time in the present volume of the *Book of the Discipline*.

Both in regard to its grouping and its arrangement of the material surrounding each rule, the Nuns' *Vibhaṅga* is planned on exactly the same lines as the Monks'. There is thus a *Pārājika* group, a *Saṅghādisesa*, a *Nissaggiya Pācittiya*, a *Pācittiya*, a *Pāṭidesaniya*, a *Sekhiya* and an *Adhikaraṇasamathā dhammā* group. The contents of these last two appear to be exact copies, substituting "nun" for "monk," of the corresponding groups for monks. The nuns have no *Aniyatas* or undetermined offences.

The Pali *Bhikkhuni-vibhaṅga*, as it has come down to us, is somewhat misleading in appearance. For the four *Pārājikas*, the ten *Saṅghādisesas*, the twelve *Nissaggiyas*, the ninety-six *Pācittiyas* and the eight *Pāṭidesaniyas* there set forth for nuns do not represent, except in the last case, the total number of rules which, according to the *Vibhaṅga's* reckoning, fall into these various classes. They represent only those which have to be observed *solely* by nuns, and which are therefore not included in the discipline laid down for monks. The introductory sentence and the concluding paragraph attached to each class of rules in the *Bhikkhuni-vibhaṅga* refer respectively to eight *Pārājika*, seventeen *Saṅghādisesa*, thirty *Nissaggiya*, a hundred and sixty-six *Pācittiya* and eight *Pāṭidesaniya* rules for nuns, and state that all of these come up for recitation. In effect, therefore, the nuns have not fewer but as many as eighty-four more rules to keep than have the monks. Traditionally those which do not appear in the Nuns' *Vibhaṅga* are held to be comprised in the Monks' *Vibhaṅga*; and they are also held to be as binding on nuns as they are on monks in spite of their being recorded in the Monks' *Vibhaṅga* only.

We may therefore regard the Nuns' *Vibhaṅga* in its present form as an abridged version of some more complete *Vibhaṅga* for nuns. This hypothesis is to some extent strengthened by a surviving fragment of a few lines belonging to the Tibetan *Bhikṣuṇī Prātimokṣa*. This fragment has been published by FINOT.¹ It contains only the end of one article and the beginning of another, but these can be easily identified as *Saṅghādisesas* for nuns corresponding to Monks' **Bu-Ss.8** and **Bu-Ss.9**. The survival of this fragment

¹ *Le Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivādins*, Appendix, Journal Asiatique, 1913, p.548.

tempts us to presume as not impossible a time when a Nuns' Pātimokkha existed in full, and when it was not cut down, as it now is in the Pali *Vibhaṅga*, to include no more than those rules held to be incumbent only on nuns, and to exclude those others which, while being preserved only in the *Vibhaṅga* for monks, which naturally shows that monks should observe them, are also traditionally held to form part of the authorised discipline for nuns.

BD.3.xxxii

The rules which the Nuns' *Vibhaṅga* assumes to exist and to be binding on nuns, but which are not now to be found in that *Vibhaṅga*, have been identified by Buddhaghosa with various rules in the Monks' *Vibhaṅga*. And, in various parts of his *Vinaya Commentary*,¹ he has named such rules as he holds to be observable by both sides of the Order. With the exception of Finot's fragment, this great commentator is our sole authority for those rules for nuns which are supposed to be included in the Monks' *Vibhaṅga*, and which, although they are not incorporated in the existing form of the Pali Bhikkhunivibhaṅga, are traditionally held to be operative not only for monks but for nuns as well.

If we accept Buddhaghosa's opinions, the nuns' eight *Pārājikas* appear to consist of those four laid down in the Nuns' *Pārājika* class in addition to those four laid down in the Monks' *Pārājika* class. While therefore the nuns have four *Pārājika* rules peculiar to themselves, and hence four in excess of the number laid down for monks, there are on the other hand no *Pārājikas* peculiar to monks, since their complete set of four is also regarded as binding on nuns.

This is farther borne out by the occurrence of the word *pi* (too, also), in the *sikkhāpada* not only of the last three but also of the first of the Nuns' *Pārājikas*: *ayam pi pārājikā hoti*, "she too becomes one who is defeated," which means, according to the Old Commentary, that "she is so called in reference to the former (or preceding)." The presence of the word *pi* in the text of the "rule" of Nuns' **Bi-Pj.5** is significant. The Reference which it implies is to all foregoing *Pārājikas*. Among the total of eight *Pārājikas*, *pi* is absent only from Monks' **Bu-Pj.1**, where the corresponding phrase

¹ Vin-a.906, Vin-a.915, Vin-a.947, Vin-a.948. Failure to appreciate this important point invalidates most of MISS D.N. BHAGVAT's argument in her *Early Buddhist Jurisprudence*, p.164ff.

merely runs *pārājiko hoti*. Thus each of the remaining seven rules is held to concur, through its use of *pi*, in connecting itself with whatever may be the number, one to seven, of *Pārājika* rules which has preceded it. Had *pi* been absent from Nuns' *Bi-Pj.5*, then where it occurs in their *Bi-Pj.6–Bi-Pj.8*, it would no doubt normally have been taken to refer to their *Bi-Pj.5* only, as the beginning of a series. But its occurrence in *Bi-Pj.5* itself pushes this beginning further back still: to the Monks' *Pārājika* class.

BD.3.xxxiii

The Nuns' *Pārājika* rules further exhibit a curious and unparalleled feature, in that each rule is, in the "rule" itself, named after the woman who does the action giving rise to the particular offence which the rules severally aim at checking. This name is not commented upon by the Old Commentary because, as Buddhaghosa says (Vin-a.901), "It is only the name of the one who is defeated." She may be one who touched (a man) above his knees (*Bi-Pj.5*); one who conceals a fault (*Bi-Pj.6*); one who imitates a monk who has been suspended (by the Order) (*Bi-Pj.7*); or one who does eight things (*Bi-Pj.8*), that is, indulges in the eight kinds of dealings with men enumerated in the "rule" of *Bi-Pj.8*. These are the offences against which the Nuns' *Pārājikas* legislate.

It should be noticed that, just as part of the Old Commentary's definition of a monk who is defeated is that he is not a son of the Sakyans, *asakyaputtiya*, so part of its definition of a nun who is defeated is that she is not a daughter of the Sakyans, *asakyadhītā*. This latter appellation occurs again in Nuns' *Bi-Ss.10*, but in the positive, *sakyadhītā*.

In their *Saṅghādisesa* class the nuns are said to have seventeen rules of this type, although only ten are there set forth. The monks have thirteen. According to Buddhaghosa, six out of these thirteen rules are applicable to monks only, the remaining seven being observable by nuns as well. He indicates these latter to be Monks' *Bu-Ss.5*, *Bu-Ss.8*, *Bu-Ss.9*, all of which become offences at once (*paṭhamāpattika*), and Monks' *Bu-Ss.10–Bu-Ss.13*, which constitute the whole of the subdivision where offences become so on the third admonition of a monk or nun by other monks or nuns respectively (*yāvataṭṭiyaka*).

The wording of the Monks' *Saṅghādisesa* "rules" offers an interesting contrast to that of the Nuns' *Saṅghādisesa* "rules." For each of the monks'

BD.3.xxxiv

rules names the penalty incurred in the briefest possible way, simply by using the one word *saṅghādiseso*, “there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.” This holds good of the two groups into which the *Saṅghādisesa* offences are divided: those where the offences are so at once, and those where they are so on the third (and unsuccessful) admonition. The monks’ rules do not explicitly mention these two groups by name, but their existence is recognised by the internal evidence of the “rules” themselves, especially in the case of the second group, that comprising Monks’ *Bu-Ss.10–Bu-Ss.13*; and also by the paragraph which, in concluding the Monks’ *Saṅghādisesa* Section, places nine of these offences under group (1) and four under group (2). In the Nuns’ *Saṅghādisesa* “rules” the nature of the offence is stated more explicitly and therefore at greater length than in the monks’. In fact, not one word, but a sentence is used: *ayam pi bhikkhunī paṭhamāpattikaṃ (yāvataṭṭiyakaṃ) dhammaṃ āpannā nisāraṇiyaṃ saṅghādisesaṃ*, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once (on the third admonition), entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.

Now this sentence contains several interesting points. In the first place, the *pi*, although occurring unfailingly in *Bi-Ss.2–Bi-Ss.13*, does not occur in the “rule” of *Bi-Ss.1*, so that this cannot be held to pay any reference to preceding, that is, on the analogy of the *Pārājikas*, to the Monks’ *Saṅghādisesas*, or in particular to those seven of them which Buddhaghosa asseverates to be operative for both sides of the Order: Monks’ *Bu-Ss.5, Bu-Ss.8–Bu-Ss.13*. The absence of *pi* from this context raises the question whether, when the *Saṅghādisesa* standing first in the nuns’ class was drawn up, those others now found only in the monks’ class, but said to be observable also by nuns, were in actual fact *not* already framed, and hence incapable of forming a point of reference for Nuns’ *Bi-Ss.1*.

BD.3.xxxv

We have no conclusive evidence one way or the other on which to base an answer to this question. All that can be said is that there is nothing inherent in Nuns’ *Bi-Ss.1* to lead us to assign its formulation to a date, posterior to the formulation of those seven which are posited by Buddhaghosa as common to both sides of the Order. In fact, had it not been that Monks’ *Bu-Ss.12* were

included in this list,¹ there would have been certain grounds for regarding Nuns' **Bi-Ss.1** as belonging to a date earlier than any of these others, with the possible exception of one of them, and therefore as a matter of history unable to refer to them. For Monks' **Bu-Ss.8** and **Bu-Ss.9** speak of a "legal question," **Bu-Ss.10** and **Bu-Ss.11** of a schism, both of which, in order to come into being, needed a certain amount of time to elapse after the inception of the Order. **Bu-Ss.13**, without our looking further than the length at which its "rule" is stated, suggests comparative lateness in formulation. **Bu-Ss.5**, that against being a go-between, is alone of these rules non-committal as to its possible date.

We thus get one rule (**Bu-Ss.5**) from which nothing can be gleaned as to its comparative age, one which suggests comparative earliness (**Bu-Ss.12**), and five which suggest comparative lateness (**Bu-Ss.8–Bu-Ss.11**, **Bu-Ss.13**). Yet this evidence, which is in any case no more than tentative, is in addition neither sufficiently sound nor consistent to warrant our definitely ascribing to these *Saṅghādisesas* a date later in time than that of Nuns' **Bi-Ss.1**, that penalising a nun for speaking in envy of householders or recluses. Thus the absence of *pi* here must remain something of a mystery, unless we care to subscribe to the hypothesis which I have just advanced.

In the second place, each rule of the *Saṅghādisesas* set forth in the nuns' class states precisely the type to which belongs the *Saṅghādisesa* offence into which the nun has fallen, whether it is that where an offence becomes one at once or after the third admonition. It is not uninteresting to note in passing, although it is not important, that the word for offence, *āpatti*, is comprised in the name of the first type of *Saṅghādisesa* offence, called *paṭhamāpattika*, but not in the second, called *yāvatatīyaka*, where therefore it has to be understood.

BD.3.xxxvi

In the third place, the *Saṅghādisesa* offence, because it is grammatically constructed as that into which a nun has fallen, takes the accusative case, as against the nominative in the Monks' class. Moreover it is associated with the word *nissāraṇīya*, also in the accusative. The phrase *nissāraṇīyaṃ saṅghādisesaṃ*, meaning "(an offence) entailing a formal meeting of the

¹ See **BD.1, Introduction, p.xv** for this *Saṅghādisesa*, possibly representing some specially ancient fragment of the Pātimokkha.

Order involving being sent away,” should be compared with the similar construction: *Nissaggiyaṃ Pācittiyaṃ*, “(an offence) of expiation involving forfeiture.” In the Monks’ *Saṅghādisesas* there is no mention of *nissāraṇīyaṃ*. Waldschmidt translates the last sentence of the Nuns’ *Saṅghādisesa* rules as¹: “*diese Nonne wird schuldig des 3-Vergehens muss auf(ge)geben (werden) (nissāraṇīyaṃ) saṅghāvaśeṣa.*” This does not say what it is that “must be caused to be sent away.” But Buddhaghosa (Vin-a.908) states that it is the nun who must be caused to be sent away from the Order (ablative) and not the offence. Oldenberg’s suggestion that the correct reading at Old Commentary on *Bi-Ss.12* (where the offence is attributed to nuns, plural) is *nissāriyanti*, is therefore doubtless right, and the Mahīśāsaka version, quoted by WALDSCHMIDT²: “*diese Nonne 3 Ermahnungs-Vergehen, saṅghāvaśeṣa, muss remütig bekannt werden,*” wrong.

The phrase “involving being sent away” does not at all imply that the offending nun is to be sent away from the Order for good, nor did the Order let go of its erring members so lightly. It would seem to mean that she would be sent away for the time being probably because admonition, although it had been tried, had failed, and that during this time she would cease to be regarded as a full member of the Order. As the Old Commentary explains: “The Order imposes the *mānatta* discipline for her offence, it sends her back to the beginning (of her probationary course as nun, not as probationer) and (then) it rehabilitates her.” This definition of *Saṅghādisesa* is identical with that of this same word in the Monks’ *Saṅghādisesa* section. Lapse in full membership is of a temporary nature and lasting only a fortnight³ while the offender is undergoing the *mānatta* discipline before, in the case of a nun, both Orders, as part of her penalty for having committed an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. *Nissāraṇīya*, involving being sent away, adds nothing new to the penalty. It is not something extra to the *Saṅghādisesa* penalty incurred by a nun, and hence marks no difference in the penalty imposed on monks and nuns for having committed such an offence. Only the word, as found in each “rule” of the Nuns’ *Saṅghādisesas*, is extra.

BD.3.xxxvii

¹ E. WALDSCHMIDT, *Bruchstücke des Bhikṣuṇī-pratimokṣa der Sarvāstivādins*, p.91. ² *Bruchstücke des Bhikṣuṇī-pratimokṣa der Sarvāstivādins*, p.91. ³ *Vin.4.242*; see below, *BD.3.3.212*.

Wrong and right kinds of *nissāraṇā*, “the causing to be sent away,” are expounded at [Vin.1.321](#), with an implied opposition to *osāraṇā*, “the causing to be restored,” at [Vin.1.322](#). Vin-a.1147 concerns itself with two kinds of *nissāraṇā*, the one appearing to be by an act of banishment, and the other by an act imposing certain disabilities.

In the *Bhikkhuni-vibhaṅga*, there are twice stated to be thirty *Nissaggiya* rules for nuns (the same number as for monks) although only twelve are there recorded. For these twelve are peculiar to nuns and are not regarded as operating for monks. From Buddhaghosa we learn that eighteen *Nissaggiya* rules pertained to both Orders; therefore there are also twelve peculiar to the monks. Buddhaghosa arrives at the eighteen common to both sides of the Order by a process of exclusion. They are as follows: [Bhikkhu Bu-NP.1–Bu-NP.3](#), [Bu-NP.6–Bu-NP.10](#), [Bu-NP.18–Bu-NP.20](#), [Bu-NP.22](#), [Bu-NP.23](#), [Bu-NP.25–Bu-NP.27](#), [Bu-NP.30](#). At the same time he explains the composition of the *Vaggas* (divisions of the rules usually into groups of ten each) in the *Nissaggiya* Section for nuns. These, comprising the twelve rules peculiar to nuns and the eighteen to be observed by nuns as well as by monks, although these latter are stated only in the Monks’ *Vibhaṅga*, work out as follows:

BD.3.xxxviii

Bhikkhunī Nissaggiya, Vagga 1 = [Bu-NP.1](#), [Bu-NP.2](#), [Bu-NP.3](#), [Bu-NP.6](#), [Bu-NP.7](#), [Bu-NP.8](#), [Bu-NP.9](#), [Bu-NP.10](#) (8) + [Bi-NP.2](#), [Bi-NP.3](#) (2).

Bhikkhunī Nissaggiya, Vagga 2 = [Bu-NP.18](#), [Bu-NP.19](#), [Bu-NP.20](#) (3) + [Bi-NP.4](#), [Bi-NP.5](#), [Bi-NP.6](#), [Bi-NP.7](#), [Bi-NP.8](#), [Bi-NP.9](#), [Bi-NP.10](#) (7).

Bhikkhunī Nissaggiya, Vagga 3 = [Bu-NP.22](#), [Bu-NP.23](#), [Bu-NP.25](#), [Bu-NP.26](#), [Bu-NP.27](#), [Bu-NP.28](#), [Bu-NP.30](#) (7) + [Bi-NP.1](#), [Bi-NP.11](#), [Bi-NP.12](#) (3).

Of the hundred and sixty-six *Pācittiyas* which tradition computes for the nuns, ninety-six are set forth in their section. These ninety-six with the ninety-two set forth for monks together amount to a hundred and eighty-eight. Buddhaghosa works out that twenty-two *Pācittiya* rules, which he enumerates, are incumbent on monks only. The remaining seventy therefore, which are applicable to members of both Orders, bring the nuns’ given total of ninety-six up to their actual total of a hundred and sixty-six.

In the nuns’ *Pāṭidesaniya* section, eight rules are stated, and since eight is given as the total number, not one is here suppressed. Thus monks and

nuns share no *Pāṭidesaniya* rules, the nuns having these eight and the monks their four.

A comparison of the monks' rules and those for nuns will show these together to contain:

1. Rules which owing to their subject matter could apply to one side of the Order only and not to both, as for example Monks' **Bu-Ss.1**; and also **Bu-Ss.6**, **Bu-Ss.7** and **Bu-NP.29** which, doubtless because nuns were not supposed to dwell alone or go about singly (**Bi-Ss.3**), could not be taken to apply to them. For this same reason their **Bi-Ss.3** would have no point as a rule incumbent on monks;
2. Monks' rules which could apply to nuns but which do not, for example **Bu-NP.11–Bu-NP.15**, **Bu-NP.16**, **Bu-NP.24**;
3. Nuns' rules which could apply to monks but which do not, for example **Bi-Ss.10–Bi-Ss.13**, and all of their *Nissaggiyas*.

BD.3.xxxix

Moreover, the position is even more intricate than it might appear. For example, Nuns' **Bi-NP.1** has an affinity with Monks' **Bu-NP.21** (not held in common); **Bi-NP.3** is similar to Monks' **Bu-NP.25** (held in common); and **Bi-NP.6** and **Bi-NP.8** resemble Monks' **Bu-NP.30** (held in common). Further, Nuns' **Bi-Ss.11** may be compared with Monks' **Bu-Pc.63** and **Bi-NP.79**, for although they are not exactly similar, all three concur in their mention of some dissatisfaction evinced by a monk or nun after the settlement of a legal question or after the carrying out of a formal act by the Order. Again, there is a very marked correspondence between Nuns' **Bi-Ss.12** and Monks' **Bu-Pc.64**, with both of which Nuns' **Bi-Pj.6** may also be compared. Why the monks should incur a lesser penalty than the nuns for a similar kind of offence is a problem not yet solved, but it is an occurrence of some frequency, of which an instance is noticed by Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.902.

The reduction of the rules to the three categories mentioned above seems to me to strengthen the view that rules were not promulgated in advance of the commission of offences, but as a result, their formulation thus in the main depending upon conduct which had actually taken place. This hypothesis would account for the inclusion of identical rules entailing identical penalties in the *Pātimokkha* of both Orders; for the resemblance,

but without actual identity, of rules found in one Pātimokkha to those found in the other; for the not negligible degree of overlapping where similar or comparable offences entail dissimilar penalties in the case of each Order; and for the non-appearance in one Pātimokkha or the other of rules which, from the point of view of their subject matter, might suitably have found a place in it. To ascribe the inclusion or exclusion of such rules to pure chance is no explanation. Had the rules been drafted in advance of the commission of offences, it would have been a comparatively simple matter for the early “editors” to have kept apart all of those, and not merely a selection of them, which could have only a one-sided application, and to have set forth all the remainder as observable by members of both branches, of the Order. But because the drafting of rule and penalty follows a less simple, and less obvious course, we may justifiably consider the composition of the *Pātimokkhas* to have been determined by the compelling hand of historical event and happening.

BD.3.xl

The critics, whose complaints of the nuns’ behaviour is shown to result in the formulation of rules for nuns, are for the most part the “modest nuns.” Seventy-four times they are recorded to be vexed and annoyed. “People” are recorded to have made criticisms thirty-two times. To these must be added the complaints of a man, of a Licchavi, of the keeper of a field, of prostitutes, of parents and husband, of a family, once each; of a brahmin and of a guild, twice each; of nuns, three times; and of monks, four times. Only once, in **Bi-Pc.21**, are no criticisms recorded, the nuns concerned telling other nuns, these the monks, and these the lord.

The locus of the introductory stories to all the rules in the *Bhikkhuni-vibhāṅga* is, with seven exceptions only, given as Sāvattḥī. Four stories, **Bi-Pc.10**, **Bi-Pc.39**, **Bi-Pc.40**, **Bi-Pc.81**, are set in Rājagaha, two, **Bi-Pc.5** and **Bi-Pc.58**, in Kapilavatthu, and one, **Bi-Pc.52**, in Vesālī. Without attempting to draw any inference as to why such a huge majority are attached to Sāvattḥī, it may not be uninteresting to look at those stories and their rules which are said to emanate from other places.

Bi-Pc.10, which opens in the same way as Monks’ **Bu-Pc.37**, had to be set in Rājagaha because of its need to refer to a festival which used to be held on a mountain top nearby. This was made the occasion in the Monks’

Pācittiya for the prohibition of eating at the wrong time; while in the Nuns' *Pācittiya* it gave rise to the ban on their seeing (*dassana*, also able to mean "perceiving, noticing") dancing, singing and music.¹

BD.3.xli

Bi-Pc.39 and **Bi-Pc.40** are concerned with nuns' conduct during and after the rains. Similar events, connected with monks, are recorded in the *Mahāvagga*² when again the lord is said to have been in Rājagaha. This town therefore, besides its other claims to fame, may be regarded as a source of rules for the rains.

In **Bi-Pc.81**, Thullanandā, although herself not particularly connected with Rājagaha, is shown in association with the schismatic monks headed by Devadatta. Now these, in Monks' **Bu-Ss.10**, **Bu-Pc.11** and **Bu-Pc.29** for example, are the leading personages in narratives which purport to refer to times when the lord was staying in Rājagaha, and thus themselves seem to have frequented this place. Because this *Pācittiya* needed to make use of them, a good reason is forthcoming to account for its locus being given as Rājagaha.

Nuns' **Bi-Pc.58** appears to be complementary to Monks' **Bu-Pc.23**, the one rebuking nuns for not going to monks for exhortation, and the other rebuking monks for going to a nunnery to exhort nuns. Since Monks' **Bu-Pc.23** is for some reason set in Kapilavatthu, although the other exhortation rules belong to Sāvathī, it is consistent to set the complementary rule for nuns also in Kapilavatthu. It may in fact have been the source of these two rules, for the legislation on exhortation went through several vicissitudes before being finally settled.

The motive ascribing **Bi-Pc.5** to a time when the lord was likewise said to be staying at his birthplace, although less obvious, is more interesting. For here we may be up against a rule the need of which began to be felt at a comparatively early date. Mahāpajāpati, one of the very few nuns shown to have direct access to the lord, is present, as recorded, and in converse with him. Yet, since she was his aunt, she could not have been much with him towards the end of his life when he came to reside more and more at Sāvathī. Moreover, this *Pācittiya* is very unusual in leading up to a rule

¹ Possibly in Ancient India, as in old Malabar, singing and music took on the character of miming and acting. If so, "seeing" would be as apt a term as "hearing." ² *Vin.1.79*, *Vin.1.137*, *Vin.1.138*.

through an “allowance.” Perhaps in early days it may have been guidance enough to prescribe allowances, but later a number of causes led to their abuse and hence to the need for a stricter type of regulation, framed in rules and penalties. At all events allowances not seldom appear in contexts which may reasonably be considered to show the influence of some older tradition. I think, too, Indians loving personal cleanliness as they do, the question of the nuns washing themselves—the subject of this *Pācittiya*—would have required legislation reasonably soon after the inception of the female Order.

BD.3.xlii

The rather elaborate introduction in *Bi-Pc.52*, whose locus is given as Vesālī, has no counterpart anywhere in the canon, nor is there any tradition specially connecting the group of six nuns with this place. In regard to the two monks mentioned, Kappitaka and Upāli, it is true that the *Petavatthu* associates Kappitaka with Vesālī, or more exactly with Kapinaccanā, a locality probably nearby, even perhaps the cemetery where according to *Bi-Pc.52* this monk was staying. But with no other canonical reference to Kappitaka, it seems very likely that the *Petavatthu* and its Commentary¹ placed him in Vesālī on the authority of this Vinaya story; and that this placed him here because it veritably was the place where the enraged nuns tried to murder him. He is rather a shadowy monk who fades from the picture, attention being diverted instead to Upāli, whom the nuns are recorded to have abused. Neither the *Pācittiya* nor its Commentary elucidates the identity of this Upāli, but the *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* takes him to be the Vinaya expert. The offence for which the rule legislates is abuse of a monk by a nun. Had the rule been concerned with attempted murder, it would have appeared in the *Pārājika* section, and Kappitaka might then have been more to the fore as the peg on which to hang the rule.

The group of six nuns, more frequently heard of when the lord is not recorded to have been in Vesālī, are often present on occasions when he is said to have been in Sāvattihī.² Thus there is no particular reason to expect Vesālī to be the scene when the activities of these nuns are being recounted, any more than there is when the *thera* Upāli's name is mentioned. His journeyings must have been as extensive as any of the great disciples'.

BD.3.xliii

¹ Pv.49; Pv-a.230. ² Vin.2.262, Vin.2.266, Vin.2.269, Vin.2.271, Vin.2.276; Nuns' Bi-NP.1, Bi-Pc.2, Bi-Pc.22.

The group of six nuns formed a useful body to which to fasten misdemeanours. The *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* is of the opinion that the group of six monks was so named because of its six leaders, and that these had nuns also in their following: those referred to as the group of six. Certainly in **Bi-Pc.58** (*cf.* Monks' **Bu-Pc.23**) the two groups are depicted in connection with one another.

Whether these nuns numbered six, or were the followers of six leaders, or were so called because six was not reckoned among the “lucky “ numbers, there are some cases where offences clearly could not have been perpetrated by nuns acting singly but only in concert; for example, when they went to see play-acting (**Bi-Pc.10**), when they went to see a picture gallery (**Bi-Pc.41**), when they travelled in a vehicle (**Bi-Pc.85**), and when they bathed naked at a public ford (**Bi-Pc.2**, **Bi-Pc.21**). For nuns were not allowed to go about alone (**Bi-Ss.3**); therefore such offences had to be attributed to a group acting together. But other offences for which they are made responsible could have been committed as easily within the monastery precincts as in the world outside, and as easily by one nun as by several. In such conventual seclusion as existed, a nun would not have needed associates in order to spin yarn (**Bi-Pc.43**); to learn worldly knowledge (**Bi-Pc.49**), although if she wanted to teach it (**Bi-Pc.50**) she would require other nuns as pupils; to wear women's ornaments (**Bi-Pc.87**); to use perfume and paint (**Bi-Pc.88**); to bathe with scented ground sesamum (**Bi-Pc.89**); or to make a hoard of bowls (**Bi-NP.1**).

BD.3.xliv

The group of six monks is also recorded to have made, a hoard of bowls (Monks' **Bu-NP.21**), so that a certain balance is visible here, although the resulting rule is differently stated in the ease of the two Orders.

I think it as valid to contend that one group did in fact copy the other in this acquisitive behaviour, or even unwittingly behaved in the same way, as it is to hold that the story leading up to the framing of the nuns' rule was copied, by the recensionists, from that of the monks'. For I think that had the group of six nuns been merely fictitious as a group, the “editors” would not have ascribed to them both various offences which could have been as easily attached to “a certain nun” without prejudicing the resulting rule, as well as various offences which had to be shown capable of perpetration

only by a number of nuns acting together. That this course was not adopted appears to me to go to attest the historical reality of a group of nuns, for some reason numbered as six, and their position as the veritable authors of the offences imputed to them.

Ordination.—Two whole divisions, one consisting of ten and the other of thirteen *Pācittiyas*, **Bi-Pc.61–Bi-Pc.70**, **Bi-Pc.71–Bi-Pc.83**, are devoted to the topic of ordination. No other subject in the *Bhikkhuni-vibhaṅga* receives a comparable degree of attention. Hence ordination appears to be of outstanding interest and importance. The ceremony itself is not discussed. Of the twenty-four disqualifications precluding the admission of a woman into full membership of the Order, as laid down at **Vin.2.271**, only two, her age and training, are considered in the *Pācittiyas*. Together with these two points, the *Pācittiyas* on ordination are, among other matters, concerned with legislating for or against the admission of women in special circumstances: expectant and nursing mothers, married girls, maidens and probationers; with laying down the kind of treatment to be accorded newly ordained women; with insisting on the necessity to obtain the Order's "agreement" to train and the "agreement" to receive ordination, and also the "agreement" to confer it; with emphasising the necessity to keep one's promise to ordain; and with regulating the number of times that each nun might ordain annually, and also the number of candidates whom she might ordain. The whole treatment is very thorough.

BD.3.xiv

The word used throughout these *Pācittiyas* for "to ordain" is *vuṭṭhāpeti*, meaning literally "to raise up," but always explained by the relevant parts of the Old Commentary as *upasampādeti*, to confer the *upasampadā* ordination. The first step in joining the Order, *pabbajjā*, going forth (from home into homelessness), is not discussed, its occurrence being assumed already to have taken place.

But a complication as to the meaning of *vuṭṭhāpeti* arises through the use of this word in the rule of Nuns' **Bi-Ss.2**. This, an *ad hoc* rule, makes it an offence for a nun to *vuṭṭhāpeti* a female thief who merits death if she has not obtained permission to do so, on the worldly side, from either a rajah, a guild or a company (*seṇi*); or on the religious side, from either an Order or a group, *unless* the woman seeking admission to the Order is one who

is “allowable.” The Old Commentary explains that there are two ways in which a woman is “allowable”: either because she has gone forth among other sects or because she has gone forth among other nuns. These latter presumably mean those already attached to Gotama’s Order, but belonging to some residence or boundary other than that to which the woman may be subsequently seeking admission.

Although the Old Commentary on **Bi-Ss.2** fails to explain *vuṭṭhāpeti*,¹ in the “rule” of this *Saṅghādisesa* it would appear to mean neither *upasampādeti* nor *pabbajati*, to go forth. This latter word and its causative form, *pabbājeti*, to let go forth, although used throughout the introduction to this rule, are dropped by the rule itself. In their place it employs the term *vuṭṭhāpeti*, a word which, however, does not occur in the introductory story. There are other occasions when the word used in a rule is more precise, more restricted or more inclusive in its scope than that used in the introduction to the rule. This too is a case where the word of the rule is more precise for its purposes, more technically correct than the word of the story.

BD.3.xlvi

For here *vuṭṭhāpeti* is meant to be synonymous neither with *upasampādeti* nor with *pabbājeti*. For whatever *vuṭṭhāpeti* may mean in the *Pācītiyas*, and the phrase *upasampadam yāci*, she asked for the *upasampadā* ordination (to be conferred on her), occurring in **Bi-Pc.77** and **Bi-Pc.78**, strongly supports the Old Commentary’s regular and undeviating *Pācītiya* interpretation of it by *upasampādeti*, the internal evidence of **Bi-Ss.2** suggests nothing to imply that *vuṭṭhāpeti* stands there for receiving or conferring the *upasampadā* ordination. The woman thief, who eventually asked Thullanandā to let her go forth, had just run away from her husband and hoped to find sanctuary from his wrath among the nuns. But she had not reached a stage in the monastic career when she might be ordained as a full member. She is represented as asking for no more than to be allowed to go forth; and it was only in the very early stages of the monastic venture that those who wanted to adopt the religious life asked, and it was always the lord himself whom they are shown as asking, to go forth and to be ordained at one and the same time.

¹ Cf. **BD.2, Introduction, p.xxv**, for some other examples of the *Old Commentary*’s omissions, and above, **BD.3.xx**.

Moreover, in **Bi-Ss.2** it seems as if *vuṭṭhāpeti* cannot mean the same as *pabbājeti*, to let go forth. It is used in connection with a woman thief in circumstances where, if an entrant were going forth for the first time, *pabbājeti* would be expected. A trace of the other meaning of *vuṭṭhāpeti* may therefore linger here, “to raise up” to a higher level of morality and spirituality, to admit a woman to conditions where she might come to see the error of her former ways.

But the usage of *vuṭṭhāpeti* here is also likely to depend I think on the exception which the rule makes legal: that of “receiving” (*vuṭṭhāpeti*) and without having to get permission to do so from either the world or the cloister, a woman-thief who had already gone forth. It is I think because of this, because the woman whom the exception has in mind is envisaged as one already gone forth, some person or some Order having already allowed her to do so, *pabbājeti*, that were this word, *pabbājeti*, used in the rule a technical difficulty would arise. For a word having a technical sense would then be used not precisely in that sense. No one could go forth twice, unless in the meantime he had returned to the household life¹; but the point of the exception to the rule is that such an action has not taken place. Hence in order to show that a nun was not allowing a woman-thief to go forth, as it were for the first time, a word which did not technically imply this had to be chosen. Thus the *vuṭṭhāpeti* of the rule is used in place of the *pabbājeti* of the introductory story.

BD.3.xlvii

We must further conclude that there is a difference in the technical significance of *vuṭṭhāpeti* as used in **Bi-Ss.2** and as used in the *Pācittiyas*. In the former it has, because providing for the possibility that someone has already “gone forth,” of necessity to bear some meaning that is different from this admittedly technical term. To “receive” or to “accept” into an Order is perhaps the nearest rendering for which there is any justification, especially if we take it to cover receiving or accepting a woman of doubtful character, with a view to her spiritual regeneration. This interpretation might be compared with the meaning the verb *ullumpati* apparently bears

¹ See **Vin.2.279**; if a woman has left the Order she is not a nun, and if she has joined other sects, and then comes back again and asks for the *upasampadā* to be conferred on her, she may not receive it. Cf. **Vin.1.69**, where a similar ruling is made in regard to men who were formerly members of other sects.

at **Vin.1.57–Vin.1.95**. Here it is said that a man asking the monks for ordination should say, “may the Order, out of compassion for me, raise me up,” *ullumpatu*. The Commentary, **Vin-a.984**, explains this as, “having made me arise from, what is bad may they (i.e., the Order) establish me in what is good; or, having raised me from the status of a novice may they establish me in the status of a monk.”

BD.3.xlviii

In the *Pācittiyas*, on the other hand, *vuṭṭhāpeti* appears to be closely connected with the business of ordaining, on the part of the nuns, a woman who had served her term as a probationer in an Order into full membership of that same Order. A fairly frequent definition of “nun” in **Vin.4** is “one ordained by both Orders.” First, a woman had to be “ordained” by the nuns; then she had to pass a similar examination before the monks so as to complete her full ordination. Therefore two words were needed to distinguish these two parts of a woman’s ordination ceremony. The nuns raised her up, *vuṭṭhāpeti*; the monks ordained her fully, *upasāmpādeti*, finishing what the nuns had begun. But the actual process of ordination was the same for the candidate, and the same questions were put to her, whether she was being examined by a body of nuns or by a body of monks.

Besides the word *vuṭṭhāpeti*, which is a key-word in **Bi-Pc.61–Bi-Pc.83**, several other terms of interest come to the fore in the course of these regulations for ordination, a few of which may now be considered.

In the first place, there is the word *sikkhāmanā*. This, as meaning probationer, refers only to members of the female sex. It is a technical term for a female entrant of a certain standing and with certain duties to fulfil, and has no masculine counterpart. In this it differs from “novice.” For *sāmaṇera* and *sāmaṇerī* both figure in their respective sides of the Order.

Technically a *sāmaṇera* is different in status from a *bhikkhu*, and a *sāmaṇerī* from both a *sikkhāmanā* and a *bhikkhuni*. For these sometimes appear together as the five classes of people among whom it is legitimate to effect certain transactions,¹ for example giving or accepting robes in exchange (Monks’ **Bu-NP.5**, **Bu-Pc.25**. Further, the five are differently defined.² That

BD.3.xlix

¹ See, e.g., **Vin.1.139**, **Vin.1.140**, **Vin.1.145**. ² See **Vin.4.122**, **Vin.4.343**, and definitions of “monk” and “nun” in the Old Commentary—e.g., on the *Pārājikas*, and of “nun” constantly in **Vin.3** and **Vin.4** as “one ordained by both Orders.”

is to say, the definition of “nun” balances and resembles that of “monk”; the definition of “female novice” balances and resembles that of “male novice,”¹ “probationer” alone having no opposite number. Again, “male wanderer” is defined by excluding monk and male novice; “female wanderer” by excluding nun, probationer and female novice.² There is too the women’s testimony, in **Bi-Pc.64**, that having been ordained, they are not probationers but nuns, and therefore are not to be ordered about by other nuns.

I should say that these five classes of persons represent a fundamental classification of the monastic personnel, and as such will be to some extent inclusive of other and differently divided classes, which may then be regarded as so many subdivisions: a monk (or nun) who is a junior, *nava*, one of middle standing, an elder; a teacher, pupil, preceptor one who shares a cell, and so forth.

In the second place, two other words of interest which occur in the ordination groups of rules are *gihigatā*, married girl, and *kumāribhūtā*, maiden. *Gihigatā*, meaning literally “one going (or gone) to a householder.” and thus meaning a married girl or woman, or one who has intercourse with a man, is defined in the Old Commentary on **Bi-Pc.65** as *purisantaragatā*, “one gone (or going) among men.” *Kumāribhūtā*, “being a girl,” must I think, as standing in antithesis to *gihigatā*, mean an unmarried woman, a maiden, or virgin. *Kumāribhūtā* is rather confusingly defined by the Old Commentary as *sāmaṇerī*, a woman novice. For although, as I have said, in the Vinaya “female novice” is differently defined from “probationer,” yet in **Bi-Pc.72** and **Bi-Pc.73** it is clear that the “maiden” is thought of in terms more appropriate to a probationer than to a novice.

BD.3.1

Bi-Pc.65 makes it an offence for a nun to ordain “a *gihagatā* under twelve.” But *the* question is, what exactly does this phrase mean? Does it mean a married girl less than twelve years old, or a girl who has been married for less than twelve years? WALDSCHMIDT adopts the latter view,³ apparently taking his stand on a phrase given by Bendall: *strī dvādaśavarsagrhayuktā*. If a girl were married at eight, which is still customary in parts of India,

¹ Vin.4.122. ² Vin.4.92, Vin.4.285; cf. Vin.4.224. ³ *Bruchstücke des Bhikṣunī-Prātimokṣa der Sarvāstivādins*, p.138.

betrotal having taken place earlier, but if she were under twenty when she sought ordination, then she would not have been married for as many as twelve years, and this would seem to be her age as considered from the point of view of the legislation laid down in [Bi-Pc.65](#)–[Bi-Pc.67](#).

Certainly a passage in [Bi-Pc.65](#), which describes the hardships young people were not able to endure, is used also in Monks' [Bi-Pc.65](#) to show why persons under twenty, not under twelve, should not be ordained. Again when the age for ordaining “maidens” is being considered ([Bi-Pc.71](#)), twenty years is given as the minimum. I bring forward this internal evidence in support of Waldschmidt's view, which I think merits serious consideration. Against it may be set Buddhaghosa's remarks at Vin-a.941 that, having given the “agreement as to ordination” to a married girl of ten, the *upasampadā* may be conferred when she has completed twelve years of age. This shows that Buddhaghosa at least was puzzled by the word *gihigatā*.

A main point concerning the ordination of a probationer, a married girl and a maiden is the illegality of conferring the *upasampadā* on her unless she has trained, under a nun, for two years in six rules: the first five *śīlas* and abstention from eating at the wrong time.

Three *Pācittiyas* govern the ordination of a married girl and three that of a maiden: neither must be ordained (1) if she has not attained the minimum age prescribed (2) even if she is old enough but has not trained for two years in the six rules; and (3) even if she is old enough and has done the required training, but has not been agreed upon by the Order (as a suitable person to be ordained). The second and third clauses of each of these two groups have parallels in [Bi-Pc.63](#), [Bi-Pc.64](#) which, although omitting any reference to age, prohibit the ordination of a probationer, first, if she has not trained for two years in the six rules, and secondly if, even although she has trained, she is not agreed upon by the Order. Beyond the clause in [Bi-Pc.80](#) prohibiting ordination if she has not the consent of her parents or husband, only these two rules, as against the three each for the married woman and the maiden, concern themselves with a probationer's eligibility for ordination.

A reason for omitting to lay down a maximum age at which a probationer would be entitled to receive the *upasampadā*, is that this might be

conferred on her, as on a married woman, however old she might be, there being no limit at the top end of the scale. But at the lower end, neither a maiden nor, or so it would appear, a married girl might be ordained while still under twenty. Now a probationer must be either married or not married. A widow, not being specially catered for in the ordination regulations, was perhaps regarded as ranking as a married woman for legislation purposes. And any woman, whether married or single, when she entered on the training (which is of course different from entering the Order) became technically a probationer. The deduction may therefore be made that a probationer must not be ordained if she were less than twenty, this assumption being tacitly conveyed by the legislation on the minimum age at which married and unmarried girls might receive the ordination. It is the same as the minimum age at which a boy might be ordained. And at [Vin.2.271](#) it is said that she on whom the *upasampadā* is being conferred, without however specifying more fully what is to be understood by “she,” must be asked if she has completed twenty years of age.

In all cases, whether a woman was specifically called a probationer, married woman or maiden, before she began the two years' training in the six rules she had to obtain the Order's consent to enter upon this training ([Bi-Pc.63](#), [Bi-Pc.66](#), [Bi-Pc.72](#)), which was carried out under the guidance of some nun. This consent is called the “agreement as to training,” *sikkhāsammuti*. At the end of her training when the probationer, married woman or maiden wanted to be ordained, she had to obtain from the Order a further agreement sanctioning this step, called the “agreement as to ordination,” *vuṭṭhānasammuti*. If a woman was ordained before she had fully trained, there was an offence for the nun who ordained her. To guard against such a contingency, that part of the Order to which the ordaining nun belonged was made responsible for weighing the candidate's claims; it was the Order, and not a group or one nun, whom the candidate must ask for the agreement as to ordination. But if this were refused, and she were not agreed upon by the Order, *sarīghena asammata*, even though she were of the right age and had trained properly, and a nun were to ordain her, that nun incurred an offence of expiation.

Another interesting word is *ūnadvādasavassā*, appearing to mean “one

who is under twelve.” She may not ordain (Bi-Pc.74). But I do not think that “being under twelve” refers to her actual age, any more than I think that the same condition refers to the married girl’s actual age. Since the minimum age for ordination has been laid down for married girls and for maidens, and since these together form a comprehensive class embracing every kind of probationer, for had widows been separately considered they would have been separately legislated for, to specify as twelve the minimum actual age at which a woman or girl, though described as neither probationer, married nor unmarried, might ordain, would betray such a gross inconsistency with those rules which speak of ordination age as being twenty as to reduce the legislation on these matters to an absurdity.

BD.3.iii

And I think that it was neither absurd nor careless enough to throw us back on the old argument of its composition being patchwork because it seems to entail contradictory statements, an easy line to take when we are baffled, but unfair to the work of the early compilers. This I am convinced was more often subtle, delicate and reasonable than we sometimes give it credit for. Here, for example, before we condemn their work as invalid because of its seeming inconsistencies, it is necessary, in order to comprehend the gist and implications of Bi-Pc.74, to study it both in conjunction with those *Pācittiyas* which legislate for the age at which a candidate might be ordained, and which appear to concur in their view of this being twenty, and also in conjunction with the next *Pācittiya*, Bi-Pc.75.

Two words used here (Bi-Pc.75) provide a useful clue to support the conjecture that *ūnadvādasavassā* does not mean a girl under twelve years of age, but a nun who has not been ordained for as many as twelve years. These two words are *bhikkhunī* and *vuṭṭhāpanasammuti*. The first is used in connection with *paripuṇṇadvādasavassā*, and clearly means a nun who has completed twelve years (as an ordained nun). This apposition of *bhikkhunī* and *paripuṇṇadvādasavassā* is very revealing, the more so since we do not find probationer, married girl or maiden described by the term *bhikkhunī*.

The second clue word is *vuṭṭhāpanasammuti*. This is an agreement which a nun who has, technically speaking, completed twelve years has to ask for from the Order if she wishes to carry out a monastic function for which, in regard to her standing in the Order, she is eligible. She does not have to ask,

as do the probationer, married girl and maiden, for the *vuṭṭhānasammuti*, the agreement as to ordination, that is to be ordained. She has to ask instead for the *vuṭṭhāpanasammuti*, the “agreement to ordain.” For *vuṭṭhāpana*, causative, with *sammuti*, means the agreement to cause ordination in others, to confer ordination on them, to ordain them before an Order of nuns. This *Pācittiya* shows this to be a privilege of a nun, but one which it is not legally valid to exercise if the nun who wishes to ordain has not herself completed twelve years as an ordained nun. It is interesting to find at [Vin.1.59](#) a ruling which makes it an offence of wrong-doing for a monk to ordain if he is of less than ten years’ standing, which means the lapse of less than ten years since his own ordination, combined with an “allowance” for a monk to ordain if he is of ten years’ standing or more. This difference of two years, ten since ordination for a monk, twelve for a nun, not only indicates the detailed care lavished upon the ordination regulations. It also suggests the greater length of time that nuns were, at the time of the compilation of the Vinaya, supposed to need in order to qualify themselves for the office of ordaining other nuns.

BD.3.liv

The next *Pācittiya*, [Bi-Pc.76](#), suggests that the agreement to ordain must be asked for by a nun each time she wishes to ordain a probationer. Caṇḍakālī is recorded to ask for this agreement, but to be refused it. She is called, as in her case is usual, “the nun Caṇḍakālī,” although in [Bi-Pc.79](#) she is, exceptionally, referred to as a probationer. One can only suppose this latter *Pācittiya* to refer to a time previous to that referred to by [Bi-Pc.76](#) and the other passages where Caṇḍakālī is called a “nun.”

In addition, there is no clause connected with the *ūnadvādasavassā* corresponding to that for the probationer, married girl and maiden, stressing the need for her to have trained for two years in the six rules. This indicates that this, for the “one under twelve years,” will have been a thing of the past, carried out by her before her own ordination, and for which she will have had to obtain from the Order first the agreement to train and then the agreement to be ordained, *vuṭṭhānasammuti*.

It would thus appear that on the two occasions when the word *ūnadvādasavassā* is used in the Bhikkhunivibhaṅga, it does not refer to the woman’s actual age, but to the number of years she had followed a certain calling:

BD.3.lv either that of a married woman or that of an ordained nun. To prohibit a nun, on pain of a penalty, to ordain others unless she herself had attained to twelve years' standing as a nun, is to give time to test her integrity, her sense of responsibility and her value to the Order. To prohibit the ordination of a married girl unless she had completed twelve years of married life is to preserve and not to destroy domestic life; it calls to mind the four stages in a brahmin's career and the due regard paid there to his stage as a householder.

While a woman was still a probationer it would not appear compulsory for her to sever her ties with the world. Caṇḍakālī is recorded to have kept company with men and boys while she was a probationer. The disapprobation which was felt for her, although she herself was not censured, was transferred to the nun who ordained her, and it was made an offence for a nun to ordain a probationer who had behaved in this fashion (Bi-Pc.79). Nuns it would therefore seem had no power sufficient to shut off intending nuns from the world; and neither should they in respect of these disregard it entirely.

In spite of Pasenadi's dictum¹ that once a woman had (so much as) gone forth, there was nothing (for those in the world) to do in regard to her, there was nevertheless the offence of ordaining a probationer if she had not the consent of her parents or husband. Since probationers could be ordained however old, so long as they were over twenty, this clause would appear to have young probationers in mind, and may perhaps be regarded as pointing to the practice of child-marriage.² In any case it provides one more instance of the care taken by the Order not lightly to ordain anyone still having duties to the world, which is also shown by the questions put to women, and to men too, at the time of their ordination in respect of their freedom from debt and their employment in a king's service.³

BD.3.lvi Besides the two divisions comprising the twenty-three rules for ordination, there are other occasions where the nuns' rules in treating of a similar kind of subject-matter are for the most part placed in proximity to one another.

¹ Vin.4.226. Cf. Vin.1.75, where this same view (in regard to men who have gone forth) is put into Bimbisāra's mouth. ² See my *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.27ff. ³ Vin.2.271.

There are, for example, the seven *Nissaggiyas*, **Bi-NP.4–Bi-NP.10**, formulated to deter nuns from getting in exchange something which they fancied more than the commodity specified and earmarked by the donors as gifts now for an Order, now for a group, or now for one nun. Two rules, **Bi-Pc.39** and **Bi-Pc.40**, legislate for almstouring during and after the rains; while two more concerned with the rains, **Bi-Pc.56**, **Bi-Pc.57**, cut into a small group of rules (**Bi-Pc.56–Bi-Pc.59**) where, for the official carrying out of various transactions, such as the exhortation and the *Pavāraṇā*, nuns are shown to be dependent on monks. These four rules are the same as four of the eight *garudhammā*,¹ the chief, cardinal or important rules for nuns, so that the infringement of any of these four *garudhammā* is here shown to entail a penalty of expiation. A fifth “important rule” is repeated at **Bi-Pc.52**, which makes it an offence of expiation for a nun to abuse or revile a monk.

In assessing the significance of this rule, it must be remembered that monks incurred offences if they insulted or slandered other monks (Monks' **Bu-Pc.2**, **Bu-Pc.3**), while for nuns there was a rule against cursing themselves or others, “others” being defined by the Old Commentary as “ordained” (**Bi-Pc.19**), and also a rule against abusing a group (**Bi-Pc.53**). Thus two rules against “abusing” stand together (**Bi-Pc.52**, **Bi-Pc.53**). Monks had also to be restrained from striking one another or using a threatening gesture (Monks' **Bu-Pc.74**, **Bu-Pc.75**). Clearly violence of speech or gesture was not exclusively a feminine trait.

If **Bi-Pc.52** is connected on the one hand with **Bi-Pc.53** through the word “abuse,” it is connected no less on the other with **Bi-Pc.51** through the word “monk.” This rule recounts nuns' difficulties in entering a monastery not knowing whether monks were in it or gone out, their object apparently being to sweep the monastery and to put ready for the monks' use water for washing and drinking. The offence here was in entering a monastery without having obtained permission to do so. It was not in rendering these services to monks, which apparently, unlike washing a monk's robe for him (Monks' **Bu-NP.4**) or standing close to him with drinking water and a fan while he was eating (Nuns' **Bi-Pc.6**), remained permissible. It is noticeable in **Bi-Pc.6** that the rule is not formulated on the lines of the complaints

BD.3.lvii

¹ Given at **Vin.2.255**, **Vin.4.52** (see **BD.ii.268**).

made by the modest nuns—that a nun struck a monk with a fan, but on the lines of the situation postulated—that she was standing near him with a fan and drinking water while he was eating. This was made into the offence.

Bi-Pc.94 and **Bi-Pc.95** make a kind of pair. The former prohibits a nun from sitting down in front of a monk without having asked for permission, the latter from asking him a question without having asked for permission. “Question” is taken by the Old Commentary to mean a question on the Suttantas, Vinaya or Abhidhamma. The difficulty arising from this last term has been discussed above.¹

Other rules for nuns which may be classified together are the four against standing and talking with a man (**Bi-Pc.11–Bi-Pc.14**); the three against impolite behaviour when visiting at lay-people’s houses (**Bi-Pc.15–Bi-Pc.17**); the one against bathing naked followed by the one prescribing the right measurement for bathing-cloths (**Bi-Pc.21, Bi-Pc.22**); the eight dealing with various points connected with robes (**Bi-Pc.23–Bi-Pc.30**); the two about sharing a couch and a cover-and-cloak with another nun (**Bi-Pc.31, Bi-Pc.32**); the three covering ordinary decent behaviour towards other nuns (**Bi-Pc.33–Bi-Pc.35**); the two against walking for alms in a dangerous district without a weapon (**Bi-Pc.37, Bi-Pc.38**); the four against indulging in various practices which were not censurable in laywomen: amusing oneself by visiting picture galleries, reposing in comfort, spinning yarn, doing domestic tasks² (**Bi-Pc.41–Bi-Pc.44**); the two restraining greed over food (**Bi-Pc.54, Bi-Pc.55**); and another group of ten rules also against doing things, chiefly for comfort and adornment, like women in the world (**Bi-Pc.84–Bi-Pc.93**).

BD.3.lviii

In view of these groupings, it would seem as if little support from the *Bhikkhunivibhaṅga* itself were forthcoming for Miss Bhagvat’s statement that this treatise is patchwork, “a work done in a hurry, and signs of carelessness are obvious.”³ To take only one point: the grouping of offences of a related character is as thorough, if not more so, than is the case in the Monks’ *Vibhaṅga*. I have attempted to show how thorough it is, although it is true that sometimes offences “which would naturally come together are

¹ **BD.3.xf.** ² There are other occasions where nuns are rebuked for behaving like women still leading a household life. ³ *Early Buddhist Jurisprudence*, p.164.

found scattered in quite different parts of the same class.”¹ This, however, is comparatively rare. A fairly good example is supplied by the last *Pācittiya*, **Bi-Pc.96**, which is a rule against a nun's going to a village without wearing a bodice, *saṃkacchika*, and which more naturally belongs to the group of rules on robes than to the isolated position which it occupies. Many of the rules which appear in isolation do so however because there are no others to which they are related in character.

The eight *Pāṭidesaniyas* form a complete group of related offences, being word for word the same as one another, except for the particular commodity which each names: ghee, oil, honey, molasses, fish, meat, milk, curds. If a nun who was not ill asked for any of these and ate them, there resulted an offence to be confessed by her. The offence did not lie in having these things or in eating them, but in asking for them so as to eat them. The same notion is apparent in Nuns' **Bi-Pc.7**. “Asking for” would probably mean obtaining the articles of diet without waiting for them to be offered, and it was a greedy thing to do. There is no *Pāṭidesaniya* offence for Thullanandā in **Bi-NP.4** where the lay follower, as recorded, offers her something and she chooses ghee; or for this same nun in **Bi-NP.5** when she decides to have oil for the *kaḥāpaṇa* which a lay follower says he will deposit in a shop for her to get what she likes with it. For on neither of these occasions is she recorded to “ask for” anything, but merely to choose something in response to an offer freely made.

BD.3.lix

I.B. HORNER

Manchester, 1942.

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.Introduction xiv (referring to Monks' *Vibhaṅga*).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 61

Bu-Pc.61.1.1
Vin.4.124
BD.3.1

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at one time the venerable Udāyin¹ was an archer,² and crows were unpleasant to him. He, having shot crows, having cut off their heads, put them in a row on a stake. Monks spoke thus:

“By whom, your reverence, were these crows deprived of life?”

“By me, your reverences; crows are unpleasant to me.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Udāyin intentionally deprive a living thing of life?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Udāyin, intentionally deprived a living thing of life?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, intentionally deprive a living thing of life? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should intentionally deprive a living thing of life, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.61.2.1
BD.3.2

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Intentionally means: a transgression committed knowingly, consciously, deliberately.³

¹ Perhaps the same Udāyin as is mentioned at [Vin.3.110](#), [Vin.3.119](#), [Vin.3.127](#), [Vin.3.130](#), [Vin.3.135](#), [Vin.3.187](#), [Vin.3.190](#) (see [BD.1](#)), and [Vin.4.20](#), [Vin.4.61](#), [Vin.4.68](#) (see [BD.2](#)). ² *is-sāsa*. Cf. [MN.iii.1 \(issattha\)](#); [AN.iv.423](#). [Vin-a.864](#) says when he was a householder he taught archers. ³ = [Vin.3.73](#). See [BD.1.126](#) and n.3.

Living thing means: it is called a living thing that is an animal.¹

Should deprive of life means: if he cuts off the faculty of life, destroys it, harms its duration,² there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.125

If he thinks that it is a living thing when it is a living thing, (and) deprives it of life, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a living thing, (and) deprives it of life, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³ If he thinks that it is not a living thing when it is a living thing, there is no offence. If he thinks that it is a living thing when it is not a living thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a living thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a living thing when it is not a living thing, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.61.2.2

There is no offence if it is unintentional; if (he is) not thinking; if he does not know; if he is not meaning death⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.61.2.3

The First

¹ Depriving human beings of life is dealt with in Bu-Pj.3. ² = Vin.3.73 (BD.1.126). ³ Variant reading *āpatti pācittiyassa*. See Vin.4.361. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.78 (BD.1.136); BD.2.225, BD.2.229, BD.2.262.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 62

Bu-Pc.62.1.1
BD.3.3

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks knowingly made use of¹ water that contained living things. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks knowingly make use of water that contains living things?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly made use of water that contained living things?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowingly make use of water that contains living things? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly make use of water that contains living things, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.62.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

He knows means: he knows by himself or others tell him.²

That contains living things means: if, knowing (this), he makes use of it knowing that “they will die from (this) use,” there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.62.2.2
BD.3.4

¹ *paribhuñjati*. *Vinaya Texts* i.46 renders by “drink.” Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.865 mentions this, and also other uses of water, for washing (bowls e.g.), for bathing, and for sprinkling. Cf. Bu-Pc.20. See rules for filtering drinking water at Vin.2.118, and Introductory story to 31st Jātaka. ² Cf. Vin.4.49, Vin.4.67.

If he thinks that it contains living things when it contains living things (and) makes use of it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it contains living things (and) makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹ If he thinks that it does not contain living things when it contains living things (and) makes use of it, there is no offence. If he thinks that it contains living things when it does not contain living things, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it does not contain living things, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it does not contain living things when it does not contain living things, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.62.2.3

There is no offence if he makes use of it not knowing that it contains living things, knowing that it does not contain living things, knowing that they will not die from this use; if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

The Second

¹ Variant reading *āpatti pācittiyassa*, offence of expiation. See [Vin.4.361](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 63

Bu-Pc.63.1.1
BD.3.5

at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks knowingly opened up¹ for a further (formal) act² a legal question³ settled⁴ according to rule, saying:

"The (formal) act is not carried out,⁵ the (formal) act is badly carried out, the (formal) act should be carried out again, it is not settled, it is badly settled, it should be settled again."

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks knowingly open up ... '... it should be settled again?'" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly opened up ... '... it should be settled again?'"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, knowingly open up ... '... it should be settled again?'" It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should knowingly open up for a further (formal) act a legal question settled according to rule, there is an offence of expiation."

Bu-Pc.63.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

¹ *ukkoṭeti*. Cf. *Vin.2.94*, which refers to this *Pācittiya*; also *Vin.4.151*. ² *punakammāya*, or action, proceedings, adjustment. Cf. same expression at *Vin.2.303*. For "formal acts" and wrong and right ways of carrying them out, see *Vin.1.315ff.* ³ *adhikaraṇa*. Cf. *Vin.3.164=BD.1.282* and n.5. See *Vin.3.168=BD.1.290*, and S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, 153ff. ⁴ *nihata*. ⁵ *akata*.

He knows means: either he knows by himself, or others tell him, or (someone) tells him.¹

BD.3.6

According to rule means: carried out according to rule, according to discipline, according to the teacher's instruction,² this means according to rule.

Legal question means: there are four (kinds of) legal questions: legal questions arising out of disputes legal questions arising out of censure, legal questions arising out of transgressions, legal questions arising out of obligations.³

Should open up for a further (formal) act means: if he opens it up, thinking: 'The (formal) act was not carried out, the (formal) act was badly carried out, the (formal) act should be carried out again, it was not settled, it was badly settled, it should be settled again,' there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.63.2.2

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, (and) opens it up, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act, (and) opens it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, there is no offence.⁴ If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.⁵

Bu-Pc.63.2.3

There is no offence if he opens it up knowingly, thinking: 'The (formal) act was carried out according to what is not the rule, or by an incomplete congregation, or against one who is not suitable for a (formal) act'⁶; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third

¹ Cf. Vin.3.265; Vin.4.49, Vin.4.67. ² Cf. Vin.2.95; Vin.4.152; also DN.ii.124ff.
³ = Vin.2.88 = Vin.3.164 (=BD.1.282) = Vin.4.238. ⁴ Variant reading *āpatti pācitiyassa* (offence of expiation), Vin.4.361. ⁵ = Vin.4.37, Vin.4.152. Cf. also Vin.3.174 (=BD.1.302) = BD.1.177 = BD.1.179 = BD.1.186, at all of which the last clause ends *āpatti dukkaṭassa*. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.37, Vin.4.126, Vin.4.152, Vin.4.153; Vin.5.221.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 64

Bu-Pc.64.1.1
BD.3.7

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen,¹ said to his brother, the monk who shared his cell:

“I, your reverence, have fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen; do not tell anyone else.”

Now at that time a certain monk, having fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen, asked the Order for probation² on account of this offence. The Order granted him probation on account of this offence. He, being under probation, having seen that monk, spoke thus:

“I, your reverence, having fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen, asked the Order for probation on account of this offence. The Order granted me probation on account of this offence of his,³ so I am under probation. I, your reverence, am experiencing a feeling, let the venerable one conceal me, saying: ‘He is experiencing a feeling.’⁴”

“But, your reverence, does another who falls into this offence also act likewise?”

“Yes, your reverence.”

“Your reverence, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having fallen into the offence of intentional emission of semen, said to me: ‘Do not tell anyone.’”

BD.3.8

“But are you, then, your reverence, not concealing⁵ (him)?”

¹ Formal Meeting, 1. See *Vin.3.112* = *BD.1.196*. Cf. also *Bu-Pc.9*. ² *parivāsa*. See *BD.1.196, n.3* for Vinaya references to “probation,” and S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.168.

³ *tassa me saṅgho tassā āpattiyā ...* ⁴ *vediyāmaṃ ahaṃ āvuso vediyatī ti maṃ āyasmā dhāretu.*

⁵ *paṭicchādeti*. Cf. *Bi-Pj.6*, *vajjapaṭicchādikā*.

“Yes, your reverence.”

Then that monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this monk knowingly conceal a monk’s very bad offence?”¹ ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, knowingly concealed a monk’s very bad offence?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, knowingly conceal a monk’s very bad offence? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly conceal a monk’s very bad offence, there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.64.2.1

A monk’s means: another monk’s.

He knows means: either he knows by himself or others tell him or (someone) tells him.²

Vin.4.128

Very bad offence means: both the four involving defeat and the thirteen entailing a formal meeting of the Order.³

Should conceal means: if he thinks, ‘Knowing this they will reprove him, they will remind him, they will jeer at him, they will scoff at him, they will shame him,⁴ I will not tell,’ in the mere fact that responsibility is thrown off,⁵ there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a very bad offence when it is a very bad offence (and) conceals it, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a very bad offence (and) conceals it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a very bad offence when it is a very bad offence (and) conceals it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he conceals an offence that is not a very bad one, there is an offence of

Bu-Pc.64.2.2

BD.3.9

¹ *duṭṭhullā āpatti*. Cf. **BD.2.219**. ² Cf. **Vin.3.266**; **Vin.4.49**, **Vin.4.67**, and above, **BD.3.3**, **BD.3.5**.

³ = **Vin.4.31**. ⁴ *khurṇseti vambheti maṅkuṃ karoti*; cf. **Vin.4.7**. ⁵ *dhuraṃ nikkhattamatte*. Cf. *dhuraṃ nikkhipati* at **Vin.3.50** = **BD.1.82**.

wrong-doing. If he conceals a transgression¹ that is very bad or that is not very bad of one who is not ordained,² there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a very bad offence when it is not a very bad offence, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a very bad offence, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a very bad offence when it is not a very bad offence, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bu-Pc.64.2.3

There is no offence if he does not tell, thinking: “There will come to be quarrel or dispute or strife or contention for the Order”; if he does not tell, thinking: “There will come to be a schism in the Order or dissension in the Order”⁴; if he does not tell, thinking: “This one, harsh, rough, will be an obstacle to life or to the Brahma-life”⁵; if he does not tell, not seeing other suitable monks; if he does not tell (though) not desiring to hide⁶ (him); if he does not tell, thinking: “It will be evident from his own action”; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.⁷

The Fourth

¹ *ajjhācāra*. Cf. Vin.3.121 = BD.1.202, where see n.3. Also cf. Vin.4.32. ² Vin-a.866 says that the very bad ones are the above, while the not very bad ones are in the remaining five classes of offence. ³ *anāpatti*, variant reading at Vin.4.361. But cf. Vin.4.32 (BD.2.222), which also see for the whole passage. ⁴ = Vin.4.37, Vin.4.153, Vin.4.217. *Saṅghabheda* and *saṅgharāji* discussed at Vin.2.203, Vin.2.204, referred to at Vb-a.428. See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.193ff. ⁵ These are the last two of the ten dangers mentioned at Vin.1.112–Vin.1.113, Vin.1.169. ⁶ *na chādetukāma*—i.e., the offence. ⁷ With this paragraph, cf. Vin.4.217, where, in their Bu-Pj.2, similar exceptions are made for the nuns.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 65

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time in Rājagaha¹ a group of seventeen boys were friends; of these the youth Upāli² was the chief. Then it occurred to Upāli's parents: "By what means could Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want?" Then it occurred to Upāli's parents: "If Upāli should learn writing,³ so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want." Then it occurred to Upāli's parents: "But if Upāli learns writing, his fingers will become painful. If Upāli should learn calculation,⁴ so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want." Then it occurred to Upāli's parents: "But if Upāli learns calculation, his breast will become painful.⁵ If Upāli should learn money-changing,⁶ so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want." Then it occurred to Upāli's parents: "But if Upāli learns money-changing, his eyes will become painful. Now there are these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, pleasant in habit,⁷ pleasant in conduct; having eaten good meals they lie down on beds sheltered from the wind.⁸ Now if Upāli should

Bu-Pc.65.1.1
BD.3.10

Vin.4.129

BD.3.11

¹ From here to [BD.3.12](#) below, "pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased" = [Vin.1.77-78](#), which in the phrase *yathādhammo kāretabbo* refers to this Bu-Pc.rule. ² *Vinaya Texts* i.201, n.1, "different from the famous Upāli who belonged to the chief disciples of Buddha; the latter came not from Rājagaha, but from the Sakya country." ³ *lekhaṃ sikkheyya*. [Vin-a.867](#) says: 'his fingers will become painful with writing (*likhantassa*) syllables (*akkharāni*).' On writing, in *Vinaya*, see *Vinaya Texts* i.xxxiiff.; [BD.1.131](#), n.1. ⁴ *gaṇanā*. Cf. [Vin.4.7](#) (= [BD.2.176](#)). ⁵ [Vin-a.867](#): there must be much thought for learning calculation. ⁶ *rūpaṃ sikkheyya*. [Vin-a.867](#) says: 'for learning *rūpasutta*, *kaḥapaṇas* must be looked at turning them over and over.' Therefore *rūpa* here seemed connected with the usual medium of exchange; I follow *Vinaya Texts* i.201 in adopting this translation in preference to 'drawing' or 'painting,' or other possible meanings given in *Pali-English Dictionary* under article *rūpa*. ⁷ *sukhasilā*. ⁸ = e.g., [Vin.1.57](#), [Vin.1.72](#).

go forth among the recluses, the sons of the Sakyans, so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want.”

The boy Upāli heard this conversation of (his) parents. Then the boy Upāli approached those boys, and having approached he spoke thus to those boys: “Come, masters,¹ we will go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans.”

“If you, master, will go forth, we likewise will also go forth.”

Then these boys, having each approached (his) parents, spoke thus:

“Consent that I may go forth from home into homelessness.”

Then the parents of those boys consented, thinking: “All these boys desire the same thing, they are bent on what is good.” These, having approached monks, asked for the going forth. The monks let them go forth, they conferred the *upasampadā* ordination on them. Getting up in the night towards dawn, these cried out:

“Give conje, give rice,² give solid food.”

The monks spoke thus: “Wait, your reverences, until it turns light.”³ Should there be conje, you shall drink it; should there be rice, you shall partake of it; should there be solid food, you shall eat it. But should there not be conje or rice or solid food, having walked for alms, you shall eat.”

But those monks, being spoken to thus by the monks, cried out just the same⁴: “Give conje, give rice, give solid food,” and they soiled the bedding and made it wet.⁵

BD.3.12

The lord, getting up in the night towards the dawn, heard the noise of the boys, and hearing (it) he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

“Why ever, Ānanda, is there this noise of boys?”

Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

Vin.4.130

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks knowingly conferred the *upasampadā* ordination on an individual⁶ under twenty years of age?”

¹ *ayyo*. ² *bhatta*. Cf. Vin.4.259–260 (BD.2.149). ³ *ratti vibhāyati*, said of the night brightening into day or dawn. Cf. DN.ii.148. ⁴ *yeva*. ⁵ Cf. Vin.3.227. ⁶ *puggala*, individual; unfortunately not defined in Old Commentary. Probably wrong to render “a man” here, for there is the word *purisa*, defined at Vin.4.334 as “attained to twenty years of age.” See Introduction xxii. ff.

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How, monks, can these foolish men knowingly confer the *upasampadā*, ordination on an individual under twenty years of age? Monks, an individual under twenty years of age is not able to endure cold, heat, hunger, thirst, contact with gad-flies, mosquitoes, wind and sun, creeping things, abusive hurtful language; he is not the kind (of person) who endures bodily feelings which, arising, are painful, acute, sharp, shooting, disagreeable, miserable, deadly.¹ But, monks, an individual of twenty years of age is able to endure cold, heat ... miserable, deadly. Monks, this is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...² And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly confer the *upasampadā* ordination on an individual under twenty years of age, both that individual is not ordained and these monks are blameworthy; this is for him³ an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

He knows means: either he knows by himself or others tell him or (someone) tells (him).⁴

Under twenty years of age means: not attained to twenty years of age.⁵

If he thinks, “I will confer the *upasampadā* ordination,” (and) looks about for a group⁶ or for a teacher⁷ or for a bowl⁸ or for a robe, or if he determines

¹ = Vin.4.321 = MN.i.10 = AN.ii.117 = AN.ii.143 = AN.iii.163 = AN.v.132. Last clause only at Vin.1.302, Vin.1.303; AN.iii.143. ² To here from beginning = Vin.1.77–78. ³ *idam tasmim*—i.e., probably the preceptor. See Old Commentary below, end of 2, 1. ⁴ Cf. BD.2.161. ⁵ Cf. below, BD.3.381. ⁶ *gaṇa*, two to four monks, as opposed to both *saṅgha*, five or more monks, and *puggala*, one individual (monk). Cf. BD.3.184, BD.3.361f. below with this passage. ⁷ *ācariya*. Allowed at Vin.1.60, where relationship of *ācariya* to *antevāsika*, pupil, is set forth. ⁸ Symbols of entry into the Order. A person had to be in possession of a bowl and robe before receiving the *upasampadā* ordination; cf. Vin.1.90.

a boundary,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of the motion² there is an offence of wrong-doing; as a result of two proclamations³ there are offences of wrong-doing. At the end of the proclamations,⁴ there is an offence of expiation for the preceptor,⁵ an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the teacher.

Bu-Pc.65.2.2

BD.3.14

If he thinks that he is under twenty years of age when he is under twenty years of age, (and) confers the *upasampadā* ordination (on him), there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is under twenty years of age, and confers the *upasampadā* ordination (on him), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he has completed twenty years of age when he is under twenty years of age, (and) confers the *upasampadā* ordination (on him), there is no offence.⁶ If he thinks that he is under twenty years of age when he has completed twenty years of age, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he has completed twenty years of age there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he has completed twenty years of age when he has completed twenty years of age, there is no offence.⁷

Bu-Pc.65.2.3

There is no offence if he confers the *upasampadā* ordination on one under twenty years of age thinking that he has completed twenty years of age⁸; if he confers the *upasampadā* ordination on one who has completed

¹ A new boundary, according to Vin-a.867. See Vin.1.106, where the right way to determine a boundary is given. ² *ñatti*. See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.178, for view that *upasampadā* is the third stage in evolution of ordination. At Vin.1.56 it is allowed to confer the *upasampada* by a *ñatticaluttha kamma*, a formal act at which the motion is put and then followed by three proclamations. ³ *kammavācā*. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.174, Vin.3.176, Vin.3.179 (=BD.1.302, BD.1.307, BD.1.312). ⁵ *upajjhāya*. See *Vinaya Texts* i.178, n.2 for discussion of distinction between this and *ācariya*, teacher. The editors, referring to Vin.1.56, Vin.1.57 and above passage, say that *upajjhāya* “was considered as the more important of the two,” and had a more prominent part in the *upasampadā* service. See also S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.181. ⁶ Vin-a.867, one who has completed twenty years from (the time of) taking on re-instatement (*paṭisandhi*), that is from the time of conception. ⁷ Cf. below, BD.3.370. ⁸ This exception to the rule is given also in preceding paragraph.

twenty years of age thinking that they are completed; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

The Fifth

¹ Cf. below, [BD.3.370](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 66

Bu-Pc.66.1.1
BD.3.15

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain caravan was desirous of going from Rājagaha to the south.¹ A certain monk spoke thus to these people: "I will go together with the venerable ones."²

"But we, honoured sir, shall evade the tax."³

"Do you understand (how to do so), sirs?" Then the overseers⁴ heard: "A caravan will evade the tax." They infested the way.⁵ Then these overseers, having seized and ransacked that caravan, spoke thus to that monk:

"How is it that you, honoured sir, knowingly go together with a caravan (set on) theft⁶?" (and) having detained him they set him free.⁷ Then that monk, having arrived at Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can a monk, having arranged together with a caravan (set on) theft, knowingly go along the same highroad?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, ... knowingly went along the same high road?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, having arranged together with a caravan (set on) theft, knowingly go along the same high road? It is not, foolish man,

¹ = Vin.4.79 (BD.2.322). Vin-a.868 says *paṭiyālokan ti suriyālokassa paṭimukhaṃ pacchimadisaṇ attho*: it means facing the light of the sun, the western quarter. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, on the contrary; calls it "a place near Rājagaha." ² *āyasmantehi*. Rare for a monk to address lay people in this way. ³ *suñkaṃ pariharati*. Cf. Vin.3.52 (=BD.1.87) where this is a *dukkata* offence for a monk. ⁴ *kammikā*, which at Vin-a.868 is explained as *suñkaṭṭhāne kammikā*, overseers, superintendents at the customs place. ⁵ Cf. Atthasālinī 366. ⁶ *theyyasattha*. ⁷ *palibuddhitvā muñcimsu*.

BD.3.16

for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a caravan (set on) theft, should knowingly go along the same high road, even among villages, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

He knows means: either he knows by himself, or others tell him, or (someone) tells him.²

Caravan (set on) theft means: they are thieves who have done the deed or who have not done the deed³; or they go for the robbing of kings or they evade the tax.

Together with means: together.⁴

Having arranged means: if one arranges, saying, “We are going, reverend sir, we are going, honoured sir, we are going, honoured sir, we are going, reverend sir, we are going either today or tomorrow or the next day,” there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Even among villages means: in a village close enough for a cock (to walk), among every (such) village, there is an offence of expiation. For every half yojana in what is not a village, in the jungle, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.66.2.1

Vin.4.132

Bu-Pc.66.2.2

If he thinks that a caravan is (set on) theft when the caravan is (set on) theft, and having arranged, goes along the same high road, even among villages, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether a caravan is (set on) theft ... offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that a caravan is not (set on) theft when the caravan is (set on) theft ... no offence. If monks arrange (and) the people do not arrange, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the caravan is (set on) theft when the caravan

BD.3.17

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.27; BD.2.289. ² Cf. above, BD.3.5, BD.3.8. ³ *corā katakammā vā honti akatakammā vā*—i.e., thieves who have or who have not committed a theft. Cf. MN.i.448; AN.iii.102; Vism.180; Ja.3.34 (*māṇava = cora*, MN-a.3.164; AN-a.3.271). ⁴ *saddhin ti ekato*. Cf. Vin.3.121, Vin.3.188, Vin.3.192 (=BD.1.202, BD.1.332, BD.1.337). From here to end of Bu-Pc.66.2.1 cf. Vin.4.63 (BD.2.290).

is not (set on) theft, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether the caravan is not (set on) theft, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that the caravan is not (set on) theft when the caravan is not (set on) theft, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.66.2.3

There is no offence if they go not having arranged; if the people arrange (and) monks do not arrange; if they go without (making) a rendezvous; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.¹

The Sixth

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.27, Bu-Pc.28 (BD.2.291, BD.2.294), and below, BD.3.20.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 67

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain monk, going to Sāvattḥī through the Kosalan districts, passed by a certain village-gate. A certain woman, having quarrelled with her husband, having departed from the village, having seen that monk, spoke thus: "Where, honoured sir, will the master go?"

"I, sister, will go to Sāvattḥī."

"I will go together with the master."

"If you wish to,¹ sister," he said.

Then that woman's husband, having departed from the village, asked people: "Have the masters seen such and such a woman?"²

"She, master, is going along with one who has gone forth." Then that man, having followed after, having seized that monk, having thrashed him, set him free. Then that monk, incensed,³ sat down at the foot of a certain tree. Then that woman spoke thus to that man:

"Master, that monk did not make me come out⁴; but it is I myself who am going along together with this monk. This monk is innocent⁵; go along, apologise to him." Then that man apologised to that monk. Then that monk, having arrived at Sāvattḥī, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can a monk, having arranged together with a woman, go along the same high road?" ...

¹ *eyyāsi*. ² *evarūpaṃ itthiṃ*. Cf. [Vin.1.76](#), *evarūpaṃ dāraṃ*. ³ *padhūpento*; *padhūpāti* usually meaning 'to blow forth smoke or flames,' and *padhūpita*, 'reeking, smoked out.' Cf. *padhūpāsi*, [Vin.4.109](#). *Vin-a.869* says: *pajjhāyanto attānaṃ yeva paribhāsanto nisīdi*, downcast, he sat down reviling just himself. ⁴ *nippātesī*=*nikkhāmesī*, *Vin-a.869*. ⁵ *akāraka*, one who has done nothing, therefore no wrong, thus innocent, blameless.

Vin.4.133

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, having arranged together with a woman, went along the same high road?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, having arranged together with a woman, go along the same high road? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, having arranged together with a woman, should go along the same high road, even among villages, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bu-Pc.67.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Woman means: a human woman, not a female *yakkha*, not a female departed one, not a female animal; she is intelligent, competent to know good speech, bad speech, what is lewd, what is not lewd.²

Together with means: together.³

Having arranged means: if one arranges, saying, ‘We are going, sister, we are going, master, we are going, master, we are going, sister, we are going either today or ... (see [Bu-Pc.27.3.1](#); [Bu-Pc.66.2.1](#)).

Bu-Pc.67.2.2

If he thinks that it is a woman when it is a woman, (and) having arranged, goes along the same high road, even among villages, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a woman ... If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is a woman ... offence of expiation. If the monk arranges (and) the woman does not arrange, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having arranged, he goes along the same high road together with a female *yakkha* or a female departed one or with a eunuch or with an animal in the form of a human woman,⁴ even among villages, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a woman when it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to

BD.3.20

¹ Cf. [Bu-Pc.27](#), [Bu-Pc.28](#), [Bu-Pc.66](#). ² Cf. [Vin.3.128](#), [Vin.3.192](#) = [BD.1.215](#), [BD.1.337](#). ³ Cf. [Vin.3.121](#), [Vin.3.188](#), [Vin.3.192](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.3.76](#) = [BD.1.132](#), and see there n.2; cf. [Vin.4.22-23](#).

whether it is not a woman, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a woman when it is not a woman there is no offence.

There is no offence if he goes not having arranged; if the woman arranges (and) the monk does not arrange; if he goes without (making) a rendezvous; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.¹

Bu-Pc.67.2.3

The Seventh

¹ Cf. Vin.4.64, Vin.4.66, and above, BD.3.17.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 68

Bu-Pc.68.1.1
BD.3.21

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ a pernicious view had arisen to² a monk named Ariṭṭha³ who had formerly been a vulture-trainer,⁴ like this:

Vin.4.134

“In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following

¹ Ariṭṭha episode occurs at **Vin.2.25–Vin.2.26**; MN.i.130–MN.i.132. At the former, instead of a rule being set forth, the Order is enjoined to carry out an *ukkhepaniyakamma* (act of suspension) against Ariṭṭha. ² *pāpakam diṭṭhigataṃ upannaṃ hoti*. Cf. other pernicious views at MN.i.256, MN.i.326; AN.v.194. ³ Mentioned in **Bu-Pc.69**; at **Vin.4.218** where Thullanandā imitated him; and at SN.v.314. Note that he is not referred to as *āyasmā*, but as *bhikkhu*. An *upāsaka* Ariṭṭha occurs at AN.iv.351. ⁴ *gaddhabādhipubba*. Vin-a.869 says it is meant that “he was born in a family *gijjhaghātaka*.” Discussion of the term and occupation given at *Vinaya Texts* ii.377, n.1. Chalmers, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.90ff. has “vulture-catcher.” *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* refers to Ariṭṭha as *ga° bādhaputta*.

those things called stumbling-blocks¹ by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”²

Several³ monks heard: “A pernicious view has arisen to the monk named Ariṭṭha, who was formerly a vulture-trainer, like this: ‘In so far as I understand ... there is no stumbling-block at all.’”

BD.3.22

Then these monks approached the monk Ariṭṭha, who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, and having approached they spoke thus to the monk Ariṭṭha, who had formerly been a vulture-trainer:

“Is it true, as is said, reverend Ariṭṭha, that a pernicious view has arisen to you, like this: ‘In so far as I understand ... no stumbling-block at all?’”

“Undoubtedly,⁴ your reverences, as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”

“Do not speak thus, reverend Ariṭṭha; do not misrepresent⁵ the lord, misrepresentation of the lord is not at all seemly, and the lord certainly

¹ *antarāyikā dhammā*, things that are obstacles. I follow translation at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.90, adopted also in *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* (art: Ariṭṭha), for *antarāyikā*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.377 has “impediments”; *Critical Pali Dictionary* “hindrances,” but against adopting this is the existence of a technical term, *nīvaraṇāni*, for hindrances. Five *antarāyikā*, are enumerated at Vin-a.869 = MN-a.2.102: *kamma*, *kilesa*, *vipāka*, *upavāda*, *āṇāvitikkama*, actions, obstructions, fruits, blaming, transgressing instructions. At Vin.1.103 intentional lying is referred to as being called *antarāyiko dhammo* by the lord; while at Vin.1.104 intentional lying is said to be an *antarāyika* to reaching the four musings and seven other states. At SN.ii.226 gains, favour and flattery are the *antarāyika* to reaching *yogakkhema*, peace from bondage. At Thig.492 sense-pleasures are called *antarāyikā*. *Antarāyikā dhammā* at Vin.1.93f. = Vin.2.272f., also at Vin.2.271, occur in connection with admission into the Order (as diseases and disqualifications). At MN.1.72 the above stumbling-block “clause occurs as one of the tathāgata’s four “assurances whereby he knows his precedence,” etc. (*Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.48). MN-a.2.33 says that by *antarāyikā dhammā* “is meant intentionally transgressing the seven classes of offence. For intentional transgression, even an offence of wrong-doing or of wrong speech hinders the fruits of the way. But here *methunadhmma*, sexual intercourse, is meant.” ² *nālaṃ antarāyāya*; *Vinaya Texts* ii.378 adding “(to prevent his acquiring spiritual gifts),” and *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.90 “to him who indulges in them.” These same views condemned in Bu-Pc.70, and the novice Kaṇḍaka expelled. Cf. the ten other *antarāyās* at Vin.1.112 = Vin.1.169. ³ *sambahulā*. ⁴ *evaṃ byā kho* = *evaṃ viya kho*, Vin-a.870. *Vinaya Texts* ii. 378, n.2: “Byā is only known to us as an intensive particle occurring in passages like the present one.” ⁵ *abbhācikkhati*, to accuse, slander, calumniate. Phrase occurs also at MN.i.256; MN.iii.207; AN.iii.291.

would not speak thus. Reverend Ariṭṭha, in many a figure are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the lord, and in following these, there is a veritable¹ stumbling-block. Sense-pleasures² are declared by the lord to be (things) affording little satisfaction,³ of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a skeleton,⁴ of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a lump of meat,⁵ of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. Sense-pleasure are declared by the lord (to be) like a fire-brand of dry-grass,⁶ ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a pit of glowing embers,⁷ ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a dream, ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like something borrowed,⁸ ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like the fruits of a tree, ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a slaughterhouse,⁹ ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like an impaling-stake,¹⁰ ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the lord (to be) like a snake's head,¹¹ of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger.”

BD.3.23

Yet the monk Arittha, who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, being spoken to thus by these monks, expressed that pernicious view as before, obstinately holding to it, adhering to it:

“Undoubtedly, your reverences, as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”

And since those monks were unable to dissuade the monk Ariṭṭha, who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, from that pernicious view, then those

¹ *alaṃ*. I follow translation at *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.91. ² This simile paragraph = AN.iii.97. The ten similes also mentioned at Ja.5.210; Thig.487–Thig.491. See “expanded” rendering at *Psalms of the Sisters*, p.171. First seven explained in full at MN.i.364ff.

³ Dh.p.186; Snp.71 (?). Cf. Ja.4.118. ⁴ *aṭṭhikaṅkala*; AN.iii.97 reading *aṭṭhisaṅkhala*, with v.ll. Cf. SN.ii.185=It.17. See Morris, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1885, p.75. MN-a.3.42, if a rib, a bone of the spine, or the skull is without flesh it is called *kaṅkala*. ⁵ See *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1907, p.122. Cf. MN.i.145. Vin-a.870 = MN-a.2.103 explains by *bahusād-hāraṇaṭṭhena*, “shared in by many,” for which cf. Mi.280. Referred to at Vism.341. ⁶ *tiṇukkā*. Cf. SN.ii.152. ⁷ Cf. SN.iv.188; AN.iv.224, AN.v.175; Snp.396; Ja.1.231, Ja.1.232; DN.iii.283.

⁸ Commentaries say for the time being. ⁹ *asisūnā*. Cf. MN.i.144. ¹⁰ *sattisūla*, sword-stake. See SN.i.128 = Thig.58 = Thig.141; Vism.341. ¹¹ *sappasira*. Cf. Snp.768.

monks approached the lord, and having approached they told this matter to the lord.¹ Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monk Ariṭṭha, who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, saying :

Vin.4.135
BD.3.24

“Is it true, as is said, that to you, Ariṭṭha, a pernicious view arose like this: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* ... no stumbling-block at all?’”

“Undoubtedly, lord, as I understand *dhamma* ... no stumbling-block at all.”

“To whom then² do you, foolish man, understand that *dhamma* was taught thus by me? Are not, foolish man, things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by me in many a figure, and in following these is there not a veritable stumbling-block? Sense-pleasures are declared by me (to be things) affording little pleasure, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger ... Sense-pleasures are declared by me (to be) like a snake’s head, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. And yet you, foolish man, not only misrepresent me because of your own wrong grasp,³ but you also injure yourself⁴ and give rise to much demerit which for a long time will be for you, foolish man, of woe and sorrow.⁵ It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...⁶ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should speak thus⁷: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all’; that monk should be spoken to by the monks thus: ‘Do not, venerable one, speak thus, do not misrepresent the lord, misrepresentation of the lord is not at all seemly, and the lord certainly would not speak thus; in many a figure, your reverence, are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the lord, and in following these there is a veritable stumbling-block.’ And if that monk,⁸ when he has been spoken to thus by the monks,

BD.3.25

¹ Here MN.i.131 puts in a little extra matter, to the effect that the lord sends a monk to fetch Ariṭṭha to him, while it omits the convening of the Order. ² *kassa nu kho*. MN-a.2.104 “to (or for) a noble, or a brahmin, or a merchant, or a low-caste person, or a householder, or one gone forth, or a deva, or a man?” ³ Cf. DN.ii.124f. ⁴ *Attānañ ca khaṇasi*. ⁵ To here = MN.i.130–MN.i.132 except for passages noted above, BD.3.23 n. ⁶ To here = Vin.2.25–26. ⁷ Cf. Bu-Pc.70.1. ⁸ Cf. Vin.3.173, Vin.3.175 = BD.1.300, BD.1.305.

should persist as before, that monk should be admonished by the monks up to the third time for giving up that (course). If, being admonished up to the third time, he should give it up, that is good. But if he should not give it up, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bu-Pc.68.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Should speak thus means: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord ... no stumbling-block at all.’

That monk means: the monk who speaks thus.

By the monks means: by other monks, who see, who hear²; he should be told by these: “Do not, venerable one, speak thus ... a veritable stumbling-block.” And a second time he should be told ... And a third time he should be told ... If he gives it up, that is good. If he does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having heard, they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That monk, having been pulled to the midst of the Order, should be told: “Do not, venerable one, speak thus ... a veritable stumbling-block.” And a second time he should be told ... And a third time he should be told. ... If he gives it up, that is good; if he does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.136

That monk should be admonished. And thus, monks, should he be admonished: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. A pernicious view has arisen to the monk so and so, like this: “In so far as I understand ... no stumbling-block at all.” He does not give up that view. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order admonish the monk so and so that he may give up this view. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me: A pernicious view has arisen to the monk so and so ... He does not give up this view. The Order admonishes the monk so and so that he may give up this view. If the admonishing of the monk so and so that he may give up this view is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, then you should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And

BD.3.26

¹ This is more like *Saṅghādisesa* material. Cf. J.Bu-As. 1914, p.514, for the version of the *Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivādins*. ² From here to end, 2, 3, cf. Vin.3.173-174, Vin.3.176, Vin.3.177-178 (BD.1.361-362, (BD.1.306, (BD.1.312).

a third time I speak forth this matter. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me ... then you should speak. The monk so and so has been admonished by the Order for giving up this view. If it is pleasing to the Order, let them be silent ... thus do I understand this.'

As a result of the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; as a result of two proclamations there are offences of wrong-doing; at the end of the proclamations there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.¹

Bu-Pc.68.2.2

There is no offence if he is not admonished; if he gives it up; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.68.2.3

The Eighth

¹ Parallel passages at [Vin.3.174](#), [Vin.3.177](#), [Vin.3.179](#), [Vin.3.186](#) read for the last case, *āpatti dukkaṭassa*.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 69

Bu-Pc.69.1.1
BD.3.27

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks knowingly used to eat together with and be in communion with¹ and lie down in a sleeping place with Ariṭṭha, the monk who talked thus,² who had not acted according to the rule,³ who had got given up that view. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six monks knowingly eat together with and be in communion with and lie down in a sleeping place with Ariṭṭha ... who has not given up that view?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly eat together with and are in communion with and lie down in a sleeping place with Ariṭṭha ... who has not given up that view?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowingly eat together with and be in communion with and lie down in a sleeping place with Ariṭṭha ... who has not given up that view? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly eat together with or be in communion with or lie down in a sleeping place with a monk who talks thus, who has not acted according to the rule, who has not given up that

BD.3.28

¹ *saṁvāsati*. See Old Commentary's explanation below. *Saṁvāsa* at end of each *Pārājika* rule translated in **BD.1** by “communion.” ² *tathāvādin*—i.e., as in **Bu-Pc.68**. Cf. *tathāvādin* at Snp.430; It.122. ³ *akaṭānuddhamma*-i.e., he had not given up his wrong views after the admonition suggested in the *sikkhāpada* of **Bu-Pc.68**. *Critical Pali Dictionary* misses the point in translating as “who had not been dealt with according to the rule.”

view, there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.69.2.1

He knows means: either he knows by himself or others tell him or (someone) tells him.¹

Talks thus means: talks so,² saying: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord there is no stumbling-block at all.’³

Has not acted according to the rule means: he is suspended, not restored.⁴

BD.3.29

¹ Cf. Vin.3.265; Vin.4.49, Vin.4.67, and above, BD.3.5, BD.3.8, BD.3.16. ² *evaṃvādin*. ³ As in Bu-Pc.68. ⁴ *akaṭānudhammo nāma ukkhitto anosārīto*. These two words, *ukkhitto* and *anosārīto*, are also used to define *apaṭikāra*, “one who does not make amends towards,” at Vin.4.218. Suspension is the penalty imposed for not seeing an offence, for not making amends for an offence, for not giving up wrong views; see definition of *ukkhitta*, suspended, at Vin.4.218 and also see Vin.1.323ff. *Vinaya Texts* i.236, n.2 draws attention to the difference between “temporary expulsion” (which I render “suspension”) and permanent expulsion, *nāsana*. For *nāseti*, see BD.1.xxvii, BD.1.50f., BD.1.279f., where it is used in connection with *Pārājika* offences, and below, BD.3.31, where Kaṇḍaka is expelled for holding the same false views as Ariṭṭha. There is also the verb *nissāreti*, to cause to go away, to send away (temporarily); see *nissāraṇīyam*, at end of each *sikkhāpada* in the Nuns’ *Samghādisesas*, and above, BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxvif. At Vin.1.321 right and wrong kinds of causing to go away, *nissāraṇā*, are given; here *nissāraṇā* appears to be in opposition to *osāraṇā* (Vin.1.322), “restoration”: o = *ava + sāreti*, to cause to go back.

Kinds of persons who may be and who may not be duly restored by the Order given at Vin.1.322. See also Vin.1.340. Vin.1.97 allows the restoration of a monk even if he has left the Order because he was suspended for not seeing or making amends for an offence or for not giving up a wrong view, provided he sees his offence, etc. But if he does not, he may be suspended again if the Order is unanimous on this point. If it is not, there is no offence (for him) in eating together with and being in communion with.

There is also the verb *abbheti*, meaning to rehabilitate, occurring in each definition of *saṃghādisesa*, and meaning to rehabilitate a monk who has gone back to the beginning of his probationary period and undergone the *mānatta* discipline. See, e.g., Vin.3.112 = BD.1.196, Vin.4.225; also Vin.1.49, Vin.1.320, Vin.1.326, Vin.1.327; Vin.2.33, Vin.2.39 = Vin.2.42 = Vin.2.47, Vin.2.226. Method of applying for rehabilitation is put forward at Vin.2.39 = Vin.2.42 = Vin.2.47. There is thus a technical difference between *osāreti*, to restore a monk when he has seen or made amends for his offence or has given up his wrong views; and *abbheti*, to rehabilitate a monk after he has undergone the due penalty for having committed a *saṃghādisesa* offence. The Order both restores and rehabilitates.

Together with (to monk) who has not given up that¹ view means: together with (a monk) who has not given up this² view.

Or should eat with means: there are two (kinds of) eating, eating food and eating *dhamma*. Eating food³ means, if he gives or accepts food, there is an offence of expiation. Eating *dhamma* means, he recites or causes to recite. If he recites or causes a line to be recited, for every line there is an offence of expiation; if he recites or causes a syllable to be recited, for every syllable there is an offence of expiation.⁴

Vin.4.138

Or should be in communion with means: if he performs the Observance day (ceremony) or the Invitation ceremony or a (formal) act of the Order⁵ together with one who is suspended, there is an offence of expiation.

Or should lie down in a sleeping place with means: if one who is suspended is lying down and a monk lies down in a sleeping place under the same roof,⁶ there is an offence of expiation. If a monk is lying down and one who is suspended lies down, there is an offence of expiation. Or, if both are lying down, there is an offence of expiation. If, getting up, they lie down again and again, there is an offence of expiation.⁷

Bu-Pc.69.2.2

BD.3.30

If he thinks that one is suspended when he is suspended, (and) eats together with or is in communion with or lies down in a sleeping place with (him), there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is suspended ... offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not suspended when he is suspended ... no offence. If he thinks that one is suspended when he is not suspended, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not suspended, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not suspended when he is not suspended, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.69.2.3

¹ *taṃ*. ² *etaṃ*. ³ *āmisasambhoga*. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.15, Vin.4.22. ⁵ Cf. Vin.3.164 and BD.1.283 for these three ceremonies. ⁶ *ekacchāne*. *Channa* is a cover, meaning here a roof rather than a coverlet. Cf. Vin.4.17, Vin.4.19, in definition of *seyyā*, sleeping-place. ⁷ Cf. Vin.4.17, Vin.4.19, and below, BD.3.34.

There is no offence if he knows, "He is not suspended"; if he knows, "He was suspended, he is restored"; if he knows, "He has given up that view"; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Ninth

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 70

Bu-Pc.70.1.1
BD.3.31

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a pernicious view had arisen to the novice¹ Kaṇḍaka,² like this: "In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all."³

Several monks heard: "A pernicious view has arisen to the novice Kaṇḍaka ..." (See Bu-Pc.68.1. *Instead of the monk Ariṭṭha, who was formerly a vulture-trainer, read the novice Kaṇḍaka; instead of Ariṭṭha, Kaṇḍaka; in his reply to the monks read honoured sir instead of your reverence.*) ...

"... It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... and it causes wavering in some."

Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Because of this, monks, let the Order expel⁴ the novice Kaṇḍaka. And thus, monks, should he be expelled: 'From today forth, reverend Kaṇḍaka, the lord can neither be referred to as your teacher, nor can that be yours of which other novices have the chance,⁵ namely the lying down to sleep for two or three nights with monks.⁶ Get away⁷ with you,⁸ depart.'⁹

Vin.4.139

BD.3.32

¹ *samaṇuddesa*, explained in Old Commentary as *sāmaṇera*. *Samaṇuddesa* = one marked as a recluse; cf. DN.i.151 (Siha); MN.ii.244 (Cunda); MN.iii.128 (Aciravata); AN.ii.78 (*ārāmikasam*°); AN.iii.109, AN.iii.343; *Divyāvadāna* 160. ² Another (?) Kaṇḍaka was one of Upananda's two novices, Vin.1.79; seduced a nun, Vin.1.85. Vin-a.874 calls him and Ariṭṭha and the Vajjiputtakas of Vesālī, enemies of the Buddha's teaching. ³ See Bu-Pc.68. ⁴ *nāsetu*. Cf. above, BD.3.28, n.4. ⁵ *labhanti*.

Then the Order expelled the novice Kaṇḍaka. Now at that time the group of six monks knowingly encouraged¹ and supported² and ate with and lay down in a sleeping-place with the novice Kaṇḍaka, thus expelled. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six monks knowingly encourage and support and eat with and lie down in a sleeping-place with the novice Kaṇḍaka, thus expelled?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly encourage and support and eat with and lie down in a sleeping-place with the novice Kaṇḍaka, thus expelled?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowingly encourage ... thus expelled? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“If even a novice should speak thus³: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the lord, there is no stumbling-block at all,” that novice should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Do not speak thus, reverend novice; do not misrepresent the lord, misrepresentation of the lord is not at all seemly, and the lord certainly would not speak thus. Reverend novice, in many a figure are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the lord, and in following these, there is a veritable stumbling-block.’ And if that novice, when he has been spoken to thus by the monks, should persist as before, that novice should be spoken to thus by the

BD.3.33

⁶ See Bu-Pc.5. ⁷ *carā ti gaccha*, Vin-a.871. ⁸ *pire*. *Vinaya Texts* i.49, n.3, says: “In text read *cara pi re*, that is *cara api re*, instead of *cara pare*.” *Pali-English Dictionary* says that *pi* and *re* both act “as parts of exclamation. The Commentary explains by ‘*pire* (vocative?) = *para amāmakā*’ is an artificial construction.” *Critical Pali Dictionary*, quoting this passage, calls *pi re* an “expression of contempt; cf. *je*.” ⁹ *vinassā ti nassa*, Vin-a.871, which adds “go away where we do not see you.” ¹ *upalāpeti*, to cajole, flatter. ² *upaṭṭhāpeti*. *Vinaya Texts* i. 49, n.5 says that “no doubt *upaṭṭhāpeti* is used in the sense of showing such personal attentions to another, as the *upaṭṭhākā* did to the Buddha; and such services would very, rightly come under this rule.” Cf. *upaṭṭhāpetabbā* and *upaṭṭhāpeyya* at Vin.1.79; not necessary to take it here in sense of ordaining as at *Vinaya Texts* i.205. It has rather sense of supporting, waiting on, ministering to. See Old Commentary, below. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.68.1.

monks: ‘From today forth, reverend novice, the lord can neither be referred to as your teacher, nor can that be yours of which other novices get the chance, namely, the lying down to sleep for two or three nights with monks. Get away with you, depart.’ Whatever monk should knowingly encourage or should support or should eat with or should lie down in a sleeping-place with a novice thus expelled, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.70.2.1

Novice¹ means: he is called a novice.²

Should speak thus means: he says: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the lord ... no stumbling-block at all.’³

Vin.4.140

That novice means: the novice who speaks thus.

By the monks means: by other monks, who see, who hear. He should be told by these: ‘Do not, reverend novice, speak thus ... no stumbling-block at all.’ And a second time he should be told ... And a third time he should be told ... If he gives it up, that is good. If he does not give it up,⁴ that monk should be spoken to thus by the monies: ‘From today forth reverend novice ... depart.’

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

He knows means: either he knows by himself, or others tell him, or (someone) tells him.⁵

BD.3.34

Thus expelled means: so expelled.

Novice⁶ means: he is called a novice.⁷

Should encourage means: if he encourages⁸ him, saying: ‘I will give him a bowl or a robe or a recitation or an interrogation,’ there is an offence of expiation.

Or should support means: if he agrees⁹ to chunam or clay or a tooth-cleaner or water for the face¹⁰ for him, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ *samañuddesa*. ² *sāmañera*. ³ Cf. above, [BD.3.24](#). ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.3.25](#). ⁵ Cf. above, [BD.3.5](#). ⁶ *samañuddesa*. ⁷ *sāmañera*. ⁸ *Vinaya Texts* i.49, n.4: “flatters him (talks him-over, *tassa upalāpeti*) ...” I do not think, however, that *tassa* goes with *upalāpeti*, but with *dassāmi*: *tassa pattarāṃ vā cīvararāṃ vā ... dassāmi ti upalāpeti*; in 2,2 *upalāpeti* is not preceded by *tassa*. ⁹ *sādiyati*. *Vinaya Texts* i. 49, p.5: “by providing him with chunam ...” ¹⁰ On these articles see [Vin.1.46](#) (= [Vin.2.223](#)), [Vin.2.51](#), [Vin.2.52](#), [Vin.2.61](#); and on tooth-cleaners, [dantakaṭṭha](#), [Vin.2.137](#).

Or should eat with means: there are two kinds of eating: eating food and eating *dhamma* ... for every syllable there is an offence of expiation.¹

Or should lie down in a sleeping-place with means: if a novice who is expelled is lying down and a monk lies down under one roof, there is an offence of expiation. If a monk is lying down and the novice who is expelled lies down, there is an offence of expiation. Or if both lie down, there is an offence of expiation. If, getting up, they lie down again and again, there is an offence of expiation,²

If he thinks that he is expelled when he is expelled, and encourages or supports (him) or eats with or lies down in a sleeping-place with him, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is expelled ... an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not expelled when he is expelled ... no offence. If he thinks that he is expelled when he is not expelled, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not expelled, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not expelled when he is not expelled, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.70.2.2

There is no offence if he knows, “He is not expelled”; if he knows, “He has given up that view”; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.70.2.3
BD.3.35

The Tenth

THIS IS ITS KEY

Intentional slaughter, with living things (in it),
opening up, concealment of what is very bad,
Under twenty, and a caravan, an arrangement, about Ariṭṭha,
Suspended, and Kaṇḍaka: just these ten rules of training.

Bu-Pc.70.3.1

*The seventh Division: on what contains life.*³

Vin.4.141

¹ =above, [BD.3.29](#). ² Cf. above, [BD.3.29](#), and [BD.2.196](#), [BD.2.202](#). ³ *Vinaya Texts* i.49, n.6 points out that “this title is taken from the second, not, as in all other cases, from the first rule in the section.” But in the ninth Division, the *Ratanavagga*, again the second rule gives its title to the Division.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 71

Bu-Pc.71.1.1
BD.3.36

... at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Channa indulged in bad habits.¹ Monks spoke thus: "Reverend Channa, do not do that, it is not allowable." He spoke thus:

"Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another monk, experienced, expert in discipline."²

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the venerable Channa, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule,³ speak thus: 'Your reverences, I will not train myself ... expert in discipline?'"

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Channa, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, spoke thus: 'Your reverences, I will not train myself ... expert in discipline?'"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, speak thus: 'Your reverences, I will not train myself ... expert in discipline'? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.37

"Whatever monk, being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, should speak thus: 'Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of train-

¹ = Vin.3.177 = Vin.4.113. At Vin.2.9ff. = Vin.3.179ff. the act of banishment was to be carried out against monks who indulged in the long list of bad habits specified there. In view of this penalty it must be presumed that such bad habits were "not allowable." ² *vinayadhara*. At AN.i.25 Upāli is said to be chief of those monks who are *vinayadhara*, proficient, skilled in discipline, who know it by heart; see BD.1.60, n.4. To be a *vinayadhara* is one of the ten qualities which make a monk altogether charming and complete in every attribute, AN.v.10ff., while the qualities for making one a *vinayadhara* are given at AN.iv.140ff. ³ *sahadhammikarū*; cf. BD.1.310, where translation should have been as above.

ing until I have inquired about it of another monk, experienced, expert in discipline,' there is an offence of expiation. Monks,¹ it should be learnt,² it should be inquired into, it should be investigated³ by a monk who is training.⁴ This is the proper course here."

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

By monks means: by other monks.

Regarding a rule means: whatever is a rule of training laid down by the lord, this is called regarding a rule.⁵

Being spoken to ... should speak⁶ thus⁷: 'Your reverences, I will not train myself until I have inquired⁸ ... expert in discipline' means: if he says, "I am inquiring about it of a wise, experienced, clever, learned speaker on the rules,"⁹ there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained (and) speaks thus, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained (and) speaks thus, there is an offence of expiation. If, being spoken to about what is not laid down, he speaks thus, "This does not conduce to expunging (evil), nor to punctiliousness, nor to graciousness, nor to decreasing (the obstructions), nor to putting forth energy,"¹⁰ (and) says: "Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another monk,

¹ *bhikkhave*. Cf. *Nissaggiya pācittiya* 10, where this form of address also occurs in the *sikkhāpada*, rule. ² *aññātabbāṃ*, or should come to be known. Cf. *aññātavindriya*. See my *Early Buddhist Theory of Man Perfected*, p.162ff. ³ *paripañhitabbāṃ*. See Old Commentary's definition below. Vin-a.871 substitutes *upaparikkhitabbāṃ*. *Vinaya Texts* i.50 has "settle in his own mind." Cf. AN.v.16 for inquire+investigate. ⁴ This is the present participle medium, as also at DN.ii.241. More frequently occurring as a feminine noun, *sikkhāmanā*, meaning a probationer, a woman undergoing a two years' training; see below, Vin.4.319f., Vin.4.332ff. ⁵ = Vin.3.178 (BD.1.311). ⁶ Text and Siamese edition, *vadeti*; Sinhalese edition, *vadeyya*. ⁷ Sinhalese edition adds *ti*, "means". ⁸ Omitted by Oldenberg and Siamese edition, but present in Sinhalese edition ⁹ *dhammakathika*. Here *dhamma* most probably in its Vinaya meaning of a "rule" or rules. There would be no point if, wanting to find out about the *vinaya*, the discipline, he were to ask someone who was an expert in *dhamma* in its Suttanta meaning of doctrine. ¹⁰ Standing *dhamma-talk*. See BD.1.37, n.6 for references.

experienced, expert in discipline, one who is a wise, experienced, clever, learned speaker on the rules,”¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If being spoken to by one who is not ordained about what is laid down or about what is not laid down, he speaks thus: “This does not conduce to expunging (evil) ... nor to putting forth energy,” (and) says, “Your reverences, I will not train myself in this rule of training until I have inquired about it of another monk, experienced, expert in discipline, one who is a wise, experienced, clever, learned speaker on the rules,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Is training means: is desiring to train.

BD.3.39 **It should be learnt** means: it should be known.³

It should be inquired into means: he says, “This, honoured sir, what is the meaning⁴ of this?”⁵

It should be investigated means: it should be thought about, it should be examined.⁶

This is the proper course here means: this is the appropriate course here.

Bu-Pc.71.2.3

There is no offence if he says, “I will know (about it and) I will train”; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The First

¹ Following the Sinhalese and Siamese editions, I omit Oldenberg’s text’s *ti* after *byattim vinayadharam*, “experienced, proficient in discipline.” The verb *paripucchāmi*, inquire, occurs once only in this sentence, at the end, thus governing the whole of it. As we have seen above in Bu-Pc.71.2.1 the second clause, “a wise, experienced ...” is given as the definition of the first, “experienced, proficient in discipline,” and hence should not be treated as a separate sentence spoken by the offending monk. ² No variant reading given. Probably should read *anāpatti*, no offence, although the next seven *Pācittiyas* in parallel passages read *anupasampanne anupasampannasaññī, āpatti dukkaṭassa*, as above. ³ *jānitabbaṃ*. ⁴ *attha*, or “use.” ⁵ Text inserts *vā*, or, after *imassa*, of this, but Sinhalese and Siamese editions omit. ⁶ *tulayitabbaṃ*, literally “should be weighed.”

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 72

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the lord in many a figure talked a talk on discipline¹ to the monks, he spoke in praise of discipline, he spoke in praise of accomplishment in discipline, he spoke in praise of the venerable Upāli,² referring (to him) again and again.³ Monks said: "The lord in many a figure talked a talk on discipline ... he spoke in praise of the venerable Upāli, referring (to him) again and again. Come, your reverences, let us master discipline under the venerable Upāli," and they, many monks, elders and newly ordained and those of middle standing, mastered discipline under the venerable Upāli. Then it occurred to the group of six monks:

Bu-Pc.72.1.1
BD.3.40

"At present, your reverences, many monks, elders and ... are mastering discipline under the venerable Upāli. If these become properly versed⁴ in discipline they will win us to (them), they will win us round⁵ how they like, when they like, for as long as they like.⁶ Come, your reverences, let us disparage⁷ discipline."

Vin.4.143

Then the group of six monks, having approached the monks, spoke thus: "On account of what are these lesser and minor rules of training⁸ recited?

BD.3.41

¹ Vin-a.871 on what is connected with the allowable and the not allowable, with offences and what are not offences, with restraint and rejection. ² Cf. BD.1.60, n.4, BD.1.112.

³ ādissa ādissa. Vin-a.875, punappunam vavatthapetvā visum visum katvā. ⁴ pakataññuno.

⁵ ālaḍḍhisanti parikaḍḍhissanti. Kaḍḍhali is more literally to drag, to pull, to draw than to 'win'; but pari, round, over, used with any of these verbs, owing to the more prevalent associations of "to pull round," to drag round, cannot well be used. ⁶ yenicchakam yadicchakam yāvadicchakam. Cf. AN.iii.28; Vism.154; Pp.11, Pp.12. ⁷ vivaṇṇeti, to dispraise, discredit, disparage. ⁸ khuddānukhuddaka sikkhāpada. Vin.2.287 gives the views of various elders as to what these comprise. See DN.ii.154 (and Dialogues of the Buddha 2.171, n.2); Mi.142ff.; AN.i.231f.; B.C. LAW, History of Pali Literature, i.19ff.; PRZYLUKSI, Le Concile de Rājagṛha, p.52, p.154, p.217.

They only¹ tend to remorse, to vexation,² to perplexity.”³

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks disparage discipline’ ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, disparaged discipline?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, disparage discipline? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, when the Pātimokkha is being recited,⁴ should speak thus: ‘On account of what are these lesser and minor rules of training recited? They only tend to remorse, to vexation, to perplexity,’ in disparaging a rule of training, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.72.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

When the Pātimokkha is being recited means: when reciting it or when causing (another) to recite it or when studying it.⁵

Should speak thus means: he says: ‘On account of what are these lesser and minor rules of training recited? ... to perplexity.’ If he disparages discipline to one who is ordained, saying: ‘For those who master this there comes to be remorse, there comes to be vexation, there comes to be perplexity; for those who do not master this there does not come to be remorse, there does not come to be vexation, there does not come to be perplexity; this boon⁶ is not recited, this boon is not learnt, this boon is not mastered, this boon is not borne in mind,⁷ or let discipline disappear or let these monks become not properly versed,⁸ there is an offence of expiation.

BD.3.42

Bu-Pc.72.2.2

¹ *yāvad eva*. Cf. NEUMANN, *Reden*, p.16 “nur”; *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.6, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.7 “only.” ² *vihesā*. Cf. *vihesaka* at Vin.4.36 (BD.2.231f.), and *vihesikā* at Vin.4.239 (below, BD.3.207). At the former passage it means to keep silence when being examined for an offence; at the latter to protest against a formal act. ³ *vilekhā*. ⁴ *ud-dissamāne*. Vin-a.876, by a teacher to a pupil. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.15, *sajjhāyaṃ karonto*. ⁶ *vara*. ⁷ *adhārita*, not held. ⁸ *apakataññuno*; also occurs at Vin.4.112.

If he thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained, (and) disparages discipline, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If he disparages another rule,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he disparages discipline or another rule to one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.144

There is no offence if, not desiring to disparage, he speaks, saying: "Look here, do you master *suttantas* or verses or what is extra to *dhamma*² and afterwards you will master discipline;" if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.72.2.3

The Second

¹ *dhamma*, or here perhaps "matter," since *dhamma* is in opposition to *vinaya*, the whole of the discipline. Moreover, since there is *Pācittiya* in disparaging the lesser and minor rules, it would seem as if disparaging any more important rule would incur a heavier penalty than *dukkāṭa*. ² *abhidhammā*. Cf. Vin.4.344, Vin.5.86, where *abhidhamma* occurs with *suttanta* and *vinaya*. See BD.3, Introduction, p.xff. Other Sutta references to *abhidhamma* are at Vin.1.64, Vin.1.68; MN.i.472, MN.ii.239, MN.ii.240; DN.iii.267; AN.v.24, AN.v.27, AN.v.90, AN.v.201, AN.v.339; and see MN-a.3.185, MN-a.4.29; DN-a.18, DN-a.1047.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 73

Bu-Pc.73.1.1
BD.3.43

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: "Let them understand¹ that having indulged in bad habits, we are fallen through ignorance,"² while the Pātimokkha was being recited, spoke thus: "Only now³ do we understand that this rule⁴ is, as is said, handed down in a clause,⁵ contained in a clause, (and) comes up for recitation every half-month."

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks speak thus while the Pātimokkha is being recited ... '... every half-month?' ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that you spoke thus while the Pātimokkha was being recited ... '... every half-month?'"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, speak thus while the Pātimokkha is being recited: '... every half-month'? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.44

¹ *jānantu*, may these people understand, think that we have done this without knowledge.

² *aññāṇakena āpannā*, attained by the ignorant, by the man who does not know the rule.

³ *idān'eva kho*. *Vinaya Texts* i.50, "Now for the first time"; E. HUBER, *J.BU-AS*. Nov-Dec, 1913, Bu-Pc.83, "C'est maintenant seulement que je me rends compte." ⁴ *dhamma*. ⁵ *suttāgata*; cf. *āgatāgama* at, e.g. **BD.3.71** below. *Vinaya Texts* i.50, *Vinaya Texts* ii.434 (= **Vin.2.68**, where this whole speech also occurs) translate *suttāgato suttapariyāpanno* as "is handed down in the suttas, is contained in the suttas." But cf. *Vinaya Texts* i.xxviiiif. and **BD.1.x** for *Vinaya* use of *sutta* as rule, clause or article. No rule of discipline was formally handed down in the Suttas—which in any case ought perhaps more properly to be called Suttantas.

“Whatever monk, while the Pātimokkha is being recited every half-month, should speak thus: ‘Only now do I understand that this rule is, as is said, handed down in a clause, contained in a clause, (and) comes up for recitation every half-month’; if other monks should know concerning this monk that this monk has sat down two or three times before,¹ not to say oftener,² while the Pātimokkha was being recited, there is not only no freedom³ for that monk on account of (his) ignorance, but he ought to be dealt with according to the rule for the offence into which he has fallen there, and further confusion should be put on⁴ him, saying: ‘Your reverence, this is bad for you, this is badly gotten by you, that you, while the Pātimokkha is being recited, do not attend applying yourself properly.’⁵ This for him on whom the confusion is put⁶ is an offence of expiation.”

Vin.4.145

Bu-Pc.73.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Every half-month means: every Observance day.⁷

When the Pātimokkha is being recited means: when reciting it.⁸

Should speak thus means: if he, thinking, “Let them understand that, having indulged in bad habits, I am fallen through ignorance,” speaks thus, while the Pātimokkha is being recited, “Only now do I understand ... every half-month,” there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.45

If ... **this** means: the monk whom they desire to confuse.

Monks should know (concerning this monk) that he has sat down ... further confusion should be put on him. And thus, monks, should it be put on him: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk so and

¹ Seats had to be arranged in the *uposatha*-hall, Vin.1.118; cf. Vin.1.125; and the rules stating that the Pātimokkha must not be recited in a seated assembly, *nisinnaparīsā*, Vin.1.135.

² *ko pana vādo bhīyyo*. I follow translation at *Vinaya Texts* i.50. HUBER, J. BU-As. Nov, “*et pas davantage*.” ³ *mutti*, from the offence, Vin-a.877. ⁴ *moho āropetabbo*. It has to be established that he committed the offence in confusion, in ignorance. ⁵ *nā sādhuḥkaṃ aṭṭhikatvā manasikarosi*. *Vinaya Texts* i.51, “You fail to take it to your heart, and attend to it with care.” ⁶ *idaṃ tasmīṃ mohanake pācittīyan ti*. The act of confusing, of establishing the fact that a monk had spoken or acted in ignorance, is *mohanaka*. It also means cheating, deceiving, pretending. ⁷ *anvaddhamāsan ti anuposathikaṃ* = Vin.4.315. ⁸ Cf. above,

BD.3.41.

so, while the Pātimokkha was being recited, did not attend applying himself properly. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should put confusion on the monk so and so. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk ... did not attend applying himself properly. The Order is putting confusion on the monk so and so. If the putting of confusion on¹ the monk so and so is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, you should speak. Confusion is put on the monk so and so by the Order, and it is right ... So do I understand this.’

If he confuses when confusion is not put on him,² there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he confuses when confusion is put on him,³ there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.73.2.2

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act⁴ when it is a legally valid act (and) confuses him, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) confuses him, there is an offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act (and) confuses him, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act (and) confuses him, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.46

Bu-Pc.73.2.3

There is no offence if he is not heard in detail; if he is heard in detail (but) less than two or three times; if he does not desire to confuse; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third

¹ *mohassa āropanā*. ² This I think can only mean that if he is convicted of being confused not by the Order but by an individual, there is a *dukkāṭa* for that individual. But if he is convicted of being confused by the Order and then some individual tries to confuse him, there is *pācittiya* for that individual. ³ This I think can only mean that if he is convicted of being confused not by the Order but by an individual, there is a *dukkāṭa* for that individual. But if he is convicted of being confused by the Order and then some individual tries to confuse him, there is *pācittiya* for that individual. ⁴ Vin-a.877 “amongst these, the (formal) act of ‘putting confusion on (a monk)’ is meant.”

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 74

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, angry, displeased, gave the group of seventeen monks¹ a blow; these cried out. Monks spoke thus: "Why do you, your reverences, cry out?"

Bu-Pc.74.1.1
BD.3.47
Vin.4.146

"Your reverences, this group of six monks, angry, displeased, gave us a blow." Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks, angry, displeased, give monks a blow?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, angry, displeased, gave monks a blow?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, angry, displeased, give monks a blow? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk, angry, displeased, should give a monk a blow, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.74.2.1

A monk means: another monk.

Angry, displeased means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.²

Should give a blow means: if he gives a blow with the body or with something attached to the body or with something that may be cast,³ and

BD.3.48

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.52, Bu-Pc.55, Bu-Pc.60, Bu-Pc.75. ² = Vin.3.255 = Vin.4.236, Vin.4.238. Cf. Vin.3.163 where these five words are used to explain *duṭṭho doso*, "malignant, malicious"; see BD.1.281 and cf. DN.iii.238; MN.i.101.

even with a lotus-leaf,¹ there is an offence of expiation.²

Bu-Pc.74.2.2

If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, (and) angry, displeased, gives a blow, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is ordained ... If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is ordained, (and) angry, displeased ... offence of expiation. If angry, displeased, he gives a blow to one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bu-Pc.74.2.3

There is no offence if, being in some difficulty, he gives a blow desiring freedom⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fourth

³ Cf. Vin.3.74=BD.1.129. Cf. BD.1.207, BD.1.218, where commentarial explanations of *kāya-paṭibaddha*, “something attached to the body,” are cited. ¹ *uppalapatta*. Cf. next *Pācittiya* and Bi-Pc.3, Bi-Pc.4. ² Referred to at Dhp-a.3.48. ³ Surely should read *anāpatti*, no offence. ⁴ *kenaci viheṭhiyamāno mokkhādhippāyo*. Vin-a.877 says if it is on account of a man or an animal, it is no offence to strike a blow with the body, with something attached to it, or with something that may be cast.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 75

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, angry, displeased, raised the palm of the hand¹ against the group of seventeen monks.² These, frightened of a blow,³ cried out. Monks spoke thus: "Why do you, your reverences, cry out?"

Bu-Pc.75.1.1
BD.3.49

Vin.4.147

"Your reverences, this group of six monks, angry, displeased, raised the palm of the hand against us." Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks, angry, displeased, raise the palm of the hand against the group of seventeen monks?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, angry, displeased, raised the palm of the hand against the group of seventeen monks?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, angry, displeased, raise the palm of the hand against the group of seventeen monks? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.50

"Whatever monk, angry, displeased, should raise the palm of the hand against a monk, there is an offence of expiation."⁴

¹ *talasattikaṃ uggiranti*. *Vinaya Texts* i.51 has "shall make use of any threatening gesture," a rendering governed by the Old Commentary's explanation, *q.v.* ² Cf. **Bu-Pc.52, Bu-Pc.55, Bu-Pc.60, Bu-Pc.74.** ³ Text reads *pahārasamuccitā*. Variant readings: *te pahāraṃ pamuccitā*; *te pahārasaṃmuccitā*; *te pahārasamuccitā*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says of *samuccita* "(*saṃ+ucita*, pp.of *uc* to be pleased), suitable, **Vin.4.147** (must mean something else here, perhaps 'hurt' or 'frightened')." *Vin-a.878* says that these monks were familiar with blows, having received them before, and that they were frightened. The variant readings suggest that the monks were suitable objects for a blow, but that they escaped a blow which was threatened, not given. ⁴ Referred to at *Dhp-a.3.50*.

Bu-Pc.75.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Against a monk means: against another monk.

Angry, displeased means: ... stubborn.¹

Should raise the palm of the hand means: if he lifts up² the body or something attached to the body, and even at most a lotus-leaf,³ there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.75.2.2

If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, (and) angry, displeased, raises the palm of the hand ... (see [Bu-Pc.74.2](#)) ... There is no offence if, being in some difficulty, he raises the palm of the hand desiring freedom; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth

¹ =above, [BD.3.47](#). ² *uccāreti*. ³ Cf. above, [BD.3.48](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 76

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks defamed a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can the group of six monks defame ... formal meeting of the Order?" ...

Bu-Pc.76.1.1
BD.3.51

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, defamed a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order?" "It is true, lord."

Vin.4.148

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How can you, foolish men, defame ... formal meeting of the Order? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should defame a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Monk² means: another monk.

Unfounded means: unseen, unheard, unsuspected.³

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: any one of the thirteen (offences entailing this penalty).

Bu-Pc.76.2.1

BD.3.52

¹ Cf. Vin.3.163, Vin.3.167-168 = BD.1.281, where there is a *saṅghādisesa* offence in unfoundedly charging a monk with an offence involving defeat; and cf. BD.1.289. This *Pācittiya* and Bu-Ss.8 are referred to at Vin.1.173. ² Accusative. ³ = Vin.3.163 (= BD.1.282).

Should defame means: if he reprimands him or causes (another) to reprimand him, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.76.2.2

If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, and defames (him) with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is ordained... If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If he defames (him) in respect of a falling away from right habits or a falling away from right views,¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he defames one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Bu-Pc.76.2.3

There is no offence if, thinking what is true, he reprimands him or causes (another) to reprimand him; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.³

The Sixth

¹ *ācāravipattiyā vā diṭṭhivipattiyā vā*. At [Vin.1.171-172](#) these two, preceded by *silavipatti*, are translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.343: “moral transgression, transgression against the rules of conduct, heresy.” This passage states the kind of offence covered by each of these three groups. These three *vipattiyo* referred to at [Ne.126](#). ² Doubtless should read *anāpatti*.

³ = [Vin.3.170](#) = [BD.1.295](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 77

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks intentionally aroused¹ remorse in the group of seventeen monks,² saying:

Bu-Pc.77.1.1
BD.3.53

“Your reverences, a rule of training laid down by the lord says that a person under twenty years of age is not to be ordained³; and you, (though) under twenty years of age, are ordained. Then perhaps you are not really ordained.” These cried out. Monks spoke thus: “Why do you, your reverences, cry out?”

“Your reverences, this group of six monks intentionally aroused remorse in us.”

Vin.4.149

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks intentionally arouse remorse in monks?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, intentionally aroused remorse in monks?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How can you, foolish men, intentionally arouse remorse in monks? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should intentionally arouse remorse in a monk thinking, “There will be no comfort for him even for a moment,” if having done it for just this object, not for another,⁴ there is an offence of expiation.”

¹ *upadahantī ti uppādentī*, Vin-a.878. Cf. *vippaṭṭisāraṃ upadahati* at DN.ii.135. ² Cf. Bu-Pc.52, Bu-Pc.55, Bu-Pc.60, Bu-Pc.74, Bu-Pc.75 for these two groups. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.65. ⁴ =BD.2.248, BD.2.352; below, BD.3.55.

Bu-Pc.77.2.1

BD.3.54

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

In a monk means: in another monk.

Intentionally means: a transgression committed knowingly, consciously, deliberately.¹

Should arouse remorse means: if he arouses remorse saying: 'Surely you, (though) under twenty years of age,² are ordained, surely you eat at the wrong time,³ surely you drink strong drink,⁴ surely you sit in a private place together with a woman,⁵ there is an offence of expiation.⁶

Having done it for just this object, not for another means: there comes to be no other object whatever (for which) to arouse remorse.⁷

Bu-Pc.77.2.2

If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, (and) intentionally arouses remorse, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is ordained... If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If he intentionally arouses remorse in one who is not ordained,⁸ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.77.2.3

There is no offence if, not desiring to arouse remorse, he speaks, saying: 'Surely you, (though) under twenty years of age, are ordained ... surely you sit in a private place together with a woman; come now, find out (about it), do not let there come to be remorse for you afterwards;' if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ = Vin.3.73, Vin.3.112 (= BD.1.126, BD.1.196) = Vin.4.124 = Vin.4.290. ² Bu-Pc.65. ³ Bu-Pc.37.

⁴ Bu-Pc.51. ⁵ Bu-Ay.1, Bu-Ay.2; Bu-Pc.44. ⁶ Vin-a.878, "for each sentence." ⁷ Cf.

BD.2.248, BD.2.352; below, BD.3.56. ⁸ Vin-a.878, calls such a one a *sāmañera*, novice.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 78

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks quarrelled together with well behaved monks.¹ The well behaved monks spoke thus: "Your reverences, this group of six monks are shameless; it is not possible to quarrel together with them."

Bu-Pc.78.1.1
BD.3.55

The group of six monks spoke thus: "Why do you, your reverences, bring us into disgrace² by speaking (of us) as shameless?"

"But how could you, your reverences, hear?"

"We stood overhearing³ the venerable ones." Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks stand overhearing monks when they are quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, stood ... engaged in contention?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How could you, foolish men, stand ... engaged in contention? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should stand overhearing monks when they are quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention, saying, 'I will hear what they say,' if having done it for just this object, not for another,⁴ there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

When monks means: when other monks.

Bu-Pc.78.2.1
BD.3.56

¹ Cf. Vin.4.4. ² *pāpeti*. Cf. Vin.4.5. ³ *upassutim*. Cf. SN.ii.75, SN.iv.91. ⁴ = Vin.4.43, Vin.4.93; above, BD.3.53.

Are quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention means: (when they are engaged) with legal questions.¹

Should stand overhearing means: if hearing these, he goes away, thinking: 'I will reprove (him), I will remind (him), I will reprimand (him), I will make (him) remorseful,² I will make him ashamed,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. If standing where he hears, there is an offence of expiation. If, going behind, he goes quickly, thinking: 'I will hear,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. If standing where he hears, there is an offence of expiation. If, going in front, he stays behind,³ thinking, 'I will hear,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. If standing where he hears, there is an offence of expiation. Having come to a place where a monk is resting or to a place where he is sitting down or to a place where he is lying down,⁴ taking counsel⁵ he should cough, he should let him know. Should he not cough or should he not let him know, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.151

Having done it for just this object, not for another means: there comes to be no other object whatever (for which) to stand overhearing.

Bu-Pc.78.2.2

If he thinks that one is ordained when he is ordained, (and) stands overhearing, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether one is ordained ... If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If he stands overhearing one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether one is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that one is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.57

Bu-Pc.78.2.3

¹ *adhikaraṇajātānaṃ*. On "legal question" see [BD.1.282](#), [BD.1.290](#), [BD.1.300](#), and above, [Bu-Pc.63](#). ² *paṭissāressāmi*. ³ *ohiyyati*; cf. *ohiyyaka* at [Vin.4.94](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.3.263](#). ⁵ Or, "advising him," in sense of letting him know, informing him. *Mantentan ti aññena saddhiṃ aññasmīṃ mantayamāne. Mantente ti vā pāṭho ayaṃ ev' āttho*, [Vin-a.879](#).

There is no offence if having heard these he goes away, thinking: 'I will desist,¹ I will refrain, I will be calm,² I will set myself free'³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Eighth

¹ *oramissāmi*. Cf. **Vin.3.54=BD.1.90**. See Journal of the Pali Text Society 1887, p.154. ² *vū-pasamissāmi*. Vin-a.879, 'I will not make a quarrel.' ³ *parimocessāmi*; "telling of my innocence I will free myself," Vin-a.879.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 79

Bu-Pc.79.1.1
BD.3.58

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having indulged in bad habits, protested when a (formal) act¹ was being carried out² against each one. Now at that time the Order came to be convened on some business or other. The group of six monks, making robes, gave (their) consent³ to one. Then the Order, saying:

“Your reverences, this monk of the sixfold group is come alone; come, let us carry out a (formal) act against him,” carried out a (formal) act against him. Then that monk approached the group of six monks. The group of six monks spoke thus to that monk: “What did the Order do, your reverence?”

“The Order carried out a (formal) act against me, your reverences.”

“Your reverence, we did not give the consent for this, that it would carry out a (formal) act against you. If we had known that it would carry out a (formal) act against you, we should not have given the consent.”

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the group of six monks, having given (their) consent for legitimate (formal)

BD.3.59

¹ *kamma*. Cf. Vin.1.49, Vin.1.143, Vin.1.316f., etc.; Vin.2.93, and Bu-Pc.63. ² Cf. Vin.1.115, where leave is given to protest if an act that is not legally valid is being performed; also Vin.2.93, and Vinaya Texts iii.46. ³ *chandaṃ adaṃsu*. Cf. below, BD.3.61. *Chanda* here, as in other parts of Vinaya, used in a technical sense. It is the declaration of consent of an absentee member; he sends his consent by proxy. The rules of *chanda* are given at Vin.1.121, Vin.1.122; every member of an *āvāsa* had to attend the performance of (official) acts either in person or by proxy. See also Vin.2.93; Vinaya Texts i.277, n.1, and S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.126, p.146.

acts,¹ afterwards engage in criticism?"² ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having given (your) consent for legitimate (formal) acts, afterwards engage in criticism?"

Vin.4.152

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, having given (your) consent ... afterwards engage in criticism? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk, having given (his) consent for legitimate (formal) acts, should afterwards engage in criticism, there is an offence of expiation."³

Bu-Pc.79.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Legitimate (formal) act means: a (formal) act for which leave ought to be asked,⁴ a (formal) act at which a motion is put,⁵ a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by one proclamation,⁶ a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by three proclamations⁷; carried out according to rule, according to discipline, according to the teacher's instruction,⁸ this is called a legitimate (formal) act.

BD.3.60

¹ *dhammika kamma*. Explained in Old Commentary below. Cf. *dhammakamma* at e.g. Vin.3.174, Vin.3.177, Vin.3.179. ² *khīyadhammaṃ āpajjati*, literally attained the point of humiliation, devaluation. Cf. same expression at Bu-Pc.81, Bi-Pc.76; AN.iii.269, AN.iv.374. At Bu-Pc.13 it is an offence if a monk criticises, *khīyati*, and this offence is called *khīyanaka*, see Vin.4.38. In Bu-Pc.79 *khīyadhammaṃ āpajjati* may have a quite technical meaning of "falling into the rule against criticism"—*dhamma* in Vinaya often meaning a rule, *āpajjati* being the word used for falling into an offence, and *khīya* being devaluation, falling away from, deterioration, and hence criticism. But I think that it means "incline to criticism" or engage in it, for in Vinaya an offence does not usually arise from committing another offence: offences lead to penalties, not to other offences. ³ Referred to at Vin.2.94ff. ⁴ *apalokana-kamma*. See commentarial exegesis on Vin.2.89 at *Vinaya Texts* iii.37. ⁵ *ñattikamma*. On this and the next two terms see *Vinaya Texts* i.169, n.2. ⁶ = *ñattidutiya-kamma*. Cases where this is carried out not according to the rule given at Vin.1.317. ⁷ *ñatticatutthakamma*. See Vin.1.317. At Vin.2.89 these four acts comprise legal questions arising out of obligations, *kiccādhikaraṇa*. Cf. MN-a.4.43. See also Vin.2.90, Vin.2.91ff., Vin.5.116, Vin.5.167, Vin.5.220. Vin-a.879 refers to these as four *saṅghakammas*, (formal) acts of the Order. ⁸ At Vin.4.126 these last three phrases occur as definition of *yathādhammaṃ*, according to the rule. See DN.ii.124ff.; AN.ii.168.

Having given (his) consent, if he criticises,¹ there is an offence of expiation.²

Bu-Pc.79.2.2

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act³ when it is a legally valid act (and), having given (his) consent, criticises, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act ... no offence. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.79.2.3

There is no offence if he criticises, knowing, “The (formal) act was carried out according to what is not the rule or by an incomplete assembly or against one not suitable for a (formal) act”⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Ninth

¹ *khīyali*. Cf. Vin.2.94, Vin.4.38. ² Vin-a.879, “for each sentence.” ³ *dharmakamma*.

⁴ Cf. Vin.4.37, Vin.4.126, and below, BD.3.63.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 80

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the Order came to be convened on some business or other. The group of six monks, making robes, gave (their) consent to one.¹ Then the Order, thinking, "We will carry out that (formal) act for the sake of which we were convened," set aside the motion. Then that monk, thinking, "Even thus do they carry out a (formal) act against each one; against whom do you carry out the (formal) act?" not having given the consent, rising up from his seat, departed. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pc.80.1.1
BD.3.61

"How can this monk, when the Order is engaged in decisive talk,² not having given the consent, rising up from his seat, depart?" ...

Vin.4.153

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, when the Order was engaged in decisive talk, not having given the consent, rising up from your seat, departed?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying: "How can you, foolish man, when the Order is engaged in decisive talk, not having given the consent, rising up from your seat, depart? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk, when the Order is engaged in decisive talk, not having given the consent, rising up from his seat, should depart, there is an offence of expiation."

Bu-Pc.80.2.1
BD.3.62

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.79. ² *vinicchayakathā*. See Old Commentary below, and cf. Vism.16, translated *Path of Purity*, i.20 "deciding discourse." Translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.52 "(formal) enquiry."

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

When the Order is engaged in decisive talk means: a matter is announced (but) not decided, or a motion is set aside, or a resolution is unfinished.¹

Not having given the consent, rising up from his seat, should depart means: if he goes away, thinking, “Why should it not carry out this (formal) act (although) it may be quashed,² (although) it may be incomplete?”³ there is an offence of wrong-doing. In leaving (the space of) a reach of the hand⁴ from the assembly, there is an offence of wrong-doing. When he has left, there is an offence of expiation.⁵

Bu-Pc.80.2.2

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act⁶ (and) not having given the consent, rising up from his seat, departs, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act ... no offence. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.80.2.3

BD.3.63

There is no offence if he goes away, thinking: “There will come to be quarrel or dispute or strife or contention for the Order”; if he goes away, thinking: “There will come to be schism in the Order or dissension in the Order”; if he goes away, thinking: “He will carry out the (formal) act according to what is not rule, or by an incomplete congregation, or against one not suitable for a (formal) act”⁷; if, being ill, he goes away; if he goes away because there is something to be done for one who is ill; if he goes away to relieve himself;* if anxious not to find fault with the (formal) act,⁸

¹ *vippakala*. Cf. Vin.2.243 = Vinaya Texts iii.310 “going on”; Vin.2.304 = Vinaya Texts iii.405 “unfinished”; AN.ii.196 = GS.2.208 “broken off” and “interrupted.” ² *kuppa*. Cf. *kammaṇa kuppena* at Vin.2.71 and *kammaṇa akuppena* at Vin.2.68, Vin.2.71. ³ Cf. Vin.1.315ff. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.200, Vin.4.47; Vin-a.783. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.93. ⁶ Cf. Vin.3.174, Vin.3.177, Vin.3.179, Vin.3.186; Vin.4.126, Vin.4.152. ⁷ Cf. Vin.4.37, Vin.4.126, Vin.4.152. ⁸ *na kammaṇi kopetukāmo*.

he goes away, thinking: "I will come back again"; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Tenth

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 81

Bu-Pc.81.1.1
BD.3.64

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time the venerable Dabba the Mallian assigned lodgings to the Order and distributed meals.¹ And the venerable one's robe became worn thin. Now at that time one robe accrued to the Order. Then the Order gave this robe to the venerable Dabba the Mallian. The group of six monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "The monks are appropriating a benefit belonging to the Order² according to acquaintanceship."³

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks, having given away a robe by means of a complete Order,⁴ afterwards engage in criticism?"⁵ ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having given away a robe ... afterwards engaged in criticism?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, having given away a robe ... afterwards engage in criticism? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.65

"Whatever monk, having given away a robe by means of a complete Order, should afterwards engage in criticism, saying: "The monks are

¹ Cf. Bu-Ss.8, Vin.3.158 (BD.1.271-272), and Bu-Pc.13, Vin.4.37 (BD.2.235). ² Cf. Vin.3.265.

³ *yathāsantataṃ*, Variant reading *-saṅhatam*, explained below in Old Commentary, as *yathāmittatā*... Cf. Bu-Pc.13 where Dabba is accused of acting out of favouritism. ⁴ *samaggena saṅghena*. All members of any particular Order—i.e. that part of the Order staying in a certain residence, *āvāsa*, or within a certain boundary, *simā*, had to be present for the proper carrying out of all official proceedings. See Old Commentary below. Cf. Bu-Pc.21, especially Vin.4.52. ⁵ Cf. Bu-Pc.79.

appropriating a benefit belonging to the Order according to acquaintanceship," there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Complete Order means: belonging to the same communion,¹ staying within the same boundary.²

A robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.³

According to acquaintanceship means: according to friendship,⁴ according to comradeship,⁵ according to intimacy,⁶ according as one has the same preceptor, according as one has the same teacher.⁷

Belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to (it).⁸

A benefit means: the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick, and even a lump of chunam and a toothpick and unwoven thread.⁹

Should afterwards engage in criticism means: if he criticises when a robe is given to one who is ordained (and) agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings or as distributor of meals or as apportioner of conjei or as apportioner of fruit or as apportioner of solid food or as disposer of trifles,¹⁰ there is an offence of expiation.

If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act, (and) criticises when a robe is given, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act ... offence of expiation. If he criticises when another requisite is given, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he

¹ *samānasamvāsaka*. Cf. definition of *samvāsa*, communion, in each Defeat, **BD.1**. ² *samānasimāyam ṭhito*. These two expressions occur in same definition at **BD.3.170**, **BD.3.193** below, and **Vin.3.173**, also at **Vin.1.321**. See note at *Vinaya Texts* ii.209, *Vinaya Texts* ii.271. That the two terms are not necessarily coincident is shown at **Vin.1.340**. See also S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.132. ³ = **BD.2.7**, **BD.2.40**, **BD.2.48**, **BD.2.140**. ⁴ *yathāmittatā*. ⁵ *yathāsandiṭṭhatā*. *Sandiṭṭha* is a friend, one seen together with (you). ⁶ *Yathāsambhatatā*. Cf. **DN.ii.98**. ⁷ Cf. **Vin.4.178**. ⁸ = **Vin.3.266**. ⁹ = **Vin.3.266**. Cf. **Vin.3.241**, **Vin.3.260**. ¹⁰ Cf. **Vin.4.38** (= **BD.2.236**) and note for references.

criticises when a robe or another requisite is given to one ordained, (but) not agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings ... as disposer of trifles, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he criticises when a robe or another requisite is given to one who is not ordained, (whether) agreed upon or not agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings ... as disposer of trifles, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is no offence.¹

Bu-Pc.81.2.3

There is no offence if he criticises, saying: 'What is the use of giving to one acting by nature from desire, from hatred, from confusion, from fear? For having received it, he will ruin it, he will not look after² it properly if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.'³

*The Eleventh*⁴

¹ Cf. Vin.4.39. ² *upanessati; upaneti*, to bring up to, to conduce, to adduce; to present, give.

³ Cf. Vin.4.39 (BD.2.237), and see n.2. ⁴ See notes end of Bu-Pc.80.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 82

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery.¹ Now at that time at Sāvattthī food with robe-material was prepared for the Order by a certain guild, saying: "Having offered food, we will present them with robe-material." Then the group of six monks approached that guild, and having approached, they said to that guild: "Sirs, give these robes to these monks."

Bu-Pc.82.1.1
BD.3.67

"Honoured sirs, we will not give; almsfood with robes are made ready by us every year for the Order."

"Sirs, many are the Order's benefactors, many are the Order's devotees. These (monks) are here depending on you, looking to you, but if you will not give to them, then who is there who will give to them? Sirs, give these robes to these monks."

Vin.4.156

Then that guild, being pressed by the group of six monks, giving the group of six monks as much robe-material as was prepared, served the Order with a meal. Those monks who knew that robe-material with a meal² was prepared for the Order and did not know that it was given to the group of six monks, spoke thus:

"Sirs, dedicate robe-material to the Order."

"Honoured sirs, there is none; the masters, the group of six monks appropriated to the masters, the group of six monks, as much robe-material as was prepared."

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the group of six monks knowingly appropriate to an individual an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order?" ...

BD.3.68

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.30. There the offence, however, is procuring something for oneself. See BD.2.160ff. for notes. ² *sacīvarabhadda*; at Vin.iii265 *cīvarabhadda*.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, knowingly appropriated to an individual an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, knowingly appropriate to an individual an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should knowingly appropriate to an individual an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bu-Pc.82.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

He knows means: either he knows by himself or others tell him or (someone) tells him.

Belonging to the Order means: it comes to be given to the Order, handed over to it.

A benefit means: the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick, and even a lump of chunam and a toothpick and unwoven thread.

Apportioned means: if it has been expressly said: “We will give, we will make,” (and) he appropriates it to an individual, there is an offence of expiation.

Bu-Pc.82.2.2

If¹ he thinks that it is apportioned when it is apportioned (and) appropriates it to an individual, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is apportioned (and) appropriates it to an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not apportioned when it is apportioned (and) appropriates it to an individual, there is no offence. If he appropriates what is apportioned to the Order for another (part of the) Order or for a shrine, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he appropriates what is apportioned to a shrine for another shrine or for

BD.3.69

¹ Just before this passage Bu-NP:30 has the usual directions as to forfeiture, omitted of necessity here.

the Order or for an individual, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he appropriates what is apportioned to an individual for another individual or for an Order or for a shrine, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is apportioned when it is not apportioned, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not apportioned, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not apportioned when it is not apportioned, there is no offence.

Vin.4.157

There is no offence if he himself being asked, 'Where do we give?' says, 'Give wherever your gift could be used or could be mended or should be for a long time or when for you the mind is peaceful;' if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.82.2.3

The Twelfth

THIS IS ITS KEY

Regarding a rule, and disparagement,
causing confusion, striking a blow,¹
The palm of the hand, and unfounded,
intentionally, and overhearing,
And preventing and consent,² and on Dabba, appropriating.

The Eighth Division: that on regarding a rule

¹ *pahāraṃ*. ² *paṭibāhanachandañ ca*. *Paṭibāhana* does not occur in Bu-Pc.79 or Bu-Pc.80. But in Bu-Pc.79 it may be inferred that the group of six monks would have prevented one of their number from going to the Order, had they known that it was going to carry out a formal act against him; and in Bu-Pc.80 a monk prevented a formal act from being carried out by withholding his consent. It is necessary for the compound, *paṭibāhana-chanda*, to refer to *two* rules, in order to bring the headings in the "key" up to twelve, which is the number contained in this Division.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 83

Bu-Pc.83.1.1
BD.3.70

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala enjoined the keeper of the pleasure ground, saying: "Good sir,¹ go along, clear the pleasure ground, we will go to the pleasure ground."

"Very well, sire," and the keeper of the pleasure ground, having answered King Pasenadi of Kosala, clearing the pleasure ground, saw the lord sitting at the foot of a certain tree, and seeing him, he approached King Pasenadi of Kosala, and having approached he spoke thus to King Pasenadi of Kosala:

"Sire, the pleasure ground is cleared, but the lord is sitting there."

"Good sir, let him be, we will pay homage to the lord."² Then King Pasenadi of Kosala, having gone to the pleasure ground, approached the lord. Now at that time a certain lay follower was sitting down paying homage to the lord. King Pasenadi of Kosala saw that lay follower sitting down paying homage to the lord; seeing him he stood, afraid. Then it occurred to King Pasenadi of Kosala: "This man cannot be depraved,³ inasmuch as he is paying homage to the lord," (and) he approached the lord; having approached, having greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Then that lay follower, out of respect for the lord, neither greeted nor stood up for King Pasenadi of Kosala. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala became displeased, saying: "How can this man, when I come neither greet (me) nor stand up?"

Then the lord, knowing that King Pasenadi of Kosala was displeased,

¹ *bhaṇe*. Literally: 'I say,' being according to *Pali-English Dictionary* originally 1st singular, present medium of *bhaṇati*, used as an interjection of emphasis, usually from kings to subjects. Cf. [Vin.1.240](#), [Vin.1.241](#), [Mi.21](#). Translated *Vinaya Texts* ii.122, *Vinaya Texts* ii.123 "good sir," and *Quest. King Milinda* i.34, "my good men." ² *payirupāsati*. Also meaning "to visit," to pay a call on; cf. [MN.ii.65](#); [Vin.4.98](#). ³ *nārahat' āyaṃ puriso pāpo hotuṃ*.

Vin.4.158
BD.3.71

spoke thus to King Pasenadi of Kosala: "Sire, this lay follower is very learned, he is one to whom the tradition has been handed down,¹ he is devoid of passion in respect of sense-pleasures."

Then it occurred to King Pasenadi of Kosala: "This lay follower cannot be inferior, for the lord speaks praise of him," and he said to this lay follower: "You may say, lay follower, what will be of use."²

"Very well, sire."

Then the lord ... delighted King Pasenadi of Kosala with talk on *dhamma*. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala having been ... delighted by the lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising up from his seat, having greeted the lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Now at that time King Pasenadi of Kosala came to be on the upper storey of the palace.³ Then King Pasenadi of Kosala saw this lay follower going along the road, a sunshade in his hand; seeing him, having had him summoned, he spoke thus: "They say that you, lay follower, are very learned, one to whom the tradition has been handed down; it would be well, lay follower, that you should teach *dhamma* in our women's apartments."⁴

BD.3.72

"Sire, what I know is owing to the masters,⁵ only the masters shall teach *dhamma* in the women's apartments of the king."

Then King Pasenadi of Kosala, thinking: "What the lay follower says is true," approached the lord; having approached, having greeted the lord, he

Bu-Pc.83.1.2

¹ *āgatāgama*. Cf. **Vin.1.119** (translated *Vinaya Texts* i.272, "who has studied the *āgamas* (i.e., the collections of suttas)"; **Vin.1.127**; **Vin.2.8** (translated *Vinaya Texts* ii.345 "a man to whom the Nikāyas had been handed down"); AN.i.117 (GS.1.101 "versed in the Sayings"); AN.ii.147 (translated GS.2.151–GS.2.152 "versed in the doctrines," with note that the *āgama*, what one goes by, is canonical 'scripture,' and that in Ceylon the word is used today for the 'Buddhist religion'); AN.iii.179 (GS.3.134 "to whom the traditional lore has come down"); cf. *āgama* at **Vin.2.249**. See E.J. THOMAS, *History of Buddhist Thought*, p.157, p.266. That the Nikāyas came to be called (and in Sanskrit) *āgamas* (see WINTERNITZ, *History of Indian Literature* 2.234) seems indisputable; but in *Vinaya*, *āgama* may not have stood for the Nikāyas themselves, so much as for the material out of which they later came to be compiled. ² *yena attho*. Same expression at **Vin.3.132** = **BD.1.222**, and **Vin.3.210** = **BD.2.43**. ³ *uparipāsāḍavaragato hoti*; cf. **Vin.4.112**. ⁴ = **Vin.1.72**. Here the word is *itthāgāra*; at **Vin.3.250** it is *antepura*. ⁵ *ayyānaṃ vāhasā*.

sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Pasenadi of Kosala spoke thus to the lord:

“It were well, lord, if the lord were to enjoin one monk who should teach *dhamma* in our women’s apartments.”

Then the lord ... delighted King Pasenadi of Kosala with talk on *dhamma* ... he departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Well now, Ānanda, do teach *dhamma* in the King’s women’s apartments.”

“Very well, lord,” and the venerable Ānanda having answered the lord, having gone in from time to time, spoke *dhamma* in the King’s women’s apartments. Then the venerable Ānanda, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of King Pasenadi of Kosala. Now at that time King Pasenadi of Kosala was in bed with Queen Mallikā. Queen Mallikā saw the venerable Ānanda approaching from afar, and seeing him she got up hastily; her garments, burnished cloth of gold, slipped down. Then the venerable Ānanda, having turned back again from there, having gone to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Ānanda, not announced beforehand,¹ enter the King’s women’s apartments?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Ānanda, not announced beforehand, entered the King’s women’s apartments?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, Ānanda, not announced beforehand, enter the King’s women’s apartments? It is not, Ānanda, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, there are these ten dangers of entering a king’s women’s quarters.² What are the ten?”

¹ *pubbe appaṭisaṃvidita*; cf. Vin.4.182; SN.ii.54; AN.iii.59. ² Here the word is *antepura*. This passage = AN.v.81ff.

1. "Here, monks, the king is seated together with the chief consort; a monk enters there; either the chief consort, having seen the monk, smiles, or the monk, having seen the chief consort, smiles; then it occurs to the king: 'Surely it is done by these, or they will do it.'¹ This, monks, is the first danger of entering a king's women's quarters.
2. "And again, monks, a king is very busy, with much to be done; having gone to a certain woman, he does not remember; she on account of this, conceives (a child); then it occurs to the king: 'No one enters here except one who has gone forth; now can this be the deed of one who has gone forth?' This, monks, is the second danger of entering a king's women's quarters.
3. "And again, monks, some jewel disappears in a king's women's quarters. Then it occurs to the king; 'No one else enters here except one who has gone forth; now can this be the deed of one who has gone forth?' This, monks, is the third danger ...
4. "And again, monks, the secret plans within a king's women's quarters by being divulged abroad are spoiled.² Then it occurs to the king: 'No one else enters here except one who has gone forth; now can this be the deed of one who has gone forth?' This, monks, is the fourth danger ...
5. "And again, monks, in a king's women's apartments either a son asks for³ (his) father, or a father asks for (his) son; it occurs to these: 'No one else enters here except one who has gone forth; now can this be the deed of one who has gone forth?' This, monks, is the fifth danger ...
6. "And again, monks, a king establishes in a high place one having a lowly position; it occurs to those to whom this is unpleasing: 'The king is associating with one who has gone forth; now can this be the deed of one who has gone forth?' This, monks, is the sixth danger ...

BD.3.74

¹ GS.5.57: "Surely these two are guilty or will be guilty." ² *antepure abbhantarā guyhamantā bahiddhā saṁbhedaṁ gacchanti*. I follow WOODWARD at GS.5.58, p.5. with his note. ³ *pattheti*. Vin-a.880 says *antaraṁ passivā ghātetum icchati*, (looking) inside he wants to kill him, while AN-a on AN.v.81 has *māretuṁ icchati* (longs to kill). WOODWARD, GS.5.58, n.3, suggests that this refers 'to the uncertainty of parentage in a royal harem,' the one gone forth being 'suspected of causing the confusion.'

- Vin.4.160
7. “And again, monks, a king establishes in a lowly place one having a high position; it occurs to those ... This, monks, is the seventh danger ...
8. “And again, monks, the king sends out the army at the wrong time. It occurs to those ... This, monks, is the eighth danger ...
9. “And again, monks, a king, having sent out the army at the right time, makes it turn back from the highroad; it occurs to those ... This, monks, is the ninth danger ...
10. “And again, monks, when a king’s women’s quarters are crowded¹ with elephants, crowded with horses, crowded with chariots, there are forms, sounds, scents, tastes, tangible objects for causing delight, which are not suitable for one who has gone forth. This, monks, is the tenth danger of entering a king’s women’s quarters.

BD.3.75

Monks, these are the ten dangers of entering a king’s women’s quarters.” Thus the lord, in many a figure having rebuked the venerable Ānanda on his difficulty in maintaining himself ... “... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, not announced beforehand, should cross the threshold of an anointed king of noble class² from which the king has not departed, from which the queen has not withdrawn,³ there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.83.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Noble class means: of pure birth on both the mother’s side and the father’s side back through seven generations, not open to criticism,⁴ un-

¹ *sammadda*. AN.v.83 reads *sammadda*, drowsiness. As WOODWARD points out, it should be *sammadda*, which occurs in the variant readings. Cf. *sammaddanta* at Vin.1.137. ² *rañño khattiyassa muddhāvasittassa*. Cf. *khattiyō muddhāvasitto* at DN.i.69 (translated *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.79, “a sovereign, duly crowned”); DN.iii.6of., DN.iii.69; AN.i.106, AN.ii.207ff. (*rājā vā hoti khattiyō muddhāvasitto brāhmaṇo vā mahāsālo*); AN.iii.151 (GS.3.116 “a warrior rajah, anointed of head”); AN.iii.299; MN.i.82, MN.i.231, MN.i.343, MN.ii.152, MN.ii.183, MN.iii.132, MN.iii.172. Rulers, chieftains were of the *khattiya* class. *Rājas* are called *khattiyas* at Dh.294. ³ *anikkhantarājake aniggataratanake*. See *Critical Pali Dictionary* under these headings, and *Vinaya Texts* i.52, note.; Vin-a.881 says *ratanam vuccati mahesī*, the chief consort is called a jewel. ⁴ *akkhitta*.

blemished in point of birth.¹

Anointed means: he becomes anointed in accordance with the consecration of a noble.²

From which the king has not departed means: the king has not departed from the sleeping-room.³

From which the queen has not withdrawn means: the chief consort has not departed from the sleeping-room; or neither has departed.

Not announced beforehand means: without having announced oneself beforehand.⁴

Threshold⁵ means: it is called the threshold⁶ of the sleeping-room.

BD.3.76

Sleeping-room⁷ means: there wherever the king's bed is made ready, even if it is only surrounded by a screen-wall.⁸

Should cross the threshold means: if he makes the first foot cross the threshold, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he makes the second foot cross, there is an offence of expiation.⁹

If he thinks that he is not announced when he is not announced, (and) crosses the threshold, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether he is not announced ... If he thinks that he is announced when he is not announced ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that he is not announced when he is announced, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether he is announced, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that he is announced when he is announced, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.83.2.2

Vin.4.161

There is no offence if he is announced; if he is not of noble class; if he is not anointed in accordance with the consecration of a noble; if the king has departed from the sleeping-room, if the chief consort has departed from the

Bu-Pc.83.2.3

¹ = AN.iii.151; cf., e.g., DN.i.113; Snp.p.115; AN.iii.223, AN.iii.228 (often said of a brahmin).

² *muddhāvasitto nāma khattiyābhisekena abhisitto hoti*. Cf. AN.i.107, referring to a *khattiya*; AN.ii.87, MN-a.3.12. ³ *sayanighara*. Cf. BD.2.354=Vin.4.94. ⁴ *anāmantetvā*. Cf. Ja.6.475: *anāmantā pavisati pubbe appaṭivedito*. ⁵ *indakhīla*. Cf. Vin.3.46=BD.1.74. ⁶ *um-māra*. Cf. Vin.4.100. ⁷ N.B.—Either this word should have appeared in the *Sikkhāpada*, or the commentator is here defining a word used in the definition of 'threshold.'

⁸ *sāṇipākāraparikkhitta*. ⁹ =Vin.4.100.

sleeping-room, or if both have departed;¹ if it is not in the sleeping-room; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The First

¹ = Vin.4.95.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 84

Bu-Pc.84.1.1
BD.3.77

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain monk was bathing in the river Aciravatī. And a certain brahmin, having put down a purse of five hundred (pieces) on the dry ground, having forgotten it while bathing in the river Aciravatī, went away. Then that monk, thinking, "Do not let this purse of that brahmin be lost," took hold of it. Then that brahmin, having remembered, having run back quickly, spoke thus to that monk: "Good sir, did you not see my purse?" Saying, "Here (it is), brahmin," he gave it back (to him).

Then it occurred to that brahmin: "Now by what device can I not give¹ an ample reward² to this monk?" Saying, "Good sir, I did not have five hundred (pieces), I had a thousand (pieces)," having obstructed him, he set him free.³ Then that monk, having gone to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this monk pick up treasure?"⁴ ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, picked up treasure?"

"It is true, lord," he said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, pick up treasure? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should pick up or should cause (another) to pick up treasure or what is considered as⁵ treasure, there is an offence of expia-

¹ Cf. Vin.4.112. ² *puṇṇapatta*, literally a full bowl; cf. Ja.3.535. ³ Cf. Vin.4.131. ⁴ *ratana*.

⁵ *ratanasammata*. *Sammata* is the word used for "agreed upon" by the monks.

tion.”¹

BD.3.78

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.84.2.1

Now at that time there came to be a festival in Sāvattthī. People, having adorned themselves with ornaments,² went to the pleasure ground. Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, thinking: “Having adorned myself with ornaments, I will go to the pleasure ground,” having departed from the village, thinking: “Having gone to the pleasure ground, what shall I do? What now if I should pay homage³ to the lord?” having taken off the jewelry, having tied it up into a bundle with an upper robe,⁴ she gave it to a slave-woman, saying: “Come along, take this bundle.” Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, approached the lord; having approached, having greeted the lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, the lord gladdened ... delighted Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, with talk on *dhamma*. Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, gladdened ... delighted by the lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising up from her seat, having greeted the lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the slave-woman, having forgotten that bundle, went away. A monk, having seen it, told this matter to the lord. He said:

Vin.4.162

“Well then, monk, having picked it up, lay it aside.” Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, having picked up or having caused (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure that is within a monastery, to lay it aside, thinking, ‘It will be for him who will take it.’⁵ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should pick up or should cause (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure, except within a monastery, there is an offence of expiation.”

BD.3.79

¹ The monk seems to have been hoodwinked by the brahmin into believing that he took some of the contents of the purse. He only took up the purse temporarily and with no intention of stealing it, and it is not said that he looked at the contents; none of these aspects is considered here. ² Cf. Vin.4.18. ³ Cf. Vin.4.98, Vin.4.157. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.208. ⁵ = Vin.3.239.

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time in the Kāsi country there came to be a village in which there was business¹ for the householder, Anāthapiṇḍika, so that an inmate² came to be enjoined by the householder, saying: "If the revered sirs come, you should make a meal (for them)." Now at that time several monks, walking on alms-tour in the Kāsi country, came up to the village in which there was business for the householder, Anāthapiṇḍika. That man saw these monks coming from afar, and seeing them, he approached these monks; having approached, having greeted these monks, he spoke thus:

"Honoured sirs, let the masters consent to the householder's meal for tomorrow." The monks consented by becoming silent. Then that man, at the end of that night, having had sumptuous solid foods and soft foods prepared, having had the time announced, having taken off a finger-ring,³ having served these monies with the meal, said: "Having eaten, let the masters go away, and I will go back to business," and having forgotten the finger-ring, he went away. The monks, having seen it, saying: "If we go away, this finger-ring will be lost," sat still just there. Then that man, returning from business, having seen these monks, spoke thus :

"Honoured sirs, why are the masters sitting still just there?" Then these monks, having told this matter to that man, having arrived at Sāvathī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, having picked up or having caused (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure, that is within a monastery or within a house, to lay it aside, thinking, 'It will be for him who will take it.' And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should pick up or should cause (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure, except within a monastery or within a house, there is an offence of expiation. But if a monk, hav-

¹ *kammantaḡāma*. ² *antevāsin*. Vin-a.881 says *paricārako*, an attendant, servant. ³ Cf. Vin.2.106.

ing picked up or caused (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure, that is within a monastery or within a house, it should be laid aside, thinking, 'It will be for him who will take it.' This is the proper course here."

Bu-Pc.84.4.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Treasure means: pearl, crystal, lapis lazuli, mother-of-pearl, quartz, coral, gold, silver, ruby, cat's-eye.¹

What is considered as treasure means: that which is of profit, of use² to people, this is called what is considered as treasure.

Except within a monastery or within a house means: setting aside within a monastery, within a house. Within a monastery means: inside a monastery when the monastery is fenced in; the precincts when it is not fenced in.³ Within a house means: inside the house when a house is fenced in; the precincts when it is not fenced in.

Should pick up means: if he himself picks it up, there is an offence of expiation.

Should cause (someone) to pick up means: if he makes another pick it up, there is an offence of expiation.

BD.3.81

But if a monk, having picked up or having caused (someone) to pick up treasure ... it should be laid aside means: having made a mark⁴ by a form⁵ or by a sign,⁶ having laid it aside, it should be pointed out,⁷ saying: 'Let him come whose goods are lost.' If he comes there, it should be said to him, 'Sir, what are your goods like?' If he succeeds in obtaining⁸ them by the form or by the sign, they should be given (to him). If he does not

¹ Same list occurs at [Vin.2.238](#). Cf. also list of jewels at [Mi.267](#), and for notes see *Buddhist Suttas*, Sacred Books of the East XI, 2nd edition, p.249; also on *veḷuriya*, perhaps cat's-eye or beryl, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.82, n.1. ² *upabhogaparibhoga*. ³ =below, [BD.3.118](#) ⁴ *saññāṇaṃ katvā*, or perhaps "having made it recognisable"; cf. *cīvaraṃ saṃjānitvā*, at [Vin.4.120](#). ⁵ *rūpena*. [Vin-a.882](#) says: "Having freed the goods, having computed them, thinking, 'There are so many *kahāpaṇas* or there is gold and silver,' he should examine them." Cf. *rūpaṃ sikkhati* at [Vin.1.77](#), [Vin.4.129](#), perhaps some form of money-changing. ⁶ *nimitta*. [Vin-a.882](#), in explaining this, uses the word *lañchana*, stamp, impress, seal; the goods are stamped or sealed with clay or with lac. ⁷ I.e., to the owner if he comes, but if he (the monk) does not see the owner, he should do what is suitable; so [Vin-a.882](#). ⁸ *sampādeti*. Word occurs at [Vin.1.217](#), [Vin.2.214](#).

succeed in obtaining them, it should be said (to him), 'Examine them, sir.' In setting out from that residence he may set out, having deposited them in the hand(s) of those who there are suitable monks. But if the monks are not suitable, he may set out,¹ having deposited them in the hands of those who there are suitable householders.

Vin.4.164

This is the proper course here means: this is the appropriate course here.

There is no offence if, having picked up or having caused (someone) to pick up treasure or what is considered as treasure that is within a monastery or within a house, he lays it aside thinking: 'It will be for him who will take it'; if he takes on trust what is considered as a jewel; if he takes it for the time being; if he thinks it is rag-robber; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pc.84.4.2

The Second

¹ The idea seems to be that he should set out in search of the owner, having left the goods with some reliable persons.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 85

Bu-Pc.85.1.1
BD.3.82

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks having entered a village at the wrong time,¹ having sat down in a hall,² talked a variety of worldly talk,³ that is to say talk of kings, talk of thieves, talk of great ministers, talk of armies, talk of fears, talk of battles, talk of food, talk of drink, talk of clothes, talk of beds, talk of garlands, talk of scents, talk of relations, talk of vehicles, talk of villages, talk of little towns, talk of towns, talk of the country, talk of women,⁴ talk of strong drink,⁵ talk of streets,⁶ talk of wells, talk of those departed before,⁷

¹ *vikāle*, out of the (right) time—i.e., not in the hours when the alms-round was permissible. Cf. Bu-Pc.37. ² *sabhāya*. Cf. Vin.3.200. ³ *tiracchānakathā*, literally animal talk, that is worldly, low, childish talk, gossip. Cf. Vin.1.188; DN.i.7, DN.i.178, DN.iii.36; MN.i.513, MN.ii.1, MN.ii.23; SN.v.419; AN.v.128; and KS.v.355; *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.33; GS.5.86. There is a tendency at DN-a.89 to couple *gehasitakathā*, talk of worldly life, with *tiracchānakathā*.

⁴ On insertion of *purisakathaṃ* after *itthikathaṃ* in some of the manuscripts, see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.34, n.1. ⁵ *surākathaṃ* here. Vin.1.188; DN.i.8, D.1.179, DN.iii.36; MN.i.513, MN.ii.1, MN.ii.23 read *sūrākathaṃ*, talk of heroes, valiant men; DN-a.90 = MN-a.3.223 saying that Nandimitta, a warrior, was called a hero. Vin-a.882 says nothing. SN-a.iii.295 explains that there are two readings, *sūrak°* and *sūrak°*; by the latter is meant conducting to pleasure by drinking strong drinks. ⁶ *visikhākathaṃ*. Buddhaghosa at DN-a.90 takes this as talk about streets, whether they are well or badly situated, whether they contain brave people (*sūrā*), poor people, and so forth. Certainly “gossip at (or from) street corners” (*Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.13, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.34) could not be meant here. See KS.v.355, n.7. ⁷ *pubbapetakathaṃ*. *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.14, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.34 read “ghost-stories”; *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.363 “kinsfolk departed” (following DN-a, MN-a and SN-a, “talk on those who were formerly relations”).

talk of diversity,¹ speculation about the world,² speculation about the sea, talk on becoming and not becoming thus or thus.³ People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

BD.3.83

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having entered a village at the wrong time, having sat down in a hall, talk a variety of worldly talk, that is to say, talk of kings ... talk on becoming and not becoming thus or thus? It is like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, having entered a village at the wrong time, ... talk a variety of worldly talk, that is to say ... talk of becoming and not becoming thus or thus?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having entered a village at the wrong time ... talked a variety of worldly talk, that is to say ... talk of becoming and not becoming thus or thus?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, having entered a village at the wrong time, ... talk a variety of worldly talk, that is to say ... talk of becoming and not becoming thus or thus? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.84

Vin.4.165

¹ *nānattakathaṃ*. Translated at *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.14, *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.34; *GS.5.87*; *KS.v.356* “desultory talk”; *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.363, “and all the rest of it; *Vinaya Texts* ii.20 “various tales.” See *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.14, n.2. (*SN-a.iii.295* calls it *niratthakakathā*, useless, profitless talk, but also seems to think that it is talk on opposites: first, last; freed, something remaining. ² *lokakkhāyikaṃ samuddakkāyikaṃ*. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.14, n.3. The Commentaries refer to the *lokāyatas* (a school of theorists; see *Vinaya Texts* iii.151, n.2). *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.363 has “chatter about world and ocean”; *GS.5.87* “fables about (the origin of) land and sea”; *KS.v.356*. “fabulous talk about (the origin of) land and sea”; *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.34 “speculative talk on the world and the sea.” Word occurs at *Mi.316*, translated *Questions of King Milinda*, ii.187, “the physicists.”

³ *itibhavābhavakathaṃ iti vā*. *DN-a.91* says that *bhava* is growth (*vuddhi*), *abhava* loss or waste (*hāni*). *SN-a.iii.295* and *MN-a.3.223* make a sixfold division: *bhava* is eternal, *sassata*; *abhava* is annihilation or breaking up, *uccheda*; *bhava* is growth, *abhava* is loss; *bhava* is happiness arising from sense-pleasures, *abhava* is exhaustion of self. *Itibhavābhavatā* occurs at *Vin.2.184*; *Snp.6*.

“Whatever monk should enter a village at the wrong time, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.85.2.1

Now at that time several monks,¹ going to Sāvattthī through the Kosalan country, arrived at a certain village in the evening. People, having seen these monks, spoke thus: “Enter, honoured sirs.” Then these monks, thinking, “It is forbidden by the lord to enter a village at the wrong time,” being scrupulous, did not enter. Thieves robbed these monks. Then these monks, having arrived in Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, having asked (for permission),² to enter a village at the wrong time. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk, not having asked (for permission), should enter a village at the wrong time, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pc.85.3.1

Now at that time a certain monk, going to Sāvattthī through the Kosalan country, arrived at a certain village in the evening. People, having seen that monk, spoke thus: “Enter, honoured sir.” Then that monk, thinking, “It is forbidden by the lord to enter a village at the wrong time, not having asked (for permission),” being scrupulous, did not enter. Thieves robbed that monk. Then that monk, having arrived in Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed, the monks, saying:

BD.3.85

“I allow you, monks, having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, to enter a village at the wrong time. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

¹ *sambuhulā bhikkhū*. ² *āpucchā*. Cf. *āpucchā* and *anā°* at [Vin.4.39](#), [Vin.4.40](#), [Vin.4.100](#), [Vin.4.101](#).

“Whatever monk, not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, should enter a village at the wrong time, there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.166

Now at that time a certain monk came to be bitten by a snake. A certain monk, thinking: “I will bring fire,” went to a village. Then that monk, thinking, “It is forbidden by the lord, not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, to enter a village at the wrong time,” being scrupulous, did not enter. They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Bu-Pc.85.4.1

“I allow you, monks, if there is some kind of urgent thing to be done,¹ not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, to enter a village at the wrong time. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“**Whatever monk, not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, should enter a village at the wrong time, unless there is some kind of urgent thing to be done, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bu-Pc.85.5.1

Whatever means: monk is to be understood in this case.

If a monk be there means: he becomes able to enter having asked (for permission).²

If a monk be not there means: he does not become able to enter having asked (for permission).³

BD.3.86

The wrong time means: after noon has passed until sunrise.⁴

Should enter a village means: if he passes beyond the enclosure of a village that is fenced in, there is an offence of expiation; if he enters⁵ the precincts of a village that is not fenced in, there is an offence of expiation.⁶

Unless there is some kind of urgent thing to be done means: setting to one side some kind of urgent thing to be done.

Bu-Pc.85.5.2

¹ *tathārūpe accāyike karaṇīye*. Cf. Vin.3.260 = BD.2.151, note on *acceka-cīvara*. ² Cf. Vin.4.100.

³ Cf. Vin.4.100. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.86. ⁵ *okkamantassa*. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.307.

If he thinks that it is the wrong time when it is the wrong time (and) not having asked (for permission) if a monk be there, enters a village unless there is some kind of urgent thing to be done, there is an offence of expiation. If he is in doubt as to whether it is the wrong time ... If he thinks that it is the right time when it is the wrong time ... offence of expiation. If he thinks that it is the wrong time when it is the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is the right time when it is the right time, there is no offence.

Bu-Pc.85.5.3

There is no offence if there is some kind of urgent thing to be done; if a monk be there he enters having asked (for permission); if no monk being there he enters not having asked (for permission); if he is going into a village¹; if he is going to the nuns' quarters; if he is going to the sleeping-place of adherents of other sects; if he is going on his way back; if the way is through a village; if there are accidents; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.²

The Third

¹ *antarāgāmaṃ*. Vin.4.101 reads *antaraḡāmaṃ*; Vin-a.857, Vin-a.883, *antarārāmaṃ*, into a monastery. ² Cf. Vin.4.101 = BD.2.367.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 86

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery. Now at that time monks were invited by a certain ivory-worker, saying: "If the masters want a needle case,¹ I (can supply them) with a needle-case."² Then the monks asked for many needle-cases; they asked for large needle-cases for those who had small needle-cases, they asked for small needle-cases for those who had large needle-cases. Then that ivory-worker, making many needle-cases for the monks, was not able to make other goods for sale, and he did not keep himself going and his wife and children suffered. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation,³ ask for many needle-cases? This (man), making many needle-cases for these (monks), is not able to make other goods for sale ... and his wife and children suffer." Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can these monks, not knowing moderation, ask for many needle-cases? ...

Bu-Pc.86.1.1
BD.3.87

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks, not knowing moderation, asked for many needle-cases?" "It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, monks, not knowing moderation, ask for many needle-cases? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever monk should have a needle-case made that is made of bone

BD.3.88

¹ *sūcighara*. Cf. [Vin.4.123](#), where this is one of the articles that monks are forbidden to hide, even in fun. ² For the rest of this paragraph, cf. [Bu-NP.22](#), and where a potter, also of Kapilavatthu, used this expression in inviting monks to let him supply them with bowls.

³ Omitted above, probably owing to some scribe's error.

or made of ivory or made of horn, there is an offence of expiation involving breaking up.”¹

Bu-Pc.86.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Bone means: whatever is bone.

Ivory means: it is called elephant-ivory.²

Horn means: whatever is horn.

Should have made means: if he makes it or causes it to be made, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing: having broken it up on acquisition, an offence of expiation is to be confessed.

If what was incompletely executed by himself he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by himself, there is an offence of expiation. If what was incompletely executed by others he has finished by himself, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having acquired what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Vin.4.168

Bu-Pc.86.2.2

BD.3.89

There is no offence if it is a block,⁴ fire-wood,⁵ a buckle,⁶ a box for oint-

¹ *bhedanakam pācittiyam*. Cf. *nissaggiyam pācittiyam*. The remainder of the *Pācittiyas* involve some other form of punishment, *chedanaka* and *uddālanaka*, in addition to confession or expiation, *pācittiya*. ² *hatthidanta*, or elephant's tuBu-Sk. ³ Cf. *Vin.3.225*. ⁴ *gaṇṭhikā*. Allowed at *Vin.2.136* to prevent a robe from being blown up by the wind. Word occurs again at *Vin.1.46*, *Vin.2.215*; Ja.1.150. ⁵ *araṇika*. Vin-a.883, *araṇike ti araṇidhanuke*. *Critical Pali Dictionary* calls *araṇika* “a part of the fire-tool,” and refers to *araṇī*, “either of the two pieces of wood for making a fire.” *Araṇidhanuka* it calls a “bow for keeping the twirling-stick going.” ⁶ *vidha*. Vin-a.883 reads *vīṭhe*. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests “a little box” tentatively. Commentary does not help. Allowed at *Vin.2.136*; translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.143 “buckle.” with note that “the word occurs also, and apparently in the same sense, in the Old Commentary on the 86th *Pācittiya*.”

ment,¹ a stick to put the ointment on with,² the handle of an adze,³ a towel⁴; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fourth

¹ *añjanī*. Allowed at [Vin.1.203](#), but to be made of prescribed materials, and again at [Vin.2.135](#). Word occurs at [MN.ii.65](#); [Thag.773](#). [MN-a.3.303](#) reads *añjanālikā*, a tube (or box) for ointment; cf. [Thig-a.267](#). ² *añjanisalāka*. Allowed at [Vin.1.203](#), to be made of prescribed materials, and again at [Vin.2.135](#). ³ *vāsijaṭa*. Also at [AN.iv.127](#); [SN.iii.154](#). ⁴ *udakapuñchanī*. Allowed at [Vin.2.122](#).

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 87

Bu-Pc.87.1.1
BD.3.90

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, was lying down on a high couch. Then the lord, as he was touring the lodgings together with several monks, came up to the dwelling-place of the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. The venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, saw the lord coming from afar, and seeing him, he spoke thus to the lord: "Lord, let the lord come, let him lie down on my bed."

Then the lord, having turned back from there, addressed the monks, saying: "Monks, the foolish man should be spoken to about his abode."

Then the lord, having in many a figure rebuked the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, for his difficulty in maintaining himself ... "... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When a new couch or chair is being made for a monk,¹ the legs should be made eight finger-breadths² (high) according to the accepted finger-breadth,³ except for the knotted ends below.⁴ In exceeding this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down."⁵

Bu-Pc.87.2.1
BD.3.91

New means: it is so called with reference to the making.⁶

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.13; Vin.3.226. ² *aṅgula*. ³ *sugataṅgula*, *sugata* here meaning "standard," recognised, accepted, right. Cf. *sugata-vidatthi*, a span of the accepted measure, at Vin.3.149 (=BD.1.253f.); but also cf. *sugata-cīvara* at Vin.4.173 below. ⁴ *heṭṭhimāya aṭaniyā*. *Vinaya Texts* i.53 translates "exclusive of the lowermost piece of the bed-frame." But at Vin-a.773f., on Bu-Pc.14, the word *aṭani* occurs in description of the various kinds of couches and chairs, and seems to mean "knotted end." Cf. *Vinaya Texts* iii.164. ⁵ *chedanakam pācittiyam*.

⁶ = Vin.3.226 (BD.2.77); Vin.4.279.

Couch¹ means: there are four (kinds of) couch: a long one, one with slats, one with curved legs, one with removable legs.

Chair² means: there are four (kinds of) chair: a long one, one with slats, one with curved legs, one with removable legs.

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.³

The legs should be made eight finger-breadths (high) according to the accepted finger-breadth, except for the knotted ends below means: setting aside the knotted ends below. If he makes it or causes it to be made exceeding this (measure), in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; having cut it down on acquisition, an offence of expiation is to be confessed.

Vin.4.169

If what was incompletely executed by himself he has finished by himself ... (see Bu-Pc.86.2.1) ... If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation.⁴ If he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having acquired what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if he makes it to the (proper) measure; if he makes it less than the (proper) measure; if, having acquired what was made for another, (but) exceeding the (proper) measure, having cut it down, he makes use of it⁵; if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

Bu-Pc.87.2.2

The Fifth

¹ = Vin.4.40 (BD.2.240, and see notes). ² = Vin.4.40 (BD.2.240, and see notes).

³ = Vin.3.226 (BD.2.77); Vin.4.279. ⁴ Cf. Bu-NP.11-15. ⁵ = below, BD.3.96.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 88

Bu-Pc.88.1.1
BD.3.92

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks had a couch and a chair made covered with¹ cotton.² People, having seen (this) as they were touring the dwelling-places, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, have a couch and a chair made covered with cotton, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks have a couch and a chair made covered with cotton?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, had ... covered with cotton?” “It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, have a couch and a chair made covered with cotton? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should have a couch or a chair made covered with cotton, there is an offence of expiation involving tearing off.”³

Bu-Pc.88.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

BD.3.93

Couch⁴ means: there are four (kinds of) couch ...

¹ *onaddha*, or stuffed with, as at *Vinaya Texts* i.54. At *Vin.2.150* *onaddhamañca* and *onaddhapīṭha* allowed. *Vinaya Texts* iii.168 translates “chairs and bedsteads covered (and upholstered with, cushions to fit them).” See also *Vin.2.270*; *Dhp.146*. ² *tūla*. ³ *uddālanaka*, tearing off or out. ⁴ Cf. *Vin.4.40*, *Vin.4.168*.

Chair¹ means: there are four (kinds of) chair ... one with removable legs.

Vin.4.170

Cotton means: there are three (kinds of) cotton: cotton from trees, cotton from creepers, cotton from grass.²

Should have made means: if he makes (it) or causes it to be made, in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; having torn it off on acquisition, an offence of expiation is to be confessed.

If what was incompletely executed by himself he has finished by himself ... If he makes others finish what was incompletely finished by others, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having acquired what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bu-Pc.88.2.2

There is no offence if it is for a binding, for a girdle, for a shoulder-strap, for a bag for carrying the bowl in, for a water-strainer⁴; if he is making a squatting-mat⁵; if, having acquired what was made for another, having torn it off, he makes use of it; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Sixth

¹ Cf. Vin.4.40, Vin.4.168. ² These three kinds of cotton are allowed at Vin.2.150 for making *bimbohana*, squatting-mats. The last, *poṭaki-tūla* (at Vin.2.150 *poṭaki-*) is not “*tūlaṃ* from a young fowl,” as at *Vinaya Texts* i.54, n.1. *Poṭaki* is “in *tūla* a kind of cotton, ‘grass-tuft,’ thistledown (?),” so *Pali-English Dictionary* Cf. *Vinaya Texts* iii.167, “cotton produced from *Poṭaki*-grass.” ³ Cf. above, BD.3.88. ⁴ These five articles mentioned as not causing an offence at Vin.3.257; see BD.2.144. ⁵ The three kinds of cotton are allowed to be used in making a *bimbohana* (Vin.2.150).

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 89

Bu-Pc.89.1.1
BD.3.94

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a piece of cloth to sit upon¹ was allowed to monks by the lord.² The group of six monks, thinking: "A piece of cloth to sit upon is allowed by the lord," used pieces of cloth to sit upon that were not of a (proper) measure³; they made (these) hang down in front of and at the back of a couch and a chair. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks use pieces of cloth to sit upon that are not of a (proper) measure?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, use pieces of cloth to sit upon that are not of a (proper) measure?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, use pieces of cloth to sit upon that are not of a (proper) measure? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When a piece of cloth to sit upon is being made for a monk, it must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length two spans⁴ according to the accepted span,⁵ in breadth one and a half spans. In exceeding this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down."

BD.3.95

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.171

¹ *nisīdana*. See [BD.2.87, n.2](#). ² At [Vin.1.295](#), referred to by [Vin-a.884](#). Cf. [Bu-NP.15](#). At [Vin.1.297](#) *nisīdana* are allowed to be kept for oneself and not assigned to another. ³ *ap-pamāṇa*. They were evidently too big, and the right measure is laid down in the resulting *sikkhāpada*. ⁴ *vidatthi*. ⁵ *sugata-vidatthi*. Cf. [Bu-NP.15](#), and [BD.1.253](#).

Now at that time the venerable Udāyin became very fat.¹ He, having made ready a piece of cloth to sit upon before the lord, pulling it out² all round, sat down. Then the lord spoke thus to the venerable Udāyin:

“Why do you, Udāyin, pull out the piece of cloth to sit upon, just as if it were an old skin?”³

“It is because, lord, the piece of cloth to sit upon allowed by the lord is very small.”

Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, a border⁴ of a span for a piece of cloth to sit upon. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“When a piece of cloth to sit upon is being made for a monk, it must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length two spans according to the accepted span, in breadth one and a half spans, the border a span. In exceeding this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down.”

A piece of cloth to sit upon means: it is so-called if it has a border.⁵

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.

It must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here : in length ... the border a span means: if he makes it or causes it to be made having exceeded this (measure), in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; having cut it down on acquisition, an offence of expiation is to be confessed.⁶

¹ *mahākāya*, literally a “great body.” ² *samañcamāno*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “to bend together.” ³ *purāṇāsikoṭṭha*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “sheath” for *asi-koṭṭha*, and would therefore presumably read this passage, “Why do you bend together this piece of cloth, like an old sheath?” I take the commentarial explanation by *cammakāra* to refer to leather-worker; Vin-a.884 says that “as the-leather-worker says, ‘I will make this hide wide,’ and pulls it out (*samañchati*, with variant reading *samañchatichavirū*, a skin), tugs it out (*kaḍḍhati*) from here and there, so he (does) to that piece of cloth to sit upon.” The meaning is confused because *asi-camma* means “sword and shield” (Vin.2.192; AN.iii.93), and *kaḍḍhati* with *khagga* means “to draw the sword,” as at Ja.1.273. ⁴ *dasā*, border or fringe. ⁵ = Vin.3.232, Vin.4.123. See BD.2.87, BD.2.415. ⁶ = above, BD.3.91.

If what was incompletely executed by himself he has finished by himself¹ ... If he makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation. If he makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If having acquired what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bu-Pc.89.3.2

There is no offence if he makes it to the (proper) measure; if he makes it less than the (proper) measure; if having acquired what was made for another (but) exceeding the (proper) measure, having cut it down, he makes use of it;² if he makes a canopy or a ground-covering or a screen-wall or a mattress or a squatting-mat³; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Seventh

¹ See Bu-Pc.86.2.1, Bu-Pc.87.2.1, Bu-Pc.88.2.1; Bi-Pc.22. ² =above, BD.3.91. ³ Cf. Vin.3.225, Vin.3.227, Vin.3.229, Vin.3.233; Vin.4.171, and Vin.4.279, which =this paragraph.

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 90

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time an itch-cloth¹ was allowed to the monks by the lord. The group of six monks, thinking: "An itch-cloth is allowed by the lord," used itch-cloths that were not of a (proper) measure; they went about trailing (these) along² in front as well as behind.³ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks use itch-cloths that are not of a (proper) measure" ...

Bu-Pc.90.1.1
BD.3.97
Vin.4.172

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How can you, foolish men, use itch-cloths that are not of a (proper) measure? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"When an itch-cloth is being made for a monk, it must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length four spans of the accepted span, in breadth two spans. In exceeding this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down."

Itch-cloth means: it is for covering him who has itch⁴ or a small boil⁵ or a running sore⁶ or a thick scab disease⁷ from below the navel to above the knee.

Bu-Pc.90.2.1
BD.3.98

Is being made means: ... (see [Bu-Pc.89.3](#)) ...

¹ *kaṇḍupāṭicchādi*. Allowed at [Vin.1.296](#), referred to at [Vin-a.884](#). ² *ākaḍḍhantā*. Cf. *ākaḍḍhanā* at [Vin.3.121](#), *ākaḍḍhiyamānā* at [Vin.4.225](#), and *kaḍḍhati*, above, [BD.3.95, n.2](#). ³ Cf. below, [BD.3.99](#), [BD.3.235](#). ⁴ *kaṇḍū ti kacchu*, [Vin-a.884](#). *Kacchu* is a skin disease, itch, scab. ⁵ *piḷakā ti lohilutaṇḍikā sukhumapiḷakā*, [Vin-a.884](#). ⁶ *assāva*. ⁷ *thullakacchu vā ābādhō ti mahāpiḷakābadho vuccati*, [Vin-a.884](#); or a bad outbreak of large boils.

it should be made to a (proper) measure ... in breadth two spans (Bu-Pc.89.3)

...

... if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Eighth

MONKS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 91

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a cloth for the rains¹ was allowed to monks by the lord.² The group of six monks, thinking: "A cloth for the rains is allowed by the lord," wore cloths for the rains that were not of a (proper) measure; they went about trailing (these) along in front as well as behind.³ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: (see Bu-Pc.90.1) ... "... should be set forth:

"When a cloth for the rains is being made for a monk, it must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length six spans of the accepted span, in breadth two and a half spans.⁴ In exceeding this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down."

Bu-Pc.91.1.1
BD.3.99

Vin.4.173

Bu-Pc.91.2.1

Cloth for the rains means: it is for the four months of the rainy season.

Is being made means: ... *it must be made to a (proper) measure* ... if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Ninth

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.24; BD.2.134, n.1. ² Vin.1.294. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.97. ⁴ See *Vinaya Texts* ii.225, note.

MONKS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 92

Bu-Pc.92.1.1
BD.3.100

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the venerable Nanda,¹ the son of the lord's aunt, was beautiful, good to look upon, charming, four finger-breadths less (in height²) than the lord. He wore a robe the measure of a well-farer's robe.³ Monks who were elders saw the venerable Nanda coming from afar; seeing him, saying: "The lord is coming," they rose from their seats. These, recognising him when he had come, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"How can the venerable Nanda wear a robe the measure of a well-farer's robe?" They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord questioned the venerable Nanda, saying:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, Nanda, wore a robe the measure of a well-farer's robe?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, Nanda, wear a robe the measure of a well-farer's robe? It is not, Nanda, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus,

BD.3.101

¹ Chief of the disciples who guard the doors of the faculties, AN.i.25. At SN.ii.281 he put on robes that had been dressed (or pressed) on both sides, anointed his eyes, and taking a bright bowl, went up to Gotama. According to the Commentary he did this so as to evoke some comment from his cousin—either approval or censure. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* ii.11, n.6 suggests that perhaps above Vinaya story is another version of the Saṃyutta story. See also KS.ii.191, n.1. ² *caturaṅgulomaka*. Vin-a.885 says *catuhi aṅgulehi ūnakappamāṇo*, less as to measure (height) than four finger-breadths. ³ *sugata-cīvara-ppamāṇa*. Here *sugata* cannot mean, as it does in *sugata-vidatthi*, prescribed, accepted or standard span, or there would have been no offence in wearing such a robe. See *Vinaya Texts* i.54, n.3 for view that Gotama's robe was not specially large. But here Nanda is mistaken for Gotama, but perhaps only because he was nearly the same height. Buddhaghosa is silent. See [BD.3, Introduction, p.xviii](#).

monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should have a robe made the measure of a well-farer’s robe, or more, there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down. This is the (proper) measure here of a well-farer’s robe for a well-farer: in length nine spans of the accepted span, in breadth six spans; this is the (proper) measure of a well-farer’s robe for a well-farer.”

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Bu-Pc.92.2.1

Well-farer’s robe means: in length it is nine spans of the accepted span, in breadth six spans.

Should have made means: if he makes it or causes it to be made, in the business ... (see [Bu-Pc.89](#)) ... If, having acquired what was made for another, he makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if he makes it less; if having acquired what was made for another, having cut it clown, he makes use of it; if he makes a canopy ... or a squatting-mat; if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.¹

Bu-Pc.92.2.2

Vin.4.174

The Tenth rule of training: that on Nanda

The Ninth Division: that on treasure²

Concluded is the Minor (Class)³

THIS IS ITS KEY

And of a king, treasure, if he be there,
a needle, and a couch, on cotton,
And a piece of cloth to sit upon,
and the itch, for the rains, and on a well-farer.

Venerable ones, recited are the ninety-two rules for offences of expiation. Concerning them, I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are quite

BD.3.102

¹ Cf. [BD.3.96](#) above. ² Like the seventh Division, the title here is taken not from the first but from the second rule in the Division. ³ *khuddakaṃ samattaṃ*, a minor or lesser class of rules; cf. *khuddakaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ* at end of Nuns’ Pācittiyas.

pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The venerable ones are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent, thus do I understand this.

Vin.4.175

MONKS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 1

Bu-Pd.1.1.1
BD.3.103

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun, having walked for alms in Sāvattḥī, having seen a certain monk at the time of going back, spoke thus: "Come, master, accept alms."

"Very well, sister," and he took everything. She, at the approach of (meal)-time, was not able to walk for alms;¹ she became famished.² Then that nun on the second day ... on the third day, having walked for alms in Sāvattḥī, having seen that monk at the time of going back, spoke thus: "Come, master, accept alms" ... she became famished. Then that nun on the fourth day went trembling along a carriage road. A householder who was a merchant, coming along in a chariot the opposite way, spoke thus to the nun:

"Get out of the way, lady." She, turning aside, fell down just there. The householder who was a merchant apologised to that nun, saying:

"Forgive me, lady, that I was the cause of your fall."³

"I, householder, did not fall because of you, but I am simply very weak."

"But why, lady, are you very weak?" Then this nun told this matter to the householder who was a merchant. The householder who was a merchant, having taken this nun to his house, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

BD.3.104

"How can these revered sirs accept food from the hand of a nun? Women obtain things with difficulty."⁴ Monks heard this householder who was a merchant who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this monk accept food from the hand of a nun?"

¹ She could not go for alms again. ² Cf. Vin.4.70, Vin.4.93. ³ *māyāsi pātītā*, literally, that you were brought to fall by me. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.208.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, accepted food from the hand of a nun?”

Vin.4.176

“It is true, lord.”

“Was she a relation of yours, monk, or not a relation?”

“She was not a relation, lord.”

“Foolish man, one who is not a relation does not know what is suitable or what is unsuitable, or what is right or what is wrong for a woman who is not a relation. How can you, foolish man, accept food from the hand of a nun who is not a relation? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever monk should eat or partake of solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation (and) who has entered among the houses,¹ it should be confessed² by that monk, saying: ‘I have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter,³ unbecoming, which ought to be confessed⁴; I confess it.”

Bu-Pd.1.2.1

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

(Nun) who is not a relation means: one who is not related on the mother’s side or on the father’s side back through seven generations.

BD.3.105

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Among the houses means: a carriage road,⁵ a cul-de-sac,⁶ cross-roads,⁷ a house.

Solid food means: setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, and (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life,⁸ the rest means solid food.⁹

Soft food means: the five (kinds of) meals: cooked rice, food made with flour, barley-meal, fish, meat.

¹ *antaragharaṃ*. ² *paṭidesetabbaṃ*. ³ *dhamma*, thing, state, often rule in Vinaya.; here probably offence. ⁴ *pāṭidesaniya*. Cf. AN.ii.243 (*pāṭidesaniyaka dhamma*). ⁵ The first three of these occur again at Vin.4.270f. *Rathiyā*, carriage-road, there defined, and also at Vin-a.886, as *racchā*, a word which occurs at Vin.3.151. ⁶ *byūhaṃ*. Vin.4.271 says “they depart by that (way) by which they entered.” ⁷ *siṅghāṭakaṃ*. Vin.4.271 defines by *caccaraṃ*, cross-road, while Vin-a.886 says “three corners or four corners, the place where roads meet.” *Caccara* occurs at Vin.3.151. ⁸ Cf. Bu-Pc.35, Bu-Pc.36. ⁹ Cf. Vin.4.83 (BD.2.330).

If he says, "I will eat, I will partake of," (and) accepts, there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is an offence which ought to be confessed.

If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is not a relation, (and) having accepted with his own hand solid food or soft food from the hand of her who has entered among the houses, if he eats it or partakes of it, there is an offence which ought to be confessed. If he is in doubt as to whether she is not a relation ... If he thinks that she is a relation when she is not a relation ... offence which ought to be confessed. If he accepts¹ for the sake of nutriment (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he accepts solid food or soft food from the hand of one ordained by one (Order only), thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not a relation when she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is a relation, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is a relation when, she is a relation, there is no offence.

Bu-Pd.1.2.2

BD.3.106

There is no offence if she is a relation; if she² makes (another) give but does not (herself) give; if having put it down nearby, she gives³; if it is within a monastery⁴; if it is in the nuns' quarters⁵; if it is at the sleeping-place of members of other sects⁶; if it is on the way back⁷; if, having taken it back⁸ from the village, she gives; if, when there is a reason, she gives (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life⁹ and he makes use of it; if it is from a female probationer, a female novice; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pd.1.2.3

Vin.4.177

The First

¹ Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.84, Vin.4.86, Vin.4.87. ² Vin-a.886, someone who is not a relation.

³ Vin-a.886, if having put it on the ground, she says, 'I will give this to you, master.' ⁴ *antarārama*, not *ajjhārāma* as at Vin.4.161. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.101. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.101. ⁷ Cf. Vin.4.101.

⁸ Cf. Vin.4.81. ⁹ Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.85, Vin.4.86, Vin.4.87.

MONKS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 2

Bu-Pd.2.1.1
BD.3.107

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrel's feeding-place. Now at that time monks ate, invited by families. The group of six nuns came to be standing, giving directions for the group of six monks, saying: "Here give curry, give cooked rice here." The group of six monks ate as much as they pleased, other monks did not eat as much as expected. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this group of six monks, when the nuns are giving directions, not restrain¹ (them)?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, when nuns were giving directions, did not restrain (them)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How can you, foolish men ... not restrain (them)? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Now, monks eat, invited by families. If a nun comes to be standing as though giving directions,² saying: 'Here give curry, give cooked rice here,' that nun should be rebuked by those monks, saying: 'Stand aside,³ sister, while the monks eat.' But if it should not occur to a single monk to dismiss that nun, saying: 'Stand aside, sister, while the monks eat,' it should be confessed by those monks, saying: 'We have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; we confess it.'"

Bu-Pd.2.2.1

¹ *nivāreti*, to hold back, warn. ² *vosāsamānarūpā*. ³ *apasakka*.

Now monks eat, invited by families means: a family means there are four (kinds of) family: noble family, brahmin family, merchant family, low-class family.¹

BD.3.108

Eat, invited, means: they eat, invited to any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals.

Nun means: one ordained by both Orders.

Vin.4.178

Giving directions² means: if according to friendship, according to comradeship, according to intimacy, according as one has the same preceptor, according as one has the same teacher,³ she says: 'Here give curry, give cooked rice here,' this means giving directions.

By those monks means: by the monks who are eating.

That nun means: the nun who is giving directions.

That nun should be dismissed by those monks, saying: 'Stand aside, sister, while the monks eat.' But if she is not dismissed by a single monk (and) he accepts (food), saying: 'I will eat, I will partake of,' there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence which ought to be confessed.

If he thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) does not restrain her when she is giving directions, there is an offence which ought to be confessed. If he is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If he thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence which ought to be confessed. If he does not restrain one ordained by one (Order only) who is giving directions, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is no offence.

Bu-Pd.2.2.2

There is no offence if she makes (another) give her own meal, (but) does not (herself) give; if she gives a meal to others (but) does not make (them) give; if she makes (another) give what was not given; if she makes

Bu-Pd.2.2.3

¹ = Vin.3.184, Vin.4.80, Vin.4.272. ² *vosāsantī*. ³ = Vin.4.154.

BD.3.109 (another) give where it was not given; if she makes (another) give the same to everybody; if a female probationer gives directions; if a female novice gives directions; setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, there is no offence in (eating) any others¹; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Second

¹ = Vin.4.68, Vin.4.71, Vin.4.75, Vin.4.78.

MONKS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 3

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time there was in Sāvattḥī a certain family which on both sides came to be pleased,¹ it grew in faith, it decreased in wealth; whatever solid food or soft food accrued to that family before a meal, having given it all away to monks, sometimes they went without food.² People ... spread it about, saying:

Bu-Pd.3.1.1
BD.3.110

“How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation, accept? These (people), having given to these (monks), sometimes go without food.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.4.179

“I allow you, monks, when a family is growing in faith, is decreasing in wealth, to give such a family an agreement as to learners³ by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.⁴ And thus, monks, should it be given: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Such and such a family is growing in faith, is decreasing in wealth. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give the agreement as to learners to such and such a family. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Such and such a family ... in wealth. The Order gives the agreement as to learners to such and such a family. If the giving of the agreement as to learners to such and such a family is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent;

BD.3.111

¹ *ubhotapasanna*—i.e., pleased with the Sakyan teaching, “converted” to it. Vin-a.887 says that the layman and the laywoman follower were both pleased, and both are said to have been stream-attainers. ² *anasitā acchanti*. ³ *sekhasammuti*. *Sekha* is one who is under training, as opposed to *asekha*, the adept. An agreement, made by monks for lay-people, is as remarkable as it is unusual. ⁴ *ñattidutiya kamma*.

if it is not pleasing, they should speak. The agreement as to learners is given by the Order to such and such a family, and it is right ... So do I understand this.' And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever are those families that are agreed upon as learners, whatever monk having accepted among such families as are agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with his own hand, should eat it or partake of it, it should be confessed by that monk, saying: ‘I have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.’”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Pd.3.2.1

Now at that time there came to be a festival at Sāvattihī. People, having invited monks, offered them food. The monks, being scrupulous, did not consent, thinking: “It is forbidden by the lord, having accepted among families that are agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with one’s own hand, to eat it, to partake of it.” These looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “But how is it that because of our way of living, the masters do not accept from us?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, when invited, having accepted among families agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with your own hand, to eat it, to partake of it. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever are those families that are agreed upon as learners, whatever monk if he is not invited beforehand, having accepted among such families as are agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with his own hand, should eat it or partake of it, it should be confessed by that monk, saying: ‘I have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.’”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Vin.4.180

BD.3.112

Bu-Pd.3.3.1

Now at that time a certain monk came to frequent that family. Then that monk, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached that family, and having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. At that time this monk came to be ill. Then these people spoke thus to this monk: "Eat, honoured sir." Then that monk, thinking: "It is forbidden by the lord, not being invited, having accepted among families agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with one's own hand, to eat it, to partake of it," and being scrupulous, he did not accept; he was not able to walk for alms, he became famished. Then that monk, having gone to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, having accepted among families agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with his own hand, to eat it, to partake of it. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

"Whatever are those families that are agreed upon as learners, whatever monk, if he is not invited beforehand (and) not ill, having accepted among such families as are agreed upon as learners solid food or soft food with his own hand, should eat it or partake of it, it should be confessed by that monk, saying: 'Your reverences, I have fallen into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.'"

Whatever are those families that are agreed upon as learners means: a family agreed upon as learners is called that family which is growing in faith, decreasing in wealth; for such a family an agreement as to learners comes to be given by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.

Bu-Pd.3.4.1

BD.3.113

Whatever means: ... monk is to be understood in this case.

Among such families as are agreed, upon as learners means: among families like these agreed upon as learners.

Not invited means: not invited for today or tomorrow. If he invites him as he is entering the precincts of the house, this means not invited. Invited

Vin.4.181

means: invited for today or tomorrow. If he invites him not as he is entering the precincts of the house, this means invited.

Not ill means: he is able to walk for alms. Ill means: he is not able to walk for alms.

Solid food means: setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, the rest means solid food.¹

Soft food means: the five kinds of meals: cooked rice, food made with flour, barley-meal, fish, meat.²

If he is not invited, not ill, (and) accepts, thinking: “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence which ought to be confessed.

Bu-Pd.3.4.2

If he thinks that they are agreed upon as learners when they are agreed upon as learners, (and) not invited, not ill, having accepted with his own hand solid food or soft food, eats it or partakes of it, there is an offence which ought to be confessed. If he is in doubt as to whether they are agreed upon as learners ... If he thinks that they are not agreed upon as learners when they are agreed upon as learners ... offence which ought to be confessed. If he accepts for the sake of nutriment (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³ For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴ If he thinks that they are agreed upon as learners when they are not agreed upon as learners, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether they are not agreed upon as learners, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that they are not agreed upon as learners when they are not agreed upon as learners, there is no offence.

BD.3.114

Bu-Pd.3.4.3

There is no offence if he is invited; if he is ill; if he eats the remainder (of a meal) of one who was invited, or one who is ill; if there come to be alms there prepared for others; if having taken it out from the house, they give⁵;

¹ Cf. Vin.4.83. ² Cf. Vin.4.83. ³ Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.84. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.84. ⁵ Vin-a.887 says “they give, taking to a refectory or dwelling-place.”

if he is a regular diner; if it is (food allowed) by ticket; if it is food (given on) a day of the waxing or waning of the moon, on an Observance day, on the day after an Observance day¹; if, when there is a reason, he gives (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life,² and he makes use of it;³ if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third

¹ Cf. Vin.4.75, Vin.4.78 and BD.2.313, BD.2.320. ² Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.84. ³ Cf. Vin.4.83, Vin.4.84.

MONKS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 4

Bu-Pd.4.1.1
BD.3.115

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery. Now at that time the slaves of the Sakyans came to be out of hand.¹ Sakyans women wanted to make a meal in jungle lodgings. The slaves of the Sakyans heard that Sakyans women were desirous of making a meal in jungle lodgings. They infested² the way. Sakyans women, taking sumptuous solid food, soft food, went off to a jungle lodging. The slaves of the Sakyans, having issued forth, robbed the Sakyans women and violated them. The Sakyans, having issued forth, having seized these thieves together with the goods, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.182

“How can these revered sirs not announce that thieves are living in the monastery?” Monks heard the Sakyans who ... spread it about ... Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

On account of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order ... for following the rules of restraint.³ And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever are those jungle lodgings that are held to be dangerous, frightening,⁴ whatever monk in such lodgings, not announced beforehand,⁵ having accepted solid food or soft food within a monastery with his own hand, should eat it or partake of it, it should be confessed by that monk, saying: ‘I have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.’”

BD.3.116

¹ *avaruddhā*. Vin-a.887, paraphrases by *paṭiviruddhā*. ² *pariyuṭṭhiṃsu*. ³ Cf. BD.1.37.

⁴ Cf. Bu-NP.29; Vin.3.263. ⁵ *pubbe appaṭisaṃvidita*. Editors of *Vinaya Texts* i.57 take this to mean “the danger incurred by people that enter that forest.” Cf. Vin.4.159.

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be kid down by the lord.

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill in a jungle lodging. People, taking solid food or soft food set out for the jungle lodging. Then these people spoke thus to this monk: “Eat, honoured sir.” Then that monk, thinking: “It is forbidden by the lord, having accepted in a jungle lodging solid food or soft food with one’s own hand, to eat it, to partake of it,” being scrupulous, did not accept it; he was unable to enter¹ for almsfood, he became famished. Then this monk told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, an ill monk, having accepted in a jungle lodging solid food or soft food with his own hand, to eat it, to partake of it. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“Whatever are those jungle lodgings that are held to be dangerous, frightening, whatever monk in such lodgings, not announced beforehand, having accepted solid food or soft food within a monastery with his own hand, should eat it or partake of it if he is not ill, it should be confessed by that monk, saying: ‘I have fallen, your reverences, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.’”

Those jungle lodgings means: the last lodging called “jungle” is five hundred *dhanus* measures (away from the village).²

Dangerous means: if, in a monastery, in the precincts of a monastery, a place where thieves are halting is seen, a place where they are eating is seen,³ a place where they are resting is seen, a place where they are sitting down is seen, a place where they are lying down is seen.⁴

¹ *pavisitum*; variant reading *caritum*, to walk. ² Vin.3.263 (see BD.2.157). ³ Omitted at Vin.3.263, but not at Vin.4.63. ⁴ Vin.3.263 (see BD.2.157) = Vin.4.63 (BD.2.290).

Frightening means: if, in a monastery, in the precincts of a monastery, people injured by thieves are seen, (people) plundered are seen, (people) beaten down are seen.¹

Whatever means: monk is to be understood in this case.

In such lodgings as those means: in lodgings like those.

Not announced means: there is “announced” in five (ways but) this means not announced. Setting aside a monastery, the precincts of a monastery (as) announced, this is called not announced.

Announced means: whatever woman or man having come to a monastery, to the precincts of a monastery, declares: ‘Honoured sirs, they will convey solid food, soft food for so and so,’ if it becomes dangerous it should be pointed out that it is dangerous, if it becomes frightening it should be pointed out that it is frightening. If he speaks, saying: ‘Let him be, honoured sir, he will convey it,’ the thieves should be told: ‘People are serving here, go away.’

If it is announced in regard to conje that the ingredients² may be conveyed for that, this is called announced. If it is announced in regard to a meal that the ingredients may be conveyed for that, this is called announced. If it is announced in regard to solid food that the ingredients may be conveyed for that, this is called announced. If it is announced in regard to a family, the person who of that family conveys solid food or soft food, this is called announced. If it is announced in regard to a village, the person who in that village conveys solid food or soft food, this is called announced. If it is announced in regard to a guild, the person who in that guild conveys solid food or soft food, this is called announced.

Solid food means: ... **soft food** means: ... meat.

Within a monastery means: when a monastery is fenced in, inside a monastery; the precincts when it is not fenced in.³

Not ill means: he is able to walk for almsfood.

Ill means: he is not able to walk for almsfood.

If it is not announced, if he is not ill (and) accepts it, thinking: “I will eat,

¹ Vin-a.887 says “setting aside a monastery that is a jungle lodging and its precincts, seeing a monk on the way issuing from the precincts or coming to a village, announced is done, but this comes to be not announced.” ² *parivāra*. ³ =Bu-Pc.84; Vin.4.163.

I will partake of," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence which ought to be confessed.

If he thinks that it is not announced when it is not announced (and) having accepted solid food or soft food with his own hand within the monastery when he is not ill, eats it or partakes of it, there is an offence which ought to be confessed. If he is in doubt as to whether it is not announced ... If he thinks that it is announced when it is not announced ... ought to be confessed. If he accepts for the sake of nutriment (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is not announced when it is announced, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he is in doubt as to whether it is announced, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he thinks that it is announced when it is announced, there is no offence.

There is no offence if it is announced, if he is ill; if he eats the remainder of (a meal) if it was announced or of one who was ill; if having accepted it outside the monastery he makes use of it inside the monastery; if he makes use of a root or bark, or a leaf or a flower or a fruit growing there; if when there is a reason he makes use of (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life¹; if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Bu-Pd.4.3.2

BD.3.119

The Fourth

Venerable ones, recited are the four rules for offences which ought to be confessed. Concerning them, I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The venerable ones are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.

Told are the offences which ought to be confessed.

Vin.4.185

¹ Vin.4.83, Vin.4.85, Vin.4.86.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 1

Bu-Sk.1.1.1
BD.3.120

These rules for training,¹ venerable ones, come up for recitation.

At that time the enlightened one, the lord was staying at Sāvattihī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks dressed with the inner robe² hanging down in front and behind. People ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, dress with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind, just like householders who enjoy the pleasures of the senses?”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks dress with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion in this connection, [having given reasoned talk³], having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the group of six monks, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, dressed with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, dress with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.121

¹ *sekhiyā dhammā*; rules for good behaviour, etiquette; “the rules regarding matters connected with discipline,” *Vinaya Texts* i.59. ² *nivāsenti*. This verb refers to dressing in the inner robe. *Pārūpati*, see next *Sekhiya*, to putting on the upper robe and outer cloak.

³ Square brackets in text.

“I will dress with the inner robe all round (me),¹ is a training to be observed.”²

The inner robe should be dressed in (going) all round one for covering the circle of the navel, the circles of the knees.³ Whoever out of disrespect dresses with an inner robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know,⁴ if he is ill, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 2

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks put on the upper robe⁵ hanging down in front and behind ... “...
Bu-Sk.2.1.1

“I will put on the upper robe all round me,[’] is a training to be observed.”

The upper robe should be put on all round one having made both edges level.⁶ Whoever out of disrespect puts on an upper robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.
Vin.4.186

¹ *parimaṇḍalaṃ nivāsessāmi*. Cf. [Vin.1.46](#), [Vin.2.213](#). Many of the *Sekhiyas* are repeated at [Vin.2.213f](#). ² *sikkhā karaṇīyā*. ³ These are the three circles, *timaṇḍala*. ⁴ = [Vin.4.125](#). ⁵ *pārupanti*, possibly here refers only to the upper robe, not to the outer cloak. ⁶ *ubho kaṇṇe samaṃ katvā*, so that neither end hangs higher or lower than the other.

There is no offence¹ ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 3 & 4

Bu-Sk.4.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having uncovered their bodies, went amidst the houses² (*instead of went read, in Bu-Sk.4, sat down.*)

“Properly clad will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.122

One should go (sit down) amidst the houses properly clad. Whoever out of disrespect, having uncovered the body, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill (*in Bu-Sk.4 it is added here: if he has gone into residence for the rains, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.*)

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 5 & 6

Bu-Sk.6.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, making play with hand and foot, went amidst the houses (*instead of went read, in Bu-Sk.6, sat down*) ... “...

“Well-controlled will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

¹ As in Bu-Sk.1. ² antaraghare. See *Vinaya Texts* i.59, n.2; Vin.3.286, n.2.

One should go (sit down) amidst the houses well-controlled. Whoever out of disrespect, making play with hand or foot, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 7 & 8

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks looking about here and there went (sat down) amidst the houses ...
“ ...

Bu-Sk.8.1.1

“**‘With the eyes cast down will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.**”

One should go (sit down) amidst the houses with the eyes cast down looking only a plough's (distance ahead).¹ Whoever out of disrespect, looking about here and there, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first

wrong-doer.

Vin.4.187

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 9 & 10

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks lifting up (their robes¹) went (sat down) amidst the houses ... “...
Bu-Sk.10.1.1
BD.3.123

“**Not lifting up (the robes) will I go (sit down) amidst the houses, is a training to be observed.**”

One should not go (sit down) among the houses with (the robes) lifted up. Whoever out of disrespect having lifted up (the robe) on one side or on both, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill (*in Bu-Sk.10 it is added here: if he has gone into residence for the rains, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.*)

The First Division: that on all round

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 11 & 12

Bu-Sk.12.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, laughing a great laugh,² went (sat down) amidst the houses ... “...
Bu-Sk.12.1.1

¹ Cf. Snp.410, Snp.411; Mi.398; Vism.19. ¹ *ukkhittakāya*. Vin-a.891 says, *ekato vā ubhato vā ukkhittacīvaro hutvā ti attho*; the meaning is, a robe having become raised (lifted up, pulled up) at one or both (sides). ² *mahāhasitaṃ hasantā*.

“Not with loud laughter¹ will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not go (sit down) amidst the houses with loud laughter. Whoever out of disrespect, laughing a great laugh, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he only smiles when the matter is one for laughter, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 13 & 14

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, making a loud noise, a great noise, went (sat down) amidst the houses ... “ ...

Bu-Sk.14.1.1

“(With) little noise² will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.124

One should go (sit down) amidst the houses with little noise.³ Whoever out of disrespect, making a loud noise, a great noise, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first

¹ *ujjhaggikāya*. ² *appasaddo ... appasaddena*. ³ *appasaddo ... appasaddena*.

wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 15 & 16

Bu-Sk.16.1.1
Vin.4.188

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, their bodies swaying, went (sat down) amidst the houses, bending their bodies ... “...

“Not swaying the body will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,' is a training to be observed.”

One should not go (sit down) amidst the houses swaying the body. One should go (sit down) holding the body straight. Whoever out of disrespect, the body swaying, goes (sits down) amidst the houses bending the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill (*in Bu-Sk.16 it is added here: if he has gone into residence for the rains, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.*)

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 17 & 18

Bu-Sk.18.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, their arms swaying, went (sat down) amidst the houses, bending their arms ... “...

“Not swaying the arms will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,' is a training to be observed.”

One should not go (sit down) amidst the houses swaying the arms. One should go (sit down) holding the arms straight. Whoever out of disrespect, the arms swaying, goes (sits down) amidst the houses bending the arms, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.125

There is no offence ... (as in *Bu-Sk.15*, *Bu-Sk.16*) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 19 & 20

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, their heads swaying, went (sat down) amidst the houses, bending their heads ... “...

Bu-Sk.20.1.1

“‘Not swaying the head will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed. ... (see *Bu-Sk.17*, *Bu-Sk.18*) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Second Division: that on loud laughter

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 21 & 22

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, their arms akimbo,¹ went (sat down) amidst the houses ... “...

Bu-Sk.22.1.1

“Not with arms akimbo will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

Vin.4.189

One should not go (sit down) amidst the houses with the arms akimbo. Whoever out of disrespect, having placed the arms akimbo on one side or on both, goes (sits down) amidst the houses, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence ... (as in *Bu-Sk.15*, *Bu-Sk.16*) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 23 & 24

Bu-Sk.24.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having dressed themselves, including their heads, in the upper robes,¹ went (sat down) amidst the houses ... “...

“Not muffled up² will I go (sit down) amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.126

One should not go (sit down) muffled up amidst the houses. Whoever out of disrespect goes (sits down) amidst the houses, having dressed himself, including his head, in the upper robe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ *khambhakata*. Vin-a.891 says that this is placing the hand on the hip. ¹ *sasisam pārupitvā*.

² *ogunṭhito*. Cf. *Bu-Sk.67* below; and *Vin.2.207*, where it is clearly a sign of disrespect for an incoming monk to enter a monastery with his head muffled up.

There is no offence ... (as in *Bu-Sk.15*, *Bu-Sk.16*) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 25

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, crouching down on their heels,¹ went amidst the houses ... “... Bu-Sk.25.1.1

“Not crouching down on the heels will I go amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not go amidst the houses crouching down on the heels. Whoever out of disrespect goes amidst the houses crouching down on the heels, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 26

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks sat down amidst the houses lolling ... “... Bu-Sk.26.1.1

“Not lolling will I sit down amidst the houses,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not sit down amidst the houses lolling. Whoever out of disrespect sits down amidst the houses lolling, there is an offence of wrong-

¹ *ukkuṭika*, an ascetic practice; see *Vin.1.45*, *DN.i.167*, *AN.i.296*, *Dhp.141*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives a description of this “special manner of squatting”; see also *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.231, n.4, and cf. *Vin-a.891* and *DN-a.357*.

doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he has gone into residence for the rains, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 27

Bu-Sk.27.1.1

Vin.4.190

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks accepted almsfood inattentively,¹ as though desirous of throwing it away ... “ ...

BD.3.127

“**Attentively will I accept almsfood, ' is a training to be observed.**”

One should accept almsfood attentively. Whoever out of disrespect accepts almsfood inattentively, as though desirous of throwing it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 28

Bu-Sk.28.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks accepted almsfood looking about here and there; they did not know that they² were piled up and overflowing³ ... “ ...

“**Thinking of the bowl will I accept almsfood, ' is a training to be observed.**”

¹ *asakkacca*, carelessly. *Vinaya Texts* iii.288 has for *sakkacca* “with the mind alert”; Vin-a.891, “having raised up mindfulness.” ² presumably the bowls. ³ *ākirante pi atikkante pi*. Cf. Bu-Sk.32 below.

One should accept almsfood thinking of the bowl. Whoever out of disrespect accepts almsfood, looking about here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 29

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, accepting almsfood, accepted also much curry ... “... Bu-Sk.29.1.1

“I will accept almsfood with equal curry,¹ is a training to be observed.”

Curry means: there are two kinds of curry, bean curry, kidney-bean curry,² that may be conveyed by hand. Almsfood with equal curry should be accepted. Whoever out of disrespect accepts also much curry, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if it is of another flavour,³ if it belongs to relations, if it is offered, if it is for another, if it is by means of his own property, if there BD.3.128

are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 30

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks accepted heaped-up¹ almsfood ... “...
Bu-Sk.30.1.1

Vin.4.191

“I will accept almsfood at an even level,² is a training to be observed.”

One should accept almsfood at an even level. Whoever out of disrespect accepts heaped-up almsfood, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Third Division: that on arms akimbo

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 31

Bu-Sk.31.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate almsfood inattentively,³ as though desirous not to eat ... “...
Bu-Sk.31.1.1

“‘Attentively will I eat almsfood,’ is a training to be observed.”

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.45](#). Curry to be in measure one fourth of the rice, so [Vin-a.892](#). ² Curries made of vetch and so on, [Vin-a.892](#). ³ *rasarase*. [Vin-a.892](#) says that having set aside the two bean-currys, *rasarasa* means that those remaining have the flavour of fish, the flavour of meat, and so on. ¹ *thūpikata*. ² *samatitthika*. See *Buddhist Suttas*, p.178, n. Sinhalese edition reads *samatittika*; also [Vin-a.892](#), which explains by *samapūṇṇa*, *samabharita*, filled evenly, heaped up evenly. ³ Cf. [Bu-Sk.27](#) above. [Bu-Sk.31–Bu-Sk.55](#) repeated at [Vin.2.214](#).

One should eat almsfood attentively. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood inattentively, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first-wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 32

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate almsfood looking about here and there¹; they did not know that they were piled up and overflowing ... “...
Bu-Sk.32.1.1
BD.3.129

“Thinking of the bowl will I eat almsfood, is a training to be observed.”

One should eat almsfood thinking of the bowl. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood looking about here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 33

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having chosen² here and there, ate almsfood ... “...
Bu-Sk.33.1.1

¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.28 above. ² *omadditvā*. From the context this seems to mean that the monks omitted to call at some houses, picking and choosing between them. Dictionary meanings of *omaddati* are to rub, to crush, oppress. In a sense ‘oppressed’ might be meant here, for the laity if unable to give the gifts of faith would be oppressed, pressed down. See below, Bu-Sk.35, note.

“On continuous alms-tour¹ will I eat almsfood,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should eat almsfood on continuous alms-tour. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood, having chosen, here and there, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if giving to others he is impatient,² if piling up (food) into another’s vessel he is impatient, if there are dainties,³ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.192

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 34

Bu-Sk.34.1.1
BD.3.130

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, eating almsfood, ate also much curry⁴ ... “...

“I will eat almsfood with equal curry,’ is a training to be observed.”

Curry means: there are two (kinds of) curry: bean curry, kidney-bean curry, that may be conveyed by hand. Almsfood with equal curry should be eaten. Whoever out of disrespect eats also much curry, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if it is of another flavour, if it belongs to relations, if it is offered, if it is by means of his own properties, if there are accidents, if

¹ *sapadānaṃ*. Vin-a.893 says “not having made a distinction (*odhim akatvā*) here and there, successively.” ² *omasati*=*ava*+√*mṛṣ*. A monk on continuous alms-tour may become impatient if the donors keep him waiting his turn for alms, if he waits too long he may miss the right time for eating. ³ *uttaribhaṅge*, also at Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.45 below. See BD.1.275 for further references. ⁴ Cf. Bu-Sk.29 above.

he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 35

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks having chosen¹ from the top,² ate almsfood ... “... Bu-Sk.35.1.1

“Not having chosen from the top will I eat almsfood,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should eat almsfood not having chosen from the top. Whoever out of disrespect eats almsfood having chosen from the top, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill; if among an insignificant remainder he eats, having selected,³ having chosen from one side; if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 36

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks covered up the curry and the condiment with conje, desiring some- Bu-Sk.36.1.1

thing: more ...” ...

BD.3.131

“I will not cover up the curry and the condiment with conjei, desiring something more,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not cover up the curry or the condiment with conjei, desiring something more. Whoever out of disrespect covers up the curry or the condiment with conjei, desiring something more, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know; if the owners give, having covered it up; if he is not desiring something more; if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

Vin.4.193

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 37

Bu-Sk.37.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having asked for curry and conjei for themselves, ate it.¹ People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, having asked for curry and conjei for themselves, eat it? Who does not like well-cooked things? Who does not like sweet things?”² Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks, having asked for curry and conjei for themselves, eat it?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, having asked for curry and conjei for yourselves, ate it?”

“It is true, lord.”

¹ *omadditvā*. Something of the same sense as in Bu-Sk.33 above of picking and choosing, here among the food put into the bowl Vinaya Texts i.63 has “pressing down.” ² *thūpa*, explained by Vin-a.893 as *matthaka vemajjha*, the top, the middle ³ *saṅkaḍḍhati*, to collect; cf. Bu-Sk.53. ¹ Cf. Vin.1.45. ² Cf. Vin.2.196.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men ... eat it? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

‘I will not eat curry or conjei, having asked for it for myself,’ is a training to be observed.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time monks came to be ill. Monks, asking after the ill ones, spoke thus to the ill monks: “We hope that your reverences are better, we hope that you are keeping going.”

“Formerly we, your reverences, having asked for curry or conjei for ourselves, ate it; thus there came to be comfort for us. But now it is forbidden by the lord, and being scrupulous, we do not ask; thus there comes to be no comfort for us.”¹ They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, when a monk is ill, having asked for curry or conjei for himself, to eat it. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“I will not eat curry or conjei, having asked for it for myself, if not ill,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat curry or conjei, having asked for it for oneself, unless one is ill. Whoever out of disrespect, having asked for curry or conjei for oneself, if not ill, eats it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if it belongs to relations, if it is offered, if it is by means of his own property, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first

Bu-Sk.37.1.2
BD.3.132

wrong-doer.

Vin.4.194

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 38

Bu-Sk.38.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks looked at others' bowls captious-mindedly¹ ... “...

“Not captious-mindedly will I look at others' bowls,' is a training to be observed.”

One should not look at others' bowls captious-mindedly. Whoever out of disrespect looks at others' bowls captious-mindedly, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he looks thinking, 'I will give or I will make (another) give,' if he is not captious-minded, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

BD.3.133

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 39

Bu-Sk.39.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks made up large mouthfuls² ... “...

¹ Cf. Vin.4.56, Vin.4.88, Vin.4.115, Vin.4.118. ¹ *ujjhāna-saññi*. Cf. SN.i.23; Thag.958; DhP.253.

² *kabaḷa*. In India food is made up into balls with the fingers and eaten with the fingers. To make a large ball, that is a large mouthful, is bad manners. Vin-a.893 says that a “peacock's egg is very (or too) large, a hen's egg very small, an in-between size” must be made up. Chickens' eggs in the East are smaller than English bantams' eggs

“I will not make up too large a mouthful, is a training to be observed.”

One should not make up too large a mouthful. Whoever out of disrespect makes up too large a mouthful, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if they are solid victuals,¹ all sorts of fruits,² dainties,³ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 40

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks made up long pieces (of food)⁴ ...” ...

Bu-Sk.40.1.1

“I will make up the pieces (of food) into a round, is a training to be observed.”

One should make up a piece (of food) into a round. Whoever out of disrespect makes up a long piece (of food), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if they are solid victuals, all sorts of fruits, dainties,⁵ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fourth Division: that on attentively

¹ *khajjaka*. Vin-a.893 “here all solid foods (made of) roots.” Cf. Ja.1.186, and Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.44, Bu-Sk.45 below. ² *phalāphala*. Cf. Ja.1.416, etc., and Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.44, Bu-Sk.45 below. ³ Cf. Bu-Sk.33, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.45. ⁴ *ālopa*, morsel, bit of food, here a mouthful.

⁵ Cf. above, Bu-Sk.39.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 41

Bu-Sk.41.1.1
BD.3.134

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks opened the door of the face¹ when the mouthful² was not brought close ... “ ...

Vin.4.195

“I will not open the door of the face when the mouthful is not brought close,' is a training to be observed.”

One should not open the door of the face when the mouthful is not brought close. Whoever out of disrespect opens the door of the face when the mouthful is not brought close, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 42

Bu-Sk.42.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, while eating, put the whole hand into the mouth ... “ ...

“I will not put the whole hand into the mouth while eating,' is a training to be observed.”

One should not put the whole hand into the mouth while eating. Whoever out of disrespect puts the whole hand into the mouth while eating, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ mukhadvāra. ² kabaḷa, see above Bu-Sk.39.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 43

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks talked with a mouthful in the mouth ... “...

Bu-Sk.43.1.1

“I will not talk with a mouthful in the mouth,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not talk with a mouthful in the mouth. Whoever out of disrespect talks with a mouthful in the mouth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 44

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate tossing up balls (of food)¹ ... “...

Bu-Sk.44.1.1
BD.3.135

“I will not eat tossing up balls (of food),’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat tossing up balls (of food). Whoever out of disrespect eats tossing up balls (of food), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if they are solid victuals,² all sorts of fruits,³ if there

¹ *piṇḍukkhepakam* = *piṇḍam ukkhipitvā ukkhipitvā*, tossing up the balls (the lumps of alms-food) again and again, Vin-a.893. ² Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.45. ³ Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.45, Bu-Sk.46.

are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 45

Bu-Sk.45.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate, breaking up the mouthfuls¹ ... “... ”

“I will not eat breaking up the mouthfuls, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat breaking up the mouthfuls. Whoever out of disrespect eats breaking up the mouthfuls, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if they are solid victuals,² all sorts of fruits,³ dainties,⁴ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 46

Bu-Sk.46.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate stuffing the cheeks⁵ ... “... ”

“I will not eat stuffing the cheeks, is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.136

One should not eat stuffing the cheeks. Whoever out of disrespect eats, having stuffed the cheek on one side or on both, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ *kabaḷāvacchedakam*, dividing the mouthfuls (into small parts); probably with the fingers and not “nibbling at,” as at *Vinaya Texts* i.64. ² Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.44. ³ Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.44, Bu-Sk.46. ⁴ Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40. ⁵ Vin-a.893, “having made swellings as does a monkey.”

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if they are all sorts of fruits,¹ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 47

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate shaking the hands about.² ... “...
Bu-Sk.47.1.1

“I will not eat shaking the hands about, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat shaking the hands about. Whoever out of disrespect eats shaking the hands about, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he shakes the hands about getting rid of the crumbs,³ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 48

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate scattering lumps of boiled rice ... “...
Bu-Sk.48.1.1

“I will not eat scattering lumps of boiled rice, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat scattering lumps of boiled rice. Whoever out of disrespect eats scattering lumps of boiled rice, there is an offence of wrong-

¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.39, Bu-Sk.40, Bu-Sk.44, Bu-Sk.45. ² *hatthaniddhunakam*. ³ *kacavaram chaddento*.

doing.

Vin.4.197 There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if, getting rid of the crumbs, a lump of boiled rice is got rid of, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 49

Bu-Sk.49.1.1
BD.3.137

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate putting out their tongues ... “...

“I will not eat putting out the tongue, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat putting out the tongue ... offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 50

Bu-Sk.50.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate smacking the lips¹ ... “...

“I will not eat smacking the lips, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat smacking the lips ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth Division: that on the mouthful

¹ *capucapukāraka*. Vin-a.893, making the sound *capu-capu*.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 51

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time a milk drink¹ had been prepared for the Order by a certain brahmin. The monks drank the milk² making a hissing sound.³ A certain monk who had formerly been an actor spoke thus: "It seems that this whole Order is cooled."⁴ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this monk make a joke about the Order?" ...

Bu-Sk.51.1.1

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, made a joke about the Order?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, make a joke about the Order? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." ... and having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.3.138

"Monks, a joke should not be made about the enlightened one or *dhamma* or the Order. Whoever should make (one), there is an offence of wrongdoing."

Then the lord, having rebuked that monk in many a figure for his difficulty in maintaining himself ... "... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“I will not eat making a hissing sound,’ is a training to be observed.”

Vin.4.198

One should not eat making a hissing sound ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 52

Bu-Sk.52.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate licking the fingers ...

“I will not eat licking the fingers,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat licking the fingers ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 53

Bu-Sk.53.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks ate licking the bowl ... “...

“I will not eat licking the bowl,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat licking the bowl ...

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is ill, if from an insignificant remainder he eats having collected,¹ having licked at one side, if there

¹ payopāna. ² khīraṃ pivanti. ³ surusurukāraka. Vin-a.893, making the sound suru-suru.

⁴ sītikata. ¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.35.

are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 54

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery ... (see *Bu-Sk.52*. Instead of licking the fingers read licking the lips) ...

Bu-Sk.54.1.1

“I will not eat licking the lips, is a training to be observed.”

One should not eat licking the lips ...

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 55

Now at that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying among the Bhaggā on Suṃsumāra Hill in the Bhesakaḷā Grove in the deer-park. Now at that time the monks in the Kokanada palace¹ accepted a drinking cup, their hands (soiled) with food. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, accept a drinking cup, their hands (soiled) with food, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks accept a drinking cup, their hands (soiled) with food?” ...

Bu-Sk.55.1.1
BD.3.139

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, accepted a drinking cup, your hands (soiled) with food?”

“It is true, lord.”

¹ See *Vin.2.127*, MN.ii.91. *Vin-a.894* says that it was lotus-shaped, *padumakasaṅṭhāna*; MN-a.3.321 that it was made resembling a hanging lotus, *paduma*. *Kokanada* is the red lotus, AN.iii.239.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, accept a drinking cup, your hands (soiled) with food? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“I will not accept a drinking cup, my hands (soiled) with food,’ is a training to be observed.”

Vin.4.199

One should not accept a drinking cup, the hands (soiled) with food. Whoever out of disrespect accepts a drinking cup, the hands (soiled) with food, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he accepts it, thinking, ‘I will wash’ or ‘I will get (someone) to wash (my hand),’ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS’ TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 56

Bu-Sk.56.1.1

At that time the enlightened one, the lord was staying among the Bhaggā on Suṃsumāra Hill in the Bhesakaḷā Grove in the deer-park. Now at that time monks in the Kokanada palace threw out amidst the houses¹ rinsings of the bowls with lumps of boiled rice. People ... spread it about, saying:

BD.3.140

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, throw out amidst the houses rinsings of the bowls with lumps of boiled rice, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?”

Monks heard ... (as in *Bu-Sk.55*) ... “... should be set forth:

“I will not throw out amidst the houses rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not throw out amidst the houses rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice. Whoever out of disrespect throws out amidst the

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.65, n.2 says that *antaraghare* “here means the space, or small open square in the middle of the house.”

houses rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he throws them out having removed¹ or broken up² or covered up³ or taken out,⁴ if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (*SEKHIYA*) 57

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a sunshade in his hand. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks teach *dhamma* to (someone) with a sunshade in his hand?" ...

Bu-Sk.57.1.1

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a sunshade in his hand?"

BD.3.141

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How can you, foolish men, teach *dhamma* to (someone) with a sunshade in his hand? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

'I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) with a sunshade in his hand,' is a training to be observed."

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Sk.57.1.2

At that time monks were (too) scrupulous to teach *dhamma* to (someone)

¹ *uddharitvā*. Vin-a.894 says, "if having removed the lumps of boiled rice from the water, having made them into a heap in one place, he throws out the water." ² *bhinditvā*. Vin-a.894 says, "if having broken up the lumps of boiled rice, having put them in the water, he throws it out." ³ *paṭiggahetvā*. Vin-a.894, reading *paṭiggāhe va*, says "if he throws out what he has accepted, covering it up with a receptacle." ⁴ *nīharitvā*. Vin-a.894, "if he throws it out outside."

who was ill (and) had a sunshade in his hand. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who is ill (and) has a sunshade in his hand?”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to teach *dhamma* to (someone) who is ill (and) has a sunshade in his hand. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who is not ill (and) who has a sunshade in his hand, is a training to be observed.”

Sunshade¹ means: there are three (kinds of) sunshade: white sunshade,² sunshade of matting, sunshade of leaves; fastened at the middle, fastened to the rim.³

Dhamma means: spoken by the enlightened one, spoken by disciples, spoken by seers, spoken by devatas, connected with the goal, connected with *dhamma*.⁴

Should teach means: if he teaches by line, for every line there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he teaches by syllable, for every syllable there is an offence of wrong--doing.⁵

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) who has a sunshade in his hand (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) who has a sunshade in his hand (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first

¹ = Vin.4.338. ² *setacchatta*, emblem of royalty. Cf. DN.ii.15, DN.ii.19; AN.i.145. ³ *salāk-abaddha*; *-bandha* at Vin.4.338. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.133 note for these two ways of fastening the handle to the sunshade. ⁴ = Vin.4.15, Vin.4.22. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.15, Vin.4.22.

wrong-doer

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 58

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a staff in his hand ... “... Bu-Sk.58.1.1

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who is not ill (and) who has a staff in his hand,’ is a training to be observed.”

Staff means: (the size of) four hands¹ of a man of average height. Bigger than that it is not a staff, smaller it is not a staff.²

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) who has a staff in his hand (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) who has a staff in his hand (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 59

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a knife in his hand ... “... Bu-Sk.59.1.1

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who has a knife in his hand (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.143

Vin.4.201

Knife means: a weapon,¹ single-edged, double-edged.² *Dhamma* should not be taught to (someone) who has a knife in his hand (and) who is not ill ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 60

Bu-Sk.60.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a weapon³ in his hand ... “...

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who has a weapon in his hand (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Weapon means: a long-bow, a cross-bow.⁴ *Dhamma* should not be taught to (someone) who has a weapon in his hand (and) who is not ill ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

The Sixth Division: that on hissing

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 61

Bu-Sk.61.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) wearing shoes ... “...

¹ On *hattha*, “hand”—i.e., hand and forearm—see [BD.2.li](#). ² *adaṇḍa*; cf. *apatta* at [Vin.3.243](#). The above use of *adaṇḍa* has not been noticed by the *Critical Pali Dictionary* ¹ *paharaṇi*. Oldenberg queries, and suggests “*paharaṇi*?”. ² Cf. [MN.i.281](#). ³ *āvudha*. ⁴ Cf. [MN.i.429](#).

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) wearing shoes (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) wearing shoes (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) mounted on (shoes) or (with shoes) fastened on or (with shoes) unfastened¹ (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he if the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 62

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery ... (see *Bu-Sk.61*. Instead of wearing shoes read wearing sandals²) ...

Bu-Sk.62.1.1
BD.3.144

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) wearing sandals (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 63

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) in a vehicle ... “... ”

Bu-Sk.63.1.1

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) in a vehicle (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

¹ Only at the heels, according to Vin-a.895. ² *upāhana*. Regulations for monks wearing these given at Vin.1.185ff.; at Vin.2.207f. it is said that in-coming monks should take off their sandals on entering a monastery—as a sign of respect.

Vehicle¹ means: a cart,² a carriage,³ a waggon, a chariot, a palanquin,⁴ a sedan-chair⁵.

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) in a vehicle (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) in a vehicle (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 64

Bu-Sk.64.1.1
Vin.4.202

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) on a bed ... “...

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) on a bed and who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

BD.3.145

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) on a bed (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) on a bed and even lying on the ground (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ = Vin.4.339; cf. Vin.3.49 which omits the last two, and DN-a.82 which omits the last but one. ² *vayha*, translated as “litter” at BD.1.81. But at Vin.1.191, Vin.2.276 an (ill) monk and nun were respectively made uncomfortable by the jolting of a *yāna* (vehicle), and two other means of transport were allowed: a palanquin and a sedan-chair. These are not included in the Old Commentary's definition of *yāna* at Vin.3.49, although they are above and at Vin.4.339. It looks therefore as if the first four items under *yāna* were the original ones, and further, as if they were conveyances drawn by animals and liable to jolt. It thus seems best to correct “litter” to “cart.” ³ See AN.iv.191 for various parts of a horse-drawn *ratha*. ⁴ Allowed to be used by (ill) monks at Vin.1.192, by (ill) nuns at Vin.2.277. ⁵ Allowed to be used by (ill) monks at Vin.1.192, by (ill) nuns at Vin.2.277.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 65

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) who was sitting down, lolling¹ ... “...
Bu-Sk.65.1.1

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) who is sitting down, lolling (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) sitting down, lolling, (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (someone) who is sitting down, lolling on his hands or lolling on his robes (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 66

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with a turban on his head ... “...
Bu-Sk.66.1.1

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) with a turban on his head (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Turban on the head means: it is a turban when it does not let the ends of the hair be seen.

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) with a turban on his head (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect teaches *dhamma* to (some-

¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.26.

one) with a turban on his head (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he shows the ends of the hair having caused them to be uncovered, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 67

Bu-Sk.67.1.1
BD.3.146

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks taught *dhamma* to (someone) with his head muffled up¹ ... “...

“I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) with his head muffled up (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Vin.4.203

Head muffled up means: it is so called if he is dressed, including his head, in his upper robe.

Dhamma should not be taught to (someone) with his head muffled up (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect should teach *dhamma* to (someone) with his head muffled up (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if he shows the head having caused it to be uncovered,

¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.23.

if he is mad, if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 68

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having sat down on the ground, taught *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a seat ... “... Bu-Sk.68.1.1

“Having sat down on the ground, I will not teach *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a seat (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Having sat down on the ground, *dhamma* should not be taught to (someone) sitting on a seat (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect, having sat down on the ground, teaches *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a seat (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 69

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, having sat down on a low seat, taught *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a high seat.¹ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks ... teach *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a high seat?” ... Bu-Sk.69.1.1

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, ... taught *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a high seat?” BD.3.147

¹ Ja.no.309 (=Ja.3.27.) is based on this story, and should be compared with it, especially for variant readings.

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

How can you, foolish men, ... teach *dhamma* to (someone) sitting on a high seat? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Formerly, monks, in Benares, the wife of a certain low class man¹ came to be pregnant. Then, monks, this low class woman spoke thus to this low class man: ‘Sir,² I am pregnant; I want to eat a mango.’

‘There are no mangoes, it is not the mango season,’ he said.

Now at that time the king had a mango tree with a perpetual crop of fruit. Then, monks, that low class man approached that mango tree; having approached, having climbed up that mango tree, he remained hidden. Then, monks, the king together with the brahmin priest, approached that mango tree; having approached, having sat down on a high seat, he learnt a mantra. Then, monks, it occurred to that low class man:

‘How unrighteous³ is this king, inasmuch as he learns a mantra, having sat down on a high seat. This brahmin also is unrighteous, inasmuch as he, having sat down on a low seat, teaches a mantra to (someone) sitting on a high seat. I too am unrighteous, I who for the sake of a woman, steal the king’s mangoes. But all this is quite gone,⁴ (and) he fell down just there.

Neither knows the goal,⁵

neither sees *dhamma*,⁶

Neither he who teaches the mantra,

¹ *chapaka*. Vin-a.896 explains by *caṇḍāla*, which is the word used in the Jātaka. ² *ayyaputta*. At Vin.3.17, the monk Sudinna’s former wife addresses him as *ayyaputta*. ³ *adhammika*.

⁴ *parigata*. Reading seems confused. *Vinaya Texts* iv.364 gives variant reading *camarikatan ti* (°*natan ti B*); Vin-a.896, variant reading *carimakatan ti*; Ja.3.28 *carimavataṃ*, with variant readings *carivamataṃ*, *carimaṃ kataṃ*. “Done long ago”—i.e., *carimaṃ kataṃ*, makes sense for the Jātaka version. ⁵ *attha*. Vin-a.896 says, “These two people do not know the meaning (*attha*) of the text (*pāli*).” ⁶ Vin-a.896 says, “they do not see the text”; Ja.3.29, “the two people do not see that the rule of old (*porāṇakadhamma*) is worthy of respect,” and adds the verse: “First the rule came to appear, afterwards what is not the rule arose, in the world.”

Or *dhamma* may here be in its wider sense, to balance “goal,” and not in its more specialised Vinaya sense of “rule.”

nor he who learns according to what is not the rule.”¹

“My food² is pure conje
of rice flavoured with meat,³
I do not therefore fare on *dhamma*,⁴
dhamma praised by the noble.”

“Brahmin,⁵ shame on that gain of wealth,
(that) gain of fame;
That conduct (leads) to falling away⁶
or to walking by what is not the rule.⁷

“Go forth,⁸ great brahmin,
for other creatures boil,⁹
Do not you, following what is not the rule,
from that break like a pot.”¹⁰

At that time,¹¹ monks,¹² to teach¹³ a mantra, having sat down on a low seat, to (someone) sitting on a high seat, was not liked by me. So, however could it now be not not¹⁴ liked to teach¹⁵ *dhamma*, having sat down on a low seat, to (someone) sitting on a high seat? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

BD.3.149

“I will not teach *dhamma*, having sat down on a low seat, to (someone) sitting on a high seat (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught, having sat down on a low seat, to (someone) sitting on a high seat (and) who is not ill. Whoever out of disrespect,

¹ *adhammena*. The “rule” against which these two, had they been monks, would be transgressing, is the one laid down in this *Sekhiya*. ² *bhutta*. According to Ja.3.29 and Vin-a.896 the brahmin says this verse. ³ For this line, cf. also Ja.3.144, Ja.4.371. ⁴ Or “the rule.”

⁵ This verse, also found at Ja.2.422, Ja.3.32, is here, according to Vin-a.896, spoken by the low-class man. ⁶ *vinipāta*, often combined with *apāya* and *duggati*, sometimes plus *niraya*, as one of the ways of woeful rebirth—e.g., Vin.1.227; DN.i.82, DN.i.162; MN.i.73, AN.i.29, AN.i.48. ⁷ *adhammacaraṇena*; or unrighteousness, what is not *dhamma*. ⁸ I.e., into homelessness. ⁹ *pacanti*, cook or boil, here in one of the hells. ¹⁰ *asmā kumbhaṃ iva bhida*. ¹¹ According to Ja.3.30, the *bodhisattva* was the low-class man. ¹² Cf. Vin.4.6. ¹³ *vāceti*. ¹⁴ *na amanāpa*; at Vin.4.6, *manāpa*, liked. ¹⁵ *deseti*.

having sat down on a low seat, teaches *dhamma* to someone sitting on a high seat (and) who is not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 70

Bu-Sk.70.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, standing, taught *dhamma* to (someone) who was sitting down ... “...

“I will not teach *dhamma*, standing, to (someone) who is sitting down (and) who is not ill,' is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught, standing, to (someone) who is sitting down (and) who is not ill ... (see *Bu-Sk.70*) ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.205

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 71

Bu-Sk.71.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, going behind, taught *dhamma* to (someone) going in front ... “...

“I will not teach *dhamma*, going behind, to (someone) going in front (and) who is, not ill,' is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught, going behind ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 72

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks, going at the side of a path,¹ taught *dhamma* to (someone) going along the path ... “...
Bu-Sk.72.1.1
BD.3.150

“I will not teach *dhamma*, going at the side of a path, to (someone) going along the path (and) who is not ill, is a training to be observed.”

Dhamma should not be taught, going at the side of a path ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 73

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks eased themselves standing
Bu-Sk.73.1.1

“I will not ease myself standing if not ill, is a training to be observed.”

One must not ease oneself standing if not ill. Whoever out of disrespect eases himself standing if not ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ *uppatha*.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, ... if he is the first wrong-doer.

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 74

Bu-Sk.74.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks eased themselves and spat on green corn¹ ... “...

“I will not ease myself or spit, if not ill, on green corn,’ is a training to be observed.”

One should not ease oneself or spit, if not ill, on green corn. Whoever out of disrespect eases himself or spits, if not ill, on green corn, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if done where there is no green corn² he spreads³ green corn over it, if there are accidents, if he is mad, if he is the first wrongdoer.

BD.3.151

MONKS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 75

Bu-Sk.75.1.1

... in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks eased themselves and spat in the water. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, ease themselves and spit in the water, like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest

Vin.4.206

¹ *harita*, fresh—i.e., green wheat or cereals; vegetables, grass. ² *appaharita*, little or no green corn. Vin-a.897 reads *na harite*. Cf. Bu-Pc.19. ³ *ottharati*, to spread, to cover up. See also BD.1.137, n.4, and next *Sekhiya*, where *ottharati* seems to mean to pour or to sprinkle.

monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks ... in the water?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monks, ... in the water?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, ... in the water? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

‘I will not ease myself or spit in the water,’ is a training to be observed.”

And thus this rule of training for monks came to be laid down by the lord.

Bu-Sk.75.1.2

Now at that time ill monks were (too) scrupulous to ease themselves and spit in the water. They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, a monk if he is ill, to ease himself and spit in the water. And thus, monks, this rule of training should be set forth:

“I will not ease myself or spit in the water, if not ill,’ is a training to be observed.”

If one is not ill he should not ease himself or spit in the water. Whoever out of disrespect, if not ill, ... offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional, if he is not thinking, if he does not know, if he is ill, if done on dry land and he pours¹ water over it, if there are accidents, if he is mad, unhinged, in pain, if he is the first wrongdoer.

BD.3.152

The Seventh Division: that on shoes

Recited, venerable ones, are the rules of training. Concerning them, I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The venerable ones are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.

¹ *ottharati*. See previous note above.

Told are the Rules for Training

MONKS' DECIDING OF LEGAL QUESTIONS (ADHIKARAṄASAMATHA)

These seven rules, venerable ones, for the deciding of legal questions¹ come up for recitation. For the deciding, for the settlement of legal questions arising from time to time:

1. A verdict in the presence of² may be given.
2. A verdict of innocence³ may be given.
3. A verdict of past insanity⁴ may be given.
4. It may be carried out on (his) acknowledgement.⁵

¹ *adhikaraṇa*. This passage = Vin.4.351, and cf. DN.iii.254, AN.iv.144. The four kinds of *adhikaraṇa* are explained at Vin.2.88ff., and the ways of settling them at Vin.2.99ff. The four are stated merely, in definition of *adhikaraṇa*, at Vin.3.164 (=BD.1.282), Vin.4.126 (=above, BD.3.6), Vin.4.238 (=below, BD.3.206). See also Vin.3.168, Vin.3.173. At AN.i.99 (=GS.1.85) a list of monastic duties is given, ending with these seven ways of settling legal questions. For a full exposition of their working and significance, see S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, 156ff. ² *sammukhāvīnaya*. Vin.2.93 says there must be the presence of the Order, of *dhamma*, of discipline, and of the persons (disputing). Each of these is then defined. See also Vin.2.96, Vin.2.97; MN.ii.247. ³ *sativīnaya*. See Vin.1.325, Vin.2.99; MN.ii.247. *Vinaya Texts* i.68, *Vinaya Texts* iii.58 translate by “consciously innocent.” Such persons have been “mindful” (*sati*) in their behaviour, they do not remember (*sarati*) having fallen into any offence, therefore they are innocent of the charges brought against them. See also GS.1.85, n.7. ⁴ *amūḷhavīnaya*. See Vin.2.82, where this decision was made specially for the mad monk Gagga, and cf. Vin.1.123. Afterwards (Vin.2.100) it was formed into a “general rule for every similar case” (*Vinaya Texts* iii.18, n.2). See also MN.ii.248. ⁵ *paṭiññāya kāretabbaṃ*. See Vin.1.325, where it is said that to carry out this form of settling legal questions without the accused monk's acknowledgement of his offence is not a legally valid act; and Vin.2.83, where various official acts, if carried out against a monk without his acknowledgement, are said to give rise to a *dukkāṭa* offence. See MN.ii.248, for the way in which a monk should confess (*paṭideseti*) the offence into which he had fallen (*āpattiṃ āpanno*).

BD.3.153

Bu-As.1

Bu-As.2

Bu-As.3

Bu-As.4

Bu-As.5

BD.3.154
Bu-As.6
Bu-As.7

5. (There is) the decision of the majority.¹
6. The decision for specific depravity.²
7. The covering up (as) with grass.³

Recited, venerable ones, are the seven rules for the deciding of legal questions. Concerning them, I ask the venerable ones: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The venerable ones are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this.

¹ *yebhuyyasikā*, or “of a greater number.” It is explained at considerable length at [Vin.2.93ff.](#), and in less detail at [MN.ii.247](#), that if monks dwelling in one *āvāsa* are unable to settle legal questions themselves, they may take them to the monks dwelling in another *āvāsa*. At [Vin.2.84](#), however, this method is apparently not contemplated, for here it is said that if monks are unable to settle a legal question, they are allowed to agree upon an assigner of (voting) tickets, *salākagāhāpaka* (cf. *pattagāhāpaka* at [Vin.3.246 = BD.2.122, n.5. n.1](#)), and then to vote; but nothing is here said about consulting monks living in another *āvāsa*. At [Vin.2.85](#) ten ways are given for an invalid, and ten for a valid taking of votes, while at [Vin.2.98f.](#), three methods of taking votes are described. ² *tassapāpiyyasikā*, or the “obstinately wrong” (*Vinaya Texts* iii.28 q.v., n.3). This method of settling a legal question is to be employed when a monk “having denied (an offence) acknowledged it, having acknowledged it denied it, shelved the question by asking others, told a conscious lie,” [Vin.2.85](#), and cf. [Vin.4.1](#), where Hatthaka is said to have behaved in this way. The right way of carrying out this method of settling a legal question is given at [Vin.2.85](#), [Vin.2.86](#), and, rather differently, at [MN.ii.249](#). [AN.iv.347](#) states the proper practice in regard to a monk against whom these proceedings have been taken. ³ *tiṇavatthāraka*. The kinds of disputes to be settled by this method and the right procedure for carrying it out, are given at [Vin.2.86f.](#), and cf. [MN.ii.250](#).

MONKS' CONCLUSION

Recited, venerable ones, is the occasion, recited are the four rules for offences involving defeat, recited are the thirteen rules for offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, recited are the thirty rules for offences of expiation involving forfeiture, recited are the ninety-two rules for offences of expiation, recited are the four rules for offences which ought to be confessed, recited are the rules for training, recited are the seven rules for the deciding of legal questions. So much (of the sayings) of the lord, handed down in clauses,¹ contained in clauses, comes up for recitation every half month. All should train therein in harmony, on friendly terms, without contention.

BD.3.155

Told is the Great Analysis

Vin.4.208

¹ *sutta*, here, as elsewhere in Vinaya, meaning a clause, article, rule. See [BD.1, Introduction](#), p.x, and above, [BD.3.43, n.5](#).

Volume II

The Analysis of Nuns' Rules
(*Bhikkhunīvibhaṅga*)

Contents of Volume

Nuns' Defeat (<i>Pārājika</i>) 5	988
Nuns' Defeat (<i>Pārājika</i>) 6	996
Nuns' Defeat (<i>Pārājika</i>) 7	999
Nuns' Defeat (<i>Pārājika</i>) 8	1003
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 1	1006
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 2	1010
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 3	1014
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 4	1019
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 5	1023
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 6	1026
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 10	1029
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 11	1033
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 12	1035
Nuns' Formal Meeting (<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>) 13	1038

Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 1	1041
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 2	1044
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 3	1047
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 4	1049
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 5	1052
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 6	1054
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 7	1057
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 8	1059
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 9	1061
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 10	1062
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 11	1064
Nuns' Forfeiture (<i>Nissaggiya</i>) 12	1067
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 1	1069
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 2	1072
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 3	1074
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 4	1075
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 5	1077
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 6	1079
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 7	1081
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 8	1083
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 9	1085

Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 10	1087
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 11	1089
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 12	1091
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 13	1092
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 14	1093
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 15	1095
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 16	1098
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 17	1100
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 18	1102
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 19	1104
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 20	1106
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 21	1108
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 22	1110
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 23	1112
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 24	1115
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 25	1117
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 26	1119
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 27	1121
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 28	1123
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 29	1125
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 30	1127

Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 31	1129
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 32	1131
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 33	1133
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 34	1135
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 35	1137
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 36	1140
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 37	1143
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 38	1145
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 39	1146
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 40	1148
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 41	1150
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 42	1152
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 43	1154
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 44	1156
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 45	1157
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 46	1159
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 47	1160
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 48	1162
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 49	1164
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 50	1166
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 51	1167

Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 52	1170
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 53	1173
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 54	1175
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 55	1177
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 56	1179
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 57	1181
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 58	1183
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 59	1185
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 60	1186
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 61	1188
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 62	1190
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 63	1191
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 64	1194
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 65	1196
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 66	1198
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 67	1200
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 68	1202
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 69	1204
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 70	1206
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 71	1208
Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 72	1209

Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 73	1210
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 74	1212
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 75	1214
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 76	1216
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 77	1218
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 78	1220
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 79	1221
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 80	1223
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 81	1225
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 82	1227
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 83	1228
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 84	1229
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 85	1231
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 86	1233
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 87	1235
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 88	1236
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 89	1237
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 90	1238
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 91–93	1240
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 94	1241
Nuns' Expiation (Pācittiya) 95	1243

Nuns' Expiation (<i>Pācittiya</i>) 96	1245
Nuns' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 1	1247
Nuns' Confession (<i>Pāṭidesaniya</i>) 2-8	1249
Nuns' Training (<i>Sekhiya</i>) 1-75	1251
Nuns' Deciding of Legal Questions (<i>Adhikaraṇasamatha</i>)	1253
Nuns' Conclusion	1254

NUNS' DEFEAT (PĀRĀJIKĀ) 5

¹At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Then Sālha,² Migāra's grandson,³ became desirous of building a dwelling-house for the Order of nuns. Then Sālha, Migāra's grandson, having approached the nuns, spoke thus:

Bi-Pj.5.1.1
BD.3.156

“Ladies, I want to build a dwelling-place for the Order of nuns; give me a nun who is an overseer of repairs.”⁴

At that time four sisters had gone forth among the nuns: Nandā, Nandavatī, Sundarīnandā, Thullanandā.⁵ Among these, the nun Sundarīnandā⁶ had gone forth when she was young; she was beautiful, good to look upon, charming, she was clever, experienced, wise, she was skilled, energetic, she was possessed of consideration for those kinds of things,⁷ she was able to build, able to make arrangements.⁸ Then the nuns, having chosen the nun Sundarīnandā, gave (her) as overseer of repairs to Sālha, Migāra's grandson.

BD.3.157

Now at that time the nun Sundarīnandā constantly went to the dwelling of Sālha, Migāra's grandson, saying: “Give a knife, give a hatchet, give an axe, give a spade, give a chisel.”⁹ And Sālha, Migāra's grandson, constantly went to the nunnery to learn what was built and what was not built. These,¹⁰ through constantly seeing (one another), came to be in love. Then Sālha,

¹ Note by Sujato: *Pārājika* 1 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² Mentioned also at AN.i.193f. ³ Vin-a.900 says that he was the “grandson of Migāra's mother”—i.e., of Visākhā. ⁴ *navakammikā*, a superintendent. Cf. Vin.2.15 (masculine). Method of entrusting repairs to an overseer, and the qualities he should possess, are given at Vin.2.160. Cf. also Vin.2.172f. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.259. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.232, Vin.4.234. ⁷ *tatrupāyāya vimaṃsāya samannāgatā*. Cf. Vin.1.70. Vin-a.900 makes out that she was connected with the investigation or examination of the building or repairs that should be undertaken. ⁸ Cf. Vin.1.70. ⁹ Cf. Vin.3.144. ¹⁰ I.e., Sundarīnandā and Sālha.

Migāra's grandson, through not getting an opportunity to seduce the nun Sundarīnandā, for this purpose gave a meal for the Order of nuns. Then Sālha, Migāra's grandson, having appointed a seat in the refectory, thinking: "Some nuns are senior to the lady Sundarīnandā," appointed a seat to one side, and thinking: "Some are junior," appointed a seat to the other side.¹ He appointed a seat for the nun Sundarīnandā in a concealed place, in a corner, so that the nuns who were elders might conclude, "She is sitting with the junior nuns," and the junior nuns might conclude, "She is sitting with the nuns who are elders."

Vin.4.212

Then Sālha, Migāra's grandson, had the time announced to the Order of nuns, saying: "It is time, ladies, the meal is ready." The nun Sundarīnandā, having realised (what was happening), thinking: "Sālha, Migāra's grandson, is not benevolent (although) he gave a meal for the Order of nuns; he wants to seduce me. If I go, there will be trouble for me,"² ordered her pupil, saying: "Go, bring back almsfood for me, and if anyone asks for me, let it be known that I am ill."

"Very well, lady," the nun answered the nun Sundarīnandā.

At that time Sālha, Migāra's grandson, came to be standing outside the porch of the door, asking for the nun Sundarīnandā, saying: "Where, lady, is the lady Sundarīnandā; where, lady, is the lady Sundarīnandā?"

When he had spoken thus, the pupil of the nun Sundarīnandā spoke thus to Sālha, Migāra's grandson: "She is ill, sir; I will take back her almsfood." Then Sālha, Migāra's grandson, thinking: "This meal which I gave for the sake of the nuns was on purpose for the lady Sundarīnandā," and having commanded the people, having said: "Offer the meal for the Order of nuns," he approached the nunnery.

BD.3.158

At that time the nun Sundarīnandā came to be standing outside the porch of the monastery waiting for Sālha, Migāra's grandson. Then the nun Sundarīnandā saw Sālha, Migāra's grandson, coming from afar; seeing him, having entered the dwelling,³ having put on her upper robe including over her head,⁴ she lay down on a couch. Then Sālha, Migāra's grandson,

¹ See rights of seniority in a refectory, given at Vin.2.274. ² Cf. Vin.4.229=below, BD.3.188; Vin.4.339=below, BD.3.404. ³ *Upassaya*, doubtless meaning *bhikkhuni-upassaya*, nuns' quarters. ⁴ Cf. Bu-Sk.23, Bu-Sk.67.

approached the nun Sundarīnandā; having approached, she spoke thus to the nun Sundarīnandā: “What is your discomfort, lady? Why are you lying down?”

“Surely it is this, sir: she who desires is not desired.”

“How can I, lady, not desire you? But I did not get an opportunity to seduce you,” and filled with desire he came into physical contact¹ with the nun Sundarīnandā, also filled with desire.

Now at that time a nun, weakened by age, her feet affected,² came to be sitting down not far from the nun Sundarīnandā. That nun saw Salha, Migara’s grandson, filled with desire, coming into physical contact with the nun Sundarīnandā, (also) filled with desire; seeing them, she looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Sundarīnandā, filled with desire, consent to physical contact with a male person³ who is filled with desire?” Then this nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns, contented, conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training, these looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Sundarīnandā, filled with desire ... with a male person who is filled with desire?” Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. These monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the nun Sundarīnandā, filled with desire ... with a male person who is filled with desire?” Then these monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

Vin.4.213

BD.3.159

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Sundarīnandā, filled with desire ... with a male person filled with desire?”

“It is true, lord,” they said.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“It is not fitting, monks, in the nun Sundarīnandā, it is not suitable, it is not becoming, it is unworthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can the nun Sundarīnandā, filled with desire, consent to physical contact with a male person who is filled with desire? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased, but, monks, it is both for displeasing

¹ Cf. BD.1.201, n.3. ² *caraṇaḡilānā*. ³ *purisapuggala*, see Introduction, p.25ff.

those who are not (yet) pleased and those who are pleased, and for causing wavering in some.”

Then the lord, having in many a figure rebuked the nun Sundarīnandā for her difficulty in supporting¹ herself, for her difficulty in maintaining herself, having spoken in dispraise of great desires, of discontent, of clinging (to the obstructions²), of sloth; having in many a figure spoken in praise of ease in supporting oneself, of ease in maintaining oneself, of desiring little, of contentment, of expunging (evil), of punctiliousness, of graciousness, of decreasing (the obstructions),³ of putting forth energy⁴; having given reasoned talk to the monks on what is fitting, on what is suitable,⁵ he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.3.160

“On account of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training for nuns founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order, for the restraint of evil-minded nuns, for the ease of well-behaved nuns, for the restraint of cankers belonging to the here and now, for the combating of cankers belonging to other worlds, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased, for establishing what is verily *dhamma*, for following the rules of restraint.⁶ And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun, filled with desire, should consent to rubbing,⁷ or rubbing up against, or taking hold of or touching or pressing against a male person below the collar-bone, above the circle⁸ of the knees, if he is filled with desire, she also becomes one who is defeated, she is not in communion, she is one who touches above the circle of the knees.”⁹

Vin.4.214

Bi-Pj.5.2.1

Whatever¹⁰ means: she who is an elder or a junior or one of middle standing, this one, on account of relations, on account of birth, on account

¹ *dubbharatāya*, translated at GS.4.187, “luxury.” ² *saṅgamika* = *kilesasaṅgamika* at Vin.a.222; but at AN.iv.280, as gregariousness, sociability, it is contrasted with aloofness. ³ *apacaya*, translated at GS.4.187 “dispersion” (of rebirth). ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.21, Vin.3.171, and Vin.4.142. See BD.1.37, notes. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.120. ⁶ Cf. Vin.3.21. ⁷ On *āmasati* see BD.1.203, n.6. ⁸ *maṇḍala*, see above, BD.3.121. ⁹ *ubbhajānumaṇḍalikā*. Not explained in the Old Commentary. Vin-a.901 says, “it is only the name of this one who is defeated, therefore it is not considered in the *Padabhājanīya*.” ¹⁰ Cf. Vin.3.23 (=BD.1.42).

of name, on account of clan, on account of virtue, on account of the way of living, on account of the field of activity, is called whatever.

Nun means: she is a nun because she is a beggar for alms, she is a nun because she submits to walking for alms, she is a nun because she is one who wears the patch-work robes, she is a nun by the designation (of others), a nun because of her acknowledgement, a nun (to whom it was said, 'Come, nun,' a nun is one ordained by the three goings to a refuge, a nun is auspicious, a nun is the essential, a nun is a learner, a nun is an adept, a nun is ordained by both complete Orders by means of a (formal) act at which the motion is put and followed by three proclamations, irreversible and fit to stand.¹ In this way is this nun one who is ordained by both complete Orders by means of a (formal) act at which the motion was put and followed by three proclamations, irreversible, fit to stand, and this is how nun is to be understood in this case.²

BD.3.161

Filled with desire³ means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.

Filled with desire⁴ means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.⁵

A male person means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal; he is learned, competent⁶ to come into physical contact.

Below the collar-bone means: below the collar-bone.⁷

Above the circle of the knees means: above the circle of the knees.⁸

Rubbing means: merely rubbed.⁹

Rubbing up against means: moving from here and there.¹⁰

Taking hold of means: merely taken hold of.¹¹

Touching means: merely contact.¹²

Or should consent to pressing against means: having taken hold of a limb she consents to pressing against.

¹ *akuppa thānāraha*; probably meaning that the formal act should not be re-opened for discussion. ² Cf. *Vin.3.24* (=BD.1.42). ³ Feminine. ⁴ Masculine. ⁵ = *Vin.3.121*, *Vin.3.128* in definition of *otiṇṇa*, affected by desire. ⁶ Cf. definition of "woman" at *Vin.3.128*, MN.iii.192. ⁷ *adhakkhakaṇṇa ti heṭṭhakkhakaṇṇaṇi*. ⁸ *ubbhajāṇumaṇḍalan ti uparijānumaṇḍalaṇi*. ⁹ = *Vin.3.121*. ¹⁰ = *Vin.3.121*. ¹¹ = *Vin.3.121*. ¹² = *Vin.3.121*.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the preceding.¹

Becomes one who is defeated means: as a man with his head cut off cannot become one to live by attaching it to his body, so a nun, filled with desire, consenting to rubbing or to rubbing up against or to taking hold of or to touching or to pressing a man who is filled with desire below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees, becomes one who is not a recluse, not a daughter of the Sakyans; therefore she is called, **she becomes one who is defeated**.²

Is not in communion means: communion is called one (formal) act, one recital, an equal training; this is called communion. If it is not together with her, she is therefore called **not in communion**.³

BD.3.162

If both are filled with desire (and) she rubs the body⁴ below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees with the body, there is an offence involving defeat. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body, there is a grave offence. If she rubs the body with something attached to the body, there is a grave offence. If she rubs something attached to the body with something attached to the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs the body with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bi-Pj.5.2.2

If she rubs the body above the collar-bone, below the circle of the knees with the body, there is a grave offence. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs the body with something attached to the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with something attached to the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs the body with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with something that may be cast, there is

¹ Vin-a.901 says, in reference to the group of the four *Pārājika* (set forth in the Monks' Vibhaṅga, but to be observed by nuns also see Introduction [BD.3.32](#)). ² Cf. [Vin.1.96](#), [Vin.3.28](#).

³ Cf. [Vin.3.28](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.3.123ff](#).

an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.163

If one is filled with desire, and she rubs the body below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees with the body, there is a grave offence. If she rubs the body with something attached to the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If she rubs the body above the collar-bone, below the circle of the knees with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If both are filled with desire, and she rubs the body of a *yakkha* or of a departed one or of a eunuch or of an animal in human form, below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees with the body, there is a grave offence. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If she rubs the body above the collar-bone, below the circle of the knees, with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If one is filled with desire, and she rubs the body below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If she rubs the body above the collar-bone, below the circle of the knees with the body, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body ... If she rubs something that may be cast with something that may be cast, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.164

There is no offence if it is unintentional; if she is not thinking; if she does not know; if she does not consent; if she is mad, if her mind is unhinged, if

Bi-Pj.5.2.3

she is in pain, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Told is the First Offence involving Defeat in the Nuns' Analysis

¹ Cf. Vin.3.126.

NUNS' DEFEAT (PĀRĀJIKĀ) 6

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Sundarīnandā became pregnant by Saḷhā, Migāra's grandson. Until the embryo quickened she concealed it; when the embryo was matured, having left the Order, she gave birth. Nuns spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "Lady, Sundarīnandā not long after leaving the Order gave birth. We wonder if she was pregnant when she was a nun?"

Bi-Pj.6.1.1
BD.3.165

"Yes, ladies."

"But how is it that you, lady, knowing that a nun had fallen into a matter involving defeat,² neither reproved her yourself, nor spoke to a group?"

"Whatever is blame for her, that is blame for me; whatever is disgrace for her, that is disgrace for me; whatever is dishonour for her, that is dishonour for me; whatever is loss for her, that is loss for me. How can I, ladies, speak to others of my own blame, my own disgrace, my own dishonour, my own loss?"

Those who were modest nuns looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, knowing that a nun had fallen into a matter involving defeat, neither reprove her herself, nor speak to a group?" Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, having given reasoned talk, questioned the monks, saying:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā, knowing that a nun ... neither reproved her herself, nor spoke to a group?"

BD.3.166

"It is true, lord."

¹ Note by Sujato: *Pārājika* 2 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² As by Bi-Pj.5, having physical contact with a man.

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, knowing that a nun ... neither reprove her herself, nor speak to a group? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun, knowing that a nun has fallen into a matter involving defeat, should neither herself reprove her, nor speak to a group, but when she may be remaining or deceased or expelled or withdrawn,¹ should afterwards speak thus: ‘Ladies, before I knew this nun, she was a sister like this and like that,’ and should neither herself reprove her nor should speak to a group, she also becomes one who is defeated, she is not in communion, she is one who conceals a fault.**”²

Vin.4.217

Bi-Pj.6.2.1

Whatever means: she who ...

Nun means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

She knows means: either she knows by herself or others tell her or she³ tells (her).

Has fallen into a matter involving defeat means: of the eight offences involving defeat⁴ (she) has fallen into a certain offence involving defeat.

Should neither herself⁵ reprove her means: should neither herself reprimand her.

BD.3.167

Nor should speak to a group means: nor should speak to other nuns.

But when she may be remaining or deceased means: **Remaining** means she is called remaining in her own characteristic.⁶ **Deceased** means she is called one who has passed away. **Expelled** means she herself comes

¹ *avasatā*. See Old Commentary, below. *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives “having entered, having arrived”; *Pali-English Dictionary* “withdrawn, gone away, one who has left a community and, gone over to another sect.” ² *vajjapaṭicchādikā*, not explained in the Old Commentary. Vin-a.903 says it is merely the name of this *Pārājika* offence. Cf. Monks’ Bu-Pc.64. ³ I.e., the nun who has committed the *Pārājika* offence, Vin-a.903. Cf. Vin.3.265 = BD.2.161. ⁴ Vin-a.903 says, a certain one of the four in common with monks and of the four not in common with monks. The nuns had to observe the *Pārājika* of the Bhikkhu-Pātimokkha, as well as their own. ⁵ *attanā ... sayam*. ⁶ *ṭhitā nāma salinṅe ṭhitā vuccati*.

to be leaving the Order or she is expelled by others. **Withdrawn** means she is called one who has gone over to the fold of a sect.¹

Should afterwards speak thus: 'Ladies, before I knew this nun, she was a sister like this and like that,' and should neither herself reprove her means: should neither herself reprimand her; *nor speak to a group* means: nor should speak to other nuns.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Becomes one who is defeated means: as a withered leaf freed from the stalk cannot become green again,² so a nun, knowing that a nun has fallen into a matter involving defeat (and) thinking, 'I will neither myself reprove her, nor speak to a group,' in throwing off the responsibility,³ becomes one who is not a recluse, not a daughter of the Sakyans; therefore she is called, **she becomes one who is defeated.**

Is not in communion means: communion ... is therefore called **not in communion.**

There is no offence if she does not speak, thinking 'There will come to be quarrel or dispute or strife or contention for the Order'; if she does not speak, thinking 'There will come to be a schism in the Order or dissension in the Order'⁴; if she does not speak, thinking 'This one, harsh, rough, will bring⁵ danger to life or danger to the Brahma-life if she does not speak not seeing other suitable nuns; if she does not speak (though) not desiring to conceal; if she does not speak, thinking: 'It will be evident from her own action'; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.⁶

Bi-Pj.6.2.2

BD.3.168

Told is the Second Offence involving Defeat in the Nuns' Analysis

¹ *titthāyatanaṃ saṃkantā*. Cf. Vin.1.60, Vin.1.69, referring to one who formerly a member of another sect, *titthiya*, has gone back to it; Vin.2.279, where it is laid down that nuns who have joined the *titthiyas*, coming back to the Order of nuns, are not to be ordained again. *Titthāyatana* occurs at MN.i.483, AN.i.173, Ds.381, Ds.1003 See *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd. edition p.93, n.9, and LEDI SAYADAW, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1913, p.117.

² Cf. Vin.1.96, Vin.3.47. ³ Cf. BD.1.82. ⁴ = Vin.4.37, Vin.4.128, Vin.4.153. ⁵ *karissati*, literally will do or make. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.128 = above, BD.3.9.

NUNS' DEFEAT (PĀRĀJIKĀ) 7

Bi-Pj.7.1.1
BD.3.169

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā imitated the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer,² and who was suspended by a complete Order.³ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā imitate the monk ... suspended by a complete Order?” ... “It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā imitate the monk ... suspended by a complete Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should imitate him—a monk suspended by a complete Order, one who is disrespectful towards, who does not make amends towards,⁴ one who is unfriendly towards⁵ the rule,⁶ the discipline, the teacher's instruction—that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: ‘Lady, this monk, suspended by a complete Order, is disrespectful towards, he does not make amends towards, he is unfriendly towards the rule, the discipline, the teacher's instruction. Do not imitate this monk, lady.’ And if this nun, being spoken to thus by these nuns, should persist as before, that nun should be admonished by the nuns up to the third time for giving up this (course). If, being admonished up to the

BD.3.170

¹ Note by Sujato: *Pārājika* 3 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² See Monks' **Bu-Pc.68**, **Bu-Pc.69**.

³ See Monks' **Bu-Pc.69**. ⁴ *apaṭikāra*. Cf. **Vin.1.97**, *appaṭikamma* and *paṭikaroti* used with *āpatti*, an offence. Also **AN.ii.241ff.**, *yathādhammaṃ paṭikarissati*, he (or she) will make amends according to the rule, for having fallen into a *pārājika*, *saṃghādisesa*, *pācittiya* or *pāṭidesaniya(ka)* offence (*dhamma*). *Paṭikaroti* is also “to confess.” ⁵ *akatasahāya*. *Critical Pali Dictionary*'s “who has not taken an advocate” cannot be accepted here. ⁶ *dhamma*.

third time, she should give it up, that is good. But if she should not give it up, she also becomes one who is defeated, she is not in communion, she is an imitator of one who is suspended.”¹

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Complete Order means: belonging to the same communion, staying within the same boundary.²

Suspended means: suspended for not seeing or for not making amends for or for not giving up an offence.³

Towards the rule, the discipline means: towards whatever is the rule, whatever is the discipline.⁴

Towards the teacher's instruction means: towards the conqueror's instruction, the enlightened one's instruction.⁵

Disrespectful means: he does not heed an Order or a group or an individual or a (formal) act.

Does not make amends towards means: he is suspended, not restored.⁶

Unfriendly towards means: monks belonging to the same communion are called friends. He who is not together with these is therefore called unfriendly.

Should imitate him means: if he becomes one of such views, of such indulgence, of such pleasures, she too becomes one of those views, of that indulgence, of those pleasures.

That nun means: whatever nun is an imitator of one who is suspended.

By the nuns⁷ means: by other nuns: these see, these hear; she should be told by these saying: 'Lady, this monk, suspended by a complete Order, ... do not imitate this monk, lady.' And a second time she should be told ... And a third time she should be told ... If she gives it up, that is good; if she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having heard, they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That nun, having been pulled into the midst of the Order, should be told: 'Lady, this monk,

¹ As in Monks' Bu-Pc.68, this is more like *Saṅghādisesa* method and material than *Pārājika*.

² = above, BD.3.65, below, BD.3.193, and Vin.3.173. ³ = below, BD.3.193. ⁴ = below, BD.3.193.

⁵ = below, BD.3.193. ⁶ = above, BD.3.28, in definition of *akataṇudhamma*, "has not acted according to the rule." ⁷ Cf. Vin.3.178f., Vin.3.185.

suspended by a complete Order, ... do not imitate this monk, lady.' And a second time ... And a third time she should be told ... If she gives it up, that is good; if she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

That nun should be admonished. And thus, monks, should she be admonished: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so imitated a monk suspended by a complete Order, one who is disrespectful towards, who does not make amends towards, who is unfriendly towards the rule, the discipline, the teacher's instruction. She does not give up this course. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order admonish the nun so and so in order that she may give up this course. This is the motion. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so ... She does not give up this course. The Order admonishes the nun so and so in order that she may give up this course. If the admonishing of the nun so and so in order that she may give up this course is pleasing to the ladies, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, then you should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The nun so and so is admonished by the Order for giving up this course. It is pleasing to the Order ... So do I understand this.'

As a result of the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; as a result of two proclamations there are grave offences; at the end of the proclamations, there is an offence involving defeat.

BD.3.172

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

She becomes one who is defeated means: as a flat stone broken in half cannot be put together again,¹ so a nun, being admonished up to the third time, not giving it up, becomes one who is not a (true) recluse, not a daughter of the Sakyans; therefore she is called **she becomes one who is defeated**.

Vin.4.220

Not in communion means: communion ... is therefore called **not in communion**.

Bi-Pj.7.2.2

If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence involving defeat. If she is in

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.97](#), [Vin.3.74](#).

doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence involving defeat. If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence involving defeat. If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

There is no offence if she is not admonished; if she gives it up, if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

Bi-Pj.7.2.3

Told is the Third Offence involving Defeat

¹ Cf. Vin.3.174, Vin.3.177, Vin.3.179, Vin.3.186; Vin.4.136, where last clause of Bi-Pj.7.2.2 ends *anāpatti* instead of, as on these other occasions, *āpatti dukkaṭassa*. ² Cf. Vin.3.174, Vin.3.177, Vin.3.179, Vin.3.186; Vin.4.136, where last clause of Bi-Pj.7.2.2 ends *anāpatti* instead of, as on these other occasions, *āpatti dukkaṭassa*.

NUNS' DEFEAT (PĀRĀJIKA) 8

Bi-Pj.8.1.1
BD.3.173

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns, filled with desire, for the sake of following what was verily not the rule,² consented to taking hold of the hand of a male person who was filled with desire, and they consented to taking hold of the edge of (his) outer robe, and they stood and they talked and they went to a rendezvous and they consented to a man's approaching (them) and they entered into a covered place and they disposed the body for such a purpose.³ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the group of six nuns, filled with desire, for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, consent to ... and stand and talk and go to a rendezvous ... and enter ... and dispose ...?” “It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How, monks, can the group of six nuns ... consent to ... dispose the body for such a purpose? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun, filled with desire, for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, should consent to taking hold of the hand of a male person who is filled with desire or should consent to taking hold of the edge of (his) outer cloak or should stand or should talk or should go to a rendezvous or should consent to a man's approaching (her) or should enter into a covered place or should dispose the body for such a purpose, she also becomes one who is defeated, she is not in communion, she is

Vin.4.221

BD.3.174

¹ Note by Sujato: *Pārājika* 4 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² *asaddhamma*—i.e., Bu-Pj.1. Vin. a.904 calls *asaddhamma* “physical contact, not sexual intercourse.” Not explained in Old Commentary. ³ *kāyam pi tadatthāya upasaṃharanti*.

a doer of eight things.”¹

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pj.8.2.1

Filled with desire means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.²

Filled with desire means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.³

A male person means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal; he is learned, competent to come into physical contact.⁴

Should consent to taking hold of the hand means: hand means, going up from the tip of the nail as far as the elbow.⁵ If for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she consents to taking hold below the collarbone, above the circles of the knees, there is a grave offence.

Or should consent to taking hold of the edge of (his) outer cloak means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she consents to take hold of what he is clothed in⁶ or of what he has put on,⁷ there is a grave offence.

Or should stand means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she stands within the reach of a man's hand, there is a grave offence.

Or should talk means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she talks standing within the reach of a man's hand, there is a grave offence.

Or should go to a rendezvous means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she, being told by a man, 'Come to such and such a place,' goes (there), for every step there is an offence of wrong-doing. In merely approaching the reach of a man's hand, there is a grave offence.

Or should consent to a man's approaching means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, she consents to a man's approaching, there is an offence of wrong-doing. In merely approaching a reach of his hand, there is a grave offence.

BD.3.175

¹ *aṭṭhavattukā*, not explained in the Old Commentary, but it means the eight actions here referred to. ² =above, BD.3.161. ³ =above, BD.3.161. ⁴ =above, BD.3.161. ⁵ =Vin.3.121 (BD.1.203). ⁶ *nivattha*, referring to his inner robe. ⁷ *pāruta*, referring to his upper robe and outer cloak.

Or should enter into a covered place means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, in merely entering any concealed place whatever, there is a grave offence.

Or should dispose the body for such a purpose means: if for the sake of following what is verily not the rule, standing within the reach of a man's hand, she disposes the body, there is a grave offence.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

She becomes one who is defeated means: as a palmyra tree cut off at the crown cannot become one for new growth,¹ so a nun, completing² the eight courses,³ becomes one who is not a (true) recluse, not a daughter of the Sakyans; therefore she is called she becomes one who is defeated.

Not in communion means: communion ... is therefore called **not in communion**.

Bi-Pj.8.2.2

There is no offence if it is not intentional; if she is not thinking; if she does not know; if she does not consent: if she is mad, her mind unhinged, afflicted with pain, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Told is the Fourth Offence involving Defeat

BD.3.176

Recited, ladies, are the eight offences⁴ involving defeat; a nun having fallen into one or other of these does not receive communion together with the nuns; as before, so after, she becomes one who is defeated, she is not in communion. Concerning them, I ask the ladies: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The ladies are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.⁵

Vin.4.223

Told is the Portion on Defeat

¹ = Vin.1.97, Vin.3.92. ² *paripūrentī*, accomplishing. ³ *vatthu*, mode or course—i.e., the eight above specified. ⁴ According to Vin-a.906, four laid down for monks which are also to be followed by nuns, and these (above) four for nuns only; thus eight *Pārājika* rules are recited for the ladies at the joint recital the *Pātimokkha*. See BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxii.

⁵ Cf. Vin.3.109 = BD.1.190.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 1

These seventeen¹ things, venerable ones, entailing formal meetings of the Order, come for exposition.

Bi-Ss.1.1.1
BD.3.177

At one time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain lay-follower, having given a store-room² to an Order of nuns, passed away. He had two sons, one of no faith, not believing,³ the other with faith, believing. Then he of no faith, not believing, spoke thus to him with faith, believing: "The store-room is ours, let us deal it out."⁴ When he had spoken thus, the one with faith, believing, spoke thus to him of no faith, not believing: "Do not, sir, speak thus; it was given to the Order of nuns by our father." And a second time he of no faith, not believing, spoke thus to him with faith, believing: "The storeroom is ours, let us deal it out." Then the one with faith, believing, spoke thus to him of no faith, not believing: "Do not, sir, speak thus; it was given to the Order of nuns by our father." And a third time he of no faith ... "... let us deal it out." Then the one with faith, believing, thinking, "If it became mine, I also would give it to an Order of nuns," spoke thus to the one of no faith, not believing: "Let us deal it out." Then that store-room being dealt out by these, fell to⁵ him of no faith, not believing. Then the one of no faith, not believing, having approached the nuns, spoke thus: "You must depart, ladies, the store-room is ours." When

BD.3.178

¹ Ten are given in this section; but seven are the same as those already given in the *Saṅghādisesas* for monks; see below, **BD.3.212, n.1**, and **BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxiii**. ² *uddosita = bhaṇḍasālā* (Vin-a.906). *Uddosita* is sometimes a stable; cf. **Vin.3.200**, and *Vinaya Texts* iii.363, n.2. At **Vin.2.278** *uddosita* is "allowed," a lay-follower again being recorded to give one to an Order of nuns. ³ *appasanna*, or not pleased (with the master's teaching). ⁴ *bhājāma*; Sinhalese edition reads *bhājema*. ⁵ *pāpuṇāti*, to reach, attain, arrive at, to obtain to.

he had spoken thus, the nun Thullanandā spoke thus to that man:

“Do not, sir, speak thus; the store-room was given to the Order of nuns by your father.”

Saying: “Was it given¹ (or) not given?” they asked the chief ministers of justice. The chief ministers spoke thus:

“Who knows, ladies, if it was given to the Order of nuns?” When they had spoken thus, the nun Thullanandā spoke thus to these chief ministers:

Vin.4.224

“But, masters, was not the gift seen or heard of by you as it was being given, eye-witnesses having been arranged?” Then the chief ministers, saying: “What the lady says is true,” made over the store-room to the Order of nuns. Then that man, defeated, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“These shaven-headed (women) are not (true) recluses, they are strumpets.² How can they have the store-room taken away from us?” The nun Thullanandā told this matter to the chief ministers. The chief ministers had that man punished.³ Then that man, punished,⁴ having had a sleeping-place made for Naked Ascetics not far from the nunnery, instigated the Naked Ascetics, saying: “Talk down⁵ these nuns.” The nun Thullanandā told this matter to the chief ministers. The chief ministers had that man fettered. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these nuns have a store-room taken away (from him) and secondly have him punished and thirdly have him fettered? Now they will have him killed.”

BD.3.179

Nuns heard these people as they ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Thullanandā be one who speaks in envy?”⁶ Then these nuns told this matter to the monks ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā is one who speaks in envy?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

¹ Square brackets in text, but Sinhalese edition reads *dinno na dinno*. ² Cf. below, **BD.3.257**, **BD.3.275**. The word translated as “strumpets” is *bandhakiniyo*; cf. Ja.5.425. ³ *daṇḍāpesum*, perhaps beaten with a stick. ⁴ *daṇḍika*. ⁵ *accāvadatha*. Vin-a.906 says *atikkamitvā vadatha, akkosatha*, having surpassed them, talk, swear at them. ⁶ *ussayavādikā*.

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā be one who speaks in envy? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should be one who speaks in envy concerning a householder or a householder’s sons (or brothers¹) or a slave or a workman² and even concerning a wanderer who is a recluse,³ that nun has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once,⁴ entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”⁵

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Ss.1.2.1

One who speaks in envy means: she is called a bringer of law-suits.⁶

Householder means: he who lives in a house.⁷

Householder’s sons (or brothers) means: whoever are sons and brothers.⁸

BD.3.180

Slave means: born within, bought for money, taken in a raid.⁹

Workman¹⁰ means: a hireling, a worker.¹¹

Wanderer who is a recluse means: setting aside monk and nun and probationer and novice and female novice, he who is endowed with (the status of) wanderer.¹²

Vin.4.225

If she thinks, “I will bring a law-suit,” or looks about for a companion or goes herself,¹³ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she announces it to one (person), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she announces it to

¹ See Old Commentary below. ² *kammakāra*, or servant. ³ *samaṇaparibbājaka*. ⁴ *paṭhamāpattikaṃ*, which in Bi-Ss.1-Bi-Ss.6 is in opposition to *yāvataṭṭhāyika*, that which is not an offence until a nun has been admonished up to the third time (see Bu-Ss.7-Bu-Ss.10). Cf. Vin.3.186 (=BD.1.328). ⁵ *nissāraṇiyaṃ saṅghādisesaṃ*; cf. the similar construction, *nissaggiyaṃ pācittiyaṃ*, and see BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxvi. ⁶ *aṭṭakārīkā*, a maker of law-suits, cases, causes. ⁷ Cf. BD.2.47, BD.2.55, BD.2.148. ⁸ *yo koci puttabhātaro*. ⁹ = MN-a.3.8. These three are explained at Vin-a.361; four “slaves” mentioned at Mnd.11; cf. DN-a.1.168, DN-a.1.300. The last two, *dhanakkīta* and *karamarāṇita* (feminine) come into the description of the ten kinds of wife at Vin.3.140. ¹⁰ Cf. MN-a.3.8, DN-a.300. ¹¹ *āhataka*, “one who is beaten,” so *Pali-English Dictionary*. ¹² Cf. Vin.4.92, Vin.4.285. ¹³ Cf. Vin.3.47 (=BD.1.76). Above it means, according to Vin-a.907, if she looks about for a witness or friend; and if standing where there is a nunnery, or alms-road, she thinks, “I will bring a law-suit,” going from there to the magistrates, there is an offence of wrong-doing for every step that she takes.

a second, there is a grave offence. At the end of the law-suit, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

An offence at once means: she falls through transgression of a course,¹ not after admonition.²

Involving being sent away means: she is caused to be sent away from the Order.³

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: the Order inflicts the *mānattadiscipline* on account of her offence, it sends back to the beginning, it rehabilitates; it is not several (nuns), it is not one nun, therefore it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. A synonym for this class of offence is (formal) act, therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.⁴

BD.3.181

Bi-Ss.1.2.2

There is no offence if she goes being dragged along by people; if she asks for protection; if she explains without reference (to a particular person); if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *saha vatthujjhācārā*. ² Cf. below, BD.3.203. ³ *saṅghamhā nissāriyati*, explained by Vin-a.908 as *saṅghato nissāreti*. The -sār- causative, “she is made or caused to be sent away.” See BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxvi. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.112 (BD.1.196).

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 2

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time in Vesālī, the wife of a certain Licchavi came to be an adulteress. Then that Licchavi spoke thus to that woman: "Please desist, else will we do you harm." But being spoken to thus, she paid no heed. Now at that time a group of Licchavis were assembled in Vesālī on some business. Then that Licchavi spoke thus to those Licchavis: "Let the masters allow me power over one woman."¹

Bi-Ss.2.1.1
BD.3.182

"What is her name?"

"My wife commits adultery, I will kill her."

"Take your right,"² they said. Then that woman heard: "My husband wants to kill me," and taking precious belongings, having gone to Sāvattḥī, having approached members of other sects, she asked for the going forth.³ The members of other sects did not wish to let her go forth.⁴ Having approached nuns, she asked for the going forth. Neither did the nuns wish to let her go forth. Having approached the nun Thullanandā, having shown (her) the belongings, she asked for the going forth. The nun Thullanandā, having taken the belongings, let her go forth. Then that Licchavi, searching for that woman, having gone to Sāvattḥī, seeing her gone forth among the nuns, approached King Pasenadi of Kosala; having approached, he spoke thus to King Pasenadi of Kosala:

Vin.4.226

"Sire, my wife, taking precious belongings, has reached Sāvattḥī; let the king⁵ allow me power over her."

"Well now, good sir, having examined⁶ (her), explain."

"Sire, she was seen gone forth among the nuns."

¹ *ekam me ayyo itthim anujānātha.* ² *jānāhi.* ³ *pabbajjam yāci.* ⁴ *pabbājetum.* ⁵ *devo*
⁶ *vicinitvā.*

BD.3.183 “If, good sir, she has gone forth among the nuns, there is nothing to do against her.¹ Well preached by the lord is *dhamma*; let her lead the Brahma-life for the utter ending of ill.”²

Then that Licchavi, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these nuns let a woman thief go forth?”³

Nuns heard that Licchavi who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Thullanandā let a woman thief go forth?” Then these nuns told this matter to the monks ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā let a thief go forth?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā let a woman thief go forth? It is not monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

BD.3.184 “**Whatever nun should knowingly receive⁴ a woman thief found to merit death,⁵ without having obtained permission⁶ from a king or an Order or a group⁷ or a guild⁸ or a company,⁹ unless she is allowable,¹⁰ that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.**”

Bi-Ss.2.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood.

She knows means: either she knows by herself or others tell her or she tells her.

¹ *na sā labbhā kiñci kāṭum*, she is not a receiver of anything there is to do. ² Cf. *Vin.1.74-75*.

³ The Licchavi appears to lose sight of his wife’s original sin in his effort to recover the property. ⁴ *vuṭṭhāpeti*; cf. below, *BD.3.361*, and Introduction, p.xlvff. ⁵ *vajjhā*. ⁶ *anapaloketvā*, explained by *anāpucchā*, Old Commentary, below, and *anāpucchitvā* at *Vin-a.910*.

⁷ *Vin-a.910* makes out that this means a group of wrestlers and so on. But, preceded by *saṅgha*, it might have the usual Vinaya meaning of a group (of two to four monks or nuns). On the other hand, it is followed by two words that have no religious significance, and which denote associations of people “in the world.” ⁸ *pūga = dhammapūga*, “a guild under dhamma” (?), *Vin-a.910*. Probably a guild governed by some rule or law. ⁹ *seṇi*, a corporation, company or guild of artisans or traders following the same business or dealing in the same articles. *Vin-a.910* says here it is a *seṇi* of perfumers, of cloth merchants. Number given as eighteen at *Ja.6.22*. ¹⁰ *kappā*.

Woman thief¹ means: she who takes by means of theft (anything) having the value of five *māsakas* or more than five *māsakas* that has not been given—she is called a woman thief.

To merit death means: having done that for which she is condemned to death.

Found² means: she becomes known³ by other people, thinking, ‘This one merits death.’

Without having obtained permission means: not asking (for permission).⁴

King means: where a king governs,⁵ the king’s permission should be obtained.⁶

Order means: it is called an Order of nuns; the permission of the Order of nuns should be obtained.

Group means: where a group governs, the group’s permission should be obtained.

Company means: where a company governs, the company’s permission should be obtained.

Unless she is allowable means: having set aside one who is allowable. **Allowable** means: there are two who are allowable: either she who has gone forth among members of other sects, or she who has gone forth among other nuns.⁷

Vin.4.227

If she thinks, “I will receive one, unless she is allowable,” and looks about for a group or for a female teacher or for a bowl or for a robe or if she determines a boundary,⁸ there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of the motion, there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of two proclamations, there are grave offences. At the end of the proclamations, there is an offence involving a formal meeting of the Order for the female preceptor, an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the female teacher.⁹

BD.3.185

¹ Here feminine = Vin.3.47 (masculine). ² *viditā*. ³ *ñātā*. ⁴ =below, BD.3.360.

⁵ *anusāsati*, to govern, rule, advise, give instruction. ⁶ *rājā apaloketabbo*, or “the king should be asked for permission. But in spite of this grammatical construction, I think the two words, *apaloketi* and *āpucchati*, should be differently rendered. ⁷ These may be ordained without asking for permission.

⁸ See Vin.1.106 for prescribed method of determining a boundary. ⁹ With this passage, cf. above, BD.3.13, and below, BD.3.362.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Offence at once means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bi-Ss.2.2.2

If she thinks that she is a thief when she is a thief (and) receives her, unless she is allowable, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she is in doubt ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not a thief when she is a thief ... no offence. If she thinks that she is a thief when she is not a thief, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not a thief, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not a thief when she is not a thief, there is no offence.

Bi-Ss.2.2.3

There is no offence if she receives her, not knowing; if she receives one, she having obtained permission; if she receives one who is made allowable; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 3

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a nun who was a pupil of Bhaddā Kāpilānī,¹ having quarrelled with nuns, went to a family of (her) relations² in a village. Bhaddā Kāpilānī, not seeing that nun, asked the nuns, saying: "Where is so and so? She is not to be seen."

Bi-Ss.3.1.1
BD.3.186

"Lady, she is not to be seen (because) she has quarrelled with nuns."

"My dears,³ a family of her relations are in such and such a village; having gone there, look for her."

The nuns, having gone there, having seen that nun, spoke thus: "Why did you, lady, come alone? We hope that you were not violated?"

"I was not violated, ladies," she said. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can a nun go among villages⁴ alone?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun went among villages alone?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun go among villages alone? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

Vin.4.228

Whatever nun should go among villages alone, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the

BD.3.187

¹ A pupil (or pupils) of hers mentioned also at [Vin.4.268ff.](#) Bhaddā Kāpilānī mentioned with Thullanandā at [Vin.4.290](#), [Vin.4.292](#). Her verses are at [Thig.63](#)–[Thig.66](#). [Thig-a.68](#)–[69](#) says that, having gone forth under Mahāpajāpati, she soon won arahanship. Called foremost of the nuns able to remember previous lives, [AN.i.25](#). N.B. That, although nuns address her as "lady," she otherwise lacks a descriptive title. ² [Vism.91](#) distinguishes between *ñātikula* (as above), a family of relatives, and *upaṭṭhākakula*, a family of supporters. ³ *amma*.

⁴ *gāmantaram*, defined at [Vin.4.63=131](#).

Order involving being sent away.”

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Bi-Ss.3.2.1

At that time two nuns were going along the high-road from Sāketa to Sāvattthī. On the way there was a river to be crossed.¹ Then these nuns, having approached a boatman, spoke thus:

“Please, sir, take us across.”

Saying, “I am not able, ladies, to take both across at once,” he made one cross alone with him²; one who was across seduced the one who was across, one who was not across seduced the one who was not across. These, having met afterwards, asked (one another): “I hope that you, lady, were not violated?”

“I was violated, lady. But were you violated, lady?”

“I was violated, lady.” Then these nuns, having arrived at Sāvattthī, told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying :

“How can a nun go to the other side of a river alone?” Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun went to the other side of a river alone?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can a nun go to the other side of a river alone? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

BD.3.188

“Whatever nun should go among villages alone, or should go to the other side of a river alone, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

¹ Cf. *Vin.4.65*. ² *eko ekam uttāresi*. Cf. *eko ekāya* in the *Aniyatas*, *Vin.3.187ff.* meaning, the one (a monk) with the other (a woman); here meaning a man (*eko*) and a nun (*ekam*). They crossed alone together. In Monks’ *Bu-Pc.28* it is evidently thought safer to allow a nun to cross a river with a monk than to wait behind on the bank.

At that time several nuns, going to Sāvattthī through the country of Kosala, arrived in the evening at a certain village. A certain nun there was beautiful, good to look upon, charming. A certain man came to be in love with that nun on account of her appearance. Then that man, appointing a sleeping-place for those nuns, appointed a sleeping-place at one side for this nun. Then this nun, having realised, “This man is obsessed¹; if I come at night there will be trouble for me,”² not asking the nuns (for permission), having gone to a certain family, lay down in the sleeping-place. Then that man, having come during the night, searching for that nun, knocked against the nuns. The nuns, not seeing this nun, spoke thus: “Doubtless this nun has gone out together with the man.”

Bi-Ss.3.3.1

Vin.4.229

Then this nun, at the end of that night, approached those nuns. The nuns spoke thus to that nun: “Why did you, lady, go out together with the man?”

Saying: “Ladies, I did not go out together with the man,” she told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can a nun be away for a night alone ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun was away for a night alone? ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should go among villages alone, or should go to the other side of a river alone, or should be away for a night alone, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

At that time several nuns were going along the highroad to Sāvattthī through the country of Kosala. A certain nun there, wanting to relieve herself, having stayed behind alone, went on afterwards. People, having seen that nun, seduced her. Then that nun approached those nuns. The nuns spoke thus to that nun: “Why did you, lady, stay behind alone? We hope that you were not violated?”

Bi-Ss.3.4.1
BD.3.189

“I was violated, ladies.”

¹ = Vin.4.94. ² = Vin.4.212.

Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can a nun stay behind a group alone?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun stayed behind a group alone?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: “How, monks, can a nun stay behind a group alone? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not” (yet) pleased ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should go among villages alone, or should go to the other side of a river alone, or should be away for a night alone, or should stay behind a group alone, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”

Vin.4.230

Bi-Ss.3.5.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Should go among villages alone means: in making the first foot cross¹ the enclosure of a village that is fenced in, there is a grave offence. In making the second foot cross, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.² In making the first foot cross the precincts of a village that is not fenced in, there is a grave offence. In making the second foot cross, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Or should go to the other side of a river alone means: having covered up the three circles,³ it is called a river there wherever, as a nun is crossing over, the inner robe is made wet. In making the first foot cross over,⁴ there is a grave offence. In making the second foot cross over, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.3.190

Or should be away for a night alone means: at sunrise, if leaving a hand’s reach of a nun who is a companion, there is a grave offence. When she has left it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Or should stay behind a group alone means: if she, in what is not a village, in what is jungle, is leaving the range⁵ of sight or the range of hearing of a nun who is a companion, there is a grave offence. When she has left it, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

¹ *atikkāmentiyā*. *Atikkamati* is to go beyond, to pass over. ² Cf. *Vin.3.52*. ³ I.e., the navel and the two knees. ⁴ *uttarantiyā*. ⁵ *upacāra*, literally precincts; cf. *Vin.4.93*.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Offence at once means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

There is no offence if the nun who is the companion has gone away or has left the Order or has passed away or has gone over to (another) side¹; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

Bi-Ss.3.5.2

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.313](#) below, and [Vin.1.60](#), where these four words occur. Of the last, *pakkhasaṃkanta*, *Vinaya Texts* i.178, n.1 says, “Buddhaghosa can scarcely be right in explaining it by *titthiyapakkhasaṃkanta*.” The commentarial explanation on the above passage is *titthāyatānaṃ saṃkantā*, gone over to members of another sect (*Vin-a.913*), a phrase which also occurs at [Vin.4.217](#) (=above, [BD.3.167](#)). At the same time, I do not think that *pakkha* necessarily means “a (schismatic) faction,” as translated at *Vinaya Texts* i.178, although it undoubtedly has this meaning at [Vin.3.173](#), [Vin.3.175](#). For it can also mean another side or part of the Order, one of its sub-divisions, and in such cases does not imply any hostility, schism or dissension. At [Vin.1.307f.](#), we hear of people giving water and robes to one and the same *pakkha* or to different *pakkha*. In the former case the *pakkha* is said to be the owner, in the latter the *saṅgha*. Had the *pakkha* been regarded as schismatic, it would hardly have been considered entitled to receive these gifts. ² Cf. below, [BD.3.353](#).

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 4

Bi-Ss.4.1.1
BD.3.191

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ the nun Caṇḍakālī² was one who made strife, who made quarrels, who made contention, who made brawls, who made disputes in the Order.³ The nun Thullanandā protested when a (formal) act was being carried out against her.⁴ At that time the nun Thullanandā went to a village on some business. Then the Order of nuns, thinking: "The nun Thullanandā has gone away," suspended⁵ the nun Caṇḍakālī for not seeing an offence. The nun Thullanandā having concluded that business in the village, returned again to Sāvattthī. When the nun Thullanandā was coming, the nun Caṇḍakālī neither made ready a seat, nor put out⁶ water for washing her feet, a foot-stool,⁷ a foot-stand,⁸ nor having gone out to meet her did she take her bowl and robe, nor did she offer her drinking-water. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to the nun Caṇḍakālī:

Vin.4.231

"Why did you, lady, when I was coming, neither make ready a seat for me nor put out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand, nor having gone out to meet me, take my howl and robe, nor offer me drinking-water?"

BD.3.192

"Surely it is this, lady, that I am without a mistress⁹ in regard to this."

¹ Cf. Nuns' Bi-Pc.53 below. ² An obstreperous nun, mentioned at Vin.4.276, Vin.4.277, Vin.4.293, Vin.4.309, Vin.4.331, Vin.4.333. ³ Cf. Vin.4.12, Vin.4.150, Vin.4.309. At AN.iii.252 it is said that five disadvantages are to be expected for such a monk—also probably for such a nun. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.3.58. ⁵ *ukkhipi*. On *ukkhitta*, past participle of *ukkhīpati*, see above, BD.3.28, n.4. ⁶ *upanikkhipati*, to lay down near, to store. ⁷ *pādapīṭha*. Vin-a.913 says a stool (*ṭhapanaka*) to put the washed feet on. ⁸ *pādakathalika*. According to Vin-a.913, "a stool to put the unwashed feet on"—i.e., probably another kind of foot-stool. Buddhaghosa on Kd.12.1.1 says that *pādakathalika* alternatively means a towel to rub the feet with. This word and the two preceding occur also at Vin.1.9, Vin.1.312; Vin.2.22, Vin.2.31; see *Vinaya Texts* i.92, n., *Vinaya Texts* ii.373, n.5. ⁹ *anāthā*, or helpless, deserted, without a protector.

“But why are you, lady, without a mistress?”

“Lady, these nuns, saying of me, ‘She is without a mistress, she is not esteemed, there is no one who can answer for¹ her,’ suspended me for not seeing an offence.”

The nun Thullanandā, saying, “These are ignorant, these are inexperienced, they do not (even) know a (formal) act or the defect of a (formal) act² or the failure of a (formal) act³ or the success of a (formal) act⁴; but we know a (formal) act and the defect of a (formal) act and the failure of a (formal) act and the success of a (formal) act, and we may make them carry out a (formal) act that was not carried out or we may find fault with⁵ a (formal) act that was carried out,” and having very quickly convened an Order of nuns, she restored⁶ the nun Caṇḍakalī. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā, without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings⁷ in accordance with the rule, the discipline, the teacher’s instruction,⁸ not having learnt the desire⁹ of a group, restore a nun suspended by a complete Order?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā, without having obtained permission ... restored a nun suspended by a complete Order?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, without having obtained permission ... restore a nun suspended by a complete Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased. And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun, without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings in accordance with the rule, the discipline, the teacher’s instruction, not having learnt the group’s desire, should restore a nun suspended by a complete Order, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meet-

¹ *pativattar*. Word occurs also at SN.i.222. ² *kammadosa*. ³ *kammavipatti*.
⁴ *kammasampatti*. ⁵ *kopeyyāma*. Cf. above, BD.3.63, *kopetukāma*. ⁶ *osāreti*. Cf. Vin.4.137=above, BD.3.28, q.v. and note. ⁷ *kāraṣaṅgha*. ⁸ Cf. Vin.4.126, Vin.4.152, Vin.4.218. ⁹ *chanda*, desire or partiality, as in the four *agatis*; consent of an absentee, as in Monks’ Bu-Pc.79, Bu-Pc.80.

ing of the Order involving being sent away.”

Bi-Ss.4.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Vin.4.232

Complete Order means: belonging to the same communion, staying within the same boundary.¹

Suspended means: suspended for not seeing or for not making amends for or for not giving up an offence.²

In accordance with the rule, the discipline means: according to whatever is the rule, according to whatever is the discipline.³

(In accordance with) the teacher's instruction means: in accordance with the conqueror's instruction, the enlightened one's instruction.⁴

Without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings means: not having asked (the permission) of the Order which carried out the (formal) act.

Not having learnt⁵ the desire means: not having known the desire of a group.

BD.3.194

If she thinks, “I will restore (her),” (and) looks about for a group or determines a boundary, there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of the motion, there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of two proclamations, there are grave offences. At the end of the proclamations, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Offence at once means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bi-Ss.4.2.2

If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) restores her, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) restores her, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act,

¹ Cf. above, BD.3.65, BD.3.170, and Vin.3.173. ² Cf. above, BD.3.170. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.170.

⁴ Cf. above, BD.3.170. ⁵ *anaññāya ... ajānitvā*.

there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if, having obtained permission from, the Order which carried out the (formal) act, she restores (her); if she restores (her) having known that it is the desire of the group; if she restores one who is behaving so as to get rid of the fault¹; if she restores (her), there being no Order which carried out the (formal) act; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Ss.4.2.3

¹ *vatte vattantiṃ osāreti*, one taking steps about, proceeding in regard to, what has been done.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 5

Bi-Ss.5.1.1
BD.3.195

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Sundarīnanda was beautiful, good to look upon, charming.¹ People, having seen the nun Sundarīnanda in the refectory, were filled with desire (and) gave the very best meals to the nun Sundarīnanda² who was filled with desire. The nun Sundarīnanda ate as much as she pleased; other nuns did not obtain as much as expected. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Sundarīnanda, filled with desire, having accepted with her own hand from the hand of a man who is filled with desire, solid food, soft food, eat it, partake of it?" ...

Vin.4.233

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Sundarīnanda, filled with desire ... ate it, partook of it?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Sundarīnanda, filled with desire, having accepted with her own hand ... solid food or soft food, eat it, partake of it? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... And thus, monks ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, filled with desire, having accepted with her own hand from the hand of a man who is filled with desire, solid food or soft food, should eat it or partake of it, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away."

Bi-Ss.5.2.1

BD.3.196

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ Cf. Vin.4.211 (=above, BD.3.156), Vin.4.234 (=below, BD.3.198). ² To here from beginning = Bi-Ss.6.

Filled with desire¹ means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.

Filled with desire² means: infatuated, full of desire, physically in love with.

Man means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal³; he is learned, competent to be infatuated.

Solid food means: having set aside the five (kinds of) meals⁴ (and) water for cleansing the teeth,⁵ the rest is called solid food.

Soft food means: the five kinds (of) meals: conjei, barley-meal, food made with flour, fish, meat.⁶

If, thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," she accepts, there is a grave offence. For every mouthful there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Offence at once means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

If she accepts water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If one is filled with desire (and) she accepts, thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is a grave offence. If she accepts water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If both are filled with desire (and) thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," she accepts from the hand of a *yakkha* or of a departed one or of a eunuch or of an animal in human form, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is a grave offence. If she accepts water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If one is filled with desire (and) she accepts, thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she accepts water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

¹ =above, BD.3.161. ² =above, BD.3.161. ³ =above, BD.3.161. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.83. ⁵ See Monks' Bu-Pc.40. ⁶ =Vin.4.83.

Bi-Ss.5.2.3

There is no offence if neither comes to be filled with desire; if she accepts, knowing, "He is not filled with desire"; if he is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 6

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Sundarīnandā was beautiful, good to look upon, charming. People, having seen the nun Sundarīnandā in the refectory, were filled with desire (and) gave the very best meals to the nun Sundarīnandā.¹ The nun Sundarīnandā, being scrupulous, did not accept. The nun immediately following her² spoke thus to the nun Sundarīnandā: "Why do you, lady, not accept?"

Bi-Ss.6.1.1
BD.3.198

"He is filled with desire, lady."

"But are you, lady, filled with desire?"

"I am not filled with desire."

"What can this man,³ whether he is filled with desire or not filled with desire, do to you, lady, since you are not filled with desire? Please, lady, eat or partake of the solid food or the soft food which this man is giving to you, you having accepted it with your own hand."

Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun speak thus: 'What can this man ... Please, lady, eat or partake of ... having accepted it with your own hand'?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun spoke thus: 'What can this man ... Please, lady, eat or partake of ... having accepted it with your own hand'?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun speak thus: 'What can this man ... Please, lady, eat or partake of ... having accepted it with your own hand'? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

BD.3.199

¹ = opening of *Bi-Ss.5*, above. ² I.e., in the procession for alms. ³ *purisapuggala*, as at *Vin.4.212*.

“Whatever nun should speak thus: ‘What can this man, whether he is filled with desire or not filled with desire, do to you, lady, since you are not filled with desire? Please, lady, eat or partake of the solid food or the soft food which this man is giving to you, you having accepted it with your own hand,’ that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence at once, entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”

Bi-Ss.6.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Should speak thus: ‘What can this man ... with your own hand’ (and) instigates¹ her, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, at her bidding she accepts, thinking, “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is a grave offence. At the end of the meal, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Vin.4.235

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Offence at once means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bi-Ss.6.2.2

If she instigates her, saying: “Accept water for cleansing the teeth,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, at her bidding she accepts, thinking, “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing.

If one is filled with desire (and) she instigates her saying: “Eat or partake of solid food or soft food from the hand of a *yakkha* or of a departed one or of a eunuch or of an animal in human form,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, at her bidding she accepts, thinking: “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of wrong-doing. At the end of the meal, there is a grave offence. If she instigates her, saying: “Accept water for cleansing the teeth,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If at her bidding she accepts, thinking: “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing,

BD.3.200

Bi-Ss.6.2.3

There is no offence if she instigates her knowing that he is not filled with desire; if she instigates her, thinking: “Being angry, she does not accept”; if

¹ *uyyojeti*.

she instigates her, thinking: “She does not accept out of compassion for a family”; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 10

Bi-Ss.10.1.1
BD.3.201

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Caṇḍakālī, having quarrelled with nuns,² angry, displeased, spoke thus: "I repudiate³ the enlightened one, I repudiate *dhamma*, I repudiate the Order, I repudiate the training. What indeed are these recluses who are recluses, daughters of the Sakyans? For there are other recluses, conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training; I will lead the Brahma-life among these." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Caṇḍakālī, a nun, angry, displeased, speak thus: 'I repudiate ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these?'" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Caṇḍakālī, angry, displeased, spoke thus: 'I repudiate ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these?'"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

Vin.4.236

"How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakālī, angry, displeased, speak thus: 'I repudiate ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, angry, displeased, should speak thus: 'I repudiate the enlightened one ... I repudiate the training. What indeed are these recluses who are recluses, daughters of the Sakyans? For there are other recluses, conscientious, scrupulous,' desirous of training; I will lead the Brahma-life among these,' that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: 'Do not, lady, angry, displeased, speak thus: "I repudiate the enlightened one ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these." Be satisfied,

BD.3.202

¹ Note by Sujato: *Saṅghādisesa* 7 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² See Bi-Ss.4, where she is again shown as quarrelsome. ³ *paccācikkhati*, intensive of *paccakkhāti*, on which see BD.1.40, n.2.

lady, *dhamma* is well preached, lead the Brahma-life for the utter ending of ill.' And if that nun, being spoken to thus by the nuns, persists as before, that nun should be admonished by the nuns up to a third time¹ for giving up that (course). If, being admonished up to a third time, she should give it up, that is good. If she should not give it up, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence on the third (admonition),² entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Angry, displeased means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.³

Should speak thus means: 'I repudiate ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these.'

That nun means: whatever nun speaks thus.

By the nuns means: by other nuns who see, who hear; she should be told by these⁴: "Do not, lady, angry, displeased ... for the utter ending of ill." And a second time she should be told, and a third time she should be told. If she gives it up, that is good. If she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having heard, they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. And that nun, having been pulled into the midst of the Order, should be told: "Do not, lady, angry, displeased, speak thus: 'I repudiate the enlightened one, I repudiate, *dhamma*, I repudiate the Order, I repudiate the training ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these.' Be satisfied, lady, ... lead the Brahma-life for the utter ending of ill." And a second time she should be told, and a third time she should be told. If she gives it up, that is good. If she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That nun should be admonished. And thus, monks should she be admonished: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: "Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so, angry, displeased, spoke thus: 'I repudiate ... I will lead the Brahma-life among these.' She does not give up this course. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order admonish the nun so and so for giving up this course. This is the motion.

¹ *yāvatatiyaṃ*. ² *yāvatatīyakāṃ*. Cf. [BD.1.328](#), n.2. ³ = [Vin.3.255](#) ([BD.2.140](#)), [Vin.4.146](#) (above, [BD.3.47](#)), [Vin.4.238](#) (below, [BD.3.206](#)); cf. [Vin.3.163](#) ([BD.1.281](#)). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.3.178](#), [Vin.3.185](#) ([BD.1.312](#), [BD.1.326](#)).

Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so ... She does not give up this course. The Order admonishes the nun so and so for the giving up of this course. If the admonition of the mm so and so for the giving up of this course is pleasing to the ladies, let them be silent. If it is not pleasing, then you should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The nun so and so is admonished by the Order for the giving up of this course. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.”

As a result of the motion, there is an offence of wrong-doing; as a result of two proclamations, there are grave offences. At the end of the proclamations, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she is committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the offence of wrong-doing according to the motion and the grave offences according to the two proclamations, subside.¹

She also means: she is so called in reference to the former.

Up to the third time means: she falls on the third admonition, not through transgression of a course.²

Involving being sent away means: she is caused to be sent away by the Order.

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

BD.3.204

Bi-Ss.10.2.2

If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

¹ Cf. BD.1.302, BD.1.307, BD.1.313, BD.1.327. ² Cf. above, BD.3.180. ³ Cf. BD.1.302, BD.1.307, BD.1.313, BD.1.327.

There is no offence if she is not admonished, if she gives it up; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bi-Ss.10.2.3

¹ Cf. [BD.1.302](#), [BD.1.307](#), [BD.1.313](#), [BD.1.327](#).

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 11

Bi-Ss.11.1.1
BD.3.205

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Caṇḍakālī,² overthrown³ in some legal question, angry, displeased, spoke thus: "The nuns are following a wrong course through desire and the nuns are following a wrong course through hatred and the nuns are following a wrong course through stupidity and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady, the nun Caṇḍakālī ... displeased, speak thus: '... and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear?'" ...

Vin.4.238

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakālī, ... displeased, speak thus: '... and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear'? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... set forth this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, overthrown in some legal question, angry, displeased, should speak thus: 'The nuns are following a wrong course through desire ... and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear,' that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: 'Do not, lady, overthrown in some legal question, angry, displeased, speak thus: "The nuns are following a wrong course through desire ... and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear." The lady herself⁴ may go (wrong)⁵ from desire, and she may go (wrong) from hatred and she may go (wrong) from stupidity and she may go (wrong) from fear.' And if this nun, being spoken to thus by the nuns, persists as before, she should be admonished up to a third time for giving up that (course). If, being admonished up

BD.3.206

¹ Note by Sujato: *Saṅghādisesa* 8 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² Cf. Bi-Ss.4, Bi-Ss.10.

³ *paccākatā*. ⁴ *kho*. ⁵ *gaccheyya*.

to a third time, she should give it up, that is good. If she should not give it up, that nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence on the third (admonition), entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away.”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Ss.11.2.1

In some legal question means: legal question means, there are four (kinds of) legal questions: legal questions arising out of disputes legal questions arising out of censure, legal questions arising out of transgressions, legal questions arising out of obligations.¹

Overthrown means: she is called defeated.²

Angry, displeased means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.³

Should speak thus means: saying, “The nuns are following a wrong course through desire ... and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear.”

That nun means: whatever nun speaks thus.

By the nuns means: by other nuns who see, who hear; she should be told by these: “Do not, lady, overthrown ... and she may go (wrong) from fear.” And a second time she should be told. And a third time she should be told ... (see **Bi-Ss.10.2.1–Bi-Ss.10.2.3**. *Instead of* Do not, lady, angry, etc., *read* Do not, lady, overthrown, etc.; *instead of* this nun so and so, angry, etc., *read* this nun so and so, overthrown, etc.) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.239

¹ = Vin.3.164 (BD.1.282), BD.4.126 (=above, BD.3.6). ² parājītā. ³ See BD.3.47 above, for references.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 12

Bi-Ss.12.1.1
BD.3.207

¹ ... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns who were pupils of the nun Thullanandā lived in company,² they were of evil habits, of evil repute, of evil ways of living,³ vexing⁴ the Order of nuns, concealing one another's sins.⁵ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns live in company ... concealing one another's sins?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns live in company ... concealing one another's sins?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns live in company ... concealing one another's sins? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

"In case nuns live in company, of evil habits, of evil repute, of evil ways of living, vexing the Order of nuns, concealing one another's sins, those nuns should be spoken to thus by the nuns: 'Sisters are living in company ... concealing one another's sins. Let the ladies desist⁶; the Or-

BD.3.208

¹ Note by Sujato: *Saṅghādisesa* 9 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² *saṃsaṅghā viharati*. Cf. [Vin.4.293](#), *saṃsaṅghā viharati gahapatināpi gahapatiputtana pi*, with householders and householders' sons; [Vin.4.333](#), *purisaṃsaṅghā kumārakaṃsaṅghā*, in the company of men and youths; [Vin.2.4](#), *gihisaṃsaṅgho*, in the company of, or in association with, householders. [Vin-a.915](#) says *missibhūtā*, become mixed up with (the world), and that in regard to the body they were pounding and cooking for householders, perfuming and adorning themselves, using garlands and chains, and in regard to their speech they were acting as go-betweens, carrying messages and replies. *Saṃsaṅghā viharati* occurs at [AN.iii.109](#). ³ *pāpasiloka*. ⁴ *vihesikā*. Cf. *vihesā*, vexation, at [BD.3.41](#) above; and *vihesaka*, vexing, at [Vin.4.36](#) (= [BD.2.231f.](#)), where it means keeping silence. ⁵ *vajja*. Cf. [Vin.3.171](#) (= [BD.1.297](#)).

der praises this detachment in sisters.' But if these nuns, being spoken to thus by the nuns, should persist as before, these nuns should be admonished by the nuns up to the third time for giving up that (course). If, being admonished up to the third time they should give it up, that is good. If they should not give it up, these nuns also have fallen into a matter that is an offence on the third (admonition), entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away."

In case nuns means: they are called ordained.

Bi-Ss.12.2.1

Are living in company means: in company means that they are living in company unbecomingly in regard to body and speech.

Of evil habits means: they are possessed of depraved habits.

Of evil report means: they are notorious¹ because of (their)² bad reputation.³

Of evil ways of living means: they lead life by means of an evil, wrong mode of livelihood.

Vexing the Order of nuns means: they protest when a (formal) act is being carried out against each other.

Vin.4.240

Concealing one another's sins means: they reciprocally conceal a sin.

Those nuns means: those nuns who live in company.

By the nuns means: by other nuns who see, who hear; they should be told by these: "Sisters are living in company ... detachment in sisters." And a second time they should be told. And a third time they should be told ... (see Bi-Ss.10.2.1. *Instead of* Do not, ladies, angry, etc., *read* Sisters are living in company, etc.; *instead of* that nun) ... does not give up that course *read* those nuns ... do not give up that course; *instead of* this nun so and so *read* these nuns so and so and so and so are living in company ... they do not give up that course ... the nuns so and so and so and so should be admonished ... are admonished for giving up that course ... If they are committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the offence

BD.3.209

⁶ *viviccati*, separate themselves, be alone. Cf. below, BD.3.210. ¹ *abbhuggatā*, literally spread abroad. ² Vin-a.915 says "the bad reputation of these, *etāsāṃ*, means 'evil report.'

³ *pāpaka kittisadda*.

of wrong-doing according to the motion and the grave offences according to the two proclamations, subside.

Two or three should be admonished together. More than that should not be admonished together.

These nuns also means: they are so called in reference to the former.

Up to the third time means: they fall on the third admonition, not through transgression of a course.

Involving being sent away means: they are caused to be sent away¹ from the Order,

Offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order means: ... therefore again it is called an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order.

Bi-Ss.12.2.2

If they think that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) do not give up ... (see **Bi-Ss.10.2.2**) ... If they think that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bi-Ss.12.2.3

There is no offence if they are not admonished; if they give it up; if they are mad, if they are the first wrong-doers.

¹ Oldenberg, **Vin.4.366**, says that the correct reading is *nissāriyanti*, as against text's *nissāriyati*.

NUNS' FORMAL MEETING (SAṄGHĀDISESA) 13

¹ ... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, admonished by the Order, spoke thus to the nuns: "Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise. For there are in the Order other nuns of such habits, of such repute, of such ways of living, vexing the Order of nuns, concealing one another's sins²; the Order does not say anything to these. It is to you yourselves that the Order, out of disrespect, out of contempt, out of impatience,³ in gossiping, on poor evidence,⁴ says this: 'Sisters are living in company, of evil habits, of evil repute, of evil ways of living, vexing the Order of nuns, concealing one another's sins. Let the ladies desist; the Order praises this detachment in sisters.'" Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

Bi-Ss.13.1.1
BD.3.210

Vin.4.241

"How can the lady Thullanandā, admonished by the Order, speak thus to nuns: 'Ladies, live you as though in company ... detachment in sisters' ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā, admonished by the Order, spoke thus to nuns: 'Ladies, live you ... detachment in sisters'?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, admonished by the Order, speak thus to nuns: 'Ladies, live you ... praises this detachment in sisters'? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should speak thus: 'Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise. For there are in the Order other nuns of such habits, of such repute, of such ways of living, vexing the Order

BD.3.211

¹ Note by Sujato: *Saṅghādisesa* 10 in I.B. Horner's edition. ² See *Bi-Ss.12*. ³ Five disadvantages of being "impatient" given at AN.iii.254. ⁴ *dubbalyatā*. See Journal of the Pali Text Society 1886, p.129.

of nuns, concealing one another's sins; the Order does not say anything to these. It is to you yourselves that the Order, out of disrespect, out of contempt, out of impatience, in gossiping, on poor evidence, says this: "Sisters are living in company, of evil habits, of evil repute, of evil ways of living, vexing the Order of nuns, concealing one another's sins. Let the ladies desist, the Order praises this detachment in sisters," — that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: 'Do not, lady, speak thus: "Sisters are living in company ... detachment in sisters.'" And if that nun, being spoken to thus by the nuns, should persist as before, that nun should be admonished by the nuns up to a third time for giving up that (course). If, being admonished up to a third time, she should give it up, that is good. If she should not give it up, this nun also has fallen into a matter that is an offence on the third (admonition), entailing a formal meeting of the Order involving being sent away."

Bi-Ss.13.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Should speak thus means: 'Ladies, live you as though in company ... It is to you yourselves that the Order, out of disrespect means: out of disesteem.

Out of contempt¹ means: out of disdain.

Out of impatience means: out of ill-temper.²

In gossiping means: made into talk.³

On poor evidence means: not having partisans.⁴

Vin.4.242

Says this means: it says, 'Sisters are living in company ... detachment in sisters.'

By the nuns means: by other nuns who see, who hear; she should be told by these: "Do not, lady, speak thus: 'Ladies, live you as though in company ... detachment in sisters.'" And a second time she should be told. And a third time she should be told ... (see [Bi-Ss.10.2.1](#)–[Bi-Ss.10.2.3](#). *Instead of* do not, lady, angry, etc. *read* do not, lady, speak thus, etc. *Read*: Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so, admonished by the Order, speaks

BD.3.212

¹ *paribhavena ... pāribhavyatā.* ² *kopena.* ³ *vibhassikatā.* ⁴ Text reads *appakkhatā*; Sinhalese edition *apakkhatā = a + pakkha + tā*, being without a faction, a side, thus without partisans (as *Critical Pali Dictionary*).

thus to the nuns: 'Ladies, live you as though in company,' etc.) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Recited, ladies, are the seventeen matters that are offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order—nine which are offences at once, eight¹ on the third (admonition). A nun having fallen into one or other of these shall spend a fortnight in *mānatta* discipline² before both Orders. If, when the nun has performed the *mānatta* discipline, the Order of nuns should number twenty, then that nun may be rehabilitated. But if the Order of nuns, numbering less than twenty even by one, should rehabilitate that nun, that nun is not rehabilitated, and those nuns are blameworthy; this is the proper course there. Concerning this, I ask the ladies: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The ladies are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.

Bi-Ss.13.3.1

Told are the Seventeen

Vin.4.243

¹ Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.915 brings the ten *Saṅghādisesas* here set out up to seventeen by saying that, besides these six that are offences at once, there are also three that are included in the Mahāvibhaṅga (Bu-Ss.5, Bu-Ss.8, Bu-Ss.9); and besides these four that are offences at the third admonition, there are also four that are included in the Mahāvibhaṅga (Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Ss.11, Bu-Ss.12, Bu-Ss.13). The nuns have four more *Saṅghādisesas* than the monks. See also BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxiii. ² *pakkhamānatta*. Buddhaghosa says that he will explain this phrase in detail in a Khandhaka. *Pakkha* here almost certainly has the meaning of one-half of the lunar month.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 1

Bi-NP.1.1.1
BD.3.213

These thirty rules, ladies, for offences of expiation involving forfeiture come up for recitation.

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ the group of six nuns made a hoard of many bowls. People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place and seeing (this hoard), looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns make a hoard of many bowls? Will these nuns do a trade in bowls or will they set up an earthenware shop?"

Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns make a hoard of bowls?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns made a hoard of bowls?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the group of six nuns make a hoard of bowls? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should make a hoard of bowls, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Bi-NP.1.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bowl² means: there are two (kinds of) bowls: an iron bowl, a clay bowl.

BD.3.214

There are three sizes for a bowl: a large bowl, a medium-sized bowl, a small

¹ Cf. Monks' Bu-NP.21 (BD.2.113f.) where, however, the offence is to keep an extra bowl; and also Monks' Bu-NP.1 (BD.2.1f.). ² = BD.2.115 (Vin.3.243) and cf. BD.2.415 (Vin.4.123).

bowl. A large bowl means that it takes half an *ālḥaka* measure of boiled rice, or¹ a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice or a suitable curry. A medium-sized bowl means that it, takes a *nālīka* measure of boiled rice, a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice, a suitable curry. A small bowl means that it takes a *pattha* measure of boiled rice, a quarter of that quantity of uncooked rice, a suitable curry. (A bowl) greater than that is not a bowl, (a bowl) smaller (than that) is not a bowl.

Vin.4.244

Should make a hoard means: what is not allotted, not assigned.²

It is to be forfeited means: it should be forfeited at sunrise. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun.³ And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: That nun, having approached an Order, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior nuns, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus: 'Ladies, this bowl is to be forfeited by me, a night having elapsed. I forfeit it to the Order.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent nun; the bowl forfeited should be given back (with the words): 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This bowl of the nun so and so which had to be forfeited is forfeited (by her) to the Order. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give back this bowl to the nun so and so.'

That nun, having approached several⁴ nuns, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder ... having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus: 'Ladies, this bowl is to be forfeited by me, a night having elapsed. I forfeit it to the ladies.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by an experienced, competent nun; the bowl forfeited should be given back (with the words): 'Let the ladies listen to me. This bowl of the nun so and so which had to be forfeited is forfeited (by her) to the ladies. If it seems right to the ladies, let the ladies give back this bowl to the nun so and so.'

BD.3.215

That nun, having approached one nun, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with

¹ Omitted, probably rightly, at Vin.3.243. It does not occur in the other cases either here or there. ² Cf. definition of "extra robe," "extra bowl" at BD.2.7, BD.2.114. ³ *ekabhikkhunī* balancing *puggala*, individual, in the Monks' Nissaggiyas. ⁴ *sambahulā*, meaning a *gaṇa*, group of two to four monks or nuns.

joined palms, should speak thus: 'Lady, this bowl is to be forfeited by me, a night having elapsed. I forfeit it to the lady.' Having forfeited it, the offence should be confessed. The offence should be acknowledged by this nun; the bowl forfeited should be given back (with the words): 'I will give back this bowl to the lady.'

Bi-NP.1.2.2

If she thinks that a night has elapsed when it has elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt as to whether a night has elapsed ... If she thinks that a night has not elapsed when it has elapsed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she thinks that it is allotted when it is not allotted ... If she thinks that it is assigned when it is not assigned ... If she thinks that it is bestowed when it is not bestowed ... If she thinks that it is lost when it is not lost ... If she thinks that it is destroyed when it is not destroyed ... If she thinks that it is broken when it is not broken ... If she thinks that it is stolen when it is not stolen, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If, not having forfeited the bowl which had to be forfeited, she makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that a night has elapsed when it has not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether a night has not elapsed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that a night has not elapsed when it has not elapsed, there is no offence.

Vin.4.245

Bi-NP.1.2.3

BD.3.216

There is no offence if before sunrise it is allotted, assigned, bestowed, lost, destroyed, broken, if they tear it from her, if they take it on trust; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bi-NP.1.3.1

Then the group of six nuns did not give back a bowl that was forfeited. They told this matter ... to the lord. He said: "Monks, a bowl that is forfeited is not to be given back. Whosoever should not give it back, there is an offence of wrong-doing."²

¹ Cf. *BD.2.116f.*, and *BD.2.10f.* (a robe). ² Cf. *BD.2.116f.*, and *BD.2.10f.* (a robe).

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 2

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several nuns, having spent the rains in a village-residence, went to Sāvattḥī keeping the customs,¹ dignified in deportment, badly dressed, wearing shabby robes. Lay-followers having seen these nuns, thinking, "These nuns are keeping the customs ... wearing shabby robes, these nuns will have been robbed," gave robe-material to the Order of nuns not at the right time.² The nun Thullanandā, saying, "Our *kaṭhina*-cloth is (formally) made,³ it was robe-material given at the right time," having allotted it, had it distributed.⁴ The lay-followers having seen those nuns, spoke thus: "Was not the robe-material received by the ladies?"

Bi-NP.2.1.1
BD.3.217

"We did not receive robe-material, sirs. The lady Thullanandā, saying, 'Our *kaṭhina*-cloth is (formally) made; it was robe-material given at the right time,' having allotted it, had it distributed."

BD.3.218

The lay-followers ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā, thinking that robe-material (given) not at the right time was robe-material (given) at the right time, having allotted

¹ *vattasampannā*. Groups of *vattāni* enumerated at Vb-a.297. Here probably these nuns had not yet their new robes, as it was not the custom to get these during the rains. The village perhaps could not supply enough material and so the nuns proposed to get it in Sāvattḥī.

² See BD.2.26, BD.2.311, BD.2.366. ³ *atthata*. See BD.2.5, n.1, BD.2.26, n.3. The *kaṭhina*-cloth had to be made up after the rains, Vin.1.254. Robe-material accruing not at the right time might be accepted by a monk, but then should be made up quickly, Vin.3.203 (BD.2.25f.). It looks as if Thullanandā and her nuns had had their *kaṭhina* robes made up before these other nuns arrived at Sāvattḥī, and that she took possession of the material given by the laity, and in having it distributed, ignored these incoming nuns. ⁴ This seems to imply that she did not distribute it herself. At Vin.1.285 monks are allowed to agree upon a monk possessed of five qualities as distributor of robe-material; the way in which it should be distributed is then set forth.

it, have it distributed?”

Nuns heard these lay-followers who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Thullanandā thinking ... have it distributed?”

Vin.4.246

Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks ... to the lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... had it distributed?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... have it distributed? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun, thinking that robe-material (given) not at the right time is robe-material (given) at the right time, having allotted it should have it distributed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bi-NP.2.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Robe-material (given) not at the right time¹ means: some that has accrued during the eleven months when the *kaṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made; some that has accrued during the seven months when the *kaṭhina* cloth is (formally) made; a gift (of material) offered² even at the right time; this means robe-material (given) not at the right time.

BD.3.219

If thinking, “It is robe-material (given) at the right time,” having allotted it, she has it distributed, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; on acquisition it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: “Ladies, I, thinking that this robe-material (given) not at the right time was robe-material (given) at the right time, having allotted it, caused it to be distributed; it is

¹ Cf. Monks’ Bu-NP.3, Vin.3.204 (BD.2.26, where see note), and cf. BD.2.311, BD.2.366, “time of giving robes.” ² *ādiṣṣa*. Vin-a.546 explains by *apadisitvā*, pointed out, indicated, designated; Vin-a.658 by *uddisitvā*, pointed out, proposed; while Vin-a.916 says, “she saying, ‘having obtained (*sampattā*), let them distribute,’ and then she says, ‘I will give this to a group and this to you.’”

to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.” ... “... let the Order give back ... they should give back ... I will give back (this robe-material) to the lady.”

If she thinks that it is robe-material (given) not at the right time when it is robe-material (given) not at the right, time, and saying, “It is robe-material (given) at the right time,” having allotted it she has it distributed, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt as to whether it is robe-material (given) not at the right time ... there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is robe-material (given) at the right time when it is robe-material (given) not at the right time ... there is no offence. If she thinks that it is robe-material (given) not at the right time when it is robe-material (given) at the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is robe-material (given) at the right time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is robe-material (given) at the right time when it is robe-material (given) at the right time, there is no offence.

Bi-NP.2.2.2

There is no offence if she thinks that it is robe-material (given) not at the right time when it is robe-material (given) not at the right time and has it distributed; if she thinks that it is robe-material (given) at the right time when it is robe-material (given) at the right time and has it distributed; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-NP.2.2.3

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 3

Bi-NP.3.1.1
BD.3.220

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, having exchanged¹ a robe with a certain nun, made use of it. Then that nun, having folded up that robe, laid it aside.²

Vin.4.247

The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to that nun: "Lady, that robe which was exchanged by you with me, where is that robe?" Then that nun, having taken out that robe, showed it to the nun Thullanandā. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to that nun: "Lady, take back³ your robe, give⁴ me this robe. That which is yours is yours, that which is mine is mine. Give this to me, take away your own," and she tore it away.⁵ Then that nun told this matter to the nuns ... to the monks. The monks ... to the lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... tore it away?"
"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... tear it away? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having exchanged a robe with a nun, should afterwards speak thus: 'Lady, take your robe, give this robe to me. That which is yours is yours, that which is mine is mine. Give this to me, take away your own,' (and) should tear it away or should cause (another) to tear it away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."⁶

BD.3.221

¹ Or bartered, *parivattetvā*. In Bhikkhu Bu-NP.5 monks are allowed to accept robes in exchange from monks, nuns, probationers, male and female novices; while in Bhikkhu Bu-Pc.25 they are allowed to give robes in exchange to these same five classes of people. ² Cf. Vin.4.61 = BD.2.285. ³ *handā*. Vin-a.917 says *gaṇha*, take. ⁴ *āharati* here has sense of to give, as at Vin.3.206. ⁵ Cf. Vin.3.254 (= BD.2.139). ⁶ Cf. Monks' Bu-NP.25 where a monk having himself given a robe to a monk must-not then tear it away from him.

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

With a nun means: with another nun.

Robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.¹

Having exchanged means: something large for something small or something small for something large.

Should tear it away means²: if she tears it away herself, there is an offence of' expiation involving forfeiture.

Should cause (another) to tear it away means: if she commands another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If having commanded once, she then tears many away, it is to be forfeited. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: 'Ladies, having exchanged this robe with a nun, it was torn away by me; it is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order' ... 'the Order should give back ... let the ladies give back ... I will give back (this robe) to the lady.'

Bi-NP.3.2.1

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained, (and) having exchanged a robe, tears it away or causes (another) to tear it away, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... involving forfeiture. Having exchanged another requisite, if she tears it away or causes (another) to tear it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Having exchanged a robe or another requisite with one who is not ordained, if she tears it away or causes (another) to tear it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Bi-NP.3.2.2

Vin.4.248

BD.3.222

There is no offence if she gives it or takes it from her in a friendly manner; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-NP.3.2.3

¹ = Vin.3.210, Vin.3.213, Vin.4.122, Vin.4.123. ² From here to end cf. Monks' Bu-NP.25.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 4

Bi-NP.4.1.1
BD.3.223

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā came to be ill. Then a certain lay-follower approached the nun Thullanandā, and having approached he spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "What, lady, is your discomfort? What may be brought (for you)?"

"Sir, I am in need of ghee."

Then that lay-follower, having for a *kahāpaṇa* brought ghee from the house of a certain shopkeeper, gave it to the nun Thullanandā. The nun Thullanandā said: "I am not in need of ghee, sir, I am in need of oil." Then that lay-follower approached that shopkeeper, and having approached he spoke thus to that shopkeeper:

"The lady says that she does not need ghee, master, she needs oil. You take¹ the ghee (and) give me the oil."

"If we, master, take back again goods that were bought, when will our goods be sold? Ghee was taken owing to the purchase of ghee; give for² the purchase of oil (and) you shall take oil"

Then that lay-follower ... spread it about, saying: "How can this lady Thullanandā, having had one thing asked for,³ then have another thing asked for?" Nuns heard this lay-follower who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about ... Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks ... to the lord. He said:

BD.3.224

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thulla nandā, having had one thing asked for, had another thing asked for?"

¹ *handā*, as above, BD.3.220. ² *āhara* = *yācitvā*, Vin-a.917, but I think the above translation better shows that the shopkeeper was, as he states, unwilling to change goods once bought.

³ *viññāpetvā*.

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... have another thing asked for? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun, having had one thing asked for, should have another thing asked for, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.**”

Vin.4.249

Nun means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-NP.4.2.1

Having had one thing asked for means: having had anything whatever asked for.

Should have another asked for means: excepting that (thing), if she has another asked for, in the request¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: “Ladies, having had this thing asked for, the other thing asked for is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.” ... “... the Order should give back ... let the ladies give back ... I will give back (this thing) to the lady.”

Bi-NP.4.2.2

If she thinks that one thing is another thing and has the other thing asked for, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt as to whether one thing ... If she thinks that an identical thing² is another thing ... offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she thinks that another thing is an identical thing (and) has the identical thing asked for, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is an identical thing (and) has an identical thing asked for, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is an identical thing when it is an identical thing, there is no offence.

BD.3.225

Bi-NP.4.2.3

¹ *payoge*, action, doing. ² *anañña*.

There is no offence if she has that thing asked for and also has another thing asked for¹; if having pointed out the advantage, she has it asked for; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ According to Vin-a.917 this means that the little she first asked for does not suffice, so she asks for it again. If ghee was first asked for a watch of the night (i.e., to be used as a medicine) it may be boiled; but if the doctor prescribed oil and she says she needs this too, thus (it is said) she asks for another thing. The simultaneous asking for things is hence not an offence; it puts a shopkeeper to no embarrassment, and saves a lay-person from going to and fro. This “asking for” a thing when an offer has been made is different from the “asking for” in Bu-Pc.7 and in the *Pāṭidesaniyas*. For there, nuns appear to be asking for food and medicine on their own initiative.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 5

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā came to be ill. Then a certain lay-follower approached the nun Thullanandā; having approached, he spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "I hope, lady, that you are better, I hope that you are keeping going."

Bi-NP.5.1.1
BD.3.226

"Sir, I am not better, I am not keeping going."

"Lady, I will deposit a *kahāpaṇa* in the house of such and such a shopkeeper; you can have whatever you want brought from there."

The nun Thullanandā enjoined a certain probationer, saying: "Go, probationer, fetch oil for the *kahāpaṇa* from the house of such and such a shopkeeper."

Then that probationer, having for the *kahāpaṇa* fetched oil from the house of that shopkeeper, gave it to the nun Thullanandā. The nun Thullanandā said: "I do not need oil, probationer, I need ghee." Then that probationer approached that shopkeeper; having approached, she spoke thus to that shopkeeper:

Vin.4.250

"The lady says that she does not need oil, sir, she needs ghee. You take the oil (and) give me the ghee."

"If we, lady, take back again goods that were bought, when will our goods be sold? Oil was taken owing to the purchase of oil; give for the purchase of ghee (and) you shall take ghee."

Then that probationer stood crying. Nuns spoke thus to that probationer: "Why are you crying, probationer?" Then that probationer told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā, having got one thing in exchange,¹ get another thing in exchange?”

BD.3.227

“Is it true, as is said, monks, ... (see Bi-NP.4.1. *Instead of* having had asked for, etc., *read* having got in exchange) ... rule of training:

“**Whatever nun, having got one thing in exchange, should get another thing in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.**”

Bi-NP.5.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Having got one thing in exchange means: having got anything whatever in exchange ... (see Bi-NP.4.2). *Instead of* has asked for, having had asked for *read* gets in exchange, having got in exchange

... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *cetāpetvā.*

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 6

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time lay-followers, having made a voluntary collection¹ for robe-material² for an Order of nuns, having laid aside what was necessary³ in a certain cloak-seller's⁴ house, having approached the nuns, spoke thus: "Ladies, in such and such a cloak-seller's house what is necessary for robe-material is laid aside. Having had that robe-material brought from there, distribute it."

Bi-NP.6.1.1
BD.3.228

The nuns, having got medicine in exchange for what was necessary, made use of it. The lay-followers, having found out ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns get something⁵ in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing,⁶ belonging to an Order?" Nuns heard these lay-followers who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

BD.3.229

Vin.4.251

¹ *chandakaṃ saṃharitvā*. This is *Pali-English Dictionary's* suggestion. Vin-a.918 says, "saying, 'Let us do a dhamma-duty, give what you are able,' thus having produced desire and pleasure in others, it is a synonym for a requisite that is taken up" (*gahitaparikkhāra*).

² *civararathhāya*, instrumental; it therefore looks as if they did not collect robe-material itself, but some medium of exchange with which the nuns could obtain the material.

³ *parikkhāra*, the usual technical term for the four, or eight, requisites allowed to a monk. But in view of the construction *civararathhāya*, it is likely that *parikkhāra* here stands not for a "requisite" itself, but for the means, perhaps some deposit of a medium of exchange, for obtaining it. This hypothesis is strengthened by Bu-NP.8, where a voluntary collection for conje, *yāgu*, was to be made. Conje is not a specific "requisite" at all, at Vin.4.93 e.g., being mentioned separately and in addition to solid food and soft food. There is in English the vulgarism "the needful," which I think *parikkhāra* in this and the following *Nissaggiyas* most nearly means. ⁴ *pāvārika*. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests above translation. *Pāvāra* as cloak or mantle occurs at Vin.1.281, Ja.5.409. ⁵ *aññaṃ*. ⁶ *aññadatthikena parikkhārena aññuddisikena*, literally for the good of another, for the advantage of another, Cf. *attuddesaṃ* at Vin.3.149.

“How can these nuns get something in exchange ... belonging to an Order?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns got something in exchange ... belonging to an Order?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can nuns get something in exchange ... belonging to an Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should get something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, (and) belonging to an Order, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bi-NP.6.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

For what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing means: for what was given for another thing.

Belonging to an Order¹ means: it is for an Order, not for a group, not for one nun.

Should get something in exchange means: having set aside that for which it was given, if she gets another thing in exchange, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; it is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Ladies, this thing got in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, (and) belonging to an Order, is to be forfeited by me. I forfeit it to the Order.’ ... “... the Order should give back, ... let the ladies give back ... I will give back (this thing) to the lady.”

BD.3.230

Bi-NP.6.2.2

If she thinks that it was appointed for another thing when it was appointed for another thing, and gets something else in exchange, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt ... If she thinks

¹ Another definition occurs at [Vin.3.266](#) and [Vin.4.43](#).

that it was not appointed for another thing ... there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. Having acquired what was forfeited, it may be taken as, so to speak, a gift.¹ If she thinks that it was appointed for another thing when it was not appointed for another thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it was not appointed for another thing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it was not appointed for another thing when it was not appointed for another thing, there is no offence.

There is no offence if she takes² a remainder; if she takes having obtained the owner's permission³; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-NP.6.2.3

¹ *yathādāne upanetabbari*. ² *upaneti*. ³ I.e., saying it was given for the sake of robe-material, but they have this and need oil, Vin-a.918.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (*NISSAGGIYA*) 7

Bi-NP.7.1.1
BD.3.231

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ lay-followers, having made a voluntary collection for robe-material for the Order of nuns, having laid aside what was necessary in a certain cloak-seller's house, having approached the nuns, spoke thus: "Ladies, in such and such a cloak-seller's house what is necessary for robe-material is laid aside. Having had the robe-material brought from there, distribute it."

Vin.4.252

And the nuns, although having themselves asked for² what was necessary, yet having got medicine in exchange, made use of it. The lay-followers, having found out ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to an Order, (and) that they themselves asked for³?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns got something in exchange ... that they themselves asked for?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns get something in exchange ... that they themselves asked for? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to an Order, (and) that she herself asked for, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

BD.3.232

Bi-NP.7.2.1

¹ Cf. Bu-NP.6. ² *sayam yācitvā*. Cf. Vin.3.144 (BD.1.246). ³ *sarṇyācikenā*.

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

For what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing ... Belonging to an Order ... That she herself asked for means: oneself having asked for.¹

Should get something in exchange means: ... (see *Bi-NP.2.1-3*. After belonging to an Order *insert* that she herself asked for)
... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. *Vin.3.149* (*BD.1.254*).

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 8

Bi-NP.8.1.1
BD.3.233

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns dwelling in cells¹ belonging to a certain guild were going short of conje. Then that guild, having made a voluntary collection for conje for the nuns, having laid aside what was necessary in a certain shop-keeper's house, having approached the nuns, spoke thus: "Ladies, in such and such a shopkeeper's house what is necessary for conje is laid aside. Having had husked rice brought from there, having had the conje boiled, make use of it."

The nuns, having got medicine in exchange for what was necessary, made use of it. Then that guild, having found out ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to a company²?"

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns got something in exchange ... belonging to a company?"

"It is true, lord."

Vin.4.253

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can nuns get something in exchange ... belonging to a company? It is not, monks,

BD.3.234

¹ *pariveṇavāsikā*. They were not a complete Order, merely a number of nuns. ² *mahājanikena*. *Mahājana* usually means "people, a crowd, the populace." Here it does not mean the guild regarded as a company, but the nuns for whom the conje was collected. The word is explained in the Old Commentary, and at Vin-a.918 by *gaṇa*, the technical term for "group" (two to four monks or nuns). This rule is in contrast on the one hand to Bu-NP.6 and Bu-NP.7, which speak of *saṅghikena*, belonging to an Order; and on the other to Bu-NP.10, which speaks of belonging to an individual, *puggalikenā*. It is because of this frequent triad, *saṅgha*, *gaṇa*, *puggala* (= *ekā bhikkhunī*) that *mahājana* must here be taken as equivalent to *gaṇa*, group, in its technical and monastic meaning.

for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to a company, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-NP.8.2.1

For what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing means: for what was given for another thing.

Belonging to a company means: it is for a group, not for an Order, not for one nun.

Should get something in exchange means: ... (see [Bi-NP.6.2.1](#)–[Bi-NP.6.2.3](#). *Instead of* belonging to an Order *read* belonging to a company) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 9

Bi-NP.9.1.1
BD.3.235

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns dwelling in cells belonging to a certain guild ... (see [Bi-NP.8.1](#)) ... "... make use of it." And the nuns, although having themselves asked for what was necessary, yet having got medicine in exchange, made use of it. Then that guild, having found out ... (see [Bi-NP.8.1](#). *After* belonging to a company *insert* (and) that they themselves asked for) ... "... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to a company, (and) that she herself asked for, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture."

Bi-NP.9.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

For what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing ... Belonging to a company ... That she herself asked for means: oneself having asked for.

Should get something in exchange means: ... (see [Bi-NP.6.2.1](#)–[Bi-NP.6.2.3](#). *Instead of* belonging to an Order *read* belonging to a company, (and) that she herself asked for)

Vin.4.254

... if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 10

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā was very learned, she was a repeater, she was wise, she was skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk. Many people visited the nun Thullanandā. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā's cell was falling to pieces.¹ People spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "Why is this cell of yours, lady, falling to pieces?"

Bi-NP.10.1.1
BD.3.236

"Sirs, there are neither benefactors, nor are there workmen."

Then these people, having made a voluntary collection for the nun Thullanandā's cell, gave what was necessary to the nun Thullanandā. And the nun Thullanandā, although having herself asked for what was necessary, yet having got medicine in exchange, made use of it. The people, having found out ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to an individual, (and) that she herself asked for?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... (and) that she herself asked for?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... (and) that she herself asked for? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should get something in exchange for what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing,

BD.3.237

¹ *udriyati*.

belonging to an individual, (and) that she herself asked for, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bi-NP.10.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

For what was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing... **Belonging to an individual** means: it is for one nun, not for an Order, not for a group.

That she herself asked for means: oneself having asked for.

Should get something in exchange means: ... (as above, *Bi-NP.6.2.1*; read constantly belonging to an individual, (and) that she herself asked for.)

Vin.4.255

... if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 11

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā was very learned, she was a repeater, she was wise, she was skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk.¹ Then King Pasenadi of Kosala having, in the cold weather, put on a costly woollen garment, approached the nun Thullanandā; having approached, having greeted the nun Thullanandā, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the nun Thullanandā roused ... gladdened King Pasenadi of Kosala with *dhamma*-talk. Then King Pasenadi of Kosala, having been roused ... gladdened with *dhamma*-talk by the nun Thullanandā, spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "Do let me know, lady, what would be of use (to you)."²

Bi-NP.11.1.1
BD.3.238

"If, Sire, you are desirous of giving (something) to me, give me this woollen garment."

Then King Pasenadi of Kosala, having given the woollen garment to the nun Thullanandā, having risen from his seat, having greeted the nun Thullanandā, departed keeping his right side towards her. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

"These nuns have great desires, they are not contented. How can they ask the king for a woollen garment?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā ask the king for a woollen garment?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā asked the king for a woollen garment?"

"It is true, lord."

BD.3.239

¹ As in Bu-NP.10, Bu-Pc.33. Cf. Pasenadi's interview with the nun Khemā at SN.iv.374. ² Cf. BD.1.222 = BD.2.43 for same expression.

The enlightened one, the lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ask the king for a woollen garment? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“If a nun is bargaining for¹ a heavy cloth,² she may bargain for one (worth) at most four “bronzes.”³ If she should bargain for one (worth) more than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bi-NP.11.2.1

A heavy cloth means: whatever is a cloth for the cold weather.

Is bargaining for means: is asking for.

Vin.4.256

She may bargain for one (worth) at most four “bronzes” means: she may bargain for one worth sixteen *kahāpaṇas*.

If she should bargain for one (worth) more than that means: if she asks for one (worth) more than that, in the request there is an offence of wrong-doing. It is to be forfeited on acquisition. It should be forfeited to an Order or to a group or to one nun. And thus, monks, should it be forfeited: ‘Ladies, this heavy cloth (worth) at most more than four “bronzes,” bargained for by me, is to be forfeited. I forfeit it to the Order’ ... “... the Order should give back ... let them give back ... I will give back this (heavy cloth) to the lady.”

BD.3.240

Bi-NP.11.2.2

¹ *cetāpentiyā*, explained in Old Commentary, as *viññāpentiyā*, asking for, as at [Vin.3.246](#) ([BD.2.121](#)). *Cetāpeti* is usually “to get in exchange,” see [BD.2.54f.](#), [BD.2.120](#), and above [Bu-NP.7-Bu-NP.10](#). Here Thullanandā certainly gets the cloth in exchange for her teaching. But, since for us, “to get in exchange” usually means the changing hands of tangible objects, I have thought it best, in order to avoid this implication, to use “to bargain.” Moreover, *cetāpeti* is not really synonymous with *viññāpeti*, although it may be said to contain, as does “to bargain,” this meaning. ² *garupāvuraṇa*. ³ *kaṁsa*. As RHYS DAVIDS states, *Ancient Coins and Measures of Ceylon*, p.7, this “as a measure of value is only found in this passage.” Here, according to the Old Commentary, four “bronzes” are worth sixteen *kahāpaṇas*; and so, as Buddhaghosa says, [Vin-a.919](#), “here a *kaṁsa* is (worth) four *kahāpaṇas*”; and cf. [Kankhāvitaraṇī](#) (Simon Hewavitarne Bequest), p.172, and Moggallāna, *Abhidhānappadīpikā* 905. The value being so small, Rhys Davids is against the notion that the *kaṁsa* was a bronze or brass cup, plate or vessel. It may possibly have been a bronze weight such as those used until recently in Burma. There is no commentarial support for Childers’ view that *kaṁsa* is “a coin,” or for Böhtlingroth’s that it is an equivalent of *āḍhaka* (Pali, *āḷhaka*).

If she thinks that it is (worth) more when it is (worth) more than four “bronzes” (and) bargains for it, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she is in doubt as to whether it is (worth) more than four “bronzes” ... If she thinks that it is (worth) less when it is (worth) more than four “bronzes” (and) bargains for it, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture. If she thinks that it is (worth) more when it is (worth) less than four “bronzes,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is (worth) less than four “bronzes,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is (worth) less when it is (worth) less than four “bronzes,” there is no offence.

There is no offence if she bargains for one (worth) at most four “bronzes”; if she bargains for one (worth) at most less than four “bronzes”; if they belong to relations; if they are offered; if it is for another; if it is by means of her own property; if she bargains for something of small value while (the other person) desires to bargain for something costly¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-NP.11.2.3

¹ Cf. Vin.3.217 (BD.2.57) and where *cetāpeti* is in sense of “to get in exchange” rather than “to bargain.”

NUNS' FORFEITURE (NISSAGGIYA) 12

Bi-NP.12.1.1
BD.3.241

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā was very learned ... (see Bi-NP.11.1. *Instead of* in the cold weather *read* in the hot weather; *instead of* woollen garment *read* linen garment) ... “... this rule of training:

“If a nun is bargaining for a light cloth,¹ she may bargain for one (worth) at most two and a half ‘bronzes.’ If she should bargain for one (worth) more than that, there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.”

Bi-NP.12.2.1

Light cloth means: whatever is a cloth for the hot weather.

Is bargaining for means: is asking for.

She may bargain for one (worth) at most two and a half “bronzes” means: she may bargain for one worth ten *kahāpaṇas*.

If she should bargain for one (worth) more than that means: ... (see Bi-NP.11.2. *Read* a light cloth (worth) at most more than two and a half “bronzes,” more than two and a half “bronzes,” less than two and a half “bronzes”) ... there is no offence.

Vin.4.257

Bi-NP.12.2.2

There is no offence if she bargains for one (worth) at most two and a half “bronzes”; if she bargains for one (worth) at most less than two and a half “bronzes”; ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-NP.12.3.1

¹ *lahupāvuraṇa*.

Recited, ladies, are the thirty rules¹ for offences of expiation involving forfeiture. Concerning them, I ask the ladies: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The ladies are quite pure in this matter; therefore are they silent. Thus do I understand this.

BD.3.242

Told are the thirty offences of expiation involving forfeiture

Vin.4.258

¹ Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.919 says that eighteen (*Nissaggiya Pācittiya*) rules of training are laid down for both sides, that is for monks and nuns alike. As these have appeared already in the Mahāvibhaṅga, only twelve additional ones need to be included in the Bhikkhuni-Pātimokkha to bring the total of *Nissaggiyas* for nuns up to thirty. See [BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxvii](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 1

Bi-Pc.1.1.1
BD.3.243

These hundred and sixty-six matters, ladies, that are offences of expiation come up for recitation.

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the Order of nuns was offered garlic by a certain lay-follower,¹ saying: "If these ladies need garlic, I (can supply them) with garlic."² And the keeper of the field was instructed (with the words): "If the nuns come, give two or three bundles³ to each nun." Now at that time there was a festival in Sāvattthī; the garlic was used up as soon as it was brought in.⁴ The nuns, having approached that lay-follower, spoke thus: "Sir, we have need of garlic." He said: "There is none, ladies; the garlic is used up as soon as it is brought in; go to the field." The nun Thullanandā, having gone to the field, not knowing moderation, had much garlic taken away. The keeper of the field looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns, not knowing moderation, have much garlic taken away?" Nuns heard that keeper of the field who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about,

BD.3.244

¹ Ja.no.136 (Ja.1.474) is based on this story. ² Cf. Vin.3.244 (BD.2.118). ³ *bhaṇḍike*, explained at Vin-a.919 that this is a synonym for *poṭṭalike sampuṇṇamiñjānaṃ*. As *poṭṭalika* (several variant readings) appears to mean a kind of grass, perhaps the phrase here stands for "two or three leaves from full bulbs." At Ja.1.474 the reading is *gaṇḍikā*, a stalk or stick. At Vin-a.920 it is said "So too is this *bhaṇḍikalasuṇa* (garlic in the bundle), it is not one, two (or) three bulbs (*miñjaka*)." *Miñjā*, according to GEIGER, *Pali Literature und Sprache*, § 9 = *majjā* (pith, sap); *a-miñjaka*, according to *Critical Pali Dictionary* is "without tuber." But onions, garlic and leeks are bulbous plants. It seems that the nuns were to be given the garlic done up into bundles, rather than the bulbous parts themselves. ⁴ See *Pali-English Dictionary* under *yathābhataṃ*. Ja.1.475 makes out that the nuns went to the lay-follower's house where the garlic had been brought from the field. This would explain his injunction to them to go to the field.

saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā, not knowing moderation, have much garlic taken away?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā, not knowing moderation, had much garlic taken away?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, not knowing moderation, have much garlic taken away? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Formerly, monks, the nun Thullanandā was the wife of a certain brahmin and there were three daughters, Nandā, Nandavatī, Sundarīnandā.¹ Then, monks, that brahmin, having passed away, was born in the womb of a certain goose² and his feathers were made all of gold. He gave a feather one by one to these. Then, monks, the nun Thullanandā, saying: ‘This goose is giving us a feather one by one,’ having taken hold of that king of the geese, plucked him. His feathers, on growing again, turned out white. So at that time, monks, the nun Thullanandā lost the gold through too much greed; now she will lose the garlic.”

Vin.4.259

“One should be pleased with what is received,
for too much greed is bad.
By taking hold of the king of the geese,
one may lose the gold.”

Then the lord having in many a figure rebuked the nun Thullanandā for her difficulty in maintaining herself ...” ... And thus, monks, the nuns should set forth this rule of training:

BD.3.245

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.211](#) where these appear as the sisters of Thullanandā. ² *hamsa*, or swan; “mallard” at Jātaka translation 1.293.

“Whatever nun should eat garlic, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bi-Pc.1.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Garlic means: it is called the Magadha (plant).²

If she says, ‘I will eat,’ and accepts, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.1.2.2

If she thinks that it is garlic when it is garlic (and) eats, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is garlic ... If she thinks that it is not garlic when it is garlic (and) eats, there is an offence of expiation. If she thinks that it is garlic when it is not garlic (and) eats, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not garlic (and) eats, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not garlic when it is not garlic (and) eats, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.1.2.3

There is no offence if it is an onion, if it is a beetroot,³ if it is yellow myrobalan,⁴ if it is bow-garlic,⁵ if it is in a concoction of broth,⁶ in a concoction of meat, in a concoction of oil; if it is in a salad⁷; if it is in a tit-bit⁸; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

BD.3.246

¹ Ja.1.476 points out that this prohibition, affecting all the nuns, is due to Thullananda’s greed. At Vin.2.140 it is made a *dukkāṭa* offence for monks to eat garlic; nor should Jain monks accept it (*Āyāraṅgasutta* 2 1, 8.13). ² Vin-a.920 says that *māgadha* means that here it is a synonym for “garlic,” for it is the garlic grown in the kingdom of Magadha. ³ *bhañjanaka*. This, as a vegetable, is not given in *Pali-English Dictionary*. “Beetroot” is guess-work, based on remark at Vin-a.920 that it is red in colour. This, however, may suggest radish. Vin-a.920 also says that it has two bulbs (*miñja*); in this Vin-a. resembles other early commentaries, which it cites. ⁴ *haritaka*. According to *Pali-English Dictionary* this is *Terminalia citrina* or *chebula*. Vin-a.920 says that it is the colour of vegetables (or greens) and has three “bulbs,” or, according to another early commentary, one. Atthasālinī 320 uses *haritaka* in definition of *kasāva*, an astringent decoction made from plants. At Vin.1.201 the fruit is allowed as a medicine. ⁵ *cāpalasūna*. Vin-a.920 says it has no bulb but only sprouts; cf. the bulbless onion, *Allium fistulosum*, grown for its leafy tops; and cf. another botanical name, *cāpa-paṭa* (Sanskrit), the tree *Buchanania lalifolia*. ⁶ This and the two following occur at Vin.4.110. They could contain the Magadha garlic. ⁷ *sālave*. Vin-a.920 says there is no offence if it is in a “hot” salad, or salad of jujube-fruits and so on, *badarasālavādīsu*, or if it is among astringent vegetables, *ambilasākādīsu*. Cf. BD.2.316, n.2; Vin-a.817; Atthasālinī 320. ⁸ *uttaribhaṅga*, or dainties; cf. BD.1.275, n.5.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 2

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns, having let the hair of the body grow, bathed naked together with prostitutes at the same ford of the river Aciravatī.¹ The prostitutes ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns let the hair of the body grow, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these prostitutes who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns let the hair of the body grow?" ...

Bi-Pc.2.1.1
BD.3.247

Vin.4.260

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns let the hair of the body grow?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them saying:

"How, monks, can the group of six nuns let the hair of the body grow? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should let the hair of the body grow, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.2.2.1

Hair of the body means: under both armpits and on the private parts.

Should let grow means: if she lets one hair grow, there is an offence of expiation. If she lets many hairs grow, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.293](#); [Vin.4.278](#).

There is no offence if it is because of illness, if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 3

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time two nuns, tormented by dissatisfaction, having entered an inner room, slapped with the palms of the hands. Nuns, having run up at the sound of this noise, spoke thus to these nuns: "Why do you, ladies, misbehave with a man?" Saying: "Ladies, we are not misbehaving with a man," they told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns slap with the palms of the hands?" ...

Bi-Pc.3.1.1
BD.3.248

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns slapped with the palms of the hands?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns slap with the palms of the hands? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"In slapping with the palms of the hands, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Vin.4.261

Slapping with the palms of the hands means: if she, enjoying the contact, gives a blow to the private parts even with a lotus leaf,² there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.3.2.1

There is no offence if it is because of illness, if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ On these "brief Pācittiyas" (cf. also the next), see [BD.2, Introduction, p.xxxiv](#). ² Cf. the same expression at [Vin.4.146](#) in definition of "should give a blow," and at [Vin.4.147](#) in definition of "should raise the palm of the hand."

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 4

Bi-Pc.4.1.1
BD.3.249

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain woman who had formerly been a king's concubine, had gone forth among the nuns. A certain nun, tormented by dissatisfaction, approached this nun, and having approached, she spoke thus to this nun: "The king, lady, constantly came to see you. How did you manage?"

"By means of an application of lac, lady."

"What is this application of lac, lady?"

Then this nun showed an application of lac to that nun. Then that nun, having taken the application of lac, having forgotten to wash it, put it to one side. The nuns, having seen it surrounded by flies, spoke thus: "Whose doing is this?" She spoke thus: "It is my doing." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can a nun take an application of lac?"

...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun took an application of lac?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun take an application of lac? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"In an application of lac, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.4.2.1

Application of lac means: it is made of lac, made of wood, made of flour, made of clay.

Should take¹ means: if she, enjoying the contact, makes even a lotus-leaf enter the private parts, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Note that a word is here defined which does not come into the rule, and that this, as it stands, is one of the "brief *Pācittiyas*."

There is no offence if it is because of illness, if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 5

Bi-Pc.5.1.1
BD.3.250

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery. Then Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid approached the lord; having approached, having greeted the lord, she stood to windward, saying: “Lord, the women smell nasty.” Then the lord, saying: “Then let the nuns take an ablution with water,” roused ... delighted Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid with *dhamma*-talk. Then Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid, having been roused ... delighted with *dhamma*-talk by the lord, having greeted the lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow, monks, an ablution with water for the nuns.”

Bi-Pc.5.1.2

Now at that time a certain nun, saying: “An ablution with water is allowed by the lord,” taking a very deep ablution with water, got a sore on her private parts. Then this nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can this nun take a very deep ablution with water?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun took a very deep ablution with water?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can a nun take a very deep ablution with water? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“If a nun is taking an ablution with water, she may take at most (a measure of) two finger-joints. For whoever exceeds this, there is an offence of expiation.”

Ablution with water means: it is called washing the private parts.

Bi-Pc.5.2.1

Is taking means: is washing.

BD.3.251

She may take at most (a measure of) two finger-joints means: she may take at most (a measure of) two joints of two fingers.

For whoever exceeds this means: if she, enjoying the contact, exceeds by even a hair's breadth, there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that it is more when it is more than (a measure of) two finger-joints (and) takes it,¹ there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is more than (a measure of) two finger-joints ... If she thinks that it is less when it is more than (a measure of) two finger-joints (and) takes it, there is an offence of expiation. If she thinks that it is more when it is less than (a measure of) two finger-joints, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is less than (a measure of) two finger-joints, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is less when it is less than (a measure of) two finger-joints, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.5.2.2

Vin.4.263

There is no offence if she takes at most (a measure of) two finger-joints; if she takes less than at most (a measure of) two finger-joints; if it is because of illness; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.5.2.3

¹ I.e., the ablution.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 6

Bi-Pc.6.1.1
BD.3.252

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time Ārohanta, a chief minister,¹ had gone forth among the monks (and) his former wife had gone forth among the nuns. Now at that time that monk participated in a meal in the presence of that nun. Then that nun enticed² that monk, standing near him with drinking water and with a fan as he was eating.³ Then that monk upbraided that nun, saying: "Do not, sister, do this, it is not allowable."

"Formerly you did this and that to me, now you do not put up with this much," and having thrown down the drinking cup on his head, she struck him with the fan. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this nun strike a monk?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun struck a monk?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun strike a monk? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

BD.3.253

"Whatever nun should stand with drinking water or with a fan close to a monk while he is eating, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.6.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ Mentioned, I think, nowhere but here. ² *accāvadati*; in sense of "to talk down," at [Vin.4.224](#). Here, according to [Vin-a.922](#), she spoke to him as though they were still leading the household life, saying that she used to stand close to him thus while he ate. Note that nuns had access to the monks quarters. ³ *bhuñjati* is the verb used for partaking of soft foods, those which constitute the five kinds of meals (see [Vin.4.83](#)) referred to below. To stand close to a monk eating solid food is a *dukkata* offence (below).

To a monk means: to one who is ordained.

Is eating means: is eating any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals.¹

Drinking water means: whatever is drinkable.²

Fans means: whatever is a fan.³

Should stand close means: if she stands within a reach of the hand, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.264

If she thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained (and) stands close with drinking water or with a fan, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If she thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... there is an offence of expiation. If she stands close having left a reach of the hand, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she stands close while he is eating solid food, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she stands close to one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴

Bi-Pc.6.2.2

There is no offence if she gives⁵; if she causes (another) to give; if she commands one who is not ordained⁶; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.6.2.3
BD.3.254

¹ See Vin.4.83. ² For *pāniya*, drinking water, also has this meaning of a beverage. Vin-a.922 says that it may be pure water, or buttermilk, curds, milk and so on. ³ *vidhūpana ... vijanī*, Vin-a.922 saying, "even the corner of a robe." *Vidhūpana* allowed to monks at Vin.2.130. Vv-a.147 calls it *caturassavījanī*, a four-cornered *vījanī*. Three kinds of *vījanī* allowed at Vin.2.130, in addition to the "mosquito-fan," *makasavījanī*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.131f. translates as both fan and fly-whisk. ⁴ Cf. previous clause but two. ⁵ I.e., the curry or water to the monk to drink, or the fan for him to fan himself with, Vin-a.922. ⁶ Vin-a.922, if she commands a novice to stand near a monk (and minister to him as he is eating), there is no offence.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 7

Bi-Pc.7.1.1
BD.3.255

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns, having had raw grain asked for at harvest time, carried it towards the town. (Those) at the gateway, saying: "Ladies, give a portion," having obstructed (them) let (them) go. Then these nuns, having gone to a dwelling,¹ told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns have raw grain asked for?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nuns had raw grain asked for?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns have raw grain asked for? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having asked for raw grain or having had it asked for, or having roasted it or having caused it to be roasted, or having pounded it or having caused it to be pounded, or having cooked it or having caused it to be cooked, should eat it, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.7.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Raw grain means: rice, paddy, barley, wheat, millet, beans, rye.²

Having asked for means: oneself having asked for.

Having had asked for means: having caused another to ask for.

Having roasted means: oneself having roasted.

Having caused to be roasted means: having caused another to roast.

Having pounded means: ... Having caused to be pounded means ...

BD.3.256

¹ Probably meaning a nunnery. ² See [BD.1.83, n.4](#).

Having cooked means: ... Having caused to be cooked means: having caused another to cook.

If she says, "I will eat it" (and) accepts it, there is an offence of wrongdoing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of expiation. Vin.4.265

There is no offence if it is because of illness, if she has pulses¹ asked for; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer. Bi-Pc.7.2.2

¹ *aparāṇṇa*, or vegetables, or prepared cereals; cf. below, [BD.3.259](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 8

Bi-Pc.8.1.1
BD.3.257

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain brahmin who earned (his keep) as a hireling of a king,¹ saying, "I will ask for wages as before," having washed his head, went along beside a nunnery to the royal court. A certain nun, having relieved herself in a receptacle, in throwing it away over a wall, let it fall² on that brahmin's head. Then that brahmin ... spread it about, saying: "These shaven-headed strumpets are not true recluses.³ How can they let a pot fall on my head? I will set fire to their dwelling," and having taken up a fire-brand, he entered the dwelling. A certain lay follower as he was going out from the dwelling saw that brahmin who, having taken up the fire-brand, was entering the dwelling. Seeing him, he spoke thus to that brahmin: "Why do you, good sir, having taken up a fire-brand, enter the dwelling?"

"Good sir, these shaven-headed strumpets let a pot fall on my head. I will set fire to their dwelling."

"Go away, good brahmin, this is auspicious; you will receive a thousand, and this is (your) wage." Then that brahmin, having washed his head, having gone to the royal court, received a thousand, and this was the wage. Then that lay follower, having entered the dwelling, having told this matter to the nuns, scolded them. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns throw out excrement over a wall?" ...

Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns threw out excrement over a wall?"

"It is true, lord."

BD.3.258

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

¹ *nibbiṭṭharājabhāṭa*. Cf. Snp.25. ² *āsumbhi*. Cf. above, BD.3.252. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.178, below, BD.3.275.

“How, monks, can nuns ... over a wall? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun should throw out or should cause (another) to throw out excrement or urine or rubbish or remains of food over a wall or over a fence, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Vin.4.266

Bi-Pc.8.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Excrement means: it is called faeces.

Urine means: it is called water.

Rubbish means: it is called sweepings.

Remains of food means: odd bits or bones or impure water.¹

Wall means: there are three (kinds of) walls, a wall of bricks, a wall of stones, a wall of wood.

Fence means: there are three (kinds of) fences, a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.

Over a wall means: beyond a wall.

Over a fence means: beyond a fence.

Should throw out means: if she herself throws out, there is an offence of expiation.

Should cause (another) to throw out means: if she commands another, there is an offence of expiation. When once commanded, if she throws out many times, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.8.2.2

There is no offence if she throws out having looked over; if she throws out into what is not a track²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ This list occurs at Vin.2.115, monks there being forbidden to take these things out in their bowls, as though they were waste-tubs. ² *avalañje*—i.e., presumably meaning into a place where no one is likely to pass, *avalañja* meaning “impassable, out of use” (*Critical Pali Dictionary*), and *valañja*, meaning a “track” (*Pali-English Dictionary*). Commentary is of no help.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 9

Bi-Pc.9.1.1
BD.3.259

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain brahmin's cornfield was beside a nunnery. The nuns threw out excrement and urine and rubbish and remains of food into the field. Then that brahmin ... spread it about, saying: "How can the nuns despoil our cornfield?"¹ Nuns heard that brahmin who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can nuns throw out excrement ... and the remains of food on to the crops?"² ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns threw out ... on to the crops?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns throw out ... on to the crops? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should throw out or should cause (another) to throw out excrement or urine or rubbish or the remains of food on to the crops, there is an offence of expiation."³

Bi-Pc.9.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Vin.4.267

Excrement means: (see [Bi-Pc.8.2.1](#)) ... or impure water.

BD.3.260

Crops means: grain and pulses⁴ planted as food for the use of human beings.

Should throw out means: if she herself throws out, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.47](#) ([BD.2.257](#)). ² *harita*. Cf. [Vin.4.48](#). ³ Cf. [Bu-Sk.74](#). ⁴ *aparaṇṇa*. Cf. [BD.3.256](#), above. This definition of "crops" = [Vin.4.48](#).

Should cause (another) to throw out means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.8.2.1](#)) ... offence of expiation.

If she thinks that they are crops when they are crops (and) throws out or causes (another) to throw out, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether they are crops ... If she thinks that they are not crops when they are crops ... offence of expiation. If she thinks that they are crops when they are not crops, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether they are not crops, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that they are not crops when they are not crops, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.9.2.2

There is no offence if she throws out having looked round; if she throws out on to the edges of a field; if she throws out having asked the owner (for permission) and having obtained the permission¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.9.2.3

¹ *āpucchitvā apalokelvā*. Cf. above, [BD.3.184](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 10

Bi-Pc.10.1.1
BD.3.261

... in Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place. Now at that time there was a festival on a mountain-top in Rājagaha.¹ The group of six nuns went to see the festival on the mountain-top. People ... spread it about saying: "How can nuns come to see dancing and singing and music, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the group of six nuns go to see ... music?" ...

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the group of six nuns go to see ... music? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should go to see dancing or singing or music, there is an offence of expiation."²

Bi-Pc.10.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Dancing means: whatever is dancing.³

Singing means: whatever is singing.⁴

Music means: whatever is music.⁵

Vin.4.268
BD.3.262

If she goes to see, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where she sees or hears, there is an offence of expiation. If having left the region

¹ Cf. Vin.4.85 (BD.2.335 and note.) ² Made into a *dukkata* for monks at Vin.2.108. ³ Vin-a.925 says that if dancers and so on dance, or drunkards, and even peacocks, parrots and monkeys, all this is dancing. ⁴ Vin-a.925 says what is connected with the utter waning of the noble ones, or the singing on festive occasions, or the singing of dhamma-repeaters if they are monks lacking in restraint, all this is singing. Cf. Vin.2.108. ⁵ This may be music got by playing on a thong or the string of a lute or the music of the pitcher-drum and even of the water-drum, Vin-a.925.

of sight, she sees or hears again, there is an offence of expiation. If she goes to see one or the other, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where she sees or hears, there is an offence of expiation. If having left the region of sight, she sees or hears again, there is an offence of expiation.¹

There is no offence if, standing in a monastery, she sees or hears; if, having come to where nuns are resting or sitting down or lying down, they dance or sing or play music; if, going along a path, she sees or hears; if, having gone as there is something to be done,² she sees or hears; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.10.2.2

The First Division: that on garlic

¹ Cf. Vin.4.108 (BD.2.380). ² Vin-a.926 says that if she has gone for ticket-food, or because there is anything else to be done, there is no offence.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 11

Bi-Pc.11.1.1
BD.3.263

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a man, a relative¹ of a nun who was a pupil of Bhaddā Kāpilānī,² set out from a village for Sāvattthī on some business. Then that nun stood together with and further talked with that man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there was no light. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun stand together with and further talk with a man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there is no light?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun ... when there was no light?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun ... when there was no light? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should stand together with or should talk with³ a man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there is no light, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.11.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

In the dark of the night means: after the sun has gone down.⁴

When there is no light means: when it is dark.⁵

Vin.4.269
BD.3.264

Man means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal; one who is learned, competent to stand, to talk.

¹ Fact that he was a relative did not mitigate the offence. ² Mentioned at [Vin.4.227](#), [Vin.4.269](#), [Vin.4.290](#), [Vin.4.292](#). ³ Vin-a.926 "about worldly life." ⁴ Same phrase used in definition of *attharīgate suriye*, "after sunset," at [Vin.4.55](#) ([BD.2.275](#)). ⁵ *anāloke*.

Together with means: together.¹

The one with the other means: there is a man as well as a nun.²

Should stand together with means: if she stands within a reach of a man's hand, there is an offence of expiation.

Or should talk with means: if she talks, standing within a reach of a man's hand, there is an offence of expiation. If she stands or talks, having left (the space of) a reach of the hand,³ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she stands together with or talks with a *yakkha* or a departed one or a eunuch or an animal in human form, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if some learned friend comes to be (present); if she, not wishing for a private place, stands or talks thinking about something else⁴; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.11.2.2

¹ Cf. Vin.4.68 (BD.2.301). ² Cf. Vin.4.68 (BD.2.301). ³ Cf. Vin.4.95. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.69, Vin.4.97 (BD.2.301, BD.2.358f.) and BD.3.268, below.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 12

Bi-Pc.12.1.1
BD.3.265

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a man, a relative of a nun who was a pupil of Bhaddā Kāpilānī,¹ set out from a village for Sāvattthī on some business. Then that nun, thinking: "It is forbidden by the lord to stand together with (or) talk with a man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there is no light,"² stood together with and talked with that very man, the one with the other, in a secluded place. Those who were modest nuns ... (Bi-Pc.11.1. *Instead of* in the dark of the night when there is no light *read* in a secluded place) ... " ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should stand together with or should talk with a man, the one with the other, in a secluded place, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.12.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.,

A secluded place means: it is secluded by a wall built of wattle and daub or by a door or by a screen or by a screen wall or by a tree or by a pillar or by a sack or it is secluded by anything whatever.³

Vin.4.270

Man means: a human man ... (Bi-Pc.11.2) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ See above, BD.3.263, for references. ² Nuns' Bi-Pc.11. ³ Cf. Vin.3.188, Vin.3.192 (BD.1.332, BD.1.337).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 13

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a man, a relative of a nun who was a pupil of Bhaddā Kāpilānī,¹ set out from a village for Sāvattḥī on some business. Then that nun, thinking: "It is forbidden by the lord to stand together with (or) talk with a man, the one with the other, in a secluded place,"² stood together with and talked with that very man in an open place. Those who were modest nuns ... (Bi-Pc.11.1. *Instead of* in the dark of the night when there is no light *read* in an open place) ... "... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.13.1.1
BD.3.266

"Whatever nun should stand together with or should talk with a man, the one with the other, in an open place, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.13.2.1

Open place means: what is not secluded by a wall built of wattle and daub ... or by a sack or what is not secluded by anything whatever.

Man means: a human man ... (Bi-Pc.11.2) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ See above, BD.3.263, for references. ² Nuns' Bi-Pc.12.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 14

Bi-Pc.14.1.1
BD.3.267

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, stood together with and talked with a man, the one with the other, on a carriage road and in a cul-de-sac and at cross-roads,¹ and she whispered in his ear² and she dismissed the nun who was her companion. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā stand together with ... at cross-roads, and whisper in his ear and dismiss the nun who is her companion?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā stood together with ... and dismissed the nun who is her companion?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā stand together with ... and dismiss the nun who is her companion? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.271

“Whatever nun should stand together with or should talk with a man, the one with the other, on a carriage road or in a cul-de-sac or at cross-roads³ or should whisper in his ear or should dismiss the nun who is her companion, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.14.2.1
BD.3.268

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Carriage road means: it is called a carriage road.⁴

¹ These three words occur above, **BD.3.105 (Vin.4.176)** in definition of “among the houses.”

² *nikaṇṇikaṃ jappeti*. ³ Curiously translated by B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature* 1.74, in (12) “in the public street or cross roads where there are crows.” ⁴ *rathiyā nāma racchā vuccati*. *Racchā* is a contracted form of *rathiyā*; it occurs at **Vin.2.194, Vin.3.151**; Ja.1.346, Ja.1.425, and in definition of *rathikā*, at Vin-a.886.

Cul-de-sac means: they depart by that (way) by which they entered.

Cross-roads means: it is called a place where four roads meet.¹

Man means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal; one who is learned, competent to stand, to talk.²

Together with means: together.³

The one with the other means: there is a man as well as a nun.⁴

Should stand together with means: ... offence of expiation.⁵

Or should talk with means: ... offence of expiation.⁶

Or should whisper in his ear means: if she talks close into a man's ear,⁷ there is an offence of expiation.

Or should dismiss the nun who is her companion means: if, desiring to indulge in bad habits, she then⁸ dismisses the nun who is her companion, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁹ In leaving the region of sight or the region of hearing, there is an offence of wrong-doing. When she has left, there, is an offence of expiation.¹⁰ If she stands or talks, having left (the space of) a reach of the hand, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹¹ If she stands together with or talks with a *yakkha* or a departed one or a eunuch or an animal in human form, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if some learned friend comes to be (present); if, not wishing for a private place she stands or talks thinking about something else¹²; if, not wishing to indulge in bad habits, she dismisses the nun who is her companion if there is something to be done¹³; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.14.2.2

BD.3.269

¹ *siṅghāṭako nāma caccaram vuccati*. Cf. explanation of *siṅghāṭaka* at Vin-a.886, quoted above, BD.3.105. The word *caccara* occurs at Vin.3.151 (BD.1.257); Mi.330; Ja.1.425. ² = above, BD.3.264. ³ = above, BD.3.264. ⁴ = above, BD.3.264. ⁵ = above, BD.3.264. ⁶ = above, BD.3.264. ⁷ *upakaṇṇake*, or secretly; cf. Vin.2.99, Vin.4.20 (BD.2.203). ⁸ *pi*, which Oldenberg says, Vin.4.367, "we ought to expunge." ⁹ Cf. Vin.4.93 (BD.2.352) in definition of "should dismiss." ¹⁰ Cf. Vin.4.93 (BD.2.352) in definition of "should dismiss." ¹¹ Cf. above, BD.3.264. ¹² Cf. Vin.4.69, Vin.4.97 (BD.2.301, BD.2.358), BD.2.269 (above, BD.3.264). ¹³ Cf. Vin.4.94 (BD.2.353). Vin-a.927 says on the above passage, "if it is for conveying ticket-food or for putting in order something badly arranged in the dwelling-place."

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 15

Bi-Pc.15.1.1
BD.3.270

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun frequented a certain family as a regular diner. Then that nun, having dressed in the morning, taking her bowl and robe, approached that family; having approached, having sat down on a seat, she departed without asking the owner (for permission). The family's slave-woman, while sweeping the house, placed that seat inside a dish.¹ The people, not seeing that seat, spoke thus to that nun: "Lady, where is that seat?"

Vin.4.272

"I, sirs, did not see that seat."

Saying, "Lady, give back that seat," having scolded her, they stopped (her as) a regular diner. Then these people, searching² the house, having seen that seat inside the dish, having apologised to that nun, (re-) established her as a regular diner. Then that nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this nun, having approached families before a meal, having sat down on a seat, depart without asking the owner (for permission)?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun ... the owner (for permission)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun ... depart without asking the owner (for permission)? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

BD.3.271

¹ This sounds odd, but we know little of the sizes of the dishes and vessels used. But if the *āsana*, the seat, defined below as "the place for sitting cross-legged," was only a rush- or padded-seat for sitting on on the floor, it could easily be mislaid in quite a moderate sized bowl. ² *sodheti* can also mean to clean.

“Whatever nun, having approached families before a meal, having sat down on a seat, should depart without asking the owner (for permission), there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Before a meal means: from sunrise until midday.¹

Family means: there are four (kinds of) families: a noble family, a brahmin family, a merchant family, a low-caste family.²

Having approached means: having gone there.

A seat means: it is called a place for sitting cross-legged.³

Having sat down means: having sat down on this.

Should depart without asking the owner (for permission) means: whatever man in that family is learned, without asking him (for permission but) in letting herself pass a place that is sheltered from the rain,⁴ there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.15.2.1

If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission) and departs, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she has not asked (for permission) ... If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission) ... there is an offence of expiation. If it is not for a place for sitting cross-legged, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that

Bi-Pc.15.2.2

BD.3.272

¹ This is the reverse of the definition of “wrong time” (for eating) at [Vin.4.86](#) ([BD.2.336](#)). These two definitions together divide the day into two times for eating—the right and the wrong. ² = [Vin.3.184](#), [Vin.4.80](#), [Vin.4.177](#). ³ *pallaṅka* must at some time have come to mean the thing sat upon, early on perhaps a simple mat. At [Vin.1.192](#) *pallaṅka* is among various things which if used gives rise to a *dukkata* offence; while at [Vin.2.280](#) nuns incur a similar offence if they sit on one, a half-*pallaṅka* being “allowed” instead. This may mean, however, sitting half cross-legged—so as to give more room. At [Vin.2.169](#) a *pallaṅka* is allowed to be used by monks if the hair is destroyed (*bhīnditvā*), while at [Vin.4.299](#) this same proviso (here *chīnditvā*, cut out) turns the nuns’ offence of using a *pallaṅka* into no offence.” It is defined here as “made by bringing (horse-) hair for it,” but at [DN-a.86](#) as “made having put figures of wild animals on the legs.” See *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.11, n.5 for some interesting remarks. ⁴ *anovassaka*. Cf. *deso anovassako* at [Vin.2.211](#). [Vin-a.927](#) says that in making the first foot cross (or pass), there is an offence of wrong-doing; in making the second foot cross, one of expiation.

she has not asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.15.2.3

There is no offence if she goes away asking (for permission); if it is one that is not movable¹; if she is ill; if there are accidents²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.273

¹ *asamhāṛime*; presumably meaning that she can go away of her own accord if she has not been given a *pallaṅka* or other movable seat. ² Vin-a.927 says that if they depart (*pakkamanti*, variant reading °*ati*) without asking (for permission) should a fire have broken out in the house or if there are thieves or similar misfortunes, there is no offence.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 16

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, having approached families after a meal, sat down on¹ a seat without having asked the owner (for permission) and moreover lay down on it. People, being shy of the nun Thullanandā, neither sat down on that seat nor lay down on it. The people ... spread it about, saying: "How can the nun Thullanandā, having approached families after a meal, sit down on a seat without asking the owner (for permission) and moreover lie down on it?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā ... and moreover lie down on it?" ...

Bi-Pc.16.1.1
BD.3.273

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... and moreover lay down on it?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... and moreover lie down on it? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having approached families after a meal, should sit down on or should lie down on a seat without asking the owner (for permission), there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

After a meal means: after midday has passed until the sun has set.

Family means: ...²

Bi-Pc.16.2.1

BD.3.274

¹ abhi- ... abhi- may be intended to convey meaning of "loll" and "sprawl." ² See Bi-Pc.15.2.1.

Having approached means: having gone there.¹

Without asking the owner (for permission) means: whatever man in that family is the owner, without asking him to give (permission).

A seat means:²

Should sit down on means: if she sits down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Should lie down on means: if she lies down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.16.2.2

If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission) and sits down on or lies down on (a seat), there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she has not asked (for permission) ... (see [Bi-Pc.15.2](#)) ... there is no offence.

Vin.4.274

Bi-Pc.16.2.3

There is no offence if she, asking (for permission), sits down on or lies down on a seat; if it is a permanently appointed (seat); if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ See [Bi-Pc.15.2.1](#). ² See [Bi-Pc.15.2.1](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 17

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several nuns, going to Sāvattḥī through the Kosalan districts, having arrived at a certain village in the evening, having approached a certain brahmin family, asked for accommodation.¹ Then that brahmin woman spoke thus to these nuns: "Wait, ladies, until the brahmin comes." The nuns, saying: "Until the brahmin comes!", having spread a sleeping-place, some sat down, others lay down. Then that brahmin having come during the night, spoke thus to that brahmin woman: "Who are these?"

Bi-Pc.17.1.1
BD.3.275

"They are nuns, master."

Saying: "Throw out these shaven-headed strumpets,"² he threw them out from the house. Then these nuns, having arrived in Sāvattḥī, told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns, having approached families at the wrong time, having spread a sleeping-place without asking the owner (for permission), sit down on it³ and lie down on it?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... lay down on it?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns, having approached families ... lie down on it? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having approached families at the wrong time, having spread or having caused a sleeping- place to be spread without ask-

BD.3.276

¹ *okāsaṃ yācīṃsu.* ² Cf. [BD.3.178](#), [BD.3.257](#), above. ³ Here and below *abhinisidati*, *abhini-pajjati*; above merely *nisidati*, *nipajjati*. The stress of *abhi-* may mean, as in previous *Pācittiya*, to "loll" and "sprawl."

ing the owner (for permission), should sit down on it or should lie down on it, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.17.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Wrong time means: from sunset until sunrise.¹

Family means: ... Having approached means: ... Without asking the owner (for permission) means: ... (see **Bi-Pc.16.2.2**) ...

Sleeping-place means: even a spreading of leaves.²

Vin.4.275

Having spread means: oneself having spread.

Having caused to be spread means: having caused another to spread.

Should sit down on means: Should lie down on means: ...

Bi-Pc.17.2.2

If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission) and having spread or having caused a sleeping-place to be spread, she sits down on it or lies down on it, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she has not asked (for permission) ... If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission) ... offence of expiation. If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.17.2.3

There is no offence if asking (for permission), having spread or having caused a sleeping-place to be spread, she sits down on it or lies down on it; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. other definitions of “wrong time” at **BD.2.336** and above, **BD.3.86**. ² Other definitions of “sleeping-place” at **BD.2.196 = BD.2.201, BD.2.244**.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 18

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun who was the pupil of Bhaddā Kāpilānī¹ attended on Bhaddā Kāpilānī respectfully. Bhaddā Kāpilānī spoke thus to the nuns: "Ladies, this nun attends on me respectfully, I will give her this robe." Then that nun, because of a misapprehension,² because of a misunderstanding,³ saying: "Ladies, they say that I do not attend respectfully upon the lady, they do not say that she will give me a robe," made (someone) look down upon another. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding, make (someone) look down upon another?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun ... made (someone) look down upon another?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun, because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding, make (someone) look down upon another? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding, should make (someone) look down upon another, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ See Bi-Ss.3, Bi-Pc.11–Bi-Pc.13. ² *duggahitena*. I think here it does not mean that the robe was taken wrongly, but what Bhaddā said. ³ *dūpadhāritena*.

Because of a misapprehension means: because it was apprehended in a different manner.

Because of a misunderstanding means: because it was understood in a different manner.

Another means: one who is ordained. If she makes (someone) look down upon (her), there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.276

Bi-Pc.18.2.2

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) makes (someone) look down upon (her), there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she makes (someone) look down upon one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

Bi-Pc.18.2.3

There is no offence if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

¹ Surely should read *anāpatti*, no offence. ² This *Pācittiya* is unique in the nuns' group in having no more than these two regularly recurring instances where no offence is caused.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 19

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns, not seeing their own things, spoke thus to the nun Caṇḍakālī¹: “Has the lady not seen our things?” The nun Caṇḍakālī ... spread it about, saying:

Bi-Pc.19.1.1
BD.3.279

“What, am I a thief then? What, am I just shameless? That these ladies, not seeing their own things, spoke thus to me: ‘Has the lady not seen our things?’ If indeed, ladies,² I take your things I am not a true recluse, I am falling away from the Brahma-life, I rise up in hell. But whoever speaks thus of me when it is not a fact, let her too be not a true recluse, let her fall away from the Brahma-life, let her rise up in hell.”

Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Caṇḍakālī curse herself as well as another with hell as well as with the Brahma-life?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Caṇḍakālī cursed herself ... with the Brahma-life?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakālī curse herself as well as another with hell as well as with the Brahma-life? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should curse herself or another with hell or with the Brahma-life, there is an offence of expiation.”

¹ See [Bi-Ss.4.7.8](#). ² *sacā h'ayye*. Oldenberg says, [Vin.4.367](#), that this may be *sace aham ayye*, and refers us to [Vin.1.88](#), *sacāca*, with variant reading and interpretation given by Buddhaghosa, appearing at [Vin.1.372](#).

Bi-Pc.19.2.1
BD.3.280

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Herself means: herself (individually).¹

Another means: one who is ordained.

If she curses with hell or with the Brahma-life, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.277

Bi-Pc.19.2.2

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) curses (her) with hell or with the Brahma-life, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she curses (her) with animal birth or with the realm of the departed or with human misfortune, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she curses one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Bi-Pc.19.2.3

There is no offence if she is aiming at (explaining) the goal, if she is aiming at (explaining) a rule, if she is aiming at (explaining) the teaching³; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *attānan ti paccattam* = below, [BD.3.281](#). This explanation will have been necessary if in early Buddhist thought *attā* was prevalently held to stand for *Ātman*, transcendental self. But here it has no such reference, meaning simply a person, an individual, *pacca-* = *paṭi-* throwing back the emphasis away from *Ātman* on to an individual or particular self X, as contrasted with Y. *Paccattam* at AN.i.156 is explained by *sāmaṃ* at AN-a.2.256. ² This is the Sinhalese and Siamese reading. Oldenberg's edition reads: "if she thinks that she is ordained ...," as in sentence but one before. Offence of wrong-doing "should probably read no offence."

³ [Vin.3.130](#) ([BD.1.218](#), and see n.2) = [Vin.4.11](#) ([BD.2.185](#)) = [Vin.4.309](#) (below, [BD.3.345](#)).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 20

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Caṇḍakalī, having quarrelled with the nuns, wept having struck¹ herself again and again. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Caṇḍakalī weep, having struck herself again and again?" ...

Bi-Pc.20.1.1
BD.3.281

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Caṇḍakalī wept, having struck herself again and again?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakalī weep, having struck herself again and again? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should weep, having struck herself again and again, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.20.2.1

Herself means: herself (individually).²

If she weeps, having struck herself again and again, there is an offence of expiation. If she strikes, (but) does not weep, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she weeps, (but) does not strike, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if, smitten by loss of relations or by loss of posses-

Bi-Pc.20.2.2
BD.3.282

¹ *vadhivā*, also meaning to punish. ² See above, **BD.3.280**.

sions¹ or by loss of health,² she weeps (but) does not strike; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.278

The Second Division: that on the dark

¹ *bhoga*, usually translated in this sequence as “wealth,” must here refer either to the nun’s own few possessions or to her relatives’ wealth. ² Here three misfortunes or losses, *vyasana*, occur; five are given at AN.iii.147, DN.iii.235, where it is said that of these five, three (those mentioned above) do not cause beings to arise after death in painful states, while the other two do.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 21

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several nuns bathed naked with prostitutes at the same ford of the river Aciravati.¹ The prostitutes made fun of the nuns, saying: "Why in the world, ladies, is the Brahma-life led by you when you are young? Surely the pleasures of the senses should be enjoyed. When you are old, then you can lead the Brahma-life; thus will both extremes be experienced² by you." The nuns, being made fun of by these prostitutes, became ashamed.³ Then these nuns, having gone to a dwelling, told this matter to the nuns. The nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"Because of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training for nuns founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order ... for following the discipline.⁴ And thus, monks, the nuns should set forth this rule of training: **"Whatever nun should bathe naked, there is an offence of expiation."**

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Should bathe naked means: if she bathes not clothed, not dressed,⁵ there is an offence of expiation.

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.293](#) and above, [BD.3.247](#). Other regulations as to the foods to be used by nuns when bathing given at [Vin.2.280](#). ² *pariggahita*, literally taken up. ³ At [Vin.1.293](#) this is the story said to have been told by Visākhā to the lord when she was asking him to confer the eight boons, and of which the giving of bathing cloths for the nuns was the last. ⁴ See [BD.1.37f.](#); [BD.2.87](#), [BD.3.248](#), [BD.2.323](#). ⁵ *nivattha* and *pāruta*, the words used above, are also those that together cover the putting on of the three robes; see [BD.2.32](#), [n.2](#), [n.3](#).

There is no offence if she is one whose robe is stolen¹ or if she is one whose robe is destroyed²; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ These words are defined (for monks) at **BD.2.48**—i.e., in Monks' **Bu-NP.6** which, as is to be gathered from Vin-a.919, holds good for nuns as well as for monks. ² See previous note.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 22

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time bathing cloths for the nuns were allowed by the lord.¹ The group of six nuns, saying: "Bathing cloths are allowed by the lord," wore bathing cloths that were not of a (proper) measure; they went about trailing (these) in front as well as behind.² Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the group of six nuns wear bathing cloths that are not of a (proper) measure?" ...

Bi-Pc.22.1.1
BD.3.285
Vin.4.279

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns wear bathing cloths that are not of a (proper) measure?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the group of six nuns wear bathing cloths that are not of a (proper) measure? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"When a bathing cloth is being made for a nun, it must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length four spans according to the accepted span, in width two spans. For her who exceeds this (measure), there is an offence of expiation involving cutting down."³

Bathing cloth means: dressed in⁴ which, she bathes.

Bi-Pc.22.2.1
BD.3.286

¹ At [Vin.1.294](#). The giving of bathing cloths for the Order of nuns was the last of the eight boons which Visakha asked the lord to confer on her. The bathing cloth was the fifth robe to be pointed out to a nun at her ordination, [Vin.2.272](#). ² Cf. above, [BD.3.99](#). ³ Cf. Monks' [Bu-Pc.87](#), [Bu-Pc.89](#), [Bu-Pc.90](#), [Bu-Pc.91](#). ⁴ Here is another example of a garment to which *nivattha* refers; see [BD.2.32](#), [n.2](#).

Is being made means: making or causing to be made.¹

It must be made to a (proper) measure. This is the (proper) measure here: in length four spans according to the accepted span, in width two spans means: if she makes it or causes it to be made exceeding this (measure), in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; having cut it down on acquisition, an offence of expiation is to be confessed.

If what was incompletely executed by herself she has finished by herself, there is an offence of expiation. If she makes others finish what was incompletely executed by herself ... If what was incompletely executed by others she has finished by herself ... If she makes others finish what was incompletely executed by others, there is an offence of expiation. If she makes it or causes it to be made for another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having acquired what was made for another, she makes use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.²

Bi-Pc.22.2.2

There is no offence if she makes it to the (proper) measure; if she makes it to less than the (proper) measure; if having acquired what was made for another (but) exceeding the (proper) measure, having cut it down, she makes use of it; if she makes a canopy or a ground-covering or a screen-wall or a mattress or a squatting-mat; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.³

¹ = Vin.3.226, Vin.4.168, Vin.4.171. ² = Vin.3.225, Vin.4.167, Vin.4.169, Vin.4.170, Vin.4.171.

³ = Vin.4.171.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 23

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun's robe of costly robe-cloth was badly made, badly sewn. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to that nun: "Lady, this robe-cloth of yours is lovely, but the robe is badly made, badly sewn."

Bi-Pc.23.1.1
BD.3.287

Vin.4.280

"If I unsew it, lady, will you sew it?"

"Yes, lady, I will sew it."

Then that nun, having unsewn that robe, gave it to the nun Thullanandā. The nun Thullanandā, thinking: "I will sew it, I will sew it," neither sewed it nor made an effort¹ to get it sewn. Then that nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, having had a nun's robe unsewn, neither sew it nor make an effort to get it sewn?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the Thullanandā, having had a nun's robe unsewn, neither sewed it nor made an effort to get it sewn?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... nor make an effort to get it sewn? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having unsewn or having made (another) unsew a nun's robe, if she is not afterwards prevented should neither sew it nor should make an effort to get it sewn, except on the fourth and fifth days, there is an offence of expiation."

¹ *ussukkaṃ karoti*, or "to find energy." Cf. below, [BD.3.309](#), [BD.3.330](#).

Bi-Pc.23.2.1
BD.3.288

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

A nun's means: another nun's.

Robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes.

Having unsewn means: herself having unsewn.

Having made (another) unsew means: having made another unsew.

If she is not afterwards prevented means: if there is not an obstacle.¹

Should neither sew means: should not herself sew.

Nor should make an effort to get it sewn means: should not command another.²

Except on the fourth and fifth days means: having excluded the fourth and fifth days.

If she thinks, "I will neither sew it nor make an effort to get it sewn," in the mere throwing off of the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.³

Bi-Pc.23.2.2

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained, having unsewn or having made (another) unsew a robe, and if she is not afterwards prevented, neither sews it nor makes an effort to get it sewn, except on the fourth and fifth days, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If, having unsewn or having made (another) unsew another requisite ... except on the fourth and fifth days, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, having unsewn or made (another) unsew a robe or another requisite of one who is not ordained ... except on the fourth and fifth days, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.281

Bi-Pc.23.2.3

BD.3.289

¹ =below, [BD.3.331](#). ² Cf. below, [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.331](#). ³ Cf. below, [BD.3.331](#).

There is no offence if there is an obstacle¹; if, having looked about, she does not get the chance²; if she, working,³ lets the fourth and fifth days pass; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *antarāya*; ten are enumerated at [Vin.1.112](#), [Vin.1.169](#). ² On analogy of [Bi-Pc.34](#), [Bi-Pc.45](#) below and following the Sinhalese version, I have adopted a different punctuation from that occurring in Oldenberg's text of [Bi-Pc.23](#), hence altering the sense. Cf. also below, [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.331](#). ³ Taking the Sinhalese and Siamese *karontī* as against Oldenberg's *karontān*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 24

Bi-Pc.24.1.1
BD.3.290

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ nuns, having entrusted robes² to the hands of (other) nuns, set out on a tour of the country with (only) the inner and the upper robes. Those robes, deposited for a long time, became soiled; nuns dried them in the sun. Nuns spoke thus to these nuns: "Ladies, whose are these robes that are soiled?" Then these nuns told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can nuns, having entrusted robes to the hands of (other) nuns, set out on a tour of the country with (only) the inner and the upper robes?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... with (only) the inner and the upper robes?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... with (only) the inner and the upper robes? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should miss going about in an outer cloak for five days,³ there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.24.2.1

¹ Cf. Monks' Bu-NP.2 (BD.2.12). ² Merely called *cīvara* here. The *sikkhāpada* makes it clear that the *saṃghāti*, outer cloak, is meant; Vin-a.652 says that this is the case with the monks' *cīvara* mentioned in Bu-NP.2. At some time the nuns came to be allowed five robes, mentioned below. For these see BD.2, Introduction, p.xix. It is therefore quite possible to say here that the nuns went with "only" their inner and upper robes, if we think of these with the outer cloak as constituting the regular set of three robes, to which the other two were merely added as extras for the nuns. ³ *pañcāhikam*, what consists of five days

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

BD.3.291

Should miss going about in an outer cloak for five days means: if on the fifth day she neither dresses in nor puts on nor dries in the sun the five robes, (but) lets the fifth day pass, there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that five days are passed when they are passed, there is an offence of expiation.¹ If she is in doubt as to whether five days are passed, there is an offence of expiation. If she thinks that five days are not passed when they are passed, there is an offence of expiation. If she thinks that five days are passed when they are not passed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether five days are not passed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that five days are not passed when they are not passed, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.24.2.2

Vin.4.282

There is no offence if, on the fifth day, she dresses in or puts on or dries the five robes in the sun; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.24.2.3

¹ Some material left out here. These clauses should state that the offence also depends on her not dressing in, putting on or drying the five robes. Vin-a.929 says that for each robe there is an offence, thus for the five (robes) there are five (offences).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 25

Bi-Pc.25.1.1
BD.3.292

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun having walked for alms, having spread out a damp robe,¹ entered a dwelling-place. A certain nun, having put on that robe, entered a village for almsfood. She, having come out,² asked the nuns: "Ladies, have you not seen my robe?" The nuns told this matter to that nun. Then that nun ... spread it about, saying:

"How can this nun, without asking (for permission) put on my robe?" Then this nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun put on a nun's robe without asking (for permission)?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun ... without asking (for permission)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can a nun ... without asking (for permission)? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should wear a robe that should be handed back,³ there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.25.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

A robe that should be handed back means: if she dresses in or puts on any one robe of the five (kinds of) robes of one who is ordained, either

BD.3.293

¹ *allacīvara*. Cf. Ja.6.51. *Alla* can mean wet, moist, and also fresh, new. ² This must refer to the first nun, meaning when she (later) came out of the dwelling-place. ³ *cīvarasaṃkamanīyaṃ*, explained at Vin-a.930 as *paṭidātābbacīvara*, a robe that should be restored, given back (to the rightful owner).

if it was not given to her or without asking (permission) for it, there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) wears a robe that should be handed back, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she wears a robe of one who is not ordained and that should be handed back, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

Bi-Pc.25.2.2

Vin.4.283

There is no offence if she gives it or, if asking (permission) for it, she dresses in it or puts it on; if she is one whose robe is stolen,² if she is one whose robe is destroyed³; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.25.2.3

¹ Should doubtless read, "there is no offence." ² Cf. above, BD.3.284. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.284

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 26

Bi-Pc.26.1.1
BD.3.294

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the family who supported the nun Thullanandā spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "Lady, we will give robes for the Order of nuns." The nun Thullanandā saying: "You are very busy, there is much to be done," put an obstacle in the way.¹ Then that family's house was burnt down. They ... spread it about, saying: "How could the lady Thullanandā put an obstacle in the way of our gift of faith? We are down and out; all round,² both as to property and as to merit." Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā put an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robes?"³ ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā put an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robes?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā put an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robes? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should put an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robes there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.26.2.1
BD.3.295

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ *antarāyaṃ akāsi*, as we might, say, "made an objection." ² *paribāhirā*; the word also occurs at SN.i.126. [Vin.2.140](#). ³ Note how the interest is shifted from the laypeople to the nuns.

A group means: it is called an Order of nuns.¹

Robe means: any one robe of the six (kinds of) robes (including) the least one fit for assignment.²

Vin.4.284

Should put an obstacle in the way means: if, saying: “How can this robe be given?” she puts an obstacle in the way, there is an offence of expiation. If she puts an obstacle in the way of another requisite, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she puts an obstacle in the way of a robe or of another requisite for several nuns³ or for one nun or for a woman who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if she hinders having pointed out an advantage⁴; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.26.2.2

¹ = below, [BD.3.346](#). In the Vinaya, *gaṇa* is almost always a group of from one to four monks or nuns, while *saṅgha* is an Order—i.e., five or more monks or nuns. It is curious to find *gaṇa* and *saṅgha* identified, as above, but the wording of the introductory story appears to be responsible. ² = [Vin.3.196](#), [Vin.3.210](#), [Vin.4.60](#), [Vin.4.122](#), [Vin.4.123](#), etc. ³ *sambahula*. With Old Commentary's identification, above, of *saṅgha* and *gaṇa*, *gaṇa* a group, has moved from its normal second to the first place of that triad which is usually found as *saṅgha gaṇa ekabhikkhunī* (Order, group, one nun). The second place has therefore to be filled by another word: *sambahula* is the obvious choice, for in Vinaya it is often virtually a synonym for *gaṇa*. “One nun” follows next in its usual order and form. Cf. below, [BD.3.347](#). ⁴ Cf. below, [BD.3.301](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 27

Bi-Pc.27.1.1
BD.3.296

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time robe-material had accrued to an Order of nuns not at a right time.¹ Then that Order of nuns collected together wishing to distribute that robe-material. Now at that time the nuns who were pupils of the nun Thullanandā had gone out. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to those nuns²: "Ladies, nuns are gone out; the robe-material should not be distributed yet," (and she held back the division of the robe-material. Nuns, saying: "The robe-material should not be distributed yet," parted company. When the nuns who were pupils returned, the nun Thullanandā had that robe-material distributed. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā hold back a legally valid division of robe-material?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, that the nun Thullanandā held back a legally valid division of robe-material?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā hold back a legally valid division of robe-material? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should hold back a legally valid division of robe-material, there is an offence of expiation."³

¹ See Nuns' **Bu-NP.2**, where also Thullanandā takes a hand in robe-distribution, and where robe- (material given) not at a right time is defined. Cf. also Monks' **Bu-NP.3**, where *akālacīvara* may be accepted by a monk. It is to be gathered from Vin-a.919 that the Monks' **Bu-NP.3** holds good for nuns as well as for monks. ² Presumably to those constituting the Order, for the pupils had not yet returned. ³ Cf. below, **Bi-Pc.30**.

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.27.2.1
BD.3.297

Legally valid division of robe-material means: a complete Order of nuns, having collected together, distributes it.¹

Vin.4.285

Should hold back means: if, saying: "How could one distribute this robe-material?"² she holds it back, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.27.2.2

If she thinks that it is legally valid when it is legally valid (and) holds (the division) back, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is legally valid ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not legally valid when it is legally valid ... no offence. If she thinks that it is legally valid when it is not legally valid, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not legally valid, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not legally valid when it is not legally valid, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.27.2.3

There is no offence if she holds it back having pointed out an advantage; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ "Pupils," not being fully ordained, did not rank as nuns with administrative powers, although they were called *antevāsibhikkhuniyo*. Therefore their absence from a ceremony would not invalidate it, as would the absence of a fully ordained nun. "Complete" (*samagga*) interpreted at Vin-a.792 as meaning "all come"; see **BD.2.267**, and note 7. ² Oldenberg **Vin.4.368**, proposes to read *idaṃ cīvaraṃ bhājīyeyya* for text's *imaṃ cīvaraṃ bhājeyya*. Sinhalese edition has *idaṃ cīvaraṃ bhājeyya*; Siamese edition same as text.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 28

Bi-Pc.28.1.1
BD.3.298

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā gave¹ recluses' robe-material to players² and to dancers³ and to female tumblers⁴ and to female conjurors⁵ and to drummers,⁶ saying: "Do praise me in public."⁷ The players and the dancers and the tumblers and the conjurors and the drummers praised the nun Thullanandā in public, saying: "The lady Thullanandā is very learned, she is a repeater, she is wise, she is skilled in giving talk on *dhamma*.⁸ Give for the lady, make for the lady." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

BD.3.299

"How can the lady Thullanandā give recluses' robe-material to a householder?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā gave recluses' robe-material to a householder?"

¹ Cf. below, [BD.3.332](#). ² *naṭā*, explained at Vin-a.931 as "those who play (or dance, *nāṭenti*) a pantomime (or dance, *nāṭakam*)." This last is probably dance-drama. There was no hard-and-fast line in ancient India between dancing, acting and miming; all were needed together, with drumming, for the full production. At sn.iv.306f. players, *nāṭa*, are said by Gotama, as recorded, to arouse wrong states of mind in their audience, and to be reborn in the Hell of Laughter. ³ *nāṭaka*, explained at Vin-a.931 as those who dance (*naccanti*). Word occurs at Mi.331, translated as "play actor," and at Mi.191. ⁴ *laṅghikā*, "those who do tumbling on bamboos and thongs," Vin-a.931. *Laṅghakā* (plural) occurs at Mi.34, Mi.191, Mi.331; Ja.2.142. ⁵ *sokajjhāyikā*. Vin-a.931 reads *sokasāyikā*, with variant readings as text and *sokachāyi*, and explains as "illusion-makers." Cf. Ja.6.580, explained thus here too, and with the further meaning of those who allay and dispel grief. ⁶ *kumbhathūṇikā*, explained at Vin-a.931 as players with a small jar (*ghaṭaka?*). Word also occurs at Ja.5.506, Ja.6.580 (not explained) and DN.i.6; see *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.8, n.4. DN-a.84 says that *kumbhathūṇa* is the noise of a pot striking a four-cornered trough, which explanation *Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.8, n.4 says is "obscure and probably corrupt." ⁷ *parisati*. ⁸ As in Nuns' [Bu-NP.10](#), [Bu-NP.11](#), [Bu-Pc.33](#).

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā give recluses' robe-material to a householder? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should give recluses' robe-material to a householder or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer, there is an offence of expiation.”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.28.2.1

Householder means: he who inhabits a house.¹

Wanderer means: excluding monk and novice, he who has reached (the stage of a) wanderer.²

Female wanderer means: excluding nun and probationer and female novice, she who has reached (the stage of a) female wanderer.³

Vin.4.286

Recluses' robe-material means: it is called made allowable.⁴ If she gives, there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if she gives to (her) parents; if she gives for the time being⁵; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.28.2.2

¹ = Vin.3.212, Vin.3.219, Vin.3.259 (BD.2.47, BD.2.60, BD.2.148). ² = Vin.4.92 (BD.2.349) = below, BD.3.332, and cf. Vin.4.224. ³ = Vin.4.92 (BD.2.349) = below, BD.3.332, and cf. Vin.4.224.

⁴ *kappakata*. Cf. definition of “new (robe)” as *akalakappa* at Vin.4.120. See BD.2.407, n.5, n.6, and BD.2.409, n.5. ⁵ Cf. BD.1.110, n.7.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 29

Bi-Pc.29.1.1
BD.3.300

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the family who supported the nun Thullanandā spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "If we, lady, are able, we will give robe-material for the Order of nuns." Now at that time nuns, having kept the rains-retreat, collected together wishing to distribute robe-material. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to these nuns: "Wait, ladies, there is for the Order of nuns an expectation of robe-material." The nuns spoke thus to the nun Thullanandā: "Do go, lady, and find out about this robe-material." The nun Thullanandā approached that family; having approached she spoke thus to the people: "Sirs, do give robe-material for the Order of nuns." They said: "Lady, we are not able to give robe-material for the Order of nuns." The nun Thullanandā told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā, when an expectation of robe-material is not sure,¹ let the robe-season² pass?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... let the robe-season pass?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... let the robe-season pass? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, when an expectation of robe-material is not sure, should let the robe-season pass, there is an offence of expiation."

¹ *dubbala*, not strong, weak; uncertain, not sure, low or poor. ² Cf. Vin.3.261 (BD.2.152f.).

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.29.2.1
BD.3.301

When an expectation of robe-material is not sure means: if they say, "If we are able, we will give, we will make," (but their) word becomes broken.

Robe-season means: the last month of the rainy season when the *kaṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made, the five months when it is (formally) made.¹

Vin.4.287

Should let the robe-season pass means: if she lets pass the last day of the rainy season when the *kaṭhina* cloth is not (formally) made, there is an offence of expiation. If she lets the day pass for removing the *kaṭhina* (privileges),² there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that the robe-material is not sure when it is not sure (and) lets the robe-season pass, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether the robe-material is not sure ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that the robe-material is sure³ when it is not sure ... no offence. If she thinks that the robe-material is not sure when it is sure, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether the robe-material is sure, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that the robe-material is sure when it is sure, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.29.2.2

There is no offence if she hinders having pointed out an advantage⁴; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.29.2.3

¹ = definition of "time of giving robes" at Vin.4.74, Vin.4.100 (BD.2.311, BD.2.366), and cf. Vin.3.204. ² Cf. Vin.3.196 (BD.2.5 and notes). ³ *adubbala*. ⁴ =above, BD.3.295.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 30

Bi-Pc.30.1.1
BD.3.302

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a dwelling-place had been erected by a certain lay-follower for the Order. He, at the festival for this dwelling-place, was desirous of giving robe-material at the wrong time for both the Orders. Now at that time the *kaṭhina* cloth for both the Orders was (formally) made. Then that lay-follower, having approached the Order,¹ asked for the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges).² They told this matter to the lord. Then the lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to remove the *kaṭhina* (privileges). And thus, monks, should the *kaṭhina* (privileges) be removed: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order remove the *kaṭhina* (privileges). This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order removes the *kaṭhina* (privileges). If the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent. If it is not pleasing, they should speak. The *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed by the Order, and it is right ... So do I understand this.’”

Bi-Pc.30.1.2

Then that lay-follower, having approached the Order of nuns, asked for the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). The nun Thullanandā, thinking, “There will be robe-material for us,” held back the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). Then that lay-follower ... spread it about, saying: “How can

Vin.4.288
BD.3.303

¹ I.e., the Order of monks, as one gathers from the context. ² See [BD.2.5, n.3](#), [BD.2.6, n.5](#). Here the removal must depend on the ground of the robes being settled, or on that of the general removal of the privileges by a whole Order.

these nuns not give a removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) for us?" Nuns heard that lay-follower who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the nun Thullanandā hold back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges)?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā held back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges)?"

"It is true, lord " ... (see [Bi-Pc.27.1](#)) "... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should hold back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges), there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.30.2.1

Legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) means a complete Order of nuns, having collected together, remove them.¹

Should hold back means: if, saying: "How can this *kaṭhina* (privilege) be removed?" she holds it back, there is an offence of expiation.²

If she thinks that it is legally valid when it is legally valid (and) holds it back ... (see [Bi-Pc.27.2](#)) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.30.2.2

The Third Division: that on being naked

¹ Cf. [Bi-Pc.27.2.1](#). ² Cf. [Bi-Pc.27.2.1](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 31

Bi-Pc.31.1.1
BD.3.304

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time two nuns shared¹ one couch.² People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place, having seen (them) ... spread it about, saying: "How can two nuns share one couch, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can two nuns share one couch?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that two nuns shared one couch?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can two nuns share one couch? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.289

"Whatever two nuns should share one couch, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.31.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Nuns mean: they are called ordained.

Two should share one couch means: if one is lying down and the other lies down, there is an offence of expiation. Or if both are lying down, there is an offence of expiation. If having got up, they lie down again, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.31.2.2

¹ *tuvattenti*, explained at Vin-a.932 as to lie down on. ² At Vin.2.124 it is made a *dukkata* offence for monks to share one couch. At Vin.2.10 one of the bad habits indulged in by lax monks was the sharing of one couch with women of respectable families.

There is no offence if one is lying down and the other sits down, or if both are sitting down; if they are mad, if they are the first wrong-doers.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 32

Bi-Pc.32.1.1
BD.3.305

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time two nuns shared one covering-cloth.¹ People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place ... (see [Bi-Pc.31.1](#). *Instead of one couch read one covering-cloth*) ... "... this rule of training:

“Whatever two nuns should share one covering-cloth, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.32.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Nuns mean: they are called ordained.

Two should share one covering-cloth means: if having covered themselves with that,² they put that³ on, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.32.2.2

If they think that it is one covering-cloth when it is one covering-cloth (and) share it, there is an offence of expiation. If they are in doubt as to whether it is one covering-cloth ... If they think they are different covering-cloths when it is one covering-cloth ... offence of expiation. If they think that they are different cloths when it is one covering, there is an offence

BD.3.306

¹ *ekattharaṇapāvuraṇa*. Vin-a.932 says that this means one covering as well as a cloth. At [Vin.2.10](#), among the bad habits indulged in by lax monks were that they shared one covering, *attharaṇa*, that they shared one cloth, *pāvuraṇā*, and that they shared one covering-cloth, *attharaṇapāvuraṇā* with women of respectable families. At [Vin.2.124](#) the group of six monks shared these articles, thereby incurring an offence of wrong-doing. The fact that the two words *attharaṇa* and *pāvuraṇā* appear both separately and then together (see also below), to my mind shows that, when joined, they stand for one article: a cloth used as a covering, therefore a covering-cloth. There is also the reference to it as *taṃ* (acc.), “that”; see next note. ² *tañ ñeva ... tañ ñeva*. ³ *tañ ñeva ... tañ ñeva*.

of wrong-doing. If they think that it is one covering-cloth when they are different coverings, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If they think that it is one covering-cloth when they are different covering-cloths, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If they are in doubt as to whether they are different covering-cloths, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If they think that they are different covering-cloths when they are different covering-cloths, there is no offence.

There is no offence if they lie down having pointed out an arrangement¹; if they are mad, if they are the first wrong-doers.

Bi-Pc.32.2.3

Vin.4.290

¹ *vavatthāna*. Vin-a.932 says that for those who lie down having placed the “yellow robes” in the middle or a walking-staff or even a belt, there is no offence.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 33

Bi-Pc.33.1.1
BD.3.307

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā was very learned, she was a repeater, she was wise, she was skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk.¹ Bhaddā Kāpilānī² also was very learned ... she was skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk, she was esteemed as being eminent.³ People, thinking: “Bhaddā Kāpilānī is very learned ... she is skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk, she is esteemed as being eminent,” having first visited⁴ Bhaddā Kāpilānī afterwards visited the nun Thullanandā. The nun Thullanandā, overcome by envy,⁵ thinking: “Those who are said to have few wants, to be content, detached, not living in company, these are intent on convincing,⁶ intent on hinting,” walked up and down and stood still and sat down and lay down on a sleeping-place and recited and made (another) recite and studied⁷ in front of Bhaddā Kāpilānī. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can the lady Thullanandā intentionally cause discomfort to the lady Bhaddā Kāpilānī?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā intentionally caused discomfort to Bhaddā Kāpilānī?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā intentionally cause discomfort to Bhaddā Kāpilānī? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

¹ As in Nuns' Bi-NP.10, Bi-NP.11, Bi-Pc.28. ² Cf. above, BD.3.186, n.1. ³ *ulārasaṃbhāvitā*.

⁴ *payirupāsati* also means to honour. ⁵ *issāpakatā*, as at SN.ii.260, Vin.3.107. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.932 takes it as *issāya pakatā*, envious by nature, with the variant reading *apakatā*, not having done away with envy. ⁶ *saññattibahulā*. ⁷ For these last two cf. BD.2.192 (Vin.4.15).

BD.3.308

“Whatever nun should intentionally cause discomfort to a nun, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.33.2.1

To a nun means: to another nun.

Intentionally means: a transgression committed knowingly, consciously, deliberately.²

Should cause discomfort means: if thinking, “Because of this there will be discomfort for her,” she walks up and down or stands still or sits down or lies down on a sleeping-place or recites or makes (another) recite or studies in front of (her) without asking (for permission),³ there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) intentionally causes discomfort, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained (and) intentionally causes discomfort, there is an offence of expiation. If she intentionally causes discomfort to one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴

Bi-Pc.33.2.2

Vin.4.291

There is no offence if she, not desiring to cause discomfort (and) having asked (for permission), walks up and down ... or studies in front of (her); if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.33.2.3

¹ Cf. Monks' Bu-Pc.77. ² = Vin.3.73; see BD.1.126, n.3. ³ This appears to be a gloss, limiting the scope of the rule. ⁴ Should doubtless be “no offence.”

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 34

Bi-Pc.34.1.1
BD.3.309

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, when (the woman) who lived with her¹ was ailing, neither attended to her nor made an effort² to get her attended to. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, when (the woman) who lives with her is ailing, neither attend to her nor make an effort to get her attended to?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... neither attended to her nor ... attended to?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, when (the woman) who lives with her is ailing, neither attend to her nor make an effort to get her attended to? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should neither attend to an ailing (woman) who lives with her nor should make an effort to get her attended to, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.34.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Ailing means: she is called ill.

¹ *sahajīvinī*. cf. below, [BD.3.375](#), [BD.3.379](#). Not necessarily a fully ordained nun, for the *sahajīvinī* might be a pupil or one not ordained (see [Bi-Pc.34.2.1](#) below), while [Bi-Pc.68](#) and [Bi-Pc.70](#) speak of Thullanandā ordaining her *sahajīvinī*, which means that they had shared a cell before the latter was ordained. ² Cf. above, [BD.3.287](#), below, [BD.3.330](#).

(Woman) who lives with her means: she is called one who shares her cell.¹

BD.3.310

Should neither attend to her means: should not herself attend to her.²

Nor should make an effort to get her attended to means: should not command another.³

If she thinks, “I will neither attend to her nor make an effort to get her attended to,” in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.⁴ If she attends neither to a pupil nor to one who is not ordained nor makes an effort to get her attended to, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.292

There is no offence if there is an obstacle⁵; if, having looked about, she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.34.2.2

¹ *saddhivihārini*, co-resident. Also below, BD.3.375, BD.3.379. ² Cf. above, BD.3.288, below, BD.3.331. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.288, below, BD.3.331. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.3.288, below, BD.3.331.

⁵ Cf. above, BD.3.289, but where the text's punctuation is different, and below, BD.3.331. I prefer that obtaining in Bi-Pc.34 and Bi-Pc.45.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 35

Bi-Pc.35.1.1
BD.3.311

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time Bhaddā Kāpilānī had spent the rains in Saketa. As she had some business to do, she sent a messenger to the nun Thullanandā, saying: "If the lady Thullanandā would give me quarters, I would come to Sāvattthī." The nun Thullanandā spoke thus: "Let her come, I will give it." Then Bhaddā Kāpilānī went from Saketa to Sāvattthī. The nun Thullanandā gave quarters to Bhaddā Kāpilānī. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā was very learned, she was a repeater ... (see Bi-Pc.33.1) ... she was skilled in giving *dhamma*-talk. The nun Thullanandā, thinking: "Those who are said to have few wants ... (see Bi-Pc.33.1) ... intent on hinting," angry, displeased threw Bhaddā Kāpilānī out of her quarters. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā, angry, displeased, having given quarters to the lady Bhaddā Kāpilānī, throw her out?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... threw her out?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... throw her out? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having given quarters to a nun, should, angry, displeased, throw her out or have her thrown out, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Bi-Pc.35.2.1
BD.3.312

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

A nun² means: another nun.

¹ Cf. Monks' Bu-Pc.17. ² Accusative.

Quarters means: it is called fastened by a door.¹

Having given means: oneself having given.

Angry, displeased means: dissatisfied, the mind worsened, stubborn.²

Should throw out means: if, having taken (her) in a room, she throws her out on to the verandah, there is an offence of expiation. If, having taken her on the verandah, she throws her outside, there is an offence of expiation. If, with one effort, she makes her pass through many doors, there is an offence of expiation.³ **Should have her thrown out** means: if she commands another, there is an offence of wrong-doing. When once commanded, if she makes her pass through many doors, there is an offence of expiation.⁴

Vin.4.293

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) having given her quarters, angry, displeased, throws her out or has her thrown out, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she throws out or has her requisites thrown out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she throws out or has her thrown out from what is not fastened by a door ... If she throws out or has her requisites thrown out ... If she throws out or has one who is not ordained thrown out from what is or from what is not fastened by a door ... If she throws out or has her requisites thrown out ... If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁵

Bi-Pc.35.2.2

BD.3.313

There is no offence if she throws out or has one who is shameless thrown out, if she throws out or has her requisites thrown out; if she throws out or has one who is mad thrown out, if she throws out or has her requisites thrown out; if she throws out or has one who makes strife ... quarrels ...

Bi-Pc.35.2.3

¹ = definition of "dwelling" at BD.3.336, below. ² Cf. BD.1.281, BD.2.140, BD.2.251; Vin.4.146, Vin.4.236. ³ Cf. BD.2.251f. ⁴ Cf. BD.2.251f. ⁵ Last clause should probably read "no offence." Cf. whole paragraph with BD.2.252.

contention ... brawls ... who makes disputes in the Order thrown out, if she throws out or has her requisites thrown out; if she throws out or has a pupil or one who shares a cell or one who is not proceeding fitly thrown out, if she throws out or has her requisites thrown out; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

¹ Cf. *BD.2.253*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 36

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Caṇḍakalī kept company¹ with a householder and with a householder's son.² Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Caṇḍakalī keep company ...?" ...

Bi-Pc.36.1.1
BD.3.314

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Caṇḍakalī kept company ...?"

"It is true, lord."

"How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakalī keep company with a householder and a householder's son? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.294

"Whatever nun should keep company with a householder or with a householder's son, that nun should be spoken to thus by the nuns: 'Do not, lady, keep company with a householder and with a householder's son. Let the lady desist, the Order praises such detachment in a sister.' But if that nun, being spoken to thus by the nuns, should persist as before, that nun should be admonished by the nuns up to the third time for giving up that (course). If she should give it up, while being admonished up to the third time, that is good. If she should not give it up, there is an offence of expiation.

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.36.2.1
BD.3.315

¹ This *Pācittiya* should be compared with the Nuns' *Bi-Ss.12*. The *Pācittiya*, partaking as it does of *Saṅghādisesa* material and character, seems out of place here. The main difference is that in the *Pācittiya*, a nun lived in society with a householder, while in the *Saṅghādisesa*, nuns who were pupils lived in society and were of evil habits and so on. Cf. also *Bi-Pc.79*.

² *gahapatināpi gahapatiputtana pi*. Cf. DN.i.62; MN.i.179, MN.i.344.

Keeps company means: keeps company unbecomingly as to body and speech.

Householder means: he who inhabits a house. Householder's son means: he who is a son or brothers.¹

That nun means: that nun who keeps company.

By the nuns means: by other nuns who see, who hear; she should be told by these: "Do not, lady, ... the Order praises such detachment in a sister." And a second time she should be told. And a third time she should be told. If she gives it up, that is good. But if she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Having heard, if they do not speak, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That nun, having been pulled to the midst of the Order, should be told: "Do not, lady, ... the Order praises such detachment in a sister." And a second time she should be told. And a third time she should be told. If she gives it up, that is good. But if she does not give it up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. That nun should be admonished. And thus, monks, should she be admonished: the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: "Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so keeps company with a householder and with a householder's son. She does not give up this course. If it seems right to the Order let the Order admonish the nun so and so for giving up this course. This is the motion. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This nun so and so ..." And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The nun so and so is admonished by the Order for giving up this course. If it is pleasing ... So do I understand this.²

Vin.4.295

As a result of the motion, there is an offence of wrong-doing; as a result of two proclamations, there are offences of wrong-doing. At the end of the proclamations, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.36.2.2
BD.3.316

If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) does not give it up, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act ... offence of expiation. If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence

¹ *yo koci puttabhātaro.* ² Cf. Nuns' *Bi-Ss.10.*

of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

There is no offence if she is not admonished; if she gives it up; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

Bi-Pc.36.2.3

¹ Should no doubt read “no offence.” ² Cf. Nuns' Bi-Ss.10.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 37

Bi-Pc.37.1.1
BD.3.317

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns walked without a weapon¹ on almstour within (their own) region² (when this was) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening.³ Bad men assaulted them. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ... dangerous, frightening?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... dangerous, frightening?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... dangerous, frightening? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should walk without a weapon on alms-tour within (her own) region (when this is) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.37.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Within (her own) region means: in a region of that country⁴ in which she lives.

BD.3.318

Dangerous means: if on this road a place where thieves are halting is seen, a place where they are eating is seen, a place where they are resting

¹ *asatthikā*. As in Monks' Bu-Pc.27, translators differ as to whether this means "without a weapon" or not (having joined) a caravan. See BD.2.289, n.3. I here follow B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature* 1.75 (No.21), and not WALDSCHMIDT, *Bruchstücke des Bhikṣuṇī-Prātimokṣa der Sarvāstivādins*, p.127, "ohne sich einer Karawane angeschlossen zu haben." ² *antoratṭhe*. Not given in *Pali-English Dictionary* or *Critical Pali Dictionary*, but cf. *tiroraṭṭha* in next Pācittiya.

³ Cf. Monks' Bu-Pc.27, where the only legal occasion where a monk might go along the same highroad with a nun was if the road was dangerous and frightening. ⁴ *vijita*, or kingdom, territory, conquered land.

is seen, a place where they are sitting down is seen, a place where they are lying down is seen.¹

Frightening means: if on this road people injured by thieves are seen, (people) plundered are seen, (people) beaten down are seen.²

Without a weapon³ means: without a weapon.⁴

Should walk on almstour means: in a village close enough for a cock (to walk), among every (such) village, there is an offence of expiation. For every half *yojana* in what is not a village, in a jungle, there is an offence of expiation.⁵

There is no offence if she goes with a weapon; if she goes in a place of security⁶ that is not frightening; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.37.2.2

Vin.4.296

¹ = BD.2.158, BD.2.290. ² = BD.2.158, BD.2.290. ³ *asatthikā*, more literally “weaponless.”

⁴ *vinā satthēna*. ⁵ Cf. BD.2.290 in definition of “even among villages”; BD.2.294; and above, BD.3.16. ⁶ *khema*; a word which at some time became important as being applied particularly to spiritual peace, *nibbana*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 38

Bi-Pc.38.1.1
BD.3.319

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns walked without a weapon on almstour outside (their own) region¹ (when this was) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening. Bad men ... (see [Bi-Pc.37.1](#). *Instead of* within (her own) region *read* outside (her own) region) ..." ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should walk without a weapon outside (her own) region (when this is) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.38.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Outside (her own) region means: setting aside that country in which she lives, in another's region.

Dangerous means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.37.2](#)) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *tiroraṭṭhe*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 39

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time nuns walked on alms-tour during the rains. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns walk on almstour during the rains, trampling down the crops and grasses, injuring life that is one-facultied, bringing many small creatures to destruction?"¹ Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

Bi-Pc.39.1.1
BD.3.320

"How can these nuns ... during the rains ... bringing many small creatures to destruction?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... during the rains ... bringing many small creatures to destruction?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns walk on almstour during the rains ... bringing many small creatures to destruction? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should walk on almstour during the rains, there is an offence of expiation."

Vin.4.297

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.39.2.1
BD.3.321

¹ These three phrases occur at [Vin.1.137](#), [Vin.1.138](#), where rains-retreat is allowed to the monks, for lay-people had complained that by walking for alms in all seasons they did harm to crops and small living things, and where it is made a *dukkāṭa* for monks to set out on almstour before they have kept the earlier or later three months of the rains. For "life that is one-facultied," cf. [BD.2.223](#), [BD.2.226](#), and for "small creatures to destruction," cf. [BD.2.71](#).

During the rains means: not having spent the first three months or the last three months.¹

Should walk on almstour means: in a village close enough for a cock (to walk) ... (see [Bi-Pc.37.2.1](#)) ... in what is not a village, in the jungle, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.39.2.2

There is no offence if she goes away for seven days because there is something to be done; if she goes away because she is troubled about something; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ The rains were reckoned to occupy four months; three of these had to be spent in a rains-settlement, on which there were two times for entering, [Vin.1.137](#). Cf. definition of “having spent the rains” below, [BD.3.322](#), [BD.3.354](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 40

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time nuns, as before,¹ spent the rains in Rājagaha, the cold weather there, the hot weather there. People ... spread it about, saying: "The (four) quarters are blocked,² confused with nuns; because of them the (four) quarters are not seen."³ Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Bi-Pc.40.1.1
BD.3.322

"Because of this, monks, I will lay down a rule of training founded on ten reasons: for the excellence of the Order⁴ ... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having kept the rains, should not set out on alms-tour, even for (a distance of) five or six *yojanas*, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.40.2.1

Having kept the rains means: having kept the first three months or the last three months.⁵

If she thinks "I will not set out on almstour, even for (the distance of) five or six *yojanas*," in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

¹ *tatth'eva*—i.e., as in Bi-Pc.39. ² *āhundarika*. See MORRIS, Journal of the Pali Text Society 1884, p.73. ³ Cf. Vin.1.79 for a corresponding paragraph, and DN.ii.99, AN.iii.69 for the last phrase. The meaning clearly is that the nuns were too many for the place. It seems that the lay people were complaining on their own account and not on that of the nuns, as the dative (*bhikkhunīnaṃ, imāsaṃ*) might suggest. ⁴ As at BD.1.37, BD.2.87. ⁵ Cf. Vin.1.138, Vin.4.314.

Bi-Pc.40.2.2
BD.3.323

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if, having looked about for a nun as a companion,¹ she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

The Fourth Division: that on sharing

¹ It was an offence for a nun to go about singly. ² =BD.3.357, BD.3.380, below; and cf. BD.3.289, BD.3.310, BD.3.331, BD.3.336.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 41

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a bold design¹ was made in a picture gallery² in King Pasenadi of Kosala's pleasure grove. Many people went to see the picture gallery. The group of six nuns also went to see the picture gallery. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns go to see the picture gallery, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns go to see a picture gallery?"

Bi-Pc.41.1.1
BD.3.324

...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns went to see a picture gallery?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can this group of six nuns go to see a picture gallery? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should go to see a king's pleasure house³ or a picture gallery or a park or a pleasure grove or a lotus pond,⁴ there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.41.2.1

¹ *paṭibhānacitta*. See [BD.2.285, n.5](#). ² *cittāgāra*. ³ *rājāgāra*. Cf. [DN.i.1](#), °ka, which [DN-a.42](#) explains as: "there they made a rest house (*agāra*) adorned with various designs (*paṭibhānacitta*) for the king's amusement. It was called a *rājāgāra*. ⁴ At [Vin.2.123](#) a lay follower wanted to have a lotus pond built for the monks. The lord, as is said, allowed the lotus pond to the monks.

King's pleasure house means: wherever it is made for a king to amuse himself, to enjoy himself.

BD.3.325

Picture gallery means: wherever it is made for people to amuse themselves, to enjoy themselves.

Park¹ means: wherever it is made for people to amuse themselves, to enjoy themselves.

Pleasure grove means: wherever it is made for people to amuse themselves, to enjoy themselves.²

Lotus pond means: wherever it is made for people to amuse themselves, to enjoy themselves.

If she goes to see, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where she sees, there is an offence of expiation. Having left the region of sight, if she sees again, there is an offence of expiation. If she goes to see one or the other, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Standing where she sees, there is an offence of expiation. Having left the region of sight, if she sees again, there is an offence of expiation.³

Vin.4.299

Bi-Pc.41.2.2

There is no offence if, standing in a monastery, she sees;⁴ if she sees as she is going out or coming in⁵; if she sees, having gone out as there is something to be done,⁶ if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *ārāma*, which I have usually translated as “monastery”; see **BD.2.2, n.2**. ² *uyyāna* therefore here does not have the special meaning of “royal” pleasance, as is sometimes the case.

³ Cf. **Vin.4.108 (BD.2.380)**. As Vin-a.934 points out, the last two clauses there, corresponding to the last two above, incur an offence of wrong-doing. It is sometimes the case that monks incur a lesser penalty than the nuns for a comparable offence. ⁴ According to Vin-a.934 this means that if she sees them building a king's pleasure house and so on when she is inside a monastery.

⁵ Vin-a.934 explains that if she sees when on the road for her almstour, there is no offence. ⁶ Vin-a.934, in the king's presence.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 42

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns made use of a sofa¹ and of a divan.² People, engaged in touring the dwelling place, having seen (them) ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns make use of a sofa and of a divan, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns make use of a sofa and of a divan?" ...

Bi-Pc.42.1.1
BD.3.326

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns made use of a ... divan?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns make use of a sofa and of a divan? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

BD.3.327

¹ *āsandi*. This is the first of the high seats, the large seats which the group of six monks used, thereby incurring a *dukkāṭa* offence, [Vin.1.192](#). The same list occurs at [Vin.2.163](#), where monks are allowed to sit down on all but *āsandi*, *pallaṅka* (see next note) and *tūlika*, but to lie down on none; also at [AN.i.181](#), and [DN.i.7](#) as being among the seats which Gotama is said to refrain from using. At [Vin.2.142-143](#) *āsandi* and *pallaṅka*, with bowls and shoes, are the only wooden articles not allowed to monks.

See *Dialogues of the Buddha*, 1.11, n.4, where Rhys Davids is of the opinion that height and not length is referred to. The fact that in this *Pācittiya* it is "no offence" to use an *āsandi* if the legs have been cut down, also points this way, as does the allowance given monks at [Vin.2.169-170](#) to use *āsandi* if the legs have been broken, *bhinditvā*. On the other hand, at [DN.i.55](#)=[MN.i.515](#)=[SN.iii.207](#) an *āsandi* is used as a bier—i.e., as something long, [SN-a.ii.339](#)=[MN-a.3.227](#), calling it a couch for lying down on, with ([MN-a.](#)) variant reading "for sitting down on." Old Commentary, below speaks of sitting down on and lying down on. CHALMERS Jātaka translation 1.10, translates as "couch" (in a cart); it is therefore not "clear from [Ja.1.108](#)" that *āsandi* is a "cushion" as stated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.27, n.2. ² *pallaṅka*. See above, [BD.3.271](#), n.3.

“Whatever nun should make use of a sofa or of a divan, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bi-Pc.42.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Sofa means: it is called of exceeding measure.

Divan means: it is made having brought hair (stuffing).²

Should make use of means: if she sits down on it or lies down on it, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.42.2.2

There is no offence if, having cut down the legs of the sofa, she makes use of it; if, having cut out the hair (stuffing) from the divan, she makes use of it³; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ A *dukkata* for nuns to sit on a divan at [Vin.2.280](#), a half-(*aḍḍha*-) *pallaṅka* being allowed instead. ² *vāla* at [MN-a.2.45](#) is explained as *assavāla*, horse-hair. ³ Cf. [Vin.2.169-70](#), where these articles are allowed to monks if the legs of the former are broken, *bhīnditvā*, and the horse-hair of the latter destroyed, *bhīnditvā*. Above the reading is in both cases *chīnditvā*, cut.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 43

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns spun yarn. People, engaged in touring the dwelling place, having seen (them) ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns spin yarn, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns spin yarn?" ...

Bi-Pc.43.1.1
BD.3.328
Vin.4.300

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns spin yarn?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the group of six nuns spin yarn? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should spin yarn, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.43.2.1

Yarn means: the six (kinds of) yarn: linen, cotton, silk, wool, coarse hempen cloth, canvas.¹

Should spin means: if she herself spins, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every running up² there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.43.2.2

¹ = Vin.3.256. The same as the six kinds of robe-material; see BD.2.143 for notes. ² *ujjavuj-jave*; a term used in spinning, found I think only here. Vin-a.935 seems to say "if whatever was rolled by hand (*hatthena*, *Pali-English Dictionary* giving the reading *patthena*, by measure) is twisted round on that spindle (? *takka*), there is one offence."

There is no offence if she spins spun yarn¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *kantitasutta*; *kantita* can also mean “cut off.” Vin-a.935 explains by saying, “if she spins having bound together loose yarn (*dasikasutta*), or if she unspins what was badly spun, there is no offence.”

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 44

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns did household work. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns do household work?" ...

Bi-Pc.44.1.1
BD.3.329

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns do household work?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns do household work? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should do household work, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.44.2.1

Household work means: if she cooks conje^y or rice or solid food for a layman,¹ if she washes a cloak or a turban, there is an offence of expiation

Vin.4.301

There is no offence if it is a drink of conje^y,² if it is for the Order; if it is for worship at a shrine; if in doing household work for herself she cooks conje^y or rice or solid food, washes a cloak or a turban; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.44.2.2

¹ *agārika*. ² Vin-a.935 says that there is no offence in cooking a drink of conje^y (*yāgupāna*, cf. [Vin.1.84](#), [Vin.1.339](#)) or rice for the Order (given) for it by people.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 45

Bi-Pc.45.1.1
BD.3.330

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun, having approached the nun Thullanandā, spoke thus: "Do come, lady, and settle this legal question." The nun Thullanandā, having answered, "Very good," neither settled it nor made an effort to get it settled.¹ Then that nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, being spoken to by a nun, saying: 'Do come, lady, and settle this legal question,' and having answered, 'Very good,' neither settle it nor make an effort to get it settled?"

...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... to get it settled?"
"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... nor make an effort to get it settled? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, being spoken to by a nun, saying: 'Do come, lady, and settle this legal question,' and having answered: 'Very good,' (yet) if she is not afterwards prevented, should neither settle it nor should make an effort to get it settled, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.45.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

By a nun means: by another nun.

Legal question means: there are four (kinds of) legal questions: legal questions arising out of disputes legal questions arising out of censure,

BD.3.331

¹ Cf. Bi-Pc.23, Bi-Pc.34, Bi-Pc.77.

legal questions arising out of transgressions, legal questions arising out of obligations.¹

Do come, lady, and settle this legal question means: Do come, lady, and decide this legal question.

If she is not afterwards prevented means: if there is not an obstacle.²

Vin.4.302

Should neither settle it means: should not herself settle it.³

Nor should make an effort to get it settled means: should not command another.⁴

If she thinks, "I will neither settle it nor make an effort to get it settled," in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.⁵

If she thinks that she is ordained when she is ordained (and) neither settles a legal question nor makes an effort to get it settled, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she neither settles a legal question nor makes an effort to get it settled for one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ordained ... If she thinks that she is not ordained when she is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁶

Bi-Pc.45.2.2

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if having looked about, she does not get the chance⁷; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.45.2.3

¹ = Vin.3.164 (BD.1.282). ² = above, BD.3.288. ³ = above, BD.3.288, BD.3.310. ⁴ = above, BD.3.288, BD.3.310. ⁵ = above, BD.3.288, BD.3.310. ⁶ Last clause should probably read "no offence." ⁷ = above, BD.3.289, BD.3.310, and below, BD.3.336, BD.3.355.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 46

Bi-Pc.46.1.1
BD.3.332

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā gave with her own hand solid food and soft food to players and dancers ... (see [Bi-Pc.28.1](#)) ... “... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should give with her own hand solid food or soft food to a householder or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer, there is an offence of expiation.”¹

Bi-Pc.46.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Householder means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.28.2](#)) ... she who has reached (the stage of a) female wanderer.

Solid food means: excluding the five (kinds of) meals and water for cleansing the teeth, the rest is called solid food.²

Soft food means: the five (kinds of) meals: cooked rice, food made with flour, barley-meal, fish, meat.³

Should give means: if she gives by means of the body or by means of something attached to the body or by means of something that may be cast, there is an offence of expiation.⁴ If she gives water for cleansing the teeth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.4.303

Bi-Pc.46.2.2

There is no offence if she gets (someone) to give (but) does not (herself) give; if she gives depositing it near; if she gives ointment for external (use); if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.⁵

¹ Cf. Monks' [Bu-Pc.41](#). ² = [Vin.4.92](#) ([BD.2.349](#)) and cf. [Vin.4.83](#) ([BD.2.330](#)). ³ = [Vin.4.83](#), [Vin.4.92](#). For notes, see [BD.2.330](#). ⁴ = [Vin.4.92](#). ⁵ = [Vin.4.92](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 47

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, not having given up her household robe,¹ made use of it. Other menstruating nuns did not obtain it. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, not having given up her household robe, make use of it?" ...

Bi-Pc.47.1.1
BD.3.333

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... makes use of it?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... make use of it? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, not having given up her household robe, should make use of it, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.47.2.1

Household robe means: it is given with the words: 'Let menstruating nuns make use of it.'

Not having given up, should make use of it means: if, having made use of it for two or three days, having washed it on the fourth day, she makes use of it, not having given it up to a nun or to a probationer or to a female novice, there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that it is not given up when it is not given up (and) makes use of it, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it

Bi-Pc.47.2.2

¹ *āvsathacīvara*; allowed to nuns at [Vin.2.271](#).

BD.3.334 is not given up ... If she thinks that it is given up when it is not given up ... offence of expiation. If she thinks that it is not given up when it is given up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is given up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is given up when it is given up, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.47.2.3

There is no offence if, having given it up, she makes use of it; if she makes use of it on a further occasion; if there are no other menstruating nuns; if she is one whose robe is stolen; if she is one whose robe is destroyed; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.304

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 48

Bi-Pc.48.1.1
BD.3.335

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, not having given up her dwelling,¹ set out on almstour. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā's dwelling caught fire. Nuns spoke thus: "Come along, ladies, we are bringing out the things." Some spoke thus: "Ladies, we will not bring them out; she will make us responsible for² everything that is destroyed." The nun Thullanandā, having come back again to that dwelling, asked the nuns, saying: "Ladies, did you bring out my things?"

"We, lady, did not bring them out."

The nun Thullanandā ... spread it about, saying:

"How can these nuns, when a dwelling is on fire, not bring out the things?" Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can the lady Thullanandā, not having given up her dwelling, set out on almstour?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... set out on almstour?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā, not having given up her dwelling, set out on almstour? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, not having given up her dwelling, should set out on almstour, there is an offence of expiation."³

¹ *āvasatha*. ² *amhe abhiyuñjissati*. ³ The offence is not in not saving property and helping one another, but in not making proper provision for the cure of property.

Bi-Pc.48.2.1
BD.3.336

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Dwelling means: it is called fastened by a door.¹

Not having given up, should set out on almstour means: if, not having given up to a nun or to a probationer or to a female novice, in passing beyond the enclosure of a dwelling that is fenced in, there is an offence of expiation. In passing beyond the precincts of a dwelling that is not fenced in, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.48.2.2

If she thinks that it is not given up when it is not given up (and) sets out, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not given up ... If she thinks that it is given up when it is not given up ... offence of expiation. If, not having given up what is not fastened by a door, she sets out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is not given up when it is given up ... If she is in doubt as to whether it is given up, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that it is given up when it is given up, there is no offence.

Vin.4.305

Bi-Pc.48.2.3

There is no offence if she sets out having given it up; if there is an obstacle; if having looked about she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. definition of “quarters,” *upassaya*, at [BD.3.312](#), above. ² Cf. above, [BD.3.289](#), [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.323](#), [BD.3.331](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 49

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns learnt worldly knowledge.¹ People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns learn worldly knowledge, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns learn worldly knowledge?" ...

Bi-Pc.49.1.1
BD.3.337

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns learn worldly knowledge?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them saying:

"How, monks, can this group of six nuns learn worldly knowledge? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should learn worldly knowledge, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.49.2.1

Worldly knowledge means: whatever is secular,² not connected with the goal.

Should learn means: if she learns by line,³ for every line there is an offence of expiation. If she learns by syllable, for every syllable there is an

BD.3.338

¹ *tiracchāna-vijjā*, literally "animal wisdom." B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature* 1. p.75 has "art for her livelihood," but Old Commentary, does not bear this out. At [Vin.2.139](#) it is a *dukkaṭa* for a monk to learn this. Cf. *tiracchānakathā* at Monks' [Bu-Pc.85](#), "worldly talk"—i.e., talk on matters concerning life in the world. *Vinaya Texts* iii.152 renders by "the low arts"—those set out at DN.i.9–DN.i.12. ² *bāhirakam̐*. ³ *padena*; see [BD.2.190](#), [BD.2.191](#) and notes.

offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.49.2.2

There is no offence if she learns writing¹; if she learns what is memorised²; if she learns a spell³ for protection; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *lekham pariyāpuṇāti*. See *Vinaya Texts* i. p.xxxiiff. and **BD.1.131, n.** ² *dhāraṇā*, a memorising; cf. *Mi.79*, and *dhammadhāraṇā* at *MN.ii.175*. ³ *parittā*. Cf. *DN.iii.206*, where monks are enjoined to learn and master the *Āṭānāṭiya rakkhā* or ward rune. This is called *atthasamhitā*, connected with the goal; cf. foregoing definition of “worldly knowledge,” which therefore looks as if it does not include protective spells. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* 3.185ff. for discussion of position and use of the various named *parittās* in early Buddhism. The proximity of writing (late?) and protective spells (early?) points to a patchwork compilation of this *Pācittiya*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 50

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns taught worldly knowledge.¹ People ... spread it about ... (*Bi-Pc.44.1. Instead of learn read teach.*) ... “... this rule of training: “Whatever nun should teach² worldly knowledge, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.50.1.1
BD.3.339
Vin.4.306

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.50.2.1

Worldly knowledge means: ...

Should teach³ means: if she teaches by line ... (*Bi-Pc.44.2. Instead of learns read teaches.*) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

The Fifth Division: that on a picture gallery

¹ At *Vin.2.139* it is made a *dukkāṭa* for a monk to do so. ² *vāceyya*—i.e., should cause (someone) to repeat or speak. ³ Cf. *Vin.4.15* (*BD.2.192*).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 51

Bi-Pc.51.1.1
BD.3.340

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several monks, (each) wearing (only) one robe, were making robes in a village residence. Nuns, having entered the monastery without asking (for permission), approached those monks. The monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can nuns enter a monastery without asking (for permission)?"

...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... without asking (for permission)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns enter a monastery without asking (for permission)? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should enter a monastery without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation."

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Bi-Pc.51.2.1

Then these monks went out from that residence. The nuns, saying, "The masters have gone out," did not go back to the monastery. Then these monks came back again to that residence. The nuns, saying, "The masters have come back," having entered the monastery asking (for permission), approached these monks, having approached, having greeted these monks, they stood at a respectful distance. As they were standing at a respectful distance, these monks spoke thus to these nuns: "Why do you, sisters, neither sweep the monastery nor provide drinking water and water for washing?"

Vin.4.307

“Masters, a rule of training came to be laid down by the lord that, without asking (for permission) a monastery should not be entered (by a nun), therefore we did not come.” They told this matter to the lord. He said:

BD.3.341

“I allow, monks, (a nun) to enter a monastery asking (for permission) if a monk be there. And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should enter a monastery without asking (for permission) if a monk be there,¹ there is an offence of expiation.”

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Then these monks, having gone out from that residence, came back again to that residence. The nuns, saying, “The masters have gone out,” entered the monastery without asking (for permission). These became remorseful and said: “A rule of training laid down by the lord for nuns says that a monastery should not be entered (by a nun) without asking (for permission) if a monk be there, and we, not asking (for permission) if a monk was there, entered the monastery. Is it now possible that we have fallen into an offence of expiation?” They told this matter to the lord. He said: “And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.51.3.1

“**Whatever nun should knowingly enter a monastery with monks (in it) without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation.**”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.51.4.1

She knows means: either she knows of herself or others tell her or these tell (her).²

A monastery with monks (in it) means: even where monks stay at the foot of a tree.

Should enter a monastery without asking (for permission) means: without asking a monk or a novice or a monastery attendant (for permission),³ in passing beyond the enclosure of a monastery that is fenced in, there is an offence of expiation. In entering the precincts of a monastery that is not fenced in, there is an offence of expiation.⁴

BD.3.342

¹ Cf. Vin.4.100 (BD.2.365 and see n.1). ² Cf. Vin.3.265 (BD.2.161), etc. ³ Cf. Vin.4.40 (BD.2.241), and see Vin.2.211. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.166.

Bi-Pc.51.4.2

If she thinks that there are monks (in it) when there are monks (in it) and enters a monastery without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether monks are (in it) ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that monks are not (in it) when monks are (in it) ... no offence. If she thinks that monks are (in it) when monks are not (in it), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether monks are not (in it), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that monks are not (in it) when monks are not (in it), there is no offence.

Vin.4.308

Bi-Pc.51.4.3

There is no offence if she enters asking (for permission) if a monk be there; if she enters not asking (for permission) if a monk be not there¹; if she walks looking ahead²; if she goes where there are nuns gathered together; if (her) way is through a monastery; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.101](#) ([BD.2.367](#)). ² [Vin-a.937](#) says that there is no offence if she enters looking at the heads of the nuns who are entering first.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 52

... at Vesālī in the Great Grove at the Hall of the Gabled Pillars. Now at that time the venerable Kappitaka,¹ the venerable Upāli's preceptor,² lived in a cemetery. Now at that time an older³ nun of the group of six nuns had passed away. The group of six nuns, taking out that nun, having cremated her not far from the venerable Kappitaka's dwelling place, having made a tomb, having gone (there), wept at that tomb. Then the venerable Kappitaka, troubled by that noise, having destroyed that tomb, scattered (the materials). The group of six nuns took counsel,⁴ saying: "Our lady's tomb is destroyed by this Kappitaka, come, let us kill him." A certain nun told this matter to the venerable Upāli. The venerable Upāli told this matter to the venerable Kappitaka. Then the venerable Kappitaka, having gone out from that dwelling place, lay in hiding. Then the group of six nuns approached the venerable Kappitaka's dwelling place, having approached, having had the venerable Kappitaka's dwelling place covered over⁵ with stones and clods of earth, they departed, saying, "Kappitaka is dead." Then the venerable Kappitaka at the end of that night having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Vesālī for almsfood. The group of six nuns saw the venerable Kappitaka walking for almsfood; seeing him, they spoke thus: "This Kappitaka is alive, how ever did he foil our plan?"⁶ The group of six nuns heard it said: "Our plan was foiled by master Upāli." These reviled⁷

Bi-Pc.52.1.1
BD.3.343

BD.3.344

¹ Cf. Pv.49–Pv.50. Vin-a.937, Pv-a.230 say that he was an elder among the thousand matted hair ascetics. ² Cf. Pv-a.230. ³ *mahatarā*, perhaps a leading nun. ⁴ *mantesuṃ*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says "perhaps 'plotted'" here. ⁵ *ottharāpetvā*; see [BD.1.137, n.4](#). ⁶ *mantarṃ sarṃharati*. ⁷ *akkosiṃsu*; see [BD.2.269](#) and [BD.2.171, n.3](#).

the venerable Upāli, saying: “How can this barber,¹ a shampooing low-birth (person),² foil our plan?” Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six nuns revile master Upāli?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns reviled Upāli?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can the group of six nuns revile Upāli? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun should revile or should abuse a monk,³ there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bi-Pc.52.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Monk means: one who is ordained.

Should revile means: if she reviles with the ten ways of reviling⁴ or with any one of these, there is an offence of expiation.

Or should abuse means: if she makes him afraid,⁵ there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.52.2.2

If she thinks that he is ordained when he is ordained (and) reviles or abuses him, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether he is ordained ... If she thinks that he is not ordained when he is ordained ... offence of expiation. If she reviles or abuses one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that he is ordained when he is not ordained ... If she is in doubt as to whether he is not ordained ... If she thinks that he is not ordained when he is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.3.345

Bi-Pc.52.2.3

¹ *kasāvaṭa*; see *Psalm of the Bretheren*. 168, Tha-ap.37ff., and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* 410 for view that Upāli was born a barber in this Buddha age. ² *kasāvaṭo malamajjano nihīnajacco*; cf. Ja.3.452 *hīnajacco malamajjano nahāpita (putto)*. ³ Cf. the seventh of the eight important rules, *garudhammā*, given at Vin.4.52 (BD.2.269), BD.2.255, AN.iv.277. ⁴ See BD.2.171, n.3. ⁵ *bhayaṃ upadaṃseti*, causes fear to appear.

There is no offence if she is aiming at (explaining) the goal, if she is aiming at (explaining) a rule, if she is aiming at (explaining) the teaching¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ = Vin.3.130 (BD.1.218) = Vin.4.11 (BD.2.185) = Vin.4.277 (above, BD.3.280).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 53

Bi-Pc.53.1.1
BD.3.346

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time¹ the nun Caṇḍakālī was one who made strife, who made quarrels, who made contention, who made brawls, who made disputes in the Order ... (see **Bi-Ss.4**) ... The nun Thullanandā, saying: "These are ignorant, these are inexperienced, they do not even know a (formal) act or the defect of a (formal) act or the failure of a (formal) act or the success of a (formal) act," and being quick tempered,² she abused³ a group. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

Vin.4.310

"How can the lady Thullanandā, being quick tempered, abuse a group?"

...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā, being quick tempered, abused a group?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... abuse a group? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, being quick tempered, should abuse a group, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.53.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Being quick tempered means: she is called angry.⁴

BD.3.347

Group means: it is called an Order of nuns.⁵

¹ See Nuns' **Bi-Ss.4** above. ² *caṇḍikatā*. ³ *paribhāsati*; cf. **Bi-Pc.52**. ⁴ *kodhanā*; cf. **Vin.4.334**; Pv-a.83 *caṇḍi ti kodhanā*, and see definition at MN-a.2.99. ⁵ =above, **BD.3.295**.

Should abuse¹ means: if she abuses, saying: “These are ignorant, these are inexperienced, they do not even know a (formal) act ... or the success of a (formal) act,” there is an offence of expiation. If she abuses several nuns or one nun or one who is not ordained, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if she is aiming at (explaining) the goal ... (see [Bi-Pc.52.2.3](#)) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.344](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 54

Bi-Pc.54.1.1
BD.3.348
Vin.4.311

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain brahmin, having invited nuns, offered them food¹ ...” ...

“**Whatever nun, being invited or being satisfied,² should eat or partake of solid food or soft food, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bi-Pc.54.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Being invited means: being invited to any one meal of the five (kinds of) meals.

Being satisfied means: eating is to be seen, a meal is to be seen, standing within a reach of the hand, she asks (her), a refusal is to be seen.³

Solid food means: setting aside the five (kinds of) meals, conje⁴, food (that may be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life, the rest means solid food.⁵

Soft food means: the five (kinds of) meals: ... meat.⁶

If she accepts, thinking: “I will eat, I will partake of,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of expiation.⁷ If she accepts for the sake of nutriment (food to be eaten) during a watch of the

BD.3.349

¹ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35, first story; see BD.2.326f. The rule was amended for the monks but not for the nuns. ² The words are here changed to *nimantitā vā pavāritā vā* from *bhuttavi pavarita* of the story. This latter pair (in the masculine) appears in the monks' *sikkhāpada* (Bu-Pc.35); therefore the Old Commentary there defines *bhuttāvi*, having eaten, while above it defines *nimantitā*, being invited; but the terms used in these two definitions are the same.

³ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.1. See BD.2.328ff. for notes. ⁴ This is omitted from corresponding paragraph in Monks' Bu-Pc.35. For conje, *yāgu*, as being neither a solid food nor a soft food, see BD.2, Introduction, p.xxxi and BD.3.352f. It was counted rather as a drink, see “no offence” clause below. ⁵ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.1. See BD.2.328ff. for notes. ⁶ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.1. See BD.2.328ff. for notes. ⁷ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.1. See BD.2.328ff. for notes.

night, during seven days, during life, there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹

There is no offence if, being invited (but) not being satisfied, she drinks conje; if she eats having asked the owner (for permission); if when there is a reason she makes use of (food to be eaten) during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.54.2.2

Vin.4.312

¹ = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.2. ² = Monks' Bu-Pc.35.3.3.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 55

Bi-Pc.55.1.1
BD.3.350

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun, walking for alms along a certain road in Sāvattḥī, approached a certain family; having approached, she sat down on an appointed seat. Then these people, having offered food to this nun, spoke thus: "Lady, other nuns may also come." Then this nun, thinking: "How may these nuns not come?" having approached the nuns, spoke thus: "Ladies, in such and such a place there are fierce dogs, a wild bull, the place is a swamp, do not go there." But a certain nun, walking for alms along that road, approached that family; having approached, she sat down on an appointed seat. Then these people, having offered food to that nun, spoke thus: "Why do not the other nuns come, lady?" Then this nun told this matter to those people. The people ... spread it about, saying: "How can that nun be grudging as to families?"¹ ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun was grudging as to families?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun be grudging as to families? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should be one who is grudging as to families, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.55.2.1
BD.3.351

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ Five forms of meanness, stinginess or grudgingness, macchhariya, are given at AN.iii.139, AN.iii.258, AN.iii.266, AN.iii.273, AN.iv.459; DN.iii.234; Ds.1122 (see *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, § 1122, n.); Vism.683.

Family means: ... low caste family.¹

Should be one who is grudging as to families means: if they say, “Why do the nuns not come?” (and) she speaks dispraise of a family in front of nuns, there is an offence of expiation. Or if she speaks dispraise of nuns in front of a family, there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if, not being grudging as to families, she merely explains that there is a danger²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.55.2.2

Vin.4.313

¹ = Vin.3.184, Vin.4.80, Vin.4.100, Vin.4.272. ² According to Vin-a.938 she either explains to the nuns that the family are non-believers, or she explains to the family that the nuns are of weak morality and of depraved states of mind.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 56

Bi-Pc.56.1.1
BD.3.352

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several nuns, having spent the rains in a village residence, went to Sāvattthī. Nuns spoke thus to these nuns: "Where did the ladies spend the rains? We hope that the exhortation was effective?"¹

"There were no monks there, ladies; how could the exhortation be effective?" Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

"How can these nuns spend the rains in a residence where there is no monk?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nuns ... where there was no monk?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nuns ... where there is no monk? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should spend the rains in a residence where there is no monk, there is an offence of expiation."²

Bi-Pc.56.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

A residence where there is no monk means: it is not possible to go for exhortation³ or for communion.⁴ If she thinks, "I will spend the rains," (and) prepares a lodging, provides drinking water and water for washing,

BD.3.353

¹ *iddha*, as at [Vin.4.50](#), [Vin.4.54](#). ² This rule is the same as the second of the eight "important rules," see [BD.2.268](#). ³ Rules for exhortation in the eight "important rules" occur at Monks' [Bu-Pc.21](#)–[Bu-Pc.24](#). ⁴ *saṁvāsa*. (To go) for communion explained at [Vin-a.938](#) to mean (to go) for asking the (date of the) Observance day, *uposatha*, and the Invitation ceremony, *pavāraṇā*. See [BD.2.268](#) and n.6, n.8; also Nuns' [Bi-Pc.57](#); but also see definition of *saṁvāsa* at end of each *Pārājika* rule, and below, [BD.3.356](#).

sweeps a cell, there is an offence of wrong-doing. With sunrise, there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if monks, having entered on the rains-settlement, come to have gone away or left the Order or done their time or gone over to (another) side; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bi-Pc.56.2.2

¹ = above, [BD.3.190](#), where see n.3.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 57

Bi-Pc.57.1.1
BD.3.354

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time several nuns, having kept the rains in a village residence, went to Sāvattḥī. Nuns spoke thus to these nuns: "Where did the ladies keep the rains? Was an Order of monks 'invited'¹?"

Vin.4.314

"Ladies, we did not 'invite' an Order of monks." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns, having spent the rains, not 'invite' an Order of monks?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... did not 'invite' an Order of monks?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... not 'invite' an Order of monks? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having kept the rains, should not 'invite' both Orders in respect of three matters: what was seen or heard or suspected, there is an offence of expiation."²

Bi-Pc.57.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Having kept the rains means: having kept the first three months or the last three months.³

If she thinks, "I will not 'invite' both Orders in respect of three matters: what was seen or heard or suspected," in throwing off the responsibility,

BD.3.355

¹ *pavārito*, a technical term. See [BD.2.268](#), n.8. Regulations for nuns to hold the *pavāraṇā* ceremony, using the word *pavāreti*, given at [Vin.2.275](#). Cf. also [Vin.1.161](#). ² Cf. the fourth "important rule," [BD.2.268](#). ³ Cf. definition of "during the rains," above, [BD.3.321](#).

there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if, having looked about, she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bi-Pc.57.2.2

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.289](#), [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.331](#), [BD.3.336](#); and below, [BD.3.376](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 58

Bi-Pc.58.1.1
BD.3.356

... among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery. Now at that time¹ the group of six monks, having approached a nunnery, exhorted the group of six nuns. Nuns spoke thus to the group of six nuns: “Come, ladies, we will go for exhortation.”

“Well, ladies, we would go for the sake of exhortation, (but) the group of the six masters exhort us, having come to this place itself.” Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six nuns not go for exhortation?” ...

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns do not go for exhortation?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

Vin.4.315

“How, monks, can the group of six nuns not go for exhortation? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun should not go for exhortation or for communion, there is an offence of expiation.**”²

Bi-Pc.58.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Exhortation means: the eight important rules.³

Communion means: one (formal) act, one recitation, an equal training.⁴ If she thinks, “I will not go for exhortation or for communion,” in

BD.3.357

¹ Cf. Monks' Bu-Pc.23, where the offence is for a monk to exhort a nun in a nunnery except at a right time. Clearly the trend is for nuns to go to monks. Other regulations for exhortation set out at Vin.2.263ff. ² Cf. Vin.2.263; a nun who does not go for exhortation is to be dealt with according to the rule. ³ Cf. Monks' Bu-Pc.21–Bu-Pc.24. ⁴ Cf. Old Commentary's explanation of *asāmvāsa* in each Pārājika (BD.1), and definition of “ill nun” at BD.2.278.

throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if, having looked about for a nun as a companion, she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.¹

Bi-Pc.58.2.2

¹ = above, [BD.3.323](#), below, [BD.3.380](#), and cf. [BD.3.289](#), [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.331](#), [BD.3.336](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 59

Bi-Pc.59.1.1
BD.3.358

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns neither asked (the date of) the Observance day¹ nor did they ask for exhortation. Monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns neither ask (the date of) the Observance day nor ask for exhortation?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns neither ... nor ask for exhortation?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns neither ... nor ask for exhortation? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Every half month a nun should desire two things from the Order of monks: the asking as to (the date of) the Observance day and the approaching for exhortation.² For her who transgresses this, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.59.2.1

Every half month means: every Observance day.³

Observance day means: the two Observance days, that on the fourteenth day and that on the fifteenth day.⁴

Exhortation means: the eight important rules.

If she thinks, "I will neither ask (the date of) the Observance day nor ask for exhortation," in throwing off the responsibility, ... (see [Bi-Pc.58.2.1](#)–[Bi-Pc.58.2.2](#)) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.316

¹ See [Vin.1.105](#), where the lord is shown as prompting Kappina, and as saying that if brahmins do not honour the *uposatha*, who will? ² The third of the eight "important rules," [Vin.4.52](#); see [BD.2.268](#). ³ =above, [BD.3.44](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.1.104](#), [Vin.1.132](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 60

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun together with a man, the one with the other, made a boil burst that had formed on the lower part of her body. Then that man began to violate that nun. She cried out in distress. Nuns, having run up, spoke thus to that nun: "Why do you, lady, cry out in distress?" Then that nun told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun together with a man, the one with the other, make a boil burst that had formed on the lower part of her body?" ...

Bi-Pc.60.1.1
BD.3.359

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun ... lower part of her body?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun ... lower part of her body? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, without having obtained permission from an Order or from a group, should together with a man, the one with the other, make a boil or a scab¹ that has formed on the lower part of her body burst or break or let it be washed or smeared or bound up or unbound,² there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.60.2.1

Lower part of the body means: below the navel to above the circle of the knees.

Has formed means: has formed there.

Boil means: whatever is a boil.

BD.3.360

¹ *rūhita*, a diseased growth, literally meaning "healed." ² *mocāpeyya*, in opposition to previous word, *bhandāpeyya*.

Scab means: whatever is a sore.

Without having obtained permission means: not asking (for permission).¹

Order means: it is called an Order of nuns.²

Group means: they are called several nuns.

Man means: a human man, not a *yakkha*, not a departed one, not an animal³; one who is learned, competent to violate.

Together with means: together.⁴

The one with the other means: there is a man and also a nun.⁵

If she commands, saying: "Burst it," there is an offence of wrong-doing. When it is burst, there is an offence of expiation. If she commands, saying: "Break it ... wash it ... smear it ... bind it up ... unbind it," there is an offence of wrong-doing. When it is broken ... washed ... smeared ... bound up ... unbound, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.4.317

Bi-Pc.60.2.2

There is no offence if, having obtained permission, she causes it to be burst or broken ... or unbound; if some learned man (is there) as companion; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

The Sixth Division: that on a monastery

¹ = above, BD.3.184; cf. BD.3.193. ² = above, BD.3.184; cf. BD.3.193. ³ = Vin.4.269, Vin.4.271.

⁴ = BD.1.202, BD.1.332, BD.1.337; Vin.4.269, Vin.4.271. ⁵ = Vin.4.269, Vin.4.271.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 61

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained¹ a pregnant woman. She walked for alms. People spoke thus: "Give almsfood to the lady, the lady is heavy with child." The people ... spread it about, saying: "How can the nuns ordain a pregnant woman?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying, "How can these nuns ordain a pregnant woman?" ...

Bi-Pc.61.1.1
BD.3.361

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ordained a pregnant woman?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ordain a pregnant woman? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain a pregnant woman, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Pregnant woman means: she is called entered by beings.²

Should ordain means: should confer the upasampada ordination.³

If she thinks: "I will ordain (her)" and looks about for a group or for a woman teacher or for a bowl or for a robe or if she determines a boundary, there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing. As a result of two proclamations, there are offences of wrong-doing. At the end of the proclamations, there is an offence of expiation for the woman preceptor, and an offence of wrong-doing for the

Bi-Pc.61.2.1

BD.3.362

¹ *vuṭṭhāpentī.* ² *āpannasattā.* ³ *upasampādeyya.*

group and for the woman teacher.¹

Bi-Pc.61.2.2

If she thinks that she is pregnant when she is pregnant (and) ordains her, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not pregnant when she is pregnant, (and) ordains her, there is no offence. If she thinks that she is pregnant when she is not pregnant, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not pregnant, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not pregnant when she is not pregnant, there is no offence.

Vin.4.318

Bi-Pc.61.2.3

There is no offence if she ordains a pregnant woman thinking that she is not pregnant²; if she ordains a woman who is not pregnant thinking that she is not pregnant; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.13](#), [BD.3.185](#), for this passage. ² This has been said in the paragraph above.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 62

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a woman giving suck. She walked for alms. People spoke thus: "Give almsfood to the lady, the lady has a companion."¹ The people ... spread it about, saying: "How can the nuns ... (*Bi-Pc.61.1*, *instead of pregnant woman read woman giving suck*) ..." " ... this rule of training: "Whatever nun should ordain a woman giving suck, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.62.1.1
BD.3.363

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Woman giving suck means: she is a mother or a foster-mother.

Should ordain means: ... (*Bi-Pc.61.2*. *Read*, If she thinks that she is a woman giving suck when she is a woman giving suck; if she thinks that she is not a woman giving suck, etc.) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.62.2.1

¹ *sadutiyaikā*, with a companion; cf. *dutiyaikā bhikkhunī* at *Vin.4.230*, *Vin.4.315*; and *porāṇa-dutiyaikā*, former wife.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 63

Bi-Pc.63.1.1
BD.3.364

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a probationer who had not trained for two years in the six rules.¹ These² were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable.³ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain a probationer who has not trained for two years in the six rules?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... in the six rules?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

Vin.4.319

"How, monks, can these nuns ordain ... in the six rules? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.3.365

"I allow you, monks, to give a probationer the agreement as to training⁴ for two years in the six rules. And thus, monks, should it be given: That probationer, having approached the Order, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the nuns,⁵ having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus: 'Ladies, I, so and so, a probationer, under the lady so and so, request

¹ Cf. the sixth of the eight "important rules," [Vin.4.52](#), [Vin.2.255](#). The six rules are given below. See also I.B. HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, 138ff. ² This refers to the probationers; one nun was enough to ordain a probationer, an Order or group not being necessary. The meaning here, and in similar passages below, is that several nuns each ordained one probationer. ³ As in Nuns' [Bi-Pc.66](#), [Bi-Pc.72](#). ⁴ *sikkhāsammuti*, occurring also in Nuns' [Bi-Pc.66](#), [Bi-Pc.72](#). Cf. other "agreements" at [Vin.3.199](#), [Vin.3.228](#), [Vin.3.263](#), [Vin.4.31](#), [Vin.4.330](#). ⁵ The word "senior" (*vuddha*) which occurs in corresponding passages—e.g., in Monks' *Nissaggiyas*, is rightly omitted here, for a probationer, being junior as regards ordination to all other nuns, should honour them all.

the Order for the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules.' And a second time it should be requested ... And a third time it should be requested. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This (woman) so and so, a probationer, under the lady so and so, requests the Order for the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give the probationer so and so the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules. This is the motion: Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This (woman) so and so ... requests ... for two years in the six rules. If the giving to the probationer so and so of the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules is pleasing to the ladies, let them be silent; if it is not pleasing, they should speak. The agreement as to training for two years in the six rules is given to the probationer so and so, and it is right ... So do I understand this.'"

That probationer should be told: "Speak thus: 'I undertake for two years not to transgress the resolution of abstinence from onslaught on creatures; I undertake ... abstinence from taking what is not given ... abstinence from unchastity ... abstinence from lying ... abstinence from occasions for sloth (arising from) fermented liquor and spirits¹ and strong drink²; I undertake for two years not to transgress the resolution of abstinence from eating at the wrong time³.'"

Then the lord, having rebuked these nuns in many a figure for their weakness in maintaining themselves ... "... And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain a probationer who has not trained for two years in the six rules, there is an offence of expiation."⁴

BD.3.366

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.63.2.1

¹ See V.S. AGRAWALA, *Maireya in Pāṇini*, D.R. Bhandarkar Volume, 1940, p.291. ² Cf. DN.iii.62; AN.i.211f.; SN.ii.68 for these five *sīlas*. ³ Cf. AN.i.212, and Monks' Bu-Pc.37. ⁴ The *upasampadā* ordination had to be conferred on nuns by monks as well as by nuns; see Vin.2.255, Vin.4.52; cf. Vin.2.257. The ordination proceedings are set out at Vin.2.271ff.

Vin.4.320 **Two years** means: two years.¹

Has not trained means: either the training is not given or the training is given (but) is interrupted.²

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.61.2.1) ... and an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

Bi-Pc.63.2.2

If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act (and) ordains her, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is a legally valid act ... If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is a legally valid act... offence of expiation. If she thinks that it is a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether it is not a legally valid act ... If she thinks that it is not a legally valid act when it is not a legally valid act, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

Bi-Pc.63.2.3

There is no offence if she ordains a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *vassāni ... saṃvaccharāṇi*. The former is also more specifically the rains, but the exegesis under “has not trained” suggests that the training had to go on uninterruptedly for two full years and not merely for two rainy seasons. ² *kupitā*, disturbed. ³ Last clause should probably read “no offence.”

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 64

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a probationer who had trained for two years in the six rules (but) who was not agreed upon by the Order.¹ Nuns spoke thus: "Come, probationers,² find out about this, give this, convey this, make this allowable." These spoke thus: "Ladies, we are not probationers, we are nuns." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules (but) who is not agreed upon by the Order?" ...

Bi-Pc.64.1.1
BD.3.367

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ordained ... not agreed upon by the Order?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ordain ... not agreed upon by the Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, to give the agreement as to ordination³ to a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules. And thus, monks, should it be given: That probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules, having approached the Order ... (Bi-Pc.63.1) ... should speak thus: 'Ladies, I, so and so, a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules under the lady so and so, request the Order for the agreement as to ordination.' And a second time ... (Bi-Pc.63.1 *instead of* probationer

Vin.4.321

BD.3.368

¹ See previous Bi-Pc.63 where in order to carry out the training as to have a legal right to be ordained, a probationer had to receive the agreement of the Order. ² Note use of plural here, and cf. previous and following Pācittiyas: also Bi-Pc.73. ³ *vuṭṭhānasammuti*. See above, BD.3.364, for other "agreements."

read probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules *instead of* agreement as to training for two years in the six rules *read* agreement as to ordination.) ... So do I understand this.”

Then the lord, having rebuked the nuns in many a figure for their weakness in maintaining themselves ... “... this rule of training:

“**Whatever nun should ordain a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules (but) who is not agreed upon by the Order,¹ there is an offence of expiation.**”

Bi-Pc.64.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Two years means: two years.²

Has trained means: has trained in the six rules.³

Not agreed upon means: the agreement as to ordination is not given by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.⁴

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.61.2.1) ...

There is no offence if she ordains a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules and who is agreed upon by the Order; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ The probationer has to get the agreement, but the nuns have to abide by it. ² As above, [BD.3.366](#). ³ =below, [BD.3.374](#), [BD.3.383](#). ⁴ =below, [BD.3.374](#), [BD.3.383](#). On *ñattidutiya kammās* see [Vin.1.319](#), and on *Saṅghakammās* (formal acts) generally, S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, 146ff.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 65

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a girl¹ married for less than twelve years.² These³ were not able to endure cold, heat, hunger, thirst, contact with gadflies, mosquitoes, wind and sun, creeping things, abusive hurtful language; they were not able to endure bodily feelings which arising are painful, acute, sharp, shooting, disagreeable, miserable, deadly.⁴ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can nuns ordain a girl married for less than twelve years?" ...

Bi-Pc.65.1.1
BD.3.369

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ordained ... married for less than twelve years?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ordain a girl married for less than twelve years? Monks, a girl married for less than twelve years is not able to endure cold ... bodily feelings ... miserable, deadly. It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.322

"Whatever nun should ordain a girl married for less than twelve years, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.65.2.1

Less than twelve years means: not attained to twelve years.⁵

BD.3.370

¹ *gihigatā*, one gone to a layman (as his wife or co-wife). ² See **BD.3, Introduction, p.xlix**, and I.B. HORNER, *Women under Primitive Buddhism*, p.27ff. ³ As in previous *Pācittiyas*, plural used here, meaning that an indefinite number of nuns had each ordained a "married girl," or child-wife. ⁴ Cf. Monks' **Bu-Pc.65.1**, that in which monks are forbidden to ordain a man under twenty. ⁵ Cf. above, **BD.3.13**.

Girl married means: one cohabiting with a man.¹

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.61.2.1) ... and an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

Bi-Pc.65.2.2

If she thinks that it is less than twelve years when it is less than twelve years (and) ordains her, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether it is less than twelve years ... offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that twelve years are completed when it is less than twelve years ... no offence. If she thinks that it is less than twelve years when twelve years are completed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether twelve years are completed, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that twelve years are completed when twelve years are completed, there is no offence.²

Bi-Pc.65.2.3

There is no offence if she ordains one (married) for less than twelve years thinking that twelve years are completed; if she ordains one who has completed twelve years thinking that they are completed³; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *purisantaragatā*. This is the definition of *itthi*, woman, at MN-a.2.209; DN-a.78. Cf. Ja.1.290; MN.i.77; AN.i.295, AN.ii.206. ² Cf. above, BD.3.13. ³ This occurs in the preceding paragraph.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 66

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a girl married for full twelve years (but) who had not trained for two years in the six rules. These were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable.¹ Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain a girl married for full twelve years (but) who has not trained for two years in the six rules?" ...

Bi-Pc.66.1.1
BD.3.371

"Is it true, as is said, monks ...?" ...

The enlightened one, the lord rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can these nuns ordain ... in the six rules? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.4.323

"I allow you, monks, to give a girl married for full twelve years the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules. And thus, monks, should it be given: That girl married for full twelve years, having approached the Order ... (Bi-Pc.63.1) ... should speak thus: 'Ladies, I, so and so, a girl married for full twelve years, and who am under the lady so and so, request the Order ... (Bi-Pc.63.1. *Instead of probationer read a girl married for full twelve years*) ... So do I understand this.' That girl married for full twelve years should be told: 'Speak thus: ... (Bi-Pc.63.1) ...' "... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain a girl married for full twelve years (but) who has not trained for two years in the six rules, there is an offence of expiation."

¹ For the whole of this *Pācittiya*, cf. Bi-Pc.63.

Bi-Pc.66.2.1
BD.3.372

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Full twelve years means: attained to twelve years.¹

Girl married means: one cohabiting with a man.²

Two years means: ...

There is no offence if she ordains a girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ =below, [BD.3.374](#). ² As in [Bi-Pc.65](#), [Bi-Pc.67](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 67

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a girl married for full twelve years and who had trained for two years in the six rules, but who was not agreed upon by the Order. Nuns spoke thus: "Come, probationers, ... (Bi-Pc.64.1) ..." ... "How can these nuns ordain a girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules, but who is not agreed upon by the Order?" ... he addressed the monks, saying:

Bi-Pc.67.1.1
BD.3.373

"I allow you, monks, to give the agreement as to ordination to a girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules. And thus, monks, should it be given: That girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules, having approached the Order ... (Bi-Pc.63.1) ... should speak thus: 'Ladies, I, so and so, a girl married for full twelve years and who has trained under the lady so and so for two years in the six rules, request the Order for the agreement as to ordination.' And a second time ... (Bi-Pc.63.1. *Instead of probationer read girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules; instead of agreement as to training for two years in the six rules read agreement as to ordination*) ... 'So do I understand this.'"

Vin.4.324

Then the lord, having rebuked these nuns in many a figure for their weakness in maintaining themselves ... "... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain a girl married for full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules (but) who is not agreed upon by the Order, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.67.2.1
BD.3.374

Full twelve years means: attained to twelve years.¹

Girl married means: one cohabiting with a man.²

Two years means: two years.³

Has trained means: has trained in the six rules.⁴

Not agreed upon means: the agreement as to ordination is not given by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.⁵

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.61.2.1) ...

There is no offence if she ordains a girl married for full twelve years who has trained for two years in the six rules and who is agreed upon by the Order; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ = above, BD.3.372. ² = above, BD.3.370, BD.3.372. ³ = above, BD.3.366, BD.3.368. ⁴ = above, BD.3.368, below, BD.3.383. ⁵ = above, BD.3.368, below, BD.3.383.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 68

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, having ordained the woman who lived with her,¹ for two years neither helped her nor had her helped. These² were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, having ordained the woman who lives with her, for two years neither help her nor have her helped?" ...

Bi-Pc.68.1.1
BD.3.375

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... nor had her helped?"

Vin.4.325

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... nor have her helped? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having ordained the woman who lives with her, for two years should neither help her nor have her helped, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.68.2.1

Woman who lives with her means: she is called the one who shares her cell.³

Having ordained means: having conferred the *upasampada* ordination.

Two years means: two years.⁴

BD.3.376

¹ Cf. above, BD.3.309, below, BD.3.379. ² This must mean that at least for more than one year Thullanandā had ordained her *sahajivinīs*. ³ = above, BD.3.309. ⁴ = above, BD.3.366, BD.3.368, BD.3.374.

Should neither help her means: should not herself help her in regard to the exposition, the interrogation,¹ the exhortation, the instruction.²

Nor should have her helped means: should not command another.

If for two years she thinks: "I will neither help her nor have her helped," in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.68.2.2

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if having looked about she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.³

¹ Cf. BD.2.94, BD.2.271. ² *anusāsani*. Cf. Vin.1.50 for repetition of these four words. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.289, BD.3.310, BD.3.331, BD.3.336, BD.3.355.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 69

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns for two years did not wait upon an ordained woman instructor.¹ These² were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns for two years not wait upon an ordained woman instructor?" ...

Bi-Pc.69.1.1
BD.3.377

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... woman instructor

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... ordained woman instructor? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.326

"Whatever nun for two years should not wait upon an ordained woman instructor, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.69.2.1

Ordained means: the *upasampadā*, ordination conferred.

Woman instructor means: she is called a woman preceptor.³

BD.3.378

Two years means: two years.

¹ *pavattinī*, or proposer—i.e., for a nun on whom the *upasampada* ordination is being conferred, as at [Vin.2.271](#). ² Doubtless here referring to the nuns. ³ *upajjhā*. The first sentence of n.1 at *Vinaya Texts* iii.351 must therefore be corrected; also *upajjhā* occurs twice at [Vin.3.35](#). The word (*upajjhā*) at [Vin.3.100](#) is obviously a shortened plural form of the regular masculine *upajjhāya*, for see [Vin.3.101=PC:69.2.1](#) which contains two stories about two (different) *upajjhāya*. *Pali-English Dictionary* is probably right in giving both *upajjha*, short masculine, as at [Vin.1.94](#) and doubtless once at [Vin.3.35](#); and *upajjhā*, feminine, as in above explanation of *pavattinī* and in the "no offence" clause, and doubtless once at [Vin.3.35](#).

Should not wait upon means: should not herself attend upon.¹

If she thinks: “I will not wait upon her for two years,” in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.69.2.2

There is no offence if the woman preceptor is ignorant or shameless; if he is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ According to Vin-a.941, with soap-powder, toothpick, water for rinsing the mouth, and with whatever was to be done. Cf. Bi-Pc.88 below.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 70

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā, having ordained (the woman) who lived with her,¹ neither withdrew² her nor had her withdrawn; her husband seized her. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, having ordained (the woman) who lives with her, neither withdraw her nor have her withdrawn? Her husband seized her. If this nun had departed her husband could not have seized her." ...

Bi-Pc.70.1.1
BD.3.379

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... nor had her withdrawn (so that) her husband seized her?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... nor have her withdrawn (so that) her husband seized her? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having ordained (the woman) who lives with her, should neither withdraw her nor have her withdrawn even to (a distance of) five or six *yojanas*, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.70.2.1

(Woman) who lives with her means: she is called the one who shares her cell.³

Having ordained means: having conferred the upasampadā ordination.⁴

Vin.4.327
BD.3.380

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.309](#), [BD.3.375](#). ² *vūpakāsesi*, to withdraw, seclude, alienate—i.e., from the haunts of men. ³ Cf. above, [BD.3.309](#), [BD.3.375](#). ⁴ Cf. above, [BD.3.361](#), [BD.3.375](#).

Should neither withdraw her¹ means: should not herself withdraw her.

Nor should have her withdrawn means: should not command another.

If she thinks: “I will neither withdraw her nor will I have her withdrawn even to (a distance of) five or six *yojanas*,” in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.70.2.2

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if, having looked about for a nun as a companion, she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.²

¹ Vin-a.941, “if having taken her, she should not go away.” ² Cf. above, [BD.3.323](#), [BD.3.331](#), [BD.3.336](#), [BD.3.355](#), [BD.3.357](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 71

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a maiden¹ who was under twenty years of age. These were unable to endure cold ... (Bi-Pc.65. *Instead of a girl married for less than full twelve years read a maiden who is under twenty years of age; instead of for full twelve years read twenty years of age.*) ... “... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.71.1.1
BD.3.381

“**Whatever nun should ordain a maiden under twenty years of age, there is an offence of expiation.**”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.71.2.1

Under twenty years of age means: not attained to twenty years of age.²

Maiden means: she is called a female novice.

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.65.2. *Read who is under twenty years of age, who has completed twenty years of age.*) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *kumāribhūtā*, probably a virgin. See BD.3, *Introduction*, p.xlix. Vin-a.942 says that if the agreement as to training has been given to a married girl in her tenth year of marriage, she may be ordained in her twelfth; and likewise receiving the agreement up to her eighteenth year of marriage she may be ordained in her twentieth. From a woman's eighteenth year on, according to her marriage or age, one may say, “This is a married girl” and “This is a maiden.” But a maiden is not to be called a married girl. For the eighteenth year, see next *Pācittiya*. ² = Vin.4.130.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 72

Bi-Pc.72.1.1
BD.3.382

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a maiden who had completed twenty years of age (but) who had not trained for two years in the six rules. These were ignorant, inexperienced ... (Bi-Pc.66.1. *Instead of a girl married for full twelve years read a maiden who has completed twenty years of age.*) ... he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.4.328

“I allow you, monks, to give a maiden of eighteen years of age the agreement as to training for two years in the six rules. And thus, monks, should it be given: That maiden of eighteen years of age having approached the Order ...” (Bi-Pc.66.1. *Instead of a girl married for full twelve years read a maiden of eighteen years of age.*) ... “... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should ordain a maiden who has completed twenty years of age (but) who has not trained for two years in the six rules, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.72.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Has completed twenty years of age means: has attained to twenty years of age.

Maiden means: she is called a female novice.

Two years means: ... (Bi-Pc.63.2) ...

There is no offence if she ordains a maiden who has completed twenty years of age and who has trained for two years in the six rules; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 73

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained a maiden who had completed twenty years of age and who had trained for two years in the six rules (but) who was not agreed upon by the Order. Nuns spoke thus: "Come, probationers, find out about this, give this, convey this, this is needed, make this allowable." These spoke thus: "Ladies, we are not probationers, we are nuns." Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ..." (Bi-Pc.67.1. *Instead of a girl married for full twelve years read a maiden who has completed twenty years of age.*) ... "... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.73.1.1
BD.3.383

"Whatever nun should ordain a maiden who has completed twenty years of age and who has trained for two years in the six rules (but) who is not agreed upon by the Order, there is an offence of expiation."

Vin.4.329

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Completed twenty years of age means: attained to twenty years of age.

Maiden means: she is called a female novice.¹

Two years means: two years.²

Has trained means: has trained in the six rules.³

Not agreed upon means: the agreement as to ordination is not given by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.⁴

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.63.2) ...

Bi-Pc.73.2.1

¹ =above, BD.3.381, BD.3.382. ² =above, BD.3.366, BD.3.368, BD.3.374, BD.3.375, BD.3.378.

³ =above, BD.3.368, BD.3.374. ⁴ =above, BD.3.368, BD.3.374.

There is no offence if she ordains a maiden who has completed twenty years of age, who has trained for two years in the six rules and who is agreed upon by the Order; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 74

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained while they were less than twelve years (of standing).¹ They were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable; moreover, the women who' shared their cells were ignorant, inexperienced, they did not know what was allowable or what was not allowable. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain while they are less than twelve years (of standing)?" ...

Bi-Pc.74.1.1
BD.3.384

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... less than twelve years (of standing)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... less than twelve years (of standing)? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain while she is less than twelve years (of standing) there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Less than twelve years means: not attained to twelve years.

Should ordain means: ... (Bi-Pc.61.2.1) ... offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

Bi-Pc.74.2.1

¹ *ūnadvādasavassā*, probably to be taken as nominative plural agreeing with *bhikkhuniyo*, and meaning less than twelve years from their own ordination. See next two *Pācittiyas*, and [BD.3, Introduction, p.lii](#).

Bi-Pc.74.2.2

There is no offence if she ordains when she has completed twelve years
(of standing); if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 75

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained when they had completed twelve years (of standing but) were not agreed upon by the Order. They were ignorant ... (Bi-Pc.74.1. *Instead of less than twelve years (of standing) read* when they have completed twelve years (of standing but) are not agreed upon by the Order.) ... “... It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Bi-Pc.75.1.1
BD.3.385

“I allow you, monks, to give a nun who has completed twelve years (of standing) the agreement to ordain.¹ And thus, monks, should it be given: That nun who has completed twelve years (of standing), having approached the Order, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior nuns, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘Ladies, I, so and so, a nun who has completed twelve years (of standing), request the Order for the agreement to ordain.’ And a second time it should be requested ... And a third time it should be requested. This nun should be tested² by the Order thinking: ‘This nun is experienced, she is conscientious.’ If she is both ignorant³ and unconscientious it should not be given. If she is ignorant but conscientious it should not be given. If she is experienced but unconscientious, it should not be given. If she is both experienced and conscientious, it should be given. And thus, monks, should it be given: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: ‘Ladies, let the

BD.3.386

¹ *vuṭṭhāpana-sammuti*, to cause ordination (in another). ² *paricchitabbā*. Cf. *paricchitvā* in next *Pācittiya* Vin-a.942 explains *upaparikkhati*, to test, examine, investigate. Apparently the Order, in testing her, should do so with a view to her experience and conscientiousness.

³ *bālā*, apparently here as opposite of *byattā*, experienced.

Order listen to me. This nun so and so who has completed twelve years (of standing) requests the Order for the agreement to ordain. If it seems right to the Order ... (cf. **Bi-Pc.63.1**, etc.) ... So do I understand this.”

Then the lord, having rebuked the nuns in many a figure for their weakness in maintaining themselves ... “... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun who has completed twelve years (of standing but) who is not agreed upon by the Order should ordain, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.75.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Completed twelve years means: attained to twelve years.

Not agreed upon means: the agreement to ordain is not given by a (formal) act at which the motion is followed by one proclamation.¹

Vin.4.331

Should ordain means: ... (**Bi-Pc.63.3**) ...

There is no offence if she ordains when she has completed twelve years (of standing) and is agreed upon by the Order; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. above, **BD.3.368**, **BD.3.374**, **BD.3.383**.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 76

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Caṇḍakālī, having approached the Order of nuns, asked for the agreement to ordain. Then the Order of nuns, having tested¹ the nun Caṇḍakālī, saying: "You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being,"² did not give her the agreement to ordain. The nun Caṇḍakālī answered, "Very good." Now at that time the Order of nuns gave the agreement to ordain to other nuns. The nun Caṇḍakālī ... spread it about, saying: "Am I then ignorant, am I then unconscientious,³ that the Order gives the agreement to ordain to other nuns, but does not give it to me?" Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

Bi-Pc.76.1.1
BD.3.387

"How can the lady Caṇḍakālī, on being told, 'You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being,' and having answered, 'Very good,' afterwards engage in criticism?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Caṇḍakālī ... afterwards engaged in criticism⁴?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Caṇḍakālī ... afterwards engage in criticism? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, on being told, 'You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being,' and having answered, 'very good,' should afterwards engage in criticism, there is an offence of expiation."

BD.3.388

¹ *paricchitvā*; cf. previous *Pācittiya*. ² *alam tāva te ayye vuṭṭhāpitena*, or "please stop ordaining," or "there is no need for you to ordain at present." Cf. *alam te idhavāsena* at [Vin.3.184](#). ³ The two points on which nuns had to be tested according to the previous *Pācittiya*. ⁴ See above, [BD.3.59](#), [BD.3.64](#), and notes.

Bi-Pc.76.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

‘You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being’ means: ‘You have conferred the *upasampadā*,¹ sufficiently, lady, for the time being.’

If, having answered, ‘Very good,’ she afterwards engages in criticism, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.76.2.2

There is no offence if she criticises one acting by nature from desire, from hatred, from confusion, from fear²; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.332

¹ At Bi-Pc.79 below, Caṇḍakāli is called a probationer, and was ordained by Thullanandā.

² Cf. above, BD.3.66.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 77

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain probationer, having approached the nun Thullanandā, asked for the *upasampadā* ordination. The nun Thullanandā, having said to that probationer, "If you, lady, will give me a robe, then will I ordain you," neither ordained her nor made an effort to get her ordained.¹ Then that probationer told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā, having said ... neither ordain her nor make an effort to get her ordained?" ...

Bi-Pc.77.1.1
BD.3.389

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ... nor made an effort to get her ordained?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... nor make an effort to get her ordained? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having said to a probationer: 'If you, lady, will give me a robe, then will I ordain you,' (yet) if she is not afterwards prevented, should neither ordain her nor should make an effort to get her ordained, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Probationer means: one who has trained for two years in the six rules.

'If you, lady, will give me a robe, then will I ordain you' means: then will I confer the *upasampadā* ordination on you.

Bi-Pc.77.2.1

BD.3.390

¹ Cf. Bi-Pc.23, Bi-Pc.34, Bi-Pc.45.

If she is not afterwards prevented means: if there is not an obstacle.

Should neither ordain her means: should not herself ordain her.

Nor should make an effort to get her ordained means : should not command another.

If she thinks, "I will neither ordain her nor make an effort to get her ordained," in throwing off the responsibility, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.77.2.2

There is no offence if there is an obstacle; if, having looked about, she does not get the chance; if she is ill; if there are accidents¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer. .

Vin.4.333

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.289](#), [BD.3.310](#), [BD.3.331](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 78

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain probationer, having approached the nun Thullanandā, asked for the *upasampadā*, ordination. The nun Thullanandā spoke thus to that probationer: "If you, lady, will wait upon me for two years, then will I ordain you," and having said (this) ... (see [Bi-Pc.77.1](#)) ... "... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.78.1.1
BD.3.391

"Whatever nun, having said to a probationer: 'If you, lady, will wait upon me for two years, then will I ordain you,' (yet) if she is not afterwards prevented, should neither ordain her nor should make an effort to get her ordained, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.78.2.1

Probationer means: one who has trained for two years in the six rules.

'If you, lady, will wait upon me for two years' means: if you will attend upon me for two years.¹

'Then will I ordain you,' means: then will I confer the *upasampada*, ordination on you.

If she is not afterwards prevented means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.77.2](#)) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.378](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 79

Bi-Pc.79.1.1
BD.3.392

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā ordained the probationer Caṇḍakalī who kept company with men, who kept company with youths, who was violent,¹ a dwelling-place of grief.² Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the lady Thullanandā ordain ... grief?”

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ordained ... grief?”

“It is true, lord.”

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

Vin.4.334

“How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ordain ... grief? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should ordain a probationer who keeps company with men, who keeps company with youths, who is violent, a dwelling-place of grief, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.79.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Man means: one attained to twenty years of age.

Youth means: one not attained to twenty years of age.

Keeps company means: keeps company unbecomingly as to body and speech.³

Violent⁴ means: she is called angry.

Dwelling-place of grief means: she arouses sorrow in others, she enters upon grief.

¹ caṇḍī. ² sokāvāsā. ³ Cf. above, BD.3.208, BD.3.315. ⁴ Cf. above, BD.3.346, where same definition of caṇḍikatā, “quick-tempered.”

Probationer means: one who has trained for two years in the six rules. BD.3.393

Should ordain means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.61.2](#)) ... and an offence of wrongdoing for the group and for the woman teacher.¹

There is no offence if she ordains her not knowing; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer. Bi-Pc.79.2.2

¹ Cf. above, [BD.3.13](#), [BD.3.185](#), [BD.3.361](#).

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 80

Bi-Pc.80.1.1
BD.3.394

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā ordained a probationer without the consent of the parents and husband. The parents and the husband ... spread it about, saying : "How can the lady Thullanandā ordain the probationer without our consent?" Nuns heard the parents and the husband who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying : "How can the lady Thullanandā ordain a probationer without the consent of the parents and husband?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ordained ... and husband?" "It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ordain a probationer ... and husband? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.335

"Whatever nun should ordain a probationer without the consent of the parents and husband, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Bi-Pc.80.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Parents means: they are called the progenitors.

Husband means: he to whom she is married.²

Without the consent means: not asking (for permission).

BD.3.395

Probationer means: one who has trained for two years in the six rules.

Should ordain means: ... (see [Bi-Pc.61.2](#)) ... and an offence of wrongdoing for the group and for the woman teacher.

¹ The twenty-second of the twenty-four questions to be put to a nun at her ordination was whether she had her parents' and husband's consent, [Vin.2.271](#). ² *yena pariggahitā hoti*, by whom she is possessed or appropriated.

There is no offence if she ordains her not knowing; if she ordains her, (she) having obtained permission; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 81

Bi-Pc.81.1.1
BD.3.396

... at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time the nun Thullanandā thinking: "I will ordain a probationer," having had monks who were elders convened, having seen sumptuous solid foods and soft foods, saying: "Masters, I will not ordain the probationer yet," having dismissed the monks who were elders, having had Devadatta, Kokālika, Kaṭamorakatissaka, the son of the lady Khaṇḍā and Samuddadatta¹ convened, she ordained the probationer. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can the lady Thullanandā ordain a probationer by showing² favouritism³ to (monks) placed on probation⁴?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the nun Thullanandā ordained a probationer by showing favouritism to (monks) placed on probation?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can the nun Thullanandā ... (monks) placed on probation? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ordain a probationer by showing favouritism to (monks) placed on probation, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.81.2.1
BD.3.397
Vin.4.336

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ Schismatic monks; cf. Monks' Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Ss.11. At Vin.4.66 Thullanandā says that these five were mahānagā (great heroes) to her. ² Literally giving, dāna. ³ chanda; as at Vin.4.38 (BD.2.235). ⁴ pārivāsikā bhikkhū. Cf. Vin.1.136; and Vin.2.31ff., where in Kd.12, Kd.13 the rules for monks under probation are discussed at length. The "four months' probation" is described at Vin.1.69, three other types in Kd.13. Four still further kinds given at Vin-a.943f. See also S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.168.

By showing favouritism to (monks) placed on probation means: to a company that has risen.¹

Probationer means: ... (Bi-Pc.80.2) ... and an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

There is no offence if she ordains her if the company has not risen; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.81.2.2

¹ *vuṭṭhitāya parisāya*. Cf. Vin.1.136, where it is said that *uposatha* should not be held by (accepting) the declaration of purity of (a monk) placed on probation except if the company has not (yet) risen “Has risen” would here seem to apply to monks considered not fit to carry out the various formal acts in a seated assembly of monks.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 82

Bi-Pc.82.1.1
BD.3.398

... At Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained every year; there were not sufficient dwellings. People ... spread it about saying: "How can these nuns ordain every year? There are not sufficient dwellings." Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain every year?" ...

"Is it true, as it is said, monks, that nuns ordain every year?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ordain every year? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of raining:

"Whatever nun should ordain every year, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Bi-Pc.82.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Every year means: annually.²

Should ordain means: ... and an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

Bi-Pc.82.2.2

There is no offence if she ordains in the alternate (years); if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Quoted MN-a.3.156 ² *anuvassan ti anusaṃvaccharaṃ.*

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 83

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns ordained two (probationers) in the one year.¹ As before,² there were not sufficient dwellings. As before³ people ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ordain two (probationers) in one year? As before, there are not sufficient dwellings." Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: ... (cf. **Bi-Pc.82.1**) "... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.83.1.1
BD.3.399

Vin.4.337

"Whatever nun should ordain two (probationers) in one year, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.83.2.1

One year means: one year.⁴

Should ordain two (probationers) means: should confer the *upasampadā* ordination on two (probationers).

If she thinks: "I will ordain two (probationers)," and looks about for a group or ... (**Bi-Pc.61.2**) ... there is an offence of wrong-doing for the group and for the woman teacher.

There is no offence if she ordains in alternate years⁵; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.83.2.2

*The Eighth Division: that on a maiden.*⁶

¹ Vin-a.945 says "she ordained two (probationers) in one year in alternate years." ² *tath'eva*—i.e., in **Bi-Pc.82**. ³ *tath'eva*—i.e., in **Bi-Pc.82**. ⁴ *ekavassan ti ekaṃ sarīvaccharaṃ*.

⁵ Nothing to show whether the notion of "two (probationers)" is dropped here or not.

⁶ N.B. thirteen *Pācittiyas* in this Division, and also in the next.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 84

Bi-Pc.84.1.1
BD.3.400

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns used sunshades and sandals. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns use sunshades and sandals, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns use sunshades and sandals?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks ... and sandals?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can ... and sandals? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should use a sunshade and sandals, there is an offence of expiation."

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Bi-Pc.84.1.2
Vin.4.338

At that time a certain nun came to be ill; there was no comfort for her without a sunshade and sandals. They told this matter to the lord. He said: "Monks, I allow a sunshade and sandals to a nun who is ill. And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

"Whatever nun who is not ill should use a sunshade and sandals, there is an offence of expiation."¹

Bi-Pc.84.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

¹ Cf. Bu-Sk.57, Bu-Sk.62.

Who is not ill means: for whom there is comfort without a sunshade and sandals.

Who is ill means: for whom there is not comfort without a sunshade and sandals.

Sunshade means: there are three (kinds of) sunshade: white sunshade, sunshade of rushes, sunshade of leaves, fastened at the middle, fastened to the rim.¹

Should use means: if she uses (them) even once, there is an offence of expiation.

BD.3.401

If she thinks that she is not ill when she is not ill (and) uses a sunshade and sandals, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ill ... If she thinks that she is ill when she is not ill ... offence of expiation. If she uses a sunshade (but) not sandals, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she uses sandals (but) not a sunshade, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is not ill when she is ill ... If she is in doubt as to whether she is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ill when she is ill, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.84.2.2

There is no offence if she is ill; if she uses (them) in a monastery, in monastery precincts²; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.84.2.3

¹ = Vin.4.200. N.B. sandals, *upāhana*, not defined by Old Commentary. ² At Vin.2.130f. regulations for monks using sunshades are: (1) sunshades allowed; (2) whoever uses one, offence of wrong-doing; (3) allowed for an ill monk; (4) allowed to be used by a monk whether ill or not ill in a monastery or monastery precincts. At Vin.2.207 it is said that incoming monks on entering the monastery should put down their sunshades—as a sign of respect.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 85

Bi-Pc.85.1.1
BD.3.402

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns went¹ in a vehicle.² People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns go in a vehicle, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns go in a vehicle?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns went in a vehicle?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can this group of six nuns go in a vehicle? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

Vin.4.339

"Whatever nun should go in a vehicle, there is an offence of expiation."³

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Bi-Pc.85.1.2

Now at that time a certain nun came to be ill. She was not able to go on foot. They told this matter to the lord. He said: "I allow, monks, a vehicle for a nun who is ill."⁴ And thus, monks ... this rule of training:

BD.3.403

"Whatever nun who is not ill should go in a vehicle, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.85.2.1

¹ *yāyanti*. GEIGER, *Pali Literature und Sprache*, §138, gives "geht", which seems more suitable than "have themselves earned" (*Vinaya Texts* ii.25), for "go" covers both driving and being carried in the vehicles mentioned by the Old Commentary. ² *yāna*; see note at **BD.1.81**.

³ A *dukkata* for monks at **Vin.1.191**; at **Vin.2.276** it is said that nuns going in a vehicle "should be dealt with according to the rule"—i.e., this *Pācittiya*. Cf. **Bu-Sk.63**. ⁴ This recurs at **Vin.2.276**. Corresponding permission for monks given at **Vin.1.191**.

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Not ill means: she is able to go on foot.

Ill means: she is not able to go on foot.

Vehicle¹ means: a cart,² a carriage, a waggon, a chariot, a palanquin,³ or a sedan chair.⁴

Should go means: if she goes even once, there is an offence of expiation.

If she thinks that she is not ill when she is not ill (and) goes in a vehicle, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ill ... If she thinks that she is ill when she is not ill ... offence of expiation. If she thinks that she is not ill when she is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ill when she is ill, there is no offence.

Bi-Pc.85.2.2

There is no offence if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.85.2.3

¹ = Vin.4.201, and cf. Vin.3.49. ² See above, BD.3.144, n.3. ³ See above, BD.3.144, n.5.

⁴ See above, BD.3.144, n.5

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 86

Bi-Pc.86.1.1
BD.3.404

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun frequented a certain woman's family. Then that woman spoke thus to that nun: "Please, lady, give this petticoat to such and such a woman." Then that nun, thinking: "If I go away taking it in my bowl, there will be trouble for me,"¹ went away having tied it on. When she was on the high road the strings broke and were scattered. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns² wear a petticoat, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns ... heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun wear a petticoat?" ...

Vin.4.340

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that a nun wore a petticoat?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun wear a petticoat? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should wear a petticoat, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.86.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Petticoat means: whatever goes about the hips.

Should wear means: if she wears it even once, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.86.2.2
BD.3.405

¹ = above, **BD.3.157, BD.3.188.** ² The people generalise from one instance.

There is no offence if it is on account of illness; if she wears a hip-string¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *kaṭisuttaka*, allowed to nuns at [Vin.2.271](#), but not to be worn all the time; a *dukkāṭa* for monks to wear them at [Vin.2.106](#), but where meaning may be an ornamental waist-band.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 87

Bi-Pc.87.1.1
BD.3.406

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns wore women's ornaments. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns wear women's ornaments, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns wear women's ornaments?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that ... women's ornaments?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can ... women's ornaments? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should wear women's ornaments, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.87.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Women's ornaments mean: they go on the head, round the neck, on the hands,¹ on the feet, round the hips.²

Should wear means: if she wears them even once, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.87.2.2

There is no offence if it is on account of illness³; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ *hattha* also means "forearm," see definition of "hand" at [BD.1.203](#). ² Cf. [Vin.3.239 \(BD.2.107\)](#) where these phrases occur in definition of *kata*, "shaped." ³ It is difficult to imagine what diseases could be cured or alleviated by wearing ornaments.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 88

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns bathed with perfume and paint.¹ People ... (see [Bi-Pc.87.1](#); *read* bathed with perfume and paint, etc.) ... “... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.88.1.1
BD.3.407

“**Whatever nun should bathe with perfume and paint, there is an offence of expiation².**”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.88.2.1

Perfume means: whatever is a perfume.

Paint means: whatever is a paint.

Should bathe means: if she bathes, in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the bathing there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.88.2.2

There is no offence if it is on account of illness; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ DN.ii.142, D.2.161; Thag.960. ² At [Vin.2.280](#) it is a *dukkata* for nuns to bathe with *chunam* (soft soap-powder) or scented clay.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 89

Bi-Pc.89.1.1
BD.3.408

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns bathed with scented ground sesamum. People ... (see **Bi-Pc.87.1**; *read*, bathed with scented ground sesamum, etc.) ... “... this rule of training:

“Whatever nun should bathe with scented ground sesamum, there is an offence of expiation.”

Bi-Pc.89.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Scented means: whatever is scented.

Ground sesamum means: it is called crushed sesamum seed.

Should bathe means: if she bathes, in the business there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the bathing there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.89.2.2

There is no offence if it is on account of illness; if she bathes with common ground sesamum; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Vin.4.342

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 90

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns caused (themselves) to be rubbed (with ointment)¹ and also caused (themselves) to be massaged² by a nun. People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place, having seen (them), ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns cause (themselves) to be rubbed (with ointment) and also cause (themselves) to be massaged by a nun, just like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns cause (themselves) to be rubbed ... by a nun?" ...

Bi-Pc.90.1.1
BD.3.409

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns caused (themselves) to be rubbed ... by a nun?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns cause (themselves) to be rubbed (with ointment) and also cause themselves to be massaged by a nun? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should cause (herself) to be rubbed (with ointment) or should cause (herself) to be massaged by a nun, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

By a nun means: by another nun.

Should cause (herself) to be rubbed (with ointment) means: if she

Bi-Pc.90.2.1

BD.3.410

¹ *ummaddāpentī*. At [Vin.2.266](#) it is an offence of wrong-doing for a nun if she *mukhaṃ ummaddeti*, rubs (ointment, etc.) into her face. ² *parimaddāpentī*.

makes (another) rub (her with ointment),¹ there is an offence of expiation.

Should cause (herself) to be massaged means: if she makes (another) rub² (her), there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.90.2.2

There is no offence if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

¹ Vin-a.946 reads *ubbaṭṭāpeti*, to make anoint, to make shampoo. ² *sambāhāpeti*, to rub or shampoo.

NUNS' EXPIATION (*PĀCITTIYA*) 91–93

... at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns caused (themselves) to be rubbed (with ointment) and also caused (themselves) to be massaged by a probationer ... by a female novice ... by a woman householder. People, engaged in touring the dwelling-place, having seen (them), ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns cause (themselves) to be rubbed (with ointment) and also cause (themselves) to be massaged by a probationer ... by a female novice ... by a woman householder, just like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard ... (see *Bi-Pc.90.1*) ... "... this rule of training:

Bi-Pc.91.1.1
Bi-Pc.92.1.1
Bi-Pc.93.1.1
BD.3.411

Vin.4.343

"Whatever nun should cause (herself) to be rubbed (with ointment) or should cause (herself) to be massaged by a probationer ... by a female novice ... by a woman householder, there is an offence of expiation."

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Bi-Pc.91.2.1

Probationer means: one who has trained for two years in the six rules.¹

Female novice means: one conforming to the ten rules of training.²

Woman householder means: she is called a housewife.³

Should cause (herself) to be rubbed (with ointment) means: if she makes (another) rub (her with ointment), there is an offence of expiation.

BD.3.412

Should cause (herself) to be massaged means: if she makes (another) rub (her), there is an offence of expiation.

There is no offence if it is on account of illness; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.91.2.2

¹ = *Vin.4.122, Vin.4.332, Vin.4.333, Vin.4.334, Vin.4.335*. ² = *Vin.4.122*. ³ *agāriṇī*; cf. *gharaṇī* at *Vin.4.20*.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 94

Bi-Pc.94.1.1
BD.3.413

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns sat down on a seat in front of a monk¹ without asking (for permission). Monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ... without asking (for permission)?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that nuns ... without asking (for permission)?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can nuns ... without asking (for permission)? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should sit down on a seat in front of a monk without asking (for permission), there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.94.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

In front of a monk means: in front of one who is ordained.

Without asking (for permission) means: not having obtained permission.

Should sit down on a seat means: if she sits down even on the ground, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.94.2.2

If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission and) sits down on a seat, there is an offence of expiation. If she is in doubt as to whether she has not asked (for permission) ... If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has not asked

¹ Cf. the first of the eight "important rules," [Vin.4.52](#).

(for permission) ... there is an offence of expiation. If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she has asked (for permission), there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she has asked (for permission) when she has asked (for permission), there is no offence.

Vin.4.344
BD.3.414

There is no offence if, having asked (for permission), she sits down on a seat; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.94.2.3

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 95

Bi-Pc.95.1.1
BD.3.415

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time nuns asked a question of a monk who had not given leave.¹ Monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ask a question of a monk who has not given leave?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks ... (see Bi-Pc.94.1) ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should ask a question of a monk who has not given leave, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.95.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Not given leave means: without asking (for permission).²

Should ask a question means: if, having asked for leave³ in regard to Suttanta, she asks about Discipline or about Abhidhamma,⁴ there is an offence of expiation. If, having asked for leave in regard to Discipline, she asks about Suttanta or about Abhidhamma, there is an offence of expiation. If, having asked for leave in regard to Abhidhamma, she asks about Suttanta or about Discipline, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.95.2.2

If she thinks that she has not asked (for permission) when she has not asked (for permission and) asks a question ... (Bi-Pc.94.2.2) ... there is no

BD.3.416

¹ *anokāsakataṃ*, accusative, agreeing with *bhikkhum*, meaning "who has not made an occasion" for allowing himself to be questioned. Cf. Vin.1.114, Vin.1.170. It seems as if the nun had to give some kind of notice, and get the monk's permission to put her question. ² The monk could not give leave before the nun had asked permission for it. ³ *okāsaṃ kārāpetvā*, having had an opportunity made. ⁴ Here probably meaning the literary digest of this name. This passage would therefore seem late, dating from some time after the compilation of the three Piṭakas. See BD.3, Introduction, p.xff.

offence.

There is no offence if she asks, having asked for leave; if having asked for leave in general, she asks concerning whatever she likes¹; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pc.95.2.3

¹ *yattha katthaci*, there wherever, presumably meaning that she asks a question on any part of the Suttantas, Vinaya or Abhidhamma, and without having specified beforehand which of these three she would be asking about.

NUNS' EXPIATION (PĀCITTIYA) 96

Bi-Pc.96.1.1
BD.3.417
Vin.4.345

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain nun entered a village for almsfood without her vest.¹ While she was on the high road gusts of wind blew up her outer cloak. People shouted out: "Beautiful is the waist of the lady." That nun, being made fun of by the people, became ashamed. Then that nun, having gone to a dwelling,² told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this nun enter a village without her vest?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that this nun ... without her vest?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can a nun enter a village without her vest? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun should enter a village without her vest, there is an offence of expiation."

Bi-Pc.96.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Without a vest means: without a vest.³

Vest means: from below the collar-bone to above the navel, for the sake of covering this.

Should enter a village means: in going beyond the enclosure of a village that is fenced in, there is an offence of expiation. In entering the precincts of a village that is not fenced in, there is an offence of expiation.

Bi-Pc.96.2.2
BD.3.418

¹ *saṃkacchika*, the fourth of a nun's five robes to be pointed, out to her at her *upasampadā* ordination, [Vin.2.272](#). ² *upassaya*, very likely meaning *bhikkhuni-upassaya*, a nunnery.

³ *asaṃkacchikā ti vinā saṃkacchikarū*.

There is no offence if she is one whose robe is stolen¹; if she is one whose robe is lost; if she is ill; if she is not thinking; if she does not know²; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

*The Ninth Division: that on a sunshade*³

Recited, ladies, are the hundred and sixty-six rules for offences of expiation.⁴ Concerning them, I ask the ladies: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The ladies are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.

*Told is the Minor (Class)*⁵

Vin.4.346

¹ Vin-a.947 says that her vest is to be called a "robe." ² Cf. above, [BD.3.121ff.](#) ³ Note that there are thirteen *Pācittiyas* in this, as in the preceding Division. ⁴ Ninety-six are here recorded. The monks have ninety-two. The total for monks and nuns is therefore 188. Of the monks' 92, 70 apply also to the nuns. Thus we get 96+70=166 for nuns, leaving 22 for the monks alone, as stated at Vin-a.946. See [BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxviii.](#) ⁵ Cf. above, [BD.3.101.](#)

NUNS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 1

Bi-Pd.1.1.1
BD.3.419

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns, having had ghee¹ asked for, partook of it. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns, having had ghee asked for, partake of it? Who does not like well cooked things? Who does not like sweet things?"² Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns, having had ghee asked for, partake of it?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns, having had ghee asked for, partook of it?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the group of six nuns ...? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"Whatever nun, having had ghee asked for, should partake of it, it should be confessed by that nun, saying: 'I have fallen, ladies, into a blameworthy matter, un-becoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.'"

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Bi-Pd.1.1.2

Now at that time nuns came to be ill.³ Nuns enquiring after the ill ones, spoke thus to the ill nuns: "We hope, ladies, that you are better, we hope that you are keeping going."

BD.3.420

"Formerly, ladies, we, having had ghee asked for, partook of it, thus there came to be comfort for us. But now it is forbidden by the lord and, being

¹ One of the five standard medicines. ² = Vin.2.196 = Vin.4.71, Vin.4.87. ³ Cf. Vin.4.88 (BD.2.341).

scrupulous, we do not have it asked for, thus there does not come to be comfort for us.” They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“I allow, monks, an ill nun, having had ghee asked for, to partake of it. And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training: Vin.4.347

“Whatever nun who is not ill, having had ghee asked for, should partake of it, it should be confessed by that nun, saying: ‘I have fallen, ladies, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.’”

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case. Bi-Pd.1.2.1

Not ill means: for whom there comes to be comfort without ghee.

Ill means: for whom there does not come to be comfort without ghee.

Ghee means: ghee from cows or ghee from she-goats or ghee from buffaloes, ghee from those whose meat is allowable.¹

If she is not ill (and) has it asked for for herself, in the request there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she accepts, thinking: “I will partake of it on acquisition,” there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence which ought to be confessed.²

If she thinks that she is not ill when she is not ill (and) having had ghee asked for partakes of it, there is an offence which ought to be confessed. If she is in doubt as to whether she is not ill ... If she thinks that she is ill when she is not ill ... offence which ought to be confessed. If she thinks that she is not ill when she is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she is in doubt as to whether she is ill, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If she thinks that she is ill when she is ill, there is no offence.³ Bi-Pd.1.2.2
BD.3.421

There is no offence if she is ill; if having been ill (and) having had it asked for she partakes of it when she is not ill, if she eats the remainder of an ill nun’s meal; if it belongs to relations; if they are invited; if it is for another; if it is by means of her own property; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.⁴ Bi-Pd.1.2.3

¹ Cf. Vin.3.251, Vin.4.88 (BD.2.131, BD.2.342). ² Cf. Vin.4.89. ³ Cf. Vin.4.89. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.89.

NUNS' CONFESSION (PĀṬIDESANIYA) 2-8

Bi-Pd.2.1.1
BD.3.422

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns having had oil asked for, partook of it ... having had honey ... molasses ... fish ... meat ... milk ... curds asked for, partook of them.¹ People ... (Bi-Pd.1.1.1-Bi-Pd.1.1.2. *Instead of ghee read curds*) ... "... this rule of training:

Vin.4.348

"Whatever nun who is not ill, having had oil (honey, molasses, fish, meat, milk, curds) asked for, should partake of it, it should be confessed by that nun, saying: 'I have fallen, ladies, into a blameworthy matter, unbecoming, which ought to be confessed; I confess it.'"

Bi-Pd.2.2.1

Whatever means: ... nun is to be understood in this case.

Not ill means: for whom there comes to be comfort without curds.

Ill means: for whom there does not come to be comfort without curds.

Oil means: sesamum oil, oil of mustard seeds, oil containing honey, oil of the castor-oil plant, oil from tallow. **Honey** means: honey of bees. **Molasses** means: what is produced from sugar-cane. **Fish** means: it is called one that lives in water. **Meat** means: the meat of those whose meat is allowable. **Milk** means: milk of cows or milk of she-goats or milk of buffaloes, milk 'of those whose meat is allowable. **Curds** means: curds from just these.²

If she is not ill and has them³ asked for for herself ... (Bi-Pd.1.2. *Instead of ghee read curds.*) ... if she is the first wrong-doer.

Bi-Pd.2.3.1
BD.3.423

Recited, ladies, are the eight rules for offences which ought to be confessed. Concerning them, I ask the ladies: I hope that you are quite pure

¹ Referring to curds. ² = Vin.3.251, Vin.4.88. ³ Referring to curds.

in this matter? And a second time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? And a third time I ask: I hope that you are quite pure in this matter? The ladies are quite pure in this matter, therefore they are silent; thus do I understand this.

Told are the offences which ought to be confessed.

NUNS' TRAINING (SEKHIYA) 1-75

Bi-Sk.75.1.1
BD.3.424

These rules for training, ladies, come up for recitation.¹

At that time the enlightened one, the lord, was staying at Sāvattī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns dressed with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns dress with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns dress ... and behind?" ...

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns ... and behind?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can the group of six nuns ... and behind? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"I will dress with the inner robe all round (me),¹ is a training to be observed."

One should dress with the inner robe going all round one for covering the circle of the navel, the circle of the knees. Whoever out of disrespect dresses with the inner robe hanging down in front or behind, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional; if she is not thinking; if she does not know; if she is ill; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer ...

¹ Being the same as the Monks' *Sekhiyas*, only the first and the last are reprinted here, as in Oldenberg's edition.

... at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six nuns eased themselves and spat in the water. People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these nuns ease themselves and spit in the water, like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Nuns heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six nuns ... in the water?" Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the lord. Then the lord questioned the monks, saying:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six nuns ... in the water?"

"It is true, lord."

The enlightened one, the lord, rebuked them, saying: "How, monks, can this group of six nuns ... in the water? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ... this rule of training:

"I will not ease myself or spit in the water,' is a training to be observed."

And thus this rule of training for nuns came to be laid down by the lord.

Now at that time ill nuns were (too) scrupulous to ease themselves and spit in the water. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

"I allow, monks, a nun if she is ill to ease herself and spit in the water. And thus, monks, let the nuns set forth this rule of training:

"I will not ease myself or spit in the water, if not ill, is a training to be observed."

If she is not ill she should not ease herself or spit in the water. Whoever out of disrespect, if not ill ... offence of wrong-doing.

There is no offence if it is unintentional; if she is not thinking; if she does not know; if she is ill; if done on dry land she pours water over it; if there are accidents; if she is mad, if she is the first wrong-doer.

Recited, ladies, are the rules for training. Concerning them, I ask the ladies ... thus do I understand this.

Told are the Rules for Training

Bi-Sk.75.2.1

BD.3.425

Vin.4.350

Bi-Sk.75.2.2

Bi-Sk.76.1.1

Vin.4.351

NUNS' DECIDING OF LEGAL QUESTIONS (ADHIKARANASAMATHA)

BD.3.426

These seven rules,¹ ladies, for the deciding of legal questions come up for recitation. For the deciding, for the settlement of legal questions arising from time to time:

Bi-As.1

1. A verdict in the presence of may be given.

Bi-As.2

2. A verdict of innocence may be given.

Bi-As.3

3. A verdict of past insanity may be given.

Bi-As.4

4. It may be carried out on (her) acknowledgement.

Bi-As.5

5. (There is) the decision of the majority.

Bi-As.6

6. The decision for specific depravity.

Bi-As.7

7. The covering up (as) with grass.

Recited, ladies, are the seven rules for the deciding of legal questions. Concerning them I ask the ladies ... thus do I understand this.

¹ = Vin.4.207. See above, BD.3.153f. for notes.

NUNS' CONCLUSION

Recited, ladies, is the occasion, recited are the eight rules for offences involving defeat, recited are the seventeen rules for offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, recited are the thirty rules for offences of expiation involving forfeiture, recited are the hundred and sixty-six rules for offences of expiation, recited are the eight rules for offences which ought to be confessed, recited are the rules for training, recited are the seven rules for the deciding of legal questions. So much (of the sayings) of the lord, handed down in clauses, contained in clauses, comes up for recitation every half month. All should train therein in harmony, on friendly terms, without contention.

Told is the Nuns' Analysis

*Told are both Analyses*¹

Vin.4.352

¹ Here ends Oldenberg's Vol. IV.

Volume III
Khandhaka

Contents of Volume

Translator's Introduction	1256
1. Going forth (Pabbajjā)	1277
On Awakening . . . . .	.1277
At the Goatherds' Banyan tree . . . . .	.1279
On Mucalinda . . . . .	.1280
At the Rājāyatana tree . . . . .	.1281
On the invitation of Brahmā . . . . .	.1283
On the group of five . . . . .	.1287
On the going forth of Yasa . . . . .	.1299
With Māra . . . . .	.1305
On going forth and full ordination . . . . .	.1306
With Māra, the second . . . . .	.1307
The story of the excellent group . . . . .	.1308
On the miracles at Uruvelā . . . . .	.1310
On Bimbisāra's gathering . . . . .	.1325
On the going forth of Sāriputta and Moggallāna . . . . .	.1331
On the duties to the preceptor . . . . .	.1337
On the duties to the one who shares his cell . . . . .	.1347
On dismissal . . . . .	.1348
On the duties to the teacher . . . . .	.1355
On the duties to the student . . . . .	.1359
On not forgiving when dismissed . . . . .	.1359

The story of the ignorant and inexperienced . . . . .	.1359
On the nullifications of guidance . . . . .	.1360
On five cases when one may ordain . . . . .	.1361
On six cases when one may ordain . . . . .	.1364
On one who had formerly been a member of another sect . . . . .	.1365
The story of five diseases . . . . .	.1369
On King's service . . . . .	.1371
The story of a thief (wearing) a garland of fingers . . . . .	.1373
The story of a thief who has broken out of jail . . . . .	.1373
The story of an thief with a "wanted" notice . . . . .	.1374
The story of a scourged man . . . . .	.1375
The story of a debtor . . . . .	.1375
The story of a slave . . . . .	.1376
The story of a bald-headed metal-smith . . . . .	.1376
The story of the boy Upāli . . . . .	.1377
The story of malaria . . . . .	.1379
The story of Kaṇḍaka . . . . .	.1380
The story of when it was crowded . . . . .	.1381
On release from dependence . . . . .	.1382
The story of Rāhula . . . . .	.1384
On training rules . . . . .	.1386
The story of an act of punishment . . . . .	.1387
The story of making a prohibition without asking . . . . .	.1388
The story of luring away . . . . .	.1389
The story of Kaṇḍaka the novice . . . . .	.1389
The story of a eunuch . . . . .	.1390
The story of one in communion by theft . . . . .	.1391
The story of an animal . . . . .	.1392
The story of a matricide . . . . .	.1394
The story of a parricide . . . . .	.1394
The story of a killer of a perfected one . . . . .	.1395
The story of a raper of nuns . . . . .	.1395
The story of a hermaphrodite . . . . .	.1396
The story of without a preceptor, etc. . . . .	.1396

The story of without a bowl, etc.	1397
The portion on thirty-two (cases) where one should not let go forth	1398
The story of guidance for the unconscientious	1400
The story of guidance for one on a journey, etc.	1400
Permission to proclaim by clan	1402
The story of two expecting ordination, etc.	1402
Permission for ordination twenty years from conception	1403
Ordination procedure	1403
Four requisites	1407
Four things not to be done	1407
The story of one suspended for not seeing an offence	1409

2. Observance (Uposatha) 1413

Permission to gather	1413
Permission to recite the Pātimokkha	1414
The story of Mahākappina	1419
Permission for a boundary	1420
On an observance hall	1422
On a maximum for observance	1423
Permission for a “not separated” boundary	1425
Abolishing a boundary	1427
A village boundary, etc.	1428
Incomplete observance, etc.	1429
Reciting the Pātimokkha in brief, etc.	1430
On questioning regarding Vinaya	1432
On answering regarding Vinaya	1433
On reproving	1434
Protesting an act that is not the rule, etc.	1435
Requesting the reciting of the Pātimokkha, etc.	1436
Allowance to learn the counting of the fortnights, etc.	1436
Allowance for preliminary duties	1439
The story of those travelling to distant parts, etc.	1440
On giving entire purity	1442
On giving consent	1444

On being grabbed by relatives . . . . .	.1445
Agreement for the mad . . . . .	.1446
The observance by an Order, etc. . . . .	.1448
Procedure for making amends for offences . . . . .	.1450
Procedure for an offence without making obstacle . . . . .	.1451
Procedure for making amends for a shared offence . . . . .	.1452
Fifty cases of no offence . . . . .	.1455
Fifty cases of perceiving it is a group or not a group . . . . .	.1456
Fifty cases of doubt . . . . .	.1457
Fifty cases of acting badly . . . . .	.1458
Fifty cases of aiming at schism . . . . .	.1458
Abbreviated repetitions on entering a boundary . . . . .	.1458
Seeing characteristics, etc. . . . .	.1460
Performing observance with those of a different communion, etc. . . . .	.1461
Portion on should not go . . . . .	.1462
Portion on should go . . . . .	.1463
Seeing a blameworthy person . . . . .	.1464
3. Rains (Vassa)	1467
Allowance to enter the rains . . . . .	.1467
On tour in the rains, etc. . . . .	.1468
Allowance for seven days business . . . . .	.1469
Allowance for five even when not sent for . . . . .	.1473
Allowance for seven when sent for . . . . .	.1478
Allowance only when sent for . . . . .	.1479
Portion on no offence for cutting short the rains when there is danger . . . . .	.1480
Portion on no offence for cutting short the rains when there is schism in the Saṅgha . . . . .	.1482
Entering the rains in a cow pen, etc. . . . .	.1484
Places for not entering the rains . . . . .	.1485
Unlawful agreement . . . . .	.1486
Offence of wrong-doing in assent . . . . .	.1487
4. Invitation (Pavāraṇā)	1491

Dwelling not in comfort	1491
Division of the Invitation	1496
Allowance to give invitation	1496
On being grabbed by relatives	1497
Division of invitation by Saṅgha, etc.	1497
Procedure for making amends	1500
Procedure for no obstacle from offence	1500
Procedure for making amends for shared offence	1501
Fifty cases of no offence	1501
Fifty cases of perceiving it is a group or is not a group	1502
Fifty cases of doubt	1503
Fifty cases of acting badly	1503
Fifty cases of aiming at schism	1503
Abbreviated repetitions on entering a boundary	1504
Various days	1504
Visible characteristics	1505
Invitation with those of different communion, etc.	1505
Portion on should not go	1505
Portion on should go	1505
Seeing a blameworthy person	1505
Invitation with two statements, etc.	1505
Setting aside the invitation	1508
Basis for a grave offence, etc.	1513
The story of makers of strife	1515
Harmonious invitation	1517

5. Leather (Camma) 1520

The story of Soṇa Koḷivisa	1520
Rejection of double-lined sandals	1528
Rejection of all dark green, etc.	1529
Allowance for cast off sandals with many linings	1531
Rejection of sandals inside a monastery	1532
Rejection of wooden sandals	1534
Rejection of vehicles, etc.	1538

Rejection of high and broad seats . . . . .	.1540
Rejection of all leather . . . . .	.1541
Allowance for what is displayed by householders, etc. . . . .	.1543
The story of Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa . . . . .	.1545
The five boons for Mahākaccana . . . . .	.1547

6. Medicine (Bhesajja) 1554

On five medicines . . . . .	.1554
On root medicine, etc. . . . .	.1556
The story of Pilindavaccha . . . . .	.1562
Allowance for sugar, etc. . . . .	.1570
On rejection of what is prepared indoors, etc. . . . .	.1571
Picked up and received . . . . .	.1574
Allowance for what is received, etc. . . . .	.1576
On rejection of surgery . . . . .	.1579
On rejection of human flesh . . . . .	.1580
On rejection of elephant flesh . . . . .	.1583
Allowance for conje and honey-lumps . . . . .	.1586
The story of the minister young in faith . . . . .	.1588
The story of Belaṭṭhakaccāna . . . . .	.1590
The story of Pāṭaligāma . . . . .	.1594
The story of Sunidha and Vassakāra . . . . .	.1597
On the truths at Koṭigāma . . . . .	.1600
The story of Ambapālī . . . . .	.1601
The story of the Licchavīs . . . . .	.1601
The story of General Sīha . . . . .	.1603
Allowance for a place for what is allowable . . . . .	.1610
The story of the householder Meṇḍaka . . . . .	.1614
Allowance for five dairy products, etc. . . . .	.1619
The story of Keṇiya the matted-hair ascetic . . . . .	.1622
The story Roja the Malla . . . . .	.1626
The story of one gone forth when old . . . . .	.1630
On the four great references . . . . .	.1633

7. Kaṭhina 1636

Allowance for <i>Kaṭhina</i> . . . . .	.1636
Seven on bringing . . . . .	.1644
Seven on taking . . . . .	.1646
Six on bringing . . . . .	.1646
Six on taking . . . . .	.1646
Fifty on bringing . . . . .	.1647
Fifty on taking, etc. . . . .	.1649
Fifty on taking what is imperfectly executed . . . . .	.1650
Twelve cases contrary to expectation . . . . .	.1650
Twelve cases in accordance with expectation . . . . .	.1652
Twelve on business . . . . .	.1655
Nine cases on without collecting . . . . .	.1657
Five on living in comfort . . . . .	.1659
On obstacles and not-obstacles . . . . .	.1660

8. Robes (*Cīvara*) 1665

The story of Jīvaka . . . . .	.1665
The story of the merchant's wife . . . . .	.1669
The story of King Bimbisāra . . . . .	.1671
The story of the merchant of Rājagaha . . . . .	.1672
The story of the merchant's son . . . . .	.1675
The story of King Pajjota . . . . .	.1676
On a pair of Siveyyaka cloths . . . . .	.1680
On exactly thirty purges . . . . .	.1680
On asking for a boon . . . . .	.1682
On permission for woollen garments, etc. . . . .	.1684
On searching for rag-robres . . . . .	.1686
On an agreement for the receiver of cloth . . . . .	.1688
On an agreement for a storeroom, etc. . . . .	.1689
On dying robes . . . . .	.1692
Allowance for cut-up cloth . . . . .	.1695
Allowance for three robes . . . . .	.1697
On extra robes . . . . .	.1699
The story of Visākhā . . . . .	.1701

Allowance for a sitting-cloth, etc. . . . .	.1707
On the least robe to be assigned, etc. . . . .	.1710
On when a robe becomes the Saṅgha's . . . . .	.1714
The story of Upananda the Sakyan . . . . .	.1716
On the story of one ill . . . . .	.1718
On inheritance . . . . .	.1721
On rejection of nakedness . . . . .	.1723
On rejection of garments of grass, etc. . . . .	.1724
On rejection of all dark green . . . . .	.1725
On when there is no robe after the rains . . . . .	.1726
On a robe for a divided Saṅgha . . . . .	.1728
On rightly and wrongly allotted . . . . .	.1729
Eight channels for the accruing of robes . . . . .	.1731

9. The monks from Campā (Campeyya) 1734

The story of the monk Kassapagotta . . . . .	.1734
On an act not by rule in an incomplete assembly, etc. . . . .	.1738
On an act without a motion, etc. . . . .	.1740
Carrying out by a fourfold Order, etc. . . . .	.1745
Carrying out by a Fourfold (Order) . . . . .	.1746
Carrying out by a Fivefold (Order) . . . . .	.1747
Carrying out by a Tenfold (Order) . . . . .	.1747
Carrying out by a Twentyfold (Order) . . . . .	.1747
On one on probation, etc. . . . .	.1747
On two sent away, etc. . . . .	.1748
On an act not by rule, etc. . . . .	.1750
On the questions of Upāli . . . . .	.1754
On an act of censure . . . . .	.1759
On an act of guidance . . . . .	.1761
On an act of banishment . . . . .	.1761
On an act of reconciliation . . . . .	.1761
On revoking an act of suspension for not seeing an offence . . . .	.1762
On an act of suspension for not making amends for an offence . .	.1762
On revoking an act of suspension for not relinquishing . . . . .	.1763

On revoking an act of censure . . . . .	.1763
On revoking an act of guidance . . . . .	.1764
On revoking an act of banishment . . . . .	.1764
On revoking an act of reconciliation . . . . .	.1764
On revoking an act of suspension for not seeing an offence . . . . .	.1764
On revoking an act of suspension for not making amends for an offence . . . . .	.1765
On revoking an act of suspension for not relinquishing . . . . .	.1765
On an act of censure for disputes . . . . .	.1765
On an act of guidance for disputes . . . . .	.1766
On an act of banishment for disputes . . . . .	.1766
On an act of reconciliation for disputes . . . . .	.1767
On an act of suspension for not seeing an offence for disputes . . . . .	.1767
On an act of suspension for not making amends for an offence for disputes . . . . .	.1767
On an act of suspension for not relinquishing for disputes . . . . .	.1767
On revoking an act of censure . . . . .	.1767
On revoking an act of guidance . . . . .	.1768
On revoking an act of banishment . . . . .	.1768
On revoking an act of reconciliation . . . . .	.1768
On revoking an act of suspension for not seeing for an offence . . . . .	.1768
On revoking an act of suspension for not making amends for an offence . . . . .	.1769
On revoking an act of suspension for not relinquishing . . . . .	.1769
10. The monks from Kosambī (Kosambaka)	1774
On the dispute among the monks from Kosambī . . . . .	.1774
The story of Dīghāvu . . . . .	.1780
On going to Bālakalaṇaka . . . . .	.1790
On going to Pācīnavaṃsadāya . . . . .	.1791
On going to Pārileyyaka . . . . .	.1794
On eighteen cases . . . . .	.1796
Allowance to restore . . . . .	.1799
On harmony in the Saṅgha . . . . .	.1800

Questions of Upāli on harmony in the Saṅgha1801

Translator's Introduction 1805

11. The followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka (Paṇḍulohitaka) 1821

Act of censure1821

Twelve on an act not by rule1824

Twelve on an act by rule1825

Six on desires1826

Eighteen duties1827

Eighteen cases that should not be settled1828

Eighteen cases that should be revoked1829

Act of guidance1831

Twelve on an act not by rule1832

Twelve on an act by rule1832

Six on desiring1832

Eighteen duties1832

Eighteen cases that should not be revoked1833

Eighteen cases that should be revoked1833

Act of banishment1834

Twelve on an act not by rule1839

Twelve on an act by rule1839

Fourteen on desiring1839

Eighteen duties1840

Eighteen cases that should not be revoked1841

Act of reconciliation1843

Twelve on an act not by rule1847

Twelve on an act by rule1847

Four on desiring1847

Eighteen duties1848

Eighteen cases that should not be revoked1850

Eighteen cases that should be revoked1850

An act of suspension for not seeing an offence1851

Twelve on an act not by rule1852

Twelve on an act by rule1852

Six on desiring	1852
Forty three duties	1852
Forty-three cases that should not be revoked	1854
Forty-three cases that should be revoked	1856
An act of suspension for not making amends for an offence	1856
Twelve on an act not by rule	1857
Twelve on an act by rule	1857
Six on desiring	1857
Forty-three duties	1857
Forty-three cases that should not be revoked	1857
Forty-three cases that should be revoked	1857
An act of suspension for not relinquishing a wrong view	1857
Twelve on an act not by rule	1860
Twelve on an act by rule	1860
Six on desiring	1860
Forty-three duties	1860
Forty-three cases that should not be revoked	1861
Forty-three cases that should be revoked	1861
12. Probation (<i>Parivāsa</i>)	1865
Duties on one on probation	1865
Duties of one being sent back to the beginning	1870
Duties of one deserving <i>mānatta</i>	1871
Duties of one undergoing <i>mānatta</i>	1872
Duties of one deserving rehabilitation	1873
13. Accumulation (<i>Samuccaya</i>)	1876
Emission of semen	1876
Unconcealed <i>mānatta</i>	1876
Unconcealed rehabilitation	1877
Probation concealed for one night	1879
<i>Mānatta</i> concealed for one night	1879
Rehabilitation concealed for one night	1879
Probation concealed for five days	1880
Sending one on probation back to the beginning	1880

Sending one deserving <i>mānatta</i> back to the beginning . . . . .	.1881
<i>Mānatta</i> for three offences . . . . .	.1882
Sending one undergoing <i>mānatta</i> back to the beginning . . . . .	.1883
Sending one deserving rehabilitation back to the beginning . . . . .	.1883
Rehabilitation for one who has been sent back to the beginning . . . . .	.1883
Probation for one who has concealed for a fortnight . . . . .	.1885
Sending one on probation for a fortnight back to the beginning . . . . .	.1885
Concurrent probation . . . . .	.1886
Sending one deserving <i>mānatta</i> back to the beginning, etc. . . . .	.1886
<i>Mānatta</i> for three offences . . . . .	.1887
Sending one undergoing <i>mānatta</i> back to the beginning . . . . .	.1887
Sending one deserving rehabilitation back to the beginning . . . . .	.1887
Rehabilitation for one who has concealed for a fortnight . . . . .	.1888
Probation . . . . .	.1888
Concurrent probation with dependent duration . . . . .	.1888
All lengths concealed with dependent duration . . . . .	.1889
Probation for two months . . . . .	.1890
Procedure for one to be given probation for two months . . . . .	.1895
Purifying probation . . . . .	.1896
Forty cases . . . . .	.1900
Thirty-six cases . . . . .	.1902
One hundred on <i>mānatta</i> . . . . .	.1903
Four hundred on concurrent probation and beginning . . . . .	.1906
The portion with eighteen cases measured, etc. . . . .	.1908
The portion with eleven cases on two monks . . . . .	.1909
Nine cases on impure beginning . . . . .	.1911
Second set of nine cases . . . . .	.1913
Third set of nine cases . . . . .	.1915

14. Settlements (*Samatha*) 1917

Verdict in the presence of . . . . .	.1917
Verdict by memory . . . . .	.1919
Verdict by former madness . . . . .	.1926
Acknowledgement . . . . .	.1930

Majority	1931
Bad character	1933
Covering over with grass	1935
Issues	1937
Settlement of issues	1946
15. Minor matters (<i>Khuddaka</i>)	1961
16. Lodgings (<i>Sayanāsana</i>)	2024
First recitation section	2024
Allowance for dwellings	2024
Allowance for couches and chairs	2028
Allowance for whitewash, etc.	2032
Rejection of a bold design	2033
Allowance for a balustrade	2033
Allowance for an assembly hall	2035
Allowance for a porch	2036
Allowance for a fenced monastery	2036
Second recitation section	2037
The story of Anāthapiṇḍika	2037
Giving building work	2044
Allowance for the first seat, etc.	2045
Persons not to be bowed to	2048
Rejection of reserved seating	2048
Allowance for what is displayed by householders	2049
Appreciation for the Jetavana monastery	2050
Reservation of a seat, etc.	2051
Agreement for an assigner of lodgings	2054
Third recitation section	2056
Things not to be disposed of	2059
Things not to be distributed	2060
On the gift of building work	2062
Rejection of using elsewhere, etc.	2065
Allowance for meals for the Order, etc.	2067
Agreement for an issuer of meals	2068

Agreement for an assigner of lodgings	2068
Agreement on one to dispose of trifles	2069
Agreement on an acceptor of outer cloaks	2070
17. Schism in an Order (<i>Saṅghabheda</i>)	2074
First recitation section	2074
On the going forth of the six Sakyans	2074
The story of Devadatta	2080
On the five teachers	2082
Second recitation section	2085
Act of informing	2085
The story of Prince Ajātasattu	2088
Sending assassins	2089
Shedding blood	2092
Sending out Nālāgiri	2093
On the request for the five points	2095
Third recitation section	2100
On schism in the Order	2100
Questions of Upāli	2107
18. Duties (<i>Vatta</i>)	2112
On the duties of visitors	2112
On the duties of residents	2116
On the duties of travellers	2117
On the duties of expressing appreciation	2118
On duties in the refectory	2119
On duties for those going on almsround	2122
On duties for forest dwellers	2124
On duties regarding lodgings	2126
On duties in the sauna	2129
On duties in the toilet	2130
On duties to the preceptor	2132
On duties to one who shares his cell	2138
On duties to the teacher	2141
On duties to the student	2141

19. Suspending the Observance (<i>Uposathaṭṭhāpana</i>)	2147
Requesting the recitation of the Pātimokkha	2147
Eight wonderful things about the great ocean	2149
Eight wonderful things about this Dhamma and Vinaya	2150
Those deserving to hear the Pātimokkha	2153
Setting aside the Pātimokkha by rule and not by rule	2154
Setting aside the Pātimokkha by rule	2159
Factors for undertaking on one's own behalf	2161
Things to be reviewed by a reprover	2162
Things to be established by a reprover	2164
On connected with the reprover and the reprovèd	2165
20. Nuns (<i>Bhikkhunī</i>)	2169
First recitation section	2169
The story of Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī	2169
Eight important rules	2171
Allowance for the ordination of nuns	2174
Second recitation section	2180
Third recitation section	2193
21. (Recitation with) Five Hundred (<i>Pañcasata</i>)	2210
Origin of the Council	2210
On the lesser and minor training rules	2215
On the higher penalty	2219
22. (Recitation with) Seven Hundred (<i>Sattasata</i>)	2224
First recitation section	2224
Second recitation section	2235

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

BD.4.v

The present volume of the *Book of the Discipline* covers the whole of the Mahāvagga, the Great, or Greater Division of the Vinaya, and is thus a translation of the first volume of OLDENBERG'S *Vinaya Piṭakam*, published in 1879. The Mahāvagga was translated in full by RHYS DAVIDS and OLDENBERG, and comprises most of Volume I and the first part of Volume II of their *Vinaya Texts* (their Cūlavagga translation also begins in Volume II), published in the Sacred Books of the East, Volumes XIII and XVII, in 1881, 1882. These volumes, although they first appeared seventy years ago, are still indispensable for a study of early Buddhist monastic life.

This new translation of the *Book of the Discipline* is, however, justified I think, for various reasons. For example, recent events have focused attention on the Buddhist lands of South-East Asia where Buddhist monks still follow these ancient rules; Buddhism itself is stirring and seeking to know more of its own treasures, and it is attracting non-Buddhists to become acquainted with them likewise. The moment is therefore not unsuitable to re-translate one of the principal works of the Pali canon, the more especially as many Western students are now debarred from consulting the original English translation, *Vinaya Texts*, since unfortunately it is out of print. Moreover, the scholarship which has been lavished on the Pali canon during roughly the last century has inevitably resulted in an increased understanding of the technical and other terms so abundant in the Vinaya and which in many cases also occur in other parts of the Pali canon. Following this, there has resulted a surer knowledge of Pali Buddhism as a whole. Now that references, allusions, remarks, not to mention words themselves, can be compared with other contexts, which had been either not edited

in roman letters or not translated by the time *Vinaya Texts* was published, they are able to take on a fresh and a fuller meaning. For the same reason various terms and phrases, hitherto difficult and perhaps baffling, have become easier to understand, and hence to translate.

I have therefore attempted translations of various words that Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, for one reason or another, kept in the Pali. I do not claim originality, however, for my renderings, for most, if not all of these terms have already been translated where they occur in other canonical texts and have appeared in their appropriate books in the Pali Text Society's Translation Series or in the Sacred Books of the Buddhists. Some of these words may be mentioned here. For example, as in the first three volumes of the *Book of the Discipline*, *saṅgha* is rendered as Order; *dukkāṭa* as wrongdoing (a type of offence) of constant occurrence in this volume; *sāmaṇera* as novice; *titthiyā* as other sects; *bhikkhu* and *bhikkhunī* as monk and nun; *chabbaggiyā bhikkhū* as the sixfold group of monks; *vassa* as the rains; *parivāsa* as probation; *upajjhāya* as preceptor; *saddhivihārika* as the one who shares his cell; *ācariya* as teacher (in a technical sense), and *antevāsin* as his pupil; and *pavāraṇā* as Invitation.

In this volume I have also translated a number of other words, likewise left untranslated by Rhys Davids and Oldenberg, and which have not occurred in my three preceding volumes. For example, I have translated *pārisuddhi* as entire purity; *nissaya* as dependence; and *ñatti* as motion while *ñatticatuttha* is a motion followed by a resolution put three times. I have also given the names of the formal acts of the Order in English. All these are technical terms, and should be understood, for they naturally help to clarify some of the depths and complications of the Vinaya. In almost every case the notes which Rhys Davids and Oldenberg append to their untranslated words are of great value and merit careful consultation. I have made no attempt to translate *dhamma* and *nibbāna*. But I hope by translating such terms as I have mentioned above I have, while keeping to the Pali intention, perhaps clothed them in a meaning and significance easier for the English reader to grasp than when he is confronted with the Pali forms.

This volume opens with the account, of the greatest importance to historians and devotees of Buddhism alike, of the days immediately preceding

the formation of the Order itself, beginning with the seven days' contemplation under the Bo-tree where Gotama sat enjoying the bliss of deliverance just after he had attained that full awakening, illumination or enlightenment which marked his passage from Bodhisattahood to Buddhahood.

According to this Mahāvagga account, during each of "the three watches of the night" — presumably the last of the seven spent under the Bo-tree — he uttered a solemn utterance concerned with cause, and then with the routing of Māra (in the third watch). The *Dhammapada Commentary* (Dhp-a.iii.127) says that in the first watch he dissipated the darkness (ignorance) veiling his former abodes, or lives, births; that in the second he purified his deva-vision; and that in the third, out of compassion for creatures, he paid right mindfulness to dependent origination both in forward and reverse order. Then, self-awakened to the fullest self-awakening, he uttered the solemn utterance common to hundreds of thousands of Buddhas, namely the two verses beginning *anekajātisaṃsāraṃ* (Dhp.153; Thag.183; Ja.i.76). The Introduction to the *Vinaya Commentary* (*Samantapāsādikā*), Vol.i, p.17, and the *Dīgha Commentary* (DN-a.i.16), agree that these verses are the first Buddhavacana; while the *Udāna Commentary* (Ud-a.208) and the *Suttanipāta Commentary* (Snp-a.ii.392) also say that he uttered these verses after he had attained the three knowledges in the three watches of the night. The *Khuddakapāṭha Commentary* (Kp-a.12–Kp-a.13), elaborating further, or perhaps following some other tradition, says that while these two verses were the first of all words to be uttered by the Buddha (Buddha, because now, although very recently, "awakened"), they were only spoken mentally and not out loud. For what he first spoke out loud, so this Commentary continues, was the verse which in the Mahāvagga is attributed to the end of the first watch of the night of awakening.

At the end of the third watch of this crucial night the Buddha went, according to the Mahāvagga, to the foot of the Ajapāla banyan and sat there for seven days; he then spent another seven days at the foot of the Mucalinda tree, and a still further seven at the foot of the Rājāyatana. While he was at the first of these three trees he was visited by a brahmin, representative of one of the sects which abounded in India at that time, and the Buddha stated his view on what it is to be a "Brahmin" (in the true sense).

BD.4.viii

While he was at the second tree a naga-king arrived to offer him protection—indicative of the close and, on the whole, friendly relations which in the Buddhist tradition existed between serpents and human beings. Again Gotama made a short statement, this time on what it is that constitutes “highest bliss”, *parama sukha*. Although this statement lacks the terseness of that attributed to Gotama in the *Māgandiya Sutta* (MN 75): that “*nibbāna* is the highest bliss”, it nevertheless contains tenets that throughout the long history of Buddhism have remained at the heart of its teaching: that the absence of malice, the absence of feeling attracted to conditioned things, the transcending of sense-pleasures, and the averting (or control, *vinaya*) of pride in the thought “I am”—that these are the highest bliss.

In the “Talk on Brahmā’s Entreaty” during the time of the Buddha’s hesitation to teach *dhamma*, concepts emerge which, with more insistence or less, are found in most of the Pali canonical texts: the deepness and difficulty of *dhamma*, its peace, and the consequent need to teach it in a world so delighting and rejoicing in sensual pleasure that it was averse to letting itself be persuaded that *dhamma*, earnestly practised, led upstream, against the current, *paṭisotaḡāmin*, and by the death of craving opened the doors of deathlessness to *nibbāna*, the source of true and supreme bliss.

The first Khandhaka, Section or Chapter of the Mahāvagga, called the Great (*mahā*) Section,¹ also contains Gotama’s famous utterance to Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, of his victoriousness, perfection and self-awakening, of his uniqueness, and of his having had no teacher (*Kd.1.6.8*). He is therefore different from other human beings. Then there comes, preceded by further stress on the finding of deathlessness, the First Discourse, delivered to the five earliest followers, and called elsewhere the Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta, the Discourse on the Rolling of the Wheel of *Dhamma*, in which the Middle Course between the two extremes, the dead-ends of too great luxury and too great austerity, is called the *ariyan* Eightfold Way. This Way is graded into *sīla*, *samādhi* and *pañña*. (MN.i.301) and centres on *dukkha*, unsatisfactoriness, ill or suffering, and the stopping of it, epitomised later by Gotama when he is recorded to say (MN.i.140): “As formerly, so now, this

¹ Note by Sujato: In this SuttaCentral edition this is titled the Pabbajjākkhandhaka, the Chapter on Going Forth.

is precisely what I teach: ill and the stopping of ill." Aññata Koṇḍañña was the first of the disciples to apprehend this central fact in causality, that "whatever is of the nature to arise, all that is of the nature to stop". It was his vision of *dhamma*, as it was soon afterwards that of his four companions.

BD.4.ix

As this *dhamma*-vision arose in each one of them he asked for the "going forth" or admission, *pabbajā*, and for the ordination, *upasampadā*, in the Lord's presence. In response, Gotama uttered the words, "Come, monk, *ehi bhikkhu*, well taught is *dhamma*, fare the Brahma-faring for the utter ending of ill." This, the original formula, used by Gotama when the Order was beginning to form and while it was still in its infancy, covers simultaneous admission and ordination. Later, two separate procedures supervened, and as the Mahāvagga shows, admission into the Order had to be gained before ordination could be conferred.

After the Second Discourse, that on the impossibility of the five *khandhas* being self because they are impermanent and suffering, and also spoken to the five original followers, and after the ordination of Yasa, his four friends, and then his fifty friends, there were sixty-one arahants in the world (Kd.1.10.4). "Freed from all snares," they were told by Gotama to go out on tour and preach *dhamma* for the good and the welfare of the multitude. As a result many people became anxious for admission and ordination, but, journeying to Gotama so as to be admitted and ordained by him, they arrived exhausted. Accordingly he thereupon allowed monks themselves to admit and ordain in any district, in any quarter. They were not, however, instructed to use the words "Come, monk." On the contrary, it is now the candidate who has three times to repeat another formula. This is called admission and ordination by the "three goings for refuge". This marks the second stage in the ordination proceedings. In the usage to be followed by those who wished to be monastic followers, the three refuges became stabilised as *buddhaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi*, *dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi*, *saṃghaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi*, each phrase to be repeated three times. Those who wished to be counted as lay-disciples (*upāsaka*, feminine *upāsikā*) asked for this status by repeating the slightly different formula of taking refuge not in *buddhaṃ*, *dhammaṃ* and *saṃghaṃ*, but in *bhagavantam*,

dhammaṃ and *bhikkhusaṅghaṃ*,¹ or in *bhavantāṃ Gotamaṃ*, *dhammaṃ* and *bhikkhusaṅghaṃ*.²

BD.4.x

It is probable that this method of admitting and ordaining did not last very long. The reasons given for abolishing it are perhaps not very convincing, and we should have expected more details and tales of mishaps showing that it no longer sufficed and therefore needed revising. At all events, as the *Mahāvagga* stands, on an occasion when *Sāriputta* asked him how he should admit and ordain a certain Brahmin, *Gotama* did not answer that the Brahmin's repetition of the three goings for refuge would constitute his ordination (*Kd.1.28.3*). Instead the third phase now arose: that of the Order ordaining a candidate, presented by his preceptor, by means of a formal act (*kamma*) consisting of a motion and a resolution proclaimed three times (*ñatticatuttha*). This means that it is now the Order alone which has the authority, the power and the legal right to ordain. In addition, the candidate for ordination now has to have a preceptor, agreed upon by the Order, who must present him to the Order—that is to the one dwelling within the boundary where he wants to take up his residence—and who must have prepared him beforehand so that, without feeling ashamed or confused, he will be able to answer a number of routine questions that will be put to him in the midst of the Order. No doubt of gradual growth, these routine-questions form a kind of examination, and it is impressed on the candidate by his preceptor that now, above all times, is a time for truth-speaking.

These are, however, merely some of the features among the many leading to the finalised form of the ordination proceedings. These multiplied and became intricate to suit the dynamic and progressive phase in which they took shape. Gone is the old simplicity of "Come, monk". Regulations have to increase to meet a complexity of emergent eventualities. The resources, *nissaya*, the minimum number of monks composing an Order competent to ordain, the number of years a monk must have been ordained before he is reckoned as suitable or competent to ordain others, living in dependence, *nissāya vatthum*, on a teacher, giving guidance, *nissayaṃ dātuṃ*, the

¹ Besides the *Mahāvagga* references, see e.g. MN.i.368, MN.i.379, MN.i.391, MN.i.396. ² See also e.g. MN.i.290, MN.i.413, MN.i.489, MN.i.501.

qualities that a monk should be possessed of in order to ordain, and the ordination and probation of former members of other sects, and the age at which a person may be ordained, are all subjects brought under review. The inner life of the Order had to be safeguarded as much as had its relations to the world outside.

BD.4.xi

That the candidate for ordination had to undergo a prior period of preparation and instruction at the hands of a preceptor implies a passage of time elapsing between “going forth” or preliminary admission, and “ordination”, or final admission. It would seem that in order to meet difficulties, perhaps created by the drawing power of Gotama’s Order itself, what had once been one operation became split into two. This is the intention of **Kd.1.28** which, without mentioning admission, allows monks to ordain by a formal act consisting of the motion and the resolution put to the Order three times. Since the method of admission is not formulated here, although Sāriputta had asked how to admit and how to ordain, it becomes clear that these two proceedings, hitherto simultaneous, are now in the process of separating. **Kd.1.30** shows even more confusion. It cites an instance where monks admit and ordain a brahmin who had asked for admission (only). Gotama reproved them for admitting anyone who went forth for the sake of the good meals the monks were reputed to enjoy—and then pointed out the four “resources” for one being ordained, saying that admission was for the sake, not of good food, but of each one of the resources.

It is, however, clear that two stages were becoming necessary before the full status of a monk could be acquired, and that in the earlier of these two stages, entered on to by *pabbajjā*, admission, the monk’s standing, rights and duties would be different from those in the latter stage, entered on to by *upasampadā*, ordination. Hence when *pabbajjā* was functionally separated from *upasampadā*, it received a new and specialised significance, coming to mean admission to noviciateship. One became a novice, *sāmaṇera*, by the conferment of *pabbajjā*, a newly ordained monk, *nava*, by the conferment of *upasampadā*. The former, like the latter, had its own machinery for its proper enactment (**BD.1.50–BD.1.61**). For example, a boy should not be allowed to “go forth” unless he had his parents’ consent, and unless he had reached the age of fifteen, except on the strange condition that he

could scare crows (BD.1.51)—a test perhaps that his first infancy was past. Methods of dealing with refractory novices are laid down (BD.1.57–BD.1.60). As depraved monks could be expelled after they had been ordained, so depraved novices could be expelled before they were ordained. The going for refuge in the *buddha*, *dhamma* and *saṅgha* although abolished from the normal procedure of ordination, was retained as the formula novices are to repeat when being allowed to go forth (Kd.1.54.3). It is also the formula to be used by those former members of other sects, who later will be eligible for ordination, when they are asking to enter on a four months' probationary period which they have to observe first (BD.1.38).

BD.4.xii

By enlarging the Order to include novices, who might be those who shared a cell (with a preceptor) or pupils (of a teacher), by not limiting it to Gotama himself and the first sixty monks, all of whom were arahants, by exhorting these original “adepts” to go forth and teach *dhamma* and as a result of their returning with an unspecified number of people seeking for admission and ordination, the Order was rendered accessible to men whose powers of attaining the matchless deliverance (Kd.1.13.1) were not so great as those of the original disciples. These were monks who therefore stood in need of training. But in spite of many opportunities of submitting to it and profiting by it, they did not always turn out satisfactorily. Hence it may be presumed that the *bhikkhusaṅgha* of the third refuge for lay followers said less than was intended. The *saṅgha* of arahants, or at least of ariyans is meant, not that of average men. The *Saṅgha* of the Triple Gem is not the community of monks as such, not the community that includes the groups of six or seventeen monks, notorious for their bad habits and as makers of trouble, or the quarrelsome monks of Kosambī, or those depraved or ill-behaved individuals on account of all of whom rules were formulated, regulations devised, and offences discriminated from what were not classed as offences, and whose misdoings provide the *raison d'être* of discipline, of *vinaya*, of the outward standard of self-control so much needed not merely to distinguish the monks from members of other sects, although in some cases a certain amount of imitation was permitted, but also to gain the loyalty and support of the lay followers. For on these depended to a large extent the physical conditions which would make a monk free to devote

himself to his training, the goal of which was the vision of *nibbāna*. The *Sarīgha* of the third refuge has in reality reference only to those steadfast disciples who, having entered the *sotāpanna* stage are on the supramundane parts of the Way, and so are themselves of supramundane stature and attainments—*lokuttara* because unaffected by all that is *lokiya*, of the world, compounded and conditioned. “They are united by the communion of understanding and ethical behaviour,” according to the Commentaries on the *Bhayabherava Sutta* (MN-a.i.130ff.) and the *Khuddakapāṭha* (Kp-a.18), in both of which the meaning of “going for refuge” is discussed at length and at a high level not approached in the *Vinaya Commentary*.

BD.4.xiii

The first twenty-four chapters of the First Section, the Mahākhandhaka, of the Mahāvagga appear to give a chronological account of events from the night of Awakening under the Bo-tree on the banks of the river Nerañjarā to the admission and ordination of Sāriputta and Moggallāna, the pair of chief disciples, already gone forth from home into homelessness as wanderers. From this point on, a precise historical narration is not so apparent, for the Mahāvagga now begins to group together subject-matter that belongs together. Strict chronology is suspended, no doubt in the interests of classifying this subject-matter and reducing its complexity to some kind of manageable order, the better to be fixed in the memory. What need was there for the existing or for any subsequent Order to know the exact procession of events? It was of greater value to learn and master the rules and procedure governing both the recurrent occasions and the daily conduct of monastic life, and this could be more easily accomplished if the material for the various topics were grouped together instead of being scattered throughout the immense compilation known as the Vinaya-Piṭaka.

If, in the hands of the early editors the sequence of events became secondary to systematisation, this plan nonetheless well shows both the development and the stabilisation of the Order as a uniform institution, the growth of several monastic practices, of government within it for the sake of its own preservation and continuance which, in turn, depended on the essential qualities of scrupulousness and striving on the part of the individuals who became its members. These therefore were being continually brought to live in conformity with a standard of behaviour specially

BD.4.xiv

suitable to recluses, *samaṇa*, and worthy of those who had “left the world” with its evanescent pleasures and its troubles and had instead entered on a way of life where worldly joys and sorrows were gradually to be renounced so that the other-worldly and higher joy that transcended them could be apprehended.

For achieving this, the life of the Order regarded as a whole came to be, no doubt gradually, planned and arranged and adapted to circumstances, while, running parallel to such developments, the life of its members became carefully regulated. Thus the first steps of all—admission and ordination into the Order—were experimented with until various types of applicants regarded as not eligible for entry could be excluded by rules, based either on experience or on forethought. This left the Order open only to the sort of person whom it was not unreasonable to suppose might be assimilated without bringing it into disgrace. Even so, there were backsliders, as already mentioned. Disgrace would have been courted if, for example, debtors and those in the royal service had been allowed to escape their obligations by becoming monks. Therefore they were debarred from entering the Order.

After its first Section on Admission and Ordination, the *Mahāvagga* proceeds to an account of the nature and establishment of the great fortnightly Observance of *uposatha*, whose principal feature is the recital of the *Pātimokkha* rules. This provides monks with an occasion to reveal any offence they may have committed. Their silence, on the other hand, is taken to mean that they have “entire purity”, *pārisuddhi*, in respect of adherence to the rules. As usual, all kinds of subsidiary matters had to be defined and regularised in order to achieve the smooth running of the main concerns. In the case of the *Uposatha* it was for example determined that only monks living within the same recognised boundary should gather together on an *Uposatha* day. Therefore methods of fixing boundaries had to be established. Moreover the *Uposatha* could not be held at some place chosen at random; a place of a maximum size for the current needs had to be agreed upon within each boundary so that all the monks living there should know where to go and arrive in time. If they had difficulty in crossing a river—one that ran through their boundary—to get there, it might be agreed by the Order

that they need not come bringing all their three robes; but if they left them behind they must not lay them aside in an unsuitable place where they might get lost or burnt or eaten by rats (BD.2.12).

Right and wrong methods of reciting the Pātimokkha are given: whether or not it should be recited in full or in brief, which to some extent depended on the absence or presence of ten sources of danger. It was, ideally, to be recited by an elder (*thera*), but if he was incompetent, then it was to be recited by some other experienced, competent monk; if there were none within the boundary, a newly ordained monk was to be sent to a neighbouring residence to learn it there, either in full or in brief, and then return (Kd.2.17.6).

If a monk, owing to illness, could not attend the recital of the Pātimokkha, he had to send his “entire purity”, *pārisuddhi*, by another. This monk conveyed it on behalf of the one who was ill and declared it (*dātum*) to the Order; but many occasions are posited when the entire purity comes to be not conveyed on account of a variety of things that might happen to the conveyer both while on his way from the invalid to the meeting-place and after his arrival there but before he had given the entire purity. This, and the conveyance and giving, or declaration of the consent (*chandaṃ dātum*) on behalf of a monk who is ill for the carrying out of a formal act of the Order, serve to show how extremely important it was held to be—a point stressed over and over again—that an Order should be “complete” whenever its business was being discharged. This was not to fall into the hands of the few. Even those who, like Mahākappina, claimed to be “purified with the highest purity” (Kd.2.5.5), were not not to go. For an Order would not have been complete if even one monk were absent. It would seem that the only reasons for not going to the Observance in person were severe illness and madness. In the former case the Order could be regarded as complete although in fact not complete, provided that the entire purity and the consent were properly and safely conveyed and declared. In the latter, the Order must grant the mad monk, here typified by Gagga, the agreement for a madman. This agreement is to the effect that whether the mad monk remembers the Observance or not, comes for it or not, whether he remembers a formal act of the Order or not, comes for it or not, the

Order either with him or without him can legitimately carry out both the Observance and the formal act.

Such are some of the items and problems which had to be settled and solved before the recital of the Pātimokkha received its final form. I do not recapitulate all these here, for they may be read in the text. Those I have given may be regarded as typical of the care taken to forestall and circumvent deleterious contingencies that might arise and disrupt the monk's standing either in his own eyes or in those of his fellows or those of the world. The strength of the regulations governing monastic proceedings and individual conduct lies in the standard or criterion they give of how to act in a multitude of circumstances affecting a monk's life.

When the Mahāvagga comes to deal with the rainy season it pays almost equal attention to entering on the rains and then keeping them by residing in one monastery for either the first three or the second three of the four months of this period, as it does to the journeys monks may take away from their rains-residence. The prime motive underlying the establishment of rains-residences was protection or non-injury: the protection of crops—the economic mainspring of life—and the protection of the teeming small creatures that some *Pācittiyas* also seek to safeguard. One of the results of this anxiety not to harm vegetable or animal life, and which sometimes received an impetus from the criticisms the laity made, was the allowance given monks and nuns to enter on the rains, followed by an attempt to immobilise them during this season. But restrictions such as this latter were at variance with the immense vitality the Orders possessed, as is shown by the numerous occasions when it is deemed not only permissible but desirable for monks to leave the rains-residence on various kinds of monastic business or on compassionate missions. Even as life must go on, so the Order's business must go on. And the life of this smaller world within the larger one could not close down entirely for a third of each year¹; monks were too much involved with the world outside, they were dependent on it (BD.3.10-BD.3.11.4), and had commitments towards it, and their lives were too much interlocked with those of the laity to make

BD.4.xvii

¹ The rains lasted for four months. Each monk could choose whether he would observe the first three months or the second three months, but he was not expected to observe all four.

this feasible. A compromise had therefore to be found between, on the one hand, staying in a residence for the whole of the three months of the rains, whereby the minimum of harm would be brought to the crops and the life of minute creatures, and, on the other, leaving the residence for business which might reasonably be regarded as urgent. This compromise was effected by limiting the time of absence to seven days; and the business calling for a monk's presence being carefully defined, if he could not transact it within this time, he should not undertake it at all.

The end of the rains was marked by two ceremonies. One of these was the Pavāraṇā, when monks invited one another to speak of offences they had seen, heard or suspected to have been committed during the rains. The recital of the Pātimokkha was to "remove" offences, by confessing them, during the nine dry months of the year; the Invitation was to remove any offences that monks had committed during the three wet months, and would help them to aim at grasping discipline (Kd.4.1.13).

The other ceremony held at the end of the rains was not disciplinary in nature or connected with the confession of offences. It was for the making up of the *kaṭhina* cloth, or cotton cloth that had accrued by way of gift to the monks, into robes to replace those that had become thin and shabby or spoiled by the rains (Kd.7). Thus the replenishment of robe-material comes under consideration, and had to be managed in an orderly and prescribed way.

Further, various officers were created for looking after robe-material: the acceptor, the guardian, the distributor; places suitable for store-rooms are prescribed: dyes and methods of dyeing laid down; the use of three robes only (one doubled however) allowed; while the kinds of medicine monks might take are discussed in considerable detail. The kinds of shoes and sandals they might wear, and the use they might make of animals' skins are treated with equal precision. Both of these categories no doubt spring from the desire not to take life, however infinitesimal. Wooden shoes, or clogs, are objected to because if monks wore them and stepped on insects they might kill them (Kd.5.6.3), besides disturbing monks who were meditating. Further, sandals made of young palmyra palms and young bamboos came to be forbidden after people had complained to monks that, in cutting these

down, they were destroying life that was one-facultied. Other complaints must also have tended to reduce the slaughter of animals. Rugs—or garments (Kd.8.28.2)—made of black antelope skin were forbidden to monks and also sheets made of the hide of the *Kadali* deer (Kd.5.10.4), and it became an offence of wrong-doing to recline upon the hides of lions, tigers and leopards (Kd.5.10.6) or of smaller animals. Cowhides were forbidden because scandalised monks found that one of their number had incited a depraved lay follower to kill a calf for his benefit, and they remembered that Gotama had condemned “onslaught on creatures”. But, at the end of Kd.5, an exception is made in favour of the border districts (Kd.5.13.13) where, because of the hardships and discomfort, the hides of sheep, goats and deer were allowed to be used as coverings.

The last two Sections of the Mahāvagga point to an Order that was indubitably growing and that, in order to meet this expansion, had to be carefully controlled. Kd.9 engages on a thorough discussion of what it is that constitutes valid as against invalid formal acts that an Order can carry out. In the first place an Order to carry out a legally valid formal act must be complete; those monks not able to be present because of illness must send their leave for absence, and those who are present must not protest against the proceedings. A “complete Order” also refers, as before, to the one residing within a determined boundary. The actions and business of every such Order must be transacted on a uniform pattern, and conform to one uniform standard, so that each Order transacts its business in the same way as every other, all following the same regulations. This must therefore be done, in the second place, *dhammena*, rightly, properly, by rule. To carry out a formal act *dhammena*, by rule, means that if it is to be carried out by a motion and one resolution, *ñattidutiya*, the motion must be put and the resolution proposed once only. But if it is to be carried out by a motion and a resolution put three times, *ñatticatuttha*, then this must be done, in all cases the motion being put before the resolution is proclaimed. The formal act will then be irreversible, fit to stand, and protests against its validity of no avail. Immense pains are taken to distinguish a formal act carried out in a complete assembly and by rule from one carried out in an incomplete assembly and either by what has the appearance of rule or not

by rule. The formal acts under the jurisdiction of an Order number sixteen. They comprise (Kd.9.4.1): invitation, rehabilitation, ordination, but only an Order consisting of twenty monks or more can carry out all of these. They also include verdicts of innocence, of past insanity, specific depravity, formal acts of suspension for not seeing an offence, for not making amends for it, for not giving up a wrong view; and of banishment, censure, placing under guidance, reconciliation, sending one who merits probation back to the beginning, and the imposing of *mānatta* (two features in the penalty for *Saṅghādisesa* offences). When circumstances justify, these formal acts may be revoked by the Order.

Finally, the tenth and last Section strikes a different note again by promulgating regulations and advice for allaying schisms. These might arise through genuine disagreement upon what constituted an offence and what did not, or upon the particular kind of offence incurred by a particular action; or when factions formed to support a monk or monks who had quarrelled with their fellows from other causes, among which must be included the positive wish to create a schism, a wish put into practice by, for example, suspending a monk for an offence he had not committed and that he therefore refused to see as an offence of his. On one such an occasion Gotama is reputed to have tried, unsuccessfully, to make the bickering monks compose their differences by telling them a Jātaka story illustrating the conquest of wrath by non-wrath (Kd.10.2). The Mahāvagga therefore contains *dhamma* or doctrine as well as discipline. Indeed the latter would be nugatory if it were not based on the former and promulgated in conjunction with it. How great is the contrast between the quarrelsome monks of Kosambī whose brawls and dissensions caused Gotama to seek solitude like the great bull-elephant who was beset and annoyed by the rest of the herd (Kd.10.4.6), and the peaceable monks, Anuruddha, Nandiya and Kimbila who lived harmoniously together as milk and water blend, regarding one another with the eye of affection, full of amity in gesture, speech and thought surrendering their minds to each other and so, although having different bodies, having only one mind *nāna hi kho no kāyā ekañ ca pana maññe cittaṃ*, (Kd.10.4.3-Kd.10.4.4).

BD.4.xx

The Mahāvagga deals with a time when, at the beginning of Gotama's

ministry, the number of monks—and nuns too—was fast increasing, and when they, travelling to more distant parts of India, bore the new doctrine with them and so started the influx of members that has gone on until today. If the geographical expansion of the Order can be gauged by the relaxations in the rules for the outlying districts or border countries, made necessary by the conditions prevailing there, harder than those of the Middle Country where otherwise the scene is laid—principally at Rājagaha, also at Sāvattī, Vesālī, Kapilavatthu and other neighbouring places—its numerical expansion can equally well be gauged by the awareness of schisms arising to the danger and detriment of the Order, and which could only have occurred some time after its formation.

Although the beginning of the Mahāvagga gives not only an impression but an account of an Order expanding and taking shape immediately after its inception, the remainder appears to refer to a time when the Order already had a considerable amount of history behind it, and to a time therefore when many rules had been laid down and when, in spite of attempted schisms, a certain amount of stability had been achieved in the matter of the Order's government and legislation. This may to some extent be judged, for example, by the number of times, thirteen in all, that the phrase *yathādhammo kāretabbo*, should be dealt with according to the rule, occurs. The rule referred to will in each case be found complete with the penalty incurred for infringing it, in the Vibhaṅgas. That the use of this phrase assumes the prior existence of the rule is confirmed, in addition, by the fact that the material contained in the Mahāvagga is placed in the palm-leaf manuscripts after the Maha- (or Bhikkhu-) and Bhikkhuni-Vibhaṅgas. Although this sequence is not followed by Oldenberg in his edition of the *Vinaya Piṭakam*, it is that rightly adopted in the *Vinaya Texts*, for here the Vibhaṅga for monks, although drastically curtailed precedes the Mahāvagga—that for nuns being omitted entirely.

BD.4.xxi

The question then arises why, in the middle of the Vinaya, an account is incorporated “of the very first events in the history of the Saṅgha” (*Vinaya Texts* i.72, note). Rhys Davids and Oldenberg think it “natural” to connect “the stories or legends concerning the ordination of bhikkhus” with these early events because, so they argue, “it was impossible to realise the idea of

a Saṅgha without rules showing who was to be regarded as a duly admitted member of the fraternity, and who was not". I agree that this provides a good reason for prefacing the record of the development of the first and most vital step in a monk's life by a short history of how there came to be a life for monks at all. From their admission and ordination, all the rest follows. At the same time many stories are interspersed throughout the whole of the Vinaya, excepting the Parivāra. Not only are there several in the Mahāvagga itself, for example about Ambapālī and the Licchavis, about Jīvaka Komārabhacca, Visākhā, Meṇḍaka, Dīghāvu, and about Pilindavaccha, and about the boy Upālī (both told elsewhere in the Vinaya), and countless shorter ones, but every rule in the Vibhaṅgas is introduced by some story, long or short, as the case may be. This being so, it seems not only "natural" but logical to introduce the rules governing the initial and most important step in a monk's life by an account of the first events which occurred after the supreme moment when Gotama attained full self-awakening. Since this was the initial and most important step in a Buddha's career, to recount it was therefore the greatest of all stories a Buddhist "book" could tell.

The Mahāvagga possibly derives its name from that of its first Section, the Mahākhandhaka, the Great (or Greater) Section because it deals with great (or greater) events. The plan of naming a Division after its first Section, or a Section after its first chapter, is of fairly common occurrence in the Piṭakas, and was perhaps adopted here. On the other hand, it might be conceded that the Mahāvagga, including as it does matter concerned with admission and ordination, with the *Uposatha*, *Pātimokkha*, *Pavāraṇā* and *Kaṭhina* ceremonies, the clarification of what are valid formal acts, and the ways of dealing with a schism, contains subjects exceeding in importance those contained in the Cūḷavagga. It is again possible that the Cūḷavagga was regarded as the "Less" or "Lesser" or the Small Division because of its two Sections on the Councils of Rājagaha and Vesālī. As the first of these purports to have been convened shortly after Gotama had died, and the second a century later, the Cūḷavagga takes us to a time when he, as the living fount of authority, was no longer promulgating discipline, and when discipline was no longer growing.

Yet the mass of the rules attributed to him and held to have been laid

down by him when he was alive, many large in their scope, others concerned with small details, but having their own significance nonetheless, together yield a formidable body of that discipline, *vinaya*, which with *dhamma*, was to be the teacher after Gotama had passed away. The text at DN.ii.154 is I think sufficiently clear in its meaning, although it has been accused of gloss. It reads *yo vo Ānanda mayā dhammo ca vinayo ca desito paññatto so vo mam' accayena satthā*. Gotama was speaking to Ānanda, a monk; he would not therefore have omitted to speak of *vinaya* which, together with *dhamma*, gives a surer basis for progress towards the final vision and ultimate bliss than *dhamma* alone can give. Had the sentence run: *yo vo mayā dhammo ca desito vinayo ca paññatto*, it might have been more apparent that the reference of the following *so* was to both *dhamma* and *vinaya*. *Dhamma* is taught, *desita*, showing the Way; *vinaya* is laid down, *paññatta*, for keeping one's footsteps on the Way by strict adherence to it. Both are *satthu sāsanaṃ*, the Teacher's instruction.

Discipline, as promulgated, is itself an authority. According to the early editors (Vin.1.99) the teaching will stand firm so long as *vinaya* is not lost even if the Suttanta (Piṭaka) and the Abhidhamma be forgotten. It is moreover capable of almost indefinite extension and application, and can regulate items of behaviour that, in spite of the multitude of rules, offences and "allowances" (*anujānāmi*) that were laid down by the Teacher, were not legislated for in particular in his lifetime. The monk must make up his mind about what has not been legislated for, measuring any course of action by the general standard of what he knows to be discipline. He must remember this and apply it to his problem. When Mahāpajāpatī asked to be taught *dhamma* in brief (Vin.2.258) a general standard was given to her by which she might know of other things *eso dhammo eso vinayo etaṃ satthu sāsanaṃ* (this is *dhamma*, this is discipline, this is the Teacher's instruction). Similarly in the Mahāvagga, when some monks were doubtful or had scruples about what had been allowed, *anuññata*, and what had not, they were told that anything not fitting in with what had been allowed, anything tallying with what had not been allowed, was not allowable, *na kappati*, not suitable; and the contrary.

In the Mahāvagga alone there are about 280 occasions when Gotama,

by uttering the word *anujānāmi*, I allow, I permit, made some thing or some usage permissible to monks. The variety of cases covered is so large, ranging as it does from accepting a monastery to the preparation of a foot-salve, from using three robes to the insertion of a patch, from the novices training in ten rules to the use of a trough for dye, that anyone acquainted with these would stand a good chance of knowing how to act in circumstances not specifically either allowed or objected to by Gotama. Or they could extend an “allowance” to suit circumstances beyond those legislated for. Gotama himself, as recorded, once gave a flint in this direction when, after making ten “allowances” for curing a boil a monk was suffering from, finally said, “I allow, monks, a linen bandage, and every treatment for curing a sore” (BD.6.14.4–BD.1.14.5).

Besides the use of *anujānāmi*, the Buddha is often represented as saying to monks, “you may” or “you should not”, a prohibition apt to be followed by intimating that contravention results in an offence of wrong-doing. This kind of offence, with *thullaccaya*, grave offences, mentioned infrequently in this volume, and three other types of offence, not mentioned here at all, are regarded as a “falling away from right habits” (Kd.4.16.12).

Whether Gotama himself was responsible for all these allowances and prohibitions we shall probably never know. In the story of the three monks who had spent the rains at Rājagaha and who journeyed to Pāṭaliputta to ask elders residing there to solve their problem there is a hint that power might be delegated (Kd.8.24.6). This story may, however, be included in the Mahāvagga for the simple reason that it was recording exceptional events. Or it may have been left in because in fact the practice of turning to others instead of to Gotama to interpret *dhamma*, a rule, was becoming more generally adopted than is evident in the rest of the Mahāvagga.

BD.4.xxiv

It is true that there is not much philosophy in the Vinaya. It is by nature as by name a book or basket of discipline. But as it is rather hollow to lay down rules for training and for outward behaviour without giving the underlying reasons why they should be observed, it is not possible to exclude philosophical concepts completely from a “book” principally concerned with discipline. I have already mentioned some of these philosophical concepts (above, BD.4.viii). The Mahāvagga, especially at its beginning, is not

in fact devoid of some of the notions which are recognised features in Buddhist philosophy. In the first place, to mention but a few examples, the goal is spoken of and is named. It is *amata*, deathlessness, the undying. Its gates have been opened by Gotama, the Way-finder, so that those who hear *dhamma* may arrive at the object of their quest. The notion of gaining the goal by travelling on a Way between two opposites is common to many traditions and in Pali Buddhism finds expression in the First Utterance, but which is merely one example among several the Pali canon contains of the philosophical rightness of adopting the mean between two opposing extremes. The First Sermon also defines the four truths of ill, or the unsatisfactoriness and suffering which possesses every compounded thing. It is because these truths are not understood or grasped that there is this long long faring-on (in *saṃsāra*) “both for me and for you” (Vin.1.230). Ill has to be eradicated by cutting off its root, ignorant craving, before recurrent birth, again-becoming, *punabbhava*, can be stopped, and deathlessness won.

Then, the young men are told, in a passage that with the passing of time has become controversial, that they should seek, *gaveseyyātha*, the self, *attānam* (singular). Anyone acquainted with the importance of Atman, self, in the Upaniṣads might be inclined to think that this was the greatest of all philosophical concepts in Ancient India. Various passages in the Pali canon, including the Attavagga of the *Dhammapada*, should not be ignored in estimating the position of it as a philosophical concept in Early Buddhism. The Second Utterance, for example, lays the idea of self beside that of not-self when it says in its opening words: *rūpaṃ bhikkhave anattā, rūpaṃ ca h’idam bhikkhave attā abhaviṣṣa*, “material shape (or body), monks, is not self, for if, monks, material shape had been self ...” and similarly of the four other *khandhas*: if they had been self they would not be as we know them: impermanent, suffering and liable to alteration. Everything that is compounded or constructed is not-self. What is constructed is to be escaped from (Ud.p.80); and the self is to be sought (Vin.1.23), that self which therefore by inference is not made, is not compounded, and which is unaffected by *kamma*, the deeds or actions done in a series of individual lives while the being is bound to *saṃsāra*, *satto saṃsāraṃ āpādi* (Sn.i.38).

The message of the Third Utterance is that if one turns away from feelings of pleasure and pain derived from the impingement of the sixfold sensory data on their appropriate sense-organs, then one knows that one is freed and comprehends that birth (rebirth) is destroyed, the walk to the Highest is brought to a close, done is what was to be done, and there is now no more of being this or that ([Vin.1.34-35](#)). The content of this Disquisition on Burning is purely philosophical.

Nor will the various allusions to cause and dependent origination be missed. The whole system was based on cause: if this comes to be that will come to be. Discipline therefore will lead to something not yet existing for the man who is earnestly training in it and cultivating it. The Buddha would not have spent so much time in laying down rules and precepts unless he had thought they would be effective in the quest for the goal.

At the top of each right hand page the chapter number and paragraph number of each Section are given.¹ The figures in heavy type in square brackets in the body of the text refer to the page numbers of Oldenberg's *Vinaya Piṭakam*, Volume I, and are placed so as to mark the end of each such page.

I gratefully acknowledge the care and attention given by the Burleigh Press to the production of this volume.

I.B. HORNER.

London, February, 1951.

¹ Note by Sujato: These remarks do not apply to the SuttaCentral edition.

1. GOING FORTH (PABBAJJĀ)

Praise to the Lord, the Perfected One, the Fully Self-Awakened One

ON AWAKENING

Kd.1.1.1

Vin.1.1

BD.4.1

At one time¹ the awakened one, the Lord, being recently fully awakened, was staying at Uruvelā on the bank of the river Nerañjarā at the foot of the Tree of Awakening.² Then the Lord sat cross-legged in one (posture)³ for seven days at the foot of the Tree of Awakening⁴ experiencing the bliss of freedom.⁵

Kd.1.1.2

Then the Lord during the first watch of the night paid attention to⁶ causal uprising in direct and reverse order: conditioned by ignorance⁷ are the habitual tendencies⁸; conditioned by the habitual tendencies is consciousness⁹; conditioned by consciousness is psycho-physicality¹⁰; conditioned by psycho-physicality are the six (sense-) spheres; conditioned by the six (sense-) spheres is awareness¹¹; conditioned by awareness is feel-

¹ From here to the end of Kd.1.2.3 cf. Ud.p.1. I largely follow translation at *Verses of Uplift*, which also see for notes. ² *bodhirukkha* is the Bo-tree, *ficus religiosa*. Vin-a.952 says “*bodhi* is knowledge of the four ways; the lord attained that awakening here, so the tree acquired the name of the tree of awakening.” Cf. MN-a.iii.326 and MN-a.i.54. ³ *eka-pallaṅkena*. ⁴ *bodhirukkhamūle*; cf. *bodhiyā mūle* at Ps.i.174=Mnd.458; and *bodhimūle* at Snp-a.32, Snp-a.391. ⁵ *vimuttisukha*. ⁶ *manasākāsi*, worked with the mind. ⁷ The “causal chain” occurs, with explanations of its terms, at SN.ii.1ff. See also MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.76ff. ⁸ *sankhāra*. ⁹ *viññāṇa*. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.77, p.150; *Indian Religion and Survival*, p.66; *Original Gospel*, p.63, p.112, p.114; *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii, 2nd edition, Preface, p.ix for the view that *viññāṇa* has a meaning of “man as surviving.” ¹⁰ *nāmarūpa*, name and shape. ¹¹ *phassa*, perhaps contact. It is the known or realised impingement of a sense-datum on its appropriate sense-organ.

ing; conditioned by feeling¹ is craving; conditioned by craving is grasping; conditioned by grasping is becoming; conditioned by becoming is birth; conditioned by birth, old age and dying, grief, sorrow and lamentation, suffering, dejection and despair come into being.

BD.4.2

Such is the arising of this entire mass of ill. But from the utter fading away and stopping of this very ignorance (comes) the stopping of habitual tendencies; from the stopping of habitual tendencies the stopping of consciousness; from the stopping of consciousness² the stopping of psycho-physicality; from the stopping of psycho-physicality the stopping of the six (sense-) spheres; from the stopping of the six (sense-) spheres the stopping of awareness; from the stopping of awareness the stopping of feeling; from the stopping of feeling the stopping of craving; from the stopping of craving the stopping of grasping; from the stopping of grasping the stopping of becoming; from the stopping of becoming the stopping of birth; from the stopping of birth, old age and dying, grief, sorrow and lamentation, suffering, dejection and despair are stopped. Such is the stopping of this entire mass of ill.

Vin.1.2

Kd.1.1.3

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this (solemn) utterance:

“Truly, when things³ grow plain
to the ardent meditating brahmin,
His doubts all vanish
in that he comprehends thing-with-cause.”

Kd.1.1.4

Then the Lord during the middle watch of the night paid attention to causal uprising in direct and reverse order: conditioned by ignorance are the habitual tendencies; conditioned by the habitual tendencies is consciousness ... Such is the arising ... Such is the stopping of this entire mass of ill.

Kd.1.1.5

¹ From here to “dejection and despair come into being”, cf. DN.i.45. ² From here to the end of the paragraph cf. DN.ii.35. ³ *dhammā*. According to Vin-a.954-5 the (thirty-seven) things helpful to awakening and the four *ariyan* true things. These last are not necessarily the four truths of ill, for see AN.v.56 (the four stations of mindfulness) and *Minor Anthologies* 1, Introduction, p.2ff. But see also *Points of Controversy*, p.118, n.1. This verse and the two following occur at Kv.186.

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this (solemn) utterance:

“Truly, when things grow plain
to the ardent meditating brahmin,
His doubts all vanish
in that he discerns destruction of cause.”

Kd.1.1.6

BD.4.3

Then the Lord during the last watch of the night paid attention to causal uprising in direct and reverse order: conditioned by ignorance are the habitual tendencies; conditioned by the habitual tendencies is consciousness ... Such is the arising ... Such is the stopping of this entire mass of ill.

Kd.1.1.7

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this (solemn) utterance:

“Truly, when things grow plain
to the ardent meditating brahmin,
Routing the host of Māra does he stand
Like as the sun when lighting up the sky.”

*Told is the Talk on Awakening.*¹

AT THE GOATHERDS' BANYAN TREE

Kd.1.2.1

Then the Lord, having emerged from that contemplation at the end of seven days, approached the Goatherds' Banyan² from the foot of the Tree of Awakening; having approached, he sat cross-legged in one (posture) for seven days at the foot of the Goatherds' Banyan experiencing the bliss of freedom.

Kd.1.2.2

Then a certain brahmin of the class uttering the sound *hum*³ approached the Lord; having approached, he exchanged greetings with the Lord; having

¹ This is probably an abbreviation for “Told is the Talk at the Tree of Awakening”: see titles of 2, 3 and 4. ² Although Ud-a.51 gives two more possible explanations for this name than Vin-a.957, both agree that goatherds used to come and sit in the shade of this tree.

³ *huhunīkajātiko brāhmaṇo*. See Journal of the Pali Text Society, 1901, p.42, and *Verses of Uplift*, p.3, n. Vin-a.957 calls him one who believes in omens that are seen, *ditṭhamangalika*, and who walks about making: (the sound) *hum* from arrogance and in anger.

exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, that brahmin spoke thus to the Lord: “To what extent, good Gotama, does one become a brahmin? And again, what are the things which make a brahmin¹?”

Vin.1.3

Kd.1.2.3

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this (solemn) utterance:

BD.4.4

“That brahmin who bars out evil things,
not uttering the sound *hum*²,
with no impurity, curbed-of-self,
Master of Vedas³, who lives the Brahma-faring—
this is the brahmin who may rightly speak the Brahma-speech⁴
Who has no blemishes⁵ anywhere in the world⁶.”

Told is the Talk at the Goatherds’

ON MUCALINDA

Kd.1.3.1

Then the Lord, at the end of seven days, having emerged from that contemplation, approached the Mucalinda (tree) from the foot of the Goatherds’ Banyan; having approached, he sat cross-legged in one (posture) for seven days at the foot of the Mucalinda experiencing the bliss of freedom.

Kd.1.3.2

¹ *brāhmaṇa-karaṇā*. Ud.3 reads *-kārakā*. ² *nihuhuṅka*. He is to give up having confidence in his superstitious omens and formulæ, and to believe instead in the new teaching. “Brahmin” came to mean, in this, the best and highest kind of man. ³ *vedāntagū*, as at Snp.463. Vin-a.958 says there has been a going either to the end by means of the “lores” (*vedas*, those called the knowledge of the four ways, or to the end of the three Vedas. ⁴ *dhammena so brāhmaṇo brahmāvādāṃ vadeyya*. Vin-a.958=Ud-a.55 take this to mean he can rightly say “I am a brahmin”. MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.85, translates *brahmavāda* by “Brahma-faith”, with a note, p.84, that *vāda* is equally to be rendered by -cult or -teaching. ⁵ *ussāda*, prominence, excrescence; conceit, arrogance. Vin-a.958=Ud-a.55 give five: passion, hatred, stupidity, pride, false view. Snp-a.ii.521 gives seven, enumerated at Snp-a.ii.425 as the five of Vin-a and Ud-a. With the addition of the obstructions and wrong conduct. See my *Early Buddhist Theory of Man Perfected*, p.262 and p.265, n.2. ⁶ This verse occurs at Ud.p.3, Ne.150. Last line = last line of Snp.783.

Now at that time¹ a great storm arose out of due season, for seven days there was rainy weather, cold winds and overcast skies. Then Mucalinda, the serpent king, having come forth from his own haunt, having encircled the Lord's body seven times with his coils, having spread a great hood over his head, stood saying: "Let no cold (annoy) the Lord, let no heat (annoy) the Lord, let not the touch of flies, mosquitoes, wind and heat or creeping things (annoy) the Lord."

Kd.1.3.3

Then Mucalinda, the serpent king, at the end of those² seven days, having known that the sky³ was clear and without a cloud, having unwound his coils from the Lord's body, having given up his own form and assumed a youth's form, stood in front of the Lord honouring the Lord with joined palms.

Kd.1.3.4

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this (solemn) utterance:

BD.4.5

"Happy his solitude who glad at heart
Hath *dhamma* learnt and doth the vision see!
Happy is that benignity towards
The world which on no creature worketh harm.

Happy the absence of all lust, th' ascent
Past and beyond the needs of sense-desires.
He who doth crush the great 'I am' conceit—
This, truly this, is happiness supreme."

Told is the Talk at the Mucalinda

AT THE RĀJĀYATANA TREE

Kd.1.4.1

Then the Lord, at the end of seven days, having emerged from that contemplation, approached the Rājāyatana⁴ from the foot of the Mucalinda; having

¹ Kd.1.2.3 to Kd.1.2.5=Ud.2.1, Mucalindavagga; verses quoted Kv.212, see *Points of Controversy*, 129, n.3 for further references. ² *tassa*, omitted at Vin.1.3, but found at Ud.10. ³ *deva*.

⁴ Name of a tree. Called by MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.80, "Kingstead tree." See *Vinaya Texts*, i.81, note.

approached, he sat cross-legged in one (posture) for seven days at the foot of the Rājāyatana experiencing the bliss of freedom.

Kd.1.4.2

Now at that time¹ the merchants Tapussa² and Bhallika were going along the high-road from Ukkalā to that district.³ Then a *devatā* who was a blood-relation of the merchants Tapussa and Bhallika spoke thus to the merchants Tapussa and Bhallika: “My good fellows, this Lord, having just (become) wholly awakened, is staying at the foot of the Rājāyatana, go and serve that Lord with barley-gruel⁴ and honey-balls, and this will be a blessing and happiness for you for a long time.”

Vin.1.4

Then the merchants Tapussa and Bhallika, taking barley-gruel and honey-balls, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they stood at a respectful distance. As they were standing at a respectful distance, the merchants Tapussa and Bhallika spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, let the Lord receive our barley-gruel and honey-balls, that this may be a blessing and happiness for us for a long time.”

Kd.1.4.3

Then it occurred to the Lord: “Truth-finders⁵ do not receive with their hands. Now with what shall I receive the barley-gruel and honey-balls?” Then the four Great Kings, knowing with their minds the reasoning in the Lord’s mind, from the four quarters presented the Lord with four bowls made of rock crystal, saying: “Lord, let the Lord receive the barley-gruel and honey-balls herein.” The Lord received the barley-gruel and the honey-balls in a new⁶ bowl made of rock crystal, and having received them he partook of them.

Kd.1.4.4

BD.4.6

Then the merchants Tapussa and Bhallika, having found that the Lord had removed his hand from the bowl, having inclined their heads towards the Lord’s feet, spoke thus to the Lord: “We, Lord, are those going to the Lord for refuge and to *dhamma*; let the Lord accept us as lay-disciples gone

Kd.1.4.5

¹ Cf. Ja.i.80f. ² Chief of the disciples who first came for refuge, AN.i.26; included in a list of eminent householders and *upāsakas* at AN.iii.450–451. Bhalliy(k)a has a verse at Thag.7, while Thag-a.50 gives in outline the story of their ministering to the Lord. ³ According to Vin-a.959, the Middle District (or Country) where the Lord was staying. ⁴ *mantha*, defined at Vin.4.80, see BD.2.324. ⁵ *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* 1.118, n.4, claims that “the first use of the term Tathāgata in the Buddha’s life-history” occurs at MN.i.168. ⁶ *paccagghe*. Vin-a.960 says this usually means very costly; but it can mean, as here, quite new and quite hot (*abbhūṇha*), produced at that very moment.

for refuge for life from this day forth.” Thus these came to be the first lay-disciples in the world using the two-word formula.¹

Told is the Talk at the Rājāyatana

ON THE INVITATION OF BRAHMĀ

Kd.1.5.1

Then the Lord, having emerged from that contemplation at the end of seven days, approached the Goatherds’ Banyan from the foot of the Rājāyatana; having approached, the Lord stayed there at the foot of the Goatherds’ Banyan.

Kd.1.5.2

Then as the Lord was meditating in seclusion a reasoning arose in his mind thus:² “This *dhamma*, won to by me, is deep, difficult to see, difficult to understand, peaceful, excellent, beyond dialectic, subtle, intelligible to the learned.³ But this is a creation delighting in sensual pleasure,⁴ delighted by sensual pleasure, rejoicing in sensual pleasure. So that for a creation delighting in sensual pleasure, delighted by sensual pleasure, rejoicing in sensual pleasure, this were a matter difficult to see, that is to say causal uprising by way of cause. This too were a matter very difficult to see,⁵ that is to say the calming of all the habitual tendencies, the renunciation of all attachment, the destruction of craving, dispassion, stopping, *nibbāna*. And so if I were to teach *dhamma* and others were not to understand me, this would be a weariness to me, this would be a vexation to me.”

Vin.1.5

BD.4.7

Kd.1.5.3

And further, these verses not heard before in the past occurred spontaneously to the Lord:

“This that through many toils I’ve won—
Enough! Why should I make it known?
By folk with lust and hate consumed

¹ *dvevācīkā*, i.e. *bhagavā* (and not, as at some time became usual, *buddha*) and *dhamma*, there being at that time no *saṅgha*. ² For the Great Hesitation, cf. SN.i.136, DN.ii.36, MN.i.167, and see KS.i.171, *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.29f. and *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.118 for notes. See also MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.73ff. ³ Quoted at Bv-a.9. ⁴ *ālaya*, what is clung to, “habit.” But Vin-a.961 = MN-a.ii.174 explain by the five strands of sense-pleasure. ⁵ *suddasa*, as at Dh.36.

This *dhamma* is not understood.¹

Leading on against the stream²,
 Subtle, deep, difficult to see, delicate,
 Unseen 'twill be by passion's slaves
 Cloaked in the murk of ignorance."³

In such wise, as the Lord pondered, his mind inclined to little effort⁴ and not to teaching *dhamma*. Then it occurred to Brahmā Sahampati,⁵ knowing with his mind the reasoning in the Lord's mind: "Alas,⁶ the world is lost,⁷ alas, the world is destroyed, inasmuch as the mind of the Truth-finder, the perfected one, the fully awakened one, inclines to little effort and not to teaching *dhamma*."

Kd.1.5.4

Then as a strong man might stretch forth his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so did Brahmā Sahampati, vanishing from the Brahma-world, become manifest before the Lord.⁸

Kd.1.5.5

Then Brahmā Sahampati, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having stooped his right knee to the ground having saluted the Lord with joined palms, spoke thus to the Lord: "Lord, let the Lord teach *dhamma*, let the Well-farer teach *dhamma*; there are beings with little dust in their eyes who, not hearing *dhamma*, are decaying, (but if) they are learners of *dhamma*, they will grow."⁹

Kd.1.5.6

BD.4.8

¹ Cf. Snp.764. ² *paṭisotagāmin*, against the stream up to the source (*nibbāna*), not with the stream, for that leads to dangerous whirlpools and waves in a pool (here in an unfavourable sense) lower down. Vin-a.962 says that *paṭisota* is called *nibbāna*. A stream can be a River of Life or a River of Death, according as to whether one goes against the current, striving with hands and feet, or with the current. Cf. LAMOTTE, Vol. I, p.59, n.1. ³ This translation follows that at *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.30, with the important exception that *paṭisotagāmin* is not "against the stream of common thought." Verse also found at MN.i.168, DN.ii.38, SN.i.136; Mahāvastu iii.314, *Lalitavistara*, edited LEFMANN, p.397. ⁴ *appossukkatā*, indifference, "rest quiet" (*Further Dialogues of the Buddha*, i.118), "to be averse from exertion" (KS.i.173), "to remain quiet" (*Vinaya Texts*, i.85). ⁵ A Great Brahmā. ⁶ *vata bho*. ⁷ Quoted Bv-a.10. ⁸ For this paragraph and the beginning of the next, see AN.ii.21, ⁹ Quoted Bv-a.10. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii, 2nd edition, Preface, xii. Also her Note to *Gotama the Man* (added in 1938) where she says, "The only rational translation (of *aññātāro bhavissanti*) is that 'they who come to know (i.e. the *dhamma* you should teach), will come to be, will become, that is will grow. Thus rendered the last clause balances the opposed clause, that men are in a decline."

Kd.1.5.7

Thus spoke Brahmā Sahampati; having said this, he further spoke thus:¹

“There has appeared in Magadha before thee
An unclean *dhamma* by impure minds devised.
Open this door of deathlessness, let² them hear
Dhamma awakened to by the stainless one.

“As on a crag on crest of mountain standing
A man might watch the people far below,
E’en so do thou, O Wisdom fair, ascending,
O Seer of all, the terraced heights of truth,³
Look down, from grief released, upon the peoples
Sunken in grief, oppressed with birth and age.

“Arise, thou hero! Conqueror in the battle!
Thou freed from debt! Man of the caravan!
Walk the world over, let the Blessed One
Teach *dhamma*. They who learn will grow.”⁴

When he had spoken thus, the Lord spoke thus to Brahmā Sahampati:
“Brahmā, it occurred to me: ‘This *dhamma* penetrated by me is deep ... that
would be a vexation to me.’ And further, Brahmā, these verses not heard
before in the past occurred spontaneously to me: ‘This that through many
toils I’ve won ... cloaked in the murk of ignorance.’ In such wise, Brahmā, as
I pondered, my mind inclined to little effort and not to teaching *dhamma*.”

Then a second time did Brahmā Sahampati speak thus to the Lord: “Lord,
let the Lord teach *dhamma* ... if they are learners of *dhamma*, they will grow.”
Then a second time did the Lord speak thus to Brahmā Sahampati: “But,
Brahmā, it occurred to me: ... my mind inclined to little effort and and not
to teaching *dhamma*.”

Then a third time did Brahmā Sahampati speak thus to the Lord: “Lord,
let the Lord teach *dhamma* ... if they are learners of *dhamma*, they will

¹ As at MN.i.168, SN.i.137; quoted Bv-a.10. For references to parallel Sanskrit, Chinese and Tibetan Texts, see LAMOTTE, *Traité de la Grande Veriu de Sagesse*, vol.1, p.57, n.1. ² To end of this verse = Snp.384. ³ *dhammamaya pāsāda*; cf. *paññāpāsāda* at Dh.p.28. ⁴ Second part of verses taken from MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.82. The Dīgha version omits the first four lines. Last four lines at SN.i.234.

grow.” Then the Lord, having understood Brahmā’s entreaty and, out of compassion for beings, surveyed the world with the eye of an awakened one. As the Lord was surveying the world with the eye of an awakened one, he saw beings with little dust in their eyes, with much dust in their eyes, with acute faculties, with dull faculties, of good dispositions, of bad dispositions, docile, indocile, few seeing fear in sins and the worlds beyond.¹

Kd.1.5.11

Even as in² a pond of blue lotuses or in a pond of red lotuses or in a pond of white lotuses, a few blue or red or white lotuses are born in the water, grow in the water, do not rise above the water but thrive while altogether immersed; a few blue or red or white lotuses are born in the water, grow in the water and reach to the surface of the water; a few blue or red or white lotuses are born in the water, grow in the water, and stand up rising out of the water, undefiled by the water.

Kd.1.1.12

Even so, did the Lord, surveying the world with the eye of an awakened one, see beings with little dust in their eyes, with much dust in their eyes, with acute faculties, with dull faculties, of good dispositions, of bad dispositions, docile, indocile, few seeing fear in sins and the worlds beyond. Seeing Brahmā Sahampati, he addressed him with verses:

Vin.1.7

“Open for those who hear are the doors of deathlessness³;
let them renounce their faith⁴.

Thinking of useless fatigue, I have not preached, Brahmā, the
sublime and excellent *dhamma* to men⁵.”

Kd.1.5.13
BD.4.10

Then Brahmā Sahampati, thinking: “The opportunity was made by me for the Lord to teach *dhamma*,”⁶ greeting the Lord, keeping his right side towards him, vanished then and there.⁷

¹ *paralokavajjabhayadassāvino*, Vin-a.963 saying that these are those who see by fear (*bhayato*) the world(s) beyond and sin. ² Cf. DN.i.75, MN.iii.93, SN.i.138. ³ Vin-a.963 calls this “the noble Way”, *ariyamagga*. The “quest” in folklore and in the great religious traditions alike is for immortality, the undying. Early Buddhism is in line with these traditions. ⁴ *saddhā* must refer to their (own, Vin-a.963) present wrong beliefs. ⁵ Verse also at DN.ii.39, MN.i.169, SN.i.138; and cf. Mahāvastu iii.319; Lalitavistara, p.400. See discussion on some of the expressions found in the verse by LAMOTTE, Vol. I, p.60, n.1. ⁶ From the beginning of the verses to here is quoted at Bv-a.18. ⁷ *tatth’eva* can mean “as before”; if it does so here, it would mean by the same method of vanishing from the Brahma-world as in Kd.1.5.5 above.

Told is the Talk on Brahmā's Entreaty

ON THE GROUP OF FIVE

Kd.1.6.1

Then it occurred to the Lord: "Now, to whom should I first teach *dhamma*? Who will understand this *dhamma* quickly?" Then it occurred to the Lord: "Indeed, this Āḷāra the Kālāma¹ is learned, experienced, wise, and for a long time has had little dust in his eyes. Suppose I were to teach *dhamma* first to Āḷāra the Kālāma? He will understand this *dhamma* quickly."

Kd.1.6.2

But then an invisible *devatā* announced to the Lord: "Lord, Āḷāra the Kālāma passed away seven days ago." And the knowledge arose to the Lord that Āḷāra the Kālāma had passed away seven days ago. Then it occurred to the Lord: "Āḷāra the Kālāma was of great intelligence. If he had heard this *dhamma*, he would have understood it quickly."

Kd.1.6.3

Then it occurred to the Lord: "Now, to whom should I first teach *dhamma*? Who will understand this *dhamma* quickly?" Then it occurred to the Lord: "Indeed, this Uddaka, Rāma's son,² is learned, experienced, wise, and for a long time has had little dust in his eyes. Suppose I were to teach *dhamma* first to Uddaka, Rāma's son? He will understand this *dhamma* quickly."

Kd.1.6.4

But then an invisible *devatā* announced to the Lord: "Lord, Uddaka, Rāma's son, passed away last night." And the knowledge arose to the Lord that Uddaka, Rāma's son, had passed away last night. Then it occurred to the Lord: "Uddaka, Rāma's son, was of great intelligence. If he had heard this *dhamma*, he would have understood it quickly."

BD.4.11

Kd.1.6.5

Then it occurred to the Lord: "Now, to whom should I first teach *dhamma*? Who will understand this *dhamma* quickly?" Then it occurred to the Lord:

Vin.1.8

¹ The teacher to whom, according to the biographical record (also preserved in the *Ariya-pariyesanā Sutta*, MN 26.), Gotama first went for instruction after he had gone forth (from home into homelessness). ² According to the same account, the teacher to whom Gotama went next when he had mastered Āḷāra's teaching. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*. 57ff. for some remarks on both these teachers, and E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.184. Mi.236 says that Āḷāra and Uddaka were Gotama's fourth and fifth teachers; and Thig-a.2 that he went first to Bhaggava (not mentioned at Mi.236).

“That group of five monks¹ who waited on me when I was self-resolute in striving² were very helpful. Suppose I were to teach *dhamma* first to the group of five monks?”

Kd.1.6.6

Then it occurred to the Lord: “But where is this group of five monks staying at present?³ Then the Lord with *deva*-vision, purified and surpassing that of men, saw the group of five monks staying near Benares at Isipatana in the deer-park. Then the Lord, having stayed at Uruvelā for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Benares.

Kd.1.6.7

Upaka, a Naked Ascetic,⁴ saw the Lord going along the highroad between Gayā and the (Tree of) Awakening; seeing him, he spoke thus to the Lord: “Your reverence, your sense-organs are quite pure, your complexion very bright, very clear. On account of whom have you, your reverence, gone forth, or who is your teacher, or whose *dhamma* do you profess?”

Kd.1.6.8

When this had been said, the Lord addressed Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, in verses:⁵

“Victorious over all, omniscient am I,
Among all things undefiled,
Leaving all, through death of craving freed,
By knowing for myself, whom should I follow?⁶

“For me there is no teacher,
One like me does not exist,
In the world with its *devas*
No one equals me.⁷

BD.4.12

“For I am perfected in the world,
The teacher supreme am I,⁸
I alone am all-awakened,⁹
Become cool am I, *nibbāna*-attained.

¹ Añña-Koṇḍañña, Bhaddiya, Vappa, Mahānāma, Assaji, as below **BD.6.31ff**. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*; MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, 62f.; and “Unknown Co-founders of Buddhism”, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 1927. ² *padhānapahitattam*. ³ Quoted at Bv-a.18. ⁴ *ājivika*, “man of the livelihood”, *Buddhist India*, p.143. At Divyāvadāna 393 Upaka appears to be called Upaganena. ⁵ Verses also at MN.i.171; quoted at Kv.289; Thig-a.220. ⁶ This verse = Dhp.353. ⁷ This verse is quoted at Mi.235. Cf. also Mahāvastu iii.326. ⁸ Cf. Snp.179. ⁹ Or, “I am unique, the all-awakened.”

“To turn the *dhamma*-wheel
 I go to Kasi’s city,
 Beating the drum of deathlessness
 In a world that’s blind become.”

Kd.1.6.9

“According to what you claim, your reverence, you ought to be¹ victor of the unending²” (Upaka said).

“Like me, they are victors indeed,
 Who have won to destruction of the cankers;
 Vanquished by me are evil things,
 Therefore am I, Upaka, a victor.”³

When this had been said, Upaka, the Naked Ascetic, having said, “It

¹ *arah’asi*, also meaning “you deserve to be, are worthy or fit to be”. There is also the reading *arahā asi*, as at Kv.289, and see *Psalms of the Sisters*, 129f. ² *anantajina*. Vin-a.964 merely says “You are set on becoming a victor of the unending.” *Ananta*, the unending, may refer to *dhamma*, also to *nibbāna*. ³ This verse and Upaka’s remarks are quoted at Kv.289.

may be (so),¹ your reverence,” having shaken his head,² went off taking a different road.

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course approached Benares, the deer-park of Isipatana, the group of five monks. The group of five monks saw the Lord coming in the distance; seeing him, they agreed among themselves, saying: “Your reverences, this recluse Gotama is coming, he lives in abundance, he is wavering in his striving, he has reverted to a life of abundance.³ He should neither be greeted, nor stood up for, nor should his bowl and robe be received; all the same a seat may be put out, he can sit down if he wants to.”

Kd.1.6.10
BD.4.13

Vin.1.9

Kd.1.6.11

But as the Lord gradually approached this group of five monks, so this

¹ *hupeyya*. MN.i.171, Snp-a.258, Thig-a.220 read *huveyya* (which is interchangeable with *hupeyya*). It is a dialectical form of *bhaveyya*. According to B.M. BARUA, *The Ājīvikas*, p.50, it is an expression found in the “Ājīvika language” and “is not a recognised Pali word.” He translates “perhaps it may be so,” Oldenberg “it may be so,” Chalmers, preserving the *patois*, “mebbe” E.J. THOMAS, *The Life of Buddha*, p.83, “would that it might be so”, *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* (under Upaka) “it may be so”; while MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *To Become or not to Become*, p.85, would prefer “may he become”, the “he” referring to the man, every man, to whom Gotama was prepared to teach his message. She suggests that he will have rehearsed this message to Upaka, and maintains that what has survived—“a glaringly imperfect misrepresentation”—makes omission and glossing all but certain. ² I think that as the text stands, had Upaka been convinced or even interested he would not have departed by a different road (*ummagga*, also meaning the wrong road). It is perhaps odd that this episode, if it shows disagreement, is presumed to have occurred at the beginning of Gotama ministry. But it may be included to emphasize his determination to preach first of all to the “five” in accordance with his decision; or to show that Upaka spoke somewhat as a prophet—in the “key”, below, BD.4.127, he is called *Upako isi*, Upaka the seer. According to Thig-a.220f., when Upaka was an old man, tormented by his wife’s gibes, he sought Gotama and went forth into homelessness; he then soon attained the stage of non-returning and died. From this account it does not appear that he had had any great urge earlier to become one of Gotama’s disciples.

In the translation above I have put a slight bias on three words, each of which admits of more than one rendering, so as to mark consistently what seems to me to be Upaka’s apparent failure to be convinced: (1) *arahasi* = (a) you ought to be (slightly contemptuous), (b) you are worthy to be (respectful); (2) *huveyya*, discussed in preceding note; (3) *sisam okampetvā*, having shaken his head. *Okampeti* may mean, according to *Pali-English Dictionary*, both to wag and to shake. Indians shake their heads from side to side to show disagreement, but wag them up and down to show agreement. ³ *bahulla*. As MRS. RHYS DAVIDS observes. *Manual of Buddhism*, 69, this means literally “muchness”, Vin-a.964 taking it to mean abundance of robes, etc.

group of five monks, not adhering to their own agreement, having gone towards the Lord, one received his bowl and robe, one made ready a seat, one brought water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand.¹ The Lord sat down on the seat made ready, and the Lord, while he was sitting down, washed his feet.² Further, they addressed the Lord by name and with the epithet of “your reverence.”³

Kd.1.6.12

When this had been said, the Lord spoke thus to the group of five monks: “Do not, monks, address a Truthfinder by name, and with the epithet ‘your reverence’. A Truthfinder, monks, is a perfected one, a fully awakened one. Give ear, monks, the deathless has been found; *I* instruct, *I* teach *dhamma*. Going along in accordance with what has been enjoined, having soon realised here and now by your own super-knowledge that supreme goal of the Brahma-faring⁴ for the sake of which young men of family rightly go forth from home into homelessness, you will abide in it.”

Kd.1.6.13

BD.4.14

When this had been said, the group of five monks spoke thus to the Lord: “But you, reverend Gotama, did not come to a state of further-men,⁵ to the eminence of truly *ariyan* vision of knowledge, by this conduct, by this course, by this practice of austerities. So how can you now come to a state of further-men, to the eminence of the truly *ariyan* vision of knowledge, when you live in abundance, are wavering in striving, and have reverted to a life of abundance?”

Kd.1.6.14

When this had been said, the Lord spoke thus to the group of five monks: “A Truthfinder, monks, does not live in abundance, he does not waver in striving, he does not revert to a life of abundance. A Truthfinder, monks, is a perfected one, a fully awakened one. Give ear, monks, the deathless has been found; *I* instruct, *I* teach *dhamma*. Going along in accordance with what has been enjoined, having soon realised here and now by your own super-knowledge that supreme goal of the Brahma-faring for the sake of which young men of family rightly go forth from home into homelessness, you will abide in it.”

Kd.1.6.15

And a second time did the group of five monks speak thus to the Lord ... And a second time did the Lord speak thus to the group of five monks ...

¹ Cf. Vin.4.231, Vin.4.310; see BD.3.191. ² As at MN.ii.139. ³ *āvusovādena*. ⁴ At MN.i.197, MN.i.201, this goal is said to be unshakeable freedom of mind. ⁵ Cf. Bu-Pj.4 (and see BD.1, Introduction, p.xxiv).

And a third time did the group of five monks speak thus to the Lord: “But you, reverend Gotama, did not come to a state of further-men ... by this practice of austerities ... to a life of abundance?”

Vin.1.10

When this had been said, the Lord spoke thus to the group of five monks: “Do you allow, monks, that I have never spoken¹ to you like this before?”

Kd.1.6.16

“You have not, Lord.”

“A Truthfinder, monks, is a perfected one, a fully awakened one. Give ear ... you will abide in it.” And the Lord was able to convince the group of five monks.² Then the group of five monks listened to the Lord again, gave ear to him and aroused their minds for profound knowledge.³

Kd.1.6.17

BD.4.15

Then⁴ the Lord addressed the group of five monks, saying: “These⁵ two (dead) ends,⁶ monks, should not be followed by one who has gone forth. Which two? That which is, among sense-pleasures, addiction to attractive sense-pleasures, low, of the villager,⁷ of the average man,⁸ unariyan, not connected with the goal⁹; and that which is addiction to self-torment, ill, unariyan, not connected with the goal. Now, monks, without adopting either of these two (dead) ends, there is a middle course, fully awakened to by the Truthfinder, making for vision,¹⁰ making for knowledge, which conduces to calming,¹¹ to super-knowledge,¹² to awakening,¹³ to *nibbāna*.

Kd.1.6.18

¹ *bhāsitaṃ*. MN.1.172 reads *vabbhācitaṃ*. Vin-a.965 and MN-a.ii.191 explain by *vākyabhedaṃ*.

² From here the Majjhima version diverges. ³ *aññācittaṃ upaṭṭhāpesuṃ*; cf. DN.i.230, DN.1231. ⁴ Cf. SN.v.420. ⁵ See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.109, for a literal translation of the First Utterance, and a discussion of many of its terms; also E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.87. This Utterance given at SN.iv.330, SN.v.420, and the “middle course” part of it at MN.i.15, to whose Commentary (MN-a.i.104f.) Vin-a.965 refers. ⁶ *anta* is end, then contrast, extreme, opposite, side. See *Manual of Buddhism*, p.118, for discussion of the meaning. SN-a.iii.297 explains by *koṭṭhāsā*, parts, divisions. MN-a.i.104 says “the Way does not lead to, does not approach these sides, it is freed from these sides, therefore it is called the middle course.” The “mean” between two extremes also found at SN.ii.17, SN.ii.20, SN.ii.61, SN.iii.135. ⁷ *gammo*. Another debatable term. I follow SN-a.iii.297 (cf. AN-a.iii.360) whose explanation is *gāma-vāsīnaṃ santako*, belonging to village dwellers; meaning I think more “common” than “pagan”, by both of which it has been rendered. “Boorish” would be better. ⁸ *pothujaniko*, ordinary, of the many-folk, the “blind” and fools. ⁹ *anattasamhita*, defined at MN-a.iii.110 as *na vuḍḍhinissita*, not bent on growth. ¹⁰ According to MN-a.i.104 vision of the knowledge of the truths. ¹¹ Of passion, etc., MN-a.1.104, AN-a.iii.360; of the corruptions, SN-a.iii.297. ¹² *abhiññā*, of the four truths, MN-a and SN-a. ¹³ MN-a.i.104 says that awakening is the Way, *sambodho ti maggo*.

“And what, monks, is this middle course fully awakened to by the Truthfinder, making for vision, making for knowledge, which conduces to calming, to super-knowledge, to awakening, to *nibbāna*? It is this *ariyan* eightfold Way itself, that is to say: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right mode of living, right endeavour, right mindfulness, right concentration.¹ This, monks, is the middle course, fully awakened to by the Truthfinder, making for vision, making for knowledge, which conduces to calming, to super-knowledge to awakening, to *nibbāna*.”

BD.4.16

Kd.1.6.19

“And this, monks, is the *ariyan* truth of ill: birth is ill, and old age is ill and disease is ill and dying is ill, association with what is not dear is ill, separation from what is dear is ill, not getting what one wants is ill—in short the five groups of grasping are ill.”

Kd.1.6.20

“And this, monks, is the *ariyan* truth of the uprising of ill:² that which is craving connected with again-becoming, accompanied by delight and passion, finding delight in this and that, that is to say: craving for sense-pleasures, craving for becoming, craving for de-becoming.³”

Kd.1.6.21

“And this, monks, is the *ariyan* truth of the stopping of ill: the utter and passionless stopping of that very craving, its renunciation, surrender, release, the lack of pleasure in it.⁴”

Kd.1.6.22

“And this, monks, is the *ariyan* truth of the course leading to the stopping of ill⁵: this *ariyan* eightfold Way itself, that is to say: right view ... right concentration.”

Vin.1.11

Kd.1.6.23

¹ A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Hinduism and Buddhism*, p.69, uses “composure” for *samādhi*, and elsewhere “synthesis.” MN-a.i.105 gives the interpretations which the Ancients, *porāṇa*, used to put upon the eight “fitnesses” of the Way: “the way of insight is right view, the way of thorough furthering, *abhiniropana*, is right thought, the way of equanimity is right concentration.” The gaps may be filled up from what follows at MN-a.i.105. ² This paragraph is debated at Kv.488–489. ³ *vi-bhava*, meanings ascribed: (1) wealth, property, prosperity; (2) non-becoming, ceasing (although there is the word *a-bhava*); (3) more becoming, more births. *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.214 “annihilation.” See also *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.340, note. I think it means, with *taṇhā*, craving or thirst, the longing for sensations to come and go, rise and fall. LAMOTTE, *Le Traité de la Grande Vertu de Sagesse*, vol.1, p.3, n.4, translates these three cravings (*taṇhā*) as cravings for *plaisir, existence, impermanence*. ⁴ *anālaya*. On *ālaya*, pleasure (clinging, abode, habit) see above, BD.4.6. *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.214 “ejection”, *Dialogues of the Buddha* iii.298 “aversion from.” SN-a.iii.112 defines it in connection with *kāma*. ⁵ The “four truths of ill” are cited at Kv.290.

On thinking, ‘This is the *ariyan* truth of ill’, among things not heard before by me, monks, vision arose, knowledge¹ arose, wisdom² arose, higher knowledge³ arose, light arose. On thinking, ‘Now that which is the *ariyan* truth of ill must be completely known’ ... ‘Now that which is the *ariyan* truth of ill is completely known’, among things not heard before by me, monks, vision arose, knowledge arose, wisdom arose, higher knowledge arose, light arose.

Kd.1.6.24

“On thinking, ‘This is the *ariyan* truth of the uprising of ill’ ... light arose. On thinking, ‘Now that which is this *ariyan* truth of the uprising of ill must be given up’⁴ ... ‘... is given up’ ... light arose.

BD.4.17

Kd.1.6.25

“On thinking, ‘This is the *ariyan* truth of the stopping of ill’ ... light arose. On thinking, ‘Now that which is this *ariyan* truth of the stopping of ill must be realized’ ... ‘... is realised’ ... light arose.

Kd.1.6.26

“On thinking, ‘This is the *ariyan* truth of the course going to the stopping of ill’ ... light arose. On thinking, ‘Now that which is this *ariyan* truth of the course leading to the stopping of ill must be made to become’ ... ‘... is made to become’ ... light arose.

Kd.1.6.27

“And so long, monks, the vision of knowledge of these four *ariyan* truths, with the three sections and twelve modes⁵ as they really are, was not well purified by me, so long was I, monks, not thoroughly awakened with the supreme full awakening as to the world with its *devas*, with its *Māras*, with its *Brahmās*, with its recluses and brahmins, its creatures with *devas* and men. This I knew.

Kd.1.6.28

“But when, monks, the vision of knowledge of these four *ariyan* truths, with the three sections and twelve modes as they really are, was well purified by me, then was I, monks, thoroughly awakened with the supreme full awakening as to the world ... with its recluses and brahmins, its creatures with *devas* and men. This I knew.

Kd.1.6.29

“Moreover, the vision of knowledge arose in me: ‘Freedom of mind is for me unshakeable, this the last birth, there is not now again-becoming.’⁶”

¹ *ñāṇa*. ² *paññā*. ³ *vijjā*. We have nothing in English corresponding to the number Pali words for “knowledge.” ⁴ I.e. the craving or thirst (*taṇhā*) which leads to the uprising of ill must be given up. ⁵ Each of the four truths is treated as (1) a truth which (2) must be in some way responded to, and which (3) has been in that way responded to. ⁶ One of the formulae of arahanship.

Thus spoke the Lord; delighted, the group of five monks rejoiced in the Lord's utterance. Moreover, while this discourse¹ was being uttered, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to the venerable Koṇḍañña that "whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop."

Kd.1.6.30

And when the Lord had rolled the *dhamma*-wheel, the earth *devas* made this sound heard²: "The supreme *dhamma*-wheel rolled thus by the Lord at Benares in the deer-park at Isipatana cannot be rolled back by a recluse or brahmin or deva or by Māra or by Brahmā or by anyone in the world." Having heard the sound of the earth *devas*, the *devas* of the Four Great Kings³ made this sound heard ... the Thirty *devas* ... Yama's *devas* ... the Happy *devas* ... the *devas* who delight in creation ... the *devas* who delight in the creation of others ... the *devas* of Brahmā's retinue made this sound heard: "The supreme *dhamma*-wheel rolled thus by the Lord at Benares in the deer-park at Isipatana cannot be rolled back by a recluse or brahmin or deva or by Māra or by Brahmā or by anyone in the world."

Vin.1.12

BD.4.18

Kd.1.6.31

In this wise in that moment, in that second, in that instant, the sound reached as far as the Brahma-world, and the ten thousandfold world-system⁴ trembled, quaked, shook violently and a radiance, splendid, measureless, surpassing the *devas*' own glory,⁵ was manifest in the world. Then the Lord uttered this solemn utterance: "Indeed, Koṇḍañña has understood, indeed, Koṇḍañña has understood." Thus it was that Aññata Koṇḍañña⁶ became the venerable Koṇḍañña's name.⁷

Kd.1.6.32

Then the venerable Aññata Koṇḍañña, having seen *dhamma*,⁸ attained *dhamma*,⁹ known *dhamma*,¹⁰ plunged into *dhamma*, having crossed over doubt, having put away uncertainty, having attained without another's help to full confidence in the teacher's instruction,¹¹ spoke thus to the Lord:

¹ *veyyākaraṇa*, called at DN-a.130 a *sutta* (discourse) without verses. ² Cf. Vin.3.18-19 (BD.1.33). ³ I.e. the Regents of the four quarters. A longer list of *devas* is to be found at MN.i.289. ⁴ Cf. AN.i.227. ⁵ *devānaṃ devānubhāvaṃ*, cf. DN.ii.12, MN.iii.120. ⁶ *aññāta* meaning "who has understood". He is often called Añña Koṇḍañña. At AN.i.23 he is called "foremost of the disciples of long standing." Verses at Thag.673-688. For the view that Añña was his personal name, see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Gotama the Man*, p.102, GS.i.16, n.2, *Verses of Uplift* (Sacred Books of the Buddhists VIII), p.93, n.1. See too Ud-a.371, *Psalm of the Bretheren*, p.284. ⁷ Saṃyutta account breaks off here. ⁸ Saṃyutta account breaks off here. ⁹ Quoted Bv-a.13, the last two in reverse order. ¹⁰ Saṃyutta account breaks off here. ¹¹ Cf. DN.i.10,148; AN.iv.186; MN.i.234, MN.i.501.

“May I, Lord, receive the going forth¹ in the Lord’s presence, may I receive ordination?²”

“Come, monk³,” the Lord said, “well taught is *dhamma*. Fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this came to be this venerable one’s ordination.

BD.4.19

Then the Lord exhorted, instructed those remaining monks with *dhamma*-talk. Then while they were being exhorted, instructed by the Lord with *dhamma*-talk, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to the venerable Vappa⁴ and to the venerable Bhaddiya,⁵ that “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop.”

Kd.1.6.33

These, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma* ... having attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “May we, Lord, receive the going forth in the Lord’s presence, may we receive ordination?”

Kd.1.6.34

“Come, monks,” the Lord said, “well taught is *dhamma*, fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this came to be these venerable ones’ ordination.

Vin.1.13

Then the Lord, eating the food brought back by these,⁶ exhorted, instructed those remaining monks with *dhamma*-talk, saying: “Let the group of six⁷ live on whatever the three monks bring when they have walked for almsfood.”

Kd.1.6.35

Then while they were being exhorted, instructed by the Lord with *dhamma*-talk, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to the venerable Mahānāma⁸ and to the venerable Assaji,⁹ that “whatever is of the nature to

Kd.1.6.36

¹ *pabbajjā*. ² *upasampadā*. ³ The first time that this, thought to be the oldest formula for leave to become a disciple of Gotama’s, is used in the Vinaya. The Order was not as yet in existence, and the ordination regulations were neither appointed nor was ordination separated by a period of probation from the time of a disciple’s “going forth”, *pabbajjā*, from home, or the household life, into homelessness. ⁴ Verses at Thag.61, see also Thag-a.150, Vin-a.965, MN-a.ii.192, AN-a.i.147, Ja.i.82; MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.63. ⁵ No verses ascribed to him. See Vin-a.965, MN-a.ii.192, AN-a.i.147, Ja.i.82. Omitted from *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁶ Koṇḍañña, Vappa and Bhaddiya. ⁷ I.e. Gotama and the group of five. ⁸ References as under n.2 above. See also Dh-p-a.ii.74. Included in *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁹ The disciple through whom Sāriputta and so Moggallāna became followers of Gotama, see Vin.1.39f. (below, BD.4.52); also MN.i.227 (Cūlasaccaka Sutta), SN.iii.124ff., MN-a.ii.270, MN-a.ii.271, and BD.4.52, n.3 below.

uprise, all that is of the nature to stop.”

Kd.1.6.37

These, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma* ... having attained without another's help to full confidence in the teacher's instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “May we, Lord, receive the going forth in the Lord's presence, may we receive ordination?”

“Come, monks,” the Lord said, “well taught is *dhamma*, fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this came to be these venerable ones' ordination.

BD.4.20

Kd.1.6.38

Then the Lord addressed the group of five monks, saying: “Body, monks, is not self.¹ Now were this body self, monks this body would not tend to sickness, and one might get the chance of saying in regard to body, ‘Let body become thus for me, let body not become thus for me’. But inasmuch, monks, as body is not self, therefore body tends to sickness, and one does not get the chance of saying in regard to body, ‘Let body become thus for me, let body not become thus for me’.

Kd.1.6.39

Feeling is not self ... and one does not get the chance of saying in regard to feeling, ‘Let feeling become thus for me, let feeling not become thus for me’.

Kd.1.6.40

“Perception² is not self ... The habitual tendencies are not self ... one does not get the chance of saying in regard to the habitual tendencies, ‘Let the habitual tendencies become thus for me, let the habitual tendencies not become thus for me’.

Kd.1.6.41

Vin.1.14

“Consciousness is not self ... Inasmuch, monks, as consciousness is not self, therefore consciousness tends to sickness, and one does not get the chance to say in regard to consciousness, ‘Let consciousness become such for me, let consciousness not become thus for me.’

Kd.1.6.42

What do you think about this, monks? Is body permanent or impermanent?”

“Impermanent, Lord.”

¹ This famous Second Utterance given also at SN.iii.66, where called “The Five”, doubtless referring to the five disciples who heard it, and to the five topics, body ... consciousness (or mind) which it covered; cf. MN.iii.19. Translated at KS.iii.59, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha*, ii, 165f., MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.150, E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.88.

² *saññā*.

“But is that which is impermanent painful or pleasurable¹?”

“Painful, Lord.”

“But is it fit to consider that which is impermanent, painful, of a nature to change, as ‘This is mine, this am I, this is my self’?”

“It is not Lord.”

Kd.1.6.43

“Is feeling ... perception ... are the habitual tendencies ... is consciousness permanent or impermanent?”

BD.4.21

“Impermanent, Lord.”

“But is that which is impermanent painful or pleasurable?”

“Painful, Lord.”

“But is it (it to consider that which is impermanent, painful of a nature to change, as ‘This is mine, this am I, this is my self’?”

“It is not so, Lord.”

Kd.1.6.44

“Wherefore, monks, whatever is body, past, future, present or internal or external, or gross or subtle, or low or excellent whether it is far or near—all body should, by means of right wisdom, be seen, as it really is, thus: This is not mine, this am I not, this is not my self.

Kd.1.6.45

“Whatever is feeling ... whatever is perception ... whatever are the habitual tendencies ... whatever is consciousness past, future, present, or internal or external, or gross or subtle, or low or excellent, whether far or near—all consciousness should, by means of right wisdom, be seen as it really is, thus: This is not mine, this am I not, this is not my self.

Kd.1.6.46

“Seeing in this way, monks, the instructed² disciple of the ariyans disregards³ body and he disregards feeling and he disregards perception and he disregards the habitual tendencies and he disregards consciousness; disregarding he is dispassionate; through dispassion he is freed; in freedom the knowledge comes to be: ‘I am freed’⁴, and he knows: Destroyed is birth, lived is the Brahma-faring, done is what was to be done, there is no more of being such or such.”

Kd.1.6.47

Thus spoke the Lord; delighted, the group of five monks rejoiced in what the Lord had said. Moreover while this discourse was being uttered, the

¹ *sukha*, happiness, mental and physical ease; used in opposition to *dukkha*. ² *sutavant*, one who has heard, hence learnt (the oral teaching). ³ *nibbindati*, turns away from, is disgusted by. He “disregards” because he refuses to know. ⁴ See [BD.1.10](#) and its [n.2](#), [n.3](#).

Vin.1.15 minds of the group of five monks were freed from the cankers without grasping. At that time there were six perfected ones in the world.

The First Portion for Recital

ON THE GOING FORTH OF YASA

BD.4.22 At that time in Benares there was a young man of family, the son of a (great) merchant¹, delicately reared, called Yasa².

Kd.1.7.2 He had three mansions, one for the cold weather, one for the hot weather, one for the rains. Being ministered to by bands of female musicians³ for four months in the mansion for the rains, he did not come down from that mansion⁴. Then while Yasa, the young man of family, was possessed of and provided with the five kinds of sense-pleasures⁵, and was being ministered to, he fell asleep first and his suite fell asleep after him, and an oil lamp was burning all through the night.

Kd.1.7.3 Then Yasa, the young man of family, having awoken first saw his own suite sleeping, one with a lute in the hollow of her arm, one with a tabor at her neck, one with a drum in the hollow of her arm, one with dishevelled hair, one with saliva dripping from her mouth, muttering in their sleep, like a cemetery before his very eyes.⁶ Seeing this, its peril grew plain, and his mind was set on disregarding it.⁷ Then Yasa, the young man of family, uttered a solemn utterance: "What distress indeed, what affliction indeed."

Then Yasa, the young man of family, having put on his golden sandals, approached the door of the dwelling. Non-human beings opened the door, thinking: "Let there be no obstacle for the going forth from home into homelessness of Yasa, the young man of family." Then Yasa, the young man of family, approached the city-door. Non-human beings opened the

¹ See BD.2, Introduction, p.xlvii and BD.42, n.4. ² Verses at Thag.117. ³ *nippurisehi turiyehi*; see note at *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.18; also *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.356.

⁴ Reading *heṭṭhā pāsādā*. DN.ii.21, MN.i.504 read *heṭṭhāpāsādāṃ*, "to the lower (parts of the) mansion." On *pāsāda*, see BD.2.16, n.5, n.6. ⁵ Cf. Vin.iii.72, DN.i.36, DN.i.60, and DN-a.121.

⁶ *hatthapattāṃ susānaṃ maññe*, literally one would think one's hand had reached a cemetery. *Hatthappatta*, what one can put one's hand on, and so what is before one's eyes. ⁷ *nibbidāya cittaṃ saṅṭhāsi*.

door, thinking: “Let there be no obstacle for the going forth from home into homelessness of Yasa, the young man of family.” Then Yasa, the young man of family, approached the deer-park at Isipatana.

Kd.1.7.4

At that time, the Lord having risen in the night towards dawn, was pacing up and down in the open air. The Lord saw Yasa, the young man of family, coming in the distance: seeing him, having come down from (the place) where he was pacing up and down, he sat down on an appointed seat. Then Yasa, the young man of family, when he was near, uttered this solemn utterance to the Lord: “What distress indeed, what affliction indeed.” Then the Lord spoke thus to Yasa, the young man of family: “This, Yasa, is not distress, this, Yasa, is not affliction. Come, sit down, Yasa, I will teach you *dhamma*.”

BD.4.23

Then Yasa, the young man of family, thinking: “It is said that this is not distress, that this is not affliction”, exultant and uplifted, having taken off his golden sandals, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord talked a progressive talk¹ to Yasa, the young man of family, that is to say, talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven, he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in renouncing them.

Kd.1.7.5

When the Lord knew that the mind of Yasa, the young man of family, was ready, malleable, devoid of hindrances, uplifted, pleased², then he explained to him the teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the Way³. And just as a clean cloth without black specks will take a dye easily, even so (as he was sitting) on that very seat, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to Yasa, the young man of family, that whatever is of a nature to uprising, all that is of a nature to stop.”

Kd.1.7.6

Vin.1.16

Then the mother of Yasa, the young man of family, having mounted up to the mansion, not seeing Yasa, the young man of family, approached the

Kd.1.7.7

¹ This passage is frequently found in connection with “conversions”; cf. [Vin.2.156](#), [Vin.2.192](#), [DN.i.110](#), [DN.i.148](#), [DN.ii.41](#), [MN.i.379](#), [AN.iv.186](#), [AN.iv.209](#), [Ud.49](#). ² In sense of with the teaching, prepared to follow it. ³ Note that *paṭipadā* (of the fourth truth), the course which leads to the ceasing of ill, is here represented by the one word *maggā*. This may not be a substitution for the “fourth truth”, but the original notion, left in.

(great) merchant, the householder; having approached she spoke thus to the (great) merchant, the householder; “Householder, your son, Yasa, is not to be seen.” Then the (great) merchant, the householder, having dispatched messengers on horse-back to the four quarters, himself approached the deer-park at Isipatana. The (great) merchant, the householder, saw the prints of golden sandals, and seeing them he followed them along.

Kd.1.7.8

BD.4.24

The Lord saw the (great) merchant, the householder, coming in the distance; seeing him, it occurred to the Lord: “Suppose I were to perform such a psychic wonder that the (great) merchant, the householder, sitting here, should not see Yasa the young man of family, sitting here?” Then the Lord performed such a psychic wonder.

Kd.1.7.9

Then the (great) merchant, the householder, approached the Lord; having approached he spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord has the Lord not seen Yasa, the young man of family?”

“Well, householder, sit down. Perhaps, sitting here, you may see Yasa, the young man of family, sitting here.”

Then the (great) merchant, the householder, thinking: “It is said that I, sitting here, will see Yasa, the young man of family, sitting here”, and exultant, uplifted, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.1.7.10

As the (great) merchant, the householder was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord talked a progressive talk ... attained without the help of another to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! Just as one might set upright what has been upset, or might uncover what was concealed, or might show the way to one who is astray, or might bring an oil lamp into the darkness, thinking, ‘Those with eyes may see shapes’, even so is *dhamma* explained in many a figure by the Lord. I myself go to the Lord as refuge, to *dhamma*, and to the Order of monks. Let the Lord accept me as a lay-disciple gone for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.” Thus he came to be the first lay-disciple in the world using the three-word formula.¹

Vin.1.17

Kd.1.7.11

¹ *tevācika*, instead of the *dhevācika* of Kd.1.4.5, for here the *bhikkhusaṅgha* is included in the refuge-formula. We must therefore assume that when the group of five monks became disciples of Gotama a *saṅgha* was formed.

Then while the father of Yasa, the young man of family, was being taught *dhamma*, as he¹ was reviewing his stage (of knowledge) as it was seen, as it was known, his mind was freed from the cankers without grasping. Then it occurred to the Lord: “While the father of Yasa, the young man of family, was being taught *dhamma*, as he was reviewing his stage (of knowledge) as it was seen, as it was known, his mind was freed from the cankers without grasping. Now Yasa, the young man of family, cannot become one, having turned back to the low life, to enjoy pleasures of the senses as he did formerly when leading a household life. Suppose I were to annul that psychic wonder?” Then the Lord annulled that psychic wonder.

BD.4.25

Kd.1.7.12

Then the (great) merchant, the householder, saw Yasa, the young man of family sitting down; seeing him, he spoke thus to Yasa, the young man of family: “Dear Yasa, your mother is full of lamentation and grief, give your mother life.”

Kd.1.7.13

Then Yasa, the young man of family, looked towards the Lord. Then the Lord spoke thus to the (great) merchant, the householder: “What do you think about this, house-holder, that *dhamma* was seen by Yasa with a learner’s knowledge, with a learner’s insight, even as by you? As he was reviewing his stage (of knowledge), as it was seen, as it was known, his mind was freed from the cankers without grasping. Now can Yasa, householder, having turned back to the low life, become one to enjoy pleasures of the senses, as he did formerly when leading a household life?”

“No, Lord.”

“*Dhamma* was seen by Yasa, the young man of family, householder, with a learner’s knowledge, with a learner’s insight, even as by you. As he was reviewing his stage (of knowledge), as it was seen, as it was known, his mind was freed from the cankers without grasping. Now Yasa, the young man of family, householder, cannot become one, having turned back to the low life, to enjoy pleasures of the senses, as he did formerly when leading a household life.”

Kd.1.7.14

“Lord, it is a gain for Yasa, the young man of family, Lord, it is well gotten for Yasa, the young man of family, inasmuch as the mind of Yasa, the young man of family, is freed from the cankers without grasping. Lord, may the

¹ I.e. Yasa.

Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow with Yasa, the young man of family, as his attendant?" The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the (great) merchant, the householder, knowing that the Lord had consented, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.1.7.15

BD.4.26

Then Yasa, the young man of family, soon after the (great) merchant, the householder, had departed, spoke thus to the Lord: "Lord, may I receive the going forth in the Lord's presence, may I receive ordination?"

Vin.1.18

"Come, monk," the Lord said, "well preached is *dhamma*. Lead the Brahmarfaring for making an utter end of ill." So this came to be that venerable one's ordination. At that time there were seven perfected ones in the world.

Told is the Going Forth of Yasa

Kd.1.8.1

Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the (great) merchant, the householder, with the venerable Yasa as attendant; having approached, he sat down on an appointed seat. Then the mother and the former wife of the venerable Yasa approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.1.8.2

The Lord talked a progressive talk to these, that is to say, talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven ... *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to them that, "whatever is of a nature to uprise, all that is of a nature to stop."

Kd.1.8.3

These, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma* ... spoke thus to the Lord: "Excellent Lord! ... we ourselves, Lord, go to the Lord as refuge, to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. Let the Lord accept us as women lay-disciples, gone for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts." Thus these were the first women lay-disciples in the world using the three-word formula.

Kd.1.8.4

Then the venerable Yasa's mother and father and former wife, having with their own hand(s) served the Lord and the venerable Yasa and having offered them sumptuous foods, solid and soft, sat down when the Lord had finished his meal and had removed his hand from the bowl. Then the Lord, having gladdened, roused, rejoiced, delighted the venerable Yasa's

mother and father and former wife with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat departed.

Four householder friends of the venerable Yasa, young men of families of (great) merchants and lesser (great) merchants¹ in Benares, Vimala, Subāhu, Puṇṇaji, Gavampati², heard: “They say that Yasa, the young man of family, having cut off his hair and beard, having put on yellow robes, has gone forth from home into homelessness.” Having heard this, it occurred to them: “Now this can be no ordinary *dhamma* and discipline, nor can this be an ordinary going forth, in that Yasa, the young man of family, having cut off his hair and beard, having put on the yellow robes, has gone forth from home into homelessness.”

Kd.1.9.1

BD.4.27
Vin.1.19

These four people approached the venerable Yasa; having approached, having greeted the venerable Yasa, they stood at a respectful distance. Then the venerable Yasa, taking these four householder friends, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Yasa spoke thus to the Lord: “These four householder friends of mine, Lord, young men of families of (great) merchants and lesser (great) merchants in Benares, Vimala, Subāhu, Puṇṇaji, Gavampati, may the Lord exhort, may he instruct these four.”

Kd.1.9.2

The Lord talked a progressive talk to these, that is to say, talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven ... *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to them that “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop.”

Kd.1.9.3

These, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma* ... spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may we receive the going forth in the Lord’s presence, may we receive ordination?”

Kd.1.9.4

“Come, monks,” the Lord said, “well preached is *dhamma*, fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this came to be these venerable ones’ ordination. Then the Lord exhorted, instructed these monks with *dhamma* talk. While they were being exhorted, instructed by the Lord with

¹ *setṭhānuseṭṭhi*. See Ja.v.384 for *mahā-setṭhi*, *setṭhi* (but with variant reading *anuseṭṭhi*) and *anuseṭṭhi*; also *Vinaya Texts* i.102, n.3. ² Verses attributed only to Gavampati, Thag.38, and he appears to be the only one mentioned elsewhere in the canon, e.g. DN.ii.356, SN.v.436.

dhamma talk, their minds were freed from the cankers without grasping. At that time there were eleven perfected ones in the world.

Vin.1.20

Told is the Going Forth of the four Householders

Fifty householder friends of the venerable Yasa, young men of the first families and of those next to the first¹ in the district heard: “They say that Yasa, the young man of family ... (as in **BD.9.1-9.4** down to:) While they were being exhorted, instructed by the Lord with *dhamma* talk, their minds were freed from the cankers without grasping. At that time there were sixty-one perfected ones in the world.

Kd.1.10.1
BD.4.28

WITH MĀRA

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying²: “I, monks, am freed from all snares, both those of *devas*³ and those of men. And you, monks, are freed from all snares, both those of *devas* and those of men. Walk, monks, on tour for the blessing of the manyfolk, for the happiness of the manyfolk out of compassion for the world, for the welfare, the blessing, the happiness of *devas* and men. Let not two (of you) go by one (way).⁴ Monks, teach *dhamma* which is lovely at the beginning, lovely in the middle, lovely at the ending.⁵ Explain with the spirit and the letter the Brahma-faring completely fulfilled, wholly pure. There are beings with little dust in their eyes, who, not hearing *dhamma*, are decaying, (but) if they are learners of *dhamma*, they will grow. And I, monks, will go along to Uruvelā, to the Camp township,⁶ in order to teach *dhamma*.”

Kd.1.11.1

Vin.1.21

Kd.1.11.2

¹ *pubbānupubbaka*. Explained by Vin-a.966 as the oldest and next to the oldest in regard to lineage. ² SN.i.105-106. ³ *dibba*; neither “divine” (*Vinaya Texts* i.112) nor “celestial” (KS.i.131) is exactly right for this difficult adjective which means *deva*-ish, pertaining to *devas*. ⁴ *ekena* can also mean together, but above is interpretation given at Vin-a.966, and cf. SN-a.i.172. ⁵ SN-a.i.172 gives differing but related arrangements of subjects included under “beginning, middle and end”. ⁶ Senānigama here and at MN.i.166; for the variant spelling used at e.g. SN.i.106, Ja.i.68, see *Vinaya Texts* i.113, n.1, KS.i.132, n.5; *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*; E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.230. There was a tradition that in old times it had been an army’s camping place, MN-a.ii.173, SN-a.i.172, the town where Senāni, Sujāta’s father lived.

Then Māra, the Evil One, approached the Lord; having approached, he addressed the Lord with verses:

“Bound art thou by all the snares,
Both those of *devas* and of men,
In great bondage art thou bound,
Recluse, thou’lt not be freed from me.”¹

BD.4.29

“Freed am I from all the snares,
Both those of *devas* and of men,
From great bondage am I freed,
Humbled art thou, O End-maker.”²

“The tale of mind-impressions is a snare
That weaves its tallies to and fro in air.
With these will I have wherewith to fetter thee,
Recluse, thou wilt not be freed from me.”³

“Sights, sounds, scents, tastes,⁴ and things to touch,
Bringing delights to mind of man-for such
All wish, all will, for me is past and gone,
Humbled art thou, O End-maker.”

Then Māra, the Evil One, thinking, “The Lord knows me, the well-farer knows me,” pained, afflicted, vanished then and there.

Told is the Talk on Māra

ON GOING FORTH AND FULL ORDINATION

At that time monks brought (to the Lord) from various quarters, from various districts those wishing for the going forth, those wishing for ordination, thinking: “The Lord will let these go forth, he will ordain them.”

Kd.1.12.1

¹ These four lines with the next four also at SN.i.106. ² *Antaka*, explained at Vin-a.966 as an inferior, low being; a name of Māra. Cf. Thig.59, Thig.62, Thig.195; also Dhp.48, where not used in this way. ³ These four lines and the next four occur also at SN.i.111. ⁴ The Vinaya version puts scents before tastes in the usual way. SN.i.111 reverses the order; see KS.i.140, n.3. Cf. Kd.5.1.27; Snp.387, Snp.759, Thag.455. Thag.895. AN.iii.69.

Thereby both the monks as well as those wishing for the going forth and those wishing for ordination were tired. Then a reasoning arose in the Lord's mind as he was meditating in seclusion, thus: "At present monks are bringing (to me) from various quarters ... and those wishing for ordination are tired. Suppose I were to allow it to monks, saying: 'You, monks, may now yourselves let go forth, may ordain in any¹ quarter, in any district?'"

Kd.1.12.2

Then the Lord, emerging from seclusion towards evening, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: "While I was meditating in seclusion, monks, a reasoning arose in my mind, thus: 'At present monks are bringing ... in any quarter, in any district?'"

Vin.1.22

BD.4.30

Kd.1.12.3

"I allow, monks, that you yourselves may now let go forth may ordain in any quarter, in any district. And thus, monks, should one let go forth, should one ordain: First, having made him have his hair and beard cut off, having made him put on yellow robes, having made him arrange an upper robe over one shoulder, having made him honour the monks' feet, having made him sit down on his haunches, having made him salute with joined palms, he should be told: 'Speak thus: "I go to the awakened one for refuge, I go to *dhamma* for refuge, I go to the Order for refuge. And a second time I go ... And a third time I go to ... the Order for refuge."' I allow, monks, the going forth and the ordination by these three goings for refuge."²

Kd.1.12.4

Told is the Talk on Ordination by the three Goings for Refuge

WITH MĀRA, THE SECOND

Kd.1.13.1

Then the Lord, having kept the rains, addressed the monks, saying: "Monks, by proper attention, by proper right effort was supreme freedom attained by me, supreme freedom³ realised. You, too, monks, by proper attention,

¹ *tāsu tāsu. Tam tam* means whatever, each, this and that. ² Apparently this was the second stage in admitting disciples to the religious life, the first being by the formula spoken by the Lord, 'come, monk'. Responsibility is now being delegated to his followers themselves. Note that *bhagavantam* (the lord) has given way to *buddham* (the awakened one) in the first sentence of the formula. ³ Cf. AN.iii.218.

by proper right effort may attain supreme freedom, may realise supreme freedom.”

Then Māra, the Evil One, approached the Lord; having approached, he addressed the Lord with verses:

Kd.1.13.2

“Bound art thou by Māra’s snares,
Both those of *devas* and of men,
In great bondage art thou bound.
Recluse, thou wilt not be freed from me.”¹

“Freed am I from Māra’s snares,
Both those of *devas* and of men,
From great bondage am I freed,
Humbled art thou, O End-maker.”

Then Māra, the Evil One, thinking, “The Lord knows me, the well-farer knows me,” pained, afflicted, vanished then and there.

BD.4.31

THE STORY OF THE EXCELLENT GROUP

Then the Lord, having stayed at Benares for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Uruvelā. Then the Lord, turning off from the road, approached a certain woodland grove²; having approached, having plunged into that woodland grove, he sat down at the root of a certain tree. At that time a group of as many as thirty friends of high standing,³ with their wives,

Vin.1.23
Kd.1.14.1

¹ These four lines occur at SN.i.105, but there the third line of each verse reads, “In (From) Māra’s bondage ...” ² At Ja.i.82 this is called Kappāsiya woodland grove. ³ *timsamattā bhaddavaggiyā sahāyakā*. Vin-a.971 says “sons of rājas, of high repute (*bhaddaka*, honoured, of good quality), bound into a group (*vagga*, party) by their bodies and minds, were wandering about”; and Vin-a.1106 says “because they were brothers by one father of the King of Kosala, a synonym for these elders is the group who are of high standing”. For both here and at Dhp-a.ii.32 they are identified with the thirty monks of Pāvā (see Vin.1.253, SN.iii.87). The *bhaddavaggiyā*=*kumāra* are referred to at Ja.i.82=Dhp-a.i.87, Dhp-a.i.97 as among the “converts” who, because converted first, should, so some monks thought, have been given precedence over the Great Pair; at Dhp-a.i.100, as having heard the Tuṇḍilovāda (cf. Vin-a.1106 and Ja.no.388). Mahavaṃsa xxx.79 mentions their conversion as a subject to be represented in the relic shrine of the Mahā Thūpa.

were amusing themselves in that same woodland grove. One had no wife, (so) a woman of low standing¹ was brought along for him. Then while they were heedlessly amusing themselves that woman of low standing, taking (their) belongings, ran away.

Kd.1.14.2

Then these friends, doing their friend a service and seeking for that woman, roaming about that woodland grove, saw the Lord sitting at the root of a certain tree; seeing him, they approached the Lord, having approached, they spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, has the Lord not seen a woman?”

“But what have you, young men, to do with a woman?”

“We, Lord, a group of as many as thirty friends of high standing, with our wives, were amusing ourselves in this woodland grove; one had no wife, (so) a woman of low standing was brought along for him. Then, Lord, as we were heedlessly amusing ourselves, that woman of low standing, taking our belongings, ran away. Consequently, Lord, we friends, doing our friend a service and seeking for that woman, are roaming about this woodland grove.”

Kd.1.14.3

BD.4.32

“What do you think of this, young men? Which is better for you, that you should seek for a woman or that you should seek for the self²?”

“Truly this were better for us, Lord, that we should seek for the self.”

“Well then, young men, you sit down, I will teach you *dhamma*.”

Saying, “Yes, Lord,” this group of friends of high standing, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.1.14.4

The Lord talked a progressive talk to these, that is to say, talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven ... that “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop.”³

Kd.1.14.5

These, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*,⁴ ... spoke thus to the Lord: “May we, Lord, receive the going forth in the Lord’s presence, may we receive ordination?”

Vin.1.24

“Come, monks,” the Lord said, “well taught is *dhamma*, fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this came to be these venerable

¹ *vesī* can also mean a prostitute, but here probably used in opposition to *bhadda*, high standing. ² *attānaṃ gaveseyyātha*. Cf. Dh.146 *andhakāreṇa onaddhā padīpaṃ na gavessatha*, “that ye in the bonds of darkness should not hunt for a lamp”; and the compound *attadīpā* of DN.ii.100 and Snp.501. ³ As in Kd.1.7.5-1.7.6. ⁴ As in Kd.1.6.32.

ones' ordination.

Told is the Case of the Group of Friends of High Standing

The Second Portion for Repeating

ON THE MIRACLES AT URUVELĀ

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Uruvelā. Now at that time three matted hair ascetics, Kassapa of Uruvelā,¹ Kassapa of the River,² Kassapa of Gayā,³ were living at Uruvelā. Of these, the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā was leader, guide, highest, chief, head of five hundred matted hair ascetics; the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of the River was leader ... head of three hundred matted hair ascetics; the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Gayā was leader ... head of two hundred matted hair ascetics.

BD.4.33

Then the Lord approached the hermitage⁴ of the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā; having approached, he spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā: "If it is not inconvenient to you, Kassapa, let me stay for one night in the fire-room."

Kd.1.15.2

"It is not inconvenient to me, great recluse, (but) there is a fierce serpent king of psychic power there; he is a terribly venomous snake. Do not let him harm you." And a second time the Lord spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā: "If it is not inconvenient to you ...". And a third time the Lord spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā: "If it is not inconvenient to you, Kassapa, let me stay for one night in the fire-room."

¹ Verses at Thag.375–380. At AN.i.25 he is called chief of those disciples who have large followings. Thag-a.i.71 recounts that one of this Kassapa's followers, Belaṭṭhasīsa, was tamed with him (see below, Kd.20.18.19) and afterwards became Ānanda's preceptor. These three Kassapas were brothers. They had a sister whose son, Senaka, was converted by the Lord, see *Psalm of the Bretheren*, p.180. On the three brothers, see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.206ff. ² I.e. of the river Nerañjarā. His verses at Thag.341. Thag-a on Uruvelākassapa says that Kassapa of the River was so called because he "went forth" at a bend in a great river; and that Kassapa of Gayā was so called because he went forth at Gayāsīsa. ³ Verses at Thag.345–349. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.107 (BD.2.382) for many similarities with this passage.

“It is not inconvenient to me, great recluse, (but) there is a fierce serpent king of psychic power there; he is a terribly venomous snake. Do not let him harm you.”

“It is not likely that he can harm me. Please do you, Kassapa, allow (me the use of) the fire-room,”

Kd.1.15.3 “Stay, great recluse, as you wish it.”

Then the Lord, having entered the fire-room, having laid down a grass mat, sat down cross-legged, keeping his back erect, having caused mindfulness to be present in front of him. Then that serpent saw that the Lord had entered, and seeing this, pained, afflicted, he blew forth smoke. Then it occurred to the Lord: “What now if I, without destroying this serpent’s skin and hide and flesh and ligaments and bones and the marrow of the bones, were to master (his) heat by heat?”

Vin.1.25

Kd.1.15.4

Then the Lord, having worked a work of psychic power, blew forth smoke. Then that serpent, not conquering anger, blazed up. The Lord, having attained the condition of heat, also blazed up. When both were in flames, the fire-room became as though burning, ablaze, in flames. Then the matted hair ascetics, having surrounded the fire-room, spoke thus: “Beautiful indeed is the great recluse, (but) he will be harmed by the serpent.”¹

BD.4.34

Kd.1.15.5

Then the Lord at the end of that night, without having destroyed that serpent’s skin and hide and flesh and ligaments and bones and the marrow of the bones, having mastered (his) heat by heat, having placed him in his bowl, showed him to the matted hair ascetic, Uruvelākassapa, saying: “This, Kassapa, is your serpent, his heat was mastered by heat.” Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelākassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great majesty, in that he can master by heat the heat of the fierce serpent king who has psychic power and is a terribly venomous snake; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Kd.1.15.6

¹ Text reads *nāge na viheṭhissati*, but should be corrected, as *Vinaya Texts* i.120, n.3 indicates, by parallel passage at [Vin.2.195](#): *nāgena viheṭhiyissati*, which I follow. Sinhalese edition reads *nāgena viheṭhiyati*, is harmed by the serpent, which also makes sense if the ascetics, seeing Gotama in flames, thought he was already brought to harm.

Near the Nerañjarā,¹ the Lord
spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelākassapa:
“If it is not inconvenient to you, Kassapa,
let me stay this day (only)² in the fire-hall.³”

“It is not inconvenient to me, great recluse,
(but) as I am anxious for your comfort I warn you
that there is a fierce serpent king there,
of psychic power, a terribly venomous snake.
Do not let him harm you.”

“It is not likely that he can harm me.
Please do you, Kassapa, allow (me the use of) the fire-room.⁴”
“It is given”; having understood this,
the fearless one entered, fear overpassed.

Having seen that the holy man⁵ had entered,
the chief of snakes⁶, afflicted, blew forth smoke.
The chief of men, joyful, unperturbed,
blew forth smoke there too.

BD.4.35

But the chief of snakes, not conquering anger,
blazed up like a fire.
The chief of men, highly proficient in the condition of heat,
blazed up there too.

When both were in flames,

¹ For note on this repetition of the story (in this and the next paragraph) in a more popular style, see *Vinaya Texts* i.120, n.4. Note by Sujato: the “popular style” is in fact verse and has been formatted as such, without changing the text. ² *ajjuṇho*; see **BD.2.64, n.1**. *Vin-a.971* also explains by *ajja ekadivasam*. ³ Text reads *aggisālamhi*; Sinhalese edition *aggisaraṇamhi*; variant reading at **Vin.1.365** *aggisālāyam*. ⁴ *agyāgara*, as throughout, except for case just referred to. ⁵ *isi=ṛsi*, seer, sage. ⁶ Here, instead of being called *nāgarājā*, king of serpents, he is called *ahināga*; and here *nāga* is probably not to be taken as “serpent” but as balancing the *nāga* in *manussanāga*, “chief of men,” just below, and therefore as meaning chief, strongest, foremost (something awe-inspiring: cobra, elephant, saint). Cf. *mahānāga*, used of (chief) disciples, at *MN.i.32*, *MN.i.151*; and definition of *nāga* at *MN.i.145* as “synonym for that monk in whom the cankers are destroyed,” and cf. also *MN-a.i.153*.

the matted hair ascetics, as they were looking at the fire-room,
said:

“Beautiful indeed is the great recluse,
(but) he will be harmed by the serpent.”¹

Kd.1.15.7

Then at the end of that night
the serpent’s flames became extinguished,
but the multicoloured flames of him of psychic power remained,

and multicoloured flames, dark green,
then red, crimson, yellow and crystal-coloured
were on Angirasa’s² body.

Having put the chief of snakes into his bowl,
he showed him to the brahmin,³ saying:
“This, Kassapa, is your serpent,
his heat was mastered by heat.”

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, thoroughly believing in
this wonder of psychic power of the Lord, spoke thus to the Lord: “Stay just
here, great recluse, I (can offer you) a constant supply of food.”⁴

Vin.1.26

The First Wonder

Kd.1.16.1

Then the Lord stayed in a certain woodland grove near the hermitage of
the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa. Then the four Great Kings, having
illuminated the entire woodland grove on a glorious night with glorious
colour, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord,
they stood at the four quarters like huge fires.

Kd.1.16.2

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord at
the end of that night, and having approached he spoke thus to the Lord: “It

¹ See above, **BD.4.34, n.1.** ² Name applied to Gotama now and again in the Piṭakas; DN.iii.196 (“name of the son of the Sakyans”), SN.i.196 = Thag.1252, AN.iii.239, Thag.536, Ja.i.116. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* and GS.iii.175, n.1. Vin-a.971 says *aṅgato raṁsiyo saṁsaranti*, flames streamed from his body (limb). ³ Note that the *jaṭila* is here referred to as a brahmin. ⁴ This invitation seems to cancel the Lord’s request to stay for “one day (only),” and to account for the fact that he stayed on in the woodland grove for several days.

is time, great recluse, the meal is ready. But now, who were these, great recluse, who, having illumined the entire woodland grove during the glorious night with glorious colour, approached you and having approached, having greeted you, stood at the four quarters like huge fires?”

BD.4.36

“Kassapa, these were the four Great Kings who approached me in order to hear *dhamma*.”

Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelākassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that the four Great Kings also approach him in order to hear *dhamma*; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Then the Lord, having eaten the meal (offered by) the matted hair ascetic Uruvelākassapa, stayed in that same woodland grove.

The Second Wonder

Then Sakka, lord of the *devas*, having illumined the entire woodland grove on a glorious night with glorious colour, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance, like a huge fire, more glorious and more superb than the former splendours of colour.¹

Kd.1.17.1

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord at the end of that night ... (as in² Kd.1.16.2) ... stayed in that same woodland grove.

Kd.1.17.2

Vin.1.27

The Third Wonder

Then Brahmā Sahampati ... (as in Kd.1.17) ... stayed in that same woodland grove.

Kd.1.18.1

Kd.1.18.2

The Fourth Wonder

Now at that time a great sacrifice (made by) the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa was going forward,³ and the entire (population of) Aṅga and Magadha, taking abundant solid food and soft food, wanted to go (to

Kd.1.19.1

¹ I.e. the four Great Kings, so Vin-a.972. ² Reading “Sakka, lord of *devas*” instead of “the four Great Kings.” ³ *paccupaṭṭhito hoti*. It was a sacrifice performed by him.

it)).¹ Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “At present my great sacrifice is going forward, and the entire (population of) Aṅga and Magadha, taking abundant solid food and soft food, will come. If the great recluse does a wonder of psychic power before the populace, the great recluse’s gains and honour will much increase, my gains and honour will decline. Now the great recluse shall certainly not come to-morrow.”

BD.4.37

Kd.1.19.2

Vin.1.28

Then the Lord, knowing by mind the reasoning in the mind of the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, having gone to Uttarakuru,² having fetched almsfood from there, having eaten it by the Anotatta lake,³ took his midday rest there. Then at the end of that night the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord: “It is time, great recluse, the meal is ready. But why did you not come yesterday, great recluse? We thought of you however, saying ‘How is it that the great recluse does not come?’ A portion of solid food and soft food was put aside for you.”

Kd.1.19.3

“Now did it not occur to you, Kassapa, ‘At present my great sacrifice is going forward ... Now the great recluse shall certainly not come to-morrow’?”

Kd.1.19.4

“So I, Kassapa, knowing by mind the reasoning in your mind, having gone to Uttarakuru, having fetched almsfood from there, having eaten it by the Anotatta lake, took my mid-day rest there.” Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that he also knows mind by mind; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.” Then the Lord, having eaten the meal (offered by) the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, stayed in that same woodland grove.

The Fifth Wonder

Kd.1.20.1

Now at that time a rag-robe accrued to the Lord. Then it occurred to the Lord: “Now where can I wash the rag-robe?” Then Sakka, lord of the

¹ Cf. the people’s annual festivals mentioned at *Psalms of the Brethren* 181, at one of which the Lord converted Kassapa of Uruvelā’s nephew. ² Mentioned at *Vin.3.7* (BD.1.14). See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, especially for its being considered a mark of great psychic power to be able to go here—a somewhat mythical region. ³ One of the seven great lakes of the Himalayas. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*.

devas, knowing by mind the reasoning in the Lord’s mind, having dug a tank with his hand, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Lord may wash the rag-robe here.” Then it occurred to the Lord: “Now on what can I knead the rag-robe?” Then Sakka, lord of the *devas*, knowing by mind the reasoning in the Lord’s mind, having put down a large stone near him, said: “Lord, the Lord may knead the rag-robe here.”

BD.4.38

Kd.1.20.2

Then it occurred to the Lord: “Now holding on to what can I come up from (the water)?” Then a *devatā* inhabiting a *kakudha* (tree)¹, knowing by mind the reasoning in the Lord’s mind, bent down a bough, saying: “Lord, the Lord may come up from (the water) holding on here.” Then it occurred to the Lord: “Now on what can I stretch out² the rag-robe?” Then Sakka, lord of the *devas*, knowing by mind the reasoning in the Lord’s mind, having put down a large stone near him said: “Lord, the Lord may stretch out the rag-robe here”

Vin.1.29

Kd.1.20.3

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord at the end of that night; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord: “It is time, great recluse, the meal is ready. But how is it, great recluse, that this tank was not here before, and now this tank is here? Nor was this stone put down before. By whom was this stone put down? Nor was a bough of this *kakudha* (tree) bent down before, and now this bough is bent down.”

Kd.1.20.4

“Kassapa, a rag-robe accrued to me here, and this occurred to me, Kassapa, ‘Now where can I wash the rag-robe?’ Then, Kassapa, Sakka, lord of the *devas*, knowing by mind the reasoning in my mind, having dug a tank with his hand, spoke thus to me: ‘Lord, the Lord may wash the rag-robe here.’ So this tank was dug by the hand of a non-human being.³ Then this occurred to me, Kassapa, ‘Now on what can I knead the rag-robe?’ ... So this stone was put⁴ by a non-human being.

Kd.1.20.5

Then this occurred to me, Kassapa, ‘Now holding on to what can I come up out of (the water)?’ Then, Kassapa, a *devatā* ... said: ‘Lord, the Lord may

¹ Terminalia Arjuna according to *Pali-English Dictionary*. Cf. Ja.vi.518–519, Dhp-a.iv.153, *Ajjuna* at Buddhavaṃsa viii.23 and Dhp-a.i.105 is the tree of the Buddha Anomadassin. Vin-a.972 calls it *ajjunarukkha*, which *Pali-English Dictionary* calls Pentaptera Arjuna. ² *vissajjeyyaṃ*, explained at Vin-a.972 as *sukkhāpanatthāya pasāretvā ṭhapeyyaṃ* (where) can I put it, stretching it out to dry? ³ *amanussena*. Cf. Vin.3.85 (and BD.1.147, n.2). ⁴ *nikkhittā*, instead of, as previously, *upanikkhi-*.

come up from (the water) holding on here.’ So this *kakudha* (tree) was a hold for my hand.¹ Then this occurred to me, Kassapa, ‘Now on what can I stretch out the rag-robe?’ Then² Sakka, lord of the *devas* ... So this stone was put by a non-human being.”

Kd.1.20.6

Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that Sakka, lord of the *devas*, does him a service; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.” Then the Lord, having eaten the meal (offered by) the matted hair ascetic Uruvelākassapa, stayed in that same woodland grove.

Kd.1.20.7

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord at the end of that night; having approached, he announced the time to the Lord, saying: “It is time, great recluse, the meal is ready.”

Vin.1.30

“You go on, Kassapa, I am coming along,” and having dismissed the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, having plucked a fruit from a rose-apple tree, after which this Land of the Rose-apples³ is named, he sat down in the fire-room, having arrived first.

Kd.1.20.8

The matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa saw the Lord sitting in the fire-room; seeing him he spoke thus to the Lord: “By what way have you come, great recluse? I set out before you, but you are sitting in the fire-room, having arrived first.”

Kd.1.20.9

“Now I, Kassapa, having dismissed you, having plucked a fruit from a rose-apple tree, after which this Land of the Rose-apples is named, am sitting in the fire-room, having arrived first. Truly, Kassapa, this rose-apple fruit is full of colour, full of scent, full of flavor; if you like, do eat it.”

“No, great recluse, you alone are worthy of it, you alone eat it.” Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that having dismissed me first ... he sat down in the fire-room, having arrived first; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.” Then the Lord, having eaten the meal (offered by) the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, stayed in that same woodland grove.

Kd.1.20.10

Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa approached the Lord at the end of that night; having approached he announced the time to the

BD.4.40

¹ *āhara-hattha*. ² The name Kassapa is omitted here. ³ Jambudīpa, usually meaning India.

Lord, saying: “It is time, great recluse, the meal is ready.”

“You go on, Kassapa, I am coming along,” and having dismissed the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, and having plucked a mango fruit not far from the rose-apple tree, after which this Land of the Rose-apples is named ... having plucked a fruit of emblic myrobalan¹ not far from the mango tree ... having plucked a fruit of yellow myrobalan² not far from the emblic myrobalan, having gone to the Thirty,³ having plucked a flower from the Coral Tree,⁴ he sat down in the fire-room, having arrived first. The matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa saw the Lord sitting in the fire-room, and seeing him he spoke thus to the Lord: “By what way have you come, great recluse? I set out before you, but you are sitting in the fire-room, having arrived first.”

Kd.1.20.11

“Now I, Kassapa, having dismissed you, having gone to the Thirty, having plucked a flower from the Coral Tree, am sitting in the fire-room, having arrived first. Truly, Kassapa, this flower of the Coral Tree is full of colour, full of scent; if you like, do take it.”

“No, great recluse, you alone are worthy of it, you alone take it.” Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that having dismissed me first, having gone to the Thirty, having plucked a flower from the Coral Tree, he is sitting in the fire-room, having arrived first; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Vin.1.31

Now at that time these matted hair ascetics, wanting to tend the (sacred) fires, were unable to chop sticks. Then it occurred to these matted hair ascetics: “Doubtless it is (owing to) the psychic might of the great recluse

Kd.1.20.12

BD.4.41

¹ *āmalakī* (here and at MN.i.456; elsewhere *āmalaka*), *Phyllanthus emblica*. The fruit allowed to monks as a medicine, Vin.1.201. Cf. Vin.1.278. ² *haritakī*. Fruit also allowed as a medicine at Vin.1.201. Cf. MN.iii.127. ³ I.e. to the realm of the Thirty (or Thirty-three) Devas, *tāvatiṃsa*. ⁴ *pāricchattaka*, “shading all round,” *Erythrina Indica*. (mythical) tree growing in the Tāvatiṃsa realm. At AN.iv.117 the *devas*’ rejoicings at each stage in the development of shoot and bloom are set out. See GS.iv.78ff. for notes. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, missing the above Vinaya reference, asserts that the flowers are never plucked. In that case this is a noteworthy exception.

that we are unable to chop sticks.” Then the Lord spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Kassapa, let sticks be chopped.”

“Let them be chopped, great recluse.” Five hundred sticks were chopped simultaneously.¹ Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that also sticks are chopped; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Kd.1.20.13

Now at that time these matted hair ascetics, wanting to tend the (sacred) fires, were unable to kindle the fires. Then it occurred to these matted hair ascetics: “Doubtless ... unable to kindle the fires.” Then the Lord spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Kassapa, let the fires be kindled.”

“Let them be kindled, great recluse.” Five hundred fires were kindled simultaneously ... “... in that also the fires are kindled; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Kd.1.20.14

Now at that time these matted hair ascetics, having tended the fires, were unable to extinguish the fires.² ... The five hundred fires were extinguished simultaneously ... “... in that also the fires are extinguished; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

Kd.1.20.15

¹ *sakid eva*, just once, once only. There was doubtless one stick “for each of the five hundred *jaṭilas* over whom Kassapa was chief” (*Vinaya Texts* i.129). ² It is clear therefore that the fires were not kept burning perpetually.

Now at that time on the cold winter nights between the eights¹ in a time of snowfall these matted hair ascetics were plunging into the river Nerañjarā, then emerging and repeatedly plunging in and out.² Then the Lord created as many as five hundred fire-vessels³ just where these matted hair ascetics, having come up from (the river), warmed themselves.⁴ Then it occurred to these matted hair ascetics: “Doubtless it is (owing to) the psychic might of the great recluse that these fire-vessels are created.” Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: “Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that he can create these fire-vessels; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.”

BD.4.42

Vin.1.32

Now at that time a great rain fell out of the proper season, and a great flood resulted.⁵ The Lord was staying in a place which became inundated by water. Then it occurred to the Lord: “Now suppose that I, having made the water recede all round, should pace up and down in the middle on dust-covered ground?” Then the Lord, having made the water recede all round, paced up and down in the middle on dust-covered ground. Then the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa, thinking: “I hope that the great recluse has not been carried away⁶ by the water,” went together with a boat and many matted hair ascetics to that place where the Lord was staying.

Kd.1.20.16

¹ *antaraṭṭhakāsu*, the *aṭṭhakā* days which, according to Vin-a.1128, are “the eight (days) between Māgha and Phagguṇa” (names of lunar mansions). Cf. MN-a.ii.48 (on MN.i.79) “four at the end of the month of Māgha, four at the beginning of the month of Phagguṇa, thus between the two there are eight nights.” Cf. AN-a.ii.225 (on AN.i.136), “the time extends for eight days in the interval between Māgha and Phagguṇa. For there are four days at the end of Māgha and four at the beginning of Phagguṇa, this is called ‘occurring between the eights’” (*antaraṭṭhako*) See Vin.1.288, Ud.1.9, Ud-a.74. Translated at *Sacred Books of the Buddhists* viii, p.7 as “between the eighths”; at GS.i.119, *Further Dialogues of the Buddha* i.55 as “in the dark half of the month(s)”; at *Vinaya Texts* i.130, *Vinaya Texts* ii.211 as “between the Aṣṭakā festivals.” *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives “occurring between the eights.” The translation “eighths” is justified by the meaning of *aṣṭakā* (feminine) as the “eighth day after full moon” (Monier Williams). But “eights” seem preferred by the Commentaries. See notes at *Sacred Books of the Buddhists* viii.p.7, GS.i.119, *Vinaya Texts* i.130. ² Cf. Ud.6 for parallel passage. It would appear that *jaṭilas* practised purification by fire and water; cf. ceremonial bathing at Gayā mentioned by Kassapa of Gayā, Thag.345. ³ *mandāmukhi*. Vin-a.972 calls these *aggibhājāni*. ⁴ Same word, *visibbeti*, as used in Bu-pc.56; see BD.2.398, n.3. ⁵ *sañjāyi*, literally was born, was produced. ⁶ Cf. same expression at Vin.3.213 (BD.2.48).

The matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa saw the Lord who, having made the water recede all round, was pacing up and down in the middle on dust-covered ground, and seeing him he spoke thus to the Lord: "Is it indeed you who are here, great recluse?"

"It is I,¹ Kassapa," and the Lord having risen up above the ground, placed himself in the boat. Then it occurred to the matted hair ascetic Uruvelakassapa: "Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might, in that also the water does not carry him away; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am."

Kd.1.20.17

Then it occurred to the Lord: "Now, for a long time it will occur to this foolish man, 'Truly the great recluse is of great psychic power, of great might; but yet he is not a perfected one as I am.' Now, suppose I should deeply stir² this matted hair ascetic?" Then the Lord spoke thus to the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā: "Neither are you, Kassapa, a perfected one nor have you entered on the way to perfection, and that course is not for you by which you either could be a perfected one or could have entered on the way to perfection." Then the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā, having inclined his head to the Lord's feet, spoke thus to the Lord: "Lord, may I receive the going forth in the Lord's presence, may I receive ordination?"

BD.4.43

Kd.1.20.18

"It is you, Kassapa, who are leader, guide, highest, chief, head of five hundred matted hair ascetics; do consult these so that they can do what they think (right)." Then the matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Uruvelā approached these matted hair ascetics; having approached, he spoke thus to these matted hair ascetics: "I want, good sirs,³ to fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse; let the revered sirs⁴ do what they think (right)."

Vin.1.33

"For a long time we, good sir,⁵ have been much pleased⁶ by the great recluse; if, revered sir,⁷ you will fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse, all of us will fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse."

Kd.1.20.19

Then these matted hair ascetics, having let their hair, their braids, their

¹ Emphatic: *ayam ah'asmi*. ² *saṁvejeyyaṁ*. Cf. this word, as used above, with other examples of it given by A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Saṁvega*, 'Aesthetic Shock', Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, Vol. 7, No. 3, Feb., 1943. ³ *bho*. ⁴ *bhavanto*. ⁵ *bho*. ⁶ In the sense of believing in his teaching. ⁷ *bhavaṁ*.

bundles on the carrying-poles,¹ their implements for fire-worship be carried away² all mixed up in the water, approached the Lord; having approached, having inclined their heads to the Lord's feet, they spoke thus to the Lord: "Lord, may we receive the going forth in the Lord's presence, may we receive ordination?"

BD.4.44

"Come, monks," the Lord said, "well taught is *dhamma* fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill." So this came to be these venerable ones' ordination.

Kd.1.20.20

The matted hair ascetic Kassapa of the River saw the hair the braids, the bundles on the carrying-poles, the implements for fire-worship being carried away all mixed up in the water; seeing this, it occurred to him: "I hope my brother is not in danger," and he dispatched matted hair ascetics saying: "Go and find out about my brother," and he himself with his three hundred matted hair ascetics approached the venerable Kassapa of Uruvela; having approached he spoke thus to the venerable Kassapa of Uruvela: "Is this better, Kassapa?"

"Yes, friend, this is better."

Kd.1.20.21

Then these matted hair ascetics ...³ So this came to be these venerable ones' ordination.

Kd.1.20.22

The matted hair ascetic Kassapa of Gayā saw the hair, the braids, the bundles on the carrying-poles, the implements for fire-worship being carried away all mixed up in the water; seeing this, it occurred to him: "I hope my brothers are not in danger," and he dispatched matted hair ascetics, saying: "Go and find out about my brothers," and he himself with his two hundred matted hair ascetics approached the venerable Kassapa of Uruvela; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Kassapa of Uruvelā: "Is this better, Kassapa?"

"Yes, friend, this is better."

Kd.1.20.23

¹ *khārikāja*, which Vin-a.972 explains as *khāri-bhāra*. *Khāri* is a three bushel measure, *kāja* (= *vividha*, *vivadha*) is the shoulder-pole on which some ascetics and wanderers carried their property, their *khāri*. DN-a.269 calls *khāri* the requisites of an ascetic: kindling wood, water pot, needle and so on. Cf. *khāri-vividha* at Ud.65=SN.i.78, and DN.i.101. ² *pavāhetvā*. *Pavāheti* is to cause to be carried away, and hence to cleanse, to wash away (evil). Perhaps a dual reference is intended here. Cf. Thag.346 (Kassapa of Gayā's verses). ³ Repeating Kd.1.20.19 for the followers of Kassapa of the River.

Then these matted hair ascetics, having let their hair, their braids, their bundles on the carrying-poles, their implements for fire-worship be carried away all mixed up in the water, approached the Lord; having approached, having inclined their heads to the Lord's feet, they spoke thus to the Lord: "Lord, may we receive the going forth in the Lord's presence, may we receive ordination?"

Vin.1.34

"Come, monks," the Lord said, "well taught is *dhamma*, fare the Brahmarfaring for making an utter end of ill." So this came to be these venerable ones' ordination.

Kd.1.20.24

Through the Lord's psychic resolution, five hundred fire-sticks could not be chopped, (and) were chopped; fires could not be kindled (and) were kindled; could not be extinguished (and) were extinguished; five hundred fire-vessels were created. In this way there came to be three thousand five hundred marvels.

BD.4.45

Kd.1.21.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Uruvelā for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Gayā Head together with a large Order of monks, with all those same thousand monks who had formerly been matted hair ascetics. Then the Lord stayed near Gayā at Gayā Head together with the thousand monks.

Kd.1.21.2

And there the Lord addressed the monks, saying: "Monks, everything is burning.¹ And what, monks, is everything that is burning? The eye, monks, is burning, material shapes are burning, consciousness through the eye² is burning, impingement on the eye³ is burning, in other words the feeling which arises from impingement on the eye, be it pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant, that too is burning. With what is it burning? I say it is burning with the fire of passion,⁴ with the fire of hatred, with the fire of stupidity; it is burning because of birth, ageing, dying, because of grief, sorrow, suffering, lamentation and despair.

Kd.1.21.3

"The ear is burning, sounds are burning ... the nose is burning, odours are burning ... the tongue is burning, tastes are burning ... the body is burning, tangible objects are burning ...the mind is burning, mental states

¹ Quoted at Kv.209. ² *cakkhuvīññaṇa*, i.e. cognising by the eye, vision or seeing. See *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, 2nd edition, p.161, n.5; *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.340, *Dialogues of the Buddha* iii.230; and cf. MN.i.111f. ³ *cakkhusamphassa*, or impression on, or contact with, the eye. ⁴ Quoted at Snp-a.32.

are burning, consciousness through the mind¹ is burning, impingement on the mind is burning, in other words the feeling which raises through impingement on the mind, be it pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant, that too is burning. With what is it burning? I say it is burning with the fire of passion, with the fire of hatred, with the fire of stupidity; it is burning because of birth, ageing, dying, because of grief, sorrow, suffering, lamentation and despair.

“Seeing this, monks, the instructed disciple of the ariyans disregards the eye and he disregards material shapes and he disregards consciousness through the eye and he disregards impingement on the eye, in other words the feeling which arises from impingement on the eye, be it pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant, that too he disregards. And he disregards the ear and he disregards sounds, and he disregards the nose and he disregards odours, and he disregards the tongue and he disregards tastes, and he disregards the body and he disregards tangible objects, and he disregards the mind and he disregards mental states and he disregards consciousness through the mind and he disregards impingement on the mind, in other words the feeling that arises from impingement on the mind, be it pleasant or painful or neither painful nor pleasant, that too he disregards; disregarding, he is dispassionate; through dispassion he is freed; in freedom the knowledge comes to be, ‘I am freed’, and he comprehends: Destroyed is birth, lived is the Brahma-faring, done is what was to be done, there is no more of being such or such.”²

And while this discourse was being uttered, the minds of these thousand monks were freed from the cankers without grasping.

Told is the Disquisition³ on Burning

Told is the Third Portion for Repeating: the Wonder(s) at Uruvelā

¹ *manoviññāṇa*, i.e. cognising by the mind, ‘apprehending’.

² As above, **BD.4.21**.

³ *pariyāya*.

Kd.1.21.4

BD.4.46

Vin.1.35

ON BIMBISĀRA'S GATHERING

Then the Lord, having stayed at Gayā Head for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Rājagaha together with the large Order of monks, with all those same thousand monks who had formerly been matted hair ascetics. Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Rājagaha. The Lord stayed there at Rājagaha in the Palm Grove pleasure ground¹ in the Supatiṭṭha shrine.²

Kd.1.22.2

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha heard: “Verily, the recluse Gotama, the son of the Sakyans, who has gone forth from the Sakyan clan, has reached Rājagaha and is staying at Rājagaha in the Palm Grove pleasure ground in the Supatiṭṭha shrine. A lovely reputation has gone forth concerning the Lord Gotama, thus: He is indeed Lord, perfected one, fully awakened one, endowed with knowledge and conduct, well-farer, knower of the worlds, unrivalled charioteer of men to be tamed, teacher of *devas* and mankind, awakened one, Lord. Having realised them by his own super-knowledge, he makes known this world with its *devas*, with its Māras, with its Brahmās, creatures with *devas* and men, with recluses and brahmins. He teaches *dhamma*, lovely at the beginning, lovely in the middle, lovely at the ending. He explains with the spirit and the letter the Brahma-faring completely fulfilled and wholly pure. Good indeed it were to see perfected ones like this.”

BD.4.47

Kd.1.22.3

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, surrounded by twelve myriad³ brahmins and householders⁴ of Magadha, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Then some of these twelve myriad brahmins and householders of Magadha having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance; some exchanged

Vin.1.36

¹ Laṭṭhivanuyyāna, literally the pleasance, pleasure ground or park of the grove of sprouts (or canes or sticks). Vin-a.972 explains by *tāluyyāna*, the palmyra, or talipot-palm pleasance. Cf. Ja.i.68, Ja.i.84; and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ² Vin-a.972 calls this a round tree. See E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.230. ³ *nahuti*. Cf. Snp.677. Exact meaning unknown, but some high number. Vin-a.972 says “here one *nahuta* is ten thousand.” ⁴ *brāhmaṇagahapatika*, not “brahmin householders” as at BURLINGAME, *Buddhist Legends* i.197, but as at *Vinaya Texts* i.137 (where see note) and above. For see definition of “householder” at Vin.3.222, “setting aside king ... and Brahmin, he who remains is called ‘householder’.”

greetings with the Lord, and having exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy, they sat down at a respectful distance; some having saluted the Lord with joined palms, sat down at a respectful distance; some having shouted out their name and clan before the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance; some having become silent, sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.1.22.4

Then it occurred to those twelve myriad brahmins and householders of Magadha: “Now,¹ does the great recluse fare the Brahma-faring under Kassapa of Uruvelā, or does Kassapa of Uruvelā fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse?” Then the Lord, knowing with his mind the reasoning in the minds of those twelve myriad brahmins and householders of Magadha, addressed Kassapa of Uruvelā with the verses:

BD.4.48

“What hast thou seen, O dweller in Uruvelā,
That thou, known as emaciate², hast abandoned the (sacred)
fire?

I ask thee about this matter, Kassapa:
Hast thou abandoned thy fire-implements?”

“The sacrifices speak of forms and sounds,
Also of tastes³, pleasures and women.
Knowing that ‘This is dross’ among affections—
Therefore I delighted not in sacrifice, in offering.”

Kd.1.22.5

“But if your mind delights not there, Kassapa,” the Lord said,
“Among forms, sounds and also tastes,
Then in the world of *devas* and men what does your mind delight
in?

Kassapa, tell me that.”

“When I had seen the path, peaceful, without substrate,⁴
Stainless⁵, not attached to sensations’ becoming,

¹ Cf. Ja.vi.220; To end of second verse quoted at Bv-a.20. ² *kisako vadāno*; see note *Vinaya Texts* i.138, n.1. ³ *rūpe ca sadde ca atho rase*; cf. Snp.974. ⁴ *anupadhika*, i.e. without substrate for or attachment to rebirth. ⁵ *akiñcanaṃ kāmabhava asattaṃ*, also at Snp.176, Snp.1059, Snp.1091. *Akiñcana* can also mean “having nothing”, “calling nothing one’s own”, see *Vinaya Texts* i.139, n.1. Vin-a.973 says of it that it means without the stain of passion.

Not becoming otherwise¹, where one is not led by others²—
In consequence, I delighted not in sacrifice, in offering.”

Kd.1.22.6

Then the venerable Kassapa of Uruvelā, rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having inclined his head towards the Lord’s feet, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Lord is my teacher, I am a disciple³; Lord, the Lord is my teacher, I am a disciple.” Then it occurred to those twelve myriad Brahmins and householders of Magadha: “Kassapa of Uruvelā fares the Brahma-faring under the great recluse.”

Kd.1.22.7

Then the Lord, knowing by mind the reasoning in the minds of these twelve myriad Brahmins and householders of Magadha, talked a progressive talk ... stopping, the Way.⁴

BD.4.49

Vin.1.37

Kd.1.22.8

And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take a dye, even so as the twelve myriad Brahmins and householders of Magadha with Bimbisāra at their head were (sitting) in those very seats, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to them, that “Whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop,” and one myriad declared themselves to be lay-followers.

Kd.1.22.9

Then King Bimbisāra of Magadha, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, having crossed over doubt, put away uncertainty, having attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “Formerly, Lord, when I was a young man I had five ambitions.⁵ These are now realised⁶ by me.

1. “Formerly, Lord, when I was a young man it occurred to me: ‘Might I be anointed into kingship.’ This was my first ambition, Lord. It has now been realised by me.
2. “And ‘Might the perfected one, the fully awakened one come into my realm.’ This, Lord, was my second ambition. It has now been realised by me.

Kd.1.22.10

¹ *anaññathābhāvīm*, i.e. there is no becoming (for the path) as to birth, decrepitude, dying (according to Vin-a.973). Cf. SN.iii.225, SN.iv.23, SN.iv.66. ² *anaññaneyyam*. Vin-a.973 says that one should oneself, by making the Way become, come to the path and should not be brought to it by anyone else. Cf. Snp.55, Snp.213, Snp.364. ³ Ja.vi.220, Bv-a.20. ⁴ As above, Kd.1.7.5-1.7.6. ⁵ *assāsaka*. ⁶ *samiddha*, well effected.

3. “And ‘That I might pay homage to this Lord.’ This, Lord, was my third ambition. It has now been realised by me.
4. “And ‘May that Lord teach me *dhamma*.’ This, Lord, was my fourth ambition. It has now been realised by me.
5. “And ‘Might I understand that Lord’s *dhamma*.’ This, Lord, was my fifth ambition. It has now been realised by me.

“Formerly, Lord, when I was a young man I had these five ambitions. They are now realised by me.

“Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! Even, Lord, as one might set upright what has been upset¹ ... even so is *dhamma* explained in many a figure by the Lord. So I, Lord, go to the Lord² as refuge and to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. Lord, may the Lord accept me as a lay-disciple gone for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts. And, Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me to-morrow together with the Order of monks.”
The Lord consented by becoming silent.

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared, at the end of that night had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “Lord, it is time, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha together with the large Order of monks, with all those same thousand monks who had formerly been matted-hair ascetics.

Now at that time Sakka, lord of the *devas*, having assumed the form of a Brahmin youth, walked in front of the Order of monks with the Lord at its head, singing these verses:

“The tamed with the tamed,
with the former matted-hair ascetics,
the well freed³ with the well freed,
The Lord, beautifully coloured like a golden ornament,⁴

¹ As above, i.7.10. ² *bhagavantam*. ³ *vippamutta*. ⁴ *singīnikkhasuvaṇṇa*. Cf. SN.ii.234. Gold is the colour for immortality.

Kd.1.22.11

Vin.1.38

Kd.1.22.12
BD.4.50

Kd.1.22.13

entered Rājagaha.

“The freed¹ with the freed,
with the former matted-hair ascetics,
the well freed with the well freed,
The Lord, beautifully coloured like a golden ornament,
entered Rājagaha.

“The crossed over with the crossed over,
with the former matted-hair ascetics,
the well freed with the well freed,
The Lord, beautifully coloured like a golden ornament,
entered Rājagaha.

“He of the ten states,²
of the ten powers,³
versed in the ten things,⁴
and furnished with the ten,⁵
He, the Lord, surrounded by ten hundred,
entered Rājagaha.⁶”

Kd.1.22.14

People having seen Sakka, lord of the *devas*, spoke thus: “Indeed this brahmin youth is lovely, indeed this brahmin youth is good to look upon, indeed this brahmin youth is charming. Whose, now, is this brahmin youth?”
BD.4.51 When they had spoken thus, Sakka, lord of the *devas*, addressed these people with a verse:

“He who is steadfast, tamed in every way,
awakened, peerless among men,
Perfected, well-farer,
I am his attendant in the world.”⁷

Kd.1.22.15

¹ *mutta*. ² *dasavāsa*. Ten *ariya-vāsā* given at DN.iii.269, AN.v.29. ³ *dasabala* became an epithet of this and the previous Buddhas. ⁴ According to Vin-a.973 the ten paths of action. ⁵ According to Vin-a.973 the ten factors of an adept, *asekhehi aṅgehi upeto*. Cf. the adept’s ten qualities, *dhammā*, at AN.v.222, and his ten powers, *balāni*, at Ps.ii.173: both consist of the eight “fitnesses” of the eightfold Way with the addition of right knowledge and right freedom. ⁶ Quoted at Ja.i.84. ⁷ Ja.i.84.

Then the Lord approached the dwelling of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, with his own hand having offered, having satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with sumptuous food, solid and soft, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from the bowl, sat down at a respectful distance.

As he was sitting down at a respectful distance it occurred to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “Now, where could the Lord stay that would be neither too far from a village nor too near, suitable for coming and going, accessible for people whenever they want¹, not crowded by day, having little noise at night, little sound, without folk’s breath, haunts of privacy, suitable for seclusion?”²

Then it occurred to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “Now, this Bamboo Grove of ours, a pleasure park,³ is neither too far from a village ... suitable for seclusion. Suppose I were to give the Bamboo Grove, a pleasure park, to the Order of the monks with the awakened one at its head?”

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having taken a ceremonial vessel made of gold, dedicated it to the Lord, saying: “May I, Lord, give this Bamboo Grove, a pleasure park, to the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head?” The Lord accepted the park.⁴ Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with talk on *dhamma*, having risen from his seat, departed. Then the Lord, on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, I allow a park.”⁵

Vin.1.39

Kd.1.22.16

Kd.1.22.17

Kd.1.22.18

BD.4.52

ON THE GOING FORTH OF SĀRIPUTTA AND MOGGALLĀNA

Kd.1.23.1

At that time the wanderer Sañjaya¹ was residing in Rājagaha together with a great company of wanderers, with two hundred and fifty wanderers. Now at that time Sāriputta and Moggallāna fared the Brahma-faring under the wanderer Sañjaya, and an agreement came to be formed by these: “Whoever attains the deathless first, let him announce it.”

Kd.1.23.2

Then the venerable Assaji,² having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood. He was pleasing whether he was approaching or departing, whether he was looking in front or looking behind, whether he was drawing in or stretching out (his arm), his eyes were cast down, he was possessed of pleasant behaviour.³ The wanderer Sāriputta saw the venerable Assaji walking for almsfood in Rājagaha—pleasing whether he was approaching ... possessed of pleasant behaviour—and seeing him, it occurred to him: “This is one of those monks who are indeed perfected ones in the world or who have entered on the way to perfection. What now if I, having approached this monk, should ask him: ‘On account of whom are you, your reverence, gone forth, or who is your teacher, or whose *dhamma* do you profess?’⁴”

Vin.1.40

Kd.1.23.3

Then it occurred to the wanderer Sāriputta: “But it is not the right time to question this monk, he has gone in among the houses, he is walking for almsfood. What now if I should follow close after this monk who has learnt a way for those who need it⁵?” Then the venerable Assaji, having

¹ *atthikānaṃ-atthikānaṃ*, explained at Vin-a.974 as going up to the awakened one and hearing *dhamma*. ² This is stock, Vin.2.158, DN.iii.38, MN.ii.118, MN.iii.13, AN.iv.88, Vb.224.

³ *uyyāna*; see definition at Vin.4.298. (BD.3.325). ⁴ *uyyāna*; see definition at Vin.4.298. (BD.3.325). ⁵ *Ārāma*, a park, and then a monastery. ¹ *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*,

ii.p.1000 identifies him with Sañjaya-Belaṭṭhiputta, one of the six famous heretical teachers of Gotama’s days, and whose doctrines are given at DN.i.58. See also MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.123. ² This Assaji was one of “the group of five” friends to whom Gotama addressed his first and second Utterances. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.122ff. for the view that the “subject of causation ... is due directly to Assaji,” and her *Gotama the Man*, p.76f., p.108, p.242, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.215. ³ Stock. Cf. e.g. MN.iii.35, MN.iii.90, DN.i.79, AN.ii.104, AN.ii.106, AN.ii.210, Vin.3.180. ⁴ Cf. above Kd.1.6.7. ⁵ *atthikehi upaṇṇātaṃ maggaṃ*. Vin-a.975 says this means either a way that is known and practiced; or, there will be deathlessness for us who need it; and thus *upaṇṇāta* means *nibbāna*, and so the meaning here is: tracking (or wayfaring after, *magganto*), seeking this.

¹ *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, ii.p.1000 identifies him with Sañjaya-Belaṭṭhiputta, one of the six famous heretical teachers of Gotama’s days, and whose doctrines are given at DN.i.58. See also MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.123. ² This Assaji was one of “the group of five” friends to whom Gotama addressed his first and second Utterances. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.122ff. for the view that the “subject of causation ... is due directly to Assaji,” and her *Gotama the Man*, p.76f., p.108, p.242, *Manual of Buddhism*, p.215. ³ Stock. Cf. e.g. MN.iii.35, MN.iii.90, DN.i.79, AN.ii.104, AN.ii.106, AN.ii.210, Vin.3.180. ⁴ Cf. above Kd.1.6.7. ⁵ *atthikehi upaṇṇātaṃ maggaṃ*. Vin-a.975 says this means either a way that is known and practiced; or, there will be deathlessness for us who need it; and thus *upaṇṇāta* means *nibbāna*, and so the meaning here is: tracking (or wayfaring after, *magganto*), seeking this.

walked for almsfood in Rājagaha, taking his almsbowl, returned. Then the wanderer Sāriputta approached the venerable Assaji; having approached, he exchanged greetings with the venerable Assaji; having exchanged courteous and friendly greetings, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, the wanderer Sāriputta spoke thus to the venerable Assaji: “Your reverence, your faculties are quite pure, your complexion very bright, very clear. On account of whom, your reverence, have you gone forth, or who is your teacher, or whose *dhamma* do you profess¹?”

BD.4.53

“There is, friend, a great recluse, a son of the Sakyans, gone forth from a Sakyan family. I have gone forth on account of this Lord and this Lord is my teacher and I profess this Lord’s *dhamma*.”

Kd.1.23.4

“But what is the doctrine of your reverence’s teacher, what does he point out?”

“Now, I, friend, am new,² not long gone forth, fresh to this *dhamma* and discipline. I am not able to teach you *dhamma* in full, but I can tell you its purport³ briefly.”

Then the wanderer Sāriputta spoke thus to the venerable Assaji: “So be it, your reverence, tell me little or tell me much, (but) in any case explain to me its purport; I want just its purport. Why should you make a great elaboration⁴?”

Kd.1.23.5

Then the venerable Assaji uttered this terse expression⁵ of *dhamma* to the wanderer Sāriputta:

BD.4.54

¹ As at Kd.1.6.7. ² *nava*. If occurring with *bhikkhu* means a recently ordained monk. But not so combined here. It can also mean young, but other evidence is lacking to show that Assaji, the last of the group of five to attain *dhamma*-vision Kd.1.6.36 was young in years. He was however young in standing as a follower of Gotama, newly ordained. ³ *attha*. This whole passage is controversial. MRS. RHYS DAVIDS takes *attha* here as “the well, the good,” *Sakya*, p.134f.; COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, vol.4, no.2, July 1939, p.172f. as “purport”. On the whole I am inclined to agree with his interpretation of the passage. See also E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, etc., p.93f. ⁴ *vyañjana*. See COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, vol.4, no.2, July 1939, p.171ff. E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha as Legend and History*, p.94, n.1, says that this is a verse “in *āryā* metre ... even if now corrupted”, and he prints it as verse as does Norman at Dhṛp-a.1.92. ⁵ *pariyāya*, formula, paraphrase, circumlocution, see COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, vol.4, no.2, July 1939, p.172, n.1. Perhaps “epitome”. Cf. AN.iv.63, where *dhamma-pariyāya* also appears to refer to verses.

“Those things which proceed from a cause,
of these the Truth-finder has told the cause,
And that which is their stopping—
the great recluse has such a doctrine.”¹

When the wanderer Sāriputta had heard this terse expression of *dhamma*, there arose *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, that “Whatever is of the nature to uprise all that is of the nature to stop.” He said: “If this is indeed *dhamma*, you have penetrated as far as the sorrowless path, unseen, neglected for many myriads of æons.”²

Kd.1.23.6

Then the wanderer Sāriputta approached the wanderer Moggallāna. Then the wanderer Moggallāna saw the wanderer Sāriputta coming in the distance, and seeing the wanderer Sāriputta, he spoke thus: “Friend, your faculties are quite pure, your complexion very bright, very clear. Can it be that you, friend, have attained the deathless?”

Vin.1.41

“Yes, friend, I have attained the deathless.”

Kd.1.23.7

“But how did you, friend, attain the deathless?”

“Now, I, friend, saw the venerable Assaji walking for almsfood in Rājagaha—pleasing whether he was approaching or departing ... (as at [Kd.1.23.2](#))

Kd.1.23.8

...

“Then, friend, it occurred to me: ‘But it is not the right time to question this monk ... (as at [Kd.1.23.3](#), [Kd.1.23.4](#)) ...

Kd.1.23.9

“Then, friend, the venerable Assaji uttered this terse expression of *dhamma*:

“Those things which proceed from a cause,
of these the Truthfinder has told the cause,
And that which is their stopping—
the great recluse has such a doctrine.”

When the wanderer Moggallāna had heard this terse expression of *dhamma* ... (as at [Kd.1.23.5](#)) ...

Vin.1.42

Kd.1.24.1

BD.4.55

¹ Referred to at Ja.i.85. ² =Tha-ap.i.149. See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.135. Vin-a.976 takes the phrase to mean “this sorrowless path, unseen by us for many myriads of aeons is neglected” (or passed by, *abbhatitam*). Or, taking *abbhatitam* to mean “in the past, what is passed and over”, this passage could be translated; “unseen by us for many myriads of aeons in the past.”

Then the wanderer Moggallāna spoke thus to the wanderer Sāriputta: “Let us go, friend, to the Lord, (for) this Lord is the teacher for us.”

“Friend, these two hundred and fifty wanderers are staying here because of us, looking to us; do let us consult them so that they may do what they think (right).” Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna approached these wanderers; having approached, they spoke thus to these wanderers:

“We are going, friends, to the Lord, (for) this Lord is the teacher for us.”

“We, venerable ones, are staying here because of you, looking to you. If the venerable ones will fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse all of us will fare the Brahma-faring under the great recluse.”

Kd.1.24.2

Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna approached the wanderer Sañjaya; having approached they spoke thus to the wanderer Sañjaya: “Sir, we are going to the Lord, (for) this Lord is the teacher for us.”

“No, friends, do not go; we three will one and all look after this group.” And a second time ... And a third time ... “... will look after this group.”

Kd.1.24.3

Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna, taking those two hundred and fifty wanderers, approached the Bamboo Grove; but on that self-same spot hot blood issued from the mouth of Sañjaya the wanderer.¹ The Lord saw Sāriputta and Moggallāna coming in the distance; seeing them, he addressed the monks saying:

“Monks, these two friends, Kolita and Upatissa,² are coming. This pair of disciples will be my chief, my eminent pair.”³

When, in the deep sphere of knowledge,
they had attained the matchless freedom
in which there is destruction of attachments,⁴
then the teacher explained about them
in the Bamboo Grove:

¹ See *Vinaya Texts* i.149, n.1. ² Moggallāna was named Kolita, probably after his village, where he was born; Upatissa was Sāriputta’s name, as he is recorded to say at MN.i.150, “but my fellow Brahma-farers know me as Sāriputta”—a name derived from his mother’s, Rūpasārī. ³ Quoted at Dhp-a.i.95. ⁴ See *Vinaya Texts* i.149, n.3, for note on “extraordinary grammatical construction” of this passage. Note by Sujato: The reason for the “extraordinary grammatical construction” is that the passage is in verse, which was not recognized by editor or translator. I have not changed the text, but I have formatted it as verse.

“These two friends,
 Kolita and Upatissa, are coming.
 This pair of disciples will be my chief,
 my eminent pair.”

Kd.1.24.4
 Bd.4.56
 Vin.1.43

Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna approached the Lord; having approached, having inclined their heads to the Lord’s feet, they spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may we receive the going forth in the Lord’s presence, may we receive ordination?”

“Come, monks,” the Lord said, “well taught is *dhamma* fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.” So this was these venerable ones’ ordination.

Kd.1.24.5

Now at that time very distinguished young men belonging to respectable families of Magadha were faring the Brahma-faring under the Lord. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “The recluse Gotama gets along by making (us) childless, the recluse Gotama gets along by making (us) widows, the recluse Gotama gets along by breaking up families. A thousand matted hair ascetics have now been allowed to go forth by him, and these two hundred and fifty wanderers of Sañjaya have been allowed to go forth, and these very distinguished young men belonging to respectable families of Magadha are faring the Brahma-faring under the recluse Gotama.” Moreover, having seen the monks, they reprovved them in this verse:

“The great recluse has come
 to Giribbaja of the Magadhese
 Leading all Sañjaya’s (followers).
 Who will now be led by him?”

Kd.1.24.6

Monks heard these who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, this noise will not last for long, it will last only for seven days, after seven days it will cease. Therefore, monks, if they reprove you in this verse:

‘The great recluse has come

to Giribbaja¹ of the Magadhese
 Leading all Sañjaya's (followers).
 Who will now be led by him?

You should reprove them in reply in this verse:

'Verily great heroes, Truthfinders,
 lead by what is true *dhamma*.
 Who would be jealous of the wise,
 leading by *dhamma*?'"

Now at that time the people, having seen the monks, reproved them in this verse:

Kd.1.24.7
 BD.4.57

"The great recluse has come
 to Giribbaja of the Magadhese
 Leading all Sañjaya's (followers).
 Who will now be led by him?"

The monks reproved these people in reply in this verse:

"Verily great heroes, Truthfinders,
 lead by what is true *dhamma*.
 Who would be jealous of the wise,
 leading by *dhamma*?"

Vin.1.44

With the people saying: "It is said that the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, lead by *dhamma*, not by what is not-*dhamma*," that noise lasted exactly seven days, after seven days it ceased.

Told is the Going Forth of Sāriputta and Moggallāna

Told is the Fourth Portion for Repeating

¹ A name for Rājagaha, cf. Snp.408. Literally "cow-pen". Vin-a.97 says Giribbaja was a town in the country of the Magadhese.

ON THE DUTIES TO THE PRECEPTOR

Now at that time monks, being without preceptors, not being exhorted, not being instructed, walked for almsfood wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, not befittingly attired.¹ While people were eating, they held their almsbowls close above the soft food for the remains,² and they held their almsbowls close above the solid food for the remains, and they held their almsbowls close above the savoury food for the remains, and they held their almsbowls close above the beverages³ for the remains, and having themselves asked for curry and boiled rice,⁴ they ate it, and they remained in the refectory making a loud noise, a great noise.⁵

Kd.1.25.2

People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, walk for almsfood, wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, not befittingly attired? While people are eating, they hold their almsbowls close above the soft food ... and they remain in the refectory making a loud noise, a great noise, like brahmins at the meal-time of brahmins.”

BD.4.58

Kd.1.25.3

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks, contented, conscientious, scrupulous desirous of training ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks walk for almsfood wrongly dressed ... and remain in the refectory making a loud noise, a great noise?”

Kd.1.25.4

Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks walk for almsfood wrongly dressed ... and remain in the refectory making a great noise, a loud noise?”

Vin.1.45

“It is true, Lord.”

Kd.1.25.5

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“It is not fitting, monks, in these foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is unworthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be

¹ See Bu-Sk.1, Bu-Sk.2, Bu-Sk.3, Bu-Sk.4, Bu-Sk.23, Bu-Sk.24, and BD.2.369 for references. I think it is meant that they were not wearing their robes in the regulation ways. ² *uttiṭṭhappatta*. Vin-a.977, as noted in *Vinaya Texts* i.152, gives two explanations of this phrase, the one connecting it with *ucchittha*, left over, rejected; the other with *uṭṭhahati*, to rise. ³ Cf. Vin.3.72 (BD.1.124) for these four items. ⁴ *odana*, one of the five soft foods (Vin.4.83). ⁵ Cf. Bu-Sk.11–Bu-Sk.14.

done. How, monks, can these foolish men walk for almsfood ... and remain in the refectory making a loud noise, a great noise? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased, but it is, monks, for displeasing those who are not (yet) pleased as well as those who are pleased, and for causing wavering in some.”

Kd.1.25.6

Then the Lord,¹ having rebuked these monks, having in many a figure spoken in dispraise of difficulty in supporting and maintaining oneself, of great desires, of lack of contentment, of clinging (to the obstructions), of indolence; having in many a figure spoken in praise of ease in supporting and maintaining oneself, of desiring little, of contentment, of expunging (evil), of punctiliousness, of graciousness, of decreasing (the obstructions), of putting forth energy, having given reasoned talk on what is fitting, on what is becoming, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow a preceptor.² The preceptor, monks, should arouse in the one who shares his cell³ the attitude of a son⁴; the one who shares his cell should arouse in the preceptor the attitude of a father.⁵ Thus these, living with reverence, with deference, with courtesy towards one another, will come to growth, to increase, to maturity in this *dhamma* and discipline.

BD.4.59

Kd.1.25.7

“And thus, monks, should a preceptor be chosen⁶: having arranged the upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured his feet, having sat down on the haunches, having saluted with joined palms, he should speak to him thus: ‘Honoured sir, be my preceptor; honoured sir, be my preceptor; honoured sir, be my preceptor.’ If he⁷ says: ‘Very well’ or ‘Certainly’ or ‘All right’ or ‘It is proper’ or ‘Manage it amiably’, and makes this understood by gesture, makes this understood by speech, makes this understood by gesture and by speech, the preceptor has been chosen; if he does not make this understood by gesture, if he does not make this understood by speech,

Vin.1.46

¹ Cf. this passage with Vin.3.21 (BD.1.37). ² *upajjhāya*; Sanskrit *upadhyāya*, a tutor. ³ *saddhivihārika*, literally one who stays, resides, lives with (another), a co-resident, and so a pupil in the same *vihāra*. ⁴ *puttacitta*, a son’s mind. Cf. SN.iv.110f., *mātucitta bhaginīcitta dhītucitta*, the mind of a mother, sister, daughter. ⁵ *pitucitta*, a father’s mind. ⁶ *ga-hetabbo*, literally should be taken. But words for “choosing” were almost lacking, and *gaṇhāti* was often made to do duty for them. ⁷ I.e. the preceptor, see Vin-a.977.

if he does not make this understood by gesture and by speech, the preceptor has not been chosen.

Kd.1.25.8

“The one who shares a cell,¹ monks, should conduct himself properly towards the preceptor. This is the proper conduct in this respect: having got up early, having taken off his sandals,² having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, he should give tooth-wood,³ he should give water for rinsing the mouth, he should make ready a seat. If there is conje, having washed a bowl, the conje should be placed near (the preceptor). When he has drunk the conje, having given him water, having received the bowl, having lowered it,⁴ having washed it properly without rubbing it, it should be put away. When the preceptor has got up, the seat should be removed. If that place is soiled, that place should be swept.

BD.4.60

Kd.1.25.9

“If the preceptor wishes to enter a village, his inner clothing⁵ should be given (to him), the inner clothing (that he is wearing) should be received (from him) in return,⁶ the girdle should be given (to him); having folded

¹ From here to BD.4.67 below, = Vin.2.223–227. ² Vin-a.977 says he might have worn these for pacing up and down or for keeping his feet clean if he had got up early. ³ *dantakaṭṭha*, as used by Indians today, a piece of wood. Allowed at Vin.2.138. Vin-a.977 says that the *saddhivihārika*, the one who shares a cell, having brought a large, a middle-sized and a small one—whatever he (the preceptor) takes of these is for three days, and then on the fourth, day he should be given the same again. ⁴ *nīcaṃ katvā*. So as not to let drops of water from inside the bowl spoil his robes when one is washing it; in the case of an earthen bowl it might break if dropped from a height. ⁵ *nivāsana*; possibly another word for *antaravāsaka*, the putting on of which is denoted by *nivāseti*, cf. BD.2.1, n.2, BD.2.32, n.2, n.3. ⁶ *paṭṇivāsanaṃ paṭṇiggaḥetabbaṃ*. Vin-a.978 is silent. *Vinaya Texts* i.155 suggests “house-dress?”. This would mean some kind of robe in addition to the three regulation ones. Bohtlingk and Roth, and Monier-Williams also both give “a kind of garment, for Buddhists”. It would look as if a monk might, and indeed must, enter village in a *nivāsāna*, but not in a *paṭṇivāsana*. I doubt the separate existence of such a garment. I suggest it is a *nivāsāna* that is simply changed for another when a monk sets out on the begging round. If he has a change of *nivāsāna* he could not be a *tecīvarika*. Monks in Ceylon often change their robes before they go out.

them¹ (into two or four folds), the outer robes are to be given² (to him); having washed it, a bowl with water³ is to be given (to him). If the preceptor desires an attendant, (the latter) having put on his inner robe all round so as to cover the three circles,⁴ having bound on the girdle, having folded them and having dressed in the outer robes, having fastened the ties, having washed, having taken a bowl, should be the preceptor's attendant. He should not walk too far away (from him), he should not walk too close. He should receive the bowl and its contents.⁵

“He should not interrupt the preceptor when he is speaking. (But) if the preceptor is bordering on an offence, then speaking himself, he should warn him. When he⁶ is returning,⁷ he⁸ should make a seat ready, having come back first; he should set out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand⁹; having gone to meet him, he should receive his bowl and robe, he should give back the inner clothing (given) in return, he should receive his inner clothing. If a robe is damp with perspiration, he should dry it for a short time in the sun's warmth, but a robe should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should fold up the robe. When folding up the robe, having made the corners turn back four finger-breadths, he should fold up the robe thinking: ‘Mind there is no crease¹⁰ in the middle.’ The girdle should be placed in a fold (of the robe).¹¹ If there comes to be almsfood and

Kd.1.25.10

BD.4.61

¹ *saguṇaṃ katvā*. As at [Kd.18.4.3](#). Vin-a.789 says “having made two robes of one” (i.e. having put two robes together), “two outer cloaks (*saṅghāṭiyo*) are to be given. Every robe is called a *saṅghati* if it is put together, *saṅghāṭittā*”. It thus seems that *saṅghāṭi* here stands both for the outer cloak and for the upper robe, *uttarāsanga*; not for the inner robe, however, since this, under the name *nivāsana*, had probably been given to the preceptor already. Usually there is only one robe called *saṅghāṭi*. ² *saṅghāṭiyo*, literally outer cloaks. See above note. ³ *sa-udako* means with the drops of water remaining in the bowl after rinsing it, not drying it. ⁴ Cf. [Bu-Sk.1](#), [Bu-Sk.2](#) ([BD.3.121](#)). ⁵ *pattapariyāpanna*. Vin-a.978 says that if the bowl is warm or heavy with the coney or rice received, the one who shares a cell should take the preceptor's bowl and give him his own. ⁶ Presumably the preceptor. ⁷ To the monastery from the alms-round. ⁸ Presumably the one who shares a cell. ⁹ Cf. [Vin.1.9](#); [Vin.4.231](#), [Vin.4.310](#) ([BD.3.191](#)). ¹⁰ *bhaṅga*, breaking, splitting, dissolution, destruction. Vin-a.979 indicates that if the robe were folded up in the same crease every time, it would wear thin along that crease. ¹¹ *obhoga*. Vin-a.979 says “having folded up the girdle, it should be laid aside having arranged it in a fold (*bhoga*) of the robe”.

the preceptor wishes to eat,¹ having given him water, almsfood should be placed near (him).

Kd.1.25.11

“He should offer the preceptor drinking-water. When he has eaten, having given him water, having received the bowl, having lowered it,² having washed it properly without rubbing it, having emptied out the water, he should dry it for a short time in the sun’s warmth, but a bowl should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl, having taken the bowl in one hand, having felt with the other hand under the couch or under the chair, the bowl should be laid aside, but the bowl should not be laid aside on the bare ground.³ When laying aside a robe, having taken the robe in one hand, having stroked the other hand along the bamboo for robes or the cord for robes, having got the edges away from him and the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside.⁴ When the preceptor has got up, the seat should be removed, the water for washing the feet, the foot-stool, the foot-stand should be put away. If that place comes to be soiled, that place should be swept.

Vin.1.47

Kd.1.25.12

“If the preceptor wishes to bathe, he should prepare a bath. If he wants a cold (bath), he should prepare a cold one; if he wants a hot (bath), he should prepare a hot one. If the preceptor wishes to enter a bathroom⁵, he should knead chunam should moisten clay⁶; taking a chair for the bathroom,⁷ having gone close behind the preceptor, having given him the chair for the bathroom, having received his robe, he should lay it to one side. He should give him the chunam, he should give him the clay. If he is able to do so,⁸ he should enter the bathroom. When he is entering the bathroom, having smeared his face with clay, having covered himself front and back, he should enter the bathroom.

BD.4.62

Kd.1.25.13

¹ Vin-a.979 says that this would only be if he had failed to obtain almsfood in the village; in this case the one who shares his cell should bring him the almsfood which he himself had obtained. ² So as not to get dusty, Vin-a.979. ³ So as not to get dusty, Vin-a.979.

⁴ Vin-a.980, he is not to lay it aside by taking hold of the edges and throwing the robe over bamboo or cord, or the fold might be damaged by coming into contact with a wall.

⁵ *jantāghara*, see *Vinaya Texts* i.157, n.2; iii.103. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.183, calls *jantāghara*, “a common bath”, and *jantāgharasālā*, “bath-rooms”. ⁶ Clay for use on the face in the bath-room allowed at [Vin.2.120](#). ⁷ Allowed at [Vin.2.120](#). ⁸ Vin-a.980, if he is not ill. The bathroom must have been full of hot steam, and juniors as much as seniors had to be careful to protect their faces with a smearing of clay.

“He should not sit down so as to encroach upon (the space intended for) monks who are elders.¹ He should not keep newly ordained monks from a seat. He should make preparation for the preceptor in the bathroom. When he is leaving the bathroom, taking the chair for the bathroom, having covered himself front and back, he should leave the bath-room. He should also make preparation for the preceptor in the water. When he is bathing, having come out (of the water) first, having dried his own body, having put on his inner robe, he should wipe off the water from the preceptor’s limbs, he should give him his inner clothing, he should give him his outer cloak²; taking the chair for the bathroom, having come back first, he should make ready a seat, he should put out water for washing the feet, a footstool, a footstand. He should offer the preceptor drinking-water.

Kd.1.25.14

“If he wishes to make him recite,³ he should make him recite. If he wishes to interrogate,⁴ he should be interrogated. In whatever dwelling-place the preceptor is staying, if that dwelling-place is soiled, it should be cleaned if he⁵ is able (to do so). When he is cleaning the dwelling-place, having first taken out the bowl and robes, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet,⁶ he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the mattress⁷ and the squatting-mat,⁸ he should lay them to one side.

BD.4.63

“Having lowered the couch, having taken it out properly without rubbing it,⁹ without knocking it against the door or the posts,¹⁰ he should lay it to one side. Having lowered the chair, having taken it out properly without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should

Kd.1.25.15

Vin.1.48

¹ Cf. Vin.4.42, where monks must not lie down in the space meant for elders, and see BD.2.247, n.3. This expression and the next also occur at Kd.18.4.2. ² *saṃghāṭi*, perhaps here meaning the upper robe as well as the outer cloak, although then the plural might have been expected. See above, BD.4.60, n.3. ³ No doubt meaning, if the preceptor wishes to make the one who shares the cell recite the Pātimokkha or give an exposition of the eight chief rules, cf. BD.2.271, n.1. ⁴ Cf. BD.2.271, n.2. ⁵ I.e. the one who shares a cell. ⁶ *nisidanapaccattharaṇa*. Cf. BD.2.34, n.1, BD.2.46, n.3, BD.2.244, n.6. ⁷ Cf. BD.2.47, n.1. ⁸ Cf. BD.2.73, n.6. ⁹ Vin-a.980, without rubbing it on the ground. ¹⁰ *kavāṭapiṭṭha*. Vin-a.980 explains as “not touching the door (*kavāṭa*) and the door-posts” (*piṭṭhasaṃghāṭa*). On *kavāṭa* and *piṭṭhasaṃghāṭa* see BD.2.258, n.3, n.8, and A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol.48, No.3, p.256 (under *dvāra*). *Kavāṭa* allowed at Vin.2.142, and *kavāṭapiṭṭhasaṃghāṭa* at Vin.2.153, Vin.2.154.

lay it to one side. Having taken out the supports for the couch,¹ he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the spittoon,² he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the reclining-board,³ he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the ground-covering,⁴ having observed how it was laid down,⁵ he should lay it to one side. If there come to be cobwebs in the dwelling-place, he should first remove them from the (floor-) covering⁶; he should wipe the corners⁷ of the window-holes.⁸ If a wall that was coloured red⁹ becomes stained, he should wipe it, having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If ground that was blacked¹⁰ becomes stained he should wipe it, having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If the ground did not come to be treated, he should sweep it, having sprinkled it all over with water, thinking: ‘Take care lest the dwelling-place is sullied with dust.’ Having looked for (any) rubbish, he should remove it to one side.

BD.4.64

Kd.1.25.16

“Having dried the ground-covering in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having brought it back, he should lay it down as it was laid down before. Having dried the supports for the couch¹¹ in the sun, having wiped

¹ A couch and a chair might have removable legs; cf. [BD.2.240](#). See [BD.4.64, n.4](#). ² Allowed at [Vin.2.175](#). ³ *apassenaphalaka*, a board for resting the head, arms or elbows upon. Allowed at [Vin.2.175](#). Some made of stone can be found at the entrance to dwelling-places among the ancient remains at Anuradhapura. ⁴ *bhummattharaṇa*; cf. [BD.2.46, n.4](#). ⁵ *Paññatta*; same word as is used for “laying down” a rule of training, see [BD.2.4, n.1](#). ⁶ *ullokā paṭhamam ohāretabbam*. Not, I think, “he should remove them as soon as he sees them”, as at *Vinaya Texts* i.159 and as favoured by *Pali-English Dictionary*. For *ulloka* occurs at [Vin.2.151](#) as meaning a cloth or covering for a couch or chair, and was something that could be spread, *santharati*. Thus it probably has a technical meaning, and is one of the numerous kinds of “cloths”. *Budhaghosa* on [Vin.2.151](#) explains it as *cilimika*; and this he explains at *Vin-a.775* as something made for preserving the texture of earth which is prepared with plaster. ⁷ *Vin-a.980*, of the room. But it seems more probable that the corners of the window-holes are intended. ⁸ *ālokasandhi*. Cf. [BD.2.258 and n.2](#); [BD.2.259 and n.1](#). ⁹ *gerukaparikkammakata*. *Geruka* is yellow ochre or red chalk. Cf. [BD.2.259 and n.3](#). ¹⁰ Cf. [BD.2.259](#). *Setavaṇṇa*, whitewash or plaster, the third colouring (with red and black) allowed for use in *vihāras* ([Vin.2.150](#)) is not included above. ¹¹ Allowed at [Vin.2.150](#). It seems that these supports were detachable from the couches, for first they were to be taken out and put in the sun, and then the couch was to be taken out. *Vinaya Texts* iii.278, n.3, says that the couch “was supported on movable tressels—the *paṭipādakā*”, but A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, Vol. 48, No. 3, p.265, sees “no reason why the *paṭipādakā* of a *mañca* should not be fixed legs”. On the other hand, *āhaccapādaka* (of couches and chairs) seems to mean “removable legs”, [Bu-Pc.14](#), and [Vin.2.149](#).

them, having brought them back, he should place them where they were before. Having dried the couch in the sun ... the chair in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having lowered it, having brought it back properly without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it down as it was laid down before. Having dried the mattress and the squatting-mat in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, he should lay them down as they were laid down before. Having dried the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, he should lay them down as they were laid down before. Having dried the spittoon in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was before. Having dried the reclining-board in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was before.

Kd.1.25.17
BD.4.65

“He should lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl ... (as in [Kd.1.25.11](#)) ... the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside.

Kd.1.25.18

“If dusty winds blow from the east, he should close the eastern windows.¹ If dusty winds blow from the west, he should close the western windows. If dusty winds blow from the north, he should close the northern windows. If dusty winds blow from the south, he should close the southern windows. If the weather is cool, he should open the windows by day, he should close them at night. If the weather is warm, he should close the windows by day, he should open them at night.

Vin.1.49

“If a cell is soiled, the cell should be swept. If a porch² ... If an attendance-hall³ ... If a fire-hall⁴ ... If a privy comes to be soiled, the privy should be swept. If there does not come to be drinking-water, drinking-water should be provided. If there does not come to be water for washing, water for washing should be provided. If there does not come to be water in the pitcher of water for rinsing,⁵ water should be tipped into the pitcher of water for rinsing.

Kd.1.25.19

“If dissatisfaction⁶ has arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares his cell

Kd.1.25.20

¹ *vātapāna*, see [BD.2.259, n.1](#). Three kinds allowed at [Vin.2.148](#). ² *koṭṭhaka*, or gate-house, or store-room, allowed at [Vin.2.142](#), [Vin.2.153](#). ³ *upaṭṭhānasālā*, allowed at [Vin.2.153](#). See [BD.2.194, n.4](#). ⁴ *aggisālā*, allowed at [Vin.2.154](#). ⁵ *ācamanakumbhī*, allowed at [Vin.2.142](#). ⁶ *anabhirati*, see [BD.1.114, n.1](#); and [Vin.1.144](#).

should allay¹ it or should get (another) to allay² it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If remorse has arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares the cell should dispel it or should get (another) to dispel it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If wrong views have arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares his cell should dissuade him (from them) or should get another to dissuade him (from them),³ or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*.⁴”

Kd.1.25.21

BD.4.66

“If the preceptor has committed an offence against an important rule⁵ and deserves probation,⁶ the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order grant the preceptor probation?’ If the preceptor deserves to be sent back to the beginning,⁷ the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order send the preceptor back to the beginning?’ If the preceptor deserves *mānatta* (discipline), the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) on the preceptor?’ If the preceptor deserves rehabilitation,⁸ the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order rehabilitate the preceptor?’

Kd.1.25.22

“If the Order desires to carry out a (formal) act against the preceptor—one of censure⁹ or one of guidance¹⁰ or one of banishment¹¹ or one of reconciliation¹² or one of suspension¹³—the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order not carry out

¹ *vūpakāsetabbā*. Vin-a.981 says that he should take him elsewhere. ² *vūpakāśāpetabbā*. Another monk should be told: ‘Having taken the elder, go elsewhere’, Vin-a.981. Cf. Vin.1.142 (=below, BD.4.190). ³ Cf. Vin.1.142 (=below, BD.4.190). ⁴ For above passage cf. AN.v.72, where competence in these matters is one of the qualifications a monk must possess in order to confer the *upasampadā* ordination. ⁵ At Vin.4.51, one of the qualities a monk must possess in order to exhort the nuns is that of not having offended against an “important rule”, *garudhamma*. There were eight “important rules” to be kept by nuns; see BD.2.266, n.11 and BD.4.267. But, above, the important rules seem to refer to *Saṅghādisesa*, for what follows; probation, etc., are among the penalties for breaking *Saṅghādisesa* rules. ⁶ *parivāsa*, cf. BD.1.196, n.3, and Vin.1.143, Vin.2.31ff. Not the same *parivāsa* as that granted to members of other sects on their wishing to enter the Order, see below, BD.4.85. ⁷ Cf. BD.1.196, n.4, and for *mānatta* BD.1.196, n.5, and Vin.1.143. ⁸ *abbhāna*, cf. BD.1.196, n.6; BD.3.28, n.4. ⁹ *tajjaniya*. Cf. Vin.1.143, Vin.2.2ff. See Vin.1.325, AN.i.99 and DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.170, for this and the four following formal acts. ¹⁰ *nissaya*, tutelage. Cf. Kd.11.9.1ff. ¹¹ *pabbājaniya*. Cf. Kd.11.13.1ff. ¹² *paṭisāraniya*. Cf. Kd.11.18.1ff. ¹³ *ukkhepaniya*. Cf. Kd.11.25.1ff.

a (formal) act against the preceptor or change it to a lighter one?’¹ Yet if a (formal) act—one of censure ... one of suspension—is carried out by the Order against him, the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor conduct himself properly,² be subdued, mend his ways, (so that) the Order could revoke that (formal) act?’

Kd.1.25.23

“If the preceptor’s robe should be washed, the one who shares his cell should wash it or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor’s robe be washed?’ If the preceptor’s robe-material should be made up, the one who shares his cell should make it up or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor’s robe-material be made up?’ If dye should be boiled for the preceptor ... If the preceptor’s robe should be dyed ... ‘... could the preceptor’s robe be dyed?’ When he is dyeing the robe, he should dye it properly, turning it again and again, nor should he go away if the drips have not ceased.³

Vin.1.50
BD.4.67

“Without asking the preceptor (for permission), he should not give an almsbowl to anyone nor should he receive an almsbowl from anyone; he should not give a robe to anyone nor should he receive a robe from anyone; he should not give a requisite to anyone nor should he receive a requisite from anyone; he should not cut off anyone’s hair nor should he have his hair cut off by anyone; he should not render a service to anyone nor should he cause a service to be rendered by anyone; he should not execute a commission for anyone nor should he cause a commission to be executed by anyone; he should not become an attendant on anyone nor should he take anyone as an attendant; he should not bring back alms-food for anyone nor should he have almsfood brought back by anyone. Without asking the preceptor (for permission), he should not enter a village, he should not go to a cemetery, he should not leave the district.⁴ If the preceptor becomes ill, he should tend him for as long as life lasts; he should wait (with him) until

Kd.1.25.24

¹ Vin-a.981 indicates that the one who shares the cell should do his best to plead with the monks to cancel the formal act. But if they insist, he should beg the preceptor to conduct himself properly. ² Cf. [BD.1.323](#) and its [n.1](#), [n.2](#), [n.3](#) for these expressions. ³ *acchinne theve*. Vin-a.981 says “he should not depart if even a little dye is falling down.” Proper methods for dyeing robe-material given at [Vin.1.286](#). ⁴ *disā pakkamitabbā*. Cf. [Kd.2.21.1](#) where ignorant monks travelling to distant parts, *disaṅgamikā*, do not ask teachers and preceptors for permission.

he recovers.¹”

Told is what is due to a Preceptor

ON THE DUTIES TO THE ONE WHO SHARES HIS CELL

Kd.1.26.1

“The preceptor,² monks, should conduct himself properly towards the one who shares his cell. This is the proper conduct in this respect: the one who shares the cell should be furthered,³ he should be helped by the preceptor in regard to recitation, interrogation, exhortation, instruction.⁴ If there is a bowl for the preceptor but no bowl for the one who shares his cell, a bowl should be given by the preceptor to the one who shares his cell, or he should make an effort, thinking ‘How then could a bowl be procured for the one who shares my cell?’ If there is a robe for the preceptor ... If there is (another) requisite for the preceptor ... ‘How then could (another) requisite be procured for the one who shares my cell?’

BD.4.68

Vin.1.51

Kd.1.26.2

“If the one who shares the cell becomes ill, having got up early he should give tooth-wood, he should give water for rinsing the mouth, he should make ready a seat. If there is conje⁵ ... that place should be swept.

Kd.1.26.3

“If the one who shares a cell wishes to enter a village⁶ ... having washed, a bowl with water is to be given to him. Thinking, ‘He will be returning about now’, he should⁷ make ready a seat, he should set out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand ... He should offer drinking water to the one who shares his cell.

Vin.1.52

“In whatever dwelling-place one who shares a cell is staying, if that dwelling-place is soiled, it should be cleaned if he is able to do so ...⁸ ... so that the Order could revoke that (formal) act.’

Vin.1.53

Kd.1.26.8

– “If the robe of one who shares a cell should be washed, the preceptor

Kd.1.26.11

¹ *vuṭṭhānassa*, until he gets up from his illness, Vin-a.982. Cf. Vism.94. ² From here to BD.4.69, below = Vin.2.227–Vin.2.230. ³ *saṃgahetabbo*, used with the next word, *anuggahetabbo*, below, BD.4.157. ⁴ These four words are used in definition of “should (neither) help” at Vin.4.325 (BD.3.376); and cf. BD.2.271, n.2. ⁵ As at Kd.1.25.2, reading “preceptor” for “one who shares a cell” and vice versa. ⁶ As at Kd.1.25.9 (first half). ⁷ From here to the end of Kd.1.26.6, as at Kd.1.25.10–Kd.1.25.13, omitting the first two sentences of Kd.1.25.10.

⁸ As at Kd.1.25.14–Kd.1.25.22.

should explain, saying: ‘Thus should you wash it or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the robe of the one who shares my cell be washed?’ If the robe-material of one who shares a cell should be made up, the preceptor should explain, saying: ‘Thus should you make it up’, or ... ‘How then could the robe-material of the one who shares a cell’ ... ‘Thus should you boil it or ... ‘How then could dye be boiled for the one who shares my cell?’ If the robe of the one who shares a cell should be dyed ... ‘Thus should you dye it’, or ... ‘How then could the robe of the one who shares my cell be dyed?’ When he is dyeing the robe, he should dye it properly, turning it again and again, nor should he go away if the drips have not ceased. If the one who shares a cell becomes ill, he should tend him as long as life lasts; he should wait until he recovers.”

BD.4.69

Told is what is due to one who shares a cell

ON DISMISSAL

Now at that time those who shared cells did not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can those who share cells not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that those who share cells do not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors?”

Kd.1.27.1

“It is true, Lord.”

The enlightened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can those who share cells not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors?”

Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “**Monks, those who share cells should not not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors. Whoever should not conduct himself properly, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Vin.1.54

Kd.1.27.2

Even so, they did not conduct themselves properly. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to dismiss¹ one who does not

¹ *paṇāmetuṃ*.

conduct himself properly. And thus, monks, should he be dismissed: If he, saying: ‘I dismiss you’ or ‘Do not come back here’ or ‘Bring back your bowl and robe’ or ‘I am not to be waited upon by you’, makes this understood by gesture, if he makes this understood by voice, if he makes this understood by gesture and by voice, the one who shares the cell comes to be dismissed. If he does not make this understood by gesture, if he does not make this understood by voice, if he does not make this understood by gesture and by voice, the one who shares the cell does not come to be dismissed.

Kd.1.27.3

Now at that time those who shared a cell and who were dismissed did not apologise. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow (them), monks, to apologise.” Even so, they did not apologise. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is dismissed is not not to apologise. Whoever should not apologise, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.4.70

Kd.1.27.4

Now at that time preceptors, on being apologised to, did not forgive. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to forgive.” Even so, they did not forgive. And those who shared a cell departed and they left the Order and they went over to (other) sects. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, when you are being apologised to you should not not forgive. Whoever should not forgive, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.1.27.5

Now at that time preceptors dismissed those who were conducting themselves¹ properly, they did not dismiss those who were not conducting themselves properly. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is conducting himself properly is not to be dismissed. Whoever should dismiss him, there is an offence of wrong-doing. And, monks, one who is not conducting himself properly is not not to be dismissed. Whoever should not dismiss him, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.1.27.6

¹ For use of singular, where we should use the plural, cf. [BD.3.364](#), [BD.3.367](#), [BD.3.369](#). Here the meaning is that each of several preceptors dismissed the particular monk who shared his cell.

“Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities he may be dismissed: if there does not come to be much affection for his preceptor, if there does not come to be much faith (in him), if there does not come to be much sense of shame (towards him), if there does not come to be much respect (for him), if there does not come to be much development¹ (under him). Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities he may be dismissed. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities he should not be dismissed: if there comes to be much affection for his preceptor ... if there comes to be much development. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities he should not be dismissed.

Kd.1.27.7

“Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities it is suitable² to dismiss him: if there does not come to be much affection for his preceptor ... if there does not come to be much development. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities, it is suitable to dismiss him. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities it is not suitable to dismiss him: if there comes to be much affection for his preceptor ... if there comes to be much development. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities it is not suitable to dismiss him.

BD.4.71

Vin.1.55

Kd.1.27.8

“Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities, a preceptor, in not dismissing him, becomes one who has gone too far; in dismissing him, he does not become one who has gone too far: if there does not come to be much affection for his preceptor... if there does not come to be much development. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities, a preceptor, in not dismissing him, becomes one who has gone too far; in dismissing him he does not become one who has gone too far. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of five qualities, the preceptor, in dismissing him, becomes one who has gone too far; in not dismissing him, he does not become one who has gone too far: if there comes to be much affection for the preceptor ... if there comes to be much development. Monks, if one who shares a cell is possessed of these five qualities, a preceptor, in dismissing him, becomes one who has gone too far; in not dismissing him, he does not become one who has gone too far.”

¹ *bhāvanā*. Vin-a.982 explains by *mettabhāvanā*, development of amity. ² *alaṃ*, enough.

Kd.1.28.1

Now at that time a certain brahmin, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks did not want to let him go forth, and because he could not obtain the going forth among the monks, he became lean, wretched, of a bad colour, very yellow, his veins standing out all over his body.¹ The Lord saw this brahmin, lean ... all over his body, and seeing him, he addressed the monks, saying: “How is it, monks, that this brahmin is lean ... all over his body?”

“Lord, this brahmin asked the monks for the going forth. The monks did not want to let him go forth, and because he could not obtain the going forth among the monks, he is lean ... all over his body.”

Kd.1.28.2
BD.4.72

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Now, monks, who remembers a service² done by this brahmin?” When he had spoken thus the venerable Sāriputta spoke thus to the Lord: “I, Lord, remember a service done by this brahmin.”

“Now, what help (given) by this brahmin, Sāriputta, do you remember?”

“Lord, as I was walking for almsfood here in Rājagaha this brahmin had spoon-alms³ bestowed upon me. This, Lord, is the service done by this brahmin which I remember.”

Vin.1.56
Kd.1.28.3

“Good, Sāriputta, it is good. Indeed those who are truly men,⁴ Sāriputta, are thankful and grateful.⁵ Because of this do you, Sāriputta, let this brahmin go forth (and) ordain him.”

“How, lord, do I let this brahmin go forth, how do I ordain him?”

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“From this day forth, monks, I abolish that ordination by going to the three refuges which I allowed. I allow you, monks, to ordain by a (formal) act consisting of a motion and a resolution put three times.⁶

Kd.1.28.4

“And thus, monks, should one ordain: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order

¹ Stock, cf. Vin.3.88 (BD.1.153–BD.1.154). ² *adhikāra*. ³ *kaṭacchubhikkhā*, alms given with a ladle to a monk (cf. Thag.934, Mi.9); contrasted with ticket-food and the gifts of robes, etc., at Dhṛp-a.1.379, and with a “great gift”, *mahādāna*, given to a body of monks at Pv.2.9.56–Pv.2.9.58. ⁴ *sappurisa*. Cf. Vin.3.7. ⁵ Cf. SN.ii.272. ⁶ *ñatticatuttha*. See Kd.9.3.4–Kd.9.3.9, and DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.150.

hear me. This (person) so and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may ordain so and so, through the preceptor so and so. This is the motion.

Kd.1.28.5

“Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This person so and so ... may ordain so and so. The Order is ordaining so and so through the preceptor so and so. If the ordination of so and so through the preceptor so and so is pleasing to the venerable ones let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... should speak.

Kd.1.28.6
BD.4.73

“And a third time I speak forth this matter ... should speak. So and so is ordained by the Order through the preceptor so and so. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

Now at that time a certain monk immediately after he was ordained indulged in bad habits. Monks spoke thus: “Do not, your reverence, do that, it is not allowed.”¹ He spoke thus: “But indeed, I did not ask the venerable ones saying, ‘Ordain me’. Why did you ordain me without being asked (to do so)?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not ordain without being asked (to do so). Whoever should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to ordain when you have been asked (to do so).

Kd.1.29.1

Vin.1.57

“And thus, monks, should one ask (for it): That one who wishes for ordination, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the monks’ feet, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘Honoured sirs, I ask the Order for ordination; honoured sirs, may the Order raise me up,² out of compassion.’ And a second time should he ask ... And a third time should he ask ...

Kd.1.29.2

Kd.1.29.3

¹ Cf. [BD.1.309](#), [BD.2.230](#), [BD.2.393](#). ² *ullumpatu*, meaning according to Vin-a.984 “having made me arise from what is bad may they establish me in what is good; or, having raised me from the status of a novice may they establish me in the status of a monk”. Cf. below, [BD.4.122](#), and Vin-a.1033. See also A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, Vol.4, No.2, p.145, where he takes *ullumpatu* as meaning “extract” (me from all evil).

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This (person) so and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. So and so asks the Order for ordination through the preceptor so and so. If it seems right to the Order the Order may ordain so and so through the preceptor so and so. This is the motion.

Kd.1.29.4

“‘Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This (person) so and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. So and so asks the Order for ordination through the preceptor so and so. If the ordination of so and so through the preceptor so and so is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... So and so is ordained by the Order through the preceptor so and so. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.4.74

Kd.1.30.1

Now at that time in Rājagaha a succession of meals of sumptuous foods came to be arranged.¹ Then it occurred to a certain brahmin: “Now, these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are pleasant in character, pleasant in conduct; having eaten good meals they lie down on beds sheltered from the wind.² What now if I should go forth among these recluses, sons of the Sakyans?” Then that brahmin, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks allowed him to go forth (and) they ordained him.

Kd.1.30.2

The succession of meals dwindled away³ after he had gone forth. Monks spoke thus: “Come along now, your reverence, we will walk for almsfood.” He spoke thus: “Your reverences, I did not go forth for this—that I should walk for almsfood. If you will give to me, I will eat, but if you will not give to me, I will leave the Order.”

Vin.1.58

“But, did you, your reverence, go forth for your belly’s sake?”

Kd.1.30.3

“Yes, your reverences.”

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this monk go forth in this *dhamma* and discipline

¹ Cf. Vin.1.248, Vin.4.75 (BD.2.315). ² Cf. Vin.1.72, Vin.4.129 (BD.3.10-11). ³ *Khīyittha*; cf. *khīyanti* at BD.2.236, n.1, n.2.

which are well taught for his belly's sake?" These monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, went forth for your belly's sake?"

"It is true, Lord."

The enlightened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying:

"How can you, foolish man, go forth in this *dhamma* and discipline which are well taught for your belly's sake? It is not foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased." Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.75

Kd.1.30.4

"I allow you, monks, when you are ordaining, to explain four resources¹: that going forth is on account of meals of scraps; in this respect effort is to be made by you for life. (These are) extra acquisitions: a meal for an Order, a meal for a special person, an invitation, ticket-food, (food given) on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon, on an Observance day, or the day after an Observance day.² That going forth is on account of rag-robbs; in this respect effort is to be made by you for life. (These are) extra acquisitions: (robbs made of) linen, cotton, silk, wool, coarse hemp, canvas.³ That going forth is on account of a lodging at the root of a tree; in this respect effort is to be made by you for life. (These are) extra acquisitions: a dwelling-place, a curved house,⁴ a long house,⁵ a mansion,⁶ a cave.⁷ That going forth is on account of ammonia as a medicine; in this respect effort is to be made by

¹ *nissaya*, cf. Vin.1.96. *Nissaya* is something which you depend upon, which supplies you, a source of supply. Not to be confused with the formal act called *nissaya*, referred to at Vin.1.49 (BD.4.66, above), which is an act placing someone under guidance, giving him help.

² For last four, cf. BD.2.313–BD.2.314 and notes. ³ See Kd.2.7.143, and notes. ⁴ *aḍḍhayoga*. Commentaries speak of it as *supaṇṇavaṅkageha* (see *Pali-English Dictionary*), as *garuḷasaṅṭhānapāsāda* (see *Critical Pali Dictionary*), and as *suvaṇṇavaṅkageha* (see *Vinaya Texts* i.173, n.1). It is possible that the curve refers only to the roof, curved upwards perhaps at the ends, like some forms of domestic architecture in present-day India, and this is the reason for the *aḍḍha*, half: that in some respect the building is half and not entirely curved. At Vin.2.172 it is said that repairs may be made to an *aḍḍhayoga* during a period of seven or eight years.

⁵ *pāsāda*, see BD.2.16, n.5. ⁶ *hammiya*, see BD.2.16, n.6. ⁷ *guha*. These five are the five *lenāni*, abodes, allowed at Vin.2.146; allowed at Vin.1.107, as the site for an *uposatha* hall; at Vin.1.239 as the site for *kappiyabhūmi*, a place for what is allowable, an outhouse; at Vin.1.284 as the site for a store-room—in the last three cases the sites are to be agreed upon by the Order.

you for life. (These are) extra acquisitions: ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses.¹

Told is the Fifth Portion for Repeating: on what is due to a Preceptor

ON THE DUTIES TO THE TEACHER

BD.4.76 Now at that time a certain brahmin youth, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks explained the resources to him beforehand. He spoke thus: "If honoured sirs, you had explained the resources to me after I had gone forth, I should have been satisfied, but now, honoured sirs, I will not go forth; the resources are disgusting and loathsome to me." The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Monks, the resources should not be explained beforehand. Whoever should (thus) explain them, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to explain the resources soon after ordaining (a person)."

Kd.1.31.2

Now at that time monks ordained through a group of two and a group of three (monks). They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Monks, you should not ordain through a group of less than ten (monks).² Whoever should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to ordain through a group of ten or more than ten (monks)."

Kd.1.31.3

Now at that time monks of one year's standing and of two years' standing (severally) ordained the one who shared his cell. And when he was of one year's standing,³ the venerable Upasena, Vanganta's son,⁴ ordained the one who shared his cell. When he was of two years' standing, having kept the rains-residence, taking the one who shared his cell and who was of

¹ Cf. [BD.1.133](#), [BD.2.342](#). At [BD.2.131](#) these five medicines may be used by ill monks. ² See [Vin.1.319](#). A group *gaṇa*, is usually in the Vinaya regarded as consisting of from two to four monks (or nuns), but here it is equivalent to an Order, a *saṅgha*. ³ See [Ja.ii.449](#), [Vin-a.194](#), [Ud-a.266](#), [AN-a.i.271](#) for this same episode. [Ud-a.](#) states that Upasena was of two years' standing as a preceptor. But it is more likely that [AN-a.](#) is right in saying that two years' standing as a monk is meant, i.e. since his own ordination. ⁴ See [BD.2.83](#).

one year's standing, he approached the Lord. Having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Now, it is the custom for awakened ones, for Lords to exchange friendly greetings with in-coming monks.

Then the Lord spoke thus to the venerable Upasena, Vanganta's son: "I hope, monk, that things go well with you, I hope you are keeping going, I hope you came here with but little fatigue on the journey."

Kd.1.31.4

"Things do go well with me, Lord, I am keeping going, Lord, I came, Lord, with but little fatigue on the journey."

BD.4.77

Now, Truthfinders (sometimes) ask knowing,¹ and knowing (sometimes) do not ask; they ask, knowing the right time (to ask), and they do not ask, knowing the right time (when not to ask). Truthfinders ask about what belongs to the goal, not about what does not belong to the goal. There is bridge-breaking², for Truthfinders in whatever does not belong to the goal. Awakened ones, Lords, question monks concerning two matters: "Shall we teach *dhamma*?" or "Shall we lay down a rule of training for disciples?"

Kd.1.31.5

Then the Lord spoke thus to the venerable Upasena, Vanganta's son: "Of how many years' standing are you, monk?"

"I, Lord, am of two years' standing."

"And of how many years' standing is this monk?"

"He is of one year's standing, Lord."

"Who is this monk as regards you?"

"He is the one who shares my cell, Lord."

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked (him), saying:

"It is not fitting, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not proper, it is unworthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How can you, foolish man, when you should be exhorted and instructed by others, think to exhort and instruct another (monk)? Too quickly have you, foolish man, turned to abundance,³ that is to say to acquiring a group. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased." Having rebuked him, having given

¹ See also [Vin.1.158](#), [Vin.1.250](#), [Vin.3.6](#), [Vin.3.88-89](#) for this passage; and [BD.1.13](#), n.1, n.2.

² See COOMARASWAMY, *The Perilous Bridge of Welfare*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, Vol. 8, No. 2, August, 1944, for a discussion of the Bridge mainly from Indian sources. ³ Cf.

[Vin.1.287](#).

reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one who is of less than ten years’ standing should not ordain.¹ Whoever (such) should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrongdoing. I allow you, monks, to ordain through one who is of ten years’ standing or through one who is of more than ten years’ standing.”

Kd.1.31.6
BD.4.78

Now at that time ignorant, inexperienced monks ordained thinking: “We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing.” (Consequently) there were to be found ignorant preceptors, wise (monks) who shared their cells; inexperienced preceptors, experienced (monks) who shared their cells; preceptors who had heard little, (monks) who shared their cells who had heard much; preceptors of poor intelligence, intelligent (monks) who shared their cells; and a certain former member of another sect, when he was being spoken to by his preceptor regarding a rule, having refuted the preceptor, went over to the fold of that same sect² (as before.)

Vin.1.60

Kd.1.31.7

Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these ignorant, inexperienced monks ordain, thinking: ‘We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing’? (So that) there are to be found ... intelligent (monks) who share their cells.” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that ignorant, inexperienced monks ordained, thinking: ... there are to be found ... intelligent (monks) who share their cells?”

Kd.1.31.8

“It is true, Lord.”

Then awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men, ignorant, inexperienced, ordain, thinking: ‘We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing’? ... intelligent (monks) who share their cells. It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one who is ignorant, inexperienced should not ordain. Whoever (such) should ordain, there is an offence of wrongdoing. I allow

¹ Cf. *Bi-Pc.74*, where a nun of less than twelve years’ standing should not ordain. ² *titthāyatanam saṅkhami*. Cf. *Vin.4.217* (*BD.3.167*).

you, monks, to ordain through an experienced, competent monk who is of ten years' standing or more than ten years' standing.”

Now at that time monks, when their preceptors had gone away and had left the Order and had died and had gone over to another side (of the Order),¹ being without teachers,² not being exhorted, not being instructed, walked for almsfood wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, not befittingly attired. While people were eating ... (=Kd.1.25.1-1.25.4) ...

Kd.1.32.1

BD.4.79

“It is true, Lord.”

Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, I allow a teacher. The teacher, monks, should arouse in his pupil³ the attitude of a son; the pupil should arouse in his teacher the attitude of a father. Thus these, living with reverence, with deference, with courtesy towards one another, will come to growth, increase, maturity in this *dhamma* and discipline. I allow you, monks, to live ten years in dependence,⁴ and when one is of ten years' standing to give guidance.⁵

Kd.1.32.2

“And thus, monks, should a teacher be chosen: having arranged the upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured his feet, having sat down on the haunches, having saluted with joined palms, he should speak to him thus: ‘Honoured sir, be my teacher, I will live in dependence on the venerable one; honoured sir, be my teacher, I will live in dependence on the venerable one; honoured sir, be my teacher, I will live in dependence on the venerable one.’ If he says: ‘Very well’ or ‘Certainly’ or ‘All right’ or ‘It is proper’ or ‘Manage it amiably’, and makes this understood by gesture ... (=Kd.1.25.7-1.25.24, reading teacher and pupil for preceptor and one who

Vin.1.61

¹ Cf. BD.3.190. ² *ācariya*. See *Vinaya Texts* i.178, n.2 for note comparing this with preceptor. Vism. 94 says that in a dwelling-place are teachers, preceptors, those who share a cell, pupils, those having the same preceptors, those having the same teachers. It mentions teachers for the going forth, teachers for ordination, pupils ordained and allowed to go forth having the same preceptor; teachers in guidance, in the exposition (or recitation, of the Pātimokkha), pupils in the same having the same teacher. ³ *antevāsika*. ⁴ *nissāyaṃ vatthuṃ*. ⁵ *nissayaṃ dātuṃ*. There is also the formal act of *nissaya*, of placing under guidance, as in Kd.1.25.22. The word translated above, Kd.1.30.4, as “resource” is also *nissaya*, but it is there combined with the verb *ācikkhituṃ*.

shares a cell) ... If the teacher becomes ill, he should tend him as long as life lasts; he should wait until he recovers.”

Told is what is due to a Teacher

ON THE DUTIES TO THE STUDENT

Kd.1.33.1

“The teacher, monks, should conduct himself properly towards his pupil. This is the proper conduct in this respect: the pupil should be furthered, he should be helped by the teacher ... (=Kd.1.26.1-1.26.2, reading teacher and pupil for preceptor and one who shares a cell) ... If the pupil becomes ill, he should tend him as long as life lasts; he should wait until he recovers.”

BD.4.80

What is due to a Pupil

The Sixth Portion for Repeating

ON NOT FORGIVING WHEN DISMISSED

Now at that time pupils did not conduct themselves properly towards their teachers ... (=Kd.1.27.1-1.27.8, reading teacher and pupil as above) ... in not dismissing him he does not become one who has gone too far.”

THE STORY OF THE IGNORANT AND INEXPERIENCED

Kd.1.35.1

Now at that time ignorant, inexperienced monks, gave guidance, thinking: “We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing.” (So that) there were to be found ignorant teachers, wise pupils; inexperienced teachers, experienced pupils; teachers who had heard little, pupils who had heard much; teachers of poor intelligence, intelligent pupils. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these ignorant inexperienced monks give guidance, thinking: ‘We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing’? (So that) there are to be found ignorant teachers ... intelligent pupils.”

Vin.1.62

Kd.1.35.2

Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that ignorant, inexperienced (monks)¹ are giving guidance, thinking: ‘We are of ten years’ standing, we are of ten years’ standing?’”

“Is it true, Lord.” The enlightened one, the Lord rebuked them; having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: **“Monks, one who is ignorant, inexperienced, should not give guidance. Whoever (such) should give it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to give guidance through an experienced, competent monk who is of ten years’ standing or of more than ten years’ standing.”**²

ON THE NULLIFICATIONS OF GUIDANCE

Now at that time monks, when their teachers and preceptors had gone away and had left the Order and had died and had gone over to another side (of the Order),³ did not know about nullifications of guidance. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, there are these five nullifications of guidance from a preceptor: when a preceptor has gone away or left the Order or died or gone over to another side (of the Order), and command is the fifth.⁴ These, monks, are the five nullifications of guidance from a preceptor. Monks, there are these six nullifications of guidance from a teacher: when a teacher has gone away or left the Order or died or gone over to another side (of the Order), and command is the fifth, or if he⁵ has come to be connected with a preceptor.⁶ These, monks, are the six nullifications of guidance from a teacher.

Kd.1.36.1

BD.4.81

ON FIVE CASES WHEN ONE MAY ORDAIN

Kd.1.36.2

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities¹ he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him: if he is not possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... body of concentration ... body of wisdom ... body of freedom ... body of vision and knowledge of freedom. Monks, if a monk is not possessed of these five qualities he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him.

Kd.1.36.3

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him: if he is possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... body of vision and knowledge of freedom. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him.

Vin.1.63

Kd.1.36.4

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him: if he is neither himself possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit nor encourages another as to an adept’s body of moral habit ... if he is neither himself possessed of an adept’s body of vision and knowledge of freedom nor encourages another as to an adept’s body of vision and knowledge of freedom. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him.

BD.4.82

Kd.1.36.5

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... a novice may attend him: if he is himself possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit and encourages another as to an adept’s body of moral habit ... if he is himself possessed of an adept’s body of vision and knowledge of freedom and encourages another as to an adept’s body of vision and knowledge of freedom. Monks, if a novice is possessed of these five qualities he may ordain ... a

¹ Omitted in Oldenberg’s text of the Vinaya. ² Cf. above, [Kd.1.31.6–1.31.8](#). ³ As in [Kd.1.32.1](#).

⁴ Vin-a.986 says that the teacher dismisses the pupil from guidance if the words of [Kd.1.27.2](#).

⁵ Meaning the pupil, if we follow Vin-a.988; but DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.181, takes it to mean the teacher. ⁶ Vin-a.988 says that if one who shares a cell, living in dependence on a teacher, sees a preceptor walking for alms in the same village or worshipping at the same shrine, or if he hears him teaching *dhamma* in a dwelling-place or among houses (the teacher’s) guidance lapses. This would suggest that the preceptor occupies a higher position than the teacher. ¹ Cf. DN.iii.279; SN.i.99; AN.i.162, AN.iii.271, AN.v.16.

novice may attend him.

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain ... a novice should not attend him: if he comes to be lacking in faith,¹ if he comes to be without shame, if he comes to be reckless, if he comes to be lazy, if he comes to be of muddled mindfulness.² Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he should not ordain ... a novice should not attend him.

Kd.1.36.6

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if he comes to have faith, if he comes to feel shame, if he comes to be cautious, if he comes to be of stirred up energy, if he comes to be of ready mindfulness³. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he may ordain ... a novice may attend him.

Kd.1.36.7

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain ... a novice should not attend him: if, in regard to moral habit,⁴ he comes to have fallen away from moral habit; if, in regard to good habits,⁵ he comes to have fallen away from good habits; if, in regard to (right) view,⁶ he comes to have fallen away from (right) view; if he comes to have heard little, if he comes to be of poor intelligence. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he should not ordain ...

Kd.1.36.8

BD.4.83

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if, in regard to moral habit, he does not come to have fallen away from moral habit; if, in regard to good habits, he does not come to have fallen away from good habits; if, in regard to (right) view, he does not come to have fallen away from (right) view; if he comes to have heard

Kd.1.36.9

Vin.1.64

¹ On the following quintet, cf. DN.iii.252, DN.iii.282; MN.i.43; AN.ii.218; SN.ii.159, also AN.iii.421, AN.iv.145 and see MN-a.i.190. ² *muṭṭhassati*. See definition at SN-a.i.115. On this and *upaṭṭhitasati*, “ready mindfulness” (or recollection), see MORRIS, Journal of the Pali Text Society 1884, p.92. Cf. *sati muṭṭha* at Thag.98, Thag.99. ³ *upaṭṭhitasati*; cf. also MN.i.356. ⁴ *adhisīle*. Vin.1.172 says that the four *Pārājikas* and the thirteen *Saṅghādisesas* are “falling away from moral habit”, as does Vin-a.989. Thus *adhisīla* is also the “higher morality”. ⁵ *ajjhācāra*. Vin.1.172 names the falling away from this as grave offences, offences of expiation, those which ought to be confessed, those of wrong-doing, those of wrong speech. Vin-a.989 calls them “the five other classes of offence” (i.e. excluding the *Pārājika* and *Saṅghādisesa*). *Ajjhācāra* can also mean “transgression”. ⁶ *atiditṭhi*. Vin.1.172 says that “falling away from right view means wrong view”, views of an extreme nature; while Vin-a.989 says that getting rid of right view, he is possessed of wrong view of an extreme nature.

much; if he comes to be intelligent. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he may ordain ... a novice may attend him.

Kd.1.36.10

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain ... a novice should not attend him: if he is not competent to tend or to get (another) to tend a pupil or one who shares a cell and who is ill, to allay or get (another) to allay dissatisfaction that has arisen, to dispel or get (another) to dispel, by means of *dhamma*,¹ remorse that has arisen, if he does not know what is an offence, if he does not know the removal² of an offence. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... a novice should not attend him.

Kd.1.36.11

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... a novice may attend him.

Kd.1.36.12

“And monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain ... a novice should not attend him: if he is not competent to make a pupil or one who shares a cell train in the training regarding the fundamentals of conduct,³ to lead him in the training regarding the fundamentals of the Brahma-faring,⁴ to lead him in what pertains to *dhamma*,⁵ to lead him in what pertains to discipline,⁶ to discuss or get (another) to discuss, by means of *dhamma*, a false view that has arisen. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... a novice should not attend him.

BD.4.84

Kd.1.36.13

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... a novice may attend him.

Kd.1.36.14

“And monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... a novice should not attend him: if he does not know what is an offence,⁷ if he does not know what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight offence,

¹ Cf. above Kd.1.25.20. ² *vuṭṭhāna*, the arising from. Cf. below, BD.4.134, *āpatti vuṭṭhitā*, an offence that is removed, and BD.4.197, *gāmo vuṭṭhāsi*, the village (was) removed. ³ *abhisamācārikā*. Vin-a.989–Vin-a.990 equates these with the duties (laid down) in the *Khandhakas*. ⁴ *ādibrahmacāriyikā*; see *Vinaya Texts* i.185, n.1. Vin-a.990 speaks of this as *sekhapaññatti*, which might mean ideas, concepts, notions suitable to a *sekha*, a learner. ⁵ *abhidhamma*. Vin-a.990 takes this as a division by name and form; and clearly has the *Abhidhammapiṭaka* in mind. But, for this passage pre-dating the existence of the *Abhidhammapiṭaka*, see Oldenberg, Vin.1.xii, also BD.3.xf., and my article: *Abhidhamma Abhivinaya Indian History Quarterly* Vol. XII, No. 3, September, 1941. ⁶ *abhivinaya*, taken by Vin-a.990 to mean the whole of the *Vinayapiṭaka*. ⁷ Cf. Vin.2.249; AN.iv.140, AN.v.71, AN.v.80, AN.v.201.

if he does not know what is a serious offence, if the two Pātimokkhas¹ in full are not properly handed down to him, not properly classified, not properly intoned, not properly divided by rule and in respect of the explanation.² Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... a novice should not attend him.

Kd.1.36.15

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... a novice may attend him.

Kd.1.36.16

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him: if he does not know what is an offence, if he does not know what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight offence, if he does not know what is a serious offence, if he is of less than ten years’ standing. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him.

Kd.1.36.17

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him: if he knows what is an offence, if he knows what is not an offence, if he knows what is a slight offence, if he knows what is a serious offence, if he is of ten years’ standing or of more than ten years’ standing.”

BD.4.85

Told is the Portion of sixteen times five (cases) when one may ordain

ON SIX CASES WHEN ONE MAY ORDAIN

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of six qualities ... he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him.³”

Kd.1.37.1

Vin.1.67

Vin.1.68

Vin.1.69

¹ That for the monks and that for the nuns. On Pātimokkha see below, **BD.4.131, n.2**. For this part of the passage see also **Vin.4.51 (BD.2.266)**. In general Buddhaghosa, at Vin-a.790 and Vin-a.990, gives different explanations of the terms. This accounts for the different translations here and at **BD.2.266**. ² Or, meaning, *anuvyañjanaso*. Vin-a.990 appears to explain this by *vibhaṅgato*, as to the *Vibhaṅga*, the explanatory material surrounding each rule; and *suttato*, “by rule”, by *mātikato*, by the “summaries”, the headings of, or key to, each set of rules (in **Vin.iii** and **Vin.iv**). ³ *Vinaya Texts* i.186, n.1 points out that **BD.1.37** is “identical with **Kd.1.36.2-1.36.15**, but for the sixth case which, throughout chap.**BD.1.37**, is added each time at the end of the five cases given in chap.**BD.1.36**”: “if he is of less than ten years’ standing” and “if he is of ten years’ standing or more than ten years’ standing” respectively.

Told is the Portion of sixteen times¹ six (cases) when one may ordain

ON ONE WHO HAD FORMERLY BEEN A MEMBER OF ANOTHER SECT

Kd.1.38.1

Now at that time the one who had formerly been a member of another sect² when he was being spoken to by his preceptor regarding a rule, having refuted the preceptor, went over to the fold of that same sect (as before), but having come back again, he asked the monks for ordination.³ The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, he who was formerly a member of another sect ... having refuted the preceptor and going over to the fold of that same sect (as before), on coming back should not be ordained. But, monks, whoever else was formerly a member of another sect and desires the going forth in this *dhamma* and discipline and desires ordination, to him you should grant probation⁴ for four months.⁵

Kd.1.38.2

BD.4.86

“And thus, monks, should it be granted: first, having made him have his hair and beard cut off, having got (someone) to present⁶ him with yellow robes, having made him arrange his upper robes over one shoulder, having made him honour the monks’ feet, having made him sit down on his haunches, having made him salute with joined palms, he should be told: ‘Speak thus: “I go to the enlightened one for refuge, I go to *dhamma* for

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i.186, n.2, points out that this should be “Fourteen times”, for where the first four items in [Kd.1.36.15](#) and [Kd.1.36.17](#) are the same as one another and only the last in each is different, thus together making a total of six items, in [Kd.1.37.13](#), [Kd.1.37.14](#) there is no repetition and these six items form one group and no more. ² See above [Kd.1.31.6](#). ³ Cf. [Vin.2.279](#), in regard to nuns. ⁴ This is probation before ordination into the Order took place. It is not the probation which forms part of the penalty for breaking a *Saṅghādisesa* rule. *Vin*-a.990 says that it is called probation, *parivāsa*, for members of other sects and also probation for the unconcealed, *appaṭicchannaparivāsa*, and can be given to naked wanderers, naked ascetics, *ājīvakas*, and to unclothed ascetics, *acela*, but not to anyone who has a cloak or a blanket made of the skin of wild animals. Cf. *appaṭicchannaparivāsa* at [Vin.5.126](#). If Buddhaghosa’s explanation is right, the “unconcealed probation” of *Critical Pali Dictionary* is erroneous. ⁵ Cf. this sentence with *Sn*p.p.102, *DN*.i.176. ⁶ See [BD.2.53](#), [BD.2.55](#), etc.

refuge, I go to the Order for refuge. And a second time I go ... And a third time I go ... to the Order for refuge.”¹

Kd.1.38.3

“Monks, if he who was formerly a member of another sect has approached the Order ... has saluted with joined palms, he should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, so and so, formerly a member of another sect, desire ordination in this *dhamma* and discipline. Therefore do I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for probation for four months.’² And a second time he should ask. And a third time he should ask. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This one, so and so, formerly a member of another sect, desires ordination in this *dhamma* and discipline. He asks the Order for probation for four months. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may grant probation to so and so, formerly a member of another sect, for four months. This is the motion.

Kd.1.38.4

“‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This one, so and so, formerly a member of another sect, desires ordination in this *dhamma* and discipline. He asks the Order for probation for four months. The Order is granting probation for four months to so and so, formerly a member of another sect. If the granting of probation for four months to so and so, formerly a member of another sect, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Probation for four months is granted by the Order to so and so, formerly a member of another sect. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Vin.1.70

Kd.1.38.5

BD.4.87

“Monks, a former member of another sect becomes one who succeeds thus, one who fails thus. And how, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who fails? Herein, monks, a former member of another sect enters a village at too early a time,³ he returns too late in the day.⁴ Thus, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who fails. And again, monks, a former member of another sect comes to be one whose

¹ Same method used at Kd.1.54.3 for letting novices go forth. ² Quoted at DN-a.ii.362.

³ Vin-a.991 says that he enters a village when he ought to be doing services for the monks.

⁴ Vin-a.991 says that he comes back when the monks are meditating or having the exposition and interrogation, and does not do what is due to a preceptor or teacher.

resort¹ (for alms) is among prostitutes,² or he comes to be one whose resort (for alms) is among widows,³ or he comes to be one whose resort (for alms) is among grown girls,⁴ or he comes to be one whose resort (for alms) is among eunuchs, or he comes to be one whose resort (for alms) is among nuns.⁵ Thus, too, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who fails.

Kd.1.38.6

“And again, monks, a former member of another sect in regard to those various things which have to be done by his fellows in the Brahma-faring, comes to be not dexterous therein, not vigorous, not possessed of consideration for those kinds of things,⁶ not able to act himself, not able to direct (others). Thus too, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who fails. And again, monks, a former member of another sect comes to be one who is not of keen desire⁷ as to the recitation, as to the interrogation, as to the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher wisdom. Thus too, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who fails.

BD.4.88

Kd.1.38.7

“And again, monks, a former member of another sect becomes angry, displeased, dissatisfied if dispraise is being spoken of the teacher, the views, the approval, the persuasion, the creed⁸ of that fold of a sect from which he has come over; he becomes pleased, elated, satisfied if dispraise is be-

¹ *gocara*, animals' feeding ground, pasture, then applied to places where monks accept alms-food. ² *vesiyā*, also meaning a low-class woman. Vin-a.991 calls them women who fall easily into transgression on account of their beauty. On *vesiyagocara* see also Vb-a.339, AN-a.iii.278 The *gocaras* are referred to below, BD.4.417. Also at AN.iii.128, where it is said that if a monk goes to them he is thought of as a depraved monk and is mistrusted even if he is *kuppadhamma* (variant reading *akuppa-*), bound for the immovable (see GS.iii.98, n.1). At Vb.246 (quoted Vism.17) a sixth *gocara* is added: liquor-shop, and the six are called *agocara*. These are referred to at Dh-p-a.iii.275. ³ Vin-a.990, Vb-a.339 define widows as women whose husbands are dead or absent. ⁴ *thullakumāriyo*. Cf. below, BD.4.198. Vin-a.991 says these are girls who have attained their youth or who are past it; Vb-a.339, AN-a.iii.278 say that they are *mahallika*, i.e. grown-up girls, Vb-a. adding that they are “not placed”, i.e. unmarried (cf. same expression in regard to *kulakumāriyo* at AN-a.iv.12). See Ja.iv.219 where *thullakumārika* does not mean “coarse” but “grown-up”, of full age, *vayappatta*; unmarried is implied by the context. On *kumāribhūtā* as maiden, unmarried girl, see BD.3, Introduction, p.xlix. ⁵ Not necessarily visiting the nuns' quarters, for see story of Udāyin asking Uppalavaṇṇā for one of her robes when she visited the monks' dwelling-place, Vin.3.208. ⁶ Same expression occurs at Vin.4.211. ⁷ *tibbacchanda*; cf. DN.iii.252, DN.iii.283 for seven other matters for which a monk should have *tibbacchanda*. ⁸ *ādāya*, here used as a noun.

ing spoken of the awakened one or of *dhamma* or of the Order; or else he becomes pleased, elated, satisfied if praise is being spoken of the teacher, the views, the approval, the persuasion, the creed of that fold of a sect from which he has come over; he becomes angry, displeased, dissatisfied if praise is being spoken of the awakened one or of *dhamma* or of the Order. This, monks, is the knitting together¹ in regard to what may be the failure² of a former member of another sect. It is thus, monks, that a former member of another sect becomes one who fails. Therefore, monks, if there come a former member of another sect who has failed, he should not be ordained.

Kd.1.38.8

“And how, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who succeeds? Herein, monks, a former member of another sect does not enter a village at too early a time, he does not return too late in the day. Thus, monks, does a former member of another sect become one who succeeds. And again, monks ... (*point by point the contrary of Kd.1.38.5, Kd.1.38.6, Kd.1.38.7*) ... This, monks, is the knitting together in regard to what may be the success of a former member of another sect. It is thus, monks, that a former member of another sect becomes one who succeeds. Therefore, monks, if there come a former member of another sect who has succeeded, he may be ordained.

Vin.1.71

Kd.1.38.11

“If, monks, a former member of another sect comes naked, a robe belonging to a preceptor³ should be looked about for. If he comes without the hair of his head cut off, the Order should be asked for permission for shaving it close.⁴ Monks, if those come who are fire-worshipping matted hair ascetics they may be ordained, probation should not be given to these. What is the reason for this? These, monks, affirm deeds, they affirm what ought to be done.⁵ If, monks, there come a former member of another sect who is a

BD.4.89

¹ *saṅghātanikaṃ*, the unifying. The word also occurs at MN.i.322, AN.iii.10 in the simile of the house with the peaked roof. There is no justification for the “decisive moment” of *Vinaya Texts* i.190. The sentence comes as a conclusion to the ways, already mentioned, in which failure (and below, success) may be manifested. ² *anārādhaniyaṣmiṃ*. ³ *upajjhāyamūlaka cīvara*. According to Vin-a.994, having made a preceptor his master, *issara*, he has some claim on him as to bowl and robes. At Vin.3.204, there is the expression *mūlacīvara*. See Kd.1.26.1 where if one who shares a cell has no robe his preceptor should try to get one for him. ⁴ *bhaṇḍukamma*. Cf. below, end of Kd.1.48.2. ⁵ *kammavādino kiriyavādino*. Cf. DN.i.53, DN.i.115, AN.i.62, Vin.1.233, Vin.3.2. See also A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, Vol.4, No.2, p.119ff.

Sakyan by birth, he may be ordained, probation should not be given to him. I, monks, will give this special privilege to (my) relations.”

The Talk on Former Members of Another Sect

The Seventh Portion for Repeating

THE STORY OF FIVE DISEASES

Now at that time five diseases were prevalent among the people of Magadha: leprosy, boils, eczema, consumption, epilepsy.¹ People, afflicted with the five diseases, having approached Jīvaka Komārabhacca,² spoke thus: “It were good, teacher, if you would attend us.”³

Vin.1.72

“But I, masters, am very busy, there is much to be done, and King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha is to be looked after by me, also the women’s quarters and the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head. I am not able to attend you.”

“All this property shall become yours, teacher, and we will be your slaves.”⁴ It were good, teacher, if you would attend us.”

Kd.1.39.2

“But I, masters, am very busy ... I am not able to attend you.”

BD.4.90

Then it occurred to these people: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are of pleasant character, of pleasant conduct; having eaten good meals, they lie down, on beds sheltered from the wind. Suppose we were to go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans? In that case monks would look after us and moreover Jīvaka Komārabhacca would attend us.” Then these people, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks let them go forth, they ordained them. These monks looked after them and moreover Jīvaka Komārabhacca attended them.

Kd.1.39.3

Now at that time monks, looking after many ill monks, lived intent on asking, intent on hinting, saying: “Give food for the sick, give food for those who look after the sick, give medicines for the sick.”⁵ And Jīvaka Komārab-

¹ As at Kd.1.76.1 below. Cf. Vin.4.8 (BD.2.180, where see n.4 for further references). Mentioned also with many other diseases, at AN.v.110. ² See Kd.8.1. ³ *tikicchati*, to treat medically, to cure. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.274. ⁵ Three of the benefits that Visākhā was allowed to confer on the Order.

hacca, attending many ill monks, omitted some of his duties towards the king.

A certain man, afflicted with the five diseases, having approached Jīvaka Komārabhacca, spoke thus: “It were good, teacher, if you would attend me.”

Kd.1.39.4

“But I, master, am very busy ... I am not able to attend you.”

“All this property shall be yours, teacher, and I will be your slave. It were good, teacher, if you would attend me.”

“But I, master, am very busy ... I am not able to attend you.”

Kd.1.39.5

Then it occurred to that man: “Now these recluses, sons of the Sakyans are of pleasant character ... Suppose I were to go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans? In that case monks would look after me and moreover Jīvaka Komārabhacca would attend me; and when I am well I will leave the Order.”

Then that man, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. These monks let him go forth, they ordained him. These monks looked after him and moreover Jīvaka Komārabhacca attended him. When he was well he left the Order. Jīvaka Komārabhacca saw that man who had left the Order; seeing him, he spoke thus to that man: “Had not you, master, gone forth among the monks?”

Vin.1.73

“Yes, teacher.”

“Then why have you, master, acted in this way?” Then this man told this matter to Jīvaka Komārabhacca.

Jīvaka Komārabhacca looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these honoured sirs let one afflicted with the five diseases go forth?” Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord: “It were well, Lord, if the masters did not let one afflicted with (any one of)¹ the five diseases go forth.”

Kd.1.39.6

BD.4.91

The Lord then gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Jīvaka Komārabhacca with talk on *dhamma*. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the

Kd.1.39.7

¹ Taken separately at Vin-a.995f. in relation to going forth.

Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one afflicted with (any one of) the five diseases should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

ON KING’S SERVICE

Kd.1.40.1

Now at that time there came to be a disturbance on the borderlands of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha commanded the generals, the chief ministers, saying: “Go, good sirs, search¹ the borderlands.”

Kd.1.40.2

“Very well, sire,” the generals, the chief ministers answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent.

BD.4.92

Kd.1.40.3

Then it occurred to (some) very distinguished warriors: “Because we delight in battle,² we do evil and we engender much demerit. Now by what means could we refrain from evil and do what is good?” Then it occurred to these warriors: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are *dhamma*-farers, even-farers, Brahma-farers, they are truth-speakers, of moral habit, of good character.³ Now, if we were to go forth among these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, thus might we refrain from evil and do what is good.” Then these warriors, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks let them go forth, they ordained them.

Vin.1.74

The generals, the chief ministers, asked those in the King’s service⁴: “How is it, good sirs, that the warriors, so and so and so and so, are not to be seen?”

“Sirs,⁵ the warriors, so and so and so and so, have gone forth among the monks.” The generals, the chief ministers ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, let one who is in the king’s service go forth?” The generals, the chief ministers told this matter to King Seniya

¹ Vin-a.996 says that thieves were giving trouble, but because Bimbisāra was a stream-winner he did not command: “Strike them, kill them.” ² Cf. Vin.4.104. ³ Cf. BD.1.70, BD.1.125, BD.1.200, BD.1.223. ⁴ *rājabhaṭa*. ⁵ *sāmi*, lords, masters.

Bimbisāra of Magadha. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha asked the chief ministers of justice:

“Good sirs, what does he who lets one go forth who is in a king’s service engender¹ (for himself)?”

“Sire, a preceptor’s head should be cut off, the tongue should be torn from the announcer of a proclamation,² half the ribs of a (member of a) group should be broken.”

Kd.1.40.4

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the Lord: “There are, Lord, kings who are of no faith, not believing; these might harm monks even for a trifling matter. It were well, Lord, if the masters did not let one in a king’s service go forth.” Then the Lord gladdened ... delighted King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with talk on *dhamma*. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one in a king’s service should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

THE STORY OF A THIEF (WEARING) A GARLAND OF FINGERS

Now at that time a thief (wearing) a garland of fingers¹ came to have gone forth among the monks. People, having seen (him), were perturbed, then alarmed, then they ran away, then they went by a different route, then they turned in another direction, then they closed the door.² People ... spread it about, saying: “How can the recluses, sons of the Sakyans let a thief wearing an emblem³ go forth?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. The Lord addressed the monks saying:

Kd.1.41.1
BD.4.93

“Monks, a thief who wears an emblem should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

THE STORY OF A THIEF WHO HAS BROKEN OUT OF JAIL

Now at that time it was decreed by King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “There is nothing to do against those who go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans. Well preached is *dhamma*, let them fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill.”⁴ Now at that time a certain man, having committed a theft, was imprisoned in a jail; he, having broken out of jail, having run away, went forth among the monks.

Kd.1.42.1
Vin.1.75

Kd.1.42.2

¹ *pasavati*, same word as used above in “engender much demerit”. ² *anussāvaka*. Vin-a.996 takes this as *ācariya*, teacher, which would be more in line with “preceptor” and “group”, both of which might let a person go forth. The announcer of a proclamation had not, as such, this power. ³ *āṅgulimāla*. Not the well-known bandit-thief of this name (as *Vinaya Texts* i.196 and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* take it), for in the absence of *nāma* or *ti* no proper name is denoted. The robber who came to be called *Āṅgulimāla* has verses ascribed to him at Thag.866–891. At Thag.869–870 he is shown as asking the Lord for the going forth, the Lord as saying, “Come, monk”, and this at constituting his monk-status, *bhikkhubhāva*. His story, and the verses are also given at MN 86. It is difficult to reconcile the above Vinaya ruling with the story of *Āṅgulimāla*’s going forth, for the Lord recognised his unusual potentialities, hardly to be expected in the common run of thieves. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.144 (BD.1.246). ⁵ *dhajabaddha*.

⁴ Cf. Vin.4.226 (BD.3.182–183) where similar words are attributed to King Pasenadi.

People having seen (him) spoke thus: “This is the very¹ thief who has broken out of jail. Come along, let us bring him (back).²” Some spoke thus: “Do not, masters, speak thus, for it is decreed by King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: ‘There is nothing to do against those ... utter end of ill.’” People ... spread it about, saying:

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are safe and secure³; there is nothing to do against them. But how can they let a thief go forth who has broken out of jail?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.94

“Monks, a thief who has broken out of jail should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrongdoing.”

THE STORY OF AN THIEF WITH A “WANTED” NOTICE

Now at that time a certain man, having committed a theft, having run away, went forth among the monks. And in the royal palace, this was written:⁴ “Wherever he may be seen, there he should be killed.” People, having seen (him), spoke thus: “This is the very thief who was written about. Come along, let us kill him.” Some spoke thus: “Do not, masters, speak thus ... utter end of ill.” People ... spread it about, saying:

Kd.1.43.1

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are safe and secure; there is nothing to do against them. But how can they let a thief go forth who has been written about?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, a thief who has been written about should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrongdoing.”

¹ *ayaṃ so*, emphatic. ² *nema*, as in Kd.1.46.1, Kd.1.47.1. ³ *abhayūvarā*. This is the word which gives the title to this portion for “repeating”. ⁴ *likhita*. Editors of *Vinaya Texts* vol.i, Introduction, p.xxxii take this as a passage showing “in an indisputable manner the existence of the art of writing at the time when the *Vinaya Texts* were put into their present shape”. Vin-a.998 appears to confirm this view by saying *rājā ca naṃ paṇṇe vā potthake vā ... likhāpeti*, the king causes it to be written on a leaf or in a book. As *potthaka* can also mean “modelled in clay”, we must not assume that writing was then necessarily what it is now. Then, what “writing” was done was probably on palm-leaves and metal or clay tablets, and on wood. *Likh* in Pali can mean draw, write, carve, turn.

THE STORY OF A SCOURGED MAN

Kd.1.44.1

BD.4.95

Now at that time a certain man who had been scourged as punishment¹ came to have gone forth among the monks. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, let one who has been scourged as punish-ment go forth?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, one who has been scourged as punishment should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Vin.1.76

<h2>The story of a branded man</h2>>

Kd.1.45.1

Now at that time a certain man who had been branded as punishment² ... (as in [Kd.1.44.1](#) to the end).

THE STORY OF A DEBTOR

Kd.1.46.1

Now at that time a certain man, a debtor, having run away, came to have gone forth among the monks. The creditors, having seen (him), spoke thus: “This is our very debtor. Come along, let us bring him (back).³” Some spoke thus: “Do not, masters, speak thus, for it is decreed by King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “There is nothing to do against those who go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans. Well preached is *dhamma*, let them fare the Brahma-faring for making an utter end of ill’.” People ... spread it about, saying:

“These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are safe and secure; there is nothing to do against them. But how can they let a debtor go forth?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, a debtor should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

THE STORY OF A SLAVE

Kd.1.47.1

Now at that time a certain slave, having run away, came to have gone forth among the monks. The mistresses,¹ having seen (him), spoke thus: “This is our very slave. Come along, let us bring him (back).”² ... (as in [BD.1.46](#)) ...

“Monks, a slave should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.4.96

THE STORY OF A BALD-HEADED METAL-SMITH

Now at that time a certain bald-headed metal-smith,³ having quarrelled with his parents, having gone to a monastery, went forth among the monks. Then the parents of that bald-headed metal-smith, searching for that bald-headed metal-smith, having gone to the monastery, asked the monks, saying: “Honoured sirs, have you seen a youth like that?” The monks, not knowing (him), merely said: “We do not know (him)”; not seeing (him), merely said: “We do not see (him).”

Kd.1.48.1

Then the parents of that bald-headed metal-smith, searching for that bald-headed metal-smith, having seen him gone forth among the monks ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are shameless, of bad conduct, liars; knowing, they merely say, ‘We do not know’; seeing, they merely say, ‘We do not see’ and this youth is gone forth among the monks.” Monks heard the parents of this bald-headed metal-smith who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.48.2

Vin.1.77

¹ *kasāhata katadaṇḍakamma*. ² *lakkaṇāhata katadaṇḍakamma*. ³ *nema*, as in [Kd.1.42.2](#), [Kd.1.47.1](#). ¹ *ayyikā*. At [Vin.1.371](#), the variant reading *sāmikā* is given. A small piece of evidence that women ruled the household, rather than their husbands. ² *nema*, as in [Kd.1.42.2](#) and [Kd.1.46.1](#). ³ *kammārabhaṇḍu*. Highly esteemed by king and people, [Ja.iii.281](#). No distinction was apparently made between workers in gold, silver and other metals, but [Vin-a.1002](#) says he was a goldsmith’s son. The exact point of his being a smith is obscure.

“I allow you, monks, to ask the Order for permission for shaving (the hair of the head) close.¹”

THE STORY OF THE BOY UPĀLI

Kd.1.49.1

Now at that time in Rājagaha a group of seventeen boys were friends²; of these the youth Upāli was the chief. Then it occurred to Upāli’s parents: “By what means could Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want?” Then it occurred to Upāli’s parents: “If Upāli should learn writing, so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want.” Then it occurred to Upāli’s parents: “But if Upāli learns writing his fingers will become painful. If Upāli were to learn calculation, so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want.”

BD.4.97

Kd.1.49.2

Then it occurred to Upāli’s parents: “But if Upāli learns calculation, his breast will become painful. If Upāli were to learn money-changing, so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want.” Then it occurred to Upāli’s parents: “But if Upāli learns money-changing his eyes will become painful. Now there are these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, pleasant in habit, pleasant in conduct; having eaten good meals, they lie down on beds sheltered from the wind. Now if Upāli were to go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, so would Upāli, after our demise, live at ease and not be in want.”

Kd.1.49.3

The boy Upāli heard this conversation of his parents. Then the boy Upāli approached those boys; having approached, he spoke thus to these boys: “Come, masters, we will go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans.”

“If you, master, will go forth, we likewise will also go forth.” Then these boys, having (each) approached his parents, spoke thus:

Vin.1.78

“Consent that I may go forth from home into homelessness.” Then the

¹ *bhaṇḍukamma*, cf. above [Kd.1.38.11](#). Vin-a.1003 says that if there is a newly shaven one (*navamuṇḍa*) or one leaving the Order or if there is anyone among the Jains and so on whose hair is two finger-breadths long or less, there is no need to cut his hair, therefore such a one can be allowed to go forth without asking for the close shaving. But whoever has hair more than two finger-breadths long, even if it be only a top-knot, may only be allowed to go forth when the close shaving has been asked for. ² As at [Vin.4.128ff.](#) ([BD.3.10ff.](#)).

parents of those boys consented, thinking: “All these boys want the same thing, they are bent on what is good.” These, having approached monks, asked for the going forth. These monks let them go forth, they ordained them.

Kd.1.49.4

Getting up in the night towards dawn, these cried out: “Give conjei, give rice, give solid food.”

The monks spoke thus: “Wait, your reverences, until it turns light. Should there be conjei you shall drink it; should there be rice you shall partake of it; should there be solid food you shall eat it. But should there not be conjei or rice or solid food, then, having walked for alms, you shall eat.”

But these monks, being spoken to thus by the monks, cried out just the same: “Give conjei, give rice, give solid food,” and they soiled and wetted the bedding.

Kd.1.49.5

Then the Lord, getting up in the night towards dawn, hearing this noise of boys, addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Why ever, Ānanda, is there this noise of boys?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.98

“Is it true as is said, monks, that monks knowingly ordain an individual¹ who is under twenty years of age?”

“It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men knowingly ordain an individual who is under twenty years of age?”

Kd.1.49.6

Monks, an individual under twenty years of age is not able² to endure cold, heat, hunger, thirst, the sting of gadflies or mosquitoes, wind and sun, creeping things, abusive, hurtful language; he is not the kind (of person) who endures bodily feelings which, arising, are painful, acute, sharp, shooting, disagreeable, miserable, deadly. But, monks, an individual of twenty years of age is able to endure cold, heat ... miserable, deadly. Monks, this is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing the number of those who are pleased.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ On the monkish intention of *puggala*, see [BD.3.xxiiif](#). ² As at [Vin.4.130](#), [Bu-Pc.65](#) ([BD.3.12](#)).

“Monks, an individual who is under twenty years of age should not knowingly be ordained. Whoever should (so) ordain (one such) should be dealt with according to the rule.”¹

THE STORY OF MALARIA

Kd.1.50.1

Now at that time a certain family came to pass away as a result of malaria.² (Only) the father and little son belonging to it survived.³ These, having gone forth among the monks, walked even for almsfood together. Then that boy, when almsfood was given to his father, having run up to him, spoke thus: “Give to me too, father, give to me too, father.” People ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are not chaste. This boy was born of a nun.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.1.79

BD.4.99

“Monks, a boy of less than fifteen years of age should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”⁴

Kd.1.51.1

Now at that time the family, faithful, believing, who supported the venerable Ānanda, passed away as a result of malaria, but two boys survived. These, having seen monks, ran up to them according to their former allowable custom, (but) the monks sent them away. These cried on being sent away by the monks. Then it occurred to the venerable Ānanda: “It is laid

¹ Bu-Pc.65. ² *ahivātakaroga*, should be “snake-wind-disease”. Word occurs at Ja.ii.79, Ja.iv.200. See note at Jataka Cambridge translation, ii.55. Cf. Mahāvastu i.253, a disease called *adhivāsa* (produced by non-human agency) which is said to attack a whole district. ³ *sesā honti* “came to remain”. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1003 explains the means by which a person may escape from the disease—by making a hole in the wall or roof and running away. This is also mentioned at Ja.ii.79, Ja.iv.200. See note at Jātaka translation, ii.55. The *rogāmādigato*, the reading which *Vinaya Texts* i.204, n.1 ascribes to the Commentary, should be *tirogāmādigato*, reached a distant village (where he is free, *muccati*, of the disease). ⁴ Five years, therefore, were to elapse before the *upasampadā* ordination was allowed (see Bu-Pc.65 and below, Kd.1.75.1). (Note by Sujato: This last reference is, apparently by mistake, left blank in the text. I have supplied the probable referent.) This intervening period is referred to at Ja.i.106: *kulaputto ... pabbajitvā upasampadāya pañcavassiko hutvā*, a boy of good family, having gone forth, being five years off ordination ...

down by the Lord that a boy of less than fifteen years of age should not be allowed to go forth, and these boys are less than fifteen years of age. Now by what means might these boys not be lost?" Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"But, Ānanda, are these boys able to scare¹ crows?"

"They are able (to do so), Lord." Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, to let a youth of less than fifteen years of age and who is a scarer of crows² go forth."

THE STORY OF KAṆḌAKA

Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, had two novices, Kaṇḍaka³ and Mahaka.⁴ These committed sodomy with one another. Monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these novices indulge in a bad habit such as this?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Monks, two novices should not attend one (monk). Whoever should make two novices attend⁵ him, there is an offence of wrong-doing."

¹ *uṭṭepetum*, meaning "to make fly up" or "to catch in snares". See *Pali-English Dictionary* Vin-a.1003 is not helpful. ² *kākuṭṭepaka*. The word should probably read *uḍḍepaka*. Vin-a.1003 explains as "having taken a clod of earth in his left hand, he is able, sitting down and having made the crows fly up (*kāke uḍḍāpetvā*), to eat a meal put down in front of (him)". This shows a certain amount of physical strength and endurance, not to be found in an infant. In a country where crows are as persistent as they are in India, it must have been useful to have had boys who could scare them away. Nevertheless this allowance forms a most singular exception to the general rule forbidding the going forth of a youth under fifteen years of age. ³ Also below, [BD.4.107](#), where it was probably this Kaṇḍaka who was expelled. There is also a Kaṇḍaka, a novice, at [Vin.4.138](#), but he was expelled for holding a wrong view, and is therefore perhaps not the same as Upananda's novice. ⁴ Heard of nowhere but here, I think. ⁵ *upaṭṭhāpeti*. Cf. above, [Kd.1.36.2](#). This word can also mean to look after, to cause to attend, e.g. one who is ill or another monk, whether a senior or a junior. See *Vinaya Texts* i.49, n.5; also [Bu-Pc.70](#) where the same word is used in connection with the expelled Kaṇḍaka, and is there defined by the Old Commentary, in terms of giving material help and comfort. It does not mean "to ordain" as at *Vinaya Texts* i.205 and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, article on *Karitaka*. Below, [Kd.1.55.1](#), the ruling is amended.

Kd.1.52.1

BD.4.100

THE STORY OF WHEN IT WAS CROWDED

Kd.1.53.1

Now at that time¹ the Lord spent the rains just there, in Rājagaha, the cold weather there, the hot weather there. People ... spread it about, saying: “The district is crowded up, confused with recluses, sons of the Sakyans; because of them the district is not to be seen.” Monks, heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.1.53.2

Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Go, Ānanda, and taking a key, announce to the monks in every cell: “Your reverences, the Lord wishes to set out on tour for Dakkhiṇāgiri. Whatever venerable one needs (to do so), let him come.”

Vin.1.80

“Yes, Lord,” and the venerable Ānanda, having answered the Lord in assent, taking the key, announced to the monks in every cell: “Your reverences, the Lord wishes to set out on tour for Dakkhiṇāgiri. Whatever venerable one needs (to do so), let him come.”

Kd.1.53.3

Monks spoke thus: “Reverend Ānanda, it is laid down by the Lord (that one is) to live ten years in dependence, and when one is of ten years’ standing (he is) to give guidance.² If we go there then guidance must be chosen³ (there), but the stop (there) may be short; then we must come back again and guidance must be chosen again. If our teachers and preceptors are going, we too will go; but if our teachers and preceptors are not going, then we will not go. Reverend Ānanda, we shall (otherwise) look feather-brained.”⁴

BD.4.101

Kd.1.53.4

Then the Lord set out on tour for Dakkhiṇāgiri with an Order of monks numbering less than a group.⁵

¹ Cf. Kd.1.53.1 with Bi-Pc.40, where a similar description of Rājagaha is given when it was crowded out by nuns. ² See Kd.1.32.1 above. ³ *nissayo ca gahetabbo bhavissati*. Cf. *upajjhāyo gahetabbo* at Kd.1.25.7 and *ācariyo gahetabbo* at Kd.1.32.2: “thus should a preceptor ... a teacher be chosen.” The reference in the above passage would appear to be back to this kind of choosing: choosing a preceptor or teacher, or both, to give guidance. If a pupil or preceptor leave one another then *nissaya* (guidance) is broken. ⁴ *lahucittakatā no paññāyissati*, a feather-brained (light minded) state will be apparent in us. ⁵ *ogaṇena bhikkhusaṅghena*. Vin-a.1003 explains *ogaṇena* as *parihīnagaṇena*, lacking a group, and as *appamattaka bhikkhusaṅgha*, only a small Order of monks. Usually a “group” consisted of from two to four monks or nuns, but above, Kd.1.31.2, a group of ten monks is referred to.

ON RELEASE FROM DEPENDENCE

Then the Lord, having stayed in Dakkhiṇāgiri for as long as he found suiting, came back again to Rājagaha. Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “How is it, Ānanda, that the Truthfinder set out on tour for Dakkhiṇāgiri with an Order of monks numbering less than a group?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, an experienced competent monk to live five years in dependence (but) an inexperienced one all his life.

Kd.1.53.5

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he should not live independently¹ (of a preceptor or teacher): if he is not possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, if a monk is not possessed of these five qualities he should not live independently. Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may live independently: if he is possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he may live independently.²

Kd.1.53.6

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he should not live independently: if he comes to be of no faith ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, he should not live independently. Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may live independently: if he comes to have faith ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, ... he may live independently.

Vin.1.81

“... five further qualities he should not live independently: if, in regard to moral habit, he comes to have fallen away from moral habit ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may live independently: if, in regard to moral habit, he does not come to have fallen away ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... he may live independently.

Kd.1.53.7

BD.4.102

“... five further qualities he should not live independently: if he does not know what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may live independently: if he knows what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.15) ... he may live independently.

Kd.1.53.8

Kd.1.53.9

¹ *anissitena*, in independence, without a teacher to give guidance. ² Cf. below, Kd.1.73.1–1.73.4 where other cases are given where a monk may live independently, *anissita*.

“... five further qualities he should not live independently: if he does not know what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of less than five years’ standing ... Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he may live independently: if he knows what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of five years’ standing or of more than five years’ standing ...

Kd.1.53.10

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of six qualities he should not live independently: if he is not possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of less than five years’ standing. Monks, if a monk is not possessed of these six qualities he should not live independently. Monks, if a monk is possessed of six qualities he may live independently: if he is possessed of an adept’s body of moral habit ... (=Kd.1.37.2) ... if he is of five years’ standing or more than five years’ standing ...

Kd.1.53.11

“... six further qualities he should not live independently: if he comes to have no faith ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of less than five years’ standing ... possessed of six qualities he may live independently: if he comes to have faith ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of five years’ standing or more than five years’ standing ...

Kd.1.53.12

“... six further qualities he should not live independently: if, in regard to moral habit, he comes to have fallen away from moral habit ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of less than five years’ standing ... possessed of six qualities he may live independently: if, in regard to moral habit, he does not come to have fallen away ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of five years’ standing or more than five years’ standing.

Kd.1.53.13

BD.4.103

“... six further qualities he should not live independently: if he does not know what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of less than five years’ standing ... possessed of six qualities he may live independently: if he knows what is an offence ... (=Kd.1.36.3) ... if he is of five years’ standing or more than five years’ standing. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these six qualities he may live independently.”

THE STORY OF RĀHULA

Then the Lord, having stayed in Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Kapilavatthu. Walking on tour in due course he arrived at Kapilavatthu.¹ The Lord stayed there among the Sakyans in Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery.² Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of Suddhodana the Sakyan; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. Then the lady, Rāhula's mother, spoke thus to the boy Rāhula: "This, Rāhula, is your father, go and ask him for your inheritance."

Kd.1.54.2

Then the boy Rāhula approached the Lord; having approached, he stood in front of the Lord and said: "Pleasant is your shadow, recluse." Then the Lord, rising up from his seat, departed. Then the boy Rāhula, following close behind the Lord, said: "Give me my inheritance, recluse, give me my inheritance, recluse." Then the Lord addressed the venerable Sāriputta, saying: "Well then, do you, Sāriputta, let the boy Rāhula go forth."³

"How do I, Lord, let the boy Rāhula go forth?"

Kd.1.54.3

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: "I allow, monks, the going forth for novices by the three goings for refuge. And thus, monks, should you let one go forth: first, having made him have his hair and beard cut off, having got (someone) to present him with yellow robes, having made him arrange his upper robe over one shoulder, having made him honour the monks' feet, having made him sit down on his haunches, having made him salute with joined palms, he should be told: 'Speak thus: "I go to the awakened one for refuge I go to *dhmma* for refuge, I go to the Order for refuge. And a second time I go ... And a third time I go ... to the Order for refuge"''.⁴ I allow, monks, the going forth for novices by these three goings for refuge."

BD.4.104

Kd.1.54.4

Then the venerable Sāriputta let the boy Rāhula go forth. Then Suddhodana the Sakyan approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted

¹ Vin-a.1005 says it was a distance of sixty *yojanas* from Rājagaha; and going a *yojana* a day, the Lord's journey took two months. ² See BD.2.94, n.1. ³ Story of "Rāhula's conversion" also given at Dh-p-a.i.116f. ⁴ Same method employed at Kd.1.38.2 for granting probation to former members of other sects.

the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance Suddhodana the Sakyan spoke thus to the Lord:

“I, Lord, ask the Lord for one boon.”

“But, Gotama,¹ Truth-finders are beyond (granting) boons.”²

“Lord, it is what is allowable, it is what is blameless.”

“Speak on, Gotama.”

Kd.1.54.5

“Lord, when the Lord went forth there came to be not a little sorrow, likewise when Nanda³ did; it was extreme when Rāhula did.⁴ Affection for a son, Lord, cuts into the skin, having cut into the skin it cuts into the hide, having cut into the hide it cuts into the flesh ... the ligaments ... the bones, having cut into the bones and reaching the marrow, it abides. It were well, Lord, if the masters did not let a child to go forth without the parents’ consent.”

Vin.1.83

Kd.1.54.6

Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Suddhodana the Sakyan with talk on *dhamma*. Then Suddhodana the Sakyan gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a child who has not his parents’ consent should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.1.55.1

BD.4.105

Then the Lord, having stayed in Kapilavatthu for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvattthī. Walking on tour in due course he arrived at Sāvattthī. The Lord stayed there in Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the family who supported the venerable Sāriputta sent a youth to the venerable Sāriputta, saying:

¹ Gotama was the clan or family name. ² *atikkaniavarā*. *Vinaya Texts*, in translating above and parallel passages at [Vin.1.280](#), [Vin.1.292](#), adds “before they know what they are”. ROUSE, *Jātaka translation*, iv.198 (=Ja.iv.315, quoting [Vin.1.292](#)) has “the Tathāgatas have boons beyond measure”; *Critical Pali Dictionary* “above (granting) boons”. ³ The Lord’s half-brother, son of Mahāpajāpati. On Nanda’s going forth see [Vin-a.1008f.](#), [Dhp-a.i.116](#). Verses at [Thag.157](#). See [Ud.21ff.](#) ⁴ [Vin-a.1010](#) says that Suddhodana thinking the family line broken because these three went forth, asked where a king could come from.

“May the elder let this youth go forth.” Then it occurred to the venerable Sāriputta: “A rule of training laid down by the Lord says that two novices should not attend one (monk),¹ and this Rāhula is my novice. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” He told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow, monks, two novices to attend one experienced, competent monk, or else as many to attend (him) as he is able to exhort, to instruct.”

ON TRAINING RULES

Then it occurred to the novices: “Now, how many rules for training are there for us and in which we are to train?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, I allow ten rules for training for novices² and novices to train in these:

1. **Restraint from onslaught on creatures;**³
2. **Restraint from taking what is not given;**⁴
3. **Restraint from unchastity;**⁵
4. **Restraint from lying;**⁶
5. **Restraint from the occasion of sloth (induced by) fermented liquor, spirits and strong drink;**⁷
6. **Restraint from eating at the wrong time;**⁸
7. **Restraint from seeing shows⁹ of dancing, singing and music;**¹⁰
8. **Restraint from the occasion of using garlands, scents, unguents and wearing finery;**
9. **Restraint from using high beds, large beds;**¹¹

Kd.1.56.1

BD.4.106

Vin.1.84

¹ Above, Kd.1.52.1. ² Novice is defined at Vin.4.122 (BD.2.412) as one conforming to ten rules for training; also female novice is so defined at Vin.4.343 (BD.3.411). ³ Bu-Pj.3, Bu-Pc.61. These restraints or abstinences occur at e.g. DN.i.4ff., AN.i.211, AN.ii.209, AN.iv.247ff., SN.v.469, Pp.58. Cf. DN-a.69ff. ⁴ Bu-Pj.2. ⁵ Bu-Pj.1. ⁶ Bu-Pj.4. ⁷ Cf. Bu-Pc.61. ⁸ Bu-Pc.37. ⁹ *visūka* appears to mean twisting, wriggling, restless motion. On the miming nature of singing, dancing and music see BD.3.xl, note and BD.4.298, n.2. These shows where movement was a feature were of quite a different character from shows of inanimate objects. Nuns were forbidden to visit these latter by their Bu-Pc.41. ¹⁰ A *dukkata* for monks to see these, Vin.2.108; a *Pācittiya* for nuns to see them, Bi-Pc.10. ¹¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.87.

10. Restraint from accepting gold and silver.¹

“I allow monks, these ten rules for training for novices and novices to train in these.”

THE STORY OF AN ACT OF PUNISHMENT

Kd.1.57.1

Now at that time novices were not respectful, not deferential not courteous towards the monks. Monks ... spread it about saying: “How can these novices not be respectful ... towards the monks?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, I allow you to impose a punishment² on a novice who is possessed of five qualities:

1. “If he tries for non-receiving (of gains)³ by monks.
2. “If he tries for non-profiting by monks.
3. “If he tries for non-residence for monks.
4. “If he reviles and abuses⁴ monks.
5. “If he causes monk to break with monk.

“I allow you, monks, to impose a punishment on a novice who is possessed of these five qualities.”

Kd.1.57.2

Then it occurred to these monks: “Now, how should the punishment be imposed?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a prohibition.”⁵ Now at that time monks made a prohibition for novices in respect of an Order’s entire monastery. The novices, on being unable to enter the monastery, went away, and left the Order, and went over to (other) sects. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, an Order’s entire monastery should not be made (the subject of) a prohibition. Whoever should make (it such), there is an offence of wrong-**

¹ Bu-NP.18. ² *daṇḍakamma*; cf. above Kd.1.44.1, Kd.1.45.1, and Vin.2.262f. ³ So Vin-a.1013; “of requisites,” AN-a.iv.160. Cf. these with five qualities” at Vin.2.18, “eight qualities” at AN.iv.345, Vin.2.125. ⁴ Cf. Vin.4.52, Vin.4.309 where nuns may not revile or abuse a monk. ⁵ *āvāraṇa*, an obstacle, hindrance, barring off. Cf. Vin.2.262f.

doing. I allow you, monks, to make a prohibition in respect of wherever he is staying or wherever he is entering.¹⁷

Now at that time monks made a prohibition for novices in respect of nutriment taken by the mouth. People, making a drink of conje and also rice for an Order, spoke thus to the novices: “Come, honoured sirs, drink the conje, come, honoured sirs, partake of the rice.” The novices spoke thus: “It is not possible, sirs, the monks have made (this the subject of) a prohibition.” The people ... spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs make a prohibition for novices in respect of nutriment taken by the mouth?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nutriment taken by the mouth is not to be made (the subject of) a prohibition. Whoever should make (it such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.1.57.3

BD.4.107

Told is the Item on Punishment

THE STORY OF MAKING A PROHIBITION WITHOUT ASKING

Now at that time the group of six monks, without having asked preceptors (for permission), made a prohibition for novices. Preceptors hunted about, saying: “Now, where are our novices? They are not to be seen.” Monks spoke thus: “A prohibition was made, your reverences, by the group of six monks.” The preceptors ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, without asking us (for permission), make a prohibition for our novices?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a prohibition is not to be made without asking preceptors (for permission). Whoever should make one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.1.58.1

Vin.1.85

THE STORY OF LURING AWAY

Now at that time the group of six monks lured away¹ the novices of monks who were elders. The elders, getting their own tooth-wood and water for rinsing the mouth, were incommoded.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, another’s assembly should not be lured away. Whoever should lure it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.1.59.1

THE STORY OF KAṆḌAKA THE NOVICE

Kd.1.60.1

BD.4.108

Now at that time Kaṇḍaka,³ a novice of the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, seduced the nun Kaṇḍakā. Monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this novice indulge in a bad habit like this?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to expel a novice who is possessed of ten qualities:

1. **“If he is one who makes onslaught on creatures.**
2. **“If he is one who takes what is not given.**
3. **“If he is one who is unchaste.**
4. **“If he is a liar.**
5. **“If he is a drinker of strong drink.**
6. **“If he speaks dispraise of the awakened one.**
7. **“If he speaks dispraise of *Dhamma*.**
8. **“If he speaks dispraise of the Order.**
9. **“If he is a holder of a false view.”⁴**

¹ *paṭikkamati*, to return, Vin-a.1013 explains by *pavisati*, to enter. The meaning is entering a monastery in the sense of returning to it. ¹ *apalāḷenti*, to draw over (to themselves). Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1014 hints at bribery, the group of six saying they would give bowls and robes to the novices. ² *kilamati*, more usually to go short of; to be tired, fatigued. Those who shared cells and pupils should get tooth-wood and water for rinsing the mouth for their preceptors and teachers respectively, Kd.1.25.8, Kd.1.32.3. ³ See above, Kd.1.52.1 and BD.3.31. ⁴ At Vin.4.138 (BD.3.31) a novice, Kaṇḍaka, was expelled on this ground.

10. “If he is a seducer of nuns.”¹

“I allow you, monks, to expel a novice who is possessed of these ten qualities.”

THE STORY OF A EUNUCH

Now at that time a certain eunuch came to have gone forth among the monks. Having approached a number of young monks, he spoke thus: “Come, venerable ones, commit an offence with me.” The monks refused, saying: “Be off², eunuch, depart³, eunuch. What need have you?” Refused by the monks, having approached a number of large, fat⁴ novices, he spoke thus: “Come, your reverences, commit an offence with me.” The novices refused, saying: “Be off, eunuch, depart, eunuch. What need have you?” Refused by the novices, having approached mahouts and grooms⁵, he spoke thus: “Come, sirs, commit an offence with me.” The mahouts and grooms committed an offence with him.

Kd.1.61.1

These ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are eunuchs, and those of them who are not eunuchs, they too commit offences with eunuchs. Thus they are one and all unchaste.” Monks heard these mahouts and grooms who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.61.2

BD.4.109

¹ Vin-a.1015 explains that “one who is unchaste” may be ordained if he is willing to restrain himself in the future, but a seducer of nuns cannot even go forth. Cf. *Vinaya Texts* i.215, n.1. At AN.v.70, AN.v.71 among ten specified occasions where the Pātimokkha may be suspended are included the presence of a seducer of nuns, and the presence of a eunuch (see next paragraph below). ² *nassa*, disappear. ³ *vinassa* = *nassa*, Vin-a.871, which adds “go where we do not see you”. For *cara pi re vinassa* see Vin.4.139. ⁴ *Moligalla*; variant readings given at Vin.1.372: *moḷigalla*, *mukalla*. ⁵ *hatthibhaṇḍa assabhaṇḍa*. Vin-a.1015 explains *bhaṇḍa* by *gopaka*, guardian, watchman.

“Monks, if a eunuch is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.”¹

THE STORY OF ONE IN COMMUNION BY THEFT

Kd.1.62.1

Now at that time a certain descendant of an ancient family which had come down in the world was delicately nurtured. Then it occurred to this descendant of the ancient family which had come down in the world: “Now, I am delicately nurtured, I am not able to acquire wealth not (already) acquired, nor to increase the wealth (already) acquired.² Now by what means could I live at ease and not be in want?” Then it occurred to this descendant ... in the world: “Now these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are of pleasant conduct, of pleasant character; having eaten good meals, they lie down to sleep on beds sheltered from the wind. Suppose that I, having prepared a bowl and robe for myself, having cut off my hair and beard, having clothed myself in yellow robes, having gone to a monastery, should be in communion together with monks?”

Kd.1.62.2

Then that descendant ... in the world, having prepared a bowl and robe for himself, having cut off his hair and beard, having clothed himself in yellow robes, having gone to a monastery, greeted the monks. The monks spoke thus: “Of how many years’ standing are you, your reverence?” “What does this mean, your reverences: ‘how many years’ standing’?”

“But who, your reverence, is your preceptor?”

“What does this mean, your reverences: ‘preceptor’?”

The monks spoke thus to the venerable Upāli³:

“Please, reverend Upāli, examine this one who has gone forth.”

Kd.1.62.3

BD.4.110

¹ Vin-a.1016 says he is to be expelled by the expulsion due to characteristic, *liṅganāsana*. Three kinds of expulsion are given at Vin-a.87of.: (1) expulsion from communion, meaning expulsion for not seeing an offence, not making amends for it, not giving up a false view; (2) expulsion due to characteristic, as an example of which the nun Mettiyā is cited (Vin.3.162-3); (3) expulsion as a punishment, with the words, ‘From today forth, reverend novice, the Lord cannot be referred to as your teacher’ (Vin.4.139=BD.3.31). ² This inability is at AN.i.129 given as a characteristic of a blind person (*puggala*), while the opposite, ability in this respect, is given as a characteristic of a one-eyed and of a two-eyed person. ³ No doubt the Vinaya expert.

Then as that descendant ... in the world was being examined¹ by the venerable Upāli, he told him this matter. The venerable Upāli told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, if one who is in communion by theft² is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled. Monks, if one who has gone over to (another) sect³ is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.”

THE STORY OF AN ANIMAL

Now at that time a certain serpent was troubled about his birth as a serpent, he was ashamed of it, loathed it⁴. Then it occurred to that serpent: “Now, by what means could I be freed quickly from birth as a serpent and get back⁵ human status?” Then it occurred to that serpent: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are *dhamma*-farers, even-farers, Brahma-farers, they are truth-speakers, they are of moral habit, of good conduct. Now if I were to go forth among the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, so would I be freed quickly from birth as a serpent and could get back human status.”

Then that serpent, in the form of a brahmin youth, having approached the monks, asked for the going forth. The monks let him go forth, they ordained him. Now at that time that serpent, together with a certain monk,

Kd.1.63.1

Vin.1.87

Kd.1.63.2

¹ Vin-a.1016: as he was being asked about cutting off the hair and beard, accepting yellow robes, going for refuge, choosing a preceptor, and about proclamations and guidance. At [Vin.3.212](#) Upāli was asked to examine monks who, having come naked, were taken to be Naked Ascetics. Vin-a.665 gives the nature of these questions (see [BD.2.45, n.6, n.7](#)). He examines below [Kd.1.64.2](#). ² *theyyasaṃvāsaka*. Word occurs also at [Vin.1.307](#). *Samvāsa* is being in communion, see definition at end of each *Pārājika* rule ([BD.1](#)). *Theyya* is “by theft”, here of the signs or marks of a monk. ³ *titthiyapakkantaka*. This word also occurs with *theyyasaṃvāsaka* and others at [Vin.1.307](#). All the words tell what monks, disappointed of robe-material, pretend to be. ⁴ Stock, as at [AN.i.145](#); [MN.i.423](#), [MN.iii.300](#). ⁵ *paṭilabhati*. He had been unchaste (in a former birth), [Vin-a.1022](#). If *paṭilabhati* does mean “to get back” here rather than to “acquire”, it indicates a belief in the possibility of losing human status for animal status.

was living in a dwelling-place on the boundary.¹ Then that monk, getting up in the night towards dawn, paced up and down in the open air. Then that serpent, confident that that monk had gone out, fell asleep. The whole dwelling-place was full of the snake, his coils were protruding through the windows.

Kd.1.63.3

Then that monk, thinking: “I will enter the dwelling-place,” opening the door,² saw the whole dwelling-place full of the snake, his coils protruding through the windows. Terrified at seeing this, he uttered a cry of distress. Monks, having run up, spoke thus to that monk: “Why did you, your reverence, utter a cry of distress?”

“Your reverences, this whole dwelling-place is full of a snake, his coils are protruding through the windows.” Then that serpent having awakened because of this noise, sat down on his own seat. Monks spoke thus: “Who are you, friend?”

“I am a serpent, honoured sirs.”

“But why did you, friend, act in this way?” Then that serpent told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.1.63.4

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, spoke thus to this serpent: “Indeed, you serpents are not liable to growth in this *dhamma* and discipline. You, serpent, go away, observe the Observance day precisely³ on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth day of the half-month. Thus will you be freed quickly from birth as a serpent and get back human status.”

Then that serpent, thinking: “It is said that I am not liable to growth in this *dhamma* and discipline,” pained, afflicted, shedding tears, departed having uttered a cry of distress.

Kd.1.63.5

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, there are these two cases of manifestation of a serpent’s true nature⁴: when he indulges in sexual intercourse with a female of his own species, and when he falls

¹ *paccantima*. *Vinaya Texts* i.218 say “(near the boundary wall of the Jetavana)”, and although this may be meant, there is no evidence for it at Vin-a.1022. *Paccantima* cannot well mean “neighbouring, adjoining” here, for the evidence is that monk and snake shared the same dwelling-place. ² *kavāṭaṃ paṇāmento*. On this phrase see **BD.1.199, n.3.** ³ *tatth’eva*.

⁴ Vin-a.1022 gives five cases: the time of its reinstatement, *paṭisandhi*, of its sloughing its skin, the two cases mentioned in the text, and the time of its passing away.

asleep in confidence. Monks, these are two cases of manifestation of a serpent's true nature. **Monks, if an animal is not ordained, it should not be ordained; if it is ordained, it should be expelled.**"

Vin.1.88

THE STORY OF A MATRICIDE

Now at that time a certain brahmin youth deprived his mother of life. He was troubled about his evil deed, he was ashamed of it, loathed it.¹ Then it occurred to that brahmin youth: "Now, by what means could I get rid of this evil deed?" Then it occurred to this brahmin youth: "These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are *dhamma*-farers, even-farers Brahma-farers, they are truth-speakers, of moral habit, of good conduct. Now, if I were to go forth among these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, so would I get rid of this evil deed."

Kd.1.64.1

BD.4.112

Then that brahmin youth, having approached (some) monks, asked for the going forth. The monks spoke thus to the venerable Upāli: "Formerly, indeed, reverend Upāli, a serpent in the form of a brahmin youth went forth among the monks. Please, reverend Upāli, examine this brahmin youth."² Then as that brahmin youth was being examined by the venerable Upāli he told him this matter. The venerable Upāli told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.64.2

"Monks, if a matricide is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled."

THE STORY OF A PARRICIDE

At that time a certain brahmin youth deprived his father of life. He was troubled about his evil deed ... (=Kd.1.64.1, Kd.1.64.2) ... The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.65.1

"Monks, if a parricide is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled."

¹ As at Vin.2.292. ² Cf. above Kd.1.62.2.

THE STORY OF A KILLER OF A PERFECTED ONE

Kd.1.66.1

Now at that time several monks were going along the highroad from Sāketa to Sāvathī. Thieves, having issued forth on the road, robbed some monks and killed other monks. Those in the royal service, having set out from Sāvathī, caught some thieves (but) other thieves ran away. Those who ran away went forth among the monks; those who were caught were led off to execution.

Kd.1.66.2

Those who had gone forth saw those thieves being led off to execution; seeing them, they spoke thus: “It is well that we ran away, for had we been caught then should we have been killed likewise.” Monks spoke thus: “But what have you done, your reverences?” Then those who had gone forth told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.113

Vin.1.89

“Monks, those monks were perfected ones. **Monks, if a murderer of a perfected one is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.**”

THE STORY OF A RAPER OF NUNS

Kd.1.67.1

Now at that time several nuns were going along the high-road from Sāketa to Sāvathī. Thieves, having issued forth on the road, robbed some nuns and seduced other nuns. Those in the royal service, having set out from Sāvathī ... (=Kd.1.66.1, Kd.1.66.1) ... The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“**Monks, if a seducer of a nun is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.**¹

“**Monks, if a schismatic is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.**

“**Monks, if a shedder of (a Truth-finder’s²) blood is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.**³”

¹ Cf. above BD.4.108, where a novice who seduces a nun is to be expelled. ² So the Commentary., Vin-a.1024. ³ Other prohibitions in regard to these classes of persons given at Vin.1.136, Vin.1.320.

THE STORY OF A HERMAPHRODITE

Now at that time a certain hermaphrodite had gone forth among the monks. He acted and also made (another) act. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.68.1

“Monks, if a hermaphrodite is not ordained, he should not be ordained; if he is ordained, he should be expelled.”

THE STORY OF WITHOUT A PRECEPTOR, ETC.

Now at that time monks ordained one who had no preceptor. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.69.1

“Monks, one who has no preceptor should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks ordained one who had an Order as preceptor¹ ... He said:

Kd.1.69.2

“Monks, one who has an Order as preceptor should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.4.114

Now at that time monks ordained one who had a group as preceptor ... He said:

Kd.1.69.3

“Monks, one who has a group as preceptor should not be ordained ... offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks ordained one who had a eunuch² as preceptor ... one who had one living in communion as it were by theft as preceptor ... one who had one who had gone over to (another) sect as preceptor ... one who had an animal as preceptor ... one who had a matricide as preceptor ... one who had a parricide as preceptor ... one who had a murderer of a

Kd.1.69.4

Vin.1.90

¹ It is to be gathered from Vin-a.1025 that an Order might (inadvertently) contain any of the types of malefactors mentioned above from a matricide down to a hermaphrodite. ² The following classes of persons mentioned also above, **BD.4.108ff.**

perfected one as preceptor ... one who had a seducer of a nun as preceptor ... one who had a schismatic as preceptor ... one who had the shedder of (a Truth-finder's) blood as preceptor ... one who had a hermaphrodite as preceptor. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, one who has a eunuch as preceptor ... one who has a hermaphrodite as preceptor should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

THE STORY OF WITHOUT A BOWL, ETC.

Kd.1.170.1

Now at that time monks (each) ordained one who had no bowl.¹ They walked for almsfood (to be put) into their hands.² People ... spread it about, saying: “Like followers of (other) sects.”³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, one who has no bowl should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.1.170.2

Now at that time monks (each) ordained one who had no robe. They walked naked for almsfood. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like followers of other sects.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.115

“Monks, one who has no robe should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.1.170.3

Now at that time monks (each) ordained one who had no bowl or robe. They walked naked for almsfood (to be put) into their hands ...

“Monks, one who has no bowl or robe should not be ordained. Whoever should ordain (one such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.1.170.4

¹ *apattaka*, see [BD.2.123, n.6](#). ² *hatthesu piṇḍāya caranti*. Same expression at [Vin.3.245](#); see [BD.2.119, n.3, n.4](#). For same expression in next paragraph, [Vin.1.372](#) gives five variant readings all reading *carati*. But at Nuns' [Bu-Pc.63ff.](#) we get a singular noun followed by a plural verb, as above, with the meaning that each nun ordained a woman, and that then these were considered all together as a plurality: in referring to their actions a plural verb was needed and was used. ³ Cf. [Vin.3.245 \(BD.2.119\)](#).

Now at that time monks (each) ordained by means of lending a bowl.¹ When they were ordained, they returned (each one) his bowl and walked for almsfood (to be put) into their hands ...

“Monks, one should not ordain by means of lending a bowl. Whoever should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks (each) ordained by means of lending a robe. When they were ordained, they returned (each one) his robe and walked naked for almsfood ...

Kd.1.70.5

“Monks, one should not ordain by means of lending a robe. Whoever should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks (each) ordained by means of lending a bowl and robe. When they were ordained, they returned the bowl and robe and walked naked for almsfood (to be put) into their hands ...

Kd.1.70.6

Vin.1.91

“Monks, one should not ordain by means of lending a bowl and robe. Whoever should (so) ordain, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Told is the Portion on Twenty (Cases) where one should not ordain

THE PORTION ON THIRTY-TWO (CASES) WHERE ONE SHOULD NOT LET GO FORTH

Now at that time monks (each) let go forth one who had his hands cut off ... his feet cut off ... his hands and feet cut off ... his ears cut off ... his nose ... his ears and nose ... his fingers ... his nails² cut off ... who had the

BD.4.116

¹ *yācitakena pattena*, by (using) a bowl that had been asked for, i.e. borrowed by the candidates for ordination. ² *aḷa*; see Journal of the Pali Text Society 1884, p.71, 1886, p.105.

tendons (of his feet) cut ... one who had webbed fingers¹ ... a hunchback ... a dwarf ... one who had a goitre ... one who had been branded² ... one who had been scourged³ ... one who had been written about⁴ ... one who had elephantiasis ... one who was badly ill ... one who disgraced an assembly⁵ (by some deformity⁶) ... one who was purblind⁷ ... one with a crooked limb ... one who was lame ... one paralysed down one side ... a cripple ... one weak from old age ... one who was blind⁷... one who was dumb⁸ ... one who was deaf⁹... one who was blind and dumb ... one who was deaf and dumb ... one who was blind and deaf and dumb. They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.1.71.2

He said: **“Monks, one who has had his hands cut off should not be let go forth; one who has had his feet cut off ... one who is blind and deaf and dumb should not be let go forth. Whoever should let (one such) go forth, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Told is the Portion on Thirty-two (Cases) where one should not let go forth

Told is the Ninth Portion for Repeating: that on Inheritance

¹ *phaṇahatthaka*, with a hand like a snake’s hood. Cf. *hatthaphaṇaka* at Vin.2.107, “hands used as an instrument shaped like a snake’s hood” for smoothing the hair. Vin-a.1027, “one whose fingers were grown together like a bat’s wings”. See note by A.K. COOMARASWAMY on the *jālalakkhaṇa*, “The ‘Webbed Finger’ of Buddha”, Indian Historical Quarterly, Vol. VII, 1931, p.365, where he is of the opinion that *jāla* does not mean a webbing connecting the fingers, but refers to the thin lines of rosy light which may be seen between the fingers when they are held together and the hand held up to the light. The fingers of the Buddha, as Mahāpuruṣa, would be straight and regularly formed, of one measure, *ekappamāṇā*, according to this *lakkhaṇa*, or sign. “It is even possible”, as Coomaraswamy adds in a postscript, “that ‘having webbed fingers’ represents the exact opposite of the meaning of the original *lakkhaṇa*.”

² Cf. Vin.1.76 (above, BD.4.95). ³ Cf. Vin.1.75 (above, BD.4.95). ⁴ |emphCf. Vin.1.75 (above, BD.4.95) ⁵ *parisadūsaka*. ⁶ Given at length at Vin-a.1027ff. ⁷ The two words for blind: *kāṇa* and *andha*, are used. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1030 says that *kāṇa* means blind of one or both eyes (and not merely blind of one). He cites the Mahāpaccaṛī Commentary as asserting *kāṇa* to mean blind of one eye and *andha* of both, and he cites the Great Commentary, as saying that *andha* means blind from birth; he keeps this explanation at Vin-a.1031. “Purblind” and the next three terms occur at Vin.2.90, AN.i.107, AN.ii.85, AN.iii.385, SN.i.94, Pp.51.

⁸ Vin-a.1031 explains that if he were unable to say the complete formula for going for refuge, he could not go forth. ⁹ Vin-a.1031, if he could hear a loud noise he might go forth.

THE STORY OF GUIDANCE FOR THE UNCONSCIENTIOUS

BD.4.117

Now at that time the group of six monks gave guidance to those who were unconscientious. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, guidance should not be given to those who are unconscientious. Whoever should give it to (any such), there is an offence of wrongdoing.”

Now at that time monks lived under the guidance of those who were unconscientious; these soon also became unconscientious, depraved monks. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, one should not live under the guidance of those who are unconscientious. Whoever should (so) live, there is an offence of wrongdoing.”

Kd.1.72.2

Then it occurred to the monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that guidance should not be given to those who are unconscientious, and that one should not live under the guidance of those who are unconscientious. Now, how are we to know who is conscientious or who is unconscientious?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to wait for four or five days until (you can say), ‘I know what is the nature of the monks’¹.”

Vin.1.92

THE STORY OF GUIDANCE FOR ONE ON A JOURNEY, ETC.

Kd.1.73.1

Now at that time a certain monk was going along a highroad in the Kosala country. Then it occurred to that monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that one should not live independently.² I am in need of guidance³ but I am going along a high-road. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow a monk, monks, if he is going along a high-road and is not receiving guidance to live independently.”

¹ *bhikkhusabhāgata*. Vin-a.1031, “Until I know from monks that their conscientiousness is shared by the monk giving guidance”. Or, is *sabhāgata* equal to *sabhāva*, the nature (of a monk), as I take it to be? ² Above, BD.4.101. ³ *ahañ c’amhi nissayakaraṇīyo*.

Kd.1.73.2

Now at that time two monks were going along a high-road in the Kosala country. These arrived at a certain residence, and there one monk became ill. Then it occurred to that ill monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that one should not live independently. I am in need of guidance, but I am ill. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.118

“I allow a monk, monks, if he is ill and is not receiving guidance to live independently.”

Kd.1.73.3

Then it occurred to that monk who was tending the ill one: “It is laid down by the Lord ... I am in need of guidance but this monk is ill. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow a monk, monks, if he is tending an ill one and is not receiving guidance, to live independently although being requested.¹”

Kd.1.73.4

Now at that time a certain monk was staying in a forest and there came to be comfort² for him in this lodging. Then it occurred to this monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that one should not live independently. I am in need of guidance, but I am staying in a forest and there comes to be comfort for me in this lodging. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow a monk, monks, if he is a forest-dweller and is thinking about abiding in comfort³ and is not receiving guidance, to live independently, thinking: ‘If a suitable giver of guidance comes along, I will live under his guidance’.”

¹ By the ill one, Vin-a.1032. That is, as the Commentary says, the ill monk may ask the other to request him to give guidance; but if through pride he does not ask, he may go away. We must therefore assume that if he stays with the invalid but does not take guidance from him, he may live independently of guidance. ² *phāsu*. Vin-a.1032, “there comes to be comfort in regard to obtaining tranquillity and vision”. ³ *Phāsuvihāra*; cf. *brahmavihāra*, and the monk who was *phāsuvihārika*, below BD.4.373, Kd.vii.12.1.

PERMISSION TO PROCLAIM BY CLAN

Now at that time (a person) wished for ordination from the venerable Kassapa the Great.¹ Then the venerable Kassapa the Great sent a message to the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Let Ānanda come, he will proclaim² this (person).” The venerable Ānanda spoke thus:

Kd.1.74.1

“I am not able to pronounce³ the elder’s⁴ name (for) the elder is my teacher⁵.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.119

“I allow you, monks, to proclaim merely by clan (-name).”

Vin.1.93

THE STORY OF TWO EXPECTING ORDINATION, ETC.

Now at that time two (persons) wished for ordination from the venerable Kassapa the Great. These quarrelled, saying: “I will be ordained first, I will be ordained first.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.74.2

“I allow you, monks, to make two proclamations together.”

Now at that time there were those wishing for ordination from several elders. These quarrelled, saying: “I will be ordained first, I will be ordained first.” The elders spoke thus: “Come, your reverences, we are making all the proclamations together.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.74.3

¹ At AN.i.23 called “chief of those who uphold the ascetic practices”. Verses at Thag.1051–1090. He exchanged robes with Gotama, SN.ii.221. ² *anussāveti*, in technical meaning of proclaiming the resolution three times after the motion for ordaining a person had been put before an Order. Cf. Kd.1.28.3–Kd.1.28.6. ³ *gahetuṃ*, a word with a variety of meanings; here meaning “to pronounce” in sense of “to take”, cf. “to take his name in vain”. Since Ānanda calls Kassapa his *guru* (*garu me*), and if we equate *guru* with *ācariya*, spiritual teacher or father (cf. *pitucitta*, Vin.1.45, Vin.1.60), it was not suitable for Ānanda to “take” (pronounce) his “father’s” name. The use of the *gotta* (clan) name is less intimate and therefore permissible. Cf. Kauṣītakī Upaniṣad 2.11.7 where the father “takes his son’s name”, *nāma asya gṛṇhati*. I am indebted for this note to A.K. Coomaraswamy. Mahākassapa’s reference to Ānanda as *kumāraka*, young boy at SN.ii.218 should also be noted. ⁴ I.e. Mahākassapa’s, as stated at *Vinaya Texts* i.228. For in making the proclamations, Ānanda would have had to say that so-and-so wished to be ordained by Kassapa. ⁵ *garu*, probably equivalent to *guru*, spiritual teacher. Cf. *garunissaya* at Vin.2.303.

“I allow you, monks, to make two or three proclamations together if there is one preceptor, but not if there are different preceptors.”

PERMISSION FOR ORDINATION TWENTY YEARS FROM CONCEPTION

Kd.1.75.1

Now at that time the venerable Kassapa the Boy¹ became ordained twenty years after his conception. Then it occurred to the venerable Kassapa the Boy: “It is laid down by the Lord that an individual who is under twenty years of age should not be ordained,² and I am twenty years from my conception. Now am I ordained³ or am I not ordained?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.120

“When in his mother’s womb the first thought has arisen, the first consciousness appeared,⁴ his birth is (to be reckoned as) from that time. I allow you, monks, to ordain one who is twenty years of age from his conception.”

ORDINATION PROCEDURE

Kd.1.76.1

Now at that time ordained (monks) were to be seen who were (afflicted by) leprosy and boils and eczema and consumption and epilepsy.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, when one is being ordained to ask him about things which are stumbling-blocks⁶ for him.⁷ And thus, monks, should he be asked: Have you diseases like this: leprosy, boils, eczema, consumption, epilepsy?

¹ Kumāarakassapa. *Kumāra* has the meaning both of boy and of prince. Kumāarakassapa “went forth” when he was only seven years old and he had been reared by a king since his birth by a nun; see AN-a.i.284, MN-a.ii.120, Thag-a. (*Psalms of the Brethren* p.147f.), Dh-p-a.iii.144, Ja.i.148. Verses are ascribed to him at Thag.201–202. Called “chief of those who are versatile speakers” at AN.i.24. The *Vammīki Sutta* (MN.i.142) was spoken to Kumāarakassapa; the *Nigrodhamigajātaka* No.12 and Dh-p.160 on account of his mother. ² Bu-Pc.65, and above, BD.4.98. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.65 where it is stated that if a person is ordained while he is under twenty he is not (really) ordained. He himself incurs no offence, but there is an offence for the monks who ordain him. ⁴ Cf. definition of *manussaviggaha*, human being, at Vin.3.73.

⁵ Cf. above, Kd.1.39.1. ⁶ *antarāyike dhamme*, cf. Vin.4.134 (BD.3.21, where see n.5). ⁷ Cf. Vin.2.271f. for the questions put to nuns on their ordination.

Are you a human being? Are you a man? Are you a freeman? Are you without debts? Are you not in the royal service? Have you your parents' consent? Are you full twenty years of age? Are you complete as to bowl and robes? What is your name? What is the name of your preceptor?"

Now at that time monks asked those wishing for ordination, but who were not instructed, about the things which are stumbling-blocks. Those wishing for ordination were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to reply. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.76.2

"I allow you, monks, having instructed first, afterwards to ask about the things which are stumbling-blocks."

Vin.1.94

They instructed just there in the midst of the Order. As before, those wishing for ordination were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to reply. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.76.3

"I allow you, monks, having instructed aside, to ask about the things which are stumbling-blocks in the midst of the Order. And thus, monks, should one be instructed: First, he should be invited to choose¹ a preceptor; having invited him to choose a preceptor, a bowl and robes should be pointed out to him (with the words): 'This is a bowl for you, this is an outer cloak, this is an upper robe, this is an inner robe; go and stand in such and such a place'."

BD.4.121

Ignorant, inexperienced (monks) instructed them. Those wishing for ordination, but who were not (properly) instructed, were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to reply. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.1.76.4

"Monks, one should not be instructed by an ignorant, inexperienced (monk). Whoever (such) should instruct, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to instruct by means of an experienced, competent monk."

Kd.1.76.5

Those who were not agreed upon instructed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Monks, one should not be instructed by one who is not agreed upon. Whoever (such) should instruct, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I

¹ *gāhāpetabbo*; cf. *gāhāpaka* at Vin.3.246 (BD.2.122, where see n.1).

allow you, monks, to instruct by means of one who is agreed upon. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: oneself may be agreed upon by oneself or another may be agreed upon by another¹. And how is oneself to be agreed upon by oneself? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. So and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. If it seems right to the Order, I would instruct so and so.’ Thus may oneself be agreed upon by oneself.

Kd.1.76.6

“And how is another to be agreed upon by another? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. So and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. If it seems right to the Order, so and so could instruct so and so.’ Thus may another be agreed upon by another.

Kd.1.76.7

“The monk who is agreed upon, having approached the one who wishes for ordination, should speak thus to him: ‘Listen, so and so. This is for you a time for truth (-speaking), a time for fact (-speaking). When I am asking you in the midst of the Order about what is,² you should say, ‘It is,’ if it is so; you should say, ‘It is not,’ if it is not so. Do not be at a loss, do not be abashed. Thus I will ask³ you: ‘Have you diseases like this ... What is your preceptor’s name?’”

Kd.1.76.8

They⁴ arrived together. They should not arrive together. The instructor having come first, the Order should be informed by him, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. So and so wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. He has been instructed by me. If it seems right to the Order, let so and so come.” He should be told: “Come.” Having made him

Vin.1.95

¹ Cf. below, Kd.2.15.6. ² *yaṃ jātam*. Vin-a.1033 says about that which is produced, *jāta*, has arisen, is existing in your body. This can only refer to the questions on the diseases. The Pali in such cases is idiomatic: “Is there for you a disease?” So one could say, “I am asking you about what exists, *yaṃ jātam* (as a disease for you), and you should say there is, *atthi* (such a disease for me) it being so, *santaṃ*; there is not, *n’atthi*, it being not so, *asantaṃ*”. But since in fact not all the questions are about diseases, I have translated as above, the better to emphasise the general necessity to answer all the questions truthfully in accordance with the preliminary reminder, “This is a time for truth and fact”. ³ *pucchissam*. ⁴ The instructor and his candidate. Nothing to show whether the Lord is supposed to continue to give these instructions, or whether they are incorporated without being attributed to him.

arrange his upper robe over one shoulder, having made him honour the monks' feet, having made him sit down on his haunches, having made him salute with joined palms, he should be made to ask for ordination, saying: "Honoured sirs, I ask the Order for ordination; honoured sirs, may the Order raise me up out of compassion.¹ And a second time, honoured sirs, ... And a third time, honoured sirs, I ask the Order for ordination; honoured sirs, may the Order raise me up out of compassion."

Kd.1.76.9

The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: "Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This one, so and so, wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. If it seems right to the Order I could ask so and so about the things which are stumbling-blocks. Listen, so and so. This is for you a time for truth (-speaking), a time for fact (-speaking). I am asking you about what is. You should say, 'It is', if it is so; you should say, 'It is not,' if it is not so. Have you diseases like this: ... What is your preceptor's name?"

Bd.4.123

The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: "Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This one, so and so, wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. He is quite pure in regard to the things which are stumbling-blocks, he is complete as to bowl and robes. So and so is asking the Order for ordination by means of the preceptor so and so. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order ordain so and so by means of the preceptor so and so. This is the motion.

Kd.1.76.10

"Honoured sirs, let the Order hear me. This one, so and so, wishes for ordination from the venerable so and so. He is quite pure in regard to the things which are stumbling-blocks, he is complete as to bowl and robes. So and so is asking the Order for ordination by means of the preceptor so and so. The Order is ordaining so and so by means of the preceptor so and so. If the ordination of so and so by means of the preceptor so and so is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak.

Kd.1.76.11

"And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. "So and so is being ordained by the Order by means of the preceptor so and so. It is

Kd.1.76.12

¹ Cf. above, Bu-Pj.1.29.2.

pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

Told is the (Formal) Act of Ordination

FOUR REQUISITES

The shadow should be measured¹ at once, the length of the season² should be explained, the portion of the day³ should be explained, the formula⁴ should be explained, the four resources should be explained (with the words): ‘Going forth is on account of meals of scraps ... (as at **Kd.1.30.4**) ... These are extra acquisitions: ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses.’

BD.4.124

Vin.1.96

Told are the Four Resources

FOUR THINGS NOT TO BE DONE

Now at that time monks, having ordained a certain monk, went away leaving him alone. Afterwards as he was going along alone, he met his former wife on the way. She spoke thus: “What, have you now gone forth?”

“Yes, I have gone forth.” She said:

“Sexual intercourse is difficult for those who have gone forth. Come and indulge in sexual intercourse.” Having indulged in sexual intercourse with her, he arrived late. Monks spoke thus: “What were you, your reverence, doing for such a long time?”

Kd.1.78.2

Then this monk told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

¹ This must mean the shadow of the candidate, cast by the sun. Vin-a.1033 says the shadow should be measured with the words, It is the length of one man or of two men, *ekaporisā dveporisā*. Cf. *porisa* meaning “height of a man.” at MN.i.74, MN.i.187, MN.i.365. ² Vin-a.1033 “the seasons are the rains, the cold weather, the hot weather. If whichever season it is is not ended, that season is incomplete by so many days”, thus the number of days remaining in that season, or “the exact season” (*Pali-English Dictionary*) should be explained.

³ Vin-a.1033, morning or afternoon. ⁴ *sangīti*, chanting together. According to Vin-a.1034, having done all this together he should be asked about his measure, the season and portion of the day in order that he might give the correct answers and so make it clear that he has properly understood his age as a member of the Order.

“I allow you, monks, having ordained (a monk), to give him a companion and to explain four things which are not to be done. When a monk is ordained he should not indulge in sexual intercourse, even with an animal.¹ Whatever monk indulges in sexual intercourse, he becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans. As a man with his head cut off could not become one to live by that bodily connection, even so a monk, having indulged in sexual intercourse, becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans.² This is a thing not to be done by you as long as life lasts.

Kd.1.78.3

“When a monk is ordained he should not take by theft what has not been given, even if it is only a blade of grass.³ Whatever monk takes by theft a *pāda*⁴ or the worth of a *pāda* or more than a *pāda* that has not been given, he becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans. As a withered leaf, freed from its stalk, could not become green again, even so a monk, having taken by theft a *pāda* or the worth of a *pāda* or more than a *pāda* that was not given, becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans.⁵ This is a thing not to be done by you as long as life lasts.

BD.4.125

Vin.1.97

Kd.1.78.4

“When a monk is ordained he should not intentionally deprive a living thing of life, even if it is only an ant.⁶ Whatever monk deprives a human being of life even down to causing abortion,⁷ he becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans. As a flat stone, broken in half, becomes (something) not to be put together again, even so a monk, having intentionally deprived a human being of life, becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans.⁸ This is a thing not to be done by you as long as life lasts.

Kd.1.78.5

“When a monk is ordained he should not lay claim to a state of further-men, even thinking: ‘I delight in solitude’.⁹ Whatever monk, of evil desires, filled with covetousness, lays claim to a state of further-men which is non-existent, not a fact¹⁰—to meditation or to a deliverance or to contemplation or to an attainment or to a way or to a fruit¹¹—he becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans. As a palmyra palm, cut off at the crown,

¹ Bu-Pj.1, Vin.3.22. ² Vin.3.28. ³ Bu-Pj.2. ⁴ See note at BD.1.71. ⁵ Cf. Vin.3.47. ⁶ Bu-Pj.3 (for human beings) and Bu-Pc.61 (for animals). ⁷ Vin.3.83f. ⁸ Vin.3.74. ⁹ *suññāgāra*. See Vin.3.91. Where “delight in solitude for the mind devoid of the hindrances” occurs in definition of “state of further-men”. ¹⁰ Vin.3.90, where such a one is called the “chief great thief”. ¹¹ Cf. the longer list of concepts enumerated in definition of “state of further-men” at Vin.3.91, Vin.3.92.

could not become one for further growth,¹ even so a monk, of evil desires, filled with covetousness, having claimed a state of further-men which is nonexistent, not a fact, becomes not a (true) recluse, not a son of the Sakyans. This is a thing not to be done by you as long as life lasts.”

Told are the Four Things which are not to be done

THE STORY OF ONE SUSPENDED FOR NOT SEEING AN OFFENCE

Kd.1.79.1

Now at that time a certain monk, suspended² for not seeing an offence, left the Order, (but) having come back again, he asked the monks for ordination. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.126

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, suspended for not seeing an offence, leaves the Order, (but) having come back again, asks the monks for ordination. They should speak thus to him: ‘Will you see this offence?’ If he says: ‘I will see it’, he may be let go forth. If he says: ‘I will not see it’, he should not be let go forth.

Kd.1.79.2

“Having let him go forth they should say (to him): ‘Will you see this offence?’ If he says: ‘I will see it’, he may be ordained. If he says: ‘I will not see it’, he should not be ordained. Having ordained him, they should say: ‘Will you see this offence?’ If he says: ‘I will see it’, he may be restored.³ If he says: ‘I will not see it’, he should not be restored. Having restored him, they should say: ‘Do you see this offence?’ If he sees it, that is good; if he does not see it, he may be suspended again if it possible to obtain unanimity⁴; if it is not possible to obtain unanimity there is no offence in eating with, in being in communion with (him).⁵

Kd.1.79.3

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, suspended for not making amends for an offence, leaves the Order (but) having come back again, asks the monks for ordination. They should speak thus to him: ‘Will you make

¹ Vin.3.92. ² *ukkhitta*. Cf. Vin.4.113, Vin.4.137, Vin.4.218 and see BD.3.28, n.4. ³ On *osāreti*, to restore after seeing an offence, making amends for it and giving up a false view, see BD.3.28, n.4. ⁴ I.e. among the monks, for this further suspension. ⁵ So Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1034, *tena saddhim*, and as may be deduced from Bu-Pc.69 and its Old Commentary’s definition of “has not acted according to the rule”.

amends for this offence?’ If he says: ‘I will make amends’, he may be let go forth ... (as in **Kd.1.79.2** reading make amends for *instead* of see) ... in being in communion with (him).

Vin.1.98

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, suspended for not giving up a wrong view, leaves the Order (but) having come back again, asks the monks for ordination. They should speak thus to him: ‘Will you give up this wrong view?’ If he says: ‘I will give it up he may be let go forth ... (as in **Kd.1.79.2** reading give up *instead* of see) ... in being in communion with (him).

Kd.1.79.4

The Great Section¹: the First

THIS IS ITS KEY

As to great matters in the Vinaya,
to bringing ease to the well-behaved
both in restraint of evil desires
and in strivings for conscientiousness,
And also bearing in mind the instruction
which is within the range of the all-knowing conqueror,
in a realm which has no other,
in peace from bondage,
in what is well laid down,
in that which has no doubt,
In Section in Vinaya, as well as in Parivāra and in Heading(s),
the good follows closely as though imitating.
Who does not understand cattle does not guard the herd,
so not knowing moral habit, how can he guard restraint?
Although the Suttantas and Abhidhamma be forgotten,
for all time the teaching persists
while Vinaya is not destroyed.
Therefore, because firmly supported,
I will declare the key in regular sequence
according to (my) knowledge.
Listen while I speak.
The matter, the provenance²,
the offence, the methods and the abbreviations—
it is not easy not to leave something out;
discern that from the method.

BD.4.127

Vin.1.99

¹ Mahākhandhaka. Called *pabbajjākkhandhaka* at DN-a.ii.363. ² *nidāna*. This usually appears in the Vinaya to mean the place where the Lord was staying when such conduct occurred as led to the framing of a rule or allowance, thus the “provenance” of a rule or allowance. See also ks.iii, Introduction xff.; ks.iv, Introduction xivf.

Awakening, and the Rājāyatana, the Goatherds', Sahampati
 Brahmā, Aḷara, Uddaka, and monks, Upaka the seer,
 Koṇḍañña, Vappa, Bhaddiya and Mahānāma, Assaji,
 Yasa, four, fifty, all, he sent out (on tour), the quarters,
 The subject,¹ as to Māra, and the thirty,
 at Uruvelā, three matted hair ascetics,
 fire-room, the Great Kings, Sakka,
 and Brahmā, the entire (population),
 Rag-robe, a tank, and a stone, *kakudha*- (tree),
 a stone, a rose-apple, and a mango,
 emblic myrobalam, he brought a flower from the Coral Tree,
 'Kassapa, let them be chopped, let them be kindled,
 and let them be extinguished',
 they plunged into, fire-vessels, rain, Gayā,
 and the Palm Grove, (King of) Magadha,
 Upatissa, Kolita, and distinguished (young men), the going forth,
 wrongly dressed, dismissal, and the lean wretched brahmin,
 He indulged in bad habits, the stomach,
 the brahmin youth, a group,
 year's standing, by the ignorant, going away,
 ten years' standing, guidance,
 They did not conduct themselves (properly),
 to dismiss, ignorant, nullification, five, six,
 and whoever else, and naked, not with (his hair) cut off,
 matted hair ascetic, a Sakyan.
 Five diseases among the Magadhese, service,² a thief (and) fingers,
 and (the King of) Magadha decreed, jail, written about, scourged,
 Branded, debtor, and a slave, close-shaving, Upāli, snake (-wind disease),³
 a family with faith, and Kaṇḍaka, and then crowded up,
 About how to live,⁴ the boy, trainings, and they were,⁵ Now how?
 entire, by mouth, preceptors, luring away, Kaṇḍaka,
 Eunuch, theft,⁶ going over to,⁷ and a snake, on a mother, a father,
 perfected ones, a nun, schismatic,
 concerning blood,¹ hermaphrodite,²

¹ *vatthum*. Appearing to refer to [Kd.1.12.2](#), [Kd.1.12.4](#), the going forth and ordination formula by the three refuges. Going forth and Ordination form the subject matter of Section i of the Mahāvagga. ² Text reads *eko*. Oldenberg, [Vin.1.373](#) thinks we ought to read *bhaṭo* (for *rājabhāṭa* in [Kd.1.40.3](#)). ³ See [Kd.1.50.1](#); [Kd.1.51.1](#). ⁴ *vatthumhi*, i.e. in dependence for five years or for life, [Kd.1.53.4](#). Sinhalese edition *vatthusmiṃ*. ⁵ *viharanti*, as in [Kd.1.57.1](#). ⁶ I.e. in communion by theft, [Kd.1.62.3](#). ⁷ I.e. going over to (another) sect, [Kd.1.62.3](#).

¹ *ruhirena*, here replacing *lohittuppādako* of [Kd.1.67.1](#), the shedder of a (*tathāgata*'s) blood.

² Here called only *vyañjana* (accompanying attribute, distinctive characteristic) instead of *ubhatovyañjanaka* as at [Kd.1.68.1](#).

Without a preceptor, through an Order, a group, eunuch,
 without a bowl, without a robe, both these,
 then those three on what was lent, BD.4.129
 Hands, feet, hands and feet, ears, nose, both these,
 fingers, nails, tendons, webbed hands, and a hunch-back, dwarf,
 Having goitre, and then a branded one,
 scourged, written about, elephantiasis,
 badly (ill), and one who disgraces an assembly, blind,
 and just then one with a crooked limb, Vin.1.100
 And then a lame one, paralysed down one side,
 with a cripple, old age, blind from birth, dumb,
 deaf, blind and dumb, and what is thereto,
 Whatever is called blind and dumb, and then dumb and deaf,
 And blind and dumb and deaf,
 and guidance to the unconscientious,
 And one should (not) live, what is done on a journey,³ being asked, wishing for,
 'let him come',⁴ they quarrelled,⁵ if there is one preceptor, Kassapa,
 And ordained (monks) were to be seen pressing about diseases,
 the uninstructed were at a loss, instruction just there,
 And then in the Order, then an ignorant one, and not agreed upon,
 together, the 'may-it-raise-(me-)up' ordination, resource, alone, the three.⁶
 In this Section are one hundred and seventy-two items.

Told is the First Key, that to the Great Section

Vin.1.101

³ *kataddhāna*, referring to [Kd.1.73.1](#), [Kd.1.73.2](#). Sinhalese edition reads *tathāddhānaṃ*. ⁴ Following *āgacchatu* of Sinhalese edition = [Kd.1.74.1](#), instead of Text's *āgacchantam*. ⁵ *vivadenti* (with variant reading *vivādentī*, [Vin.1.373](#)). ⁶ Doubtless referring to (1) not seeing an offence, (2) not making amends for an offence, (3) not giving up a wrong view (each a ground for a monk's suspension; and their opposites, each being a ground for his restoration dealt with at [Kd.1.79.1](#), [Kd.1.79.4](#)).

2. OBSERVANCE (*UPOSATHA*)

PERMISSION TO GATHER

Kd.2.1.1
BD.4.130

At one time the awakened one, the Lord was staying near Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Now at that time wanderers belonging to other sects, having collected together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month,¹ spoke *dhamma*,² People came up to them to hear *dhamma*. They gained affection for the wanderers belonging to other sects, they gained faith (in them), the wanderers belonging to other sects gained adherents.³

Kd.2.1.2

Then reasoning arose thus in the mind of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha as he was meditating in seclusion: “At present wanderers belonging to other sects, having collected together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month, speak *dhamma*. These people go up to them to hear *dhamma*. They gain affection for the wanderers belonging to other sects, they gain faith (in them), the wanderers belonging to other sects gain adherents. Suppose the masters should also collect together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month?”

Kd.2.1.3

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance, As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the Lord: “Now, Lord, as I was meditating in seclusion, a reasoning arose in my mind thus: ‘At present wanderers belonging to other sects ... should collect together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month?’”

Kd.2.1.4

Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with talk on *dhamma*. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, gladdened, ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.1.102

¹ On *pakkha*, cf. [Vin.4.75](#) ([BD.2.313](#), and *q.v.* n.3) where eating food given *pakkhikam* and *uposathikam*, “on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon” and “on an observance-day”, form exceptions to the rule prohibiting a group-meal. ² [Vin-a.1034](#), what is and what is not to be done by them. ³ *pakkha* is literally a party, a side, a faction, not necessarily a schismatic one, as is shown by above context, and see [BD.3.190](#), n.3.

“I allow you, monks, to assemble together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month.”

Now at that time monks, thinking: “It is allowed by the Lord to assemble together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month,” having assembled together, sat down in silence. Those people came up to hear *dhamma*. They looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having assembled together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month, sit in silence, like dumb pigs¹? Ought not *dhamma* to be spoken when they are assembled together?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, having assembled together on the fourteenth, fifteenth and eighth days of the half-month, to speak *dhamma*.”

Kd.2.2.1

PERMISSION TO RECITE THE PĀTIMOKKHA

Then as the Lord was meditating in seclusion a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “What now if I were to allow those rules of training, laid down by me for monks, (to form) a recital of Pātimokkha²

Kd.2.3.1

for them? It would be a (formal) act of observance³ for them.”

Then the Lord, having emerged from his seclusion in the evening, on this occasion, in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “Now, monks, as I was meditating in seclusion a reasoning

Kd.2.3.2
BD.4.132

¹ *mūgasūkarā*; Vin-a.1034 explains by *thūlasarīrasūkarā*, pigs that are fat in body. ² RHYSDAVIDS (E.R.E., article on Pātimokkha) says that from “the manner in which the word is used” in this passage it is not surprising” to find that the early Buddhists ascribed the institution ... of the Pātimokkha itself to a date long antecedent to that of the Buddha. If that be correct, the word Pātimokkha must have been current in Kosala when Buddhism arose, and ... among members of the previous orders”. Rhys Davids refers to DN.ii.46–DN.ii.49, where tradition ascribes a Pātimokkha to the time when Vipassin was Buddha, and to the verse (D.ii.49), repeated at Dh.185, which contains the words: *pātimokkhe ca saṃvaro ... etaṃ buddhānasāsanāṃ*, “and restraint according to the Pātimokkha—this is the teaching of the Buddhas” (plural).

On suggested meanings of Pātimokkha, see BD.1, Introduction, p.xiff.; *Vinaya Texts* i., Introduction, p.xxvii. On the number of rules that the Pātimokkha contained, see WINTERNITZ, *History of Indian Literature*, ii.2, n.5, which gives further references, and also B.C. LAW, *History of Pali Literature*, i.48f. ³ *uposathakamma*. *Uposatha* stands for “observance” itself. The phrase *tad-ah-uposathe*, “on this day’s observance”, is usually used for an Observance day.

arose in my mind thus: ‘What now if I should allow those rules of training, laid down by me for monks, (to form) a recital of Pātimokkha for them? It would be a (formal) act of observance for them’. I allow you, monks, to recite a Pātimokkha.

Kd.2.3.3

“And thus, monks, should it be recited: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Today, the fifteenth (day), is an Observance (day). If it seems right to the Order, the Order may carry out Observance, it may recite the Pātimokkha. What is the Order’s first duty? Let the venerable ones announce entire purity.¹ I will recite the Pātimokkha (while) one and all of us present² listen properly and pay attention to it.³ He for whom there may be an offence should reveal⁴ it. If there is no offence, you should become silent. By your becoming silent I shall thus know that the venerable ones are quite pure. For as there is an answer for each question,⁵ so it is proclaimed⁶ up to the third time in an assembly like this. Whatever monk remembering while it is being proclaimed up to the third time that there is an existent offence and should not reveal it, there comes to be conscious lying⁷ for him.⁸ Now, conscious lying, venerable ones, is a thing called a stumbling-block⁹ by the Lord. Therefore the existent offence should be revealed by a monk who remembers that he has fallen (into an offence) and who desires purity; for when it is revealed there comes to be comfort for him.’”

Vin.1.103

BD.4.133

Kd.2.3.4

¹ *pārisuddhi*, i.e. that only those are present who have committed no offences, or who have acknowledged any committed, or who have fulfilled the penalty for them. Cf. below, [BD.4.158](#).

² *sabbeva santā*. Cf. *ubho va santā* at [Vin.3.218](#). ³ *Vinaya Texts* i.242 take these words (all of us ... to it) to be the answer of the monks then present. As there is no *ti* marking the end of a speech, I think Gotama is still supposed to be telling the monks the way in which the recitation is to be carried out. ⁴ *āvikareyya*. *Āvikaroti* is to make clear, to manifest, thus to disclose, to bring to light. This method of clearing oneself of an offence is perhaps a forerunner to the more formal confession, *āpatti deseti*, to an Order, a group or to one individual monk. ⁵ *paccekapuṭṭhassa*. ⁶ *anussāvita*. ⁷ Defined at [Vin.4.2 \(BD.2.166\)](#).

⁸ Quoted *Atthasālinī* 92. ⁹ *antarāyiko dhammo*; see [BD.3.21, n.5](#).

Pātimokkha¹ means: this is the beginning, this is the head,² this is the foremost of states that are good; therefore it is called Pātimokkha.

The venerable ones means: this—‘the venerable ones’—is a term of esteem,³ this is a term of respect, this is a deferential and honorific designation.⁴

I will recite means: I will explain, I will teach, I will lay down, I will establish, I will make clear, I will analyse, I will make plain.⁵

To it means: to (what) is called the Pātimokkha.

One and all of us present means: as many as there are in this assembly—elders and newly ordained and those of middle standing—these are called ‘one and all of us present’.

(We) listen properly means: having applied ourselves, having attended,⁶ we concentrate with all our mind.⁷

(We) pay attention means: we listen,⁸ minds one-pointed, minds not distracted, minds not perturbed.⁹

He for whom there may be an offence means: a certain offence of the five classes of offence or a certain offence of the seven classes of offence¹⁰ for an elder or for a newly ordained one or for one of middle standing.

He should reveal means: he should tell, he should make clear, he should open up, he should make plain in the midst of an Order or in the midst of a group or to one individual.

If there is no offence means: either one comes not to be committed or, if fallen into, it is removed.¹¹

Kd.2.3.5

BD.4.134

¹ On the inclusion of this Commentary in the Mahāvagga, see *Vinaya Texts* i, Introduction, p.xv and S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.91. ² This derivative, Pātimokkha from *mukha* “is quite impossible”, WINTERNITZ, *History of Indian Literature*, ii.22, n.2. But punning is not to be taken as serious scientific etymology, for this was unknown so early. ³ Or, of endearment, of affection, *piya*. ⁴ Cf. Cnd.130, Snp-a.536. ⁵ Cf. SN.ii.25, SN.ii.154. SN.iii.132, SN.iv.166; AN.i.286, AN.ii.160. ⁶ *aṭṭhikatvā manasikatvā*; cf. Vin.4.144. ⁷ *sabbam cetasā samannāharāma*; cf. SN.i.112, SN.i.189, SN.N.ii.220; AN.ii.116, AN.iii.163, AN.iii.402, AN.iv.167; MN.i.325. ⁸ *nisāmema*. ⁹ Cf. AN.iii.174; Ds.11, Ds.15, Ds.24: Mnd.501. ¹⁰ The five classes of offence comprise the *Pārājika*, *Saṅghādisesa*, *Aniyata*, *Nissaggiya*, *Pācittiya* offences; the seven classes these five with the addition of the *Pāṭidesaniyas* and *Sekhiyas*. ¹¹ *vuṭṭhitā*, feminine, agreeing with its subject *āpatti*. Vin-a.1034 reasonably explains: “here, either, whatever monk there comes to be not falling into an offence, or, having fallen is removed from it, this is the meaning of ‘if there is no offence’”. Cf. *āpattiyaṃ vuṭṭhāna* in Kd.1.38.10.

You should become silent means: you should consent, you should not speak.

I shall know¹ that you are quite pure means: I will know, I will understand.

Kd.2.3.6

For as there is an answer for each question means: as one (person) if questioned about one (thing) would answer, so it should be known to that assembly: ‘He questions me’.

An assembly like this (means): it is called an assembly of monks.

It is proclaimed up to the third time means: it is proclaimed once and it is proclaimed a second time and it is proclaimed a third time.

Remembering means: knowing, perceiving.

There is an existent offence means: either one comes to be committed or if fallen into is not removed.

Should not reveal means: should not tell, should not make clear, should not open up, should not make plain in the midst of an Order or in the midst of a group or to one individual.

Vin.1.104

Kd.2.3.7

There comes to be conscious lying for him means: What is conscious lying? It is an offence of wrong-doing.²

A thing called a stumbling-block by the Lord means: a stumbling-block to what? It is a stumbling-block to the attainment of the first (stage in) meditation, it is a stumbling-block to the attainment of the second (stage in) meditation ... the third (stage in) meditation, ... the fourth (stage in) meditation, it is a stumbling-block to the attainment of the meditations, of the deliverances, of the contemplations, of the attainments³, of the renunciations, of the escapes,⁴ of the aloofnesses, of states that are good.

BD.4.135

Therefore means: for that reason.

By (a monk) who remembers means: by (one) knowing, by (one) perceiving.

¹ *vedissāmi ... jānissāmi.* ² In the *Pācittiya*s, however, conscious lying appears as the first offence in this class. *Vinaya Texts* i.245, note says that because of this “we cannot interpret here *dukkāṭa* in the technical sense of a *dukkāṭa* offence”. I think, however, that the difference in the penalties laid down for conscious lying may point to different stages in the growth of the legislation. ³ Cf. *Vin.3.91*, *Vin.3.92*, *Vin.4.25*. ⁴ *nissaraṇa*. ‘Escapes’ mentioned at Ud.80; It.p.37, It.p.61; DN.iii.275; AN.iii.245, DN.iii.239–DN.iii.240; AN.iii.290, DN.iii.247; MN.i.84ff., etc.

By (a monk) who desires purity means: by (one) wishing to remove (an offence), by (one) wishing to be purified.

Kd.2.3.8

Existent offence means: either one comes to be committed, or, if fallen into, is not removed.

Should be revealed means: it should be revealed in the midst of an Order or in the midst of a group or to one individual.

For when it is revealed there comes to be comfort for him means: In what is there comfort? There comes to be comfort in the attainment of the first (stage in) meditation, there comes to be comfort in the attainment in the second (stage in) meditation ... the third (stage in) meditation ... the fourth (stage in) meditation; there comes to be comfort in the attainment of the meditations, of the deliverances, of the contemplations, of the attainments, of the renunciations, of the escapes, of the aloofnesses, of states that are good.¹

Now at that time monks, thinking: “The recital of the Pātimokkha is allowed by the Lord,” recited the Pātimokkha daily. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.4.1

“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited daily. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to recite the Pātimokkha on an Observance day.”

Now at that time monks, thinking: “The recital of the Pātimokkha on an Observance day is allowed by the Lord,” recited the Pātimokkha three times during the half-month—on the fourteenth, on the fifteenth and on the eighth (days) of the half-month. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.4.2

“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited three times in the half-month. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to recite the Pātimokkha once in the half-month: either on this fourteenth or on the fifteenth (day).”

BD.4.136

¹ Cf. the forest or jungle dwelling monk who had comfort, *phāsu*, Kd.1.73.4. This example together with the one given above indicate that *phāsu* is by no means used exclusively to denote physical comfort.

Kd.2.5.1

Now at that time the group of six monks recited the Pātimokkha according to assembly, each one before his own assembly. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.1.105

“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited according to assembly, each one before his own assembly, Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, a (formal) act of Observance for all together.”¹

Kd.2.5.2

Then it occurred to the monks: “A (formal) act of Observance for all together is allowed by the Lord. Now, how far does ‘being all together’² (go)? As far as one residence, or the whole earth?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.5.3

“I allow, monks, ‘being all together’ (to mean) as far as one residence.”

THE STORY OF MAHĀKAPPINA

Now at that time the venerable Kappina the Great³ was staying near Rājagaha at Maddakucchi in the deer-park. Then as the venerable Kappina the Great was meditating in seclusion a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “Should I go to an Observance or should I not go, should I go to a (formal) act of the Order or should I not go, I, nevertheless, am purified with the highest purification.”

Kd.2.5.4

Then the Lord, knowing by mind the reasoning in the mind of the venerable Kappina the Great, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so did he, vanishing from Mount Vulture Peak appear in Maddakucchi in the deer-park before the venerable Kappina the Great. The Lord sat down on an appointed seat, and

BD.4.137

¹ *samaggānaṃ*. Cf. *samagga* at Vin.4.52, “all come”, and see BD.2.267, n.7; and cf. *samagga saṅgha* at Vin.4.154, Vin.4.218, Vin.4.231 meaning a complete Order. ² *sāmaggī*. ³ At AN.i.25 called chief of the exhorters of monks. Verses at Thag.547–Thag.556. See *Psalms of the Brethren* p.254ff., and N.B. that on BD.4.256 “taught the sisters” (or nuns) should read “taught the brethren” (or monks), as noticed at *Psalms of the Brethren* p.417. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* ii.475, article: Mahākappina, should be corrected accordingly. See Sakya, p.140ff., for MRS. RHYS DAVIDS’ suggestion that Kappina was Assaji’s teacher.

the venerable Kappina the Great, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance.

As the venerable Kappina the Great was sitting down at a respectful distance the Lord spoke thus to him: “Now, Kappina, as you were meditating in seclusion did not a reasoning arise in your mind thus: ‘Should I go to an Observance or should I not go, should I go to a (formal) act of the Order or should I not go, I, nevertheless, am purified with the highest purification?’”

Kd.2.5.5

“Yes, Lord.”

“But if you brahmins¹ do not reverence, revere, esteem, honour the Observance, who is there who will reverence, revere, esteem, honour the Observance? You go along, brahmin, to the Observance, do not not go; go likewise to a (formal) act of the Order, do not not go.”

“Yes, Lord,” the venerable Kappina the Great answered the Lord in assent.

Kd.2.5.6

Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the venerable Kappina the Great with talk on *dhamma*, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or bend back his outstretched arm, even so did he, vanishing from before the venerable Kappina the Great in Maddakucchi in the deer-park appear on Mount Vulture Peak.

Vin.1.106

PERMISSION FOR A BOUNDARY

Then it occurred to the monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that ‘being all together’ (means) as far as one residence. Now, how far does one residence (go)?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.6.1

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a boundary. And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon: First, marks should be announced,² a mark consisting of a hillside, a mark consisting of a rock, a mark consisting of a grove, a mark consisting of a tree, a mark consisting of a road, a mark consisting of an anthill, a mark consisting of a river, a mark consisting of (a piece of) water. The Order, having announced the marks, should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen

BD.4.138

¹ *Brahmin* probably being used here in its Buddhist sense of “best, highest”. Kappina was older than Gotama. ² *nimittā kittetabbā*.

Kd.2.6.2 to me. In as much as marks all round are announced, if it seems right to the Order the Order may agree upon a boundary in accordance with these marks for the same communion for one Observance. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. In as much as marks all round are announced, the Order is agreeing upon a boundary in accordance with these marks for the same communion, for one Observance. If the agreement upon a boundary in accordance with these marks for the same communion, for one Observance, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The boundary in accordance with these marks is agreed upon by the Order for the same communion, for one Observance. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.2.7.1

Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: “An agreement upon a boundary is allowed by the Lord,” agreed upon very extensive boundaries, of four *yojanas* and five *yojanas* and six *yojanas*. Monks coming for Observance arrived while the Pātimokkha was being recited, and they arrived just after it had been recited, and they stayed (a night) on the way. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, a very extensive boundary should not be agreed upon, of four *yojanas* or five *yojanas* or six *yojanas*. Whoever should (so) agree, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to agree upon a boundary of three *yojanas* at most.”¹

Kd.2.7.2

Now at that time the group of six monks agreed upon the other side of a river as a boundary. Monks coming for Observance were carried away and their bowls were carried away and their robes were carried away. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, the other side of a river should not be agreed upon as a boundary. Whoever should (so) agree, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I

BD.4.139

¹ According to Vin-a.1046 this means that having established the middle of the proposed residence, the boundary should not be more than one and a half *yojanas* from it in each direction. A triangle may be agreed upon, three *yojanas* from corner to corner.

allow you, monks, when there may be a reliable boat¹ or a reliable bridge² to agree upon the other side of such a river as a boundary.”

ON AN OBSERVANCE HALL

Now at that time monks recited the Pātimokkha in successive cells without (making) a rendezvous.³ In-coming monks did not know or they thought, “Where will the Observance be carried out today?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.8.1

Vin.1.107

“**Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in successive cells without (making) a rendezvous. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to carry out the Observance having agreed upon an Observance-hall that the Order desires: a dwelling-place or a curved house or a long house or a mansion or a cave.⁴ And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon:

Kd.2.8.2

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon such and such a dwelling-place as an Observance-hall. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon such and such a dwelling-place as an Observance-hall. If the agreement upon such and such a dwelling-place as an Observance-hall is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Such and such a dwelling-place as an Observance-hall is agreed upon by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.2.8.3

¹ *dhuvanāvā*. Vin-a.1046 gives various possibilities, one of which is a boat which plies regularly at the fords. ² *dhuvasetu*. Vin-a.1047 says “made of a collection of trees or boards joined together or a bridge where a caravan can go or what is suitable for the crossing over of elephants and horses is a large bridge; or a ‘reliable bridge’ means having even at that moment cut down a tree, a bridge that is suitable for people to cross over by one at a time. But it is not a ‘reliable bridge’ if it is not possible to cross by holding the jungle-rope and creepers twined above it”. ³ On *samketa* see BD.1.74, BD.1.88, BD.1.128, BD.1.135, BD.2.164, BD.2.239 (and n.3), BD.2.291, BD.2.294. ⁴ Cf. above, Kd.1.30.4 (and notes) and Vin.1.284.

BD.4.140 Now at that time in a certain residence two Observance-halls came to be agreed upon. Monks assembled together in both thinking: “Observance will be carried out here,” “Observance will be carried out here.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, two Observance-halls in one residence should not be agreed upon. Whoever should (so) agree, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, having abolished¹ one, to carry out the Observance in one place (only).

Kd.2.8.4

“And thus, monks, should it be abolished: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may abolish such and such an Observance-hall. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is abolishing such and such an Observance-hall. If the abolition of such and such an Observance-hall is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Such and such an Observance-hall is abolished by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

ON A MAXIMUM FOR OBSERVANCE

Kd.2.9.1

Now at that time in a certain residence a very small Observance-hall came to be agreed upon. A large Order of monks came to be assembled together on an Observance-day. Monks, sitting on ground that had not been agreed upon, heard the Pātimokkha. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that the Observance is to be carried out having agreed upon an Observance-hall, but we heard the Pātimokkha while we were sitting on ground that was not agreed upon. Now was the Observance carried out for us or was it not carried out?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.1.108

¹ Vin-a.1039 explains this to mean “having abolished one of the proclamations”, i.e. having rescinded one of the agreements so that one of the places already agreed upon as an Observance-hall is no longer regarded in this light.

“Monks, if one is sitting on the ground, whether it has been agreed upon or not agreed upon, and hears the Pātimokkha from there, the Observance is carried out for him.

“Well then, monks, if an Order desires a maximum for Observance¹ of a certain size let it agree upon a maximum for Observance of that size. And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon: First, marks should be announced. The Order, having announced the marks, should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. In as much as marks all round are announced, if it seems right to the Order the Order may agree upon a maximum for Observance in accordance with these marks. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. In as much as marks all round are announced, the Order is agreeing upon the maximum for Observance in accordance with these marks. If the agreement upon a maximum for Observance in accordance with these marks is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The maximum for Observance is agreed upon by the Order in accordance with these marks. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.2.9.2

Now at that time in a certain residence newly ordained monks,² being the first to have assembled together on an Observance day, saying: “The elders are not coming yet,” went away. The Observance was not at a right time.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.10.1

“I allow, monks, on an Observance day monks who are elders to assemble together first.”

Now at that time in Rājagaha several residences came to have the same boundary. Monks quarrelled about this, saying: “Let the Observance be

Kd.2.11.1

¹ *uposathapamukhaṃ*. Not noticed in *Pali-English Dictionary*. It must refer to the size of a site for hearing the Observance by a maximum number of monks of which an Order might consist. ² These *navakā bhikkhū* were only “newly ordained” or junior in comparison with the *majjhimā bhikkhū*, those of middle standing and ordained for as long as five years, and with the *theras*, elders, ordained for as many as ten years. A monk is called *navaka* or *nava* for the first four years of his religious life after the date of his ordination. ³ I.e. not on the fourteenth or fifteenth day of a half-month.

carried out in our residence,” “Let the Observance be carried out in our residence.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.4.142 “This is a case, monks, where several residences come to have the same boundary. Monks quarrel about this, saying: ‘Let the Observance be carried out in our residence’, ‘Let the Observance be carried out in our residence’. Monks those monks, one and all,¹ having assembled together in one place, should carry out the Observance, or, having assembled together they should carry out the Observance there where a monk who is an elder is staying. **But the Observance should not be carried out by an incomplete Order.² Whoever should (so) carry it out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Vin.1.109

PERMISSION FOR A “NOT SEPARATED” BOUNDARY

Kd.2.12.1

Now at one time the venerable Kassapa the Great, going from Andhakavinda³ to Rājagaha for Observance and crossing a river⁴ on the way, was nearly carried away, and his robes got wet. Monks spoke thus to the venerable Kassapa the Great: “Why are your robes wet, your reverence?”

“Now I, your reverences, coming from Andhakavinda to Rājagaha for the Observance and crossing a river on the way, was nearly carried away. Because of this my robes are wet.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Whatever boundary, monks, is agreed upon by an Order for the same communion, for one Observance, let the Order agree (to regard) that boundary (as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes.⁶”

Kd.2.12.2

¹ *sabbeḥ’ eva.* ² *na tv eva vaggena saṅghena*, as below, [Kd.2.22.2](#); [Kd.2.23.2](#) and subsequently. On *vagga*, see [BD.2.269, n.10.](#) ³ According to Vin-a.1049 Andhakavinda was at least a *gāvuta* from Rājagaha. Around Rājagaha were eighteen large *vihāras* having the same boundary, but the “being all together” of an Order took place in the Bamboo Grove. ⁴ Vin-a.1049 says the Sappinī (Sippinī), which they say rises in Mt. Vulture Peak, and because it flows quickly so near its source that is why the elder was nearly carried away. ⁵ *manam*, also at Ja.i.149, Dh-p-a.iii.147. ⁶ *ticīvarena avippavāsa.* Cf. [Bu-NP.2](#) where a monk incurs an offence if he is away from the three robes even for one night unless he has obtained the agreement of the monks. But one who is ill may obtain an agreement to be regarded as not separated from his robes, although in fact he is. The above ruling is to the same effect. See [BD.2.14, n.](#)

“And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever boundary was agreed upon by the Order for the same communion, for one Observance, if it seems right to the Order the Order may agree (to regard) that boundary (as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever boundary was agreed upon by the Order for the same communion, for one Observance the Order is agreeing (to regard) that boundary (as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes. If the agreement (to regard) this boundary (as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. This boundary is agreed upon the by Order (to be regarded as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

BD.4.143

Now at that time monks, thinking: “An agreement (for a monk to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes is allowed by the Lord,” laid aside robes in a house.¹ These robes were lost and burnt and eaten by rats. The monks became badly dressed, their robes worn thin. Monks spoke thus: “Why are you, your reverences, badly dressed, your robes worn thin?”

Kd.2.12.3

“Now we, your reverences, thinking: ‘An agreement (for a monk to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes is allowed by the Lord,’ laid aside robes in a house. These robes have been lost and burnt and eaten by rats. That is why we are badly dressed, our robes worn thin.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Whatever boundary, monks, is agreed upon by an Order for the same communion, for one Observance, let the Order agree (to regard) that boundary (as a place where a monk is) not away, separated from the three robes,

¹ In Bu-NP.29 monks, if staying in jungle lodgings are allowed to lay aside one of their three robes in a house. But, except with the agreement of the monks, they must not be away from their robes for more than six nights.

except it be a village and the precincts of a village.¹

Kd.2.12.4

Vin.1.110

BD.4.144

“And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon²: ... ‘... thus do I understand this’.

ABOLISHING A BOUNDARY

Kd.2.12.5

“When agreeing upon a boundary, monks, first the boundary for the same communion should be agreed upon, afterwards the (place where a monk is regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes should be agreed upon. In abolishing a boundary, monks, first the (place where a monk is regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes should be abolished, afterwards the boundary for the same communion should be abolished. And thus, monks, should the (place where the monk is regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes be abolished: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever was agreed upon by the Order (as a place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes, if it seems right to the Order, the Order may abolish that (place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever was agreed upon by the Order (as a place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes, the Order is abolishing (that place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes. If the abolition of (the place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. That (place where a monk is to be regarded) as not away, separated from the three robes is abolished by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.

Kd.2.12.6

¹ Defined at [Vin.3.46](#); see [BD.1.74, n.2](#). “Village having one precinct” defined at [Vin.3.200](#), see [BD.2.17](#) and note [Vin-a.1051](#) says that the above ruling is not for nuns because they live in a village; see also [Vinaya Texts i.256, n.1](#). ² The same as [Kd.2.12.2](#) above, but after the words “away, separated from the three robes” add “except it be a village and the precincts of a village.”

“And thus, monks, should a boundary for the same communion¹ be abolished: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever boundary has been agreed upon by the Order for the same communion, for one Observance, if it seems right to the Order, the Order may abolish that boundary. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Whatever boundary has been agreed upon by the Order for the same communion, for one Observance, the Order is abolishing that boundary. If the abolition of that boundary for the same communion, for one Observance is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. That boundary for the same communion, for one Observance is abolished by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.

BD.4.145

A VILLAGE BOUNDARY, ETC.

“Monks, when a boundary is not agreed upon, not established, whatever village or little town² (a monk) lives depending on, whatever is the village boundary of that village or the little town boundary of that little town, this in that case is (the boundary) for the same communion, for one Observance. If, monks, he is in what is not a village, in a jungle,³ in this case the same communion, one Observance, is seven *abbhantarās*⁴ all round. No river, monks, is a boundary, no sea is a boundary, no natural lake is a boundary. Where there is a river, monks, or a sea or a natural lake, that which in this case is (the boundary) for the same communion, one Observance, is the distance that a man of average (height) can throw water all round.”

Kd.2.12.7

Vin.1.111

Now at that time the group of six monks combined boundary with boundary.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, those for whom a boundary was agreed upon first, that (formal) act of theirs is legiti-

Kd.2.13.1

¹ “For the same communion” omitted in Oldenberg’s text, but included in the Ceylon edition.

² *nigama*, see BD.2.63, n.2. ³ “Jungle” defined at BD.1.74, BD.1.85. ⁴ See BD.2, Introduction, p.1. ⁵ *sīmāya sīmāṃ sambhindanti*.

mate, it is irreversible, fit to stand.¹ Monks, those for whom a boundary was agreed upon afterwards, that (formal) act of theirs is not legitimate, it is reversible, not fit to stand. **Monks, boundary should not be combined with boundary. Whoever should (so) combine, there is an offence of wrongdoing.**”

Kd.2.13.2

Now at that time the group of six monks placed boundary within boundary.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, those for whom a boundary was agreed upon first, that (formal) act of theirs is legitimate, it is irreversible fit to stand. Monks, those for whom a boundary was agreed upon afterwards, that (formal) act of theirs is not legitimate it is reversible, not fit to stand. **Monks, a boundary should not be placed within a boundary. Whoever should (so) place within, there is an offence of wrongdoing.** I allow you, monks, when a boundary is being agreed upon, having left an interspace between boundaries,³ to agree upon a boundary.”

BD.4.146

INCOMPLETE OBSERVANCE, ETC.

Kd.2.14.1

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how many Observance days are there?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these two Observance days, the fourteenth and the fifteenth. These, monks, are the two Observance days.”

Kd.2.14.2

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how many (formal) acts for Observance are there?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these four (formal) acts for Observance: a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) not by rule when an Order is incomplete⁴; a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) not by rule when an Order is complete; a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) by rule when an Order is incomplete; a

¹ Cf. [BD.3.161](#) ([Vin.4.214](#)), and [Vin.1.313](#), [Vin.1.316f](#). The last two, *akuppa* and *thānāraha*, are defined at [Vb-a.330](#). ² *sīmāya sīmañ ajjhottharanti*. ³ *sīmantarika*. This may be quite small: a *hattha* (on which see [BD.2, Introduction, p.li](#).) according to [Vin-a.1056](#); a span or four finger-breadths according to the two Sinhalese commentaries cited at [Vin-a.1056](#).

⁴ *adhammena vaggam*; cf. [Vin.4.37](#), [Vin.4.126](#), [Vin.4.152](#), [Vin.4.153](#), *adhammena vā vaggena vā*. See [Kd.9.3](#) for elucidations of “not by rule” and “by rule”, and of “incomplete” and “complete assemblies”.

(formal) act for Observance (carried out) by rule when an Order is complete. Now, monks, that which is a (formal) act for Observance carried out not by rule when an Order is incomplete, such a (formal) act for Observance, monks, should not be carried out, nor is such a (formal) act for Observance allowed by me.

“Then, monks, that which is a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) not by rule when an Order is complete, such a (formal) act for Observance, monks, should not be carried out nor is such a (formal) act for Observance allowed by me. Then, monks, that which is a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) by rule when an Order is incomplete, such a (formal) act for Observance should not be carried out nor is such a (formal) act for Observance allowed by me. Then, monks, that which is a (formal) act for Observance (carried out) by rule when an Order is complete, such a (formal) act for Observance, monks, may be carried out and such a (formal) act for Observance is allowed by me. Therefore, monks, thinking: ‘We will carry out a (formal) act for Observance like this, that is to say by rule when an Order is complete’—thus you should train yourselves, monks.”

Kd.2.14.3

Vin.1.112

BD.4.147

RECITING THE PĀTIMOKKHA IN BRIEF, ETC.

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how many ways for the recital of the Pātimokkha are there?”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these five (ways for the) recital of the Pātimokkha: having recited the provenance,¹ the rest may be announced as though it had been (already) heard²; this is the first (way for the) recital of the Pātimokkha. Having recited the provenance, having recited the four offences involving defeat, the rest may be announced as though it had been (already) heard; this is the second (way for the) recital of the Pātimokkha. Having recited the provenance, having recited the four offences involving defeat, having recited the thirteen offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the rest may be announced as though it had been (already) heard; this is the third (way for the) recital of the Pātimokkha. Having recited the provenance, having recited the four offences involving defeat, having recited the

Kd.2.15.1

¹ *nīdāna*, see above, BD.4.127. ² *avasesaṃ sutena sāvetaḥham*.

thirteen offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, having recited the two undetermined offences, the rest may be announced as though it had been (already) heard; this is the fourth (way for the) recital of the Pātimokkha. (Recital) in full is the fifth. Monks, these are the five (ways for the) recital of the Pātimokkha.”

Kd.2.15.2

Now, at that time, monks, thinking: “Recital of the Pātimokkha in brief is allowed by the Lord,” all the time recited the Pātimokkha in brief. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in brief. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.2.15.3

BD.4.148

Now at that time in a certain residence in the Kosala country there came to be a menace from savages¹ on an Observance day. The monks were unable to recite the Pātimokkha in full. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a danger, to recite the Pātimokkha in brief.”

Kd.2.15.4

Now at that time the group of six monks, although there was no danger, recited the Pātimokkha in brief. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, if there is no danger the Pātimokkha should not be recited in brief. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, if there is a danger, to recite the Pātimokkha in brief. In this connection these are dangers: a danger from kings,² a danger from thieves, a danger from fire, a danger from water, a danger from human beings, a danger from non-human beings, a danger from beasts of prey, a danger from creeping things, a danger to life, a danger to the Brahma-faring.³ I allow you, monks, when there are dangers such as these, to recite the Pātimokkha in brief; in full if there is no danger.”

Vin.1.113

ON QUESTIONING REGARDING VINAYA

Kd.2.15.5

Now at that time the group of six monks, unbidden,¹ spoke *dhamma* in the midst of an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, *dhamma* should not be spoken, by one who is not bidden (to do so), in the midst of an Order.**² **Whoever should (so) speak it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to speak *dhamma* by means of a monk who is himself an elder, or (for him) to bid another (to speak it).”³

Now at that time the group of six monks, (although) not agreed upon asked about discipline in the midst of an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, discipline should not be asked about, by one not agreed upon, in the midst of an Order. Whoever should (so) ask, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to ask about discipline, by means of one who is agreed upon, in the midst of an Order. And thus, monks, may he be agreed upon: either oneself may be agreed upon by oneself, or another may be agreed upon by another.”⁴

Kd.2.15.6

BD.4.149

And how may oneself be agreed upon by oneself? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I could ask so and so about discipline’. Thus may oneself be agreed upon by oneself. And how may another be agreed upon by another? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, so and so could ask so and so about discipline’. Thus may another be agreed upon by another.”

Kd.2.15.7

¹ *savara-bhaya*; cf. Vin.1.168. Vin-a.1057 reads *sañcarabhaya*. ² Same list again at Vin.1.169, Vin.2.244. Cf. also Vin.1.148–Vin.1.149. See also list of seven dangers at Divyāvādāna 544.

³ On *brahmācariya*, see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Wayfarer’s Words* ii.533, “A Technical Term”, where she regards it as a term taken over from the brahmins who used it to denote the student-day stage in their training. ¹ By the elders. Vin-a.1058. ² *na bhikkhave saṅghama-jjhe anajjhīṭṭhena dhammo bhāsitaḥ*. These cases probably mean that *dhamma* is not to be spoken or *vinaya* asked about (by one not qualified to do so) in the midst of an Order. They probably do *not* mean that one not bidden or not agreed upon in the midst of an Order might not speak or ask questions. ³ Cf. AN.iv.153 where if a monk “speaks *dhamma* himself or bids another (to do so)” it is one of the eight reasons for his development in the Brahma-faring.

⁴ Cf. above, BD.4.121, below, BD.4.150.

Kd.2.15.8

Now at that time well behaved monks who were agreed upon asked about discipline in the midst of the Order. The group of six monks took offence, they took umbrage, they threatened them with harm.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to ask about discipline in the midst of the Order by means of one who is agreed upon, although² having (first) looked round the assembly, having assessed³ (each) individual."⁴

ON ANSWERING REGARDING VINAYA

Kd.2.15.9

Now at that time the group of six monks (although) not agreed upon answered questions on discipline in the midst of the Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "**Monks, questions on discipline should not be answered in the midst of the Order by one not agreed upon. Whoever should (so) answer, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to answer questions in the midst of the Order by means of one who is agreed upon. And thus, monks, may he be agreed upon: either oneself may be agreed upon by oneself, or another may be agreed upon by another.

BD.4.150

Kd.2.15.10

Vin.1.114

And how may oneself be agreed upon by oneself? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I, asked about discipline by so and so, could answer.' Thus may oneself be agreed upon by oneself. And how may another be agreed upon by another? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, so and so, asked about discipline by so and so, could answer.' Thus may another be agreed upon by another."

Kd.2.15.11

¹ *vadhena*, also meaning with slaughter, with destruction. ² *pi*. ³ *tulayitvā*, literally having weighed. Cf. *tulayitabbarā* at Vin.4.142. Vin-a.1059 says the one who is asking, having looked round the assembly, may ask about discipline if there is no risk for himself. ⁴ This allowance is an elaboration of that given in Kd.2.15.6. This still holds good, but the above safeguard is added.

Now at that time well behaved monks who were agreed upon answered questions on discipline in the midst of the Order. The group of six monks took offence, they took umbrage, they threatened them with harm. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to answer questions on discipline in the midst of the Order by means of one who is agreed upon, although having (first) looked round the assembly, having assessed (each) individual.”

ON REPROVING

Now at that time the group of six monks reproved, on account of an offence, a monk who had not given (them) leave.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a monk who has not given leave should not be reprovved on account of an offence. Whoever should (so) reprove, there is an offence of wrong-dong.** I allow you, monks, having obtained leave by saying: ‘Let the venerable one give me leave, I want to speak to you to reprove him on account of an offence.’”

Kd.2.16.1

Now at that time well-behaved monks, having obtained the leave of the group of six monks, reproved them on account of an offence. The group of six months took offence, they took umbrage, they threatened them with harm. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, even if leave is given, to reprove for an offence after you have assessed the individual.”

Kd.2.16.2

Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: “Before² well-behaved monks obtain our leave,” themselves obtained the pure monks’ leave beforehand,³ but there was no ground, no reason, since they were not offenders⁴. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, leave should not be obtained from pure monks when there is no ground, no reason, since they**

Kd.2.16.3

¹ *anokāsakata*, “to make an occasion”, to give, to grant leave; *okāsaṃ kārāpeti*, to make to give, thus to obtain leave. Cf. *Vin.4.344* where nuns must not question monks unless they have obtained their leave to do so, and where *anokāsakata* is defined by *anāpucchā*, without having asked (for permission). ² *pure* = *paṭhamam*, *Vin-a.1059*. Cf. *Kd.4.16.3*. ³ *paṭigacc’eva* = *paṭhamataram*, *Vin-a.1059*. ⁴ *anāpattika*.

are not offenders. Whoever should (so) obtain it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to obtain leave after you have assessed the individuals.”

PROTESTING AN ACT THAT IS NOT THE RULE, ETC.

Kd.2.16.4

Now at that time the group of six monks carried out a (formal) act that was not legally valid in the midst of an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a (formal) act that is not legally valid should not be carried out in the midst of the Order. Whoever should (so) carry one out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”** Even so, they carried out a (formal) act that was not legally valid. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to protest¹ when a (formal) act that is not legally valid is being carried out.”

Vin.1.115

Kd.2.16.5

Now at that time well-behaved monks protested when a (formal) act that was not legally valid was being carried out by the group of six monks. The group of six monks took offence, they took umbrage, they threatened them with harm. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, merely to express an opinion.” They expressed an opinion to these themselves. The group of six monks took offence, they took umbrage, they threatened them with harm. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, when there are four or five, to protest, when there are two or three to express an opinion, when there is one, to determine: ‘I do not approve of this’.”

Kd.2.16.6

BD.4.152

Now at that time the group of six monks, when the Pātimokkha was being recited in the midst of the Order, intentionally did not hear. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a reciter of the Pātimokkha should not intentionally not be heard. Whoever should not hear, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

¹ *paṭikkosituṃ*. Cf. **BD.3.58**.

REQUESTING THE RECITING OF THE PĀTIMOKKHA, ETC.

Now at that time the venerable Udāyin came to be reciter of the Pātimokkha for an Order, but his voice was like a crow's. Then it occurred to the venerable Udāyin: "It is laid down by the Lord that a reciter of the Pātimokkha should be heard, but my voice is like a crow's. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, the one who is the reciter of the Pātimokkha to exert himself, thinking: 'How can I be heard? 'There is no offence for one who exerts himself.'"

Kd.2.16.7

Now at that time Devadatta recited the Pātimokkha before an assembly that contained laymen. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **"Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited before an assembly that contains laymen. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing."**

Kd.2.16.8

Now at that time the group of six monks, unbidden, recited the Pātimokkha in the midst of an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **"Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in the midst of an Order by one who is not bidden (to do so). Whoever (such) should recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, that the Pātimokkha be in charge of an elder."¹

Kd.2.16.9

Told is the Portion for Repeating on Members of Other Sects

ALLOWANCE TO LEARN THE COUNTING OF THE FORTNIGHTS, ETC.

Then the Lord, having stayed in Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Codanāvattu. In due course, walking on a tour, he arrived

¹ *therādhikam Pātimokkham*. Vin-a.1059 says that the elder should recite it himself or call upon another to do so. Cf. the ruling which arose from speaking *dhamma* unbidden, above, [BD.4.148](#).

in Codanāvattu. Now at that time several monks were staying in a certain residence; the monk who there was the elder was ignorant, inexperienced, he did not know the Observance or a (formal) act for Observance or the Pātimokkha or the recital of the Pātimokkha.

Vin.1.116

BD.4.153

Kd.2.17.2

Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that the Pātimokkha be in charge of an elder, but this elder of ours is ignorant, inexperienced, he does not know the Observance ... or the recital of the Pātimokkha. Now what line of conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, the Pātimokkha to be discharged¹ by whoever there is an experienced, competent monk.”

Kd.2.17.3

Now at that time several ignorant, inexperienced monks were staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. These did not know the Observance or a (formal) act for Observance or the Pātimokkha or the recital of the Pātimokkha. These called upon an elder, saying: “Honoured sir, let the elder recite the Pātimokkha.” He spoke thus: “Your reverences, I am not able to do so².” They called upon a second elder ... He also spoke thus: ... They called upon a third elder ... In this way they called upon (all the monks) down to the most newly ordained in the Order, saying: “Let the venerable one recite the Pātimokkha.” He also spoke thus: “Honoured sirs, I am not able to do so.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.17.4

Kd.2.17.5

“This is a case, monks, where several ignorant, inexperienced monks are staying in a certain residence ...³ ... ‘Honoured sirs, I am not able to do so’. Monks, one monk should immediately be sent to a neighbouring residence by these monks, saying: ‘Do go, your reverence; having mastered the Pātimokkha in brief or in full, come back’.”

Kd.2.17.6

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should he be sent?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to enjoin a newly ordained monk through a monk who is an elder.” Newly ordained monks, (although) enjoined by an elder, did not go. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is not ill should not not go when enjoined by an elder. Whoever should not go, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.1.117

BD.4.154

¹ *tassādheyyarū Pātimokkharū. Ādheyya* means “to be appropriated”. ² *na me vattati*, it is not for me. ³ As in [Kd.2.17.3](#) above, but told in the present tense.

Then the Lord, having stayed at Codanāvattu for as long as he found suiting, returned again to Rājagaha. Now at that time people asked the monks as they were walking for almsfood: “Which (day) of the half-month is it, honoured sirs?” The monks spoke thus: “We, sirs, do not know.” The people ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, do not even know the calculation¹ of the half-months, so how can they know anything else that is good?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, you, monks, to learn the calculation of the half-months.”

Kd.2.18.1

Then it occurred to monks: “Now by whom should the calculation of the half-months be learnt?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, one and all² to learn the calculation of the half-months.”

Kd.2.18.2

Now at that time people asked the monks as they were walking for almsfood: “How many monks are there, honoured sirs?” The monks spoke thus: “We, sirs, do not know.” The people ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, do not even know one another, so how can they know anything else that is good?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to count the monks.”

Kd.2.18.3

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how should the monks be counted?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, on an Observance day to count by way of groups³ or to take (a count) by ticket⁴.”

Kd.2.18.4

Now at that time monks, not knowing, “Today is an Observance day,” walked to a distant village for almsfood. Not only did these come back while the Pātimokkha was being recited, but they came back just after it had been recited. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to announce, ‘Today is an Observance day.’” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should it be announced?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to announce it in good time through a monk who is an elder.” Now at that time a certain elder did not remember in good time. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to

Kd.2.19.1

BD.4.155

¹ *gaṇanā*, see [BD.2.176, n.5](#). ² *sabbeh’eva*. ³ *gaṇamaggena gaṇetuṃ*. ⁴ *salākaṃ gaṇetuṃ*.

announce it even at meal-time.” He did not remember even at mealtime. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to announce it at whatever time he¹ remembers.”

Vin.1.118

ALLOWANCE FOR PRELIMINARY DUTIES

Kd.2.20.1

Now at that time the Observance-hall in a certain residence came to be soiled. Incoming monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks not sweep the Observance-hall?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to sweep the Observance-hall.”

Kd.2.20.2

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should an Observance-hall be swept?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to enjoin a newly ordained monk through a monk who is an elder.” Newly ordained monks, (although) enjoined by an elder, did not sweep. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is not ill should not not sweep when enjoined by an elder. Whoever should not sweep, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.2.20.3

Now at that time a seat was not prepared in an Observance-hall. Monks sat on the ground. Their limbs and robes became covered with dust. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to prepare a seat in the Observance-hall.” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should a seat in the Observance-hall be prepared?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to enjoin a newly ordained monk through a monk who is an elder.” Newly ordained monks, (although) enjoined by an elder, did not prepare (a seat). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is not ill should not not prepare (a seat) when enjoined by an elder. Whoever should not prepare (a seat), there is an offence of wrong doing.”**

BD.4.156

Kd.2.20.4

Now at that time there came to be no light in an Observance-hall. Monks trod on (one another’s) bodies and robes in the dark. They told this matter

¹ I.e. the elder.

to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a light¹ in an Observance-hall.” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom is the light to be made in an Observance-hall?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to enjoin a newly ordained monk through a monk who is an elder.” Newly ordained monks, (although) enjoined by an elder, did not light a lamp.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is not ill should not not light a lamp when enjoined by an elder. Whoever should not light a lamp, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.2.20.5

At that time in a certain residence resident monks neither set out drinking water nor did they set out water for washing. Incoming monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these resident monks neither set out drinking water nor set out water for washing?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to set out drinking water and water for washing.”

Vin.1.119

Kd.2.20.6

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should drinking water and water for washing be set out?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to enjoin a newly ordained monk through a monk who is an elder.” Newly ordained monks, (although) enjoined by an elder, did not set out (the water). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is not ill should not not set out (water) when enjoined by an elder. Whoever should not set it out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

THE STORY OF THOSE TRAVELLING TO DISTANT PARTS, ETC.

Now at that time ignorant inexperienced monks, travelling to distant parts,³ did not ask teachers and preceptors (for permission). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where several ignorant inexperienced monks, travelling to distant parts, do not ask teachers and preceptors (for permission). Monks, they should be asked by these teachers and preceptors: ‘Where will you go? With whom will you go?’ **If, monks, these igno-**

Kd.2.21.1

BD.4.157

¹ *padīpaṃ kātuṃ*. ² *padīpeti*, to light up, to light a lamp. ³ *disaṅgamikā*; cf. [Vin.1.263](#); and [Kd.1.25,24](#) where those who share cells may not leave the district (*disā*) without asking the preceptors for permission.

rant inexperienced ones should cite other ignorant inexperienced ones, then, monks, they should not be allowed to go by the teachers and preceptors. If they should allow them (to go), there is an offence of wrong-doing. And if, monks, these ignorant inexperienced ones should go (although) not allowed by¹ the teachers and preceptors, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.2.21.2

“This is a case, monks, where several ignorant inexperienced monks are staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. These do not know the Observance or a (formal) act for Observance or the Pātimokkha or the recital of the Pātimokkha. A certain monk arrives there. He has heard much, he is one to whom the tradition has been handed down,² he is an expert on *dhamma*, an expert on discipline, an expert on the summaries³; he is wise, experienced, clever; he is conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training. Monks, that monk should be furthered⁴ by those monks, he should be helped,⁵ he should be encouraged,⁶ he should be supported⁷ in regard to chunam, clay, tooth-wood, water for washing the face. If he should not be furthered, helped, encouraged, supported in regard to chunam, clay, tooth-wood, water for washing the face, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.2.21.3

“This is a case, monks, where several ignorant, inexperienced monks are staying in a certain residence on an Observance-day. These do not know the Observance ... or the recital of the Pātimokkha. Monks, one monk should immediately be sent to a neighbouring residence by these monks, saying: ‘Do go, your reverence, having mastered the Pātimokkha in brief or in full, come back’. If he thus manages this, it is good. If he does not manage it, then, monks, those monks, one and all, should go to a residence where they know the Observance ... or the recital of the Pātimokkha. If they should not go, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

BD.4.158

Vin.1.120

Kd.2.21.4

This is a case, monks, where several ignorant, inexperienced monks are spending the rains in a certain residence. These do not know ... (*as above*

¹ *ananuññatā*, defined at Vin.4.335 as *anāpucchā*, not asking (for permission). Permission has to be asked for before it can be given. ² *āgatāgama*. See BD.3.71, n.1. ³ Cf. AN.i.117, AN.ii.147, AN.iii.179f. ⁴ *saṃgahetabbo*. This word is used with the next (*anuggahetabbo*) above, BD.4.67. ⁵ *anuggahetabbo*. See definition of *anuggaṇheyya* at Vin.4.325 (BD.3.376). The word occurs above, BD.4.67. ⁶ *upalāpetabbo*. Cf. definition of *upalāpeyya* at Vin.4.140 (BD.3.34). ⁷ *upaṭṭhāpetabbo*. Cf. definition of *upaṭṭhāpeyya* at Vin.4.140 (BD.3.34).

in Kd.2.21.4) ... If he thus manages this, it is good. If he does not manage it, then, monks, one monk should be sent off for seven days (with the words): ‘Do go, your reverence, having mastered the Pātimokkha in brief or in full, come back’. If he thus manages this, it is good. **If he does not manage it, then, monks, these monks should not spend the rains in that residence. If they should spend them (there), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

ON GIVING ENTIRE PURITY

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Gather together, monks, the Order will carry out the Observance.” When he had spoken thus, a certain monk spoke thus to the Lord: “There is, Lord, a monk who is ill. He has not come.” He said: “I allow you, monks, to declare¹ entire purity² on behalf of a monk who is ill. And thus, monks, should it be declared: That ill monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I will declare entire purity; convey entire purity for me, announce entire purity for me.’ If he makes it understood by gesture, if he makes it understood by voice, if he makes it understood by gesture and voice, the entire purity comes to be declared. If he does not make it understood by gesture, if he does not make it understood by voice, if he does not make it understood by gesture and voice, the entire purity does not come to be declared.

“If he thus manages this, it is good; if he does not manage it, then, monks, that ill monk, having been brought to the midst of the Order on a couch or a chair, the Observance may be carried out. If, monks, it occurs to the monks who are tending the ill one: ‘If we move the ill one from (this) place, either the disease will grow much worse or he will die³’, monks, the ill one should not be moved from (that) place; the Order, having gone there, should carry out the Observance. **The Observance should not be carried**

¹ *dātuṃ*, literally to give. Cf. *chandaṃ dātuṃ* at Vin.4.151 (BD.3.58) and below, BD.4.161.

² *pārisuddhi*, cf. above, BD.4.132. It means that the ill monk believes that he has committed none of the offences specified in the Pātimokkha, or that, if he has, he has confessed them, so that in regard to them he is pure.

³ *kālaṃkiriya bhavissati*, literally there will be a doing of (his) time.

Kd.2.22.1

BD.4.159

Kd.2.22.2

out by an incomplete Order.¹ If it should be (so) carried out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.2.22.3

“If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity goes away then and there,² although the entire purity was declared (to him)³, the entire purity should be declared to another. If, monks, the conveyor of the entire purity leaves the Order then and there although the entire purity was declared (to him), if he passes away, if he pretends to be a novice,⁴ if he pretends to be a disavower of the training,⁵ if he pretends to be a committer of an extreme offence,⁶ if he pretends to be mad,⁷ if he pretends to be unhinged,⁸ if he pretends to have bodily pains,⁹ if he pretends to be one who is suspended¹⁰ for not seeing an offence, if he pretends to be one who is suspended for not making amends for an offence, if he pretends to be one who is suspended for not giving up a wrong view, if he pretends to be a eunuch,¹¹ if he pretends to be one living in communion as it were by theft,¹² if he pretends to be one who has gone over to another sect¹³, if he pretends to be an animal,¹⁴ if he pretends to be a matricide,¹⁵ if he pretends to be a parricide,¹⁶ if he pretends to be a slayer of one perfected,¹⁷ if he pretends to be a seducer of a nun,¹⁸ if he pretends to be a schismatic,¹⁹ if he pretends to be a shedder of (a Truth-finder’s) blood,²⁰ if he pretends to be a hermaphrodite,²¹ the entire purity should be declared to another.

Vin.1.121

BD.4.160

Kd.2.22.4

¹ As above, **BD.2.11.i**, and several times below. ² *tatth’eva*. Vin-a.1062, if he goes elsewhere, not to the midst of the Order. ³ The one who has undertaken to convey the entire purity shelves his responsibility and does not carry out the message entrusted to him. ⁴ Cf. the following sequence and the three preceding items: going away and leaving the Order and passing away, with **Vin.1.135**, **Vin.1.167–Vin.1.168**, **Vin.1.307**, **Vin.1.320**, **Vin.2.173**. ⁵ See **BD.1.4Off**. At AN.v.71 the presence of a “disavower of the training” is given as one of the reasons why the Pātimokkha may be suspended. ⁶ *antimavatthūṃ ajjhāpannako*, meaning a Pārajika offence; cf. **BD.4.180**. ⁷ Reasons for exemption from the penalty for an offence as given in Suttavibhaṅga. ⁸ Reasons for exemption from the penalty for an offence as given in Suttavibhaṅga. ⁹ Reasons for exemption from the penalty for an offence as given in Suttavibhaṅga. ¹⁰ *ukkhitta*, cf. **BD.3.28, n.4**. ¹¹ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.109**. ¹² *theyyasamvāsaka*; not to be ordained, cf. above, **BD.4.110**. ¹³ *titthiyapakkantaka*; not to be ordained, see above, **BD.4.110**. ¹⁴ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.111**. ¹⁵ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.112**. ¹⁶ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.112**. ¹⁷ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.113**. ¹⁸ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.113**. ¹⁹ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.113**. ²⁰ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.113**. ²¹ Not to be ordained, above **BD.4.113**.

“If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity goes away while he is on the road,¹ although the entire purity was declared (to him), the entire purity comes to be not conveyed. If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity leaves the Order while he is on the road, although the entire purity was declared (to him), if he passes away ... if he pretends to be a hermaphrodite, the entire purity comes to be not conveyed. If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity, after the entire purity was declared (to him), having arrived at the Order, then goes away, the entire purity comes to be conveyed. If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity, after the entire purity was declared (to him), having arrived at the Order, then leaves the Order, passes away, ... pretends to be a hermaphrodite, the entire purity comes to be conveyed. If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity, after the entire purity was declared (to him), having arrived at the Order does not announce it because he has fallen asleep, does not announce it because he is indolent, does not announce it because he is attaining (what is higher²), the entire purity comes to be conveyed; there is no offence for the conveyer of the entire purity. **If, monks, the conveyer of the entire purity, although the entire purity was declared (to him), having arrived at the Order, intentionally does not announce it, the entire purity comes to be conveyed (but) there is an offence of wrong-doing for the conveyer of the entire purity.**”

ON GIVING CONSENT

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Gather together, monks, the Order will carry out a (formal) act.” When he had spoken thus a certain monk spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, there is a monk who is ill; he has not come.” He said: “I allow you, monks, to give the consent³ for a monk who is ill. And thus, monks, should it be given: That ill monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I will give the consent, convey the consent for me, announce

Kd.2.23.1

¹ While he is on the way to the Order; if he goes elsewhere. ² *samāpanno*, a term which has the technical sense of attaining the attainments, *samāpatti*. See *BD.2.177, n.5, n.6.* ³ *chandam dātum*, see *BD.3.58, BD.3.61*. It is here the ‘consent’ to send leave of absence by proxy.

the consent for me'. If he makes it understood by gesture, if he makes it understood by voice, if he makes it understood by gesture and voice, the consent comes to be given. If he does not make it understood by gesture, if he does not make it understood by voice, if he does not make it understood by gesture and voice, the consent does not come to be given.

Kd.2.23.2

Vin.1.122

"If he thus manages this, it is good. If he does not manage it, then, monks, having taken that ill monk to the midst of the Order on a couch or a chair, a (formal) act may be carried out. If, monks, it occurs to the monks who are tending the ill one: 'If we move the ill one from (this) place, either the disease will grow much worse or he will die', monks, the ill one should not be moved from (that) place; the Order, having gone there, should carry out the (formal) act. **A (formal) act should not be carried out by an incomplete Order. If it should be (so) carried out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**

Kd.2.23.3

"If, monks, the conveyer of the consent goes away then and there although the consent was given (to him), the consent should be given to another. If, monks, the conveyer of the consent leaves the Order then and there, although the consent was given (to him), if he dies ... if he pretends to be a hermaphrodite, the consent should be given to another. If, monks, the conveyer of the consent goes away while he is on the road, although the consent was given to him, the consent comes to be not conveyed. **If, monks, the conveyer of the consent leaves the Order while he is on the road ... (as in Kd.2.22.4) ... there is an offence of wrong-doing for the conveyer of the consent.** I allow you, monks, on an Observance day, to give the consent also, by declaring the entire purity; they are the Order's business¹."

BD.4.162

ON BEING GRABBED BY RELATIVES

Kd.2.24.1

Now at that time his relations got hold of a certain monk on an Observance day. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "This is a case, monks, where his relations get hold of a monk on an Observance day. These relations should be spoken to thus by the monks: 'Please will you, venerable

¹ *santi saṅghassa karaṇīyaṃ*. Same expression occurs at beginning of Kd.2.25.1. Karaṇīya is something to be done, a duty; cf. Kd.4.3.5.

ones,¹ let go of this monk for a short time² while this monk carries out the Observance?’

Kd.2.24.2

“If they manage this thus, it is good. If they do not manage it, these relations should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Please will you, venerable ones, stand at a respectful distance for a short time while this monk declares his entire purity?’ If they manage this thus, it is good. If they do not manage it, these relations should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Please will you, venerable ones, take this monk outside the boundary³ for a short time while the Order carries out the Observance?’ If they manage this thus, it is good. **If they do not manage it the Observance should not be carried out by an incomplete Order. If it should be (so) carried out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**

Kd.2.24.3

“This is a case, monks, where kings get hold of a monk on an Observance day ... thieves ... men of abandoned life⁴ ... monks who are opponents of monks⁵ get hold of a monk on an Observance day. These monks who are opponents of monks should be spoken to thus by the monks: ‘Please will you ... (as in Kd.2.24.1, Kd.2.24.2) ... the Observance should not be carried out by an incomplete Order. If it should be (so) carried out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

AGREEMENT FOR THE MAD

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Gather together, monks, there is business for the Order.”⁶ When he had spoken thus a certain monk spoke thus to the Lord: “There is, Lord, the mad monk Gagga⁷; he has not come.” He said: “There are, monks, these two (kinds of) madmen: there is the mad monk who now remembers the Observance, now does not remember it; who now remembers a (formal) act of the Order, now does not remember it. He is one who does not remember aright.⁸ (And there is the one) who

Vin.1.123

Kd.2.25.1

BD.4.163

¹ An occasion where monks address lay people with the honorific title *āyasmā*. ² *muhuttaṃ*, for a moment. ³ While outside an Order’s boundary a monk would not be a member of that Order, and so his absence or his failure to get his entire purity declared would not render that Order “incomplete”. ⁴ *dhutta*. See BD.1.234, n.1. ⁵ Cf. BD.1.49f. ⁶ *atthi saṅghassa karaṇīyaṃ*. ⁷ Cf. Vin.2.8off. ⁸ *eva*.

now comes for the Observance, now does not come for it, who now comes for a (formal) act of the Order, now does not come for it. He is one who does not come aright.

Kd.2.25.2

“In a case, monks, where this madman now remembers the Observance, now does not remember it ... now comes for a (formal) act of the Order, now does not come for it, I allow you, monks, to give the agreement for a madman¹ to such a madman.

Kd.2.25.3

And thus, monks, should it be given: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The mad monk Gagga now remembers the Observance, now does not remember it, now remembers a (formal) act of the Order, now does not remember it; he now comes for the Observance, now does not come for it; now comes for a (formal) act of the Order, now does not come for it. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should give the agreement for a madman to the mad monk Gagga, so that whether the monk Gagga² remembers the Observance or does not remember it, whether he remembers a (formal) act of the Order or does not remember it, whether he comes for the Observance or does not come for it, whether he comes for a (formal) act of the Order or does not come for it, the Order either with Gagga or without Gagga can carry out the Observance, can carry out a (formal) act of the Order. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The mad monk Gagga now remembers the Observance ... now comes for a (formal) act of the Order, now does not come for it. The Order is giving the agreement for a madman to the mad monk Gagga so that whether the monk Gagga remembers ... or does not come for it, the Order either with Gagga or without Gagga will carry out the Observance, will carry out a (formal) act of the Order. If the giving of the agreement for a madman to the mad monk Gagga so that whether he remembers ... or does not come for it, the Order either with Gagga or without Gagga will carry out the Observance, will carry out a (formal) act of the Order, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The agreement for a madman is given by the Order to the mad monk Gagga, so that whether he remembers ... or does not come for it, the Order either with Gagga or without Gagga

Kd.2.25.4

BD.4.164

¹ *ummattakasammuti*. ² “mad” omitted here in text.

will carry out the Observance, will carry out a (formal) act of the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent; thus do I understand this’.”

Vin.1.124

THE OBSERVANCE BY AN ORDER, ETC.

Now at that time four monks were staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that the Observance should be carried out, but we are (only) four persons.¹ Now how can the Observance be carried out by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to recite the Pātimokkha when there are four (of you).”

Kd.2.26.1

Now at that time three monks were staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is allowed by the Lord to recite the Pātimokkha when there are four (of us), but we are (only) three persons. Now how can the Observance be carried out by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to carry out the Observance by way of entire purity² when there are three (of you).³”

Kd.2.26.2

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out: These monks should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. Today is an Observance day, the fifteenth. If it seems right to the venerable ones, let us carry out the Observance with one another by way of entire purity’. A monk who is an elder, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to these monks: ‘I, your reverences,⁴ am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, your reverences, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, your reverences, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure’.

Kd.2.26.3

BD.4.165

“A newly ordained monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms

Kd.2.26.4

¹ See the scope of the powers of the “five (kinds of) Order” at [Vin.1.319](#).

² *pārisuddhiuposatham*. ³ See next two paragraphs. ⁴ *āvuso*. It is apparently assumed that there is one elder at least and one or two juniors, otherwise the elder would doubtless have addressed the others as *bhante*.

should speak thus to these monks: ‘I, honoured sirs,¹ am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, honoured sirs, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, honoured sirs, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure.’”

Kd.2.26.5

Now at that time two monks were staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is allowed by the Lord to recite the Pātimokkha when there are four (persons), to carry out the Observance by way of entire purity when there are three, but we are (only) two persons. Now how can the Observance be carried out by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to carry out the Observance by way of entire purity when there are two (of you).

Kd.2.26.6

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out: The monk who is an elder, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to the newly ordained monk: ‘I, your reverence, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, your reverence, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, your reverence, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure.’

Vin.1.125

Kd.2.26.7

BD.4.166

“The newly ordained monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to the monk who is an elder: ‘I, honoured sir, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, honoured sir, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure; I, honoured sir, am quite pure, understand that I am quite pure.’”

Kd.2.26.8

Now at that time one monk was staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to this monk: “It is allowed by the Lord to recite the Pātimokkha when there are four (persons), to carry out the Observance by way of entire purity when there are three, to carry out the Observance by way of entire purity when there are two, but I am alone. Now how can the Observance be carried out by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.2.26.9

¹ *bhante*, because it appears to be assumed that at least one elder was present.

“This is a case, monks, where one monk is staying in a certain residence on an Observance day. That monk, having swept that place to which monks return—an attendance hall or a pavilion or the root of a tree—having put out drinking water and water for washing, having made ready a seat, having made a light, should sit down. If other monks arrive, the Observance should be carried out together with them; if they do not arrive, it should be determined¹, ‘Today is an Observance day for me’. **If he should not (so) determine, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**

Kd.2.26.10

“**Monks, there where four monks are standing, the Pātimokkha should not be recited by three (persons), having conveyed the entire purity for one. If they should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Monks, there where three monks are staying, the Observance by way of entire purity should not be carried out by two, having conveyed the entire purity for one. If they should (so) carry it out, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Monks, there where two monks are staying, it should not be determined upon by one having conveyed the entire purity for the other. If he should (so) determine, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING AMENDS FOR OFFENCES

Now at that time a certain monk came to have fallen into an offence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to this monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that the Observance should not be carried out by an offender,² but I have fallen into an offence. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have fallen into an offence on an Observance day. Monks, that monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I, your reverence, have fallen into such and such an offence, I confess³ it’. It should be said by him⁴: ‘Do you see it?’ ‘Yes, I see it’. ‘You should be restrained in the future’.

Kd.2.27.1

BD.4.167

Vin.1.126

Kd.2.27.2

¹ *adhiṭṭhātabbāṃ*; see [BD.1.128, n.3](#). ² See [Kd.19.2](#). ³ *paṭidesemi*. ⁴ I.e. by the monk whom the offender approached.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk becomes doubtful of an offence on an Observance day. Monks, that monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe ... having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I, your reverence, am doubtful as to such and such an offence. When I come to be without doubt, then will I make amends for that offence’. When he has spoken thus, the Observance may be carried out, the Pātimokkha may be heard, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Observance from such a cause.”

Kd.2.27.3

Now at that time the group of six monks confessed¹ a collective² offence. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a collective offence should not be confessed. Whoever should confess it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**” At that time the group of six monks acknowledged a collective offence. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a collective offence should not be acknowledged. Whoever should acknowledge (such), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

PROCEDURE FOR AN OFFENCE WITHOUT MAKING OBSTACLE

Kd.2.27.4

BD.4.168

Now at that time a certain monk remembered an offence while the Pātimokkha was being recited. Then it occurred to this monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that the Observance should not be carried out by an offender, and I have fallen into an offence. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where a monk remembers an offence while the Pātimokkha is being recited. Monks, this monk should speak thus to the monk next to him: ‘I, your reverence, have fallen into such and such an offence. Having removed from here I will make amends for that offence’. When he has spoken thus, the Observance may be carried out, the Pātimokkha may be heard, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Observance from such a cause.”

Kd.2.27.5

¹ *desenti*. ² *sabhāgā*, shared in by them all, but whether acting together or singly is not clear. Vin-a.1064 instances eating at the wrong time or eating what has not been left over.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk becomes doubtful as to an offence while the Pātimokkha is being recited. Monks, this monk should speak thus to the monk next to him: ‘I, your reverence, am doubtful as to such and such an offence. When I come to be without doubt, then will I make amends for that offence’. When he has spoken thus, the Observance may be carried out, the Pātimokkha may be heard, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Observance from such a cause.”

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING AMENDS FOR A SHARED OFFENCE

Now at that time the whole Order in a certain residence came to have fallen into a collective offence on an Observance day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that a collective offence should not be confessed, that a collective offence should not be acknowledged, but this whole Order has fallen into a collective offence. Now what line or conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence the whole Order comes to have fallen into a collective offence on an Observance day. Monks, one monk should immediately be sent to a neighbouring residence by these monks, with the words: ‘Go along, your reverence, and come back having made amends for that offence, and we will make amends for the offence in your presence’.

Kd.2.27.6

Vin.1.127

“If they thus manage this, it is good. If they do not manage it, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This whole Order has fallen into a collective offence. When it shall see another monk, a pure one, not an offender, then it shall make amends for that offence in his presence’. When he has spoken thus, the Observance may be carried out, the Pātimokkha may be heard, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Observance from such a cause.

Kd.2.27.7

BD.4.169

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence the whole Order comes to be doubtful about a collective offence on an Observance day. The

Kd.2.27.8

Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This whole Order is doubtful about a collective offence. When it comes to be without doubt, then will it make amends for that offence’. When he has spoken thus, the Observance may be carried out, the Pātimokkha may be heard, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Observance from such a cause.

Kd.2.27.9

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence the Order, entered on the rains, has fallen into a collective offence. Monks, one monk should immediately be sent to a neighbouring residence by these monks with the words ... (as in Kd.2.27.6, Kd.2.27.7) ... If they do not manage it, one monk should be sent away for seven days, with the words: ‘Go along, your reverence, and come back having made amends for that offence, and we will make amends for that offence in your presence’.”

Kd.2.27.10

Now at that time in a certain residence the whole Order came to have fallen into a collective offence. It did not know the name or the class¹ of that offence. A certain monk came there; he had heard much, he was one to whom the tradition had been handed down²; he was an expert on *dhamma*, an expert on discipline, an expert on the summaries; he was wise, experienced, clever; he was conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training.³ A certain monk approached that monk; having approached, he spoke thus to him: “What kind of an offence does he fall into, your reverence, who does such and such a thing?”

Kd.2.27.11

BD.4.170

He spoke thus: “Whoever does such and such a thing, your reverence, falls into this kind of offence. This is the kind of offence that you, your reverence, have fallen into; make amends for this offence.” He spoke thus: “I, your reverence, have not fallen into this offence altogether alone; this whole Order has fallen into this offence.” He spoke thus: “What has it to do with you, your reverence, whether another has fallen or has not fallen? Please do you, your reverence, remove⁴ your own offence.”

Vin.1.128

Kd.2.27.12

Then that monk, having at that monk’s bidding made amends for that offence, approached those monks; having approached them, he spoke thus to those monks: “It is said, your reverences, that whoever does such and

¹ *gotta*. ² Cf. above, BD.4.157. ³ Cf. above, BD.4.157. ⁴ *vuṭṭhaha*.

such a thing falls into this kind of offence. This is the kind of offence that you, your reverences, have fallen into; make amends for this offence.” But these monks did not want to make amends for that offence at that monk’s bidding. They told this matter to the lord. He said:

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence the whole Order comes to have fallen into a collective offence. It does not know the name or the class of that offence. A certain monk comes there; he has heard much ... desirous of training. A certain monk approaches that monk; having approached, he speaks thus to that monk: ‘What land of offence does he fall into, your reverence, who does such and such a thing?’

Kd.2.27.13

“He speaks thus: ‘Whoever does such and such a thing, your reverence, falls into this kind of offence. This is the kind of offence that you, your reverence, have fallen into; make amends for this offence’. He speaks thus: ‘I, your reverence, have not fallen into this offence altogether alone; this whole Order has fallen into this offence’. He speaks thus: ‘What has it to do with you, your reverence, whether another has fallen or has not fallen? Please do you, your reverence, remove your own offence.’

Kd.2.27.14

“Then if that monk, having at that monk’s bidding made amends for that offence, approaches those monks and having approached them speaks thus to those monks: ‘It is said, your reverence, that whoever does such and such a thing falls into this kind of offence. This is the kind of offence that you, your reverences, have fallen into; make amends for this offence’; and if, monks, these monks should make amends for that offence at that monk’s bidding, that is good. But if they should not make amends for it, then, monks, these monks need not be spoken to by that monk if he is not willing¹.”

Kd.2.27.15

Told is the Portion for Repeating on Codanāvattu

¹ *akāmā*, cf. Vin.3.186 (BD.1.328). If the offending monks do not wish to make amends, the other monk need not speak to them—perhaps meaning that he need not speak to them in the words given at the end of Kd.2.27.14 above. But cf. AN.ii.113, “For this is destruction ... where a Truthfinder or his fellow Brahma-farers deem that he is one who should not be spoken to”.

FIFTY CASES OF NO OFFENCE

Now at that time in a certain residence several resident monks, four or more, collected together on an Observance day. They did not know that there were other resident monks who had not arrived. Thinking¹ of the rule,² thinking of discipline, thinking that they were complete, they carried out the Observance, they recited the Pātimokkha while they were incomplete. While the Pātimokkha was being recited by them, other resident monks, a larger number,³ arrived. They told this matter to the Lord.

Vin.1.129

Kd.2.28.2

He said: “This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence ... (as in [Kd.2.28.1](#) above) ... recite the Pātimokkha while they are incomplete. While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, the Pātimokkha should be recited again by these monks,⁴ and there is no offence for the reciters.

Kd.2.28.3

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence ... (as in [Kd.2.28.2](#) above) ... While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a like number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the rest should be heard, and there is no offence for the reciters.

BD.4.172

“This is a case, monks, ... (as in [Kd.2.28.2](#) above) ... While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a smaller number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the rest should be heard, and there is no offence for the reciters.

Kd.2.28.4

“This is a case, monks, ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, the Pātimokkha may be recited again by these monks, and there is no offence for the reciters.

“This is a case, monks, ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them, other resident monks, a like number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the entire purity should be announced in their presence,⁵

¹ *saññīno*. ² *dhamma*, i.e. the rules that Observance should be carried out by a complete assembly. ³ I.e. than those already assembled. ⁴ Presumably meaning by those already assembled together, and who have already recited part of it; cf. [Kd.2.29.1](#) below, where they incur an offence of wrong-doing for reciting it when they know that they are incomplete.

⁵ This means that the monks arriving late must announce their entire purity to the ones already assembled and who had recited the Pātimokkha.

and there is no offence for the reciters.

“This is a case, monks, ... a smaller number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the entire purity should be announced in their presence, and there is no offence for the reciters.

Kd.2.28.5

“This is a case, monks, ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them and the assembly has not risen, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, the Pātimokkha may be recited again by those monks, and there is no offence for the reciters.

“This is a case, monks ... a like number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the entire purity should be announced in their presence, and there is no offence for the reciters.

Vin.1.130

“This is a case, monks, ... a smaller number, arrive. What has been recited is duly recited, the entire purity should be announced in their presence, and there is no offence for the reciters.

Kd.2.28.6

“This is a case, monks, ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them and part of the assembly has risen, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive ... (as in [Kd.2.28.5](#) above) ... a like number ... a smaller number ...

Kd.2.28.7

“This is a case, monks, ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them and the whole assembly has risen, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive ... (as in [Kd.2.28.6](#) above) ... a like number ... a smaller number ...

BD.4.173

Told are the Fifteen Cases in which there is No Offence

FIFTY CASES OF PERCEIVING IT IS A GROUP OR NOT A GROUP

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence several resident monks, four or more, collect together on an Observance day. They know that there are other resident monks who have not arrived. Thinking of the rule, thinking of discipline, thinking that they are incomplete, they carry out the Observance and recite the Pātimokkha while they are incomplete. While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a larger

Kd.2.29.1

number, arrive. **Monks, the Pātimokkha should be recited again by those monks, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

Kd.2.29.2

“This is a case, monks, ... (as in **Kd.2.29.1**) ... a like number, arrive. **What has been recited is duly recited, the rest should be heard, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

This is a case, monks (as in **Kd.2.29.1**) ... a smaller number, arrive. **What has been recited is duly recited, the rest should be heard, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

Kd.2.29.3

“This is a case, monks ... When the Pātimokkha has just been recited by them and the assembly has not risen ... part of the assembly has risen ... the whole assembly has risen, and other resident monks, a larger number ... a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. **What has been recited is duly recited, the entire purity should be announced in their presence, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

Vin.1.131

Told are the Fifteen Cases on thinking that (an Assembly) is incomplete when it is incomplete

FIFTY CASES OF DOUBT

Kd.2.30.1

“This is a case, monks ... They know that there are other resident monks who have not arrived. Thinking: ‘Now, is it allowable for us to carry out the Observance or is it not allowable?’ they carry out the Observance and recite the Pātimokkha (although) they are in doubt. While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. **Monks, the Pātimokkha should be recited again by those monks ... (cf. **Kd.2.29.2, Kd.2.29.3**) ... an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

BD.4.174

Kd.2.30.2

“This is a case, monks, ... (cf. **Kd.2.29.2, Kd.2.29.3**) ... **an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

Told are the Fifteen Cases on being in Doubt

FIFTY CASES OF ACTING BADLY

Kd.2.31.1

“This is a case, monks, ... They know that there are other resident monks who have not arrived. Thinking: ‘Indeed, it is allowable for us to carry out the Observance, it is not unallowable for us’, they, acting badly,¹ carry out the Observance and recite the Pātimokkha. While the Pātimokkha is being recited by them, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. **Monks, the Pātimokkha should be recited again by these monks, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.**

Kd.2.31.2

“This is a case, monks, ... (cf. Kd.2.29.2, Kd.2.29.3) ... an offence of wrong-doing for the reciters.

Told are the Fifteen Cases on Acting Badly

FIFTY CASES OF AIMING AT SCHISM

“This is a case, monks, ... They know that there are other resident monks who have not arrived. Saying, ‘These are perishing, these are being destroyed, what good are these to you?’ they carry out the Observance and recite the Pātimokkha aiming at a schism, ... (as in Kd.2.29.2, Kd.2.29.3; instead of offence of wrong-doing read grave offence.)

Kd.2.32.1

Kd.2.32.2

Vin.1.132

Told are the Fifteen Cases on Aiming at a Schism

Told are the Seventy-five Cases.²

ABBREVIATED REPETITIONS ON ENTERING A BOUNDARY

“This is a case, monks, ... They know that other resident monks are entering within the boundary. They know that other resident monks have entered within the boundary. They see other resident resident monks entering within the boundary. They see other resident monks entered within the boundary. They hear that other resident monks are entering within the

¹ *kukkucapakatā*, explained at Vin-a.1065 as overcome, doing as they wished. ² Five times fifteen cases, in Kd.2.28-Kd.2.32.

boundary. They hear that other resident monks have entered within the boundary.

BD.4.175

“From a hundred and seventy-five triads referring to resident (monks) with resident (monks); to incoming (monks) with resident (monks); to resident (monks) with incoming (monks); to incoming (monks) with incoming (monks), there come to be seven hundred triads by means of (these) sets.¹

Kd.2.34.1

“This is a case, monks, where the fourteenth is (the Observance day) for resident monks, the fifteenth for incoming ones. If the resident ones are larger in number, the incoming ones should accommodate themselves to the resident ones. If they are equal in number, the incoming ones should accommodate themselves to the resident ones. If the incoming ones are larger in number, the resident ones should accommodate themselves to the incoming ones.

Kd.2.34.2

“This is a case, monks, where the fifteenth is (the Observance day) for resident monks, the fourteenth for incoming ones. If the resident ones are larger in number, the incoming ones should accommodate themselves to the resident ones. If ... (as in Kd.2.34.1 above) ...

Kd.2.34.3

“This is a case, monks, where the first day of a lunar fortnight² is (the Observance day) for resident monks, the fifteenth for incoming ones. If the resident ones are larger in number, the resident ones, if they are not willing, need not hold a meeting³ with the incoming ones. The Observance should be carried out by the incoming ones having gone outside the boundary. If they are equal in number, the resident ones, if they are not willing, need not hold a meeting with the incoming ones. The Observance should be carried out by the incoming ones having gone outside the boundary. If the incoming ones are larger in number, the resident ones should hold a meeting with the incoming ones or they should go outside the boundary.

Kd.2.34.4

“This is a case, monks, where the fifteenth is (the Observance day) for resident monks, the first day of the lunar fortnight for incoming ones. If the resident ones are larger in number, the incoming ones should hold a

Vin.1.133

BD.4.176

¹ *peyyālamukhena*, as at Vism.46. *Peṅyāla* = *pariyāya*, and is arrangement, order, disposition. Each “set” refers to each pair (resident with resident ... incoming with incoming) of triads in all its permutations and combinations: they know, they see, they hear, and they do not know, see and hear. ² *pāṭipada*, cf. BD.2.314, n.1. ³ *na dātābbā sāmaggī*, need not give completion to.

meeting with the resident ones or they should go outside the boundary. If they are equal in number, the incoming ones should hold a meeting with the resident ones or they should go outside the boundary. If the incoming ones are larger in number, the incoming ones, if they are not willing, need not hold a meeting with the resident ones. The Observance should be carried out by the resident ones having gone outside the boundary.

SEEING CHARACTERISTICS, ETC.

“This is a case, monks, where incoming monks see signs of residence of resident monks, features of residence, marks of residence, indications of residence, carefully prepared couches and chairs, mattresses and squatting mats, carefully arranged water for drinking and water for washing, carefully swept cells; but having seen (these signs) they come to be doubtful, thinking: ‘Now are there resident monks, or are there not?’

Kd.2.34.5

“If these, being doubtful, do not search and, not having searched, carry out the Observance, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If these, being doubtful, search and having searched do not see (any monks), and if not having seen (any) they carry out the Observance, there is no offence. If these, being doubtful, search and having searched see (some monks), and if having seen (them) they carry out the Observance together, there is no offence. If these, being doubtful, search and having searched see (some monks), and if having seen (them) they carry out the Observance apart, there is an offence of wrong-doing. **If these, being doubtful, search and having searched see (some monks), and if having seen (them) they say: ‘You are perishing, you are being destroyed, what is the good of these to you?’¹ and carry out the Observance aiming at a schism, there is a grave offence.**

Kd.2.34.6

“This is a case, monks, where incoming monks hear signs of residence of resident monks, features of residence, marks of residence, indications of residence, the sound of footsteps as they are pacing up and down, the sound of studying, the sound of coughing, the sound of sneezing; but having heard they come to be doubtful, thinking: ‘Now are there resident monks or are

Kd.2.34.7

BD.4.177

¹ As in **BD.2.32** above.

there not?' **If these, being doubtful, do not search ... (=Kd.2.34.6) ... there is a grave offence.**

Kd.2.34.8

“This is a case, monks, where resident monks see signs of incoming of incoming monks, features of incoming, marks of incoming, indications of incoming, unknown bowls, unknown robes, unknown pieces of cloth to sit upon, water for washing the feet sprinkled about; but having seen (these signs), they come to be doubtful, thinking: ‘Now are there incoming monks or are there not?’ **If these, being doubtful, do not search ... (=Kd.2.34.6) ... there is a grave offence.**

Kd.2.34.9

“This is a case, monks, where resident monks hear signs of incoming of incoming monks, features of incoming, marks of incoming, indications of incoming, the sound of footsteps as they are arriving, the sound of sandals tapping, the sound of coughing, the sound of sneezing; but having heard they come to be doubtful, thinking: ‘Now are there incoming monks or are there not?’ **If these, being doubtful, do not search ... (=Kd.2.34.6) ... there is a grave offence.**

Vin.1.134

PERFORMING OBSERVANCE WITH THOSE OF A DIFFERENT COMMUNION, ETC.

Kd.2.34.10

“This is a case, monks, where incoming monks see resident monks belonging to a different communion. They get the (wrong) view that they belong to the same communion; having got the (wrong) view that they belong to the same communion, if they do not ask, and not having asked carry out the Observance together, there is no offence. **If they ask, and having asked pay no attention,¹ and having paid no attention carry out the Observance together, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** If they ask, and having asked pay no attention, and having paid no attention carry out the Observance apart, there is no offence.

Kd.2.34.11

¹ *nābhivitaranti*. Vin-a.1066 says “they are not able to neglect the status of a differing communion; the meaning is: they do not make them give up that wrong view”. Cf. [Vin.3.73](#) where *abhivitaritvā* appears to mean “having committed”. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives for *abhivitarati* “to pay heed, to observe”, *Critical Pali Dictionary* merely says “to come to an end”.

“This is a case, monks, where incoming monks see resident monks belonging to the same communion. They get the (wrong) view that they belong to a different communion. **Having got the (wrong) view that they belong to a different communion, if they do not ask, and not having asked carry out the Observance together, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** **If they ask, and having asked pay attention, and having paid attention carry out the Observance apart, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** If they ask, and having asked pay attention, and having paid attention carry out the Observance together, there is no offence.

BD.4.178

“This is a case, monks, where resident monks see incoming monks belonging to a different communion. They get the (wrong) view that they belong to the same communion ... (=Kd.2.34.10) ... there is no offence.

Kd.2.34.12

“This is a case, monks, where resident monks see incoming monks belonging to the same communion. They get the (wrong) view that they belong to a different communion ... (=Kd.2.34.11) ... there is no offence.

Kd.2.34.13

PORTION ON SHOULD NOT GO

“Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks except with an Order,¹ except there be a danger.² Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from a residence where there are monks to what is not a residence³ where there are no monks except with an Order, except there be a danger. Monks, you should not go ... either to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks except with an Order, except there be a danger.

Kd.2.35.1

“Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks except ... Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from what is not a residence where, there are monks to what is not a residence where there are no monks except ... Monks, you should not go ... from what is not

Kd.2.35.2

¹ Unless there go sufficient monks to form an Order. Cf. 35 with Kd.12.1.3, Kd.12.1.4. ² See above, Kd.2.15.4, where ten “dangers” are enumerated. ³ Vin-a.1066 says to a place where a hall and so forth are undergoing repairs.

a residence where there are monks either to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with an Order, except there be a danger.

Kd.2.35.3

“Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from either a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks except with an Order, except there be a danger. Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are no monks to what is not a residence where there are no monks except ... a danger. Monks, you should not go ... either from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are no monks either to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except ... a danger.

Vin.1.135

Kd.2.35.4

“Monks, you should not go on an Observance day from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to a different communion, except with an Order, except there be a danger. Monks, you should not go ... from a residence where there are monks to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to a different communion ... a danger. Monks, you should not go ... from a residence where there are monks either to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks ... (cf. [Kd.2.35.1](#), [Kd.2.35.2](#), [Kd.2.35.3](#)) ... Monks, you should not go ... either from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks either to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there belong to a different communion, except with an Order, except there be a danger.

PORTION ON SHOULD GO

Kd.2.35.5

“Monks, you may go on an Observance day from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks should the monks there belong to the same communion and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day’. Monks, you may go on an Observance day from a residence where there are monks to what is not a residence where there are monks should the monks there belong to the same communion, and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day’ ... to a residence or to what is not a residence where

there are monks ... from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks ... to what is not a residence where there are monks ... to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks ... Monks, you may go on an Observance day from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks ... to what is not a residence where there are monks ... to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks should the monks there belong to the same communion and if he knows, 'I am able to arrive this very day'.

BD.4.180

SEEING A BLAMEWORTHY PERSON

“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly (of monks) before a nun. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly (of monks) before a probationer ... a novice ... a woman novice ... one who has disavowed the training ... one who has committed an extreme offence. Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.2.36.1

“The Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly before one suspended for not seeing an offence. Whoever should (so) recite it should be dealt with according to the rule.¹ The Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly before one suspended for not making amends for an offence ... before one suspended for not giving up a wrong view. Whoever should (so) recite it should be dealt with according to the rule.²

Kd.2.36.2

“The Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly before a eunuch.³ Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. The Pātimokkha should not be recited in a seated assembly before one living in communion as it were by theft ... before one who has gone over to a sect ... before an animal ... before a matricide ... before a parricide ... before a slayer of one perfected ... before a seducer of a nun ... before a schismatic ... before a shedder of (a Truth-finder's) blood

Kd.2.36.3

Vin.1.136

¹ Probably referring to Bu-Pc.69. See BD.3.28, n.4. ² Probably referring to Bu-Pc.69. See BD.3.28, n.4. ³ As in Kd.2.22.3 above.

... before a hermaphrodite.¹ Whoever should (so) recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.2.36.4

“Monks, Observance should not be carried out by declaring the entire purity of one on probation² unless the assembly has not risen. And, monks, Observance should not be carried out on a non-Observance day unless the Order be unanimous”³

The Third Portion for Repeating in the Section on Observance

IN THIS SECTION ARE EIGHTY-SIX ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

Other sects and Bimbisāra,
 they assembled together in silence,
 on *dhamma*, in private,
 on the Pātimokkha, daily, thenceforth once,
 According to assembly, for all together,
 being all together, and Maddakucchi,
 a boundary, extensive, about a river,
 successive, two, and small ones,
 Newly ordained (monks), and then in Rājagaha,
 a boundary (as a place where a monk)
 is not away from (his robes),
 in agreeing first on the boundary,
 afterwards on abolishing the boundary,
 When not agreed upon a village boundary,
 the throwing of water in river,
 sea, lake, they combined,
 and likewise they placed within,
 How many? (formal) acts, recital,
 savages, and if there is not,
dhamma, discipline, they threatened,
 again a threat to discipline,
 Reproof, if leave is given,
 a protest against what is not legally valid,
 more than four or five, opinion, intentionally,
 and if he would exert himself,
 With laymen, unbidden, in Codanā (vatthu),
 he did not know,
 several did not know, immediately,
 and if he should not go,
 Which? how many? and to announce at a distance,

¹ As in Kd.2.22.3 above. ² *pārivāsika*. Rules for monks under probation detailed in Kd.12, Kd.13. ³ See Kd.10.5.14.

he did not remember,
 Soiled, a seat, a light, distant parts,
 another who has heard much,
 Immediately, Observance day and the rains,
 and a (formal) act of entire purity, relations,
 Gagga, four and three, two and one,
 an offence, collective (offence), he remembered,
 The whole Order, doubtful, they did not know,
 one who has heard much,
 a larger, a like, a smaller (number),
 and when the assembly has not risen,
 Some have risen, all,
 and they know, they are doubtful,
 Those (acting) badly say, 'Indeed it is allowable',
 knowing, seeing, and they hear,
 Let them come if (a monk) is residing,
 the four (sets of) fifteen (cases) again,
 the first day of a fortnight (and) the fifteenth,
 both communions (by) mark,
 One on probation (and) a non-Observance day,
 unless the Order be unanimous.
 These partitioned keys are needed
 for distinguishing the items.

BD.4.182

Vin.1.137

3. RAINS (VASSA)

ALLOWANCE TO ENTER THE RAINS

Kd.3.1.1

BD.4.183

At one time the awakened one, the Lord was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time (the use of) a rains-residence for monks had not come to be laid down by the Lord. So these monks¹ walked on tour during the cold weather and the hot weather and the rains.

Kd.3.1.2

People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, walk on tour during the cold weather and the hot weather and the rains, trampling down the crops and grasses, injuring life that is one-facultied and bringing many small creatures to destruction²? Shall it be that those members of other sects, whose rules are badly kept, cling to and prepare a rains-residence, shall it be that these birds, having made their nests in the tree-tops, cling to and prepare a rains-residence,³ while these recluses, sons of the Sakyans walk on a tour during the cold weather and the hot weather and the rains, trampling down the crops and grasses, injuring life that is one-facultied and bringing many small creatures to destruction?"

Kd.3.1.3

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: "I allow you, monks, to enter upon the rains."⁴

Kd.3.2.1

¹ *te'dha bhikkhū*. Vin-a.1067 says that *idha* is only a conjunction; this is borne out by the several variant readings given at Vin.1.376. ² Cf. Vin.4.296 (BD.3.320) where it is made a *pācittiya* for nuns to walk on tour during the rains. ³ Quoted AN-a.ii.97. ⁴ *vassarū upaganturū*.

Then it occurred to these monks: “Now, when should the rains be entered upon?” They told this matter to the Lord.

BD.4.184

He said: “I allow you, monks, to enter upon the rains in the rainy season¹.”

Kd.3.2.2

Then it occurred to these monks: “Now, how many (periods) are there for beginning the rains²?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these two (periods) for beginning the rains: the earlier and the later.³ The earlier may be entered upon the day after (the full moon of) Āsāḷhī, the later may be entered upon a month after (the full moon of) Āsāḷhī.⁴ These, monks, are the two (periods) for beginning the rains.”

Vin.1.138

ON TOUR IN THE RAINS, ETC.

Now at that time the group of six monks, having entered upon the rains, walked on tour during the rains. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, walk on tour during the cold weather and the hot weather and the rains, trampling down ... (as in [Kd.3.1.2](#)) ... bringing many small creatures to destruction?”

Kd.3.3.1

Kd.3.3.2

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, having entered upon the rains, walk on tour during the rains?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: **“Monks, having entered upon the rains, but not having kept either the first three months or the last three months, one should not set out on tour. Whoever should (thus) set out, there is an offence of wrongdoing.”**

Kd.3.4.1

¹ *vassāna*. Cf. [Vin.4.74](#), [Vin.4.100](#), [Vin.4.286](#). *Vassāna*, the rainy season, lasts for four months. *Vassa*, as meaning the rains-retreat for monks, had to be kept for three out of the four months of the rainy season. ² *vassupanāyikā*. See [Gs.i.47](#), n.1, and *Vinaya Texts* i.299, n.1.

³ Cf. [AN.i.51](#). [AN-a.ii.97](#) says that this was laid down twenty years after the lord had attained enlightenment. ⁴ These are two out of the three dates for allotting lodgings, [Vin.2.167](#).

Now at that time the group of six monks did not want to enter upon the rains. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one should not enter upon the rains. Whoever should not enter upon (them), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.3.4.2
BD.4.185

Now at that time the group of six monks, on a day for beginning the rains, not desiring to enter upon the rains, intentionally passed a residence by.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, on a day for beginning the rains, a residence should not be intentionally passed by one who does not desire to enter upon the rains. Whoever should pass one by, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.3.4.3

Now at that time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, desiring to postpone the rains, sent a messenger to the monks, saying: “What if the masters could enter upon the rains at the next full-moon day?”² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to obey kings.”

ALLOWANCE FOR SEVEN DAYS BUSINESS

Vin.1.139
Kd.3.5.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvattthī. Walking on tour, in due course he arrived at Sāvattthī. Then the Lord stayed there in Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time in the Kosala country a lay-follower, Udena,³ had had a dwelling-place built for an Order.⁴ He sent a messenger to monks, saying: “Let the revered sirs come; I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks.”

Kd.3.5.2

Monks spoke thus: “It is laid down by the Lord, sir, that one should not set out on tour, having entered upon the rains and not having kept the first three months or the last three months. Let Udena, the lay-follower, wait

¹ *āvāsaṃ atikkamanti*. ² *juṇhe*, explained at Vin-a.1068 as *māse*, month, and would therefore mean at the next period (a month later) for beginning the rains-retreat. This seems a better interpretation of *juṇhe* here than does the *Pali-English Dictionary*’s “bright fortnight of the month”. Cf. *kāḷe* and *juṇhe* below, BD.4.231. ³ Heard of nowhere but here I think.

⁴ Cf. Vin.4.287 (BD.3.302), where “a certain lay follower” did likewise and wanted to give robe-material to both the Orders.

until the monks have kept the rains; when they have finished the rains they will go. But if there is something urgent to be done,¹ let him establish² the dwelling-place in the presence of resident monks who are already there.³”

Kd.3.5.3
BD.4.186

The lay-follower, Udena, ... spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs, when sent for by me, not come, for I am a benefactor, a builder,⁴ a supporter of the Order?” Monks heard the lay-follower, Udena, as he ... spread it about Then these monks told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.3.5.4

Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, to go if you are sent for by seven (classes of people), and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for: by a monk, a nun, a probationer, a novice, a woman novice, a lay-follower, a woman lay-follower. I allow you, monks, to go if you are sent for by these (seven classes of people) and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.5

This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place for an Order comes to have been built by a lay-follower. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘Let the revered sirs come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks you should go, monks’, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.6

“This is a case, monks, where a curved house⁵ for an Order comes to have been built by a lay-follower ... a long house⁶ ... a mansion⁷ ... a cave⁸ ... a cell⁹ ... a porch ... an attendance hall¹⁰ ... a fire-hall ... a hut for what is allowable¹¹ ... a privy ... a place for pacing up and down in¹² ... a hall in the place for pacing up and down in¹³ ... a well ... a hall at the well ... a bathroom ... a hall in the bathroom ... a lotus pond ... a shed ... a monastery¹⁴ ... a site for a

Vin.1.140

¹ *accāyika karaṇīya*, see [BD.2.151, n.6](#) for explanation and references. ² *paṭiṭṭhāpetu*. At [Vin.4.287](#) there was a “festival (*maha*) for the dwelling-place”, but *paṭiṭṭhāpeti* probably does not imply this. ³ *tatth’eva*. ⁴ *kāraka*, also a worker and a doer of good works. ⁵ Cf. above, [BD.4.75](#). ⁶ Cf. above, [BD.4.75](#). ⁷ Cf. above, [BD.4.75](#). ⁸ Cf. above, [BD.4.75](#). ⁹ This occurs again at [Vin.2.159](#) with all except the last two of the following buildings. ¹⁰ *upaṭṭhānasāla*. See [BD.2.194, n.4](#). ¹¹ *kappiyakuṭi*. Cf. same word at [Vin.2.159](#), and see *kappiyabhūmi* at [Vin.1.239](#) (below, [BD.4.328](#).) Note that this is replaced in [Kd.3.5.9](#) by “kitchen”. ¹² *caṅkama*, monk’s walk. See [Kd.15.14.2, Kd.15.14.3](#). ¹³ *caṅkamanasāla*. ¹⁴ *ārāma*, translated “park” in [Kd.3.5.9](#) below. See [BD.2.2, n.2](#).

monastery comes to have been built by a lay-follower. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying:

BD.4.187

‘Let the revered sirs come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks’, you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.7

“This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place ... a curved house ... a long house ... a site for a monastery (=Kd.3.5.6) ... for several monks, ... for one monk comes to have been built by a lay-follower ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.8

“This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place ... a site for a monastery¹ for an Order of nuns, ... for several nuns ... for one nun ... for several probationers ... for one probationer ... for several novices ... for one novice ... for several women novices ... for one woman novice comes to have been built by a lay-follower. If he should send a messenger to monks² saying: ‘Let the revered sirs come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.9

“This is a case, monks, where a dwelling comes to have been built by a lay-follower for himself ... a sleeping-room ... a stable³ ... a watch-tower⁴ ... a quadrangular building⁵ ... a shop ... a hall for a shop ... a long house ... a mansion ... a cave ... a cell ... a porch ... an attend-ance ball ... a fire hall ... a kitchen⁶ ... a privy ... a place for pacing up and down in ... a hall in the place for pacing up and down in ... a well ... a hall at the well ... a bathroom ... a hall in the bathroom ... a lotus pond ... a shed ... a park⁷ ...

BD.4.188

¹ Same as the edifices given in Kd.3.5.6, except for the privy, bathroom and hall in a bathroom, the two former of which nuns are not to use (Vin.2.280). Editors of *Vinaya Texts* i.304, n.1 say that they think the two cases referring to women novices should be excepted.

² Apparently monks had to accept gifts on behalf of the nuns. ³ *uddosita*. See BD.2.16, n.2, BD.3.177, n.2. ⁴ *aṭṭa*, see BD.2.16, n.3. Mentioned also, with the next (*māla*) as a “lodging” at DN-a.209. ⁵ *māla*, see BD.2.16, n.4. ⁶ *rasavatī*, “possessing flavours”. Very likely the word occurs nowhere but here. Vin-a.1068 calls it *bhattageha*, food-house, perhaps “larder”. It replaces the *kappiyakuṭi*, hut for what is allowable, which in Kd.3.5.6 a lay follower may build for an Order. ⁷ *ārāma*, also meaning a monastery.

a site for a park comes to have been built by a lay-follower for himself, or there comes to be his son's marriage, or there comes to be his daughter's marriage, or he becomes ill, or he speaks a well known discourse.¹ If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Let the revered sirs come, they will master this discourse before this discourse falls into oblivion'; or if he has some business, something to be done, and should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Let the revered sirs come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks', you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Vin.1.141

Kd.3.5.10

"This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place for an Order comes to have been built by a woman lay-follower. If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Let the revered sirs come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks', you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.11

"This is a case, monks, where a curved house for an Order comes to have been built by a woman lay-follower ... (=Kd.3.5.6) ... a site for a monastery comes to have been built for an Order by a woman lay-follower. If she should send a messenger ... (=Kd.3.5.10) ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.12

"This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place ... a site for a monastery for several monks ... for one monk ... for an Order of nuns ... for several nuns ... for one nun ... for several probationers ... for one probationer ... for several novices ... for one novice ... for several women novices ... for one woman novice comes to have been built by a woman lay-follower. If she should send a messenger ... (=Kd.3.5.8) ... The return should be made in seven days.

"This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place comes to have been built by a woman lay-follower for herself ... (=Kd.3.5.9) ... or if she comes to be ill, or if she speaks a well known discourse. If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Let the masters come, and they will master this discourse before this discourse falls into oblivion or if she has some business, something to

BD.4.189

¹ *suttanta*.

be done, and should send a messenger to monks, saying: “Let the masters come, I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.5.13

“This is a case, monks, where a dwelling-place ... (=Kd.3.5.8) ... a site for a monastery for an Order ... for several monks, ... for one monk ... for an Order of nuns ... for several nuns ... for one nun ... for several probationers ... for one probationer ... for several novices ... for one novice ... for several women novices ... for one woman novice ... for him- (her-) self is built by a monk ... a nun ... a probationer ... a novice ... a woman novice. If he (she) should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘Let the revered sirs (masters) come. I want to give a gift and to hear *dhamma* and to see the monks you should go, monks, if you are sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, but not if you are not sent for. The return should be made in seven days.’”

Vin.1.142

ALLOWANCE FOR FIVE EVEN WHEN NOT SENT FOR

Kd.3.6.1

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill. He sent a messenger to monks, saying: “I, now, am ill, let monks come, I want monks to come”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to go even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, to five (classes of people): to a monk, a nun, a probationer, a novice, a woman novice. I allow you, monks, to go to these five (classes of people) even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to be ill. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘I, now, am ill, let monks come, I want monks to come’, you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: ‘I will look about for a meal for the invalid, or I will look about for a meal for the one who is tending the invalid, or I will look about for medicine for the invalid, or I

BD.4.190

will ask (after) him¹, or I will tend him'. The return should be made in seven days.

"This is a case, monks, where dissatisfaction comes to have arisen in a monk. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Dissatisfaction has arisen in me, let monks come, I want monks to come you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will allay his dissatisfaction or get (someone) to allay it, or I will give him a talk on *dhamma*'.² The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.3

"This is a case, monks, where remorse comes to have arisen in a monk. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Remorse has arisen in me ... I want monks to come', you should go, monks, ... if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will dispel his remorse or get (someone) to dispel it, or I will give him a talk on *dhamma*'.³ The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.4

"This is a case, monks, where a wrong view comes to have arisen in a monk. If he should send ... if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will dissuade him from the wrong view or get (someone) to dissuade him, or I will give him a talk on *dhamma*'. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.5

Vin.1.143

"This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have committed an offence against an important rule and to deserve probation.⁴ If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'I have committed an offence against an important rule, I deserve probation, let monks come, I want monks to come', you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will make an effort for placing (him) on probation, or I will make a proclamation, or I will become one who completes a group'.⁵ The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.6

Kd.3.6.7

¹ *pucchāmi*, I think meaning to inquire after his health here (cf. "monks asking after ill ones", **BD.2.341**, **BD.2.399**, **BD.2.402**), and not to "ask him (questions referring to the *Dhamma*)", as at *Vinaya Texts* i.306, and which is more usually *paripucchati*. ² Cf. **Kd.1.25**, **Kd.1.20**, **Kd.1.21**; **Kd.12.1-3**. ³ Cf. **Kd.1.25**, **Kd.1.20**, **Kd.1.21**; **Kd.12.1-Kd.12.3**. ⁴ Cf. **Kd.1.25**, **Kd.1.20**, **Kd.1.21**; **Kd.12.1-Kd.12.3**. ⁵ For placing him on probation, for granting or giving it, *parivāsādāna*.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk deserves to be sent back to the beginning.¹ If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘I deserve to be sent back to the beginning, let monks come, I want monks to come you should go monks, even if not sent for, ... if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: ‘I will make an effort for sending (him) back to the beginning, or I will make a proclamation, or I will become one who completes a group’. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.8

“This is a case, monks, where a monk deserves *mānatta* (discipline)². If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘I desire *mānatta* (discipline), let monks come, I want monks to come’, you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: ‘I will make an effort for inflicting *mānatta* discipline (on him), or I will make a proclamation, or I will become one who completes a group’. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.9

“This is a case, monks, where a monk deserves rehabilitation.³ If he should send a messenger ... thinking: ‘I will make an effort for (his) rehabilitation, or I will make a proclamation, or I will become one who completes a group’. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.10

“This is a case, monks, where an Order becomes desirous of carrying out a (formal) act against a monk—either one of censure or one of guidance or one of banishment or one of reconciliation or one of suspension.⁴ If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘The Order desires to carry out a (formal) act against me, let monks come, I want monks to come’, you should go ... if the return can be made in seven days, thinking: ‘How then may the Order not carry out a (formal) act or may change it to something lighter?’ The return should be made in seven days.

Vin.1.144

BD.4.192

Kd.3.6.11

“Or a (formal) act comes to be carried out against him by the Order—either one of censure ... or one of suspension. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘The Order carried out a (formal) act against me ... I want monks to come’, you should go monks, ... thinking: ‘How then may he conduct himself properly, be subdued, mend his ways, (so that) the Order can revoke that (formal) act?’⁵ The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.12

¹ *mūlāya paṭikassanāraho*. Cf. Kd.1.25.21; and Vin.2.7, Vin.2.34, Vin.2.162, AN.i.99. ² Cf. Kd.1.25.21, Kd.12.5. ³ Cf. Kd.1.25.21; Kd.12.9. ⁴ Cf. Kd.1.25.22. ⁵ Cf. Kd.1.25.22.

“This is a case, monks, where a nun comes to be ill ... (=Kd.3.6.2.)
 ... where dissatisfaction comes to have arisen in a nun ... (=Kd.3.6.3.)
 ... where remorse comes to have arisen in a nun ... (=Kd.3.6.4.)
 ... where a wrong view comes to have arisen in a nun ... (=Kd.3.6.5.)
 ... where a nun comes to have committed an offence against an important rule and to deserve *mānatta* (discipline).¹ If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘I have committed an offence against an important rule and deserve *mānatta* (discipline), let the masters come, I want the masters to come’, you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: ‘I will make an effort for inflicting *mānatta* discipline) on her.’² The return should be made in seven days.

“This is a case, monks, where a nun deserves to be sent back to the beginning. If she should send a messenger ... (=Kd.3.6.7) ... thinking: ‘I will make an effort for sending (her) back to the beginning’. The return should be made in seven days.

“This is a case, monks, where a nun deserves rehabilitation (=Kd.3.6.9) ... thinking: ‘I will make an effort for (her) rehabilitation’. The return should be made in seven days.

“This is a case, monks, where an Order becomes desirous of carrying out a (formal) act against a nun, either one of censure ... or one of suspension ... (=Kd.3.6.10) ... The return should be made in seven days.

“Or a (formal) act comes to be carried out against her by an Order—either one of censure ... or one of suspension ... (=Kd.3.6.11) ... The return should be made in seven days.

“This is a case, monks, where a probationer comes to be ill ... (cf. Kd.3.6.2) ... in seven days.

“This is a case, monks where dissatisfaction comes to have arisen in a probationer ... where remorse comes to have arisen in a probationer ... where a wrong view comes to have arisen in a probationer ... where a probationer’s training comes to be interrupted.³ If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘My training is interrupted, let the masters

¹ Nuns did not undergo probation, *parivāsa*; cf. their *Saṅghādisesas*. ² The monk does not say that he will make a proclamation or become one to complete a group. ³ *kupitā*, see BD.3.366.

come, I want the masters to come', you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will make an effort for her to undertake the training'.¹ The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.23

"This is a case, monks, where a probationer becomes desirous of being ordained.² If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'I am desirous of being ordained ... I want the masters to come', you should go, monks, ... thinking: 'Either I will make an effort for her ordination or I will make a proclamation or I will become one who completes a group'.³ The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.24

"This is a case, monks, where a novice becomes ill ... **Kd.3.6.2** ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.25

"... where dissatisfaction ... where remorse ... where a wrong view comes to have arisen in a novice ... where a novice becomes desirous of asking about his year's standing.⁴

BD.4.194

If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'I am desirous of asking about my year's standing ... I want monks to come', you should go ... thinking: 'I will ask or I will explain'. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.26

"... where a novice becomes desirous of being ordained ... (as in **Kd.3.6.22**) ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.27

"This is a case, monks, where a woman novice comes to be ill ... **Kd.3.6.2** ... The return should be made in seven days.

Vin.1.147

Kd.3.6.28

"... where dissatisfaction ... where remorse ... where a wrong view comes to have arisen in a woman novice ... where a woman novice becomes desirous of asking about her year's standing ... **Kd.3.6.25** ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.6.29

"... where a woman novice becomes desirous of undertaking the training.⁵ If she should send a messenger to monks, saying: 'Now I am desirous

¹ *sikkhāsamādānaṃ*. ² With the *upasampadā* ordination. See **BD.3, Introduction, p.xlivff.**

³ Nuns' *upasampadā* ordination takes place before an Order of monks. ⁴ *vassa*. See above, **BD.4.109**. This must be the technical meaning of *vassaṃ pucchitum*, which editors of *Vinaya Texts* i.310, note say "is unknown to us". ⁵ Balancing the "to be ordained" of probationers and male novices. The woman novice had to become a probationer and spend two years in training in the six rules for probationers before she could become ordained.

of undertaking the training, let the masters come, I want the masters to come', you should go, monks, even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, and if the business can be done in seven days, thinking: 'I will make an effort for her to acquire the training'. The return should be made in seven days."

ALLOWANCE FOR SEVEN WHEN SENT FOR

Now at that time a certain monk's mother became ill. She sent a messenger to her son, saying: "Now I am ill, let my son come, I want my son to come." Then it occurred to that monk: "It is laid down by the Lord that, if the business can be done in seven days, one can go if sent for but not if not sent for to seven (classes of people); and, if the business can be done in seven days, to go even if not sent for, all the more if sent for to five (classes of people)¹; and my own mother² is ill, but she is not a lay-follower. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.3.7.1

He said: "I allow you, monks, to go even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, if the business can be done in seven days, to seven (classes of people): to a monk, a nun, a probationer, a novice, a woman novice, a mother, a father. I allow you, monks, to go even if not sent for, all the more if sent for, if the business can be done in seven days, to these seven (classes of people). The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.2
BD.4.195

"This is a case, monks, where a monk's mother comes to be ill. If she should send a messenger to her son, saying: 'Now I am ill, let my son come, I want my son to come', you should go, monks, ... (=Kd.3.6.2) ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.3

"This is a case, monks, where a monk's father comes to be ill. If he should send a messenger to his son, saying: 'Now I am ill, let my son come, I want my son to come', you should go ... (=Kd.3.6.2) ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.4
Vin.1.148

¹ See above, BD.4.189. ² *ayañ ca me mātā*, and this my mother.

ALLOWANCE ONLY WHEN SENT FOR

Kd.3.7.5

“This is a case, monks, where a monk’s brother comes to be ill. If he should send a messenger to his brother, saying: ‘Now I am ill, let my brother come, I want my brother to come’, you should go, monks, if sent for, but not if not sent for, if the business can be done in seven days. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.6

“This is a case, monks, where a monk’s sister comes to be ill. If she should send a messenger to her brother, saying: ‘Now I am ill, let my brother come, I want my brother to come’, you should go ... (= Kd.3.7.5) ... The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.7

“This is a case, monks, where a monk’s relative comes to be ill. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘Now I am ill, let the revered sir come, I want the revered sir to come’, you should go, monks, if sent for, but not if not sent for, if the business can be done in seven days. The return should be made in seven days.

Kd.3.7.8

“This is a case, monks, where a person living with monks¹ comes to be ill. If he should send a messenger to monks, saying: ‘Now I am ill, let monks come, I want monks to come’, you should go, monks, if sent for, but not if not sent for, if the business can be done in seven days. The return should be made in seven days.”

BD.4.196

Kd.3.8.1

Now at that time an Order’s dwelling-place was falling to pieces. A certain lay-follower had the goods² removed into the jungle. He sent a messenger to monks, saying: “If the revered sirs would fetch away³ these goods, I would give them back these goods.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to go away on business connected with an Order. The return should be made in seven days.”

Told is the Portion for Repeating on Rains-residence

¹ *bhikkhugatika*. Vin-a.1069 and Sinhalese edition read *bhatika*; Vin-a explains as “a man (*purisa*) living in one dwelling-place together with monks”. ² *bhaṇḍam chedāpitam hoti*. No justification for “had a quantity of wood cut” as at *Vinaya Texts* i.312. Vin-a.1069 explains by *dabbasambhārabhaṇḍa*, goods forming a substantial collection. Cf. *bhaṇḍaka* at [Vin.4.304](#) referring to the goods or “things”, property that some nuns wanted to receive from Thullanandā’s burning dwelling. ³ Oldenberg’s text *avahareyyum*; Sinhalese edition *avahāpeyyum*.

PORTION ON NO OFFENCE FOR CUTTING SHORT THE RAINS WHEN THERE IS DANGER

Now at that time in the Kosala country monks who had entered upon the rains in a certain residence came to be molested by beasts of prey who seized them and attacked them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains come to be molested by beasts of prey who seize them and attack them. This is indeed a danger,¹ and you should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains come to be molested by creeping things which bite them and attack them. This is indeed ... in cutting short the rains.

“This is a case, monks, where monks ... are molested by thieves who rob them and thrash them. This is indeed ... in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where monks ... are molested by demons² who take possession of³ them and sap their vitality.⁴ This is indeed ... in cutting short the rains.

“This is a case, monks, where the village of monks who have entered upon the rains comes to be burnt by fire and the monks go short of almsfood. This is indeed a danger ... in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where the lodgings of monks who have entered upon the rains come to be burnt by fire and the monks go short of lodgings. This is indeed ... in cutting short the rains.

“This is a case, monks, where the village of monks who have entered upon the rains comes to be carried away by water and the monks go short of almsfood. This is indeed ... in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where the lodgings of monks who have entered upon the rains come to be carried away by water and the monks go short of lodgings. This is indeed a danger, and you should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains.”

Vin.1.149

Kd.3.9.2

Kd.3.9.3

BD.4.197

Kd.3.9.4

Kd.3.10.1

¹ See above, **BD.4.148**, where this and some of the following dangers are enumerated although not in quite the same order. ² *pisāca*. Not among the “ten dangers”. ³ *āvisanti*, explained at Vin-a.1070 as “they enter into the body”. ⁴ *ojaṃ haranti*, they carry off the life-strength.

Now at that time the village of certain monks who had entered upon the rains in a certain residence was removed¹ on account of thieves. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to go to that village.” The village was split in two. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to go where there are the more (people).” The majority came to be of little faith, not believing. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to go to those who have faith and are believing.”

Kd.3.11.1

Now at that time in the Kosala country monks who had entered upon the rains in a certain residence did not obtain a sufficiency, as much as they needed, of coarse or of sumptuous food. They told this matter to the Lord. He said “This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains do not obtain a sufficiency, as much as they need, of coarse or of sumptuous food. This is indeed a danger,² and they should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains obtain a sufficiency, as much as they need, of coarse or of sumptuous food, but they do not obtain beneficial foods. This is indeed a danger ... in cutting short the rains.

BD.4.198

Kd.3.11.2

“This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains obtain a sufficiency, as much as they need, of coarse or of sumptuous food, they obtain beneficial foods, but they do not obtain beneficial medicines. This is indeed a danger ... the rains. This is a case, monks, where monks who have entered upon the rains obtain a sufficiency, as much as they need, of coarse or of sumptuous food, they obtain beneficial foods, they obtain beneficial medicines, but they do not obtain a suitable attendant. This is indeed a danger ... in cutting short the rains.

Vin.1.150

Kd.3.11.3

“This is a case, monks, where a woman invites a monk who has entered upon the rains, saying: ‘Come, honoured sir, I will give you gold³ or I will give you gold ornaments⁴ or I will give you a field or I will give you a site⁵ or I will give you a bull⁶ or I will give you a cow or I will give you a slave or I will give you a slave woman or I will give you (my) daughter as wife

¹ *vuṭṭhāsi*, arose, got up; thus, went away. ² This is a “danger to life”, the ninth danger listed at [Vin.1.113](#). ³ *hirañña suvaṇṇa*. See [BD.1.28, n.](#) ⁴ *hirañña suvaṇṇa*. See [BD.1.28, n.](#) ⁵ *vatthu*. Probably meaning a site for a hut or a dwelling-place, as in [Bu-Ss.6](#), [Bu-Ss.7](#).

⁶ *gāvurū*.

or I will be your wife or I will lead another wife to you.’ If it then occurs to the monk: ‘The mind is called quickly-changing¹ by the Lord, and this may be a danger to my Brahma-faring’, he should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

“This is a case, monks, where a low class woman ... a grown girl² ... a eunuch invites a monk who has entered upon the rains ... where relations invite ... kings ... thieves ... men of abandoned life invite a monk who has entered upon the rains, saying: ‘Come, honoured sir, we will give you gold ... or we will give you a daughter as wife or we will lead another wife to you’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘The mind is called quickly-changing by the Lord ...’ ... There is no offence in cutting short the rains. This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains sees a treasure³ without an owner. If then it occurs to the monk: ‘The mind is called quickly changing ...’ ... There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.4

BD.4.199

PORTION ON NO OFFENCE FOR CUTTING SHORT THE RAINS WHEN THERE IS SCHISM IN THE SAṄGHA

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains sees several monks striving for a schism in the Order. If then it occurs to the monk: ‘A schism in an Order is called serious by the Lord,⁴ do not let the Order be divided in my presence’, he should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.5

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that several monks are striving for a schism in the Order’. If then it occurs to that monk ... in cutting short the rains.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that several monks in a certain residence are striving for a schism in the Order’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘Now these monks

Kd.3.11.6

¹ *lahuparivatta citta*. For this sentiment, cf. SN.ii.95, Thag.4; also the expression *vibbhantacitta* at It.p.91; and *lahucittakata*, BD.4.101, above. ² *thullakumārī*; cf. above, BD.4.87, n.6. ³ *nidhi*; store, hoardings, treasure at Snp.285, Dh.p.76, Kp.8.2, Kp.8.9. At Ja.vi.79 explained as *vācakāranivāsana*, putting on a bark dress. Cf. the ruling as to picking up treasure (*ratana*) at Bu-Pc.84. ⁴ At Vin.2.198, in speaking to Devadatta.

are my friends. I should speak to them, saying: Indeed, your reverences, a schism in the Order is called serious by the Lord, please do not let a schism in the Order be promoted by the venerable ones and if he thinks: ‘They will do my bidding, they will attend, they will give ear he should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.7

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that several monks in a certain residence are striving for a schism in the Order’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘Now these monks are not friends of mine, but those who are friends of theirs are friends of mine; to these I shall speak, and when I have spoken to them, they will speak to them,¹ saying: Indeed, your reverences, a schism in the Order is called serious by the Lord ...’ (=Kd.3.11.6) ... in cutting short the rains.

Vin.1.151

Kd.3.11.8

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that the Order in a certain residence is divided by several monks’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘Now these monks are friends of mine. I should speak to them, saying: ...’ (=Kd.3.11.6) ... in cutting short the rains.

BD.4.200

Kd.3.11.9

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that an Order in a certain residence is divided by several monks’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘Now these monks are not friends of mine, but those who are friends of theirs are friends of mine; to these I shall speak, and when I have spoken to them, they will speak to them, saying: Indeed, your reverences, a schism in the Order is called serious by the Lord ...’ (=Kd.3.11.6) ... There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.10

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that several nuns in a certain residence are striving for a schism in the Order’. If it then occurs to the monk: ‘Now these nuns are friends of mine. I should speak to them, saying: Sisters, a schism in the Order is called serious by the Lord, please do not let a schism in the Order be promoted by the sisters’, and if he thinks: ‘They will do my bidding, they will attend, they will give ear’, he should depart. There is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.11

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: ‘It is said that several nuns in a certain residence are striving for a

¹ I.e. to the schismatic monks.

schism in the Order'. If it then occurs to the monk: 'Now these nuns are not friends of mine, but those who are friends of theirs are friends of mine; to these I shall speak, and when I have spoken to them, they will speak to them, saying: Sisters, a schism in the Order ...' (=Kd.3.11.10) ... there is no offence in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.12

"This is a case, monks, where a monk who has entered upon the rains hears: 'It is said that the Order in a certain residence is divided by several nuns'. If it then occurs to the monk: 'Now these nuns are friends of mine. I should speak to them, saying: Sisters, a schism in the Order ...' (=Kd.3.11.10) ... in cutting short the rains.

Kd.3.11.13

"This is a case ... hears: 'It is said that the Order in a certain residence is divided by several nuns'. If it then occurs to the monk: 'Now these nuns are not friends of mine, but those who are friends of theirs are friends of mine; to these I shall speak, and when I have spoken to them, they will speak to them, saying: Sisters, a schism in the Order ...' (=Kd.3.11.10) ... in cutting short the rains."

BD.4.201

ENTERING THE RAINS IN A COW PEN, ETC.

Now at that time a certain monk became desirous of entering on the rains in a cow-pen.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to enter on the rains in a cow-pen." The cow-pen was removed.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to go to that cow-pen."

Kd.3.12.1

Vin.1.152

Now at that time, as the beginning of the rains was approaching, a certain monk became desirous of going in a caravan. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to enter on the rains in a caravan." Now at that time, as the beginning of the rains was approaching, a certain monk became desirous of going in a boat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to enter on the rains in a boat."

Kd.3.12.2

¹ *vajā*. Vin-a.1071 explains as the dwelling-place of cowherds. Word occurs at AN.iii.393, Vism.166, Vism.279 in meaning of "cow-pen". ² *vuṭṭhāsi*; cf. above BD.4.197, n.1.

PLACES FOR NOT ENTERING THE RAINS

Kd.3.12.3

Now at that time monks entered on the rains in hollow trees. People looked down on, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like demon-worshippers.”¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter on the rains in hollow trees. Whoever should (so) enter on them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.3.12.4

Now at that time monks entered on the rains in forks of trees. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like hunters.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter on the rains in the forks of trees. Whoever should (so) enter on them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.3.12.5

Now at that time monks entered on the rains in the open air. When the gods rained they ran up to the foot of trees and to the shelter of a nimb tree.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter on the rains in the open air. Whoever should (so) enter on them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.4.202

Kd.3.12.6

Now at that time monks entered on the rains without lodgings. They suffered from cold and they suffered from heat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter on the rains without lodgings. Whoever should (so) enter on them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.3.12.7

Now at that time monks entered on the rains in a charnel-house. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like those who burn corpses”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter on the rains in a charnel-house. Whoever ... wrong-doing.”**

¹ *pisācillika*, or perhaps aborigines. See *Vinaya Texts* i.318, n., and [Kd.15.10.2](#); [Kd.15.27.5](#). Cf. *pisāca* above, [BD.4.196](#). ² *nimbakosa*. *Kosa* can mean cavity, thus the hollow of a tree, or it might mean a sheath or enclosure, thus the shelter, the cover of a tree.

Now at that time monks entered on the rains under a sunshade.¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like cowherds”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not enter on the rains under a sunshade. Whoever ... wrong-doing.**”

Kd.3.12.8

Vin.1.153

Now at that time monks entered on the rains in a water-jar.² People ... spread it about, saying: “Like followers of other sects”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not enter on the rains in a water-jar. Whoever ... of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.3.12.9

UNLAWFUL AGREEMENT

Now at that time an agreement came to be made by an Order in Sāvattthī that no one should be allowed to go forth during the rains. A nephew of Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, having approached monks, asked for the going forth. Monks spoke thus: “Sir, an agreement was made by the Order that during the rains no one should be allowed to go forth. Wait, sir, until the monks have kept the rains; when they have kept the rains they will allow you to go forth.” Then these monks, having kept the rains, spoke thus to the nephew of Visākhā, Migāra’s mother: “Come now, sir, go forth.” He spoke thus: “Honoured sirs, if I could have gone forth, I should have been pleased. But now, I, honoured sirs, will not go forth.”

Kd.3.13.1

BD.4.203

Kd.3.13.2

Visākhā, Migāra’s mother ... spread it about, saying: “How can the masters make an agreement to the effect that no one should be allowed to go forth during the rains? At what time should *dhamma* not be followed?” Monks heard Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, as she ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, an agreement that no one should be allowed to go forth during the rains should not be made. Whoever should make (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

¹ *chatta* is the regular word for sunshade. It can also mean a canopy. ² *cāṭi*, some big vessel; used for containing and transporting water at Ja.i.99. Ja.i.101. Perhaps above the long bath-like stone vessels still to be seen at Anurādhapura.

OFFENCE OF WRONG-DOING IN ASSENT

Kd.3.14.1

Now at that time a rains-residence belonging to King Pasenadi of Kosala came to be assented to for the earlier period¹ by the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans. As he was going to that residence, he saw on the way two residences with many robes. It occurred to him: “Now, suppose I should spend the rains in these two residences? Thus would many robes accrue to me.” He spent the rains in these two residences. King Pasenadi of Kosala ... spread it about, saying: “How can this master Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having assented to our rains-residence, break his word? Is not lying condemned in many a figure by the Lord and restraint from lying extolled?”

Kd.3.14.2

Monks heard King Pasenadi of Kosala as he ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having assented to a rains-residence belonging to King Pasenadi of Kosala, break his word? Is not lying condemned in many a figure by the Lord and restraint from lying extolled?”

Vin.1.154

Kd.3.14.3

Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, saying: “Is it true, as is said, Upananda, that you, having assented to a rains-residence belonging to King Pasenadi of Kosala, broke your word?”

BD.4.204

“It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, having assented to a rains-residence belonging to King Pasenadi of Kosala, break your word? Foolish man, is not lying condemned in many a figure by me and restraint from lying extolled? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.3.14.4

“This is a case, monks, where a rains-residence comes to be assented to by a monk for the earlier period. As he is going to that residence he sees on the way two residences with many robes. It occurs to him: ‘What now if I should spend the rains in these two residences? Thus would many robes

¹ *purimikāya*, that is, for the first three months of the rainy season.

accrue to me.’ He spends the rains in these two residences. **Monks, the earlier period is not valid for that monk, and also there is an offence of wrong-doing in the assent.**

Kd.3.14.5

“This is a case, monks, where a rains-residence comes to be assented to by a monk for the earlier period. As he is going to that residence he carries out Observance outside it, he reaches a dwelling-place on the day after the Observance day, he prepares a lodging, he sets out drinking-water and water for washing, he sweeps a cell, and, having nothing to do, he departs that self-same day. **Monks, the earlier period is not valid for that monk, and also there is an offence of wrong-doing in the assent.**

“This is a case, monks, ... (=Kd.3.14.5) ... he sweeps a cell, and, having something to do, he departs that self-same day. **Monks, ... in the assent.**

Kd.3.14.6

“This is a case, monks, ... and, having nothing to do, he departs, having spent two or three days. **Monks, ... in the assent.**

“This is a case, monks, ... and, having something to do he departs, having spent two or three days. **Monks, ... in the assent.**

“This is a case, monks, ... and, having stayed two or three days, he departs on some business that can be done in seven days. But he passes those seven days outside. **Monks, ... in the assent.**

“This is a case, monks, ... and, having stayed two or three days, he departs on some business that can be done in seven days. He returns within seven days. **Monks, the earlier period is valid for that monk, and there is no offence in the assent.**

BD.4.205
Vin.1.155

Kd.3.14.7

“This is a case, monks, ... and having something to do before the Invitation,¹ he departs for seven days. Monks, whether that monk returns or whether he does not return to that residence, the earlier period is valid for that monk, and also there is no offence in the assent.

Kd.3.14.8

- “This is a case, monks, where a rains-residence comes to be assented to by a monk for the earlier period. Having arrived at that residence he carries out the Observance, he reaches a dwelling-place on the day after the Observance day²...

Kd.3.14.10

Kd.3.14.11

¹ *Pavāraṇā*, a ceremony held at the end of the third month of the rains. See Kd.4.

² Kd.3.14.5-Kd.3.14.7 are repeated, the only difference being that there the monk held Observance outside the residence to which he was going; here he holds it when he has arrived.

“This is a case, monks, where a rains-residence comes to be assented to by a monk for the later period. As he is going to that residence he carries out Observance outside it ... (*the whole passage is identical with Kd.3.14.5–Kd.3.14.10; for earlier period read later period; for before the Invitation read before the komudī cātumāsini*¹) ... and also there is no offence in the assent.”

The Third Section: that on beginning the Rains

THIS IS ITS KEY

To enter on (the rains), and just when? how many?
 and during the rains,
 and they did not want to, intentionally,
 to postpone, a lay-follower,
 Ill, and a mother, a father,
 and a brother, then a relation,
 a person living with monks, a dwelling-place,
 and also beasts of prey, creeping things,
 And so thieves, and demons, burnt,
 and in regard to both²,
 carried away by water, was removed,
 and the majority, benefactors³,
 And about coarse and sumptuous (foods),
 beneficial medicines, an attendant,
 a woman, a low class woman,
 and a grown girl, a eunuch, and about a relation,
 Kings, thieves, men of abandoned life,
 a treasure, schisms, and by what is eightfold⁴,
 a cow-pen, and a caravan,
 and a boat, in a hollow, and in a fork,

¹ Cf. **BD.4.231**, below. This is the full moon day of the month Kattika, marks the end of the later period for keeping the rains, and thus the end of the fourth month of the rainy season. See *Vinaya Texts* i.324. n.2 and *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.66, n.1. According to DN-a.139 the white lotus, *kumuda*, blooms then. ² *tadubhayena*. Word is not in the text. Reference is to **Kd.3.9.3**, where the case is taken of both a village and monks' lodgings being burnt.

³ *dāyaka*. Word not in the text, but it probably refers to the minority who, because believing, may be presumed to have given alms to the monks, **Kd.3.10.1**. Indeed these three headings: “was removed, and the majority, benefactors” refer to one and the same episode, and should therefore not be counted as separate items in reckoning the total of “fifty-two items” in this Chapter. ⁴ I.e. the eight ways of making a schism which the monk hears about, **Kd.3.11.6–Kd.3.11.13**. The first way which he sees, **Kd.3.11.5**, has as its key-word the word “schisms” which also includes the next heading—“by what is eightfold”.

A rains-residence in the open air,
 and about one who had no lodgings,
 a charnel-house, and under a sunshade,
 and these went upon (the rains) in a water-jar,
 An agreement, having assented,
 and Observance days outside,
 the earlier, the later,
 one should combine them after the same fashion¹,
 He departs having nothing to do,
 and likewise because he has something to do,
 spending two or three days²,
 and on business that can be done in seven days,
 And then going away for seven days,
 whether he should return or should not come back,
 In the key to the items the order³
 should observe the woven way.⁴

BD.4.207

*In this Chapter there are fifty-two items.*⁵

Vin.1.157

¹ *yathānayena yojaye*, referring to the similar permutations of events which are repeated for the later as for the earlier period of the rains. ² The Sinhalese reading of *dvihatīham vasitvāna* is to be preferred to Oldenberg's *dvihatīhā ca puna*, "after two or three days and again", as it corresponds more closely to *Kd.3.14.6*. The latter, however, might be justified by the three cases there mentioned of "two or three days". ³ *antarikā*, sphere, compass; interval, i.e. the intervals between the items, the range they cover, hence their order. ⁴ *tantimaggā*, the way that is strung or woven together, so the sacred text or tradition. Cf. DN-a.2, MN-a.i.2. *Tantibhadda* at *Vin.1.312*, *tantidhara* at *Vism.99*. ⁵ This number is perhaps arrived at by (1) omitting "in regard to both" as a separate heading, being already included under "burnt"; (2) taking "was removed, majority, benefactors" as one heading (see *BD.4.206 n.2*); (3) taking line 7 as one heading referring to *Kd.3.11.1*, *Kd.3.11.2*; (4) taking "schisms, and what is eightfold" as one heading (see *BD.4.206 n.3*); (5) taking "the earlier, the later, one should combine them after the same fashion" as one heading (see *BD.4.206 n.4*); (6) taking the last line but one as referring to one and the same eventuality, in *Kd.3.14.7*.

4. INVITATION (PAVĀRAṆĀ)

DWELLING NOT IN COMFORT

Kd.4.1.1
BD.4.208

At one time the enlightened one, the Lord was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time several monks, friends and associates, entered on the rains in a certain residence in the Kosala country. Then it occurred to these monks: “Now by what means can we, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood?”

Kd.4.1.2

Then it occurred to these monks: “If we should neither address one another nor converse, but whoever should return first from the village for almsfood¹ should make ready a seat, should put out water for (washing) the feet, a footstool, a footstand, having washed a refuse-bowl² should set it out, should set out drinking water and water for washing.

Kd.4.1.3

Whoever should return last from the village for almsfood, if there should be the remains of a meal and if he should so desire, he may eat them; but if he does not so desire, he may throw them away where there is but little green grass³ or he may drop them into water where there are no living creatures,⁴ he should put up the seat, he should put away the water for (washing) the feet, the footstool, the footstand, he should put away the refuse-bowl having washed it, he should put away the drinking water and the water for washing, he should sweep the refectory.

Kd.4.1.4

¹ From here to near the end of Kd.4.1.4 cf. Kd.10.4.5; Kd.8.5.3; MN.i.207. ² This is a receptacle for the leavings of meals. ³ *appaharita*, or few crops, or no green grass, MN-a.i.94 explaining by *tiṇāni*, grasses, and referring to Bu-Pc.11. ⁴ This sentence occurs also at Kd.6.26.6, SN.i.169, Snp.p.15, MN.i.13.

Whoever should see a vessel for drinking water or a vessel for washing water or a vessel (for water) for rinsing after evacuation,¹ void and empty, should set out (water); if it is impossible for him (to do this) he should set out (water) by signalling with his hand, having invited a companion (to help him) by a movement of his hand²; but he should not for such a reason break into speech. Thus may we, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood.”

BD.4.209

Kd.4.1.5

Then these monks neither addressed one another nor conversed. Whoever returned first from the village for almsfood made ready a seat, put out water for (washing) the feet, a foot-stool, a footstand, set out a refuse-bowl having washed it, set out drinking water and water for washing.

Vin.1.158

Kd.4.1.6

Whoever returned last from the village for almsfood, if there were the remains of a meal ate them if he so desired; if he did not so desire he threw them away where there was but little green grass or he dropped them into water where there were no living creatures, he put up the seat, he put away the water for (washing) the feet, the footstool, the footstand, he put away the refuse-bowl having washed it, he put away the drinking water and the water for washing, he swept the refectory.

Kd.4.1.7

Whoever saw a vessel for drinking water or a vessel for washing water or a vessel (for water) for rinsing after evacuation, void and empty, set out water. If it was impossible for him (to do this) he set out water by signalling with his hand, having by a movement of his hand invited a companion (to help him); but not for such a reason did he break into speech.

Kd.4.1.8

Now it was the custom for monks who had kept the rains to go and see the Lord.³ Then these monks, having kept the rains, at the end of the three

¹ Cf. MN-a.ii.242. ² MN-a.ii.242 says that if any of these vessels is empty, having taken it to a pond and washed it inside and outside, having filtered water (into it), having set it down on the bank, they invite another monk (to help them) by a movement of the hand.

I think that *hatthavikārena* (“by a movement of the hand”) and *hatthavilaṅghakena* (“by signalling with the hand”) are complementary and are used to emphasise the gesture-language needed in place of speech. I therefore think that there should be no comma, as in Oldenberg’s edition, after *hatthavikārena* (there is none at MN.i.207) since this makes the passage read “if it is impossible for him (to do this) by a movement of the hand”, i.e. if he is not able to move the vessel single-handed. This is of course a possible reading, but it is not elegant Pali and balance and emphasis are lost. ³ For following passage, cf. BD.1.153f.

BD.4.210 months packed away their lodgings and taking their bowls and robes, set out for Sāvattthī. In due course they approached Sāvattthī, the Jeta Grove, Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery and the Lord. Having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for awakened ones, for Lords to exchange friendly greetings with in-coming monks.
Kd.4.1.9

Then the Lord spoke thus to these monks: “I hope that you were well, monks, I hope that you kept going, I hope that, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, you passed a comfortable rainy season and did not go short of almsfood?”

“We were well, Lord, we kept going, Lord, and we, Lord, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, passed a comfortable rainy season and did not go short of almsfood.”
Kd.4.1.10

Now, Truthfinders (sometimes) ask knowing, and knowing (sometimes) do not ask; they ask, knowing the right time (to ask), and they do not ask, knowing the right time (when not to ask). Truthfinders ask about what belongs to the goal, not about what does not belong to the goal; there is bridge-breaking for Truthfinders in whatever does not belong to the goal. In two ways do awakened ones, Lords question monks, either: “Shall we teach *dhamma*?” or “Shall we lay down a rule of training for disciples?”¹ Then the Lord spoke thus to these monks:

“But in what way did you, monks, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood?”
Kd.4.1.11

“In that connection did we, Lord, several friends and associates, enter on the rains in a certain residence in the Kosala country. Then it occurred to us, Lord: ‘Now by what means can we, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood?’ Then it occurred to us, Lord: ‘If we should neither address one another² ... Thus could we, all together, on friendly terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood.’ So we, Lord, neither addressed one another nor conversed. Whoever returned first from the village for almsfood made ready a seat³ ... but not for such a reason did he break into speech. Thus did we, Lord, all together, on friendly
Vin.1.159

¹ As at Vin.1.59, Vin.1.250, Vin.3.6, Vin.3.88–Vin.3.89. ² As in Kd.4.1.2–Kd.4.1.4. ³ As in Kd.4.1.5–Kd.4.1.7.

terms and harmonious, spend a comfortable rainy season and not go short of almsfood.”

BD.4.211

Kd.4.1.12

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Indeed, monks, these foolish men, having spent an uncomfortable time, pretend to have spent an equally comfortable time. Indeed, monks, these foolish men, having spent communion like beasts, pretend to have spent an equally comfortable time. Indeed ... like sheep, pretend to have spent an equally comfortable time. Indeed ... having spent communion in indolence, pretend to have spent an equally comfortable time. How, monks, can these foolish men observe an observance of members of (other) sects: the practice of silence?¹

Kd.4.1.13

“It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, an observance of members of other sects, the practice of silence, should not be observed. Whoever should observe it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, monks who have kept the rains to ‘invite’² in regard to three matters: what has been seen or heard or suspected. That will be what is suitable for you in regard to one another, a removal of offences³, an aiming at (grasping) the discipline.⁴

Kd.4.1.14

And thus, monks, should one invite. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Today is an Invitation day.⁵ If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite.’ A monk who is an elder, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak to it thus: ‘Your reverences, I invite the Order in respect of what has been seen or heard or suspected. Let the venerable

BD.4.212

¹ *mūgabbata*, custom of being dumb (*mūga*), according to Vin-a.1073, for three months. Cf. the monks who sat like dumb swine, *mūgasūkarā*, when they might have been speaking *dhamma*, above, BD.4.131. ² *pavāretum*, a technical term used for a monk to “invite” others at the end of the rains to tell him if he has been seen or heard or suspected to have committed any offences. If they do so, and he acknowledges an offence by seeing it and making amends for it, he becomes rid of it, and is therefore pure to take his place in the Order’s business. ³ *āpattivuṭṭhānatā*, or a rising up from an offence (or offences). Cf. *āpatti vuṭṭhitā* at Kd.2.3.5, and *vuṭṭhāsi* at Kd.3.10.1, a village was removed. ⁴ *vinayapurekkhāratā*. Cf. *atthapurekkhāra dhammapurekkhāra* at e.g. Vin.3.130, Vin.4.11, Vin.4.277. ⁵ *pavāraṇā*, invitation. MN-a.i.93 distinguishes four kinds of *pavāraṇā* and places first this one held at the end of the rains.

ones speak to me out of compassion, and seeing I will make amends.¹ And a second time ... And a third time, your reverences, I invite the Order in respect of what has been seen or heard or suspected. Let the venerable ones speak to me out of compassion, and seeing I will make amends.' A newly ordained monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder ... having saluted with joined palms, should speak to it thus: 'Honoured sirs, I invite the Order in respect of what has been seen ... And a second time ... And a third time ... and seeing I will make amends.'"

Vin.1.160

Kd.4.2.1

Now at that time the group of six monks remained² on seats while monks who were elders, sitting down on their haunches, were themselves inviting. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks remain on seats while monks who are elders, sitting down on their haunches, are themselves inviting?" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks remained on seats ... were themselves inviting?"

"It is true, Lord." The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can these foolish men remain on seats ... are themselves inviting? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, you should not remain on seats while monks who are elders, sitting down on their haunches, are themselves inviting. I allow you, monks, to invite while each and every one is sitting down on his haunches."

Kd.4.2.2

Now at that time a certain elder, feeble with age, thinking: "Until all have invited", while sitting down on his haunches and waiting, fell down in a faint. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, (each one) to sit down on his haunches during the period until he invites, and having invited, to sit down on a seat."

¹ I.e. for the offence imputed to him and "seen" by him. ² *acchanti*. Vin-a.1074 says they were sitting down, they did not stand up.

DIVISION OF THE INVITATION

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how many Invitation (days) are there?” They told this to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these two Invitation (days), the fourteenth and the fifteenth. These, monks, are the two Invitation (days).”¹

Kd.4.3.1
BD.4.213

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how many (formal) acts for the Invitation are there?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these four (formal) acts for the Invitation: a (formal) act for the Invitation (carried out) not by rule and when an assembly is incomplete... (=Kd.2.14.2, Kd.2.14.3; read act for the Invitation *instead of* act for Observance) ... you, monks, should train yourselves thus”.

Kd.4.3.2

ALLOWANCE TO GIVE INVITATION

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Gather together, monks, the Order will invite.”² When he had spoken thus a certain monk spoke thus to the Lord: “There is, Lord, a monk who is ill. He has not come.” He said: “I allow you, monks, to give the Invitation on behalf of a monk who is ill. And thus, monks, should it be given: That ill monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I will give the Invitation, convey the Invitation for me, invite on my behalf.’ If he makes it understood by gesture, if he makes it understood by voice, if he makes it understood by gesture and voice, the Invitation comes to be given. If he does not make it understood by gesture ... by gesture and voice, the Invitation does not come to be given.

Kd.4.3.3

Vin.1.161

If he thus manages this, it is good. If he does not manage it then, monks, that ill monk, having been brought to the midst of the Order on a couch or a chair, should invite. If, monks, it occurs to the monks who are tending the ill one ... (=Kd.2.22.2) ... the ill one should not be moved from (that) place; the Order having gone there may invite, **but one should not invite**

Kd.4.3.4

¹ Cf. Kd.2.14.1. ² Cf. Kd.2.22.1.

if an Order is incomplete. Whoever should so invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.4.3.5

“If, monks, the conveyor of the Invitation goes away then and there ... (= Kd.2.22.3, Kd.2.22.4; read Invitation, although the Invitation, the conveyor of the Invitation *instead of* entire purity, although the entire purity, the conveyor of the entire purity) ... **there is an offence of wrong-doing for the conveyor of the Invitation.** I allow you, monks, on an Invitation day to give the consent also by giving the Invitation; they are the Order’s business.”¹

BD.4.214

ON BEING GRABBED BY RELATIVES

Kd.4.4.1

Now at that time his relations got hold of a certain monk on an Invitation day ... (as in Kd.2.24.1–Kd.2.24.3; read Invitation day for Observance day, and gives the Invitation for declares his entire purity, and invites for carries out the Observance) ...

Vin.1.162

DIVISION OF INVITATION BY SAṄGHA, ETC.

Kd.4.5.1

Now at that time five monks were staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that an Order may invite², but we are (only) five persons. Now, how can we invite?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite in an Order of five.”³

Kd.4.5.2

Now at that time four monks were staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is allowed by the Lord to invite in an Order of five, but we are (only) four persons. Now, how can

¹ Cf. Kd.2.23.3. ² Cf. Kd.4.1.14. ³ The procedure for inviting an Order has been given in Kd.4.1.14 and is not repeated here. “Inviting one another” when there are only four, three or two persons has not yet been explained, and so directions for the right method are given in the next paragraphs. Various sizes of *saṅghas* are given at Kd.9.4.1, with the formal acts they may not carry out. This whole passage should be compared with Kd.2.26.1–Kd.2.26.10.

we invite?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite one another when you are (only) four.

“And thus, monks, should one invite: These monks should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. Today is an Invitation day. If it seems right to the venerable ones, let us invite one another.’ These monks should be spoken to thus by a monk who is an elder, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms: ‘I, your reverences, invite the venerable ones in regard to what has been seen or heard or suspected. Let the venerable ones speak to me out of compassion, and seeing, I will make amends. And a second time ... And a third time ... and seeing, I will make amends.’ These monks should be spoken to thus by a newly ordained monk, having arranged ... ‘I, honoured sirs, invite the venerable ones in regard to what has been seen or heard or suspected ... And a second time ... And a third time ... and seeing, I will make amends.’”

Kd.4.5.3

BD.4.215

Now at that time three monks were staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is allowed by the Lord to invite in an Order of five persons, and to invite one another when there are four, but we are (only) three persons. Now how can we invite?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite one another when you are (only) three. And thus, monks, should one invite: These monks should be informed ... (= Kd.4.5.3) ... I will make amends.”

Kd.4.5.4

Vin.1.163

Now at that time two monks were staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is allowed by the Lord to invite in an Order of five (persons), to invite one another when there are four, to invite one another when there are three, but we are (only) two persons. Now, how can we invite?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite one another when you are (only) two.

Kd.4.5.5

“And thus, monks, should one invite: The monk who is the elder, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to the newly ordained monk: ‘I, your reverence, invite the venerable one in regard to

Kd.4.5.6

what has been seen or heard or suspected. Let the venerable one speak to me out of compassion, and seeing, I will make amends. And a second time ... And a third time ... and seeing, I will make amends.’ The newly ordained monk, having arranged his upper robe ... with joined palms, should speak thus to the monk who is the elder: ‘I, honoured sir, invite the venerable one ... And a third time ... and seeing, I will make amends.’”

Kd.4.5.7

BD.4.216

Now at that time one monk was staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Then it occurred to that monk: “It is allowed by the Lord to invite in an Order of five (persons), to invite one another ... when there are (only) two, but I am alone. Now, how can I invite?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.5.8

He said: “This is a case, monks, where one monk is staying in a certain residence on an Invitation day. Monks, that monk, having swept the place to which monks return—an attendance hall or a pavilion or the root of a tree—having put out drinking water and water for washing, having made ready a seat, having made a light, should sit down. If other monks arrive, he may invite together with them; if they do not arrive, he should determine: ‘Today is an Invitation day for me’. **If he should not (so) determine, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**

Kd.4.5.9

“Monks, there where five monks are staying, four should not invite in an Order, having conveyed the invitation for one. If they should (so) invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

“Monks, there where four monks are staying, three should not invite one another, having conveyed the invitation for one. If they should (so) invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.1.164

“Monks, there where three monks are staying, two should not invite one another, having conveyed the invitation for one. If they should (so) invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

“Monks, there where two monks are staying, one should not determine, having conveyed the invitation for the other. If he should (so) determine, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING AMENDS

Kd.4.6.1

Now at that time a certain monk came to have fallen into an offence on an Invitation day.¹ Then it occurred to this monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that an offender should not invite,² and I have fallen into an offence. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, ... (cf. *Kd.2.27.1*, *Kd.2.27.2*; read Invitation day for Observance day) ... When he has spoken thus, he may invite, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Invitation from such a cause.”

PROCEDURE FOR NO OBSTACLE FROM OFFENCE

Kd.4.6.2
BD.4.217

Now at that time a certain monk, as he was himself inviting, remembered an offence.³ Then it occurred to this monk: “It is laid down by the Lord that an offender should not invite, and I have fallen into an offence. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where a monk, as he is himself inviting, remembers an offence. Monks, this monk should speak thus to the monk next to him: ‘I, your reverence, have fallen into such and such an offence; removing from here,⁴ I will make amends for that offence.’ When he has spoken thus, he may invite, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Invitation from such a cause.

Kd.4.6.3

“This is a case, monks, where a monk as he is himself inviting, becomes doubtful about an offence. Monks ... (cf. *Kd.2.27.5*) ... When he has spoken thus he may invite, but no obstacle should be put in the way of the Invitation from such a cause.”

¹ Cf. *Kd.2.27.1*. ² Cf. below, *BD.4.223*. ³ Cf. *Kd.2.27.4*. ⁴ Or, having risen up from here.

⁵ OLDENBERG, *Vin.1.164*, and *Vinaya Texts* i.336 compare this to *Kd.2.27.4–Kd.2.27.8*, which would mean that a monk also invited the Order collectively.

PROCEDURE FOR MAKING AMENDS FOR SHARED OFFENCE

(Note by Sujato: this section, which repeats the material from the corresponding section of the Uposathakkhandhaka, is not included in Horner's translation. See previous footnote.)

Told is the First Portion for Repeating

FIFTY CASES OF NO OFFENCE

Now at that time several resident monks, five or more, collected together in a certain residence on an Invitation day.¹ They did not know that the other resident monks had not arrived. Thinking of the rule, thinking of discipline, thinking that they were complete, they invited while they were incomplete. While they were inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrived. They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.7.2

Vin.1.165

He said: "This is a case, monks, where several resident monks ... (as in [Kd.4.7.1](#) above) ... While they are inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, those monks should invite again; there is no offence for those who have invited."²

Kd.4.7.3

BD.4.218

Kd.4.7.4

"This is a case, monks, ... other resident monks, a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. Those who have invited have duly invited; the remainder should invite, and there is no offence for those who have invited.

"This is a case, monks, where several resident monks, five or more, collect together in a certain residence on an Invitation day ... When they have just finished inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, those monks should invite again; there is no offence for those who have invited.

"This is a case, monks, ... a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. Those who have invited have duly invited; they³ should invite in their presence, and there is no offence for those who have invited.

Kd.4.7.5

¹ Cf. [Kd.2.28.1](#)–[Kd.2.28.7](#). ² *pavāritānaṃ*, for the inviters, corresponding to the "reciters" of [Kd.2.28.2](#). ³ I.e. the resident monks who arrive late.

“This is a case, monks, ... When they have just finished inviting but the assembly has not risen ... (=Kd.4.7.5) ... no offence for those who have invited.

“This is a case ... and part of the assembly has risen ... (=Kd.4.7.5) ... no offence for those who have invited.

“This is a case, monks, where ... the whole assembly has risen, and other resident monks, a larger number ... a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. Those who have invited have duly invited; they should invite in their presence, and there is no offence for those who have invited.”

Told are the Fifteen Cases in which there is No Offence

FIFTY CASES OF PERCEIVING IT IS A GROUP OR IS NOT A GROUP

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence several resident monks, five or more, collect together on an Invitation day.¹ They know that other resident monks have not arrived. Thinking of the rule, thinking of discipline, thinking that they are incomplete they invite while they are incomplete. While they are inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. Monks, these monks should invite again, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.

Kd.4.8.1

“This is a case, monks, ... a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. Those who have invited have duly invited; the remainder should invite and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.

Kd.4.8.2

Vin.1.166

“This is a case, monks, ... When they have just finished inviting ... and the assembly has not risen ... part of the assembly has risen ... the whole assembly has risen, and other resident monks, a larger number ... a like number ... a smaller number, arrive. Those who have invited have duly invited; they should invite in their presence, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.

Kd.4.8.3

Bd.4.219

Told are the Fifteen Cases on being Aware that an Assembly is incomplete when it is incomplete

¹ Cf. Kd.2.29.

FIFTY CASES OF DOUBT

Kd.4.9.1

“This is a case, monks, where several resident monks five or more, collect together on an Invitation day.¹ They know that other resident monks have not arrived. Thinking: ‘Now, is it allowable for us to invite or is it not allowable?’ they invite (although they are in doubt). While they are inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. **Monks, these monks should invite again, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.**

Kd.4.9.2

“This is a case, ... (cf. Kd.4.8.2, Kd.4.8.3) ... **they should invite in their presence, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.**”

Told are the Fifteen Cases on Being in Doubt

FIFTY CASES OF ACTING BADLY

Kd.4.10.1

“This is a case,² ... (as in Kd.4.9.1) ... Thinking, ‘Indeed, it is allowable for us to invite, it is not unallowable for us’, they, acting badly, invited. While they are inviting ... **offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.**

Kd.4.10.2

“This is a case,³ ... (cf. Kd.4.8.2, Kd.4.8.3) ... **they should invite in their presence, and there is an offence of wrong-doing for those who have invited.**”

Told are the Fifteen Cases on Acting Badly

FIFTY CASES OF AIMING AT SCHISM

Kd.4.11.1

Vin.1.167

“This is a case,⁴ ... They know that there are other resident monks who have not arrived. Saying: ‘These are perishing, these are being destroyed, what good are these to you?’ they invite, aiming at a schism. While they are inviting, other resident monks, a larger number, arrive. **Monks, those monks should invite again, and there is a grave offence for those who have invited.**

Kd.4.11.2

BD.4.220

“This is a case, ... (cf. **Kd.4.8.2**, **Kd.4.8.3**; *Read grave offence instead of offence of wrong-doing; in the case of a like number a smaller number read those who have invited have duly invited, the rest should invite.*) ... **they should invite in their presence, and there is a grave offence for those who have invited.**”

Told are the Fifteen Cases on aiming at a Schism

Told are the Seventy-five Cases

ABBREVIATED REPETITIONS ON ENTERING A BOUNDARY

“This is a case,¹ ... They know that other resident monks are entering within the boundary. They know that other resident monks have entered within the boundary. They see other resident monks entering within the boundary. They see other resident monks entered within the boundary. They hear other resident monks entering within the boundary. They hear other resident monks who have entered within the boundary.

“From a hundred and seventy-five triads referring to resident (monks) with resident (monks); to incoming (monks) with resident (monks); to resident (monks) with incoming (monks); to incoming (monks) with incoming (monks), there come to be seven hundred triads by means of (these) sets.

VARIOUS DAYS

“This is a case, monks, where the fourteenth is (the Invitation day) for resident monks, the fifteenth for incoming monks ... (= **Kd.2.34.1-2.35.5**. *Read they should invite, they invite, on an Invitation day instead of Observance should be carried out, they carry out the Observance, on an Observance day.*) ... if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day’.

Kd.4.13.1

¹ Cf. **Kd.2.30**. ² Cf. **Kd.2.31.1**. ³ Cf. **Kd.2.31.2**. ⁴ Cf. **Kd.2.32**. ¹ Cf. **Kd.2.33**.

VISIBLE CHARACTERISTICS

(Note by Sujato: this section, which repeats the material from the corresponding section of the Uposathakkhandhaka, is not included in Horner's translation.)

INVITATION WITH THOSE OF DIFFERENT COMMUNION, ETC.

(Note by Sujato: See previous note.)

PORTION ON SHOULD NOT GO

(Note by Sujato: See previous note.)

PORTION ON SHOULD GO

(Note by Sujato: See previous note.)

SEEING A BLAMEWORTHY PERSON

Kd.4.14.1
Kd.4.14.3
Vin.1.168
Kd.4.14.4

“Monks, one should not invite in a seated assembly before a nun ...¹ ...

“Monks, one should not invite by giving the Invitation of one on probation unless the assembly has not risen.² And, monks, one should not invite on a non-Invitation day unless the Order be unanimous.”

INVITATION WITH TWO STATEMENTS, ETC.

Kd.4.15.1
BD.4.221

Now at that time in a certain residence in the Kosala country there came to be a menace from savages on an Invitation day.³ The monks were unable

¹ See Kd.2.36.1, Kd.2.36.3. ² Cf. Kd.2.36.4. ³ Cf. Kd.2.15.3.

to invite by using the threefold formula.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite by using a two-fold formula.” The menace from the savages became even greater. The monks were unable to invite by using the two-fold formula. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite by using a onefold formula.” The menace from the savages became even greater. The monks were unable to invite by using the onefold formula. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to invite those who keep the rains (all) together.”

Now at that time in a certain residence people were giving gifts on an Invitation day until the night was almost ended. Then it occurred to those monks: “People are giving gifts until the night is almost ended. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before dawn breaks. Now what line of conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.15.2

He said: “This is a case, monks, ... (as in [Kd.4.15.2](#)) ... before dawn breaks’. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. People are giving gifts until the night is almost ended. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before dawn breaks. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite those who keep the rains together by a twofold formula, by a onefold formula.’

Kd.4.15.3

Vin.1.169

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence on an Invitation day monks are speaking *dhamma*, those versed in the discourses are chanting a discourse, the discipline experts are propounding discipline, the talkers on *dhamma* are discussing *dhamma*, monks are quarrelling² until the night is almost ended. If it then occurs to these monks: ‘Monks are quarrelling until the night is almost ended. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before dawn breaks’, the Order should

Kd.4.15.4

BD.4.222

¹ See [Kd.4.1.14](#). As Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1077 seems to imply the motion (*ñatti*) could be shelved if the Order approves. Then the inviting monk had merely three times to repeat his request to invite the Order. Above, he is allowed to curtail the number of times he makes the request. Cf. *dvevācika* and *tevācika* above [Kd.1.4.5](#), [Kd.1.7.10](#). ² “Quarrelling” really means arguing and disputing about points of *dhamma* and discipline.

be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Monks are quarrelling ... the Order will not be invited before dawn breaks. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite those who keep the rains together by a twofold formula, by a onefold formula.’”

Kd.4.15.5

Now at that time in a certain residence in the Kosala country a large Order of monks came to have collected together on an Invitation day, and (only) a small (place) was sheltered from the rain and a great cloud had come up. Then it occurred to these monks: “Now this large Order of monks has collected together, and (only) a small (place) is sheltered from the rain and a great cloud has come up. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before this cloud pours down rain. Now what line of conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.15.6

He said: “This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence a large Order of monks has collected together on an Invitation day, and (only) a small (place) ... (as in [Kd.4.15.5](#) above) ... If it then occurs to these monks: ‘Now this large Order of monks ... pours down rain’, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This large Order of monks ... pours down rain. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite those who keep the rains together by a twofold formula, by a onefold formula.’

Kd.4.15.7

“This is a case, monks, where in a certain residence on an Invitation day there comes to be a danger from kings ... from thieves ... from fire ... from water ... from human beings ... from non-human beings ... from beasts of prey ... from creeping things ... to life ... to the Brahma-faring.¹

Vin.1.170

It then occurs to these monks: ‘Now this is a danger to the Brahma-faring. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before there is a danger to the Brahma-faring.’ The Order should be

BD.4.223

informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This is a danger to the Brahma-faring. If the Order invites by the threefold formula, then the Order will not be invited before

¹ Cf. above [BD.4.148](#).

there is a danger to the Brahma-faring. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite those who keep the rains together by a twofold formula, by a onefold formula.’”

SETTING ASIDE THE INVITATION

Now at that time the group of six monks invited (while they were) offenders. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, an offender should not invite. Whoever (such) should invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, having obtained leave from whatever offender is inviting, to reprove him for the offence.”¹

Kd.4.16.1

Now at that time the group of six monks, (although) obtaining leave, did not wish to give leave. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to suspend the invitation² of one not giving leave. And thus, monks, should it be suspended: If on an Invitation day, whether the fourteenth or the fifteenth, one should say in the presence of that individual, in the midst of the Order: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The individual so-and-so is an offender; I am suspending his invitation; one should not invite in his presence’, the invitation comes to be suspended.”

Kd.4.16.2

Now at that time the group of six monks, saying: “Before well behaved monks suspend our invitation”³, themselves suspended beforehand, without ground, without reason, the invitation of pure monks who were not offenders, and they also suspended the invitation of those who had (already) invited. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, one should not suspend without ground, without reason, the invitation of pure monks who are not offenders. Whoever should (so) suspend it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor, monks, should one suspend the invitation of those who have invited. Whoever should (so) suspend it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**

Kd.4.16.3

¹ Cf. Kd.2.16.1. ² *pavāraṇaṃ ṭhapetuṃ*, cf. Vin.2.5, Vin.2.22, Vin.2.32. ³ Cf. Kd.2.16.3.

Kd.4.16.4
BD.4.224

“Monks, an invitation comes to be (duly) suspended thus, not (duly) suspended thus. And how, monks, does an invitation come to be not (duly) suspended? If, monks, one suspends an invitation when the invitation has been spoken, uttered and brought to a close by the threefold formula, the invitation comes to be not (duly) suspended. If, monks, one suspends an invitation when the invitation has been spoken, uttered and brought to a close by a twofold formula ... by a onefold formula ... by those keeping the rains together, an invitation comes to be not (duly) suspended. It is thus, monks, that an invitation comes to be not (duly) suspended.

Vin.1.171

Kd.4.16.5

“And how, monks, does an invitation come to be (duly) suspended? If, monks, one suspends an invitation when the invitation has been spoken, uttered, but not brought to a close¹ by the threefold formula, the invitation comes to be (duly) suspended. If, monks, one suspends ... but not brought to a close by the twofold formula ... by the onefold formula ... by those keeping the rains together, the invitation comes to be (duly) suspended. It is thus, monks, that an invitation comes to be (duly) suspended.

Kd.4.16.6

“This is a case, monks, when on an Invitation day a monk suspends (another) monk’s invitation. If other monks know concerning this monk: ‘This venerable one is not pure in the conduct of his body, he is not pure in the conduct of his speech, he is not pure in his mode of livelihood; he is ignorant, inexperienced; he is not competent when being himself questioned to give an explanation²,’ and if having snubbed³ him, they say: ‘That’s enough, monk, let there be no strife, let there be no quarrel, let there be no dispute, let there be no contention’, the Order may invite.

Kd.4.16.7

“This is a case, monks, ... (as in Kd.4.16.6 above ‘... is pure in the conduct of his body, but he is not pure in the conduct of his speech, he is not pure in his mode of livelihood) ... to give an explanation’, ... the Order may invite.

Kd.4.16.8

BD.4.225

“This is a case, monks, ... (as in Kd.4.16.6 above ‘... is pure in the conduct of his body, he is pure in the conduct of his speech, but he is not pure in his mode of livelihood) ...’. the Order may invite.

Kd.4.16.9

“This is a case, monks ... (as in Kd.4.16.6 above ‘... is pure in the conduct of his body, pure in the conduct of his speech, pure in his mode of livelihood;

¹ Correct in the Pali text *pariyositāya* to *apari-*, as noted at *Vinaya Texts* i.342, n.1. ² *anuyogam dātum*. ³ *omadditvā*, having crushed. Vin-a.1078 says that it is here a verbal crushing.

but he is ignorant, inexperienced; he is not competent when himself being questioned) ...' ... the Order may invite.

“This is a case, monks, ... (as in **Kd.4.16.6** above ‘... is pure in the conduct of his body) ... pure in his mode of livelihood; he is learned, experienced; he is competent when being himself questioned to give an explanation’, one should speak thus to him: ‘If you, your reverence, suspend this monk’s invitation, why do you suspend it? Do you suspend it on account of a falling away from moral habit¹? Do you suspend it on account of a falling away from good habits²? Do you suspend it on account of a falling away from (right) view³?’

Kd.4.16.10

Vin.1.172

Kd.4.16.11

“If he should speak thus: ‘I suspend it on account of a falling away from moral habit ... a falling away from (right) view’, one should speak thus to him: ‘But does your reverence know what is a falling away from moral habit ... a falling away from (right) view?’ If he should speak thus: ‘I know, your reverence, what is a falling away from moral habit ... a falling away from (right) view’, one should speak thus to him: ‘But which, your reverence, is a falling away from moral habit, which is a falling away from good habits, which is a falling away from (right) view?’

Kd.4.16.12

“If he should speak thus: ‘This is a falling away from moral habit: the four offences involving defeat, the thirteen offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. This is a falling away from good habits: a grave offence, an offence of expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed, an offence of wrong-doing, an offence of wrong speech. This is a falling away from (right) view: a wrong view, taking up an extreme view⁴’, one should speak

BD.4.226

¹ Defined at AN.i.268 as onslaught on creatures, taking what is not given, wrong conduct in sense-pleasures, lying, slandering, using harsh words, babbling. These three “falling aways” or failures are mentioned above **BD.4.82f.** ² AN.i.268 has *cittavipatti* for *ācāravipatti* of above. ³ Defined at AN.i.268 in the terms of Ajita Kesakambalin’s annihilationist views (cf. DN.i.55).

thus to him: ‘But if you, your reverence, suspend this monk’s invitation, do you suspend it on account of what was seen, do you suspend it on account of what was heard, do you suspend it on account of what was suspected?’

Kd.4.16.13

“If he should speak thus: ‘I am suspending it on account of what was seen, or, I am suspending it on account of what was heard, or, I am suspending it on account of what was suspected’, one should speak to him thus: ‘But, if you, your reverence, are suspending this monk’s invitation on account of what was seen, how have you seen, when have you seen, where have you seen? Have you seen him committing an offence involving defeat? Was he seen committing an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order? Was he seen committing a grave offence, an offence of expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed, an offence of wrong-doing, an offence of wrong speech? And where were you? And where was this monk? And what were you doing? And what was this monk doing?’

Kd.4.16.14

“If he should speak thus: ‘But I, your reverences, am not suspending this monk’s invitation on account of what was seen, but I am suspending the invitation on account of what was heard’, one should speak to him thus: ‘But, if you, your reverence, suspend this monk’s invitation on account of what was heard, what have you heard, how have you heard, when have you heard, where have you heard? Did you hear that he had committed an offence involving defeat? Did you hear that he had committed an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order? Did you hear that he had committed a grave offence, an offence of expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed,

BD.4.227

⁴ *antaggāhikā diṭṭhi*. See MORRIS, *Journal of the Pali Text Society*, 1884, p.70, “the (heretical) doctrine of maintaining or holding the three *antas* or goals, which, according to the *Sangīti Suttanta* (DN.iii.216) are *sakkāyo anto*, *sakkāyasamuddo anto*, *sakkāyanirodho anto*”. With DN.iii.216, cf. AN.iii.401, and see *Pali-English Dictionary* which questions Morris’ interpretation of *anta* as goal. *Antaggāhikā diṭṭhi* also occurs at DN.iii.45, AN.i.154, AN.ii.240, AN.iii.130, Vb.367. Various such “extreme views” are mentioned at SN.ii.17, SN.ii.19, SN.ii.63, Ps.i.151ff. DN-a.iii.839 explains: “this view is called ‘taking up an extreme’ through taking up the extreme (*anta*) of the annihilationists.” AN-a.ii.254 explains “a view established having taken up the extreme (*anta*) of what is founded on the ten” (“doctrines of the annihilationist”, GS.i.138, n.1). AN-a.iii.279 explains: “established having taken up (the position of) the eternalist or the annihilationist.” Ten “diverse views” are mentioned at SN.iii.258, while ten “extreme views” are differentiated from ten “wrong views” at Nd-a.i.162. These two sets of ten are mentioned at Mnd.113, with twenty *sakkāyadiṭṭhi* (Mnd.112).

an offence of wrong-doing, an offence of wrong speech? Did you hear from a monk? Did you hear from a nun ... a probationer ... a novice ... a woman novice ... a lay-follower ... a woman lay-follower ... kings ... king's ministers ... from leaders of (other) sects ... from disciples of (other) sects?' Kd.4.16.15

"If he should speak thus: 'But I, your reverences, am not suspending this monk's invitation on account of what was heard, but I am suspending the invitation on account of what was suspected one should speak to him thus: 'But, if you, your reverence, are suspending this monk's invitation on account of what was suspected, what did you suspect, how did you suspect, when did you suspect, where did you suspect? Did you suspect that he had committed an offence involving defeat? Did you suspect that he had committed an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order? Did you suspect that he had committed a grave offence, an offence of expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed, an offence of wrong-doing, an offence of wrong speech? Did you suspect, having heard from a monk ... from disciples of (other) sects?' Vin.1.173

"If he should speak thus: 'But I, your reverences, am not suspending this monk's invitation on account of what was suspected, moreover I do not know on account of what I am suspending this monk's invitation', and if, monks, the reproving monk does not satisfy his intelligent fellows in the Brahma-faring with his explanation, it is sufficient to say that the reproved monk is blameless. But if the reproving monk satisfies his intelligent fellows in the Brahma-faring with his explanation, it is sufficient to say that the reproved monk is blameworthy. Kd.4.16.16

"If that reproving monk, monks, admits that he has defamed (another monk) with an unfounded charge of an offence involving defeat, then the Order, having charged him with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order,¹ may invite. If, monks, that reproving monk admits that he has defamed (another monk) with an unfounded charge of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the Order, having had him dealt with according to the rule,² may invite. If, monks, that reproving monk admits that he has defamed (another monk) with an unfounded charge involving a grave offence, an offence of expiation, an offence which ought to be confessed, Kd.4.16.17

¹ See Bu-Ss.8. ² See Bu-Pc.76. BD.4.228

an offence of wrong doing, an offence of wrong speech, the Order, having had him dealt with according to the rule,¹ may invite.

Kd.4.16.18

“If, monks, that reprovved monk admits that he has committed an offence involving defeat, the Order, having expelled him, may invite. If, monks, that reprovved monk admits that he has committed an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the Order, having charged him with an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, may invite. If, monks, that reprovved monk admits that he has committed a grave offence ... an offence of wrong speech, the Order, having had him dealt with according to the rule, may invite.

BASIS FOR A GRAVE OFFENCE, ETC.

Kd.4.16.19

“This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have committed a grave offence on an Invitation day. Some monks view it as a grave offence, other monks view it as an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Monks, those monks who view it as a grave offence, having led that monk to one side, having had him dealt with according to the rule, having approached the Order, should speak to it thus: ‘Your reverences, the monk who has fallen into that offence has made amends for it according to rule. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may invite.’

Kd.4.16.20

“This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have committed a grave offence on an Invitation day. Some monks view it as a grave offence, other monks view it as an offence of expiation. Some monks view it as a grave offence, other monks view it as an offence which ought to be confessed. Some monks view it as a grave offence, other monks view it as an offence of wrong-doing. Some monks view it as a grave offence, other monks view it as an offence of wrong speech. Monks, those monks who view it as a grave offence ... (= Kd.4.16.19) ‘... the Order may invite’.

Vin.1.174

Kd.4.16.21

BD.4.229

“This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have committed an offence of expiation on an Invitation day ... an offence which ought to be confessed ... an offence of wrong-doing ... an offence of wrong speech. Some monks

¹ Cf. Bu-Ss.9 (Vin.3.170). Vin-a.1078 says that offences incurred in all these cases are those of wrong-doing.

view it as an offence of wrong speech, other monks view it as an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. Monks, those monks who view it as an offence of wrong speech ... (= Kd.4.16.19) ‘... the Order may invite’.

Kd.4.16.22

“This is a case, monks, where a monk comes to have committed an offence of wrong speech on an Invitation day. Some monks view it as an offence of wrong speech, other monks view it as a grave offence; some monks ... as an offence of wrong speech, other monks ... of expiation; some monks ... offence of wrong speech, other monks ... which ought to be confessed; some monks view it as an offence of wrong speech, other monks view it as an offence of wrong-doing. Monks, those monks who view it as an offence of wrong speech ... (= Kd.4.16.19) ‘... the Order may invite’.

Kd.4.16.23

“This is a case, monks, where if on an Invitation day a monk should speak in the midst of the Order, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This matter is known but not the individual¹’. If it seems right to the Order, the Order, having set aside the matter, may invite²’, and he should be spoken to thus: ‘Your reverence, Invitation is laid down by the Lord for those who are pure. If the matter is known but not the individual, speak about that now at once.’

Kd.4.16.24

“This is a case, monks, where if on an Invitation day a monk should speak in the midst of the Order, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This individual is known but not the matter. If it seems right to the Order, the Order, having set aside the individual, may invite; and he should be spoken to thus: ‘Your reverence, Invitation is laid down by the Lord for those who are complete.³ If the individual is known but not the matter, speak about that now at once.’

Kd.4.16.25

“This is a case, monks, ... ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This matter is known and the individual. If it seems right to the Order, the Order, having set aside the matter and the individual, may invite’, and he should be spoken to thus: ‘Your reverence, Invitation is laid down by the Lord for the pure and for those who are complete. If the matter is known and also the individual, speak about that now at once.’

BD.4.230

Kd.4.16.26

¹ I.e., the person who committed the offence or “matter”, *vatthu*. ² Vin-a.1078 says “when we know the person, then we will reprove him, but let the Order invite now”. ³ A complete Order.

Vin.1.175 “If, monks, the matter is known before an Invitation day, the individual afterwards, it is right to say so. If, monks, the individual is known before an Invitation day, the matter afterwards, it is right to say so. If, monks, both the matter and the individual are known before an Invitation day, and (a monk) opens up (the cases) after the Invitation is finished, there is an offence of expiation for opening up.”¹

THE STORY OF MAKERS OF STRIFE

Kd.4.17.1 Now at that time several monks, friends and associates, entered on the rains in a certain residence in the Kosala country. In their neighbourhood other monks, makers of strife, makers of quarrels, makers of dispute, makers of contention, makers of legal questions in an Order, entered on the rains, saying: “When these monks have kept the rains we will suspend the invitation on an Invitation day.” But those monks heard: “It is said that in our neighbourhood other monks ... entered on the rains, saying: ‘When these monks ... on an Invitation day. ‘Now, what line of conduct should be followed by us?’” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.17.2 He said: “This is a case, monks, where several monks, friends and associates, enter on the rains in a certain residence. In their neighbourhood ... (as in [Kd.4.17.1](#)) ‘... on an Invitation day’ I allow you, monks, to carry out two or three Observances with these monks on the fourteenth (day),² thinking: ‘How can we invite before those monks (invite)?’ If, monks, those monks who are makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, arrive at a residence, then, monks, those resident monks, having gathered together quickly, may invite; and having invited, they should say (to the others): ‘We, your reverences, have invited; let the venerable ones do what seems fitting.’”

BD.4.231

Kd.4.17.3

¹ See [Bu-Pc.63](#), where, it is an offence to open up for further discussion a matter already settled. ² Vin-a.1079 says, “here, the fourth and fifth are the two ‘fourteen (days)’, but there is usually a third ‘fourteenth’; therefore the third and fourth, or the third, fourth and fifth are the two or three ‘fourteenths’ that should be carried out. Thus there come to be two ‘fourteenths’. Proceeding thus—the thirteenth or fourteenth for the makers of strife—these will invite on an Invitation day that is a fifteenth (day)”.

“If, monks, those monks who are makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order, arrive unexpectedly at that residence, those resident monks should make ready a seat, they should bring forward water for washing the feet, a footstool, a footstand, having gone to meet them they should receive their bowls and robes, they should offer them drinking water; having looked after them, (then) having gone outside the boundary, they may invite; having invited, they should say (to the others): ‘We, your reverences, have invited; let the venerable ones do what seems fitting.’

Kd.4.17.4

“If they should thus manage this, it is good. But if they do not manage it, the resident monks should be informed by an experienced, competent resident monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones who are residents listen to me. If it seems right to the venerables ones, we may now carry out the Observance, we may recite the Pātimokkha, we may invite on the next new-moon day¹. If, monks, those monks who are makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order, should speak thus to these monks: ‘All right, your reverences, but let us invite now at once’, they should be spoken to thus: ‘But you, your reverences, are not masters of our Invitation (-day), we will not invite yet’.

Vin.1.17.6

“If, monks, these monks who are makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order, should stay on until that new-moon day, then, monks, the resident monks should be informed by an experienced, competent resident monk ... ‘... let us invite on the next full-moon day²’ ... (as in Kd.4.17.4) ‘... we will not invite yet’.

Kd.4.17.5

“If, monks, those monks who are makers of strife ... should stay on until that full-moon day, then monks, these monks, each and every one, must invite on the next full-moon day of the *komudī cātumāsini*,³ (even if) they are unwilling.

Kd.4.17.6

“If, monks, while these monks are themselves inviting, an ill one suspends the invitation of one who is not ill, he should be spoken to thus: ‘The venerable one is ill, and it is said by the Lord that one who is ill is not able to endure being questioned. Wait, your reverence, until you are well, when you are well you can reprove him if you desire to do so’. If being spoken to thus, he (nevertheless) reproves him, in disrespect there is an offence of

Kd.4.17.7

BD.4.232

¹ *kāḷe*. ² *junḥe*; cf. above, BD.4.185. ³ See above, BD.4.205, n.3.

expiation.¹

Kd.4.17.8

“If, monks, while these monks are themselves inviting, one who is not ill suspends an ill one’s invitation, he should be spoken to thus: ‘Your reverence, this monk is ill, and it is said by the Lord that one who is ill is not able to endure being questioned. Wait, your reverence, until this monk is well; when he is well you can reprove him if you desire to do so’. If being spoken to thus, he (nevertheless) reproves him, in disrespect there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.4.17.9

“If, monks, while these monks are themselves inviting, an ill one suspends an ill one’s invitation, he should be spoken to thus: ‘The venerable ones are ill ... being questioned. Wait, your reverence, until you are (both) well; when he is well you can reprove him if you desire to do so’. If, being spoken to thus, he (nevertheless) reproves him, in disrespect there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.4.17.10

“If, monks, while these monks are themselves inviting, one who is not ill suspends the invitation of (another) who is not ill, the Order having questioned both closely and cross-questioned them, having had them dealt with according to the rule, may invite.”

HARMONIOUS INVITATION

Kd.4.18.1

Vin.1.177

Now at that time several monks, friends and companions, entered on the rains in a certain residence in the Kosala country. While these were staying together on friendly terms and harmonious, a certain comfort was arrived at. Then it occurred to these monks: “While we are staying together ... arrived at. But if we should invite now, it may be that (some) monks, having invited, may set forth on tour, and so we will come to lose² this comfort. Now what line of conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.4.18.2

BD.4.233

He said: “This is a case, monks, where several monks friends and companions, enter on the rains in a certain residence. While these are staying together ... arrived at. If it then occurs to these monks: ‘While we are staying

¹ Cf. also Bu-Pc.54. ² *paribāhirā*, external to, outside; as a noun, outsiders.

together so we will come to lose this comfort'. I allow you, monks, to make a protection of an Invitation day.¹

“And thus, monks, should it be made: Each and every one should gather together in the same place; when they have gathered together, the Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were staying together ... so will we come to lose this comfort. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may make a protection of an Invitation day, it may carry out the Observance, it may recite the Pātimokkha now; the Order may invite on the next *komudī cātumāsini* day. This is the motion.

Kd.4.18.3

“‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were staying together ... so will we come to lose this comfort. The Order is making a protection of the Invitation day; it will carry out the Observance, it will recite the Pātimokkha now; it will invite on the next *komudī cātumāsini* day. If the making a protection of the Invitation day (by the Order) is pleasing to the venerable ones (so that) it will carry out the Observance, will recite the Pātimokkha now, and will invite on the next *komudī cātumāsini* day, you should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. A protection of the Invitation day is made by the Order, it will carry out the Observance, it will recite the Pātimokkha now, and it will invite on the next *komudī cātumāsini* day. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Kd.4.18.4

“If, monks, when these monks have made a protection of an Invitation day, any monk should speak thus: ‘I want, your reverences, to set forth on a tour of the country, I have business to do in the country’, he should be spoken to thus: ‘Very well, your reverence, you can go when you have invited.’ And if, monks, that monk, while he is inviting, suspends another’s invitation, he should be spoken to thus: ‘You, your reverence, are not master of my Invitation day, I will not invite yet’. And if, monks, any monk

Kd.4.18.5

BD.4.234

Vin.1.178

¹ *pavāraṇāsamgaha*. Vin-a.1080 says that “when the *pavāraṇāsamgaha* has been given, there comes to be as it were an avoidance during the rains; incoming monks can not take their (the resident ones’) lodgings, nor should the rains be cut short by them, for, having invited, they get the chance to set out on tour even during (the rains)”. The monks protect their harmony by postponing the Invitation day to the end of the rainy season.

suspends that monk's invitation while that monk is inviting, the Order, having questioned both closely and cross-questioned them, should have them dealt with according to the rule.

Kd.4.18.6

“If, monks, that monk, having concluded his business in the country, returns again to that residence before the *komudī cātumāsini* day and if, monks, while those monks are inviting, any monk suspends that monk's invitation, he should be spoken to thus: ‘You, your reverence, are not master of my Invitation day, I have invited (already)’. If, monks, while those monks are inviting, that monk suspends any monk's invitation, the Order, having questioned both closely and having cross-questioned them, and having had them dealt with according to the rule, may invite.”

The Fourth Section: that on Invitation

THIS IS ITS KEY

Having kept the rains they went to see the teacher in Kosala,
 communion that was uncomfortable (and) like beasts,
 suitable in regard to one another,
 Inviting on a seat,¹ and two, (formal) act, ill one,
 relations, kings, and thieves, and men of abandoned life,
 likewise monks who are enemies of monks,
 Five, four, three, two, one, fallen,
 he doubted, he remembered,
 the whole Order, being in doubt,
 greater, like, smaller (number),
 Resident monks, the fourteenth,
 the two communions by mark,
 should arrive, not in a seated (assembly),
 giving leave of absence, non-invitation,
 About savages, almost ended, great cloud,
 and an obstacle, invitation,
 they do not give (leave), ‘in case our’,
 and not (duly) suspended, for a monk,
 ‘Or on what?’, and which in regard to what is seen, heard, suspected,
 reproof and reproved, grave offence, matter, strife,
 And a protection of an Invitation day,
 not master, may invite.

BD.4.235

Vin.1.179

¹ *pavārentāpaṇā*. I follow the reading *pavārent āsane* of Sinhalese edition, and as suggested by OLDENBERG at [Vin.1.379](#) (see [Kd.4.19.2](#)).

5. LEATHER (CAMMA)

THE STORY OF SOṆA KOḶIVISA

At one time the awakened one, the Lord, was staying at Rājagaha on Mount Vulture Peak. Now at that time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha ruled with supreme authority over eighty thousand villages. Now at that time, at Campā, a merchant's son called Soṇa Koḷivisa¹ was delicately nurtured and down came to have grown on the soles of his feet. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having had those eighty thousand village overseers² convened, sent a messenger to Soṇa Koḷivisa on some business, saying: "Let Soṇa come, I want Soṇa to come."

Kd.5.1.1
BD.4.236

Then Soṇa Koḷivisa's parents spoke thus to Soṇa Koḷivisa: "The king, dear Soṇa, wants to see your feet. Do not you, dear Soṇa, stretch out your feet towards the king; sit down cross-legged in front of the king, and as you are sitting down the king will see your feet." Then they sent Soṇa Koḷivisa away in a palanquin. Then Soṇa Koḷivisa approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having approached, having greeted. King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, he sat down cross-legged in front of the king. So King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha saw the down that was growing on the soles of Soṇa Koḷivisa's feet.

Kd.5.1.2

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having instructed those eighty thousand village overseers in matters concerning this world, dismissed

Kd.5.1.3

¹ This Soṇa episode recurs, in a shorter form, at AN.iii.374-AN.iii.379. Soṇa's verses at Thag.632-644. Legend of how he came to be called Soṇa (golden) given in Thag A. (see *Psalms of the Brethren* p.275f.), and AN-a.i.233f. At AN.i.24 he is called foremost of those who put forth energy; his clan name is there spelt Koḷivīsa. ² Vin-a.1081 speaks of these as sons of (respectable) families living in these villages.

them, saying: “You, good sirs, are now instructed by me in matters concerning this world; go along, pay homage to this Lord, and our Lord will instruct you in transcendental matters.” Then those eighty thousand village overseers approached Mount Vulture Peak.

Kd.5.1.4

Now at that time the venerable Sāgata¹ was the Lord’s attendant. Then those eighty thousand village overseers approached the venerable Sāgata; having approached, they spoke thus to the venerable Sāgata: “Honoured sir, these eighty thousand village overseers are approaching here to see the Lord. It were good, honoured sir, if we might have a chance to see the Lord.”

BD.4.237

Vin.1.180

“Well, then, do you, venerable ones, remain² here for a moment until I have let the Lord know.”

Kd.5.1.5

Then the venerable Sāgata, having stepped down³ from the moonstone (step)⁴ in front of the eighty thousand watching village overseers, having stepped up in front of the Lord, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, these eighty thousand village overseers are approaching here to see the Lord. Lord, does the Lord think it is now the right time for this?”

“Well, then, do you, Sāgata, make a seat ready in the shade of the dwelling-place.”

Kd.5.1.6

“Very well, Lord,” and the venerable Sāgata having answered the Lord in assent, having taken a chair, having stepped down from in front of the Lord, having stepped up on the moonstone (step) in front of the eighty thousand watching village overseers, made ready a seat in the shade of the dwelling-place. Then the Lord, having issued from the dwelling-place, sat down on the seat made ready in the shade of the dwelling-place.

Kd.5.1.7

Then those eighty thousand village overseers approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.108](#), where Sāgata’s behaviour gave rise to the offence of drinking strong drink. See [BD.2.382](#), [n.6](#). ² *hotha*. ³ *nimujjitvā ... ummujjitvā*. These two verbs are often used of plunging into and emerging from water. Here they seem to mean getting off one step and on to another. ⁴ *pāṭikā*, such as is (in the old cities of Ceylon) an architectural feature placed at the bottom of a short flight of steps leading up to a *vihāra* or a “temple”. See *Mahāvamsa* 31, *Mahāvamsa* 61. Nowadays it is called “moonstone step”, although in shape it is half a circle. It is called “half-moon stone”, *aḍḍhacandapāsāna*, at [Vin-a.1081](#).

distance. Then those eighty thousand village overseers paid respect only to the venerable Sāgata, not likewise to the Lord. Then the Lord, knowing by reasoning of mind the minds of those eighty thousand village overseers, addressed the venerable Sāgata, saying: “Well then, do you, Sāgata, abundantly show a state of further-men,¹ a wonder of psychic power.”

BD.4.238

“Very well, Lord,” and the venerable Sagata, having answered the Lord in assent, having risen above the ground,² paced up and down in the air, in the atmosphere, and he stood, and he sat down, and he lay down, and he smoked³ and he blazed,⁴ and then he vanished.

Kd.5.1.8

Then the venerable Sagata, having shown in the air, in the atmosphere, various states of further-men and wonders of psychic power, having inclined his head towards the Lord’s feet, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Lord is my teacher, I am a disciple; Lord, the Lord is my teacher, I am a disciple”. Then those eighty thousand village overseers, saying: “Indeed it is marvellous, indeed, it is wonderful, that even a disciple can be of such great psychic power, of such great might. What must the teacher be?” paid respect only to the Lord, not likewise to the venerable Sagata.

Kd.5.1.9

Then the Lord, knowing by reasoning of mind the minds of those eighty thousand village overseers, talked a progressive talk,⁵ that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven, he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in renouncing (them). When the Lord knew that their minds were ready, malleable, devoid of the hindrances, uplifted, pleased, then he explained to them that teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the way. And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take dye, even so as those eighty thousand village overseers were (sitting) on that very seat, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose: that, “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop.”

Vin.1.181

Kd.5.1.10

These, having seen *dhamma*,⁶ attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, having crossed over doubt, having put away uncertainty, having attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s

¹ *uttarimanussadhamma*. See BD.1, Introduction, p.xxivff. ² See BD.1.79, n.6. ³ *dhūpāyati*. At Vin.4.109 a verb used to describe his activities is *padhūpāsi*, he blew forth smoke. ⁴ He is also said to have blazed at Vin.4.109 ⁵ Cf. Vin.1.15–Vin.1.16. ⁶ Cf. Vin.1.12.

instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “Excellent, Lord, it is excellent, Lord. Just as, Lord, one should set upright what has been upset or should uncover what is covered or should point out the way to one who is astray or should bring a lamp into the darkness so that those with eyes might see forms, even so is *dhamma* explained in many a figure by the Lord. We, Lord, are those going to the Lord for refuge, to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord receive us as lay-followers gone for refuge on this day for as long as life lasts.”

BD.4.239

Kd.5.1.11

Then it occurred to Soṇa Koḷivisa: “In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord it is not easy for those who live in a house to lead the Brahma-faring that is wholly complete, wholly pure, and polished like a conch-shell. What now if I, having cut off hair and beard, having donned yellow robes, should go forth from home into homelessness?” Then those eighty thousand village overseers, delighted with the Lord’s speech, having given thanks for it, having risen from the seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping their right sides towards him.

Kd.5.1.12

Then Soṇa Koḷivisa, soon after those eighty thousand village overseers had departed, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Soṇa Koḷivisa spoke thus to the Lord: “In so far as I, Lord, understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord it is not easy for those who live in a house to lead the Brahma-faring that is wholly complete, wholly pure and polished like a conch-shell. I want, Lord, having cut off hair and beard, having donned yellow robes, to go forth from home into homelessness. Lord, may the Lord let me go forth.” So Soṇa Koḷivisa received the going forth in the Lord’s presence, he received ordination. And soon after he was ordained the venerable Soṇa stayed in the Cool Grove.

Vin.1.182

Kd.5.1.13

Because of his great output of energy in pacing up and down his feet broke, the place for pacing up and down in became stained with blood as though there had been slaughter of cattle. Then as the venerable Soṇa was meditating in private a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “Those who are the Lord’s disciples dwell putting forth energy; I am one of these, yet my mind is not freed from the cankers with no grasping, and moreover there are my family’s possessions. It might be possible to enjoy the possessions

BD.4.240

and to do good. Suppose that I, having returned to the low life, should enjoy the possessions and should do good?”

Kd.5.1.14

Then the Lord, knowing by mind the venerable Soṇa’s reasoning of mind, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm, or might bend back his outstretched arm, so did he, vanishing from Mount Vulture Peak, appear in the Cool Grove.¹ Then the Lord, touring the lodgings together with several monks, approached the venerable Soṇa’s place for pacing up and down in. The Lord saw that the venerable Soṇa’s place for pacing up and down in was stained with blood, and seeing (this), he addressed the monks, saying:

“Now why, monks, is this place for pacing up and down in stained with blood as though there has been slaughter of cattle?”

“Lord, because of the venerable Soṇa’s great energy in pacing up and down his feet broke, and this place for pacing up and down in is stained with his blood as though there had been slaughter of cattle.”

Kd.5.1.15

Then the Lord approached the venerable Soṇa’s dwelling-place, and having approached he sat down on an appointed seat. And the venerable Soṇa, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord spoke thus to the venerable Soṇa as he was sitting at a respectful distance:

“Soṇa, as you were meditating in private did not a reasoning arise in your mind like this: ‘Those who are the Lord’s disciples dwell putting forth energy ... (as in [Kd.5.1.13](#)) ... Suppose that I, having returned to the low life, should enjoy the possessions and should do good?’”

“Yes, Lord.”

“What do you think about this, Soṇa? Were you clever at the lute’s stringed music when formerly you were a householder?”

“Yes, Lord.”

“What do you think about this, Soṇa? When the strings of your lute were too taut, was your lute at that time tuneful and fit for playing?”

“No, indeed, Lord.”

What do you think about this, Soṇa? When the strings of your lute were too slack, was your lute at that time tuneful and fit for playing?”

Kd.5.1.16
BD.4.241

“No, indeed, Lord.”

¹ AN.iii.374 adds, after Cool Grove, “in front of the venerable Soṇa”. This would balance end of [Kd.5.1.17](#) below.

“What do you think about this, Soṇa? When the strings of your lute were neither too taut nor too slack, but were keyed to an even pitch,¹ was your lute at that time tuneful and fit for playing?”

“Yes, Lord.”

Vin.1.183

“Even so, Soṇa, does too much output of energy conduce to restlessness, does too feeble energy conduce to slothfulness.

Kd.5.1.17

“Therefore do you, Soṇa, determine upon evenness² in energy and pierce the evenness of the faculties³ and reflect upon it.⁴”

“Yes, Lord,” the venerable Soṇa answered the Lord in assent. Then the Lord, having exhorted the venerable Soṇa with this exhortation,⁵ as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, so did he, vanishing from in front of the venerable Soṇa in the Cool Grove, appear on Mount Vulture Peak.

Kd.5.1.18

After that⁶ the venerable Soṇa determined upon evenness in energy and he pierced the evenness of the faculties and reflected upon it. Then the venerable Soṇa, dwelling alone, aloof, earnest, ardent, self-resolute, having soon realised here and now by his own super-knowledge that supreme goal of the Brahma-faring for the sake of which young men of family rightly go forth from home into homelessness, abided in it, and he understood: Destroyed is birth, lived is the Brahma-faring, done is what was to be done, there is no more of being such and such. And so the venerable Soṇa became one of the perfected ones.

BD.4.242

Kd.5.1.19

When the venerable Soṇa had attained perfection, it occurred to him: “Suppose I were to declare profound knowledge⁷ in the Lord’s presence?” Then the venerable Soṇa approached the Lord; having approached, having

¹ *same gaṇe patiṭṭhitā*. ² On the readings *samataṃ* (as here) and *samathaṃ*, see GS.iii.267, n.3. The former is perhaps the more likely to be meant, and would carry out the idea of the “even pitch”. ³ *indriyānaṃ ca samataṃ paṭivijjha*. Commentary says: “pierce the evenness, the even nature of the faculty of faith and so on, the evenness of the faculties that are connected: so faith with wisdom and wisdom with faith, energy with contemplation and contemplation with energy.” ⁴ *tattha ca nimittaṃ gaṇhāhi*. *Nimittaṃ gaṇhāti* can mean to grasp a sign, a salient feature; or to reflect on a mental object. Vin-a.1081 says: mindfulness as to this evenness should arise; seize on that characteristic of (or, reflect on) tranquillity, insight, the ways, the fruits, and practise these. ⁵ Referred to at AN-a.i.237 as *vīnovāda*, the exhortation on the lute; cf. *Psalms of the Brethren* p.276. ⁶ *aparena samayena*. ⁷ *aññā*, gnosis.

greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Soṇa spoke thus to the Lord:

Kd.5.1.20

“Lord, that monk who is one perfected, who has destroyed the cankers, lived the life, done what was to be done, shed the burden, won his own goal, destroyed utterly the fetter of becoming, and is wholly freed by profound knowledge, he comes to be intent upon¹ six matters: he comes to be intent upon renunciation, he comes to be intent upon aloofness, he comes to be intent upon non-harming, he comes to be intent upon the destruction of grasping, he comes to be intent upon the destruction of craving, he comes to be intent upon non-confusion.

Kd.5.1.21

“Perhaps, Lord, one of the venerable ones here might think: ‘Could it be that this venerable one is intent upon renunciation depending upon mere faith alone?’ But this, Lord, is not to be regarded thus. Lord, the monk who has destroyed the cankers, has lived the life, done what was to be done, not seeing aught in himself to be done or to be added to what has been done, being passionless comes to be intent on renunciation because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred comes to be intent on renunciation because of the destruction of hatred, being without confusion comes to be intent on renunciation because of the destruction of confusion.

Kd.5.1.22

“Perhaps, Lord, one of the venerable ones here might think: ‘Could it be that this venerable one is intent on aloofness while hankering after gains, honour, fame?’ But this, Lord, is not to be regarded thus. Lord, the monk who has destroyed the cankers ... or to be added to what has been done, being passionless comes to be intent on aloofness because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred ... being without confusion comes to be intent on aloofness because of the destruction of confusion.

Vin.1.184

BD.4.243

Kd.5.1.23

“Perhaps, Lord, one of the venerable ones here might think: ‘Could it be that this venerable one is intent on non-harming, is backsliding from the essence to the contagion of habit and custom²?’ But this, Lord, is not to be regarded thus. Lord, the monk who has destroyed the cankers ... or to be added to what has been done, being passionless comes to be intent on

¹ *adhimutta*, striving for. ² *silabbataparāmāsa*. Vin-a.1082 explains: *silāñ ca vatañ ca parāmasitvā gahitañ gahaṇamattañ*, “the mere holding on to what is held to, having rubbed up against (come into contact with) moral habit (or, good works) and custom” (as though this were enough).

non-harming because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred ... being without confusion comes to be intent on non-harming because of the destruction of confusion.

Kd.5.1.24

“Being passionless he comes to be intent on the destruction of grasping because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred he comes to be intent on the destruction of grasping because of the destruction of hatred, being without confusion he comes to be intent on the destruction of grasping because of the destruction of confusion; being passionless he comes to be intent on the destruction of craving because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred he comes to be intent on the destruction of craving because of the destruction of hatred, being without confusion he comes to be intent on the destruction of craving because of the destruction of confusion; being passionless he comes to be intent on non-confusion because of the destruction of passion, being without hatred he comes to be intent on non-confusion because of the destruction of hatred, being without confusion he comes to be intent on non-confusion because of the destruction of confusion.

Kd.5.1.25

“Thus, Lord, even if¹ shapes cognisable by the eye come very strongly into the field of vision of a monk whose mind is wholly freed, they do not obsess his mind for his mind comes to be undefiled,² firm, won to composure, and he notes its passing hence.³ If sounds cognisable by the ear ... if scents cognisable by the nose ... if tastes cognisable by the tongue ... if touches cognisable by the body ... if mental objects⁴ cognisable by the mind⁵ come very strongly into the field of thought of a monk whose mind is wholly freed, they do not obsess his mind for his mind comes to be undefiled, firm, won to composure, and he notes its passing hence.

BD.4.244

Kd.5.1.26

“It is as if, Lord, there were a rocky mountain slope without a cleft, without a hollow, of one mass, and as if wild wind and rain should come very strongly from the eastern quarter—it would neither tremble nor quake nor shake violently; and as if wild wind and rain should come very strongly from the western quarter ... from the northern quarter ... from the southern

¹ As also at AN.iv.404. ² *amissikata*. Vin-a.1082 explains this to mean unmixed with (or, undefiled by) the *kilesas* (obstructions). ³ Vin-a.1083 says this means: “he sees the arising and passing away of that mind”, *tassa cittassa uppādam pi vayam pi passati*. ⁴ *dhammā*.

⁵ *mano*.

quarter—it would neither tremble nor quake nor shake violently. Even so, Lord, if shapes cognisable by the eye come very strongly into the field of vision of a monk whose mind is wholly freed ... if mental objects cognisable by the mind come very strongly into the field of thought of a monk whose mind is wholly freed, they do not obsess his mind, for his mind comes to be undefiled, firm, won to composure, and he notes its passing hence.”

If one is intent upon renunciation and mind’s aloofness¹,
 If one is intent upon non-harming and destruction of grasping,
 If one is intent on destruction of craving and mind’s non-confusion,

Kd.5.1.27

Vin.1.185

Having seen sensations’ rise, his mind is wholly freed.

For that monk whose mind is calmed and wholly freed
 There is nothing to add to what has been done,
 there is naught to be done.

As a rock of one mass by wind is never moved,²
 So shapes, tastes, sounds, scents, touches and all
 Pleasant and unpleasant mental objects³ stir not a man like this.

BD.4.245

His mind is firm, well freed,⁴ and he notes its passing hence.

REJECTION OF DOUBLE-LINED SANDALS

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Thus, monks, do young men of family declare profound knowledge. The goal is spoken of but the self is not obtruded. But then it seems to me that there are some foolish men

Kd.5.1.28

¹ These lines, to the end, form the conclusion of the verses ascribed to Soṇa Kōḷivisa at Thag.640–Thag.644. They also occur at AN.iii.378f. Metrical translations are at *Psalms of the Brethren* 277 and GS.iii.269f. Version above, and that at *Vinaya Texts* ii.12 are rather more literal in places; but none of the others recognises that *dhammā* means mental objects (last line but one), and already referred to by Soṇa (as the sixth “sense-datum”). ² This line occurs at Dh.81. ³ See note at Kd.1.11.2 (above) for further references. ⁴ Thag.644 reads *visaññuttam* instead of *vippamuttam* (as above and at AN.iii.379).

here who declare profound knowledge for fun; these afterwards come to disaster.”¹

Kd.5.1.29

Then the Lord addressed the venerable Soṇa, saying: “You, Soṇa, have been delicately nurtured. I allow for you, Soṇa, sandals with one lining.”

“But I, Lord, gave up eighty cartloads of gold² when I went forth from home into homelessness, and a herd of seven elephants.³ Because of this there will be speakers against me, saying: ‘Soṇa Koḷivisa gave up eighty cartloads of gold when he went forth from home into homelessness, and a herd of seven elephants; and now this very (person) is clinging on to⁴ sandals with one lining.’

Kd.5.1.30

“If the Lord will allow them to the Order of monks, I too will make use of them, but if the Lord will not allow them to the Order of monks, neither will I make use of them.” Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, I allow sandals with one lining. **Monks, doubly lined⁵ sandals should not be worn, trebly lined⁶ sandals should not be worn, sandals with many linings⁷ should not be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.4.246

REJECTION OF ALL DARK GREEN, ETC.

Kd.5.2.1

“Now at that time the group of six monks wore sandals that were entirely dark green⁸ ... that were entirely yellow ... that were entirely red ... that were entirely crimson ... that were entirely black ... that were dyed entirely

¹ This paragraph occurs at AN.iii.359. Cf. AN.i.218; GS.i.198, n.2; MN.i.396. Vin-a.1083 explains “the goal is spoken of” by saying “if he is called an arahant, that is the goal spoken of. But properly (*eva*) it should be taken as ‘the meaning of a sutta from the explanation of a suddanta’” (*attha* means both goal and meaning). It explains “the self is not obtruded” as “if (the profound knowledge) is declared thus, ‘I am an arahant’, the self is not obtruded” (or mentioned or brought forward, *na upanīta*). ² Misprint at Vin.1.185 has been corrected at *Vinaya Texts* ii.13, n.3 to *asīsakaṭavāhe hiraññam*. ³ Vin-a.1083 says that here this herd (retinue, array, *anīka*) is called six cow-elephants and one bull-elephant. ⁴ *satto* (with instrumental), or ‘is enamoured of’. ⁵ *diguṇa ... tiguṇa*. ⁶ *diguṇa ... tiguṇa*. ⁷ *gaṇaṅgaṇupāhanā*: Vin-a.1083 says “sandals with upwards of four linings”. ⁸ *nīlika*. See BD.2.407, n.2, BD.2.408, n.1, n.2.

orange¹ ... that were dyed entirely multi-coloured.² People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, sandals that are entirely dark green are not to be worn ... sandals that are dyed entirely multi-coloured are not to be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six monks wore sandals with dark green straps³ ... with yellow straps ... with red straps ... with crimson straps ... with black straps ... with dyed orange straps ... with dyed multi-coloured straps. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, sandals with dark green straps ... sandals with dyed multi-coloured straps are not to be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six monks wore sandals with heel-coverings⁴ ... sandals that were knee-boots⁵ ... sandals that were top-boots⁶ ... sandals that were filled with cotton⁷ ... sandals of (many hues., like) partridges’ wings⁸ ... sandals pointed with rams’ horns ... sandals pointed with goats’ horns ... sandals (ornamented) with scorpions’ tails ... sandals sewn round with peacocks’ tail feathers ... embroidered⁹ sandals. People looked down

¹ *mahārangaratta*. Vin-a.1083, “the colour of a centipede’s back”. ² *mahānāmaratta*. Vin-a.1083 says, “it is when the colours are mixed, the colours of pale foliage, but the Kurundiya calls it the colours of the *paduma*-lotus flowers”. These could be red or white. *Mahānāma* may be the name of a plant, however. ³ *vaṭṭikā*. Vin-a.1084 reads *vaḍḍhikā*, and explains by *vaddha*. ⁴ *khallakabaddha*. Cf. Pv-a.127. See note at *Vinaya Texts* ii.15 on doubtful meaning of the nature of all these forms of foot-covering, so curiously called *upāhana*, sandals or slippers. ⁵ *puṭabaddha*. Vin-a.1084 says “it is called a Greek (*yonaka*) sandal; it covers the whole foot as far as the knee”. ⁶ *pāliḡuṇṭhima*. These covered the upper *pāda*, foot or leg, but not the knee, Vin-a.1084. ⁷ *tūlapuṇṇika*. On the three kinds of cotton, *tūla*, see **BD.3.92, and n.2** there. ⁸ *tittirapattika*. Vin-a.1084 explains by *tittirapattasadisā vicittavaddhā*, which is followed in above translation, although “dyed multi-coloured” has already been dealt with. ⁹ *citra*; often means variously coloured or gaily coloured. Cf. *citrūpāhana* at DN.i.7.

upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, sandals with heel-coverings should not be worn ... embroidered sandals should not be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.5.2.4

Now at that time the group of six monks wore sandals decorated with lion-skins¹ ... with tiger-skins ... with panther-skins ... with black antelope-skins ... with otter²-skins ... with cat-skins ... with squirrel-skins ... with owl-skins³. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, sandals decorated with lion-skins ... with owl-skins are not to be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these) there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

ALLOWANCE FOR CAST OFF SANDALS WITH MANY LININGS

Kd.5.3.1

Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood with a certain monk as his attendant. Then that monk went limping along behind the Lord. A certain lay follower, having put on sandals with many linings, saw the Lord coming from afar; seeing him, having taken off his sandals, he approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he approached that monk; having approached, having greeted that monk, he spoke thus:

BD.4.248

“Why, honoured sir, does the master limp?”

“My feet are split, sir.”

Kd.5.3.2

“See, honoured sir, here are sandals.”

Vin.1.187

¹ Vin-a.1084 “they are made having joined the lion-skin to the edges, as to a seam of a robe”.

² *udda*. Meaning uncertain, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.16, n.5. Both COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, Vol. 4, No.2, p.133, and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* sub. article Dabbapuppha Jātaka, take *udda* as otter. Cf. *uddapota* at Cariyāpīṭaka 1.x.2. ³ Vin-a.1084 explains *ulūka*, owl, by *pakkhibiḷāla*, flying fox.

“No, sir, sandals with many linings are objected to¹ by the Lord.”

“Take these sandals, monk.”² Then the Lord in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, sandals with many linings that have been cast off. **Monks, new sandals with many linings are not to be worn. Whoever should wear (these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

REJECTION OF SANDALS INSIDE A MONASTERY

Now at that time the Lord was pacing up and down without sandals in the open air. Monks who were elders, thinking: “The teacher is pacing up and down without sandals”, also paced up and down without sandals. The group of six monks, while the teacher was pacing up and down without sandals and while monks who were elders were pacing up and down without sandals, paced up and down with sandals on. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: How can this group of six monks, while the teacher is pacing up and down without sandals, and while monks who are elders are pacing up and down without sandals, pace up and down with sandals on?”

Kd.5.4.1

Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, while the teacher ... with sandals on?”

Kd.5.4.2

“It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How monks, can these foolish men, while the teacher was pacing up and down without sandals, and while monks who are elders were pacing up and down without sandals, pace up and down with sandals on? For, monks, even these white-froked householders, on account of procuring a craft for their livelihood, will be respectful, deferential, courteous³ towards their teachers.

BD.4.249

Kd.5.4.3

¹ *paṭikkhittā*. Note that he does not say “not allowed”. ² As pointed out at *Vinaya Texts* ii.17, n.1, this must be understood as spoken by Gotama. A layman did not address a monk as “monk” but Gotama is constantly recorded to do so. ³ These three words also at *Vin.1.45*; *AN.iii.15*.

“Herein, monks, let your light shine forth so that you who have thus gone forth in this *dhamma* and discipline which are well taught may be¹ respectful, deferential, courteous towards teachers,² grades of teachers,³ preceptors, grades of preceptors.⁴ It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, you should not pace up and down with sandals on while teachers, grades of teachers, preceptors, grades of preceptors are pacing up and down without sandals. Whoever should (so) pace up and down, there is an offence of wrong-doing. And, monks, you should not wear sandals within a monastery. Whoever should wear them (there), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.5.5.1

Now at that time a certain monk came to have an affliction of corns on his feet.⁵ Having taken hold of that monk, they made him go out to relieve himself. As the Lord was touring the lodgings he saw those monks who, having taken hold of that monk, were making him go out to relieve himself, and seeing (this), he approached those monks, having approached, he spoke thus to those monks:

Vin.1.188

Kd.5.5.2

“What, monks, is this monk’s disease?”

BD.4.250

“Lord, this venerable one has an affliction of corns on the feet, and having taken hold of him, we are making him go out to relieve himself.” Then the Lord in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

¹ Cf. **Kd.10.2.20**. ² The four teachers meant here, according to Vin-a.1085, are those for the going forth, for ordination, for the resources, for the recitation (of the Pātimokkha). Cf. Vism.94. ³ *ācariyamatta*. Vin-a.1085 says that one of six years’ standing is for one (i.e. to teach one) of no (full) year’s standing; so one of seven years’ standing will be for one of one year’s standing, one of eight for one of two, one of nine for one of three, one of ten for one of four years’ standing. ⁴ *upajjhāyamatta*. Vin-a.1085: these are monks who are friends and companions of a preceptor, or of any who are ten years one’s senior (in the Order). ⁵ *pādakhilābādha*. *Khīla* may here mean an eruption. Vin-a.1085: the flesh comes to have stood out from (or left, *nikkhanta*) the foot, like a stake (reading *khīla*; cf. Ja.v.204 *khīlāni*, variant reading *khilāni*, meaning “sharp stakes”).

“I allow, monks, he whose feet are painful or he whose feet are split or he who has an affliction of corns on the feet, to wear sandals.”

Now at that time monks got up on to couches and chairs with unwashed feet, and robes and lodgings were soiled.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.5.6.1

“I allow you, monks, when you think: ‘I will get up now on to a couch or a chair’, to wear sandals.”

Now at that time, monks, going to an Observance-hut² and to a meeting-place at night, in the dark trod upon stumps of trees and on thorns, and their feet became painful. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.5.6.2

“I allow you, monks, to use sandals within a monastery, a torch, a light, a staff.³”

REJECTION OF WOODEN SANDALS

Now at that time the group of six monks, getting up in the night towards dawn, having put on wooden shoes,⁴ paced up and down in the open air talking in high, loud, rasping⁵ tones a variety of worldly talk,⁶ that is to say talk of kings, talk of thieves, talk of great ministers, talk of armies, talk of dangers, talk of battles, talk of food, talk of drink, talk of clothes, talk of beds, talk of garlands, talk of scents, talk of relations, talk of vehicles, talk of villages, talk of little towns, talk of towns, talk of the country, talk of women, talk of heroes,⁷ talk of streets, talk of wells, talk of those departed before, talk of diversity, speculation about the world, speculation about the sea, talk on becoming and not becoming thus or thus; and they both killed insects, having trodden on them, and also made monks fall away from contemplation.⁸

Kd.5.6.3

¹ Cf. Vin.2.174. ² *uposathagga*; cf. Vin.3.66. There is also *uposathāgāra*, translated above, e.g. Kd.2.9.1 as “Observance-hall”. ³ *kattaradaṇḍa*; cf. Vin.2.76, Vin.2.217, Vin.3.160. The last part of the rule of Kd.5.4.3 appears to be nullified by this rule at Kd.5.6.2. ⁴ *kaṭṭhapāduka*. ⁵ *khaṭakhaṭasaddā*, sounds of clearing the throat. ⁶ *tiracchānakathā*; cf. BD.3.82 for notes. ⁷ *sūrakathā* here; see BD.3.82, n.5. ⁸ Cf. AN.iii.343, AN.iv.343.

Kd.5.6.4

BD.4.251 Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticized, spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks getting up in the night towards dawn, having put on wooden shoes, pace up and down in the open air talking in high, loud rasping tones a variety of worldly talk ... and both kill insects, having trodden on them, and also make monks fall away from contemplation?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, getting up in the night towards dawn ... and made monks fall away from contemplation?”

Vin.1.189 “It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, wooden shoes are not to be worn. Whoever should wear (them), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.5.7.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Benares. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Benares. The Lord stayed there near Benares at Isipatana in the deer-park. Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking, “Wooden shoes are objected to by the Lord”, having had young palmyra palms¹ cut, wore shoes of palmyra palm leaves; those young palmyra palms which were cut, withered. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having had young palmyra palms cut, wear shoes of palmyra palm leaves? These young palmyra palms which were cut, are withering. These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are harming life that is one-facultied²”.

Kd.5.7.2

Monks heard these people who looked down upon, criticised, spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, having had young palmyra palms cut, wear shoes of palmyra palm leaves, and that those young palmyra palms which were cut are withering?” “It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

BD.4.252

“How, monks, can these foolish men, having had young palmyra palms cut, wear shoes of palmyra palm leaves (so that) the young palmyra palms

¹ *tālataruṇa*, possibly meaning the shoots of the palm trees; but I think not, for it was probably the young trees themselves that withered once the monks had had some of their leaves cut off, and not just the cut leaves or sprouts or shoots. ² Cf. [BD.2.223](#), [BD.2.226](#), [BD.3.320](#).

wither? For, monks, people think that there are living things in a tree.¹ It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, you should not wear shoes of palmyra palm leaves. Whoever should wear (them), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: “Shoes of palmyra palm leaves are objected to by the Lord”, having had young bamboos cut, wore shoes of bamboo leaves; those young bamboos that were cut withered ... (as in **Kd.5.7.1**, **Kd.5.7.2**. Read bamboo instead of palmyra palm) ...”
Monks, you should not wear shoes of bamboo leaves. Whoever should wear (them), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.5.7.3

Then the Lord, having stayed at Benares for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Bhaddiya. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Bhaddiya. The Lord stayed there at Bhaddiya in the Jātiyā Grove.² Now at that time the monks of Bhaddiya were addicted to the practice of ornamenting their shoes in a variety of ways. They made *tiṇa*-grass shoes and had them made ... *muñja*-grass shoes and had them made ... shoes of reeds and had them made ... marshy date-palm³ shoes and had them made ... *kamala*-grass⁴ shoes and had them made, they made woollen shoes and had them made; they neglected the recitation, the interrogation, the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher wisdom.⁵

Kd.5.8.1

Vin.1.190

BD.4.253

Kd.5.8.2

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks of Bhaddiya be addicted to the practice of ornamenting shoes in a variety of ways, and make *tiṇa*-grass shoes and have them made ... and neglect the recitation, the interrogation,

¹ Cf. **BD.2.223**, **BD.2.227**. (omitted by mistake: insert before “It is not, foolish men ...”).

² Mentioned at **Vin.1.241**, **Vin.3.37**; **AN.iii.36**. ³ *hīntāla*. Monier Williams gives: “the marshy date tree, a species of palm, Phoenix or Elate Paludosa.” Vin-a.1085 says they are shoes made of the leaves of *khajjūri* (not in *Pali-English Dictionary*, but Childers gives “the wild date palm tree, Phoenix *Sylvestris*”), but not the leaves of the *hīntāla* itself. ⁴ *kamala* seems not to be “lotus” here. Vin-a.1085 says, there is a grass (*tiṇa*) called *kamalavaṇṇa* (*kamala*-coloured, with variant reading of *-tiṇa* for *-vaṇṇa*), therefore they call the made-up shoes *khus-khus* shoes. For *khus-khus*, *usīra*, see **BD.2.228**, **n.1**. ⁵ Cf. **BD.2.94**.

the higher morality, the higher thought, the higher wisdom?" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monks of Bhaddiya are addicted to the practice of ... and neglect the recitation ... the higher wisdom?"

"It is true, Lord." The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them saying:

"How, monks, can these foolish men be addicted to the practice of ornamenting shoes ... and neglect the recitation ... the higher wisdom? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..."

Kd.5.8.3

Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, *tiṇa*-grass shoes should not be worn, *muñja*-grass shoes ... shoes of reeds ... marshy date-palm shoes ... *kamala*-grass shoes ... woollen shoes should not be worn, shoes made with gold ... shoes made with silver ... shoes made with gems¹ ... shoes made with lapis lazuli² ... shoes made with crystal³ ... with bronze ... with glass⁴ ... with tin⁵ ... with lead⁶ ... shoes made with copper should not be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing. And any shoes, monks, that can be handed on⁷ should not be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, three (kinds of) shoes that are in fixed places and that cannot be handed on⁸: privy shoes, urinal shoes, rinsing shoes.⁹"

BD.4.254

Kd.5.9.1

Then the Lord, having stayed in Bhaddiya for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvattthī. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Sāvattthī. The Lord stayed there in Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anātha-

¹ At DN.i.7 it is said that Gotama abstains from using *maṇi*, gems or precious stones. Sometimes meaning crystal. At Vin.2.112 bowls made of any of these materials are not allowed.

² *veḷuriya*, or beryl. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.82, n.1. Ja.iv.141 speaks of *veḷuriya* as *vaṃsarāga*, and Vb-a.64 as *vaṃsavaṇṇamaṇi*, a jewel the colour of bamboo. A word-play on *veḷuriya* and *veḷu* (bamboo) is probably the origin of such definitions. ³ *phalika*, or quartz. ⁴ *kāca*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.82, n.2. ⁵ *tipu*. At Vin.2.112 tin and lead supports for bowls are allowed. At SN.v.92 tin and lead are among the five corruptions (alloys) of gold, *jātarūpa*. Vb-a.63 classifies gold (*suvanṇa* as above), tin, lead, and the next, copper (*tambuloḥa*) under *jātiloha*, (seven) natural metals. It calls *tipu* white *tipu*, and *sīsa* dark *tipu*. ⁶ *sīsa*. ⁷ *kāci saṃkamanīyā pādukā*. ⁸ Vin-a.1085 says: well fixed to the ground, immovable, not to be folded up (or put away, collected, gathered up, *asaṃhāriya*). ⁹ For further references, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.24, n.3.

piṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks caught hold of cows, which were crossing the river Aciravatī, by their horns, and they caught hold of them by their ears, and they caught hold of them by their dewlaps, and they caught hold of them by their tails, and they mounted on their backs, and they touched their privy parts with lustful thoughts, and having ducked young calves, they killed them.

Vin.1.191

People ... spread it about, saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, catch hold of cows, which are crossing the river Aciravatī, by their horns ... like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?" Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.5.9.2

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks caught hold of cows ... and having ducked young calves, killed them?"

"It is true, Lord."

Kd.5.9.3

Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, you should not catch hold of cows by their horns, nor should you catch hold of them by their ears, nor should you catch hold of them by their dewlaps, nor should you catch hold of them by their tails, nor should you mount on their backs. Whoever should (so) mount, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor should you touch their privy parts with lustful thoughts. Whoever should (so) touch them, there is a grave offence. Nor should you kill young calves. Whoever should kill them should be dealt with according to the rule.¹"

BD.4.255

REJECTION OF VEHICLES, ETC.

Now at that time² the group of six monks went in a vehicle, and there was a bull in the middle yoked with cows and there was a cow in the middle

Kd.5.9.4

¹ Bu-Pc.61. ² From here to end of Kd.5.10.3 cf. Vin.2.276, which refers to the group of six nuns.

yoked with bulls.¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “As at the festival of the Ganges and Mahī²”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, you should not go in a vehicle. Whoever should (so) go, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”³

Kd.5.10.1

Now at that time a certain monk, going through the Kosala country to Sāvattthī in order to see the Lord, became ill on the way. Then that monk, stepping aside from the road, sat down at the root of a certain tree. People, seeing that monk, spoke thus: “Where, honoured sir, will the master go?”

Kd.5.10.2

“I will go to Sāvattthī, sirs, in order to see the Lord.”

“Come, honoured sir, we will go along.”

“I am not able to, sirs, I am ill.”

“Come, honoured sir, get into a vehicle.”

“No, sirs, a vehicle is objected to by the Lord,” and being scrupulous, he did not get into a vehicle. Then that monk, having arrived at Sāvattthī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.5.10.3

“I allow, monks, a vehicle to one who is ill.”

Then it occurred to these monks: “Now, should (the vehicle be) yoked with cows or yoked with bulls⁴? “They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.1.192

BD.4.256

“I allow you, monks, a handcart yoked with a bull.”⁵

Now at that time a certain monk became extremely uncomfortable owing to the jolting of a vehicle. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

¹ As *Vinaya Texts* ii.25, n.2 remarks: “Buddhaghosa explains this passage in a different way.” He says, Vin-a.1085: *itthiyuttanā ti dhenuyuttana* (yoked with milch cows); *purisantarenā ti purisasārathinā* (with a male charioteer or driver); *purisayuttanā ti goṇayuttana* (yoked with oxen); *itthantarenā ti itthisārathinā* (with a female charioteer). ² *Gangā-mahiyāya*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.25, n.3 says that by Mahī is probably meant “the well-known affluent of the Ganges”. Vin-a.1085 explains by *Gangā-Mahikīlikā* (variant reading *kīlikāya*). ³ At [Vin.4.339 \(BD.3.403\)](#) any nun who was not ill fell into an offence of expiation if she went in a vehicle. “Vehicle” is defined e.g. at [Vin.3.49](#), [Vin.4.201](#). ⁴ *itthiyuttam nu kho purisayuttam nu kho*. ⁵ *purisayuttam hatthavaṭṭakam*. Vin-a.1085 says: here yoked with men (of a man or bulls or a bull, *purisa*), a woman (*itthi*) or a man (*purisa*) may be the driver. For a handcart rolls along whether *itthiyo* or *purisā* move it.

“I allow, monks, a palanquin,¹ a sedan-chair².”

REJECTION OF HIGH AND BROAD SEATS

Now at that time the group of six monks used high and broad things to recline upon,³ that is to say: a sofa,⁴ a divan,⁵ a long-haired coverlet,⁶ a many-coloured coverlet,⁷ a white coverlet,⁸ a wool coverlet besprent with flowers,⁹ a cotton quilt,¹⁰ a wool coverlet decorated with animals' forms,¹¹ a wool covering with hair on the upper side,¹² a wool covering with hair at one side,¹³ a silken sheet studded with jewels,¹⁴ a sheet made with silk threads and studded with jewels,¹⁵ a dancer's carpet¹⁶, an elephant rug, a

Kd.5.10.4

BD.4.257

¹ *sivikā*. Vin-a.1085: *piṭaka-sivikā*, basket palanquin. ² *pāṭaṅki*. Vin-a.1085: a woven cloth (? *paṭapoṭṭalika*, variant reading *paṭalika*) made up having hung it out on bamboos; perhaps what in South India is called a *dooly*. ³ *uccāsayanamahāsayana*. List recurs at Vin.2.163, DN.i.7, AN.i.181; some of the items only at MN.i.76 = AN.i.137. Cf. also MN-a.ii.39. Vin-a.1086 says “*uccāsayana* is a couch exceeding the (right) measure” (the height of the legs of a couch is given as eight finger-breadths at Vin.4.168), and “*mahāsayana* is a sheet (*paccattharaṇa*) that is not (made) allowable”. ⁴ *āsandī*, see BD.3.326, n.1, *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.11, n.4. The use of this and of a divan is forbidden to nuns at Vin.4.299 (BD.3.326f.). ⁵ *pallaṅka*. See BD.3.271, n.3, *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.11, n.5. ⁶ *gonaka* (also spelled *goṇaka*). Vin-a.1086 says a long-haired wide *kojava* (fleecy counterpane or cover with long hair). On *kojava*, see below, BD.4.397, n.5, ⁷ *cittaka*, Vin-a.1086 says a coverlet (*attharaka*) made of wool of various colours (*citta*) (embroidered with) wild beasts (*vāla*, variant reading *vāna*; DN-a.86 reads *vāna*, with variant readings *cāna*, *vāta*). ⁸ *paṭikā*. Vin-a.1086: a white (*seta*) coverlet made of wool. ⁹ *paṭalikā*. I follow WOODWARD's translation at GS.i.164. Vin-a.1086 gives the meaning as “a covering made of wool, a mass of flowers”, and further calls it a “cloth of the Greeks (*Yonaka*) and Tamils”, with variant reading (as at AN-a.ii.293) *yo āmalakapaṭṭo ti pi vuccati*. Perhaps a better reading for *āmalaka* (emblic myrobalan) occurs at DN-a.i.87: *āmīlāka* (“a woollen cover into which a floral pattern is woven,” *Pali-English Dictionary*). ¹⁰ *tūlikā*. Vin-a.1086 says “just an ordinary *tūlikā*”, while DN-a.87 and AN-a.ii.293 say “a *tūlikā* stuffed with a certain one of the three kinds of cotton”. These three kinds are given at Vin.2.150, Vin.4.170 as cotton from trees, from creepers and from the *poṭaki*-grass; see BD.3.93, n.2. ¹¹ *vikatikā*. Vin-a.1086 says, “a covering made of wool, ornamented (*vicitta*) with forms of lions, tigers, etc.”. ¹² Vin.1.192 and Vin-a.1086 both read *uddha*- (upper) *lomin* as against *udda*- (both) of DN.i.7, AN.i.181. ¹³ *ekantalomin*. ¹⁴ *kaṭṭhissa*. Commentaries say “a sheet (*paccattharaṇa*) made of *kaṭṭhissa* (?) and silk and sewn round with (*parisibbīta*) jewels (*ratana*)”. ¹⁵ *koseyya*. I take above rendering from Vin-a.1086. ¹⁶ Vin-a.1086, “a sheet made of wool suitable for the dances of sixteen dancing girls”.

horse rug, a chariot rug, rugs of black antelope skins, a splendid sheeting of the hide of the *kadali*-deer,¹ a sheet with an awning above², a couch with a red cushion at either end.³ People, engaged in touring the dwelling-places, having seen (all this), looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.5.10.5

He said: **“Monks, high and broad things to recline upon should not be used, that is to say: a sofa ... a couch with a red cushion at either end. Whoever should use (any of these) there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

REJECTION OF ALL LEATHER

Kd.5.10.6

Now at that time the group of six monks thinking, “High and broad things to recline upon are objected to by the Lord”, used large hides: a lion’s hide, a tiger’s hide, a panther’s hide, These were cut to the measurement of a couch and they were cut to the measurement of a chair, and they were laid inside the couches and they were laid outside the couches and they were laid inside the chairs and they were laid outside the chairs. People, touring the dwelling-places, having seen (this), looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, large hides should not be used: a lion’s hide, a tiger’s hide, a panther’s hide. Whoever should use (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.5.10.7

Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: “Large hides are objected to by the Lord”, used cow-hides. These were cut to the measurement of a couch ... (as in [Kd.5.10.6](#) above) ... and they were laid outside the chairs.

¹ *kadalimigapavarapaccattharaṇa*. Vin-a.1086, “it is called the hide of the *kadali*-deer; a splendid (*pavara*) sheet is made from this. It means the best (*uttama*) kind of sheet. They say they make it having spread out the deerhide and sewn it above white hangings” (*vattha*, also meaning clothes). ² *sauttaracchada*. Vin-a.1086 explains as “together with a dyed (or red, *ratta*) awning attached above”, and mentions sheet (*paccattharaṇa*) in this connection.

³ *ubhatolohitakūpadhāna*. Vin-a.1087 explains as above.

A certain depraved monk came to be dependent upon a certain depraved lay-follower. Then that depraved monk, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of that depraved lay-follower; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat. Then that depraved lay-follower approached that depraved monk; having approached, having greeted that depraved monk, he sat down at a respectful distance.

BD.4.258

Vin.1.193

Kd.5.10.8

Now at that time that depraved lay-follower had a young calf, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; it was marked¹ like a panther cub. Then that depraved monk gazed longingly at and thought about² that calf. Then that depraved lay-follower spoke thus to that depraved monk: “Why, honoured sir, does the master gaze longingly at and think about this calf?”

“Sir, this calf’s hide is of use to me.” Then that depraved lay-follower, having slaughtered that calf, having skinned it, bestowed the hide upon that depraved monk. Then that depraved monk, having hidden the hide in his outer cloak, went away.

Kd.5.10.9

Then that cow, longing for her calf³, followed close after that depraved monk. Monks spoke thus: “Why, your reverence, is this cow following close after you?”

“I don’t know, your reverences, why this cow is following close after me.”

Now at that time this depraved monk’s outer cloak became stained with blood. Monks spoke thus: “But this outer cloak of yours, your reverence—what has happened to it?” Then that depraved monk told this matter to the monks. They said:

“But did you, your reverence, incite (someone) to onslaught on creatures?”

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this monk incite (someone) to onslaught on creatures? Is not onslaught on creatures condemned in many a figure by the Lord, restraint from onslaught on creatures extolled?” Then these monk told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.5.10.10

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned that depraved monk, saying:

BD.4.259

¹ *citra*, variegated, beautiful. ² Cf. BD.2.30 and n.3 there. ³ *vacchagiddhinī*, cf. SN.iv.181.

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, incited (someone) to onslaught on creatures?”

“It is true, Lord.”

“How can you, foolish man, incite (someone) to onslaught on creatures? Foolish man, has not onslaught on creatures been condemned by me in many a figure, restraint from onslaught on creatures extolled? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, there should be no inciting (anyone) to onslaught on creatures. Whoever should (so) incite, should be dealt with according to the rule.¹ Nor, monks, should a cow-hide be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor, monks, should any hide be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Vin.1.194

ALLOWANCE FOR WHAT IS DISPLAYED BY HOUSEHOLDERS, ETC.

Kd.5.11.1

Now at that time people’s couches and chairs came to be covered up² with hides, covered over with hides. Monks being scrupulous, did not sit down on them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to sit down on what is displayed by householders³, but not to lie down on it.”

¹ Bu-Pj.1, where it is as bad to incite someone to cause the death of a human being as oneself to murder one. Cf. also Bu-Pc.11, Bu-Pc.61, Bu-Pc.62. ² *onaddha ... vinaddha*. Cf. Vin.2.150 where *onaddhamañca* and *onaddhapīṭha* are allowed. Cf. also Vin.2.270; and *tūlonaddha* at Vin.2.163. ³ *gihivikata*. “To display” is one of the meanings of *vikartum* given by Monier-Williams. Same “allowance” made at Vin.2.163.

Now at that time dwelling-places were lashed together¹ with thongs of hide. Monks, being scrupulous, did not sit down (in them). They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to sit down against² what is used only for lashing³ (things together).”

BD.4.260

Now at that time the group of six monks entered a village with their sandals on. People looked down upon, criticised spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not enter a village with your sandals on. Whoever should (so) enter it, there is an offence of wrongdoing.”**

Kd.5.12.1

Now at that time a certain monk became ill; he was not able to enter the village without his sandals. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a monk if he is ill to enter a village with his sandals on.”

THE STORY OF SOṆA KUṬIKANṆA

Kd.5.13.1

Now at that time¹ the venerable Kaccāna the Great² was staying among the people of Avantī³ at Osprey's Haunt⁴ on Steep Rock mountain slope.⁵ Now at that time the lay-follower, Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa⁶, was a supporter of the venerable Kaccāna the Great. Then the lay-follower, Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa, approached the venerable Kaccāna the Great; having approached, having greeted the venerable Kaccāna the Great, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the lay-follower, Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa, spoke thus to the venerable Kaccāna the Great:

BD.4.261

“In so far as I, honoured sir, understand *dhamma* taught by the master, Kaccāna the Great, it is no easy matter for one living in a house to lead the Brahma-faring which is utterly complete, utterly pure and polished like

¹ *ogumphiyanti*. Vin-a.1087 (reading *ogupphiyanti*, a variant reading not noticed in *Pali-English Dictionary*) says *bhittidaṇḍakādīsu veṭhetvā bandhanti*, having twisted them (the thongs) round, they tie them to wall-posts, etc. A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Early Indian Architecture*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol.48, No.3, p.266, says “this would seem to have been natural in the case of the wattle and daub walls of the simple *paṇṇasālās*; but we do also find early pillars decorated with designs of interlacing ropes or thongs which may be vestigial ornament ... Atharva Veda, 9.3 refers to the parts of a house that are knotted and tied”. ² Vin-a.1087, to sit leaning against. ³ *bandhanamatta*. Cf. Vin.1.254. Word occurs also at Vin.2.135, but there seems to have a different meaning. See also its use at Kd.7.1.5, “only by tacking”. ⁴ To end of Kd.5.13.10, cf. Ud.5.6, Dh-p-a.iv.101ff. ⁵ At AN.i.23 called foremost of the expounders in full of what was spoken in brief. Verses at Thag.494. One of the eleven or twelve leading *theras*; cf. *Vinaya Texts*, ii.317, *Vinaya Texts*, ii.359, BD.2.295, gs.iii.215. See *Gotama the Man*, p.113. ⁶ See S. DUTT, *Early History of the Spread of Buddhism*, Vol.1, p.187ff. He points out that Avantī “under the guidance of Mahākaccāyana helped by Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa ... became an important centre of Buddhism” (p.189). On Avantī see also B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.3, n.1, 22f., p.61. ⁷ Kuraraghara, the name of a town (*nagara*) or village where Kaccāna went for alms (*gocaragāma*), Vin-a.1087. ⁸ He is recorded to stay here also at SN.iii.9, SN.iii.12, SN.iv.115, AN.v.46, Ud.57. Our text reads *papāte pabbate*; the others *pavatte* (with variant readings) *pabbate*. At Vin-a.1087, *papāta* is said to be the name of a mountain slope. Cf. however SN-a.ii.258, which recognises the two readings, *papāte* and *pavatte*, and says of *papāte pabbate* that “it was steep (or had a precipice) on one side: it was as though one flank had been hewn off”. ⁹ Chief of those of clear utterance, AN.i.24. Verses at Thag.365. Vin-a.1087, AN-a.i.237 say he wore ornaments worth a crore (*koṭi*) in his ears, and also give the reading *koṭikaṇṇa*, which can mean equally “Crore-eared” or “Pointed-eared, Prick-eared”; see *Vinaya Texts* ii.32, n.3, *Psalm of the Brethren* p.202, gs.i.18, n.4, *Verses of Uplift*, p.68.

a conch-shell. I want, honoured sir, having cut off hair and beard, having donned yellow robes, to go forth from home into homelessness. Honoured sir, may the master Kaccāna the Great let me go forth.”

Kd.5.13.2

He said: “Difficult, Soṇa, for as long as life lasts are the solitary sleeping-place,¹ the one meal (a day), the Brahma-faring. Please do you, Soṇa, being a householder as before,² practise the instruction of the awakened ones for a short time³: the solitary sleeping-place, the one meal (a day), the Brahma-faring.”

Then that abated which had been the lay follower Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa’s strong aspiration for the going forth.⁴ But a second time did the lay follower Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa ... But a third time did the lay follower Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa approach the venerable Kaccāna the Great ... (as in [Kd.5.13.1](#)) “... Honoured sir, may the master Kaccāna the Great let me go forth.” Then the venerable Kaccāna the Great let the lay-follower Soṇa Kuṭikaṇṇa go forth. Now at that time the southern region of Avanti⁵ came to be short of monks. Then did the venerable Kaccāna the Great at the end of three years, with difficulty, with trouble, having had convened from here and there an Order of monks consisting of ten,⁶ ordain the venerable Soṇa.

Vin.1.195

BD.4.262

¹ *ekaseyyā*, exact significance obscure. At [BD.2.196](#) a monk is allowed to lie down in a sleeping place for two or three nights with one who is not ordained. It seems as if he might also do so with an ordained monk, for on this occasion there is no offence if he thinks a person is ordained and he is. At [BD.2.201](#) there is an offence if a monk so lies down with a woman.

² *tatth’eva*. ³ *kālayutta*. This is to show how difficult these things are. *Kālayutta* could also signify connected with the right time (for doing things), and would then emphasise that now is not a right time for Soṇa to go forth, being not sufficiently ready spiritually to do so.

⁴ *pabbajjābhisaṅkhāra*. Cf. *gamikābhisaṅkhāra* at [Vin.1.233](#). ⁵ *Avantidakkhiṇāpatha*, as at [Vin.2.298](#), Ja.iii.463. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* under *Dakkhiṇāpatha*, RHYS DAVIDS, *Buddhist India*, p.30, and B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.22. At the time of the Council of Vesālī, about eighty-eight monks of *Avantidakkhiṇāpatha*, some of them followers of ascetic practices, *dhutanga*, are said to have collected on the *Ahogaṅgā* mountain slope, [Vin.2.299](#). ⁶ [Vin.1.319](#) says that an Order may consist of four, five, ten, twenty or more than twenty monks, and that various maximum numbers are required for carrying out various specific formal acts, ten monks being able to perform them all, except rehabilitation; but five monks were not able to ordain in the Middle Districts.

THE FIVE BOONS FOR MAHĀKACCANA

Kd.5.13.3

Then as the venerable Soṇa was keeping the rains and meditating in seclusion, a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “I have only heard that this Lord is such and such a one, but I have not seen him face to face. I would go and see this Lord, the perfected, the all-awakened one, if a preceptor would allow me.” Then the venerable Soṇa, emerging from seclusion towards the evening, approached the venerable Kaccāna the Great; having approached, having greeted the venerable Kaccāna the Great, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable

Kd.5.13.4

Soṇa spoke thus to the venerable Kaccāna the Great:
 “Now, as I, honoured sir, was meditating in seclusion, a reasoning arose in my mind thus: ‘I have only heard that this Lord is such and such a one, but I have not seen him face to face. I would go to see this Lord, the perfected, the all-awakened one, if a preceptor would allow me.’ I, honoured sir, would go to see this Lord, the perfected, the all-awakened one, if the preceptor allows me.”

Kd.5.13.5

“Good, it is good, Soṇa. Do you, Soṇa, go to see this Lord, the perfected, the all-awakened one.

BD.4.263

“You, Soṇa, will see this Lord, who is pleasant and inspires one to be pleased,¹ who is calmed in his sense-organs, calmed in mind, who has attained the uttermost taming and peace, the hero² tamed, guarded, controlled in his sense-organs. Well then, do you, Soṇa, in my name salute the Lord’s feet with your head, saying: ‘Lord, my preceptor, the venerable Kaccāna the Great, salutes the Lord’s feet with his head’,³ and then speak thus: ‘Lord, the southern region of Avantī is short of monks. At the end of three years (he), with difficulty, with trouble, having had convened for me from here and there an Order of monks consisting of ten, I received ordination. Perhaps the Lord would allow ordination by a smaller group in the southern region of Avantī.

Kd.5.13.6

¹ *pasādaniya*, i.e. to be pleased with his teaching. ² *nāga*, explained at Vin-a.1087 as “empty of guilt (*āgu*), empty of the obstructions (*kilesa*)”. Cf. Snp.522: *āgu na karoti ... nāgo*, and Cnd.337. ³ *Udāna* version omits from here to end of Kd.5.13.7 and then proceeds much as Vinaya version to end of Kd.5.13.10.

“Lord, in the southern region of Avantī the surface-soil is dark, hard, trampled by the hooves of cattle.¹ Perhaps the Lord would allow sandals with many linings in the southern region of Avantī. Lord, in the southern region of Avantī people attach importance to bathing, to purification by water.² Perhaps the Lord would allow constant bathing³ in the southern region of Avantī. Lord, in the southern region of Avantī hides (are used as) coverings: sheep-hide, goat-hide, deer-hide. As, Lord, in the middle districts,⁴ *eragu*, *moragu*, *majjhāru*, *jantu*⁵ (are used), so, Lord, in the southern region of Avantī hides (are used as) coverings. Perhaps the Lord would allow hides (to be used as) coverings in the southern region of Avantī: sheep-hide, goat-hide, deer-hide.

Vin.1.196

Kd.5.13.7

“At present, Lord, people give robe-material to monks who have gone outside the boundaries, saying: “We are giving this robe-material for so and so.” When these have come back (the others) announce: “Your reverences, robe-material was given for you by the people so and so”. But these, being scrupulous, do not consent to it, thinking: “Let there not be an offence involving forfeiture for us.”⁶ Perhaps the Lord would explain the procedure⁷ in regard to robe-material.’”

“Yes, honoured sir”, and the venerable Soṇa having spoken in assent to the venerable Kaccāna the Great, rising from his seat, having greeted the venerable Kaccāna the Great, having kept his right side towards him, having packed away his lodging, taking his bowl and robe, set out for Sāvattthī.

BD.4.264

Kd.5.13.8

In due course he approached Sāvattthī, the Jeta Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery, the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat

¹ *kharā gokaṇṭakahatā*; cf. AN.i.136. ² *udakasuddhika*. Cf. SN.i.182 (KS.i.231); also Vin.4.262, where however “purification by water” is not a rite, but a necessary ablution. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.57, where it is an offence for a monk to bathe at intervals of less than a fortnight except “at a right time”, specified. ⁴ Not Majjhimesu here, but *majjhimesu janapadesu*. ⁵ Vin-a.1088 says these are four kinds of grasses, *tiṇa*, from which are made *kaṭasāraka* (?), part of a monk’s lodging or bedding, see Vin-a.1088 under *senāsanam paññāpesi*) and straw mats. *Eragu* is also called *erakatiṇa* and is coarse. *Moragu* is copper coloured at the head, fine, pliable and pleasant to touch, and straw mats are made from it. They make upper cloaks from *majjāru* (Vin-a.1088 reading *majjāru*). The colour of *jantu* is like pearls. ⁶ Cf. Bu-NP.1, where if a monk’s *kaṭhina* privileges have been removed he may use an extra robe for ten days. One of the grounds for removal of the privileges depends on a monk’s having gone outside the boundary, Vin.1.255. ⁷ *pariyāya*.

down at a respectful distance. Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Ānanda, make ready a lodging for this incoming monk”. Then the venerable Ānanda thought:

“The Lord desires to stay in the same dwelling-place together with this monk, the Lord desires to stay in the same dwelling-place together with the venerable Soṇa; it is he in regard to whom the Lord enjoined me, saying: ‘Ānanda, make ready a lodging for this incoming monk’,” and he made ready a lodging for the venerable Soṇa in that dwelling-place where the Lord was staying.

Kd.5.13.9

Then the Lord, having spent a great part of that night in the open air, entered the dwelling-place. The venerable Soṇa also, having spent a great part of that night in the open air, entered the dwelling-place. Then the Lord, getting up in the night towards dawn, requested the venerable Soṇa, saying:

“May (some) *dhamma* occur to you to speak, monk.”¹

“Very well, Lord”, and the venerable Soṇa, having replied in assent to the Lord, spoke from memory everything belonging to the Divisions in the Eights.² Then the Lord at the end of the venerable Soṇa’s recital³ expressed

BD.4.265

¹ *paṭibhātu taṃ bhikkhu dhammo bhāsituṃ*, as at Ud-a.312, AN-a.i.241. WOODWARD, *Verses of Uplift*, p.71, n.1, would translate this as “let *dhamma* arise in your mind for recital”. He notes that *paṭibhātu* is “let it occur to you, *placeat*”, but owing to *dhamma* being in the nominative the sentence cannot mean “let it occur to you to speak *dhamma*”. Vin-a.1088 says, “may there be (or become, *bhavatu*) an inclination (*abhimukha*) to speak of knowledge; of what is called understanding”. Ud-a.312 says “Monk, may *dhamma* to speak arise in you, let it come to the forefront of knowledge, recite *dhamma* as you have heard it, as you have learnt it”. Cf. Vin.2.200, Ud.59, SN.i.155. N.B. The Lord addresses Soṇa as “monk” and not by his name. ² *Aṭṭhakavaggikāni*. *Aṭṭhakavagga* is the name of the fourth Vagga in the Sutta Nipāta. Cited at SN.iii.12, Ud.59. This latter (and also Dh-p-a.iv.101–Dhp-a.iv.102) have the “specific amplification that Soṇa recited (or ‘intoned’) ‘all the sixteen’ *Aṭṭhakavaggika Suttas*”, as CHALMERS remarks, *Buddha’s Teachings*, p.xvi, n.1; and Ud-a.312 the still further amplification that the sixteen Suttas begin with the *Kāmasutta*. AN-a.i.241 reads *Aṭṭhakavaggiyāni*, one manuscript adding *suttāni*. See Journal of the Pali Text Society 1895, p.93 on identification of Divyāvādāna’s (p.20) *arthavadgiyāni* (recited by Soṇa) with the “sixteen poems”, *aṭṭhakavaggikāni*, of the *Aṭṭhakavagga*. The work is also mentioned at Divyāvādāna 35. For references to Chinese versions see ANESAKI, Journal of the Pali Text Society 1906–1907, p.50; and ÉTIENNE LAMOTTE, *Le Traité de la Grande Vertu de Sagesse*, Vol.i, p.39, n.2.

his approbation saying:

“Good, it is good, monk, that by you, monk, the Divisions in the Eights are well learnt,

Vin.1.197

well attended to, well reflected upon, and that you are endowed with lovely speech, distinct, without hoarseness, so as to make the meaning clear.¹ Of how many years’ standing are you, monk?”²“I, Lord, am of one year’s standing.”

Kd.5.13.10

“But what have you, monk, done thus long?”

“For long, Lord, I have seen peril in pleasures of the senses, but household lives are crowded,³ there is much to be done, much business.” Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this utterance:

“Having seen peril in the world,
having known *dhamma* without attachment, /
the noble one delights not in evil,
the pure one delights in instruction.”⁴

Kd.5.13.11

Then the venerable Soṇa, thinking: “The Lord is much pleased with me, this is the time for that for which the preceptor prepared⁵ me,” rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having inclined his head to the Lord’s feet, spoke thus:

“Lord, my preceptor, the venerable Kaccāna the Great, salutes the Lord’s feet with his head, and speaks thus: ‘The southern region of Avanti, Lord ... (as in Kd.5.13.5, Kd.5.13.6) ... perhaps the Lord would explain the procedure in regard to robe-material.’” Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, the southern region of Avanti is short of monks. I allow, monks,

BD.4.266

³ *sarabhañña*. Pali-English Dictionary calls this “intoning, a particular mode of reciting”. Cf. Vin.2.108, where the Lord “allows” *sarabhañña*, but not the singing of *dhamma* in a singing voice. Oldenberg quotes Vin-a at Vin.2.316: *sarabhaññan ti sarena bhaṇanam*, which means “*sarabhañña* is called repeating (or reciting) by intonation (*sara*)”. There is perhaps in the text a play upon the word *sara*, which also means remembering. ¹ Stock as at DN.i.114, SN.i.189, SN.ii.280, AN.ii.51, AN.iii.114. ² I.e. how many years since his ordination. Cf. above, BD.4.76f. ³ *sambādhā gharāvāsā*. Ud.59, SN.ii.219, SN.v.350, DN.i.63, DN.i.250 read *sambādhō gharāvāso*. ⁴ *sāsane ramati sucī*; Ud.59 reading *pāpe na ramati sucī*, ⁵ *paridassi*. Vin-a.1088, “this should be the time for that which the preceptor made known to me, saying: ‘You should say this and that’; come, I will give the message now”.

in all border districts ordination by a group¹ with, as fifth, an expert on discipline.

Kd.5.13.12

“For this purpose,² these are the border districts³: the little town⁴ called Kajaṅgala⁵ is in the eastern direction, beyond it is Mahāsālā,⁶ further than that are border districts, on this side are the middle (districts). The river called Sallavati⁷ is in the south-eastern direction, further than that are border districts, on this side are the middle (districts). The little town called Setakaṇṇika is in the southern direction, further than that are border districts, on this side are the middle (districts). The brahmin village called Thūna⁸ is in the western direction, further than that are border districts, on this side are the middle (districts). The mountain slope called Usīraddhaja⁹ is in the northern direction, further than that are border districts, on this side are the middle (districts). I allow, monks, in such border districts as these, ordination by a group with, as fifth, an expert on discipline.

Kd.5.13.13

“In the southern region of Avantī, monks, the surface-soil is dark, hard, trampled by the hooves of cattle. I allow, monks, in all border districts, sandals with many linings. In the southern region of Avantī, monks, people attach importance to bathing, to purification by water. I allow, monks, in all border districts, constant bathing. In the southern region of Avantī, monks, hides (are used as) coverings: sheep-hide, goat-hide, deer-hide. As, monks, in the middle districts *eragu, moragu, majjhāra, jantu* (are used), so, monks,

BD.4.267

Vin.1.198

¹ Usually two to four monks. ² *tatra*. ³ This passage is quoted at Ja.i.49, DN-a.173, Kh-a.132, MN-a.ii.200, AN-a.i.97 in order to define the boundaries of *majjhima (pa)desa*, the Middle Country, i.e. the middle of Jambudīpa (India). See B.C. LAW *Geography Of Early Buddhism*, p.2, for some of the place-names mentioned below. ⁴ *nigama*, see BD.2.63, n.2. ⁵ Occurring at AN.v.54, MN.iii.298, DN-a.429. Also Ja.iii.226, Ja.iv.310 The scholiast tells us (Ja.iv.311) that it was a town where materials were easily got, *dabbasambhārā sulabhā*, not where they “were hard to be got” (Jātaka translation iv.195, n.1). ⁶ Called Mahāsālā at Ja.i.49. ⁷ Spelled Salalavati at Ja.i.49, DN-a.173, Kh-a.132, Salaṭavati at MN-a.ii.200 (with variant readings) and in *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. See variant readings at DN-a.173; these do not include Sallavatti as at AN-a.i.97. ⁸ Mentioned at Ud.78, Ud-a.377 as belonging to the Mallas: also at Ja.vi.62 (with variant reading Dhunna). B.C. LAW, *India as Described in Early Texts of Buddhism and Jainism*, p.21, n.1 says “Consult CUNNINGHAM, *Ancient Geography of India*, Introduction xliii, n.2 as to the identification of Thūna with Sthānesvara”. ⁹ According to B.C. LAW, *India as Described in Early Texts*, p.21, n.2, “it may be said to be identical with Usiragiri, a mountain to the north of Kaṅkhal, I.A., 1905, 179”.

in the southern region of Avanti hides (are used as) coverings: sheep-hide, goat-hide, deer-hide.¹ I allow, monks, in all border districts, hides (to be used as) coverings: sheep-hide, goat-hide, deer-hide. And moreover, monks, people give robe-material for monks who have gone outside the boundaries, saying: ‘We are giving this robe-material for so and so’. I allow you, monks, to consent (to it). That reckoning is not necessary until it reaches the hand.²”

The Fifth Section: that on Hides

IN THIS SECTION THERE ARE SIXTY-THREE ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

The King of Magadha, Soṇa,
and eighty-thousand chieftains,
Sāgata showed much that was further on Vulture Peak, /
They were broken by his output (of energy) on going forth,
the lute, with one lining,
dark green, yellow, red, crimson, and indeed black, /
Orange, multi-coloured, and he objected to edgings,
heels, knee-boots, top-boots,
cotton, partridges, rams, goats, /
Scorpions, peacocks, and embroidered,
decorated with lions, tigers and panthers,
antelopes, beavers and cats, squirrels, owls, /
Sandals for split (feet), corns,
unwashed, tree-stumps, rasping,
palm, bamboo, and indeed grass,
munja; babbaja, marshy date-palm, /
Kamala, woollen, golden, silver, gems, lapis lazuli,
crystal, bronze, and glass, and tin, lead, copper, /

¹ Vin-a.1088 here gives a list of six kinds of deer, and says their hides may be used, but not the hides of other kinds of deer, *miga*, including the *kadalīmiga*, nor (with a play on words) the hides of beasts of prey, *vālamiga*, which it defines as lions, tigers, panthers, bears and hyenas. Skins of cows, buffaloes, hares and cats may not be used either. ² *na tāva taṃ gaṇanūpaḡaṃ yāva na hatthaṃ gaççhati*. This refers to Bu-Pc.1, where an extra robe may be worn for at most ten days. The above phrase means that a monk need not begin to count these ten days until he has actually received the robe-material. Vin-a.1089 says, “So long as having conveyed but not given, or (so long as) having sent but not announced that ‘This robe-material has accrued for you, honoured sirs’; he does not begin the reckoning (*gaṇanaṃ na upeti*), it (i.e. the robe-material) is not allotted, one does not begin to take up what is not allotted. But when, having conveyed it it is given, or when having sent it it is announced, or when having heard that it has accrued, from then on there is occasion for attention to the ten days”. On *upaga*, see BD.2.7, n.4; and on *anadhittihita*, “not allotted” see *ibid.*, n.1.

BD.4.268 Cows, a vehicle and ill,
 yoked with bulls, a palanquin,
 things to recline on, large hides,
 and the depraved one with a cowhide, /
 On what belongs to householders, with thongs of hide,
 they enter, on one being ill,¹
 Kaccāna the Great, Soṇa (recites) from memory
 what belongs to the Divisions in the Eights, /
 A group of five for ordination, many linings, constant bathing,²
 he allowed hides (to be used as) coverings,
 reckoning not necessary until:
 Vin.1.199 The leader gave these five boons to the Elder Soṇa.

¹ *gilāyano*; Sinhalese edition *gilānakā*. ² Sinhalese edition *upasampadārṇ pañcahi gaṇam-gaṇā dhuvasināyanā*.

6. MEDICINE (*BHESAJJA*)

ON FIVE MEDICINES

At that time the Lord was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time monks, afflicted by an affection occurring in the autumn, brought up the conje^y they had drunk and brought up the rice they had eaten; because of this they became lean, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, the veins standing out on their limbs. The Lord saw these monks who were lean ... standing out on their limbs; seeing them, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Now, how is it Ānanda, that at present monks are lean ... standing out on their limbs?”

Kd.6.1.1
BD.4.269

“At present, Lord, monks, afflicted by an affection occurring in the autumn, bring up the conje^y they have drunk and bring up the rice they have eaten; because of this they are lean ... standing out on their limbs.”

Kd.6.1.2

Then as the Lord was meditating in seclusion, a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “At present monks, afflicted by an affection occurring in the autumn, bring up ... standing out on their limbs. What now if I should allow medicine for monks—whatever is medicine as well as what may be agreed upon as medicine—and although it may serve as nutriment for people¹ yet could not be reckoned as substantial food?” Then it occurred to the Lord: “These five medicines, that is to say ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses, are medicines² and are also agreed upon as medicines, and although they serve as nutriment for people yet they cannot be reckoned as substantial food. What now if I should allow monks to make use of these five medicines

¹ *lokassa*. ² Cf. *Bu-NP.23*, where a monk, having accepted these five medicines may keep them in store for at most seven days. They are defined at *Vin.3.251*.

at the right time, if they have accepted them at a right time?”

Kd.6.1.3

Then the Lord, having emerged from seclusion towards the evening, having given reasoned talk on this occasion, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.270

“Now, monks, as I was meditating in seclusion ...’... yet could not be reckoned as substantial food’. Monks, concerning this, it occurred to me: ‘These five medicines, that is to say ... Suppose I were to allow monks to make use of these five medicines at the right time, if they have accepted them at a right time?’ I allow you, monks, to make use of these five medicines at the right time, if you have accepted them at a right time.”

Vin.1.200

Kd.6.1.4

Now at that time monks, having accepted these five medicines at a right time, made use of them at the right time. But even with these they did not digest ordinary coarse meals, much less greasy ones. And because of this they were afflicted by the affection occurring in the autumn, and in consequence there was also a loss of appetite, and as a result of both these (factors) they became increasingly lean, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, with the veins standing out on their limbs. The Lord saw these monks who were increasingly lean ... standing out on their limbs; seeing them, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

“Now, why is it, Ānanda, that at present monks are increasingly lean ... standing out on their limbs?”

Kd.6.1.5

“At present, Lord, monks, having accepted those five medicines at a right time, make use of them at the right time ... and as a result of both of these (factors) they are increasingly lean ... standing out on their limbs.”

Then the Lord, having given reasoned talk on this occasion, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, having accepted these five medicines,¹ to make use of them both at the right time and also at the wrong time.”²

Kd.6.2.1

Now at that time ill monks had need of tallows as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make use of tallows

¹ N.B. “at a right time” does not occur here. ² This must refer to the right time and the wrong time for eating solid foods and soft foods. When “solid food” is defined at [Vin.4.83](#) by excluding “food that may be eaten during a watch of the night, during seven days, during life”, there is reason to suppose that these expressions refer to medicines, see [BD.2.330, n.1, n.2, n.3](#).

as medicines by using them with oil: tallow from bears, tallow from fish, tallow from alligators, tallow from swine, tallow from donkeys,¹ (if each) is accepted at a right time, cooked at a right time, mixed at a right time.²

BD.4.271

Kd.6.2.2

“If, monks, one should make use of that which is accepted at a wrong time, cooked at a wrong time, mixed at a wrong time, there is an offence of three wrong-doings. If, monks, one should make use of that which is accepted at a right time, cooked at a wrong time, mixed at a wrong time, there is an offence of two wrong-doings. If, monks, one should make use of that which is accepted at a right time, cooked at a right time, mixed at a wrong time, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, monks, one should make use of that which is accepted at a right time, cooked at a right time, mixed at a right time, there is no offence.”³

ON ROOT MEDICINE, ETC.

Now at that time ill monks had need of roots as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to make use of roots as medicines: turmeric,⁴ ginger, orris root, white orris root, garlic, black hellebore, khus-khus, nut-grass, or whatever other roots there are that are medicines, if they do not serve, among solid foods, as a solid food, if they do not serve, among soft foods, as a soft food; and having accepted them, to preserve⁵ them for as long as life lasts.⁶ **If there is no reason, there is an offence of wrong-doing for one who makes use of (any of these medicines).”**

Kd.6.3.1

Vin.1.201

Kd.6.3.2

¹ Quoted at Vin-a.714. This passage explains that tallow from the flesh of all animals which it is allowable to eat is allowed, and also, with the exception of human tallow, the tallow of the ten animals which it is not allowable to eat. These ten are prohibited at [Vin.1.218ff.](#)

² Quoted at Vin-a.714, which, in reference to tallow, regards “the right time” as before a meal, “the wrong time” as after. ³ Quoted at Vin-a.714. ⁴ This list of roots also given at [Vin.4.35](#). For notes, see [BD.2.227f.](#) Cf. also Vin-a.833. ⁵ *pariharitum*. ⁶ Passage quoted at Vin-a.833. See [BD.2.330, n.3](#), on this expression, “as long as life lasts”. The medicines mentioned in [Bu-NP.23](#) may, unlike the root medicines which may be stored for life, be stored for at most seven days.

BD.4.272 Now at that time ill monks had need, as medicines, of what was pounded off roots. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a (lower) grindstone, a (small) grindstone.¹”

Kd.6.4.1

Now at that time ill monks had need of astringent decoctions as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to make use of astringent decoctions as medicines: astringent decoctions from the nimb-tree, astringent decoctions from the *kuṭaja*,² astringent decoctions from the *pakkava*,³ astringent decoctions from the *nattamāla*,⁴ or whatever other astringent decoctions there are that are medicines if they do not serve, among solid foods, as a solid food, if they do not serve, among soft foods, as a soft food; and having accepted them, to preserve them for as long as life lasts. **If there is no reason, there is an offence of wrong-doing for any one who makes use of (any of these medicines)**”.

Kd.6.5.1

Now at that time ill monks had need of leaves as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to make use of leaves as medicines: nimb-leaves, *kuṭaja*-leaves, cucumber⁵-leaves, basil⁶-leaves, cotton-tree leaves, or whatever other leaves there are that are medicines if they do not serve ... (any of these medicines).⁷”

Kd.6.6.1

BD.4.273 Now at that time ill monks had need of fruits as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason to make use of fruits as medicines: *vilaṅga*,⁸ pepper,⁹ black pepper,¹⁰ yellow myrobalan,¹¹ beleric myrobalan,¹² emblic myrobalan, *goṭha*-fruit¹³ or what-

¹ *nisada nisadapota*. Vin-a.1090 says *piṃsanasilā ca piṃsanapotako ca*, a stone for grinding and a small (thing) for grinding. This latter must be a pounder to use in the hand on the larger grindstone. ² *Wrightia antidysenterica* or *Nericum antidysentericum* (*Pali-English Dictionary*), *Holarrhena antidysenterica* (*Watt's Commercial Products of India*). ³ A creeper, Vin-a.1090 reading *paggava* as at Ja.ii.105, where it is called *vallī*, a creeping plant). ⁴ At Vin-a.1090 called *karañja* which, according to *Pali-English Dictionary*, is the tree *Pongamia glabra*. ⁵ *paṭola*, a kind of cucumber, *Trichosanthes Dioeca*. ⁶ *sulasī*; cf. Sanskrit *surasī*, given by Böhtlingk-Roth as “basilienkraut”. The word translated as “basil” at BD.2.228 is *ajjuka*. ⁷ Quoted at Vin-a.835. ⁸ *Erycibe paniculata*. ⁹ *pippala*, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.46, n.6. ¹⁰ *marica*. ¹¹ *haritaka*, cf. BD.3.245, n.4 (Vin.4.259).

ever other fruits there are that are medicines if they do not serve ... (any of these medicines).”

Now at that time ill monks had need of resins as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to make use of resins as medicines: *hiṅgu*,¹ *hiṅgu-resin*, *hiṅgu-gum*,² *gum*,³ *gum-patti*,⁴ *gum-paṇṇī*, or whatever other resins there are that are medicines if they do not serve ... (any of these medicines)”⁵.

Kd.6.7.1

Vin.1.202

Now at that time ill monks had need of salts as medicines. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to make use of salts as medicines: sea(-salt), black salt,⁶ rock-salt,⁷ culinary-salt, red-salt⁸ or whatever other salts there are that are medicines if they do not serve, among solid foods, as a solid food, if they do not serve, among soft foods, as a soft food; and having accepted them, to preserve them for as long as life lasts. **If there is no reason, there is an offence of wrong-doing for one who makes use of (any of these medicines).**”

Kd.6.8.1

Now at that time⁹ the venerable Belaṭṭhasāsa,¹⁰ the venerable Ānanda’s preceptor, had an affliction of thick scabs.¹¹ Because of the discharge his robes stuck to his body. Monks, having repeatedly moistened these with water, loosened them. As the Lord was touring the lodgings he saw these

Kd.6.9.1

BD.4.274

¹² *vibhītaka*, also at Ja.vi.529. WATT, *Commercial Products of India*, under *Terminalia belerica*, says “it has various medicinal qualities ascribed to it; and the oil expressed from the seed is used by the Natives”. Under *Phyllanthus emblica* Watt says “the fresh ripe fruits are largely employed as astringent and laxative medicines”. ¹³ *goṭhaphala*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says “medicinal seed”. Monier Williams, under *gotravṛiksha* compares to *dhanvana*. This he gives as the “plant *Alhagi Maurorum* which grows in a dry soil”. ¹ *Assafoetida*. ² *hiṅgu-sipāṭikā*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that this is a *sipāṭikā* (pod pericarp) yielding gum. Monier Williams says it is the same as *vaṁsa-patṭrī*. This he calls a “particular kind of grass = *nāḍī-hiṅgu*”. Vin-a.1090 says that *hiṅgu*, *hiṅgu-jatu*, *hiṅgu-sipāṭikā* are just kinds of *hiṅgu*. ³ *taka*, a medicinal gum. ⁴ Vin-a.1090 says that *taka* and these two varieties are all of them kinds of lac or resin. ⁵ Quoted at Vin-a.835. ⁶ Vin-a.1090 calls this common salt. ⁷ This is white in colour, Vin-a.1090. ⁸ Vin-a.1090: cooked together with all kinds of ingredients, it is red in colour. ⁹ Opening part of this story = Vin.1.295. ¹⁰ See BD.2.338, n.1. ¹¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.90.2.

monks loosening the robes, having repeatedly moistened them with water; and seeing (this) he approached these monks; having approached, he spoke thus to these monks: “What, monks, is this monk’s affliction?”

“Lord, this venerable one has an affliction of thick scabs; because of the discharge, his robes stick to his body; having repeatedly moistened them with water, we are loosening them.”

Kd.6.9.2

Then the Lord in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow, monks, for one who has itch¹ or a small boil or a running sore or an affliction of thick scabs or for one whose body smells nasty, chunams as medicines; for one who is not ill dung, clay, boiled colouring matter.² I allow you, monks, a pestle and mortar.³”

Kd.6.10.1

Now at that time ill monks had need of sifted chunams as medicines ... “I allow you, monks, a chunam-sifter.⁴” They had need of very fine ones. “I allow you, monks, a cloth sifter.”

Kd.6.10.2

Now at that time a certain monk had an non-human affliction. Teachers and preceptors, although nursing him, were unable to get him well. He, having gone to the swine’s slaughter-place, ate raw flesh and drank raw blood, and his non-human affliction subsided.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, when one has a non-human affliction, raw flesh and raw blood.”

Vin.1.203

Kd.6.11.1

BD.4.275

Now at that time a certain monk came to have an illness affecting his eyes. Having taken hold of that monk, they made him go out to ease himself.

¹ At Vin.4.172 (BD.3.97) “itch-cloth” is defined as: for covering anyone who has any of these afflictions. ² *rajana-nipakka*. Vin-a.1090 says *rajana-kasaṭa*, acrid colouring matter or dye-stuff. But *kasaṭa* can also mean dregs or leavings, and this sense is more likely here. Vin-a.1090 explains: “having ground ordinary chunam, having moistened it with water, one may wash (or bathe with it).” These three things were for applying to the body and not for taking as a medicine. ³ *dukkhala musala*, different from the grinding stones of Kd.6.3.2. ⁴ *cuṇṇacālanī*. ⁵ There seems at Vin-a.1090 the idea that a non-human being “possessed” the monk. For it explains that it was not the monk who ate and drank the raw things, but the non-human being; on its departing, his (the monk’s) non-human affliction is said to have subsided.

As the Lord was touring the lodgings, he saw those monks who, having taken hold of that monk, were making him go out to ease himself; seeing (this) he approached those monks; having approached, he spoke thus to those monks:

“What, monks, is this monk’s affliction?”

“Lord, this venerable one has an illness affecting his eyes; we, having taken hold of him, are making him go out to ease himself.” Then the Lord in this connection having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, these ointments¹: black collyrium,² *rasa*-ointment,³ *sota*-ointment,⁴ yellow-ochre,⁵ lamp-black.”⁶ They had need of ointment-powders.⁷ ... “I allow, monks, the use of sandal-wood, rosebay, black gum,⁸ *tālisa*,⁹ nut-grass.”¹⁰

Kd.6.11.2

Now at that time monks used to place pulverised ointments in small bowls and saucers. They were littered with powdered grass and dust ... “I allow, monks, an ointment-box.”¹¹ Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of ointment-boxes, made of gold, made of silver. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses”. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.6.12.1

“Monks, various kinds of ointment-boxes should not be used. Whoever should use (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow (them), monks, (to be) made of bone,¹² made of reed, made of bamboo, made of a

BD.4.276

¹ *añjana* is here a generic term, as is clear from the first three to be specified: *kāḷañjana rasañjana sotañjana*. Vin-a.1090 also says of *añjana*, “comprising all”. ² Vin-a.1090 says “one kind of *añjana*, cooked with all ingredients”. ³ Vin-a.1090 says “made from a variety of ingredients”. Böhtlingk-Roth say it is made with vitriol. ⁴ Vin-a.1090–91 says “an ointment originating in rivers and streams”. Böhtlingk-Roth say it is made with antimony. ⁵ *geruka*, or red chalk. ⁶ *kapalla* taken from the flame of a lamp, Vin-a.1091. *Pali-English Dictionary* says *kapalla* is here in error for *kajjala*. ⁷ *añjanupapisana*, as at Vin.2.112. ⁸ See GS.v.17, n.1. ⁹ *Flacourtia cataphracta*. ¹⁰ As in Kd.6.3.1, and Vin.4.35. See BD.2.228, n.2. ¹¹ *añjanī*. See BD.3.89, n.2. Allowed also at Vin.2.135. ¹² At Vin.4.167 these three materials are allowed for making needle-cases. “Bone” is there defined as whatever is bone. But Vin-a.1091 says “made of bone” means of every kind of bone with the exception of human bone. This list recurs at Vin.2.117.

piece of stick, made of lac, made of crystal,¹ made of copper, made of the centre of a conch-shell.”

Kd.6.12.2

Now at that time ointment-boxes were not covered. They were littered with powdered grass and dust ... “I allow, monks, a lid.”² A lid fell off ... “I allow you, monks, having tied it with thread, to tie it to the ointment-box.” An ointment-box split open.³ ... “I allow you, monks, to sew it round with thread.”

Kd.6.12.3

Now at that time monks put on ointment with (their) fingers. (Their) eyes became painful ... “I allow, monks, an ointment-stick.”⁴ Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of ointment-sticks, made of gold, made of silver. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” ... **“Monks, various kinds of ointment-sticks should not be used.”**⁵ **Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow (them), monks, (to be) made of bone ... made of the centre of a conch-shell.”

Vin.1.204

Kd.6.12.4

Now at that time an ointment-stick, falling to the ground, became rough ... “I allow, monks, a case for the sticks.”⁶ Now at that time monks carried about ointment-boxes and ointment-sticks in their hands ... “I allow, monks, a bag for the ointment-box.” There was no strap at the edge⁷ ... “I allow, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying⁸.”

BD.4.277

¹ *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests that *phalamaya* “stands in all probability for *phalikamaya*”.

² Allowed also at [Vin.2.122](#) for a well. ³ Reading *phalati* with Sinhalese edition instead of Oldenberg’s *nipalati*. ⁴ Allowed again, with ointment-box, at [Vin.2.135](#). At [Vin.4.168](#) there is “no offence” if an ointment-stick is used as a needle-case. ⁵ Cf. above [Kd.6.12.1](#).

⁶ Vin-a.1091 says, “because they put down the sticks, I allow a piece of hollow wood or a bag for them”. ⁷ *aṃsa-bandhaka* (variant readings *vadhaka*, *vaddhaka*). Vin-a.1091 says this is for (or, on) the ointment-bag. The same thing allowed at [Vin.2.114](#) for a bowl. At [Kd.6.13.2](#) there is a similar “allowance” for a bag for tubes for steam. Thus the monks had different bags for different portable articles. It would seem as if each bag had a strap attached to its edge, rather than that monk, carried the bags by means of straps going over the shoulder (also called *aṃsa*). ⁸ *bandhana-suttaka*, probably for tying the box to the strap. Cf. [Vin.2.114](#).

THE STORY OF PILINDAVACCHA

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha¹ had a head-ache² ... “I allow, monks, a small quantity of oil for the head.” He did not get better ... “I allow, monks, (medical) treatment through the nose”.³ His nose ran ... “I allow, monks, a nose-spoon.”⁴ Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of nose-spoons, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” ... **Monks, various kinds of nose-spoons should not be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow (them), monks, (to be) made of bone ... made of the centre of a conch-shell.”

Kd.6.13.1

They poured it up the nose in uneven quantities.⁵ ... “I allow, monks, a double nose-spoon.”⁶ He did not get better ... “I allow you, monks, to inhale steam.”⁷ So they inhaled it after they had lit a wick.⁸ It burnt their throats ... “I allow you, monks, a tube for the steam.”⁹ Now at that time the group of six monks used all kinds of tubes for the steam ... (as in Kd.6.13.1) ... “I allow (them), monks, (to be) made of bone ... made of the centre of a conch-shell.” Now at that time tubes for the steam were not covered, and small creatures got in. “I allow, monks, a lid.” Now at that time monks carried about tubes for the steam in their hands. “I allow, monks, a bag for the tubes for the steam.” They got rubbed together ... “I allow, monks, a double bag.” There was no strap at the edge.¹⁰ ... “I allow, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying.”

Kd.6.13.2

BD.4.278

¹ See BD.1.112, n.2. ² A “certain monk” had this, *sisābhitāpa*, at Vin.3.83 (BD.1.143).

³ *natthukamma*. Cf. *natthuṃ adaṃsu* at Vin.3.83 (see BD.1.143, n.2). Mentioned also at MN.i.511.

⁴ *natthu-karaṇī*. I translate as at *Vinaya Texts* ii.54. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “pocket-handkerchief”, but next sentence makes this unlikely. ⁵ *natthuṃ visamaṃ āsiṅcanti*. In pouring the medicament up the nose, monks probably poured more up one nostril than the other. The spoon, therefore, was not to catch the discharge from the nose but was to hold it up “so that the medicinal oil does not run out” (*Vinaya Texts* ii.54, n.1); it was an instrument with which to pour up the medicinal oil itself. ⁶ I.e. one giving an equal stream in respect of its two measures, Vin-a.1091. ⁷ *dhūmaṃ pātuṃ*, literally to drink steam, or smoke. Below, Kd.6.14.5, cf. *dhūmaṃ kātuṃ*. Cf. “drinking” (not smoking) a huqqa, by reason of the water in it. ⁸ Cf. *Vinaya Texts* ii.54, n.3, which states that they smeared a wick with the drugs and then burnt them. ⁹ *dhūmanetta*. Also at Ja.iv.363; translated *Jātaka Translation* iv.229 as “smoking-pipe”. ¹⁰ As in Kd.6.12.4.

Kd.6.14.1

Vin.1.205

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha had an affliction of wind. Physicians spoke thus: “Oil must be boiled.” ... “I allow, monks, a decoction of oil.” Now strong drink had to be mixed in that decoction of oil. “I allow you, monks, to mix strong drink in a decoction of oil.” Now at that time the group of six monks boiled oils mixed with too much strong drink. Having drunk these, they were intoxicated.¹ “Monks, oil mixed with too much strong drink should not be drunk. Whoever should (so) drink should be dealt with according to the rule.² I allow you, monks, if neither the colour nor the smell nor the taste of strong drink³ appears in any decoction of oil, to drink oil mixed with strong drink if it is like this.”

Kd.6.14.2

Now at that time monks came to have much boiled oil mixed with too much strong drink. Then it occurred to these monks: “Now what course of conduct should be followed when there is oil mixed with too much strong drink?” ... “I allow you, monks, to employ it as an unguent.”⁴ Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha came to have a quantity of boiled oil, but there was no receptacle for oil. “I allow you, monks, three kinds of vessels: a copper vessel, a wooden vessel, a vessel (made of) fruit.”

Kd.6.14.3

BD.4.279

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha had rheumatism in the limbs. “I allow, monks, the sweating-treatment.”⁵ He got no better ... “I allow, monks, sweating by the use of all kinds of herbs.”⁶ He got no better. “I allow, monks, the great sweating.”⁷ He got no better. “I allow, monks

¹ *majjanti*, or “were elated”. ² Bu-Pc.51. ³ Cf. Bu-Pc.51.2.3. ⁴ *abbhañjana*, an oiling. Cf. the same word in the “key” at Vin.3.79 used in referring to *abbhañjimsu*, they oiled or rubbed (an ill monk), on BD.4.83. ⁵ *sedakamma*. ⁶ *sambhāraseda*. Vin-a.1091, “sweating by the use of hemp and a variety of leaves”. ⁷ *mahāseda*. Vin-a.1091 explains that they heap charcoal into a pit the size of a man, cover it with dust, sand and leaves, and the patient lies down there with his limbs smeared with oil and sweats by rolling round.

(the use of) hemp-water.”¹ He got no better. “I allow monks, (the use of) a water-vat.”²

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha had rheumatism in the joints. “I allow you, monks, to let blood.”³ He got no better. “I allow you, monks, having let blood, to cup with a horn.”⁴ Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha’s feet came to be split. “I allow you, monks, an unguent for the feet.” He got no better. “I allow you, monks, to prepare a foot-salve.”⁵ Now at that time a certain monk came to have boils. “I allow, monks, treatment with a lancet.”⁶ There was need of astringent water. “I allow, monks, astringent water.” There was need of sesamum paste. “I allow, monks, sesamum paste.”

Kd.6.14.4

There was need of a compress.⁷ “I allow, monks, a compress.” There was need of a piece of cloth for tying over the sore. “I allow, monks, a piece of cloth for tying over the sore.” The sore itched. “I allow you, monks, to sprinkle it with mustard-powder.”⁸ The sore festered. “I allow you, monks, to make a fumigation.”⁹ The flesh of the sore¹⁰ stood up. “I allow you, monks, to cut it off with a piece of salt-crystal.” The sore did not heal. “I allow, monks, oil for the sore.” The oil ran. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a linen bandage¹¹ (and) every treatment for curing a sore.”

Kd.6.14.5

Vin.1.206

Now at that time a certain monk was bitten by a snake.¹² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give the four great ir-

Kd.6.14.6
BD.4.280

¹ *bhaṅgodaka*, i.e. hemp leaves boiled in water. The patient should sweat by repeatedly sprinkling himself with this preparation, Vin-a.1091. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.57, n.1. ² *udakakoṭṭhaka*. “I allow the application of the sweating treatment (*sedakammakaraṇa*), having got into a vessel or vat filled with hot water.” Vin-a.1091. *Koṭṭhaka* is usually a store-room. ³ By using a knife (or lancet), Vin-a.1091. ⁴ See *Vinaya Texts* ii.57, n.3, which, quoting Wise, says, “bad blood may be removed by means of cupping, which is performed by a horn”. ⁵ *pajja*, cf. DN.ii.240. ⁶ *satthakamma*. ⁷ *kabaḷikā*. ⁸ *sāsapakuṭṭa*. Cf. Vin.2.151 *sāsapakuḍḍa*, as at Vin-a.1092, where explained as “ground (*piṭṭha*) mustard”. ⁹ *dhūmaṃ kātuṃ*. Cf. Kd.6.13.2. ¹⁰ *vaṇamaṃsa*, Vin-a.1092 reading *vaḍḍhamaṃsa*, and saying that the upper or covering (*adhika*) flesh stood up like a peg. ¹¹ *vikāsika*; Vin-a.1092, “a piece of cloth for covering up the sore”. ¹² Cf. Vin.4.166.

regular things¹: (a decoction of) dung, urine, ashes, clay.”² Then it occurred to the monks: “(May they be used) even if they are not (formally) received, or should they be (formally) received?”³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make use of them if someone to make them allowable⁴ is there (formally) to offer⁵ them to you; having taken them yourselves, if there is no one to make them allowable.”

Now at that time a certain monk came to have drunk poison. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make him drink (a concoction of) dung.” Then it occurred to the monks: “(May it be drunk) even if it is not (formally) received, or should it be (formally) offered?”⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, that if he receives (formally) that which (someone) is making allowable,⁷ when he has once (formally) received it that it need not be (formally) offered again.”

Kd.6.14.7

Now at that time a certain monk had an affliction resulting from drinking something poisonous.⁸ “I allow you, monks, to make him drink (a decoction of) mud turned up by the plough.”⁹

Now at that time a certain monk was constipated. “I allow you, monks, to make him drink raw lye.”

Now at that time a certain monk had jaundice. “I allow you, monks, to make him drink (a compound of cow’s¹⁰) urine and yellow myrobalan.”¹¹

BD.4.281

¹ *mahāvikaṭāni*. Mentioned at Vin.4.90, where a monk may himself take these even if there is no one to make them “allowable”, for they do not count as “nutriment”. Also at MN.1.79, DN.1.167. ² These things are, or are by Indians, regarded as great purifiers. ³ *paṭiggahetabbāni*. Oldenberg proposes to read *paṭiggahāpetabbāni*, Vin.1.382. ⁴ Cf. BD.2.346, n.1, n.2. ⁵ *paṭiggahāpetuṃ*. ⁶ *paṭiggahāpetabbo*; see BD.2.122. ⁷ *yaṃ karonto paṭiggahāti*. ⁸ Vin-a.1092 takes this to mean he was suffering from the results of sorcery, i.e. from a disease arising from drinking under the mastery of another. ⁹ *sītāloḷi*, explained at Vin-a.1092 as “I allow you to make him drink, mixed with water, the clay clinging to the ploughshare when tilling with a plough”. ¹⁰ So Vin-a.1092. ¹¹ Cf. Vin.1.276 where Jīvaka gave ghee as a cure for jaundice.

Now at that time a certain monk had a skin disease. “I allow you, monks, to make a perfume-paste.”

Now at that time a certain monk’s body came to be full of (bad) humours.¹ “I allow him, monks, to drink a purgative.” There was need of clarified conje. “I allow, monks, clarified conje.” There was need of unprepared broth.² “I allow, monks, unprepared broth.” There was need of prepared and unprepared.³ “I allow, monks, prepared and unprepared.” There was need of meat-broth.⁴ “I allow, monks, meat-broth.”

Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha,⁵ desiring to make a cave, had a (mountain) slope cleared near Rājagaha. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the venerable Pilindavaccha; having approached, having greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the venerable Pilindavaccha: “What, honoured sir, is the elder having made?”

“Sire, desiring to make a cave, I am having a (mountain) slope cleared.”

“Honoured sir, does the master require an attendant for a monastery?”

“Sire, an attendant for a monastery is not allowed by the Lord.”

“Well, honoured sir, having inquired of the Lord, you should tell him of me.”

“Very well, sire,” the venerable Pilindavaccha answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent.

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha gladdened, roused, rejoiced, delighted King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha with talk on *dhamma*. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, gladdened ... delighted by the venerable Pilindavaccha’s talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the vener-

¹ *abhisannakāya*. Cf. Vin.2.119, also Kd.8.130, *kāya dosābhisanna*. ² *akāṭayūsa*. Vin-a.1092 says “a beverage cooked with beans but not oily”. ³ *kaṭākaṭa*. Vin-a.1092 reads *so’va thokaṃ* (variant reading *dhota*) *siniddho*, this is only a little oily. ⁴ *paṭicchādaniya*. Cf. below, Kd.6.23.3. Vin-a.1092 explains by *maṃsarasa*, flavour of meat. ⁵ From here towards end of Kd.6.15.10 = Vin.3.248–Vin.3.251. See BD.2.126ff. for notes.

Kd.6.15.1

Vin.1.207

Kd.6.15.2

BD.4.282

able Pilindavaccha sent a messenger to the Lord to say: “Lord, King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha desires to present an attendant for a monastery. Now, Lord, what line of conduct is to be followed?” Then the Lord on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks saying:

“I allow, monks, a monastery attendant.”

Kd.6.15.3

And a second time did King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approach the venerable Pilindavaccha; having approached, having greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was fitting down at a respectful distance King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to the venerable Pilindavaccha:

“Honoured sir, has the Lord allowed a monastery attendant?”

“Yes, sire.”

“Well then, honoured sir, I will give the master a monastery attendant.”

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, having promised the venerable Pilindavaccha a monastery attendant, (but) having forgotten, having recalled it after a time, addressed a chief minister who was concerned with all the affairs, saying: “My good sir, has that monastery-attendant whom I promised to the master been given?”

“Your majesty, a monastery attendant has not been given to the master.”

“My good sir, how long is it since it was considered?”

Kd.6.15.4

Then that chief minister, having counted up the days, spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “It is five hundred days, your majesty.”

“Well then, give five hundred monastery attendants to the master.”

“Yes, your majesty,” and the chief minister having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, bestowed five hundred monastery attendants on the venerable Pilindavaccha, and a distinct village established itself. They called it “The Village of the Monastery Attendants” and they also called it “Pilinda Village”. Now at that time the venerable Pilindavaccha frequented families in that village. Then the venerable Pilindavaccha, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Pilinda Village for almsfood.

Vin.1.208

BD.4.283

Kd.6.15.5

Now at that time there came to be a festival in this village; young girls wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, were celebrating it. Then the venerable Pilindavaccha as he was walking for almsfood on unbroken

round¹ in Pilinda Village, approached the dwelling of a certain monastery attendant; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat. Now at that time the daughter of the monastery attendant's wife, having seen other little girls wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, cried and said: "Give me a garland, give me an ornament."

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha said to that monastery attendant's wife: "Why is this little girl crying?"

"Honoured sir, this little girl is crying because, having seen other little girls wearing ornaments, adorned with garlands, she says: 'Give me a garland, give me an ornament.' Whence is there a garland for us who are poor, whence an ornament?"

Kd.6.15.6

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha, having taken a roll of grass, spoke thus to that monastery attendant's wife: "Now set this roll of grass on this little girl's head." Then that monastery attendant's wife, having taken that roll of grass, set it on that little girl's head. It became a golden chaplet, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there was no golden chaplet like it even in the king's women's quarters. People spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

"Your majesty, in the house of a certain monastery attendant there is a golden chaplet, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there is no golden chaplet like it even in your majesty's women's quarters. As he is poor, where (could he have got it) from? Undoubtedly it was taken by theft." Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha had that monastery attendant's family imprisoned.

Kd.6.15.7
BD.4.284

And a second time did the venerable Pilindavaccha, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, enter Pilinda Village for almsfood. As he was walking in Pilinda Village on unbroken round for almsfood he approached the dwelling of that monastery attendant; having approached, he asked the neighbours: "Where has this monastery attendant's family

¹ *sapadānam*, derivation uncertain. Enjoined at Bu-Sk.33. Explanations given at Vin-a.893 (cited BD.3.129, n.3); SN-a.i.205: the houses reached, one walking to them successively (in succession, in order); Snp-a.118: one who walks successively, not having rejected (departed from) the order (succession) of the houses, entering a rich household and a poor household without interruption (without a break, "just as it comes"), for almsfood.

gone?”

“Honoured sir, they have been imprisoned by the king on account of that golden chaplet.”

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha approached the residence of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha approached the venerable Pilindavaccha; having approached, having greeted the venerable Pilindavaccha he sat down at a respectful distance. The venerable Pilindavaccha spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha as he was sitting down at a respectful distance:

“How is it, sire, that the monastery attendant’s family is imprisoned?”

“Honoured sir, in that monastery attendant’s house there was a golden chaplet, beautiful, good to look upon, charming; there is no golden chaplet like it even in our women’s quarters. Where (could he have got it) from, as he is poor? Undoubtedly it was obtained by theft.”

Then the venerable Pilindavaccha exercised volitional force, and said: “The palace of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha is golden,” and it became made all of gold. He said: “Now, sire, from where have you got so much gold?”

Saying: “I understand, honoured sir, this is the master’s majesty of psychic power,” he set free the monastery attendant’s family.

People, delighted, full of satisfaction because they heard that a state of further men, a wonder of psychic power had been shown by master Pilindavaccha to the king and his retinue, presented the five (kinds of) medicine to the venerable Pilindavaccha, that is to say ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey and molasses. Now the venerable Pilindavaccha was customarily a receiver, so whenever he received the five (kinds of) medicine he gave them away among his company. And his company came to live in abundance; whatever they received, filling pots and pitchers, they put them away, and filling water strainers and bags, they hung them up in the windows. These (pots, etc.) leaked, and the dwelling-places became beset and overrun by rats. People, having seen (this) as they were touring the dwelling-places, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, are storing up goods indoors, like King Seniya Bimbisāra of

Magadha.”

Monks heard these people who were ... spreading it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks strive after abundance like this?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks are striving after abundance such as this?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them,¹ having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Those medicines which may be partaken of by ill monks, that is to say ghee, fresh butter, oil, honey, molasses—having accepted these, they may be used as a store for at most seven days. He who exceeds that (period) should be dealt with according to the rule.”²

The First Portion for Repeating: that on Medicines that are Allowed

ALLOWANCE FOR SUGAR, ETC.

Then the Lord, having stayed at Sāvattthī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Rājagaha. And on the way the venerable Revata the Doubter³ saw a sugar-factory; having stepped aside, (he saw the men) putting flour and syrup⁴ into the sugar; seeing this and thinking: “Sugar with food⁵ is unallowable; it is not allowable to make use of sugar at a wrong time,” being

¹ Vin.3.251 (BD.2.131) reads: The lord rebuked them saying: “... this rule of training should be set forth ...” ² Bu-NP.23. ³ Kankhārevata. At AN.i.24 called “chief of musers”; verses at Thag.3, Thi-ap.491. Mentioned at Ud.5.7, MN.i.212, MN.i.462. He was scrupulous about and doubted what was allowable, *kappiya*. Cf. Thag-a.37, Ud-a.314, AN-a.i.230, MN-a.ii.247, GS.i.18, n.2. ⁴ *chārikaṃ* cannot here be ashes, which is its most usual meaning. But cf. Sanskrit *ṣāra*, treacle, molasses. Perhaps some confused reference back to the “four irregular things” of Kd.6.14.6 is intended here. The allowability of the first two has been emphasised in specific cases (in Kd.6.14.6 and Kd.6.14.7), and “mud turned up by the plough” (of Kd.6.14.7) is probably intended as an example of the fourth irregular thing, namely clay. Here occurs the same word as is used for the third irregular thing, *chārika*, there translated “ashes” where syrup or treacle would hardly fit; but here translated “syrup”, as people would not put ashes into sugar to stiffen it, nor would ashes be called “food”, *āmisa*. ⁵ *sāmisa*; cf. Vin.4.198.

scrupulous,¹ he and his company did not make use of the sugar, neither did those make use of the sugar who deemed that he should be listened to. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Why, monks, did they put flour and syrup into the sugar?”

“So as to make it firm, Lord.”

“If, monks, they put flour and syrup into the sugar so as to make it firm, and if it is still called ‘sugar’, I allow you, monks, to make use of as much sugar as you like.”²

Kd.6.16.2

Then on the way the venerable Revata the Doubter saw a kidney-bean growing on a dunghill; having seen it and thinking: “Kidney-beans are not allowable, for ripe kidney-beans are also growing,”³ being scrupulous he and his company did not make use of the kidney-bean, neither did those who deemed that he should be listened to make use of the kidney-bean. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, even if ripe kidney-beans are growing, I allow you to make use of kidney-beans as much as you like.”

Kd.6.16.3

Now at that time a certain monk had an affliction of wind in the stomach. He drank salted sour gruel.⁴ Because of this his affliction of wind in the stomach subsided. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, salted sour gruel for one who is ill; when one is not ill to make use of it by using it as a beverage mixed with water.”

ON REJECTION OF WHAT IS PREPARED INDOORS, ETC.

Kd.6.17.1

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Rājagaha. The Lord stayed there in Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels’ feeding place. Now at that time the Lord came to have an affliction of wind in the stomach. Then the venerable Ānanda, thinking: “On a former occasion the

¹ kukkuccāyanta. AN-a.i.230, in explanation of Kaṅkhārevata’s name, says “doubting means, having scruples; the meaning is being scrupulous”. ² *yathāsukham*. ³ Meaning of this passage is not clear. Vin-a.1092 says, “if ripe kidney-beans are also growing they may be used as much as you like, for these are allowed just because they are ripe”. On *mugga* see [BD.1.83, n.4](#). ⁴ *loṇasovīra*ka. At [Vin.3.86](#) it is called *suṅvīra*ka. See [BD.1.149, n.3](#).

Lord's affliction of wind in the stomach was eased by conje containing the three pungent ingredients,"¹ having himself prepared sesamum and rice-grain and kidney-bean, having cured² them indoors, having himself cooked them indoors, brought them to the Lord, saying: "Lord, drink the conje containing the three pungent ingredients."

BD.4.287

Now Truth-finders (sometimes) ask knowing,³ and knowing (sometimes) do not ask; they ask knowing the right time (to ask), and they do not ask knowing the right time (when not to ask). Truth-finders ask about what belongs to the goal, not about what does not belong to the goal; bridge-breaking for Truth-finders is among what does not belong to the goal. Awakened ones, Lords question monks concerning two matters: either, "Shall we teach *dhamma*?" or "Shall we lay down a rule of training for disciples?" Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: "Where does this conje come from, Ānanda?" Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.6.17.2

Vin.1.211

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: "It is not becoming, Ānanda, it is not fitting, it is not suitable, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. And how can you, Ānanda, strain after abundance such as this? Moreover, Ānanda, that which is cured indoors is unallowable, and that which is cooked indoors is also unallowable, and that which is cooked by oneself is also unallowable. It is not, Ānanda, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." And having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.6.17.3

"Monks, one should not make use of what is cured indoors, cooked indoors, cooked by oneself. Whoever should make use (of any of these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.6.17.4

"If, monks, it is cured indoors, cooked indoors, cooked by oneself, and one should make use of it, there is an offence of three wrong-doings. If, monks, it is cured indoors, cooked indoors, (but) cooked by others, and one should make use of it, there is an offence of two wrong-doings. If, monks, it is cured indoors, cooked out of doors, cooked by oneself, and one should

BD.4.288

¹ *tekaṭulayāgu*. See BD.1.111, n.1. ² *vāsetvā*. I follow *Pali-English Dictionary* (under *vāseti*) rather than the "kept" of *Vinaya Texts* ii.68. Monks are allowed to cure (or purify) clay at Vin.2.120. ³ Cf. BD.1.12, and see there n.3 for further references.

make use of it, there is an offence of two wrong-doings.

Kd.6.17.5

“If, monks, it is cured out of doors, cooked indoors, cooked by oneself, and one should make use of it, there is an offence of two wrong-doings. If, monks, it is cured indoors, cooked out of doors, cooked by others, and one should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, monks, it is cured out of doors, cooked out of doors, (but) cooked by oneself, and one should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If, monks, it is cured out of doors, cooked out of doors, cooked by others, and one should make use of it, there is no offence.”

Kd.6.17.6

Now at that time, monks, thinking: “Cooking for oneself¹ is objected to by the Lord,” were doubtful about² a second cooking.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cook a second cooking.”

Kd.6.17.7

Now at that time Rājagaha became short of food. People conveyed salt and oil and husked rice and solid food⁴ to the monastery. The monks cured these out of doors, but vermin⁵ ate them and also thieves carried them off.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cure indoors.”⁷ When they had cured (the things) indoors, they cooked them out of doors, (but) those who live on the remains of food⁸ crowded round. The monks, not trusting them, made use of (the food). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cook indoors.” When food was short those who made it allowable carried away the larger (portion) and gave the monks the lesser (portion). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, yourselves to cook. I allow you, monks, what is cured indoors, what is cooked indoors, what is cooked by yourselves.”

Vin.1.212

BD.4.289

¹ *sāmaṅpāka*. ² *kukkuccāyanti*. ³ *punapāka*, i.e. a reheating of food already cooked once. ⁴ These four items are mentioned also at [Vin.1.220](#), [Vin.1.238](#), [Vin.1.243](#), [Vin.1.249](#).

⁵ *ukkapiṇḍaka*. Vin-a.1093 explains as cats, mice, lizards, mongeese (? *maṅgusā*). ⁶ As at [Vin.1.239](#). ⁷ This, and subsequent allowances, refer only to times of scarcity, and were all rescinded for times of plenty, see [Kd.6.32.1](#), [Kd.6.32.2](#).

⁸ Here called *damakā*. Vin-a.1093 explains by *vighāsādā*, a word which occurs at e.g. [Kd.6.24.1](#) below, and [Vin.4.91](#). See [BD.2, Introduction, p.xliii](#) and [BD.4.347, n.3](#).

PICKED UP AND RECEIVED

Now at that time several monks, having spent the rains in Kāsi, going to Rājagaha to see the Lord, did not obtain on the way sufficient mediocre or fine meals, as much as they needed. Yet there was much solid food that was fruit,¹ but there was no one to make it allowable.² So these monks weary in body, approached Rājagaha, the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding place, the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for awakened ones, for Lords, to exchange friendly greetings with incoming monks. So the Lord spoke thus to these monks: "I hope, monks, things are going well with you, I hope you are keeping going, I hope you have come here with but little fatigue on the journey? And where, monks, do you come from?"

Kd.6.17.8

"Things are going well with us, Lord, but we, Lord, having spent the rains in Kāsi, coming to Rājagaha to see the Lord ... no one to make it allowable; thus we have come on the journey weary in body."

Kd.6.17.9

Then the Lord on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

"I allow you, monks, if one anywhere sees solid food that is fruit, but if there is no one to make it allowable, having taken³ it oneself, having carried it away, having seen someone to make it allowable, having laid it down on the ground, to make use of it, (he) having (formally) offered⁴ it to you. I allow you, monks, to receive (formally) what you have picked up."⁵

Now at that time fresh sesamum and fresh honey had accrued to a certain brahmin. Then it occurred to that brahmin: "Suppose I were to give the fresh sesamum and fresh honey to the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head?"

Kd.6.18.1

Then that brahmin approached the Lord; having approached, he exchanged friendly greetings with the Lord. Having exchanged greetings of

BD.4.290

¹ *phalakhādaniya*. See note on *piṭṭhakhādaniya* at Kd.6.36.6 below. ² *kappiyakāraka*. These make things allowable by offering them. See Kd.6.21.1; Kd.6.38.1. ³ *gahetvā*. ⁴ *paṭig-gahāpetvā*. Cf. note on *patta-gāhāpaka* at BD.2.122, and above, BD.4.280. ⁵ *uggahitaṃ*. This is an "allowance" only for a time of scarcity. See the much simpler "allowance" at Kd.6.21.1 for more normal times.

friendliness and courtesy he stood at a respectful distance; and standing at a respectful distance, that brahmin spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, may the revered¹ Gotama together with the Order of monks consent to a meal with me to-morrow.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then that brahmin departed, having understood the Lord’s consent.

Vin.1.213

Kd.6.18.2

Then that brahmin having had, towards the end of that night, sumptuous solid food and soft food prepared, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, good Gotama, the meal is ready”. Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached that brahmin’s dwelling; having approached, he sat down together with the Order of monks on the appointed seat. Then that brahmin, having with his own hand served and satisfied with sumptuous solid food and soft food the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl. While that brahmin was sitting down at a respectful distance the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted him with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.6.18.3

Then it occurred to that brahmin soon after the Lord had departed: “I forgot to give those things for the sake of which I invited the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, thinking: ‘I will give fresh sesamum and fresh honey.’ Suppose I were to have the fresh sesamum and the fresh honey conveyed to the monastery in pots and pitchers?” Then that brahmin, having had the fresh sesamum and the fresh honey conveyed to the monastery in pots and pitchers, approached the Lord; having approached, he stood at a respectful distance; and as he was standing at a respectful distance this brahmin spoke thus to the Lord:

Kd.6.18.4

“I forgot to give those things, good Gotama, for the sake of which I invited the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, thinking: ‘I will give fresh sesamum and fresh honey’. May the revered Gotama accept from me fresh sesamum and fresh honey?”

BD.4.291

“Well, then, brahmin, give them to the monks.”

¹ *bhavaṃ*, as at [Vin.3.2](#).

Now at that time because food was scarce¹ and they offered them only a little, monks considerably refused. But a whole Order was offered (food); the monks, being scrupulous, did not accept it.² (The Lord said:)

“Accept (the food), monks, make use of it. I allow you, monks, having eaten and being satisfied,³ to make use of food that is not left over,⁴ if it was taken back from there”.⁵

ALLOWANCE FOR WHAT IS RECEIVED, ETC.

Now at that time the family who supported the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, sent solid food for the Order,⁶ saying: “Having pointed it out as for master Upananda, it should be given to the Order.” Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, had entered the village for almsfood. Then these people, having gone to the monastery, asked the monks: “Where, honoured sirs, is master Upananda?”

“Sirs, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, has entered the village for almsfood.”

“Honoured sirs, having pointed out this solid food as for master Upananda, it should be given to the Order.”

They told this matter to the Lord.⁷ He said: “Well, then, monks, having accepted it, put it aside until Upananda comes back.”

Then the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having visited the families before the meal, came back during the day.⁸ Now at that time

¹ *dubbhikkhā* means scarcity of food and of (in consequence) almsfood. ² See [Bu-Pc.32](#) and its definition of “great scarcity”, and its saying that at such a time a “group-meal” may be eaten ([BD.2.312](#)). ³ See [BD.2.326, n.2](#) and definitions at [BD.2.328](#). ⁴ See [Bu-Pc.35](#), to which the above allowance is an exception made in a time of scarcity. See [BD.2.328, n.4](#), and definition of “what is not left over” at [BD.2.329](#). ⁵ *tato nihatam*, i.e. having taken the food to the monastery from the place where it was received. Cf. *tato niharitvā* at [Vin.4.80](#) and its “definition” at [Vin.4.81](#). ⁶ As at [Vin.4.98–Vin.4.98 \(BD.2.363f.\)](#). ⁷ Here [Vin.4.99](#) inserts: “Then the Lord on that occasion, in that connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “Well then ...” ⁸ At [Vin.4.99](#) Upananda is represented as thinking it to be forbidden by the Lord to call upon families before a meal, so having visited them after a meal he returned during the day. “Before a meal”, “after a meal” are defined at [Vin.4.100](#), and differently at [Vin.iv,272, Vin.iv,273](#). Nuns’ [Bu-Pc.15, Bu-Pc.16](#) seem to take it for granted that *nuns* approach families before and after meals.

Kd.6.19.1

Vin.1.214

Kd.6.19.2

BD.4.292

because food was scarce and they offered them only a little, monks considerably refused; but a whole Order was offered (food); the monks, being scrupulous, did not accept. (The Lord said:)

“Accept (the food), monks, make use of it. I allow you, monks, having eaten and being satisfied, to make use of (food) that is not left over if it was accepted before a meal.”

Kd.6.20.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on a tour for Sāvattihī. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Sāvattihī. Then the Lord stayed there at Sāvattihī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the venerable Sāriputta had fever. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great approached the venerable Sāriputta; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Sāriputta:

“When you, reverend Sāriputta, previously had fever, by what means was it eased?”

“I had lotus fibres and stalks, your reverence.”

Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so did he, vanishing from the Jeta Grove appear on the banks of the Mandākinī lotus-tank.¹

Kd.6.20.2

A certain elephant² saw the venerable Moggallāna the Great coming in the distance; seeing him he spoke thus to the venerable Moggallāna the Great:

“Honoured sir, let master Moggallāna the Great come; there is a welcome, honoured sir, for master Moggallāna the Great. What, honoured sir, does the master need? What can I give him?”

“I need lotus fibres and stalks, friend.” Then that elephant commanded another elephant, saying:

BD.4.293

“Well now, good fellow, give the master as many lotus fibres and stalks as he needs.” Then that elephant, having plunged into the Mandākinī lotus-tank, having with his trunk pulled lotus fibres and stalks, having washed them clean,³ having tied them into a bundle, approached the venerable

Vin.1.215

¹ One of the seven great lakes of the Himalayas, part of it being covered with white lotuses. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ² *nāga*, elephant, rather than serpent here; the *sonḍā*, trunk, is mentioned a little later. ³ Cf. [Vin.2.201](#), SN.ii.269.

Moggallāna the Great.

Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so did he, vanishing from the bank of the Mandākinī lotus-tank, appear in the Jeta Grove. And that elephant too, vanishing from the bank of the Mandākinī lotus-tank, appeared in the Jeta Grove. Then that elephant, having offered the venerable Moggallāna the Great the lotus fibres and stalks, vanishing from the Jeta Grove, appeared on the bank of the Mandākinī lotus-tank. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great brought the lotus fibres and stalks to the venerable Sāriputta. Then as the venerable Sāriputta was making use of the lotus fibres and stalks, his fever abated. Many lotus fibres and stalks came to be left over.

Kd.6.20.3

Now at that time because food was scarce and they offered them only a little,¹ monks considerably refused; but a whole Order was offered (food). The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept. (The Lord said:)

Kd.6.20.4

“Accept (the food), monks, make use of it. I allow you, monks, having eaten and being satisfied, to make use of (food) that is not left over if it grows in a wood, if it grows in a lotus-tank.”²

Now at that time there was a great quantity of solid food that was fruit³ at Sāvattthī, but there was no one to make it allowable. The monks, being scrupulous, did not make use of the fruit. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.6.21.1

“I allow you, monks, to make use of fruit that is without seed (or) whose seed is discharged,⁴ (even if) it is not made allowable.”

BD.4.294

¹ As above, Kd.6.18.4 and Kd.6.19.2. ² This therefore seems an exception to Bu-Pc.11, which makes the destruction of vegetable growth an offence. ³ Cf. above Kd.6.17.8; below Kd.6.38.1, and note on *piṭṭhakhādaniya* at Kd.6.36.6. ⁴ *nibbattabija*. Vin-a.1093 says *bijam nibbatetvā* (variant reading *nippaṭṭetvā*) *apanetvā*, having got rid of the seed, having discharged it. The idea seems to be that monks must not eat the seeds of fruits. At Kd.6.38.1 all solid food that is fruit is allowed.

ON REJECTION OF SURGERY

Kd.6.22.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Sāvattthī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Rājagaha. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Rājagaha. And the Lord stayed there at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time a certain monk was afflicted by an ulcer.¹ The surgeon, Ākāsagotta,² lanced it. Then the Lord, as he was touring the lodgings, approached this monk's dwelling-place.

Kd.6.22.2

The surgeon, Ākāsagotta, saw the Lord coming in the distance; seeing him, he spoke thus to the Lord: "Let the revered Gotama come, let him see this monk's orifice; it is like a lizard's mouth." Then the Lord, thinking, "This foolish man is making fun of me", becoming silent, having turned back, having had the Order of monks convened, on this occasion, in this connection, questioned the monks, saying: "Is there, as is said, monks, an ill monk in such and such a dwelling-place?"

Vin.1.216

"There is, Lord."

"What, monks, is this monk's affliction?"

"Lord, the venerable one's affliction is an ulcer. The surgeon, Ākāsagotta, lanced it."

Kd.6.22.3

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

"It is not becoming, monks, in this foolish man, it is not suitable, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it should not be done. How, monks, can this foolish man let a lancing be done on the private parts? The skin, monks, is tender at the private parts, a wound is hard to heal, a knife hard to guide. It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, one should not let a lancing be done on the private parts. Whoever should let it be done (there), there is a grave offence."

Kd.6.22.4

BD.4.295

Now at that time the group of six monks, thinking: "Lancing is objected to by the Lord", let a clyster be used. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six

¹ Cf. Vin.1.272. ² Mentioned, I think, nowhere but here.

monks let a clyster be used?" Then monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks let a clyster be used?"

"It is true, Lord." Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, one should not have lancing done within a distance of two finger-breadths of the private parts nor a clyster-treatment. Whoever should have (either of these things) done, there is a grave offence."

ON REJECTION OF HUMAN FLESH

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Benares. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Benares. The Lord stayed there near Benares at Isipatana in the deer-park. Now at that time in Benares the lay-follower, Suppiya, and the woman lay-follower, Suppiyā,¹ were both pleased²; they were benefactors, servitors,³ supporters of the Order. Then the woman lay-follower, Suppiyā, having gone to the monastery, having approached dwelling-place after dwelling-place, cell after cell, asked the monks: "Who, honoured sirs, is ill? What may be conveyed for whom?"

Kd.6.23.1

Now at that time a certain monk had drunk a purgative. Then that monk spoke to the woman lay-follower, Suppiyā, thus:

Kd.6.23.2

"I have drunk a purgative, sister. I need meat-broth."⁴ She said:

Vin.1.217

"Very well, master, it shall be conveyed (to you)," and having gone to her house, she enjoined a servant,⁵ saying:

BD.4.296

¹ Suppiyā is at AN.i.26 called chief of the laywomen disciples who tend the sick, a position she had resolved to achieve during a life in the time of Padumuttara Buddha, AN-a.i.453-AN-a.i.454. Her name occurs in a list of eminent women at AN.iv.348. At Mi.115 she is mentioned with seven other persons as experiencing ease (*sukha*) here and now.

² I.e. with the teaching. ³ *kārakā*, literally doers. ⁴ Allowed at Kd.6.14.7. ⁵ *antevāsin*. Cf. Bu-Pc.84 (Vin.4.162) where Anāthapiṇḍika enjoins his *antevāsin* to prepare rice for the monks.

“Go, good fellow, find meat that is to hand.”¹

“Yes, lady,” but that man, having answered the woman lay-follower Suppiya in assent, touring the whole of Benares, saw no meat that was to hand. Then that man approached the woman lay-follower Suppiyā; having approached the woman lay-follower Suppiyā, he spoke thus: “There is no meat, lady, that is ready to hand; today is a non-slaughter (day).”²

Kd.6.23.3

Then it occurred to the woman lay-follower, Suppiyā: “If that ill monk is unable to obtain meat-broth his affliction will greatly increase or he will pass away. It is not fitting in me, that I, having answered him in assent, should not have meat-broth conveyed”, and having taken a butcher’s knife,³ having cut flesh from her thigh, she gave it to a slave-woman, saying:

“Come now, having prepared⁴ this meat—in such and such a dwelling-place there is an ill monk, you may give it to him, and if anyone asks for me, let it be known that I am ill,” and having wrapped her upper robe round her thigh, having entered an inner room, she lay down on a couch.

Kd.6.23.4

Then the lay-follower, Suppiya, having gone to the house, asked the slave-woman, saying: “Where is Suppiyā?”

“She, master, is lying down in an inner room.” Then the lay-follower Suppiya, approached the woman lay-follower Suppiyā, and having approached he spoke thus to the woman lay-follower Suppiyā:

“Why are you lying down?”

“I am ill,” she said.

“What is your affliction?” Then the woman lay-follower Suppiyā told this matter to the lay-follower Suppiya. Then the lay-follower Suppiya, thinking: “Indeed, it is marvellous, indeed, it is wonderful, that this Suppiyā is so faithful and believing that she gives up even her own flesh. What other thing could there be that she would not give?” and joyful, elated, he approached

BD.4.297

¹ *pavattamaṃsa*, i.e. already killed, and not to be killed on purpose for the monk. For monks might eat no fish or meat which they saw, heard or suspected had been specially killed for them, [Vin.3.172](#). ² *māghāta*. Cf. Ja.iii.428, Ja.iii.434; also Asoka’s Pillar Edict V, where “on fifty-six days in the year the capture and sale of fish was prohibited, and on the same days, even in game-preserves, animals might not be destroyed (VINCENT SMITH, *Asoka*, 3rd edition, p.57). *Vin-a.1094* says “on this day it is not possible for anyone to deprive anything of life”. ³ *potthanikā*. At *Vin-a.1094* it is called “a knife for cutting meat”. ⁴ *sampādetvā*, as at [Vin.3.208](#).

the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance.

As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the lay-follower Suppiya spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks”. The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the lay-follower Suppiya, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the lay-follower Suppiya, towards the end of that night, having had sumptuous solid foods, soft foods, prepared, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready”. Then the Lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the lay-follower Suppiya; having approached, he sat down together with the Order of monks on the appointed seat.

Kd.6.23.5

Vin.1.218

Kd.6.23.6

Then the lay-follower Suppiya approached the lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As the lay-follower Suppiya was standing at a respectful distance, the Lord spoke thus to him:

“How is Suppiyā?”

“She is ill, Lord.”

“Well then, let her come.”

“She is not able to do so, Lord.”

“Well then, having taken hold of her, bring her along.” Then the lay-follower Suppiya, having taken hold of the woman lay-follower Suppiyā, brought her along. When the Lord saw her, even that great wound became healed, the skin was (made) good with (small) hairs growing on it.

Kd.6.23.7

Then the lay-follower Suppiya and the woman lay-follower Suppiyā, saying: “Wonderful indeed, marvellous indeed are the great psychic power and the great potency of the Truth-finder, inasmuch as when the Lord sees (someone) even a great wound will be healed, the skin (made) good with (small) hairs growing on it,” and joyful, elated, having with their own hands served, and satisfied the Order of monks with the enlightened one at its head with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from the bowl, they sat down at a respectful distance. Then the Lord having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the lay-follower Suppiya and the woman lay-follower Suppiya with talk on

BD.4.298

dhamma, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.6.23.8

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Who, monks, asked the woman lay-follower Suppiyā for meat?” When he had spoken thus, that monk spoke thus to the Lord:

“I, Lord, asked the woman lay-follower Suppiyā for meat.”

“Has it been conveyed (to you), monk?”

“It has been conveyed, Lord.”

“Did you, monk, make use of it?”

“I, Lord, made use of it.”

“Did you, monk, inquire about¹ it?”

Kd.6.23.9

“I, Lord, did not inquire about it.”

The enlightened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: “How an you, foolish man, make use of meat without having inquired about it? Foolish man, human flesh has been made use of by you. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“There are, monks, people who are faithful and believing; even their own flesh is given up by these. **Monks, you should not make use of human flesh. Whoever should make use of it, there is a grave offence. Nor, monks, should you make use of flesh without inquiring about it. Whoever should (so) make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

ON REJECTION OF ELEPHANT FLESH

Kd.6.23.10

Vin.1.219

Now at that time a king’s elephant died. Because food was scarce people made use of elephant-flesh; they gave elephant-flesh to monks who were walking for almsfood, and the monks made use of the elephant-flesh. The

¹ *paṭivekkhi*, which Vin-a.1094 explains by *vīmaṃsi*, examined, considered, and by *paṭipucchi*, questioned. It explains *appaṭivekkhitvā* by *appaṭipucchitvā* not having questioned.

people looked down upon,¹ criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans make use of elephant-flesh? Elephants are a king’s emblem; if the king should find out, not for these would be his favour.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, you should not make use of elephant-flesh. Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.4.299

Now at that time a king’s horses died ... (same as **Kd.6.23.10** reading horses, horse-flesh for elephants, elephant-flesh) “... **offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.6.23.11

Now at that time, because food was scarce people made use of dog-flesh; they gave dog-flesh to monks who were walking for almsfood, and the monks made use of the dog-flesh. The people looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

Kd.6.23.12

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans make use of dog-flesh? A dog is loathsome, disgusting.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, dog-flesh should not be made use of.² Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time, because food was scarce people made use of snake-flesh; they gave snake-flesh to monks who were walking for almsfood, and the monks made use of the snake-flesh. The people ... spread it about, saying:

Kd.6.23.13

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans make use of snake-flesh? A snake is loathsome, disgusting.”

¹ From this passage it would appear that the people did not as a rule eat elephants’ flesh; and it is to my mind not clear whether any did so even in a time of scarcity, but merely used it for offering to monks. Those who criticised monks could hardly have eaten it themselves. The same applies to the cases following.

Above at **Kd.6.23.9** a monk is blamed for accepting uncritically what was offered him. In the case of robes, on the contrary, monks might put forward no suggestions (see **Bu-NP.8**, **Bu-NP.9**, **Bu-NP.27**). ² Vin-a.1094 says the flesh of jungle wolves may be used; but the flesh of the offspring of a wolf and village dog may not be used.

Then Supassa, the serpent-king, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance Supassa, the serpent-king, spoke thus to the Lord:

“There are, Lord, serpents who are without faith, unbelieving, and these might do harm to monks even for a trifle. It were good, Lord, if the masters did not make use of snake-flesh.”

Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Supassa, the serpent-king, with talk on *dhamma*; and Supassa, the serpent-king, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, snake-flesh should not be made use of. Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.4.300
Vin.1.220

Kd.6.23.14

Now at that time hunters, having killed a lion, made use of its flesh; they gave the lion’s flesh to monks who were walking for almsfood. The monks, having made use of the lion’s flesh, stayed in a jungle (but) lions attacked the monks because they smelt of lion’s flesh. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, lion’s flesh should not be made use of. Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.6.23.15

Now at that time hunters, having killed a tiger ... having killed a panther ... having killed a bear ... having killed a hyena,¹ made use of its flesh; they gave the hyena’s flesh to monks who were walking for almsfood. The monks, having made use of the hyena’s flesh, stayed in a jungle (but) hyenas attacked the monks because they smelt of hyena’s flesh. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, hyena’s flesh should not be made use of. Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

¹ Names of wild animals occur in this order at Vin.3.151, AN.iii.101. Cf. Vin.3.58 where “bears” drop out and “wolves” follow hyenas. There is a longer list at Mi.267=Ja.v.416.

ALLOWANCE FOR CONJEY AND HONEY-LUMPS

Then the Lord, having stayed in Benares for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Andhakavinda¹ together with the large Order of monks, with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. Now at that time the country people, having loaded much salt and oil and husked rice and solid food into wagons, followed close after the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, saying:

Kd.6.24.1

“When we get our turn, then we will make a meal (for them),”² and there were at least five hundred of those who eat the remains of food. Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Andhakavinda.

Kd.6.24.2
BD.4.301

Then it occurred to a certain brahmin who did not receive his turn: “For the last two months I have been following the Older of monks with the awakened one at its head, thinking: ‘When I get my turn, I will make a meal (for them),’ but I do not get my turn. I am alone, and many of my household affairs are going to ruin. Suppose I were to look into the refectory³ and prepare that which I do not see in the refectory?” Then that brahmin, looking into the refectory, did not see two things: conjey and honey-lumps.⁴

Kd.6.24.3

Then that brahmin approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “Now, it occurred to me, good Ānanda, as I did not get a turn: ‘For the last two months ... Suppose I were to look into the refectory and prepare that which I do not see in the refectory?’ So I, good Ānanda, looking into the refectory, did not see two things: conjey and honey-lumps. If I, good Ānanda, were to prepare conjey and honey-lumps, would the revered Gotama accept them from me?”

Vin.1.221

“Well then, brahmin, I will ask the Lord.”

Kd.6.24.4

Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Well then, Ānanda, let him prepare them.” (Ānanda) said: “Well then, brahmin, prepare them”. Then that brahmin towards the end of that night, having had a quantity of conjey and honey-lumps prepared, brought them to the Lord saying: “May the revered Gotama accept conjey and honey-lumps from me.”

¹ A village in the Magadha country. ² Cf. Kd.6.33.1. ³ Cf. Kd.6.36.6-Kd.6.36.8. ⁴ *madhugolaka*, perhaps honey-combs. At Mahāvamsa 22.42; Mahāvamsa 34.52 we find *madhugaṇḍa*, translated by Geiger as “honey-combs”.

“Well then, brahmin, give them to the monks.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept them. (The Lord said:) “Accept them, monks, make use of them.” Then that brahmin, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with a quantity of conje and honey-lumps, when the Lord had washed his hand¹ and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.6.24.5
BD.4.302

Then as this brahmin was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord spoke thus to him:

“Brahmin, there are these ten advantages from conje. What ten? In giving conje one gives life, one gives beauty, one gives ease, one gives strength, one gives intelligence; conje when it is drunk checks hunger, keeps off thirst, regulates wind, cleanses the bladder, digests raw remnants of food.² These, brahmin, are the ten advantages of conje.”

Kd.6.24.6

“To the discerning whoso gives conje duly
At the right time to one who lives on others’ food,
It confers ten things on him:
Life and beauty, ease and strength;³

“For him intelligence arises from it,
It dispels hunger, thirst and wind,
It cleanses the bladder, it digests food;
This medicine is praised by the well-farer.

“Therefore conje should be given constantly
By a man longing for ease,
By those aspiring to deva-like joys
Or wanting human prosperity.”

Vin.1.222
Kd.6.24.7

Then the Lord having given thanks to that brahmin in these verses, rising from his seat, departed. Then the Lord, having on this occasion given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

¹ *dhotahattha*, an unusual expression occurring at Kd.6.35.4; Kd.6.36.8. Used in explanation of *allapāṇi* at Pv-a.116. Technically *hattha* is the forearm from elbow to finger-tip, see BD.2, Introduction, p.li. Perhaps *pāṇi* is the hand itself. ² The last five advantages occur also at AN.iii.250. ³ Cf. AN.ii.64, where a similar verse occurs, but reading *bhojana*, food, instead of *yāgu*, conje, and “four things” instead of “ten”.

“I allow, monks, conje and honey-lumps.”

THE STORY OF THE MINISTER YOUNG IN FAITH

The people heard: “It is said that conje is allowed by the Lord and honey-lumps.” These prepared eating-conje¹ and honey-lumps early in the morning. The monks, (each) satisfied² in the early morning with eating-conje and a honey-lump, did not eat as much as expected in the refectory. Now at that time a certain chief minister, young in faith came to have invited the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head for the morrow. Then it occurred to that chief minister, young in faith: “Suppose I were to prepare twelve hundred and fifty bowls of meat for the twelve hundred and fifty monks, and should take one bowl of meat up to each monk?”

Kd.6.25.1

BD.4.303

Then that chief minister, young in faith, towards the end of that night, having had sumptuous solid food, soft food, prepared and twelve hundred and fifty bowls of meat, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “Lord, it is time, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of that great minister, young in the faith; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks.

Kd.6.25.2

Then that chief minister, young in faith, attended on the monks in the refectory. The monks spoke thus: “Give a little,³ sir, give a little, sir.” (He said) “Do not you, honoured sirs, accept so very little thinking: ‘This chief minister is young in faith.’ Much solid food, soft food, and twelve hundred and fifty bowls of meat have been prepared by me, thinking: ‘I will take one bowl of meat up to each monk’. Accept, honoured sirs, as much as you want.”

Kd.6.25.3

“Sir, it is not for this reason that we are accepting so very little, but we were (each) satisfied in the early morning with eating-conje and a honey-lump; that is why we are accepting so very little.”

Kd.6.25.4

¹ *bhojjayāgu*, apparently as opposed to the more ordinary, and presumably more liquid, conje which was drunk. *Bhojja* therefore here must be meant to stand for stiff, set, firm.

² *dhātā*, in the sense of having eaten their fill, rather than in the sense of having been offered, and therefore satisfied, as is the meaning conveyed by *pavārita*. ³ Cf. [Vin.3.66](#),

[Vin.4.76](#), [Vin.4.81](#).

Then that chief minister, young in faith, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs make use of someone else’s¹ eating-conjey? It is not that I am not competent to give as much as they want”² and angry, displeased, longing to insult the monks, he went round filling their bowls and saying: “Eat it or take it away”. Then that chief minister, young in faith, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from the bowl. As this chief minister, young in faith, was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted him with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed.

Vin.1.223
BD.4.304

Kd.6.25.5

But soon after the Lord had departed, that chief minister, young in faith, became remorseful and conscience-stricken and thought: “For me it is unprofitable, for me it is not profitable, for me it is ill-gotten, for me it is not well-gotten, that I, angry, displeased, longing to insult the monks, went round filling their bowls and saying: ‘Eat it or take it away’. Now, is much merit produced for me or demerit?”

Then that chief minister, young in faith, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that chief minister, young in faith, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Now I, Lord, soon after the Lord had departed, became remorseful and conscience-stricken, thinking: ‘For me it is unprofitable ... Now, Lord, is much merit produced for me or demerit?’”

Kd.6.25.6

“From the time when, sir, the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head was invited by you for the morrow much merit was produced for you; from the time when one of your lumps of boiled rice³ was accepted by each monk much merit was produced for you. Heaven worlds are assured for you.”

Then that chief minister, young in faith, thinking: “It is said that it was

¹ Here *aññasa*, not *aññatra*, “elsewhere”, as in the cases cited in the previous note. ² Reading here *na cāham na paiṭbalo*; see [BD.2.317, n.2.](#) ³ *sittha*, instead of, as before, *maṃsapāti*. Cf. *sitthāni* at [Vin.2.165](#) and *sa-sittha-ka* at [Vin.2.214](#), and *sitthāvākāraka* at [Vin.2.214](#), [Vin.4.196](#).

profitable for me, it is said that it was well-gotten by me, it is said that much merit was produced for me, it is said that heaven worlds are assured for me,” joyful, elated, rising up from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.6.25.7

Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks, (although) invited elsewhere,¹ made use of someone else’s eating-conjey?”

BD.4.305

“It is true, Lord.”

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men, invited elsewhere, make use of someone else’s eating-conjey? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.1.224

“Monks, if one is invited elsewhere, someone else’s eating-conjey should not be made use of. Whoever should (so) make use of it should be dealt with according to the rule.”²

THE STORY OF BELAṬṬHAKACCĀNA

Then the Lord, having stayed at Andhakavinda for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Rājagaha together with the large order of monks, with twelve hundred and fifty monks. Now at that time Belaṭṭha Kaccāna³ was going along the highroad from Rājagaha to Andhakavinda with five hundred wagons all filled with jars of sugar. Then the Lord saw Belaṭṭha Kaccāna from afar, and seeing him, he stepped aside from the road and sat down at the root of a certain tree.

Kd.6.26.1

Kd.6.26.2

¹ *aññatra* here. ² Vin-a.1095 says “he should be dealt with for the offence of *paramparabhojana*,” an out-of-turn meal, i.e. not taking the invitations in the order in which they were issued; made an offence in Bu-Pc.33. See BD.2.317, n.3. ³ Mentioned, I think, nowhere but here. Buddhaghosa has no note. The absence of a descriptive epithet is unusual. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* calls him “a sugar-dealer”, which seems likely.

Then Belaṭṭha Kaccāna approached the Lord, having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, Belaṭṭha Kaccāna spoke thus to the Lord:

“I, Lord, want to give one jar of sugar to each monk.”

“Well then, do you, Kaccāna, bring just one jar of sugar.”

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, having answered the Lord in assent, bringing just one jar of sugar approached the Lord; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord: “The jar of sugar is brought, Lord. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

“Well then, do you, Kaccāna, give the sugar to the monks.”

Kd.6.26.3
BD.4.306

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, having given the sugar to the monks, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, the sugar is given to the monks, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

“Well then, Kaccāna, give the monks as much sugar as they want.”

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, having given the monks as much sugar as they wanted, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, as much sugar as they wanted has been given to the monks, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

“Well then, do you, Kaccāna, serve the monks with sugar.”

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, served the monks with sugar. Some monks filled bowls and they filled water-strainers and bags.

Kd.6.26.4

Then Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, having served the monks with sugar, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the monks are served with sugar, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

Vin.1.225

“Well then, do you, Kaccāna, give sugar to those who eat the remains of food.”¹

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, having given sugar to those who eat the remains of food, spoke thus to the Lord:

¹ Mentioned above in Kd.6.24.1. It seems as if they had attached themselves to the company of monks, doing the journeys from Benares to Andhakavinda and from there to Rājagaha.

“Lord, sugar has been given to those who eat the remains of food, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

“Well then, Kaccāna, give those who eat the remains of food as much sugar as they want.”

Kd.6.26.5

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, having answered the Lord in assent, having given those who eat the remains of food as much sugar as they wanted, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, as much sugar as they wanted has been given to those who eat the remains of food, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

BD.4.307

“Well then, Kaccāna, do you serve with sugar those who eat the remains of food.”

“Yes, Lord,” and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, served with sugar those who eat the remains of food. Some of those who eat the remains of food filled pots and pitchers and they filled baskets and (their) clothes.¹

Kd.6.26.6

Then Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, having served with sugar those who eat the remains of food, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, those who eat the remains of food have been served with sugar, and I have much sugar over. What line of conduct do I follow, Lord?”

“I do not see anyone,² Kaccāna, in the world with its *devas*, *Māras*, and *Brahmās*, nor in the race of recluses and brahmins, *devas* and men who having made use of that sugar could digest it properly except a Truth-finder or a Truth-finder’s disciple.³ Well then, Kaccāna, throw away that sugar where there is but little green grass or drop it into water where there are no living creatures.”⁴

“Yes, lord”, and Belaṭṭha Kaccāna having answered the Lord in assent, dropped that sugar into water where there were no living creatures.

Kd.6.26.7

Then that sugar, thus placed in the water, sizzled and hissed and sent forth steam and smoke. As a ploughshare heated the live-long day if placed

¹ *ucchaṅga*, lap or hip. Here probably meaning that they knotted the sugar into the cloths they were wearing. This is still a customary way of carrying packages in India. At MN.i.366 the word appears to have the same meaning as above. ² For following passage, cf. SN.i.168–9, Snp.p.15. ³ For explanation of this “curious reply” see KS.i.211, n.3. ⁴ Cf. Kd.4.1.3, where this sentence also occurs.

in water sizzles and hisses and sends forth steam and smoke, so did this sugar when placed in the water sizzle and hiss and send forth steam and smoke. Then Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, alarmed and with his hair standing on end, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.6.26.8

As Belaṭṭha Kaccāna was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord talked a progressive talk to him,¹ that is to say, talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven; he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in renouncing (them). When the Lord knew that the mind of Belaṭṭha Kaccāna was ready, pliable, devoid of the hindrances, uplifted, pleased, then he explained to him that teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the Way. And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take dye, even so as he was (sitting) on that very seat *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, that “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop”.

BD.4.308

Vin.1.226

Kd.6.26.9

Then Belaṭṭha Kaccāna, as one who had seen *dhamma*,² attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, who had crossed over doubt, put away uncertainty, who had attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! Even, Lord, as one might set upright what had been upset ... even so is *dhamma* explained by the Lord in many a figure. I myself, Lord, am going to the Lord for refuge, to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept me as a lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

Kd.6.27.1

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Rājagaha. The Lord stayed there at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels’ feeding place. At that time there was abundant sugar in Rājagaha. Monks, thinking, “Sugar is allowed by the Lord only to one who is ill, not to one who is not ill”, being scrupulous, did not partake of sugar. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

¹ From here to end of Kd.6.26.8 cf. above, e.g. Kd.1.7.5–Kd.1.7.6. ² For this passage see Kd.1.6.32, etc.

“I allow, monks, sugar for one who is ill, sugar-water for one who is not ill.”¹

THE STORY OF PĀṬALIGĀMA

Then the Lord,² having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Pāṭaligāma³ together with the large Order of monks, with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Pāṭaligāma. Lay-followers at Pāṭaligāma heard: “It is said that the Lord has reached Pāṭaligāma.” Then the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma with talk on *dhamma* as they were sitting down at a respectful distance.

Kd.6.28.1
BD.4.309

Then the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, spoke thus to the Lord⁴: “Lord, may the Lord consent (to come) to our rest-house⁵ together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma, having understood the Lord’s consent,⁶ rising from their seats, having greeted the Lord, having kept their right sides towards him, approached that rest-house; having approached, having spread that test-house so that a spreading was spread everywhere,⁷ having made ready seats,⁸ having had a water-jar set up, having prepared an oil lamp, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they stood at a respectful distance.

Kd.6.28.2

Vin.1.227

Kd.6.28.3

¹ Note that above, when the monks received a quantity of sugar from Belaṭṭha, the verb used was *paribhuñjati*, (to make use of). In the story of Kd.6.27.1, it is said that they did not partake of, (*na bhuñjanti*,) any sugar. ² Chapters 28–30 are, with a few unimportant variations, word for word the same as the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta DN16.1.19–DN16.2.3; DN16.2.16–DN16.2.24. See RHYS DAVIDS’ Introduction to his translation of the Mahāparinibbāna Sutta, pp.xxxiv seq., and his note there at DN16.2.16, thus *Vinaya Texts* ii.97, n. Also from here to end of 28 is, again with a few minor variations, the same as Ud.85–Ud.90. ³ The modern Patna. On *pāṭali*, see below, BD.4.312, n.4. ⁴ This passage occurs also at DN.ii.84ff. ⁵ *āvasathāgāra*, as at Vin.4.17; see BD.2.198 for Buddhaghosa’s interpretation. ⁶ For preamble to the discourse see also MN.i.354, SN.iv.182. ⁷ *sabbasanthariṃ santhataṃ āvasathāgāraṃ santharivā*. On *santharati* and *santhata* see BD.2, Introduction, p.xxiiif. Ud.86 omits *santhataṃ*. ⁸ All these processes are described at MN-a.iii.18f., Ud-a. 409f.

As they were standing at a respectful distance, the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma spoke thus to the Lord: “The rest-house is spread with a spreading everywhere, Lord, seats are made ready, a water-jar is set up, an oil lamp is prepared; Lord, the Lord does that for which it is now the right time.” Then the Lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached that rest-house together with the Order of monks; having approached, having washed his feet, having entered the rest-house, he sat down leaning against a central pillar facing the east. The Order of monks too, having washed their feet, having entered the rest-house, sat down leaning against the western wall facing the east with the Lord in view. The lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma too, having washed their feet, having entered the rest-house, sat down leaning against the eastern wall, facing the west with the Lord in view.

BD.4.310

Kd.6.28.4

Then the Lord addressed the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma, saying: “There are these five disadvantages,¹ householders, to one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit. What five? Now, householders, one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit, suffers great diminution of wealth owing to sloth; this is the first disadvantage to one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit.

Then again, householders, an evil reputation is noised abroad of one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit; this is the second disadvantage ...

Then again, householders, if one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit, approaches any company, whether a company of nobles, a company of brahmins, a company of householders, a company of recluses, he approaches it diffidently, being ashamed; this is the third disadvantage

...

“Then again, householders, one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit, passes away bewildered; this is the fourth disadvantage ...

“Then again, householders, one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit, at the breaking up of the body after dying arises in the waste, the Bad-bourn, the Downfall, Niraya Hell; this is the fifth disadvantage to one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit. These, household-

¹ As at AN.iii.252f., DN.ii.85–DN.ii.86, DN.iii.236, Ud.86. Noticed at Vism.54.

ers, are the five disadvantages to one of wrong moral habit, falling away from moral habit.

“There are these five advantages, householders, to one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit. What five? Now, householders, one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit, acquires a great mass of wealth owing to zeal; this is the first advantage to one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit.

Kd.6.28.5

Vin.1.228

“Then again, householders, a lovely reputation is noised abroad of one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit; this is the second advantage ...

BD.4.311

“Then again, householders, if one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit, approaches any company, whether a company of nobles, a company of brahmins, a company of householders, a company of recluses, he approaches it confidently, not being ashamed; this is the third advantage ...

“Then again, householders, one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit, passes away unbewildered; this is the fourth advantage ...

“Then again, householders, one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit, at the breaking up of the body after dying arises in the Happy-bourn, in a heaven-world; this is the fifth advantage to one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit. These, householders, are the five advantages to one of moral habit, accomplished in moral habit.”

Kd.6.28.6

When the Lord had gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma far into the night with talk on *dhamma*, he dismissed them, saying: “The night is now far spent, householders; now do that for whatever it is the right time.”

“Yes, Lord,” and the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma, having answered the Lord in assent, rising from their seats, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping their right sides towards him.

Kd.6.28.7

Then the Lord, soon after the lay-followers of Pāṭaligāma had departed, entered into solitude.¹

¹ *suññāgāra*, see above, Kd.1.78.5, and *Minor Anthologies* ii, p.107, n.1.

THE STORY OF SUNIDHA AND VASSAKĀRA

Now at that time Sunidha¹ and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, were building a (fortified) town² at Pāṭaligāma for repelling the Vajjis. Then the Lord, getting up at the end of that night towards dawn, saw with *deva*-sight, pure and surpassing that of men, many³ *devatās* occupying the sites at Pāṭaligāma. Now in whatever region powerful *devatās* occupy sites, they bend the minds of powerful kings and the kings' chief ministers to build dwellings there; in whatever region *devatās* of middling (power) occupy sites, they bend the minds of kings of middling (power), and the kings' chief ministers to build dwellings there; in whatever region *devatās* of lowly (power) occupy sites, they bend the minds of kings of lowly (power) and the kings' chief ministers to build dwellings there.

BD.4.312

Kd.6.28.8

Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: "Now, who, Ānanda, are these who are building a (fortified) town at Pāṭaligāma?"

Vin.1.229

"Sunidha and Vassakāra, Lord, chief ministers in Magadha, ... for repelling the Vajjis."

"As though, Ānanda, having consulted together with the *Devas* of the Thirty, even so, Ānanda, do Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, build a (fortified) town at Pāṭaligāma for repelling the Vajjis. Now I, Ānanda, getting up at the end of this night towards dawn, saw with *deva*-sight ... in whatever region *devatās* of lowly (power) occupy sites, they bend the minds of kings of lowly (power) and the kings' chief ministers to build dwellings there. Ānanda, as far as the *ariyan* region⁴ (extends), as far as there is trading,⁵ this will be a leading town, Pāṭaliputta,⁶ (where there

¹ Sunidha at DN.ii.86 and Ud.87. ² *nagara*, see BD.2.63, n.2. ³ *sambahulā*, often in Vinaya when used of monks being equivalent to *gaṇa*, a group of from two to four monks. DN.ii.87, Ud.88 say *sambahulā devatāyo saḥassassa*, many *devatās* (in companies) of a thousand.

⁴ *ariya āyatana*. Cf. AN.iii.441. Vin-a.1095 says "as far as the place where *ariyan* people go to". ⁵ *vaṇṇipatha*. ⁶ The modern Patna. The name is omitted at Ud.88.

was) the breaking of the seed-boxes.¹ But, Ānanda, there will be three dangers to Pāṭaliputta: from fire or from water or from internal dissension.”²

Kd.6.28.9

Then Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, approached the Lord; having approached they exchanged friendly greetings with the Lord; having exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy, they stood at a respectful distance. As they were standing at a respectful distance, Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, spoke thus to the Lord: “May the revered Gotama together with the Order of monks consent to a meal with us today.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, departed³ having understood the Lord’s consent.

BD.4.313

Then Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, having had sumptuous solid food and soft food prepared, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, good Gotama, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the food distribution⁴ of Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha; having approached, he sat down together with the Order of monks on the appointed seat. Then Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, having with their own hands served and satisfied with sumptuous food, solid and soft, the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, when

Kd.6.28.10

¹ I follow *Pali-English Dictionary* (under *puṭa*) in thinking that the translation of *puṭabhedana* at *Dialogues of the Buddha*, ii.92 is wrong: “centre for interchange of all kinds of wares”, although Pāṭaliputta had a reputation as a trading centre, on which moreover the Commentaries lay stress, Vin-a.1096 reading *bhaṇḍapuṭabhedanaṭṭhānaṃ*, *bhaṇḍagaṇḍikānaṃ mocanaṭṭhānānaṃ*, a place for undoing goods and merchandise, a place for opening goods and wares; DN-a.ii.541, Ud-a.422 say much the same and add: “if people do not get goods in all Jambudīpa they will get them here.” But Pāṭaligāma was so called “because on the day of its foundation several *patali*-shoots sprouted forth from the ground” (*Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*). According to Waddell (E.R.E., art: Patna) the *pāṭali*-tree is the trumpet-flower tree (*Bignonia suaveolens*). Pāṭaliputta is also called “the city of flowers”, Pupphapura (Mahāvamsa iv.31, Dipavamsa xi.28), and Kusumapura (Mahābodhivaṃsa p.153). *Vinaya Texts* ii.102 does not attempt a translation. *Minor Anthologies* ii.108 has “the place where men shall open up their bales of merchandise.” ² On the event prophesied here. Pāṭaliputta’s becoming the capital of the Magadha empire, and the possibility of the notice of the event’s late insertion into the text, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.102, n and *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.92, n.3. ³ DN.ii.88, Ud.89 say they went to their own residence, *āvasatha*. ⁴ *parivesanā*; DN.ii.88, Ud.89 read *āvasatha*. Cf. Snp.p.13, SN.i.172.

the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance; and as Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, were sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord gave thanks in these verses:

Kd.6.28.11

“Wherever the prudent man shall take up his abode,
 Having offered food to those here of moral habit,
 good Brahma-farers,
 If he makes an offering to those¹ *devatās* who may be there—
 These revered, do revere, honoured, do honour him.
 Hence they sympathise with him,
 as a mother with her own child.
 The man with whom *devatās* sympathise, ever sees good luck.”

Vin.1.230

Then the Lord, having in these verses given thanks to Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.6.28.12

BD.4.314

Then Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers in Magadha, following close behind the Lord, thought: “By whichever gate the recluse Gotama goes out today, that shall be called Gotama’s Gate; by whichever ford he crosses the river Ganges, that shall be called Gotama’s Ford.” Accordingly the gate by which the Lord departed came to be called Gotama’s Gate.

Then the Lord approached the river Ganges. Now at that time the river Ganges was full, level with the banks, so that a crow could drink² (from it). Since they were desirous of going from the hither to the further (bank),³ some people looked about for a boat, some looked about for a float,⁴ others put together a raft.⁵

Kd.6.28.13

The Lord saw these people, of whom some were looking about for a boat, some were looking about for a float, others were putting together a raft since they were desirous of going from the hither to the further (bank). Seeing them, as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so did he, vanishing from the hither

¹ Cf. Thig.307, Thig.211; Mi.294. ² As at MN.i.435; SN.ii.134; DN.i.244; AN.iii.27. ³ *orā pāraṃ*; DN: *aparāparaṃ*; Ud: *apārā paraṃ*, which WOODWARD (*Minor Anthologies* ii.109, n.4) proposes to correct to DN reading. ⁴ *uḷumpa*. This may be a wooden or a bamboo raft. Vin-a.1096 says that it is made, having knocked in pegs. ⁵ *kulla*. Vin-a.1096 says that it is made, having put together reeds and so on.

bank¹ of the river Ganges, reappear² on the further bank together with the Order of monks. Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this solemn utterance:

“Those cross the deeps, the rivers,³
making a bridge, spanning the swamps.
See! people tie their rafts—
but crossed over⁴ are the wise.”⁵

ON THE TRUTHS AT KOṬIGĀMA

Then the Lord approached Koṭigāma. The Lord stayed there at Koṭigāma. Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, it is by not understanding, not penetrating the four *ariyan* truths that there is this long long running-on and faring-on both for me and for you. What four? Monks, it is through not understanding, not penetrating the *ariyan* truth of ill that there is this long long running-on and faring-on both for me and for you. Monks, it is through not understanding, not penetrating the *ariyan* truth of the uprising of ill, the *ariyan* truth of the stopping of ill, the *ariyan* truth of the course leading to the stopping of ill that there is this long long running-on and faring-on both for me and for you.

“Therefore, monks, if the *ariyan* truth of ill is understood, is penetrated, if the *ariyan* truth of the uprising of ill ... if the *ariyan* truth of the stopping of ill ... if the *ariyan* truth of the course leading to the stopping of ill is understood and penetrated, then cut off is the craving for becoming,⁶ destroyed is the conduit for becoming,⁷ there is not now again-becoming.”

Not seeing the four *ariyan* truths as they really are
Long is the journey fared-on in birth after birth;

¹ *orimatīre*. ² *paccuṭṭhāsi*, instead of the more usual *pāturahosi*. ³ *sara*, here a river, Vin-a.1096. ⁴ *tiṇṇa*, a technical term frequent in the Suttas, meaning “crossed over” the four-fold flood of sense-pleasures, becoming, false view and ignorance, or over some other undesirable state, and so “crossed over” Māra’s stream, a river of death. See my *Man Perfected*, Ch. 8. ⁵ To here, from beginning of Kd.6.28.1, the same as Ud.85, with a few minor variations. ⁶ *bhavataṇhā*. ⁷ *bhavanetti*.

Kd.6.29.1

BD.4.315

Kd.6.29.2

Vin.1.231

When these are seen, removed is the conduit for becoming,
The root of ill cut off, there is not now again-becoming.¹

THE STORY OF AMBAPĀLĪ

Kd.6.30.1

Then the courtesan Ambapālī² heard³: “They say that the Lord has reached Koṭṭigāma”. Then the courtesan Ambapālī, having had very magnificent vehicles harnessed, having mounted a magnificent vehicle, went off with the very magnificent vehicles from Vesālī to see the Lord. Having gone by vehicle as far as the ground was (suitable) for a vehicle, she alighted from the vehicle and approached the Lord on foot; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she sat down at a respectful distance.

Kd.6.30.2

The Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the courtesan Ambapālī with talk on *dhamma* as she was sitting down at a respectful distance. The courtesan Ambapālī, having been, gladdened ... delighted with talk on *dhamma* by the Lord, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. The courtesan Ambapālī, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from her seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him.

BD.4.316

THE STORY OF THE LICCHAVĪS

Kd.6.30.3

Then the Licchavis of Vesālī heard: “They say that the Lord has reached Koṭṭigāma”. Then the Licchavis of Vesālī, having had very magnificent vehicles harnessed, having (each) mounted a magnificent vehicle, went off with the very magnificent vehicles from Vesālī to see the Lord. Some Licchavis

¹ To here from 28.1=DN.ii.84–91. ² Her verses are at Thig. 252–Thig.270. See also Thig-a.206–Thig-a.7, Thig-a.213; Thi-ap.613ff. She was the mother of Vimala-Koṇḍañña, while Bimbisāra is said to have been his father, Thag-a.156. Mentioned below, BD.4.379. ³ From here to Kd.6.30.6=DN.ii.95. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.102, n. for some remarks on the discrepancies shown by the two versions in their localisation of the incidents narrated.

were dark green,¹ dark green in colour, their clothes were dark green, their ornaments were dark green. Some Licchavis were yellow, yellow in colour ... their ornaments were yellow. Some Licchavis were red, red in colour ... their ornaments were red. Some Licchavis were white, white in colour, their clothes were white, their ornaments were white. Then the courtesan Ambapālī drove up against the many young Licchavis, pole to pole, yoke to yoke, wheel to wheel, axle to axle.

Then these Licchavis spoke thus to the courtesan Ambapālī: “Now then,² why do you, Ambapālī, drive up against the many young Licchavis pole to pole, yoke to yoke, wheel to wheel, axle to axle?”

“Indeed, young gentlemen,³ it is because the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head is invited by me for the morrow.”

“Now then, Ambapālī, give up this meal to us for a hundred thousand.”⁴

“But if, young gentlemen, you were to give up Vesālī with its produce,⁵ I would not give up this meal.”

Then these Licchavis snapped their fingers,⁶ saying: “Truly we are beaten by this mango-girl,⁷ truly we are defeated by this mango-girl.”

Then these Licchavis approached the Lord. The Lord saw these Licchavis coming from afar, and seeing them, he addressed the monks, saying:

“By whatever monks, monks, the *Devas* of the Thirty have not been seen before, look, monks, at the Licchavi company, look again, monks, at the Licchavi company, compare, monks, the Licchavi company to the company of the *Devas* of the Thirty.” Then these Licchavis, having gone by vehicle as far as the ground ... (as in [Kd.6.30.1](#), [Kd.6.30.2](#) down to:) “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with us on the morrow?”

“I have promised, Licchavis, (to take) a meal with the courtesan Ambapālī to-morrow.” Then these Licchavis snapped their fingers, saying:

¹ *nila* is defined at [Vin.4.120](#). [Vin-a.1096](#) says that these colours are for the sake of distinguishing the Licchavis. They are not “dark green” and so on by nature, but are coloured with a dark green cosmetic—as some of the faces of the Ajanta frescoes are meant to be. ² *je*. ³ *ayyaputta*. ⁴ Probably *kahāpaṇas* are to be understood. ⁵ *sāhāra* = *sa-āhāra*, with its food. [Vin-a.1097](#), [DN-a.545](#) explain by *sa-janapada*. No justification for “with its subject territory” of *Vinaya Texts* ii.107, *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.103. ⁶ *aṅguli pothesurū*. [Vin-a.1097](#) explains by *cālesurū*, to move, to shake. ⁷ *ambakā*, with probably intended a play on her name, itself connected with the mango-grove she owned. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* ii.103, n.1; *Vinaya Texts* ii.107, n.

“Truly we are beaten by this mango-girl; truly we are defeated by this mango-girl.”

Then these Licchavis, having approved of what the Lord had said and having given thanks for it, rising from their seats, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping their right sides towards him.

Kd.6.30.6

Then the Lord, having stayed in Koṭigāma for as long as he found suiting, approached Nātikā. The Lord stayed there at Nātikā in the Brick Residence. Then the courtesan Ambapālī, having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared towards the end of that night in her own park, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: ... (as in Kd.6.28.10 down to:¹) ... sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, the courtesan Ambapālī spoke thus to the Lord: “I, Lord, would give this Ambapālī Grove to the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head.”

Vin.1.233

The Lord accepted the park. Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the courtesan Ambapālī with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat,² approached the Great Grove. The Lord stayed there at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Hall with the Peaked Gable.

BD.4.318

Told is the Portion for Repeating on the Licchavis

THE STORY OF GENERAL SĪHA

Now at that time³ many distinguished Licchavis, sitting together assembled in a mote-hall, were in many a figure speaking praise of the awakened one, praise of *dhamma*, praise of the Order. Now at that time the general Sīha,⁴ a disciple of the Jains,⁵ came to be sitting in that company. Then it occurred to the general Sīha: “Undoubtedly this will be a Lord, a perfected one, a wholly awakened one, since these distinguished Licchavis, sitting together assembled in the mote-hall, are in many a figure speaking praise of the

¹ Replace “Sunidha and Vassakāra, chief ministers of Magadha” by “the courtesan Ambapālī,” and “good Gotama” by “Lord”. ² To here from Kd.6.30.1 is in all material respects the same as DN.ii.95. The DN version says the Lord went to Beluva. ³ From there to nearly the end of Kd.6.31.14 = AN.iv.179. ⁴ Cf. AN.iii.38f., AN.iv.79. His interest in giving gifts may have been due to Gotama’s talk to him (below Kd.6.31.11) just after he became a lay-follower.

⁵ Nigaṇṭhas. Literal meaning “without bonds”. See GS.iv.124, n.2.

awakened one, praise of *dhamma*, praise of the Order. Suppose I were to go up to see this Lord, perfected one, wholly awakened one?”

Kd.6.31.2

Then the general Sīha approached Nātaputta the Jain¹; having approached, he spoke thus to Nataputta the Jain: “I want, honoured sir,² to go along to see the recluse Gotama.”

“But how can you, Sīha, being one who asserts an ought- to-be-done,³ go along to see the recluse Gotama who asserts an ought-not-to-be-done⁴? For, Sīha, the recluse Gotama asserts an ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of an ought-not-to-be-done and in that he trains⁵ disciples.” Then that which had been the strong aspiration of general Sīha for going⁶ to see the Lord abated.

BD.4.319

Kd.6.31.3

Then a second time did the distinguished Licchavis, sitting together assembled in the mote-hall ... And a second time did it occur to the general Sīha: “Undoubtedly this will be a Lord, a perfected one ... Suppose I were to go up to see this Lord, perfected one, wholly awakened one?” And a second time did the general Sīha approach Nātaputta the Jain “... and in that trains disciples”. And a second time did that abate which had been the strong aspiration of the general Sīha for going to see the Lord. And a third time it occurred to the general Sīha: “Undoubtedly this will be a Lord, perfected one, wholly awakened one, since these distinguished Licchavis, sitting together assembled in the mote-hall, are in many a figure speaking praise of the awakened one, praise of *dhamma*, praise of the Order. What can these Jains do to me whether I have asked for permission or have not asked for permission? Suppose that I, although I have not asked for permission from the Jains, were to go along to see this Lord, perfected one, wholly awakened

Vin.1.234

¹ The leader of the Nigaṇṭhas, identified by Bühler and Jacobi with Mahāvīra (*Vinaya Texts* ii.109, n.1). His views are given at DN.i.57. ² *bhante*. ³ *kiriyaṅvāda*. This and *akiriyaṅvāda* each had its own adherents. Gotama put his own interpretation on each theory, see below Kd.6.31.6 and Vin.3.2. Thus he is able to say, as at AN.i.62, *kiriyaṅvādī c’ahaṃ akiriyaṅvādī ca*. At Vin.1.71 he is reputed to say of the Jaṭilas that they are *kiriyaṅvādino* and *kammavādino*, and it is apparently for this reason that he grants them a concession. ⁴ *akiriyaṅvāda*. See A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Some Pali Words*, Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies, vol.iv, No.2, July 1939, p.119ff. ⁵ *vineti*, to lead away, and so to pervert, divert, avert. Cf. below Kd.6.34.12, where in the same terms leaders of other sects try to dissuade Meṇḍaka from going to see the Lord. ⁶ *gamikābhisamkhāra*. Cf. *pabbajjābhisamkhāra* at Vin.1.194 (above, Kd.5.13.2).

one?”

Kd.6.31.4

Then the general Sīha with some five hundred chariots departed from Vesālī in broad daylight to see the Lord. Having gone by vehicle as far as the ground was (suitable) for a vehicle, having alighted from the vehicle, he approached the Lord on foot; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, general Sīha spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, I have heard this: ‘The recluse Gotama affirms an ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of an ought-not-to-be-done, and in that trains disciples.’ I assume that these, Lord, who say: ‘The recluse Gotama affirms an ought-not-to-be-done ... and in that trains disciples,’ are, Lord, asserting (fairly) what the Lord affirms,¹ and are not misrepresenting the Lord by what is not fact, but are putting forth a doctrine which conforms to² his doctrine. I assume that no one who is his fellow *dhamma*-man, a holder of his views, comes to a position incurring blame. Indeed, we, Lord, do not want to misrepresent the Lord.”³

BD.4.320

Kd.6.31.5

“There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say⁴: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts an ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of an ought-not-to-be-done, and in this he trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts an ought-to-be-done⁵ ... trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts annihilation ... trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who detests, he teaches a doctrine of detestation, and in this he trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is a leader away, he teaches a doctrine of leading away, and in this he trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is a “burner up”, he teaches a doctrine of “burning up”, and in this he trains disciples.’ There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking

¹ *bhagavato vuttavādī*. ² *anudhamma*, explained by *anukāraṇa*, perhaps meaning “minor tenet”, at Vin-a.1097, DN-a.349, MN-a.iii.46. ³ Stock, e.g. at DN.i.161, DN.iii.115; MN.i.368, MN.i.482; AN.i.161; SN.ii.33. SN.iii.6, SN.iv.340; Vin.2.297. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.2-Vin.3.3 for this passage, and for notes see BD.1.4-BD.1.6. ⁵ Not included at Vin.3.2. Cf. AN.i.62.

truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is not destined to another (kind of) becoming, he teaches a doctrine of no other kind of becoming, and in this he trains disciples. There is, Sīha, a way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is confident,¹ he teaches a doctrine of confidence,² and in this he trains disciples.’

Kd.6.31.6

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who asserts an ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of an ought-not-to-be-done and in this he trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, assert of misconduct in body, speech and thought that it ought not to be done; I assert of manifold evil and wrong states (of mind) that they ought not to be done. This is the way, Sīha, in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts what ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of what ought-not-to-be-done and in this he trains disciples.’

Vin.1.235

BD.4.321

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts what ought-to-be-done ... trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, assert of good conduct in body, speech and thought that it ought to be done; of manifold right states (of mind) that they ought to be done. This is the way, Sīha ...

Kd.6.31.7

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama asserts annihilation ... trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, assert the annihilation of passion, hatred, stupidity; I assert the annihilation of manifold evil and wrong states (of mind). This is the way, Sīha ...

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who detests, he teaches a doctrine of detestation and in this he trains disciples’? Indeed, Sīha, I detest misconduct in body, speech and thought; I teach a doctrine of detestation for entering upon manifold evil wrong states (of mind). This is the way, Sīha ...

Kd.6.31.8

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who is a leader away, he teaches a doctrine of leading away and in this he trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, teach a doctrine of the leading

¹ Not included at Vin.3.2. “Confident” is Pali *assattha*, rendered at Gs.iv.127 “found consolation”. ² *assāsa*. Cf. one who has *assāsa* in *dhammavinaya* at Sn.ii.50; translated at ks.ii.38 as “comfort”.

away of passion, hatred, stupidity; I teach a doctrine of the leading away of manifold evil wrong states (of mind). This is the way, Sīha ...

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who is a “burner-up”, he teaches a doctrine of burning up and in this he trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, speak of evil wrong states which are searing: misconduct in body, speech and thought. He for whom, Sīha, evil wrong states that axe searing are destroyed, cut off at the root, made like a palm-tree, so utterly done away with that they can come to no future existence—him I call one who is a ‘burner-up’. For a Truth-finder, Sīha, evil wrong states that are searing ... existence. This is the way, Sīha, in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who is a “burner-up”, he teaches a doctrine of burning-up, and in this he trains disciples.’

BD.4.322

Vin.1.236

Kd.6.31.9

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one ... could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who is not destined to another (kind of) becoming, he teaches a doctrine of no other (kind of) becoming and in this he trains disciples’? He for whom, Sīha, future conception in a womb, becoming again and rebirth are destroyed, cut off at the root, made like a palm-tree, so utterly done away with that they can come to no future existence—him I call one not destined to another (kind of) becoming. For a Truth-finder, Sīha, future conception ... can come to no future existence. This is the way, Sīha ...

“And what, Sīha, is the way in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is one who is confident, he teaches a doctrine of confidence and in this he trains disciples’? Indeed I, Sīha, am confident with the highest confidence,¹ I teach a doctrine of confidence and in this I train disciples.² This is the way, Sīha, in which one speaking truly of me could say: ‘The recluse Gotama is confident, he teaches a doctrine of confidence and in this he trains disciples.’”

Kd.6.31.10

And when he had spoken thus,³ Sīha, the general, spoke thus to the Lord: “Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! ...⁴ May the Lord accept me as a

¹ AN-a.iv.98 says “with the highest confidence in the four ways and the four fruits”. ² Cf. DN.iii.39 where wanderers are recorded to ask Gotama the name of the doctrine in which he trains disciples and in which they, trained and attained to confidence, *assāsa*, acknowledge a desire for (or a support in) the Brahma-faring. DN-a.iii.835 explains *assāsa* by *tutṭhi*, joy, and *somanassa*, happiness. ³ From here to middle of Kd.6.31.12 = MN.i.378f., in connection with Upāli the householder. ⁴ Stock; as at Kd.1.7.10.

lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

“Now, Sīha, make a proper investigation. Proper investigation is good in the case of well-known men like yourself.”¹

“I, Lord, am even exceedingly pleased, satisfied with that which the Lord said to me: ‘Now, Sīha, make a proper investigation ... like yourself.’ For if, Lord, members of other sects had secured me as a disciple, they would have paraded a banner all round Vesālī, saying: ‘Sīha, the general, has joined our discipleship.’ But then the Lord spoke to me thus: ‘Now, Sīha, make a proper investigation ... like yourself.’ So I, Lord, go for a second time to the Lord for refuge and to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept me as a lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

BD.4.323

“For a long time, Sīha, your family² has been a well-spring³ to the Nigaṇṭhas. You will bethink you to give alms to those who approach you?”

Kd.6.31.11

“I, Lord, am even exceedingly pleased, satisfied with that which the Lord said to me: ‘For a long time, Sīha, your family ... those who approach you? I have heard, Lord: The recluse Gotama speaks thus: ‘Gifts should be given to me only, not to others should gifts be given; gifts should be given to my disciples only, not to the disciples of others should gifts be given. What is given to me is alone of great fruit, what is given to others is not of great fruit; what is given to my disciples is alone of great fruit, what is given to the disciples of others is not of great fruit.’ But then the Lord urged upon me giving to the Nigaṇṭhas too. Indeed, Lord, we shall know the right time for that. So I, Lord, go for a third time to the Lord for refuge and to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept me as a lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

Vin.1.237

Then the Lord talked a progressive talk⁴ to Sīha, the general, that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven; he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in renouncing (them). When the Lord knew that the mind of Sīha, the general, was ready, malleable, devoid of the hindrances, uplifted, pleased, then he explained to him that teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened

Kd.6.31.12

¹ As at MN.i.379, AN.iv.185. ² *kula*, explained by *nivesana*, a dwelling, at Vin-a.1097, MN-a.iii.89. ³ *opānabhūta*. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.177, n.3 for further references.

⁴ As at Kd.1.75–Kd.1.76.

ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the Way. And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take dye, even so as he was (sitting) on that very seat, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to Sīha, the general, that “whatever is of the nature to uprise all that is of the nature to stop”. Then Sīha, the general, as one who¹ had seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, who had crossed over doubt, put away uncertainty, who had attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord²: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then Sīha, the general, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat, departed keeping his right side towards him.

BD.4.324

Then Sīha, the general, enjoined a certain man, saying: “Go, good fellow, find out if there is meat to hand.”³ Then Sīha, the general, towards the end of that night having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of Sīha, the general; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks.

Kd.6.31.13

Now at that time many Nigaṇṭhas, waving their arms, were moaning⁴ from carriage road⁵ to carriage road, from cross road⁶ to cross road in Vesālī: “Today a fat beast,⁷ killed by Sīha, the general, is made into a meal for the recluse Gotama, the recluse Gotama makes use of this meat, knowing that it was killed on purpose (for him),⁸ that the deed was (done) for his sake.”⁹ Then a certain man approached Sīha, the general; having approached he whispered into Sīha, the general’s ear:

“Please, honoured sir, you should know that many of these Nigaṇṭhas, waying their arms, are moaning from carriage road to carriage road, from cross road to cross road in Vesālī:

BD.4.325

¹ As at Kd.1.6.32. ² To here from Kd.6.31.10 = MN.i.378. ³ As at Vin.1.217 (above, Kd.6.23.2). ⁴ *kandanti*. ⁵ Defined at Vin.4.271 (BD.3.268). ⁶ Defined at Vin.4.271 (BD.3.268). ⁷ *pasu*, meaning uncertain, but not necessarily an animal of the cow-tribe. AN-a.iv.102 says: “a fat beast with a large body such as an elk or buffalo or pig”. Vin-a.363 says of *pasuka* that all four-footed animals beginning with the elephant should be called *pasuka*. ⁸ Cf. Ja.ii.262: the Telovādājātaka was spoken concerning Sīha. ⁹ *paṭiccakamma*.

‘Today a fat beast ... the deed was (done) for his sake’.”

“Enough, master, for a long time now these venerable ones have been desiring dispraise of the awakened one, have been desiring dispraise of *dhamma*, have been desiring dispraise of the Order. But these venerable ones, bad, vain, lying, do not harm this Lord because they are misrepresenting him by what is not fact—why, even we, for the sake of our livelihood, would not intentionally deprive a living thing of life.”¹

Kd.6.31.14

Then Siha, the general, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the enlightened one at its head with sumptuous food, solid and soft, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. Then the Lord having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Siha, the general, with talk on *dhamma* as he was sitting down at a respectful distance, rising from his seat, departed.² Then the Lord on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.1.238

“Monks, one should not knowingly make use of meat killed on purpose (for one). Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, fish and meat that are quite pure in three respects: if they are not seen, heard, suspected (to have been killed on purpose for a monk).”³

ALLOWANCE FOR A PLACE FOR WHAT IS ALLOWABLE

Now at that time Vesālī was well off for food, crops were good, almsfood was easy to obtain, and it was easy to keep oneself going by gleaning and by favour. Then as the Lord was meditating in seclusion a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “Those things which were allowed by me to monks when food was scarce, crops bad, and almsfood difficult to obtain: what was cured

Kd.6.32.1

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.61. ² To here from Kd.6.31.1=AN.iv.179. ³ Cf. Vin.3.172 (BD.1.298) where Devadatta, wanting a schism, tries to make the Lord say that monks should eat no fish or meat. But Gotama answers him that fish and meat are “pure” if they have the three points which are also mentioned above. *Macchamaṃsa* is I think not “the flesh of fish” (as at GS.iv.130, n.1) but “fish and meat”. The story leading up to this allowance is concerned with meat; and many instances show that monks ate this without incurring criticism or blame.

BD.4.326 indoors, cooked indoors, cooked by oneself¹; receiving (formally) what was picked up²; what was taken back from there³; what was accepted before a meal⁴; what grows in a wood, what grows in a lotus-tank⁵—do the monks still make use of these things today?”

Then the Lord, arising from his meditation towards evening, addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Those things which were allowed by me to monks when food was scarce ... do the monks still make use of these things today?”

Kd.6.32.2 “They make use of them, Lord.”

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “Those things, monks, allowed by me to monks when food was scarce, crops bad and almsfood difficult to obtain: what was cured indoors ... what grows in a lotus-tank—these things I object to from this day forth. **Monks you should not make use of what is cured indoors, cooked indoors, cooked by yourselves; of (formally) receiving what is picked up (by you). Whoever should make use of (any of these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor should you, monks, having eaten, being satisfied, make use of food that is not left over if it is brought back from there; if it is accepted before a meal; if it grows in a wood, grows in a lotus-tank. Whoever should make use of (any of these things) should be dealt with according to the rule.**”⁶

Kd.6.33.1

Now at that time country people, having loaded much salt and oil, and husked rice and solid food into wagons,⁷ having made an enclosure for the wagons in a porch outside a monastery, waited, thinking: “When our turn comes, then we will make a meal,”⁸ but a great cloud came up. Then these people approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, they spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda:

Vin.1.239

“Now, honoured Ānanda, having loaded much salt ... solid food into wagons, they are standing (there), but a great cloud has come up. What line of conduct, honoured Ānanda, should be followed by us?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.6.33.2

BD.4.327

¹ Kd.6.17.7. ² Kd.6.17.9. ³ Kd.6.18.4. ⁴ Kd.6.19.2. ⁵ Kd.6.20.4. ⁶ Bu-Pc.35. ⁷ As at Kd.6.24.1, Kd.6.34.17. ⁸ As at Kd.6.24.1, Kd.6.34.17.

“Well then, Ānanda, the Order having agreed upon a place for what is allowable¹ near² a dwelling-place: a dwelling-place or a curved house or a long house or a mansion or a cave,³ let there be kept⁴ there whatever the Order desires. And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon such and such a dwelling-place as a place for what is allowable. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon such and such a dwelling-place as a place for what is allowable. If the agreement on such and such a dwelling-place as a place for what is allowable is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Such and such a dwelling-place is agreed upon by the Order as a place for what is allowable. Therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Now at that time the people boiled conjeys, boiled rice, prepared soups, cut up meats, chopped wood, just there at a place for what was allowable and which had been agreed upon. As the Lord was getting up at the end of the night towards dawn he heard a loud noise, a great noise, a noise (like) the cawing of crows,⁵ and hearing it, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “What, Ānanda, is this loud noise, this great noise, this noise (like) the cawing of crows?”

Kd.6.33.3

Kd.6.33.4

¹ *kappiyabhūmi*. The commentary does not explain this word, but in commenting on the three kinds of places allowed at the end of Kd.6.33.4. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1098f., uses the word *kappiyakuṭi*, hut for what is allowable. It seems probable that the *kappiyabhūmi* was a place for doing certain operations some of which were allowable only in times of scarcity: cooking for oneself, cooking indoors and curing indoors. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1099 appears to connect these with a *kappiyabhūmi*. It should however be noticed that at Kd.3.5.9 the “kitchen” which a lay follower may build for himself replaces the *kappiyakuṭi* which he may build for an Order or a member of it at Kd.3.5.6. For in normal times monks did not cook, and hence a place for doing allowable operations (of this nature) would be superfluous. A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol.48, No.3, p.260 calls *kappiyabhūmi* an “outhouse site”. ² *paccantima*. Vin-a.1098 says this is only an expression. ³ For these five “abodes” cf. above, Kd.1.30.4 and notes. ⁴ *vāsetu*. ⁵ = Vin.4.82.

BD.4.328 “At present, Lord, people boil conjeys ... chop sticks just there at a place for what is allowable and which has been agreed upon. It is this loud noise, great noise, noise (like) the cawing of crows that the Lord (hears).”¹ Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one should not make use of a place for what is allowable that has been agreed upon.² Whoever should make use of it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, three places for what is allowable: that depending upon a proclamation,³ that connected with what is fortuitous,⁴ that (given by) a householder.”⁵

Kd.6.33.5

¹ *so eso bhagavā uccāsaddo ... kākoravasaddo*. One would have expected *bhante* here instead of *bhagavā*, and the sentence then to be translated: it is this, Lord, that is the loud noise ... ² Presumably there is the risk of being in the lay-people’s way and also of being disturbed by the noise they make. ³ *ussāvanantika*. *Ussāvana* is not a proclamation in a technical sense and has nothing to do with proceedings at formal acts of the Order. But Buddhaghosa explains, Vin-a.1098, that having made all preparations with pillars, walls and stones, the people utter the phrase (*vācam nicchārenti*) “We are making a *kappiyakuṭi*”. The two Commentaries which he quotes also mention a *kappiyakuṭi* as being spoken about or resolved upon. *Antika* is used in the same sense as above at Kd.7.1.7. ⁴ *gonisādika*. Cf. *gonisādi* at Vin.3.46, where a village arranged “fortuitously” comes into the definition of village. *Gonisādi* is not an ox-stall (*Vinaya Texts* ii.121). Vin-a.298 explains that as two or three cows sit down here and there, so, having built two or three houses, they are arranged here and there. The idea is that something is left to a haphazard element. Vin-a.1099 explains that there are two kinds of *gonisādika*: one of the monastery (type), one of the dwelling-place. Wherever neither the monastery itself is fenced in nor the lodgings, this is the monastery-type of what is “fortuitous”. Wherever all or some of the lodgings are fenced in but not the monastery, this is the dwelling-place type. So in both kinds the non-fencing in of the monastery is a criterion. The commentary does not say which kind is intended here; perhaps both are. ⁵ *gahapati*. Vin-a.1099 says, “people having built a residence say, ‘we are giving a *kappiyakutl*, make use of it’—this is called *gahapati*. It means this too if they say, ‘We are giving (something) to build a *kappiyakuṭi*’”. Vin-a on this whole passage uses *kappiyakuṭi* and never *kappiya-bhūmi*. Cf. *kappiyakuṭiyo* which, among other things, Anāthapiṇḍika caused to be built in the Jeta Grove, at Vin.2.159, and the *kappiyakuṭi* which a lay disciple might cause to be built for an Order, at Vin.1.139 (above, BD.4.186).

Now at that time the venerable Yasoja¹ came to be ill. Medicines were conveyed for him. Monks put these outside, but vermin ate them and also thieves carried them off.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to make use of a place for what is allowable³ and which has been agreed upon. I allow four places for what is allowable: that depending upon a proclamation, that connected with what is fortuitous, that given by a householder, that which is agreed upon."

BD.4.329

Vin.1.240

Told is the Twenty-fourth Portion for Repeating

THE STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLDER MENḌAKA

Now at that time the householder Menḍaka⁴ lived in the town of Bhaddiya.⁵ He came to have this kind of eminence in psychic power: having washed his head, having had a granary swept, he sat down just outside the door, and a shower of grain, having fallen down through the air, filled the granary. His wife⁶ came to have this kind of eminence in psychic power: having sat

¹ Verses at Thag.243–Thag.245. There is a story about five hundred monks with Yasoja at their head at Ud.24–Ud.27. The lord dismissed them for making a great noise; they spent the rains in earnest endeavour and realised the three knowledges; they were then able to spend a whole night in as concentrated meditation as the Lord himself. Vin-a.1098 says "At the conclusion of the Kapilasutta he (Yasoja) was the chief person of the five hundred who had gone forth". Snp-a.i.312, Dhp-a.iv.45 call these five hundred "fishermen's sons". See Dhp-a.iv.37ff. (Kapilamacchavatthu), Snp-a.i.305ff. (both of which tell about the golden fish, Kapila), Ud-a.179. *Psalms of the Bretheren*, p.166 for the circumstances in which the Kapilasutta was spoken to Yasoja. This Sutta is referred to at Dhp-a.iv.42 as being in the *Suttanipāta*. Kapilasutta is there (Snp.p.49) a variant reading for Dhammacariyasutta, but the Commentary (Snp-a.i.312) refers to it as Kapilasutta. ² As at *Kd.6.17.7*. ³ This paragraph probably refers to allowable medicines. See too Vin-a.1101 which refers to *sappi*, ghee, which was a medicine. ⁴ Father of Dhanañjaya, who was Visākhā's father. At Dhp-a.i.384 Menḍaka is called "householder", at Dhp-a.i.385, Vism.383 "merchant", *setṭhi*, and he and his wife, son, daughter-in-law and slave are said to be five people of great merit. His story is told in detail at Dhp-a.iii.363ff. Cf. Dhp-a.iv.203, Dhp-a.iv.217. According to Dhp-a.iii.363 the Dhammapada verse (252) was spoken by the Lord while he was staying in the Jātiyā Grove at Bhaddiya concerning Menḍaka. ⁵ In the Aṅga kingdom. ⁶ Her name was Candapadumā (because she came to have the moon and the lotus represented on the palms of her hands and the soles of her feet), Dhp-a.i.385, Dhp-a.iii.363; or Candapadumasirī at Vism.383. Her meritorious act is noticed at Dhp-a.iii.369.

down beside only one bowl of the capacity of an *ālḥaka*¹ and one helping of curry and condiments, she served food² to slaves, workmen and servants³; not until she got up was it exhausted. His son⁴ came to have this kind of eminence in psychic power: having taken hold of only one purse containing a thousand,⁵ he gave six months' wages to (each) slave, workman and servant; not until he removed his hand was it⁶ exhausted.

BD.4.330

Kd.6.34.2

His daughter-in-law⁷ came to have this kind of eminence in psychic power; having sat down beside only one basket of the capacity of four *doṇas*⁸ she gave six months' food⁹ to (each) slave, workman and servant; not until she got up was it exhausted. His slave¹⁰ came to have this kind of eminence in psychic power: when he ploughed with one ploughshare seven furrows came from (it).¹¹

Kd.6.34.3

Kd.6.34.4

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha heard: "They say that the householder Meṇḍaka is living in our kingdom in the town of Bhaddiya. He has this kind of eminence in psychic power ... (as in *Kd.6.34.1*, *Kd.6.34.2*) ... when he ploughs with one ploughshare seven furrows come from (it)."

Kd.6.34.5

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha addressed a certain chief minister who was concerned with all the affairs,¹² saying: "It is said, my good

¹ *ālḥakathālikā*. See *BD.1.103*, n.1. ² *bhatta* can also mean rice, the staple dish, but here in all likelihood meaning food, for probably no implication that she served rice without the curry and condiments is intended. ³ *dāsa-kammakara-porisā*. Same compound at *AN.i.145*, *AN.i.206*, *AN.ii.78*, *AN.iii.45* (*puttadārādāsa-*), *AN.iii.260*. *AN-a.ii.241* explains as "slaves as well as workmen earning a daily wage of food, and people living in dependence on (one)", *jīvamānapurisā*. See definitions of "slave" and "workman" at *BD.3.180*. ⁴ Called Dhanañjaya the merchant, *setṭhi*, at *Dhp-a.i.386ff.*, *Dhp-a.iii.363*, *Vism.383*, and Meṇḍaka's eldest son at *Dhp-a.i.385*. His psychic power is referred to at *Dhp-a.iii.370*. He was lent by Bimbisāra to Pasenadi; and the latter built Sāketa to house Dhanañjaya's retinue during the night's halt on the way to Sāvathī, *Dhp-a.i.386f.* Dhanañjaya was the father of Visākhā and of her youngest sister, Sujātā, in respect of whom the *Sujāta-Jātaka* *Ja.269* was told. ⁵ The word *kahāpaṇa* supplied at *Dhp-a.iii.370*. ⁶ I.e., the contents of the purse. ⁷ Called Sumanādevī at *Dhp-a.i.384*, Sumanadevī at *Dhp-a.iii.363*, *Vism.383*. She was Dhanañjaya's chief wife, *aggamahesi*, *Dhp-a.i.384*, and Visākhā's mother, *SN-a.i.148*. Her act of psychic power referred to at *Dhp-a.iii.370*. ⁸ A measure of capacity, generally equivalent to four *ālḥakas*, see *BD.1.103*, n.. ⁹ *bhatta*, see above, *BD.4.329*, n.7. ¹⁰ Called *Puṇṇa* at *Dhp-a.i.385*, *Dhp-a.iii.363*, *Vism.383*. His psychic gift referred to at *Dhp-a.iii.370*. ¹¹ According to *Dhp-a.iii.370* one in the middle and three at each side. ¹² *sabbatthaka mahāmatta* as at *Vin.3.249*.

man,¹ that the householder Meṇḍaka is living in our kingdom in the town of Bhaddiya; he has this kind of psychic power: having washed his head ... seven furrows come from (it). Go along, my good man, and find out. When you have seen, it will be the same as if I myself saw.”

Vin.1.241

“So be it, your majesty”, and that chief minister, having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, marched forth² for Bhaddiya with a four-winged army.³

Kd.6.34.6

BD.4.331

In due course he approached Bhaddiya and Meṇḍaka the householder; having approached he spoke thus to Meṇḍaka the householder: “Now I, householder, have been enjoined by the King, saying: ‘It is said, my good man, that the householder Meṇḍaka is living in our kingdom ... When you have seen, it will be the same as if I myself saw.’ Let us see, householder, your eminence in psychic power.” Then the householder Meṇḍaka, having washed his head, having had a granary swept, sat down outside the door, and a shower of grain, having fallen down through the air, filled the granary. “Your eminence in psychic power has been seen, householder. We will see your wife’s eminence in psychic power.”

Kd.6.34.7

Then the householder Meṇḍaka enjoined his wife, saying: “Well now, serve this four-winged army with food.” Then the wife of Meṇḍaka the householder, having sat down beside only one bowl of the capacity of an *ālḥaka* and one helping of curry and condiments, served food to the four-winged army; not until she got up was it exhausted. “Your wife’s eminence in psychic power has been seen, householder. We will see your son’s eminence in psychic power.”

Kd.6.34.8

Then the householder Meṇḍaka enjoined his son, saying: “Well now, my dear, give this four-winged army six months’ wages.” Then the son of Meṇḍaka the householder, having taken hold of only one purse containing a thousand, gave the four-winged army six months’ wages; not until he removed his hand was it exhausted. “Your son’s eminence in psychic power has been seen, householder. We will see your daughter-in-law’s eminence

¹ *bhaṇe*, as at Vin.3.249 where Bimbisāra is again recorded to be addressing a chief minister concerned with all the affairs. *Bhaṇe* is a common mode of address from a superior to an inferior. ² *pāyāsi*. Cf. *payāta* at Vin.4.105. ³ Elephants, horses, chariots and infantry. See definition of army at Vin.4.105; and BD.2.375, n.3.

in psychic power.”

Kd.6.34.9

Then Meṇḍaka the householder enjoined his daughter-in-law, saying: “Well now, give this four-winged army six months’ food.” Then the daughter-in-law of Meṇḍaka the householder, having sat down beside only one basket of the capacity of four *doṇas*, gave six months’ food to the four-winged army; not until she got up was it exhausted. “Your daughter-in-law’s eminence in psychic power has been seen, householder. We will see your slave’s eminence in psychic power.”

BD.4.332

“Our slave’s eminence in psychic power, sir,¹ can be seen in the field.”

“Enough, householder, your slave’s eminence in psychic power has been seen.”

Then that chief minister went back again to Rājagaha with the four-winged army, and approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached, he told this matter to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha.

Vin.1.242

Kd.6.34.10

Then the Lord, having stayed in Vesālī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Bhaddiya with the large Order of monks, together with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Bhaddiya. The Lord stayed there in Bhaddiya in the Jātiyā Grove.²

Kd.6.34.11

Then the householder Meṇḍaka heard: “Verily,³ the recluse Gotama, the son of the Sakyans, who has gone forth from a Sakyan family, has reached Bhaddiya and is staying at Bhaddiya in the Jātiyā Grove. A lovely reputation has gone forth concerning the Lord Gotama, thus: he is indeed Lord, perfected one, fully awakened one, endowed with knowledge and conduct, well-farer, knower of the worlds, unrivalled charioteer of men to be tamed, teacher of *devas* and mankind, the awakened one, the Lord. Having realised by his own super-knowledges, he makes known this world with its *devas*, with its Māras, with its Brahmās, a race with recluses and brahmins, with *devas* and men. He teaches *dhamma*, lovely at the beginning, lovely in the middle and lovely at the ending. He explains with the spirit and the letter

¹ *sāmi*. ² Mentioned at [Vin.1.189f.](#), [Vin.3.37](#); [AN.iii.36](#). ³ To end of [Kd.6.34.11](#) is stock and recurs at e.g. [Vin.1.35](#), [Vin.1.245](#), [Vin.3.1](#). [DN.i.87](#). For notes on above passage, see [BD.1.1ff.](#)

the Brahmā-life completely fulfilled and wholly pure. Good indeed it were to see perfected ones like this.”

Kd.6.34.12

Then the householder Meṇḍaka, having had many magnificent vehicles harnessed,¹ having mounted a magnificent vehicle, went off with the magnificent vehicles from Bhaddiya to see the Lord. But many members of (other) sects² saw the householder Meṇḍaka coming in the distance, and seeing him they spoke thus to the householder Meṇḍaka: “Where are you going, householder?”

BD.4.333

“I am going, honoured sirs, to see the Lord, the recluse Gotama.”

“But how can you, householder, being one who asserts an ought-to-be-done,³ go along to see the recluse Gotama who asserts an ought-not-to-be-done? For, householder, the recluse Gotama asserts an ought-not-to-be-done, he teaches a doctrine of an ought-not-to-be-done and in this he trains disciples.”

Kd.6.34.13

Then it occurred to the householder Meṇḍaka: “Undoubtedly this will be a Lord, a perfected one, a fully awakened one⁴ inasmuch as these members of (other) sects are jealous of him,” and having gone by vehicle as far as the ground was (suitable) for a vehicle, having alighted from the vehicle, he approached the Lord on foot; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As Meṇḍaka the householder was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord talked a progressive talk⁵ to him, that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven ... Then the householder Meṇḍaka, as one who had ... attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord!⁶ ... May the Lord accept me as a lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts; Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent.

Vin.1.243

Kd.6.34.14

Then the householder Meṇḍaka, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then Meṇḍaka the householder towards the end of that night having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared, had the time

¹ As in [Kd.6.30.1](#), [Kd.6.30.3](#). ² A highly compressed version of the following incidents occurs at [Dhp-a.iii.374f](#). ³ As in [Kd.6.31.2](#). ⁴ As in [Kd.6.31.1](#). ⁵ As in [Kd.6.31.12](#). ⁶ Stock, as at [Kd.1.7.10](#); [Kd.6.31.10](#).

announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the householder Meṇḍaka; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks.

Kd.6.34.15

Then the wife and son and daughter-in-law and slave of the householder Meṇḍaka approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord talked a progressive talk to these, that is to say talk on giving ... Then these as ones who had ... attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! ... We, Lord, are going to the Lord for refuge and to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept us as lay-followers going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

BD.4.334

Kd.6.34.16

Then the householder Meṇḍaka, having with his own hand served and satisfied with sumptuous food, solid and soft, the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Meṇḍaka the householder spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, for as long as the Lord stays at Bhaddiya, for so long will I (supply) with perpetual food the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head.” Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the householder Meṇḍaka with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed.

ALLOWANCE FOR FIVE DAIRY PRODUCTS, ETC.

Kd.6.34.17

Then the Lord, having stayed at Bhaddiya for as long as he found suiting, without asking the householder Meṇḍaka (for permission)¹ set out on tour for Aṅguttarāpa² together with the large Order of monks, with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. Then Meṇḍaka the householder heard: “They say

¹ *anāpucchā*, not asking (for permission) is defined, at [Vin.4.343](#), by *anapaloketvā*, not having obtained permission, while this is defined at [Vin.4.226](#), [Vin.4.232](#), [Vin.4.316](#) by *anāpucchā*.

² An Aṅga country north of the river Mahī (MN-a.iii.34, Snp-a.437). Mentioned at Snp.p.102, MN.i.359, MN.i.447, Dh-p-a.iii.363.

that the Lord is setting out on tour for Aṅguttarāpa together with a large Order of monks, with twelve hundred and fifty monks.” Then Meṇḍaka the householder enjoined slaves and workmen saying: “Well now, my good men, having loaded much salt and oil and husked rice and solid food into wagons,¹ come along, and let there come along twelve hundred and fifty cowherds bringing twelve hundred and fifty milch cows. Wherever we see the Lord there will we offer him fresh milk.”

Kd.6.34.18
BD.4.335
Vin.1.244

Then Meṇḍaka the householder met the Lord on a wilderness road. Then Meṇḍaka the householder approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, Meṇḍaka the householder spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then Meṇḍaka the householder, having understood the Lord’s consent, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then Meṇḍaka the householder, towards the end of that night having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.”

Kd.6.34.19

Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the food distribution of Meṇḍaka the householder; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then Meṇḍaka the householder enjoined the twelve hundred and fifty cowherds, saying: “Well now, my good men, let each one (of you) having each taken a milch cow, look after a monk, and we will offer them fresh milk.” Then Meṇḍaka the householder with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with sumptuous food, solid and soft, and (offered² them) fresh milk. The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept the milk. (The Lord said:) “Accept it, monks, make use of it.”

Kd.6.34.20

Then Meṇḍaka the householder, having with his own hand served and

¹ As at Kd.6.24.1; Kd.6.33.1. ² I think this verb, *bhojeti* (literally to make to eat, to feed, so to offer, to regale, to entertain with), which Meṇḍaka has already used, should be inserted here. For the monks refused the milk until told, as recorded, to accept it. So long as they refused it, it cannot be said that they were “served and satisfied with” it.

satisfied the Order of monks with the enlightened one at its head with sumptuous food, solid and soft and with fresh milk, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance Menḍaka the householder spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.4.336 “There are, Lord, wilderness roads with little water, with little food¹; it is not easy to go along them without provisions for the journey.² It were good, Lord, if the Lord allowed monks provisions for the journey.” Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the householder Menḍaka with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.6.34.21

Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, five products of the cow: milk, curds, butter-milk, butter, ghee. There are, monks, wilderness roads with little water, with little food; it is not easy to go along them without provisions for the journey. I allow you, monks, to look about for provisions for a journey: husked rice for him who has need of husked rice; kidney-beans for him who has need of kidney-beans; beans for him who has need of beans; salt for him who has need of salt; sugar for him who has need of sugar; oil for him who has need of oil; ghee for him who has need of ghee. There are, monks, people who have faith and are believing; these deposit gold (coins)³ in the hands of those who make things allowable,⁴ saying: ‘By means of this give the master that which is allowable.’ I allow you, monks, thereupon⁵ to consent to that which is allowable. But this, monks, I do not say: that by any method⁶ may gold and silver⁷ be consented to, may be looked about for.”

Vin.1.245

THE STORY OF KEṆIYA THE MATTED-HAIR ASCETIC

Kd.6.35.1

Then the Lord, walking on tour,¹ in due course arrived at Āpaṇa.² The matted hair ascetic Keṇiya³ heard: “Verily, the recluse Gotama, the son of the Sakyans, who has gone forth from a Sakyan family, has reached Āpaṇa and is staying in Āpaṇa. A lovely reputation⁴ has gone forth concerning the Lord Gotama, thus: ... He explains with the spirit and the letter the Brahma-faring completely fulfilled and wholly pure. Good indeed it were to see perfected ones like this.” Then it occurred to Keṇiya the matted hair ascetic: “Now, what could I get conveyed to the recluse Gotama?”

BD.4.337

Then it occurred to Keṇiya the matted hair ascetic: “Now, those who were⁵ formerly seers of the brahmins, makers of mantras,⁶ preservers of mantras, whose ancient mantras as sung, taught,⁷ and composed the brahmins of today still sing, still speak; they still speak what was spoken, they still teach what was taught, that is to say (by) Aṭṭhaka,⁸ Vāmaka,⁹ Vāmadeva,¹⁰ Vessāmitta, Yamataggi,¹¹ Angirasa, Bhāradvāja, Vāseṭṭha, Kas-

Kd.6.35.2

¹ To these kinds of wilds, *kantāra*, three others are added at Ja.i.99 (which gives a short explanation of each), SN-a.ii.103: *cora*°, *vāla*°, *amanussa*°. See BD.1.147, n.1. ² As at Vin.1.270. Cf. Vin.4.79f. ³ *hirañña*, see BD.1.28, n. ⁴ *kappiyakāraka*, see Kd.6.17.8. ⁵ *tato*. ⁶ *pariyāya*, perhaps here “in any circumstances”. ⁷ *jātarūparajata*. See BD.1.28, n.; BD.2.100, n.2, BD.2.102, n.1. If a monk takes gold and silver or gets another to do so for him or consents to its being kept in deposit for him, he incurs a *Nissaggiya* offence (No.18). ¹ From here to end of Kd.6.35.5, cf. Snp.102ff. = MN.ii.146ff. ² This is called a market town, *nigama*, of Aṅga at SN.v.225; a market town of Aṅguttarāpa at Snp.103, MN.i.359, MN.i.447. Āpaṇa was so named because it had a quantity of shops, Snp-a.ii.440, MN-a.iii.37. ³ Spelt Keṇiya at Snp.p.103, MN-a.iii.399. He is mentioned at Tha-ap.318. According to Snp-a.440, MN-a.iii.399 he was a very wealthy (*mahāsāla*) brahmin who became a *jaṭila* (matted hair) ascetic so as to protect his wealth, and he was also the protector of five thousand families; but although he wore the yellow robes by day, by night he indulged in pleasures of the senses. At DN-a.i.270 he is given as an example, among eight types of ascetics, of the type who supports wife and children (*sa-puttabhāriya*). See also Dhp-a.i.323, Ud-a.241. ⁴ As above, BD.4.332. ⁵ Down to the name Bhagu = DN.i.104, DN.i.238, DN.i.242; AN.iii.224, DN.i.229; MN.ii.169, DN.i.200. ⁶ I.e. the Vedas. ⁷ *pavutta*, explained at DN-a.273 as “spoken for others,” taught (*vācīta*, made to speak). ⁸ On the names of these ṛṣis or seers, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.130, n.3. Aṭṭhaka is usually identified with Aṣṭaka, mentioned as author of Ṛg Veda 10.104. ⁹ Cf. Ṛg Veda 10.99. ¹⁰ Cf. Ṛg Veda 4.26. ¹¹ Under Jamadagni in *Vedic Index* he is connected with Ṛg Veda 362, Ṛg Veda 318; Ṛg Veda 8101, Ṛg Veda 88; Ṛg Veda 962, Ṛg Veda 924; Ṛg Veda 965, Ṛg Veda 925.

sapa,¹ Bhagu—these abstaining from food at night, restrained from eating at the wrong time,² (yet) consented to such things as drinks.

Kd.6.35.3

“The recluse Gotama also abstains from food at night and is restrained from eating at the wrong time³; the recluse Gotama also is worthy⁴ to consent to such things as drinks,” and having had abundant drinks prepared, having had them taken on carrying-poles,⁵ he approached the Lord; having approached, he exchanged greetings with the Lord; having exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy with the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, Keniya the matted hair ascetic spoke thus to the Lord: “Let the revered Gotama accept drink from me.”

BD.4.338

“Well then, Keniya, give it to the monks.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept it. (The Lord said:) “Accept it, monks, make use of it.”

Kd.6.35.4

Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the enlightened one at its head with abundant drinks sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had washed his hand⁶ and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl. Then as Keniya the matted hair ascetic was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted him with talk on *dhamma*. Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, spoke thus to the Lord: “May the revered Gotama together with the Order of monks consent to a meal with me on the morrow.”

Vin.1.246

Kd.6.35.5

“But, Keniya, the Order of monks is large, twelve hundred and fifty monks, and you are in favour of the brahmins.” Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic spoke a second time to the Lord thus: “Although, good Gotama, the Order of monks is large, twelve hundred and fifty monks, and I am in favour of the brahmins, (yet) may the revered Gotama together with the Order of monks consent to a meal with me on the morrow.”

“But, Keniya, the Order of monks is large, twelve hundred and fifty monks, and you are in favour of the brahmins.” Then Keniya the matted

¹ Cf. Rg Veda 9.114,2. ² “Wrong time” for eating defined at Vin.4.86 as “after noon has passed until sunrise”. ³ Cf. DN.i.5. ⁴ *arahati samaṇo pi Gotamo*. The meaning is that he is worthy enough to confer a boon on the giver of the things which he consents to accept.

⁵ *kāja*, cf. MN.iii.148. ⁶ As at Kd.6.24.4; Kd.6.36.8.

hair ascetic spoke a third time to the Lord thus:

“Although, good Gotama, the Order of monks is large, twelve hundred and fifty monks, and I am in favour of the brahmins, (yet) may the revered Gotama together with the Order of monks consent to a meal with me on the morrow.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat departed.

Kd.6.35.6

Then the Lord, on this occasion having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.339

“I allow you, monks, eight (kinds of) drinks¹: mango drink,² rose-apple drink, plantain³ drink, banana⁴ drink, honey drink, grape drink, edible lotus root drink,⁵ *phārusaka*⁶ drink. I allow you, monks, the juice of all fruits except the juice of the fruit of corn.⁷ I allow you, monks, the juice of all leaves except vegetable⁸ juice. I allow you, monks, the juice of all flowers except liquorice⁹ juice. I allow you, monks, sugarcane juice.”¹⁰

Kd.6.35.7

Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic, towards the end of that night

¹ At Mnd.372 two lists of eight drinks each are given, the first being the same as this Vinaya list. These drinks occur in a controverted point at Kv.552. ² Made from raw or cooked mangoes. Vin-a.1101. ³ *coca*, which may however be coconut or cinnamon. But Vin-a.1102=Nd-a.ii.396 declare this to be a drink made from the fruit of bananas (or plantains, *kadali*) which have kernels, *aṭṭhika* (stone or kernel of a fruit). The meaning therefore is not clear, and is further confused by the next drink, *moca*, which Vin-a.1102=Nd-a.ii.396 say is made of plantain fruits without kernels, *anaṭṭhika*. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.132, n. ⁴ *moca*, *Musa sapientum*. ⁵ *sāluka-pāna*. Vin-a.1102=Nd-a.ii.396 say it is a drink that is made having crushed the edible roots of the red and the blue lotuses and so on. ⁶ *Vinaya Texts* ii.133, n.2 says “this is *Grewia Asiatica* of Linnaeus”, Monier Williams (under *parūsha(ka)*) adding “from the berries of which a cooling beverage is prepared”. *Phārusaka* occurs also at Dh-p-a.iii.316. ⁷ Vin-a.1102 refers to the seven kinds of grain or corn, *dhañña*, which probably are those enumerated at Vin.4.264, Nd-a.ii.396. See BD.1.83, n.4. Toddy and arrack are prepared from grain. The use of toddy was one of the ten points not allowed by the Council of Vesālī, Vin.2.301. ⁸ *ḍāka* (=Sanskrit *sāka*), vegetable, herb, potherb. Vin-a.1102 explains as cooked *ḍāka*. See below, Kd.6.36.8 where all kinds of vegetables are allowed. ⁹ *madhuka*. This is the tree *Bassia latifolia*. ¹⁰ Vin-a.1103 says “in allowing these drinks (mango drink and so on), these four (kinds of) juices are allowed as well”.

having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared in his own hermitage,¹ had the time announced to the Lord saying: “It is time, good Gotama, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the hermitage of Keniya the matted hair ascetic; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then Keniya the matted hair ascetic, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with sumptuous food, solid and soft, sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl.

BD.4.340
Kd.6.35.8

As Keniya the matted hair ascetic was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord thanked him in these verses:

“Sacrifices² are chief in fire-worship,³
Sāvitrī⁴ chief of (Vedic) metres,
A king is chief of men,
the ocean chief of waters,

“The moon is chief of the lamps of night,⁵
the sun chief of luminaries,⁶
For those giving alms, desiring merit,
the Order is indeed the chief.”

Then the Lord, having thanked Keniya the matted hair ascetic in these verses, rising from his seat, departed.

Vin.1.247

¹ Snp.p.104 here breaks off the account, although it adds, before going on to the Sela story, that Keniya’s friends, servants and relations helped him in all kinds of ways in the preparation of the meal. Snp.p.110 then takes up the account again, as Vinaya above, and thus includes the two verses appearing below. The Sutta Nipāta version naturally does not include the “allowances” of Kd.6.35.6. ² These two verses = Snp.568–Snp.569. ³ The Jaṭilas were fire-worshippers. *Yañña*, sacrifice, became under Buddhist usage an alms-gift to an Order or to monks, a *deyyadhamma*, gift of faith, Cnd.523. ⁴ A Vedic metre. Cf. Snp.457, “three lines (*pada*) twenty-four syllables”. Snp-a.ii.403 states that Sāvitrī in the discipline of the nobles would be: *buddhaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi / dhammaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi / saṅghaṃ saraṇaṃ gacchāmi*. ⁵ *nakkhatta*, usually meaning a constellation or lunar mansion. Snp-a.ii.456 says, “According to the conjunction of the moon, so that from a sign, from its brightness (*ālokakaraṇa*) and from its gentleness one can say, ‘Today is Kattikā, today is Rohini’ (name of two months or lunar mansions) it is said ‘The moon is chief of the *nakkhattas*’”. ⁶ *tapataṃ = tapantānaṃ*, of shining, of bright, of radiant (things).

THE STORY ROJA THE MALLA

Then the Lord, having stayed in Āpaṇa for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Kusinārā with the large Order of monks, with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. The Mallas of Kusinārā heard: “It is said that the Lord is coming to Kusinārā¹ together with a large Order of monks, with twelve hundred and fifty monks.” These made a compact that, ‘Whoever does not go out to meet the Lord is fined five hundred’.² Now at that time Roja the Malla was a friend of the venerable Ānanda.³ Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Kusinārā.

Kd.6.36.1

Then the Mallas of Kusinārā went out to meet the Lord. Then Roja the Malla, having gone out to meet the Lord approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, he stood at a respectful distance. As Roja the Malla was standing at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to him: “This is splendid of you, friend Roja, that you have come out to meet the Lord.”

Kd.6.36.2

BD.4.341

“I, honoured Ānanda, am not much impressed by⁴ the awakened one or *dhamma* or the Order, but a compact was made among the kinsfolk that whoever does not go out to meet the Lord is fined five hundred. It was only from fear of the kinsfolk’s compact that I, honoured Ānanda, went out to meet the Lord.” Then the venerable Ānanda was disappointed and thought: “How can this Roja the Malla speak thus?”

Kd.6.36.3

Then the venerable Ānanda approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, this Roja the Malla is a distinguished, well-known man. Surely the faith⁵ in this *dhamma* and discipline of well-known men like

¹ One of the two capitals of the Malla country, the other being Pāvā. The Lord died at Kusinārā, and the Pāveyyaka Mallas sent to claim their share of his relics (DN.ii.165), showing that the Malla country was divided into two separate parts (see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*). ² Doubtless *kahāpaṇas*. ³ As at Vin.1.296. The Vacchanakha-jātaka (Ja.235) is said to have been spoken concerning Roja. ⁴ *bahukata*. Vin-a.1103 says this means, “I have not come here out of respect for and belief in the awakened one and the rest” (i.e. *dhamma* and the Order). ⁵ *pasāda*. This phrase is the same as that put into the mouth of Anāthapiṇḍika concerning Prince Jeta, Kd.16.4.10.

this is very efficacious.¹ It were well, Lord, if the Lord acted in such a way that Roja the Malla could have faith in this *dhamma* and discipline.”

“But, Ānanda, it is not difficult for a Truthfinder (to do) that by which Roja the Malla could have faith in this *dhamma* and discipline.”

Kd.6.36.4

Then the Lord, having suffused Roja the Malla with a mind of love,² rising from his seat, entered a dwelling-place. Then Roja the Malla, suffused by the Lord with a mind of love, even as young calves (follow) kine, so having approached dwelling-place after dwelling-place, cell after cell, he asked the monks: “Where, honoured sirs, is this Lord staying at present. the perfected one, the fully awakened one? For I long to see this Lord, perfected one, all awakened one.”³

BD.4.342

“This,⁴ friend Roja, is his dwelling-place, the door is closed; having approached quietly, having entered the verandah⁵ (but) without crossing it, having coughed, tap on the door-bolt.⁶ The Lord will open the door to you.”

Vin.1.248

Kd.6.36.5

Then Roja the Malla, having quietly approached that dwelling-place with its closed door, having entered the verandah (but) not crossing it, having coughed, tapped on the bolt. The Lord opened the door. Then Roja the Malla, having entered the dwelling-place, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord talked a progressive talk⁷ to Roja the Malla as he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven, he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in

¹ *mahiddhiya*. Here having no connection with psychic powers. Cf. *iddha*, effective, at Vin.4.50, Vin.4.54, Vin.4.313. ² See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *What was the Original Gospel in Buddhism?*, p.92ff., *Sakya*, p.222ff., *Outlines*, p.30. Amity, *mettā*, is the first of the *brahmavihāras*.

³ As at MN.ii.119, AN.v.65; cf. DN.i.89. ⁴ As at DN.i.89, spoken by monks to Ambaṭṭha; MN.ii.119, AN.v.65 by monks to Pasenadi. ⁵ *ālinda*, terrace or verandah in front of the door of a dwelling-place. COOMARASWAMY questions this meaning (*Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol.48, No.3, p.252) as used by GEIGER in Mahāvamsa translation, p.246. Geiger cites DN.i.89 (=above passage) as evidence that *ālinda* “is the terrace before the house-door”. There is also the word *pamukha* meaning verandah as at Vin.4.45. But DN-a.252 = MN-a.iii.351 explain *ālinda* by *pamukha*. *Ālinda* allowed at Vin.2.153, while at Vin.2.169 Visākhā wanted to build a palace with an *ālinda* supported on pillars with elephant capitals (*hatthinakha*); in this passage therefore *ālinda* may have the meaning of a gallery or balcony. ⁶ *aggaḷa*, bolt or crossbar, but explained at DN-a.252 = MN-a.iii.351 by *kavāta*, i.e. the door itself, that which closes the aperture. ⁷ As at Vin.1.15.

renouncing (them). When the Lord knew that the mind of Roja the Malla was ready, malleable, devoid of the hindrances, uplifted, pleased, then he explained to him that teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the Way. And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take dye, even so as he was (sitting) on that very seat *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to Roja the Malla, that “whatever is of the nature to uprise, all that is of the nature to stop”. Then Roja the Malla, as one who had seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, who had crossed over doubt, put away uncertainty, who had attained without another’s help to full confidence in the teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.4.343

“It were well, Lord, if the masters might receive the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick only from me, not from others.”

“But those, Roja, who with the knowledge of a learner with the vision of a learner have seen *dhamma*, as you have done, would also think: ‘Now indeed the masters should receive the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick only from us, not from others.’ Well then, Roja, they shall receive them from you as well as from others.”

Now at that time in Kusinārā a succession of meals of sumptuous foods came to be arranged.¹ Then because Roja the Malla did not obtain a turn,² he thought: “Suppose I were to look into the refectory and prepare that which I do not see in the refectory?”³ Then Roja the Malla, looking into the refectory,

Kd.6.36.6

¹ As at [Vin.1.57](#) (at Rājagaha), [Vin.2.119](#), [Vin.4.75](#) (at Vesālī). “Succession of meals” is *bhattapaṭipāti*. *Paṭipāti* is succession, order; but “turn” (place in the succession) is the better English rendering in the next sentence above and at [Vin.1.220](#) (above, [BD.4.300](#)). Cf. *paṭipātiya*, one after the other, successively, in order, at [Vin.4.91](#). ² *paṭipāti*. ³ Cf. [Kd.6.24.2-6.24.4](#).

did not see two things: vegetables¹ and solid food (made) with flour.² Then Roja the Malla approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda:

“Now, honoured Ānanda, it occurred to me because I did not obtain a turn: ‘Suppose I were to look into the refectory and prepare that which I do not see in the refectory?’ So I, honoured Ānanda, looking into the refectory, did not see two things: vegetables and solid food (made) with flour. If I, honoured Ānanda, were to prepare vegetables and solid food (made) with flour, would the Lord accept them from me?”

Kd.6.36.7 “Well then, Roja, I will inquire of the Lord.”

Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Well then, Ānanda, let him prepare them.” (Ānanda said:) “Well then, Roja, prepare them.” Then Roja the Malla towards the end of that night having had a quantity of vegetables and solid food (made) with flour prepared, brought them to the Lord, saying: “Lord, may the Lord accept from me vegetables and solid food (made) with flour.”

Vin.1.249 “Well then, Roja, give them to the monks.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not accept them. (The Lord said:) “Accept them, monks, make use of them.”

Kd.6.36.8

Then Roja the Malla, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head with a quantity of vegetables and solid food (made) with flour, sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had washed his hand³ and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl. The Lord, rising from his seat, departed, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Roja the Malla with talk on *dhamma* as he was sitting down at a respectful distance. Then the Lord on this occasion, having

¹ *ḍāka*, as above in Kd.6.35.6. ² *piṭṭha-khādaniya*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “‘flour-eatables’, i.e. pastry”. But we cannot assume that the only thing made with flour is pastry. *Khādaniya* has two meanings, the technical one of “solid food”, and the untechnical one of what may be eaten, edible. The definition of solid food, *Khādaniya*, at Vin.4.83 by the exclusion of soft foods and certain medicines raises the question whether in many cases where *khādaniya* occurs it should not be translated as “solid” food in preference to “edible”. Thus at Vin.1.215 we should get “solid food that is fruit” (or “fruit that is solid food”) and not “edible fruit”. Vin-a.1193 explains *piṭṭhakhādaniya* as *piṭṭhamayakhādaniya*, “solid food (or something edible) made with flour”. ³ *dhotahattha*, as above, e.g. Kd.6.35.4.

given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, all (kinds of) vegetables¹ and all (kinds of) solid food (made) with flour.”

THE STORY OF ONE GONE FORTH WHEN OLD

Then the Lord having stayed in Kusinārā for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Ātumā² together with the large Order of monks, with the twelve hundred and fifty monks. Now at that time a certain (person), formerly a barber,³ who had gone forth when old, was living in Ātumā. He had two boys, sweet-voiced,⁴ intelligent,⁵ skilled, accomplished in their craft,⁶ in the barber’s profession (as learnt from) their own teachers.⁷

Then that (man) who had gone forth when old⁸ heard: “They say that the Lord is coming to Ātumā together with a large Order of monks, with twelve

Kd.6.37.1

BD.4.345

Kd.6.37.2

¹ See Kd.6.35.6 where the juice of vegetables forms an exception to an “allowance”. Vin-a.1103 says “whatever is a vegetable, whether it is cooked or not with ghee”. ² Mentioned also at DN.ii.131. ³ *vuḍḍhapabbajito nahāpitapubbo*, identified by Buddhaghosa at DN-a.599 with the Subhadda mentioned at DN.ii.162 who felt relief at the Lord’s death. In neither the Dīgha Nikāya passage nor above is he called *āyasmā*, the venerable, and *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* says that at the time of the Buddha’s visit to Ātumā he had been a *sāmanera*. DN-a.599f. refers to the above Vinaya episode at some length. ⁴ *mañjuka*. I see no reason to object, as does *Vinaya Texts* ii.140, n.2, to Buddhaghosa’s exegesis as *madhuravacana*, sweet-voiced. ⁵ *paṭibhāneyyaka*, explained at Vin-a.1103 as “endowed with *paṭibhāna* in their own craft”. Here again *Vinaya Texts* ii.140, n.3 objects to Buddhaghosa’s exegesis, and translates as “skilled in discourse”. Cf. AN.i.25, *paṭibhāneyyakānaṃ* (of Radha), translated at GS.i.21 as “of impromptu speakers”. CHILDERS, besides giving “understanding, intelligence, wisdom; readiness or confidence of speech, promptitude, wit”, refers to Ja.i.60 and translates *paṭibhāna* as “skill”, a rendering followed by RHYS DAVIDS in *Buddhist Birth Stories*, p.79. The whole Vinaya context above suggests the meaning of “persuasive”. ⁶ At Vin.4.6 the barber’s is placed among the “low crafts”. ⁷ *sake ācariyake*. Cf. *sakaṃ ācariyakaṃ uggahetvā* at DN.ii.104. DN-a.ii.556 explains as “the speech of their own teachers”, *attano ācariyavādaṃ*. ⁸ *Vinaya Texts* ii.140 now and henceforth calls him “dotard” on the grounds that “it is impossible to repeat this long phrase” (translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.140 in the first instance as “a certain man who had entered the Order in his old age”), and that *vuḍḍhapabbajita* “connotes contempt, and even censure”, thus justifying the translation “dotard”. At AN.iii.78 there are two not entirely disparate lists of things hard to attain by one gone forth in old age. But it would be against the whole spirit of Buddhism to censure or penalise anyone for not having entered the Order when young.

hundred and fifty monks”. Then that (man) who had gone forth when old spoke thus to his boys: “It is said, my dears,¹ that the Lord is coming to Ātumā together with a large Order of monks, with twelve hundred and fifty monks. Do you go, my dears, and taking a barber’s equipment,² tour from house to house for *nāti* measures of offerings,³ and collect salt and oil and husked rice and solid food, and when the Lord comes we will make him a conje drink.”

Kd.6.37.3

“Very well, father,” and these boys, having answered him who had gone forth when old in assent, taking a barber’s equipment toured from house to house for *nāti* measures of offerings, collecting salt and oil and husked rice and solid food. Those people who, having seen these sweet-voiced, intelligent boys, but had not wanted to have (offerings) made, even they had them made, and having had them made, also gave much. So these boys collected much salt and oil and husked rice and solid food.

Kd.6.37.4

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Ātumā. The Lord stayed there in Ātumā in the House with the threshing-floor.⁴ Then he who had gone forth when old having had a quantity of conje prepared towards the end of that night, brought it to the Lord, saying: “Lord, may the Lord accept conje from me.” Now Truth-finders (sometimes) ask knowing,⁵ and knowing (sometimes) do not ask; they ask, knowing the right time (to ask), and they do not ask, knowing the right time (when not to ask). Truthfinders ask about what belongs to the goal, not about what does not belong to the goal; there is bridge-breaking for Truth-finders in whatever does not belong to the goal. Awakened ones, Lords, question monks concerning two matters,

BD.4.346

Vin.1.250

¹ *tāta*, not *tātā*, although more than one person is being addressed, as pointed out at *Vinaya Texts* ii.141, n.1. But *tātā* at DN-a.599 where this passage is quoted. ² *khurabhaṇḍa*. That this is not “a barbers’ lad” (*Vinaya Texts* ii.141) is made clear at **Vin.2.134**: “I allow a razor (*khura*), a whetstone (*khurasilā*), a razor-case (*khurasipāṭikā*), a piece of felt (*namataka*), a whole barber’s equipment (*sabba khurabhaṇḍa*).” It is a shaving set, the outfit for a razor. ³ *nāḷiyāvāpakena*. Vin-a.1103 says *nāḷiyā ca āvāpakena ca*, and adds that *āvapaka* is also wherever they offer (*āvapanti*), deposit what is received. On *nāti* see **BD.1.12, n.2**; **BD.1.103, n.1**. ⁴ Reading here and in Siamese edition *bhūsāgāra*. Sinhalese edition and DN.ii.131 read *bhūsāgāra*, as also *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* under *Bhūsāgāra*, but *bhūsāgāra* under Ātumā; cf. *bhūsāgāra* at AN.i.241. DN-a.ii.569, AN-a.ii.355 explain by *khala-sālā*, hall with a threshing-floor, which I follow. *Bhūsāgāra* would mean the House with the Ornaments.

⁵ As at **Vin.1.59**, **Vin.1.158**, **Vin.3.6**, etc.

either: “Shall we preach *dhamma*?” or, “Shall we lay down a rule of training for disciples?” Then the Lord spoke thus to him who had gone forth when old:

“Where is this conje from, monk?” Then he who had gone forth when old told this matter to the Lord.

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: “It is not suitable, foolish man, it is not fitting, it is not becoming, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. For how can you, foolish man, one who has gone forth, cause (others) to take what is not allowable? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.6.37.5

“Monks, one who has gone forth should not make (others) take what is not allowable. Whoever should make (others) take (these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor, monks, should one who was formerly a barber carry about a barber’s equipment. Whoever should carry it about, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Then the Lord, having stayed at Ātumā for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvattḥī. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Sāvattḥī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time there was a great quantity of solid food that was fruit¹ at Sāvattḥī. Then it occurred to monks: “Now, what solid food that is fruit is allowed by the Lord, what is not allowed?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, all solid food that is fruit.”

Kd.6.38.1

BD.4.347

Now at that time seeds belonging to an Order were sown on ground belonging to an individual, and seeds belonging to an individual were sown on ground belonging to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “When, monks, seeds belonging to an Order are sown on ground belonging

Kd.6.39.1

¹ *phalakhādaniya*. Cf. above, Kd.6.17.8, Kd.6.17.9; Kd.6.21.1, and cf. *piṭṭhakhādaniya* and note at above Kd.6.36.6.

to an individual, having given back a portion,¹ (the rest) may be made use of. When seeds belonging to an individual are sown on ground belonging to an Order, having given back a portion, (the rest) may be made use of.”

ON THE FOUR GREAT REFERENCES

Kd.6.40.1

Now at that time scruples arose in the monks as to this and that occasion, thinking: “Now, what is permitted by the Lord? What is not permitted?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Whatever, monks, has not been objected to by me, saying: ‘This is not allowable’, if it fits in with what is not allowable, if it goes against what is allowable, that is not allowable to you. Whatever, monks, has not been objected to by me, saying: ‘This is not allowable’, if it fits in with what is allowable, if it goes against what is not allowable, that is allowable to you. And whatever, monks, has not been permitted by me, saying: ‘This is allowable’, if it fits in with what is not allowable, if it goes against what is allowable, that is not allowable to you. Whatever, monks, has not been permitted by me, saying: ‘This is allowable if it fits in with what is allowable, if it goes against what is not allowable, that is allowable to you.”

Vin.1.251

Kd.6.40.2

BD.4.348

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, is (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night² allowable with (food that may be eaten) during a short period,³ or it is not allowable? Now, is (food that may be eaten) during seven days⁴ allowable with (food that may be eaten) during a short period or is it not allowable? Now, is (food that may be eaten) during life⁵ allowable with (food that may be eaten) during a short period or is it not allowable? Now, is (food that may be eaten) during seven days allowable with (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night or is it not allowable? Now, is (food that may be eaten) during life allowable with (food that may be

¹ *bhāgaṃ datvā*. There is no justification for *Vinaya Texts* ii.143 “half the produce, O bhikkhus, you may have”. Vin-a.1103 says “having given a portion that is a tenth. This, they say, is an old practice in India, therefore having made ten shares, one share should be given to the owners of the ground”. So presumably if the Order is the owner it gets one share. ² *yāmakālika*, see [BD.2.330, n.1](#). These “foods” really refer to medicines. ³ *yāvakālika*, see [BD.2.330, n.1](#).

⁴ *sattāhakālika*, see [BD.2.330, n.2](#). ⁵ *yāvajīvika*, see [BD.2.330, n.3](#).

eaten) during a watch of the night or is it not allowable? Now, is (food that may be eaten) during life allowable with (food that may be eaten) during seven days or is it not allowable?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.6.40.3

He said: “Monks, (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night with (food that may be eaten) during a short period is allowable at the right time¹ on the day it is accepted; it is not allowable at the wrong time.² Monks, (food that may be eaten) during seven days with (food that may be eaten) during a short period is allowable at the right time on the day it is accepted; it is not allowable at the wrong time. Monks, (food that may be eaten) during life with (food that may be eaten) during a short period is allowable at the right time on the day it is accepted; it is not allowable at the wrong time. Monks, (food that may be eaten) during seven days with (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night is allowable in a watch of the night on the day it is accepted; it is not allowable after the watch of the night is ended. Monks, (food that may be eaten) during life with (food that may be eaten) during a watch of the night is allowable in a watch of the night on the day it is accepted; it is not allowable after the watch of the night is ended. Monks, (food that may be eaten) during life with (food that may be eaten) during seven days is allowable for (the length of) seven days; it is not allowable after the seven days are ended.”

BD.4.349

The Section on Medicines: the Sixth

IN THIS SECTION THE ITEMS ARE ONE HUNDRED AND SIX ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

In the autumn, also at the wrong time, tallow, roots,
 (they had need of) what was pounded off,
 of astringent decoctions, leaves,
 fruits, resin, salt, and dung, /
 chunam, sifter,³ and flesh, ointment, powder, ointment-box,
 all kinds,⁴ not covered,⁵ sticks, case for sticks, /
 A bag, strap at the edge, thread, oil for the head, and the nose,
 nose-spoon, and steam, a pipe, and a lid, a bag,⁶ /
 Decoction of oil, and strong drink,
 too much, an ointment, a vessel,

¹ Before noon from sunrise. ² After noon until sunrise, [Vin.4.86](#), [Vin.4.166](#). ³ Reading here *cālinī*, above *cālanī*. ⁴ Reading here *ucca-parutā*. ⁵ Reading here *ucca-parutā*. ⁶ Reading *thavi*. Sinhalese edition reads *yamakattavā*, double bag [Kd.6.13.2](#).

sweating, and all kinds of herbs,
 thereupon the great (sweating), hemp-water, /
 Water-vat, and blood, a horn, foot-unguent, foot-salve, lancet,
 and astringent (water), sesamum paste, a compress, /
 Vin.1.252 Piece of cloth, and mustard-powder, fumigation, and crystal,
 oil for the sore, linen bandage,
 and the irregular things, and what is (formally) received, /
 A (decoction of) dung, is making,
 and mud turned up by the plough,
 lye, urine and yellow myrobalan, perfumes, and a purgative,
 clarified, unprepared, prepared-unprepared, /
 Meat-broth, (mountain-) slope,
 monastery attendant, and for seven days,¹
 sugar, kidney-bean, sour gruel,
 cooking for oneself, one may cook again,² /
 He allowed it however,³ short of almsfood,
 and fruit, sesamum, solid food,
 before a meal, fever, and discharged, an ulcer, /
 And clyster-treatment and Suppi(yā),⁴ and indeed human flesh,
 BD.4.350 elephants, horses, and a dog, a snake, lion, tiger, leopard, /
 And the flesh of bears (and) hyenas, and a turn, and conjei,
 a certain one who was young, sugar, Sunidha, rest-house, /
 And Ambapālī, the Licchavis, the Ganges,
 the Koṭi(gāma) talk on truths,
 killed on purpose,
 he objected when (they were) well off again for food, /
 A cloud, Yasoja, and Meṇḍaka, products of the cow,
 and provisions for a journey,
 Keni(ya), mango, rose-apple, plantain,
 banana, honey, grape, edible lotus root, /
 Phārusakas, vegetables, flour, the barber at Ātumā,
 fruit and seed at Sāvattthī,
 Vin.1.253 and On what occasion?, as to the right time.

¹ Sinhalese edition *ārāmā satā pañcahi*, referring to the five hundred monastery attendants of *Kd.6.15.4*. ² *punā pace*, replacing the *punapakā* of *Kd.6.17.6*. ³ *punānuññāsi*. ⁴ Reading Suppi, as below Koti and Keni.

7. KAṬHINA

ALLOWANCE FOR KAṬHINA

At that time the awakened one, the Lord was staying at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time as many as thirty monks of Pāvā,¹ all forest-dwellers, all almsmen, all wearers of rag-robles,² all wearers of the three robes,³ going to Sāvattḥī so as to see the Lord when the beginning of the rains was approaching, were unable to reach Sāvattḥī for the beginning of the rains; they entered upon the rains on the way, at Sāketa. They spent the rains in a state of longing,⁴ thinking: "The Lord is

Kd.7.1.1
BD.4.351

¹ *tīṃsamattā Pāṭṭheyyakā bhikkhū*, mentioned also at SN.ii.187, where called Paveyyakā, and also described as *sabbe sasāmyojanā*, all (still) with the fetters; it is said that they all became freed from the *āsavas* (cankers) with no substrate remaining after the Lord had given them a discourse on the incalculability of the beginning of this faring-on, *anamataggāyaṃ saṃsāro*, which is part of the *Anamatagga-sāmyutta*. This event is referred to at Vin-a.1106; and also at Dh-p-a.ii.32 (called *anamataggadhamadesanā*), from which it appears that Dh-p.65 was uttered in connection with these monks. See also above, [BD.4.31](#), [n.2](#) for their identification with the *tīṃsamattā bhaddavaggiyā sahāyakā*.

Dictionary of Pali Proper Names takes Pāveyyakā (also a variant reading at [Vin.1.253](#)) as the right one and says that it is the "name given to the inhabitants of Pāvā". Pāvā is mentioned at e.g. DN.ii.162. At DN.iii.207 it is called a city of the Mallas, the people being referred to as Pāveyyakā Mallā. According to Vin-a.1105 Pāṭṭheyya is a kingdom situated to the west of the Kosala country. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.146, n. ² Cf. [Vin.3.230ff.](#), where it is specifically stated in an "allowance" ascribed to Gotama that the first three of these types of monks may, if they so wish, come up to see the Lord. Cf. also MN.iii.40ff. These three, combined with the monk who is *tecīvariko*, wearer of the three robes, occur at MN.i.214; and cf. AN.i.38. These four practices (*aṅga*) are explained in much detail at Vism.59ff. At AN.ii.26 it is said that "among robes, rag-robles are trifling, easy to get, blameless", quoted at Vism.64. ³ Prescribed at [Bu-NP.1](#). The three robes would be made of rags. See also [Kd.8.12](#). ⁴ *ukkaṇṭhitarūpā*.

staying close¹ to us, six *yojanas* from here, but we are not getting a chance to see the Lord.”

BD.4.352 Then these monks having, after the lapse of three months, kept the rains, after the Invitation² had been carried out, while the god was raining, while waters were gathering, while swamps were forming,³ with drenched robes and in a state of weariness approached Sāvattthī, the Jeta Grove, Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery, the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, Kd.7.1.2 they sat down at a respectful distance.

Now it is the custom⁴ for awakened ones, for Lords to exchange friendly greetings with in-coming monks. So the Lord spoke thus to these monks:

“I hope, monks, that things went well with you, I hope you had enough to support life, I hope that, in unity, being on friendly terms and harmonious, you spent a comfortable rainy season and did not go short of almsfood?”

Vin.1.254 “Things did go well with us, Lord, we had enough to support life, Lord, and in unity we, Lord, being on friendly terms and harmonious, spent the rainy season⁵ and did not go short of almsfood. Here are we, Lord, as many as thirty monks of Pāvā, coming to Sāvattthī so as to see the Lord, (but) when the beginning of the rains was approaching, we were unable to reach Sāvattthī for the beginning of the rains; we entered on the rains on the way, at Sāketa. We spent the rains, Lord, in a state of longing for you, thinking: Kd.7.1.3 ‘The Lord is staying close to us, six *yojanas* from here, but we are not getting a chance to see the Lord.’ Then we, Lord, having, after the lapse of three months, kept the rains, and after the Invitation had been carried out, while the god was raining, while waters were gathering, while swamps were forming, with drenched robes and in a state of weariness came along on the journey.”

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given dhamma-talk⁶ addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to make up *kaṭhina*-cloth⁷ when monks have com-

¹ *āsanneva*, right near. ² *Pavāraṇā*; see Kd.4; also BD.1.283, n.5; GS.iv.183, n.3.

³ *udakacikkhale*. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.88 (BD.1.154). ⁵ Vin-a.1106 says that on account of their longing to see the Lord, they did not say that they had spent a “comfortable” rainy season.

⁶ According to Vin-a.1106 this was the talk on the incalculability of the beginning of this faring-on, see above, BD.4.351, n.1. ⁷ *kaṭhinaṃ attharituṃ*, i.e. the formal or ceremonial making of the *kaṭhina*-cloth, given by the laity, into robes. See BD.2.5, n.1; BD.2.26, n.3.

pleted the rains. Five (things) will be allowable to you, monks, when the *kaṭhina*-cloths have been made up: going (to families for alms) without having asked for permission,¹ walking (for alms) not taking the three robes,² a group-meal,³ as many robes as you require,⁴ and whatever robe-material accrues⁵ there, that will be for them.⁶ These five (things) will be allowable to you, monks, when the *kaṭhina*-cloths have been made. And thus, monks, should *kaṭhina*-cloth be made:

BD.4.353

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This material for *kaṭhina*-cloth⁷ has accrued to the Order. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should give this material for *kaṭhina*-cloth to the monk so and so for making *kaṭhina*-cloth.⁸ This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to

Kd.7.1.4

¹ *anāmantacāra*. Vin-a.1106 says that “so long as the *kaṭhina* privileges are not removed, it is allowable to go (to families for alms) *anāmantetvā*”, i.e. not having asked for permission, “and it will be no offence in regard to the *Cārittasiṅghapada*”, i.e. Bu-Pc.46. In this *Pācittiya*, if a monk, although invited, *nimantita*, but not having asked (for permission, *anāpucchā*) if a monk be there, should call upon families, except at a right time, there is a *Pācittiya* offence. One of the right times is the time of making robes, although the making up of the *kaṭhina*-cloth is not specifically mentioned in this *Pācittiya* rule. *Vinaya Texts* ii.150, n.1 says that *āmanteti* must be equal to *āpucchati*; while *Critical Pali Dictionary*, under *anāmantacāra*, refers to Vin.4.100, *santaṃ bhikkhūṃ anāpucchā*. The Sanskrit Dictionaries give “invitation” and “interrogation” among the meanings of *āmantraṇa*. The word occurs at AN.iii.259; AN-a.iii.330 quotes Vin.4.100. ² *asamādānacāra*. Vin-a.1107 says “walking not taking with one the three robes, *ticīvaraṃ asamādāya*, the meaning is that it will be allowable to be away, separated from a robe”. This therefore is a relaxation of Bu-NP.2. At Vin.1.298 it is also said that an outer cloak may be laid aside when the *kaṭhina* cloth has been made. ³ *gaṇabhojana*; thus a relaxation of Bu-Pc.32, although as the formulation of this rule developed, one of the exceptions to its general terms came to be the legality of eating a group-meal at the time of making robes. ⁴ *yāvadatthacīvaraṃ*. Vin-a.1107 says that as many robes as are required will be allowable as long as they are not allotted, not assigned. Cf. Bu-NP.1 where it is said that an extra robe may be worn for at most ten days when the *kaṭhina* privileges have been removed and the robes settled. “Till that has taken place, a Bhikkhu may use (temporarily, and without actually appropriating them) as many robes as he likes” (*Vinaya Texts* ii.151, n.3. q.v.). According to Vism.64f. the strict wearer of the three robes, *tecīvarika*, should not accept a fourth robe, which, to less ascetic monks, would be of use when washing and dyeing the set of three robes. ⁵ *cīvaruppāda*. ⁶ *nesaṃ bhavissati*. Vin-a.1107 says that this may be the robe of a dead monk, or a gift to the Order, or a robe that accrues to the Order in any way. ⁷ *kaṭhinadussa*. ⁸ Vin-a.1109 says that neither a *saṅgha*, Order, nor a *gaṇa*, group, makes the *kaṭhina* cloth, but an individual.

me. This material for *kaṭhina*-cloth has accrued to the Order. The Order is giving this material for *kaṭhina*-cloth to the monk so and so for making *kaṭhina*-cloth. If the giving of this material for *kaṭhina*-cloth to the monk so and so for making *kaṭhina*-cloth is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent. He to whom it is not pleasing should speak. This material for *kaṭhina*-cloth is given by the Order to the monk so and so for making *kaṭhina*-cloth. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this.’

BD.4.354

Kd.7.1.5

“Monks, *kaṭhina*-cloth becomes made thus, not made thus. And how, monks, does *kaṭhina*-cloth become not made? *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by marking it,¹ *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by washing it; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by calculating (the number of) robes (that it will make)²; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by cutting it; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by tacking it³; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by making the lengths⁴; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by marking with a piece of cloth⁵; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by strengthening the work⁶;

¹ *ullikhitamattena*, according to Vin-a.1110 for the purpose of measurement lengthwise and across. The monk marks it, *ullikhati*, with his nails, showing the measurement of each strip, *padesa*, so that he can recognise it. ² *cīvaravicāraṇamattena*, Vin-a.1110 saying, “let it be for five or seven nine or eleven”. ³ *bandhanamattena ti moghasuttakāropanamattena*, so Vin-a.1110, i.e. by putting false threads in (the material). *Vinaya Texts* ii.153 reading “when it has only been pieced together”, takes it that the false threads are “put in the cloth to show where it is to be cut or sewn”. But in the series of actions necessary for completing the making of *kaṭhina*-cloth “cutting”, or cutting out, has been done already. *Moghasuttaka*, allowed at Vin.2.116, is defined by Buddhaghosa in an exegesis on Kd.15.11.3, see Vin-a.1206. Cf. *bandhanamatta* above, BD.4.260, n.2; and also at Vin.2.135 although here it seems to have a different meaning. ⁴ *ovaṭṭikakaraṇamattena ti moghasuttakānusārena dīghasibbitamattena*, so Vin-a.1110, i.e. only by sewing a long (strip) by following the “false threads”. *Ovaṭṭika* allowed at Vin.1.290. ⁵ *kaṇḍūsakaraṇamattena ti muddhiyapaṭabandhanamattena*, so Vin-a.1110, i.e. only by putting on a piece of cloth as a sign. *Kaṇḍūsaka* allowed at Vin.1.290, on which Vin-a.1128 says *kaṇḍūsakaṃ vuccati muddikā*, a mark (or sign) (the disfigurement) is called *kaṇḍūsaka*. ⁶ *dalhikammakaraṇamattena*. This is apparently done by sewing the cloths, *cimilikā*, together, Vin-a.1110; *Vinaya Texts* ii.153 reading “when it has only been made strong (in the seams)”. *Dalhikamma* allowed at Vin.1.290.

kaṭhina-cloth does not become made only by making a braiding¹; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by making a binding²; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by patching³; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made only by dyeing the garment⁴; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made by insinuation⁵;

BD.4.355

¹ *anuvātakaraṇamattena*. It appears from Vin-a.1110 that the *anuvāta* was put along the back (of the cloth). See Vin.4.121 (=BD.2.409 q.v. n.7.) where the Commentary, on the rule for disfiguring a new robe says there is no offence if it is on a braiding, *anuvāta*. *Anuvāta* allowed at Vin.2.116. ² *paribhaṇḍakaraṇamattena*. The *paribhaṇḍa* appears to have been put inside the cloth. Again see Vin.4.121, and BD.2.409, n.8. Allowed at Vin.2.116. ³ *ovaddheyyakaraṇamattena*. Vin-a.1111 says, “only by putting it on the in-coming cloth. Or taking cloth from a *kaṭhina*-robe, only by putting the cloth on another *kaṭhina*-robe”. The variant reading for this last is *akaṭhinacīvara*, what is not *kaṭhina*-cloth. The whole meaning is obscure. It perhaps refers to the *saṅghāṭī*, the outer cloak, which had to be made of double cloth. On the other hand *ovaddheyya* may mean “patching”. ⁴ *kambalamaddanamattena*. *Kambala*, usually a garment or blanket made of wool, is allowed at Vin.1.281. But the *kaṭhina* material was of cotton cloth. *Maddana* too usually means crushing or kneading. But Vin-a.1111 says “throwing it once into the dye, *rajana*, for the colour of ivory, for the colour of withered leaves”. Monks’ robes are of the colour of old ivory, and russets, yellows, browns and reds. ⁵ *nimittakatena*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives for *nimittam karoti*, “to pick out the aim, to mark out”, and Childers “to drop a hint”. There is nothing in the Commentary to support the rendering given at *Vinaya Texts* ii.154, and the alternative suggestion put forward, *Vinaya Texts* ii.154, n.5 is more pertinent: “Or perhaps according to some commentators, when it has been decided to accept the gift as a *kaṭhina*, that is, when it has been decided that the cloth is of a suitable kind to make robes out of.” For Vin-a.1111, defining *nimittakatena*, says “I will make a *kaṭhina* (-robe) with this cloth (*dussena*)’, this is called *nimittakatena*. For it is called just this in the Parivāra” (see Vin.5.172 which defines *nimittakamma* as *nimittam karoti iminā dussena kaṭhinam attharissāmī ti*). “But” Vin-a.1111 continues, “in some commentaries it is said that he (i.e. the monk) says, “this cloth (or cloak, *sāṭaka*) is excellent, it is possible to make a *kaṭhina* (-robe) with this”; this means: having thus insinuated (dropped a hint, or made a sign, *nimittakammaṃ katvā*) as to getting it.” *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives for *a-nimittakata*, “of which no decision has been made”.

Vism.23=Vb.352 asks, “What here is *nemittakata*?” i.e. insinuation. The answer is (following translation at *Path of Purity*, i.27) “What to others is a sign, *nimitta*, making a sign, *nimittakamma*, a hint, *obhāsa*, giving a hint, roundabout talk, winding speech, *parikathā* (see next term in *Vinaya* text and next note) on the part of one of evil desires”, etc. Vism.28 explains *nimitta* and *nimittakamma* so as to leave no doubt that by them “hinting” or “insinuating” is meant. Cf. also Vb-a.483.

kaṭhina-cloth does not become made by roundabout talking¹; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made by its being temporary²; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made by postponement³; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made if it has to be abandoned⁴; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made if it is not made allowable⁵; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made if it is (made) except for the outer cloak⁶; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made if it is (made) except for the upper robe; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made if it is (made) except for the inner robe; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made unless five parts⁷ or more than five parts⁸ (of *kaṭhina*-cloth) are cut out, are hemmed

BD.4.356

Vin.1.255

¹ *parikathākatena*. Vin-a.1111 says “he ought to give *kaṭhina* cloth, the benefactor giving *kaṭhina*-cloth produces much merit”, thus is meant “by making *parikathā*”, roundabout talk. At Vism.23 = Vb.353 *parikathā* is included in definition of *nemittikata*, see previous note. It is defined at Vism.29 = Vb-a.484 as “speaking round and round until one gets what is wanted”. Vin.5.172 says “*parikathā* means that he makes roundabout talk, saying, ‘I will bring forth *kaṭhina*-cloth by this roundabout talk’”. *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives for *a-parikathākata*, not “obtained by speaking of its worth”. ² *kukkukatenā ti tāvakālikena*, Vin-a.1111. Vin.5.172 says that it is called a gift that is not appropriated. ³ *sannidhikatena*, so *Vinaya Texts* ii.154 and *Pali-English Dictionary* Vin.5.172 = Vin-a.1111 says that there are two “postponements” or “storings up”, *sannidhi*, that of *karaṇa*, doing or making, and that of *nicaya*, possessions. Vin-a.1111 further explains, “postponement of doing (or making) is not doing (or making) it today) putting the doing (or making) to one side; postponement of possessions means that the Order, receiving *kaṭhina*-cloth today, gives it (to the monks) the next day”. *Sannidhikata* occurs at Vin.2.270 in reference to food. ⁴ *nissaggiyena*. Vin.5.172 = Vin-a.1111 saying “while it is being made the dawn breaks”. All the various processes in the making of the *kaṭhina* robes had to be carried out on one and the same day. ⁵ *akappakatena*. Cf. Bu-Pc.58, where a new robe has to be disfigured so that the owner can identify it. The three modes of disfigurement consisted in applying some kind of smudge (*bindu*) to the robe. Cf. BD.2.409, n.5, and Vin-a.1111 *anādinmakappabindunā*, by not giving the smudge (that makes the robe) allowable. ⁶ *aññatra saṅghāṭiya*, if the outer cloak is lacking, not finished. ⁷ Cf. Vin.1.287 where each of the three robes of a monk was allowed to be worn *chinnaka*, cut up into pieces to resemble the divisions of a paddy field; and Vin.1.297 where it is said that one of the three robes might be worn *acchinnaka*, not cut up. Vin-a.1111 says that five or more parts are to be made by taking pieces, showing *mahāmaṇḍala-aḍḍhamaṇḍala*, i.e. either circular or semi-circular seams (see *Critical Pali Dictionary* under *aḍḍhamaṇḍala*) or “the greater circles and the lesser circles” (see *Vinaya Texts* ii.209 and Vin-a.1127), or “the seams and the short seams” (cf. Vin.1.287). Vin-a.1111 continues, “thus it (the robe) comes to be made with seams (or circles); setting that to one side there ought not to be another that is not cut up or that is in (only) two, three or four pieces”. ⁸ *atirekapañcaka*, *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives “more than one of the five parts”.

together¹ on that same day; *kaṭhina*-cloth does not become made unless the making is by an individual.² And even if *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be quite properly made, but if no one gives thanks for it standing outside the boundary,³ thus also *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be not made. And thus, monks, does *kaṭhina*-cloth come to be not made.

“And how, monks, does *kaṭhina*-cloth come to be made? *Kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made when it is unsoiled⁴; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made when what is allowable is unsoiled⁵; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made when it is (made) out of pieces of cloth⁶; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made when it is (made) out of rag-robres⁷; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made when it is (made) out of (bits picked up near) a shop⁸; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if there is no insinuation; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if there is no roundabout talking; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if it is not temporary; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if there is no postponement; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if it has not to be abandoned; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if it is made allowable; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if there is the outer cloak; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if there is the upper robe; *kaṭhina*-cloth

Kd.7.1.6

BD.4.357

¹ *samaṇḍalikatena*, see last note but one. ² *aññatra puggalassa atthārā*. Vin-a.1111 says “setting to one side the making by an individual, it does not become made because of another making by either an Order or a group”. It seems that each monk must make up the *kaṭhina* cloth distributed to him by the Order, and not rely upon the Order or a group to do so for him; see above Kd.7.1.4 and cf. Vin-a.1109. ³ *nissīmaṭṭho anumodati*. Vin-a.1111 merely says, “if he (or, one) gives thanks standing, *ṭhito*, outside, *bahu*, the boundary of the precincts” (i.e. of the residence where the work is being done). *Anumodati* more likely refers to a monk thanking the Order than to an Order thanking the donors of the *kaṭhina*-cloth, for see Kd.7.1.4 where the Order gives the monks the material for making into *kaṭhina*-cloth. ⁴ *ahatena*, which Vin-a.1111 explains by *aparibhuttana*, not used. ⁵ *ahatakappena*. Vin-a.1111 says “by washing it once or twice (so as to make it) as though unsoiled”. ⁶ *pilotikāya*, which Vin-a.1111 explains by *hatavattthakasāṭakena*, out of a cloak or garment which are soiled; variant reading *gatavatthukasāṭakena*. ⁷ Vin-a.1112 says “when rag-robres have accrued in twenty-three fields”; the idea being that a monk must wander about in order to acquire his rags. Vin-a., quoting another commentary, says that the meaning there is that when a monk who is a rag-robe wearer is touring for alms and rags, *colaka*, then (*kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made) when the robe is made up from the rags received. ⁸ *pāpaṇikena*. Vin-a.1112 saying “if taking pieces of cloth, *pilotika*, dropped at the door of a shop, he gives them for *kaṭhina*-cloth, the meaning is because of this”. Cf. Vin-a.1128, *pāpaṇike ti antarāpaṇato patitapilotikacivare*, robes of piles of cloth taken amidst a shop. At Vism.62, *pāpaṇika*, “shop-rag” is included under *paṃsukūla*, rag-robres.

comes to be made if there is the inner robe; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if five parts or more than five parts are cut out, are hemmed together on that same day; *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be made if the making is by an individual. And if *kaṭhina*-cloth comes to be quite properly made, and if one gives thanks for it standing on the boundary, *kaṭhina*-cloth thus also comes to be made. And thus, monks, does *kaṭhina*-cloth come to be made.

Kd.7.1.7

BD.4.358

“And how, monks, do the *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed¹? Monks, there are these eight grounds² for the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges): that depending on (a monk) going away; that depending on (his robe) being settled³; that depending on his resolves⁴ (not to have it made up and not to come back); that depending on (the robe) being lost; that depending on his hearing (of the general removal of the privileges in the residence to which he has gone); (that depending on) the disappointment of his expectation⁵ (that a special gift of a robe would be made to him); that depending on his having crossed the boundary⁶; (that depending on) the removal (of the *kaṭhina* privileges) together with (those of the other monks)”.⁷

SEVEN ON BRINGING

Kd.7.2.1

“A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking a robe that is made up,¹ goes away, thinking: “I will not come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his going away.² A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material³ goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary,⁴ it occurs to him,⁵ “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

BD.4.359

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will not get this robe-material made up nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina*

¹ *ubbhataṃ kaṭhinam*. See Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3, and BD.2.5, n.3; BD.2.6, n.5; BD.2.13, n.2.

² *mātikā*, channels, headings. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.157 for these eight grounds for the removal of the five *kaṭhina* privileges being “closely connected” with the description in Kd.7.13 of the two so-called *palibodhas*. “*Palibodha* seems to mean the continued existence of a claim on the Bhikkhu’s side to a share in the distribution of the *kaṭhina*”. There are in this connection two *palibodhas*, that concerned with the monk’s residence, *āvāsa*, and that concerned with his robes, *cīvara*. The *mātikā* are exemplified in the following stories. See also Vin.5.177 and BD.2.5, n.3; BD.2.6, n.5. ³ *niṭṭhāna*. Cf. *niṭṭhita*, “settled”, BD.2.6. ⁴ *sanniṭṭhāna*.

Word occurs at Ja.1187, Ja.iv.167 + *katvā*. ⁵ *āsāvachedikā*. Cf. BD.2.6, n.4. ⁶ I.e. of the residence to which *kaṭhina*-cloth had been given, and where he should have made up his portion. ⁷ Editors of *Vinaya Texts* ii.156, n.4 thinks that this section should have begun

“the new chapter”. I hold it to be correct as it is, for with it cease the words ascribed to Gotama. The stories that follow, Kd.7.2–Kd.7.12 inclusive, are not supposed to have been told by him, but are exemplifications of the grounds for removing the *kaṭhina* privileges, and which some later person or persons apparently thought wise to incorporate in the “text”. ¹ *katacīvara*, a robe that is finished, ready to wear. Cf. BD.2.p.6, n.2. ² Vin-a.1112 says that in this removal of the *kaṭhina* privileges on the ground of his going away, first the robes-impediment, *cīvarapalibodha*, is cut off, afterwards the residence-impediment, *āvāsapalibodha*. For by going thus, the robes-impediment is cut off inside the boundary, the residence-impediment when he has crossed the boundary. See also Vin.5.177. ³ Vin-a.1112 calls this *akatacīvara*, a robe, or robe-material, that is not made up, not ready to wear.

⁴ Vin-a.1112, “when he has gone to another neighbouring residence”. ⁵ Ibid., “it occurs to him seeing comfortable lodgings or the happiness of friends. In this removal of the *kaṭhina* privileges on the ground of (the robes) being settled, first the residence-impediment is cut off, for he thinks, ‘I will not come back’; when no more than the thought has arisen, it is cut off”. Cf. Vin.5.178 *cīvare niṭṭhite cīvara-palibodho chijjati*, when the robes are settled the impediment to robes is cut off.

(privileges) are removed because of his resolves.¹

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (the robe-material) being lost.²

Kd.7.2.2

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up; when that robe has been made up,³ he hears: “The *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed in this residence.” That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his hearing (this news).⁴

Vin.1.256

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up; when that robe has been made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back”, spends the time outside (the boundary) until the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his having crossed the boundary.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up; when that robe is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back”, (his return) coincides with⁵ the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.⁶

BD.4.360

*Told are the seven cases on Taking.*⁷

¹ Vin-a.1113 says “because of the resolves, *sanniṭṭhānantike*, “I will not have this robe-material made up” and “I will not come back”, the two impediments are both cut off when no more than these thoughts have arisen”. Vin.5.178 says that they are cut off simultaneously.

² Vin-a.1113 says of this that first the residence-impediment is cut off; the robes-impediment is cut off when the robe is lost. Cf. Vin.5.178. ³ *katacivara*. ⁴ Vin-a.1113 says that first the robes-impediment is cut off; the residence-impediment is cut off with his hearing (the news). Cf. Vin.5.178. ⁵ *sambhuṇāti*. ⁶ This must mean a general removal for all monks resident within one *sīma*, boundary. ⁷ *ādāyasattakaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*.

SEVEN ON TAKING

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking with him¹ a robe that is made up, goes away, thinking, “I will not come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his going away ...²

Told are the seven cases on Taking with him.

Vin.1.257

SIX ON BRINGING

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking a robe that is imperfectly executed,³ goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina*, (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled ... (=Kd.7.2; read taking a robe that is imperfectly executed *instead of* taking a robe) ... That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.

*Told are the six cases on Taking*⁴

SIX ON TAKING

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking with him a robe that is imperfectly executed, goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled ... (=Kd.7.3; read taking with him a robe that is imperfectly executed *instead of* taking with him a robe) ... That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with

BD.4.361

¹ *samādāya*. ² *Vinaya Texts* ii.160, n.1 says, “This chapter is word for word identical with Chapter 2: only instead of ‘takes’ (*ādāya*) read ‘takes with him’ (*samādāya*). We cannot say what different meanings these two words are intended to convey”. ³ *vippakatacīvara*. Cf. *vippakata* at [Vin.3.155](#), [Vin.3.225](#), [Vin.3.227](#), [Vin.3.229](#). ⁴ “Six of the seven cases specified in [Kd.7.2](#) (with the exception of the first of the seven) ... The first case is necessarily omitted, because it is essential to that case, that the Bhikkhu going away takes with him a robe ready for wear”, so *Vinaya Texts*, ii.160, n.3.

(those of the other) monks.¹

The six cases on Taking with him

FIFTY ON BRINGING

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled ...²

Kd.7.6.2

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs, to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here”, and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (the robe) being lost.³

Vin.1.258

Kd.7.6.3

¹ Again the first case is omitted. If there is, on the monk’s part, no going away with a robe ready to wear, there is no ground for removing the *kaṭhina* privileges depending on “going away”. These can only be removed if the monk has gone away taking, or taking with him, a robe that is (already) made up, ready to wear. ² “This case is word for word identical with the second case in Kd.7.2.1. After it follow the third and fourth case of Kd.7.2.1, which it is unnecessary to print here again in full extent. The triad of these cases is repeated here in order to serve as a basis for the variations which are to follow in Kd.7.2.2, Kd.7.2.3,” so *Vinaya Texts* ii.161, n.1. ³ In these clauses, the monk, before he has got to the boundary and not after, as in Kd.7.6.1 thinks that he will not return.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away without having determined,¹ for it neither occurs to him that “I will come back” nor does it occur to him that “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled.

BD.4.362

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away without having determined, for it neither occurs to him that “I will come back”, nor does it occur to him that “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him: “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away without having determined, for it neither occurs to him that “I will come back”, nor does it occur to him that “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up; but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.²

Kd.7.6.4

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back.” When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come

¹ *anadhittitena*. ² The same as Kd.7.6.1 except for the words added in each case in Kd.7.6.3, “without having determined ... ‘I will not come back’.”

BD.4.363 back,” and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up. When that robe is made up he hears, “The *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed in this residence.” That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his hearing this news).¹

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up. When that robe is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back,” spends the time outside (the boundary) until the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his having crossed the boundary.²

Vin.1.259 A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he gets that robe-material made up. When that robe is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back,” (his return) coincides with the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.

FIFTY ON TAKING, ETC.

Kd.7.7.1 A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking with him robe-material, goes away ... it should be given in full thus, like the portion on “going away, taking” ... A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth is made, taking a robe that is imperfectly executed, goes away ... it should be given in full thus, like the portion on “going away, taking with him” ... A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth is made, taking with him a robe that is imperfectly executed, goes away ...

¹ =Kd.7.2.2. ² =Kd.7.2.2.

FIFTY ON TAKING WHAT IS IMPERFECTLY EXECUTED

(=Kd.7.6; read taking with him a robe that is imperfectly executed *instead* of taking robe-material) ... That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.¹

BD.4.364

Told is the Portion for Repeating on Taking

TWELVE CASES CONTRARY TO EXPECTATION

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe.² When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to³ that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe ... It occurs to him, "I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back". That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made ... It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (the robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe. When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back", and

¹ "The whole Chapter 6 is repeated here three times, the first time replacing the words 'takes a robe' by 'takes a robe with him' (cf. Chapter 3); the second time replacing 'takes a robe' by 'takes a robe not ready' (imperfectly executed) (cf. Chapter 4); and the third time with these two modifications combined (cf. Chapter 5)" — so *Vinaya Texts*, ii.162, n.2. ² see Bu-NP3, BD.2.26, and Bu-NP3, BD.2.27, definition of "expectation". ³ *payirupāsati*.

he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him.¹ That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.²

Kd.7.7.2
BD.4.365

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, "I will not come back". When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here", and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made ... It occurs to him, "I will not get this robe-material made up". That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made ... It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here", and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (the robe) being lost.

Vin.1.260

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, "I will not come back". When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here", and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

Kd.7.7.3

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, (but) without having determined, for it neither occurs to him, "I will come back", nor does it occur to him, "I will not come back". When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of

¹ *tassa sā cīvarāsā upacchijjati.* ² *āsāvachedikā.* Vin-a.1113 says that first the residence-impediment is cut off; the robes-impediment is cut off when the expectation of a robe is disappointed. Cf. above, BD.4.358, n.3.

(his robe) being settled.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made ... It occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

BD.4.366

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made ... It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (the robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, (but) without having determined, for it neither occurs to him, “I will come back”, nor does it occur to him, “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him, “I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back”, and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

*Told are the twelve cases on Contrary to Expectation.*¹

TWELVE CASES IN ACCORDANCE WITH EXPECTATION

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one in accordance with his expectation, he does not obtain one contrary to his expectation. It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... It occurs to him, “I will not have this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

¹ *anasādoḷāsakaṃ niṭṭhitam.*

A monk ... It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

BD.4.367

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, "I will come back". When he has gone outside the boundary it occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

Kd.7.9.2

Vin.1.261

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, "I will come back". When he has gone outside the boundary he hears that "In this residence the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed". It occurs to him, "Inasmuch as in this residence the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed, I will attend to this expectation of a robe here", and he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one in accordance with his expectation, he does not obtain one contrary to his expectation. It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... It occurs to him, "I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back". That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, "I will come back" ... It occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back", and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

Kd.7.9.3

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expect-

tation of a robe, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one in accordance with his expectation, he does not obtain one contrary to his expectation. He gets that robe-material made up; when that robe is made up, he hears, “The *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed in this residence”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his hearing (this news).

BD.4.368

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him, “I will attend to this expectation of a robe, I will not come back”, and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary, he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one in accordance with his expectation, he does not obtain one contrary to his expectation. He gets that robe-material made up; when that robe is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back”, spends the time outside (the boundary) until the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his having crossed the boundary.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away with the expectation of a robe, thinking, “I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary he attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one in accordance with his expectation, he does not obtain one contrary to his expectation. He gets that robe-material made up; when that robe is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back”, (his return) coincides with the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.

*Told are the six cases on Taking*¹

¹ “Six of the seven cases specified in [Kd.7.2](#) (with the exception of the first of the seven) ... The first case is necessarily omitted, because it is essential to that case, that the Bhikkhu going away takes with him a robe ready for wear”, so *Vinaya Texts*, ii.160, n.3.

TWELVE ON BUSINESS

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business. When he has gone outside the boundary there arises¹ the expectation of a robe. He attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being settled.

BD.4.369

A monk ... It occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business. When he has gone outside the boundary there arises the expectation of a robe. It occurs to him, “I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back”, and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

Kd.7.10.2

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business, thinking, “I will not come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary there arises the expectation of a robe. He attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... It occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolve.

A monk ... It occurs to him, “I will get this robe-material made up here”,

¹ *uppajjati*.

and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business, thinking, "I will not come back". When he has gone outside the boundary there arises the expectation of a robe. It occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here", and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

BD.4.370

Kd.7.10.3

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business, (but) without having determined, for it neither occurs to him, "I will come back", nor does it occur to him, "I will not come back". When he has gone outside the boundary there arises the expectation of a robe. He attends to that expectation of a robe; he obtains one contrary to his expectation, he does not obtain one in accordance with his expectation. It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... It occurs to him, "I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back". That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

Vin.1.263

A monk ... It occurs to him, "I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back", and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away on some business, (but) without having determined, for it neither occurs to him, "I will come back", nor does it occur to him, "I will not come back". When he has gone back outside the boundary there arises the expectation of a robe. It occurs to him, "I will attend to this expectation of a robe here, I will not come back", and he attends to that expectation of a robe, but that expectation of a robe is disappointed for him. That monk's *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of the disappointment of his expectation.

Told are the twelve cases on Business

NINE CASES ON WITHOUT COLLECTING

BD.4.371

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away, travelling to distant parts,¹ without collecting² his share of the robe-material. While he is thus travelling to distant parts, monks ask him, “Where have you, your reverence, spent the rains, and where is your share of the robe-material?”

He speaks thus, “I spent the rains in such and such a residence, and my share of the robe-material is there.”

These speak thus, “Go, your reverence, fetch that robe-material. We will make up that robe-material for you here.”

He, going to that residence, asks the monks: “Where, your reverences,³ is my-share of the robe-material?”

These speak thus: “This, your reverence, is your share of the robe-material. Where are you going?”

He speaks thus: “I am going to such and such a residence. The monks will make up the robe-material for me there.”

These speak thus: “No, your reverence, do not go; we will make up the robe-material for you here.”

It occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back,” and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

Kd.7.11.2

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away, travelling to distant parts without collecting his share of the robe-material ...

“This, your reverence, is your share of the robe-material.”

¹ *disaṅgamika*. Cf. Vin.1.119. ² *apacinayamāno*. Pali-English Dictionary, Critical Pali Dictionary, Vinaya Texts ii.166 all suggest “guarding his claim”, as from *apacināti*. It would seem however to be the negative of *pacinati*, “to take up, to collect”. The monk, according to the context, leaves his robe-material behind, he then goes away without gathering it up and taking it with him. It is true however that in going away he does not renounce his claim to his share of the robe-material. ³ This seems the only time that this monk uses a form of address, *āvuso*, in speaking to other monks.

He, taking that robe-material, goes to that residence. On the way (some monks ask him: “Your reverence, where are you going?”

BD.4.372

He speaks thus: “I am going to such and such a residence. The monks will make up the robe-material for me there.”

These speak thus: “No, your reverence, do not go; we will make up the robe-material for you here.”

It occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back,” and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

Vin.1.264

A monk ... It occurs to him: “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back.” That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... It occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back,” and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

Kd.7.11.3

A monk, after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, goes away, travelling to distant parts without collecting his share of the robe-material ...

“This, your reverence, is your share of the robe-material.”

He, taking the robe-material, goes to that residence; while he is going to that residence, it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... It occurs to him: “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back.” That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... It occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back”, and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

Told are the nine cases on Without collecting

FIVE ON LIVING IN COMFORT

BD.4.373

A monk, one who lives in comfort,¹ after *kaṭhina*-cloth has been made, taking robe-material, goes away, thinking, “I will go to such and such a residence; if there comes to be comfort for me there, I will stay, but if there does not come to be comfort for me, I will go to such and such a residence; if there comes to be comfort for me there, I will stay, but if there does not come to be comfort for me, I will go to such and such a residence; if there comes to be comfort for me there, I will stay, but if there does not come to be comfort for me, I will come back”. When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back,” and he gets that robe-material made up. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.

A monk ... When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him, “I will not get this robe-material made up, nor will I come back”. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his resolves.

A monk ... When he has gone outside the boundary, it occurs to him: “I will get this robe-material made up here, I will not come back,” and he gets that robe-material made up, but while that robe-material is being made up, it is lost. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robe) being lost.

A monk ... When he has gone outside the boundary, he has that robe-material made up; when that robe-material is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back”, spends the time outside (the boundary) until the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed. That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of his having crossed the boundary.

Vin.1.265

A monk ... When he has gone outside the boundary, he has that robe-material made up; when that robe-material is made up, he, thinking again and again, “I will come back (his return) coincides with the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). That monk’s *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed together with (those of the other) monks.

BD.4.374

¹ *phāsuvihārika*. “Intent on finding a comfortable place (to live in)” of *Vinaya Texts* ii.168, although justified by the context, ascribes both more and less to the compound, *phāsuvihārika*, than it actually contains. Cf. the jungle-dweller who, if he was thinking about *phāsuvihāra*, might live independently of guidance, at [Kd.1.73.4](#) (above [BD.4.118](#)).

Told are the five cases on Living in comfort

ON OBSTACLES AND NOT-OBSTACLES

“Monks, there are these two impediments,¹ these two non-impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* (privileges). And what, monks, are the two impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* (privileges)? The residence-impediment and the robes-impediment. And how, monks, does the residence-impediment come to be? Monks, in this case a monk who is either staying in or who is longing for that residence, goes away, thinking, ‘I will come back’.² Thus, monks, does the residence-impediment come to be. And how, monks, does the robes-impediment come to be? Monks, in this case, a monk’s robe-material comes to be not made up or it is imperfectly executed or the expectation of a robe is not fulfilled. Thus, monks, does the robes-impediment come to be. Monks, these are the two impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* (privileges).

Kd.7.13.2

¹ *palibodha*, obstruction, hindrance, obstacle, impediment, drawback. Ten *palibodhas* are enumerated at Kh-a.39, and explained in detail at Vism.90ff. But in its explanation of *āvās-apalibodha*, the first on the list, the Visuddhimagga makes no reference to *kaṭhina*; *cīvara-palibodha* does not occur here or in Kh-a.

The idea of the *palibodhas* and *apalibodhas* is somewhat difficult to follow. After *kaṭhina*-cloth is made, five privileges are allowable to monks (Kd.7.1.3), and there are eight grounds for the removal of these privileges (Kd.7.1.7). But then, it seems, these eight grounds are in turn subject to the two impediments and the two non-impediments. That is to say, the *kaṭhina* privileges cannot be removed if there is present an impediment to the grounds for removing them, but only if there is no impediment to these grounds. Vin-a.1114 says, “Having shown the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges), now whatever are impediments are said to be cut off in regard to these *kaṭhina* (privileges).” See *Vinaya Texts* ii.149, n. and *Vinaya Texts* ii.157, n.2. ² The first of the grounds for removing the *kaṭhina* privileges is that depending on a monk having gone away. But here, although he goes away, he intends to come back. Thus the ground for removing the privilege meets with an obstruction.

Text here reads, *idha bhikkhave bhikkhu vassati vātasmiṃ āvāse sāpekkho vā pakkamati* (with variant reading *vesati*) which has led translator at *Vinaya Texts* ii.169 to render, “A Bhikkhu, O Bhikkhus, goes away (for a time), when it is raining or storming, with the intention of returning to that residence.” But Sinhalese edition 1933, ii.322 and Siamese edition both read, *idha bhikkhave bhikkhu vassāti vā tasmim āvāse sapekho vā pakkamati*, which I follow as making more sense.

“And what, monks, are the two non-impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* (privileges)? The residence-non-impediment and the robes-non-impediment. And how, monks, does the residence-non-impediment come to be? In this case, monks, a monk goes away from that residence because of giving up, because of renunciation, because of sacrifice, because of indifference, thinking, ‘I will not come back’.¹ Thus, monks, does the residence-non-impediment come to be. And how, monks, does the robes-non-impediment come to be? In this case, monks, a monk’s robe-material comes to be made up or it is lost or destroyed or burnt or the expectation of a robe is disappointed.² Thus, monks, does the robes-non-impediment come to be. These, monks, are the two non-impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* (privileges).”

The Section on kaṭhina³: the Seventh

IN THIS SECTION ARE TWELVE ITEMS, THE WORDS OF ABRIDGEMENT ARE ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN. THIS IS ITS KEY

Thirty monks of Pāvā stayed longing in Sāketa,
at the end of the rains they went
with drenched (robes) to see the Conqueror. /

This item of *kaṭhina*-cloth, and the five things called allowable.⁴

Without asking permission, nor taking three robes,
a joint-meal likewise, /

As much as is required, and one that accrues will be for the makers.

The motion, and just what is made and just what is not made. /

Marking, washing, and calculating, and cutting, tacking,
making lengths, using a piece of cloth, and strengthening, braiding, /

Binding, patching, dyeing, talk with hints,⁵ temporary,
postponement, abandonment,

not (made) if it is not allowable, but for these three, /

Unless five parts or more when they are cut out are hemmed together,

¹ As he does not intend to return there is no reason why his *kaṭhina* privileges should not be removed. His intention provides the non-impediment. ² These are no impediments to the grounds for removing the *kaṭhina* privileges. They may be removed, as we have seen, because a monk’s robe is made up, because he resolves not to have it made up, because it is lost, or because his expectation of a robe is disappointed. Cf. *Bu-NP.1*, definition of “when the robes are settled”, and see *BD.2.6*, *BD.2.15*. ³ *Kaṭhinakkhandhaka*. Cf. *Kaṭhinavagga*, *Vin.3.195-223*.

⁴ *kappiyan ti*; Sinhalese edition *kappissanti*, will be allowable. ⁵ *nimitta-kathā* here. It may be a composite word for *nimittakata* and *parikathākata*; otherwise the latter is not included in this part of the “key”, although it is mentioned lower down.

BD.4.375

Vin.1.266

BD.4.376

not (made) unless by an individual,
 if properly (made) he gives thanks standing outside the boundary: /
kaṭhina-cloth comes to be not made,
 thus it is taught by the awakened one.
 Unsoiled, when what is allowable (is unsoiled),
 pieces of cloth, rags, and bits near a shop, /
 Not insinuation, nor roundabout talking,
 not temporary and no postponement,
 not abandoned, made allowable,
 and inasmuch as it is for (a set of) three robes, /
 If five parts or more are cut out and hemmed together,
 if the making is by an individual,
 if properly (made) he gives thanks standing on the boundary: /
 Thus the making of *kaṭhina*-cloth.
 Eight grounds for removal:
 that depending on going away,
 on being settled, on resolve and on loss, /
 On hearing, on disappointment of an expectation,
 over the boundary,
 and the eighth is with the removal (of other monks').
 Taking a robe that is made up, he goes away, thinking,
 "I will not come back", /
 His *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed
 because of his going away.
 Taking robe-material he goes away,¹ when he is outside the boundary, he thinks, /
 "I will have it made up here,
 I will not come back";
 his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed because of (his robes) being settled.
 Taking it, when he is outside the boundary, he intends,
 thinking, "Neither that nor will I come back", /
 His *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed depending on that² of resolve.
 Taking robe-material he goes away, when he is outside the boundary, he thinks, /
 "I will have it made up here, I will not come back,"
 but while it is being made up, it is lost;
 his *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed depending on that of loss. /
 Taking it, he goes away, thinking, "I will come back",
 and has the robe-material made up outside,
 when the robe has been made up,
 he hears that the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed there; /
 His *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed
 depending on that of hearing.
 Taking it, he goes away, thinking, "I will come back",

BD.4.377

¹ *yāti*. ² *taṃ*, doubtless "ground" is to be understood.

and has the robe-material made up outside, /
 When the robe has been made up, (staying) outside
 he does not go back¹
 until the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges);
 his *kaṭhina* (privileges) become removed
 depending on that of having crossed the boundary. /
 Taking it, he goes away, thinking, “I will come back”,
 and has the robe-material made up outside,
 when the robe has been made up,
 thinking, “I will come back”,
 (his return) coincides² with the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges); /
 The removal of his *kaṭhina* (privileges) is because
 it occurs³ with (that of) the other monks.
 Taking and taking with him, the going away⁴ is seven times sevenfold. /
 There is no sixfold⁵ going away,
 (the robes) imperfectly executed depending on “going away”.
 Taking it, this arises, “I will have it made up
 when I am outside the boundary”; /
 Settled and resolves and loss, these three.
 Taking it, thinking, “I will not come back”,
 “I am making it up outside the boundary”; /
 Settled, then resolves, then loss, this is three (fold).
 Without having determined, for it does not (occur) to him,
 the threefold meaning below.⁶ /
 Taking it, he goes away, thinking, “I will come back”,
 “I am making it up outside the boundary”,
 thinking, “I will not come back”, he gets it made up;
 his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed
 because of (his robes) being settled. /
 Resolves and loss, hearing, having crossed the boundary,
 it may arise with (those of the other) monks;
 thus there is going away fifteen times. /
 Taking with him, imperfectly executed,
 taking it with him likewise again,
 these are four turns⁷ where all is fifteen-fold. /
 And contrary to expectation, in accordance with expectation,
 and business, these three.
 One should understand this from what has been said:⁸
 there are three that are each twelve (-fold). /

Vin.1.267
 BD.4.378

¹ *nāmeti*, cf. Snp.1143, *nāpenti* with variant reading *nāmenti*. ² *sambhoti*. ³ *jāyati*. ⁴ *gati*.

⁵ *chaccā*. Sinhalese edition *chaṭṭhe*. ⁶ Pali has “below”, referring to the leaves of the palm-leaf manuscripts, where we say “above”. ⁷ *vārā*, i.e. for recitation. ⁸ *Nayato*, perhaps “from the method”.

Here are nine on “without collecting”,
there is a set of five on comfort;
impediments, non-impediments;
the key is made from what has been said.

8. ROBES (CĪVARA)

THE STORY OF JĪVAKA

Kd.8.1.1
BD.4.379

At one time the awakened one, the Lord was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeling-place. Now at that time Vesālī was prosperous and flourishing, full of folk, thronged with people,¹ and it was well off for food; and there were seven thousand seven hundred and seven long houses,² and seven thousand seven hundred and seven gabled buildings, and seven thousand seven hundred and seven parks,³ and seven thousand seven hundred and seven lotus-tanks. There was the courtesan Ambapālī,⁴ beautiful, good to look upon, charming, she was possessed of the utmost beauty of complexion, was clever at dancing and singing and lute-playing, much visited by desirous people and she went for a night for fifty,⁵ and through her Vesālī shone forth all the more.

Kd.8.1.2

Then the urban council⁶ of Rājagaha went to Vesālī on some business. The urban council of Rājagaha saw that Vesālī was prosperous and flourishing, full of folk, thronged with people, and well off for food; and (they saw) the seven thousand seven hundred and seven long houses ... seven thousand seven hundred and seven lotus-tanks, and Ambapālī, the courtesan, beautiful, good to look upon, charming ... and (they saw) that through her Vesālī shone forth all the more. Then the urban council of Rājagaha, having transacted that business in Vesālī, came back again to Rājagaha;

¹ Cf. DN.i.211, DN.ii.146, MN.i.377, AN.iii.215. ² *pāsāda*, cf. BD.2.16, n.5. ³ *ārāma*, not "monasteries" here. See BD.2.2, n.2. ⁴ Here called Ambapālikā. Mentioned above, BD.4.315.

⁵ Vin-a.1114 says, "taking fifty *kahāpaṇas* she goes night by night." ⁶ *negama*. Vin-a.1114 calls this a *kuṭumbikagaṇa*, a group of leading men. Cf. *negama* at Vin.3.220.

they approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached they spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

“Sire, Vesālī is prosperous and flourishing ... and through her Vesālī shines forth all the more. It were good, sire, if we too might establish a courtesan.” “Well now, good sirs,¹ do find such a girl as you might establish as a courtesan.”

BD.4.380

Now at that time there was in Rājagaha a girl called Sālavatī, who was beautiful, good to look upon, charming, she was possessed of the utmost beauty of complexion. Then the urban council of Rājagaha established the girl, Sālavatī,² as courtesan. And the courtesan Sālavatī soon came to be clever at dancing and singing and lute-playing; she was much visited by desirous people, and she went for a night for the fee of a hundred.³ Then the courtesan Sālavatī soon became pregnant. Then it occurred to the courtesan Sālavatī: “Men do not like a pregnant woman. If anyone should find out concerning me that ‘The courtesan Sālavatī is pregnant’, all respect for me would dwindle. What now if I should make it known that I am ill?”

Kd.8.1.3

Vin.1.269

Then the courtesan Sālavatī enjoined the door-keeper, saying: “Good door-keeper, do not let any man come in, and if anyone asks for me, make it known that I am ill.”

“Very well, lady,” that door-keeper answered the courtesan Sālavatī in assent.

Kd.8.1.4

Then the courtesan Sālavatī when (the child of) her womb was mature, gave birth to a son. Then the courtesan Sālavatī enjoined a slave-woman, saying: “Now then, come along, having put this boy into a winnowing-basket,⁴ having taken him out, throw him away on a rubbish-heap.”⁵

“Very well, lady,” and that slave-woman having answered the courtesan Sālavatī in assent, having put that boy into a winnowing-basket, having taken him out, threw him away on a rubbish-heap.

¹ *bhaṇe*, a form of address sometimes used by kings to their subjects. ² Cf. Snp-a.i.244.

³ *paṭisatena*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.172 takes this to mean that she asked for a hundred *kaḥāpaṇas* a night which undoubtedly balances Ambapālī’s price of fifty *kaḥāpaṇas*, see Vin-a.1114. The Commentary in its exegesis of *paṭisatena* does not mention coinage or currency. *Paṭisatena* however probably means “for a hundred in return”, “against a hundred”. ⁴ Vin-a.1114 calls this *jiṇṇasuppa* an old winnowing-basket. ⁵ Cf. Dh-p-a.i.174.

BD.4.381 Now at that time the king's son, Abhaya¹ by name, going in the morning to the royal audience, saw that boy surrounded by crows; seeing this, he asked the people: "Good sirs, what is this that is surrounded by crows?"

"It is a boy, sire."

"Is he alive, good sirs?"

"He is alive, sire."

"Well now, good sirs, having brought that boy to our women's quarters, give him to foster-mothers to care for."

"Very well, sire," and these people having answered Abhaya, the king's son, in assent, having brought that boy to the women's quarters of Abhaya, the king's son, gave him to foster-mothers saying, "Care for him".

Kd.8.1.5 Because it was said of him, "He is alive",² they gave him the name of Jīvaka; because the prince³ caused him to be cared for, they gave him the name of Komārabhacca.⁴

And before long Jīvaka Komārabhacca attained to years of discretion. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached Abhaya, the king's son, and having approached he spoke thus to Abhaya, the king's son:

"Who, sire, is my mother? Who my father?"

"Not even I, good Jīvaka, know your mother, but I am your father, for I had you cared for."

Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

Kd.8.1.6 "Without a craft, it is not easy to depend upon these royal families. Suppose I were to learn a craft?⁵" Now at that time there lived a world-famed⁶ doctor at Taxilā.

¹ See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ² *jīvati*. ³ *kumāra*. ⁴ Meaning perhaps "the Prince-fed" (so *GS.i.24*). See note at *Vinaya Texts ii.174*, at end of which it is said, "We believe therefore, that this surname Komārabhacca really means 'master of the *kaumārabhṛiya* science', i.e. a part of the medical science which comprises the treatment of infants. Short account of his history given at *AN-a.i.398f*. At *DN-a.133*, where brief synopsis of his story also appears, he is called Komārabhaṇḍa, and at *Divyāvadāna 506ff*. Kumārabhūta. At *AN.i.26* he is called chief of lay followers who are liked by people. *MN.v* is addressed to him.

⁵ *Vin-a.1114* says that he thought of the doctor's craft for this is on the side of amity towards men and their welfare, whereas elephant-lore and horsemanship are connected with the injury of others. ⁶ *disāpāmokkha*. Word occurs at *Ja.i.166*.

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, without having asked (permission) of Abhaya, the king's son, set out for Taxilā; in course of time he arrived at Taxilā and that doctor; having approached, he spoke thus to that doctor:

Vin.1.270

“I want, teacher,¹ to train in the craft.”

BD.4.382

“Well then, good Jīvaka, train in it.”

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca learnt much and learnt it quickly, and he reflected upon it well, and he did not forget what he had learnt. Then at the end of seven years, it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “I am learning much and learning it quickly, and I am reflecting upon it well, and I do not forget what I have learnt, but after studying for seven years the end of this craft is not visible to me. When will the end of this craft be visible?”

Kd.8.1.7

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached that doctor; having approached he spoke thus to that doctor:

“I, teacher, am learning much and learning it quickly, and I am reflecting upon it well, and I do not forget what I have learnt, but after studying for seven years the end of this craft is not visible to me. When will the end of this craft be visible?”

“Well now, good Jīvaka, taking a spade, touring a *yojana* all round Taxilā, bring whatever you should see that is not medicinal.”

“Very well, teacher,” and Jīvaka Komārabhacca having answered that doctor in assent, taking a spade, touring a *yojana* all round Taxilā, did not see anything that was not medicinal. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached that doctor; having approached he spoke thus to that doctor:

“Teacher, while I was touring for a *yojana* all round Taxilā, I did not see anything that was not medicinal.”

“You are trained, good Jīvaka, this much is enough for a livelihood for you,” and he gave him trifling provisions for the journey.

Kd.8.1.8

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, taking those trifling provisions for the journey, set out for Rājagaha. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca's trifling provisions for the journey became used up on the way, at Sāketa. Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“These wilderness roads have little water, little food; it is not easy to go along them without provisions for the journey.² Suppose I were to look

¹ *ācariya*. ² Cf. Vin.1.244, above, BD.4.335-BD.4.336.

about for provisions for the journey?”

THE STORY OF THE MERCHANT'S WIFE

BD.4.383 Now at that time in Sāketa a merchant's wife had had a disease of the head for seven years. Many very great, world-famed doctors who had come had not been able to cure her; taking much gold,¹ they went away. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, entering Sāketa, asked the people: “Who, good sirs, is ill? Whom shall I attend?”²

Vin.1.271 “Teacher, this merchant's wife has had a disease of the head for seven years; go, teacher, attend this merchant's wife.”

Kd.8.1.9

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca went up to the dwelling of that householder, the merchant, and having gone up, he enjoined the door-keeper, saying: “Go, good door-keeper, say to the merchant's wife, ‘Lady, a doctor is come who wants to see you’”.

“Very well, teacher,” and that door-keeper having answered Jīvaka Komārabhacca in assent, approached that merchant's wife; having approached, he spoke thus to that merchant's wife: “Lady, a doctor is come who wants to see you.”

“What sort of a doctor is he, good door-keeper?”

“He is young, lady.”

“That's enough, good door-keeper. What could a young doctor do for me? Many very great, world-famed doctors who have come have not been able to cure me; they have gone away taking much gold.”

Kd.8.1.10

Then that door-keeper went up to Jīvaka Komārabhacca; having gone up, he spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “Teacher, the merchant's wife speaks thus: ‘That's enough, good door-keeper ... taking much gold’.”

“Go, good door-keeper, say to the merchant's wife: ‘Lady, the doctor speaks thus: Do not, lady, give anything beforehand; when you become well, then you may give what you like’.”

“Very well, teacher,” and that door-keeper having answered Jīvaka Komārabhacca in assent, went up to that merchant's wife; having gone up, he spoke

¹ *hirañña*. ² *tikicchati*, to treat medically, to cure.

thus to that merchant's wife: "Lady, the doctor speaks thus ... '... then you may give what you like'."

"Well then, good door-keeper, let the doctor come."

BD.4.384

"Very well, lady," and that door-keeper having answered the merchant's wife in assent, went up to Jīvaka Komārabhacca; having gone up, he spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

"The merchant's wife, teacher, summons you."

Kd.8.1.11

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca went up to that merchant's wife; having gone up, having observed her uneasiness,¹ he spoke thus to the merchant's wife:

"Lady, a handful² of ghee is wanted."

Then that merchant's wife had a handful of ghee given to Jīvaka Komārabhacca. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, cooking up that handful of ghee with various medicines, made that merchant's wife lie down on her back on a couch and gave it (to her) through the nose. Then that ghee, given through the nose, came out through the mouth. Then that merchant's wife, spitting it into a receptacle, enjoined a slave-woman, saying:

"Come, now, take up this ghee with cotton."³

Kd.8.1.12

Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: "It is astonishing how stingy this housewife⁴ is, in that she has this ghee, which ought to be thrown away, taken up with cotton; many of my very precious medicines went into it, and what kind of a fee⁵ will she give me?"

Vin.1.272

Then that merchant's wife, having observed Jīvaka Komārabhacca's uneasiness, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: "Teacher, why are you perturbed?"

"It occurred to me in this case: it is astonishing ... will she give me?"

"But, teacher, we householders know about this economy⁶; this ghee is excellent for the servants or workmen for rubbing their feet, or poured out into a lamp. Do not you, teacher, be perturbed, your fee will not be lacking."⁷

Kd.8.1.13

¹ *vikāra*. ² *pasata*, a small measure of capacity; explained at Vin-a.1116 as *ekahatthapūṭa*, what is contained in one hand. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.178, n.. ³ *picu*, which Vin-a.1116 explains by *kappāsapaṭala*, a cotton covering. ⁴ *gharaṇī*, see BD.2.203, n.1. ⁵ *deyyadhamma*. ⁶ *sarṇyama*. ⁷ *hāyati*, to waste away, to disappear, diminish, dwindle.

BD.4.385 Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca removed the merchant's wife's seven year old disease of the head by just the one treatment through the nose.¹ Then that merchant's wife, being well, gave four thousand² to Jīvaka Komārabhacca; her son, thinking, "My mother is well", gave four thousand; her daughter-in-law, thinking, "My mother-in-law is well", gave four thousand; the householder, the merchant, thinking, "My wife is well", gave four thousand and a slave and a slave-woman and a horse-chariot. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, taking these sixteen thousand and the slave and the slave-woman and the horse-chariot, set out for Rājagaha; in due course he approached Abhaya, the king's son, at Rājagaha; having approached he spoke thus to Abhaya, the king's son:

"Sire, this is for my first work: sixteen thousand and a slave and a slave-woman and a horse-chariot. May your highness³ accept it as a tribute for having had me cared for."⁴

"No, good Jīvaka, let it be for you yourself; but do build a dwelling in our palace⁵."

"Very well, sire," and Jīvaka Komārabhacca having answered Abhaya, the king's son, in assent, built a dwelling in the palace of Abhaya, the king's son.

THE STORY OF KING BIMBISĀRA

Kd.8.1.14

Now at that time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha came to suffer from a fistula; his outer garments were stained with blood. The queens, seeing this, made fun of him, saying: "Now the king is in his courses, the king is having a period, soon the king will give birth." On account of this the king became ashamed. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to Abhaya, the king's son:

"Good Abhaya, I have such a disease that my outer garments are stained with blood. The queens, seeing this, make fun of me, saying, '... the king

¹ *natthukamma*. Allowed to monks at [Vin.1.204](#). Cf. [Vin.3.83](#) and [BD.1.143, n.2](#). At [DN.i.12](#) called by some recluses and brahmins a low or worldly lore from which Gotama abstains.

² probably *kahāpaṇas*. ³ *deva*, masculine singular here. ⁴ *posāvanika*. ⁵ *antepura*, not women's quarters here.

will give birth'. Please, good Abhaya, do find a doctor such as could attend me."

"Sire, there is this Jīvaka of ours, a young doctor of high repute, he will attend your majesty."

"Very well, good Abhaya, command the doctor, Jīvaka, so that he shall attend me."

Vin.1.273

Then Abhaya, the king's son, commanded Jīvaka Komārabhacca, saying: "Go, good Jīvaka, attend the king."

Kd.8.1.15
BD.4.386

"Very well, sire," and Jīvaka Komārabhacca having answered Abhaya, the king's son, in assent, taking medicine under his nail, approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached, he spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

"Sire, let me see the disease."

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca removed King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha's fistula with just the one ointment. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, being well, having had five hundred women adorned with all kinds of ornaments, having made them take (these) off, having had them made into a pile, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: "Let all these ornaments of the five hundred women be yours, good Jīvaka."

"No, sire, may your majesty remember my office."

"Well then, good Jīvaka, may you tend me and the women¹ and the Order of monks with the awakened one at its head."

"Very well, sire," Jīvaka Komārabhacca answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent.

THE STORY OF THE MERCHANT OF RĀJAGAHA

Now at that time a merchant of Rājagaha had had a disease of the head for seven years. Many very great, world-famed doctors who had come had not been able to cure him. Taking much gold, they went away. Moreover he came to be given up by the doctors. Some doctors spoke thus: "The householder, the merchant will pass away² on the fifth day." Some doctors spoke thus:

Kd.8.1.16

¹ *itthāgāra*. ² *kālaṃ karissati*, will complete his time (here, in this birth), will die.

“The householder, the merchant will pass away on the seventh day.” Then it occurred to the urban council of Rājagaha: “This householder, the merchant is very useful to the king as well as to the urban council, but yet he has been given up by the doctors. Some doctors speak thus: ‘The householder, the merchant will pass away on the fifth day.’ Some doctors speak thus: ‘The householder, the merchant will pass away on the seventh day.’ Now, this Jīvaka, the king’s doctor, is young and of good repute. Suppose we should ask Jīvaka, the king’s doctor, to attend the householder, the merchant?”

Kd.8.1.17
BD.4.387

Then the urban council of Rājagaha approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached they spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

“Sire, this householder, the merchant is very useful to your majesty as well as to the citizens; but then he is given up by the doctors ... ‘... will die on the seventh day’. It were good if your majesty were to command Jīvaka, the doctor, to attend the householder, the merchant.”

Vin.1.274

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha commanded Jīvaka Komārabhacca, saying: “Go, good Jīvaka, attend the householder, the merchant.”

“Very well, sire,” and Jīvaka Komārabhacca having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, approached that householder, the merchant; having approached, having observed the uneasiness of the householder, the merchant, he spoke thus to the householder, the merchant:

“If I, householder, should make you well, what would be my fee?”

“All my property shall become yours, teacher, and I will be your slave.”

Kd.8.1.18

“Now, householder, are you able to lie down on one side for seven months?”

“I am able, teacher, to lie down on one side for seven months.”

“Now, householder, are you able to lie down on the other side for seven months?”

“I am able, teacher, to lie down on the other side for seven months.”

“Now, householder, are you able to lie down on your back for seven months?”

“I am able, teacher, to lie down on my back for seven months.”

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, having made the householder, the merchant lie down on a couch, having strapped him to the couch, having cut open

the skin of his head, having opened¹ a suture in the skull,² having drawn out two living creatures,³ showed them to the people, saying:

“Do you see, masters, these two living creatures, the one small, the other large? This large living creature was seen by those teachers who spoke thus: ‘The householder, the merchant will pass away on the fifth day’; on the fifth day it would have destroyed the brain of the householder, the merchant, and when the brain had been destroyed the householder, the merchant would have passed away. It was rightly seen by those teachers. This small living creature was seen by those teachers who spoke thus: ‘The householder, the merchant will pass away on the seventh day’; on the seventh day it would have destroyed the brain of the householder, the merchant, and when the brain had been destroyed the householder, the merchant would have passed away. It was rightly seen by those teachers.” And having closed the suture of the skull, having sewn up the skin of the head, he applied an ointment.

BD.4.388

Kd.8.1.19

Then the householder, the merchant, when seven days had passed, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“I am not able, teacher, to lie down on one side for seven months.”

“But did you not, householder, answer me in assent, saying: ‘I am able, teacher, to lie down on one side for seven months’?”

“It is true, teacher, that I answered thus, but I will die, I am not able to lie down on one side for seven months.”

“Well then, householder, you lie down on the other side for seven months.”

Then the householder, the merchant, when seven days had passed, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“I am not able, teacher, to lie down on the other side for seven months.”

“But did you not, householder, answer me in assent, saying: ‘I am able, teacher, to lie down on the other side for seven months’?”

“It is true, teacher, that I answered thus, but I will die, I am not able to lie down on the other side for seven months.”

“Well then, householder, you lie down on your back for seven months.”

Then the householder, the merchant, when seven days had passed, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“I am not able, teacher, to lie down on my back for seven months.”

Vin.1.275

¹ *vināmetvā*, Vin-a.1117 explains by *vivaritvā*. ² *sibbinī*, cf. Ja.vi.339, *sibbāni* (plural).

³ *pāṇaka*.

BD.4.389 “But did you not, householder, answer me in assent, saying: ‘I am able, teacher, to lie down on my back for seven months’?”

Kd.8.1.20 “It is true, teacher, that I answered thus, but I will die I am not able to lie down on my back for seven months.”

“If I, householder, had not spoken to you thus, you would not have lain down so long (as this); but I knew beforehand that the householder, the merchant would become well in three times seven days. Rise up, householder, you are well; find what is my fee.”

“All my property shall become yours, teacher, and I will be your slave.”

“No, householder, do not give me all your property and do not be my slave; give a hundred thousand to the king and a hundred thousand to me.”

Then the householder, the merchant, being well, gave a hundred thousand to the king and a hundred thousand to Jīvaka Komārabhacca.

THE STORY OF THE MERCHANT’S SON

Kd.8.1.21

Now at that time the son of a merchant of Benares,¹ while playing at turning somersaults,² came to suffer from a twist in the bowels, so that he did not properly digest the conje³ that he drank nor did he properly digest the food that he ate or relieve himself regularly. Because of this he became thin, wretched, his colour bad, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body.³ Then it occurred to the merchant of Benares:

“Now what kind of affliction has my son? He does not properly digest the conje that he drinks and he does not properly digest the food that he eats and he does not relieve himself regularly. Because of this he is thin, wretched, of a bad colour, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body. What now if I, having gone to Rājagaha, should ask the king for Jīvaka, the doctor, to attend my son?”

Then the merchant of Benares, having gone to Rājagaha, approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached, he spoke thus to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha:

¹ *Bārāṇaseyyaka*, an inhabitant of Benares, Bārāṇasī; on the analogy of *Pāveyyaka*, an inhabitant of Pāvā, see above, BD.4.31, n.2. ² *mokkhacikāya kiḷantassa*. Cf. BD.1.316, n.1, n.12.

³ stock-phrase.

“Sire, my son has this kind of affliction: he does not properly digest ... the veins showing all over his body. It were good if your majesty were to command Jivaka, the doctor, to attend my son.”

BD.4.390

Vin.1.276

Kd.8.1.22

Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha commanded Jivaka Komārabhacca, saying: “Go, good Jivaka, having gone to Benares, attend the son of the merchant of Benares.”

“Very well, sire,” and Jivaka Komārabhacca having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, having gone to Benares, approached the son of the merchant of Benares; having approached, having observed the uneasiness of the son of the merchant of Benares, having caused the people to be turned away, having surrounded him with a curtain,¹ having tied him to a post, having placed his wife in front (of him), having cut open the skin of his stomach, having drawn out the twisted bowel, showed it to his wife, saying: “See, this was your husband’s affliction; because of this he did not properly digest the conjei that he drank and did not properly digest the food that he ate and did not relieve himself regularly; because of this he is thin, wretched, his colour bad, yellowish, the veins showing all over his body.” Having straightened out the twisted bowel, having put back the bowel again, having sewn up the skin of the stomach, he applied an ointment. Then the son of the merchant of Benares soon became well. Then the merchant of Benares, saying: “My son is well,” gave sixteen thousand to Jivaka Komārabhacca. Then Jivaka Komārabhacca, taking those sixteen thousand, went back again to Rājagaha.

THE STORY OF KING PAJJOTA

Now at that time King Pajjota² came to be suffering from jaundice.³ Many very great, world-famed doctors, who had come had not been able to cure him; taking much gold, they went away. Then King Pajjota sent a messenger to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, saying: “I have this kind of disease; it would be good if your majesty were to command Jivaka, the doctor, so that

Kd.8.1.23

¹ *tirokaraṇī*, as at [Vin.2.152](#). ² King of Avantī, capital Ujjenī; cf. [Dhp-a.i.192](#).

³ *paṇḍurogābādha*. Cf. [Vin.1.206](#) where a monk had this disease. The cure “allowed” him was different from the one administered to Pajjota.

he should attend me.” Then King Bimbisāra of Magadha commanded Jīvaka Komārabhacca, saying: “Go, good Jīvaka, having gone to Ujjenī, attend King Pajjota.”

BD.4.391

“Very well, sire,” and Jīvaka Komārabhacca having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, having gone to Ujjenī, approached King Pajjota, and having approached, having observed his uneasiness, he spoke thus to King Pajjota:

Kd.8.1.24

“Sire, I will cook up some ghee, and your majesty will drink it.”

“No, good Jīvaka, do what you can to make (me) well without ghee; ghee is abhorrent to me, loathsome.” Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “The king’s disease is of such a kind that it is not possible to make him well without ghee. Suppose I should cook up the ghee (so that it has) the colour of an astringent decoction, the smell of an astringent decoction, the taste of an astringent decoction¹?”

Vin.1.277

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca cooked up the ghee with various medicines (so that it had) the colour of an astringent decoction, the smell of an astringent decoction, the taste of an astringent decoction. Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “When the king has drunk and digested the ghee, it will make him sick. This king is violent,² he might have me killed. Suppose I should ask (for permission to go away) beforehand?” Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached King Pajjota; having approached he spoke thus to King Pajjota:

Kd.8.1.25

“Sire, we doctors at such a moment³ as this are pulling up roots, gathering medicines. It were good if your majesty were to command at the stables⁴ and at the gateways, saying: ‘Let Jīvaka go out by means of whatever conveyance⁵

¹ *kasāvavaṇṇaṃ kasāvagandhaṃ kasāvarasaṃ*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.187 reads “so that it takes the colour, lie smell and the taste of an astringent decoction”. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests “of reddish-yellow colour, having a pungent smell, having an astringent taste.” Four kinds of *kasāva*, astringent decoctions, to be used as medicine in flavouring food, are allowed at [Vin.1.201](#), and *kasāvōdaka*, a watery astringent decoction, at [Vin.1.205](#). At [Vin.2.151](#) the *kasāva* allowed was an astringent liquid to be applied to the colouring matter given to walls so as to make the colouring stick on. ² *caṇḍa*. Pajjota’s full name was Caṇḍapajjota. ³ *muhutta* is a short period of time, its use here presumably implying that it was urgent for him to get away on his business. ⁴ *vāhanāgāra*, the room for the conveyances, mounts, vehicles or beasts of burden, so stables, coach house. ⁵ *vāhana*, mount.

he desires, let him go out by whatever gateway he desires, let him go out at whatever time he desires, let him come in at whatever time he desires’.” Then King Pajjota commanded at the stables and at the gateways, saying: “Let Jīvaka go out by means of whatever conveyance he desires, let him go out by whatever gateway he desires, let him go out at whatever time he desires, let him come in at whatever time he desires.”

BD.4.392

Now at that time King Pajjota had a she-elephant, called Bhaddavatikā, who could do fifty *yojanas*.¹ Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca offered the ghee to King Pajjota, saying: “Let your majesty drink an astringent decoction.” Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca having made King Pajjota drink the ghee, having gone to the elephant stable, hastened out of the city on the she-elephant, Bhaddavatikā.

Kd.8.1.26

Then King Pajjota, when he had drunk and digested the ghee, was sick. Then King Pajjota spoke thus to the people: “Good sirs, the wicked Jīvaka has made me drink ghee. Well now, good sirs, look for the doctor, Jīvaka.” “Sire, he has hastened out of the city on the she-elephant, Bhaddavatikā.”

Now at that time King Pajjota came to have a slave called Kāka,² who could do sixty *yojanas* and who was born of a non-human being. Then King Pajjota commanded the slave, Kāka, saying: “Go, good Kāka, make Jīvaka, the doctor, return, saying, ‘The king, teacher, orders you to come back’.”³ Now, good Kāka, these doctors are full of cunning, so do not accept any thing from him.”

Kd.8.1.27

And the slave, Kāka, caught up Jīvaka Komārabhacca on the road to Kosambī as he was having breakfast. Then Kāka, the slave, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “The king, teacher, orders you to come back.”

Vin.1.278

“Wait, good Kāka, until we have eaten; come, good Kāka, you eat.”

“No, teacher, I am commanded by the king, saying: ‘Now good Kāka, these doctors are full of cunning, so do not accept anything from him’.”

¹ *Vinaya Texts* ii.188 adds “(in one day)”; this information is given at Dh-p-a.i.196: *ekadivasaṃ paññāsa yojanāni gacchati*. Above she is described as *paññāsayojanikā*. ² Mentioned at Dh-p-a.i.196. ³ *nivattāpeti*, “is having you sent back”.

BD.4.393 Now at that time Jīvaka Komārabhacca, having stripped off¹ the medicinal (part) with his nail, was eating an emblic myrobalan² and drinking water. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to Kāka, the slave: “Here, good Kāka, eat the emblic myrobalan and drink the water.”

Kd.8.1.28 Then Kāka, the slave, thinking: “This doctor is eating the emblic myrobalan and drinking the water, there should not be anything harmful,”³ ate half the emblic myrobalan and drank the water. But he ejected that half emblic myrobalan that he was eating, on the spot. Then Kāka, the slave, spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“Is there life for me, teacher?”

“Do not be afraid, good Kāka, for you will get well; but the king is violent, that king might have me killed, so I am not coming back,” and giving the she-elephant, Bhaddavatikā, into Kāka’s charge, he set out for Rājagaha; in due course he approached Rājagaha, and King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached he told this matter to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha.

Kd.8.1.29 “You did well, good Jīvaka, in not going back, that king is violent, he might have you killed.”

Then King Pajjota, being well, sent a messenger to Jīvaka Komārabhacca, saying: “Let Jīvaka come, I will grant him a boon.”

“No, master, let his majesty remember my office.”

¹ *olumpetvā*, with variant reading (see Vin.1.390) *ulumpetvā*, *odametvā*, *oḷumpetvā*. Vin-a.1117 explains by *odahitvā pakkhipitvā*, having put in, having inserted. ² *āmalaka*, phyllanthus emblica. The fruit allowed as a medicine at Vin.1.201. ³ *na arahati kiñci pāpakam hotum*.

ON A PAIR OF SIVEYYAKA CLOTHS

Now at that time there accrued to King Pajjota a pair of Siveyyaka cloths¹ which were the chief and best and foremost and most excellent and loveliest of many cloths, of many pairs of cloths, of many hundred pairs of cloths, of many thousand pairs of cloths, of many hundred thousand pairs of cloths. Then King Pajjota sent this pair of Siveyyaka cloths to Jīvaka Komārabhacca. Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

BD.4.394

“This pair of Siveyyaka cloths, sent me by King Pajjota, is the most excellent and loveliest of many cloths ...; no one else is worthy of it but the Lord, the perfected one, the wholly awakened one, or King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha.”

ON EXACTLY THIRTY PURGES

Now at that time the Lord came to have a disturbance of the humours of his body.² Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Ānanda, the Truth-finder has a disturbance of the humours of his body; the Truth-finder

Kd.8.1.30

Vin.1.279

¹ *Siveyyaka dussayuga*. Vin-a.1117 gives two explanations of *Siveyyaka*: either it means the cloths used in the Uttarakuru country for covering the dead bodies brought to the cemeteries, *sivathhika*, in which case a certain kind of bird taking a piece of flesh to the Himalayas, eats it and throws aside the cloth; then a forest-wanderer seeing the cloth brings it to the king; this cloth was obtained by Pajjota in this way. Or, *Siveyyaka* means that the good women of the Sivi kingdom think, ‘thread is spun from these filicules’ and they speak of a cloth woven of this thread by this name. “Because of this *siveyyaka* means cemetery-cloth in the Uttarakuru country, and cloth produced in the Sivi kingdom”. *Vinaya Texts* ii.190 says “No doubt the latter explication is the right one”. Cf. Pāvā, Pāveyyaka, above, [BD.4.31](#), [n.2](#) and Bārāṇasī, Bārāṇaseyyaka, above, [BD.4.389](#), [n.1](#).

Dussayuga means the two cloths, the loin-cloth or *dhoti*, and the upper cloth, which are usually worn by laymen. ² *kāyo dosābhisanno*. Cf. [Vin.1.206](#) where a certain monk was *abhisannaskāya*, “had a superfluity of humours in his body”; various purgative, were allowed. At [Vin.2.119](#) some monks also became *abhisannakāya*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.60, n.6 says that *dosa* “is a disturbance of the so-called humours in the body.” *Dosa* is used in sense of some kind of sickness at [Mi.43](#). At [Mi.172](#) we get *tikicchako abhisanne kāye kupite dose sinehaniyāni bhesajjāni deti*, “does a physician give softening medicines when the body is full of humours and afflicted by them?”

desires to take¹ a purgative.”² Then the venerable Ānanda approached Jīvaka Komārabhacca; having approached he spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“Jīvaka, sir, the Truth-finder has a disturbance of the humours of his body; the Truth-finder desires to take a purgative.”

“Well now, revered Ānanda, lubricate³ the Truth-finder’s body for a few days.” Then the venerable Ānanda, having lubricated the Truth-finder’s body for a few days, approached Jīvaka Komārabhacca; having approached he spoke thus to Jīvaka Komārabhacca:

“Jīvaka, sir, the Truth-finder’s body has been lubricated; what do you think is right for him now?”

Kd.8.1.31

Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca: “It is not suitable that I should give a strong purgative to the Lord,” and having had three handfuls of lotuses⁴ mixed⁵ with various medicines, he approached the Lord; having approached he offered the Lord one handful of lotuses, saying: “Lord, may the Lord sniff up⁶ (the scent of) this first handful of lotuses; this will purge the Lord ten times.” Then he offered the Lord the second handful of lotuses, saying: “Lord, may the Lord sniff up (the scent of) this second handful of lotuses; this will purge the Lord ten times.” Then he offered the Lord the third handful of lotuses, saying: “Lord, may the Lord sniff up (the scent of) this third handful of lotuses; this will purge the Lord ten times”; thus, he thought that the Lord would be purged all together thirty times.⁷ Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, having given the Lord a purgative for thirty times all together, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.8.1.32

Then it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca when he had gone outside the porch: “A purgative has been given by me to the Lord for all together thirty times. The Lord has a disturbance of the humours of his body; it will not purge the Lord all together thirty times, it will purge the Lord twenty-nine times, but then the Lord, being purged, will bathe; when he has bathed,

¹ *pātuṃ*, literally to drink; cf. same phrase at [Vin.1.206](#), where purging drinks are allowed.

² *virecana*. This and three other kinds are held (at [DN.i.12](#)) by some recluses and Brahmins to be worldly lore—abstained from by Gotama. ³ *sinehetha*. Cf. *sinehaniyāni bhesajjāni* at [Mi.172](#). ⁴ *uppalahatthāni*. ⁵ *paribhāvetvā*, or supplied with, treated with. ⁶ *upasiṅghatu*, cf. [SN.i.204](#). ⁷ Passive construction. Literally: thus will there be for the Lord a purge thirty times.

the Lord will purge once, thus the Lord will be purged all together thirty times.” Then the Lord, knowing by mind the reasoning in the mind¹ of Jīvaka Komārabhacca, addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

“Now, Ānanda, it occurred to Jīvaka Komārabhacca when he had gone outside the porch: ‘A purgative has been given by me to the Lord ... thus the Lord will be purged all together thirty times.’ Well now, Ānanda, prepare (some) hot water.”

“Very well, Lord,” and the venerable Ānanda having answered the Lord in assent, prepared (some) hot water.

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, is the Lord purged?”

“I am purged, Jīvaka.”

“Now, Lord, it occurred to me after I had gone outside the porch: ‘A purgative has been given by me to the Lord ... thus the Lord will be purged all together thirty times.’ Lord, let the Lord bathe, let the well-farer bathe.” Then the Lord bathed in the hot water; when he had bathed the Lord purged once; thus the Lord purged all together thirty times. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, until the Lord’s body comes to be normal, almsfood of juices will be enough.”²

Vin.1.280
Kd.8.1.33

BD.4.396

ON ASKING FOR A BOON

And the Lord’s body soon became normal.

Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, taking that pair of Siveyyaka cloths, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, I ask one boon of the Lord.”

“Jīvaka, Truth-finders are beyond (granting) boons.”¹

¹ *cetasā cetoparivittakam aññāya*, stock; cf. SN.i.103, SN.i.178. ² *alam yūsapiṇḍapātena*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.193 translates “you had better abstain from liquid food”. Natural juices, *akaṭayūsa*, are allowed at Vin.1.206 as a purgative. ¹ *atikhantavarā*. Cf. Vin.1.82, Vin.1.292. See above, BD.4.104.

Kd.8.1.34

“Lord, it is what is allowable and what is blameless.”

“Speak on, Jīvaka.”

“Lord, the Lord and the Order of monks are wearers of rag-rob². Lord, this pair of Siveyyaka cloths was sent me by King Pajjota; of many cloths, of many pairs of cloths, of many hundred pairs of cloths, of many thousand pairs of cloths, of many hundred thousand pairs of cloths, it is the chief and best and foremost and most excellent and loveliest. Lord, may the Lord accept my pair of Siveyyaka cloths, and may he allow householders’ robes³ to the Order of monks.” The Lord accepted the pair of Siveyyaka cloths. Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Jīvaka Komārabhacca with *dhamma*-talk.⁴ And when Jīvaka Komārabhacca had been gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with *dhamma*-talk, rising from his seat, greeting the Lord, he departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.8.1.35

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given *dhamma*-talk, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.397

“I allow you, monks, householders’ robes. Whoever wishes may be a rag-robe wearer; whoever wishes may consent to (accept) householders’ robes.⁵ And I, monks, commend satisfaction with the one or the other.”⁶

Vin.1.281

People in Rājagaha heard: “Householders’ robes are allowed to monks by the Lord,” and these people became joyful, elated, thinking: “Now we will give gifts, we will work merit,⁷ inasmuch as householders’ robes are allowed to monks by the Lord.” And in just one day many thousand robes were produced in Rājagaha.

Country-people heard: “Householders’ robes are allowed to monks by the Lord,” and these people became joyful and elated, thinking: ‘Now we will give gifts, we will work merit, inasmuch as householders’ robes are

² Vin-a.1119 says that neither the Lord during the twenty years since his attainment of enlightenment until this event happened, nor any monk, had accepted householders’ robes; all were rag-robe wearers. ³ Vin-a.1119 makes the point that these were robes (or robe-material) given by householders. ⁴ Vin-a.1119 says “with talk connected with the advantage of giving clothes”. ⁵ Cf. Vin.3.172 (BD.1.298). ⁶ *itaritarena*. Cf. Kd.8.3.2. Vin-a.1119 says “with one of little value, with one of great value, with whatever it is”. Thus CHILDERS is, I think, right in understanding the phrase as “whether the robes are good or bad”, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.194, n.2. ⁷ *puññam karissāma*. This literal translation best preserves the Indian notion of *karma*, *kamma*, deeds, actions, or working whose result is held to be either good or bad, meritorious or lacking in merit.

allowed to monks by the Lord.” And in just one day many thousand robes were produced in the country.

Now at that time a mantle¹ accrued to the Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a mantle.” A silk mantle accrued. “I allow you, monks, a silk mantle,” he said. A fleecy coverlet accrued.² “I allow you, monks, a fleecy coverlet,” he said.

Kd.8.1.36

Told is the First Portion for Repeating

ON PERMISSION FOR WOOLLEN GARMENTS, ETC.

Now at that time the king of Kāsi³ sent woollen stuff⁴ that was worth half

BD.4.398

¹ *pāvāra*, or cloak. Word occurs at Ja.v.409. Vin-a.1119 says *salomako kappāsikapāvāro*, a cotton *pāvāra* with something woolly—*loma* being the wool or hair of an animal. ² *kojava*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives a “rug or cover with long hair, a fleecy counterpane”, and CHILDERS “a goat’s hair coverlet of fine workmanship,” (cf. *Abhidhānappadīpa* 312). Vin-a.1119 distinguishes between the ordinary *kojava*, meant here, and *kojava* which is *mahāpiṭṭhiya*, large at the back (?), and says that like a *pāvāra* it is made of wool. Word occurs again at Dhp-a.i.177, translated BURLINGAME, *Buddhist Legends*, i.259, “coverlet of goat’s hair”; and at Dhp-a.iii.297, as *pāvāra* *kojava*, translated *Buddhist Legends* iii.96, “cloak and goats’ hair coverlet”. *Kojava* occurs in definition of *goṇaka*, a woollen cover with long fleece, at Vin-a.1086, DN-a.86, Thig-a.253, SN-a.ii.325. ³ *Kāsi* was a *mahājanapada*, whose capital was Benares. Vin-a.1119 says that the king was brother to Pasenadi by the same father. ⁴ *kambala*, or a woollen blanket or garment.

a *kāsi*, being valued at half a *kāsi*,¹ to Jīvaka Komārabhacca. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, taking that woollen stuff that was worth half a *kāsi*, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, this woollen stuff that is worth half a *kāsi*, being valued at half a *kāsi*, was sent to me by the king of Kāsi. Lord, may the Lord accept the woollen stuff from me that it may be for me a blessing and a happiness for a long time.” The Lord accepted the woollen stuff. Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Jīvaka Komārabhacca with *dhamma*-talk. Jīvaka Komārabhacca, gladdened ... with *dhamma*-talk, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, woollen stuff.”

Kd.8.3.1

At that time various kinds² of robe-material accrued to the Order. Then it occurred to the monks: “Now, what (kind of) robe-materials are allowed by the Lord, what are not allowed?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow six (kinds of) robe-materials³: linen, cotton, silk, wool, coarse hempen cloth, canvas.”

Kd.8.3.2

BD.4.399

Vin.1.282

Now at that time these monks consented to householders’ robes; (but) being scrupulous, they did not consent to rag-robes, thinking: “Only one

¹ *aḍḍhakāsikaṃ kambalaṃ pahesi upaḍḍhakāsinaṃ khamamānaṃ*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.195 has “a woollen garment made half of Benares cloth ...” with note that “our translation of *aḍḍhakāsikaṃ kambalaṃ* is merely conjectural.” Vin-a.1119 says “here *kāsi* means a thousand, a thing worth that is *kāsiya*, but this is worth five hundred, therefore it is called half-*kāsi*; for this same reason it is said *upaḍḍhakāsinaṃ khamamānaṃ*”. The whole passage is obscure. Benares was famous for its silks and muslins, but the stuff sent by the king was of wool. I am therefore following the Commentary’s lead in taking *kāsi*, *kāsika* and *kāsinaṃ* as representing worth, cost or value in the above passage. *Critical Pali Dictionary* under *aḍḍhakāsika* says that it “seems originally to mean a sort of ‘half-muslin’ (cf. *kāsika*), but here taken in the sense of a piece of stuff sufficient for half the people of Kāsi”. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* under *Aḍḍhākāsī*, the courtesan, for suggestions that she derived her name from the fact that she charged her patrons “five hundred” (i.e. probably *kahāpaṇas*). Pp-a.315 gives the value of brand new, neither new nor old, and worn Kāsi cloths. Ja.vi.151, Ja.vi.450 says that a garment of Kāsi cloth is worth a hundred thousand. ² *uccāvacāni*. Vin-a.1119 says “nice and nasty.” ³ At [Vin.1.58](#), [Vin.1.96](#) these six are called benefits extra to rag-robes. At [AN.iv.394](#) the first four are mentioned as forming part of a rich gift. See [BD.2.143](#) for notes. They are, naturally, identical with the six kinds of thread or yarn, [Vin.3.256](#).

(kind of) robe is allowed by the Lord, not two (kinds).” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow him who consents to householders’ robes to consent also to rag-robes. And I, monks, commend satisfaction with both.”¹

ON SEARCHING FOR RAG-ROBES

Now at that time several² monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. Some monks went into a cemetery for rag-robes,³ other monks did not wait. Those monks who went into the cemetery for rag-robes obtained rag-robes; those monks who did not wait spoke thus: “Your reverences, give us also a portion.”

Kd.8.4.1

These spoke thus: “Your reverences, we will not give you a portion; why did you not wait?”

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, you, monks, not to give a portion, if you are not willing, to those who do not wait.”

Now at that time several monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. Some monks went into a cemetery for rag-robes, other monks waited. Those monks who went into the cemetery for rag-robes obtained rag-robes; those monks who waited spoke thus: “Your reverences, give us also a portion.”

Kd.8.4.2

These spoke thus: “Your reverences, we will not give you a portion; why did you not go in?”

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give a portion, (even) if you are not willing, to those who wait.”

Now at that time several monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. Some monks went into a cemetery for rag-robes first, other monks went in afterwards. Those monks who went into the cemetery for rag-robes first, obtained rag-robes. Those monks who went in afterwards did not obtain them; these spoke thus: “Your reverences, give

Kd.8.4.3

¹ Cf. Kd.viii.1.35. ² *sambahulā*. ³ At Vism.62 cemetery-rags, *soṣānika*, head the list of rags from which rag-robes can be made.

BD.4.400

us also a portion.”

These spoke thus: “Your reverences, we will not give you a portion; why did you go in afterwards?”

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, not to give a portion, if you are not willing, to those who go in afterwards.”

Kd.8.4.4

Now at that time several monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. These went into a cemetery together¹ for rag-robes; some monks obtained rag-robes, other monks did not obtain them. Those monks who did not obtain them spoke thus: “Your reverences, give us also a portion.”

Vin.1.283

These spoke thus: “Your reverences, we will not give you a portion; why did not you obtain (any)?”

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give a portion, (even) if you are not willing, to those who go in together with (you).”

Kd.8.4.5

Now at that time several monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. These, having made an agreement,² went into a cemetery for rag-robes; some monks obtained rag-robes, other monks did not obtain them. Those monks who did not obtain them, spoke thus: “Your reverences, give us also a portion.”

These spoke thus: “Your reverences, we will not give you a portion; why did you not obtain (any)?”

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having made an agreement, to give a portion, (even) if you are not willing, to those who go in.”

ON AN AGREEMENT FOR THE RECEIVER OF CLOTH

Kd.8.5.1

Now at that time people, taking robe-material, came to a monastery; these, not finding an acceptor,¹ conveyed it back; little robe-material accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as acceptor of robe-material²: one who would not follow a wrong course through partiality, one who would not follow a wrong course through hatred, one who would not follow a wrong course through stupidity, one who would not follow a wrong course through fear, and one who would know what is taken and what is not taken.³

BD.4.401

“And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon. First, a monk is to be requested. Having requested (him), the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon the monk so and so as acceptor of robe-material. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the monk so and so as acceptor of robe-material. If the agreement upon the monk so and so as acceptor of robe-material is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as acceptor of robe-material. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.8.5.2

Now at that time the monks who were acceptors of robe-material, having accepted robe-material, leaving it just there, went away; the robe-material was lost. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as keeper of robe-

Kd.8.6.1

Vin.1.284

¹ *Sadisā okkamimsu*, Vin-a.1120 gives two explanations: either they all, *sabbe*, went in, or, they went in at one part (or quarter), *ekadisāya*. ² Vin-a.1120 says that “the rag-robles obtained having been distributed to all, they say, ‘We will take them’”. ¹ *paṭiggāhaka*, or distributor. ² At Vin.2.176 it is said that at that time there was no acceptor of robe-material, *cīvaraṭiggāhaka*. One is to be agreed upon by the monks in precisely the same way as above, which was indeed the regular manner for appointing all the functionaries of the Older. Vin-a.1120 says that the *cīvaraṭiggāhaka* takes the robe-material which is being given to the Order by the householders. Cf. AN.iii.274. ³ For *gahitāgahita*. cf. Vin.2.167, Vin.2.176, Vin.3.246.

material¹: one who would not follow a wrong course through partiality ... one who would not follow a wrong course through fear, and one who would know what is laid by and what is not laid by.²

Kd.8.6.2

BD.4.402

“And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon ...” (as in Kd.8.5.2 reading keeper of robe-material *instead of* acceptor of robe-material.)

ON AN AGREEMENT FOR A STOREROOM, ETC.

Kd.8.7.1

Now at that time the monks who were keepers of robe-material kept the robe-material in a shed³ and at the root of a tree and in the hollow of a nimb-tree⁴; it was eaten by rats and white ants. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.8.7.2

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a store-room that the Order desires: a dwelling-place or a curved house⁵ or a long house⁶ or a mansion⁷ or a cave.⁸

“And thus, monks, should it be agreed upon. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon such and such a dwelling-place as a store-room. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon such and such a dwelling-place as a store-room. If the agreement upon such and such a dwelling-place as a store-room is pleasing to the venerable ones let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Such and such a dwelling-place is agreed upon by the Order as a store-room. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.8.8.1

Now at that time an Order’s robe-material came to be unguarded⁹ in the store-room. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

¹ *cīvaranidāhaka*, the one who lays aside or puts away the robe-material, until it is wanted.

² *nihitānihita*. ³ *maṇḍapa*. ⁴ *nimbakosa*. Cf. Vin.1.152. ⁵ *aḍḍhayoga*. See above, BD.4.75, n.4. ⁶ *pāsāda*, see BD.2.16, n.5. ⁷ *hammiya*, see BD.2.16, n.6. ⁸ *guha*. On these five, see above, BD.4.75. ⁹ Vin-a.1121 says from rain, mice, white ants, crumbling walls.

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as guardian of the store-room¹: one who would not follow a wrong course through partiality ... one who would not follow a wrong course through fear, and one who would know what is guarded and what is not guarded.² And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon ... ‘... The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as guardian of the store-room. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

BD.4.403

Vin.1.285

Now at that time the group of six monks turned away³ the guardian of a store-room. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a guardian of a store-room is not to be turned away.⁴ Whoever should turn him away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.8.8.2

Now at that time robe-material came to be heaped up in an Order’s store-room. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to distribute it by means of the Order that is present.”⁵ Then the whole Order, distributing the robe-material, made a tumult.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.8.9.1

“I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as distributor of robe-material⁷: one who would not follow a wrong course

¹ *bhaṇḍāgārika*. Cf. AN.iii.274. At Vin.2.176 it is said that there was no *bhaṇḍāgārika* at that time. The Lord allowed one to be appointed, as above. ² According to Vin-a.1122 he should guard against the pests (note before the last above), should close the doors and window-holes in the cold weather and open them in the hot weather to let the wind come in. The accepter of robe-material—whether accepted at the right time or the wrong time, whether given for urgent reasons, whether robes for the rains, rugs, sheets or towels—should give these things to the keeper of robe-material, who should give them to the guardian of the storeroom. Thus, put by in the storeroom, when the time comes, they can be given to a monk as a set of three robes, or as two robes or as one. ³ *vuṭṭhāpentī*, made get up, removed; cf. Vin.4.42. ⁴ Vin-a.1122 says that there are four kinds of persons not to be turned away: an older monk (older than the one who would turn him out), a guardian of a storeroom, an ill monk, one who has received lodgings from the Order. ⁵ *sammukhībhūta*. Vin-a.1123 says “being within the precincts and boundary.” ⁶ Vin-a.1123 says that they made a great noise, saying, ‘Give for our teacher, give for our preceptor.’ ⁷ *cīvarabhājaka*. Cf. Vin.2.176 where it is said that at that time there was no distributor of robe-material; one was allowed to be appointed, as above.

through partiality ... one who would not follow a wrong course through fear, and one who would know what is distributed and what is not distributed. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon ... ‘... The monk so and so is agreed upon by the Order as distributor of robe-material. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.8.9.2
BD.4.404

Then it occurred to the monks who were the distributors of robe-material: “Now, how should we distribute the robe-material?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having first examined¹ it, having estimated² it, having equalised³ it, having counted the monks, having formed them into sections,⁴ to arrange⁵ a share of the robe-material (for each section).”

Then it occurred to the monks who were the distributors of robe-material: “Now, how should a share of the robe-material be given to novices?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give half a share to novices.”

Kd.8.9.3

Now at that time a certain monk became desirous of crossing over⁶ with his own portion. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give his own portion to one who is crossing over.” Now at that time a certain monk became desirous of crossing over with more than one

¹ *uccinitvā*, Vin-a.1123 saying: examining the clothes thus, saying, “This is thick, this is fine, this is massive, this is small, this is used, this is not used, this is so much in length, this is so much across”. ² *tulayitvā*, weighed or measured; estimated or assessed. Vin-a.1123 says, “thinking, ‘this is worth so much, this so much’, thus determining by value”. ³ *vaṇṇāvaṇṇam katvā*, having made it fair. Vin-a.1123 says, “if each (monk) obtains one (robe or piece of material) worth ten (*kaḥāpaṇas?*), that is right; but if he does not obtain it, then taking what is worth nine or eight together with another (piece) worth one or two, thus the meaning is: in this way arranging (or establishing) equal shares”. ⁴ *vaggaṃ bandhitvā*. Vin-a.1123 says that in case the robe-material cannot be given to each one on one day, then counting the monks by tens, the portions of robe-material by tens, having formed a section one by one, having made one collection (or heap of the material), he says, “I allow you to arrange one portion of robe-material”. When the portion of robe-material is arranged thus, lots should be cast, and when this is done the portion should be distributed among those monks who win the casting of the lots. ⁵ *ṭhapetum*, or to set aside. ⁶ *uttaritukāma*. Vin-a.1124 says a river or the wilds.

portion. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monk, to give more than one portion if he gives a compensation.”¹

Kd.8.9.4

Then it occurred to the monks who were the distributors of robe-material: “Now, how should a share of the robe-material be given: in the order in which they came in,² or according to seniority?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having made good anything lacking,³ to cast lots with kusa-grass.”⁴

BD.4.405

ON DYING ROBES

Now at that time monks dyed robe-material with dung⁵ and with yellow clay⁶; the robe-material came to be a bad colour. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, six (kinds of) dyes: dye from roots, dye from stems,⁷ dye from bark, dye from leaves, dye from flowers, dye from fruits.”

Kd.8.10.1

Vin.1.286

Now at that time monks dyed robe-material with cold water;⁸ the robe-material came to smell nasty. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a little dye-pot in which to boil the dye.”⁹ The dye was spilt.¹⁰ They told this matter to the Lord.¹¹ He said: “I allow, you, monks, to

Kd.8.10.2

¹ *anukkhepa*. Word apparently only occurs here. Vin-a.1125 says it means, “whatever goods are allowable may be delivered in return, may be handed over”, i.e. by the monk receiving more than one portion. It seems like a system of barter. ² *āgatapaṭipāṭiya*. ³ *vikalake tosetvā*. Vin-a.1125 mentions two kinds of deficiencies, that of robes and that of individuals. Deficiency of robes is met by cutting up the robes that are left over into strips, so that the insufficiency is remedied. Deficiency of individuals is when monks have been counted ten by ten into sections, *vagga*, and one *vagga* is not complete, consisting of only eight or nine monks. *Kusa* lots should then be cast. ⁴ *kusapātaṃ kātuṃ*. If the deficiency of robes cannot be satisfied, lots may be cast for another requisite, Vin-a.1125. This would hardly get over the difficulty of inadequate clothing. ⁵ *chakanenā ti gomayena*, Vin-a.1126. *Chakana* allowed at Vin.1.202 to monks who are not ill for use on the body. ⁶ *paṇḍumattikā*. Vin-a.1126 explains by *tambamattikā*, copper-coloured clay. ⁷ *mūla* and *khandha* with *bija* at Vin.4.34f. ⁸ *sītunnakāya*, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.390 for variant readings also Sinhalese edition ii.343, *sītundikāya*. Vin-a.1126 says *sītudakā ti apakkarajanam vuccati*, cold water means that it is called unboiled dye. ⁹ *rajanam pacituṃ cullarajanahumbhin ti*. ¹⁰ *uttariyati*. *Uttarati* is to flow over (of water), to boil over. ¹¹ Omitted in text, inserted in Sinhalese edition

BD.4.406 arrange a basin (to prevent the dye from) spilling.”¹ Now at that time the monks did not know whether the dye had boiled or had not (fully) boiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to put a drop² into water or on to the back of your nail.”

Kd.8.10.3

Now at that time monks, pouring out the dye, upset the pot; the pot was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a ladle for the dye, a scoop with a handle.” Now at that time the monks did not have a dye-vessel.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said “I allow you, monks, a pitcher for the dye,⁴ a bowl for the dye.”⁵ Now at that time monks steeped robe-material in a dish⁶ and also in a bowl, the robe-material was split. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a trough for the dye.”⁷

Kd.8.11.1

Now at that time monks spread out robe-material on the ground; the robe-material became dusty. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a grass matting.”⁸ The grass matting was eaten by white ants. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a bamboo (for hanging up) robe-material, a cord for (hanging up) robe-material.” They hung it up⁹ by the middle; the dye dripped down¹⁰ on both sides. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to fasten it at a corner.”¹¹ The corner wore out. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a corner- thread.”¹² The dye dripped down on one side.

BD.4.407

¹ *uttarāḷumpaṃ bandhituṃ*, variant readings *uttarāḷumpakaṃ*, *uttarāḷavaṃ* *uttarāḷuvaṃ*. Passage is somewhat obscure. *Vinaya Texts* ii.205 has “I prescribe that you put basins (under the dye-pots) to catch the spilt (dye)”. Vin-a.1126 reads *uttarāḷuvaṃ ti vaṭṭādhāraṃ ra-
janakumbhiyā majjhe ṭhapetvā taṃ ādhāraṃ parikkhipitvā rajanaṃ pakkhipituṃ anujānāmi
ti attho. evaṃ hi kate rajanaṃ na uttarati*, i.e. “*uttarāḷuva* means a round basin. The meaning
is, ‘I allow you to put in the dye, having placed it middle of the dye-pot, having enclosed
that basin; having done this, dye does not spill’.” ² *thevakaṃ dātuṃ*. ³ *rajanabhājana*.
⁴ *rajanakolamba*. ⁵ *rajanaghaṭa*. ⁶ *pāti*. ⁷ *rajanadoṇikā*. At Vin.2.120 *mattikādoṇikā*
are allowed; cf. *udakadoṇikā* at Vin.2.220. ⁸ *tiṇa-santhāraka*; also allowed at Vin.2.113 to
protect bowls set down on the ground. ⁹ *laggenti*, cf. BD.2.130, n.5. ¹⁰ *galati*; cf. BD.2.130,
n.6. ¹¹ *kaṇṇa*. See Vin.1.51, where the way in which one who shares a cell is to hang up his
preceptor’s robe is briefly described.

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks to dye it, turning it and turning it, and not to go away if the drips have not ceased.”¹

Now at that time robe-material became stiff.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to put it into water.” Now at that time robe-material became harsh. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to beat it with the hands.”

Kd.8.11.2

Vin.1.287

Now at that time monks wore yellow robes, (the colour) of ivory,³ not cut up.⁴ People looked down, criticised, spread-it about, saying: “Like the householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, robes that are not cut up are not to be worn. Whoever should wear one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

ALLOWANCE FOR CUT-UP CLOTH

Kd.8.12.1

BD.4.408

Then the Lord, having stayed in Rājagaha for as long as he found suitable, set out on tour for Dakkhiṇāgiri.¹ The Lord saw the field of Magadha,² laid out in strips,³ laid out in lines,⁴ laid out in embankments,⁵ laid out in squares,⁶ and seeing this, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

¹² *kaṇṇasuttaka*, a thread or line, “a string from corner to corner, a clothes line”, so *Pali-English Dictionary*. This must differ therefore from *raju*, “a rope”, above, so that possibly *raju* there is in sense of “wicker”, thus in substance not differing greatly from *vaṁsa*, bamboo. But more likely *kaṇṇasuttaka* means a thread put in at the corner of the robe to prevent the corner from wearing out; previously the monks had hung up the robe-material at the middle, i.e. they had hung it over the *raju* and *vaṁsa*, so that the dye dripped down at both sides of these. If *kaṇṇasuttaka* were really a “clothes line,” surely the dye would still run down at both sides; but hanging something up by its corner would cause dye to run down at one side only. These allowances seem to be framed so as to prevent drops and splashes of dye spoiling the appearance of the place. ¹ *na ca acchinne theve pakhamituṇi*. Vin-a.1126 says that he is not to go elsewhere until the dripping drops of dye have been cut off (ceased). Cf. the same expression at Vin.1.50, Vin.1.53, Vin.2.227, Vin.2.230. ² *patthinna*, Vin-a.1126 says that it was hard from too much dye, too full (of dye). ³ *dantakāsāvāni*. Vin-a.1127 says “dyeing them once or twice, they wore them the colour of ivory (*dantavaṇṇāni*).” ⁴ *acchinnakāni*, or untorn. See above, BD.4.356, n.4, and next paragraph below. ¹ *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* says “a *janapada* (district) in India, the capital of which was Ujjeni ... Dakkhiṇāgiri lay to the south of Rājagaha, beyond the hills that surrounded the city—hence its name”. See MN-a.iii.429, Snp-a.1.136, SN-a.i.242, SN-a.ii.176. ² *Magadhakhetta*. See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* for suggestion that this was “probably an extensive rice-field which at once caught the eye on account of its terraces,” and size, one might add; see Ja.iii.293. ³ *accibandha*, as Siamese edition. Sinhalese edition reads *accibaddha*, Vin-a.1127 *acchibaddha*. *Acci* is usually a “ray”, but does not mean that here, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.207, n.3. *Pali-English Dictionary* says “we should prefer the conjecture *acchibaddha*, ‘in the shape of cubes or dice’, i.e. with square fields”. Vin-a.1127 says *acchibaddhan ti caturassakedārakabaddham*, which means “divided (or set out) in square-shaped irrigated fields”. *Bandha* is much more “set out, placed, formed, arranged, united or put together” than the “divided” of *Vinaya Texts* ii.207. The analogy is that the pieces of a monk’s robe are to be arranged or put together (not “divided”) like the parts of the field. ⁴ *pāḷibandha*. Vin-a.1127 says “arranged (or linked, *baddha*) by boundaries that are long in length and breadth”. ⁵ *mariyādabandha*; perhaps terraces. The knowledge of terraced irrigation is very old. *Vinaya Texts* ii.208 gives (divided) “by outside boundaries (or ridges)”. Vin-a.1127 says *mariyādabaddha* is so called because of a short *mariyāda* at intervals. ⁶ *siṅgātakabandha*. Vin-a.1127 says that this is having pierced an embankment, *mariyāda*, with an embankment at the place where they meet, *gataṭṭhānena*; the meaning is, the form of a square, *catukkasaṅṭhāna*.

“Now, do you Ānanda, see the field of Magadha laid out in strips ... laid out in squares?”

“Yes, Lord.”

“Are you able, Ānanda, to provide¹ robes like this for the monks?”

“I am able, Lord.”

Then the Lord, having stayed at Dakkhiṇāgiri for as long as he found suitable, went back again to Rājagaha. Then the venerable Ānanda, having provided robes for several monks, approached the Lord; having approached he spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, let the Lord see the robes provided by me.”

Kd.8.12.2

Then the Lord, on that occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, clever is Ānanda; monks, of great intelligence is Ānanda, inasmuch as he can understand in detail the meaning of that which was spoken of by me in brief, and can make a cross-seam² and can make a short cross-seam³ and can make a circular seam⁴ and can make a short circular seam⁵ and can make a central piece⁶ and can make side pieces⁷ and can make a

BD.4.409

¹ *saṃvidahitum*. Vin-a.1127 gives *dātum*; *Vinaya Texts* ii.208, n.4, quoting Buddhaghosa, reads *kātum*. ² *kusi*. This and the following words recur at [Kd.16.21.3](#). ³ *aḍḍhakusi*. *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives “an intermediate cross-seam” following *Vinaya Texts* ii.209. ⁴ *maṇḍala*. Vin-a.1127 says *maṇḍalan ti pañcakhaṇḍikacīvarassa ekekasmim khaṇḍe mahāmaṇḍalaṃ*, a *maṇḍala* means there is a large *maṇḍala* (seam) to each piece of a robe of five pieces. Cf. above, [BD.4.356, n.4](#). ⁵ *aḍḍhamaṇḍalan ti khuddakamaṇḍalaṃ*, Vin-a.1127. ⁶ *vivaṭṭan ti maṇḍalañ ca aḍḍhamaṇḍalañ ca ekato katvā sibbitaṃ majjhima-khaṇḍaṃ*, the middle piece is sewn putting together the circular seam and the short circular seam, Vin-a.1127. ⁷ *anuvivaṭṭa*. Vin-a.1127 says *tassa ubhosu passesu dve khaṇḍāni ... athavā vivaṭṭassa ekapassato dvinnāṃ ekapassato tiṇṇaṃ pi catunnaṃ pi khaṇḍānaṃ etaṃ nāmaṃ*, this is the name of the two or four pieces at each side of the *vivaṭṭa*, the central piece”. *Critical Pali Dictionary* adds another explanation: *ubhosu passesu ekapassato dvinnāṃ ekapassato dvinnan ti catunnaṃ pi khaṇḍānaṃ nāmaṃ*, with regard to both sides, if there are two at one side, two at the other side, it is called ‘of four pieces’. *Critical Pali Dictionary* says of *anuvivaṭṭa* that “according to Sp.designation of the (two or) four side-pieces of cloth in a monk’s cowl (*cīvara*), (one or) two on each side of the two central pieces (*vivaṭṭa*, i.e. *maṇḍala* and *aḍḍhamaṇḍala*)”. One must understand that the central piece, *vivaṭṭa*, comes whole, or in two pieces at the back, and that on each side are the two side-pieces, *anuvivaṭṭa*, and that the pieces are all joined together by the *maṇḍala* and *aḍḍhamaṇḍala*. On these last see above, [BD.4.408, n.8](#), [BD.4.408, n.9](#).

neck-piece¹ and can make a knee-piece² and can make an elbow-piece,³ and what is cut up must be roughly darned together,⁴ suitable for recluses and not coveted by opponents. I allow you, monks, an outer cloak that is cut up, an upper robe that is cut up, an inner robe that is cut up.”

ALLOWANCE FOR THREE ROBES

Kd.8.13.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suitable, set out on tour for Vesālī. As the Lord was going along the high-road between Rājagaha and Vesālī he saw several monks coming along smothered up in robes, having put a mattress of robes⁵ on their heads and a mattress of robes on their backs and a mattress of robes on their hips, and seeing (them) it occurred to the Lord: “These foolish men are turned too quickly to abundance of robes;⁶ suppose I were to set a limit, were to establish bounds⁷ as to robes for the monks?”

BD.4.410

Vin.1.288

Kd.8.13.2

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Vesālī. The Lord stayed there in Vesālī in the Gotamaka shrine.⁸ Now at that time on the cold winter nights between the “eights”,⁹ in a time of snowfall, the Lord sat down in the open air at night with (only) one robe; the Lord was not

¹ *gīveyyakan ti gīvaveṭhanaṭṭhāne daḷhikaraṇaṭṭharā aññam suttasamsibbitam āgantukapaṭam*, a *gīveyyaka* means an added (piece of) cloth sewn together with another thread for the sake of strengthening in the place going round the neck, Vin-a.1127. ² *jaṅgheyyakan ti jaṅghapāpuṇaṭṭhāne tath’eva saṃsibbitam paṭam*, it means a piece of cloth sewn together just in the place to which-the knee reaches, Vin-a.1127. ³ *bāhantan ti anuvivaṭṭānam bahi ekekaṃ khaṇḍam. iti pañcakaṇḍikacivaren’etaṃ vicāritan ti*, “a *bāhanta* means a piece outside each of the sidepieces. It is thought of thus in regard to the robe of five pieces”, so Vin-a.1127, to which it adds, *bāhantan ti suppaṃāṇacivaram pārupantena saṃharitvā bāhāya upari ṭhapitā ubho antā bahimukhā tiṭṭhanti tesam tesam nāmaṃ*, a *bāhanta* means, if one puts on a robe of good measure, folding it together and holding up the arms, both ends stand outside the face; it is the name of these (ends). ⁴ Text reads *sattalūkha*; Sinhalese and Siamese editions *satthalūkha*, rough knife, possibly referring to it as the instrument with which monks cut up the robes; while *Vinaya Texts* ii.209, on analogy of *suttalūkha* in Kd.8.21.1 below, adopts “that reading here” (see *Vinaya Texts* ii.209, n.10), and translates “roughly sewn together”. ⁵ *cīvarabhisi*. For *bhisi* see BD.2.47, n.1. Mattresses made of five kinds of material are mentioned in Bu-Pc.14. *Bhisi* is neither roll, bolster nor mat, see *Vinaya Texts* ii.210, n.2. ⁶ Cf. Vin.1.59 (above, BD.4.77). ⁷ *sīmaṃ bhandeyyam mariyādam ṭhapeyyam*. ⁸ Cf. BD.2.1, n.1. ⁹ *antaraṭṭhakāsu*. Cf. Vin.1.31, and see above, BD.4.41, n.3.

cold. As the first watch of the night was ending the Lord became cold. The Lord put on a second robe; the Lord was not cold. As the middle watch of the night was ending the Lord became cold. The Lord put on a third robe; the Lord was not cold. As the last watch of the night was ending, as the sun was rising, in the flush of dawn,¹ the Lord became cold. The Lord put on a fourth robe; the Lord was not cold.

Kd.8.13.3

Then it occurred to the Lord: “Even those who in this *dhamma* and discipline² are sons of respectable families,³ susceptible to cold, afraid of cold, even these are able to keep themselves going with three robes. Suppose I were to set a limit, were to establish bounds as to robes for monks—were to allow three robes?” Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.8.13.4

“Now as I, monks, was going along the high-road between Rājagaha and Vesālī, I saw several monks coming along smothered up in robes, having put a mattress of robes on their heads and a mattress of robes on their backs and a mattress of robes on their hips; seeing them, it occurred to me: ‘These foolish men have turned too quickly to abundance of robes; suppose I were to set a limit, were to establish bounds as to robes for monks?’

BD.4.411

Kd.8.13.5

“Then I, monks, on the cold winter nights between the ‘eights’, in a time of snowfall, sat down in the open air at night with (only) one robe; I was not cold. As the first watch of the night was ending I became cold. I put on a second robe; I was not cold. As the middle watch of the night was ending I became cold. I put on a third robe; I was not cold. As the last watch of the night was ending, as the sun was rising, in the flush of dawn, I became cold. I put on a fourth robe; I was not cold. Then, monks, it occurred to me: ‘Even those who in this *dhamma* and discipline are sons of respectable families, susceptible to cold, afraid of cold, even these are able to keep themselves

¹ *nandimukhiyā rattiyā*. *Nandimukhī* is literally “joy-faced”; cf. Homer’s “rosy-fingered dawn”. Same expression occurs at Vin.2.236. *Vinaya Texts* iii.299, n.1 quotes Buddhaghosa as saying *nandimukhiyā rattiyā ti aruṇadhatakāle pītimukhā viya ratti khāyāti ten’ āha nandimukhiyā ti*, “when the night is joy-faced means, at the time of sunrise the night appears like a face of delight, because of this it is called: when the night is joy-faced”. See also *Vinaya Texts* ii.211, n.2. ² Vin.1.391 says that “after *dhammavinaye* B inserts *pabbajitā*”, gone forth, as does the Sinhalese edition (B is of course a manuscript.) ³ *ye pi kho te kulaputtā*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.211, n.3 says “in the text read *ye pi kho kulaputtā*”, but this is not borne out by either the Sinhalese or the Siamese editions.

Vin.1.289 going with three robes. Suppose I were to set a limit, were to establish bounds as to robes for monks and were to allow three robes? I allow you, monks, three robes: a double outer cloak, a single upper robe, a single inner robe.”¹

ON EXTRA ROBES

Kd.8.13.6 Now at that time² the group of six monks, saying: “Three robes are allowed by the Lord,” entered a village in one set of three robes, remained in the monastery in another set of three robes, went down to bathe in another set of three robes. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the group of six monks wear an extra robe?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, an extra robe should not be worn; whoever should wear (one) should be dealt with according to the rule.”³

Kd.8.13.7

BD.4.412

Now at that time⁴ an extra robe accrued to the venerable Ānanda; and the venerable Ānanda wanted to give this robe to the venerable Sāriputta, but the venerable Sāriputta was staying at Sāketa. Then it occurred to the venerable Ānanda: “It is laid down⁵ by the Lord that an extra robe should not be worn. And this extra robe has accrued to me, and I want to give this robe to the venerable Sāriputta, but the venerable Sāriputta is staying at Sāketa. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” Then the venerable Ānanda told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“But how long, Ānanda, before Sāriputta will come (here)?”

“Lord, on the ninth or tenth day,” he said.

¹ See **BD.2.i, n.2**. Vin-a.1128 says that as the Lord kept himself going with four robes, he allowed the outer cloth to be double, the others single; thus there come to be four robes.

² = **Bu-NP.1**, where also the rule against wearing an extra robe and the penalty for doing so are laid down. ³ i.e. **Bu-NP.1**, suggesting that this, or at least the first draft of the rule, had been formulated by the time that this portion of the Vinaya was compiled. ⁴ This paragraph = a portion of **Bu-NP.1 (Vin.3.195)**.

⁵ **Vin.3.195** inserts *sikkhāpadam* (a rule for training) before *paññattam* (laid down).

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, to wear an extra robe for at most ten days.”¹

Now at that time an extra robe accrued to monks. Then it occurred to these monks: “Now what line of conduct should be followed in regard to an extra robe?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to assign an extra robe.”²

Then the Lord, having stayed at Vesālī for as long as he found suitable, set out on tour for Benares. Walking on tour, in due course he arrived at Benares. The Lord stayed there near Benares in the deer-park at Isipatana. Now at that time a certain monk’s inner robe came to be torn. Then it occurred to that monk: “Three robes are allowed by the Lord: the double outer cloak, the single upper robe, the single inner robe. But my inner robe is torn. Suppose I were to insert a patch,³ so that it⁴ will be double cloth all round, single in the middle?”

Then that monk inserted a patch. As the Lord was touring the lodgings he saw that monk inserting the patch; seeing (him) he approached that monk, having approached, he spoke thus to that monk:

“What are you doing, monk?”

“I am inserting a patch, Lord.”

“It is very good, monk, it is good that you, monk, insert a patch.”

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow you, monks, when clothes⁵ are unsoiled,⁶ when what is allowable is unsoiled,⁷ a double outer cloak, a single upper robe, a single inner robe;

¹ Cf. second draft of rule in Bu-NP.1, Vin.3.196. ² At Vin.3.196 an extra robe is defined as “one that is not allotted, not assigned”. Presumably if it is either allotted, or assigned, it ceases to be an extra robe. At Vin.1.297 the three robes (excluding any extra one) are allowed to be allotted but not assigned. ³ *aggalaṃ acchupeyyaṃ*. On *aggala* see BD.2.409, n.6. ⁴ i.e. the robe. ⁵ *dussānam*. DN-a.ii.403, citing this passage, reads *vatthānaṃ* (garments). ⁶ *ahata* and *ahatakappa*, see above, BD.4.356, n.9, BD.4.357, n.1. ⁷ *ahata* and *ahatakappa*, see above, BD.4.356, n.9, BD.4.357, n.1.

Kd.8.13.8

Kd.8.14.1

Vin.1.290

Kd.8.14.2

BD.4.413

when garments are thin from use¹ a fourfold outer cloak, a double upper robe, a double inner robe. As far as possible an effort² is to be made (to get patches) from a rag-robe, from (bits picked up near) a shop.³ I allow, monks, a patch, a means of fastening,⁴ a length,⁵ a marking (with a piece of cloth),⁶ a strengthening.”⁷

THE STORY OF VISĀKHĀ

Kd.8.15.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Benares for as long as he found suitable, set out on tour for Sāvattihī. Walking on tour, in due course he arrived at Sāvattihī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvattihī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord gladdened ... delighted Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, with *dhamma*-talk. Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, when she had been gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with *dhamma*-talk, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, may the Lord consent (to accept) from me a meal on the morrow together with the Order of monks.”

The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from her seat, greeting the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him.

BD.4.414

Kd.8.15.2

Then towards the end of that night a great cloud rained down in the four continents.⁸ Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, even as it is raining in the Jeta Grove, so it is raining in the four continents. Let your bodies get wet with the rain,⁹ monks, this is the last

¹ *utuddhaṭṭa*, literally drawn out by the seasons. ² *ussāha*, explained at Vin-a.1128 by *pariyesanā*, search. ³ *pāpaṇika*; see above, BD.4.357, n.4. ⁴ *tunna*. Vin-a.1128 says *suttakena saṁsibbanam tunnam*, “sewing together with threads is *tunna*”; it is a means of fastening, hence perhaps a needle, although *suci* is the more usual word. Cf. however *tunnāvāya* “needle-weaver”, tailor, at Vin.2.159. ⁵ For these expressions cf. above BD.4.354, and notes. ⁶ For these expressions cf. above BD.4.354, and notes. ⁷ For these expressions cf. above BD.4.354, and notes. ⁸ *cātuddīpiko*. ⁹ As at this time cloths for the rains had not been “allowed” monks could not incur the offence of wrong-doing mentioned at Vin.3.253, for letting their naked bodies get wet with the rain although they had cloths for the rains.

great cloud over the four continents.”

“Very well, Lord,” and these monks having answered the Lord in assent, with their robes laid aside let their bodies get wet with the rain.

Vin.1.291

Kd.8.15.3

Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, having had sumptuous food, solid and soft, prepared, commanded a woman-slave, saying:

“Go now,¹ having gone to the monastery, announce the time, saying, ‘Lord,² it is time, the meal is ready’.”

“Very well, lady,” and this slave-woman, having answered Visākhā, Migāra’s mother in assent, having gone to the monastery, saw the monks, their robes laid aside, letting their bodies get wet with the rain. Seeing them, she thought: “There are no monks in the monastery, naked ascetics are letting their bodies get wet with the rain.” She approached Visākhā, Migāra’s mother; having approached, she spoke thus to Visākhā, Migāra’s mother:

“Lady, there are no monks in the monastery, naked ascetics are letting their bodies get wet with the rain.” Then it occurred to Visākhā, Migāra’s mother—she being clever, experienced, wise: “But undoubtedly it is the masters, their robes laid aside, who are letting their bodies get wet with the rain; this foolish woman thinks that there are no monks in the monastery, (but) that naked ascetics are letting their bodies get wet with the rain.” She commanded the woman-slave, saying: “Go now, having gone to the monastery, announce the time, saying, ‘Lord, it is time, the meal is ready’.”

Kd.8.15.4

BD.4.415

Then these monks, having cooled their limbs, being refreshed in body, having taken up their robes, entered (each) his own dwelling-place.³ Then that woman-slave, having gone to the monastery, not seeing the monks, thinking: “There are no monks in the monastery, the monastery is empty,” approached Visākhā, Migāra’s mother; having approached, she spoke thus to Visākhā, Migāra’s mother:

“Lady, there are no monks in the monastery, the monastery is empty.” Then it occurred to Visākhā, Migāra’s mother—she being clever, experienced, wise: “But undoubtedly the masters, having cooled their limbs, being refreshed in body, having taken up their robes, have (each) entered his own dwelling-place; this foolish woman thinks that there are no monks in the

¹ *je*, often used in speaking to female slaves. ² *bhante*, or perhaps here “honoured sir”.

³ *yathāvihāra*, as at Vin.4.15.

monastery, that the monastery is empty.” She commanded the woman-slave, saying: “Go now, having gone to the monastery, announce the time, saying, ‘Lord, it is time, the meal is ready’.”

Kd.8.15.5

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, arrange your bowls and robes, it is time for the meal.”

“Very well, Lord,” these monks answered the Lord in assent.

Then the Lord, dressing in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, having vanished from the Jeta Grove, just as a strong man might stretch out his bent arm, or might bend back his outstretched arm, became visible in the porch belonging to Visākhā, Migāra’s mother. Then the Lord sat down on an appointed seat together with the Order of monks.

Kd.8.15.6

Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, saying: “Wonderful, good sirs, marvelous, good sirs, is the great psychic power, the great majesty of the Truth-finder, in that although the floods are rolling on knee-deep, and although the floods are rolling on waist-deep, yet neither the feet nor the robes of a single monk have become wet,” and joyful, exultant, having with her own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the awakened one at their head with sumptuous solid and soft food, she sat down at a respectful distance after the Lord had eaten and had removed his hand from the bowl. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.4.416

“Lord, I ask eight boons of the Lord.”

“Visākhā, Truth-finders are beyond (granting) boons.”¹

“Lord, they are those which are allowable and those which are blameless.”

Kd.8.15.7

“Speak on, Visākhā.”

“I, Lord, want to give for life to the Order cloths for the rains,² to give

¹ Cf. above, [BD.4.104](#), [BD.4.396](#). ² [Bu-NP.24](#) and [Bu-Pc.91](#) are both based on the assumption that an “allowance” to use cloths for the rains had already been given. The rule in [Bu-NP.24](#) is against putting on cloths for the rains during all but the last part of the hot weather, for these cloths had become worn out and monks had gone naked during the rains. See [BD.2.134, n.1](#). [Bu-Pc.91](#) is concerned with the right measurements for the rain-cloths.

food for those coming in,¹ to give food for those going out, to give food for the sick,² to give food for those who tend the sick,³ to give medicine for the sick, to give a constant supply of conje, to give bathing-cloths for the Order of nuns.”⁴

“But having what special reason in mind,⁵ do you, Visākḥā, ask the Truth-finder for eight boons?”

“Now I, Lord, commanded a slave-woman, saying, ‘Go now, having gone to the monastery, announce the time, saying: Lord, it is time, the meal is ready’; but then, Lord, that slave-woman, having gone to the monastery, saw the monks, their robes laid aside, letting their bodies get wet with the rain; seeing them, she thought, ‘There are no monks in the monastery, naked ascetics are letting their bodies get wet with the rain’. She approached me, having approached, she spoke thus to me, ‘Lady, there are no monks in the monastery, naked ascetics are letting their bodies get wet with the rain’. Impure, Lord, is nakedness,⁶ it is objectionable’ I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order cloths for the rains.

BD.4.417

Kd.8.15.8

“And again, Lord, an in-coming monk, not accustomed to⁷ the roads, not accustomed to the resorts for alms⁸ is (still) walking for alms (when he is) tired. But having eaten my food for those coming in, (then when) he is accustomed to the roads, accustomed to the resorts for alms, he will walk for alms without getting tired. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order food for those coming in.

¹ Cf. [Vin.2.16](#) where the householder Citta invited in-coming monks who were elders to accept a meal with him. At [Vin.2.209ff.](#) certain regulations are laid down for the behaviour to be observed by and towards in-coming monks. ² At [Vin.1.142](#) monks were allowed in the rains, as long as the business took no more than seven days, to visit ill monks; and they might look about for food for the sick, for food for those tending the sick, and for medicine for the sick. ³ At [Vin.1.303ff.](#) qualities necessary in those who tend the sick are enumerated. Moreover they are “allowed” to receive the bowl and robes of ill monks who have died. ⁴ In the instructions given at [Vin.2.272](#) for teaching women who wish to receive the *upasampadā*, it is said that the bathing-cloth, together with the bowl, three robes and vest, should be pointed out to them. At [Vin.4.279](#) the right measurements for nuns’ bathing-cloths are prescribed. ⁵ *atthavasam sampassamānā*. ⁶ Nakedness was disparaged; see below, [BD.4.418](#), and [Vin.3.212](#), [Vin.3.252f.](#), [Vin.4.278](#). ⁷ *na kusala*, not expert in, clever, skilled. ⁸ *gocara*, literally a cow’s grazing, a pasturage, thus a place where a monk can obtain food, the houses at which food is put into his bowl.

“And again, Lord, an out-going monk, while looking about for food for himself, may be left behind by the caravan, or if he set out tired on a journey he may arrive at the wrong time¹ at the habitation to which he wishes to go. But having eaten my food for those going out, he will not be left behind by the caravan, nor will he set out tired on a journey (and so) he will arrive at the right time at the habitation to which he wishes to go. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order food for those going out.

Kd.8.15.9

“And again, Lord, if a monk who is ill does not obtain suitable meals, either his disease will grow very much worse, or he will pass away.² When he has eaten my food for the sick, the disease will not grow very much worse, he will not pass away. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order food for the sick.

Vin.1.293

“And again, Lord, a monk who tends the sick, looking about for food for himself, will bring back³ food for the sick after the sun is right up⁴ (and) he will miss his meal.⁵ But having eaten my food for those who tend the sick, he will bring back food for the sick during the right time (and) he will not miss his meal. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order food for those who tend the sick.

BD.4.418

Kd.8.15.10

“And again, Lord, if a monk who is ill does not obtain suitable medicines, either his disease will grow very much worse or he will pass away. When he has made use of my medicines for the sick, the disease will not grow very much worse, he will not pass away. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order medicines for the sick.

“And again, Lord, conje was allowed by the Lord at Andhakavinda when he had its ten advantages in mind.⁶ I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life to the Order a constant supply of conje.

Kd.8.15.11

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.85 where monks are forbidden to enter a village at the wrong time. ² As above, Vin.1.120. ³ i.e. to the monastery. ⁴ *ussūre*, after sun-turn, mid-day. In Bu-Pc.37 eating at the “wrong time”, i.e. “after noon has passed until sunrise” (Vin.4.86 = Vin.4.166) is an offence. Cf. at AN.iii.260 the five disadvantages to a family *ussūrabhatte*, who eat when the sun is right up. ⁵ *bhattachedaṃ karissati*, literally he will make a ‘cut’ in his food. For, since eating at the wrong time was an offence, a monk who could not take his meal during the right time, would have to miss it altogether. Cf. Ja.i.156, *bhattachedaṃ katvā*.

⁶ Enumerated at Vin.1.221; conje allowed at Vin.1.222.

“There was a case¹ (where nuns bathed) naked together with prostitutes at the same ford of the river Aciravatī.² Lord, these prostitutes made fun of the nuns, saying: ‘Why in the world, ladies, is the Brahma-faring led by you while you are young? Surely the pleasures of the senses should be enjoyed? When you become old, then you can fare the Brahma-faring; thus will both extremes be experienced by you.’³ Lord, these nuns, being made fun of by these prostitutes, became ashamed. Impure, Lord, is nakedness for women, it is abhorrent, it is objectionable. I, Lord, having this special reason in mind, want to give for life bathing-cloths for the Order of nuns.”

Kd.8.15.12

“But having what advantage in mind do you, Visākhā, ask the Truth-finder for eight boons?”

“Now, Lord, monks who have passed the rains in (various) places⁴ will come to Sāvattthī so as to see the Lord; having approached the Lord, they will ask: ‘Lord, such and such a monk has passed away; what is his bourn, what his future state?’⁵ The Lord will explain this saying: ‘It is in the fruit of stream-attaining or it is in the fruit of once-returning or it is in the fruit of not-returning or it is in the fruit of perfection.’ I, having approached these, will ask: ‘Honoured sirs, was Sāvattthī previously visited⁶ by this master?’

BD.4.419

Kd.8.15.13

“If they say to me: ‘Sāvattthī was previously visited by this monk,’ I shall come to the conclusion that undoubtedly cloths for the rains or food for those coming in or food for those going out or food for the sick or food for those who tend the sick or medicines for the sick or a constant supply of conjeys was enjoyed by this master. On my calling that to mind, delight will be born; from delight, joy will be born; because my mind is joyful my body will be calm; with the body calm I will experience ease; because I am at ease my mind will be contemplative; this will be for me growth as to the sense-organs, growth as to the powers, growth as to the factors of enlightenment. I, Lord, having this advantage in mind, am asking the Truth-finder for the eight boons.”

Vin.1.294

Kd.8.15.14

“It is very good, Visākhā, it is good that you, Visākhā, having this advantage in mind, are asking the Truth-finder for the eight boons. I allow you,

¹ *idha*. ² As in *Bi-Pc.21*. ³ This passage occurs again in Nuns’ *Bi-Pc.21*, where it is made an offence of expiation for nuns to bathe naked. ⁴ *disāsu*. ⁵ A conversation on these lines is recorded at *DN.ii.91ff.* to have taken place at Nāḍika. ⁶ *āgatapubbā*.

Visākhā, the eight boons.” Then the Lord blessed Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, with these verses:

“Whatever (woman), much delighted, endowed with virtue,
a disciple of the well-farer, food and drink

“Gives—having overcome avarice—the gift is heavenly,¹
dispelling sorrow, bringing happiness; (and)

“She gains a deva-like span²
owing to the spotless, stainless way,

“She, desiring merit, at ease, healthy,
delights long in a heavenly company.”³

Then the Lord, having blessed Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, with these verses, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.8.15.15

Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.420

“I allow, monks, cloths for the rains, food for those coming in, food for those going out, food for the sick, food for those who tend the sick, medicines for the sick, a constant supply of conjei, bathing-cloths for the Order of nuns.”

The Portion for Repeating on Visākhā

ALLOWANCE FOR A SITTING-CLOTH, ETC.

Now at that time⁴ monks, having eaten abundant food, fell asleep, thoughtless, careless. While they were sleeping, thoughtless, careless, impurity was emitted as the result of a dream; the lodging was stained by the impurity. Then the Lord, as he was touring the lodgings with the venerable Ānanda as his attendant,⁵ saw the lodging stained by impurity; seeing it,

¹ *sovaggiham*. Vin-a.1128 says “made for the sake of heaven”. ² *dibba āyu*. ³ *saggamhi kāyamhi*. ⁴ This introductory sentence = Vin.3.112. ⁵ *pacchāsamaṇa*; this was Ānanda also at Vin.3.10, Vin.4.78, and below, BD.4.431.

he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying “Why, Ānanda, is this lodging stained by impurity?”

“Now, Lord, monks having eaten abundant food fell asleep, thoughtless, careless ... as the result of a dream; that is why, Lord, the lodging is stained by impurity.”

Vin.1.295

Kd.8.16.2

“Thus it is, Ānanda, thus it is, Ānanda, that when they fell asleep, thoughtless, careless, impurity was emitted as the result of a dream. Ānanda, those monks who fall asleep calling up mindfulness, careful, by these impurity is not emitted; and, Ānanda, those who are ordinary people, passionless in regard to pleasures of the senses, by these impurity is not emitted. It is impossible, it cannot come to pass, Ānanda, that impurity should be emitted by one perfected.” Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Now as I, monks, was touring the lodgings with Ānanda as my attendant, I saw a lodging stained by impurity, and seeing this I addressed Ānanda, saying: ‘Why, Ānanda, ... (= Kd.8.16.1, Kd.8.16.2) ... by one perfected.’”

Kd.8.16.3

“Monks,¹ there are these five disadvantages to one who falls asleep, thoughtless, careless: badly he sleeps, badly he wakes, he sees an evil dream, *devatās* guard him not, impurity is emitted. Monks, these are the five disadvantages to one who falls asleep, thoughtless, careless. And, monks, there are these five advantages to one who falls asleep calling up mindfulness, careful: well he sleeps,² well he wakes, he does not see an evil dream, *devatās* guard him, impurity is not emitted. Monks, these are the five advantages to one who falls asleep, calling up mindfulness, careful. I allow you, monks, a (piece of cloth) to sit upon³ for protecting the body, for protecting the robes, for protecting the lodgings.”

BD.4.421

Kd.8.16.4

Now at that time a (piece of cloth) to sit upon was too small,⁴ it did not protect the whole lodging. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a sheet⁵ is large as one desires.”

Kd.8.17.1

¹ = AN.iii.251. ² Cf. AN.iv.150; AN.v.342; Ja.ii.61. ³ *nisīdana*. Defined at Vin.3.232. Vin.4.123. See BD.2.87, n.2. ⁴ Bu-Pc.89 lays down a prescribed size. ⁵ *paccattharaṇa*. See BD.2.34, n.1.

Now at that time¹ the venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa, the venerable Ānanda's preceptor, came to have a disease of thick scabs. Because of its discharge his robes stuck to his body; monks laying moistened these again and again with water, loosened them. The Lord, as he was touring the lodgings, saw these monks loosening these robes, having moistened them again and again with water; seeing them, he approached these monks; having approached, he spoke thus to these monks:

“Monks, what disease has this monk?”

Vin.1.296

“Lord, this venerable one has a disease of thick scabs; because of its discharge his robes stick to his body, and we, having moistened these again and again with water, loosened them.” Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, an itch-cloth² to one who has an itch or a small boil or a running sore or a thick scab disease.”³

Kd.8.18.1

Now at that time Visākhā, Migāra's mother, taking a cloth for wiping the face, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, Visākhā, Migāra's mother, spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.4.422

“Lord, may the Lord accept from me a cloth for wiping the face, that it may be for a blessing, a happiness for a long time.”

The Lord accepted the cloth for wiping the face. Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Visākhā, Migāra's mother, with *dhamma*-talk. Then Visākhā, Migāra's mother, having been gladdened ... delighted with *dhamma*-talk by the Lord, rising up from her seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, a cloth for wiping the face.”

Kd.8.19.1

Now at that time Roja, the Mallan, was a friend of the venerable Ānanda.⁴ A linen cloth belonging to Roja, the Mallan, was placed in the venerable

¹ = Vin.1.202, where chunam was allowed as a medicine. ² Right measure prescribed in Bu-Pc.90. ³ Buddhaghosa's explanations of these words (Vin-a.884) are given at BD.3.98, notes. ⁴ Mentioned as a friend of Ānanda's also at Vin.1.247.

Ānanda's hand, and the venerable Ānanda had need of a linen cloth. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to take something on trust when it belongs to one endowed with five qualities: if he is an acquaintance and if he is a companion and if he has spoken about¹ it and if he is alive and if he knows, ‘When it is taken he will be pleased with me’. I allow you, monks, to take something on trust when it belongs to one endowed with these five qualities.”

Now at that time monks had complete sets of the three robes but they had need both of water-strainers² and bags. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a cloth for the requisites.”³

Kd.8.20.1

ON THE LEAST ROBE TO BE ASSIGNED, ETC.

Then it occurred to the monks: “Those things that are allowed by the Lord—the three robes or the cloths for the rains or the piece of cloth to sit upon or the sheet or the itch-cloth or the cloth for wiping the face or the cloth for the requisites (of water-strainers and bags)—are all these things to be allotted⁴ or are they to be assigned?”⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.8.20.2

“I allow you, monks, to allot the three robes, not to assign them;⁶ to allot the cloths for the rains during the four months of the rains, after that (time) to assign them; to allot a piece of cloth to sit upon, not to assign it; to allot a sheet, not to assign it; to allot an itch-cloth while the disease lasts, after that (time) to assign it; to allot a cloth for wiping the face, not to assign it; to allot a cloth for the requisites (of water-strainers and bowls), not to assign it.”

Vin.1.297
BD.4.423

Then it occurred to the monks: “Now what is the least robe to be assigned?”⁷ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.8.21.1

¹ *ālapita*. Vin-a.1129 says, “If he has said this, ‘whatever property of mine you may wish for, that you may take’”. ² *parissāvana*. Allowed at Vin.2.118. ³ *parikkhāracolaka*. Cf. Vin.2.118, where the *colaka* did not suffice. ⁴ *adhiṭṭhātabbāni*. See notes on *an-adhiṭṭhita* at BD.2.7, BD.2.121. ⁵ *vikappetabbāni*. See note on *a-vikappita* at BD.2.7. *Vikappana*, assignment, is defined at Vin.4.122. ⁶ Cf. Vin.3.196 where an extra robe is defined as one that is “not allotted, not assigned”. ⁷ See definition of robe (-material) at Vin.3.196 = BD.2.7.

“I allow you, monks, to assign as the least robe one that is eight finger-breadths in length and four finger-breadths wide according to the accepted finger-breadth.” Now at that time the made-up rag-robos of the venerable Kassapa the Great became heavy.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a rough darn.”² It became misshapen at the corner.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to pull off the misshapen corner.”⁴ The threads were frayed out.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to insert a braiding,⁶ a binding.¹ Now at that time the cotton cloth of the outer cloaks gave way.⁷ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a net-work.”⁸

BD.4.424

Kd.8.21.2

Now at that time when a set of three robes was being made by a certain monk, there was not enough for all (three) to be cut up (into pieces).

“I allow you, monks, two (robes that are) cut up, one that is not cut up.” There was not enough for two to be cut up and one not cut up.

“I allow you, monks, two (robes that are) not cut up, one that is cut up.” There was not enough for two to be not cut up and one cut up.

¹ According to Vin-a.1129 because of the patches sewn on to the worn places. Kassapa the Great always wore rag-robos. ² *suttalūkhaṃ kātuṃ*. Vin-a.1129 *sutten’ eva aggaḷaṃ kātuṃ ti attho*, “to make a patch only of thread”, so perhaps *suttalūkha* is a rough darn; cf. Kd.8.12.2.

³ *vikaṇṇa*. Vin-a.1129 says that when they had cut off the thread as they were sewing, one corner of the outer cloak became long. At Vin.2.116 *cīvaraṃ vikaṇṇaṃ hoti*, the robe-material became misshapen. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.92, n.7. ⁴ *vikaṇṇam uddharituṃ*. Vin-a.1129 says that this means to cut off the long corner. ⁵ *okiriyanti*. Vin-a.1129 mentions that the robe fell down, or hung down, at the cut corner. ⁶ See BD.2.409, n.7, n.8; and above, BD.4.354.

⁷ As at Kd.15.28.2. The word translated as “cotton cloth” is *pattā*. *Vinaya Texts* ii.231, n.3 says “we probably ought to read *paṭṭā*, not *pattā*,” and cf. *Vinaya Texts* iii.141, n.6. *Paṭṭā* are perhaps strips of cloth used as braidings and bindings. Vin-a.1129 says *pattā lujjanti* means that the threads put in front of the large *pattā* fall out, and thus the *pattā* give way.

⁸ *aṭṭhapadaka*, perhaps a “patch”, *Pali-English Dictionary* “Net-work” tentatively suggested in *Critical Pali Dictionary* Commentary simply says that *aṭṭhapadakaṃ kātuṃ* means to sew the front of a piece of cloth with an *aṭṭhapadaka*-covering (*aṭṭhapadakacchannena*). The word occurs at Vin.2.150 with *vetuṃ*, and is translated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.167 as “to weave the string across and across”; see *Vinaya Texts* iii.167, n.1

“I allow you, monks, to insert an extra supply.¹ **But, monks, the whole (set of three robes) should not be worn not cut up. Whoever should so wear it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”²

Now at that time much robe-material accrued to a certain monk, and he was desirous of giving that robe-material to his parents. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Because he is himself giving to his parents, monks, what can we say? I allow you, monks, to give to parents.³ **But, monks, a gift of faith should not be brought to ruin.⁴ Whoever should bring (one) to ruin, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time a certain monk, laying aside a robe⁵ in the Blind Men’s Grove,⁶ entered a village for almsfood with (only) his upper and inner robes.⁷ Thieves carried off that robe. That monk became badly dressed, wearing shabby robes. Monks spoke thus:

“Why are you, your reverence, badly dressed, wearing shabby robes?”

“Now I, your reverences, laying aside a robe in the Blind Men’s Grove, entered a village for almsfood with (only) the upper and inner robes. Thieves carried off that robe; that is why I am badly dressed, wearing shabby robes.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a village should not be entered by (a monk wearing only) the upper and inner robes; whoever should so enter (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”⁸

¹ *anvādhikarṇi pi āropetuṃ*. Vin-a.1129 says “to give an added (or extra, *āgantuka*) piece of cloth. This may be put in if there is not enough; if there is enough there must not be an added piece of cloth, (for then, what there is) should be cut up”. ² See above, **Kd.8.11**. ³ *vinipātetabbari*. Vin-a.1129, “if the parents stand begging in the dust it should be given”. The point is that the robe-material had been given to the monk, and should therefore, unless there is strong reason to the contrary, be retained by him. At all events it was not to be wasted. ⁴ Cf. **Vin.4.286**, where it is “no offence” for a nun to give recluses’ robe-material to her parents. ⁵ “*cīvara* (robe) must here be used for *saṃghāṭi*. See ... section 2, below, where *saṃghāṭi* occurs”, *Vinaya Texts* ii.232, n.3. See **Bu-NP.29** on the laying aside of robes. ⁶ Cf. **BD.2.36, n.3**. ⁷ *santaruttara*. See **BD.2.12, n.1**. At **Bu-NP.2** it is an offence for a monk to be away from his three robes, even for one night, unless there is the agreement of the monks. ⁸ Cf. **Bu-Sk.1-Bu-Sk.4**. At **Kd.7.1.3**, above, among the five *kaṭhina* privileges is included that of going for alms without wearing the three robes.

Kd.8.22.1

Vin.1.298

BD.4.425

Kd.8.23.1

Kd.8.23.2

Now at that time the venerable Ānanda, through unmindfulness, entered a village for almsfood with (only) his upper and inner robes. Monks spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda:

“Reverend Ānanda, has it not been laid down by the Lord that a village should not be entered (by a monk wearing only) the upper and inner robes? Why do you, your reverence, enter a village with (only) your upper and inner robes?”

“It is true, your reverences, that it was laid down by the Lord that a village should not be entered (by a monk wearing only) the upper and inner robes, but I entered through unmindfulness.”

They told this matter to the Lord.

He said: “Monks, there are five reasons for laying aside the outer cloak: if one becomes ill,¹ or if he comes to be spending the rains,² or if he comes to go to the other side of a river, or if the dwelling-place comes to be secured with a bolt,³ or if the *kāṭhina*-cloth has been made.⁴ These, monks, are the five reasons for laying aside the outer cloak. And, monks, there are five reasons for laying aside the upper robe, the inner robe: if one becomes ill ... or if the *kāṭhina*-cloth has been made. These, monks, are the five reasons for laying aside the upper robe, the inner robe. And, monks, there are five reasons for laying aside a cloth for the rains: if one becomes ill, or if he comes to go outside the boundary,⁵ or if he comes to go to the other side of a river, or if the dwelling-place comes to be secured with a bolt, or if a cloth for the rains comes to be not made or imperfectly executed.⁶ These, monks, are the five reasons for laying aside a cloth for the rains.”

¹ Then, according to [Bu-NP.2](#) he has to get the agreement of the monks to be regarded as not away, separated from his three robes, although he is in actual fact separated from them, since he does not feel well enough to go on a journey taking all of them with him.

² *vassikasamketa*, at the rendezvous for the rains. During the rains monks are allowed to wear cloths for the rains instead of their usual three robes, in order to save these from the damp and wet. ³ *aggalaḡutti*. *Aggala* here in sense of “bolt”, not “patch”. ⁴ See [Bu-NP.2](#) and above, [Kd.7.1.3](#). ⁵ When, presumably he must put on his set of three robes. Travelling in the rains was allowed only if the business was urgent and if the monk was not absent from the rains-residence for more than seven days. See [Kd.3](#) ⁶ Cf. [Vin.3.155](#), [Vin.3.225](#), [Vin.3.229](#), etc., for *vippakata*, imperfectly executed. Cloths for the rains allowed at [Kd.8.15.15](#).

ON WHEN A ROBE BECOMES THE SAṄGHA'S

Now at that time a certain monk spent the rains alone. People there, saying, "We are giving for an Order," gave robes. Then it occurred to that monk: "It is laid down by the Lord that the least Order is fourfold,¹ but I am solitary, and these people, saying, 'We are giving for an Order gave robes. What now if I should convey these robes belonging to an Order to Sāvattī?" Then that monk, taking those robes, having gone to Sāvattī, told this matter to the Lord. He said: "These robes, monk, are for you yourself² until the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges)."³

Kd.8.24.1

Vin.1.299

BD.4.427

Kd.8.24.2

"This is a case, monks,⁴ where a monk is spending the rains alone. People there, saying, 'We are giving for an Order' give robes. I allow, monks, those robes (to be) for him himself until the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges)."

Now at that time a certain monk spent a favourable time of year⁵ alone. People there, saying: "We are giving for an Order," gave robes. Then it occurred to that monk: "It is laid down by the Lord that the least Order is fourfold, but I am solitary, and these people, saying, 'We are giving for an Order', gave robes. What now if I should convey these robes belonging to an Order to Sāvattī?" Then that monk, taking those robes, having gone to Sāvattī, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to distribute (these robes) to the Order that is present.

Kd.8.24.3

"This is a case, monks, where a monk is spending a favourable time (of year) alone. People there, saying, 'We are giving for an Order', give robes. I allow, monks, that monk to allot⁶ those robes, saying: "These robes are for

Kd.8.24.4

¹ At [Vin.1.319](#) five kinds of *saṅghas*, classified by the number of their members, are given together with the official acts that each might perform. ² *tuyh'eva*, just for you. ³ See [Bu-NP.1](#), [Bu-NP.2](#), [Bu-NP.3](#). ⁴ Although the preceding sentence ends with *iti*, it appears from the vocative *bhikkhave*, no less than from the *anujānāmi*, just below, that Gotama is regarded as still addressing the monks. ⁵ *utukāla*. [Vin-a.1130](#) says "another time than the rains". At [Vin.2.167](#) *utukāla* stands in opposition to "the three months of the rains". [AN.iv.138](#) discriminates between three seasons: *gimha*, the hot weather, *vassa*, the rains, and *hemanta*, the cold weather. *Utukāla* above doubtless means a time of year that was not the rains, thus balancing the preceding paragraphs. ⁶ See above, [Kd.8.20.2](#).

me.’ If, monks, that monk does not allot that robe-material¹ (and) another monk comes, an equal portion should be given (to him). If, monks, the *kusa*-lot was not cast while that robe-material was being distributed by those monks (and) another monk comes, an equal portion should be given (to him). If monks, the *kusa*-lot was cast while that robe-material was being distributed by those monks (and) another monk comes, a portion need not be given (to him) if they are not willing.”²

Kd.8.24.5

Now at that time two brothers who were elders, the venerable Isidāsa³ and the venerable Isibhatta,⁴ having spent the rains at Sāvattthī, went to a certain village-residence. People, saying: “It is long since the elders came (here),” gave food with robes. The resident monks asked the elders:

BD.4.428

“Honoured sirs, thanks to the elders, these robes belonging to the Order, have accrued. Let the elders consent (to accept) a portion.” The elders spoke thus:

“In so far as we, your reverences, understand *dhamma* as taught by the Lord, these robes are for you yourselves until the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges).”

Kd.8.24.6

Now at that time three monks were spending the rains in Rājagaha. People there, saying: “We are giving for an Order,” gave robes. Then it occurred to these monks: “It is laid down by the Lord that the least Order is fourfold, but we are three persons, and these people, saying, ‘We are giving for an Order’, gave robes. Now what line of conduct should be followed by us?” Now at that time several elders, the venerable Nilavāsīn⁵ and the venerable Sāṇavāsīn⁶ and the venerable Gopaka and the venerable Bhagu⁷

Vin.1.300

¹ Singular here; plural above. ² Cf. Kd.16.11.3. ³ Mentioned apparently nowhere but here, see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁴ Mentioned apparently nowhere but here, see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁵ Mentioned apparently nowhere but here, see *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*. ⁶ *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* says “an epithet of Sambhūta *thera*”. *Vinaya Texts* ii.238, n.1 thinks he is probably the same as the Sāṇavāsī who took part in the Council of Vesālī. ⁷ *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* in its account of a Bhagu *thera* thinks that this one “is probably a different person” from the Bhagu of Vin.1.350, etc.

and the venerable Phalikasandāna, were staying at Pāṭaliputta¹ in the Cock's monastery.² Then these monks, having gone to Pāṭaliputta, asked the elders. The elders spoke thus: "In so far as we understand *dhamma* as taught by the Lord, it is that these robes are for you yourselves until the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges)."

THE STORY OF UPANANDA THE SAKYAN

Now at that time the venerable Upananda,³ the son of the Sakyans, having spent the rains at Sāvattthī, went to a certain village-residence. And there the monks assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. These spoke thus: "These robes, your reverence, belonging to the Order, will be distributed. Will you consent (to accept) a portion?"

Kd.8.25.1

BD.4.429

"Yes, your reverences, I will consent," and taking up a portion of the robe-material from there, he went to another residence. The monks there also assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. These also spoke thus: "These robes, your reverence, belonging to the Order, will be distributed. Will you consent (to accept) a portion?"

"Yes, your reverences, I will consent," and taking up a portion of the robe-material from there too, he went to another residence. The monks there also assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. These also spoke thus: "These robes, your reverence, belonging to the Order, will be distributed. Will you consent (to accept) a portion?"

"Yes, your reverences, I will consent," and taking up a portion of the robe-material from there too, taking a great bundle of robe-material, he came back again to Sāvattthī.

Kd.8.25.2

¹ Or Patna, the capital of Magadha before Asoka's time. See above, [BD.4.312](#); [DN.ii.87](#); *Buddhist India*, p.262; B.C. LAW, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p.10, p.11; C.H.I.i.189. ² Kukkuṭārāma. Referred to at [SN.v.15ff.](#), [SN.v.171](#); [AN.iii.57](#); [AN.v.342](#) = [MN.i.349](#). There was another *ārāma* of the same name at Kosambī, built by a *seṭṭhi*. It would have been an odd coincidence if the Pāṭaliputta one had also been built by a *seṭṭhi*, as Buddhaghosa says at [MN-a.iii.13](#) and also in Commentary on [AN.v.342](#) (see [GS.v.220](#), n.2). C.H.I.i.189 observes that Asoka is said to have built a monastery on the site of the Kukkuṭārāma; cf. C.H.I.i.501, C.H.I.i.518. ³ See [BD.2.42](#), n.1.

Monks spoke thus: “You, reverend Upananda, are of great merit;¹ much robe-material has accrued to you.”

“Whence, your reverences, is there merit for me? Now I, your reverences, having spent the rains at Sāvattthī, went to a certain village-residence. The monks were there assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. They spoke thus to me: ‘These robes, your reverence, belonging to the Order, will be distributed. Will you consent (to accept) a portion?’ ‘Yes, your reverences, I will consent,’ and taking up a portion of the robe-material from there, I went to another residence. The monks there also assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. These also spoke thus to me: ‘These robes, your reverence, belonging to the Order, will be distributed. Will you consent (to accept) a portion?’ ‘Yes, your reverences, I will consent,’ and taking up a portion of the robe-material from there too, I went to another residence. The monks there also assembled, wishing to distribute robe-material. These also spoke thus to me: ‘These robes ... a portion?’ ‘Yes, your reverences, I will consent,’ and I took up a portion of robe-material from there too. Thus much robe-material accrued to me.”

Vin.1.301

BD.4.430

Kd.8.25.3

“But is it that you, reverend Upananda, having spent the rains somewhere else, will consent (to accept) a portion of robe-material elsewhere?”²

“Yes, your reverences,” he said. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having spent the rains somewhere else, consent (to accept) robe-material elsewhere?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, having spent the rains somewhere else, consented (to accept) a portion of robe-material elsewhere?”

“It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him saying:

“How can you, foolish man, having spent the rains somewhere else, consent (to accept) a portion of robe-material elsewhere? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing (the number of) those who are pleased.”

Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ Same thing said to him at [Vin.3.215](#). ² Cf. [Vin.3.66](#), [Vin.4.76f.](#), [Vin.4.81f.](#)

“Monks, a portion of robe-material is not to be consented to elsewhere by one who has spent the rains somewhere else. Whoever should consent (to accept), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, spent the rains alone in two residences, thinking: “Thus will much robe-material accrue to me.” Then it occurred to these monks: “Now, how should a share of robe-material be given to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.8.25.4

“Monks, give one share¹ to the foolish man. For this is a case, monks, where a monk is spending the rains alone in two residences, thinking, ‘Thus will much robe-material accrue me’. If he stays half (the time) at one, half (the time) at the other, half a share of robe-material should be given (to him) at the one, half at the other; or where he spends the more (time), from there is the share of the robe-material to be given (to him).”

BD.4.431

ON THE STORY OF ONE ILL

Now at that time a certain monk was suffering from dysentery; he lay fallen in his own excrements. Then the Lord, as he was touring the lodgings with the venerable Ānanda as his attendant,² approached that monk’s dwelling-place. The Lord saw that monk lying fallen in his own excrements; seeing him he approached that monk, and having approached he spoke thus to that monk:

Kd.8.26.1

“What is your disease, monk?”

“Lord, I have dysentery.”

“But, monk, have you anyone who tends you?”

“I have not, Lord,” he said.

“Why do not the monks tend you?”

Vin.1.302

“I, Lord, am of no use to the monks, therefore the monks do not tend me.”

Kd.8.26.2

¹ *ekādhippāya*, of which Vin-a.1132 says *ekapuggalapaṭivimsa*, one man’s share. ² Cf. above, BD.4.420.

Then the Lord addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “Go, Ānanda, bring water, we will bathe this monk.”

“Very well, Lord,” and the venerable Ānanda, having answered the Lord in assent, when he had brought the water, the Lord sprinkled on the water, the venerable Ānanda washed him over; the Lord took him by the head, the venerable Ānanda by the feet, and having raised him up, they laid him down on a couch.

Kd.8.26.3

Then the Lord, on that occasion, in that connection, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the monks:

“Is there, monks, in such and such a dwelling-place a monk who is ill?”

“There is, Lord.”

“What, monks, is that monk’s disease?”

“Lord, the venerable one has dysentery.”

“But, monks, is there anyone who is tending that monk?”

“There is not, Lord.”

BD.4.432

“Why do not the monks tend him?”

“Lord, this monk is of no use to the monks, therefore the monks do not tend that monk.”

“Monks, you have not a mother, you have not a father who might tend you. If you, monks, do not tend one another, then who is there who will tend you? Whoever, monks, would tend me, he should tend the sick.

Kd.8.26.4

“If he has a preceptor he should be tended for life by the preceptor, who should wait for his recovery.¹ If he has a teacher he should be tended for life by the teacher, who should wait for his recovery. If he has one who shares a dwelling-place ... If he has a pupil ... If he has a fellow-preceptor ... If he has a fellow-teacher he should be tended for life by the fellow-teacher, who should wait for his recovery. If he has neither a preceptor nor a teacher nor one who shares a dwelling-place nor a pupil nor a fellow-preceptor nor a fellow-teacher, he should be tended by the Order. If it should not tend him, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.8.26.5

“Endowed with five qualities,² monks, does one who is ill become difficult

¹ At Vin.1.50 it is said that a preceptor should be tended by the one who shares his cell; one who shares the cell by his preceptor (Vin.1.53); a teacher by his pupil and a pupil by his teacher (Vin.1.61). ² From here to end of Kd.8.26 = AN.iii.143. The five qualities, *arigā* here, are called *dhammā* there.

to tend: he becomes one who does not do what is beneficial;¹ he does not know moderation in what is beneficial; he becomes one who does not take medicine;² he becomes one who does not make clear the disease just as it comes to be to one who tends the sick and who wishes him well, saying as it is getting worse, ‘it is getting worse’, or as it is getting better, ‘It is getting better’, or as it is stationary, ‘It is stationary’; he becomes not the kind (of man) who endures bodily feelings which, arising, are painful, acute, sharp, shooting, disagreeable, miserable, deadly.³ Endowed with these five qualities, monks, does one who is ill become difficult to tend.

BD.4.433

Vin.1.303

Kd.8.26.6

“Endowed with five qualities, monks, does one who is ill become easy to tend: he becomes one who does what is beneficial; he knows moderation in what is beneficial; he becomes one who takes medicine; he makes clear the disease just as it comes to be to one who tends the sick and who wishes him well, saying as it is getting worse, ‘It is getting worse’, or as it is getting better, ‘It is getting better’ or as it is stationary, ‘It is stationary’; he becomes the kind (of man) who endures bodily feelings which, arising, are painful, acute, sharp, shooting, disagreeable, miserable, deadly. Endowed with these five qualities, monks, does one who is ill become easy to tend.

Kd.8.26.7

“Endowed with five qualities, monks, is one who tends the sick not fit to tend the sick: he comes to be not competent to provide the medicine; he does not know what is beneficial and what is not beneficial; he brings forward what is not beneficial, he takes away what is beneficial; he tends the sick in the hope of gain,⁴ not (from) amity of mind;⁵ he becomes one who loathes to remove excrement or urine or sweat or vomit; he does not come to be competent to gladden, rejoice, rouse, delight the sick from time

¹ *asappāyakārin*, a doer of what is not beneficial. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives for Mi.215, *sappāyakiriyā*, “giving a drug”. *gs.iii.110* translates “he treats not himself with physic”, and doubtless that which is beneficial has come to have the sense of medicine, drug. But at [Vin.1.292](#) *sappāyāni bhojanāni* must mean suitable or beneficial meals, and not meals that are medicines, for it comes under Visākha’s boon called “food for the sick”. There is also *sappāyāni bhesajjāni*, suitable, beneficial medicines, when she is asking to give medicines for the sick. ² *bhesajjāṃ na paṭisevitā hoti*. ³ Stock. For references see [BD.3.12](#), [n.2](#).

⁴ *āmisantaro*. Commentary on AN.iii.144 says “expecting (gifts of) robes, etc.” Vin-a.1133 mentions that *antara* means *kāraṇa*, and that *āmisantara* means *āmisam assa antaram*, gain is his motive. ⁵ *no mettacitto*, the mind, or heart, not in amity. *Mettā* at some time came to be one of the four *brahmāvihāras*, Brahma-abidings; See MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.216ff.

to time with *dhamma*-talk. Endowed with these five qualities, monks, one who tends the sick is not fit to tend the sick.

Kd.8.26.8

“Endowed with five qualities, monks, is one who tends the sick fit to tend the sick: he comes to be competent to provide the medicine; he knows what is beneficial and what is not beneficial; he takes away what is not beneficial, he brings forward what is beneficial; he tends the sick (from) amity of mind, not in the hope of gain; he does not become one who loathes to remove excrement or urine or sweat or vomit; he comes to be competent to gladden ... delight the sick from time to time with *dhamma*-talk. Endowed with these five qualities, monks, is one who tends the sick fit to tend the sick.”

BD.4.434

ON INHERITANCE

Kd.8.27.1

Now at that time two monks came to be going along a high-road in the Kosala country. They arrived at a certain residence where a certain monk was ill. Then it occurred to these monks: “Your reverences, tending the sick is praised by the Lord. Come, let us tend this monk,” and they tended him. While he was being tended by them he passed away. Then these monks, taking that monk’s bowl and robes, having gone to Sāvattḥī, told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.8.27.2

He said: “Monks, the Order is the owner of the bowl and robes of a monk who has passed away. But truly those who tend the sick are of great service. I allow you, monks, to give through the Order the three robes and the bowl to those who tended the sick. And thus, monks, should they be given: that monk who tended the sick, having approached the Order, should say to it: ‘Honoured sirs, the monk so and so has passed away; these three robes and the bowl were his.’ The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The monk so and so has passed away; these three robes and the bowl were his. If it seems right to the Order let the Order give these three robes and the bowl to those who tended the sick. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The monk so and so has passed away; these three robes and the bowl were his. The Order is giving these three robes and the bowl

Vin.1.304

to those who tended the sick. If the giving of these three robes and the bowl to those who tended the sick is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. These three robes and the bowl are given through the Order to those who tended the sick. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Now at that time a certain novice came to pass away. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, the Order is the owner of the bowl and robes of a novice who has passed away. But truly those who tend the sick are of great service. I allow you, monks, to give through the Order the robe and the bowl to those who tended the sick. And thus, monks, should they be given: That monk who tended the sick, having approached the Order, should say to it: ‘Honoured sirs, the novice so and so has passed away; this robe and the bowl were his.’ The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The novice so and so has passed away; this robe and bowl were his. If it seems right to the Order let the Order give this robe and bowl to those who tended the sick. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The novice so and so has passed away; this robe and bowl were his. The Order is giving this robe and bowl to those who tended the sick. If the giving of this robe and bowl to those who tended the sick is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. This robe and bowl are given through the Order to those who tended the sick. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Kd.8.27.3

BD.4.435

Now at that time a certain monk and a novice tended one who was ill. While he was being tended by these he passed away. Then it occurred to that monk who had tended the one who was ill: “Now what share of the robes is to be given to the novice who tended the one who was ill?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give an equal share to a novice who tended the sick.”

Kd.8.27.4

Vin.1.305

Kd.8.27.5

Now at that time a certain monk who had many goods, many requisites, came to pass away. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, the Order is the owner of the bowl and robes of a monk who has passed away. But truly those who tend the sick are of great service. I allow you, monks, to give through the Order the three robes and the bowl to those who tended the sick; to distribute through the Order that is present whatever few goods, few requisites are there; but whatever many goods, many requisites are there, these are for the Order of the four quarters¹—those who have come in, those who have not come in—they are not to be disposed of,² not to be divided up.”³

BD.4.436

ON REJECTION OF NAKEDNESS

Kd.8.28.1

Now at that time a certain monk, having become naked, approached the Lord; having approached he spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, in many a figure is the Lord a speaker in praise of desiring little, of contentment, of expunging (evil), of punctiliousness, of graciousness, of decreasing (the obstructions), of putting forth energy.⁴ Lord, this nakedness is, in many a figure, useful for desiring little, for contentment, for expunging (evil), for punctiliousness, for graciousness, for decreasing (the obstructions), for putting forth energy. It were good, Lord, if the Lord were to allow nakedness for monks.”

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: “It is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, observe nakedness,

¹ *cātuddisa saṅgha*. For discussion on this see S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, 1924, p.83ff. Cf. same expression at [Vin.2.147](#). ² *avissajjika*. Five classes of things that are *avissajjīyāni*, untransferable, not to be disposed of, are given at [Vin.2.170](#). ³ *avebhaṅgika*. The same five classes of things that are *avebhaṅgiyāni*, inalienable, are given at [Vin.2.171](#). If a monk disposes of or divides up any of these things he incurs a *thullaccaya* offence, and the disposal or division is reckoned to be null and void. ⁴ Stock in Vinaya. See [BD.1.37](#) for notes and references.

an observance of members of other sects?¹ It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...”

Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks saying: “**Monks, nakedness, an observance of members of other sects, is not to be observed.**² **Whoever should observe it, there is a grave offence.**”

ON REJECTION OF GARMENTS OF GRASS, ETC.

Now at that time a certain monk, having put on a *kusa*-grass garment ... a bark garment ... a garment of wood-shavings³ ... a hair-blanket ... a horse-hair blanket ... (a dress of) owls’ wings ... (a cloak made of strips of) black antelope hide,⁴ approached the Lord; having approached he spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, in many a figure is the Lord a speaker in praise of desiring little ... of putting forth energy. Lord, this (cloak made of strips of) black antelope hide is, in many a figure, useful for desiring little ... for putting forth energy. It were good, Lord, if the Lord were to allow (cloaks made of strips of) black antelope hide for the monks.”

The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: “It is not becoming ... it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, wear (a cloak made of strips of) black antelope hide, an emblem of members of other sects?⁵ Foolish man, it is not for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...”

¹ *titthiyāsamādāna*. Word-play probably intended here; for *samādāna* means both going for alms without taking the three robes with one (cf. *asamādānacāra* at [Vin.1.254](#)), and also adopting, undertaking, taking upon oneself. Here the latter must be meant, for cf. [Vin.1.159](#), where the same phrase is used with regard to the *titthiyās*’ ‘vow of silence’ *mūgabbata*.

² Cf. [Kd.8.15.7](#), [Kd.8.15.11](#). ³ *Phalaka* is usually a panel, board or plank. *Vinaya Texts* ii.246 and A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, vol.48, no.3, p.268 (referring to this passage) take it as a kind of cloth. ⁴ See [BD.1.52f.](#) for notes and references. The story at [Vin.3.34](#) (= [BD.1.52](#)) preceding those of monks dressed in these kinds of garments, is about a naked monk; this itself is preceded by a story of a monk clothed in a layman’s dress. ⁵ *titthiyādhaja*. Cf. [Vin.2.22](#), where it is said that *titthiyādhaja* is not to be worn by a monk who has been suspended for not seeing his offences. Commentary says (see *Vinaya Texts* ii.373, n.6) that *titthiyādhaja* means that garments of *kusa*-grass and the rest are not to be worn.; and cf. *arahaddhaja* at [Ja.i.65](#).

Kd.8.28.2

BD.4.437

Vin.1.306

Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, (a cloak made of strips of) black antelope hide, an emblem of members of other sects, is not to be worn. Whoever should wear (one), there is a grave offence.”

Kd.8.28.3

Now at that time a certain monk, having put on (a garment made of) stalks of swallow-wort¹ ... having put on (a cloth of) fibre,² approached the Lord; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, in many a figure is the Lord a speaker in praise of desiring little ... of putting forth energy. Lord, this (cloth of) fibre is, in many a figure, useful for desiring little ... for putting forth of energy. It were good, Lord, if the Lord were to allow (a cloth or) fibre for the monks.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying: “It is not becoming ... it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, put on (a cloth of) fibre? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.438

“Monks, (a cloth of) fibre is not to be put on. Whoever should put (one) on, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

ON REJECTION OF ALL DARK GREEN

Kd.8.29.1

Now at that time the group of six monks wore robes that were all dark green,³ they wore robes that were all yellow, they wore robes that were all red, they wore robes that were all crimson, they wore robes that were

¹ *akkanāla*. *Akka* is the plant *Calotropis gigantea*. Word occurs at MN.i.429. ² *potthaka*. Vin-a.1135 says that it is made of *makaci*. This, according to *Pali-English Dictionary* is a “kind of cloth, material, fibre”. *Potthaka* occurs in a simile at AN.i.246, and there is no indication that monks should not wear it; it is called painful to handle and of little worth. AN-a.ii.359 describes it as *vākamayavattham*, “a cloth made of bark”. Also see Pp.33. Pp-a.216 calls *potthaka*: *sāṇavākasāṭṭaka*, a cloak of bark and coarse hemp. On *sāṇa* see BD.2.143, n.3. ³ *nilaka*, or blue; see BD.2.408, n.1, BD.2.408, n.2. For this sequence of colours cf. Vin.1.185 = Vin.2.267, and see Buddhaghosa’s explanations at Vin-a.1083. This passage, with the omission of the last item, recurs at Vin.2.267 for the group of six nuns.

all black, they wore robes that were all dyed brownish-yellow,¹ they wore robes that were all dyed reddish-yellow,² they wore robes with borders that were not cut up, they wore robes with long borders, they wore robes with borders of flowers, they wore robes with borders of snakes' hoods, they wore jackets,³ they wore (garments of) the Tirīṭa tree,⁴ they wore turbans. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses." They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Monks, robes that are all dark green are not to be worn, robes that are all yellow are not to be worn ... a jacket is not to be worn, (a garment made from) the Tirīṭa tree is not to be worn, a turban is not to be worn. Whoever should wear (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing."

ON WHEN THERE IS NO ROBE AFTER THE RAINS

Now at that time monks, having spent the rains, and no robe-material having accrued, went away and left the Order⁵ and passed away; and they pretended to be novices and they pretended to be disavowers of the training and they pretended to be committers of an extreme offence and they pretended to be mad and they pretended to be unhinged and they pretended to have bodily pains and they pretended to be suspended for not seeing an offence and they pretended to be suspended for not making amends for an offence and they pretended to be suspended for not giving up a wrong view and they pretended to be eunuchs and they pretended that

Kd.8.30.1

Vin.1.307
BD.4.439

¹ *mahāraṅgaratta*, Vin-a.1083 saying that it is the colour of a centipede's back. ² *mahānāmaratta*, Vin-a.1083 saying that it is the colour of withered leaves, a mixed colour. ³ *kañcuka*, cf. AN.i.145. ⁴ *tirīṭaka*. *Symplocos racemosa*. Vin-a.1135 explains by *rukkhachalimayaṃ taṃ pādapuñchanam kātuṃ vaṭṭati*, made of the bark of a tree, one can make a foot-towel of it. Cf. AN.i.295 where the wearing of this comes among the practices of the "self-tormentors", or wasters-away. ⁵ This sequence = Vin.1.121 = Vin.2.173. Cf. also Vin.1.135, Vin.1.167, Vin.1.320.

they were living in communion, though it was by theft,¹ and they pretended that they had gone over to other sects² and they pretended to be animals³ and they pretended to be matricides⁴ and they pretended to be parricides⁵ and they pretended to be slayers of men perfected⁶ and they pretended to be seducers of nuns and they pretended to be schismatics⁷ and they pretended to be shedders of (a Truthfinder's) blood⁸ and they pretended to be hermaphrodites.⁹ They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.8.30.2

He said: "This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, no robe-material having accrued, goes away. If there is a suitable receiver,¹⁰ (robe-material) should be given (to him). This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, no robe-material having accrued, leaves the Order, passes away, pretends to be a novice, pretends to be a disavower of the training, pretends to be a committer of an extreme offence. The Order is the owner. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, no robe-material having accrued, pretends to be mad ... pretends to be suspended for not giving up a wrong view. If there is a suitable receiver, (robe-material) should be given (to him). This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, no robe-material having accrued, pretends to be a eunuch ... pretends to be a hermaphrodite. The Order is the owner.

BD.4.440

Kd.8.30.3

"This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, robe-material having accrued, but not having been distributed, goes away. If

¹ *theyyasamvāsaka*. At Vin.1.86 it is said that if such a one has not been ordained, he should not be ordained; if he has been ordained he should be expelled. This passage makes it clear that a monk, called a *theyyasamvāsaka* in the rule, took on himself the attributes of a monk without undergoing the training, and tried to become a *samvāsaka*, one in communion (see definition of *samvāsa* in the *Pārājikas*) by theft, *theyya*, of a monk's attributes. Explained at Vin-a.1016ff. ² *tittihiyapakkantaka*. At Vin.1.86 same is said of this as of *theyyasamvāsaka*. Explanation given at Vin-a.1021. ³ Same is said as of the two previous terms, Vin.1.88. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ⁴ Same is said as of the two previous terms, Vin.1.88. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ⁵ Same is said as of the two previous terms, Vin.1.88. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ⁶ Same is said as of previous terms at Vin.1.89. Explained at Vin-a.1022. ⁷ Same is said as of previous terms at Vin.1.89. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ⁸ Same is said as of previous terms at Vin.1.89. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ⁹ Same is said as of previous terms at Vin.1.89. Explained at Vin-a.1022f. ¹⁰ *paṭirūpe gāhake*. Vin-a.1135 says "if there is some monk who takes (robe-material), thinking, 'I am taking as for that monk', the meaning is that it should be given to him". Vin-a.1135 also points out that among these twenty-three types of men, sixteen do not receive the material and seven do.

there is a suitable receiver, (robe-material) should be given (to him). This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, robe-material having accrued, but not having been distributed, leaves the Order ... pretends to be a committer of an extreme offence. The Order is the owner. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, robe-material having accrued, but not having been distributed, pretends to be mad ... pretends to be suspended for not giving up a wrong view. If there is a suitable receiver, (robe-material) should be given (to him). This is a case, monks, where a monk, having spent the rains, robe-material having accrued, but not having been distributed, pretends to be a eunuch ... pretends to be a hermaphrodite. The Order is the owner.

ON A ROBE FOR A DIVIDED SAṄGHA

“This is a case, monks, where monks, having spent the rains, robe-material not having accrued, the Order is divided.¹ People there saying: ‘We are giving for an Order,’ give water² to one part,³ they give robe-material to the other part. This is for the Order.⁴ This is a case, monks, where monks, having spent the rains, robe-material not having accrued, the Order is divided. People there saying: ‘We are giving for an Order,’ giving water to one part, they give robe-material to the same part. This is for the Order.

Kd.8.30.4

BD.4.441

Vin.1.308

Kd.8.30.5

“This is a case, monks, where monks, having spent the rains, robe-material not having accrued, the Order is divided. People there saying: ‘We are giving for a part,’ give water to one part, they give robe-material to the other part. This is for a part. This is a case, monks, where monks, having spent the rains, robe-material not having accrued, the Order is divided. People

¹ *bhijjati*. Vin-a.1135 says that being divided, like the (quarrelsome) monks of Kosambī, there come to be two parts (or divisions). ² *udaka*. Vin-a.1135 saying that they give *dakkhiṇodakaṇ ca gandhādāni ca*, water that is *dakkhiṇa* (i.e. either ceremonial, or to wash in) and perfumes and so on. ³ *pakkha*, side, party, faction. Cf. *pakkha* at Vin.3.173 in definition of “should go forward with a schism”; and at Vin.3.175 in definition of “take his part”. See also BD.3.190, n.3. ⁴ Vin-a.1135 says that “this, *etaṃ*, is for the two divisions of the whole Order. It should be distributed among the two sides after a gong has been beaten”. By “whole Order” Buddhaghosa means that part of it which spent the rains together in the same residence.

there saying: ‘We are giving for a part,’ give water to one part, they give robe-material to the same part. This is for the part.

Kd.8.30.6

“This is a case, monks, where monks, having spent the rains, robe-material having accrued (but) not being distributed, the Order is divided. It should be equally distributed among all.”

ON RIGHTLY AND WRONGLY ALLOTTED

Kd.8.31.1

Now at that time the venerable Revata sent robe-material for the venerable Sāriputta by the hand of a certain monk, saying: “Give this robe-material to the elder.” Then on the way that monk took that robe-material on trust¹ for the venerable Revata. Then the venerable Revata, having met the venerable Sāriputta, asked:

“I, honoured sir, sent robe-material for the elder. Has that robe-material arrived?” “I have not seen that robe-material, your reverence.” Then the venerable Revata spoke thus to that monk: “I, your reverence, sent robe-material by the venerable one’s hand for the elder. Where is that robe-material?”

“I, honoured sir, took that robe-material on trust for the venerable one.” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.8.31.2

He said: “This is a case, monks, where a monk is sending robe-material by a monk’s hand, saying: ‘Give this robe-material to so and so.’ If he, while on the way, takes it on trust for him who sends it, it is rightly taken. If he takes it on trust for him to whom it was being sent, it is wrongly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk is sending robe-material by a monk’s hand, saying, ‘Give this robe-material to so and so’. If he, while on the way, takes it on trust for him to whom it was being sent, it is wrongly taken. If he takes it on trust for him who sent it, it is rightly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... to so and so’. While he is on the way he hears that he who sent it has passed away. If he allots to him² the robe-material of the one who is deceased, it is rightly allotted. If he takes it on trust for him to whom it was being sent, it is wrongly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... ”

BD.4.442

¹ I.e. he used it himself. On *vissāsam gaṇhāti*, see [Kd.8.19.1](#) and [BD.2.10, n.5](#). ² *tassa*.

to so and so'. While he is on the way he hears that he to whom it was being sent has passed away. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased, it is wrongly allotted. If he takes it on trust for him who sent it, it is rightly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... '... to so and so'. While he is on the way he hears that both have passed away. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased—of him who sent it—it is rightly allotted. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased—of him to whom it was being sent—it is wrongly allotted.

Vin.1.309

Kd.8.31.3

“This is a case, monks, where a monk sends robe-material by the hand of a monk, saying, ‘I am giving this robe-material to so and so’. If he, while on the way, takes it on trust for him who sends it, it is wrongly taken. If he takes it on trust for him to whom it is being sent, it is rightly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... to so and so’. If he, while on the way, takes it on trust for him to whom it was being sent, it is rightly taken. If he takes it on trust for him who sends it, it is wrongly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... to so and so’. While he is on the way, he hears that he who sent it has passed away. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased, it is wrongly allotted. If he takes it on trust for him to whom it was being sent, it is rightly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... to so and so’. While he is on the way, he hears that he to whom it was being sent has passed away. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased, it is rightly allotted. If he takes it on trust for him who sent it, it is wrongly taken. This is a case, monks, where a monk ... ‘... to so and so’. While he is on the way, he hears that both have passed away. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased—of him who sent it—it is wrongly allotted. If he allots to him the robe-material of the one who is deceased—of him to whom it was being sent—it is rightly allotted.”¹

BD.4.443

EIGHT CHANNELS FOR THE ACCRUING OF ROBES

Kd.8.32.1

“There are, monks, these eight channels¹ for the accruing of robe-material:² if he gives on a boundary,³ if he gives on agreement, if he gives with an announcement of almsfood, if he gives for an Order, if he gives for both Orders, if he gives for an Order which has spent the rains, if he gives having offered,⁴ if he gives to an individual.

“He gives on a boundary: it should be distributed to as many monks as are within the boundary.

“He gives on agreement: several residences come to be equal receivers; what is given in each residence is given for all.

“He gives with an announcement of almsfood: they say, ‘We give it there where the Order’s constant services are done’.

“He gives for an Order: it should be distributed among the Order that is present.

“He gives for both Orders: even if there are many monks (but only) one nun, a half should be given; even if there are many nuns (but only) one monk, a half should be given.

“He gives for an Order which has spent the rains: it should be distributed to as many monks as have spent the rains in that residence.

Vin.1.310

“He gives, having offered: conjeys or rice or solid foods or robes or lodgings or medicines.

“He gives to an individual: he says, ‘I am giving this robe-material to so and so’.”⁵

The Section on Robe-material: The Eighth

THIS IS ITS KEY

BD.4.444

Urban council of Rājagaha, having seen the courtesan at Vesālī, having gone back to Rājagaha made this known to the king. /

¹ *Vinaya Texts* ii.253, n.1 says “The reason of all this is, that if the sender (A) says to the messenger (B), ‘Give this robe to the sendee (C)’, the property in the robe does not pass; if A says to B, ‘I give this robe to C’, it does pass.” ¹ *mātikā*, as in *Kd.7.1.7*. ² *cīvarassa uppādāyā*. ³ *sīmāya*. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1136 enumerates fifteen kinds of boundaries.

⁴ *ādissa*. Buddhaghosa at Vin-a.1144 explains as *ādisitvā paricchinditvā*, having dedicated, having decided. ⁵ Vin-a.1145, “he may say, ‘I am giving this to you, honoured sir’, or ‘I am giving this to you and to your pupils’”.

Indeed Sālavatīka's child was Abhaya's son,¹
 known as Jivaka because the prince asked, "Is he alive?" /
 Then he, having gone to Taxila, having studied, very famous,²
 dispelled a seven year old disease by treatment through the nose, /
 He removed the king's fistula with an ointment (the king saying),
 "Tend me and the women and the awakened one's Order".³ /
 And the merchant of Rājagaha, the tending on the twist in the bowels.
 He dispelled Pajjota's great disease by a drink of clarified butter. /
 And office, Siveyya(ka cloths), he lubricated the humours,
 the purging thirty times all together with three handfuls of lotuses. /
 He asked for the boon of good behaviour,⁴ and he accepted Siveyya(ka cloths),
 and the Truth-finder allowed the gift of householders' robes. /
 Many robes accrued in Rājagaha (and) in the country.
 A mantle, and likewise a silken one,⁵ a fleecy coverlet, worth half a kāsi, /
 And various kinds, satisfaction, they did not wait and they waited,
 first, afterwards, together, and an agreement, they conveyed it back, /
 Store-room, and unguarded, and likewise they turned away,
 heaped up, and a tumult. How is it to be divided? How is it to be given? /
 About his own and more than one portion. How is a share to be given?
 With dung and with cold water, to overflow, they did not know, /
 Pouring out, and a vessel, and in a dish, and on the ground, BD.4.445
 white ants, in the middle, they wore out, on one side, and about being stiff, /
 Harsh, not cut up, laid out in strips, he saw the bundles,
 having thought it over the Sakyan sage allowed three robes. /
 About another that is extra, it accrued, and then it was torn,
 the four quarters, she asked for the boon to give cloths for the rains, /
 (Food for) the incoming, the outgoing, the sick,
 those who tend the sick and medicine, constant supply,
 and bathing cloths, abundant, too small, /
 Thick scabs, for the face, linen, complete, what is allotted,
 the least, it was made heavy, the corner, the thread frayed out, /
 They gave way, and they were not enough, extra supply, and many, Vin.1.311
 in the Blind Men's Grove, through thoughtlessness,
 the rains alone, and during a favourable time, /
 Two brothers, in Rājagaha, Upananda, again in two,
 dysentery, the ill one and the two, on what belongs to the sick,⁶ /
 Naked one, kusa-grass, bark garment, wood shavings, hair blanket,

¹ *atraja*, usually meaning "own son". ² *mahābhisa*, variant reading *mahābhañña*. ³ *bud-dhasaṅgha*, in place of text's (Kd.8.1.15) *buddhapamukha bhikkhusaṅgha*. It is not clear to me whether the king was enjoining Jivaka to tend the Buddha himself or only the Order.

⁴ *pakatatta vara*. ⁵ *kosika*, replacing *koseyyapāvāra* of Kd.8.1.36. ⁶ Text and Siamese edition read *gilāyanā*. Sinhalese edition reads *gilānakā*, which I follow.

horse-hair, and owls' wings, black antelope, and stalks of swallow-wort, /
 Fibre, green and yellow, red, and about crimson,
 black, brownish-reddish-yellow, then borders not cut up, /
 Long, flowers, snakes' hoods, jackets, Tiriṭa-tree, turbans,
 not having accrued, he went away,¹ the Order is divided at all the times, /
 They give to a part, for the Order, the venerable Revata sent,
 he takes on trust, if he allots, eight channels for robe-material.

Vin.1.312

¹ *pakkamati*; text, [Vin.1.307](#), *pakkamanti*.

9. THE MONKS FROM CAMPĀ (CAMPEYYA)

THE STORY OF THE MONK KASSAPAGOTTA

At one time the awakened one, the Lord was staying at Campā¹ on the bank of the Gaggarā lotus-pool.² Now at that time in the Kāsi country there was a village named Vāsabha;³ a monk called Kassapagotta⁴ was a resident there, he was attached to the tradition,⁵ he had made an effort⁶ so that well behaved monks who had not come should come, and so that well behaved monks who had come should live in comfort,⁷ and so that that residence should attain growth, expansion, maturity. Now at that time several monks walking on tour among the Kāsi people arrived at the village of Vāsabha. The monk Kassapagotta saw these monks coming in the distance; seeing them he made ready a seat,⁸ he put out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand, having gone out to meet them he received their bowls and robes, he offered them drinking water, he made an effort in the matter of bathing (for them), he also made an effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice.

Kd.9.1.1
BD.4.446

¹ Capital of Aṅga. Called Campā according to MN-a.iii.1 because of its number of *campaka* (white jasmine) trees. ² MN-a.iii.1=DN-a.i.279 say that it was excavated by a chief consort (Vin-a.1145 by a woman) called Gaggarā. ³ Mentioned also at Pv.iii.1.2. ⁴ This as the name of a monk occurs at AN.i.236 and SN.i.198. *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* suggests that the Saṃyutta one is to be identified with either the Vinaya or the Aṅguttara Kassapagotta. N.B. that here and at AN.i.236 he is called “a (the) monk called Kassapagotta”, while at SN.i.198 he is called “the venerable Kassapagotta”. The name may be a clan name or a personal one. ⁵ *tantibaddha*, Vin-a.1145 saying “he was fettered by the *tanti* (tradition, sacred text, thread, string) of things to be done (duties, obligations) in that residence”. Cf. *tantimaggā* at Vin.1.156 (see above, BD.4.206). ⁶ *ussukkaṃ āpanno*, cf. *ussukhaṃ akāsi* below and *ussukkaṃ karoti* at Vin.4.280, Vin.4.301. ⁷ *phāsu vihareyyuṃ*. *Phāsuvihāra* is perhaps a technical expression, see Vin.1.92 (above BD.4.118, n.2). ⁸ As at Vin.4.231, Vin.4.310.

Then it occurred to these incoming monks: “Good indeed is this resident monk, your reverences, he makes an effort in the matter of bathing (for us), he also makes an effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for us). Come now, let us, your reverences, settle down just here at Vāsabha village.”
 Then these incoming monks settled down just there at Vāsabha village.

BD.4.447

Kd.9.1.2

Then it occurred to the monk Kassapagotta: “What was travel-weariness in these incoming monks has abated; further they, who did not know which alms-resorts¹ were appointed,² now know these alms-resorts which were appointed. It is indeed arduous to make an effort all one’s life among strangers,³ and hinting is not liked by the people.⁴ Suppose I were to make no effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice?” He made no effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice. Then it occurred to those incoming monks:

Vin.1.313

“Formerly, your reverences, this resident monk made an effort in the matter of bathing (for us), he also made an effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for us), but now he makes no effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for us). This resident monk, your reverences, is now corrupt. Come now, your reverences, let us suspend⁵ the resident monk.”

Kd.9.1.3

Then these incoming monks, having assembled together, spoke thus to the monk Kassapagotta: “Now, formerly you, your reverence, used to make an effort in the matter of bathing (for us), you also used to make an effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for us), but now you make no effort in the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for us). You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence; do you see this offence?”

“There is no offence of mine, your reverences, that I can see.”

Then these incoming monks suspended the monk Kassapagotta for not seeing the offence.⁶ Then it occurred to the monk Kassapagotta: “Indeed I do not know this: whether this is an offence or is no offence, and whether I have fallen or have not fallen, and whether I am suspended or am not

BD.4.448

¹ *gocara*, cf. Vin.1.292 (above, BD.4.417). ² *appakataññu*, cf. BD.2.390, n.3. ³ *parakulesu*. Probably “strangers” because they were not the families who supported Kassapagotta himself, but he went to them for alms for the “incoming monks”. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.144 (BD.1.246), Vin.3.227 (BD.2.79). ⁵ *ukkipāma*. *Ukkipati* is not to “pronounce expulsion” as translated at *Vinaya Texts* ii.257. See BD.3.28, n.4. ⁶ Cf. Kd.11.25-30.

suspended, or whether it is by (an act) that is legitimate¹ or that is not legitimate, or by (one) that is reversible² or that is irreversible, or by (one) that is fit to stand³ or that is not fit to stand. Suppose that I, having gone to Campā, were to ask the Lord about this matter?”

Kd.9.1.4

Then the monk Kassapagotta, having packed away his lodging, taking his bowl and robe, set out for Campā; in due course he approached Campā and the Lord. Having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for awakened ones, for lords to exchange friendly greetings with incoming monks. So the Lord spoke thus to the monk Kassapagotta: “I hope, monk, that things went well with you, I hope you had enough to support life, I hope you have come on the journey with but little fatigue. But where, monk, have you come from?”

“Things did go well with me, Lord, I had enough to support life, Lord, and I, Lord, came on the journey with but little fatigue.

Kd.9.1.5

“There is, Lord, in the Kāsi country a village called Vāsabha. I, Lord, a resident there, attached to the tradition, had made an effort so that well behaved monks who had not come should come, and so that well behaved monks who had come should live in comfort, and so that that residence should attain growth, expansion, maturity. Then, Lord, several monks walking on tour among the people of Kāsi arrived at the village of Vāsabha. I, Lord, saw those monks coming in the distance; seeing them I made ready a seat ... Then, Lord, it occurred to these incoming monks: ‘Good indeed is this resident monk ...’ ... Then, Lord, these incoming monks settled down, just there in Vāsabha village. Then, Lord, it occurred to me: ‘... Suppose I were to make no effort in ... the matter of conje, solid food, rice (for them)?’ So then I made no effort ... Then, Lord, these incoming monks, having assembled together, spoke thus to me: ‘Now, formerly, your reverence ... Do you see this offence?’ Then, Lord, these incoming monks suspended me for not seeing the offence. Then, Lord, it occurred to me: ‘Indeed I do not know ... Suppose that I, having gone to Campā, were to ask the Lord about this matter?’ That is why, Lord, I have come.”

Vin.1.314

BD.4.449

Kd.9.1.6

¹ *dhammika*; cf. Vin.4.284-Vin.4.285; cf. “definition” of *dhammikakamma* at Vin.4.152; and see below, BD.4.453 (*adhammikakamma*). Possibly *kamma* is omitted above unintentionally.

² *Kuppa*; cf. Vin.4.153. ³ *ṭhānāraha*. These three expressions, and their opposites occur at Vin.1.111 (above, BD.4.146).

“This is no offence, monk, this is not an offence; you are unfallen, you have not fallen; you are unsuspending, you were not suspended; you were suspended by a (formal) act that was not legitimate, that was reversible, that was not fit to stand. Go you, monk, settle down there at Vāsabha village.”

“Very well, Lord,” and the monk Kassapagotta having answered the Lord in assent, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, keeping his right side towards him, set out for Vāsabha village.

Kd.9.1.7

Then these incoming monks became doubtful, they became remorseful. They thought: “Indeed it was unprofitable for us, indeed it was not profitable for us, indeed it was ill-gotten by us, indeed it was not well-gotten by us, that we suspended a pure¹ monk, not an offender, without cause, without reason. Come now, your reverences, having gone to Campā, let us confess the transgression as a transgression to the Lord.” Then these incoming monks, having packed away their lodgings, taking their bowls and robes, set out for Campā; in due course they approached Campā and the Lord. Having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for awakened ones, for lords to exchange friendly greetings with incoming monks. So the Lord spoke thus to those monks: “I hope, monks, that things went well with you, I hope you had enough to support life, I hope you have come on the journey with but little fatigue. But where, monks, have you come from?”

“Things have gone well with us, Lord, we had enough to support life, Lord, and we came on the journey. Lord, with but little fatigue. There is, Lord, in the Kāsi country a village called Vāsabha. We come from there, Lord.”

Kd.9.1.8

“Did you, monks, suspend a resident monk?”

“Yes, Lord.”

BD.4.450

“For what cause, monks, for what reason?”

“There was no cause, Lord, no reason.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

Vin.1.315

“It is not fitting, monks, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not

¹ *suddha* in such a connection means that a monk has committed no offences, or that if he has he has confessed them, and so is “pure” to take his place at the Pātimokkha recitation; Cf. [Vin.1.114](#) (above, [BD.4.151](#)), and epilogue to each class of rules in the Vibhaṅgas.

worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish men, suspend a pure monk, not an offender, without cause, without reason? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a pure monk, not an offender, is not to be suspended without cause, without reason. Whoever should suspend one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.9.1.9

Then these monks, rising from their seats, having arranged their upper robes over one shoulder, having inclined their heads towards the Lord’s feet, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, a transgression has overcome us,¹ in that we, foolish, misguided, wrong that we were, suspended a pure monk, not an offender, without cause, without reason. Lord, let the Lord acknowledge our transgression as a transgression for the sake of restraint in the future.”

“Truly, monks, a transgression has overcome you, in that you, foolish, misguided, wrong that you were, suspended a pure monk, not an offender, without cause, without reason. But if you, monks, having seen the transgression as a transgression, confess according to the rule, we acknowledge it for you; for, monks, in the discipline for an *ariyan* this is growth: whoever having seen a transgression as a transgression confesses it according to the rule, he attains restraint in the future.”

ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE IN AN INCOMPLETE ASSEMBLY, ETC.

Now at that time at Campā monks carried out (formal) acts like these: they carried out a (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly, they carried out a (formal) act not by rule, in a complete assembly, they carried out a (formal) act by a rule, in an incomplete assembly, they carried out a (formal) act, by what had the appearance of a rule, in an incomplete assembly, they carried out a (formal) act by what had the appearance of a rule, in a complete assembly; and one² suspended one and one suspended

Kd.9.2.1

BD.4.451

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.18–Vin.4.19](#), and see [BD.2.200](#), notes. ² I.e. an individual monk.

two and one suspended several and one suspended an Order, and two suspended one and two suspended two and two suspended several and two suspended an Order, and several suspended one and several suspended two and several suspended several and several suspended an Order, and an Order suspended an Order.¹

Kd.9.2.2

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks at Campā carry out (formal) acts like these? How can they carry out a (formal) act by rule, in an incomplete assembly? ... How can they carry out a (formal) act by what has the appearance of a rule, in a complete assembly? And how can one suspend one ... and how can an Order suspend an Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.1.316

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks at Campā carry out (formal) acts like these? Do they carry out a (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... and does an Order suspend an Order?”

“It is true, Lord.” The awakened one, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“Monks, it is not fitting in these foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is unworthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can these foolish men carry out (formal) acts like these? How can they carry out a (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly? ... and how can an Order suspend an Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.9.2.3

“If, monks, a (formal) act is carried out not by rule, in an incomplete assembly, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. A (formal) act carried out not by rule, in a complete assembly, is not a formal act and ought not to be carried out ... A (formal) act carried out by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly, is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out; and if one suspends one it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out ... and if an Order suspends an Order it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

BD.4.452

Kd.9.2.4

“Monks, there are these four (formal) acts: a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule, in an incomplete assembly; a (formal) act (carried out) not

¹ See *Vinaya Texts* ii.262, n.

by rule in a complete assembly; a (formal) act (carried out) by rule in an incomplete assembly; a (formal) act (carried out) by rule in a complete assembly. Herein, monks, that which is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule, in an incomplete assembly, this (formal) act, monks, because it lacks reference to rule,¹ because of the incompleteness² (of the assembly), is reversible, is not fit to stand. Monks, a (formal) act like this should not be carried out, and a (formal) act like this is not allowed by me. Herein, monks, that which is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule, in a complete assembly, this (formal) act, monks, because it lacks reference to rule, is reversible, is not fit to stand ... and a (formal) act like this is not allowed by me. Herein, monks, that which is a (formal) act (carried out) by rule, in an incomplete assembly, this (formal) act, monks, because of the incompleteness (of the assembly), is reversible ... is not allowed by me. Herein, monks, that which is a (formal) act (carried out) by rule, in a complete assembly, this (formal) act, monks, because it has reference to rule, because of the completeness (of the assembly), is irreversible, it is fit to stand. Monks, a (formal) act like this may be carried out and a (formal) act like this is allowed by me. Therefore, monks, thinking: ‘We will carry out a (formal) act like this, that is to say by rule, in a complete assembly’—it is thus that you must train yourselves.”

ON AN ACT WITHOUT A MOTION, ETC.

Now at that time the group of six monks carried out (formal) acts like these: they carried out a (formal) act not by rule in an incomplete assembly; they carried out a (formal) act not by rule in a complete assembly; they carried out a (formal) act by rule in an incomplete assembly; they carried out a (formal) act by what had the appearance of a rule in an incomplete assembly; they carried out a (formal) act by what had the appearance of a rule in a complete assembly; they also carried out a (formal) act for which a motion had not been furnished³ although a proclamation had been furnished;⁴

Kd.9.3.1

BD.4.453

¹ *adhammattā*, not “wickedness” as *Critical Pali Dictionary* gives. ² *vaggattā*.

³ *ñattivipanna*. ⁴ *anussāvanasampanna*, i.e. a proclamation of a *kammavācā*, the resolution. See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.150.

Vin.1.317 they also carried out a (formal) act for which a proclamation had not been furnished although a motion had been furnished; they also carried out a (formal) act for which a motion had not been furnished and for which a proclamation had not been furnished; they also carried out a (formal) act that was against the rule; they also carried out a (formal) act that was against discipline;¹ they also carried out a (formal) act that was against the Teacher's instruction;² they also carried out a (formal) act that had been protested against,³ that was not legitimate, reversible, not fit to stand. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

“How can this group of six monks carry out (formal) acts like these? How can they carry out a (formal) act not by rule in an incomplete assembly? ... How can they carry out a (formal) act that has been protested against, that is not legitimate,⁴ reversible, not fit to stand?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks carried out (formal) acts like these; that they carried out a (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... a (formal) act that has been protested against, that is not legitimate, reversible, not fit to stand?”

Kd.9.3.2 “It is true, Lord.” ... Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.4.454 “Monks, a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule, in an incomplete assembly, is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out ... A (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of a rule in a complete assembly is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. Monks, a (formal) act for which a motion is not furnished, although a proclamation is furnished, is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. Monks, a (formal) act for which a proclamation is furnished, although a motion is not furnished,

¹ Vin-a.1146 says that discipline here means “reproving, making (someone) remember”, i.e. giving the person against whom one is about to carry out a formal act a chance to confess his offence. ² Vin-a.1146 says that this provides for a motion and a proclamation.

³ *paṭikuṭṭhakata*. Vin-a.1146 says that it was protested against (*paṭikuṭṭha*) but was also carried out (*kata*)—it was carried out in spite of the protests of others. See *paṭikkosati* at beginning of Bu-Pc.79, where the monks protest when a formal act is being carried out.

⁴ Omitted in Oldenberg's text, but contained in the Sinhalese edition.

is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. Monks, a (formal) act for which a motion is not furnished and for which a proclamation is not furnished, is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. Monks, a (formal) act carried out against the rule ... against the discipline ... against the Teacher's instruction is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. Monks, a (formal) act that has been protested against, that is not legitimate, reversible, not fit to stand, is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

“Monks, there are these six (formal) acts: a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule, a (formal) act (carried out) in an incomplete assembly, a (formal) act (carried out) in a complete assembly, a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule in an incomplete assembly, a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule in a complete assembly, a (formal) act (carried out) by rule in a complete assembly.

Kd.9.3.3

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule? If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution,¹ one carries out the (formal) act by means of the one motion but does not proclaim the resolution, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule. If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, one carries out the (formal) act by means of two motions but does not proclaim the resolution, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule. If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, one carries out the (formal) act by means of the one resolution but does not propose the motion, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule. If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, one carries out the (formal) act by means of two resolutions but does not propose the motion, it is a (formal) act carried out not by rule.

Kd.9.3.4

BD.4.455

“If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times,² one carries out the (formal) act by means of one motion but does not proclaim the resolution, then it is a (formal) act (carried

Vin.1.318

¹ *ñattidutiya*. This is a formal act in two parts, the motion, *ñatti*, being the first; the second part, *dutiya*, which consists of one proclamation, has to be made before the decision of an Order can be arrived at. ² *ñatticatuttha*, a formal act in four parts: the motion, and then the resolution, but this has to be proclaimed not once, but three times, have no neat expressions for such procedure.

out) not by rule. If monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times, one carries out the (formal) act by means of two motions ... three motions ... four motions but does not proclaim the resolution, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule. If, monks, when it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times, one carries out the (formal) act by means of one proclamation ... two proclamations ... three proclamations ... four proclamations, but does not propose the motion, then it is a (formal) act carried out not by rule. This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) not by rule.

Kd.9.3.5

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) in an incomplete assembly? If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act¹ are not come, if the leave for absence of those fit (to declare their) leave of absence is not sent, if those who are present protest, it is a (formal) act in an incomplete assembly. If, monks, ... as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act are come, if the leave for absence ... is not sent, if those who are present protest, it is a (formal) act in an incomplete assembly. If, monks, ... as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act are come, if the leave for absence of those fit (to declare their) leave for absence is sent, if those who are present protest, it is a (formal) act (carried out) in an incomplete assembly.

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution put three times ... (*the same three cases as above are repeated here*) ... it is a (formal) act in an incomplete assembly. This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) in an incomplete assembly.

Kd.9.3.6

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) in a complete assembly? If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and as many monks as are (entitled to take part in the formal) act are come, if the leave for absence of those fit (to declare their) leave for absence is sent, if those who are present do not protest, it is a (formal) act (carried out) in a complete assembly.

BD.4.456

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times ... (*the same three cases as above are repeated here*) ... it is a (formal)

¹ *kammappatta*.

act (carried out) in a complete assembly. This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) in a complete assembly.

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly? If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and one first proclaims the resolution and afterwards proposes the motion, if as many monks as are entitled (to take part in a formal) act have not come, if the leave for absence of those fit (to declare their) leave for absence is not sent, if those who are present protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Kd.9.3.7

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and one first proclaims the resolution and afterwards proposes the motion, if as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act have come, if the leave of absence ... is not sent, if those who are present protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly.

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and one first proclaims the resolution and afterwards proposes the motion, if as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act have come, if the leave for absence of those (fit to declare) leave for absence is sent, if those who are present protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Vin.1.319

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times ... (*the same three cases as above are repeated here*) ... This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Kd.9.3.8

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly? If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and one first proclaims the resolution and afterwards proposes the motion, if as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act have come, if the leave of absence of those fit (to declare their) leave of absence is sent, if those who are present do not protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly.

BD.4.457

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times ... (*the same as above is repeated here*) ... it is a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of the rule in a complete assembly. This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) by what has the appearance of rule in a complete assembly.

Kd.9.3.9

“And what, monks, is a (formal) act (carried out) by rule in a complete assembly? If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution, and if one first proposes the motion and after one resolution carries out the (formal) act, if as many monks are entitled (to take part in the formal) act have come, if the leave of absence of those fit (to declare their) leave of absence is sent, if those who are present do not protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by rule in a complete assembly.

“If, monks, it is a (formal) act with a motion and a resolution to be put three times, and if one first proposes the motion and after (having put) the resolution three times, carries out the (formal) act, if as many monks as are entitled (to take part in the formal) act have come, if the leave of absence of those who are fit (to declare their) leave of absence is sent, if those who are present do not protest, then it is a (formal) act (carried out) by rule, in a complete assembly. This, monks, is called a (formal) act (carried out) by rule, in a complete assembly.¹

CARRYING OUT BY A FOURFOLD ORDER, ETC.

Kd.9.4.1

“Five (kinds of) Orders: a fourfold Order of monks, a fivefold Order of monks, a tenfold Order of monks, a twentyfold Order of monks, an Order of monks that is more than twenty-fold. In the case, monks, of an Order of monks being fourfold, it is entitled (to take part) in all (formal) acts, if by rule, if it is complete, excepting three (formal) acts: ordination,² invitation,³ rehabilitation.⁴ In the case, monks, of an Order of monks being fivefold,

BD.4.458

¹ Oldenberg’s edition omits this last sentence. It is contained, rightly, in the Sinhalese edition. ² See [Vin.1.58](#). At [Vin.4.130](#) if a monk wants to ordain an individual and looks about for a group, he incurs an offence of wrong-doing. ³ See [Kd.4.5.2](#) where monks, if they number only four, are allowed to invite one another, but where they are five ([Kd.4.5.1](#)) they should invite in an Order. ⁴ See [BD.3.28, n.4](#), and also [BD.1.328](#).

it is entitled (to take part) in all (formal) acts, if by rule, if it is complete, excepting two (formal) acts: ordination in the middle districts,¹ rehabilitation. In the case, monks, of an Order of monks being tenfold, it is entitled (to take part) in all (formal) acts, if by rule, if it is complete, excepting one (formal) act: rehabilitation. In the case, monks of an Order of monks being twentyfold, it is entitled (to take part) in all (formal) acts, if by rule, if it is complete. In the case, monks, of an Order of monks being more than twentyfold, it is entitled (to take part) in all (formal) acts, if by rule, if it is complete.

Vin.1.320

CARRYING OUT BY A FOURFOLD (ORDER)

“If, monks, a fourfold Order, carrying out a (formal) act, should carry out the (formal) act with a nun as the fourth (member), then it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. If, monks, a fourfold Order, carrying out a (formal) act, should carry out the (formal) act with a probationer as the fourth (member) ... with a novice ... with a woman novice ... with a disavower of the training² ... with one who has committed an extreme offence ... with one who is suspended for not seeing an offence ... with one who is suspended for not making amends for an offence ... with one who is suspended for not giving up a wrong view ... with a eunuch ... with one living in communion as it were by theft³ ... with one who has gone over to a sect⁴ ... with an animal ... with a matricide ... with a parricide ... with a slayer of ones perfected ... with a seducer of a nun ... with a schismatic ... with a shedder of (a *tathāgata*’s) blood ... with a hermaphrodite ... with one belonging to a different communion ... with one staying in a different boundary ... with one standing above the ground⁵ by psychic potency ... with one against whom an Order is carrying out a (formal) act as the fourth (member), it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

Kd.9.4.2

BD.4.459

¹ In bordering districts a “group” (i.e. here four monks) may ordain with an expert on Vinaya as the fifth officiating monk, [Vin.1.197](#). ² For the following sequence of terms, down to hermaphrodite, cf. [Vin.1.121](#), [Vin.1.135](#), [Vin.1.167](#), and above, [BD.4.160](#). ³ At [Vin.1.86](#) not to be ordained. ⁴ At [Vin.1.86](#) not to be ordained. ⁵ On *vehāsa*, as “above the ground”, see [BD.1.79, n.5](#).

CARRYING OUT BY A FIVEFOLD (ORDER)

Kd.9.4.3 “If, monks, a fivefold (Order), carrying out a (formal) act, should carry out the (formal) act with a nun as the fifth (member) ... with one against whom the Order is carrying out a (formal) act as the fifth (member), it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

CARRYING OUT BY A TENFOLD (ORDER)

Kd.9.4.4 “If, monks, a tenfold (Order), carrying out a (formal) act, should carry out the (formal) act with a nun as the tenth (member) ... with one against whom the Order is carrying out a (formal) act as the tenth (member), it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

CARRYING OUT BY A TWENTYFOLD (ORDER)

Kd.9.4.5 “If, monks, a twentyfold Order, carrying out a (formal) act, should carry out the (formal) act with a nun as the twentieth (member) ... with one against whom the Order is carrying out a (formal) act as the twentieth (member), it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

ON ONE ON PROBATION, ETC.

Kd.9.4.6 “If, monks, one on probation as the fourth (member) should grant probation,¹ should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta*, if he, as the twentieth (member), should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

“If, monks, one deserving to be sent back to the beginning as the fourth (member) should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta*, if he, as the twentieth (member), should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) and ought not to be carried out.

“If, monks, one deserving *mānatta* as the fourth (member) should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta*, if

¹ All these constitute part of the penalty for committing a Sāṅghadisesa offence. Those undergoing the penalty cannot inflict it on others, nor can they rehabilitate them when the penalty is duly over. Cf. Kd.12.1.4.

he, as the twentieth (member) should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out. “If, monks, one undergoing *mānatta* as the fourth (member) should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta*, if he, as the twentieth (member), should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

Vin.1.321
BD.4.460

“If, monks, one deserving rehabilitation as the fourth (member) should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta*, if he, as the twentieth (member), should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.

Kd.9.4.7

“Monks, the protest of some (people) in the midst of an Order is valid, of others is not valid. And, monks, of whom is a protest in the midst of an Order not valid? Monks, the protest of a nun in the midst of an Order is not valid ... of a probationer ... of a novice ... of a woman novice ... of a disavower of the training ... of one who has committed an extreme offence ... of one who is mad ... of one who is unhinged ... of one who is in pain ... of one who is suspended for not seeing an offence¹ ... of one against whom an Order is carrying out a (formal) act. Monks, a protest of these in the midst of an Order is not valid.

Kd.9.4.8

“And, monks, of whom is a protest in the midst of an Order valid? Monks, a protest of a regular² monk in the midst of an Order is valid if he belongs to the same communion, if he is staying within the same boundary, even if he only informs the monk next (to him).³ Monks, his protest in the midst of an Order is valid.

ON TWO SENT AWAY, ETC.

“There are, monks, these two (kinds of) being sent away.⁴ There is, monks, the individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away,⁵ but if an

Kd.9.4.9

¹ Same list as that at Kd.9.4.2. ² *pakatatta*. Vin-a.1147 says he is one who has not fallen from moral habit and has not committed a *pārajika* offence. Cf. Vin.2.6, Vin.2.32f. ³ *ānantarikassāpi bhikkhuno viññāpentassa*. Vin-a.1147 says, “if he immediately sits down himself” (in the assembly). Cf. the *anantarikā* nun at Vin.4.234, i.e. the next nun in an almsfood procession. ⁴ *nissāraṇā*. Cf. Nuns’ *Saṅghādīsesas*, and see BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxvi. Vin-a.1147 explains that the Order sends away, *nissāreti*, by an act of banishment, censure and so on. ⁵ *appatto nissāraṇaṃ*; he is not guilty enough to be sent away.

Order sends him away he may be rightly sent away, or he may be wrongly sent away. And which, monks, is an individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away, but who, if an Order sends him away, is wrongly sent away? Now this is a case, monks, where there is a pure monk, not an offender; if the Order sends him away, he is wrongly sent away. This, monks, is called an individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away, and who, if the Order sends him away, is wrongly sent away. And which, monks, is an individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away, but who, if an Order sends him away, is rightly sent away? Now this is a case, monks, where there is an ignorant, inexperienced monk, full of offences, not rid of them,¹ one who lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders; if an Order sends him away, he is rightly sent away. This, monks, is called an individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away, but who, if the Order sends him away, is rightly sent away.

“There are, monks, these two (kinds of) restoration.² There is, monks, the individual who has not arrived at the point of restoration, but if an Order restores him, he may be rightly restored, or he may be wrongly restored. And which, monks, is the individual who has not arrived at the point of restoration, but who, if an Order restores him, is wrongly restored? A eunuch,³ monks, does not arrive⁴ at the point of restoration; if the Order restores him, he is wrongly restored. Monks, one living in communion, as it were by theft, ... one gone over to a sect ... an animal ... a matricide ... a parricide ... a slayer of one perfected ... a seducer of a nun ... a schismatic ... a shedder of (a Truthfinder’s) blood ... a hermaphrodite does not arrive at the point of restoration; if an Order restores him, he is wrongly restored. These, monks, are called individuals who do not arrive at the point of restoration, and who, if the Order restores them, are wrongly restored.

“And which, monks, is an individual who has not arrived at the point of restoration, and who if an Order restores him, is rightly restored? One with

¹ *an-apadāna*. Vin-a.1148 explains *apadāna* by *pariccheda*, and says that the meaning of *anapadāna* is “without the *pariccheda* of offences”. Cf. below. Kd.9.7.6. ² *osāraṇā*, see BD.3.28, n.4. ³ Same list recurs above, Kd.9.4.2. ⁴ Again, *appatta*; but none of these may be ordained, or, if ordained, they should be expelled, *nāseti*. They therefore cannot be restored, not being in a position to obtain restoration.

his hands cut off,¹ monks, who has not arrived at the point of restoration, if an Order restores him, is rightly restored. Monks, one with his feet cut off ... one with his hands and feet cut off ... his ears cut off ... his nose cut off ... his ears and nose cut off ... his fingers cut off ... his nails cut off ... one with his tendons cut ... one who has webbed hands ... a hunchback ... a dwarf ... one who had goitre ... one who has been branded ... one who has been scourged ... one who has been written about ... one who has elephantiasis ... one who is badly ill ... one who has disgraced an assembly (by some deformity) ... one who is blind ... one with a crooked limb ... one who is lame ... one paralysed down one side ... a cripple ... one weak through old age ... one who is blind from birth ... one who is dumb ... one who is deaf ... one who is blind and dumb ... one who is blind and deaf ... one who is deaf and dumb ... one who is blind and deaf and dumb who has not arrived at the point of restoration, if an Order restores him, is rightly restored. These, monks, are called individuals who have not arrived at the point of restoration, and who, if an Order restores them, are rightly restored.

The First Portion for Repeating: that on Vāsabha village

ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE, ETC.

“This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk’s that should be seen.² If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence?’ and if he speaks thus: ‘There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine that I can see,’ and if the Order suspends him for not seeing the offence,³ it is not a legally valid (formal) act. This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk’s for which amends should be made. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Make amends for this offence,’ and if he speaks thus: ‘There is not, your reverences, an offence of mine for which I should make amends,’ and if the Order suspends him for not

Vin.1.323

BD.4.463

¹ Same list at Vin.1.91, where such people may not “go forth”. See above, BD.4.116 for notes.

² I.e. by him. ³ Cf. Kd.11.25-Kd.11.30.

making amends for the offence,¹ it is not a legally valid (formal) act. This is a case, monks, where there is not a wrong view of a monk's that should be given up.² If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'This is a wrong view of yours, your reverence. Give up this wrong view,' and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence, a wrong view of mine that I should give up,' and if the Order suspends him for not giving up the wrong view,³ it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

Kd.9.5.2

"This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk's that should be seen, not an offence for which amends should be made. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence? Make amends for this offence,' and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine that I can see; there is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine for which I should make amends,' and if the Order suspends him for not seeing or for not making amends, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

Kd.9.5.3

"This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk's that should be seen, not a wrong view that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence? This is a wrong view of yours; give up this wrong view'; and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine that I can see; there is not a wrong view of mine that I should give up,' and if the Order suspends him for not seeing or for not giving up, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

Kd.9.5.4

"This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk's for which amends should be made, there is not a wrong view that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence; make amends for this offence. This is a wrong view of yours, give up this wrong view,' and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s) an offence of mine for which I should make amends; there is not a wrong view of mine that I should give up,' and if the Order suspends him for not making amends or for not giving up, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

BD.4.464

Kd.9.5.5

¹ Cf. Kd.11.31. ² *paṭinissajjetā = paṭinissajjītabbā*, Vin-a.1147. ³ Cf. Kd.11.32-Kd.11.35.

“This is a case, monks, where there is not an offence of a monk’s that should be seen, there is not an offence for which amends should be made, there is not a wrong view that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence? Make amends for this offence. This is a wrong view of yours; give up this wrong view,’ and if he speaks thus: ‘There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine that I can see; there is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine for which I should make amends; there is not a wrong view of mine that I should give up,’ and if the Order suspends him for not seeing or for not making amends or for not giving up, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

Vin.1.324

Kd.9.5.6

“This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk’s that should be seen. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence?’ and if he speaks thus: ‘Yes, your reverence(s), I see it,’ and if the Order suspends him for not seeing the offence, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

“This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk’s for which amends should be made. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Make amends for this offence,’ and if he speaks thus: ‘Yes, your reverence(s), I will make amends,’ and if the Order suspends him for not making amends for the offence, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

“This is a case, monks, where there is a wrong view of a monk’s that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘This, your reverence, is a wrong view of yours. Give up this wrong view,’ and if he speaks thus: ‘Yes, your reverence(s), I will give it up,’ and if the Order suspends him for not giving up the wrong view, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

BD.4.465

Kd.9.5.7

“This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk’s that should be seen, where there is an offence for which amends should be made ... where there is an offence of a monk’s that should be seen, where there is a wrong view that should be given up ... where there is an offence of a monk’s for which amends should be made, where there is a wrong view that should

be given up ... where there is an offence of a monk's which should be seen, where there is an offence for which amends should be made, where there is a wrong view that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence? Make amends for this offence. This is a wrong view of yours; give up this wrong view,' and if he speaks thus: 'Yes, your reverence(s), I see, yes, I will make amends, yes, I will give it up,' and if the Order suspends him for not seeing or for not making amends or for not giving up, it is not a legally valid (formal) act.

Kd.9.5.8

"This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk's that should be seen. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence?' and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine that I can see,' and if the Order suspends him for not seeing, it is a legally valid (formal) act.

Vin.1.325

"This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk's for which amends should be made ... If he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine for which I should make amends,' and if the Order suspends him for not making amends, it is a legally valid (formal) act.

"This is a case, monks, where there is a wrong view of a monk's that should be given up ... If he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s), a wrong view of mine, that should be given up,' and if the Order suspends him for not giving up the wrong view, it is a legally valid (formal) act.

Kd.9.5.9

BD.4.466

"This is a case, monks, where there is an offence of a monk's that should be seen, where there is an offence for which amends should be made ... where there is an offence that should be seen, where there is a wrong view that should be given up ... where there is an offence for which amends should be made, where there is a wrong view that should be given up ... where there is an offence that should be seen, where there is an offence for which amends should be made, where there is a wrong view that should be given up. If an Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence? Make amends for this offence. This is a wrong view of yours; give up this wrong view,' and if he speaks thus: 'There is not, your reverence(s),

an offence of mine which I should see, there is not, your reverence(s), an offence of mine for which I should make amends, there is not a wrong view of mine that I should give up,' and if the Order suspends him for not seeing or for not making amends or for not giving up, it is a legally valid (formal) act.”

ON THE QUESTIONS OF UPĀLI

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord: “Does an Order, Lord, that is complete carry out a (formal) act that should be carried out in the presence of¹ (an accused monk) if he is absent? Lord, is that a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”²

Kd.9.6.1

“This, Upāli, is not a legally valid (formal) act, it is not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act.”

Kd.9.6.2

“Does an Order, Lord, that is complete carry out a (formal) act that should be carried out by the interrogation³ (of an accused monk) if there is no interrogation? Does it carry out a (formal) act that should be carried out on the acknowledgement⁴ (of an accused monk) if there is no acknowledgement? Does it give a verdict of past insanity⁵ to one who merits a verdict of innocence?⁶ Does it carry out a (formal) act for specific depravity⁷ against one who merits a verdict of past insanity? Does it carry out a (formal) act of censure⁸ against one who merits a (formal) act for specific depravity? Does it carry out a (formal) act of placing under guidance for one who merits a (formal) act of censure? Does it carry out a (formal) act of banishment against one who merits a (formal) act of placing under guidance? Does it

BD.4.467

Vin.1.326

¹ *sammukhākaraṇīyaṃ*. Cf. *Vin.2.93*. ² *dhammakamma vinayakamma* and their opposites (*adhamma-*, *avinaya-*) occur at AN.i.74, AN.i.75. AN-a.ii.149 explains *adhamma-* and *avinaya-* as *uddhamma* and *ubbinaya*, where *ud-* means “off” and therefore “wrong” as in *ummagga*.

³ *paṭipucchākaraṇīyaṃ*. ⁴ *paṭiññāya*. Cf. *BD.3.153, n.5*; AN.i.99; MN.ii.248. ⁵ *amūḷhavinaya*. See *BD.3.153, n.5*; AN.i.99; MN.ii.248. ⁶ *sativinayārahassa*. On *sativinaya* see *BD.3.153, n.3*; MN.ii.247. Word occurs at AN.i.99; GS.i.85 translates “proceedings about mindfulness”.

⁷ *tassapāpiyyasikā*. Cf. *BD.3.154, n.1*; AN.i.99; MN.ii.249, *Vin.1.85f*. ⁸ For this and the four following formal acts, cf. *Vin.1.49* (above, *BD.4.66*) and AN.i.99.

carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for one who merits a (formal) act of banishment? Does it carry out a (formal) act of suspension against one who merits a (formal) act of reconciliation? Does it grant probation¹ to one who merits a (formal) act of suspension? Does it send back to the beginning one who merits probation? Does it inflict *mānatta* on one who merits being sent back to the beginning? Does it rehabilitate one who merits *mānatta*? Does it ordain one who merits rehabilitation? Is this a legally valid (formal) act, Lord, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”

Kd.9.6.3

“This, Upāli, is not a legally valid (formal) act, it is not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out in the presence of (an accused monk) if he is absent—it thus comes to be, Upāli, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far.² Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete carries out a (formal) act which should be carried out on the interrogation (of an accused monk) if there is no interrogation ... carries out a (formed) act which should be carried out with the acknowledgement (of an accused monk) if there is no acknowledgement ... ordains one meriting rehabilitation—it thus comes to be, Upāli, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act”, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far.”

BD.4.468

Kd.9.6.4

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out in the presence of (an accused monk) when he is present, is this, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”

“This, Upāli, is a legally valid (formal) act, it is a disciplinarily valid (formal) act.”

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out on the interrogation (of an accused monk) when there is interrogation, if it carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out on the acknowledgement of (an accused monk) when there is his acknowledgement, if it gives a verdict of innocence to one who merits a verdict of innocence ... if it rehabilitates one who merits rehabilitation, if it ordains

¹ This and the next three (not ordination) occur at AN.i.99. They are each part of the penalty incurred for a *Saṅghādisesa* offence. ² *sātisāra*, as at Vin.1.55 (above, BD.4.71).

one who merits ordination, is this, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”

“This, Upāli, is a legally valid (formal) act, it is a disciplinarily valid (formal) act. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out in the presence of (an accused monk) when he is present—it thus comes to be, Upāli, a legally valid (formal) act, a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that does not go too far. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete carries out a (formal) act that should be carried out on the interrogation (of an accused monk) when there is interrogation ... ordains one meriting ordination—it thus comes to be, Upāli, a legally valid (formal) act, a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that does not go too far.”

Kd.9.6.5

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of innocence, gives a verdict of innocence to one meriting a verdict of past insanity, is this, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”

“This, Upāli, is not a legally valid (formal) act, it is not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act.”

BD.4.469

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a verdict of past insanity, if it gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a (formal) act for specific depravity; if it carries out a (formal) act of censure against one meriting a (formal) act for specific depravity, if it carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a (formal) act of censure; if it carries out a (formal) act of placing under guidance against one meriting a (formal) act of censure, if it carries out a (formal) act of censure against one meriting a (formal) act of placing under guidance; if it carries out a (formal) act of banishment against one meriting a (formal) act of placing under guidance, if it carries out a (formal) act of placing under guidance against one meriting a (formal) act of banishment; if it carries out a (formal) act of reconciliation against one meriting a (formal) act of banishment, if it carries out a (formal) act of banishment against one meriting a (formal) act of reconciliation; if it carries out a (formal) act of suspension against one meriting a (formal) act of reconciliation, if it carries out a (formal) act of reconciliation against

Vin.1.327

one meriting a (formal) act of suspension; if it grants probation to one meriting a (formal) act of suspension, if it carries out a (formal) act of suspension against one meriting probation; if it sends back to the beginning one meriting probation, if it grants probation to one meriting being sent back to the beginning; if it inflicts *mānatta* on one meriting being sent back to the beginning, if it sends back to the beginning one meriting *mānatta*; if it rehabilitates one meriting *mānatta*, if it inflicts *mānatta* on one meriting rehabilitation; if it ordains one meriting rehabilitation, if it rehabilitates one meriting ordination, is that, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?

Kd.9.6.6

“This, Upāli, is not a legally valid (formal) act, it is not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of innocence, gives a verdict of innocence to one meriting a verdict of past insanity—it thus comes to be, Upāli, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a verdict of past insanity ... that rehabilitates one meriting ordination—it thus comes to be, Upāli, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far.”

BD.4.470

Kd.9.6.7

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete gives a verdict of innocence to one meriting a verdict of innocence, if it gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of past insanity, is this, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act;”

“This, Upāli, is a legally valid (formal) act, it is a disciplinarily valid (formal) act.”

“If, Lord, an Order that is complete gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of past insanity, if it carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a (formal) act for specific depravity ... if it rehabilitates one meriting rehabilitation, if it ordains one meriting ordination—is this, Lord, a legally valid (formal) act, is it a disciplinarily valid (formal) act?”

Kd.9.6.8

“This, Upāli, is a legally valid (formal) act, it is a disciplinarily valid

(formal) act. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete gives a verdict of innocence to one meriting a verdict of innocence, gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of past insanity—it thus comes to be, Upāli, a legally valid (formal) act, a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that does not go too far. Whatever Order, Upāli, that is complete gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of past insanity, ... ordains one meriting ordination—it thus comes to be, Upāli, a legally valid (formal) act, a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that does not go too far.”

Vin.1.328

Kd.9.6.9

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Whatever Order, monks, that is complete gives a verdict of past insanity to one meriting a verdict of innocence—it thus comes to be, monks, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far. Whatever Order, monks, that is complete, carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a verdict of innocence, carries out a (formal) act of censure against one meriting a verdict of innocence¹ ... ordains one meriting a verdict of innocence—it thus comes to be, monks, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far. Whatever Order, monks, that is complete carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against one meriting a verdict of past insanity ... carries out a (formal) act of censure ... ordains one meriting a verdict of past insanity, gives a verdict of innocence to one meriting a verdict of past insanity—it thus comes to be, monks, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that goes too far. Whatever Order, monks, that is complete, carries out a (formal) act of censure against one meriting a (formal) act for specific depravity ... rehabilitates one meriting ordination—it thus comes to be, monks, not a legally valid (formal) act, not a disciplinarily valid (formal) act, and thus the Order comes to be one that

BD.4.471

¹ As explained at *Vinaya Texts* ii.279, n.2, in this paragraph all possible combinations of two different formal acts are arranged in this way: first, verdict of innocence is combined with verdict of past insanity and all the rest, down to ordination; then verdict of past insanity with all terms from specific depravity down to innocence, and so on; the whole series ends thus with the combination of meriting ordination with all terms from verdict of innocence down to rehabilitation.

goes too far.”

The Second Portion for Repeating: that on Upāli's Questions

ON AN ACT OF CENSURE

“This is a case, monks, where a monk is a maker of strife, a maker of dispute, a maker of contention, a maker of brawls, a maker of legal questions in an Order.¹ It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, is a maker of strife ... a maker of legal questions in the Order. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, was carried out against this monk, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him not by rule, in a complete assembly. He then goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, was carried out against this monk, not by rule, in a complete assembly. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by rule, in an incomplete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, was carried out against this monk, by rule, in an incomplete assembly. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, was carried out against this monk, by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him by what has the appearance of rule in a complete assembly.

BD.4.472

Vin.1.329

Kd.9.7.2

¹ As at [Vin.4.45](#), [Vin.4.230](#). See [BD.3.191, n.3](#) for further references.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk is a maker of strife ... a maker of legal questions in an Order. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, is a maker of strife ... a maker of legal questions in the Order. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in a complete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, was carried out against this monk, not by rule, in a complete assembly. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by rule, in an incomplete assembly. He then goes from that residence ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly. He then goes from that residence ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by what has the appearance of a rule, in a complete assembly. He then goes from that residence ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Kd.9.7.3

“This is a case, monks, ... (*as above*) ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule in a complete assembly ... not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... not by rule, in a complete assembly.

BD.4.473

Kd.9.7.4

“This is a case, monks, ... (*as above*) ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly ... not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... not by rule, in a complete assembly, by rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Kd.9.7.5

“This is a case, monks, ... (*as above*) ... they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly ... not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... not by rule, in a complete assembly ... by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of a rule, in an incomplete assembly.

Vin.1.330

ON AN ACT OF GUIDANCE

“This is a case, monks, where an ignorant, inexperienced monk,¹ full of offences, not rid of them, lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, ignorant, inexperienced, ... in unbecoming association with householders. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of guidance for him’; and these carry out a (formal) act of guidance for him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence ... (as above in [Kd.9.7.1](#)) ... not by rule, in a complete assembly ... by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out as it is below.²

Kd.9.7.6

ON AN ACT OF BANISHMENT

Kd.9.7.7

“This is a case, monks, where a monk is one who brings families into disrepute and is of depraved conduct.³ It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, ... is of depraved conduct. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... (as in [Kd.9.7.6](#)) ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out.

BD.4.474

ON AN ACT OF RECONCILIATION

Kd.9.7.8

“This is a case, monks, where a monk reviles, abuses⁴ householders. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, reviles, abuses householders. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him’; and

¹ Cf. above, [Kd.9.4.9](#). ² I.e. in [Kd.9.7.1](#)-[Kd.9.7.5](#). The “wheel”, *cakka*, series, cycle, is the “arrangement of five categories on which this exposition is based ...” (as said in note at *Vinaya Texts* ii.281). “Below” stands for our “above”, from the fact that the palm-leaf manuscripts are arranged with the first leaf at the bottom of the pile of leaves of which any work or “book” is made up. ³ As in [Bu-Ss.13](#), and see below, [Kd.9.7.18](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin.3.184](#); [Vin.4.309](#);

[BD.3.344](#).

they carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... (as in [Kd.9.7.6](#)) ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out.

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT SEEING AN OFFENCE

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen into an offence, does not want to see the offence.¹ It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, having fallen into an offence, does not want to see the offence. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not seeing the offence’; and they carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not seeing the offence, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out.

Kd.9.7.9

ON AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT MAKING AMENDS FOR AN OFFENCE

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen into an offence, does not want to make amends for the offence.² It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, having fallen into an offence, does not want to make amends for the offence. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not making amends for the offence’; and they carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not making amends for the offence, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out.

Kd.9.7.10

Vin.1.331

¹ Cf. [Kd.11.25.1–Kd.11.25.30](#). ² Cf. [Kd.11.31](#).

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT RELINQUISHING

Kd.9.7.11 “This is a case, monks, where a monk does not want to give up a wrong view. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, does not want to give up a wrong view. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not giving up a wrong view’; and they carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not giving up a wrong view, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. The cycle should be worked out.”

BD.4.475

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF CENSURE

Kd.9.7.12 “This is a case, monks, where a monk against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by the Order, conducts himself properly,¹ is subdued, mends his ways,² and asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, against whom a (formal) act of censure was carried out by the Order is conducting himself properly, is subdued, is mending his ways. Come, let us revoke the (formal) act of censure³ against him’; and they revoke the (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. He goes from that residence to another residence. It occurs to the monks there: ‘A (formal) act of censure, your reverences, against this monk was revoked by an Order, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. Come, let us revoke the (formal) act of censure against him’; and they revoke the (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in a complete assembly ... by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly.”

Kd.9.7.13

“This is a case, monks, where a monk against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by an Order conducts himself properly, is subdued, mends his ways, and asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, against

¹ “Proper conduct” given at [Kd.11.5.1](#). ² Cf. [Vin.1.49](#) (above, [BD.4.66](#)). ³ Cf. [Kd.11.6.2–Kd.11.8.2](#).

whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by the Order, conducts himself properly ... asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. Come, let us revoke the (formal) act of censure against him and they revoke the (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in a complete assembly ... (as in [Kd.9.7.2–Kd.9.7.5](#)) ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly.

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF GUIDANCE

“This is a case, monks, where a monk for whom a (formal) act of guidance¹ has been carried out by an Order, conducts himself properly, is subdued, mends his ways, and asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of guidance ... (as in [Kd.9.7.12](#), [Kd.9.7.13](#))

Kd.9.7.14
BD.4.476

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF BANISHMENT

“This is a case, monks, where a monk against whom a (formal) act of banishment ...²

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF RECONCILIATION

... a (formal) act of reconciliation ...³

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT SEEING AN OFFENCE

... a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing an offence ...⁴

¹ See [Kd.11.9.1–Kd.12.2](#). ² See [Kd.11.13.1–Kd.11.17.2](#). ³ See [Kd.11.18.5–Kd.11.24.1](#). ⁴ See [Kd.11.25.1–Kd.11.30](#).

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT MAKING AMENDS FOR AN OFFENCE

...a (formal) act of suspension for not making amends for an offence ...¹

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT RELINQUISHING

Vin.1.332 ... a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view ...² has been carried out by an Order.

The cycle should be worked out.

ON AN ACT OF CENSURE FOR DISPUTES

Kd.9.7.15 “This is a case, monks, where a monk is a maker of strife, a maker of disputes a maker of contention, a maker of brawls, a maker of legal questions in the Order. It then occurs to monks: ‘This monk, your reverences, is a maker of ... legal questions in the Order. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of censure against him’; and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. In this case the Order disputes saying: ‘A (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly; a (formal) act not by rule, in a complete assembly; a (formal) act by rule, in an incomplete assembly; a (formal) act by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly; a (formal) act by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly; the (formal) act is not carried out, the (formal) act is badly carried out, the (formal) act should be carried out again’³ Herein, monks, those monks who speak thus: ‘A (formal) act not by rule, in an incomplete assembly’, and those monks who speak thus: ‘The (formal) act is not carried out, the (formal) act is badly carried out, the (formal) act should be carried out again’, these monks are here speakers of what is right.⁴

Kd.9.7.16 “This is a case, monks, where a monk is a maker of strife ... and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in a complete

¹ See [Kd.11.31](#). ² See [Kd.11.32-Kd.11.35](#). ³ As at [Vin.4.126 \(BD 3,5\)](#). ⁴ *dhammavādino*.

assembly. In this case the Order disputes saying: ... Herein, monks, those monks who speak thus: 'A (formal) act not by rule, in a complete assembly' and those monks who speak thus: 'The (formal) act is not carried out, the (formal) act is badly carried out, the (formal) act should be carried out again these monks are here speakers of what is right. This is a case, monks, where a monk is a maker of strife ... and they carry out a (formal) act of censure against him by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly ... these monks are here speakers of what is right.

BD.4.477

ON AN ACT OF GUIDANCE FOR DISPUTES

"This is a case, monks, where an ignorant, inexperienced monk, full of offences, not rid of them, lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders. It then occurs to monks: 'This monk, your reverences, ignorant, inexperienced, lives ... with householders. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of guidance for him'; and they carry out a (formal) act of guidance for him, not by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... not by rule, in a complete assembly ... by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly. In this case the Order disputes ... these monks are here speakers of what is right. These five occasions in brief.

Kd.9.7.17

ON AN ACT OF BANISHMENT FOR DISPUTES

"This is a case, monks, where a monk brings families into disrepute and is of depraved conduct.¹ It then occurs to monks: '... let us carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him ... These five, occasions in brief.

Kd.9.7.18

¹ Cf. Bu-Ss.13, and above Kd.9.7.7.

ON AN ACT OF RECONCILIATION FOR DISPUTES

“This is a case, monks, where a monk reviles, abuses householders. It then occurs to monks: ‘... let us carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him’
 Vin.1.333 ... These five occasions in brief.

ON AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT SEEING AN OFFENCE FOR DISPUTES

“This is a case, monks, where a monk having fallen into an offence does not want to see the offence ...

ON AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT MAKING AMENDS FOR AN OFFENCE FOR DISPUTES

... having fallen into an offence does not want to make amends for the offence ...

ON AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT RELINQUISHING FOR DISPUTES

... does not want to give up a wrong view. It then occurs to monks: ‘... let us carry out a (formal) act of suspension against him for not giving up the wrong view’ ... These five occasions in brief.

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF CENSURE

Kd.9.7.19
 BD.4.478

“This is a case, monks, where a monk against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by an Order conducts himself properly, is subdued, mends his ways, and asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. It then occurs to monks: “This monk, your reverences, against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by the Order, conducts himself

properly ... and asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. Come, let us revoke the (formal) act of censure against him', and these revoke the (formal) act of censure against him not by rule, in an incomplete assembly. In this case the Order disputes ... these monks here are speakers of what is right. This is a case, monks, where a monk against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out by an Order, conducts himself properly ... they revoke the (formal) act of censure against him, not by rule, in a complete assembly ... by rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in an incomplete assembly ... by what has the appearance of rule, in a complete assembly ... these monks are here speakers of what is right.

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF GUIDANCE

"This is a case, monks, where a monk for whom a (formal) act of guidance has been carried out by an Order ...

Kd.9.7.20

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF BANISHMENT

... of banishment ...

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF RECONCILIATION

... of reconciliation ...

ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT SEEING FOR AN OFFENCE

... of suspension for not seeing an offence ...

**ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT MAKING
AMENDS FOR AN OFFENCE**

... of suspension for not making amends for an offence ...

**ON REVOKING AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT
RELINQUISHING**

... of suspension for not giving up a wrong view, has been carried out by an Order, conducts himself properly ... these monks are here speakers of what is right.”

The Ninth Section: that on (the monks) at Campā

IN THIS SECTION THERE ARE THIRTY-SIX ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

The Lord was at Campā, case at Vāsabha village,
he made an effort for in-coming monks
in regard to what they wanted,¹ /
Having known “They are appointed” henceforth he made no effort,
Thinking “Suspended, one does not carry out”, he went to the Victor, /
A (formal) act not by rule,
in an incomplete assembly,
by rule in a complete assembly,
and a (formal) act by rule in an incomplete assembly,
by what has the appearance of rule in an incomplete assembly, /
By what has the appearance of rule in a complete assembly,
one suspends one,
and one two, several, one suspends an Order, /
Then two, then several, and an Order suspends an Order,
the distinguished, omniscient one, having heard, objects,
saying, “It is not the rule”, /
Whatever (formal) act for which the motion is not furnished
(although) a proclamation is furnished
And that for which the proclamation is not furnished
although it is furnished with a motion, /
If neither is furnished and it is also not by rule,
against the teacher’s (instruction), protested against,
reversible, not fit to stand, /

Vin.1.334
BD.4.479

¹ Oldenberg’s text *icchitabbake*; Sinhalese edition -ko.

Not by rule, in an incomplete assembly—these two,
 but just this: by rule, in a complete assembly
 is allowed by the Truthfinder. /
 Fourfold, fivefold, tenfold and twenty
 and more than twentyfold—an Order is thus of five kinds. /
 Having excluded ordination and whatever
 (formal) act for Invitation (there is)
 together with the (formal) act of rehabilitation—
 the carrying out is by means of a fourfold Order, /
 Excluding two (formal) acts:
 ordination in the middle districts
 (and) rehabilitation—
 the carrying out is by means of a fivefold Order. /
 Excluding rehabilitation alone—
 these monks are tenfold,
 an Order of twenty carries out all (formal) acts,
 it is the carrier out of everything. /
 Nun, probationer and novice, woman novice,
 disavower, (one who has committed) an extreme offence,
 one suspended for not seeing an offence, /
 For not making amends for,
 (for not giving up) a wrong view, eunuch,
 one living in communion as it were by theft,
 (one gone over to) a sect, an animal, slayer of mother, of father, /
 Of one perfected, seducer of a nun, schismatic,
 shedder of (a Truthfinder's) blood,
 hermaphrodite, one belonging to a different communion,
 staying within a different boundary,
 (standing above the ground) by psychic power, /
 One against whom an Order is carrying out a (formal) act—
 these come to be twenty-four
 (and) they are objected to by the Awakened One
 for they are not completers of a group./
 If one undergoing probation should
 as the fourth member grant probation
 or should rehabilitate one (sent back to) the beginning
 or (undergoing) *mānatta* it is not a (formal) act
 and should not be carried out. /
 So too, if one deserving the beginning
 or *mānatta* (should rehabilitate)
 one deserving rehabilitation—
 this is not in accordance with a (formal) act—
 the five are explained by the All-awakened One. /

Nun, probationer, novice, woman novice,
 disavower, (one who has committed)
 an extreme (offence), who is mad,
 unhinged, in pain, (suspended) for not seeing, /
 For not making amends for, for (not giving up) a wrong view,
 and a eunuch and a hermaphrodite,
 one belonging to a different communion (or) boundary
 (or standing) above the ground (by psychic power)
 and one against whom a (formal) act is being carried out, /
 Vin.1.335 Of these eighteen the protest is not valid,
 the protest is valid of a regular monk. /
 A pure one may be wrongly sent away,
 and an ignorant one rightly sent away,
 eunuch, one living in communion as it were by theft,
 going over (to a sect), an animal, /
 (Slayer) of mother, of father, of one perfected,
 seducer (of a nun), schismatic of the Order,
 shedder of (a Truth-finder's) blood
 and also a hermaphrodite and whichever /
 Of these eleven is not meant for restoration.
 Hands, feet, both these, ears, nose, both these, /
 Fingers, nails, tendons, one who has webbed hands,
 hunchback, and dwarf,
 one who has goitre, who has been branded, scourged,
 and who has been written about
 and one who has elephantiasis, /
 BD.4.481 One who is badly ill, who has disgraced an assembly, who is blind,
 and one with a crooked limb, lame, and also one who is paralysed,
 a cripple, one weak through age, blind from birth, dumb, and deaf, /
 Blind and dumb, (blind and) deaf, and dumb and deaf likewise,
 and blind-deaf-dumb: all these thirty-two—/
 Their restoration was explained by the all enlightened one.
 (An offence) that should be seen,
 for which amends should be made,
 (a wrong view) to be given up does not exist, /
 There are seven (formal) acts suspending him which are not legally valid,
 And these seven that are not legally valid for one complying with his falling, /
 Among (formal) acts there are seven that are legally valid
 for one not complying with his falling,
 in the presence of, interrogation,
 and according as it is and on the acknowledgement,
 Innocence, past insanity, depravity,¹ and on account of censure,

¹ Here *pāpikā* for *tassapāpiyyasika*.

banishment, reconciliation, and suspension, probation, /
 The beginning, *mānatta*, rehabilitation, and thus ordination:
 These sixteen¹ are not legally valid if it should carry out one for another,² /
 These sixteen are quite legally valid
 if it should carry out the appropriate one for that one,³
 reciprocally they should explain
 how these sixteen are not legally valid, /
 When conditioned for it paired⁴:
 these sixteen are also legally valid,
 when conditioned (for it) singly:
 the conqueror said the cycle⁵ is not legal. /
 One who makes strife⁶:
 the Order carries out a (formal) act of banishment
 not by rule, in an incomplete assembly;
 he goes to another residence, /
 There they carried out a (formal) act of censure against him,
 not by rule,⁷ in a complete assembly,
 elsewhere they carried out a (formal) act of banishment against him
 by rule, in an incomplete assembly, /
 And they likewise carried out one which in both cases
 had the appearance of rule,
 in an incomplete assembly, in a complete assembly,
 and not by rule in a complete assembly,
 also by rule in an incomplete assembly, /
 And by what had the appearance of rule
 in an incomplete assembly, and in a complete assembly:
 these cases, having done what is conditioned singly,
 put the cycle together. /
 Guidance for one who is ignorant, inexperienced,
 banishment for one who brings a family into disrepute,
 And they carried out a (formal) act of reconciliation for a reviler, /
 And for whoever does not see, does not make amends for (an offence),
 does not give up a (wrong) view:
 for these a (formal) act of suspension
 was decreed by the leader of the caravan. /
 The wisdom of these (formal) acts of suspension

BD.4.482

Vin.1.336

¹ Only fifteen listed above: *nissaya* (placing under) guidance, is omitted. ² “It” is an Order, see [Kd.9.6.2](#), but if it carries out a formal act that is not appropriate and does not fit the case, that formal act is not legally valid. ³ *taṃ taṃ kareyya taṃ tassa soḷas’ete sudhammikā*.
⁴ *dvedvetamūlakam*. ⁵ *cakka* wheel, cycle series. ⁶ OLDENBERG, at [Vin.1.394](#), notes that “all three manuscripts read *bhaṇḍanakārako*”, where the accusative would have been expected. ⁷ OLDENBERG’s text reads *dhammena*; Sinhalese edition *tatthādhammena* and see [Kd.9.7.1](#).

should be applied to censure,
 and if, being subdued, conducting himself properly, he has asked, /
 The revocation of these or those (formal) acts
 is according to the (formal) acts below.¹
 And if in this or that case he disputes some (formal) act /
 And says, "It was not carried out, it was badly carried out,
 it should be carried out again",
 further, concerning the revocation of the (formal) act:
 these monks are speakers of what is right. /
 The Great Sage, having seen falling away from shakiness²
 in one entitled (to take part in a formal) act
 prescribed revocation, as a surgeon medicine.

Vin.1.337

¹ *heṭṭhā*, "below" is equivalent to our "above". ² *vipattivyādhite*. Sinhalese edition -*dhitā*.

10. THE MONKS FROM KOSAMBĪ (KOSAMBAKA)

ON THE DISPUTE AMONG THE MONKS FROM KOSAMBĪ

At one time the awakened one, the Lord was staying at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Now at that time a certain monk had fallen into an offence; he saw that offence as an offence but other monks saw that offence as no offence. After a time he saw that offence as no offence, while the other monks saw that offence as an offence. Then these monks spoke thus to that monk: "You, your reverence, have fallen into an offence. Do you see this offence?"

Kd.10.1.1
BD.4.483

"There is not an offence of mine, your reverences, that I can see." Then these monks, having obtained unanimity, suspended that monk for not seeing the offence.

Kd.10.1.2

But that monk had heard much,¹ he was one to whom the tradition had been handed down; he was an expert on *dhamma*, an expert on discipline, an expert on the summaries; he was wise, experienced, clever; he was conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training. Then that monk, having approached monks who were his comrades and intimates, spoke thus: "This is no offence,² your reverences, this is not an offence; I am unfallen, I have not fallen; I am unsuspended, I am not suspended; I was suspended by a (formal) act that was not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand. Let the venerable ones be my partisans on account of the rule, on account of discipline." And that monk gained as partisans the monks who were his comrades and intimates. And he sent a messenger to monks in the country who were his comrades and intimates, saying: "This is no offence, your

¹ Cf. Vin.1.119 (above, BD.4.157). ² As above, BD.4.449.

reverences ... not fit to stand. Let the venerable ones be my partisans on account of the rule, on account of discipline.” And that monk gained as partisans those monks in the country who were his comrades and intimates.

Kd.10.1.3

Then these monks who took the part of the suspended one approached those monks who had suspended him; having approached, they spoke thus to the monks who had suspended him: “This is no offence, your reverences, this is not an offence; this monk is unfallen, this monk has not fallen; this monk is unsuspended, this monk is not suspended; he was suspended by a (formal) act that was not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand.” When they had spoken thus, the monks who had suspended him spoke thus to the monks who took the part of the suspended one:

BD.4.484

Vin.1.338

“This is an offence, your reverences, this is not no offence; this monk has fallen, this monk is not unfallen; this monk is suspended, this monk is not unsuspended; he was suspended by a (formal) act that was legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand. Do not you, your reverences, take the part of this suspended monk, do not side with him.” But those monks who took the part of the suspended (monk), although being spoken to thus by the ones who had suspended him, still took the part of that suspended monk and sided with him.

Kd.10.1.4

Then a certain monk approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that monk spoke thus to the Lord: “This is a case, Lord, where a certain monk has fallen into an offence. He saw that offence as an offence but other monks saw that offence as no offence. After a time he saw that offence as no offence, while the other monks saw that offence as an offence. Then, Lord, those monks spoke thus to that monk: ... (as in [Kd.10.1.1](#)) ... ‘... Do you see this offence?’ He said: ‘There is not an offence of mine, your reverences, that I can see. Then, Lord, these monks, having obtained unanimity, suspended that monk for not seeing the offence. But, Lord, that monk had heard much, he was one to whom the tradition had been handed down ... desirous of training. Then, Lord, that monk, having approached monks who were his comrades and intimates ... (as in [Kd.10.1.2](#)) ... And, Lord, that monk gained as partisans the monks who were his comrades and intimates ... And, Lord, that monk gained as partisans

those monks in the country who were his comrades and intimates. Then, Lord, those monks who took the part of the suspended one ... (as in [Kd.10.1.3](#)) ... When they had spoken thus, Lord, the monks who had suspended him spoke thus: ... But those monks, Lord, who took the part of the suspended (monk) although being spoken to thus by the ones who had suspended him, still took the part of that suspended monk and sided with him.”

BD.4.485

Kd.10.1.5

Then the Lord, thinking: “The Order of monks is divided, the Order of monks is divided”, rising from-his seat approached the monks who had suspended (that monk); having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat. As he was sitting down, the Lord spoke thus to the monks who had suspended (that monk): “Do not you, monks, thinking: ‘It appears so to us, it appears so to us deem that a monk should be suspended on every occasion.

Kd.10.1.6

“This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence. He sees that offence as no offence; other monks see that offence as an offence. If, monks, those monks know concerning that monk: ‘This venerable one has heard much, he is one to whom the tradition has been handed down ... desirous of training. If we suspend this monk for not seeing the offence we cannot carry out the Observance together with this monk, we will carry out the Observance without this monk—from this source there will be strife, dispute, contention, brawls, for the Order, there will be schism in the Order, dissension in the Order,¹ altercation in the Order, differences in the Order.’ Monks, that monk should not be suspended for not seeing an offence by monks bent on a schism.

Vin.1.339

Kd.10.1.7

“This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence. He sees that offence ... (as in [Kd.10.1.6](#)) ... ‘... if we suspend this monk for not seeing the offence we cannot invite together with this monk, we will invite without this monk; we cannot carry out a (formal) act of the Order together with this monk, we will carry out a (formal) act of the Order without this monk; we cannot sit down on a seat together with this monk, we will sit down on a seat without this monk; we cannot sit down to drink conjei together with this monk, we will sit down to drink conjei without this monk; we cannot sit down in a refectory together with this monk, we will sit down in a refectory

¹ For further references to *saṅghabheda saṅgharāji* see [BD.2.233, n.3](#).

without this monk; we cannot stay under one roof together with this monk, we will stay under one roof without this monk;¹ we cannot, according to seniority, carry out greeting together with this monk, rising up before (one another), saluting with joined palms, doing the proper duties, but we will, according to seniority, carry out greetings ... doing the proper duties without this monk—from this source there will be strife ... differences in the Order.’ Monks, that monk should not be suspended for not seeing an offence by monks bent on a schism.”

Then the Lord, having spoken on this matter with the monks who had suspended that monk, rising from his seat, approached those monks who were taking the part of the suspended (monk); having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat. As he was sitting down, the Lord spoke thus to the monks who were taking the part of the suspended (monk): “Do not you, monks, having fallen into an offence, deem that amends should not be made for the offence, thinking: ‘We have not fallen’. This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence; he sees that offence as no offence; other monks see that offence as an offence. If, monks, that monk knows concerning those monks: ‘These venerable ones have heard much ... (as in [Kd.10.1.2](#)) ... desirous of training. It is impossible for them, because of me or because of anyone else, to follow a wrong course through desire, through hatred, through stupidity, through fear. If these monks suspend me for not seeing the offence, if they do not carry out the Observance together with me, if they carry out the Observance without me ... if they do not invite together with me, if they invite without me ... if they, according to seniority, carry out greetings without me, rising up before (one another), saluting with joined palms, doing the proper duties—from this source there will be for the Order strife ... differences in the Order’. Monks, the offence should be confessed even out of faith² in others by a monk who is bent on a schism.” Then the Lord, having spoken on this matter with the monks who took the part of the suspended (monk), rising from his seat, departed.

Now at that time monks taking the part of a suspended (monk) carried

¹ Cf. [Bu-Pc.69](#). ² Correct *sandhāya* of text to *saddhāya*, and cf. [Vin.2.289](#) *api cāyasmantānaṃ saddhāya desemi*.

out the Observance just there within the boundary, and carried out a (formal) act of the Order; but the monks who had suspended (him), having gone outside the boundary, carried out the Observance and carried out a (formal) act of the Order (there). Then ascertain monk who had suspended him, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, that monk spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, these monks who are taking the part of a suspended (monk) are carrying out the Observance just there within the boundary, they are carrying out a (formal) act of the Order; but we, the monks who have suspended him, having gone outside the boundary, are carrying out the Observance, we are carrying out a (formal) act of the Order (there).”

“Monk, if these monks who are taking the part of the suspended (monk) are carrying out the Observance just there within the boundary and are carrying out a (formal) act of the Order, these (formal) acts of theirs will be legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand because a motion and a proclamation have been laid down by me. If, monk, you monks who suspended him, carry out the Observance just there within the boundary, if you carry out a (formal) act of the Order, these (formal) acts of yours are also legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand, because a motion and a proclamation have been laid down by me.

“What is the reason for this? These monks belong to a different communion from yours and you belong to a different communion from theirs. Monk, there are these two grounds for belonging to a different communion: either, of oneself one makes oneself belong to a different communion,¹ or a complete Order suspends one for not seeing or for not making amends for or for not giving up. Monk, there are these two grounds for belonging to a different communion. Monk, there are these two grounds for belonging to the same communion: either, of oneself one makes oneself belong to the same communion, or a complete Order restores one who was suspended for not seeing or for not making amends for or for not giving up. Monk, there are these two grounds for belonging to the same communion.”²

Kd.10.1.10

BD.4.488

Vin.1.341

¹ According to Vin-a.1149 he chooses to sit among those who speak *dhamma* and rather than among those who do not. ² End of this story given at [Kd.10.5.11ff.](#)

Kd.10.2.1

Now at that time monks, causing quarrels, causing strife, falling into disputes in a refectory amidst the houses, behaved unsuitably towards one another in gesture, in speech; they came to blows.¹ People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, causing quarrels ... come to blows?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks ... come to blows?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks ... came to blows?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, if an Order is divided, if it is behaving not according to the rule, if there is unfriendliness, you should sit down on a seat thinking: ‘At least we will not behave unsuitably to one another in gesture, in speech; we will not come to blows.’ Monks, if an Order is divided but if it is behaving according to the rule, if there is friendliness, you may sit down on a seat next (to one another).”

Kd.10.2.2

Now at that time² monks, making quarrels, making strife, falling into disputes in the midst of an Order, wounded one another with the weapons of the tongue;³ they were not able to settle that legal question. Then a certain monk approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, that monk spoke thus to the Lord: “This is a case, Lord, where monks, making quarrels ... are not able to settle that legal question. It would be good, Lord, if the Lord out of compassion were to approach those monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. The Lord approached those monks; having approached he sat down on the appointed seat. As he was sitting down, the Lord spoke thus to those monks:

BD.4.489

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.64, Bu-Pc.65. ² Kd.10.2.2 = MN.iii.152f., with slight differences. ³ mukhasattihi as at Ud.67, AN.i.70, Ja.i.341.

“Enough, monks; no strife, no quarrels, no contention, no disputing.” When he had spoken thus, a certain monk who spoke what was not-*dhamma*¹ spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord let the Lord, the *dhamma*-master² wait; Lord, let the Lord, unconcerned,³ live intent on abiding in ease here and now;⁴ we will be (held) accountable for this strife, quarrel, contention, disputing.” And a second time the Lord spoke thus to these monks:⁵ “Enough, monks; no strife ... no disputing.” And a second time the monks who spoke what was not-*dhamma* spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, let the Lord, the *dhamma*-master wait; ... we will be (held) accountable for this ... disputing.”

Vin.1.342

THE STORY OF DĪGHĀVU

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Once upon a time,⁶ monks, at Benares Brahmādatta was king of Kāsi; he was rich, wealthy, opulent, of great strength, with many vehicles; he had large territories, full storehouses and granaries. Dīghīti was the name of the king of Kosala. He was poor, of little wealth, of few means, of little strength, with few vehicles, he had (only) small territories, storehouses and granaries that were not full. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having arrayed a fourfold army,⁷ marched against Dīghīti, the King of Kosala. Then, monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, heard: ‘They say that Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having arrayed a fourfold army, is marching against me.’ Then, monks, it occurred to Dīghīti, the King of Kosala: ‘Now Brahmādatta, King of Kāsi, is rich, wealthy, opulent ... full storehouses and granaries. I am not competent to stand against even one attack of Brahmādatta, King of Kāsi. Suppose I were to flee from the town beforehand? ‘Then, monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, taking his chief consort, fled from the town beforehand. Then,

Kd.10.2.3

BD.4.490

¹ *adhammavādin*, or, one adhering to or professing what was not-*dhamma*. Vin-a.1150 says: one of those taking the part of the suspended (monk). Word also occurs at MN.i.287=MN.iii.48=AN.ii.22=AN.v.265=AN.v.283, always in a formula with which cf. AN.i.202, DN.i.4. Cf. also the two assemblies, the *dhamma*- and the *adhamma*-*vādinī* at AN.i.75. ² *dhammassāmī*, as at SN.iv.94. ³ *appossukka*, as at MN.i.331, MN.i.459, Vin.2.188 in a similar sentence. Cf. *appossukkatā* above, Vin.1.5. ⁴ *diṭṭhadhammasukhavihāra*, as at AN.ii.23, MN.i.40, MN.i.331, MN.i.459, Vin.2.188, SN.ii.239. ⁵ He spoke the “third time” in Kd.10.2.20, below. ⁶ Cf. Ja.iii.211, Ja.iii.487ff. ⁷ See Vin.4.105 (BD.2.375 and notes).

monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, conquering the troops¹ and vehicles and territory and storehouses and granaries of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, lived as the master. Then, monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, set out for Benares with his wife. In due course he arrived at Benares. Monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, dwelt there with his wife in a certain place adjoining Benares in a potter's house, in disguise, clothed² as a wanderer.

Kd.10.2.4

“Then soon, monks, the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, became pregnant. She had a fancy of this kind: she wanted, at sunrise, to see a fourfold army arrayed, armoured, standing on level ground³ and to drink at the washing of the swords.⁴ Then, monks, the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, spoke thus to Dīghīti, the King of Kosala: ‘Sire, I am pregnant; a fancy of this kind has risen in me: I want, at sunrise, to see a fourfold army ... and to drink at the washing of the swords.’ He said: ‘Lady, whence is there for us who are in distress a fourfold army arrayed, armoured, standing on level ground and a washing of the swords?’ She said: ‘If I, sire, do not get a chance (to have my wish) I shall die.’

Kd.10.2.5

Vin.1.343

BD.4.491

“Now at that time, monks, the Brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, was a friend of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala. Then, monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, approached the Brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi; having approached, he spoke thus to the Brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘A lady friend of yours, old dear,⁵ is pregnant; a fancy of this kind has risen in her: she wants, at sunrise to see a fourfold army ... and to drink at the washing of the swords.’ He said: ‘Well then, sire,

¹ *bala*, as above where rendered “strength”. ² *channa* can also mean concealed. ³ *subhummiyaṃ ṭhitam*. Cf. MN-a.ii.97 *subhūmiyaṃ ti samabhūmiyaṃ*. ⁴ *khaggānaṃ dhovanaṃ pātuṃ*, to drink the water with which swords were washed. Cf. Mahāvamsa xxii.42–Mahāvamsa xxii.45 where another pregnant queen “longed to drink (the water) that had served to cleanse the sword with which the head of the first warrior among king Eḷāra’s warriors had been cut off”. (Geiger’s translation). F.L. Woodward refers me to J. ABBOTT, *Keys of Power*, O.U.P., p.168, “The sword of the Marātha Sivaji, preserved at Satāra, has power, and water in which it has been washed is a cure for obstructed delivery”. See also T.R. GLOVER, *Springs of Hellas*, C.U.P., 1945, p.7, quoting SENECA, *Naturales quaestiones* iii.2, “‘There are waters wholesome, useful, and waters deadly and putrid ... some remove barrenness’—a belief found in other authors (ATHENAEUS, p.41f., quotes THEOPHRASTUS, *History of Plants*, to this effect).” ⁵ *samma*.

let us see the queen too.’ Then, monks, the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, approached the Brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi. Then, monks, that Brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, saw the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, coming in the distance, and seeing her, rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having with joined palms saluted the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, he three times uttered this utterance: ‘Indeed, a king of Kosala is in your womb, indeed, a king of Kosala is in your womb.’ And he said: ‘Do not be distressed, queen, you will get the chance at the time of sunrise to see a fourfold army arrayed, armoured, standing on level ground and to drink at the washing of the swords.’

Kd.10.2.6

“Then, monks, the brahmin priest of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, approached Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi; having approached, he spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘Sire, the signs that are visible are such that tomorrow at the time of sunrise a fourfold army arrayed, armoured, must stand on level ground and the swords must be washed.’ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, enjoined people, saying: ‘Good sirs, do as the Brahmin priest says.’ So, monks, the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, got the chance at the time of sunrise of seeing a fourfold army arrayed, armoured, standing on level ground, and of drinking at the washing of the swords. Then, monks, the chief consort of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, when the child in her womb had reached maturity, gave birth to a son. They gave him the name of Dīghāvu.¹ Then, monks, soon afterwards Prince Dīghāvu attained years of discretion.²

Kd.10.2.7
BD.4.492

“Then, monks, it occurred to Dīghīti, the King of Kosala: ‘This Brahmādatta, King of Kāsi, has done us much mischief; our troops and vehicles and territories and storehouses and granaries have been stolen by him. If he knew about us he would have all three of us put to death. Suppose I should make Prince Dīghāvu live outside the town?’ Then, monks, Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, made Prince Dīghāvu live outside the town. Then, monks, Prince

Vin.1.344

¹ Some manuscripts spell Dīghāyu. The meaning, in both spellings, is longevity, “Longeval” (*Vinaya Texts* ii.297). Dīghāvu’s story is given at Ja.iii.211f., Ja.iii.487ff.; at Ja.iii.490 he is identified with the Bodhisatta. Dh.p.109 is said to have been spoken on his account, Dh.p-a.ii.235.

² As at [Vin.1.269](#). In the Jātaka this age is usually reckoned to be about sixteen.

Dīghāvu, while living outside the town, soon learnt every craft.

Kd.10.2.8

“Now at that time, monks, the barber of Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, dwelt at (the court of) Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi. The barber of Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, saw Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, with his wife in a certain place adjoining Benares, dwelling in a potter’s house, in disguise, clothed as a wanderer; seeing him, he approached Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi; having approached, he spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘Sire, Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, is dwelling with his wife ... clothed as a wanderer’.

Kd.10.2.9

“Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, enjoined the people, saying: ‘Well then, good sirs, bring along Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, with his wife.’ And, monks, these people having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, brought along Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, with his wife. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, enjoined the people, saying: “Well now, good sirs, having bound Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, and his wife with stout cord, their arms pinioned tightly behind their backs,¹ having shaved them bald,² having paraded them to a harsh-sounding kettle-drum from street to street, from cross-road to cross-road, having ejected them by the southern gate of the town, having at the south of the town³ chopped them into four pieces, discard the pieces to the four quarters.” And these people, monks, having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having bound Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, and his wife with stout cord, their arms pinioned tightly behind their backs, having shaved them bald, paraded them with a harsh-sounding kettle-drum from street to street and from cross-road to cross-road.

BD.4.493

Kd.10.2.10

“Then, monks, it occurred to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘It is a long time since I have seen my parents. Suppose now I should see my parents?’ Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, having entered Benares, saw his parents bound with stout cord their arms pinioned tightly behind their backs, shaved bald, parading to a harsh-sounding kettle-drum from street to street, from cross-road to cross-road; and seeing them he approached his parents. Then, monks,

¹ Cf. DN.i.245. ² Cf. DN.i.98. ³ This whole passage is stock; cf. AN.ii.241, SN.ii.128, SN.iv.344.

Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, saw Prince Dīghāvu coming from afar, and seeing him he spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Do not you, dear Dīghāvu, look far or close for, dear Dīghāvu, wrathful moods are not allayed by wrath: wrathful moods, dear Dīghāvu, are allayed by non-wrath.’¹

Vin.1.345

Kd.10.2.11

“When he had spoken thus, monks, these people spoke thus to Dīghāti, the King of Kosala: ‘This Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, is mad, he is talking gibberish. Who is Dīghāvu to him that he should speak thus: “Do not you ... by non-wrath”?’ He said: ‘I am not mad, good sirs, I am not talking gibberish; what is more, whoever is learned will understand.’ And a second time, monks, ... And a third time, monks, did Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, speak thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Do not you, dear Dīghāvu, look far or close ... by non-wrath.’ And a third time, monks, did these people speak thus to Dīghāti, the King of Kosala: ‘This Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, is mad ...’ And a third time, monks, did Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, speak thus to these people: ‘I am not mad ... whoever is learned will understand.’ Then, monks, these people having paraded Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, and his wife from street to street, from cross-road to cross-road, having ejected them by the southern gate, having chopped them into four pieces at the south of the town, having discarded the pieces to the four quarters, and having stationed troops² (there), departed.

Kd.10.2.12

“Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, having entered Benares, having brought back strong drink, made the troops³ drink it. When these had fallen down, intoxicated, then (Dīghāvu) having collected sticks, having made a funeral pyre, having put his parents’ bodies on to the funeral pyre, having lit it, three times circumambulated the funeral pyre, his palms joined. Now at that time Brahmādatta, the King of Kāśī, was on an upper terrace of his palace. He saw Prince Dīghāvu, monks, three times circumambulating the funeral pyre, his palms joined, and seeing him it occurred to him: ‘Undoubtedly this man is a relation or a kinsman of Dīghāti, the King of Kosala. Alas, this spells misfortune for me, for no one will tell me what it means.’

BD.4.494

Kd.10.2.13

“Then, monks. Prince Dīghāvu, having gone to a jungle, having cried and wept, having dried his tears, having entered Benares, having gone to an elephant stable near the king’s palace, spoke thus to the elephant trainer:

¹ Cf. Dh.5. The meaning is explained at Kd.10.2.19. ² *gumba*. ³ *gumbiye*.

‘I want to learn the craft, teacher.’¹ He said: ‘Well then, my good youngster,² learn it.’ Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, rising in the night towards dawn, sang in a sweet voice in the elephant stable and played the lute.³ And monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, rising in the night towards dawn heard the singing in the sweet voice and the lute-playing in the elephant stable; having heard, he asked the people: ‘Who, good sirs, rising in the night towards dawn, was singing in a sweet voice and playing a lute in the elephant stable?’

Vin.1.346

Kd.10.2.14

“Sire, a youngster, a pupil of such and such an elephant trainer, rising in the night towards dawn, was singing in a sweet voice and playing a lute in the elephant stable.’ He said: ‘Well then, good sirs, bring that youngster along.’ And, monks, these people, having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, brought along Prince Dīghāvu. (The king said:) “Did you, my good youngster, rising ... sing in a sweet voice and play a lute in the elephant stable?’ ‘Yes, sire,’ he said. ‘Well, then, do you, my good youngster, sing and play the lute (before me).’ And, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, longing for success, sang in a sweet voice and played the lute. Then, monks, Brahmādatta the King of Kāsi, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Do you, my good youngster, attend on me.’ Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu answered ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi. Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu became an earlier riser than Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, he lay down later, he was a willing servant, eager to please, speaking affectionately.⁴ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, soon established Prince Dīghāvu in a confidential position of trust.

BD.4.495

Kd.10.2.15

“Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Well now, good youngster, harness a chariot, I will go out hunting.’ And, monks, Prince Dīghāvu having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having harnessed a chariot, spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘A chariot is harnessed for you, sire; for this you may think it is now the right time.’ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi,

¹ *ācariya*, teacher or trainer. ² *bhaṇe māṇavaka*. ³ He may have learnt to sing and play when he learnt “every craft” (end of *Kd.10.2.7*), or he may have learnt these accomplishments as part of the elephant craft, elephants being notoriously fond of music. ⁴ As at *SN.iii.113*.

mounted the chariot, Prince Dīghāvu drove the chariot, and he drove the chariot in such a manner that the army went by one way and the chariot by another. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having gone far, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Well now, good youngster, unharness the chariot; as I am tired I will lie down.’ And, monks, Prince Dīghāvu having answered ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having unharnessed the chariot, sat down cross-legged on the ground. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, lay down having laid his head on Prince Dīghāvu’s lap, and because he was tired he fell asleep at once.

Kd.10.2.16

“Then, monks, it occurred to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘This Brahmādatta, King of Kāsi, has done us much mischief, he has stolen our troops and vehicles and territory and store-houses, and granaries, and he has killed my parents. This could be a time when I could show my wrath,’ and he drew his sword from its sheath. Then, monks, it occurred to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘My father spoke to me thus at the time of his dying: ‘Do not you, dear Dīghāvu, look far or close, for, dear Dīghāvu, wrathful moods are not allayed by wrath: wrathful moods, dear Dīghāvu, are allayed by non-wrath.’” It would not be suitable for me to transgress my father’s words,’ and he replaced his sword in its sheath. And a second time, monks, it occurred to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘This Brahmādatta ... when I could show my wrath,’ and he drew his sword from its sheath. And a second time, monks, it occurred to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘My father spoke to me thus ... It would not be suitable for me to transgress my father’s words,’ and again he replaced his sword in its sheath. And a third time ... and again he replaced his sword in its sheath. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, frightened, agitated, fearful, alarmed, suddenly got up. Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘Why do you, sire, frightened ... suddenly get up? ‘He said: ‘As I was dreaming here, my good youngster, the son of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala, attacked me with a sword. That is why I, frightened ... suddenly got up.’

Vin.1.347

BD.4.496

“Then, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, having stroked the head of Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, with his left hand, having drawn his sword with his right hand, spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘I, sire, am Prince Dīghāvu, that son of Dīghīti, the King of Kosala. You have done us much mischief, our troops, vehicles, territory, storehouses and granaries were

Kd.10.2.17

stolen by you, and my parents were killed by you. This could be a time when I could show my wrath.’ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, inclining his head towards Prince Dīghāvu’s feet, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Grant me my life, dear Dīghāvu, grant me my life, dear Dīghāvu.’

“‘How am I able to grant life to a king? It is a king who should grant me life.’

“‘Well then, dear Dīghāvu, you grant me life and I will grant you life.’ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, and Prince Dīghāvu granted life to one another and they took hold of (one another’s) hands and they made an oath to do (one another) no harm. Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Well then, dear Dīghāvu, harness the chariot; we will go away.’ And, monks, Prince Dīghāvu, having answered, ‘Yes, sire’, in assent to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having harnessed the chariot, spoke thus to Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi: ‘The chariot is harnessed for you, sire; for this you may think it is now the right time.’ Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, mounted the chariot. Prince Dīghāvu drove the chariot, and he drove the chariot in such a manner that soon it met the army.

“Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, having entered Benares, having had the ministers and councillors convened, spoke thus: ‘If, good sirs, you should see Prince Dīghāvu, the son of Dīghāti, the King of Kosala, what would you do to him? ‘Some spoke thus: ‘We, sire, would cut off his hands; we, sire, would cut off his feet; we, sire, would cut off his hands and feet; ... his ears, ... his nose, ... his ears and nose, ... we, sire, would cut off his head.’ He said: ‘This, good sirs, is Prince Dīghāvu, the son of Dīghāti, the King of Kosala; there is no occasion to do anything (against him); life was granted by him to me and life was granted by me to him.’

“Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, spoke thus to Prince Dīghāvu: ‘Concerning that, dear Dīghāvu, which your father said to you at the time of dying: “Do not you, dear Dīghāvu, look far or close, for, dear Dīghāvu, wrathful moods are not allayed by wrath: wrathful moods, dear Dīghāvu, are allayed by non-wrath”—what did your father mean?’ He said: ‘Concerning that, sire, which my father said to me at the time of dying—“not far” means: do not bear wrath long. This is what my father said to me, sire, at

Vin.1.348

BD.4.497

Kd.10.2.18

Kd.10.2.19

the time of dying when he said “not far”. Concerning that, sire, which my father said to me at the time of dying—“not close” means: do not hastily break with a friend. This is what my father said to me, sire, at the time of dying when he said “not close”. Concerning that, sire, which my father said to me at the time of dying—“for, dear Dīghāvu, wrathful moods are not allayed by wrath: wrathful moods, dear Dīghāvu, are allayed by non-wrath” means: my parents were killed by a king, but if I were to deprive the king of life those who desired the king’s welfare would deprive me of life and those who desired my welfare would deprive these of life; thus that wrath would not be settled by wrath.¹ But now that life is granted me by a king and life is granted a king by me, thus is wrath settled by non-wrath. This is what my father said to me, sire, at the time of dying when he said: ‘for, dear Dīghāvu, wrathful moods are not allayed by wrath; wrathful moods, dear Dīghāvu, are allayed by non-wrath’.

BD.4.498

Kd.10.2.20

Vin.1.349

“Then, monks, Brahmādatta, the King of Kāsi, thinking: ‘Indeed, it is marvellous, indeed, it is wonderful that this Prince Dīghāvu is so clever that he understands in full the matter which was spoken by his father in brief’, gave back his father’s troops and vehicles and territory and storehouses and granaries, and he gave him his daughter.

“Now, monks, if such is the forbearance and gentleness of kings who wield the sceptre,² who wield the sword, herein, monks, let your light shine forth so that you who have gone forth in this *dhamma* and discipline which are thus well taught³ may be equally forbearing and gentle.” And a third time⁴ the Lord spoke thus to these monks: “Enough, monks; no strife, no quarrels, no contention, no disputing.” And a third time that monk who spoke what was not *dhamma* spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, let the Lord, the *dhamma*-master, wait; Lord, let the Lord, unconcerned, live intent on abiding in ease here and now; we will be (held) accountable for this strife, quarrel, contention, disputing.” Then the Lord, thinking: “These foolish

¹ Cf. similar sentiments at SN.i.85, Dh.p.256–Dhp.257. ² *ādinna-daṇḍa*, take up a stick. *Daṇḍa* also means punishment. So the phrase may mean, instead of “scepter”, “who use violence” or “who mete out punishment”. ³ Cf. Kd.5.4.3. ⁴ First and second times occur at Kd.10.2.2.

men are as though infatuate; it is not easy to persuade them,” rising up from his seat, departed.

The First Portion for Repeating: that on Dīghāvu

Then the Lord,¹ having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Kosambī for almsfood; having walked for almsfood in Kosambī, bringing back his almsbowl after his meal, having packed away his lodging, taking his bowl and robe and standing in the midst of the Order,² he spoke these verses:

BD.4.499

“When all³ in chorus bawl,
none feels a fool,
nor though the Order is divided,
thinks otherwise.

“With⁴ wandering wits
the wiseacres range all the held of talk;
with mouths agape to full extent,
what leads them on they know not.

“They who⁵ (in thought) belabour this:
That man has me abused, has hurt,
has worsted me, has me despoiled:
in these wrath’s not allayed.

“They who do not belabour this:
That man has me abused, has hurt,
has worsted me, has me despoiled:
in them wrath is allayed.

“Nay, not by wrath are wrathful moods
allayed here (and) at any time,
but by not-wrath are they allayed:

¹ Cf. MN.iii.153. ² Omitted at MN.iii.153. ³ All these lines occur at MN.iii.154, Ja.iii.488.

⁴ This couplet also at Ud.v.9. I borrow Woodward’s translation of it. ⁵ This verse and the next three also occur at Dhp.3–Dhp.6=Ja.iii.212.

this is an (ageless) endless rule.

“People do not discern
that here we straitened are (in life, in time),¹
but they who herein do discern,
thereby their quarrels are allayed.

Vin.1.350

“Ruffians who maim and kill,
steal cattle, steeds and wealth, who plunder realms—
for these is concord.
Why should there not be for you?

“If one find² friend with whom to fare
rapt in the well-abiding, apt,
surmounting dangers one and all,
with joy fare with him mindfully.

BD.4.500

“Finding none apt³ with whom to fare,
None in the well-abiding rapt,
As *rājā* quits the conquered realm,
fare lonely as bull-elephant in elephant jungle.

“Better⁴ the faring of one alone,
there is no companionship with the foolish,
fare lonely, unconcerned, working no evil,
as bull-elephant in elephant-jungle.”

ON GOING TO BĀLAKALOṆAKA

Then the Lord,⁵ having spoken these verses as he was standing in the midst of the Order, approached Bālakaloṇākāra village.⁶ Now at that time the

Kd.10.4.1

¹ This line is also at Thag.275. ² This verse is also at Dhp.328 = Snp.45. I borrow E.M. HARE's translation. ³ This verse = Dhp.329 = Snp.46 (except for Sutta Nipāta last line).

⁴ This verse = Dhp.330. ⁵ MN.iii.154 continues in accordance with above, and cf. Ja.iii.489.

⁶ See *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* for uncertainty of the reading (MN.iii.154, Ja.iii.489, MN-a.iii.55, MN-a.iv.206 read *-gāma*; Dhp-a.i.56, SN-a.ii.304, Thag-a.i.380 (Siamese edition) read *-ārāma*), and for the Majjhima Commentary's (MN-a.iii.55) two interpretations of the meaning of the name.

venerable Bhagu was staying in Bālakoṇakāra village. Then the venerable Bhagu¹ saw the Lord coming from afar; seeing him, he made ready a seat, set out water for the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand, and having gone to meet him, he received his bowl and robe. Then the Lord sat down on the seat made ready; as he was sitting down he had his feet bathed. And the venerable Bhagu, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance. As the venerable Bhagu was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord spoke thus to him: “I hope, monk, things are going well, I hope you are keeping going, I hope you are not short of almsfood.”

“Things are going well, Lord, I am keeping going, Lord, and, Lord, I am not short of almsfood.” Then the Lord, having delighted, rejoiced, roused, gladdened the venerable Bhagu with talk on *dhamma*,² rising from his seat, departed for the Eastern Bamboo Grove.³

ON GOING TO PĀCĪNAVAMSA DĀYA

Kd.10.4.2
BD.4.501

Now at that time the venerable Anuruddha⁴ and the venerable Nandiya⁵ and the venerable Kimbila⁶ were staying in the Eastern Bamboo Grove.⁷ The keeper of the Grove saw the Lord coming from afar; seeing him he spoke thus to the Lord: “Do not, recluse, enter this Grove; there are three young men of respectable families staying here desiring self⁸; do not cause them discomfort.” The venerable Anuruddha heard the keeper of the Grove conferring with the Lord; having heard, he spoke thus to the keeper of

¹ His verses are at Thag.271–Thag.274. Mentioned at Vin.2.182, Ja.i.140, Ja.iii.489, Mi.107, Dh-p-a.i.56, Dh-p-a.i.133. According to *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* he is probably not the same as the Bhagu mentioned at Vin.1.300. ² According to MN-a.iv.206 this was on the advantages of solitariness. ³ Pācīnavamsa (miga) dāya. See AN-a.iv.117 for interpretation of the name. Mentioned at (besides MN.iii.155) Thag.155, AN.iv.228, Dh-p-a.i.56, Thag-a.86.

⁴ Verses at Thag.892–Thag.919. He and his friends, Nandiya and Kimbila, are often mentioned together, as at MN.i.205, which although set in the Gosinga Wood, is similar to the above Vinaya passage. See also the six friends (not including Nandiya) who, with Upāli, the barber, are mentioned at Vin.2.182. ⁵ Verses at Thag.25. Thag-a.86 says that while Nandiya was in the Eastern Bamboo Grove, Māra appeared before him in a terrible form.

⁶ Verses at Thag.118, Thag.155. ⁷ For the following cf. MN.i.205ff. (where the scene is laid in the Gosinga Sāl-Woodland Grove). ⁸ On *attakāmarūpa* see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Buddhism* (Home University Library) 2nd edition, p.81.

the Grove: “Do not, good grove-keeper, impede the Lord. It is our teacher, the Lord, who is arriving.” Then the venerable Anuruddha approached the venerable Nandiya and the venerable Kimbila; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Nandiya and to the venerable Kimbila: “Go forward, venerable ones, go forward, venerable ones; our teacher, the Lord is arriving.”

Vin.1.351

Then the venerable Anuruddha and the venerable Nandiya and the venerable Kimbila, having gone out to meet the Lord, one received his bowl and robe, one made ready a seat, one set out water for the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand. Then the Lord sat down on the seat made ready; as he was sitting down he had his feet bathed. Then these venerable ones, having greeted the Lord, sat down at a respectful distance. As the venerable Anuruddha was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Lord spoke thus: “I hope that things are going well with you, Anuruddhas,¹ I hope you are keeping going, I hope you are not short of almsfood.”

Kd.10.4.3

“Things are going well, Lord, we are keeping going, Lord, and, Lord, we are not short of almsfood.”

BD.4.502

“I hope that you, Anuruddhas, are living all together on friendly terms and harmonious, as milk and water blend, regarding one another with the eye of affection?”²

“Yes, certainly, Lord, we are living all together on friendly terms and harmonious, as milk and water blend, regarding one another with the eye of affection.”

“And how is it that you, Anuruddhas, are living ... of affection?”

Kd.10.4.4

“As to this, Lord, it occurred to me: ‘Indeed it is a gain for me, indeed it is well gotten by me, that I am living with such Brahma-farers.’ On account of this, Lord, for these venerable ones amity³ as to bodily conduct, whether openly or in private, has risen up in me, amity as to speech, amity as to thought, whether openly or in private, has risen up.⁴ Because of this, Lord, it occurred to me: ‘What now, if I, having surrendered my own mind, should

¹ The plural, Anuruddhā, is used instead of the names of the three separate monks. ² Stock, as at MN.i.206, MN.i.398, MN.iii.156, AN.i.70, AN.iii.67, AN.iii.104, SN.iv.225. ³ On amity, *mettā*, see MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Outlines of Buddhism*, p.30ff. ⁴ Cf. MN.i.321, which after “amity as to speech” fills in “whether openly or in private has risen up”, as does MN.i.206.

live only according to the mind of these venerable ones?’ So I, Lord, having surrendered my own mind, am living only according to the mind of these venerable ones. Lord, we have divers bodies,¹ but assuredly only one mind.”

And the venerable Nandiya too, and also the venerable Kimbila spoke thus to the Lord: “And it occurred to me too, Lord: ‘Indeed it is a gain for me ... only one mind’. It is thus, Lord, that we are living all together on friendly terms and harmonious, as milk and water blend, regarding one another with the eye of affection.”

Kd.10.4.5

“And I hope that you, Anuruddhas, are living zealous, ardent, self-resolute?”

Vin.1.352

“Yes, certainly, Lord, we are living ... self-resolute.”

“And how is it that you, Anuruddhas, are living ... self-resolute?”

BD.4.503

“As to this, Lord, whichever² of us returns first from the village for alms-food, he makes ready a seat, puts out water for washing the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand; having washed a refuse-bowl he sets it out, he sets out water for drinking and water for washing. Whoever returns last from the village for almsfood, if there are the remains of a meal and if he so desires, he eats them; if he does not desire to do so he throws them out where there are no crops or drops them into water where there are no living creatures; he puts up the seat, he puts away the water for the feet, the footstool, the foot-stand, having washed the refuse-bowl, he puts it away, he puts away the water for drinking and the water for washing, he sweeps the refectory. Whoever sees a vessel for drinking water or a vessel for washing water or a vessel (for water) for rinsing after an evacuation, void and empty, he sets out (water). If it is impossible for him (to do this) by a movement of his hand, having invited a companion to help us by signalling (to him) with the hand, we set out (water); but we do not, Lord, for such a reason break into speech. And then we, Lord, once in every five nights sit down together for talk on *dhamma*. It is thus, Lord, that we are living, zealous, ardent, self-resolute.”³

ON GOING TO PĀRILEYYAKA

Kd.10.4.6

Then the Lord, having delighted, rejoiced, roused, gladdened the venerable Anuruddha and the venerable Nandiya and the venerable Kimbila with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, set out on tour for Pārileyya.¹ Walking on tour in due course he arrived at Pārileyya. The Lord stayed there at Pārileyya in the Guarded Woodland Thicket² at the root of the lovely *sāl*-tree.³ Then as the Lord was meditating in private a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “Formerly, beset by those monks of Kosambī, makers of strife, makers of quarrels, makers of disputes makers of brawls, makers of legal questions in the Order, I did not live in comfort; but now that I am alone with no other, I am living in comfort removed from those monks, makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order.”

BD.4.504

Now a certain large bull-elephant⁴ was beset by elephants and cow-elephants, by elephant calves and sucklings; he ate grass already cropped by them, and they ate bundles of branches as he broke them off; and he drank muddied water and when he crossed over at a ford the cow-elephants went pushing against his body. Then it occurred to that large bull-elephant: “Now I am living beset by elephants and cow-elephants ... I eat grass already cropped by them and they eat bundles of branches as I break them off; and I drink muddied water and when I cross over at a ford the cow-elephants go pushing against my body. Suppose I were to live alone secluded from the crowd?”

Vin.1.353

Then that large bull-elephant, leaving the herd, approached Pārileyya,

Kd.10.4.7

¹ We are many (or several) men, persons, *kāyā*. ² Cf. Kd.4.1. ³ The versions at MN.i.207, MN.iii.154, break off here, and both go on from here in different ways. ¹ Spelt Pārileyya; a village, although SN-a.ii.304 speaks of it as a *nagara*, town. DhP-a.i.51-63 takes Pārileyya to be the and describes in vivid detail the ways in which he waited upon the Lord. This elephant is identified with that in the Bhisī Jātaka (Ja.iv.314). Pārileyya(ka) mentioned at SN.iii.95, Ud.iv.5, Ja.iii.489. ² Rakkhitavanasaṇḍa. Mentioned at Ud.iv.5, but not at SN.iii.95. DhP-a.i.59 says that the thicket was so called because the elephant with a stick in his trunk, guarded the Lord from danger during the nights. ³ *bhaddasāla*. It was one tree, *manāpa laṭṭhaka*, according to Ud-a.250 and SN-a.ii.305, which say that the Lord stayed depending on that village (Pārileyya) in a leaf-room in the jungle thicket at the root of that tree. ⁴ *hatthināga*. Vin-a.1152 says *mahāhatthi*, a great elephant. Ud-a.250 adds that he was the leader of a herd. This passage recurs at Ud.iv.5. Cf. AN.iv.435.

the Guarded Woodland Thicket, the lovely *sāl*-tree and the Lord; having approached, he set out by means of his trunk drinking water for the Lord and water for washing, and he kept the grass down.¹ Then it occurred to that large bull-elephant: “Now formerly, beset by elephants and cow-elephants, by elephant calves and sucklings, I did not live in comfort; I ate grass already cropped by them and they ate bundles of branches as I broke them off; I drank muddied water and when I crossed over at a ford the cow-elephants went pushing against me; but now that I am alone with no other I am living in comfort removed from the elephants, the cow-elephants, the elephant calves and sucklings.”

Then the Lord, having understood his own seclusion and knowing by mind that bull-elephant’s reasoning of mind, at that time uttered this utterance:

“Herein agreeth mind with mind,
of sage² and bull-elephant of plough-pole tusks,³
since each delights in forest (solitude).”⁴

Kd.10.5.1
BD.4.505

Then the Lord, having stayed at Pārileyya as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvattthī. Walking on tour in due course he arrived at Sāvattthī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anātha-piṇḍika’s monastery. Then the lay-followers of Kosambī thought: ‘These masters the monks of Kosambī, have done us much mischief; the Lord is departing, harassed by these; come, we should neither greet the masters, the monks of Kosambī, nor should we stand up before them, nor should we salute them with joined palms or perform the proper duties; we should not revere, respect, esteem or honour them, and neither should we give them almsfood when they come (to us); thus they, when they are neither revered, respected, esteemed nor honoured by us, will depart unrevered, or they will leave the Order, or they will reconcile themselves to the Lord’.

Kd.10.5.2

Then the lay-followers of Kosambī neither greeted the monks of Kosambī, nor stood up before them, they did not salute them with joined palms or

Vin.1.354

¹ *appaharitañ ca karoti.* ² *nāga.* Vin-a.1152, Ud-a.251 explain by *buddhanāga.* ³ Cf. *nāga* *īsādanta* at MN.i.414, Vv.20.9, Vv.43.9. ⁴ Version at Ud.iv.5 also ends here.

perform the proper duties, they did not revere, respect, esteem or honour them and they did not give them almsfood when they came (to them). Then the monks of Kosambī, as they were not being revered, respected, esteemed or honoured by the lay-followers of Kosambī, spoke thus: “Come now, your reverences, let us, having gone to Sāvattthī, settle this legal question in the Lord’s presence.”

ON EIGHTEEN CASES

Then the monks of Kosambī, having packed away their lodgings, taking their bowls and robes, approached Sāvattthī.

Kd.10.5.3

Then the venerable Sāriputta heard: “It is said that the monks of Kosambī, makers of strife, makers of quarrels, makers of disputes makers of brawls, makers of legal questions in the Order, are coming to Sāvattthī.” Then the venerable Sāriputta approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the venerable Sāriputta spoke thus to the Lord: “It is said, Lord, that the monks of Kosambī, makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order, are coming to Sāvattthī. How am I, Lord, to behave in regard to these monks?”

“Well now, Sāriputta, as *dhamma* is so must you stand.”¹

BD.4.506

“How am I, Lord, to find out what is *dhamma* and what is non-*dhamma*?”

Kd.10.5.4

“Now, Sāriputta, a speaker of non-*dhamma* is to be known by eighteen points: In such a case, Sāriputta, a monk explains² non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*, he explains *dhamma* as non-*dhamma*; he explains non-discipline as discipline, he explains discipline as non-discipline; he explains what was not spoken, not uttered by the *tathāgata* as spoken, uttered by the *tathāgata*, explains what was spoken, uttered by the *tathāgata* as not spoken, not uttered by the *tathāgata*; he explains what was not practised by the *tathāgata* as

¹ *yathādhammo tathā tiṭṭhāhi.* ² Cf. this passage with [Vin.2.88](#), [Vin.2.204](#). The first five pairs also occur at [AN.v.77](#) as reasons why when there is strife, quarrelling, contention, dispute in an Order the monks do not live in comfort. These same five pairs are again given ([AN.v.78](#)) as ten roots of disputing. They are followed by another ten roots of disputing, namely the next four pairs as given above in the Vinaya with one added pair.

practised by the *tathāgata*, he explains what was practised by the *tathāgata* as not practised by the *tathāgata*; he explains what was not laid down by the *tathāgata* as laid down by the *tathāgata*, he explains what was laid down by the *tathāgata* as not laid down by the *tathāgata*, he explains what is no offence as an offence, he explains an offence as no offence; he explains a slight offence as a serious offence, he explains a serious offence as a slight offence; he explains an offence which can be done away with¹ as an offence which cannot be done away with, he explains an offence which cannot be done away with as an offence which can be done away with; he declares a very bad offence² as not a very bad offence, he explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. Sāriputta, a speaker of non-*dhamma* is to be known by these eighteen points.

Kd.10.5.5

And, Sāriputta, a speaker of *dhamma* is to be known by eighteen points. In such a case, Sāriputta, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma*, he explains *dhamma* as *dhamma*; he explains non-discipline as non-discipline, he explains discipline as discipline; he explains what was not spoken, not uttered by the *tathāgata* as not spoken, not uttered by the *tathāgata* ... not practised ... practised ... not laid down ... laid down ... he explains an offence as an offence ... no offence as no offence ... a slight offence as a slight offence ... a serious offence as a serious offence an offence which can be done away with as an offence which can be done away with ... an offence which cannot be done away with as an offence which cannot be done away with ... a very bad offence as a very bad offence, he explains not a very bad offence as not a very bad offence. Sāriputta, a speaker of *dhamma* is to be known by these eighteen points.”

Vin.1.355

BD.4.507

Kd.10.5.6

The venerable Moggallāna the Great³ heard ... the venerable Kassapa the Great⁴ heard ... the venerable Kaccāna the Great heard ... the venerable Koṭṭhita the Great heard ... the venerable Kappina the Great heard ... the

¹ *sāvasesā āpatti, anavasesā āpatti*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.35, n.2, which explains that one which cannot be done away with is practically equivalent to a *Pārājika*. A *Saṅghādisesa* can be done away with by the penalties inflicted by the Order, most of the others by confession.

² *duṭṭhullā āpatti*. See **BD.2.219, n.2**. ³ These elders, including Sāriputta but not including Kassapa, are also mentioned at **Vin.2.15–Vin.2.16, Vin.4.66**. For notes see **BD.2.295**. Cf. a list of ten at **AN.iii.299**. ⁴ Verses at **Thag.1051**. At **AN.i.23** called chief of those who uphold the ascetic practices.

venerable Cunda the Great heard ... the venerable Anuruddha heard ... the venerable Revata heard ... the venerable Upāli heard ... the venerable Ānanda heard ... the venerable Rāhula heard: “They say that the monks of Kosambī ... (= [Kd.10.5.3](#)–[Kd.10.5.5](#). *Read Rāhula instead of Sāriputta.*) “... Rāhula, a speaker of *dhamma* is to be known by these eighteen points.”

Kd.10.5.7

Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid heard: “It is said that the monks of Kosambī ... (as in [Kd.10.5.3](#)) ... are coming to Sāvattī.” Then Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance.¹ As she was standing at a respectful distance Mahāpajāpatī the Gotamid spoke thus to the Lord: “It is said, Lord, that the monks of Kosambī ... are coming to Sāvattī. How am I, Lord, to behave in regard to these monks?”

“Well then, do you, Gotami, hear *dhamma* on both sides; having heard *dhamma* on both sides, choose the views and the approval and the persuasion and the creed² of those monks who are there speakers of *dhamma*, and whatever is to be desired by the Order of nuns from the Order of monks,³ all that should be desired only from one who speaks *dhamma*.”

BD.4.508

Kd.10.5.8

Anāthapiṇḍika the householder heard: “It is said that the monks of Kosambī ... are coming to Sāvattī.” Then Anāthapiṇḍika the householder approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Anāthapiṇḍika the householder spoke thus to the Lord: “It is said, Lord, that the monks of Kosambī ... are coming to Sāvattī. How am I, Lord, to behave in regard to these monks?”

“Well then, do you, householder, give gifts to both sides; having given gifts to both sides, hear *dhamma* on both sides; having heard *dhamma* on both sides, choose the views and the approval and the persuasion and the creed of those monks who are there speakers of *dhamma*.”

Kd.10.5.9

Vin.1.356

Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, heard: “It is said that the monks of Kosambī ... are coming to Sāvattī.” Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance

¹ Nuns must stand in the presence of monks; see [Vin.4.52](#). ² Cf. [Kd.1.38.7](#). ³ See e.g. Nuns [Bi-Pc.59](#).

Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, spoke thus to the Lord: “It is said, Lord, that the monks of Kosambī ... are coming to Sāvattthī. How am I, Lord, to behave in regard to these monks?”

“Well then, do you, Visākhā, give gifts to both sides ... (as in **Kd.10.5.8**) ... choose the views ... of those monks who are there speakers of *dhamma*.”

Kd.10.5.10

Then in due course the monks of Kosambī arrived at Sāvattthī. Then the venerable Sāriputta approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Sāriputta spoke thus to the Lord: “They say, Lord, that these monks of Kosambī, makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in the Order, have arrived at Sāvattthī. Now what line of conduct, Lord, should be followed in regard to lodgings for these monks?”

“Well now, Sāriputta, separate lodgings should be given (to them).”

BD.4.509

“But if, Lord, there are no separate lodgings what line of conduct should be followed?”

“Well then, Sāriputta, having made (some) separate they should be given. **But I in no way say this, Sāriputta, that a senior monk’s lodging should be withheld (from him). Whoever should withhold it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

“But what line of conduct, Lord, is to be followed in regard to material gains?”¹

“Material gains, Sāriputta, should be distributed equally amongst all.”

ALLOWANCE TO RESTORE

Kd.10.5.11

Then while that monk who had been suspended was reflecting on *dhamma* and discipline, it occurred to him: “This is an offence, this is not no offence, I have fallen, I am not unfallen, I am suspended, I am not unsuspending, I am suspended by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand.” Then the suspended monk approached those monks who were taking the part of the suspended (one); having approached, he spoke thus to those monks who were taking the part of the suspended (one): “This is an offence,

¹ *āmisa*, probably meaning here food and clothing.

your reverences, it is not no offence ... fit to stand. Come, venerable ones, restore me.”

Then those monks who were taking the part of the suspended (one), taking that suspended monk (with them) approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, those monks spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, this suspended monk speaks thus: ‘This is an offence, your reverences ... Come, venerable ones, restore me’. What line of conduct, Lord, is to be followed in these circumstances?”¹

Kd.10.5.12

“This, monks, is an offence, this is not no offence, this monk has fallen, this monk is not unfallen, this monk is suspended, this monk is not unsus-suspended, he was suspended by a legally valid (formal) act, irreversible, fit to stand But since, monks, that monk who has fallen and was suspended sees (his offence)—well then, monks, restore that monk.”

Vin.1.357

ON HARMONY IN THE SAṄGHA

Then these monks who were taking the part of the suspended (one), having restored that suspended monk, approached the monks who had suspended (him), having approached, they spoke thus to the monks who had suspended (him): “Concerning that case, your reverences, about which there was for the Order strife, quarrels, contention, disputes schism in the Order, dissension in the Order, altercation in the Order, differences in the Order that monk has fallen and was suspended, but he sees and is restored. Now, your reverences, let us achieve unanimity in the Order for settling this case.” Then those monks who had suspended (him) approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, they spoke thus to the Lord: “These monks, Lord, who are taking the part of the suspended (monk) speak thus: ‘Concerning that case ... for settling this case.’ Now what line of conduct, Lord, is to be followed?”

Kd.10.5.13

BD.4.510

“Since, monks, that monk has fallen and was suspended but sees and is restored—well then, monks, achieve unanimity in the Order for settling

Kd.10.5.14

¹ *tehi*.

that case. And thus, monks, should it be achieved: One and all should gather together, both the ill and the well, leave of absence should not be declared on account of anyone. Having gathered together, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Concerning that case about which there was for the Order strife, quarrel, contention, dispute, schism in the Order ... differences in the Order—that monk has fallen and was suspended, but he sees and is restored. If it seems right to the Order the Order should achieve unanimity in the Order for settling this case. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Concerning that case ... and is restored. The Order is achieving unanimity in the Order for settling this case. If the achieving of unanimity in the Order for settling this case is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Unanimity in the Order for settling that case is achieved by the Order. Dissension in the Order is put down, schism in the Order is put down. It is pleasing to the venerable ones; therefore they are silent. Thus do I understand this’. Observance may be carried out at once, the Pātimokkha recited.”

Vin.1.358

QUESTIONS OF UPĀLI ON HARMONY IN THE SAṄGHA

Kd.10.6.1
BD.4.511

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, in regard to a case where there is strife for an Order ... differences for an Order, if the Order not having investigated that case, not having got to the root of it,¹ achieves unanimity in the Order, is that unanimity in the Order legally valid, Lord?”

“Upāli, in regard to a case where there is strife for an Order ... that unanimity is not legally valid, Upāli.”

“But, Lord, in regard to a case where there is strife for an Order ... differences in an Order, if the Order having investigated that case, having got to the root of it, achieves unanimity in the Order, is that unanimity in the Order legally valid, Lord?”

¹ *amūlā mūlaṃ gantvā.*

“Upāli, in regard to a matter where there is strife for an Order, quarrels, contention, dispute, schism in an Order, dissension in an Order, altercation in an Order, differences in an Order, if the Order, having investigated that case, having got to the root of it, achieves unanimity in the Order, that unanimity in the Order is legally valid, Upāli.”

Kd.10.6.2

“How many (kinds of) unanimity in an Order are there, Lord?”

“There are these two (kinds of) unanimity in an Order, Upāli. There is, Upāli, unanimity in an Order that has not arrived at the meaning but has arrived at the letter; there is, Upāli, unanimity in an Order that has both arrived at the meaning and arrived, at the letter. And what, Upāli, is unanimity in an Order that has not arrived at the meaning but has arrived at the letter? Upāli, in regard to a case where there is strife for an Order ... differences in an Order, if the Order, not having investigated that case, not having got to the root of it, achieves unanimity in the Order, this is called, Upāli, unanimity in an Order that has not arrived at the meaning but has arrived at the letter. And what, Upāli, is unanimity in an Order that has both arrived at the meaning and arrived at the letter? Upāli, in regard to a case where there is strife for an Order ... differences in an Order, if the Order, having investigated that case, having got to the root of it, achieves unanimity in the Order, this is called, Upāli, unanimity in an Order that has both arrived at the meaning and arrived at the letter. These, Upāli, are the two (kinds of) unanimity in an Order.”

BD.4.512

Kd.10.6.3

Then the venerable Upāli, rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having saluted the Lord with joined palms, addressed the Lord with verses:

“In the Order’s affairs and deliberations
and in matters arising for investigation,
what kind of man is here most needed?
How is a monk fit for leadership here?”

Vin.1.359

“Above all, one blameless in moral habit,
of careful conduct, his faculties well controlled,
opponents do not censure him in respect of a rule,
for there could be nothing to say against him.”

“Such a one, firm in purity of moral habit,
is confident, he speaks ably,¹
he is not afraid at an assembly, he does not tremble,
he does not sacrifice the meaning² to irrelevant talk.

“When asked a question in an assembly,
he neither hesitates nor is ashamed,
his timely sensible words,
fitting as explanation, delight the learned assembly.

“With esteem for senior monks
and confident in his own teachers, able to weigh,
familiar with what should be spoken,
and skilled in obstructing his opponents,

“Opponents come under his control,
and the many-folk come under his tuition,
and he does not neglect his own creed,
(skilful) at question and answer, unhurting.

BD.4.513

“Able in doing a messenger’s duty,
and well-informed in what they tell him of the Order’s affairs,
sent by a group of monks he is obedient,
but he does not therefore think, ‘I am doing this’.

“Into whatever matters one falls,
whatever is an offence and how one removes it—
both these analyses are well handed down to him.
He is skilled in the features of offences and removal,

“Being sent away and good habits—he goes by these:
he is sent away and what are the grounds,
restoration of a person who has completed this³—
he knows this too, skilled (as he is) in analysis.

“With esteem for senior monks, for newly ordained,

¹ *visayha*. ² *attham na hāpeti*, or, does not neglect the goal; cf. Snp.37, Ja.i.251. ³ *tarivvusita*,
i.e. one who has been sent away but is now fit for restoration.

for elders and for those of middle standing,
 a helper of the multitude, clever herein,
 monk such as this is fit for leadership here.”

The Tenth Section: that on (the monks of) Kosambī

Vin.1.360

THIS IS ITS KEY

The splendid conqueror at Kosambī,
 dispute about seeing an offence,
 one may suspend for this or that,
 whatever is an offence of his it should be seen, /
 Within a boundary, just there, five, and only one, attainment,
 and Pārileyya, Sāvattthī, and Sāriputta, Kolita, /
 Kassapa the Great, Kaccāna, Koṭṭhita, and about Kappina,
 and Cunda the Great, Anuruddha, Revata, Upāli,¹ /
 Ānanda, and Rāhula too, Gotamī, Anāthapiṇḍika,
 and Visākhā, Migāra’s mother,
 and separate lodgings, and equal material gains also, /
 Leave for absence should not be granted to anyone, Upāli inquired,
 irreproachable as to moral habit,
 unanimity in the conqueror’s instruction.

Finished is the Great Division²

Vin.1.361

¹ *Upālivhaya* (Oldenberg and Siamese edition). Sinhalese edition reads *Upālicūbhaye*.

² OLDENBERG’S *Vinaya Piṭakam*, Vol. I, ends here.

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

BD.5.v

The Cullavagga, the Less or Lesser Division of the Vinaya, consists of twelve Sections. The first three of these have been translated by H. OLDENBERG and T.W. RHYS DAVIDS in Sacred Books of the East, Volume XVII, 1882, and the remaining nine in Sacred Books of the East, Volume XX, 1885. The Pali Vinaya on which their translation as well as mine is based is that edited by OLDENBERG in 1880 as Volume II of his *Vinaya Piṭakam*.

The wealth of detail increases rather than diminishes in this Lesser Division, and as an instrument for use by monks and nuns is astonishing in its variety and the minute precision it lavishes on greater and smaller points alike.

It was no doubt ever more and more necessary to put the proper ways of meeting disturbances in the Order on a firm basis. This certainly appears to be the purpose of Section I which deals in turn with seven formal acts: (1) censure for quarrels, disputes and contention which perhaps arose from an earnest endeavour to act in conformity with what had been bid down and then finding that there were other and different opinions; or which perhaps were wantonly made in the Order by monks who, unable to master the higher practices, found time hang heavy; (2) guidance for a monk who had persisted in frequenting the laity and to guide him to consort instead with *kalyāṇamittā* and so become learned and expert in the *dhamma* and discipline; (3) banishment for a monk who had indulged in the numerous "bad habits" specified here and there in the Pali canon in a stereotyped passage; (4) reconciliation for a monk who had been rude to a householder, and who, when he went to ask for his forgiveness, was allowed to take a companion with him to act as messenger and spokesman in

case the monk himself was overcome with shame and embarrassment—an allowance which in **Kd.22** Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, asked to be extended to him when he was accused (wrongly) by the Vajjis of Vesālī of reviling and abusing lay-followers; (5, 6, 7) three acts of suspension for not seeing an offence, for not making amends for one, for not giving up a wrong view, respectively.

All these formal acts have been mentioned already in the Mahāvagga (**BD.4**). But only an indication is given there of the occasions for carrying them out (as summarised above). These, while tallying with the occasions given in the Cullavagga, specify neither the method to be followed in carrying out each one, nor any of the grounds held to be sufficient for its revocation. All this is however dealt with by the Cullavagga.

BD.5.vi

Some of the stories chosen to illustrate behaviour which calls for one of these formal acts to correct it appear also in other parts of the Vinaya. For example, the episode of the monk Ariṭṭha occurs both in **Bu-Pc.68** and in **Kd.11.32**. The former gives the holder of wrong views a chance to renounce them while he is being admonished up to the third time. It is only, after this, if he persists in clinging to his views that he incurs an offence of expiation. But in the Cullavagga Ariṭṭha is given no final chance to clear himself. Once it is found that he holds to his views, the Order is told that it can carry out a formal act of suspension against him. He thereupon left the Order. As the text stands, Gotama is shown as saying that the formal act of suspension may be revoked. This would not only be an uncharacteristic weakness, but it does not fit the context. In fact, as Oldenberg remarks, we should have expected a negative here, and hence just the opposite: Let the Order not revoke the formal act of suspension for not giving up the wrong view (**Kd.11.34.1**). This would moreover have been in line with the injunction not to revoke the act of banishment when those against whom it had been carried out went away and left the Order (**Kd.1.16.1**).

At Vin-a.874 Ariṭṭha is called an enemy of the Buddha's dispensation, and although as a rule monks were not lightly let go of to return to the "world", his was a stubborn case where his absence might well have been preferred to his presence. The Order was by now well established both in the popular esteem and as an institution running efficiently by its own

internal and developed organisation, and if a monk left it, this would be attributed to his own incompetence rather than to any deficiency in the teaching and training.

BD.5.vii

Apart from expulsion from the Order for having committed one of the four *Pārājika* offences, and apart from being expelled for any one of the reasons given at **Kd.1.61–Kd.1.68**, a monk left of his own choice. The formal act of banishment is not banishment from the Order, but from a particular place where a monk had, for example, either indulged in “bad habits”, been frivolous or harmful in body or speech, caused strife and contention, or spoken dispraise of the Awakened One, *dhamma* or the Order. If he conducted himself properly while the act of banishment against him was in force, he could be rehabilitated, a privilege impossible to extend to one who had been expelled.

Sections **Kd.12** and **Kd.13** of the Cullavagga deal in great detail with Probation. This is not probation preliminary to entering the Order; but probation imposed on one who is already a member of it, and consisting of “going back to the beginning” of his training and being subjected to *mānatta* discipline. Such probation falls under the four headings mentioned at Vin.a.1159: that for offences which have been concealed, that for unconcealed offences, the concurrent probation and the purifying probation. This last could be imposed on monks who did not know whether they had worked through this disciplinary period of probation or not. In view of the many references to “ignorant inexperienced monks”, such haziness in regard to the right day for the termination of a probationary period is no more surprising than is the ignorance monks manifested about the stars and the quarters (**Kd.8.6.1**) and which proved physically harmful to them.

Kd.14 is devoted to the different ways of settling legal questions. These legal questions have already been mentioned in the Suttavibhaṅga. In the first place, the case must be settled in the presence of the accused monk. But this verdict “in the presence of” is necessary to all legal settlements. Secondly there is the verdict of innocence given in favour of a monk who was wrongfully accused of an offence. Dabba the Mallian is taken as the example, and his story is told in the same words as in **Bu-Ss.8**. But in the Formal Meeting the interest, at the end, is shifted to the monks who ac-

cused him and who incur an offence for doing so; while in the Cullavagga the interest is centred on Dabba who is to have a verdict of innocence accorded him. We must therefore understand that this is a case where two separate actions of the Order were called for: one dealing with the monks who brought the false accusation against Dabba, and one for acquitting him.

Then comes the “verdict of past insanity”, to be given for monks who were mad when they committed an offence. As is usual, the properties that render the act legally valid or not are enumerated. Then follows the settlement of disputes or contention by the “decision of the majority” when a reliable monk is to be agreed upon as distributor of voting-tickets, an important post (Kd.14.14.26) and one which Devadatta arrogated to himself and abused in his attempts to split the Order (Kd.18.4.1). Next, there is the “decision for specific depravity” when a monk, on being examined for an offence, prevaricates and lies. Finally there was the settlement by the “covering up as with grass”, enacted when things had been done or said in the heat of a quarrel and which, if made into a legal question, would only lead to further trouble and perhaps schism. Legal questions such as this could be covered up by each contending side confessing through a competent monk whatever were the offences that had been committed, unless they were serious offences (involving Defeat or a Formal Meeting of the Order, according to Vin-a.1194), or ones that affected the laity (Kd.14.13.2, Kd.14.13.3). And moreover, such offences could not be settled in this way for anyone who objected or who was not present. Otherwise, a legal question arising from disputes could be settled by a committee or referendum (Kd.14.14.19) or, failing this, by the decision of the majority (Kd.14.14.24). The Venerable Revata called for a referendum of eight monks to settle the “ten points” promulgated by the Vajjis of Vesālī, and which formed the business before the Council of Vesālī (see Kd.22).

The whole subject of the legal questions and their settlement, although complicated, must be studied by anyone who wishes to grasp an important branch of the disciplinary proceedings of the Order together with the very exact machinery laid down for carrying them out. A certain pattern will be found to emerge. For the “Internal Polity of a Buddhist Saṃgha”, Chapter 6

of S. DUTT's *Early Buddhist Monachism* may be profitably consulted.

With Sections **Kd.15**, **Kd.16**, **Kd.18** and **Kd.19** we remain in the heart of the monastic life as it was to be lived normally. But with Section **Kd.17**, on Schisms, we arrive more definitely than in the Mahāvagga at that real and increasingly present danger of dissentient voices rising to a chorus in schismatic factions. Each Section, besides its scrupulous attention to every point that arises, also contains a certain amount of narrative material.

BD.5.ix

Section **Kd.15** is so loaded with detail as to make it almost impossible to pick out salient points. But mention must be made of the “group of six monks”, which really means a number of monks under three pairs of leaders. For they are constantly referred to as the malefactors from whose conduct, often unsuitable because it resembled that of householders, springs the opportunity to regularise behaviour on all pertinent points. This is, in addition, a Section well worth studying for the light it throws on contemporary manners and the things in common usage. It is a Section where the laity are made important a wonder of psychic power is not to be displayed in front of them (**Kd.15.8**); their “bowls could be turned upside down”, a symbolic expression meaning that if they offered food to the monks, these could, after agreeing to a motion put before the Order, turn their bowls upside down to show that they held a layman in such disgrace they would accept no food from him (**Kd.15.20**), thereby depriving him of merit. There is also the allowance that monks may tread on cloths when being asked to do so by householders “for good luck’s sake” (**Kd.15.21**). Then there is the episode when people bring scents and garlands to a monastery. The monks are allowed to accept the scents on condition that they place the “five-finger mark” on a door. This has the appearance of a protective measure; and we know from the Buddhist charms or spells, *parittā*, one of which is to be found in this Section (**Kd.15.6**), that such runes or chants for self-guarding played a not negligible part in Early Buddhist life.

Section **Kd.16** is a compendium of what is allowable or not in regard to dwelling-places. For narrative material, it contains the story of how Anāthapiṇḍika heard the words “Awakened One”, *buddha*, for the first time and determined to see the Lord, who addressed him by the name of Sudatta, unknown outside his family, and spoke to him on *dhamma*. The vision of

dhamma thereupon arose in Anāthapiṇḍika, he became a lay-follower, and acquired Prince Jeta's Grove as a gift to the Order. The story of his first meeting with the Buddha is also told, but more briefly, in the Saṃyutta. In this Section is also to be found the Tittira-jātaka which came to be known as the Partridge Brahma-faring (Kd.16.6.3), told here to encourage monks to be courteous and polite to one another. Harmony in the Order was constantly being sought, as a number of episodes and allusions in the Vinaya indicate. It is by no means only in Section Kd.16 that passages occur that have parallels in other parts of the Pali canon or the Jātaka. Throughout the Vinaya this is the case, and probably a concordance of Vinaya stories would show only few to be peculiar to it.

BD.5.x

Section Kd.17 begins with the story of Anuruddha's going forth from home together with Bhaddiya, a Sakyan chieftain who, within a year, realised the threefold knowledge and acclaimed his happiness. Monks, hearing him, grew suspicious that he was remembering the former joys of rulership. But Bhaddiya was able to convince Gotama, in words reminiscent of SN.i.72–SN.i.73, that previously, although he had had a fully appointed guard, he had been nervous and frightened all the same; but, now, alone in a forest he is unconcerned and unruffled. An explanation of why this story is placed at the beginning of the Section on Schisms seems called for. I can only suggest that if the monks who alleged that Bhaddiya was dissatisfied with the Brahma-faring had turned out to be right, it is not unreasonable to suppose they would next have regarded him as a potential schismatic.

This was the role for which, however, Devadatta was cast, and for far more: he was also a potential murderer, prepared to go to great lengths to get rid of the Buddha. In his overweening ambition, Devadatta thought he should no longer be the leader and coveted this position for himself. Now, although those who have progressed some distance on the Way may feel themselves safe and immune to attacks (see Bhaddiya's story and also the Bhayabherava Sutta of the Majjhima), the tradition nevertheless recognises slayers of arahants (see e.g. BD.4.113, etc.), while various Commentaries hold that Moggallāna, an arahant of long standing, was actually murdered (Ja.v.125; Dhv-a.iii.65). At Kv.313, however, the untimely death of an arahant is a controverted point. Tathāgatas, Truth-finders, must be different, for

although they may be hurt and their blood shed (BD.4.113, etc., and Kd.17.3.9), according to our Section Kd.17 they need no protection and cannot be deprived of life by aggression (Kd.17.3.10). Their attainment of *nibbāna* (with no residue remaining) is in fact a matter precisely of their own volition, as is also apparent from the episode (referred to in Kd.11.1.10) where Ānanda fails to ask the Buddha to prolong his life to the full. He died when he was in the eighties. The assumption is probably that he might have lived to be a hundred or so as the Pali canon states that people sometimes attain this age, while Sabbakāmin was so old at the time of the Council of Vesālī that it was 120 years since his ordination (Kd.22.2.4). He must probably have been at least 140 years of age then, for in Bu-Pc.65 it is said that ordination must not be conferred on any male less than twenty years old.

In Section Kd.17 we hear of another formal act, one that is extra to the seven dealt with in Kd.1. This is the formal act of Information, *pakāsaniyakamma*, which allowed it to be proclaimed that someone's nature or character had altered—for the worse (Kd.17.3.2). The causative form, *pakāseti*, “to give information” of the verb *pakāsati* (of which *pakāsaniya* is the gerundive), is used with at least a semi-technical sense by the Vajjis of Vesālī when speaking of Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, and who had been able to change the lay-followers' opinion as to who the true recluses really were (Kd.12.1.7).

Much of Section Kd.18 consists of passages of some considerable length, most of which have already occurred in the Mahāvagga, use also being made of *Sekhiya* material. But the contexts are different. For example, Kd.18.1.25 lays down the proper conduct for those who share cells towards their preceptors, while in Kd.18.1.2–Kd.18.1.5 this same conduct, laid down in almost identical words except for a few additions or omissions, is to be observed by a monk arriving at a monastery, and again in Kd.18.7.2–Kd.18.7.4 by monks in respect of their lodgings. These are three occasions where conduct is, rather naturally, to be the same, for all three concern monks actually in a monastery, even if only just arrived. Yet the instructions specifically for resident monks (Kd.18.2.2–Kd.18.2.3) are connected more with their behaviour to incoming monks than with any thing else. We have seen that the same story, for example that of Dabba and that of Ariṭṭha, may be told so as to introduce varying effects. So here, the same behaviour may be followed

in varying circumstances. A great process of stabilisation was at work. As the mass of allowances and offences—in the *Cuḷavagga* mostly those of wrong-doing—pile up and increase, so the allusions become all the clearer. Thus, by the time we get to **Kd.18.3.2** the nature of the clay goods and the wooden goods that have to be packed away by a monk who is leaving a residence, can be understood by referring to **Kd.15.37**. For it is here that Gotama “allows”, as recorded, all clay goods and all wooden ones with certain specified exceptions.

The ninth Section, concerned mainly with the legally valid and the legally invalid suspensions of the *Pātimokkha*, is introduced by the eight beautiful similitudes of the great ocean, a passage found also in the *Aṅguttara* and the *Udāna*. The third of these similes showing what, ideally, the monks ought to be, is particularly to the point: the Order does not live in communion with an impure monk, but, having assembled quickly, suspends him, with the result that he is far from the Order and the Order is far from him (**Kd.19.1.4**). Therefore, also to the point, is the story that precedes the similes of the sea. It is a story of how the Buddha refused, in spite of a plea made three times by Ānanda, to recite the *Pātimokkha* to the monks. For, “the assembly is not entirely pure, Ānanda”, having in it one individual of a depravity so grave that he is described in strongly derogatory, if stereotyped, terms. The Truth-finder cannot recite the *Pātimokkha* to an assembly containing a monk like this (**Kd.19.1.2**). Instead, he delegates his powers, now as it seems out of disappointment and disgust, whereas formerly he had delegated other powers in the full tide of success (**Kd.1.12.1**). In both cases it is reasonable to suppose that he did so because the Order was growing beyond the capacity of one man to handle; and because he had therefore increasingly to look to the monks themselves to maintain the Order on the lines laid down by him, both while he was alive and after he was with them no longer.

At the end of Section **Kd.19** we are at the end of the discipline for monks. Many and exceedingly various are the points that have been raised, and a ruling given on each. The whole method of conducting Buddhist monasticism for those who follow the Pali Vinaya is contained in this and amounts to a very complete system. All doubts as to what is allowable and what is

not, or all doubts as to how to act either in conclave or as an individual may be resolved by referring to the discipline that has been laid down. All misdoings, whether serious or nor, have their appropriate penalty attached to them. Behaviour is right if it promotes one's own progress along the Way or that of others. As such it is skillful, *kusala*.

As the Bhikkhunī-Pātimokkha or Vibhaṅga follows the Bhikkhu- (called the Great, *mahā-*) Vibhaṅga, so in the Cullavagga, at the close of the legalised rules and proceedings governing the life of monks, there follows a Section devoted to the Order of nuns. It begins with an account of the formation of this Order, and contains the important statement, attributed to Gotama, that women are capable of attaining arahantship. The eight important rules (found also in Monks' *Bu-Pc.21*) are then laid down, their adoption by Mahā-pajāpatī, the instigator of the Order of nuns, constituting her ordination. The remainder of this Section is taken up with regularising for nuns the recital of the Pātimokkha, the confession of offences, the settlement of legal questions, and their exhortation, and so forth. Then come incidents told so as to establish various offences of wrong-doing and various "allowances". There follows on this the method to be followed for the second ordination of nuns, that by monks, after they have been ordained by nuns as laid down in the Nuns' *Pācittiyas*. After more offences of wrong-doing, there is a reversion to ordaining, this time through a messenger, and finally more offences of wrong-doing and more "allowances".

In this Section there is included the prohibition of forest-dwelling for nuns (*Kd.20.23*), a prohibition not, I believe, precisely repeated elsewhere. This reduces the number of their "resources" to three, instead of four, as for monks. It is said that if a nun stays in a forest there is an offence of wrong-doing. But in Nuns' Formal Meeting 3 (*Vin.4.230*), it is said that a nun incurs a grave offence if, while she is in a forest, she goes out of sight or hearing of her companion nun, and an offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order once she has got outside. The whole of this amounts to saying that nuns may pass through a forest if they go two together, but that they must not stay in one either together or separately. This was for the sake of their security.

Another interesting point is that nuns, on returning to the Order after

they had joined one of the other sects, should not be ordained again. This privilege could be extended to monks, provided that they first underwent a four months' probation (Kd.1.38.1). Life for nuns was probably harder than it was for monks. In spite of the sympathy and justice with which their troubles were met, they were to some extent discriminated against. I have referred to this on my Introduction at BD.3.xxxix; and in the notes to Volumes BD.4 and BD.6 have mentioned such discrepancies as occur between the penalties inflicted on monks and on nuns for similar behaviour. Possibly the only exception to the general trend of the heavier penalty being imposed on a nun is in the case of "giving a blow to a monk". Here, if a nun does so, her offence is ranked as one of wrong-doing while, if a monk strikes another monk, his offence is one of expiation (see below, Vin.5.371).

In the Monks' Bu-Pd.1, because "women obtain things with difficulty" (BD.3.104) it was made an offence to be confessed if a monk accepted, with certain reservations, food from the hand of a nun who was not a relation. But in the Cullavagga a nun is to offer any food there is in her bowl to a monk (Kd.20.13.2). On the other hand, monks could offer nuns food that had been stored (Kd.20.15.1) if they had more than they wanted for themselves; and if nuns were short of lodgings the monks might give them some temporarily, again if they had more than they wanted (Kd.20.16.1).

A great number of women are traditionally held to have flocked to the Order of nuns. It is conceivable that they were generally regarded as of poorer quality than the monks, and that therefore there had to be a severer testing in order to weed out those who had entered without having a real vocation. It is significant that in the *Etad Aggas* of the Aṅguttara there are for monks forty-seven classes of attainments and forty-one monks said to be chief in them (for some are chief in more than one attainment), while for nuns there are only thirteen classes of attainments, as many nuns being chief in them. Among the former Nandaka is called the chief of monks who exhort nuns. I have referred to the vicissitudes attendant upon the legalisation of the exhortation for nuns at BD.3.xli, and can here only mention what looks like a general injunction for nuns to follow when monks fail them: *pāsādikena sampādetu*, struggle on, labour on in friendliness (see below, Vin.5.366).

At the end of Section **Kd.21**, on the Council of Rājagaha, because exactly five hundred monks were there, it is said that this “chanting of the discipline” *vinayasaṃgīti*, is in consequence called that of the Five Hundred. To speak of a “chanting of discipline” is rather a curious and limited description.¹ For it is expressly said in **Vin.5.118** that Ānanda undertook to answer questions on *dhamma*, and beginning with the *Brahmajāla* and the *Sāmaññaphala Suttantas*, did in fact answer corresponding questions about the five Nikāyas. This is no less a feat than that performed by Upāli, the great Vinaya expert, who, having answered questions about the four *Pārājika* offences, then went on to answer questions about the two disciplines, *ubhatovinaye*, as told in **Kd.21.1.7**. All the questions on *dhamma* and discipline were put by the learned Kassapa the Great. It seems that this elder, reacting to Subhadda’s unsatisfactory attitude to Gotama’s death, with great prevision suggested to the other monks that *dhamma* and discipline should be chanted before not-*dhamma* and not-discipline should shine out and *dhamma* and discipline be withheld (**Kd.21.1.1**). The final name: “chanting of the discipline” seems therefore to sum up only half the proceedings dealt with at the first Council. This Council or Conference was held shortly, some Commentaries say three months, after Gotama had died. The record of this Council is of the utmost importance as the tradition—oral only, it is true—of a *dhamma* that was taught and a discipline that was laid down if not wholly by the Founder himself, at all events while he was still alive.

How far their recital was well based and well carried out is brought into a little doubt by the episode of the monk Purāṇa, the Old One, who told the elders he would remember *dhamma* and discipline just as he had heard and learnt them in the Lord’s presence. His words: “Well chanted by the elders”, are polite, but he was apparently not quite convinced.

BD.5.xvi

According to Section **Kd.21**, discipline was recited before *dhamma*. The rather bald narrative gives no reason. The Commentaries however come forward with an explanation.² They say that Kassapa asked the monks whether *dhamma* or discipline should be chanted first, and the monks replied: “Discipline is called the *āyu*, the life or vitality, of the Buddha’s dispensation; while the discipline stands, the dispensation stands. Therefore let us chant

¹ Noticed by OLDENBERG, *Vinaya Piṭakam*, vol.i, p.xxix, note. ² Vin-a.i.13; DN-a.i.11.

discipline first.” The same sentiment is expressed in the verse inserted before the *uddāna*, the key, at the end of Section **Kd.1** of the *Mahāvagga*. (**BD.4.127**). The underlying notion is that discipline is primarily concerned with *sīla*, or purification of the ways of acting in body and speech, and therefore with the first of the three categories into which the whole *sāsana*, dispensation or teaching, is graded.

The remainder of Section **Kd.21** is devoted to Ānanda. He is the central figure. Feeling that it was not suitable in him to go to the Council while he was still a *sekha*, a learner, he made an effort to realise arahantship and, at a moment when no part of him was touching the earth, his mind was freed from the cankers. As DN-a.i.10 rightly points out, when it is said: “in this teaching when a monk attains arahantship neither lying nor sitting down, neither standing nor pacing up and down”, it is to be said of Ānanda. The DN-a goes on to say that Ānanda, now thinking he was fit to enter the assembly, delighted and rejoicing, went there shining like a full moon on a cloudless night, like a lotus blooming at the sun’s touch, his face pure and radiant as though he were announcing his attaining of arahantship. But the Commentary (Vin-a.i.12–13) gives a different version, and one that at DN-a.i.11 is ascribed to the *Majjhima-bhāṇakas*, or repeaters, of how he went to the Council. According to this: “Ānanda, not wishing to tell of his attainment of arahantship, did not go with the monks. They asked whom an empty seat was for, and hearing it was for Ānanda, asked where he had gone. At this moment he thought: ‘Now is the time for me to go,’ and displaying his psychic power, plunging into the earth, he showed himself as it were in his own seat. Some say he sat down after going through the air.”

BD.5.xvii

His arahantship, however, did not appear to have commanded much respect. After the Council was over, he told the elders what the Lord had said at the time of his *parinibbāna* about abolishing the “lesser and minor rules of training”. This acted like a goad on the elders and they charged him with one offence of wrong-doing after another—all of which must have been committed before he attained arahantship, even the imputed offence of allowing women, to weep and lament beside Gotama’s body. I know of no other occasion recorded in the Pali canon where an arahant

is asked to confess offences said to have been committed by him before gaining liberation. This episode therefore not only puts the accusing elders in a very dubious light, it also indicates that offences of wrong-doing could be invented after Gotama's death. But as the offences with which Ānanda was charged were all concerned with the Founder himself, they are not likely to be repeated.

What must be regarded as a more dignified and correct attitude was taken, later, by Ānanda himself when he was sent to inflict the supreme or highest penalty, *brahmadaṇḍa*, on Channa (Kd.21.1.15). Channa was so much overcome by the thought of submitting to this penalty of ostracism that he took himself seriously in hand and won arahantship—the second monk recorded in this Section to do so. Ānanda then tells him that from the moment he won it the highest penalty became revoked—automatically—for him. This is the Channa who was Gotama's charioteer while he was still the Bodhisatta. It was because of his affection for Gotama, and then because of his pride in "our Buddha, our dhamma", that he was unable to carry out the *samaṇadhamma*, the rule for recluses (Thag-a.i.166), until he had received the emotional shock, *samvega*, of the imposition of the supreme penalty on him.

Oldenberg states (*Vinaya Piṭakam* i.xxvii) that the story of the First Council as it has come down to us in the Cullavagga, "is not history, but pure invention and, moreover, invention of no very ancient date". He bases his argument on a comparison with the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta which, while it contains passages word for word the same as in the Cullavagga, yet makes no allusion either to Kassapa's proposal for holding a Council or to the Council itself. Oldenberg concludes that "the author" of the Mahāparinibbāna Suttanta did not know anything of the First Council. Certainly his silence is otherwise hard to account for unless we allow that "he" (the author, who should rather be spoken of as the compiler or compilers) did not want to refer to it. We are accustomed in the Pali canon to finding the same stories running parallel up to a certain point and then turning off into different endings. It is possible that we have such a case here; and that the opening part of Kd.21 was told so as to lead up to the proposal to convene a Council, while the same story was told in the Dīgha (with the transposition

of the Subhadda incident) so as to lead up to the account of the disposal of the relics. This affected the Buddha's body, whereas the Council of Rājagaha was held in the attempt to get clear precisely what had been his *dhamma* and discipline. Recited by 500 elders, it could carry weight.

Nevertheless, the Pali recension of the Council may be neither wholly correct nor wholly complete. It is one of several versions stemming from different schools and whose canons may vary from sect to sect. The late Professor PRZYLUŚKI was of the opinion that, in respect of this Council, the Sūtras may contain older material than the Vinayas. He collected a number of versions of both and presented them, translated into French, in his valuable work: *Le Concile de Rājagṛha*, Paris, 1926. The student is referred to this book; he will then be able to make any comparisons he wishes between the Pali Vinaya account and the others. For it is not a necessary function of this Sacred Books of the Buddhists Series to stray from the Pali texts themselves.

Section **Kd.22**, that on the Second Council, held at Vesālī a “century” after Gotama's *parinibbāna*—a century being “no doubt a round number”¹—is more truly characterised at its end as “a chanting of discipline” than is Section **Kd.21**. For this chanting by the 700 monks is concerned with ten points of discipline only, and whether these could not be relaxed. The very fact that they were called in question shows that, in the years that had passed since Gotama's death, a less austere attitude, a more demanding note had crept in. It was to determine which was to be followed—the less austere attitude or the more austere one—that this Council was held.

BD.5.xix

It was ultimately the monk Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, who was responsible for the “chanting of discipline” which, limited to the ten points, was the subject before the Council of Vesālī. Various Commentaries recognise this (e.g. AN-a.ii.10; MN-a.iv.114) by referring to this chanting as *Yasattherassa saṃgīti*, the Recital of the Elder Yasa. He got the laypeople on his side by telling them three stories where Gotama had denounced the acceptance of gold and silver by monks—the tenth point, and possibly the most important; and that he aroused much interest among the monks is clear from the records. The endless disputations that arose, the speeches made whose

¹ *Vinaya Texts* i, Introduction, p.xxii.

meanings were not clear (Kd.22.2.7), impelled the elder Revata, whose opinion on the ten points in question coincided with Yasa's, to select a referendum of eight monks to settle the points. Their decision still holds good today in Theravādin countries. In the traditional way of the democratic Order, all the monks present were asked to agree on the eight elders proposed by Revata. They further agreed on a ninth monk, Ajita, to appoint the seats for the elders who would be listening to the proceedings.

The exact place in Vesālī where the Council was held is doubtful. The Vinaya (Kd.22.2.7) says it took place in the Vālika monastery, as does the Mahāvamsa; but the *Dīpavamsa* lays the scene in the Hall of the Gabled House. It is perhaps of no great importance, except as adding to the confusion which surrounds the legends of the Councils. What the Vinaya record of the Council of Vesālī clearly indicates is that there was enough dissatisfaction among certain monks to bring about a schism, if not checked, with the attendant danger of *dhamma* turning into not-*dhamma* and discipline into not-discipline.

It may be asked why the Cullavagga is rounded off by the Sections dealing with the first two Councils, and which make the Cullavagga longer by two Sections than the Mahāvagga. Whether they were a later addition or not, I can only suggest that they are included, reasonably and suitably as it seems to me, at the end of the enormously long compendium of discipline for monks and nuns so as to give a culminating authority and sanction to this discipline, which at the time of the Council of Vesālī, had been tested for a "century".

BD.5.xx

All the words spoken by the Buddha between his attainment of supreme self-awakening and his *parinibbāna* have but the one flavour, that of freedom (see Kd.9.1.4, etc., and Vin-a.i.16, DN-a.i.16). This is a characteristic of the *Buddhavacana*. Freedom is to be sought and realised by those who have entered on the Way. For their help and guidance there are two parts of the *Buddhavacana*, namely *dhamma* and discipline. It is no fault of the Pali canon if later generations have split the frequently occurring compound of *dhammavinaya* into its two component parts, and have treated each as if it functioned more or less in isolation from the other. *Dhamma* is rooted in discipline; and discipline is always bordering on *dhamma*, as

sīla is on *samādhi* and both on *paññā*, intuitive wisdom, to give point and substance to all its rules, regulations, offences and allowances. All the time it is training disciples to attain sufficient habitual purity ultimately to enter into the goal of Wisdom, even of that “great wisdom” of which Sāriputta, “beloved” above all other disciples, was said to be the chief (AN.i.23). The Discipline, rigid and strict, is preliminary to and usually necessary to the flowering of Wisdom. Without the control of body and speech (discipline, moral habit), without mind-control (concentration), the full expansion of wisdom may never come to be. Discipline therefore, at the beginning of the training, “is a teaching of commands, *āṇādesanā*, being taught by the Lord in respect of a multitude of commands for those meriting commands” (Vin-a.i.21, DN-a.i.19).

Practically every conceivable thing affecting monastic life for monks and nuns, practically every conceivable relation with other human beings, whether fellow monks or nuns or the laity, are brought under review and legislated for in minutest detail through the seven classes of offence, through the “allowances”, and through the most important and the regularly recurring events in a monk’s life: Ordination, Observance, Invitation, the rains-residence, the making up of new robe-material; through the seven official formal acts of the Order, beginning with that of censure, and through the suspension of the Pātimokkha. It is a very complete system, a very precise organisation marked throughout by the humaneness and reasonableness of Gotama, the codifier to whom with but few exceptions every ruling is ascribed.

BD.5.xxi

I.B. HORNER

London, December 1951.

11. THE FOLLOWERS OF PAṄDUKA AND LOHITAKA (PAṄDULOHITAKA)

Praise to the Lord, the Perfected One, the Fully Self-Awakened One

ACT OF CENSURE

Kd.11.1.1
Vin.2.1
BD.5.1

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Sāvattḥī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time monks who were followers of Paṅduka and Lohitaka¹ and who were themselves makers of strife,² makers of quarrels, makers of disputes makers of contention,³ makers of legal questions in an Order,⁴ having approached other monks who were also makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, spoke thus (to them): “Do not you, venerable ones, let this one defeat⁵ you; argue loud and long, for you are wiser and more experienced and have heard more and are cleverer than he is, do not be afraid of him, and we will be on your side.” Because of this, not only did strifes arise which had not

¹ These were two out of the group of six monks; cf. [Vin.5.8ff.](#) below. See [BD.1.275, n.3](#); [BD.1.314, n.2](#). Mentioned at [Vin-a.614](#); [MN-a.iii.187](#) says that having taken their own company (of followers) they lived in Sāvattḥī. The Satapatta Jātaka (Ja.279) was, so it is claimed, given in reference to these monks. ² Cf. [Vin.4.45](#) and see [BD.2.253, n.1](#), for further references to these five terms. Since they all refer to disputes about legal questions, the references given at *Vinaya Texts* ii.329, n.2, to various Pācittiyas hardly apply. See also [BD.4.,224](#), [BD.4.230f.](#), [BD.4.488f.](#), [BD.4.510f.](#) ³ Cf. [Vin.4.45](#) and see [BD.2.253, n.1](#), for further references to these five terms. Since they all refer to disputes about legal questions, the references given at *Vinaya Texts* ii.329, n.2, to various Pācittiyas hardly apply. See also [BD.4.224](#), [BD.4.230f.](#), [BD.4.488f.](#), [BD.4.510f.](#) ⁴ Cf. [Bu-Ss.8](#), [Bu-Ss.9](#), [Bu-Ss.10](#), etc. ⁵ *mā eso ajesi*.

arisen before, but also strifes which had arisen rolled on to increase and magnitude.

Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticized, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka and who are themselves makers of strife, makers of quarrels, makers of disputes makers of contention, makers of legal questions in an Order, having approached other monks who are also makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, speak thus to them: ‘Do not you ... and we will be on your side.’ Because of this ... also strifes which had arisen rolled on to increase and magnitude.” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka are themselves makers of strife ... having approached other monks who are also makers of strife ... speak thus to them: ‘Do not you ... and we will be on your side’? And that because of this ... strifes which have arisen roll on to increase and magnitude?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

“It is not suitable, monks, it is not becoming in these foolish men, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can these foolish men who are themselves makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, speak thus: ‘Do not you ... and we will be on your side’? And because of this ... strifes which have arisen roll on to increase and magnitude. It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased nor for increasing the number of those who are pleased, but, monks, it is displeasing to those who are not pleased as well as to those who are pleased, and it causes wavering in some.”

Then the Lord, having rebuked these monks, having in many a figure spoken in dispraise of difficulty in supporting and maintaining oneself, of great desires, of lack of contentment, of clinging (to the obstructions), of indolence; having in many a figure spoken in praise of ease in supporting and maintaining oneself, of desiring little, of contentment, of expunging (evil), of punctiliousness, of graciousness, of decreasing (the obstructions),

Kd.11.1.2

BD.5.2

Vin.2.2

Kd.11.1.3

of putting forth energy,¹ having given reasoned talk on what is becoming, on what is fitting for them, addressed the monks, saying:

“Well now, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of censure² against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka.

Kd.11.1.4

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out; First, the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka should be reprovved; having reprovved them, they should be made to remember; having remembered, they should be accused of an offence; having accused them of an offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka and who are themselves makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, having approached other monks who are also makers of strife ... makers of legal questions in an Order, spoke thus (to them): “Do not you ... and we will be on your side”. Because of this, not only did strifes arise which had not arisen before, but also strifes which had arisen rolled on to increase and magnitude. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may carry out a (formal) act of censure against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka and who are themselves makers of strife ... rolled on to increase and magnitude. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of censure against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. If the carrying out of a (formal) act of censure against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka and who are themselves makers of strife ... he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. A (formal) act of censure against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka is being carried out by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

BD.5.3

¹ Cf. Vin.3.21 (BD.1.37), Vin.1.45, Vin.1.305 for this passage. ² *tajjanīyakamma*. Cf. Kd.1.25.22 and Kd.9.7.1–Kd.9.7.5.

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

“Monks, if it is possessed of three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be not legally valid and not disciplinarily valid and one that is hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out not in the presence of,¹ if it is carried out when there is no interrogation, if it is carried out without the acknowledgement.² Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be not legally valid, not disciplinarily valid and one that is hard to settle. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be one ... and one that is hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out when there is no offence, if it is carried out for an offence that does not lead on to confession,³ if it is carried out for an offence that has been confessed. Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities a (formal) act of censure ... one that is hard to settle. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out without having reproved him, if it is carried out without having made him remember, if it is carried out without having accused him of an offence. Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... hard to settle. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... one that is hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out not in the presence of, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly. Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... one that is hard to settle. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out when there is no interrogation, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly. Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be ... hard to settle. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities a

Vin.2.3
Kd.11.2.1

BD.5.4

¹ See [Kd.14.14.16ff.](#), and [Kd.9.6.1](#). Vin-a.vi.1155 says it is not carried out in the presence of the Order, *dhamma* and discipline, the individual, and is carried out without having reproved him, without having asked him (to consent) and without his having acknowledged it. ² I.e. of the accused monk. ³ *adesanāgāminiya*, i.e. a *Pārājika* or *Saṅghādisesa*, whose penalties do not include censure or confession.

(formal) act of censure ... hard to settle: (that is to say) if it is carried out without the acknowledgement, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out when there is no offence, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out for an offence that does not lead on to confession, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out for an offence that has been confessed, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out without having reproved him, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out without having made him remember, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly ... if it is carried out without having accused him of an offence, if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out by an incomplete assembly. If, monks, a (formal) act of censure is possessed of these three qualities it comes to be not legally valid and not disciplinarily valid and one that is hard to settle.”

Told are the Twelve Cases of (Formal) Acts that are not legally valid

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

Kd.11.3.1

“Monks, if it is possessed of three qualities a (formal) act of censure comes to be a (formal) act that is legally valid and a (formal) act that is disciplinarily valid and one that is easily settled: (that is to say) if it is carried out in the presence of, if it is carried out when there is interrogation, if it is carried out with the acknowledgement. Monks, if it is possessed of these three qualities ... easily settled. And, monks, if it is possessed of three further qualities ... easily settled: (that is to say) if it is carried out when there is an offence, if it is carried out when there is an offence which leads on to confession, if it is carried out when an offence has not been confessed ... if it is carried out, having reproved him, if it is carried out, having made him remember, if it is carried out, having accused him of the offence ... if it is carried out in the presence of, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out when there is interrogation, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is

Vin.2.4

carried out with the acknowledgement, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out when there is an offence, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out when there is an offence that leads on to confession, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out when an offence has not been confessed, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out having reprimanded him, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out having made him remember, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly ... if it is carried out having accused him of an offence, if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out by a complete assembly. If, monks, a (formal) act of censure is possessed of these three qualities it comes to be a (formal) act that is legally valid and a (formal) act that is disciplinarily valid and one that is easily settled.

BD.5.6

Told are the Twelve Cases of (Formal) Acts that are legally valid

SIX ON DESIRES

“Monks, if a monk is possessed-of three qualities, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of censure against him: if he is a maker of strife, a maker of quarrels, a maker of disputes a maker of contention, a maker of legal questions in an Order; if he is ignorant, inexperienced, full of offences, not rid of them¹; if he lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders.² Monks, if a monk is possessed of these three qualities, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of censure against him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities an Order ... against him: if, in regard to moral habit, he comes to have fallen away from moral habit³; if, in regard to good habits, he comes to have fallen away from good habits; if, in regard to (right) views, he comes to have fallen away from (right) views. Monks, if a monk is possessed ... against him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of censure against

Kd.11.4.1

¹ *āpattibahulo anapadāno*; cf. Vin.1.321 (BD.4.461, n.1). ² Cf. Vin.4.321-322, and BD.3.207, n.1. ³ Cf. Vin.1.63 (BD.4.82).

him: if he speaks dispraise of the Awakened One, if he speaks dispraise of *dhamma*, if he speaks dispraise of the Order. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these three qualities, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of censure against him.

Kd.11.4.2

BD.5.7

Monks, if an Order desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of censure against three (kinds of) monks: against the one who is a maker of strife ... a maker of legal questions in the Order; against the one who is ignorant, inexperienced, full of offences, not rid of them; against the one who lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders. Monks, if the Order desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of censure against these three (kinds of) monks. And, monks, if the Order desires, it may carry out ... against three further (kinds of) monks: against the one who, in regard to moral habit, comes to have fallen away from moral habit, against the one who, in regard to good habits, comes to have fallen away from good habits, against the one who, in regard to (right) views, comes to have fallen away from (right) views. Monks, if an Order desires ... against these three (kinds of) monks. And, monks, if an Order desires, it may carry out ... against three further (kinds of) monks: against the one who speaks dispraise of the Awakened One, against the one who speaks dispraise of *dhamma*, against the one who speaks dispraise of the Order. Monks, if an Order desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of censure against these three (kinds of) monks.

Vin.2.5

Told are the Six Cases on Being Desirous

EIGHTEEN DUTIES

Kd.11.5.1

“Monks, when a (formal) act of censure has been carried out against a monk, he should conduct himself properly. This is the proper conduct in this case¹: he should not ordain, he should not give guidance,² a novice should not attend him,³ the agreement for him to exhort nuns⁴ should not be consented to, and even if he is agreed upon nuns should not be exhorted (by him), he should not fall into that (same) offence for which a (formal) act

¹ Cf. below, [Kd.12.1.2](#); [Kd.20.20](#). ² Cf. [Kd.1.36.1](#). ³ See [Kd.1.36](#), [Kd.1.37](#) for this trio. ⁴ Cf. Monks' [Bu-Pc.21](#), and [Kd.20.9.4](#).

of censure came to be carried out against him by an Order, nor into another that is similar, nor into one that is worse, he should not find fault with the (formal) act,¹ he should not find fault with those who carry out the (formal) act, he should not suspend a regular monk's Observance,² he should not suspend his Invitation,³ he should not issue commands,⁴ he should not set up authority,⁵ he should not ask for leave,⁶ he should not reprove,⁷ he should not make remember, he should not quarrel⁸ with monks".

BD.5.8

Told are the Eighteen Observances connected with a (Formal) Act of Censure

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE SETTLED

Then the Order carried out a (formal) act of censure against the monks who were followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. These, when the (formal) act of censure had been carried out against them by the Order, conducted themselves properly, were subdued, mended their ways, and having approached monks, they spoke thus: "We, your reverences, against whom a (formal) act of censure was carried out by the Order, are conducting ourselves properly, we are subdued, we are mending our ways. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by us?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "Well then, monks, let the Order revoke the (formal) act of censure against the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka.

Kd.11.6.1

"Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities a (formal) act of censure should not be revoked: if he ordains, if he gives guidance, if a novice attends him, if he consents to the agreement for him to exhort nuns, if he exhorts nuns even although agreed upon. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five

Kd.11.6.2

¹ I.e. the act of censure, Vin-a.vi.1156. ² From here to end of Kd.11.5.2 recurs at Kd.11.27.1 (end). Cf. also Vin.5.1020. ³ Cf. Kd.4.16.2. ⁴ *na savacaniyaṃ kātabbhaṃ*. Vin-a.1156 says: "I am doing the *savacaniya* of the venerable ones in this matter, do not go one footstep back from this residence while the legal question is not settled." The word *savacaniya* occurs again at Kd.2.1.2. See *Vinaya Texts* ii.338, n.6; *Vinaya Texts* ii.386, n.2. ⁵ *anuvāda*. Vin-a.1156 says "in a *vihāra* he should not take the chief place." ⁶ I.e. to ask questions; see Kd.2.16.1, Kd.4.16.1, Kd.4.16.2. ⁷ Cf. Kd.20.9.5. ⁸ *sampayojeti*, also meaning to associate. Vin-a.1156 gives both meanings, saying: "having joined one another, a quarrel should not be made." The sense of "to quarrel" here would be of disputing about legal questions. The foregoing prohibitions indicate that a monk undergoing "censure" is not expected to have no dealings with his fellow monks.

qualities a (formal) act of censure should not be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities a (formal) act of censure should not be revoked: if he falls into that (same) offence for which the (formal) act of censure was carried out against him by the Order, or into another that is similar, or into one that is worse, if he finds fault with the (formal) act, if he finds fault with those who carry out the (formal) act. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities a (formal) act of censure should not be revoked.

BD.5.9

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of eight qualities a (formal) act of censure should not be revoked: if he suspends a regular monk’s Observance, if he suspends his Invitation, if he issues commands, if he sets up authority, if he asks for leave, if he reproves, if he makes remember, if he quarrels with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities the (formal) act of censure should not be revoked.”

Vin.2.6

Told are the Eighteen Cases where (a Formal Act of Censure) should not be revoked

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities a (formal) act of censure may be revoked: if he does not ordain, if he does not give guidance, if a novice does not attend him, if he does not consent to the agreement for exhorting nuns, if, although agreed upon, he does not exhort nuns. Monks, if a monk is possessed ... may be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities a (formal) act of censure may be revoked: if he does not fall into that (same) offence for which the (formal) act of censure came to be carried out against him, nor into another that is similar, nor into one that is worse, if he does not find fault with the (formal) act, if he does not find fault with those who carry out the (formal) act. Monks, if a monk ... may be revoked.

Kd.11.7.1

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of eight qualities a (formal) act of censure may be revoked: if he does not suspend a regular monk’s Observance, if he does not suspend his Invitation, if he does not issue commands, if he does not set up authority, if he does not ask for leave, if he does not reprove, if

he does not make remember, if he does not quarrel with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities the (formal) act of censure may be revoked.”

Told are the Eighteen Cases (where a Formal Act of Censure) may be revoked

“And thus, monks, should it be revoked: Those monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka, having approached the Order, having (each) arranged the upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on their haunches, having stretched forth their joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘A (formal) act of censure, honoured sirs, was carried out against us by the Order; but we are conducting ourselves properly, we are subdued, we are mending our ways; and we ask for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure’. And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for ... The Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk, saying:

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks, followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka, against whom a (formal) act of censure was carried out by the Order, are conducting themselves properly, they are subdued, they are mending their ways, and they ask for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may revoke the (formal) act of censure for the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks, followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka, against whom a (formal) act of censure was carried out by the Order, are conducting themselves properly, they are subdued, they are mending their ways, and they ask for the revocation of the (formal) act of censure. The Order is revoking the (formal) act of censure for the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. If the revocation of the (formal) act of censure for the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... should speak. The (formal) act of censure is revoked by the Order for the monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

Kd.11.8.1

Bd.5.10

Kd.11.8.2

Vin.2.7

Told is the First (Formal) Act: that of Censure

ACT OF GUIDANCE

BD.5.11 Now at that time the venerable Seyyasaka¹ was ignorant, inexperienced, full of offences, not rid of them; he lived in company with householders, in unbecoming association with householders.² So much so that the monks were done up³ with granting him probation, sending him back to the beginning, imposing *mānatta*, rehabilitating him.⁴ Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Seyyasaka, ignorant, inexperienced ... rehabilitating him?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monk Seyyasaka, ignorant, inexperienced ... rehabilitating him?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

“It is not suitable, monks, it is not becoming in this foolish man, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. For how, monks, can this foolish man, ignorant, inexperienced ... rehabilitating him? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased, nor for increasing the number of those who are pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.2.8 “Well then, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of guidance⁵ for the monk Seyyasaka, saying: ‘You should live in dependence⁶’.

Kd.11.9.2

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out: First, the monk Seyyasaka should be reprovved; having reprovved him, he should be made to remember;

¹ At Vin.3.110ff. he is represented as committing the offence for which the first *Saṅghādisesa* was formulated. ² Cf. above, Kd.11.4.1. ³ *pakata*, done away with; so, exhausted, worn out, “fed up.” ⁴ As *Vinaya Texts* ii.343, n.1 indicates, it is not clear why a *Saṅghādisesa* should be attributed to Seyyasaka, but it suggests that the answer may appear at *Vinaya Texts* ii.384, n.1. The text may have in mind Vin.3.110 (see above, BD.5.10, n). Certainly there is a tradition connecting Seyyasaka with the *Saṅghādisesa* type of offence. There was for monks no recognised offence incurring a penalty if they lived in association with householders.

⁵ *nissayakamma*. Cf. Kd.1.25.22; Kd.9.7.6, Kd.9.7.14. ⁶ *nissāya*. Cf. BD.4.79, BD.4.100f.

having made him remember, he should be accused of the offence; having accused him of the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Seyyasaka, ignorant, inexperienced ... rehabilitating him. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka, saying: “You should live in dependence.” This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Seyyasaka, ignorant, inexperienced ... rehabilitating him. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka, saying: “You should live in dependence”. If the carrying out of the (formal) act of guidance, saying: “You should live in dependence”, for the monk Seyyasaka is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. A (formal) act of guidance, saying: “You should live in dependence,” is being carried out by the Order for the monk Seyyasaka. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

BD.5.12

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

“If a monk, monks, is possessed of three qualities ... (= Kd.11.2-Kd.11.5. *Instead of (formal) act of censure, by carrying out a (formal) act of censure read (formal) act of guidance, by carrying out a (formal) act of guidance*) ...

Kd.11.10.1

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

(Note by Sujato: This and following sections, which consist of variations on the preceding, were omitted in Horner’s translation.)

SIX ON DESIRING

EIGHTEEN DUTIES

... he should not quarrel with monks.”

Told are the Eighteen Observances connected with a (Formal) Act of Guidance

Then the Order carried out a (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka, saying: “You should live in dependence.” After the (formal) act of guidance had been carried out by the Order, he, choosing, associating with, visiting friends who were lovely¹ (in deed), making them recite, interrogating them, came to be one who had heard much,² one to whom the tradition was handed down; an expert in *dhamma*, an expert in discipline, an expert in the headings; experienced, wise, modest, scrupulous, desirous of the training; he conducted himself properly, was subdued, and mended his ways; and, having approached monks, he spoke thus: “I, your reverences, for whom a (formal) act of guidance was carried out by the Order, am conducting myself properly, I am subdued and am mending my ways. What line of conduct should be followed by me? “They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.13

“Well then, monks, let the Order revoke the (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka.

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

Kd.11.11.2

Vin.2.9

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... (=Kd.11.6.2-Kd.11.7.1 *Instead of (formal) act of censure read (formal) act of guidance*) ... may be revoked.

Told are the Eighteen Cases (where a Formal Act of Guidance) may be revoked

Kd.11.12.1

“And thus, monks, should it be revoked. Monks, the monk Seyyasaka, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having saluted the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having stretched forth his joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, for whom a (formal) act of guidance was carried out by the Order, am conducting myself properly, I am subdued, I am mending my ways; I ask for the revocation of the (formal) act of guidance’. And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for.

Kd.11.12.2

¹ *kalyāṇamitta*; cf. Dh.375. Or the word may be in the technical sense of a spiritual adviser, as at SN.v.3. ² As at Vin.1.119, Vin.1.337, Vin.4.158, etc.

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Seyyasaka, for whom a (formal) act of guidance was carried out by the Order, is conducting himself properly, he is subdued, he is mending his ways; he asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of guidance. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may revoke the (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Seyyasaka, for whom a (formal) act of guidance was carried out by the Order, is conducting himself properly, he is subdued, he is mending his ways; he asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of guidance. If the revocation of the (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The (formal) act of guidance for the monk Seyyasaka is revoked by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.5.14

Told is the Second (Formal) Act: that of Guidance

ACT OF BANISHMENT

Now at that time¹ unscrupulous, depraved monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu were in residence at Kiṭṭāgiri. They indulged in the following kinds of bad habits: they planted and caused to be planted small flowering trees; they watered them and had them watered; they plucked them and had them plucked; they tied them up into (garlands) and had them tied up; they made garlands and had them made with a stalk on one side; they made garlands and had them made with a stalk on both sides; they made and had a branching flower-stalk made; they made a wreath and had one made; they made a garland worn round the forehead and had one made; they made and had an ear-ornament made; they made and had a breast-plate made. These (monks) took or sent garlands having a stalk on one side to wives of reputable families, to daughters of reputable families,

Vin.2.10

¹ The whole of 13 occurs at Bu-Ss.13.1.1-Bu-Ss.13.1.7. See BD.1.314-322 where notes are given.

to girls of reputable families, to daughters-in-law of reputable families, to female slaves of reputable families. They took or sent garlands having a stalk on both sides; they took or sent a branching flower-stalk; they took or sent a wreath ... a garland worn round the forehead ... an ear-ornament ... a breastplate. These ate from one dish together with wives of reputable families, with daughters of reputable families, with girls of reputable families, with daughters-in-law of reputable families, with women slaves of reputable families; and they drank from the same beaker; they sat down on the same seat; they shared one couch; they shared one mat; they shared one coverlet; they shared one mat and coverlet. And they ate at the wrong time; and they drank intoxicants; and they wore garlands and used perfumes and cosmetics; they danced and sang and played musical instruments, and they sported. They danced when she danced; they sang when she danced; they played musical instruments when she danced; they sported when she danced; they danced when she sang ... they danced when she played musical instruments ... they danced when she sported ... they sported when she sported.

BD.5.15

Kd.11.13.2

They played on a chequered board for gambling; they played on a draught-board: they played with imagining such boards in the air; they played a game of keeping stepping on to diagrams; they played with spillikans ... at dice ... tip-cat ... brush-hand ... with a ball ... at blowing through toy pipes made of leaves ... with a toy plough ... at turning somersaults ... with a toy windmill ... with a toy measure of leaves ... with a toy cart ... with a toy bow ... they played a game of guessing at letters ... a mind-reading game ... a game of mimicking deformities ... they trained themselves in elephant lore ... horse lore ... carriage lore ... archery ... swordsmanship ... then they ran in front of an elephant ... a horse ... a chariot; now they ran backwards, now they ran forwards; and they whistled and they snapped their fingers and they wrestled and they fought with fists; and, having spread out their upper robes as a stage, they said to a dancing-girl: "Dance here, sister", and they applauded, and they indulged in various bad habits.

Kd.11.13.3

Now at that time a certain monk, having spent the rains among the people of Kāsī, while going to Sāvattthī so as to see the Lord, arrived at Kiṭā-

giri. Then this monk, dressing early and taking his bowl and robe entered Kiṭāgiri for almsfood. He was pleasing whether he was approaching or departing, whether he was looking forward or looking behind, whether he was drawing in or stretching out (his arm), his eyes were cast down, he was possessed of pleasant deportment. People, having seen this monk, spoke thus:

“Who can this be like an idiot of idiots, like a fool of fools, like a very supercilious person? Who will go up to him and give him alms? Our masters, the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu are polite, genial, pleasant of speech, beaming with smiles, saying: ‘Come, you are welcome’. They are not supercilious, they are easily accessible, they are the first to speak. Therefore alms should be given to them.”

Vin.2.11

A certain lay follower saw that monk walking for almsfood in Kiṭāgiri; seeing that monk, he went up to him, and having gone up to him and greeted him, he said: “Honoured sir, are alms obtainable?”

BD.5.16

“No, sir, alms are not obtainable.”

“Come, honoured sir, we will go to (my) house.”

Kd.11.13.4

Then that lay follower, having taken that monk to his house and made him eat, said:

“Where, honoured sir, will the master go?”

“I will go to Sāvattḥī, sir, to see the Lord.”

“Then, honoured sir, in my name salute the Lord’s feet with your head and say: ‘Lord, the residence at Kiṭāgiri has been corrupted. At Kiṭāgiri are residing unscrupulous, depraved monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu. They indulge in the following bad habits ... they indulge in a variety of bad habits. Lord, those men who formerly had faith and were believing now have no faith and are not believing. Those who formerly were channels for gifts to the Order are now cut off; they neglect the well behaved monks, and the depraved monks stay on. It were good, Lord, if the Lord would send monks to Kiṭāgiri, so that this residence at Kiṭāgiri may be settled.’

“Very well, sir,” and that monk having answered the lay follower in assent, rising from his seat departed for Sāvattḥī. Gradually he approached Sāvattḥī, the Jeta Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery and the Lord; having

approached and greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. Now it is the custom for Awakened Ones, for Lords to exchange greetings with in-coming monks. So the Lord said to this monk:

“I hope, monk, that it is going well with you, I hope that you are keeping going, I hope you have accomplished your journey with little fatigue? And where do you come from, monk?”

“Things go well, Lord, I am keeping going, Lord, and I, Lord, accomplished my journey with little fatigue. Now, I, Lord, having spent the rains among the people of Kāsī, and while coming to Sāvattthī to see the Lord, arrived at Kiṭāgiri. Then I, Lord, dressing early, and taking my bowl and robe, entered Kiṭāgiri for almsfood. Then, Lord, a certain lay follower saw me as I was walking in Kiṭāgiri for almsfood, and seeing me, he approached, and having approached, he greeted me and said: ‘Honoured sir, are alms obtainable?’ ‘No, sir, alms are not obtainable I said. ‘Come, honoured sir, we will go to (my) house he said. Then, Lord, that lay follower, taking me to his house and feeding me, said: ‘Where, honoured sir, will the master go?’ I said: ‘I will go to Sāvattthī, sir, to see the Lord.’ Then he said: ‘Then, honoured sir ... may be settled’. Therefore, Lord, do I come.”

Vin.2.12

BD.5.17

Kd.11.13.6

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, asked the monks, saying:

“Monks, is it true, as is said, that monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, residing in Kiṭāgiri, are unscrupulous and depraved and indulge in the following bad habits: they plant small flowering trees ... indulge in a variety of bad habits ... and those men ... and the depraved monks stay on?”

“It is true, Lord.”

The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men indulge in bad habits such as these? How can they plant and cause small flowering trees to be planted, and water them and have them watered, and pluck them and have them plucked, and how can they tie them up into (garlands) and have them tied up? How can they make and have garlands made ...? How can they take and send ...? How can they eat ... drink ... sit ... stand ... eat ... drink ... run ... dance and sing and play musical instruments and sport ... play ... train themselves ... run

... run round facing ...? How can they whistle and snap their fingers and wrestle and fight with fists, and having spread out their upper robes as a stage, say to a dancing-girl: ‘Dance here, sister,’ and applaud and indulge in a variety of bad habits? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...”, and having rebuked them and given reasoned talk, he addressed Sāriputta and Moggallāna, saying:

“Do you go, Sāriputta and Moggallāna, and having gone to Kiṭāgiri, carry out a (formal) act of banishment¹ from Kiṭāgiri against those monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu; these are those who share your cells.”

Bd.5.18

“How, Lord, do we carry out a (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against those monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu? These monks are fierce and rough.”

“Well then, Sāriputta and Moggallāna, go together with many monks.”

“Very well, Lord,” Sāriputta and Moggallāna answered the Lord in assent.

Kd.11.13.7

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out. First, the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu should be reprovved; having reprovved them, they should be made to remember; having made them remember, they should be accused of an offence; having accused them of the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu are those who bring families into disrepute and are of evil conduct; their evil conduct is seen and also heard and respectable families corrupted by them are seen and also heard. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should carry out a (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu by which the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu should not remain in Kiṭāgiri. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are ... seen and also heard. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu by which the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu should not remain in Kiṭāgiri. If the carrying out of the (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who

Vin.2.13

¹ *pabbājaniyakamma*. Cf. *Kd.1.25.22*; *Kd.9.7.7*.

are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu by which they should not remain in Kiṭāgiri is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. The (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭāgiri against the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu by which they should not remain in Kiṭāgiri is carried out by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

Kd.11.14.1

BD.5.19

“Monks, if it is possessed of three qualities a (formal) act of banishment comes to be not legally valid, not disciplinarily valid and one that is hard to settle ... ¹ ...

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

FOURTEEN ON DESIRING

... against the one who speaks dispraise of the Order. Monks, if an Order desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against these three (kinds of) monks.

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him: if he is possessed of bodily frivolity,² if he is possessed of verbal frivolity, if he is possessed of bodily and verbal frivolity. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these three qualities an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities ... against him: if he is possessed of bodily bad habits,³ if he is possessed of verbal bad habits, if he is possessed of bodily and verbal bad habits. Monks, if a monk ... a (formal) act of banishment against him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities ... against him: if he

¹ As in Kd.11.2-Kd.11.4, reading “act of banishment” for “act of censure”. Chapter 14 above does not occur in Bu-Ss.13 ² *kāyikena davena*; Vin-a.1157 says this means physical enjoyment. Perhaps he takes food for fun or amusement or in sport, cf. AN.i.114, AN.ii.40, AN.ii.145, AN.iv.167. ³ Vin-a.1157 says this means a transgression of the rules of training laid down concerning the doors of the body.

is possessed of harming¹ by means of body, if he is possessed of harming by means of speech, if he is possessed of harming by means of body and speech. Monks, if a monk ... against him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of three further qualities, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him: if he is possessed of a wrong bodily mode of livelihood, if he is possessed of a wrong verbal mode of livelihood, if he is possessed of a wrong bodily and verbal mode of livelihood. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these three qualities an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against him.

“Monks, if an Order so desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against three (kinds of) monks: against the one who is a maker of strife ... (as in Kd.11.4.2) ... against the one who speaks dispraise of the Order. Monks, if an Order so desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against these three (kinds of) monks. And, monks, if an Order so desires it may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against three further (kinds of) monks: against the one who is possessed of bodily frivolity, against the one who is possessed of verbal frivolity, against the one who is possessed of bodily and verbal frivolity ... against the one who is possessed of wrong bodily and verbal mode of livelihood. Monks, if an Order so desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against these three (kinds of) monks.

Vin.2.14
Kd.11.14.2

BD.5.20

EIGHTEEN DUTIES

“Monks, a monk against whom a (formal) act of banishment has been carried out should conduct himself properly. This is the proper conduct in this case ... (as in Kd.11.5) ... he should not quarrel with monks.”

Kd.11.15.1

Told are the Eighteen Observances connected with a (Formal) Act of Banishment

Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna at the head of an Order of monks, having arrived at Kiṭṭāgiri,² carried out a (formal) act of banishment from Kiṭṭāgiri against the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, by which

Kd.11.16.1

¹ Vin-a.1157 says this is called injury through not being trained in the rules of training laid down concerning the doors of the body. It means expulsion, *nāsana*, and ruin, *vināsana*.

² From here to the words, “It is true, Lord” = Bu-Ss.13.1.8 (Vin.3.183-4, translated with notes at BD.1.322-BD.1.324).

the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu should not stay in Kitāgiri. When the (formal) act of banishment had been carried out by the Order, these did not conduct themselves properly, they were not subdued, they did not mend their ways, they did not ask the monks for forgiveness, they abused them, they reviled them, they offended by following a wrong course through desire, by following a wrong course through hatred, by following a wrong course through stupidity, by following a wrong course through fear; and they went away and they left the Order. Those who were modest monks looked down on, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, against whom a (formal) act of banishment has been carried out by the Order, not conduct themselves properly, not be subdued, not mend their ways? Why do they not ask for forgiveness from the monks? Why do they abuse and revile them? Why do they, following a wrong course through desire ... hatred ... stupidity ... fear, go away and leave the Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

BD.5.21

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasu, against whom a (formal) act of banishment has been carried out by the Order, do not conduct themselves properly, are not subdued, ... and leave the Order?”

“It is true, Lord.”

“How, monks, can these foolish men, against whom a (formal) act of banishment has been carried out by the Order, not conduct themselves properly ... and leave the Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, do not let the Order revoke the (formal) act of banishment.

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

Kd.11.16.2

Vin.2.15

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities the (formal) act of banishment against him should not be revoked: if he ordains ... (as in [Kd.11.6.2](#)-[Kd.11.6.2](#))

... if he does not quarrel with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities the (formal) act of banishment may be revoked.

Told are the Eighteen Cases where a (Formal) Act of Banishment may be revoked

“And thus, monks, should it be revoked. Monks, that monk against whom the (formal) act of banishment has been carried out, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having saluted the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having stretched forth his joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘A (formal) act of banishment, honoured sirs, was carried out against me by the Order, but I am conducting myself properly, I am subdued, I am mending my ways. I ask for the revocation of the (formal) act of banishment’. And a second time it should be asked for, and a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying:

Kd.11.17.1

BD.5.22

Kd.11.17.2

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so, against whom a (formal) act of banishment was carried out by an Order, is conducting himself properly, he is subdued, he is mending his ways, and he asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of banishment. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may revoke the (formal) act of banishment against the monk So-and-so. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so ... and he asks for the revocation of the (formal) act of banishment. The Order is revoking the (formal) act of banishment for the monk So-and-so. If the revocation of the (formal) act of banishment for the monk So-and-so is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

ACT OF RECONCILIATION

Now at that time the venerable Sudhamma¹ was a resident in the householder Citta's² Macchikāsaṇḍa,³ an overseer of new buildings, a constant adviser.⁴ Whenever the householder Citta wished to invite an Order or a group or an individual⁵ he did not invite the Order or the group or the individual without having asked the venerable Sudhamma for permission. Now at that time several monks who were elders—the venerable Sāriputta and the venerable Moggallāna the Great and the venerable Kaccāna the Great and the venerable Koṭṭhita the Great and the venerable Kappina the Great and the venerable Cunda the Great, and the venerable Anuruddha and the venerable Revata and the venerable Upāli and the venerable Ānanda and the venerable Rāhula⁶—walking on tour in Kāsī arrived in Macchikāsaṇḍa. The householder Citta heard that these monks who were elders had reached Macchikāsaṇḍa. Then the householder Citta approached these monks who were elders; having approached, having greeted these monks who were elders, he sat down at a respectful distance. As the householder Citta was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Venerable Sāriputta delighted, rejoiced, roused, gladdened him with talk on *dhamma*. Then the householder Citta, delighted ... gladdened with the venerable Sāriputta's talk on *dhamma*, spoke thus to the monks who were elders: "Honoured sirs, let the elders consent to come to a meal with me on the morrow." The monks who were elders consented by becoming silent.

Vin.2.16
BD.5.23

Kd.11.18.2

Then the householder Citta, having understood the consent of the monks who were elders, rising from his seat, having I greeted the monks who were elders, keeping his right side towards them, approached the venerable Sudhamma; having approached, having greeted the venerable Sudhamma, he

¹ Cf. Dh-p-a.ii.74ff., AN-a.i.386ff. Dh-p.73 is said to have been spoken off Sudhamma's account.

² At AN.i.26 called chief of lay followers who are speakers on *dhamma*. He is fully described in the Citta-saṃyutta, SN.iv.281ff. At AN.i.88 = SN.ii.235 he is named as a standard by which to measure disciples who are lay followers.

³ A woodland grove, *vanasaṇḍa*, according to SN-a.iii.91; a town according to Dh-p-a.ii.74 and AN-a.i.386, the latter adding "in the realm of Magadha".

⁴ *dhuvabhattika* usually means a "regular or constant diner". But *bhattika* is given this other meaning at Thig-a.267 (cf. *Pali-English Dictionary*), and seems justified above.

⁵ *puggala*, here meaning "monk".

⁶ This same list of great *theras* also occurs at Vin.4.66. For notes and further references, see BD.2.295.

stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, the householder Citta spoke thus to the venerable Sudhamma:

“Honoured sir, may master Sudhamma consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the elders.”

Then the venerable Sudhamma thought: “Formerly, when I the householder Citta wished to invite an Order or a group or an individual, he did not invite the Order or the group or the individual without having asked me for permission; but now he invites monks who are elders without having asked me for permission. This householder Citta is now corrupted, he is indifferent to me, detached from me”, and he spoke thus to the householder Citta: “No, householder, I do not consent.” And a second time ... And a third time did the householder Citta speak thus to the venerable Sudhamma: “Honoured sir, may master Sudhamma consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the elders.”

“No, householder, I do not consent.”

BD.5.24

Then the householder Citta thinking: “What can master Sudhamma, either consenting or not consenting, do to me?” having greeted the venerable Sudhamma, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.11.18.3

Then, towards the end of that night, the householder Citta had sumptuous foods, solid and soft, prepared for the monks who were elders. Then the venerable Sudhamma, thinking: “Suppose I were to see what has been prepared on behalf of the householder Citta for the elders?” having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the householder Citta; having approached, he sat down on an appointed seat. Then the householder Citta approached the venerable Sudhamma; having approached, having greeted the venerable Sudhamma, he sat down at a respectful distance. The venerable Sudhamma spoke thus to the householder Citta as he was sitting down at a respectful distance:

Vin.2.17

“Truly abundant, householder, is this solid and soft food prepared by you, but one thing is not here, that is to say sesamum cake.”

“Although, honoured sir, much treasure is to be found in the Awakened One’s words, just this is mentioned by master Sudhamma, that is to say

sesamum cake. Formerly, honoured sir, some merchants of the Deccan¹ went to an eastern district² for trading and from there they brought back a hen. Then, honoured sir, that hen mated with a crow and produced a chick. And whenever, honoured sir, that chick wanted to utter the cry of a crow it uttered a “cockadoodle-doo” whenever it wanted to utter the cry of a cock it uttered a “caw”. In the same way, honoured sir, although much treasure is to be found in the Awakened One’s words, just this is mentioned by master Sudhamma, that is to say sesamum cake.”³

Kd.11.18.4

“You, householder, are reviling⁴ me, you, householder, are abusing me; this is your residence, householder, I will go away.”

BD.5.25

“Honoured sir, I am not reviling and abusing master Sudhamma; honoured sir, let master Sudhamma remain in Macchikāsaṇḍa delightful is the Wild Mango Grove⁵; I will make an effort for master Sudhamma in respect of the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings and medicines for the sick.” And a second time ... And a third time did the venerable Sudhamma speak thus to the householder Citta: “You, householder, are reviling me ... I will go away.”

“Where, honoured sir, will master Sudhamma go?”

“I, householder, will go to Sāvattthī to see the Lord.”

“Well then, honoured sir, tell the Lord everything that was said by you and that was said by me. But this, honoured sir, will not be surprising: that master Sudhamma should come back again to Macchikāsaṇḍa.”

Kd.11.18.5

Then the venerable Sudhamma, having packed away his lodgings, taking his bowl and robe, set out for Sāvattthī. In due course he approached Sāvattthī, the Jeta Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery, the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Sudhamma told the Lord everything that had been said by himself and that had been said by the householder Citta. The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked him,

Vin.2.18

¹ *Dakkhiṇāpathakā*. On the Southern region, *Dakkhiṇāpatha*, see B.C. LAW, *India as described in Early Texts of Buddhism and Jainism*, p.77ff. ² *puratthīma janapada*. ³ Vin-a.1158 says he speaks neither as a monk nor as a householder. ⁴ *akkosati* and *paribhāsati* are defined at Vin.4.309 (BD.3.344). ⁵ *Ambātakavana*. *Pali-English Dictionary* gives “hog-plum, *Spondias Mangifera* (a kind of mango)” for *ambāṭaka*, *Critical Pali Dictionary* adding “wild mango.” Cf. SN.iv.281ff.

saying:

“It is not suiting, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, jeer at¹ the householder Citta, who has faith and is believing, who is a benefactor, a worker, a supporter of the Order, with a low thing, and scoff at him with a low thing? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” and having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: “Well then, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation² for the monk Sudhamma, saying: ‘The householder Citta should be asked to forgive you.’”

Kd.11.18.6

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out: First, the monk Sudhamma should be reproved, having reproved him, he should be made to remember, having made him remember, he should be accused of the offence, having accused him of the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Sudhamma jeered at the householder Citta who has faith and is believing, a benefactor, a worker, a supporter of the Order, with a low thing, he scoffed at him with a low thing. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma, saying: “The householder Citta should be asked to forgive you”. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Sudhamma jeered at the householder Citta ... scoffed at him with a low thing. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma, saying: “The householder Citta should be asked to forgive you”. If the carrying out of the (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma, saying: “The householder Citta should be asked to forgive you” is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... you should speak. A (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma, saying: “The householder Citta should be asked to

BD.5.26

¹ *khurñseti, vambheti*; occurring also at [Vin.4.7](#) ([BD.2.178](#)). ² *paṭisāraṇiyakamma*. Cf. [Kd.1.25.22](#), and [Kd.9.7.8](#). At this latter passage the monk is said, not to jeer and scoff at the householder, but to revile and abuse him, while at [Kd.1.18.5](#) above, it is the householder who is accused, by the monk, of reviling and abusing him.

forgive you” is carried out by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

Kd.11.19.1

“Monks, if it is possessed of three qualities, a (formal) act of reconciliation ... (=Kd.11.2, Kd.11.3) ...

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

... and is easily settled.

FOUR ON DESIRING

Kd.11.20.1

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities, the Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him¹: if he tries for non-receiving (of gains) by householders²; if he tries for non-profiting by householders; if he tries for non-residence for householders; if he reviles and abuses householders; if he causes householder to break with householder. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... act of reconciliation for him. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, the Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him: if he speaks dispraise of the Awakened One to householders, if he speaks dispraise of *dhamma* to householders, if he speaks dispraise of the Order to householders, if he jeers at a householder with a low thing, if he scoffs at him with a low thing, if he does not fulfil, according to rule, his assent (given) to householders.³ Monks, if a monk ... act of reconciliation for him. And, monks, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for five (kinds of) monks: for the one who tries for non-receiving (of gains) by householders; for the one who tries for non-profiting

Vin.2.19

BD.5.27

¹ Cf. AN.iv.345. ² Cf. Vin.1.84 (BD.4.106), BD.2.125 and AN.iv.345: Chapters 87 (monks), 88, 89 (householders). ³ On this last clause, see GS.iv.228, n.3. See especially Vin.1.153f., where the monk Upananda breaks his word and also tells a conscious lie to a householder. The particular type of offence incurred by this monk for breaking his word in regard to residence is formulated as one of wrong-doing. Vin-a.vi.1158 instances having accepted a rains-residence, and then not going to it.

by householders; for the one who tries for non-residence for householders; for the one who reviles and abuses householders; for the one who causes householder to break with householder. Monks, an Order ... for these five (kinds of) monks. And monks, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for five further (kinds of) monks: for the one who speaks dispraise of the Awakened One to householders ... of *dhamma* to householders ... of an Order to householders, for the one who jeers at a householder with a low thing, scoffs at him with a low thing, for the one who does not fulfil, according to rule, his assent (given) to householders. Monks, an Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation for these five (kinds of) monks.

Told are the Four times Five Cases on Being Desirous

EIGHTEEN DUTIES

“Monks, a monk for whom a (formal) act of reconciliation has been carried out should conduct himself properly ... (=Kd.11.5, reading act of reconciliation for act of censure) ... he should not quarrel with monks.”

Kd.11.21.1

Told are the Eighteen Observances connected with a (Formal) Act of Reconciliation

Then the Order earned out a (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma, saying: “The householder Citta should be asked to forgive you.” He, having gone to Macchikāsaṇḍa when the (formal) act of reconciliation had been carried out by the Order, becoming ashamed, was unable to ask the householder Citta to forgive him, and he went back again to Sāvattḥī. Monks spoke thus: “Did you ask the householder Citta to forgive you?”

Kd.11.22.1
BD.5.28

“Now, I, your reverences, having gone to Macchikāsaṇḍa, becoming ashamed, was unable to ask the householder Citta to forgive (me).” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.11.22.2

He said: “Well then, monks, let the Order give a companion messenger¹ to the monk Sudhamma to ask the householder Citta to forgive him. And thus, monks should he be given: First, a monk should be asked; having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may give the monk So-and-so as a companion messenger to the monk Sudhamma to ask the householder Citta to forgive him. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is giving the monk So-and-so as a companion messenger to the monk Sudhamma to ask the householder Citta to forgive him. If the giving of the monk So-and-so as a companion messenger to the monk Sudhamma to ask the householder Citta to forgive him is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The monk So-and-so is given by the Order to the monk Sudhamma as a companion messenger to ask the householder Citta to forgive him. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Vin.2.20

Kd.11.22.3

“Monks, when the monk Sudhamma, together with the companion messenger monk, has reached Macchikasanda, the householder Citta should be asked to forgive him (Sudhamma using the words), ‘Forgive me, householder, I am at peace towards you’. If, while he is being spoken to thus, he forgives him, that is good; if he does not forgive, he should be spoken to by the companion messenger monk, saying: ‘Forgive this monk, householder, he is at peace towards you.’ If, while he is being spoken to thus, he forgives him, that is good; if he does not forgive, he should be spoken to by the companion messenger monk, saying, ‘Forgive this monk, householder, for I am at peace towards you.’ If ... that is good; if he does not forgive, he should be spoken to by the companion messenger monk, saying: ‘Forgive this monk, householder, (I ask it) in the name of the Order’. If ... that is good; if he does not forgive, the companion messenger monk, not having caused the monk Sudhamma to be dismissed from reach of the sight² of the householder Citta, not having caused him to be dismissed from reach of the hearing,

BD.5.29

¹ *anudāta*, travelling companion, and one with a definite function to fulfil in case of need, as appears below. Cf. Vin.2.295 where a monk Yasa for whom an act of reconciliation had been carried out, refers to this ruling and asks for an *anudāta bhikkhu*. ² Cf. BD.2.352, n.3.

having made him arrange his upper robe over one shoulder, having made him sit down on his haunches, having made him salute with joined palms,¹ should cause that offence to be confessed.”

Kd.11.23.1

Then the monk Sudhamma, together with the companion messenger monk, having reached Macchikāsaṇḍa, asked the householder Citta to forgive him. He conducted himself properly, he was subdued, he mended his ways, and having approached monks, he spoke thus: “I, your reverences, for whom a (formal) act of reconciliation was carried out by an Order, am conducting myself properly, I am subdued, I am mending my ways. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order revoke the (formal) act of reconciliation for the monk Sudhamma.

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities, the (formal) act of reconciliation should not be revoked ... (= Kd.11.6.2–Kd.11.7) ...

Kd.11.23.2

EIGHTEEN CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

... does not quarrel with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities the (formal) act of reconciliation may be revoked.

Told are the Eighteen Cases (where a Formal Act of Censure) may be revoked

And thus, monks, should it be revoked. Monks, that monk Sudhamma, having approached the Order ... (see Kd.11.12) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Kd.11.24.1
BD.5.30

Told is the Fourth (Formal) Act: that of Reconciliation

¹ Cf. Kd.4.5.6.

AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT SEEING AN OFFENCE

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Kosambī in Ghosita’s monastery. Now at that time the venerable Channa,¹ having fallen into an offence, did not want to see the offence.² Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Channa, having fallen into an offence, not want to see the offence?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monk Channa ... did not want to see the offence?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can this foolish man, having fallen into an offence, not want to see the offence? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of suspension³ against the monk Channa for not seeing his offence, (and there should be) no eating with an Order.⁴

Kd.11.25.2

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out. First, the monk Channa should be reprovved, having reprovved him, he should be made to remember, having made him remember, he should be accused of the offence; having accused him of the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Channa, having fallen into an offence, does not want to see the offence. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may carry out a (formal) act of suspension against the monk Channa for not seeing the offence (and there should be) no eating with an Order. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Channa, having fallen into an offence,

BD.5.31

¹ For further references, see [BD.1.266, n.3](#). ² Cf. [Kd.9.13](#), [Kd.9.1.8](#). ³ *ukkhapaniyakamma*. Cf. [Kd.1.25.22](#), and [Kd.9.7.9](#). ⁴ *asambhogarū saṃghena*. Cf. [Kd.1.79.2–Kd.1.79.4](#). At [Vin.4.138](#) it is an offence of expiation to eat with a monk who is suspended. Two kinds of sambhoga, eating food and eating *dhamma*, are defined at [Vin.4.137](#) ([BD.3.29](#)). The monk in the above Cullavagga passage is not deprived of “being in communion”, *saṃvāsa*, with the other monks for not seeing his offence. Cf. below, [Kd.15.20.3](#).

does not want to see the offence. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of suspension against the monk Channa for not seeing the offence (and there should be) no eating with an Order. If the carrying out by the Order of a (formal) act of suspension against the monk Channa for not seeing his offence (and with) no eating with an Order, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter: Honoured sirs, ... should speak. A (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence (and with) no eating with an Order, is carried out by the Order against the monk Channa. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’ And, monks, proclaim in residence after residence: ‘A (formal) act of suspension for not seeing an offence (and with) no eating with an Order has been carried out against the monk Channa.’

Vin.2.22

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

“Monks, if a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing an offence is possessed of three qualities it comes to be a (formal) act not by rule ... (see [Kd.11.2–Kd.11.4](#)) ...

Kd.11.26.1

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

SIX ON DESIRING

... Monks, if an Order so desires, it may carry out a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing an offence against these three (kinds of) monks.”

Told are the Six Cases on Being Desirous in connection with a (Formal) Act of Suspension for Not Seeing an Offence

FORTY THREE DUTIES

“Monks, a monk against whom a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence has been carried out should conduct himself properly. This is proper conduct in this case¹: he should not ordain, he should not give

Kd.11.27.1

¹ This differs from the “proper conduct” of the other formal acts ([Kd.11.5](#), [Kd.11.10](#), [Kd.11.15](#), [Kd.11.21](#)). Cf. [Kd.22.1.2](#).

BD.5.32 guidance, a novice should not attend him, the agreement to exhort nuns should not be consented to (by him), even if he is agreed upon nuns should not be exhorted by him, he should not fall into that same offence for which the (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence was carried out against him by an Order, nor into another that is similar, nor into one that is worse, he should not find fault with the (formal) act, he should not find fault with those who are carrying out the (formal) act, he should not consent to a regular monk's greeting him, standing up before him, saluting him with joined palms, performing the proper duties, bringing forward a seat, bringing forward a sleeping-place, water for (washing) the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand, the receiving of bowl and robe, treating his back by massaging, he should not defame a regular monk with falling away from moral habit, he should not defame him with falling away from good habits, he should not defame him with falling away from (right) views, he should not defame him with falling away from a right mode of livelihood, he should not cause monk to break with monk, he should not wear a householder's emblem, he should not wear an emblem of members of other sects,¹ he should not follow members of other sects, he should follow monks, he should train in the training for monks, he should not stay² in a residence under one roofing with a regular monk, he should not stay in what is not a residence³ under one roofing (with him), he should not stay in a residence or in what is not a residence under one roofing (with him), having seen a regular monk he should get up from his seat, he should not upbraid a regular monk either inside or outside,⁴ he should not suspend a regular monk's Observance,⁵ he should not suspend his Invitation, he should not issue commands, he should not set up authority, he should not ask for leave, he should not reprove, he should not make remember, he should not quarrel with monks.

Vin.2.23

*Told are the Forty-Three Observances connected with a (Formal) act of
Suspension for Not Seeing an Offence*

Kd.11.28.1
BD.5.33

Then the Order carried out a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence against the monk Channa (and with) no eating with an Order.

¹ Cf. Vin.1.306. ² Cf. below, Kd.12.1.4. ³ Cf. Vin.1.134, and BD.4.178, n.3. ⁴ Inside and outside a dwelling-place, according to Vin-a.1159. ⁵ From here to the end of Kd.11.27.1 = Kd.11.5.1.

He, when the (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence had been carried out against him by the Order, went from that residence to another residence; there the monks neither greeted him, nor stood up before him, nor saluted with joined palms, nor performed the proper duties, nor revered, respected, esteemed or honoured him.¹ He, not being revered, respected, esteemed or honoured by these monks, then went unrevered from that residence to another residence; there too the monks neither greeted him ... he then went from that residence to another residence; there too the monks neither greeted him ... he, unrevered, went back again to Kosambī. He conducted himself properly, he was subdued, he mended his ways; having approached monks, he spoke thus: “I, your reverences, against whom a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing an offence was carried out by an Order, am conducting myself properly, I am subdued, I am mending my ways. What line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks let the Order revoke the (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence against the monk Channa.

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

“If, monks, a monk is possessed of five qualities, a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence should not be revoked: if he ordains, if he gives guidance, if a novice attends him, if he consents to the agreement to exhort nuns, if, although agreed upon, he exhorts nuns. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... should not be revoked. And monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if he falls into that same offence for which a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence was carried out against him by the Order, or into another that is similar, or into one that is worse, if he finds fault with a (formal) act, if he finds fault with those who carry out a (formal) act. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... should not be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if he consents to a regular monk’s greeting him, standing up before him, saluting with joined palms, doing the proper duties, bringing forward a seat. Monks,

Kd.11.28.2

BD.5.34

¹ As at Kd.10.5.1.

if a monk ... should not be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if he consents to a regular monk's bringing forward a sleeping-place, water for (washing) the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand, to receiving his bowl and robe, to treating his back by massaging. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities the (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence should not be revoked.

Vin.2.24

“And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if he defames a regular monk with falling away from moral habit, if he defames him with falling away from good habits, if he defames him with falling away from (right) views, if he defames him with falling away from a (right) way of living, if he causes monk to break with monk. Monks, if a monk ... should not be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if he wears a householder's emblem, if he wears an emblem of other sects, if he follows members of other sects, if he does not follow monks, if he does not train in the training for monks. Monks, if a monk ... should not be revoked. And, monks, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be revoked: if, in a residence, he stays under one roofing with a regular monk, if in what is not a residence he stays under one roofing with him, if in either a residence or in what is not a residence he stays under one roofing with him, if, having seen a regular monk, he does not get up from his seat, if he upbraids a regular monk either inside or outside. Monks, if a monk ... should not be revoked. Monks, if a monk is possessed of eight qualities ... should not be revoked: if he suspends a regular monk's Observance, if he suspends his Invitation, if he issues commands, if he sets up authority, if he asks for leave, if he reproves, if he makes remember, if he quarrels with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence should not be revoked.

Told are the Forty-three Cases (where a Formal Act of Suspension for Not Seeing an Offence should not be revoked)

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

Kd.11.29.1
BD.5.35

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities, a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence may be revoked: if he does not ordain ... (*This Chapter is the exact opposite of Kd.11.28.2*) ... if he does not quarrel with monks. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities a (formal) act of suspension for not seeing his offence may be revoked.

Told are the Forty-three Cases (where a Formal Act of Suspension for Not Seeing an Offence may be revoked)

“And thus, monks, should it be revoked: That monk Channa, having approached the Order ... (see *Kd.12. Instead of act of censure read act of suspension for not seeing his offence*) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Kd.11.30.1

Told is the Fifth (Formal) Act: that of Suspension for Not Seeing an Offence.

Vin.2.25

AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT MAKING AMENDS FOR
AN OFFENCE

At that time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Kosambī in Ghosita’s monastery. Now at that time the venerable Channa, having fallen into an offence, did not want to make amends for the offence.¹ ... (= *Kd.11.25-Kd.11.30. Instead of see read make amends for; instead of act of suspension for not seeing his offence read act of suspension for not making amends for his offence*) ...

¹ Cf. *Kd.9.5.1-Kd.9.5.9.*

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

SIX ON DESIRING

FORTY-THREE DUTIES

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Told is the Sixth (Formal) Act: that of Suspension for Not making Amends for an Offence

AN ACT OF SUSPENSION FOR NOT RELINQUISHING A WRONG VIEW

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time a wrong view had arisen to a monk named Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, like this¹:

“In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the Lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”

BD.5.36

Several monks heard: “A wrong view has arisen to the monk named Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer, like this: ‘In so far as I understand ... there is no stumbling-block at all.’”

Then these monks approached the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, and having approached, they spoke thus to the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer:

¹ Down to the phrase, “It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” (towards the end of [Kd.11.32.3](#)) = [Bu-Pc.68.1](#) ([Vin.4.133](#)-[Vin.4.135](#)) which then formulates a “rule of training.” Translated at [BD.3.21](#)-[BD.3.24](#), with notes.

“Is it true, as is said, reverend Ariṭṭha, that a wrong view has arisen to you, like this: ‘In so far as I understand ... there is no stumbling-block at all?’”

“Undoubtedly, your reverences, as I understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the Lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”

Kd.11.32.2

“Do not speak thus, reverend Ariṭṭha, do not misrepresent the Lord; misrepresentation of the Lord is not at all seemly, and the Lord certainly would not speak thus. Reverend Ariṭṭha, in many a figure are things that are stumbling-blocks called stumbling-blocks by the Lord, and in following these there is a veritable stumbling-block. Sense-pleasures are declared by the Lord to be (things) affording little satisfaction, of much pain, of much tribulation, where in is more danger. Sense-pleasures are declared by the Lord to be like a skeleton, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. Sense-pleasures are declared by the Lord to be like a lump of meat ... to be like a fire-brand of dry grass ... to be like a pit of glowing embers ... to be like a dream ... to be like something borrowed ... to be like the fruits of a tree ... to be like a slaughter-house ... to be like an impaling stake ... Sense-pleasures are declared by the Lord to be like a snake’s head, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger.”

Vin.2.26

Yet the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, on being spoken to thus by these monks, expressed that wrong view as before, obstinately holding to it, adhering to it: “Undoubtedly, your reverences, as I understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord, it is that in following those things called stumbling-blocks by the Lord, there is no stumbling-block at all.”

Kd.11.32.3

And since those monks were unable to dissuade the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer from that wrong view, then those monks approached the Lord; and having approached, they told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer, saying:

BD.5.37

“Is it true, as is said, that to you, Ariṭṭha, a wrong view like this arose: ‘In so far as I understand *dhamma* ... there is no stumbling-block at all?’”

“Undoubtedly, Lord, as I understand *dhamma* ... no stumbling-block at all.”

“To whom then do you, foolish man, understand that *dhamma* was taught thus by me? Are not, foolish man, things that are stumbling-blocks called in many a figure stumbling-blocks by me, and in following these is there not a veritable stumbling-block? Sense-pleasures are declared by me to be things affording little satisfaction, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger ... Sense-pleasures are declared by me to be like a snake’s head, of much pain, of much tribulation, wherein is more danger. And yet you, foolish man, not only misrepresent me because of your own wrong grasp, but you also injure yourself, and give rise to much demerit which for a long time will be for you, foolish man, of woe and pain. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks saying:

“Well then, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view¹ against the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer, (and with) no eating with an Order.

Kd.11.32.4

“And thus, monks, should it be carried out: First, the monk Ariṭṭha should be reprovved, having reprovved him he should be made to remember, having made him remember he should be accused of the offence, having accused him of the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. A wrong view has arisen to the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer, like this: In so far as I understand *dhamma* taught by the Lord ... there is no stumbling-block at all. He does not give up this view. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order carry out a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view against the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer (and with) no eating with an Order. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. A wrong view has arisen ... He does not give up this view. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view against the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer (and with) no eating with an Order. If the carrying out of the (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view against the monk Ariṭṭha

BD.5.38

Vin.2.27

¹ Cf. Kd.9.5.1-Kd.9.5.9.

who was formerly a vulture-trainer (and with) no eating with an Order is pleasing to the venerable ones, let them be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this'. And, monks, proclaim in residence after residence: 'A (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view has been carried out against the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer (and with) no eating with an Order.'

TWELVE ON AN ACT NOT BY RULE

"Monks, if a monk is possessed of three qualities ... (=Kd.11.2-Kd.11.5. *Instead of did of censure read act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view*) ...

Kd.11.33.1

TWELVE ON AN ACT BY RULE

SIX ON DESIRING

FORTY-THREE DUTIES

... if he does not quarrel with monks."

Told are the Eighteen Observances (connected with) a (Formal) Act of Suspension for Not Giving Up a Wrong View

Then the Order carried out a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up his wrong view against the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer, (and with) no eating with an Order. He, when the (formal) act of suspension for not giving up his wrong view had been carried out against him by the Order, left the Order. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can this monk named Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer leave the Order when a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view is earned out against him by the Order?" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

Kd.11.34.1

BD.5.39

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monk Ariṭṭha who was formerly a vulture-trainer left the Order when a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view was carried out against him by the Order?”

Vin.2.28

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can this foolish man leave the Order when a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view was carried out against him by the Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, let the Order revoke¹ the (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view.

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD NOT BE REVOKED

Kd.11.34.2

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of five qualities ... (=Kd.11.6.2-Kd.11.6.7) ...

FORTY-THREE CASES THAT SHOULD BE REVOKED

... the (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view may be revoked.

Told are the Eighteen Cases where a (Formal) Act of Suspension for Not Giving Up a Wrong View may be Revoked

Kd.11.35.1

“And thus, monks, should it be revoked. Monks, that monk against whom a (formal) act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view has been carried out, having approached the Order ... (see Kd.11.12 *Instead of* act of censure read act of suspension for not giving up a wrong view. *Instead of Seyyasaka read the monk So-and-so*) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this..’”

Told is the Seventh (Formal) Act: that of Suspension for Not Giving Up a Wrong View

Told is the First Section: that on (Formal) Acts

IN THIS SECTION ARE SEVEN ITEMS: THIS IS ITS KEY

Monks who are followers of Paṇḍuka and Lohitaka,

BD.5.40

¹ As Oldenberg, Vin.2.310-Vin.2.311 remarks, “we should expect” mā (or na) paṭippassambhetu, let not revoke; cf. Kd.11.16.1.

11. THE FOLLOWERS OF PAṆDUKA AND LOHITAKA (PAṆDULOHITAKA)1901

themselves makers of strife,
approached similar ones and incited them to strife, /
And strifes not arisen were born and those arisen expanded.
Modest, well behaved monks looked down upon. The expounder¹, /
The Awakened One, standing on what is verily *dhamma*,
self-developing, foremost of men, conqueror,
enjoined a (formal) act of censure at Sāvattḥī. /
And what is carried out not in the presence of,
when there is no interrogation, no acknowledgement,
and what is carried out for no offence,
for one not (leading on to) confession, for one confessed, /
And what is carried out not having reprov'd,
not having made to remember, not having accused,
and too what is carried out not in the presence of,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly, /
Again what is carried out when there is no interrogation,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly,
and too what is carried out not on the acknowledgement,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly, /
And too what is carried out when there is no offence,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly,
and also for (an offence) which does not lead on to confession when it is
not by rule and the assembly is incomplete, /
And likewise for one that is confessed, if also
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly,
and likewise not having reprov'd him, if also
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly, /
And likewise not having made him remember,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly, /
and likewise not having accused him,
not by rule, by an incomplete assembly. /
The bright occasions² should also be inferred
exactly according to the dark occasions.
And the Order, so desiring, may carry out censure against this one: /
The quarrel (-maker), the ignorant, the liver in company with.
The Order may carry out a (formal) act of censure in regard to moral habit,
good habits, against one who has fallen away from right views,³ /
And against whoever speaks dispraise of the Awakened One, *dhamma*, the Order,
and the Order may also carry out a (formal) act of censure

Vin.2.29

BD.5.41

¹ *padassaka* (Sanskrit *padarśaka*). Sinhalese edition reads *parassato*; Siamese edition *parisato* (variant readings *padassako*, *padassato*). ² *sukkavāra ... kaṇhavāra*, figuratively pure and impure, right and wrong. ³ *adhisilam ajjhācāre atidiṭṭhivipannassa*.

against three (kinds of) monks: /
 The one who is a maker of strife, the ignorant one,
 the one intent on living in company;
 likewise in regard to moral habit, good habits, right views, /
 And against whoever speaks dispraise of the Awakened One, *dhamma*, the Order.
 The one against whom a (formal) act of censure has been carried out
 conducting himself properly, thus: /
 Ordination, guidance, attendance by a novice,
 the one against whom censure has been carried out should do
 nothing in regard to exhortation, even although agreed upon. /
 He should not fall into that same offence,
 into a similar one, or into one higher¹ than it,
 and such a one would neither find fault with a (formal) act,
 nor with those who carry it out, /
 He should not suspend a regular (monk's) Observance, Invitation,
 such a one should not have to do with commands, authority, /
 Leave, reproving, making remember and quarrels.
 Ordination, guidance, attendance by a novice, /
 Exhortation and even if agreed upon: the five qualities are not the end.²
 If he falls into that same offence and into a similar one
 and one that is higher than it, /
 And finding fault both with a (formal) act
 and with those who carry it out: this is not the end.
 Observance, Invitation, commands, authority, /
 Leave, reproving too, making remember, quarrelling,
 whoever is bound by these eight qualities,
 censure is not allayed for him.³ /
 The bright occasions should also be inferred
 exactly according to the dark occasions.
 And Seyyasaka too, ignorant, full of offences, living in company: /
 The Self-Awakened One, great sage, enjoined a (formal) act of guidance.
 (Followers of) the two monks, Assaji and Punabbasu, at Kiṭṭāgiri /
 Indulged in a variety of bad habits and were not talked round.
 The self-Awakened One, the Conqueror (enjoined) at Sāvattḥī
 (formal) act of banishment. /
 Sudhamma was a resident in Citta's Macchasanda,
 Sudhamma jeered at the lay follower Citta with talk on birth. /
 The Truth-finder enjoined a (formal) act of reconciliation.

BD.5.42

¹ Here *tato param*, higher, further, as against *tato pāpiṭṭhatara* of Kd.1.5.1. ² *na sammanti*, meaning does not cease, is not appeased, and signifying here that a formal act cannot be revoked because there are more than these five qualities to consider, and which may stand in the way of the revocation. Cf. *sammanti* at Dhp.5. ³ *n' upasammanti*.

11. THE FOLLOWERS OF PAṆDUKA AND LOHITAKA (PAṆDULOHITAKA) 1903

At Kosambī when the monk Channa, not wanting to see an offence, /
The incomparable Conqueror enjoined (the Order)
to suspend him for not seeing.

Vin.2.30

Channa did not want to make amends for that same offence. /
The leader enjoined a (formal) act of suspension
for not making amends for.

The wrong view of Ariṭṭha was founded on ignorance. /
Suspension for not giving up the wrong view
was proclaimed by the Conqueror.

A (formal) act of guidance, banishment, likewise reconciliation, /
A (formal) act for not seeing, for not making amends for,
and for not giving up a wrong view.

Frivolity, bad habits, harming, and also a wrong mode of livelihood: /
These are additional cases in the (formal) act of banishment.

Two fives (beginning): non-receiving, dispraise,
are two pentads particularly named¹, /

These are additional cases in the (formal) act of reconciliation.

And two among the (formal) acts are similar: censure and guidance; /

And there are the remaining cases: banishment and reconciliation.

The three (formal) acts of suspension are alike in their division.

BD.5.43

What remains in any (formal) act is to understood as in the case of censure. /

¹ *atināmaka*; *ati-*, meaning very much, specially.

12. PROBATION (*PARIVĀSA*)

DUTIES ON ONE ON PROBATION

Vin.2.31
Kd.12.1.1
BD.5.44

At one time, the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time monks under probation¹ consented to regular monks greeting them, standing up before them, saluting with joined palms, doing the proper duties, bringing forward a seat, bringing forward a sleeping-place, water for (washing) the feet, a footstool, a foot-stand, receiving the bowl and robe, treating their backs by massaging. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks who are under probation consent to regular monks greeting ... treating their backs by massaging?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks who are under probation consent to regular monks greeting ... treating their backs by massaging?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these monks who are under probation consent to regular monks ... treating their backs by massaging? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“A monk who is under probation, monks, should not consent to regular

¹ Cf. [Vin.1.143](#), also [Vin.1.136](#), [Vin.4.335-Vin.4.336](#). Vin-a.1159 notices four kinds of probation, *parivāsa*, all mentioned below: the unconcealed (as of former members of other sects, arid see [Kd.3.1.1](#)), the concealed (see [Kd.3.3.1](#)), the purifying ([Kd.13.26.1ff.](#)), and the concurrent ([Kd.13.14.1ff.](#)).

monks greeting him ... treating his back by massaging. Whoever should consent to (any of these actions), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, the mutual¹ greeting, standing up before ... treating of backs by massaging between monks who are under probation according to their seniority. I allow, monks, five things for monks under probation according to their seniority: Observance, Invitation, cloths for the rains, gifts (to the Order²) rice.

BD.5.45

Kd.12.1.2

Vin.2.32

“Well now, monks, I will lay down the conduct³ for monks under probation, so that monks under probation may conduct themselves⁴ according to it. A monk under probation, monks, should conduct himself properly.⁵ This is the proper conduct⁶ in this case⁷: he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him, he should not consent to an agreement to exhort nuns, even if agreed upon he should not exhort nuns, he should not fall into that same offence for which he was granted probation, nor into another that is similar, nor into one that is worse, he should not find fault with the (formal) act, he should not find fault with those who carry out the (formal) act, he should not suspend a regular monk’s Observance, he should not suspend his Invitation, he should not issue commands, should not set up authority, he should not ask for leave, he should not reprove, he should not make remember, he should not quarrel with monks. Nor, monks, should a monk under probation walk in front of a regular monk, nor sit down in front of him.⁸ Whatever is the Order’s last seat, last sleeping-place, last dwelling-place⁹—that should be given to him and he should consent to it. Monks, a monk under probation should not approach the families of a regular monk¹⁰ either as the novice who walks in front of him or as the novice who walks behind him. He should not undertake the forest-practice, he should not undertake the almsman’s practice,¹¹ he

BD.5.46

¹ *mithu*. ² *oṇojana*. Vin-a.1161 explains by *vissajjana*, bestowing. Cf. *oṇojesi* at Vin.1.39 and *oṇojetha* at Vin.4.156, both meaning “to give, to dedicate.” ³ *vatta*, custom, service, something to be done. Cf. Kd.1.27.1. ⁴ *vattitabbam*. ⁵ *sammāvattitabbam*. ⁶ *sammāvattanā*. ⁷ Cf. Vin.5.15. ⁸ These two actions are part of “intentional causing of discomfort” at Vin.4.290. ⁹ *pariyanta*. “Last” is used in the same sense at Bu-NP.22 See BD.2.120, n.5. In reference also to these three things “the last” would mean the last available as they were being assigned or distributed to members of the Order. But see *āpattipariyanta*, *rattipariyanta*, at Kd.13.26.1, and below, BD.5.76, n.1. ¹⁰ I.e. the families who support him and whom he visits for almsfood.

should not have almsfood taken back¹ for this reason:² that he thinks, ‘Do not let them find out about me’.³ Monks, a monk under probation should announce it⁴ when he is in-coming, he should announce it to (another who is) in-coming, he should announce it at the Observance, he should announce it at the Invitation, if he is ill he should also announce it by means of a messenger.⁵

Kd.12.1.3

“Monks, a monk under probation should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger.⁶ Monks, a monk under probation should not go from, a residence where there are monks to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk under probation should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk under probation should not go from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks ... to what is not a residence where there are no monks ... to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk under probation should not go from a residence, or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks ... to what is not a residence where there are no monks ... to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger.

BD.5.47

“Monks, a monk under probation should not go from a residence where

¹¹ He should not stay alone in the forest and he should not go to a village for alms. These two *aṅga* or practices, part of the *dhutaṅga*, ascetic practices, are explained in detail at *Vism.59ff.* See *Vin.1.253*, and *BD.4.351, n.2.* ¹ *nīharāpetabbo*, i.e. from a village to a monastery. Cf. *tato nīharitvā* at *Vin.4.80 (BD.2.324).* ² *tappaccayā*. According to *Vin-a.1165* monks returning to the monastery would see him sitting down are eating, and if he did not tell them he was under probation his period of probation might be curtailed. ³ I.e. that he is under probation. *Vin-a.1165* says, “Do not let one monk find out about me’, and with this in mind he should not eat, having had it (i.e. the almsfood brought back) cooked in the dwelling-place by a novice. He must enter a village for almsfood.” ⁴ I.e. the fact that he is under probation. ⁵ *Vin-a.1166* says that the messenger must not be anyone who is not ordained, he must be a monk. ⁶ Cf. *Kd.2.35.*

there are monks to a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to a different communion, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk under probation should not go from residence where there are monks to what is not a residence where there are monks ... should not go from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to a different communion, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger.

Vin.2.33

“Monks, a monk under probation may go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to the same communion and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day.’ Monks, a monk under probation may go from a residence where there are monks to what is not a residence where there are monks ... may go from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to the same communion and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day.’

“Monks, a monk under probation should not stay in a residence¹ under one roofing with a regular monk, he should not stay in what is not a residence² under one roofing (with him), he should not stay in a residence or in what is not a residence under one roofing (with him).³ Having seen a regular monk, he should get up from his seat. He should offer his seat to the regular monk. A monk under probation should not sit down on the same seat with a regular monk, he should not sit down on a high seat if he⁴ is sitting down on a low seat,⁵ he should not sit down on a seat if he is sitting on the ground, he should not pace up and down in the same place for pacing up and down in,⁶ he should not pace up and down in a high place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down in a low place for pacing

Kd.12.1.4

BD.5.48

¹ Vin-a.1167 here defines “residence”, *āvāsa*, as “a lodging made for staying in”. ² Vin-a.1167 here defines “not a residence” as a “shrine house (*cetiya*ghara), wisdom-house (*bodhi*ghara), a place (*aṭṭaka*) for sweepings, a place for wood, a building (*māla*, see [BD.2.16, n.4](#)) for drinking-water, a privy, a granary.” ³ Cf. [Kd.1.27.1](#); [Kd.1.28.2](#). ⁴ I.e. the regular monk. ⁵ Cf. [Bu-Sk.69](#). ⁶ *caṅkama*, monks’ walk, cloister. At first, this seems not to have been prepared or leveled; then it was allowed to be made level or even, then to be roofed over. Cf. [Kd.15.14.2](#), [Kd.15.14.3](#).

up and down in, he should not pace up and down in a place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground.¹

“Monks, a monk under probation should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a senior monk who is under probation ... with a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning ... with a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk who deserves rehabilitation, he should not stay in what is not a residence under one roofing (with him) ... he should not pace up and down in a place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground.

If, monks, one under probation as the fourth (member)² should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta* (discipline), if, as twentieth (member) he should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.”

Told are the Ninety-four Observances for one under Probation

Kd.12.2.1

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord: “Now, Lord, how many (kinds of) interruptions³ are there for a monk under probation?”

“There are three (kinds of) interruptions, Upāli, for a monk under probation: dwelling with⁴; dwelling away, separated from⁵; not announcing.⁶

Vin.2.34
BD.5.49

These, Upāli, are the three (kinds of) interruptions for a monk under probation.”

Kd.12.3.1

¹ Showing that “pacing up and down”, *caṅkamanta*, need not always have taken place in a *caṅkama*. ² Cf. Kd.9.4.6. One under probation does not complete a group or an Order, *gaṇa* and *saṅgha*. ³ *ratticcheda*, literally “breaking of nights”, time having been reckoned by nights instead of by days. ⁴ *sahavāsa*, which Vin-a.1168–Vin-a.1169 explains to mean any of the things given in Kd.12.1.4. ⁵ *vippavāsa*, as in Kd.12.1.3. Cf. *vippavāsa* in e.g. Bu-NP.2 See BD.2.13, n.1 and BD.2.14, n.1 for further references, and also Bu-NP.29 ⁶ *anārocānā*, as in the ways specified at end of Kd.12.1.2.

Now at that time a large Order of monks had gathered together at Sāvattḥī; monks under probation were not able to carry through¹ their probation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to postpone² probation. And thus, monks, should it be postponed: That monk who is under probation, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I am postponing probation’—probation comes to be postponed; ‘I am postponing the observance’,³—probation comes to be postponed.”⁴

Now at that time monks went away from Sāvattḥī to this place and that⁵; monks under probation were not able to carry through their probation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to take up⁶ probation. And thus, monks, should it be taken up: If that monk who is under probation, having approached one monk ... having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I am taking up probation’—probation comes to be taken up; ‘I am taking up the observance’—probation comes to be taken up.”

Told is the Observance for one under Probation

DUTIES OF ONE BEING SENT BACK TO THE BEGINNING

Now at that time monks who deserved to be sent back to the beginning⁷ consented to regular monks greeting them ... (= Kd.12.1.1, Kd.12.1.2. *Instead of monks under probation read monks who deserve to be sent back to the*

¹ *sodhetum*, to purify, cleanse, clear, so: to clear oneself of, to finish, to carry through. It was perhaps impossible for a monk to announce that he was under probation if the Order was very large or if it was dispersed. ² *nikkhipitum*, the Usual word for “to lay aside, to lay down, to deposit”, but here meaning to lay aside temporarily only, until a favourable time comes for undertaking the probationary period again. ³ *vatta*. See the 94 *vattā* to be observed by those under probation at Kd.12.1.2–Kd.12.1.4. ⁴ This and the corresponding phrase at end of Kd.12.3.2 below, although apparently meant to have been uttered by Gotama, do not end, as would be expected, with *ti*. ⁵ *taham-taham*, here and there. ⁶ *samāditum*, to take up or undertake again the probation imposed on the offending monk. ⁷ Cf. Kd.3.6.7.

beginning) ... ‘Do not let them find out about me’. Monks, a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger ... from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning may go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks ... from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to the same communion and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day.’

Monks, a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a regular monk ... (=Kd.12.1.4) ... he should not pace up and down in a place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground.

Vin.2.35

Monks, a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a monk under probation ... with a senior monk¹ ... with a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk who deserves rehabilitation ... he should not pace up and down in a place to pace up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground.

If, monks, one who deserves to be sent back to the beginning as the fourth (member) should grant probation, should send back to the beginning, should inflict *mānatta* (discipline), if, as the twentieth (member), he should rehabilitate, it is not a (formal) act and ought not to be carried out.²

DUTIES OF ONE DESERVING *MĀNATTA*

Kd.12.5.1

BD.5.51

Now at that time monks deserving *mānatta* (discipline)³ consented to regular monks greeting them ... (=Kd.12.1.1, Kd.12.1.2) ... “... ‘Do not let them find out about me’ Monks, a monk deserving *mānatta* (discipline) should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no

¹ For following items, see Kd.12.1.4. ² Cf. Kd.9.4.6. ³ Cf. Kd.3.6.8.

monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger ... (=Kd.12.1.3, Kd.12.1.4) ... he should not pace up and down in a place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground. Monks, a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a monk who is under probation ... with a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning ... with a senior monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk who deserves rehabilitation ... and ought not to be carried out.”

DUTIES OF ONE UNDERGOING *MĀNATTA*

Now at that time monks undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) consented to regular monks greeting them ... (=Kd.12.1.1, Kd.12.1.2 *Instead of* under probation read undergoing *mānatta* (discipline)) “... ‘Do not let them find out about me’. Monks, a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) should announce it when he is incoming, he should announce it to (another who is) incoming, he should announce it at the Observance, he should announce it at the Invitation, he should announce it daily,¹ if he is ill he should announce it by means of a messenger.

Kd.12.6.1

Monks, a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks, except with an Order,² unless there is a danger ... should not go from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with an Order, unless there is a danger ... should not go from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the monks there should belong to a different communion, except with an Order, unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) may go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks ... from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks if the

Vin.2.36

BD.5.52

¹ This is an extra clause peculiar to the monk undergoing *mānatta*. ² Instead of “a regular monk”, as in the other cases.

monks there should belong to the same communion and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day.’

Monks, a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a regular monk ... (=Kd.12.1.4) ... he should not pace up and down in a place to pace up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground. Monks, a monk undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a monk under probation ... with a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning ...with a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a senior monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... with a monk who deserves rehabilitation ... and ought not to be carried out.”

Kd.12.7.1

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord: “Now, Lord, how many (kinds of) interruptions are there for a monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline)?”

“There are four (kinds of) interruptions, Upāli, for a monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline): dwelling with; dwelling away, separated from; not announcing; going about with less than a group.¹ These, Upāli, are the four (kinds of) interruptions for a monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline).”

Kd.12.8.1

Now at that time a large Order of monks had gathered together at Sāvattihī; monks undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) were unable to carry through their *mānatta* (discipline) ... (see Kd.12.3.1, Kd.12.3.2) ... *mānatta* (discipline) comes to be taken up.”

DUTIES OF ONE DESERVING REHABILITATION

Kd.12.9.1

BD.5.53

Now at that time monks who deserved rehabilitation consented to regular monks greeting them ... (=Kd.12.1.1, Kd.12.1.2) ... “... ‘Do not let him find

¹ *ūne gaṇe caraṇaṃ*, a *gaṇa*, group usually consisting of two, three or four monks. But Vin-a.1170 says: “here a *gaṇa* means four (monks) or more. Therefore, if he is staying with three monks, that itself is an interruption.”

out about me.’ Monks, a monk who deserves rehabilitation should not go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are no monks ... from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are no monks, except with a regular (monk), unless there is a danger. Monks, a monk who deserves rehabilitation may go from a residence where there are monks to a residence where there are monks ... may go from a residence or from what is not a residence where there are monks to a residence or to what is not a residence where there are monks, if the monks there should belong to the same communion, and if he knows, ‘I am able to arrive this very day.’ Monks, a monk who deserves rehabilitation should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a regular monk ... he should I not pace up and down in a place for pacing up and down in if he is pacing up and down on the ground. Monks, a monk who deserves rehabilitation should not stay in a residence under one roofing with a monk under probation ... with a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning ... with a monk who deserves *mānatta* ((discipline) ... with a monk undergoing *mānatta* ((discipline) ... with a senior monk who deserves rehabilitation ... and ought not to be carried out.”

Vin.2.37

Told is the Second Section: that on Being under Probation

Kd.12.10.1

IN THIS SECTION ARE FIVE ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

Those under probation consent to a regular monk’s greeting,
standing up before, joined palms, proper duties,¹ seat, /
Bringing forward a sleeping-place, water for the feet,
a footstool, a footstand,
the bowl, treating the back by massaging,
and well-behaved ones looked down upon.² /
If one consents there is wrong-doing,³ mutual,
five things according to seniority⁴:

BD.5.54

¹ Oldenberg’s edition reads: *añjali-sāmiyaṃ āsanam*; Sinhalese edition reads: *añjaliñ ca sāmīciyaṃ*; Siamese edition reads: *añjaliñ c’eva sāmīcim*. Sinhalese and Siamese begin next line with *āsanam*. ² Oldenberg’s edition has a line less than Sinhalese and Siamese editions, which I follow. ³ Both Sinhalese and Siamese read *dukkaṭam*, as against Oldenberg’s *dukkaṭa*. ⁴ Sinhalese and Siamese read *yathā vuḍḍham* (as *Kd.2.1.1*); Oldenberg’s edition has *punāpare*; cf. *punāpare* at Snp.1004.

Observance, Invitation, (cloths for) the rains, gifts, food.¹ /
 And proper conduct, the carriage there, in regard to a regular monk,²
 and whatever is the last, neither as the novice in front of nor behind,³ /
 Forest, bringing back food, when coming in, at the Observance,
 and at the Invitation, and by a messenger,⁴
 and he may go to where there are monks. /
 Under one roofing and getting up and likewise in regard to offering,⁵ /
 on a seat, in a high place for pacing up and down in,
 on the ground and not in a place for pacing up and down in, /
 With a senior— not a (formal) act, interruptions⁶ and carryings through,
 postponing, taking up should be stated (by) one under probation.⁷ /
 To the beginning, those deserving *mānatta*,
 likewise those undergoing *mānatta*,
 and also he who deserves rehabilitation—
 again the composing by the method. /
 Three⁸ for those under probation, four⁹ for one undergoing *mānatta*.
 As with the three interruptions,
 so there is ‘daily’ for those undergoing *mānatta*.¹⁰
 Two (formal) acts are similar,
 the remaining three (formal) acts are exactly the same.

BD.5.55

¹ Oldenberg’s and Sinhalese editions read *vassik-oṇoja-bhojanam*; Siamese edition *vas-sikañcāvaṇojanam*, and it begins the next line with *bhattam* (omitted by Oldenberg and Sinhalese), which is the word used at end of *Kd.2.1.1*, *bhojana* not occurring there at all.

² *pakatattassa gacchanam*, Oldenberg; *pakatattena gacchare*, Sinhalese and Siamese editions. This refers to not walking or sitting down in front of a regular monk (*Kd.2.1.2*).

³ Sinhalese and Siamese editions: *na pure pacchā samaṇena*; Oldenberg: *pure pacchā tath’ eva ca*.

⁴ Sinhalese and Siamese editions: *dūtena*; Oldenberg: *dūto*. ⁵ Sinhalese and Siamese editions read: *ekacchanne na* (Sinhalese *ca*) *vatthabbaṃ na chamāyaṃ nisajjite*.

⁶ Sinhalese and Siamese editions read: *ratticchedā*; Oldenberg: *ratticchedo*. ⁷ Sinhalese and Siamese editions read: *nikkipanaṃ samādānaṃ nātappaṃ pārivāsikā*; Oldenberg: *nikkhipanaṃ samādānaṃ, ratti vā pārivāsike*.

⁸ Referring to “interruptions”, as at *Kd.12.2.1*, *Kd.12.7.1* ⁹ Referring to “interruptions”, as at *Kd.12.2.1*, *Kd.12.7.1* ¹⁰ *saman tiratticchedesu mānattesu ca devasi* (Oldenberg and Sinhalese) meaning, I take it, that as there is an extra “interruption” for one undergoing *mānatta*, so he has to make an extra “announcement” (beginning of *Kd.12.6.1*). Siamese edition reads: *na samenti ratticchedā mānattesu ca devāsikaṃ*, “the interruptions do not agree (or, are not in accordance, not on all fours) and there is ‘daily’ for those undergoing *mānatta*”.

13. ACCUMULATION (SAMUCCAYA)

EMISSION OF SEMEN

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the venerable Udāyin¹ came to have fallen into one offence: the intentional emission of semen,² not concealed. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, have fallen into one offence ... not concealed. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.38
Kd.13.1.1
BD.5.56

UNCONCEALED MĀNATTA

“Well then, monks, let the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights³ on the monk Udāyin for the one offence ... not concealed.

Kd.13.1.2

“And thus, monks, should it be inflicted: Monks, that monk Udāyin, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘Honoured sirs, I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... not concealed. I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... not concealed. And a second time I ask the Order ... not concealed. I, honoured

¹ A sensual monk. See Index to Names in BD.1, BD.2, BD.3. (Note: Not included in SuttaCentral edition.) ² Bu-Ss.1 (Vin.3.112, BD.1.196). Cf. also Bu-Pc.9, Bu-Pc.64, and Vin.4.194f., N.B. at BD.2.219 (Bu-Pc.9) the sentence, “He, being under probation, sat down in the refectory at the end of a seat” (*āsanapariyante*) should be corrected to “sat down ... on the last seat”, in accordance with Kd.2.1.2. ³ Vin-a.1170 mentions four kinds of *mānatta*: the unconcealed, the concealed, the fortnight’s duration, the concurrent.

sirs, fell into one offence ... not concealed. And a third time I ask the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence: the intentional emission of semen, not concealed.'

Kd.13.1.3

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin fell into one offence ... not concealed. He is asking the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence not concealed. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... not concealed. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin fell into one offence ... not concealed. He is asking the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) ... not concealed. The Order is inflicting *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... not concealed. If the infliction of *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... not concealed is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter: Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin ... should speak. *Mānatta* (discipline) is being inflicted by the Order for six nights on the monk Udāyin for the one offence: intentional emission of semen, not concealed. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.5.57

Vin.2.39

UNCONCEALED REHABILITATION

Kd.13.2.1

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence: the intentional emission of semen, not concealed; so I asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... not concealed; thus the Order inflicted *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on me on account of the one offence ... not concealed. I have now performed *mānatta* (discipline). Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.13.2.2

“Well, then, monks, let the Order rehabilitate the monk Udāyin.

“And thus, monks, should he be rehabilitated: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... not concealed; so I asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... not concealed; thus the Order inflicted *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on me on account of the one offence ... not concealed. Now I, honoured sirs, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), ask the Order for rehabilitation. I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... So I, honoured sirs, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), ask the Order a second time also for rehabilitation. I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... So I, honoured sirs, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), ask the Order a third time also for rehabilitation.’

BD.5.58

Kd.13.2.3

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin, fell into one offence: the intentional emission of semen, not concealed; so he asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... not concealed. The Order inflicted *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... not concealed. He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), is asking the Order for rehabilitation. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may rehabilitate the monk Udāyin. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin fell into one offence ... is asking the Order for rehabilitation. The Order is rehabilitating the monk Udāyin. If the rehabilitation of the monk Udāyin is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me ... should speak. The monk Udāyin is rehabilitated by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

Vin.2.40

PROBATION CONCEALED FOR ONE NIGHT

Kd.13.3.1

Now at that time the venerable Udāyin came to have fallen into one offence: the intentional emission of semen, concealed for one day. He announced to monks, saying: “I, your reverences, have fallen into one offence ... concealed for one day. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order impose probation for one day on the monk Udāyin on account of the offence ... concealed for one day.

Kd.13.3.2
BD.5.59
Vin.2.41

“And thus, monks, should it be imposed: ... *(The matter which here follows is precisely as in Kd.13.1.2, Kd.13.1.3, with the necessary changes in the wording of (a) the offence, (b) the penalty) ...*

MĀNATTA CONCEALED FOR ONE NIGHT

Kd.13.4.1

He, having stayed under probation, announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for one day; so I asked the Order for probation for one day on account of the one offence ... concealed for one day; thus the Order imposed probation for one day on me on account of the one offence ... concealed for one day. I have now stayed under probation. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... concealed for one day.

Kd.13.4.2
Kd.13.4.3

(Here follows precisely the same material as in Kd.13.1.2, Kd.13.1.3, reading concealed for one day instead of not concealed)

Vin.2.42

REHABILITATION CONCEALED FOR ONE NIGHT

Kd.13.5.1

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), announced to the monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... (=Kd.13.4.1) ... I, having stayed under probation, asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... concealed for one day. I have now performed *mānatta* (discipline). Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order rehabilitate the monk Udāyin.

(Here follows precisely the same material as in **Kd.13.2.2**, **Kd.13.2.3**, reading concealed for one day instead of not concealed)”

Kd.13.5.2

Kd.13.5.3

Vin.2.43

PROBATION CONCEALED FOR FIVE DAYS

Now at that time the venerable Udāyin fell into one offence: the intentional emission of semen, concealed for two days ... three days ... four days ... five days. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for two ... five days ... (= **Kd.13.3** *Instead of* concealed for one day, probation for one day, *read* concealed for two) ... five days, probation for two ... five days ... Thus do I understand this.”

Kd.13.6.1

BD.5.60

SENDING ONE ON PROBATION BACK TO THE BEGINNING

While he was under probation he fell into one offence: the intentional emission of semen, not concealed. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days; so I asked the Order for probation for five days on account of this offence ... concealed for five days; thus the Order granted me probation for five days on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days. Now while I was under probation I fell into one offence ... not concealed. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.13.7.1

“Well then, monks, let the Order send the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while (he was under probation).

Kd.13.7.2

“And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. So I asked the Order for probation for five days on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days; thus the Order granted me probation for five days ... concealed for five days. While I was doing probation I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I am asking the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of this offence ... not concealed.’ And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for ...

Vin.2.44

Kd.13.7.3

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin ... asked the Order for probation for five days ... (cf. **Kd.13.2.3**) ... The Order granted probation for five days ... While he was under probation he fell into one offence ... not concealed. He is asking the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while (he was under probation). If it seems right to the Order, the Order may send the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of ... not concealed, while (he was under probation). This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin ... is asking the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while (he was under probation). The Order is sending the monk Udāyin back to the beginning ... while (he was under probation). If the sending back to the beginning of the monk Udāyin ... is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The monk Udāyin is sent back to the beginning by the Order. The sending back to the beginning for the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... not concealed is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.5.61

SENDING ONE DESERVING MĀNATTA BACK TO THE BEGINNING

He, having stayed under probation, while he was deserving *mānatta* (discipline), fell into an offence ... not concealed. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days; so I asked the Order ... (= **Kd.13.7.1**). Now while I was under probation I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed. The Order sent me back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while (I was under probation). Now I, having stayed under probation while I was deserving *mānatta* (discipline), fell into one offence ... not concealed. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.13.8.1

“Well, then, monks, let the Order send the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while (he was under probation).”

Kd.13.8.2

“And thus, monks, should he be sent back¹: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days ... Having stayed under probation, while I was deserving *mānatta* (discipline), I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, having stayed under probation and while I was deserving *mānatta* (discipline).’ And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for ...”

Vin.2.45

BD.5.62

Kd.13.8.3

“The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin ... asks for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... not concealed, while he was deserving *mānatta* (discipline), having stayed under probation. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may send the monk Udāyin back to the beginning ... having stayed under probation. This is the motion: Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Udāyin asks ... The Order is sending the monk Udāyin back to the beginning ... If the sending back to the beginning for the monk Udāyin on account of ... is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The monk Udāyin is sent back to the beginning by the Order. The sending back to the beginning ... is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

MĀNATTA FOR THREE OFFENCES

He, having stayed under probation, announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days ... (as in Kd.13.4.2) ... They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.13.9.1

“Well then, monks, let the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of these offences.

Kd.13.9.2

Kd.13.9.3

¹ *mūlāya*, to the beginning, not in Oldenberg’s text here. Cf. Kd.13.7.2.

... (as in **Kd.13.4.2**, **Kd.13.4.3**) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Vin.2.46

SENDING ONE UNDERGOING *MĀNATTA* BACK TO THE BEGINNING

Kd.13.10.1

While he was undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) he fell into one offence ... not concealed. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days ... (as in **Kd.13.8.1**) ...” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.63

“Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence while he was undergoing *mānatta* (discipline), not concealed, inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights. And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning ... And thus, monks, should *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights be inflicted ... *Mānatta* (discipline) for six nights is inflicted by the Order on the monk Udāyin for the one offence ... It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

SENDING ONE DESERVING REHABILITATION BACK TO THE BEGINNING

Kd.13.11.1

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline) and while he deserved rehabilitation, fell into one offence ... not concealed. He announced to monks ... They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... when he had performed *mānatta* (discipline) and while he deserved rehabilitation, inflict *mānatta* (discipline) on him for six nights. And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning ... And thus, monks, should (discipline) for six nights be inflicted ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

REHABILITATION FOR ONE WHO HAS BEEN SENT BACK TO THE BEGINNING

Kd.13.12.1

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. ... (as in **Kd.13.2.1**).

Vin.2.47

I have now performed *mānatta* (discipline). Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Well then, monks, let the Order rehabilitate the monk Udāyin.

Kd.13.12.2

"And thus, monks, should he be rehabilitated: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: 'I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. So I asked the Order for probation for five days on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days. Therefore the Order granted me probation for five days on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days. While I was doing probation I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... while I was doing probation, not concealed. The Order sent me back to the beginning ... But then I, having stayed under probation and while I deserved *mānatta* (discipline), fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning ... The Order sent me back to the beginning ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the three offences. Because of this, the Order inflicted *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on me on account of the three offences. But while I was under-going *mānatta* (discipline) I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning ... Thus the Order sent me back to the beginning ... So I asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... while I was undergoing *mānatta* (discipline), not concealed. The Order inflicted *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on me. When I had performed *mānatta* (discipline) and while I deserved rehabilitation, I fell into one offence ... not concealed. So I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... while I deserved rehabilitation, not concealed. Thus the Order sent me back to the beginning ... And I asked the Order for *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on account of the one offence ... while I deserved rehabilitation, not concealed. Because of this, the Order inflicted *mānatta*, (discipline) for six nights on me ... So I, honoured sirs, having performed *mānatta* (discipline) ask the Order for rehabilitation.' And a second time should it be asked for ... And a third time should it be asked for ...

BD.5.64

Kd.13.12.3

"The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk,

Vin.2.48 saying: ‘Honoured sirs, ... (as in Kd.13.12.2) ... He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), asks the Order for rehabilitation. If it seems right to the Order, ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The monk Udāyin is rehabilitated by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order ... Thus do I understand this.’”

PROBATION FOR ONE WHO HAS CONCEALED FOR A FORTNIGHT

Kd.13.13.1 Now at that time the venerable Udāyin fell into one offence ... concealed for half a month ... (as in Kd.13.3 *Instead of* concealed for one day, probation for one day *read* concealed for half a month, probation for half a month) ... ‘...Thus do I understand this.’”

SENDING ONE ON PROBATION FOR A FORTNIGHT BACK TO THE BEGINNING

Kd.13.14.1
BD.5.65 While he was under probation he fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for half a month. So I asked the Order for probation for half a month on account of the one offence ... concealed for half a month. Because of this the Order granted me probation for half a month. Then while I was under probation, I fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days, grant him probation concurrent¹ with the former offence.

Kd.13.14.2

¹ *samodhānaparivāsa*. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.169, says, “When another offence is committed during the continuance of the Parivāsa period, a fresh period begins to run from the date of the commission of the second offence and it extends over as many days as were covered by the Parivāsa period prescribed for the first offence or the Parivāsa period prescribed for the second offence, whichever period may be longer.” As *Vinaya Texts* ii.405, n.1 points out, “the penalties for this new offence and for the old one were not accumulative but concurrent. The offender lost the advantage of the probation he had already undergone, he was thrown back to the commencement of his term of probation, and had to begin again.” The *mānatta* to which he was liable for the first offence was not affected.

“And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning: ... (as in [Kd.13.7.2](#), [Kd.13.7.3](#). Read concealed for half a month, probation for half a month, and then concealed for five days instead of concealed for five days, probation for five days, and then not concealed) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

CONCURRENT PROBATION

“And thus, monks, should probation concurrent with the former offence be granted: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, asked the Order for sending back to the beginning ... (= [Kd.13.14.2](#)) ... Therefore the Order sent me back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... while I was under probation for half a month, concealed for five days. So I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for concurrent probation with the former offence ... while I was under probation for half a month, concealed for five days’. And a second time ... And a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed ... ‘... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... Concurrent probation with the former offence is granted by the Order to the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... while he was under probation for half a month, concealed for five days. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’”

Kd.13.14.3

BD.5.66

SENDING ONE DESERVING MĀNATTA BACK TO THE BEGINNING, ETC.

He, having stayed under probation, while deserving *mānatta* (discipline), fell into one offence ... concealed for five days ... They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.13.15.1

“Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days, grant him probation concurrent with the former offence. And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning ... (as in [Kd.13.14.2](#), [Kd.13.14.3](#)) ... And thus, monks, should probation concurrent with the former offence be granted ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

MĀNATTA FOR THREE OFFENCES

Kd.13.16.1

He, having stayed under probation, announced to monks: ... (as in Kd.13.4.1 reading concealed for five days *instead of* concealed for one day) ... They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.50

“Well then, monks, let the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the three offences. And thus, monks, should it be inflicted: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order ... ‘... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... *Mānatta* (discipline) is inflicted by the Order for six nights on the monk Udāyin on account of the three offences. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’”

SENDING ONE UNDERGOING MĀNATTA BACK TO THE BEGINNINGDI

Kd.13.17.1

While he was undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) he fell into one offence, concealed for five days. He announced to monks: I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for half a month ...’ (and he told all that had happened from Kd.13.13 onwards) ... They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days, having granted him probation concurrent with the former offence, inflict *mānatta* (discipline) on him for six nights. And thus, monks, should he be sent back to the beginning ... And thus, monks, should probation concurrent with the former offence be granted ... And thus, monks, should *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights be inflicted ... ‘*Mānatta* (discipline) for six nights is inflicted by the Order on the monk Udāyin on account of the one offence ... while he was undergoing *mānatta* (discipline), concealed for five days. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.5.67

SENDING ONE DESERVING REHABILITATION BACK TO THE BEGINNINGDI

Kd.13.18.1

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), while he deserved rehabilitation fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. He announced to monks: ‘I, your reverences, fell into one offence, concealed for half a month

... (he repeats all that has happened from **Kd.13.13** onwards) ... When I had performed *mānatta* (discipline) and while I deserved rehabilitation, I fell into one offence ... concealed for five days. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Well then, monks, let the Order, having sent the monk Udāyin back to the beginning on account of the one offence ... concealed for five days, having granted him probation concurrent with the former offence, inflict *mānatta* (discipline) for six nights on him ... (as in **Kd.13.17.2.**) ... Thus do I understand this."

REHABILITATION FOR ONE WHO HAS CONCEALED FOR A FORTNIGHT

He, having performed *mānatta* (discipline), announced to monks: "I, your reverences, fell into one offence ... concealed for half a month ... (as from **Kd.13.13** onwards.) I have now performed *mānatta* (discipline). Now what line of conduct is to be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.51
Kd.13.19.1

"Well then, monks, let the Order rehabilitate the monk Udayin. And thus, monks, should he be rehabilitated: That monk Udāyin, having approached the Order, ... should speak thus to it: 'I, honoured sirs, fell into one offence, ... concealed for half a month. So I ... But I, honoured sirs, having performed *mānatta* discipline, ask the Order for rehabilitation ...' And a second time ... And a third time it should be asked for ... The Order should be informed ... '... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The monk Udāyin is rehabilitated by the Order. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.'"

BD.5.68

Concluded (are the proceedings connected with) Intentional Emission

PROBATION

CONCURRENT PROBATION WITH DEPENDENT DURATION

Now at that time a certain monk came to have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: one offence was concealed for one day, one offence was concealed for two days ... three ... four ... five ... six

... seven ... eight ... nine days, one offence was concealed for ten days. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; one offence was concealed for one day ... one offence was concealed for ten days. What line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, let the Order grant this monk concurrent probation, its duration depending¹ on whichever was the offence among these offences that was concealed for ten days.

Kd.13.20.2

“And thus, monks, should it be granted: That monk, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, revered sirs, have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; ‘... one offence was concealed for ten days. So I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for concurrent probation, its duration depending on whichever was the offence among these offences that was concealed for ten days’. And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for ... The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so fell into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; one was concealed for ... ten days. He is asking the Order for concurrent probation, its duration depending on whichever was the offence among these offences that was concealed for ten days. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should grant the monk So-and-so concurrent probation ... for ten days. This is the motion ... Concurrent probation is being granted by the Order to the monk So-and-so, its duration depending on whichever was the offence among these offences that was concealed for ten days. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’”

Vin.2.52

BD.5.69

ALL LENGTHS CONCEALED WITH DEPENDENT DURATION

Kd.13.21.1

Now at that time a certain monk had fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; one offence was concealed for one day, two

¹ *tassā agghena*, literally according to the value or worth, i.e. of the probationary period necessitated by the number of days the offence was concealed. Here probation had to be undergone for ten days, since this was the greatest number of days for which one of the offences had been concealed. Vin-a.1182 says there are three kinds of concurrent probation: *odhāna*, *aggha*, and *missaka*, all of which it explains.

offences were concealed for two days, three offences were concealed for three days, four ... for four days, five ... for five days ... six for six days ... seven for seven days, eight ... for eight days, nine ... for nine days, ten offences were concealed for ten days. He announced to monks, saying: "I, your reverences, have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; one offence was concealed for one day ... ten offences were concealed for ten days. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Well then, monks, let the Order grant this monk concurrent probation, its duration depending on whichever were the offences among these offences that were each concealed the longest.¹ And thus, monks, should it be granted: That monk, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: 'I, honoured sirs, have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; one offence was concealed for one day ... ten offences were concealed for ten days. Therefore I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for concurrent probation, its duration depending on whichever were the offences among these offences that were each concealed the longest.' And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for ... The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: '... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... Concurrent probation is granted by the Order to this monk, its duration depending on whichever were the offences among these offences that were each concealed the longest. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.'"

PROBATION FOR TWO MONTHS

Now at that time a certain monk fell into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; they were concealed for two months. It occurred to him: "I have fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; they were concealed for two months. Suppose I were to ask the Order for probation for two months for one offence concealed for two months?" He asked the Order for probation for two months for one offence concealed for two months. The Order granted him probation for two months for one offence

¹ *sabbacirapaṭicchannāyo*. This looks as if probation would have to last for ten times ten days.

concealed for two months. While he was under probation a feeling of shame overcame him, and he thought: "I fell into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; they were concealed for two months. It occurred to me: I have fallen into two offences ... Suppose I were to ask the Order for probation for two months for one offence concealed for two months? I asked the Order ... The Order granted me probation for two months for one offence concealed for two months. While I was under probation a feeling of shame overcame me. Suppose I were also to ask the Order for probation for two months for that other offence concealed for two months?"

Kd.13.22.2

He announced to monks: "I, your reverences, fell into two offences ... '... Suppose I were also to ask the Order for probation for two months for that other offence concealed for two months?' Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said.

Kd.13.22.3

"Well then, monks, let the Order grant this monk probation for two months on account also of that other offence concealed for two months. And thus, monks, should it be granted: That monk, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: 'I, honoured sirs, have fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... (=Kd.13.22.2) ... Suppose I were also to ask the Order for probation for two months on account of that other offence concealed for two months? So I, honoured sirs, am also asking the Order for probation for two months on account of that other offence concealed for two months.' And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for.

Vin.2.54

Kd.13.22.4

"The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. It occurred to him: ... He is also asking the Order for probation for two months on account of that other offence concealed for two months. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may also grant the monk So-and-so probation for two months on account of that other offence concealed for two months. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. Probation is also being granted the monk So-and-so by the Order for two months on account of this other offence concealed for two months.

BD.5.71

It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.' Well then, monks, that monk should do probation for two months from that date.¹

Kd.13.23.1

"This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months ... (*as above*) ... The Order also granted him probation for two months on account of that other offence concealed for two months. Well then, monks, that monk should do probation for two months from that date.

Kd.13.23.2

"This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. He knows that one is an offence, he does not know that the other is an offence. He asks the Order for probation for two months on account of that offence, concealed for two months, which he knows to be an offence. The Order grants him probation for two months on account of that offence concealed for two months. While he is under probation, he finds that the other is also an offence. It occurs to him: 'I have fallen into two offences ... I knew that one was an offence, I did not know that the other was an offence. So I asked the Order for probation for two months on account of that offence which I knew to be an offence, concealed for two months. The Order granted me probation for two months on account of that offence, concealed for two months. But while I was under probation, I found that the other was also an offence. Suppose I were also to ask the Order for probation for two months on account of this other offence, concealed for two months?' He asks the Order for probation ... The Order grants him probation for two months on account of this other offence also, concealed for two months. Well then, monks, this monk should do probation for two months from that date.

Vin.2.55

BD.5.72

Kd.13.23.3

"This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. He remembers one offence, he does not remember the other offence. He asks the Order for probation for two months on account of that offence, concealed for two months, which he remembers ... (= **Kd.13.23.2**. *Read* remembers, remembered *instead of* finds, found) ... for two months from this date.

Kd.13.23.4

"This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. He is in no

¹ *tadupādāya*.

doubt that one is an offence, he is doubtful whether the other is an offence. He asks the Order for probation for two months on account of that offence about which he is in no doubt ... (= [Kd.13.23.2](#). *Read* is doubtful for does not know) ... for two months from this date.

Kd.13.23.5

“This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. One offence is knowingly concealed, the other offence is unknowingly concealed. He asks the Order for probation for two months on account of those offences concealed for two months. The Order grants him probation for two months on account of those offences concealed for two months. While he is under probation, a certain monk arrives—one who has heard much, to whom the tradition had been handed down, expert in *dhamma*, expert in discipline, expert in the summaries, clever, experienced, wise, conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training. He speaks thus: ‘What, your reverences, has this monk fallen into? Why is this monk doing probation?’ They speak thus: ‘This monk, your reverence, has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. One offence was knowingly concealed, the other offence was unknowingly concealed. He asked the Order for probation for two months on account of these offences concealed for two months. The Order granted him probation for two months on account of these offences, concealed for two months. This monk your reverence, has fallen into these, this monk is under probation on account of these.’ He speaks thus: ‘The granting of probation, your reverences, for that offence which he knowingly concealed is legally valid¹; because it is legally valid² it is effective;³ but the granting of probation, your reverences, for that offence which he unknowingly concealed is not legally valid; because it is not legally valid it is not effective. For this offence, your reverences, the monk deserves *mānatta* (discipline).’

BD.5.73

Kd.13.23.6

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. One offence is concealed, he remembering it, the other offence is concealed, he not remembering it ... One offence is concealed, he being not in doubt (about

¹ *dhammikarū*. ² *dhammattā*. ³ *rūhati*. As at [Kd.3.25.3](#), [Vin.5.327](#), etc. Cf. [Vin.2.203](#) and [Kd.6.14.5](#). *Rūhati* means something like “it counts”.

it), the other offence is concealed, he being in doubt (about it) ... ‘... For this offence, your reverences, this monk deserves *mānatta* (discipline).’”

Vin.2.56

Now at that time a certain monk had fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. It occurred to him: “I have fallen into two offences ... concealed for two months. Suppose that I were to ask the Order for probation for one month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months?” He asked the Order ... The Order granted him probation for one month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months. As he was under probation shame overcame him, and he thought: “I have fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. It occurred to me: ... I asked the Order for probation for one month ... The Order granted me probation for one month on account of the two offences concealed for two months. As I was under probation shame overcame me. What now, if I should also ask the Order for probation for a further month on account of the two offences concealed for two months?”

Kd.13.24.1

He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, have fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months ... It occurred to me: ... What now if I should also ask the Order for probation for a further month on account of the two offences concealed for two months? Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord.

Kd.13.24.2

BD.5.74

He said: “Well then, monks, let the Order also grant this monk probation for a further month on account of these two offences concealed for two months. And thus, monks, should it be asked for: That monk, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, have fallen into two offences ... What now if I should also ask the Order for probation for a further month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months? So I, honoured sirs, am also asking the Order for probation for a further month on account of the two offences concealed for two months.’ And a second time ... And a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so fell into two

Kd.13.24.3

Vin.2.57

offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. It occurred to him: ‘... Suppose I were also to ask the Order for probation for a further month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months?’ He is asking ... If it seems right to the Order, the Order ... If the giving of probation to the monk So-and-so for a further month also on account of the two offences concealed for two months is pleasing to the venerable ones ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... Probation is granted by the Order to the monk So-and-so for a further month also on account of the two offences, concealed for two months. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’ Monks, that monk should do probation for two months from the earlier date.

PROCEDURE FOR ONE TO BE GIVEN PROBATION FOR TWO MONTHS

Kd.13.25.1

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. It occurs to him: ‘I have fallen into two offences ... concealed for two months. Suppose I were to ask the Order for probation for one month on account of the two offences concealed for two months?’ ... (=Kd.13.25.1) ... The Order also grants him probation for a further month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months. Monks, that monk should do probation for two months from the earlier date.

BD.5.75

Kd.13.25.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. He knows the one month, he does not know the other month ... he remembers the one month, he does not remember the other month ... he is not doubtful about the one month, he is doubtful about the other month. He asks the Order for probation for that month on account of the two offences, concealed for two months, about which he is not doubtful. The Order grants him probation ... not doubtful. As he is doing probation he comes to be doubtful about the further month also. It occurs to him: ‘I have fallen into two offences ... concealed for two months. I was not doubtful about the one month, I was doubtful about the other month ... Suppose I were to ask the Order for probation for a further month also on account of the two offences concealed

Vin.2.58

for two months?' He asks the Order ... The Order grants him probation for a further month also on account of the two offences, concealed for two months. Monks, that monk should do probation for two months from the earlier date.

Kd.13.25.3

This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. One month is knowingly concealed, the other month is unknowingly concealed ... One month is concealed, he remembering it, the other month is concealed, he not remembering it ... One month is concealed, he being not in doubt (about it), the other month is concealed, he being in doubt about it. He asks the Order for probation for two months on account of the two offences concealed for two months. The Order grants him probation for two months ... concealed for two months. As he is under probation, another monk arrives¹—one who has heard much ... desirous of training. He speaks thus: 'Into what, your reverences, has this monk fallen? Why is this monk under probation?' They speak thus: 'This monk, your reverence, has fallen into two offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, concealed for two months. He concealed one month (although) he was not doubtful (about it), he concealed the other month (because) he was doubtful (about it). He asked the Order for probation ... The Order granted him probation for two months on account of the two offences, concealed for two months. This monk, your reverence, has fallen into these, this monk is doing probation on account of these.' He speaks thus: 'The granting of probation, your reverences, for that month which he concealed (although) he was not doubtful (about it) is legally valid; because it is legally valid, it is effective; but the granting of probation, your reverences, for that month which he concealed because he was doubtful (about it) is not legally valid; because it is not legally valid, it is not effective. For that month, your reverences, that monk deserves *mānatta* discipline.'"

BD.5.76

PURIFYING PROBATION

Now at that time a certain monk came to have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; he did not know about the expi-

Kd.13.26.1

¹ As in Kd.13.23.5.

ration of the offences, he did not know about the expiration of the nights¹ ... He did not remember ... He was doubtful about the expiration of the offences, he was doubtful about the expiration of the nights. He announced to monks: “I, your reverences, fell into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. I do not know about the expiration of the offences, I do not know about the expiration of the nights ... I am doubtful about the expiration of the nights. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.59

BD.5.77

“Well then, monks, let the Order grant the purifying probation² to this monk on account of those offences.

Kd.13.26.2

And thus, monks, should it be granted: That monk, having approached the Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. I do not know about the expiration of the offences ... I am doubtful about the expiration of the nights. So I, honoured sirs, am asking the Order for the purifying probation on account of these offences’. And a second time ... And a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so has fallen into several offences ... he is doubtful about the expiration of the nights. He is asking the Order for the purifying probation on account of those offences. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may grant the monk So-and-so the purifying probation on account of those

¹ *āpattipariyanta ... rattipariyanta*. *Pariyanta* means literally limit, end, boundary, limitation. On the use of these words here Buddhaghosa leads us to suppose that a monk might be in a state of purification in regard to various offences that he had committed because he had undergone adequate probation. This might last for a day, a half-month, a month or a year. He should then consider for how many months he still has to do probation so as to secure his purification, that is, the removal of the offence. As offences are removed, the amount of time still to be spent on probation automatically becomes less. Moreover, whoever does not know or remember or is in doubt as to the expiration of the nights should, if he has undertaken to do probation, count the nights from that day back to the day of his ordination, and then do probation for this number of nights. In this way, it appears, he would be quite certain of doing probation for all the possible nights which might be necessary for the removal of the offence. See *āpattipariyanta* and *kulapariyanta* (“limited to families”) at Vin.4.31 (BD.2.220), where defined; and *bhesajjapariyanta* (“limited to medicines”) and *rattipariyanta* at Vin.4.103 (BD.2.371). See also above, Kd.12.1.2, where *pariyanta* seems used in a different sense. ² *suddhantaparivāsa*.

offences. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so ... The Order is granting the monk So-and-so the purifying probation on account of those offences. If the granting to the monk So-and-so of the purifying probation on account of those offences is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak: And a second time ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... The purifying probation is granted by the Order to the monk So-and-so on account of those offences. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.'

Kd.13.26.3

“Thus, monks, should the purifying probation be granted, thus should probation be granted. And how, monks, should the purifying probation be granted? If he does not know about the expiration of the offences, if he does not know about the expiration of the nights, if he does not remember about the expiration of the offences, if he does not remember about the expiration of the nights, if he is doubtful about the expiration of the offences, if he is doubtful about the expiration of the nights, the purifying probation may be granted.

BD.5.78

“If he knows about the expiration of the offences, if he does not know about the expiration of the nights, if he remembers about the expiration of the offences, if he does not remember about the expiration of nights, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the offences, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, the purifying probation may be granted.

“If he knows the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he does not know the expiration of the nights, if he remembers the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he does not remember the expiration of the nights, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he is in no doubt as to it in others, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, the purifying probation may be granted.

“If he does not know the expiration of the offences, if he knows the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he does not remember the expiration of the offences, if he remembers the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the offences, if in some cases he is in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, if he is not in doubt in others, the

Vin.2.60

purifying probation may be granted.

“If he knows the expiration of the offences, if he knows the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he remembers the expiration of the offences, if he remembers the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the offences, if he is in doubt in some cases as to the expiration of the nights, if he is not in doubt in others, the purifying probation may be granted.

“If he knows the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he knows the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he remembers the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he remembers the expiration of the nights in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he is in doubt as to some offences, if he is not in doubt as to others, if he is in doubt as to some nights, if he is not in doubt as to others, the purifying probation may be granted.

BD.5.79

Kd.13.26.4

“And how, monks may probation be granted? If he knows the expiration of the offences, if he knows the expiration of the nights, if he remembers the expiration of the offences, if he remembers the expiration of the nights, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the offences, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, probation may be granted.

“If he does not know the expiration of the offences, if he knows the expiration of the nights, if he does not remember the expiration of the offences, if he remembers the expiration of the nights, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the offences, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, probation may be granted.

“If he knows the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not know it in others, if he knows the expiration of the nights, if he remembers the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he does not remember it in others, if he remembers the expiration of the nights, if he is in doubt as to the expiration of the offences in some cases, if he is not in doubt in others, if he is not in doubt as to the expiration of the nights, probation may be granted. Thus, monks, may probation be granted.”

Told is Probation

FORTY CASES

Now at that time a certain monk, while doing probation, left the Order. Having come back again, he asked the monks for ordination. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This is a case, monks, where a monk, doing probation, leaves the Order. Monks, the probation of one who leaves the Order is not effective. If he is ordained again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him:¹ whatever probation is granted is properly granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, he must do probation (for any portion of time) remaining.

BD.5.80

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, becomes a novice. Monks, the probation of a novice is not effective. If he is ordained again ... (*as in preceding paragraph*) ... remaining.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, becomes mad. Monks, the probation of one who is mad is not effective. If he becomes sane again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, he must do probation (for any portion of time) remaining.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, becomes unhinged in mind. Monks, the probation of one who is unhinged in mind is not effective. If he becomes not unhinged in mind again ... This is a case, monks, where a monk, doing probation, becomes afflicted by pain. Monks, the probation of one afflicted by pain is not effective. If he becomes not afflicted by pain again ... he must do probation for (any portion of time) remaining.

Vin.2.61

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, is suspended for not seeing an offence ... for not making amends for an offence ... for not giving up a wrong view. Monks, the probation of one who is suspended is not effective. If he is restored again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly

¹ I.e. on being re-ordained, he is to take up his period of probation again where he left it off, so as to complete the number of nights for which probation was originally granted him. Probation is “not broken”, another meaning of *rūhati*.

granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, he must do probation for (any portion of time) remaining.

Kd.13.27.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning leaves the Order. Monks, the sending back to the beginning is not effective for one who leaves the Order. If he is ordained again, the earlier granting of the probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, that monk must be sent back to the beginning.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves to be sent back to the beginning becomes a novice ... becomes mad ... (as in Kd.13.27.1) ... is suspended for not giving up a wrong view. Monks, the sending back to the beginning of one who is suspended is not effective. If he is restored again, the earlier granting of the probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, that monk must be sent back to the beginning.

BD.5.81

Kd.13.27.3

This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) leaves the Order. Monks, the imposing of *mānatta* (discipline) on one who leaves the Order is not effective. If he is ordained again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly-granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) becomes a novice ... becomes mad ... is suspended for not giving up a wrong view. Monks, the imposing of *mānatta* (discipline) on one who is suspended is not effective. If he is restored again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk.

Kd.13.27.4

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) leaves the Order ... is suspended for not giving up a wrong view. Monks, the undergoing of *mānatta* (discipline) for one who is suspended is not effective. If he is restored again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, whatever *mānatta* (discipline) is imposed is properly imposed, whatever *mānatta* (discipline) is

undergone is undergone thoroughly, it must be undergone for (any portion of time) remaining.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves rehabilitation leaves the Order ... is suspended for not giving up a wrong view. Monks, rehabilitation of one who is suspended is not effective. If he is restored again, the earlier granting of probation is just as it was for him: whatever probation is granted is properly granted, whoever does probation does probation thoroughly, whatever *mānatta* (discipline) is imposed is properly imposed, whatever *mānatta* (discipline) is undergone is undergone thoroughly, that monk may be rehabilitated.

Kd.13.27.5

Vin.2.62

*Concluded are the Forty Cases.*¹

THIRTY-SIX CASES

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, those not concealed not being many.² That monk should be sent back to the beginning. This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, those concealed not being many. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account of the earliest offence of the offences thus concealed.

Kd.13.28.1
BD.5.82

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, those concealed as well as those not concealed not being many. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account of the earliest offence of the offences thus concealed.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, those not concealed being many ... those concealed being many ... those concealed as well

¹ There are eight possibilities (leaving the Order down to the three reasons for being suspended) under each of the five headings (doing probation, deserving to be sent back to the beginning, deserving *mānatta*, undergoing *mānatta*, deserving rehabilitation). ² *parimāṇā*, but the meaning is not at all clear. See also below: [Vin.5.333](#).

as those not concealed being many ... those not concealed not being many as well as being many ... those concealed not being many as well as being many ... those concealed as well as those not concealed not being many as well as being many. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account of the earliest offence of the offences thus concealed.

Kd.13.28.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk who deserves *mānatta* (discipline) ... who is undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... who deserves rehabilitation meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, those not concealed not being many ... those concealed as well as those not concealed not being many and being many. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account of the earliest offence of the offences thus concealed.

Concluded are the Thirty-six Cases

ONE HUNDRED ON MĀNATTA

Kd.13.29.1

BD.5.83

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, leaves the Order not having concealed them. He, being ordained again, does not conceal those offences. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed upon that monk.

Vin.2.63

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, leaves the Order not having concealed them. He, on being ordained again, conceals those offences. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus later concealed.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen ... leaves the Order having concealed them. He, on being ordained again, does not conceal those offences. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier concealed.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen ... leaves the Order, having concealed them. He, on being ordained again, conceals those

offences. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

Kd.13.29.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. His offences are both concealed and not concealed. He, having left the Order, on being ordained again, does not afterwards conceal those offences which formerly he concealed, afterwards he conceals those offences which formerly he did not conceal. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, does not afterwards conceal those offences which formerly he concealed, does not¹ afterwards conceal those offences which formerly he did not conceal. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

BD.5.84

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he concealed, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he did not conceal. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

Kd.13.29.3

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. He knows some to be offences, he does not know others to be offences. The offences which he knows to be offences he conceals, those offences which he does not know to be offences he does not conceal. He, having left the Order, on being ordained again, conceals those offences which earlier he had known, does not conceal those offences which later he had known, does not conceal those offences which earlier he had not known, does not conceal those offences which later he had known. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier concealed.

Vin.2.64

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, does not conceal those offences, (although) knowing them, which formerly, knowing them he con-

¹ See *Vinaya Texts* ii.423, n.2, on the right way of making up the hundred cases mentioned at the end of [Kd.13.30](#).

cealed, afterwards conceals those offences, knowing them, which formerly, not knowing them, he did not conceal. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, afterwards conceals those offences, knowing them, which formerly, knowing them he concealed, afterwards does not conceal those offences, knowing them, which formerly he did not conceal, not knowing them. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on this monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

“This is a case, monks ... on being ordained again, afterwards conceals those offences, knowing them, which formerly, knowing them, he concealed; afterwards conceals those offences, knowing them, which formerly, not knowing them, he did not conceal. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on that monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier and later concealed.

Kd.13.29.4
BD.5.85

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. He remembers some to be offences ... (= **Kd.13.29.3**. *Instead of* he knows, knowing, not knowing, *read* he remembers, remembering, not remembering) ... thus earlier and later concealed.

Kd.13.29.5

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. He is in no doubt as to some of the offences, he is in doubt as to others of the offences ... thus earlier and later concealed.

Kd.13.30.1

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, becomes a novice ... becomes mad ... becomes unhinged in mind ... this should be explained in detail as below.¹

He comes to be in pain. His offences are concealed as well as unconcealed. He knows that some are offences, he does not know that others are offences. He remembers that some are offences, he does not remember that others are offences. He is in no doubt that some are offences, he is in doubt as to whether others are offences. He conceals those offences about which he is in no doubt, he does not conceal those offences about which he is in doubt.

Vin.2.65

¹ I.e. in **Kd.13.27**, “below” corresponds to our “above” in such contexts, as it refers to the palm-leaf manuscripts

He comes to be in pain. Having come to be again not in pain, those offences which formerly he concealed because he was in no doubt, he afterwards does not conceal although he is in no doubt; those offences which formerly he did not conceal, being in doubt, he afterwards does not conceal although he is in doubt, those offences which formerly he concealed, being in no doubt, he afterwards does not conceal, being in no doubt, those offences which formerly he did not conceal, being in doubt, he afterwards conceals, not being in doubt, those offences which formerly he concealed, being in no doubt, he afterwards conceals, being in no doubt, those offences which formerly he did not conceal, being in doubt, he afterwards does not conceal, being in no doubt, those offences which formerly he concealed, being in no doubt, he afterwards conceals, being in no doubt, those offences which formerly he did not conceal, being in doubt, he afterwards conceals, being in no doubt. Monks, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on this monk, having granted him probation on account of the set of offences thus earlier as well as later concealed.”

BD.5.86

The Hundred on Mānatta

**FOUR HUNDRED ON CONCURRENT PROBATION AND
BEGINNING**

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, having fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, leaves the Order not having concealed them. On being ordained again, he does not conceal these offences. That monk should be sent back to the beginning.

“This is a case, monks ... not having concealed them. On being ordained again, he conceals these offences. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account on the earlier offences among the offences thus concealed.

“This is a case, monks ... having concealed them. On being ordained again, he does not conceal these offences. That monk should be sent back to the beginning ... thus concealed.

“This is a case, monks, ... having concealed them. On being ordained again, he conceals these offences. That monk should be sent back to the beginning ... thus concealed.

Kd.13.31.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. His offences are both concealed and not concealed. Having left the Order, he, on being ordained again, does not afterwards conceal those offences which formerly he concealed, does not afterwards conceal those offences which formerly he did not conceal. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation should be granted him on account of the earlier offences of the offences thus concealed.

Vin.2.66

“This is a case, monks ... His offences are both concealed and not concealed. Having left the Order, he, on being ordained again, does not afterwards conceal those offences which formerly be concealed, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he did not conceal. That monk should be sent back to the beginning ... thus concealed.

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he concealed, afterwards does not conceal those offences which formerly he did not conceal. That monk should be sent back to the beginning ... thus concealed.

BD.5.87

“This is a case, monks, ... on being ordained again, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he concealed, afterwards conceals those offences which formerly he did not conceal. That monk should be sent back to the beginning ... thus concealed.

Kd.13.31.3

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, while doing probation, falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order. He knows some are offences, he does not know that others are offences ... (=Kd.13.29.3, Kd.13.29.4, Kd.13.30. The penalty is always the same: that monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation granted him on account of the earlier offences of the offences thus concealed.) ...

Kd.13.32.1

“This is a case, monks, where a monk deserving *mānatta* (discipline) ... undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) ... deserving rehabilitation, having meantime fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, leaves the Order, not having concealed them ... The one deserving *mānatta*

(discipline) and the one undergoing *mānatta* (discipline) and the one deserving rehabilitation should be explained in detail similarly to the one doing probation.¹

“This is a case, monks, where a monk deserving rehabilitation, having meantime fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, and not having concealed them, becomes a novice ... becomes mad ... becomes unhinged in mind ... becomes afflicted by pain. His offences are both concealed and not concealed ... (=Kd.13.30) ... he afterwards conceals, being in no doubt. That monk should be sent back to the beginning and concurrent probation granted him on account of the earlier offences of the offences thus concealed.

Vin.2.67

THE PORTION WITH EIGHTEEN CASES MEASURED, ETC.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk having fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not having concealed not many, not having concealed many, not having concealed one kind, not having concealed different kinds, not having concealed those of a like division,² not having concealed those of the other division,³ not having concealed

Kd.13.33.1

BD.5.88

¹ Vin.5.331. ² *sabhāga* ... *visabhāga*, possibly referring to the two divisions of offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; that where offences are offences at once, and that where offences become so after (unsuccessful) admonition up to the third time. ³ *sabhāga* ... *visabhāga*, possibly referring to the two divisions of offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order; that where offences are offences at once, and that where offences become so after (unsuccessful) admonition up to the third time.

separate ones,¹ not having concealed connected ones,² leaves the Order.³

THE PORTION WITH ELEVEN CASES ON TWO MONKS

Kd.13.34.1

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. They come to be of the opinion that the offence is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order. One conceals it, the other does not conceal it. Whoever conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing, and having granted him probation for as long as it was concealed, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on both.

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. They are doubtful whether the offence is one entailing a formal meeting of the Order. One conceals it ... (*as above*) ... should be imposed on both.

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. In regard to this offence they are of the opinion that it is a mixed offence.⁴ One conceals it ... (*as above*) ... should be imposed on both.

“Two monks come to have fallen into a mixed offence. In regard to this mixed offence they are of the opinion that it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. One conceals it ... should be imposed on both.

BD.5.89

“Two monks come to have fallen into a mixed offence. In regard to that mixed offence they are of the opinion that it is a mixed offence. One conceals it ... should be imposed on both.

¹ *vavatthitā*. ² *sambhinnā*. For example, there are no other Formal Meetings similar to Bu-Ss.1, Bu-Ss.5, Bu-Ss.12, or Bu-Ss.13. These, therefore, are “separate”. Formal Meetings Bu-Ss.2, Bu-Ss.3, Bu-Ss.4 are “connected” because they deal with the same subject matter and to some extent use the same wording; the same is also true of Formal Meetings Bu-Ss.6, Bu-Ss.7 and Bu-Ss.8; Bu-Ss.9, Bu-Ss.10 and Bu-Ss.11. Vin-a.1191 says that *vavatthitā* and *sambhinnā* are *pariyāyavacana* of *sabhāga* and *visabhāga*. ³ This is the whole of this paragraph as it stands. See note at *Vinaya Texts* ii.431 which says that the conclusion should be supplied as in Kd.13.28.1, with the exception that the penalty in each case is “a probation corresponding in length to the period which has elapsed since the first of those offences which the re-ordained Bhikkhu has concealed. The details are only worked out in Kd.13.28.1, of the first of the several pairs here enumerated, and are intended to be supplied here for each of the other pairs in a similar way. All the pairs recur in Chapters Kd.13.35, Kd.13.36.”

⁴ *missaka*, which Vin-a.1191 says means “mixed with a grave offence and so on.”

“Two monks come to have fallen into a slighter offence.¹ In regard to this slighter offence they are of the opinion that it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. One conceals it, the other does not conceal it. Whoever conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing and both should be dealt with according to the rule.²

“Two monks come to have fallen into a slighter offence. In regard to this slighter offence they are of the opinion that it is a slighter offence. One conceals it ... according to the rule.

Kd.13.34.2

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. In regard to this offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order they are of the opinion that it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. It occurs to one, ‘I will tell about it,’ it occurs to the other, ‘I will not tell about it’. He conceals it during the first watch and he conceals it during the second watch and he conceals it during the third watch. If the offence is (still) concealed after the sun has risen, whoever conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing, and having granted him probation for as long as it was concealed, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on both.

Vin.2.68

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. In regard to this offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order they are of the opinion that it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. They go away, thinking, ‘We will tell about it.’ On the way, backsliding arises in one and he thinks, ‘I will not tell about it.’³ He conceals it during the first watch and ... he conceals it during the third watch. If the offence is (still) concealed after the sun has risen, ... should be imposed on both.

“Two monks ... They become mad, and later they, having become sane again, one conceals it the other does not conceal it. Whoever conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing and, having granted him probation for as long as it was concealed, *mānatta* (discipline) should

BD.5.90

¹ *suddhaka*. Vin-a.1191 says the group of lighter offences, not those entailing a formal meeting of the Order. ² I.e. the rule for whatever offence it was, for as it was not an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, probation and *mānatta* would not enter into the penalty. ³ *makkhadhamma*, hypocrisy. Perhaps it here means that he deceived the other monk.

be imposed on both.

“Two monks come to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. As the Pātimokkha is being recited, these speak thus: ‘Only now do we understand that the rule, as is said, is handed down in a clause, contained in a clause (and) comes up for recitation every half-month.’¹ In regard to that offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order they are of the opinion that it is an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order. One conceals it, the other does not conceal it. Whoever conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing, and having granted him probation for as long as it was concealed, *mānatta* (discipline) should be imposed on both.

NINE CASES ON IMPURE BEGINNING

Kd.13.35.1

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: many and not many and of one kind and of different kinds and of a like division and of a different division and separate and connected.² He asks the Order for concurrent probation on account of these offences. The Order grants him concurrent probation on account of these offences. While he is doing probation he falls into several intervening offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, many, not concealed. On account of the intervening offences, he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of the intervening offences the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand, (but) it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) not by rule, it rehabilitates him not by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Vin.2.69

BD.5.91

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many and many and of one kind and of different kinds and of a like division and of a different division and separate ones and connected ones. He asks the Order for concurrent probation on account of these offences. The Order grants him concurrent probation on account of these offences. While he is under probation, he meantime falls

¹ See the “rule” in Bu-Pc.73 (Vin.4.144). ² As in Vin.5.333. The details of the first pair, not many and many, are worked out in relation to “concealed, not concealed” at Vin.5.328.

into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many, concealed ... On account of the offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand. It grants concurrent probation by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) not by rule, it rehabilitates him not by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Kd.13.35.2

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many ... and connected ones. He asks the Order ... While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: many, not concealed ... many, concealed ... many, concealed and not concealed I ... not many and many, not concealed. On account of the offences (fallen into) meantime, he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of the offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand. It grants concurrent probation by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) not by rule, it rehabilitates him not by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk ... and connected ones. He asks the Order for concurrent probation on account of these offences. The Order grants him concurrent probation on account of these offences. While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many and many and concealed. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand. It grants him concurrent probation by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) not by rule, it rehabilitates him not by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Vin.2.70

“This is a case, monks, ... and connected ones. On account of these offences, he asks the Order for concurrent probation. On account of these offences, the Order grants him concurrent probation. While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many and many and concealed and not concealed. On account of

BD.5.92

these offences (fallen into) meantime, he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand. It grants concurrent probation by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) not by rule, it rehabilitates him not by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Told are the Nine Cases where (a Monk on being sent back to) the Beginning is Not Pure

SECOND SET OF NINE CASES

Kd.13.36.1

“This is a case, monks, where a monk falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many and many ... and separate ones and connected ones. On account of these offences he asks the Order for concurrent probation. On account of these offences, the Order grants him concurrent probation. While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many, not concealed. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, it rehabilitates him by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

“This is a case, monks, ... While he is under probation he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many and concealed and not concealed ... not many, concealed ... On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand, it grants concurrent probation not by rule, imposes *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, it rehabilitates him by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

BD.5.93

Kd.13.36.2

“This is a case, monks, ... While he is under probation he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order: not many,

concealed. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand. It grants him concurrent probation not by rule. He, thinking: 'I am under probation', meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many, concealed. He, arrived at that stage, remembers among the earlier offences offences (fallen into) meantime, he remembers among the subsequent offence's offences (fallen into) meantime. It occurs to him, 'Now, I have fallen into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many and many ... and separate ones and connected ones. On account of these offences I asked the Order for concurrent probation. On account of these offences the Order granted me concurrent probation. While I was under probation, I meantime fell into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many, concealed. So on account of these offences (fallen into) meantime, I asked the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sent me back to the beginning by a (formal) act that was not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand. It granted concurrent probation not by rule. Then I, thinking 'I am under probation,' meantime fell into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many, concealed. Then I, arrived at this stage, remembered among the earlier offences offences fallen into meantime, I remembered among the subsequent offences offences fallen into meantime. Suppose that I, on account of those offences among the earlier offences, and on account of those offences among the subsequent offences, should ask the Order for sending back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand, for concurrent probation by rule, for *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, for rehabilitation by rule?' He asks the Order ... The Order, on account of those offences among the earlier offences and on account of those offences among the subsequent offences, sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is legally valid, irreversible, fit to stand, it grants concurrent probation by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, it rehabilitates him by rule. Monks, that monk is pure in regard to those offences.

Vin.2.71

BD.5.94

“This is a case, monks, ... (*This case is identical with the preceding, but instead of concealed read concealed and not concealed*) ...

Kd.13.36.3

“This is a case, monks ... While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, many, not concealed, many, concealed ... not many and many, not concealed. On account of the offences (fallen into) meantime he asks the Order for sending back to the beginning. On account of the offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand. It imposes *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, rehabilitates by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Vin.2.72

THIRD SET OF NINE CASES

“This is a case, monks, ... While he is under probation, he meantime falls into several offences entailing a formal meeting of the Order, not many and many, and concealed ... not many and many and concealed and not concealed ... On account of these offences (fallen into) meantime, the Order sends him back to the beginning by a (formal) act that is not legally valid, reversible, not fit to stand, it grants him concurrent probation not by rule, it imposes *mānatta* (discipline) by rule, it rehabilitates him by rule. Monks, that monk is not pure in regard to those offences.

Kd.13.36.4

“This is a case, monks ... (*The two cases given here are identical with those specified in Kd.13.36.2; instead of not many read many*) ... Monks, that monk is pure in regard to those offences.”

Told is the Third Section: that on Accumulation (of Offences)

THIS IS ITS KEY

Not concealed, and one day, two days, three days, four days and five days, and for a fortnight, ten days¹: the Great Sage speaks of an offence, / And slighter ones, leaving the Order, about ‘not many’,² two monks there agree,

BD.5.95

¹ *dasānam* should perhaps read *dasāha*, or *dasannam*. The reference is probably to Kd.13.21.1: ten offences concealed for ten days. ² Reading with Sinhalese edition *parimāṇāsa ca* instead of Oldenberg’s *parimāṇamukhaṇ*, for *-mukhaṇ* is hard to account for.

two are doubtful, are of the opinion that it is a mixed offence, /
 They are of the opinion that it is a heavier offence when it is a slighter one,¹
 likewise of the opinion that it is a slighter one.² /
 One conceals, and then about backsliding,³
 and confessing for one who was mad,
 (sending back) to the beginning, he is pure.⁴ /
 The recitation⁵ is for the maintenance of true *dhmma*
 among the teachers of the Vibhajja doctrines,⁶
 and who, dwellers in the Mahāvihāra,⁷ illuminate Tambapaṇṇidīpa.⁸

¹ Reading with Sinhalese edition *suddhake garukadiṭṭhino*, and referring to the end of *Kd.13.34.1* where two monks think that they have fallen into a *Saṅghādisesa* offence when really it is a slighter one. ² Reading should probably be *suddhakadiṭṭhino* instead of *suddhadiṭṭhino* of Oldenberg's text, and *suddadiṭṭhi* of Sinhalese edition. ³ As Oldenberg suggests (*Vin.2.312*) the *pakkhamitena ca* should perhaps read *makkhadhammena* as in *Kd.13.34.2*. The Sinhalese edition reads *pakkami tena ca*. ⁴ Reading with Sinhalese edition *mūlāya paṭivissuddhako* (for *mūlāya paṭikassati + visuddhako*) instead of Oldenberg's *mūlā, pamarasa visuddhato*. On the other hand, there seem to be fifteen cases of sending back to the beginning made up of nine to which reference is made at the end of *Kd.13.35*, with six in *Kd.13.36*. ⁵ *vācanā*. ⁶ *vibhajjapadānaṃ*, which Oldenberg suggests (*Vin.2.312*) should read *vibhajjavādānaṃ*. Sinhalese edition reads *vibhajjāvādānaṃ*. ⁷ The great monastery at Anurādhapura, for many centuries the chief seat of Buddhism in Ceylon. ⁸ Tambapaṇṇidīpa was a district in Ceylon, with Anurādhapura as its centre. According to *SN-a.ii.111*, it was a hundred yojanas in extent, but *Vb-a.444* says it was three hundred yojanas in extent. See also *Vin-a.i.102* where Mahinda tells Tissa that although the *sāsana* is established in Tambapaṇṇidīpa, it will not take root until a boy, born in Tambapaṇṇidīpa of parents belonging there, goes forth there, learns the Vinaya there, and recites it there. Tambapaṇṇidīpa also came to be a name for the whole of the Island of Ceylon. It seems strange to insert references to Anurādhapura and Ceylon here, as though this were, even if not an ending, yet referring to the time when the *sāsana* had reached this Island.

14. SETTLEMENTS (*SAMATHA*)

VERDICT IN THE PRESENCE OF

Vin.2.73
Kd.14.1.1
BD.5.96

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks carried out (formal) acts of censure and guidance and banishment and reconciliation and suspension against monks who were not present. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can this group of six monks carry out (formal) acts of censure ... and suspension against monks who are not present?" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that these monks carried out (formal) acts of censure ... and suspension against monks who were not present?"

"It is true, Lord." The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

"It is not fitting, monks, in these foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not suitable, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can these foolish men carry out (formal) acts of censure ... and suspension against monks who are not present? It is not monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Monks, a (formal) act of censure or guidance or banishment or reconciliation or suspension should not be carried out against monks who are not present. Whoever should carry one out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.14.2.1

"An individual who professes non-*dhamma* makes known to an individual who professes *dhamma*, disposes him favourably, makes him consider,

makes him reconsider, teaches him, teaches him again, saying: ‘This is *dhamma*, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction, choose this, approve of this.’ If this legal question is settled thus, it is settled by what is not rule, by what has the appearance of a verdict in the presence of.¹

Vin.2.74

BD.5.97

“An individual who professes non-*dhamma* makes known to several who profess *dhamma* ... An individual who professes non-*dhamma* makes known to an Order which professes *dhamma* ... Several who profess non-*dhamma* make known to an individual who professes *dhamma* ... Several who profess non-*dhamma* make known to several who profess *dhamma* ... Several who profess non-*dhamma* make known to an Order which professes *dhamma* ... An Order which professes non-*dhamma* makes known to an individual who professes *dhamma* ... An Order which professes non-*dhamma* makes known to several who profess *dhamma* ... An Order which professes non-*dhamma* makes known to an Order which professes *dhamma*, disposes it favourably, makes it consider, makes it reconsider, teaches it, teaches it again, saying: ‘This is *dhamma*, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction, choose this, approve of this.’ If this legal question is settled thus, it is settled by what is not rule, by what has the appearance of a verdict in the presence of.”

Told are the Nine Cases of the Dark Faction

“An individual who professes *dhamma* makes known to an individual who professes non-*dhamma* ... An Order which professes *dhamma* makes known to an Order which professes non-*dhamma* ... If this legal question is settled thus, it is settled by rule, by a verdict in the presence of.”

Kd.14.3.1

Told are the Nine Cases of the Bright Faction

VERDICT BY MEMORY

Kd.14.4.1

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding-place.¹ At that time perfection had been realised by the venerable Dabba the Mallian seven years after his birth. All that should be attained by a disciple had been fully attained by him; for him there was nothing further to be done, no increase to (be added to) that which had been done. Then this reasoning arose in the mind of the venerable Dabba the Mallian as he was meditating in solitude:² "Perfection was realised by me seven years after my birth. All that should be attained by a disciple has been fully attained by me; for me there is nothing further to be done, no increase to (be added to) that which has been done. Now, what service could I render the Order?" Then it occurred to the venerable Dabba the Mallian: "Suppose that I were to assign lodgings to the Order and issue meals?"

BD.5.98

Vin.2.75

Kd.14.4.2

Then the venerable Dabba the Mallian, emerging from his meditation in the evening, approached the Lord, having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting at a respectful distance, the venerable Dabba the Mallian spoke thus to the Lord: "Now, Lord, as I was meditating in solitude, this reasoning arose in my mind: '... What service could I render the Order?' Then, Lord, it occurred to me: 'Suppose I were to assign lodgings to the Order and issue the meals?' I want, Lord, to assign lodgings to the Order and issue meals."

"It is good, it is good, Dabba. Well then, do you, Dabba, assign lodgings to the Order and issue meals."

"Very well, Lord," the venerable Dabba the Mallian answered the Lord in assent.

Kd.14.4.3

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: "Well then, monks, let the Order agree upon Dabba the Mallian as assigner of lodgings and issuer of meals.

¹ *sammukhāvinayaapaṭirūpaka*. On *sammukhāvinaya*., see [Vin.2.93ff.](#), and [BD.3.153, n.2](#) for further references. ² From here to towards the end of [Kd.14.9.1](#) is almost word for word the same as [Vin.3.158–Vin.3.163](#); translated at [BD.1.271–BD.1.281](#). I give the translation again in full here, but I have not repeated the notes, for which readers should refer to the earlier volume. ² The story is given in brief outline at [Thag-a.i.44](#).

And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First, Dabba should be asked; having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon the venerable Dabba the Mallian as assigner of lodgings and issuer of meals. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the venerable Dabba the Mallian as assigner of lodgings and issuer of meals. If the agreement upon the venerable Dabba the Mallian as assigner of lodgings and issuer of meals is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The venerable Dabba the Mallian is agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings and issuer of meals. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

BD.5.99

Kd.14.4.4

And the venerable Dabba the Mallian, (thus) agreed upon, assigned lodgings in the same place for those monks who belonged to the same company. For those monks who knew the Suttantas he assigned lodgings in the same place, thinking: “These will be able to chant over the Suttantas to one another.” For those monks who were expert in discipline he assigned lodgings in the same place, thinking: “They will decide upon discipline together.” For those monks who were talkers on *dhamma* he assigned lodgings in the same place, thinking: “They will discuss *dhamma* with one another.” For those monks who were musers he assigned lodgings in the same place, thinking: “They will not disturb one another.” For those monks who were talkers on inferior matters and who were athletic he assigned lodgings at the same place, thinking: “These reverend ones will live according to their pleasure.” For those monks who came in late at night, he, having attained the condition of heat, assigned lodgings by this light. So much so, that the monks came in late at night on purpose, thinking: “We will see a wonder of the psychic potency of the venerable Dabba the Mallian.” And these, having approached the venerable Dabba the Mallian, spoke thus: “Reverend Dabba, assign us lodgings.” The venerable Dabba the Mallian spoke thus to them; “Where do your reverences desire them? Where shall I assign them?” These (monks) would quote a distant place on purpose, saying:

Vin.2.76

“Reverend Dabba, assign us lodgings on the Vultures’ Peak; your reverence, assign us lodgings on the Robber’s Cliff; your reverence, assign

us lodgings on the slopes of Isigili Hill on the Black Rock; your reverence, assign us lodgings on the slopes of Vebhāra at Sattapaṇṇi Cave; your reverence, assign us lodgings in Sītā's Wood on the slopes of the Snake Pool; your reverence, assign us lodgings at the Gomaṭa Glen; your reverence, assign us lodgings at the Tinduka Glen; your reverence, assign us lodgings at the Tapodā Glen; your reverence, assign us lodgings at the Tapodā Park; your reverence, assign us lodgings at Jīvaka's Mango Grove; your reverence, assign us lodgings at Maddakucchi in the deer-park.”

The venerable Dabba the Mallian, having attained the condition of heat, went in front of these (monks) with his finger glowing, and they by this light went behind the venerable Dabba the Mallian. The venerable Dabba the Mallian assigned them lodgings thus: “This is the couch, this the chair, this the mattress, this the squatting mat, this a privy, that a privy, this the drinking water, this the water for washing, this the staff, this is (the form of) the Order's agreement, this is the time it should be entered upon, this the time it should be departed from.” The venerable Dabba the Mallian, having assigned lodgings to these, went back again to the Bamboo Grove.

Kd.14.4.5

Now at that time monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka were newly ordained and of little merit; they obtained whatever inferior lodgings belonged to the Order and inferior meals. At that time people in Rājagaha wanted to give the monks who were elders almsfood¹ having a specially good seasoning, and ghee and oil and dainties. But to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka they gave sufficient ordinary food, broken rice accompanied by sour gruel.² These, on returning from alms-gathering after their meal, asked the monks who were elders: “What did you, your reverences, get at the refectory? What did you?”

Vin.2.77

Some elders spoke thus: “There was ghee for us, your reverences, there was oil for us, there were dainties for us.”

But the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka spoke thus: “There was nothing for us, your reverences, except sufficient ordinary food, broken rice accompanied by sour gruel.”

¹ Almsfood, *piṇḍapāta*, is omitted at [Vin.2.77](#) above, but occurs at [Vin.3.160](#). ² At [AN.i.145](#) called food given to servants.

Kd.14.4.6

Now at that time a householder who had nice food gave the Order in continuous food supply meals consisting of four ingredients.¹ He, with his wife and children, attended and served in the refectory. They offered boiled rice to some (monks), they offered curry to others, they offered oil to others, they offered dainties to others. Now at that time a meal given by the householder who had nice food was apportioned for the following day to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka. Then the householder who had nice food went to the monastery on some business or other and approached the venerable Dabba the Mallian; having approached, having greeted the venerable Dabba the Mallian, he sat down at a respectful distance. As the householder who had nice food was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Dabba the Mallian delighted, rejoiced, roused, gladdened him with talk on *dhamma*. Then when the householder who had nice food had been delighted ... gladdened by the venerable Dabba the Mallian with talk on *dhamma*, he spoke thus to the venerable Dabba the Mallian: "For whom, honoured sir, is the meal apportioned for tomorrow in my house?"

"Householder, the meal apportioned in your house for tomorrow is for monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka."

Then the householder who had nice food was sorry and said: "Why should these depraved monks enjoy themselves in my house?" And having gone to his house he enjoined a slave-woman, saying: "Having prepared a seat in the porch for those who come to eat Tomorrow, serve them with broken rice accompanied by sour gruel."

"Very well, master," the woman-slave answered to the householder who had nice food, in assent.

Kd.14.4.7

Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka said to one another: "Yesterday, your reverences, a meal was apportioned to us by the householder who has nice food. Tomorrow the householder who has nice food attending with his wife and children, will serve us. They will offer boiled rice to some, they will offer curry to others, they will offer oil to

Vin.2.78

¹ "A meal for four monks" at [BD.1.276](#) should be corrected to the above rendering.

others, they will offer dainties to others.” These, because of their happiness, did not sleep that night as much as expected.

BD.5.102

Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, dressing in the morning and taking their bowls and robes, approached the dwelling of the householder who had nice food. That woman-slave saw the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka coming from afar; seeing them, having prepared a seat in the porch, she said to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “Sit down, honoured sirs.” Then it occurred to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “But undoubtedly the food will not be ready as we are made to sit in the porch.” Then the woman-slave came up with the broken rice accompanied by sour gruel. “Eat, honoured sirs,” she said.

“But, sister, we are those who enjoy a continuous supply of food.”

“I know that the masters enjoy a continuous supply of food. But only yesterday I was enjoined by the householder: ‘Having prepared a seat in the porch for those who come for a meal Tomorrow, serve them with broken rice accompanied by sour gruel’. Eat, honoured sirs,” she said.

Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka thought: “Yesterday, your reverences, the householder who has nice food went to Dabba the Mallian in the monastery. Doubtless, Dabba the Mallian has set the householder at variance with us.” These (monks), on account of their distress, did not eat as much as expected.

Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, returning from alms-gathering after the meal, having arrived at the monastery, having put away their bowls and robes, sat down outside the gateway of the monastery, squatting against their outer cloaks, silent, abashed, their shoulders bent, their heads lowered, brooding, speechless.

Kd.14.4.8

Then the nun Mettiyā approached the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka; having approached, she spoke thus to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “I salute you, masters.” When she had spoken thus, the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond. A second time ... A third time the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond.

“Do I offend against the masters? Why do the masters not respond to me?” she said.

“It is because you, sister, neglected us when we were being got into difficulties by Dabba the Mallian.”

“What can I do, masters?” she said.

“If you would like, sister, this very day you could make the Lord expel Dabba the Mallian.”

“What can I do, masters? How am I able to do that?”

“You come, sister, approach the Lord; having approached, say to the Lord: ‘Now, Lord, it is not proper, it is not becoming that this quarter which should be without fear, secure, without danger, is the very quarter which is full of fear, insecure, full of danger. Where there was a calm, now there is a gale. It seems the very water is blazing. I have been assaulted by master Dabba the Mallian.’”

“Very well, masters,” and the nun Mettiyā having answered the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the nun Mettiya spoke thus to the Lord: “Now, Lord, it is not proper ... I have been assaulted by master Dabba the Mallian.”

Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Dabba the Mallian, saying:

“Do you, Dabba, remember doing as this nun says?”

“Lord, the Lord knows in regard to me.” And a second time ... And a third time ... “Lord, the Lord knows in regard to me.”

“Dabba, the Dabbas do not give evasive answers like that.¹ If what was done was done by you, say so; if it was not done (by you), say it was not.”

“Since I, Lord, was born, I cannot call to mind ever indulging in sexual intercourse even in a dream, much less so when I was awake.”

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Well then, monks, expel the nun Mettiyā, and take these monks to task.” Having spoken thus, the

¹ Quoted Thag-a.1.45, which explains *dabbo* as *drabyo*, *bhabbo* (with a number of variant readings).

BD.5.103

Vin.2.79

Kd.14.4.9

Lord, rising from his seat, entered a dwelling-place. Then these monks expelled the nun Mettiyā. Then the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka spoke thus to these monks: “Your reverences, do not expel the nun Mettiyā; in no way has she offended; she was urged on by us because we were angry, displeased and wanted him out of the way.”

BD.5.104

“But are not you, your reverences, defaming the venerable Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit?”¹

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defame the venerable Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defamed Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.14.4.10

“Well then, monks, let the Order give a verdict of innocence² to Dabba the Mallian who has remembered fully.³ And thus, monks, should it be given: Monks, Dabba the Mallian, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘Honoured sirs, these monks, followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka, defamed me with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. But I, honoured sirs, having remembered fully, ask the Order for a verdict of innocence’. And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for: ‘Honoured sirs, these monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defamed me with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. So I, honoured sirs, having remembered fully, for a third time ask the Order for a verdict of

Vin.2.80

¹ At **Bu-Ss.8.1.9** he is defamed with an unfounded charge involving defeat. The two versions proceed differently after the end of this paragraph. ² *sativinaya*. See **BD.3.153, n.3**. ³ See *Vinaya Texts* iii.16, n.1 on *sativepullapatta*. This means arrived at (or attained to) fullness of memory—thus one whose conscience is quite clean, as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.16. Cf. below, **Kd.14.4.27**.

innocence'. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defamed the venerable Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. The venerable Dabba the Mallian, having remembered fully, is asking the Order for a verdict of innocence. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may give the venerable Dabba the Mallian, who has remembered fully, a verdict of innocence. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These monks who are followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka ... is asking the Order for a verdict of innocence. The Order is giving the venerable Dabba the Mallian, who has remembered fully, a verdict of innocence. If the giving of a verdict of innocence to the venerable Dabba the Mallian, who has remembered fully, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... A verdict of innocence is given by the Order to the venerable Dabba the Mallian, who has remembered fully. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this'.

BD.5.105

Kd.14.4.11

“Monks, there are these five legally valid properties in giving a verdict of innocence: if the monk is pure and without offences; and if they reproach him; and if he asks; if the Order gives him a verdict of innocence; if it is by rule, the assembly being complete. These, monks, are the five legally valid properties in giving a verdict of innocence.”

VERDICT BY FORMER MADNESS

Now at that time the monk Gagga¹ was mad, out of his mind,² and while he was mad, out of his mind he perpetrated much and spoke in a way³ that was not worthy of a recluse. Monks reproved the monk Gagga because of offences done (by him) while he was mad, out of his mind, saying: “Does

Kd.14.5.1

¹ Typifying a mad monk, also at [Vin.1.123](#). ² *cittavipariyāsakata*; cf. *cetaso vipariyāsa* at MN.ii.248; *vipariyādikata citta* at Thag.184, and *vipariyattha citta* at Ja.v.372. For this whole passage cf. MN.ii.248. ³ *bhāsitarikanta*. See *Pali-English Dictionary*, under *parikanta*. It says this passage is evidently faulty.

Vin.2.81
BD.5.106

the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?" He spoke thus: "I, your reverences, was mad, out of my mind; while I was mad, out of my mind, much was perpetrated and spoken by me that was not worthy of a recluse. I do not remember that. That was done by me while I was insane."¹ Although being spoken to thus by him, they still reproved him, saying: "Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?" Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these monks reprove the monk Gagga because of offences done (by him) when he was mad, out of his mind, saying: 'Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?' and he spoke thus: 'I, your reverences, was mad, out of my mind; while I was mad, out of my mind, much was perpetrated and spoken by me that was not worthy of a recluse. I do not remember that. That was done by me while I was insane'. And although being spoken to by him thus, they still reproved him, saying: 'Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?'" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: "Is it true, as is said, monks ...?"

"It is true, Lord." Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

"Well then, monks, let the Order give a verdict of past insanity² to the monk Gagga who is no longer insane.

Kd.14.5.2

"And thus, monks, should it be given: Monks, that monk Gagga, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having raised his joined palms in salutation, should speak thus to it: 'I, honoured sirs, was mad, out of my mind; while I was mad, out of my mind, I perpetrated much and spoke in a way that was not worthy of a recluse. Monks reproved me because of offences done (by me) while I was mad, out of my mind, saying: "Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?" So I spoke thus: 'I, your reverences, was mad, out of my mind. While I was mad, out of my mind, much was perpetrated and spoken (by me) that was not worthy of a recluse. I do not remember that. That was done by me while I was insane'. And even although they were

¹ *mūḷha*, astray, erring. ² *amūḷhavinaya*. Cf. Vin.4.207 (BD.3.153, n.4).

spoken to thus by me, they still reproved me, saying: "Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?" So I, honoured sirs, no longer insane, am asking the Order for a verdict of past insanity,' And a second time it should be asked for ... And a third time it should be asked for, saying: 'I, honoured sirs, was mad ... even a third time am I asking the Order for a verdict of past insanity'. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Gagga was mad, out of his mind. While he was mad, out of his mind, much was perpetrated and spoken (by him) that was not worthy of a recluse. Monks reproved the monk Gagga for offences done (by him) while he was mad, out of his mind, saying: "Does the venerable one remember ...?" He spoke thus: "I, honoured sirs, do not remember ... This was done by me while I was insane." Even on being spoken to by him thus, they still reproved him, saying: "Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like thus?" He, no longer insane, is asking the Order for a verdict of past insanity. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may give the monk Gagga, who is no longer insane, a verdict of past insanity. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Gagga ... is asking the Order for a verdict of past insanity. If the giving of a verdict of past insanity to the monk Gagga who is no longer insane is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. A verdict of past insanity is given by the Order to the monk Gagga who is no longer insane. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.'

BD.5.107

Vin.2.82

"Monks, there are these three not legally valid properties in giving a verdict of past insanity, three that are legally valid. What are the three properties that are not legally valid in giving a verdict of past insanity? This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence. The Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: 'Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?' If he, although remembering, speaks thus: 'I do not, your reverences, remember having fallen into an offence like that,' and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is not legally valid.

Kd.14.6.1

BD.5.108

“This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence ... ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?’ If he, although remembering, speaks thus: ‘I, your reverences, remember it as though from a dream,’ and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is not legally valid.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk has fallen into an offence ... ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?’ If he, although not mad, pretends to be mad, saying: ‘I act thus, do you also act thus, this is allowable for me, and it is also allowable for you,’ and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is not legally valid. These three properties in giving a verdict of past insanity are not legally valid.

Kd.14.6.2

“What are the three properties in giving a verdict of past insanity that are legally valid? This is a case, monks, where a monk is mad, out of his mind. While he is mad, out of his mind, he perpetrates much and speaks in a way that is not worthy of a recluse. An Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this? If he, not remembering, speaks thus: ‘I do not, your reverences, remember having fallen into an offence like that,’ and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is legally valid.

Vin.2.83

“This is a case, monks, where a monk is mad, ... ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?’ If he, not remembering, speaks thus: ‘I, your reverences, remember as though from a dream,’ and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is legally valid.

“This is a case, monks, where a monk is mad ... ‘Does the venerable one remembers having fallen into an offence like this? If he is mad and pretends to be mad and says, ‘I act thus, do you also act thus, this is allowable for me, it is also allowable for you,’ and if the Order gives him a verdict of past insanity, the giving of the verdict of past insanity is legally valid. These three properties in giving a verdict of past insanity are legally valid.”

BD.5.109

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Now at that time the group of six monks carried out (formal) acts of censure and guidance and banishment and reconciliation and suspension against monks without their acknowledgement.¹ Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks carry out (formal) acts of censure and ... suspension against monks without their acknowledgement?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true as is said, monks ...?”

Kd.14.7.1

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a (formal) act of censure or of guidance or of banishment or of reconciliation or of suspension should not be carried out against a monk without his acknowledgement. Whoever should (so) carry (one) out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.14.8.1

“Monks, the carrying out (of a formal act) on the acknowledgement of (a monk) is not legally valid thus, it is legally valid thus. And how, monks, is the carrying out on the acknowledgement not legally valid? A monk comes to have fallen into an offence involving defeat. The Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘The venerable one has fallen into an offence involving defeat.’ If he speaks thus: ‘I have not, your reverences, fallen into an offence involving defeat, I have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is not legally valid.

“A monk comes to have fallen into an offence involving defeat ... If he speaks thus: ‘I have not, your reverences, fallen into an offence involving defeat, I have fallen into a grave offence, into an offence involving expiation, into an offence which ought to be confessed, into an offence of wrong-doing, into an offence of wrong speech,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence of wrong speech, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is not legally valid.

BD.5.110

¹ I.e. of their offence: *apaṭiññāya*. Cf. *paṭiññāya kāretabbaṃ* at Vin.4.207 (BD.3.153, n.5).

Vin.2.84

“A monk comes to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... into a grave offence, into an offence involving expiation, into an offence which ought to be confessed, into an offence of wrong-doing, into an offence of wrong speech. The Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘The venerable one has fallen into an offence of wrong speech’. If he speaks thus: ‘I have not, your reverences, fallen into an offence of wrong speech, I have fallen into an offence involving defeat,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence involving defeat, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is not legally valid.

Kd.14.8.2

“A monk comes to have fallen into an offence of wrong speech ... If he speaks thus: ‘I have not, your reverences, fallen into an offence of wrong speech, I have fallen into a grave offence, into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... into an offence involving expiation, into an offence which ought to be confessed, into an offence of wrong-doing,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence of wrong-doing, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is not legally valid.

“And how, monks, is the carrying out on the acknowledgement legally valid? A monk comes to have fallen into an offence involving defeat. The Order or several (monks) or one individual reproves him for it, saying: ‘The venerable one has fallen into an offence involving defeat’. If he speaks thus: ‘Yes, your reverences, I have fallen into an offence involving defeat,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence involving defeat, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is legally valid.

“A monk comes to have fallen into an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... into a grave offence ... into an offence of wrong speech ... If he speaks thus: ‘Yes, your reverences, I have fallen into an offence of wrong speech,’ and if the Order has him dealt with for an offence of wrong speech, the carrying out on the acknowledgement is legally valid.”

MAJORITY

Kd.14.9.1
BD.5.111

Now at that time monks were striving, quarrelling, disputing in the midst of an Order, they were wounding one another with the weapons of the tongue; they were unable to settle that legal question. They told this matter

to the Lord. He said: "I allow you monks, to settle this kind of legal question by the decision of the majority."¹ A monk possessed of five qualities should be agreed upon as distributor of (voting) tickets²; one who would not follow a wrong course through favouritism, who would not follow a wrong course through hatred ... through stupidity ... through fear, who would know what is taken and what is not.³ And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First a monk should be asked. Having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon the monk So-and-so as distributor of (voting) tickets. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the monk So-and-so as distributor of (voting) tickets. If the agreement upon the monk So-and-so as distributor of (voting) tickets is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is hot pleasing should speak. The monk So-and-so is agreed upon by the Order as distributor of (voting) tickets. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.'

"Monks, there are ten distributions of (voting) tickets that are not legally valid, ten that are legally valid. What are the ten distributions of (voting) tickets that are not legally valid? When the legal question is only trifling, and when it has not gone its course,⁴ and when it is not remembered or caused to be remembered,⁵ and when he knows that those who profess non-*dhamma* are more (in number), when he even thinks that those who profess non-*dhamma* may be more (in number), if he knows that the Order will be divided, if he even thinks that the Order may be divided, if they take (the tickets) not by rule,⁶ if they take them in an incomplete assembly, and if they take them not according to their views.⁷ These ten distributions of

Vin.2.85
Kd.14.10.1

BD.5.112

¹ *yebhuyyasikā*. See Vin.4.207 (BD.3.153, n.6). "As long as the majority are speakers of *dhamma*," Vin-a.1192. ² *salākaḡāhāpaka*. Cf. below, Kd.14.14.24. ³ Referring to the voting tickets. ⁴ *gatigata*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.26. Vin-a.1192 says, if it has not gone to two or three residences, or has not been detailed, *avinicchita*, here and there two or three times. ⁵ Vin-a.1192 says: "two or three times it is not remembered by these monks themselves, or caused to be remembered by others." ⁶ They each take two tickets, saying: "Thus we, speakers of what is not *dhamma*, will become the majority," Vin-a.1193. ⁷ Changing their views simply so as to be on the side of the majority.

(voting) tickets are not legally valid.

Kd.14.10.2

“What are the ten distributions of (voting) tickets that are legally valid? When the legal question is not merely trifling, and when it has gone its course, and when it is remembered and caused to be remembered, and when he knows that those who profess *dhamma* are more (in number), when he even thinks that those who profess *dhamma* may be more (in number), when he knows that the Order will not be divided, when he even thinks that the Order will not be divided, when they take (the tickets) by rule, when they take them in a complete assembly, and when they take them according to their views. These ten distributions of (voting) tickets are legally valid.”

BAD CHARACTER

Kd.14.11.1

Now at that time the monk Uvāḷa, on being examined for offences in the midst of the Order, having denied,¹ acknowledged, having acknowledged, denied, he shelved the question by (asking) another, he told a conscious lie. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this monk Uvāḷa, on being examined ... tell a conscious lie?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks ...?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, let the Order carry out a (formal) act for the decision for specific depravity² against the monk Uvāḷa.

Kd.14.11.2

And thus, monks, should it be carried out: First, the monk Uvāḷa should be reprovved, having reprovved him, he should be made to remember, having made him remember, he should be made to confess³ the offence, having made him confess the offence, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Uvāḷa, on being examined for offences in the midst of the Order, having denied, acknowledged ... he told a conscious lie. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may carry out a (formal) act for the decision for

BD.5.113

¹ As at Vin.4.1; see BD.2.164. ² *tassapāpiyyasikā*. See BD.3.154, n.1; MN.ii.249. ³ *ropeti*.

specific depravity against the monk Uvāḷa. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk Uvāḷa ... told a conscious lie. The Order is carrying out a (formal) act for the decision for specific depravity against the monk Uvāḷa. If the carrying out of a (formal) act for the decision for specific depravity against the monk Uvāḷa is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak ... And a third time I speak forth this matter ... A (formal) act for the decision for specific depravity is carried out by the Order against the monk Uvāḷa. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Vin.2.86
Kd.14.12.1

“Monks, these five grounds for a (formal) act for specific depravity are legally valid: if he becomes impure, and if he is unconscientious, and if he is fault-finding,¹ if an Order carries out a (formal) act for specific depravity against him, if it is by rule and in a complete assembly. These five grounds, monks, for a (formal) act for specific depravity are legally valid.

Kd.14.12.2

“Monks, if a (formal) act for specific depravity is possessed of three qualities it comes to be a (formal) act not by rule, a (formal) act not by discipline, and one that is hard to settle: if it is carried out not in the presence of, if it is carried out without interrogation, if it is carried out not with the acknowledgement ...² if it is carried out not by rule, if it is carried out in an incomplete assembly. Monks, if a (formal) act for specific depravity is possessed of these three qualities, it comes to be a (formal) act not by rule, a (formal) act not by discipline, and one that is hard to settle.

“Monks, if a (formal) act for specific depravity is possessed of three qualities it come to be a (formal) act by rule and a (formal) act by discipline, and one that is easily settled if it is carried out in the presence of, if it is carried out on the interrogation, if it is carried out with the acknowledgement ...³ if it is carried out by rule, if it is carried out in a complete assembly. Monks, if a (formal) act for specific depravity is possessed of these three qualities, it comes to be a (formal) act by rule, a (formal) act by discipline, and one that is easily settled.

BD.5.114

“Monks, if a monk is possessed of three qualities,⁴ the Order, if it desires, may carry out a (formal) act for specific depravity against him: if he is a

Kd.14.12.3

¹ *sānuvāda*, cf. *anuvāda* at Vin.2.5. Buddhaghosa glosses by *sa-upavāda*. ² As at Kd.11.2.1.

³ As at Kd.11.3.1. ⁴ As at Kd.11.4.

maker of strife, if he is a maker of quarrels, if he is a maker of disputes if he is a maker of contention, if he is a maker of legal questions in the Order; if he is ignorant, inexperienced, full of offences, not rid of them; if he lives in association with householders in unbecoming association with householders. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these three qualities, the Order, if it desires, may carry out a (formal) act for specific depravity against him.

Kd.14.12.4

“A monk against whom a (formal) act for specific depravity¹ has been carried out should conduct himself properly. This is proper conduct in this case: he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him, he should not consent to the agreement to exhort nuns, even if he is agreed upon he should not exhort nuns ... he should not quarrel with monks.”

Kd.14.12.5

Then the Order carried out a (formal) act for specific depravity against the monk Uvāḷa.

COVERING OVER WITH GRASS

Kd.14.13.1

Now at that time, while monks were striving, quarrelling, disputing, much was perpetrated and spoken that was not worthy of a recluse.² Then it occurred to these monks: “While we were striving ... not worthy of a recluse. If we should deal with one another for these offences, it might even be that that legal question would conduce to harshness, to trouble, to schism. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by us?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.87

BD.5.115

“This is a case, monks, where while monks were striving ... much was perpetrated and spoken that was not worthy of a recluse. Then it occurred to these monks: ‘While we were striving ... it might even be that that legal question would conduce to harshness, to trouble, to schism.’ I allow, monks, a legal question such as this to be settled by the covering up (as) with grass.³

Kd.14.13.2

“And thus, monks, should it be settled: One and all should gather together in the same place; having gathered together, the Order should be informed

¹ As for an act of banishment carried out against a monk, at [Kd.11.5](#). ² As at [Kd.14.5.1](#).

³ *tiṇavatthāraka*. As at [Vin.4.207](#), MN.ii.250. See [BD.3.154](#).

by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were striving ... ‘... it might even be that this legal question would conduce to harshness, to trouble, to schism.’ If it seems right to the Order, the Order may settle this legal question by the covering up (as) with grass, unless it is a heavy sin,¹ unless it is connected with the laity.’² The one side³ should be informed by an experienced, competent monk from among the monks siding in with the one (side): ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. While we were striving ... not worthy of a recluse ... to schism. If it is pleasing to the venerable ones, I would confess whatever is the offence of the venerable ones as well as whatever is my own offence both for the sake of the venerable ones and for my own sake, unless it is a heavy sin, unless it is connected with the laity, (so as to obtain) a covering up (as) with grass in the midst of the Order.’ Afterwards, the other side should be informed by an experienced, competent monk from among the monks siding in with the other (side): ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. While we were striving ... a covering up (as with) grass in the midst of the Order.’

Kd.14.13.3

“The Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk siding in with the one (side): ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were striving ... not worthy of a recluse ... to schism. If it seems right to the Order, I would confess whatever is the offence of the venerable ones as well as whatever is my own offence, both for the sake of the venerable ones and for my own sake, unless it is a heavy sin, unless it is connected with the laity, (so as to obtain) a covering up (as) with grass in the midst of the Order. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were striving ... not worthy of recluse ... to schism. I am confessing whatever is the offence of these venerable ones and whatever is my own offence ... unless it is a heavy sin, unless it is connected with the laity, (so as to obtain) a covering up (as with) grass in the midst of the Order. If the confession of these offences of ours, unless they are heavy sins, unless they are connected with the laity, (so as to obtain) a covering up (as) with grass in the midst

BD.5.116

¹ *thūlavajja*, Vin-a.1194, explaining as *Pārājika* and *Saṅghādisesa*. ² Commentary says: unless it is an offence where he reviles and despises householders by means of a low thing; see under “insulting speech” at Vin.4.6 (BD.2.173ff.); also above, BD.5.25. ³ *saka pakkha*, one’s own side.

of the Order is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. These offences of ours are confessed (by me), except heavy sins, except those connected with the laity, (so as to obtain) a covering up (as) with grass in the midst of the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Vin.2.88

“Afterwards the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk from among the monks siding in with the other (side): ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were striving ... Thus do I understand this.’

Kd.14.13.4

“And thus, monks, do these offences come to be removed from these monks,¹ except for a heavy sin, except for what is connected with the laity, except for (those who make) an open statement of their views,² except for those who are not there.”³

ISSUES

Kd.14.14.1

Now at that time monks disputed with monks and nuns disputed with monks and the monk Channa, intruding into the nuns’ (quarters), disputed together with the monks and was prejudiced on the side of the nuns. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this monk Channa, intruding into the nuns’ (quarters), dispute together with monks and be prejudiced on the side of the nuns?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, ...?”

BD.5.117

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.14.14.2

¹ *te bhikkhū tāhi āpattihi vuṭṭhitā honti*, literally “these monks are risen up (or, removed) from these offences.” ² *diṭṭhāvikkamma*. Vin-a.1194 says “those who say, ‘It is not pleasing to me’ and explain their views to one another, or, having fallen into offence together with these who have not come there, or who have come and given (someone’s) leave for being absent while sitting down in cells and so on—these have not risen from those offences. Therefore it is said: except for (those who make) an open statement of their views, except for those who are not there.” ³ *ṭhapetvā ye na tattha honti*. See previous note.

“Monks, there are these four kinds of legal questions: legal questions arising out of disputes legal questions arising out of censure, legal questions arising out of offences, legal questions arising out of obligations.¹

“What is here a legal question arising out of disputes This is a case, monks, where monks dispute, saying²: ‘It is *dhamma*’ or ‘It is not *dhamma*’ or ‘It is discipline’ or ‘It is not discipline’ or ‘It is spoken, uttered by the Truth-finder’, or ‘It is not spoken, not uttered by the Truth-finder’ or ‘It is practised by the Truth-finder’ or ‘It is not practised by the Truth-finder’ or ‘It is laid down by the Truth-finder’ or ‘It is not laid down by the Truth-finder’ or ‘It is an offence’ or ‘It is not an offence’ or ‘It is a slight offence’ or ‘It is a serious offence’ or ‘It is an offence that can be done away with’ or ‘It is an offence that cannot be done away with’ or ‘It is a bad offence’ or ‘It is not a bad offence.’ Whatever here is strife, quarrel, contention, dispute, difference of opinion, other opinion, because the common appellation of heatedness³ is ‘quarrel,⁴’, this is called a legal question arising from disputes

“What is here a legal question arising from censure? In this case, monks, monks censure a monk for falling away from moral habit or for falling away from good habits or for falling away from right view or for falling away from a right mode of livelihood. Whatever here is censure, fault-finding, talking to, scolding, bickering, inciting, instigating, this is called a legal question arising from censure.

“What is here a legal question arising from offences? Both the five classes of offences⁵ (yield) legal questions arising from offences, and the seven classes of offences⁶ (yield) legal questions arising from offences. This is called a legal question arising from offences.

BD.5.118

“What is here a legal question arising from obligations? Whatever is an Order’s business and ought to be done (by it): a (formal) act for which leave

Vin.2.89

¹ As at Vin.3.164. ² Cf. the following with Vin.1.354. ³ *vipaccatāya vohāro*. Vin-a.1194 says “the common appellation is due to mental uneasiness, *cittadukkha*. The meaning is harsh speech.” ⁴ *medhaka*. ⁵ That is to say, those of Defeat, those entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order, those of Expiation, those which ought to be confessed and those of wrong-doing. ⁶ The above five, With grave offences and those of wrong speech added.

ought to be asked,¹ a (formal) act at which a motion is put, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by one resolution, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by a resolution made three times.² This is called a legal question arising from obligations.

Kd.14.14.3

“What is the source of a legal question arising from disputes Six sources of dispute are the source of a legal question arising from disputes there are three unskilled sources which are the source of a legal question arising from disputes as well as three skilled sources which are the source of legal questions arising from disputes

“Which are the six sources of dispute which are the source of a legal question arising from disputes In this case, a monk becomes angry and bears ill-will.³ Monks, whatever monk becomes angry and bears ill-will, he lives without deference, disrespectful towards the Teacher, and he lives without deference, disrespectful towards *dhamma*, and he lives without deference, disrespectful towards the Order, and he does not complete the training. Monks, whatever monk lives without deference, disrespectful towards the Teacher, *dhamma*, and the Order and does not complete the training, he causes dispute in an Order, and that dispute comes to be for the harm of the many-folk, for the lack of ease of the many-folk, for the lack of the goal for the many-folk, for the harm and dissatisfaction of devas and mankind. If you, monks, should perceive a source of dispute like this among yourselves or among others, you, monks, should strive therein for the destruction of precisely that evil source of disputes If you, monks, should perceive no source of dispute like this among yourselves or among others, you, monks, should therein follow a course (to stop) there being future effects of precisely that evil source of disputes Thus there comes to be destruction of that evil source of disputes thus there come to be no future effects of that evil source of disputes

BD.5.119

¹ *apalokanakamma*. Vin-a.1195 says “having purified the Order living in the boundary, having brought the leave of absence of those who deserve to send leave of absence, the (formal) act should be carried out, having announced it three times for the approval of a complete Order.” Vin-a.1195 refers for all these types of formal acts to the Parivāra, i.e. to [Vin.5.229ff.](#)

² These types of formal acts are also mentioned at [Vin.4.152](#) in definition of “legitimate (formal) acts.” See [BD.3.59](#), [BD.3.60](#) for further references. ³ This recurs at AN.iii.334; DN.iii.246; MN.i.96, MN.ii.245. See Pp.ii.1 where *kodha* and *upanāhi* form the subjects of questions.

“And again, monks, a monk becomes harsh¹ and unmerciful, he becomes envious and grudging, he becomes crafty and deceitful, he comes to have evil desires and wrong views, he comes to be infected with worldliness, obstinate, stubborn.² Monks, that monk who lives without deference, disrespectful towards the Teacher ... thus there come to be no future effects of that evil source of disputes These six sources of dispute are the source of a legal question arising from disputes

Kd.14.14.4

“Which three unskilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from disputes In this case, monks dispute covetous in mind, they dispute corrupt in mind, they dispute erring in mind, saying: ‘It is *dhamma*’ or ‘It is not *dhamma*’ or ... ‘It is not a bad offence.’³ These three unskilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from disputes

“Which three skilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from disputes In this case, monks dispute not covetous in mind, they dispute not corrupt in mind, they dispute not erring in mind, saying: ‘It is *dhamma*’ or ‘It is not *dhamma*’ ... or ‘It is not a bad offence’. These three skilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from disputes

Vin.2.90

Kd.14.14.5

“What is the source of a legal question arising from censure? Six sources of censure are the source of a legal question arising from censure: there are three unskilled sources which are the source of a legal question arising from censure as well as three skilled sources which are the source of a legal question arising from censure; body, too, is a source of a legal question arising from censure; speech, too, is a source of a legal question arising from censure.

BD.5.120

“Which are the six sources of censure that are the source of a legal question arising from censure? In this case, monks, a monk becomes angry and bears ill-will ... (as in Kd.14.14.3. *Instead of dispute read censure, source of censure, etc.*) ... These six sources of censure are the source of a legal question arising from censure.

“Which three unskilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from censure? In this case, monks, covetous in mind, censure a monk,

¹ The first six words occur at MN.i.96 (*cf.* MN.i.43) and they form subjects of questions at Pp.ii.2–Pp.ii.4. The first five occur at Ja.iii.259. ² *Cf.* MN.i.43, MN.i.96, MN.i.402; DN.iii.247; AN.iii.335, AN.v.150. ³ As at Kd.14.14.2.

corrupt in mind they censure (him), erring in mind they censure him with falling away from moral habit or with falling away from good habits or with falling away from right view or with falling away from a right mode of livelihood. These three unskilled source are the sources of a legal question arising from censure.

“Which three skilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from censure? In this case monks, not covetous in mind, censure a monk; not corrupt in mind ... not erring in mind, they censure him with falling away from moral habit ... with falling away from a right mode of living. These three skilled sources are the source of a legal question arising from censure.

“Which (kind of) a body is a source of a legal question arising from censure? In this case someone comes to be of a bad colour,¹ ugly, deformed, very ill or blind of one eye or paralysed down one side or lame or a cripple, on account of which they censure him. This (kind of) body is a source of a legal question arising from censure.

“Which (kind of) speech is a source of a legal question arising from censure? In this case someone comes to be surly, stuttering, of hoarse enunciation, on account of which they censure him. This (kind of) speech is a source of a legal question arising from censure.

Kd.14.14.6

“What is the source of a legal question arising from offences? Six origins of offences are the source of a legal question arising from offences: there is the offence which originates from the body, not from speech, not from mind; there is the offence which originates from speech, not from body, not from mind; there is the offence which originates from body and from speech, not from mind; there is the offence which originates from body and from mind, not from speech; there is the offence which originates from speech and mind, not from body; there is the offence which originates from body and from speech and from mind. These six origins of offences are the source of a legal question arising from offences.

Kd.14.14.7

“What is the source of a legal question arising from obligations? The Order is the sole source of a legal question arising from obligations.

Vin.2.91

Kd.14.14.8

“A legal question arising from disputes is it skilled, unskilled, indeter-

¹ As at AN.i.107=AN.ii.85=SN.i.94=MN.iii.169=Pp.51.

minate? A legal question arising from disputes may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate. What here is a legal question arising from disputes that is skilled? In this case monks whose thoughts are skilled dispute, saying, 'This is *dhamma*' or 'This is not *dhamma*' or ... 'This is not a bad offence.' Whatever therein is strife, quarrel, contention, dispute, difference of opinion, other opinion, because the common appellation of heatedness is 'quarrel', this is called a legal question arising from dispute? that is skilled.

"What here is a legal question arising from disputes that is unskilled? In this case, monks whose thoughts are unskilled dispute, saying: 'This is *dhamma*' or 'This is not *dhamma*' or ... 'This is not a bad offence' ... because the common appellation of heatedness is 'quarrel,' this is called a legal question arising from disputes that is unskilled.

"What here is a legal question arising from disputes that is indeterminate? In this case, monks whose thoughts are indeterminate dispute, saying: 'It is *dhamma*' or ... 'It is not a bad offence' ... called a legal question arising from disputes that are indeterminate.

Kd.14.14.9

"A legal question arising from censure: is it skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? A legal question arising from censure may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate. What here is a legal question arising from censure that is skilled? In this case monks whose thoughts are skilled censure a monk with falling away from moral habit or with falling away from good habits or with falling away from right views or with falling away from a right mode of livelihood. Whatever herein is censure, blaming, talking to, scolding, bickering, inciting, instigating, this is called a legal question arising from censure that is skilled.

BD.5.122

"What here is a legal question arising from censure that is unskilled? In this case, monks whose thoughts are unskilled censure a monk ... What is here a legal question arising from censure that is indeterminate? In this case, monks whose thoughts are indeterminate censure a monk with falling away from ... a right mode of livelihood. Whatever herein is censure, blaming ... instigating, this is called a legal question arising from censure that is indeterminate.

Kd.14.14.10

"A legal question arising from offences: is it skilled, unskilled, indeter-

minate? A legal question arising from offences may be unskilled it may be indeterminate. There is no legal question arising from offences that is skilled. What is here a legal question arising from offences that is unskilled? A transgression committed knowingly, consciously, deliberately¹ is one that is called a legal question arising from offences that is unskilled.

“What is here a legal question arising from offences that is indeterminate? A transgression committed not knowingly, not consciously, not deliberately is one that is called a legal question arising from offences that is indeterminate.

Kd.14.14.11

“A legal question arising from obligations: is it skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? A legal question arising from obligations may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate. What is here a legal question arising from obligations that is skilled? Whatever (formal) act that an Order, good in mind, carries out: a (formal) act for which leave ought to be asked, a (formal) act at which a motion is put, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by one resolution, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by a resolution made three times²—this is called a legal question arising from obligations that is skilled.

Vin.2.92
BD.5.123

“What is here a legal question arising from obligations that is unskilled? Whatever (formal) act that an Order bad in mind, carries out ... What is here a legal question arising from obligations that is indeterminate? Whatever (formal) act that an Order, indeterminate in mind, carries out ... this is called a legal question arising from obligations that is indeterminate.

Kd.14.14.12

“(Can there be) a dispute and a legal question arising from disputes a dispute (but) no legal question, a legal question (but) no dispute, a legal question as well as a dispute? There may be a dispute and a legal question arising from disputes there may be a dispute (but) no legal question, there may be a legal question (but) no dispute, there may be a legal question as well as a dispute.

“What is here a dispute and a legal question arising from disputes In this case, monks dispute, saying: ‘This is *dhamma*’ or ... ‘This is not a bad offence’.³ Whatever herein⁴ is strife, quarrel, contention, dispute, differ-

¹ As at Vin.3.73, Vin.3.112, Vin.4.290. ² As above, Kd.14.14.2. ³ As in Kd.14.14.2. ⁴ As in Kd.14.14.8.

ence of opinion, other opinion, because the common appellation of heat-
edness is 'quarrel' this is called a dispute and a legal question arising from
disputes

"What is here a dispute (but) not a legal question? Mother disputes
with son and son disputes with, mother, and father disputes with son and
son disputes with father, and brother disputes with brother and brother
disputes with sister and sister disputes with brother, and friend disputes
with friend. This is a dispute (but) not a legal question.

"What is here a legal question (but) not a dispute? A legal question arising
from censure, a legal question arising from offences, a legal question arising
from obligations. This is a legal question (but) not a dispute.

"What is here a legal question as well as a dispute? A legal question
arising from disputes is a legal question as well as a dispute.

Kd.14.14.13

"(Can there be) censure and a legal question arising from censure, cen-
sure (but) no legal question, a legal question (but) no censure, a legal ques-
tion as well as censure? There may be censure and a legal question arising
from censure, there may be censure (but) no legal question, there may be
a legal question (but) no censure, there may be a legal question as well as
censure.

BD.5.124

"What is here censure and a legal question arising from censure? In
this case monks censure a monk with falling away from moral habit or ...
with falling away from a right mode of living. Whatever herein is censure,
blaming ... instigating, this is censure and a legal question arising from
censure.

"What is here censure (but) not a legal question? Mother censures son
and son censures mother ... and friend censures friend. This is censure
(but) not a legal question.

"What is here a legal question (but) not censure? A legal question arising
from offences, a legal question arising from obligations, a legal question
arising from disputes This is a legal question but not censure.

"What is here a legal question as well as censure? A legal question arising
from censure is a legal question as well as censure.

Kd.14.14.14

"(Can there be) an offence and a legal question arising from offences, an
offence (but) no legal question, a legal question (but) no offence, a legal

question as well as an offence? There may be an offence and a legal question arising from offences, there may be an offence (but) no legal question, there may be a legal question (but) no offence, there may be a legal question as well as an offence.

Vin.2.93

“What is here an offence and a legal question arising from offences? The five classes of offences (yield) a legal question arising from offences and the seven classes of offences (yield) a legal question arising from offences. This is an offence and a legal question arising from offences.

“What is here an offence (but) not a legal question? Stream-attainment and Attainment.¹ This is “falling” but not a legal question.

“What is here a legal question (but) not an offence? A legal question arising from obligations, a legal question arising from disputes a legal question arising from censure. This is a legal question (but) not an offence.

BD.5.125

“What is here a legal question as well as an offence? A legal question arising from offences is a legal question as well as an offence.

Kd.14.14.15

“(Can there be) an obligation and a legal question arising from obligations, an obligation (but) no legal question, a legal question (but) no obligation, a legal question as well as an obligation? There may be an obligation and a legal question arising from obligations, there may be an obligation (but) no legal question, there may be a legal question (but) no obligation, there may be a legal question as well as an obligation.

“What is here an obligation and a legal question arising from obligations? Whatever is an Order’s business and ought to be done by it: a (formal) act for which leave ought to be asked, a (formal) act at which a motion is put, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by one resolution, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and followed by a resolution made three times—this is an obligation and a legal question arising from obligations.

“What is here an obligation (but) no legal question? An obligation to a teacher, an obligation to a preceptor, an obligation to one who has the same preceptor, an obligation to one who has the same teacher. This is an obligation (but) not a legal question.

“What is here a legal question (but) not an obligation? A legal question arising from disputes ... arising from censure ... arising from offences. This

¹ For this play of words on *āpatti*, *sot-āpatti* and *sam-āpatti* see [BD.2.177, n.5](#).

is a legal question (but) not an obligation.

“What is here a legal question as well as an obligation? A legal question arising from obligations is a legal question as well as an obligation.

SETTLEMENT OF ISSUES

“By how many kinds of decision is a legal question arising from disputes agreed upon? A legal question arising from disputes is (agreed upon) by two (kinds of) decisions: by a verdict in the presence of and by the decision of the majority. If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from disputes without having recourse to one (kind of) decision—the decision of the majority—one may agree upon it by the other (kind of) decision—the verdict in the presence of?’ he should be told: ‘It can be’. It is like this: In this case monks dispute, saying: ‘It is *dhamma*’ ... or ‘It is a bad offence’. If, monks, these monks are able to settle that legal question this, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of. And what here (is needed) for a verdict in the presence of? The presence of an Order, the presence of rule, the presence of discipline, the presence of individuals.

Kd.14.14.16

BD.5.126

“And what here is the presence of an Order? When as many monks as are competent for (formal) acts have arrived, when the consent of those deserving (to send their) consent has been brought, when being face to face they do not protest. This is here the presence of an Order.

“And what is here the presence of rule, the presence of discipline? If that legal question is settled by whatever is rule,¹ by whatever is discipline, by whatever is the Teacher’s instruction, that is here the presence of rule, the presence of discipline.

Vin.2.94

“And what is here the presence of individuals? Whoever quarrels and whoever he quarrels with, both, hostile about the matter,² come face to face. This is here the presence of individuals.

¹ *dhammena*. ² Oldenberg’s text reads *attapaccatthikā*. It should probably be *attha-*. Perhaps the reference is to “the two who are litigating about the matter.” The phrase is not usually repeated in the subsequent parallel passages; but see [BD.5.129](#) below.

“Monks, if a legal question is settled thus, and if one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation.¹ If one who has given his consent² criticises it, in criticising there is an offence of expiation.³

Kd.14.14.17

“If, monk, these monks are not able to settle that legal question in that residence, then, monks, these monks should go to some residence where there are more monks. If, monks, these monks as they are going to that residence are able to settle that legal question on the way, this, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of ... (as in Kd.14.14.16) ... in criticising there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.14.14.18

BD.5.127

“If, monks, these monks as they are going to that residence are not able to settle that legal question on the way, then, monks, these monks, having arrived at that residence, should speak thus to the resident monks: ‘This legal question, your reverences, has arisen thus, has sprung up thus. It were good if the venerable ones could settle this legal question by rule, by discipline, by the Teacher’s instruction, so that this legal question may be properly settled.’ If, monks, the resident monks are the senior and the in-coming monks the more newly ordained, then, monks, the in-coming monks should be spoken to thus by the resident monks: ‘Please do you, venerable ones, remain at a respectful distance for a moment until we have considered.’ But if, monks, the resident monks are the more newly ordained and the in-coming monks are the senior, then, monks, the in-coming monks should be spoken to thus by these resident monks: ‘Well then, do you, venerable ones, remain just here for a moment until we have considered’. If, monks, it occurs to these resident monks while they are thus considering: ‘We are not able to settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction,’ that legal question should not be taken up. But if, monks, it occurs to the resident monks while they are thus considering: ‘We are able to settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction,’ monks, the incoming monks should be spoken to thus by these resident monks: ‘If you,

¹ Bu-Pc.63. ² *chandadāyaka*, probably meaning has given his consent for the formal act to be carried out without him as, through illness, he cannot be present for it. ³ Bu-Pc.79.

venerable ones, will tell us how this legal question has arisen, how it has sprung up, then in so far as we settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher's instruction, so will it be settled.¹ In this way we will take up this legal question. But if you, venerable ones, will not tell us how this legal question has arisen, how it has sprung up, then in so far as we settle this legal question according to ... the Teacher's instruction, so will it be settled. But we will not take up this legal question." Having thus arranged it properly, monks, that legal question should be taken up by the resident monks. Monks, the resident monks should be spoken to thus by the incoming monks: 'We will tell the venerable ones how this legal question has arisen, how it has sprung up. If the venerable ones are able with or without this much² to settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher's instruction, then will it be properly settled, and we will therefore give this legal question into the charge of the venerable ones. But if the venerable ones are not able with or without this much to settle this legal question according to ... the Teacher's instruction, then will it be not properly settled and we will not give this legal question into the charge of the venerable ones—we ourselves will become the masters³ in regard to this legal question'. Having thus arranged it properly, monks, the incoming monks should give that legal question into the charge of the resident monks. Monks, if these monks are able to settle that legal question, this, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? ... (as in [Kd.14.14.16](#)) ... in criticising, there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.2.95

BD.5.128

"If, monks, while those monks are investigating that legal question both endless disputations arise,⁴ and of not one speech is the meaning clear, I allow you, monks, to settle a legal question like this by means of a referendum.⁵ A monk possessed of ten qualities should be agreed upon for the referendum: one who is moral in habit,⁶ who lives restrained by the

Kd.14.14.19

¹ Meaning that the incoming monks must abide by the decision. ² *ettakena vā antarena.*

³ *sāmino*, rendered as "we shall retain the custody" at *Vinaya Texts* iii.49. ⁴ *anaggāni c'eva bhassāni.* Vin-a.1197 reads *anantāni* for *amaggāni*, and glosses by *aparimāṇāni*, limitless. See [Vin.2.305](#). ⁵ *ubbāhikāya*, a committee. See [Kd.12.2.7](#). The following passage = AN.v.71.

⁶ As at [Vin.4.51](#) to "linguistic form" below; and as at AN.ii.22 to "vision" below. For further references see [BD.2.265-BD.2.266](#). See also [Kd.9.5.1](#).

restraint of the Pātimokkha, who, possessed of good conduct, sees danger in the slightest faults, who takes up and trains himself in the rules of training, who has heard much, an expert in the heard, a storehouse of the heard; those things which, lovely at the beginning, lovely in the middle and lovely at the ending, declare with the spirit, with the letter the Brahma-faring utterly fulfilled, wholly purified—things like this are much heard by him, learnt by heart, repeated out loud, pondered upon, considered carefully, well penetrated by vision; both the Pātimokkhas are properly handed down to him in detail, properly sectioned, properly regulated, properly investigated clause by clause as to the linguistic form; he comes to be clever in discipline, imperturbable; he comes to be competent in convincing both of those who are hostile about the matter, in winning them over, in making them consider, in understanding, in reconciling them; he comes to be skilled in settling a legal question that has arisen; he knows what is a legal question; he knows the arising of a legal question; he knows the stopping of a legal question; he knows the course leading to the stopping of a legal question. I allow, monks, a monk possessed of these ten qualities to be agreed upon for a referendum.

Vin.2.96
BD.5.129

Kd.14.14.20

“And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First, a monk should be asked; having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were investigating this legal question both endless disputations arose and of not one speech was the meaning clear. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon the monk So-and-so and So-and-so to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were investigating this legal question ... was the meaning clear. The Order is agreeing upon the monk So-and-so and So-and-so to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. If the agreement upon the monk So-and-so and So-and-so to settle this legal question by means of a referendum is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The monk So-and-so and So-and-so is agreed upon by the Order to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. It is pleasing ... Thus do I understand this.’

Kd.14.14.21

“If, monks, these monks are able to settle this legal question by means of a referendum, this, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of. And what is here needed for a verdict in the presence of? The presence of rule, the presence of discipline, the presence of the individuals ... (as in Kd.14.14.16) ... If, monks, the legal question is settled thus, and if one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation.¹

Kd.14.14.22
BD.5.130

“If, monks, while these monks are investigating that legal question there should be there a monk who is a speaker of *dhamma* but to whom neither the rule² comes to have been handed down nor the analysis of the rule,³ if he, not considering the meaning, holds back the meaning under the shadow of the letter, these monks should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. This monk So-and-so is a speaker of *dhamma*, but he is one to whom neither the rule nor the analysis of the rule has been handed down; not considering the meaning, he holds back the meaning under the shadow of the letter. If it seems right to the venerable ones, let the remainder, having had this monk removed,⁴ settle that legal question’. If, monks, these monks, having had that monk removed, are able to settle that legal question, this, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of. And what is here needed for a verdict in the presence of? The presence of rule, the presence of discipline, the presence of individuals ... (as in Kd.14.14.16) ... Monks, if a legal question is settled thus, and if one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.2.97

“If, monks, whilst those monks are investigating the legal question there should be there a monk who is a speaker of *dhamma* and one to whom the rule has been handed down but not the analysis of the rule, if he, not

Kd.14.14.23

¹ Bu-Pc.63. ² *sutta*, in the singular. It cannot well mean here the “tradition”, *āgama*, or the sayings in which *dhamma* was set forth. For this monk evidently knew *dhamma*, which, above, must be different from *sutta*. There is also a difference between knowing a rule or clause, *sutta* (in the sense in which it is sometimes used in Vinaya) and its analysis, which implies a wider knowledge as of the material surrounding a rule of training. On *sutta*, as used in Vinaya see BD.1, Introduction, p.x. Vin-a.1197 says *sutta* is *mātikā*, heading or summary.

³ Suttavibhaṅga; Vin-a.1197 says “not versed in discipline” (*vinaya*). ⁴ *vuṭṭhāpetvā*.

considering the meaning, holds back the meaning under the shadow of the letter, these monks should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. This monk So-and-so is a speaker of *dhamma* and he is one to whom the rule has been handed down but not the analysis of the rule; not considering the meaning in opening up there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.14.14.24

BD.5.131

“If, monks, these monks are not able to settle that legal question by a referendum, monks, that legal question should be given into the charge of an Order by these monks, saying: ‘We, honoured sirs, are not able to settle this legal question by a referendum. Let the Order itself settle this legal question.’ I allow you, monks, to settle a legal question like this by the decision of the majority.¹ A monk possessed of five qualities should be agreed upon as distributor of (voting) tickets ... (as in Kd.14.9) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this.’ The monk who is the distributor of (voting) tickets should make the (voting) tickets pass round. According to the way in which the greater number of monks who profess *dhamma* speak, so should this legal question be settled. This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by the decision of the majority. And what is here (needed for) a verdict in the presence of? The presence of an Order, the presence of rule, the presence of discipline, the presence of the individuals. And what is here the presence of an Order? ... (as in Kd.14.16) ... This is here the presence of the individuals.

“And what is here the decision of the majority? Whatever is the carrying out of, the performance of, the undertaking of, the assenting to, the acceptance of, the non-protesting against a (formal) act (settled) by the decision of the majority, this is here the decision of the majority. If, monks, a legal question is settled thus, and if one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation; if one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an offence of expiation.”²

Vin.2.98

Kd.14.14.25

Now at that time at Sāvattḥī a legal question had arisen thus, had sprung up thus. Then these monks were displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the Order at Sāvattḥī. They heard it said: “In a certain residence

¹ *yebhuyyasikāya*. See Vin.5.49 ² As at Kd.14.14.16, Kd.14.14.27.

several elders are staying who have heard much, to whom the tradition has been handed down, experts in *dhamma*, experts in discipline, experts in the headings, learned, experienced, clever, conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training; if these elders would settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher's instruction, thus would this legal question be properly settled." Then these monks, having gone to that residence, spoke thus to those elders: "This legal question, honoured sirs, arose thus, sprang up thus. It were good, honoured sirs, if the elders were to settle this legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher's instruction, so that this legal question might be properly settled." Then these elders thought: "Because this legal question was settled by the Order at Sāvattḥī, it was therefore properly settled,' and they settled that legal question in the same way. Then these monks were displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the Order at Sāvattḥī, they were displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the several elders.

BD.5.132

They heard it said: "In a certain residence three elders are staying ... two elders are staying ... one elder is staying who has heard much, to whom the tradition has been handed down ... desirous of training; if this elder would settle this legal question according to ... the Teacher's instruction, thus would this legal question be properly settled." Then these monks, having gone to that residence, spoke thus to that elder: "This legal question, honoured sir, arose thus, sprang up thus. It were good, honoured sir, if the elder were to settle this legal question according to ... the Teacher's instruction, so that this legal question might be properly settled." Then that elder thought: "Because this legal question was settled by the Order at Sāvattḥī, because this legal question was settled by several elders, because this legal question was settled by three elders, because this legal question was settled by two elders it was therefore properly settled,' and he settled that legal question in the same way. Then these monks, displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the Order at Sāvattḥī, displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the several elders ... by the three elders ... by the two elders, displeased with the settlement of the legal question by the one elder, approached the Lord; having approached, they

told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, this legal question is done with, it is exhausted,¹ it is settled, it is properly settled.

Kd.14.14.26
BD.5.133

“I allow, monks, in order to convince these monks, three methods of taking votes:² the secret, the whispering in the ear, the open. And what, monks, is the secret method of taking votes? The monk who is the distributor of voting tickets, having made the tickets different³ (from one another), having approached each monk, should speak to him thus: ‘This ticket is for one of such a view, this ticket is for one of such a view. Take whichever you like.’ When he has taken it, he should be told: ‘And do not show it to anybody’. If he finds that the majority profess what is not-*dhamma* and thinks (the voting is) wrongly taken (the result) should be rejected.⁴ If he finds that the majority profess *dhamma* and thinks (the voting is) rightly taken (the result) should be announced. This, monks, is the secret (method of) taking votes.

Vin.2.99

“And what, monks, is the method of taking votes by whispering in the ear? The monk who is the distributor of voting tickets should speak into the ear of each monk, saying: ‘This ticket is for one of such a view, this ticket is for one of such a view. Take whichever you like.’ When he has taken it, he should be told: ‘And do not tell anyone about it.’ If he finds that the majority profess what is not-*dhamma* and thinks (the voting is) wrongly taken (the result) should be rejected. If he finds that the majority profess *dhamma* and thinks (the voting is) rightly taken (the result) should be announced. This, monks, is the method of taking votes by whispering in the ear.

“And what, monks, is the open method of taking votes? If he finds that those who profess *dhamma* are in the majority, because of his very confidence he should make them take openly. This, monks, is the open method of taking votes. These, monks, are the three methods of taking votes.

Kd.14.14.27

“By how many (kinds of) decisions is a legal question arising from cen-

¹ *santa* is both worn out, exhausted and (more commonly) appeased, tranquillised. ² *salāk-agāha*, more literally “distributing (or, making pass) the (voting) tickets.” ³ *vaṇṇāvaṇṇa*. Vin-a.1198 says that the tickets for those who profess *dhamma* and for those who profess non-*dhamma* should be marked by different signs, *nimitta* (not different colours, as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.56). ⁴ *paccukkaḍḍhihitabbaṃ*. Vin-a.1198 says (the distributor) “having said the tickets were wrongly taken, having distributed them again, may distribute them up to a third time.”

sure agreed upon? A legal question arising from censure is agreed upon by four (kinds of) decisions: by a verdict in the presence of, by a verdict of innocence, by a verdict of past insanity, by a decision for specific depravity. If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from censure, without having recourse to two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict of past insanity and the decision for specific depravity—one may agree upon it by two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict in the presence of and the verdict of innocence?’ he should be told: ‘It can be.’ It is like this: This is a case where monks defame a monk with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. Monks, a verdict of innocence should be given to that monk who has remembered fully.¹ And thus, monks, should it be given: That monk, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘Honoured sirs, monks defamed me with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. But I, honoured sirs, having remembered fully, ask the Order for a verdict of innocence’. And a second time it should be asked for. And a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed by an experienced competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. Monks defamed the monk So-and-so with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit; he, having remembered fully, is asking the Order for a verdict of innocence. If it seems right to the Order ... (as in [Kd.14.4.10](#)) ... Thus do I understand this.’ This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence. And what is here needed for a verdict in the presence of? The presence of the Order, the presence of rule, the presence of discipline and the presence of the individuals ... (as at [Kd.14.14.16](#)) ... And what is here the presence of the individuals? Whoever quarrels and whoever he quarrels with, if both come face to face,² this is here the presence of the individuals.

BD.5.134

Vin.2.100

BD.5.135

“And what is here needed for a verdict of innocence? Whatever is the carrying out of, the performance of, the undertaking of, the assenting to, the acceptance of, the non-protesting against a formal act for a verdict of

¹ Cf. above, [Kd.14.4.10](#). ² As at [Kd.4.14.16](#), but omitting “hostile about the matter.”

innocence, that is what is needed here for a verdict of innocence. If, monks, a legal question is settled thus, and one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation. If one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.14.14.28

“If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from censure, without having recourse to two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict of innocence and the decision for specific depravity—one may agree upon it by two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict in the presence of and the verdict of past insanity?’ he should be told: ‘It can be.’ It is like this: This is a case where a monk becomes mad, out of his mind,¹ and while he was mad, out of his mind, he perpetrated much and spoke in a way that was not worthy of a recluse. Monks reprove him because of offences done by him while he was mad, out of his mind, saying: ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like this?’ He speaks thus: ‘I, your reverences, was mad, out of my mind; while I was mad, out of my mind, much was perpetrated and spoken by me that was not worthy of a recluse. I do not remember that. That was done by me while I was insane.’ Although being spoken to thus, they still reprove him, saying: ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into an offence like that?’ Monks, a verdict of past insanity should be given to that monk who is no longer insane.

“And thus, monks, should it be given: Monks, that monk, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, was mad ... (as in Kd.14.5.2. *Instead of Gagga read the monk So-and-so*) ... Thus do I understand this.’ This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of past insanity. And what here (is needed) for a verdict in the presence of? The presence of the Order ... (as in Kd.14.14.16) ... And what is here (needed for) a verdict of past insanity? Whatever is the carrying out of, the performance of ... the non-protesting against a verdict of past insanity, that here is what (is needed for) a verdict of past insanity. If, monks, a legal question is settled thus and one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation. If one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an

BD.5.136

Vin.2.101

¹ As at Kd.14.5.1-Kd.14.5.2, for the monk Gagga.

offence of expiation.

“If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from censure, without having recourse to two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict of innocence and the verdict of past insanity—one may agree upon it by two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict in the presence of and the decision for specific depravity?’ he should be told: ‘It can be.’ It is like this: This is a case where a monk reproves a monk in the midst of the Order for a serious offence, saying: ‘Does the venerable one remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat?’ He speaks thus: ‘I do not remember, your reverence, having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat.’ Although denying this, he presses him, saying: ‘Please, venerable one, find out properly whether you remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat.’ He speaks thus: ‘I, your reverence, do not remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat. But I, your reverence, remember having fallen into a trifling offence like this.’ Although denying this, he presses him, saying: ‘Please, venerable one, find out properly whether you remember ... bordering on one involving defeat’. He speaks thus: ‘Your reverence, unasked I acknowledge having fallen into a trifling offence like this; how could I, when asked, not acknowledge having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat?’ He speaks thus: ‘But, your reverence, unasked you did not acknowledge having fallen into a trifling offence, so how will you, unasked, acknowledge having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat? Please, venerable one, find out properly whether you remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat.’ He speaks thus: ‘Your reverence, I do remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat. When I said: I do not remember having fallen into a serious offence like this—one involving defeat or bordering on one involving defeat—this was said by me in jest,¹

Kd.14.14.29

BD.5.137

¹ Cf. Vin.4.4 for *davā*, *ravā*.

this was said by me in haste.¹

“Monks, a (formal) act for the decision of specific depravity should be carried out against this monk. And thus, monks, should it be carried out. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying ... (as in [Kd.14.11.2](#). *Instead of the monk Uvāḷa read the monk So-and-so; instead of offences read serious offences*) ... Thus do I understand this.’

Vin.2.102

This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by a decision for specific gravity. And what is here (needed for) a verdict in the presence of? The presence of the Order ... (as in [Kd.14.14.16](#)) ... And what here is (needed for) a decision for specific depravity? Whatever is the carrying out of, the performance of, the undertaking of, the assenting to, the acceptance of, the non-protesting against a decision for specific depravity, that is here what is needed for a decision for specific depravity. If, monks, a legal question is settled thus and one who carries it out opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation. If one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.14.14.30

“By how many (kinds of) decisions is a legal question arising from offences agreed upon? A legal question arising from offences is agreed upon by three (kinds of) decisions: by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out of it on his acknowledgement² and by the covering up (as) with grass.³ If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from offences, without having recourse to one (kind of) decision—the covering up (as) with grass—one may agree upon it by two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict in the presence of and the carrying out of it on his acknowledgement?’ he should be told: ‘It can be.’ It is like this: This is a case where a monk comes to have fallen into a slight offence. Monks, that monk, having approached one monk, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on his haunches, having stretched forth his joined palms, should speak thus to him: ‘I, your reverence, fallen into such and such an offence, confess it.’ It should be said by him: ‘Do you see it?’ ‘Yes, I see it.’ ‘You should be restrained in the future.’ This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out

BD.5.138

¹ Cf. [Vin.4.4](#) for *davā, ravā*. ² Cf. [Vin.4.4](#) for *davā, ravā*. ³ See [BD.3.153](#), [BD.3.154](#).

of it of his acknowledgement. And what here is (needed for) a verdict in the presence of? The presence of rule¹ and the presence of discipline and the presence of individuals. And what here is the presence of individuals? If both whoever confesses and he to whom he confesses are face to face, this here is the presence of individuals. And what here is (needed for) the carrying out on his acknowledgement? Whatever is the carrying out ... the non-protesting against his making an acknowledgement, that is here what is needed for his making an acknowledgement. If, monks, a legal question is settled thus, and the one who accepts (the confession) opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation.

Kd.14.14.31

“If he manages this thus, it is good. But if he does not manage it, monks, that monk, having approached several monks, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having stretched forth his joined palms, should speak thus to them: ‘I, honoured sirs, fallen into such and such an offence, confess it.’ These monks should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Let the venerable ones listen to me. This monk So-and-so remembers an offence, he discloses it, he declares it, he confesses it. If it seems right to the venerable ones, I will accept (the confession) of the monk So-and-so’s offence.’ He should say: ‘Do you see it?’ ‘Yes, I see it.’ ‘You should be restrained in the future.’ This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of ... (as in Kd.14.14.31) ... in opening up there is an offence of expiation.

Vin.2.103

Bd.5.139

Kd.14.14.32

“If he manages this thus, it is good. But if he does not manage it, monks, that monk, having approached an Order ... should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, fallen into such and such an offence, confess it.’ The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so remembers an offence, he discloses it, he declares it, he confesses it. If it seems right to the Order I could accept (the confession) of the monk So-and-so’s offence.’ He should say: ‘Do you see it?’ ‘Yes, I see it.’ ‘You should be restrained in the future.’ This, monks, is called a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on his acknowledgement.

¹ Presence of the Order not required here, as the monk has confessed to one monk only.

And what here is (needed for) a verdict in the presence of? The presence of the Order, the presence of rule, the presence of discipline and the presence of the individuals ... **If, monks, a legal question is settled thus, and the one who accepts (the confession) opens it up again, in opening up there is an offence of expiation. If one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an offence of expiation.**

Kd.14.14.33

“If one says: ‘Can it be that, in respect of a legal question arising from offences, without having recourse to one decision—the carrying out on his acknowledgement—one may agree upon it by two (kinds of) decisions—the verdict in the presence of and the covering up (as) with grass?’ he should be told, ‘It can be.’ It is like this: ‘This is a case, monks, where while monks were striving ... (as in **Kd.14.13.1–Kd.14.13.3**) ... Thus do I understand this.’ This is called, monks, a legal question that is settled. By what is it settled? By a verdict in the presence of and by a covering up (as) with grass. And what here is (needed for) a verdict in the presence of? The presence of the Order, the presence of rule, the presence of discipline, the presence of the individuals. And what here is the presence of the Order? When as many monks as are competent for (formal) acts have arrived, when the consent of those deserving (to send their) consent has been brought, when being face to face they do not protest. This is here the presence of the Order.

BD.5.140

“And what is here the presence of rule, the presence of discipline? If that legal question is settled by whatever is rule, by whatever is discipline, by whatever is the Teacher’s instruction, that is here the presence of rule, the presence of discipline.

Vin.2.104

“And what is here the presence of individuals? If both whoever confesses and he to whom he confesses are face to face, this is here the presence of the individuals.

“And what here is (needed for) the covering up (as) with grass? Whatever is the carrying out of, the performance of, the undertaking of, the assenting to, the acceptance of, the non-protesting against the covering up (as) with grass, that is here what is (needed for) the covering up (as) with grass. **If, monks, a legal question is settled thus, and if the one who accepts (the confession) opens it up, in opening up there is an offence of expiation. If one who has given his consent criticises it, in criticising there is an**

offence of expiation.

“By how many (kinds of) decisions is a legal question arising from obligations agreed upon? A legal question arising from obligations is agreed upon by one (kind of) decision: the verdict in the presence of.”

Kd.14.14.34

*Told is the Fourth Section: that on Settlements.*¹

Vin.2.105

¹ There is no *uddāna*, summary or key to this Section.

15. MINOR MATTERS (*KHUDDAKA*)

Kd.15.1.1
BD.5.141

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time the group of six monks, while they were bathing, rubbed their bodies against a tree and their thighs and their arms and their chests and their backs. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about saying: "How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, while they are bathing, rub their bodies against a tree ... and their backs, like boxers and wrestlers and young villagers?"¹ Monks heard these people who were ... spreading it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: "Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks ... and their backs?"

"It is true, Lord." The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

"Monks, it is not suitable in these foolish men, it is not becoming, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How, monks, can these foolish men, while they are bathing, rub their bodies against a tree ... and their backs? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." and having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ *gāmapoddavā*. Word very uncertain, and seems to show confusion between *gāma* and *kāma*, variant reading being *kāmapudavā*. According to Vin.2.315, Buddhaghosa explains: *kāmapudavā ti chavirāgamaṇḍanānuyuttā nāgarikamanussā; gāmaṇḍavā ti pi pādho es'ev'attho*; the meaning of *kāmapudarā* is urban people addicted to ornamenting and dyeing the skin: *gāmaṇḍ* (village) -*podavā* is also a reading. TAKAKUSU and NAGAI's edition, Vin-a.vi.1199, reads: *gāmapūṭavā* (variant reading *gāmamuddavā*) *ti chavirāgamaṇḍanānuyuttā nāgarikamanussā, gāmapotakā* (young village men) *ti pi pāṭho*.

“Monks, while a monk is bathing he should not rub his body against a tree. Whoever should (so) rub it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”¹

Kd.15.1.2
BD.5.142

Now at that time the group of six monks, while they were bathing, rubbed their bodies against a post ... (as in Kd.15.1.1. For tree read post) ... **“... offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks, while they were bathing, rubbed their bodies against a wall²... **“... offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks used to bathe on a rubbing-board.³ People spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about ... Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: **“Monks, you should not bathe on a rubbing-board. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.1.3

Vin.2.106

Now at that time the group of six monks used to bathe using a *gandhabba*-hand (instrument)⁴ ... **“... Monks, you should not bathe using a *gandhabba*-hand (instrument). Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks used to bathe using a string of vermilion covered beads.⁵ ... **“... Monks, you should not bathe using a string of vermilion covered beads. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

¹ Note that it is not actually made an offence to rub the other parts of the person mentioned; but doubtless these are meant to be included. ² Three kinds of walls are mentioned at Vin.4.266. Vin-a.1199 says that it is one of these. ³ *aṭṭāna*. Vin-a.1199 reads *aṭṭhāna*, and explains this as a tree made like a plank of wood, cut into rows of squares and sunk into the ground at a bathing ford. People rub their bodies there, having sprinkled on chunam. ⁴ *gandhabbahatthaka*. Vin-a.1199 says “by means of a wooden hand set up at a bathing ford; having taken chunam with them, people rub their bodies.” ⁵ *kuruvindakasutta*. Quoted at MN-a.iii.280. Vin-a.1200 says, “it is called a string of beads made by grinding vermilion chunams and stones with lac dyes. Holding this at both ends, they rub the body.” Cf. *kuruvindakacuṇṇa* at Ja.iii.282 (vermilion coloured chunam).

Kd.15.1.4

Now at that time the group of six monks, having plunged into¹ (water), causing a rubbing to be made.² ... **“Monks, you should not, having plunged into (water), cause a rubbing to be made. Whoever should (so) cause it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.5.143

Now at that time the group of six monks used to bathe using a scrubber.³ ... **“Monks, you should not bathe using a scrubber. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time a certain monk came to be afflicted by a scab disease, and there came to be no comfort for him without a scrubber. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, one who is ill (to use) an unshaped scrubber.”⁴

Kd.15.1.5

Now at that time a certain monk, weak through age, was not able while bathing to rub his own body. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a strip of cloth.”⁵

¹ *vigayha*. *Pali-English Dictionary* under *viḡāhati* says, “At **Vin.2.106** we should prefer to react *viggayha* for *vigayha*.” *Vin-a.1200* has the reading *viggayha*. One of meanings of *vigrah* in the Sanskrit Dictionaries is “to lay hold of.” ² *bhikkhū vigayha parikammaṃ kārāpentī*, explained by *Vin-a.1200* as “each one rubbed up his body against the bodies of the others”—no doubt some kind of enjoyable massage or friction. ³ *mallaka*. *Vin-a.1200* says “having cut swordfish teeth, it is called a shaped scrubber, *katamallaka*, owing to its *mallaka* form (or configuration, *mallakamūla*)”. ⁴ *akatomallaka*. See previous note; and *Vin-a.1200* which says “it is made not having cut the teeth. It must be a broken piece of wood or of tortoiseshell.” ⁵ *ukkāsikā*, explained at *Vin-a.1200* as *vatthavaṭṭi*. *Vattha* is cloth, clothing; *vaṭṭi*, a strip, ball, pad. Oldenberg’s version of the Commentary reads *vaṭṭa* (for *vattha*) which rendered the word “unintelligible” (see *Vinaya Texts* iii.68, n.3) and he seems not to have had access to the full exegesis: *tasmā nahāyantassa yassa kassaci nahānasāṭakavaṭṭiyā piṭṭhiṃ ghaṃsiturū vaṭṭati*: therefore when anyone is bathing he may rub his back with a strip (or pad) of a cloth for bathing.

Now at that time the monks were doubtful how to give a rubbing to their backs.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, the ordinary mode with the hand.”²

Now at that time the group of six monks wore ear ornaments, they wore chains,³ they wore ornamental strings of beads for the throat,⁴ they wore ornaments at the waist,⁵ they wore bangles,⁶ they wore armlets,⁷ they wore bracelets,⁸ they wore finger rings. People ... spread it about, saying ... he addressed the monks, saying: **“Monks, ear ornaments should not be worn, chains ... ornamental strings of beads for the throat ... ornaments at the waist ... bangles ... armlets ... bracelets ... finger rings should not be worn. Whoever should wear (any of these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.2.1

BD.5.144

Now at that time the group of six monks wore their hair long. People ... spread it about ... he addressed the monks, saying: **“Monks, long hair should not be worn. Whoever should wear it (long), there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow it to be of a two months’ growth or two finger-breadths (in length).”

Kd.15.2.2

Vin.2.107

Now at that time the group of six monks smoothed their hair with a comb, they smoothed their hair with an instrument shaped like a snake’s hood,⁹ they smoothed their hair with their hands used as an instrument shaped like a snake’s hood,¹⁰ they smoothed their hair with oil of beeswax,¹¹

Kd.15.2.3

¹ *piṭṭhiparikamma*, as at SN-a.i.296. ² *puthupāṇiya*, explained at Vin-a.1200 by *hatthaparikamma*, hand treatment. ³ *pāmaṅga*. See BD.1.77, n.9. Vin-a.1200 on word in above passage says whatever is a *pāmaṅgasutta*. ⁴ *kaṅṅhasuttaka*. As at BD.1.78. ⁵ *kaṭṭhisuttaka*. See BD.1.78, n.2. ⁶ *ovaṭṭika*, perhaps round the ankles. *Ovaṭṭika* has a different sense at Kd.7.1.5. ⁷ *kāyūra*, or bracelets for above the elbow. Cf. *keyūra* at Dh-p-a.ii.220. But as noted at *Vinaya Texts* iii.69, n.5. The *Jātaka Commentary* says that *kāyūra* is an ornamental decoration for the throat. ⁸ No doubt round the wrist since they are called *hatthābharāṇa*. ⁹ *phaṇaka*. Vin-a.1200 only says something made of ivory and so on. *Vinaya Texts* iii.70, n.2 says “it was a kind of very primitive brush, but without bristles.” ¹⁰ *hatthaphaṇaka*. The hands would be held as a snake’s hood with the fingers curving forwards and the hair would be smoothed with the fingers. Cf. *phaṇahatthaka* at Vin.1.91, and see BD.4.116, n.2.

¹¹ Allowed at Vin.2.152 for use in a *vihāra*.

they smoothed their hair with oily water. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, the hair should not be smoothed with a comb ... the hair should not be smoothed with oily water. Whoever should smooth it (in any of these ways), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.2.4

Now at that time the group of six monks examined a mark on the face in a mirror and in a water-bowl.¹ People spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a mark on the face should not be examined in a mirror or in a water-bowl. Whoever should (so) examine it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”** Now at that time a certain monk had a sore on his face. He asked monks, saying: “What kind of sore have I, your reverences?” The monks spoke thus: “The sore is of such and such a kind, your reverence.” He did not believe them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, on account of a disease, to examine a mark on the face in a mirror or in a water-bowl.”

BD.5.145

Kd.15.2.5

Now at that time the group of six monks anointed their faces,² they rubbed (paste) into their faces, they powdered their faces with chunam, they smeared their faces with red arsenic, they painted their limbs, they painted their faces, they painted their limbs and faces. People spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, the face should not be anointed, the face should not be rubbed (with paste), the face should not be powdered with chunam, the face should not be smeared with red arsenic, the limbs should not be painted, the face should not be painted, limbs and faces should not be painted. Whoever should do (any of these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

¹ Cf. DN.i.80, SN.iii.105. ² Cf. Vin.2.266, Vin.iv,342.

Now at that time a certain monk was afflicted by a disease of the eyes. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, on account of disease, to anoint the face.”

Now at that time there was a festival on a mountain-top in Rājagaha.¹ The group of six monks went to see the festival on the mountain-top. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans come to see dancing and singing and music like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not go to see dancing² or singing or music. Whoever should go, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.15.2.6

Vin.2.108

Now at that time the group of six monks sang *dhamma* with a long-drawn plain-song sound.³ People ... spread it about, saying: “Even as we sing, so do these recluses, sons of the Sakyans sing *dhamma* with a long-drawn plain-song sound.” Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks sing *dhamma* with a long-drawn plain-song sound?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said ...?”

Kd.15.3.1

BD.5.146

“It is true, Lord.” ... Having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, there are these five disadvantages to one singing *dhamma* with a long-drawn plain-song sound: he is pleased with himself in regard to that sound, and others are pleased in regard to that sound, and housepeople look down upon, and while he is himself striving after accuracy in the sound⁴ there is an interruption in his concentration, and people coming after fall into the way of (wrong) views.⁵ These, monks, are the five disadvantages to one singing *dhamma* with a long-drawn plain-song sound. **Monks, *dhamma* should not be sung with a long-drawn plain-song sound. Whoever should (so) sing it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

¹ Cf. Vin.4.85 (BD.2.335, and n.) and Vin.4.267 (where the group of six nuns also go to the festival, made into an offence of expiation for them). ² Even to see a peacock dancing is an offence, Vin-a.1201. ³ Cf. AN.iii.251. ⁴ *sarakutti*. ⁵ Vin-a.1202 says the people who come after will say “our teachers and preceptors sang it thus,” and they will sing it in the same way. Cf. AN.iii.108, AN.iii.256, SN.ii.203.

Kd.15.3.2

Now at that time monks were doubtful about intoning.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow intoning.”

Kd.15.4.1

Now at that time the group of six monks wore woollen clothes with the fleece outside. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasure of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, woollen clothes with the fleece outside should not be worn. Whoever should wear them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**²

Kd.15.5.1

Now at that time the mango trees in the park of King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha were bearing fruit and it was made known by King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha: “Let the masters make as much use of the mangoes as they please.” The group of six monks, having made even young mangoes fall, made use of them. And King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha wanted a mango. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha enjoined people, saying: “Go, good sirs, having gone to the park, bring back a mango.”

BD.5.147

Vin.2.109

“Very well, your majesty,” and these people having answered King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha in assent, having gone to the park, spoke thus to the park keeper: “Good sir, his majesty wants a mango, give (us) a mango.”

“There is not a mango, masters; the monks having made even young mangoes fall, have made use of them.” Then these people told this matter to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha. He said: “Good sirs, mangoes are much enjoyed by the masters, yet it is moderation that the Lord extols.” People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not knowing moderation, make use of the king’s mangoes?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, mangoes should not be made use of. Whoever should make use of them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”³

¹ *sarabhañña*. Cf. Vin.1.196, Ja.ii.109, Dh-p-a.i.154. Explained by Buddhaghosa as *sarena bhaṇanam*, speaking (or repeating) by means of intonation. ² Vin-a.1202 here refers to the Commentary on the *bhūtagāmasikkhāpada*. This is Bu-Pc.11. (Vin.4.34; see BD.2.227, n.1.) and the Commentary is at Vin-a.759ff. ³ Cf. BD.1.101f., BD.1.108.

Kd.15.5.2

Now at that time a certain guild came to have food for an Order.¹ Mango peels were put into the curry. Monks, being scrupulous, did not accept. (The Lord said:) “Accept it, monks, make use of it. I allow you, monks, mango peels.” Now at that time a Certain guild came to have food for an Order. They did not know how to prepare the peels; they walked into the refectory with the mangoes whole. Monks, being scrupulous, did not accept. (The Lord said:) “Accept them, monks, make use of them. I allow you, monks, to make use of fruit that in five ways is allowable for recluses:² if it is damaged³ by fire, damaged by a knife, damaged by (one’s) nail, if it is seedless, and the fifth is if the seeds are discharged.⁴ I allow you, monks, to make use of fruit that in these five ways is allowable to recluses.”

Kd.15.6.1
BD.5.148

Now at that time a certain monk, bitten by a snake, passed away.⁵ They told this matter to the lord. He said: “Monks, this monk certainly did not suffuse with loving-kindness of mind the four royal snake families. For if, monks, this monk had suffused with loving-kindness of mind the four royal snake families, then this monk, although bitten by a snake, would not have passed away. What are the four royal snake families? The royal snake family of Virūpakkha,⁶ the royal snake family of Erāpatha, the royal snake family of Chabyāputta, the royal snake family of Kaṇhāgotamaka. Monks, this monk certainly did not suffuse with loving-kindness of mind these four royal snake families. For if, monks, this monk had suffused with loving-kindness of mind these four royal snake families, then this monk, although bitten by a snake, would not have passed away. Monks, I allow you to suffuse with loving-kindness of mind these four royal snake families, (and) to make a charm⁷ for the self for self-protection, for self-guarding.

Vin.2.110

¹ As at Kd.18.4.1. ² Quoted Vin-a.767. ³ These five clauses are explained in detail at Vin-a.767, which rightly reads *parijita* (damaged) instead of the above *paricita*. ⁴ Cf. Kd.6.21.1 for the last two items. ⁵ Cf. AN.ii.72 (which lays the scene in Sāvattthī) and Ja.ii.144–Ja.ii.147. ⁶ Cf. GS.ii.82, n.1. Virūpakkha is also the name of one of the Four Great Kings, the regent of the western quarter and lord of the Nāgas. ⁷ On *pariṭṭa*, charm, spell, rune, and *mettā-bhāvanā*, cf. MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Dialogues of the Buddha* iii.185f., *Sakya*, 221ff. Above reading is *attaparittam katum*; at AN.ii.72 it is *attaparittāya*, “for self-warding.”

And thus, monks, should it be made:

“Love from me for the Virūpakkhas,¹
 Love from me for the Erāpathas,
 Love from me for the Chabyāputtas,
 Love from me for the Kaṇhāgotamakās.

“Love from me for the footless,
 Love for the two-footed from me,
 Love from me for the four-footed,
 Love for the many-footed from me.

“Do not let the footless harm me,
 Do not let the two-footed harm me,
 Do not let the four-footed harm me,
 Do not let the many-footed harm me.

BD.5.149

“May all beings, all breathers, all creatures every one,
 See all lucky things;² may no evil whatever come.

“Immeasurable is the Awakened One,
 immeasurable *dhamma*,
 immeasurable the Order.
 Limited are creeping things: snakes, scorpions,
 centipedes, spinning spiders, lizards, mice.

“A protection has been made by me, a charm made by me;
 Let the creatures withdraw.
 I, even I, honour the Lord,
 I honour the seven fully self-awakened Ones.”

“I allow you, monks, to let blood.”³

Kd.15.7.1

¹ Loving-kindness or love, *mettā*, and the three other modes of the *brahmavihāras* are transferred from the mind of the suffuser to that of the being who is suffused or infused.

² *sabbe bhadrāni passantu*. Cf. DN.ii.89, *sadā bhadrāni passati*. ³ Allowed also at Vin.1.205.

Now at that time a certain monk, tormented by dissatisfaction, cut off his own male organ. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “This foolish man, monks, cut off one thing when another should have been cut off. **Monks, one should not cut off one’s own male organ. Whoever should cut it off, there is a grave offence.**”

Now at that time a block of sandal-wood of costly choice sandal-wood had accrued to a (great) merchant of Rājagaha.¹ Then it occurred to this (great) merchant of Rājagaha: “Suppose that I were to have a bowl carved out of this block of sandal-wood? The chips will be for my enjoyment, and I can also give away the bowl as a gift.” Then that (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having had a bowl carved out of that block of sandal-wood, having put a string round it,² having hung it up on the top of a bamboo (-pole), having tied it to a series of bamboo (-poles); spoke thus: “Let whatever recluse or brahmin who is a perfected one as well as of psychic power get down this bowl and (to him) it is given.”³ Then Pūraṇa Kassapa⁴ approached the (great) merchant of Rājagaha; having approached, he spoke thus to the (great) merchant of Rājagaha:

“Now I, householder, am a perfected one as well as of psychic power; give me the bowl.”

“If, revered sir, the venerable one is a perfected one as well as of psychic power, let him fetch down the bowl and it is given (to him.)”

Then Makkhali Gosāla, Ajita Kesakambalin, Pakudha Kaccāyana, Sañjaya Belaṭṭhiputta, Nātaputta the Jain approached the (great) merchant of Rājagaha; having approached ... “... it is given (to him).”

Now at that time the venerable Moggallāna the Great and the venerable

¹ This story is referred to at DN-a.ii.388 as the *Rājagaha-seṭṭhi-vatthu*. ² At Kd.15.24.1 somewhat similar actions are ascribed to a monk. ³ Cf. the words of the robber chief at Vin.3.208. ⁴ He and the five others were the six great “heretical” teachers in Gotama’s times. Their views are given at DN.i.52ff.

Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja,¹ having dressed in the morning, taking (each) his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood. Then the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja spoke thus to the venerable Moggallāna the Great:

“The venerable Moggallāna the Great is a perfected one as well as of psychic power. Go along, reverend Moggallāna, fetch down this bowl; this bowl is for you.”

“The venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja a perfected one as well as of psychic power. Go along, reverend Bhāradvāja, fetch down this bowl; this bowl is for you.”

Then the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja, having risen above the ground,² having taken hold of that bowl, circled three times round Rājagaha. Now at that time, the (great) merchant of Rājagaha was standing with his wife and children in his own dwelling holding up his joined palms in salutation, paying homage, and saying: “Honoured sir, let master Bhāradvāja come to rest just here at our dwelling.” Then the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja came to rest at the dwelling of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha. Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having taken the bowl from the hand of the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja, having filled it with costly solid foods, bestowed it on the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja. Then the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja, having taken hold of that bowl, went off to the monastery.

BD.5.151

Kd.15.8.2

People heard: “It is said that the bowl of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha was fetched down by master Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja,” and these people (making) a loud noise, a great noise, followed close after the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja. Then the Lord heard the loud noise, the great noise, and having heard it, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying: “What on earth, Ānanda, is this loud noise, this great noise?”

“Lord, the bowl of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha has been fetched down by the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja. Lord, people heard: ‘It is

¹ Verses at Thag.123, Thag.124. At AN.i.23 he is called chief of the disciples who are lion-roarers. AN-a.i.196, which gives his story including the above episode, holds that he was called Scrap-hunter, Piṇḍola, from his greed in searching for conje and rice. Other Commentaries (SN-a.ii.393, Ud-a.252) ascribe his name to the large size of his bowl. For notes on the name Piṇḍola see *Psalms of the Brethren*, p.110, n.4, and *Psalms of the Brethren*, p.415; ks.iv.68, n.1. ² *vehāsa*. See BD.1.79, n.6.

said that the bowl of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha was fetched down by the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja, and, Lord, these people (making) a loud noise, a great noise, have followed close after the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja'; this, Lord, is the loud noise, the great noise which the Lord (hears)."

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Piṇḍola the Bhāradvāja, saying:

Vin.2.112

"Is it true, as is said, Bhāradvāja, that the bowl of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha was fetched down by you?"

"It is true, Lord." The Awakened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying:

"It is not suiting, Bhāradvāja, it is not becoming, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How can you, Bhāradvāja, on account of a wretched wooden bowl exhibit a condition of further-men,¹ a wonder of psychic power to householders? As, Bhāradvāja, a woman exhibits her loin-cloth on account of a wretched stamped *māsaka*,² even so by you, Bhāradvāja, was a condition of further-men, a wonder of psychic power exhibited to householders on account of a wretched wooden bowl. It is not, Bhāradvāja, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ..." Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.5.152

"Monks, a condition of further-men, a wonder of psychic power is not to be exhibited to householders.³ Whoever should exhibit them, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Break, monks, this wooden bowl; having reduced it to fragments, give them to monks as perfume to mix with ointment.⁴ And, monks, a wooden bowl should not be used.⁵ Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing."

Kd.15.9.1

Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of bowls, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: "Like house-

¹ *uttarimanussadhamma*. See Bu-Pj.4, Bu-Pc.8, and BD.1, Introduction, p.xxiv.

² *māsakarūpa*. See BD.1.72, n.1, and BD.1.71, n.2. The word also occurs at Vin.2.294.

³ Vin-a.1203 says a miracle is objected to, not psychic power that is volitional in nature.

⁴ Cf. Vin.1.203, where sandal-wood was allowed among five perfumes (*añjanupapisana*).

⁵ Cf. BD.2.115, BD.2.415 (and n.1), and Vin.5.537.

holders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, a bowl made of gold should not be used,¹ a bowl made of silver should not be used, a bowl made of pearls ... made of beryl ... made of crystal ... made of bronze ... made of glass ... made of tin ... made of lead ... a bowl made of copper should not be used. Whoever should use (any of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, two (kinds of) bowls: an iron bowl, a clay bowl.”²

Kd.15.9.2

Now at that time the bases of the bowls were rubbed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a circular bowl-rest.”

Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of circular bowl-rests, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, various kinds of circular bowl-rests should not be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, two (kinds of) circular bowl-rests; made of tin, made of lead.” The thick circular rests could not be inserted.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to plane them.” There were jags (on them).⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cut swordfish teeth.”⁵

BD.5.153

Vin.2.113

Now at that time the group of six monks used carved⁶ circular bowl-rests, loaded with little figures, made with ornamentations, and they toured

¹ Cf. Kd.5.8.3. ² As at Vin.3.243, Vin.4.123, Vin.4.243. ³ *acchupiyanti*. Cf. Kd.8.14.1, where the word is used of “inserting a batch into a robe.” The meaning above may be “the circular rests were thick and they (i.e. the bowls) could not be inserted.” ⁴ *valim̐ honti*. *Pali-English Dictionary* suggests reading *valiyo*. Perhaps *vali* is here jag or scratch, the planing or adzing not having been well done. The jags could then be made the best of by converting them into crocodile teeth to hold the bowls. But this rendering is as conjectural as that given at *Vinaya Texts* iii.83. ⁵ See also Kd.15.11.6. ⁶ *Citra*, variegated or painted, but not always, and above it appears to be more likely “carved”.

about showing these on carriage-roads. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, carved circular bowl-rests should not be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, ordinary circular rests.”**¹

Now at that time monks (each) put away his bowl with water in it and a bowl was spoiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be put away with water in it. Whoever should (so) put it away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to put away a bowl having dried it in the sun.”**²

Kd.15.9.3

Now at that time monks (each) dried his bowl in the sun with water in it and a bowl came to smell nasty. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl with water in it should not be dried in the sun. Whoever should (so) dry it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to put away a bowl having emptied it of water,³ having dried it in the sun.”**

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl in the heat and the colour of a bowl was spoiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside in the heat. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to put away a bowl, having dried it for a short time in the sun’s heat.”**⁴

BD.5.154

Now at that time many bowls came to be laid aside in the open air without a prop. Having been blown against one another by gusts of wind, the bowls were broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a little prop for bowls.”

Kd.15.9.4

¹ Buddhaghosa says “just (or, only, *eva*) the circular rests cut with swordfish teeth.” ² Cf. Vin.1.46. ³ Cf. Vin.1.46. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.46.

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl at the edge of a solid bench.¹ Having fallen down, a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside at the edge of a solid bench. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl at the edge of a plaster flooring.² Having fallen down, a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside at the edge of a plaster flooring. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time monks (each) turned his bowl upside down³ on the ground. A rim was rubbed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a grass mat.”⁴ The grass mat was eaten by white ants. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a piece of cloth.” The piece of cloth was eaten by white ants. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a bowl-stand.”⁵ Having fallen down from a bowl-stand, a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a wicker stand for bowls.”⁶ A bowl was rubbed on the wicker stand for the bowls. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a bag for bowls.” There was no strap at the edge.

Vin.2.114

BD.5.155

¹ *miḍhante*. At [Vin.2.143](#) *miḍḍhi*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.163 say that it is built against the wall of a room or on the veranda against the outer wall of a house or hut. Often made of hardened mud with two wooden legs in front, it is a bench used to sit or sleep on. Vin-a.1203 says *ālindaka* (veranda) *miḍhakādinam ante*, and implies that some *miḍhis* are narrow. Allowed at [Vin.2.149](#) when grass mats had been eaten by rats and so on, and where *miḍhi* appears as something hard and also as something to sleep on. The meaning is not certain. ² *paribhaṇḍa*. Meaning uncertain. Vin-a.1203–Vin-a.1204 says “on the outer side, on the edge of a treated (or, made, erected, kata) narrow *miḍhi*.” On the word at [Vin.2.172](#) the Commentary says it is made of cow dung and of paste, *kāsava*, for colouring floors, walls, etc.; and on the word at [Vin.2.220](#) it says *bahi jagḡati*, he lies awake (or, watches) outside. In explaining “piece of cloth,” *coḷaka*, below, Vin-a.1204 speaks of *mattika-paribhaṇḍakatā bhūmi*, which seems to mean “earth treated with clay and plaster.” ³ See [Kd.15.20.3](#). ⁴ Allowed at [Kd.5.11.3](#) below; also at [Vin.2.148](#), to save limbs and robes from being covered with dust. ⁵ *pattamāḷaka*. Vin-a.1204 says “made of brick or made of wood”. ⁶ *pattakaṇḍolika*.

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying.”¹

Now at that time monks (each) hung his bowl on a peg in the wall² and on an “elephant-tusk” (peg).³ Having fallen down, a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be hung up. Whoever should hang one up, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.9.5

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl on a couch. Sitting down heedlessly, they broke a bowl having sat down (hard) on it.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside on a couch. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”** ... (*The same repeated for laying aside a bowl on a chair*) ...

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl on his lap. They got up heedlessly and a bowl, having fallen down, was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside on a lap. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks (each) laid aside his bowl in a sunshade.⁵ A sunshade was lifted up by gusts of wind⁶ and having fallen down a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl should not be laid aside in a sunshade. Whoever should (so) lay it aside, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks (each) opened a door⁷ when he had a bowl in his hand. As a door was blowing to and fro, a bowl was broken. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a door should not be opened when one has a bowl in one’s hand. Whoever should (so) open it, there is an**

BD.5.156

¹ Cf. Kd.6.12.4, Kd.15.11.5. See BD.4.276, n.8. ² As at Vin.3.48. Allowed at Vin.2.152. ³ As at Vin.3.48. Allowed at Vin.2.152. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.79 (BD.1.137 and n.4). ⁵ *chatta*. N.B. at Vin.1.152 this word appears to mean a large vessel or receptacle. ⁶ Cf. above Kd.15.9.4 and Vin.4.345. ⁷ See BD.1.199, n.3.

offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.15.10.1

Now at that time monks went about for almsfood (to be put) into a gourd.¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like members of other sects.”² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not go about for almsfood (to be put) into a gourd. Whoever should (so) go about, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.2.115

Now at that time monks went about for almsfood (to be put) into a water-pot. People ... (as above) ... **“offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.10.2

Now at that time a certain monk came to be a wearer of nothing but rag-robcs;³ he carried a bowl made from a skull. A certain woman, terrified at having seen him, uttered a scream of horror;⁴ “How terrible for me, indeed it is a demon⁵ after me.” People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans carry a bowl made from a skull, like demon-worshippers?”⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a bowl made from a skull should not be carried. Whoever should carry one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor, monks, should you be a wearer of nothing but rag-robcs. Whoever should be, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.10.3

Now at that time monks took back in their bowls odd bits and bones and impure water.⁷ People ... spread it about, saying: “That very thing from which these recluses, sons of the Sakyans eat, that is simply their wastetub.”⁸ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, odd bits and bones and impure water should not be taken back in a bowl. Whoever**

¹ Cf. Vin.1.90 (BD.4.114) = BD.3.245 (BD.2.119) where they went about for almsfood to be put into their hands. ² See BD.2.119, n.4. ³ Buddhaghosa says that in this case his robes, couch and chair were from a rag-heap. ⁴ Cf. MN.i.448. ⁵ *pisāca*, as at MN.i.448. MN-a.iii.165 explains, “a demon (*pisāca*) has come to eat me.” ⁶ *pisācillikā*. Word occurs at Vin.1.152, Vin.2.134, Snp-a.357. ⁷ Same list found at Vin.4.266 in definition of *vighāsa*, “scraps of food.” ⁸ *paṭiggaha*, a receptacle, a receiving thing. Word occurs below Kd.15.11.5. (meaning thimble), but cf. *udakap-* at Vin.2.213.

should (so) take (these things) back, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, a waste-tub.”

Now at that time monks were sewing robe-material having ripped it up with their hands. The robe-material became unsightly.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a small knife, a piece of felt² (to wrap round it).” Now at that time a small knife with a handle³ accrued to the Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a small knife with a handle.” Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of small knives with handles, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, various kinds of small knives with handles should not be used. Whoever should use (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them, monks, to be made of bone, made of ivory, made of horn, made of reeds, made of bamboo, made of pieces of stick, made of lac, made of crystal, made of copper, made of the inside of a conch-shell.”⁴

Kd.15.11.1
BD.5.157

Now at that time monks sewed robe-material with a cock’s feather and with bamboo-rind⁵ and the robe-material came to be badly sewn. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow you a needle.” The needles became rusty.⁶ “I allow you, monks, a tube for (holding) the needles.”⁷ Even in the tubes they became rusty. “I allow you, monks, to fill them with yeast.”⁸ Even in the yeast they became rusty. “I allow you, monks, to fill them with barley-meal.”⁹ Even in the barley-meal they became rusty. “I allow you, monks, powdered stone.” Even in the powdered stone they became rusty. “I allow you, monks, to have it mixed with beeswax.” The powdered stone

Kd.15.11.2

Vin.2.116

BD.5.158

¹ *viloma*. ² *namataka*, allowed again at [Vin.2.123](#), [Vin.2.134](#). Word also found at [Vin.2.267](#)
³ *daṇḍasatthaka*. ⁴ Cf. [Kd.6.12.1](#), and see [BD.4.276](#) for notes. ⁵ *veḷupesikā*. Word found at [DN.ii.324](#). ⁶ *kaṇṇakita*, spoiled in some way, probably rusty, blunt or stained. The word appears to be used in the sense of stained (of the ground and of a wall) at [Kd.1.25.15](#)=[Kd.18.1.3](#); and in the sense of stained, soiled or spoiled (of robes) at Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.24](#). [Vin-a.1205](#) explains as *mallaḡahitā honti* (variant reading *malaggaḡahitā*). *Mala* may mean rust. [Vinaya Texts](#) iii.91 translates as “blunt.” ⁷ *sūcināḷika*. [Bu-Pc.86](#) makes it an offence to have a *sūcighara* made of bone, ivory or horn. ⁸ *kiṇṇa*, explained at [Vin-a.1205](#) as *kiṇṇacuṇṇa*. ⁹ *rattu*. Oldenberg’s text reads *satthu*. Cf. [BD.2.322](#), n.4.

broke up. “I allow you, monks, powdered stone (mixed) with gum.”¹

Kd.15.11.3

Now at that time monks, having driven in posts here and there, having tied them together, sewed robe-material. The robe-material became misshapen at the corners.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a *kaṭhina*-frame³ (and) strings for the *kaṭhina*-frame⁴ (and) to sew robe-material having tied it down here and there.” They spread out a *kaṭhina*-frame in an uneven place; the *kaṭhina*-frame was split. **“Monks, a *kaṭhina*-frame should not be spread out in an uneven place. Whoever should (so) spread one out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”** They spread out a *kaṭhina*-frame on the ground. The *kaṭhina*-frame was soiled by dust. “I allow you, monks, a grass mat.”⁵ An edge of the *kaṭhina*-frame was injured.⁶ “I allow you, monks, to put on a braiding, a binding.”⁷ The *kaṭhina*-frame was not large enough.⁸ “I allow you, monks, a stick in the *kaṭhina*-frame,⁹ a skewer,¹⁰ a slip of wood,¹¹ a cord for tying,¹² a thread for

BD.5.159

¹ *saritasipāṭika*; cf. *hinguṣipāṭika* at Vin.1.201 (Kd.6.7). But Vin-a.1206 explains as *madhusit-thakapilotikam satthakosakam*, a little cloth for the beeswax, a little sheath for a knife. Cf. also below, BD.5.185, n.4. ² *vikaṇṇa*, as at Vin.1.297. ³ *kaṭhina* here, as pointed out at Vinaya Texts iii.92, n.8 “is evidently a sort of framework.” Vin-a.1206 says it “is a *nisseṇi* (ladder, frame?) and another should be spread (*attharati*) there for the mats.” Or the translation of this may be: “the *nisseṇi* should be spread out there and another for the mats.” The verb used here in connection with *kaṭhina* is *pattharati*, to spread out, to extend; whereas *attharati* is the verb used in connection with the formal making up of the *kaṭhina*-cloth; see BD.2.26, n.3 and Kd.7. ⁴ *kaṭhinarajja* (variant reading *rajju*). Vin-a.1206 says “those who are sewing robe-material double, tie the robe-material to the *kaṭhina* (-frame).” ⁵ As at Kd.15.9.4 above. ⁶ *jīrati*, or “wore out (with age).” This would begin a new idea, and perhaps this is intended. On the other hand, to say that it was hurt or damaged would imply that the grass mat was not big enough to protect the edges of the frame, and thus the same idea would be continued. ⁷ *anuvāta paribhaṇḍa*. See BD.2.409, n.7, n.8 (where also further references are given). These two words occur at Vin.1.254 as representing things which must have a place in the making of the *kaṭhina*-cloth into robes; and again at Vin.1.297 as representing things to be used in strengthening robes. ⁸ Vin-a.1206 says the frame was made according to the height of a tall monk, but when the robe-material was being (formally) made there, it did not suffice for (even) a short monk. ⁹ *daṇḍakaṭhina*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says that this is *kaṭhina*-cloth stretched on a stick (for the purpose of measuring). Vin-a.1206 says, “it means: ‘I allow you to bind another frame (*nisseṇi*) of the height of such and such a monk in the middle of that one’” (i.e. of the original *nisseṇi*, by which the Commentary has already explained *kaṭhina*).

tying,¹ and having tied the robe-material, to sew it.” The spaces between the threads became unequal.² “I allow you, monks, a mark³ (to keep the spaces between the threads equal).” The threads became crooked. “I allow you, monks, a false thread.”⁴

Kd.15.11.4

Now at that time monks trod on a *kaṭhina*-frame with unwashed feet; the *kaṭhina*-frame was damaged. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a *kaṭhina*-frame should not be trodden upon if your feet are unwashed. Whoever should (so) tread upon (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks trod on a *kaṭhina*-frame with damp feet ... He said: **“Monks, a *kaṭhina*-frame should not be trodden upon if your feet are damp. Whoever should (so) tread upon (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks trod on a *kaṭhina*-frame with their sandals on.⁵ ... He said: **“Monks, a *kaṭhina*-frame should not be trodden upon if you have your sandals on. Whoever should (so) tread upon (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.11.5

Now at that time monks, sewing robes, pricked⁶ their fingers; their fingers became painful. They told this matter to the Lord. He said. “Monks,

¹⁰ *pidalaka* (Vin-a.1206 *vidalaka*). Vin-a.1206 says, “it is for making double, having drawn back the ends (*pariyante*) of the mat in accordance with the measure of the stick in the *kaṭhina*-frame.” ¹¹ *salāka*. Vin-a.1206 explains as a slip of wood going in between a double piece of robe-material. ¹² *vinandhanarajju*. Vin-a.1206 says “a cord tying the smaller frame (*nisseṇi*) together with the large frame there.” ¹ *vinandhanasuttaka*. Vin-a.1206, “thread for tying the robe-material to the smaller frame.” ² *visamā*. Vin-a.1206 says that some were large, some small. ³ *kaḷimbhaka*. Vin-a.1206 says “talipot palm leaves and so on—whatever does for knowing the (right) measure.” ⁴ *moghasuttaka*. Vin-a.1206 says “for recognition by a yellow thread, as carpenters go by a black thread on a piece of wood”. See BD.4.354 and cf. Vin-a.1110 in explanation of *bandhanamattena*. In both cases the false thread is a guide. ⁵ See BD.3.144, n.1. ⁶ *paṭiḅaṅhanti*.

Vin.2.117
BD.5.160

I allow a thimble.”¹ Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of thimbles, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, various kinds of thimbles should not be used. Whoever should use them, there is an offence of wrongdoing.** I allow them, monks, to be made of bone ... made of the inside of a conch-shell.”

Now at that time needles and small knives and thimbles were lost. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a small bowl to hold (these things in).”² (The contents of) the small bowls got in a muddle. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a bag for thimbles.” There was no strap at the edge. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying.”³

Kd.15.11.6

Now at that time as monks were sewing robes in the open air they were bothered by cold and heat.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a hall for the *kaṭhina*-frame, a hut for the *kaṭhina*-frame.” A hall for the *kaṭhina*-frame was low to the ground,⁵ it was flooded by water. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make it high to the ground.” The piling collapsed. “I allow you, monks, to pile up three (kinds of) pilings: a piling of bricks, a piling of stones, a piling of wood.”⁶ They were inconvenienced as they were ascending. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) staircases: a staircase of bricks, a staircase of stones, a staircase of wood.” As they were ascending they fell off. “I allow, monks, a balustrade.”⁷ Powdered grass⁸ fell into the hall for the *kaṭhina*-frame. “I allow you, monks, having lashed⁹ on (a roof¹⁰), to give a smearing in-

BD.5.161

¹ *paṭiggaha*. Cf. above, [BD.5.156](#). ² *āvesanavithaka*. *Āvesana* is dwelling, *vittha* a bowl, as in *surāvitha* at [Ja.v.427](#), [Dhp-a.iii.66](#). [Vin-a.1206](#) explains by *pāti*- (bowl) *caṅgoṭakādi* (box and so on). ³ As at [Kd.6.12.4](#). ⁴ Cf. this passage with [Kd.15.14.2](#), [Kd.15.14.3](#), [Kd.16.3.6](#). ⁵ Cf. this passage with [Kd.15.14.2](#). ⁶ As at [Kd.15.16.2](#), [Kd.15.17.2](#), [Kd.16.3.3](#). ⁷ *ālambanabāha*. *Ālambana* by itself is “the plinth of a railing or balustrade,” A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol. 48, No. 3, p.251. ⁸ *tiṇacuṇṇa*, as at [Vin.1.203](#). ⁹ *ogumphetvā*. Cf. *ogumphiyanti* at [Vin.1.194](#). ¹⁰ So [Vin-a.1207](#), *chadanariṇ odhunitvā*.

side and outside,¹ whitewash,² black colouring, red chalk, wreath-work, creeper-work, swordfish teeth, the five (pieces of) cloth design, a bamboo for hanging up robe-material,³ a cord for hanging up robe-material.”⁴

Now at that time monks, having sewn robe-material, went away having left the *kaṭhina*-frame at that very place, and it was eaten by rats and white ants. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to fold up the *kaṭhina*-frame.” A *kaṭhina*-frame was split. “I allow you, monks, to fold up the *kaṭhina*-frame by using a wooden rod.”⁵ A *kaṭhina*-frame was twisted out of position.⁶ “I allow you, monks, a cord for tying it.” Now at that time monks, having lifted up the *kaṭhina*-frame on to walls and posts, went away and the *kaṭhina*-frame, having fallen down, was split. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to hang it on a peg in a wall or on an ‘elephant-tusk’ (peg).”

Kd.15.11.7

Then the Lord having stayed in Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting set out on tour for Vesālī. Now at that time the monks went along (each) taking his needle and small knife and medicine in his bowl. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a bag for medicine.” There was no strap at the edge. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying.”

Kd.15.12.1

Vin.2.118

Now at that time a certain monk, having tied his sandals to his girdle entered a village for almsfood. A certain lay-follower, greeting that monk, knocked up against the sandals with his head. That monk became ashamed. Then that monk, having arrived at a monastery, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks,

Bd.5.162

¹ *ullitāvalitta*, as in definition of “hut” and “dwelling-place” at Vin.3.149, Vin.3.156 respectively (see BD.1.267, n.3). ² This and the following terms, as far as “five (pieces of) cloth design,” mentioned again at Vin.2.121, Vin.4.47. Cf. Vin.2.172. For notes see BD.2.259. ³ Allowed at Vin.1.286. ⁴ Allowed at Vin.1.286. ⁵ *goghaṃsikā*. I do not follow the meaning as given at Vinaya Texts iii.98, for monks were not allowed to use cowhides (Vin.1.193). Vin-a.1207 says, “having arranged (*katvā*) a bamboo or a stick (*daṇḍaka*) from a tree inside, to fold it up (i.e. the frame) together with that.” ⁶ *viveṭhiyati*.

a bag for sandals.” There was no strap at the edge. “I allow you, monks, a strap at the edge, a thread for tying.”

Kd.15.13.1

Now at that time on a certain road there was water that was not allowable¹ (for) there was no strainer. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a strainer.” A little piece of cloth was not enough. “I allow, monks, a strainer on a ladle.” The little piece of cloth was not enough. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow a regulation waterpot.”²

Kd.15.13.2

Now at that time two monks were going along a high road in the Kosalan country. One monk indulged in bad habits.³ The other monk spoke thus to that monk: “Do not do that, your reverence, it is not allowable.” He grumbled at him. Then that monk, tormented by thirst, spoke thus to the monk who had grumbled: “Give me the strainer,⁴ your reverence, I will drink (some) water.” The monk who had grumbled did not give it. That monk passed away, tormented by thirst. Then that monk, having arrived at a monastery, told this matter to the monks. They said: “But did you, your reverence, (although) being asked, not give a strainer?”

“No, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this monk, when being asked for a strainer, not give it?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned this monk, saying:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, when being asked for a strainer, did not give it?”

“It is true, Lord.” The enlightened one, the Lord rebuked him, saying:

“It is not suitable in you, foolish man, it is not becoming, it is not fitting, it is not worthy of a recluse, it is not allowable, it is not to be done. How can you, foolish man, when being asked for a strainer, not give it? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having

BD.5.163

Vin.2.119

¹ Doubtless meaning that it had “living creatures” in it—an offence to make use of water like this, [Bu-Pc.62](#), and *cf.* [Bu-Pc.20](#). ² *dhammakaraka*, as at [Vin.2.177](#), [Vin.2.302](#). *Cf.* [Dhp-a.iii.290](#). ³ *Cf.* [Vin.4.83](#) ([BD.2.332](#)). ⁴ It looks as if the strainer, at the date of this episode, was communal, one serving a number of monks. At [Vin.2.302](#) it is given among a “recluse’s requisites.”

rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, if a monk is going along a highroad and is being asked for a strainer, he should not give it. Whoever should not give it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. Nor, monks, should you go along a highway without a strainer. Whoever should (so) go, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If there is not a strainer nor a regulation water-pot, then a corner of the outer cloak should be determined upon with the words, ‘I will drink (water) having strained it with this’.”

Then the Lord, walking on tour gradually arrived at Vesālī. The Lord stayed there in Vesālī in the Great Grove at the Hall of the Gabled Pillars. Now at that time monks were making repairs. The water-strainer did not cease (to be in use¹). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a double water-strainer.”² The double water-strainer did not cease (to be in use). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a filter.”³ Now at that time monks were pestered by mosquitoes. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a mosquito-net.”⁴

Kd.15.13.3

Now at that time at Vesālī a succession of meals of sumptuous foods came to be arranged.⁵ Monks, having eaten the sumptuous foods, became very ill with their bodies full of (bad) humours.⁶ Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca went to Vesālī on some business or other. Jīvaka Komārabhacca saw the

Kd.15.14.1

BD.5.164

¹ *na sammati*, did not rest, cease. The meaning must be that the thirsty monks made such constant demands upon it that it did not meet their needs and that therefore something larger was wanted to give more water and more quickly. ² *daṇḍaparissāvana*. Cf. *daṇḍasatthaka* and *daṇḍakaṭhina* at [Kd.15.11.1](#), [Kd.15.11.3](#). *Vinaya Texts* iii.102 gives “double strainer” with note that it is “apparently a long box, both ends of which strain the water which is poured into the middle by means of a pipe (*daṇḍaka*).” *Daṇḍakaṭhina* certainly has nearly the meaning of a “double *kaṭhina*-frame.” *Vin-a.1207* says “like dyers’ strainers for alkaline dyes, having tied a piece of cloth to the four ends of a frame, water should be poured into a pipe (*daṇḍaka*) in the middle. Then you strain, having filled both the divisions.” ³ *ottharaka*, a kind of strainer. It seems, from Buddhaghosa’s remarks, that this is a strainer which by means of four pipes filters water that monks can then take in a pitcher. ⁴ *makasakuṭikā*, or mosquito-curtain. *Vin-a.1207* explains by *cīvarakuṭikā*. Does this mean a little hut (made of robe-material)? ⁵ As at [Vin.4.75](#); [Vin.1.57](#) (*Rājagaha*), [Vin.1.248](#) (*Kusinārā*). ⁶ As at [Vin.1.206](#).

monks who were very ill with their bodies full of (bad) humours; seeing them, he approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Jīvaka Komārabhacca spoke thus to the Lord:

“At present, Lord, monks are very ill with their bodies full of (bad) humours. It were well, Lord, if the Lord allowed the monks a place for pacing up and down in and a bathroom.¹ Thus will the monks come to have few afflictions.”² Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Jīvaka Komārabhacca with talk on *dhamma*. Then Jīvaka Komārabhacca, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, a place for pacing up and down in, and a bathroom.”

Kd.15.14.2

Vin.2.120

Now at that time monks paced up and down in an uneven place for pacing up and down in; their feet became painful. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make it level.” A place for pacing up and down in was low to the ground; it was flooded by water. “I allow you, monks, to make it high to the ground ... (as in Kd.15.11.6) ... I allow you, monks, a balustrade.”

BD.5.165

Now at that time, monks, as they were pacing up and down in the place for pacing up and down in, fell off. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a railing round the place for pacing up and down in.”³ Now at that time monks, pacing up and down in the open air, were bothered by cold and heat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a hall in the place for pacing up and down in.” Powdered

¹ *jantāghara*, as at Kd.1.25.12; see BD.4.62, and *Vinaya Texts* iii.103, n.2. ² *appābādā*. Jīvaka was probably taking a wider view of maintaining the monks' health than the “convalescent” of *Vinaya Texts* iii.103 allows for. ³ *caṅkamanavedikā*. As noted by A.K. COOMARASWAMY in *Indian Architectural Terms*, *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, Vol. 48, No. 3, p.273 (*q.v.* for further references), DN.ii.179 gives the component parts of a *vedikā*: the uprights, the cross-bars and the coping. Cf. *vedikāvātapāna* at Kd.16.2.2.

grass fell into the hall in the place for pacing up and down in. “I allow you, monks, having lashed on (a roof) ... (as in [Kd.15.11.6](#)) ... a cord for hanging up robe-material.”

Kd.15.14.3

A bathroom was low to the ground; it was flooded by water. “I allow you, monks, to make it high to the ground ... (as in [Kd.15.11.6](#)) ... a balustrade.” There was no door¹ to a bathroom. “I allow, monks, a door, a doorpost and lintel,² a hollow like a mortar (for the door to revolve in³), a small upper projection,⁴ a post for the bolt,⁵ a ‘monkey’s head,’⁶ a pin (to secure the bolt),⁷ a (stick used as a) bolt,⁸ a keyhole,⁹ a hole for pulling through (the cord),¹⁰ cord for pulling through.”¹¹

The lower part of the lath and plaster wall¹² of a bathroom decayed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a facing (round it).”¹³ The bathroom had no pipe for the steam.¹⁴ “I allow, monks, a pipe for the steam.”

Bd.5.166

¹ *kavāṭa*, the door itself, that which closes the aperture. ² *piṭṭhasariṅghāṭa*. Allowed again with the two following items at [Kd.16.2.1](#). ³ *udukkhaliḥka*. I follow translation at *Vinaya Texts* iii.105. ⁴ *uttarapāsaka*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.105 “projections to revolve in these hollows.” ⁵ *aggaḷavaṭṭi*. Vin-a.1207 says, “the same measure as the doorpost, *dvārabāhā*, it is simply called *aggaḷathambha* (post for a bolt or bar). Having made three or four holes there, they put in pins” (*sūci*, or cross-bars). ⁶ *kapisīsaka*. Vin-a.1207 says, “this means, having perforated the doorpost, it is called a bolt-projection, *aggaḷapāsaka*, put in there”. *Critical Pali Dictionary* (under *aggaḷapāsaka*) notes that “according to Vin-a ([Vin.2.120](#))=*kapisīsaka*, quadrangular end of the bolt of a door, Sacred Books of the East xx.106.” Cf. DN.ii.143, *kapisīsam ālambitvā ṭhito*, which DN-a.584 explains as *kapisīsakam ti dvārabāhakoṭiyam ṭhitam aggaḷarukkhām*, “a piece of wood for the bolt fixed at the top of the doorpost.” It must be a hole or cavity to receive the bolt. The word also occurs at Ja.iii.23. ⁷ *sūcika*. Vin-a.1207 says, “it is put in, having made a hole in the middle there” (i.e. in the “monkey’s head”). Cf. *aggaḷasūci* at MN.i.126, “the pin for the bolt.” ⁸ *ghaṭikā*. Vin-a.1207 merely says “joined above,” *upari yojitā*. Cf. *ghaṭikam ugghāṭetvā*, having undone the bolt, at [Vin.2.207](#), and *sūciḡhaṭikā* at [Vin.2.237](#), SN.iv.290, Ud.52. It is explained at Ud-a.298: *sūciḡhaṭikā* means having fixed (*ādahitvā*, variant reading *ādim katvā*) the pin for the bolt, *aggaḷasūci*, and the upper bolt, *upariḡhaṭikā*, having closed it firmly. The *ghaṭikā* would appear to be a subsidiary bolt, the main one being the *aggaḷa*. ⁹ Cf. below, [Vin.5.207](#). ¹⁰ *āviñchanachidda*. This and the next allowed again at [Kd.16.2.1](#) because there doors could not be made to meet (the doorposts), *na phassīyanti*. ¹¹ *āviñchanarajju*. ¹² *kuḍḍapāda*; also below [Kd.16.3.4](#) of a dwelling-place and where a different remedy was “allowed.” ¹³ *maṇḍalikaṃ kātum*. Vin-a.1207 says *nīcavatthukam cinitum*, “to pile low to the ground,” for which expression cf. [Kd.15.11.6](#). ¹⁴ *dhūmanetta*. Cf. [Kd.6.13.2](#). Vin-a.1207 says a hole for letting out the steam.

Now at that time monks made a fireplace in the middle of a small bathroom, and there was no access.¹ “I allow you, monks, to make a fireplace at one side of a small bathroom, in the middle of a large one.” The fire in the bathroom scorched their faces. “I allow, monks, clay for the face.”² They moistened the clay with their hands. “I allow, monks, a tub for the clay.” The clay came to smell nasty. “I allow you, monks, to cure³ it.” The fire in the bathroom scorched their bodies. “I allow you, monks, to take in water.” They took in water in dishes and bowls. “I allow you, monks, a receptacle for water,⁴ a saucer⁵ for the water.” A bathroom with a grass roofing did not make them sweat. “I allow you, monks, having lashed on (a roof),⁶ to give it a smearing inside and outside.” The bathroom became swampy. “I allow you, monks, to spread three (kinds of) spreadings: a spreading of bricks, a spreading of stones, a spreading of wood.”⁷ Even so it became swampy. “I allow you, monks, to wash it.” Water remained. “I allow, monks, a drain for the water.”⁸ Now at that time monks sat down on the ground in a bathroom and they got pins and needles in their limbs. “I allow, monks, a chair for the bathroom.” Now at that time a bathroom was not fenced in. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences to fence it in with: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.”⁹

Vin.2.121

Kd.15.14.4

There was no porch.¹⁰ “I allow, monks, a porch.” The porch was low to the ground; it was flooded by water. “I allow you, monks, to make it high to the ground ... (as in Kd.15.11.6) ... a balustrade.” There was no door to the porch. “I allow, monks, a door, doorposts and lintel ... (as in Kd.15.14.3) ... a hole for pulling through (the cord), cord for pulling through.” Powdered grass fell on to the porch. “I allow you, monks, having lashed on (a roof), to give it a smearing inside and outside, whitewash, black colouring, red

BD.5.167

¹ *upacāra* as in Kd.16.3.3. ² *mukhamattikā*. Cf. Kd.1.25.12. ³ *vāsetuṃ*, in the sense of to prepare, to treat, as at Kd.6.17. Buddhaghosa says “to cure with perfumes.” ⁴ *udakaṭṭhāna*. Buddhaghosa reads *udakanidhāna*, a receptacle for water, and explains, “a place for putting water; having put the water in a pitcher (*ghaṭa*) there, one can use it by means of a saucer” (or cup). ⁵ *sarāvaka*, as at Vin.1.203. Cf. *ācamanasarāvaka* at Kd.15.35.4. ⁶ See above, Kd.15.11.6. ⁷ As in Kd.15.17.1. ⁸ As at end of Kd.15.14.5; Kd.15.17.2. ⁹ As at Kd.15.17.1; cf. Vin.4.266. ¹⁰ *koṭṭhaka*. Vin-a.1208 says this means *dvārakoṭṭhaka*, gateway in the porch. See Kd.15.35.4

chalk, garland design, creeper design, swordfish teeth, the five (pieces of) cloth design.”¹

Kd.15.14.5

A cell became swampy.² “I allow you, monks, to sprinkle gravel.”³ They did not succeed in doing so. “I allow you, monks, to lay down flagstones.” Water remained. “I allow, monks, a drain for the water.”⁴

Kd.15.15.1

Now at that time monks, while naked,⁵ greeted others who were naked and caused others who were naked to greet them; did a service to others who were naked and made others do a service to those who were naked; while naked they gave to others who were naked, accepted naked, ate naked, partook of naked, tasted naked, drank naked. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, one who is naked should neither greet nor be greeted by one who is naked; one who is naked should not cause another to greet nor to be greeted by one who is naked; a service for one who is naked should not be done by one who is naked, a service for one who is naked should not be caused to be done by one who is naked; one who is naked should not give to a naked one, one who is naked should not accept, one who is naked should not eat, one who is naked should not partake of, ... should not taste ... should not drink. Whoever should (so) drink, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.15.16.1

Now at that time monks laid aside their robes on the ground in a bathroom; the robes became soiled with dust.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a bamboo for robes, a cord for robes.” When it rained the robes got wet. “I allow, monks, a hall in the bathroom.” The hall in the bathroom was low to the ground. “I allow, monks, ... (as in Kd.15.11.6) ... a balustrade.” Powdered grass fell on to the hall in the bathroom. “I allow you, monks, having lashed on (a roof) ... (as in Kd.15.11.6) ... a bamboo for robes, a cord for robes.”

BD.5.168

Vin.2.122

Kd.15.16.2

¹ As at Kd.15.11.6. ² As at Kd.15.35.4; Kd.16.3.8. ³ *marumbā*, as in Bu-Pc.10 in definition of “natural ground” (see BD.2.224 and n.1). ⁴ As in Kd.15.14.3. ⁵ That is, in the bathroom.

⁶ As at Kd.15.11.3.

Now at that time monks were doubtful about doing a service both when in a bathroom and in the water. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, three (kinds of) coverings: a covering to the bathroom, a covering to the water, a covering by clothes."¹

Now at that time there was no water in a bathroom. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, a well." The facing of the well fell in.² "I allow you, monks, to pile up three (kinds of) pilings: a piling of bricks, a piling of stones, a piling of wood." The well was low to the ground ... (as in [Kd.15.11.6](#)) "... I allow, monks, a balustrade."

Now at that time monks drew water by means of jungle rope, and by means of a waistband. "I allow you, monks, a cord for drawing water." Their hands became painful. "I allow, monks, a well-sweep,³ a hand-wheel,⁴ a wheel and buckets."⁵ Many vessels were broken. "I allow monks, three (kinds of) jars: a copper jar, a wooden jar, strips of animals' hide."⁶

Now at that time monks, drawing water in the open air, were bothered by cold and heat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, a hall for a well." Powdered grass fell on to the hall for a well. "I allow, monks, ... (as in [Kd.15.11.6](#)) ... a bamboo for robes, a cord for robes." The well was not covered. It was littered with powdered grass and with dust. "I allow,

BD.5.169

¹ Vin-a.1208 says that the two former are for doing a service, but not for greeting, etc., the last is for doing all kinds of services. ² As at [Kd.5.17.2](#). ³ *tulā*. Vin-a.1208 says "a pole for lifting up (or pulling up, *ubbāhana*) the water like that used for vegetables, *paṇṇikānaṃ*." A.K. COOMARASWAMY says it means here "well-sweep," *Indian Architectural Terms*, p.271, which also see for the two following terms. The three terms indicate different methods of pulling up water. Editors *Vinaya Texts* iii.112 had a corrupt copy of the Commentary before them. ⁴ *karakaṭaka*. *Kaṭaka* is anything circular, so a wheel. Vin-a.1208 says "either having harnessed it to bullocks or having taken it with the hands, it is an instrument with a long strap for pulling up" (a bucket of water). ⁵ *cakkavaṭṭaka*. Vin-a.1208 says "it is a contrivance for jars to be taken off the spokes of a wheel," *arahaṭaghaṭiyantaṃ* (variant reading *arahattaghaṭi*-). ⁶ Vin-a.1208, "a hide vessel that can be joined to the well-sweep or the hand-wheel."

monks, a lid.”¹ There was no vessel for the water. “I allow, monks, a trough for water, a pot² for water.”

Now at that time monks bathed here, there and everywhere in a monastery; the monastery became swampy. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a pool.” The pool was public. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences to fence it in: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.”³ The pool became swampy. “I allow you, monks, to spread three (kinds of) spreadings: a spreading of bricks, a spreading of stones, a spreading of wood.”⁴ The water remained. “I allow, monks, a drain.”⁵ Now at that time monks’ limbs cooled down. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a wiper (with which to wipe off) the water⁶ and to sponge yourselves down with a cloth.”⁷

Kd.15.17.1

Now at that time a certain lay follower was anxious to build a tank for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a tank.” The facing of the tank fell in.⁸ “I allow you, monks, to pile up three (kinds of) pilings: a piling of bricks, a piling of stones, a piling of wood.”⁹ They were inconvenienced as they were ascending. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) staircases: a staircase of bricks, a staircase of stones, a staircase of wood.”¹⁰ As they were ascending they fell off. “I allow, monks, a balustrade.” The water in the tank became stale. “I allow, monks, a pipe for the water,¹¹ a drain for the water.”

Kd.15.17.2

Vin.2.123

BD.5.170

¹ *apīdhāna*, as at Kd.16.12.2. ² *kaṭāha*, or receptacle. ³ As at Kd.15.14.3. ⁴ As at Kd.15.14.3. ⁵ As at Kd.15.14.3, Kd.15.14.5. ⁶ *udakapuñchani*. In view of the fact that Buddhaghosa says “made of ivory, made of horn, made of wood,” it cannot unhesitatingly be rendered “towel” (as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.114). Yet the three sorts allowed at Vin.2.174 are those of bearskin, drapery and cloth and Buddhaghosa mentions *colakapādapuñchana* in Commentary on Kd.16.2.2. Cf. *pādapuñchani* at Vin.4.40. The word also occurs at Vin.4.168 (BD.3.89). ⁷ *colakena paccuddharitum* as at Kd.16.3.1. ⁸ As at Kd.15.16.2. ⁹ As at Kd.15.11.6. ¹⁰ As at Kd.15.11.6. ¹¹ *udakāyatika*. Vin-a.1208 (reading *udakamātikā*, a channel, course, as does Sinhalese edition of *Vinaya*) says this is a *mātikā* for bringing water in. The drain will have been to lead it away.

Now at that time a certain monk was anxious to build a bathroom with a curving roof¹ for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a bathroom with a curving roof.”

Kd.15.18.1

Now at that time the group of six monks were away, separated from² their pieces of cloth to sit upon³ for four months. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not be away, separated from your pieces of cloth to sit upon for four months. Whoever should be (so) away, separated from, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks lay down to sleep on beds which were scattered over with flowers. People, touring the dwelling-place, having seen them ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not lie down to sleep on beds scattered over with flowers. Whoever should (so) lie down to sleep, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time people, taking scents and garlands, came to a monastery. Monks being scrupulous, did not accept them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having taken the scents, to give the five-finger mark⁴ on the door; having taken the flowers, to lay them down in a dwelling-place at one side.”

Kd.15.19.1

¹ This rendering is taken from Vin-a.1208 which says that *nillekha* is called “a projection curving at the side, *āviddhapakkhapāsaka*; having fixed the side projections in the upper round part, *uparimaṇḍale*, of the beams, this (i.e. *nillekha*) is the name of the finished covering roof.” One might compare the “curved house,” *aḍḍhayoga*, of Vin.1.58 and other passages. See BD.4.75. ² *vippavasati*; see Bu-NP.2. ³ See Bu-NP.15, Vin.3.232 where *nisīdana* is defined, and BD.2.87, n.2, n.3. ⁴ *kavāṭe pañcaṅgulikaṃ dātum*. See article on *pañcaṅgulika* in *Pali-English Dictionary*. It is either a magical and protective or a decorative mark. At the present day impressions of the human hand are still made on walls in India, the hand having been first dipped in some colouring matter. See also *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1884, p.84f. *Pañcaṅgulikaṃ datvā* occurs at Ja.i.166 in connection with slaying a goat; at Ja.i.192 (*gandhena pañc- datvā*) of an ox; at Ja.ii.104, Ja.iii.23 of a tree, and also as *lohitapañc-* of a tree at Ja.iii.160.

Now at that time a piece of felt¹ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a piece of felt.” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, should a piece of felt be allotted or should it be assigned?”² “A piece of felt, monks, should be neither allotted nor assigned.”

BD.5.171

Now at that time the group of six monks ate (leaning against) chased cushions.³ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not eat (leaning against) chased cushions. Whoever should (so) eat there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.2.124

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill. While he was eating he was not able to hold a bowl in his hand. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks a stand.”⁴

Now at that time the group of six monks ate from one dish⁵ and drank from one beaker and shared one couch⁶ and shared one cloth and shared one covering and shared one covering-cloth.⁷ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not eat from one dish nor drink from one beaker nor share one couch nor share one cloth nor share one covering nor share one covering-cloth. Whoever should share (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.19.2

Now at that time the Licchavi Vaḍḍha was a friend of the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka.⁸ Then the Licchavi Vaḍḍha

Kd.15.20.1

¹ *namataka*, as at [Vin.2.115](#), [Vin.2.134](#). Vin-a.1208 on its meaning above says that it is made of sheep’s wool (or goats’ hair, *eḷakaloma*). ² Not included among the articles about which the same question was asked at [Vin.1.296-7](#). ³ *āsittakūpadhāna*. Vin-a.1208 says that a synonym for this is “a *peḷā* (basket, chest?) made of copper or silver.” ⁴ *maḷorikā*. Vin-a.1208 explains as a prop (made of) sticks, *daṇḍādāhā aka*. ⁵ As lax monks did at [Vin.2.10](#), [Vin.3.180](#). ⁶ As the lax monks and as two nuns did at [Vin.4.288](#) (see [BD.3.304](#)). ⁷ As the lax monks and as the two nuns at [Vin.4.289](#) (see [BD.3.30, n](#)). ⁸ Cf. [Vin.2.78f.](#), [Vin.3.162](#).

approached the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka; having approached, he spoke thus to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “I salute you, masters.” When he had spoken thus, the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond. And a second time ... And a third time did the Licchavi Vaḍḍha speak thus to the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka: “I salute you, masters.” And a third time the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka did not respond. He said: “Do I offend against the masters? Why do the masters not respond to me?”

BD.5.172

“It is because you, friend Vaḍḍha, were indifferent when we were being molested by Dabba the Mallian.”

“What can I, masters, do?”

“If you, friend Vaḍḍha, were willing you could get the Lord to expel the venerable¹ Dabba the Mallian this very day.”

“What can I, masters, do? How am I able to do that?”

“Come you, friend Vaḍḍha, go up to the Lord; having gone up, speak thus to the Lord: “This, Lord, is not suitable, it is not becoming that this quarter which should be without fear, secure, without danger, is the very quarter which is full of fear, insecure, full of danger. Where there was a calm, now there is a gale. It seems as if the very water is blazing. My wife has been seduced by master Dabba the Mallian.’”

Kd.15.20.2

“Very well, masters,” and the Licchavi Vaḍḍha, having answered the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the Licchavi Vaḍḍha spoke thus to the Lord: “This, Lord, is not suitable ... My wife has been seduced by master Dabba the Mallian.”

Vin.2.125

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Dabba the Mallian, saying: “Dabba, do you remember doing as this Vaḍḍha says?”

“Lord, the Lord knows in regard to me.” And a second time the Lord ... And a third time the Lord spoke thus to the venerable Dabba the Mallian: “Dabba, do you remember doing as this Vaḍḍha says?”

¹ He is not called *āyasmā* by the monks at the parallel passage at [Vin.3.162](#), but he is at [Vin.2.78](#).

“Lord, the Lord knows in regard to me,” he said.

“Dabba, the Dabbas do not give evasive answers thus. If what was done was done by you, say so: if it was not done by you, say it was not.”

BD.5.173

“Lord, since I was born I cannot call to mind indulging in sexual intercourse even in a dream; much less so when I was awake.”

Kd.15.20.3

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Because of this, monks, let the Order turn the Licchavi Vaḍḍha’s bowl upside down,¹ let it impose non-eating with the Order.² Monks, if a lay-follower is possessed of eight qualities his bowl may be turned upside down:³ if he tries for non-receiving (of gains) by monks, if he tries for non-profiting by monks, if he tries for non-residence for monks, if he reviles and abuses monks, if he causes monk to break with monk,⁴ if he speaks dispraise of the Awakened One, if he speaks dispraise of *dhamma*, if he speaks dispraise of the Order. I allow you, monks, to turn a lay-follower’s bowl upside down if he is possessed of these eight qualities.

Kd.15.20.4

And thus, monks, should it be turned upside down: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha is defaming the venerable Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit.⁵ If it seems right to the Order, the Order may turn the Licchavi

¹ Not a literal turning upside down, but a symbolical one performed by a formal act of the Order for turning down, *nikkujjanā* and, a bowl, as described below in [Kd.15.20.4](#). Vin-a.1209 says “here, if a person is possessed of any one of these eight qualities, having gone within the boundaries or outside them (the Order) may turn it down. When anyone’s bowl is turned upside down thus, no alms may be taken in his house ... It is set upright (again) by a formal act consisting of a motion and a resolution, *ñattidutiyakamma*.” AN-a.iv.159 explains, “(the Order) may turn it upside down by a proclamation, *kammavācā* for turning a bowl upside down, on account of which there is no receiving of alms given—not by placing it face downwards.” The phrase *pattam nikkujjati* although used in the ordinary signification above, [Kd.15.9.4](#) (*Vinaya Texts* iii.119, n.2) is not here. A layman certainly would have had no begging bowl that could have been, literally, turned upside down. ² *asambhogam saṅghena karotu*. See above, [Kd.11.25.1](#) where non-eating with an Order goes with and is a mark of an act of suspension. ³ This passage recurs at AN.iv.345. The first five qualities are also found at [Vin.1.84](#), [Vin.2.18](#). ⁴ At [Vin.2.18](#) a formal act of reconciliation may be carried out for a monk if he has the first five of these qualities in respect of householders; and it may be too if he has spoken dispraise of the awakened one, etc., to householders. ⁵ As at [Vin.2.79](#), where a “verdict of innocence” is given for Dabba.

BD.5.174 Vaḍḍha's bowl upside down, it may impose non-eating with the Order This is the motion Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha is defaming ... of falling away from moral habit. The Order is turning the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl upside down, it is imposing non-eating with an Order. If the turning upside down of the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl and the imposing of non-eating with the Order is pleasing to the venerable ones they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing, should speak. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl is turned upside down by the Order (and there is to be) non-eating with the Order. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

Kd.15.20.5

Then the venerable Ānanda, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, went up to the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's dwelling; having gone up, he spoke thus to the Licchavi Vaḍḍha: “Your bowl, friend Vaḍḍha, is turned upside down by an Order, you are non-eating with the Order.” Then the Licchavi Vaḍḍha, thinking: “It is said that my bowl is turned upside down by an Order, it is said that I am non-eating with the Order,” fainted and fell on that very spot. Then the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's friends and intimates, his kith and kin¹ spoke thus to the Licchavi Vaḍḍha:

Vin.2.126

“Enough, Vaḍḍha, do not grieve, do not lament, we will reconcile² the Lord and the Order of monks.” Then the Licchavi Vaḍḍha with his wife and children, with his friends and intimates, with his kith and kin, his clothes wet, his hair wet approached the Lord; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, a transgression has overcome me,³ in that I, foolish, misguided, wrong that I was, defamed master Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. For this, Lord, let the Lord acknowledge my transgression as a transgression for the sake of restraint in the future.”

BD.5.175

“Truly a transgression overcame you, friend Vaḍḍha, in that you, foolish, misguided, wrong that you were, defamed Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of falling away from moral habit. But if you, friend Vaḍḍha, having seen the transgression as a transgression, confess according to the

¹ Cf. AN.i.222. ² As noted at *Vinaya Texts* iii.122, n.1 this same verb is used in [Kd.11.22.3](#) when a monk has offended against a layman. ³ As at [Vin.1.315](#), [Vin.4.18–Vin.4.19](#). See [BD.2.200](#) for notes.

rule, we¹ acknowledge it for you. For, friend Vaḍḍha, in the discipline of the noble, this is growth: whoever having seen a transgression as a transgression, confesses it according to the rule, he attains restraint in the future.”

Kd.15.20.6

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Well, now monks, let the Order set upright the Licchavi Vaḍḍha’s bowl, let it grant eating with the Order. Monks, if a lay-follower is possessed of eight qualities his bowl may be set upright: if he does not try for non-receiving (of gains) by monks, if he does not try for non-profiting by monks, if he does not try for non-residence for monks, if he does not revile and abuse monks, if he does not cause monk to break with monk, if he does not speak dispraise of the Awakened One, if he does not speak dispraise of *dhamma*, if he does not speak dispraise of the Order. I allow you, monks, to set upright a lay-follower’s bowl if he is possessed of these eight qualities.

Kd.15.20.7

“And thus, monks, should it be set upright: Monks, that Licchavi Vaḍḍha, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the monks’ feet, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted them with joined palms, should speak thus to them: ‘Honoured sirs, my bowl was turned upside down by the Order, I am not eating with the Order. But I, honoured sirs, am conducting myself properly, I am subdued, I am mending my ways, and I ask the Order for the setting upright of the bowl.’ And a second time it should be asked for. And a third time it should be asked for. The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha’s bowl was turned upside down by the Order, he is not eating with the Order; but he is conducting himself properly, he is subdued, he is mending his ways; he asks the Order for the setting upright of the bowl. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may set upright the Licchavi Vaḍḍha’s bowl, it may grant eating with the Order. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha’s bowl was turned upside down ... he asks the Order for setting upright the bowl. The Order is setting

Vin.2.127

BD.5.176

¹ In parallel passages the first person plural is likewise used here, perhaps to emphasise that “confession according to the rule” is to be made to monks and *they* acknowledge it and are the means by which a transgression can be removed. At the same time, since Gotama seldom, as recorded, addressed laypeople as *āvuso*, friend, it is doubtful whether he is or is intended to be speaking here at all.

upright the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl, it is granting eating with the Order. If the setting upright of the Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl and the granting of eating with the Order is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The Licchavi Vaḍḍha's bowl is set upright by the Order (and there is) eating with the Order. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

Kd.15.21.1

Then the Lord, having stayed in Vesāli for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for the Bhaggas.¹ In due course, walking on tour, the Lord arrived at the Bhaggas. The Lord stayed there among the Bhaggas on Sumsumāra Hill² in the Bhesakaḷā Grove in the deer park. Now at that time Kokanada³ was the name of Prince Bodhi's⁴ palace; it had not long been built and was as yet uninhabited by recluse or brahmin or by any human creature. Then Prince Bodhi addressed the brahmin youth, the son of Sañjikā,⁵ saying: “Come along, good son of Sañjikā, go up to the Lord; having gone up, in my name salute the Lord's feet with your head, ask whether he is well, not indisposed, of bodily vigour, strong, abiding in comfort, and say: ‘Lord, Prince Bodhi salutes the Lord's feet with his head and asks whether he is well ... abiding in comfort,’ and says this: ‘Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with Prince Bodhi tomorrow together with the Order of monks.’”

BD.5.177

“Very well, good sir,” and the brahmin youth, Sañjikā's son, having answered Prince Bodhi in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, having exchanged greetings with the Lord, having conversed in a courteous and friendly way, sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the brahmin youth, the son of Sanjika, spoke thus to the Lord: “Prince Bodhi salutes the revered Gotama's feet with his head ... and says may the revered Gotama consent to a meal with Prince

¹ *yena Bhaggā*. See MN.ii.91 where this story also appears, going as far as BD.5.178 below, “as he was sitting at a respectful distance,” where the Majjhima version proceeds differently. See also SN.iii.1 and B.C. LAW, *Tribes in Ancient India*, 1943, p.292f. ² SN-a.ii.249 says that it was called Crocodile Hill because as it was being built a crocodile made a noise, the Bhesakaḷā Grove was called after a *yakkhīnī* who lived there. ³ Lotus. See BD.3.139, n. and MN-a.iii.321. ⁴ Dhp.157 is said to have been uttered on his account, see Dhp-a.iii.134. ⁵ *Sañjikāputta*. See Dhp-a.iii.134, where he warned the architect that Bodhi contemplated killing or maiming him so that he could never build another palace like Kokanada.

Bodhi tomorrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent.

Then the brahmin youth, Sañjikā’s son, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat approached Prince Bodhi; having approached, he spoke thus to Prince Bodhi: “I spoke, good sir, in your name to the Lord Gotama, saying: ‘Prince Bodhi salutes ... together with the Order of monks.’ And the recluse Gotama consented.” Then Prince Bodhi towards the end of that night, having had sumptuous foods, solid and soft, prepared, and having had Kokanada palace strewn with white cloths as far as the last flight of stairs,¹ spoke thus to the brahmin youth, the son of Sañjikā: “Come you along, good fellow, approach the Lord; having approached, announce the time to the Lord, saying: ‘It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.’”

Kd.15.21.2

Vin.2.128

“Very well, good sir,” and the brahmin youth, Sañjikā’s son, having answered Prince Bodhi in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, he announced the time to the Lord, saying: “It is time, good Gotama, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached Prince Bodhi’s dwelling. Now at the time when the Lord was coming Prince Bodhi was standing at the porch of the outside gateway. Prince Bodhi saw the Lord coming in the distance, and seeing him, having gone from there to meet him, having greeted the Lord, having honoured him, he approached Kokanada palace. Then the Lord stood still at the last flight of stairs. Then Prince Bodhi spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, let the Lord tread on² the cloths, let the well-farer tread on the cloths so that it may be for a long time for my blessing and happiness.” When he had spoken thus the Lord became silent. And a second time ... And a third time Prince Bodhi spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, let the Lord tread on ... for my blessing and happiness.” Then the Lord looked towards the venerable Ānanda. Then the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to Prince Bodhi:

BD.5.178

“Let the cloths, prince, be packed away, the Lord will not tread upon the

¹ Cf. MN.ii.92, MN.iii.1. ² *akkamatu*. MN.ii.92 reads *abhirūhatu*.

cloth carpeting,¹ the Truth-finder has compassion² for the folk who come after.”³

Kd.15.21.3

Then Prince Bodhi, having had the cloths packed away, had a seat made ready upstairs in Kokanada.⁴ Then the Lord having ascended the Kokanada palace, sat down together with the Order of monks on the seat made ready. Then Prince Bodhi, having with his own hand served and satisfied with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from the bowl, sat down at a respectful distance.⁵ Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Prince Bodhi as he was sitting at a respectful distance with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “**Monks, you should not tread on a cloth carpeting.**⁶ **Whoever should tread on one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Vin.2.129

Kd.15.21.4

Now at that time a certain woman who had had a miscarriage, having invited monks, having had cloth prepared, spoke thus: “Revered sirs, tread on the cloth.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not tread on it. She said: “Revered sirs, tread on the cloth for good luck’s sake.” The monks, being scrupulous, did not tread on it. Then that woman spread it about, saying: “How can these masters (although) being asked for good luck’s sake not tread on the cloth carpeting?” Monks heard this woman who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Household-

BD.5.179

¹ *celapattikā*. For a monk to do so was apparently an auspice that the householder would have a child. ² *anukampati*, MN.ii.93 *apaloketi*, DhP-a.iii.136 *oloketi*. The legend is that Gotama knew that Bodhi would have no children because in a former birth, while he was living on an island, he ate and cooked birds (MN-a.iii.322, DhP-a.iii.137). He therefore would not bring monks into contempt by walking on the cloths when he knew Bodhi would have no child (Vin-a.1209). ³ *pacchimā janatā*. See BD.1.66, n.1 for further references. ⁴ MN.ii.93 reads *Kokanade pāsāde*. ⁵ Majjhima version goes on differently from here. ⁶ Quoted at MN-a.iii.323. Vin-a.1209 says that he laid down this rule in case a monk should tread on one not knowing whether the householder would have a child or not; and that he did it to safeguard the monks from the householders’ contempt should there not be a child after they had trodden on the cloth carpeting.

ers, monks, look out for lucky signs.¹ I allow you, monks, when being asked by householders for good luck's sake, to tread on a cloth carpeting.”

Now at that time monks were doubtful whether to tread on a sheet for use after feet had been washed.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you; monks, to tread on a sheet for use after feet have been washed.”

*The Second Portion for Repeating*³

Then the Lord having stayed among the Bhaggas for as long as he found suiting set out on tour for Sāvattthī. Walking on tour in due course he arrived at Sāvattthī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Then Visākhā, Migāra's mother, taking a small jar⁴ and a (clay foot-) scrubber⁵ and a broom, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she sat down at a respectful distance. As she was sitting down at a respectful distance, Visākhā, Migāra's mother, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord accept my little jar and (clay foot-) scrubber and broom so that it may be for a long time for my blessing and happiness.” The Lord accepted the little jar and the broom; the Lord did not accept the (clay foot-) scrubber. Then the Lord gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted Visākhā, Migāra's mother, with talk on *dhamma*. Then Visākhā, Migāra's mother gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, rising from her seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, a little jar and a broom. **Monks, you should not make use of a (clay foot-) scrubber. Whoever should make use of one, there is**

¹ *gihī maṅgalikā*, as at [Kd.15.33.3](#). See also Commentary on [Kd.1.2.2](#). Quoted at MN-a.iii.323.

² *dhotapādaka*. Vin-a.1209 says “it is a sheet spread out for treading on after the feet have been washed at the place for washing feet.” Monks were allowed to tread on this, and evidently no symbolic meaning was attached. ³ As pointed out at *Vinaya Texts* iii.130, n.1 “there is no mention in the text of where the first such Portion ends.” ⁴ *ghaṭṭaka*. ⁵ *katāka*. This is one of the two things made of clay not allowed at [Kd.15.37](#). Vin-a.1209 says “it is made, having raised up protuberances, for rubbing the feet; it may be round or four-sided; it is forbidden as a thing connected with luxury, it must not be accepted nor made use of.”

an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, three (kinds of) foot-rubbers:¹ a stone,² a pebble,³ sea-scum.”⁴

Kd.15.22.2

Then Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, taking a fan⁵ and a palmyra-whisk,⁶ approached the Lord ... (as in Kd.15.22.1) ... The Lord accepted the fan and the palmyra-whisk ... Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow, monks, a fan and a palmyra-whisk.”

Kd.15.23.1

Now at that time a mosquito-fan⁷ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a mosquito-fan.” A chowry-fan⁸ accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a chowry-fan should not be used. Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fans: made of bark, made of khus-khus,⁹ made of peacocks’ tail feathers.”

Kd.15.23.2

Now at that time a sunshade¹⁰ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a sunshade.”

Bd.5.181

Now at that time the group of six monks toured about having put up their sunshades. Now at that time a certain lay-follower went to a pleasure grove¹¹ together with several disciples of Naked Ascetics. These disciples of Naked Ascetics saw the group of six monks coming in the distance with their sunshades up; seeing them, they spoke thus to that lay-follower: “These revered sirs of yours, master, are coming along with their sunshades up like a group of chief ministers.”

¹ *pādaghamsanī*. ² *sakkharā*. Here Vin-a.1209 says it is called a stone, *pāsāṇa*. Word also at Vin.3.147=Ja.ii.284; see BD.1.250, n.1. ³ *kaṭhala*. Cf. *sakkharakaṭhala* at DN.i.84, AN.i.9.

⁴ *samuddapheṇaka*. This may be the name of a bone; cf. *pheṇaka* among the “bones” at Vism.254, Vb-a.237. *Vinaya Texts* iii.131, n.2 says that the word designates “the bones of the cuttle-fish.” ⁵ *vidhūpana*. See BD.3.253, n.3. ⁶ *tālavaṇṭa*. Vin-a.1210 says this is made with palmyra palm leaves or it may be made with bamboo, ivory and bamboo chips, or with peacocks’ tail feathers or with hides. Cf. *tālavaṇṭaka* at Kd.15.29.4. ⁷ *makasavijani*.

Vin-a.1210 says it is a little stick made of horn, made of ivory. It is difficult to know the difference intended by the two words, *vidhūpana* and *vijani*, both here translated as “fan.” At Vin.4.263 the former is defined by the latter. ⁸ *camaravijani*. *Camara* is a yak. Its bushy tail is made into a fan or whisk to drive the flies away. ⁹ *usīra*; see BD.2.228, n.1. ¹⁰ Defined at Vin.4.200, Vin.4.338. ¹¹ Defined at Vin.4.298.

“These, masters, are not monks, they are wanderers.” They made a bet as to whether they were monks or not. Then that lay-follower, having recognised them as they came up, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs tour about with their sunshades up?” Monks heard that lay-follower who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, ...?”

Vin.2.131

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a sunshade should not be used.¹ Whoever should use one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill²; there came to be no comfort for him without a sunshade. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a sunshade to one who is ill.” Now at that time monks, thinking: “A sunshade is allowed by the Lord to one who is ill, but not to one who is not ill,” were doubtful whether to use a sunshade in the monastery and monastery precincts. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a sunshade to be used in a monastery and monastery precincts both by one who is ill and by one who is not ill.”

Kd.15.23.3

Now at that time a certain monk, having tied up his bowl with string,³ having hung it on his walking staff,⁴ passed at the wrong time⁵ through a certain village gateway. People, saying: “This, masters, is a thief who is coming, his sword is gleaming,”⁶ having followed him and seized him, let him go on recognising him. Then this monk, having gone back to the monastery, told this matter to the monks.

Kd.15.24.1

BD.5.182

“But did you, your reverence, carry a walking staff with string on it?”

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this monk carry a walking staff with string on it?” Then

¹ Nuns are not allowed to use them, Vin.4.338. Cf. DN.i.7 where it is said that Gotama refrains from using them, but see *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.13, n.2 which maintains, “This is not quite accurate.” Vin-a.1210 says in all cases a sunshade made of one leaf is meant. ² Cf. Vin.4.337-Vin.4.338 (of a nun). ³ For similar phraseology cf. Kd.15.8.1. ⁴ *daṇḍa* is defined at Vin.4.200. ⁵ Cf. Vin.4.164 (BD.3.82f.). ⁶ Cf. MN.i.86.

these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, ...?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a walking staff with string on it should not be carried. Whoever should carry one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.15.24.2

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill; he was not able to tour about without a walking staff. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to give an agreement as to a walking staff to a monk who is ill. And thus, monks, should it be given: That ill monk, having approached the Order, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the feet of the senior monks, having sat down on his haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: ‘I, honoured sirs, am ill; I am not able to tour about without a walking staff, so I, honoured sirs, ask the Order for the agreement as to a walking staff.’ And a second time it should be asked for. And a third time it should be asked for.

Vin.2.132

The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk So-and-so is ill; he is not able to tour about without a walking staff; he asks the Order for the agreement as to a walking staff. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may give the agreement as to a walking staff to the monk So-and-so. This is

BD.5.183

the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This monk ... as to a walking staff. The Order is giving the monk So-and-so the agreement as to a walking staff. If the giving to the monk So-and-so of the agreement as to a walking staff is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The agreement as to a walking staff is given by the Order to the monk So-and-so. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’”

Kd.15.24.3

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill; he was not able to carry his bowl about without string. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to give an ill monk the agreement as to string. And thus, monks, should it be given. That ill monk ... (as in [Kd.15.24.2](#). Instead

of to tour about without a walking staff, etc., *read* to carry his bowl about without string, etc.) ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill; he was not able to tour about without a walking staff nor was he able to carry his bowl about without string. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to give an ill monk the agreement as to a walking staff and string. And thus, monks, should it be given: That ill monk ... (*as in Kd.15.24.2*. *Read*: I am not able to tour about without a walking staff nor am I able to carry my bowl about without string, etc.) ‘... Thus do I understand this.’”

Now at that time a certain monk was a ruminator;¹ he ate ruminating continually. Monks ... spread it about, saying: “This monk is partaking of a meal at the wrong time.”² Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, this monk has recently passed on from the womb of a cow. I allow, monks, rumination for a ruminator. **But, monks, one should not eat (anything), having brought it back from the mouth³ to outside of it. Whoever should (so) eat should be dealt with according to the rule⁴.**”

Now at that time a certain guild had food for an Order; many heaps of boiled rice were allowed to fall in a refectory. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, on being given boiled rice, not accept it carefully?⁵ Each one of these heaps of boiled rice is the result of a hundredfold labour.” Monks heard these people ... who spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, if anything falls that is being given to you,⁶ to make use of it having picked it up yourselves, for it is left behind (for you), monks, by benefactors.”

¹ *romanthaka*. ² See *Bu-Pc.37*. ³ *mukhadvāra* as at *Bu-Pc.40* and *Bu-Sk.41*. ⁴ I.e. according to *Bu-Pc.37* or *Bu-Pc.38*. ⁵ *sakkaccaṃ*, duly, properly, carefully, respectfully. ⁶ Buddhaghosa says that this is explained in the *Bhojanavagga* (*Vin.4.69-Vin.4.90*).

Kd.15.25.1

Kd.15.26.1
BD.5.184

Vin.2.133

Kd.15.27.1

Now at that time a certain monk walked for almsfood with long (finger-) nails.¹ A certain woman, having seen him, spoke thus to that monk: “Come, honoured sir, indulge in sexual intercourse.”

“No, sister, that is not allowable.”

“If you do not, honoured sir, I will now, having scratched my limbs with my own nails, make a row,² saying, ‘this monk has maltreated me.’”

“You, sister, understand that.” Then that woman, having scratched her limbs with her own nails, made a row, saying, “This monk has maltreated me.” People, having run up, took hold of that monk. But these people saw skin and blood on that woman’s nails; seeing this, they said: “This is the work of this woman herself, the monk is innocent,” and they let go of that monk. Then that monk, having gone back to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. They said: “But do you, your reverence, wear long nails?”

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this monk wear long nails?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, long nails should not be worn.³ Whoever should wear them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.15.27.2
BD.5.185

Now at that time monks cut⁴ their nails with their nails and they cut their nails with their mouth and they rubbed them down on a wattle and daub wall; their fingers became painful. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, cutting of the nails.” They cut their nails down to the blood; their fingers became painful. “I allow you, monks, to cut your nails down to the height⁵ of the flesh.”

Now at that time the group of six monks had their twenty (nails) polished. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy

¹ Nails are defined at Vism.250f. ² *kuppa*, explained by Buddhaghosa as *sadda*, noise. ³ Vin-a.1210 points out that the cutting of the nails was allowed for reasons of self-protection. ⁴ *chindati*, to cut off, to cut down, to remove, to destroy. But as Vin-a.1210 says there was no offence in cutting the nails by means of the nails and so on. I do not think we need translate *chindati* by “tore off” as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.137. ⁵ *pamāṇa*, measure; often, as in “the *pamāṇa* of an average man,” meaning height.

pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not have your twenty (nails) polished. Whoever should have this done, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to remove the dirt only.”

Now at that time monks’ hair¹ came to be long. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “But, monks, are the monks able to cut one another’s hair?”

“They are able (to do so), Lord.” Then the Lord, on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow, monks, a razor, a whetstone, a razor-case,² a piece of felt,³ and all a barber’s equipment.”⁴

Now at that time the group of six monks had their beards trimmed,⁵ they made their beards grow (long⁶), they had them shaped like a goat’s beard,⁷ they had them shaped into four corners,⁸ they had the hair on their chests shaped,⁹ they had the hair on their stomachs shaped,¹⁰ they arranged whiskers, they had the hair on their bodies removed.¹¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not have your**

¹ *kesa*, defined at Vism.249f. ² *khurasipāṭika*, explained at Vin-a.1210 as *khurakosaka*, a little sheath for a razor. ³ *namataka*, as at Kd.15.11.1; Kd.15.19.1; Kd.20.10.4. ⁴ *khurabhaṇḍa*, as at Vin.1.249. See BD.4.345, n.5. Cf. *tantabhaṇḍa* at Kd.15.28.2. ⁵ *massum kappāpenti*. Vin-a.1211 says *kattariyā massuṃ chedāpenti*, caused their beards to be cut off with scissors (or with a knife). ⁶ Added at Vin-a.1211. ⁷ *golomikaṃ kārāpenti*. Vin-a.1211 says, “having made them long on the chin, they are called: arranged as a goat’s beard, *eḷakamassuka*.” ⁸ *caturassakan ti catuḷkaṃ*, Vin-a.1211. ⁹ *parimukhaṃ kārāpenti*, of which Vin-a.1211 says this was a growing, gathering, collecting (therefore a cutting), *saṃharaṇa*, into lines of the hair of the chest. ¹⁰ *aḍḍharuka*. Vin-a.1211 says “an arrangement into lines of the hair on the stomach.” ¹¹ *sambādhe lomāṃ saṃharāpenti*. See note but one above on *saṃharaṇa*. Corresponding rule for nuns at Nuns’ Bi-Pc.2 and where *sambādha* is defined. I think *saṃharāpenti* is more correctly to remove (thus cutting into a shape) than “grow” (a meaning given above), in view of the other “shapings,” and also because of the objections levelled at the nuns and also, above, at the monks.

Kd.15.27.3

Vin.2.134

Kd.15.27.4

BD.5.186

beards trimmed ... you should not have the hair of your bodies removed. Whoever should have it removed there is an offence of wrong-doing.”¹

Now at that time a certain monk came to have a sore on a certain part of his body;² the medicament would not adhere. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to remove the hair on the body in the case of illness.”

Kd.15.27.5

Now at that time the group of six monks had the hair of their heads cut off with scissors. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not have the hair of your heads cut off with scissors. Whoever should (so) have it cut off, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time a certain monk came to have a sore on his head; he was not able to shave the hair of his head with a razor. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cut off the hair of the head with scissors in the case of illness.”

Now at that time monks wore the hair in their nostrils long. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like demon-worshippers.”³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not wear the hair in your nostrils long. Whoever should (so) wear it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.5.187

Now at that time monks had the hair in their nostrils taken out with pieces of crystal⁴ and by means of beeswax; their nostrils became painful. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, tweezers.”⁵

¹ As Vin-a.1211 notes there is a *dukkaṭa* for the shaping of the beard and everything else.

² *sambādhe* which, as defined in Nuns' *Bi-Pc.2* means the armpits and private parts. ³ *pisā-cillika*, as at *Kd.3.12.3*, *Kd.15.10.2*. ⁴ *sakkharikā*. Cf. *Kd.6.14.5*, *loṇa-sak-*. ⁵ *saṇḍāsa* as at *MN.ii.75*, *Ja.i.138*.

Now at that time the group of six monks had grey hairs¹ taken out. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not have grey hairs taken out. Whoever should have them taken out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time a certain monk’s ears were stopped with wax. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, an instrument for removing dirt from the ears.”²

Kd.15.27.6

Vin.2.135

Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of instruments for removing dirt from the ears, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, various kinds of instruments for removing dirt from the ears should not be used. Whoever should use (these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them, monks, (to be) made of bone, made of ivory, made of horn, made of reeds, made of bamboo, made of a piece of stick, made of lac, made of crystal, made of copper, made of the centre of a conchshell.”³

Now at that time monks made a large store of copper goods, of bronze goods. People touring the dwelling-place, having seen this, looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans make a large store of copper goods, of bronze goods like dealers in bronze?”⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a store of copper goods, of bronze goods should not be made. Whoever should make one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.15.28.1

Now at that time monks were (too) scrupulous to use an ointment box⁵ and an ointment stick⁶ and an instrument for removing dirt from the ears⁷

Kd.15.28.2
BD.5.188

¹ *palita*. Cf. *palitakesi* at MN.i.88. MN-a.ii.60, *paṇḍarakesa*. ² Allowed again below, Kd.15.28.2. ³ As at Kd.6.12.1, Kd.6.12.3; Kd.15.11.1, etc. ⁴ *kaṃsapattharikā*. Vin-a.12.11 explains as *kaṃsabhaṇḍavānijā*, merchants in bronze goods. ⁵ *añjanī*, allowed at Kd.6.12.1, Kd.6.12.2, Kd.6.12.4. ⁶ Allowed at Kd.6.12.3. ⁷ Allowed at Kd.15.27.6.

and a handle.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, an ointment box ... a handle.”

Now at that time the group of six monks sat down lolling² on their outer cloaks,³ the cotton cloth⁴ of the outer cloaks gave way.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, you should not sit down lolling on outer cloaks. Whoever should (so) sit down, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time a certain monk came to be ill; there was no comfort for him without a bandage.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a bandage.” Then it occurred to monks: “Now how should a bandage be made?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a loom, shuttles, strings, tickets and all the equipment for a loom.”

Kd.15.29.1

Now at that time a certain monk entered a village for alms-food without his waistband; on a carriage road his inner robe dropped down.⁷ People shouted out⁸ and that monk became ashamed. Then that monk, having gone back to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not enter a village without your waistband. Whoever should (so) enter one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, a waistband.”⁹

Vin.2.136

BD.5.189

Kd.15.29.2

Now at that time the group of six monks wore various kinds of waistbands: those of many strands,¹⁰ those like the head of a water-snake,¹¹ those

¹ *bandhanamatta*. Meaning uncertain. Vin-a.1211 says a *bandhanamatta* for a *vāsikat-tarayaṭṭhikādīnaṃ*, a knife and mendicant’s staff. Or should *kattara* read *kattarī*, scissors? We should then get “a stick for knife and scissors.” Cf. *bandhanamattaṃ* at Kd.5.11.1, Kd.7.1.5, but in both passages it seems to have a different meaning from above. ² Cf. Bu-Sk.26 where “lolling” is defined as lolling on the hands, lolling on cloths. ³ As at Kd.14.4.7 (end). ⁴ Read *paṭṭā* instead of text’s *pattā*, as noted at Vinaya Texts iii.141, n.6. ⁵ As at Kd.8.21.1 where a remedy is “allowed”. See BD.4.424. *Lujjanti*, “gave way,” occurs also at Kd.15.16.2, Kd.15.17.2 and is there translated “fell in.” ⁶ *āyoga*, as at Vin.3.257, Vin.4.170. See BD.2.144, n.2. ⁷ *pabhasittha*, as at Vin.4.159. ⁸ As at Vin.4.345. ⁹ Taken for granted at Kd.1.25.9, Kd.1.25.10. ¹⁰ *kalābuka*. Vin-a.1211 explains by *bahurajjuka*. ¹¹ *deḍḍubhakaṃ nāma udakasappisāsadisāṃ*, so Vin-a.1211.

like tambourine drums,¹ those like chains.² People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, various kinds of waistbands should not be worn: those of many strands ... those like chains. Whoever should wear one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”³ I allow, monks, two (kinds of) waistbands: a strip of cotton cloth,⁴ one with a well made end.”⁵

The borders of a waistband wore out. “I allow, monks, those like tambourine drums, those like chains.” The end of a waistband wore out. “I allow, monks, a sewing round,⁶ a knotting.”⁷ The end of a waistband where it was looped⁸ wore out. “I allow, monks, a buckle.”⁹

Now at that time the group of six monks wore various kinds of buckles, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, various kinds of buckles should not be worn. Who ever should wear one, there is a offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them, monks, (to be) made of bone ... made of the inside of a conchshell, made of thread.”¹⁰

BD.5.190

Kd.15.29.3

¹ *muraja*. Vin-a.1211 says they are made, having twisted the shape into a tambourine drum (*vaṭṭa*, circle, round). ² *maddaviṇa*. Vin-a.1211 (reading *-vāṇa*) says *pāmaṅgasanthānaṃ*. Cf. Kd.15.2.1 where *pāmaṅga* occurs. See also BD.1.77, n.9. ³ Buddhaghosa says there must not be even one of these, much less many. ⁴ *paṭṭikā*. Vin-a.1211 explains that here it is a *paṭṭikā* that is woven ordinarily or that is woven in the fish and thorn design (? *macchakaṇṭhakavāyimā*), and it continues, “there are to be no divisions into *kuṅṅjaracchikādi*,” *Kuṅṅja* is a hollow. ⁵ *sūkarantaka*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.143 “do not venture to translate the term,” and its meaning is extremely doubtful. Vin-a.1211 has variant reading *sūkaraṇḍaka*, and also (at Vin.2.319) *sukarantaka*, which I adopt as the most intelligible, although possibly not the most correct reading. Vin-a.1211 explains by saying it is fashioned into a well made (*sūkara*) round case for a key. ⁶ *sobhaṇa*. Vin-a.1212 says “having twisted it, there is the sewing of a circular end,” *mukhavatṭhisibbana*. ⁷ *guṇaka*. Cf. *saguṇaṃ katvā* at Kd.1.25.9. Vin-a.1212 says “a sewing after the style of *muddikā* (i.e. a signet ring, a bunch of grapes; or *muddika*, an accountant may be meant—one who ties coins, etc., into knots in his waistband?). ⁸ *pavananta*. ⁹ *vidha*, as at Bu-Pc.86.2.2. See BD.3.89, n.1. ¹⁰ This last, thread, is in addition to the usual list as given above, e.g. at Kd.15.27.6.

Now at that time the venerable Ānanda having put on light-weight upper robes,¹ entered a village for almsfood; his upper robes were blown up by gusts of wind.² Then the venerable Ānanda, having gone back to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a block,³ something to tie.”⁴

Now at that time the group of six monks used various kinds of blocks, made of gold, made of silver. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, various kinds of blocks should not be used. Whoever should use them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them, monks, (to be) made of bone ... made of thread.”

Vin.2.137 Now at that time monks inserted blocks and things to tie into their robes; the robes wore out. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a shield⁵ for the blocks, a shield for the things to tie.” They inserted the shields for the blocks and the shields for the things to tie at the edge (of the robe); a corner was revealed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to insert a shield for the blocks at the edge; to insert a shield for the things to tie having taken it back seven finger breadths or eight finger breadths.”

Kd.15.29.4

BD.5.191

Now at that time the group of six monks dressed in householders' under garments: “the elephant's trunk,”⁶ “the fish's tail,”⁷ “the four corner arrangement,”⁸ “the palmyra whisk arrangement,”⁹ “the hundred jungle

¹ *saṃghāṭiyo* as it is in the plural must refer to more than the outer cloak; and since the verb *pārūpati* is used the reference is probably to this and to the upper robe. ² Cf. Vin.4.345. ³ *gaṇṭhikā*. See BD.3.88, n.4. ⁴ *pāsaka*, perhaps a bow for the dress. Cf. Thig.411 and MORRIS, Journal of the Pali Text Society 1893, p.45. ⁵ *phalaka*, perhaps a slip of wood or bark as in *phalakacira*, used in making an ascetic's dress, Vin.1.305, DN.i.167. ⁶ *hatthisoṇḍaka*. Vin-a.1212 says dressed, having made an appendage (hanging down) in the form of an elephant's trunk. ⁷ *macchavālaka*. Vin-a.1212 says dressed, having hung the edge of the border on one side, the edge of the tie on the other. ⁸ Vin-a.1212 explains there were two above and two below, hence showing four corners when clothed thus. ⁹ *tālavaṇṭaka*. Cf. Kd.15.22.2. Vin-a.1212 says that when clothed one suspends the outer cloak in the manner of a palmrya whisk.

ropes.”¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not dress in householders’ under garments: ‘the elephant’s trunk’ ... ‘the hundred jungle ropes’.** Whoever should (so) dress, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six monks put on² householders’ upper garments.³ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not put on householders’ upper garments. Whoever should put one on, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time the group of six monks dressed in loincloths.⁴ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like a king’s shaven bearers with coils.”⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not dress in loincloths. Whoever should (so) dress, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.15.29.5

Now at that time the group of six monks carried a double carrying-pole.⁶ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like a king’s shaven bearers with coils.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not carry a double carrying-pole. Whoever should carry one, there is an offence**

Kd.15.30.1

Bd.5.192

¹ *satavallikā*. Cf. *vallikā* at Kd.5.2.1 where although the word may mean ear ornaments, these may be formed like jungle ropes. See also Kd.5.16.2. Vin-a.1212 says dressed by making a bracelet (-like arrangement), *ovaṭṭika*, having folded over the long outer cloak a number of times; or, dressed showing continual jungle ropes at the left and right sides. If one or two jungle ropes appear from the knee it is all right. Cf. *ovaṭṭika* at Kd.15.2.1. ² On *pārupati* and *nivāseti*, put on and dress in, see Bd.2.32, n.2, n.3. ³ Buddhaghosa enumerates a number of upper garments which he classifies as householders’, including a Jain’s, a wanderer’s, a one-cloth ascetic’s, and a brahmin’s. ⁴ *saṃvelliyaṃ*. Cf. *saṃvelliyaṃ kaṭisuttakaṃ* at Kd.20.16.2. Vin-a.1212 says that they dressed having tied on long grass, *kaccha*, like wrestlers and workmen, and that it is explained in the *Sekhiyas* that a monk must be dressed having covered up the three circles all round. (See Bu-Sk.1, Bu-Sk.2). ⁵ *muṇḍavaṭṭī*. Vin-a.1213 (with variant reading *-veṭhī*) says “the meaning is people going anywhere for a king and carrying goods and equipment”. The coils *vaṭṭī*, would be the pads they wear on their heads to support the burden. ⁶ I.e. with the weight at each end. Cf. *kāja* at Kd.1.20.19.

of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, a single carrying-pole, a carrying-pole for two bearers,¹ a weight (carried) on the head, a weight (carried) on the shoulders, a weight (carried) on the hips, one hung on.”

Kd.15.31.1

Now at that time monks did not chew² tooth-wood³; their mouths came to smell nasty. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these five disadvantages in not chewing tooth-wood⁴: it is bad for the eyes, the mouth becomes nasty smelling, the channels of taste are not purified, phelgm and mucus get on food, one’s food is not enjoyed. These, monks, are the five disadvantages of not chewing tooth-wood. Monks, there are there five advantages in chewing tooth-wood: it is good for the eyes, the mouth does not become nasty smelling, the channels of taste are purified, phelgm and mucus do not get on food, one’s food is enjoyed. These, monks, are the five advantages of chewing tooth-wood. I allow, monks, tooth-wood.”

Vin.2.138

Kd.15.31.2

Now at that time the group of six monks chewed long pieces of tooth-wood; they even flicked novices with these. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a long piece of tooth-wood should not be chewed. Whoever should chew one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, a piece of tooth-wood to be eight finger breadths (in length) at the most. **And a novice should not be flicked with it. Whoever should flick him, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time as a certain monk was chewing a piece of tooth-wood that was too short it became lodged in his throat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, too short a piece of tooth-wood should not be chewed. Whoever should chew one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, a piece of tooth-wood to be four finger breadths (in length) at the least.”

Kd.15.32.1

BD.5.193

¹ *antarākāja*, which Vin-a.1213 explains as one having the weight in the middle and that may be transported by two (men). ² *khādanti*, eat. ³ *dantakaṭṭha*, used in cleaning the teeth. ⁴ As at AN.iii.250.

Now at that time the group of six monks set fire to a forest.¹ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like forest firers.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a forest should not be set on fire. Whoever should set one on fire, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time dwelling-places were tangled over with grass.² As the forest fires were burning (forests and so on) they burned the dwelling-places. Monks were doubtful whether to make a counter-fire³ to give protection. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if a forest fire is burning, to make a counter-fire to give protection.”

Now at that time the group of six monks climbed a tree and jumped from tree to tree. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like monkeys.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a tree should not be climbed. Whoever should climb one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time an elephant infested the way of a certain monk who was going to Sāvattḥī through the Kosalan districts. Then that monk rushed up to the foot of a certain tree (but) being scrupulous did not climb the tree; the elephant went off by another (track). Then that monk, having reached Sāvattḥī, told this matter to the monks. (The monks told this matter to the Lord).⁴ He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to climb a tree to the height of a man, and as high as you like in cases of distress.”⁵

Now at that time Yameḷu and Tekula⁶ were the names of two monks who were brothers, brahmins by birth, with lovely voices, with lovely enunciation. They approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the

¹ As at Vin.3.85. ² As at AN.i.153, AN.iii.128. ³ *paṭaggim dātuṃ*. Cf. Ja.i.212. Vin-a.1214 says having made the ground square, it is possible to convey grass there and dig it in carefully, and having broken off damp branches to cool down the fire. ⁴ Omitted in the text. ⁵ Such as seeing wild animals, forest fires, or approaching floods, or such as wanting to see the right direction if one is on the wrong road (so Vin-a.1214). ⁶ *Yameḷutekulā*. This compound should possibly be resolved into Yameḷa and Utekula, but is taken as reproduced above by *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* (under Tekuḷa) and *Vinaya Texts* iii.149, q.v. note 3. These monks are mentioned nowhere but here, I think.

BD.5.194

Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these monks spoke thus to the Lord: “At present, Lord, monks of various names, various clans, various social strata have gone forth from various families; these corrupt the speech of the Awakened One in (using) his own dialect.¹ Now we, Lord, give the speech of the Awakened One in metrical form.”² The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How can you, foolish men, speak thus: ‘Now we, Lord, give the speech of the Awakened One in metrical form’? It is not, foolish men, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, the speech of the Awakened One should not be given in metrical form. Whoever should (so) give it, there is an offence of wrongdoing. I allow you, monks, to learn the speech of the Awakened One according to his own dialect.”

Kd.15.33.2

Now at that time the group of six monks learnt metaphysics.³ People ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Now, monks, can one who sees the essence (as being) in metaphysics attain to growth, increase, maturity in this *dhamma* and discipline?”

“This is not so, Lord.”

“Or could one who sees the essence (as being) in this *dhamma* and discipline learn metaphysics?”

“This is not so, Lord.”

¹ *sakāya niruttīyā*. Vin-a.1214 says the current Magadhese manner of speech according to the awakened one. Cf. *nirutti* at MN.iii.234. ² *chandaso āropema*. Vin-a.1214 explains, “we give (*āropema*) a way of speech according to the honoured dialect (or vernacular, *sakkaṭa bhāsā*) like a Veda”. *Sakkata*, variant reading *sakkata*, may be Sanskrit. See four reasons for supposing so at *Vinaya Texts* iii.150, n. Cf. *Sāvitthī chandaso mukhaṃ* at Snp.568, Vin.1.246, and *chando nidānaṃ gāthānaṃ* at SN.i.38. ³ *lokāyata*, name of a branch of brahmin learning, probably metaphysics. See *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.166–172; *Vinaya Texts* iii.151, n.2; BD.3.83, n.1. Word also occurs at AN.i.163, AN.i.166, AN.iii.223, Snp.p.105, MN.ii.147. Vin-a.1214 says “it means everything is rejected, everything is unrejected; it is the lore of other sects, connected with what is utterly groundless and which says by this or that method a crow is white, a crane is black.”

“Monks, metaphysics should not be learnt. Whoever should learn them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six monks taught metaphysics. People ...
“... offence of wrong-doing.”

BD.5.195

Now at that time the group of six monks learnt worldly knowledge.¹
 People ... **“... offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks taught worldly knowledge.
 People ... **“... offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the Lord, surrounded by a large assembly, sneezed while he was teaching *dhamma*. Monks, saying: “Lord, may the Lord live (long), may the wellfarer live (long),” made a loud noise, a great noise; the talk on *dhamma* was interrupted by this noise. Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Now, monks, when (the phrase) ‘Long life’ is spoken to one who has sneezed, can he for this reason live or die?”

Kd.15.33.3

Vin.2.140

“That is not so, Lord.”

“Monks, ‘Long life’ should not be said to one who has sneezed. Whoever should say it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time people said “May you live (long), honoured sirs” to monks who had sneezed. The monks, being scrupulous, did not respond. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans not respond when (the phrase) ‘May you live (long), honoured sirs’ is being spoken to them?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, householders like lucky signs.² I allow you, monks, when (the phrase) ‘May you live (long), honoured sirs’ is being spoken to you by householders to say, ‘Long life’ (to them).”

¹ *tiracchānavijjā*. Learnt and then taught by the group of six nuns at Vin.4.305-6; a *pācittiya* for them. The Old Commentary, on these Nuns’ Bi-Pc.49, Bi-Pc.50, defines both *tiracchānavijjā* and *pariyāpuṇāti*, “learn.” See BD.3.337-9 and notes there. ² As at Kd.15.21.4.

Kd.15.34.1

Now at that time the Lord, surrounded by a large assembly, was teaching *dhamma* sitting down. A certain monk had eaten garlic;¹ he sat down to one side, thinking: “In case the monks are incommoded.” The Lord saw that monk who was sitting down at one side; seeing him, he addressed the monks, saying: “Monks, why is this monk sitting to one side?”

BD.5.196

“Lord, this monk has eaten garlic, so he sat down at one side, thinking: ‘In case the monks are incommoded’.”

“But, monks, should that be eaten which, when eaten, can (make the eater) outside such a *dhamma*-talk as this?”

“That is not so, Lord.”

“Monks, garlic should not be eaten. Whoever should eat it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”²

Kd.15.34.2

Now at that time the venerable Sāriputta had wind in his stomach. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great approached the venerable Sāriputta; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Sāriputta: “When you had wind in your stomach before, reverend Sāriputta, by what means did you get comfort?”

“I had garlic, your reverence.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to eat garlic in the case of illness.”³

Kd.15.35.1

Now at that time monks relieved themselves here, there and everywhere in a monastery; the monastery was soiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you monks, to relieve yourselves at one side.” The monastery became nasty smelling. “I allow you, monks, a vessel.” Sitting down, it was painful. “I allow, monks, urinal shoes.”⁴ The urinal shoes were public;⁵ monks were ashamed to relieve themselves. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences to fence them in: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.” The vessel being uncovered became nasty smelling. “I allow, monks, a lid.”

Vin.2.141

¹ *lasuṇa*, defined at [Vin.4.259](#). ² A *Pācittiya* for nuns, Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.1](#). ³ As a medicine, [Vin-a.1214](#). ⁴ Allowed at [Kd.15.8.3](#). ⁵ Cf. [Kd.15.17.1](#).

Now at that time monks evacuated here, there and everywhere in a monastery ... (as in [Kd.15.35.1](#)) ... The monastery became nasty smelling. “I allow, monks, a cesspool.” The facing of the cesspool fell in.¹ “I allow you, monks, to pile up three (kinds of) pilings: a piling of bricks, a piling of stones, a piling of wood.” The cesspool was too low to the ground² ... “... I allow, monks, a balustrade.” Sitting inside, they fell off. “I allow you, monks, to evacuate having spread (something) and made a hole in the middle.” Sitting down, it was painful. “I allow you, monks, privy shoes.”

Kd.15.35.2

BD.5.197

Kd.15.35.3

They evacuated outside. “I allow, monks, a trough.” There was no wood for scraping. “I allow, monks, wood for scraping.” There was no receptacle³ for scraping. “I allow, monks, a receptacle (for the wood) for scraping.” The cesspool being uncovered became nasty smelling. “I allow, monks, a lid.” Evacuating in the open air, they were bothered by the cold and heat. “I allow, monks, a hut for the privy.” There was no door to the hut. “I allow, monks, a door ...⁴ ... swordfish teeth, the five (pieces of) cloth design, a bamboo for robes, a cord for robes.”⁵ Now at that time a certain monk, weak through age, having evacuated, fell down as he was getting up. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a chair with supports.” The hut was not fenced in. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences with which to fence it in: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.”

Vin.2.142

Kd.15.35.4

There was no porch. “I allow, monks, a porch.” There was no door to the porch. “I allow, monks, a door ...⁶ ... a cord to pull through.” Powdered grass fell on to the porch ...⁷ “... five (pieces of) cloth design.” A cell became swampy⁸ ... “I allow, monks, a drain for the water.” There was no vessel for the water for rinsing. “I allow, monks, a vessel for the water for rinsing.” There was no saucer for the water for rinsing. “I allow, monks, a saucer for the water for rinsing.” They rinsed sitting down; it was painful. “I allow, monks, shoes to be worn for rinsing.”⁹ The shoes for rinsing were public; monks were ashamed to rinse. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences to fence them in: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.” The

¹ As at [Kd.15.17.2](#). ² As at [Kd.15.11.6](#). ³ *pidhara*. ⁴ As at [Kd.15.14.3](#). ⁵ Last two items also at [Kd.15.11.6](#). ⁶ As at [Kd.15.14.3](#). ⁷ As at [Kd.15.11.6](#). ⁸ As at [Kd.15.14.5](#). ⁹ Allowed at [Kd.15.8.3](#).

vessel for the water for rinsing was uncovered; it was littered over with powdered grass and dust. “I allow, monks, a lid.”

Kd.15.36.1
BD.5.198

Now at that time the group of six monks indulged in bad habits like this¹: they planted and caused to be planted small flowering trees ... and indulged in various bad habits. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, various kinds of bad habits should not be indulged in. Whoever should indulge in them, should be dealt with according to the rule.**”²

Kd.15.37.1

Now at the time when Kassapa of Uruvelā went forth many copper goods, wooden goods, clay goods accrued to the Order. Then it occurred to the monks: “Now, what copper goods are allowed by the Lord, what are not allowed? What wooden goods are allowed, what are not allowed? What clay goods are allowed, what are not allowed?” They told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow, monks, all copper goods except a weapon; all wooden goods except a sofa,³ a divan,⁴ a wooden bowl,⁵ wooden shoes,⁶ all clay goods except a (clay-foot-) scrubber⁷ and a large earthen vessel.”⁸

Vin.2.143

Told is the Fifth Section: that on Minor Matters

THIS IS ITS KEY

Against a tree, and against a post, and against a wall,
on a rubbing-board (using a *gandha* (-*bba* hand instrument), a string,
having plunged into, a scrubber, scab,
and age, ordinary mode with the hand.
And also ear-ornaments, chains,

BD.5.199

¹ As at Kd.10.13.2 and Bu-Ss.13. The passage has been translated at BD.1.314–BD.1.318. ² Vin-a.1214 says they should be dealt with by a *pācittiya* for a *pācittiya* matter and by a *dukkāṭa* for a *dukkāṭa* matter. ³ *āsandī*. See BD.3.326, n.1, and BD.4.256, n.5. ⁴ *pallaṅka*. See BD.3.271, n.3. ⁵ See definition of bowl at BD.2.115, BD.2.415, BD.3.213. At Kd.15.8.2 it is made a *dukkāṭa* to use a wooden bowl. ⁶ Cf. Kd.15.6.4 (*kaṭṭhapāduka*), above *dārupāduka*. ⁷ *kataka*. See Kd.15.22.1. ⁸ *kumbhakārikā*. Vin-a.1215 says “this is a hut made entirely of clay like Dhaniya’s”. Dhaniya’s story is told at the beginning of Bu-Pj.2.

ornamental strings of beads for the throat¹ should not be worn,
 ornamental girdles, bangles, armlets, bracelets, finger rings,
 Long, with a comb, with a snake's hood instrument,
 with the hands, with beeswax, with oily water,
 sores in a mirror and bowl of water, ointment, with paste and chunan,
 They smeared,² and painting the limbs, painting the faces, both these,
 disease of the eyes, and the mountain top, long-drawn, intoning,³ outside,⁴
 Mango peels, with whole (mangoes), a snake, and he cut off, sandal wood,
 various kinds, bases of bowls, gold, thick, jags,
 Carved, was spoiled,⁵ nasty smelling,
 in the heat, were broken, by a solid bench,
 plaster flooring, grass (mat), piece of cloth, a stand, and on a wicker stand,
 A bag, and a strap at the edge, thread made for tying,
 a peg, and on a couch, and on a chair, on a lap, in a sunshade, opened,
 A gourd, a water-pot, a skull, odd bits, waste-tub,
 split open,⁶ handle, gold, feathers and rind, a tube,
 And yeast, barley-meal, powdered stone, beeswax, gum,
 misshapen at the corners, tying, uneven place,
 on the ground, old⁷ and was (not) enough,⁸
 A mark, and a false thread, unwashed, damp, sandals,
 fingers, and a thimble, a small bowl, a bag, tyings,
 In the open air, low to the ground, and also a piling, they were inconvenienced,
 they fell off, powdered grass, a smearing inside and out,
 Whitewash and treatment with black colouring and red chalk,
 wreathwork, creeperwork, swordfish teeth, strips (of cloth)⁹
 And a bamboo and cord for robes—the Leader allowed (these).
 And they went away having left, a *kaṭhina* frame was split,

BD.5.200

¹ Reading above is *kaṇṇasuttaṃ*, an ornamental string hanging from the ear Oldenberg at [Vin.2.320](#) queries whether it should not be *kaṇṭhasuttaṃ* (see [Kd.15.2.1](#)) which is the reading in the Sinhalese and Siamese editions. ² Text here *lañcanti*; at [Kd.15.2.5](#), as also in Sinhalese edition *lañchenti*. Siamese edition *lañcenti*. ³ These two words, run together as *sara-bāhiraṃ*, stand for *sarabhañña* and *bāhiralomi* ([Kd.15.3.2](#) and [Kd.15.4.2](#)). ⁴ These two words, run together as *sara-bāhiraṃ*, stand for *sarabhañña* and *bāhiralomi* ([Kd.15.3.2](#) and [Kd.15.4.2](#)). ⁵ Reading should be *dussati* as at [Kd.15.9.3](#) and Sinhalese and Siamese editions, not as with Oldenberg *dussanti*. ⁶ *vippāri*. Sinhalese edition *vipphāli* and Siamese edition *viphāli*. At [Kd.15.11.1](#) it is *vipāṭetvā*. ⁷ *vippāri*. Sinhalese edition *vipphāli* and Siamese edition *viphāli*. At [Kd.15.11.1](#) it is *vipāṭetvā*. ⁸ Text reads *jira-patoti ca*; Sinhalese edition *jiṇṇaṃ pahoti ca*; Siamese edition *jirappahoti ca*. ⁹ Text reads *paṭikā*; Siamese edition *pātikam*; Sinhalese edition *paṭṭikā*; [Kd.15.11.6](#) and similar passages *pañcapaṭṭhikam*. *Pali-English Dictionary* takes *paṭṭikā* = *paṭṭaka* “made of or forming a strip of cloth; a bandage, a strip (of cloth).” Thus *pañcapaṭṭhika* may be a design: the five strips (of cloth) design.

Was twisted out of position,¹ and on to a wall, they went along taking in a bowl, a bag, and a thread for tying, having tied, sandals,²

On a road water that was not allowable, strainer, little piece of cloth, regulation water-pot, two monks, the Sage reached Vesālī, Double (water-strainer), filter, he allowed a strainer.

Vin.2.144

By mosquitoes, very ill through sumptuous (foods) and Jīvaka, Place for pacing up and down in, bathroom, in an uneven place, low to the ground, three pilings, they were inconvenienced, stairs, balustrade, railing,

In the open air, powdered grass, a smearing inside and out whitewash and treatment with black colouring and red chalk

Wreathwork creeperwork swordfish teeth strips (of cloth)³

bamboo and cord for robes, and it may be built high to the ground,

A piling, staircase and balustrade,⁴ a door, doorpost and lintel,

a hollow like a mortar, a small upper projection, and a post, a “monkey’s head,”

A pin, a (stick used as a) bolt, a keyhole, and pulling through, a cord,

a facing, and a pipe for steam, and in the middle, clay for the face,

And nasty smelling,⁵ it scorched, a receptacle for water,⁶ a saucer,

BD.5.201

and it did not make them sweat, swampy, to wash, one may make a drain,

And a chair,⁷ about a porch, work,⁸ gravel, stones, a drain,

naked, on the ground, when it rained, three coverings there,

A well, and it fell in,⁹ by means of a creeper,¹⁰ by means of a waistband,

a well-sweep, hand-wheel, a wheel, many vessels were broken,

Copper, wooden, strips of animals’ hides, a hall, grass, a lid,

a trough, a pool, a fence, swampy, and about a drain,

Cooled down, a tank, and stale, with a curving roof,

for four months, and lay down to sleep,

and a piece of felt, and it should not be allotted,

¹ *viniveṭhiya*; Siamese edition *viniveṭhiyati*. ² Sinhalese edition here inserts *upāhanatthavikañ ca aṃsabandhanasuttakaṃ*, bag for sandals and thread or tying at the edge; and Siamese edition *upāhanatthavikañ ca aṃsavaddhañ ca suttakaṃ*, bag for sandals and a strap at the edge and thread. ³ Text here reads *makarantakapaṭṭikaṃ*, but Sinhalese edition *makaradantakapaṭṭikaṃ* and Siamese *makaradantapātikaṃ*. ⁴ *bāha* here stands for *ālambanabāha*. ⁵ In Siamese edition this word is preceded by *doṇi*, a tub or a trough, and in Sinhalese edition by *mattikādoṇi*, a tub for clay, as at [Kd.15.14.3](#). ⁶ Text reads *udakātara*, Siamese edition *udakhānaṃ*, and Sinhalese edition *udakādhanaṃ*, with which cf. Buddhaghosa’s *udakanidhāna* on [Kd.15.14.3](#), [BD.5.166](#) above (*udakaṭṭhāna*), and also cf. *udakādhāna* at [MN.i.414](#). ⁷ Reading *pīṭhaṃ* with Sinhalese edition instead of text’s *pīṭhe*. ⁸ This must refer to the wreath work and creeperwork mentioned in [Kd.15.14.4](#). ⁹ Reading *lujjati* with Sinhalese and Siamese editions, instead of text’s *lujja-tīṇi*. ¹⁰ *valliyā*; at [Kd.15.16.2](#) *vallikāya*.

Chased (cushions), a stand,¹ eating they would share one,²
 Vaḍḍha, and Bodhi, tread on it, little jar, (clay foot-) scrubber, broom,
 Stone pebble and scum as a foot-rubber,
 fan, palmyra-whisk, and also a mosquito fan, a chowry,
 Sunshade, and³ without, in a monastery—the three⁴—with string, agreement,
 ruminator, lumps of boiled rice, long nails, they cut, painful fingers,
 Down to the blood, and to the height, the twenty, long-haired,
 razor, whetstone, razor-case, piece of felt, a barber's equipment,
 They trimmed beards, they let them grow,
 goat's beard, four cornered arrangement,
 on their chests and on their stomachs, whiskers, removed the hair on their bodies,
 Illness, scissors, a sore, long, and with a piece of crystal,
 grey hair, stopped, and various kinds of copper goods, a store,⁵
 And lolling, a bandage, strings,⁶ tickets, (waist-)band,
 those of many strands, like the head of a water-snake,
 like tambourine drums, those like chains,⁷
 Palmyra whisk, hundred jungle-ropes,⁸
 having put on householders' upper garments,
 loin cloths, double carrying-pole, toothwood, on flicking,
 Lodged in the throat, and a forest, counterfire, a tree, and by an elephant,
 Yamelu (and Tekula),⁹ they learnt metaphysics, they taught it,

BD.5.202

Vin.2.145

¹ [Kd.15.19.1](#) and Siamese edition *maḷorikaṃ*; above *maḷorakaṃ*; Sinhalese edition *malojikaṃ*.

² Text reads *bhuñjanto ka tuvaṭṭayyūṃ*; Sinhalese edition *bhuñjant' eka tuvaṭṭikaṃ*; Siamese edition *bhuñjant' ekaṃ tuvaṭṭayyūṃ*. ³ Read *ca* with Sinhalese and Siamese editions, instead of text's *va*. ⁴ This refers to three (of the four) rulings laid down at [Kd.15.23.2](#), [Kd.15.23.3](#) for the use of sunshades: (1) allowed, (2) not allowed, (3) allowed (only) to an invalid, (4) allowed to be used by a monk whether ill or well in a monastery and monastery precincts.

⁵ *nicayā*. Sinhalese edition *nicayā*, text *nisaha*. Siamese edition *lohahhaṇḍaṅkhanisaha*. Sinhalese edition inserts between this word and “lolling” *bandhanamattaṃ kukkucā*, (too) scrupulous (to use) a handle, see note at [Kd.15.28.2](#) above. ⁶ Text *paṭaṃ*; Sinhalese edition and [Kd.15.28.2](#) *vaṭaṃ*. ⁷ Sinhalese and Siamese editions here have the following: *paṭṭikaṃ* (Siamese *paṭṭikā*) *sūkarantañ ca / dasā muraja-veṇikā* (Siamese *murajja-*) *pavananto pi jirati / gaṇṭhikaṃ uccāvacañ ca phalakante pi ogahe gihivattthaṃ hatthiṣoṇḍaṃ macchakaṃ catukaṇṇakaṃ / (Siamese gihivattthaṃ soṇḍaṃ macchavāḷakaṃ catukkaṇṇakaṃ)*—a strip of cotton cloth and one with a well made end/borders, like tambourine drums, a twisting (*veṇikā*, probably for *sobhaṇa* at [Kd.15.29.2](#)), an end, and knotting the rest, also where it was looped, / it wore out, a block, and various kinds, also shields and edges, taking back, / householders' undergarments: the elephant's trunk, the fish arrangement, the four cornered arrangement. This covers [Kd.15.29.2–Kd.15.29.4](#) (beginning), and clearly should be inserted. ⁸ Reading with Sinhalese edition *satavallin*, instead of *satavali* above. ⁹ Text reads *Yameḷa*, which I take to be a plural of “*Yameḷa* and *Tekula*”. But Sinhalese edition reads *Yameḷa*. Siamese *Sakaṭe*, with variant reading *Yameḷe*. See note above to [Kd.15.33.1](#).

Worldly knowledge,¹ he sneezed, good luck, and he ate,
 affliction of wind, and it was soiled, nasty smelling, painful, shoes,
 They were ashamed, nasty smelling (un-) covered,² and they did it here and there,
 nasty smelling, cesspool, it fell in,³ high to the ground, and about a piling,
 Staircase, balustrade, inside, painful and shoes,
 outside, a tub and wood, and a stick,⁴ uncovered,
 A hut for the privy, both a door as well as a doorpost and lintel,
 a hollow like a mortar, an upper projection, a post, and a “monkey’s head,”
 A pin, a bolt, a keyhole, and a hole for pulling (cord) through as well as
 a cord, a smearing inside and out, whitewash and black colouring
 Wreathwork creeperwork swordfish five strips of cloth (design)
 a bamboo and a cord for robes, weak through age, a fence,
 And about a porch, as before, and gravel, flagstones,
 (water) remained, a drain, and also a vessel, a saucer,
 Painful, shame, a lid, and they indulged in bad habits.
 He allowed copper goods a weapon being excepted.
 A sofa and divan, a wooden bowl and shoes being excepted—
 the Great Sage allowed all (other) goods made of wood.
 And the Truth-finder, a (clay foot-) scrubber
 and an earthen vessel having been excepted,
 compassionate, allowed also all (other) goods made of clay.
 The character of whatever matter, if equal to the preceding,
 even if it is brief, is known from the context in the key.
 Thus the hundred and ten matters in the Minor Matters in the discipline
 are based on what is *dhamma* indeed—also there is help for the well behaved.
 The expert in discipline is well trained, friendly in mind, very well behaved,
 bringing light, steadfast, worthy of honour, one who has heard much.

BD.5.203

Vin.2.146

¹ Text and Siamese edition *tiracchānakathā*. I follow Sinhalese *tiracchānagatā vijjā* since there is no mention of “talk” in *Kd.15.33.2*. ² *pāru*. ³ Should read *lujjati* as in Sinhalese and Siamese editions, not *lujjanti* as in text. ⁴ *Kd.15.35.3 pidharo*; above *pidhāro*; Sinhalese edition *Pīdharo*; Siamese edition *pīṭharo*.

16. LODGINGS (SAYANĀSANA)

FIRST RECITATION SECTION

ALLOWANCE FOR DWELLINGS

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time lodgings had not been permitted to monks by the Lord. So these monks stayed here and there: in a forest, at the root of a tree, on a hillside, in a glen, in a mountain cave, in a cemetery, in a forest glade, in the open air, on a heap of straw.¹ Early in the mornings these went out from this and that place: from the forest ... from the heap of straw, pleasing when approaching and when receding, when looking before, when looking back, when bending back (their arms), when stretching them out, their eyes cast down and possessed of pleasant behaviour.²

Kd.16.1.1
BD.5.204

Now at that time a (great) merchant of Rājagaha went early one morning to a pleasure grove.³ The (great) merchant of Rājagaha saw these monks going out from this and that place: from a forest ... from a heap of straw, and seeing them he made up his mind.⁴ Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha approached those monks; having approached, he spoke thus to those monks: "If I, revered sirs, were to have dwelling-places built, would you stay in my dwelling-places?"

Kd.16.1.2

¹ Cf. same list at DN.i.71, MN.iii.3, AN.ii.210, and a shorter one at AN.i.241 The terms are defined at DN-a.209–DN-a.210, Vb-a.366–Vb-a.367. ² More or less stock; cf. Vin.3.181, DN.i.70, MN.iii.35, MN.iii.90, AN.ii.104, AN.ii.106, AN.ii.210. ³ Defined at Vin.4.298. ⁴ *assa cittaṃ paḍīdi*, his mind became clear or bright.

“Householder, dwelling-places have not been allowed by the Lord.”

“Well then, revered sirs, having inquired of the Lord, tell me (what he says).”

BD.5.205 “Very well, householder,” and these monks, having answered the (great) merchant of Rājagaha in assent, approached the Lord; having approached the Lord, having greeted him, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these monks spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the (great) merchant of Rājagaha is anxious to have dwelling-places built. What line of conduct should be followed by us, Lord?” Then the Lord on this occasion having given reasoned talk addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.16.1.3 “I allow, monks, five (kinds of) abodes:¹ a dwelling-place, a curved house, a long house,² a mansion,³ a cave.”⁴

Vin.2.147 Then these monks approached the (great) merchant of Rājagaha; having approached, they spoke thus to the (great) merchant of Rājagaha: “Householder, dwelling-places have been allowed by the Lord. Do now what seems right.” Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha had sixty dwelling-places established on one day alone. When the (great) merchant of Rājagaha had had these sixty dwelling-places finished he approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the (great) merchant of Rājagaha spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.16.1.4 Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having had sumptuous foods, solid and soft, prepared towards the end of that night, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.” Then the

¹ Cf. Kd.1.80.4, and also BD.2.16, n.6 (on BD.5.17). ² See BD.2.16, n.5. *Pāsāda* is again called *dīghapāsāda* at Vin-a.1215, on above passage. ³ *hammiya*. See BD.2.16, n.6. Vin-a.1215 says “a *hammiya* is like a *pāsāda* with a chamber placed on the topmost open-air floor.”

⁴ Vin-a.1215 says a cave, *guhā*, in bricks, in stones, in wood, in laterite, *paṃsu*. On *paṃsu* as meaning “laterite” in this connection see A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol. 48, no. 3, p.266.

Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, sat down at a respectful distance when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the (great) merchant of Rājagaha spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, I had these sixty dwelling-places built because I need merit, because I need heaven. What line of conduct am I, Lord, to follow in regard to these dwelling-places?”

BD.5.206

“Well now, do you, householder, establish these sixty dwelling-places for (the use of) the Order of the four quarters,¹ present and to come.”

“Very well, Lord,” and the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having answered the Lord in assent, had those sixty dwelling-places established for (the use of) the Order of the four quarters, present and to come.

Kd.16.1.5

Then the Lord thanked the (great) merchant of Rājagaha in these verses:²

“They ward off cold and heat and beasts of prey from there
And creeping things and gnats and rains in the wet season.
When the dreaded hot wind arises, that is warded off.
To meditate and obtain insight in a refuge and at ease:—

“A dwelling-place is praised by the Awakened One as chief gift
to an Order.

Therefore a wise man, looking to his own weal,
Should have charming dwelling-places built
so that those who have heard much can stay therein.³

Vin.2.148

“To these⁴ food and drink, raiment and lodgings
He should give, to the upright, with mind purified.
(Then) these⁵ teach him *dhamma* dispelling every ill;
He, knowing that *dhamma*, here attains *nibbāna*, canker-less.”⁶

¹ See S. DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.83ff., p.131, p.143. ² As at Kd.16.9.2 below, and Ja.i.93, DN-a.i.304. ³ Cf. Mi.211. ⁴ For this line and next, cf. SN.i.100. ⁵ This line and next at AN.iii.41, AN.iii.43. ⁶ Cf. this line with Snp.765.

Then the Lord, having given thanks to the (great) merchant of Rājagaha in these verses, rising from his seat, departed.

Kd.16.2.1

BD.5.207

People heard: “It is said that dwelling-places are allowed by the Lord,” and they zealously had dwelling-places built. These dwelling-places did not have doors, and snakes, scorpions and centipedes got in. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a door.” Having made a hole in the wall, they tied on the door with jungle creeper and with cord, but these were eaten by rats and white ants and when the tyings were eaten the doors fell down. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a doorpost and lintel, a hollow like a mortar (for the door to revolve in) a small upper projection.”¹ The doors did not meet. “I allow, monks, a hole for pulling through (the cord), cord for pulling through.”² The doors could not be closed. “I allow, monks, a post for the bolt, a ‘monkey’s head,’ a pin (to secure the bolt), a stick (used as a bolt).”³

Now at that time monks were not able to open a door. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a keyhole and three (kinds of) keys: a copper key, a wooden key, a horn key.” But the dwelling-places were unguarded⁴ when those who, having unfastened⁵ (the doors), entered. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a bolt and a pin (to secure the bolt).”⁶

Kd.16.2.2

Now at that time dwelling-places were roofed with grass; they were cold in the cold weather, hot in the hot weather. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having lashed on (a roofing), to give it a smearing inside and out.”⁷ Now at that time dwelling-places had no windows.⁸ They were bad for the eyes and nasty smelling. They told this

¹ On these items see [Kd.15.14.3](#). ² On these items see [Kd.15.14.3](#). ³ On these items see [Kd.15.14.3](#). ⁴ *agutta*, as were the lodgings at [Kd.18.3.1](#). ⁵ *ugghāṭetvā*, as at [Kd.18.1.1](#) of the *ghaṭikā*, stick used as a bolt. ⁶ *yantakaṃ sūcikaṃ*. Vin-a.1216 says “Whatever one sees that is a *yantaka*, and one can make a pin to open it”. Cf. *yantakaṃ deti*, to secure the bolt, to lock up, at Dh-p-a.i.220. ⁷ As at [Kd.15.11.6](#): [Kd.15.14.3](#), etc. ⁸ Probably window holes, because the above word, *vātapāna*, is used at [Vin.4.47](#) to explain *ālokaśandhi*, the holes for light and air. *Vātapāna* mentioned at [Kd.1.25.18](#).

matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) windows: a railing window,¹ a lattice window,² a stick window.”³ Squirrels and bats got through the spaces in the windows. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, drapery⁴ across the windows.” Squirrels and bats got in even through the drapery. “I allow, monks, shutters⁵ across the windows, little bolsters⁶ across the windows.”

BD.5.208

Now at that time monks lay down to sleep on the ground and their limbs and robes were soiled with dust. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a grass matting.” The grass matting was eaten by rats and white ants. “I allow, monks, a solid bench.”⁷ Because of the solid bench their limbs became painful. “I allow, monks, a little couch of split bamboo.”⁸

Kd.16.2.3

Vin.2.149

ALLOWANCE FOR COUCHES AND CHAIRS

Now at that time a bierlike long couch⁹ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a long couch.” A long chair accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a long chair.” Now at that time a bierlike couch with slats¹⁰ accrued to an Order ... a chair with slats ... a bierlike couch with curved legs¹¹ ... a chair with curved legs ... a bierlike couch with removeable legs¹² ... a chair with removeable legs accrued. “I allow, monks, a chair with removeable legs.”

Kd.16.2.4

¹ *vedikāvātapāna*. Vin-a.1216 says like the railing of a shrine. So, a grille in a railing pattern. See A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society Vol. 48, no. 3, p.273 for short discussion of these three types of windows. ² *jālavātapāna*. Vin-a.1216 says something tied net wise, so a lattice. ³ *salākavātapāna*. Vin-a.1216 says a little post or pillar window. These words will be more readily understood if it is remembered that *vātapāna* is an aperture and not what closes it. ⁴ *cakkalikā*. Vin-a.1216 says “I allow you to tie on cloth used for wiping the feet” ⁵ *kavāṭaka*. ⁶ *bhisikā*. Cf. **BD.2.47, n.1** on *bhisi*. ⁷ *miḍhi*. See **Kd.15.9.4**. Vin-a.1216 here explains by *piṭhaphalaka*. ⁸ *bidalamañcaka*. Cf. Ja.i.9, Dh-p-a.i.135 where mentioned as a feature in the life of one who has gone forth. Vin-a.1216 says a twig couch or one woven with bamboo chips. ⁹ *masāraka* defined in **Bu-Pc.14**. For notes on these four kinds of couches and chairs see **BD.2.240**. ¹⁰ *bundikābaddha*, defined in **Bu-Pc.14**, as are also the next two terms. ¹¹ *kulīrapādaka*. ¹² *āhaccapādaka*.

Now at that time a rectangular chair¹ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a rectangular chair.” A tall rectangular chair² accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, even³ a tall rectangular chair.”⁴ A three-sided (couch)⁵ accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a three-sided (couch).” A tall three-sided (couch) accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, even a tall three-sided (couch).” A plaited chair⁶ accrued ... a cloth chair⁷ ... a sheep-footed⁸ chair ... a “stalks of the emblic myrobalan” chair⁹ ... a wooden (chair)¹⁰ ... a stool¹¹ ... a straw chair accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a straw chair.”

BD.5.209

Kd.16.2.5

Now at that time the group of six monks lay down to sleep on high couches. People touring the lodgings, having seen them ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not lie down to sleep on high couches. Whoever should (so) lie down to sleep, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.2.150

¹ *āsandika*. Vin-a.1216, reading *āsandhika*, says it is called a four-cornered (or square, *cat-urassa*) chair. Cf. Kh-a.44. ² *uccako āsandiko*. ³ *pi*, also meaning “too, also,” but in view of the efforts made to prevent monks from using chairs, couches and beds that were too high, “even” seems a permissible translation. ⁴ Vin-a.1216 says a long chair is on a support eight finger-breadths (high), but if it exceeds that measure it should be called a rectangular chair. ⁵ *sattaṅga*, literally seven limbs, parts, members or constituents. Vin-a.1216 says that “it is a couch that is finished, a support having been made towards three (of the) quarters.” It therefore occupied three sides of a square, and had four ends (two outer and two inner), making a total of seven parts. ⁶ *baddhapīṭha*. Vin-a.1216 says a chair made entirely of twigs. ⁷ *pīṭhikā*. Vin-a.1216 says just a chair plaited in cloth. ⁸ *eḷakapādaka*. Vin-a.1216 says “having placed the upper parts of the legs in white woollen cloth round the wood, it is a finished chair like a slab for food, *bhojanaphalaka*”. Cf. *kulīrapādaka*, literally “crab-footer,” for which see BD.2.240, n.4. ⁹ *āmālakavaṇṭhika pīṭha*. Vin-a.1217 says this is a chair of many legs plaited in the manner (or on the pattern) of emblic myrobalan. ¹⁰ *phalaka*. See *phalakapīṭha* at Vin.4.40 and BD.2.242, n.5. Cf. *apassenaphalaka* at Kd.1.25.15, Kd.16.20.2. ¹¹ *koccha*. See BD.2.239, n.1, and Old Commentary’s definition at BD.2.240. On above passage Vin-a.1217, omitting “made of bark,” says made of khus-khus, made of *muñja*-grass (which at Vin-a.1217 reads *puñjamaya*), made of reeds.

Now at that time a certain monk, lying down to sleep on a low couch, was bitten by a snake. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, supports for the couches.”¹

Now at that time the group of six monks used tall supports for the couches; they rocked to and fro together with the tall supports for the couches. **“Monks, tall supports for couches should not be used. Whoever should use them, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, a support for a couch to be eight finger-breadths at the most.”**²

BD.5.210

Now at that time thread accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to weave a couch.” The ends used up much thread. “I allow you, monks, having pierced the ends,³ to weave small squares.”⁴ A piece of cotton cloth accrued. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a carpet.”⁵ A cotton quilt⁶ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having unravelled it, to make a squatting mat⁷ of three (kinds of) cotton:⁸ cotton from trees, cotton from creepers, cotton from grass.”

Kd.16.2.6

Now at that time the group of six monks used squatting mats half (the size of a man’s) body. People, touring the dwelling-places, having seen them ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, squatting mats half (the size of a man’s) body should not be used. Who-ever should use**

¹ *mañcapaṭṭipādaka*, as at Kd.1.25.16, Kd.18.1.3. See BD.4.64, n.4. ² Cf. Bu-Pc.87. ³ *aṅge vijjhitvā*. On this expression see BD.2.240, n.5. “Legs” is I think a better translation than “sides” (Vinaya Texts iii.166). ⁴ *aṭṭhapadaka* as at Kd.8.21.1. Perhaps meaning “in the chequered board fashion,” *aṭṭhapada*, on which see BD.1.316, n.2. ⁵ *cilimikā*. See BD.2.241, n.8. Vin-a.1217 on above says “when the earth is treated with plaster, a *cilimikā* is called a covering, *attharaṇa*, for protecting the surface, *chavi*.” ⁶ *tūlikā*, as at Kd.5.10.4. ⁷ *bimbohana*. Similar allowance made at Kd.6.14. ⁸ *tūla*. See similar definition at Vin.4.170 (BD.3.93, q.v. n.2). Vin-a.1217 says cotton from any vegetable growth can be used for squatting mats, but apart from trees, creepers and grasses there is no other vegetable growth.

one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to make a squatting mat the size of a head.”¹

Kd.16.2.7

BD.5.211

Now at that time there came to be a festival on a mountain top near Rājagaha.² People arranged mattresses³ for the great ministers: mattresses of wool, mattresses of cotton cloth, mattresses of bark, mattresses of *tiṇa*-grass, mattresses of leaves.⁴ When the festival was over they conveyed them away having taken off the covers. Monks saw much wool and cotton cloth and bark and *tiṇa*-grass and leaves thrown away at the festival place; and seeing it they told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, five (kinds of) mattresses: a mattress of wool ... of cotton cloth ... of bark ... of *tiṇa*-grass, a mattress of leaves.”

Vin.2.151

Now at that time woven cloth⁵ as a requisite for lodgings accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to cover a mattress (with it).” Now at that time monks packed away a couch-mattress on a chair, they packed away a chair-mattress on a couch; the mattresses fell to bits.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, a covered couch, a covered chair.”⁷ They packed them away without having put a cobweb cloth (beneath⁸ and the stuffing) came out from below. “I allow you, monks, having put a cobweb cloth (beneath the mattress), having spread it, to cover a mattress.” Having removed the covers, they carried them away. “I allow you, monks, to sprinkle⁹ them.” They

¹ Cf. Vb-a.365 which elaborates saying that in width it can be four standard finger breadths, in length the measure of the width of the couch. ² See BD.2.335, n.1. Phrase also occurs at Kd.15.2.6. ³ *bhīsi*. See BD.2.47, n.1. ⁴ Same five kinds given at Vin.4.40. See BD.2.240, n.7. ⁵ *dussa*. ⁶ As at Kd.15.11.2. ⁷ *onaddhamañca onaddhapīṭha*. This must mean covered with mattresses to fit them. Cf. Vin.1.194, Vin.2.270. ⁸ *ullokam akaritvā*, which Vin-a.1218 explains by *hetthā cimilikam adatvā*. On *cimilikā* see above, BD.5.210, n.4. *Ullokā* occurs at Vin.1.48 = Vin.2.209. ⁹ *positum*, which should read *phositum* as does Vin.1.205 and Vin-a.1218. This latter says “to give sprinklings (or touches, *phusitāni*) on top with dyes or with turmeric.”

still carried them away. “I allow, monks, line decoration.”¹ They still carried them away. “I allow you, monks, the outline of the hand.”²

ALLOWANCE FOR WHITEWASH, ETC.

Now at that time the sleeping places³ of members of other sects were white-washed, the ground was coloured black, the walls were treated with red chalk.⁴ Many people went to see the sleeping places. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, whitewash, black colouring, red chalk (to be used) in a dwelling-place.” Now at that time the whitewash did not adhere to the rough walls. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having applied lumps of grain-husks, having kept some back with a spoon,⁵ to put on the whitewash.” The whitewash would not stick on. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having applied soft clay, having kept some back with a spoon, to put on the whitewash.” The whitewash would not stick on. “I allow, monks, what exudes from trees⁶ and flour-paste.”

Kd.16.3.1
BD.5.212

Now at that time the red chalk did not adhere to the rough walls ... (as above) ... The red chalk would not stick on. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having applied the red powder of rice husks (mixed with) clay, having kept some back with a spoon, to put on the red chalk.” The red chalk would not stick on. They told this matter to the

¹ *bhattikamma*. Vin-a.1219 reads *bhittikamma*, wall-work, and says it is a *bhattikamma* on top of the mattress cover. Whatever the exact meaning of the term, it is no doubt a different process from the “sprinkling” which, as perhaps a forerunner to the tie-and-dye industry, would probably result in spots. Cf. *bhatikamma* at Kd.15.9.2. ² *hatthabhitti*. *Bhitti* is of course a wall. Vin-a.1219 says *pañcaṅgulabhitti*, the wall of the five fingers. All these marks were probably applied so as to disfigure the mattresses and thus dissuade monks from carrying them off; cf. Bu-Pc.58. Or they may have been identification marks. But all the readings, and therefore the meanings, are uncertain. Reading in the “key,” Vin.2.178, is *hatthabhitti*, line of the hand. On *pañcangulikam dātuṃ* cf. above, BD.5.170. ³ *seyyā*, defined at Vin.4.17=Vin.4.20, Vin.4.41. ⁴ See Kd.15.11.6 for these words. ⁵ *pāṇikā*, Buddhaghosa says nothing. Cf. *pāṇiyā* at Kd.15.1.5. ⁶ *ikkāsa*. Vin-a.1219 says *rukkhaniy(y)āsaṃ vā silesaṃ vā*. Gum, resin, and juice all exude from trees. Cf. *niyyāsakhādāniya* at Vin-a.832, Vin-a.837 and *niyyāsarukkha* at Vism.74.

Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, mustard-powder,¹ oil of beeswax.” It was too thick.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to sponge it over³ with a piece of cloth.”

Now at that time the black colouring did not adhere to the rough walls ... (as above) ... The black colouring would not stick on. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having applied clay (mixed with the excrement of) earthworms,⁴ having kept some back with a spoon, to put on the black colouring.” The black colouring would not stick on. They told this matter to the Lord He said: “I allow, monks, what exudes from trees, an astringent decoction.”⁵

BD.5.213

REJECTION OF A BOLD DESIGN

Now at that time the group of six monks had a bold design⁶ made with figures of women, figures of men, in a dwelling-place. People touring the dwelling-places, having seen this, ... spread it about, saying: “Like householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not have a bold design made with figures of women, figures of men. Whoever should have one made, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, wreath-work, creeper-work, swordfish teeth, the five strips (of cloth design).”⁷

Kd.16.3.2

Vin.2.152

ALLOWANCE FOR A BALUSTRADE

Now at that time dwelling-places were low to the ground ...⁸ “... I allow monks, a balustrade.”

Kd.16.3.3

¹ -*kuḍḍa* of text should read -*kuṭṭa*. ² Vin-a.1219 says it stayed there in drop upon drop. ³ *paccuddharitum* (as at Kd.15.17.1) explained at Vin-a.1219 as *puñchitum*, to wipe.

⁴ *gaṇḍamattikā*. Vin-a.1219, reading *taṇḍa-* with variant reading *gaṇḍu-*, explains as above.

⁵ *kasāva*. Cf. Kd.4.4, where certain specified ones are allowed as medicines. ⁶ *paṭibhānacitta*, as at Vin.4.61 (see BD.2.285, n.5) and BD.4.298. Vin-a.1219 says “not only the figures of women and men, but also figures of animals, even of an earthworm.” ⁷ As at Kd.15.11.6.

⁸ As at Kd.15.11.6.

Now at that time dwelling-places were thronged with people.¹ Monks were (too) modest to lie down. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a curtain.”² They looked in, having lifted up the curtain. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a small half-wall.” They looked in over the top of the small half-wall. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) inner rooms: a palanquin-like inner room,³ a tube-like inner room,⁴ an inner room on the roof.”⁵ Now at that time monks made an inner room in the middle of a small dwelling-place; there was no access.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make an inner room at one side of a small dwelling-place, in the middle of a large one.”

Kd.16.3.4
BD.5.214

Now at that time the base of a wall of a dwelling-place disintegrated. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a timber buttress.”⁷ A wall of a dwelling-place let in the rain.⁸ “I allow, monks, a protecting screen⁹ (and) paste and water.”¹⁰

Now at that time a snake fell from a grass roofing on to a certain monk’s shoulder. Terrified, he uttered a cry of distress. Monks, having run up, spoke thus to this monk: “Why did you, your reverence, utter a cry of distress?” Then this monk told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a canopy.”¹¹

Now at that time monks hung their bags at the feet of couches, and at the feet of chairs: they were eaten by rats and white ants. They told this matter

Kd.16.3.5

¹ *ālakamandā*. At DN.ii.147, DN.ii.170 said to be the capital of the *devas*, with many people and crowded with *yakkhas*. Spelt in both passages as *Ālaka*-. Vin-a.1219 says each open space was crowded with people. ² *tirokaraṇī* as at Vin.1.276. ³ *sivikāgabbha*. Vin-a.1219 calls it a quadrangular (or four-sided) inner room. ⁴ *nāḷikāgabbha*. Vin-a.1219 says it is a long room whose length is two or three times its width. ⁵ *hammiyagabbha*. See BD.2.16, n.6 on HAMMIYA. Vin-a.1219 calls it a room in the gable on the open air floor or a room on the bare roof. ⁶ As at Kd.15.14.3 ⁷ *kulaṅkapādaka*. See MORRIS, Journal of the Pali Text Society 1884, p.78. ⁸ *ovassati* also at Kd.15.16.1. ⁹ *parittānakiṭṭika*. Cf. *sāmsaraṇakiṭṭika uggātanakiṭṭika* in Kd.16.3.5 below. ¹⁰ *uddhasudha*. Vin-a.1219 reading *uddhā*- with variant reading *uda*-, says clay pounded together with ashes and cowdung. Sinhalese edition reads *udda*-. ¹¹ *vitāna*, an item in some of the “no offence” clauses in the Suttavibhaṅga, e.g. at Vin.3.225, Vin.3.227, Vin.3.229, Vin.3.233, Vin.4.171, Vin.4.279.

to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a peg in the wall, an ‘elephant-tusk’ (peg).”¹ Now at that time monks laid aside their robes on a couch and on a chair. The robes fell to pieces. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a bamboo for robes, a cord for robes.”²

Vin.2.153

Now at that time dwelling-places had no verandahs³ and were without shelter.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a verandah, a covered terrace,⁵ an inner court,⁶ a verandah roofing.”⁷ The verandahs were public. Monks were (too) modest to lie down. “I allow, monks, a moveable screen,⁸ a screen that can be drawn.”

BD.5.215

ALLOWANCE FOR AN ASSEMBLY HALL

Now at that time monks participating in a meal in the open air were bothered by cold and heat. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, an assembly hall.” The assembly hall was low to the ground ...⁹ “... a cord for robes.” Now at that time monks spread out their robes in the open air on the ground. The robes were soiled by dust. “I allow, monks, a bamboo for robes and a cord for robes in the open air.”

Kd.16.3.6

Kd.16.3.7

The drinking water became tepid.¹⁰ “I allow, monks, a hall for the drinking water, a shed for the drinking water.” The hall for the drinking water was low to the ground ...¹¹ “... a cord for robes.” There was no vessel for the

¹ Cf. **Kd.15.9.5** where monks hung their bags on these pegs. ² Also allowed at **Kd.15.11.6**; **Kd.15.14.3**. ³ *ālinda*. Vin-a.1219 explains as *pamukha*. See **Kd.6.36.4**, and **BD.4.342, n.3**.

⁴ *apaṭissaraṇa*. Sinhalese edition *appatisāraṇā*. ⁵ *paghana*. Vin-a.1220, reading *palighana* but saying it is also called *paghana*, speaks of it as a *katapadesa*, a shaped (artificial) place or locality. It was at the door of the dwelling-places. ⁶ *pakuṭa*. Sinhalese edition *pakuḍḍa*. Vin-a.1220 reading *pakudda* and saying *pakuṭṭa* is also a reading, explains as “the whole of the inner room in the middle is called *pariyāgāro*: *pakuddan ti majjhe gabbhassa samantā pariyāgāro vuccati*. With this phrase cf. **Vin.3.119**. *Pariyāgāra* means “surrounded by a house.”

⁷ *osarika*. Vin-a.1220 reads, *osārika*, with variant reading *osaraka* and says “having put a bamboo in a dwelling-place without a verandah, having had small sticks taken from that, *tato osāretvā*, a verandah-covering, *chadanapamukha*, is made. ⁸ *saṃsaraṇakīṭika*. Vin-a.1220 says *cakkalayutta*. Cf. *cakkalikā* at **Kd.16.2.2** and *cakkalī* at **Kd.16.19** ⁹ As at **Kd.15.11.6**. ¹⁰ *otappati*, perhaps “evaporated, dried up.” Cf. *otāpeti*, to dry in the sun. ¹¹ As at **Kd.15.11.6**.

drinking water. “I allow, monks, a conchshell for drinking water, a saucer for drinking water.”

ALLOWANCE FOR A PORCH

Now at that time dwelling-places were not fenced in. “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) fences to fence them in: a fence of bricks, a fence of stones, a fence of wood.” There was no porch. “I allow, monks, a porch.” The porch was low to the ground. It was flooded with water. “I allow you, monks, to build it high to the ground.” There was no door to the porch. “I allow, monks, a door, a door-post and lintel ... a cord to pull through.”¹ Powdered grass fell from the porch.² “I allow, monks, ... the five (pieces of) cloth design.”³

Kd.16.3.8

Now at that time a cell came to be swampy.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord He said: “I allow you, monks, to sprinkle gravel.” They did not succeed in doing so. “I allow you, monks, to lay down flagstones.” Water remained. “I allow, monks, a drain for the water.”

Vin.2.154

Now at that time monks made a fireplace here and there in a cell; the cell became soiled.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make at one side a hall for the fire.” The hall for the fire was low to the ground ...⁶ “I allow, monks, a balustrade.” The nail for the fire had no door. “I allow, monks, a door, a doorpost and lintel ...⁷ a cord for pulling through.” Powdered grass fell into the hall for the fire. “I allow you, monks, ... a cord for robes.”

Kd.16.3.9

BD.5.216

ALLOWANCE FOR A FENCED MONASTERY

A monastery was not fenced in: goats and cattle⁸ injured the little plants.⁹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, three (kinds of) hedges to fence it in: a hedge of bamboo, a hedge of thorns, a ditch.”

Kd.16.3.10

¹ As at Kd.15.14.4. ² *koṭṭhakā* above; *koṭṭhake* at Kd.15.14.4. ³ As at Kd.15.14.4. ⁴ As at Kd.15.14.5; Kd.15.35.4. ⁵ *uklāpa*, as at Vin.1.46. ⁶ As at Kd.15.11.6. ⁷ As at Kd.15.14.6. ⁸ *pasuka*. ⁹ *uparopa*. Cf. *uparopaha* at Ja.ii.345, Ja.iv.359.

There was no porch. As before, goats and cattle injured the little plants. “I allow, monks, a porch, an interlacing of stakes and thorns,¹ a hedge of swallow-wort,² a gateway, a door-bar.”³ Powdered grass fell from the porch. “I allow you, monks, ...⁴ the five (pieces of) cloth design.” The monastery became swampy⁵ “... a drain for the water.”

Kd.16.3.11

Now at that time King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha wanted to have a long house with a smearing of plaster and clay built for an Order. Then it occurred to monks: “Now what kind of roofing is allowed by the Lord, what is not allowed?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, five (kinds of) roofings: a roofing of tiles, a roofing of stones, a roofing of plaster, a roofing of *tiṇa*-grass, a roofing of leaves.”⁶

Told is the First Portion for Repeating

SECOND RECITATION SECTION

THE STORY OF ANĀTHAPIṆḌIKA

Now at that time the householder Anāthapiṇḍika was the husband of a sister of a (great) merchant of Rājagaha. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika went to Rājagaha on some business or other. At that time the Order with the Awakened One at its head had been invited for the morrow by the (great) merchant of Rājagaha. Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha enjoined slaves and servants, saying: “Well now, good people, getting up early in the morning, cook conjeys, cook rice,⁷ prepare⁸ curries, prepare vegetables.”⁹ Then it occurred to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika: “Now, on my arrival

BD.5.217

¹ *apesiyam̃*. Sinhalese edition *apesim̃*. Vin-a.1220 reading *apesi*, says “having inserted stakes with long pieces of wood, having covered with thorny branches, it is made for closing up the doorway.” ² *akkavāṭa*. Sinhalese edition reads *yamakakavāṭa*, a pair of doors. ³ *paligha*. Vin-a.1220 says “as in village gateways, it is for closing a door that is joined to a wheel.”

⁴ As at Kd.15.14.4. ⁵ As at Kd.15.14.5; Kd.15.35.4. ⁶ These five kinds of roofings mentioned at Vin.4.48. ⁷ *bhattāni*. Cf. BD.2.149, BD.3.11 These four words are, above, all in the plural suggesting that separate portions should be got ready for each monk. ⁸ *sampādeti*, as at

Vin.3.208. ⁹ *uttaribhaṅga*, or tit-bits, dainties. See BD.1.275, n.5.

formerly this householder, having put aside all duties, did nothing except exchange greetings with me, but now he seems excited and enjoins slaves and servants, saying: ‘Well now, good people ... prepare vegetables.’ Now can there be for this householder a leading to¹ (a bride’s home) or can there be a leading away from² (a bride’s home) or is a great oblation arranged or is King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha invited for the morrow together with his troops?”

Vin.2.155

Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, having enjoined the slaves and servants, approached the householder Anāthapiṇḍika; having approached, having exchanged greetings with the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, he sat down at a respectful distance. The householder Anāthapiṇḍika spoke thus to the (great) merchant of Rājagaha as he was sitting down at a respectful distance: “Formerly you, householder, on my arrival, having put aside all duties, did nothing except exchange greetings with me, but now you seem excited and enjoin slaves and servants, saying: ‘Well now, good people ... prepare vegetables.’ Now can there be for you, householder, a leading to ... or is King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha invited for the morrow together with his troops?”

Kd.16.4.2

“There is to be for me, householder, neither a leading to (a bride’s home), nor is there to be a leading away from (a bride’s home), nor is King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha invited for the morrow together with his troops. But a great oblation is arranged by me: the Order is invited for the morrow with the Awakened One at its head.”

“Did you, householder, say ‘Awakened One?’”

“‘Awakened One’ I did say, householder.”

“Did you, householder, say ‘Awakened One?’”

“‘Awakened One’ I did say, householder.”

BD.5.218

“Did you, householder, say ‘Awakened One?’”

“‘Awakened One’ I did say, householder.”

“Even this sound, householder, is hard to come by in the world, that is to say ‘Awakened One, Awakened One.’ Now would it be possible, householder, at this time³ to go up and see this Lord, a perfected one, a fully

¹ As at Vin.3.135. See BD.1.229, n.2. ² As at Vin.3.135. See BD.1.230, n.1. ³ For this episode to the end of Kd.16.4.4 cf. SN.i.210.

Self-awakened One?”

“This time is not a right time, householder, to go up and see this Lord, a perfected one, a fully Self-awakened One. But now, early Tomorrow you shall go up to see this Lord, a perfected one, a fully Self-awakened One.”

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, thinking: “Early Tomorrow I will go up to see this Lord ... fully Self-Awakened One,” lay down with mindfulness (so much) directed to the Awakened One,¹ that he got up three times during the night thinking it was daybreak.

Kd.16.4.3

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the gateway to the Cool Grove,² and non-human beings opened the gateway. Then as the householder Anāthapiṇḍika was going out from the town, light vanished, darkness appeared; fear, consternation, hair standing on end³ arose so that he was desirous of turning back from there. Then the *yakkha* Sīvaka, invisible, made this sound heard:

Vin.2.156

“A hundred elephants,⁴ a hundred horses, a hundred chariots
with she-mules,⁵
A hundred thousand maidens adorned with jewelled earrings—

These are not worth the sixteenth part of one length of stride.

“Advance, householder, advance, householder.
Advance is better for you, not retreat.”

Then darkness vanished for the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, light appeared, so that his fear, consternation, hair standing on end subsided. And a second time ... And a third time did the *yakkha* Sīvaka made this sound heard: “... Advance is better for you, not retreat.” And a third time darkness vanished for the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, light appeared, so that his fear, consternation, hair standing on end subsided.

BD.5.219

Kd.16.4.4

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the Cool Grove. Now at that time the Lord was pacing up and down in the open air, having

¹ *buddhagatāya satiyā*. ² Sītavana. SN.i.211 reads Sīvathika, from the name of Sīvathika (variant reading Sīvaka) of the *yakkha* who lived in the Sītavana. ³ As at e.g. Vin.3.69.

⁴ Cf. the first three of these lines with Vv.20.8; Vv.43.8. ⁵ *assatarī*. Cf. *vacchatarī* at Kd.5.9.1, Kd.5.9.3.

got up in the night towards dawn. Then the Lord saw the householder Anāthapiṇḍika coming in the distance; seeing him, having stepped down from the place for pacing up and down in, he sat down on an appointed seat, and sitting down the Lord spoke thus to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika: “Come, Sudatta.”¹ Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, thinking: “The Lord addressed me by name,” joyful, elated, approached the Lord; having approached, having inclined his head to the Lord’s feet, he spoke thus to the Lord: “I hope, Lord, that the Lord is living at ease.” He said:

“Yes, always at ease he lives, the brahmin, attained to *nibbāna*,
Who is not stained by lusts,² cooled, without attachments.³
Having rent all clingings, having averted heart’s care,
Tranquil he lives at ease, having won to peace of mind.”⁴

Then the Lord talked a progressive talk⁵ to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven, he explained the peril, the vanity, the depravity of pleasures of the senses, the advantage in renouncing (them). When the Lord knew that the mind of the householder Anāthapiṇḍika was ready, malleable, devoid of the hindrances, uplifted, pleased, then he explained to him that teaching on *dhamma* which the awakened ones have themselves discovered: ill, uprising, stopping, the Way. And as a clean cloth without black specks will easily take dye, even so as he was (sitting) on that very seat, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, that “whatever is liable to uprising, all that is liable to stopping.” Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, having crossed over doubt, having put away uncertainty, having attained

Kd.16.4.5

BD.5.220

Vin.2.157

¹ SN-a.i.315 says that Anāthapiṇḍika thinks that there are many other sects, those of Pūraṇa Kassapa and so on, who say they are awakened ones; but if this teacher is the awakened one he will address him by his *kuladattika* name, i.e. by the name given him in his family, because no one but Anāthapiṇḍika himself knows this. See also KS.i.273, n.1. ² *yo na lippati kāmesu*, as at Snp.625. Cf. Kaṭha Upaniṣad 5.11 where the Sun is not defiled or contaminated, *na lipyate*, by what he sees outside himself. See A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *A Note on the Stickfast Motif*, Journal American Folklore, Vol. 57, No. 224, April–June, 1944, p.128. ³ Cf. Snp.642.

⁴ Besides SN.i.212, where the Saṃyutta version of this episode ends, this verse occurs at AN.i.138. ⁵ As at Kd.1.7.5, Kd.1.7.10; Kd.5.1.9, Kd.5.1.10; Kd.6.26.8, Kd.6.26.9.

without another's help to full confidence in the Teacher's instruction, spoke thus to the Lord:

"Excellent, Lord! Excellent, Lord! Even, Lord, as one might set upright what has been upset, or might uncover what was concealed, or might show the way to one who is astray, or might bring an oil lamp into the darkness, thinking, 'Those with eyes to see may see shapes,' even so is *dhamma* explained in many a figure by the Lord. I myself, Lord, go to the Lord for refuge, to *dhamma*, and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept me as a lay-disciple going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts. And, Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks." The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having understood the Lord's consent, rising from his seat, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.16.4.6

The (great) merchant of Rājagaha heard: "It is said that the Order with the Awakened One at its head is invited for the morrow by the householder Anāthapiṇḍika." Then the (great) merchant of Rājagaha spoke thus to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika: "It is said, that the Order with the Awakened One at its head is invited by you, householder, for the morrow. But you are incoming.¹ I can give you, householder, the means by which you can make a meal for the Order with the Awakened One at its head."

"Thank you, householder, but I have the means by which I can make a meal for the Order with the Awakened One at its head."

BD.5.221

The urban council of Rajagana heard: "The Order with the Awakened One at its head is invited for the morrow by the householder Anāthapiṇḍika." Then the urban council of Rājagaha spoke thus to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika: "It is said that the Order ... We can give you, householder, the means by which you can make a meal for the Order with the Awakened One at its head."

"Thank you, masters, but I have the means ... at its head."

King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha heard: "The Order ..." ...

"Thank you, sire, but I have the means by which I can make a meal for the Order with the Awakened One at its head."

Kd.16.4.7

¹ As opposed to resident.

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having had sumptuous foods, solid and soft, prepared towards the end of that night in the dwelling of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the (great) merchant of Rājagaha; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having with his own hand served and satisfied with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from the bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the householder Anāthapiṇḍika spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a rains-residence¹ from me at Sāvattḥī together with the Order of monks.”

Vin.2.158

“But, householder, Truth-finders delight in empty places.”

“It is understood, Lord, it is understood, Well-farer.” Then the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the householder Anāthapiṇḍika with talk on *dhamma*, rising from his seat, departed.

Now at that time the householder Anāthapiṇḍika had many friends, many companions, his word carried weight.² Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having concluded that business at Rājagaha, set out for Sāvattḥī. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika enjoined people on the way, saying: “Masters, build monasteries, prepare dwelling-places, furnish gifts; an Awakened One has arisen in the world, and this Lord, invited by me, will come along by this road.”

Kd.16.4.8

BD.5.222

Then these people, urged on by the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, built monasteries, prepared dwelling-places, furnished gifts. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having arrived at Sāvattḥī, looked all round Sāvattḥī, thinking:³ “Now where could the Lord stay that would be neither too far from a village, nor too near, suitable for coming and going, accessible to

¹ *vassāvāsa*, as in [Kd.3.1.1](#), and *cf.* [Kd.3.14](#). ² *ādeyyavāca*. Vin-a.1220 says “his speech would be taken up by the many folk thinking, ‘It seems he should be heard’.” ³ As at [Kd.1.22.16](#), [Kd.1.22.17](#) where Bimbisāra is giving the Bamboo Grove.

people whenever they want, not crowded by day, having little noise at night, little sound, without folks' breath, secluded from people, fitting for meditation?"

Kd.16.4.9

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika saw Prince Jeta's pleasure grove, neither too far from a village ... fitting for meditation, and seeing it, he approached Prince Jeta; having approached he spoke thus to Prince Jeta: "Give me, young master, the pleasure grove to make a monastery."

"The pleasure grove is not to be given away, householder, even for the price of a hundred thousand."¹

"Young master, the monastery is taken."

"The monastery is not taken, householder." They asked the chief ministers of justice,² saying: "Is it taken or is it not taken?" The chief ministers spoke thus: "The monastery is taken at the price fixed by you, young master." Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having had gold coins³ brought out by means of wagons, had the Jeta Grove spread with the price of a hundred thousand.⁴

Vin.2.159

Kd.16.4.10

The gold coins that were taken out the first time were not enough for a small open space near to the porch. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika enjoined the people, saying: "Go back, good people, bring (more) gold coins, I will spread this open space." Then it occurred to Prince Jeta: "Now this can be no ordinary matter⁵ inasmuch as this householder bestows so many gold coins," and he spoke thus to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika:

BD.5.223

"Enough, householder; let me spread this open space, give this open space to me, it will be my gift."

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, thinking: "This Prince Jeta is a distinguished, well-known man; surely the faith in this *dhamma* and discipline of well-known men like this is very efficacious,"⁶ made over that

¹ As at Ja.i.94. ² Cf. similar passage at Vin.4.223 (BD.3.178). ³ *hirañña*; see note at BD.1.28.

⁴ *koṭisantharam santharāpesi*. Vin-a.1220 says "having given a hundred thousand *kaḥāpaṇas*, having had them spread out (on the ground), having taken the measure of the circumference of trees and ponds there, he gave having had them (i.e. the *kaḥāpaṇas*) spread out in a certain place". Most likely the gold coins were not round but square, see *Vinaya Texts* iii.188, n.1.

⁵ *na orakam bhavassiti*. Cf. Kd.1.9.1, and below Kd.16.5.1. ⁶ As at Kd.6.36.3.

open space to Prince Jeta. Then Prince Jeta built a porch¹ on that open space. The householder Anāthapiṇḍika had dwelling-places made, he had cells² made ... porches ... attendance halls ... fire halls ... huts for what is allowable ... privies ... places for pacing up and down in ... halls in the places for pacing up and down in ... wells ... halls at the wells ... bathrooms ... halls in the bathrooms ... lotus ponds ... he had sheds made.

GIVING BUILDING WORK

Then the Lord, having stayed at Rājagaha for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Vesālī. In due course, walking on tour, he arrived at Vesālī. The Lord stayed there at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Hall of the Gabled Pillars. Now at that time people were making repairs carefully and they were also attending carefully, with the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings and medicines for the sick, to those monks who were looking after the repairs. Then it occurred to a certain poor tailor: “Now this can be no ordinary matter inasmuch as these people are making repairs carefully. What now if I too should make repairs?” Then that poor tailor, having himself kneaded mud, having piled up bricks, had wattle and daub walls erected. But because he was not skilful the piling was crooked and a wall fell down. And a second time ... And a third time ... a wall fell down.

Kd.16.5.1

Then that poor tailor ... spread it about, saying: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, exhort, instruct those who give them the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick, and these look after their repairs. But I am poor. No one exhorts or instructs me or looks after my repairs.” Monks heard this poor tailor as he was ... spreading it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

BD.5.224

Kd.16.5.2

Vin.2.160

“I allow you, monks, to put repairs in charge (of a monk).³ Monks, the monk who is in charge of repairs should make an effort,⁴ thinking, ‘How

¹ *koṭṭhaka* is a word of unsettled meaning. Vin-a.1221 says that he built a seven storeyed long house with a porch (or storehouse) at the gateway (*dvāra*koṭṭhakapāsāda). ² Cf. this list with that at Kd.3.5.6, Kd.3.5.9. ³ *navakammaṃ dātuṃ*. For various rules for making repairs see Kd.16.17. ⁴ *ussukkaṃ āpajjissati*. Cf. *ussukkaṃ karoti* at Vin.4.280, Vin.4.291, Vin.4.300.

can the dwelling-place be brought to a rapid termination?’ and he should restore broken and dilapidated parts.¹

Kd.16.5.3

“And thus, monks, should they be given in charge: First, a monk should be asked; having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order give the repairs to the dwelling-place of the householder So-and-so in charge of the monk So-and-so. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is giving the repairs ... in charge of the monk So-and-so. If the giving in charge of the monk So-and-so, of the repairs to the dwelling-place of the householder So-and-so, is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. Repairs to the dwelling-place of the householder So-and-so are given in charge of the monk So-and-so. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

ALLOWANCE FOR THE FIRST SEAT, ETC.

Kd.16.6.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Vesālī for as long as he found suiting,² set out on tour for Sāvattthī. Now at that time monks who were pupils of the group of six monks, having gone along in front of the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, took possession of dwelling-places, they took possession of sleeping places, saying: “This will be for our preceptors, this will be for our teachers, this will be for us.” Then the venerable Sāriputta, having gone along close behind the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, not being able to get a sleeping place—the dwelling-places being taken possession of, the sleeping places being taken possession of—sat down at the root of a certain tree. Then the Lord, getting up during the night towards morning, coughed. The venerable Sāriputta also coughed.

BD.5.225

“Who is there?”

“It is I, Lord, Sāriputta.”

“Why are you, Sāriputta, sitting here?” Then the venerable Sāriputta told this matter to the Lord.³

Kd.16.6.2

¹ At AN.iii.263 this is one of five things said to make a resident monk very useful to his residence. ² For the incident related here, cf. Ja.no.37. ³ Cf. a similar passage at Vin.4.16.

Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks who are pupils ... ‘... this will be for us’?”

Vin.2.161

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men, having gone along in front of ... saying ‘... this will be for us’? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Who, monks, is worthy of the best seat, the best water¹ (for washing), the best alms?” Some monks spoke thus: “Whoever, Lord, has gone forth from a noble family, he is worthy of the best ... alms.” Some monks spoke thus: “Whoever, Lord, has gone forth from a brahmin family ... from a householder’s family ... Whoever, Lord, knows the *suttantas*² ... is an expert on discipline ... is a teacher of *dhamma* ... is possessed of the first meditation³ ... is possessed of the second meditation ... is possessed of the third meditation ... is possessed of the fourth meditation ... is a stream winner ... a once-returned ... a non-returned ... one perfected ... a threefold wisdom man ... a sixfold superknowledge man, he is worthy of the best seat, the best water (for washing), the best alms.”

BD.5.226

Kd.16.6.3

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Formerly,⁴ monks, there used to be a large banyan on a slope of the Himalayas. Three friends lived near it: a partridge, a monkey and a bull-elephant. These lived courteous, deferential, polite⁵ to one another. Then, monks, it occurred to these friends: ‘Now let us find out which of us is the eldest by birth. We should respect, revere, reverence, honour him, and we should abide by his advice.’ Then, monks, the partridge and the monkey asked the bull-elephant: ‘You, friend, what long-ago thing do you remember?’

“‘When I, friends, was young I used to pass over this banyan keeping it between my thighs, and the topmost shoots brushed against my belly. This, friends, is a long-ago thing that I remember.’

¹ *aggodakam*, explained by *dakkhiṇodaka* at Vin-a.1221 = MN-a.i.145. Cf. MN.i.28, MN.ii.204.

² With this and the next two items compare a similar list at Vin.3.159. ³ With this list to the end, cf. Vin.4.24. ⁴ This episode forms the Tittirajātaḥ, Ja.no.37. ⁵ As at Kd.1.25.6, Kd.5.4.3.

“Then, monks, the partridge and the bull-elephant asked the monkey: ‘You, friend, what long-ago thing do you remember?’

“‘When I, friends, was young, having sat down on the ground, I used to eat the topmost shoots of this banyan. This, friends, is a long-ago thing that I remember.’

“Then, monks, the monkey and the bull-elephant asked the partridge: ‘You, friend, what long-ago thing do you remember?’

“‘Friends, in a certain open space there was a great banyan. I, having eaten one of its fruits, relieved myself in that open space, and this banyan

Vin.2.162

has grown from that. So I, friends, am the eldest by birth.’

“Then, monks, the monkey and the bull-elephant spoke thus to the partridge: ‘You, friend, are the eldest of us by birth. We will respect, revere, reverence, honour you and we will abide by your advice.’

“Then, monks, the partridge caused the monkey and the bull-elephant to undertake the five moral habits and himself followed the observance of the five moral habits. They, having lived courteous, deferential, polite to one another, at the breaking up of the body after dying arose in a happy bourn, a heaven world. This, monks, came to be known as the ‘Partridge Brahma-faring.’¹

BD.5.227

“Those who reverence the old—
 those men are skilled in *dhamma*,
 Worthy of praise here and now
 and a happy bourn here-after.

Kd.16.6.4

“Well then, monks, if animals, breathers, can live courteous, deferential, polite to one another, so do you, monks, let your light shine forth here so that you, gone forth in this *dhamma* and discipline which are well taught, live likewise courteous, deferential, polite to one another. It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, greeting, rising up for, joining the palms in salutation, proper homage, the best seat, the best water (for washing), the best alms according to seniority. But, monks, what belongs to an Order should not be

¹ This sentence is quoted at DN-a.i.178.

reserved according to seniority. Whoever should (so) reserve it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

PERSONS NOT TO BE BOWED TO

“Monks, there are these ten who are not to be greeted: one ordained later is not to be greeted by one ordained earlier; one not ordained is not to be greeted; one belonging to a different communion (even) if he is more senior (yet) speaks what is not-*dhamma* is not to be greeted; a woman is not to be greeted; a eunuch ... one under probation¹ ... one who deserves to be sent back to the beginning² ... one who deserves *mānatta* ... one undergoing *mānatta* ... one deserving rehabilitation is not to be greeted. These, ten, monks, are not to be greeted. These three, monks, are to be greeted: one ordained earlier is to be greeted by one ordained later; one belonging to a different communion if he is more senior and speaks what is *dhamma* is to be greeted; and, monks, a Truth-finder, a perfected one, a fully Self-awakened one³ is to be greeted in the world with its *devas*, with its Māras, with its Brahmas, by creatures with recluses and brahmins, with *devas* and mankind. These three, monks, are to be greeted.”

Kd.16.6.5

BD.5.228

REJECTION OF RESERVED SEATING

Now at that time people prepared sheds for an Order, they prepared rugs, they prepared open spaces. Monks who were pupils of the group of six monks,⁴ saying: “Only what belongs to an Order is not allowed according to seniority by the Lord, not what is made on purpose for it,” having gone along in front of the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, took possession of the sheds, took possession of the rugs, took possession of the open spaces, thinking: “This will be for our preceptors, this will be for our teachers, this will be for us.” Then the venerable Sāriputta, having gone along close behind the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head, not having a chance to get an open space—the sheds being taken possession of, the rugs being taken possession of, the open spaces being

Kd.16.7.1

Vin.2.163

¹ See Kd.12.1.2. ² See Kd.13.15. ³ Cf. AN.ii.34, Iti p.87f. ⁴ As in Kd.16.6.1.

taken possession of—sat down at the root of a certain tree. Then the Lord, getting up during the night towards morning, coughed. The venerable Sāriputta also coughed.

“Who is there?”

“It is I, Lord, Sāriputta.”

“Why are you, Sāriputta, sitting here?” Then the venerable Sāriputta told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the monks, saying: “Is it true, as is said, monks, ...?” ... Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, even what is made on purpose for an Order should not be reserved according to seniority. Whoever should (so) reserve it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

ALLOWANCE FOR WHAT IS DISPLAYED BY HOUSEHOLDERS

Kd.16.8.1

Now at that time in a refectory inside a house people appointed high and broad things to recline upon, that is to say:¹ a sofa,² a divan, a long-haired coverlet, a many-coloured coverlet, a white coverlet, a wool coverlet besprent with flowers, a cotton quilt, a wool coverlet decorated with animals forms, a wool covering with hair on the upper side, a wool covering with hair at one side, a silken sheet studded with jewels, a sheet made with silk thread and studded with jewels, a dancer’s carpet, an elephant rug, a horse rug, a chariot rug, rugs of black antelope skins, a splendid sheeting of the hide of the *kadali*-deer, a sheet with an awning above, a couch with a red cushion at either end. Monks, being scrupulous, did not sit down on them.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, except for the three: a sofa, a divan, a cotton quilt, to sit down on what is displayed by householders, but not to lie down on it.”⁴

BD.5.229

¹ List as at Kd.5.10.4. See BD.4.256 for notes ² Definition of *āsandi* at Thag-a.i.137 is that it is a long-legged four-cornered chair upon which it is possible to sit but not to lie. ³ Made an offence of wrong-doing at Kd.5.10.5 to use any of these things. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.194 (BD.4.259).

Now at that time in a refectory inside a house people appointed a couch and a chair, both covered up with cotton.¹ Monks, being scrupulous, did not sit down on them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to sit down on what is displayed by householders, but not to lie down on it.”

APPRECIATION FOR THE JETAVANA MONASTERY

Then the Lord, walking on tour, in due course arrived at Sāvattthī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the householder Anāthapiṇḍika spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, may the Lord consent to a meal with me on the morrow together with the Order of monks.” The Lord consented by becoming silent. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having understood the Lord’s consent, rising from his seat departed keeping his right side towards him. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having had sumptuous foods, solid and soft, prepared towards the end of that night, had the time announced to the Lord, saying: “It is time, Lord, the meal is ready.” Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, approached the dwelling of the householder Anāthapiṇḍika; having approached, he sat down on the appointed seat together with the Order of monks. Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having with his own hand served and satisfied the Order of monks with the Awakened One at its head with sumptuous foods, solid and soft, when the Lord had eaten and had withdrawn his hand from his bowl, sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the householder Anāthapiṇḍika spoke thus to the Lord: “What line of conduct am I, Lord, to follow in regard to the Jeta Grove?”

“Well now, do you, householder, have the Jeta Grove prepared for (the use of) the Order of the four quarters,² present and to come.”

¹ *tūlonaddha*. Cf. *onaddhamañca onaddhapīṭha* at [Kd.16.2.7](#), and [Vin.2.270](#). Cf. also [Vin.1.194](#).

² See [Kd.8.275](#); [Kd.16.1.4](#).

Kd.16.9.1

Vin.2.164

BD.5.230

“Very well, Lord,” and the householder Anāthapiṇḍika, having answered the Lord in assent, had the Jeta Grove prepared for (the use of) the Order of the four quarters, present and to come.

Kd.16.9.2

Then the Lord thanked the householder Anāthapiṇḍika in these verses:¹

“They ward off cold and heat and beasts of prey from there ...

Vin.2.165

He, knowing that *dhamma* here, attains *nibbāna*, cankerless.”

Then the Lord, having given thanks to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika in these verses, rising from his seat departed.

RESERVATION OF A SEAT, ETC.

Kd.16.10.1

Now at that time a certain chief minister who was a disciple of the Naked Ascetics had a meal for an Order. The venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having arrived after (the others) while the meal was yet unfinished, turned away the monk who was next to him,² and there was an uproar in the refectory. Then that chief minister ... spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, having arrived after (the others) turn away monks while a meal is yet unfinished so that there is an uproar in the refectory? Now, is it not possible, even sitting somewhere else, to eat as much as one pleases?” Monks heard this chief minister as he ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having arrived after (the others), turn away the monk who is next to him while the meal is yet unfinished so that there is an uproar in the refectory?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.231

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda, having arrived ... in the refectory?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked him, saying:

How can you, foolish man, having arrived ... in a refectory? It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ As at Kd.16.1.5 above and Ja.i.93. ² I.e. in the procession for alms. Text reads here and at Vin.4.234 *anantavika* which *Vinaya Texts* iii.198, n.4 says “is a misprint” for *ānantarika*. Cf. Vin.1.321.

“Monks, a monk should not turn (another) away while a meal is yet unfinished. Whoever should turn (another) away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. If he turns (another) away who is invited (to the meal), he should be told, ‘Go and fetch water.’ If this is thus accomplished, that is good; if it is not accomplished, having swallowed lumps of boiled rice properly, his seat should be given to a senior monk. **But this I say, monks: that not by any method should a seat be reserved for a senior monk. Whoever should reserve one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time the group of six monks turned ill monks away. The ill ones spoke thus: “We, your reverences, are not able to get up, we are ill.” Saying, “We will turn the venerable ones away,” having taken hold of them, having turned them away, they let go (of them) while they were standing. The ill ones, on being let go of, fell down. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one who is ill should not be turned away. Whoever should turn him away, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.16.10.2

Now at that time the group of six monks, saying: “We are ill, we are not to be turned away,” kept to the best sleeping places. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give a suitable sleeping place to one who is ill.”

Vin.2.166

Now at that time the group of six monks reserved lodgings on (some slight) pretext.¹ They told this matter to the Lord He said: **“Monks, a lodging should not be reserved on (some slight) pretext. Whoever should (so) reserve it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.5.232

Now at that time the group of seventeen monks² were repairing³ a large dwelling-place in the neighbourhood, thinking: ‘We will spend the rains here.’ The group of six monks saw the group of seventeen monks as they were repairing the dwelling-place, and seeing them, they spoke thus:

Kd.16.11.1

¹ *lesakappa*. Vin-a.1222 says for a small thing, nothing more than a headache. ² As at Bu-Pc.17. Translated at BD.2.250–BD.2.251, q.v. for notes. ³ *paṭisamkharoti*, restore, repair, mend.

“Your reverences, the group of seventeen monks are repairing a dwelling-place. Come, we will turn them away.”

Some spoke thus: “Wait, your reverences, until they have repaired it; when it is repaired, we will turn them away.” Then the group of six monks spoke thus to the group of seventeen monks: “Go away, your reverences, the dwelling-place was obtained¹ by us.”

“Your reverences, should not this have been explained before, and we would have repaired another?”

“Your reverences, does not a dwelling-place belong to the Order?”

“Yes, your reverences, a dwelling-place belongs to the Order.”

“Go away, your reverences, the dwelling-place was obtained by us.”

“Your reverences, the dwelling-place is big; you stay, and we too will stay.”

“Go away, your reverences, the dwelling-place was obtained by us,” and angry, displeased, having taken them by the throat, they threw them out. These being thrown out, wept. Monks spoke thus:

“Why do you, your reverences, weep?”

“Your reverences, this group of six monks, angry, displeased, threw us out of a dwelling-place belonging to the Order.” Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, angry, displeased, throw out monks from a dwelling-place belonging to an Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, angry, displeased, threw out monks from a dwelling-place belonging to an Order?”

“It is true, Lord.”² Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, a monk should not be thrown out of a dwelling-place belonging to an Order by one who is angry, displeased. Whoever (such) should throw him out should be dealt with according to the rule.³ I allow you, monks, to assign⁴ lodgings.”

¹ *pāpuṇāti*. ² *Cūlavagga* and *Pācittiya* versions proceed differently from here. ³ *Bu-Pc.17*.

⁴ *gāhetuṃ*.

AGREEMENT FOR AN ASSIGNER OF LODGINGS

Then it occurred to the monks: “Now by whom should lodgings be assigned?”

Kd.16.11.2

They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as assigner of lodgings:¹ one who would not follow a wrong course² through desire, one who would not follow a wrong course through hatred, one who would not follow a wrong course through stupidity, one who would not follow a wrong course through fear, and one who would know what is taken and what is not taken. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First, a monk should be asked. Having asked him, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order should agree upon the monk So-and-so as assigner of lodgings. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the monk So-and-so as assigner of lodgings. If the agreement upon the monk So-and-so as assigner of lodgings is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The monk So-and-so is agreed upon by the Order as assigner of lodgings. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Vin.2.167

BD.5.234

Kd.16.11.3

Then it occurred to the monks who were the assigners of lodgings: “Now, how should the lodgings be assigned?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, first to count the monks; having counted the monks, to count the sleeping places;³ having counted the sleeping places, to assign according to the accommodation for sleeping places.”⁴ Assigning according to the accommodation for sleeping places (some) sleeping places were left over.⁵ “I allow you, monks, to assign according to the accommodation in dwelling-places.” Assigning according to the accommodation in dwelling-places (some) dwelling-places were left over. “I allow you, monks,

¹ *Senāsanagāhāpaka*; cf. *pattaḡāhāpaka* and see [BD.2.122, n.1](#). To the end of [Kd.16.11.2](#) is the same as the passage at [Vin.3.246-7 \(BD.2.122\)](#) dealing with the assigner of bowls. ² See [BD.2.122, n.2](#). ³ *Vin-a.1223* calls these the places for couches. ⁴ *seyyaggena*. *Vin-a.1223* explains by *seyyaparicchena*, by the space, range, and speaks of each monk having a place for a couch. Cf. *bhikkhaggena*, at [Kd.12.1.1](#), apparently meaning the number of monks. ⁵ *ussādiyimsu*. Cf. [Vin.4.99](#) and [BD.2.364, n.1](#).

to assign according to the accommodation in cells.”¹ Assigning according to the accommodation in cells (some) cells were left over. “I allow you, monks, to give an additional share² also.”

When an additional share had been occupied another monk arrived. “It need not be given (to him if the occupier) is not willing.”³

Now at that time monks assigned lodgings to one who was standing outside a boundary. They told this matter to the Lord. He said; “**Monks, a lodging should not be assigned to one standing outside a boundary. Whoever should (so) assign it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time monks, having occupied lodgings, reserved them for all time. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, having occupied a lodging, it should not be reserved for all time. Whoever should reserve it (thus), there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to reserve it for the three months of the rains but not to reserve it for the dry season.”⁴

BD.5.235

Kd.16.11.4

Then it occurred to the monks: “Now, how many (times for) the assignment of lodgings are there?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there are these three (times for) the assignment of lodgings: the earlier,⁵ the later, the intervening.⁶ The earlier on which they are to be assigned is the day following the full moon of Āsāḷha; the later on which they are to be assigned is the month following the full moon of Āsāḷha; the intervening on which they are to be assigned is the day following the

¹ *pariveṇa*. As pointed out at *Vinaya Texts* iii.203, n.1 a “cell” here appears to be a unit larger than a dwelling-place. But I do not think that this is necessarily the case. Probably not more than one monk slept in a cell, but a dwelling-place might have been used by two at least. Vin-a.1223 in explaining *anubhāga*, says that if there are too few monks (for the available space) two or three cells should be given to each monk. ² *anubhāga*. ³ *na akāmā* as at Kd.8.24.4. ⁴ Cf. Kd.16.17.2, below. ⁵ See Kd.3.2.2. These two dates are the same as the earlier and the later periods for entering on the rains-residence. ⁶ The “intervening,” *antarāmuttaka*, does not refer to a date between these earlier and later times, but to the time between the rains-residence of one year and the next. Lodgings would become vacant at the end of the rains (see above Kd.16.11.3) and then assignment for the next rains could take place. It seems that the first two are compulsory, the third optional, see Vin-a.1223.

Invitation, with reference to the next rains-residence. These, monks, are the three (times for) the assignment of lodgings.”

The Second Portion for Repeating.

Vin.2.168

THIRD RECITATION SECTION

Now at that time the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, having occupied a lodging in Sāvattthī, went away to some village residence and occupied a lodging there too. Then it occurred to these monks: “Now your reverences, this venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, is a maker of strife, a maker of quarrels, a maker of contention, a maker of disputes a maker of legal questions in the Order. If he will spend the rains here, not one of us can live in comfort. Come, let us ask him.” Then these monks spoke thus to the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans: “Have you not, reverend Upananda, occupied a lodging in Sāvattthī?”

“Yes, your reverences.”

“But do you, reverend Upananda, (although) alone reserve two (lodgings)?”

“I, your reverences, am giving up the one here and occupying the one there.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, (although) alone reserve two (lodgings)?” They told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, in this connection, having had the Order of monks convened, questioned the venerable Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, saying:

BD.5.236

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Upananda ... (lodgings)?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked him, saying:

“How can you, foolish man, (although) alone reserve two (lodgings)? The one occupied by you there, foolish man, is lost here,¹ the one occupied by you here is lost there. Thus are you, foolish man, excluded from both. It is not, foolish man, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” ... having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

¹ The one taken in each place is automatically lost just because a monk has taken them both.

“Monks, two (lodgings) should not be reserved by one (monk). Whoever should reserve (them), there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.16.13.1

Now at that time the Lord¹ in many a figure talked a talk on discipline to the monks, he spoke in praise of discipline, he spoke in praise of accomplishment in discipline, he spoke in praise of the venerable Upāli, referring (to him) again and again. Monks spoke thus: “The Lord in many a figure talked a talk on discipline ... he spoke in praise of the venerable Upāli, referring (to him) again and again. Come, your reverences, let us master discipline under the venerable Upāli,” and they, many monks—elders and newly ordained and those of middle standing—mastered discipline under the venerable Upāli. The venerable Upāli, out of respect for the monks who were elders, recited standing, and also the monks who were elders, out of respect for *dhamma*,² had it recited standing, so that the monks who were elders were tired as well as the venerable Upāli. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, when a newly ordained monk is reciting to sit down on a seat that is the same (height) or on a higher one out of respect for *dhamma*; when a monk who is an elder is having it recited to sit down on a seat that is the same (height) or on a lower one out of respect for *dhamma*.”

Vin.2.169

BD.5.237

Kd.16.13.2

Now at that time many monks standing near the venerable Upāli grew tired waiting for the recitation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to sit down with those entitled to seats of an equal (height).” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, in respect of what is one entitled to seats of an equal (height)?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to sit down together with those who are within three years (of your) standing.”³

Now at that time several monks entitled to seats of an equal (height), having sat down on a couch, broke the couch; having sat down on a chair,

¹ The two introductory sentences occur also at [Vin.4.142](#) ([BD.3.40](#)). ² Cf. [Bu-Sk.57](#)–[Bu-Sk.72](#) and especially [Bu-Sk.69](#). ³ I.e. since the time of ordination.

they broke the chair. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a couch for a group of three (persons),¹ a chair for a group of three (persons).” But a group of three (people), having sat down on a couch, broke the couch; having sat down on a chair, they broke the chair. “I allow, monks, a couch for a group of two (persons), a chair for a group of two (persons).”

Now at that time monks were (too) scrupulous to sit down on a long seat with those not entitled to a seat of an equal (height). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, except with a eunuch, a woman, a hermaphrodite, to sit down on a long seat with those not entitled to a seat of an equal (height).” Then it occurred to the monks: “Now, what is the maximum (length) of a ‘long seat’?”

“I allow, monks, the maximum (length) of a ‘long seat’ (to be) whatever is the maximum (length) that suffices (to seat) three (persons).”

Now at that time Visākhā, Migāra’s mother, wanted to have a long house with a verandah of the “elephant-nail” type² built for an Order. Then it occurred to the monks: “What appurtenances of a long house are allowed by the Lord, what are not allowed?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, all the appurtenances of a long house.”

Kd.16.14.1

Now at that time the grandmother of King Pasenadi of Kosala passed away.³ On her passing many unallowable goods accrued to an Order, that is to say⁴ a sofa, a divan ... a cotton quilt ... a couch with a red cushion at either end. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, having broken off⁵ the legs of a sofa, to make use of it; having destroyed

BD.5.238

Vin.2.170

¹ *tivagga*, threefold. ² *hatthinakhaka*. See A.K. COOMARASWAMY, *Indian Architectural Terms*, Journal of the American Oriental Society, Vol. 48, No. 3, p.258. ³ Cf. SN.i.97. ⁴ List as at Kd.5.10.4; Kd.16.8. ⁵ Cf. Nuns’ Bi-Pc.42, where a nun may use a sofa and a divan if she cuts down, *chinditvā*, the legs of the former and cuts out, *chinditvā*, the stuffing from the latter. Above *bhinditvā* occurs in both places instead of *chinditvā*. See BD.3.326, n.1; BD.3.327, n.3. DN-a.88, quoting above passage, uses both words: *āsandiya pāde chinditvā ... pallaṅkassa vāḷe bhinditvā*. At Kd.5.10.5 it is a *dukkaṭa* for a monk to use a sofa, divan or cotton quilt. At Kd.16.8 they form the three exceptions to the things displayed by a householder that a monk may sit down on. Above they are allowed if certain conditions are fulfilled.

the horse-hair (stuffing) of a divan, to make use of it; having unravelled the cotton quilt, to make a squatting mat;¹ to make a ground covering with what is over.”

THINGS NOT TO BE DISPOSED OF

Kd.16.15.1

Now at that time in a certain village residence not far from Sāvattthī the resident monks were worried at preparing lodgings for the incoming monks who arrived. Then it occurred to these monks: “At present we, your reverences, are worried at preparing lodgings for incoming monks who arrive. Come, your reverences, let us make over all the lodgings belonging to the Order to one (monk) and we will make use of them as belonging to him.” So these made over to one (monk) all the lodgings belonging to the Order. Incoming monks spoke thus to these monks: “Make ready lodgings, your reverences, for us.”

“Your reverences, there are no lodgings belonging to the Order, we have made them all over to one (monk).”

“But have you, your reverences, disposed of lodgings belonging to an Order?”

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks dispose of what belongs to an Order?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.239

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks disposed of lodgings belonging to an Order?”

“It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

“How, monks, can these foolish men dispose of lodgings belonging to an Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.16.15.2

“Monks, these five things not to be disposed of² should not be disposed of by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if disposed of they are not (really) disposed of. Whoever should dispose of them, there is a grave offence. What are the five?

¹ Similar allowance at Kd.16.2.6. ² *avissajjiyāni*. Cf. *avissajjikam* at Kd.8.275; and *appamat-takavissajjaka* at Vin.2.177, Vin.4.38.

1. A monastery, a site for a monastery. This is the first thing not to be disposed of that should not be disposed of by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if disposed of it is not (really) disposed of. Whoever should dispose of it, there is a grave offence.
2. A dwelling-place, a site for a dwelling-place. This is the second thing ...
3. A couch, a chair, a mattress, a squatting mat. This is the third thing ...
4. A copper pot, a copper box, a copper jar, a copper vessel, an adze, a hatchet, an axe, a hoe, a spade. This is the fourth thing ...
5. Jungle-rope, bamboo, coarse grass, reeds, *tiṇa*-grass, clay, wooden goods, clay goods. This is the fifth thing not to be disposed of that should not be disposed of by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if disposed of it is not (really) disposed of. Whoever should dispose of it, there is a grave offence.

Monks, these five things not to be disposed of should not be disposed of by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if disposed of they are not (really) disposed of. Whoever should dispose of them, there is a grave offence.”

THINGS NOT TO BE DISTRIBUTED

Then the Lord, having stayed at Sāvattḥī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Kiṭāgiri with a large Order of monks, with at least five hundred monks and with Sāriputta and Moggallāna. Then the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasuka heard: “They say that the Lord has arrived at Kiṭāgiri with a large Order of monks ... and with Sāriputta and Moggallāna. Come, your reverences, let us distribute all the lodgings belonging to the Order. Sāriputta and Moggallāna are of depraved desires, they are under the influence of depraved desires; we will not make ready lodgings for them.” They distributed all the lodgings belonging to the Order. Then the Lord, walking on tour, gradually reached Kiṭāgiri. Then the Lord addressed several monks, saying:

Kd.16.16.1

Vin.2.171

BD.5.240

“Do you go, monks, and having gone up to the monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasuka, speak thus: ‘The Lord, your reverences, has come together with a large Order of monks ... and with Sāriputta and Moggallāna; so, your reverences, make ready lodgings for the Lord and for the Order of monks and for Sāriputta and Moggallāna’.”

“Very well, Lord,” and these monks, having answered the Lord in assent, went up to the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasuka; having gone up to the monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasuka, they spoke thus: “The Lord, your reverences, has come ... make ready lodgings for the Lord and for the Order of monks and for Sāriputta and Moggallāna.”

“There are no lodgings, your reverences, belonging to the Order; all were distributed by us. The Lord, your reverences, is welcome, the Lord can stay in whatever dwelling-place he likes. Sāriputta and Moggallāna are of depraved desires, they are under the influence of depraved desires; we will not make ready lodgings for them.”

Kd.16.16.2

“But did you, your reverences, distribute lodgings belonging to the Order?”

“Yes, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can these monks who are followers of Assaji and Punabbasuka distribute lodgings belonging to an Order?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that monks distributed ... to an Order?”

“It is true, Lord.”

BD.5.241

“How, monks, can these foolish men distribute lodgings belonging to an Order? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are not (yet) pleased ...” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, these five things not to be divided up¹ should not be divided up by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if divided up they are not (really) divided up. Whoever should divide them up, there is a grave offence. What are the five?²

¹ *avebhaṅgiyāni*. Cf. *avebhaṅgikaṃ* at Kd.8.27.5. ² As at Kd.16.15.2.

1. A monastery, a site for a monastery. This is the first thing not to be divided up that should not be divided up by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if divided up it is not (really) divided up. Whoever should divide it up, there is a grave offence.
2. A dwelling-place, a site for a dwelling-place. This is the second thing ...
3. A couch, a chair, a mattress, a squatting mat. This is the third thing ...
4. A copper pot, a copper box, a copper jar, a copper vessel, an adze, a hatchet, an axe, a hoe, a spade. This is the fourth thing ...
5. Jungle-rope, bamboo, coarse grass, reeds, *tiṇa*-grass, clay, wooden goods, clay goods. This is the fifth thing not to be divided up that should not be divided up by an Order or by a group or by an individual—even if divided up it is not (really) divided up. Whoever should divide it up, there is a grave offence.

Vin.2.172

ON THE GIFT OF BUILDING WORK

Kd.16.17.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Kiṭāgiri for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Āḷavī. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at Āḷavī. The Lord stayed there at Āḷavī at the chief shrine of Āḷavī.¹ Now at that time the monks of Āḷavī gave repairs such as these into the charge (of a monk):² they gave repairs in charge when there was merely putting aside in heaps³ ... when there was merely smearing a wall ... when there was merely placing a door ... when there was merely making a socket for a bolt ... when there was merely making a window-hole ... when there was merely treating with whitewash ... when there was merely treating with black colouring ... when there was merely treating with red chalk ... when there was merely roofing ... when there was merely joining ... when there was merely putting on a bar (to a doorpost)⁴ ... when there was merely restoring broken and

¹ See [BD.1.247, n.2.](#) ² Cf. the giving in charge of repairs in a general way at [Kd.16.5.](#)

³ *Vinaya Texts* iii.213 takes this to refer to “clay or earth.” ⁴ Oldenberg’s text reads *gaṇḍikādhānamattena*; *Vin-a.1245* reads *bhaṇḍika-*. At *Ja.iii.41* *bhaṇḍikā* is variant reading for *gaṇḍikā*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.213, n.4

dilapidated parts¹ ... when there was merely plastering the floors;² and they gave repairs in charge for twenty years, and they gave repairs in charge for thirty years, and they gave repairs in charge for life, and they gave the repairs to a completed dwelling-place into the charge (of a monk until) the time of his cremation.³

BD.5.242

Those who were modest monks spread it about, saying: “How can the monks of Ālavī give repairs such as these into the charge (of a monk) ... (until) the time of his cremation?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the monks of Ālavī ... the time of his cremation?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, repairs when there is merely putting aside in heaps should not be given into the charge (of a monk) ... nor should repairs to a completed dwelling-place be given into the charge (of a monk) until the time of his cremation. Whoever should (so) give in charge, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to give repairs to a dwelling-place into the charge (of a monk) if it is not (yet) built or if it is not (yet) finished;⁴ in reference to work on a small dwelling-place, repairs may be given in charge for six or five years; in reference to work on a curved house repairs may be given in charge for seven or eight years; in reference to work on a large dwelling-place or a long house, repairs may be given in charge for ten or twelve years.”

Kd.16.17.2

Now at that time monks gave the whole of a dwelling-place into charge for repairs. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, the whole of a dwelling-place should not be given in charge for repairs. Whoever should give one in charge, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

¹ As at Kd.16.5.2. ² *paribhaṇḍa*. Vin-a.1245 says doing up a “floor” with cowdung, with an astringent decoction. Cf. Kd.15.9.4. ³ *dhūmakālīka*, smoke-time, i.e. when the smoke arises from his funeral pyre. Cf. Ja.iii.422. Word occurs at Kd.21.1.9. ⁴ According to Vin-a.1245-6, if the rafters have not been put up, for when they are up much has been built.

“Now at that time monks gave two (dwelling-places) into the charge of one (monk). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, two (dwelling-places) should not be given into the charge of one (monk). Whoever should (so) give in charge, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks, having taken on repairs, made another live (there). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, having taken on repairs, you should not make another live (there). Whoever should make (another) live (there), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.2.173

Now at that time monks, having taken on repairs, reserved (for their own use) what belonged to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, having taken on repairs, you should not reserve (for your own use) what belongs to an Order. Whoever should (so) reserve it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to occupy one good sleeping place.”

BD.5.243

Now at that time monks gave repairs into the charge of one outside a boundary. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, repairs should not be given into the charge of one outside a boundary. Whoever should (so) give them in charge, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks, having taken on repairs (to a building), reserved it for all time. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, having taken on repairs (to a building), you should not reserve it for all time. Whoever should (so) reserve it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to reserve it for the three months of the rains, but not to reserve it for the dry season.”¹

Now at that time monks, having taken on repairs, went away² and left the Order and passed away, and they pretended to be novices and they

Kd.16.17.3

¹ Cf. Kd.16.11.3 above. ² See Kd.2.22.3; Kd.2.36.1-Kd.2.36.3; Kd.9.4.2, Kd.9.4.7.

pretended to be disavowers of the training ... to be committers of extreme offences ... to be mad ... to be unhinged ... to have bodily pains ... to be suspended for not seeing an offence ... to be suspended for not making amends for an offence ... to be suspended for not giving up a wrong view and they pretended to be eunuchs ... to be living in communion as it were by theft ... to have gone over to a sect ... to be animals ... to be matricides ... to be parricides ... to be slayers of one perfected ... to be seducers of nuns ... to be schismatics ... to be shedders of a (Truth-finder's) blood and they pretended to be hermaphrodites. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, goes away. Thinking, ‘Do not let the Order suffer,’ (the repairs) should be given into the charge of another. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, leaves the Order, passes away, pretends to be ... a hermaphrodite. Thinking, ‘Do not let the Order suffer,’ (the repairs) should be given into the charge of another. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, goes away while they are yet unfinished ... pretends to be a hermaphrodite. Thinking, ‘Do not let the Order suffer,’ (the repairs) should be given into the charge of another. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, on their completion goes away; they are still in his (charge).¹ This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, on their completion leaves the Order ... pretends to have committed an extreme offence: the Order is the owner. This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, on their completion pretends to be mad ... pretends to be suspended for not giving up a wrong view: they are still in his (charge). This is a case, monks, where a monk, having taken on repairs, on their completion pretends to be a eunuch ... pretends to be a hermaphrodite: the Order is the owner.”

REJECTION OF USING ELSEWHERE, ETC.

Now at that time monks made use elsewhere² of lodgings—appurtenances of a dwelling-place—belonging to a lay-follower. Then that lay-follower ... spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs make use elsewhere

¹ *tass'eva tam*. Vin-a.1248 elaborates “for the rains.” ² As at Vin.3.65–Vin.3.66. Cf. Vin.4.76, Vin.4.81 (both “eating elsewhere”).

BD.5.244

Vin.2.174

Kd.16.18.1

of appurtenances belonging somewhere else?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, you should not make use elsewhere of appurtenances belonging somewhere else. Whoever should (so) make use of them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks,¹ being (too) scrupulous to convey to the Observance house and to the meeting place (things to sit on), sat down on the ground. Their limbs and robes were covered with dust. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to convey (things) temporarily.”

Now at that time a great dwelling-place belonging to an Order fell into decay. Monks, being scrupulous, did not take out the lodgings.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to convey (things) for the sake of protecting (them).”

BD.5.245

Now at that time a costly woollen blanket—an accessory to a lodging—accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to barter³ it for (something) advantageous.” Now at that time a costly woven cloth ... “to barter it for (something) advantageous.”

Kd.16.19.1

Now at that time a bear’s hide⁴ accrued to an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a towel for the feet.” Drapery⁵ accrued. “I allow you, monks, to make a towel for the feet.” Cloth⁶ accrued. “I allow you, monks, to make a towel for the feet.”

Kd.16.20.1

Now at that time monks trod upon a lodging while their feet were unwashed;⁷ the lodging was soiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He

¹ As at [Vin.3.66](#). ² [Vin-a.1248](#) explains that having conveyed them elsewhere they do not make use of them. ³ *parivatteti*. Cf. [BD.2.55, n.8](#). [Vin-a.1248](#) says that the meaning is to get a lodging, couch or chair of equal or greater value. ⁴ At [Vin.1.192](#) this is not included among the large hides which were not allowed. ⁵ *cakkalī*. Cf. [Kd.16.2.2](#). ⁶ *colaka*. Cf. [Kd.8.18](#). ⁷ Cf. [Kd.5.6.1](#) where monks are allowed to wear sandals so as not to soil couches and chairs when they get up on to them.

said: “Monks, a lodging should not be trodden upon while your feet are unwashed. Whoever should (so) tread upon one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.” Now at that time monks trod upon a lodging while their feet were damp with their sandals on ... “... offence of wrong-doing.”

Vin.2.175

Kd.16.20.2

Now at that time monks spat on ground that had been treated;¹ the colour was spoiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, you should not spit upon ground that has been treated. Whoever should (so) spit, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, a spittoon.” Now at that time the legs of couches and the legs of chairs scratched ground that had been treated. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to wrap them round with a piece of cloth.”

BD.5.246

Now at that time monks leant against a wall that had been treated; the colour was spoiled. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, you should not lean against a wall that has been treated. Whoever should lean against one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, a reclining board.”² The reclining board scratched the ground underneath, it destroyed the wall above. “I allow you, monks, to wrap it round with a piece of cloth at the lower and the upper (ends).”

Now at that time monks³ were (too) scrupulous to lie down on a place for treading on with washed feet.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to lie down (in such a place), having spread a sheet.”⁵

ALLOWANCE FOR MEALS FOR THE ORDER, ETC.

Kd.16.21.1

Then the Lord, having stayed at Āḷavī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Rājagaha. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at Rājagaha. The

¹ Either with whitewash, black colouring or red chalk; cf. Kd.15.11.6; Kd.16.8.1; Kd.16.17.1. Kd.1.25.15 makes it appear as if black were for the ground and red for the walls. ² Mentioned at Kd.1.25.15, Kd.1.25.16. ³ Omitted in Oldenberg’s text. ⁴ *dhotapādakā*. Vin-a.1249 gives the above meaning, and says that *dhotapādake* is also a reading. ⁵ *paccattharivā*. On “sheet,” *paccattharaṇa*, see BD.2.34, n.1; BD.2.46, n.3.

Lord stayed there at Rājagaha in the Great Grove at the squirrels' feeding place. Now at that time Rājagaha was short of food. People were not able to make a meal for the Order (but) they wanted to make a meal for special (monks),¹ an invitation (-meal),² food (allowed by) ticket,³ (food given) on a day of the waxing or waning of the moon, (given) on an Observance day, (given) on the day after an Observance day. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, a meal for an Order, a meal for a special (monk), an invitation (meal) ... (food given) on the day after an Observance day."⁴

AGREEMENT FOR AN ISSUER OF MEALS

Now at that time the group of six monks, having chosen the sweet foods for themselves, gave poor foods to (other) monks. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk possessed of five qualities as issuer of meals:⁵ one who would not follow a wrong course from desire ... from hatred ... from stupidity ... from fear, and one who would know what is issued and what is not issued. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon: First, a monk should be asked ...⁶ '... Thus do I understand this'."

BD.5.247

Vin.2.176

Then it occurred to the monks who were issuers of meals: "Now, how should a meal be issued?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to issue (the food) after having put it into heaps and having tied on a ticket or a leaf."⁷

AGREEMENT FOR AN ASSIGNER OF LODGINGS

Now at that time there was no assigner of lodgings⁸ for an Order.⁹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk

Kd.16.21.2

¹ Cf. Kd.6.19.1 and Bu-Pc.46. ² Defined at Vin.4.100. ³ For this and the next three see notes at BD.2.313-314. ⁴ Vin-a.1250 says that this allowance was made by the Lord for times of plenty when people can again give food to a whole Order. ⁵ Dabba was agreed upon for this office at Kd.14.4 above, and at Bu-Ss.8 (Vin.3.158 = Vin.2.75). See also AN.iii.275. ⁶ As in Kd.14.9 ⁷ *paṭṭikā*. Buddhaghosa, reading *pattikā*, says it is a leaf (*paṇṇa*) of a bamboo, reed or palm. ⁸ This office was also given to Dabba. ⁹ The following list of offices also occurs at AN.iii.274-AN.iii.275.

endowed with five qualities as assigner of lodgings ... and one who would know what is assigned and what is not assigned. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon ... ¹ '... Thus do I understand this'."

Now at that time there was no keeper of the storeroom² for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, ... and one who would, know what is guarded and what is not guarded. And thus, monks, should he be agreed upon ... '... Thus do I understand this'."

Now at that time there was no acceptor of robes³ for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow ... and one who would know what is taken and what is not taken ... '... Thus do I understand this'."

Now at that time there was no distributor of robe material⁴ ... no distributor of conje⁵ ... no distributor of fruit for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks ... and one who would know what is distributed and what is not distributed ... '... Thus do I understand this'."

BD.5.248

Now at that time there was no distributor of solid food⁶ for an Order. The solid food, not being distributed, was lost. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you ... and one who would know what is distributed and what is not distributed ... '... Thus do I understand this'."

AGREEMENT ON ONE TO DISPOSE OF TRIFLES

Kd.16.21.3

Now at that time trifling accessories had accrued in the storeroom of an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to agree upon a monk endowed with five qualities as disposer of trifles:⁷ ... one who would know what is disposed of and what is not disposed of ... '... Thus do I understand this.' Each needle is to be given by the monk who

Vin.2.177

¹ As in Kd.4.4.3. ² *bhaṇḍāgārika*, as at Vin.1.284. ³ *cīvarapaṭiggāhaka*, as at Vin.1.283. ⁴ *cīvarabhājaka*, as at Vin.1.285. ⁵ Mentioned at Vin.4.38, Vin.4.155. ⁶ Mentioned at Vin.4.38, Vin.4.155. ⁷ Mentioned at Kd.15.13.1.

is the disposer of trifles, pairs of scissors are to be given, sandals are to be given, waistbands ... shoulder straps ... strainers ... regulation water pots¹ ... cross-seams² ... short cross-seams ... circular seams ... short circular seams ... braiding³ ... binding is to be given. If there comes to be ghee or oil or honey or molasses for an Order, it may be given to be partaken of at once;⁴ if there is need for it yet again, it may be given yet again; if there is need for it yet again, it may be given yet again.”

AGREEMENT ON AN ACCEPTER OF OUTER CLOAKS

Now at that time there was no accepter of outer cloaks⁵ ... accepter of bowls⁶ for an Order. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to agree upon ... one who would know what is taken and what is not taken. And thus, monks, ... ‘... Thus do I understand this..’”

Now at that time an Order had no superintendent of monastery attendants. The monastery attendants, not being superintended, did not do the work (properly). They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to agree upon a superintendent of monastery attendants ... and one who knows what is superintended and what is not superintended ... ‘... Thus do I understand this..’”

BD.5.249

Now at that time an Order had no superintendent for the novices. The novices, not being superintended, did not do the work (properly) ... ‘... Thus do I understand this..’”

The Sixth Section: that on Lodgings

THIS IS ITS KEY

At that time a dwelling-place had not been permitted
by the best of Awakened Ones;
these, disciples of the Conqueror went out

¹ Mentioned at [Kd.15.13.1](#). ² See [Kd.8.12.2](#). ³ See [BD.2.409, n.7](#), [BD.2.409, n.8](#); [BD.4.354, n.7](#), [BD.4.354, n.8](#); and [Kd.15.11.3](#). ⁴ Cf. [Bu-NP.23](#) and [Kd.6.15.10](#), when these things—medicines—may not be stored for more than seven days. ⁵ *sāṭhiyagāhāpaka*.

⁶ See [Bu-NP.22 \(Vin.3.246–Vin.3.247\)](#).

from this and that place—(their) habitation.¹ /

A merchant householder, having seen them, said this to the monks:

“If I were to have (dwelling-places) built,

would you stay (in them)?” They asked the Leader. /

Dwelling-place, curved house, and long house, mansion, cave,

he allowed five (kinds of) abodes. The merchant had dwelling-places built. /

People had a dwelling-place built doorless, unclosed,

door, doorpost and lintel, hollow like a mortar and so on, /

Vin.2.178

Hole and cord for pulling through, post for a bolt, and “monkey’s head,”

a pin, a stick, a key of copper, wood, horn, /

And just a bolt and a pin, roofing smeared inside and out,

railing, lattice and stick, cloth and about matting, /

Solid bench, and couch of split bamboo, bierlike long couch,

with slats, and curved legs, removeable, rectangular, tall ones, /

And three-sided, plaited chair, cloth chair, sheep-footed,

emblic myrobalan,² wooden,³ stool, and just a straw chair, /

One a high one,⁴ and a snake,⁵ supports,⁶ and supports of eight finger-breadths,

BD.5.250

thread, squares, cotton cloth, cotton quilt, half (the size of a man’s) body, /

Festival and also mattresses, woven cloth, and also lodgings,

covered, it fell from below, and having removed they carried away, /

And line, and the Truth-finder⁷ allowed the outline of the hand,

and also other sects in a dwelling-place,⁸ grain-husk, and soft clay, /

What exudes from trees, a spoon, a wall, mustard powder (and) oil of beeswax,

to sponge over the thick (places), rough, clay

(and the excrement of) earthworms,⁹ /

What exudes from trees, and a bold design, low, and a piling, they ascended,

they fell off, thronged, half-wall, again three, /

In a small (one), and a buttress,¹⁰ let in the rain, cry of distress,¹¹ peg,

¹ Text reads *āvāsā tamhā te*; Sinhalese and Siamese editions. *vāsā te*. Oldenberg, **Vin.2.323** says “the meter is quite correct if we expunge *tamhā te*.” ² Siamese edition, which I follow, reads *āmalakā phalakā*. **Vin.2.323** suggests *āmalaka-phalakā*. Text reads *āmaṭāmalaka*; Sinhalese edition *āmalāmalakā*. ³ Siamese edition, which I follow, reads *āmalakā phalakā*. **Vin.2.323** suggests *āmalaka-phalakā*. Text reads *āmaṭāmalaka*; Sinhalese edition *āmalāmalakā*. ⁴ Reading *ucce ca ahi* with Sinhalese and Siamese editions, instead of Text’s *uccā hi*. ⁵ Reading *ucce ca ahi* with Sinhalese and Siamese editions, instead of Text’s *uccā hi*. ⁶ I suggest *pādakā*, instead of Text’s *atipādakā* and Sinhalese and Siamese editions. *pādāni*, legs. ⁷ Siamese edition omits *tathāgata* and reads instead *titthiyā setakālavihāre cāpi*. Sinhalese edition has *tathāgato* but not *titthiyā*, reading *tathāgato setakālavihāre pi*. ⁸ Siamese edition omits *tathāgata* and reads instead *titthiyā setakālavihāre cāpi*. Sinhalese edition has *tathāgato* but not *titthiyā*, reading *tathāgato setakālavihāre pi*. ⁹ Siamese edition reads *laṇḍumattikam*, Sinhalese *laṇḍa-*. ¹⁰ Here *kuḍḍapāda*. ¹¹ Reading *vissaraṃ* with Siamese edition instead of *saraṃ*.

and bamboo and cord for robes, verandah, and about a screen, /
 Balustrade, powdered grass—the method should be done in the way below,¹
 in the open air, became tepid, hall, and as below, vessel, /
 Dwelling-place, and just a porch, little hall for a fire in a cell,
 monasteries, porches again, the method should be done just (as) below. /
 Plaster,² and faithful Anāthapiṇḍika went to the Cool Grove,
 things seen, he invited the Leader with the Order. /
 He enjoined on the way, a group built a monastery,
 repairs at Vesālī, in front of and taking possession of, /
 Who is worthy of the best food? and the partridge, not to be greeted,
 taken possession of, inside a house, cotton, he visited Sāvathī, /
 He prepared a monastery, and an uproar in a refectory,
 ill, and a good sleeping place, pretexts, the seventeen there, /
 “Now, by whom?” “Now, how?” he distributed
 according to the accommodation in the dwelling-places, BD.5.251
 and in cells, an additional share, shares need not be given if one is not willing, /
 Outside a boundary, and for all time, three (times for) assignment of lodgings,
 and Upananda, he praised, standing, equal seats, /
 Those entitled to seats of an equal (height) broke them,
 groups of three (and) for a group of two,³
 a long (seat) for those not entitled to seats of an equal (height),
 to make use of a verandah,⁴ /
 Grandmother,⁵ and not far, and distributed, Kiṭāgiri, Vin.2.179
 Ālavī: in heaps, on walls, door, socket, /
 And window-hole, whitewash, black colouring, red chalk, roofing, joining,
 bar, broken (parts), doing up, twenty, thirty and for life, /
 Completed, not built, incomplete,⁶ for six or five years if it is a small one,
 and seven or eight if it is a curved house, ten and twelve for a large one, /
 A whole dwelling-place, of one, they made another live (there),
 what belongs to an Order,
 outside a boundary, and for all time,
 he goes away, and they leave the Order, /
 And passed away, and (pretended to be) a novice,
 disavowers of the training, extreme,

¹ See e.g. “key” to **Kd.15** (towards end of **Vin.2.143** and again towards top of **BD.5.144**). ² This should read *sudha* as in **Kd.16.3.11** above, and as in Siamese edition, and as suggested at **Vin.2.323**, and not *suddha*. ³ Reading with Sinhalese edition *ca duvaggikaṃ*, as surmised would be right at **Vin.2.323**, instead of text’s *catuvaggikaṃ*. Siamese reads *ca duvaggikā*.

⁴ Sinhalese and Siamese editions. *ālindaraṃ paribhuñjitaṃ*, as for **Kd.16.14**, instead of text’s *taṃ dvinnaraṃ, paribhuñjisu*. ⁵ Sinhalese *ayyakā ca*, as surmised would be right at **Vin.2.323**. Siamese *ayyikā ca*; text *ayyā ca*. ⁶ There is no *sabbaṃ*, whole, in the context to which this refers (i.e. **Kd.16.17.1**). Should read *vippaṃ* as does Siamese (for *vippakataṃ*).

mad, and unhinged, pains, not seeing an offence, /
 Not making amends for, wrong view, eunuchs, as it were by theft, other sects,
 animals, (slayers) of mother, of father, and of one perfected, seducers, /
 Schismatics, shedders of (a Truth-finder's) blood, and then hermaphrodites,
 "Do not let the Order suffer"—the work should be given to another, /
 And when (yet) unfinished to another;
 if he goes away when it is built it is still in his (charge);
 if he leaves the Order, passes away, and pretends to be a novice, /
 And disavows the training,
 (pretends to have committed an) extreme (offence and to be) a eunuch,
 the Order itself becomes the owner; if he is mad, unhinged, in pain, /
 (Suspended for) not seeing, for not making amends for, (for not giving up) a wrong
 view—they are still in his (charge);
 Eunuch, and as it were by theft, member of another sect,
 animal, matricide, parricide,
 Slayer of one perfected, and then a seducer, schismatic,
 shedder of (a Truth-finder's) blood, hermaphrodite—
 if he pretends thus, the Order itself becomes the owner. /
 They conveyed, elsewhere, scrupulous, and fell into decay, woollen blanket,
 and woven cloths, hide, drapery, a cloth, and they trod upon, /
 Damp, sandals, should not spit, they scratched,¹ and they leant against,
 reclining board, even then it scratched,² about spreading where washed,³ /
 They were unable to in Rājagaha, poor, issuer of meals,
 "Now, how?" assigner, agreement upon a storeroom keeper, /
 And then accepter, distributor, and conje, distributor of fruit,
 and even a distributor of solid food, disposer of trifles, /
 And even an accepter of outer cloaks, likewise an accepter of bowls,
 and agreement upon a superintendent of monastery attendants and of novices. /
 The Leader who has overcome all, knower of the worlds, his mind benevolent,
 (is one) to meditate upon and have insight into the need for abodes and ease.

BD.5.252

Vin.2.180

¹ Sinhalese and Siamese *Likhanti*; text *khīlanti*; *Kd.16.20.2 vilikhanti*. ² Siamese *likhat'eva*; Sinhalese *likhaṇ evā*; text *khalite vā*; *Kd.16.20.2 vilikhati*. ³ Referring to the *dhotapādaka* at *Kd.16.20.2*.

17. SCHISM IN AN ORDER (SAṄGHABHEDA)

FIRST RECITATION SECTION

ON THE GOING FORTH OF THE SIX SAKYANS

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying at Anupiyā. Anupiyā¹ is a little town² of the Mallas.³ Now at that time many distinguished Sakyan young men had gone forth in imitation of the Lord who had gone forth. Now at that time Mahānāma the Sakyan and Anuruddha the Sakyan were two brothers. Anuruddha the Sakyan was delicately nurtured. He had three palaces,⁴ one for the cold weather, one for the hot, one for the rains. Being waited on for four months in the palace for the rains by female musicians, he did not come down from that palace. Then it occurred to Mahānāma the Sakyan:⁵ “At present many distinguished Sakyan young men have gone forth in imitation of the Lord who has gone forth, but no one from our family has gone forth from home into homelessness. Suppose I should go forth, or Anuruddha?” Then Mahānāma the Sakyan approached Anuruddha the Sakyan; having approached, he spoke thus to Anuruddha the Sakyan: “At present, dear Anuruddha, many distinguished Sakyan young men ... but no one from our family has gone forth from home into homelessness. Well now, either you go forth or I will go forth.”⁶

Kd.17.1.1
BD.5.253

¹ Neuter form used here, although the locative is formed as though the word were feminine. Cf. Ja.i.65-Ja.i.66, Bv-a.284 which say the Bodhisatta spent the first week after he had gone forth in the mango grove at Anupiyā. ² See **BD.2.63, n.2.** ³ It is more usual to name the exact locality in the place where the Lord was staying. ⁴ Cf. **Kd.1.7.1** where the same is said of Yasa. ⁵ At AN.i.26 he is called chief of those who give sumptuous alms. ⁶ Quoted Dhp-a.i.133; AN-a.i.191.

“But I have been delicately nurtured, I am not able to go forth from home into homelessness.¹ You go forth.”

Kd.17.1.2

“Come along, dear Anuruddha, I will instruct you in what belongs to the household life. First the fields have to be ploughed;² having had them ploughed they must be sown; having had them sown water must be led in to them; having had water led in to them the water must be led away; having led the water away you must have the weeds dug up; having had the weeds dug up you must get the crop reaped; having had the crop reaped you must have it harvested; having had it harvested you must have it made into stooks; having had it made into stooks you must have it threshed; having had it threshed you must have the straw winnowed; having had the straw winnowed you must have the chaff winnowed; having had the chaff winnowed you must have it sifted; having had it sifted you must have it³ brought in;⁴ having had it brought in it is to be done just the same the next year, and it is to be done just the same the next year.”

BD.5.254

Vin.2.181

“The operations do not stop,⁵ no end to the operations is to be seen. When will the operations stop? When will an end to the operations be seen? When will we, possessed of and provided with the fivefold strand of sense pleasures, amuse ourselves unconcernedly?”

“But, dear Anuruddha, the operations do not stop, no end to the operations is to be seen. Even when our fathers and grandfathers passed away the operations were not stopped.”

“Well now, you understand⁶ just what belongs to the household life. I will go forth from home into homelessness.”

Then Anuruddha the Sakyan approached his mother; having approached, he spoke thus to his mother: “I, mother, want to go forth from home into homelessness. Consent to my going forth from home into homelessness.”⁷ When he had spoken thus, the mother of Anuruddha the Sakyan spoke thus to Anuruddha the Sakyan:

¹ Quoted Dhp-a.i.135–Dhp-a.i.136. ² Quoted Dhp-a.i.136. Cf. similar list of operations at Ja.i.215 and another at AN.i.241. ³ I.e. the grain, or the good grass. ⁴ *atiharati*, as at Nuns’ Bi-Pc.7 (also of grain). ⁵ *na khīyanti*, do not wear away, become exhausted or used up. ⁶ Text reads *upajāna*; Vin-a.1274 *upajānāhi*. ⁷ Cf. Dhp-a.i.137. Boys under fifteen had to obtain their parents’ consent for going forth, Vin.1.79, Vin.1.83.

“You two boys, dear Anuruddha, are dear to me,¹ beloved, agreeable. In the case of your death I would be unwillingly separated from you. So how can I, while you are still living, allow a going forth from home into homelessness?” And a second time ... And a third time Anuruddha the Sakyan spoke thus to his mother: ... the mother of Anuruddha the Sakyan spoke thus to Anuruddha the Sakyan: “... how can I, while you are still living, allow a going forth from home into homelessness?”

BD.5.255

Now at that time Bhaddiya² the Sakyan chieftain was ruling over the Sakyans and was a friend of Anuruddha the Sakyan. Then the mother of Anuruddha the Sakyan thinking: “Now this Bhaddiya ... is a friend of Anuruddha; he will not be able to go forth from home into homelessness,” spoke thus to Anuruddha the Sakyan: “If, dear Anuruddha, Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain goes forth from home into homelessness you can go forth likewise.”³

Kd.17.1.3

Then Anuruddha the Sakyan approached Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain; having approached, he spoke thus to Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain: “My going forth, friend, is dependent on yours.”

“If your going forth, friend, is dependent on mine, let it be independent. I, with you ...⁴ Go forth according to your wish.”

“Come, friend, we will both go forth from home into homelessness.”

“I, friend, am not able to go forth from home into homelessness. Whatever else I am able to do for you, that will I do. You go forth.”

Vin.2.182

“My mother, friend, spoke thus to me: ‘If, dear Anuruddha, Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain goes forth from home into homelessness, you can go forth likewise.’ But, friend, these words were spoken by you: ‘If your going forth is dependent on mine, let it be independent. I, with you ... Go forth according to your wish.’ Come, friend, we will both go forth from home into homelessness.”

¹ Cf. *Vin.3.13*; *MN.ii.58*. ² He was, as said at *Ud.ii.10*, *AN-a.i.192*, the son of Kālī of the Godhas, see *Psalms of the Brethren* p.315, n.2. Bhaddiya’s verses are at *Thag.842–Thag.865*. At *AN.i.23* he is called chief among the disciples of high family. *AN-a.i.192* says he went forth with Anuruddha. ³ Cf. *Dhp-a.i.137*. ⁴ *Vin-a.1274* says that out of affection for his friend he wanted to say, “I, with you, will go forth,” but he was not able to finish the sentence as the greed for ruling overcame his heart.

Now at that time people were speakers of truth, pledged to the truth. Then Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain spoke thus to Anuruddha the Sakyan: “Wait, friend, for seven years. After seven years we will both go forth from home into homelessness.”

BD.5.256

“Seven years are too long, friend, I am not able to wait for seven years.”

“Wait, friend, for six years ... live ... four ... three ... two years ... for one year.”

“One year is too long, friend, I am not able to wait one year.”

“Wait, friend, for seven months. After seven months we will both go forth from home into homelessness.”

“Seven months are too long, friend, I am not able to wait seven months.”

“Wait, friend, for six ... five ... four ... three ... two months ... one month ... for half a month, after half a month we will both go forth from home into homelessness.”

“Half a month is too long, friend, I am not able to wait half a month.”

“Wait, friend, for seven days until I hand over the kingdom to my sons and brothers.”

“Seven days are not too long, friend, I will wait.”

Kd.17.1.4

Then¹ Bhaddiya the Sakyan chieftain and Anuruddha² and Ānanda and Bhagu³ and Kimbila⁴ and Devadatta with Upāli the barber⁵ as the seventh, as they had often previously gone out to a ground in a pleasure grove with a fourfold army,⁶ so did they (now) go out with a fourfold army. Having gone far, having sent back the army, having passed into other territory, having taken off their ornaments, having tied them up into a bundle with their upper robes,⁷ they spoke thus to Upāli the barber: “Come, good Upāli, return, this will be enough for your livelihood.” Then it occurred to Upāli the barber as he was going back: “The Sakyans are fierce. Thinking: ‘This one has made the young men come forth,’ they may even kill me. But if these young Sakyan men will go forth from home into homelessness, why should not I?”

¹ For the following incident cf. Dhp-a.i.137f. ² See BD.4.501. ³ See BD.4.428, BD.4.500.

⁴ See BD.4.501. ⁵ See Vin.4.308 and BD.3.344, n.2. ⁶ See definition of “army” at Vin.4.105.

⁷ As at Vin.3.208, Vin.4.162.

Having loosened the bundle, having hung the goods up on a tree, and having said: “Whoever sees it, it is given (to him), let him take it,”¹ he approached the young Sakyan men. These young Sakyan men saw Upāli the barber coming in the distance; having seen him, then spoke thus to Upāli the barber: “Why have you, good Upāli, returned?”

Vin.2.183
BD.5.257

“Now, it occurred to me, young gentlemen, as I was going back, ‘The Sakyans are fierce ... they may even kill me. But if these young Sakyan men will go forth from home into homelessness, why should not I?’ So I, young gentlemen, having loosened the bundle ... ‘... let him take it,’ returned again from there.”

“You did well, good Upāli, in that you did not go back. The Sakyans are fierce ... they might even have killed you.” Then these young Sakyan men, taking Upāli the barber, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these young Sakyan men spoke thus to the Lord:

“We, Lord, are Sakyans, we are proud. Lord, this barber, Upāli, has been our attendant for a long time. May the Lord let him go forth first. We will greet him, rise up before him, salute him with joined palms, and do the proper duties. Thus will the Sakyan pride be humbled in us Sakyans.” Then the Lord let Upāli the barber go forth first, and afterwards these young Sakyan men. Then the venerable Bhaddiya within one year realised the threefold knowledge,² the venerable Anuruddha obtained *deva*-sight,³ the venerable Ānanda realised the fruit of stream attainment, Devadatta acquired ordinary psychic power.⁴

Now at that time⁵ the venerable Bhaddiya, dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, constantly uttered this utterance: “Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!” Then several monks approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at

Kd.17.1.5

¹ As at Vin.3.208. ² AN-a.i.191 says Bhaddiya attained arahantship in the same year (as he went forth). ³ At AN.i.23 called chief of monks of *deva*-sight. ⁴ AN-a.i.191 says Devadatta won the eight attainments; and adds that Bhagu and Kimbila attained arahantship later.

⁵ As at Ud.ii.10. The following incident, with a summary of the preceding sections, also forms the introductory story to the 10th Jātaka.

a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these monks spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.5.258

“Lord, the venerable Bhaddiya, dwelling in a forest utters this utterance: ‘Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!’ Doubtless, Lord, the venerable Bhaddiya fares the Brahma-faring dissatisfied,¹ and (although) dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, he utters this utterance, ‘Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!’ while he is recalling the former joys of kingship.”

Then the Lord addressed a certain monk, saying: “Come you, monk, in my name address the monk Bhaddiya saying: ‘The Teacher, reverend Bhaddiya, is summoning you’.”

Vin.2.184

“Very well, Lord,” and that monk, having answered the Lord in assent, approached the venerable Bhaddiya; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Bhaddiya: “The Teacher, reverend Bhaddiya, is summoning you.”

Kd.17.1.6

“Very well, your reverence,” and the venerable Bhaddiya, having answered that monk in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord spoke thus to the venerable Bhaddiya as he was sitting down at a respectful distance: “Is it true, as is said, that you, Bhaddiya, dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, are constantly uttering this utterance, ‘Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!’?”

“Yes, Lord.”

“What circumstances were you, Bhaddiya, taking into account when, dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, you constantly uttered this utterance, ‘Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!’?”

“Formerly, Lord, when I was a ruler there was a fully appointed guard both within my private quarters and outside my private quarters, there was a fully appointed guard both within the town and outside the town, and there was a fully appointed guard within the country districts. But I, Lord, although being guarded and warded thus, dwelt afraid, anxious fearful, alarmed.² But now I, Lord, dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, am unafraid, not anxious, not fearful, not

¹ Quoted Ud-a.161. ² Same quartet of words below, [Kd.17.2.1](#); [Kd.17.3.4](#), [Kd.17.3.7](#).

alarmed. I am unconcerned, unruffled,¹ dependent on others,² with a mind become as a wild creature's.³ This, Lord, was the circumstance I was taking into account when, dwelling in a forest and at the root of a tree and in an empty place, I constantly uttered this utterance, 'Ah, what happiness! Ah, what happiness!'

BD.5.259

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this utterance:

"In whom there inly lurk no spites.
Who has overcome becoming and not becoming thus or thus,⁴
Him, gone past fear, blissful, sorrowless,
The *devas* do not win to see."

THE STORY OF DEVADATTA

Then the Lord, having stayed at Anupiyā for as long as he found suiting, set out on almstour for Kosambī. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at Kosambī. The Lord stayed there at Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Then as Devadatta was meditating in private a reasoning arose in his mind thus: "Whom⁵ now could I please, so that because he is pleased with me, much gain and honour would accrue (to me)?"⁶ Then it occurred to Devadatta:

Kd.17.2.1

¹ *pannaloma*. Cf. *lomam pāṭeti* as at Kd.11.6.1. ² *paradattavutta*. Vin-a.1275, MN.i.450, Ud.19 read *paradavutto*, with variant readings Ud-a.163 says "living on the gifts of others in respect of robes and so on." MN-a.iii.167 explains by *parehi dinnavuttino parato laddhena yāpentā*, whose livelihood is given by others, subsisting on what is obtained from another. WOODWARD, *Verses of Uplift*, p.24, n.3 says that "such meanings are hardly applicable in the context." He translates as "lightsome," following *Pali-English Dictionary's* suggestion that *parada* is "fond of" with *vutta* "being prepared," active, alert. I choose "dependent on others," following the Commentaries, and as balancing his former dependence on those others who guarded him. ³ Same quartet of words as at MN.i.450, MN.ii.121. MN-a.iii.167 seems to explain the last word, *migabhūtena cetasā*, as not expecting or hoping for anything. ⁴ *itibhavābhavataṃ*. Here Vin-a.1275 and Ud-a.164 explain *bhava* and *vibhava* much as do Snp-a.20, SN-a.iii.295, MN-a.iii.223, and say that one is freed from this state of becoming this or that by means of the four ways. Cf. also fuller explanation at Ud-a.164, the rather different explanation at MN-a.ii.74, and note that Vin-a.1275 says that *vibhava* and *abhava* are identical in meaning. This line occurs at Ud.ii.10 and Snp.6. Cf. *itibhavābhavakathā* at Vin.4.164 and parallel passages mentioned at BD.2.p.82, n.3. ⁵ Read *kaṃ* for text's *kiṃ*. ⁶ Cf. Ja.i.185–Ja.i.186.

Vin.2.185 “This Prince Ajātasattu is young and also has an auspicious future. What
BD.5.260 now if I were to make Prince Ajātasattu pleased, so that because he is pleased
with me, much gain and honour would accrue (to me)?”

Then Devadatta, having packed away his lodging, taking his bowl and robe, set out for Rājagaha; in due course he arrived at Rājagaha.¹ Then Devadatta, having thrown off his own form, having assumed the form² of a young boy clad in a girdle of snakes,³ became manifest in Prince Ajātasattu’s lap. Then Prince Ajātasattu was afraid, anxious, fearful, alarmed.⁴ Then Devadatta spoke thus to Prince Ajātasattu: “Are you, prince, afraid of me?”

“Yes, I am afraid. Who are you?”

“I am Devadatta.”

“If you, honoured sir, are really master Devadatta, please become manifest in your own form.” Then Devadatta, having thrown off the young boy’s form, stood, wearing his outer cloak and (other) robes and carrying his bowl, before Prince Ajātasattu. Then Prince Ajātasattu, greatly pleased with this wonder of psychic power on Devadatta’s part, morning and evening⁵ went to wait on him with five hundred chariots, and five hundred offerings of rice cooked in milk were brought as a gift of food.⁶ Then there arose to Devadatta, overcome by gains, honours and fame,⁷ his mind obsessed by them, some such longing as this: “It is I who will lead the Order of monks.”⁸ But at the very occurrence of this thought Devadatta declined in his psychic power.⁹

Kd.17.2.2

Now at that time¹⁰ Kakudha¹¹ the Koliyan,¹² the venerable Moggallāna the Great’s attendant, had just died and had arisen in a certain mind-made¹³

¹ This episode, as far as where Devadatta stands before Ajātasattu, is also told at Dhp-a.i.139.

² Cf. Vin.1.3, where Mucalinda assumed the form of a brahmin youth. ³ Vin-a.1275 says having bound a snake round the hips. Dhp-a.i.139 elaborates that there were four poisonous snakes, i.e. one on each hand and foot; also one hung round the neck, one was made into a coil on the head, and one arranged over one shoulder. ⁴ As above, Kd.17.1.6. ⁵ As at SN.ii.242. ⁶ Cf. Vin.3.15. ⁷ As at SN.ii.228f. Cf. *Lābhasakkāra Saṃyutta*, SN.ii.225–SN.ii.244.

⁸ Cf. Dhp-a.i.139. At DN.ii.100 Gotama tells Ānanda that this thought does not occur to the Truth-finder. ⁹ See E.J. THOMAS, *Life of Buddha*, p.132ff. ¹⁰ This incident to the end of Kd.17.2.4 is also told at AN.iii.122–AN.iii.126. ¹¹ See note at GS.iii.95. ¹² Spelt Koliya above. On this tribe see C.H.I. i.177 and B.C. LAW, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p.290ff. ¹³ *manomaya*, as again at AN.iii.192.

body, and such was the reinstatement of his individuality¹ that it was like two or three Magadhan village fields,² yet even with that reinstatement of individuality he injured neither himself nor another. Then Kakudha the young *deva* approached the venerable Moggallāna the Great; having approached, having greeted the venerable Moggallāna the Great, he stood at a respectful distance. As he was standing at a respectful distance, the young *deva* Kakudha spoke thus to the venerable Moggallāna the Great:

BD.5.261

“To Devadatta, honoured sir, overcome by gains, honours and fame, his mind obsessed by them, some such longing as this arose: ‘It is I who will lead the Order of monks’. But, honoured sir, at the very occurrence of this thought Devadatta declined in his psychic power.” Thus spoke Kakudha the young *deva*. Having spoken thus, having greeted the venerable Moggallāna the Great, keeping his right side towards him he vanished then and there. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Moggallāna the Great spoke thus to the Lord:

Vin.2.186

“Kakudha the Koliyan, Lord, my attendant, has just died and has arisen in a certain mind-made body ... Then Kakudha the young *deva* approached me ... keeping his right side towards me, he vanished then and there.”

“But, Moggallāna, does Kakudha the young *deva* so compass your mind with his mind for you to know that whatever Kakudha the young *deva* says, all that is so and not otherwise?”

“Lord, Kakudha the young *deva* so compasses my mind with his mind for me to know that whatever Kakudha the young *deva* says, all that is so and not otherwise.”

“Mind what you say, Moggallāna, mind what you say,³ Moggallāna. This foolish man⁴ will now betray himself, by himself.

ON THE FIVE TEACHERS

“Moggallāna, these five teachers are found in the world.⁵ What five?

Kd.17.2.3

BD.5.262

¹ *attabhāvapaṭilābha*. AN-a.iii.277 explains *attabhāva* by *sarīra*, body. ² Sizes of these given at AN-a.iii.277. ³ As at MN.i.502. ⁴ I.e. Devadatta. ⁵ Sections Kd.17.2.3, Kd.17.2.4 repeated below Kd.17.3.10.

“This is a case, Moggallāna, when some teacher, not pure in moral habit, pretends ‘I am pure in moral habit,’ and he says, ‘My moral habit is pure, clean, untarnished.’ Disciples know this about him: ‘This worthy teacher, not pure in moral habit pretends ... untarnished.’ But they think: ‘If we should tell this to householders, he would not like it, and how could we carry out¹ what he would not like? Moreover he consents to (accept)² the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings and medicines for the sick. Whatever anyone³ shall do, even by that shall he be known.’ Moggallāna, disciples protect such a teacher in regard to moral habit and such a teacher expects protection from disciples in regard to moral habit.

Kd.17.2.4

“And again, Moggallāna, this is a case when some teacher, not pure in mode of livelihood, pretends ... not pure in teaching of *dhamma*, pretends ... not pure in exposition ... not pure in knowledge and vision, pretends ... Moggallāna, disciples protect such a teacher in regard to knowledge and vision, and such a teacher expects protection from disciples in regard to knowledge and vision. These, Moggallāna, are the five teachers found in the world.

Vin.2.187

“But I, Moggallāna, am pure in moral habit, I acknowledge that I am pure in moral habit, that my moral habit is pure, clean, untarnished. And disciples do not protect me in regard to moral habit and I do not expect protection from disciples in regard to moral habit. I am pure in mode of livelihood ... I am pure in *dhamma* teaching ... I am pure in exposition ... I am pure in knowledge and vision. I acknowledge that I am pure in knowledge and vision, that my knowledge and vision are pure, clean, untarnished. And disciples do not protect me in regard to knowledge and vision, and I do not expect protection from disciples in regard to knowledge and vision.”

Kd.17.2.5

Then the Lord, having stayed at Kosambī for as long as he found suiting, set out on a tour for Rājagaha. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at Rājagaha. The Lord stayed there at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the

BD.5.263

¹ *samudācareyyāma*, explained at AN-a.iii.278 as *katheyyāma*, say, speak. ² *sammannati*, Vin-a.1275 explaining as *sammāneti*, and AN-a.iii.278 as *sammānaṃ karoti*, he makes or produces honour, i.e. by accepting these gifts. ³ *tumo*, explained by Vin-a.1275 as so, he, and by AN-a.iii.278 as *esa ... eso* (variant reading so), this one. Cf. *tumo* at Snp.890, Snp.908.

squirrels' feeding place.¹ Then several monks approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, these monks spoke thus to the Lord:

“Prince Ajātasattu, Lord, goes morning and evening to wait on Devadatta with five hundred chariots, and five hundred offerings of rice cooked in milk are brought as a gift of food.”

“Do not, monks, envy Devadatta's gains and honours and fame. For as long, monks, as Prince Ajātasattu goes morning and evening to wait on Devadatta with five hundred chariots and (as long as) five hundred offerings of rice cooked in milk are brought as a gift of food, there may be expected for Devadatta decline in skilled mental states, not growth. It is as if, monks, they were to throw² a bladder³ at a fierce dog's nose—as that dog, monks, would become much fiercer, even so, monks, for as long as Prince Ajātasattu goes morning and evening ... there may be expected for Devadatta decline in skilled mental states, not growth. Devadatta's gains, honours and fame⁴ bring about his own hurt, Devadatta's gains, honour and fame bring about his destruction. As, monks, a plantain bears fruit to its own hurt, bears fruit to its destruction, even so, monks, do Devadatta's gains, honours and fame bring about his own hurt, do Devadatta's gains, honours and fame bring about his destruction. As, monks, a bamboo ... a reed bears fruit to its own hurt ... even so, monks, do Devadatta's gains, honours and fame bring about ... his destruction. As, monks, a she-mule conceives to her own hurt, conceives to her destruction, even so, monks, do Devadatta's gains, honours and fame bring about ... his destruction.

Vin.2.188

“Truly its fruit the plantain does destroy,
Its fruit the bamboo, its fruit the reed;
So honour does destroy the fool,
Just as its embryo the mule.”⁵

¹ Cf. SN.ii.242 for this episode down to the end of the simile of the fierce dog. ² *bhindeyyum* is explained at SN-a.ii.212 by *pakkhipeyyum*. ³ *pitta*. See MORRIS, JOURNAL OF THE PALI TEXT SOCIETY 1893, p.4 and Ud-a.65. SN-a.ii.212 explains *pitta* as that of a bear or a fish.

⁴ Cf. SN.ii.241, AN.ii.73 to the end of the verse. ⁵ Quoted SN.i.154, Mi.166, Ne.130.

Told is the First Portion for Repeating

SECOND RECITATION SECTION

ACT OF INFORMING

BD.5.264

Now at that time the Lord was sitting down teaching *dhamma* surrounded by a large company, by a company which included the king.¹ Then Devadatta, rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having saluted the Lord with joined palms, spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Lord is now old, worn, stricken in years, he has lived his span and is at the close of his life;² Lord, let the Lord now be content to live devoted to abiding in ease here and now,³ let him hand over the Order of monks to me. It is I who will lead the Order of monks.”

“Enough, Devadatta, please do not lead the Order of monks.” And a second time ... And a third time Devadatta spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Lord is now old, worn, stricken in years ... It is I who will lead the Order of monks.”

“I, Devadatta, would not hand over the Order of monks even to Sāriputta and Moggallāna. How then could I to you, a wretched one to be vomited like spittle?”⁴

Vin.2.189

Then Devadatta, thinking: “The Lord in an assembly which included a king disparaged me by (using) the term, ‘one to be vomited like spittle,’ while he extolled Sāriputta and Moggallāna,” angry, displeased, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him.

Kd.17.3.2

And this was the first time that Devadatta felt malice towards the Lord. Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Well then, monks, let

¹ Cf. another version of this episode, as far as “the act of Information” at Dhp-a.i.139–Dhp-a.i.140. ² Stock, as at Vin.3.2, MN.i.82, Snp.p.50, Snp.p.92. ³ *diṭṭhadhammasukhavihāra*, as at Vin.1.341. ⁴ Text reads *kheḷāpakassa*, Vin-a.1275 *kheḷāsaka*. Vin-a.1275 explains: requisites accruing by means of an evil mode of livelihood should be ejected like spittle by the noble ones. That is why the Lord said “to be vomited like spittle,” *kheḷāsaka*, (to explain) that he (Devadatta) eats requisites of this nature.

the Order carry out a (formal) act of Information¹ against Devadatta in Rājagaha to the effect that whereas Devadatta's nature was formerly of one kind, now it is of another kind; and that whatever Devadatta should do by gesture and by voice, in that neither the Awakened One nor *dhamma* nor the Order should be seen but in that only Devadatta should be seen. And thus, monks, should it be carried out: The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: 'Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, let the Order carry out an act of Information against Devadatta in Rājagaha, to the effect that whereas Devadatta's nature was formerly of one kind, now it is of another kind, and that whatever Devadatta should do ... in that only Devadatta should be seen. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The Order is carrying out the (formal) act of Information against Devadatta in Rājagaha, to the effect that ... in that only Devadatta should be seen. If the carrying out of the (formal) act of Information against Devadatta in Rājagaha to the effect that ... in that only Devadatta should be seen is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The (formal) act of Information against Devadatta in Rājagaha to the effect that ... in that only Devadatta should be seen is carried out by the Order. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this'."

BD.5.265

Then the Lord addressed the venerable Sāriputta, saying: "Well then, do you, Sāriputta, inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha."

"Formerly, Lord, I spoke praise of Devadatta in Rājagaha saying: 'Godhi's son is of great psychic power, Godhi's son is of great majesty.' How can I, Lord, inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha?"

"Was not the truth spoken by you, Sāriputta, when you spoke praise of Devadatta in Rājagaha saying: 'Godhi's son is of ... great majesty'?"

"Yes, Lord."

"Even so, Sāriputta, when you inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha it will be just as true."

¹ *pakāsaniyakamma*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.239, n.2 rightly says "This is not among the regular official acts of the Order as described in **Kd.11**," but it is wrong to say "it is not referred to by the Dhammapada Commentator" for it is mentioned at Dhp-a.i.140.

Kd.17.3.3 “Very well, Lord,” the venerable Sāriputta answered the Lord in assent.

BD.5.266 Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Well then, monks, let the Order agree for Sāriputta to inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha saying: ‘Formerly Devadatta’s nature was of such a kind, now it is of another kind, and that whatever Devadatta should do by gesture and by voice, in that neither the Awakened One nor *dhamma* nor the Order should be seen, but in that only Devadatta should be seen.’ And thus, monks, should Sāriputta be agreed upon: First, Sāriputta should be asked; having been asked, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree for the venerable Sāriputta to inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha saying: ‘Formerly Devadatta’s nature was of one kind ... in that only Devadatta should be seen.’ This is the motion. If the agreement upon Sāriputta to inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha, saying: ‘Formerly Devadatta’s nature was of one kind ... in that only Devadatta should be seen’ is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The venerable Sāriputta is agreed upon by the Order to inform against Devadatta in Rājagaha, saying: ‘Formerly Devadatta’s nature was of one kind ... in that only Devadatta should be seen.’ ... It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

Vin.2.190

The venerable Sāriputta, (thus) agreed upon, having entered Rājagaha together with several monks, informed against Devadatta in Rājagaha to the effect that: “Formerly Devadatta’s nature was of one kind, now it is of another kind, and that whatever Devadatta should do by gesture and by voice, in that neither the Awakened One nor *dhamma* nor the Order should be seen, but in that only Devadatta should be seen.” Those people who were of little faith, not believing, who were of poor intelligence, spoke thus: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are jealous, they are jealous of Devadatta’s gains and honours.” But those people who had faith and were believing, who were wise, intelligent, spoke thus: “This can be no ordinary matter in that the Lord has Devadatta informed against in Rājagaha.”

THE STORY OF PRINCE AJĀTASATTU

Kd.17.3.4

Then Devadatta approached Prince Ajātasattu; having approached, he spoke thus to Prince Ajātasattu: “Formerly,¹ prince, people were long-lived, now-days they are short-lived, and it is possible that you, while still a prince, might pass away. Well now, do you prince, having slain your father, become king. I, having slain the Lord, will become the Awakened One.” And Prince Ajātasattu, thinking: “Now, master Devadatta is of great psychic power, of great majesty; master Devadatta must know (what is right),” having fastened a dagger² against his thigh, at an early hour (although) afraid, anxious, fearful, alarmed, entered the (king’s) private quarters forcibly. But the chief ministers in attendance in the private quarters saw Prince Ajātasattu at an early hour (although) afraid, anxious, fearful, alarmed, entering the (king’s) private quarters forcibly. Seeing him, they laid hold of him. These examining him, and having seen the dagger bound against his thigh, spoke thus to Prince Ajātasattu: “What is it that you, prince, want to do?”

BD.5.267

“I want to slay my father.”

“By whom are you being incited?”

“By master Devadatta.” Some chief ministers gave this opinion: “The Prince should be slain and Devadatta and all the monks should be slain.”³ Some chief ministers gave this opinion: “The monks should not be slain for the monks are not giving offence,⁴ but the Prince should be slain and Devadatta.” Some chief ministers gave this opinion: “The Prince should not be slain, nor Devadatta, the monks should not be slain. The king should be told and we will do whatever the king says.”

Kd.17.3.5

“Then these chief ministers, taking Prince Ajātasattu, approached King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha; having approached, they told this matter to King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha. He said: “What opinion, my good men, have the chief ministers formed?”

Vin.2.191

“Some chief ministers, Sire, gave this opinion ... Some chief ministers gave this opinion ... Some chief ministers gave this opinion: “The Prince

¹ Quoted DhP-a.i.140, DN-a.135. ² *potthanikaṃ*. As at Vin.1.217, where translated “butcher’s knife.” ³ Quoted at DN-a.135. ⁴ *aparajjhanti*, as at Vin.3.162.

should not be slain, nor Devadatta, the monks should not be slain. The king should be told and we will do whatever the king says’.”

BD.5.268

“What, my good men, can the Awakened One or *dhamma* or the Order have to do (with this)? Has not the Lord already had Devadatta informed against in Rājagaha to the effect that formerly Devadatta’s nature was of one kind, now it is of another kind, and that whatever Devadatta may do by gesture or by speech, in that neither the Awakened One nor *dhamma* nor the Order is to be seen, but in that only Devadatta should be seen?”

Those chief ministers who had given their opinion thus: “The Prince should be slain and Devadatta and all the monks should be slain,” these he discharged.¹ Those chief ministers who had given their opinion thus: “The monks should not be slain, for the monks do not give any offence, but the prince should be slain and Devadatta,” these he set in lowly positions. Those chief ministers who had given their opinion thus: “The prince should not be slain, nor Devadatta, nor should the monks be slain. The king should be told and we will do whatever the king says,” these he set in high positions. Then King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha spoke thus to Prince Ajātasattu:

“Why do you, prince, want to slay me?”

“Sire, I have need of a kingdom.”

“If it be that you, prince, have need of a kingdom, this kingdom is yours,” and he handed over the kingdom to Prince Ajātasattu.

SENDING ASSASSINS

Kd.17.3.6

Then Devadatta approached Prince Ajātasattu²; having approached, he spoke thus to Prince Ajātasattu:

“Your Majesty, command your men so that they deprive the recluse Gotama of life.” Then Prince Ajātasattu commanded his men, saying: “My good men, do whatever master Devadatta says.” Then Devadatta enjoined the men, saying: “Go along, friends, the recluse Gotama is staying at a

¹ *te abhabbe akāsi*, he rendered them incapable (of holding an official position). ² *Vinaya Texts* iii.243, n.2 points out that Ajātasattu is not called “king” here, and that therefore the events described in this paragraph took place before he actually became king, and that the paragraph probably stood originally in some other connection. On the other hand, it should be noticed that Devadatta addresses him as *mahārāja*.

certain place. Having deprived him of life, come back by a certain road,” and he set two men on that road, saying: “Whatever man comes alone along this road, having deprived him of life, come back by this road,” and having set four men on that road, saying: “Whatever couple of men come along by this road, having deprived them of life, come back by this road,” and having set eight men on that road, saying: “Whatever four men come along by this road, ... come back by this road,” and having set sixteen men on that road, he said: “Whatever eight men come along by this road, having deprived them of life, come back.”

BD.5.269

Vin.2.192

Kd.17.3.7

Then that man who was alone, having grasped a sword and shield, having bound on a bow and quiver,¹ approached the Lord; having approached, when he was quite near the Lord he stood still, his body quite rigid² afraid, anxious, fearful, alarmed.³ The Lord saw that man standing still, his body quite rigid, afraid ... alarmed and seeing him, he spoke thus to that man: “Come, friend, do not be afraid.” Then that man, having put his sword and shield to one side, having laid down his bow and quiver, approached the Lord; having approached, having inclined his head to the Lord’s feet, he spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, a transgression has overcome me, foolish, misguided, wrong that I was, in that I was coming here with my mind malignant,⁴ my mind on murder.⁵ Lord, may the Lord acknowledge for me the transgression as a transgression for the sake of restraint in the future.”

“Truly, friend, a transgression overcame you, foolish, misguided, wrong that you were, in that you were coming here, with your mind malignant, your mind on murder. But if you, friend, having seen the transgression as a transgression, confess according to the rule, we acknowledge it for you; for friend in the discipline of the noble, this is growth: whoever having seen a transgression as a transgression, confesses according to the rule, he attains restraint in the future.”⁶

Then the Lord talked a progressive talk⁷ to this man, that is to say talk on giving, talk on moral habit, talk on heaven ... sorrow, its uprising, stopping,

¹ Stock, as at e.g. AN.iii.93-AN.iii.94, MN.i.86, MN.ii.99. ² *patthaddha*, as at Thag.1074. Vin-a.1275, days “with his body motionless like a figure modelled in clay.” ³ As at Kd.17.1.6.

⁴ *duṭṭhacitta*, as at MN.iii.65. ⁵ *vadhakacitta*, as at DN.iii.72. ⁶ Cf. Vin.4.18-Vin.4.19, etc.

⁷ As at Vin.1.15.

BD.5.270 the Way. Just as a clean cloth without black specks will take a dye easily, even so (as he was sitting) on that very seat did *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arise to that man, that “whatever is of a nature to arise, all that is of a nature to stop.” Then that man¹ as one who has seen *dhamma*, attained *dhamma*, known *dhamma*, plunged into *dhamma*, having crossed over doubt, having put away uncertainty, having attained without another’s help to full confidence in the Teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord:

Vin.2.193 “Excellent, Lord: Lord, it is excellent. It is as if one were to set upright what has been upset ... thus is *dhamma* explained in many a figure by the Lord. So I, Lord, am going to the Lord for refuge and to *dhamma* and to the Order of monks. May the Lord accept me as a lay-follower going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

Kd.17.3.8 Then the Lord spoke thus to that man: “Do not you, friend, go by that road. Go by this road,” and he sent him off by another road.

Then those two men, thinking: ‘Why is that man who is alone so slow in coming?’ going along to meet him saw the Lord sitting at the root of a tree. Seeing him, they approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord talked a progressive talk to these ... to full confidence in the Teacher’s instruction, spoke thus to the Lord: “Excellent, Lord ... May the Lord accept us as lay-followers going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”

Kd.17.3.9 BD.5.271 Then the Lord spoke thus to these men: “Do not you, friends, go by that road. Go by this road,” and he sent them off by another road. Then those four men, thinking: ‘Why are these two men so slow in coming?’ ... and he sent them off by another road. Then those eight men, thinking: ‘Why are these four men so slow in coming?’ ... and he sent them off by another road. Then those sixteen men, thinking: ‘Why are these eight men so slow in coming?’ ... “May the Lord receive us as lay-followers going for refuge from this day forth for as long as life lasts.”²

Then that one man approached Devadatta³; having approached, he spoke thus to Devadatta: “Honoured sir, I am not able to deprive that Lord of life, that Lord is of great psychic power, of great might.”

¹ As at Vin.1.12. ² A version noticed by Oldenberg (Vin.2.324) adds that “the Lord spoke thus to those men ... sent them off by another road.” ³ From here, cf. Ja.v.333ff.

“All right, friend, do not you deprive the recluse Gotama of life. I myself will deprive the recluse Gotama of life.”

SHEDDING BLOOD

Now at that time the Lord was pacing up and down in the shade¹ of Mount Vulture Peak. Then Devadatta, having climbed Mount Vulture Peak, hurled down a great stone, thinking: “With this I will deprive the recluse Gotama of life.” But two mountain peaks, having met, crushed that stone, and (only) a fragment of it, having fallen down, drew blood on the Lord’s foot.² Then the Lord, having looked upwards, spoke thus to Devadatta: “You have produced great demerit, foolish man, in that you, with your mind malignant, your mind on murder, drew the Truth-finder’s blood.” Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “This, monks, is the first deed whose fruit comes with no delay³ accumulated by Devadatta since he, with his mind malignant, his mind on murder, drew the Truth-finder’s blood.”

Monks heard: “It is said that Devadatta schemed to murder the Lord,” and so these monks paced up and down on every side of the Lord’s dwelling-place doing their studies together with a loud noise, with a great noise for the protection, defence and warding of the Lord. The Lord heard the loud noise, the great noise, the noise of studying, and hearing it, he addressed the venerable Ānanda, saying:

“What on earth, Ānanda, is this loud noise, this great noise, this noise of studying?”

“Lord, the monks heard that Devadatta schemed to murder the Lord, and so, Lord, these monks are pacing up and down ... for the protection, defence and warding of the Lord. This, Lord, is the loud noise, the great noise, the noise of studying.”

“Well now, Ānanda, address these monks in my name, saying: ‘The Teacher is summoning the venerable ones.’”

¹ Cf. Vin.1.180. ² An echo of widespread folk-tradition, where the Hero, on his quest, passes with all speed through clashing rocks, sometimes sustaining an injury. ³ *ānantarikakamma*. Cf. Vism.177.

“Very well, Lord,” and the venerable Ānanda, having answered the Lord in assent, approached those monks; having approached, he spoke thus to those monks: “The Teacher is summoning the venerable ones.”

“Very well, your reverence,” and these monks, having answered the venerable Ānanda in assent, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. The Lord spoke thus to these monks as they were sitting down at a respectful distance:

“This is impossible, monks, it cannot come to pass that anyone could deprive a Truth-finder of life by aggression; monks, Truth-finders attain *nibbāna* not because of an attack.¹ Monks, there are these five teachers found in the world. What five? ...² and I do not expect protection from disciples in respect of knowledge and vision. This is impossible, monks, it cannot come to pass that anyone could deprive a Truth-finder of life by aggression; monks, Truth-finders attain *nibbāna* not because of an attack. Go, monks, to your own dwelling-places³; Truth-finders, monks, do not need to be protected.”

SENDING OUT NĀLĀGIRI

Kd.17.3.11

Now at that time there was a fierce elephant in Rājagaha, a man-slayer, called Nālāgiri. Then Devadatta, having entered Rājagaha, having gone to the elephant stable, spoke thus to the mahouts: “We, my good fellows, are relations of the king. We are competent to put in a high position one occupying a lowly position and to bring about an increase in food and wages. Well now, good fellows, when the recluse Gotama is coming along this carriage road,⁴ then, having let loose this elephant, Nālāgiri, bring him down this carriage road.”

“Very well, honoured sir,” these mahouts answered Devadatta in assent.

BD.5.273
Vin.2.195

Then the Lord, having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood together with several monks. Then the Lord went along that carriage road. Then those mahouts saw the Lord coming

¹ *anupakkama*, “not by attack (from external enemies),” as at *Critical Pali Dictionary*. ² As at [Kd.17.2.3](#), [Kd.17.2.4](#) (to end). Read above “monks” instead of “Moggallāna.” ³ *yathāvihāraṃ*, as at [Vin.4.15](#). ⁴ *racchā*. See [BD.3.268](#), n.1.

along that carriage-road; seeing him, having let loose the elephant Nālāgiri, they brought him down that carriage-road. The elephant Nālāgiri saw the Lord coming from afar; seeing him, having lifted up his trunk, he rushed towards the Lord, his ears and tail erect. Those monks saw the elephant Nālāgiri coming in the distance; seeing him, they spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, this elephant Nālāgiri, coming along this carriage-road, is a fierce man-slayer; Lord, let the Lord turn back, let the well-farer turn back.”

“Wait, monks, do not be afraid; this is impossible, monks, it cannot come to pass that anyone should deprive a Truth-finder of life by aggression; monks, Truth-finders attain *nibbāna* not because of an attack.” And a second time ... And a third time these monks spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, this elephant Nālāgiri, ... let the well-farer turn back.”

“Wait, monks, ... Truth-finders attain *nibbāna* not because of an attack.”

Kd.17.3.12

Now at that time people, having mounted up on to the long houses and the curved houses and the roofs, waited there. Those people who were of little faith, not believing, who were of poor intelligence,¹ these spoke thus: “This great recluse is indeed lovely; he will be hurt by the bull elephant.”² But those people who had faith and were believing, who were wise and intelligent, these spoke thus: “Soon, good sirs, the bull-elephant will come into conflict with the elephant (among men).”

Then the Lord suffused the elephant Nālāgiri with loving-kindness of mind. Then the elephant Nālāgiri, suffused by the Lord with loving-kindness of mind, having put down his trunk, approached the Lord; having approached, he stood in front of the Lord. Then the Lord, stroking the elephant Nālāgiri’s forehead with his right hand, addressed the elephant Nālāgiri with verses:

BD.5.274

“Do not, elephant,³ strike the elephant (among men),
for painful, elephant, is the striking of the elephant (among
men),
For there is no good bourn, elephant,⁴

¹ As at Kd.17.3.3. ² *nāga*. Cf. the matted hair ascetics’ speech at Kd.1.15.4. ³ *kuñjara*. Verses also at Ja.v.336. ⁴ *kuñjara*. Verses also at Ja.v.336.

for a slayer of the elephant (among men) when he is hence
beyond.

“Be not proud,¹ be not wanton,²
for the wanton reach not a good bourn;
Only that should you do by which
you will go to a good bourn.”

Then the elephant Nālāgiri, having taken the dust of the Lord’s feet with his trunk, having scattered it over his head, moved back bowing while he gazed upon the Lord. Then the elephant Nālāgiri, having returned to the elephant stable, stood in his own place; and it was in this way that the elephant Nālāgiri became tamed. Now at that time people sang this verse:

Vin.2.196

“Some are tamed by stick, by goads and whips.
The elephant was tamed by the great seer
without a stick, without a weapon.”³

Kd.17.3.13

People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How evil is this Devadatta, how inauspicious,⁴ in that he tried to murder the recluse Gotama who is of such great psychic power, of such great might,” and Devadatta’s gains and honours declined; the Lord’s gains and honours increased.

ON THE REQUEST FOR THE FIVE POINTS

Now at that time Devadatta, gains and honours lost,⁵ ate with his friends, having asked and asked among households. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying:

¹ *mada ... pamāda*, also at Snp.218. ² *mada ... pamāda*, also at Snp.218. ³ Cf. MN.ii.105, Thag.878. ⁴ *alakkhika*. Vin-a.1275-6 says “here it means he does not discriminate, he does not know. He does not know ‘I am doing an evil deed’.” Cf. version of Vin-a given at *Vinaya Texts* iii.250, n.1. In interpreting the word like the corresponding Sanskrit *alakarṇika*, as does *Vinaya Texts* iii, I prefer “inauspicious, unlucky,” to their “wretched,” with the sense of its being unlucky for donors to give alms to Devadatta. ⁵ Down to “It is true, Lord” = Bu-Pc.32 where this episode is used to lead up to the framing of a rule against a group-meal, see BD.2.306f. for notes.

“How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans eat, having asked and asked among households? Who is not fond of well-cooked things? Who does not like sweet things?”

Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can Devadatta eat with his friends, having asked and asked among households?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Is it true, as is said, that you, Devadatta, ate with your friends, having asked and asked among households?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked him, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well now, monks, I will lay down for monks the eating by a triad (of monks)¹ among households—founded on three reasons:² for the restraint of evil-minded³ individuals; for the living in comfort⁴ of well behaved monks⁵ lest those of evil desires should split the Order by means of a faction;⁶ out of compassion for families.⁷ In eating a group meal, one should be dealt with

¹ *tikabhojana*, a meal to be eaten by three people, so Vin-a.1276. See also SN-a.ii.178. Just as *gaṇabhojana* is a group-meal, so *tikabhojana* is a three-party meal. It is apparently meant that a “group” is larger than three monks, since at the end of Kd.17.3.13 it is specially said that one who eats a group-meal must be treated according to the rule. On *gaṇabhojana* see BD.2.307, n.1.

² The subject of a question put by Kassapa to Ānanda at SN.ii.218. ³ SN-a.ii.178, AN-a.ii.163 explain *dummaṅkūnam* by *dussila*, bad moral habit. ⁴ *phāsuvihāra*, cf. Vin.1.92, etc.

⁵ This and the first reason are among the ten reasons sometimes ascribed to the Lord for laying down a rule of training, as at Vin.3.21 and other Vinaya passages. Cf. also AN.i.99.

⁶ SN-a.ii.178 explains that as Devadatta and his friends split the Order by means of their evil desires, so too others of evil desires, on account of their bond as a group, having begged among families, were eating having made the group increase; so it was said “Lest they split the Order by means of that faction.” ⁷ AN.i.100 has *gihīnam anukampāya pāpicchānam pakkhupacchedāya*, translated at GS.i.84 “out of compassion for householders and to uproot the factions of the evilly disposed.” If “the idea is here, of course, lest any particular layman should be burdened by providing for many *bhikkhus*,” as stated at *Vinaya Texts* iii.251, n.3, it is the exact opposite of the opinion given at SN-a.ii.178 for allowing three monks to eat together among families. For this is that “having carried out the Observance and the Invitation in the Order of monks, and (the monks) being all together, people having given (them) meals by ticket and so on become bound for heaven”. So the compassion for families is in allowing them scope to give and thereby to acquire merit. AN-a.ii.164 less cogently says: “A rule of training laid down when householders complain is called “laid down out of compassion for householders.”

according to the rule.”¹

Kd.17.3.14

BD.5.276

Then Devadatta approached Kokālika,² Kaṭamorakatissaka, the son of the lady Khaṇḍā, and Samuddadatta, having approached, he spoke thus to Kokālika, Kaṭamorakatissaka, the son of the lady Khaṇḍā, and Samuddadatta: “Come, we, your reverences, will make a schism in the recluse Gotama’s Order, a breaking of the concord.” When he had spoken thus, Kokālika spoke thus to Devadatta:

“But, your reverence, the recluse Gotama is of great psychic power, of great might. How can we make a schism in the recluse Gotama’s Order, a breaking of the concord?”

Vin.2.197

“Come, we, your reverence, having approached the recluse Gotama, will ask for five items, saying: ‘Lord, the Lord in many a figure speaks in praise of desiring little, of being contented, of expunging (evil), of being punctilious, of what is gracious, of decrease (in the obstructions), of putting forth energy. Lord, these five items are in many a way conducive to desiring little, to contentment, to expunging (evil), to being punctilious, to what is gracious, to decrease (in the obstructions), to putting forth energy.

1. It were good, Lord, if the monks, for as long as life lasted, might be forest-dwellers; whoever should betake himself to the neighbourhood of a village, sin would besmirch him.
2. For as long as life lasts, let them be beggars for alms; whoever should accept an invitation, sin would besmirch him.
3. For as long as life lasts, let them be rag-robe wearers; whoever should accept a robe given by a householder, sin would besmirch him.
4. For as long as life lasts, let them live at the root of a tree; whoever should go under cover, sin would besmirch him.
5. For as long as life lasts, let them not eat fish and flesh; whoever should eat fish and flesh, sin would besmirch him.’

The recluse Gotama will not allow these. Then we will win over the people by means of these five items.”

¹ I.e. to the rule laid down in Bu-Pc.32. ² Almost word for word the same as Bu-Ss.10.1.1, Bu-Ss.10.1.2 and part of Bu-Ss.10.1.3. See BD.1.296-299 for footnotes.

“It is possible, your reverence, with these five items, to make a schism in the recluse Gotama’s Order, a breaking of the concord. For, your reverence, people esteem austerity.”

Kd.17.3.15

Then Devadatta together with his friends approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Devadatta spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.5.277

“Lord, the Lord in many a figure speaks in praise of desiring little ... whoever should eat fish and flesh, sin would besmirch him.”

“Enough, Devadatta,” he said. “Whoever wishes, let him be a forest-dweller; whoever wishes, let him stay in the neighbourhood of a village; whoever wishes, let him be a beggar for alms; whoever wishes, let him accept an invitation; whoever wishes, let him be a rag-robe wearer; whoever wishes, let him accept a householder’s robes. For eight months, Devadatta, lodging at the root of a tree is permitted by me. Fish and flesh are pure in respect of three points: if they are not seen, heard or suspected (to have been killed on purpose for him).”¹

Then Devadatta, thinking: ‘The Lord does not permit these five items,’ joyful, elated, rising from his seat with his friends, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping his right side towards him. Then Devadatta, having entered Rājagaha with his friends, taught the people by means of the five items, saying: “We, friends, having approached the recluse Gotama, asked for five items, saying: ‘Lord, the Lord in many a figure speaks in praise of desiring little ... whoever should eat fish and flesh, sin would besmirch him’. The recluse Gotama does not allow these five items, but we live undertaking these five items.”

Kd.17.3.16

Those people who were there of little faith, not believing, who were of poor intelligence, these spoke thus: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans are punctilious, are expungers (of evil), but the recluse Gotama is for abundance and strives after abundance.” But those people who had faith and were believing, who were wise and intelligent, these looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this Devadatta go forward with a schism in the Lord’s Order, with a breaking of the concord?” Monks

Vin.2.198

¹ Cf. Vin.1.238 (BD.4.325).

heard these people who ... spread it about. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying:

“How can this Devadatta go forward with a schism in the Order, a breaking of the concord?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.278

“Is it true, as is said that you, Devadatta, went forward with a schism in the Order, a breaking of the concord?”

“It is true, Lord.”

“Enough, Devadatta, do not let there be a schism in the Order, for a schism in the Order is a serious matter,¹ Devadatta. Whoever, Devadatta, splits an Order that is united, he sets up demerit that endures for an aeon;² he is boiled in hell for an aeon; but whoever, Devadatta, unites an Order that is split, he sets up sublime³ merit, he rejoices in heaven for an aeon. Enough, Devadatta, do not let there be a schism in the Order, for a schism in the Order is a serious matter, Devadatta.”

Kd.17.3.17

Then the venerable Ānanda,⁴ having dressed in the morning, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood. Devadatta saw the venerable Ānanda walking in Rājagaha for almsfood; seeing him, he approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “Now from this day forth will I, reverend Ānanda, carry out Observance both in contradistinction to⁵ the Lord and in contradistinction to the Order of monks and will (so) carry out (formal) acts of the Order.”⁶ Then the venerable Ānanda, having walked in Rājagaha for almsfood, on returning from the almsround, after his meal, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord:

“Just now, Lord, I, having dressed in the morning, taking my bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for almsfood. Devadatta, Lord, saw me walking in Rājagaha for almsfood; seeing me, he came up; having come up, he spoke thus to me: ‘Now from this day forth will I ... (so) carry out (formal) acts of

¹ Quoted at Vin.1.150. ² *kappaṭṭhika*. But Vin-a.1276 says that *kappa* is *āyukappa*, “for the duration of life.” ³ *brahma = seṭṭha*, Vin-a.1276. ⁴ This episode also appears at Ud.v.8 and Dh-p-a.iii.154. ⁵ *aññatr’eva*. ⁶ *saṅghakammaṇi*. Ud.v.8 reads *-kammāni*.

the Order.’ Today, Lord, Devadatta will split the Order.”¹

BD.5.279

Then the Lord, having understood this matter, at that time uttered this utterance:

“Easy is good for the good, good for the evil is hard,
Evil for the evil is easy, evil for the noble ones is hard.”²

Told is the Second Portion for Repeating

THIRD RECITATION SECTION

ON SCHISM IN THE ORDER

Vin.2.199

Then Devadatta on that Observance day rising from his seat gave out voting tickets,³ saying: “We, your reverences, having approached the recluse Gotama, asked for five items.⁴ ... The recluse Gotama does not allow these, but we live undertaking these five items. If these five items are pleasing to the venerable ones, let each one take a voting ticket.”

Now at that time as many as five hundred monks, Vajjis of Vesālī, were newly ordained and were not properly versed;⁵ and these, thinking: “This is the rule, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction,” took voting tickets. Then Devadatta, having split the Order, set out for Gayā Head taking as many as the five hundred monks. Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna⁶ approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Sāriputta spoke thus to the Lord: “Devadatta, Lord, having split the Order, is setting out for Gayā Head with as many as five hundred monks.”

¹ Udāna adding “and will carry out Observance and (formal) acts of the Order.” ² Cf. Dhp.163, ascribed by Dhp-a.iii.154 to this occasion. ³ *salāka*. Method of appointing distributor of voting tickets laid down at Kd.14.9,10. On process to be followed when voting by ticket see Kd.14.14.26. This incident is briefly recounted at Dhp-a.i.142–Dhp-a.i.143. ⁴ As at Kd.17.3.14, Kd.17.3.15. ⁵ *apakataññuno*, or, did not know what had been appointed; cf. Vin.4.112, Vin.4.143. ⁶ Sāriputtamoggallānā. “The venerable” is not used in such cases.

“Can there not be for you, Sāriputta and Moggallāna,¹ compassion for these newly ordained monks? Go you along, Sāriputta and Moggallāna, before these monks fall into trouble and distress.”

BD.5.280

“Very well, Lord,” and Sāriputta and Moggallāna having answered the Lord in assent, rising from their seats, having greeted the Lord, keeping their right sides towards him, approached Gayā Head. Now at that time a certain monk was standing weeping not far from the Lord. Then the Lord spoke thus to that monk: “Why are you, monk, weeping?”

“Even those, Lord, who are the Lord’s chief disciples—Sāriputta and Moggallāna—even these are going to Devadatta approving of Devadatta’s *dhamma*.”

“This is not possible, monk, it cannot come to pass that Sāriputta and Moggallāna should approve Devadatta’s *dhamma*. They have merely gone so as to convince the monks.”²

Kd.17.4.2

Now at that time Devadatta, surrounded by the large company, was teaching *dhamma* sitting down. Then Devadatta saw Sāriputta and Moggallāna coming in the distance; seeing them, he addressed the monks, saying: “You see, monks, how well taught is *dhamma* by me that even these who are the recluse Gotama’s chief disciples—Sāriputta and Moggallāna—that even these are coming to me approving of my *dhamma*.” When he had spoken thus Kokālika spoke thus to Devadatta: “Reverend Devadatta, do not put your trust in Sāriputta and Moggallāna, Sāriputta and Moggallāna have evil desires and are under the influence of evil desires.”³

Vin.2.200

“Enough, your reverence, let us give a welcome to these since they approve of my *dhamma*.” The Devadatta invited the venerable Sāriputta to half his seat, saying: “Come, reverend Sāriputta, sit here.”

“No, your reverence,” and the venerable Sāriputta, having taken another seat, sat down at a respectful distance; and the venerable Moggallāna too, having taken another seat, sat down at a respectful distance. Then Deva-

¹ Sāriputtā. ² *bhikkhusaññatiyā*. Cf. same expression at Kd.22.2.8. Cf. *gihisañatti* at SN.i.199, translated at KS.i.254 “imparting matters to the laity”; and explanation at SN-a.i.292, KS.i.254, n.1. Also cf. AN.i.75. ³ Quoted at Dhp-a.i.143.

datta, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the monks far into the night with talk on *dhamma*, asked¹ the venerable Sāriputta, saying:

“The Order of monks, reverend Sāriputta, is without sloth or drowsiness; may a talk on *dhamma* occur to² you, reverend Sāriputta, for the monks. My back aches and I will stretch it.”³

BD.5.281

“Very well, your reverence,” the venerable Sāriputta answered Devadatta in assent. Then Devadatta, having laid down his outer cloak folded in four, lay down to sleep on his right side,⁴ and as he was tired, forgetful and inattentive, he fell asleep that very moment.

Kd.17.4.3

Then the venerable Sāriputta exhorted, instructed the monks with *dhamma*-talk by means of an instruction on the wonders of thought-reading;⁵ the venerable Moggallāna exhorted, instructed the monks with *dhamma*-talk by means of an instruction on the wonders of psychic power. Then as the monks were being exhorted, instructed by the venerable Sāriputta with *dhamma*-talk by means of an instruction on the wonders of thought-reading; were being exhorted, instructed by the venerable Moggallāna with *dhamma*-talk by means of an instruction on the wonders of psychic power, *dhamma*-vision, dustless, stainless, arose to them, that ‘whatever is of the nature to uprise all that is of the nature to stop.’ Then the venerable Sāriputta addressed the monks, saying: “We are going, your reverences, to the Lord. Whoever approves of this Lord’s *dhamma*, let him come along.” Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna, taking those five hundred monks, approached the Bamboo Grove. Then Kokālika wakened Devadatta, saying: “Wake up,⁶ reverend Devadatta, those monks have been led away by Sāriputta and Moggallāna. Now, did I not say to you, reverend Devadatta, ‘Reverend Devadatta, do not put your trust in Sāriputta and Moggallāna, Sāriputta and Moggallāna have evil desires and are under the influence of evil desires?’” Then at that very place hot blood issued from Devadatta’s mouth.⁷

Kd.17.4.4

¹ *ajjhesi*, as at Kd.5.13.9. ² *paṭibhātu*, as at Kd.5.18.9 and see note at BD.4.264, n.1. ³ Cf. MN.i.354, where these same words are ascribed to Gotama. ⁴ Cf. MN.i.354. But here Gotama lies down mindful and circumspect. ⁵ Among the three “wonders” mentioned at AN.i.170–AN.i.171, DN.i.212–DN.i.214 and explained at both passages. Cf. AN.v.327. ⁶ Quoted at DhP-a.i.143. ⁷ The same is recorded of Sañjaya at Kd.1.24.3.

Then Sāriputta and Moggallāna approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, they sat down at a respectful distance. As they were sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Sāriputta spoke thus to the Lord: “It were well, Lord, if the monks who were partisans of the schismatics could be ordained again.”

Vin.2.201

BD.5.282

“Be careful, Sāriputta, about any reordination of monks who were partisans of the schismatics. But do you, Sāriputta, make the monks who were partisans of the schismatics confess a grave offence. But what line of conduct, Sāriputta, did Devadatta follow in regard to you?”

“Even, Lord, as the Lord, having gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted monks with *dhamma*-talk far into the night, he asked me: ‘The Order of monks, Sāriputta, is without sloth or drowsiness, may a talk on *dhamma* occur to you, Sāriputta, for the monks. My back aches and I will stretch it.’ Just this, Lord, was the line of conduct which Devadatta followed.”

Kd.17.4.5

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Formerly,¹ monks, there was a great pond in a stretch of forest; bull elephants lived near it and these, having plunged into that pond,² having tugged out the lotus fibres and stalks with their trunks, having washed them well, and having chewed them free of mud, swallowed them. Thus there came to be for them both beauty and strength, and not for this reason did they incur death or suffering like unto death. But, monks, among these great bull elephants were young elephant calves and these, imitating them, having plunged into that pond, having tugged out the lotus fibres and stalks with their trunks, but not having washed them well, having chewed them with the mud, swallowed them. Thus there came to be for them neither beauty nor strength, and for this reason they incurred death or suffering like unto death. Likewise, monks, Devadatta will die, a wretched creature, copying me.

“While the great beast³ is shaking the earth,
grazing on lotus stalks, keeping alert among the waters—
Copying me, the wretched creature will die,
like a calf having eaten mire.

Kd.17.4.6

¹ As at SN.ii.269. ² Cf. Vin.1.214–Vin.1.215. ³ *mahāvarāha*, which as pointed out at *Vinaya Texts* iii.261, n.1 can also mean a boar.

“Monks, a monk who is possessed of eight qualities is fit to go a message.¹ What are the eight? Herein, monks, a monk is a hearer and one who makes others hear and a learner and an instructor and a knower and an expounder and one skilled in (recognising) conformity and non-conformity² and not a maker of quarrels. Monks, if a monk is possessed of these eight qualities he is fit to go a message. Monks, because he is possessed of these eight qualities, Sāriputta is fit to go a message. What are the eight? Herein, monks, Sāriputta is a learner ... and not a maker of quarrels. Monks, because Sāriputta is possessed of these eight qualities he is fit to go a message.

BD.5.283

Vin.2.202

“Who, to some high assembled council come,
Wavers not, nor in discourse fails, nor hides
The teaching, nor speaks³ in doubtfulness,⁴
And who, being questioned, is not agitated—
A monk like this is fit to go a message.

“Monks, Devadatta,⁵ overcome and his mind controlled by eight wrong conditions,⁶ is doomed to the Downfall,⁷ to Niraya Hell,⁸ staying there for an aeon, incurable.⁹ What eight?

Kd.17.4.7

1. Devadatta, monks, overcome and his mind controlled by gain¹⁰ is doomed to the Downfall ... incurable.

¹ *dūteyyaṃ gantuṃ arahati*. This paragraph recurs at AN.iv.196. Cf. the qualities of a messenger, *dūta*, at Manu 7.63ff. Also see DN.i.5, DN.i.8 where it is held by some ordinary people that Gotama abstains from sending messages and going on them. ² I copy the note at GS.iv.135: *sahitāsahita*; cf. DN.i.8, AN.ii.138; *Dialogues of the Buddha* i.14, n.6. Some of these terms recur at DN.i.56. Cf. S.B.E. xxi, p.352f. for what may be the Mahāyāna version of this sutta. ³ *akkhāti*. AN.iv.196 reads *bhaṇati*. ⁴ *asandiddho*. AN.iv.196 reads *asandiṭṭhan*, but AN-a.iv.106 has *asandiddham* which it glosses as *vigatasam̐sayam̐*, without doubts. Vin-a.1276 reads *asandiṭṭho ca akkhāti ti nissandeho hutvā akkhātā anusandhivasena yojetvā*. At Mi.295 *sandeha* occurs, meaning “doubt.” At DN-a.282 *sandiddha* occurs with variant reading *sandiṭṭha*. See GS.iv.135, n.4. ⁵ Down to “thus it is that you, monks, should train” = AN.iv.160–AN.iv.161. ⁶ *asad-dhammehi*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.262, n.2. ⁷ *āpāyika nerayika*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.262, n.3. ⁸ *āpāyika nerayika*. See *Vinaya Texts* iii.262, n.3. ⁹ This quartet of words occurs at AN.iii.402, AN.iv.160, MN.i.393 also in connection with Devadatta. Vin-a.1276 says “now it is not possible to cure him even with a thousand Buddhas.” ¹⁰ Gain, lack of gain, fame, lack of fame are four of the eight worldly conditions mentioned at DN.iii.260, AN.ii.188, AN.iv.157.

2. Devadatta, monks, overcome and his mind controlled by lack of gain
...
3. ... by fame ...
4. ... by lack of fame ...
5. ... by honours ...
6. ... by lack-of honours ...
7. ... by evil desire ...
8. ... by evil friendship is doomed to the Downfall ... incurable.

Monks, Devadatta, overcome and his mind controlled by these eight wrong conditions is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, staying there for an aeon, incurable.

BD.5.284

“Monks, it is well that a monk should live constantly overcoming gain¹ that has arisen, lack of gain that has arisen, fame that has arisen, lack of fame that has arisen, honours that have arisen, lack of honours that has arisen, evil desire that has arisen, evil friendship that has arisen. And why, monks, for what good purpose should a monk live constantly overcoming gain ... evil friendship that has arisen? Monks, if a monk live not constantly overcoming gain that has arisen, the cankers, that are destructive and consuming,² may arise, but if he lives constantly overcoming gain that has arisen, then it follows that the cankers, that are destructive and consuming, will not be in him ... if he lives constantly overcoming evil friendship that has arisen, then it follows that the cankers, destructive and consuming, will not be in him.

“It is for this good purpose, monks, that a monk should live constantly overcoming gain that has arisen ... evil friendship that has arisen. Wherefore, monks, saying, ‘We will live constantly overcoming gain that has arisen ... evil friendship that has arisen’—thus it is that you, monks, should train.³

Vin.2.203

“Monks, Devadatta,⁴ overcome and his mind controlled by three wrong conditions, is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, staying there for an aeon, incurable. What three? Evil desire, evil friendship, the coming to a

¹ Also see DN.i.8 where an ordinary man would say that Gotama abstains from avariciously adding gain to gain, or benefit to benefit. ² As at AN.ii.197; MN.i.9. ³ Version at AN.iv.160–1 stops here. ⁴ Rest of this paragraph and the whole of the next (the verses) given also at It. BD.5.85ff.

halt midway in his career because his special attainments are of trifling value.¹ Monks, a monk who is overcome ... by these three wrong conditions is ... incurable.

Kd.17.4.8

“Never² let anyone of evil desires arise in the world;
And know it by this: as the bourn of those of evil desires.
Known as ‘sage,’³ held as ‘one who made the self become,’
Devadatta stood shining as with fame—I heard tell.

BD.5.285

“He, falling into recklessness,⁴ assailing the Truth-finder,⁵
Attained Avīci Hell,⁶ four-doored, frightful.
For he who would injure one without hatred, not doing an evil
deed—
That evil touches only him of mind of hate, contemptuous.⁷

“Who should think to pollute the sea with pot of poison—
He would not pollute it with that, for sublime⁸ is the great ocean.

So he who with abuse⁹ afflicts the Truth-finder
Who has rightly gone, his mind tranquil—on him the abuse has
no effect.

“A wise man should make a friend of such a one and follow him,
A monk following the way of him¹⁰ should achieve destruction
of ill.”

¹ Cf. AN.v.157, AN.v.164, DN.ii.78. ² These verses occur also at It.p.85–It.p.86. See Woodward’s translation and notes at *Minor Anthologies* ii.p.177–178. ³ Cf. SN.i.65. ⁴ *so pamādaṃ anuciṇṇo*. Iti-a.ii.100–Iti-a.ii.101 says “Devadatta, saying ‘I am the awakened one,’ and so on, not knowing his own measure (*attano pamāṇaṃ ajānitvā*)” falling into recklessness (or perhaps ‘error,’ *pamādaṃ āpajjanto*) as to himself as an awakened one, said, “Now I will become an awakened one, I will lead the Order of monks.” ⁵ *āsajja taṃ* (or *naṃ*) *tathāgataṃ*. Text reads *āsajjanam*, but Sinhalese and Siamese editions have *āsajja taṃ*. Iti-a.ii.101 explains as *āsādetvā viheṭhetvā*, having assailed (insulted, offended), having annoyed. ⁶ Described at AN.i.141. ⁷ This resembles Dhp.125. ⁸ Reading *bhesmā* with Sinhalese and Siamese editions, Vin-a.1277 and Iti-a.ii.101, instead of text’s *bhasmā* and It. *tasmā*. *Bhesmā* means awful, terrible, and hence may be taken as sublime. ⁹ *vādena*. Iti-a.ii.101 explains by *dosena*, anger, hatred. ¹⁰ *yassa maggānugo bhikkhu*.

QUESTIONS OF UPĀLI

Kd.17.5.1

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord, having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, as to the words: Dissension in an Order,¹ dissension in an Order—to what extent, Lord, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order? And then to what extent is there dissension in an Order as well as schism in an Order?”

BD.5.286

“If, Upāli, there is one on one side² and two on another³ and if a fourth⁴ speaks out⁵ and offers a voting ticket, saying: ‘This is the rule, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction, take this (voting ticket), approve of this’—this, Upāli, is dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order.

“If, Upāli, there are two on one side and two on another and if a fifth speaks out ... two on one side and three on another and if a sixth speaks out ... three on one side and three on another and if a seventh speaks out ... three on one side and four on another and if an eighth speaks out and offers a voting ticket, saying: ‘This is the rule, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction, take this (voting ticket), approve of this’—this, Upāli, is dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order.

Vin.2.204

“If, Upāli, there are four on one side and four on another and a ninth speaks out ... this, Upāli, is dissension in an Order as well as schism in an Order. Dissension in an Order, Upāli, as well as schism in an Order is (due to there being) nine or more than nine.⁶ Upāli, a nun does not split an Order even if she goes forward with a schism⁷... a probationer ... a novice ... a woman novice ... a lay-follower ... a woman lay-follower does not split an Order even if she goes forward with a schism. Only a regular monk, Upāli,

¹ *saṅgharāji*. Cf. Vin.4.37, Vin.4.128, Vin.4.153, Vin.4.217, Vb-a.428, and DUTT, *Early Buddhist Monachism*, p.193ff. Other expressions for differences in the Order occur at e.g. Vin.1.339. There is also *cakkabheda*, “breaking of the concord,” as at Vin.3.171, and above Kd.17.8.14.

² Vin-a.1277, “if there is one on the side (or in the faction or party) of *dhamma*-speakers.”

³ Vin-a.1277, “on the side of non-*dhamma* speakers.” ⁴ Vin-a.1277, “if there is a fourth, a non-*dhamma* speaker, who thinks ‘I will split the Order’.” ⁵ *anussāveti*, not here I think in the technical sense of making a proclamation. Vin-a.1277 says, “fawning, he announces, *sāveti*.”

⁶ Thus for a schism to occur at least nine monks must break off from the main body of the Order. ⁷ Cf. Vin.1.151.

belonging to the same communion, staying within the same boundary, splits an Order.”

“Lord, as to the words:¹ Schism in an Order, schism in an Order—to what extent, Lord, can an Order become split?”

Kd.17.5.2

“As to this, Upāli, monks explain non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*, they explain *dhamma* as non-*dhamma*, they explain non-discipline as discipline, they explain discipline as non-discipline, they explain what was not spoken, not uttered by the Truth-finder as spoken, uttered by the Truth-finder, they explain what was spoken, uttered by the Truth-finder as not spoken, not uttered by the Truth-finder, they explain what was not practised by the Truth-finder as practised by the Truth-finder, they explain what was practised by the Truth-finder as not practised by the Truth-finder, they explain what was not laid down by the Truth-finder as laid down by the Truth-finder, they explain what was laid down by the Truth-finder as not laid down by the Truth-finder, they explain what is no offence as an offence, they explain an offence as no offence, they explain a slight offence as a serious offence, they explain a serious offence as a slight offence, they explain an offence that can be done away with as an offence that cannot be done away with, they explain an offence that cannot be done away with as an offence that can be done away with, they explain a bad offence as not a bad offence, they explain not a bad offence as a bad offence.² These, in regard to these eighteen points draw away and separate (a company),³ they carry out a separate⁴ Observance, they carry out a separate Invitation, they carry out a separate (formal) act of the Order. To this extent, Upāli, does an Order become split.”

BD.5.287

“Lord, as to the words:⁵ Harmony in an Order, harmony in an Order—to what extent, Lord, does an Order come to be harmonious?”

Kd.17.5.3

“As to this, Upāli, monks explain non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma*, they explain *dhamma* as *dhamma* ... they explain not a bad offence as not a bad

¹ Cf. AN.v.73, AN.v.75. ² As at Kd.10.5.4, Kd.10.5.5; Kd.14.14.2, Cf. AN.i.19–AN.i.20. ³ Oldenberg’s text reads *apakāsanti avapakāsanti*, which Vin-a.1280 interprets: they draw over a company, extract it (*vijaṭenti*) and set it up (*ussādentī*) on one side. They make it widely known that they are separated. AN.v.74, AN.v.75 reads *avakassanti vavakassanti* (with variant reading). Cf. AN.iii.145. ⁴ *āveṇi*. Vin-a.1280 gives *visuṃ*. ⁵ Cf. AN.v.74, AN.v.76.

offence. These, in regard to these eighteen points, do not draw away, do not separate (a company), they do not carry out a separate Observance, they do not carry out a separate Invitation, they do not carry out a separate (formal) act of the Order. To this extent, Upāli, an Order comes to be harmonious.”

Kd.17.5.4

“But, Lord,¹ having split² an Order that was harmonious, what does he set up?”

BD.5.288

“Now, Upāli, having split an Order that was harmonious, he sets up demerit that endures for an aeon and he is boiled in hell for an aeon.”³

Vin.2.205

“A schismatic in the Order,
doomed to the Downfall,
to Niraya Hell for an aeon,
To disharmony prone,
standing on non-*dhamma*,
falls away from peace from bondage.
Having split an harmonious Order,
he boils for an aeon in hell.”⁴

“But, Lord,⁵ having united an Order that was split, what does he set up?”

“Now, Upāli, having united an Order that was split,
he sets up sublime merit
and he rejoices in heaven for an aeon.
Blessed is harmony for an Order,
and the friend of those who are harmonious,

“To harmony prone,
standing on *dhamma*,
falls not away from peace from bondage.
Making an Order harmonious,
he rejoices for an aeon in heaven.”⁶

Kd.17.5.5

“Now, could it not be, Lord, that a schismatic in the Order is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, remaining there for an aeon, incurable?”

¹ Cf. AN.v.75. ² *bhinditvā*. AN.v.75 reads *bhetvā* with variant readings *chetvā*, *bhinditvā*.

³ Cf. Kd.17.3.16 for many of these expressions. ⁴ Cf. AN.v.76. ⁵ Cf. AN.v.76. ⁶ Cf. AN.v.76.

“It could be, Upāli, that a schismatic in the Order is doomed to the Downfall ... incurable.”

“But could it be, Lord, that a schismatic in the Order is not doomed to the Downfall, not to Niraya Hell, not remaining there for an aeon, not incurable?”

“It could be, Upāli, that a schismatic in the Order is not doomed to the Downfall ... not incurable.”

“But which (kind of) schismatic in an Order, Lord is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, remaining there for an aeon, incurable?”

“This is a case, Upāli, where a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*; if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is non-*dhamma*, if he has the view that in schism there is non-*dhamma*, misrepresenting opinion, misrepresenting approval, misrepresenting pleasure, misrepresenting intention,¹ and if he speaks out and offers a voting ticket, saying: ‘This is rule, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction; take this (voting ticket), approve of this’—this schismatic in the Order, Upāli, is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, remaining there for an aeon, incurable.

BD.5.289

“And again, Upāli, if a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*, if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is non-*dhamma*, if he has the view that in schism there is *dhamma*, misrepresenting opinion ... incurable.

“And again, Upāli, if he explains non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*, if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is non-*dhamma*, if he is doubtful as to a schism ... if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is *dhamma*, if he has the view that in schism there is non-*dhamma* ... if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is *dhamma*, if he is doubtful as to a schism ... if he is doubtful as to this (explanation), if he has the view that in schism there is non-*dhamma* ... if he is doubtful as to this (explanation), if he has the view that in schism there is *dhamma* ... if he is doubtful as to this (explanation), if he is doubtful as to a schism, misrepresenting opinion ... incurable.”

Kd.17.5.6

“But which (kind of) schismatic in the Order, Lord, is not doomed to the Downfall, nor to Niraya Hell, not remaining there for an aeon, not incurable?”

Vin.2.206

“This is a case, Upāli, where a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *dhamma*;

¹ On these four psychological modalities, see [BD.1.163, n.](#)

if he has the view that in this (explanation) there is *dhamma*, if he has the view that in schism there is *dhamma*, yet not misrepresenting opinion, not misrepresenting approval, not misrepresenting pleasure, not misrepresenting intention, he speaks out and offers a voting ticket, saying, ‘This is rule, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction; take this (voting ticket), approve of this’ — even this schismatic in the Order, Upāli, is not doomed to the Downfall, not doomed to Niraya Hell, not remaining there for an aeon, not incurable.

“And again, Upāli, a monk explains *dhamma* as non-*dhamma* ... explains a not bad offence as a bad offence, but (although) he has the view that in this (explanation) there is *dhamma* the view that in schism there is *dhamma*, yet not misrepresenting opinion ... not incurable.”

Told is the Third Portion for Repeating

Told is the Seventh Section: that on Schism in an Order

THIS IS ITS KEY

In Anupiyā, distinguished, the delicately nurtured one did not want to, ploughing, sowing, leading in, led away, digging up and reaping, Harvesting, making into stooks, threshing and winnowing, sifting, bringing in, the next and they do not stop, fathers and grandfathers. Bhaddiya, Anuruddha and Ānanda, Bhagu, Kimbila, and the Sakyan pride, at Kosambī, he declined, and about Kakudha. He informed against, and a father’s, by a man, Nālāgiri, a triad, five, a serious matter, he splits, and about a grave offence, three, eight, three again, dissension, schism, “Could it not be?”

18. DUTIES (VATTA)

ON THE DUTIES OF VISITORS

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time incoming monks entered the monastery with their sandals on,¹ and they entered the monastery with sunshades up,² and they entered the monastery with their heads muffled up,³ and they entered the monastery having put their robes on their heads, and they washed their feet in the drinking water, and they did not greet the resident monks who were senior nor ask about lodgings. And a certain incoming monk, having unfastened the bolt⁴ of an unoccupied dwelling-place, having opened the door,⁵ entered hastily. A snake fell on to his shoulder from a lintel above; terrified, he uttered a cry of distress. Monks, having run up, spoke thus to that monk: "Why did you, your reverence, utter a cry of distress?" Then this monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "How can these incoming monks enter a monastery with their sandals on ... nor ask about lodgings?" Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

"Is it true, as is said, monks, that incoming monks entered a monastery with their sandals on ... and did not ask about lodgings?"

"It is true, Lord." The Awakened One, the Lord, rebuked them, saying:

"How, monks, can incoming monks enter a monastery with their sandals on ... nor ask about lodgings? It is not, monks, for pleasing those who are

¹ A sign of disrespect, see [Kd.5.12](#) and [Bu-Sk.61](#), [Bu-Sk.62](#). ² See [Kd.15.23.2](#). ³ See [Bu-Sk.23](#), [Bu-Sk.67](#) at the latter of which "head muffled up" is defined. ⁴ *ghaṭikā*, as at [Kd.15.14.3](#), [Kd.16.2.1](#). See also [Vin.3.119](#). ⁵ See [BD.1.199](#), n.3.

not (yet) pleased ... Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

BD.5.292

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance¹ for incoming monks which should be observed by incoming monks.

Kd.18.1.2

Vin.2.208

“Monks, an incoming monk, thinking, ‘I will now enter a monastery,’ having taken off his sandals, having put them down,² having beaten them, having taken them up (again), having lowered his sunshade, having uncovered his head, having put his robe over his shoulder, should enter the monastery carefully and unhurriedly.³ While he is entering the monastery, he should notice where the resident monks have withdrawn to.⁴ Wherever resident monks have withdrawn to—whether to an assembly hall or to a hut or to the root of a tree—having gone there, he should put down his bowl at one side, he should put down his robe at one side, and having taken a suitable seat he should sit down. He should ask about the drinking water, he should ask about the washing water—which the drinking water is, which the washing water. If he wants drinking water, having taken drinking water he should drink; if he wants washing water, having taken washing water he should wash his feet. When he is washing his feet he should sprinkle water (over them) with one hand and wash his feet with the other; but he should not sprinkle water and wash his feet with one and the same hand. Having asked for a piece of cloth to wipe his sandals, he should wipe the sandals. While he is wiping his sandals he should first wipe them with a dry piece of cloth, afterwards with a damp one; having washed the pieces of cloth for wiping the sandals he should spread⁵ them on one side. If a resident monk is senior he should greet him; if he is newly ordained he should make him greet (him). He should ask about lodgings, saying: ‘Which lodging pertains to⁶ me?’ He should ask whether it is occupied or unoccupied. He should ask about resorts for alms,⁷ he should ask about non-resorts for alms,⁸ he

BD.5.293

¹ *vatta*, custom, duty, habit. ² *nīcaṃ katvā* occurs also at [Kd.1.25.11](#), [Kd.1.25.15](#); [Kd.18.4.4](#); [Kd.18.6.2](#). ³ *ataramānena* as at [Vin.1.248](#). ⁴ Vin-a.1281, “have assembled.” ⁵ *vis-sajjetabbarāṃ*. Vin-a.1281, *attharitabbarāṃ*. ⁶ *pāpuṇāti*. Cf. [Kd.6.11.3](#); [Kd.6.21.2](#) for rules for apportioning lodgings. ⁷ *gocara*. Vin-a.1281 says “he should ask about walking for alms thus: Is the village which gives alms, *gocaragāma*, near or far? May one walk for alms early, or during the day?” ⁸ *agocara*. Vin-a.1281 says this is a village of people of wrong views or a village with a limited supply of alms. And he should ask if it is where alms are given to one or two (monks only).

should ask about the families which are agreed upon as learners,¹ he should ask about the privies, he should ask about the drinking water,² he should ask about the water for washing,³ he should ask about a staff, he should ask about (the form of) the Order's agreement, saying: 'What time should it be entered upon, what time should it be departed from?'⁴

Kd.18.1.3

"If the dwelling-place is unoccupied, having knocked at the door, having waited a moment, having unfastened the bolt, having opened the door, he should watch out while standing outside.⁵ If the dwelling-place is soiled or if couch is piled on couch or if chair is piled on chair and lodgings heaped on top of them, he should clear (the dwelling-place) if he is able to do so. While clearing⁶ the dwelling place, having first taken out the ground covering he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the supports for the beds ... having taken out the mattress and the squatting-mat ... the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet, he should lay them to one side. Having lowered the couch, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts he should lay it to one side. Having lowered the chair, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the spittoon, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the reclining board, he should lay it to one side. If there are cobwebs in the dwelling-place, he should first remove them from the (floor-) covering. He should wipe the corners of the window-holes. If a wall that was coloured red becomes stained, he should wipe it having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If ground that was blacked becomes stained, he should wipe it having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If the ground has not been treated, he should sweep it having sprinkled it all over with water, thinking: 'Take care lest the dwelling-place is sullied with dust.' Having looked for (any) rubbish, he should remove it to one side.

Vin.2.209

BD.5.294

Kd.18.1.4

¹ See Bu-Pd.3. ² These questions do not this time refer to finding out which is which but, according to Vin-a.1281, what pond's drinking water it is that they drink, and what washing water it is that they use for bathing and so on. ³ These questions do not this time refer to finding out which is which but, according to Vin-a.1281, what pond's drinking water it is that they drink, and what washing water it is that they use for bathing and so on. ⁴ Cf. Vin.3.160 = Vin.2.76. ⁵ For, according to Vin-a.1281, he may have seen the path of a snake or a non-human creature. ⁶ Rest of this section also at Kd.1.25.15. Kd.18.7.2.

“Having dried the ground-covering in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having brought it back, he should lay it down as it was before.¹ Having dried the supports for the couch in the sun, having wiped them, having brought them back, he should place them as they were before. Having dried the couch in the sun ... the chair in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having lowered it, having brought it back carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, it should be laid down as it was before. Having dried the mattress and the squatting mat in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, they should be laid down as they were before. Having dried the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, they should be laid down as they were before. Having dried the spittoon in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, it should be placed where it was before. Having dried the reclining-board in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, it should be placed where it was before.

Kd.18.1.5

“He should² lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl, having taken the bowl in one hand, having felt with the other under the couch or under the chair, the bowl should be laid aside, but the bowl should not be laid aside on the bare ground. When laying aside the robe, having taken the robe in one hand, having stroked the other hand along the bamboo for robes or along the cord for robes, having got the edges away from him and the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside.

“If dusty winds blow from the east, he should close the eastern windows. If dusty winds blow from the west, he should close the western windows. If dusty winds blow from the north, he should close the northern windows. If dusty winds blow from the south, he should close the southern windows. If the weather is cool, he should open the windows by day, he should close them by night. If the weather is warm, he should close the windows by day, he should open them by night.

BD.5.295

“If a cell is soiled, the cell should be swept. If a porch is soiled, the porch should be swept. If an attendance-hall ... if a fire-hall ... if a privy is soiled, the privy should be swept. If there is no drinking water, drinking water

Vin.2.210

¹ *yathābhāgarī*. ² See also [Kd.1.25.11](#); [Kd.18.7.3](#).

should be provided. If there is no water for washing, water for washing should be provided. If there is no water in the pitcher of water for rinsing, water should be tipped into the pitcher of water for rinsing. This, monks, is the observance for incoming monks that is to be observed by incoming monks.”

ON THE DUTIES OF RESIDENTS

Now at that time resident monks, having seen incoming monks, neither appointed a seat nor brought forward water for the feet, a footstool, a footstand, nor, having gone to meet them, did they receive their bowls and robes, they did not offer drinking water, they did not greet the senior incoming monks, nor appoint lodgings. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these resident monks, having seen incoming monks, neither appoint a seat ... nor appoint lodgings?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.18.2.1

“Is it true, as is said, monks ...?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well now, monks, I will lay down an observance for resident monks that should be observed by resident monks.

Kd.18.2.2

“Monks, when a resident monk has seen an incoming monk who is senior, he should appoint a seat, he should bring forward water for the feet, a footstool, a footstand, having gone to meet him he should receive his bowl and robe, he should offer him drinking water, and if he is able he should wipe his sandals. When he is wiping his sandals, he should first wipe them with a dry piece of cloth, afterwards with a damp one; having washed the pieces of cloth for wiping the sandals he should spread them on one side. An incoming monk should be greeted and a lodging appointed with the words, ‘This lodging pertains to you.’ He should explain whether it is occupied or unoccupied, the alms resorts should be explained, the non-alms resorts ... the families agreed upon as learners ... the privies ... the drinking water ... the washing water ... the staff ... the form of the Order’s agreement should

BD.5.296

be explained with the words, ‘This is the time to enter upon it, this is the time to depart from it.’

Vin.2.211
Kd.18.2.3

“If it is a newly ordained monk (who is incoming) then (the resident one) sitting down should explain: ‘Put aside your bowl in this place, put aside your robe in this place, sit on this seat.’ The drinking water should be explained (to him), the water for washing should be explained, the pieces of cloth for wiping the sandals should be explained. And incoming monks should be made to greet (him). The lodgings should be explained to him with the words, ‘This lodging pertains to you.’ He should explain whether it is occupied or unoccupied, alms resorts should be explained ... (the form of) the Order’s agreement should be explained with the words, ‘This is the time to enter upon it, this is the time to depart from it.’ This, monks, is the observance for resident monks that should be observed by resident monks.”

ON THE DUTIES OF TRAVELLERS

Kd.18.3.1

Now at that time monks who were going away set out without having packed away their wooden goods and clay goods, having opened the doors and windows, and without having asked (for permission) as to their lodgings.¹ The wooden goods and the clay goods were lost and the lodgings came to be unguarded.² Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these monks who are going away set out ... lodgings came to be unguarded?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for monks who are going away and which should be observed by monks who are going away.

Kd.18.3.2

“Monks, when a monk is going away, having packed away his wooden goods, his clay goods, having closed the doors and windows, he may set out having asked (for permission) as to his lodgings. If there is no monk, he should ask a novice (for permission).³ If there is no novice, he should ask a monastery attendant (for permission). If there is no monk or novice or monastery attendant, having laid a couch down on four stones,⁴ having

BD.5.297

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.14, Bu-Pc.15, and see BD.2.238, n.4. ² *agutta*, as were dwelling-places at Kd.16.2.1.

³ Cf. Bu-Pc.14.2.1; Bu-Pc.15.2.1. ⁴ As a protection from white ants.

piled couch on couch, having piled chair on chair, having made the lodgings into a heap on top¹ (of them), he may set out having packed away the wooden goods the clay goods, having closed the doors and windows.

Kd.18.3.3

“If the dwelling-place is leaking he should roof it if he is able to do so, or he should make an effort, thinking, ‘How then can this dwelling-place be roofed?’ If he thus succeeds in this, that is good, but if he does not succeed, having laid down a couch on four stones in a place where it is not leaking, having piled couch on couch, having piled chair on chair, having made the lodgings into a heap on top (of them), he may set out, having packed away his wooden goods, his clay goods, having closed the doors and windows. If the whole dwelling-place is leaking, if he is able he should convey the lodgings to a village, or he should make an effort, thinking, ‘How then can this lodging be conveyed to a village?’ If he thus succeeds in this, that is good. If he does not succeed, having laid a couch down on four stones in the open air, having piled couch on couch, having piled chair on chair, having made the lodgings into a heap on top (of them), having packed away his wooden goods, his clay goods, having covered them with grass or leaves, he may set out, thinking, ‘So can the different things surely remain.’² This, monks, is the observance for monks who are going away and which should be observed by monks who are going away.”

Vin.2.212

ON THE DUTIES OF EXPRESSING APPRECIATION

Now at that time monks did not give thanks in a refectory. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these recluses, sons of the Sakyans, not give thanks in a refectory?” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, to give thanks in a refectory.” Then it occurred to the monks: “Now, by whom should thanks be given in a refectory?” They

Kd.18.4.1

BD.5.298

¹ *uparipuñjam karitvā*; above, in corresponding passage [Kd.18.1.3](#) *uparipuñjakita*. ² *app’ eva nāma aṅgāni pi seseyyūṃ*. Vin-a.1282 reads *seyyūṃ*, with variant reading *seseyyūṃ*, and says that the advantage of leaving things in the open air is that the parts of beds and chairs are not destroyed by grass and lumps of clay falling on them from above as happens in a leaking house.

told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, to give thanks in a refectory through a monk who is an elder.”

Now at that time a certain guild had food for an Order;¹ the venerable Sāriputta was the elder in the Order. Monks, thinking, ‘The Lord has allowed thanks to be given in a refectory through a monk who is an elder,’ departed, leaving the venerable Sāriputta alone. Then the venerable Sāriputta, having returned thanks to these people, later went away alone. The Lord saw the venerable Sāriputta coming in the distance; seeing him, he spoke thus to the venerable Sāriputta: “I hope, Sāriputta, that the meal was successful?”²

“The meal, Lord, was successful, even though the monks departed leaving me alone.” Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, four or five monks who are elders or next (in age) to the elders³ to wait in a refectory.”

Now at that time a certain elder waited in a refectory although he wanted to relieve himself, and through restraining himself he fell down fainting. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, if there is a reason, to go away, having asked (permission from) the monk immediately next⁴ (to you).”

ON DUTIES IN THE REFECTORY

Kd.18.4.2

Vin.2.213

Now at that time the group of six monks, wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, improperly attired,⁵ went into a refectory and turning aside went in close in front of monks who were elders, and sat down encroaching on⁶ (the space intended for) the elders and kept newly ordained monks from a seat

¹ Cf. [Kd.15.5.2](#). ² *iddha*, as in Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.56](#), there rendered “effective.” ³ *therānuthera*. At [Vin-a.1283](#), [Dhp-a.ii.211](#) *anuthera* appears to be in opposition to *mahāthera* and *saṅghathera*, and at [Dhp-a.iii.412](#) to *mahāthera*. ⁴ *ānantarika bhikkhu*, as at [Kd.8.4.8](#); [Kd.16.10.1](#); [Kd.17.3.9](#) and [Vin.4.234](#). ⁵ As at [Vin.1.44](#). ⁶ *anupakhajja*, as at [Bu-Pc.16](#), [Bu-Pc.43](#). See [BD.2.247, n.3](#). This expression and the next also occur at [Kd.1.25.13](#).

and sat down amid the houses having spread out their outer cloaks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the group of six monks, wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, improperly attired, go into a refectory ... sit down encroaching on ... and sit down amid the houses having spread out their outer cloaks?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.299

“Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, wrongly dressed ... having spread out their outer cloaks?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, I will lay down a refectory observance for monks and which should be observed by monks in a refectory.

Kd.18.4.3

“If the time is announced in a monastery, (a monk), having dressed with the inner robe all round him for covering the three circles,¹ having tied on his waistband, having made one bundle,² having clothed himself in his upper robes, having fastened the block,³ having washed, having taken a bowl, he may enter a village carefully and unhurriedly. He should not, turning aside, go in close in front of monks who are elders, he should go (sit down) amid the houses properly clad,⁴ well controlled should he go (sit down) amid the houses, with eyes cast down should he go (sit down) amid the houses, not lifting up the robes ... not with loud laughter ... with little noise ... not swaying the body ... not swaying the arms ... not swaying the head ... not with the arms akimbo ... not muffled up should he go (sit down) amid the houses, he should not go amid the houses crouching down on his heels, he should not go amid the houses lolling, he should not sit down amid the houses encroaching (on the space intended) for monks who are elders, newly ordained monks should not be kept from a seat, he should not sit down amid the houses having spread out his outer cloak.

Kd.18.4.4

“When water is being given out, having grasped the bowl with both

BD.5.300

¹ Bu-Sk.1. Many of *Sekhiyas* Bu-Sk.1–Bu-Sk.26 recur here. For notes, see BD.3.120ff.

² *saguṇaṃ katvā*. Cf. Kd.1.25.9. ³ *gaṇṭhikā*, as at Kd.15.29.3. ⁴ The items from here to “lolling” are the same as those occurring at Bu-Sk.1–Bu-Sk.26.

hands,¹ the water should be received I having put it down carefully² the bowl should be washed without rubbing it. If there is a receiver of (used) water, having put the bowl down, the water should be sprinkled into a waste-tub³ thinking, 'Be careful not to splash the receiver of (used) water with the water, not to splash the neighbouring monks with the water, not to splash the outer cloak with water.' If there is no receiver of (used) water, having put down the bowl, the water should be sprinkled on to the ground, thinking, 'Be careful not to splash the neighbouring monks with water nor to splash the outer cloak with water.' If cooked rice is being given, having grasped the bowl with both hands, the cooked rice should be received. Room should be left for the curry. If there is ghee or oil or tit-bits an elder should say: 'Obtain the same for all.' Almsfood should be received attentively⁴ ... thinking of the bowl ... with equal curry, almsfood should be received at an equal level. The elder should not eat until the cooked rice has been served to all.

Vin.2.214

Kd.18.4.5

"Almsfood should be eaten attentively⁵. For notes see *BD.3.128ff.* ... thinking of the bowl ... on continuous almsround ... with equal curry ... not having chosen from the top; neither the curry nor the condiment should be covered up with cooked rice, (the monk) desiring something more; neither the curry nor the cooked rice should be eaten by one who is not ill having asked for it for himself; others' bowls should not be looked at captious-mindedly; too large a mouthful should not be made up; pieces (of food) should be made up into a round; the door of the face should not be opened if the mouthful is not brought close; while eating, the whole hand should not be put into the mouth; one should not talk with a mouthful in the mouth; one should not eat tossing up balls (of food); one should not eat breaking up the mouthfuls ... stuffing the cheeks ... shaking the hands about ... scattering lumps of boiled rice ... putting out the tongue ... smacking the lips ... making a hissing sound ... licking the fingers ... licking the bowl ... licking the lips, one should not accept a drinking cup with a hand (soiled) with

BD.5.301

¹ According to Vin-a.1284, the water is being given for washing the bowl, as is clear from the context. More water is apparently given after the meal for again washing the bowl, see *Kd.18.4.6* below. ² Vin-a.1284 says without making the sound of water. ³ *paṭig-gaha*, as at *Kd.15.10.3*. ⁴ Cf. *Bu-Sk.27-Bu-Sk.30*. ⁵ The items in this paragraph occur at *Bu-Sk.31-Bu-Sk.55*.

food.

“An elder should not accept water¹ until everyone has eaten. When the water is being given, having grasped the bowl in both hands ...² ‘... nor to splash the outer cloak with water.’ One should not throw out amidst the houses rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice.³ When they are returning,⁴ newly ordained monks should return first, afterwards the elders. One should go properly clad amid the houses, well controlled should one go amid the houses ...⁵ ... one should not go amid the houses crouching down on the heels. This, monks, is the refectory observance for monks and which monks should observe in a refectory.”

Kd.18.4.6

Vin.2.215

The First Portion for Repeating

ON DUTIES FOR THOSE GOING ON ALMSROUND

Now at that time monks who walked for almsfood walked for almsfood wrongly dressed, wrongly clothed, improperly attired, and they entered a dwelling without deliberation and they left without deliberation, and they entered very hastily and they left very hastily, and they stood too far away and they stood too close, and they stood too long and they turned away too soon. And a certain monk who was walking for almsfood entered a dwelling without deliberation; taking (a doorway) for the house-door, he entered an inner chamber. In that inner chamber a woman was lying naked on her back. That monk saw that woman lying naked on her back; seeing her, he thought: “This is not the house-door, this is an inner chamber,” and he went away from that inner chamber. That woman’s husband saw that woman lying naked on her back: seeing her, he thought: “My wife has been seduced by that monk,” and having seized that monk, he thrashed him. Then that woman, waking up at the noise, spoke thus to that man: “Why are you, master, thrashing this monk?”

BD.5.302

“You were seduced by this monk.”

¹ Vin-a.1284 says water for washing the hands is meant here. ² As in Kd.18.4.4 above.

³ Bu-Sk.56. ⁴ I.e. leaving the refectory, rising from it, so Vin-a.1284. ⁵ As in Kd.18.4.3.

“I was not, master, seduced by this monk. This monk is innocent,”¹ and she made him let go of that monk. Then that monk, having gone back to the monastery, told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can these monks who walk for almsfood walk for almsfood wrongly dressed ... enter ... depart ... stand ... and turn away too soon?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks ...?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for monks when they are walking for almsfood and which should be observed by monks when they are walking for almsfood.

Kd.18.5.2

“Monks, if a monk when he is walking for almsfood thinks: ‘I will enter this village,’ having dressed himself² with his inner robe all round him so as to cover the three circles, having fastened his waistband, having made one bundle, having clothed himself in his upper robes, having fastened the block, having washed, having taken a bowl, he may enter the village carefully and unhurriedly. He should go amid the houses properly clad ...

Vin.2.216

he should not go amid the houses crouching down on his heels. When he is going amid the houses he should consider: ‘I will enter in this (fashion), I will leave in this.’ He should not enter too hastily, he should not leave too hastily, he should not stand too far away, he should not stand too close, he should not stand too long, he should not turn away too soon. While he is standing, he should consider: ‘Are they willing to give alms or are they not willing?’ If she puts aside her work³ or rises from her seat or wipes a spoon or wipes a dish or sets it out, he should stand still, thinking: ‘It is as though she is willing to give.’ When alms are being given, having raised the outer cloak with the left hand, having uncovered the bowl with the right hand, having grasped the bowl with both hands, the alms should be received, but

BD.5.303

¹ Cf. the incident related in Bu-Pc.67. ² As at Kd.18.4.3. ³ Vin-a.1285 says “whether she is standing or sitting at her work—cotton or winnowing or grinding—she puts aside whatever it may be that she has chosen.” Vin-a.1285 reads *nikkhipanti*, they put aside, with variant reading *nikkhipati*. The work mentioned seems to suggest women’s work; but below, the donor of the almsfood may be a woman or a man.

one should not look at the face of the donor of the alms.¹ He should consider: 'Are they willing to give curry or are they not willing?' If she wipes a spoon or wipes a dish or sets it out, he should stand still, thinking: 'It is as though she is willing to give'. When the alms have been given, having covered the bowl with the outer cloak, one should turn away carefully and unhurriedly. One should go amid the houses properly clad ... one should not go amid the houses crouching down on one's heels.

Kd.18.5.3

"Whoever returns first from the village for almsfood should make ready a seat, he should bring forward water for (washing) the feet, a footstool, a footstand, he should set out a refuse bowl, having washed it, he should set out drinking water and water for washing. Whoever should return last from the village for almsfood,² if there should be the remains of a meal and if he should so desire, he may eat them; but if he should not so desire, he may throw them away where there is but little green grass or he may drop them into water where there are no living creatures. He should put up the seat, he should put away the water for (washing) the feet, the footstool, the footstand, he should put away the refuse-bowl, having washed it, he should put away the drinking water and the water for washing, he should sweep the refectory. Whoever should see a vessel for drinking water or a vessel for washing water or a vessel (for water) for rinsing after evacuation, void and empty, should set out (water). If it is impossible for him (to do this) he should set out (water) by signalling with his hand, having invited a companion (to help him) by a movement of his hand; but he should not for such a reason break into speech. This, monks, is the observance for monks when they are walking for almsfood and which should be observed by monks when they are walking for almsfood."

ON DUTIES FOR FOREST DWELLERS

Now at that time several monks were living in a forest. They neither set out drinking water, nor did they set out water for washing, nor did they

Kd.18.6.1

BD.5.304

Vin.2.217

¹ Vin-a.1285 says that the donor may be a woman or a man. One is not to look at his face at the time when the alms are being given. ² As at Vin.1.157, etc.

set out a fire,¹ nor did they set out kindling wood,² they did not know the positions of the lunar mansions, they did not know the divisions of the quarters. Thieves, having gone there, spoke thus to these monks: “Is there drinking water, honoured sirs?”

“There is not, friends.”

“Is there water for washing ... Is there a fire ... Is there kindling wood, honoured sirs?”

“There is not, friends.”

“What is there a conjunction with today, honoured sirs?”

“Indeed, we do not know, friends.”

“Which quarter is this, honoured sirs?”

“Indeed, we do not know, friends.” Then these thieves thought: “These have no drinking water nor water for washing, there is no fire, there is no kindling wood, they do not know the positions of the lunar mansions, they do not know the divisions of the quarters. These are thieves, these are not monks,’ and having thrashed them, they departed. Then these monks told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for monks who are forest-dwellers and which should be observed by monks who are forest-dwellers.

Kd.18.6.2

“Monks, a monk who is a forest-dweller, getting up early, having placed his bowl in a bag, having hung it on his shoulder, having arranged his robe³ over his shoulder, having put on his sandals, having packed away the wooden goods, the clay goods, having closed the doors and windows, may leave⁴ his lodgings. If he thinks: ‘Now I will enter a village,’ having taken off his sandals, having put them down, having beaten them, having placed them in a bag, having hung it on his shoulder, having dressed himself all round covering the three circles, having fastened his waistband ... (as in **Kd.18.5.2**) ... he should turn away carefully and unhurriedly. He should

BD.5.305

¹ Cf. **Bu-Pc.56** where it is an offence for a monk to kindle a fire to warm himself.

² *araṇisaḥita*. See **BD.3.88, n.5**, and *Vinaya Texts* iii.292, n.2. ³ *cīvara*, not specified here as “outer cloak”. ⁴ *senāsana otaritabbaṃ*. *Vin-a.1285* says *vasanaṭṭhānato nikkhamitabbaṃ*, should depart from the place where he was staying.

go amid the houses properly clad ... he should not go amid the houses crouching down on his heels.

“Having set out from the village, having placed his bowl in the bag, having hung it on his shoulder, having rolled up his robe, having placed it on his head,¹ having put on his sandals, he should go along. Monks, a monk who is a forest-dweller should set out drinking water, he should set out water for washing, he should set out a fire, he should set out kindling wood, he should set out a walking staff,² he should learn the positions of the lunar mansions, either the whole or one part, he should become skilled in the quarters. This, monks, is the observance for monks who are forest-dwellers and which should be observed by monks who are forest-dwellers.”

Kd.18.6.3

ON DUTIES REGARDING LODGINGS

Now at that time several monks were making robes in the open air. The group of six monks beat their lodgings to windward (of them) and in the open space;³ the monks were covered with dust. Those who were modest monks looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks beat their lodgings ... so that monks are covered with dust?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks beat their lodgings ... covered with dust?”

Kd.18.7.1

Vin.2.218

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for monks in respect of lodgings that should be observed by monks in respect of lodgings.

Kd.18.7.2

“In whatever dwelling-place he is staying, if that dwelling-place is soiled, he should, if he is able, clean it.⁴ When he is cleaning the dwelling-place, having first taken out the bowl and robes, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the piece of cloth for to sit upon and the sheet ... the mat-

BD.5.306

¹ See Kd.8.13.1. ² *kattaraṇḍa*. See Kd.5.6.2 and Vin.2.76, Vin.2.208. ³ *aṅgaṇa*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.295, n.1 say that this is “a part of the *ārāma* immediately in front of the hut or *vihāra*, which is kept as an open space, and daily swept ... The term is a common one, and its meaning is not doubtful.” ⁴ Cf. this passage with Kd.1.25.14, Kd.1.25.15, Kd.18.1.3. See BD.4.63, BD.4.64 for notes.

tress and squatting mat, he should lay them to one side. Having lowered the couch, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it to one side. Having lowered the chair, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the supports for the couch, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the spittoon, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the reclining board, he should lay it to one side. Having observed how the ground covering was laid down, having taken it out, he should lay it to one side. If there are cobwebs in the dwelling-place, he should first remove them from the (floor-) covering. He should wipe the corners of the window-holes. If a wall that was coloured red becomes stained, he should wipe it having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If ground that was blacked becomes stained, he should wipe it having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If the ground was not treated, he should sweep it; having sprinkled it all over with water, thinking: 'Take care lest the dwelling-place is sullied with dust.' Having looked for (any) rubbish, he should remove it to one side. He should not beat the lodgings near monks ... near dwelling-places ... near drinking-water ... near water for washing, he should not beat the lodgings to windward in the open space, he should beat the lodgings to leeward.

Kd.18.7.3

"Having dried the ground-covering to one side in the sun,¹ having cleaned it, having shaken it, having brought it back, he should lay it down as it was laid down (before). Having dried the supports for the couch to one side in the sun, having wiped them, having brought them back, he should place them where they were (before). Having dried the couch to one side in the sun, having cleaned it, having beaten it, having lowered it, having brought it back carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it down as it was laid down (before). Having dried the chair to one side in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having lowered it, having brought it back carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it down as it was laid down (before). Having dried the mattress and the squatting mat to one side in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them

Vin.2.219

BD.5.307

¹ Cf. Kd.1.25.16; Kd.18.1.4.

back, he should lay them down as they were laid down (before). Having dried the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet to one side in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, he should lay them down as they were laid down (before). Having dried the spittoon to one side in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was (before). Having dried the reclining board to one side in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was (before). The bowl and robe should be laid aside.¹ When he is laying aside the bowl, having taken the bowl in one hand, having felt with the other hand under the couch or under the chair, the bowl should be laid aside; but the bowl should not be laid aside on the bare ground. When he is laying aside the robe, having taken the robe in one hand, having stroked the other along the bamboo for robes or the cord for robes, having got the edges away from him and the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside.

Kd.18.7.4

“If dusty winds² blow from the east, the eastern windows should be closed. If dusty winds blow from the west ... from the north ... from the south, the south windows should be closed. If the weather is cool, the windows should be opened during the day, closed at night. If the weather is warm, the windows should be closed during the day, opened at night. If a cell is soiled, the cell should be swept. If a porch is soiled, the porch should be swept. If an attendance-hall ... a fire-hall ... a privy is soiled, the privy should be swept. If there is no drinking water, drinking water should be provided. If there is no water for washing, water for washing should be provided. If there is no water in the pitcher of water for rinsing, water should be poured into the pitcher of water for rinsing. If he is staying in a dwelling-place together with a senior, he should not give a recitation³ without asking the senior (for permission), he should not give the interrogation, he should not study, he should not speak *dhamma*,⁴ he should not light a lamp, he should not extinguish a lamp, he should not open windows, he should not close windows. If he is pacing up and down in the same place for pacing up and down in with a senior, he should turn when the senior

BD.5.308

Vin.2.220

¹ Cf. Kd.1.25.11. ² Cf. Kd.1.25.18, Kd.1.25.19, etc. ³ Cf. Kd.1.26.1; Kd.1.32.1; Kd.1.37.6, and Vin.4.15. ⁴ As above; and see definition of *dhamma* at Vin.4.15 = Vin.4.22 = Vin.4.200.

turns, but he should not touch the senior (even) with a corner of his outer cloak. This, monks, is the observance for monks in respect of lodgings that should be observed by monks in respect of lodgings.”

ON DUTIES IN THE SAUNA

Kd.18.8.1

Now at that time the group of six monks, being hindered in (their use of a) bathroom by monks who were elders, having brought, out of disrespect, a quantity of sticks, having made a fire, having closed the doorway, sat down in the doorway. The monks, overcome by the heat, not being able to get through the doorway, fell down fainting. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks, being hindered (in their use of a) bathroom by monks who are elders ... sit down in the doorway, so that monks ... fell down fainting?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks, being hindered in (their use of a) bathroom by monks who are elders ... sat down in the doorway so that monks ... fell down fainting?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, on being hindered in (your use of) a bathroom by monks who are elders, having out of disrespect brought a quantity of sticks, a fire should not be made. Whoever should make one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. And nor, monks, having closed a doorway, should you sit down in the doorway. Whoever should (so) sit down, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

Kd.18.8.2

“On account of this, monks, I will lay down an observance for monks as to a bathroom and which should be observed by monks in a bathroom. Whoever goes first to a bathroom, if ashes have accumulated, should throw out the ashes. If the bathroom is soiled, the bathroom should be swept. If the flooring¹ ... cell ... the porch ... the hall in the bathroom is soiled, the hall in the bathroom should be swept. Chunam should be kneaded, clay should be moistened, water should be poured into the water-jar. On

BD.5.309

¹ *paribhaṇḍa*. It is doubtful whether Buddhaghosa has understood this term: he explains it by *bahi jaggati*, he lies awake outside, Vin-a.1286.

entering the bathroom, having smeared the face with clay, having covered oneself front and back, one may enter the bathroom. One should not sit down so as to encroach on (the space intended for) monks who are elders, nor should newly ordained monks be turned away from a seat.¹ If one is able, a treatment should be done in the bathroom for monks who are elders. On leaving the bathroom, having taken the chair for the bathroom and having covered oneself front and back, one may leave the bathroom. If one is able, a treatment should also be done in the water for the monks who are elders. One should not bathe before the monks who are elders, nor should one bathe above them. Way should be made by one who has bathed and is getting out (of the water) for those who are getting into it. Whoever leaves the bathroom last, if the bathroom is swampy, he should wash it. Having washed the tub for the clay, having put away the chair for the bathroom, having extinguished the fire, having closed the door, he may depart. This, monks, is the observance for monks as to a bathroom and which should be observed by monks in a bathroom.”

Vin.2.221

ON DUTIES IN THE TOILET

Now at that time a certain monk who had been born a brahmin, having relieved himself, did not want to rinse, thinking: “Who would touch this foul evil smell?” A worm remained in his rectum. Then this monk told this matter to the monks. They said: “But did you, your reverence, not rinse after relieving yourself?” “No, your reverences.” Those who were modest monks ... spread it about ... Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, that you, monk, did not rinse after relieving yourself?” “It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Kd.18.9.1

BD.5.310

“Monks, if there is water you should not not rinse after relieving yourselves. Whoever should not rinse, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks relieved themselves in the privy according to seniority. Newly ordained monks, having arrived first, waited and through

Kd.18.10.1

¹ Cf. Kd.1.25.12, Kd.1.25.13.

restraining themselves, they fell down fainting.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks?” “It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, you should not relieve yourselves in a privy according to seniority. Whoever does (this), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, you monks, to relieve yourselves according to the order of arrival.”

Kd.18.10.2

Now at that time the group of six monks entered a privy very hastily and they entered forcibly² and they relieved themselves while groaning³ and while chewing toothwood and outside the proper vessels and they spat into a vessel and they scraped themselves with a rough piece of wood and they dropped a piece of wood for scraping into a cesspool; and they left very hastily and they left forcibly and they rinsed smacking their lips and they left water in the saucer for rinsing (-water). Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks enter a privy very hastily ... and leave water in the saucer for rinsing (-water)?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks?” “It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.2.222

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance in respect of privies and which is to be observed by monks in privies.

Kd.18.10.3

BD.5.311

“Whoever goes to a privy, standing outside should cough, and the one sitting inside should cough too. Having laid aside the robe on a bamboo for robes or on a cord for robes, one should enter the privy carefully and unhurriedly. One should not enter too hastily, one should not enter forcibly, one should stand firmly on the privy shoes. One should not relieve oneself while groaning ... you should not drop a piece of wood for scraping into a cesspool. You should get rid of it while standing on the privy shoes. You should not depart too quickly, nor forcibly. You should stand firmly on the rinsing shoes. You should not rinse smacking your lips, you should not leave water in the saucer for rinsing (-water). You should get rid of it while standing on the rinsing shoes. If the privy is dirty it should be washed. If the

¹ Cf. Kd.18.4.1. ² *ubbhujitvā*, as at Vin.3.40. ³ *nitthunantā*. Or is this “spitting”?

receptacle for (wood for) scraping is full, the pieces of wood for scraping should be thrown away. If the privy is soiled, it should be swept. If the plaster flooring ... if the cell ... if the porch is soiled the porch should be swept. If there is no water in the vessel for rinsing-water, water should be tipped into it. This, monks, is the observance for monks in respect of privies and which should be observed by monks in respect of privies.”

ON DUTIES TO THE PRECEPTOR

Now at that time those who shared cells did not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these who share cells not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that those who share cells do not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors?” “It is true, Lord.” The Awakened One, the Lord rebuked them, saying:

Kd.18.11.1

“How, monks, can those who share cells not conduct themselves properly towards their preceptors? It is not, monks ...” And having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

Vin.2.223

“Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for those who share cells towards their preceptors and which should be observed by those who share cells towards their preceptors:

“The one who shares a cell,¹ monks, should conduct himself properly towards the preceptor. This is the proper conduct in this respect: having got up early, having taken off his sandals, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, he should give toothwood, he should give water for rinsing the mouth, he should make ready a seat. If there is conje, having washed a bowl, the conje should be placed near (the preceptor). When he has drunk the conje, having given him water, having received the bowl, having lowered it, having washed it properly without rubbing it, it should be put away. When the preceptor has got up, the seat should be removed. If that place is soiled, that place should be swept.

Kd.18.11.2

BD.5.312

Kd.18.11.3

¹ From here to the end of Kd.18.11.2 see Kd.1.25.8-Kd.1.25.24, and for notes see BD.4.59ff.

“If the preceptor wishes to enter a village, his inner clothing should be given (to him), the inner clothing (that he is wearing) should be received (from him) in return, the waistband should be given (to him); having folded them (into two or four folds), the outer robes are to be given (to him); having washed it, a bowl with water is to be given (to him). If the preceptor desires an attendant, (the latter) having put on his inner robe all round so as to cover the three circles, having bound on the waistband, having folded them, and having dressed in the outer robes, having fastened the ties, having washed, having taken a bowl, should be the preceptor’s attendant. He should not walk too far away (from him), he should not walk too close. He should receive the bowl and its contents.

Kd.18.11.4

“He should not interrupt the preceptor when he is speaking. (But) if the preceptor is bordering on an offence, then, speaking himself, he should warn him. When he is returning, he should make ready a seat, having come back first; he should set out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand; having gone to meet him, he should receive his bowl and robe, he should give back the inner clothing (given) in return, he should receive his inner clothing. If a robe is damp with perspiration, he should dry it for a short time in the sun’s warmth, but a robe should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should fold up the robe. When folding up the robe, having made the corners turn back four finger-breadths, he should fold up the robe, thinking ‘Mind there is no crease in the middle.’ The waistband should be placed in a fold (of the robe). If there is almsfood and the preceptor wishes to eat, having given him water, almsfood should be placed near (him).

Kd.18.11.5

BD.5.313

“He should offer the preceptor drinking-water. When he has eaten, having given him water, having received the bowl, having lowered it, having washed it properly without rubbing it, having emptied out the water, he should dry it for a short time in the sun’s warmth, but a bowl should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl, having taken the bowl in one hand, having felt with the other hand under the couch or under the chair, the bowl should be laid aside, but the bowl should not be laid aside on the bare ground. When laying aside a robe, having taken the robe in one hand, having stroked the other hand along the bamboo for robes or along the cord for robes, having

Vin.2.224

got the edges away from him and the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside. When the preceptor has got up, the seat should be removed, the water for washing the feet, the foot-stool, the foot-stand should be put away. If that place comes to be soiled that place should be swept.

Kd.18.11.6

“If the preceptor wishes to bathe, he should prepare a bath. If he wants a cold (bath), he should prepare a cold one; if he wants a hot (bath), he should prepare a hot one. If the preceptor wishes to enter a bathroom, he should knead chunam, should moisten clay; taking a chair for the bathroom, having gone close behind the preceptor, having given him the chair for the bathroom, having received his robe he should lay it to one side. He should give him the chunam, he should give him the clay. If he is able to do so, he should enter the bathroom. When he is entering the bathroom, having smeared his face with clay, having covered himself front and back, he should enter the bathroom.

Kd.18.11.7

“He should not sit down so as to encroach upon (the space intended for) monks who are elders. He should not keep newly ordained monks from a seat. He should make preparation for the preceptor in a bathroom. When he is leaving the bathroom, taking the chair for the bathroom, having covered himself front and back, he should leave the bathroom. He should also make preparation for the preceptor in the water. When he is bathing, having come out of the water (first), having dried his own body, having put on his inner robe, he should wipe off the water from the preceptor’s limbs, he should give him his inner clothing, he should give him his outer cloak; taking the chair for the bathroom, having come back first, he should make ready a seat, he should put out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand. He should offer the preceptor drinking-water.

BD.5.314

Kd.18.11.8

“If he wishes to make him recite, he should make him recite. If he wishes to interrogate, he should be interrogated. In whatever dwelling-place the preceptor is staying, if that dwelling-place is soiled, it should be cleaned if he is able (to do so). When he is cleaning the dwelling-place, having first taken out the bowl and robes, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the mattress and the squatting-mat, he should lay them to one side.

Kd.18.11.9

Vin.2.225 “Having lowered the couch, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it to one side. Having lowered the chair, having taken it out carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the supports for the couch, he should lay them to one side. Having taken out the spittoon, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the reclining-board, he should lay it to one side. Having taken out the ground-covering, having observed how it was laid down, he should lay it to one side. If there come to be cobwebs in the dwelling-place, he should first remove them from the (floor-) covering; he should wipe the corners of the window-holes. If a wall that was coloured red comes to be stained, he should wipe it, having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If ground that was blacked becomes stained, he should wipe it, having moistened a rag, having wrung it out. If the ground did not come to be treated, he should sweep it, having sprinkled it all over with water, thinking: ‘Take care lest the dwelling-place is sullied with dust’. Having looked for (any) rubbish, he should remove it to one side.

Kd.18.11.10

“Having dried the ground-covering in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having brought it back, he should lay it down as it was laid down before. Having dried the supports for the couch in the sun, having wiped them, having brought them back, he should place them where they were before. Having dried the couch in the sun, ... the chair in the sun, having cleaned it, having shaken it, having lowered it, having brought it back carefully without rubbing it, without knocking it against the door or the posts, he should lay it down as it was laid down before. Having dried the mattress and the squatting mat in the sun ... having dried the piece of cloth to sit upon and the sheet in the sun, having cleaned them, having shaken them, having brought them back, he should lay them down as they were laid down before. Having dried the spittoon in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was before. Having dried the reclining-board in the sun, having wiped it, having brought it back, he should place it where it was before.

BD.5.315

Kd.18.11.11

“He should lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl ... (as in [Kd.18.11.5](#)) ... When laying aside a robe ... the fold towards him, the

robe should be laid aside.

“If dusty winds blow from the east, he should close the eastern windows. If dusty winds blow from the west ... the north ... from the south, he should close the southern windows. If the weather is cool, he should open the windows by day, he should close them at night. If the weather is warm, he should close the windows by day, he should open them at night.

Kd.18.11.12

Vin.2.226

“If a cell is soiled, the cell should be swept. If a porch ... an attendance-hall ... a fire-hall ... a privy is soiled, the privy should be swept. If there is no drinking-water, drinking-water should be provided. If there is no water for washing, water for washing should be provided. If there is no water in the pitcher of water for rinsing, water should be tipped into the pitcher of water for rinsing.

Kd.18.11.13

“If dissatisfaction has arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares his cell should allay it or get another to allay it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If remorse has arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares the cell should dispel it or get another to dispel it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If wrong views have arisen in the preceptor, the one who shares his cell should dissuade him (from them) or get another to dissuade him (from them), or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*.

Kd.18.11.14

“If the preceptor has committed an offence against an important rule and deserves probation, the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order grant the preceptor probation?’ If the preceptor deserves to be sent back to the beginning, the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order send the preceptor back to the beginning?’ If the preceptor deserves *mānatta* (discipline), the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order inflict *mānatta* (discipline) on the preceptor?’ If the preceptor deserves rehabilitation, the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order rehabilitate the preceptor?’

Kd.18.11.15
BD.5.316

“If the Order desires to carry out a (formal) act against the preceptor—one of censure or one of guidance or one of banishment or one of reconciliation or one of suspension—the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order not carry out a (formal) act against the preceptor, or change it to a lighter one?’ Yet if a (for-

Kd.18.11.16

mal) act—one of censure ... one of suspension—is carried out by the Order against him, the one who shares his cell should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor conduct himself properly, be subdued, mend his ways, (so that) the Order could revoke that (formal) act?’

Kd.18.11.17

Vin.2.227

“If the preceptor’s robe should be washed, the one who shares his cell should wash it or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor’s robe be washed?’ If the preceptor’s robe-material should be made up, the one who shares his cell should make it up or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the preceptor’s robe-material be made up?’ If dye should be boiled for the preceptor, the one who shares the cell should boil it or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then can the dye be boiled?’ If the preceptor’s robe should be dyed, the one who shares his cell should dye it or should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then can the preceptor’s robe be dyed?’ When he is dyeing the robe, he should dye it properly, turning it again and again, nor should he go away if the drips have not ceased.

Kd.18.11.18

BD.5.317

“Without asking the preceptor (for permission), he should not give an almsbowl to anyone nor should he receive an alms bowl from anyone; he should not give a robe to anyone nor should he receive a robe from anyone; he should not give a requisite to anyone nor should he receive a requisite from anyone; he should not cut off anyone’s hair, nor should he have his hair cut off by anyone; he should not render a service to anyone nor should he cause a service to be rendered by anyone; he should not execute a commission for anyone nor should he cause a commission to be executed by anyone; he should not become an attendant on anyone nor should he take anyone as an attendant; he should not bring back almsfood for anyone nor should he have almsfood brought back by anyone. Without asking the preceptor (for permission), he should not enter a village, he should not go to a cemetery, he should not leave the district. If the preceptor becomes ill, he should tend him for as long as life lasts; he should wait (with him) until he recovers. This, monks, is the observance for those who share cells towards preceptors and which should be observed by those who share cells towards preceptors.”

ON DUTIES TO ONE WHO SHARES HIS CELL

Now at that time preceptors did not conduct themselves properly towards those who shared their cells. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can these preceptors not conduct themselves properly towards those who share their cells?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that preceptors do not conduct themselves properly towards those who share their cells?”

Kd.18.12.1

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying: “Well then, monks, I will lay down an observance for preceptors towards those who share their cells and which should be observed by preceptors towards those who share their cells.

Kd.18.12.2

“The preceptor,¹ monks, should conduct himself properly towards the one who shares his cell. This is the proper conduct in this respect: the one who shares the cell should be furthered, he should be helped by the preceptor in regard to recitation, interrogation, exhortation, instruction. If there is a bowl for the preceptor but no bowl for the one who shares his cell, a bowl should be given by the preceptor to the one who shares his cell, or he should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could a bowl be procured for the one who shares my cell?’ If there is a robe for the preceptor ... if there is (another) requisite for the preceptor ... ‘How then could (another) requisite be procured for the one who shares my cell?’

Vin.2.228

BD.5.318

“If the one who shares a cell becomes ill, having got up early he should give tooth-wood, he should give water for rinsing the mouth, he should make ready a seat. If there is conje, having washed a vessel, conje should be placed near him. When he has drunk the conje, having given him water, having received the vessel, having lowered it, having washed it properly without rubbing it, it should be put away. When the one who shares a cell has got up, the seat should be removed. If that place is soiled that place should be swept.

Kd.18.12.3

“If the one who shares a cell wishes to enter a village, his inner clothing should be given (to him), the inner clothing (that he is wearing) should be received from him, in return, the outer robes should be given (to him),

Kd.18.12.4

¹ From here to the end of [Kd.18.12](#) is the same as [Kd.1.26](#).

having folded them (into two or four folds); having washed it, a bowl with water is to be given to him. Thinking: 'He will be returning about now,' he should make ready a seat, he should set out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand; having gone to meet him, he should receive his bowl and robe, he should give back the inner clothing (given) in return, he should receive his inner clothing. If a robe is damp with perspiration, he should dry it for a short time in the sun's warmth, but a robe should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should fold up the robe. When folding up the robe, having made the corners turn back four finger-breadths, he should fold up the robe, thinking: 'Mind there is no crease in the middle'. The waistband should be placed in a fold (of the robe). If there is almsfood and the one who shares a cell wishes to eat, having given him water, almsfood should be placed near (him).

Kd.18.12.5

BD.5.319

"He should offer the one who shares his cell drinking water. When he has eaten, having given him water, having received the bowl, having lowered it, having washed it properly without rubbing it, having emptied out the water he should dry it for a short time in the sun's warmth, but a bowl should not be laid aside in the warmth. He should lay aside the bowl and robes. When laying aside the bowl, having taken the bowl in one hand, having felt with the other under the couch or under the chair, the bowl should be laid aside, but the bowl should not be laid aside on the bare ground. When laying aside a robe, having taken the robe in one hand, having stroked the other hand along the bamboo for robes or the cord for robes, having got the edges away from him and the fold towards him, the robe should be laid aside. When the one who shares a cell has got up, the seat should be removed, the water for washing the feet, the foot-stool, the foot-stand should be put away. If that place comes to be soiled, that place should be swept.

Vin.2.229

Kd.18.12.6

"If the one who shares a cell wishes to bathe, he should prepare a bath. If he wants a cold (bath), he should prepare a cold one; if he wants a hot (bath), he should prepare a hot one. If the one who shares a cell wishes to enter a bathroom, he should knead chunam, he should moisten clay; taking a chair for the bathroom, having gone (close behind the one who shares a cell), having given him the chair for the bathroom, having received his robe, he should lay it to one side. He should give him the chunam, he should give

him the clay. If he is able to do so he should enter the bathroom. When he is entering the bathroom, having smeared his face with clay, having covered himself front and back he should enter the bathroom.

Kd.18.12.7

“He should not sit down so as to encroach upon (the space intended for) monks who are elders. He should not keep newly ordained monks from a seat. He should make preparation for the one who shares a cell in the bathroom. When he is leaving the bathroom, taking the chair for the bathroom, having covered himself front and back, he should leave the bathroom. And he should make preparation in the water for the one who shares his cell. When he is bathing, having come out of the water first, having dried his own body, having put on his inner robe, he should wipe off the water from the limbs of the one who shares the cell, he should give him his inner clothing, he should give him his outer cloak; taking the chair for the bathroom, having come back first, he should make ready a seat, he should put out water for washing the feet, a foot-stool, a foot-stand. He should offer the one who shares a cell drinking-water.

BD.5.320

“If the dwelling-place in which the one who shares a cell is staying is dirty, if he is able (to do so) he should clean it. When he is cleaning it, having first taken out the bowl and robes, he should lay them to one side ... If there is no water in the pitcher of water for rinsing, water should be tipped into the pitcher of water for rinsing. If dissatisfaction has arisen in the one who shares a cell, the preceptor should allay it or get another to allay it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If remorse ... the preceptor should dispel it or get another to dispel it, or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*. If wrong views have arisen in the one who shares a cell, the preceptor should dissuade him (from them) or get another to dissuade him (from them) or he should give him a talk on *dhamma*.

Kd.18.12.8

Vin.2.230

“If the one who shares a cell has committed an offence against an important rule ... the preceptor should make an effort, thinking: ‘How then could the Order rehabilitate the one who shares the cell?’

Kd.18.12.9

“If the Order desires to carry out a (formal) act against one who shares a cell ... thinking: ‘How then could the one who shares a cell conduct himself properly, be subdued, mend his ways, (so that) the Order could revoke that (formal) act?’

Kd.18.12.10

Kd.18.12.11

“If the robe of one who shares a cell should be washed ... When he is dyeing the robe, he should dye it properly, turning it again and again, nor should he go away if the drips have not ceased. If the one who shares a cell becomes ill, he should tend him for as long as life lasts; he should wait (with him) until he recovers. This, monks, is the observance for preceptors towards those who share their cells and which should be observed by preceptors towards those who share their cells.”

Vin.2.231

The Second Portion for Repeating

ON DUTIES TO THE TEACHER

BD.5.321

Now at that time pupils did not conduct themselves properly towards their teachers ... (as in **Kd.18.11.1**. *Instead of preceptor read teacher; instead of one who shares a cell read pupil*) ...

ON DUTIES TO THE STUDENT

Kd.18.14.1

Now at that time teachers did not conduct themselves properly towards their pupils ... (as in **Kd.18.12.1** *Instead of preceptor, one who shares his cell read teacher, pupil*) ...

Told is the Eighth Section: that on Observances

IN THIS SECTION ARE FIFTY-FIVE ITEMS, FOURTEEN OBSERVANCES. THIS IS ITS KEY

With sandals and sunshades, heads muffled up, drinking water,
did not greet, they did not ask, snake, the well behaved looked down upon, /
He took off, sunshade, and over his shoulder, and unhurriedly, withdrawal,
laying aside bowl and robe, and suitable, asked,¹ /
Should sprinkle,² and about washing, sandals with a dry and a damp³ (cloth),
a senior, a newly ordained one should ask, and whether occupied, resorts, /
Learners, privies, drinking water, washing,⁴ staff, agreement, thereupon⁵
the time, a moment, soiled, the ground-covering should be taken out, /

¹ *pucchitā*. ² Oldenberg's text: *asiñceyya*; Siamese: *āsiñci*. ³ Oldenberg's text: *all'*; Siamese *allen'*. ⁴ *paribhojaniya* here abbreviated to *pari*. ⁵ Oldenberg's text: *katikan tato*; Siamese *katikaṭṭhitam*.

Supports, mattress and squatting mat, and couch and chair, spittoon,¹
 reclining board, cobwebs, corners, coloured red, black, not treated,² /
 And rubbish, ground covering, supports, couch and chair,
 mattress,³ piece of cloth to sit upon, spittoon,⁴ and reclining board, /
 Bowl and robe, and the ground, the edges away, the folds towards,
 from East, and from West, from the North, then from the South, /
 And cool, warm, by day, at night, and a cell, a porch,
 attendance- and fire-hall, and the custom in privies, /
 Water for drinking, for washing, and into pitchers of water for rinsing—
 For the rhythm: an observance laid down for those incoming. /
 Neither a seat, nor water, nor meeting, nor drinking water either,
 they did not greet, they did not appoint,⁵ and the well behaved spread it about. /
 And a seat for a senior, water, and having gone to meet, drinking water,
 sandals, on one side, and he should be greeted, should be appointed, /
 Occupied, resorts and a learner, privy, drinking- and washing-water,⁶
 staff,⁷ agreement, the time, if he is sitting down before one newly ordained, /
 He should greet, he should explain, the method is as below.
 The observance for these resident ones was pointed out by the Leader of the Caravan. /
 Those going away and wood, clay,⁸ having opened, not asking (for permission),
 and they were lost, and unguarded, and the well behaved ones looked down upon.
 /
 Having packed away, having closed, having asked (for permission), so may he set
 out,
 monk or novice or park-attendant or lay follower, /
 On stones, a heap, he should pack away, and he should close,
 if he is able,⁹ or an effort, and just where it does not leak, /
 If the whole¹⁰ leaks—to a village, and just there in the open air,
 “So the different things surely remain”: the observance for monks who are going
 away. /

BD.5.322

Vin.2.232

BD.5.323

¹ *kheḷamallaka* here abbreviated to *mallaka*. ² Oldenberg: *gerukā-kāḷa, akatā*; Siamese: *gerukā kāḷakākata*. ³ Oldenberg: *paṭipādakam mañca-piṭham, / bhisi*; Siamese: *patipādakā mañcakam / pitham bhisi*. ⁴ *kheḷamallaka* here abbreviated to *mallaka*. ⁵ Oldenberg: *paññāpe*; Siamese: *paññāpe*. ⁶ Oldenberg: *bhojani*; Siamese: *bhojanam*. ⁷ Oldenberg: *kattarā*; Siamese: *kattaram*. ⁸ Oldenberg: *matti ca*; Siamese: *mattikā*. ⁹ Oldenberg: *ussahati*; Siamese: *sace ussahati*. ¹⁰ Oldenberg: *sabbe*; Siamese: *sace*. ¹¹ Oldenberg: *anupakhajjane*; Siamese: *jjanam*.

having dressed with the inner robe all round one for covering the three circles,
waistband, one bundle, block, /

Not turning aside, properly clad, well-controlled, eyes cast down,¹
lifting up the robes, with loud laughter, noise, and so the three swayings,² /

Arms akimbo, muffled up, crouching, properly clad, well controlled,
lifting up the robes, loud laughter,³ little noise, the three swayings,⁴ /

Arms akimbo, muffled up, and lolling, encroaching, not on a seat,
having spared (he should) not, when water,⁵ having lowered, he should not splash,
/

Receiver, neighbouring, outer cloak, and if cooked rice it should be received,
curry, tit-bits, for all, and an equal level,⁶ /

Attentively, and thinking of the bowl,⁷ and on continuous almsround, equal curry,
not from the top, coverings up, asking, captious-mindedly, /

BD.5.324

Large, a round, door, whole hand, one should not talk,⁸ ball, breaking up, cheeks,
shaking, scattering lumps of boiled rice, /

And then putting out the tongue, smacking the lips, making a hissing sound,
licking the fingers, the bowl, the lips, accepting with what is soiled, /

Until everyone,⁹ when water,¹⁰ having lowered, he should not splash,

receiver, neighbouring, outer cloak, and having lowered on the ground, /

With lumps of boiled rice, when returning, properly clad, crouching;

this refectory-observance was laid down by the *dhamma*-king. /

Wrongly dressed, improperly, and without deliberation,¹¹ hastily,

Vin.2.233

far, close, long, soon, here just those who walk for alms. /

He may go properly clad,¹² well controlled,¹³ his eyes cast down,¹⁴

lifting up the robes, with loud laughter, noise, and so the three swayings, /

Arms akimbo, muffled up, crouching, and having considered, hastily,

far, close, long, soon, a little seat, a spoon, /

Or a dish and if she sets it out, having raised (and) having uncovered,¹⁵

(the alms) may be received, he should not look at, and that is about curries as
before, /

A monk should cover with the outer cloak, he should go properly clad,¹⁶

well controlled, and the eyes cast down, lifting up the robes, and with loud laughter,

¹ Oldenberg: -cakkhu; Siamese: cakkhunā. ² *pacālanā ... calā*. ³ Oldenberg: *okkhittacittā, ujjhaggi*; Siamese: *okkhittukkhittā ujjhagghi*. ⁴ *pacālanā ... calā*. ⁵ Oldenberg: *na udake*; Siamese: *ca udake*. ⁶ Oldenberg: *samatitti*; Siamese: *samakanti*. ⁷ Siamese here adds: *samasūpañca titthikā / na tāva thero bhuñjeyya asampatte ca odane / sakkacāṃ pattasaññī ca sapadānam ca sūpakāṃ*.

⁸ Oldenberg: *na byāhare*; Siamese: *na vohare*. ⁹ Oldenberg: *yāva na sabbe, udake*; Siamese: *na tāva yāva na sabbe*. ¹⁰ Oldenberg: *yāva na sabbe, udake*; Siamese: *na tāva yāva na sabbe*.

¹¹ Oldenberg: *asallakkhe ca sahasā*; Siamese: *asalakkhetvā sāhasā*. ¹² Oldenberg: *paṭicchannena*; Siamese *paticchanno va*. ¹³ Oldenberg: *susaṃvut' okkhittacakkhu*; Siamese: *samvut' okkhittacakkhunā*.

¹⁴ Oldenberg: *susaṃvut' okkhittacakkhu*; Siamese: *samvut' okkhittacakkhunā*. ¹⁵ Oldenberg: *paṇāmetvā*; Siamese: *paṇāmakā*.

¹⁶ *paṭicchanneva*.

/

Little noise, the three swayings, arms akimbo, muffled up, crouching,
the first the seat, the refuse (tub), drinking water, washing water,
the last if he so desires may eat, it may be thrown into, he should remove, /
He should put away, he should sweep, if empty (and) depleted he should attend
(to them)

BD.5.325

by a sign with the hand, he should not break into:¹ and the observance for those
who walk for alms. /

Drinking water, washing water, fire, kindling wood and lunar mansions (and)
quarters (and) thieves,
thinking, “there is nothing” having thrashed (them), a bowl, on the shoulder, then
the robe, /

“Now,” having hung on the shoulder, the three circles, all round,
as is the observance for those who walk for alms so are the meanings in that for
forest-dwellers. /

A bowl, on the shoulder, robe, on the head, and having put on, drinking water,
washing water, fire, and also kindling wood, a staff, /

Lunar mansions, or their positions, he should become skilled in the quarters:
the observance was laid down for these forest-dwellers by the Best of Teachers. /
In the open air, they were covered, and the well behaved looked down upon.

If a dwelling-place is soiled, first the bowl and robe, /

Mattress and squatting-mat, couch, and chair, spittoon,
reclining board (and) window corners, red colouring, black, not treated, /
Rubbish, near monks, lodgings, dwelling-place, drinking water,
near washing water, and to windward in the open space, /

To leeward, covering, supports and couch,²

chair, mattress, piece of cloth to sit upon, spittoon, and reclining board, /
And bowl and robe on the ground, the edges away from, the fold towards,
and the East, the West, the North, then the South, /

And cool and warm, by day (and) at night, and a cell, a porch,
attendance- and fire-hall, a privy, drinking water, /

Pitcher of rinsing water, seniors, recitation (and) interrogation, study,³
dhamma, and a light, he should (not) extinguish, he should not open, nor should
he close, /

BD.5.326

When the senior turns, he should not touch him even with a corner;
the Great Sage laid down this observance for lodgings. /

If they are being hindered, doorway, fainting, the well behaved look down upon,
he should throw out the ashes, bathroom, and flooring as before, /

Vin.2.234

Cell (and) porch, hall, chunam (and) clay (and) jar,

¹ Oldenberg: *hatthivikāre, bhindeyya*; Siamese: *hatthakāre na bhindeyya*. ² Oldenberg: *mañce ca*; Siamese: *mañcakaṇ*. ³ Oldenberg: *-paripucchanā, sajjhā, / dhammo, padīpaṇ ca vijjhāpe na vivare, na pi thake*; Siamese: *paripucchanā / sajjhā dhammo padīpaṇ ca na vivare na ca thake*. /

face, in front, not (encroaching on) elders, nor¹ newly ordained, if he is able, /
 In front, above, a way, swampy, clay, a little chair,
 and having extinguished, he may depart:² the observance for those in bathrooms.
 /

He did not rinse, according to seniority and in order, and he fell down, hastily,
 forcibly,³ groaning, toothwood, they relieved themselves, spitting, /
 Rough, cesspool, hastily, forcibly, smacking, they left,⁴
 outside and inside one should cough, a cord, and unhurriedly, /
 Hastily, forcibly, groaning,⁵ toothwood, and relieving oneself,
 spitting, rough, and cesspool, privy shoes, /
 Not too hastily, forcibly, shoes, smacking the lips,
 one should not leave, one should not⁶ get rid of, dirty,⁷ and about the receptacle,⁸ /
 Privy, plaster flooring, and cell, porch,
 and water in the pitcher for rinsing water: the observance in the privies are these.
 /

BD.5.327

Sandals, toothwood, and water for rinsing the mouth, a seat,
 conje, water, having washed, he should remove, soiled, and village, /
 Inner clothing, waistband, fold, a bowl with water,
 attendant, and precisely the three circles, all round, waistband, /
 Fold, having washed, attendant, not too far away, he should receive,
 while he is speaking, offence, going first, a seat, /
 Water, (foot-) stool and stand, having gone to meet, inner clothing,
 in the sun, he laid aside, crease, in a fold, let him eat, he may place,⁹
 Drinking water, water, lowered, for a moment, but he should not lay aside,
 bowl on the ground and robes, edges away, fold towards, /
 He should remove, he should put away, and soiled, to bathe,
 cold, hot, bathroom, chunam, clay, behind, /
 And chair, robe, chunam, clay, if he is able, face,
 front, elders, neither, and preparation, when leaving, /
 Front, in the water, when bathing, having dressed, the preceptor,
 and the inner clothing, outer cloak, chair, and about a seat, /
 Footstool and stand, drinking water, recitation, interrogation,
 if soiled he should clean it,¹⁰ first the bowl and robes /
 Piece of cloth to sit upon and sheet, and the mattress and squatting mat,
 couch, chair, supports, spittoon, and the reclining board, /

¹ Siamese omits *na*. ² Oldenberg: *vijjhāpetvā ca, pakkame*; Siamese: *vijjhāpetvā thaketvā ca*. ³ Oldenberg reads *uppajji* for *ubbhujitvā*, and in the line below *ubbhajjhi*; Siamese *ubbhuji* in both places. ⁴ Oldenberg: *sethena*. At **Kd.18.10.2** the corresponding word is *sesenti*. Siamese: *sesakaṃ*. ⁵ Oldenberg: *sahasā ubbhajjitvāna*; Siamese: *sahasā ubbhujī thite*. ⁶ Siamese omits *na*. ⁷ Oldenberg: *uhana*, presumably for *ūhatā* of **Kd.18.10.3**; Siamese: *ūhanā*. ⁸ Oldenberg: *pidharena ca*; Siamese: *piṭharena ca*. ⁹ *name*, for *upanāmetabbo* at the end of **Kd.18.11.4**. ¹⁰ Oldenberg *uklāpaṃ su sodheyya*; Siamese: *uklāp'ussahaṃ sodheyya*.

Ground- (covering), cobwebs, windows, red, black, not treated,
 ground-covering, supports, couch, chair, mattress, /
 Piece of cloth to sit upon and sheet, spittle and reclining board, bowl and robe,
 from the East, and from the West, from the North, and then from the South, / Vin.2.235
 And cool and warm, by day and night, and a cell, porch,
 attendance- and fire-hall, privy, drinking water, water for washing, /
 Pitcher of water for rinsing, dissatisfaction remorse, and wrong view, important BD.5.328
 (rule),¹
 the beginning, *mānatta*, rehabilitation, censure, guidance,² /
 Banishment, reconciliation, and suspension, if it is carried out,
 he should wash, and he should make up, the dye, he should dye, turning it, /
 And bowl, and also robe, and a requisite, cutting off,
 service, commission, attendant, almsfood, entering, /
 Nor to a cemetery, and also from a district, he should attend him for as long as life
 lasts;
 this is the observance for one who shares a cell. These are for a preceptor: /
 Exhortation, instruction, recitation, interrogation, and bowl, robe,
 and requisite, ill, he should not be an attendant.³ /
 These observances for preceptors are also so for teachers;
 as are the observances for those who share a cell, so they are for pupils. /
 Those observances for incoming ones, and again for resident ones,
 those going away, those giving thanks, in a refectory, those walking for almsfood, /
 That observance for forest-dwellers, and also that for lodgings,
 In a bathroom, a privy, and those for preceptors and those who share their cells, /
 (As is) that observance for teachers, so is it for pupils.
 Nineteen matters are spoken of in sixteen sections. /
 Being imperfect in observance one does not perfect morality,
 Impure in morality, of poor wisdom, one knows not one-pointedness of mind, /
 The mind wavering, not one-pointed, sees not *dhamma* rightly,
 not seeing true *dhamma*, one is not freed from ill. /
 Being perfect in observance, one perfects morality too,
 pure in morality, with wisdom, one knows too one-pointedness of mind, /
 The mind unwavering, one-pointed, rightly sees *dhamma* too, BD.5.329
 beholding true *dhamma*, one is freed from ill. /
 Wherefore the watchful son of the Conqueror should fulfil the observance,
 the exhortation of the best of Buddhas—hence he will come to *nibbāna*. / Vin.2.236

¹ Oldenberg *ācamanaṃ anabhirati kukkucçaṃ diṭṭhi ca garu*; Siamese: *ācamā -anabhirati kukkucçaṃ diṭṭhikā garu*. ² Oldenberg has *niyasaka* above, for *nissaya*. Siamese *niyas-sakaṃ*. Cf. also AN.i.99 where *niyassakamma* should read *nissayak-*. ³ Oldenberg reads *na pacchāsamaṇo sāve*; Siamese *bhave*.

19. SUSPENDING THE OBSERVANCE (UPOSATHAṬṬHĀPANA)

REQUESTING THE RECITATION OF THE PĀTIMOKKHA

Kd.19.1.1
BD.5.330

At one time¹ the Awakened One, the Lord was staying at Sāvattthī in the Eastern Monastery in the long house of Migāra’s mother. Now at that time the Lord was sitting down surrounded by an Order of monks on an Observance day. Then, when the night was far spent, as the first watch was waning, the venerable Ānanda, rising from his seat, having arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, having saluted the Lord with joined palms, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, the night is far spent, the first watch is waning; the Order of monks has been sitting down for a long time; Lord, let the Lord recite the Pātimokkha to the monks.”² When he had spoken thus the Lord became silent. And when the night was far spent, as the middle watch was waning, the venerable Ānanda a second time rising from his seat, having arranged ... spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, the night is far spent, the middle watch is waning; ... recite the Pātimokkha to the monks.” And a second time the Lord became silent. And when the night was far spent, as the last watch was waning, when the sun had risen and the night had a face of gladness,³ a third time did the venerable Ānanda, rising from his seat, having arranged ... speak thus to the Lord:

¹ The whole of this episode occurs also at AN.iv.204ff., Ud.5.5. ² Quoted at Kh-a.114; and at DN-a.227–DN-a.228, and Vv-a.52, to “for a long time,” as an example of *khaya*, waning.

³ Cf. Kd.8.13.2; Ud.3.3.

“Lord, the night is far spent, the last watch is waning; the sun has risen, the night has a face of gladness; the Order of monks has been sitting down for a long time; Lord, let the Lord recite the Pātimokkha to the monks.”

“Ānanda, the assembly is not entirely pure.”¹

Then it occurred to the venerable Moggallāna the Great:

“Now, on account of which individual did the Lord speak thus: ‘Ānanda, the assembly is not entirely pure?’” Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great with his mind compassed the minds of the entire Order of monks. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great saw that individual sitting in the midst of the Order of monks—of bad moral habit,² depraved in character, of impure and suspicious behaviour,³ of concealed actions,⁴ not a (true) recluse (although) pretending to be a (true) recluse, not a farer of the Brahma-faring (although) pretending to be a farer of the Brahma-faring, rotten within, filled with desire,⁵ filthy by nature; seeing him, he approached that individual, having approached, he spoke thus to that individual:

“Get up, your reverence, the Lord has seen you; for you there is no communion⁶ together with the monks.” When he had spoken thus that individual became silent. And a second time ... And a third time the venerable Moggallāna the Great spoke thus to that individual: “Get up, your reverence ... for you there is no communion together with the monks.” And a third time that individual became silent. Then the venerable Moggallāna the Great, having taken that individual by the arm, having thrust him out through the porch of the gateway, having shot the bolt,⁷ approached the Lord; having approached, he spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord I have thrust that individual out; the company is entirely pure; Lord, let the Lord recite the Pātimokkha to the monks.”

“How strange, Moggallāna, how wonderful, Moggallāna, that that foolish man should have waited even until he was taken hold of by the arm.”

¹ I.e. there is some monk in it who has not confessed an offence which he has committed.

² For this set of epithets cf. AN.i.108, AN.i.126, AN.ii.239, AN.iv.201, AN.i.205, Pp.27, Pp.36; Ud.52; SN.iv.180–SN.iv.181. ³ SN.i.66, Thag.277; cf. Dh-p-a.iii.485. ⁴ Snp.127. ⁵ Defined at Vin.4.214, Vin.4.221, Vin.4.233 (BD.3.161, BD.3.174, BD.3.196).

⁶ *samvāsa*. Cf. definition at Vin.4.315, and definition of “to be in communion” at Vin.4.138, Vin.4.214. Also see Bu-Pc.69.

⁷ *sūciḡhaṭṭikam datvā*, cf. Kd.15.14.3. This episode is referred to at Snp-a.312.

Kd.19.1.2

BD.5.331

Vin.2.237

Kd.19.1.3

Then the Lord addressed the monks,¹ saying:

EIGHT WONDERFUL THINGS ABOUT THE GREAT OCEAN

BD.5.332 “Monks, there are these eight strange and wonderful things about the great ocean,² from constantly having seen which *asuras*³ delight in the great ocean. What are the eight? The great ocean, monks, deepens gradually, slopes gradually, shelves gradually, with no abruptness like a precipice. And monks, that the great ocean deepens gradually, slopes gradually, shelves gradually with no abruptness like a precipice—this, monks, is the first strange and wonderful thing about the great ocean from constantly having seen which *asuras* delight in the great ocean.

“And again, monks, the great ocean is stable, it does not overflow its margins.⁴ And, monks, that the great ocean is stable, that it does not overflow its margins—this, monks, is the second strange and wonderful thing ...

“And again, monks, the great ocean does not associate with a dead body, a corpse. Whatever dead body, corpse there may be in the great ocean, that it just quickly forces ashore and pushes on to the dry land.⁵ That the great ocean, monks, does not associate with a dead body, a corpse ... this, monks, is the third strange and wonderful thing ...

Vin.2.238 “And again, monks, all the great rivers, that is to say the Ganges, the Jumna, the Aciravatī, the Sarabhū, the Mahī⁶—these, on reaching the great ocean lose their former names and identities⁷ and are reckoned simply as the great ocean. That all the great rivers ... this, monks, is the fourth strange and wonderful thing ...

“And again, monks, those streams which in the world flow into the great ocean, and those showers from the sky which fall into it, yet is neither the emptiness nor the fullness of the great ocean affected by that. That

¹ At AN.iv.198 this description of the ocean is ascribed to the *asura* chief, *Pahārāda*. ² As at AN.iv.198–AN.iv.204, AN.iv.206–AN.iv.208; Ud.53–Ud.56. ³ A class of mythical beings—not apparently here, as sometimes, shown as the enemies of the *devas*. ⁴ In ebbing and flowing, Vin-a.1287 says. ⁵ Cf. Mi.187, Mi.250. ⁶ This list recurs at AN.iv.101, AN.v.22; SN.ii.135, SN.v.38; Mi.70, Mi.87, Mi.380; Vism.10. ⁷ *gotta*, clan. Cf. Chāndogya Upaniṣad 6.10.1,2; Muṇḍaka Upaniṣad 3.2.8, Praśna Upaniṣad 6.5.

those streams which in the world ... this, monks, is the fifth strange and wonderful thing ...

“And again, monks, the great ocean has one taste, the taste of salt. That the great ocean, monks, has one taste ... this, monks, is the sixth strange and wonderful thing ...

BD.5.333

“And again, monks, the great ocean has many treasures,¹ divers treasures; these treasures are there, that is to say: pearl,² crystal, lapis lazuli, shell, quartz, coral, silver, gold, ruby, cat’s-eye. That the great ocean, monks, has many treasures ... this, monks, is the seventh strange and wonderful thing ...

“And again, monks, the great ocean is the abode of great beings; these beings are there: the *timis*, the *timingalas*, the *timitimiṅgalas*, *asuras*,³ *nāgas*, *gandhabbas*. There are in the great ocean individualities⁴ a hundred *yojanas*⁵ (long),⁶ individualities two hundred ... three hundred ... four hundred ... five hundred *yojanas* (long). That the great ocean, monks, is the abode of great beings; that these beings are there: the *timis* ... individualities five hundred *yojanas* (long)—this, monks, is the eighth strange and wonderful thing about the great ocean from constantly having seen which *asuras* delight in the great ocean. These, monks, are the eight strange and wonderful things about the great ocean from constantly having seen which *asuras* delight in the great ocean.

EIGHT WONDERFUL THINGS ABOUT THIS DHAMMA AND VINAYA

“In exactly the same way, monks, in this *dhamma* and discipline there are eight strange and wonderful things from constantly having seen which monks delight in this *dhamma* and discipline. What are the eight?

Kd.19.1.4

“Even,⁷ monks, as the great ocean deepens gradually, slopes gradually, shelves gradually with no abruptness like a precipice, even so, monks, in

¹ *ratana*. ² See GS.iv.137, notes. ³ See GS.iv.137, n.11. ⁴ *attabhāva*. ⁵ See BD.2.90, n.8.

⁶ Quoted Atthasālinī 299. ⁷ Quoted Kv.219.

BD.5.334 this *dhamma* and discipline there is a gradual training,¹ a gradual doing,² a gradual course,³ with no abruptness such as penetration of profound knowledge. And, monks, that in this *dhamma* and discipline there is a ... gradual course with no abruptness such as penetration of profound knowledge, this, monks, is the first strange and wonderful thing from constantly having seen which monks delight in this *dhamma* and discipline.

Vin.2.239 “And even, monks, as the great ocean is stable and does not overflow its margins, even so, monks, whatever rule of training has been laid down by me for disciples, my disciples will not transgress it even for life’s sake. And that, monks, my disciples will not transgress even for life’s sake a rule of training laid down by me for disciples, this, monks, is the second strange and wonderful thing ...

“And even, monks, as the great ocean does not associate with a dead body, a corpse, but whatever dead body, corpse there may be in the great ocean, that it just quickly forces ashore and pushes on to the dry land, even so, monks, whatever individual is of bad moral habit, of depraved character, of impure and suspicious behaviour, of concealed actions, not a (true) recluse (although) pretending to be a (true) recluse, not a farer of the Brahma-faring (although) pretending to be a farer of the Brahma-faring, rotten within, filled with desire, filthy by nature—the Order does not live in communion⁴ with him, but having assembled quickly, suspends him; and although he is sitting in the midst of an Order of monks, yet he is far from the Order and the Order is far from him⁵ ... this, monks, is the third strange and wonderful thing ...

“And even, monks, as those great rivers, that is to say the Ganges, the Jumna, the Aciravatī, the Sarabhū, the Mahī which, on reaching the great ocean, lose their former names and identities and are reckoned simply as the great ocean, even so, monks, (members of) these four castes: noble,

¹ AN-a.iv.111 says this is the “three trainings,” i.e. either in the higher moral habit, the higher mentality, the higher wisdom (as at AN.i.234), or in moral habit, concentration, wisdom. For these three words, cf. MN.i.479. MN.iii.1; AN.iv.201; Ud.54. ² *kiriya*. AN-a.iv.111 calls this the thirteen *dhutaṅgas*, ascetic practices (explained at Vism.59ff.). ³ AN-a.iv.111 calls this: the seven (ways of) contemplating, the eighteen great (ways of) insight (Vism.628ff.), the thirty-eight categories of dependence, the thirty-seven things helpful to enlightenment.

⁴ *Saṃvasati*; a technical term when used of the Order; see note above, BD.5.331. ⁵ Cf. It.p.91.

brahmin, merchant and low, having gone forth from home into homelessness in this *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder, lose their former names and clans and are reckoned simply as recluses, sons of the Sakyans¹ ... this, monks, is the fourth strange and wonderful thing ...

BD.5.335

“And even, monks, as those streams which in the world flow into the great ocean and those showers which fall into it from the sky, yet not by that is either the emptiness or the fullness of the great ocean affected—even so, monks, even if many monks attain *nibbāna* in the *nibbāna*-condition in which no more groups are remaining,² not by that is either the emptiness or the fullness of the *nibbāna*-condition affected ... this, monks, is the fifth strange and wonderful thing ...

“And even, monks, as the great ocean has one taste, the taste of salt, even so, monks, does this *dhamma* and discipline have one taste, the taste of freedom ... this, monks, is the sixth strange and wonderful thing ...

“And even, monks, as the great ocean has many treasures, divers treasures—these treasures are there, that is to say: pearl, crystal, lapis lazuli, shell, quartz, coral, silver, gold, ruby, cat’s-eye—even so, monks, does this *dhamma* and discipline have many treasures, divers treasures—these treasures are there, that is to say: the four arousings of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic power, the five faculties, the seven links in awakening, the noble eightfold Way³ ... this, monks, is the seventh strange and wonderful thing ...

Vin.2.240

“And even, monks, as the great ocean is the abode of great beings—these beings are there: *timis*, *timingalas*, *timitimingalas*, *asuras*, *nāgas*, *gandhabbas*, individualities a hundred *yojanas* (long) ... two hundred ... three hundred ... four hundred ... five hundred *yojanas* (long)—even so, monks, this *dhamma* and discipline is the abode of great beings—these beings are there: the stream-attainer, the one going along to the realisation of the fruit of stream-attainment, the once-returner, the one going along to the realisation of the fruit of once-returning, the non-returner, the one going along to the reali-

¹ On this term see [BD.2, Introduction, p.xliv](#). ² See GS.iv.139, n.4 and GS.iv.320; also DN.iii.135, It.p.38 where the meaning of *anupādisesanibbānadhātu* is explained. See also *Compendium of Buddhist Philosophy* p.154: “That which bears its own intrinsic nature.” The groups are those of grasping. ³ MRS. RHYS DAVIDS, *Sakya*, p.395, points out that the order of these terms sometimes varies.

BD.5.336 sation of the fruit of non-returning, the perfected one, the one going along to perfection. And that, monks, this *dhamma* and discipline is the abode of great beings—these beings are there: the stream-attainer ... the one going along to perfection, this, monks, is the eighth strange and wonderful thing in this *dhamma* and discipline from constantly having seen which monks delight in this *dhamma* and discipline. These, monks, are the eight strange and wonderful things in this *dhamma* and discipline from constantly having seen which monks delight in this *dhamma* and discipline.”

Then the Lord, having known this matter, at that time uttered this utterance:

“It rains hard on a covered thing,
It rains not hard on an open thing;
So open up the covered thing,
Thus will it not rain hard on that.”¹

THOSE DESERVING TO HEAR THE PĀTIMOKKHA

Kd.19.2.1

Then the Lord addressed the monks, saying: “Now, I, monks, henceforth will not carry out the Observance, I will not recite the Pātimokkha; now you yourselves, monks, must henceforth carry out the Observance, must recite the Pātimokkha. It is not possible, monks, it cannot come to pass that the Truth-finder should carry out the Observance, should recite the Pātimokkha with an assembly that is not entirely pure. Nor, monks, should the Pātimokkha be heard by one who has an offence.² Whoever (such) should hear it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow you, monks, to suspend the Pātimokkha for him who, having an offence, hears the Pātimokkha.³ And thus, monks, should it be suspended:⁴ On an Observance day, whether it be the fourteenth or the fifteenth, when that individual is present this

Vin.2.241

¹ This verse occurs at Ud.v.5, but not at AN.iv.204 or AN.iv.208. It is among the verses ascribed to Sirimaṇḍa, Thag.447. Vin-a.1287 observes (as is clear from the context) that the covered thing means “having fallen into an offence and concealing it one falls into another and a fresh offence; but disclosing it, one does not fall into another offence.” Cf. Ud-a.306, and also Thag-a.ii.188. ² Cf. Kd.2.27.1. ³ Kd.11.5.1 says that it may not be suspended (*thapeti*) for a regular monk. ⁴ Cf. suspending the Invitation, Kd.4.16.2 which follows a similar course.

should be uttered in the midst of the Order: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The individual So-and-so has an offence; I am suspending the Pātimokkha for him, the Pātimokkha should not be recited when he is present’ — (thus) does the Pātimokkha become suspended.”

Now at that time the group of six monks,¹ thinking: “No one knows about us,” listened to the Pātimokkha although they had offences. Monks who were elders, knowing the minds of others, told the monks: “So-and-so and So-and-so, your reverences, (belonging to) the group of six monks, thinking, ‘No one knows about us,’ listened to the Pātimokkha although they had offences.” The group of six monks heard it said that the monks who were elders, knowing the minds of others, had told the monks: “So-and-so and So-and-so ... listened to the Pātimokkha although they had offences.” These, thinking: “In case the well behaved monks suspend the Pātimokkha for us,” suspended first, without ground, without reason, the Pātimokkha for the pure monks who had no offences. These who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this group of six monks suspend, without ground, without reason, the Pātimokkha for pure monks who have no offences?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Is it true, as is said, monks, that the group of six monks suspended, without ground, without reason, the Pātimokkha for pure monks who have no offences?”

“It is true, Lord.” Having rebuked them, having given reasoned talk, he addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, you should not, without ground, without reason, suspend the Pātimokkha for pure monks who have no offences. Whoever should (so) suspend it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.

SETTING ASIDE THE PĀTIMOKKHA BY RULE AND NOT BY RULE

“Monks, one suspension of the Pātimokkha is not legally valid, one is legally valid; two suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid, two are

¹ Cf. [Kd.4.16.3](#).

legally valid; three... four ... five ... six ... seven ... eight ... nine ... ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid, ten are legally valid.

Kd.19.3.3

“What is the one suspension of the Pātimokkha that is not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, this one suspension of the Pātimokkha is not legally valid.

“What is the one suspension of the Pātimokkha that is legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, this one suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

BD.5.338

“What are the two suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from good habits, these two suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.

Vin.2.242

“What are the two suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from good habits, these two suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.

“What are the three suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from good habits, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from right views, these three suspensions ... are not legally valid.

“What are the three suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit ... from good habits ... from right views, these three suspensions ... are legally valid.

“What are the four suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit ... from good habits ... from right views, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from a right mode of livelihood, these four suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.

“What are the four suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit, ... from good habits ... from right views, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from a right mode of livelihood, these four suspensions ... are legally valid.

“What are the five suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) an offence involving defeat ... on an unfounded (charge of) an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... on an unfounded (charge of) an offence of expiation ... on an unfounded (charge of) an offence which ought to be confessed ... on an unfounded (charge of) an offence of wrong-doing, these five suspensions ... are not legally valid.

BD.5.339

“What are the five suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) an offence involving defeat ... on a founded (charge of) an offence of wrong-doing, these five suspensions ... are legally valid.

“What are the six suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done,¹ if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has been done² ... on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from good habits which has not been done ... which has been done, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from right views which has not been done ... which has been done, these six suspensions ... are not legally valid.

“What are the six suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done ... which has been done ... on a founded (charge of) falling away from good habits which has not been done ... which has been done, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from right views which has not been done ... which has been done, these six suspensions ... are legally valid.

¹ *akata*. Vin-a.1288 says the falling away may or may not have been done by that individual.

² *kata*.

BD.5.340 “What are the seven suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) an offence involving defeat ... of an offence entailing a formal meeting of the Order ... of a grave offence ... of an offence of expiation ... of an offence which ought to be confessed ... of an offence of wrong-doing, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) an offence of wrong speech, these seven suspensions ... are not legally valid.

“What are the seven suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) an offence involving defeat ... on a founded (charge of) an offence of wrong speech, these seven suspensions ... are legally valid.

Vin.2.243 “What are the eight suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done ... which has been done ... of falling away from good habits which has not been done ... which has been done ... of falling away from right views which has not been done ... which has been done, if one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from a right mode of livelihood which has not been done ... which has been done, these eight suspensions ... are not legally valid.

“What are the eight suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done ... which has been done ... of falling away from a right mode of livelihood which has not been done ... which has been done, these eight suspensions ... are legally valid.

BD.5.341 “What are the nine suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done ... which has been done ... which has been done and not done¹ ... on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from good habits which has not been done ... which has been done ... which has been done and not done ... on an unfounded (charge of) falling away from right views which has not been done ... which has been done ...

¹ *katākatāya*. Vin-a.1288 says “it is so called because (the one who is suspending) has chosen, *gahetvā*, both: done and not done” (presumably as his grounds for suspending, since falling away may have been done both by the individual whom he is suspending, and by another).

which has been done and not done, these nine suspensions ... not legally valid.

“What are the nine suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one suspends the Pātimokkha on a founded (charge of) falling away from moral habit which has not been done ... which has been done ... which has been done and not done ... on a founded (charge of) falling from good habits ... on a founded (charge of) falling away from right views which has not been done ... which has been done ... which has been done and not done, these nine suspensions ... are legally valid.

“What are the ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are not legally valid? If one who is defeated is not sitting in that assembly,¹ if talk on an offence involving defeat is still going forward,² if one who has disavowed the training is not sitting in that assembly, if talk on disavowing the training is still going forward, if he submits himself to a legally valid complete assembly,³ if he does not withdraw his acceptance⁴ (of a formal act settled) in a legally valid complete assembly, if talk on withdrawing acceptance (of a formal act settled) in a legally valid complete assembly is still going forward, if he is not seen, heard or suspected of falling away from moral habit, if he is not seen, heard or suspected of falling away from good habits, if he is not seen, heard or suspected of falling away from right views, these ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.

“What are the ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha that are legally valid? If one who is defeated is sitting in that assembly, if talk on an offence involving defeat is not still going forward ... (*as in above paragraph, but the opposite in each case*) ... if he is seen, heard or suspected of falling away from right views, these ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.

BD.5.342

¹ These clauses are explained in [Kd.19.3.4](#) below. ² A monk cannot be legally suspended while talk on his case is still in progress. ³ *dhammikaṃ sāmaggim upeti*. See [Kd.10.5.13](#); [Kd.10.6.2](#) (*atthupeta, vyañjanupeta*). ⁴ *na paccādiyati*. Vin-a.1288 says of *paccādiyati* (in the “legally valid” clause) it means that if he says the formal act should be earned out again, he withdraws his acceptance. But he who opens it up again falls into an offence of expiation. If he desires to find fault with a formal act while it is being carried out, and neither comes nor gives his consent, and protests if he has come, for this reason he falls into an offence of wrong-doing. (Cf. [Bu-Pc.80](#).)

SETTING ASIDE THE PĀTIMOKKHA BY RULE

Kd.19.3.4

“How (can it be said that) one who is defeated is sitting in that assembly? This is a case, monks, where by reason of those properties,¹ by reason of those features, by reason of those signs by which there comes to be commission of an offence involving defeat a monk sees (another) monk committing an offence involving defeat; or it may be that that monk does not himself see a monk committing an offence involving defeat, but that another monk tells that monk: ‘The monk So-and-so, your reverence, is committing an offence involving defeat’; or it may be that that monk does not himself see a monk committing an offence involving defeat and that no other monk tells that monk: ‘The monk So-and-so, your reverence, is committing an offence involving defeat,’ but that he himself tells the monk: ‘I, your reverence, have committed an offence involving defeat.’ Monks, that monk if he so desires, on account of what he has seen, or has heard, or has suspected may, on an Observance day, whether it is the fourteenth or the fifteenth, utter in the midst of the Order when that individual is present: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This individual So-and-so is committing an offence involving defeat. I am suspending the Pātimokkha for him. The Pātimokkha should not be recited in his presence.’ This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid. When the Pātimokkha has been suspended for that monk, if the assembly removes itself on account of any one of the ten dangers²—the danger from kings or ... thieves or ... fire or ... water or ... human beings or ... non-human beings or ... beasts of prey or ... creeping things or because of danger to life or because of danger to the Brahma-faring—monks, that monk, if he so desires, may either in that residence or in another residence, utter in the midst of the Order in the presence of that individual: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. The talk on the individual So-and-so’s offence involving defeat was still going forward; that matter is not decided. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may decide this matter.’ If he succeeds thus, that is good. If he does not succeed, he should, on an Observance day, whether the fourteenth or the fifteenth, utter in the midst of the Order and in the presence of that individual: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen

Vin.2.244

BD.5.343

¹ As at [Vin.3.27](#). ² See rule at [Kd.2.15.4](#).

to me. The talk on the individual So-and-so's offence involving defeat was still going forward; that matter is not decided. I am suspending the Pātimokkha for him, the Pātimokkha should not be recited in his presence.' This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

Kd.19.3.5

“How (can it be said that) one who has disavowed the training is sitting in that assembly? This is a case, monks ... (*the same as Kd.19.3.4, reading disavowed the training instead of offence involving defeat*) ... This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

Vin.2.245

“How (can it be said that) he does not submit himself to a legally valid complete assembly? This is a case, monks ... (*the same as Kd.19.3.4, reading does not submit himself to a legally valid complete assembly instead of offence involving defeat*) ... This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

Kd.19.3.6

Vin.2.246

“How (can it be said that) he withdraws his acceptance (of a formal act settled) in a legally valid complete assembly? This is a case, monks, ... (*the same as Kd.19.3.4 reading withdraws his acceptance of a formal act settled in a legally valid complete assembly instead of offence involving defeat*) ... This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

Kd.19.3.7

Kd.19.3.8

“How (can it be said that) he is seen, heard or suspected of falling away from moral habit? This is a case, monks, ... (*the same as Kd.19.3.4 reading seen, heard or suspected of falling away from moral habit instead of offence involving defeat*) ... This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid.

Kd.19.3.9

“How (can it be said that) he is seen, heard or suspected of falling away from good habits? This is a case, monks, ... (*see Kd.19.3.8*) ...

“How (can it be said that) he is seen, heard or suspected of falling away from right views? This is a case, monks, ... (*see Kd.19.3.8*) ... This suspension of the Pātimokkha is legally valid. These ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.”

Vin.2.247

FACTORS FOR UNDERTAKING ON ONE'S OWN BEHALF

BD.5.344

Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf,¹ endowed with how many qualities is the undertaking that he may undertake on his own behalf?”

“Upāli, if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf, the undertaking that he may undertake on his own behalf is endowed with five qualities. Upāli, if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf, he should consider this: ‘That undertaking which I wish to undertake on my own behalf, is it the right time to undertake this undertaking on my own behalf, or not?’ If, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘It is a wrong time² to undertake this undertaking on my own behalf, not a right time,’ Upāli, that undertaking on his own behalf should not be undertaken. But if, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘It is a right time to undertake this undertaking on my own behalf, not a wrong time,’ Upāli, it should be further considered by that monk: ‘That undertaking which I wish to undertake on my own behalf, is this undertaking on my own behalf about a true thing, or not?’ If, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘That undertaking on my own behalf is about an untrue thing, not a true thing,’ Upāli, that undertaking on his own behalf should not be undertaken. But if, Upāli, while that monk is considering he knows thus: ‘That undertaking on my own behalf is about a true thing, not an untrue thing,’ Upāli, it should be further considered by that monk: ‘That undertaking which I wish to undertake on my own behalf, is that undertaking connected with the goal, or not?’ If, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘This undertaking on my own behalf is unconnected with the goal,³ not connected with it,’

¹ *attādānaṃ ādātukāmena*. Vin-a.1288 says “here a monk wishing to search (or purify, *sodhetu*) the teaching—whatever legal question he undertakes on his own behalf (or, appropriates to himself, *attanā ādiyati*), that is called *attādāna*.” ² Vin-a.1288 says a wrong time means when there is fear of kings, of thieves, of a scarcity of food, or if it is the rains-season.

³ Vin-a.1288: it leads to danger to life, danger to the Brahma-faring.

Upāli, that undertaking on his own behalf should not be undertaken. But if, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘This undertaking on my own behalf is connected with the goal, not unconnected with it.’ Upāli, it should be further considered by that monk: ‘Will I, undertaking this undertaking on my own behalf, attract¹ monks who are comrades and associates to my side in accordance with *dhamma*, in accordance with discipline, or not?’ If, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘I, undertaking this undertaking on my own behalf, will not attract monks who are comrades and associates to my side in accordance with *dhamma*, in accordance with discipline,’ Upāli, that undertaking on his own behalf should not be undertaken. But, if, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘I, undertaking this undertaking on my own behalf, will attract monks who are comrades and associates to my side in accordance with *dhamma*, in accordance with discipline,’ Upāli, it should be further considered by that monk: ‘From my having undertaken this undertaking on my own behalf, will there be for the Order from that source strife, quarrel, dispute, contention, schism in the Order, dissension in the Order, altercation in the Order, differences in the Order,² or not?’ If, Upāli, while this monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘From my having undertaken this undertaking on my own behalf, there will be for the Order from that source strife ... differences in the Order,’ Upāli, that undertaking should not be undertaken on his own behalf. But if, Upāli, while that monk is considering, he knows thus: ‘From my having undertaken this undertaking on my own behalf, there will not be for the Order from that source strife ... differences in the Order,’ Upāli, that undertaking on his own behalf may be undertaken. Thus, Upāli, if an undertaking on one’s own behalf is undertaken when it is endowed with these five qualities, later it will be no cause for remorse.”

BD.5.345

Vin.2.248

THINGS TO BE REVIEWED BY A REPROVER

“Lord, if a monk is reproving,³ willing to reprove another, when he has considered how many states within himself may he reprove the other?”

Kd.19.5.1

BD.5.346

¹ *labhissāmi*. ² List as at [Kd.10.1.6](#), [Kd.10.5.13](#); [Kd.17.5.1](#). ³ Cf. [AN.v.79ff.](#), addressed to “monks.”

“Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, when he has considered five states within himself may he reprove the other. Upāli, when a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, he should consider thus: ‘Now, am I quite pure in bodily conduct,¹ am I possessed of pure bodily conduct, flawless, faultless? Is this state found in me, or not? If, Upāli, this monk is not quite pure in bodily conduct, is not possessed of bodily conduct that is quite pure, flawless, faultless, there will be those who will say to him: ‘Please do you, venerable one, train yourself as to body’—thus will those say to him.

“And again, Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, he should consider thus: ‘Now, am I quite pure in the conduct of speech, am I possessed of conduct in speech that is quite pure, flawless, faultless? Is this state found in me, or not?’ If, Upāli, that monk is not quite pure in the conduct of speech ... ‘Please do you, venerable one, train yourself as to speech’—thus will those say to him.

“And again, Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, he should consider thus: ‘Now is a mind of loving-kindness, without malice towards my fellow Brahma-farers, established in me? Is this state found in me, or not?’ If, Upāli, a mind of loving-kindness, without malice towards his fellow Brahma-farers, is not established in the monk, there will be those who will say to him: ‘Please do you, venerable one, establish a mind of loving-kindness towards your fellow Brahma-farers’—thus those will say to him.

“And again, Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, he should consider thus: ‘Now, am I one who has heard much, an expert in the heard, a storehouse of the heard? Those things which are lovely at the beginning, lovely in the middle, lovely at the ending, and which, with the spirit, with the letter, declare the Brahma-faring utterly fulfilled, wholly purified—are such things much heard by me, learnt by heart, repeated out loud, pondered upon, carefully attended to, well penetrated by vision?² Now, is this state found in me, or not?’ If, Upāli, the monk has not heard much ... if such things have not been ... well penetrated by vision, there will be those who will say to him: ‘Please do you, venerable one, master the

¹ Cf. MN.ii.113. ² Cf. Kd.14.14.19.

tradition¹—there will be those who speak thus to him.

“And again, Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, he should consider thus: ‘Now,² are both the Pātimokkhas properly handed down³ to me in detail, properly sectioned, properly regulated, properly investigated clause by clause, as to the linguistic form? Is this state found in me, or not?’ If, Upāli, the two Pātimokkhas are not properly handed down to the monk in detail ... as to the linguistic form, and if they say: ‘Now where, your reverence, was this spoken by the Lord?’⁴ and if questioned thus he is not able to explain, there will be those who will say to him: ‘Please do you, venerable one, master discipline’—there will be those who speak thus to him. Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, when he has considered these five states within himself, he may reprove the other.

THINGS TO BE ESTABLISHED BY A REPROVER

“Lord, if a monk is reproving,⁵ willing to reprove another, having caused how many states to be set up within himself, may he reprove the other?”

Kd.19.5.2

“Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, having caused five states to be set up within himself, may he reprove the other. If he thinks, ‘I will speak at a right time, not at a wrong time;⁶ I will speak about fact⁷ not about what is not fact; I will speak with gentleness, not with harshness; I will speak about what is connected with the goal, not about what is unconnected with the goal I will speak with a mind of loving-kindness,

BD.5.348

¹ *āgama*; here in opposition to *vinaya*, see next clause. On *āgatāgama*, one to whom the tradition has been handed down, see BD.3.71, n.1. ² As at Vin.4.51 (BD.2.266, where see notes), and above Kd.14.14.19. ³ *āgatāni*; cf. *āgatāgama* and *suttāgata* at e.g. Vin.4.144 (BD.3.43, n.5). ⁴ Vin-a.1289 explains, “in which town was this rule of training spoken by the Lord?”—thus making “where” refer to locality and not to context. ⁵ Cf. AN.iii.196, where this passage is put into the mouth of Sāriputta, AN.v.81 (addressed to monks). The five recur at DN.iii.236. Cf. also MN.i.95-. ⁶ Cf. MN.I.126, AN.iii.243. Vin-a.1289 explains “one monk having obtained leave from another (to reprove him), when he is reproving him speaks at a right time. But reproving him in the midst of an Order or a group, in a hut where tickets and coney are distributed, in a quadrangular building, when he is walking for alms, on a road, on a seat or in a hall, when he is among his supporters, or at the moment of the Invitation—this is called at a wrong time.” ⁷ *bhūtena*, about what has happened. Vin-a.1290 explains by *taccha*, what is true, real, justified.

not with inner hatred.’ Upāli, if a monk is reproving, willing to reprove another, having made these five states to be set up within himself, he may reprove the other.”

ON CONNECTED WITH THE REPROVER AND THE REPROVED

Kd.19.5.3

“Lord, in how many ways may remorse be caused in a monk who reproves according to what is not the rule?”

Vin.2.250

“Upāli, in five ways¹ may remorse be caused in a monk who reproves according to what is not the rule. One says: ‘The venerable one reproved at a wrong time, not at a right time—you have need for remorse.’² The venerable one reproved about what is not fact, not about what is fact—you have need for remorse. The venerable one reproved with harshness, not with gentleness ... with what is unconnected with the goal, not with what is connected with the goal ... with inner hatred, not with a mind of loving-kindness—you have need for remorse.’ Upāli, in these five ways may remorse be caused in a monk who reproves according to what is not the rule. What is the reason for this? To the end that no other monk might think that one might be reproved about what is not fact.”

Kd.19.5.4

“But, Lord, in how many ways may no remorse be caused in a monk who has been reproved according to what is not the rule?”

“Upāli, in five ways may no remorse be caused in a monk who has been reproved according to what is not the rule. One says: ‘The venerable one reproved at a wrong time, not at a right time—you have no need for remorse.’³ The venerable one reproved ... with inner hatred, not with a mind of loving-kindness—you have no need for remorse.’ Upāli, in these five ways may no remorse be caused in a monk who has been reproved according to what is not the rule.”

Kd.19.5.5

“Lord, in how many ways may no remorse be caused in a monk who reproves according to rule?”

BD.5.349

“In five ways,⁴ Upāli, may no remorse be caused in a monk who reproves

¹ Cf. AN.iii.197. ² Here presumably the reprover is being spoken to. ³ Here the one reproved is being spoken to. ⁴ Cf. AN.iii.198.

according to rule. One says: ‘The venerable one reprovved at a right time, not at a wrong time—you have no need for remorse. The venerable one reprovved ... not with inner hatred, but with a mind of loving-kindness—you have no need for remorse’. In these five ways, Upāli, may no remorse be caused in a monk who reprovves according to rule. What is the reason? To the end that another monk should think that one should be reprovved about what is fact.”

Kd.19.5.6

“But, Lord, in how many ways may remorse be caused in a monk who has been reprovved according to rule?”

“In five ways, Upāli, may remorse be caused in a monk who has been reprovved according to rule. One says: ‘The venerable one reprovved at a right time, not at a wrong time—you have need for remorse. The venerable one reprovved ... not with inner hatred, but with a mind of loving-kindness—you have need for remorse’. Upāli, in these five ways may remorse be caused in a monk who has been reprovved according to the rule.”

Kd.19.5.7

“Lord, if a monk is reprovving, willing to reprove another, having attended to how many states within himself may he reprove the other?”

“Upāli, if a monk is reprovving, willing to reprove another, having attended to five states within himself, he may reprove the other: compassion, seeking welfare, sympathy, removal of offences, aiming at discipline. Upāli, if a monk is reprovving, willing to reprove another, having attended to these five states within himself, he may reprove the other.”

Vin.2.251

“But, Lord, in how many mental objects should there be support for a monk who has been reprovved?”

“Upāli, there should be support in two mental objects for a monk who has been reprovved: in truth and in being imperturbable.”¹

Told is the Ninth Section: that on suspending the Pātimokkha

IN THIS SECTION THERE ARE THIRTY ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

On an Observance so long as a depraved monk does not depart,
Urged off² by Moggallāna, a wonder, in the conqueror’s instruction, /

BD.5.350

¹ *akuppa*, being free from anger, immovable. Cf. AN.iii.198, which slightly elaborates the thoughts a reprovved monk might have. ² *niccuddo*. Should this be *nicchuddho* (from *nicchubhati*) as in Sinhalese reading? Oldenberg suggests *nicchuddo* = *nicchudito*. Siamese edition reads *nicuttho* with variant reading *nicchuddo*.

Deepens and gradual training, fixed (and) do not transgress,
 (with) a corpse (and) the Order suspends, streams (and) they lose, /
 Streams (and) they attain *nibbāna*, and the one taste is freedom,
 many (and) *dhamma* and discipline too, (great) beings and the eight *ariyan* men:¹ /
 Having made it like the ocean, he tells of excellence² in the teaching.
 Pātimokkha on an Observance day, “no one knows about us,” /
 “In case,” they looked down upon.
 One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, and nine and ten. /
 (One of) moral habit, good habits, right views and mode of livelihood—the four
 disciples,
 defeat and entailing a Formal Meeting, of expiation, that ought to be confessed, /
 Wrong-doing among the fivefold divisions as they are,
 and falling away from moral habit and good habits,
 and with what has not been done and has been done³ in the six divisions as they
 are, /
 And about defeat and entailing a Formal Meeting, a grave offence and one of expi-
 ation
 and likewise one that ought to be confessed and one of wrong-doing and one of
 wrong speech, /
 Falling away from moral habit and good habits
 and falling away from right views and mode of livelihood,
 and those eight dones and not dones with one as to moral habit, good habits, right
 views, /
 Also not dones and dones and likewise the done and not done
 are likewise spoken of as ninefold by the system⁴ in accordance with fact, /
 Defeated, still going forward and likewise one who has disavowed,
 he submits, he withdraws acceptance, talk on withdrawing acceptance and who-
 ever /
 falls away from moral habit and good habits, and likewise as to falling away from
 right views,
 seen, heard, suspected, the tenfold, this he should know. /
 A monk sees a monk, and another tells what he has seen,⁵
 a pure one tells him of it himself:⁶ he suspends the Pātimokkha. /
 If it removes itself on account of a danger—kings, thieves, fire, water and
 human beings and non-human beings and beasts of prey and creeping things,

BD.5.351

¹ The *ariyan* men are those who follow Gotama’s teachings, his disciples. The “eight” are the classes of those who attain stream-winning, once-returning, no return and arahantship and the fruits of these four ways. ² *guṇam*. Sinhalese reads *guṇā*. ³ Sinhalese and Siamese read, more correctly, *akatāya katāya ca* for Oldenberg’s text’s *akatā katāya ca*. ⁴ *ñāyato*, Sinhalese edition reading *jānatā*. ⁵ Text: *vipass’ añño cārocāti*; Sinhalese edition: *añño cārocayā tam*; Siamese edition: *añño cārocayāti tam*. ⁶ Text: *taṃ suddheva tassa akkhāti*. Oldenberg suggests at [Vin.2.326](#) *taṃ sv’ eva tassa akkhāti*. Sinhalese and Siamese editions read *suddho va tassa akkhāti*.

to life, to the Brahma (faring)—/

Because of a certain one of the ten, or as to one among the others,
and he should know just what is legally valid, what is not legally valid as it accords
with the way. /

The right time (and) according to fact (and) connected with the goal, “I will attract,”
“There will be,”

Vin.2.252

Conduct of body and speech, loving-kindness, great learning,¹ both. /

He should reprove at the right time, about fact, with gentleness, about the goal,²
with loving-kindness.³

As a speech should dispel remorse caused by what is not the rule /

It dispels the remorse of one who reproves or who is reprovved according to rule.

Compassion, seeking welfare, sympathy, removal, aiming at—/

The conduct for one reproving is explained⁴ by the Self-awakened One.

And the proper course for the reprovved one is in the truth as well as in being
imperturbable.

Vin.2.253

¹ *bāhusaccam*. Oldenberg suggests at [Vin.2.326](#) *bāhusuccam*. But *bāhusacca* = *bahussuta* at e.g. [Kd.19.5.1](#). The word also occurs at [MN.i.45](#); [AN.i.38](#) (*bahu-* should here read *bāhu-*), [AN.ii.218](#); [Vin.3.10](#); [Kp.p.3](#). It is explained at [MN-a.iii.156](#) = [Khu-a.134](#) as *bahussutabhāva*, the condition of having heard much. ² Sinhalese edition reads *attamettēna* for Oldenberg’s and Siamese edition’s *atthamettēna*. ³ Sinhalese edition reads *attamettēna* for Oldenberg’s and Siamese edition’s *atthamettēna*. ⁴ *pakāsītā* in Sinhalese and Siamese editions, and as suggested by Oldenberg, [Vin.2.326](#), instead of text’s *pakāsitaṃ*.

20. NUNS (*BHIKKHUNĪ*)

FIRST RECITATION SECTION

THE STORY OF MAHĀPAJĀPATĪ GOTAMĪ

Kd.20.1.1
BD.5.352

At one time the Awakened One, the Lord, was staying among the Sakyans at Kapilavatthu in the Banyan monastery.¹ Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, it were well that women should obtain the going forth from home into homelessness in this *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”

“Be careful, Gotami, of the going forth of women from home into homelessness in this *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.” And a second time ... And a third time did the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great speak thus to the Lord: “Lord, it were well ...”

“Be careful, Gotami, of the going forth of women from home into homelessness in this *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, thinking: “The Lord does not allow women to go forth from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder,” afflicted, grieved, with a tearful face and crying, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him.

Kd.20.1.2

Then the Lord having stayed at Kapilavatthu for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Vesālī. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at

¹ Down to end of Kd.20.1 occurs also at AN.iv.274–AN.iv.279.

Vesālī. The Lord stayed there in Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Gabled Hall. Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, having had her hair cut off, having donned saffron robes, set out for Vesālī with several Sakyan women, and in due course approached Vesālī, the Great Grove, the Gabled Hall. Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, her feet swollen, her limbs covered with dust, with tearful face, and crying, stood outside the porch of the gateway. The venerable Ānanda saw the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, standing outside the porch of the gateway, her feet swollen, her limbs covered with dust, with tearful face and crying; seeing her, he spoke thus to the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great:

BD.5.353
Vin.2.254

“Why are you, Gotami, standing ... and crying?”

“It is because, honoured Ānanda, the Lord does not allow the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”

“Well now, Gotami, stay¹ here a moment,² until I have asked the Lord for the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”

Kd.20.1.3

Then the venerable Ānanda approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord:

“Lord, this Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, is standing outside the porch of the gateway, her feet swollen, her limbs covered with dust, with tearful face and crying, and saying that the Lord does not allow the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder. It were well, Lord, if women might obtain the going forth from home ... by the Truth-finder.”

“Be careful, Ānanda, of the going forth of women from home ... by the Truth-finder.” And a second time ... And a third time the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord: “It were well, Lord, if women might obtain the going forth ... proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”³

¹ *hohi*. ² Not in Aṅguttara version. ³ See [Vin.2.289](#) where Ānanda was charged at the Council of Rājagaha with having persuaded Gotama to admit women to the Order, thus causing its decay.

“Be careful, Ānanda, of the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.” Then the venerable Ānanda, thinking: “The Lord does not allow the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder. Suppose now that I, by some other method, should ask the Lord for the going forth of women from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.” Then the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord:

BD.5.354

“Now, Lord, are women, having gone forth from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder, able to realise the fruit of stream-attainment or the fruit of once-returning or the fruit of non-returning or perfection?”

“Women, Ānanda, having gone forth ... are able to realise ... perfection.”

“If, Lord, women, having gone forth ... are able to realise ... perfection—and, Lord, the Gotamid, Pajāpati the Great, was of great service: she was the Lord’s aunt, foster-mother, nurse, giver of milk, for when the Lord’s mother passed away she suckled him¹—it were well, Lord, that women should obtain the going forth from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.”

Vin.2.255

EIGHT IMPORTANT RULES

Kd.20.1.4

“If, Ānanda, the Gotamid, Pajāpati the Great, accepts eight important rules,² that may be ordination³ for her:

1. **“A nun who has been ordained (even) for a century must greet respectfully, rise up from her seat, salute with joined palms, do proper homage to a monk ordained but that day. And this rule is to be honoured, respected, revered, venerated, never to be transgressed during her life.**

¹ See MN.iii.253. ² *garudhammā*. See BD.2.266, n.11. Besides at AN.iv.276, these rules are given at Vin.4.51 (see BD.2.268–BD.2.269 for notes). ³ AN-a.iv.134 says “that may be her going forth as well as (her) ordination.” She would not therefore have to pass two years as a probationer, and this practice will no doubt have been introduced later, after an Order of nuns had been in being for some time.

2. “A nun must not spend the rains in a residence where there is no monk. This rule too is to be honoured ... during her life.
3. “Every half month a nun should desire two things from the Order of monks: the asking (as to the date) of the Observance day, and the coming for the exhortation. This rule too is to be honoured ... during her life.
4. “After the rains a nun must ‘invite’ before both Orders in respect of three matters: what was seen, what was heard, what was suspected. This rule too is to be honoured ... during her life.
5. “A nun, offending against an important rule, must undergo *mānatta* (discipline) for half a month before both Orders. This rule too must be honoured ... during her life.
6. “When, as a probationer, she has trained in the six rules for two years, she should seek ordination from both Orders. This rule too is to be honoured ... during her life.
7. “A monk must not be abused or reviled in any way by a nun. This rule too is to be honoured ... during her life.
8. “From today admonition of monks by nuns is forbidden, admonition of nuns by monks is not forbidden. This rule too is to be honoured, respected, revered, venerated, never to be transgressed during her life.

BD.5.355

“If, Ānanda, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, accepts these eight important rules, that may be ordination for her.”

Then the venerable Ānanda, having learnt the eight important rules from the Lord, approached the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great; having approached, he spoke thus to the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great:

Kd.20.1.5

“If you, Gotami, will accept eight important rules, that will be the ordination for you: a nun who has been ordained (even) for a century ... From today admonition of monks by nuns is forbidden ... never to be transgressed during your life. If you, Gotami, will accept these eight important rules, that will be the ordination for you.”

“Even,¹ honoured Ānanda, as a woman or a man when young, of tender years, and fond of ornaments, having washed (himself and his) head, having obtained a garland of lotus flowers or a garland of jasmine flowers or a garland of some sweet-scented creeper, having taken it with both hands, should place it on top of his head—even so do I, honoured Ānanda, accept these eight important rules never to be transgressed during my life.”

Then the venerable Ānanda approached the Lord: having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the eight important rules were accepted by the Gotamid, Pajāpati the Great.”

“If, Ānanda, women had not obtained the going forth from home into homelessness in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder, the Brahma-faring, Ānanda, would have lasted long, true *dhamma* would have endured for a thousand years. But since, Ānanda, women have gone forth ... in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder, now, Ānanda, the Brahma-faring will not last long, true *dhamma* will endure only for five hundred years.

“Even, Ānanda, as those households which have many women and few men easily fall a prey to robbers, to pot-thieves,² even so, Ānanda in whatever *dhamma* and discipline women obtain the going forth from home into homelessness, that Brahma-faring will not last long.

“Even, Ānanda, as when the disease known as mildew³ attacks a whole field of rice that field of rice does not last long, even so, Ānanda, in whatever *dhamma* and discipline women obtain the going forth ... that Brahma-faring will not last long.

“Even, Ānanda, as when the disease known as red rust⁴ attacks a whole field of sugar-cane, that field of sugar-cane does not last long, even so,

¹ Besides at AN.iv.278 this simile occurs at MN.i.32, and the first part at Vin.3.68 (see BD.1.117, n. for notes). ² *kumbhatthenaka*. Vin-a.1291 says “having lit a light in a pot, by its light they search others’ houses for booty.” AN-a.iv.136 is the same, and SN-a.ii.223 very similar. The simile occurs also at SN-a.ii.264. ³ *setatthika*, “white-as-bones.” See BD.1.11, n.4. GS.iv.185, n.2 gives explanation of AN-a.iv.136 (= Vin-a.1291) on above: some insect bores the stem, so that the head of the paddy is unable to get the sap. ⁴ *mañjetthika*. Vin-a.1291 explains that the ends of the sugar canes become red; also AN-a.iv.136.

Ānanda, in whatever *dhamma* and discipline ... that Brahma-faring will not last long.

“Even, Ānanda, as a man,¹ looking forward, may build a dyke to a great reservoir so that the water may not overflow, even so, Ānanda, were the eight important rules for nuns laid down by me, looking forward, not to be transgressed during their life.”

Told are the Eight Important Rules for Nuns

ALLOWANCE FOR THE ORDINATION OF NUNS

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus to the Lord:

“Now, what line of conduct, Lord, should I follow in regard to these Sakyan women?” Then the Lord, gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, with talk on *dhamma*. Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, gladdened ... delighted by the Lord with talk on *dhamma*, having greeted the Lord, departed keeping her right side towards him. Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“I allow, monks, nuns to be ordained by monks.”²

Then these nuns spoke thus to the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great: “The lady is not-ordained, neither are we ordained, for it was thus laid down by the Lord: nuns should be ordained by monks.”

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “Honoured Ānanda, these nuns spoke to me thus: ‘The lady is not ordained, neither are we ordained, for it was thus laid down by the Lord: nuns should be ordained by monks’.”

¹ Cf. like similes at MN.iii.96, AN.iii.28. ² Cf. the sixth important rule above. Also see [BD.3, Introduction, p.xlivff.](#)

BD.5.357

Vin.2.257

Kd.20.2.2

Then the venerable Ānanda approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus: ‘Honoured Ānanda, these nuns spoke to me thus ... nuns should be ordained by monks’.”

“At the time, Ānanda, when the eight important rules were accepted by the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great, that was her ordination.”

Kd.20.3.1

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “I, honoured Ānanda, am asking one boon from the Lord: It were well, Lord, if the Lord would allow greeting, standing up for salutation and the proper duties between monks and nuns according to seniority.”

BD.5.358

Then the venerable Ānanda approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus: ‘I, honoured Ānanda, am asking one boon ... according to seniority’.”

Vin.2.258

“This is impossible, Ānanda, it cannot come to pass, that the Truth-finder should allow greeting, standing up for, salutation and the proper duties between monks and nuns according to seniority. Ānanda, these followers of other sects, although liable to poor guardianship, will not carry out greeting, standing up for, salutation and proper duties towards women, so how should the Truth-finder allow greeting ... and proper duties towards women?” Then the Lord, on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying:

“Monks, one should not carry out greeting, rising up for salutation and proper duties towards women.¹ Whoever should carry out (one of these), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.20.4.1

¹ At Kd.16.6.5 women are among those not to be greeted.

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus to the Lord: “Lord, those rules of training for nuns which are in common with those for monks,¹ what line of conduct should we, Lord, follow in regard to these rules of training?”

“Those rules of training for nuns, Gotami, which are in common with those for monks, as the monks train themselves, so should you train yourselves in these rules of training.”

“Those rules of training for nuns, Lord, which are not in common with those for monks, what line of conduct should we, Lord, follow in regard to these rules of training?”

“Those rules of training for nuns, Gotami, which are not in common with those for monks, train yourselves in the rules of training according as they are laid down.”

BD.5.359

Then the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, she stood at a respectful distance. As she was standing at a respectful distance, the Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great spoke thus to the Lord:² “Lord, it were well if the Lord would teach me *dhamma* in brief so that I, having heard the Lord’s *dhamma*, might live alone, aloof, zealous, ardent, self-resolute.”

Kd.20.5.1

“Whatever are the states,³ of which you, Gotami, may know: these states lead to passion, not to passionlessness, they lead to bondage, not to the absence of bondage, they lead to the piling up (of rebirth), not to the absence of piling up, they lead to wanting much, not to wanting little, they lead to discontent, not to contentment, they lead to sociability, not to solitude, they lead to indolence, not to the putting forth of energy, they lead to difficulty in supporting oneself, not to ease in supporting oneself—you should know definitely, Gotami: this is not *dhamma*, this is not discipline, this is not the Teacher’s instruction. But whatever are the states of which you, Gotami, may know: these states lead to passionlessness, not to passion ... (*the opposite*

Vin.2.259

¹ See [BD.3 Introduction, p.xxxiif.](#), [BD.3 Introduction, p.xxxviif.](#) ² As at AN.iv.280. ³ So AN-a.iv.137 (on AN.iv.280).

of the preceding) ... they lead to ease in supporting oneself, not to difficulty in supporting oneself—you should know definitely, Gotami: this is *dhamma*, this is discipline, this is the Teacher’s instruction.”¹

Kd.20.6.1

Now at that time the Pātimokkha was not recited to nuns. They told this matter to the Lord.² He said: “I allow you, monks, to recite the Pātimokkha to the nuns.” Then it occurred to the nuns: “Now, by whom should the Pātimokkha be recited to nuns?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow monks, the Pātimokkha to be recited to nuns by monks.”

BD.5.360

Now at that time monks, having approached a nunnery, recited the Pātimokkha to nuns.³ People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “These are their wives, these are their mistresses; now they will take their pleasure together.” Monks heard these people who ... spread it about. Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, the Pātimokkha should not be recited to nuns by monks. Whoever should recite it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, the Pātimokkha to be recited to nuns by nuns.”

The nuns did not know how to recite the Pātimokkha. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to explain to the nuns through monks, saying: ‘The Pātimokkha should be recited thus’.”

Kd.20.6.2

Now at that time nuns did not confess⁴ offences. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, an offence should not be not confessed by a nun. Whoever should not confess it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”** The nuns did not know how to confess offences. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to explain to the nuns through monks, saying: ‘An offence should be confessed thus’.”

Vin.2.260

¹ Vin-a.1292 and AN-a.iv.137 say that on account of this exhortation, Pajāpatī attained arahantship. ² Usually the nuns approach the Lord only through the mediation of the monks. Here it would appear as if the monks had themselves observed that the nuns were not hearing the Pātimokkha and reported the matter to the Lord on their own initiative.

³ Cf. Bu-Pc.23 where the modest monks complain that monks go to the nuns’ quarters to exhort them. ⁴ *paṭikaronti*.

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, by whom should nuns’ offences be acknowledged?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks to acknowledge nuns’ offences through monks.”

Now at that time nuns, having (each) seen a monk on a carriage-road and in a cul-de-sac and at cross-roads,¹ having (each) laid down her bowl on the ground, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, confessed an offence. People ... spread it about, saying: “These are their wives, these are their mistresses; having treated them contemptuously during the night now they are asking for forgiveness.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, nuns’ offences should not be acknowledged by monks. Whoever should acknowledge (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, nuns’ offences to be acknowledged by nuns.”** The nuns did not know how to acknowledge offences. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to explain to the nuns through monks, saying: ‘An offence should be acknowledged thus’.”

BD.5.361

Now at that time (formal) acts² were not carried out for nuns. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a (formal) act to be carried out for nuns.” Then it occurred to monks: ‘Now, by whom should (formal) acts for nuns be carried out?’ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, (formal) acts for nuns to be carried out by monks.”

Kd.20.6.3

Now at that time nuns on whose behalf (formal) acts had been carried out,³ having (each) seen a monk on a carriage-road and in a cul-de-sac and at cross-roads, having (each) laid down her bowl on the ground, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, asked forgiveness⁴ thinking,

¹ Cf. Nuns’ **Bi-Pc.14**. These three words are defined at **Vin.4.271** (**BD.3.268**); see also **Vin.4.176** in definition of “among the houses.” ² Vin-a.1292 says “acts of censure and so on, and also the sevenfold formal acts.” The former number five, as at **Vin.1.49**. The legal questions amount to seven, as at **Vin.4.207**, and probably these are meant. ³ *katakammā*.

⁴ Vin-a.1292 says, “saying, ‘we will not act in such a way again’.”

“Surely it should be done thus.” As before¹ people ... spread it about, saying: “These are their wives, these are their mistresses; having treated them contemptuously during the night now they are asking for forgiveness.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a (formal) act on behalf of nuns should not be carried out by monks. Whoever should (so) carry one out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, nuns to carry out (formal) acts on behalf of the nuns.” Nuns did not know how (formal) acts should be carried out. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to explain to the nuns through monks, saying: ‘A (formal) act should be carried out thus’.”

Kd.20.7.1
BD.5.362
Vin.2.261

Now at that time nuns, in the midst of an Order,² striving, quarrelling, falling into disputes wounding one another with the weapons of the tongue,³ were not able to settle that legal question. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to settle nuns’ legal questions by monks.”

Now at that time monks were settling a legal question for nuns, but as that legal question was being investigated there were to be seen both nuns who were entitled to take part in a (formal) act⁴ and those who had committed an offence.⁵ The nuns spoke thus: “It were well, honoured sirs, if the ladies themselves⁶ could carry out (formal) acts for nuns, if the ladies themselves could acknowledge an offence of nuns, but it was thus laid down by the Lord: ‘Nuns’ legal questions should be settled by monks’.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

¹ Above in [Kd.20.6.2](#) ² Cf. [Vin.1.341](#), MN.iii.152. ³ *mukhasattihi vitudentā*, not “got to blows” as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.333, but “inflicting wounds with the mouth.” ⁴ *kammappattāya* as at [Kd.9.3.5](#), but perhaps here, as nuns were not yet entitled to take part in formal acts, meaning “had fallen into the need for having a formal act carried out on their account”. There are two variant readings, see [Vin.2.327](#). ⁵ *āpattiḡāminiyo*. ⁶ *ayyā va*. The nuns are not asking the monks to do these things, as made out at *Vinaya Texts* iii.333, but are hoping to get the Lord’s decree altered.

“I allow you, monks, having cancelled¹ the carrying out by monks of nuns’ (formal) acts, to give it into the charge of nuns to carry out nuns’ (formal) acts by nuns; having cancelled (the acknowledgement) by monks of nuns’ offences, to give it into the charge of nuns to acknowledge nuns’ offences by nuns.”

Now at that time the nun who was the pupil of the nun Uppalavaṇṇā had followed after the Lord for seven years mastering discipline, but because she was of confused mindfulness, what she had learnt she forgot. That nun heard it said that the Lord wished to come to Sāvathī. Then it occurred to that nun: “For seven years I have followed the Lord mastering discipline, but because I am of confused mindfulness, what I have learnt is forgotten. Hard it is for a woman to follow after a teacher for as long as her life lasts. What line of conduct should be followed by me?” Then that nun told this matter to the nuns. The nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, discipline to be taught to nuns by monks.”

Kd.20.8.1

BD.5.363

The First Portion for Repeating

SECOND RECITATION SECTION

Then the Lord, having stayed in Vesālī for as long as he found suiting, set out on tour for Sāvathī. Gradually, walking on tour, he arrived at Sāvathī. The Lord stayed there at Sāvathī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Now at that time the group of six monks sprinkled nuns with muddy water,

Vin.2.262

¹ *ropetvā*. *Ropeti* can mean to direct towards, also to cancel, and to pass off. *Pali-English Dictionary* favours the latter. *Vinaya Texts* iii.334 has “set on foot.” Commentary reads *āropetvā* (with variant reading *ropetvā*), which means: to bring about, to get ready; to tell, to show, etc. Vin-a.1292 says “saying, ‘this formal act among those of censure and so on, against whom is it to be carried out?’ having explained (*aropetva*) it thus, he says ‘Now you carry it out yourselves’—it should be given into the charge of. But if a certain one was explained and they carry out another, (monks) saying: ‘They are carrying out a formal act of guidance (*niyasakamma* for *nissayak-*), against one deserving a formal act of censure,’ here, according to what is said, they show what should be carried out.”

thinking: “Perhaps they may be attracted¹ to us.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not be sprinkled with muddy water by monks. Whoever should (so) sprinkle them, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to inflict a penalty² on that monk.” Then it occurred to monks: “Now, how is the penalty to be inflicted?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, that monk is to be made one who is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns.”

Now at that time the group of six monks, having uncovered their bodies ... thighs ... private parts, showed them to nuns; they offended³ nuns, they associated with⁴ nuns, thinking: “Perhaps they may be attracted to us.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, a monk, having uncovered his body ... thighs ... private parts should not show them to nuns, he should not offend nuns, he should not associate together with nuns. Whoever should (so) associate, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to inflict a penalty on that monk.” Then it occurred to monks: ... (*as in above paragraph*) ... “Monks, that monk is to be made one who is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns.”

BD.5.364

Now at that time the group of six nuns sprinkled monks with muddy water ... (*repeat Kd.20.9.1 down to “I allow you, monks, to inflict a penalty on that nun.”*) Then it occurred to the monks: “Now how should the penalty be inflicted?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make a prohibition.”⁵ When the prohibition was made they did not comply

Kd.20.9.2

¹ *sārajjeyyum*. Cf. *sārajjati* at [Kd.15.3.1](#). ² *daṇḍakamma*, as at [Vin.1.75](#), [Vin.1.76](#), [Vin.1.84](#).

³ *obhāsanti*, explained at [Vin-a.1292](#) as *asaddhammena obhāsenti*. See also [Vin.3.128](#), and Buddhaghosa’s remarks, given at [BD.1.216](#), [n.2](#). ⁴ *sampayoventi*. [Vin-a.1292](#) says men “associated with” nuns according to what is not true *dhamma* (or in a wrong way, *asaddhammena*). Cf. [Kd.11.5](#) (at the end). ⁵ *āvaraṇa*. [Vin-a.1292](#) says this is hindering them from entering a dwelling-place. Cf. the word at [Vin.1.84](#), where it is the *daṇḍakamma*, the penalty imposed on novices and preventing them from entering a monastery.

with it. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to suspend exhortation (for her¹).”

Now at that time the group of six nuns, having uncovered their bodies ... their breasts ... their thighs ... their private parts, showed them to monks ... “I allow you, monks, to make a prohibition.” When the prohibition was made they did not comply with it. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to suspend exhortation (for her).”

Vin.2.263

Then it occurred to monks: “Now, is it allowable to carry out Observance together with a nun whose exhortation has been suspended, or is it not allowable?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Kd.20.9.3

“Monks, Observance should not be carried out together with a nun whose exhortation has been suspended so long as that legal question is not settled.”

Now at that time the venerable Upāli, having suspended exhortation, set out on tour. Nuns looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can the master Upāli, having suspended exhortation, set out on tour?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, having suspended exhortation, one should not set out on tour. Whoever should (thus) set out, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.5.365

Now at that time ignorant, inexperienced (monks) suspended exhortation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, exhortation should not be suspended by an ignorant, inexperienced (monk). Whoever (such) should suspend it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Now at that time monks suspended exhortation without ground, without reason. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, exhorta-**

¹ Vin-a.1293 says “here it means that not having gone to a nunnery (the exhortation) may be suspended, but the nuns who have come for exhortation should be told, ‘This nun is impure, she has an offence; I am suspending exhortation for her, do not carry out Observance with her’.”

tion should not be suspended without ground, without reason. Whoever should (so) suspend it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time, monks, having suspended exhortation, did not give a decision.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, having suspended exhortation, you should not not give a decision. Whoever should not give (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.9.4

Now at that time nuns did not go for exhortation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not not go for exhortation. Whoever should not go, should be dealt with according to the rule.**”²

Vin.2.264

Now at that time the entire Order of nuns went for exhortation. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “These are their wives, these are their mistresses, now they will take their pleasure together.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, the entire Order of nuns should not go for exhortation. If it should go thus, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, four or five nuns to go for exhortation.”

BD.5.366

Now at that time four or five nuns went for exhortation. As before, people ... spread it about, saying: “These are their wives ... now they will take their pleasure together.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, four or five nuns should not go (together) for exhortation. If they should go thus, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, two or three nuns to go (together) for exhortation: having approached one monk, having (each one) arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured his feet, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, they should speak to him thus: ‘Master, the Order of nuns honours the feet of the Order of monks, and asks about (the right time for) coming for exhortation; may the Order of nuns, master, hear what is (the right time for) coming for exhortation.’ It should be said by

¹ I.e. on the matter for which exhortation was suspended. ² Nuns’ Bi-Pc.58.

the one who recites the Pātimokkha: ‘Is there any monk agreed upon as exhorter of the nuns?’ If there is some monk agreed upon as exhorter of the nuns, it should be said by the one who recites the Pātimokkha: ‘The monk So-and-so is agreed upon as exhorter of the nuns; let the Order of nuns approach him.’ If there is not some monk agreed upon as exhorter of the nuns, the one who recites the Pātimokkha should say: ‘Which venerable one is able to exhort the nuns?’ If some one is able to exhort the nuns and if he is endowed with the eight qualities,¹ having gathered together, they should be told: ‘The monk So-and-so is agreed upon as the exhorter of the nuns; let the Order of nuns approach him.’ If no one is able to exhort the nuns, the one who recites the Pātimokkha should say: ‘There is no monk agreed upon as exhorter of the nuns. Let the Order of nuns strive on with friendliness’.”²

Now at that time monks did not undertake the exhortation. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, the exhortation should not not be undertaken. Whoever should not undertake it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.9.5

Now at that time a certain monk was ignorant; nuns, having approached him, spoke thus: “Master, undertake the exhortation.” He said: “But I, sisters, am ignorant. How can I undertake the exhortation?” “Master, undertake the exhortation, for it was thus laid down by the Lord: ‘The exhortation of nuns should be undertaken by monks’.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, excepting an ignorant one, to undertake the exhortation through the others.”

Vin.2.265

¹ See Vin.4.51 (BD.2.265ff.). ² *pāsādikena sampādetu*; Vinaya Texts iii.339 has “may the Bhikkhuni-saṅgha obtain its desire in peace,” thus deriving “in peace,” *pāsādikena*, from *pasādeti*. But their desire was to hear the exhortation. As this was impossible, they were advised to do the best they could without it. Cf. *appamādena sampādettha*. Here the notion is probably that the nuns, even without the exhortation, should labour on, strive themselves, peacefully and in friendliness with one another.

BD.5.367

Now at that time a certain monk was ill; nuns, having approached him, spoke thus: “Master, undertake the exhortation.” He said: “But I, sisters, am ill. How can I undertake the exhortation?” “Master, undertake the exhortation, for it was thus laid down by the Lord: ‘Except for an ignorant one, the exhortation should be undertaken through the others’.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, excepting an ignorant one, excepting an ill one, to undertake the exhortation through the others.”

Now at that time a certain monk was setting out on a journey; nuns, having approached him, spoke thus: “Master, undertake the exhortation.” He said: “But I, sisters, am setting out on a journey. How can I undertake the exhortation?” “Master, undertake the exhortation, for it was laid down by the Lord: ‘Except for an ignorant one, except for an ill one, the exhortation should be undertaken through the others’.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, excepting an ignorant one, excepting an ill one, excepting one setting out on a journey, to undertake the exhortation through others.”

Now at that time a certain monk was staying in a forest; nuns, having approached him, spoke thus: “Master, undertake the exhortation.” He said: “But I, sisters, am staying in the forest. How can I undertake the exhortation?” They said: “Master, undertake the exhortation, for it was thus laid down by the Lord: ‘Except for an ignorant one, except for an ill one, except for one setting out on a journey, the exhortation should be undertaken through the others’.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow you to undertake the exhortation through a monk who is a forest-dweller and (for him) to make a rendezvous,¹ saying, ‘I will perform² it here’.”

Now at that time monks, having undertaken the exhortation, did not announce it.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, the exhor-**

¹ *sarīketa*. See [BD.1.88](#), [BD.1.135](#) where “the making of a rendezvous,” *sarīketakamma* is defined. ² *paṭiharissāmi*. ³ These remaining clauses refer, I think, only to monks who are forest-dwellers.

tation should not not be announced. Who-ever should not announce it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks, having undertaken the exhortation did not come.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, one should not not come for the exhortation. Whoever should not come for it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

BD.5.368

Now at that time nuns did not go to the rendezvous. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, nuns should not not go to the rendezvous. Whoever should not go, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Vin.2.266

Now at that time nuns wore long waistbands out of which they arranged flounces.² People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, nuns should not wear long waistbands. Whoever should wear one, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, a nun (to have) a waistband going once round (the waist). And a flounce should not be arranged out of this. Whoever should arrange one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**

Kd.20.10.1

Now at that time the nuns arranged flounces out of strips of bamboo ... of strips of leather ... of strips of woven cloth³ ... out of plaited woven cloth ... of fringed woven cloth ... of strips of cloth⁴ ... of plaited cloth ... of fringed cloth ... of plaited thread ... of fringed thread. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They

¹ *na paccāharati*. Table of contents: *na paccāgacchanti*. ² *teh’eva pāsuke namenti*. P(h)āsukā is a rib; *nameti*, to wield, to bend; Vin-a.1293 says “like householders’ daughters, they fasten them so as to arrange a flounce out of the solid cloth (*thanapaṭakena*, variant reading *ghanapaṭakena*) of the waistband.” On wrong waistbands worn by monks see [Kd.5.29.2](#).

³ *dussapaṭṭena*. Vin-a.1293 explains *dussa* by *setavattha*, white cloth. ⁴ *coḷa*. Vin-a.1293 says that this is the *coḷa* (cotton cloth) of the *kāsāva*, the saffron robes. He thus apparently seeks to discriminate between *dussa*, as the material out of which householders’ cloths are made, and *coḷa*, as that out of which monks’ robes are made.

told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, flounces of strips of bamboo should not be arranged by nuns, nor flounces of strips of leather ... nor should flounces of fringed thread be arranged. Whoever should arrange (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.10.2

BD.5.369

Now at that time nuns had their loins rubbed with a cow’s leg bone,¹ they had their loins massaged with a cow’s jaw-bone,² they had their forearms³ massaged, they had the backs of their hands massaged, they had their calves⁴ massaged ... the tops of their feet ... their thighs ... their faces massaged, they had their gums massaged. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not have their loins rubbed with a cow’s leg-bone, they should not have their loins massaged with a cow’s jaw-bone, they should not have their forearms massaged ... they should not have their gums massaged. Whoever should (so) have herself massaged, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.10.3

Vin.2.267

Now at that time the group of six nuns⁵ smeared their faces, rubbed their faces (with ointment⁶), painted their faces with chunam, marked their faces with red arsenic, painted their bodies, painted their faces, painted their bodies and faces. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not smear their faces ... should not paint their bodies and faces. Whoever should do (any of these things), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.10.4

¹ *aṭṭhilla*. *Pali-English Dictionary* says this is more likely to be Sanskrit *aṣṭhila*, a round pebble or stone. Vin-a.1293 calls it *gojaṅghaṭṭika*, which would seem to fit in with the *gohanuka* of the next item. ² *gohanuka*. ³ On *hattha* see **BD.2, Introduction, p.li**. Vin-a.1293 says, “having had their arms massaged, at the tip, *aggabāham koṭṭāpetvā*, they make designs with peacocks’ feathers and so on.” This would not necessarily mean “tattoo marks” as at *Vinaya Texts* iii.341, n.7. ⁴ *pāda*. Vin-a.1293 says *jaṅgha*. ⁵ Cf. **Kd.15.2.5**, of the group of six monks. ⁶ Cf. Nuns’ **Bi-Pc.90, Bi-Pc.91**.

Now at that time the group of six nuns made (ointment marks) at the corners of their eyes,⁷ they made distinguishing marks (on their foreheads),⁸ they looked out from a window,¹ they stood in the light,² they had dancing performed,³ they supported courtesans,⁴ they set up a tavern,⁵ they set up a slaughter-house,⁶ they offered (things) for sale in a shop,⁷ they engaged in usury,⁸ they engaged in trade, they kept slaves,⁹ they kept slave women, they kept servants, they kept servant women, they kept animals, they dealt in greens and leaves,¹⁰ they carried a piece of felt¹¹ (for a razor). People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.370

“Monks, nuns should not make (ointment marks) at the corners of their eyes ... nor should they carry a piece of felt (for a razor). Whoever should carry (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time the group of six nuns wore robes that were all dark green,¹² they wore robes that were all yellow, they wore robes that were all red, they wore robes that were all crimson, they wore robes that were

Kd.20.10.5

⁷ *avaṅgaṃ karonti*, so explained at Vin-a.1293. ⁸ *visesakaṃ karonti*. Vin-a.1293 explains *gaṇḍappadesa vicitrasaṅghānaṃ visesakaṃ karonti*. ¹ *olokanakena olokeṇti*. Vin-a.1293 says they looked out at the road (*vīthi*), having opened the window, *vātapāna* (on which see [BD.2.259, n.1](#)). ² Vin-a.1293 says, having opened the door, they stand showing half the body. ³ *sanaccaṃ kārapenti*. Nuns should not go to see dancing, Nuns' [Bi-Pc.10](#). Vin-a.1293 says they had a dancing festival held, *naṭasamajjaṃ kārenti*. ⁴ *vesiṃ vuṭṭhāpentī*. *Vesī* may be a courtesan or a low-class woman. Vin-a.1293 explains by *gaṇikā*, a prostitute. *Vuṭṭhāpeti* can also mean to cause to raise, to remove; and it is the regular word used, especially in the Nuns' *Pācittiyas*, for nuns ordaining nuns. Vin-a does not comment on it here. ⁵ Vin-a.1293 says that they sold strong drink. Cf. [AN.iii.208](#), where five trades not to be carried on by lay followers are enumerated. ⁶ Vin-a.1293 says that they sold meat. ⁷ Vin-a.1293 says that they offered for sale (*pasārenti*, as at [Vin.2.291](#)) various and divers goods in a shop. ⁸ *vaḍḍhi*, profit, interest (on money, especially on loans); cf. [DN-a.212](#); and [Ja.v.436](#). It was a *Nissaggiya* for monks (and nuns) to have money, [Bu-NP.18](#). ⁹ *dāsaṃ upaṭṭhāpentī*. Vin-a.1293 says, “having chosen (or taken, *gaḥetvā*) a slave, they had a service done to themselves by him. And it is the same with women slaves and the rest.” ¹⁰ *haritakapaṇṇikāṃ pakiṇanti*. Vin-a.1293 reading *haritakapattiyāṃ*, with variant reading *haritakapattikāṃ*, says that they deal in greens, *haritaka*, as well as in ripe things, *pakka* (variant reading *pakkika*) and that they offered various things for sale in a shop. ¹¹ *namataka*. See [Kd.15.11.1](#), [Kd.15.27.3](#). ¹² As at [Kd.8.29](#) for the group of six monks, except that for monks *veṭhana*, turbans, is added at the end. For notes see [BD.4.438](#).

all black, they wore robes that were dyed all brownish-yellow, they wore robes that were dyed all reddish-yellow, they wore robes with borders that were not cut up, they wore robes with long borders, they wore robes with borders of flowers, they wore robes with borders of snakes' hoods,¹ they wore jackets, they wore (garments made of) the Tirīṭa tree. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: "Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses." They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.371

"Monks, robes that are all dark green should not be worn by nuns ... (garments made of) the Tirīṭa tree should not be worn. Whoever should wear (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing."

Kd.20.11.1

Now at that time a certain nun as she was passing away, spoke thus: "After I am gone, let my requisites be for the Order." Monks and nuns who were there disputed, saying: "They are for us," "They are for us." They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "Monks, if a nun as she is passing away, should speak thus, 'After I am gone, let my requisites be for the Order,' in that case the Order of monks is not the owner, but they are for the Order of nuns. Monks, if a probationer ... if a woman novice, passing away ... the Order of monks is not the owner, but they are for the Order of nuns. Monks, if a monk as he is passing away, should speak thus ... the Order of nuns is not the owner, but they are for the Order of monks. Monks, if a novice ... if a lay-follower ... if a woman lay-follower ... if anyone else as he is passing away should speak thus, 'After I am gone, let my requisites be for the Order,' in that case the Order of nuns is not the owner, but they are for the Order of monks."²

Vin.2.268

Kd.20.12.1

Now at that time a certain woman who had formerly been a Mallian had gone forth among the nuns. She, having seen a feeble monk on a carriage road, having given him a blow with the edge of her shoulder, toppled him

¹ *phaṇa*. Siamese edition reads *phala*, fruits. ² Vin-a.1294 explains that the five kinds of co-religionists (monks, nuns, probationers, male and female novices) cannot make a bequest as they like, for their things are the Order's and so their gifts at the time of death take no effect. Householders' bequests, on the other hand, do take effect.

over. Monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can a nun give a monk a blow?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a blow should not be given to a monk by a nun. Whoever should give (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.”**¹ I allow, monks, that a nun, having seen a monk, should make way for him having stepped aside while (still) at a distance.”

BD.5.372

Now at that time a certain woman whose husband had gone away from home became with child by a lover.² She, having caused abortion, spoke thus to a nun dependent for alms on (her) family: “Come, lady, take away this foetus in a bowl.” Then that nun, having placed that foetus in a bowl, having covered it with her outer cloak, went away. Now at that time an undertaking had been made by a certain monk who walked for almsfood: “I will not partake of the first almsfood I receive without having given (of it) to a monk or a nun.” Then that monk, having seen that nun, spoke thus: “Come, sister, accept almsfood.”

Kd.20.13.1

“No, master,” she said. And a second time ... And a third time ... “No, master,” she said.

“I made an undertaking, sister, that I will not partake of the first almsfood that I receive without having given (of it) to a monk or a nun. Come, sister, accept almsfood.” Then that nun, being pressed by that monk, having pulled out her bowl, showed him, saying: “You see, master, a foetus in the bowl, but do not tell anyone.” Then that monk looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this nun take away a foetus in a bowl?” Then this monk told this matter to the monks. Those who were modest monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can this nun take away a foetus in a bowl?” Then these monks told this matter to the Lord. He said:

Vin.2.269

“Monks, a foetus should not be taken away in a bowl by a nun. Whoever should take one away, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow, monks, when a nun has seen a monk, having pulled out her bowl, to show it to him.”

Kd.20.13.2

¹ Cf. Bu-Pc.74 where it is an offence of expiation for a monk to give another a blow. ² Cf. Vin.3.83.

BD.5.373 Now at that time the group of six nuns, having seen a monk, having turned (their bowls) upside down,³ showed the bases of the bowls. Monks ... spread it about, saying: “How can the group of six nuns, having seen a monk, having turned (their bowls) upside down, show the bases of the bowls?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, nuns having seen a monk, should not show (him) the base of a bowl, having turned it upside down. I allow, monks, a nun who has seen a monk to show (him) her bowl, having set it upright, and whatever food there is in the bowl should be offered to the monk.”

Kd.20.14.1

Now at that time a membrum virile came to be thrown away on a carriage road in Sāvathī,¹ and nuns were looking at it.² People made an uproar and those nuns were ashamed. Then these nuns, having returned to the nunnery, told this matter to the nuns. Those who were modest nuns ... spread it about, saying: “How can these nuns look at a membrum virile?” Then these nuns told this matter to the monks. The monks told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not look at a membrum virile. Whoever should look at one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Kd.20.15.1

Vin.2.270

Now at that time people gave food to monks, the monks gave it to nuns. People ... spread it about, saying: “How can these revered sirs give to others what was given them for their own enjoyment? It is as though we do not know how to make a gift.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not give to others what was given you for your own enjoyment. Whoever should (so) give, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time food for the monks was (too) abundant. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give it to an Order.” There was an even greater abundance. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, also to give away what belongs to an individual.”³

³ parivattetvā. ¹ Cf. Mi.124. ² sakkaccam upanijjhāyati, as at Vin.1.193. ³ I.e. probably food specially given to different monks. Cf. puggalika at Kd.6.39, Kd.20.24.

Now at that time the food for monks that was stored⁴ was (too) abundant. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to make use of a store of food for monks, the monks having offered it to nuns.”¹

BD.5.374
Kd.20.15.2

(The same repeated but reading nun for monk and vice versa).

Now at that time lodgings for monks were (too) abundant; the nuns had none.² The nuns sent a messenger to the monks, saying: “It were good, honoured sirs, if the masters would give us lodgings temporarily.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow you, monks, to give lodgings to nuns temporarily.”

Kd.20.16.1

Now at that time menstruating nuns sat down and lay down on stuffed couches and stuffed chairs;³ the lodgings were soiled with blood. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not sit down or lie down on stuffed couches and stuffed chairs. Whoever should (so) sit down or should (so) lie down, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, a household robe.”⁴ The household robe was soiled with blood. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a pin and a little cloth.”⁵ The little cloth fell down.⁶ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow them, monks, having tied it with a thread, to tie it round the thighs.” The thread broke. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow them, monks, a loin-cloth, a hip-string.”⁷

Kd.20.16.2

Vin.2.271

⁴ *sannidhikataṃ āmisaṃ*. Cf. Bu-Pc.38, and see BD.2.339 for notes. ¹ *bhikkhunīhi bhikkhūhi paṭiggahāpetvā*. Vin-a.1294 says, having accepted yesterday, the food that was set aside having been offered today by monks may be made use of by nuns. ² Or perhaps, not enough, *na hoti*. ³ Cf. Kd.16.2.7. ⁴ *āvasathacivara*. See Nuns' Bi-Pc.47. ⁵ *āṇicolaka*. Vinaya Texts iii.348, n.1 says “*āṇi* must here be ‘that part of the leg immediately above the knee, the front of the thigh,’ cf. Böhtlingk-Roth, s.v. No. 2.” I think, however, two things must be meant, *āṇi* and *colaka*, or the next sentence would have repeated both, instead of only *colaka*. The point is that a “pin” was too insecure, and so “thread” was tried. *Āṇi* is a usual word for peg or pin. ⁶ *nipphaṭati*. Cf. the word at Vin.2.151 where it appears to mean to fall out or to fall in. Here it may imply to fall away from the pin. ⁷ *saṃvelliyaṃ kaṭisuttakaṃ*. *Saṃvelliya* forbidden to monks at Kd.15.29.5; *kaṭisuttaka* at Kd.15.2.1.

BD.5.375 Now at that time the group of six nuns wore a hip-string the whole time. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord He said: “**Monks, nuns are not to wear a hip-string the whole time. Whoever should (so) wear one, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, monks, a hip-string when they are menstruating.”

The Second Portion for Repeating

THIRD RECITATION SECTION

Now at that time ordained women were to be seen without sexual characteristics and who were defective in sex and bloodless and with stagnant blood and who were always dressed and dripping and deformed and female eunuchs and man-like women and those whose sexuality was indistinct and those who were hermaphrodites.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow you, monks, to question a woman who is being ordained about twenty-four things that are stumbling-blocks. And thus, monks, should she be questioned: ‘You are not without sexual characteristics? ... You are not a hermaphrodite? Have you diseases like this:² leprosy, boils, eczema, consumption, epilepsy? Are you a human being? Are you a woman? Are you a free woman? Are you without debts? You are not in royal service? Are you allowed by your mother and father, by your husband?³ Have you completed twenty years of age?⁴ Are you complete as to bowl and robe? What is your name? What is the name of your woman proposer?’”⁵

Kd.20.17.2

Now at that time monks asked nuns about the things which are stumbling-blocks. Those wishing for ordination were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to answer. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow,

¹ Same list occurs at [Vin.3.129](#) in definition of “he abuses”. Cf. the examination of male candidates for ordination at [Kd.1.76](#). ² Cf. [Kd.1.76-Kd.1.77](#) as far as to end of 17 below.

³ See Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.80](#). ⁴ See Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.71-Bi-Pc.73](#). ⁵ *pavattinī*. See Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.69](#), and [BD.3.377](#) where *pavattinī* is defined as *upajjhā*, woman preceptor.

monks, ordination in the Order of monks after she has been ordained on the one side, and has cleared herself (in regard to the stumbling-blocks) in the Order of nuns.”

Now¹ at that time nuns asked those wishing for ordination, but who were not instructed, about the things which are stumbling-blocks. Those wishing for ordination were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to answer. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

BD.5.376

Vin.2.272

“I allow them, monks, having instructed first, afterwards to ask about the things which are stumbling-blocks.”

They instructed just there in the midst of the Order. As before, those wishing for ordination were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to answer. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“I allow them, monks, having instructed aside, to ask about the things which are stumbling-blocks in the midst of the Order. And thus, monks, should she be instructed: First, she should be invited to choose a woman preceptor;² having invited her to choose a woman preceptor, a bowl and robes should be pointed out to her (with the words): ‘This is a bowl for you, this is an outer cloak, this is an upper robe, this is an inner robe, this is a vest,³ this is a bathing-cloth;⁴ go and stand in such and such a place’.”

Kd.20.17.3

Ignorant, inexperienced (nuns) instructed them. Those wishing for ordination, but who were not instructed, were at a loss, they were abashed, they were unable to answer. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, they should not be instructed by ignorant, inexperienced (nuns). Whoever (such) should instruct them, there is an offence of wrongdoing. I allow them, monks, to instruct by means of an experienced, competent (nun).”

Kd.20.17.4

Those who were not agreed upon instructed. They told this matter to the Lord. He said:

“Monks, they should not be instructed by one who is not agreed upon.”

¹ Cf. Vin.1.93f. for the questions put to monks on their ordination. ² *upajjhā*. ³ *saṃkacchikā*, cf. Vin.4.345. This and the bathing cloak make up the “five robes” for nuns, mentioned, e.g. at Vin.4.282 (Nuns’ Bi-Pc.24, Bi-Pc.25). ⁴ *udakasāṭikā*. One of the boons which Visākhā asked for at Vin.1.293 was that of bestowing bathing cloths on the Order of nuns; allowed at Vin.1.294. Their proper measurements are laid down at Vin.4.279.

Whoever (such) should instruct, there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow them, monks, to instruct by means of one who is agreed upon. And thus, monks, should she be agreed upon: oneself may be agreed upon by oneself, or another may be agreed upon by another. And how is oneself to be agreed upon by oneself? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. So-and-so wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, I could instruct So-and-so.' Thus may oneself be agreed upon by oneself. And how is another to be agreed upon by another? The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. So-and-so wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, So-and-so could instruct So-and-so.' Thus may another be agreed upon by another.

BD.5.377

Kd.20.17.5

"The nun who is agreed upon, having approached the one who wishes for ordination, should speak thus to her: 'Listen, So-and-so. This is for you a time for truth (-speaking), a time for fact (-speaking). When I am asking you in the midst of the Order about what is, you should say: "It is," if it is so; you should say: "It is not," if it is not so. Do not be at a loss, do not be abashed. I will ask you thus: "You are not without sexual characteristics? ... What is the name of your woman proposer?"'

Vin.2.273

"They arrived together. They should not arrive together. The instructor having arrived first, the Order should be informed (by her): 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. So-and-so wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. She has been instructed by me. If it seems right to the Order, let So-and-so come.' She should be told: 'Come.' Having made her arrange her upper robe over one shoulder, having made her honour the nuns' feet, having made her sit down on her haunches, having made her salute with joined palms, she should be made to ask for ordination, saying: 'Ladies, I am asking the Order for ordination. Ladies, may the Order raise me up out of compassion. And a second time, ladies ... And a third time, ladies, I am asking the Order for ordination. Ladies, may the Order raise me up out of compassion.'

Kd.20.17.6

"The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, wishes for ordi-

nation through the lady So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, I could ask So-and-so about the things that are stumbling-blocks. Listen, So-and-so, this is for you a time for truth (-speaking), a time for fact (-speaking). I am asking you about what is. You should say, "It is," if it is so; you should say, "It is not," if it is not so. You are not without sexual characteristics? ... What is the name of your woman proposer?' BD.5.378

"The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. She is quite pure in regard to the things which are stumbling-blocks, she is complete as to bowl and robes. So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may ordain So-and-so through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so. This is the motion. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, is asking the Order for ordination through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so. The Order is ordaining So-and-so through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so. If the ordination of So-and-so through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so, is pleasing to the ladies, they should be silent: she to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, ... should speak. So-and-so is ordained by the Order through the woman proposer, the lady So-and-so. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.'" Kd.20.17.7

"Taking her at once, having approached the Order of monks, having made her arrange her upper robe over one shoulder, having made her honour the monks' feet, having made her sit down on her haunches, having made her salute with joined palms, she should be made to ask for ordination, saying: 'I, the lady So-and-so, wish for ordination through the lady So-and-so, I am ordained on the one side in the Order of nuns. I am pure (in regard to the stumbling-blocks). Ladies, I am asking the Order for ordination. Ladies, may the Order raise me up out of compassion. I, the lady So-and-so ... am pure (in regard to the stumbling-blocks). And a second time ... I, the lady So-and-so ... am pure (in regard to the stumbling-blocks.) And a third time, ladies, I am asking the Order for ordination Ladies, may the Order raise me Kd.20.17.8

Vin.2.274

BD.5.379

up out of compassion.’ The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, wishes for ordination through So-and-so. She is ordained on the one side in the Order of nuns, she is pure (in regard to the stumbling-blocks). So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination through the woman proposer So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may ordain So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This one, So-and-so, wishes for ordination ... through the woman proposer So-and-so. The Order is ordaining So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so. If the ordination of So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter: Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me ... should speak. So-and-so is ordained by the Order through the woman proposer So-and-so. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this’.”

The shadow should be measured at once, the length of the season should be explained, the portion of the day should be explained, the formula should be explained, the nuns should be told: “Explain the three resources¹ to her and the eight things which are not to be done.”²

Kd.20.18.1

Now at that time nuns being uncertain as to seats in a refectory let the time go by.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, eight nuns (to be seated) according to seniority, the rest as they come in.” Now at that time nuns, thinking: ‘It is allowed by the Lord that eight nuns (may be seated) according to seniority, the rest as they come in,’ every-
BD.5.380 where reserved⁴ (seats) just for eight nuns according to seniority, for the rest as they come in. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow,

¹ Four resources for monks, see [Kd.1.77](#). But the third, forest-dwelling, is forbidden to nuns at [Kd.20.23](#). ² At [Kd.1.78](#) there are four *akaraṇiyaṇī* for monks which correspond to their four *Pārājikas*. The nuns, however, have eight *Pārājikas* (see [BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxff.](#)) and there is no doubt that reference is here being made to these. ³ [Vin-a.1294](#) says “making one get up, making another sit down, they let the right time for eating go by.” The right time for this is before midday, see [Vin.4.86](#). [Vin.4.166](#) (the wrong time). ⁴ *paṭibāhati*, as at [Kd.16.6.4](#), [Kd.16.7](#).

monks, (seats) in a refectory for eight nuns according to seniority, for the rest as they come in. **Nowhere else should (a seat) be reserved according to seniority. Whoever should reserve (one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**"

Vin.2.275

Now at that time nuns did not invite.¹ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **"Monks, nuns should not not invite. Whoever should not invite should be dealt with according to the rule."**² Now at that time nuns, having invited among themselves, did not invite in an Order of monks. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **"Monks, nuns, having invited among themselves, should not not invite in an Order of monks. Whoever should not (so) invite should be dealt with according to the rule."**³

Kd.20.19.1

Now at that time nuns, inviting (only) on the one side (of the Order) together with monks, made an uproar. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **"Monks, nuns should not invite (only) on the one side together with monks. Whoever should (so) invite, there is an offence of wrong-doing."**

Now at that time nuns, inviting before the meal, let the (right) time⁴ go by. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow them, monks, to invite after a meal." Inviting after a meal, they came to be at a wrong time.⁵ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow them, monks, having invited (among themselves) one day, to invite the Order of monks the following day."

Kd.20.19.2

Now at that time the entire Order of nuns, while inviting, created a disturbance. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow them, monks, to agree upon one experienced, competent nun to invite the Order of monks on behalf of the Order of nuns. And thus, monks, should she be agreed

¹ See Nuns' *Bi-Pc.57*, and *BD.3.354* for further references. ² Nuns' *Bi-Pc.57*. ³ Nuns' *Bi-Pc.57*. ⁴ See above, *BD.5.379, n.3*. ⁵ I.e. for inviting in the Order of monks, as the context shows.

BD.5.381 upon: First, a nun should be asked; having asked her, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: ‘Ladies, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon the nun So-and-so to invite the Order of monks on behalf of the Order of nuns. This is the motion. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the nun So-and-so to invite the Order of monks on behalf of the Order of nuns. If the agreement upon the nun So-and-so to invite the Order of monks on behalf of the Order of nuns is pleasing to the ladies, they should be silent; she to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The nun So-and-so is agreed upon by the Order to invite the Order of monks on behalf of the Order of nuns. It is pleasing to the Order. Therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’

Kd.20.19.3

“That nun who has been agreed upon, taking the Order of nuns (with her), having approached the Order of monks, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the monks’ feet, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak thus to it: Vin.2.276 ‘The Order of nuns, masters, is inviting the Order of monks in respect of what has been seen, heard, or suspected. Masters, let the Order of monks speak to the Order of nuns out of compassion and they, seeing (the offence), will make amends. And a second time, masters ... And a third time, masters, the Order of nuns is inviting the Order of monks ... will make amends’.”¹

Kd.20.20.1

Now at that time nuns suspended the Observance for monks, they suspended the Invitation, they issued commands, they set up authority,² they asked for leave, they reproved, they made to remember.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a monk’s Observance is not to be suspended by a nun: even if it is suspended, it is not (really) suspended, and for her who suspends it there is an offence of wrong-doing. The Invitation should not be suspended: even if it is suspended it is not (really) suspended, and for her who suspends it there is an offence of wrong-doing. Commands should not be issued: even if issued they are not (really) issued, and for her who issues them there is an offence of wrong-**

BD.5.382

¹ Cf. Kd.4.1.14 ² It would be preferable to read *anuvādam paṭṭhapenti* instead of *anuvādam thapenti*; cf. Kd.11.5. ³ Cf. Kd.11.5.

doing. Authority should not be set up: even if set up it is not (really) set up, and for her who sets it up there is an offence of wrong-doing. Leave should not be asked for: even if asked for it is not (really) asked for, and for her who asks there is an offence of wrong-doing. She should not reprove: the one reprovved is not (really) reprovved and for her who reproves there is an offence of wrong-doing. She should not make to remember: the one made to remember is not (really) made to remember, and for her who makes to remember there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time monks suspended the Observance for nuns ... (as above) ... they made to remember. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, I allow you to suspend through a monk a nun’s Observance: and if it is suspended it is properly suspended, and there is no offence for the one who suspends it ... to make to remember: and if she is made to remember she is properly made to remember, and there is no offence for the one who makes her remember.”

Now at that time the group of six nuns went in a vehicle,¹ both in one that had a bull in the middle yoked with cows, and in one that had a cow in the middle yoked with bulls. People ... spread it about, saying: “As at the festival of the Ganges and the Mahī.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: **“Monks, a nun should not go in a vehicle. Whoever should go in one should be dealt with according to the rule.”**²

Kd.20.21.1

Now at that time a certain nun came to be ill; she was not able to go on foot. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a vehicle for (a nun) who is ill.” Then it occurred to nuns: “Now, (should the vehicle be) yoked with cows or yoked with bulls?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a handcart yoked with a cow, yoked with a bull.”

¹ Cf. Kd.5.9.4–Kd.5.10.3, and also Nuns’ Bi-Pc.85. ² Nuns’ Bi-Pc.85.

Vin.2.277
BD.5.383

Now at that time a certain nun became exceedingly uncomfortable owing to the jolting of a vehicle. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, a palanquin, a sedan-chair.”¹

Kd.20.22.1

Now at that time the courtesan Aḍḍhakāsī² had gone forth among the nuns. She was anxious to go to Sāvattḥī, thinking, ‘I will be ordained in the Lord’s presence.’ Men of abandoned life heard it said that the courtesan Aḍḍhakāsī was anxious to go to Sāvattḥī and they beset the way. But the courtesan Aḍḍhakāsī heard it said that the men of abandoned life were besetting the way and she sent a messenger to the Lord saying: “Even³ I am anxious for ordination. Now what line of conduct should be followed by me?” Then the Lord on this occasion, having given reasoned talk, addressed the monks, saying: “I allow you, monks, to ordain even through a messenger.”⁴

Kd.20.22.2

They ordained through a messenger who was a monk. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, you should not ordain through a messenger who is a monk. Whoever should (so) ordain there is an offence of wrong-doing.**” They ordained through a messenger who was a probationer ... a novice ... a woman novice ... through a messenger who was an ignorant, inexperienced (woman). “**Monks, you should not ordain through a messenger who is an ignorant, inexperienced (woman). Whoever should (so) ordain there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow you, monks, to ordain through a messenger who is an experienced, competent nun.

Kd.20.22.3

“That nun who is the messenger, having approached the Order, having arranged her upper robe over one shoulder, having honoured the monks’ feet, having sat down on her haunches, having saluted with joined palms, should speak to it thus: “The lady So-and-so wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. She is ordained on the one side, in the Order of nuns, and is pure;⁵ she is not coming only on account of some danger. The lady

¹ *pāṭaṅkiṃ*. Vin-a.1295 says *paṭapoṭalikaṃ*, variant reading *patapoṭṭalikaṃ*, cf. Vin-a.1085.

² Her verses at Thig.25, Thig.26. Cf. *aḍḍhakāsika* at Kd.8.2. ³ Oldenberg has *hi*, Thig-a.31

pi. ⁴ It was probably usual for a nun to be ordained through an Order of not less than ten persons, as it was for monks, Kd.1.31.2; Kd.9.4.1. Vin-a.1295 says “ordination through a messenger existed on account of any one of the ten dangers.” Here, danger from human

beings. ⁵ As to the stumbling-blocks. Cf. use of *visuddhā* at Kd.10.17.2.

So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination; may the Order out of compassion¹ raise up that lady. The lady So-and-so ... is not coming on account of some danger. And a second time the lady So-and-so is asking the Order ... raise up that lady. The lady So-and-so wishes for ordination through the lady So-and-so. She is ordained on the one side in the Order of nuns, and is pure; she is not coming only on account of some danger. And a third time the lady So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination; may the Order out of compassion raise up that lady.’

BD.5.384

The Order should be informed by an experienced, competent monk, saying: ‘Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. So-and-so wishes for ordination through So-and-so. She is ordained on the one side in the Order of nuns and is pure; she is not coming only on account of some danger. So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination through the woman proposer So-and-so. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may ordain So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. So-and-so wishes for ordination through So-and-so ... So-and-so is asking the Order for ordination through the woman proposer So-and-so. The Order is ordaining So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so. If the ordination of So-and-so through the woman proposer So-and-so is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. And a second time I speak forth this matter ... And a third time I speak forth this matter: Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me ... he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.’ The shadow should be measured at once,² the length of the season should be explained, the portion of the day should be explained, the formula should be explained, the nuns should be told: ‘Explain the three resources to her and the eight things which are not to be done’.”

Vin.2.278

Now at that time nuns were staying in a forest; men of abandoned life seduced them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not stay in a forest. Whoever should stay (in one) there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”³

Kd.20.23.1

BD.5.385

¹ Cf. Kd.1.76.8. ² As at Kd.20.17.8. ³ Cf. Kd.20.17.8, n..

Kd.20.24.1

Now at that time a storeroom¹ came to be given to an Order of nuns by a lay-follower. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, a storeroom." The storeroom was not enough.² They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, a dwelling."³ The dwelling was not enough. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow, monks, building operations."⁴ The building operations were not enough. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow you, monks, to build even what belongs to an individual."⁵

Kd.20.25.1

Now at that time a certain woman had gone forth among the nuns when she was already pregnant, and after she had gone forth she was delivered of a child.⁶ Then it occurred to that nun: "Now what line of conduct should be followed by me in regard to this boy?" They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow her, monks, to look after him until he attains to years of discretion."⁷ Then it occurred to that nun: 'It is not possible for me to live alone,⁸ nor is it possible for another nun to live with a boy. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?' They told this matter to the Lord. He said: "I allow them, monks, having agreed upon one nun, to give her to that nun as a companion.⁹ And thus, monks, should she be agreed upon: First, that nun should be asked; having asked her, the Order should be informed by an experienced, competent nun, saying: 'Ladies, let the Order listen to me. If it is pleasing to the Order, the Order may agree upon the nun So-and-so as companion to the nun So-and-so. This is the motion. Ladies, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon the nun So-and-so as companion to the nun So-and-so. If the agreement upon the nun So-and-so

Vin.2.279

BD.5.386

¹ *uddosita*. See **BD.3.177, n.2**; also **BD.2.16, n.2**. Vin-a.1295 here again explains by *bhaṇḍasālā*, a hall for goods. ² *na sammati*, as at **Kd.15.13.3**. Vin-a.1295 explains by *nappahoti*, did not suffice. ³ *upassaya*; here Vin-a.1295 says *ghara*, a house. ⁴ *navakamma*, here probably more than "repairs." Vin-a.1295 says "I allow you to carry out building operations for nuns for the sake of the Order." ⁵ *puggalikaṃ kātuṃ*, or, even for individuals. Buddhaghosa has no note. Cf. the word at **Kd.20.15.1**. ⁶ At Nuns' **Bi-Pc.61** it is an offence to ordain a pregnant woman, but it is not an offence for the one who ordains her if she thinks that she is not pregnant. ⁷ Vin-a.1295 says until he is able to eat and wash himself properly. ⁸ Cf. Nuns' **Bi-Ss.3**, Nuns' **Bi-Pc.14**. ⁹ Cf. **BD.3.190, BD.3.267, BD.3.323, BD.3.357, BD.3.360**.

as companion to the nun So-and-so is pleasing to the ladies, they should be silent; she to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The nun So-and-so is agreed upon by the Order as companion to the nun So-and-so. It is pleasing to the Order; therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

Kd.20.25.2

Then it occurred to that nun who was the companion: ‘Now what line of conduct should be followed by me in regard to this boy?’ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow them, monks, to behave in regard to that boy exactly as they would behave to another man, except for sleeping under the same roof.”¹

Now at that time a certain nun who had fallen into an offence against an important rule, was undergoing *mānatta*.² Then it occurred to that nun: “It is neither possible for me to live alone, nor is it possible for another nun to live with me. Now, what line of conduct should be followed by me?” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow them, monks having agreed upon one nun, to give her to that nun as a companion. And thus, monks, should she be agreed upon: ... (as in [Kd.20.26.1](#)) ‘... Thus do I understand this..’”

Kd.20.25.3

Now at that time a certain nun, having disavowed the training,³ left the Order;⁴ having come back again she asked the nuns for ordination. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, there is no disavowal of the training by a nun, but in so far as she is one who leaves the Order,⁵ she is in consequence not a nun.”

Kd.20.26.1

¹ Vin-a.1295 says excepting only a sleeping place in the same house, *sahāgāraseyyamattarū*. But, it adds, the mother is able to lie down and having put the child on her breast to wash it, make it drink, feed it and adorn it. ² Cf. the 5th and 8th important rules at [Kd.20.1.4](#). Also on *mānatta* see [Kd.12.6.1](#). ³ On this state of dissatisfaction see [Vin.3.24–Vin.3.28](#). ⁴ *vibbhami*. This, and disavowing the training, occur at e.g. [Kd.2.22.3](#). ⁵ *vibbhantā*. Vin-a.1295 says if, leaving the Order at her own pleasure and approval, having clothed herself in white clothes, she is thus not a nun, but this is not through disavowing the training.

Kd.20.26.2
BD.5.387

Now at that time a certain nun, wearing the saffron robes, went over to the fold of a sect;⁶ having come back again she asked the nuns for ordination. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “Monks, whatever nun, wearing the saffron robes, goes over to the fold of a sect, on coming back should not be ordained.”¹

Kd.20.27.1

Vin.2.280

Now at that time nuns being scrupulous, did not consent to greeting by men, to their cutting (their) hair, to their cutting (their) nails, to their dressing a sore. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow them, monks, to consent to (these actions).”²

Kd.20.27.2

Now at that time nuns were sitting down cross-legged,³ consenting to the touch of heels.⁴ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not sit down cross-legged. Whoever should (so) sit down, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time a certain nun was ill. There was no comfort for her if she was not cross-legged. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “I allow, monks, the half cross-legged (posture)⁵ for nuns.”

Kd.20.27.3

Now at that time nuns relieved themselves in a privy; the group of six nuns caused abortion there. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not relieve themselves in a privy. Whoever should**

⁶ *titthāyatanāṃ saṅkhami*, as at Vin.1.69, where there is a similar rule for monks. ¹ Vin-a.1295 says not only should she not be ordained, but she cannot even obtain the “going forth.”

² See Nuns’ Bi-Pj.8 It would seem as if these things were permissible if neither party were filled with desire. ³ *pallaṅkena nisīdanti*. Vin-a.1296 says *pallaṅkaṃ abhujjivā nisīdanti*. So probably *pallaṅka* does not mean “divan” here as it does at Vin.4.299, see BD.3.271, n.3.

⁴ *paṇhisamphassa*. Not at all clear whose heels were touching, but probably the nuns’ next on either side. *Pallaṅkena* may have double meaning of sitting down cross-legged and sitting down “divan-wise,” i.e. sitting down cross-legged and in a row. It was probably disturbing to meditation if heels touched, hence the prohibition. ⁵ *aḍḍhapallaṅka*. Vin-a.1296 says the *pallaṅka* is made having drawn in one foot (only and leaving the other straight out).

Of course, if *pallaṅka* is taken as divan, *aḍḍhapallaṅka* must be half a divan—*Vinaya Texts* iii.367, n.2 says “probably a cushion.”

do so there is an offence of wrong-doing. I allow them, monks, to relieve themselves where it is open underneath, covered on top.”⁶

BD.5.388

Now at that time nuns bathed with chunam. People looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not bathe with chunam. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them, monks, the red powder of rice husks and clay.”¹

Kd.20.27.4

Now at that time nuns bathed with scented clay. People ... spread it about, saying: “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not bathe with scented clay.**² **Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow, them, monks, ordinary clay.”

Now at that time nuns, bathing in a bathroom, created a disturbance. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not bathe in a bathroom. Whoever should bathe (in one), there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time nuns bathed against the stream consenting to the touch of the current.³ They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not bathe against the stream. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.**”

Now at that time nuns bathed not at a ford; men of abandoned life seduced them. They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns**

⁶ The idea is that there should be no privacy. Cf. *Kd.18.9, Kd.18.10.* ¹ *kukkusaṃ mattikaṃ.* Vin-a.1296 explains by saying, *kuṇḍakañ c’eva mattikañ ca*, the red powder of rice husks as well as clay. Both these were allowed to monks for building operations. *Kd.16.3.1.* ² Cf. Nuns’ *Bi-Pc.88, Bi-Pc.89.* ³ *dhārāsamphassa.*

should not bathe not at a ford. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.”

Now at that time nuns bathed at a ford for men. People ... spread it about, saying, “Like women householders who enjoy pleasures of the senses.” They told this matter to the Lord. He said: “**Monks, nuns should not bathe at a ford for men. Whoever should (so) bathe, there is an offence of wrong-doing.** I allow them monks, to bathe at a ford for women.”¹

The Third Portion for Repeating

Told is the Tenth Section: that on Nuns

IN THIS SECTION ARE A HUNDRED AND SIX ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

The Gotamid asked for the going forth, the Truthfinder did not allow it, from Kapilavatthu the Leader went to Vesālī. /

Covered with dust² she made it known to Ānanda in the porch.

Saying: “Is she able?” he asked about the method; saying, “(She was your) mother” and “(your) nurse.” /

A century and that day, no monk, desiring,

Invitation, important rules, two years, not abusing, /

Complying with these eight rules for exhortation³ during her life.

Acceptance of the important rules—that is the ordination for her. /

A thousand years to only five (hundred) by the similes of the pot-thieves, mildew, red-rust:⁴ thus an injury to what is true *dhamma*. /

May, looking forward,⁵ build a dyke; again it is the stability of what is true *dhamma*.

To be ordained, the lady, greeting according to seniority, /

Will not carry out like this, in common and not in common,

about exhortation, and about the Pātimokkha, “now, by whom?”, to a nunnery, /

If they do not know he explains, and they do not confess,⁶ through a monk,

to acknowledge through a monk, acknowledgement through a nun, /

He explained, (formal) act, by a monk, they looked down on, or by a nun,

¹ *mahilātitthe*. On nuns bathing see also [Vin.1.293](#), [Vin.4.259](#), [Vin.4.278](#). ² Siamese edition reads *rajokiṇṇā*, as suggested at [Vin.2.328](#); Sinhalese edition *rajokiṇṇena*. ³ Oldenberg’s text and Sinhalese read *ovāden’ aṭṭha te dhammā*; Siamese edition *ovaṭo ca aṭṭha dhammā* (with variant reading as text). ⁴ Sinhalese and Siamese editions read *mañjēṭṭhikā* (Sinhalese reading -ka) for Oldenberg’s *mañcaṭṭhika*-. ⁵ Oldenberg: *pā eva*, probably for *paṭigacc’ eva* of [Kd.20.1.6](#). But Sinhalese edition reads *āliṃ bandheyy’ upamāhi*, and Siamese *pāliṃ bandheyy’ upamāhi*, with variant readings as in Oldenberg. ⁶ Here *karonti*, for *paṭikaronti*.

to explain, and to quarrel, having cancelled, and about Uppala-(vaṇṇā), /
 In Sāvattihī, muddy water, did not greet, bodies and thighs
 and private parts and the group offended and associated with, /
 Not to be greeted is the penalty, for nuns likewise again,
 and the prohibition, exhortation, is it allowable? he went away, /
 Ignorant, without ground, decision, exhortation, an Order of five,
 two or three, they did not undertake, ignorant ones, ill, setting out on a journey, /
 Forest-dwellers, they did not announce, and they did not come back,
 long, bamboo and leather, and woven cloth, plaited, and fringed,
 And plaited cloth, and fringed, and plaited thread, (and) fringed, /
 Cow's leg-bone, cow's jaw-bone, backs of the hands, likewise the feet,¹
 thighs (and) faces, gums, smearing, rubbing (and) with chunam, /
 They marked,² and painting the body, painting the face, likewise the two,
 ointment marks (and) distinguishing marks, from a window, in the light, and
 about dancing, /
 Courtesan, tavern, slaughter-house, a shop, usury, trade,
 they kept slaves, women slaves, servants, servant women, /
 Animals, and greens, they carried pieces of felt, Vin.2.282
 robes that were dark green, yellow, red, crimson, that were black, /
 Brownish-yellow, reddish-yellow, not cut up, and long,
 and if they should wear (robes) with (borders) of flowers, snakes' hoods,³ jackets,
 as well as (garments made of the) Tirīṭa tree. /
 If a nun, after she has gone, on a probationer, on a woman novice BD.5.391
 bestows her requisites, it is the (Order of) nuns that is the owner. /
 If a woman lay-follower on a monk, on a novice, on a lay-follower,
 and on others is bestowing her requisites, the (Order of) monks is the owner. /
 About a Mallian (woman), foetus, base of the bowl, membrum concerning
 food,
 and abundant, even greater, food that was stored, /
 As for monks below, do likewise for nuns,
 lodgings, menstruating, was soiled, and cloth and pin,⁴ /
 They broke, and all the time, there were to be seen:
 beginning with women without sexual characteristics,
 those defective in sex, bloodless, just the same for those with stagnant blood, /
 Always dressed, dripping, deformed, women eunuchs,
 man-like women, and those of indistinct sexuality, and those who were hermaphrodites,

¹ Sinhalese, *pādam*; Oldenberg: *pari*; Siamese *padam* as suggested at [Vin.2.328](#). ² Oldenberg: *lañchenti*; Sinhalese: *lañchanti*; Siamese: *lañcenti*. ³ *pala* here, instead of *phaṇa* of [Kd.20.10.5](#). Sinhalese and Siamese read *phala*. ⁴ Oldenberg: *paṭāni ca*. [Vin.2.329](#) suggests *patati ca*, “and it fell down,” evidently to replace *nipphaṭati* of [Kd.20.16.2](#). But I prefer to take it as a substitute for *āṇicolaka* (on which see note, [BD.5.374](#) above). For *paṭa* is also a word for “cloth”; thus the compound *paṭāni* supports my view that *āṇi* and *colaka* are words for two separate items.

/

Beginning with those defective in sexual characteristics and going as far as hermaphrodites.

This is from the abbreviation below: leprosy, boils, eczema and /

Consumption, epilepsy, are you a human woman? and a free woman?

without debts (and) not in the royal service and allowed (and) twenty, /

Complete, and what name and that of your woman proposer?:

having asked about twenty-four stumbling-blocks, there is ordination. /

They were at a loss, instructed, and likewise in the midst of the Order,

a woman preceptor should be chosen,¹ outer cloak, inner and upper robes, /

BD.5.392 And vest (and) bathing cloth having explained them they may be used,²
ignorant ones, not agreed on, on one side, if she asks, questioned about the stumbling-
blocks, /

Ordained on one side, likewise again in the Order of monks,

the shadow, the season, the day and formula, the three resources, /

The eight things not to be done, the right time, or everywhere eight,

nuns did not invite, and the Order of monks likewise, /

Disturbance, before the meal, and at the wrong time, disturbance,

Observance, Invitation, commands, authority, /

Leave, reprov'd, made to remember: objected to by the great Sage.

Just as monks, so nuns: allowed by the great Sage (was) /

A vehicle, and ill (and) yoked, jolting vehicle, Aḍḍhakāsika,

Vin.2.283 monk, probationer, novice, woman novice and ignorant (woman), /

In a forest, a store-room by a lay-follower, a dwelling,

the building operations were not enough, pregnant, alone, /

And sleeping under the same roof, against an important rule,

and having disavowed, went over to the fold of,

greeting and hair and nails and treating a sore,³ /

Cross-legged, and ill, privy, with chunam, scented clay,

in a bathroom, against the stream, not at a ford, and at one for men, /

The Great Gotamid asked and also judiciously did Ānanda.

There were four assemblies for going forth in the dispensation of the Conqueror. /

For the sake of arousing emotion for what is true *dhamma* and for awakening

it was taught thus by the Awakened One, as medicine for a disease. /

Other women also, recognised thus in what is true *dhamma*,

Vin.2.284 nurture the everlasting state⁴ where, having gone, they grieve not.

¹ *upajjhā gāha*. ² *pesaye*. ³ *vakakammannā* should probably read *vaṇa (paṭi) kammanāṃ* as at *Kd.20.27.1*, Sinhalese and Siamese editions. ⁴ *accuta ṭhāna*, the place not deceased from, not passed away from, not fallen from.

21. (RECITATION WITH) FIVE HUNDRED (PAÑCASATA)

ORIGIN OF THE COUNCIL

Then¹ the venerable Kassapa the Great addressed the monks, saying: “Once upon a time, your reverences, I was going along the high-road from Pāvā to Kusināra together with a large Order of monks, with at least five hundred monks.² Then I, your reverences, stepping aside from the way, sat down at the root of a certain tree. Now at that time a certain Naked Ascetic, having picked up a flower of the Coral Tree³ at Kusināra, was going along the high-road to Pāvā. Then I, your reverences, saw that Naked Ascetic coming in the distance, and seeing him I spoke thus to him: ‘Do you, your reverence not know about our Teacher?’ He said: ‘Yes, I know, your reverence, the recluse Gotama attained *nibbāna* a week ago. Because of that I picked up this flower of the Coral Tree.’

Kd.21.1.1
BD.5.393

“Your reverences, of those monks who were not passionless, some, stretching forth their arms, wailed, they fell down hurting themselves, they reeled backwards and forwards, saying: ‘Too soon has the Lord attained *nibbāna*, too soon has the Well-farer attained *nibbāna*, too soon has the Eye in the World disappeared.’ But those monks who were passionless, these, mindful, circumspect, bore (their grief), saying: ‘Impermanent are compounded things—what is here possible because of this?’

¹ Cf. DN.ii.962 ² Quoted at Kh-a.91, Vin-a.5. ³ *mandārava*. Cf. DN.ii.137; *Erythrina fulgens*. A tree growing only in heaven. If its flowers were found on the earth something special must have happened. Not the same as the Pāricchattaka, also a celestial coral-tree, of which there were five.

“Then I, your reverences, spoke thus to these monks: ‘Enough, your reverences, do not grieve, do not lament, for has it not already been explained by the Lord: ‘Of every single thing that is dear and beloved there is variation, separation, becoming otherwise. What is here possible, your reverences, because of this: that whatever is born, has become, is composite, is liable to dissolution? Indeed, thinking: ‘Let not that be dissolved’ — such a situation does not exist”¹.

BD.5.394

“Then at that time, your reverences,² one named Subhadda, who had gone forth when old, was sitting in that assembly. Then your reverences, Subhadda who had gone forth when old spoke thus to these monks: ‘Enough, your reverences, do not grieve, do not lament, we are well rid of this great recluse. We were worried when he said: “This is allowable to you, this is not allowable to you.” But now we will be able to do as we like and we won’t do what we don’t like’.

Vin.2.285

“Come, let us, your reverences, chant *dhamma* and discipline before what is not *dhamma* shines out and *dhamma* is withheld, before what is not discipline shines out and discipline is withheld, before those who speak what is not-*dhamma* become strong and those who speak *dhamma* become feeble, before those who speak what is not discipline become strong and those who speak discipline become feeble.”³

Kd.21.1.2

“Well then, honoured sir, let the elder select monks.” Then the venerable Kassapa the Great selected five hundred perfected ones, less one. Monks spoke thus to the venerable Kassapa the Great:⁴

“Honoured sir, this Ānanda, although he is still a learner, could not be one to follow a wrong course through desire, anger, delusion, fear; and he has mastered much *dhamma* and discipline under the Lord. Well, now, honoured sir, let the elder select the venerable Ānanda as well.” Then the venerable Kassapa the Great selected the venerable Ānanda as well.

Kd.21.1.3

Then it occurred to the monks who were elders:⁵ “Now, where should

¹ Also at DN.ii.118. ² At DN.ii.162 the Subhadda incident is placed before the speech which here precedes it. At DN-a.599 he is identified with the barber of Ātuma who went forth when old, and who, as told at Vin.1.249, was angry when Gotama refused to accept the meal he had prepared. The above incident was his revenge. ³ As at Kd.22.1.7. Quoted at DN-a.3,602, Vin-a.6. ⁴ Quoted at DN-a.5, Kh-a.92, Vin-a.7. ⁵ Quoted at DN-a.5, Vin-a.7.

we chant *dhamma* and discipline?” Then it occurred to the monks who were elders: “There is great resort for alms at Rājagaha and lodgings are abundant. Suppose that we, spending the rains at Rājagaha, should chant *dhamma* and discipline (there), and that no other monks were to come up to Rājagaha for the rains.”¹

BD.5.395

Kd.21.1.4

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great informed the Order, saying: “Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon these five hundred monks to chant *dhamma* and discipline while they are spending the rains in Rājagaha, and that the rains should not be spent in Rājagaha by any other monks. This is the motion. Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. The Order is agreeing upon these five hundred monks to chant *dhamma* and discipline while they are spending the rains in Rājagaha, and that the rains should not be spent in Rājagaha by any other monks. If the agreement upon these five hundred monks to chant *dhamma* and discipline while they are spending the rains in Rājagaha, and that the rains should not be spent in Rājagaha by any other monks, is pleasing to the venerable ones you should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. These five hundred monks are agreed upon by the Order to chant *dhamma* and discipline while they are spending the rains in Rājagaha, and (it is agreed) that the rains should not be spent in Rājagaha by any other monks. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus, do I understand this.”

Vin.2.286

Kd.21.1.5

Then the monks who were elders went to Rājagaha to chant *dhamma* and discipline.² Then it occurred to the monks who were elders: “Now, repairs to broken and dilapidated parts were praised by the Lord. Come, let us during the first month, make repairs to the broken and dilapidated parts; having assembled in the middle month, we will chant *dhamma* and discipline.” Then the monks who were elders made repairs to the broken and dilapidated parts during the first month.

¹ The elders did not want others to take part in the Council; but if they came they would have to so as to render valid the proceedings. For had only part of an assembly or Order present there taken part in them, the proceedings would have been invalid for they would have been carried out by an incomplete assembly, *vagga*. ² Some of this paragraph quoted at DN-a.8.

Kd.21.1.6

BD.5.396

Then the venerable Ānanda, thinking:¹ “Tomorrow is the assembly. Now it is not suitable in me that I, being (only) a learner, should go to the assembly,” and having passed much of that night in mindfulness as to body, when the night was nearly spent thinking: “I will lie down,” he inclined his body, but (before) his head had touched the mattress and while his feet were free from the ground—in that interval his mind was freed from the cankers with no residuum (for rebirth) remaining. Then the venerable Ānanda, being a perfected one, went to the assembly.²

Kd.21.1.7

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great informed the Order, saying:³ “Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order I could question Upāli on discipline.” Then the venerable Upāli informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I, questioned on discipline by the venerable Kassapa the Great, could answer.” Then the venerable Kassapa the Great spoke thus to the venerable Upāli: “Where,⁴ reverend Upāli, was the first offence involving defeat laid down?”

“At Vesālī, honoured sir.”

“Regarding whom?”

“Regarding Sudinna the Kalandaka.”

“On what subject?”

“On sexual intercourse.”

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Upāli as to the subject of the first offence involving defeat and he questioned him as to its provenance and he questioned him as to the individual⁵ and he questioned him as to what was laid down and he questioned him as to what was further laid down⁶ and he questioned him as to what was an offence and he questioned him as to what was no offence.⁷

¹ Cf. DN-a.9-10, which differs somewhat. ² Quoted at DN-a.10. ³ Quoted DN-a.11.

⁴ Quoted at DN-a.12, Vin-a.30. ⁵ These first three questions are quoted at Vin-a.30. ⁶ *anupaññatti*; the additions made to the rule that was laid down, the *paññatti*, after it had been first laid down. Cf. Vin.5.2. ⁷ These are the cases mentioned after the Old Commentary’s explanations of the words of the rules.

“Then, reverend Upāli, where was the second offence involving defeat laid down?”

“In Rājagaha, honoured sir.”

“Regarding whom?”

“Regarding Dhaniya, the potter’s son.”

“On what subject?”

“On taking what is not given.”

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Upāli as to the subject of the second offence involving defeat and he questioned him as to its provenance and he questioned him ... as to what was no offence.

“Then, reverend Upāli, where was the third offence involving defeat laid down?”

“At Vesālī, honoured sir.”

“Regarding whom?”

“Regarding several monks.”

“On what subject?”

“On human beings.”¹

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Upāli as to the subject of the third offence involving defeat and he questioned him as to its provenance and he questioned him ... as to what was no offence.

“Then, reverend Upāli, where was the fourth offence involving defeat laid down?”

“At Vesālī, honoured sir.”

“Regarding whom?”

“Regarding the monks on the banks of the Vaggumudā.”

“On what subject?”

“On conditions of further-men.”

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Upāli as to the subject of the fourth offence involving defeat and he questioned him as to its provenance and he questioned him as to ... what was no offence. In this same way he questioned him about both the disciplines.² Constantly questioned, the venerable Upāli answered.³

¹ *manussaviggaha*. “Depriving of life” is to be understood. ² I.e. that for monks and that for nuns. ³ Quoted at DN-a.12.

Kd.21.1.8

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me.¹ If it seems right to the Order, I could question Ānanda about *dhamma*.” Then the venerable Ānanda informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I, questioned on *dhamma* by the venerable Kassapa the Great, could answer.” Then the venerable Kassapa the Great spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda:²

BD.5.398

“Where, reverend Ānanda, was the Brahmajāla³ spoken?”

“Honoured sir, between Rājagaha and Nālandā in the royal rest-house at Ambalaṭṭhikā.”

“With whom?”

“Suppiya the wanderer and Brahmadata the brahmin youth.”⁴ Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Ānanda as to the provenance of the Brahmajāla and he questioned him as to the individual(s).

“But where, reverend Ānanda, was the Sāmaññaphala⁵ spoken?”⁶

“In Rājagaha, honoured sir, in Jīvaka’s mango grove.”

“With whom?”

“With Ajātasattu, the son of the Videhan (lady).”

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great questioned the venerable Ānanda as to the provenance of the Sāmaññaphala and he questioned him as to the individual. In this same way he questioned him about the five Nikāyas. Constantly questioned, the venerable Ānanda answered.

ON THE LESSER AND MINOR TRAINING RULES

Kd.21.1.9

Then the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the monks who were elders: “The Lord, honoured sirs, spoke thus to me at the time of his attaining *nibbāna*:

¹ Quoted at DN-a.13. ² Quoted at DN-a.14. ³ The first Suttanta in the Dīgha. ⁴ Here both Vin-a.16 and DN-a.14 add: “On what subject?” “On praise and not praise.” ⁵ The second Suttanta in the Dīgha. ⁶ Quoted at Vin-a.16. After this sentence DN-a.14 proceeds differently.

‘If the Order, Ānanda, after my death is willing, the lesser and minor rules of training¹ may be abolished’.”²

“But did you, reverend Ānanda, ask the Lord, saying: ‘But which, Lord, are the lesser and minor rules of training?’”

“No, I, honoured sirs, did not ask the Lord, saying: ‘But which, Lord, are the lesser and minor rules of training?’”

Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.” Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat, except for the rules for the thirteen offences entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.” Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat ... except for the rules for the two undetermined offences, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.” Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat ... except for the rules for the thirty offences of expiation involving forfeiture, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.” Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat ... except for the rules for the ninety-two offences of expiation, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.” Some elders spoke thus: “Except for the rules for the four offences involving defeat ... except for the rules for the four offences which ought to be confessed, the rest are lesser and minor rules of training.”

BD.5.399
Vin.2.288

Then the venerable Kassapa the Great informed the Order, saying: “Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. There are rules of training for us which affect householders, and householders know concerning us: ‘This is certainly allowable for the recluses, sons of the Sakyans, this is certainly not allowable.’ If we were to abolish the lesser and minor rules of training there would be those who would say: ‘At the time of his cremation³ a rule of training had been laid down by the recluse Gotama for disciples; while the Teacher was amongst them these trained themselves in the rules of training, but since the Teacher has attained *nibbāna* among them, they do not now train themselves in the rules of training.’ If it seems right to the

¹ See [BD.3, Introduction, p.x](#) and [Bu-Pc.72](#), especially [BD.3.41](#) where see n.1 for further references; also see *Questions of King Milinda* i.202f. ² [DN.ii.154](#). ³ *dhūmakālikarū*, as at [Kd.16.17.1](#).

Order, the Order should not lay down what has not been laid down, nor should it abolish what has been laid down. It should proceed in conformity with and according to the rules of training that have been laid down.¹ This is the motion.² Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. There are rules of training for us ... ‘... these do not now train themselves in the rules of training.’ The Order is not laying down what has not been laid down, nor is it abolishing what has been laid down. It is proceeding in conformity with and according to the rules of training that have been laid down. If the not laying down of what has not been laid down, if the not abolishing of what has been laid down, if the proceeding in conformity with and according to the rules of training that have been laid down are pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom they are not pleasing should speak. The Order is not laying down what has not been laid down, it is not abolishing what has been laid down, it is proceeding in conformity with and according to the rules of training that have been laid down. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

BD.5.400

Kd.21.1.10

Then the monks who were elders spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “This, reverend Ānanda, is an offence of wrong-doing for you, in that you did not ask the Lord, saying: ‘But which, Lord, are the lesser and minor rules of training?’ Confess that offence of wrong-doing.”

Vin.2.289

“I, honoured sirs, out of unmindfulness, did not ask the Lord, saying: ‘But which, Lord, are the lesser and minor rules of training?’ I do not see that as an offence of wrong-doing,³ yet even out of faith in the venerable ones I confess that as an offence of wrong-doing.”

“This too is an offence of wrong-doing for you, reverend Ānanda, in that you sewed the Lord’s cloth for the rains⁴ after having stepped on it. Confess that offence of wrong-doing.”

“But I, honoured sirs, not out of disrespect, sewed the Lord’s cloth for the rains after having stepped on it. I do not see ... but even out of faith in the venerable ones I confess that as an offence of wrong-doing.”

¹ Cf. Vin.3.231 (Bu-NP.15.1.2). ² This speech of Kassapa’s, as far as here, is quoted at DN-a.592. ³ Cf. Kd.10.1.8 ⁴ *vassikasātikā*, see BD.2.134, n.1. Defined at Vin.4.173 (BD.3.99).

“This too is an offence of wrong-doing for you, reverend Ānanda, in that you had the Lord’s body first of all honoured by women; because these were weeping, the Lord’s body was defiled by tears. Confess that offence of wrong-doing.”

“But I, honoured sirs, thinking: ‘Do not let these be (here) at a wrong time,’¹ had the Lord’s body honoured first of all by women. I do not see that as an offence of wrong-doing ... but even out of faith ...”

BD.5.401

“This too is an offence of wrong-doing for you, reverend Ānanda, in that you,² (although) a broad hint was being given, a palpable sign was being made, did not ask the Lord, saying: ‘Let the Lord remain for a (full) lifespan,³ let the well-farer remain for a (full) lifespan for the welfare of the many-folk, for the happiness of the many-folk, out of compassion for the world, for the good, the welfare, the happiness of *devas* and mankind.’ Confess that offence of wrong-doing.”

“But I, honoured sirs, because my mind was obsessed⁴ with Māra, did not ask the Lord, saying: ‘Let the Lord remain ... the happiness of *devas* and mankind.’ I do not see ... out of faith ...”

“This too is an offence of wrong-doing for you, reverend Ānanda, in that you made an effort for the going forth of women in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder.⁵ Confess this offence of wrong-doing.”

“But I, honoured sirs, made an effort for the going forth of women in the *dhamma* and discipline proclaimed by the Truth-finder, thinking: ‘This Gotamid, Pajāpatī the Great,⁶ is the Lord’s aunt, foster-mother, nurse, giver of milk, for when the Lord’s mother passed away, she suckled him.’ I do not see that as an offence of wrong-doing, but even out of faith in the venerable ones I confess that as an offence of wrong-doing.”

Kd.21.1.11

¹ *mā yimā vikāle ahesuṃ*. Vin-a.1297 explains by *mā imāsaṃ vikāle gamanāni ahesuṃ*, do not let there be comings of these at a wrong time. ² Cf. AN.iv.309-AN.iv.310, DN.ii.103, DN.ii.115, SN.v.259, Ud.62. ³ *kappa*. See GS.iv.206, n. AN-a.iv.149=SN-a.iii.251=Ud-a.323 calls it *āyukappa*, and say whatever is the length of men’s life at this and that time, bringing that to the full, let him remain. ⁴ As at Vin.4.94, Vin.4.229. ⁵ Above, Kd.20.1. ⁶ As at Kd.20.1.3; MN.iii.253.

Now at that time the venerable Purāṇa was walking on almstour in the Southern Hills together with a large Order of monks, with at least five hundred monks. Then the venerable Purāṇa, having stayed in the Southern Hills for as long as he found suiting, after the monks who were elders had chanted *dhamma* and discipline, approached Rājagaha, the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding place, and the monks who were elders; having approached, having exchanged friendly greetings with the monks who were elders, he sat down at a respectful distance. The monks who were elders spoke thus to the venerable Purāṇa as he was sitting down at a respectful distance:

Vin.2.290

BD.5.402

“Reverend Purāṇa, *dhamma* and discipline have been chanted by monks who are elders. Submit yourself¹ to this chanting.”

“Your reverences, well chanted by the elders are *dhamma* and discipline, but in that way that I heard it in the Lord's presence, that I received it in his presence, in that same way will I bear it in mind.”

ON THE HIGHER PENALTY

Kd.21.1.12

Then the venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the monks who were elders: “Honoured sirs, the Lord, at the time of attaining *nibbāna*, spoke thus to me: ‘Well now, Ānanda, after I am gone, let the Order enjoin the higher penalty² for the monk Channa.’³”

“But did you, reverend Ānanda, ask the Lord: ‘But what, Lord, is the higher penalty?’”

“I, honoured sirs, did ask the Lord: ‘But what, Lord, is the higher penalty?’ He said, ‘Ānanda, Channa may say whatever he likes to monks, but the monk Channa must neither be spoken to, nor exhorted nor instructed by

¹ *upehi*, as at Kd.19.3.3 (towards the end). ² *brahmadāṇḍa*. ³ As at DN.ii.154. See BD.2.230, BD.2.257, BD.2.393, BD.3.36 for further references to Channa's misdoings. It is not clear whether this penalty was imposed because he had taken the nun's part in a dispute with monks, or because he had repeatedly reviled Sāriputta and Moggallāna, as appears from Dhp-a.ii.110–Dhp-a.ii.112, where also other details are to be found. Cf. also Thag-a.i.166.

monks’.”¹

“Well then, reverend Ānanda, do you yourself enjoin the higher penalty on the monk Channa.”

“But how can I, honoured sirs, enjoin the higher penalty on the monk Channa? That monk is fierce and rough.”

“Well then, reverend Ānanda, go along together with many monks.”

“Very well, honoured sirs,” and the venerable Ānanda, having answered these monks in assent, having, together with a large Order of monks, with at least five hundred monks, disembarked at Kosambī from a boat going upstream,² sat down at the root of a certain tree not far from King Udena’s³ pleasure grove.

BD.5.403

Now at that time King Udena was amusing himself in his pleasure grove together with his concubines. Then King Udena’s concubines heard:⁴ “It is said that our teacher, master Ānanda, is sitting at the root of a certain tree not far from the pleasure grove.” Then King Udena’s concubines spoke thus to King Udena: “Sire, they say that our teacher ... not far from the pleasure grove. We, sire, want to see master Ānanda.”

Kd.21.1.13

“Well then, do you see the recluse Ānanda.” Then King Udena’s concubines approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, they sat down at a respectful distance. The venerable Ānanda gladdened, rejoiced, roused, delighted King Udena’s concubines with talk on *dhamma* as they were sitting down at a respectful distance. Then King Udena’s concubines, gladdened ... delighted by the venerable Ānanda with talk on *dhamma*, bestowed five hundred inner robes on the venerable Ānanda. Then King Udena’s concubines, pleased with the venerable Ānanda’s words, having thanked him, rising from their seats, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, having kept their right sides towards him, approached King Udena.

Vin.21.291

Kd.21.1.14

¹ Cf. AN.ii.113 where it is said that this is destruction, *vadha*, in the ariyan discipline: when a monk is to be neither spoken to, exhorted nor instructed by the Truth-finder or by his fellow Brahma-farers. ² *ujjavanikāya*, cf. Vin.4.65. ³ King of Kosambī. ⁴ Cf. Kd.21.1.13–Kd.21.1.14 with Ja.ii.23–Ja.ii.24 where Ānanda receives another thousand robes.

King Udena saw the concubines coming in the distance; seeing them he spoke thus to the concubines: “Did you see the recluse Ānanda?”

“We, sire, did see master Ānanda.”

“But did not you give anything to the recluse Ānanda?”

“We gave, sire, five hundred inner robes to master Ānanda.”

King Udena looked down upon, criticised, spread it about, saying: “How can this recluse Ānanda accept so many robes? Will the recluse Ānanda set up trade in woven cloth or will he offer (them) for sale in a shop?”¹ Then King Udena approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, he exchanged greetings with the venerable Ānanda; having exchanged greetings of friendliness and courtesy, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, King Udena spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda:

“Did not our concubines come here, good² Ānanda?”

“Your concubines did come here, your majesty.”

“Did they not give anything to the honourable³ Ānanda?”

“They gave me five hundred inner robes, your majesty.”

“But what can you, honourable⁴ Ānanda, do with so many robes?”

“I will share them, your majesty, with those monks whose robes are worn thin.”

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those old robes that are worn thin?”

“We will make them into upper coverings,⁵ your majesty.”

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those upper coverings that are old?”

“We will make these into mattress coverings, your majesty.”

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those mattress coverings that are old?”

“We will make them into ground coverings, your majesty.”

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those ground coverings that are old?”

“We will make them into foot-wipers, your majesty.”

¹ *paggāhikasālam pasāressati. Cf. Kd.20.10.4, āpaṇam pasārenti.* ² *bho.* ³ *bhoto.*

⁴ *bhavam.* ⁵ *uttarattharaṇa.*

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those foot-wipers that are old?”

“We will make them into dusters, your majesty.”

“But what will you do, good Ānanda, with those dusters that are old?”

“Having torn them into shreds, your majesty, having kneaded them with mud, we will smear a plaster-flooring.”

Then King Udena, thinking: “These recluses, sons of the Sakyans, use everything in an orderly way and do not let things go to waste,”¹ bestowed even another five hundred woven cloths on the venerable Ānanda. Therefore this was the first time that a thousand robes had accrued to the venerable Ānanda as an alms of robes.

Vin.2.292

Then the venerable Ānanda approached Ghosita’s monastery; having approached, he sat down on an appointed seat. Then the venerable Channa approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached, having greeted the venerable Ānanda, he sat down at a respectful distance. The venerable Ānanda spoke thus to the venerable Channa as he was sitting down at a respectful distance: “The higher penalty has been enjoined on you, reverend Channa, by the Order.”

Kd.21.1.15
BD.5.405

“But what, honoured Ānanda, is the higher penalty?”

“You, reverend Channa, may say what you please to the monks, but you must neither be spoken to nor exhorted nor instructed by the monks.”

Saying: “Am I not, honoured Ānanda, destroyed because I may be neither spoken to nor exhorted nor instructed by the monks?” he fell down fainting at that very place. Then the venerable Channa, being troubled about the higher penalty, being ashamed of it, loathing it,² dwelling alone, aloof, zealous, ardent, self-resolute, having soon realised here and now by his own super-knowledge that supreme goal of the Brahma-faring for the sake of which young men of family rightly go forth from home into homelessness, entering on it, abided in it and he understood: “Destroyed is (individual) birth, lived is the Brahma-faring, done is what was to be done, now there is no more of being this or that.” And so the venerable Channa became

¹ *sabbeva yoniso upanenti na kulāvaṃ gamenti*. Vin-a.1297 says the meaning of *na kulāvaṃ gamenti* is *na koṭṭhake gopenti*, they do not keep them in a storeroom. ² As at [Vin.1.86f.](#)

another of the perfected ones. Then the venerable Channa, having attained perfection, approached the venerable Ānanda; having approached he spoke thus to the venerable Ānanda: “Honoured Ānanda, now revoke the higher penalty for me.”

“From the moment that you, reverend Channa, realised perfection, from that moment the higher penalty was revoked for you.”

Kd.21.1.16

Now because five hundred monks—not one more, not one less—were at this chanting of the discipline, this chanting of the discipline is in consequence called ‘that of the Five Hundred’.¹

Told is the Eleventh Section: that on the Five Hundred

IN THIS SECTION ARE TWENTY-THREE ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

BD.5.406

When the Self-enlightened One had attained *nibbāna* the elder called Kassapa addressed a group of monks on preserving what is true *dhamma*, /

Vin.2.293

On the high-road from Pāvā, what was declared by Subhadda,

we will chant true *dhamma*, before what is not-*dhamma* shines forth, /

And he selected Ānanda also for the one in the five hundred less one

spending the rains² in chanting *dhamma* and discipline in the best of resorts. /

He asked Upāli about discipline, the wise Ānanda about the Suttantas:

disciples of the Conqueror chanted the three Piṭakas. /

The lesser and minor, various, in conformity with and according to what was laid down,

he did not ask, having stepped on, he caused to honour, and he did not request, /

the going forth of women: out of faith they are offences of wrong-doing for me.

Purāṇa, and the higher penalty, the concubines with Udena, /

So many, and worn thin, upper coverings, mattresses,

ground coverings, foot-wipers, dusters, kneading with mud,

a thousand robes accrued for the first time to the one called Ānanda. /

Threatened with the higher penalty he attained the fourfold truth.

The five hundred having mastered:

therefore it is called (the Chanting) of the Five Hundred.

Vin.2.294

¹ Cf. Kd.22.2.9. ² Text: *vassanto*, Sinhalese and Siamese: *vasanto*.

22. (RECITATION WITH) SEVEN HUNDRED (SATTASATA)

FIRST RECITATION SECTION

Now at that time, a century after the Lord had attained *nibbāna*, monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī¹ promulgated ten points at Vesālī, saying:

Kd.22.1.1
BD.5.407

1. “The practice concerning a horn for salt² is allowable;
2. the practice as to five finger-breadths is allowable;
3. the practice concerning ‘among the villages’ is allowable;
4. the practice concerning residences is allowable;
5. the practice concerning assent is allowable;
6. the practice concerning what is customary is allowable;
7. the practice concerning unchurned butter-milk is allowable;
8. it is allowable to drink unfermented toddy;
9. a piece of cloth to sit upon that has no border is allowable;
10. gold and silver are allowable.”

Now at that time the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā,³ walking on tour among the Vajjis, arrived at Vesālī.⁴ Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, stayed there at Vesālī in the Great Grove in the Hall of the Gabled Roof. Now at that time the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī, having on that Observance day filled a bronze pot with water, having set it

¹ As at Kd.17.4.1. ² The terms of the ten points are explained below, Kd.22.1.10; Kd.22.2.8.

³ I take this parent to be his mother. This Yasa is mentioned at DN-a.525; Mbvs.96; Mbvs.iv.57.

⁴ This passage is quoted at Vin-a.i.34.

in the midst of the Order of monks, spoke thus to lay-followers of Vesālī who came: “Give, sirs, a *kahāpaṇa*¹ for the Order and half a *pāda*² and a stamped *māsaka*;³ there will be something to be done for the Order in respect of requisites.”

BD.5.408 When they had spoken thus, the venerable Yasa,⁴ the son of Kākaṇḍakā, spoke thus to the lay-followers of Vesālī: “Do not, sirs, give *kahāpaṇas* and stamped *māsakas* to the Order: gold and silver are not allowable to recluses, sons of the Sakyans.⁵ The recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not consent (to accept) gold and silver, the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not receive gold and silver, the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not use jewels and refined gold,⁶ they have done with gold and silver.”⁷ Then the lay-followers of Vesālī, being spoken to thus by the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, nevertheless gave *kahāpaṇas* ... and stamped *māsakas* to the Order. Then the monks who were Vajjis or Vesālī, having towards the end of that night arranged those gold coins,⁸ distributed portions according to the number of monks.⁹ Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī spoke thus to the

Vin.2.295

“This portion of gold coins is for you, reverend Yasa.”

Kd.22.1.2 “I have no need of a portion of gold coins, sirs, I do not consent (to accept) gold coins.”

Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī, saying: “This reverend Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, is reviling and abusing¹⁰ lay-followers who are faithful and believing; come, let us carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation¹¹ for him,” carried out a (formal) act of reconciliation for him. Then the ven-

¹ See [BD.1.29, n.](#), and [BD.1.71, n.2.](#) ² On *pāda*, see [BD.1.71, n.2.](#) Although the reading above is *aḍḍhaṃ pi pādāṃ pi*, as though *aḍḍha* and *pāda* were separate mediums of exchange, in taking the phrase as meaning “half a *pāda*” I am following Vv-a.77=Dhp-a.iii.108 which gives the descending line: *kahāpaṇa, aḍḍhapāda, māsaka*. *Vinaya Texts* iii.387 takes *aḍḍha* as half a *kahāpaṇa*, but the justification for its being half a *pāda* is greater. ³ See [BD.1.72, n.1,](#) and [Vin-a.689](#) where it is said that some *māsakas* have figures stamped on them. ⁴ For the ten points and the Yasa episode see also *Mahāvamsa* iv.9ff., *Dīpavaṃsa* iv.45ff., *Dīpavaṃsa* v.23; [Vin-a.i.33ff.](#) ⁵ [Bu-NP.18.](#) ⁶ *suvaṇṇa*. On this and *hiraṇṇa* see [BD.1.28, n.](#) ⁷ All these phrases occur at [SN.iv.325](#) as above; the last two are also used at [MN.ii.51](#) in respect of the potter. ⁸ *hiraṇṇa*. ⁹ *bhikkhaggena*. Cf. *seyyaggena, vihāraggena* and *pariveṇaggena* at [Kd.16.11.3.](#) ¹⁰ Both these terms are defined at [Vin.4.309.](#) They occur also at [Vin.4.52.](#) ¹¹ *paṭisāraṇiyakamma*. See [Kd.11.18.5.](#)

erable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā spoke thus to the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī:

“It was laid down by the Lord, your reverences, that a companion messenger should be given to a monk for whom a (formal) act of reconciliation has been carried out.¹ Your reverences, give me a monk as companion messenger.”

Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī, having agreed upon one monk, gave him to the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, as a companion messenger. Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, having entered Vesālī together with the monk who was his companion messenger, spoke thus to the lay-followers of Vesālī:

BD.5.409

“It is said that I revile and abuse the venerable lay-followers² who are faithful and believing, and that I afford little satisfaction in that I speak of not-*dhamma* as not-*dhamma*; in that I speak of *dhamma* as *dhamma*, in that I speak of not-discipline as not-discipline, in that I speak of discipline as discipline.

Kd.22.1.3

“Friends, the Lord was once staying at Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There, friends, the Lord addressed the monks, saying: ‘Monks,³ there are these four stains of the moon and the sun, stained by which stains the moon and the sun burn not, shine not, blaze not. What are the four? Dense cloud, monks, is a stain of the moon and the sun, stained by which stain the moon and the sun ... blaze not. A snow-cloud⁴ ... Smoke and dust ... Rāhu,⁵ monks, is a stain of the moon and the sun, stained by which stain the moon and the sun burn not, shine not, blaze not. These, monks, are the four stains of the moon and the sun, stained by which stains the moon and the sun burn not, shine not, blaze not.

“‘Even so, monks, there are four stains of recluses and brahmins, stained by which stains some recluses and brahmins burn not, shine not, blaze not. What are the four? There are, monks, some recluses and brahmins who drink fermented liquor, who drink spirits,⁶ abstaining not from drinking

¹ Kd.11.22.2. ² *āyasmante upāsake*. ³ As at AN.ii.53. Cf. Mi.273. ⁴ *mahikā*; at AN.ii.53, *mahiyā*. Vin-a.1297 says it is a snow-cloud (*himavatāhakā*) at the time of snow-fall. ⁵ He

figures in the Indian myth of eclipses. See SN.i.50, SN.i.51 where the Moon and Sun *devas* were seized by Rāhu; they both invoked Gotama’s aid, and he told Rāhu to set the *devas* free.

⁶ See Bu-Pc.51.

fermented liquor and spirits. This, monks, is the first stain of recluses and brahmins, stained by which stain some recluses and brahmins burn not, shine not, blaze not. And again, monks, some recluses and brahmins indulge in sexual intercourse,¹ abstaining not from sexual intercourse. This, monks, is the second stain ... And again, monks, some recluses and brahmins consent (to accept) gold and silver abstaining not from accepting gold and silver.² This, monks, is the third stain ... And again, monks, some recluses and brahmins earn a living by a wrong mode of livelihood, abstaining not from a wrong mode of livelihood.³ This, monks, is the fourth stain, stained by which stain some recluses and brahmins ... blaze not. These, monks, are the four stains of recluses and brahmins, stained by which stains some recluses and brahmins burn not, shine not, blaze not.' Friends, the Lord said this; the Well-farer having said this, the Teacher further spoke thus:

“Some recluses⁴ and brahmins are stained
 By lust and ill-will. Clothed in ignorance,
 Beings delight in pleasure-giving shapes;
 Liquor fermented and distilled they drink;
 They follow sexual lust; by folly blinded
 Some recluses and brahmins take gifts
 Of gold and silver and live wrongfully.

“These are called “stains” by the Awakened One,
 The kinsman of the Sun. Tainted by these
 Some recluses and brahmins burn not,
 They shine not, tarnished, dust-soiled, utter fools,
 Shrouded in darkness; slaves of craving they,
 Led by the cord of craving, and they swell

¹ See Bu-Pj.1. ² See Bu-NP:18, and DN.i.5 ³ At DN.i.9–DN.i.12 many wrong modes of livelihood are enumerated. ⁴ I follow translation at GS.ii.62–63, except that in the first line I have “stained” (Vinaya: *parikkiliṭṭhā*) instead of “snared” (Aṅguttara: *paṭikkīṭṭhā*), and in the last line I have “take on again-becoming” instead of “reap rebirth.”

The dreadful charnel-field¹ and take on again-becoming.’

“It is for speaking thus that it is said that I am reviling and abusing the venerable lay followers who are faithful and believing, and that I afford little satisfaction in that I speak of not-*dhamma* as not-*dhamma*, in that I speak of *dhamma* as *dhamma*, in that I speak of not-discipline as not-discipline, and in that I speak of discipline as discipline.

“Friends, the Lord was once staying at Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove at the squirrels’ feeding place. Now at that time,² friends, in the king’s private quarters this conversation arose among the king’s assembly as they were gathered together and sitting down: ‘Gold and silver are allowable for the recluses, sons of the Sakyans; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans consent (to accept) gold and silver; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans receive gold and silver.’ Now at that time, friends, a village headman, Maṇicūḷaka, was sitting down in that assembly. Then, friends, Maṇicūḷaka, the village headman, spoke thus to that assembly: ‘Do not, masters, speak thus. Gold and silver are not allowable to recluses, sons of the Sakyans; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not consent (to accept) gold and silver; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not receive gold and silver; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not use gold and silver, they have done with gold and silver.’ And, friends, Maṇicūḷaka, the village headman, was able to convince that assembly. Then, friends, Maṇicūḷaka the village headman, having convinced that assembly approached the Lord; having approached, having greeted the Lord, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, Maṇicūḷaka the village headman, spoke thus to the Lord: ‘Now, Lord, in the king’s private quarters ...³ I was able, Lord, to convince that assembly. I hope⁴ that I, Lord, maintaining thus, am one who asserts (fairly) what has been affirmed, and am not misrepresenting the Lord by what is not fact, but am maintaining a doctrine which conforms to his doctrine, and that

Kd.22.1.4

BD.5.411

Vin.2.297

¹ *vaḍḍhenti kaṭasiṃ*. Cf. Ud.6.8 *icc’ete ubho antā kaṭasiṃvaḍḍhanā kaṭasiyo diṭṭhī vaḍḍhenti*; also Thig.502 *kaṭasiṃ vaḍḍhente*; and the line above, from “they swell” to the end, with Thag.456 which however for our *ādiyanti* (take on) reads *ācinanti* (accumulate). ² As at SN.iv.325.

³ The whole is repeated in the text. ⁴ This speech occurs in almost identical terms at Kd.6.31.4; see also SN.iii.6, SN.iv.51, SN.iv.340, SN.iv.381; AN.i.161; cf. AN.ii.31, AN.iii.4, DN.i.161.

no one who is a fellow *dhamma*-man, a holder of (his) views, comes to a position incurring blame.’

“Certainly you, village headman, maintaining thus, are one who asserts (fairly) what I have affirmed, and are not misrepresenting me by what is not fact, but are maintaining a doctrine which conforms to my doctrine, and no one who is a fellow *dhamma*-man, a holder of (my) views, comes to a position incurring blame. For, village headman, gold and silver are not allowable to recluses, sons of the Sakyans; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not consent (to accept) gold and silver; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not receive gold and silver; the recluses, sons of the Sakyans do not use gold and silver, they have done with gold and silver. To whoever, village headman, gold and silver are allowable to him also are allowable the five strands of sense-pleasures; to whoever the five strands of sense-pleasures are allowable, certainly you may understand, village headman, (this to be) not the *dhamma* of recluses,¹ not the *dhamma* of sons of the Sakyans. Although I, village headman, spoke thus: Grass may be looked about for by one who needs grass; wood may be looked about for by one who needs wood; a wagon may be looked about for by one who needs a wagon; a man may be looked about for by one who needs a man²—yet I, village headman, have never said in any way that gold and silver may be consented to or looked about for.’ It is for speaking thus that it is said that I am reviling and abusing venerable lay-followers who are faithful and believing, and that I afford little satisfaction in that I speak of not-*dhamma* as not-*dhamma*, in that I speak of *dhamma* as *dhamma*, in that I speak of not-discipline as not-discipline, in that I speak of discipline as discipline.

“Once, friends, when the Lord was in Rājagaha, as before, he objected in connection with Upananda, the son of the Sakyans, to gold and silver and laid down a rule of training.³ It is for speaking thus that it is said that I am reviling and abusing venerable lay-followers who are faithful and believing, and that I afford little satisfaction in that I speak of not-*dhamma* as not-*dhamma*, in that I speak of *dhamma* as *dhamma*, in that I speak of not-discipline as not-discipline, in that I speak of discipline as discipline.”

¹ *samaṇadhamma*, recluses’ *dhamma*, mentioned also at AN.iii.371. ² The *Mañicūla-sutta* of SN.iv.325–SN.iv.327 stops here. ³ See Bu-NP.18.

When he had spoken thus the lay-followers of Vesālī spoke thus to Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā: “Honoured sir, master Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, is alone a recluse, a son of the Sakyans; these, one and all, are not recluses, not sons of the Sakyans. Honoured sir, let master Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, stay in Vesālī and we will make an effort in regard to the requisites of robes, almsfood, lodgings, medicines for the sick.”

BD.5.413

Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, having convinced the lay-followers of Vesālī, went to a monastery together with the monk who was his companion messenger.

Kd.22.1.7

Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī asked the monk who was the companion messenger, saying: “Your reverence, have the lay-followers of Vesālī been asked for forgiveness by Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā?”

“Your reverences, evil has been done to us; Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, is alone regarded as¹ a recluse, a son of the Sakyans; we, one and all, are regarded as not recluses, not sons of the Sakyans.”

Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī, saying: “Your reverences, this Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, not agreed upon by us, has given information² to householders. Come, let us carry out a (formal) act of suspension³ against him.” And these gathered together desirous of carrying out a (formal) act of suspension against him. Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, having risen above the ground, reappeared at Kosambī. Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, sent a messenger to the monks of Pāvā⁴ and (to those) of the southern region of Avantī,⁵ saying:

“Let the venerable ones come, we must attend to this legal question before what is not *dhamma* shines forth and *dhamma* is withheld, (before) what is not discipline shines forth and discipline is withheld, before those who speak what is not *dhamma* become strong and those who speak *dhamma* become feeble, (before) those who speak what is not discipline become strong and those who speak discipline become feeble.”⁶

Kd.22.1.8

¹ *kata*, literally made. ² *pakāseti*. Cf. [Kd.17.3.2ff.](#) ³ *ukkhepaniyakamma*. See [Kd.11.25.](#)

⁴ Mentioned at [Vin.1.253](#), and called there and above Pāṭheyyakā. See [BD.4.351, n.](#) [Vin-a.1105](#) calls Pāṭheyyaṃ (variant reading Pāveyyaṃ) a kingdom to the west of Kosala, which will no doubt account for the “western country” of *Vinaya Texts* iii.394. ⁵ See [Vin.1.195ff.](#) ⁶ As at [Kd.11.1.1.](#)

BD.5.414 Now at that time the venerable Sambhūta,¹ a wearer of coarse hempen cloth,² was staying on Ahogaṅgā mountain slope. Then the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, approached Ahogaṅgā mountain slope and the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth; having approached, having greeted the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, spoke thus to the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth:

“Honoured sir, these monks, Vajjis of Vesālī, are promulgating ten points:³ the practice concerning a horn for salt is allowable; the practice as to five finger-breadths is allowable; the practice concerning ‘among the villages’ is allowable; the practice concerning residences is allowable; the practice concerning assent is allowable; the practice concerning what is customary is allowable; the practice concerning unchurned buttermilk is allowable; it is allowable to drink unfermented toddy; a piece of cloth to sit upon that has no border is allowable; gold and silver are allowable. Come, honoured sir, we must attend to this legal question before what is not *dhamma* shines forth and *dhamma* is withheld, (before) what is not discipline shines forth and discipline is withheld, before those who speak what is not *dhamma* become strong and those who speak *dhamma* become feeble, (before) those who speak what is not discipline become strong and those who speak discipline become feeble.”

Vin.2.299

“Very well, your reverence,” the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, answered the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā in assent. Then as many as sixty monks of Pāvā, all forest-dwellers, all almsmen, all rag-robe wearers, all wearers of the three robes,⁴ one and all men perfected,⁵ gathered together on Ahogaṅgā mountain slope; and as many as eighty-eight monks of the southern region of Avantī, mostly forest-dwellers, mostly almsmen, mostly rag-robe wearers, mostly wearers of the three robes, and one and all men perfected, gathered together on Ahogaṅgā mountain slope.

Kd.22.1.9

BD.5.415

¹ Verses at Thag.291-Thag.294. See Thag-a.ii.122ff. Mentioned with Sāḷha, Revata, and Yasa as Ānanda’s pupils, Vin-a.34f. ² *sāṇavāsīn*. On *sāṇa* see BD.2.143, n.3. ³ As at Kd.22.1.1.

⁴ For references to these four ascetic practices see notes at BD.4.351. ⁵ They are not called this at Vin.1.253.

Then as these monks who were elders were considering, it occurred to them: “Now, this legal question is hard and troublesome. How can we acquire a faction through which we could be stronger in regard to this legal question?” Now at that time the venerable Revata¹ was staying in Soreyya. He had heard much, he was one to whom the tradition had been handed down, he was an expert in *dhamma*, expert in discipline, expert in the headings; wise, experienced, clever; conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training.² Then it occurred to the monks who were elders:

“This venerable Revata is staying in Soreyya. He has heard much ... desirous of training. If we could acquire the venerable Revata for the faction, thus could we be stronger in regard to this legal question.”

Then the venerable Revata, through the condition of deva-like hearing which was purified, surpassing that of men, heard these monks who were elders as they were considering. And having heard them, it occurred to him: “This legal question is hard and troublesome, yet it is not suitable for me to hold back from a legal question like this. But these monks are coming now. I will get no comfort crowded up by them. Suppose that I should go away beforehand?”

Then the venerable Revata went from Soreyya to Saṃkassa. Then the monks who were elders, having arrived at Soreyya, asked: “Where is the venerable Revata?” They spoke thus: “The venerable Revata has gone to Saṃkassa.” Then the venerable Revata went from Saṃkassato Kaṇṇakujja. Then the monks who were elders, having arrived at Saṃkassa, asked: “Where is the venerable Revata?” They spoke thus: “This venerable Revata has gone to Kaṇṇakujja.” Then the venerable Revata went from Kaṇṇakujja to Udumbara. Then the monks who were elders, having arrived at Kaṇṇakujja, asked: “Where is the venerable Revata?” They spoke thus: “This venerable Revata has gone to Udumbara.” Then the venerable Revata went from Udumbara to Aggaḷapura. Then the monks who were elders, having arrived at Udumbara, asked: “Where is the venerable Revata?” They spoke thus: “This venerable Revata has gone to Aggaḷapura.” Then the venerable Revata went from Aggaḷapura to Sahajāti. Then the monks who were elders, having

Vin.2.300

BD.5.416

¹ See Mahāvamsa iv.57, Mahāvamsa iv.60; cf. Dīpavamsa iv.49, Vin-a.i.33f. ² Stock, as at Vin.1.127, Vin.2.8; cf. AN.i.117, AN.ii.147, AN.iii.179.

arrived at Aggaḷapura, asked: “Where is the venerable Revata?” They spoke thus: “This venerable Revata has gone to Sahajāti.” Then the monks who were elders met the venerable Revata at Sahajāti.

Kd.22.1.10

Then the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, spoke thus to the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā: “Your reverence, this venerable Revata has heard much, he is one to whom the tradition has been handed down, he is an expert in *dhamma*, expert in discipline, expert in the headings; wise, experienced, clever; conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training. If we were to ask the venerable Revata a question, the venerable Revata would be capable of spending a whole night over just the one question. But now the venerable Revata will call upon a monk who is a pupil and a plain-song repeater.¹ Do you, when that monk has completed the plain-song intonation, having approached the venerable Revata, ask him about these ten points.”

“Very well, honoured sir,” the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, answered the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, in assent. Then the venerable Revata called upon the monk who was a pupil and a plain-song repeater. Then when that monk had completed the plain-song intonation, the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, approached the venerable Revata; having approached, having greeted the venerable Revata, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, spoke thus to the venerable Revata:

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning a horn for salt allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning a horn for salt?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to carry about salt in a horn, thinking, ‘I will enjoy whatever may be unsalted?’”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning two finger-breadths allowable?”

BD.5.417

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning two finger-breadths?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to eat a meal at the wrong time when the shadow has passed beyond two finger-breadths?”

¹ *sarabhāṇaka*. See note above, [BD.5.146](#).

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning ‘among the villages’ allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning ‘among the villages’?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable, thinking, ‘I will go now among the villages,’ having eaten, being satisfied, to eat a meal that is not left over?”¹

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning residences allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning residences?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable for several residences belonging to the same boundary to carry out various Observances?”

“Your reverences, it is not allowable.”

Vin.2.301

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning assent allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning assent?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable for an incomplete Order to carry out a (formal) act, thinking, ‘We will advise monks who arrive?’”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning what is customary² allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning what is customary?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable, thinking, ‘This is habitually done³ by my preceptor, this is habitually done by my teacher,’ to conduct oneself according to that?”

“Your reverence, the practice concerning what is customary is sometimes allowable, sometimes not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning unchurned buttermilk allowable?”

BD.5.418

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning unchurned buttermilk?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable, having eaten, being satisfied, to drink whatever is milk that is not left over but which has passed the stage of being milk (although) it has not arrived at the stage of being curds?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to drink unfermented toddy?”

¹ See Bu-Pc.35, and BD.2.328. ² *āciṇṇakappa*. Cf. Vin.1.79 (Kd.1.51.1). Dīpavaṃsa 4.47, Dīpavaṃsa 5.18. ³ *ajjhāciṇṇa*, as at Kd.14.5.1.

“What, your reverence, is this toddy?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to drink whatever is fermented liquor¹ (but) which has not fermented and has not arrived at the stage of being strong drink?”²

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, is a piece of cloth to sit upon that has no border³ allowable?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, are gold and silver allowable?”

“Your reverence, they are not allowable.”

“Honoured sir, these monks who are Vajjis of Vesālī are promulgating these ten points in Vesālī. Come, honoured sir, we must attend to this legal question before what is not *dhamma* shines forth and *dhamma* is withheld, (before) what is not discipline shines forth and discipline is withheld, before those who speak what is not *dhamma* become strong and those who speak *dhamma* become feeble (before) those who speak what is not discipline become strong and those who speak discipline become feeble.”

“Very well, your reverence,” the venerable Revata answered the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā in assent.

The First Portion for Repeating

SECOND RECITATION SECTION

The monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī heard: “They say that Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, is willing to attend to this legal question, is looking about for a faction, and they say that he is acquiring a faction.” Then it occurred to the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī: “This legal question is hard and troublesome. How could we acquire a faction through which we could be stronger in regard to this legal question?” Then it occurred to the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī: “This venerable Revata is one who has heard much, one to whom the tradition has been handed down, he is expert in *dhamma*,

BD.5.419

¹ *surā*. Cf. Bu-Pc.51. ² *majja*. See BD.2.385, n.1. ³ Cf. definition at Vin.3.232, Vin.4.123, Vin.4.171. See BD.2.87, n.5.

expert in discipline, expert in the headings; he is wise, experienced, clever; conscientious, scrupulous, desirous of training. If we could acquire the venerable Revata for the faction, thus could we be stronger in regard to this legal question.”

Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesāli prepared abundant requisites for recluses—bowls and robes and pieces of cloth to sit upon and needle-cases and waistbands and strainers and regulation water-pots. Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesāli, taking these requisites of recluses, went in a boat upstream¹ to Sahājati; having disembarked from the boat, they participated in a meal at the root of a certain tree.

Vin.2.302

Kd.22.2.2

Then as the venerable Sālha² was meditating in private a reasoning arose in his mind thus: “Which now are the speakers of *dhamma*—the monks from the East or those from Pāvā?” Then as the venerable Sālha was considering *dhamma* and discipline it occurred to him: “The monks from the East are not speakers of *dhamma*; the monks of Pāvā are speakers of *dhamma*.” Then a certain *devatā* of the Pure Abodes, knowing by mind the reasoning in the mind of the venerable Sālha, as a strong man might stretch out his bent back arm or might bend back his outstretched arm, even so, vanishing from the devas of the Pure Abodes, did she appear before the venerable Sālha. Then that *devatā* spoke thus to the venerable Sālha: “It is right, honoured Sālha, the monks from the East are not speakers of *dhamma*, the monks of Pāvā are speakers of *dhamma*. Well then, revered Sālha, stand firm according to *dhamma*.”³

“Both formerly and now I, *devatā*, have stood firm according to *dhamma*. Nevertheless I am not making known my views until I may be agreed upon in regard to this legal question.”

Kd.22.2.3

BD.5.420

Then those monks who were Vajjis of Vesāli, taking those requisites for recluses, approached the venerable Revata; having approached, they spoke thus to the venerable Revata: “Honoured sir, let the Order accept these requisites for recluses—bowls and robes and pieces of cloth to sit upon and needle-cases and waistbands and strainers and regulation water-pots.”

He said: “No, your reverences, I am complete as to the three robes” (for)

¹ *ujjavimsu*. ² Ānanda’s pupil, Vin-a.34–Vin-a.35. ³ Or, according to the rule, *yathā-dhammo tathā tiṭṭhāhi*. Cf. Mahāvamsa iv.29 *dhamme tiṭṭha*, stand firm in *dhamma*.

he did not want to accept. Now at that time a monk named Uttara, of twenty years' standing was the venerable Revata's attendant. Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī approached the venerable Uttara; having approached, they spoke thus to the venerable Uttara: "Let the venerable Uttara accept these requisites for recluses—bowls and ... regulation water-pots."

He said: "No, your reverences, I am complete as to the three robes," (for) he did not want to accept. They said: "Reverend Uttara, people used to bring requisites for recluses to the Lord. If the Lord accepted them, they were glad; but if the Lord did not accept them, they brought them to the venerable Ānanda, saying: 'Honoured sir, let the elder accept these requisites for recluses, thus will this (gift) be as though accepted by the Lord.' Let the venerable Uttara accept these requisites of recluses, thus will this (gift) be as though accepted by the elder."

Vin.2.303

Then the venerable Uttara, being pressed by the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī, took one robe, saying: "Let the reverend ones tell me what they have need of."

"Let the venerable Uttara say this much to the elder: 'Honoured sir, let the elder say this much in the midst of the Order: Awakened Ones, Lords, arise in the Eastern districts, the monks from the East are speakers of *dhamma*, the monks of Pāvā are speakers of what is not *dhamma*'."

"Very well, your reverences," and the venerable Uttara, having answered the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī in assent, approached the venerable Revata; having approached, he spoke thus to the venerable Revata: "Honoured sir, let the elder say this much in the midst of the Order: Awakened Ones, Lords, arise in the Eastern districts, the monks from the East are speakers of *dhamma*, the monks of Pāvā are speakers of what is not *dhamma*."

BD.5.421

Saying: "You, monk, are inciting me to what is not *dhamma*," the elder dismissed¹ the venerable Uttara. Then the monks who were Vajjis of Vesālī spoke thus to the venerable Uttara: "What, reverend Uttara, did the elder say?"

"Evil has been done to us, your reverences. Saying, 'You, monk, are inciting me to what is not *dhamma*,' the elder dismissed me."

¹ *paṇāmesi*. Cf. *Kd.1.27.2* where this word is used of the formal dismissal by a preceptor of the one who shares his cell. See also *Mahāvāṇsa* iv.30.

“Are not you, your reverence, a senior of twenty years’ standing?”

“Yes, your reverences.”

“Then we shall take up guidance under (you as) teacher.”¹

Then the Order assembled wishing to investigate that legal question. The venerable Revata informed the Order, saying: “Your reverences, let the Order listen to me. If we were to settle that legal question here, it might be that the monks who had taken it up originally might open it up for a further (formal) act.² If it seems right to the Order, let the Order settle this legal question wherever this legal question arose.”

Kd.22.2.4

Then the monks who were elders went to Vesālī willing to investigate that legal question. Now at that time Sabbakāmin³ was the name of an elder of the Order, (the oldest) on earth;⁴ it was a hundred and twenty years since his ordination; he had shared the cell of the venerable Ānanda, and he was staying at Vesālī. Then the venerable Revata spoke thus to the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth: “I, your reverence, am going up to the dwelling-place where the venerable Sabbākamin is staying. Do you, having gone up early to the venerable Sabbākamin, ask him about these ten points.”

“Very well, honoured sir,” the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, answered the venerable Revata in assent. Then the venerable Revata went up to that dwelling place where the venerable Sabbakāmin was staying. A lodging was made ready for the venerable Sabbakāmin in an inner room, and one for the venerable Revata on the veranda of the inner room. Then the venerable Revata, thinking: “I This elder is old, but he is not lying down,” did not lie down to sleep. The venerable Sabbakāmin, thinking: “This incoming monk is tired, but he is not lying down,” did not lie down to sleep.

BD.5.422

Vin.2.304

Kd.22.2.5

¹ *garunissaya*. *Garu* no doubt=*guru*. On *nissaya* see Kd.1.73. ² See Bu-Pc.63. ³ *Psalm*s of the Brethren p.226, n.1 suggests that the Sabbakāma of the Theragāthā is the same as the Sabbakāmin of *Vinaya Dictionary of Pali Proper Names* identifies the two. Called Sabbakāmin at Vin-a.i.34. He took a vow to purify the teaching of some Buddha in a birth during the time of Padumuttara Buddha. ⁴ *pathavyā saṅghathero*.

Then at the end of the night towards dawn, the venerable Sabbakāmin spoke thus to the venerable Revata: “Because of what abiding do you, dear,¹ abide now in the fullness thereof?”

“Because of abiding in loving-kindness, do I, honoured sir, abide now in the fullness thereof.”

“They say that you, dear, because of abiding in friendship² now abide in the fullness thereof. This abiding in friendship, beloved, this is loving-kindness.”

“Formerly, honoured sir, when I was a householder loving-kindness was practised by me, and because of that abiding in loving-kindness I now abide in the fullness thereof, and moreover perfection was attained by me long ago. Honoured sir, because of what abiding does the elder now abide in the fullness thereof?”

“Because of abiding in (the concept of) emptiness³ do I, beloved, now abide in the fullness thereof.”

BD.5.423

“They say that the elder, honoured sir, because of the abiding of great men⁴ now abides in the fullness thereof. This abiding of great men, honoured sir, this is (the concept of) emptiness.”⁵

Kd.22.2.6

“Formerly, beloved, when I was a householder emptiness was practised by me, and because of that abiding in emptiness I now abide in the fullness thereof, and moreover perfection was attained by me long ago.”

Then⁶ this chance talk of the monks who were elders was interrupted, because the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, ar-

¹ *bhummi*, a term of affection, says Vin-a.1298. ² *kullaka*. Vin-a.1298 explains by *uttāna*, stretched; clear. *Kullaka* is probably derived from *kaulya* = Pali *kulla*, belonging to the family, and possibly meaning that loving-kindness has been extended to others and that they have been suffused with his loving-kindness of mind. ³ *suññatāvihāra*. Cf. MN.iii.104, MN.iii.294. MN-a.v.105 explains as abiding in the attainment of the fruit of emptiness—or *phala-samāpatti* may mean “sustained fruition”; therefore “as abiding in the sustained fruition of emptiness.” On *suññatā* see especially *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, p.91, n.2; Atthasālinī 221–Atthasālinī 225; Kv.iii.2. At Atthasālinī 221 it is said that *suññatā* is applied to the purification formula, that it is a name of the transcendental Way, and that when one sees the *sankhāras* as “void” of self this insight is called *suññatā*. “Voidness” or “Emptiness” is the usual translation of *suññatā*, and must remain until something better is found. ⁴ *mahāpurisavihāra*. Cf. MN.iii.294. MN-a.v.106 explains as the abiding of great men: buddhas, individual buddhas, *tathāgatas* and great disciples. ⁵ This phrase occurs at MN.iii.294.

⁶ *carahi*, as at Vin.2.292.

rived there. Then the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, approached the venerable Sabbakāmin; having approached, having greeted the venerable Sabbakāmin, he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, spoke thus to the venerable Sabbakāmin:

“Honoured sir, these monks who are Vajjis of Vesāli are promulgating ten points: the practice concerning a horn for salt is allowable ... gold and silver are allowable. Honoured sir, much *dhamma*, and discipline has been mastered¹ by the elder at the feet² of a preceptor. As, honoured sir, the elder was considering *dhamma* and discipline, what occurred to him? Who are the speakers of *dhamma*—the monks from the East or those of Pāvā?”

“By you too, your reverence, has much *dhamma* and discipline been mastered at the feet of a preceptor. As you, your reverence, were considering *dhamma* and discipline, what occurred to you? Who are the speakers of *dhamma*—the monks from the East or those of Pāvā?”

“As I, honoured sir, was considering *dhamma* and discipline, this occurred to me: ‘the monks from the East are speakers of what is not *dhamma*, the monks of Pāvā are speakers of *dhamma*.’ Nevertheless I am not making known my views until I am agreed upon in regard to this legal question.”

“As I too, your reverence, was considering *dhamma* and discipline, this occurred to me: the monks from the East are speakers of what is not *dhamma*, the monks of Pāvā are speakers of *dhamma*. Nevertheless I am not making known my views until I am agreed upon in regard to this legal question.”

Vin.2.305

BD.5.424

Kd.22.2.7

Then the Order assembled, willing to investigate that legal question. But while they were investigating that legal question both endless disputations arose and of not one speech was the meaning clear. Then the venerable Revata informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were investigating this legal question both endless disputations arose and of not one speech was the meaning clear. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may settle this legal question by means of a referendum.”³ He selected four monks from the East, four monks from Pāvā—of the East-

¹ As at Kd.21.1.2. ² *mūle*. ³ Cf. Kd.14.14.19 where the proceeding to be used in such an emergency as arose and is recorded in subsequent sentence above, is laid down.

ern monks the venerable Sabbakāmin and the venerable Sāḷha and the venerable Khujjasobhita¹ and the venerable Vāsabhagāmika; of the monks from Pāvā the venerable Revata and the venerable Sambhūta, the wearer of coarse hempen cloth, and the venerable Yasa, the son of Kākaṇḍakā, and the venerable Sumana.² Then the venerable Revata informed the Order, saying:

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were investigating this legal question both endless disputations arose and of not one speech was the meaning clear. If it seems right to the Order, the Order may agree upon the four monks from the East and the four monks from Pāvā to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. This is the motion. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. While we were investigating this legal question ... was the meaning clear. The Order is agreeing upon the four monks from the East and the four monks from Pāvā to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. If the agreement upon the four monks from the East and the four monks from Pāvā to settle this legal question by means of a referendum is pleasing to the venerable ones, they should be silent; he to whom it is not pleasing should speak. The four monks from the East and the four monks from Pāvā are agreed upon by the Order to settle this legal question by means of a referendum. It is pleasing to the Order, therefore it is silent. Thus do I understand this.”

BD.5.425

Now at that time Ajita was the name of a monk of ten years' standing; he was a reciter of the Pātimokkha for the Order. Then the Order further agreed upon the venerable Ajita as appointer of seats for the monks who were elders.³ Then it occurred to the monks who were elders: “Now where should we settle this legal question?” Then it occurred to the monks who were elders: “This Vālika monastery⁴ is pleasing, with little noise, with little disturbance. Suppose that we should settle this legal question in Vālika

Vin.2.306

¹ Probably not to be identified with the *thera* of the same name at Thag.234, as perhaps suggested at Mahāvamsa iv.57. ² Names given at Vin-a.i.34-Vin-a.i.35; but there classified by reason of their being cell-sharers of Ānanda or Anuruddha. Cf. Mahāvamsa iv.47-Mahāvamsa iv.49. ³ Elders were allowed to sit down while the Pātimokkha was being recited. ⁴ See also Mahāvamsa iv.50; but Dīpavamsa v.29 says the Ten Points were settled at the Gabled Hall (Vesālī).

monastery?” Then the monks who were elders went to Vālika monastery, willing to investigate that legal question.

Kd.22.2.8

Then the venerable Revata informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I can ask the venerable Sabbakāmin about discipline.” Then the venerable Sabbakāmin informed the Order, saying: “Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. If it seems right to the Order, I, questioned about discipline by the venerable Revata, can answer.” Then the venerable Revata spoke thus to the venerable Sabbakāmin:

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning a horn for salt allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning a horn for salt?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to carry about salt in a horn, thinking: ‘I will enjoy whatever may be unsalted?’”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“In Sāvattthī, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”¹

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for eating what has been stored.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This first point, investigated by the Order, this is a point that is against *dhamma*, against discipline, not of the Teacher’s instruction. This is the first (voting-) ticket that I cast.

BD.5.426

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning two finger-breadths allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning two finger-breadths?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to eat a meal at the wrong time if the shadow has passed beyond two finger-breadths?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“At Rājagaha, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”²

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for eating at the wrong time.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This second point ... This is the second (voting-) ticket that I cast.

¹ Bu-Pc.38. ² Bu-Pc.37.

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning ‘among the villages’ allowable?”

What, your reverence, is this practice concerning ‘among the villages?’”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable, thinking: ‘I will go now among the villages,’ having eaten, being satisfied, to eat a meal that is not left over?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“At Sāvattthī, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”¹

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for eating what is not left over.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This third point ... This is the third (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning residences allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning residences?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable for several residences belonging to the same boundary to carry out various Observances?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“In Rājagaha, in what is connected with the Observance.”²

“What offence does one fall into?”

An offence of wrong-doing for going beyond discipline.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This fourth point ... This is the fourth (voting-) ticket that I cast.”

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning assent allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is the practice concerning assent?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable for an incomplete Order to carry out a (formal) act, thinking: ‘We will advise monks who arrive?’”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“In a matter of discipline on things pertaining to (the monks of) Campā.”³

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of wrong-doing for going beyond discipline.”

BD.5.427

Vin.2.307

¹ Bu-Pc.35. ² Kd.2.8.3. *Uposathasamīyutta*; *samīyutta* here being used, as noted at *Vinaya Texts* iii.410, n.2 for *khandhaka*, section. ³ Kd.9.3.5. *Campeyyake vinayavatthusmiri*. Vin. a.1299 here explains that this matter of discipline is handed down in the *Campeyyakkhandhaka*.

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This fifth point ... This is the fifth (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning what is customary allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is this practice concerning what is customary?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable, thinking: ‘This is what is habitually done by my preceptor, this is what is habitually done by my teacher,’ to conduct oneself according to that?”

“Your reverence, the practice concerning what is customary is sometimes allowable, sometimes not allowable.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This sixth point ... This is the sixth (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, is the practice concerning unchurned buttermilk allowable?”

“What, your reverence, is the practice concerning unchurned buttermilk?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable having eaten, being satisfied, to drink whatever is milk that is not left over but which has passed the stage of being milk (although) it has not arrived at the stage of being curds?”

BD.5.428

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“At Sāvattthī, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”¹

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for eating what was not left over.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This seventh point ... This is the seventh (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to drink unfermented toddy?”

“What, your reverence, is this unfermented toddy?”

“Honoured sir, is it allowable to drink whatever is fermented liquor, but which has not fermented and has not arrived at the stage of being strong drink?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“At Kosambī, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”²

¹ Bu-Pc.35. ² Bu-Pc.51.

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for drinking fermented liquor and spirits.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This eighth point ... This is the eighth (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, is a piece of cloth to sit upon that has no border allowable?”

“Your reverence, it is not allowable.”

“Where was it objected to?”

“At Sāvattthī, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”¹

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation involving cutting down.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This ninth point ... This is the ninth (voting-) ticket that I cast.

“Honoured sir, are gold and silver allowable?”

“Your reverence, they are not allowable.”

“Where were they objected to?”

“At Rājagaha, in the Suttavibhaṅga.”²

“What offence does one fall into?”

“An offence of expiation for accepting gold and silver.”

“Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. This tenth point, investigated by the Order, this is a matter that is against *dhamma*, against discipline, not of the Teacher’s instruction. This is the tenth (voting-) ticket that I cast. Honoured sirs, let the Order listen to me. These ten points, investigated by the Order, these are matters that are against *dhamma*, against discipline, not of the Teacher’s instruction.”

“This legal question, your reverence, is concluded, and being settled is well settled. Nevertheless you, your reverence, may also question me in the midst of the Order³ on these ten points in order to convince these monks.”⁴

So the venerable Revata also questioned the venerable Sabbakāmin in the midst of the Order on these ten points, and the venerable Sabbakāmin, being questioned, answered.

Now because⁵ seven hundred monks—not one less and not one more—were

¹ Bu-Pc.89. ² Bu-NP.18 ³ Not only, that is, before the special committee. ⁴ *bhikkhūnaṃ saññattiyā*; cf. Kd.14.14.26, Kd.17.4.1; also Kd.17.3.14. ⁵ Quoted at Vin-a.i.34.

at this chanting of the discipline, this chanting of the discipline is called “that of the Seven Hundred.”¹

Told is the Twelfth Section: that on the Seven Hundred.

Vin.2.308

IN THIS SECTION ARE TWENTY-FIVE ITEMS. THIS IS ITS KEY

Ten points, having filled, formal act, entered with a messenger,
the four, and on gold (and silver) again²
and Kosambī, the monks of Pāvā, /
The way to Soreyya, Saṃkāsa, Kaṇṇakujja, Udumbara,
and Sahamjāti,³ he called upon, he heard, “How could we?” /
Bowl (and) they went in a boat upstream,⁴
he was in private,⁵ they used to bring this
teacher (and) the Order and Vesālī,
loving-kindness, the Order, referendum.

BD.5.430

Told is the Lesser Division.⁶

Vin.2.309

¹ Cf. **Kd.21.1.16**, the Five Hundred. This second recital, that of the Seven Hundred, is also called the Recital of Yasatthera at AN-a.ii.10=MN-a.iv.114. ² Oldenberg’s text and Siamese and Sinhalese editions read *puna rūpañ ca*. Oldenberg suggests (**Vin.2.330**) *antepurañ ca* (see **Kd.22.1.4**), but I think it may be an abbreviation for *jātarūparajata*, the subject of **Kd.22.1.4**, **Kd.22.1.5**. ³ Oldenberg’s text: *Sahamjāti ca, majjhesi, assosi*; Sinhalese edition: *Aggaḷaṃ Sahajātaṃ ca assosi*; Siamese edition: as Oldenberg’s text but reading *Sahajātim*. Oldenberg suggests (**Vin.2.330**) *ajjhesi* (in place of *majjhesi*). The verb in **Kd.22.1.10** is *ajjhesissati*. ⁴ Oldenberg’s text: *sa ujjī*. Sinhalese edition *ujjavī*. ⁵ Oldenberg’s text: *dūraho pi udāmassa / dārukam, saṃgho*; Sinhalese and Siamese editions: *raho’ si upanāma’ āyam garusaṃgho*. ⁶ Here ends Oldenberg’s Vol. II.

Volume IV

Parivāra

Contents of Volume

Translator's Introduction	2248
1.1. Monks' Analysis: on the Laying-Down-Where	2277
<i>Pārājika</i> . . . . .	.2277
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 1 . . . . .	.2277
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 2 . . . . .	.2283
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 3 . . . . .	.2284
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 4 . . . . .	.2284
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i> . . . . .	.2285
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1 . . . . .	.2285
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2 . . . . .	.2287
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3 . . . . .	.2287
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4 . . . . .	.2287
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 5 . . . . .	.2288
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 6 . . . . .	.2288
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 7 . . . . .	.2289
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 8 . . . . .	.2289
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 9 . . . . .	.2289
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 10 . . . . .	.2290
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 11 . . . . .	.2290
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 12 . . . . .	.2290
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 13 . . . . .	.2291
Monks' <i>Aniyata</i> 1 . . . . .	.2292

Monks' Aniyata 2 . . . . .	.2293
<i>Nissaggiya Pācittiya</i> . . . . .	.2293
Division 1: on kaṭhina cloth . . . . .	.2293
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 1 . . . . .	.2293
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 2 . . . . .	.2294
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 3 . . . . .	.2294
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 4 . . . . .	.2295
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 5 . . . . .	.2295
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 6 . . . . .	.2295
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 7 . . . . .	.2296
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 8 . . . . .	.2296
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 9 . . . . .	.2296
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 10 . . . . .	.2297
Division 2: on silk . . . . .	.2297
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 11 . . . . .	.2297
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 12 . . . . .	.2297
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 13 . . . . .	.2298
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 14 . . . . .	.2298
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 15 . . . . .	.2298
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 16 . . . . .	.2299
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 17 . . . . .	.2299
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 18 . . . . .	.2299
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 19	2300
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 20	2300
Division 3: on a bowl	2300
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 21	2300
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 22 . . . . .	.2301
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 23 . . . . .	.2301
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 24 . . . . .	.2301
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 25 . . . . .	.2302
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 26 . . . . .	.2302
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 27 . . . . .	.2302
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 28 . . . . .	.2303
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 29 . . . . .	.2303

Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 30 . . . . .	.2303
Pācittiya	2304
Division 1: on lying	2304
Monks' Pācittiya 1	2304
Monks' Pācittiya 2 . . . . .	.2305
Monks' Pācittiya 3 . . . . .	.2305
Monks' Pācittiya 4 . . . . .	.2305
Monks' Pācittiya 5 . . . . .	.2305
Monks' Pācittiya 6	2306
Monks' Pācittiya 7	2306
Monks' Pācittiya 8	2306
Monks' Pācittiya 9	2306
Monks' Pācittiya 10 . . . . .	.2307
Division 2: on vegetable growth . . . . .	.2307
Monks' Pācittiya 11 . . . . .	.2307
Monks' Pācittiya 12 . . . . .	.2307
Monks' Pācittiya 13 . . . . .	.2307
Monks' Pācittiya 14	2308
Monks' Pācittiya 15	2308
Monks' Pācittiya 16	2308
Monks' Pācittiya 17	2309
Monks' Pācittiya 18	2309
Monks' Pācittiya 19	2309
Monks' Pācittiya 20	2309
Division 3: on Exhortation . . . . .	.2310
Monks' Pācittiya 21 . . . . .	.2310
Monks' Pācittiya 22 . . . . .	.2310
Monks' Pācittiya 23 . . . . .	.2310
Monks' Pācittiya 24	2311
Monks' Pācittiya 25	2311
Monks' Pācittiya 26	2311
Monks' Pācittiya 27	2311
Monks' Pācittiya 28 . . . . .	.2312
Monks' Pācittiya 29 . . . . .	.2312

Monks' Pācittiya 30 . . . . .	.2312
Division 4: on Food . . . . .	.2312
Monks' Pācittiya 31 . . . . .	.2312
Monks' Pācittiya 32 . . . . .	.2313
Monks' Pācittiya 33 . . . . .	.2313
Monks' Pācittiya 34 . . . . .	.2313
Monks' Pācittiya 35 . . . . .	.2313
Monks' Pācittiya 36 . . . . .	.2314
Monks' Pācittiya 37 . . . . .	.2314
Monks' Pācittiya 38 . . . . .	.2314
Monks' Pācittiya 39 . . . . .	.2314
Monks' Pācittiya 40 . . . . .	.2315
Division 5: on an Unclothed Ascetic . . . . .	.2315
Monks' Pācittiya 41 . . . . .	.2315
Monks' Pācittiya 42 . . . . .	.2315
Monks' Pācittiya 43 . . . . .	.2316
Monks' Pācittiya 44 . . . . .	.2316
Monks' Pācittiya 45 . . . . .	.2316
Monks' Pācittiya 46 . . . . .	.2316
Monks' Pācittiya 47 . . . . .	.2317
Monks' Pācittiya 48 . . . . .	.2317
Monks' Pācittiya 49 . . . . .	.2317
Monks' Pācittiya 50 . . . . .	.2317
Division 6: on Fermented Liquor and Spirits . . . . .	.2318
Monks' Pācittiya 51 . . . . .	.2318
Monks' Pācittiya 52 . . . . .	.2318
Monks' Pācittiya 53 . . . . .	.2318
Monks' Pācittiya 54 . . . . .	.2318
Monks' Pācittiya 55 . . . . .	.2319
Monks' Pācittiya 56 . . . . .	.2319
Monks' Pācittiya 57 . . . . .	.2319
Monks' Pācittiya 58 . . . . .	.2319
Monks' Pācittiya 59 . . . . .	.2320
Monks' Pācittiya 60 . . . . .	.2320

Division 7: on What Contains Living Things	2320
Monks' Pācittiya 61	2320
Monks' Pācittiya 62	2320
Monks' Pācittiya 63	2321
Monks' Pācittiya 64	2321
Monks' Pācittiya 65	2321
Monks' Pācittiya 66	2321
Monks' Pācittiya 67	2322
Monks' Pācittiya 68	2322
Monks' Pācittiya 69	2322
Division 8: on Regarding a Rule	2323
Monks' Pācittiya 71	2323
Monks' Pācittiya 72	2323
Monks' Pācittiya 73	2323
Monks' Pācittiya 74	2323
Monks' Pācittiya 75	2324
Monks' Pācittiya 76	2324
Monks' Pācittiya 77	2324
Monks' Pācittiya 78	2324
Monks' Pācittiya 79	2324
Monks' Pācittiya 80	2325
Monks' Pācittiya 81	2325
Monks' Pācittiya 82	2325
Division 9: on a King	2326
Monks' Pācittiya 83	2326
Monks' Pācittiya 84	2326
Monks' Pācittiya 85	2326
Monks' Pācittiya 86	2326
Monks' Pācittiya 87	2327
Monks' Pācittiya 88	2327
Monks' Pācittiya 89	2327
Monks' Pācittiya 90	2327
Monks' Pācittiya 91	2327
Monks' Pācittiya 92	2328

<i>Pātidesanīya</i> . . . . .	.2329
Monks' <i>Pātidesanīya</i> 1 . . . . .	.2329
Monks' <i>Pātidesanīya</i> 2 . . . . .	.2330
Monks' <i>Pātidesanīya</i> 3 . . . . .	.2330
Monks' <i>Pātidesanīya</i> 4 . . . . .	.2330
<i>Sekhiya</i> . . . . .	.2331
Division 1: on All Round . . . . .	.2331
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 1 . . . . .	.2331
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 2 . . . . .	.2331
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 3, 4 . . . . .	.2331
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 4, 5 . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 5, 6 . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 7, 8 . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 9, 10 . . . . .	.2332
Division 2: on Loud Laughter . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 11, 12 . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 13, 14 . . . . .	.2332
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 15, 16 . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 17, 18 . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 19, 20 . . . . .	.2333
Division 3: on Arms Akimbo . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 21, 22 . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 23, 24 . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 25 . . . . .	.2333
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 26 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 27 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 28 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 29 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 30 . . . . .	.2334
Division 4: on Almsfood . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 31 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 34 . . . . .	.2334
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 35 . . . . .	.2335
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 36 . . . . .	.2335

Monks' Sekhiya 37	2335
Monks' Sekhiya 38	2335
Monks' Sekhiya 39	2335
Monks' Sekhiya 40	2335
Division 5: on Mouthful	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 41	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 42	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 43	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 44	2336
Division 6: on Hissing	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 51	2336
Monks' Sekhiya 52	2337
Monks' Sekhiya 55	2337
Monks' Sekhiya 56	2337
Monks' Sekhiya 57	2337
Monks' Sekhiya 58	2338
Division 7: on Shoes	2338
Monks' Sekhiya 61–67	2338
Monks' Sekhiya 68–72	2338
Monks' Sekhiya 73	2338
Monks' Sekhiya 74	2339
Monks' Sekhiya 75	2339

1.2. Monks' Analysis: on How Many Offences? 2341

<i>Pārājika</i>	2341
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 1	2341
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 2	2341
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 3	2342
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 4	2342
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>	2342
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1	2342
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2	2343
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3	2343
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4	2343

Monks' Saṅghādisesa 5 . . . . .	.2344
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 6 . . . . .	.2344
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 7 . . . . .	.2344
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 8 . . . . .	.2344
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 9 . . . . .	.2345
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 10 . . . . .	.2345
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 11 . . . . .	.2345
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 12 . . . . .	.2345
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 13 . . . . .	.2346
Nissaggiya Pācittiya . . . . .	.2346
Division 1: on kaṭhina cloth . . . . .	.2346
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 1 . . . . .	.2346
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 2 . . . . .	.2346
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 3 . . . . .	.2346
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 4 . . . . .	.2347
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 5 . . . . .	.2347
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 6 . . . . .	.2347
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 7 . . . . .	.2347
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 8 . . . . .	.2347
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 9 . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 10 . . . . .	.2348
Division 2: on silk . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 11 . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 12 . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 13 . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 14 . . . . .	.2348
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 15 . . . . .	.2349
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 16 . . . . .	.2349
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 17 . . . . .	.2349
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 18 . . . . .	.2349
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 19 . . . . .	.2349
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 20 . . . . .	.2350
Division 3: on a bowl . . . . .	.2350
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 21 . . . . .	.2350

Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 22	2350
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 23	2350
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 24	2350
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 25	2351
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 26	2351
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 27	2351
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 28	2351
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 29	2351
Monks' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 30	2352
<i>Pācittiya</i>	2352
Division 1: on Lying	2352
Monks' Pācittiya 1	2352
Monks' Pācittiya 2	2352
Monks' Pācittiya 3	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 4	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 5	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 6	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 7	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 8	2353
Monks' Pācittiya 9	2354
Monks' Pācittiya 10	2354
Division 2: on Vegetable-growth	2354
Monks' Pācittiya 11	2354
Monks' Pācittiya 12	2354
Monks' Pācittiya 13	2355
Monks' Pācittiya 14	2355
Monks' Pācittiya 15	2355
Monks' Pācittiya 16	2356
Monks' Pācittiya 17	2356
Monks' Pācittiya 18	2356
Monks' Pācittiya 19	2356
Monks' Pācittiya 20	2356
Division 3: on Exhortation	2357
Monks' Pācittiya 21	2357

Monks' Pācittiya 22 . . . . .	.2357
Monks' Pācittiya 23 . . . . .	.2357
Monks' Pācittiya 24 . . . . .	.2357
Monks' Pācittiya 25 . . . . .	.2358
Monks' Pācittiya 26 . . . . .	.2358
Monks' Pācittiya 27 . . . . .	.2358
Monks' Pācittiya 28 . . . . .	.2358
Monks' Pācittiya 29 . . . . .	.2358
Monks' Pācittiya 30 . . . . .	.2359
Division 4: on Food . . . . .	.2359
Monks' Pācittiya 31 . . . . .	.2359
Monks' Pācittiya 32 . . . . .	.2359
Monks' Pācittiya 33 . . . . .	.2359
Monks' Pācittiya 34 . . . . .	.2359
Monks' Pācittiya 35 . . . . .	.2360
Monks' Pācittiya 36 . . . . .	.2360
Monks' Pācittiya 37 . . . . .	.2360
Monks' Pācittiya 38 . . . . .	.2360
Monks' Pācittiya 39 . . . . .	.2360
Monks' Pācittiya 40 . . . . .	.2360
Division 5: on an Unclothed Ascetic . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 41 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 42 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 43 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 44 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 45 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 46 . . . . .	.2361
Monks' Pācittiya 47 . . . . .	.2362
Monks' Pācittiya 48 . . . . .	.2362
Monks' Pācittiya 49 . . . . .	.2362
Monks' Pācittiya 50 . . . . .	.2362
Division 6: on Fermented Liquor and Spirits . . . . .	.2362
Monks' Pācittiya 51 . . . . .	.2362
Monks' Pācittiya 52 . . . . .	.2363

Monks' Pācittiya 53 . . . . .	.2363
Monks' Pācittiya 54 . . . . .	.2363
Monks' Pācittiya 55 . . . . .	.2363
Monks' Pācittiya 56 . . . . .	.2363
Monks' Pācittiya 57 . . . . .	.2364
Monks' Pācittiya 58 . . . . .	.2364
Monks' Pācittiya 59 . . . . .	.2364
Monks' Pācittiya 60 . . . . .	.2364
Division 7: on What Contains Living Things . . . . .	.2364
Monks' Pācittiya 62 . . . . .	.2365
Monks' Pācittiya 63 . . . . .	.2365
Monks' Pācittiya 64 . . . . .	.2365
Monks' Pācittiya 65 . . . . .	.2365
Monks' Pācittiya 66 . . . . .	.2366
Monks' Pācittiya 67 . . . . .	.2366
Monks' Pācittiya 68 . . . . .	.2366
Monks' Pācittiya 69 . . . . .	.2366
Monks' Pācittiya 70 . . . . .	.2366
Division 8: on Regarding a Rule . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 71 . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 72 . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 73 . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 74 . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 75 . . . . .	.2367
Monks' Pācittiya 76 . . . . .	.2368
Monks' Pācittiya 77 . . . . .	.2368
Monks' Pācittiya 78 . . . . .	.2368
Monks' Pācittiya 79 . . . . .	.2368
Monks' Pācittiya 80 . . . . .	.2368
Monks' Pācittiya 81 . . . . .	.2369
Monks' Pācittiya 82 . . . . .	.2369
Divison 9: on a King . . . . .	.2369
Monks' Pācittiya 83 . . . . .	.2369
Monks' Pācittiya 84 . . . . .	.2369

Monks' Pācittiya 85 . . . . .	.2369
Monks' Pācittiya 86 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 87 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 88 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 89 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 90 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 91 . . . . .	.2370
Monks' Pācittiya 92 . . . . .	.2370
<i>Pātidesanīya</i> . . . . .	.2371
Monks' Pātidesanīya 1 . . . . .	.2371
Monks' Pātidesanīya 2 . . . . .	.2371
Monks' Pātidesanīya 3 . . . . .	.2371
Monks' Pātidesanīya 4 . . . . .	.2371
<i>Sekhiya</i> . . . . .	.2372
Division 1: on All Round . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 1 . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 2 . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 3, 4 . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 5, 6 . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 7, 8 . . . . .	.2372
Monks' Sekhiya 9, 10 . . . . .	.2373
Division 2: on Loud Laughter . . . . .	.2373
Monks' Sekhiya 11, 12 . . . . .	.2373
Monks' Sekhiya 13, 14 . . . . .	.2373
Monks' Sekhiya 15, 16 . . . . .	.2373
Monks' Sekhiya 17, 18 . . . . .	.2373
Monks' Sekhiya 19, 20 . . . . .	.2373
Division 3: on Arms Akimbo . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 21 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 23 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 25 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 26 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 27 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 28 . . . . .	.2374

Monks' Sekhiya 29 . . . . .	.2374
Monks' Sekhiya 30 . . . . .	.2374
Division 4: on Almsfood . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 31 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 34 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 35 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 36 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 37 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 38 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 39 . . . . .	.2375
Monks' Sekhiya 40 . . . . .	.2375
Division 5: on the Mouthful . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 41 . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 42 . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 43 . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 44 . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 45-50 . . . . .	.2376
Division 6: on Hissing . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 51-54 . . . . .	.2376
Monks' Sekhiya 55 . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 56 . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 57-60 . . . . .	.2377
Division 7: on Shoes . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 61-72 . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 73 . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 74 . . . . .	.2377
Monks' Sekhiya 75 . . . . .	.2378

1.3. Monks' Analysis: on Falling Away 2379

1.4. Monks' Analysis: on Comprised In 2380

1.5. Monks' Analysis: on Origins 2381

1.6. Monks' Analysis: on Legal Questions 2382

1.7. Monks' Analysis: on Deciding	2383
1.8. Monks' Analysis: on Accumulation	2384
1.9. Monks' Analysis: on Laying-Down-Where	2386
<i>Pārājika</i>	2386
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 1	2386
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 2	2386
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 3	2387
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 4	2387
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>	2387
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1	2387
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2	2387
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 5	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 6	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 7	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 8	2388
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 9	2389
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 10	2389
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 11	2389
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 12	2389
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 13	2389
<i>Sekhiya</i>	2390
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 75	2390
1.10. Monks' Analysis: on How Many Offences?	2391
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 1	2391
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 2	2391
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 3	2391
Monks' <i>Pārājika</i> 4	2392
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>	2392
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1	2392
Monks' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2	2392

Monks' Saṅghādisesa 3 . . . . .	.2392
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 4 . . . . .	.2393
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 5–12 . . . . .	.2393
Monks' Saṅghādisesa 13 . . . . .	.2393
<i>Sekhiya</i> . . . . .	.2393
Monks' <i>Sekhiya</i> 75 . . . . .	.2393
1.11. Monks' Analysis: on Falling Away	2394
1.12. Monks' Analysis: on Comprised In	2394
1.13. Monks' Analysis: on Origins	2395
1.14. Monks' Analysis: on Legal Questions	2395
1.15. Monks' Analysis: on Deciding	2395
1.16. Monks' Analysis: on Accumulation	2396
2.1. Nuns' Analysis: on Laying-down-Where	2397
<i>Pārājika</i> . . . . .	.2397
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 5 . . . . .	.2397
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 6 . . . . .	.2398
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 7 . . . . .	.2399
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 8 . . . . .	.2399
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i>	2400
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1	2400
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2	2400
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3 . . . . .	.2401
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4 . . . . .	.2401
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 5 . . . . .	.2401
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 6	2402
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 10	2402
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 11	2402
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 12	2403
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 13 . . . . .	.2403

<i>Nissaggiya Pācittiya</i> . . . . .	.2403
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 1</i> . . . . .	.2403
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 2</i> . . . . .	.2404
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 3</i> . . . . .	.2404
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 4</i> . . . . .	.2404
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 5</i> . . . . .	.2404
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 6</i> . . . . .	.2404
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 7</i> . . . . .	.2405
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 8</i> . . . . .	.2405
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 9</i> . . . . .	.2405
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 10</i> . . . . .	.2405
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 11</i> . . . . .	.2405
<i>Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 12</i> . . . . .	.2406
<i>Pācittiya</i> . . . . .	.2406
Division 1: on garlic . . . . .	.2406
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 1</i> . . . . .	.2406
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 2</i> . . . . .	.2406
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 3</i> . . . . .	.2407
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 4</i> . . . . .	.2407
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 5</i> . . . . .	.2407
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 6</i> . . . . .	.2407
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 7</i> . . . . .	.2408
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 8</i> . . . . .	.2408
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 9</i> . . . . .	.2408
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 10</i> . . . . .	.2408
Division 2: on the Dark of the Night . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 11</i> . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 12</i> . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 13</i> . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 14</i> . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 15</i> . . . . .	.2409
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 16</i> . . . . .	.2410
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 17</i> . . . . .	.2410
<i>Nuns' Pācittiya 18</i> . . . . .	.2410

Nuns' Pācittiya 19	. . . . .	2410
Nuns' Pācittiya 20	. . . . .	2411
Division 3: on Bathing	. . . . .	2411
Nuns' Pācittiya 21	. . . . .	2411
Nuns' Pācittiya 22	. . . . .	2411
Nuns' Pācittiya 23	. . . . .	2411
Nuns' Pācittiya 24	. . . . .	2412
Nuns' Pācittiya 25	. . . . .	2412
Nuns' Pācittiya 26	. . . . .	2412
Nuns' Pācittiya 27	. . . . .	2412
Nuns' Pācittiya 28	. . . . .	2412
Nuns' Pācittiya 29	. . . . .	2413
Nuns' Pācittiya 30	. . . . .	2413
Division 4: on Sharing	. . . . .	2413
Nuns' Pācittiya 31	. . . . .	2413
Nuns' Pācittiya 32	. . . . .	2413
Nuns' Pācittiya 33	. . . . .	2414
Nuns' Pācittiya 34	. . . . .	2414
Nuns' Pācittiya 35	. . . . .	2414
Nuns' Pācittiya 36	. . . . .	2414
Nuns' Pācittiya 37	. . . . .	2415
Nuns' Pācittiya 38	. . . . .	2415
Nuns' Pācittiya 39	. . . . .	2415
Nuns' Pācittiya 40	. . . . .	2415
Division 5: on a Picture-Gallery	. . . . .	2415
Nuns' Pācittiya 41	. . . . .	2415
Nuns' Pācittiya 42	. . . . .	2416
Nuns' Pācittiya 43	. . . . .	2416
Nuns' Pācittiya 44	. . . . .	2416
Nuns' Pācittiya 45	. . . . .	2416
Nuns' Pācittiya 46	. . . . .	2417
Nuns' Pācittiya 47	. . . . .	2417
Nuns' Pācittiya 48	. . . . .	2417
Nuns' Pācittiya 49	. . . . .	2417

Nuns' Pācittiya 50 . . . . .	.2417
Division 6: on a Monastery . . . . .	.2418
Nuns' Pācittiya 51 . . . . .	.2418
Nuns' Pācittiya 52 . . . . .	.2418
Nuns' Pācittiya 53 . . . . .	.2418
Nuns' Pācittiya 54 . . . . .	.2418
Nuns' Pācittiya 55 . . . . .	.2419
Nuns' Pācittiya 56 . . . . .	.2419
Nuns' Pācittiya 57 . . . . .	.2419
Nuns' Pācittiya 58 . . . . .	.2419
Nuns' Pācittiya 59 . . . . .	.2419
Nuns' Pācittiya 60 . . . . .	.2420
Division 7: on a Pregnant Woman . . . . .	.2420
Nuns' Pācittiya 61 . . . . .	.2420
Nuns' Pācittiya 62 . . . . .	.2420
Nuns' Pācittiya 63 . . . . .	.2420
Nuns' Pācittiya 64 . . . . .	.2420
Nuns' Pācittiya 65 . . . . .	.2421
Nuns' Pācittiya 66 . . . . .	.2421
Nuns' Pācittiya 67 . . . . .	.2421
Nuns' Pācittiya 68 . . . . .	.2421
Nuns' Pācittiya 69 . . . . .	.2421
Nuns' Pācittiya 70 . . . . .	.2421
Division 8: on a Maiden . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 71 . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 72 . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 73 . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 74 . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 75 . . . . .	.2422
Nuns' Pācittiya 76 . . . . .	.2423
Nuns' Pācittiya 77 . . . . .	.2423
Nuns' Pācittiya 78 . . . . .	.2423
Nuns' Pācittiya 79 . . . . .	.2423
Nuns' Pācittiya 80 . . . . .	.2424

Nuns' Pācittiya 81	. . . . .	.2424
Nuns' Pācittiya 82	. . . . .	.2424
Nuns' Pācittiya 83	. . . . .	.2424
Division 9: on Sunshade and Sandals	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 84	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 85	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 86	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 87	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 88	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 89	. . . . .	.2425
Nuns' Pācittiya 90	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 91	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 92	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 93	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 94	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 95	. . . . .	.2426
Nuns' Pācittiya 96	. . . . .	.2427
Pātidesaṇīya	. . . . .	.2428
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 1	. . . . .	.2428
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 2	. . . . .	.2428
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 3	. . . . .	.2428
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 4	. . . . .	.2428
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 5	. . . . .	.2429
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 6	. . . . .	.2429
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 7	. . . . .	.2429
Nuns' Pātidesaṇīya 8	. . . . .	.2429

2.2. Nuns' Analysis: on How many Offences? 2430

Pārājika	. . . . .	.2430
Nuns' Pārājika 5	. . . . .	.2430
Nuns' Pārājika 6	. . . . .	.2430
Nuns' Pārājika 7	. . . . .	.2431
Nuns' Pārājika 8	. . . . .	.2431
Saṅghādisesa	. . . . .	.2431

Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 1 . . . . .	.2431
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 2 . . . . .	.2431
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 3 . . . . .	.2432
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 4 . . . . .	.2432
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 5 . . . . .	.2432
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 6 . . . . .	.2432
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 10 . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 11 . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 12 . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Saṅghādisesa 13 . . . . .	.2433
<i>Nissaggiya Pācittiya</i> . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 1 . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 2 . . . . .	.2433
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 3 . . . . .	.2434
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 4 . . . . .	.2434
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 5 . . . . .	.2434
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 6 . . . . .	.2434
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 7 . . . . .	.2434
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 11 . . . . .	.2435
Nuns' Nissaggiya Pācittiya 12 . . . . .	.2435
<i>Pācittiya</i> . . . . .	.2435
Division 1: on Garlic . . . . .	.2435
Nuns' Pācittiya 1 . . . . .	.2435
Nuns' Pācittiya 2 . . . . .	.2435
Nuns' Pācittiya 3 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 4 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 5 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 6 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 7 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 8 . . . . .	.2436
Nuns' Pācittiya 9 . . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 10 . . . . .	.2437
Division 2: on the Dark of the Night . . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 11 . . . . .	.2437

Nuns' Pācittiya 12	. . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 13	. . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 14	. . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 15	. . . . .	.2437
Nuns' Pācittiya 16	. . . . .	.2438
Nuns' Pācittiya 17	. . . . .	.2438
Nuns' Pācittiya 18	. . . . .	.2438
Nuns' Pācittiya 19	. . . . .	.2438
Nuns' Pācittiya 20	. . . . .	.2438
Division 3: on Bathing	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 21	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 22	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 23	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 24	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 25	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 26	. . . . .	.2439
Nuns' Pācittiya 27	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 28	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 29	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 30	. . . . .	.2440
Division 4: on Sharing	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 31	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 32	. . . . .	.2440
Nuns' Pācittiya 33	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 34	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 35	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 36	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 37	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 38	. . . . .	.2441
Nuns' Pācittiya 39	. . . . .	.2442
Nuns' Pācittiya 40	. . . . .	.2442
Division 5: on a Picture-Gallery	. . . . .	.2442
Nuns' Pācittiya 41	. . . . .	.2442
Nuns' Pācittiya 42	. . . . .	.2442

Nuns' Pācittiya 43 . . . . .	.2442
Nuns' Pācittiya 44 . . . . .	.2442
Nuns' Pācittiya 45 . . . . .	.2443
Nuns' Pācittiya 46 . . . . .	.2443
Nuns' Pācittiya 47 . . . . .	.2443
Nuns' Pācittiya 48 . . . . .	.2443
Nuns' Pācittiya 49 . . . . .	.2443
Nuns' Pācittiya 50 . . . . .	.2443
Division 6: on a Monastery . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 51 . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 52 . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 53 . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 54 . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 55 . . . . .	.2444
Nuns' Pācittiya 56 . . . . .	.2445
Nuns' Pācittiya 57 . . . . .	.2445
Nuns' Pācittiya 58 . . . . .	.2445
Nuns' Pācittiya 59 . . . . .	.2445
Nuns' Pācittiya 60 . . . . .	.2445
Division 7: on a Pregnant Woman . . . . .	.2446
Nuns' Pācittiya 61 . . . . .	.2446
Nuns' Pācittiya 62 . . . . .	.2446
Nuns' Pācittiya 68 . . . . .	.2446
Nuns' Pācittiya 69 . . . . .	.2446
Nuns' Pācittiya 70 . . . . .	.2446
Division 8: on a Maiden . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 71 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 72 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 73 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 74 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 75 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 76 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 77 . . . . .	.2447
Nuns' Pācittiya 78 . . . . .	.2448

Nuns' Pācittiya 79	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 80	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 81	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 82	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 83	2448
Division 9: on Sunshade and Sandals	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 84	2448
Nuns' Pācittiya 85	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 86	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 87	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 88	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 89	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 90–93	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 94	2449
Nuns' Pācittiya 95	2450
Nuns' Pācittiya 96	2450
<i>Pātidesanīya</i>	2450
Nuns' Pātidesanīya 1–8	2450
2.3. Nuns' Analysis: on Falling Away	2451
2.4. Nuns' Analysis: on Comprised In	2452
2.5. Nuns' Analysis: on Origins	2453
2.6. Nuns' Analysis: on Legal Questions	2454
2.7. Nuns' Analysis: on Legal Questions	2455
2.8. Nuns' Analysis: on Accumulation	2456
2.9. Nuns' Analysis: on Laying-Down-Where	2458
Nuns' Pārājika 5	2458
Nuns' Pārājika 6	2458
Nuns' Pārājika 7	2458
Nuns' Pārājika 8	2459

<i>Saṅghādisesa</i> . . . . .	.2459
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1 . . . . .	.2459
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2 . . . . .	.2459
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3 . . . . .	.2459
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4 . . . . .	.2459
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 5	2460
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 6	2460
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 10	2460
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 11	2460
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 12	2460
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 13 . . . . .	.2461
2.10. Nuns' Analysis: on How Many Offences?	2462
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 5 . . . . .	.2462
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 6 . . . . .	.2462
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 7 . . . . .	.2463
Nuns' <i>Pārājika</i> 8 . . . . .	.2463
<i>Saṅghādisesa</i> . . . . .	.2463
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 1 . . . . .	.2463
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 2 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 3 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 4 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 5 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 6 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 10 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 11 . . . . .	.2464
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 12 . . . . .	.2465
Nuns' <i>Saṅghādisesa</i> 13 . . . . .	.2465
2.11. Nuns' Analysis: on Falling Away	2466
2.12. Nuns' Analysis: on Comprised in	2466
2.13. Nuns' Analysis: on Origins	2467
2.14. Nuns' Analysis: on Legal Questions	2467

2.15. Nuns' Analysis: on Deciding	2467
2.16. Nuns' Analysis: on Accumulation	2468
3. Summary Of Origins	2469
4. Consecutive Repetitions	2480
5. Synopsis Of Decidings	2496
6. Questions On The Khandhakas	2514
7. As To Graduation	2518
1. Units . . . . .	.2518
2. Dyads . . . . .	.2523
3. Triads . . . . .	.2534
4. Tetrads . . . . .	.2546
5. Pentads . . . . .	.2555
6. Sextets . . . . .	.2566
7. Septets . . . . .	.2570
8. Octets . . . . .	.2573
9. Nonads . . . . .	.2575
10. Decades . . . . .	.2577
11. Elevens . . . . .	.2581
8. Answers About The Beginning Of Observance	2584
9. Exposition Of Reasons	2586
10. Collection Of Stanzas	2588
11. Synopsis Of Legal Questions	2601
12. An Additional Collection Of Stanzas	2611
13. Portion On Reproving	2616
14. The Lesser Collection	2622

15. The Greater Collection	2627
16. Synopsis Of Kaṭhina	2637
17. Upāli-Pentads	2649
Division 1: Independantly	2649
Division 2: Not Revoking	2653
Division 3: Speaking	2656
Division 4: Explanations of Views	2659
Division 5: Undertaking on one's own Behalf	2664
Division 6: Ascetic Practices	2668
Division 7: Lying Speech	2669
Division 8: Exhortation of Nuns	2672
Division 9: Referendum	2675
Division 10: Settling Legal Questions	2679
Division 11: a Schismatic in the Order	2682
Division 12: a Second Schismatic in the Order	2684
Division 13: Resident	2684
Division 14: the Formal Making of Kaṭhina Cloth	2686
18. Origin	2690
Pārājika	2690
Saṅghādisesa	2691
Sekhiya	2692
Pārājika	2692
Saṅghādisesa	2693
Aniyata	2693
Nissaggiya Pācittiya	2693
Pācittiya	2693
Pātidesaṇīya	2693
Sekhiya	2694
19. Second Collection Of Stanzas	2695
20. The Sweat Inducing Stanzas	2714

21. The Five Divisions	2725
First Division . . . . .	.2725
Second Division . . . . .	.2731
Third Division . . . . .	.2732
Fourth Division . . . . .	.2733
Fifth Division . . . . .	.2733

TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION

BD.6.vii

In 1883 the firm of Williams & Norgate (as it was then called) published the fifth volume of the *Vinaya-Piṭakam* in the Pali language edited by Hermann Oldenberg. This was the concluding volume of his fine and careful edition of the whole of the Vinaya. It is devoted almost exclusively to Parivāra, a work which, so far as I know, has not been translated into English before now. I have undertaken the task for the sake of completing my translation of the Vinaya, called *The Book of the Discipline*, the first five volumes of which were published between 1938 and 1952 in the Sacred Books of the Buddhists.

It would be possible, I think, to fathom the Parivāra without access to either the Suttavibhaṅga or the Khandhakas—and indeed I believe that in some Buddhist countries the monastic disciple has to learn it before he studies these other parts. To follow it is another matter. To do so, the relevant portions of the Suttavibhaṅga and the Khandhakas should be at hand. Throughout this translation, therefore, I have been at pains to supply all references possible to these two major parts of Vinaya. These references are to OLDENBERG'S *Vinaya Piṭakam*, Volumes I–IV, and to my *Book of the Discipline*, Volumes I–V. Here, as has been most kindly said, notes may “be found copiously”.¹ They have not been repeated in this final volume.

The meaning of the word Parivāra presents difficulties as do the nature and purpose of the work. Basically, *pari-* means all round, surrounding; and *vāra* is time, opportunity; the Sanskrit lexicons also give, for *vāra*, “anything which covers or surrounds, a cover; a multitude, quantity” and “a cover, covering, surroundings ...”. The idea that the Parivāra surrounds, encircles or encompasses thus presents itself, the core of its interest being

¹ Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī, Introduction, p.vi.

the material of the Suttavibhaṅgas and the Khandhakas; it is these that it is concerned with and encompasses.

BD.6.viii

Apart from those few passages which, in the impressive *Prv.7* of the Parivāra, the Ekuttaraka, have more in common with the Aṅguttara Nikāya.¹ than with Vinaya, the Parivāra adheres most remarkably closely to Vinaya material. It covers the various matters dealt with in the Khandhakas no less than in the *sikkhāpadā*, or disciplinary rules of training to be found in the Suttavibhaṅgas, and follows the words used in them, as well as those in the various narratives leading to their formulation and those in the Old Commentary's explanations of the terms used. It also follows the recognized order of the *sikkhāpadā* with precision. Apparently omitting nothing helpful, necessary or essential to a mastery of Vinaya, it "covers" the Discipline by encompassing it, going all round it and all through it, discarding matters of less consequence in the process, and coming down to the bare rock, the dry bones. Yet, even without a single story and without any human seasoning or hint of contemporary manners and customs, how far from dry is this bony skeleton that so carefully displays the structure of Vinaya which, as the *āyu* of the Buddha's *sāsana*,² is its life-giver and source of vitality.

References to the Buddha are likewise very scarce. The opening Chapters of the two Parivāra Vibhaṅgas begin with the words, repeated for every *sikkhāpadā*, "By the Lord who knows and sees, arahant, Perfect Buddha ...". Otherwise, except for one or two formal allusions to Him (such as "Aṅgīrasa the Sakyan Sage" and "Kinsman of the Sun", or the more unusual epithets *anantadassin* and *vivekadassin* on *Vin.5.97*), we hardly meet with more than conventional references to Him. For example, in His recorded conversations with Upāli there is the statement that 294 rules were made at Sāvaththī by the famed Gotama (*Prv.9.1*, verse 27), and in the one and only citation of words Parivāra ascribes to Him,³ but not yet traced in full, He is called Bhagavā. He had indeed almost ceased to be or had not begun to be the central figure.⁴ Clearly the Parivāra, which is very likely a manual for students and instructors, centres not on persons, but on monastic disciplinary and legislative affairs drawn from the Vibhaṅgas and Khandhakas. It is made

¹ See quotation from the Aṅguttara at *Vin.5.118f.* ² *Vin-a.13, DN-a.11.* ³ *Vin.5.107.* ⁴ Cf. *BD.1, Introduction, p.xvi.*

clear at Parivāra Prv.1.1 and Prv.2.1 that the authoritative pronouncements on these affairs that had been ascribed to the Buddha, and to the Buddha only, are simply being repeated here. The delivery of some Discourses in the Suttapiṭaka is assigned to this disciple or that, whether or not it finally received the Buddha's commendation. But not the Vinaya. No disciple is recorded to have furnished or imparted any surviving *sikkhāpada* or other (Khandhaka) material. The laying down and the regulating of the whole of the discipline for monastic disciples emerges as the work and as the word of the Buddha alone.¹ But Parivāra in its existent form lays no claim to being Buddhavacana, however much this is its basis. As the Niddesa, a commentarial work, has crept into the Pali Canon, so Parivāra has become included in it and ranks as part of it.

BD.6.ix

There is nothing to say that Parivāra was compiled before the rest of the Vinaya-ṭiṭaka. Indeed, such evidence as there is seems to point in the contrary direction. In their Introduction to *Vinaya Texts*, vol.i, p.xxiii-xxiv, Rhys Davids and Oldenberg say "The reader will notice that in the foregoing discussion no mention is made of the Fifth Book in the present division of the Vinaya-ṭiṭaka—the Parivāra-pāṭha. The reason is that this work, an abstract of the other parts of the Vinaya, is in fact a very much later compilation, and probably the work of a Ceylonese *thera*".² They then draw attention to the stanzas at the end of Parivāra in which his name is given as Dīpa. It seems to me that the only way in which it can be truly regarded as an "abstract" of these other parts is that they are its source and its subject-matter, so huge that part of its purpose is to reduce them to manageable proportions. Though it has one or two points of its own to add, chiefly in the way of emphasis, and employs a relatively few number of words not found in them,³ one of Parivāra's chief methods in thus reducing Vinaya would appear to be by drawing up categories and classifications, and bringing forward matters that, though occurring in these other parts, still might remain somewhat hidden and be overlooked simply because they are not organized and collected there. It must have seemed important to the Parivāra compiler to gather all these matters together so as to give them the full

BD.6.x

¹ Ibid. ² Followed by WINTERNITZ, *History of Indian Literature*, vol.ii, p.33. ³ See below, BD.6, Introduction, p.xiv.

weight due to them.

In his invaluable *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*,¹ DR. G.P. MALALASEKERA makes the interesting conjecture that “perhaps the Parivāra correspond to the *mātikā* of the Abhidhamma and were enlarged later.” I take this to mean that an outline Parivāra, one consisting of “headings”, preceded the other parts of the Vinaya, that these other parts were elaborated from this guide which then itself, some time later, became expanded and more fully treated. On the other hand, it is possible that, because of the Vinaya’s vast proportions and immense importance, it was found advisable to add, not before but after it had been compiled, some kind of summary of matter that had been pulled out of Vinaya itself, and to arrange various of its salient and other features in an orderly manner so as to preclude any danger of their eclipse or oblivion owing to the mere fact that some of them are widely scattered or not worked out in detail in these other parts of Vinaya.

FRAUWALLNER speaks of the Parivāra as an appendix, comparable to the Ekottara in the Vinaya of the Dharmaguptaka, that is it is attached to the two parts of which Vinaya consists: the Suttavibhaṅga and the Khandhakas.² In calling it also “a collection of addenda”³ he indicates that in his opinion it was later in date than the other parts.

LAMOTTE, too, regards Parivāra as “an appendix in sixteen sections and nineteen chapters”,⁴ and E.J. THOMAS as “a supplement containing summaries and classifications of the rules”.⁵

I have also seen Parivāra called “a digest of the entire Vinaya Piṭaka”, setting forth the method of teaching Vinaya. Indeed, to provide a manual for instructors and students may well have been a reason for its compilation.

In its short Envoi Parivāra says some interesting things about itself: it is a cutter off of doubt, through its medium, the True *Dhamma* and Discipline shine forth. Further, Parivāra means all that was said as to subject-matter (*vatthu*), and as to meaning by meaning in the True *Dhamma* (or, the true

¹ Originally published by the Indian Texts Series, 2 vols., 1937, 1938, and reprinted by the Pali Text Society, 1960. ² *The Earliest Vinaya and the Beginnings of Buddhist Literature*, Serie Orientale Roma Vol. VIII, Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Orient, Rome 1956, p.46.

³ *Ibid.*, p.184. ⁴ *Histoire du Bouddhisme indien*, Louvain, 1958, p.184. ⁵ *History of Buddhist Thought*, London, 1933, p.267.

rule, also *dhamma*), and as to rule by rule in what was laid down. Then, rather begging the question of the meaning of the word Parivāra in this context, the Envoi declares that “it encompasses (*parivāresi*) the Dispensation as the ocean (encompasses, surrounds) India”, thus suggesting that its compiler regarded it as an “encompasser”.

It does not appear that the Vinaya of any other sect or school had a Parivāra, at least not anything on the lines of the Pali Parivāra or anything that has come to light yet. This lends considerable weight to the prudence of regarding the Pali Parivāra as an appendix to a finished work rather than as a *mātikā* if this be taken as the matrix from which the rest of the Vinaya sprang, and thus might have been common to more than one sect.

Even so, whether as an abstract, a *mātikā* (or original table of contents), a list of headings not yet filled out, a mere aide-mémoire, whether as an epitome or digest, or whether as a very useful supplement or appendix, the Parivāra is not short; nor is it entirely unrepititive: though it is businesslike, thorough, and relatively concise, still it remains lengthy. The Vinaya in fact cannot be reduced to a brief statement nor compressed into a small compass. But it can be illuminated, as Parivāra shows, by a pin-pointing, a bringing to the fore, an unearthing of all necessary and important material from the multitudinous regulations governing the conduct both of a Saṅgha and of an individual monk or nun, and then by arranging in categories and lists these scattered Vinaya matters that monks should neither overlook nor forget, but keep constantly in the forefront of their minds. Moreover, once these classifications have been made, and expertly made, the true range of the Vinaya becomes more manifest, its structure, objects and apparatus more explicit and intelligible with the result that these clear and strong guide-lines to the contents of Vinaya may benefit teachers and pupils alike. It must not be supposed, however, that Parivāra is a commentary in the sense that it rewords and explains. It does neither. Rather it restates by means of the categories and lists I have just referred to.

BD.6.xii

The name of the place where Parivāra was compiled is left completely vague. It is thought that Dīpa (or Dīpanāma) who has been assumed to be the compiler was a *thera* of Ceylon. But this is not said in the Envoi where, though his name occurs he is merely spoken of as having had the work

written, *likhāpesi*. Therefore we can form as little idea of the real compiler as we can of the provenance, whether Ceylon or India or elsewhere, of the work.

In the absence of any discussion of a reliable date to which Parivāra could be assigned, which would take us too far afield and probably not be profitable, one or two references to this problem may be cited. Winternitz is of the opinion that Parivāra probably dates from the same time as the Abhidhammapiṭaka.¹ B.M. BARUA, *Inscriptions of Asoka*, Part ii, pp.235–236, is cited by Dr. W. RĀHULA² as saying “the tradition thereof (i.e. the propagation of Buddhism in the Island of Tāmraparṇi) is embodied even in a Pali canonical work, the Parivārapatha, which was compiled in about the beginning of the Christian era”. The same tradition also occurs in other Pali works,³ but as these are not canonical the question arises whether Parivāra belongs to them, at least in respect of this material, rather than to the Canon itself.

The use of the word *likhati* twice in the Parivāra might also be considered. I have referred to the form *likhāpesi*, found in the Envoi.⁴ Then, at the end of the Mahāvibhaṅga 1.8, it is said “These eight Chapters (i.e. the ones just finished) have been written down for the way of study”.⁵ If Parivāra really relied on writing as its medium of expression, this almost automatically makes it later in date than much of the rest of the Canon which was handed down orally for some hundreds of years.

BD.6.xiii

In Oldenberg’s edition Parivāra consists of nineteen Chapters or Sections. At least two Commentaries, however, speak of sixteen Parivārā,⁶ a discrepancy which merits attention. At the end of Prv.16 the words *Parivāraṃ niṭṭhitāṃ* occur, and this is where the Parivāra may have ended originally, Prv.17 to Prv.21 being later additions. If we regard Chapter IV in Oldenberg’s edition as two Chapters instead of one: Anantaraṭṭhāyāla and Samathabheda, and if we likewise regard his Chapter VII as two Chapters instead of one: Uposathādivissajjanā and Atthavasapakaraṇa,⁷ we get the sixteen

¹ *History of Indian Literature*, vol.ii, p.33. ² *History of Buddhism in Ceylon*, Colombo, 1956, p.10, n. ³ See below, BD.6.xxxiv. ⁴ Above. ⁵ Vin.5.48, *ime aṭṭhā vārā sajjhāyamaggena likhitā*. On “writing” see *Vinaya Texts*, i, Introduction, p.xxxiif. ⁶ Vin-a.18, DN-a.17. ⁷ In the current edition these changes are adopted, so that Oldenberg’s Chapter IV = Prv.4 and Prv.5, while his Chapter VII = Prv.8 and Prv.9.

Parivāra spoken of in the Commentaries.

In **Prv.4** and **Prv.5** each division has its own *uddāna* which seems a fairly good reason for thinking that originally they formed two Chapters. Moreover, each appears to be given an entry in the *uddāna* to what, at **Vin.5.143**, is called the Mahāvagga which means all the Parivāra material that has been dealt with up to this point. These two sections of **Prv.4** and **Prv.5**, however, are by no means disparate. The second one, Samathabheda, could be regarded, not ineptly, as a kind of explanatory appendix to the first Section, clearing up definitions that, had they been dealt with in the course of this first Section, might have been so long, that though pertinent, they would prove confusing to the main run of the argument; and so they were assembled in their own particular Section of “cycles”.

The two divisions in **Prv.8** and **Prv.9** present a different type of case. They are both short divisions, the subject-matter of which has nothing in common. Neither of them concludes with an *uddāna*. The first of these divisions is unnamed in the text: there is no name followed by the word *niṭṭhita*, concluded. Oldenberg may have taken the title by which he heads this Section from **Vin-a.1346**. The second division, however, ends with the words *Atthavasapakaraṇaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*, thus excluding the first division. Yet this division appears to be mentioned in the *uddāna* to the whole of the Parivāra's Mahāvagga which follows and concludes this **Prv.9**. Here called *pavāraṇā*, the second subject about which questions are asked in the first division of **Prv.8**, it is placed between the Ekuttaraka (**Prv.7**) and the Atthavasika, at **Prv.9**. Thus *pavāraṇā*, and *atthavasika* are brought into the mnemonic verse as two topics and not as one. It would further appear that as the Commentary on **Prv.8** ends by saying *uposathādivissajjanavaṇṇaṇā niṭṭhitā* (**Vin-a.1346**) it must have regarded this division as having an existence separate from and independent of the second division to which it gives no name.

BD.6.xiv

Moreover the Pentads (**Prv.7.5**) are long enough to make the Upāli-Pentads (**Prv.17** and therefore in what I tentatively look on as later and additional matter) seem slightly superfluous as is perhaps **Prv.18**, Samuṭṭhāna, considering that **Prv.3** and also **Prv.1** and **Prv.2** have dealt thoroughly with the origins of offences already.

Indeed, from **Prv.17** to **Prv.21**, with the exception of **Prv.20** which is *sui generis*, one might suppose that someone other than the original compiler wanted to show that he too could gather together matter that, so long as it remained scattered throughout the Vibhaṅgas and Khandhakas, might not sufficiently impress the disciple. But there was little more to say and, again excepting **Prv.20**, these last five Chapters seem rather too inadequate to make any new contribution of value.

The Parivāra contains a number of words, and a few sentiments, not, I think, found in the other parts of the Vinaya. I have collected some of them here, and I put them forward subject to correction, as in an immense and not adequately indexed work as is the Vinaya-piṭaka, it is impossible to find, let alone remember, all its single words and phrases.

- **Vin.5.18**, etc.¹: *anuppannapaññatti*, a laying down (of an amendment to a rule) that has not come to be or has not occurred yet. This would appear to leave the door open for dealing with future situations. But even if these arose, they could not be legislated for now because the Vinaya is “closed”; no more can be added to it.
- **Vin.5.92**: The phrase *cha sāraṇīyā dhammā*, the six things to be remembered, belongs to other canonical works; in Vinaya the six things are given but without a title.
- **Vin.5.115**: *adhiccāpattika abhiñhāpattika*, apparently peculiar to this passage and MN.i.442ff.
- **Vin.5.115**: *athullavajjā āpatti*; see **Vin.2.87** *thūlavajjam apattim*.
- **Vin.5.118**: Four kinds of salts: *jātima kārīma romaka pakkhālaka*. In the Romakajāta (Ja.no.277, verse 79) where the word *romaka* occurs, it does not appear to refer to a salt and probably means “feathered” of a bird, in spite of Ja-a.ii.383.²
- **Vin.5.122**: *apakatatta*. At e.g. **Vin.2.32**, **Vin.2.204** there is *pakatatta bhikkhu*, regular ordained monk, as opposed to *bhikkhunī, sāmaṇera*, etc., but the word in the negative form does not appear to occur in the other parts of Vinaya.

¹ These page-numbers refer to the text. ² See below, **BD.6.182**.

- **Vin.5.122**: *āgālhāya ceteyya*, “may plan something hard”; expression apparently here only, but see *āgāḷha* at AN.i.283, and also, of *paṭipadā*, see AN.i.295, Ne.77, Ne.95; “the practice of the hardened sensualist” (Gs.i.272). This is a more acceptable translation to me than “luxury” (*Guide* 108, 131).
- **Vin.5.124–Vin.5.125**. *pasutta* (asleep) *paṭibuddha* (awake). The former, not in *Pali-English Dictionary*, is perhaps peculiar to this passage. The latter is found at Snp.807.
- **Vin.5.125, Vin.5.207**: *acittaka* (unconscious) *sacittaka* (conscious) appear to occur only in **Vin.5**, and not in the other parts. See *Critical Pali Dictionary* and *P.T.C.* which give *acittaka* as occurring only in later Pali literature.
- **Vin.5.129, Vin.5.130**: The passage stating the five advantages and the five further advantages in brooms, *sammajjani*, is unique, and nothing at all comparable is found in Vinaya or Aṅguttara or elsewhere as far as I know. It seems to be an innovation on the part of our compiler. On the other hand, at *Mi.2f.* there appear to be two advantages in brooms though they differ from those given here.
- **Vin.5.158**, verse 3, **Vin.5.160f.**, **Vin.5.163**, **Vin.5.164**. *anuvijjaka*, adjudicator, arbitrator in a legal question. Word here only in the Pali Canon.
- **Vin.5.163, Vin.5.166, Vin.5.183**. *saṅgāmāvacara bhikkhu*, “monk who is engaged in conflict.” This seems to be a monk who is protesting against a legal question. Cf. *saṅgāmāvacara yodha*, a warrior engaged in battle, at *Mi.44*; and *saṅgāmāvacara sūra* at *Ja.ii.94*, also *Ja.ii.95* (verse 61); and *yogāvacara*, one who is engaged in yoga at *Mi.33ff.*, *Mi.38f.*, *Mi.43*. Apparently, except for *Ja.ii.95*, not a canonical word. In *Parivāra* the use is figurative.
- **Vin.5.163**: *kulapadesa*, family’s standing; no entry in *P.T.C.*.
- **Vin.5.169**: Two pairs of words: *pakkhavant ñātivant* and *appāgama appadhara*. It seems that none of these is canonical.
- **Vin.5.183, Vin.5.187**: *diṭṭhāvikkamma*, an explanation of one’s views—in the Upāli-Pentads only and not in other parts of Vinaya, which these Pentads do not recapitulate with exactitude.
- **Vin.5.183**: *ussitamantin* (a grandiose speaker) *nissitajappin* (one who

hankers after or yearns for support for his statements). Neither compound found in other parts of Vinaya.

The Parivāra now and again substitutes its own words for the Suttavibhaṅga words of corresponding passages. For example, **Vin.5.37**, **Vin.5.38**, *pahāre pahāre* are not in Suttavibhaṅga **Bu-Pc.10**, **Bu-Pc.11**, where the Old Commentary, instead of using a kind of omnibus word such as is *pahāre*, specifies each of the actions that lead to Expiation. Similarly, *payoge*, as in **Bu-Pc.18** (**Vin.5.38**) and other contexts seems to be another omnibus word. Again, in Nuns' **Bi-Ss.5**, **Vin.5.56**, we get *āmisam* for *khādaniyam vā bhojaniyam vā* of Nuns' Vibhaṅga (**Vin.4.233**). This seems to be another comprehensive word used for the sake of brevity.

In Section **Prv.3.3**, however, four substitutions occur which cannot be for the sake of brevity, though they may be for the sake of metre, which is the medium this Section uses throughout. They are at:

(1) **Vin.5.87**, verse 27, where *riñcanti* is absent from Suttavibhaṅga *sikkhāpada* itself (Monks' **Bu-NP.17**), though appearing in its introductory narrative.

(2) **Vin.5.88**, verse 43, where Parivāra substitutes *seyyā* for *mañca* (Nuns' **Bi-Pc.31**), and *tathā bahi* for *tiroraṭṭhe* (Nuns' **Bi-Pc.38**); also **Vin.5.89**, verse 55 where it substitutes *seyya* for *sayana*.

At **Vin.5.106** there is, among other abbreviations, the somewhat curious phrase *samukhāvinayam kātūna mūlam—la—*. This looks as if it refers either to the preceding or the succeeding matter in **Prv.5**. I have very tentatively translated it as “to make the root (or source, beginning) a verdict in the presence of”, for such is the verdict under discussion here. *Kātūna* as a form of the infinitive of *karoti*, if that is indeed what it is, can be only of very rare occurrence. GEIGER makes no reference to it.¹ Equally rare must be *kātuye* at Thig.418²; cf. *marituye* at Thig.426, probably both Vedic infinitives. PISCHEL, Thig.p.212, does not agree with the reading or explanation at Thig-a.268: *kiṃ sakkā kātuye ti kiṃ mayā kātum ayye sakkā*; he says “the correct reading is no doubt *kātuye*, as given in the text”. That a compiler should now and again use an unusual form of a verb does not mean that it was in common

BD.6.xvii

¹ *Pali Literatur und Sprache, Encyclopedia of Indo-Aryan Research*, Strassburg, 1916. ² To which Professor A.K. Warder kindly drew my attention.

use during his life-time: any writer, to suit his purposes, may resort to a rare, ancient or obsolete word, but that does not make him belong to the times when that word was in current circulation.

I will now mention some of the points that seem to me worthy of note from among Parivāra's nineteen Chapters. This will serve also to give some rough idea of their contents.

PRV.1: MAHĀVIBHAṄGA

The first Section is called "The Laying-Down Where?". Each rule in the Mahāvibhaṅga, given in the exact order in which it has been handed down in the corresponding Mahāvibhaṅga at [Vin.3.1-Vin.3.266](#), [Vin.4.1-Vin.4.207](#), is examined from a number of angles, important among these being the place where it was laid down. This, of course, may be regarded as history, and nothing new is to be learnt from it so long as the student knows the other relevant parts of Vinaya. It is not necessarily more important than the other angles, aspects or questions about the rules that are set down, as a kind of *mātikā*, at the very beginning of this Section. These are somewhat bare or condensed outlines of questions to be learnt—and of the answers then following—in any study of the *sikkhāpadā*; then more detail of each one may be filled in as one proceeds through them all from the first De-feat to the twenty-fifth Training. Though "Where, Concerning Whom, and what Subject?" are traditional opening words in Commentaries, some of the other questions included here are less usual and less obvious. It is, for example, in this Section that we are made aware of the great importance the compiler attached to the number of origins, *āpattisamuttāna*, by which a monk can originate any of the offences legislated for in the Pātimokkha. There are six such origins, given at [Vin.2.90](#). But it left to Parivāra to analyse them in relation to each offence and assert them so clearly that they gain a significance and precision that could not be gauged from the other parts of Vinaya. The material is there, but neither the emphasis nor the systematization. This is Parivāra's innovation, part of its contribution to learning and mastering Vinaya.

The second Section of the Mahāvibhaṅga's first Chapter is entitled "How many Offences?". Its main concern is the number and type of other offences a monk may fall into according to the circumstances attending his infringement of any one of the rules. These are repeated here in their entirety and again in their proper order. A useful example to consult occurs at **Vin.5.37**, the first offence of Expiation, where he may fall into as many as five different kinds of offence for telling a conscious lie in five different ways. On the other hand, he may fall only into the offence bearing the relevant group-name, e.g. as at **Bu-NP.1**, **Bu-NP.2**, **Bu-NP.3**. All this information is in the Suttavibhaṅga, often in the Old Commentary. But it is buried there and not co-ordinated by means of being assembled.

PRV.2: BHIKKHUNĪVIBHAṄGA

The method of presenting the Nuns' Vibhaṅga is a very exact copy of that of presenting the Monks' Vibhaṅga, or Mahāvibhaṅga as it is called.

PRV.3: SAMUṬṬHĀNASS' UDDĀNA

This Chapter, like **Prv.12**, **Prv.19**, and **Prv.20**, is entirely in metre. It demonstrates the importance attached by the compiler to the origins of offences. In the short Introduction the point is made (verses 6–8) that he who desires (to know) the rule, *dhamma*, must train in Parivāra which, as a strand in the Thread (of the Teaching), fastens the garlands of both of the Vibhaṅgas, the Khandhakas and the *Mātikās*. It is thus a guide to the whole of the rest of Vinaya, and has a practical bearing on the stability of True *Dhamma*. For this will endure only as long as Vinaya endures. So does Vinaya's horizon become all the wider for the integral part it plays in the entirety of the Buddha's Teaching.

BD.6.xix

This Chapter then goes on to a systematic classification, under thirteen headings or in thirteen divisions or groups all of which in effect are names of offences, of every offence in the two Vibhaṅgas including the *Sekhiyas* that originate from the same combination of the six origins of offences

according to the various permutations and combinations of the origins of these offences from the three doors of body, speech and thought. No doubt the presumption is that when a student is trying to master Vinaya, he will not only want to know, he will also want to see almost at a glance as it were which of these three parts of a person is involved and in what permutation by his offending against any Vinaya rule. Though the origin may be dual as for example in Sheep's Wool Origin and in Dhamma-line-by-line Origin, the nature of the duality is different; this necessitates the meticulous attribution of the offences to the group to which, by the origination of them, they belong. In each of these classified groups the number of the offences included is stated, except in the third group, the Go-between Origin; here there appear to be 49 items. Such origins as are impossible are also given.

It is remarkable that, with one exception,¹ the compiler has been able to keep the *sikkhāpadā* in their proper consecutive order throughout each of these thirteen classifications of origins of offences into which he arranges them. And it is a great feat that, always in metre, he has given for practically every offence one, but not more than one, key-word from the *sikkhāpadā*, so that the student of Parivāra may recognize the one being referred to. I give my findings in the footnotes to this Chapter. Four times only has the compiler used substitutes for the words of the *sikkhāpadā*.²

PRV.4: ANANTARAPEYYĀLA AND PRV.5: SAMATHABHEDA

This consists of two main sections: the Anantarapeyyāla and the Samathabheda. Each begins with a kind of *mātikā* put in the form of questions; the different answers to them are then worked out at some length. The paragraphs are numbered straight on in Oldenberg's edition through 1–6 in Prv.4, and 7–22 in Prv.5. There is a link between these Sections in that the former is mainly occupied with offences their origins and the four kinds of legal questions they raise and the latter with the settling or deciding of these same legal questions. Prv.4 has its own *uddāna* which is quite distinct from the *uddāna* at the end of Prv.5. In Prv.5 the compiler displays a kind of *tour de force* in the extremely thorough attention he lavishes on the “cycles”,

BD.6.xx

¹ Vin.5.87, verse 30. ² See above, BD.6.xvi.

cakka, that he presents. And he presents every possible one that is to his point. Each is analysed down to the minutest detail. Apart from the one abbreviation he allows himself,¹ nothing is left to the imagination or to common sense; nothing is abbreviated in any such way as being called “the others”, “the rest” or “the remainder”. On the contrary, the names of the four legal questions and the seven methods of deciding them are repeated time and time again thus driving home the relation of any of the latter to any of the former, and incidentally providing a fine mental discipline for the student. The Commentary to this Section, which hardly exists, declares it is perfectly clear to the end.

PRV.6: *KHANDHAKAPUCCHĀ*

The aid of the Commentary is imperative for a right grasp of the contents of this very short Chapter. It appears to ask how many offences there are in each of the ten Khandhakas of the Mahāvagga and the twelve of the Cullavagga. But, in fact, as becomes evident from the Commentary, it is not inquiring about actual numbers of offences, but about the numbers of types of offence each Khandhaka contains.² The total of these types for any one Khandhaka, none of them named in Parivāra text itself, comes to no more than three: grave, Expiation, wrong-doing. Some Khandhakas contain more than one offence belonging to these three types. The point, however, is not to reckon these individually—or the answers might well not tally with those Parivāra gives—but by the class to which they belong. It need not, I think, be presumed that this Chapter was meant to be a puzzle or a pitfall for an unwary student, though this is not an impossibility. Rather, I would incline to the opinion that the compiler thought now that he had reviewed the Vibhaṅgas he would give some definite attention to the Khandhakas. It had become their turn—though never are they kept separate from the Vibhaṅgas in tidy isolated compartments—and owing to their diffuse nature as much as to the general plan of Parivāra, questions on the number of offences were not only as good a starting point as any, but

BD.6.xxi

¹ See above, [BD.6.xvi](#). The other abbreviations shown by omission marks in [Prv.5](#) are, I think, Oldenberg's. ² As in [Prv.19](#).

were almost the regulation one. Today the mystery of this brief Chapter can be unlocked only with the help of the Commentary. It would be interesting to know if the early students of Parivāra had to secure this also—and not here only—or whether they had some other key, perhaps the traditional knowledge of their teachers, to give them the right interpretations.

PRV.7, EKUTTARAKA

This is dominated throughout by a method without parallel in other parts of Vinaya. It is more in line with the Āṅguttara, even too with the Saṅgīti and Dasuttara Suttantas, and such other Pali works as are arranged on a “higher by one” plan, e.g. Puggala Paññatti and the last part, the *Samkhyāsarūpaṃ*, of the Milinda-ṭīkā.¹ But Puggala Paññatti is concerned only with the qualities of individuals, and the Milinda-ṭīkā only with items occurring in the Milindapañha. Apart from the method, Parivāra Prv.7 is far from being a copy of any of these works. In common with them it collects an enormous range of topics, qualities and attributes of no matter what kind of person or object or situation. But the difference is that here the Vinaya is the supreme foundation, the *fons et origo*, and the whole of the orbit from which this compendious compilation radiates and which it encompasses. Vinaya is its source, its centre and its field. Even those items which cannot be traced to Vinaya itself have all the same been carefully chosen for their Vinaya flavour. For example, in the Pentads² though the five perils for one of unpleasing and the five advantages for one of pleasing actions can be traced to the Āṅguttara but not to Vinaya, the explanation of these actions is as appropriate to Vinaya as to any other part of the Pali Canon. The same could be said of the five pairs of foolish or ignorant men and the five pairs of wise men,³ or of the pairs of individuals in whom the cankers either increase or do not⁴ (AN.i.84–AN.i.86). Even the Āṅguttara’s three things that are hidden or unveiled⁵ have a Vinaya bearing as do also several of the items listed in the short section of the Nonads. Here, for example, the nine occasions for or bases of ill-will and the nine ways of averting it can be found in the

BD.6.xii

¹ Mi-t.61ff. ² Vin.5.132. ³ Vin.5.118. ⁴ Vin.5.118–Vin.5.119. ⁵ Vin.5.120–Vin.5.121.

Dīgha and Aṅguttara but not in Vinaya. Yet they are not at all alien to it in sentiment since a monk should be able to rise above this defilement of the mind, this hindrance.

Such departures from Vinaya sources though not from Vinaya sentiment are, however, in a Chapter of this great length comparatively very infrequent. The underlying motive must have been to provide the student of Vinaya with a graduated list, largely of such Vinaya topics as offences and legal questions, on the analogy of the graduated lists for students of *Dhamma*. It was a brilliant conception, brilliantly carried out. But some features raise problems.

For example, practically every one of the eleven groups includes its own appropriate number of legally valid and legally invalid suspensions of the Pātimokkha. So that, unless one waits for the Decads or already knows from some other source that there are ten, one might be misled into thinking there were only one, two or three and so on. One might conclude from this that part of the method was to grade the same item in group after group within the more general gradation, perhaps to keep everything before the student's memory. The fear of forgetting must have been very real in a world where the spoken word was perhaps still the main medium of teaching and learning rather than the book written on palm-leaves.¹

There is too the puzzle of another kind of repetition. Constantly, say a dyad or a triad is given, such as "Two probations"² or "Two *mānattas*".³ This is followed immediately by the words "And two further" (probations or *mānattas*)—all of them being specified and named. And then, in the Tetrads⁴ each of these two sets of two is grouped together to form one set of fours. In addition, but lacking the last member, the first three members appear in the Triads.⁵ This same feature is found again, e.g. in the Dyads and Pentads. In the former⁶ three dyads occur successively equalling six types of persons who must not be ordained. But in the Pentads⁷ the last of these six persons is omitted. More examples could be given, such as the five offences⁸ and the six offences⁹ involving cutting down, or the six⁶ and the seven¹⁰ proper courses. Only the numbers are stated; the Commentary gives

¹ See above, [BD.6.xii](#), for Parivāra's two references to writing. ² [Vin.5.118](#). ³ [Vin.5.118](#).

⁴ [Vin.5.126](#). ⁵ [Vin.5.121](#). ⁶ [Vin.5.117](#) (towards top). ⁷ [Vin.5.129](#). ⁸ [Vin.5.128](#).

⁹ [Vin.5.133](#). ¹⁰ [Vin.5.134](#).

the clue to the offences they denote. Or again, “ten boons”¹ and “eleven boons”² were asked for. The Commentary, specifies them but not the text, and takes the eleventh boon as the one Mahāpajāpatī requested. This was the only one the Buddha did not consent to. He granted all the others, eight of them to Visākhā, the famous lay woman supporter of both the Orders, which by that time must have been well established.

There is too the rather curious and apparently casual inclusion in the Dyads³ of two salts, two further and two further and two further salts, making eight in all. These are not repeated either in the Tetrads or the Octets. Four of these salts do not seem to recur anywhere else in the Pali Canon. The four that this does mention, *sāmuḍḍa* and *kāḷaloṇa*, *sindhava* and *ubbhida*, at **Kd.6.8**, are four of the five salts allowed as medicines, a salt called *bila* being the fifth. This being so, and without more evidence, it is clearly not safe to argue that whenever salts are mentioned it is always pair by pair. These five salts are not among the Pentads, possibly for the reason that **Kd.6.8** also makes allowable “whatever other salts there are that are medicines” if they serve neither as solid nor as soft foods. For this last clause would prevent a close fit, hence, as a pentad, finality and completeness would be lacking. The same reasoning could be applied to some of the other groups of five things allowed as medicines (**Kd.6.1ff.**). But with, for example, the five tallows it is different, for at **Kd.6.2** this clause is not appended. Thus because five tallows only are recognized they can appear in the Pentads.⁴

BD.6.xxiv

Another sort of problem arises with the Tetrads: “four reproving” are given twice.⁵ They are not placed beside one another and they differ in kind. Why does the compiler here depart from his usual custom of saying “and a further” two or four or whatever the number may be? I doubt whether either of these two tetrads, as such, can be found in the other parts of Vinaya.

Again, a longish passage in the Pentads⁶ is repeated word for word in the Decads,⁷ and indeed several times a decad has appeared already as two pentads. This may be good for the memory, but a simple count of the

¹ Vin.5.139. ² Vin.5.140. ³ Vin.5.118. ⁴ Vin.5.129. ⁵ Vin.5.125f., Vin.5.127. ⁶ Vin.5.130.
⁷ Vin.5.138-Vin.5.139.

Ekuttaraka items without looking for repetitions and duplications would result in quite a wrong total.

Then there is the occasion when two clauses taken from the Nuns' Vibhaṅga differ from that Vibhaṅga in that there a nun of twelve years' standing is in question, while here, in Parivāra, she has to be only of ten years' standing.¹ This may be due to an inadvertent following of the corresponding clauses about the monks who are rightly spoken of as having to be of ten years' standing; or it may be deliberate so as to give the nuns a place in the Decads of the Ekuttaraka. But neither aberration nor deviation is characteristic of the compiler.

In these few random notes on a Chapter that would bear a good deal of examination I have aimed at bringing forward only some of the points I think deserve investigation. In conclusion it must be remarked that the Eightfold Way is absent from the Octets, as I believe it is also from the Octets of the Aṅguttara.² The nearest approach to it appears to come under the headings "ten wrongnesses" and "ten rightnesses" in the Decads.³ These are not expanded in the text, but the Commentary confirms with the words "beginning with wrong view, ending with wrong freedom".⁴ There are of course many matters in the Pali Canon that have not been included in the Ekuttaraka. They may belong, for example, more to the Teaching than to the Discipline, such as the three marks of all phenomena, the four Truths, the four arousings of mindfulness, the four right endeavours, the five powers, the five basic faculties, *indriya*, and the seven states connected with Awakening. These were the affair of the *dhammakathikas* and the *dhammadharas*. A student of Vinaya who perhaps hoped one day to be a *vinayadhara*, an expert in Discipline, had such an enormous amount to learn in this branch alone of the Buddha's Dispensation that very likely he had to be content with no more than a comparatively superficial acquaintance with *Dhamma* which forms the other great branch.

Because I think these sections of the Ekuttaraka somewhat unwieldy as they stand, I have ventured to break them up into paragraphs, hoping that this will facilitate their study.

¹ Vin.5.139. ² See Gs.iv, Introduction, p.x, and Gs.v, Introduction, p.x. ³ Vin.5.138.

⁴ Vin-a.1343f.

PRV.8: UPOSATHĀDIVISSAJJANĀ AND PRV.9: ATTHAVASAPAKARAṆA

Like Prv.4, this has two main sections. They are called Uposathādivissajjanā and Atthavasapakaraṇa. The Chapter concludes by saying *Mahāvaggaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*. The Parivāra to all intents and purposes then proceeds to topics dealt with in the Cullavagga and carries this on to the end of Prv.16. Vin-a.1347 styles its exegesis on Prv.1–Prv.9 Mahāvagga-vaṇṇanā, while at Vin-a.1347 it calls that on Prv.10–Prv.16 Paññattivagga-vaṇṇanā as though this were a title, if not for Cullavagga, then for other material beginning with a verse statement of the places where the *sikkhāpadā* were laid down. I have referred earlier to Prv.9 as one of the two Parivāra Chapters that falls into two discrete portions.¹

PRV.10: GĀTHĀSAMGAṆIKA

This is mostly in verse with a little prose interspersed. Of much interest are the opening verses which collect the names of the seven places where the 350 rules of training for monks and nuns were laid down, followed by the ascription of the relevant rules to each of these seven places. Sāvattihī, however, where 294 rules are said to have been made, cannot have this number named individually, so the reader or student must find them for himself. Next comes another deeply interesting passage stating that 220 rules of training are recited by monks on Observance days and 304 by nuns, totalling 524. But this must not be taken literally, for 174 are for equal training, thus reducing the grand total to the accredited 350 rules laid down in the seven places. Or, as alternately given, 176 rules are not shared between monks and nuns; but these with the 174 that are shared amount again to the 350 rules for members of both Orders.² The two concluding stanzas are more reminiscent of *Dhamma* than Discipline, the last one containing one of Parivāra's few references to *nibbāna*.³ It might have seemed as well to

BD.6.xxvi

¹ See above, BD.6.xiii. ² See BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxviiiff. ³ Cf. Prv.14

remind students and aspirants from time to time of the ultimate goal of their strenuous life and training.

PRV.11: ADHIKARAṄABHEDA

This is the most thorough and detailed statement of the four legal questions to be found in Vinaya, as the commentator realized. They occupy its full length, and there is no digression from them.

PRV.12: APARAGĀTHĀSAMĠGAṄIKA

This short Chapter, which keeps entirely to metre, is largely devoted to the subject of reproving, *codanā*. Though Prv.11 divides it from Prv.10 which is called *Gāthāsaṃgaṇika*, the title of Prv.12 would have raised no other problems had it not been for the title of Prv.19. The text calls this *Dutiyagāthāsaṃgaṇika* as though it were oblivious of Prv.12. The Commentary, very confusingly, styles both Prv.12 and Prv.19 *Dutiyagāthāsaṃgaṇika*. Neither has a *uddāna*.

PRV.13: CODANĀKAṄḌA

This is chiefly concerned with the reprover, *codaka*, including the ignorant incompetent kind who goes on to Niraya for abusing Elders and burns up himself, *jhāpeti attānaṃ*, for many another stupidity. We thus learn something of the fruition of imperfect, unskilled reproving. The method followed at the beginning of the second set of stanzas resembles that of the opening stanzas of Prv.12

PRV.14: CŪLASAMĠGĀMA

BD.6.xxvii

This opens, as does Prv.15, with a word not found in other parts of Vinaya: *saṃgāmāvacara bhikkhu*,¹ a monk who is engaged in battle, here used figu-

¹ See above, BD.6.xv.

ratively of course, and meaning engaged in conflict or dispute over a legal question. The first paragraph describes the ideal adjudicator, *anuvijjaka*,¹ in such disputes. *Prv.14.1.2*, in a way not uncommon in the Suttapaṭṭaka but not found elsewhere in Vinaya,² connects causally and almost step by step a more humble beginning with the noblest ending. Here it seems that reproof is for the sake of final *nibbāna* without clinging remaining. Thus are disciplinary matters shown to lead on gradually to the consummation. This invests them in a most interesting light, and again must act as a welcome reminder to the monastic disciple that the discipline he is undergoing has an elevated though distant goal the achievement of which is in a direct relationship to his progressive efforts as a reliable monk.³

PRV.15: MAHĀSAMĠĀMA

In common with the opening parts of *Prv.1* and *Prv.2* and with *Prv.16*, a Commentary forms the main bulk of the Chapter in the sense that it consists of a consecutive explanation of the phrases used in the first paragraph. This puts us in mind of the word for word Commentary at *Kd.2.3* on the recital of the Pātimokkha, and would appear to take the place of the questions and answers which are a feature in other Parivāra Chapters; it is certainly a valuable method of clarification. The Chapter opens with the same words, *saṃgāmvācāra bhikkhu*, as does *Prv.14*; it contains a longish quotation from *Kd.4*, also two verses both traceable to the Dīgha and the Aṅguttara, and a repetition of the first set of verses in *Prv.13* with the substitution of *pavāraṇā* for *uposatha*.

At the beginning of paragraph 2 the exegesis of “He should know the subject” gives a total of the 350 rules of *Prv.10* if one takes the 75 offences of wrong-doing to stand for the 75 *Sekhiyas*, for infringing any of which an offence of wrong-doing resulted. Offences of wrong speech are not counted. The citation of the monk who is being reproofed with two things, speaking the truth and being without anger, *sacca akuppa*, has made an appearance already in *Prv.13.4* and in *Kd.19.5.7*. There are several words in this Chapter

BD.6.xxviii

¹ See above, *BD.6.xv*. ² See *BD.1, Introduction, p.ix*. ³ See above, *BD.6.xxvi*.

that have not been found in other parts of the Pali Canon.¹ Unfortunately the Commentary fails and stops short some way before it ends, saying, as it says at the end of **Prv.4**, that the rest is clear.

PRV.16: KATHINABHEDA

This takes us deep into the process of the proper making of the *kaṭhina* cloth. It is not a simple one; it is, in fact, extremely complicated. There are not only the 24 wrong or improper ways and the 17 right or proper ways of formally making it up into robes (or spreading it on the frame), but there is also a mass of other relevant matters, often further divided and sub-divided, explored and explained. The Chapter is entirely occupied with the business in hand and must have added its quota to the seriousness with which the proper carrying out of this annual event is regarded in monastic circles. Exactitude, depending on a mastery of detail, has to be achieved, and this well-organized Chapter goes one by one through all the steps for attaining this end.

I have suggested earlier² that, because at the end of this Chapter, there stand the words *Parivāraṃ niṭṭhitam*, the original version of Parivāra went no further and that the subsequent Chapters are later additions to the work.

PRV.17: UPĀLIPANĀCAKA

At the time of the Buddha, Upāli was the most proficient and the greatest *vinayadhara*, expert in Discipline, the whole of which he is traditionally supposed to have learnt from the Buddha himself. It seems very remarkable that of all the quantities of questions he is here shown as having asked, the Buddha's answers were all in sets of five whereas in the much shorter Upālivagga at AN.v.7off. they were all in sets of ten. At **Kd.9.6** (**Vin.1.325-328**) the answers do not appear to involve any special numbers. How many questions Upāli actually asked and how many are ascribed to him because of his great authority in Vinaya matters, it is impossible to say at this distance

¹ See above, **BD.6.xv**. ² See above, **BD.6.xiii**.

of time. This Chapter is the only one to begin in the style traditional to the Piṭakas, possibly to intimate that it is not an original contribution but a gathering together of subject-matter in the very form in which it had been handed down but hitherto had not been collected. Be that as it may, Upāli's name provides a good focal point for demonstrating by this grouping in 14 divisions, always by sets of five, and usually under the aspect of the number of qualities a monk or nun should possess, that he is fit and able for certain disciplinary duties, some of which have occurred already in Parivāra, generally in other contexts. A few pentads from the Ekuttaraka are repeated, and various words and phrases are brought forward from other parts of Vinaya, also a few from the Suttapiṭaka. There are probably more of these last than I have referred to in the notes, for, unless one were making a special study of Upāli, the time involved in tracing them would be out of proportion to the result gained. No doubt it was Upāli's eminence in everything that was prescribed to govern the life of a monk or nun as well as the smooth running of the Order that places him in the unique position of having a Chapter named after him personally. This, in a work noticeably devoid of proper names, could be regarded as a tribute deservedly paid to this most accomplished adept in Vinaya.

BD.6.xxix

PRV.18: SAMUṬṬHĀNA

This appears to lack nearly all originality, either as a collection or as a statement, and it is hard to account for its inclusion. One would have thought that all that could have been said about the origins of offences had been said already, principally in [Prv.1](#), [Prv.2](#) and [Prv.3](#). As a Chapter it is no more than a copy of certain parts of these earlier Chapters. For it merely picks out, from among other material, information they give about origins. Though these are perfectly plainly stated there, this Chapter restates them here, so that it becomes a kind of digest concerned solely with origins, of material already Presented in Parivāra. Even some of the points mentioned in its first paragraph are not peculiar to it, but have occurred already. The Chapter can hardly be said to have been compiled by a master-hand but

rather by someone who was taking an easy way to hammer home a subject of importance, or at least of importance in Parivāra.

PRV.19: *DUTIYAGĀTHĀSAMĀṄĀNIKA*

BD.6.xxx

¹This is another Chapter wholly in metre. Its method, deviated from only in verse 31, 32, is for each alternate stanza to ask “How many?” concerning various Vinaya items and to give the answer in the succeeding verse. As appears early on, the “offence” is to be taken, as in [Prv.6](#), as the class of offence, not the number of individual offences under the chosen heading. To demonstrate this I have annotated “three offences at sunrise” in verse 4 to show that though at least seven occasions for falling into an offence may occur at sunrise, the “three” refer only to the class to which they belong. In view of [Prv.6](#) one cannot say that the approach here is anything new. This takes us to about verse 50 when the subject of offences is dropped, to be taken up again in verse 93, now in a straightforward count of the number of offences that exist in each class. These, as in [Prv.10](#), come to a total for monks and nuns of 350.

These verses, often characterized by a refrain, are pleasant to read, but do not sweep in more than a few items that have not been considered and dissected already. One can mention, however, the reference in verses 51, 52 to the four Vinaya occasions where confessions of a transgression were made and which hitherto have received no attention in Parivāra. We also hear more of *chejja*, “could be destroyed”, verses 57, 58; of the individuals who should not be greeted but if they are there is an offence of wrong-doing for every greeting, verses 61, 62; and of the number of the kinds of monastic adherents who may receive robe-material after they have kept the rains, verses 63, 64. Noteworthy too are the mathematical computations at verses 65, 66 and 77, 78. This last pair of verses and likewise verses 81, 82 concern themselves with the number of those doomed to the Downfall for being schismatics. This too is noteworthy since references to the locus, as it were, of a future rebirth are not common in Parivāra.

¹ On this title see above, [BD.6.xxvi](#).

I think this Chapter could have been compiled only by someone or someone and his colleagues and pupils who had made a prolonged study of Vinaya and was anxious to pass on the results. Frequently, however, these are in a form where research rather than memory is required if a student is to supply the right answer to any one of the many questions.¹ Once again, we ourselves would often be in complete darkness were it not for the commentarial explanations.²

BD.6.xxxi

PRV.20: *SEDAMOCAKAGĀTHĀ*

This is well named. Wholly in metre, it is full of riddles and puzzles the right solution of which calls for hard and accurate thinking. Opposing statements, each one drawn from various parts of Vinaya, and statements obviously contrary to well known *sikkhāpadā* if taken merely at their face value, are all shown to be valid when properly interpreted. One of the difficulties, even with the commentator's almost but not quite unfailing guidance, is to trace them to their right source, for some are very obscure. My notes reveal the occasions of my uncertainty; otherwise, in the light of the Commentary I hope that I have given a sound lead to anyone studying this highly original set of stanzas, but to make them all come alive a certain amount of research would still lie before him.

Though Milindapañha presents a huge quantity of dilemmas and repeatedly sets two statements the one against the other which apparently do not tally and apparently could not both be true, nearly all of these are taken from the Suttapiṭaka and Jātaka and comparatively only a very few from Vinaya. The Sweat-inducing Stanzas, on the other hand, adhere strictly to the contents of Vinaya and never move away from them. They never once mention origins of offences or formal acts of the Order. There are 43 stanzas and the *uddāna* gives 43 items. Whether this number is comprehensive and covers all Vinaya dilemmas and riddles I am not prepared to say. All that can be said here is that nothing comparable exists in other parts of Vinaya. Further, it seems that the compiler has made a very deep study of the *sikkhāpadā* for both monks and nuns, and has extracted information and

¹ See above, BD.6.xx. ² See above, BD.6.xx.

matters of fact from many of them which, though there but not laboured, could easily come as a surprise to more superficial students, e.g. verses 32, 33 and 36, 37.

BD.6.xxxii

Riddles are nothing new to the Pali canon. One is to be found e.g. at Dh.p.294, Dh.p.295, and another at Thag.15, Thag.633 = Dh.p.370 = SN.i.3. The existence of four citations of this latter riddle points to its popularity. Milinda's dilemmas are not riddles; they are plain straightforward quotations. All they have in common with the Sweat-inducing Stanzas is a presentation of material that, though apparently inconsistent, yields to consistency and agreement when the right interpretation is known. As Milinda's questions are, in the main, dilemmas based on the Suttapiṭaka, so this collection of 43 stanzas must be classed as Vinaya dilemmas.

PRV.21: "FIVE DIVISIONS"

This Chapter is given no name in the text or Commentary. The text, however, consists of five vaggas or divisions, individually named and numbered. These are called collectively by Oldenberg "The Five Vaggas". The Commentary, on the other hand, by taking Vaggas 3 and 4 together to form one vagga, admits of four vaggas only. It calls its combined vaggas 3 and 4 by the name of Anisamsavagga, though in the text these are called Pannattivagga and Pannatta-vagga respectively, a distinction that, from internal evidence in these two vaggas, might be hard to justify. This Chapter is inclined to repeat material given earlier in the Parivāra with a resulting loss of intrinsic interest though no doubt the summing up of various points is very clear. In the first division, the Kammavagga, insistence is laid on strict and rigid adherence to the regulation way of carrying out monastic proceedings. This creates an impression that one false step, one omission, would invalidate the whole of the legal inquiry for which monks had assembled, and puts one in mind of the sanctity of brahmanical rites.

It is left to the commentator to decipher which kind of *osaraṇa* and which kind of *nissaraṇa* is meant on each of the four occurrences of these words at [Vin.5.222](#).

Were it spoken, written or printed in full the fifth division would be found to mention every *sikkhāpada* in its proper order so as to show that the offence involves “matter” and “kind”, and the class to which it belongs involves “name” and “offence”. It would seem as if the compiler of this Chapter had come to the conclusion there was still room for clarification and that some points had not been stressed sufficiently.

BD.6.xxxiii

The life of a monk, regarded as an individual, was centred on adhering to the rules of training; and, regarded as a member of the Saṅgha to which he belonged, it was centred on the greater and lesser communal legislative acts. The Parivāra, with its minute analysis and synthetical treatment, hammers this home encompassing and covering everything an individual monk or nun and an Order as a unit should know. It is not a book for general reading; it is a book of reference to be studied by anyone making research into the Vinaya, by a member of the Order or by someone aspiring to ordination who should learn beforehand the kind of things he will be expected to grasp more fully later.

Though he is by no means uncritical of the work of his commentarial predecessors the compiler of the Vinaya Commentary, including that on the Parivāra, appears to have had a certain admiration for the Mahāpaccarī, one of the early Commentaries, and occasionally he follows its interpretations in preference to those of the Vinaya itself (e.g. see Mahāvibhaṅga, [Vin.5.38](#), [Bu-Pc.14](#), [Bu-Pc.15](#), [Bu-Pc.23](#)) but occasionally he differs from them (e.g. [Vin.5.39](#), [Bu-Pc.26](#)). Our commentator, therefore, the Ven. Buddhaghosa, apparently had full knowledge of several, probably all, of the early Commentaries: the Mahāaṭṭhakathā, the Mahāpaccarī, the Kurundī (whose interpretations he now and again says should not be accepted), and the Andhakaṭṭhakathā.¹ He was, of course, completely at liberty to choose what he thought was the best and truest interpretation of some point in any one of these Commentaries and to criticize that made by others. His Vinaya Commentary refers not infrequently to Parivāra, and sometimes cites verses from it.

¹ See E.W. ADIKARAM, *Early History of Buddhism in Ceylon*, p.10ff. for a valuable though short, account of these early Commentaries or sources of the Pali Commentaries.

BD.6.xxxiv

Of the extant Pali Commentaries it would seem that that on Aṅguttara pays a certain amount of attention to Parivāra. This may be a reflexion of the attention paid, not by name but by parallel passages, by Parivāra to Aṅguttara. In a long account of the disappearance of the Buddha-word as contained in the three Piṭakas together with the Pali Commentaries AN-a.1.89 says that after the disappearance of the last Jātaka to be remembered, still the Vinaya will be borne in mind. But as time goes on and on first the Parivāra will disappear then the Khandhakas, then the Bhikkhuni-vibhaṅga, and lastly the Mahāvibhaṅga.¹

MN-a.ii.106, AN-a.iii.5 state that among other portions of the Tathāgata's words the two Vibhaṅgas, the Khandhakas and Parivāra should be included; AN-a.iii.158–159, however, holds that the two Vibhaṅgas are Sutta, and that only Khandhaka-Parivāra are Vinaya. A division is made also at AN-a.v.7 where the two former are called Vinaya and the two latter *abhivinaya*. Therefore, except that the Parivāras tend to be bracketed with the Khandhakas, any firm tradition of their status or any agreement on what that was seems difficult to find. The Parivāra itself differs from all the above views when it says *paññatti vinayo vibhatti abhivinayo* (Vin.5.2).

Unless one's knowledge of the Vibhaṅgas and the Khandhakas were as profound and accurate as that of the compiler of the Parivāra, many puzzles, some almost insoluble, might arise and many references be wrongly ascribed to other parts of the Vinaya, thus creating a deeper confusion. Throughout Section Prv.3, for example, and throughout Section Prv.9, the offence under review has to be recognized from one word only, for that is all that is provided for its identification. The Ven. Buddhaghosa, though undoubtedly extremely brief, meets this challenge and gives just enough information for the purpose, sometimes mentioning the type of offence arising from this or that action. For example, Vin-a.1307 on Prv.3, verse 20, reads: *moho amūlakena cā ti mohanake pācittiya-sikkhāpadañ ca amūlakena saṃghādisesena anuddhamšana-sikkhāpadañ ca*. It is thus shown that the former action is to be traced, through the word *mohanaka*, to the Expia-

¹ MN-a.iv.116, SN-a.ii.203, Vb-a.432 give much briefer versions, but all with the same intent. *Anāgatavaṃsa* merely says that after the disappearance of the Jātakas, the Vinaya will disappear, but it does not give the stages of the disappearance.

tion group, and the latter, through the word *anuddhamāna*, to the Formal Meeting group. Again, on Section **Prv.3**, verse 28 the Ven. Buddhaghosa's explanation at Vin-a.1309 attests that *pūva-paccaya-joti ca* are to be taken to stand for three *sikkhāpadas*. Then, too, though the Ven. Buddhaghosa thus keeps one on the right lines and also prevents one from attributing such comparatively common key-words as *datvā* or *vikāle* (see Vin-a.1307, Vin-a.1311) to the wrong *sikkhāpada*, all the same it has been a work of formidable detection to trace, from no more than the minimum of words, all the sources in the other parts of the Vinaya. Yet, owing to the Ven. Buddhaghosa's remarkable accuracy and efficiency, I have been able to supply most, though not quite all, of the references to these other parts. It is certain that without the labours of this great commentator this annotated translation of the Parivāra could neither have been correct nor brought to a conclusion. My debt to him is beyond all reckoning, and is one that it is an honour to acknowledge.

BD.6.xxxv

Of my contemporaries, I have to thank Dr. W. Rahula and the Ven. Dr. H. Saddhatissa for their helpful elucidations or confirmations of some of the terms I had not met in the other parts of the Vinaya. I wish also to offer my gratitude to Professor A.K. Warder not only for reminding me of my reference in **BD.1, Introduction, p.v**, to the need for a complete as against a partial translation of the Vinaya, but also for his interest throughout the progress of this work. The more I have worked at Parivāra the more I have become convinced that it is a very useful guide, in particular its earlier Chapters, to the contents of the Vinaya-piṭaka. I have become convinced also that only a translator of the other parts should attempt a translation of the Parivāra if it is to act as this useful guide. For unless the same terminology were used throughout the whole translation, which might be difficult for a second translator, the Parivāra translation would lose much of its point and purpose. Most of the words in Vinaya are terms with a definite meaning and often a technical one. Consistency in translation is therefore the chief, perhaps the only, means of identification.

I.B. HORNER
London, 1965.

1.1. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON THE LAYING-DOWN-WHERE

Praise to the Lord, the Perfected One, the Fully Self-Awakened One

PĀRĀJIKA

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1

BD.6.1

Vin.5.1

Where¹ was that which is the first offence involving Defeat laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One? Concerning whom? On what subject? Is there there a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down that has not (yet) occurred²; a laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts; a laying down that is shared,³ a laying down that is not shared; a laying down for one (Order only), a laying down for both (Orders)⁴; plunged into which, included in which of the five recitations of the Pātimokkha⁵; by which recital does one come to the recital; of the four fallings away⁶ which falling away; of the seven classes of offence which class

¹ For these questions cf. Vin.2.286; also Vin-a.13f., DN-a.12. The “supplementary laying down”, *anupaññatti*, refers to an addition, correction, corollary or adjustment made to a rule already laid down. Sometimes more than one adjustment had to be made. ² *anuppannapaññatti*; this is an amendment that has not yet been made; if made it would amend a rule already laid down. ³ *sādhāraṇa*, shared according to Vin-a.1302 by monks and nuns.

⁴ Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 22 notes this ninefold laying down as it is to here. ⁵ Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 2 enumerates five recitals in the Monks' Pātimokkha: recital of the source (*nidāna*), of the *Pārājika*, of the *Saṅghādisesa*, of the undetermined (offences), and of “the following” (*vitthāra*, the extension, the detail). ⁶ In moral habit, good habits, right view, right mode of livelihood. (Cf. Vin.2.242).

of offence; of the six origins of offences¹ by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence); of the four legal questions² which legal question; of the seven (ways for) the deciding (of a legal question)³ by how many decidings is it stopped; what there is Discipline, what there is pertaining to Discipline⁴; what there is the Pātimokkha, what there is pertaining to the Pātimokkha⁵; what is falling away,⁶ what is success,⁷ what is practice⁸? Because of how many reasons⁹ was the first offence involving Defeat laid down by the Lord? Who train themselves? Who have trained themselves in the training¹⁰? In what state¹¹? Who know by heart? Whose is the Utterance? By whom has it been conveyed¹²?

BD.6.2

“Where was that which is the first offence involving Defeat laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One?”¹³ It was laid down in Vesālī.¹⁴

“Concerning whom?” Concerning Sudinna the Kalandaka.

¹ The six are given at [Vin.2.90](#) and are all various combinations of offences originating from body, speech and mind. See also [Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 22](#); and below, Index I. ² Given at [Vin.2.88](#), [Vin.3.164](#). ³ Given at [Vin.4.207](#). ⁴ *abhivinaya*. See *abhivinaye vineturū* at [Vin.1.64](#). Taken by [Vin-a.990](#) however to mean the whole of the Vinaya-piṭaka; but [Vin-a.1303](#) appears to think otherwise, saying in its exegesis of *vibhatti abhivinayo* that “*vibhatti* is called *padabhājaniya* (the Old Commentary); *vibhatti* is just a name for analysis (*vibhaṅga*)”. *Vibhatti* also means division, classification. ⁵ *adhipātimokkha*, a word that apparently does not occur elsewhere in Vinaya, except below, p.2, where all these questions are answered, and where it is called *vibhatti* (see previous note). The Commentary says nothing. The word *adhipātimokkha* occurs at [MN.ii.245](#) (see *Middle Length Sayings* iii.31, n.4 “concerning the Obligations”). ⁶ *vipatti*, unsuccess, failure. At [Vin.1.63](#), falling away is from moral habit, good habits (*ajjhācara*, see [BD.4.82, n.5](#)) and right view (*atidiṭṭhi*, see [BD.4.83, n.1](#)); see also [Vin.1.171f.](#), [Vin.2.4](#). At [Vin.2.22f.](#), [Vin.2.88f.](#), [Vin.2.90f.](#) the fourth falling away is added, that of falling away from a right mode of livelihood; also at [Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 22](#). At [Vin.2.241](#) the first four suspensions of the Pātimokkha are concerned with these fallings away. Three kinds are given at [AN.i.268](#), [AN.i.270](#), two kinds at [DN.iii.213](#). ⁷ *sampatti*, opposite of *vipatti*, achievement, attainment. Three kinds at [Ne.126](#), *śīla samādhi paññā*; another three at [Dhp-a.iii.183](#), *manussa*, *devaloka*, *nibbāna*. ⁸ *paṭipatti*, also behaviour, progress. It is not possible to reproduce the play of these words ending in *-patti*, to which *ā-patti* also belongs. ⁹ *atthavasa*; the 10 given at [Vin.2.202](#), [Vin.3.21](#). Defined at [Vin-a.223](#) as well as below. ¹⁰ *sikkhitasikkhā* as at [Vin.4.122](#), [Vin.4.343](#), but there of a female probationer training for 2 years in 6 rules. ¹¹ *kattha-ṭhitam*, in what condition or state? ¹² *ken’ ābhata*, by whom handed down, transmitted? ¹³ This first *Pārājika* or offence involving Defeat is given at [Vin.3.1-40](#). ¹⁴ [Vin.3.15ff.](#)

“On what subject?” On the subject of Sudinna the Kalandaka’s indulging in sexual intercourse with his former wife.¹

Vin.5.2

“Is there there a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down that has not (yet) occurred?” There is one laying down,² two supplementary laying downs,³ for it⁴ there is no laying down that has not (yet) occurred.

BD.6.3

“A laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts?” A laying down (that holds good) everywhere.

“A laying down that is shared, a laying down that is not shared?” A laying down that is shared.⁵

“A laying down for one (Order), a laying down for both (Orders)?” A laying down for both (Orders).⁶

“Plunged into which, included in which of the five recitations of the Pātimokkha?” Plunged into the source,⁷ included in the source.

“By which recital does one come to the recital?” By the second recital one comes to the recital.⁸

¹ Bu-Pj.1. ² Vin.3.21. ³ Vin.3.22, Vin.3.23. ⁴ *tasmim*, presumably for this rule, *sutta* or *dhamma*. ⁵ There are 8 *Pārājika* rules for nuns. The first one is “shared” with monks, therefore it is not given in the Nuns’ *Pārājika* Section (beginning at Vin.4.211). According to Vin-a.1302 it reads “whatever nun, with desire (or intention, will), should indulge in sexual intercourse even with an animal, is one who is defeated, she is not in communion”. This is the same as the first *anupāññatti* (the first amendment) for monks (Vin.3.22) and reading nun and monk respectively, but the word *chandaso*, with desire, occurs only in the nuns’ rule. ⁶ Vin-a.1303 says “laying down that is shared” has the same meaning as “laying down for both (Orders)”, only the phrasing being different. ⁷ *nidānogadha* means “if he has an offence, he should declare it—here plunged into the source means the fact of entering all offences”—so Vin-a.1303 which adds that this word and the next are the same. It seems a little difficult to accept this interpretation if we take the “source” as the first of the five recitals of the Pātimokkha, see above, BD.6.1, n.5. ⁸ The second recital is that of the 4 *Pārājika* rules (*dhammā*), Vin-a.1303, Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 2. See BD.6.1, n.6 above. Thus the meaning appears to be that the rules the second division of the Pātimokkha is the recital of the *Pārājika* rules.

“Of the four fallings away which falling away?” The falling away in moral habit.¹

“Of the seven classes of offence which class of offence?” The Defeat-class of offence. Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)? He originates it by one origin—he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.²

BD.6.4

“Of the four legal questions which legal question?” The legal question concerning offences.³

“Of the seven decidings (of a legal question) by how many decidings is it stopped?” It is stopped by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of,⁴ by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement.⁵

“What there is Discipline, what there is pertaining to Discipline?” A laying down is Discipline, the analysis⁶ (in the Old Commentary) is pertaining to Discipline.

“What there is the Pātimokkha, what there is pertaining to the Pātimokkha?” A laying down is the Pātimokkha, the analysis (in the Old Commentary) is pertaining to the Pātimokkha.

“What is falling away?” Lack of self-control⁷ is falling away.

“What is success?” Self-control⁸ is success.

“What is the practice?” Saying, “I will not act in such a way,” undertaking them for as long as he lives till the end of his life,⁹ and training himself in the rules of training.

“Because of how many reasons was the first offence involving Defeat laid down by the Lord?” Because of ten reasons was the first offence involving Defeat laid down by the Lord: for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort

¹ Vin-a.1303 says “the first 2 classes of offence are falling away from moral habit (failure in it). The remaining five classes are falling away from good habits (or behaviour). False or extreme views are falling away from (right) view. There is falling away from right livelihood when any one of the 6 rules of training laid down for the sake of livelihood is transgressed”.

² This is the fourth of the six origins of offences spoken of at Vin.2.90. ³ The third of the legal questions. ⁴ *sammukhāvinaya*, see BD.3.153, n.2. ⁵ *paṭiññātakaraṇa*, see BD.3.153, n.5. ⁶ *vibhatti*, see above, BD.6.2, n.1. ⁷ *asaṃvara* is *vitikkama*, transgression, Vin-a.1303.

⁸ *saṃvara* is *avittikkama*, non-transgression, Vin-a.1303. At Ds.1342 non-transgression by body or by speech or by body and speech are *soracca*, restraint, gentleness, which is the whole moral habit. ⁹ *āpāṇahoṭṭika*, the (end-)point of breathing. The word is found at MN.ii.120, Tha-ap.504, Mi.397, Vism.10.

of the Order, for the control of evil-minded men, for the living in ease of well behaved monks, for the restraint of the cankers belonging to the here-now, for the combating of cankers belonging to future states, for the benefit of non-believers, for an increase in the number of believers, for establishing the true *Dhamma*, for help¹ with Discipline.²

BD.6.5

“Who train themselves?” Learners³ and ordinary people who are morally good.⁴

“Who have trained themselves in the training?” Arahants have trained themselves in the training.

“In what state?” The state of desiring the training.

“Who know by heart?” Those who know by heart the procedure of these.⁵

“Whose is the Utterance?” It is the Utterance of the Lord, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One.

“By whom has it been conveyed?” It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):⁶

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka,
similarly Siggava,
With Moggali’s son as fifth—
these in the glorious (is)land of Jambusiri.

Vin.5.3

Then Mahinda, Iṭṭiya, similarly Sambala,
and the learned Bhaddanāma—
These great beings, of great wisdom,
coming here⁷ from India,

¹ *anuggaha*. Two kinds given at It.p.98, *āmisā-* and *dhamma-*. ² See Vin.3.21. ³ *sekha*, one who is training, an “initiate”; one of the seven kinds who has attained any of the four ways and the first three fruitions. Defined at MN-a.i.40. ⁴ *putkujjanakalyāṇaka*. *Kalyāṇa* is good, lovely. This compound occurs at Vism.14, Vism.46, and is defined at Vism.47 as the proximate cause for arahantship. Cf. MN-a.i.40 where *kalyāṇaputhujjana* is defined. ⁵ *yesaṃ vattati*. Vin-a.1303 says “all are proficient in these: the Vinaya-*piṭaka* and the Commentary. What do they know by heart? This first *Pārājika* according to the Pali and the meaning”. ⁶ These verses occur at Vin-a.62f. (translated *Inception of Discipline* p.55f.) where an account and of the succession of teachers (*ācariyaparampara*) is given. See also Vin-a.235, and Cf. Mahāvamsa xii.7; Dipavamsa xii.12; Mahābodhivamsa 116; Atthasālinī 32. ⁷ I.e. Ceylon.

Taught the Vinaya-piṭaka in Tambapaṇṇi.¹
 They also taught the five Nikāyas
 and the seven (Abhidhamma) treatises.

Then the wise Ariṭṭha² and the learned Tissadatta,³
 The skilled Kālasumana⁴
 and the Elder named Dīgha
 and the learned Dīghasumana,⁵

And another Kālasumana,
 the Elder Nāga, and Buddharakkhita,
 And the wise Elder Tissa
 and the learned Elder Deva,

BD.6.6

And another wise Sumana
 proficient in the Vinaya,
 Cūlanāga of great learning,
 unassailable as an elephant,

The Elder named Dhammapālita,
 and Rohaṇa revered by the virtuous,
 His pupil named Khema of great wisdom
 and learned in the Three Piṭakas,

Who in his wisdom shone with great splendour
 in the island like the king of stars,
 Upatissa the wise,
 and Phussadeva the great orator,

And another wise Sumana,
 he of great learning named Puppha,
 The great orator Mahāsīva
 skilful in all the contents of the Piṭaka,

And another wise Upāli

¹ Possibly this was at first the name of a certain district in Ceylon, then of the whole island.

² See Vin-a.102ff. ³ Pupils of Ariṭṭha. ⁴ Pupils of Ariṭṭha. ⁵ Pupils of Ariṭṭha.

proficient in the Vinaya,
Mahānāga of great wisdom,
skilled in the tradition of the True *Dhamma*,

And again the wise Abhaya
skilled in all the contents of the Piṭaka,
And the wise Elder Tissa
proficient in the Vinaya,

His pupil named Puppha
of great wisdom and much learning
Who while protecting the Teaching
established himself in India,

The wise Cūlābhaya
proficient in the Vinaya,
And the wise Elder Tissa
skilled in the tradition of the True *Dhamma*,

And the wise Cūladeva
proficient in the Vinaya,
And the wise Elder Siva
skilled in all the contents of the Vinaya.

These sinless sages of great wisdom,
knowing the Vinaya and skilled in the Way,
Proclaimed the Vinaya-piṭaka
in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKĀ 2

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.2

“Where was that which is the second offence involving Defeat laid down by that Lord who knows ... ?” It was laid down in Rājagaha.¹

BD.6.7

“Concerning whom?” Concerning Dhaniya the potter’s son.

“On what subject?” On the subject of Dhaniya the potter’s son taking pieces of wood belonging to the king when they had not been given to him.²

¹ Vin.3.41ff. ² Vin.3.44.

There is one laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down.²

“Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)?” He originates it by three origins—it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Vin.5.4

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 3

“Where was that which is the third offence involving Defeat laid down ... ?” It was laid down in Vesālī.³

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.3

“Concerning whom?” Concerning several monks.

“On what subject?” On the subject of several monks depriving one another of life.⁴

There is one laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down.⁶

“Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)?” He originates it by three origins—it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 4

“Where was that which is the fourth offence involving Defeat laid down ... ?” It was laid down in Vesālī.⁷

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.4

“Concerning whom?” Concerning monks on the banks of the river Vaggumudā.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the monks on the banks of the Vaggumudā speaking praise of each other's state of further-men in front of householders.

There is one laying down,⁸ one supplementary laying down.⁹

“Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)?” He originates it by three origins—it may be that he

¹ Vin.3.45. ² Vin.3.46. ³ Vin.3.68ff. ⁴ Vin.3.68ff. ⁵ Vin.3.71. ⁶ Vin.3.73. ⁷ Vin.3.87ff.

⁸ Vin.3.90. ⁹ Vin.3.91.

originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Concluded are the four Offences involving Defeat

THIS IS ITS KEY

Unchastity, taking what is not given,
and the form of men, those who are further—
The four offences involving Defeat without doubt
(concern men who) must be destroyed.¹

BD.6.8

SAṄGHĀDISESA

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.1

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One, for the emission of semen using (the hand)? Concerning whom? On what subject? ... (see [Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1](#)) ... Conditioned by how many reasons was the offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by the Lord for the emission of semen using (the hand)? Who train themselves? Who have trained themselves in the training? In what state? Who know by heart? Whose is the Utterance? By whom has it been conveyed?

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One for the emission of semen using (the hand)?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī.²

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the venerable Seyyasaka.

¹ *chejja-vatthu*. This is perhaps a reference to *chejja-bhejja*, a word occurring in the Old Commentary, on [Bu-Pj.2](#); see [Vin.3.47](#). Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 17, Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 31 takes *vatthu* (in other contexts) as *puggala*, a meaning that might apply equally here. At [BD.1.191](#) in my translation of this summary (which occurs at [Vin.3.109](#)) I took *vatthu* as the reason (or subject) for *chejja*, punishment, maiming. It almost seems that the one meaning implies the other. It also shows that *vatthu* has no settled meaning but can be made to do duty for several words. ² [Vin.3.110](#).

“On what subject?” On the subject of the venerable Seyyasaka’s having emitted semen using the hand.¹

“Is there there a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down that has not yet) occurred?” There is one laying down,² one supplementary laying down,³ for it there is no laying down that has not (yet) occurred.

“A laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts?” A laying down (that holds good) everywhere.

“A laying down that is shared, a laying down that is not shared?” A laying down that is not shared.

“A laying down for one (Order), a laying down for both (Orders)?” A laying down for one (Order).

“... of the five ... ?” Plunged into the source, included in the source.

BD.6.9

... By the third recital one comes to the recital.⁴

Vin.5.5

... The falling away in moral habit.

... The Formal Meeting-class of offence.

... He originates it by one origin—he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

... The legal question concerning offences.

... It is stopped by two deciding: by a verdict in the presence of, and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... (as in [Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1](#)) ...

“Conditioned by how many reasons was the offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by the Lord for the emission of semen using (the hand)?” Conditioned by ten reasons was the offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by the Lord for the emission of semen using (the hand): for the excellence of the Order ... for help with Discipline.

“Who train themselves?” Learners and ... (as in [Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1](#)) ... in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.2

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One, for the coming into physical contact with a woman?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī.¹

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the venerable Udāyi.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the venerable Udāyi’s coming into physical contact with a woman.

There is one laying down.²

Of the six origins of an offence (the monk) originates (the offence) by one origin—he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.3

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for offending a woman with lewd words?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī.³

BD.6.10

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the venerable Udāyi.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the venerable Udāyi’s offending a woman with lewd words.

There is one laying down.⁴

Of the six origins of offences (the monk) originates (the offence) by three origins—it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.4

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for speaking in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self in the presence of women-folk?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī⁵ ...

Concerning the venerable Udāyi ...

¹ *hatthena* occurs here, as it does at Vin.3. ² Vin.3.112. ³ Vin.3.112. ⁴ See above, BD.6.1, n.6. ¹ Vin.3.119ff. ² Vin.3.120. ³ Vin.3.127ff. ⁴ Vin.3.128. ⁵ Vin.3.133.

On the subject of the venerable Udāyi's speaking in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for self in the presence of women-folk ... (see [Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.3](#)).

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for acting as a go-between?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī¹ ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.5

Concerning the venerable Udāyi ...

On the subject of the venerable Udāyi's acting as a go-between ...

There is one laying-down,² one supplementary laying-down³ ...

He originates it by six origins—it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Vin.5.6

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for begging for having a hut built for oneself?”⁴ It was laid down in Āḷavī⁵

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.6

...

Concerning the monks of Āḷavī ...

On the subject of the monks of Āḷavī begging for having a hut built for themselves ...

BD.6.11

There is one laying-down⁶ ...

He originates it by six origins ... (see [Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.5](#)).

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 7

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.7

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for having a large *vihāra* built?” It was laid down at Kosambī¹...

Concerning the venerable Channa ...

The venerable Channa, clearing a site for a *vihāra*, had a tree that was used as a shrine cut down ...

There is one laying down² ...

He originates it by six origins ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 8

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.8

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat?” It was laid down in Rājagaha³ ...

Concerning the monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka

...

The monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defamed the venerable Dabba the Mallian with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat ...

There is one laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by three origins⁵ ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 9

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.9

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for defaming a monk with a charge of an offence involving Defeat, taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else?” It was laid down at Rājagaha⁶ ...

Concerning the monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka ...

¹ Vin.3.138. ² Vin.3.138 ³ Vin.3.139. ⁴ *saññācikā*. According to Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 40 this means *sayam yācanā ... attano yācanā*. My “begging in company” at BD.1.246 probably should be amended. See also Old Commentary at Vin.3.148. ⁵ Vin.3.149. ⁶ Vin.3.149. ¹ Vin.3.155ff. ² Vin.3.156. ³ Vin.3.158ff. ⁴ Vin.3.163. ⁵ See Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.2 (*adinnādānasadisa*, Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 44). ⁶ Vin.3.166ff.

The monks who were the followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka defamed the venerable Dabba the Mallian ... really belonging to something else ...

There is one laying down¹ ...

He originates it by three origins² ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for admonishing up to three times a schismatic monk for not giving up (his course)?” It was laid down in Rājagaha³ ...

Concerning Devadatta ...

Devadatta went forward with a schism of an Order that was harmonious

...

There is one laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by one origin—he originates it by body and by speech and by mind ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.10
BD.6.12

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for admonishing up to three times monks who were throwing in their lot with a schism for not giving up (their course)?” It was laid down in Rājagaha⁵ ...

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks were throwing in their lot with and taking part in Devadatta's proceeding for a schism in the Order ...

There is one laying down⁶ ...

By one origin ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.11

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down ... for admonishing up to three times a monk who was difficult to speak

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.12

¹ Vin.3.167-8. ² Vin.3.167-8. ³ Vin.3.171. ⁴ Vin.3.172. ⁵ Vin.3.174ff. ⁶ Vin.3.175.

to for not giving up (his course)?” It was laid down in Kosambī¹ ...
 Vin.5.7 Concerning the venerable Channa ...
 When the venerable Channa was being spoken to by monks according
 to *Dhamma* he reckoned himself as one not to be spoken to ...
 There is one laying down² ...
 By one origin ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.13

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down
 ... for admonishing up to three times a monk who brought a family into
 disrepute for not giving up (his course)?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī³ ...

Concerning the monks who were the followers of Assaji and Punabbasu

...

BD.6.13

Monks, through the Order, carried out the act of banishment against the
 monks who were followers of Assaji and Punabbasu and goes on a wrong
 course through partiality, goes on a wrong course through hatred, goes
 on a wrong course through confusion, goes on a wrong course through
 fear⁴ so as to disgrace⁵ them ...

There is one laying down⁶ ...

By one origin ...

Concluded are the thirteen offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order

ITS SUMMARY

Emission, and bodily contact, lewd talk, and one's own pleasure,
 Acting as a go-between, and a hut, and a *vihāra*, without foundation, /
 And some point, and a schism, likewise siding in with,
 Difficult to speak to, and bringing a family into disrepute—
 the thirteen offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁷

MONKS' ANIYATA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ay.1

“Where was that which is the first Undetermined offence laid down by that Lord ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī.¹

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the venerable Udāyi.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the venerable Udāyi’s sitting together with women-folk in a secret place on a secluded convenient seat.

“Is there there ... (see Prv.1.1:Bu-Ss.1) ...

By the fourth recital one comes to the recital.

“Of the four fallings away which falling away?” It might be a falling away in moral habit, it might be a falling away in good behaviour.

“Of the seven classes of offence which class of offence?” It might be a Defeat-class of offence, it might be a Formal Meeting-class of offence, it might be an Expiation-class of offence.

“Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)?” He originates it by one origin—he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech ...

BD.6.14

The legal question concerning offences ...

It is stopped by three deciding: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the covering over (as) with grass² ...

“Conditioned by how many reasons was the first Undetermined offence laid down by the Lord?” Conditioned by ten reasons was the first Undetermined offence laid down by the Lord: for the excellence of the Order ... for help with Discipline.

Vin.5.8

“Who train themselves?” Learners and ... (as in Bu.-Pj.1) ... in the island of Tambapaṇṇi.

MONKS' ANIYATA 2

Prv.1.1:Bu-Ay.2

“Where was that which is the second Undetermined offence laid down by the Lord ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī¹ ...

Concerning the venerable Udāyi ...

On the subject of the venerable Udāyi's sitting down together with a woman, the one with the other, in a secret place.²

“Is there there ... (see Prv.1.1:Bu-Ay.1) ...

“... which class of offence?” It might be a Formal Meeting-class of offence, it might be an Expiation-class of offence.

“Of the six origins of offences, by how many origins does (a monk) originate (the offence)?” He originates it by three origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind ...

... and a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded are the two Undetermined offences

ITS SUMMARY

Convenient and so and likewise, but not thus.

Such Undetermined matters are well laid down by the best of Buddhas.³

NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA**DIVISION 1: ON KAṬHINA CLOTH****MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 1**Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.1
BD.6.15

“Where was the offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture laid down by that Lord ... for one who exceeds the ten day (period for wearing) an extra robe?”

¹ Vin.3.177ff. ² Vin.3.178. ³ Vin.3.179ff. ⁴ These, *chandaḡāmita*, etc., are goes by the four wrong courses (*agati*). See BD.1.323, n.7. ⁵ *pāpeti*, to disgrace, denigrate, as at Vin.1.183, Vin-a.625. The verbal noun *pāpana*, denigrating is used at Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 48. See Vism.29. ⁶ Vin.3.184. ⁷ Verses as at Vin.3.186. ¹ Vin.3.187ff. ² *tiṇavatthāraka*, see BD.3.154, BD.5.115. ¹ Vin.3.191. ² Vin.3.191. ³ As at Vin.3.194.

It was laid down in Vesālī.¹

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the group of six monks.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the group of six monks wearing an extra robe.

One laying down,² one supplementary laying down.³

Of the six origins of offences he originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 2

“Where was the offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture laid down ... for one who is separated from his three robes even for one night?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁴ ...

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks, entrusting (their) robes to the hands of (other) monks, set out on a tour of the country with (only) an inner and an upper robe ...

One laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down.⁶

Of the six origins ... (as in *Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.1*).

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.2

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 3

“Where was the offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture laid down ... for one who after he has accepted robe-material not at the right time exceeds (the period of) a month (before he has it made up)? It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁷ ...

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks, having accepted robe-material not at a right time, exceeded the month ...

One laying down,⁸ one supplementary laying down.⁹

Of the six origins ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.3

¹ Vin.3.195. ² Vin.3.196. ³ Vin.3.196. ⁴ Vin.3.198. ⁵ Vin.3.199. ⁶ Vin.3.199.

⁷ Vin.3.202ff. ⁸ Vin.3.203; but there is what is laid down first is called *anujānāmi*, “I allow,” is an allowance as against a *sikkhāpada*, a rule of training, which here comes second. Apparently, therefore, the *paññatti* here refers to *anujānāmi* and *sikkhāpada*. ⁹ Vin.3.203.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.4

BD.6.16

Vin.5.9

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who has a soiled robe washed by a nun who is not a relation?” It was laid down in Sāvathī¹ ...

Concerning the venerable Udāyi ...

The venerable Udāyi had a soiled robe washed by a nun who was not a relation ...

One laying down.²

Of the six origins of offences he originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.5

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who accepts a robe from the hand of a nun who is not a relation?” It was laid down in Rājagaha³ ...

Concerning the venerable Udāyi ...

The venerable Udāyi accepted a robe from the hand of a nun who was not a relation ...

One laying down,⁴ one supplementary laying down⁵ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.6

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who asks a man or woman householder who is not a relation (of his) for a robe?” It was laid down in Sāvathī⁶ ...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan asked the son of a (great) merchant who was not a relation (of his) for a robe ...

One laying down,⁷ one supplementary laying down⁸ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.7

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who asks a man or woman householder who is not a relation for more robe-material than that (which they had invited him to accept)?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī¹ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, not knowing moderation, asked for much robe-material ...

One laying down² ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.8

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, before being invited, approaches a householder who is not a relation and puts forward a consideration with regard to a robe?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī³ ...

BD.6.17

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, before he was invited, approached a householder who was not a relation and put forward a consideration with regard to a robe ...

One laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 9

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.9

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, before being invited, approaches householders who are not relations (of his) and puts forward a consideration with regard to a robe?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī⁵ ...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, before he was invited, approached householders who were not relations (of his) and put forward a consideration with regard to a robe ...

One laying down⁶ ...

¹ Vin.3.205ff. ² Vin.3.206. ³ Vin.3.207ff. ⁴ Vin.3.209. ⁵ Vin.3.209. ⁶ Vin.3.210ff.

⁷ Vin.3.211. ⁸ Vin.3.212. ¹ Vin.3.213. ² Vin.3.214. ³ Vin.3.215. ⁴ Vin.3.216.

⁵ Vin.3.217. ⁶ Vin.3.218.

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 10

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.10

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who succeeds in obtaining a robe by stating (he wants one) more than three times (or) by standing (silently) for it more than six times?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī¹ ...

Vin.5.10

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, on being told by a lay-follower, “Wait this one day (only), revered sir,” did not wait ...

One laying down² ...

He originates it by six origins.

The First Division: that on Kaṭhina-cloth

DIVISION 2: ON SILK

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.11

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who has a rug made mixed with silk?” It was laid down in Āḷavi³ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, having approached silk-makers, spoke thus: “Sirs, hatch many silk-worms, give them to us, for we want to make a rug mixed with silk” ...

One laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 12

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.12

BD.6.18

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who has a rug made of pure black sheep's wool?” It was laid down in Vesālī⁵ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks had a rug made of pure black sheep's wool ...

¹ Vin.3.219. ² Vin.3.221; more clearly stated above. ³ Vin.3.224. ⁴ Vin.3.224.

⁵ Vin.3.225.

One laying down¹ ...
He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 13

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who is having a new rug made without taking a portion of white (wools) and a portion of reddish-brown colours?” It was laid down in Sāvathī² ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.13

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, taking only a little white for the seam, all the same had a rug made of pure black sheep's wool ...

One laying down³ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 14

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who has a rug made every year?” It was laid down in Sāvathī⁴ ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.14

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks had a rug made every year ...

One laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down⁶ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 15

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who is having a new rug to sit upon made without taking a piece the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug?” It was laid down in Sāvathī⁷...

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.15

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks, discarding their rugs, took upon themselves the practice of forest-dwellers, the practice of almsmen, the practice of those who wear rag-robcs ...

One laying down⁸ ...

He originates it by six origins.

¹ Vin.3.225. ² Vin.3.226. ³ Vin.3.226. ⁴ Vin.3.227. ⁵ Vin.3.228. ⁶ Vin.3.229.

⁷ Vin.3.230ff. ⁸ Vin.3.232.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 16

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.16

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, having accepted sheep’s wool, exceeds the three *yojanas* (for which it may be conveyed)?” It was laid down in Sāvattthī¹...

BD.6.19

Concerning a certain monk ...

A certain monk, having received sheep’s wool, exceeded the three *yojanas* (for which it may be conveyed) ...

Vin.5.11

One laying down² ...

He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.17

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who has sheep’s wool washed by a nun who is not a relation?” It was laid down among the Sakyans³ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks had sheep’s wool washed by nuns who were not relations ...

One laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.18

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who accepts gold and silver?” It was laid down in Rājagaha⁵ ...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan accepted gold and silver ...

One laying down⁶ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.19

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who engages in various transactions in which gold and silver are used?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī¹

...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks engaged in various transactions in which gold and silver were used ...

One laying down² ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.20

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who engaged in various transactions in which there was bartering?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī³ ...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan engaged in bartering with a wanderer ...

One laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by six origins.

BD.6.20

The Second Division: that on Silk

DIVISION 3: ON A BOWL

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 21

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.21

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who exceeds the ten days (for keeping) an extra bowl?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁵ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks kept an extra bowl ...

One laying down,⁶ one supplementary laying down⁷ ...

¹ Vin.3.233ff. ² Vin.3.233ff. ³ Vin.3.234. ⁴ Vin.3.235. ⁵ Vin.3.236. ⁶ Vin.3.237.

¹ Vin.3.239. ² Vin.3.239. ³ Vin.3.240. ⁴ Vin.3.241. ⁵ Vin.3.242. ⁶ Vin.3.243.

⁷ Vin.3.243.

He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 22

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.22

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for who gets another new bowl in exchange for a bowl that has been mended in less than five places?” It was laid down among the Sakyans¹ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, when their bowls were only a little broken, only a little chipped and scratched, asked for many bowls ...

One laying down² ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 23

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.23

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, after he has accepted medicines, exceeds the seven days (for which they may be stored)?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī³ ...

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks, having accepted medicines, exceeded the seven days ...

One laying down⁴ ...

He originates it by two origins (*as in the Kaṭhina-robe Section.*)⁵

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 24

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.24

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, while more than a month of the hot weather remains, is looking about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁶ ...

BD.6.21

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, while more than a month of the hot weather remained, looked about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains ...

¹ Vin.3.244. ² Vin.3.246. ³ Vin.3.248. ⁴ Vin.3.251. ⁵ This must refer to the first offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture. ⁶ Vin.3.252.

One laying down¹ ...
He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 25

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, having himself given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased tore it away?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī²

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.25

...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, having himself given a robe to a monk, angry and displeased tore it away ...

One laying down³ ...

He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 26

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, himself asking for yarn, should have robe-material woven by weavers?” It was laid down in Rājagaha⁴ ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.26

Concerning the group of six monks ...

The group of six monks, themselves asking for yarn, had robe-material woven by weavers ...

One laying down⁵ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 27

“... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, before being invited by a householder who is not a relation approaches weavers and puts forward a consideration with regard to robe-material?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁶

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.27

...

Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ...

¹ Vin.3.252. ² Vin.3.254. ³ Vin.3.255. ⁴ Vin.3.256. ⁵ Vin.3.256. ⁶ Vin.3.257.

The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, before being invited, approached the weavers of a householder who was not a relation (of his) and put forward a consideration with regard to robe-material ...

One laying down¹ ...

He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 28

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.28

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who, having accepted a special robe, exceeds the robe-season (in the time during which he lays aside the robe-material)?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī² ...

BD.6.22

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks, having accepted robe-material, exceeded the robe-season

...

One laying down³ ...

He originates it by two origins, (as in the *Kaṭhina*-robe Section.)⁴

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 29

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.29

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who is separated from any one of his three robes for more than six nights, having laid it aside in a house?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁵ ...

Concerning several monks ...

Several monks were separated from a certain one of their three robes for more than six nights, having laid it aside in a house ...

Vin.5.13

One laying down⁶ ...

He originates it by two origins, (as in the *Kaṭhina*-robe Section.)

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.1.1:Bu-NP.30

“ ... involving Forfeiture laid down for one who knowingly appropriates to himself an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī⁷ ...

Concerning the group of six monks ...

¹ Vin.3.259. ² Vin.3.260. ³ Vin.3.261. ⁴ See Vin.5.88. ⁵ Vin.3.262. ⁶ Vin.3.263.

⁷ Vin.3.265.

The group of six monks knowingly appropriated to themselves an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order ...

One laying down¹ ...

He originates it by three origins.

The Third Division: that on a Bowl

Concluded are the thirty offences of Expiation involving Forfeiture

ITS SUMMARY

Ten (nights), one night, and a month, and washing, acceptance,
And on one who is not a relation, specially laid aside, by two, by a messenger,² /
Silk, two on pure portions, for six years, a rug,
And two on (sheep's) wool, on taking, two on various transactions,³ /
Two on bowls, and on medicine, for the rains, the fifth on a gift,
Oneself, having woven, a special robe, dangerous,
and belonging to the Order.

BD.6.23

PĀCITTIYA

DIVISION 1: ON LYING

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.1

“Where was that offence of Expiation laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, Fully Self-Awakened One, for telling a conscious lie?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī.⁴

“Concerning whom?” Concerning Hatthaka the Sakyan.

“On what subject?” On the subject of Hatthaka the Sakyan who, when he was talking with followers of other sects, having denied, acknowledged, and having acknowledged, denied.

One laying down.⁵

¹ Vin.3.265 ² These two first lines occur at Vin.3.223 though the second line reads there “just three on non-relations”, *aññātakāni tīṇ'eva*, which is thus clearer in its reference to the ten offences than the *aññātakāṇ ca, uddissa* above. ³ These two lines are at Vin.3.242, and the next two at Vin.3.266. ⁴ Vin.4.1. ⁵ Vin.4.2.

Of the six origins of offences he originates (the offence) by three origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 2

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.2

Offence of Expiation for insulting speech ... It was laid down in Sāvaththī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, quarrelling with well behaved monks, insulted the well behaved monks ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 3

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.3

Offence of Expiation for the slander of monks ... It was laid down in Sāvaththī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks brought slander against monks for quarrelling, for disputing, for engaging in contention ... One laying down² ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.4

Offence of Expiation for making one who is not ordained speak *Dhamma* line by line ... It was laid down in Sāvaththī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks made lay-followers speak *Dhamma* line by line ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body.

Vin.5.14

BD.6.24

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.5

Offence of Expiation for lying down in a sleeping-place for more than two or three nights with one who is not ordained ... It was laid down in Āḷavī ... Concerning several monks. Several monks lay down in a sleeping-place with one who was not ordained ... One laying down,⁴ one supplementary

¹ Vin.4.6. ² Vin.4.12. ³ Vin.4.14. ⁴ Vin.4.16.

laying down ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.6

Offence of Expiation for lying down in a sleeping-place with a woman ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Anuruddha ... The venerable Anuruddha lay down in a sleeping-place with a woman ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by two origins, (as) in Sheep's Wool.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.7

Offence of Expiation for teaching *Dhamma* to a woman in more than five or six sentences ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Udāyi ... The venerable Udāyi taught *Dhamma* to a woman ... One laying down,³ two supplementary layings down⁴ ... He originates it by two origins, (as) in *Dhamma* line by line.⁵

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.8

Offence of Expiation for speaking, when it is a fact, of a condition of further-men to one who is not ordained ... It was laid down in Vesālī ... Concerning monks on the banks of the (river) Vaggumudā ... The monks on the banks of the Vaggumudā spoke praise to householders of one another's conditions of further-men ... One laying down⁶ ... He originates it by three origins: it may be that he originates by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 9

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.9

Offence of Expiation for speaking to one who is not ordained of a monk's very bad offence ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of

¹ Vin.4.19. ² Bu-NP:16. See Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.4.21. ⁴ Vin.4.21, Vin.4.22. ⁵ Bu-Pc.4. See Vin.5.88. ⁶ Vin.4.25.

six monks ... The group of six monks spoke to one who was not ordained of a monk's very bad offence ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 10

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.10
BD.6.25

Offence of Expiation for digging the ground ... It was laid down in Āḷavī ... Concerning the monks of Āḷavī ... The monks of Āḷavī dug the ground ... One laying down² ... He originates it by three origins ...

The First Division: that on Lying³

DIVISION 2: ON VEGETABLE GROWTH

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.11
Vin.5.15

Offence of Expiation for destruction of vegetable growth ... It was laid down in Āḷavī ... Concerning the monks of Āḷavī ... The monks of Āḷavī cut down a tree ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 12

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.12

Offence of Expiation in evasion, in vexing ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning the venerable Channa ... The venerable Channa, on being examined for an offence in the midst of the Order, shelved the question by (asking) another ... One laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down⁶ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 13

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.13

Offence of Expiation in making (someone) look down upon, in criticizing ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka ... Monks who were followers of Mettiya and Bhummajaka made monks look down upon the venerable Dabba the Mallian

¹ Vin.4.31. ² Vin.4.33. ³ Called simply First Division at Vin.4.33. ⁴ Vin.4.34. ⁵ Vin.4.36.

⁶ Vin.4.36.

... One laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down² ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 14

Offence of Expiation for setting forth without asking (for permission to do so) and not having removed a couch or chair or a mattress or stool belonging to the Order that he had spread in the open air ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks set forth without asking (for permission to do so) and not having removed lodgings belonging to the Order that they had spread in the open air ... One laying down,³ one supplementary laying down⁴ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁵

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.14

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 15

Offence of Expiation for setting forth without asking (for permission to do so) and not having removed a sleeping-place he had spread in a *vihāra* belonging to the Order ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of seventeen monks ... The group of seventeen monks set forth without asking (for permission to do so) and not removing a sleeping, place they had spread in a *vihāra* belonging to the Order. One laying down⁶ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁷

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.15

BD.6.26

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 16

Offence of Expiation for lying down in a sleeping-place in a *vihāra* belonging to the Order knowing that one was encroaching on (the space intended for) a monk who had arrived first ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks lay down in a sleeping-place encroaching on (the space intended for) monks who were Elders ... One laying down⁸ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.16

¹ Vin.4.38. ² Vin.4.38. ³ Vin.4.39, a *sikkhāpada*, rule of training. ⁴ Vin.4.39-40, an *anujānāmi*, an allowance. ⁵ Bu-NP.1-Bu-NP.10. ⁶ Vin.4.41. ⁷ See Prv.1.1.Bu-Pc.14 above, also Vin.5.88. ⁸ Vin.4.43.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.17

Offence of Expiation for throwing out, being angry and displeased, a monk from a *vihāra* belonging to the Order ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, angry and displeased, threw out monks from a *vihāra* belonging to the Order ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

Vin.5.16

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.18

Offence of Expiation for sitting down on a couch or a chair that has removable feet and is in a lofty cell with an upper part in a *vihāra* belonging to the Order ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk sat down hastily² on a couch that had removable feet and was in a lofty cell with an upper part in a *vihāra* belonging to the Order ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.19

Offence of Expiation for one who, having determined on two or three enclosures, determines on (something) more than that ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning the venerable Channa ... The venerable Channa again and again had a finished *vihāra* roofed, again and again had it plastered; the overloaded *vihāra* fell down ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by six origins.

BD.6.27

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.20

Offence of Expiation for sprinkling water that he knows contains living things over grass or clay ... It was laid down in Āḷavī ... Concerning the monks of Āḷavī ... The monks of Āḷavī, knowing that the water contained

¹ Vin.4.44. ² *sahasā*, see BD.2.255, n.1. ³ Vin.4.46. ⁴ Vin.4.47.

living things, sprinkled (it over) grass and clay ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

The Second Division: that on Vegetable-growth

DIVISION 3: ON EXHORTATION

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 21

Offence of Expiation for the exhortation of nuns by one who had not been agreed upon ... It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... On the subject of the six monks who exhorted nuns though they had not been agreed upon. "Is there there a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down (for something) that has not (yet) occurred?" There is one laying down,² one supplementary laying down,³ for it there is no laying down (for something) that has not (yet) occurred ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.21

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 22

Offence of Expiation for the exhortation of nuns after the sun has set ... It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... Concerning the venerable Cūlapanthaka ... The venerable Cūlapanthaka exhorted nuns after the sun had set ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by two origins (as) in *Dhamma* line by line.⁵

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.22

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 23

Offence of Expiation for the exhortation of nuns, after having approached nuns' quarters ... It was laid down among the Sakyans ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks having approached nuns' quarters exhorted the nuns ... One laying down,⁶ one supplementary laying down⁷ ... He originates it by two origins (as in), *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁸

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.23

Vin.5.17

¹ Vin.4.49. ² Vin.4.51, a *sikkhāpada*. ³ Vin.4.51, a long *anujānāmi*. ⁴ Vin.4.55. ⁵ Bu-Pc.4. See Vin.5.88. ⁶ Vin.4.56. ⁷ Vin.4.57. ⁸ Bu-Pc.23. See Vin.5.88.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 24

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.24

BD.6.28

Offence of Expiation for saying, "Monks are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain" ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks said, "Monks are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain" ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 25

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.25

Offence of Expiation for giving robe-material to a nun who is not a relation ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk gave robe-material to a nun who was not a relation ... One laying down,² one supplementary laying down³ ... He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 26

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.26

Offence of Expiation for sewing robe-material for a nun who is not a relation ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Udāyi ... The venerable Udāyi sewed robe-material for a nun who was not a relation ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 27

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.27

Offence of Expiation for going along the same highway, having arranged together with a nun ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks went along the same highway, having arranged together with nuns ... One laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down⁶ ... He originates it by four origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 28

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.28

Offence of Expiation for embarking in one boat, having arranged together with a nun ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks embarked in one boat, having arranged together with nuns ... One laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down² ... He originates it by four origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 29

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.29

Offence of Expiation for eating almsfood knowing it to have been procured through (the intervention of) a nun ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning Devadatta ... Devadatta made use of almsfood knowing it to have been procured through (the intervention of) a nun ... One laying down,³ one supplementary laying down⁴ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

BD.6.29

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.30

Offence of Expiation for sitting down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Udāyi ... The venerable Udāyi sat down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other ... One laying down⁵ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Vin.5.18

The Third Division: that on Exhortation

DIVISION 4: ON FOOD

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 31

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.31

Offence of Expiation for eating more than (one meal) at a public rest-house ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, staying on and on, ate at a public rest-house ... One laying down,⁶ one supplementary laying down⁷ ... He originates it by two

¹ Vin.4.58. ² Vin.4.59. ³ Vin.4.60. ⁴ Vin.4.61. ⁵ Vin.4.62. ⁶ Vin.4.63. ¹ Vin.4.64.

² Vin.4.65. ³ Vin.4.67. ⁴ Vin.4.67. ⁵ Vin.4.68. ⁶ Vin.4.70. ⁷ Vin.4.70.

origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 32

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.32

Offence of Expiation in a group-meal ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning Devadatta ... Devadatta and his company ate, having asked and asked among households ... One laying down,² seven supplementary layings down³ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.⁴

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 33

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.33

Offence of Expiation in an out-of-turn meal ... It was laid down in Vesālī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, invited somewhere, ate elsewhere ... One laying down,⁵ three supplementary layings down⁶ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁷

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 34

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.34

Offence of Expiation for, after accepting two or three bowlsful of cake, accepting more than that ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, not knowing moderation, accepted ... One laying down⁸ ... He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 35

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.35

BD.6.30

Offence of Expiation for partaking of solid food or soft food that is not left over after one has eaten and is satisfied ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, having eaten and being satisfied, ate elsewhere ... One laying down,⁹ one supplementary laying down¹⁰ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.¹¹

¹ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ² Vin.4.71. ³ Vin.4.72-74. ⁴ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88.

⁵ Vin.4.77. ⁶ Vin.4.77, Vin.4.78, the third one being an *anujānāmi*. Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 103 says in what is probably its only reference to the Parivāra that it speaks of four supplementary layings down. ⁷ Bu-NP.1, see Vin.5.88. ⁸ Vin.4.80. ⁹ Vin.4.82. ¹⁰ Vin.4.82

¹¹ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 36

Offence of Expiation for inviting a monk who has eaten and is satisfied to take solid food or soft food that has not been left over ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, having eaten and being satisfied, invited a monk to take soft food that had not been left over One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.36

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 37

Offence of Expiation for partaking of solid food or soft food at the wrong time ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning the group of seventeen monks ... The group of seventeen monks partook of a meal at the wrong time ... One laying down² ... He originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.³

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.37
Vin.5.19

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 38

Offence of Expiation for partaking of solid food or soft food that had been stored ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa ... The venerable Belaṭṭhasīsa partook of a meal that had been stored ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.⁵

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.38

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 39

Offence of Expiation for eating sumptuous foods having asked for them for oneself ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks ate sumptuous foods having asked for them for themselves ... One laying down,⁶ one supplementary laying down⁷ ... He originates it by four origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.39

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 40

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.40

Offence of Expiation for conveying to the mouth nutriment that has not been given ... It was laid down in Vesālī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk conveyed to his mouth nutriment that had not been given ... One laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down² ... He originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.³

The Fourth Division: that on Food

DIVISION 5: ON AN UNCLOTHED ASCETIC

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 41

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.41
BD.6.31

Offence of Expiation for giving with one's own hand solid food or soft food to an unclothed ascetic or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer ... It was laid down in Vesālī ... Concerning the venerable Ānanda ... The venerable Ānanda gave two cakes to a certain female wanderer thinking that they were one ... One laying down.⁴ He originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.⁵

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 42

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.42

Offence of Expiation for dismissing a monk after saying (to him), "Come, your reverence, we will go into a village or a market-town for almsfood," whether he has caused (the almsfood) to be given or has not caused it to be given ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan, after saying to a monk, "Come, your reverence, we will go into a village for almsfood," then dismissed him without having caused it to be given to him ... One laying down⁶ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 43

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.43

Offence of Expiation for sitting down after intruding on a family with food ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan sat down after he had intruded on a family with food ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Vin.5.20

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 44

Offence of Expiation for sitting down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan sat down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman ... One laying down² ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.44

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 45

Offence of Expiation for sitting down in a private place together with a woman, the one with the other ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan sat down in Private place together with a woman, the one with the other ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.45

BD.6.32

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 46

Offence of Expiation for calling upon families before a meal or after a meal and, being invited and being (provided) with a meal, does not ask (for permission to enter) if a monk be there. It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.46

¹ Vin.4.84. ² Vin.4.85. ³ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ⁴ Vin.4.87. ⁵ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ⁶ Vin.4.88. ⁷ Vin.4.88. ¹ Vin.4.90. ² Vin.4.90. ³ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ⁴ Vin.4.92. ⁵ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ⁶ Vin.4.93. ¹ Vin.4.95. ² Vin.4.96. ³ Vin.4.97.

the Sakyan called upon families before a meal and after a meal (though being invited and being (provided) with a meal ... One laying down,¹ four supplementary layings down² ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.³

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 47

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.47

Offence of Expiation for asking for medicine⁴ for longer than that (i.e. four months) ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, on being told by Mahānāma the Sakyan, "Revered sirs, wait this day (only)," did not wait ... One laying down⁵ ... He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 48

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.48

Offence of Expiation for going to see an army fighting ... It was laid down in *Sāvattḥī* ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks went to see an army fighting ... One laying down,⁶ one supplementary laying down⁷ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Sheep's Wool*.⁸

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 49

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.49

Offence of Expiation for staying with an army for more than three nights ... It was laid down in *Sāvattḥī* ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks stayed with an army for more than three nights ... One laying down⁹ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Sheep's Wool*.¹⁰

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 50

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.50

Vin.5.21

Offence of Expiation for going to a sham-fight ... It was laid down in *Sāvattḥī* ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks went to a sham-fight ... One laying down¹¹ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Sheep's Wool*.¹²

¹ Vin.4.98. ² Vin.4.99, Vin.4.100. ³ Bu-NP.1, and see Vin.5.88. ⁴ Though of the four requisites medicine is the one that this offence concerned with, in the *sikkhāpada* itself the word used is *paccaya*, a requisite what a monk depends on. ⁵ Vin.4.102-3. ⁶ Vin.4.104. ⁷ Vin.4.105. ⁸ Bu-NP.16 ⁹ Vin.4.106. ¹⁰ Bu-NP.16 ¹¹ Vin.4.107. ¹² Bu-NP.16

The Fifth Division: that on an Unclothed Ascetic

DIVISION 6: ON FERMENTED LIQUOR AND SPIRITS

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 51

Offence of Expiation in drinking fermented liquor and spirits ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning the venerable Sāgata ... The venerable Sāgata drank strong drink ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.51
BD.6.33

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 52

Offence of Expiation in tickling with the fingers ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks. The group of six monks made a monk laugh by tickling him with their fingers ... One laying down² ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.52

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 53

Offence of Expiation for playing in the water ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of seventeen monks ... The group of seventeen monks sported in the water of the river Aciravatī ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.53

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 54

Offence of Expiation in disrespect ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning the venerable Channa ... did (things) out of disrespect ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by three origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.54

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 55

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.55

Offence of Expiation in frightening a monk ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks frightened a monk ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 56

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.56

Offence of Expiation in warming oneself having kindled a fire ... It was laid down among the Bhaggas ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks warmed themselves having kindled a fire ... One laying down,² two supplementary layings down³ ... He originates it by six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 57

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.57

BD.6.34

Offence of Expiation for bathing (at intervals of) less than half a month ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, though they had seen the king, bathed, not knowing moderation ... One laying down,⁴ six supplementary layings down.⁵ “Is it a laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts?” A laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts. Of the six origins of offences he originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.⁶

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 58

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.58

Vin.5.22

Offence of Expiation for making use of a new robe without taking any one mode of disfigurement of the three modes of disfigurement ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī Concerning several monks ... Several monks did not recognize their own robes ... One laying down.⁷ Of the six origins of offences he originates it by two origins (as in) Sheep's Wool.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 59

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.59

Offence of Expiation for making use of a robe that had not been taken away and that he himself had assigned to a monk or a nun or a female probationer or a novice or a female novice ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan made use of a robe that had not been taken away and that he himself had assigned to a monk ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by two origins (as in) *Kaṭhina*-cloth.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 60

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.60

Offence of Expiation for hiding a monk's bowl or robe or (piece of cloth) to sit on or needle-case or girdle ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks hid a bowl and a robe belonging to monks ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by three origins.

*The Sixth Division: that on Fermented Liquor and Spirits*⁴

DIVISION 7: ON WHAT CONTAINS LIVING THINGS

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 61

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.61

Offence of Expiation for intentionally depriving a living thing of life ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Udāyi ... The venerable Udāyi intentionally deprived a living thing of life ... One laying down⁵ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 62

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.62

Offence of Expiation for making use of water knowing that it contains living things ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks

BD.6.35

¹ Vin.4.110. ² Vin.4.111. ³ Vin.4.112. ⁴ Vin.4.113. ¹ Vin.4.114. ² Vin.4.114.
³ Vin.4.115-6. ⁴ Vin.4.117. ⁵ Vin.4.117-8. ⁶ Bu-NP.16, and see Vin.5.88. ⁷ Vin.4.20.
¹ Vin.4.121. ² Bu-NP.1, and see Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.4.123. ⁴ Called at Vin.4.124: On drinking fermented liquor. ⁵ Vin.4.124.

... The group of six monks made use of water knowing that it contained living things ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 63

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.63

Offence of Expiation for opening up for a further (formal) act a legal question knowing that it had been settled according to rule ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks opened up for a further (formal) act a legal question knowing that it had been settled according to rule ... One laying down² ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 64

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.64

Vin.5.23

Offence of Expiation for concealing a monk's offence knowing it to be a very bad one ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk concealed a monk's offence knowing it to be a very bad one ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 65

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.65

Offence of Expiation for ordaining a man knowing him to be less than twenty years of age ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks ordained a man knowing him to be less than twenty years of age. One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 66

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.66

Offence of Expiation for going along the same highway having arranged together with a caravan knowing it to be set on theft. It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk went along the same highway having arranged together with a caravan knowing it to be set on theft ... One laying down⁵ ... He originates it by two origins: it may

¹ Vin.4.125. ² Vin.4.126. ³ Vin.4.127. ⁴ Vin.4.130. ⁵ Vin.4.131.

be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 67

Offence of Expiation for going along the same highway having arranged together with a woman. It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk went along the same highway having arranged together with a woman ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by four origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.67

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 68

Offence of Expiation for not giving up a pernicious view though being admonished up to three times ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer ... The monk Ariṭṭha who had formerly been a vulture-trainer did not give up a pernicious view though being admonished up to three times ... One laying down.² He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by speech and by mind. Together with a monk knowing him to be one who talks thus, has not acted according to the rule, and has not given up that view ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks ate together with the monk Ariṭṭha knowing him to be one who talked thus, had not acted according to the rule, and had not given up that view ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by three origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.68

BD.6.36

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 69

Offence of Expiation for encouraging a novice knowing him to be thus expelled ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks encouraged the novice Kaṇḍaka knowing him to have been thus expelled ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by three origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.69

Vin.5.24

The Seventh Division: on What Contains Living Things

¹ Vin.4.133. ² Vin.4.135. ³ Vin.4.137. ⁴ Vin.4.139.

DIVISION 8: ON REGARDING A RULE

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 71

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.71

Offence of Expiation for saying, when one is being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, "I will not train myself in this rule of training, your reverences, till I have inquired about it from another monk, experienced, expert in Discipline" ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning the venerable Channa ... The venerable Channa, on being spoken to by monks, said, " ... till I have inquired about it ... " ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 72

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.72

Offence of Expiation in disparaging Discipline ... It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks disparaged Discipline ... One laying down² ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 73

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.73

BD.6.37

Offence of Expiation for putting (a monk) in confusion ... It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks confused ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 74

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.74

Offence of Expiation for giving a blow to monk when one is angry and displeased ... It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, angry, displeased, gave a blow to monks ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and mind, not by speech.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 75

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.75

Offence of Expiation for raising the palm of one's hand against a monk when one is angry and displeased¹ ... (see Prv.1.1.Bu-Pc.74; instead of gave a blow read raised the palm of the hand) ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 76

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.76

Offence of Expiation for defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks defamed a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... One laying down² ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 77

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.77

Offence of Expiation for intentionally arousing remorse in a monk ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks intentionally aroused remorse in monks ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 78

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.78

Offence of Expiation for standing overhearing monks when they are quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks stood overhearing monks when they were quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention ... One laying down.⁴ ... He originates it by two origins; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Vin.5.25

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 79

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.79

Offence of Expiation for engaging in criticism after having given consent for legitimate (formal) acts ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning

¹ Vin.4.141. ² Vin.4.143. ³ Vin.4.144. ⁴ Vin.4.146. ¹ Vin.4.147. ² Vin.4.148.

³ Vin.4.149. ⁴ Vin.4.150

BD.6.38 the group of six monks ... The group six monks, having given consent for legitimate (formal) acts, afterwards engaged in criticism ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 80

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.80

Offence of Expiation for rising up from one's seat and departing when the Order is engaged in decisive talk without giving one's consent ... It was laid down in Sāvathī Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk, rising up from his seat, departed when the Order was engaged in decisive talk without giving his consent ... One laying down² ... He originates it by one origin ... He originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 81

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.81

Offence of Expiation for engaging in criticism after having given away a robe by means of a complete Order ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, having given away a robe by means of a complete Order, afterwards engaged in criticism ... One laying down³ ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 82

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.82

Offence of Expiation for apportioning to an individual a benefit belonging to the Order knowing that it has been apportioned ... It was laid down in Sāvathī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks apportioned to an individual a benefit belonging to the Order knowing that it had been apportioned ... One laying down⁴ ... He originates it by three origins.

The Eighth Division: that on Regarding a Rule

DIVISION 9: ON A KING

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 83

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.83

Offence of Expiation for entering, without announcing beforehand, the king's women's quarters ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the venerable Ānanda ... The venerable Ānanda, not announced beforehand, entered the king's women's quarters ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 84

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.84

Offence of Expiation for picking up treasure ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk picked up treasure ... One laying down,³ two supplementary layings down⁴ ... He originates it by the six origins.

Vin.5.26

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 85

Offence of Expiation for entering a village at the wrong time without asking (for permission) if a monk be there ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks entered a village at the wrong time ... One laying down,⁵ three supplementary layings down⁶ ... He originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁷

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.85
BD.6.39

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 86

Offence of Expiation for having a needle-case made that consists of bone or ivory or horn ... It was laid down among the Sakyans ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, not knowing moderation, asked for many needle-cases ... One laying down⁸ ... He originates it by the six origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.86

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 87

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.87

Offence of Expiation for having a couch or chair made exceeding the (proper) measure ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the venerable Upananda the Sakyan ... The venerable Upananda the Sakyan lay down on a high couch ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by the six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 88

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.88

Offence of Expiation for having a couch or a chair made covered with cotton ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks had a couch and a chair made covered with cotton ... One laying down² ... He originates it by the six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 89

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.89

Offence of Expiation for having a piece of cloth to sit upon made exceeding the (proper) measure. It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks used pieces of cloth to sit upon that were not of the (proper) measure ... One laying down,³ one supplementary laying down⁴ ... He originates it by the six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 90

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.90

Offence of Expiation for having an itch-cloth made exceeding the (proper) measure ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks used itch-cloths that were not of the (proper) measure ... One laying down⁵ ... He originates it by the six origins.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 91

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.91

Offence of Expiation for having a cloth for the rains made exceeding the (proper) measure ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group

¹ Vin.4.152. ² Vin.4.153. ³ Vin.4.154. ⁴ Vin.4.156. ¹ Vin.4.160. ² Bu-NP.1, and see Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.4.161. ⁴ Vin.4.162-3. ⁵ Vin.4.165. ⁶ Vin.4.165-6. ⁷ Bu-NP.1. ⁸ Vin.4.167. ¹ Vin.4.168. ² Vin.4.169. ³ Vin.4.170. ⁴ Vin.4.171. ⁵ Vin.4.172.

of six monks ... The group of six monks used cloths for the rains that were not of the (proper) measure ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by the six origins.

BD.6.40

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 92

Offence of Expiation for having a robe made the measure of a Well-farer's robe ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī Concerning the venerable Nanda ... The venerable Nanda wore a robe the measure of the Well-farer's robe ... One laying down² ... He originates it by the six origins.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pc.92
Vin.5.27

The Ninth Division: that on a King³

Concluded are the ninety-two offences of Expiation

ITS SUMMARY

⁴ Lying, insulting speech, slander, by line, sleeping-place, and women,⁵ Except a learned man (be present),⁶ facts, a very bad offence, digging, / Vegetable-growth, in evasion, he looked down on, a couch, and it is called a sleeping-place,⁷

First, throwing out, removable (feet), a door, and with living things, /

Not agreed on, after (sun-)set, quarters, and for gain,

Should he give, should he sew, by arrangement, a boat, should eat, together,⁸ /

Meal, group(-meal), out-of-turn (meal), a cake, being satisfied,

(asking) one who is satisfied, Wrong time, stored, milk, for cleansing the teeth—these

BD.6.41

¹ Vin.4.172 ² Vin.4.173. ³ In the Suttavibhaṅga, Vin.4.174, this is called Ratanavagga, Division on Treasure. Treasure is the subject of the second offence in the Division. The title, Rājavagga, as above, refers to the first offence in the Division. ⁴ The summaries of all nine Divisions are collected together here; in the Suttavibhaṅga each Division is followed by its summary. Some of the “catch-words” do not occur in Parivāra and can only be understood by consulting the relevant offences in the Suttavibhaṅga. ⁵ *seyyā ca itthiyo*, referring to Bu-Pc.5 and Bu-Pc.6. Vin.4.33 reads *seyyāya ve duve*, two on sleeping-places, referring to two offences both of which are concerned with lying down in a sleeping-place. ⁶ This is part of Bu-Pc.7, but has not been mentioned in the Parivāra. ⁷ In Parivāra above this line reads *bhūtaṃ, aññāya, ujjhāyi, mañco, seyyā ca vuccati*. At Vin.4.49 it reads *bhūtaṃ, aññāya, ujjhāyaṃ, pakkamanten te duve*. These last two deal with setting out without putting away a couch (Bu-Pc.14) and a sleeping-place (Bu-Pc.15). ⁸ These two lines read somewhat differently in the two contexts. Above they read *asammatā, atthaṅgate, upassay'-āmisena ca, / dade, sibbe, vidhānena, nāvā, bhūñjeyya, ekato*, while at Vin.4.69 they read *asammata-atthaṅgatā, upassaya-āmisā-dānena, sibbati, / addhānaṃ, nāvāṃ, bhūñjeyya, eko ekāya te dasā ti*.

ten. /

Unclothed ascetic,¹ intruding on,² secluded, and in a private place,
Invited, on requisites, army, staying, sham-fight, /
Fermented liquor, the finger, and playing,³ and disrespect, frightening,
Fire, on bathing, on disfigurement, himself,⁴ and about not hiding, /
Intentionally,⁵ water, and (formal) act, very bad offence, less than twenty,
(Set) on theft, a woman, not taught, be in communion, on one who has been expelled, /
Regarding a rule,⁶ perplexity, confusion, on a blow, should he raise,
And unfounded, intentionally, “I will hear,” criticism, should he depart,
Having given a robe through an Order, should apportion to individuals, /
And of kings,⁷ treasure, if one be (present), needle(-case), and couch, cotton,
Cloth to sit on, itch-cloth and so on, for the rains, and on the Well-farer. /

BD.6.42

THE SUMMARY OF THESE DIVISIONS

Lying, and vegetable-growth, exhortation, a meal, and about an unclothed ascetic,
Fermented liquor, containing living things, a rule, with the Division on a king—these
nine. /

PĀTIDESANĪYA

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pd.1

“Where was that offence to be Confessed laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One for eating solid food or soft food, having accepted it with one’s own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation (and) has entered among the houses?” It was laid down

¹ These two lines are quite different from the summary of Bu-Pc.41–50 at Vin.4.108. There the reading is *pūvaṃ, kathā, ’panandassa tayaṃ, ’paṭṭhākam eva ca, / Mahānāmo, Pasenadi, senā, viddho ime dasā ti.* ² This refers to Bu-Pc.43. As a reference to Bu-Pc.42 appears to be missing, there are only nine headings for this 5th Division. ³ *hāso ca.* Vin.4.124 reads *toyaṃ ca,* and the water. ⁴ Merely *sāmaṃ* above. Vin.4.124 inserts *apaccuddhāraka* before *sāmaṃ*, but both these words refer to Bu-Pc.59. ⁵ The summaries of these lines at Vin.4.140 are quite different from those the Parivāra and read *sañciccavadha-sappāṇaṃ, ukko, duṭṭhul-lachādanaṃ, / ūnavīsati, satthaṃ ca, saṃvidhāna-Ariṭṭhakaṃ, / ukkhitta-Kaṇḍakaṃ c’ eva dasa sikkhāpadā ime ti,* thus having three lines where Parivāra has two. ⁶ Vin.4.157 differs considerably from the above. It reads *sahadhamma-vivaṇṇaṃ ca, mohāpana-pahārakaṃ, / talasatti, amūlaṃ ca, sañcicca, upassuti ca, / paṭibāhanachandaṃ ca, Dabbaṃ ca, pariṇāmanaṃ.* Both contexts have three lines of summary as this is the Division with twelve *sikkhāpadas* in it. ⁷ These two lines differ but slightly from those at Vin.4.174.

in Sāvattthī ... Concerning a certain monk ... A certain monk accepted a benefit from the hand of a nun who was not a relation (and) had entered among the houses ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Vin.5.28

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 2

Offence to be Confessed for eating without restraining a nun who is giving directions ... It was laid down in Rājagaha ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks did not restrain nuns who were giving directions ... One laying down² ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pd.2

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 3

Offence to be Confessed for eating solid food or soft food among families agreed upon as learners, having accepted it with his own hand ... It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks, not knowing moderation, accepted ... One laying down,³ two supplementary layings down⁴ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pd.3

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 4

Offence to be Confessed for eating solid food or soft food in forest lodgings, not announced beforehand, having accepted it with his own hand within a monastery ... It was laid down among the Sakyans ... Concerning several monks ... Several monks did not announce that thieves were living in a monastery ... One laying down,⁵ one supplementary laying down⁶ ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by

Prv.1.1:Bu-Pd.4

BD.6.43

¹ Vin.4.176. ² Vin.4.177. ³ Vin.4.179. ⁴ Vin.4.179, Vin.4.180. ⁵ Vin.4.182. ⁶ Vin.4.182.

speech, not by mind; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Concluded are the four offences to be Confessed

ITS SUMMARY¹

Not a relation, giving directions, learners, and about the forest—
The four to be Confessed were proclaimed by the perfect Buddha.

SEKHIYA

DIVISION 1: ON ALL ROUND

MONKS' SEKHIYA 1

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.1

Where was that offence of Wrong-doing laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, Fully Self-Awakened One for dressing, out of disrespect, with the inner robe hanging down in front or behind?" It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks dressed with the inner robe hanging down in front and behind ... One laying down² ... He originates it by one origin; he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 2

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.2

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, putting on the upper robe hanging down in front or behind ... (see Prv.1.1.Bu-Sk.1; instead of inner robe read upper robe.)

MONKS' SEKHIYA 3, 4

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.3

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going amid the houses having uncovered the body. (as before).

¹ Not at Vin.4.184. ² Vin.4.185. Notes on some of the words in the Sekhiya are given at BD.3.120ff.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 4, 5

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... sitting down amid the houses having uncovered the body ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.4
Vin.5.29

MONKS' SEKHIYA 5, 6

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... going (sitting down) amid the houses making play with hand or foot ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.5
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.6

MONKS' SEKHIYA 7, 8

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... going (sitting down) amid the houses looking about here and there ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.7
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.8

MONKS' SEKHIYA 9, 10

Offence of Wrong-doing for going (sitting down) amid the houses with (the robes) lifted up out of disrespect ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.9
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.10

The First Division: that on All Round

DIVISION 2: ON LOUD LAUGHTER

MONKS' SEKHIYA 11, 12

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going (sitting down) amid the houses with loud laughter. It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks went (sat down) amid the houses laughing a great laugh ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.11
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.12
BD.6.44

MONKS' SEKHIYA 13, 14

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going (sitting down) amid the houses making a loud noise, a great noise The group of six monks went (sat

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.13
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.14

¹ Vin.4.187.

down) amid the houses making a loud noise, a great noise ... (see [Prv.1.1.Bu-Sk.11](#)).

MONKS' SEKHIYA 15, 16

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.15
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.16

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going (sitting down) amid the houses swaying the body ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 17, 18

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.17
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.18

... swaying the arms ... (see [Prv.1.1.Bu-Sk.15](#)).

MONKS' SEKHIYA 19, 20

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.19
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.20

... swaying the head ... (see [Prv.1.1.Bu-Sk.15](#)).

The Second Division: that on Loud Laughter

DIVISION 3: ON ARMS AKIMBO

MONKS' SEKHIYA 21, 22

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.21
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.22

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going (sitting down) amid the houses with the arms akimbo ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 23, 24

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.23
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.24

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, going (sitting down) amid the houses muffled up ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks, having dressed themselves including their heads in the upper robes, went (sat down) amid the houses ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 25

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.25

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... going amid the houses crouching down on the heels ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 26

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... sitting down amid the houses lolling ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.26

MONKS' SEKHIYA 27

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... accepting almsfood inattentively ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.27
Vin.5.30

MONKS' SEKHIYA 28

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... accepting almsfood while looking about here and there ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.28

MONKS' SEKHIYA 29

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... accepting much curry only ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.29

MONKS' SEKHIYA 30

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, accepting heaped-up almsfood ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.30
BD.6.45

The Third Division: that on Arms Akimbo

DIVISION 4: ON ALMSFOOD

MONKS' SEKHIYA 31

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, eating almsfood inattentively ... while looking about here and there ... having chosen¹ here and there ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.31
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.32
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.33

MONKS' SEKHIYA 34

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... eating much curry only ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.34

¹ Text here reads *omasitvā* against *omadditvā* at [Vin.4.191](#). The context at [Vin.4.191](#) requires *omadditvā*, having chosen; in its no-offence clause it uses *omasati* twice “to be impatient with,” to insult, to touch a person. That the belongs to what is not-an-offence is borne out by [Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 150](#).

MONKS' SEKHIYA 35

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.35

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... eating almsfood having chosen from the top ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 36

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.36

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... covering up the curry or the condiment with conjeý ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 37

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.37

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... eating curry or conjeý having asked for it for oneself if one is not ill ... It was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks ate curry and conjeý having asked for it for themselves ... One laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down² ... He originates it by two origins: it may be that he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 38

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.38

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... looking at the bowls of others captious-mindedly ... One laying down ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 39

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.39

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... making up a large mouthful ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 40

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.40

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, making up a long morsel (of food) ...

The Fourth Division: that on Almsfood³

¹ Vin.4.193. ² Vin.4.193. ³ Instead of *piṇḍapāta* as above, Vin.4.194 has *sakkacca* "attentively".

DIVISION 5: ON MOUTHFUL

MONKS' SEKHIYA 41

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, opening the mouth when the mouthful had not been brought close ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.41

MONKS' SEKHIYA 42

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... putting the whole hand into the mouth while one is eating ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.42
BD.6.46

MONKS' SEKHIYA 43

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... talking with a mouthful in the mouth ... It was laid down in Sāvattī ... Concerning the group of six monks ... The group of six monks talked with a mouthful in the mouth ... One laying down ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.43

Vin.5.31

MONKS' SEKHIYA 44

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... eating while tossing up balls (of food) ... while breaking up the mouthfuls ... stuffing the cheeks ... shaking the hands about ... scattering lumps of boiled rice ... putting out the tongue ... smacking the lips ... One laying down¹ ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by voice.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.44

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.45

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.46

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.47

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.48

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.49

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.50

The Fifth Division: that on Mouthful

DIVISION 6: ON HISSING

MONKS' SEKHIYA 51

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, eating while making a hissing sound ... It was laid down in Kosambī ... Concerning several monks ...

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.51

¹ Vin.4.195-197.

Several monks drank milk making a hissing sound ... One laying down ...
He originates it by one origin ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 52

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.52
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.53
Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.54

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, eating while licking the
fingers ... licking the bowl ... licking the lips ... One laying down ... He
originates it by one origin ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 55

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.55

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... accepting a drinking cup with the hands
(soiled) with food ... It was laid down among the Bhaggā ... Concerning
several monks ... Several monks accepted a drinking cup with hands (soiled)
with food ... One laying down ... He originates it by one origin ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 56

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.56

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... throwing out amid the houses the rinsings
of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice ... It was laid down among the Bhaggā
... Concerning several monks ... Several monks threw out amid the houses
the rinsings of the bowls with lumps of boiled rice ... One laying down ...
He originates it by one origin ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 57

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.57

BD.6.47

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... teaching *Dhamma* to (someone) with a sun-
shade in his hand ... It was laid down at Sāvattthī ... Concerning the group of
six monks ... The group of six monks taught *Dhamma* to (someone) with a
sunshade in his hand ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down.
He originates it by one origin: he originates it by speech and by mind, not
by body.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 58

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.58
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.59
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.60

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, teaching *Dhamma* to (someone) with a staff in his hand ... a knife in his hand ... a weapon in his hand ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down ... He originates it by one origin: he originates it by speech and by mind, not by body.

The Sixth Division: that on Hissing

DIVISION 7: ON SHOES

MONKS' SEKHIYA 61-67

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, teaching *Dhamma* to (someone) who is wearing shoes ... wearing sandals ... who is in a vehicle ... on a bed ... who is sitting down lolling ... who has a turban on his head ... whose head is muffled up ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down ... (*as before.*)

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.61
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.62
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.63
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.64
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.65
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.66
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.67
 Vin.5.32

MONKS' SEKHIYA 68-72

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... teaching *Dhamma* when one is sitting on the ground to (someone) who is sitting on a seat ... when one is sitting on a low seat to (someone) who is sitting on a high seat ... when one is standing to (someone) who is sitting ... when one is walking behind to (someone) who is walking in front ... when one is walking at the side of a path to someone walking along the path ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down. Of the six origins of offences he originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.68
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.69
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.70
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.71
 Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.72

MONKS' SEKHIYA 73

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... easing oneself while one is standing ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down. Of the six origins of offences he originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.73

MONKS' SEKHIYA 74

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.74

Offence of Wrong-doing for ... easing oneself or spitting on green corn ...

MONKS' SEKHIYA 75

Prv.1.1:Bu-Sk.75

BD.6.48

Offence of Wrong-doing for, out of disrespect, easing oneself spitting in water. "Where was it laid down?" It was laid down in Sāvattihī. "Concerning whom?" Concerning the group of six monks. "On what subject?" On the subject of the group of six monks relieving themselves and spitting in water. One laying down,¹ one supplementary laying down.² Of the six origins of offences he originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

The Seventh Division: that on Shoes

Concluded are the seventy-five Rules for Training

Concluded is the Chapter on the Laying-Down-Where in the Great Analysis

ITS SUMMARY³

All round,⁴ (properly) clad,⁵ well-controlled,⁶ with the eyes cast down,⁷
Lifting up (the robes),⁸ loud laughter,⁹ a noise,¹⁰ and three on swaying,¹¹ /
Akimbo,¹² muffled up,¹³ crouching down,¹⁴ and lolling,¹⁵
Attentively, and thinking of the bowl, equal curry, at an even level,¹⁶ /
Attentively, and thinking of the bowl, on continuous almstour, equal curry,
From the top,¹⁷ covering up, asking, captious-mindedly, /
Not large, a round,¹⁸ door (of the face), whole hand, one should not talk,
Tossing up, breaking up,¹⁹ stuffing (the cheeks), shaking, scattering lumps of boiled
rice, /

Vin.5.33

Likewise putting out the tongue, smacking the lips,²⁰ hissing,
Fingers, and bowl, lips, (soiled) with food,²¹ and with lumps of boiled rice, /
Tathāgatas do not teach *Dhamma* to one with a sunshade in his hand,

BD.6.49

Neither to one with a staff in his hand, to those with a knife, a weapon in their

¹ Vin.4.206. ² Vin.4.206. ³ There is no *uddāna* at the end of the *Sekhiyas* in Vin.4.

⁴ Bu-Sk.1, Bu-Sk.2. ⁵ Bu-Sk.3, Bu-Sk.4. ⁶ Bu-Sk.5, Bu-Sk.6. ⁷ Bu-Sk.7, Bu-Sk.8.

⁸ Bu-Sk.9, Bu-Sk.10. ⁹ Bu-Sk.11, Bu-Sk.12. ¹⁰ Bu-Sk.13, Bu-Sk.14. ¹¹ Bu-Sk.15–Bu-Sk.17.

¹² Bu-Sk.21, Bu-Sk.22. ¹³ Bu-Sk.23, Bu-Sk.24. ¹⁴ Bu-Sk.25. ¹⁵ Bu-Sk.26. (Henceforth

each *Sekhiya* is concerned with one topic and only sufficient references will be given for identification). ¹⁶ Bu-Sk.30. ¹⁷ Bu-Sk.35. ¹⁸ Bu-Sk.40. ¹⁹ Bu-Sk.45. ²⁰ Bu-Sk.50.

²¹ Bu-Sk.55.

hands,¹ /

Shoes, likewise sandals, and to one in a vehicle, on a bed,

To one sitting down lolling,² to one with a turban on, and to one muffled up, /

On the ground, on a low seat, while standing,³ walking behind, and at the side of a path,

It should not be done by one while he is standing, nor on green corn, or in water.⁴ /

THE SUMMARY OF THESE DIVISIONS

All round, loud laughter, akimbo, and likewise alms (food),⁵

Mouthful, and hissing, and with shoes on is the seventh.

¹ Bu-Sk.60. ² Bu-Sk.65. ³ Bu-Sk.70. ⁴ Bu-Sk.75. ⁵ Here *piṇḍa*, a shortened form of *piṇḍapāta*, the name given to this Division at Vin.5.30; its identification in the foregoing *uddāna* is *sakkaccaṃ*, “attentively,” as at Vin.4.194.

1.2. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON HOW MANY OFFENCES?

PĀRĀJIKA

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 1

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pj.1

Indulging in sexual intercourse how many offences does one fall into? Indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into three offences: if one indulges in sexual intercourse with a body¹ that is not decayed there is an offence involving Defeat.² If one indulges in sexual intercourse with a body that is practically decayed there is a grave offence. If without touching the male organ one makes it enter an open mouth there is an offence of wrong-doing. Indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into these three offences.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 2

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pj.2

Taking what has not been given how many offences does one fall into? Taking what has not been given one falls into three offences: if one takes as it were by theft something to the value of five *māsakas*³ or more than five *māsakas* there is an offence involving Defeat.⁴ If one takes ... to the value of more than one *māsaka* or less than five *māsakas* there is a grave offence.⁵ If one takes ... to the value of a *māsaka* or less than a *māsaka* there is an offence

¹ *sarīra* is both physical frame and physical remains. Here really a corpse, a dead body, *mata*, as at [Vin.3.29ff.](#) ² [Vin.3.37.](#) In connection with what might be regarded as too great outspokenness in this *Pārājika*, I should like to draw attention to my remarks at [BD.1, Introduction, p.xxxvii.](#) ³ See [BD.1.71](#), [BD.1.72](#) and notes. ⁴ [Vin.3.54f.](#) ⁵ [Vin.3.54f.](#)

of wrong-doing.¹ Taking what has not been given one falls into these three offences.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 3

Intentionally depriving a human being of life ... one falls into three offences: if he digs a pitfall on purpose for a (certain) man, thinking, "Falling into it he will die," there is an offence of wrong-doing. If falling down into it a painful feeling arises (in the man), there is a grave offence. If he dies there is an offence involving Defeat.² Intentionally ... he falls into these three offences.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pj.3
BD.6.50

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 4

Laying claim (for oneself) to a non-existent, non-actual state of furthermen ... one falls into three offences: if, having evil desires, evil longings, he lays claim to a non-existent ... there is an offence involving Defeat.³ If he says, "The monk who lives in this *vihāra* is an arahant," there is a grave offence for acknowledging (a conscious lie); there is an offence of wrong-doing for not acknowledging it.⁴

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pj.4

Concluded are the four Offences involving Defeat

SAṄGHĀDISESA

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Emitting semen making an effort he falls into three offences: if he wills, makes an effort, and it is emitted there is an offence requiring a Formal

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.1
Vin.5.34

¹ Vin.3.54f. ² Vin.3.76. It seems that the thoughts attributed to the malefactor result in the offences being given in an ascending order of gravity, rather than, as is more usual, in a descending order. ³ Vin.3.92; and below BD.6.55. ⁴ Vin.3.99; and also Vin.5.99. "For not acknowledging" means he was not aware beforehand or while he was speaking that he was telling conscious lie, see Vin.3.100, Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 34.

Meeting of the Order¹; if he wills, makes an effort, and it is not emitted there is a grave offence²; in (a certain) action³ there is an offence of wrong-doing.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.2

Coming into physical contact with a woman one falls into three offences: if he rubs (her) body with (his) body there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁴ If he rubs an article of clothing (of hers) with (his) body there is a grave offence.⁵ If he rubs an article of clothing (of hers) with an article of clothing (of his) there is an offence of wrong doing.⁶

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.3

BD.6.51

Offending a woman with lewd words he falls into three offences: pointing out the two privies, if he speaks in praise and speaks in dispraise there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁷ Leaving out (talk on) the two privies, pointing out any part from below the collar-bone to above the knee, if he speaks in praise and speaks in dispraise there is a grave offence.⁸ Pointing out an article of clothing, if he speaks ... wrong-doing.⁹

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.4

Speaking in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for (him)self he falls into three offences; if he speaks ... in the presence of a woman, there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order¹⁰; if he speaks ... in the presence of a eunuch there is a grave offence¹¹; if he speaks ... in the presence of an animal there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹²

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.5

Acting as a go-between he falls into three offences; if he accepts, examines, brings back there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order¹; if he accepts and examines but does not bring back, there is a grave offence²; if he accepts, but does not examine, does not bring back, there is an offence of wrong-doing.³

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.6

Begging for having a hut built for oneself he falls into three offences: if he has one built, in (each) operation⁴ there is an offence of wrong-doing. If one lump (of plaster) is still to come there is a grave offence;⁵ when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁶

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 7

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.7

Having a large *vihāra* built ...⁷ (see Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.6).

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 8

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.8

Defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat he falls into three offences: if he speaks desiring his expulsion but without having gained his leave there is an offence of wrong-doing together with an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order;⁸ if he speaks intending abuse, having gained his leave, there is an offence of insulting speech.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 9

Defaming a monk with a charge of an offence involving Defeat, taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else, he falls into three offences (as in [Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.9](#)).

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.9
BD.6.52

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.10

A schismatic monk, though being admonished up to three times but not giving up (his course), falls into three offences: following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing¹; following the two resolutions there are grave offences²; following the conclusion of the (three) resolutions there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.³

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.11
Vin.5.35

Monks throwing in their lot with a schism, though being admonished up to three times but not giving up (their course), fall into three offences: following the motion⁴ ... (as in [Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.10](#)).

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.12

A monk who is difficult to speak to, though being admonished up to three times but not giving up (his course) falls into three offences: ...⁵ (as in [Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.10](#)).

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.13

A monk who brings a family into disrepute, though being admonished up to three times but not giving up (his course), falls into three offences: ...¹ (as in Prv.1.2:Bu-Ss.10).

*Concluded are the thirteen Offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order*²

NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA

DIVISION 1: ON KATHINA CLOTH

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 1

Exceeding the ten-day (period for wearing) an extra robe he falls into one offence: Expiation involving forfeiture.³

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.1

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 2

Being separated from the three robes for one night he falls into one offence: Expiation involving forfeiture.⁴

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.2

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 3

Exceeding (the period of) a month, having accepted robe-material not at the right time, he falls into one offence ...⁵

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.3

¹ Vin.3.116. ² Vin.3.116. ³ *payoga*, a word which does not appear to occur in Bu-Ss.1. On the other hand, there seem to be only two types of this behaviour which, in this *Saṅghādisesa*, are ranked as *dukkāṭa*. ⁴ Vin.3.121. ⁵ Vin.3.123. ⁶ Vin.3.124. ⁷ Vin.3.129. ⁸ Vin.3.129. ⁹ Vin.3.130. ¹⁰ Vin.3.134. ¹¹ Vin.3.134. ¹² *tiracchānagata*, animal, does not occur in Bu-Ss.4, nor in the relevant parts of Commentary or Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī. ¹ Vin.3.140–Vin.3.142. ² Vin.3.143. ³ Vin.3.143. ⁴ *payoge*, but at Vin.3.151 *payoge payoge*. ⁵ Vin.3.151. ⁶ Vin.3.151. ⁷ Vin.3.157. ⁸ The parallel paragraph at Vin.3.166 gives four types of offence: *saṅghādisesena dukkāṭa*, *saṅghādisesa*, *omasavādena dukkāṭa*, and *omasavāda* possible therefore that a clause has been omitted above. ¹ Vin.3.174. ² Vin.3.174. ³ Vin.3.174. ⁴ Vin.3.176. ⁵ Vin.3.179. ¹ Vin.3.185. ² The Undetermined Offences are omitted as they cannot be treated by this method. ³ Vin.3.196. ⁴ Vin.3.198. ⁵ Vin.3.203.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.4

Having a soiled robe washed by a nun who is not a relation he falls into two offences: if he has it washed there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has had it washed there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.¹

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.5

BD.6.53

Accepting a robe from the hand of a nun who is not a relation he falls into two offences: if he takes it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action²; when he has taken it there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.³

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.6

Asking a man or woman householder who is not a relation for a robe he falls into two offences; if he asks there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action⁴; when he has asked ... Expiation involving forfeiture.⁵

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.7

Asking a man or woman householder who is not a relation for more robe-material than that (which they had invited him to accept) ... (see Prv.1.2:Bu-NP6).

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.8

Approaching a householder who is not a relation before being invited to do so and putting forward a consideration in regard to robe-material he falls into two offences: if he puts forward a consideration there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action⁶; when he has put forward the consideration ... Expiation involving forfeiture.

¹ Neither clause at Vin.3.206f. is stated precisely as above. ² Vin.3.210. ³ These and several following clauses do not repeat Vin.3 exactly. ⁴ Vin.3.213. ⁵ These and several following clauses do not repeat Vin.3 exactly. ⁶ Vin.3.217.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 9

Approaching householders who are not relations ... (see [Prv.1.2:Bu-NP8](#)).

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.9

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 10

Succeeding in obtaining a robe by stating more than three times, by standing more than six times, he falls into two offences: if he succeeds in obtaining it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has succeeded ... Expiation involving forfeiture.¹

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.10

The First Division: that on Kaṭhina-cloth

DIVISION 2: ON SILK

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 11

Having a rug made mixed with silk he falls into two offences: as he has it made there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) operation; when he has had it made there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.²

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.11

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 12

Having a rug made of pure black sheep's wool ...³ (see [Prv.1.2:Bu-NP11](#)).

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.12

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 13

Having a new rug made without taking a portion of white (wools) and a portion of reddish-brown colours, he falls into two offences ...⁴

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.13
Vin.5.36

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 14

Having a rug made every year ...⁵

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.14

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 15

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.15

Having a new rug to sit on made without taking a piece the breadth of the accepted span from all round an old rug ...¹

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 16

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.16
BD.6.54

Accepting sheep's wool and exceeding the three *yojanas* he falls into two offences: if he makes the first foot go beyond the three *yojanas* there is an offence of wrong-doing; if he makes the second foot go beyond there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.²

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.17

Having sheep's wool washed by a nun who is not a relation ... (see Prv.1.2:Bu-NP4).

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.18

Accepting gold and silver he falls into two offences: if he takes it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action;³ when he has taken it there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.19

Engaging in various transactions in which gold and silver are used ... two offences: if he engages there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action;⁴ when he has engaged ... Expiation involving forfeiture.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.20

Engaging in various transactions in which there is bartering¹ ... (see Prv.1.2:Bu-NP19).

The Second Division: that on Silk

DIVISION 3: ON A BOWL

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 21

Exceeding the ten days (for keeping) an extra bowl he falls into one offence; Expiation involving forfeiture.

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.21

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 22

Getting another new bowl in exchange for a bowl that has been mended in less than five places he falls into two offences: if he gets in exchange there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action²; when he has got it in exchange there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.22

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 23

Having accepted medicines, (then) exceeding the seven days (for which they may be stored) he falls into one offence: Expiation involving forfeiture.

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.23

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 24

Looking about for robe-material as a cloth for the rains while more than a month of the hot weather remains he falls into two offences: if he looks about there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has looked about there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.24

BD.6.55

¹ Vin.3.223. ² Vin.3.224. ³ Vin.3.226. ⁴ Vin.3.227. ⁵ Vin.3.229. ¹ Vin.3.232. ² Vin.3.234. ³ No payoge at Vin.3.238, which says: "(if) he himself takes there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture". ⁴ Vin.3.240. See preceding note. ¹ At Vin.3.241 there is a *dukkaṭa* for asking someone to exchange; but as soon as the exchange or barter has been effected the offence is one expiation and forfeiture. ² Vin.3.246; the "action" means asking for the exchange to be when it has been exchanged refers to the *sikkhāpada*: "should get exchange."

MONKS' *NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA* 25

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.25

Having himself given robe-material to a monk, (then) angry and displeased, tearing it away he falls into two offences: if he tears it away there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action;¹ when he has torn it away there is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.

MONKS' *NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA* 26

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.26

Himself asking for yarn, (then) having robe-material woven by weavers he falls into two offences: if he has it woven there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when it is woven there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.²

MONKS' *NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA* 27

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.27

Before being invited by a householder who is not a relation, approaching weavers and putting forward a consideration in regard to robe-material he falls into two offences: if he puts forward a consideration there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has put forward the consideration there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.³

MONKS' *NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA* 28

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.28

Vin.5.37

Having accepted a special robe, (then) exceeding the robe-season he falls into one offence: Expiation involving forfeiture.

MONKS' *NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA* 29

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.29

Having laid aside any one of his three robes in a house, (then) being separated from it for more than six nights he falls into one offence: Expiation involving forfeiture.

MONKS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.1.2:Bu-NP.30

Knowingly appropriating to himself an apportioned benefit belonging to the Order he falls into two offences: if he appropriates it there is an offence of wrong-doing in (the) action; when he has appropriated it there is an offence of Expiation involving forfeiture.¹

The Third Division: that on a Bowl

Concluded are the thirty offences of Expiation involving Forfeiture

PĀCITTIYA

DIVISION 1: ON LYING

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 1

Telling a conscious lie how many offences does he fall into? Telling a conscious lie he falls into five offences: if, having evil desires, evil longings, he lays claim to a non-existent, non-actual state of further-men he falls into an offence involving Defeat; if he defames a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; if he says, "The monk who lives in this *vihāra* is an arahant," he falls into a grave offence for acknowledging (the conscious lie), into an offence of wrong-doing for not acknowledging it; there is an offence of Expiation in conscious lying.² Telling a conscious lie he falls into these five offences.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.1

BD.6.56

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 2

Insulting he falls into two offences: if he insults one who is ordained there is an offence of Expiation;³ if he insults one who is not ordained there is an offence of wrong-doing.⁴

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.2

¹ The *dukkaṭas* at Vin.3.255 do not include this one. ² Vin.3.256. ³ Vin.3.260. ¹ Vin.3.266.

² Cf. above, BD.6.50. ³ Vin.4.7ff., which then adds four cases where the offence is one of wrong-doing. ⁴ Vin.4.10 gives two cases; also, BD.6.11, two cases where the offence is one of wrong speech.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 3

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.3

Bringing slander he falls into two offences: if he brings slander against one who is ordained there is an offence of Expiation; if he brings slander against one who is not ordained¹ there is an offence of wrong-doing.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.4

Making one who is not ordained speak *Dhamma* line by line he falls into two offences: if he makes him speak there is an offence of wrong-doing in (the) action; an offence of Expiation for each line.³

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.5

Lying down in a sleeping-place with one who is not ordained for more than two or three nights he falls into two offences; if he lies down in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when he has lain down there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.6

Lying down in a sleeping-place with a woman ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.5).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.7

Teaching *Dhamma* to a woman in more than five or six sentences he falls into two offences: if he teaches ... (as in Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.4).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.8

Speaking of a state of further-men that is a fact to one who is not ordained he falls into two offences: if he speaks there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has spoken there is an offence of Expiation.

¹ Vin.4.13 adds three cases where "wrong-doing" is the offence for slandering one who is ordained. ² Vin.4.14. ³ Vin.4.15. The references to these *Pācittiyas* have been given above BD.6.23ff., and will be repeated here only if some discrepancy is pointed out.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 9

Speaking of a monk's very bad offence to one who is not ordained he falls into two offences: if he speaks ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.9](#)).

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.9

BD.6.57

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 10

Digging the ground he falls into two offences: if he digs there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; in every thrust¹ there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.10

The First Division: that on Lying

DIVISION 2: ON VEGETABLE-GROWTH

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 11

Destroying vegetable growth he falls into two offences: if he destroys there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; in every assault² there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.11

Vin.5.38

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 12

Shelving the question by asking another he falls into two offences: if evasion is not laid on him³ but he shelves the question by asking another there is

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.12

¹ *pahāra*, a word not in [Bu-Pc.10](#), but possibly referring to the Old Commentary's "he digs or causes to be dug or breaks or has it broken or burns it or has it burnt", all of which actions result in a *Pācittiya* Offence. ² Again *pahāra*, not in [Bu-Pc.11](#), but again a reference may be being made to Old Commentary's "he cuts it or has it cut or breaks it or has it broken or cooks or has it cooked"—each action giving rise to an offence of *Pācittiya*. ³ [Bu-Pc.12](#) at [Vin.4.37](#) reads *aropite* (from *a + ropeti*, not to plant, not to charge with) and *ropite*. But above the words are *anāropite ... āropite*, and are words that occur in the Old Commentary to [Bu-Pc.73](#) and mean (something) is not, and is put on (a person). [Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 90](#) has the one word *āropitatā* in connection with [Bu-Pc.12](#). [Vin-a.770](#) says that *ropeti* and *aropeti* are synonyms.

an offence of wrong-doing; if evasion is laid on him¹ and he shelves the question by asking another there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 13

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.13

Making someone look down on a monk he falls into two offences: while he is making someone look down on there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has made someone look down on there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 14

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.14

Having spread in the open air a couch or chair or a mattress or stool belonging to the Order, and not having removed it, setting out without asking permission (to do so) he falls into two offences: if he makes the first foot go further than a stone's throw there is an offence of wrong-doing; if he makes the second foot go further there is an offence of Expiation.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 15

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.15

BD.6.58

Having spread a sleeping-place in a *vihāra* belonging to an Order, and not having removed it, setting out without asking for permission (to do so) he falls into two offences: if he makes the first foot go further than the fence there is an offence of wrong-doing; if he makes the second foot go further there is an offence of Expiation.³

¹ **Bu-Pc.12** at **Vin.4.37** reads *aropite* (from *a* + *ropeti*, not to plant, not to charge with) and *ropite*. But above the words are *anāropite* ... *āropite*, and are words that occur in the Old Commentary to **Bu-Pc.73** and mean (something) is not, and is put on (a person). *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* 90 has the one word *āropitatā* in connection with **Bu-Pc.12**. **Vin-a.770** says that *ropeti* and *aropeti* are synonyms. ² **Vin.4.40** reads: if he goes further than a stone's throw of a man of average height, there is an offence of Expiation. *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* 91 is in agreement with the interpretation given above; at **Vin-a.775**, this is ascribed to the *Mahāpaccarī*. ³ Similar confusion as in **Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.14**. **Vin.4.41** makes it an offence of to go further than the fence of a fenced-in monastery or than the precincts of one that is not fenced-in. **Vin-a.777** and *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* 92 appear to agree with the interpretation given above.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 16

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.16

Lying down in a sleeping-place belonging to an Order knowing that he is encroaching (on the space intended for) a monk who had arrived first he falls into two offences: as he is lying down there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action¹; when he has lain down there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.17

Throwing out, being angry and displeased, a monk from a *vihāra* belonging to an Order he falls into two offences: as he is throwing out there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has thrown out there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.18

Sitting down on a couch or a chair that has removable feet and is in a lofty cell with an upper part in a *vihāra* belonging to an Order he falls into two offences: while he is sitting down there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action²; when he has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.19

Having determined on two or three enclosures, (then) determining on (something) more than that he falls into two offences: while he is determining there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has determined there is an offence of Expiation.³

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.20

Sprinkling water that he knows contains living things over grass or clay he falls into two offences: while he is sprinkling there is an offence of

¹ E.g. if he spreads his sleeping-place or has it spread for him, see [Vin.4.43](#). ² Not at [Vin.4.46](#), Commentary or [Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī](#). ³ That is, after the building is finished if he adds one item (a tile or a stone, etc.) of any of the five kinds of roofing allowed he incurs the offence.

wrong-doing in (each) action¹; when he has sprinkled there is an offence of Expiation.

The Second Division: that on Vegetable-growth

DIVISION 3: ON EXHORTATION

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 21

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.21

BD.6.59

Exhorting nuns (though) he has not been agreed upon (to do so) he falls into two offences: while he is exhorting there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has exhorted there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 22

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.22

Exhorting nuns after the sun has set ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.22).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 23

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.23

Exhorting nuns having approached nuns' quarters² ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 24

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.24

Saying "Monks are exhorting nuns for the sake of gain" he falls into two offences: while he is speaking there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has spoken there is an offence of Expiation.

¹ Enumerated at Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 96. ² According to Vin-a.803 the Mahāpaccarī gives a number of rulings (connected with Bu-Pc.21, Bu-Pc.22, Bu-Pc.23) where there may be a difference of penalty incurred by the same offence, as follows: (1) if the monk is not agreed on, if he goes to the nuns' quarters after sunset, and if he exhorts them with the eight important rules, there are three offences of Expiation; or (2) there is an offence of wrong-doing because the monk is not agreed on, another offence of because, when he has gone to their quarters he exhorts them with another rule, and an offence of Expiation for exhorting them after the sun as set; or (3) because he is agreed on there is no offence, but an offence of with Expiation for exhorting them after sunset, and another for exhorting them with the eight important rules when he has gone (to their quarters); or (4) no offence because he is agreed on, one of wrong-doing if he exhorts them with another rule, one of Expiation if he exhorts them after sunset.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 25

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.25

Giving robe-material to a nun who is not a relation he falls into two offences: while he is giving there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has given there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 26

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.26

Vin.5.39

Sewing robe-material for a nun who is not a relation he falls into two offences: while he is sewing there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; in each insertion of the awl there is an offence of Expiation.¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 27

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.27

Going along the same highway having arranged together with a nun he falls into two offences: while he is going along there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has gone along there is an offence of Expiation.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 28

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.28

Embarking in one boat having arranged together with a nun he falls into two offences: while he is embarking there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has embarked there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 29

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.29

BD.6.60

Eating almsfood knowing it to be procured through (the intervention of) a nun he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will eat" there is an offence of wrong-doing for every mouthful there is an offence of Expiation.³

¹ As at [Vin.4.62](#). According to Vin-a.805 "insertion" seems to mean inserting the needle and drawing it out; but if one runs a long thread along without drawing out the needle there is but one offence of Expiation. ² At Vin-a.807 Buddhaghosa gives the Mahāpaccari's version (that if they were both going to the same village in any case and happened to leave their quarters at the same time, there was no offence), but he says that this agrees neither with the Pali nor with the other Commentaries. ³ As at [Vin.4.67](#).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.30

Sitting down in a private place together with a nun, the one with the other, he falls into two offences: while he is sitting down there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

The Third Division: that on Exhortation

DIVISION 4: ON FOOD

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 31

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.31

Eating more than one meal at a public rest-house he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will eat" (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.29).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 32

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.32

Eating a group-meal he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will eat" ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 33

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.33

Eating an out-of-turn meal he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will eat" ...¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 34

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.34

After accepting two or three bowlsful of cake, (then) accepting more than that he falls into two offences: while he is taking it there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action; when he has taken it there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 35

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.35

Partaking of solid food or soft food that is not left over after he has eaten and is satisfied he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will eat" ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.29).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 36

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.36

Inviting a monk who has eaten and is satisfied to take solid food or soft food that is not left over he falls into two offences: if, at his bidding, he accepts saying, "I will eat, I will partake of" there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the meal there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 37

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.37

Partaking of solid food or soft food at the wrong time he falls into two offences: if he accepts ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.29).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 38

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.38

Partaking of solid food or of soft food that has been stored he falls into two offences: if he accepts ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 39

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.39

Eating sumptuous foods having asked for them for himself he falls into two offences: if he accepts ...¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 40

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.40
BD.6.61

Conveying to the mouth nutriment that has not been given he falls into two offences: if he accepts ...

The Fourth Division: that on Food

¹ it attributes to the Kurundī. Vin-a.817f. gives the interpretations of the Mahāpaccarī and of the Mahāaṭṭhakathā in a certain amount of detail together with one interpretation it attributes to the Kurundī. ¹ Vin-a.841 here quotes Parivāra p.218, verse 32: *kāyikāni na vācasikāni ...*

DIVISION 5: ON AN UNCLOTHED ASCETIC

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 41

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.41

Vin.5.40

Giving with his own hand solid food or soft food to an unclothed ascetic or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer he falls into two offences: while he is giving there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action: when he has given there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 42

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.42

Dismissing a monk after saying to him, "Come, your reverence, we will go into a village or market-town for almsfood," whether he has caused (the almsfood) to be given or has not caused it to be given he falls into two offences: while he is dismissing him there is an offence of wrong-doing in (each) action: when he has dismissed him there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 43

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.43

Sitting down after intruding on a family with food he falls into two offences: while he is sitting down there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 44

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.44

Sitting down in a private place on a secluded seat together with a woman he falls into two offences: while he is sitting down ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.43).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 45

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.45

Sitting down in a private place together with a woman, the one with the other, he falls into two offences; while he is sitting down ...

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 46

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.46

Calling upon families before a meal or after a meal and, being invited and being (provided) with a meal, and not asking (for permission to enter) if

a monk be there he falls into two offences: when he makes the first foot pass the threshold there is an offence of wrong-doing; when he makes the second foot pass there is an offence of Expiation.¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 47

Asking for medicine for longer than that he falls into two offences: while he is asking there is an offence of wrong-doing the action; when he has asked there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.47

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 48

Going to see an army fighting he falls into two offences: while he is going there is an offence of wrong-doing; standing where he sees there is an offence of Expiation.²

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.48

BD.6.62

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 49

Staying with an army for more than three nights he falls into two offences: while he is staying there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has stayed there is an offence of Expiation.³

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.49

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 50

Going to a sham-fight he falls into two offences ... (as in Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.48).

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.50

The Fifth Division: that on an Unclothed Ascetic

DIVISION 6: ON FERMENTED LIQUOR AND SPIRITS

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 51

Drinking strong drink⁴ he falls into two offences: if he accepts it thinking, "I will drink," there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.51

¹ As at Vin.4.100. ² Vin.4.105. ³ Vin.4.106 says he may stay for two or three nights; but if he stays until sunset of the fourth day there is an offence of Expiation. ⁴ *majja*; the word in the *sikkhāpada* at Vin.4.110 and text p.21 above is *surāmeraya*.

an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 52

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.52

Making a monk laugh by tickling him with the fingers he falls into two offences: while he makes him laugh there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has made him laugh there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 53

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.53

Sporting¹ in the water he falls into two offences: if he sports in the water with (the part) below the ankle there is an offence of wrong-doing²; if he sports in the water with (the part) above the ankle there is an offence of Expiation.³

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 54

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.54

Being disrespectful he falls into two offences: while he is being disrespectful there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has been disrespectful there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 55

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.55

Frightening a monk he falls into two offences; while he is frightening him there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has frightened him there is an offence of Expiation.⁴

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 56

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.56

BD.6.63

Warming oneself having kindled a fire he falls into two offences; while he is kindling it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has kindled it there is an offence of Expiation.

¹ *kīlanto* here; at [Vin.4.112](#) and text p.21 *hāsadhamme* is the word used in the *sikkhāpada*, *kīlati* coming later. ² As at [Vin.4.112](#). ³ [Vin.4.112](#) says if he goes under or comes up or “swims” (*plavatī ti tarati*. [Vin-a.861](#)) there is an offence of Expiation; Commentary appears to agree. ⁴ Frightening a monk by whatever means is an offence of Expiation at [Vin.4.114](#).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 57

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.57

Bathing at intervals of less than half a month he falls into two offences: while he is bathing there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action¹; at the end of the bathe there is an offence of Expiation.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 58

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.58
Vin.5.41

Making use of a new robe without taking any one of the three modes of disfigurement he falls into two offences; while he is making use of it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has made use of it there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 59

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.59

Making use of a robe that has not been taken away and that he himself has assigned to a monk or a nun or a female probationer or a novice or a female novice he falls into two offences; while he is making use of it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has made use of it there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 60

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.60

Hiding a monk's bowl or robe or piece of cloth to sit on or needle-case or girdle he falls into two offences: while he is hiding it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has hidden it there is an offence of Expiation.

The Sixth Division: that on Fermented Liquor and Spirits

DIVISION 7: ON WHAT CONTAINS LIVING THINGS

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.61

Intentionally depriving a living thing of life how many offences does he fall into? Intentionally depriving a living thing of life he falls into four offences: if he digs a pitfall not on purpose (for a certain man) and thinks, "Whoever

¹ Agrees with [Vin.4.119](#). ² Agrees with [Vin.4.119](#).

falls into it will die” there is an offence of wrong-doing¹; if a man, falling into it, dies there is an offence involving Defeat²; if a *yakkha* or a *peta*³ or an animal in human form, falling into it, dies there is a grave offence; if an animal, falling into it, dies there is an offence of Expiation. Intentionally depriving a living thing of life he falls into these four offences.

MONKS’ PĀCITTIYA 62

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.62
BD.6.64

Making use of water knowing that it contains life he falls into two offences; while he is making use of it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has made use of it there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS’ PĀCITTIYA 63

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.63

Opening up for a further (formal) act a legal question knowing it has been settled according to the rule he falls into two offences: while he is opening it up there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has opened it up there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS’ PĀCITTIYA 64

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.64

Concealing a monk’s offence knowing it to be a very bad one he falls into one offence of Expiation.

MONKS’ PĀCITTIYA 65

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.65

Ordaining a man knowing him to be less than twenty years of age he falls into two offences: while he is ordaining him there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has ordained him there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 66

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.66

Going along the same highway having arranged together with a caravan knowing it to be set on theft he falls into two offences: while he is going along there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has gone along there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 67

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.67

Going along the same highway having arranged together with a woman ... (see Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.66).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 68

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.68

Not giving up a pernicious view though being admonished up to three times he falls into two offences: an offence of wrong-doing as a result of the motion; an offence of Expiation at the end of the proclamations.¹

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 69

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.69

Eating together with a monk knowing him to be one who talks thus, has not acted according to the rule, and has not given up that view he falls into two offences: while he is eating there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action²; when he has eaten there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 70

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.70
Vin.5.42

Encouraging a novice knowing him to be thus expelled he falls into two offences: while he is encouraging him there is an offence of wrong-doing³ in the action; when he has encouraged him there is an offence of Expiation.

The Seventh Division: on What Contains Living Things

¹ Cf. Vin.5.33 Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.3. ² Cf. Vin.5.33 Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.3. ³ *peta*, departed ancestor, a kind of ghost. Neither Vin.4.124 nor Vin-a.864 mentions any of the beings spoken of in this clause. ¹ As at Vin.4.136. ² No offence of wrong-doing appears at Vin.4.140, except in cases of doubting. ³ No offence of wrong-doing appears at Vin.4.140, except in cases of doubting.

DIVISION 8: ON REGARDING A RULE

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 71

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.71
BD.6.65

When one is being spoken to by monks regarding a rule, saying, "I will not train myself in this rule of training, your reverences, until I have inquired about it from another monk, experienced, expert in Discipline," he falls into two offences: while he is speaking there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has spoken there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 72

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.72

Disparaging Discipline he falls into two offences: while he is disparaging there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has disparaged there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 73

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.73

Putting (a monk) in confusion he falls into two offences: if he confuses when confusion has not been put on¹ him there is an offence of wrong-doing; if he confuses when confusion has been put on him there is an offence of Expiation.²

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 74

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.74

Giving a blow to a monk when one is angry and displeased he falls into two offences: as he gives it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has given it there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 75

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.75

Raising the palm of one's hand against a monk when one is angry and displeased he falls into two offences: as he raises it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has raised it there is an offence of Expiation.

¹ *anāropite ... āropite*. See above, [BD.6.57, n.3](#). ² As at [Vin.4.145](#).

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 76

Defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order he falls into two offences: as he is defaming there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has defamed there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.76

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 77

Intentionally arousing remorse in a monk he falls into two offences: while he is arousing it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has aroused it there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.77

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 78

Standing overhearing monks when they are quarrelling, disputing, engaged in contention he falls into two offences: if he goes thinking, "I will hear" there is an offence of wrong-doing; standing where he hears there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.78

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 79

Engaging in criticism after giving consent for legitimate (formal) acts he falls into two offences: as he criticizes there is an offence of wrong-doing¹ in the action; when he has criticized there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.79
BD.6.66*MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 80*

Rising up from his seat and departing when the Order is engaged in decisive talk without giving his consent he falls into two offences: in leaving the assembly by (the space of) the reach of a hand there is an offence of wrong-doing; when he has left there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.80

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 81

Engaging in criticism after having given away a robe by means of a complete Order he falls into two offences: as he criticizes ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.79](#)).

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.81

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 82

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.82

Apportioning to an individual a benefit belonging to the Order knowing that it has been apportioned he falls into two offences: as he is apportioning it there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has apportioned it there is an offence of Expiation.

The Eighth Division: that on Regarding a Rule

DIVISON 9: ON A KING

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 83

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.83

Entering, without announcing beforehand, the king's women's quarters he falls into two offences: as he makes the first foot cross the threshold there is an offence of wrong-doing; as he makes the second foot cross there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 84

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.84

Vin.5.43

Picking up a treasure he falls into two offences: as he picks it up there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when he has picked it up there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 85

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.85

Entering a village at the wrong time without asking (for permission) if a monk be there he falls into two offences: as he makes the first foot cross the enclosure there is an offence of wrong-doing; as he makes the second foot cross it there is an offence of Expiation.

¹ At [Vin.4.152](#) there is no offence of wrong-doing.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 86

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.86

Having a needle-case made that consists of bone or consists of ivory or consists of horn he falls into two offences: as he is having it made there is an offence of wrong-doing; when he has had it made there is an offence of Expiation.

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 87

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.87

Having a couch or a chair made exceeding the (proper) measure, he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.86.](#))

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 88

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.88
BD.6.67

Having a couch or a chair made covered with cotton he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.86.](#))

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 89

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.89

Having a piece of cloth to sit upon made exceeding the (proper) measure he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.87.](#))

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 90

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.90

Having an itch-cloth made exceeding the (proper) measure he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.87.](#))

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 91

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.91

Having a cloth for the rains made exceeding the (proper) measure he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2.Bu-Pc.87.](#))

MONKS' PĀCITTIYA 92

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pc.92

Having a robe made the measure of a Well-farer's robe, how many offences does he fall into? Having a robe made the measure of a Well-farer's robe he falls into two offences: as he is having it made there is an offence of

wrong-doing in the action; when he has had it made there is an offence of Expiation. Having a robe made the measure of a Well-farer's robe he falls into these two offences.

The Ninth Division: that on a King

Concluded is the Minor (Class)¹

PĀTIDESANĪYA

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 1

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd.1

Eating solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation (and) has entered among the houses, how many offences does he fall into? Eating ... he falls into two offences: as he accepts it thinking, "I will eat," there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is an offence to be confessed. Eating ... he falls into these two offences.

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 2

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd.2

Eating without restraining a nun who is giving directions he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd1](#)).

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 3

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd.3

Eating solid food or soft food among families agreed upon as learners, having accepted it with his own hand he falls into two offences: ... (see [Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd1](#)).

MONKS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 4

Prv.1.2:Bu-Pd.4

Eating solid food or soft food in forest lodgings, not announced beforehand, having accepted it with his own hand within a monastery, how many offences does he fall into? Eating ... he falls into two offences: as he accepts

Vin.5.44

¹ As at [Vin.4.174](#).

it thinking, "I will eat" ... Eating ... in forest lodgings he falls into these two offences.

Concluded are the four offences to be Confessed

SEKHIYA

DIVISION 1: ON ALL ROUND

MONKS' SEKHIYA 1

Dressing, out of disrespect, with the inner robe hanging down in front or behind, how many offences does he fall into? Dressing, out of disrespect ... he falls into one offence: wrong-doing. Dressing, out of disrespect ... he falls into this one offence.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.1
BD.6.68

MONKS' SEKHIYA 2

Out of disrespect putting on the upper robe hanging down in front or behind, he falls into one offence: wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.2

MONKS' SEKHIYA 3, 4

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses having uncovered the body, he falls into one offence ...

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.3
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.4

MONKS' SEKHIYA 5, 6

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses making play with hand or foot ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.5
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.6

MONKS' SEKHIYA 7, 8

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses looking about ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.7
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.8

MONKS' SEKHIYA 9, 10

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.9

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.10

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses with (the robes) lifted up ... wrong-doing.

The First Division: that on All Round

DIVISION 2: ON LOUD LAUGHTER

MONKS' SEKHIYA 11, 12

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.11

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.12

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses with loud laughter ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 13, 14

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.13

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.14

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses making a loud noise, a great noise ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 15, 16

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.15

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.16

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses swaying the body ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 17, 18

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.17

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.18

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses swaying the arms ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 19, 20

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.19

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.20

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses swaying the head ... wrong-doing.

The Second Division: that on Loud Laughter

DIVISION 3: ON ARMS AKIMBO

MONKS' SEKHIYA 21

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses with the arms akimbo ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.21

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.22

MONKS' SEKHIYA 23

Out of disrespect going (sitting down) amid the houses muffled up ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.23

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.24

MONKS' SEKHIYA 25

Out of disrespect going amid the houses crouching down on the heels ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.25

MONKS' SEKHIYA 26

Out of disrespect sitting down amid the houses lolling ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.26

MONKS' SEKHIYA 27

Out of disrespect accepting almsfood inattentively wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.27

MONKS' SEKHIYA 28

Out of disrespect accepting almsfood while looking about here and there ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.28

BD.6.69

Vin.5.45

MONKS' SEKHIYA 29

Out of disrespect accepting much curry only ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.29

MONKS' SEKHIYA 30

Out of disrespect accepting heaped-up almsfood ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.30

The Third Division: that on Arms Akimbo

DIVISION 4: ON ALMSFOOD

MONKS' SEKHIYA 31

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.31

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.32

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.33

Out of disrespect eating almsfood inattentively ... while looking about here and there ... having chosen here and there ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 34

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.34

Out of disrespect eating much curry only ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 35

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.35

Out of disrespect eating almsfood having chosen from the top ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 36

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.36

Out of disrespect covering up the curry or the condiment with conjei ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 37

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.37

Out of disrespect eating curry or conjei having asked for it for oneself if one is not ill ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 38

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.38

Out of disrespect looking at the bowls of others captious-mindedly ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 39

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.39

Out of disrespect making up a large mouthful ... wrong-doing.

MONKS' SEKHIYA 40

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.40

Out of disrespect making up a long morsel (of food) ... wrong-doing.

The Fourth Division: that on Almsfood

DIVISION 5: ON THE MOUTHFUL

MONKS' SEKHIYA 41

Out of disrespect opening the mouth when the mouthful has not been brought close ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.41

MONKS' SEKHIYA 42

Out of disrespect putting the whole hand into the mouth when one is eating ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.42

MONKS' SEKHIYA 43

Out of disrespect talking with a mouthful in the mouth ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.43

MONKS' SEKHIYA 44

Out of disrespect eating while tossing up balls of food ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.44

MONKS' SEKHIYA 45-50

Out of disrespect eating while breaking up the mouthfuls ... stuffing the cheeks ... shaking the hands about ... scattering lumps of boiled rice ... putting out the tongue ... smacking the lips ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.45

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.46

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.47

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.48

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.49

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.50

The Fifth Division: that on the Mouthful

DIVISION 6: ON HISSING

MONKS' SEKHIYA 51-54

Out of disrespect eating while making a Out hissing sound ... licking the fingers ... licking the bowl ... licking the lips wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.51

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.52

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.53

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.54

BD.6.70

MONKS' SEKHIYA 55

Out of disrespect accepting a drinking cup with one's hands soiled (with food) ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.55

MONKS' SEKHIYA 56

Out of disrespect throwing out amid the houses the rinsings of the bowl with lumps of boiled rice ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.56
Vin.5.46

MONKS' SEKHIYA 57-60

Out of disrespect teaching *Dhamma* to someone with a sunshade in his hand ... with a staff in his hand ... with a knife in his hand ... with a weapon in his hand ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.57
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.58
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.59
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.60

The Sixth Division: that on Hissing

DIVISION 7: ON SHOES

MONKS' SEKHIYA 61-72

Out of disrespect teaching *Dhamma* to someone who is wearing shoes ... wearing sandals ... in a vehicle ... on a bed ... who is sitting down lolling ... has a turban on his head ... whose head is muffled up ... who is sitting on a seat when one is sitting on the ground ... who is sitting on a high seat when one is sitting on a low seat ... who is sitting when one is standing ... who is walking in front when one is walking behind ... who is walking along a path when one is walking at the side of the path ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.61
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.62
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.63
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.64
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.65
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.66
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.67
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.68
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.69
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.70
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.71
Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.72

MONKS' SEKHIYA 73

Out of disrespect easing oneself when one is standing ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.73

MONKS' SEKHIYA 74

Out of disrespect easing oneself or spitting on green corn ... wrong-doing.

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.74

MONKS' SEKHIYA 75

Prv.1.2:Bu-Sk.75

Out of disrespect easing oneself or spitting in water how many offences does he fall into? Out of disrespect easing himself ... he falls into one offence: wrong-doing. Out of disrespect easing himself ... he falls into this one offence.

The Seventh Division: that on Shoes

Concluded are the Rules for Training

Concluded is the Second Chapter: on How Many Offences?

1.3. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON FALLING AWAY

Prv.1.3

BD.6.71

Of the four fallings away¹ how many fallings away do the offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse appertain to? Of the four fallings away the offences for indulging in sexual intercourse appertain to two fallings away: there may be falling away from moral habit; there may be falling away from good behaviour ...

Of the four fallings away how many fallings away does the offence of easing oneself or spitting in water out of disrespect appertain to? Of the four fallings away the offence of easing oneself or spitting in water out of disrespect appertains to one falling away: the falling away from good behaviour.

Concluded is the Third Chapter: that on Falling Away

¹ On *vipatti*, falling away, see above, [BD.6.2](#), [n.3](#).

1.4. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON COMPRISED IN

Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are the offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse comprised? Of the seven classes of offence the offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse are comprised in three classes of offence¹: it may be the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be the class of offence of wrong-doing ...

Prv.1.4

Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence is the offence of easing oneself ... out of disrespect comprised? ... It is comprised in one class of offence: in the class of offence of wrong-doing.

Vin.5.47

Concluded is the Fourth Chapter: that on Comprised In

¹ The number of offences a monk can fall into for breach of a rule of training is to be enumerated above, [BD.6.49](#), for each and every rule of training.

1.5. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON ORIGINS

Prv.1.5

Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do the offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse originate? ... They originate by one origin: they originate by body and by mind, not by voice ...

Of the six origins of offences by how many origins does the offence of easing oneself ... out of disrespect originate? ... It originates by one origin: it originates by body and by mind, not by voice.

Concluded is the Fifth Chapter: that on Origins

1.6. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON LEGAL QUESTIONS

Of the four legal questions which legal question (is raised by), offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse? ... Of the four legal questions it is the legal question concerning offences.

Prv.1.6

The offence of easing oneself ... is, of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the four legal questions it is the legal question concerning offences.

BD.6.72

Concluded is the Sixth Chapter: that on Legal Questions

1.7. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON DECIDING

Prv.1.7

Of the seven (ways for) the deciding (of a legal question) by how many decidings are the offences for one indulging in sexual intercourse stopped? ... they are stopped by three deciding: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement; it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass.

... by how many decidings is the offence of easing oneself ... stopped? ... It is stopped by three decidings ... (*as above*).

Concluded is the Seventh Chapter: that on Deciding

1.8. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON ACCUMULATION

Indulging in sexual intercourse how many offences does one fall into?
Indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into three offences.¹ Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to? Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are they comprised? Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do they originate? Of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the seven decidings by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be that of falling away from moral habit, it may be that of falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in three classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat, it may be in the class of offence that is a very grave one, it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by one origin: they originate by body and by mind, not by speech. Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven decidings they are stopped by three deciding: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass

Prv.1.8
Vin.5.48

Easing oneself or spitting in water out of disrespect, how many offences does he fall into? ... into one offence: wrong-doing. Easing himself ... he falls into this one offence. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away does this offence appertain to ... (*as above; instead of* do they originate *read* does it originate) ... by which deciding is it stopped? Of the four fallings away this offence appertains to one falling away: that from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence it is comprised under one class of offence:

BD.6.73

¹ As at [Vin.5.33](#).

under the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins ... (*as above*) ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

*Concluded is the Eighth Chapter: that on Accumulation*¹

These eight Chapters are written in a manner for repetition

THEIR SUMMARY

The laying-down-where,²
And how many, falling-away, and about comprising,
Origin, legal questions, decidings, and about accumulation.

¹ Or, Conjunction (*samuccaya*), as at [Vin.2.72](#). ² This refers to [Vin.5.1-32](#); “how many” to [BD.6.32-46](#).

1.9. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON LAYING-DOWN-WHERE

PĀRĀJIKA

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 1

Where was that offence involving Defeat because of indulging in sexual intercourse laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One? Concerning whom? On what subject? ... By whom was it conveyed? Where was that offence involving Defeat because of indulging in sexual intercourse laid down ... ? ... It was laid down in Vesālī ... (see [Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1](#)) ... He originates it by one origin—he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech ... By whom has it been conveyed? It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):

Prv.1.9:Bu-Pj.1

Vin.5.49

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka, similarly Siggava,
With Moggali's son as fifth—
these in the glorious (is)land of Jambusiri— ...

These sinless sages of great wisdom,
knowing the Vinaya and skilled in the Way,
Proclaimed the Vinaya-piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 2

Where was that offence involving Defeat because of taking what had not been given laid down by that Lord ... ? It was laid down in Rājagaha ... (see [Prv.1.1](#)) ... it may be that he originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

BD.6.74
Prv.1.9:Bu-Pj.2

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKĀ 3

Prv.1.9:Bu-Pj.3

Where was that offence involving Defeat because of intentionally depriving a human being of life laid down? It was laid down in Vesālī ... he originates it by ... mind.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKĀ 4

Prv.1.9:Bu-Pj.4

Where was that offence involving Defeat because of laying claim (for oneself) to a non-existent, non-actual state of further-men laid down? It was laid down in Vesālī ... he originates it by ... mind.

*SAṄGHĀDISESA**MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1*

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.1

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of emitting semen making an effort laid down by that Lord ... ? Concerning whom? On what subject? ... By whom has it been conveyed? Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of emitting semen making an effort laid down by that Lord ... ? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... not by speech ... By whom has it been conveyed? It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):

Upāli, Dāsaka ...

... in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.2

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of coming into physical contact with a woman laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... he originates it ... not by speech.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.3

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because offending a woman with lewd words laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.4

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of speaking in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for (him)self in the presence of a woman laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.5

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of acting as a go-between laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.6

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of Order because of having a hut built begging for it oneself laid down? It was laid down in Āḷavī ... He originates it by the six origins.

BD.6.75
Vin.5.50

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 7

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.7

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of having a large *vihāra* built laid down? It was laid down in Kosambī ... He originates it by the six origins.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 8

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.8

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat laid down? It was laid down in Rājagaha ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 9

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.9

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of defaming a monk with a charge of an offence involving Defeat taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else, laid down? It was laid down in Rājagaha ... He originates it by three origins.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.10

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order with up to three times admonishing a schismatic monk because of his not giving up (his course) laid down? It was laid down in Rājagaha ... and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.11

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order with up to three times admonishing monks who were throwing in their lot with a schism because of their not giving up (their course) laid down? It was laid down in Rājagaha ... and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.12

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order with up to three times admonishing a monk who was difficult to speak to because of his not giving up (his course) laid down? It was laid down in Kosambī ... and by mind.

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.1.9:Bu-Ss.13

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order with up to three times admonishing a monk who had bought a family into disrepute because of his not giving up (his course) laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattihī ... and by mind. ...

SEKHIYA

MONKS' SEKHIYA 75

Where was that offence of Wrong-doing because of, out of disrespect, easing oneself or spitting in water laid down? It was laid down in Sāvattḥi. Concerning whom? Concerning the group of six monks. On what subject? On the subject of the group of six monks easing themselves and spitting in water. One laying down, one supplementary laying down. Of the six origins of offences he originates it by one origin: he originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

Prv.1.9:Bu-Sk.75

BD.6.76

Concluded is the Chapter¹ on Laying-Down-Where

¹ The corresponding Chapter in the Bhikkhunīvibhaṅga (Vin.5.83) is called “The first Chapter”.

1.10. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON HOW MANY OFFENCES?

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 1

Prv.1.10:Bu-Pj.1
Vin.5.51

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse how many offences does one fall into? Because of indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into four offences. If one indulges in sexual intercourse with a body that is not decayed ...¹ ... offence of wrong-doing; in an application of lac there is an offence of Expiation.² Because of indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into these four offences.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 2

Prv.1.10:Bu-Pj.2

Because of taking what has not been given ... one falls into three offences³ ... of wrong-doing. Because of taking what has not been given one falls into these three offences.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 3

Prv.1.10:Bu-Pj.3

Because of intentionally depriving a human being of life ... one falls into three offences ... involving Defeat. Because of intentionally depriving a human being of life one falls into these three offences.

MONKS' PĀRĀJIKA 4

Prv.1.10:Bu-Pj.4

Because of laying claim (for oneself) to a non-existent, non-actual state of further-men ... one falls into three offences ... of wrong-doing. Because of laying claim ... one falls into these three offences.

SAṄGHĀDISESA

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Because of emitting semen making an effort ... one falls into three offences ...

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.1

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Because of coming into physical contact (with a woman) ... one falls into five offences. If a nun, filled with desire, consents to taking hold of a man who is filled with desire above the circle of the knees there is an offence involving Defeat.¹ If a monk rubs (her) body with (his body) there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order. If he rubs an article of clothing (of hers) with (his) body there is a grave offence. If he rubs an article of clothing (of hers) with an article of clothing (of his) there is an offence of wrong-doing. In tickling with the fingers there is an offence of Expiation.² Because of coming into physical contact one falls into these five offences.

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.2

BD.6.77

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Because of offending a woman with lewd words one falls into three offences ...

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.3

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Because of speaking in praise of sense-pleasures for oneself one falls into three offences ...

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.4

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5-12

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.5

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.6

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.7

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.8

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.9

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.10

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.11

Prv.1.10.Ss12

Because of acting as a go-between ... of begging for having a hut built for oneself ... of having a large *vihāra* built ... of defaming a monk ... of not giving up (his, their, course) one falls into three offences ...

MONKS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.1.10:Bu-Ss.13

Because of not giving up his course a monk who brings a family into dispute, though being admonished up to three times falls into three offences: following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; following the two resolutions there is a grave offence; following the conclusion of the (three) resolutions there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ...

SEKHIYA

MONKS' SEKHIYA 75

Prv.1.10:Bu-Sk.75

Vin.5.52

Because of, out of disrespect, easing oneself or spitting in water how many offences does one fall into?¹ Because of, out of disrespect ... one falls into one offence: wrong-doing. Because of, out of disrespect ... one falls into this one offence.

Concluded is the Second Chapter: on How Many Offences?

¹ See [Vin.5.33](#) where, however, one is said to fall into three offences. ² This is Nuns' [Bi-Pc.4](#). ³ See [Vin.5.33](#); and likewise for the following paragraphs. ¹ This is part of Nuns' [Bi-Pj.5](#). ² This is Monks' [Bu-Pc.52](#). ¹ See [Vin.5.44-46](#).

1.11. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON FALLING AWAY

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse, of the four fallings away how many fallings do the offences appertain to? Because of ... appertain to two fallings away ... there may be falling away from moral habit; there may be falling away from good behavior ...

Prv.1.11

Because of, out of disrespect ... spitting in water, of the four fallings away how many fallings away does the offence appertain to? ... of one falling away: falling away from good behaviour.

Concluded is the Third Chapter: that on Falling Away

1.12. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON COMPRISED IN

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse, of the seven asses of offence in how many classes of offence are the offences comprised? Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in four classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence that is a very grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation¹; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing ...

Prv.1.12

BD.6.78

Because of, out of disrespect ... spitting in water² ... in the class of offence of wrong-doing.

¹ The three other offences but not this one are given at [Vin.5.33](#), [BD.6.46](#), [BD.6.47](#). ² See text [Prv1.4](#).

Concluded is the Fourth Chapter: on Comprised In

1.13. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON ORIGINS

Prv.1.13

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse, of the six origins of offences by how many origins¹ ...

Concluded is the Fifth Chapter: that on Origins

1.14. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON LEGAL QUESTIONS

Prv.1.14

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse, of the four legal questions²

...

Concluded is the Sixth Chapter: that on Legal Questions

1.15. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON DECIDING

Prv.1.15

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse, of the seven (ways for) the deciding (of a legal question) by how many deciding³ ...

¹ See text Prv.1.5. ² See text Prv.1.6. ³ See text Prv.1.7.

Concluded is the Seventh Chapter: that on Deciding

1.16. MONKS' ANALYSIS: ON ACCUMULATION

Because of indulging in sexual intercourse how many offences does one fall into? Because of indulging in sexual intercourse one falls into four offences: if one indulges in sexual intercourse with a body that is not decayed ...¹ ... offence of Expiation. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to² ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be that of falling away from moral habit, it may be that of falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised under four classes of offence: it may be under the class of offence involving Defeat, it may be under the class of offence that is a very grave one, it may be under the class of offence of Expiation, it may be under the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences ...³ ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.1.16

Vin.5.53

BD.6.79

Concluded is the Eighth Chapter: that on Accumulation

Concluded are the eight Chapters on Because Of

Concluded are the sixteen great Chapters in the Great Synopsis in the Great Analysis

¹ See Prv.1.10:Bu-Pj.1 just above. ² See text Prv.1.8. ³ See text Prv.1.8 down to the end of that Chapter.

2.1. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON LAYING-DOWN-WHERE

PĀRĀJIKA

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 5

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pj.5
Vin.5.54
BD.6.80

Where was that which is the fifth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One? ... (see [Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1](#). *Instead of* of the five recitations of the Pātimokkha *read* of the four recitations of the Pātimokkha) ... Because of how many reasons was the fifth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by the Lord? Who train themselves? Who have trained themselves in the training? In what state? Who know by heart? Whose is the Utterance? By whom has it been conveyed

“Where was that which is the fifth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by that Lord ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī.¹

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the nun Sundarīnandā.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the consenting by the nun Sundarīnandā who was filled with desire to physical contact with a man who was filled with desire.

“Is there there a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down that has not (yet) occurred?” There is one laying down,² for it there is no supplementary laying down nor a laying down that has not (yet) occurred.

¹ [Vin.4.211](#). This is Nuns' [Bi-Pj.5](#). ² [Vin.4.213](#).

“A laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts?” A laying down (that holds good) everywhere.

“A laying down that is shared, a laying down that is not shared?” A laying down that is not shared.

“A laying down for one (Order), a laying down for both (Orders)?” A laying down for one (Order).

“Plunged into which, included in which of the four recitations of the Pātimokkha ...” (see Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1) ...

“Because of how many reasons was the fifth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by the Lord?” Because of ten reasons was the fifth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by the Lord: for the excellence of the Order ... (see Prv.1.1:Bu-Pj.1. *Instead of of men and of monks read of nuns*) ... for help with Discipline.

BD.6.81

“Who train themselves?” Learners and ordinary women who are morally good.

“Who have trained themselves in the training?” Arahants have trained themselves in the training.

“In what state?” The state of desiring the training.

“Who know by heart?” Those who know by heart the procedure of these.

“Whose is the Utterance?” It is the Utterance of the Lord, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One.

“By whom has it been conveyed?” It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka ...

Vin.5.55

Proclaimed the Vinaya-piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKĀ 6

“Where was that which is the sixth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down by that Lord ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī.¹

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pj.6

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the nun Thullanandā.

¹ Vin.4.216.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the nun Thullanandā who, knowing that a nun had fallen into an offence involving Defeat, neither herself reproved her nor spoke to a group.

One laying down.

Of the six origins of offences she originates it by one origin: she originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 7

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pj.7

“Where was that which is the seventh offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī.¹ ... Concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā imitated the monk Ariṭṭha who formerly had been a vulture-trainer and had been suspended by a complete Order ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 8

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pj.8

“Where was that which is the eighth offence involving Defeat for nuns laid down ... ?” It was laid down in Sāvattihī² ... Concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns carried out the eighth action³ ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

BD.6.82

Concluded are the eight Offences involving Defeat

ITS SUMMARY

Unchastity, taking what is not given,
and the form of men those who are further,
Physical contact, she conceals,⁴ suspended (monks), a doer of eight things—
The Great Hero laid down (these for nuns who) without doubt must be destroyed.⁵

¹ Vin.4.218. ² Vin.4.220. ³ *aṭṭhamarī vatthum*, where Vin.4.221 reads *aṭṭhavatthukā*. Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 160 explains, however, how it is that there is Defeat only in the eighth action, other seven being grave offences or those of wrong-doing. ⁴ This refers to the last word in the *sikkhāpada* of Bi-Pj.5, *vajjapaṭicchādikā*, one who conceals a fault (in someone else). ⁵ Cf. Vin.5.4.

SAṄGHĀDISESA

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by that Lord ... for a nun who speaks in envy (and) brings a law-suit? Concerning whom? On what subject? ... By whom has it been conveyed?

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.1

“Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order laid down by that Lord ... for a nun who speaks in envy (and) brings a law-suit?” It was laid down in Sāvattḥī.¹

“Concerning whom?” Concerning the nun Thullanandā.

“On what subject?” On the subject of the nun Thullanandā's being one who spoke in envy.

“Is there there ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-Pj.5. *Instead of* by the second recital, the Defeat class of offence (as in Monks' Bu-Pj.1) read by the third recital, the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order) ... She originates it by two origins: it may be that she originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech and by mind ...

Vin.5.56

“By whom has it been conveyed?” It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):

Upāli, Dāsaka, as well as Soṇaka ...

Proclaimed the Vinaya-piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for receiving a woman thief ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā received a woman thief ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins: it may be that she originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.2
BD.6.83

¹ Vin.4.224. ² Vin.4.226.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.3

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for going among villages alone ... was laid down in Sāvattihī¹ ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun went among villages alone ... One laying down, three supplementary layings down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.4

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for restoring a nun suspended by a complete Order without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings in accordance with the rule, the discipline, the Teacher's instruction, and not having learnt the group's desire ... was laid down in Sāvattihī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā restored a nun suspended by a complete Order without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings in accordance with the rule, the discipline, the Teacher's instruction, and not having learnt the group's desire ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.5

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for a nun who is filled with desire accepting solid food or soft food with her own hand from the hand of a man who is filled with desire ... was laid down in Sāvattihī³ ... concerning the nun Sundarīnandā ... The nun Sundarīnandā who was filled with desire accepted food⁴ from the hand of a man who was filled with desire ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.6

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for instigating (a nun), saying, "What can this man, whether he is filled with desire or is not filled with desire, do to you, lady, since you are not filled with desire? Please, lady, eat or partake of the solid food or the soft food which this man is giving to you accepting it with your own hand" ... was laid down Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun instigated, saying, "What can ... with your own hand." One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

BD.6.84

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for an angry nun who does not give up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī² ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī ... The nun Caṇḍakālī, angry, displeased, spoke thus, "I repudiate the Buddha, I repudiate *Dhamma*, I repudiate the Order, I repudiate the training ..." ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.10

Vin.5.57

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for a nun who has been overthrown in some legal question and does not give up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī³ ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī ... The nun Caṇḍakālī, overthrown in some legal question, angry, displeased, spoke thus, "The nuns are following a wrong course through partiality and the nuns are following a wrong course through hatred and the nuns are following a wrong course through confusion and the nuns are following a wrong course through fear" ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.11

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.12

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for nuns who are living in company and do not give up (their course) though being admonished up to the third time ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns were living in company ... One laying down ... They originate it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.2.1:Bi-Ss.13

BD.6.85

The offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for (a nun who is) instigating (nuns), saying, “Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise,” and does not give up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā instigated (nuns) saying, “Ladies, live you as though in company ... ” ... One laying down ... She originates by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Concluded are the ten Offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order

ITS SUMMARY

Envy, woman thief, among the villages, suspended, and about solid food, “What to you?”, angry, some, company, and on another—these ten.³

NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 1

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.1

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for making a hoard of bowls was laid down by that Lord ... at Sāvattḥī⁴ ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns made a hoard of bowls ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁵

¹ Vin.4.228f. ² Vin.4.231. ³ Vin.4.233. ⁴ *āmisa*, a word not in the relevant part of Vin.4. ¹ Vin.4.234. ² Vin.4.236. ³ Vin.4.238. ¹ Vin.4.239. ² Vin.4.241. ³ For the total of 17 offences of this class for nuns, against 13 for monks, BD.3.212, n.1. ⁴ Vin.4.243.

⁵ See Vin.5.88; and Monks' Bu-NP.1.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 2

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for thinking robe-material (given) not at the right time was robe-material (given) at the right time, and having allotted it, having it distributed ... was laid down in Sāvattihī¹ ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, thinking that robe-material (given) not at the right time was robe-material (given) at the right time, allotting it, had it distributed ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.2

Vin.5.58

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 3

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for tearing away a robe that has been exchanged with a nun ... was laid down in Sāvattihī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having exchanged a robe with a nun, tore it away (from her) ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.3

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 4

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for after having asked for one thing then asking for another ... was laid down in Sāvattihī³ ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having asked for one thing, asked for another ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.4

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 5

... for after getting one thing in exchange getting another in exchange ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-NP₄) ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.5
BD.6.86

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 6

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for getting something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, (and) belonging to an Order ... was laid down

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.6

¹ Vin.4.246. ² Vin.4.247. ³ Vin.4.249.

in Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns got something in exchange ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.7

... for getting something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to an Order (and) that she herself had asked for ...

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.8

... for getting something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to a company ...

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 9

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.9

... for getting something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to a company (and) that she herself had asked for ...

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 10

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.10

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for getting something in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, belonging to an individual ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā got something in exchange for that which was necessary ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.11

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for bargaining³ for a heavy cloth (worth) more than four "bronzes" ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī⁴ ...

¹ Vin.4.251. ² Vin.4.254. ³ On *cetāpeti* here more probably meaning to bargain than to get in exchange, see BD.3.239, n.1. ⁴ Vin.4.255.

concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā asked the king for a woollen garment ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 12

The offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture for bargaining for a light cloth (worth) more than two and a half “bronzes” ... was laid down in Sāvatti¹ ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā asked the king for a linen garment ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-NP.12

Vin.5.59

BD.6.87

Concluded are the twelve Offences of Expiation involving Forfeiture

ITS SUMMARY

Bowl, and not-the-right-and-the-right-time,
in exchange, she asked,
Having got in exchange, necessary,
and belonging to an Order, a company,
Herself asking, belonging to an individual,
four “bronzes”, two and a half.

PĀCITTIYA

DIVISION 1: ON GARLIC

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 1

The offence of Expiation for eating garlic was laid down by the Lord ... in Sāvatti² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, not knowing moderation, had much garlic taken away ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.³

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.1

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 2

The offence of Expiation for letting the hair of the body grow ... was laid down in Sāvatti⁴ ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.2

¹ Vin.4.256. ² Vin.4.259. ³ Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.16. ⁴ Vin.4.260.

nuns let the hair of the body grow ... One laying down ... She originates it by four origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 3

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.3

The offence of Expiation for slapping with the hands ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning two nuns ... Two nuns slapped with the palms of their hands ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.4

The offence of Expiation for an application of lac ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun took an application of lac ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.5

The offence of Expiation for taking an ablution with water consisting of more than (a measure of) two finger-joints ... was laid down among the Sakyans¹ ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun took a very deep ablution with water ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.6

BD.6.88

The offence of Expiation for standing with drinking water or with a fan close to a monk while he is eating ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun stood with drinking water and with a fan close to a monk while he was eating ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.³

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.7
Vin.5.60

The offence of Expiation for eating raw grain, having asked for it ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns ate raw grain, having asked for it ... One laying down ... She originates it by four origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.8

The offence of Expiation for throwing out excrement or urine or rubbish or the remains of food over a wall ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun threw out excrement and urine and rubbish and the remains of food over a wall ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 9

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.9

The offence of Expiation for throwing out excrement or urine or rubbish or the remains of food on to the crops ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns threw out excrement and ... the remains of food on to the crops ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 10

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.10

The offence of Expiation for going to see dancing and singing and music ... was laid down in Rājagaha ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns went to see dancing and singing and music ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

The First Division: that on Garlic

DIVISION 2: ON THE DARK OF THE NIGHT

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.11

The offence of Expiation for standing together with a man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there is no light ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun stood together with a man, the one with the other ... when there was no light ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Caravan set on theft.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 12

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.12
BD.6.89

... for standing together with a man ... in a secluded place ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 13

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.13

... for standing together with a man ... in an open place ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 14

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.14

The offence of Expiation for standing together with a man, the one with the other, on a carriage-road or in a cul-de-sac or at a cross-roads ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā stood together with a man, the one with the other, on a carriage-road and in a cul-de-sac and at a cross-roads ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Caravan set on theft.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 15

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.15

Vin.5.61

The offence of Expiation for departing without asking the owner (for permission) after having approached families before a meal and having sat down on a seat ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun departed without asking the owner ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.³

¹ Vin.4.262. ² Vin.5.87. ³ Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.16. ¹ Vin.4.265. ² Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.16. ¹ Vin.4.268. ² Monks' Bu-Pc.66; and see Vin.5.89. ³ Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.1.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 16

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.16

The offence of Expiation for sitting down on a seat without asking the owner (for permission) after having approached families after a meal ... was laid down in Sāvattthī¹ ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā sat down ... after a meal ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.17

The offence of Expiation for sitting down on a sleeping-place which she has spread or has caused to be spread without asking the owner (for permission), after having approached families at the wrong time ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns sat down on a sleeping-place which they had spread without asking the owner ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.³

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.18

The offence of Expiation for making (someone) look down on another because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun made (someone) look down on another because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.19
BD.6.90

The offence of Expiation for cursing oneself or another with Niraya or with the Brahma-faring ... was laid down in Sāvattthī⁴ ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī ... The nun Caṇḍakālī cursed herself and another with Niraya and with the Brahma-faring ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.20

The offence of Expiation for weeping, having struck oneself again and again ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī ... The nun Caṇḍakālī wept, having struck herself again and again ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

The Second Division: that on the Dark of the Night

DIVISION 3: ON BATHING

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 21

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.21

The offence of Expiation for bathing naked ... was laid down in Sāvattihī¹ ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns bathed naked ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 22

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.22

The offence of Expiation for having a bathing-cloth made exceeding the (proper) measure ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns wore bathing cloths that were not of the (proper) measure ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 23

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.23

Vin.5.62

The offence of Expiation for neither sewing nor making an effort to get sewn a nun's robe that she has unsewn or caused to be unsewn ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā neither sewed nor made an effort to get sewn a nun's robe ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off the responsibility.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 24

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.24

The offence of Expiation for missing going about in an outer cloak for five days ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns, having entrusted the robe to the hands of (other) nuns, set out on a tour of the country with (only) the inner and the upper robes ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭṭhina*-cloth.¹

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 25

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.25

The offence of Expiation for wearing a robe that should be handed back ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun, without asking (for permission), put on the robe of a certain (other) nun ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭṭhina*-cloth.

BD.6.91

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 26

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.26

The offence of Expiation for putting an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robe-material ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī² ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā put an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robe-material ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 27

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.27

The offence of Expiation for holding back a legally valid division of robe-material ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā held back a legally valid division of robe-material ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 28

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.28

The offence of Expiation for giving recluses' robe-material to a householder or a wanderer or a female wanderer ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... con-

¹ Vin.4.273. ² Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.1. ³ Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.1.
⁴ Vin.4.276. ¹ Vin.4.278. ² Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.16. ¹ Vin.5.88 and Monks' Bu-NP.1. ² Vin.4.283.

cerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā gave recluses' robe-material to a householder ... One laying down ... She originates it by the six origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 29

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.29

The offence of Expiation for letting the robe-season pass when an expectation of robe-material is not sure ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā let the robe-season pass when an expectation of robe-material was not sure ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.30

Vin.5.63

The offence of Expiation for holding back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā held back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

*The Third Division: that on Bathing*¹

DIVISION 4: ON SHARING

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 31

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.31

BD.6.92

The offence of Expiation for the sharing of one couch by two nuns ... was laid down in Sāvattihī² ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns, in twos, shared one couch ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.³

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 32

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.32

The offence of Expiation for the sharing of one covering-cloth by two nuns ... was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns, in

¹ *nhānavaggo* against *naggavaggo* at Vin.4.288. ² Vin.4.289. ³ Vin.5.88.

twos, shared one covering cloth ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.¹

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 33

The offence of Expiation for intentionally causing discomfort to a nun ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā intentionally caused discomfort to a nun ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.33

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 34

The offence of Expiation for neither attending to an ailing (woman) who lived with her nor making an effort to get her attended to ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā neither attended to an ailing (woman) who lived with her nor made an effort to get her attended to ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.34

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 35

The offence of Expiation for, after one has given quarters to a nun, then angry, displeased, throwing her out ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having given quarters to a nun, then angry, displeased, threw her out ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.35

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 36

The offence of Expiation for a nun who keeps company (and) does not give up (her course) though admonished up to the third time ... was laid down in Sāvattthī² ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī ... The nun Caṇḍakālī lived in company ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.36

¹ Vin.5.88. ² Vin.4.294.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 37

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.37

Vin.5.64

The offence of Expiation for walking without a weapon on almstour within (her own) region (when this is) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns walked without a weapon on almstour within (their own) region (when it was; agreed upon as dangerous, frightening ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.¹

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 38

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.38

BD.6.93

The offence of Expiation for walking ... outside (her own) region ... (see [Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.37](#)).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 39

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.39

The offence of Expiation for walking on almstour during the rains ... was laid down in Rājagaha ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns walked on almstour during the rains ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 40

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.40

The offence of Expiation for a nun not setting out on almstour after she has kept the rains ... was laid down in Rājagaha ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns did not set out on almstour after they had kept the rains ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.³

The Fourth Division: that on Sharing

DIVISION 5: ON A PICTURE-GALLERY

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 41

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.41

The offence of Expiation for going to see a king's pleasure house or a picture gallery or a park or a pleasure grove or a lotus pond ... was laid down in

¹ Vin.5.88. ² Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.5.87.

Sāvattī¹ ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns went to see a king's pleasure house and a picture gallery ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 42

The offence of Expiation for making use of a sofa or a divan ... was laid down in Sāvattī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns made use of a sofa and a divan ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.³

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.42

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 43

The offence of Expiation for spinning yarn ... was laid down in Sāvattī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns spun yarn ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.⁴

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.43

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 44

The offence of Expiation for doing household work ... was laid down in Sāvattī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns did household work ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.⁵

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.44

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 45

The offence of Expiation for when one is being spoken to by a nun, saying, "Come, lady, and settle this legal question," and having answered, "Very good," but neither settling it nor making an effort to get it settled ... was laid down in Sāvattī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, on being spoken to by a nun, saying, "Come, lady ..." and having answered, "Very good" (yet) neither settled it nor made an effort to get it settled ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.45

BD.6.94

Vin.5.65

¹ Vin.4.298. ² Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.5.88. ⁴ Vin.5.88. ⁵ Vin.5.88.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 46

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.46

The offence of Expiation for giving with one's own hand solid food or soft food to a householder or to a wanderer or to a female wanderer ... was laid down in Sāvattthī¹ ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā with her own hand gave solid food and soft food to a householder One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 47

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.47

The offence of Expiation for not having given up a household robe but making use of it ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, not having given up a household robe, made use of it ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.³

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 48

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.48

The offence of Expiation for setting out on almstour without having given up her dwelling ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā set out on almstour without having given up her dwelling ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.⁴

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 49

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.49

The offence of Expiation for learning worldly knowledge ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns learnt worldly knowledge ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Dhamma*-line-by-line.⁵

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 50

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.50

The offence of Expiation for teaching worldly knowledge ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.49. *Instead of learnt read taught*) ...

¹ Vin.4.302. ² Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.5.88. ⁴ Vin.5.88. ⁵ Vin.5.89 and Monks' Bu-Pc.4.

The Fifth Division: that on a Picture-Gallery

DIVISION 6: ON A MONASTERY

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 51

The offence of Expiation for knowingly entering a monastery with monks (in it) without asking (for permission) ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns entered a monastery without asking (for permission) ... One laying down,¹ two supplementary layings down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.51

BD.6.95

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 52

The offence of Expiation for reviling and abusing a monk ... was laid down in Vesālī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns reviled the venerable Upāli ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.52

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 53

The offence of Expiation for being quick-tempered (and) abusing a group ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, being quick-tempered, abused a group ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.53

Vin.5.66

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 54

The offence of Expiation for partaking of solid food or soft food by (a nun) who had been invited or had been satisfied ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns who had eaten and were satisfied ate elsewhere ... One laying down ... She originates it by four origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.54

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 55

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.55

The offence of Expiation for being grudging as to families ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun was grudging as to families ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 56

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.56

The offence of Expiation for spending the rains in a residence where there is no monk ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns spent the rains in a residence where there was no monk ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.¹

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 57

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.57

The offence of Expiation for a nun who has kept the rains and does not "invite" both Orders in respect of three matters ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns, having kept the rains did not "invite" an Order of monks ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 58

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.58

The offence of Expiation for not going for exhortation or for communion ... was laid down among the Sakyans ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns did not go for exhortation ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 59

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.59

BD.6.96

The offence of Expiation for not asking (the date of) the Observance day and not approaching for exhortation ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns neither asked (the date of) the Observance day nor approached for exhortation ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

¹ Vin.4.306. ¹ Vin.5.88. ² Vin.5.87.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 60

The offence of Expiation for making burst, together with a man, the one with the other, a boil or a scab that has formed on the lower part of her body (and) without having obtained permission from an Order or a group ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun together with a man, the one with the other, made a boil burst that had formed on the lower part of her body ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Kaṭhina*-cloth.¹

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.60

The Sixth Division: that on a Monastery

DIVISION 7: ON A PREGNANT WOMAN

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 61

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a pregnant woman ... was laid down in Sāvattthī² ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns ordained a pregnant woman ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.61

Vin.5.67

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 62

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a woman who is giving suck ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.62

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 63

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a probationer who has not trained for two years in the six rules ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.63

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 64

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules but is not agreed on by the Order ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.64

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 65

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.65

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a girl married for less than twelve years ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 66

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.66

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a girl married for a full twelve years but who has not trained for two years in the six rules ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 67

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.67

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a girl married for a full twelve years and who has trained for two years in the six rules (but) is not agreed upon by the Order ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 68

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.68

BD.6.97

The offence of Expiation for (a nun who) having ordained the woman who lives with her (and then) for two years helping her nor having her helped ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having ordained the woman who lived with her, for two years neither helped her nor had her helped ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 69

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.69

The offence of Expiation for not waiting on an ordained woman instructor for two years ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns did not wait on an ordained woman instructor for two years ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin (as) in the first Defeat.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 70

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.70

The offence of Expiation for neither withdrawing nor having the woman who lives with her withdrawn after she has ordained her ... was laid down

¹ Vin.5.88. ² Vin.4.317.

in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having ordained the woman who lived with her, neither withdrew her nor had her withdrawn ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

The Seventh Division: that on a Pregnant Woman

DIVISION 8: ON A MAIDEN

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 71

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a maiden under twenty years of age¹ ... (see [Prv.2.1.Bi-Pc.61](#)).

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.71

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 72

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a maiden who has completed twenty years of age (but) has not trained for two years in the six rules ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.72

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 73

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a maiden who has completed twenty years of age and has trained for two years in the six rules but is not agreed upon by the Order ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.73
Vin.5.68

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 74

The offence of Expiation for ordaining while one is less than twelve years (of standing) ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns ordained while they were less than twelve years (of standing) ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.74

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 75

The offence of Expiation for ordaining by one who has completed twelve years (of standing but) is not agreed upon by the Order ... was laid down in

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.75

¹ [Vin.4.327](#).

Sāvattthī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns who had completed twelve years (of standing) ordained (though) they were not agreed upon by the Order ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

BD.6.98

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 76

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.76

The offence of Expiation for afterwards engaging in criticism when on being told, "You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being," and having answered, "Very good" ... Was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Caṇḍakālī. The nun Caṇḍakālī afterwards engaged in criticism when having been told, "You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the present," she had answered, "Very good" ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 77

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.77

The offence of Expiation for neither ordaining a probationer to whom she has said, "If you, lady, will give me a robe, I will ordain you," nor making an effort to get her ordained ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā, having said to a probationer, "If you, lady ... " (yet) neither ordained her nor made an effort to get her ordained ... One laying down ... She originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 78

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.78

The offence of Expiation for saying to a probationer, "If you, lady, will wait upon me for two years, I will ordain you" ... (see [Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.77](#)).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 79

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.79

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a probationer who is keeping company with men, keeping company with youths, who is violent, a dwelling-place of grief ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā ordained a probationer who kept company with men ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 80

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a probationer without the consent of (her) parents or (her) husband ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning the mm Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā ordained a probationer without the consent of (her) parents and (her) husband ... One laying down ... She originates it by four origins; it may be that she originates it by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.80

Vin.5.69

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 81

The offence of Expiation for ordaining a probationer by showing favouritism (to monks) placed on probation ... was laid down in Rājagaha ... concerning the nun Thullanandā ... The nun Thullanandā ordained a probationer by showing favouritism ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.81

BD.6.99

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 82

The offence of Expiation for ordaining every year ... was laid down in Sāvattthī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns ordained every year ... One laying down ... She originates it by three origins.

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.82

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 83

The offence of Expiation for ordaining two (probationers) in one year ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.82).

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.83

The Eighth Division: that on a Maiden

DIVISION 9: ON SUNSHADE AND SANDALS

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 84

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.84

The offence of Expiation for using a sunshade and sandals ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī¹ ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns used a sunshade and sandals ... One laying down, one supplementary laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.²

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 85

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.85

The offence of Expiation for going in a vehicle ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.84). Read went in a vehicle.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 86

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.86

The offence of Expiation for wearing a petticoat ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun wore a petticoat ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.³

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 87

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.87

The offence of Expiation for wearing women's ornaments ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group of six nuns wore women's ornaments ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.⁴

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 88

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.88

The offence of Expiation for bathing with perfume and paint ... (see Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.87).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 89

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.89

The offence of Expiation for bathing with scented ground sesamum ...

¹ Vin.4.337. ² Vin.5.88. ³ Vin.5.88. ⁴ Vin.5.88.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 90

The offence of Expiation for causing oneself to be rubbed (with ointment) and causing oneself to be massaged by a nun ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns caused themselves to be rubbed (with ointment), to be massaged by a nun ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in Sheep's wool.¹

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.90

BD.6.100

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 91

The offence of Expiation for causing oneself to be rubbed (with ointment) and causing oneself to be massaged by a probationer² ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.91

Vin.5.70

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 92

The offence of Expiation for causing oneself to be rubbed (with ointment) and causing oneself to be massaged by a female novice ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.92

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 93

The offence of Expiation for causing oneself to be rubbed (with ointment) and causing oneself to be massaged by a woman householder ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.93

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 94

The offence of Expiation for sitting down on a seat in front of a monk without asking (for permission) ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several nuns sat down on a seat in front of a monk without asking (for permission) ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in the *Kaṭhina*-cloth.³

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.94

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 95

The offence of Expiation for asking a question of a monk who has not given leave ... was laid down in Sāvattḥī ... concerning several nuns ... Several

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.95

¹ Vin.5.88. ² Vin.4.343. ³ Vin.5.88.

nuns asked a question of a monk who had not given leave ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins (as) in *Dhamma*-line-by-line.¹

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 96

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pc.96

The offence of Expiation for entering a village without (wearing) a vest ... was laid down in *Sāvattthī* ... concerning a certain nun ... A certain nun entered a village without (wearing) her vest ... One laying down ... She originates it by two origins: it may be that she originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by body and by mind, not by speech.

The Ninth Division: on Sunshade and Sandals

Concluded are the Nine Minor Divisions

ITS SUMMARY

Garlic, hair of the body, palm, application, ablution,
 While (he is) eating, of raw grains, two on the remains of food, seeing, /
 In the dark, in a secluded place, in an open place, and on a carriage-road,
 Before, after, and at the wrong time,
 misapprehension, with *Niraya*, having struck, /
 Naked, water, having sewn, for five days, to be handed back,
 Group, division, recluse, not sure,
 and about *kaṭhina* (privileges), /
 About one couch, and covering-cloth,
 intentionally, woman who lives with her,
 Having given, keeping company, within,
 and outside, rains, does not set out, /
 King, sofa, and yarn, household, and about a settlement,
 Should give, robe, dwelling, and learning, should teach, /
 Monastery, reviling, and quick-tempered,
 should partake of, grudging as to families,
 In a residence, Invitation, exhortation,
 two things, and about the lower part of the body, /
 A pregnant woman, one giving suck,
 six rules, not agreed upon, less than twelve,
 And a full (twelve), by the Order, with,
 ordained (woman), and five or six, /
 Maiden, and two, by the Order, twelve,

BD.6.101

Vin.5.71

¹ Vin.5.89.

and about being not agreed upon,
 Sufficiently, and "If", for two years,
 keeping company, by the husband, /
 Placed on probation, every year,
 and about ordaining two,
 Sunshade, in a vehicle, petticoat,
 women's ornaments, with paint, /
 Ground sesamum, and then a nun,
 and a probationer, a female novice,
 A woman householder, in front of a monk,
 leave not given, a vest. /

SUMMARY OF THESE DIVISIONS

Garlic, darkness, bathing, sharing, picture-gallery,
 Monastery, then pregnant woman,
 maidens, sunshade-and-sandals. /

PĀTIDESANĪYA

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 1

The offence to be Confessed for partaking of ghee, having had asked for ...
 was laid down in Sāvattihī ... concerning the group of six nuns ... The group
 of six nuns, having had gheeasked for, partook of it ... One laying down,¹
 one supplementary laying down ... She originates it by four origins.

Prv:Bu-Pd

BD.6.102

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 2

... oil, having had it asked for ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.2

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 3

... honey, having had it asked for ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.3

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 4

... molasses, having had it asked for ...

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.4

¹ Vin.4.347.

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 5

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.5

... fish, having had it asked for ...

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 6

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.6

... meat, having had it asked for ...

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 7

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.7

... milk, having had it asked for ...

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 8

Prv.2.1:Bi-Pd.8

... curds, having had them asked for ... She originates it by four origins: it may be that she originates it by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that she originates it by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that she originates it by body and by speech and by mind.

Concluded are the eight offences to be Confessed

ITS SUMMARY

Ghee, oil, and then honey, molasses, and so fish,
Meat, milk, and curds too, a nun having had (them) asked for:
The eight offences to be Confessed
were proclaimed by the Buddha Himself. /

*Having abridged those rules of training that were given in full in the Monks'
Analysis,
Concluded is the Chapter on Laying-down-Where in the Nuns' Analysis*

2.2. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON HOW MANY OFFENCES?

PĀRĀJIKA

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 5

Consenting to physical contact with a man who is filled with desire how many offences does a nun who is filled with desire fall into? Consenting ... a nun who is filled with desire falls into three offences: if she consents to taking hold of below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees, the offence is one involving Defeat; if she consents to a taking hold of above the collar-bone, below the circle of the knees, the offence is a grave one; if she consents to taking hold of something attached to the body, the offence is one of wrong-doing. These are the three offences that, consenting ... a nun who is fined with desire falls into.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pj.5

Vin.5.72

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 6

Concealing a fault, a nun who is one who conceals a fault ... falls into three offences: if she conceals, knowing the matter is one involving Defeat, the offence is one involving Defeat; if, being in doubt, she conceals, the offence is a grave one; if she conceals a falling away from good behaviour, the offence is one of wrong-doing. These are the three offences that, concealing a fault, a nun who is one who conceals a fault falls into.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pj.6

BD.6.103

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 7

Not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time, a nun who is an imitator of one who is suspended ... falls into three offences: following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; following the two resolutions there are grave offences; following the conclusion of the (three) resolutions the offence is one involving Defeat. These are the three offences that, though being admonished up to the third time, a nun who is an imitator of one who is suspended falls into.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pj.7

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 8

Completing the eighth thing ... she falls into three offences: if she is told by a man, "Come to such and such a place" and goes there, the offence is one of wrong-doing; in merely approaching the reach of the man's hand, the offence is a grave one; if she completes the eighth thing the offence is one involving Defeat.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pj.8

Concluded are the Offences involving Defeat

SAṄGHĀDISESA

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Bringing a law-suit, a nun who is one who speaks in envy falls into three offences: if she announces it to one (person) the offence is one of wrong-doing; if she announces it to a second the offence is a grave one; at the end of the law-suit the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.1

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Receiving a woman-thief she falls into three offences: following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; following the two resolutions there are grave offences; following the conclusion of the (three) resolutions the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.2

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Going alone among villages she falls into three offences: if she goes the offence is one of wrong-doing; if she makes the first foot cross the enclosure the offence is a grave one; if she makes the second foot cross the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.3

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Restoring a nun suspended by a complete Order, without having obtained permission from the Order, which carried out the proceedings in accordance with the rule, with Discipline with the Teacher's instruction, not having learnt the group's desire, she falls into three offences: following the motion. (see Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.2 above).

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.4

BD.6.104

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

A nun who is filled with desire, partaking of solid food or soft food that with her own hand she has accepted from the hand of a man who is filled with desire, falls into three offences: if she accepts it thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," the offence is a grave one; for every mouthful the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; if she accepts water for cleansing the teeth, the offence is one of wrong-doing.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.5

Vin.5.73

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

Instigating (by) saying, "What can this man, whether he is filled with desire or is not filled with desire, do to you, lady, since you are not filled with desire? Please, lady, eat or partake of the solid food or the soft food that this man is giving to you and that you have accepted with your own hand," she falls into three offences: if at her bidding she accepts thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of," the offence is one of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is a grave offence; at the end of the meal the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.6

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.10

Not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time, a nun who is angry falls into three offences: following the motion ... (see [Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.2](#)).

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.11

Not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time, a nun who is overthrown in some legal question falls into three offences: following the motion ...

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.12

Not giving up (their course) though being admonished up to the third time, nuns who live in company fall into three offences: following the motion ...

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.2.2:Bi-Ss.13

Not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time, (but) instigating (and) saying, "Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise," she falls into three offences: following the motion ...

Concluded are the Offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order

NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 1

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.1

Making a hoard of bowls she falls into one offence: that of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 2

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.2

BD.6.105

Thinking that robe-material (given) not at the right time is robe-material (given) at the right time, having it distributed after she has allotted it, she

falls into two offences: when she has it distributed, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when it has been distributed there is an offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 3

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.3

Tearing away a robe she has exchanged with (another) nun, she falls into two offences: when she tears it away, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has torn it away there is an offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.4

Having another thing asked for when she has had one thing asked for, she falls into two offences: when she has it asked for, in the action (request) there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has had it asked for there is an offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.5

Getting another thing in exchange when she has got one thing in exchange ... (see [Prv.2.2:Bi-NP4](#)).

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.6

Getting another thing in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, (and) belonging to an Order, she falls into two offences: as she gets it in exchange, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has got it in exchange there is an offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.7

Getting another thing in exchange for that which was necessary (and) appointed for another thing, destined for another thing, (and) belonging to an Order (and) that she herself had asked for belonging to a company ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.8

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.9

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.10

belonging to a company (and) that she herself had asked for ... belonging to an individual (and) that she herself had asked for ... (see [Prv.2.2:Bi-NP6](#)).

vin.5.74

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.11

Bargaining for a heavy cloth (worth) more than four “bronzes” she falls into two offences: when she bargains, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has bargained there is an offence of Expiation involving Forfeiture.

NUNS' NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA 12

Prv.2.2:Bi-NP.12

Bargaining for a light cloth (worth) more than two and a “bronzes”, she falls into two offences ...

Concluded are the Offences of Expiation involving Forfeiture

PĀCITTIYA

DIVISION 1: ON GARLIC

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 1

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.1

BD.6.106

Eating garlic she falls into two offences: if she accepts it thinking, “I will eat,” the offence is one of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 2

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.2

Letting the hair of the body grow she falls into two offences: when she lets it grow there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has let it grow there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 3

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.3

Slapping with the palms of the hands she falls into two offences: as she slaps, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has slapped there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 4

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.4

Taking an application of lac she falls into two offences: as she takes it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has taken it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 5

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.5

Taking an ablution with water consisting of more than (a measure of) two finger-joints she falls into two offences ... (see [Prv.2.2.Bi-Pc.4](#)).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 6

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.6

Standing with drinking water or with a fan close to a monk while he is eating she falls into two offences: if she stands within a reach of the hand there is an offence of Expiation; if she stands having left a reach of the hand there is an offence of wrong-doing.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 7

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.7

Eating raw grain having had it asked for she falls into two offences: if she accepts it, thinking, "I will partake of it," there is an offence of wrong-doing; for each mouthful there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 8

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.8

Throwing out excrement or urine or rubbish or the remains of food over a wall she falls into two offences: as she throws it out, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has thrown it out there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 9

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.9

Throwing out excrement ... or the remains of food on to the crops ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 10

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.10

Going to see dancing or singing or music she falls into two offences: as she goes there is an offence of wrong-doing, standing where she sees or hears there is an offence of Expiation.

The First Division: that on Garlic

DIVISION 2: ON THE DARK OF THE NIGHT

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 11

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.11

BD.6.107

Standing together with a man, the one with the other, in the dark of the night when there is no light she falls into two offences: if she stands within the reach of a hand there is an offence of Expiation; if she stands having left the reach of the hand there is an offence of wrong-doing.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 12

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.12

Standing together with a man, the one with the other, in a secluded place ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 13

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.13

Vin.5.75

Standing together with a man, the one with the other, in an open place ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 14

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.14

Standing together with a man, the one with the other, on a carriage-road or in a cul-de-sac or at a cross-roads ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 15

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.15

Departing without asking the owner (for permission) after having approached families before a meal she falls into two offences: if she lets the

first foot cross a place sheltered from the rain there is an offence of wrong-doing; if she lets the second foot cross there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 16

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.16

Sitting down on a seat without asking the owner (for permission) having approached families after a meal she falls into two offences: as she sits down, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 17

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.17

Sitting down on a sleeping-place which she has spread or has caused to be spread without asking the owner (for permission) after having approached families at a wrong time, she falls into two offences: as she sits down, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 18

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.18

Because of a misapprehension, because of a misunderstanding, making (someone) look down on another she falls into two offences: as she makes (someone) look down on, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has made (someone) look down on there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 19

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.19

Cursing herself or another with Niraya or with the Brahma-faring she falls into two offences: as she curses, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has cursed there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 20

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.20

Weeping, having struck herself again and again she falls into two offences: if she strikes and weeps there is an offence of Expiation; if she strikes (but) does not weep there is an offence of wrong-doing.

The Second Division: on the Dark of the Night

DIVISION 3: ON BATHING

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 21

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.21
BD.6.108

Bathing naked she falls into two offences: as she is bathing in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has bathed there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 22

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.22

Having a bathing-cloth made exceeding the (proper) measure she falls into two offences: as she is having it made, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has had it made there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 23

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.23

Neither sewing nor making an effort to get sewn a nun's robe that she has unsewn or caused to be unsewn, she falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 24

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.24

Missing going about in an outer cloak for five days ... one offence ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 25

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.25

Wearing a robe that should be handed back she falls into two offences: while she wears it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has worn it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 26

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.26

Putting an obstacle in the way of a group's receiving robe-material she falls into two offences: as she puts it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has put it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 27

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.27

Holding back a legally valid division of robe-material she falls into two offences: as she holds it back, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has held it back there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 28

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.28

Giving recluses' robe-material to a householder or a wanderer or a female wanderer she falls into two offences: as she is giving, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has given there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 29

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.29
Vin.5.76

Letting a robe-season pass when the expectation of robe-material is not sure she falls into two offences: as she lets it pass, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has let it pass there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 30

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.30

Holding back a legally valid removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) she falls into two offences ... (see Prv.2.2.Bi-Pc.27).

The Third Division: on Bathing

DIVISION 4: ON SHARING

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 31

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.31

Two nuns sharing one couch fall into two offences: as they lie down, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when they have lain down there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 32

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.32
BD.6.109

Two nuns sharing one covering-cloth ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 33

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.33

Intentionally causing discomfort to a nun she falls into two offences: as she causes it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has caused it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 34

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.34

Neither attending to an ailing (woman) who lives with her nor making an effort to get her attended to she falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 35

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.35

After giving quarters to a nun, theft being angry, displeased, throwing her out she falls into two offences: as she throws her out, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has thrown her out there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 36

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.36

Not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time a nun who keeps company falls into two offences: following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the resolutions there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 37

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.37

Walking without a weapon on almstour within (her own) region (when this is) agreed upon as dangerous, frightening she falls into two offences: as she goes along, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has gone along there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 38

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.38

Walking ... outside (her own) region ... (see Prv.2.2.Bi-Pc.37).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 39

Walking on almstour during the rains, she falls into two offences: as she goes along ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.39

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 40

Not setting out on almstour after she has kept the rains a nun falls into one offence: Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.40

The Fourth Division: on Sharing

DIVISION 5: ON A PICTURE-GALLERY

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 41

Going to see a king's pleasure house or a picture gallery or a park or a pleasure grove or a lotus pond, she falls into two offences: as she is going there is an offence of wrong-doing; standing where she sees there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.41

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 42

Making use of a sofa or a divan she falls into two offences: she makes use, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has made use there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.42

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 43

Spinning yam she falls into two offences: as she spins, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every running-up there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.43

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 44

Doing household work she falls into two offences: as she does it there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has done it there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.44
BD.6.110

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 45

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.45
Vin.5.77

When one is being spoken to by a nun, saying, "Come lady, settle this legal question," and having answered, "Very good," but neither settling it nor making an effort to get it settled, she falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 46

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.46

Giving with her own hand solid food or soft food to a householder or a wanderer or a female wanderer, she falls into two offences: as she gives it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has given it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 47

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.47

Making use of a household robe, not having given it up, she falls into two offences: as she makes use of it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has made use of it there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 48

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.48

Setting out on almstour without having given up her dwelling she falls into two offences: as she makes the first foot cross the enclosure there is an offence of wrong-doing; as she makes the second foot cross there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 49

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.49

Learning worldly knowledge she falls into two offences: as she learns, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every line there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 50

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.50

Teaching worldly knowledge she falls into two offences: as she teaches, in the action ...

The Fifth Division: on a Picture-Gallery

DIVISION 6: ON A MONASTERY

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 51

Knowingly entering a monastery with monks (in it) without asking (for permission) she falls into two offences: as she makes the first foot cross the enclosure ... (see [Prv.2.2.Bi-Pc.48](#)).

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.51

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 52

Reviling and abusing a monk she falls into two offences: as she is reviling, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing, when she has reviled there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.52

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 53

Being quick-tempered and abusing a group, she falls into two offences: as she is abusing, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has abused there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.53

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 54

Partaking of solid food or soft food when she has been invited or has been satisfied, she falls into two offences: as she accepts it thinking, "I will eat, I will partake of" there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.54

BD.6.111

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 55

Being grudging as to families she falls into two offences: as she grudges, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has grudged there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.55

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 56

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.56

Spending the rains in a residence where there is no monk she falls into two offences: if she thinks, "I will spend the rains" (and) prepares a lodging, provides drinking water and water for washing, sweeps a cell, there is an offence of wrong-doing; with sunrise there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 57

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.57

Not "inviting" both Orders in respect of three matters, a nun who has kept the rains falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 58

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.58

Not going for exhortation or for communion she falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 59

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.59

Not asking (the date of) the Observance day and not approaching for exhortation ... one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 60

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.60

Vin.5.78

Making burst, together with a man, the one with the other, a boil or a scab that has formed on the lower part of her body (and) not having obtained permission from an Order or a group she falls into two offences: as she makes it burst, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has burst it there is an offence of Expiation.

DIVISION 7: ON A PREGNANT WOMAN

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 61

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.61

Ordaining a pregnant woman she falls into two offences: as she ordains her, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has ordained her there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 62

Ordaining a woman giving suck ... a probationer who has not trained for two years in the six rules ... a probationer who has trained for two years in the six rules but is not agreed upon by the Order ... a girl married for less than twelve years ... a girl married for a full twelve years who has not trained for two years in the six rules ... a girl married for a full twelve years who has trained for two years in the six rules but is not agreed upon by the Order, she falls into two offences: as she ordains her, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has ordained her there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.62
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.63
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.64
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.65
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.66
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.67

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 68

Ordaining the woman who lives with her (but) for two years neither helping her nor having her helped she falls into one offence: Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.68
BD.6.112

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 69

Not waiting on an ordained woman instructor for two years ... one offence: Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.69

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 70

Having ordained the woman who lives with her (but) neither withdrawing her nor having her withdrawn ... one offence: Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.70

The Seventh Division: on a Pregnant Woman

DIVISION 8: ON A MAIDEN

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 71

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.71

Ordaining a maiden under twenty years of age ... (see Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.61).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 72

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.72

Ordaining a maiden who has completed twenty years of age (but) has not trained for two years in the six rules ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 73

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.73

Ordaining a maiden who has completed twenty years of age and has trained for two years in the six rules but is not agreed upon by the Order ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 74

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.74

Ordaining while she is less than twelve years (of standing) ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 75

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.75

Ordaining when she has completed twelve years (of standing) but is not agreed upon by the Order ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 76

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.76

Afterwards engaging in criticism when on being told, "You have ordained sufficiently, lady, for the time being," and having answered, "Very good," she falls into two offences: while she is criticizing, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has criticized there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 77

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.77

Neither ordaining nor making an effort to get a probationer ordained to whom she has said, "If you, lady, will give me a robe, I will ordain you," she falls into one offence: Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 78

Saying to a probationer, "If you, lady, will wait on me for two years, I will ordain you" ... Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.78
Vin.5.79

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 79

Ordaining a probationer who is keeping company with men, keeping company with youths, who is violent, a dwelling-place of grief ... (see [Prv.2.2.Bi-Pc.71](#)).

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.79

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 80

Ordaining a probationer without the consent of (her) parents or (her) husband ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.80

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 81

Ordaining a probationer by showing favouritism (to monks) placed on probation ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.81

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 82

Ordaining every year ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.82
BD.6.113

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 83

Ordaining two (probationers) in one year ...

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.83

The Eighth Division: on a Maiden

DIVISION 9: ON SUNSHADE AND SANDALS

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 84

Using a sunshade and sandals she falls into two offences: as she is using them, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when she has used (them) there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.84

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 85

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.85

Going in a vehicle she falls into two offences: as she is going, there is an offence of wrong-doing in the action; when she has gone there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 86

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.86

Wearing a petticoat ... (see Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.84).

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 87

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.87

Wearing women's ornaments ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 88

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.88

Bathing with perfume and paint she falls into two offences: as she bathes, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the bathing there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 89

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.89

Bathing with scented ground sesamum ...

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 90-93

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.90

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.91

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.92

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.93

Causing herself to be rubbed (with ointment) and causing herself to be massaged by a nun ... a probationer ... a woman novice ... a woman householder she falls into two offences: as she causes herself to be rubbed (with ointment), in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has caused herself to be rubbed there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 94

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.94

Sitting down on a seat in front of a monk without asking (for permission) she falls into two offences: as she sits down, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has sat down there is an offence of Expiation.

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 95

Asking a question of a monk who has not given permission she falls into two offences: as she asks, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; when she has asked there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.95

NUNS' PĀCITTIYA 96

Entering a village without wearing a vest she falls into two offences: as she makes the first foot cross the enclosure there is an offence of wrong-doing; as she makes the second foot Cross there is an offence of Expiation.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pc.96

The Ninth Division: on Sunshade and Sandals

Concluded is the Minor (Class)

PĀTIDESANĪYA

NUNS' PĀTIDESANĪYA 1-8

Partaking of ghee ... oil ... honey ... molasses ... fish ... meat ... milk ... curds that she has had asked for she fails into two offences: as she accepts it saying, "I will partake of it" there is an offence of wrong-doing; for every mouthful there is an offence to be Confessed.

Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.1
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.2
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.3
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.4
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.5
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.6
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.7
Prv.2.2:Bi-Pd.8
BD.6.114

Concluded are the Eight Offences to be Confessed

Concluded is the Second Chapter: on How many Offences?

2.3. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON FALLING AWAY

Prv.2.3
Vin.5.80

Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do the offences for a nun who, filled with desire, is consenting to physical contact with a man who is filled with desire appertain to? Of the four fallings away the offences ... appertain to two fallings away: there may be falling away from moral habit; there may be falling away from good behaviour ... Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do the offences for one who is partaking of curds, having had them asked for, appertain to? ... appertain to one falling away: falling away from good behaviour.

Concluded is the Third Chapter: on Falling Away

2.4. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON COMPRISED IN

Prv.2.4

Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are the offences for a nun who, filled with desire, ... comprised? Of the seven classes of offence the offences for a nun ... are comprised in three classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence that is a very grave one; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing ... The offences for one who is partaking of ... curds, having had them asked for, are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence that has to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing.

Concluded is the Fourth Chapter: on Comprised In

2.5. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON ORIGINS

Prv.2.5

Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do the offences of a nun who, filled with desire, ... originate? ... They originate by one origin: they originate by body and by mind, not by speech ... The offences for one who is partaking of ... curds, having had them asked for, originate by origins: it may be they originate by body, not by speech, no by mind; it may be they originate by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be they originate by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be they originate by body and by speech and by mind.

BD.6.115

Concluded is the Fifth Chapter: on Origins

2.6. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON LEGAL QUESTIONS

Of the four legal questions which legal question (is raised by) the offences for a nun who, filled with desire ... ? Of the four legal questions it is the legal question concerning offences ... For one who is partaking of ... curds, having asked for them ... it is the legal question concerning offences.

Prv.2.6

Concluded is the Sixth Chapter: on Legal Questions

2.7. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON LEGAL QUESTIONS

Prv.2.7

Of the seven (ways for) the deciding (of a legal question) by how many decidings are the offences for a nun who, filled with desire ... stopped? ... They are stopped by three deciding: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on (her) acknowledgement; it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass the offences of partaking of curds, having had them asked for ... are stopped by three deciding: ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Vin.5.81

Concluded is the Seventh Chapter: on Deciding

2.8. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON ACCUMULATION

How many offences does a nun, filled with desire, consenting to physical contact with a man who is filled with desire fall into? ... She falls into three offences ... (see [Prv.2.2](#)).

Prv.2.8

Consenting to physical contact with a man who is filled with desire how many offences does a nun who is filled with desire fall into? Consenting ... a nun who is filled with desire falls into three offences: if she consents to taking hold of below the collar-bone ... (see [Vin.5.71f.](#)) ... she falls into these three offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to? Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are they comprised? Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do they originate? Of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the seven decidings by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences ... (see [Prv.1.8](#) and by a covering over (as with grass) ...

BD.6.116

Partaking of curds, having had them asked for, how many offences does she fall into? Partaking of curds, having had them asked for, she falls into two offences: as she accepts saying, "I will partake of," the offence is one of wrong-doing; for every mouthful the offence is one to be Confessed. Partaking of curds ... she falls into these two offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... by which deciding are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to one falling away; the falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence that is to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by four origins:

it may be that they originate by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that they originate by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that they originate by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven decidings they are stopped by three ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Eighth Chapter: on Accumulation

2.9. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON LAYING-DOWN-WHERE

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 5

Where was that offence involving Defeat on the ground of consenting to physical contact laid down by that Lord who knows, who sees, perfected one, fully Self-Awakened One? Concerning whom? On what subject? ... By whom was it conveyed? Where was that offence involving Defeat on the ground of consenting to physical contact laid down by that Lord ... ? It was laid down in Sāvattthī ... (see [Prv.2.1](#)) ... she originates it by body and by mind, not by speech ... By whom has it been conveyed? It has been conveyed by a succession (of teachers):

Prv.2.9:Bi-Pj.5

Upāli, Dāsaka ...

Vinaya-piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 6

Where was that offence involving Defeat on the ground of concealing a fault laid down ... (see [Prv.2.1](#)) ... she originates it by one origin in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Pj.6
Vin.5.82

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 7

Where was that offence involving Defeat on the ground of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time laid down ... in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Pj.7
BD.6.117

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKĀ 8

Prv.2.9:Bi-Pj.8

Where was that offence involving Defeat on the ground of completing the eighth thing laid down ... in throwing off responsibility.

Concluded are the Offences involving Defeat

SAṄGHĀDISESA

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.1

Where was that offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of the bringing of a law-suit by a nun who speaks in envy laid down? Concerning whom? ... (see Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.1 above) ... she originates it by body and by speech and by mind ... By whom has it been conveyed? By a succession (of teachers):

Upāli, Dāsaka ...

... Vinaya-piṭaka in the Island of Tambapaṇṇi.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.2

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of ordaining a woman thief ... she originates it ... and by mind.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.3

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of going alone among villages ... (as) in the first Defeat.¹

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.4

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of restoring a nun suspended by a complete Order, without having obtained permission from the Order which carried out the proceedings in accordance with the rule,

¹ Vin.5.87

with Discipline, with the Teacher's instruction, not having learnt the group's desire ... in throwing off responsibility.

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of a nun who is filled with desire partaking of solid food or soft food that with her own hand she has accepted from the hand of a man who is filled with desire ... (as) in the first Defeat.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.5

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of instigating (by) saying, "What can this man, whether he is filled with desire or is not filled with desire, do to you, lady, since you are not filled with desire? Please, lady, eat or partake of the solid food or the soft food that this man is giving to you and that you have accepted with your own hand" ... she originates it ...

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.6

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of a nun who is angry not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.10
BD.6.118

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of a nun, overthrown in some legal question, not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.11

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of nuns who live in company not giving up (their course) though being admonished up to the third time ... in throwing off responsibility.

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.12

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Prv.2.9:Bi-Ss.13

Vin.5.83

... requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time for one who is instigating saying, "Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise" ... in throwing off responsibility ...

Prv.2.9.8

... offence to be Confessed because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for ... she originates it by four origins.

Concluded is the First Chapter: on Laying-Down-Where

2.10. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON HOW MANY OFFENCES?

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 5

Because of consenting to physical contact how many offences does she fall into? Because of consenting to physical contact she falls into five offences. If a nun filled with desire, consents to taking hold of a man who is filled with desire below the collar-bone, above the circle of the knees, there is an offence involving Defeat. If a monk rubs (her) body with (his) body the offence is one requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order. If she rubs something attached to the body with the body there is a grave offence. If she rubs something attached to the body with something attached to the body there is an offence of wrong-doing. In tickling with the fingers there is an offence of Expiation.¹ Because of consenting to physical contact she falls into these five offences.

Prv.2.10:Bi-Pj.5

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 6

Because of concealing a fault how many offences does she fall into? ... into four offences. If a nun knowingly conceals a matter involving Defeat the offence is one involving Defeat. If, being in doubt, she conceals it, there is a grave offence. If a monk conceals an offence requiring a Formal Meet-

Prv.2.10:Bi-Pj.6
BD.6.119

¹ Monks' *Bu-Pc.52*. For some of these offences see the offences given after the formulation of this rule, at *Vin.4.111*. See also note at *BD.2.387*. See *BD.3, Introduction, p.xxvii ff.* for the rules of training that were shared by monks and nuns.

ing of the Order there is an offence of Expiation¹; if she conceals a falling away from good behaviour there is an offence of wrong-doing. Because of concealing a fault she falls into these four offences.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 7

Prv.2.10:Bi-Pj.7

Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time ... she falls into five offences. If a nun who is an imitator of one who is suspended does not give up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time, following the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing, following the two resolutions there are grave offences, following the conclusion of the (three) resolutions there is an offence involving Defeat.² If a nun who is an imitator of a schismatic does not give up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.³ If she does not give up (her) pernicious views though being admonished up to the third time there is an offence of Expiation.⁴ Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time she falls into these five offences.

NUNS' PĀRĀJIKA 8

Prv.2.10:Bi-Pj.8

Because of completing the eighth thing ... she falls into three offences ... (see [Vin.5.72](#)) ... she falls into these three offences.

Concluded are the Offences involving Defeat

SAṄGHĀDISESA

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 1

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.1

Because of bringing a law-suit a nun, if she be one who speaks in envy ... falls into three offences ... (see [Vin.5.72](#)) ... Formal Meeting of the Order.

¹ Cf. Monks' [Bu-Pc.64](#) which reads "very bad offence" for "one requiring a formal Meeting of the Order". But the Old Commentary says that the 13 offences of this kind and the four involving Defeat are what is meant by "very bad offence", *duṭṭhullā āpatti*, see [Vin.4.31](#), [Vin.4.128](#). ² As at [Vin.4.219](#). ³ See [Vin.2.201](#). ⁴ Monks' [Bu-Pc.68](#).

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 2

Because of ordaining a woman-thief ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.2
Vin.5.84

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 3

Because of going alone among villages ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.3
BD.6.120

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 4

Because of restoring a nun suspended by a complete Order not having learnt the group's desire ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.4

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 5

Because of partaking of solid food or soft food that with her own hand she has accepted from the hand of a man who is filled with desire a nun who is filled with desire falls into three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.5

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 6

Because of instigating (by) saying, "What can this man do to you, lady ... eat or partake of ... having accepted with your own hand" ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.6

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 10

Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time a nun who is angry falls into three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.10

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 11

Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time a nun who is overthrown in some legal question ... three offences.

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.11

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 12

Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time a nun¹ who lives in company ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.12

NUNS' SAṄGHĀDISESA 13

Because of not giving up (her course) though being admonished up to the third time (but) instigating (and) saying, "Ladies, live you as though in company, do not you live otherwise" ... three offences ...

Prv.2.10:Bi-Ss.13

Concluded are the ten Offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order

Prv.2.10.8

... Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for, ... she falls into two offences. If she accepts them, saying, "I will eat, I will partake of" there is an offence of wrong-doing. For every mouthful there is an offence to be Confessed. Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for, she falls into these two offences.

Concluded is the Second Chapter: on How Many Offences?

¹ The plural usually appears in this context; but here "nun" is in the singular.

2.11. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON FALLING AWAY

Because of consenting to physical contact, of the four fallings away how many fallings away do the offences ...appertain to? ... appertain to two fallings away: there may be falling away from moral habit; there may be falling away from good behaviour ... Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for ... do the offences appertain to? ... falling away from good behaviour.

Prv.2.11

BD.6.121

Concluded is the Third Chapter: on Falling Away

2.12. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON COMPRISED IN

Because of consenting to physical contact of the seven classes of offences in how many classes of offence are the offences comprised? ... in five classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of very grave offence; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing ... Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for, ... the offences are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing.

Prv.2.12

Vin.5.85

Concluded is the Fourth Chapter: on Comprised in

2.13. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON ORIGINS

Prv.2.13

Because of consenting to physical contact of the six origins of offences by how many origins do the offences ... originate? (see [Prv.2.5](#)) ... Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for ... and by mind.

Concluded is the Fifth Chapter: on Origins

2.14. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON LEGAL QUESTIONS

Prv.2.14

Because of consenting to physical contact of the four legal questions which legal question (is raised by) the offences ... (see [Prv.2.6](#)).

Concluded is the Sixth Chapter: on Legal Questions

2.15. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON DECIDING

Prv.2.15

Because of consenting to physical contact of the seven (ways for) the deciding (of a legal question) by how many decidings are the offences ... (see [Prv.2.7](#)).

2.16. NUNS' ANALYSIS: ON ACCUMULATION

Because of consenting to physical contact how many offences does she fall into? Because of consenting to physical contact she falls into five offences. If a nun, filled with desire ... (see [Prv.2.10:Bi-Pj.5](#)) ... In tickling with the fingers there is an offence of Expiation. Because of consenting to physical contact she falls into these five offences. Of the four fallings away how many failings away do these offences appertain to? ... (See [Prv.1.8](#)) ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be that of falling away from moral habit, it may be that of falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in five classes of offence; it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat, it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, it may be in the class of offence that is a very grave one, it may be in the class of offence of Expiation, it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by one origin ... (see [Prv.1.8](#)) ... and by a covering over (as) with grass. Because of partaking of curds, having had them asked for, how many offences does she fall into? ... she falls into two offences ... and a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.2.16

BD.6.122

Concluded is the Eighth Chapter: on Accumulation

Concluded are the sixteen Great Synopses in the Nuns' Analysis

3. SUMMARY OF ORIGINS

Prv.3.1
BD.6.123
Vin.5.86

Impermanent are all constructs,¹
painful, not self, and constructed,
And certainly *nibbāna* is a
description meaning not-self.

When the moon of the Buddha has not appeared,
when the sun of the Buddha has not risen
The very name of those rules
held in common² is not known.

When they have performed various austerities,
and have fulfilled the perfections,
The Great Heroes uprising, having become Vision
in the world with the Brahmās;

They teach True *Dhamma*:
the slaying of anguish, the bringing of happiness.
Aṅgīrasa³ the Sakyan Sage,
compassionate for all beings,

The best of all creatures, the lion,
taught the three Piṭakas:
The Suttantas, the Abhidhamma, and the Vinaya—

¹ Cf. Dh.277, Dh.278. ² *sabhāgadhamma*. Here *dhamma* has to be taken in its meaning of rule or offence; *sabhāga* is in common, here to monks and nuns. This does not imply that each rule applies to monk and nun alike: some offences could be committed only by monks, others only by nuns. All of these are collected in this Chapter. Cf. Vin.1.126 *sabhāgā āpatti*, a collective offence. ³ An epithet of the Buddha.

a great special quality.

Thus is True *Dhamma* led on if Vinaya endures.
The two Analyses, the Khandhakas, and the Headings
Are garlands fastened by Parivāra
which is just a strand in the Thread.¹

For this Parivāra itself “origin” is regularized,²
And in the Thread below division and source are shown as differ-
ent.³

Therefore “He who is well behaved and desires the rule
must train in Parivāra”.

BD.6.124

At the Observance they⁴ recite
what was laid down⁵ in the two Analyses,
(Saying) I will declare the origin according to the method:
listen to me.

That which is the First Defeat,
and next the Second,
A Go-between and Admonishment
and an Extra Robe,

Wools, *Dhamma*-line-by-line,
Fact, and Arranging,
Set on Theft, Teaching, and Woman Thief,
Without Consent are thirteen.

These thirteen⁶ were thought out by learned men

¹ *suttagaṇa*. ² *niyato kata*, explained at Vin-a.1305 as *niyatakata niyatasamuṭṭhāna*.

³ *sambhedanidānañ c'aññaṃ*. The reference appears to be to the mixture, *sambheda*, of origins of an offence, here divisioned below, by various combinations of body, speech and thought. *Nidāna*, the source or provenance, is usually the place where a rule was laid down. This Chapter is not itself concerned with these places: they are given in Chapter 8 of which verse 6 is cited at Vin-a.1305. ⁴ Monks and nuns. ⁵ The rules of training. ⁶ That is, the thirteen divisions that now follow. In these the offences from both Vibhaṅgas are grouped according to the kind and number of ways they can be originated by monk or nun. All fall into position and not one rule is omitted. There are a few slight discrepancies between the titles as given above and at the end of the divisions.

according to the Origin-method:

In each the origins
are shown to be the same.

Intercourse,¹ semen,² contact,³
the first Undetermined (offence),
Arrived first,⁴ procured through (the intervention),⁵
together with a nun in private,⁶

With food,⁷ and two in private,⁸
the fingers,⁹ sporting in the water,¹⁰
A blow,¹¹ also raising,¹²
and fifty-three Trainings,¹³

Below the collar-bone,¹⁴ village,¹⁵ full of desire,¹⁶
palm,¹⁷ and application,¹⁸ ablution,¹⁹
Having kept the rains,²⁰ and exhortation,²¹
on not waiting on a woman instructor.²²

These trainings are seventy-six done by body and by thought,²³
All are from one origin as is the First Defeat.

Concluded is First Defeat Origin

Not given,²⁴ form,²⁵ further,²⁶ lewd (words),²⁷
pleasures for self,²⁸
Unfounded,²⁹ belonging to something else,³⁰
the second Undetermined (offence),

¹ Bu-Pj.1. ² Bu-Ss.1. ³ Bu-Ss.2. ⁴ Bu-Pc.16. ⁵ Bu-Pc.29. ⁶ Bu-Pc.30. ⁷ Bu-Pc.43.
⁸ Bu-Pc.44, Bu-Pc.45. ⁹ Bu-Pc.52 ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.53 ¹¹ Bu-Pc.74 ¹² Bu-Pc.75. ¹³ Of the
75 Trainings (*Sekhiya*), 22 are referred to separately in following parts of this Section, i.e.
Nos. Bu-Sk.11-Bu-Sk.14, Bu-Sk.43, Bu-Sk.57-Bu-Sk.72. So the above 53 refer to Trainings
Nos. Bu-Sk.1-Bu-Sk.10, Bu-Sk.15-Bu-Sk.36, Bu-Sk.38-Bu-Sk.42, Bu-Sk.44-Bu-Sk.56, Bu-
Sk.73-Bu-Sk.75. ¹⁴ Nuns' Bi-Pj.5. ¹⁵ Nuns' Bi-Ss.3. ¹⁶ Nuns' Bi-Ss.5 ¹⁷ Nuns' Bi-Pc.3.
¹⁸ Bi-Pc.4. ¹⁹ Bi-Pc.5. ²⁰ Bi-Pc.40. ²¹ Bi-Pc.58. ²² Bi-Pc.69. ²³ Not the usual
citta here, but *mānasika*. ²⁴ Bu-Pj.2 ²⁵ Bu-Pj.3; *viggaha* above is an abbreviation of
manussaviggaha. ²⁶ Bu-Pj.4; *uttariṃ* above abbreviating *uttarimanussadhamma*. ²⁷ Bu-
Ss.3. ²⁸ Bu-Ss.4, here reading *atthakāmināṃ* against *attakā-* of Vin.3.133 and Vin-a.1307.
²⁹ Bu-Ss.8. ³⁰ Bu-Ss.9.

Should tear away,¹ should apportion,²
 lying,³ insult,⁴ slander,⁵
 Very bad,⁶ should dig the ground,⁷ growth,⁸ in evasion,⁹
 in making look down on,¹⁰

Throwing out,¹¹ and sprinkling,¹²
 sake of gain,¹³ having eaten,¹⁴
 “Come”,¹⁵ in disrespect,¹⁶ should frighten,¹⁷
 and should hide,¹⁸ living thing,¹⁹

Knowing it contains living things,²⁰ (formal) act,²¹
 under (twenty),²² in communion,²³ expulsion,²⁴
 Regarding a rule,²⁵ perplexity,²⁶ confusion,²⁷
 and with an unfounded charge,²⁸

Remorse,²⁹ legitimate,³⁰ having given (away),³¹
 should apportion to an individual,³²
 “What to you?”,³³ not at a right time,³⁴ should tear away,³⁵
 misapprehension,³⁶ and with Niraya,³⁷

Group,³⁸ division,³⁹ not sure,⁴⁰ *kaṭhina*,⁴¹
 discomfort,⁴² quarters,⁴³
 Revile,⁴⁴ quick-tempered,⁴⁵ grudging,⁴⁶
 and pregnant,⁴⁷ giving suck,⁴⁸

Two years,⁴⁹ probationer (not agreed on) by the Order,⁵⁰
 likewise three on girls,⁵¹

BD.6.126

¹ Bu-NP.25. ² Bu-NP.30. ³ Bu-Pc.1. ⁴ Bu-Pc.2. ⁵ Bu-Pc.3. ⁶ Bu-Pc.9. ⁷ Bu-Pc.10. ⁸ Bu-Pc.11. ⁹ Bu-Pc.12. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.13. ¹¹ Bu-Pc.17. ¹² Bu-Pc.20. ¹³ Bu-Pc.24. ¹⁴ Bu-Pc.36. ¹⁵ Bu-Pc.42. ¹⁶ Bu-Pc.54. ¹⁷ Bu-Pc.55. ¹⁸ Bu-Pc.60. ¹⁹ Bu-Pc.61. ²⁰ Bu-Pc.62. ²¹ Bu-Pc.63. ²² Bu-Pc.65. ²³ Bu-Pc.69. ²⁴ Bu-Pc.70. ²⁵ Bu-Pc.71. ²⁶ Bu-Pc.72. ²⁷ Bu-Pc.73. ²⁸ Bu-Pc.76. ²⁹ Bu-Pc.77. ³⁰ Bu-Pc.79, reading *dhammakam* against *dhammi*- of Vin.4.152 and Vin-a.1307. ³¹ Bu-Pc.81. Though the words *chandaṃ datvā* occur in Bu-Pc.79, *datvā* here belongs, according to Vin-a.1307, to *cīvaraṃ datvā* of Bu-Pc.81. ³² Bu-Pc.39. ³³ Nuns' Bi-Ss.6. ³⁴ Nuns' Bi-NP.2. ³⁵ Nuns' Bi-NP.3. ³⁶ Nuns' Bi-Pc.18. ³⁷ Bi-Pc.19. ³⁸ Bi-Pc.26. ³⁹ Bi-Pc.27. ⁴⁰ Bi-Pc.29. ⁴¹ Bi-Pc.30. ⁴² Bi-Pc.33. ⁴³ Bi-Pc.35. ⁴⁴ Bi-Pc.52. ⁴⁵ Bi-Pc.53. ⁴⁶ Bi-Pc.55. ⁴⁷ Bi-Pc.61. ⁴⁸ Bi-Pc.62. ⁴⁹ Bi-Pc.63. ⁵⁰ Bi-Pc.64. ⁵¹ Bi-Pc.65, Bi-Pc.66, Bi-Pc.67

And three on a maiden,¹
less than twelve,² not agreed on,³

Sufficiently,⁴ dwelling-place of grief,⁵ favoritism,⁶
and every year,⁷ two:⁸

These are seventy rules of training,
done triad-wise as to origin:

By body and mind, not speech; speech and mind, not bodily,
They arise by three doors as does the Second Defeat.

Concluded is Second Defeat Origin

Go-between,⁹ hut,¹⁰ *vihāra*,¹¹
and getting (it) washed,¹² acceptance,¹³
Asking,¹⁴ more than the asking,¹⁵ on two,¹⁶
and by a messenger,¹⁷

Silk,¹⁸ two on pure portions,¹⁹ six years,²⁰
piece of cloth to sit on,²¹
They neglect,²² and likewise on silver,²³
two on various transactions,²⁴

Mended in less,²⁵ for the rains,²⁶ yarn,²⁷
and about a consideration,²⁸
And door,²⁹ giving,³⁰ sewing,³¹
cake,³² reason,³³ and fire,³⁴

Treasure,³⁵ needle,³⁶ and couch,³⁷ cotton,³⁸
piece of cloth to sit on,³⁹ and itch,⁴⁰

¹ Bi-Pc.71, Bi-Pc.72, Bi-Pc.73. ² Bi-Pc.74. ³ Bi-Pc.75. ⁴ Bi-Pc.76. ⁵ Bi-Pc.79. ⁶ Bi-Pc.81.
⁷ Bi-Pc.82. ⁸ Bi-Pc.83. ⁹ Bu-Ss.5. ¹⁰ Bu-Ss.6. ¹¹ Bu-Ss.7. ¹² Bu-NP.4. ¹³ Bu-NP.5.
¹⁴ Bu-NP.6; above the word is *viññatt'*. ¹⁵ Bu-NP.7: *-uttari abhihaṭṭum*. ¹⁶ Bu-NP.8,
Bu-NP.9. ¹⁷ Bu-NP.10. ¹⁸ Bu-NP.11. ¹⁹ Bu-NP.12, Bu-NP.13. ²⁰ Bu-NP.14. ²¹ Bu-NP.15.
²² Bu-NP.17. This key-word, *riñcati*, does not occur in the *sikkhāpada*, but is to be found in the
narrative leading up to it, Vin.3.235. ²³ Bu-NP.18. ²⁴ Bu-NP.19, Bu-NP.20. ²⁵ Bu-NP.22.
²⁶ Bu-NP.24. ²⁷ Bu-NP.26. ²⁸ Bu-NP.27. ²⁹ Bu-Pc.19. ³⁰ Bu-Pc.25. ³¹ Bu-Pc.26.
³² Bu-Pc.34. ³³ Bu-Pc.47. ³⁴ Bu-Pc.56. ³⁵ Bu-Pc.84. ³⁶ Bu-Pc.86. ³⁷ Bu-Pc.87.
³⁸ Bu-Pc.88. ³⁹ Bu-Pc.89. ⁴⁰ Bu-Pc.90.

And for the rains,¹ for the Well-farer,² asking,³
getting another thing in exchange,⁴

Two on belonging to an Order,⁵ two on belonging to a company,⁶
to an individual,⁷ light,⁸ heavy,⁹

Two on remains of food,¹⁰ and cloths,¹¹
and about recluses' robe-material¹²:

BD.6.127

Thou understandeth that these offences may arise
by six causal occasions:
By body, not by speech or mind; by speech,
not by body or thought,¹³

By body and speech, but not by mind;
by body and mind, not by speech;
By speech and mind, not by body:
they may arise from the three doors.

Vin.5.88.

These, being six-originated, are similar to the Go-Between.

Concluded is the Go-Between Origin

A schism,¹⁴ one who imitates,¹⁵ one difficult to speak to,¹⁶
disrepute,¹⁷ very bad offence,¹⁸ and view,¹⁹
Consent,²⁰ and two on loud laughter,²¹
and two on noise,²² one should not talk,²³

On the ground,²⁴ on a low seat,²⁵ standing,²⁶
going behind,²⁷ and at the side of a path,²⁸
A fault,²⁹ a (nun-)imitator,³⁰ taking hold of,³¹
should restore,³² renouncing,³³

¹ Bu-Pc.91. ² Bu-Pc.92. ³ Nuns' Bi-NP.4. ⁴ Bi-NP.5. ⁵ Bi-NP.6. Bi-NP.7. ⁶ Bi-NP.8, Bi-NP.9. ⁷ Bi-NP.10. ⁸ Bi-NP.12. ⁹ Bi-NP.11. Note reversal of the order; both offences are concerned with a cloth. ¹⁰ Nuns' Bi-Pc.8, Bi-Pc.9. ¹¹ Bi-Pc.22. ¹² Bi-Pc.28. ¹³ *manas* here instead of the more usual *citta*; Cf. verse 16. ¹⁴ Bu-Ss.10. ¹⁵ Bu-Ss.11. ¹⁶ Bu-Ss.12. ¹⁷ Bu-Ss.13. ¹⁸ Bu-Pc.64. ¹⁹ Bu-Pc.68. ²⁰ Bu-Pc.80. ²¹ Bu-Sk.11, Bu-Sk.12. ²² Bu-Sk.13, Bu-Sk.14. ²³ Bu-Sk.43. ²⁴ Bu-Sk.68. ²⁵ Bu-Sk.69. ²⁶ Bu-Sk.70. ²⁷ Bu-Sk.71. ²⁸ Bu-Sk.72. ²⁹ Nuns' Bi-Pj.6. ³⁰ Nuns' Bi-Pj.7. ³¹ Nuns' Bi-Pj.8. ³² Nuns' Bi-Ss.4. ³³ Bi-Ss.10.

In some,¹ two on in company,² struck,³
 should unsew,⁴ and about an ailing (woman),⁵
 Company again,⁶ should not settle,⁷
 and monastery,⁸ invitation,⁹

Every half,¹⁰ two on the woman who lives with her,¹¹
 robe,¹² waiting on¹³:

These thirty-seven offences from body, speech and mind
 Are all from one origin as is Admonishing.

Concluded is Admonishing Origin

Three on *kaṭhina* (privileges) removed,¹⁴
 the first (rule on) the bowl,¹⁵ medicine,¹⁶
 Special,¹⁷ and also¹⁸ dangerous,¹⁹
 and²⁰ two on setting-forth,²¹

Quarters,²² out-of-turns,²³ not left over,²⁴ invited,²⁵
 Assigning,²⁶ of a king,²⁷ at a wrong time,²⁸
 giving directions,²⁹
 and about forest (-lodgings),³⁰

In envy,³¹ and a hoard,³² before,³³ after,³⁴
 and at a wrong time,³⁵
 For five days,³⁶ to be handed back,³⁷
 and two on a household robe,³⁸

On the lower part of the body,³⁹ also on a seat⁴⁰—these twenty-
 nine

May from the three doors arise

¹ Bi-Ss.11. ² Bi-Ss.12, Bi-Ss.13. ³ Nuns' Bi-Pc.20. ⁴ Bi-Pc.23. ⁵ Bi-Pc.34. ⁶ Bi-Pc.36.

⁷ Bi-Pc.45. ⁸ Bi-Pc.51. ⁹ Bi-Pc.57. ¹⁰ Bi-Pc.59. ¹¹ Bi-Pc.68, Bi-Pc.70. ¹² Bi-Pc.77.

¹³ Bi-Pc.78. ¹⁴ Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3. ¹⁵ Bu-NP.21. ¹⁶ Bu-NP.23. ¹⁷ Bu-NP.28.

¹⁸ Reading *cāpi* with Vin-a.1311 instead of text's *vāpi*. ¹⁹ Bu-NP.29. ²⁰ Again reading *ca* for

text's *vā*. ²¹ Bu-Pc.14, Bu-Pc.15. ²² Bu-Pc.23. ²³ Bu-Pc.33. ²⁴ Bu-Pc.35. ²⁵ Bu-Pc.46.

²⁶ Bu-Pc.59. ²⁷ Bu-Pc.83. ²⁸ Bu-Pc.85. ²⁹ Bu-Pd.2. ³⁰ Bu-Pd.4. ³¹ Nuns' Bi-Ss.1.

³² Nuns' Bi-NP.1. ³³ Nuns' Bi-Pc.15. ³⁴ Bi-Pc.16. ³⁵ Bi-Pc.17. ³⁶ Bi-Pc.24. ³⁷ Bi-Pc.25.

³⁸ Bi-Pc.47, Bi-Pc.48. ³⁹ Bi-Pc.60. ⁴⁰ Bi-Pc.94.

by body and speech but not by mind:
All, being of dual origin, are the same as the *Kaṭhina*.

Concluded is Kaṭhina Origin

Sheep's wool,¹ two on sleeping-place,²
removable,³ eating a meal,⁴
Group,⁵ at a wrong time,⁶ stored,⁷
water for cleansing the teeth,⁸ unclothed ones,⁹

Fighting,¹⁰ an army,¹¹ sham-fight,¹²
fermented liquor,¹³ bathing at less,¹⁴
On disfigurement,¹⁵ two concerning confession,¹⁶
garlic,¹⁷ should stand close,¹⁸ dancing,¹⁹

Bathing,²⁰ covering-cloth,²¹ sleeping-place,²²
in (her own) region,²³ likewise outside,²⁴
During the rains,²⁵ picture-gallery,²⁶
sofa,²⁷ spinning yarn,²⁸

(Household-) work,²⁹ and with her own hand,³⁰
and about a residence where there is no monk,³¹
Sunshade,³² and vehicle,³³ petticoat,³⁴
ornament,³⁵ perfume,³⁶ scented,³⁷

Nun,³⁸ and probationer,³⁹ woman novice,⁴⁰
woman householder,⁴¹
Without (her) vest⁴² —
forty-four offences.

¹ Bu-NP.16. ² Bu-Pc.5, Bu-Pc.6. ³ Bu-Pc.18. ⁴ Bu-Pc.31. ⁵ Bu-Pc.32. ⁶ Bu-Pc.37.
⁷ Bu-Pc.38. ⁸ Bu-Pc.40. ⁹ Bu-Pc.41. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.48. ¹¹ Bu-Pc.49. ¹² Bu-Pc.50. ¹³ Bu-
Pc.51. ¹⁴ Bu-Pc.57. ¹⁵ Bu-Pc.58. ¹⁶ Bu-Pd.1, Bu-Pd.3. ¹⁷ Nuns' Bi-Pc.1. ¹⁸ Bi-Pc.6.
¹⁹ Bi-Pc.10. ²⁰ Bi-Pc.21. ²¹ Bi-Pc.32. ²² Bi-Pc.31. Commentary places Bi-Pc.31 after
Bi-Pc.32; cf. the reversal found above, Vin.5.87, Nuns' Bi-NP.12 and Bi-NP.11. Moreover, the
word *seyyā*, sleeping-place above, appears as *mañca*, couch, in the *sikkhāpada*. ²³ Nuns' Bi-
Pc.37. ²⁴ Bi-Pc.38, *bahi* here for *sikkhāpada*'s *tiro*. ²⁵ Bi-Pc.39. ²⁶ Bi-Pc.41. ²⁷ Bi-Pc.42.
²⁸ Bi-Pc.43. ²⁹ Bi-Pc.44. ³⁰ Bi-Pc.46. ³¹ Bi-Pc.56. ³² Bi-Pc.84. ³³ Bi-Pc.85. ³⁴ Bi-
Pc.86. ³⁵ Bi-Pc.87. ³⁶ Bi-Pc.88. ³⁷ Bi-Pc.89. ³⁸ Bi-Pc.90. ³⁹ Bi-Pc.91. ⁴⁰ Bi-Pc.92.
⁴¹ Bi-Pc.93. ⁴² Bi-Pc.96.

By body, not by speech or mind;
 by body and mind, not by speech,
 All, being of dual origin,
 are the same as that concerning Sheep's Wool.

Concluded is Sheep's Wool Origin

Vin.5.89

Line,¹ except,² not agreed on,³
 and likewise after (sun-)set,⁴
 The two spoken on worldly knowledge,⁵
 and asking without leave⁶:

These seven rules of training by speech, not by body and mind,
 By speech and mind are born, but cannot be born by body.
 All are of dual origin
 as in *Dhamma-line-by-line*.

Concluded is Dhamma-Line-by-Line Origin

Highway,⁷ boat,⁸ sumptuous,⁹
 with a woman,¹⁰ should let grow,¹¹
 Grain,¹² and likewise being invited,¹³
 and the eight to be Confessed¹⁴:

These fifteen trainings by body, not by speech, not by thought;
 By body and speech are born, they cannot be born of mind;

BD.6.130

They are born by body and mind, they are not born by speech;
 (And) by body, speech and by mind—
 the fourfold origin
 Laid down by the Buddha's knowledge is as with Highway.

Concluded is Highway Origin

Caravan set on theft,¹⁵ overhearing,¹⁶ a

¹ Bu-Pc.4. ² Bu-Pc.7. ³ Bu-Pc.21. ⁴ Bu-Pc.22. ⁵ Nuns' Bi-Pc.49, Bu-Pc.50. ⁶ Bu-Pc.95.

⁷ Bu-Pc.27. ⁸ Bu-Pc.28. ⁹ Bu-Pc.39. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.67. ¹¹ Nuns' Bi-Pc.2. ¹² Bi-Pc.7.

¹³ Bi-Pc.54. ¹⁴ Nuns' Bi-Pd.1-Bi-Pd.8. ¹⁵ Bu-Pc.66. ¹⁶ Bu-Pc.78.

nd about asking for curry,¹
 Night,² and secluded,³ in an open place,⁴
 and the seventh about a cul-de-sac⁵:

Are born of body and mind, they are not born of speech;
 By means of three doors (from which offences) are born, these,
 dual in origin,
 Have origins (as) Caravan Set on Theft,
 proclaimed by the Kinsman of the Sun.

Concluded is Caravan-Set-on-Theft Origin

Tathāgatas do not teach true *Dhamma* to someone
 holding a sunshade,⁶
 Neither to one holding a staff,⁷
 nor to those holding a knife,⁸ a weapon,⁹
 Nor to one wearing shoes,¹⁰ sandals,¹¹
 in a vehicle,¹² on a bed,¹³ who is lolling,¹⁴
 (Wearing) a turban,¹⁵ nor muffled up¹⁶:
 eleven, not less,

Are born of speech and thought,
 they are not born of body.
 In the *Dhamma*-teaching
 all are agreed upon as having one origin.

Concluded is Dhamma-Teaching Origin

Fact¹⁷ is born of body, not of speech, not of mind;
 And it is born of speech, not of body, not of mind;

It is born of body and speech, it is not born of mind.

So, speaking about Fact means it is born in three ways.

¹ Bu-Sk.37. ² Nuns' Bi-Pc.11. ³ Bi-Pc.12. ⁴ Bi-Pc.13. ⁵ Bi-Pc.14. ⁶ Bu-Sk.57. ⁷ Bu-Sk.58. ⁸ Bu-Sk.59. ⁹ Bu-Sk.60. ¹⁰ Bu-Sk.61. ¹¹ Bu-Sk.62. ¹² Bu-Sk.63. ¹³ Bu-Sk.64, reading *seyyā* against *sayana* at Vin.4.202. ¹⁴ Bu-Sk.65. ¹⁵ Bu-Sk.66. ¹⁶ Bu-Sk.67.

¹⁷ *bhūtaṃ*. This appears to refer to Bu-Pc.8 which has not yet been included.

Concluded is Speaking-about-Fact Origin

BD.6.131

Woman thief¹ by speech, by mind, this too is born of body.
 This ordination of a woman thief is born from three doors;
 The dual origin spoken of
 by the King under *Dhamma* is not made.

Concluded is Ordination-of-Woman-Thief Origin

Without the consent² by speech, not of body and not of mind;
 If born of body and speech, then it is not born of mind;

Vin.5.90

If born of speech and mind,
 then it is not born of body.
 It is born from three doors—
 a fourth (causal) occasion is not made.

Concluded is Without-the-Consent Origin

The abstract of the thirteen (classes of) origin
 has indeed been well taught.
 The impossibility of an occasion for confusion
 is in accordance with the rules as guide:³
 Bearing this in mind,
 wise men do not get confused about origin.

Concluded is the Abstract under the Head of Origin

¹ Nuns' *Bi-Ss.2*. ² Nuns' *Bi-Pc.80*. ³ *dhammanetti*, explained at Vin-a.1314 as *Vinayapāḷidhamma*.

4. CONSECUTIVE REPETITIONS

¹ How many offences, how many classes of offence, how many matters is one trained in, ² how many disrespects, how many respects, how many matters is one trained in, how many fallings-away, how many origins of offences, how many roots³ of disputes how many roots of censure, how many things to be remembered, how many matters making for schism, how many legal questions, how many decidings?

Prv.4.1.1
BD.6.132
Vin.5.91

Five offences, five classes of offence, five matters that are trained in, seven offences, seven classes of offence, seven matters that are trained in, six disrespects, six respects, six matters that are trained in, four fallings-away, six origins of offences, six roots of disputes six roots of censure, six things to be remembered, eighteen matters making for schism, four legal questions, seven decidings.

Prv.4.1.2

Herein what are the five offences? An offence involving Defeat, an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, an offence of Expiation, an offence to be Confessed, an offence of wrong-doing—these are the five offences.

Prv.4.1.3

Herein, what are the five classes of offence? The class of offence involving Defeat ... the class of offence of wrong-doing—these are the five classes of offence.

Prv.4.1.4

¹ Note by Sujato: In Horner's edition this chapter and the next were regarded as sections of the same chapter. I have adjusted this to follow the more logical structure of the Mahā-saṅgīti edition. Thus the following chapters are numbered one greater than in her edition. Also see note on Prv.8. ² *vinītavatthu* is explained below. Vin-a.1314 says “questions on discipline about those offences (just referred to); so, trained (*vinīta*), discipline (*vinaya*) and suppression (or, mastery, settling or suppression, *vūpasama*) are one in meaning”. ³ *mūla*, root as cause; Cf. MN-a.i.12.

Herein what are the five matters that are trained in? Abstaining from,¹ refraining from, avoidance of, restraint from, not doing, not committing, non-trespassing, not transgressing control,² bridge-breaking³ in regard to the five classes of offence—these are the five matters that are trained in.⁴

Prv.4.1.5
BD.6.133

Herein what are the seven offences? An offence involving defeat, an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, a grave offence, an offence of Expiation, an offence to be Confessed, an offence of wrong-doing, an offence of wrong-speech—these are the seven offences.

Prv.4.1.6

Herein what are the seven classes of offence? The class of offence involving Defeat ... the class of offence of wrong-speech—these are the seven classes of offence.

Prv.4.1.7

Herein what are the seven matters that are trained in? Abstaining from ... bridge-breaking in regard to the seven classes of offence—these are the seven matters that are trained in.

Prv.4.1.8
Vin.5.92

Herein what are the six (kinds of) disrespect? Disrespect for the Buddha,⁵ disrespect for *Dhamma*, disrespect for the Order, disrespect for the training, disrespect for diligence, disrespect for reciprocal courtesy⁶—these are the six (kinds of) disrespect.

Prv.4.1.9

Herein what are the six (kinds of) respect? Respect for the Buddha ... respect for reciprocal courtesy—these are the six (kinds of) respect.

Prv.4.1.10

¹ The first four words occur at MN.iii.74 (the Commentary on which resembles the Vinaya Commentary) and all are to be found at Ds.299=Vb.285. ² Vin-a.1315 says nothing about *anatikkamo* (not transgressing); of *velā* is (control) it says “from controlling is control (*velanato velā*). The meaning is controlling, driving out”. Three kinds of *velā* are given at MN-a.ii.95 (*kāla-*, *sīma-* and *sīla-*) where *velā-anatikkamo* comes under the third kind. See also Vb.285ff. where the above sequence of words is applied to each of the five *sīlas*. At Ds-a.219 *velā anatikkamo* is also taken as one phrase. I have followed this apparently well recognized practice above. ³ *setughāta*. See AN.i.22Of., AN.i.261, AN.ii.145f.; also Vin.1.59, Vin.3.6, Vin.4.24. *Setu*, the bridge, seems taken, however, in rather a different sense above. Vin-a.180 calls it *magga*; but Vin-a.1315 on above passage (Cf. Atthasālinī 219 says “bridge means: it ties, binds, obstructs the way out (or, outlet, *niyyāna*, i.e. to safety). Bridge-breaking is the destroying of these descriptions”.) The broken bridge therefore should provide the way out. This is in antithesis to the traditional symbolism of “bridge” as the necessary means for passage from the hither to the further shore. ⁴ The meaning is that the five classes of offence are to be trained in by these methods. ⁵ As at DN.iii.244, AN.iii.340. ⁶ *Paṭisanthāra*. Described as *āmisa-* and *dhamma-* at AN.i.93. See also AN.iii.362, DhP-a.iv.111; spoken of only as twofold at Vin-a.1315 and DN-a.1034.

Herein what are the six matters that are trained in? Abstaining from ... bridge-breaking in regard to the six (kinds of) disrespect—these are the six matters that are trained in.

Prv.4.1.11

Herein what are the four fallings away? Falling away from moral habit, falling away from good behaviour, falling away from (right) view, falling away from (right) mode of livelihood—these are the four fallings away.

Prv.4.1.12

BD.6.134

Herein what are the six origins of offences? There is an offence that originates from body, not from speech, not from mind; there is an offence that originates from speech, not from body, not from mind; there is an offence that originates from body and from speech, not from mind; there is an offence that originates from body and from mind, not from speech; there is an offence that originates from speech and from mind, not from body; there is an offence that originates from body and from speech and from mind—these are the six origins of offences.

Prv.4.1.13

Herein what are the six roots of disputes As to this a monk becomes angry and bears ill-will.¹ Whatever monk becomes angry and bears ill-will, he lives without deference, disrespectful towards the Teacher ... (= *Kd.14.14.3 down to the end of that paragraph. The word monk is here constantly omitted*) ... thus there come to be no future effects of that evil root of disputes these are the six roots of disputes

Prv.4.1.14

Herein what are the six roots of censure? As to this a monk becomes angry ... (this is identical with the last paragraph, reading censure instead of dispute) ...—these are the six roots of censure.

Prv.4.1.15

Herein what are the six things to be remembered?² As to this, a monk should offer his fellow Brahma-farers a friendly act of body both in public and in private. This is a thing to be remembered making for affection, making for respect, it conduces to concord, to lack of dispute, to harmony, to unity. And again a monk should offer ... a friendly act of speech ... a friendly act of thought ... to unity. And again, whatever are those lawful acquisitions, lawfully acquired, if they be even but what is put into the begging bowl—a monk should be one to enjoy sharing such acquisitions, to enjoy them in common with his virtuous fellow Brahma-farers. This too is a thing to be remembered ... to unity. And again, whatever are those moral

¹ See *BD.5.118f.* ² As at *DN.iii.245; MN.i.322; AN.iii.288; Cf. DN.ii.80; MN.ii.250.*

Vin.5.93 habits that are faultless, without flaw, spotless, without blemish, freeing,
BD.6.135 praised by wise men, untarnished, conducive to concentration—a monk
 should dwell united in virtues such as these with his fellow Brahma-farers,
 both in public and in private. This too is a thing to be remembered ... to
 unity. And again, whatever view is ariyan, leading onwards, leading him
 who acts according to it to the complete destruction of anguish—a monk
 should dwell united in a view such as this with his fellow Brahma-farers,
 both in public and in private. This too is a thing to be remembered ... to
Prv.4.1.16 unity.

Prv.4.1.17 Herein what are the eighteen matters making for schism? As to this, a
 monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... (=Kd.10.5.4) ... he explains not
 a very bad offence as a very bad offence—these are the eighteen matters
 making for schism.

Prv.4.1.18 Herein what are the four legal questions? A legal question concerning
 disputes a legal question concerning censure, a legal question concerning
 offences, a legal question concerning obligations¹—these are the four legal
 questions.

Prv.4.1.19 Herein what are the seven decidings?² A verdict in the presence of, a
 verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) ac-
 knowledgement, a decision of the majority, a decision for specific depravity,
 a covering over (as) with grass—these are the seven decidings.

Concluded is the Chapter on the Questions: “How Many?”

ITS SUMMARY

Offence, classes of offence, trained in, sevenfold again,
 Trained in and disrespects too, respects, and root too,
 Again trained in, falling away, origin, disputes
 Censure, to be remembered, schism, and about legal question,
 Just seven decidings are spoken of: these seventeen terms.

Prv.4.2.1 Could one fall into an offence involving Defeat by means of the first
 origin of offences? It should be said “Oh no”. Could one fall into an offence
 requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order? It should be said “One might”.
 Could one fall into a grave offence ... an offence of Expiation ... an offence to

¹ Vin.2.88, Vin.3.164, Vin.4.126, Vin.4.238. ² Vin.4.207.

be Confessed ... an offence of wrong-doing? It should be said “One might”. Could one fall into an offence of wrong speech? It should be said “Oh no”.

Prv.4.2.2
BD.6.136

Could one fall into ... (see Prv.4.2.1) ... an offence of Expiation by means of the second origin of offences? It should be said “One might”. Could one fall into an offence to be Confessed? It should be said “Oh no”. Could one fall into an offence of wrong-doing? It should be said “One might”. Could one fall into an offence of wrong speech? It should be said “Oh no”.

Prv.4.2.3

Could one fall into ... (=Prv.4.2.1) ... by means of the third origin of offences? ...

Prv.4.2.4
Vin.5.94

Could one fall into an offence involving Defeat by means of the fourth origin of offences? It should be said “One might”. Could one fall into an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... (=Prv.4.2.1.)

Prv.4.2.5

Could one fall into ... (=Prv.4.2.4) ... an offence to be Confessed by means of the fifth origin of offences? It should be said “Oh no”. Could one fall into an offence of wrong-doing? It should be said “One might”. Could one fall into an offence of wrong speech? It should be said “One might”.

Prv.4.2.6

Could one fall ... by means of the sixth origin of offences? ... (=Prv.4.2.4).

Concluded is the First Chapter: on the six Origins of Offences

How many offences does one fall into by means of the first origin of offences? One falls into five offences by means of the first origin of offences. A monk, thinking it is allowable, begging; himself, builds a hut without the site being marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it¹; in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence²; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.³ A monk, thinking it is allowable, eats a meal at a wrong time—there is an offence of Expiation.⁴ A monk, thinking it is allowable, eats solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of nun who is not a relation (and) has entered among the houses—there is an offence to be Confessed.⁵ One falls into these five offences by means of the first origin of offences.

Prv.4.3.1

Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences ap-

BD.6.137

¹ Bu-Ss.6. ² As at Vin.3.151. ³ As at Vin.3.151. ⁴ Bu-Pc.37. ⁵ Bu-Pd.1.

pertain to? Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are they comprised? Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do they originate? Of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the seven decidings by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit, it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in five classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body, not by speech, not by mind. Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven decidings they are stopped by three decidings: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement; it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.3.2

How many offences does one fall into by means of the second origin of offences? One falls into four offences by means of the second origin of offences. A monk, thinking it is allowable commands¹“Build a hut for me”.² If they build a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure,³ involving destruction, not with an open space round it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order. A monk, thinking it is allowable, makes someone who is not ordained teach *Dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of Expiation.⁴ One falls into these four offences by means of the second origin of offences.

Vin.5.95

BD.6.138

Of the four fallings away how many ... (see Prv.4.3.1) ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit, it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they

¹ Vin.1.155 reads *samādisati*; above -*diyati*. ² Vin.3.153 (in Bu-Ss.6). ³ Not at Vin.3.153 or in the following paragraphs there. ⁴ Bu-Pc.4.

are comprised in four classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by speech, not by body not by mind. Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven decidings they are stopped by three decidings: ... (see [Prv.4.3.1](#)) ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.3.3

How many offences does one fall into by means of the third origin of offences? One falls into five offences by means of the third origin of offences. A monk, thinking it is allowable, having settled on (a site),¹ builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it; in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.² A monk, thinking it is allowable, having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, eats them, there is an offence of Expiation.³ A monk, thinking it is allowable, without restraining⁴ nuns who are giving directions, eats, there is an offence to be Confessed.⁵ One falls into these five offences by means of the third origin of offences.

Of the four fallings away how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away ... Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in five classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one, it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by speech, not by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.139

Prv.4.3.4

How many offences does one fall into by means of the fourth origin of offences? One falls into six offences ... A monk indulges in sexual in-

¹ *saṃvidahitvā*; word does not appear to be in [Bu-Ss.6](#). ² [Bu-Ss.6](#). ³ [Bu-Pc.39](#).

⁴ *nivāretvā*; forms of this verb are in the narrative portion of *Pāṭidesaniya*, but not in the *sikkhāpada*. ⁵ [Bu-Pd.2](#).

tercourse, there is an offence involving Defeat.¹ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, begging himself, builds a hut without the site being marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it; in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.² A monk, thinking it is not allowable, eats a meal at a wrong time—there is an offence of Expiation.³ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, eats solid food or soft food, having accepted it with his own hand from the hand of a nun who is not a relation (and) has entered among the houses—there is an offence to be Confessed.⁴ One falls into these six offences by means of the fourth origin of offences.

Vin.5.96

Of the four fallings away how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away ... Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in six classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence to be Confessed; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by mind, not by speech. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.3.5

BD.6.140

How many offences does one fall into by means of the fifth origin of offences? One falls into six offences ... A monk of evil wishes,⁵ overcome by desire, claims a non-existent state offurther-men which is not fact⁶—there is an offence involving Defeat.⁷ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, commands “Build a hut for me”. If they build a hut for him, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it, in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁸ A monk thinking it is not allowable, makes someone who is not ordained teach *Dhamma* line by line, there is an offence of Expiation.⁹ If, not desiring to

¹ Bu-Pj.1. ² Bu-Ss.6. ³ Bu-Pc.37. ⁴ Bu-Pd.1. ⁵ Vin.3.90 reads *pāpabhikkhu*; above we get *Monks' pāpiccho icchāpakato*. ⁶ Vin.3.90. ⁷ Bu-Pj.4. ⁸ Bu-Ss.6. ⁹ Bu-Ss.4.

jeer at, not desiring to scoff at, not desiring to shame, (but having) a fondness for joking, he speaks of a low thing in low (words), there is an offence of wrong speech.¹ One falls into these six offences by means of the fifth origin of offences.

Of the four fallings away ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away ... of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in six classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing; it may be in the class of offence of wrong speech. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by speech and by mind, not by body. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.3.6

How many offences does one fall into by means of the sixth origin of offences? One falls into six offences ... A monk, having arranged together (with others), steals the goods,² there is an offence involving Defeat.³ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, having arranged, builds a hut, the site not having been marked out, exceeding the measure, involving destruction, not with an open space round it—in the action there is an offence of wrong-doing; if one lump is still to come there is a grave offence; when that lump has come there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order.⁴ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, eats them, there is an offence of Expiation.⁵ A monk, thinking it is not allowable, without restraining nuns who are giving directions, eats, there is an offence to be Confessed.⁶ One falls into these six offences by means of the sixth origin of offences.

Vin.5.97

BD.6.141

Of the four fallings away how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away ... Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in six classes ... (see Prv.4.3.4) ... it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate

¹ Vin.4.11, in Bu-Pc.2. ² For *saṃvidhāvahāra* see Vin.3.47. Vin.3.53, Vin.3.64 (in Bu-Pj.2); above reading *Monks' saṃvidahitvā bhaṇḍaṃ avaharati*. ³ Bu-Pj.2. ⁴ Bu-Ss.6. ⁵ Bu-Pc.39. ⁶ Bu-Pd.2.

by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Second Chapter: on How Many Offences for the six Originations of Offences

THIS IS ITS KEY

Prv.4.4.1 Bodily origins have been proclaimed for the world's welfare
by Him who had vision of the infinite,¹ vision of aloofness;
By this means how many offences have originated?
I ask this—explain, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /
Bodily origins have been explained for the world's welfare
by Him who had vision of the infinite, vision of aloofness;
By this means five offences have originated:
I explain this to you, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /
Verbal origins have been proclaimed for the world's welfare
... explain, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /
Verbal origins have been explained for the world's welfare ...
four offences have originated:
I explain this to you, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /
Bodily, verbal origins have been proclaimed ... /
BD.6.142 Bodily, verbal origins have been proclaimed ...
five offences have originated ... /
Bodily, mental origins ... six ... /
Verbal, mental origins ... six ... /
Bodily, verbal, mental origins have been proclaimed for the world's welfare
by Him who had vision of the infinite, vision of aloofness;
By this means how many offences have originated?
I ask this—explain, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /
Vin.5.98 Bodily, verbal, mental origins have been proclaimed for the world's welfare
by Him who had vision of the infinite, vision of aloofness;
By this means six offences have originated:
I explain this to you, (thou who art) skilled in the Analyses. /

Concluded is the Third Talk: on the Origin of Offences

Prv.4.5.1 Because of falling away from moral habit how many offences does one fall into? Because of falling away from moral habit one falls into four offences: a nun who knowing of a matter involving Defeat conceals it, falls

¹ *anantadassin*; Cf. SN.i.143.

into an offence involving Defeat¹; if, being in doubt, she conceals it, she falls into a grave offence.² If a monk conceals an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order he falls into an offence of Expiation.³ If he conceals his own very bad offence he falls into an offence of wrong-doing.⁴ Because of falling away from moral habit one falls into these four offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit; it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in four classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence that

BD.6.143

is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.5.2

Because of falling away from good behaviour how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into one offence⁵: if one conceals a falling away from good behaviour one falls into an offence of wrong-doing.⁶ Because of falling away from good behaviour one falls into this one offence. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away does this offence appertain to ... of the seven decidings by how many decidings is it stopped? Of the four fallings away this offence appertains to one falling away: to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence it is comprised in one class of offence: in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences it originates by means of one origin: it originates by body and by speech

¹ Nuns' *Bi-Pj.6*; *Vin.4.216*. ² Not in Nuns' *Bi-Pj.6*. ³ This may refer to *Bu-Pc.64* where there is an offence of *Pācittiya* for concealing a monk's very bad offence, *duṭṭhullā āpatti*. This is so defined at *Vin.4.128* (also at *Vin.4.31*) as to include the 13 Formal Meeting offences. See too *Vin-a.866*. ⁴ Possibly referring to *Vin.2.67f. (Kd.13.34)* where if a monk has fallen into an offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order (see previous note) and thinks it is one and conceals it "he should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing", *yo chādeti so dukkaṭaṃ desāpetabbo*. ⁵ *Vin.4.148*. ⁶ At *Vin.1.172* falling away from good behaviour is defined as a grave offence, one of Expiation, one to be confessed, one of wrong-doing, one of wrong speech. Therefore to conceal any of these entails wrong-doing.

and by mind. Of the four legal questions, the legal question concerned with offences. Of the seven decidings it is stopped by three decidings ... and a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.5.3

Because of falling away from (right) view how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into two offences: if one does not give up a depraved view though being admonished up to the third time, as a result of the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing; at the end of the resolutions there is an offence of Expiation.¹ Because of falling away from (right) view one falls into these two offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to one falling away: to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) grass.

Vin.5.99

BD.6.144

Prv.4.5.4

Because of falling away from a (right) mode of livelihood how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into six offences: for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood one of evil wishes, overcome by desire, claims a non-existent state of further-men which is not fact²—there is an offence involving Defeat; for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood if one acts as a go-between there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order³; for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood if one speaks saying “Whatever monk lives in your *vihāra* is an arahant” there is a grave offence involving recognition⁴; for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood if a monk, having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, eats them, there is an offence of Expiation⁵; for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood if a nun, having asked for sumptuous foods for herself, partakes of them, there is an offence to be Confessed;⁶

¹ Vin.4.136, at the end of Bu-Pc.68. ² Vin.3.90 in Bu-Pj.4. ³ Bu-Ss.5. ⁴ Vin.3.102 in Bu-Pj.4, but where the word *paṭivijānantassa*, involving recognizing, is absent. It occurs, however, in the Commentary on this passage, Vin-a.502. ⁵ Bu-Pc.39. ⁶ Nuns’ Bi-Pd.1-8. The eight items of sumptuous food are defined at Vin.4.88. A Nuns’ *Pāṭidesanīya* concerns each one of them, but lacks the words *attano atthāya*, though the sentiment is there.

for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood if one who is not ill, having asked for curry or conjei for himself, eats it, there is an offence of wrong-doing.¹ Because of falling away from (right) mode of livelihood one falls into these six offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit; it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in six classes of offence ... (see [Prv.4.3.4](#) above) ... offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of the six origins: it may be that they originate by body, not by speech, not by mind; it may be that they originate by speech, not by body, not by mind; it may be that they originate by body and by speech, not by mind; it may be that they originate by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that they originate by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.145

Concluded is the Fourth Chapter: on Because of Falling Away

Because of legal questions concerning disputes how many offences does one fall into? Because of legal questions concerning disputes one falls into two offences: if one insults one who is ordained there is an offence of Expiation²; if one insults one who is not ordained there is an offence of wrong-doing.³ Because of legal questions concerning disputes one falls into these two offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to one falling away: to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of three origins: it may be that they originate by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that they originate by speech and mind, not by body; it may be that they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.4.6.1

Vin.5.100

Prv.4.6.2

¹ Bu-Sk.37. ² Bu-Pc.2. ³ Vin.4.10 in Bu-Pc.2.

Because of legal questions concerning censure how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into three offences: if one defames a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat, there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order¹; if one defames with an unfounded charge of an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, there is an offence of Expiation²; if one defames with an unfounded charge of falling away from good behaviour there is an offence of wrong-doing.³ Because of legal questions concerning censure one falls into these three offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit; it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in three classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of three origins: it may be that they originate by body and by mind, not by speech; it may be that they originate by speech and by mind, not by body; it may be that they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.146

Prv.4.6.3

Because of legal questions concerning offences how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into four offences: a nun who, knowing of a matter involving Defeat, conceals it, falls into an offence involving Defeat⁴; if, being in doubt, she conceals it, she falls into a grave offence⁵; if a monk conceals an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order he falls into an offence of Expiation⁶; if he conceals a falling away from good behaviour he falls into an offence of wrong-doing.⁷ Because of legal questions concerning offences one falls into these four offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit; it may be to falling away from good behaviour. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in four classes

¹ Bu-Ss.9. ² Bu-Pc.76. ³ Bu-Pc.76, Vin.4.148. ⁴ See above Prv.4.5.1. ⁵ See above Prv.4.5.1. ⁶ See above Prv.4.5.1. ⁷ See above Prv.4.5.2

of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offence they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.147

Prv.4.6.4

Because of legal questions concerning obligations how many offences does one fall into? ... one falls into five offences: if a nun, an imitator of one who has been suspended, though being admonished up to the third time does not give up (her course), as a result of the motion there is an offence of wrong-doing, as a result of two resolutions there are grave offences, at the end of the resolutions there is an offence involving Defeat¹; if monks who are imitators of a schismatic, though being admonished up to the third time, do not give up (their course), there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order²; if one, though being admonished up to the third time, does not give up depraved views there is an offence of Expiation.³ Because of legal questions concerning obligations one falls into these five offences. Of the four fallings away how many fallings away do these offences appertain to ... are they stopped? ... to two fallings away ... Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in five classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is a grave one; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by means of one origin: they originate by body and by speech and by mind. Of the four legal questions ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Vin.5.101

Prv.4.6.5

Leaving aside the seven offences, the seven classes of offence—of the four fallings away how many fallings away do the remaining offences appertain to? Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are they comprised? Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do they originate? Of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the seven decidings by how many decidings are they stopped? Leaving aside the seven

¹ Vin.4.119 in Nuns' Bi-Pj.7. ² Bu-Ss.10; but it does not use the word *bhedakānuvattaka*, imitator or follower of a schismatic. ³ Bu-Pc.68.

BD.6.148 offences, the seven classes of offence—it is not:¹ of the four fallings away to which falling away do the remaining offences appertain, of the seven classes of offence in which class of offence are they comprised, of the six origins of offences by which origin do they originate, of the four legal questions which legal question, of the seven decidings by which deciding are they stopped? What is the reason for that? Leaving aside the seven offences and the seven classes of offence there are no other offences.

Concluded is the Fifth Chapter: on Because of Legal Questions

Concluded is Consecutive Repetitions

ITS SUMMARY

Questions on How many? origins,
and likewise How many offences?
Origins, and fallings away,
and so too about legal questions.

¹ I.e. this is a question not properly formulated.

5. SYNOPSIS OF DECIDINGS

What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning disputes how many are the causal occasions, how many the matters, how many the grounds, how many the causes, how many the roots, by how many modes does one dispute, by how many decidings is a legal question concerning disputes stopped?

Prv.5.7.1
BD.6.149

What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning censure ... of a legal question concerning offences ... of a legal question concerning obligations?

Prv.5.7.2
Vin.5.102

“What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning disputes” Greed is a forerunner, hatred is a forerunner, confusion is a forerunner, lack of greed ... lack of hatred ... lack of confusion is a forerunner. “How many are the causal occasions?” There are eighteen causal occasions that are matters making for schism.¹ “How many matters?” There are eighteen matters that are matters making for schism.² “How many grounds?” There are eighteen grounds that are grounds making for schism. “How many causes?” Nine causes: three causes that are skilled, three causes that are unskilled, three causes that are indeterminate.³ “How many roots?” Twelve roots.⁴ “By how many modes does one dispute?” One disputes by two modes: either the view that it is *Dhamma* or the view that it is non-*dhamma*.⁵ “By how many decidings is a legal question concerning disputes stopped?” A

¹ See the set of eighteen at [Kd.14.14.2](#), but they have no generic name there. ² Eighteen *vattu* given at [Vin.1.354f.](#), first, beginning with the negative aspect: *adhamma avinaya*, etc., to illustrate what would be the words of a monk regarded as an *adhammavādin*; and then, with the positive aspect stated first, to illustrate those of a monk regarded as a *dhammavādin*.

³ Cf. [Kd.14.14.8](#). ⁴ *mūla*, root or source or ground. Two sets of six each are given at [Kd.14.14.3](#), followed by three unskilled sources and then three skilled ones. ⁵ Given at [Kd.14.14.2](#); also at [Vin.1.354](#).

legal question concerning disputes is stopped by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by the decision of the majority.¹

Prv.5.7.3

BD.6.150

“What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning censure?” Greed ... non-confusion is a forerunner. “How many are the causal occasions?” The four fallings away are causal occasions. “How many matters?” The four fallings away are matters. “How many grounds?” The four fallings away are grounds.² “How many causes?” Nine causes: three causes that are skilled, three causes that are unskilled three causes that are indeterminate.³ “How many roots?” Fourteen roots. “By how many modes does one censure?” One censures by two modes: by the matter or by the offence. “By how many decidings is a legal question concerning censure stopped?” A legal question concerning censure is stopped by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by the decision for specific depravity.⁴

Prv.5.7.4

“What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning offences?” ... non-confusion is a forerunner. “How many are the causal occasions?” The seven classes of offence are causal occasions. “How many matters?” The seven classes of offence are matters. “How many grounds?” The seven classes of offence are grounds. “How many causes?” Nine causes ... three causes that are indeterminate. “How many roots?” The six origins of offences are roots. “By how many modes ... ?” By six modes one falls into an offence: through being shameless, through ignorance, through being scrupulous by nature, through thinking it is allowable when it is not allowable, through thinking it is not allowable when it is allowable, through confusion of mindfulness. “By how many decidings is a legal question concerning offences stopped?” ... it is stopped by three decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass.⁵

Prv.5.7.5

“What is the forerunner of a legal question concerning obligations?” ... non-confusion is a forerunner. “How many are the causal occasions?” Four (formal) acts are causal occasions.⁶ “How many matters?” Four (formal) acts are matters. “How many grounds?” Four (formal) acts are grounds. “How many causes?” Nine causes ... three that are indeterminate. “How many

BD.6.151

¹ Kd.14.14.16. ² Kd.14.14.2. ³ Kd.14.14.9. ⁴ Kd.14.14.27. ⁵ Kd.14.14.30. ⁶ Kd.14.14.11.

roots?" The Order is the one root. "By how many modes is an obligation produced?" An obligation is produced by two modes: by a motion or by asking for leave.¹ "By how many decidings is a legal question concerning obligations stopped?" A legal question concerning obligations is stopped by one decidings: by a verdict in the presence of.² How many are the decidings? Seven decidings: a verdict in the presence of, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, the decision of the majority, the decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass. These seven decidings.³ Might it be that these seven decidings become ten decidings, that ten decidings become seven decidings according to the presentation⁴ of the matter? It might be. How can it be? There are two decidings of a legal question concerning disputes four decidings of a legal question concerning censure, three decidings of a legal question concerning offences, one deciding of a legal question concerning obligations. Thus these seven decidings become ten decidings, the ten decidings become seven decidings according to the presentation of the matter.

Prv.5.7.6
Vin.5.103

Concluded is the Sixth Chapter: that on Presentation

How many decidings of a legal question concerning disputes are in common,⁵ how many decidings of a legal question concerning disputes are not in common? How many decidings of a legal question concerning censure ... concerning offences ... concerning obligations are in common ... not in common?

Prv.5.8.1

Two decidings of a legal question concerning disputes are in common: a verdict in the presence of, the decision of the majority. Five decidings of a legal question concerning disputes are not in common: a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass.

Four decidings of a legal question concerning censure are in common: a verdict in the presence of, a verdict of innocence a verdict of past insanity, a decision for specific depravity. Three decidings of a legal question concern-

BD.6.152

¹ Vin.2.89; see also Vin.4.152. ² Kd.14.14.34 ³ As at Vin.4.207; explained in detail at Vin.2.8off. ⁴ *pariyāya*, defined at MN-a.i.18., MN-a.i.89. ⁵ As seen in the next paragraph *sādhāraṇa*, in common, does not mean here shared by monks and nuns.

ing censure are not in common: the decision of the majority, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a covering over (as) with grass.

Three decidings of a legal question concerning offences are in common: a verdict in the presence of, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a covering over (as) with grass. Four decidings of a legal question concerning offences are not in common: the decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a decision for specific depravity.

One deciding is in common with a legal question concerning obligations: a verdict in the presence of. Six decidings are not in common with a legal question concerning obligations: the decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Seventh Chapter: on In Common

Prv.5.9.1

How many decidings of a legal question concerning disputes belong to that? How many decidings of a legal question concerning disputes belong to others?¹ How many decidings of a legal question concerning censure ... of a legal question concerning offences ... of a legal question concerning obligations belong to others?

Vin.5.104

Two decidings of a legal question concerning disputes belong to that ... (as in Prv.5.8.1; instead of in common and not in common read belong to that and belong to others.)

Concluded is the Eighth Chapter: on Belongs to That

Prv.5.10.1

Are decidings of a deciding in common, are decidings of a deciding not in common? It may be that decidings of a deciding are in common, it may be that decidings of a deciding are not in common.

How may it be that decidings of a deciding are in common, how may it be that decidings of a deciding are not in common.

The decision of the majority is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a verdict of innocence, with a verdict of past

BD.6.153

¹ I.e. to other legal questions.

insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass.

A verdict of innocence is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass, a decision of the majority.

A verdict of past insanity is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass, a decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence.

A carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass, a decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity.

A decision for specific depravity is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a covering over (as) with grass, a decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement.

A covering over (as) with grass is in common with a verdict in the presence of; it is not in common with a decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity.

Thus it may be that decidings are in common with a deciding, thus it may be that decidings are not in common with a deciding.

Concluded is the Ninth Chapter: on Decidings in common with a Deciding

Do the decidings of a deciding belong to that? Do the decidings of a deciding belong to others? It may be ... (as in [Prv.5.10.1](#); instead of in common and not in common read belong to that and belong to others.)

Prv.5.11.1

Concluded is the Tenth Chapter: on Do the Decidings of a Deciding belong to That

A deciding is a verdict in the presence of, a verdict in the presence of is a deciding. A deciding is a decision of the majority, a decision of the

Prv.5.12.1
BD.6.154

majority is a deciding. A deciding is a verdict of innocence ... a verdict of past insanity ... a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... a decision for specific depravity ... is a covering over (as) with grass, a covering over (as) with grass is a deciding.

Vin.5.105

A decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass—these decidings are decidings, but not a verdict in the presence of. A verdict in the presence of is a deciding as well as being a verdict in the presence of.

A verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass, a verdict in the presence of—these decidings are decidings, but not the decision of the majority. A decision of the majority is a deciding as well as being a decision of the majority.

A verdict in the presence of, a decision of the majority, a verdict of innocence, a verdict of past insanity, a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement, a decision for specific depravity—these decidings are decidings, but not a covering over (as) with grass. A covering over (as) with grass is a deciding as well as being a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Eleventh Chapter: on A Verdict in the Presence of being a Deciding

Prv.5.13.1

A verdict is a verdict in the presence of, a verdict in the presence of is a verdict ... a verdict is a covering over (as) with grass, a covering over (as) with grass is a verdict.

A verdict may be a verdict in the presence of and it may not be a verdict in the presence of. A verdict in the presence of is a verdict as well as being a verdict in the presence of.

A verdict may be a decision of the majority ... a verdict of innocence ... a verdict of past insanity ... a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... a decision for specific depravity ... a covering over (as) with grass and it may not be a covering over (as) with grass. A covering over (as) with grass is a verdict as well as being a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.155

Concluded is the Twelfth Chapter: on Verdict

Is a verdict in the presence of skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? Is a decision of the majority skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? ... Is a covering over (as) with grass skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? Prv.5.14.1

A verdict in the presence of may be skilled, it may be indeterminate; there is no unskilled verdict in the presence of. The decision of the majority may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate. A verdict of innocence ... a verdict of past insanity ... a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... a decision for specific depravity ... a covering over (as) with grass may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate.

Is a legal question concerning disputes skilled, unskilled, indeterminate¹? Is a legal question concerning censure ... a legal question concerning offences ... concerning obligations skilled, unskilled, indeterminate? Vin.5.106

A legal question concerning disputes may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate. A legal question concerning censure ... may be indeterminate. A legal question concerning offences may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate; there is no legal question concerning offences that is skilled. A legal question concerning obligations may be skilled, it may be unskilled, it may be indeterminate.

Concluded is the Thirteenth Chapter: on Skilled

Where a decision of the majority is possible there a verdict in the presence of is possible; where a verdict in the presence of is possible there a decision of the majority is possible.² Not possible there is a verdict of innocence ... a verdict of past insanity ... a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... a decision for specific depravity ... a covering over (as) with grass. Prv.5.15.1

Where a verdict of innocence is possible there a verdict in the presence of is possible; where a verdict in the presence of is possible there a verdict of innocence is possible. Not possible there is a verdict of past insanity ... (Cf. [Prv.5.10.1](#)). BD.6.156

Where a covering over (as) with grass is possible there a verdict in the presence of is possible; where a verdict in the presence of is possible there

¹ [Vin.2.91](#), where explanations are given. ² [Vin.2.97](#); also see [Vin.2.84](#).

a covering over (as) with grass is possible. Not possible there is a decision of the majority not possible there is a verdict of innocence ... a verdict of past insanity ... a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... a decision for specific depravity.

Prv.5.15.2

Where there is a decision of the majority there is a verdict in the presence of; where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a decision of the majority. Not there is there a verdict of innocence, not there ... (see Prv.5.15.1 *Omit here the words* is possible.)

Where there is a verdict of innocence there is there a verdict in the presence of; where there is a verdict in the presence of there is there a verdict of innocence. Not there is ...

To make the root a verdict in the presence of¹ ...

Where there is a covering over (as) with grass there is there a verdict in the presence of; where there is a verdict in the presence of there is there a covering over (as) with grass. Not there is there a decision of the majority ... not there is there a decision for specific depravity.

*Repetition of the Cycle.*² *Concluded is the Fourteenth Chapter: on Where*

Prv.5.16.1

On that occasion when a legal question is settled by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority, where a decision of the majority is possible there a verdict in the presence of is possible; where a verdict in the presence of is possible there a decision of the majority is possible. Not possible there is a verdict of innocence ... a covering over (as) with grass.

Vin.5.107

BD.6.157

On that occasion when a legal question is settled by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence, where ...

On that occasion when a legal question is settled by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass, where a covering over (as) with grass is possible there a verdict in the presence of is possible; where a verdict in the presence of is possible there a covering over (as) with grass is possible. Not possible there is a decision of the majority, not possible there is a verdict of innocence ... not possible there is a decision for specific depravity.

¹ *sammukhāvīṇayaṃ kātūna mūlaṃ*. See **BD Introduction**, p.xvi. ² *cakka*, wheel, series, cycle; the arrangement. The word is use same sense as above at e.g. **Vin.1.330ff**.

Concluded is the Fifteenth Chapter: on Occasion

“Legal question” or “deciding”—are these things associated or dissociated, and is it possible, having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them¹? “Legal question” or “deciding”—these things are dissociated, not associated, and it is possible to point to a difference between them—this should certainly not be said. “Legal question” or “deciding”—these things are associated, not dissociated, and it is not possible, having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them. What is the reason for this? Was it not said by the Lord: “There are, monks, these four legal questions and seven decidings. Legal questions are settled by decidings; decidings are settled by legal questions. Thus these things are associated, not dissociated, and it is not possible ... to point to a difference between them.”²

Prv.5.17.1

Concluded is the Sixteenth Chapter: on Associated

By how many decidings is a legal question concerning disputes stopped? By how many decidings is a legal question concerning censure ... a legal question concerning offences ... a legal question concerning obligations stopped?

Prv.5.18.1

A legal question concerning disputes is stopped by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority.³ A legal question concerning censure is stopped by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity.⁴ A legal question concerning offences is stopped by three decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on his acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass.⁵ A legal question concerning obligations is stopped by one decidings: by a verdict in the presence of.⁶

BD.6.158

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure stopped? A legal question concerning

¹ Cf. MN.i.293, Mi.63, Atthasālinī 311, Vism.438. ² Untraced in so many words, but the sentiment is precisely that of Kd.14.14, ... Cf. also Vin.5.93, MN.ii.247, and indeed the words “There are, these four legal questions” occur there. ³ Vin.2.93. ⁴ Vin.2.99. ⁵ Vin.2.102.

⁶ Vin.2.104.

disputes and a legal question concerning censure are stopped by five decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity.

Vin.5.108

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning offences stopped? ... by four deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by two deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences stopped? ... by six decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity.

BD.6.159

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by three deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences stopped? ... by seven deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by five deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of

past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by six deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by seven deciding: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Seventeenth Chapter: on Is Stopped

By how many decidings is a legal question concerning disputes ... a legal question concerning censure ... a legal concerning offences ... a legal question concerning obligations stopped, by how many decidings is it not stopped?

Prv.5.19.1

A legal question concerning disputes is stopped by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority; it is not stopped by five decidings: by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a decision for specific depravity nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.160

A legal question concerning censure is stopped by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity; it is not stopped by three decidings: by a decision of the majority nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

A legal question concerning offences is stopped by three decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass; it is not stopped by four decidings:

by a decision of the majority nor by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a decision for specific depravity.

Vin.5.109

A legal question concerning obligations is stopped by one deciding: by a verdict in the presence of; it is not stopped by six decidings: by a decision of the majority nor by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a decision for specific depravity nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure stopped, by how many decidings are they not stopped? A legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure are stopped by five decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity; they are not stopped by two decidings: by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning offences stopped ... by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass; they are not stopped by three decidings: by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a decision for specific depravity.

BD.6.161

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority; they are not stopped by five decidings: by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a decision for specific depravity nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences stopped? ... by six decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass; they are not stopped by one deciding: by a decision of the majority.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a

legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity; they are not stopped by three decidings: by a decision of the majority nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by three decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass; they are not stopped by four decidings: by a decision of the majority nor by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a decision for specific depravity.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences stopped? ... by seven decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.162

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by five decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity; they are not stopped by two decidings: by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a covering over (as) with grass.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by six decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass; they are not stopped by one deciding: a decision of the majority.

By how many decidings are a legal question concerning disputes and a legal question concerning censure and a legal question concerning offences and a legal question concerning obligations stopped? ... by seven decidings:

by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict-of past insanity and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a decision for specific depravity and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Concluded is the Eighteenth Chapter: on Are Stopped and Are Not Stopped

Prv.5.20.1

Decidings are stopped by decidings, decidings are stopped by legal questions, legal questions are stopped by decidings, legal questions are stopped by legal questions.

Vin.5.110

It may be that decidings are stopped by decidings ... not stopped by decidings; it may be that decidings are stopped by legal questions ... not stopped by legal questions, it may be that legal questions are stopped by decidings ... not stopped by decidings; it may be that legal questions are stopped by legal questions ... are not stopped by legal questions.

BD.6.163

How may it be that decidings are stopped by decidings, how may it be that decidings are not stopped by decidings? A decision of the majority is stopped by a verdict in the presence of; it is not stopped by a verdict of innocence, it is not stopped by a verdict of past insanity ... by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... by a decision for specific depravity ... by a covering over (as) with grass. A verdict of innocence is stopped by a verdict in the presence of; it is not stopped by a verdict of past insanity ... (Cf. **Prv.5.10.1**) ... A covering over (as) with grass is stopped by a verdict in the presence of; it is not stopped by a decision of the majority, it is not stopped by a verdict of innocence ... by a verdict of past insanity ... by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement ... by a decision for specific depravity. Thus there may be decidings that are stopped by decidings, thus there may be decidings that are not stopped by decidings.

How may it be that decidings are stopped by legal questions, how may it be that decidings are not stopped by legal questions? A verdict in the presence of is stopped by a legal question concerning disputes it is not stopped by a legal question concerning censure ... offences, it is stopped by a legal question concerning obligations. A decision of the majority is stopped by a legal question concerning disputes it is not stopped by a legal question concerning censure ... offences ... obligations. A verdict of innocence is not

stopped by a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations. A verdict of past insanity is not stopped by a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations. A carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is not stopped by a legal question concerning disputes ... censure, it is stopped by a legal question concerning offences, it is not stopped by a legal question concerning obligations. A decision for specific depravity ... a covering over (as) with grass is not stopped by a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations. Thus there may be decidings that are stopped by legal questions, thus there may be decidings that are not stopped by legal questions.

How may it be that legal questions are stopped by decidings, how may be that legal questions are not stopped by decidings? A legal question concerning disputes is stopped by a verdict in the presence of and by a decision of the majority; it is stopped by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict for past insanity nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a decision for specific depravity nor by a covering over (as) with grass. A legal question concerning censure is stopped by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity; it is not stopped by a decision of the majority nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a covering over (as) with grass. A legal question concerning offences is stopped by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as) with grass; it is not stopped by a decision of the majority nor by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a decision for specific depravity. A legal question concerning obligations is stopped by a verdict in the presence of; it is not stopped by a decision of the majority nor by a verdict of innocence nor by a verdict of past insanity nor by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement nor by a decision for specific depravity nor by a covering over (as) with grass. Thus there may be legal questions that are stopped by decidings, thus there may be legal questions that are not stopped by decidings.

How may it be that legal questions are stopped by legal questions, how may it be that legal questions are not stopped by legal questions? A legal question concerning disputes is not stopped by a legal question concern-

BD.6.164

Vin.5.111

ing censure, it is not stopped by a legal question concerning offences; it is stopped by a legal question concerning obligations. A legal question concerning censure ... a legal question concerning offences ... a legal question concerning obligations is not stopped by a legal question concerning disputes it is not stopped by a legal question concerning censure, it is not stopped by a legal question concerning offences; it is stopped by a legal question concerning obligations. Thus there may be legal questions that are stopped by legal questions, thus there may be legal questions that are not stopped by legal questions.

BD.6.165

Six decidings as well as the four legal questions are stopped by a verdict in the presence of; a verdict in the presence of is stopped by some.

Concluded is the Nineteenth Chapter: on Decidings and Legal Questions

Prv.5.21.1

Of the four legal questions which legal question originates a legal question concerning disputes Of the four legal questions it is not which legal question originates a legal question concerning disputes yet because of a legal question concerning disputes the four legal questions arise. How is it like that? As to this monks are disputing, saying, "It is *Dhamma*" or "It is not *Dhamma*" or "It is Discipline" or "It is not Discipline" or ... (see [Kd.14.14.2](#)) ... this is called a legal question concerning disputes If the Order disputes about a legal question concerning disputes there is a legal question concerning disputes If one censures when he is disputing, there is a legal question concerning censure. If one falls into an offence when he is censuring, there is a legal question concerning offences. If the Order carries out a (formal) act for these offences, there is a legal question concerning obligations. Thus it is that because of a legal question concerning disputes the four legal questions arise.

Of the four legal questions ... (*as before*) ... legal question concerning censure? ... yet because of a legal question concerning censure the four legal questions arise. How is it like that? As to this monks are censuring a monk ... (see [Kd.14.14.2](#)) ... this is called a legal question concerning censure. If the Order disputes about a legal question concerning censure, there is a legal question concerning disputes If one censures as he is disputing ... (*as*

before) ... Thus it is that because of a legal question concerning censure the four legal questions arise.

Of the four legal questions ... a legal question concerning offences? ... yet because of a legal question concerning offences the four legal questions arise. How is it like that? Both the five classes of offence ... (see [Kd.14.14.2](#)) ... this is called a legal question concerning offences. If the Order disputes about a legal question concerning offences, there is a legal question concerning disputes If one censures ... Thus it is that because of a legal question concerning offences the four legal questions arise.

Vin.5.112

BD.6.166

Of the four legal questions ... legal question concerning obligations? ... yet because of a legal question concerning obligations the four legal questions arise. How is it like that? Whatever is an Order's business ... (see [Kd.14.14.2](#)) ... This is called a legal question concerning obligations. If the Order disputes about a legal question concerning obligations there is a legal question concerning disputes If one censures as he is disputing ... Thus it is that because of a legal question concerning obligations the four legal questions arise.

Concluded is the Twentieth Chapter: on Originating

Of the four legal questions to which legal question does the legal question concerning disputes appertain, which legal question is it dependent on, which legal question is it included in, in which legal question is it comprised? Of the four legal questions to which legal question does the legal question concerning censure ... concerning offences ... concerning obligations appertain ... in which legal question is it comprised?

Prv.5.22.1

Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning disputes appertains to a legal question concerning disputes it is dependent on a legal question concerning disputes it is included in a legal question concerning disputes it is comprised in a legal question concerning disputes Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning censure appertains to a legal question concerning censure ... the legal question concerning offences ... the legal question concerning obligations ... is comprised in a legal question concerning obligations.

Of the seven decidings to how many decidings does a legal question concerning disputes appertain, how many decidings is it dependent on, how many decidings is it included in, in how many decidings is it comprised, by how many decidings is it stopped? Of the seven decidings to how many decidings does a legal question concerning censure ... concerning offences ... concerning obligations appertain ... by how many decidings is it stopped?

BD.6.167

Of the seven decidings a legal question concerning disputes appertains to two decidings, is dependent on two decidings, is included in two decidings, is comprised in two decidings, is stopped by two decidings: a verdict in the presence of and a decision of the majority. Of the seven decidings a legal question concerning censure appertains to four decidings ... is stopped by four decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence and by a verdict of past insanity and by a decision for specific depravity. Of the four decidings a legal question concerning offences appertains to three decidings ... is stopped by three decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by a carrying out on (his) acknowledgement and by a covering over (as)

Vin.5.113

with grass. Of the seven decidings a legal question concerning obligations appertains to one deciding ... is stopped by one deciding: by a verdict in the presence of.

*Concluded is the Synopsis of Decidings.*¹

ITS SUMMARY

Legal question come to presentation,² and those that are in common, those that belong,

Decidings of a deciding in common, that belong to that, /

Also decidings in the presence of, about verdict, and about skilled,

Where, occasion, associated, they stop, and they do not stop.

Also decidings and legal-questions, originating, and they appertain. /

¹ Kd.14 to which this Section pertains, is called Samathakkhandhaka. ² *pariyāpanna*. This is not the same as *pariyāpanna* ("included") in Prv.5.22.1 just above. It must be taken as *pariyā* (+या, omitted *metri causa*) + *āpanna* since *pariyāya-vāra* is the name given to the first chapter in this Samathabheda Section, i.e. Prv.5.7.

6. QUESTIONS ON THE KHANDHAKAS

I asked¹ about ordination with its provenance, with its demonstration: how many are the offences according to the eminent sentences?² I was answered about ordination with its provenance, with its demonstration: according to the eminent sentences there are two offences.³

I asked about the Observance with its provenance ... three offences.⁴

I asked about the beginning of the rains ... one offence.⁵

Prv.6.1
Vin.5.114
BD.6.168

Prv.6.2

Prv.6.3

Prv.6.4

¹ *pucchissarī*, an unusual form of the aorist. ² *samukkaṭṭhapada*. At Vin-a.1318 it is said, “There these sentences (*pada*, words) are called eminent (*samukkaṭṭha*), highest (*uttama*). In brief (*sankhepato*), how many offences are there according to these eminent sentences, highest sentences?” This is interesting since *ukkaṭṭha* means both eminent and condensed. See too AN.iv.140 where *samukkaṭṭha* is explained by *uttama*. ³ The first 10 questions here refer to the 10 Khandhakas in the Mahāvagga, and the remaining 12 to the 12 Khandhakas in the Cullavagga. Ordination belongs to Mahāvagga 1. But as it is overshadowed there by the account of the Awakening and the subsequent events and as ordination there gives no occasions producing offences, these are perhaps reasons why Recourse is had to Bu-Pc.65: there is an offence of expiation for ordaining a man under twenty years of age; and, as Vin-a.1318 says, “according to all the remaining sentences there is an offence of wrong-doing”. For these sentences see Vin.4.130. This is the only time there is flight from the Khandhakas to the Suttavibhaṅga in this Section. ⁴ See Kd.2, the Uposathakkhandhaka. Vin-a.1318 says that if incoming monks, being doubtful, say to the resident monks, “You are perishing, you are being destroyed,” and carry out the Observance aiming at a schism, there is a grave offence—referring to Vin.1.133; if the Observance is carried out with one who is suspended there is an offence of *Pācittiya* (possibly referring to Kd.2.36.2 which in its turn possibly refers to Bu-Pc.69); for the rest there is an offence of wrong-doing. ⁵ Vin-a.1318 says “there is just the one offence, of wrong-doing, in the Vassūpanāyikakkhandhaka” (Kd.3). Here a certain amount of offences of wrong-doing are laid down but no other type of offence is mentioned.

Prv.6.5	I asked about the “Invitation” ... three offences. ¹
Prv.6.6	I asked about what is connected with hides ... three offences. ²
BD.6.169	I asked about medicines ... three offences. ³
Prv.6.7	I asked about <i>kaṭhina</i> ... no offences. ⁴
Prv.6.8	I asked about what is connected with robe-material ... three offences. ⁵
Prv.6.9	I asked about the monks at Campā ... one offence. ⁶
Prv.6.10	I asked about the monks of Kosambī ... one offence. ⁷
Prv.6.11	I asked about the Khandhaka for (formal) acts ... one offence. ⁸
Prv.6.12	I asked about probation ... one offence. ⁹
Prv.6.13	I asked about accumulation ... one offence. ¹⁰
Prv.6.14	I asked about decidings ... two offences. ¹¹
Prv.6.15	

¹ Pavāraṇakkhandhaka, *Kd.4*. If monks “invite” aiming at a schism, there is a grave offence, *Vin.1.167*; there is an offence of *Pācittiya* for inviting with one who has been suspended (perhaps referring to *Kd.4.14.2*, *Kd.4.143*, at *Vin.1.168*); in the other sentences there is an offence of wrong-doing. ² Cammakkhanda, *Kd.5*. *Vin.-a.1318*, following *Vin.1.191*, says the offences are 1) of *Pācittiya* (*Bu-Pc.61*) for killing a calf; 2) a grave one for, with a lustful mind, touching a calf’s private parts; 3) for the rest, there is an of wrong-doing (probably for mounting on a calf, as also at *Vin.1.191*). ³ Bhesajjakkhandhaka, *Kd.6*. The offences are 1) a grave one for “a distance of two finger-breadths”, *Vin.1.216*; 2) one of *Pācittiya* for eating someone else’s eating-conjey, *Vin.1.224* where *yathādhammo* refers to *Bu-Pc.33*; 3) for the rest there is an offence of wrong-doing. ⁴ Kaṭhinakkhandhaka, *Kd.7*. This is simply a laying down, *paññatti*, of regulations. See too *Kaṭhinavagga*, *Vin.3.195-202*, covering the first 10 *Nissaggiya* rules and giving the type of offence incurred for breaking them. ⁵ Cīvarakkhandhaka, *Kd.8*. There is 1) a grave offence for wearing a garment made of kusa-grass, bark and so on (*Vin.1.306*); 2) one should be dealt with according to the rule, *yathādhammo* (given at *Vin.3.195* in *Bu-NP.1*) for wearing an extra robe (*Vin.1.289*); 3) the rest are offences of wrong-doing. ⁶ Campeyyakkhandhaka, *Kd.9*. The one offence is one of wrong-doing, *Vin.1.315*. ⁷ Kosambakkhandhaka, *Kd.10*. The offence is one of wrong-doing, *Kd.10.5.10*. ⁸ Kammakkhandhaka, *Kd.11*. *Vin.-a.1318* says the one offence is one of wrong-doing. It appears to be referred to at *Kd.11.20.1* under the term *yathādhammo*. ⁹ Pārivāsikkhandhaka, *Kd.12*. At *Vin.2.31* there is an offence of wrong-doing. ¹⁰ Samuccayakkhandhaka, *Kd.13*. At *Vin.2.67f.* a monk should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing, so *dukkatāṃ desāpetabbo*, for concealing various kinds of offences there enumerated. ¹¹ Samathakkhandhaka, *Kd.14*. An offence of *Pācittiya* which is mentioned in this Khandhaka at *Vin.2.94* is taken by *Vin.-a.1318* to refer to *Bu-Pc.79*. Another offence of *Pācittiya* is mentioned at *Vin.2.94* but is ignored at *Vin.-a.1318*. It is difficult to say why one should be chosen in preference to the other. This Khandhaka also gives two offences of wrong-doing at *Vin.2.73*, *Vin.2.83*.

I asked about minor matters ... three offences.¹

Prv.6.16

I asked about lodgings ... three offences.²

Prv.6.17

I asked about schism in an Order ... two offences.³

BD.6.170

I asked about conduct⁴ ... one offence.⁵

Prv.6.18

I asked about suspension (of the Pātimokkha) ... one offence.⁶

Prv.6.19

I asked about the Nuns' Khandhaka ... two offences.⁷

Prv.6.20

I asked about the Five Hundred ... no offence.⁸

Prv.6.21

I asked about the Seven Hundred ... no offence.⁹

Prv.6.22

Concluded is the First¹⁰ Chapter: on Questions on the Khandhakas

¹ Khuddakavattthukkhandhaka, **Kd.15**, Vin-a.1318 says that if one cuts off his own male organ there is a grave offence (**Vin.2.110**); in ruminating there an offence of *Pācittiya*. That is to say at **Vin.2.132**, “whoever should so eat would be dealt with according to the rule,” i.e. presumably according to **Bu-Pc.37** or **Bu-Pc.38**. In the remaining (sentences) there is an offence of wrong-doing. ² *Senāsanakkhandhaka*, **Kd.16**. There is a grave offence for disposing of important belongings, **Vin.2.170**. (There is another grave offence in **Kd.16**, **Vin.2.172**: again, why does Commentary choose the one rather than the other?); 2) in throwing out from a *vihāra* belonging to an Order one should be dealt with according to the rule—this is at **Vin.2.166**, referring to **Bu-Pc.17**; 3) in the remaining sentences there is an offence of wrong-doing. ³ *Samghabhedakkhandhaka*, **Kd.17**. 1) monks who are partisans (or imitators) of schismatics are to be made to confess a grave offence (**Vin.2.20**); 2) in a group-meal there is an offence of *Pācittiya* (**Bu-Pc.32**). I can only think that this is included under schism by the Commentary because the narrative introducing the formulation of **Bu-Pc.32** is concerned with Devadatta, the schismatic though schism is not mentioned there in so many words. ⁴ *samācāra*. Vin-a.1318 takes this name to refer to *Vattakkhandhaka*, **Kd.18**. ⁵ At **Vin.2.220** there is an offence of wrong-doing that Vin-a.1318 distinguishes from another which is at **Vin.2.221** by the use of the word *anādariya* which is in the narrative portion at **Vin.2.220**. ⁶ An offence of wrong-doing for the suspension, *ṭhapana*, of the Pātimokkha for monks who are without offences, **Vin.2.241** in the *Pātimokkhaṭṭhapanakkhandhaka*, **Kd.10**. ⁷ *Bhikkhunikkhandhaka*, **Kd.20**. Following Vin-a.1319 the offences may be identified with, first, **Vin.2.275** where, if nuns do not “invite”, they should be dealt with according to the rule, i.e. Nuns' **Bi-Pc.57**; and, secondly, the rest are offences of wrong-doing. Another offence of *Pācittiya* (Nuns' **Bi-Pc.85**) is referred to in this *Khandhaka*, **Vin.2.276**, by the term *yathāhammo*. Again, therefore, there is the puzzle of why the Commentary chooses one offence rather than the other. ⁸ *Pañcasatikakkhandhaka*, **Kd.21**. This and **Kd.22** are merely compendiums of *Dhamma*, i.e. accounts of the First and Second Councils, contain no offences. ⁹ *Sattasatikakkhandhaka*, **Kd.22**. ¹⁰ There seems no reason to call this Chapter “the First”. The Commentary ends here, so it is futile to think that some material is now lost.

ITS SUMMARY

Ordination, Observance, the beginning of the rains, Invitation,
 Hides, medicines, *kaṭhina*, robe-material,
 and about (the monks) of Campā, /
 The Kosambī-kkhandhaka, a (formal) act, probation, accumulation,
 Decidings, minor matters, lodgings,¹ schism in the Order, conduct,
 Suspension, and of the nuns,
 and about the Five-, the Seven-Hundred. /

¹ *senā*, abbreviated from *senāsana*.

7. AS TO GRADUATION

1. UNITS

1. ¹ Things making for offences should be known.²
2. Things not making for offences should be known.³
3. An offence should be known.⁴
4. What is not an offence should be known.⁵
5. A slight offence should be known.⁶

Prv.7.1
BD.6.171
Vin.5.115

¹ *ekuttaraka*, gradation, succession, progression of topics arranged in categories of things that are one to things that partake of eleven. Called at Uttaravinicchaya p.266, Ekuttaranaya, and arranged on the same plan, but in less detail than in Parivāra, and sometimes differing. The whole of the Aṅguttara-nikāya, sometimes called the Ekuttarika-nikāya, is arranged on this same plan also. Though the items in this First Chapter can each be regarded as “one”, several are in fact arranged by dyads. ² The six originations of offences, by means of which an individual falls into an offence, Vin-a.1319. ³ The seven decidings, Vin-a.1319. ⁴ The *sikkhāpada* and the Analysis (Monks’ or Nuns’) where an offence is to be found should be known. ⁵ Vin-a.1319 is apparently referring to [Vin.3.33](#), [Vin.3.35](#) when it cites “There is no offence, monks, for one who is not willing” (or, “does not agree”) as the way to begin the method of dealing with this clause; Cf. [Vin.3.29f](#). ⁶ The fivefold offence from which one is purified by a light or slight, *lahuka*, formal act (or, disciplinary action). See [Vin.1.49](#) where the “light (formal) act” is “light” compared with the five formal acts of censure, guidance, banishment, reconciliation and suspension. Its nature is not specified, but see Vin-a.1195. In general, it would seem that, taking the seven classes of offence (see [Vin.5.91](#)) into account, the first, the *Pārājika* group, may be ignored because no disciplinary proceedings exist for a monk or nun once there has been for him or her expulsion from the Order for good; the second type of offence, Saṃghādisesa, is a serious one, *garukāpatti*; the five remaining types (*thullaccaya*, *Pācittiya*, *Pāṭidesaniya*, *dukkata* and *dubbhāsita*) are therefore slight offences, *lahukā āpattiyo*.

6. A serious offence should be known.¹
7. An offence that can be done away with should be known.²
8. An offence that cannot be done away with should be known.³
9. A very bad offence should be known.⁴
10. An offence that is not very bad should be known.⁵
11. An offence for which amends are made should be known.⁶
12. An offence for which amends are not made should be known.⁷
13. An offence leading on to confession should be known.⁸
14. An offence not leading on to confession should be known.⁹
15. An offence that is a stumbling-block should be known.¹⁰
16. An offence the description (of which) is “blamable” should be known.¹¹

¹ An offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order from which one is purified by a serious or weighty, *garuka*, disciplinary action. But at [Vin.2.101](#) a *garukā āpatti* is taken as a *Pārājika* offence or one bordering on it. Vin-a.1195 names six serious formal acts: *cha kammāni garukāni*: agreement on a boundary, abolition of a boundary, giving of *kaṭhina* (privileges), suspension of *kaṭhina* (privileges), marking out the site for a hut, marking out the site for a *vihāra*. This and the next three items are found at [Vin.1.65](#); ignorance of them four of the reasons why a monk may not ordain and so on; and with the next seven items they occur at [Vin.1.354](#), [Vin.2.88](#), [Vin.2.204](#). ² *sāvasesā*, what has a remainder. This means all offences except *Pārājikas* have no “remainder” for there is nothing to be done by the Order for an expelled monk or nun. ³ This is a *Pārājika* offence. ⁴ According to [Vin.4.31](#) this belongs to two offence-categories: Defeat and Formal Meeting. ⁵ All the remaining kinds of offences, having excluded the two mentioned in the last note. ⁶ Cf. [Vin.1.97](#), [Vin.2.25](#). ⁷ Vin-a.1319 says this dyad is like the *sāvasesā* dyad. ⁸ See [Vin.2.3](#). ⁹ Vin-a.1319 says this dyad is comprised in the “slight” dyad (i.e. the third in this Chapter). The penalties of the second part of the dyad do not include censure or confession, and so refer to a Defeat or a Formal Meeting offence, see Vin-a.1155 on [Kd.11](#). ¹⁰ *antarāyikā* and *anantarāyikā āpatti*. Vin-a.1319 says stumbling-blocks mean that if the seven classes of offence are transgressed intentionally they make a stumbling-block to heaven and a stumbling-block to deliverance. But for one transgressing them unknowingly, though it is a blamable offence for him, it is a stumbling-block neither to heaven nor to deliverance. For further references see [BD.3.21](#), [n.5](#). ¹¹ *sāvajjapaññatti āpatti*, blamable in or by the world, *lokavajjā*; *anavajjapaññatti āpatti*, not blamable in or by the (Vinaya) laying-down, *paññattivajjā*, Vin-a.1319. These words appear to have been taken up at [Mi.266](#) where several examples of behaviour not blamable in the world, but blamable in the Teaching are given.

17. An offence the description (of which) is “non-blamable”¹ should be known.
18. An offence originated by action should be known.²
19. An offence originated by non-action should be known.³
20. An offence originated by action-and-non-action should be known.⁴
21. The original offence should be known.⁵
22. The subsequent offence should be known.⁶
23. The secondary offences⁷ of original offences should be known.
24. The secondary offences of subsequent offences should be known.⁸
25. An offence confessed that comes to a reckoning should be known.⁹

BD.6.173

¹ *sāvajjapaññatti āpatti*, blamable in or by the world, *lokavajjā*; *anavajjapaññatti āpatti*, not blamable in or by the (Vinaya) laying-down, *paññattivajjā*, Vin-a.1319. These words appear to have been taken up at Mi.266 where several examples of behaviour not blamable in the world, but blamable in the Teaching are given. ² *kiriya*—by action; for example, doing something, one falls into an offence involving Defeat, Vin-a.1319. ³ *akiriya*—for example, not doing something, one falls into an offence for not determining the robe-material. ⁴ For example, doing and not doing something, one falls into an offence such as building a hut. ⁵ *pubbāpatti*, the offence first fallen into, Vin-a.1319. ⁶ The offence fallen into subsequently by those under probation (i.e. in offences entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order). ⁷ *antarāpatti*. I follow *Inception of Discipline* § 32 and its notes, q.v., for this translation in preference to that given in *Critical Pali Dictionary* which says *antarāpatti* “probably = *antarāyikā āpatti*”. But Pali seldom uses two technical terms to describe the same thing. *Critical Pali Dictionary* may have been misled by the two occurrences of *antarā* in the *uddāna* or tabulation at the end of this Chapter. The first is, however, an abbreviation of *antarāyikā*, as at Vin.5.114 *senā* is an abbreviation of *senāsana*. At Vin.2.43, to which *Critical Pali Dictionary* refers, *antarā* is conceptually unconnected with *āpatti* (*antarā ekaṃ āpattiṃ āpajji*) and simply means “meanwhile, during that time”. Vin-a.1319f. says this secondary offence is when one is purifying oneself from the root one. The second clause seems to refer to Kd.13.20.1 where the duration of concurrent probation for a number of offences is said to be *agghena*, depending on. Vin-a.1320 says, “But the Kurundiya says the original offence is the one first fallen into; the subsequent offence is one fallen into at the time of deserving *mānatta*; an offence secondary to the original one is one fallen into during probation; an offence secondary to subsequent offences means those fallen into while the monk was carrying out *mānatta*. This is construable by the one method.” See Kd.13. ⁸ See BD.6.172, n.15. ⁹ *desitā gaṇanūpagā āpatti*. Vin-a.1320 explains that what is confessed is that, having thrown off the responsibility (for his offence) he says, I will not fall again.

26. An offence confessed that does not come to a reckoning should be known.¹
27. A laying down should be known.²
28. A supplementary laying (down should be known.³
29. A laying down that has not yet occurred should be known.⁴
30. A laying down (that holds good) everywhere should be known.⁵
31. A laying down (that holds good only) for certain districts should be known.⁶
32. A laying down that is shared should be known.⁷
33. A laying down that is not shared should be known.⁸
34. A laying down for one (Order only) should be known.⁹
35. A laying down for both (Orders) should be known.¹⁰
36. An offence that is a grave fault should be known.¹¹
37. An offence that is not a grave fault should be known.¹²
38. An offence connected with the laity should be known.¹³
39. An offence not connected with the laity should be known.
40. An offence that is fixed (as to results) should be known.¹⁴
41. An offence that is not (so) fixed should be known.¹⁵
42. The individual who was the first-doer (of an offence) should be known.¹⁶
43. The individual who was not the first-doer should be known.¹⁷
44. The individual who is an occasional offender should be known.¹⁸

BD.6.174

¹ Here, the offence confessed is, not having thrown off responsibility, with an impure activity of mind. For nuns it is a Defeat in the eight things—Nuns' *Bi-Pj.8*. ² As at *Vin.5.1*.

³ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁴ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁵ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁶ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁷ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁸ As at *Vin.5.1*. ⁹ As at *Vin.5.1*. ¹⁰ As at *Vin.5.1*. ¹¹ *thullavajjā āpatti*, heavily blamable offence.

Cf. *Vin.2.87*; explained at *Vin-a.1194* as offences of Defeat and Formal Meeting of the Order, and by *Vin-a.1320* as *garukāpatti*, for which see above, *BD.6.171, n.6, n.7*. ¹² *Vin-a.1320 lahukāpatti*, also see above.

¹³ See *BD.5.115* and n.3 there. *Vin-a.1320* says this is the Elder Sudhamma's offence (for insulting speech, for which see *Vin.2.15ff.*), and it adds that the remaining offences are not connected with the laity. ¹⁴ *niyata*, explained at *Vin-a.1320* as *pañcānantariyakammāpatti*, the five kinds of offences that are actions the fruition of which comes with no delay. See e.g. *Mi.25, Vb.378, Vism.177, MN.Q.i.35, n.2*. A first deed of this type was done by Devadatta, *Kd.173.9*. See too *Uttaravinicchaya 432, Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, p.267, *Atthasālinī 358, Vb-a.426f.*

¹⁵ This means all the remaining offences; they are not *niyata*. But see *Uttaravinicchaya 740ff.* ¹⁶ *Sudinna*, the originator of the First Defeat.

¹⁷ The maker of the supplementary laying-down: the first recluse and the female monkey, *Vin.3.23*. ¹⁸ *adhiccāpattika*, as at *MN.i.443f.*

45. The individual who is a constant offender should be known.¹
46. The individual (at all these places) who reproves (for an offence) should be known.²
47. The individual who is reprovved should be known.³
48. The individual who reproves according to what is not the rule should be known.⁴
49. The individual who is reprovved according to what is not the rule should be known.⁵
50. The individual who reproves according to the rule should be known.⁶
51. The individual who is reprovved according to the rule should be known.⁷
52. The individual who is certain should be known.⁸
53. The individual who is not certain should be known.
54. The individual incapable of offending should be known.⁹
55. The individual capable of offending should be known.¹⁰
56. The individual who has been suspended¹¹ should be known.
57. The individual who has not been suspended should be known.¹²
58. The individual who has been expelled should be known.¹³
59. The individual who has not been expelled should be known.
60. An individual belonging to the same communion should be known.¹⁴
61. An individual not belonging to the same communion should be known.

BD.6.175

¹ *abhiñhāpattika*, as at MN.i.442f. ² *codaka*; see Vin.1.113, Vin.1.323, Vin.2.248f. ³ *cudita*.
⁴ See Vin.2.250. ⁵ See Vin.2.250. ⁶ See Vin.2.250. ⁷ See Vin.2.250. ⁸ *niyata*, certain or fixed. See above, n.1—used in relation to offences. Vin-a.1334 names these five offences, in explaining *pañca puggalā niyatā*, as those of cutting down if the proper measure has been exceeded: Bu-Pc.87, Bu-Pc.89, Bu-Pc.90, Bu-Pc.91, Bu-Pc.92. Vin-a.1320 says “possessed of mental states (*dhammā*) that are fixed by wrongnesses or fixed by rightnesses”, for which, with *aniyata*, Cf. Tikap.335. See also Ds.1028, Ds.1029, and *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, p.267; also Pp.13: *katamo ca puggalo niyato?* Apart from the 13 types of men the rest are said to be *aniyata*. ⁹ *abhabbāpattika*: Buddhas and Hermit Buddhas according to Vin-a.1320; also Uttaravinicchaya 434. ¹⁰ Disciples, i.e. monks and nuns, Uttaravinicchaya 434. I know of no canonical reference to this or the preceding clause. ¹¹ *ukkhitta*, by a (formal) act of suspension, see e.g. Vin.1.49, Vin.2.21. ¹² Vin-a.1320: “He is not suspended by any of the four remaining (formal) acts, beginning with that of censure”—see Vin.1.49 for these. ¹³ Thus: “Expel the nun Mettiyā” (Vin.3.162); “a seducer (of nuns) is to be expelled” (Vin.1.85); “the novice Kaṇḍaka is to be expelled” (Vin.1.85; called Kaṇḍaka at Vin-a.1320). Cf. below BD.6.330. ¹⁴ *samānasaṁvāsaka*; as at Vin.4.154; Cf. Vin.3.28, Vin.3.47, etc.

62. Suspension (of the Pātimokkha) should be known.¹

Concluded are the Units

ITS SUMMARY

Things making for, offence, slight, that can be done away with, very bad,
For which amends are made, and confession, stumbling-block,² blamable, origi-
nating by action, /

By action-and-non-action, original, secondary,³ coming to a reckoning, Laying
down, not yet occurred, everywhere, and shared, for one, /

Vin.5.116

Grave fault, laity, and fixed, first, occasional, reprover,

Not the rule, the rule, fixed, incapable, suspended, expelled,

The same, and suspension too: this is the summary⁴ for the Units. /

2. DYADS

Prv.7.2.1

1. ⁵There is the offence in which (contemporary) awareness counts (as a factor) for acquittal; there is the offence in which (contemporary) awareness does not count (as a factor) for acquittal.⁶

2. There is an offence for the attainer of the acquired; there is the offence for the attainer of what is not acquired.⁷

BD.6.176

3. There is the offence that is connected with true *Dhamma*⁸; there is the offence that is not connected with true *Dhamma*.⁹

¹ Vin-a.1321 says “Beginning with the phrase ‘Monks, one suspension of the Pātimokkha is not legally valid’ (Vin.2.241), the suspension of the Pātimokkha (*Pātimokkhaṭṭhapana*) should be known.” ² Abbreviated here from *antarāyikā* to *antarā*; see above, BD.6.172, n.8.

³ Again *antarā*, but here it is not an abbreviation. ⁴ *udāna* should read *uddāna*; Cf. the end of the Triads at Vin.5.124. ⁵ Again, Cf. Uttaravinicchaya, p.267ff. ⁶ See remarks on *āpatti* (no) *saññāvimokkhā* at *Milinda’s Questions* i, Introduction, p.xlviii. ⁷ This seems to be an offence of speaking about what is and about what is a fact, *laddhasamāpattikassa āpatti*. On *samāpatti* see BD.2.177, n.5, and *Buddhist Psychological Ethics*, p.321. See too Vin.4.25, where there is an offence of *Pācittiya* for speaking of a condition of further men—if it is a fact—to one who is not ordained; but if he speaks about what is not a fact, *abhūtārocana*, there is Defeat (Bu-Pj.4). See too Vin.4.7. ⁸ Vin-a.1321: beginning with *Dhamma* line by line (Vin.4.14, Bu-Pc.4). ⁹ Vin-a.1321: an offence of speech that is very bad.

4. There is an offence connected with one's own requisites¹; ... with another's requisites.²
5. There is an offence connected with one's own individual³; ... with another's individual.⁴
6. There is (the occasion when one) falls into a serious offence when speaking the truth,⁵ a slight one when speaking a lie⁶.
7. There is (the occasion when one) falls into a serious offence when speaking a lie,⁷ a slight one when speaking the truth.⁸
8. There is the offence one who is on the ground falls into,⁹ not one who is in the air¹⁰; there is the offence one who is in the air falls into,¹¹ not one who is on the ground.¹²
9. One falls into an offence while one is setting out not while entering¹³; one falls into an offence while one is entering, not while setting out.¹⁴
10. There is the offence one falls into while taking¹⁵; ... while not taking.¹⁶
11. There is the offence one falls into while undertaking¹⁷; ... while not

BD.6.177

¹ Commentary instances three such offences, all of Forfeiture: in enjoying, not having given up (Bu-NP.5); in hoarding bowls and robes (Bu-NP.1.21, Nuns' Bi-NP.1); in not washing soiled robes (Bu-NP.4). ² Vin-a.1321 refers this to a clause found in the *sikkhāpada* of Bu-NP.14. ³ Commentary describes this offence in accordance with an offence involving Defeat (Bu-Pj.1) laid down at Vin.3.35. ⁴ Going by Commentary this refers to Bu-Ss.2. ⁵ In Bu-Ss.3 at Vin.3.129 for saying to a woman *sikharāṇī'si*. See Uttaravinicchaya 443. ⁶ Bu-Pc.1, for telling a conscious lie. See too Vin.3.59, Vin.3.66 in Bu-Pj.2. ⁷ Proclaiming what is not a fact, e.g. at Vin.3.93ff. (in Bu-Pj.4). ⁸ Proclaiming what is a fact. ⁹ Vin-a.1321 says, "if he is sitting down to one side within a boundary and says, 'I will carry out a (formal) act of the Order with an incomplete (Order),' he falls, being one who is on the ground. Therefore he is called one who is not in the air" (*vehāsagata*). Does this refer to Vin.2.128ff.? If so it is an offence of wrong-doing. ¹⁰ Apparently referring to Bu-Pc.18, for Vin-a.1321 takes the words of the Old Commentary, on its *sikkhāpada*: (a monk), sitting down in a lofty cell (*vehāsakuṭi*) on a couch or chair with removable feet, falls, being one who is in the air. But if he, having put them out on the ground, should not he down, he worn not fall (into an offence). Because of this he is called one who is not on ground. See too Uttaravinicchaya 448. ¹¹ See previous note. ¹² See previous note. ¹³ Probably referring to Vin.2.211 (Kd.18.3) which gives the *gamikānaṃ bhikkhūnaṃ vattaṃ* described by Vin-a.1321 as *gamiyo gamiyavattaṃ apūretvā*; and at Uttaravinicchaya 451 as *gamiko gamikavattāni apūretvāna*. ¹⁴ This seems to refer to Vin.2.207 (Kd.18.1): entering a monastery with one's sandals on and one's sunshade up. See too Uttaravinicchaya 450. Cf. also Vin.1.194 (Kd.5.12); and Vin.2.130f. (Kd.15.23.2, Kd.15.23.3) where there is an offence of wrong-doing. ¹⁵ I.e. an oblation with water, Nuns' Bi-Pc.5. ¹⁶ I.e. not taking one of the three ways for disfiguring a new robe, Bu-Pc.58.

- undertaking.¹
12. There is the offence one falls into when one is doing²; ... is not doing.³
13. There is the offence one falls into while giving⁴; ... while not giving.⁵
14. There is the offence one falls into while accepting⁶; ... while not accepting.⁷
15. There is the offence one falls into through using⁸; ... through not using.⁹
16. There is the offence one falls into during the night, not by day¹⁰; ... by day, not during the night.¹¹
17. There is the offence one falls into at sunrise;¹² ... not at sunrise.¹³
18. There is the offence one falls into while cutting off;¹⁴ ... while not cutting off.¹⁵
19. There is the offence one falls into by concealing¹⁶; while not concealing.¹⁷

¹⁷ Vin-a.1322 by using the words *mugabbata* and *titthiyavata* appears to be referring to Vin.1.90f. (Kd.1.70, Kd.1.71)—the offence incurred being one of wrong-doing. ¹ The 94 *vatta*, customs, duties, for a monk under probation to whom Vin-a.1322 refers are given at Vin.2.31f. But the Commentary also refers to a monk against whom a disciplinary act of censure has been carried out. ² Sewing a robe, Bu-Pc.26. Uttaravinicchaya 459 more full. ³ Not doing the duties of a preceptor. These are stated at e.g. Vin.1.50ff. ⁴ Giving a robe to a nun who is not a relation, Bu-Pc.25. ⁵ Not giving robe-material and so on to those who share one's cell and to pupils. See Bu-Pc.59. ⁶ Accepting robe-material from a nun who is not a relation, Bu-NP.5 (Vin.3.209). ⁷ This seems to refer to Kd.20.9.5 (Vin.2.264) since Vin-a.1322 uses a phrase found there: *na bhikkhave ovādo na gahetabbo*. Cullavagga uses forms of the verb *gaṇhāti*; above passage has *paṭigaṇhanto*. The offence is one of wrong-doing. ⁸ *paribhoga*. This offence consists in using and not giving up something that should be given up, as at e.g. Vin.3.202 (in Bu-NP.2) where, because of not forfeiting a robe to be forfeited, but using it, there is an offence of wrong-doing. ⁹ Nuns' Bi-Pc.24. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.5. ¹¹ This is an offence for not shutting the door while one is meditating in solitude; Cf. Atthasālini 95. ¹² A number of offences: after one night, Bu-NP.2; after six nights Kd.18 (?); after 7 days, Bu-NP.23; after ten days, Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.21; after a month. Bu-NP.3. ¹³ Eating after one has been invited. ¹⁴ Cutting down vegetable growth, *bhūtagāma*, is Bu-Pc.11; and cutting off *aṅgajāta* is in Bu-Pj.1. ¹⁵ Not cutting one's hair or nails: for the former there is an "allowance" for the latter an offence of wrong-doing at Kd.15.27.1ff. (Vin.2.133). ¹⁶ *chādeti*; presumably as e.g. in Bu-Pc.1 and Nuns' Bi-Ss.12 in both of which the word is *paṭicchādeti*. ¹⁷ A monk coming naked to a monastery falls into an offence of wrong-doing, Vin.3.212 (in Bu-NP.6).

20. There is the offence one falls into by wearing (using)¹; ... not using (wearing).²
21. There are two Observances: that on the fourteenth day and that on the fifteenth.³
22. Two Invitations: that on the fourteenth day and that on the fifteenth.⁴
23. Two (formal) acts: the (formal) act for which leave should be asked, and the (formal) act at which a motion is put.
24. And there are two further (formal) acts: the (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, and the (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.⁵
25. Two matters for a (formal) act⁶: the matter of a (formal) act for which leave should be asked, and the matter of a (formal) act at which a motion is put.
26. And two further matters for a (formal) act: the matter for a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, and the matter for a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.
27. Two defects⁷ in a (formal) act: the defect in a (formal) act for which leave should be asked, the defect in the motion for a (formal) act.
28. And two further defects in a (formal) act: the defect in a (formal) act where a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, and the defect in a (formal) act where a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.
29. Two excellences⁸ in a (formal) act: the excellence of a (formal) act for which leave should be asked, and the excellence of a (formal) act where there is a motion.

BD.6.178

¹ I.e. garments made of bark, grass—a grave offence, [Vin.1.305f.](#) ² I.e. not using “this bowl till it breaks”—[Bu-NP.22.](#) ³ [Vin.1.104](#) and cf. the triad at [Vin.5.123.](#) ⁴ [Vin.1.160](#), and again see [Vin.5.123.](#) ⁵ See e.g. [Vin.2.89](#), [Vin.4.152](#); and another class of six formal acts at [Vin.1.317](#). These two dyads from a tetrad at [Vin.5.126.](#) ⁶ *kammavattu* not given elsewhere in Vinaya. See preceding note. ⁷ See [Vin.5.213](#). The three defects referring to four (formal) acts are given at [Kd.9.2.4](#). See also [Kd.9.2.1.](#) ⁸ See below, [Vin.5.213–Vin.5.214](#). If the four formal acts were carried out by rule in a complete assembly, there were “four excellences”.

30. And two further excellences in a (formal) act: the excellence of a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, and the excellence of a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.
31. Two grounds for belonging to a different communion: either of oneself one makes oneself belong to a different communion,¹ or a complete Order suspends one for not seeing or not making amends for (an offence) or for not giving up (a wrong view).²
32. Two grounds for belonging to the same communion: either of oneself one makes oneself belong to the same communion,³ or the Order restores one who was suspended for not seeing or not making amends for (an offence) or for not giving up (a wrong view).⁴
33. Two (groups of) offences involving Defeat: for monks and for nuns.
34. Two (groups of) offences entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order.
35. Two (groups of) grave offences.
36. Two of offences of Expiation.
37. Two of offences to be confessed.
38. Two of wrong-doing.
39. Two of wrong speech: for monks and for nuns.
40. Seven offences, seven classes of offence.⁵
41. An Order is split by two methods: by a (formal) act⁶ or by a voting-ticket.⁷
42. Two individuals should not be ordained: one lacking the full age,⁸ one lacking a limb.⁹

BD.6.179
Vin.5.117

¹ See [Vin.1.135](#). ² As at [Vin.1.340](#); see also [Vin.1.340](#). ³ See [Vin.1.106](#), [Vin.1.109](#). ⁴ As at [Vin.1.340](#). ⁵ Because the two have the same name they are shown in the dyads, [Vin.a.1323](#). Given also in the Septets, [Vin.5.134](#). ⁶ Probably referring to Devadatta at [Vin.2.198](#). ⁷ Probably again referring to Devadatta at [Vin.2.199](#). ⁸ *addhānahīno*; interpreted by [Vin.a.1323](#) as *ūnavīsativasso*, and thus referring to [Bu-Pc.65](#). See [Vin.5.129](#) for this and next four items. ⁹ *aṅgahīno*. At [Vin.1.91](#) one whose hands, etc., have been cut off is not allowed to go forth.

43. And two further individuals should not be ordained: one who has fallen away from the matter,¹ and the *karaṇadukkaṭaka*.²
44. And two further individuals should not be ordained: he who is not complete,³ and he who is complete but has not asked.⁴
45. One should not live in dependence on two individuals: on an unconscientious one⁵ nor on an ignorant one.⁶
46. Guidance should not be given by two individuals: by an unconscientious one⁷ and by a conscientious one if one has not requested him.⁸
47. Guidance should be given to two individuals: the ignorant one and the conscientious one if he requests.⁹
48. Two individuals are incapable of falling into an offence: Buddhas and Hermit Buddhas.
49. Two individuals are capable of falling into an offence: monks and nuns.
50. Two individuals are incapable of consciously falling into an offence: the *ariyan* individuals who are monks and nuns.
51. Two individuals are capable of consciously falling into an offence: ordinary individuals who are monks and nuns.
52. Two individuals are incapable of consciously transgressing a matter that goes too far¹⁰: *ariyan* individuals who are monks and nuns.
53. Two individuals are capable of consciously transgressing a matter that goes too far: ordinary individuals who are monks and nuns.
54. Two kinds of protest: one protests by means of the body, one protests by means of speech.¹

BD.6.180

¹ He seems to be one who has fallen from (the root of) the matter: eunuchs (Vin.1.85), animals (Vin.1.88), hermaphrodites (Vin.1.89). ² This comprises the remaining eight “incapable individuals”, *abhabbapuggalā* (i.e. not qualified for ordination because of something bad they have in this existence), beginning with him who is in communion by theft (Vin.1.86). See Vin-a.515. Also the five who are not to be ordained, Vin.5.129. ³ I.e. as to bowl and robe, see Vin.1.90, Vin.1.95. ⁴ Ordination must be asked for by the candidate, Vin.1.56f. ⁵ Vin.1.91. ⁶ Vin-a.1323 says even if he is of sixty years’ standing. ⁷ See Vin.1.91. Some rules for guidance and being in dependence are given at Vin.1.80f. ⁸ This may refer to Kd.1.73.1, Kd.1.73.2. ⁹ See Vin.1.62ff., Vin.1.80f. for the second case. ¹⁰ See Vin.1.55. ¹ Allowances for “protesting” against formal acts given at Vin.1.115. Silently protesting by signalling with the hand (*hatthivikāra* as at Vin-a.1323) occurs at e.g. Vin.1.158, Vin.1.352.

55. There are two (kinds of) being sent away²: there is the individual who has not arrived at the point of being sent away but who, if the Order sends him away, is sometimes rightly sent away, sometimes wrongly sent away.³
56. Two kinds of restoration⁴: there is the individual who has not arrived at the point of being restored but who, if the Order restores him, is sometimes rightly restored, sometimes wrongly restored.⁵
57. Two acknowledgements: either he acknowledges by body or he acknowledges by speech.⁶
58. Two acceptances: either he accepts by body⁷ or he accepts by means of something attached to the body.⁸
59. Two objectings to⁹: either he objects by body or he objects by speech.
60. Two harmings: harming to the training and harming to possessions.¹⁰
61. Two reproving: either he reproves by body or he reproves by speech.¹¹
62. Two impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* privileges: the residence-impediment and the robes-impediment.¹²
63. Two non-impediments to (the removal of) the *kaṭhina* privileges: the residence-non-impediment and the robes-non-impediment.¹³
64. Two (kinds of) robe-material: that (given by) householders¹⁴ and the rag-heap (robe-material).¹⁵
65. Two (kinds of) bowl: the iron bowl, the clay bowl.¹
66. Two (kinds of) circular (bowl-rests²): made of tin, made of lead.³

BD.6.181

² *nissāraṇā*. ³ *Vin.1.321*. ⁴ *osāraṇā*. ⁵ *Vin.1.322*. ⁶ *Vin-a.1323* says “he acknowledges by signalling with the hand and so on”. (*hatthavikāra*), see above, *n.2*. ⁷ It would seem that many things may be accepted by means of the body, see e.g. *Bu-NP.5*, *Bu-NP.6*, *Bu-NP.16*, *Bu-NP.18*, *Bu-Pc.40*, etc. ⁸ *Bu-Pc.40.3.1*. ⁹ *paṭikkhepā*. The Buddha objects (by speech) to various things at *Vin.1.238* (*Kd.6.32.2*). ¹⁰ Three ways of harming are given at *Vin.2.13*: bodily, verbal, and both. Cf. *Vin-a.1157* and *Vin-a.1323* for harming because one has not been trained in the three trainings. Injury to possessions refers to the person who wrongly makes use of possessions belonging to an Order or an individual, as probably in *Bu-NP.30*, *Bu-Pc.15*, *Bu-Pc.17*. ¹¹ Several examples of reproving verbally are given in *Mahāvagga* and *Cullavagga*. See *BD.4*, *BD.5*, Indexes under Reprove for an offence. (Note: Not in *SuttaCentral* edition.) ¹² *Vin.1.265*. ¹³ *Vin.1.265*. ¹⁴ See e.g. *Vin.1.280* (*Kd.8.1.34*). ¹⁵ *Vin.1.58* (*Kd.1.30-4*). ¹ *Vin.2.112*, *Vin.3.243*, *Vin.4.123*, *Vin.4.243*. ² Name abbreviated here from *pattamaṇḍala* to *maṇḍala*. ³ *Vin.2.112*.

67. Two (kinds of) allottings of a bowl⁴: either one allots by body or one allots by speech.
68. Two (kinds of) allottings of a robe: either one allots by body or one allots by speech.⁵
69. Two (kinds of) assignment: assignment in the presence of and assignment in the absence of.⁶
70. Two disciplines: for monks and for nuns.
71. Two things belonging to discipline⁷: what has been laid down and what is in conformity with what has been laid down.⁸
72. Two subduings of discipline: bridge-breaking in regard to what is not allowable, behaving with moderation in regard to what is allowable.⁹
73. In two ways one falls into an offence: one falls by means of body and one falls by means of speech.¹⁰
74. In two ways one rises from an offence: one rises by means of body and one rises by means of speech.¹¹
75. Two probations: probation for concealing, probation for not concealing.¹
76. And two further probations: purifying probation,² concurrent probation.³

Vin.5.118

BD.6.182

⁴ *adhittāna*, allotting. Rules about bowls are at [Bu-NP.21](#), [Bu-NP.22](#). In [Bu-NP.22](#) we get the expression *adhittāna*, of a bowl; but see [BD.2.121](#), n.4. There is also the pre-ordination requirement that the preceptor points out the bowl and robes to the candidate with the words, “This is a bowl for you ... this an outer cloak ... upper robe ... inner robe,” [Vin.1.94](#).

⁵ See [Kd.8.20](#), [Kd.8.24.4](#). ⁶ [Vin.4.122](#), in [Bu-Pc.59](#). ⁷ *venayika* is not being used here in its more usual sense of “leader away” as at [Vin.3.3](#). Here it means, according to [Vin-a.1323](#), things accomplished for discipline, for the goal; see [BD.5](#), [Introduction](#), p.xx. ⁸ See [Vin.1.25of.](#), [Vin.2.288](#), [Vin.3.231](#). The “laid down” is concerned with what is and what is not allowable in the whole of the Vinaya-piṭaka; and what is in accordance with this should be seen among the four principal appeals to authority (*mahāpadesa*), [Vin-a.1323](#). For *mahāpadesa* see [AN.ii.167](#) and [Guide](#) § 120. ⁹ Subduing is *sallekha*. Bridge-breaking is breaking conditions, *paccaya*. See [AN.i.261](#): bridge-breaking in singing and dancing—activities which nuns are forbidden to see in Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.10](#), and monks at [Vin.2.108](#) (a *dukkāṭa* for them). See too [BD.1.13](#), n.2. ¹⁰ Examples can be found easily. ¹¹ By body, i.e. by the deciding (of the legal question) which is a covering over (as) with grass. When it has been pointed out to one, one rises from an offence by means of speech. On *āpattivuttāna* see [Kd.1.36.10](#), [Kd.2.3.5](#). ¹ On concealed and unconcealed offences and the duration of the probation incurred see [Kd.13](#). ² [Vin.2.59](#). ³ [Vin.2.48](#). These four probations also occur in the tetrads, [Vin.5.126](#).

77. Two *mānattas*: *mānatta* for concealing, *mānatta* for not concealing.⁴
 78. And two further *mānattas*: *mānatta* for a fortnight,⁵ concurrent *mānatta*.⁶
 79. For two kinds of individuals there is an interruption⁷: for him who is under probation⁸ and for him who is undergoing *mānatta*.⁹
 80. Two disrespects: disrespect for a person and disrespect for *Dhamma*.¹⁰
 81. Two salts: the natural and the made.¹¹
 82. And two further salts: sea(-salt), black salt.¹²
 83. And two further salts: rock-salt, culinary salt.¹³
 84. And two further salts: the “Sambhar Lake” (salt),¹⁴ *pakkhālaka*.¹⁵
 85. Two enjoyments: inner enjoyment and outer enjoyment.¹⁶
 86. Two modes of address: low mode of address and high mode of address.¹
 87. In two ways is there slander: in making dear or in desiring dissension.²

BD.6.183

⁴ See *Kd.13*. ⁵ *pakkhamānatta* probably refers specially to *Kd.13.1*, *Kd.17.1*. See too *Vin.4.242* (Nuns’ *Bi-Ss.13*) which also seems to be referred to at *Vin-a.117of*. ⁶ See *Kd.13*. These four kinds of *mānatta* are given as a tetrad at *Vin.5.126* and are mentioned at *Vin-a.117of*. ⁷ *rat-ticheda*, a breaking of the nights thus affecting the time he has to spend carrying out his penalties and so purifying himself of his offence. ⁸ *Vin.2.33f*. ⁹ *Vin.2.36*. ¹⁰ *Vin.4.113*. ¹¹ *jātima kārīma*. These names do not appear to occur elsewhere in the Pali canon. ¹² *sāmudda* and *kāḷaloṇa* are the two first salts allowed as medicines for monks at *Vin.1.202*. *Vin-a.1090* says “sea-salt (*sāmuddika*) exists on the sea-shore as does sand. Black-salt (*kāḷaloṇa*) is the ordinary salt”. On black-salt see SIR GEORGE WATT, *Commercial Products of India*, London 1908, p.56. ¹³ *sindhava* and *ubbhida* are the next two salts allowed at *Vin.1.202*. The fifth and last there is *bila*, not mentioned above. *Vin-a.1090* says *sindhava* is white and a mountain salt, and *ubbhida*, the culinary salt, is produced (as is) a shoot from the ground. Is this Sir George Watt’s *ushasuta*? See next note below. ¹⁴ *romaka*. Neither this nor the following occurs at *Vin.1.202*. Monier-Williams says that this is a kind of saline earth and the salt extracted from it. SIR GEORGE WATT, *Commercial Products of India*, p.963 says “Susruta, the father of Indian medicine, speaks of four kinds of salt, and these correspond with the four chief grades known today, viz. *Saindhava*, the rock-salt of Sind and Kohat; *Sāmudra*, produced from the sea; *Romaka* or *Sākam bari*, Sambhar Lake salt; and *Pānsuja* or *Ushasuta*, salt produced from saline earth”. ¹⁵ I cannot identify this salt. Has it anything to do with *pakkhāleti*, to wash, to cleanse? ¹⁶ According to *Vin-a.1324* the inner enjoyment, *paribhoga*, is the enjoyment of food; the outer is smearing, *makkhana*, the head and so on. ¹ *Vin.4.7*.

² *Vin.4.12*.

88. In two ways is a group-meal entered upon: by being invited or by asking.³
89. Two (periods for) beginning the rains: the earlier and the later.⁴
90. Two suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁵
91. Two suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁶
92. Two foolish men⁷: he who carries out a task unasked and he who, when asked, does not carry out a task.⁸
93. Two wise men: he who does not carry out a task unasked and he who, when asked, carries out a task.
94. And two further foolish men: he who thinks what is allowable is in what is not allowable and he who thinks what is not allowable is in what is allowable.
95. Two wise men: he who thinks what is not allowable is in what is not allowable and he who thinks what is allowable is in what is allowable.⁹
96. And two further foolish men: he who thinks there is an offence in what is not an offence and he who thinks there is not an offence in an offence.
97. Two wise men: he who thinks there is an offence in an offence and he who thinks there is not an offence in what is not an offence.
98. And two further foolish men: he who thinks there is *Dhamma* in what is not-*dhamma* and he who thinks there is not-*dhamma* in *Dhamma*.
99. Two wise men: he who thinks there is not-*dhamma* in not-*dhamma* and he who thinks there is *Dhamma* in *Dhamma*.
100. And two further foolish men: he who thinks there is not-discipline in Discipline and he who thinks there is Discipline in not-discipline.

³ See [Bu-Pc.32](#). ⁴ [Vin.1.137](#). ⁵ [Vin.2.241f](#). ⁶ [Vin.2.242](#). ⁷ From here to the end of the paragraph is very clearly linked with AN.i.84-86, the Bālavagga. ⁸ *bhāraṃ na vahaṭi*. Vin-a.1324, in order to emphasize that an elder is not doing an elder's tasks or duties, *kicca*, quotes [Vin.1.113](#): *anujānāmi bhikkhave therena bhikkhunā sāmaṃ vā Dhammaṃ bhāsitaṃ param vā ajjhesitum*. That these duties are Vinaya tasks is clear also from AN.ii.155 though this Commentary appears to see the stupidity as that of a newly ordained monk doing the tenfold task of an elder without having been asked by an elder to do so. "Unasked" is *anāgata*, not told. ⁹ According to AN.ii.155 the unallowable is lion's flesh and so on (see [Vin.1.220](#)) and the allowable crocodile flesh and cat flesh.

101. Two wise men: he who thinks there is not-discipline in not-discipline and he who thinks there is Discipline in Discipline.
102. Of two individuals the cankers grow: he who is remorseful when he should not be remorseful and he who is not remorseful when he should be remorseful.¹
103. Of two individuals the cankers do not grow: he who is not remorseful when he should not be remorseful and he who is remorseful when he should be remorseful.
104. And of two further individuals the cankers grow: he who thinks what is allowable is in what is not allowable and he who thinks what is not allowable is in what is allowable.
105. Of two individuals the cankers do not grow: he who thinks what is not allowable is in what is not allowable and he who thinks what is allowable is in what is allowable.
106. And of two further individuals the cankers grow: he who thinks there is an offence in what is not an offence and he who thinks there is not an offence in an offence.
107. Of two individuals the cankers do not grow: he who thinks there is not an offence in what is not an offence and he who thinks there is an offence in an offence.
108. And of two further individuals the cankers grow: he who thinks that *Dhamma* is in not-*dhamma* and he who thinks there is not-*dhamma* in *Dhamma*.
109. Of two individuals the cankers do not grow: he who thinks there is not-*dhamma* in not-*dhamma* and he who thinks there is *Dhamma* in *Dhamma*.
110. And of two further individuals the cankers grow: he who thinks there is not-discipline in Discipline and he who thinks there is Discipline in not-discipline.
111. Of two individuals the cankers do not grow: he who thinks there is not-discipline in not-discipline and he who thinks there is Discipline in Discipline.

BD.6.184
Vin.5.119

Concluded are the Dyads

¹ Pp.26.

ITS SUMMARY

Awareness, and acquirers, True *Dhamma*, and requisites, individuals,
 Truth, the ground, while setting out, taking, undertaking, /
 Doing, giving, accepting, through using, and by night,
 Sunrise, cutting off, concealing, and wearing, Observances, /
 Invitation, (formal) acts and further, matter, further ones, and defects,
 And two further ones, excellence, different one, and just the same, /
 Defeat, Order, grave offence, Expiation, Confession,¹
 Wrong-doing, and also wrong speech, and seven classes of offence, /
 Is split, ordination, similarly a further two, BD.6.185
 Should not live, should not be given, incapable, and also capable, /
 Consciously, and that go too far, protests, being sent away,
 Restoration, and acknowledgement, acceptance, objecting to, /
 He harms, and reprovings, *kaṭhina*, and similarly two,
 Robes, bowls, what are circular, allottings, likewise two, /
 And assignments, disciplines, and belonging to discipline, subduings,
 And one falls, one rises from, probations, a further two, /
 Two *mānattas*, and further, interruption, disrespect,
 Two salts, a further three,² enjoyment, and by mode of address, /
 And slander, groups, the rains, suspensions, tasks, allowable,
 No offence, non-*dhamma*, *Dhamma*, in Discipline, similarly the cankers.

3. TRIADS

1. There is the offence one falls into while the Lord is alive, not after the *parinibbāna*³; there is the offence one falls into after the *parinibbāna*, not while the Lord is alive¹; there is the offence one falls into both while the Lord is alive as well as after the *parinibbāna*. Prv.7.3.1

¹ Abbreviated to: *pārāji, saṅghā, (thullaccayaṃ), pācitti, pāṭidesani.* ² Not of course a further three salts, but a further three dyads each naming two salts. ³ Vin-a.1324 takes as an example the offence of shedding a Tathāgata's blood; see e.g. Vin.1.89. ¹ Vin-a.1324 bases its two examples on two statements attributed to the Buddha and standing next to one another at DN.ii.154: (1) "At present, Ānanda, monks address one another with the epithet *āvuso*. After I am gone should not so address (one another). (2) Ānanda, a monk who is an elder should be addressed by a newly ordained monk as *bhante* or *āyasmā*.' Because addressing an elder with the epithet *āvuso* one falls into an offence after the Lord's *parinibbāna*, not while he is alive. Setting aside these two offences, one falls into the rest both while the Lord is living and also after the *parinibbāna*."

BD.6.186

2. There is the offence one falls into at a right time, not at a wrong time; there is the offence one falls into at a wrong time, not at a right time; there is the offence one falls into at a right time as well as at a wrong time.²
3. There is the offence one falls into during the night, not by day ... by day, not during the night ... during the night as well as by day.³
4. There is the offence that one of ten years' standing falls into, not one of less than ten years' standing⁴; there is the offence that one of less than ten years' standing falls into, not one of ten years' standing; there is the offence that one of ten years' standing and one of less than ten years' standing fall into.
5. There is the offence that one of five years' standing falls into, not one of less than five years' standing⁵; there is the offence that one of less than five years' standing falls into, not one of five years' standing; there is the offence that one of five years' standing and one of less than five years' standing fall into.
6. There is the offence that one of skilled mind falls into⁶; there is the offence that one of unskilled mind falls into⁷; there is the offence that one of indeterminate mind falls into.¹
7. There is the offence that one having a pleasant feeling falls into²; there is the offence that one having a painful feeling falls into³; there is the offence that one having neither a painful nor a pleasant feeling falls into.⁴

² Vin-a.1324: one falls into an offence at the right time, not at a wrong time for eating (though one is already satisfied) what is not left over (Bu-Pc.36). But at a wrong time, not at a right time, one falls into the offence of eating at a wrong time (Bu-Pc.37). For the remainder (of the offences) one falls at the right time as well as at the wrong time.

³ See the Dyads, Vin.5.116. Vin-a.1322 = Vin-a.1324 except that Vin-a.1324 adds "during the night as well as by day the remaining" (offences can be fallen into). ⁴ See Vin.1.59ff., Vin.1.65. ⁵ See Vin.1.81. ⁶ Vin-a.1325 says such as making one who is not ordained speak *Dhamma* line by line (Bu-Pc.4) or teaching *Dhamma* unaccompanied to a woman (Bu-Pc.7). ⁷ Vin-a.1325 gives catch-words indicating the Defeats, Bu-Ss.1, Bu-Ss.2, Bu-Ss.3, Bu-Ss.4, Bu-Ss.8, Bu-Ss.9, Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Pc.74, Bu-Pc.75. ¹ Cf. Vin.2.91f. where the Order is spoken of as skilled, unskilled, and indeterminate in mind. ² Sexual intercourse. ³ Bu-Ss.8, Bu-Ss.9. ⁴ No doubt "the remainder".

8. Three grounds for reproof according to what has been seen, heard, or suspected.⁵
9. Three methods of taking votes: the secret, the open, and whispering in the ear.⁶
10. Three objections⁷: (to) great wishes,⁸ discontent, unsubduedness.
11. Three permissions: small wishes,⁹ content, subduedness. And three further objections: (to) great wishes, discontent, immoderation.¹⁰
12. Three permissions: small wishes, content, moderation.¹¹
13. Three layings down: a laying down, a supplementary laying down, a laying down that has not yet occurred.¹²
14. And three further layings down: a laying down (that holds good) everywhere, a laying down (that holds good only) for some regions, a laying down that is shared.
15. And three further layings down: a laying down that is not shared, a laying down for one (Order only), a laying down for both (Orders).
16. There is the offence an ignorant person falls into, not the wise man¹³; there is the offence the wise man falls into, not the ignorant person; there is the offence the ignorant person falls into as well as the wise man.
17. There is the offence one falls into on the next new-moon day, not on the next full-moon day¹ ... on the next full-moon day, not the next new-moon day² ... on the next new-moon day as well as on the next full-moon day.
18. There is what is allowed on the next new-moon day, not on the next

BD.6.187

⁵ Vin.1.172f., Vin.3.164. ⁶ Vin.2.98f. ⁷ Vin-a.1325 says that (these are) three objections of the Lord's. Other things he objected to are given at e.g. Vin.1.238. ⁸ Cf. AN.iv.280, MN-a.i.96. "Great wishes," *mahicchātā*, explained at AN.i.74, AN-a.211, and "discontent" *asantuṭṭhitā*, at AN.i.77, AN-a.115, and all three at DN-a.903. For the triad see DN.iii.115. ⁹ Fourfold at AN.i.76, AN.iv.118, as well as threefold also at AN.i.76. ¹⁰ Immoderation (in eating) defined at Pp.21. ¹¹ Moderation (in eating) defined at AN.ii.184, and more generally at AN.iii.283. ¹² See Vin.5.1. ¹³ Referring to monks of ten and of less than ten years' standing, and of five and of less than five years' standing: see Kd.1.31.5–Kd.1.31.8, Kd.1.35, Kd.1.53.9–Kd.1.53.13. ¹ Vin-a.1325 says this is not entering on the rains, see Kd.3.4.3: an offence of wrong-doing. ² *kāle* and *juṅhe*. See Kd.4.17.4ff. Vin-a.1325 calls this not inviting according to the "great Invitation".

full-moon day³; ... on the next full-moon day, not on the next new-moon day⁴ ... on the next new-moon day as well as on the next full-moon day.

19. There is the offence one falls into in the cold weather, not in the hot weather, not in the rains⁵ ... in the hot weather, not in the cold weather, not in the rains⁶ ... in the rains, not in the cold weather, not in the hot weather.⁷
- BD.6.188 20. There is the offence an Order falls into, not a group, not an individual⁸ ... a group falls into, not an Order, not an individual⁹ ... an individual falls into, not an Order, not a group.¹⁰
21. There is what is allowed for an Order, not for a group, not for an individual¹¹; there is what is allowed for a group, not for an Order, not for an individual¹²; there is what is allowed for an individual, not for an Order, not for a group.¹³
22. Three concealings: one conceals the subject, not the offence; one conceals the offence, not the subject; one conceals the subject as well as the offence.¹⁴
23. Three coverings: a covering to the bathroom, a covering to the water, a covering by clothes.¹
24. Three things are hidden, not open²: women-folk practise (their ways) in concealment, not openly; the mantras of brahmins are practised in concealment, not openly; a false view is practised in concealment,

Vin.5.121

³ Vin-a.1325: entering on the rains is allowed, *kappati*, on the next new-moon day, not on the next full-moon day. ⁴ Vin-a.1325 says Invitation by means of the Great Invitation is allowed on the next full-moon day, not on the next new-moon day. ⁵ Referring to *Kd.8.20*. ⁶ Referring to *Bu-NP.24*. ⁷ Perhaps referring to *Kd.8.15.2*, *Kd.8.15.7*, *Kd.8.15.14*; also *Bu-NP.24*. ⁸ The Order falls into an offence either carrying out by way of complete purity the Observance (*Kd.2.22*, and see *Kd.2.3.3*, *Kd.2.3.26*) or an Observance that has been determined on, *adhiṭṭhānuposatha*. This latter refers to *Kd.2.26.9* where the word *adhiṭṭhātabbam* is used. ⁹ Carrying out a recital of the rules and an Observance that has been determined on. Probably referring to the group (of four, three or two monks) at *Kd.2.26.10*. ¹⁰ *Kd.2.26.8*, *Kd.2.26.9*. Of this triad Vin-a.1326 says it is the same as Invitation. ¹¹ An Order's Observance (see *Kd.2*) and an Order's Invitation (*Kd.4.1.13*, *Kd.4.1.14*). ¹² A group's Observance (*Kd.2.26*) and a group's Invitation (*Kd.4.5.2ff.*). ¹³ An Observance that has been determined on (*Kd.2.26.9*) and an Invitation that has been determined on (*Kd.4.5.2ff.*) ¹⁴ *Kd.4.16.23ff.* ¹ *Vin.2.22*, where these three kinds are allowed. ² *AN.i.282f.*

not openly.

25. Three things shine forth when they are unveiled, not in concealment³: the moon's disc shines forth when it is unveiled, not when it is hidden; the sun's disc ... not when it is hidden; the *Dhamma*-and-Discipline proclaimed by the Tathāgata shines forth when it is unveiled, not when it is hidden.
26. Three times for the appropriation of lodgings: the earlier, the later, the intervening.⁴
27. There is the offence one who is ill falls into, not one who is not ill⁵; there is the offence one who is not ill falls into, not one who is ill⁶; there is the offence one who is ill falls into as well as one who is not ill.⁷
28. Three suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁸
29. Three suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁹
30. Three probations: concealed probation,¹⁰ unconcealed probation,¹¹ purifying probation.¹²
31. Three *mānattas*: concealed *mānatta*,¹³ unconcealed *mānatta*,¹⁴ the *mānatta* for a fortnight.¹⁵
32. Three interruptions for a monk who is under probation: dwelling with, dwelling away separated from, not announcing.¹⁶
33. There is the offence one falls into inside, not outside¹⁷; there is the offence one falls into outside, not inside¹; there is the offence one falls into inside as well as outside.
34. There is the offence one falls into inside a boundary, not outside a boundary²; there is the offence one falls into outside a boundary, not inside a boundary³; there is the offence one falls into inside a boundary as well as outside a boundary.

BD.6.189

³ AN.i.283; last sentence quoted at Mi.190. ⁴ Kd.16.11.4. ⁵ Asking for a different medicine from the one procured; see Bu-Pc.47.2.2. For this and the next clause see below, Vin.5.128, among the Fours. ⁶ Asking for medicines, as in Nuns' Bi-NP.6, Bu-NP.7, Bu-NP.8, Bu-NP.9, Bu-NP.10. ⁷ The remaining offences. ⁸ Vin.2.242; see below, Vin.5.128. ⁹ Vin.2.242; see below, Vin.5.128. ¹⁰ Kd.13. ¹¹ Kd.13. ¹² Vin.2.59 (Kd.13.26), Vin.5.126 gives these and one other among the Fours. See also Vin.5.118 in the Twos. ¹³ Kd.13. ¹⁴ Kd.13. ¹⁵ *pakkhamānatta*, see Vin.5.118 and Vin-a.1170 which give four kinds of *mānatta* as does Vin.5.126 in the Fours. ¹⁶ Vin.2.33-34. ¹⁷ Bu-Pc.16. ¹ Bu-Pc.14. ² Kd.18.1.1. ³ Kd.18.3.1.

35. By three ways does one fall into an offence: one falls by means of body ... by means of speech ... by means of body, by means of speech.
36. By three further ways does one fall into an offence: in the midst of an Order,⁴ in the midst of a group,⁵ in the presence of an individual.⁶
37. In three ways does one arise from an offence: one arises by means of body, one arises by means of speech, one arises by means of body, by means of speech.⁷
38. By three further ways does one arise from an offence: in the midst of an Order, in the midst of a group, in the presence of an individual.⁸
39. Three givings of a verdict of past insanity are not legally valid.⁹
40. Three givings of a verdict of past insanity are legally valid.¹⁰
41. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of censure against a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is a maker of strife, a maker of quarrels, a maker of disputes a maker of contention, a maker of legal questions in an Order; if he is ignorant, inexperienced, full of offences not rid of them; if he lives in company with householders in unbecoming association with householders.¹¹
42. An Order, if it So desires, may carry out a (formal) act of guidance ... association with householders.¹²
43. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of banishment against a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is a maker of strife ... a maker of legal questions in an Order; if he is ignorant ... not rid of them; if he brings a family into disrepute, is of depraved conduct, and if his depraved conduct is seen and also heard.¹
44. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of reconciliation against a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is a maker of strife ... if he is ignorant ... not rid of them; if he reviles and abuses householders.²
45. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of suspension against a monk ... for not seeing an offence ... if he is a maker of strife

BD.6.190

Vin.5.122

⁴ Kd.2.15.5. Offence of wrong-doing for speaking *Dhamma*, unbidden, in the midst of an Order. Cf. Kd.2.16.9. ⁵ Vin-a.1327 says the method is the same. ⁶ Vin-a.1327 says the method is the same. ⁷ Vin-a.1327: one arises by means of the deciding which is the covering over (as) with grass. ⁸ Kd.2.3.5. ⁹ Kd.14.6.1, Kd.14.6.2. ¹⁰ Kd.14.6.1, Kd.14.6.2. ¹¹ Kd.11.4. ¹² Kd.11.10.1. ¹ Bu-Ss.13. ² Kd.11.19, Kd.11.20.

- ... not rid of them; if (though) he has fallen into an offence he does not wish to see the offence.³
46. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of suspension against a monk ... for not making amends for an offence ... if he is a maker of strife ... not rid of them: if (though) he has fallen into an offence he does not wish to make amends for the offence.⁴
47. An Order, if it so desires, may carry out a (formal) act of suspension against a monk who is possessed of three qualities for not giving up a pernicious view: if he is a maker of strife ... not rid of them; if he does not wish to give up the pernicious view.⁵
48. An Order, if it so desires, may plan something hard⁶ for a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is a maker of strife ... not rid of them; if he lives in company with householders, in unbecoming association with householders.
49. A (formal) act may be carried out against a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is unconscientious⁷ and if he is ignorant⁸ and if he is not a regular (monk).⁹
50. And a (formal) act may be carried out against a monk who is possessed of three further qualities: if, in regard to morality, he has fallen away from moral habit¹; if, in regard to behaviour, he has fallen away from right behavior²; if, in regard to view, he has fallen away from right view.³
51. And a (formal) act may be carried out against a monk who is possessed

BD.6.191

³ See [Kd.11.25-30](#), [Kd.8.7.9](#). ⁴ See [Kd.11.31](#), [Kd.8.7.9](#). ⁵ See [Kd.11.32](#), [Kd.11.33](#). ⁶ *āgālhāya ceteyya*—expression appears to occur here only. Vin-a.1327 glosses by *dalhabhāvāya ceteyya*; and goes on to say an Order may carry out a (formal) act of suspension for one against whom an act of censure was out if he has not fulfilled his obligations. ⁷ *alajjin*, as at [Vin.3.179](#), [Vin.1.77](#). ⁸ He does not know what is *Dhamma* and what is not-*dhamma*, Vin-a.1327. ⁹ *apakatatta*. See [Kd.12.1.5](#) for *pakatatta*, regular monk; also [Kd.8.4.8](#), and definition of regular monk at Vin-a.1147. Vin-a.1327 says “he does not know what is an offence and what is not”, and hence cannot carry out a formal act. ¹ This triad is at [Vin.2.4](#); Cf. also [Vin.1.63](#). Vin-a.1327 says this means he has fallen into two classes of offence (Defeat and Formal Meeting). ² The five classes of offence. ³ Taking up an extreme view, *antaggāhikā dīṭṭhi*, Vin-a.1327. See [Vin.1.172](#). There are 10 such views, see [Vin.5.138](#). Commentary further says that a formal act may be carried out against those who neither see an offence, make amends for one, nor give up a wrong view.

of three further qualities: if he is possessed of bodily frivolity, if he is possessed of verbal frivolity, if he is possessed of bodily and verbal frivolity.⁴

52. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if he is possessed of bodily bad behaviour ... verbal bad behaviour ... bodily and verbal bad behaviour.⁵
53. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if he is possessed of harming by means of body ... harming by means of speech ... harming by means of body and speech.⁶
54. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if he is possessed of a wrong bodily mode of livelihood ... a wrong verbal mode of livelihood ... a wrong bodily and verbal mode of livelihood.⁷
55. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if, having fallen into an offence and a (formal) act has been carried out against him, he ordains, gives guidance, makes a novice attend him.⁸
56. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if he falls into that same offence for which a (formal) act was carried out (against him) by an Order, or into another that is similar, or into one that is worse.⁹
57. And ... who is possessed of three further qualities: if he speaks dispraise of the Buddha of *Dhamma* ... of the Order.¹⁰
58. If a monk is possessed of three qualities: if he is unconscientious and if he is ignorant and if he is not a regular monk (but if) he has suspended the Observance in the midst of an Order (but if other monks) have snubbed him, saying: "That's enough, monk; let there be no strife, no quarrel, no dispute, no contention," the Observance may be carried out by the Order.¹

BD.6.192

⁴ Vin.2.13. The first member of the triad appears to mean playing at dice (Vin-a.1327) though Vin-a.1147 says "bodily play"; the second may be producing a drumming sound with the mouth; and the third is dancing and singing. ⁵ Vin.2.13. These mean transgressing the rules of training laid down concerning the doors of the body and of speech. ⁶ Harming through not training in the rules of training regarding body and speech, Vin.2.13. ⁷ Going messages on foot or sorcery or accepting teachings on the Dispensation from lay-people. ⁸ Cf. Vin.2.5, etc. ⁹ Vin.2.4, etc. ¹⁰ Vin.2.4, etc. ¹ The main theme of Kd.19 is the suspension of the Pātimokkha.

59. If a monk is possessed of three qualities ... there may be Invitation by the Order.²
60. No agreement of an Order should be given to a monk who is possessed of three qualities: if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk.³
61. If a monk is possessed of three qualities he should not speak⁴ in the Order: if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk.
62. A monk who is possessed of three qualities should not be put in any separate place⁵; if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk.
63. If a monk is possessed of three qualities he should not live in dependence ... If a monk is possessed of three qualities he should not give guidance: if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk. Vin.5.123
64. If a monk who is possessed of three qualities obtains leave⁶ the giving of the leave is not sufficient: if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk.
65. If a monk is possessed of three qualities he should not issue commands⁷: if he is unconscientious ... not a regular monk.
66. If a monk is possessed of three qualities he should not ask about Discipline⁸ ... not a regular monk.
67. Discipline should not be asked about by means of monk who is possessed of three qualities⁹: ... not a regular monk. BD.6.193
68. (Questions on) Discipline should not be answered by a monk who is possessed of three qualities¹: ... not a regular monk.
69. (Questions on) Discipline should not be answered through a monk who is possessed of three qualities²: ... not a regular monk.
70. An explanation should not be given to a monk who is possessed of three qualities³: ... not a regular monk.

² Kd.4.16.6. ³ Cf. Nuns' Bi-Pc.75. ⁴ *voharitabbam*, glossed by *na kiñci vattabbam*. ⁵ *na kismiñci paccekattḥāne ṭhapetabbo*, as at AN.iv.347. Vin-a.1328 says he should not be set in a high place, *jeṭṭhakattḥāne*, that is to say in a specially honoured position. AN.iv.160 adds that if he has been put in such a place, there is no chance to carry out a formal act of the Order. ⁶ *okāsakammaṃ kārāpentassa*. See Vin.1.114 *okāsaṃ kārāpetvā*; Vin.2.5, Vin.2.23, etc. *okāsaṃ kāretabbo*. ⁷ *savacaniyaṃ na dātabbam*. Vin.2.5, etc. read *na savacaniyaṃ kātabbam*, and Vin-a.1328 *ādātabbam*: his speech should not be taken up, not listened to. ⁸ Cf. Kd.2.15.6. ⁹ Cf. Kd.2.15.8. ¹ Kd.2.15.11. ² Kd.2.15.9. ³ Kd.4.16.6.

71. Discipline should not be discussed together with a monk who is possessed of three qualities⁴: ... not a regular monk.
72. One should not be ordained by a monk who is possessed of three qualities⁵: ... not a regular monk.
73. Guidance should not be given to⁶ a monk who is possessed of three qualities: ... not a regular monk.
74. A novice should not be made to attend on a monk who is possessed of three qualities⁷: if he is unconscientious and ignorant and not a regular monk.
75. Three Observances: on the fourteenth (day), the fifteenth (day),⁸ and the Observance of “being all together”.⁹
76. And three further Observances: Observance in an Order,¹⁰ Observance in a group,¹¹ Observance for an individual.¹²
77. And three further Observances: the Observance at which the rules are recited,¹³ the Observance at which there is entire purity,¹⁴ the Observance where there is determination.¹⁵
78. Three Invitations: the fourteenth (day), the fifteenth (day),¹⁶ and the Invitation of “being all together”.¹⁷
79. And three further Invitations: Invitation in an Order,¹⁸ Invitation in a group,¹⁹ Invitation for an individual.²⁰
80. And three further Invitations: Invitation by the threefold formula,²¹ Invitation by the twofold formula,²² Invitation of those keeping the rains (all) together.
81. Three (persons) doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya¹: he who, not getting rid of this,² is not a Brahma-farer though pretending to be a Brahma-farer; and he who, though not a pure Brahma-farer, makes an unfounded charge of non-Brahma faring against one who is faring a pure Brahma-faring³; and he who speaks like this and is of this view:

BD.6.194

⁴ See Vin.5.189. ⁵ Cf. Kd.1.76.4ff. ⁶ Kd.1.72.2. ⁷ Kd.1.52, Kd.1.55. ⁸ Kd.2.4.2; Kd.2.14.1. ⁹ Kd.2.5.1, Kd.2.5.2. ¹⁰ Cf. Kd.2.24. ¹¹ Kd.2.26.1ff. ¹² Kd.2.26.8ff. ¹³ Kd.2.26.1 (Cf. Kd.2.15.1). These three items appear with two others, Vin.5.133. ¹⁴ Kd.2.26.2 (Cf. Kd.2.22.1ff.). ¹⁵ Kd.2.26.9, Kd.2.26.10. ¹⁶ Kd.4.3.1. ¹⁷ Kd.4.3.2ff. ¹⁸ Kd.4.5.1. ¹⁹ Kd.4.5.2-5. ²⁰ Kd.4.5.6ff. ²¹ Kd.4.14.1. ²² Kd.4.15.1. The onefold formula of the Mahāvagga is not mentioned in the Parivāra above. ¹ See Vin.2.202, Vin.2.205. ² Vin-a.1328: this pretence. ³ Vin.3.90. According to Vin-a.1328 a pure Brahma-farer is a monk whose cankers are destroyed.

- “There is no defect in sense-pleasures” comes to indulgence among the sense-pleasures.⁴
82. Three roots of unskill: greed is a root of unskill, hatred is a root of unskill, confusion is a root of unskill.
83. Three roots of skill: non-greed is a root of skill, non-hatred is a root of skill, non-confusion is a root of skill.
84. Three ways of bad behavior: bad behaviour through body, bad behaviour through speech, bad behaviour through thought.
85. Three ways of good behavior: good behaviour through body ... speech ... thought.
86. Dependent on three reasons was a meal (to be eaten) by a triad (of monks) laid down by the Lord: for the restraint of evil-minded individuals; for the living in comfort of well-behaved monks lest those of evil desires should split an Order by means of a faction; and out of compassion for families.⁵
87. Devadatta, overcome and his mind controlled by three bad qualities is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya, staying there for an aeon, incurable: evil desire, evil friendship, coming to a halt midway in his career because his special attainments are of trifling value.⁶
88. Three agreements: agreement as to a walking staff⁷; agreement as to string⁸; agreement as to a walking staff and string.⁹
89. Three (kinds of) shoes that are in fixed places and cannot be handed on: privy shoes, urinal shoes, rinsing shoes.¹⁰
90. Three (kinds of) foot-rubbers: a stone, a pebble, sea-scum.¹¹

Vin.5.124

Concluded are the Triads

ITS SUMMARY

While he is alive, at the right time,
and during the night, ten, five, through skill,
Feeling, grounds for reproof,
votes, twice objections, /
Layings down, and two further, ignorant,
and at the next new-moon day, is allowed,

BD.6.195

⁴ Cf. MN.i.305; see GS.i.244, n.2 on *pālabyatam*, indulgence. The whole triad occurs at AN.i.265f. ⁵ Whole triad at Kd.17.3.13 (Vin.2.196). ⁶ Vin.2.203. ⁷ Vin.2.131. See for this and next below Prv.9.1. ⁸ Vin.2.132. ⁹ Vin.2.130. ¹⁰ Vin.1.190. ¹¹ Vin.2.130.

In the cold weather, an Order, for an Order,
 and concealings, a covering, /
 Things hidden, and unveiled, lodgings, those who are ill,
 The Pātimokkha, probation, *mānattas*, those under probation, /
 Inside, and inside a boundary, does one fall, and again further,
 Does one arise, and further too,
 verdicts for past insanity are twofold, /
 (Act of) censure, and of guidance,
 of banishment, reconciliation,
 Not seeing, not making amends for,
 and not giving up a (wrong) view, /
 Something hard, (formal) act,
 as to the higher morality,
 frivolity, bad behaviour, harming,
 Mode of livelihood, having fallen, that same (offence),
 dispraise, and about Observance, /
 Invitation, and agreement,
 remaining, and in a separate (place),
 He should not speak, he should not give,
 likewise he should not get leave, /
 He should not issue commands,
 two on what should not be asked about,
 And similarly two on he should not answer,
 and he should not be given an explanation, /
 Discussion, ordination, guidance, and novices,
 Three triads on Observance, three triads on Invitation, /
 (Persons in) the Downfall, unskilled, skilled, two on behaviour,
 A meal by a triad, bad qualities, agreement, and about shoes,
 Similarly things that are foot-rubbers:
 this is the summary for the Triads.

4. TETRADS

Prv.7.4.1

1. There is the offence one falls into through one's own speech, rises from through another's speech¹; there is the offence one falls into through

BD.6.196

¹ Vin-a.1328f. says one falls into the offence beginning with speaking *Dhamma* line by line (Bu-Pc.4)—a speech-door offence—and having received the deciding of a covering over (as) with grass he rises (from the offence) through another person's proclamation, *kammavācā*.

- another's speech, rises from through one's own speech²; there is the offence one falls into through one's own speech, rises from through one's own speech³; there is the offence one falls into through another's speech, rises from through another's speech.⁴
2. There is the offence one falls into by body, rises from by speech: ... falls into by speech, rises from by body ... falls into by body, rises from by body falls into by speech, rises from by speech.⁵
 3. There is the offence one falls into when one is asleep,⁶ rises from when one is awake; ... when one is awake, rises from when one is asleep ... asleep, asleep ... awake, awake.
 4. There is the offence one falls into unconscious⁷ (that it is against ordinance), rises from conscious (that it is against ordinance); ... conscious unconscious ...; unconscious ... unconscious; there is the offence one falls into conscious (that it is against ordinance), rises from conscious (that it is against ordinance).
 5. There is the offence that, falling into, he confesses, confessing he falls into; there is the offence that, falling into he rises from, rising from he falls into.¹
 6. There is the offence one falls into through doing, rises from through not doing ... falls into through not doing, rises from through doing ... falls into through doing, rises from through doing ... falls into through

Vin.5.125

² Vin-a.1329: through another's proclamation one falls for not giving up a wrong view; confessing in the presence of an individual one rises (Cf. [Vin.1.323](#), [Vin.1.330](#)). ³ Again, one falls speaking *Dhamma* line by line, but on confessing the offence one rises through one's own speech. ⁴ One falls into a Formal Meeting through another's proclamation made up to the third time; one rises through another's proclamation (that one should live under) probation. ⁵ One offends with the speech-door, rises by body through a covering over (as) with grass. ⁶ This is the offence of lying down on a couch belonging to an Order, having spread it for oneself; Cf. [Bu-Pc.14](#). The word for "asleep" is *pasutta*, "awake" is *paṭibuddha*; neither word appears to occur elsewhere in Vinaya. See Introduction, p.xv. ⁷ *acittake āpajjati* means he falls into an *acittakāpatti*; *acittaka* occurs at [Vin.5.207](#), but apparently not again in Vinaya. ¹ Vin-a.1329 here speaks of a collective offence, *sabhāgāpatti*, and says "whoever confesses one, falling into an offence of wrong-doing because of the confession, confesses a certain offence of Expiation and so on, and confessing that he falls into an offence of wrong-doing. But, falling into that offence of wrong-doing he rises from the offence of *Pācittiya* and so on, but rising from that offence of *Pācittiya* he falls into that". See [Vin.1.126](#).

not doing, rises from through not doing.²

BD.6.197

7. Four unariyan statements³: speaking of the seen as unseen, speaking of the heard as unheard, speaking of the sensed as unsensed, speaking of the cognized as uncognized.
8. Four *ariyan* statements⁴: speaking of the unseen as unseen ... of the uncognized as uncognized.
9. And four further unariyan statements⁵: speaking of the unseen as seen, speaking of the unheard as heard, speaking of the unsensed as sensed, speaking of the uncognized as cognized.
10. Four *ariyan* statements⁶: speaking of the seen as seen ... the cognized as cognized.
11. Four offences involving Defeat are shared by monks and nuns.
12. Four offences involving Defeat are not shared by monks and nuns.⁷
13. Four requisites: there is the requisite that should be guarded, protected, cherished, made use of⁸; there is the requisite that should be guarded, protected, not cherished, made use of; there is the requisite that should be guarded, protected, not cherished, not made use of; there is the requisite that should not be guarded, not protected, not cherished, not made use of.
14. There is the offence one falls into in the presence of, rises from in the absence of¹; there is the offence one falls into in the absence of, rises from in the presence of²; ... falls into in the presence of, rises from in the presence of³; there is the offence one falls into in the absence of, rises from in the absence of.⁴

² Vin-a.1329 says that in this tetrad one falls through doing the offence of not giving up a false view. Confessing, one rises through not-doing. One falls through not-doing, beginning with emission (Bu-Ss.1), one rises from through doing probation. One falls also through the doing of admonishment, rises from by doing (see e.g. Vin.3.174, Vin.4.236). ³ Vin.4.2.

⁴ Vin.4.2. ⁵ Vin.4.2. ⁶ DN.iii.232, AN.ii.246. ⁷ See BD.3, Introduction, p.xxxii. ⁸ A deviation from the four requisites as usually given: robe-material, bowl, etc. Vin-a.1330 says the first is one's own requisites, the second belongs to the Order, the third to a *cetiya* (shrine), and the fourth is a householder's requisite. ¹ Vin-a.1330: one falls in the presence of the Order into the offence of not giving up a pernicious view. But at the time of rising (from the offence), if there is nothing to be done by the Order, one rises in the absence of. ² Beginning with emission (Bu-Ss.1). "Of the Order" is meant throughout. ³ Referring to "admonition" in the various Formal Meetings. ⁴ I.e. when telling conscious lies and so on.

15. There is the offence one falls into unknowing, rises from knowing; ... falls into knowing, rises from unknowing falls into unknowing, rises from unknowing; there is the offence one falls into knowing, rises from knowing.⁵
16. By four means does one fall into an offence: one falls by body ... by speech ... by body, by speech; one falls by a resolution.⁶ BD.6.198
17. And by four further means does one fall into an offence: in the midst of an Order, in the midst of a group, in the presence of an individual, through the appearance of a sexual characteristic.⁷
18. By four means does one rise from an offence: one rises by body ... by speech ... by body, by speech; one rises by a resolution.
19. And by four further means does one rise from an offence: in the midst of an Order, in the midst of a group in the presence of an individual, through the appearance of a sexual characteristic. Together with (its) acquisition he gets rid of the earlier, is established in the later, hintings are allayed descriptions are stopped.⁸ Together with (its) acquisition he gets rid of the later, is established in the earlier, hintings are allayed, descriptions are stopped.⁹
20. Four reprovings: one reprovves for falling away from moral habit, one reprovves for falling away from good behaviour, one reprovves for falling away from right views, one reprovves for falling away from right mode of livelihood. Vin.5.126
21. Four probations: probation for concealing, probation for not concealing, purifying probation, concurrent probation.¹
22. Four *mānattas*: *mānatta* for concealing, *mānatta* for not concealing, *mānatta* for a fortnight, concurrent *mānatta*.
23. Four interruptions for a monk who is undergoing *mānatta*: dwelling with, dwelling away separated from, not announcing, going about with less than a group.²

⁵ This tetrad is like that on “unconscious”, *acittaka*. ⁶ *kammavācā*. ⁷ Vin-a.1330 seems to refer this to Vin.3.35 (Bu-Pj.1.10.6). ⁸ Referring to the last tetrad. ⁹ Referring to the last tetrad. ¹ Split into two dyads at Vin.5.118; the first three also form a triad at Vin.5.121.

² Kd.12.7.

BD.6.199

24. Four things discovered of themselves.³
25. Four enjoyments (of food and so on, formally) accepted: for the time being, for a watch of the night, for seven days, for as long as life lasts.⁴
26. Four great irregular things: (a decoction of) dung, urine, ashes, clay.⁵
27. Four (formal) acts: a (formal) act for which leave should be asked, a (formal) act at which a motion is put, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, a (formal) act at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.⁶
28. And four further (formal) acts: a (formal) act in an incomplete (Order carried out) by what is not the rule; a (formal) act in a complete (Order carried out) by what is not the rule; a (formal) act in an incomplete (Order carried out) by the rule; a (formal) act in a complete (Order carried out) by the rule.⁷
29. Four fallings away: falling away from moral habit ... from good behaviour ... from right views ... from right mode of livelihood.
30. Four legal questions: legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations.⁸
31. Four defilements of an assembly: a monk who is poor in moral habit, evil in character is a defilement of an assembly; a nun ... a lay follower ... a female lay follower who is poor in moral habit, evil in character is a defilement of an assembly.¹
32. Four adornments of an assembly: a monk who is of moral habit, lovely in character is an adornment of an assembly; a nun ... a lay follower ... a female lay follower who is of moral habit, lovely in character is an adornment of an assembly.²

³ Text *sāmukkaṃsā*. At [Vin.1.16](#), [Vin.1.18](#), [Vin.2.156](#), etc., we find *sāmukkaṃsika* *Dhammadeśanā*: *dukkhaṃ samudayaṃ nirodhaṃ maggaṃ*. See MN-a.iii.92. On the other hand Vin-a.1330 explains *cattāro sāmukkaṃsā* by *cattāro mahāpadesā*, but the rest of its explanation is in line with MN-a.iii.92 and DN-a.277. The *mahāpadesā* therefore are probably not to be taken here in the sense given them at e.g. DN.ii.123ff. ⁴ See e.g. [Vin.4.83](#) (and [BD.2.330](#) notes). “Food for the time being” probably refers to the five kinds of meals, given to be eaten at once. ⁵ [Vin.1.206](#); also [Vin.4.90](#). ⁶ Forming two dyads at [Vin.5.116](#). ⁷ [Vin.1.111f](#).

⁸ [Vin.2.88](#), [Vin.3.164](#). ¹ AN.ii.225, reading *parisadussanā*; above and AN.iii.210 read *-dūsanā*.

² AN.ii.225.

33. There is the offence an incoming (monk) falls into, not a resident one³; there is the offence a resident (monk) falls into, not an incoming one⁴; there is the offence a resident monk falls into as well as an incoming one; there is the offence that neither a resident (monk) falls into nor an incoming one. There is the offence a (monk who is) going away falls into, not a resident one⁵; there is the offence a resident (monk) falls into, not one who is going away⁶ ... there is the offence that neither one who is going away nor a resident one falls into.
34. There is difference as to matter, not difference as to offence⁷; there is difference as to offence, not difference as to matter⁸; there is difference as to matter as well as difference as to offence⁹; there is difference neither as to matter nor as to offence.¹⁰
35. There is similarity as to matter, not similarity as to offence¹¹; there is similarity as to offence, not similarity as to matter¹²; there is similarity as to matter as well as similarity as to offence¹³; there is similarity neither as to matter nor as to offence.¹⁴
36. There is the offence the preceptor falls into, not the one who shares his cell¹; there is the offence one who shares a cell falls into, not the preceptor²; there is the offence the preceptor falls into as well as the one who shares his cell³; there is the offence neither ... falls into.

BD.6.200

³ Vin-a.1331 says here an incoming monk falls into an offence if he enters a *vihāra* with his sunshade up, his sandals on, his head covered—see Vin.2.207-8. ⁴ The resident does not perform a resident's duties, Vin.2.210. ⁵ Vin.2.211. ⁶ Vin.2.210. ⁷ Vin-a.1331: the four Defeats differ as to matter, not as to offence; similarly the Formal Meetings. ⁸ Vin-a.1331: if a monk and a nun come into physical contact with one another, there is a Formal Meeting for the monk and a Defeat for the nun. Likewise, eating garlic is an *Pācittiya* for a nun, wrong-doing for a monk. ⁹ I.e. in the four Defeats together with the 13 Formal Meetings. So too, as between the Formal Meetings and the Undetermined. ¹⁰ Beginning with the four Defeats that monks and nuns fall into separately. The meaning is that they fall separately and that they fall into offences that they share. ¹¹ Vin-a.1331: if a monk and a nun are in physical contact, there is similarity of matter, not of offence. ¹² In regard to the Defeats and the Formal Meetings. ¹³ In regard to the four Defeats for monks and nuns, and in regard to all the offences they have in common. ¹⁴ In regard to the offences monks and nuns do not share. ¹ If either fails in carrying out his duties to the other. ² If either fails in carrying out his duties to the other. ³ The remaining offences.

37. There is the offence the teacher falls into, not the pupil⁴ ... there is the offence neither the teacher nor the pupil falls into.
38. For four reasons there is no offence in cutting short the rains: if the Order is split, or if there are those desirous of splitting an Order,⁵ or if there is danger to life, or if there is danger to the Brahma-faring.⁶
39. Four bad ways of verbal conduct: lying speech, slanderous speech, harsh speech, gossip.⁷
40. Four good ways of verbal conduct: truthful speech, non-slanderous speech, gentle speech, utterance of mantras.⁸
41. There is, in taking, a serious offence that one falls into,⁹ a slight one in enjoining¹⁰; there is, in taking, a slight offence that one falls into, a serious one in enjoining; there is, in taking and in enjoining, a serious offence that one falls into; there is, in taking and in enjoining, a slight offence that one falls into.
42. There is the individual who merits respectful greeting, does not merit standing up for¹¹ ... standing up for, not respectful greeting¹² ... respectful greeting as well as standing up for¹³ ... merits neither respectful greeting nor standing up for.¹⁴
43. There is the individual who merits a seat, does not merit standing up for ... who merits neither a seat nor standing up for.¹
44. There is the offence one falls into at a (right) time, not at a wrong time² ... at a wrong time,³ not at a right time ... at a right time as well as at a wrong time ... neither at a right time nor at a wrong time.

BD.6.201
Vin.5.127

⁴ The explanation of this tetrad is similar to the former one; see [Vin.1.61](#). ⁵ [Vin.1.150f.](#) ([Kd.3.11.5ff.](#)). The Pātimokkha may be recited in brief ([Vin.1.112f.](#)) and the Invitation curtailed ([Vin.1.169f.](#)) if these dangers are present. ⁶ Dangers to life during the rains are specified at [Vin.1.148f.](#), and to the Brahma-faring at [Vin.1.150](#). ⁷ Stock, as at [MN.iii.22](#), [MN.iii.33](#), [AN.ii.141](#). At [DN.iii.232](#) the four are given under *anariyavohārā*. ⁸ [AN.ii.141](#); for references to *mantabhāsa* see [GS.ii.144](#), n.1. ⁹ [Bu-Pj.2](#) ([Vin.3.45](#)). ¹⁰ “enjoining—*payojento*”. This appears to refer to [Vin.3.53f.](#) ¹¹ This seems to refer to nuns in a refectory. ¹² Referring to a monk who that day received ordination after he had spent sixty years under probation. ¹³ An older monk from one who is newly ordained. ¹⁴ A newly ordained monk by a more senior one. ¹ The meaning is much the same as in the preceding tetrad. The first clause here has the same meaning as the second clause there, and the second the same as the first. ² Eating, having been invited to do so, [Bu-Pc.36](#). ³ The offence of eating at a wrong time, [Bu-Pc.37](#).

45. There is the formal acceptance⁴ allowable at a right time, not at a wrong time⁵ ... at a wrong time, not at a right time⁶ ... at a right time as well as at a wrong time⁷ ... allowable neither at a right time nor at a wrong time.⁸
46. There is the offence one falls into in the border districts,⁹ not in the middle ones¹⁰ ... in the middle districts, not in the border ones¹¹ ... in the border districts as well as in the middle ones ... neither in the border districts nor in the middle ones.
47. There is what is allowable in the border districts, not in the middle ones¹² ... in the middle districts, not in the border ones¹³ ... in the border districts as well as in the middle ones¹⁴ ... neither in the border districts nor in the middle ones.
48. There is the offence one falls into inside, not outside¹⁵ ... outside, not inside¹⁶ ... neither inside nor outside ... inside as well as outside.
49. There is the offence one falls into inside the boundary, not outside the boundary¹ ... outside the boundary, not inside the boundary ... inside the boundary as well as outside the boundary² ... neither inside the boundary nor outside the boundary.
50. There is an offence one falls into in a village, not in a forest³ ... in a forest, not in a village⁴ ... in a village as well as in a forest⁵ ... neither

BD.6.202

⁴ *paṭiggahita*, see [Vin.5.126](#). ⁵ [Vin-a.1332](#) refers this to “before a meal”; see [Bu-Pc.46](#), [Nuns’ Bi-Pc.15](#). ⁶ A drink is allowable at a wrong time. “Not at a right time” refers to “the next day”. ⁷ Food for seven days and for as long as life lasts. ⁸ Meat that is not allowable, see [Vin.1.218](#). ⁹ Defined at [Vin.1.197](#). ¹⁰ [Vin-a.1332](#) says, settling on a boundary in the sea one falls in bordering districts, not in middle ones. ¹¹ Wearing sandals with many linings ([Kd.5.1.30](#)), ordaining by a fivefold ([Kd.8.4.1](#)), constant bathing (see [Bu-Pc.67](#)), using hides as coverings ([Kd.5.10.6ff.](#))—all allowed for border districts at [Kd.5.13.13](#). ¹² See previous note. ¹³ Presumably not ordaining by a group of five ([Kd.8.4.1](#)) and the opposites of the cases given in the last note but one above. ¹⁴ [Vin-a.1333](#) cites the five kinds of salts allowed as medicines ([Kd.6.8.1](#)). ¹⁵ To lie down encroaching on (the space intended for elders): [Bu-Pc.16](#); see also [Vin.1.47](#), [Vin.2.213](#), [Vin.2.220](#), [Vin.2.224](#), [Vin.4.42](#). ¹⁶ Going away and leaving a couch and so on that belong to the Order out in the open air, [Bu-Pc.14](#). ¹ [Vin-a.1333](#): an incoming monk, not fulfilling his duties, falls inside a boundary; one going away falls outside the boundary. ² One who tells lies and so on falls inside and outside the boundary. ³ See the *Sekhiyas* connected with “amid the houses”. ⁴ A nun, waiting for the sun to rise, falls into an offence in a forest, not in a village. ⁵ E.g. lying speech.

in a village nor in a forest.

51. Four reproving⁶: showing the matter, showing the offence, objection to living in communion, objection to the proper duties.
52. Four preliminary things to be done.⁷
53. Four occasions when things seem right.⁸
54. Four Expiations (containing the words) “not for another”.⁹
55. Four agreements of the monks.¹⁰
56. Four followings of a wrong course: he follows a wrong course through partiality (desire) ... through hatred ... through confusion ... through fear.¹¹
57. Four non-followings of a wrong course: he does not follow a wrong course through partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear.
58. Possessed of four qualities an unconscientious monk, following a wrong course through partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear, splits an Order.¹²
59. Possessed of four qualities a modest monk, not following a wrong course through partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear, makes harmonious an Order that was split.¹
60. Discipline should not be asked about of a monk² who is possessed of four qualities: if he follows a wrong course through partiality ... fear.³
61. Discipline should not be asked about by a monk⁴ who is possessed of four qualities: if he follows a wrong course through partiality ... fear.⁵
62. Questions on Discipline should not be answered for a monk⁶ who is possessed of four qualities ... should not be answered by a monk⁷ who

BD.6.203

⁶ Another four at [Vin.5.125f.](#) ⁷ (Making ready) a broom, a light, water and a seat, [Vin-a.1333](#). This has the appearance of being the duty of a novice who is preparing a cell for an older monk. A broom is allowed at [Vin.2.130](#). Commentary gives another four *pubbakiccā*: the complete purity of the consent (*chanda*, see [Bu-Pc.79](#)), *utukkhāna* (? has this anything to do with *khīyanaka*, criticism, see [BD.3.59, n.2](#)), counting the monks, and exhortation.

⁸ *pattakallā*; word at e.g. [Bu-NP.18](#), [Bu-NP.19](#). [Vin-a.1333](#) says: Observance, as many monks are come who are eligible for a formal act, (if) collective offences are not to be found, and (if) individuals who are to be avoided are not in this, *tasmim*. ⁹ Referring to [Bu-Pc.16](#), [Bu-Pc.42](#), [Bu-Pc.77](#), [Bu-Pc.78](#).

¹⁰ Referring to [Bu-NP.2](#), [Bu-NP.14](#), [Bu-NP.29](#), [Bu-Pc.9](#). ¹¹ See e.g. [Vin.2.14](#), [Vin.3.238](#), [Vin.3.246](#), [Vin.4.238](#). ¹² See [Kd.17](#) ¹ See [Kd.17](#) ² See [Vin.5.123](#).

³ See [Kd.17](#) ⁴ See [Vin.5.123](#). ⁵ See [Kd.17](#) ⁶ See [Vin.5.123](#). ⁷ See [Vin.5.123](#).

is possessed of four qualities: if he follows a wrong course through partiality ... fear.

63. An explanation should not be given to a monk⁸ who is possessed of four qualities ...
64. Discipline should not be discussed together with a monk⁹ who is possessed of four qualities: if he follows a wrong course through partiality ... fear. Vin.5.128
65. There is an offence one who is ill falls into, not one who is not ill¹⁰ ... one who is not ill falls into, not one who is ill¹¹ ... one who is ill falls into as well as one who is not ill¹² ... neither one who is ill falls into nor one who is not ill.
66. Four suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.¹³
67. Four suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.¹⁴

Concluded are the Tetrads

ITS SUMMARY

Through one's own speech, by body,
and asleep, unconscious,
And falling into, through doing,
statements are four likewise, /
And by monks and nuns,
and requisites, in the presence of,
Unknowing, by body, and by means,
one rises from is likewise fourfold, /
With the acquisition, reprovings,
and it is called probations
Mānatta, and undergoings too,
discovered by themselves, (formal) acceptance, /
Great irregular (things), (formal) acts,
again (formal) acts fallings away,
Legal questions, and those poor in moral habit,
adornment and on an incoming one, /
One going away, difference as to matter,
similarity, and about a preceptor,
Teacher, reason, bad conduct, good conduct, /
Taking, and individual,

BD.6.204

⁸ See Vin.5.123. ⁹ See Vin.5.123. ¹⁰ See Nuns' Bi-NP.4, Bi-NP.5; also above Vin.5.121.

¹¹ See Bu-Pc.32, Bu-Pc.38, Bu-Pc.39, Bu-Pc.56, Bu-Pc.57, etc. ¹² Lying speech and so on.

¹³ Vin.2.242. ¹⁴ Vin.2.242

one who merits, and about a seat,
 At a (right) time, and also it is allowable,
 and it is allowable in the border districts, /
 Inside, and inside a boundary,
 and in a village, and reprovings,
 Preliminary duties, it seems right,
 “not for another,” and agreements, /
 A wrong course and not a wrong course too,
 unconscientious, and about a modest one,
 And two on whom may be asked,
 likewise two on what one may answer,
 Explanation, discussion, ill, and about suspension.

5. PENTADS

Prv.7.5.1

1. Five offences.¹
2. Five classes of offence.²
3. Five matters that are trained in.³
4. Five deeds whose fruit comes with no delay.⁴
5. Five individuals who are certain.⁵
6. Five offences involving cutting down.⁶
7. In five ways does one fall into an offence.⁷
8. Five offences due to lying speech.¹
9. In five ways does it not become a (formal) act: either one does not carry out a (formal) act by oneself, or one does not look about for another (monk), or one does not give consent or complete purity, or one protests when a (formal) act is being carried out,² or when there is the view that a (formal) act that has been carried out is not legally valid.

BD.6.205

¹ See [Vin.5.91f.](#) ² See [Vin.5.91f.](#) ³ See [Vin.5.91f.](#) ⁴ See [Vin.2.193.](#) ⁵ Or “fixed”. They are the ones who do a deed whose fruition comes once. See [Vin.5.115.](#) ⁶ [Bu-Pc.87](#), [Bu-Pc.89](#), [Bu-Pc.90](#), [Bu-Pc.91](#), [Bu-Pc.92.](#) ⁷ [Vin-a.1334](#): through conscientiousness, ignorance, a scrupulous nature, one thinks that something is allowable when it is not, or that something allowable when it is. ¹ See [Vin.5.193.](#) Commentary lists [Bu-Pj.4](#), grave offence ([Vin.3.99](#)), one of wrong-doing ([Vin.1.104](#), [Vin.3.100f.](#) and [Bu-Pj.4](#)), [Bu-Ss.8](#), [Bu-Pc.1](#), also [Bu-Pj.2.7.12](#), [Bu-Pj.2.7.45](#), and [Bu-Pj.4](#)). ² [Bu-Pc.79](#), Nuns’ [Bi-Ss.4](#).

10. In five ways does it become a (formal) act: either one carries out a (formal) act by oneself, or one looks about for another (monk), or one gives consent or complete purity, or one does not protest when a (formal) act is being carried out, or when there is the view that a (formal) act that has been carried out is legally valid.
11. Five things are allowable to a monk who is an almsfood-eater³: walking for alms without having asked for permission to do so,⁴ a group-meal,⁵ an out-of-turn-meal,⁶ no determining upon,⁷ no assigning.⁸
12. A monk who is possessed of five qualities,⁹ whether he be a deprived monk or one who is steady¹⁰ in morality is mistrusted and suspected if his resort (for alms) is among prostitutes, or among widows, or among grown girls, or among eunuchs, or among nuns. Vin.5.129
13. Five oils¹¹: sesamum oil, oil of mustard seed, oil from the “honey-tree”,¹² oil from the castor-oil plant, oil from tallow.
14. Five tallows: tallow from bears, tallow from fish, tallow from alligators, tallow from swine, tallow from donkeys.¹³
15. Five losses: loss of relations, loss of possessions ... by illness ... in moral habit, loss in (right) view.¹
16. Five prosperities: prosperity in relations ... possessions ... health ... moral habit, prosperity in (right) view.² BD.6.206
17. Five nullifications of guidance from a preceptor: when preceptor has gone away or left the Order or died or gone over to another side (of

³ Begging for almsfood is one of the ascetic practices, see Vism.60, Vism.66. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.254.
⁵ Bu-Pc.32. ⁶ Bu-Pc.33. ⁷ Vin-a.1334 refers to Bu-Pc.32 by saying “It is said ‘in a group-meal except at the right time’ (Vin.4.73f.) means having determined on a right time there is determination for a meal”. The word adhiṭṭhāna does not occur in Bu-Pc.32. ⁸ avikappanā, referring to Bu-Pc.33 (Vin.4.78). ⁹ This pentad is at Vin.1.70 (in another context) and at AN.iii.128 as above, ¹⁰ Reading is *pāpabhikkhu pi akuppadhammo pi*, with variant readings. See Gs.iii.98, n.1. Slightly different reading at AN.iii.128. Vin-a.1334 says since he is steady (not liable to anger?) and since he is one whose cankers are destroyed, he must avoid therefore what are not resorts (for alms). ¹¹ Oil is one of the five general medicines allowed, e.g. Bu-NP.23. These five occur also at MN-a.2.344, SN-a.ii.294. ¹² *madhuka-tela*. *Madhuka* is the tree *Bassia latifolia*. ¹³ Allowed at Vin.1.200 if used with oil. ¹ DN.iii.235, AN.iii.147, and three at Vin.4.277. See Vin.5.194. It is difficult to decide on suitable renderings for *vyasana* and its opposite *sampadā*. The former is loss, deficiency, reverse; the latter blessing, good fortune, success, gain. ² DN.iii.235, AN.iii.147. See Vin.5.194.

- the Order), and command is the fifth.³
18. Five persons should not be ordained: one lacking the full age,⁴ a one lacking a limb,⁵ one who has fallen away from the matter,⁶ one who is a *karaṇadukkaṭaka*,⁷ one who is not complete.⁸
 19. Five refuse-rag-robess⁹: (rags thrown down) in a charnel-ground, outside a shop, gnawn by rats, gnawn by white ants scorched by fire. And five further refuse-rag-robess: (those) gnawn by cattle, gnawn by goats, a robe from a shrine, one from a (king's) consecration, one worn going to or coming from (a charnel-ground).
 20. Five carryings-away¹⁰: a carrying-away by theft¹¹ ... by force ... by stratagem ... by concealment, a carrying-away at a casting of the kusa-grass.¹²
 21. Five great thieves are found in the world.¹³
 22. Five things not to be disposed of.¹⁴
 23. Five things not to be divided up.¹⁵
 24. Five offences originate by means of body, not by speech, not by thought.¹⁶
 25. Five offences originate by means of body and by means of speech, not by means of thought.¹⁷
 26. Five offences lead on to confession.¹⁸
 27. Five Orders.¹
 28. Five (ways for) the recital of the Pātimokkha.²
 29. Ordination may be conferred by a group with a Vinaya expert as the fifth (member) in all border districts.³
 30. Five advantages in the formal making of the *kaṭhina*-cloth.⁴
 31. Five (formal) acts.⁵
 32. Five offences (for which the offender may be admonished) up to the

BD.6.207

³ Vin.1.62. ⁴ *addhānahīna*, referring to Bu-Pc.65; see Vin.5.117. ⁵ See Kd.1.71 (not to go forth). ⁶ *vatthuvipanna*. ⁷ See Vin.5.117. ⁸ See Vin.5.117. ⁹ List of 23 given at Vism.62, not in the above order. This list does not include the second item in the next pentad. ¹⁰ Mentioned at DN-a.71, also at Atthasālinī 98 (which mentions Smp.by name). Vin-a.375ff. explains each term. ¹¹ Bu-Pj.2. ¹² Bu-Pj.2.7, Bu-Pj.2.9. ¹³ Bu-Pj.4.1, Bu-Pj.4.3. ¹⁴ Kd.12.15.2. ¹⁵ Kd.12.16.2. ¹⁶ Vin.5.94: the first origination of offences. ¹⁷ Vin.5.95: the third origination of offences. ¹⁸ See also among the Units. Vin-a.1334 says: leaving aside Defeat and Formal Meeting—the remainder. ¹ Kd.8.4.1. ² Kd.2.15.1. ³ Kd.5.13.11. ⁴ There will be five allowable things when the *kaṭhina* cloth is made up, Vin.1.154. ⁵ Vin.1.49.

- third time.⁶
33. There is an offence involving Defeat for in five ways taking something that has not been given.⁷
 34. There is a grave offence for ... There is an offence of wrong doing for in five ways taking something that has not been given.
 35. Five unallowable things should not be made use of: what has not been given, and what is not known about, and what is not allowable, and what has not been formally accepted, and what has not been made “left over”.⁸
 36. Five allowable things may be made use of: what has been given ... and what has been made “left over”.
 37. Five unmeritorious gifts are considered by the world to be meritorious⁹: a gift of intoxicants, a gift for a festival, a gift of women, a gift of bulls, a gift of pictures.¹⁰
 38. Five arisen things are hard to drive away¹¹: attachment that has arisen is hard to drive away, hatred ... confusion ... garrulousness¹² ... a mind that wanders¹³ when it has arisen is hard to drive away.
 39. There are five advantages in brooms¹: one calms one’s own mind, one calms the mind of others, devas are glad, one accumulates kamma that is conducive to what is pleasant, at the breaking up of the body after dying one arises in a good bourn, a heaven world.
 40. Five further advantages in brooms: one calms one’s own mind ... devas are glad, the Teacher’s instruction is carried out, people coming after fall into the way of (right) views.²
 41. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned

Vin.5.130

⁶ From Vin-a.1334 these are to be identified as: Nuns’ Bi-Pj.7, the offences being Defeat, grave, wrong-doing (Vin.4.218f.); Monk’s Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Pc.68. There are of course several more *sikkhāpadā* requiring admonishment up to the third time. ⁷ Bu-Pj.2, as at Vin.3.54.

⁸ Bu-Pc.35. ⁹ Reading *pañca dānāni apuññāni puññasammatāni lokassa*. Mi.278f., in enumerating ten gifts, of which the first five are as above, reads however *dasa ... dānāni loke adānasammatāni*, ten gifts are considered in the world as not-gifts. See too AN.iv.185 which gives four of the above but in a different order and omits the last, *cittakammadāna*. ¹⁰ Cf. Vin.4.298 *cittāgāra*, picture-gallery. ¹¹ As at AN.iii.184f. ¹² *paṭibhāna*, wordiness, desire to talk. ¹³ *gamiyacitta*. ¹ No comparable passage has been traced so far. Vin-a.1335ff. gives a story explanation of each clause except the final one. Brooms are allowed to at Vin.2.130. ² One might Cf. Vin.2.108, AN.iii.256.

as ignorant: if he does not put a limit to his own speech, if he does not put a limit to the speech of another (person), if, not having put a limit to his own speech, not having put a limit to the speech of another (person), he has a (form act carried out not according to the rule, not with (his) acknowledgement.

BD.6.208

42. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he puts a limit to his own speech ... has a (formal) act carried out according to the rule, with (his) acknowledgement.
43. And if he is possessed of five further qualities the expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is an offence,³ if he does not know what is the root of an offence,⁴ if he does not know the arising of an offence,⁵ if he does not know the stopping of an offence,⁶ if he does not know the course leading to the stopping of an offence.⁷
44. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows what is an offence ... if he knows the course leading to the stopping of an offence.
45. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is a legal question ... the root¹ ... the arising² ... the stopping³ ... the course leading to the stopping of a legal question.⁴
46. If he is possessed of five qualities ... reckoned as clever: If he knows ... the course leading to the stopping of a legal question.
47. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know the subject⁵ ... the prove-

³ Vin-a.1337 says he thinks it is a Defeat or a Formal Meeting and does not know the difference between the seven classes of offence. ⁴ He does not know the two roots: body and speech. ⁵ The six originations of offences. ⁶ It is stopped and allayed by confessing. ⁷ He does not know the seven decidings. ¹ Vin-a.1338: there are thirty-three roots: twelve for legal questions concerned with disputes fourteen for those concerned with censure, six for those concerned with offences, one for those concerned with obligations. ² For dispute there are the eighteen ways connected with schism; for censure the four fallings away; for offence the seven classes of offence, obligation the four obligations of an Order. ³ He cannot achieve a firm opinion through *Dhamma*, Vinaya, the Teacher's instruction. ⁴ He does not know that the legal questions are settled by two, four, three, one decidings respectively. See [Vin.5.101ff.](#), in the Samatha Section. ⁵ The subject of the seven classes of offence.

nance⁶ ... the laying down⁷ ... the supplementary laying down, if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words.⁸

BD.6.209

48. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows the subject ... the sequence of the connecting words.
49. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is a motion, if he does not know the carrying out of the motion,⁹ if he is not skilled in what comes first,¹⁰ if he is not skilled in what comes afterwards, and if he is one who is unknowing of the (right) time.¹¹
50. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows what is a motion ... if he is skilled in what comes afterwards, if he is one who is knowing of the (right) time.
51. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight and what a serious offence, if he does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with,¹ if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, if he has not learnt properly from a succession of teachers, has not attended properly, has not reflected on properly.
52. If he is possessed of five qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows what is an offence and what is not an offence ... if he has learnt properly from a succession of teachers, has attended properly, has reflected on properly.
53. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight and what

⁶ Of the seven provenances (see [Vin.5.144](#)) he does not know that this rule of training was laid down here, that one there. ⁷ The first laying down of each rule of training.

⁸ *anusandhivacanapatha*. [Vin-a.1338](#) says he does not know the subject to the sequence of meaning in the talk and in the thought. ⁹ There is carrying out a motion on nine occasions beginning with “restoration”, *osāraṇā*; see [Vin.1.322](#) and [Vin-a.1031](#). ¹⁰ He does not know that the motion should come first and not afterwards.

¹¹ He speaks unasked, unbidden, and does not know the time, the field (*khetta*) or the occasion (*okāsa*) for a motion; [Vin-a.1338f](#). ¹ See [Vin.5.115](#).

a serious offence, if he does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, and if the two Pātimokkhas have not been properly handed down to him in detail, not properly sectioned, not properly regulated, not properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form.²

Vin.5.131

BD.6.210

54. If he is possessed of five qualities ... clever: if ... the two Pātimokkhas have been properly handed down to him in detail, properly section a properly regulated, properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form.
55. And if he is possessed of five further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence ... if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, and if he is not skilled in investigating³ a legal question. If he is possessed of five qualities ... clever: ... and if he is skilled in investigating a legal question.
56. Five forest-dwellers⁴: one is a forest-dweller from stupidity from confusion; one of evil desires, filled with covetousness is a forest-dweller; one is a forest-dweller from madness, from a deranged mind; one is a forest-dweller at the thought, "It is praised by Buddhas and disciples of Buddhas"; one is a forest-dweller because he is of few wishes, because of contentment, because of subduedness, because of aloofness, because this is of good avail.
57. Five almsfood-eaters ...
58. Five refuse-rag-wearers ...
59. Five tree-root-dwellers ...
60. Five charnel-ground-dwellers ...
61. Five open-air-dwellers ...
62. Five three-robe-wearers ...
63. Five house-to-house-seekers ...
64. Five who are sitters ...
65. Five who use any bed ...

² As at Vin.1.65, Vin.4.51, etc. Cf. Vin.5.134, BD.6.191. ³ *vinicchaya*. ⁴ As at Vin.5.193. AN.iii.219 gives ten of these thirteen ascetic practices in a slightly different order. This varies too at Vism.59.

66. Five eaters at one session ...
67. Five refusers of food later ...
68. Five who eat bowl-food: ... one is a bowl-food-eater from stupidity ... because this is of good avail.
69. A monk who is possessed of five qualities should not live independently¹: if he does not know the Observance, if he does not know the (formal) acts for Observance,² if he does not know the Pātimokkha, if he does not know the recital of the Pātimokkha,³ if it is less than five years (since his ordination).
70. A monk who is possessed of five qualities may live independently: if he knows the Observance ... if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination).⁴
71. And a monk who is possessed of five further qualities should not live independently: if he does not know the Invitation, if he does not know the (formal) acts for Invitation,⁵ if he does not know the Pātimokkha, if he does not know the recital of the Pātimokkha, if it is less than five years (since his ordination).
72. A monk who is possessed of five qualities may live independently: ... if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination).
73. And a monk who is possessed of five further qualities should not live independently: if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight and what a serious offence, if he does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, if it is less than five years (since his ordination).
74. A monk who is possessed of five qualities may live independently: if he knows ... what is and what is not a very bad offence, if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination).
75. A nun who is possessed of five qualities should not live independently: if she does not know the Observance, if she does not know the (formal) acts for Observance, if she does not know the Pātimokkha, if she does

BD.6.211

¹ The five qualities given at [Vin.1.8of.](#) are not repeated here. ² [Vin.1.111.](#) ³ The four items to here are at [Vin.1.116](#), [Vin.1.119](#). ⁴ [Vin.1.81.](#) ⁵ [Vin.1.160.](#)

not know the recital of the Pātimokkha, if it is less than five years (since her ordination).

Vin.5.132

76. A nun who is possessed of five qualities may live independently ... or more than five years (since her ordination).

77. And a nun who is possessed of five further qualities should not live independently ... (*the same paragraphs as above repeated for nuns*) ... if she knows what is and what is not a very bad offence, and if it is five years or more than five years (since her ordination).

78. Five perils for one of unpleasing (actions)¹: the self upbraids the self, and the wise, having adjudicated,² blame him, an evil Rumour spreads abroad (about him), he does his time while he is confused, at the breaking up of the body after dying he arises in a sorrowful way, a bad bourn, the Downfall, Niraya.

BD.6.212

79. Five advantages for one of pleasing (actions)³: the self does not upbraid the self, and the wise, having adjudicated, praise him, a lovely rumour spreads abroad (about him), he does his time while he is unconfused, at the breaking up of the body after dying he arises in a good bourn, a heaven world.

80. And five further perils for one of unpleasing (actions)¹: non-believers are not pleased, there is wavering among some believers the Teacher's instruction is not carried out, people coming after fall² into the way of wrong views,³ his mind is not pleased.

81. Five advantages for one of pleasing (actions)⁴: non-believers are pleased, there is increase of believers, the Teacher's instruction is carried out, people coming after do not fall⁵ into the way of wrong views, his mind is pleased.

82. Five perils for one who is dependent on families⁶: he falls into (the offence of) walking for alms without having asked for permission,⁷ he falls into (the offence of) sitting down in private,⁸ he falls into (the offence of sitting down) on a concealed seat,⁹ he falls into (the offence

¹ AN.iii.255. Vin-a.1339 says *apāsādikan ti kāyaduccarītādi akusalakammaṃ vuccati*. ² *anuvijja*; AN.iii.255 reads *anuvicca*. ³ AN.iii.255. ⁴ AN.iii.255f. ⁵ Text reads *nāpajjati*; AN.iii.256 *āpajjati*. ⁶ Clause also at Vin.2.108. ⁷ AN.iii.256. ⁸ Text reads *āpajjati* as does AN.iii.256. ⁹ AN.iii.258f. "Dependent on families", *kulūpaka*, as at Vin.3.131, Vin.3.135. ⁷ *anāmantacāra* as at Vin.1.254. ⁸ Bu-Pc.45. ⁹ Bu-Pc.44.

- of) teaching *Dhamma* to women in more than five or six sentences,¹⁰ and he lives full of aspirations after sense-pleasures.
83. Five perils for a monk who is dependent on families: living in too much association with families there is a constant seeing of the women-folk, if there is seeing there is contact,¹¹ if there is contact there is intimacy, if there is intimacy there is desire, if his mind (is affected by) desire this may be expected for the monk: either he will fare the Brahma-faring dissatisfied or he will fall into some defiling¹² offence or, disavowing the training, he will revert to the secular life.¹³
84. Five kinds of propagation¹⁴: propagation from roots ... from stems ... from joints ... from cuttings, and fifthly propagation from seeds.
85. Fruit that is in five ways allowable to recluses may be made use of¹⁵: if it is damaged¹⁶ by fire, damaged by a knife, damaged by (one's) nail, if it is seedless, and the fifth is if the seeds have been discharged.
86. Five purifications¹⁷: having recited the provenance, the rest may be announced as though it had been heard (already): this is the first purification; having recited the provenance, having recited the four offences involving Defeat, the rest may be announced as though it had been heard (already): this is the second purification; having recited the provenance, having recited the four offences involving Defeat, having recited the thirteen offences entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order, the rest may be announced as though it had been heard (already): this is the third purification; having recited the provenance ... offences involving Defeat ... entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order, having recited the two Undetermined Offences, the rest may be announced as though it had been heard (already): this is the fourth purification; recital in full is the fifth.
87. And five further purifications: recital of the rules,¹ Observance when there is entire purity,² Observance when there is determination,³ Invitation, and the fifth is Observance with "being all together".

BD.6.213

Vin.5.133

¹⁰ Bu-Pc.7. ¹¹ Cf. Bu-Ss.2. ¹² Vin-a.1339, such as the very bad offence of coming into physical contact. ¹³ Cf. Vin.3.23f. (in Bu-Pj.1). ¹⁴ Vin.4.34. ¹⁵ Vin.2.109 (Kd.15.5.2). ¹⁶ Reading here is *parajita*; at Vin.2.109 *paracita*. ¹⁷ Also Vin.5.189. At Vin.1.112 these are called the five ways of reciting Pātimokkha. ¹ As at Vin.5.123, in the Triads. ² As at Vin.5.123, in the Triads. ³ As at Vin.5.123, in the Triads.

88. Five advantages for an expert in Discipline⁴: his own body of moral habit is well guarded, well protected; he is a shelter for those who are affected by scruples; confidently he lives in the midst of an Order; with *Dhamma* he restrains adversaries (of the Teaching)⁵ from one who is well restrained; he is one who practises for the stability of True *Dhamma*.
89. Five suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁶
90. Five suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁷

Concluded are the Pentads

ITS SUMMARY

Offence, classes of offence,
 trained in, and with no delay,
 Individuals, and also cutting down,
 and he falls, due to, /
 And it does not become, it becomes,
 allowable, mistrusted, oil,
 Tallow, loss, prosperity,
 nullification, and as to a person, /
 Charnel-ground, and gnawn by cattle,
 theft, and he is called a thief,
 Not to be disposed of, not to be divided up,
 from body from body and speech, /
 Confession, an Order, recital,
 bordering, and about *kāṭhina*
 (Formal) acts, up to the third time,
 defeat, grave, wrong-doing, /
 Unallowable, and allowable,
 unmeritorious, hard to drive away,
 Brooms, and a further (five),
 speech, and also about an offence, /
 Legal question, subject,
 motion, offence, and the two,
 These are slight (and) they are strong¹:
 distinguish between the dark and the bright; /
 Forest, and almsfood-eater,
 refuse-rag, tree, charnel-ground-dwellers,

BD.6.214

⁴ See Vin.5.184 (Prv.17.2.9). ⁵ *paccatthike saha dhammena suniggahitaṃ niggaṇhāti.*

⁶ Vin.2.242 (Kd.19.3.3). ⁷ Vin.2.242 (Kd.19.3.3). ¹ *lahukathamakā*, no doubt reading °*thamakā* for °*thāmakā* metri causa.

In the open air, and robe,
 house-to-house, a sitter, /
 Bed, refusers of food later,
 and too the bowl-food-eater,
 Observance, Invitation,
 and also an offence and what is not an offence,
 And similarly these dark and bright items are for nuns too, /
 Unpleasing (person), pleasing,
 likewise a further two,
 Dependent on families, too much,
 propagation, and allowable to recluses, /
 Purification, and a further too,
 Discipline, and not legally valid,
 Likewise legally valid is spoken of:
 concluded are the fair Pentads.

6. SEXTETS

1. Six forms of irreverence.²
2. Six forms of reverence.¹
3. Six matters that are trained in.²
4. Six “proper courses”.³
5. Six originations of offences.⁴
6. Six offences involving cutting down.⁵
7. In six ways does one fall into an offence.⁶
8. Six advantages for an expert in Discipline.⁷
9. Six “at most”.⁸

Prv.7.6.1

BD.6.215

² See Vin.5.92. ¹ See Vin.5.92. ² See Vin.5.92. ³ Bu-Ss.13 (Vin.3.186), Bu-NP.10, Bu-NP.22, Bu-Pc.34, Bu-Pc.71, Bu-Pc.84. Vin-a.1339 these six are in the Monks’ Pātimokkha only. Nuns’ Bi-Ss.13 is in “the seven proper courses” at Vin.5.134, at beginning of the Septets. ⁴ See Vin.5.92. ⁵ Same as the five intended at the beginning of Prv6.5 (Vin.5.128) with the addition of Nuns’ Bi-Pc.22. ⁶ See Prv.7.5 (BD.6.128). ⁷ These six are the same as the five advantages given towards end of 6.5 with the addition of “the Observance is his responsibility”, *tass’ ādheyyo uposatho*. ⁸ Identified as Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.7, Bu-NP.10, Bu-NP.14, Bu-NP.16 by Vin-a.1340 which names another eight “at most” and gives the method for constructing other sextets.

10. One may be away, separated from that robe for six nights.⁹
11. Six (kinds of) robe-material.¹⁰
12. Six (kinds of) dyes.¹¹
13. Six offences originate from body and thought, not from speech.¹²
14. Six offences originate from speech and thought, not from body.
15. Six offences originate from body and speech and thought.
16. Six (formal) acts.¹³
17. Six roots of disputes.¹⁴
18. Six roots of censure.¹⁵
19. In length six spans of the accepted span.¹⁶
20. In breadth six spans.¹⁷
21. Six nullifications of guidance from a teacher.¹⁸
22. Six supplementary layings down about bathing.¹
23. Taking a robe that is imperfectly executed he goes away.²
24. Taking with him a robe that is imperfectly executed he goes away.³
25. A monk who is possessed of six qualities may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him: if he is possessed of an adept's body of moral habit ... body of concentration ... body of wisdom ... body of freedom ... body of the vision and knowledge of freedom, if he is of ten years' standing or more than ten years' standing.⁴
26. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if he is possessed of an adept's body of moral habit and encourages another as to an adept's body of moral habit ... if he is himself possessed of an adept's body of the vision and knowledge of freedom and encourages another as to an adept's body of the vision

Vin.5.134

BD.6.216

⁹ Vin-a.1340 refers to this clause, *chāraṭṭaṃ ticīvarena vippavasitabbam*, as one of the other "at mosts". Probably it should read with Vin.3.263 and Vin-a.1340 *tena cīvarena* instead of *ticīvarena*. ¹⁰ Vin.1.281. ¹¹ Vin.1.286. ¹² Vin-a.1340 refers us to the three "cycles" in the Anantarapeyyāla. ¹³ Vin-a.1340 identifies these as the four (formal) acts of censure, guidance, banishment and reconciliation (see Vin.1.49); the (formal) acts for not seeing and for not making amends for an offence—to be taken as one (formal) act; and the one act for not giving up a pernicious view. A different set of six (formal) acts is given at Vin.1.317. ¹⁴ See previous note. ¹⁵ See above Prv.4.1.1.14. ¹⁶ Bu-Pc.91. ¹⁷ Bu-Pc.92. ¹⁸ Vin.1.62. ¹ Bu-Pc.57. ² Vin-a.1340 says these two cycles are in the Kāṭhinakkhandhaka, i.e. at Kd.4.1 and Kd.5.1. ³ See previous note. ⁴ Kd.1.37.2.

- and knowledge of freedom, if he is of ten years' standing or more than ten years' standing.⁵
27. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... novice may attend him: if he comes to have faith, if he comes to feel shame, if he comes to be cautious, if he comes to be of stirred up energy, if he comes to be of ready mindfulness if he is of ten years' standing or of more than ten years' standing.⁶
28. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if, in regard to moral habit, he has not fallen away from moral habit; if, in regard to good habits, he has not fallen away from good habits; if, in regard to (right) view, he has not fallen away from right view; if he has heard much; if he is intelligent; if he is ... of more than ten years' standing.⁷
29. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... a novice may attend him; if he is competent to tend or get another to tend a pupil or one who shares a cell who is ill, to allay or get another to allay dissatisfaction that has arisen, to dispel or get another to dispel, by means of *Dhamma*, remorse that has arisen, if he knows what is an offence, if he knows the removal of an offence, if he is ... of more than ten years' standing.¹
30. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if he is competent to make a pupil or one who shares a cell train in the training regarding the fundamentals of conduct, to lead him in the training regarding the fundamentals of the Brahma-faring, to lead him in what pertains to *Dhamma*, to lead him in what pertains to Discipline, to discuss or get another to discuss, by means of *Dhamma*, a false view that has arisen, if he is of ... more than ten years standing.²
31. And a monk who is possessed of six further qualities may ordain ... a novice may attend him: if he knows what is an offence, if he knows what is not an offence, if he knows what is a slight offence, if he knows what is a serious offence, if the two Pātimokkhas in full have been properly handed down to him, properly sectioned, properly

⁵ Kd.1.37.5. ⁶ Kd.1.37.7. ⁷ Kd.1.37.9. ¹ Kd.1.37.11. ² Kd.1.37.13.

BD.6.217

regulated, properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form, if he is ... of more than ten years' standing.³

32. Six suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁴

33. Six suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁵

Concluded are the Sextets

ITS SUMMARY

Irreverences, and reverences,
 trained in, and "proper courses" too,
 Originations, and also cuttings down,
 ways, and about advantage, /
 And "at mosts", six nights,
 robe-material, and dyes,
 Six too from body and mind,
 as well as six from speech and mind, /
 And from body, speech and mind,
 (formal) acts, and also dispute,
 Censure, and in length,
 breadth, and about guidance, /
 Supplementary layings down,
 taking, and similarly taking with one,
 Adepts, one who encourages,
 faith, and in regard to moral habit,
 Ill, fundamentals of conduct,
 offence, not legally valid, legally valid.

7. SEPTETS

Prv.7.7.1

1. Seven offences.¹
2. Seven classes of offence.²
3. Seven matters that are trained in.³
4. Seven "proper courses".⁴
5. Seven carryings out on the acknowledgement of are not legally valid.⁵
6. Seven carryings out on the acknowledgement of are legally valid.⁶

³ Kd.1.37.15. ⁴ Vin.2.242. ⁵ Vin.2.242. ¹ At Vin.5.117 these two items appear to form the two members of one dyad. Why do they not here, nor "five offences, five classes of offence" do likewise? See also Vin.5.91. ² See previous note. ³ See Vin.5.91. ⁴ Add Nuns' Bi-Ss.13 to the six given at Vin.5.133. ⁵ Vin.2.83. ⁶ Vin.2.83.

7. There is no offence in going to seven (classes of people) if the business can be done in seven days.⁷
8. Seven advantages for the expert in Discipline.⁸
9. Seven “at mosts”.⁹
10. It is to be forfeited at sunrise on the seventh day.¹⁰
11. Seven decidings.¹¹
12. Seven (formal) acts.¹²
13. Seven raw grains.¹³
14. In breadth seven inside.¹⁴
15. Seven supplementary layings down for a group-meal.¹⁵
16. After one has accepted medicines they may be used as a store for at most seven days.¹⁶
17. Taking a robe that has been made up he goes away.¹
18. Taking with him a robe that has been made up he goes away.²
19. There is not an offence of a monk’s that should be seen.³
20. There is an offence of a monk’s that should be seen.⁴
21. There is an offence of a monk’s for which amends should be made.⁵
22. Seven suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁶
23. Seven suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁷
24. A monk who is possessed of seven qualities is an expert on Discipline: if he knows what is an offence, if he knows what is not an offence; if he knows what is a slight offence, if he knows what is a serious offence; if, possessed of moral habit,⁸ he lives controlled by the control of the Pātimokkha; if, possessed of right conduct and resort, seeing danger in the slightest faults, he, undertaking them, trains himself in the rules of training; if he is one who acquires at will, without trou-

Vin.5.135

BD.6.218

⁷ In *Kd.3.7*. ⁸ To those enumerated in the Pentads add “the Observance and the invitation are deposited in him”, *Vin-a.1341*. ⁹ The commentator has not decided which of the examples he enumerates at *Vin-a.1340* are to be taken up here. See above, *BD.6.215, n.3*.
¹⁰ *Bu-NP.29.2*. ¹¹ *Vin.4.207*. ¹² Commentary is silent. Perhaps here one should take the formal acts for not seeing an offence and for not acknowledging one as two formal acts, and combine them as in the Sextets. ¹³ *Vin.4.264*, and see *BD.1.83, n.4*. ¹⁴ *Bu-Ss.6, Bu-Ss.2, Bu-Ss.1*. ¹⁵ *Bu-Pc.32*. ¹⁶ *Bu-NP.23*. ¹ *Kd.7.2.1*. ² *Kd.7.3.1*. ³ According to *Vin-a.1341* these are three septets and occur in the *Campeyyakakkhandhaka*, i.e. *Kd.8.5*.
⁴ See previous note. ⁵ See previous note. ⁶ *Vin.2.242*. ⁷ *Vin.2.242*. ⁸ For this and the three following qualities, *Cf. e.g. MN.v.*

ble, without difficulty, the four meditations that are of the purest mentality—abiding in ease here and now; and if, by the destruction of the cankers, he, having realized here and now by his own super-knowledge the freedom of mind and the freedom through wisdom that are cankerless, enters and abides therein.

25. And if a monk is possessed of seven further qualities he is an expert on Discipline: if he knows what is an offence ... if he knows what is a serious offence; if he is one who has heard much, remembers what he has heard, stores up what he has heard—those things, lovely in the beginning, lovely in the middle, lovely at the ending which, with the meaning and the spirit declare the Brahma-faring wholly fulfilled, perfectly purified, such things are much heard by him, borne in mind, familiarized by speech, pondered over in the mind, and are well penetrated by right view⁹; if he is one who acquires at will ... enters and abides therein.
26. And if a monk is possessed of seven further qualities he is an expert on Discipline: ... if he knows what is a serious offence; if the two Pātimokkhas have been properly handed down to him in detail, properly sectioned, properly regulated, properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form; if he is one who acquires at will ... enters and abides therein.
27. And if a monk is possessed of seven further qualities he is an expert on Discipline: if he knows ... what is a serious offence; if he recollects a variety of former habitations, that is to say one birth and two births ...¹ ... thus he recollects a variety of former habitations in all their modes and in detail; if with deva-like vision surpassing that of men, he sees beings as they are passing hence ...² ... thus with the deva-like vision surpassing that of men does he see beings as they are passing hence and coming to be—mean, excellent, fair, foul, and he comprehends that beings are in a good bourn, in a bad bourn according to kamma; and if, by the destruction of the cankers ... he enters and abides therein.
28. And if a monk is possessed of seven further qualities ... he shines as an

BD.6.219

Vin.5.136

⁹ Cf. Vin.2.95, Vin.2.249, MN.1.356. ¹ See Bu-Pj.1.1.6. ² See Bu-Pj.1.1.7.

expert on Discipline ... (*here and following read he shines as an expert on Discipline instead of he is an expert on Discipline, and repeat the foregoing paragraphs exactly*) ... abides therein.

29. Seven bad conditions: if one is lacking in faith, is without conscience, is without shame, is one who has heard little, is lazy, is of muddled mindfulness, and is one weak in wisdom.³
30. Seven right conditions: if one has faith, is conscientious, is scrupulous, is one who has heard much, is one whose energy is stirred up, is one whose mindfulness is raised up, and is one full of wisdom.⁴

Concluded are the Septets

ITS SUMMARY

Offence, classes of offence, trained in, and “proper courses” too,
 Not legally valid, and legally valid, and no offence if within seven days, /
 Advantages, “at mosts,” sunrise, and about deciding,
 (Formal) acts, and raw grains, inside, for a group-meal, /
 For at most seven days, taking, and similarly taking with him,
 There is not, there is, and there is, not legally valid, and legally valid, /
 Four experts¹ on Discipline, and four shining monks,²
 And seven wrong conditions too, seven right conditions are taught.

BD.6.220

8. OCTETS

1. That monk should not be suspended for not seeing an offence by one possessed of eight advantages.³
2. That offence should be confessed even out of faith in others if they are possessed of eight advantages.⁴
3. Eight “up to the third time”.⁵
4. In eight ways does one bring a family into disrepute.⁶
5. Eight headings for the accruing of robe-material.⁷
6. Eight headings for the withdrawing of the *kaṭhina* (privileges).⁸

Prv.7.8.1

³ Five of these items are at [Kd.1.36.6](#). For the seven see AN.iv.145. ⁴ Five of these are given at [Kd.1.36.7](#). The seven are at DN.iii.252, DN.iii.282, AN.iv.145, Vb.349. ¹ Meaning four groups each, of experts and of shining monks, each with seven qualities. ² See previous note.

³ [Kd.10.1.6](#), [Kd.10.1.7](#). ⁴ [Kd.10.1.8](#). ⁵ [Bu-Ss.10](#), [Bu-Ss.11](#), [Bu-Ss.12](#), [Bu-Ss.13](#), Nuns' [Bi-Ss.10](#), [Bi-Ss.11](#), [Bi-Ss.12](#), [Bi-Ss.13](#). ⁶ [Bu-Ss.13.2](#). ⁷ [Kd.8.32.1.2](#). ⁸ [Kd.7.1.7](#).

7. Eight kinds of drinks.⁹
8. Devadatta, overcome and his mind controlled by eight bad conditions, is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya, staying there for an aeon, incurable.¹⁰
9. Eight things belonging to the world.¹¹
10. Eight important rules.¹²
11. Eight matters that should be confessed.¹³
12. Lying speech is eightfold.¹⁴
13. Eight factors for Observance.¹⁵
14. Eight factors for (going on) a message.¹⁶
15. Eight customs for members of other sects.¹⁷
16. Eight marvellous and wonderful things about the great ocean.¹⁸
17. Eight marvellous and wonderful things in this *Dhamma* and Discipline.¹
18. Eight “not left overs”,²
19. Eight “left overs”.³
20. It is to be forfeited on the eighth day at sunrise.⁴
21. Eight offences involving Defeat.⁵
22. Completing the eighth thing she should be expelled.⁶
23. By completing an eighth thing it is marked out even if not (actually) marked out.⁷
24. Ordination having eight formulas.⁸

Vin.5.137

BD.6.221

⁹ Kd.6.35.6. ¹⁰ As at Kd.17.4.7. ¹¹ DN.iii.260, AN.iv.156f.; see GS.iv.107, n.2. ¹² Vin.2.255, Vin.4.51, AN.iv.276. ¹³ Perhaps referring only to the eight *Pāṭidesaniyas* for Nuns. ¹⁴ This must refer to Bu-Pc.4, Bu-Pc.2, Bu-Pc.1: definition of telling a conscious lie. ¹⁵ The eightfold *sīla*; given at AN.iv.248ff. in detail, and in brief at Vin-a.1342 = Uttaravinicchaya verse 651; see Vin.5.213. ¹⁶ Vin.2.201. ¹⁷ Referred to the Mahākhandhaka by Vin-a.1342, probably to Kd.1.38. ¹⁸ Vin.2.237f. ¹ Vin.2.238. ² Vin.4.82. ³ Vin.4.82. ⁴ Bu-NP.23. ⁵ See BD.3.175, n.4. ⁶ Nuns' Bi-Pj.8. ⁷ The Commentary is of no help here. I believe this clause to refer to Bu-Ss.6—on marking out a site for a hut. ⁸ Again the Commentary is of no help. This phrase, *aṭṭhavācīkā upasampadā*, does not appear to occur in the first four volumes of the Vinaya. The reference may be to Kd.20.22, the ordination of a nun through a messenger. Uttaravinicchaya 648 says: having eight formulas by a messenger for nuns means an eightfold ordination with a formal act having a motion that is followed by a resolution made three times.

25. (Seats) should be risen from for eight nuns.⁹
26. A seat should be given to eight nuns.¹⁰
27. The woman lay disciple asked for eight boons.¹¹
28. A monk who is possessed of eight qualities may be agreed upon as an exhorter of nuns.¹²
29. Eight advantages for an expert in Discipline.¹³
30. Eight “at mosts”.¹⁴
31. A monk against whom a (formal) act for specific depravity has been carried out must act rightly in regard to eight things.¹⁵
32. Eight suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.¹⁶
33. Eight suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.¹⁷

Concluded are the Octets

ITS SUMMARY

Not that monk, and in others,
 up to the third time, bringing into disrepute,
 Headings, removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges),
 drinks, and overcome by, /
 Belonging to the world, important rules,
 to be confessed lying,
 Observances, factors for a message,
 other sects, and in the sea, /
 Wonderful, not left over,
 left over, to be forfeited,
 Defeats, the eighth thing,
 not marked out, ordination, /
 And too rising from a seat,
 boon, and about an exhorter
 Advantages, “at mosts,”
 acting in regard to eight things

BD.6.222

⁹ Reading above is *pacuṭṭhātabbam*. The reference is to *Kd.20.18* which, however, reads *paṭibāhitabbam*, should not be reserved. ¹⁰ *Vin.2.274*. ¹¹ *Vin.2.242f*. ¹² *Prv.21.2* and see *Vin.2.264*. ¹³ Add to his five advantages given in the Pentads that Observance, Invitation, and the Order’s (formal) acts may be deposited in him, *Vin-a.1342*. ¹⁴ Of the fourteen given at *Vin-a.1340* the first six form a sextet. The Commentary does not specify which further ones are intended here. ¹⁵ *Vin-a.1342* says this refers to the *Samathakkhandhaka* (*Kd.14*) and begins with “he must not suspend the Observance for an ordinary monk, nor Invitation”. I cannot trace the exact reference. ¹⁶ *Vin.2.242f*. ¹⁷ *Vin.2.243*.

Not legally valid, and legally valid:
the Octets are well proclaimed.

9. NONADS

Prv.7.9.1

1. Nine occasions for ill-will.¹
2. Nine (ways of) averting ill-will.²
3. Nine matters that are trained in.³
4. Nine offences at once.⁴
5. An Order is split by nine (monks).⁵
6. Nine sumptuous foods.⁶
7. In (eating) nine kinds of meat there is an offence of wrong--doing.⁷
8. Nine recitals of the Pātimokkha.⁸
9. Nine “at mosts”.
10. Nine things rooted in craving.⁹
11. Ninefold pride.¹
12. Nine robes may be allotted.²
13. Nine robes should not be assigned.
14. In length nine spans of the accepted span.³
15. Nine gifts are not legally valid.⁴
16. Nine recipients⁵ are not legally valid.
17. Nine enjoyments⁶ are not legally valid.

¹ Given at [Vin.5.168](#), and at [DN.iii.262](#), [AN.iv.408](#). ² Given at [Vin.5.168](#), and at [DN.iii.262](#), [AN.iv.408](#). ³ In regard to the occasions for ill-will, [Vin-a.1342](#). ⁴ Quoting [Vin.3.186](#) and referring to [Bu-Ss.1-8](#). ⁵ Referring to [Vin.2.204](#). ⁶ Given at [Vin.4.88](#). ⁷ [Vin.1.218ff.](#)
⁸ Five ways of reciting it are to be found at [Vin.1.112](#). ⁹ Given at [DN.ii.58](#), [AN.iv.400](#), [Vb.390](#)=[Vin-a.1342f.](#) ¹ Given at [Vb.389f.](#) ² [Vin-a.1343](#): such as the three robes and a cloth for the rains; see [Vin.1.296f.](#) ³ [Bu-Pc.92.1](#). ⁴ [Vin-a.1343](#) says (a gift meant for an Order) is changed for another Order, a shrine or an individual; if meant for a shrine it is given to another shrine or an Order or an individual; if meant for an individual it is changed over to another individual or an Order or a shrine. ⁵ Of these gifts, according to [Vin-a.1343](#).
⁶ Of these gifts, according to [Vin-a.1343](#).

18. Three gifts are legally valid; three recipients are legally valid⁷; three enjoyments⁸ are legally valid.
19. Nine (ways of) making known are not legally valid.⁹
20. Nine (ways of) making known are legally valid.¹⁰
21. Two nonads for a (formal) act that is not legally valid.¹¹
22. Two nonads for a (formal) act that is legally valid.¹²
23. Nine suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.¹³
24. Nine suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.¹⁴

BD.6.223

Vin.5.138

Concluded are the Nonads

ITS SUMMARY

Occasions for ill-will, averting,
 trained in, and at once,
 And is split, and sumptuous,
 meat, recital, and “at mosts”, /
 Craving, pride, allottings,
 and assigned, spans,
 Gifts, recipients, enjoyments,
 and again the threefold when legally valid, /
 Not legally valid, makings known that are legally valid,
 and two nonads twice,
 Suspensions of the Pātimokkha
 that are and are not legally valid.

10. DECADES

Prv.7.10.1

1. Ten occasions for ill-will.¹
2. Ten (ways of) averting ill-will.²
3. Ten matters that are trained in.

⁷ Vin-a.1343 says tending only to an Order, to a shrine or to an individual, one gives to the relevant one only. Each is one of the three recipients in the enjoyment of the gift.

⁸ Vin-a.1343 says tending only to an Order, to a shrine or to an individual, one gives to the relevant one only. Each is one of the three recipients in the enjoyment of the gift. ⁹ Kd.14.2.

¹⁰ Kd.14.3. ¹¹ Vin-a.1343 refers this to the first rule of training in the Ovādavagga, i.e. to Bu-Pc.21, and probably 3.2 there. ¹² See previous note. ¹³ Vin.2.243. ¹⁴ Vin.2.243

¹ AN.v.150. ² AN.v.150.

4. A wrong view founded on ten (tenets).³
5. A right view founded on ten (tenets).⁴
6. Ten (ways of) taking up an extreme view.⁵
7. Ten wrongnesses.⁶
8. Ten rightnesses.⁷
9. Ten ways of unskilled action.⁸
10. Ten ways of skilled action.⁹
11. Ten distributions of voting tickets are not legally valid.¹⁰
12. Ten distributions of voting tickets are legally valid.¹¹
13. Ten rules of training for novices.¹²
14. If he is possessed of ten qualities a novice should be expelled.¹³
15. If he is possessed of ten qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not put a limit to his own speech, if he does not put a limit to the speech of another (person), if, not having put a limit to his own speech, to the speech of another (person), he has a (formal) act carried out not according to rule, not with his acknowledgement,¹⁴ if does not know what is an offence, if he does not know what is the root of an offence, if he does not know the arising ... the stopping ... the course leading to the stopping of an offence.
16. If he is possessed of ten qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he puts a limit to his own speech ... if he knows what is an offence ... the course leading to the stopping of an offence.
17. And if he is possessed of ten further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is a legal question ... the root of a legal question ... the arising ... the stopping ... the course leading to the stopping of a legal question, if he does not know the

BD.6.224

³ *N'atthi dinnam*, etc. according to Vin-a.1343; found frequently, e.g. at DN.i.55, AN.i.268f.

⁴ E.g. AN.i.269. ⁵ *antaggāhikā diṭṭhi*, mentioned at Vin.1.172, see BD.4.226, n. These views begin with *sassato loko* according to Vin-a.1343, and occur frequently in the Pali Canon, e.g. at AN.v.193, MN.i.157, though not under the title of *antaggāhikā diṭṭhi*. ⁶ Add wrong or right knowledge, *ñāṇa*, and freedom, *vimutti*, to the eight factors of the Way, e.g. AN.v.240.

⁷ Add wrong or right knowledge, *ñāṇa*, and freedom, *vimutti*, to the eight factors of the Way, e.g. AN.v.240. ⁸ DN.iii.269. ⁹ DN.iii.269. ¹⁰ Vin.2.85. ¹¹ Vin.2.85. ¹² Vin.1.83f.

¹³ Vin.1.85. ¹⁴ These five clauses form one pentad at Vin.5.130, and the next five another pentad.

subject ... the provenance ... the laying down ... the supplementary laying down ... the sequence of the connecting words.¹

18. If he is possessed of ten qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows what is a legal question ... the sequence of the connecting words.
19. And if he is possessed of ten further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is a motion, if he does not know the carrying out of a motion, if he is not skilled in what comes first, if he is not skilled in what comes afterwards, and if he is one unknowing of the (right) time, if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know a slight and a serious offence, if he does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, if he has not learnt properly from a succession of teachers, has not attended properly, has not reflected on properly.² Vin.5.139
20. If he is possessed of ten qualities an expert on, Discipline is reckoned as clever: if he knows what is a motion ... if he has learnt properly from a succession of teachers, has attended properly, has reflected on properly. BD.6.225
21. And if he is possessed of ten further qualities an expert on Discipline is reckoned as ignorant: if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know a slight and a serious offence, if he does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, and if the two Pātimokkhas in full have not been properly handed down to him, not properly sectioned, not properly regulated, not properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form, if he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence ... if he does not know what is a very bad offence and one that is not very bad, and if he is not skilled in investigating a legal question.¹

¹ As at [Vin.5.130](#), two pentads. ² As at [Vin.5.130f.](#), again two pentads. ¹ Forming two pentads at [Vin.5.131](#).

22. If he is possessed of ten qualities ... clever: if he knows what is an offence ... and if he is skilled in investigating a legal question.
23. A monk possessed of ten qualities may be agreed upon for a referendum.²
24. Dependent on ten reasons a rule of training for disciples is laid down by the Tathāgata.³
25. Ten perils in entering a king's women's quarters.⁴
26. Ten objects as (alms-) gifts.⁵
27. Ten gems.⁶
28. A tenfold Order of monks.⁷
29. One may ordain through a group of ten (monks).⁸
30. Ten refuse-rag-robles.⁹
31. Wearers of ten colours for robes.¹⁰
32. One may wear an extra robe for at most ten days.¹¹
33. Ten (colours of) semen.¹²
34. Ten (kinds of) women.¹³
35. Ten (kinds of) wives.¹⁴
36. Ten points promulgated at Vesālī.¹⁵
37. Ten individuals who are not to be greeted.¹
38. Ten ways of cursing.²
39. One brings slander in ten ways.³
40. Ten lodgings.⁴
41. They asked for ten boons.⁵
42. Ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are not legally valid.⁶

BD.6.226

² Vin.2.95. ³ Given e.g. at Vin.3.21. ⁴ Vin.4.159. ⁵ Food, drink, etc., as at DN.iii.258, MN.iii.205, AN.iv.239, AN.v.271. ⁶ *ratana*, taken by Vin-a.1344 to be those given at Vin.2.238. Uttaravinicchaya 281 takes the view that the ten are drink, food, clothes and so on. ⁷ Vin.1.319; Cf. Vin.1.195. ⁸ Vin.1.58; Cf. Vin.1.319. ⁹ See the two pentads at Vin.5.129. ¹⁰ See e.g. Vin.1.306, Vin.2.267 where seven colours are mentioned for robes. Vin-a.1344 says "ten colours according to the Kurundiya. But the Mahā-aṭṭhakkathā says that to the nine allowable robes add the bathing cloth, or the vest (for nuns)". ¹¹ Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.1.2. ¹² Vin.3.112. ¹³ Vin.3.139. ¹⁴ Vin.3.139. ¹⁵ Kd.22.1.8. ¹ Kd.16.6.5. ² Bu-Pc.2. ³ Bu-Pc.3. ⁴ *senāsanāni*. The ten, or rather eleven, as given at Vin-a.1344 should be compared with the ten items given in a definition of *seyyā* at Vin.4.41 of which eight are in common. ⁵ Vin-a.1344 says Visākhā asked for eight (see Vin.5.137: "the woman lay disciple asked for eight boons"), King Suddhodana for one (Vin.1.82f.) and Jīvaka for one (Vin.1.280). ⁶ Vin.2.243.

43. Ten suspensions of the Pātimokkha are legally valid.⁷
44. Ten advantages from conjei.⁸
45. Ten (kinds of) flesh are not allowed.⁹
46. Ten “at mosts”.¹⁰
47. An experienced competent monk who is of ten years’ standing may let go forth,¹¹ may ordain,¹² may give guidance,¹³ a novice may attend him.¹⁴
48. An experienced competent nun who is of ten years’ standing¹⁵ may let go forth ... a woman novice may attend her.¹⁶
49. Agreement to ordain¹⁷ may be accepted by an experienced competent nun who is of ten years’ standing.
50. Training should be given to a girl who has been married for ten years.¹⁸

Concluded are the Decades

ITS SUMMARY

Ill-will, averting, matters,
 wrong (view), and right (view), taking up an extreme (view),
 And wrongnesses too, rightnesses,
 unskilled, and also skilled, /
 Not legally valid, and legally valid tickets,
 novices, and expelling,
 Speech, and legal question too,
 motion, and slight too, /
 Slight (and) serious these:
 discriminate between the dark and the bright,
 And referendum, and training,
 and women’s quarters, objects, /
 Gems, and tenfold,
 likewise ordination,
 Refuse-rags, and wearers,
 ten days, semen, women, /

Vin.5.140

BD.6.227

⁷ Vin.2.243. ⁸ Vin.1.221. ⁹ Vin.1.218ff. ¹⁰ See the list at Vin-a.1340. ¹¹ (?). ¹² See Kd.1.31.8 ¹³ Kd.1.35.2. ¹⁴ See Kd.1.36.17. ¹⁵ At Vin.4.329 it is said that no nun should ordain while she is of less than twelve years’ standing. ¹⁶ Not traced. ¹⁷ *vuṭṭhāpana*, ordination by nuns only. See BD.3, Introduction, p.xlivff., BD.3, Introduction, p.liii. See also Nuns’ Bi-Pc.75, though here again the nun has to be of twelve, not ten years’ standing. ¹⁸ See Nuns’ Bi-Pc.65, Bu-Pc.66. Again both these rules speak of twelve years, and not of ten.

Wives, ten points, not to be greeted,
 and about cursing,
 And slander too, and lodgings,
 and boons, not legally valid, /
 Legally valid, conjei, and flesh,
 “at mosts,” monk, nun,
 Ordination, married girl:
 the Decades are well proclaimed.

11. ELEVENS

Prv.7.11.1

1. Eleven individuals who, if they have not been ordained, should not be ordained; if they have been ordained, they should be expelled.¹
2. Eleven (kinds of) shoes are not allowable.²
3. Eleven (kinds of) bowls are not allowable.³
4. Eleven (kinds of) robes are not allowable.⁴
5. Eleven “up to the third time”.⁵
6. Eleven things which are stumbling-blocks (preventing women from becoming) nuns should be asked about.⁶
7. Eleven (kinds of) robes may be allotted.¹
8. Eleven (kinds of) robes may not be assigned.²
9. On the eleventh day at sunrise³ it is an offence of expiation involving forfeiture.
10. Eleven (kinds of) “blocks” are allowable.⁴
11. Eleven (kinds of) buckles are allowable.⁵

¹ Kd.1.60–68. ² Vin-a.1344 says ten made with gems (Kd.5.8.3) and the wooden shoe (Kd.5.6.4). ³ Kd.15.8.2, Kd.15.9.1. ⁴ Kd.8.29.1. ⁵ E.g. Nuns’ Bi-Pj.7, Nuns’ Bi-Ss.10, Bi-Ss.11, Bi-Ss.12, Bi-Ss.13, Bi-Ss.11, Nuns’ Bi-Pc.36, and Monks’ Bu-Pc.68. See also Vin.5.136 in the Eights. ⁶ This appears to refer to the opening sentence of Kd.20.17, though twenty-four things called stumbling-blocks, beginning with these eleven, are, in fact, enumerated there.

¹ Nine are given at Vin.1.297 (Kd.8.20.2). To these Vin-a.1345 adds the bathing cloth (for nuns, see Vin.1.292f., Vin.2.272) and (the nuns’) vest (Nuns’ Bi-Pc.96). In neither passage is allotting mentioned. Cf. Uttaravinicchaya p.282. ² Nine of those allotted may not be assigned. Vin-a.1345 adds *gaṇṭhikā*, “block” (see Kd.15.29.3) and buckle, *vidha* (Kd.15.29.2).

³ Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.21, Bu-NP.23, Bu-NP.29, Nuns’ Bi-NP.1, for example. ⁴ Kd.15.29.3.

⁵ Kd.15.29.2.

12. Eleven (kinds of) earth are not allowable.⁶
13. Eleven (kinds of) earth are allowable.⁷
14. Eleven nullifications of guidance.⁸
15. Eleven individuals are not to be greeted.⁹
16. Eleven “at mosts”.¹⁰
17. They asked for eleven boons.¹¹
18. Eleven defects in boundaries.¹²
19. Eleven perils to be expected for an individual who reviles and abuses.¹³
20. If the freedom of mind that is loving-kindness¹⁴ is practised, developed, made much of, made a basis, made a vehicle, persisted in, become familiar with and well established eleven advantages¹⁵ are to be expected: one sleeps in comfort, wakes in comfort, dreams no evil dream,¹ is dear to human beings, dear to non-human beings, *devatās* guard him, fire poison and weapons do not affect him, his mind is easily concentrated, the expression on his face is serene, he does his (karmic) time unconfused, and if he penetrates no higher (to arahantship than the attainment of loving-kindness) he reaches the Brahma-world (on deceasing from this life). If the freedom of mind that is loving-kindness is practised ... well established, these eleven advantages are to be expected.

BD.6.228

Concluded are the Elevens

⁶ In the *paṭhavīsikkhāpada* according to Vin-a.1345. Vin-a.759 on Bu-Pc.10 refers to this as *paṭhavikhaṇasikkhāpada*. But no kinds of earth mentioned there are said to be allowable or unallowable; see Vin-a.759 however. ⁷ See previous note. ⁸ Five from a preceptor, six from a teacher, Kd.1.36.1. ⁹ Ten occur in the Decads; see Kd.16.6.5. Vin-a.1345 says these are meant together with the *agga*, and all are to be found in the Senāsanakkhandhaka (Kd.16). Perhaps the *agga* signifies the *bhattagga* in the second pentad “not to be greeted”, Vin.5.205. ¹⁰ The *paramāni* also occur in the Sextets, Septets, Octads, Nonads and Decads. See also the fourteen on Vin.5.146 below. ¹¹ In addition to the ten boons on Vin.5.139, there is also the boon Mahāpajāpatī asked for, Kd.20.3.1, not granted by the Buddha. ¹² Vin-a.1345 says beginning with “they agreed on too small a boundary” will be handed down in the Kammavagga (see Vin.5.220–223), i.e. at Vin.5.221 in [5] where eleven features are given. See also Kaṅkhāvitaranī 4f. ¹³ AN.v.317, which Vin-a.1345 refers to as a Buddhavacana, gives these perils. ¹⁴ AN.v.342; also at Ja.ii.61, Mi.198. ¹⁵ Eight are given at AN.iv.150, but are not in the Octets above. ¹ Or, sees no evil (in) a dream.

ITS SUMMARY

Should be expelled, and shoes,
 and bowls, and robes,
 The third, and should be asked about,
 allotting, assigning, /
 Sunrise, blocks, buckles,
 and not allowable, allowable,
 Guidance, and also not to be greeted,
 “at mosts,” and boons,
 And defects in boundaries, reviling, loving-kindness—
 The Elevens are done.

*Concluded is As to Gradation***ITS SUMMARY**

The Units, as well as the Dyads,
 and the Triads, Tetrads, Pentads,
 Six, seven, eights, and Nonads,
 ten, and the Elevens, /
 For the welfare of all beings,
 by Such a One who made known *Dhamma*
 Were the stainless Gradations taught by the Great Hero. /

8. ANSWERS ABOUT THE BEGINNING OF OBSERVANCE

¹ What is the beginning of a (formal) act for Observance, what is in the middle, what is the ending? What is the beginning of a (formal) act for Invitation ... What is the beginning of a (formal) act of censure ... of guidance ... of banishment ... of reconciliation ... of suspension ... of imposing probation, of sending back to the beginning, of inflicting *mānatta* (discipline), of rehabilitation, what is the beginning of a (formal) act for ordination, what is in the middle, what is the ending? What is the beginning of a nullification of a (formal) act of censure ... of guidance ... of banishment ... of reconciliation ... of suspension ... What is the beginning of a verdict of innocence ... of a verdict of past insanity ... of a decision for specific depravity ... of a covering over (as) with grass ... What is the beginning of an agreement as to an exhorter of nuns ... of an agreement to be away, separated from the three robes ... of an agreement as to a rug² ... of an agreement as to a silver-remover³ ... as to an assigner of outer cloaks⁴ ... as to an assigner of bowls⁵ ... as to a walking-staff⁶ ... as to string⁷ ... as to a walking-staff and string,⁸ what is in the middle, what is the ending?

What is the beginning of a (formal) act for Observance, what is in the

¹ Note by Sujato: In Horner's edition this chapter and the next were regarded as sections of the same chapter. I have adjusted this to follow the more logical structure of the Mahāsaṅgīti edition. Since we have already divided her Chapter IV into two, the following chapters are numbered two greater than in her edition. Also see note on Prv.4. Horner's note on this point, which is now rendered obsolete, was: "It would seem that this title has been adopted by Oldenberg from Vin-a.1346, and refers to [1] only, [2] being called Atthavasappakaraṇa."

² Bu-NP.14. ³ Bu-NP.18. ⁴ Vin.2.177 (Kd.16.21.3). ⁵ Bu-NP.22.2.1. ⁶ Kd.15.24.2. For this and next see above Prv.7.3 (towards end). ⁷ Kd.15.24.3. ⁸ Kd.15.24.3.

middle, what is the ending? The “being all together”¹ is the beginning of a (formal) act for Observance, carrying out² is in the middle, the conclusion is the ending. What is the beginning of a (formal) act for Invitation ... ? The “being all together” is the beginning ... the conclusion is the ending. What is the beginning of a (formal) act of censure ... of guidance ... of banishment ... of reconciliation ... of suspension ... of imposing probation ... of sending back to the beginning ... of inflicting *mānatta* (discipline) ... of rehabilitation ... The matter and the individual are the beginning, a motion is in the middle, a resolution is the ending.³ What is the beginning for a (formal) act of ordination ... ? The individual is the beginning of a (formal) act for ordination, a motion is in the middle, a resolution is the ending.

BD.6.231

What is the beginning of a nullification of a (formal) act of censure ... of guidance ... of banishment ... of reconciliation ... of suspension, what is in the middle, what is the ending? Proper conduct is the beginning, a motion is in the middle, a resolution is the ending.⁴

Vin.5.143

What is the beginning of a verdict of innocence ... of a verdict of past insanity ... of a decision for specific depravity ... of a covering over (as) with grass ... of an agreement as to an exhorter of nuns ... of an agreement as to a walking-staff and string, what is in the middle, what is the ending? The matter and the individual are the beginning, a motion is in the middle, a resolution is the ending.

¹ See [Kd.2.14](#). ² Vin-a.1346 speaks of *pubbakiccaṃ katvā*, perhaps referring to [Kd.2.20](#).

³ See [Kd.11.1-8](#). ⁴ [Kd.11.5,6](#).

9. EXPOSITION OF REASONS

Prv.9.2.1
BD.6.232

Founded on ten reasons a rule of training is laid down by the Tathāgata for disciples:¹

1. for the excellence of the Order,
2. for the comfort of the Order,
3. for the restraint of evil minded individuals,
4. for the living in comfort of well behaved monks,
5. for the control of the cankers belonging to the here-now,
6. for the combating of the cankers belonging to a future state,
7. for the benefit of non-believers,
8. for the increase in the number of believers,
9. for the maintenance of True *Dhamma*,
10. for the furthering of Discipline.

That which is the excellence of the Order is the comfort of the Order. That which is the comfort of the Order is for the restraint of evil minded individuals. That which is for the restraint of evil minded individuals is for the living in comfort of well behaved monks ... That which is for the maintenance of True *Dhamma* is for the furthering of Discipline.

That which is the excellence of the Order is the comfort of the Order. That which is the excellence of the Order is for the restraint of evil minded individuals ... That which is the excellence of the Order is for the furthering of Discipline.

That which is the comfort of the Order is for the restraint of evil minded individuals ... That which is the comfort of the Order is for the furthering of Discipline.

¹ Vin.3.21, in Bu-Pj.1; also Vin.4.213, in Nuns' Bi-Pj.5.

That which is the comfort of the Order is the excellence of the Order ...

That which is for the furthering of Discipline is the excellence of the Order ... That which is for the furthering of Discipline is for the maintenance of True *Dhamma*.

THIS IS ITS KEY

A hundred meanings,¹ a hundred clauses, and two hundred expressions, Four hundred knowledges are in the exposition of the “reasons”.

BD.6.233

Concluded is the Exposition of the Reasons

Concluded is the Great Division²

ITS SUMMARY

At first there are eight for questions,³
and eight again in the conditions,⁴
These are sixteen for monks and sixteen for nuns. /
Consecutive repetitions,⁵ Synopsis,⁶
and also the Gradation,⁷
Invitation⁸ and about the reasons:
the classification of the Great Analysis. /

¹ Vin-a.1346f. says “every beginning word (*mūla*) of these ten words (*pada*), from its tenfold linking (with the other words) is called ‘a hundred words’ (*padasata*). There are a hundred meanings (*attha*) on account of each later word, and a hundred clauses (*dhamma*) on account of each earlier one ... A hundred expressions (*nirutti*) on account of expressions for illuminating the meaning, a hundred expressions on account of expressions for the truth of the clauses (*dhammabhūtanam*) (make) two hundred expressions. In the two hundred meanings are a hundred knowledges, in the hundred clauses are a hundred knowledges, in the two hundred expressions are two hundred knowledges—so four hundred knowledges are to be found.” ² Vin-a.1347 takes this to mean “the Commentary on the Mahāvagga”.

The Mahāvagga is at Vin.1.1–360; its Commentary occupies the whole of Commentary Vol. V. But the *uddana* that now follows refers to all the Parivāra material up to here, except there is no catch-word for the short Chapter V. ³ Above Prv.1.1–Prv.1.8, Prv.2.1–Prv.2.8.

⁴ Above Prv.1.9–Prv.1.16, Prv.2.9–Prv.2.16. ⁵ *peyyāla-antarabhedā* refers, I believe, to the two Sections of Prv.4 and Prv.5 above. Regarding these as one heading in the Mahāvagga, and allowing for the absence of reference to Prv.6, the above total would amount to the seven headings required up to this point. ⁶ See previous note. ⁷ Here the reading is *ekuttarikam*; in last line of Vin.5.141 it is *ekuttarikā*. The “conclusion” however on BD.6.141 reads *ekuttarakam*.

⁸ *pavāraṇā* instead of, as at beginning of Prv.9, *uposatha*.

10. COLLECTION OF STANZAS

Prv.10.1.1
BD.6.234
Vin.5.144

“Arranging the robe over one shoulder,
stretching forth the joined palms in salutation,
Hoping for what,
for what purpose are you come here?”¹

“The ‘layings-down’ in the two Disciplines
that come up for recitation on Observance days,
How many are these rules of training?
In how many towns laid down?”²

“Fortunate for you is the emergence,³
judiciously do you inquire,
I will tell you truly
(so that you may be) skilled herein.”⁴

“The ‘layings-down’ in the two Disciplines
that come up for recitation on Observance days—
They are three hundred and fifty

¹ Vin-a.1346 says the Sammāsambuddha is here speaking to the Ven. Upāli. ² The Commentary ascribes this stanza, *imaṃ gātham*, to the Ven. Upāli—printed as prose in the text.

³ *bhaddako te ummaṅgo*, which Vin-a.1348 puts into the plural: *bhaddakā te pañhā*, fortunate are these questions (or, for you, *te*, the questions are fortunate). “It is ‘emergence’, *ummaṅga*, because the questions are lasting, having emerged out of the darkness of ignorance”. On the other hand, the Dictionary meaning given to *ummaṅgā* in this passage is “unlucky”, on the analogy of *ummagga*. Also, the word appears in close proximity Above to *bhaddaka*, lucky or fortunate; but “unlucky” here seems to me to give no sense. ⁴ The Commentary, in ascribing this verse to the Buddha, says that Upāli asked all these questions in the time of the Buddha, and the Lord replied. At the end of the Council Mahākassapa asked and Upāli replied.

laid down in seven towns.”

“In which seven towns were they laid down?
Please (give) me the answer to that.
Listening to what is said, I will follow it
so that it may be for our welfare.”

“The layings down were only in
Vesālī, Rājagaha and Sāvattthī, at Āḷavī
And Kosambī, and among the Sakyans
and among the Bhaggas.”¹

BD.6.235

“How many were laid down in Vesālī?
How many made in Rājagaha?
At Sāvattthī how many were there?
How many likewise at Āḷavī?

“How many were laid down at Kosambī?
How many spoken among the Sakyans?
How many laid down among the Bhaggas?
Tell that to me who have asked.”

“Ten were laid down in Vesālī,
twenty-one made in Rājagaha,
Two hundred and ninety-four
were all made in Sāvattthī,

“Six were laid down in Āḷavī,
eight made in Kosambī,
Eight spoken among the Sakyans,
three laid down among the Bhaggas.

“Listen to those laid down in Vesālī as they really are:

Intercourse,² (human) being,³ further,⁴ extra,⁵ and black,⁶
“Fact,⁷ out-of-turn meal,⁸ cleansing the teeth,⁹ naked ascetic,¹⁰

¹ Verse cited at Vin-a.1305. ² Bu-Pj.1. ³ Bu-Pj.3. ⁴ Bu-Pj.4. ⁵ Bu-NP.1. ⁶ Bu-NP.12.
⁷ Bu-Pc.8. ⁸ Bu-Pc.33. ⁹ Bu-Pc.40. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.41.

And reviling among the nuns:¹ these ten were made in Vesālī.

“Listen to those laid down in Rājagaha as they really are:

“Taking what has not been given,²
and two in Rājagaha on an unfounded charge,³

“And two on schisms also,⁴ inner robe,⁵ silver,⁶ yarn,⁷
and on making look down,⁸
Almsfood procured,⁹ group-meal,¹⁰ at a wrong time,¹¹
and calling on,¹² bathing,¹³ under twenty.¹⁴

Vin.5.145

“Having given away a robe,¹⁵ giving directions¹⁶:
these were made in Rājagaha.
Mountain-top,¹⁷ walking,¹⁸
likewise by showing favouritism¹⁹—twenty-one.

“Listen to those laid down in Sāvattthī as they really are:

“Four Defeats, Formal Meetings of the Order come to sixteen.
And there are the two Undetermined,
twenty-four Forfeitures,
And a hundred and fifty-six minor matters were pronounced,

BD.6.236

“Ten blameworthy,²⁰ seventy-two Trainings²¹:
Two hundred and ninety-four²² were all made in Sāvattthī.

“Listen to those laid down in Āḷavī as they really are:

“Hut,²³ silk,²⁴ sleeping-place,²⁵
and on digging,²⁶ “You go *devatā*”²⁷

¹ Nuns' Bi-Pc.52. ² Bu-Pj.2. ³ Bu-Ss.8, Bu-Ss.9. ⁴ Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Ss.11. ⁵ Bu-NP.5.
⁶ Bu-NP.18. ⁷ Bu-NP.26. ⁸ Bu-Pc.13. ⁹ Bu-Pc.29. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.32. ¹¹ Bu-Pc.37. ¹² Bu-Pc.46. ¹³ Bu-Pc.57. ¹⁴ Bu-Pc.65. ¹⁵ Bu-Pc.81. ¹⁶ Bu-Pd.2. ¹⁷ Nuns' Bi-Pc.10.
¹⁸ Nuns' Bi-Pc.39, Bu-Pc.40. ¹⁹ Nuns' Bi-Pc.81. ²⁰ *gārayhā* in Bu-Pd.1.3, Nuns' Bi-Pd.1-8.
²¹ Nos. Bu-Sk.51, Bu-Sk.55, Bu-Sk.56 having been laid down elsewhere. ²² The reading is *cha ūnatīṇi satāni*, six less than 300. The above reckoning appears to come to 284 however. But this would not accord with the final reckoning of 350 rules of training. ²³ Bu-Ss.6.
²⁴ Bu-NP.11. ²⁵ Bu-Pc.5. ²⁶ Bu-Pc.10. ²⁷ Bu-Pc.11 (in narrative, not in *sikkhāpada*).

And they sprinkled water that contained life:¹
these six were made in Ālavī.

“Listen to those laid down in Kosambī as they really are:

“Large *vihāra*,² difficult to speak to,³
evasion,⁴ door,⁵ and spirits,⁶
Disrespect,⁷ regarding a rule,⁸
and the eighth is on a milk drink.⁹ /

“Listen to those laid down among the Sakyans as they really are:

“Sheep’s wool,¹⁰ bowl,¹¹ and exhortation,¹² and medicine also,¹³
Needle,¹⁴ forest-gone¹⁵—these six at Kapilavatthu.
In water for cleansing,¹⁶ exhortation¹⁷
were pronounced among the nuns.

“Listen to those laid down among the Bhaggas as they really are:

“Kindling a fire to warm themselves,¹⁸
(soiled) with food,¹⁹ with lumps of boiled rice.²⁰

“Four Defeats, Formal Meetings
of the Order come to seven,
Eight Forfeitures, thirty-two minor matters,
Two blameworthy, three Trainings—fifty-six—

BD.6.237

“Were laid down in six towns
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun.
Two hundred and ninety-four were all made
in Sāvattthī by the glorious Gotama.”

Prv.10.2.1

“What we asked you has been explained to us,
each (question) answered
(as asked and) not otherwise.

¹ Bu-Pc.20. ² Bu-Ss.7. ³ Bu-Ss.12. ⁴ Bu-Pc.12. ⁵ Bu-Pc.19. ⁶ Bu-Pc.51. ⁷ Bu-Pc.24.

⁸ Bu-Pc.71. ⁹ Bu-Sk.51. ¹⁰ Bu-NP.17. ¹¹ Bu-NP.22. ¹² Bu-Pc.23. ¹³ Bu-Pc.47.

¹⁴ Bu-Pc.86. ¹⁵ Bu-Pd.4. ¹⁶ Nuns’ Bi-Pc.5. ¹⁷ Bu-Pc.58. ¹⁸ Bu-Pc.56. ¹⁹ Bu-Sk.55.

²⁰ Bu-Sk.56.

I ask you another question.

“Please do you tell me: serious and slight too,
With a remainder, without a remainder,
very bad and not very bad,
and those up to the third time,

“Shared, not shared, and by which decidings
are fallings away stopped?
Explain all these too,
indeed we listen to your speech.”

Vin.5.146

“Those serious ones are thirty-one,
eight here without remainder,
Those that are serious are very bad,
(among) those that are very bad is falling away from moral
habit.

“Defeat, Formal Meeting of the Order
is called falling away from moral habit.

“Grave, Expiation, to be Confessed, wrong-doing,
Wrong speech,
and whoever reviles another desiring laughter¹:
stopped is this that is falling away from right behaviour.

“Preferring false view, they choose by means of wrong rules,
Weak in wisdom, wrapped in confusion,
they misrepresent the Supreme Buddha:
stopped is this that is falling away from right view.”

If for the sake of livelihood,² for the reason of livelihood one of evil wishes, overcome by desire, claims a non-existent state of further-men which is not fact, there is an offence involving Defeat. If for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood one speaks saying, “Whatever monk

¹ See [Bu-Pc.52](#), [Bu-Pc.53](#)—probably to revile another in jest refers to [Bu-Pc.2](#) where various offences of wrong speech are said to ensue from comparable behaviour. ² See above [Prv.4.5.4](#).

BD.6.238

lives in your *vihāra* is an arahant”; if for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood a monk, having asked for sumptuous foods for himself, eats them; if for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood a nun, having asked for sumptuous foods for herself, eats them; if for the sake of livelihood, for the reason of livelihood one who is not ill, having asked for curry or conjei for himself, eats it—this that is a falling away from right livelihood is stopped.

“Eleven ‘up to the third time’ —
listen to these as they really are:

“An imitator of one who is suspended,¹
eight ‘up to the third time’,²
Ariṭṭha,³ and Caṇḍakālī⁴ —
these are those ‘up to the third time’.

How many cuttings down⁵? How many breakings up? How many tearings off? How many “not for another” Expiations? How many agreements of the monks? How many proper duties? How many “at mosts”? How many “knowing(ly)” were laid down by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?

⁶Six cuttings down,⁷ one breaking up,⁸ one tearing off,⁹ four “not for another” Expiations,¹⁰ four agreements of the monks,¹¹ seven “proper duties”,¹² fourteen “at most”,¹³ sixteen “knowing(ly)”¹⁴ were laid down by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun.

“Two hundred and twenty
rules of training for monks
come up for recitation on Observance days;

¹ Nuns’ Bi-Pj.7. See Vin.5.140 towards beginning of the “Elevens”. ² Five in Formal Meetings. ³ Bu-Pc.68. ⁴ Nuns’ Bi-Pc.36. ⁵ See above at beginning of Prv.7.6. ⁶ I follow Oldenberg’s numbering, usually of verse only, to the best my ability. ⁷ See above BD.6.133, beginning of the Sextets. ⁸ Bu-Pc.86. ⁹ Bu-Pc.88. ¹⁰ Bu-Pc.16, Bu-Pc.42, Bu-Pc.77, Bu-Pc.78; see Vin.5.127. ¹¹ See Vin.5.127. ¹² See Vin.5.134. ¹³ List of fourteen given at Vin-a.1340: Bu-NP.1, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.7, Bu-NP.10, Bu-NP.14, Bu-NP.21, Bu-NP.23, Bu-NP.29 Nuns’ Bi-NP.11, Bi-NP.12, Nuns’ Bi-Pc.5, Kd.15.31.2, Kd.16.2.5. ¹⁴ Bu-NP.30, Bu-Pc.16, Bu-Pc.20, Bu-Pc.29, Bu-Pc.36, Bu-Pc.62, Bu-Pc.63, Bu-Pc.64, Bu-Pc.65, Bu-Pc.66, Bu-Pc.69, Bu-Pc.70, Bu-Pc.72, Nuns’ Bi-Pj.6, Bi-Ss.2, Bi-Pc.51.

three hundred and four
 rules of training for nuns
 come up for recitation on Observance days.

“Forty-six are not shared by monks with nuns.
 A hundred and thirty are not shared by nuns with monks.

BD.6.239

“So one hundred and seventy-six
 are not shared between the two,
 A hundred and seventy-four
 are for equal training in by the two.¹

Vin.5.147

“Two hundred and twenty
 rules of training for monks
 come up for recitation on Observance days:
 listen to these as they really are:

“The four Defeats,
 the Formal Meetings which come to thirteen,
 there are the two Undetermined,
 exactly thirty Forfeitures,
 and ninety-two minor matters,
 four Confessions,
 seventy-five Trainings.

“And these are the two hundred and twenty
 rules of training for monks
 that come up for recitation on Observance days.

“Three hundred and four
 rules of training for nuns
 come up for recitation on Observance days:
 listen to these as they really are:

“The eight Defeats,

¹ The one hundred and seventy-six with the one hundred and seventy-four make up the three hundred and fifty rules of training which, at the beginning of this Section, are said to have been laid down in the seven towns.

the Formal Meetings which come to seventeen,
 exactly thirty Forfeitures,
 and one hundred and sixty-six called merely minor matters,
 eight Confessions,
 seventy-five Trainings.

“And these are the three hundred and four
 rules of training for nuns
 that come up for recitation on Observance days.

“‘Forty-six are not shared by monks with nuns’:
 listen to these as they really are:

“Six Formal Meetings
 with the two Undetermined are eight;
 twelve Forfeitures—
 with these there are twenty;
 twenty-two minor matters,
 four Confessions.

“And these are the forty-six
 that are not shared by monks with nuns.

“‘A hundred and thirty
 are not shared by nuns with monks’:
 listen to these as they really are:

“Four Defeats,
 ten are to be escaped from by means of¹ the Order,
 twelve Forfeitures,
 and ninety-six minor matters,
 eight Confessions.

BD.6.240

“And these are the hundred and thirty
 that are not shared by nuns with monks.

“‘So one hundred and seventy-six

¹ These are the 10 Formal Meeting offences for nuns.

are not shared between the two':
listen to these as they really are:

“Four Defeats,
the Formal Meetings come to sixteen,
there are the two Undetermined,
twenty-four Forfeitures,
and the minor matters are said to be a hundred and eighteen,
the twelve Confessions.

“And these are the hundred and seventy-six
that are not shared between the two.

““A hundred and seventy-four
are for equal training in by the two':
listen to these as they really are:

“Four Defeats,
the Formal Meetings which come to seven
eighteen Forfeitures,
an equal seventy minor matters,
seventy-five Trainings.

“And these are the hundred and seventy-four
that are for equal training in by the two.

Vin.5.148

Precisely eight Defeats which,
difficult to remedy,
resemble an uprooted palm-tree:
That man is like a withered leaf,¹
a flat stone,²
a decapitated head,³
Like a palm-tree cut off at the crown⁴ —
these have no further growth.

“Twenty-three Formal Meetings of the Order,

¹ See Vin.1.96-97. ² See Vin.1.96-97. ³ See Vin.1.96-97. ⁴ See Vin.1.96-97.

two Undetermined,
 forty-two Forfeitures,
 a hundred and eighty Expiations,
 twelve Confessions,
 seventy-five Trainings
 are stopped by three decidings.

“In the presence of,
 as on the acknowledgement of,
 and by a covering over (as) with grass.

“Two Observances,
 two Invitations,
 four (formal) acts,
 were taught by the Conqueror.

“Just five recitals,¹
 four are not different,
 and the classes of offence are seven.
 The four legal questions
 are settled by seven decidings²:
 by two, by four, by three,
 ‘obligation’ is settled by one.”³ /

BD.6.241

“Listen to that which is called Defeat as it really is:

“Fallen away, fallen short of, and fallen down,
 destroyed by the true rules,
 For such a one there is no communion:
 it⁴ is so called because of that.”

“Listen to that which is called Formal Meeting as it really is:

“Only the Order imposes probation,
 sends back to the beginning,

¹ Vin.1.112. ² See above, Vin.5.99-101. ³ I.e. the first is settled by two decidings, the second by four, the third by three and the fourth by one. ⁴ The offence involving Defeat.

inflicts *mānatta*, rehabilitates:
it is so called because of that.”

“Listen to that which is called Undetermined as it really is:

“Undetermined,¹ not determined—
the rule is undecided,
The occasion is (to be dealt with) by one of three (rules)²—
it is called Undetermined.”

“Listen to that which is called a grave offence as it really is:

“Whoever confesses instigation to another,³
and whoever accepts that⁴—
The transgression is not equal for him:
it is so called because of that.”⁵

“Listen to that which is called Forfeiture as it really is:

“In the midst of an Order,
in the midst of a group, just to a single one—
When forfeiting he confesses:
it is so called because of that.”

“Listen to that which is called Expiation as it really is:

“He throws off⁶ a skilled rule,
offends against the *ariyan* Way
Because of confusion of his mind:
it is so called because of that.”

“Listen to that which is called Confession as it really is:

¹ It is the class of offence that is Undetermined. ² See *sikkhāpada* in *Bu-Ay.1* for the three types of offence one of which might be involved; and see *Bu-Ay.2* for two such types of offence. ³ *ekassa mūle yo deseti*. ⁴ Possibly based on *Vin.3.75* and *Vin.3.143*. ⁵ This verse is cited at *Vin-a.314*. ⁶ *pāteti* is to throw off, bring to fall, make drop, destroy.

“A monk, not being a relation,
 whatever is food that,
 obtained with difficulty,
 Having taken it for himself, he might eat¹:
 it is called blameworthy.

BD.6.242

“Eating among those invited,
 a nun there directs from partiality,
 Not being refused, if he should eat of it:
 it is called blameworthy.²

Vin.5.149

“Going to a family which has faith,
 little wealth, is poor,
 Not being ill, if he should eat there:
 it is called blameworthy.³

“Whoever, if living in a forest
 that is dangerous, frightening
 Should eat there unannounced:
 it is called blameworthy.⁴

“A nun, not being a relation,⁵ whatever is cherished by others:
 Ghee, oil, honey, molasses, fish, meat, then milk, curds—
 a nun, asking for these for herself,
 has fallen into a blameworthy (matter)
 in the Dispensation of the Well-farer.”

“Listen to that which is called Wrong-doing as it really is:

“That which is fallen short of,
 and failing and stumbling is wrong-doing—
 The man who should do that evil
 whether in public or in private—
 They declare to be a wrong-doing:
 it is so called because of that.”⁶

¹ Bu-Pd.1. ² Bu-Pd.2. ³ Bu-Pd.3. ⁴ Bu-Pd.4. ⁵ Nuns' Bi-Pd.1-8 read *agilānā*, not ill, instead of *aññātikā* as above. ⁶ This verse is cited at Vin-a.313.

“Listen to that which is called Wrong Speech as it really is:

“The sentence, wrongly spoken,
wrongly uttered, and that is impure,
And that the learned blame:
it is so called because of that.”¹

“Listen to that which is called Training as it really is:

“Following the straight way
of the training of one under training,
This (right) conduct is the beginning,
and control by restraint of the mouth.
There is no training like this:
it is so called because of that.

BD.6.243

“It rains hard on a covered thing,
it rains not hard on an open thing,
So open up the covered thing:
thus it will not rain hard on that.”²

“A forest is the bourn of deer,
the sky the bourn of birds,³
Non-being is the bourn of mental states,
nibbāna the bourn of an arahant.”⁴

Concluded is the Collection of Stanzas

ITS SUMMARY

Laid down in seven towns, and also the four fallings away,
Shared, not shared by monks and nuns:
This Collection of Stanzas is for furthering the Dispensation.

¹ On account of its impurity and of its being blamed by the learned. ² *Vin.2.240*. ³ Cf. AN.ii.33 for the sentiment. ⁴ Stanza also at Snp-a.iii.6, and last line at MN-a.ii.36 in explanation of the fourth of five *gati*: *vibhavaḡati*.

11. SYNOPSIS OF LEGAL QUESTIONS

Prv.11.1.1
BD.6.244
Vin.5.150

Four legal questions: a legal question concerning disputes a legal question concerning censure, a legal question concerning offences, a legal question concerning obligations These are the four legal questions. Of these four legal questions how many openings up are there? Of these four legal questions there are ten openings up.¹ Of a legal question concerning disputes there are two openings up. Of a legal question concerning censure there are four openings up. Of a legal question concerning offences there are three openings up. Of a legal question concerning obligations there is one opening up. These are the ten openings up of these four legal questions. In opening up a legal question concerning disputes ... censure offences ... obligations, how many decidings does one open up? In opening up a legal question concerning disputes one opens up two decidings. In opening up a legal question concerning censure one opens up four decidings. In opening up a legal question concerning offences one opens up three decidings. In opening up a legal question concerning obligations one opens up one deciding.

Prv.11.1.2

How many openings up? In how many ways does one bring about an opening up? Of how many qualities is an individual who opens up a legal question possessed? How many individuals, in opening up a legal question, fall into an offence?

Twelve openings up. In ten ways does one bring about an opening up. An individual who is possessed of four qualities opens up a legal question. Four individuals in opening up a legal question fall into an offence.

Prv.11.1.3

What are the twelve openings up? Saying: The formal act is not carried out, the formal act is badly carried out, the formal act should be carried

¹ See [Kd.14](#) and [Bu-Pc.63](#). Vin-a.866 refers to this Section of the Parivāra.

out again; it is not fixed,¹ it is badly fixed, it should be fixed again²; it is not decided, it is badly decided, it should be decided again; it is not settled, it is badly settled, it should be settled again—these twelve openings up.

BD.6.245

In what ten ways does one bring about an opening up? He opens up a legal question where it arose³; he opens up a legal question settled where it arose; he opens up a legal question on a highway⁴; he opens up a legal question settled on a highway⁵; he opens up a legal question when he has arrived there⁶; he opens up a legal question settled when he has arrived there; he opens up a verdict of innocence⁷; he opens up a verdict of past insanity⁸; he opens up a decision for specific depravity⁹; he opens up a covering over (as) with grass.¹⁰ In these ten ways one brings about an opening up.¹¹

Vin.5.151

Of what four qualities is an individual possessed that he opens up a legal question? Following a wrong course through partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear he opens up a legal question. Possessed of these four qualities an individual opens up a legal question.

Who are the four individuals who in opening up a legal question fall into an offence? If one who was ordained that very day opens (it) up, for opening up there is an offence of Expiation. If an incoming monk ... if one who carried out (the legal question¹²) ... if one who has given his consent¹³ opens (it) up, for opening up there is an offence of Expiation. These four individuals, in opening up, fall into an offence.¹⁴

Prv.11.1.4

What is the provenance, what the arising, what the birth, what the source, what the bringing forth, what the origin of a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences obligations?

BD.6.246

A legal question concerning disputes has dispute as pro venance, dis-

¹ *anihata*, translated at **BD.3.5** as “settled”. It may mean considers laid down. “Settle” is needed in the next clause but one, *vūpasanta*. ² **Bu-Pc.63**. ³ In the same *vihāra*. See **Kd.14.14**, **Kd.14.16-18** for the first six cases. ⁴ If a monk, not satisfied with the settlement in his own *vihāra*, is going to another *vihāra*. ⁵ He may meet a monk who is an expert on discipline and settles it then and there. ⁶ I.e. if he has decided to proceed with his journey. ⁷ **Kd.14.14.27**. ⁸ **Kd.14.14.28**. ⁹ **Kd.14.11.29**. ¹⁰ **Kd.14.14.30**. ¹¹ Each kind of opening up involves an offence of Expiation. ¹² **Kd.14.14**, **Kd.14.21**, **Kd.14.22**, **Kd.14.24**. ¹³ *chandadāyaka*. On *chanda*, as consent, see **BD.3.58, n.3**; also **BD.5.126**. ¹⁴ In addition, at **Kd.14.32** the individual who accepts (a confession), *paṭiggāhaka*, also falls into an offence of Expiation.

pute as arising ... dispute as origin. A legal question concerning censure has censure as provenance origin. A legal question concerning offences has offences as provenance ... origin. A legal question concerning obligations has obligation as provenance ... origin.

Prv.11.1.5

What is the provenance ... what the origin of a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences obligations?

A legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations has cause as provenance ... as origin.

Prv.11.1.6

What is the provenance ... what the origin of a legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations?

A legal question concerning disputes ... censure ... offences ... obligations has condition as provenance ... as origin.

Prv.11.1.7

How many roots, how many origins of the four legal questions? There are thirty-three roots, thirty-three origins of the four legal questions.

Of the four legal questions what are the thirty-three roots? Twelve¹ roots of a legal question concerning disputes fourteen² roots of a legal question concerning censure; six³ roots of a legal question concerning offences; one root of a legal question concerning obligations. These are the thirty-three roots of the four legal questions.

Vin.5.152

Of the four legal questions what are the thirty-three origins? The eighteen matters making for schism⁴ are the origins of a legal question concerning disputes The four fallings away are the origins of a legal question concerning censure.⁵ The seven classes of offence are the origins of a legal question concerning offences.⁶ The four (formal) acts are the origins of a legal question concerning obligations.⁷ These are the thirty-three origins of the four legal questions.

BD.6.247

Prv.11.1.8

Is a legal question concerning disputes an offence or not an offence? A legal question concerning disputes is not an offence—could one then fall into an offence because of a legal question concerning disputes Yes, one could fall into an offence because of a legal question concerning disputes

¹ Six, beginning with the pair: anger, ill-will; then the three: greed, hatred, confusion; and the three: non-greed, etc. ² Add body and speech to the twelve in the preceding note.

³ The six origins beginning with body. ⁴ Cf. Vin.1.354, Vin.2.88. These *aṭṭhārasa bhedakaravattthu* are mentioned also at Atthasālinī 29. ⁵ Vin.2.88. ⁶ Vin.2.88. ⁷ Vin.2.89.

How many offences does one fall into because of a legal question concerning disputes? One falls into two offences because of a legal question concerning disputes if he insults one who is ordained there is an offence of Expiation¹; if he insults one who is not ordained there is an offence of wrong-doing. These are the two offences one falls into because of a legal question concerning disputes

Of the four fallings away, to how many fallings away do these offences appertain? Of the four legal questions which legal question? Of the seven classes of offence in how many classes of offence are they comprised? Of the six origins of offences by how many origins do they originate? By how many legal questions, among how many possibilities, by how many decidings are they stopped?

Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to one falling away: falling away from right behaviour. Of the four legal questions the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in two classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by three origins. By one legal question: by the legal question concerning obligations; by three possibilities: in the midst of an Order, in the midst of a group, in the presence of an individual; by three decidings are they stopped: it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on his acknowledgement; it may be by a verdict in the Presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass.²

Prv.11.1.9

Is a legal question concerning censure an offence or not an offence ... (see Prv.11.1.8) ... One falls into three offences because of a legal question concerning censure: if he defames a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat there is an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order³; if he defames with an unfounded charge of an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order there is an offence of Expiation; if he defames with an unfounded charge of falling away from right behaviour there is an offence of wrong-doing. These are the three offences one falls into because of a legal question concerning censure.

BD.6.248

¹ See Bu-Pc.2. ² This does not seem to agree with Prv.4.7.2 above. ³ Bu-Ss.8.

Of the four fallings away, to how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped?

Of the four fallings away these offences appertain to two fallings away: it may be to falling away from moral habit; it may be to falling away from right behaviour. Of the four legal questions, the legal question concerning offences. Of the seven classes of offence they are comprised in three classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offence they originate by three origins. That which is a serious offence is an offence that is stopped by one legal question: the legal question concerning obligations; by one possibility: in the midst of the Order; by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on his acknowledgement. Those which are slight offences are offences that are stopped by one legal question: the legal question concerning obligations; by three possibilities ... (see [Prv.11.1.8](#)) ... by a covering over (as) with grass.

Is a legal question concerning offences an offence or not an offence? A legal question concerning offences is an offence—one could then fall into four offences because of a legal question concerning offences: if a nun knowingly conceals an offence involving Defeat¹ there is an offence involving Defeat; if, being in doubt, she conceals it, there is a grave offence; if a monk conceals an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order there is an offence of Expiation; if one conceals a falling away from good behaviour there is an offence of wrong-doing. One falls into these four offences because of a legal question concerning offences.

Of the four fallings away to how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped?

Of the four fallings away these offences ... (see [Prv.11.1.9](#)) ... are comprised in four classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence that is grave; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by one origin: they originate by body and speech and thought. That offence which cannot be done away with is an

¹ See above, [Vin.5.83](#) for these four offences.

offence that is not stopped by any legal question, by any possibility, by any deciding. Those which are slight offences are offences that are stopped by one legal question: ... (see [Prv.11.1.9](#)) ... it may be by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.11.1.11

Is a legal question concerning obligations an offence or not an offence? ... (see [Prv.11.1.8](#)) ... One falls into five offences because of a legal question concerning obligations: if a nun who is an imitator of (a monk) who is suspended, though being admonished up to the third time, does not give up (her course), there is an offence of wrong-doing as a result of the motion, a grave offence as a result of two resolutions, at the end of the resolutions there is an offence involving Defeat¹; if imitators of a schismatic,² though being admonished up to the third time, do not give up (their course), there is an offence entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order; if they do not give up pernicious views, though being admonished up to the third time, there is an offence of Expiation.³ One falls into these five offences because of a legal question concerning obligations.

Of the four fallings away, to how many ... by how many decidings are they stopped?

Vin.5.154

Of the four fallings away these offences ... (see [Prv.11.1.9](#)) ... are comprised in five classes of offence: it may be in the class of offence involving Defeat; it may be in the class of offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; it may be in the class of offence that is grave; it may be in the class of offence of Expiation; it may be in the class of offence of wrong-doing. Of the six origins of offences they originate by one origin: they originate by body and speech and thought. That offence which cannot be done away with is an offence that is not stopped by any legal question, by any possibility, by any deciding. That which is a serious offence is an offence that is stopped by one legal question: the legal question arising out of obligations: by one possibility: in the midst of an Order; by two decidings: by a verdict in the presence of and by the carrying out on his acknowledgement. Those which are slight offences are offences that are stopped by one ... (see [Prv.11.1.9](#)) ... and by a covering over (as) with grass.

BD.6.250

Prv.11.1.12

¹ Nuns' [Bi-Pj.7](#); see above, [Vin.5.83](#). ² These are monks as at [Vin.2.201](#). See too [Bu-Ss.10](#). A nun is spoken of as an imitator of a schismatic at [Vin.5.83](#). ³ [Bu-Pc.68](#).

A legal question concerning disputes is a legal question concerning censure, it is a legal question concerning offences, it is a legal question concerning obligations. A legal question concerning disputes is not a legal question concerning censure, it is not a legal question concerning offences, it is not a legal question concerning obligations. Yet because of a legal question concerning disputes there is a legal question concerning censure, there is a legal question concerning offences, there is a legal question concerning obligations. How is it like this? As to this, monks are quarrelling ... (see [Prv.4.21](#)) ... a legal question concerning obligations. Thus because of a legal question concerning disputes there is a legal question concerning censure ... concerning offences ... concerning obligations.

A legal question concerning censure is a legal question concerning offences ... obligations, it is a legal question concerning disputes A legal question concerning censure is not a legal question concerning offences ... disputes How is it like this? As to this, monks are censuring a monk ... (see [Prv.4.21](#)) ... a legal question concerning obligations. Thus because of a legal question concerning censure there is a legal question concerning offences ... concerning obligations ... concerning disputes

BD.6.251

A legal question concerning offences is a legal question concerning obligations ... disputes it is a legal question concerning censure. A legal question concerning offences is not a legal question concerning obligations ... censure. How is it like this? Both the five classes of offence ... (see [Prv.4.21](#)) ... a legal question concerning obligations. Thus because of a legal question concerning offences there is a legal question concerning obligations ... concerning disputes ... concerning censure.

Prv.11.1.13

A legal question concerning obligations is a legal question concerning disputes ... censure, it is a legal question concerning offences. A legal question concerning obligations is not ... How is it like? Whatever is the Order's business ... (see [Prv.4.21](#)) ... a legal question concerning obligations. Thus because of a legal question concerning obligations there is a legal question concerning disputes there is a legal question concerning censure, there is a legal question concerning offences.

Vin.5.155

Where there is a verdict of innocence there is a verdict in the presence of, where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a verdict of innocence.

Where there is a verdict of past insanity there is a verdict in the presence of, where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a verdict of past insanity. Where there is the carrying out on his acknowledgement ... Where there is the decision of the majority ... Where there is a decision for specific depravity ... Where there is a covering over (as) with grass there is a verdict in the presence of, where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a covering over (as) with grass.

Prv.11.1.14

At a time when a legal question is settled by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of innocence: where there is a verdict of innocence there is a verdict in the presence of. Where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a verdict of innocence, there is not there a verdict of past insanity, there is not there a carrying out on his acknowledgement, there is not there a decision of the majority, there is not there a decision for specific depravity, there is not there a covering over (as) with grass.

At a time when a legal question is settled by a verdict in the presence of and by a verdict of past insanity ... by a verdict in the presence of and by a covering over (as) with grass: where there is a covering over (as) with grass there is a verdict in the presence of. Where there is a verdict in the presence of there is a covering over (as) with grass, there is not there verdict of innocence ... there is not there a verdict for specific depravity.

BD.6.252

Prv.11.1.15

“Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of innocence”—are these things associated or dissociated, and is it possible having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them? “Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of past insanity” ... “Verdict in the presence of” or “covering over (as) with grass”—are these associated or dissociated, and is it possible, having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them?

“Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of innocence”—these things are associated, not dissociated, and it is not possible, having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them. “Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of past insanity” ... “Verdict in the presence of” or “covering over (as) with grass”—these things are associated, not dissociated, and it is not possible, having analysed these things again and again, to point to a difference between them.

Prv.11.1.16

What is the provenance, what the arising, what the birth, what the source, what the bringing forth, what the origin of a verdict in the presence of? What is the provenance ... of a verdict of innocence ... of a covering over (as) with grass?

A verdict in the presence of has provenance as provenance, provenance as arising, provenance as birth ... source ... bringing forth, provenance as origin. A verdict of innocence ... a covering over (as) with grass has provenance as provenance, provenance as arising ... provenance as origin.

Prv.11.1.17
Vin.5.156

What is the provenance ... what the origin of a verdict in the presence of ... a verdict of innocence ... a covering over (as) with grass? A verdict in the presence of has cause as provenance ... a covering over (as) with grass has cause as provenance ... cause as origin.

Prv.11.1.18

What is the provenance ... what the origin of a verdict in the presence of ... a verdict of innocence ... a covering over (as) with grass? A verdict in the presence of has condition as provenance ... a covering over (as) with grass has condition as provenance ... condition as origin.

Prv.11.1.19
BD.6.253

Of the seven decidings how many roots, how many origins? Of the seven decidings there are twenty-six roots, thirty-six origins.

What are the twenty-six roots of the seven decidings? Four roots of a verdict in the presence of: the presence of an Order, the presence of a rule, the presence of Discipline, the presence of the individual. Four roots of a verdict of innocence. Four roots of a verdict of past insanity. Two roots of carrying out on (his) acknowledgement: he who confesses and he to whom he confesses. Four roots of a decision of the majority. Four roots of a decision for specific depravity. Four roots of a covering over (as) with grass: the presence of an Order ... the presence of the individual. These are the twenty-six roots of the seven decidings.

What are the thirty-six origins of the seven decidings? Of a verdict of innocence there is the carrying out of,¹ the performance of,² the undertaking of, the assenting to, the acceptance of, the non-protesting against the formal act.³ Of a verdict of past insanity, of a carrying out on his acknowledgement, of a decision of the majority, of a decision for specific

¹ Vin-a.1359 says this is the motion. ² The motion having been finished with (set aside).

³ Cf. Vin.2.97.

depravity, of a covering over (as) with grass there is the carrying out of ... the non-protesting against the formal act. These are the thirty-six origins of the seven decidings.

Prv.11.1.20

“Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of innocence” — are these things different in meaning and different in connotation, or are they one in meaning and different only in

connotation? “Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of past insanity” ... “Verdict in the presence of” or “carrying out on his acknowledgement” ... “Verdict in the presence of” or “covering over (as) with grass” — are these things different in meaning ... or are they one in meaning and different only in connotation?

“Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of innocence” — these things are different in meaning as well as different in connotation. “Verdict in the presence of” or “verdict of past insanity” ... “Verdict in the presence of” or “a covering over (as) with grass” — these things are different in meaning as well as different in connotation.

BD.6.254

(Can there be) a dispute and a legal question concerning disputes a dispute but no legal question, a legal question but no dispute, a legal question as well as a dispute? There may be ... (see [Kd.14.14.12-15](#)) ... A legal question concerning obligations is a legal question as well as an obligation.

Prv.11.1.21
Vin.5.157

Concluded is the Synopsis of Legal Questions

ITS SUMMARY

Legal question, openings up, ways, and about an individual,
Provenance, cause, condition, root, and about origin, /
Offence, there is, and where, associated, and about provenance,
Cause, condition, roots, about origin, connotation,
“Is a dispute a legal question?”:
this is in the Synopsis of Legal Questions.

12. AN ADDITIONAL COLLECTION OF STANZAS

Prv.12.1.1
BD.6.255
Vin.5.158

“For what purpose is reproving,¹
by reason of what is there making remember,
For what purpose is the Order,
but by reason of what is there an act of Understanding?²”

“Reproving is for making remember,
for restraint³ is making remember,
The Order is for discerning,⁴
but an act of understanding is individual.

“Do not speak quickly,
do not speak angrily,⁵
Do not arouse resentment
if you would be an adjudicator.⁶

¹ On reproving, *codanā*, etc., see [Kd.18](#). ² *matikamma*, mental act; not otherwise found in the Pali Canon. Vin-a.1359 explains it as *mantaggahaṇa* (grasp or learning of the mantras—in a Buddhist sense) which, it says, is a matter of individual investigation and reasoning for Elders who are Suttantikas and for those who are experts in Discipline. ³ *niggaha*, a difficult word, meaning restraint, control, censure, rebuke; also refutation. The usual method, as found in [Kd.11](#), is that a monk should be reproved for not seeing, etc., his offence, then be made to remember it, then accused of it, in order that a (formal) act of the Order might be carried out against him. Vin-a.1359 says that making one remember a defect is for the restraint, *niggaha*, of that individual. ⁴ *pariggaha*. Vin-a, reading *pariggahaṇa*, says: gathered together there, the Order is for the purpose of exploring (searching, finding out, *pariggahaṇa*) and of *vinicchaya* (discrimination, investigation, judgement, etc.). It is for weighing what is *Dhamma* and what is not, for finding out what has been well and what badly investigated, *vinicchita*. ⁵ *caṇḍikata*, angrily, harshly, with “quick temper”; Cf. Nuns’ [Bi-Pc.53](#). ⁶ *anuvijjaka*, as below [Vin.5.160f.](#); a scrutinizer of a legal question, an arbitrator, adjudicator; one who knows about (the matter). He has to be an expert on Vinaya.

“Do not in haste speak challenging¹ talk
 unconnected with the meaning²
 In Sutta,³ in Discipline, in Parivāra,⁴
 in what is laid down,⁵ in the principal authorities.⁶

BD.6.256

“Be careful of the proper procedure⁷
 that was done with skill by him of discernment,⁸
 Of what was well spoken
 in conformity with the rules of training,
 not destroying a bourn in a future state.

“Seeking for welfare, be intent during (that) time
 on what is connected with the goal.
 Consider not in haste the mode of speech
 of the reprovved or the reprover.

“If the reprover says he has fallen,⁹
 if he who is being reprovved says he has not fallen—
 Both,¹⁰ proceeding, should be dealt with
 according to (their) acknowledgement.

“Acknowledgement is carried out among the conscientious,
 it exists not among the unconscientious;
 Though many unconscientious (monks) may say,
 ‘It should be carried out according to what has been said’.¹¹”

“Of what kind is an unconscientious one
 for whom acknowledgement is not Effective?¹²
 Thus I ask you this:

¹ *viggāhika*. Vin-a.1360, “You do not know this *Dhamma* and Discipline,” and so on. ² Or goal, *attha*. ³ Here, according to Vin-a.1360, the two Vibhaṅgas are Sutta, the Khandhakas are Vinaya. ⁴ *anuloma*, which Vin-a.1360 says is the Parivāra. ⁵ This is the whole of the Vinaya-piṭaka, according to Vin-a.1360. ⁶ *anulomika*, explained as *cattāro mahāpadesa* at Vin-a.1360. ⁷ *anuyogavattarū nisāmaya*. Commentary of no help here. ⁸ Vin-a.1360 seems to say: established by a clever, wise (man) who, after being driven out by the Lord, has attained the perfection of knowledge. Same verse Vin.5.164 below. ⁹ If he says that the monk who is being reprovved has fallen into an offence. ¹⁰ *ubho anukkipanto*. ¹¹ Text reads *vuttānusandhitena*; Vin-a.1361 *vattānu*-. ¹² See references to *rūhati* at BD.5.73, n.3.

What is the kind called an unconscientious individual?”

“He falls into an offence intentionally,
he hides the offence,
And goes following a wrong course:
this is the kind called an unconscientious individual.”

“I too know the truth¹ —
this is the kind called unconscientious individual.
And I am asking you another:
what is the kind called a conscientious individual?”

“He does not fall into an offence intentionally,
he does not hide an offence,
He does not go following a wrong course:
this is the kind called a conscientious individual.”

BD.6.257

“I too know the truth’ —
this is the kind called a conscientious individual.
And I am asking you another:
what is the kind called one who reproves
according to what is not the rule?²”

Vin.5.159

“He reproves at a wrong time,
about what is not fact, with harshness,
and with what is unconnected with the goal;
He reproves with inner hatred,
not with a mind of loving-kindness³:
this is the kind called one who reproves
according to what is not the rule.”

“I too know the truth’ —
this is the kind called one who reproves
according to what is not the rule.
And I am asking you another:

¹ As well as you. ² *adhammacodaka* as at [Vin.2.249](#). ³ These five ways of reproving not by rule are given at [Vin.2.250](#).

what is the kind called one who reproves
according to the rule?”

“He reproves at a right time,
about fact, with gentleness,
with what is connected with the goal,
He reproves with a mind of loving-kindness,
not with inner hatred¹:
this is the kind called one who reproves
according to the rule.”

“‘I too know the truth’ —
this is the kind called one who reproves
according to the rule.
And I am asking you another:
what is the kind called one who reproves Ignorantly?”

“He does not know the earlier and the later,²
he is unskilled in the earlier and the later,
He does not know the sequence of the connecting words,
he is unskilled in the sequence of the connecting words:
this is the kind called one who reproves ignorantly.”

“‘I too know the truth’ —
this is the kind called one who reproves ignorantly.
And I am asking you another:
what is the kind called one who reproves wisely?”

“He knows the earlier and the later,
he is skilled in the earlier and the later,
He knows the sequence of the connecting words,
is skilled in the sequence of the connecting words:
this is kind called one who reproves wisely.”

BD.6.258

“‘I too know the truth’ —
this is the kind called one who reproves wisely.

¹ As at [Vin.2.250](#). ² What was said earlier and what was said later, [Vin-a.1361](#).

And I am asking you another:
what is reproving called?"

"He reproves for falling away from moral habit,
then from right behaviour and view,
And he reproves for a (wrong) mode of livelihood:
therefore it is called reproving."

Concluded is an Additional¹ Collection of Stanzas

¹ Additional, or further, *apara*, no doubt in relation to Prv.10. The title of Prv.19 is Dutiyagāthāsaṃgaṇika and cannot be easily explained. The Commentary, Vin-a.1361, Vin-a.1390 calls both Prv.12 and Prv.19 Dutiyagāthāsaṃgaṇikā but attempts no explanation.

13. PORTION ON REPROVING

The one who is reproving should be asked by an adjudicator: “That monk whom you are reproving, reverend sir, for what are you reproving him? Are you reproving him for falling away from moral habit, are you reproving him for falling away from right behaviour, are you reproving him for falling away from right view?” If he should speak thus: “I am reproving him for falling away from moral habit, or I am reproving him for falling away from right behaviour, or I am reproving him for falling away from right view,” he should be spoken to thus: “But does your reverence know ... (see [Kd.16.11-15](#). *Instead of* if you suspend this monk’s Invitation *read* I reprove, you reprove) ... Did you suspect, having heard from disciples of (other) sects?”

Prv.13.1.1
BD.6.259
Vin.5.160

If the seen corresponds with the seen,
the seen being in agreement with the seen,¹
If concerning the seen he² does not consent,³
he⁴ is one suspecting impurity:
That man, on his acknowledgement,⁵
may carry out Observance with him.

If the heard corresponds with the heard,

Prv.13.1.2

¹ Vin-a.1361 says that if a monk sees another leaving a place or entering it with a woman, he reproves him for an offence involving Defeat. This other (monk) allows that the first one saw this, but he does not acknowledge Defeat. Thus, “what was seen by him was seen by me”—and so these words about the seen tally. But as the other (monk) does not acknowledge any defect (in himself) because of what was seen, he (the first one) is one who suspects impurity (in the other). Once that individual says “I am pure”, however, Observance may be carried out with him. ² Referring to two different monks, see preceding note. ³ *upeti*, glossed by *paṭijānāti* at Vin-a.1361. ⁴ Referring to two different monks, see preceding note. ⁵ That “I am pure”.

the heard being in agreement with the heard,
 If concerning the heard ...
 Observance with him.

If the sensed corresponds with the sensed,
 the sensed being in agreement with the sensed,
 If concerning the sensed ...
 Observance with him.

Prv.13.1.3
 BD.6.260

What is the beginning of reproving, what is in the middle what is the ending? Giving leave is the beginning of reproving,¹ carrying out is in the middle, a decision is the ending.²

How many roots of reproving, how many matters, how many (mental) planes?³ In how many ways does one reprove? Two roots of reproving, three matters, five (mental) planes He reproves in two ways.

What are the two roots of reproving? With root, or rootless.⁴ These are the two roots of reproving.

What are the three matters for reproving? About the seen the heard, the suspected.⁵ These are the three matters for reproving.

Vin.5.161

What are the five (mental) planes⁶ for reproving? "I will speak at a right time, not at a wrong time; I will speak about fact, not about what is not fact; I will speak gently, not harshly; I will speak about what is connected with the goal, not about what is not connected with the goal; I will speak with a mind of loving-kindness, not with inner hatred."⁷ These are the five (mental) planes for reproving.

What are the two ways by which he reproves? He reproves by body and he reproves by speech. These are the two ways by which he reproves.

Prv.13.1.4

What should be practised by one who is reproving ... by one who is being reprovved ... by an Order ... by an adjudicator?

What should be practised by one who is reproving? Another may be reprovved by a reprovver who is firm in five things: "I will speak at a right

¹ See [Vin.1.114](#), [Vin.1.170](#). ² Cf. [Vin-a.592](#) for this paragraph. ³ Cf. [Vin-a.592](#). ⁴ Cf. [Vin-a.592](#) for this paragraph. ⁵ Cf. [Vin-a.592](#) for this paragraph. ⁶ Five other *bhūmi* at [AN.iii.39f](#). See also [Ps.i.83](#). ⁷ Cf. [Vin-a.592](#) for this paragraph.

time, not at a wrong time ... I will speak with a mind of loving-kindness, not with inner hatred.” Thus should it be practised by one who is reprovng.

What should be practised by one who is being reprovng? In two things should one who is being reprovng practice: in the truth and in being without anger.¹ Thus should it be practised by one who is being reprovng.

BD.6.261

What should be practised by an Order? What has been said already and what has not been said² should be known by an Order. Thus should it be practised by an Order.

What should be practised by an adjudicator? As that legal question is settled by an adjudicator according to rule, according to Discipline, according to the Teacher’s Dispensation, so should he settle this legal question. Thus should it be practised by an adjudicator.

Prv.13.1.5

For what purpose is Observance,
by reason of what is there Invitation,
For what purpose is probation,
by reason of what is there sending back to the beginning,
For what purpose is *mānatta*,
by reason of what is there rehabilitation?

Observance is for “being all together”,
for purity there is Invitation,
Probation is for *mānatta*,
sending back to the beginning is for restraint,
Mānatta is for rehabilitation,
for purity there is rehabilitation.

If he abuses Elders for (having)
partiality, hatred, fear, confusion:

¹ As at [Kd.18.5.7](#). He should say exactly what has and what has been done and not be angry with the adjudicator or the Order, Vin-a.1362. ² *otiṇṇānotiṇṇo*. Vin-a.1362 says “So much was the earlier talk, so much the later of the reprovng, so much the earlier, so much the later of the reprovng. The Order should also assess the ‘measure’ of the reprovng, the reprovng and the adjudicator”. *Otiṇṇa* appears to be a word of several meanings: see [SN.i.79](#) (or, *ociṇṇa*, convinced?) and text below, [BD.6.170](#) *anotiṇṇa* (not put down?). *Otiṇṇa* must also mean something like “gone into” both physically and by word of mouth.

At the breaking up of the body, weak in wisdom,
done for, faculties destroyed,
He goes to Niraya, the stupid fool
who has no reverence for the trainings.¹

Not depending on things of the world
nor depending on an individual,²
Abandoning both of these,
he should be dealt with according to the rule.

BD.6.262

Angry and bearing ill-will,³
harsh and abusive,
Saying, “It is an offence”
he accuses⁴ him of what is not an offence:
a reprover such as this burns up himself.⁵

He murmurs in his ear, seeks what is crooked,⁶
seeks only for a defect or blemish.
passes beyond (the judgement),⁷
follows a wrong way—
Saying, “It is an offence”
he accuses him of what is not an offence:
a reprover such as this burns up himself.

Vin.5.162

He reproves at a wrong time, about what is not fact,
harshly, about what is not connected with the goal
he reproves with inner hatred,
not with a mind of loving-kindness—

¹ See the six reverences above, [Vin.5.92](#). ² He should not depend on either of these for his support. ³ As at [Vin.2.89](#), *kodhano upanāhi*. ⁴ *ropeti*, to accuse, bring a charge, see [Vin.2.2](#), [Vin.2.26](#), [Vin.2.85](#), [Vin.4.36](#). At [Vin.2.261](#) it appears to mean to cancel. ⁵ *jhāpeti attānaṃ*. Cf. [Vin.2.26](#) *attānaṃ khaṇesi*, and [Dhp.247](#) *mūlaṃ khaṇati attano*. No doubt both *jhāpeti* and *khaṇati* in such contexts mean to destroy. *Khata*, past participle of *khaṇati* is translated “done for” five lines above. ⁶ *jiṃhaṃ pekkhati*, explained at [Vin-a.1363](#) as *dosam eva gavesati*. ⁷ This is a very tentative rendering of *vītiharati*. It is glossed at [Vin-a.1363](#) as *vinicchayaṃ hāpeti*, the “judgement” probably referring to the a taken in the course of a legal question.

Saying ... what is not an offence ...
burns up himself.

He does not know what is a rule
and what not a rule,
he is unskilled in what is a rule
and what not a rule—

Saying ... what is not an offence ...
burns up himself.

He does not know what is Discipline
and what not Discipline,
he is unskilled in Discipline
and what is not Discipline—

Saying ... what is not an offence ...
burns up himself.

He does not know what has been said
and what not said ...

He does not know what is the usage¹
and what not the usage ...

He does not know what has been laid down
and what not laid down ...

He does not know what is an offence
and what not an offence,
he is unskilled in what is an offence
and what not an offence ...

He does not know a slight offence
and a serious offence ...

He does not know an offence that can be done away with
and one that cannot be done away with ...

¹ *āciṇṇa*, what is customary.

He does not know what is a very bad
and what is not a very bad offence ...

He does not know what is the earlier
and what the later (talk) ...

He does not know the sequence of the connecting words,
he is not skilled in the sequence of the connecting words—

Saying, “It is an offence” he accuses him of what is not an offence:

a reprover such as this burns up himself.

Concluded is the Portion¹ on Reproving

ITS SUMMARY

Reproving, and adjudicator, beginning,
by root, Observance, wrong course²:
The Teaching is put into the Portion on Reproving.

¹ *kaṇḍa* is portion, section, paragraph or part. ² *gati* here must refer to *chandā dosā bhayā mohā* (from partiality, hatred, etc.) in the seventh line of the second set of verses. Oldenberg’s colon should therefore come here and not after Observance.

14. THE LESSER COLLECTION

¹ When a monk who is engaged in conflict² is approaching an Order he should approach the Order with a humble mind,³ with a mind as though (it were) removing dust.⁴ He should be skilled about seats and skilled about sitting down. He should sit down on a suitable seat without encroaching on (the space intended for) monks who are Elders and without keeping newly ordained monks from a seat.⁵ He should not talk in a desultory fashion,⁶ nor about inferior (worldly) matters.⁷ Either he should speak *Dhamma* himself or should ask another to do so, or he should not disdain the *ariyan* silence. A preceptor should not be asked about⁸ by an Order, by an approved individual, by an adjudicator, by one anxious to adjudicate; a teacher should not be asked about, one who shares a cell ... a pupil ... a fellow-preceptor⁹ ... a fellow-teacher¹⁰ should not be asked about; birth should not be asked about, name ... clan ... the (scriptural) tradition¹¹ ... the family's standing¹² ... the native district¹³ should not be asked about. What is the reason for that? In case there were regard or hatred for it. If there were regard or hatred he might follow (a wrong course) from partiality ... hatred ... confusion, he might follow (a wrong course) from fear. There should be respect for an

Prv.14.1.1
BD.6.264
Vin.5.163

¹ *saṅgāma* is a battle, a conflict, as well as a collection. ² *saṅgāma vacara*. Vin-a.1363 says that the Order has been convened so as to investigate a legal question—that is called *saṅgāma*; and a *saṅgāma vacara* is said to be like the Elder Yasa (who protested against the Vajjian monks and their Ten Points: see Kd.22). ³ With the banner of arrogance lowered. ⁴ Like a towel for wiping the feet, Vin-a.1363. ⁵ See Kd.18.4.2. ⁶ Such as is not connected with the goal. ⁷ Detailed at e.g. Vin.4.164. ⁸ Saying, “What is your preceptor’s name?”—so Vin-a.1364. ⁹ Kd.8.26.4. ¹⁰ Kd.8.26.4. ¹¹ *āgama*, explained at Vin-a.1364 as “Are you a Dīgha-repeater, a Majjhima-repeater?” ¹² *kulapadesa* does not appear to occur elsewhere in the Pali Canon. Vin-a.1364 simply explains by “beginning with *khattiya-kula*”. ¹³ *jātibhūmi*, or place where one was born, as at MN.i.145. AN.iii.366.

BD.6.265 Order, for an approved individual, for an adjudicator, for one anxious to adjudicate, not respect for an individual. There should be respect for True *Dhamma*, not respect for the material things of the world. There should be pursuit of the goal, not conformity to an assembly. One should adjudicate at a right time, not at a wrong time; one should adjudicate about what is fact, not about what is not fact; one should adjudicate gently, not harshly; one should adjudicate about what is connected with the goal, not about what is not connected with the goal; one should adjudicate with a mind of loving-kindness, not with inner hatred.

Vin.5.164 There should not be murmuring in his ear, he should not seek what is crooked, he should not cover his eye,¹ he should not raise his eye-brow,² he should not raise his head, he should not make a movement with his hand,³ he should not give a gesture with the hand. He should be skilled about seats, he should be skilled about sitting down; looking a plough's length ahead, pursuing the goal he should sit down on his own seat and should not rise from the seat, he should not pass beyond (the judgement),⁴ he should not follow a wrong way; he should not speak waving his arms about, he should be unhastening, he should be considerate, he should not be quick tempered,⁵ with a mind of loving-kindness he should be gentle in speech; merciful, he should be compassionate for welfare; seeking for welfare, he should not be frivolous in speech; limiting his speech, he should be one who masters hostility, and is without irascibility.

BD.6.266 The self must be assessed,⁶ the other⁷ must be assessed, the reprover must be assessed,⁸ the reprovved must be assessed,⁹ one who reproves not by rule ... one who is reprovved not by rule ... one who reproves by rule ... one who is reprovved by rule must be assessed. Without omitting what was said,¹⁰ not bringing forward what was not said, having properly learnt the words and sentences as given, questioning the other in return, he should deal with him according to his acknowledgement.¹¹ An indolent person should be

¹ As at Vin.3.78. ² As at Vin.3.78. ³ See Vin.1.352. ⁴ See above Vin.5.161. ⁵ *acaṇḍikata*; Cf. Nuns' Bi-Pc.53. ⁶ *attā pariggahetabbo*. Vin-a.1364 says: Am I able to judge (determine or decide), to settle (the legal question) or not? The measure of oneself must be known. ⁷ Vin-a.1364: is this company able to appease (convince) or not? ⁸ Is he a reprover by rule (*dhammacodaka*)? ⁹ Has he been reprovved by rule? ¹⁰ By either the reprover or the reprovved, Vin-a.1365. ¹¹ See Vin.2.83f.

roused,¹ a fearful one given confidence, a violent one checked,² an impure one put right,³ a straight one (treated) with mildness. He should not follow a wrong course from partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear. He should be balanced⁴ as to the rules and the individuals. Thus is an adjudicator when he adjudicates thus both a doer of the Teacher's Dispensation, and is dear to learned men and to his fellow Brahma-farers and liked by them and he is esteemed and to be respected.

Prv.14.1.2

A clause is for the sake of reference,⁵ a simile is for the sake of illustration,⁶ a meaning is for the sake of instruction, a question (asked) in return is for the sake of setting aside,⁷ giving leave is for the sake of reproving, reproving is for the sake of making remember, making remember is for the sake of commands,⁸ a command is for the sake of impediments,⁹ an impediment is for the sake of investigating, investigating is for the sake of a decision,¹⁰ a decision is for the sake of referring to a possibility and what is not a possibility,¹¹ referring to a possibility and what is not a possibility is for the sake of restraint of evil-minded individuals¹² and for the sake of the support of well behaved monks; the Order is for the sake of agreement and acceptance¹³; individuals approved of by the Order are persevering by themselves, are persevering in being trustworthy¹⁴; discipline is for the sake of restraint,¹⁵ restraint is for the sake of not being remorseful, not

BD.6.267

¹ *hāsetabbo*, stimulated, encouraged. ² *nisedhetabbo*, disparaged, menaced. ³ *vibhāvetabbo*. Vin-a.1365 says "having pointed out that he is unconscientious, he should be made to confess the offence". By so doing he becomes "pure" again. ⁴ *majjhattenā bhavitabban*, he should be neutral, indifferent, not taking sides. ⁵ *saṃsandanā*, application, conclusion—in regard to what are and are not offences. ⁶ I.e. of the meaning. ⁷ I.e. the question put by the individual (presumably the one who asked the original question)—such a question need not be answered. Cf. the 4 questions at *Milinda's Questions* i.202f., where other references are given. ⁸ *savacaniya*, see Vin.2.5, Vin.2.22, Vin.2.276. ⁹ *palibodha*, see e.g. Kd.7.13. ¹⁰ As to whether there is a defect or not. ¹¹ *ṭhānāṭhānagamana*. Vin-a.1365f. explains that this is for discovering whether there is an offence or not, and whether it is a slight or a serious one. ¹² See Vin.2.196, Vin.3.21. ¹³ Vin-a.1366: "Agreement on an investigation and knowing the state of what has been well and badly divided—the four". Cf. Vin.1.65, Vin.4.51. Whether *catu*, "the four," refers to *suttaso* (clause by clause, or rule by rule) *anubyāñjanaso* (by sentence) of Vin.1.65, and to *mātikāto* (by summary) *vibhaṅgato* (by Suttavibhaṅga), I am not sure. ¹⁴ Vin-a.1366 "for mastery and power (over themselves) and they are placed in a position of trust, in the place of the eldest. The meaning is that these are not to be despised (or sent away)"; *apasādetabbā*. ¹⁵ Cf. SN.ii.32, AN.v.2, etc.

being remorseful is for the sake of joy, joy is for the sake of delight, delight is for the sake of tranquillity, tranquillity is for the sake of happiness, happiness is for the sake of concentration, concentration is for the sake of knowledge and vision of what has come to be as it really-is, knowledge and vision of what has come to be as it really is is for the sake of turning away, turning away is for the sake of dispassion, dispassion is for the sake of freedom, freedom is for the sake of the knowledge and vision of freedom,¹ the knowledge and vision of freedom is for the sake of final *nibbāna* without clinging. According to this meaning is the talk.² According to this meaning is the counsel. According to this meaning is the causal relation. According to this meaning is the lending ear,³ that is to say the deliverance of mind without clinging.

Prv.14.1.3

Be careful of the proper procedure being intent
on what was done with skill by him of discernment,
Of what was well spoken in conformity with the rules of train-
ing,
not destroying a bourn in a future state.⁴

Vin.5.165

Ignorant as to subject,⁵ falling away,
offence,⁶ provenance,⁷ kind,⁸
He does not know the earlier and the later (speech)
nor likewise what was and was not done,

And he is ignorant too as to formal act
and legal question and decidings,
Impassioned, corrupted and astray,
he proceeds from fear, from confusion,⁹

BD.6.268

And he is not skilled as to layings down

¹ Cf. SN.ii.32, AN.v.2, etc. ² Vin-a.1366: this talk on Vinaya. ³ When one has lent ear to this successive talk, knowledge arises, Vin-a.1366. ⁴ Verse as at Vin.5.158. ⁵ Of offences beginning with Monks' Defeat. ⁶ The sevenfold (classes of) offences. ⁷ The town where a rule of training was laid down ⁸ *ākāra*, defined on Vin.5.166. ⁹ These are two of the four wrong courses.

and is not versed in pacifying,¹
 One who has obtained a faction,
 conscienceless, (of) dark deed, disrespectful:
 A monk such as this is called
 one who should not be shown deference.²

Knowledgeable as to subject, falling away,
 offence, provenance, kind,
 He comprehends the earlier and the later (speech)
 and likewise what was and was not done,

And he is knowledgeable as to formal act
 and legal question and decidings,
 Unimpassioned, uncorrupt, not astray,
 he proceeds not from fear, from confusion,

And he is skilled as to layings down
 and is knowledgeable as to pacifying,
 One who has obtained a faction,
 conscientious, (of) bright deed, respectful:
 A monk such as this is called
 one who should be shown deference.

Concluded is the Lesser Collection

ITS SUMMARY

With a humble mind, he may ask,
 respect, for the Order, not for an individual,
 A clause is for the sake of reference
 and for furthering Discipline:
 The summary of the Lesser Collection
 is made into this one recital.

¹ *nijjhatti*. Vin-a.1367 says inability (*asammatthatā*) to see cause or reason, *karāṇa*, and absence of cause or reason; thus, incapable of appreciating reasons, he is incapable of knowing how to pacify. Cf. *nijjhan(t)tibala* a Ps.ii.168 and *nijjhāpeti* on Vin.5.166. ² *appatikkhā* as at AN.v.248.

15. THE GREATER COLLECTION

Prv.15.1.1
BD.6.269
Vin.5.166

When a monk who is engaged in conflict is speaking in an Order he should know the subject, he should know the falling away, he should know the offence, he should know the provenance, he should know the kind, he should know the earlier and the later, he should know what has been done and what has not been done, he should know the formal act, he should know the legal question, he should know the deciding; he should not follow a wrong course from partiality, he should not follow a wrong course from hatred ... confusion ... fear; he should make known¹ on an occasion for making known, he should pacify² on an occasion for pacification, he should consider on an occasion for consideration,³ he should be gracious on an occasion for graciousness; saying, “I have obtained a faction” he should not despise another faction; saying “I have heard much”, he should not despise one who has heard little; saying “I am very senior” he should not despise one more recently ordained; he should not speak about what is not attained,⁴ he should not set aside what is attained by rule and by discipline, he should settle that legal question as it is settled according to the rule, according to Discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction.

Prv.15.1.2

“He should know the subject” means: he should know the subject of the eight offences involving Defeat, he should know the subject of the twenty-three offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... of the two Undetermined offences ... of the forty-two offences of Forfeiture ... of the hundred and eighty-eight offences of Expiation ... of the twelve offences to

¹ *saññāpeti* as at Vin.2.73; “win over” at Vin.2.197. ² *nijjhāpeti* as at Vin.2.73, “dispose favourably”. Commentary has nothing to say. The meaning here seems to be to burn, away, i.e. wrong mental states. ³ *pekkheti* as at Vin.2.73. ⁴ *asampattaṃ na byāharitabbaṃ*. This phrase appears to occur only here and below, BD.6.170, in the “explanation”.

be Confessed ... of offences of wrong-doing, he should know the subject of offences of wrong speech.

“He should know falling away” means: he should know falling away from moral habit ... from good behaviour ... from right view ... from right mode of livelihood.

BD.6.270

“He should know the offence” means: he should know offence involving Defeat, he should know an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... grave offence ... offence of Expiation ... offence to be Confessed ... offence of wrong doing, he should know an offence of wrong speech.

“He should know the provenance” means: he should know the provenance of the eight offences involving Defeat he should know the provenance of the twenty-three offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order ... he should know the provenance of offences of wrong speech.

“He should know the kind” means: he should know an Order from its kind, he should know a group from its kind, he should know an individual ... the reprover ... the one who is being reprovved from his kind. He should know an Order from its kind means: “Now is this Order capable or not of settling this legal question according to the rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction?” Thus should he know an Order from its kind. He should know a group ... an individual from his kind means: “Now, is this individual capable ... instruction?” Thus should he know an individual from his kind. He should know a reprover from his kind means: “I am not sure whether or not this venerable one is reproving the other with the support of the five things¹ or not.” Thus should he know a reprover from his kind. He should know the one who is being reprovved from his kind means: “I am not sure whether this venerable one is supported or not by two things: truth and being without anger.”² Thus should he know the one who is being reprovved from his kind.

Vin.5.167

“He should know the earlier and the later” means: “I wonder whether this venerable one passes on from subject to subject³ or if he passes on from

BD.6.271

¹ These are possibly the five *bhūmi* as given at [Vin.5.161](#), where they also called, as above, *pañca dhammā*. ² Cf. [Prv.13.4](#), [Vin.5.161](#) above. ³ Vin-a.1368 “He may say: ‘Matter for the first Defeat was seen by me or heard of by me.’ But on being asked again, he says, ‘Matter for the first Defeat was not seen or heard of by me. Matter for the second Defeat was seen or heard’.” This whole paragraph is about contradicting oneself.

falling away to falling away or if he passes on from offence to offence or if, having despised, he approves, or if, having approved, he despises or shelves the question by asking another or whether he does not?" Thus should he know the earlier and the later.

"He should know what has been done and what has not been done" means: he should know sexual intercourse, he should know the proper order of sexual intercourse, he should know the earlier part of sexual intercourse. "He should know that sexual intercourse" means: that consummation between a couple is to be known. "He should know the proper order of sexual intercourse" means: the monk takes hold of another's male organ with his own mouth. "He should know the earlier part of sexual intercourse" means: the different colours (of semen), physical contact, lewd speech, ministering to one's own pleasure, intercourse.¹

Prv.15.1.3

"He should know the formal act" means: he should know the sixteen formal acts: he should know the four formal acts for which leave should be asked,² he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put,³ he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution,⁴ he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.⁵ "He should know the legal question" means: he should know the four legal questions: he should know the legal question concerning disputes ... concerning obligations.

Prv.15.1.3

"He should know the formal act" means: he should know the sixteen formal acts: he should know the four formal acts for which leave should be asked,⁶ he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put,⁷ he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution,⁸ he should know the four formal acts at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times.⁹ "He should know the legal question" means: he should know the four legal questions: he should

¹ *dhanamanuppadānaṃ*. Commentary calls this *sañcaritta*, which is either acting as a go-between (Vin.3.137) or dealings with women (Mi.266). ² See Vin.2.89. Vin-a.1368 says "beginning with 'not by rule, in an incomplete assembly'. This is the meaning of the others. Thus the four cycles are sixteen". ³ See Vin.2.89. ⁴ See Vin.2.89. ⁵ See Vin.2.89. ⁶ See Vin.2.89. Vin-a.1368 says "beginning with 'not by rule, in an incomplete assembly'. This is the meaning of the others. Thus the four cycles are sixteen". ⁷ See Vin.2.89. ⁸ See Vin.2.89. ⁹ See Vin.2.89.

know the legal question concerning disputes ... concerning obligations.

“He should know the deciding” means: he should know the seven deciding: he should know verdict in the presence of ... he should know covering over (as) with grass.

“He should not follow a wrong course from partiality” means: How does one who is following a wrong course from partiality follow the wrong course from partiality? As to this, someone saying, “This is my preceptor or teacher one who shares a cell or pupil or fellow-preceptor or fellow-teacher or friend or intimate or blood-relation,” out of compassion for him, protecting him, he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma*, he explains *Dhamma* as non-*dhamma* ... (see [Kd.10.5.4](#), etc.) ... explains not a very bad offence as very bad offence. Because of these eighteen points, he is following a wrong course from partiality, is faring along for what is not the welfare of the many-folk, not the happiness of the many-folk, for what is not the goal, for the woe, the anguish of the many-folk, and of devas and mankind.¹ If, because of these eighteen points, he is following a wrong course from partiality, (then) done for, destroyed, he looks after self, is blameworthy and is to be blamed by learned men, and he sets up much demerit. Following a wrong course from partiality it is thus that he follows a wrong course from partiality.

“He should not follow a wrong course from hatred” means: How does one who is following a wrong course from hatred follow the wrong course from hatred? As to this, someone saying, “He has done me harm,” bears ill-will; thinking, “he is doing me harm” ... “he will do me harm”, he bears ill-will; thinking, “He has done harm, is doing harm, will do harm to someone dear to me and liked by me,” he bears ill-will; thinking, “He has done good, is doing good, will do good to someone not dear to me or liked by me,” he bears ill-will. Because of these nine occasions for ill-will,² (feeling) ill-will, resentment, angry, overcome by anger, he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. If, because of these eighteen points, he is following a wrong course from hatred ... it is thus that he follows a wrong course from hatred.

¹ Because the Order, the nuns, the lay-followers and the *devatās* who guard them and others are split into two. ² Stated but not explained in the Nonads of [Prv.7](#).

Prv.15.1.4

BD.6.272

Vin.5.168

BD.6.273

“He should not follow a wrong course from confusion means: How does one who is following a wrong course from confusion follow the wrong course from confusion? Impassioned, he follows it on account of passion; corrupted, he follows it on account of hatred; astray, he follows it on account of confusion; defiled,¹ he follows it on account of view—astray, altogether astray, overcome by confusion, he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. If, because of these eighteen points, he is following a wrong course from confusion ... it is thus that he follows a wrong course from confusion.

“He should not follow a wrong course from fear” means: How does one who is following a wrong course from fear follow the wrong course from fear? As to this, someone saying: “This one, relying on what is uneven² or relying on the thicket³ (of wrong views) or relying on (someone who is) powerful,⁴ pitiless and harsh, will make a danger to life or a danger to the Brahma-faring⁵” —terrified by that fear he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. If, because of these eighteen points, he is following a wrong course from fear ... It is thus that he follows a wrong course from fear.

Of him who *Dhamma*
oversteps from partiality, hatred, fear, confusion,
The repute fades
as in the dark fortnight does the moon.⁶

Vin.5.169

How does one not follow a wrong course from partiality? Explaining non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma* he does not follow a wrong course from partiality; explaining *Dhamma* as *Dhamma* he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... explaining not a very bad offence as not a very bad offence, he does not follow a wrong course from partiality. It is thus that he does not follow a wrong course from partiality.

How does one not follow a wrong course from hatred ... a wrong course from confusion ... a wrong course from fear? Explaining non-*dhamma* as

¹ *parāmaṭṭha*. ² See AN.iii.285: the ariyan disciple gets rid of the uneven. ³ See MN.i.8, MN.i.485. ⁴ Vin-a.1368 says: relying on powerful well-known monks. ⁵ See Kd.2.15.4.

⁶ AN.ii.18, DN.iii.182, ascribed to the Teacher.

non-*dhamma* ... explaining not a very bad offence as not a very bad offence, he does not follow a wrong course from fear. It is thus that he does not follow wrong course from fear.

BD.6.274

Of him who *Dhamma*
oversteps not from partiality, hatred, fear, confusion,
The repute increases
as in the bright fortnight does the moon.¹

How does one “make known on an occasion for making known”? Explaining non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma* he makes known on an occasion for making known ... explaining not a very bad offence as not a very bad offence he makes known on an occasion for making known. Thus does he make known on an occasion for making known.

Prv.15.1.5

How does one “pacify on an occasion for pacification”? Explaining non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma* he pacifies on an occasion for pacification ... Thus does he pacify on an occasion for pacification.

How does one “consider on an occasion for consideration”? ... How is one “gracious on an occasion for graciousness”? Explaining non-*dhamma* as non-*dhamma* ... he is gracious on an occasion for graciousness ... Thus is he gracious on an occasion for graciousness.

Prv.15.1.6

How, “saying ‘I have obtained a faction’”, does he despise another faction? As to this, there is someone who has obtained a faction, obtained a following, a faction-man² having relations.³ Thinking, “This one has not obtained a faction, not obtained a following, he is not a faction-man having relations,” despising him he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... he explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. Thus, thinking, “I have obtained a faction,” he despises another faction.

How, “saying ‘I have heard much’” does he despise one who has heard little? As to this, someone who has heard much remembers what he has heard, is a store-house of the heard. Thinking, “This one has heard little,

BD.6.275

¹ AN.ii.18, DN.iii.182, ascribed to the Teacher. ² *pakkhavā ñātivā*; apparently neither word is found elsewhere in the Pali Canon. ³ *pakkhavā ñātivā*; apparently neither word is found elsewhere in the Pali Canon.

has little of the tradition,¹ remembers little,”² despising him he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... he explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. Thus, thinking, “I have heard much” he despises one who has heard little.

How, “saying ‘I am very senior’” does he despise one more recently ordained? As to this, there is an Elder of longstanding, long gone forth. Thinking, “This one is newly ordained, he is not esteemed,³ he does not know what is appointed,⁴ his bidding will not be done,” despising him he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... he explains not a very bad offence as a very bad offence. Thus, thinking, “I am very senior,” he despises one more recently ordained.

Vin.5.170

Prv.15.1.7

“He should not speak about what is not attained” means: he should not cause a burden to be put down that has not been put down.⁵

“He should not set aside what is attained by rule and by discipline” means: he should not set aside by rule and by discipline that matter for the sake of which an Order has been convened.

“According to the rule” means: according to fact, according to the subject. “According to Discipline” means: having reproved (him) he makes (him) remember. “According to the Teacher’s instruction” means: by furnishing a motion, by furnishing a proclamation. “He should settle that legal question as it is settled according to the rule, according to Discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction” means: the one who is reprovng should be asked by the adjudicator: “If you, your reverence, suspend this monk’s Invitation ... (Kd.4.16.10-15) ... Did you suspect, having heard from a monk ... from disciples of (other) sects?”

BD.6.276

If the seen corresponds with the seen,
the seen being in agreement with the seen,
If, concerning the seen, he does not consent,

¹ *appāgama appadhara*. These two words again are apparently not found elsewhere in the Pali Canon. ² *appāgama appadhara*. These two words again are apparently not found elsewhere in the Pali Canon. ³ *appaññāto*, as at Vin.4.231, Vin.4.310. ⁴ *appakataññū*, or, not properly versed in, as at Vin.2.199. ⁵ On burden, *bhāra*, see Vism.512 where it should be regarded as *sacca*, truth. On *otiṇṇa*, put down, see above Vin.5.161. Also see *otarati* at AN.ii.168, where it appears to mean “to tally”, i.e. to lie beside. The history of *otarati* has still to be written.

he is one suspecting impurity:
That man, on his acknowledgement,
may carry out Invitation with him.

If the heard corresponds with the heard ... (see [Prv.13.2.](#))

If the sensed corresponds with the sensed ...
Invitation with him.

Prv.15.1.8

“What was seen by you?” — which are the questions?

“How was it seen by you?” — which are the questions?

“When was it seen by you?” — which are the questions?

“Where was it seen by you?” — which are the questions?¹

“What was seen by you?” means: questions on the subject, questions on fallings away, questions on offences, questions on conduct.² Questions on the subject means: the subject of the eight offences involving Defeat, the subject of the twenty-three offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; the subject of the forty-two offences of Forfeiture, the subject of the hundred and eighty-eight offences of Expiation, the subject of the twelve offences to be Confessed, the subject of the offences of wrong-doing, the subject of the offences of wrong speech. Questions on fallings away means: questions on falling away from moral habit, questions on falling away from good behaviour, questions on falling away from right view, questions on falling away from right mode of livelihood. Questions on offences means: questions on offences involving Defeat, questions on offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, questions on offences that are grave ... questions on offences of wrong speech. Questions on conduct means: questions on the consummation of a couple.³

“How was it seen by you?” means: questions on characteristics, questions on the postures, questions on kinds, questions on changes. Questions on characteristics means: tall or short or dark or fair. Questions on the postures means: walking or standing or sitting down or lying down. Questions on kinds means: the attributes of a householder or the attributes of members

BD.6.277

¹ Questions as at [Kd.4.16.13.](#) ² *ajjhācāra* as at [Kd.1.36.8.](#) At [Vin.3.121](#) the meaning appears transgression, i.e. bad conduct. ³ Word as at [Vin.5.167.](#)

of (other) sects or the attributes of one who has gone forth. Questions on changes¹ means: walking or standing or sitting down or lying down.

Vin.5.171

“When was it seen by you?” means: questions on the time,² questions on the occasion,³ questions on the day, questions on the season. Questions on the time means: in the morning time or at the time of mid-day or at evening time. Questions on the occasion means: on a morning occasion or at a mid-day occasion or on an evening occasion. Questions on the day means: before the meal or after the meal or during the night or by day or in the dark⁴ or in the moonlight.⁵ Questions on the seasons means: in the cold weather or in the hot weather or in the rains.

“Where was it seen by you?” means: questions about the place, questions about the ground,⁶ questions about the quarters,⁷ questions about the locality.⁸ Questions about the place means: on (in) the ground or on (in) the earth⁹ or on Earth¹⁰ or in the world. Questions about the ground means: on (in) the ground or on a mountain-Slope or on a rock or in a temple.¹¹ Questions about the quarters means: in an eastern quarter or in a western quarter or in a northern quarter or in a southern quarter. Questions about locality means: in an eastern locality or in a western locality or in a northern locality or in a southern locality.

Concluded is the Greater Collection

ITS SUMMARY

BD.6.278

Subject, provenance, kind, earlier and later,
what has been done and has not been done,
Formal act, and legal question too, deciding,
and following from partiality, /
From hatred, from confusion, from fear too,

¹ *vippakāra*. It is rather odd that this is defined in the same way as are the postures. ² *kāla*.

³ *samaya*, also meaning time; see DN-a.251. ⁴ *kāle vā juṅhe vā*. These two words can also mean the dark and the bright halves of a month. ⁵ *kāle vā juṅhe vā*. These two words can also mean the dark and the bright halves of a month. ⁶ *bhūmi*, ground or soil, among other meanings. ⁷ *okāsa*, open space, so, apparently, quarter or direction. ⁸ *padesa*, region, district. ⁹ *pathavī*, the usual word for the earth: the first of the four great primaries, the element of solidity, extension or expansion. ¹⁰ *dharaṇī*, Earth as a name, “of the pregnant one.” ¹¹ *pāsāda* as long house, palace, mansion or terrace, does not seem to fit very well here. Unfortunately the Commentary has stopped some way previous to this.

making known, and about pacification,
Consideration, gracious, "I have a faction,"
one who has heard, and about a very senior one, /
And the not attained, the attained,
by rule, and by Discipline,
Also by the Teacher's instruction:
the explanation of the Greater Collection.

16. SYNOPSIS OF KAṬHINA

Prv.16.1.1
BD.6.279
Vin.5.172

By whom is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made¹? By whom is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made? How is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made? How is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made?

“By whom is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made?” means: *kaṭhina* cloth is not formally made by two individuals: by him who does not formally make it and by him who does not give thanks.² *Kaṭhina* cloth is not formally made by these two individuals.

“By whom is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made?” means: *kaṭhina* cloth is formally made by two individuals: by him who formally makes it and by him who gives thanks. *Kaṭhina* cloth is formally made by these two individuals.

“How is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made?” means: in twenty-four ways is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made. *Kaṭhina* cloth is not formally made merely by marking it³ ... (Kd.7.1.5) ... Thus also is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made.

Insinuation⁴ is called: he insinuates, saying “I will formally make *kaṭhina* out of this cloth”. Roundabout talk is called: he makes roundabout talk, saying “I will get⁵ the cloth for *kaṭhina* cloth by means of this roundabout talk”. Temporary is called: it is called a gift that should not be appropriated. Postponement is called: there are two kinds of postponement: a postponement

¹ *anattata*, not formally made, see BD.2.26, n.3. Kd.7 is devoted to *Kaṭhina*. There was a certain formality together with strict regulations for the proper making up of the *kaṭhina* cloth into robes at the end of the rains. Thus “formally make” seems a better translation for *attharati* (spread) while keeping *karoti* for simply making, making up. Cf. Vinayavinicchayā 2697, called *Kaṭhinakkhandhaka*. ² See Kd.7.1.6. ³ See Kd.7.1.5. ⁴ *nimittakamma*, or perhaps literally, making a sign; see BD.4.355, n.3. The words commented on in this paragraph occur in Kd.7, for all of which see BD.4.355 and Vin-a.1111 which is the part of the Commentary on the *Kaṭhinakkhandhaka* to which Vin-a.1370 refers. ⁵ *nibbattessāmi*, I will make it to be produced, to come into being.

in carrying out (doing) and a postponement of possessions. To be forfeited is called: if the dawn breaks while it is being made.¹ In these twenty-four ways is *kaṭhina* cloth not formally made.

BD.6.280

“How is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made?” means in seventeen ways is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made. *Kaṭhina* cloth is formally made when it is unsoiled ... (see [Kd.7.1.6](#)) Thus also is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made. In these seventeen ways is *kaṭhina* cloth formally made.

Prv.16.2.1

With the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth how many things are produced? With the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth fifteen things are produced²: eight grounds,³ two impediments,⁴ five advantages.⁵ With the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth these fifteen things are produced.

Prv.16.2.2

Vin.5.173

Of a means⁶ how many things are the condition through the contiguous condition, the condition through the immediate condition, the condition through the foundation condition, the condition through the inducement condition, the condition through the pre-arising condition, the condition through the post-arising condition, the condition through the co-arising condition⁷?

Of a former action⁸ how many things are the condition through the contiguous condition ... ?

Of a removal⁹ how many things, of an allotting¹⁰ how many things, of a formal making how many things, of the grounds and the impediments how many things, of the clothing¹¹ how many things are the condition through the contiguous condition ... the condition through the co-arising condition?

Prv.16.2.3

A former action is the condition of the means through a contiguous con-

¹ Vin-a.1111 interprets this to mean: “to be forfeited during the night”; and then it gives the Parivāra exegesis. ² At Vin-a.1112 it is said “all this is gone into in the Parivāra”. ³ *mātikā*, see [Kd.7.1.7](#); also [BD.2.6, n.5](#) where the eight are enumerated. ⁴ *palibodha*, see [Kd.7.13](#). ⁵ This refers to [Kd.7.1.3](#). See Vinayavinicchaya verse 2725. ⁶ *payoga*. ⁷ I take these kinds of *paccaya*, condition, from NYANATILOKA’S *Buddhist Dictionary*, Colombo, 1956, s.v. *paccaya*, though this may be to take them out of their rightful context. ⁸ *pubbakaraṇa*. Vin-a.1369 specifies “beginning with washing”. ⁹ *paccuddhāra*, see [Bu-NP.2, Bu-NP.3, Bu-NP.18](#), and [BD.2.22, n.3](#). Also see below [Vin.5.174](#) which clearly relates the removal to robes, and Vin-a.1369 which says it is the removal of the outer cloak and so on; this probably refers to the old robes. ¹⁰ *adhiṭṭhāna*, i.e. of the *kaṭhina* robe-material. See [Bu-NP.1.3.1.1, Bu-NP.1.4.1](#) and note at [BD.2.7](#). ¹¹ Text reads *vatthu*, but Vin-a.7369 reads *vattha*, “clothing,” a reading it supports by saying *vattha* means the outer cloak and so on.

BD.6.281 dition, it is the condition through an immediate condition, it is the condition through a foundation condition, it is the condition through an inducement condition. A means is a condition of a former action through a pre-arising condition. A former action is the condition of the means through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

Prv.16.2.4 Removal is a condition of a former action through a contiguous condition, it is the condition through an immediate condition, it is the condition through a foundation condition, it is the condition through an inducement condition. A former action is the condition of removal through a pre-arising condition. Removal is the condition of a former action through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

Prv.16.2.5 Allotting is a condition of removal through a contiguous condition ... an immediate condition ... a foundation condition ... an inducement condition. Removal is a condition of allotting through a pre-arising condition. Allotting is a condition of removal through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

Prv.16.2.6 Formal making is a condition of allotting through a contiguous ... immediate ... foundation ... inducement-condition. Allotting is a condition of formal making through a pre-arising condition. Formal making is a condition of allotting through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

Prv.16.2.7 The grounds and the impediments are the condition of formal making through a contiguous ... immediate ... foundation ... inducement condition. The formal making is the condition of the grounds and the impediments through a pre-arising condition. The grounds and impediments are the condition of the formal making through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

Prv.16.2.8
Vin.5.174 Expectation¹ and lack of expectation² are the condition of clothing through a contiguous ... immediate ... foundation ... inducement condition. Clothing is the condition of expectation and lack of expectation through a pre-arising condition. Expectation and lack of expectation are the con-

BD.6.282

¹ *āsā, anāsā*. See [Vin.1.259ff.](#), and [BD.2.6, n.4](#). ² *āsā, anāsā*. See [Vin.1.259ff.](#), and [BD.2.6, n.4](#).

dition of clothing through a post-arising condition. Fifteen things are the condition through a co-arising condition.

What is the provenance, what the arising, what the birth what the source, what the bringing forth, what the origin of a former action? What is the provenance ... what the origin of a removal? What is the provenance ... what the origin of an allotting ... of formal making? What is the provenance what the origin of grounds and impediments ... of expectation and lack of expectation?

Prv.16.3.1

Means is the provenance, means is the arising ... means is the origin of former action. Former action is the provenance ... the origin of removal. Removal is the provenance ... of allotting. Allotting is the provenance ... of formal making. Formal making is the provenance ... of allotting. The grounds and the impediments are the provenance ... of formal making. Expectation and lack of expectation are the provenance of clothing ... the origin of clothing.

Prv.16.3.2

What is the provenance, what the arising ... what the origin of means ... former action ... removal ... allotting ... formal making ... the ground? and the impediments ... clothing? What is the provenance ... what the origin of expectation and lack of expectation?

Cause is the provenance, cause the arising ... of means ... Cause is the provenance, cause is ... the origin of expectation and lack of expectation.

Prv.16.3.3

What is the provenance ... of means ... What is the provenance ... what the origin of expectation and lack of expectation?

Condition is the provenance, condition the arising ... of means ... Condition is the provenance, condition is ... the origin of expectation and lack of expectation.

Prv.16.3.4

With how many things is former action classified? Former action is classified with seven things: with washing, with calculating,¹ with cutting,² with tacking,³ with sewing, with dyeing, with making allowable. Former action is classified with these seven things.

BD.6.283

With how many things is removal classified? Removal is classified with three things: with outer cloak, with upper robe, with inner robe.⁴

¹ *vicāraṇā*, as at [Kd.7.1.5](#). ² [Kd.7.1.5](#) ³ *bandhana*, [Kd.7.1.5](#). ⁴ On the three robes see [BD.2.1, n.2](#).

With how many things is allotting classified? ... with three things: with outer cloak, with upper robe, with inner robe.

Prv.16.3.5 With how many things is formal making classified? Formal making is classified with one thing: with breaking into speech.¹

Vin.5.175 How many roots of *kaṭhina* cloth, how many matters, how many materials²? One root of *kaṭhina* cloth: the Order³; three matters: outer cloak, upper robe, inner robe⁴; six materials: linen, cotton, silk, wool, coarse hemp, canvas.

Prv.16.3.6 What is the beginning of *kaṭhina* cloth, what is in the middle, what is the ending? Former action is the beginning of *kaṭhina* cloth, carrying out is in the middle, formal making is the ending.

Prv.16.3.7 When an individual is possessed of how many qualities is he incapable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth? When an individual is possessed of how many qualities is he capable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth? When an individual is possessed of eight qualities he is incapable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth. When an individual is possessed of eight qualities he is capable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth. Possessed of which eight qualities is the individual incapable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth? He does not know former action ... removal ... allotting ... formal making ... ground ... impediment ... withdrawal⁵ ... advantage. Possessed of these eight qualities an individual is incapable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth. Possessed of which eight qualities is the individual capable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth? He knows former action he knows advantage. Possessed of these eight qualities an individual is capable of formally making *kaṭhina* cloth.

BD.6.284 Prv.16.3.8 Of how many individuals are formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth not effective? Of how many individuals are formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth effective? Of three individuals formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are not effective. Of three individuals formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are effective. Of which three individuals are formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth not effective? If, stand-

¹ Vin-a.1370 says this means that (the monk) thinks "I am formally making *kaṭhina* robes into this outer cloak, into this upper robe, into this inner robe". ² *bhūmi* is a word of several meanings to which we must now add that of material or stuff, i.e. basis. ³ The Order has to give the *kaṭhina* material to a monk, Kd.7.1.4. ⁴ Only if the three robes are made up is *kaṭhina* cloth properly made, Kd.7.1.5. ⁵ *ubbhāra*, see Vin.5.136 in Prv.16.3.8. See Vin.1.255, Vin.1.300, BD.2.5, n.3, and Vin-a.1113.

ing outside the boundary, he gives thanks¹; if, giving thanks, he does not break into speech; if breaking into speech, he does not inform another (monk).² Of these three individuals formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are not effective. Of which three individuals are formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth effective? If, standing on the boundary, he gives thanks³; if, giving thanks, he breaks into speech; if, breaking into speech, he informs another (monk). Of these three individuals formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are effective.

Prv.16.3.9

How many formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are not effective? How many formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are effective? Three formal makings ... are not effective. Three formal makings ... are effective. Which three formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are not effective? There is failure as to clothing, and failure as to time, and failure as to making.⁴ These three formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are not effective. Which three formal makings of *kaṭhina* cloth are effective? There is success as to clothing, success as to time, and success as to making. These three formal makings ... are effective.

Prv.16.4.1

Kaṭhina cloth should be known, the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known, the month for the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known, failure in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known, success in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known, insinuation should be known, roundabout talking should be known, what is temporary should be known, postponement should be known, what is to be forfeited should be known.

BD.6.285

Vin.5.176

“Kaṭhina cloth should be known” means: the classification of these very things,⁵ the combination, the name,⁶ the denomination, the giving of a name, the interpretation, the distinctive sign, the expression, — that is to say, *kaṭhina* cloth.

“The month for the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known”⁷ means: the last month of the rains should be known.

“Failure in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known” means:

¹ Kd.7.1.5. ² Vin-a.1109 gives this interpretation. ³ Kd.7.1.6 ⁴ Explained at Vin-a.1370 as (i) unallowable cloth, (ii) what is given today by the donors is given tomorrow by the Order for the formal making, and (iii) though cut out today it is not made. For these clauses Cf. Kd.7.1.5. ⁵ Vin-a.1370 says material shape and so on. ⁶ This term and the following are at Ds.1306. ⁷ “The formal making of the *kaṭhina* cloth” is given a long paragraph at the end of Prv.16.4.4.

the failure in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth in the twenty-four ways should be known.¹

“Success in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known” means: the success in the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth in the seventeen ways should be known.²

“Insinuation³ should be known” means: he insinuates, saying, “I will formally make *kaṭhina* cloth with this cloth.”

“Roundabout talk should be known” means: he makes roundabout talk, saying, “I will get the cloth for *kaṭhina* cloth by this roundabout talk.”

“What is temporary should be known” means: a gift that should not be appropriated should be known.

“Postponement should be known” means: the two postponements should be known: the postponement in carrying out and the postponement of possessions.

“What is to be forfeited should be known” means: if the dawn breaks while it is being made.

“The formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth should be known” means: if cloth for *kaṭhina* cloth has accrued to an Order, what line of action should be taken by the Order, what line of action should be taken by (the monk) who is the formal maker of it, what line of action should be taken by (the monk) who gives the thanks⁴? A monk who is a formal maker of *kaṭhina* cloth should be given by the Order a formal act at which motion is followed by one resolution. *Kaṭhina* cloth should be made that same day by a monk who is the formal maker of it after he has washed it, smoothed it,⁵ calculated it, cut it sewn it, dyed it, made it allowable. If he wants formally to make *kaṭhina* cloth into an outer cloak the old outer cloak must be removed, a new outer cloak allotted, and he should break into speech, saying, “I will formally make *kaṭhina* cloth into this outer cloak.” If he wants formally ... to make an upper robe ... If he wants formally to make *kaṭhina* cloth into an inner robe ... speech, saying, “I will formally make *kaṭhina* cloth into this inner robe.” After the monk who is the formal maker of *kaṭhina* cloth has approached

BD.6.286

¹ Kd.7.1.5. ² Kd.7.1.6. ³ For this terms and the following four see Vin.5.172. ⁴ Cf. Vin-a.1109 Which points out that in the Parivāra the *kaṭhina* is made by two monks: the one who makes it and the one who gives the thanks. ⁵ *vimajjitvā*, not among the processes given at Kd.7.

the Order arranged his outer robe over one shoulder, stretched out his joined palms in salutation, he should speak thus to it: “Venerable sirs, the Order’s *kaṭhina* cloth has been formally made, the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth was according to regulation; give thanks.” After he has arranged his upper robe over one shoulder and has stretched forth his joined palms in salutation, he should be spoken to thus by those monks who gave the thanks: “Revered sir, the Order’s *kaṭhina* cloth has been formally made, the formal making of *kaṭhina* cloth was according to regulation; we are giving thanks.” After a monk who is a formal maker of *kaṭhina* cloth has approached several monks, arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, stretched out his joined palms in salutation, he should speak thus to them: “Venerable sirs, the Order’s *kaṭhina* cloth ... give thanks.” ... by those monks who give the thanks ... “ ... we are giving thanks”. After the monk who is a formal maker of *kaṭhina* cloth has approached one monk, ... he should speak thus to him: “Reverend sir ... give thanks.” After he has arranged his upper robe over one shoulder, stretched out his joined palms in salutation, he should be spoken to thus by the monk who is the giver of the thanks: “Reverend sir, the Order’s *kaṭhina* cloth has been formally made, the making of *kaṭhina* cloth was according to regulation; I am giving thanks.”

Vin.5.177

BD.6.287

Prv.16.5.1

An Order formally makes *kaṭhina* cloth, a group ... an individual formally makes *kaṭhina* cloth. An Order does not formally make *kaṭhina* cloth, a group does not ... an individual formally makes *kaṭhina* cloth. If the Order does not formally make *kaṭhina* cloth, if a group does not ... if an individual formally makes *kaṭhina* cloth: *kaṭhina* cloth is not formally made by the Order, *kaṭhina* cloth is not formally made by a group, *kaṭhina* cloth is formally made by an individual.

An Order recites the Pātimokkha, a group recites the Pātimokkha, an individual recites the Pātimokkha. An Order does not recite the Pātimokkha, a group does not recite the Pātimokkha, an individual recites the Pātimokkha. If an Order ... if a group does not recite the Pātimokkha, if an individual recites the Pātimokkha the Pātimokkha is not recited by an Order ... not recited by a group, the Pātimokkha is recited by an individual.

When an Order is complete, when a group is complete, on the recital by the individual the Pātimokkha is recited by an Order ... by a group ... by an

individual. In the same way an Order does not formally make *kaṭhina* cloth, a group does not formally make *kaṭhina* cloth, an individual formally makes *kaṭhina* cloth: by the thanking of an Order, by the thanking of a group, by the formal making by an individual *kaṭhina* cloth is formally made by an Order ... by a group, *kaṭhina* cloth is formally made by an individual.

Prv.16.6.1

“Depending on his going away
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed¹
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this:
Which impediment is cut off first?”

Vin.5.178

“Depending on his going away
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun,
And I answer you this:
the robes-impediment is cut off first,
On his going outside the boundary
the residence-impediment is cut off.”²

BD.6.288

“Depending on (his robes) being settled³
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this ... ”

“And I answer you this:
the residence-impediment is cut off first,
When the robes are settled
the robes-impediment is cut off.”

“Depending on his resolves⁴
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this ... ”

¹ Kd.7.2.1. See BD.4.358, n.7. ² Verse cited at Vin-a.1112. ³ Kd.7.2.1. ⁴ *sanniṭṭhānantika*, as at Kd.7.1.7, Kd.7.2.1; see BD.4.359, n.1. The line is quoted at Vin-a.1113.

“And I answer you this:
the two impediments are cut off simultaneously.”

“Depending on (the robe-material) being lost¹
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this ... ”

“And I answer you this:
the residence-impediment is cut off first,
When the robe is lost
the robes-impediment is cut off.”

“Depending on his hearing (the news)²
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this ... ”

“And I answer you this:
the robes-impediment is cut off first,
On his hearing of it
the residence-impediment is cut off.”

“(Depending on) the disappointment of his expectation³
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this ... ”

“And I answer you this:
the residence-impediment is cut off first,
When there is disappointment of robe-material
the robes-impediment is cut off.”

“Depending on his crossing a boundary⁴
his *kaṭhina* (privileges) are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:

BD.6.289

¹ As at Kd.7.1.7, Kd.7.2.1. ² *savanantika*, as at Kd.7.1.7, Kd.7.2.1. ³ As at Kd.7.1.7. ⁴ As at Kd.7.1.7.

And I ask you this ...”

“And I answer you this:
the robes-impediment is cut off first,
When he has gone outside the boundary
the residence-impediment is cut off.”

“Depending on withdrawal
together with¹ (the *kaṭhina* privileges)
his *kaṭhina* privileges are called removed
by the Kinsman of the Sun:
And I ask you this:
Which impediment is cut off first?”

“And I answer you this:
the two impediments are cut off simultaneously.”

Prv.16.7.1

How many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are dependent on an Order, how many ... on an individual, how many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are dependent neither on an Order nor on an individual? One removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) is dependent on an Order: a temporary withdrawal.² Four removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are dependent on an individual: that depending on his going away, that depending on (his robe) being settled, that depending on his resolves, that depending on his crossing the boundary. Four removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are dependent neither on an Order nor on an individual: that depending on (the robe) being lost, that depending on (his) hearing, the disappointment of an expectation, the withdrawal together with.³

Prv.16.7.2

Vin.5.179

How many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed inside the boundary ... outside the boundary, how many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) may be removed inside the boundary ... outside the boundary? Two removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed inside the boundary: temporary withdrawal and withdrawal together with. Three removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are removed outside the boundary: that depending

¹ *sahubbhāra*, “together with” meaning the withdrawal of other monks’ privileges. ² *antarubbhāra*, not in *Kd.7* (?). ³ See *Kd.7.1.7*.

on going away, that depending on hearing, that depending on crossing the boundary. Four removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) may be removed inside the boundary and may be removed outside the boundary; that depending on (the robes) being settled, that depending on resolves, that depending on (the robe) being lost, the disappointment of an expectation.

BD.6.290

Prv.16.7.3

How many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are of one arising, one cessation? How many removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are of one arising, different cessations? Two removals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are of one arising, one cessation: temporary withdrawal, withdrawal together with. The remaining withdrawals of the *kaṭhina* (privileges) are of one arising, different cessations.

Concluded is the Synopsis of Kaṭhina

ITS SUMMARY

By whom, how, fifteen, things, and cause as provenance,
Condition, classification, roots,
and the beginning, eight individuals, /
Of three breakings, three, should be known,
and formal making compared with recital,
Impediment, depending on, boundaries,
and about arising and cessation. /

*Concluded is the Parivāra*¹

¹ *Parivāraṃ niṭṭhitam*. Does this mean that the material so far presented is the original compilation, and that the remainder of the material is a later addition? See Introduction, p.xiii; also the final ending on [Vin.5.226](#), *Parivāro niṭṭhito*.

17. UPĀLI-PENTADS

DIVISION 1: INDEPENDANTLY

Prv.17.1.1
BD.6.291
Vin.5.180

At that time the Buddha, the Lord was staying near Sāvattthī in the Jeta Grove in Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Then the venerable Upāli approached the Lord; having approached and greeted the Lord he sat down at a respectful distance. As he was sitting down at a respectful distance, the venerable Upāli spoke thus to the Lord, “Possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a monk not live independently for as long as life lasts?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities,¹ Upāli, he should not live independently for as long as life lasts. Of what five? If he does not know the Observance,² if he does not know the formal act for the Observance,³ if he does not know the Pātimokkha,⁴ if he does not know the recital of the Pātimokkha,⁵ if it is less than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk should not live independently for as long as life lasts.

Possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may live independently for as long as life lasts. Of what five? If he knows the Observance ... the formal act for the Observance ... if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.2

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not live independently for as long as life lasts. Of what five? If he does not know the Invitation, if he does not know the formal act for the Invitation, if he does not know the Pātimokkha, if he does not know the recital of the

¹ Cf. Vin.5.131. ² Vin-a.1371, he does not know the ninefold Observance. ³ Vin-a.1371, fourfold (as given at Vin.1.111). ⁴ Vin-a.1371, the two *mātikās*. ⁵ Vin-a.1371, fivefold for monks (as at Vin.1.112), fourfold for nuns.

Pātimokkha, if it is less than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities ...

Possessed of five qualities, Upāli a monk may live independently for as long as life lasts. Of what five? If he knows the Invitation ... if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities ...

BD.6.292

Prv.17.1.3

If a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... he should not live independently. Of what five? If he does not know what is an offence and what is not an offence, if he does not know what is a slight and what a serious offence, if he does not know an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is a very bad offence and what is not a very bad one, if it is less than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities ...

Possessed of five qualities ... may live independently. Of what five? If he knows what is an offence and what is not an offence ... if it is five years or more than five years (since his ordination). Possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk may live independently for as long as life lasts.”

Prv.17.1.4

Vin.5.181

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should he not ordain, not give guidance, and a novice not attend him?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him. Of what five? If he is not competent to tend or get (another) to tend a pupil or one who shares a cell and is ill, to allay or get (another) to allay dissatisfaction that has arisen, to dispel or get (another) to dispel, by means of *Dhamma*, remorse that has arisen,¹ to lead him in what pertains to *Dhamma*,² to lead him in what pertains to Discipline.³ Possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk should not ordain, he should not give guidance, a novice should not attend him.

Possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him. Of what five? If he is competent to tend ... to lead him in what pertains to Discipline. Possessed of these five qualities

¹ To here see Vin.1.64 (Kd.1.36.10). ² Also at Vin.1.64 (Kd.1.36.12), but not in the same pentad as the first three clauses in this paragraph. ³ Also at Vin.1.64 (Kd.1.36.12), but not in the same pentad as the first three clauses in this paragraph.

... a novice may attend him.

Prv.17.1.5

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... a novice should not attend him. Of what five? If he is not competent to train a pupil or one who shares a cell in the training regarding the fundamentals of conduct, to lead him in the training regarding the fundamentals of the Brahma-faring,¹ to lead him in the higher morality, to lead him in the higher thought, to lead him in the higher wisdom.² Possessed of these five qualities ... a novice should not attend him.

BD.6.293

Possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him. Of what five? If he is competent ... to lead him in the higher wisdom. Possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk may ordain, he may give guidance, a novice may attend him.”

Prv.17.1.6

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a formal act (against him) be carried out?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a formal act (against him) should be carried out. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and ignorant, and not a regular monk,³ and if he is one of wrong view, and has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against him.

Prv.17.1.7

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a formal act (against him) should be carried out. Of what five? If, as regards morality, he has fallen away from moral habit, if, as regards behaviour, he has fallen away from good behaviour, if, as regards view, he has fallen away from right view, and if he is of wrong view, and has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.8

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... Of what five? If he is possessed of bodily frivolity ... of verbal frivolity ... of bodily and verbal frivolity, if he is one of wrong view, if he has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. Possessed of these five qualities ...

Vin.5.182

Prv.17.1.9

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... If he is possessed of bodily bad behaviour ... verbal bad behaviour ... bodily and verbal bad

¹ Also at [Vin.1.64 \(Kd.1.36.12\)](#). ² Apparently not in the relevant material at [Vin.1](#). ³ These first three clauses are in the Triads, [Vin.5.122](#), and similarly for the next six paragraphs.

behaviour, and if he is of wrong view, and has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.10
BD.6.294

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities if he is possessed of harming by means of body ... harming by means of speech ... harming by means of body and speech, and if he is of wrong view, and has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.11

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... If he is possessed of wrong bodily mode of livelihood ... wrong verbal mode of livelihood ... wrong bodily and verbal mode of livelihood, and if he is of wrong view, and has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. Possessed of these five qualities ...

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... If having fallen into an offence and a (formal) act has been carried out against him, he ordains, gives guidance, makes a novice attend him, if he consents to an agreement as to an exhorter of nuns,¹ if, even though agreed upon, he exhorts nuns.² Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.13

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... If he falls into that same offence for which a formal act was carried out (against him) by an Order, or into another that is similar, or into one that is worse,³ if he finds fault with the formal act, if he finds fault with one who carried it out.⁴ Possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.1.14

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against him. Of what five? If he speaks dispraise of the Buddha, if he speaks dispraise of *Dhamma*, if he speaks dispraise of the Order, and if he is one of wrong view, and if he has fallen away from a right mode of livelihood. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a formal act should not be carried out against him.”

The First Division: on Independently

ITS SUMMARY

Observance, Invitation, and offence, one who is ill,
Fundamentals of conduct, and unconscientious, as to
morality, and frivolity, /

¹ Cf. [Kd.11.5.27](#) for these five clauses. ² Cf. [Kd.11.5.27](#) for these five clauses. ³ First three clauses at [Vin.5.122](#). ⁴ All five clauses at [Kd.11.5.27](#).

BD.6.295 Wrong behaviour, harming, wrong, and as to offence itself,
That offence for which, of the Buddha:
the Compendium of the First Division.

DIVISION 2: NOT REVOKING

Prv.17.2.1

Prv.17.2.2

Prv.17.2.3

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a formal act (against him) not be revoked?”

Vin.5.183

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a formal act (against him) should not be revoked. Of what five? If, having fallen into an offence and a (formal) act has been carried out (against him) ... (see Prv.17.1.12-14, reading should not be revoked *instead of* should be carried out (against him)) ... and if he has fallen away from right mode of livelihood. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a (formal) act (against him) should not be revoked.

Prv.17.2.4

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a (formal) act (against him) should not be revoked. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and is ignorant, and is not a regular monk, and is one who chooses among customs,¹ and is one who does not fulfil the training. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a (formal) act (against him) should not be revoked.”

Prv.17.2.5

“When a monk who is engaged in conflict, revered sir, is approaching an Order, having set up how many states within himself should he approach the Order?”

“When a monk who is engaged in conflict, Upāli, is approaching an Order, having set up five states within himself should he approach the Order. What five? When a monk who is engaged in conflict,² Upāli, is approaching an Order he should approach the Order with a humble mind, with a mind (as though) it were removing dust; he should be skilled about seats and skilled about sitting down; he should sit down on a suitable seat without encroaching on (the space intended for) monks who are Elders and without

¹ *omaddakārako vattesu*. Usual meaning of *omaddati* is to grind, press down. It has been rendered as “choose” at BD.5.300, BD.3.130 (Vin.2.214, Vin.4.192). ² For the following see above at the beginning of Prv.17.12.1.

keeping newly ordained monks from a seat; he should not talk in a desultory fashion nor about inferior (worldly) matters; he should speak *Dhamma* himself or should ask another to do so, nor should he disdain the *ariyan* silence. If, Upāli, an Order is carrying out (formal) acts that should be carried out by a complete Order, but if this does not seem right to the monk, then, giving an explanation of (his) views,¹ the “being all together” may be attained. What is the reason for this? He says, ‘Let me not be different from the Order.’ When a monk who is engaged in conflict Upāli, is approaching an Order, having set up these five states within himself he should approach the Order.”

BD.6.296

“Possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is a monk who is speaking in an Order not liked by the many-folk, not dear to the many-folk, and not pleasing to the many-folk?”

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is ... not pleasing to the many-folk. Of what five? If he is a grandiose speaker,² and one who hankers after support,³ and is not skilled about the sequence of meanings in a speech, if he is one who does not reprove according to *Dhamma*, according to Discipline, according to the offence, if he is one who does not carry out according to *Dhamma* ... the offence. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk ... is not pleasing to the many-folk.

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is liked by the many-folk and is dear to the many-folk and is pleasing to the many-folk. Of what five? If he is not a grandiose speaker, and is not one who hankers after support, and is skilled in the sequence of meanings in a speech, if he is one who reproves according to *Dhamma*, according to Discipline, according to the offence, if he is one who carries out according to *Dhamma*, according to Discipline, according to the offence. If he is possessed of these five qualities ...

Vin.5.184

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a monk who is

Prv.17.2.7

¹ *diṭṭhāvikkamma*, apparently not in other parts of Vinaya, except below Prv.17.4.1.2. ² *ussitamantī*. *Ussita* is used of raised standards and banners. Vin-a.1372 calls it speech about the greed, hatred and confusion of human beings, a speech, not explaining the goal. ³ *nis-sitajappī*. Vin-a.1372: he has to quote a king or minister or his teacher or preceptor and say that he has spoken to these.

speaking in an Order is ... not pleasing to the many-folk ... If he is one who exalts,¹ one who upbraids,² if he chooses not-*dhamma*, if he shuts out *Dhamma*, and if he speaks much fatuous talk. If he is possessed of these five qualities ...

BD.6.297

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is ... pleasing to the many-folk ... If he is not one who exalts, not one who upbraids, if he chooses *Dhamma*, if he shuts out non-*dhamma*, and if he does not speak much fatuous talk. If he is possessed of these five qualities

Prv.17.2.8

...

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is ... not pleasing to the many folk ... If he is a teacher who uses force, if he is a teacher who has not obtained leave, if he is one who reproves not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is one who carries out not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is an expounder³ not in accordance with right view. If he is possessed of these five qualities

...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is liked by the many-folk and is dear to the many-folk and is pleasing to the many-folk. Of what five? If he is a teacher who does not use force, if he is a teacher who has obtained leave, if he is one who reproves according to *Dhamma*, according to Discipline, according to the offence, if he is one who carries out according to *Dhamma*, according to Discipline, according to the offence, if he is an expounder in accordance with right view. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk who is speaking in an Order is liked by the many-folk and is dear to the many-folk and is pleasing to the many-folk.”

Prv.17.2.9

“How many advantages are there, revered sir, for one who has mastery in Discipline?”

“There are these five advantages, Upāli, for one who has mastery in Discipline. What five? His own body of moral habit is well guarded, well protected, he is a shelter for those who are affected by scruples, confidently

¹ Vin-a.1372: who exalts his own teacher. ² Vin-a.1372, for an offence someone does not know. ³ *byākatā*.

he lives in the midst of an Order, with *Dhamma* he restrains adversaries from one who is well restrained, he is one practising for the stability of True *Dhamma*. These, Upāli, are the five advantages for who has mastery in Discipline.”

BD.6.298

The Second Division: on Not Revoking

ITS SUMMARY

Fallen, as long as,¹ and praise,
unconscientious, and in conflict,
Grandiose, and one who exalts, by force,
for one who has mastery in.

The First Description: by Pairs

DIVISION 3: SPEAKING

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir should a monk not speak in an Order?”

Prv.17.3.1
Vin.5.185

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk should not speak in an Order.² Of what five? If he does not know an offence, if he does not know the origin of an offence, if he does not know the means (used) for an offence,³ if he does not know the removal of an offence, if he is not skilled in discriminating an offence. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he should not speak in an Order.

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he knows an offence ... if he is skilled in discriminating an offence. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he may speak in an Order.

Prv.17.3.2

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a monk should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know a legal question⁴

¹ For *yāya* of text read *yāva*. ² Cf. the different three qualities in the Triads, [Vin.5.122](#).

³ Bodily or verbal, [Vin-a.1372](#). ⁴ Either that it is connected with the 18 matters causing a schism, or with the 4 fallings away, or with the 5 or 7 classes of offence, or with the 4 towards an Order: [Vin-a.1373](#).

... the origin of a legal question ... the means (used) for a legal question¹ ... the removal of a legal question, if he is not skilled in discriminating a legal question. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he knows a legal question ... if he is skilled in discriminating a legal question. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.3.3

BD.6.299

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a monk should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he is a teacher who uses force, if he is a teacher who has not obtained leave, if he is one who reproves not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is one who carries out not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is an expounder not according to right view. If he is possessed of these five qualities ... If he is possessed of five qualities ... Of what five? If he is a teacher who does not use force ... if he is an expounder according to right view. If a monk ...

Prv.17.3.4

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... Of what five? If he does not know what is and what is not an offence, if he does not know a slight and a serious offence, if he does not know an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, if he does not know what is and what is not a very bad offence, if he does not know an offence for which amends are made and one for which amends are not made.² If he is ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... Of what five? If he knows what is and what is not an offence ... If he is ...

Prv.17.3.5

And if ... Upāli, he should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know a formal act, if he does not know the carrying out of a (formal) act, if he does not know the matter for a (formal) act,³ if he does not know the procedure for a (formal) act, if he does not know the removal of a (formal) act. If he is ...

Vin.5.186

If he is possessed ... may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he knows a (formal) act ... If he is ...

Prv.17.3.6

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know the matter, if he does not know

¹ Either that it has 12 means (*payoga*) as roots (or bases), or 14 or 6 or one. ² For words in this paragraph, see Prv.7.1; see also Prv.17.7.4. ³ See Prv.7.2, Vin.5.116.

the source, if he does not know the laying down, if he does not know the order of words (in a sentence),¹ if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words. If he is possessed of these ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he knows the matter ... If he is ...

Prv.17.3.7
BD.6.300

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course through partiality, if he follows a wrong course through hatred if he follows a wrong course through confusion, if he follows a wrong course through fear, and if he is unconscientious. If he is ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course through partiality ... and if he is conscientious. If he is ...

Prv.17.3.8

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course through partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear, and if he is unskilled in the Vinaya.² If he is ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course through partiality ... and if he is skilled in the Vinaya. If he is ...

Prv.17.3.9

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know the motion, if he does not know the carrying out of the motion, if he does not know the proclamation of the motion,³ if he does not know the deciding of the motion,⁴ if he does not know the removal of the motion.⁵ If he is ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may speak in an Order. Of what five? If he knows the motion ... the removal of the motion. If he is ...

Prv.17.3.10

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know the clauses,⁶ if he does not know

¹ Text reads *padapacchābhaṭṭhaṃ*, and Vin-a.1373, more correctly *-paccā-*. Commentary explains that when *buddho bhagavā* should be said he says *bhagavā buddho*. ² Vin-a.1373: if he is unskilled in the Pali Vinaya and the Commentary. ³ Vin-a.1374: whether it is to be made once or three times. ⁴ Vin-a.1374, instances four of the deciding. ⁵ Vin-a.1374: he does not know which legal question is stopped by the fourfold deciding of the motion. ⁶ *sutta*, Cf. Vin.5.158; explained at Vin-a.1374 (also Vin-a.1360) as *ubhatovibhaṅga*.

what is in conformity with the clauses,¹ if he does not know Vinaya,² if he does not know what is in conformity with Vinaya,³ and if he is not skilled in what is and what is not causal occasion. If he is possessed ...

BD.6.301

If he is possessed of five ... Of what five? If he knows the clauses ... and if he is skilled in what is and what is not causal occasion. If he is ...

Prv.17.3.11

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not speak in an Order. Of what five? If he does not know *Dhamma*,⁴ if he does not know what is in conformity with *Dhamma*, if he does not know Vinaya,⁵ if he does not know what is in conformity with Vinaya,⁶ and if he is not skilled in what precedes and what follows.⁷ If he is possessed ...

If he is possessed of five ... Of what five? If he knows *Dhamma* ... and if he is skilled in what precedes and what follows. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk may speak in an Order.”

Vin.5.187

The Third Division: on Speaking

ITS SUMMARY

Offence, legal question,
using force, knowing an offence,
(Formal) act, subject,
and unconscientious, motions,
He does not know the clauses, (nor) *Dhamma*:
the Compendium of the Third Division.

DIVISION 4: EXPLANATIONS OF VIEWS

Prv.17.4.1

“How many explanations of views, revered sir, are not legally valid?”

¹ *suttānuloma*. Vin-a.1374 (also Vin-a.1360) says: if he does not know the four principal authorities, *mahāpadesa*. ² Here called by Vin-a.1374 the Khandhakas and the Parivāra.

³ The Commentary again says the four principal authorities. ⁴ Leaving aside the Vinayapiṭaka, the two remaining Piṭakas. ⁵ Again called the Khandhakas and Parivāra at Vin-a.1374. ⁶ Vin-a.1374 again says the four principal authorities, and adds: The two Vibhaṅgas are not included here, so that when the Kurundiya says “he does not know the whole of the Vinaya-piṭaka”, that should not be accepted. ⁷ Referring to the order of syllables and words. Cf. AN.iii.201.

“These five explanations of views, Upāli, are not legally valid. What five? He explains a view by means of what is not an offence,¹ he explains a view by means of an offence not leading on to confession,² he explains a view by means of an offence that has been confessed,³ he explains a view by means of four, of five⁴ (people), he explains a view by means of a mental action of the mind.⁵ These five explanations of views, Upāli, are not legally valid.

BD.6.302

These five explanations of views, Upāli, are legally valid. What five? He explains a view by means of what is an offence ... by means of an offence leading on to confession ... by means of an offence that has not been confessed ... not by means of four or five (people), he explains a view not by means of a mental action of the mind. These five ... are legally valid.

Prv.17.4.2

And five further explanations of views, Upāli, are not legally valid. What five? He explains a view in the presence of one belonging to a different communion ... in the presence of one standing on a different boundary ... in the presence of one who is not a regular monk⁶ ... by means of four or five (people), he explains a view by means of a mental activity of the mind. These five ...

These five explanations of views, Upāli, are legally valid. What five? He explains a view in the presence of one belonging to the same communion ... in the presence of one standing on the same boundary ... in the presence of one who is a regular monk ... not by means of four or five, he explains a view not by means of a mental activity of the mind. These five explanations of views, Upāli, are legally valid.”

Prv.17.4.3

“How many ways of accepting,⁷ revered sir, are not legally valid?”

“These five ways of accepting,⁸ Upāli, are not legally valid. What five? When something that is being given by means of body is not accepted by means of body, when something that is being given by means of body is not

¹ Vin-a.1374: he shows (or, confesses, *deseti*) that an offence is not an offence. ² Vin-a.1374 He explains it as a serious offence and confesses a Formal Meeting and Defeat. ³ Vin-a.1374 He explains it as a slight offence. ⁴ Vin-a.1375: four or five people confess an offence together. ⁵ *manomānasa*. Vin-a.1375 says he explains the view by means of a mental action (*mānasena*) reckoned as the mind (*manas*). He does not break into speech but confesses the offence by means of thought only. ⁶ He confesses an offence in the presence of one who is suspended or whose Observance and Invitation have been suspended, Vin-a.1375. ⁷ *paṭiggaha* is a formal acceptance. ⁸ Perhaps referring to Bu-Pc.34.

accepted by means of something attached to the body, when something that is being given by means of something attached to the body is not accepted by means of body, when something that is being given by means of something attached to the body is not accepted by means of something attached to the body, when something that is being given by means of what may be cast is not accepted by means of body or of something attached to the body. These are the five ways of accepting, Upāli, that are not legally valid.

BD.6.303

These five ways of accepting, Upāli, are legally valid. What five? When something that is being given by means of body is accepted by means of body ... when something that is being given by means of what may be cast is accepted by means of body or of something attached to the body. These five ways of accepting, Upāli, are legally valid.”

Prv.17.4.4

Vin.5.188

“How many ‘not left overs’¹ are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five ‘not left overs’, Upāli. What five? It is not made allowable, it is not made formally accepted, it is not made delivered, it is not made within a reach of the hand, it is not said ‘All this is enough’. These, Upāli, are the five ‘not left overs’.

These are the five ‘left overs’, Upāli. What five? It is made allowable, it is made formally accepted, it is made delivered, it is made within a reach of the hand, it is said ‘All this is enough’. These, Upāli, are the five ‘left overs’.”

Prv.17.4.5

“In how many ways, revered sir, is satisfaction² to be seen?”³

“Satisfaction is to be seen in five ways, Upāli. In what five? Eating is to be seen, a meal is to be seen, standing within a reach of the hand, he asks him, a refusal is to be seen. In these five ways, Upāli, is satisfaction to be seen.”

Prv.17.4.6

“How many carryings out (of a formal act) on the acknowledgement (of a monk), revered sir, are not legally valid?”

“These five carryings out (of a formal act) on the acknowledgement (of a monk), Upāli, are not legally valid. What five? A monk⁴ comes to have fallen into an offence involving Defeat; while he is being reproved for an offence involving Defeat he claims that he has fallen into an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order; if the Order has him dealt with for an

¹ *anattirittā*, referring to Bu-Pc.35. ² *pavāraṇā*, not Invitation here in the monastic sense, but “having eaten and being satisfied”, *bhuttavī pavārito*, of Bu-Pc.35, Vin.4.82. ³ Similarly here *paññāyati* is not to “lay down”, of a rule. ⁴ See Vin.2.83, which differs somewhat.

offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is not legally valid.

A monk comes to have fallen into an offence involving Defeat; while he is being reprovved for an offence involving Defeat he claims that he has fallen into an offence of Expiation, into an offence to be Confessed, into an offence of wrong-doing; if the Order has him dealt with for an offence of wrong-doing, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is not legally valid.

BD.6.304

A monk comes to have fallen into an offence requiring Formal Meeting of the Order, of Expiation, of one to be Confessed, of wrong-doing; while he is being reprovved for an offence of wrong-doing he claims that he has fallen into an offence involving Defeat; if the Order has him dealt with for an offence involving Defeat, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is not legally valid.

A monk comes to have fallen into an offence of wrong-doing; while he is being reprovved for an offence of wrong-doing he claims that he has fallen into an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, into one of Expiation, into one to be Confessed; if the Order has him dealt with for an offence to be Confessed, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is not legally valid. These, Upāli, are the five carryings out on the acknowledgement (of a monk) that are not legally valid.¹

These five carryings out (of a formal act) on the acknowledgement (of a monk), Upāli, are legally valid. What five? A monk comes to have fallen into an offence involving Defeat; while he is being reprovved for an offence involving Defeat he claims that he has fallen into an offence involving Defeat; if the Order has him dealt with for an offence involving Defeat, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is legally valid. A monk comes to have fallen into an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order, into one of Expiation, into one to be Confessed, into one of wrong-doing; while he is being reprovved for an offence of wrong-doing he claims that he has fallen into an offence of wrong-doing; if the Order has him dealt with for an offence of wrong-doing, the carrying out on (his) acknowledgement is

¹ Apparently only four cases are given here, but five kinds of offence named. [Vin.2.83](#) includes grave offences and those of wrong speech.

legally valid. These ... valid.”

Prv.17.4.7

Vin.5.189

“Possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is it insufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave¹?”

BD.6.305

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is insufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and is ignorant, and not a regular monk, if he speaks intent on quitting,² not intent on rising from (an offence). If he is possessed of these five qualities

...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave. Of what five? If he is conscientious, and wise, and a regular monk, if he speaks intent on rising from, not intent on quitting. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave.”

Prv.17.4.8

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should Discipline not be discussed with him³?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, Discipline should not be discussed with him. Of what five? If he does not know the matter ... the source ... the laying down ... the order of the words (in a sentence), if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words.⁴ If a monk ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, Discipline may be discussed with him. Of what five? If he knows the matter ... If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, Discipline may be discussed with him.”

Prv.17.4.9

“How many kinds of questions and inquiries are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five kinds of questions and inquiries,⁵ Upāli. What five? One asks a question from stupidity, from confusion; one who is of evil desires, filled with covetousness, asks a question⁶; one asks a question from disrespect⁷; one asks a question desiring to know (the proper answer); one asks a question thinking ‘If he answers aright the question asked by me, that is good, if he does not answer aright the question asked by me, I will answer it aright’. These, Upāli, are the five kinds of questions and inquiries.”

Prv.17.4.10

BD.6.306

“How many declarations of profound knowledge are there, revered sir?”

¹ See Vin.5.123. ² *cāvanādhippāya*. Vin-a.1375 explains by *sāsanato cāvetukāmo*, anxious to “fall”, move away from the Dispensation. ³ See Vin.5.123. ⁴ These five qualities are as Prv.17.3.6. ⁵ See AN.iii.191f. ⁶ See Vin.5.131. ⁷ *paribhava*.

“There are these five declarations of profound knowledge,¹ Upāli. What five? One declares profound knowledge from stupidity, from confusion²; one who is of evil desires filled with covetousness³ declares profound knowledge; one declares profound knowledge from madness, from a deranged mind⁴; one declares profound knowledge from an undue estimate of himself⁵; one declares profound knowledge when it is a fact. These, Upāli, are the five declarations of profound knowledge.”

Prv.17.4.11

“How many purifications are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five purifications,⁶ Upāli. Which five? Having recited the provenance ... recital in full is the fifth. These, Upāli, are the five purifications.”

Prv.17.4.12
Vin.5.190

“How many soft foods are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five soft foods, Upāli. What five? Cooked rice, food made with flour, barley-meal, fish, meat.⁷ These Upāli, are the five soft foods.”

The Fourth Division: on Explanations of Views

ITS SUMMARY

Explanations of views, further, acceptings, not left overs,
Satisfaction, on the acknowledgement of,
leave, and discussion with,
Question, declarations of profound knowledge,
and purification too, soft foods.

DIVISION 5: UNDERTAKING ON ONE'S OWN BEHALF

Prv.17.5.1

“When a monk is reproofing, revered sir, and wishes to reprove another, having considered how many states within himself may he reprove the other⁸?”

“When a monk is reproofing, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having considered five states within himself may he reprove the other. What five? Upāli, when a monk is reproofing and wishes to reprove another, he should

¹ *aññabyākaraṇa*, see Vin.3.100 in Bu-Pj.4; and for these five ways see AN.iii.119 where they are spelt *aññāvya-*. ² See Vin.5.131. ³ See Vin.5.131. ⁴ See Vin.5.131. ⁵ As at Vin.3.100; see also MN.ii.252. ⁶ See Vin.5.132-133. ⁷ See Vin.4.83 in Bu-Pc.35. ⁸ See Kd.19.5.1.

consider thus: ‘Now, am I quite pure in bodily conduct ... (as at [Kd.19.5.1](#)) ... When a monk is reproving, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having considered these five states within himself he may reprove the other.’

Prv.17.5.2

BD.6.307

“When a monk is reproving, revered sir, and wishes to reprove another, having set up how many states within himself may he reprove the other?”

“When a monk is reproving, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having set up five states within himself may he reprove the other. What five? ‘I will speak at a right time ... (as at [Kd.19.5.2](#)) ...’ When a monk is reproving, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having set up these five states within himself he may reprove the other.”

Prv.17.5.3

“When a monk is reproving, revered sir, and wishes to reprove another, having attended to how many states within himself may he reprove the other?”

“When a monk is reproving, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having attended to five states within himself may he reprove the other.¹ What five? Compassion, seeking welfare, sympathy, removal of offences, aiming at Discipline.² When a monk is reproving, Upāli, and wishes to reprove another, having attended to these five states within himself he may reprove the other.”

Prv.17.5.4

“Possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is it insufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave?”

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is insufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave. Of what five? If he is not quite pure in bodily conduct,³ if he is not quite pure in verbal conduct, if he is not quite pure in mode of livelihood, if he is ignorant and inexperienced, if when being examined he is not competent to pass the examination. These, Upāli, are the five qualities possessed of which it is insufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave.

Vin.5.191

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave. Of what five? If he is quite pure in bodily conduct⁴ ... in verbal conduct ... in mode of livelihood, if he is clever and experienced, if when being examined he is competent to pass the examina-

¹ Referred to at Vin-a.589. ² See [Kd.19.5.7](#). ³ For this sequence, in other contexts, see [Kd.4.16.5-7](#). ⁴ See [Kd.4.16.10](#).

tion. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to give leave to a monk who is obtaining leave.”

“Revered sir, if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf¹ of how many qualities should the undertaking that he undertakes on his own behalf be possessed?”

Prv.17.5.5
BD.6.308

“Upāli, if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf, the undertaking that he undertakes on his own behalf must be possessed of five qualities. What five? Upāli if a monk wishes to undertake an undertaking on his own behalf he must consider thus: ... (as at [Kd.19.4](#)) ... Thus, Upāli if an undertaking on one’s own behalf is undertaken when it is possessed of these five qualities, later it will be no cause for remorse.”

Prv.17.5.6

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir is he of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions?”

“When a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions. Of what five? He is moral, he lives controlled by the control of the Pātimokkha, he is possessed of (right) behaviour and resort, he is one seeing danger in the slightest faults, (and) undertaking them he trains in the rules of training.² He is one who has heard much, who remembers what he has heard, (and) those things which are lovely in the beginning, lovely in the middle, lovely at the ending which, with the spirit and the letter, declare the Brahma-faring wholly fulfilled, perfectly purified, such things are much heard by him, borne in mind, familiarized by speech, pondered over in the mind, well penetrated by (right) view.³ Both the Pātimokkhas are properly handed down to him in detail, properly sectioned, properly regulated, properly investigated clause by clause and in respect of the linguistic form.⁴ He comes to be firm in Discipline, immovable.⁵ He is competent in convincing both of those who are hostile about a matter, in winning them over, in making them consider, in understanding, in reconciling them.⁶ Upāli, if a monk is possessed of these five qualities he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions.

BD.6.309

Prv.17.5.7

¹ As at [Kd.19.4](#). Referred to at [Vin-a.589](#). ² Stock, as at [Vin.2.95](#), [Vin.4.51](#); [MN.i.355](#). ³ Stock, as at [Vin.2.95](#), [Vin.4.51](#); [MN.i.356](#). ⁴ As at [Vin.2.95](#), etc. Cf. [Vin.5.131](#). ⁵ As at [Vin.2.96](#), there reading *cheko*, clever, for *ṭhito*, firm, steadfast as above. ⁶ As at [Vin.2.96](#).

And, Upāli, if a monk is possessed of five qualities he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions. Of what five? If he is quite pure in bodily conduct ... in verbal conduct ... in mode of livelihood, if he is clever and experienced, if when being examined he is competent to pass the examination. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions.

Prv.17.5.8

And, Upāli, if a monk is possessed of five further qualities he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions. Of what five? If he knows the matter, knows the source, knows the laying down, knows the order of the words (in a sentence), knows the sequence of the connecting words. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he is of great service to monks who are engaged in legal questions.”

Vin.5.192

Prv.17.5.9

Prv.17.5.10

“Revered sir, if a monk is possessed of how many qualities should he not be examined?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he should not be examined. Of what five? If he does not know the clauses, does not know what is in conformity with the clauses, does not know Vinaya, does not know what is in conformity with Vinaya, if he is not skilled in what is and what is not causal occasion.¹ If a monk ... (see Prv.17.3.10, Prv.17.3.11; for might speak, should not speak in an Order *read* could be examined, should not be examined) ... and if he is skilled in what precedes and what follows. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he could be examined.

Prv.17.5.11

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not be examined. Of what five? If he does not know the matter ... the source ... the laying down ... the order of the words (in a sentence), if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words. If he is possessed of these five ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may be examined. Of what five? If he knows the matter ... If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he may be examined.

BD.6.310

Prv.17.5.12

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not be examined. Of what five? If he does know an offence, does not know the origin of an offence does not know the means (used) for an offence,

¹ As above, Vin.5.186.

does not know the removal of an offence, is not skilled in discriminating an offence If a monk is possessed of these five ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may be examined. Of what five? If he knows an offence ... is skilled in discriminating an offence. If a monk is possessed of these five ...

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not be examined. Of what five? If he does not know a legal question, does not know the origin of a legal question, does not know the means (used) for a legal question, does not know the removal of a legal question, is not skilled in discriminating a legal question. If a monk is possessed of these five ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may be examined. Of what five? If he knows a legal question ... is skilled in discriminating a legal question. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he may be examined.”

Prv.17.5.13

The Fifth Division: on Undertaking on one's own Behalf

ITS SUMMARY

And quite pure, at a right time,
compassion, and about leave,
One's own behalf, legal question,
and further, and the matter,
The clauses, *Dhamma*, and matter again,
offence, and about a legal question.

DIVISION 6: ASCETIC PRACTICES

“How many (types of) forest-dwellers are there, revered sir?”

Prv.17.6.1
Vin.5.193

“There are these five (types of) forest-dwellers, Upāli. What five? ...¹ ... of good avail. These, Upāli, are the five (types of) forest-dwellers.”

“How many (types of) almsfood-eaters² are there, revered Sir?” ... “How many (types of) refuse-rag-wearers ... tree-root-dwellers ... charnel-ground-dwellers ... open-air-dwellers ... three-robe-wearers ... house-to-house seekers ... sitters ... users of any bed ... eaters at one session ... refusers of food later ... bowl-food-eaters are there, revered sir?”

Prv.17.6.2
Prv.17.6.3
Prv.17.6.4
Prv.17.6.5
Prv.17.6.6
Prv.17.6.7
Prv.17.6.8
Prv.17.6.9
Prv.17.6.10
Prv.17.6.11
Prv.17.6.12
Prv.17.6.13
BD.6.311

¹ As at Vin.5.131. ² All these are at Vin.5.131.

“There are these five (types of) bowl-food-eaters, Upāli. What five? One is a bowl-food-eater from stupidity ... because this is of good avail. These, Upāli, are the five (types of) bowl-food-eaters.”

The Sixth Division: on Ascetic Practices

ITS SUMMARY

Forest-dweller, almsfood and rags,
tree, and charnel-ground is the fifth,
Open air, and the three robes too,
house-to-house, sitters,
Bed, and one session too,
refusers later, bowl-food-eaters.

DIVISION 7: LYING SPEECH

Prv.17.7.1

“How many (kinds of) lying speech are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five (kinds of) lying speech, Upāli. What five? There is the lying speech leading to an offence involving Defeat,¹ there is the lying speech leading to an offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order,² there is the lying speech leading to a grave offence,³ there is the lying speech leading to Expiation,⁴ there is the lying speech leading to an offence of wrong-doing.⁵ These, Upāli, are the five (kinds of) lying speech.”

Prv.17.7.2

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities,⁶ revered sir, and has suspended an Observance or Invitation in the midst of an Order, (but if other monks) have snubbed him, saying ‘That’s enough, monk, let there be no strife, no quarrel, no dispute, no contention’, may Observance or Invitation be carried out by the Order?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli ... may be carried out by the Order. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and is ignorant, and not a regular monk, if he speaks intent on quitting, if he is not intent on rising from (an offence).⁷

BD.6.312

¹ Bu-Pj.4. “Five offences due to lying speech” are included in the Pentads (towards the beginning), see Vin.5.128. ² Bu-Ss.8. ³ Vin.3.99. ⁴ Bu-Pc.1. ⁵ Vin.3.100f. ⁶ Cf. Vin.5.122. ⁷ For this pentad see Vin.5.189.

If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, ... may be carried out by the Order.

Prv.17.7.3

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli be carried out by the Order. Of what five? If he is not pure in bodily conduct, is not quite pure in verbal conduct is not quite pure in mode of livelihood, is ignorant and inexperienced, is a maker of strife, a maker of quarrels. If monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, ... may be carried out by the Order.”

Vin.5.194

Prv.17.7.4

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir should he not pass an examination?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he should not pass an examination. Of what five? If he does not know what is and what is not an offence, does not know what is a slight and what a serious offence, does not know what is an offence that can be done away with and one that cannot be done away with, does not know what is a very bad offence and what is not, does not know what is an offence for which amends are made and one for which amends are not made. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he should not pass an examination.

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may pass an examination. Of what five? If he knows what is and what is not an offence ... If a monk ... he may pass an examination.”

Prv.17.7.5

“For how many reasons, revered sir, does a monk fall into an offence?”

“For five reasons, Upāli, a monk falls into an offence. For what five? From lack of conscientiousness, from ignorance, from ordinary bad conduct, from (thinking) something is allowable when it is not allowable, from thinking (something) is not allowable when it is allowable.¹ For these five reasons, Upāli, a monk falls into an offence.

Prv.17.7.6

And for five further reasons, Upāli, a monk falls into an offence. For what five? From not seeing,² from not hearing,³ from being sleepy,⁴ from

BD.6.313

¹ On these two last clauses Vin-a.1375f. says that if a scruple has arisen (in him) and he sees a monk who is expert in Discipline and questions him the nature of what is and what is not allowable, then, getting rid of what is not allowable he should do what is allowable.

² Not seeing an expert on Discipline he falls into an offence he would not have fallen into had he seen one. ³ If he goes to an expert on Discipline to attend to his needs and fails to ask him what is and what is not allowable, he falls into an offence from “not hearing”.

⁴ *pasuttakatā*.

thinking that it is so,¹ from confused mindfulness.² For these five reasons, Upāli, a monk falls into an offence.”

Prv.17.7.7

“How many dread (things)³ are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five dread (things), Upāli. What five? Onslaught on creatures, taking what has not been given, going wrongly amid sense-pleasures, lying speech, occasions of sloth (through drinking) fermented liquor, spirits and strong drink. These, Upāli, are the five dread (things).”

Prv.17.7.8

“How many abstentions are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five abstentions,⁴ Upāli. What five? Abstention from onslaught on creatures, abstention from taking what has not been given, abstention from going wrongly amid sense-pleasures, abstention from lying speech, abstention from occasions of sloth (from drinking) fermented liquor, spirits and strong drink. These, Upāli, are the five abstentions.”

Prv.17.7.9

“How many losses are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five losses,⁵ Upāli. What five? Loss of relations, loss of possessions, loss by illness, loss in moral habit, loss in (right) view. These, Upāli, are the five losses.”

Prv.17.7.10

“How many prosperities are there, revered sir?”

“There are these five prosperities, Upāli. What five? Prosperity in relations ... possessions ... health ... moral habit, prosperity in (right) view. These, Upāli, are the five prosperities.”

The Seventh Division: on Lying Speech

ITS SUMMARY

Vin.5.195

Lying speech, and he snubbed,
of a further, and an examination,

BD.6.314

And an offence, of a further,
dreads, and abstentions too,
Loss, and prosperity as well:

the Compendium of the Seventh Division.

¹ *tathāsaññī*, falling through thinking it is allowable when it is not. ² Such as letting one night too many pass by. ³ Cf. AN.iii.204, SN.ii.68. Vera is twofold: *akusala-* and *puggala-vera*.

⁴ Cf. Nuns' *Bi-Pc.63* where a sixth abstention is given. ⁵ See *Vin.5.129*.

DIVISION 8: EXHORTATION OF NUNS

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a formal act be carried out against a monk by the Order of nuns itself?”

Prv.17.8.1

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a monk by the Order of nuns itself—this monk is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns. Of what five? Having exposed his body he shows it to nuns he shows his thigh, he shows his private parts, he shows both shoulders, he offends and quarrels with a householder.¹ If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli ... this monk is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns.

Prv.17.8.2

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli ... this monk is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns. Of what five? If he tries for the non-receiving (of requisites) by nuns, if he tries for non-profiting by nuns,² if he tries for non-residence³ for nuns, if he reviles and abuses nuns, if he causes monks to break with nuns.⁴ If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli ...

Prv.17.8.3

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a monk by the Order of nuns itself—this monk is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns. Of what five? If he tries for the non-receiving (of requisites) by nuns, if he tries for non-profiting by nuns, if he tries for non-residence for nuns, if he reviles and abuses nuns, if he makes monks quarrel with nuns. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli ... this monk is not to be greeted by the Order of nuns.”

Prv.17.8.4

“If she is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a formal act be carried out against a nun?”

BD.6.315

“If she is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a nun. Of what five? Having exposed her body she shows it to monks, she shows her thigh, she shows her private parts, she shows both

¹ The last clause reads *obhāsati gihī sampayojetī* which is somewhat meaningless. At the parallel passage at [Kd.20.9.1](#) the reading is the more intelligible *bhikkhuniyo obhāsanti bhikkhunihi saddhiṃ sampayojetī*, they offend nuns, they quarrel (or, associate) together with nuns.

² Finding fault with them, [Vin-a.1376](#). ³ Trying to drive them out of the “village-field” where they are staying. ⁴ Parallel passages at [Vin.1.84](#), [Vin.2.125](#) (about monks), [Vin.2.18](#) (about householders).

shoulders, she offends and quarrels with a householder. If she is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli ...

Prv.17.8.5

And if she is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a nun. Of what five? If she tries for the non-receiving (of requisites) by monks, if she tries for non-profiting by monks, if she tries for non-residence by monks, if she reviles and abuses monks, if she causes nuns to break with monks. If she is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli

Prv.17.8.6 ...

And if she is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a nun. Of what five? If she tries for the non-receiving (of requisites) by monks, if she tries for non-profiting by monks, if she tries for non-residence by monks, if she reviles and abuses monks, if she makes nuns quarrel with monks. If she is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a formal act should be carried out against a nun.”

Vin.5.196

Prv.17.8.7

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should he not suspend exhortation for nuns?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities ... for nuns. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and ignorant, and not a regular monk, and if he is one who talks intent on quitting, not intent on removal. If a monk ...

Prv.17.8.8

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... for nuns. Of what five? If he is not quite pure in bodily conduct, if he is not quite pure in verbal conduct, if he is not quite pure in mode of living, if he is ignorant and inexperienced, if on being examined he is not competent to pass an examination. If a monk ...

Prv.17.8.9

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli ... for nuns. Of what five? If he is possessed of bad bodily conduct, if he is possessed of bad verbal conduct, if he is possessed of bad bodily and verbal conduct, if he is one who reviles and abuses nuns, if he lives in company with nuns, in unbecoming association. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.8.10

BD.6.316

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not suspend exhortation for nuns. Of what five? if is unconscientious, and ignorant, and not a regular monk, and if he is a maker of strife, a maker of quarrels, and is not who has fulfilled the training. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities ... ”

Prv.17.8.11

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should he not accept exhortation of nuns?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities ... of nuns? Of what five? If he is possessed of bad bodily conduct, if he is possessed of bad verbal conduct, if he is possessed of bad bodily and verbal conduct, if he is one who reviles and abuses nuns, if he lives in company with nuns, in unbecoming association. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.8.12

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... of nuns. Of what five? If he is unconscientious, and is ignorant, and is not a regular monk, or if he is setting out on a journey, or if he is ill.¹ If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he should not accept exhortation of nuns.”

Prv.17.8.13

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should he not converse with a nun?”

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he should not converse with a nun. Of what five? If he is not possessed of an adept’s body of moral conduct, if he is not possessed of an adept’s body of concentration ... body of wisdom ... body of freedom ... if he is not possessed of an adept’s body of the knowledge and vision of freedom. If a monk is possessed ...

Vin.5.197

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may converse with a nun. Of what five? If he is possessed of an adept’s body of moral conduct ... If he is possessed of these five ...

Prv.17.8.14

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, he should not converse with a nun. Of what five? If he has not attained to the analytical insight of meanings, if he has not attained to the analytical insight of *Dhamma*, if he has not attained to the analytical insight of language, if he has not attained to the analytical insight of perspicuity,² if he is not one who reviews the mind according to freedom.³ If he is possessed of these five ...

BD.6.317

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, he may converse with a nun. Of what five? If he has attained to the analytical insight of meanings ... if he is one who reviews the mind according to freedom. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, he may converse with (a nun).”

¹ See Kd.20.9.5. ² These four *paṭisambhidā* (*attha*, *dhamma*, *nirutti*, *paṭibhāna*) are given at AN.ii.160, AN.iii.113, etc.; also Mi.22. ³ Vin-a.1377 speaks of the four fruits of freedom.

*The Eighth Division: on Exhortation of Nuns***ITS SUMMARY**

Should be carried out by the nuns themselves,
likewise two further,
Three formal acts for nuns,
two dyads on he should not suspend,
Twice he should not accept is spoken of,
and two dyads on conversings.

DIVISION 9: REFERENDUM

Prv.17.9.1

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, should a monk not be agreed upon for a referendum¹?”

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is not skilled in meanings,² if he is not skilled in *Dhamma*,³ if he is not skilled in language, if he is not skilled in syllables, if he is not skilled in what precedes and what follows. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk should not be agreed upon for a referendum.

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is skilled in meanings ... If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk may be agreed upon for a referendum.

Prv.17.9.2

BD.6.318

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, a monk should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is angry, overcome by anger, if he is harsh, overcome by harshness, if he is unmerciful, overcome by unmercifulness, if he is envious, overcome by envy, if he is infected by wordliness, grasping it tightly, not letting go of it easily.⁴ If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is not angry overcome by anger ... if

¹ See [Vin.2.95ff.](#), where if a monk has ten qualities, quite different from those given here, he may or may not be agreed upon. These are no doubt the qualities referred to at [Vin.5.139](#) and [AN.v.71](#). ² [Vin-a.1376](#) (on 8, 14) and [Vin-a.1377](#) takes this to mean skilled in the *aṭṭhakathā*, the Commentaries. ³ [Vin-a.1376](#) calls this *pāḷi*, the text. If he has not learnt it from a teacher he is not *pāḷisūra*. ⁴ Cf. [Vin.2.89](#).

he is not envious, overcome by envy, if he is not infected by worldliness, not grasping it tightly, letting go of it easily. If he is possessed of these five qualities.

Prv.17.9.3

Vin.5.198

If he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is agitated,¹ if he is malevolent, if he offers resistance, if he causes anger, if he is intractable, if he is incapable of being instructed.² If he is possessed of these five qualities ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is not agitated, if he is not malevolent ... if he is tractable and is capable of being instructed. If he is possessed of these five qualities ...

Prv.17.9.4

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is one who confuses the mind and does not make remember,³ if he is a teacher who has not obtained leave, if he is one who reproves not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is one who carries out not according to *Dhamma*, not according to Discipline, not according to the offence, if he is an expounder not in accordance with right view.⁴ If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he is one who makes remember and does not confuse the mind, if he is a teacher who has obtained leave, if he reproves according to *Dhamma* ... if he carries out according to *Dhamma* ... if he is an expounder in accordance with right view. If he is possessed of these five ...

BD.6.319

Prv.17.9.5

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality, if he follows a wrong course from hatred ... confusion ... fear, and if he is unconscientious. If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ...

¹ *kuppati*, or angry. ² Last clause also at [Vin.3.178](#). ³ *pasāretā hoti no sāretā*, explained at [Vin-a.1377](#) by *mo hetā hoti na satiuppādetā*, he is one causing confusion and not one who arouses mindfulness. The Commentary adds that he confuses the talk of reprovers and reproved, and does not make (the reproved monk) remember. ⁴ As at [Vin.5.184](#).

and if he is conscientious. If he is possessed of these five ...

Prv.17.9.6

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... should not be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear, and if he is not skilled in Vinaya. If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk may be agreed upon for a referendum. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... and if he is skilled in Vinaya. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk may be agreed upon for a referendum.”

Prv.17.9.7

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is a monk reckoned as ignorant?”

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk is reckoned as ignorant. Of what five? If he does not know the clauses, if he does not know what is in conformity with the clauses, if he does not know Vinaya, if he does not know what is in conformity with Vinaya, and if he is not skilled in what is and what is not causal occasion.¹ If he is possessed ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a monk is reckoned as learned. Of what five? If he knows the clauses ... and if he is skilled in what is and what is not causal occasion. If he is possessed of these five ...

Prv.17.9.8

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... is reckoned as ignorant. Of what five? If he does not know the rules,² if he does not know what is in conformity with the rules he does not know Vinaya, if he does not know what is in conformity with Vinaya, and if he is not skilled in what precedes and what follows. If he is possessed of these five ...

BD.6.320

Vin.5.199

If he is possessed of five qualities ... reckoned as learned. Of what five? If he knows the rules ... and if he is skilled in what precedes and what follows. If he is possessed of the five ...

Prv.17.9.9

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... reckoned as ignorant. Of what five? If he does not know the matter the source ... the laying down ... the order of the words (in a sentence), if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words.³ If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five ... reckoned as learned. Of what five? If he knows the matter ... If he is possessed of these five ...

Prv.17.9.10

¹ See [Vin.5.186](#), [BD.6.192](#). ² *dhamma*. ³ As at [Vin.5.192](#).

And if he is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli ... reckoned as ignorant. Of what five? If he does not know an offence, if he does not know the origin of an offence, if he does not know the means (used) for an offence, if he does not know the removal of an offence, if he is not skilled in discriminating an offence.¹ If he is possessed of these ...

If he is possessed of five qualities ... reckoned as learned. Of what five? If he knows an offence ... if he is skilled in discriminating an offence. If he is possessed of these five ...

Prv.17.9.11

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... reckoned as ignorant. Of what five? If he does not know a legal question, if he does not know the origin of a legal question, if he does not know the means (used) for a legal question, if he does not know the removal of a legal question, if he is not skilled in discriminating a legal question.² If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk is reckoned as ignorant.

If he is possessed of five qualities ... reckoned as learned. Of what five? If he knows a legal question ... if he is skilled in discriminating a legal question. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a monk is reckoned as learned.”

Concluded is the Ninth Division: on a Referendum

ITS SUMMARY

And also not skilled in meanings,
angry, and who is agitated,
One who confuses the mind,
wrong course from partiality,
and likewise not skilled,
Clauses, and rules, and matter,
offence, legal question:
Two by two all is made clear:
know well the dark and the bright.

DIVISION 10: SETTLING LEGAL QUESTIONS

“If a monk is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is it insufficient to settle a legal question?”

Prv.17.10.1

“If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not know an offence ... (see Prv.17.9.10) ... If he is possessed of these five ...

Vin.5.200

If a monk is possessed of five ... it is sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he knows an offence ... If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.2

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not know a legal question ... (see Prv.17.9.11) ... If he is possessed of these five ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities ... sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he knows a legal question ... If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.3

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... and if he is unconscientious. If he is possessed of these ...

If a monk is possessed of five ... it is sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... and if he is conscientious. If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.4

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... and if he has heard little. If he is possessed of these ...

BD.6.322

If a monk is possessed of five ... sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... and if he has heard much. If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.5

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not know the matter ... (see Prv.17.9.9) ... if he does not know the sequence of the connecting words. If he is possessed of these ...

If a monk is possessed of five ... sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he knows the matter ... If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.6

¹ As at Vin.5.192. ² As at Vin.5.192.

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... (see Prv.17.9.6) ... and if he is not skilled in Vinaya. If he is possessed of these ...

If a monk is possessed of five ... sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... and if he is skilled in Vinaya. If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.7

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities ... insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... if he esteems an individual¹ and does not esteem the Order. If he is possessed of these ...

Vin.5.201

If a monk is possessed of five ... sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... if he esteems the Order² and does not esteem an individual. If he is possessed of these ...

Prv.17.10.8

And if a monk is possessed of five further qualities, Upāli, it is insufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... if he esteems worldly things³ and does not esteem true *Dhamma*.⁴ If he is possessed of these five ...

If a monk is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to settle a legal question. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... if he esteems true *Dhamma* and does not esteem worldly things. If a monk is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, it is sufficient to settle a legal question.”

BD.6.323

Prv.17.10.9

“In how many ways, revered sir, is an Order split?”

“In five ways, Upāli, is an Order split. In what five? By a formal act,⁵ by a recitation,⁶ by talking,⁷ by proclamation,⁸ by offering a voting ticket.⁹ These, Upāli, are the five ways in which an Order is split.”

Prv.17.10.10

¹ His preceptor or teacher; desiring their victory he explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma*.

² He gives up *Dhamma* and Vinaya, and esteems the Order only. ³ Such as robes, which he decides to take. ⁴ Deciding according to the rule (or *Dhamma*) and not taking robes, etc., is called respect for *saddhamma* (True *Dhamma*). ⁵ Vin-a.1377 says “by one of the four formal acts for which leave should be asked”. Four formal acts are mentioned at Vin.5.167. See Vin.2.89. ⁶ By one of the five ways of recital of the Pātimokkha, Vin-a.1377. ⁷ Talking on the 18 points given at Vin.2.204. ⁸ See Vin.2.203. ⁹ See Vin.2.203.

“Revered sir, as to the words: Dissension in an Order, dissension in an Order—to what extent, revered sir, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order? And to what extent is there dissension in an Order as well as schism in an Order?”¹

“This observance for incoming monks, Upāli, was laid down by me for incoming monks.² The rules of training having been properly laid down by me thus, Upāli, if incoming monks do not observe the observance for incoming (monks)—thus, Upāli, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order. This observance for resident (monks), Upāli, was laid down by me for resident monks.³ The rules of training having been properly laid down by me thus, Upāli, if resident monks do not observe the observance for resident (monks)—thus, Upāli, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order.

This observance for a refectory, Upāli, was laid down by me for monks in respect of a refectory⁴: the best seat, the best water (for washing), the best alms⁵ according to seniority,⁶ according to (the time of) night,⁷ according as it is befitting. The rules of training having been properly laid down by me thus, Upāli, if newly ordained monks reserve a seat in the refectory for monks who are Elders⁸—thus, Upāli, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order.

BD.6.324

This observance in respect of lodgings,⁹ Upāli, was laid down by me for monks in respect of lodgings according to seniority according to (the time of) night, according as it is befitting. The rules of training having been properly laid down by me thus, Upāli, if newly ordained monks reserve lodgings for monks who are Elders—thus, Upāli, is there dissension in an Order but not schism in an Order.

This was laid down by me, Upāli, for monks inside a boundary: one Observance,¹⁰ one Invitation,¹¹ one formal act of the Order, one set of formal acts.¹² The rules of training having been properly laid down by me thus,

¹ See [Vin.2.203](#). ² Vin-a.1378 refers us to the Vattakkhandhaka, see [Kd.18.1](#). It also points out that a dissension can grow into a schism. ³ [Kd.18.2](#). ⁴ [Kd.18.4](#). ⁵ Best seat, water, alms spoken of at [Vin.2.161f](#). ⁶ See [Vin.2.162](#). ⁷ *yathāraṭṭam*, explained at Vin-a.1378 as *rattiparimāṇānurūpaṃ*, conformably to the measurement of the night. ⁸ [Kd.16.10.1](#). ⁹ [Vin.2.218](#). ¹⁰ [Kd.2.6.2](#). ¹¹ [Kd.4.13.14](#). ¹² *kammākamma*, large and small ones, Vin-a.1378.

Upāli, if, having made a separate arrangement just there inside a boundary and having split off a group, they carry out a separate Observance and carry out a separate Invitation and carry out a separate formal act of the Order and carry out a separate set of formal acts—thus, Upāli, is there dissension in an Order as well as schism in an Order.”¹

Vin.5.202

Concluded is the Tenth Division: on Settling Legal Questions

ITS SUMMARY

Offence, legal question, partiality,
and one who has heard little,
And matter, and unskilled,
individual, and on worldly things,
Is split, both dissension in an Order,
and so too schism in an Order.

DIVISION 11: A SCHISMATIC IN THE ORDER

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is a schismatic in the Order doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, staying there for an aeon, incurable²?”

Prv.17.11.1

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma*, he explains *Dhamma* as non-*dhamma* ... non-discipline as Discipline, ... Discipline as non-discipline³ and he is one misrepresenting view as to formal act.⁴ If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli ... incurable.

BD.6.325

Prv.17.11.2

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and he is one misrepresenting view as to recitation. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.11.3

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and he is one who, talking, misrepresents view. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.11.4

¹ Kd.17.5.2. ² As at Vin.2.202. ³ Vin.2.204ff. ⁴ For this and the next four misrepresentations see above, Prv.17.10.9.

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and he is one misrepresenting view by speaking out. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.11.5

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and he is one misrepresenting view by offering a voting-ticket. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.11.6

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and is one misrepresenting approval¹ as to a formal act ... as to the recitation ... (by) talking ... by proclamation ... by offering a voting ticket. If he is possessed

Prv.17.11.7

...
And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and is one misrepresenting pleasure² as to a formal act ... by offering a voting ticket. If he is possessed ...

Prv.17.11.8

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... and is one misrepresenting intention³ as to a formal act, is one misrepresenting intention as to the recitation, is one misrepresenting intention (by) talking, is one misrepresenting intention by speaking out, is one misrepresenting intention by offering a voting ticket. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a schismatic in the Order is doomed to the Downfall, to Niraya Hell, staying there for an aeon, incurable.”

Vin.5.203

BD.6.326

Concluded is the Eleventh Division: on a Schismatic in the Order

ITS SUMMARY

Misrepresenting view as to formal act,
as to recitation and (by) talking,
By speaking out, by a voting-ticket:
these five are dependent on view.
Approval, and pleasure, and intention:
these three contexts are fivefold.

¹ Cf. Vin.4.2f. ² Cf. Vin.4.2f. ³ Cf. Vin.4.2f.

DIVISION 12: A SECOND SCHISMATIC IN THE ORDER

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is a schismatic in the Order not doomed to the Downfall, not (doomed) to Niraya Hell, not staying there for an aeon, not incurable?¹”

Prv.17.12.1

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, ... not incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma*, he explains *Dhamma* as non-*dhamma*, he explains non-discipline as Discipline, he explains Discipline as non-discipline, but is not one misrepresenting view as to a formal act. If he is possessed of these five qualities ... not incurable.

Prv.17.12.2

And if he is possessed of five further qualities ... not incurable. Of what five? As to this, Upāli, a monk explains non-*dhamma* as *Dhamma* ... misrepresenting view as to recitation ... misrepresenting intention by offering a voting ticket. If he is possessed of these five qualities, Upāli, a schismatic in the Order is not doomed to the Downfall, not (doomed) to Niraya Hell, not staying there for an aeon, not incurable.”

Prv.17.12.3

Prv.17.12.4

Prv.17.12.5

Prv.17.12.6

Prv.17.12.7

Prv.17.12.8

Concluded is the Twelfth Division: on a Second Schismatic in the Order

ITS SUMMARY

Not misrepresenting view as to formal act,
as to recitation, and by talking,

By speaking out, by a voting ticket:
these five are dependent on view.

Approval, and pleasure, and intention:
these three contexts are fivefold. /

BD.6.327

As above are twenty forms exactly on the dark side,
You must know likewise the twenty exactly on the bright side.

DIVISION 13: RESIDENT

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is a resident monk consigned to Niraya Hell just as a burden is set aside?²”

Prv.17.13.1

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a resident monk is consigned to Niraya Hell just as a burden is set aside. Of what five? If he follows a

¹ Vin.2.205. ² See *Middle Length Sayings* i.96 for further references. Vin-a.1379 explains as *yathā āharitvā ṭhapito*.

Vin.5.204 wrong course from partiality, if he follows a wrong course from hatred, if he follows a wrong course from confusion, if he follows a wrong course from fear, if he makes use of something belonging to an Order, belonging to an individual. If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a resident monk is consigned to heaven just as a burden is set aside. Of what five? If he does not follow a wrong course from partiality ... if he does not make use of something belonging to an Order, belonging to an individual. If he is possessed of these five ... consigned to heaven ... ”

Prv.17.13.2

“How many expositions of Vinaya are there, revered sir, that are not legally valid?”

“These five expositions of Vinaya, Upāli, are not legally valid. What five? As to this, Upāli, a monk speaks¹ saying non-*dhamma* is *Dhamma*, he speaks saying *Dhamma* is non-*dhamma*, he speaks saying non-Vinaya is Vinaya, he speaks saying Vinaya is non-Vinaya, he lays down what has not been laid down and abrogates what has been laid down.² These five expositions of Vinaya, Upāli, are not legally valid.

These five expositions of Vinaya, Upāli, are legally valid. What five? As to this, Upāli, a monk speaks saying non-*dhamma* is non-*dhamma* ... he speaks saying Vinaya is Vinaya, he does not lay down what has not been laid down and does not abrogate what has been laid down. These five expositions of Vinaya, Upāli, are legally valid.”

BD.6.328

Prv.17.13.3

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is an issuer of meals³ consigned to Niraya Hell just as a burden is set aside?”

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, an issuer of meals is consigned to Niraya Hell just as a burden is set aside. Of what five? If he follows a wrong course from partiality ... hatred ... confusion ... fear, if he does not know what has been issued and what has not been issued. If he is possessed of these five ...

If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, an issuer of meals is consigned to heaven just as a burden is set aside. Of what five? If he does not follow a

¹ *pariṇāmeti*, also meaning to bend round, to twist; but this would not fit the following pentad. Vin-a.1379 says *niyāmeti katheti*. ² Cf. Vin.1.354, Vin.2.88, Vin.2.204; for the last dyad see DN.ii.74. ³ See Kd.16.21 on this and the following officers and their qualities.

wrong course from partiality fear, if he knows what has been issued and what has not been issued. If he is possessed of these five ... consigned to heaven ...”

“If he is possessed of how many qualities, revered sir, is an assigner of lodgings ... a store-room keeper ... an acceptor of robes ... a distributor of robe-material ... a distributor of conjeý ... a distributor of fruit ... a distributor of solid food ... a disposer of trifles ... an acceptor of outer cloaks ... an acceptor of bowls ... a superintendent of monastery attendants ... a superintendent of novices consigned to Niraya Hell just as a burden is set aside?”

Prv.17.13.4
Prv.17.13.5
Prv.17.13.6
Prv.17.13.7
Prv.17.13.8
Prv.17.13.9
Prv.17.13.10
Prv.17.13.11
Prv.17.13.12
Prv.17.13.13
Prv.17.13.14
Prv.17.13.15

“If he is possessed of five qualities, Upāli, a superintendent of novices ... (see Prv.17.13.3; instead of what has been issued and what has not been issued read who has been superintended and who has not been superintended) ... consigned to Niraya Hell ... consigned to heaven just as a burden is set aside.”

Concluded is the Thirteenth Division: on Resident (Monk)

ITS SUMMARY

Resident, expositions,
issuer of meals, and lodgings,
Store-room, and acceptor of robes,
and distributor of robe-material, /
Conjeý, fruit, and solid food,
trifles, acceptor of outer cloaks,
Bowls, and monastery attendants too,
superintendent for a novice.

Vin.5.205

BD.6.329

DIVISION 14: THE FORMAL MAKING OF KAṬHINA CLOTH

“How many advantages are there, revered sir, in formally making *kaṭhina* cloth?”

Prv.17.14.1

“There are these five advantages, Upāli, in formally making *kaṭhina* cloth. What five? Going (to families for alms) without having asked for permission, walking (for alms) not taking the three robes, a group-meal, as much robe-material as is required, and whatever robe-material accrues there,

that will be for them.¹ These, Upāli, are the five advantages in formally making the *kaṭhina* cloth.”

Prv.17.14.2

“How many perils are there, revered sir, for one of muddled mindfulness, not clearly conscious, when he has fallen asleep?”

“There are these five perils, Upāli, for one of muddled mindfulness ... when he has fallen asleep. What five? He sleeps uneasily, he wakes uneasily, he sees an evil dream, *devatās* do not guard him, impurity is emitted.² These are the five perils ... when he has fallen asleep.

“There are these five advantages, Upāli, for one of raised up mindfulness, who is clearly conscious, when he has fallen asleep. What five? He sleeps easily, he wakes easily, he does not see an evil dream, *devatās* guard him, impurity is not emitted. These are the five advantages ... when he has fallen asleep.”

Prv.17.14.3

“How many, revered sir, are not to be greeted?”

“These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.³ Which five? One who has entered amid the houses is not to be greeted, one who is on a carriage-road is not to be greeted, one who is in the (partial) darkness⁴ is not to be greeted, one who is not considering⁵ (his duties) is not to be greeted, one who is asleep is not to be greeted. These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.

Prv.17.14.4

“And a further five, Upāli, are not to be greeted. Which five? One who is drinking conje is not to be greeted, one in arefctory ... one who has turned away alone⁶ ... one who is thinking about something else⁷ ... one who is naked is not t be greeted. These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.

BD.6.330

Prv.17.14.5

“And a further five, Upāli, are not to be greeted. Which five? One who is eating solid food is not to be greeted, one who is eating soft food ... one who

¹ As at [Vin.1.154](#) where these are called five things that are allowable. ² As at [Vin.1.295](#).

³ See [Prv.7.10.1](#) above (towards end at item 37) and [Prv.7.11.1](#) (towards middle at item 15) where ten individuals and eleven individuals are not to be greeted. ⁴ *otamasika*, not in *Pali-English Dictionary*. No other canonical reference given by P.T.C. [Vin-a.1379](#) explains by *andhakāragato*, and adds that in greeting him the forehead might be hurt by the legs of a couch. ⁵ *kiccayapasutattā vandanam asamannāharanto*, not attending to, not reacting to the greeting because he is not performing his obligations. ⁶ *ekāvatta*: to a rival faction. Greeting him, one might get kicked, [Vin-a.1379](#). ⁷ *aññāvihita*, as at [Vin.4.69](#), [Vin.4.97](#), [Vin.4.269](#).

is defecating ... one who is urinating ... one who is suspended¹ is not to be greeted. These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.

Prv.17.14.6

“And a further five, Upāli, are not to be greeted. Which five? One ordained later is not to be greeted by one ordained earlier,² one not ordained is not to be greeted, one belonging to a different communion (even) if he is more senior (yet) is a speaker of non-*dhamma* is not to be greeted, a woman is not to be greeted a eunuch is not to be greeted. These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.

Prv.17.14.7

“And a further five, Upāli, are not to be greeted. Which five? One under probation³ is not to be greeted, one who deserves to be sent back to the beginning⁴ ... one who deserves *mānatta* ... one undergoing *mānatta* ... one who deserves rehabilitation is not to be greeted. These five, Upāli, are not to be greeted.”

Prv.17.14.8

“How many, revered sir, are to be greeted?”

Vin.5.206

“These five, Upāli, are to be greeted. Which five?⁵ One ordained earlier is to be greeted by one ordained later, one belonging to a different communion if he is more senior and is a speaker of *Dhamma* is to be greeted, a teacher is to be greeted,⁶ a preceptor is to be greeted, a Tathāgata, arahant, perfect Buddha is to be greeted by the world with its devas, with its Māras, with its Brahmās, by creatures with recluses and brahmins, with devas and mankind. These five, Upāli, are to be greeted.”

Prv.17.14.9

“If a more newly ordained monk, revered sir, is honouring⁷ the feet of a more senior monk, when he has caused how many states to be set up within himself should he honour the feet?”

BD.6.331

“If a more newly ordained monk, Upāli, is honouring the feet of a more senior monk, having caused five states to be set up within himself he should honour the feet. What five? When a more newly ordained monk, Upāli, is honouring the feet of a more senior monk, having arranged his outer cloak

¹ “Suspended by the threefold formal act of suspension. Those against whom the other four formal acts have been carried out may be greeted. There is an offence in greeting one who is naked (see [Kd.15.15](#)) and one who is suspended,” Vin-a.1379. ² This pentad and the next occur at [Kd.16.6.5](#). ³ see [Kd.12.1.2](#). ⁴ See [Kd.13.15](#). ⁵ The first, second and fifth are given at [Kd.16.6.5](#). ⁶ Vin-a.1379 says these five teachers are to be greeted: the teacher forgoing forth, for ordination, for guidance, for the recitation, and for exhortation. ⁷ Same Pali word as for “greeting”.

over one shoulder, holding out his joined palms in salutation, stroking his feet on all sides with the palms of his hands, having caused regard and esteem to be set up, he should honour his feet. When a more newly ordained monk, Upāli, is honouring the feet of a more senior monk, having caused these five states to be set up within himself, he should honour his feet.”

Concluded is the Fourteenth Division: on the Formal Making of Kaṭhina Cloth

ITS SUMMARY

Formal making of kaṭhina cloth,
and asleep, amid, conje, when eating,
And earlier, and one under probation,
one to be greeted, one who should honour.

Concluded are the Upāli-Pentads

THE SUMMARY OF THESE DIVISIONS

Independently, and (formal) act,
remain, and as to an explanation,
And reproof, and ascetic practices,
lying, and to a nun also, /
Referendum, legal question, schismatics,
the fifth in the preceding,¹
Resident (monks), and kaṭhina cloth:
the fourteen are well proclaimed. /

¹ *bhedakā pañcamā pure*, referring no doubt to the two sections ([Prv.17.11](#), [Prv.17.12](#)) on a schismatic where the fifth clauses of each pentad are opposed to one another. Oldenberg gives no comma after *bhedakā* and thus accounts for 13 Divisions only.

18. ORIGIN

There is the offence one falls into unconscious (that it is against ordinance), rises from conscious (that it is against ordinance¹); there is the offence one falls into conscious rises from unconscious ...; there is the offence one falls into unconscious ... rises from unconscious ...; there is the offence one falls into conscious ... rises from conscious² (that it is against ordinance). There is the offence one of skilled mind falls into,³ one of skilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of skilled mind falls into, one of unskilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of skilled mind falls into, one of indeterminate mind rises from; there is the offence one of unskilled mind falls into, one of skilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of unskilled mind falls into, one of unskilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of unskilled mind falls into, one of indeterminate mind rises from; there is the offence one of indeterminate mind falls into,⁴ one of skilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of indeterminate mind falls into, one of unskilled mind rises from; there is the offence one of indeterminate mind falls into, one of indeterminate mind rises from.

Prv.18.1.1
BD.6.332
Vin.5.207

PĀRĀJIKA

From how many origins originates the first offence involving Defeat? The first offence involving Defeat originates from one origin: from body and

Prv.18.1.2

¹ Vin-a.1380 “Beginning with lying down together, falling unintentionally into a fault against ordinance (*paṇṇattivajja*), he falls (into it) unconscious (of its nature). Confessing, he rises from it conscious (of its nature).” Rising from seems to be effected by means of “the covering over (as) with grass”—Cf. Vin-a.1329. ² As at Vin.5.125. ³ As at Vin.5.120.

⁴ As at Vin.5.125.

mind, not from speech.¹From how many origins originates the second offence involving Defeat? ... from three origins²: it may be that it originates from body and mind, not from speech; it may be that it originates from speech and mind, not from body; it may be that it originates from body and speech and mind. From how many origins originates the third offence involving Defeat? ... from three origins³: it may be that it originates from body and mind, not from speech; it may be that it originates from speech and mind, not from body; it may be that it originates from body and speech and mind. From how many origins originates the fourth offence involving Defeat? ... from three origins⁴: it may be that it originates from body and mind, not from speech; it may be that it originates from speech and mind, not from body; it may be that it originates from body and speech and mind.

Concluded are the four Offences involving Defeat

SANĠHĀDISESA

Prv.18.2

From how many origins originates the offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for emitting impurity using (the hand)? It originates from one origin: from body and mind, not from speech. From how many ... for coming into physical contact with a woman? ... from one origin: from body and mind, not from speech. From how many ... for offending a woman with lewd words? ... from three origins: it may originate from body and mind, not from speech; it may originate from speech and mind, not from body; it may originate from body and speech and mind. From how many ... for speaking in praise of ministering to sense-pleasures for oneself in the presence of women? ... from three origins: (*as above*) ... From how many ... for acting as a go-between? ... from six origins: it may originate from body, not from speech, not from mind; it may originate from speech, not from body, not from mind; it may originate from body and speech, not from mind; it may originate from body and mind, not from speech; it may originate from speech and mind, not from body; it may originate from body

Vin.5.208

¹ Cf. Vin.5.86f. ² Cf. Vin.5.87. ³ Cf. Vin.5.87. ⁴ Cf. Vin.5.87.

and speech and mind. From how many ... for begging for oneself for having a hut built? ... from six origins (*as above*) ... From how many ... for having a large *vihāra* built? ... from six origins ... From how many ... for defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat? ... from three origins ... From how many ... for defaming a monk with a charge of an offence involving Defeat, taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else? ... from three origins ... From how many ... for a schismatic monk who on being admonished up to the third time does not give up (his course)? ... from one origin: it originates from body and speech and mind. From how many ... for monks who are imitators of schismatics and on being admonished up to the third time do not give up (their course)? ... from one origin: it originates from body and speech and mind. From how many ... for a monk who is difficult to speak to and on being admonished up to the third time does not give up (his course)? ... from one origin: it originates from body and speech and mind. From how many origins originates the offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order for a monk who brings a family into disrepute and on being admonished up to the third time does not give up (his course)? It originates from one origin: it originates from body and speech and mind.

BD.6.334

Concluded are the Thirteen Offences entailing a Formal Meeting of the Order

SEKHIYA

... From how many origins originates the offence of wrong-doing for relieving oneself or spitting in water, out of disrespect? The offence of wrong-doing for ... out of disrespect originates from one origin: it originates from body and mind, not from speech.

Prv.18.3

Concluded are the Sekhiyas

PĀRĀJIKA

From how many origins originate the four offences involving Defeat? The four offences involving Defeat originate from three origins: they may origi-

Prv.18.4

nate from body and mind, not from speech; they may originate from speech and mind, not from body; they may originate from body and speech and mind.

SAṄGHĀDISESA

Prv.18.5

Vin.5.209

From how many ... the thirteen offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order? ... originate from six origins: they may originate from body, not from speech, not from mind; they ... (see Prv.18.2.1) ... may originate from body and speech and mind.

ANİYATA

Prv.18.6

From how many ... the two Undetermined offences? ... originate from three origins: they may originate from body and mind, not from speech; they may originate from speech and mind, not from body; they may originate from body and speech and mind.

NISSAGGIYA PĀCITTIYA

Prv.18.1.7

BD.6.335

From how many ... the thirty offences of Forfeiture? ...originate from six origins: they may originate from body, not from speech, not from mind ... they may originate from body and speech and mind.

PĀCITTIYA

Prv.18.8

From how many ... the ninety-two offences of Expiation? ... originate from six origins: they may originate from body, not from speech, not from mind ... they may originate from body and speech and mind.

PĀTIDESANĪYA

Prv.18.9

From how many ... the four offences to be Confessed? ... originate from four origins: they may originate from body, not from speech, not from mind; they may originate from body and speech, not from mind; they may originate from body and mind, not from speech; they may originate from body and speech and mind.

SEKHIYA

Prv.18.10

From how many origins originate the seventy-five *Sekhiyas*? The seventy-five *Sekhiyas* originate from three origins: they may originate from body and mind, not from speech; they may originate from speech and mind, not from body; they may originate from body and speech and mind.

Concluded is Origin

ITS SUMMARY

Unconscious, and also skilled,
and origin in every way:
Know well origin by the method
according to the rule. /

19. SECOND COLLECTION OF STANZAS

Prv.19.1.1
BD.6.336
Vin.5.210

“How many bodily offences?
How many verbal are done?
How many offences of concealing?¹
How many due to contact?”

“Six bodily offences,
six verbal are done,
Three offences of concealing,²
five due to contact.³”

“How many offences at sunrise?
How many on up to the third time?
How many here are the eight things?
through how many is the whole collection?”

“Three offences at sunrise,⁴
two up to the third time,⁵
One here are eight things,⁶

¹ *chādenta*, see [Vin.5.120](#), towards end. ² Nuns’ [Bi-Pj.6](#), Monks’ [Bu-Pc.64](#), wrong-doing at [Kd.13.34](#). N.B. In this Section offence means class of offence and not individual offences.

³ [Bu-Pj.1](#), [Bu-Ss.2](#), [Bu-Pc.52](#), Nuns’ [Bi-Pj.5.2.2](#). ⁴ [Bu-NP.2](#) (one night), [Bu-NP.23](#) (seven days), [Bu-NP.1](#) (ten days), [Bu-NP.29](#) (six nights), [Bu-NP.3](#) (more than a month); being away for a night alone, Nuns’ [Bi-NP.3](#); if an offence has been concealed for the first, second and third watches of the night, and is still concealed after the sun has risen, he who conceals it should be made to confess an offence of wrong-doing—as at [Kd.13.34.2](#). The three offences are thus *Nissaggiya*, Formal Meeting, and wrong-doing. ⁵ There are eleven admonitions “up to the third time”. Here those both for monks and for nuns are intended. ⁶ One here in this Dispensation (*sāsana*) for nuns. See Nuns’ [Bi-Pj.8](#).

through one is the whole collection.¹”

“How many are the sources of Discipline
that have been laid down by the Buddha?
How many are called serious in the Discipline?
How many called concealing a very bad (offence)?”

“Two are the sources of Discipline
that have been laid down by the Buddha,²
Two are called serious in the Discipline,³
two concealings of a very bad (offence).⁴”

“How many offences among villages?
How many due to the other side of a river?
In (eating) how many meats is there a grave offence?
In how many meats an offence of wrong-doing?”

BD.6.337

“Four offences among villages,⁵
four due to the other side of a river,⁶
In (eating) one meat there is a grave offence,⁷
in nine meats an offence of wrong-doing.⁸”

“How many verbal offences at night?
How many verbal offences by day?
How many offences for one who is giving?
How many for one who is receiving?”

“Two verbal offences at night,⁹
two verbal offences by day,¹⁰
Three offences for one who is giving,¹¹

¹ Through the recitation of the provenance of all the rules of training and of the recitations of the whole Pātimokkha, Vin-a.1381. ² Body and speech. ³ Defeat and Formal Meeting
⁴ For concealing an offence of Defeat or of Formal Meeting there is an offence for the concealer. ⁵ Wrong-doing (Bu-Pc.67.2.2), Pācittiya (Bu-Pc.27), grave, and Sañghādisesa (Nuns' Bi-Ss.3.5.1). ⁶ Wrong-doing (Kd.2.7.2), Pācittiya (Bu-Pc.28), grave, and Formal Meeting (Nuns' Bi-Ss.3.5.1). ⁷ In eating human flesh, Vin.1.218. ⁸ Eating nine other kinds of meat, Vin.1.219f. ⁹ Pācittiya and wrong-doing (Nuns' Bi-Pc.11.2.1). ¹⁰ Pācittiya and wrong-doing (Nuns' Bi-Pc.12.2.1). ¹¹ Defeat (Bu-Pj.3.4.7), grave, and Pācittiya (Bu-Pj.3.4.5).

and four for a recipient.¹”

“How many lead on to confession?
How many for which amends are made?
How many here for which amends are not made
are spoken of by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?”

“Five leading on to confession,²
six for which amends are made,³
One here for which amends are not made⁴
are spoken of by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many serious (offences against)
Discipline are spoken of?
And bodily-verbal (offences)?
How many flavours of grain at a wrong time?
How many agreements for a motion
followed by a resolution made three times?”

BD.6.338

“Two serious (offences against)
Discipline⁵ are spoken of
and bodily-verbal (offences),⁶
One flavour of grain at a wrong time,⁷
one agreement for a motion
followed by a resolution made three times.⁸

“How many bodily Defeats?
How many grounds for communion?
And how many interruptions?”

Vin.5.211

¹ *Bi-Ss.2, Bi-Pj.5, Bi-NP.5*, grave (Nuns' *Bi-Ss.5.2.2*). ² Vin-a.1382: five that are slight.

³ Vin-a.1382: setting aside Defeat, the remainder mean “one here for which amends are not made” is the one offence (in the class of Defeat)—i.e. Defeat is the only offence for which amends cannot be made. ⁴ Vin-a.1382: setting aside Defeat, the remainder mean “one here for which amends are not made” is the one offence (in the class of Defeat)—i.e. Defeat is the only offence for which amends cannot be made. ⁵ Defeat and Formal Meeting.

⁶ Referring to absolutely all the rules of training; not one is laid down in respect of the mind-door, Vin-a.1382. ⁷ Only salted sour gruel for an invalid, *Vin.1.210*. ⁸ This one agreement is allowed for exhorting nuns (*Bu-Pc.21*).

How many two finger-breadths are laid down?”

“Two bodily Defeats,¹
two grounds for communion,²
And interruption for two (individuals),³
two finger-breadths twice are laid down.⁴”

“How many ‘having struck oneself’?
By how many is an Order split?
How many here are first offenders?
How many carryings out of a motion?”

“Two ‘having struck oneself’,⁵
by two is an Order split,⁶
Two here are the first offenders,⁷
two carryings out of a motion.⁸”

“How many offences in onslaught on creatures?
How many Defeats from speech?
How many are called offensive (words)?
Or how many because of a go-between?”

“Three offences in onslaught on creatures,⁹
three Defeats from speech,¹⁰

¹ Bu-Pj.1, Bi-Pj.5. ² “ground” is *bhūmi*. Vin-a.1382: “either he makes a ‘same communion for himself’, or a complete Order restores a suspended monk. But in the Kurundiya the two grounds for communion that are spoken of are a ground for a similar communion and a ground for a different communion.” Cf. above Prv.7.2 (end of text, pp.116.) ³ Cf. above Prv.7.2 (Vin.5.118): one under probation and one undergoing *mānatta*. ⁴ Nuns’ Bi-Pc.5 is one, and “two finger-breadths or two for a month” is the other, Vin-a.1382. ⁵ Vin-a.1382: “A nun who has struck herself falls into two offences: if she strikes and weeps there is an offence of *Pācittiya*; if she strikes but does not weep there is an offence of wrong-doing.” See Nuns’ Bi-Pc.20. ⁶ By a formal act and by a voting ticket. ⁷ Vin-a.1383: there are two in the whole of the Vinaya according to the layings down for both (Orders). But, on the other hand (? *itarathā*) there are nine for monks and nine for nuns, making eighteen. ⁸ Vin-a.1383: the formal act and the basis of the formal act. ⁹ Defeat, grave, *Pācittiya*, as at Bu-Pj.3.4.5. ¹⁰ For one who conceals a fault, for an imitator of one who is suspended, and for a doer of eight (things)—Nuns’ Bi-Pj.6.3.4. “But the Kurundiya says that the three are: at a command taking what has not been given, killing a man, and claiming a state of further-men.”

Three are called offensive (words),¹
three because of a go-between.²”

“How many individuals should not be ordained?
How many things included in formal acts?
How many are called ones who are expelled?
For how many is a one fold formula?”

“Three individuals should not be ordained,³
three things included in formal acts,⁴
Three are called ones who are expelled,⁵
for three is a one fold formula.⁶”

“How many offences in taking what has not been given?
How many because of unchastity?
How many offences for cutting off?
How many because of throwing down?”

“Three offences in taking what has not been given,⁷
four because of unchastity,⁸
Three offences for cutting off,⁹
five because of throwing down.¹⁰”

BD.6.340

“Offences of wrong-doing with Expiation

¹ Formal Meeting, grave, wrong-doing, as at *Bu-Ss.3.3.2*, *Bu-Ss.3.3.3*. ² Formal Meeting, grave, wrong-doing, as at *Bu-Ss.5.4.12*. ³ One who is under the right age (*Bu-Pc.65*), one lacking the accessories (bowl and robe) (*Kd.1.70*), and one who has fallen away from the matter (a matricide, eunuch, hermaphrodite and animal) (*Kd.1.63-69*)—the (last two) interpretations being given by the Kurundiya. ⁴ The preparation of a formal act (it should be carried out), the individually unfinished (he is carrying out), and a past carrying out (it was carried out). A further threefold classification is by subject-matter, motion and proclamation: *Vin-a.1383*. ⁵ “Expel the nun *Mettiyā*” (*Bi-Ss.11.1.9*), a seducer of nuns should be expelled (*Kd.1.67*), and a novice who is possessed of ten qualities should be expelled (*Kd.1.60*). Cf. above Section *Prv.7.1*. ⁶ “I allow, monks, two or three to make proclamations together,” so *Vin-a.1384* apparently quoting *Vin.1.93*. For *ekavācika* see *Vin.1.169ff.* ⁷ Defeat, grave, wrong-doing (see *Bu-Pj.2.1.6* and *Bu-Pj.3.6.1*). ⁸ Defeat, grave, wrong-doing, *Pācittiya* (all in *Bu-Pj.1*). ⁹ *Bu-Pj.2.4.18*, *Bu-Pc.11*, grave (in *Bu-Pj.1*). ¹⁰ Defeat (*Bu-Pj.3.4.5.6*), grave and *Pācittiya* (*Bu-Pj.3.4.5*; *Bu-Pj.5.25*), Formal Meeting (*Bu-Ss.1*), wrong-doing (*Bu-Sk.74*).

for an exhorter in an incomplete (Order of) nuns,
 How many here are spoken of as nonads?
 And of how many in regard to robe-material?”

“Offences of wrong-doing with Expiation are done
 by an exhorter in an incomplete (Order of) nuns,¹
 Four here are spoken of as nonads,²
 and of two in regard to robe-material.³”

“And how many Confessions
 are pointed out for nuns?
 How many wrong-doings with Expiation
 when they partake of raw grain?”

“And eight Confessions made
 for nuns are pointed out,⁴
 Wrong-doings with Expiation are done
 when they partake of raw grain.⁵”

“How many offences for one who is walking?
 And how many for one who is standing?
 How many offences for one who is sitting?
 And how many for one who is lying down?”

“Four offences for one who is walking,⁶
 and as many too for one who is standing,⁷
 Four offences for one who is sitting,⁸

¹ Bu-Pc.21. ² *navakā*; Vin-a.1384 says that in the first rule of training (i.e. in the division on nuns, Bu-Pc.21-30) there are precisely two formal acts that are not legally valid, and two that are. The reference seems to be Bu-Pc.21. See Vin.5.137-138. ³ Vin-a.1384 says that in giving robe-material in the presence of monks to one who is ordained there is *Pācittiya*; in the presence of nuns there is wrong-doing. Thus there is an offence in giving robe-material to two nuns. ⁴ As handed down in the Pali, i.e. the text. ⁵ Nuns' Bi-Pc.7. ⁶ Wrong-doing (Bu-Pc.27, Bu-Pc.67), *Pācittiya* (Nuns' Bi-Pc.96), grave and Formal Meeting (Nuns' Bi-Ss.3.5.1). ⁷ *Pācittiya* (Nuns' Bi-Pc.11, Bu-Pc.12), wrong-doing (Nuns' Bi-Pc.6.2.2), grave and Formal Meeting (Nuns' Bi-Ss.3.5.1); see also Nuns' Bi-Pj.8.2.1. ⁸ Commentary merely remarks that if one sits or lies down one falls into four offences; perhaps the same as for standing.

and as many too for one who is lying down.¹”

“How many offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
could one simultaneously fall into together?”

“Five are the offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
that one could simultaneously fall into together.²”

BD.6.341

“How many offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
could one simultaneously fall into together?”

Vin.5.212

“Nine are the offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
that one could simultaneously fall into together.³”

“How many offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
Should be confessed by how many formulae
spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun?”

“Five are the offences of Expiation⁴
all about different subjects
That should be confessed by one formula
are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many offences of Expiation
all about different subjects
Should be confessed by how many formulae
are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun?”

¹ “I allow, monks, two or three to make proclamations together,” so Vin-a.1384 apparently quoting Vin.1.93. For *ekavācika* see Vin.1.169ff. ² Vin-a.1385: a monk accepts five medicines, mixes them in one or more vessels, but if he sets them aside for more than seven days there are five offences of *Pācittiya*. Perhaps this refers to Bu-NP.23. ³ This refers to a monk who asks for, crushes up together and eats the nine sumptuous foods; see Bu-Pc.39.

⁴ Confessing in one formula (sentence) to storing the five medicines for more than seven days; Bu-NP.23.

“Nine are the offences of Expiation¹
 all about different subjects
 That should be confessed by one formula
 are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many offences of Expiation
 all about different subjects
 Should be confessed after one has announced something,
 are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun?”

“Five offences of Expiation²
 all about different subjects
 Should be confessed after one has announced the matter,
 are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many offences of Expiation
 all about different subjects
 Should be confessed after one has announced something
 are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun?”

“Nine offences of Expiation³
 all about different subjects
 Should be confessed after one has announced the matter
 are spoken of by the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many offences up to the third time?
 How many because of speech?
 How many for one who is eating?
 How many for partaking of?”

“Three offences up to the third time,⁴
 six because of speech,⁵

BD.6.342

¹ Referring to sumptuous foods (?). ² Referring to medicines. ³ Referring to sumptuous foods. ⁴ Defeat for imitating one who is suspended (Nuns' [Bi-Pj.5](#)), Formal Meeting for imitating a schismatic ([Bu-Ss.10.1](#)), and *Pācittiya* for the nun Caṇḍakāli for not giving up a pernicious view (this may refer to Nuns' [Bi-Ss.10](#) which, however, does not mention an offence of *Pācittiya*). ⁵ See [Vin.5.99](#) on “for the sake of livelihood ...”.

Three offences for one who is eating,¹
five because of partaking of.²”

“How many occasions do all the
‘up to the third times’ reach?
And for how many are offences?
For how many by a legal question?”

“Five occasions do all the
‘up to the third times’ reach,³
And there is an offence for five,⁴
and for five by a legal question.⁵”

“For how many is there an investigation?
And for how many by a settlement?
And for how many simply no offence?
For how many reasons does one shine?”

“For five is there an investigation,⁶
and for five by a settlement,⁷
For five simply no offence,⁸
for three reasons does one shine.⁹”

“How many bodily (offences) by night?
How many bodily by day?
How many offences for looking at with longing?

¹ Grave offence to eat human flesh (Vin.1.218), one of wrong-doing to eat the other unallowable meats (Vin.1.219ff.), offence of Pācittiya for a nun who eats garlic (Nuns’ Bi-Pc.1).

² Formal Meeting (Nuns’ Bi-Ss.5), grave (Vin.1.218), Pācittiya (Nuns’ Bi-Pc.1), Confession (Nuns’ Bi-Pd.1-8), and wrong-doing (Vin.1.219f.). ³ Wrong-doing, grave, Defeat (Nuns’ Bi-Pj.7.2.1). Formal Meeting (Bu-Ss.10), Pācittiya (Bu-Pc.68). ⁴ Vin-a.1386: the five co-religionists (monks and nuns, Vin.2.262), probationers, female and male novices (Vin.1.84, specifically of male novices). Though their offences did not have to be confessed, a punishment, *daṇḍakamma*, had to be imposed on them. ⁵ For these same five classes all ordinary investigations (? *vinicchayavohāra*) about bowl and robe is called a legal question, Vin-a.1386. ⁶ The same five as in the immediately preceding notes. ⁷ The same five as in the immediately preceding notes. ⁸ The same five as in the immediately preceding notes. ⁹ Vin-a.1387: if an individual makes amends (for an offence) in the midst of an Order, in the midst of a group, or in the presence of an individual (monk).

How many because of alms?”

BD.6.343

“Two bodily (offences) by night,¹
two bodily by day,²
One offence for looking at with longing,³
one because of alms.⁴”

“Beholding how many advantages
should one confess out of faith in others?
How many are spoken of as being suspended?
How many ‘proper conducts’?”

“Beholding eight advantages
should one confess out of faith in others,⁵
Three are spoken of as being suspended,⁶
forty-three ‘proper conducts’.”⁷”

“On how many occasions is there lying speech?
How many are called ‘at most’?
How many are to be Confessed?
And of how many were there confessions?”

Vin.5.213

“On five occasions is there lying speech,⁸
fourteen are called ‘at most’,⁹
Twelve are to be Confessed,¹⁰

¹ *Pācittiya* and wrong-doing (Nuns’ *Bi-Pc.11.2.1*). ² *Pācittiya* and wrong-doing (Nuns’ *Bi-Pc.12*). ³ Wrong-doing (*Bu-Ss.1.5.12*). ⁴ Vin-a.1387: “Monks, a monk must not look at a donor’s face’—here is an offence of wrong-doing. But the Kurundiya speaks of this phrase as meaning ‘if a nun is partaking of prepared (ripened, *paripācita*) alms there is an offence of *Pācittiya*’.” ⁵ Vin-a.1387: “called advantages in the Kosambakakkhandhaka”—apparently referring to *Kd.10.1.7.8*, though the word *ānisaṃsa* does not occur there in Oldenberg’s edition. ⁶ For not seeing an offence, not making amends for one, not giving up a pernicious view, e.g. *Kd.1.79*. ⁷ Vin-a.1387: some are for those monks who have been suspended. ⁸ Vin-a.1387: Defeat, Formal Meeting, grave, *Pācittiya*, and wrong-doing. See *Vin.5.128*, *BD.6.193*. ⁹ Vin-a.1387 “ten days at most” and so on is spoken of below (i.e. above here). ¹⁰ Four offences to be Confessed for monks, eight for nuns.

and of four were there confessions.¹”

“How many factored is lying speech?
How many factors of Observance?
How many are the factors for (going on) a message?
How many the customs of other sects?”

BD.6.344

“Lying speech is eight-factored,²
eight factors of Observance,³
Eight factors for (going on) a message,⁴
eight customs of other sects.⁵”

“How many formulas for ordination?
For how many should there be rising from?
To how many should a seat be given?
Of how many is an exhorter of nuns?”

“Eight formulas for ordination,⁶
for eight should there be rising from,⁷
To eight should a seat be given,⁸
of eight is an exhorter of nuns.⁹”

“Of how many is there ‘could be destroyed’?
Of how many a grave offence?
And of how many simply no offence?
Are they one subject for all?”

“Of one is there ‘could be destroyed’,¹⁰

¹ *desanā*. Vin-a.1387: this means confession of a transgression, *accaya*, and refers in particular to the assassins hired by Devadatta (Vin.2.192); to the woman who tried to seduce the elder Anuruddha (Vin.4.18); to Vaḍḍha the Licchavi (Vin.2.126); and to incoming monks who carried out a formal act of suspension against an Elder who was a resident in Vāsabha village (Vin.1.314f.). ² See Vin.5.136. ³ See Vin.5.137. ⁴ See Vin.5.137. ⁵ See Vin.5.137. ⁶ Commentary here says this refers to the ordination, *upasampadā*, of nuns. ⁷ See Vin.5.137. ⁸ See Vin.5.137. ⁹ See Vin.5.137. ¹⁰ Now the verses begin to be concerned with schism; “could be destroyed” is *chejja*. Vin-a.1388 says “In the verses whoever of nine people offers a voting ticket, he splits the Order; only for him is there *chejja*”, and it rather strangely adds “as Devadatta fell into an offence involving Defeat”. The above clause apparently refers to Vin.2.204 (Kd.17.5.1).

of four a grave offence,¹
 And of four simply no offence,²
 they are one subject for all.³”

“How many occasions for ill-will?
 By how many is an Order split?
 How many here are offences at once?
 How many carryings out by a motion?”

“Nine occasions for ill-will,⁴
 an Order is split by nine,⁵
 Nine here are offences at once,⁶
 nine carryings out by a motion.⁷”

BD.6.345

“How many individuals should not be greeted
 nor (receive) joined palms or proper homage?
 For how many is there an offence of wrong-doing?
 How many for wearing the three robes?”

“Ten individuals should not be greeted
 nor (receive) joined palms or proper homage,⁸
 For ten is there an offence of wrong-doing,⁹
 ten for wearing three robes.¹⁰”

“To how many who have kept the rains
 should a robe be given here?
 For how many should purity be declared?
 and for how many likewise not declared?”

“To five who have kept the rains

¹ Vin-a.1388: “the followers or imitators of schismatics, such as Kokālika and so on” — i.e. Kokālika and three other followers of Devadatta are mentioned at Bu-Ss.10.1.1, Kd.17.3.14. At Kd.17.4.4 they were to be made to confess a grave offence. Four other sets of circumstances for falling into a grave offence for aiming at a schism occur at Kd.2.34.6–9. ² No offence for four speakers of *Dhamma* — this is obscure. ³ Vin-a.1388: “But these offences, founded on one for all, are founded on a schism in the Order”. ⁴ See Vin.5.137. ⁵ See Vin.5.137. ⁶ See Vin.5.137. ⁷ Vin-a.1388 says nine formal acts should be carried out by a motion. ⁸ Kd.16.6.5. ⁹ Vin-a.1388: for greeting these same ten. ¹⁰ An extra robe may be worn for most at ten days, Bu-NP.1.2.

should a robe be given here,¹
 For seven should purity²
 be declared, for sixteen not declared.³”

“Concealing how many hundred offences
 for a hundred nights?
 Having spent how many nights
 could he who is under probation be freed?”

“Concealing ten hundred offences
 for one hundred nights,
 Having spent ten nights
 he who is under probation could be freed.⁴”

BD.6.346

“How many defects in formal acts were spoken of
 by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
 In the Vinaya-matter at Campā?
 And how many—were all—not legally valid?”

“Twelve defects in formal acts⁵ were spoken of
 by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
 In the Vinaya-matter at Campā,
 all were made not legally valid.”

¹ The five fellow *Dhamma*-people: monks, nuns, probationers, women and men novices.

² The word *sante* is unusual in Vinaya. It looks like an accusative plural and as if it is being used for *parisuddhi*, complete purity; and *dātabbani* is probably here to declare, see [BD.4.158, n.1](#). The above clause possibly refers to [Kd.2.22, Kd.13.26: *suddhanta*](#). For Vin-a.1388 the seven are: those gone to distant parts, *disāpakkantā* for *disarāgamika* of [Kd.2.21](#); those who are mad, unhinged, in pain, and the three who have been suspended (i.e. for not seeing, not making amends for and not giving up). ³ Vin-a.1388 says that these sixteen, beginning with eunuch, are spoken of in the *Cīvarakkhandhaka*, and seem to refer to the first six and the last ten in [Kd.8.30.1](#). ⁴ This is the answer to the one question asked in the preceding verse. Vin-a.1389: “Whoever on every ten days having fallen into 100 offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order conceals them for each of the ten days is therefore a concealer of 1,000 offences for 100 nights. If he asks for probation, saying all these offences have been concealed for ten days, and having spent ten nights (then the words may be spoken) “The probationer may be freed’.” On probation see [Kd.12, Kd.13](#). This verse is quoted at Vin-a.1183.

⁵ The *Campeyyakakkhandhaka* is [Kd.9](#). Three defects refer to four formal acts, see above [Prv.7.2](#), towards end of [Vin.5.116](#).

“How many excellences in formal acts were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā?
And how many—were all—legally valid?”

“Four excellences¹ in formal acts were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā,
all were made legally valid.”

Vin.5.214

“How many formal acts were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā?
How many were legally valid, not legally Valid?”

“Six formal acts² were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā;
here one was made legally valid,
Five were spoken of as not legally valid³
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“How many formal acts were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā?
How many were legally valid, not legally Valid?”

“Four formal acts were spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
In the Vinaya-matter at Campā;
here one was made legally valid,
Three were spoken of as not legally valid⁴

¹ See again towards end of [Vin.5.116](#), and [Kd.9](#). ² See [Kd.9.3.5](#). The legally valid one is that which is carried out by rule in a complete assembly. See also [Vin.5.115](#) (near beginning, and the note in the translation). ³ See [Kd.9.3.5](#). The legally valid one is that which is carried out by rule in a complete assembly. See also [Vin.5.115](#) (near beginning, and the note in the translation). ⁴ See [Kd.9.2.4](#). The one that is legally valid is the same as in the preceding stanza.

BD.6.347

by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun.”

“Those classes of offences taught by Such a One,
the Conqueror of the Unending,¹
by the One who sees aloofness²—
How many here are stopped without the deciding?
I ask you, (you who are) proficient in analysis.”

“Those classes of offences taught by Such a One,
the Conqueror of the Unending,
by the One who sees aloofness, —
One here³ is stopped without the deciding:
this I point out to you, (you who are) proficient in analysis.”

“How many doomed to the Downfall are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes⁴ of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“One hundred and forty-four⁵ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
Schismatics of the Order, doomed to the Downfall,
to Niraya for an aeon,⁶
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many not doomed to the Downfall are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

¹ Vin-a.1389: *nibbāna*. ² Vin-a.1389 speaks of the same five kinds of “aloofness” or seclusion as does MN-a.i.85. Cf. Vin.5.97. ³ Only one class of offence, that of Defeat, is stopped without the deciding. Here one verdict in the presence of is stopped without the deciding, but yet attains the status of a deciding. ⁴ *visayāni*. ⁵ Vin-a.1390 referring to the Sanghabhedakkhandhaka, classifies the eighteen speakers of non-*dhamma* into eight groups each, thus arriving at the total of *cha ūnadiyaḍḍhasata*. See Kd.17.5.2 (for the eighteen points giving rise to schism) and Kd.17.5.5 (for the views and the doubts, which Commentary classifies as eight). ⁶ Lines at Kd.17.5.5, there in the singular.

“Eighteen not doomed to the Downfall¹ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many octads are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

BD.6.348

“Eighteen octads² are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many formal acts are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Sixteen formal acts³ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many defects in formal acts are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

Vin.5.215

“Twelve defects in formal acts⁴ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

¹ Vin-a.1390 here copies [Kd.17.5.6](#). These are schismatics in fact, but act in good faith. ² This refers to the answer last but two above, where the 144 are reduced to 18×8 . ³ See above [Prv.15.3](#), [BD.6.167](#). ⁴ See [Vin.5.214](#).

“How many excellences in formal acts are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Four excellences in formal acts¹ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many formal acts are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Six formal acts² are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many formal acts are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Four formal acts³ are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many offences involving Defeat are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Eight offences involving Defeat are spoken of

¹ See [Vin.5.214](#). ² See [Vin.5.214](#). ³ See [Vin.5.214](#).

by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“How many offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order?
...”

¹“ Twenty-three offences requiring a Formal Meeting of the
Order
...”

BD.6.349

“How many Undetermined offences? ...”

“Two Undetermined offences ...”

“How many offences of Forfeiture? ...”

“Forty-two offences of Forfeiture ...”

“How many offences of Expiation? ...”

“One hundred and eighty-eight offences of Expiation ...”

“How many offences to be Confessed? ...”

“Twelve offences to be Confessed ...”

“How many Trainings are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun?
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
we listen to you.”

“Seventy-five Trainings are spoken of
by the Buddha, the Kinsman of the Sun,
On the attributes of one claiming Vinaya
listen to me.”

“What has been well asked by you
that has been well answered by me.
By means of question and answer

¹ See [Vin.5.214](#).

there is nothing at all that is not threaded.¹”

Concluded is the Second Collection of Stanzas

¹ *asuttaka*, not woven, not threaded on the Thread (*sutta*) of the Teaching. On *sutta* as Thread see *The Guide*, PTS Translation Series, No. 33, Introduction, p.xxxiii, and p.3, note 12.

20. THE SWEAT INDUCING STANZAS

Prv.20.1.1
BD.6.350
Vin.5.216

One not in communion with monks or nuns,¹
a certain eating is not obtained there,²
There is no offence for one who is not away, separated from³:
these questions were thought out by those of skill.

Five things not to be disposed of,⁴
(five) not to be divided up⁵
were spoken of by the Great Seer,
There is no offence in disposing of,⁶ of making use of:
these questions were thought out by those of skill.

I do not say ten individuals,⁷
eleven are to be shunned,⁸
There is an offence for one who is greeting a senior⁹:
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Not one who is suspended,
nor yet one who is undergoing probation,
Nor a schismatic of the Order,
nor yet one who has gone over to a faction,

¹ Referring to the Observance and Invitation. Cf. [Bu-Pc.69.2.1](#). ² Two kinds of eating, *sambhoga*, are given at [Bu-Pc.69.2.1](#). Here Vin-a.1391 takes it to mean that he does not obtain unallowable food. ³ Vin-a.1391 appears to take this to mean: if the sleeping-place is in a house, *sahagāraseyyā*. Cf. [Vin.1.109](#). ⁴ [Vin.2.170](#). ⁵ [Vin.2.171](#). ⁶ Vin-a.1391 says this should be understood in reference to a nun who is the mother of a young child. ⁷ Vin-a.1391 refers this to the Senāsanakkhandhaka, [Kd.16](#). ⁸ Vin-a.1391 refers this to the Mahākkhandhaka, [Kd.8](#), and the naked monk—probably referring to [Kd.8.28](#). ⁹ Does this refer to [Kd.16.6.5](#)? Commentary is silent. But see above [Prv.17.14.6](#).

Firm in the basis of belonging to the same communion,¹
 How could there be no sharing in the training?²
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Being questioned, he comes to the *Dhamma*,
 what is skilled, what is connected with the goal,
 He is neither living nor dead nor attained to *nibbāna*.
 Which is this individual the Buddhas speak of?³
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

BD.6.351

I do not say above the collar-bones,
 below the navel should be shunned,
 How could there be an offence involving Defeat
 because of sexual Intercourse?⁴
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

A monk begging for himself builds a hut, the site not marked
 out,
 Exceeding the right measure, involving destruction,
 without an open space (round it): there is no offence.⁵
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

A monk begging for himself builds a hut, the site marked out,
 To the right measure, not involving destruction,
 with an open space (round it): there is an offence.⁶
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Should one perform no bodily action,
 nor even speak to others with the voice,

¹ Bu-Ss.10.2; Bu-Pc.81.2.1. ² Vin-a.1391 says this question concerns the monk who formerly was a barber, Kd.6.37. ³ Vin-a.1391: this question concerns a fashioned (created) Buddha, *nimmita-buddha*. Is this a Buddha-image? ⁴ This question is about the headless trunk or body whose eyes and mouth were on its chest; see Vin.3.107. ⁵ Vin-a.1391 says this refers to a hut roofed with grass. See Bu-Ss.6.3.16. No offence if a monk builds one. Verse quoted at Vin-a.574. ⁶ This refers to Dhaniya's hut, which was *sabbamattikāmaya* (the clue-word at Vin-a.1391); see Bu-Pj.2.1.1.2. The offence in building a hut of this kind was one of wrong-doing. The other part of the dilemma (concerning a hut not specified as made entirely of mud or clay) is at Bu-Ss.6.

One would fall into a serious (offence),
 a matter for being destroyed.¹
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

A good man should not do any bodily,
 verbal or even mental evil,
 How then if he is expelled is he well expelled?²
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Not conversing with any man by speech,
 should he utter no word to others
 He might fall verbally, not bodily.³
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

The rules of training praised by the noble Buddha
 could be four Formal Meetings,
 All of which one might fall into at one stroke.⁴
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

If two (nuns) ordained together
 should accept a robe from the hand of both,
 Could the offences be different?⁵
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Four people having arranged together removed valuable goods:
 Three offences involving Defeat,

BD.6.352
 Vin.5.217

¹ *garukam chejvatthum*. Commentary says this question is about the nun who concealed another nun's fault. Nuns' *Bi-Pj.6*. The word *chejja* is connected with Defeat though it does not occur in Nuns' *Bi-Pj.6*. ² Vin-a.1391 says this question is about the incapable, *abhabba*, persons, beginning with the eunuch. See *Kd.1.61-68*. For the eleven persons Commentary speaks of see e.g. *Kd.8.30.1*. ³ This question is about lying speech though the offence cannot be made clear. For as the monk was sitting silent after he had given an acknowledgement that was not legally valid, the offence was not one of the mind-door. Therefore what should have been made clear has not been made clear. This offence of his arises through non-action in the voice-door, Vin-a.1391f. ⁴ Nuns' *Bi-Ss.3*. ⁵ Possibly referring to *Bu-Pc.25*. The two offences are those of *Pācittiya* and wrong-doing, according to whether acceptance was from the hand of a monk or a nun.

one not an offence involving Defeat.¹

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

And should a woman be within, and a monk outside,
(As) there was no hole in that house²—
because of unchastity. How could there be Defeat?
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

If, having accepted oil, honey, molasses,
as well as ghee for oneself, one should lay them aside,
Seven days not having elapsed, unless there is a reason,
there is an offence in partaking (of them).³
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

The offence is one of Expiation for a slighter offence
with one involving Forfeiture
Together for one who falls.⁴

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Twenty monks might be assembled thinking that,
complete,⁵ they could carry out a formal act,
A monk might be standing twelve *yojanas* (away),
and that formal act could be reversed

BD.6.353

¹ Vin-a.1392 refers this to *Pārājika* 2. See Pj.2.4.29. But there is no mention here of the teacher and the three pupils as there is at Vin-a.1392 and Vin-a.366 where this verse is quoted. The one offence not involving Defeat is said to be a grave one. ² This question appears to refer to [Kd.15.35.2](#) where the word *chidda*, hole, occurs, as does also the Commentary's *santhata*, something spread (in a privy). Nuns not allowed to use a privy, [Kd.20.273](#). ³ [Bu-NP.23](#), [Bu-Pc.39](#); see too [Kd.6.15.10](#). ⁴ "Slighter offence," *suddhaka*, occurs only, I think, at [Vin.2.67](#), thus not in a Defeat or Formal Meeting It is used there in connection with concealing an offence or not concealing it which would entail an offence of wrong-doing for the offender or his being dealt with according to the rule. Vin-a.1392 says that this stanza is about obtaining, for whoever obtains two robes, one for himself and one for another from acquisitions belonging to an Order, falls at one blow into an offence of *Nissaggiya Pācittiya*, and into an offence of *Pācittiya* involving a "slighter" offence. Commentary reads *suddhika*-. This question might conceivably refer to [Bu-NP.7](#). ⁵ A twenty-fold Order is entitled to take part in all formal acts, [Vin.1.319](#).

because (the Order) was incomplete.¹

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

And a speaker through voice even for the length of a stride
Would fall into all sixty-four serious offences
together for which amends (should be made).²

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Dressed in an inner robe,³

a double outer cloak⁴ put on,

All these are to be forfeited.

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

And there was not even a motion, nor yet a resolution,
nor did the Conqueror say “Come, monk”,
Nor even was there going for refuge for this one,
but his ordination was irreversible.⁵

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Should one kill the woman who is not (his) mother,
and should he kill the man who is not (his) father,⁶

Should the dullard kill an unariyan,

because of this he would attain the immediately next.⁷

¹ Vin-a.1392 says this question concerns the *gāmasimā* (a boundary that is a village, Cf. Vin-a.1055) in such towns as Benares for distances of twelve *yojanas*—perhaps referring to *Kd.2.11-13* or *Kd.2.24*. No formal act may be carried out by an incomplete Order, *Kd.2.23.2*.

² Vin-a.1392 says this question is about a go-between (*Bu-Ss.5*); it seems to refer specially to *Bu-Ss.5.4.12*: “if he does not accept but examines and brings back”. Vin-a.558 cites this verse and thinks that the number of offences equals the number of women to whom the monk gives a message. Vin-a.559 speaks of sixty-four offences mentioned in the verse above. ³ Permission to wear these is given at *Vin.1.289*. All robes, however, are to be forfeited by a monk who gets a nun who is not a relation of his to wash them (*Bu-NP.4*).

⁴ Permission to wear these is given at *Vin.1.289*. All robes, however, are to be forfeited by a monk who gets a nun who is not a relation of his to wash them (*Bu-NP.4*). ⁵ Referring to Mahāpajāpati’s ordination. ⁶ Vin-a.1393 says this question is about change of sex (see *Vin.3.35*, *Bu-Pj.1.10.6*), the mother having become a man and the father a woman, so the person who kills them probably would not be guilty of matricide or parricide. ⁷ *anatarāṃ phuse*. Does this mean the next world? Or an offence whose fruition comes straightaway?

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

BD.6.354

Should one kill the woman who is (his) mother,
and should he kill the man who is (his) father,
Having killed mother and father,
not because of this would he attain the immediately next.¹

Vin.5.218

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Not being reprov'd, not being made to remember,
a formal act might be carried out for one not face to face
And when carried out the formal act would be well carried out,
and an Order, the carrier out, would incur no offence.²
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Being reprov'd, having made to remember,
a formal act might be carried out for one face to face,
And when carried out the formal act might not be well carried
out,
and an Order, the carrier out, would incur an offence.³
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

There is an offence in cutting down,⁴
no offence in cutting off,⁵
There is an offence in concealing,⁶
no offence in covering.⁷

¹ Vin-a.1393 says this question is about having animals for parents, like sons of a lion, and like the ascetic who was the young of a doe. This latter case refers to Isisīngatāpasa, see Mi.124, Ja.no.523, Ja.no.536, Mahāvastu translation iii.140. See also Mahāvastu translation iii.148f. for another child born of a doe. ² Vin-a.1393 says this stanza is about ordination by means of a messenger—referring to ordination of nuns, see Kd.20.22. ³ Vin-a.1393 refers this to the ordination of eunuchs, etc. See Kd.1.61ff. But the Kurundiya is of another opinion. ⁴ Vin-a.1393 says in felling a forest-tree there is Defeat (see Bu-Pj.2.4.18); in cutting down grass and creepers an offence of Pācittiya (does this refer to Bu-Pc.2?); in cutting off the male organ a grave offence (Bu-Pj.1). ⁵ No offence in cutting one's hair or nails—see Kd.15.27.1-3. ⁶ Both words are *chādentassa*; the offence is to conceal one's own or another's offence, but it is no offence to cover (or thatch) a house, etc. ⁷ Both words are *chādentassa*; the offence is to conceal one's own or another's offence, but it is no offence to cover (or thatch) a house, etc.

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Speaking the truth is a serious offence,¹
and lying a slight one for the speaker,²
Speaking a lie is a serious offence,³
and the truth a slight one for the speaker.⁴
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

One that is allotted, dyed with dye
even if made allowable,
There is an offence for making use of it.⁵
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

A monk eats meat after sunset,
If he be not mad nor yet unhinged nor even in bodily pain,
Not for him is there an offence,
and this rule was taught by the Well-farer.⁶
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

BD.6.355

Not inflamed in mind,⁷
nor yet with a mind set on theft,⁸
nor even if he intended “for after dying”,⁹
For him who gives a voting ticket there is “to be destroyed”,
for him who accepts a grave offence.¹⁰
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Not even what is agreed on as a dangerous forest-(lodging),
not even an agreement given by the Order,

¹ That is when a monk abuses a woman saying “You are deformed, you are a hermaphrodite” (Bu-Ss.3.3.1). ² Bu-Pc.1. ³ Bu-Pj.4. ⁴ Vin-a.1393: speaking the truth when announcing what is a fact is a slight offence. ⁵ The Commentary says this question concerns one who, not having forfeited a robe to be forfeited, makes use of it. See Bu-NP.1.4; Bu-NP.2.3.18; Bu-NP.3.2.3. ⁶ This question is about the “ruminator”, see Kd.15.25. The “allowance” given there is quoted at Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 109. ⁷ One who is inflamed in mind falls into Bu-Pj.1. ⁸ One whose mind is so set falls into Bu-Pj.2. ⁹ If he so intends he falls into Bu-Pj.3. Vin-a.1393 says a schismatic monk has none of these three features. ¹⁰ See Vin.5.213; translation BD.6.344, n.4. Vin-a.1393 confirms that this refers to a schismatic and an imitator of a schismatic.

And not for him is *kaṭhina* formally made, should he,
having laid aside a robe just there, go for half a yojana,
There is no offence for him till sunrise.¹

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

All the various bodily, not verbal, matters
That together he might fall into simultaneously.²
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

All the various verbal, not bodily, matters
That together he might fall into simultaneously.³
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Three women—in sex: that she would not indulge in,
three men and three non-ariyans (and three) eunuchs.⁴
And she would not practise sex in accordance with the letter⁵—

it might be she is to be destroyed because of sexual intercourse.⁶
These questions were thought out by those of skill.

One could ask to give robe-material to his mother⁷
if it is not altered⁸ for an Order,
Of what is there an offence for him,

BD.6.356

¹ Bu-NP.29. ² Vin-a.1393 says this verse is about taking hold of together the hair and fingers of several women—see Bu-Ss.2. It is quoted at Vin-a.841 where, in the exegesis of Bu-Pc.39, adding the word “nine”, it refers to the nine sumptuous foods. If, for example, one puts them all into one dish and eats a morsel of each, one falls into nine offences of *Pācittiya*.

³ Vin-a.1393 says this verse is about a speaker of lewd words beginning with “All of you are deformed”—see Bu-Ss.3.3.1, and see five verses above. ⁴ Vin-a.1393f. says this verse is about three women. Of these, one (followed by singular verb) does not indulge in what is called sex; having approached three men she does not indulge in sex. Three “unariyan eunuchs” means: three unariyan hermaphrodites and three eunuchs. Having approached these six people she does not indulge in sex. The verse is quoted at Vin-a.905 in exegesis of Nuns’ Bi-Pj.8. ⁵ *byañjanasmim*. This means she does not actually have sexual intercourse

⁶ This question concerns a doer of eight things (Nuns’ Bi-Pj.8) and is about a nun who shows her desire for a man in eight ways. ⁷ Cf. Kd.8.22; Nuns’ Bi-Pc.28.2.2. ⁸ *pariṇata*.

and no offence for his relations?¹

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

An angry man is pleasing,

an angry man is contemptible.

Then what is that rule called by which

an angry man is laudable?²

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

A satisfied man is pleasing,

a satisfied man is contemptible,

Then what is that rule called by which

a satisfied man is contemptible?

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Could one fall together into a Formal Meeting,

a grave offence, an Expiation,

one to be Confessed, one of wrong-doing?³

These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Both are full twenty years of age, for both there is

one preceptor, one teacher, one resolution:

¹ This verse appears to refer to [Bu-NP.24](#). Vin-a.1394 says it is about “raising up mindfulness for using a cloth for the rains *piṭṭhiyasamaye*, and that its analysis is spoken of in the Commentary on the rules for cloths for the rains”. *Piṭṭhiyasamaya* is defined at Vin-a.720 as the seven months between the last day of the bright fortnight of the full moon of Kattikā to the beginning of the full moon of Jeṭṭha (Jeṭṭhamūlapuṇṇamā, Cf. DN-a.6). ² Vin-a.1394 says this stanza and the next are about the customs of other sects; and it refers to three matters, but does not specify them. Perhaps receiving food in one’s hand ([Vin.1.90](#), [Vin.3.245](#)), in a gourd ([Vin.2.114](#)) and in a water-pot ([Vin.2.115](#)) are meant; the angry man is probably the layman who objects to monks adopting these customs. ³ Vin-a.1394: this is about going in the sky, *ākāsaḡata*. If, by supernormal power, one of two novices is sitting down freed from the earth for even as much as a hair’s breadth he is called not ordained. When he has returned to the earth a formal act cannot be carried out by the Order. If it is, it is reversible.

One is ordained, one not ordained.¹
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

Not made allowable, not even dyed with dye—
 wearing that he might go where he liked,
 And there is no offence for him;
 and this rule was taught by the Well-farer.²
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

One does not give, one does not accept,
 for him a recipient does not exist,
 She falls into a serious offence,
 not a slight one because of her enjoyment.³
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

One does not give, one does not accept,
 for him a recipient does not exist,
 She falls into a slight offence,
 not a serious one because of (her) enjoyment.⁴
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

One falls into a serious offence that can be done away with,
 out of disrespect he conceals⁵;
 Not a nun, and she would not attain a fault.⁶
 These questions were thought out by those of skill.

¹ This is about a nun who, filled with desire, takes almsfood from the hand of a man who is filled with desire (Nuns' **Bi-Ss.5**), and eats the remaining unallowable meats having crushed them up with human flesh (**Vin.1.118**), garlic (Nuns' **Bi-Pc.1**) and the sumptuous foods (defined at **Bu-Pc.39**); and see Nuns' **Bi-Pd.1-8**. The above offences are all covered by these rules and their elaborations in the Old Commentary. ² The Commentary says this verse is about the monk whose robes are stolen (**Bu-NP.6**) and refers us to the Commentary on that rule (**Vin-a.665ff.** which cites this verse). ³ Nuns' **Bi-Ss.6**. **Vin-a.914** quotes this verse. ⁴ Nuns' **Bi-Ss.5.2.2**: a nun, filled with desire, accepts water for cleansing the teeth from a man who is filled with desire: an offence of wrong-doing. ⁵ **Bu-Pc.64**. ⁶ This probably refers to Nuns' **Bi-Ss.13**. **Vin-a.1395** (silently) refers to the conclusion of the Nuns' Formal Meetings (**Vin.4.242**) where both the seventeen offences of this nature and the fortnight's *mānatta* for a nun who has fallen into any of them are spoken of, as at **Vin-a.1395**.

*Concluded are the Sweat-Inducing Stanzas***ITS SUMMARY**

Not in communion, not to be disposed of,
 and ten, not one who is suspended,
 He comes-to *Dhamma*, above the collar-bone,
 and two on begging for himself, /
 And no bodily action—serious, no bodily nor verbal (evil),
 Not conversing, and training, and two, four people, /
 A woman, and oil, Forfeiture, and monks, the length of a stride,
 And dressed in, and not a motion,
 should one kill not the mother or father, /
 Not being reprov'd, being reprov'd, cutting down, and so truth-speaking,
 And allotted, after sunset, not inflamed, and not a forest (lodging), /
 Bodily-verbal, and three women too, to the mother,
 An angry man is pleasing, satisfied, and Formal Meeting both, /
 Not made allowable, one does not give,
 one does not give, one falls into a serious (offence):
 The Sweat-Inducing Stanzas are Questions made clear by the Learned. /

21. THE FIVE DIVISIONS

FIRST DIVISION

Prv.21.1.1
BD.6.359
Vin.5.220

¹ Four formal acts: formal act for which leave should be asked, formal act at which a motion is put, formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times.² In how many ways are these four formal acts invalid?³

In five ways are these four formal acts invalid: as to matter, or as to motion, or as to proclamation, or as to boundary, or as to assembly.

Prv.21.1.2

How are formal acts invalid as to matter? One carries out a formal act that should be carried out in the presence of not in the presence of: a formal act (carried out) not by rule is invalid as to matter. One carries out a formal act that should be carried out by a question asked in return⁴ not by a question asked in return: a formal act (carried out) not by rule is invalid as to matter. One carries out a formal act that should be carried out on his acknowledgement not on his acknowledgement ... to one who merits a verdict of innocence⁵ he gives a verdict of past insanity ... for one who merits a verdict of past insanity he carries out a formal act for a

¹ Oldenberg calls this division “The Five Vaggas”, but though they are numbered consecutively as a group in the text they seem there to have no general name. ² Cf. [Vin.5.167](#).

³ At [Vin-a.1195](#) it is said this is explained in the *Kammavagga* of the *Parivāra*, while [Vin-a.1395](#) says the four formal acts are spoken of in the *Samathakkhandhaka* ([Kd.14](#)) of which [Vin-a.1191](#) forms the Commentary. See *Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī* 131ff. for this fourfold *kamma*. ⁴ See [Vin.5.164](#). [Vin-a.1397](#) says this formal act should be carried out after one has questioned, reproved and made to remember. ⁵ [Vin-a.1397](#) instances *Dabba the Mallian*; see e.g. [Bu-Ss.8.1.9](#). For this verdict see [Vin.4.207](#).

decision for specific depravity¹ ... for one who merits a decision for specific depravity he carries out a formal act of censure²... for one who merits a formal act of censure he carries out a formal act of guidance³ ... for one who merits a formal act of guidance he carries out a formal act of banishment⁴ ... for one who merits a formal act of banishment he carries out a formal act of reconciliation⁵ ... for one who merits a formal act of reconciliation he carries out a formal act of suspension⁶ ... to one who merits a formal act of suspension he gives probation one who merits probation he sends back to the beginning to one who merits being sent back to the beginning he gives *mānatta* ... one who merits *mānatta* he rehabilitates ... one who merits rehabilitation he ordains ... he carries out Observance not on an Observance day ... he invites not on an Invitation day: a formal act (carried out) not by rule is invalid as to matter. Thus are formal acts invalid as to matter.

BD.6.360

How are formal acts invalid as to motion? In five ways are formal acts invalid as to motion: one does not touch on⁷ the matter,⁸ he does not touch on the Order,⁹ he does not touch on the individual,¹⁰ he does not touch on the motion,¹¹ or, later he sets aside the motion.¹² Formal acts as to motion are invalid in these five ways.

Prv.21.1.3

How are formal acts invalid as to proclamation? In five ways are formal acts invalid as to proclamation: one does not touch on the matter ... on the Order ... on the individual, he omits an announcement, or he announces at a wrong time.¹³ Formal acts as to proclamation are invalid in these five

Prv.21.1.4

Vin.5.221

¹ See Vin.4.207; also Kd.14.11 for the carrying out of this formal act against the monk Uvāla (called Upavāla at Vin-a.1397). ² See Kd.11.1.3ff. ³ Kd.11.9.1ff. ⁴ Kd.11.13.6ff. ⁵ Kd.11.18.5ff. ⁶ Kd.11.25. ⁷ *parāmasati*, to deal with, to take up. ⁸ Vin-a.1397f. says this means one does not carry out a formal act of ordination and so on, does not deal with it, does not bring forward his name. Instead of saying “this Dhammarakkhita desires ordination from the reverend Buddharakkhita”, he says “one desires ordination from the reverend Buddharakkhita”. ⁹ Vin-a.i.398: he does not say “Revered sirs, let the Order listen to me” but “Let the reverend sirs listen to me”. ¹⁰ Vin-a.i.398: He does not say “This Dhammarakkhita desires ordination through the reverend Buddharakkhita” but “this Dhammarakkhita desires ordination”. ¹¹ He does not carry out the formal acts properly according to whether there is a motion only, or a motion followed by one resolution or by three. ¹² He does not make every proclamation of a resolution. ¹³ The proclamation first, afterwards he sets aside, *ṭhapeti*, the motion.

ways.

Prv.21.1.5

How are formal acts invalid as to boundary?¹ In eleven ways are formal acts invalid as to boundary: one agrees on a boundary that is very small,² he agrees on a boundary that is very extensive,³ he agrees on a boundary whose mark is interrupted,⁴ he agrees on a boundary in the shade, he agrees on “not a mark” as a boundary⁵; standing outside a boundary he agrees on a boundary⁶; he agrees on a boundary that is in a river⁷; he agrees on a boundary that is in the sea; he agrees on a boundary that is in a natural lake; he combines boundary with boundary⁸; he places boundary within boundary.⁹ Formal acts as to boundary are invalid in these eleven ways.

BD.6.361

Prv.21.1.6

How are formal acts invalid as to assembly? In twelve ways are formal acts invalid as to assembly: when a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fourfold assembly,¹⁰ if as many monks as are entitled to take part in the formal act are not come, if the leave of absence of those fit to declare their leave of absence is not sent, if those who are present protest¹¹; when a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fourfold assembly, if as many monks as are entitled to take part in the formal act are come, if the leave of absence of those fit to declare their leave of absence is not sent, if those who are present protest; when a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fourfold assembly, if as many monks as are entitled

¹ On boundary, *sīmā*, see [Kd.2.6-13](#). Fifteen kinds are given at *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* 59 and *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* 59 4f. gives the eleven invalid kinds as above. See also *Sīmāvivādavinichayakathā*, edited by J. MINAYEFF, *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 1887. ² Cf. [Vin.1.107](#).

³ [Vin.1.106](#). ⁴ *khaṇḍanimitta*. *Vin-a.1401* explains that the marks have not been completed. Monks should gradually walk round from east to south to west and to north, and at each quarter should proclaim the mark. They should then proceed to the eastern quarter again and proclaim the same mark as they proclaimed originally, and not a different one. Thus is the boundary completed or not-interrupted, *akkhaṇḍa*. If, however, they stop at the northern quarter without going on to the eastern one again, the boundary and its marks are interrupted. ⁵ *animitta*: not all the marks having been agreed on by everyone *Vin-a.1401*.

⁶ See [Kd.2.24](#). ⁷ A river, sea and natural lake may be taken as a boundary themselves, but not things that are in them, islands and rocks perhaps. ⁸ Offence of wrong-doing at [Kd.2.13.1](#). ⁹ Similar offence at [Kd.2.13.2](#). ¹⁰ Complete assemblies or Orders of monks may be fourfold, fivefold, tenfold or twentyfold, each larger Order being able to carry out more formal acts than the smaller ones. In various ways each may be incomplete or choose an unallowable type of person to bring it up to the right number. See [Kd.9.4](#). ¹¹ For this sentence see [Kd.9.3.5](#).

to take part in the formal act are come, if the leave of absence of those fit to declare their leave of absence is sent, if those who are present protest; when a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fivefold assembly ... tenfold assembly ... twentyfold assembly, if as many monks as are entitled to take part in the formal act are come, if the leave of absence of those fit to declare their leave of absence is sent, if those who are present protest. Formal acts as to assembly are invalid in these twelve ways.

BD.6.362

When a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fourfold assembly four regular monks are entitled to take part in the formal act,¹ the remainder who are regular monks are fit to declare leave of absence.² He for whom the Order is carrying out the formal act is neither entitled to take part in the formal act nor is he fit to declare leave of absence, but he merits the formal act.

Prv.21.1.7

When a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fivefold assembly five regular monks ...

When a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete tenfold assembly ten regular monks ...

When a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete twentyfold assembly twenty regular monks ... but he merits the formal act.

Prv.21.1.8

Vin.5.222

Four formal acts: formal act for which leave should be asked, formal act at which a motion is put, formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution, formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times. In how many ways are these four formal acts invalid? In five ways are these four formal acts invalid: as to matter, or as to motion, or as to proclamation, or as to boundary, or as to assembly.

Prv.21.1.9

How are formal acts invalid as to matter? One ordains a eunuch³: a formal act (carried out) not by rule is invalid as to matter. One ordains one who is in communion by theft⁴ ... one who has gone over to (another) sect⁵

BD.6.363

¹ Vin-a.1402: in this incomplete assembly there must be four regular monks (to complete it), i.e. not those who have been suspended or sent away, but those of entire moral purity; without these that act cannot be carried out but their leave of absence or entire purity is not sent. ² Vin-a.1402: even if the remainder number about a thousand, if they belong to the same communion all are fit to declare leave of absence. Once they have given this and the entire purity (see Kd.2.3.3), then "Let them come or not", the formal act still stands.

³ See Kd.1.61. ⁴ Kd.1.62. ⁵ Kd.1.62.

... one ordains an animal¹ ... one ordains a matricide² ... a parricide³ ... a murderer of an arahant⁴ ... a seducer of a nun⁵ ... a schismatic⁶ ... a shedder of (a Tathāgata's) blood⁷ ... a hermaphrodite⁸ ... one ordains a man who is less than twenty years of age⁹: a formal act (carried out) not by rule is invalid as to matter.

Prv.21.1.10

How are formal acts invalid as to motion ... (= Prv.21.1.3–Prv.21.1.6) ...

Prv.21.1.11

Formal acts as to assembly are invalid in these twelve ways.

How many possibilities¹⁰ does a formal act for which leave should be asked have access to ... a formal act at which a motion is put ... a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution ... How many possibilities does a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times have access to? A formal act for which leave should be asked has access to five possibilities; a formal act at which a motion is put has access to nine possibilities; a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution has access to seven possibilities; a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by a resolution made three times has access to seven possibilities.

Prv.21.1.12

Which are the five possibilities to which a formal act for which leave should be asked has access? Restoration,¹¹ being sent away, close shaving,¹² the higher penalty,¹³ a characteristic mark of the formal act is itself the fifth. These are the five possibilities to which a formal act for which leave should be asked has access.¹⁴

Which are the nine possibilities to which a formal, act at which a motion is put has access? Restoration,¹⁵ being sent away,¹⁶ Observance, Invitation,

BD.6.364

¹ Kd.1.63. ² Kd.1.64. ³ Kd.1.65. ⁴ Kd.1.66. ⁵ Kd.1.67. ⁶ Kd.1.67. ⁷ Kd.1.67.

⁸ Kd.1.68. ⁹ Bu-Pc.65. ¹⁰ *ṭhānāni*, qualities, attributes. ¹¹ As at Vin.1.321f., but “being sent away” there precedes “restoration”. Vin-a.1402 says this is the right order, the other being for the connexion, *siliṭṭhatā*, of the words; and it adds that an example of this meaning of these two words is the expulsion and restoration of the novice Kaṇṭaka. ¹² *bhaṇḍakamma*, see Kd.1.38.11, Kd.1.48.2. ¹³ *brahmadāṇḍa*, Kd.21.1.12. ¹⁴ For this paragraph see Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 131. ¹⁵ *osāraṇā* here seems to mean, according to Vin-a.1409, Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī 132, the formula, “Let him come” spoken for one who desires ordination.

agreement,¹ giving,² way of accepting,³ rejection,⁴ a characteristic mark of the formal act is itself the ninth.⁵ These are the nine possibilities⁶ to which a formal act at which a motion is put has access.

Which are the seven possibilities to which a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution has access? Restoration,⁷ being sent away,⁸ agreement,⁹ giving,¹⁰ removal,¹¹ marking out,¹² a characteristic mark of the formal act is itself the seventh.¹³ These are the seven possibilities to which a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution has access.

Which are the seven possibilities to which a formal act at which a mo-

BD.6.365

¹⁶ *nissāraṇā*, at Vin-a.1409, Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 132 means that a monk is a speaker of *Dhamma*, but does not know the rules or their analysis. He does not reflect on the meaning, but pushes it out under the shadow of the appurtenances (or details or syllables, *byañjana*). If the venerable sirs see fit, having turned out, *uṭṭhāpetvā* (Cf. Dhp-a.iv.69) this monk, the rest of us could settle this legal question. His being sent away is due therefore to the decision taken at a referendum. ¹ *sammuti* as to a particular monk who shall present the monk so-and-so for his ordination and shall question him as to discipline and the stumbling-blocks to ordination; also required is the agreement of the monk who seeks ordination that he will answer the questions on discipline put to him by the monk so-and-so. ² This is the Order giving (or giving back) a robe forfeited to the Order that had had to be forfeited by the monk so-and-so. ³ *paṭiggaha*. This is the way of accepting an offence that a monk had remembered and confessed and says he sees. ⁴ *paccukkaḍḍhanā*; or postponement? Cf. *paccukkaḍḍhitabbaṃ* at Vin.2.99, “to be rejected”. *paccukkaḍḍhanā*, with reference to Vin.1.175 is explained at Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 133 and, rather more fully at Vin-a.1410f., as “Let the venerable sirs who are residents listen to me; if it is pleasing to them we could carry out the Observance now, we could recite the Pātimokkha, we could invite on the next full-moon day”. Thus a rejection of the carrying out of Invitation is “rejection”. ⁵ Here the mark appears to be in settling a legal question by the covering over (as) with grass. ⁶ In all of them a motion is put before an Order. ⁷ Vin-a.1411 and Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī refer this to the episode (see Kd.15.20.2-6) of the turning upside down and the setting upright of Vaḍḍha the Licchavi’s bowl. ⁸ See previous note. ⁹ Agreement on a boundary (Kd.2.6.1). Only with the agreement of monks may a monk be away, separated from his three robes (Bu-NP.2); agreement on a rug (Bu-NP.14.2); and fourteen other agreements—see Kd.16.21, Vin-a.1411, Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 133. ¹⁰ Giving of *kaṭhina* robe-material (Kd.7.1.3.4); and the giving of the robes of a monk who has died (Kd.8.27). ¹¹ Referring to the removal of the *kaṭhina* (privileges). ¹² Referring to Bu-Ss.6 and Bu-Ss.7, where there has to be the marking out, *desanā*, of the site for a hut and for a *vihāra*. ¹³ Where there is a covering over (as) with grass, that one on the one side and one on the other side are called two proclamations of a motion that is followed by one resolution, Vin-a.1411; Cf. Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī 133.

tion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times has access? Restoration, being sent away,¹ agreement,² giving,³ rebuke,⁴ admonition,⁵ a characteristic mark of the formal act is itself the seventh.⁶ These are the seven possibilities to which a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times has access.

Prv.21.1.13

When a formal act is being carried out by an incomplete fourfold assembly four regular monks ... (= Prv.21.1.7) ... by an incomplete fivefold assembly ... by an incomplete tenfold assembly ... by an incomplete twentyfold assembly ... but he merits the formal act.

Vin.5.223

Concluded is the First Division: on Formal Acts

SECOND DIVISION

Prv.21.2.1

Founded on two reasons the rule of training was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order⁷: founded on these two reasons the rule of training was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata. Founded on two reasons ... for the restraint of evil-minded men, for the dwelling in comfort of well behaved monks: founded on these two reasons the rule of training was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata. Founded on two reasons ... for the restraint of the cankers belonging to the here and now, for combating the cankers belonging to future states ... for the restraint of dreadful actions⁸ belonging to the here and now,⁹ for the combating of dreadful actions belonging to future states¹⁰ ... for the restraint of blamable actions belonging to the here and now,¹¹ for the combating of blamable actions belonging to future states ... for the

BD.6.366

¹ Referring to the seven formal acts beginning with that of censure. When these are revoked restoration can be spoken of. ² On the exhorter of nuns. ³ Giving, or imposing probation and *mānatta*. ⁴ *niggaha*; this is sending back to the beginning. ⁵ Referring to eleven admonitions up to the third time: Bi-Pj.7, Bu-Ss.10, Bu-Ss.11, Bu-Ss.12, Bu-Ss.13, Bi-Ss.10, Bi-Ss.11, Bi-Ss.12, Bi-Ss.13; Bu-Pc.68; Bi-Pc.36. ⁶ Given as formal acts of ordination and rehabilitation. ⁷ For the first three pairs see e.g. Vin.3.21; also AN.i.98 for all the pairs. ⁸ *vera*, Cf. AN.iii.204. ⁹ Offences against the first five *silas*, see AN.iii.204. ¹⁰ Of which the result will be anguish. ¹¹ The same as the dreadful actions, Vin-a.1412.

restraint of fears¹ belonging to the here and now, for the combating of fears belonging to future states ... for the restraint of unskilled things belonging to the here and now,² for the combating of unskilled things belonging to future states ... out of compassion for householders,³ for breaking up the factions of evil-minded (individuals)⁴ ... for pleasing those who are not yet pleased and for increasing the number of those who are pleased⁵ ... for establishing True *Dhamma*, and for protecting Discipline. Founded on these two reasons the rule of training was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata.

Concluded is the Second Division: on Reasons

THIRD DIVISION

Founded on two reasons the Pātimokkha was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata ... the recitation of the Pātimokkha was laid down ... the suspension of the Pātimokkha was laid down ... the Invitation was laid down, the suspension of the Invitation was laid down, the formal act of censure⁶ was laid down, the formal act of guidance⁷ was laid down, the formal act of banishment⁸ was laid down, the formal act of reconciliation⁹ was laid down, the formal act of suspension¹⁰ was laid down, the giving of probation¹¹ was laid down, the sending back to the beginning¹² was laid down, the imposing of *mānatta*¹³ was laid down, rehabilitation¹⁴ was laid down, to be restored¹⁵ was laid down, to be sent away¹⁶ was laid down, ordination¹⁷ was laid down, a formal act for which leave should be asked¹⁸ was laid down, a formal act at which a motion is putwas laid down,¹⁹ a

Prv.21.3.1

BD.6.367

¹ Vin-a.1412 says the fears belonging to the here and now are of the formal acts of censure and so on, the suspension of the Observance and the Invitation, and the formal act of Information (for which see [Kd.173.2](#)). ² The five dreadful things, and the ten unskilled ways of acting (see [AN.v.266](#)). ³ That they might guard their faith. ⁴ Vin-a.1413 refers this to the rule for eating a group-meal ([Bu-Pc.32](#)). ⁵ As at [Vin.3.21](#). ⁶ [Kd.1.25.22](#). ⁷ [Kd.1.25.22](#). ⁸ [Kd.1.25.22](#). ⁹ [Kd.1.25.22](#). ¹⁰ [Kd.1.25.22](#). ¹¹ See [Kd.13](#). ¹² See [Kd.13](#). ¹³ See [Kd.13](#). ¹⁴ See [Kd.13](#). ¹⁵ See [Kd.179.2](#); [Kd.9.4.9](#); Cf. [Bu-Pc.69.2.1](#). ¹⁶ See each *sikkhāpada* in Nuns' [Bi-Ss.1-10](#). But Vin-a.1413 refers this to makers of quarrels who are to be sent away by a formal act that has been laid down. ¹⁷ [Kd.1.28.3-6](#). ¹⁸ See [Vin.5.220](#). ¹⁹ See [Vin.5.220](#).

formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by one resolution was laid down, a formal act at which a motion is put and is followed by the resolution made three times¹ was laid down.

Concluded is the Third Division: on Layings Down²

FOURTH DIVISION

Prv.21.4.1

The laid down in the not laid down,³ a laying down that is supplementary to a laying down,⁴ a laying down that is a verdict in the presence of, ... a verdict of innocence ... of past insanity, a laying down that is to be carried out on his acknowledgement, a laying down that is the decision of the majority, a laying down for specific depravity, a covering over (as) with grass is laid down for the excellence of the Order, for the comfort of the Order. Founded on these two reasons a covering over (as) with grass was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata. Founded on two reasons a covering over (as) with grass was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata for the restraint of evil-minded men ... for establishing True *Dhamma*, for protecting Discipline. Founded on these two reasons a covering over (as) with grass was laid down for disciples by the Tathāgata.

Vin.5.224

Concluded is the Fourth Division: on What was Laid Down

FIFTH DIVISION

Prv.21.5.1

Nine classifications: classification by matter, classification by falling away, classification by offence, classification by provenance, classification by individual, classification by class, classification by origin, classification by legal question, classification by deciding.

Prv.21.5.2

¹ See [Vin.5.220](#). ² Vin-a.1413 appears to consider that this and the next Division go together as one Division which it calls *Ānisaṃsavagga*. The text calls the former *Paññattavagga* and the latter *Paññattavagga*. ³ Vin-a.1413 says: the seven classes of offence; setting aside the Buddhas Kakusandha, Koṇāgamana and Kassapa, any rules of training not laid down in between are called laid down. ⁴ See above, [Vin.5.1](#).

When a legal question has arisen, if two come who are hostile about the matter,¹ the matter should be announced to both; when the matter has been announced to both the acknowledgement of both should be made known; when the acknowledgement of both has been heard both should say “After this legal question of ours is settled both should be satisfied”. If they say, “Both will be satisfied,” that legal question should be accepted by the Order. If the assembly has a majority of shameless (persons), it should be settled by means of a referendum.² If the assembly has a majority of ignorant (persons), a Vinaya-expert should be sought.³ He settles that legal question according to rule, according to discipline, according to the Teacher’s instruction—so should that legal question be settled.⁴

BD.6.368

Prv.21.5.3

The matter should be known, the kind⁵ should be known, the name should be known, the offence should be known. Sexual intercourse means matter as well as kind; offence involving Defeat means name as well as offence. Taking what has not been given means matter as well as kind; offence involving Defeat means name as well as offence. Human being ... State of further-men means matter as well as kind; offence involving Defeat means name as well as offence. Emission of semen means matter as well as kind; offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order means name as well as offence. Physical contact means matter as well as kind; offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order means name as well as offence. Lewd words ... Sense-pleasures for self ... Go-between ... Begging for oneself for having a hut built ... for having a large *vihāra* built ... Defaming a monk with an unfounded charge of an offence involving Defeat ... Defaming a monk with a charge of an offence involving Defeat taking up some point as a pretext in a legal question really belonging to something else ... The not giving up (of his course) by a schismatic monk though there is admonition up to the third time ... The not giving up (of their course) by monks who are imitators of schismatics though there is admonition up to the third time ... The not giving up (of his course) by a monk who is difficult to speak to though there is admonition up to the third time ... The not giving up (of his course) by a

Vin.5.225

¹ *att(h)apaccatthika*, see [Kd.14.14.16](#). ² See [Kd.14.14.19–21](#). ³ See [Kd.14.14.25](#). ⁴ See [Kd.14.14.25](#). ⁵ *gotta* above does not seem to mean clan-name as at [Kd.1.74.1](#), but the class to which an offence belongs, its kind, its lineage.

BD.6.369 monk who brings families into disrepute though there is admonition up to the third time means matter as well as kind; offence requiring a Formal Meeting of the Order means name as well as offence ... Out of disrespect easing oneself or spitting in water means matter as well as kind; offence of wrong-doing means name as well as offence.

Concluded is the Fifth Division: on Nine Classifications

Prv.21.6.1. **ITS SUMMARY**¹:

For which leave should be asked, and motion,
 followed by one, and by three,
 Matter, motion, proclamation,
 boundary, and assembly likewise, /
 In the presence of, and question in return,
 acknowledgement, deserving discipline,
 Matter, the Order, and an individual,
 on motions, and later a motion, /
 Matter, the Order, and an individual,
 announcement, and at a wrong time,
 Very small, and extensive, interruption,
 shadow, "not a mark," /
 Outside, in a river, and in the sea,
 and in a natural lake, one combines,
 One places within a boundary, four-fivefold, /
 And ten-twentyfold, and is not sent, is sent,
 Entitled to take part in a formal act,
 fit to declare leave of absence,
 and individuals who merit a formal act, /
 Five possibilities for a formal act
 for which leave should be asked,
 and a motion is nine-possibilitied,
 Seven possibilities for a motion followed by one resolution,
 and the motion with the resolution
 made three times is seven-possibilitied, /
 Excellence and comfort,
 of evil-minded as well as well behaved, cankers,
 Dreadful actions, blamable actions as well as fear,
 unskilled, and for householders, /
 Of evil wishes, for pleasing those who are not yet pleased,
 for establishing *Dhamma*
 As well as protecting Discipline,

BD.6.370

¹ This covers the five Divisions in Section 19.

Pātimokkha, and with the recitation, /
 And suspension of the Pātimokkha,
 and Invitation suspension,
 Censure, and guidance,
 and banishment, and reconciliation, /
 Suspension, probation,
 the beginning, *mānatta*, rehabilitation,
 Restoration, sending away, likewise ordination, /
 For which leave should be asked,
 and motion, followed by one, and by three,
 In the not laid down, supplementary laying-down,
 verdict in the presence of, innocence, /
 Past insanity, acknowledgement,¹ majority,
 depravity, covering over (as) with grass,
 Matter, falling away, offence,
 provenance, and by an individual, /
 And class too, origins, and a legal question also,
 Deciding, classifications too,
 likewise about name and offence. /

Vin.5.226

Concluded is the Parivāra

So, having asked this and that
 about the way of former teachers
 Dīpanāma of great wisdom,
 who remembered what he had heard, attentive,

Thinking out this epitome of the details
 for the middle way of study,²
 Had it written
 for bringing happiness to disciples.

“Parivāra” means all that is said
 as to matter with the characteristic mark,
 Meaning by meaning in the True *Dhamma*,
 rule by rule in what is laid down.
 It encompasses³ the Dispensation
 as the ocean (encompasses) India.

BD.6.371

¹ *paṭiññā* is here abbreviated to *paṭi*. ² Cf. *Vin.5.48*. ³ *parivāresi*.

Not knowing the Parivāra
whence is there discrimination between the rules?

Falling away, matter, laying down,
supplementary laying down, individual,
For one (Order), for both,
as well as what is held blameworthy by the world—

Doubt, for whomever it arises,
is cut off by the Parivāra.
As a universal monarch amid his vast forces,
as a maned lion in the midst of deer,

Like the sun surrounded by its rays,
like the moon in a host of stars,
As Brahmā in a company of Brahmās,
as a leader in the midst of his following—
Thus through the Parivāra
the True *Dhamma*-and-Discipline shines forth.

